CLINICAL TROPICAL MEDICINE

GRADWOHL
BENITEZ SOTO
FELSENFELD

CFTRI-MYSORE
1616
Clinical tropica..

229.

C. F. T. R. I. LIBRARY, MYSORE

Acc. No. 1616.

Call No. ~~L98~~ L9H J1

Please return this publication on or before the last DUE DATE stamped below to avoid incurring overdue charges.

P. No.	Due date	Return date
161	13/7/60.	21/6
91	30/4/62	31/3
~~Ref-301~~	1 Hour.	
—	18-11-66	15-11-66
—	14/8/67	14/8
—	4.5.68	23/4/68
—	17.12.68	2/12/68
—	30.10.74	16/X/74
—	1.2.75	31-1-75
—	15.4.75	7/4

CLINICAL
TROPICAL MEDICINE

CLINICAL
TROPICAL MEDICINE

R. B. H. GRADWOHL, M.D.
Editor-in-Chief

LUIS BENITEZ SOTO, M.D. OSCAR FELSENFELD, M.D.
Editors

CENTRAL FOOD TECHNOLOGICAL RESEARCH INSTITUTE, * MYSORE. *
LIBRARY
8 NOV 1951

WITH 473 ILLUSTRATIONS
AND 6 COLOR PLATES

St. Louis
THE C. V. MOSBY COMPANY
1951

1616

COPYRIGHT, 1951, BY THE C. V. MOSBY COMPANY

(All rights reserved)

L-903;4
N51

Printed in the
United States of America

CFTRI-MYSORE
1616
Clinical tropica..

Press of
The C. V. Mosby Company
St. Louis

LIST OF CONTRIBUTORS

Francisco J. Aguilar, M.D., Guatemala City, C. A.

Director of Laboratories and Professor of Parasitology, Medical School, San Carlos University of Guatemala; Chief of Parasitological Institute, Public Health Service, Guatemala City.

Floriano Paulo de Almeida, M.D., São Paulo, Brazil, S. A.

Docent and Assistant in the Department of Microbiology of the School of Medicine, Professor of Microbiology, the School of Obstetrics, University of São Paulo.

Afranio do Amaral, B.Sc. & L., M.D. (Bahia), D. Hyg. & Trop. Med. (Harvard), São Paulo, Brazil, S. A.

Director, Butantan Institute (Retired), São Paulo; Founder and former Director, Antivenin Institute of America, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania, U. S. A.; Vice-President, International Commission on Zoological Nomenclature, England.

Donald L. Augustine, B.S., Sc.D., M.A. (Hon.), Harvard University, Sc.D. (Hon.), Macalester College, Boston, Massachusetts, U. S. A.

Professor of Tropical Public Health, Harvard School of Public Health; Consultant in Comparative Pathology, Children's Hospital, Boston; Consultant to the United States Public Health Service.

Frederik B. Bang, A.B., M.D., Baltimore, Maryland, U. S. A.

Formerly Major, Army of the United States; Associate Professor of Medicine, Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine, Baltimore.

Enrique Beltrán, M.D., Acad. Prof. Science, Nat., Hon. M.Sc. (Mexico), Mexico, D. F., Mexico.

Professor of Protozoology, University of Mexico and Polytechnical Institute; Head, Department of Protozoology, Institute of Public Health and Tropical Diseases, Mexico; Member, National Academy of Medicine, Mexico.

Luis Benitez Soto, M.D., Mexico, D. F., Mexico.

Professor of Pathology, Military Medical School, Mexico; formerly Associate Professor of Pathology, Medical School, and Associate Professor of Cancerology, Medical School, University of Mexico; formerly Director of Laboratories, Public Health Department, Mexico; Colonel, Medical Corps, Mexican Army.

Alfonso Bonilla-Naar, M.D., Bogotá, Colombia, S. A.

Professor of Tropical Medicine, Professor of Parasitology, National School of Medicine, Bogotá.

Roy Edwin Butler, A.B., M.D., New Orleans, Louisiana, U. S. A.

Senior Surgeon, United States Public Health Service, New Orleans.

Gustavo Cardelle, M.D., Havana, Cuba.

Instructor in Clinical Pediatrics, School of Medicine, University of Havana; Chief of Medicine, Municipal Children's Hospital of Havana.

Maximiliano Ruiz Castañeda, M.D., Mexico, D. F., Mexico.

Director, Department of Medical Research, General Hospital, Mexico.

Clement Clapton Chesterman, O.B.E., M.D. (London), M.R.C.P., D.T.M. & H. (Cantab.), London, England.

Teacher of Tropical Medicine, Middlesex Hospital Medical School, University of London; formerly Medical Missionary, Baptist Missionary Society, Belgian Congo.

Antonio Clerch Rius, M.D., Havana, Cuba.

Director, National Institute of Health of Cuba; Medical School, University of Havana.

Joseph Wesley Colvin, A.B., M.D., Fort Worth, Texas, U. S. A.

Formerly Lieutenant Commander, M.C., United States Navy; formerly Head, Department of Tropical Medicine, United States Naval Medical School, Bethesda, Maryland; Harris Memorial Methodist Hospital, Fort Worth.

Arturo Curbelo Hernandez, M.D., Havana, Cuba.

Associate Professor of Bacteriology, School of Medicine, University of Havana; formerly Director of National Institute of Health, Havana; formerly Director, Finlay Institute, Havana; Consulting Bacteriologist, Municipal Children's Hospital, Havana; Hospital Nacional Calixto García, Havana; Hospital Ntra. Sra. de las Mercedes, Havana.

Anthony Donovan, A.B., M.D., Lima, Peru, S. A.

Senior Surgeon, United States Public Health Service; Chief, Zone Office, Pan-American Sanitary Bureau, Lima.

Oscar Felsenfeld, M.D., Chicago, Illinois, U. S. A.

Director of Bacteriology, Hektoen Institute for Medical Research of the Cook County Hospital, Chicago; Professorial Lecturer, University of Illinois College of Medicine and the Graduate College, Chicago.

Lee Foshay, M.D., Cincinnati, Ohio, U. S. A.

Professor of Bacteriology, College of Medicine, University of Cincinnati.

R. B. H. Gradwohl, M.D., Sc.D., F.R.S.T.M. & H. (London), F.A.P.H.A., Commander, M. C., U. S. N. R. (Retired), St. Louis, Missouri, U. S. A.

Pathologist to Christian Hospital, St. Louis; Director, Gradwohl School of Laboratory and X-Ray Technique, St. Louis.

Morris Greenberg, A.B., M.S., M.D., New York, New York, U. S. A.

Director, Bureau of Preventable Diseases, New York City Department of Health; Lecturer in Epidemiology, Columbia University, New York.

Robert B. Greenblatt, B.A., M.D., C.M., Augusta, Georgia, U. S. A.

Professor of Endocrinology, University of Georgia School of Medicine, Augusta.

Hernando Groot, B.S. (National School of Commerce, Bogotá), M.D. (National University, Bogotá), M.P.H. (cum laude) (Harvard University), Bogotá, Colombia, S. A.

Director of the Army Laboratories, Bogotá; Professor of Parasitology and Tropical Medicine, School of Medicine, University of Javeriana, Bogotá; formerly Director of the Commission for the Study of Carrión's Disease, Pasto, Colombia; formerly Director of the Nariño Public Health Laboratory, Pasto, Colombia.

Sachiko Janet Ishihara, B.S., Chicago, Illinois, U. S. A.

Microbiologist-in-Charge, I. F. Volini Memorial Antibiotics Research Laboratories of the Cook County Hospital, Chicago.

Philip Herman Hartz, M.D., Curaçao, Dutch West Indies.

Pathologist, Public Health Service, Curaçao.

Edward Henderson, M.D., Bloomfield, New Jersey, U. S. A.

Director of Clinical Research, Schering Corporation; Director, Schering International Institute for Medical Research, Bloomfield.

Alfred E. A. Hudson, B.A., B.Sc., M.Sc., M.P.H., Major, M.S.C. (Retired), United States Army, Goldsboro, North Carolina, U. S. A.

Juan A. Jimenez, M.D., Havana, Cuba.

Instructor, Department of Clinical Medicine, School of Medicine, University of Havana; formerly Pathologist, Municipal Children's Hospital of Havana.

Pedro Kourí, M.D., Havana, Cuba.

Director, Institute of Tropical Medicine, Professor of Parasitology and Tropical Diseases, Vice-Dean of the School of Medicine, University of Havana; Member of the Board of Directors, Summer School, Havana University; Founder-Director of *Revista de Medicina Tropical y Parasitología* and of Laboratorios Kuba.

Willem Kouwenaar, M.D., Amsterdam, Netherlands.

Professor of Tropical Hygiene, University of Armsterdam; Chief, Division of Tropical Hygiene, Institute of Tropical Hygiene, Department of the Royal Institute of the Indies; formerly Director of the Pathological Laboratory, Medan-Sumatra.

Aram A. Krajian, Sc.D., Los Angeles, California, U. S. A.

Honorary Member of Congress of Medicine of Mexico.

Francisco León Blanco, M.D., Havana, Cuba.

Chief Pathologist to the Hospital Freyre de Andrade, Havana.

Atilio Macchiavello, M.D., D.P.H., Alexandria, Egypt.

Planning Officer, Eastern Mediterranean Regional Office, World Health Organization; Professor of Hygiene and Preventive Medicine, University of Chile, Santiago, Chile, S. A.; formerly Consulting Epidemiologist, Pan-American Sanitary Bureau, Lima, Peru, S. A.; formerly Director General of Health, Santiago, Chile; formerly Professor of Tropical Medicine, Post-Graduate School, University of Guayaquil, Guayaquil, Ecuador, S. A.; formerly Professor of Epidemiology and Biostatistics, School of Hygiene, University of Chile, Santiago, Chile.

†Salvador Mazza, M.D., Buenos Aires, Argentina, S. A.

Honorary Professor of the School of Medicine of Buenos Aires; Honorary Director of the Laboratory of the Institute of Clinical Surgery, School of Medicine, Buenos Aires; Secretary for the Argentine Republic of the Royal Society of Tropical Medicine of London; Chief of the Mission for the Study of Regional Pathology of Argentina of the Univerity of Buenos Aires; Honorary Academico of the National Academy of Medicine of Rio de Janeiro, Brazil, S. A.

Karl F. Meyer, M.D., Ph.D., LL.D., San Francisco, California, U. S. A.

Professor of Experimental Pathology, The Medical School, University of California; Director, George Williams Hooper Foundation for Medical Research; General Consultant, California State Department of Public Health; Consultant to the Secretary of War; Member, Army Epidemiologic Board, National Advisory Health Council.

Antonio González-Ochoa, M.D. (National University of Mexico), Medécin Colonial, University of Paris, Mexico, D. F., Mexico.

Head, Department of Mycology, Institute of Public Health and Tropical Diseases, Mexico; Professor of Mycology, National Polytechnic Institute, Mexico; Professor of Medical Mycology, Post-Graduate Medical School, National University of Mexico.

Ardzroony A. Packchanian, Ph.D., Galveston, Texas, U. S. A.

Professor of Bacteriology and Parasitology and Director, Laboratory of Microbiology, School of Medicine, The University of Texas, Galveston.

Ganapati Panja, M.B. (Calcutta), D. Bact. (London), F.N.I., F.D.S., Calcutta, India.

Professor of Bacteriology and Pathology, School of Tropical Medicine, Calcutta.

V. Pardo Castelló, M.D., Havana, Cuba.

Assistant Professor of Dermatology and Syphilology of the University of Havana.

Henrique de Azevedo Penna, M.D., Rio de Janeiro, Brazil, S. A.

Chief of the Yellow Fever Vaccine Laboratory, National Yellow Fever Service, Rio de Janeiro.

Samuel Barnsley Pessôa, M.D., São Paulo, Brazil, S. A.

Professor of Parasitology, School of Medicine, São Paulo University; Honorary Professor, School of Medicine, Recife, Brazil.

Gustavo Pittaluga, M.D., Madrid, Spain.

Professor of Parasitology and Tropical Diseases, University of Madrid; formerly Director of the National Institute of Public Health, Madrid; Member of the Health Committee of the League of Nations (1923-1938).

Irving Rappaport, B.S., M.S., Ph.D., Brooklyn, New York, U. S. A.

Major, United States Army; Instructor in Public Health and Preventive Medicine, Cornell University Medical College, New York, New York; Benson Memorial Fellow for Medical Research, Long Island College of Medicine, Brooklyn.

---

†Deceased.

Hector J. Rossello, M.D., Montevideo, Uruguay, S. A.

Titular Professor of Therapeutics and Pharmacodynamics, University of Montevideo; Director of the Institute of Pathology, University of Montevideo; Physician-in-Chief of Ward, Hospital Fermin Ferreira, Montevideo.

A. Charlotte Ruys, M.D., Amsterdam, Netherlands.

Professor of Bacteriology, Immunology, and Epidemiology, University of Amsterdam.

Amelia Sámano Bishop, A.B., M.A., Ph.D., Mexico, D. F., Mexico.

Professor of Human Embryology and Comparative Histology and Embryology and Research Histologist to the Institute of Biology, National University of Mexico.

Elvira Sánchez-García, Havana, Cuba.

George Murdoch Saunders, B.A., M.D., New York, New York, U. S. A.

Medical Director of Socony-Vacuum Oil Company, Inc.; Associate Clinical Professor of Industrial Medicine, New York University Post-Graduate Medical School; Assistant Attending Physician of University Hospital; Visiting Lecturer, Harvard School of Public Health.

J. Allen Scott, B.A., M.A., Sc.D., Galveston, Texas, U. S. A.

Professor of Preventive Medicine, University of Texas School of Medicine, Galveston.

Antonio Sellek, M.D., Havana, Cuba.

Director of Central Clinical Laboratory, Municipal Children's Hospital, Havana; Instructor, Microscopy and Clinical Chemistry, School of Medicine, University of Havana.

Harry Seneca, M.D., M.S. in Medicine, F.A.C.P., Bloomfield, New Jersey, U. S. A.

Captain, M.C., Army of the United States; Research Associate, Columbia University, College of Physicians and Surgeons, New York, New York; Consultant in Research, Schering Corporation, Bloomfield; formerly Assistant Professor of Tropical Medicine, Tulane University, New Orleans, Louisiana.

Albert John Sheldon, M.D., Sc.D., Santa Ana, California, U. S. A.

Major, M.C., Army of the United States.

Juan L. Soto Rozas, M.D., Mexico, D. F., Mexico.

Professor, Venereal Disease Clinic, Military Medical School; Colonel, Medical Corps; Honorary Professor of Urology, Military Medical School of Warsaw; Chief of the Campaign Against Venereal Diseases of the Military Sanitary Service of Mexico; Technical Counsellor in Venereal Diseases to the Military Sanitary Service of Mexico.

Ramón M. Suárez, M.D., D.Sc. (Hon.), Santurce, Puerto Rico.

Associate Clinical Professor of Tropical Medicine, Columbia University; Director, Hospital Mimiya; Consultant to Presbyterian Hospital, San Patricio Hospital, and Antilles Department, United States Army.

S. Edward Sulkin, Ph.D., Dallas, Texas, U. S. A.

Professor and Chairman of the Department of Bacteriology and Immunology and Director of the Virus Research Laboratory, Southwestern Medical College, Dallas.

Luis Vargas, M.D. (Mexico), M.P.H. (Johns Hopkins), M.C. Biol. (Mexico), Mexico, D. F., Mexico.

Chief, Department of Entomology, Institute of Public Health and Tropical Diseases, Mexico.

Eugene R. Whitmore, Ph.D., M.D., Dr. P. H., F.A.C.P., F.C.A.P., Washington, D. C., U. S A.

Colonel (Retired), United States Army; Emeritus Professor of Parasitology and Pathology, Georgetown University Medical School, Washington; Head, Division of Tropical Diseases, Doctors Hospital, Washington; Director of Pathology Laboratory, Casualty Hospital, Washington.

Viola Mae Young, B.S., M.S., Chicago, Illinois, U. S. A.

Lecturer, Department of Bacteriology, Stritch Medical School of Loyola University, Chicago; Parasitologist, Hektoen Institute for Medical Research of the Cook County Hospital, Chicago.

DEDICATED

To those who toil in the heat and sweat of the tropical plantations and tropically located industrial enterprises; to those who enter the jungle and the desert to bring health and progress to the native inhabitants; to those rural workers and village physicians whose only information on this subject must necessarily be obtained from a comprehensive manual; to the medical men of the Armed Forces who enter tropical territories and seriously prepare to safeguard their troops against the diseases of the land; and to those who wish to familiarize themselves with the great problems presented by the Tropics.

FOREWORD

With modern methods of communication and also as a result of the large numbers of men from the temperate zones who spent considerable periods in the Tropics during World War II, tropical medicine has assumed an importance greater than at any time in the whole history of medicine. Many advances and discoveries have also been made in this field in recent years. The literature of tropical medicine is constantly being increased. Preventive tropical medicine is a matter of great urgency in our present troubled world conditions. This textbook is of particular interest in that it is largely a production of Pan-American authors in that leaders in the various fields of tropical medicine in North, Central, and South America have collaborated in its production. It represents a valuable addition to the many fine works on tropical medicine. As a textbook it will be extremely valuable.

Ross T McIntire

Ross T McIntire
Vice Admiral, Medical Corps
United States Navy, Retired

PREFACE

The Editors present to the English-speaking scientific world this book on *Clinical Tropical Medicine* written by fifty-seven authors. The variety and diversity in concept, opinion, and method of approach apparent in every chapter of the book begin with the personal training and individualities of the Editors. One (R. B. H. G.), born, reared, and educated in the United States, with many years of European postgraduate work, including studies at the Hamburg Institute of Tropical Medicine, wrote from his experiences in the United States Navy and his travels. Another (L. B. S.), a son of Latin America, lives, works, and teaches in Mexico, representing the views of Central and South America. Finally, the third (O. F.), a Continental European by upbringing but an American by choice, is making every effort to synthesize the teachings of his West European masters with the achievements of the New World.

The freedom of expression which the Editors maintained for themselves has been reserved also for the contributors. While certain requirements were necessarily observed by each writer, there was no curtailment of ideas and concepts. The number of pages had to be limited but not the internal arrangements of the chapters; thus no objection was raised if an author wished to stress one or another part of his contribution or desired to express an unusual opinion.

While the Editors believe in the great value of contributions from established authors, they feel that the younger writers should also have their say. It was for this reason that some authors were selected whose qualifications were ample but whose claims to international recognition had not yet been established. We hope that the results will prove satisfactory.

In selecting the authors of this book, every possible effort was made to appoint only those with actual clinical experience with the diseases with which their writing was concerned. In other words, the compilation of literature and findings of a variety of experts was not what was desired; rather it was desirable to have clinical and laboratory experiences recorded which came out of daily contact with the diseases in question. It is not given to any expert on tropical medicine to be familiar with all the diseases of the Tropics. This book pretends to be a record of specialistic knowledge.

The material and scope of subject matter which should form a book on tropical medicine were much debated in preliminary discussions. After serious consideration, the Editors decided that climatic, nutritional, and transmissible diseases should be stressed, with special emphasis on those which, with a few exceptions such as dysenteric disorders, constitute a major problem only in the Tropics. Smallpox, rabies, coccidioidosis, etc., which are often included in handbooks of tropical medicine, do not appear in this volume.

The idea for the present book was conceived in 1944. It was originally intended to be a Pan-American work. Delays in the publication carried it over into postwar years. While this necessitated bringing many chapters up to date, it also permitted the Editors to include valuable contributions from Dutch, English, and Indian authors which could not have been secured during World War II.

In the preparation of this type of book, there were many difficulties, due to the fact that a great deal of the manuscript was submitted in foreign languages. In correcting translations, in checking dosages of drugs, references to the literature, style, spelling, etc., the admirable literary and editorial talents of our assistant, Mrs. Addine G. Erskine, must be paid a special tribute. All this, together with her careful preparation of the index, merits our deepest appreciation and thanks.

The Editors wish to express their deepest gratitude to all contributors.

St. Louis, Mo., U. S. A.	R. B. H. GRADWOHL
Mexico, D. F., Mexico	LUIS BENITEZ SOTO
Chicago, Ill., U. S. A.	OSCAR FELSENFELD

CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1

PAGE
INTRODUCTION TO TROPICAL MEDICINE (By R. B. H. Gradwohl) - - - - 1

CHAPTER 2

A GENERAL CONSIDERATION OF THE PROTOZOA (By Enrique Beltrán) - - 14

CHAPTER 3

INTESTINAL PROTOZOA OF MAN (By Enrique Beltrán) - - - - - - - - 20

CHAPTER 4

AMEBIC DYSENTERY, HEPATIC ABSCESS, AND OTHER INTESTINAL CONDITIONS CAUSED BY PROTOZOA (By Oscar Felsenfeld and Viola Mae Young) - 35

CHAPTER 5

PLASMODIA OF MAN AND ANIMALS (By Enrique Beltrán) - - - - - - 71

CHAPTER 6

MALARIA (By Joseph Wesley Colvin) - - - - - - - - - - - - - - 82

CHAPTER 7

MALARIA-CARRYING MOSQUITOES AND THEIR CONTROL (By Luis Vargas) - 103

CHAPTER 8

CHAGAS' DISEASE (By Salvador Mazza) - - - - - - - - - - - - - 127

CHAPTER 9

AFRICAN SLEEPING SICKNESS (By Oscar Felsenfeld) - - - - - - - - 156

CHAPTER 10

LEISHMANIASIS, CUTANEOUS, MUCOCUTANEOUS, AND VISCERAL, WITH SPECIAL REFERENCE TO ITS OCCURRENCE IN THE AMERICAS (By Samuel Barnsley Pessôa) - - - - - - - - - - - - - - 170

CHAPTER 11

PINTA, MAL DEL PINTO, OR CARATE (By Francisco León-Blanco and Elvira Sánchez-García) - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - 204

CHAPTER 12

PAGE
RELAPSING FEVER (By Ardzroony A. Packchanian) - - - - - - - - - 231

CHAPTER 13

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS OF LEPTOSPIRAL DISEASES (By A. Charlotte Ruys) - 236

CHAPTER 14

WEIL'S DISEASE (By Ardzroony A. Packchanian) - - - - - - - - - - 250

CHAPTER 15

FEVERS DUE TO RATBITE (INCLUDING SODOKU) (By Arturo Curbelo Hernandez) - 256

CHAPTER 16

FRAMBOESIA (YAWS) (By Albert John Sheldon) - - - - - - - - - - 269

CHAPTER 17

THE VIRUSES AND VIRUS DISEASES OF MAN—GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS (By S. Edward Sulkin) - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - 298

CHAPTER 18

YELLOW FEVER (By Henrique de Azevedo Penna) - - - - - - - - - - 313

CHAPTER 19

DENGUE AND DENGUE-LIKE FEVERS (By Gustavo Pittaluga) - - - - - 330

CHAPTER 20

PSITTACOSIS (ORNITHOSIS, PSITACOSIS) (By Karl F. Meyer) - - - - - 341

CHAPTER 21

ENCEPHALITIS AND ALLIED DISEASES (By Luis Vargas) - - - - - - - 367

CHAPTER 22

LYMPHOGRANULOMA VENEREUM (By Juan L. Soto Rozas) - - - - - - 387

CHAPTER 23

GRANULOMA INGUINALE (By Robert B. Greenblatt) - - - - - - - - - 412

CHAPTER 24

PAGE

DISEASES DUE TO BACTERIA—THEIR DISTRIBUTION AND OCCURRENCE IN THE TROPICS (By Oscar Felsenfeld) 418

CHAPTER 25

BRUCELLOSIS (By Maximiliano Ruiz Castañeda) 420

CHAPTER 26

TULAREMIA (By Lee Foshay) 436

CHAPTER 27

PLAGUE (By Atilio Macchiavello; Translated By Anthony Donovan) 444

CHAPTER 28

CHOLERA (ASIATIC CHOLERA) (By Edward Henderson and Harry Seneca) 477

CHAPTER 29

SALMONELLOSIS. SHIGELLOSIS (By Oscar Felsenfeld and Viola Mae Young) 507

CHAPTER 30

SALMONELLOSIS, TYPHOID FEVER, SHIGELLOSIS IN CHILDREN (By Antonio Sellek, Gustavo Cardelle, Juan A. Jimenez) 554

CHAPTER 31

LEPROSY (By V. Pardo Castelló) 586

CHAPTER 32

HUMAN BARTONELLOSIS OR CARRIÓN'S DISEASE (By Hernando Groot) 615

CHAPTER 33

TROPICAL PHAGEDENIC ULCER (VINCENT'S ULCER) (By Ganapati Panja) 641

CHAPTER 34

RESPIRATORY SCLEROMA (RHINOSCLEROMA) (By Willem Kouwenaar) 667

CHAPTER 35

RICKETTSIOSES OR RICKETTSIAL DISEASES (By Atilio Macchiavello; Translated By Anthony Donovan) 687

CHAPTER 36

PAGE

RICKETTSIALPOX (By Morris Greenberg) - - - - - - - - - - - - - 787

CHAPTER 37

HELMINTHIASIS: (A) GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS; (B) NEMATODIASIS OR DISEASES CAUSED BY NEMATODES OR ROUNDWORMS (ASCARIASIS, ENTEROBIASIS OR PINWORM INFECTION, STRONGYLOIDIASIS, NECATORIASIS AND ANCYLOSTOMIASIS OR HOOKWORM DISEASE, TRICHURIASIS OR WHIPWORM INFECTION) (By Pedro Kourí) - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - 794

CHAPTER 38

TRICHINOSIS (By Irving Rappaport) - - - - - - - - - - - - - - 847

CHAPTER 39

FILARIASIS (By Donald L. Augustine) - - - - - - - - - - - - - - 871

CHAPTER 40

ONCHOCERCIASIS (By Luis Benitez Soto and Amelia Sámano Bishop) - - - - 893

CHAPTER 41

DRACONTIASIS OR GUINEA WORM DISEASE (By Alfred E. A. Hudson) - - - 927

CHAPTER 42

CESTODIASIS OR DISEASES CAUSED BY TAPEWORMS (TAENIASIS, HYDATID DISEASE, HYMENOLEPIASIS, HUMAN DIPYLIDIASIS, HUMAN INERMICAPSIFERIASIS, HUMAN RAILLIETINIASIS, DIPHYLLOBOTHRIASIS, SPARGANIASIS) (By Pedro Kourí) - - - - - - 938

CHAPTER 43

TREMATODIASIS OR DISEASES CAUSED BY FLUKES (PARAGONIMIASIS, FASCIOLOPSIASIS, HETEROPHYIASIS, METAGONIMIASIS, ECHINOSTOMIASIS, CLONORCHIASIS, OPISTHORCHIASIS, HUMAN FASCIOLIASIS HEPATICA) (By Pedro Kourí) - - - - - - - - - 997

CHAPTER 44

FASCIOLIASIS HEPATICA IN CHILDREN (By Antonio Sellek) - - - - - - 1025

CHAPTER 45

SCHISTOSOMIASIS JAPONICA (By Frederik B. Bang) - - - - - - - - - 1029

CHAPTER 46

PAGE
SCHISTOSOMIASIS HAEMATOBIA AND SCHISTOSOMIASIS INTERCALATA (By Clement Clapton Chesterman) - - - - - - - - - - - - 1049

CHAPTER 47

SCHISTOSOMIASIS MANSONI (By J. Allen Scott) - - - - - - - - - - 1068

CHAPTER 48

TROPICAL MYCOSIS—INTRODUCTION (By Antonio González-Ochoa) - - - - 1101

CHAPTER 49

SUPERFICIAL TROPICAL MYCOSES (By Antonio González-Ochoa) - - - - - 1107

CHAPTER 50

DEEP TROPICAL MYCOSES (By Antonio González-Ochoa) - - - - - - - 1130

CHAPTER 51

SOUTH AMERICAN BLASTOMYCOSIS (By Floriano Paulo de Almeida) - - - 1178

CHAPTER 52

HISTOPLASMOSIS AND MELIOIDOSIS (By R. B. H. Gradwohl) - - - - - - 1191

CHAPTER 53

ARTHROPODS—DIRECT AGENTS IN TROPICAL DISEASES (By Luis Vargas) - 1197

CHAPTER 54

MYIASIS (By Luis Vargas) - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - 1199

CHAPTER 55

DISEASES CAUSED BY TICKS, MITES, CENTIPEDES, AND LICE (By Luis Vargas) - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - 1203

CHAPTER 56

POISONING BY SCORPIONS AND SPIDERS (SCORPIONISM AND ARANEISM) (By Afranio do Amaral) - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - 1224

CHAPTER 57

SNAKE VENENATION (OPHIDISM) (By Afranio do Amaral) - - - - - - 1238

CHAPTER 58

PAGE
POISONING BY FISH AND OTHER ANIMALS (BY AFRANIO DO AMARAL) - - - 1265

CHAPTER 59

DISEASES DUE TO NUTRITIONAL DISTURBANCES (BY ANTONIO CLERCH RIUS) 1273

CHAPTER 60

SPRUE (BY RAMÓN M. SUÁREZ) - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - 1299

CHAPTER 61

BERIBERI (BY EUGENE R. WHITMORE) - - - - - - - - - - - - - - 1333

CHAPTER 62

PELLAGRA (BY ROY EDWIN BUTLER) - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - 1341

CHAPTER 63

COSMOPOLITAN DISEASES AS SEEN IN THE TROPICS (BY ANTHONY DONOVAN) 1361

CHAPTER 64

THERAPEUTICS OF TROPICAL DISEASES (BY HECTOR J. ROSSELLO) - - - - 1371

CHAPTER 65

THE USE OF ANTIBIOTICS IN TROPICAL DISEASES (BY OSCAR FELSENFELD AND SACHIKO JANET ISHIHARA) - - - - - - - - - - - - - - 1408

CHAPTER 66

HYGIENE IN THE TROPICS (BY GEORGE MURDOCH SAUNDERS) - - - - - - - 1412

CHAPTER 67

ORGANIZATION OF PREVENTIVE MEDICINE AND RURAL HYGIENE SERVICES IN SPARSELY SETTLED TROPICAL COUNTRIES (BY GUSTAVO PITTALUGA) - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - 1451

CHAPTER 68

OUTLINE OF HEMATOLOGY AS RELATED TO TROPICAL DISEASES (BY R. B. H. GRADWOHL) - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - 1466

CHAPTER 69

HISTOLOGIC TECHNIC IN THE TROPICS (BY PHILIP HERMAN HARTZ) - - - - 1501

CHAPTER 70

PAGE

RAPID FROZEN SECTION METHODS IN TROPICAL DISEASES (BY ARAM A. KRAJIAN) - - - 1510

CHAPTER 71

COLLECTION, PRESERVATION, AND EXAMINATION OF STOOLS IN THE TROPICS (BY OSCAR FELSENFELD AND VIOLA MAE YOUNG) - - - 1524

CHAPTER 72

LABORATORY METHODS IN THE DIAGNOSIS OF HELMINTHIASES (BY FRANCISCO J. AGUILAR) - - - 1531

CHAPTER 73

REAGENTS, SOLUTIONS, STAINS, AND CULTURE MEDIA USED IN PARASITOLOGIC AND TROPICAL MEDICAL PROCEDURES (BY ALFONSO BONILLA-NAAR) - - - 1549

LIST OF COLOR PLATES

PLATE PAGE

I. Cycle of development of malarial parasites in man and mosquito - - - 84
II. Yellow fever in sections of human liver - - - 322
III. Histologic section of a yellow fever liver - - - 322
IV. Donovan bodies from spreads of lesion (granuloma inguinale) - - - 414
V. Blood cells—Giemsa stain - - - 1468
VI. Thick drops - - - 1474

CLINICAL TROPICAL MEDICINE

CHAPTER 1

INTRODUCTION TO TROPICAL MEDICINE

R. B. H. Gradwohl

Tropical medicine has naturally always been an important part of the practice of those who dwell in tropical regions; it has lately assumed an important place in the practice of many physicians who live far from the tropics, since many of these so-called exotic diseases may also occur in temperate zones or may be imported by reason of today's rapid communications. The reader will note elsewhere (Chapter 63) important information about diseases of the temperate zone as they manifest themselves in the tropics. Here and there he will find frequent reference to the diseases of the tropics as they manifest themselves in more temperate zones. Again, there are certain diseases which are tropical which are distinctly *not* tropical—malaria and amebic dysentery. This brings us to a consideration of the meaning of the term "tropical medicine."

Much debate has waged about the propriety of this term. Col. F. R. Dieuaide (1945), then Chief of the Tropical Disease Treatment Branch in the Office of the Surgeon General, United States Army, stated that there are very few true tropical diseases and that the classification of world-wide diseases such as plague and cholera is quite dangerous, since it may result in widespread ignorance of their nature and general lack of skill in their control. Again, referring to malaria, which is commonly called a tropical disease, it is a very important disease in the United States and is not necessarily tropical. Relapsing fevers also are tropical only in small part. Kala-azar, a so-called tropical disease, is very common in Peiping, China, a latitude of 42 degrees north, definitely not a tropical area. Beriberi, a so-called tropical disease, is found outside the tropics. Neither bacillary nor amebic dysentery is confined to the tropics. This author believes that tropical medicine so-called has only a feeble and inaccurate significance, meaning, at best, diseases not now common in Western Europe or North America. He insists upon the point that there are peculiarities of disease in relation to topography, climate, and the distribution of pathogenic and disease-transmitting organisms; such subjects are part of pathology. Interrelated in many ways are the effects of social conditions as they occur in various regions, of regional food habits and food supplies, and of hereditary racial traits. He offers the term "geopathology" to cover this question. There is considerable reason to consider this writer's suggestions very seriously. The Continental experts have used the terms "exotic diseases" and "diseases of warm countries" to cover this branch of medicine. In the meantime we shall continue to use the old term "tropical medicine" until full debate and more appropriate conclusions are drawn therefrom.

As far as the United States is concerned, the need for adequate facilities for the study of tropical diseases became painfully evident with the outbreak of World War II. A synopsis of prevailing conditions is to be found in a monograph issued by The American Foundation for Tropical Medicine and the Liberian Institute of the American Foundation for Tropical Medicine.* This society was organized and incorporated in the state of New York in 1940. It has, ever since its foundation, aided in the development of broad interest in tropical medicine. In its pamphlet it is stated that, following Pearl Harbor, a survey by Army and Navy medical services revealed only twenty-four civilian doctors in the United States available for service with sufficient background to be useful in training medical men in tropical medicine. While good work was done with this limited personnel, they properly stated that two additional steps would have to be taken before this country would cease to lag behind and attain a ranking position in tropical medicine: (1) establishment of a graduate school like the London School of Tropical Medicine and (2) the establishment of a research center in the tropics where scientists could do research work and students could be trained in the natural environment of true tropical diseases. Such a research institute has been established through a gift of Mr. Harvey S. Firestone, Jr., for the construction and equipment of a research institute in Liberia, West Africa.

It was stipulated that at least ten leading university medical schools in the United States should agree to utilize the Institute for research and graduate training and that the Institute facilities be made available for all who are qualified, without distinction of race, creed, or color.

The following universities have signified their interest in participating in the Institute's program and have each designated a representative to serve on the Scientific Advisory Committe:

Bowman Gray School of Medicine of Wake Forest College
Columbia University School of Medicine
Duke University School of Medicine
Harvard University School of Medicine
Howard University School of Medicine
Johns Hopkins School of Medicine
Long Island School of Medicine
Meharry School of Medicine
New York University School of Medicine
University of California School of Medicine
University of Chicago School of Medicine
University of Michigan School of Medicine
University of Pennsylvania School of Medicine
University of Southern California School of Medicine
Stanford University School of Medicine
Tulane University School of Medicine

Liberia is just two flying days from New York and offers ample facilities for the study of tropical disease. The Institute aims to take up three problems: (1) diseases of man, (2) diseases of domestic animals, and (3) production of staple food crops.

Thus the development of interest and progress in tropical diseases has been given a tremendous impetus by the foundation of the Institute. There remains one more step in the United States, and that is the organization of strong departments of tropical medicine in various university medical schools. Tulane, Harvard, Michigan, Johns Hopkins, California, and others are now making this effort. There is every reason to believe that the training of medical students in the future in this country will be ample and will well cover this hitherto neglected field.

---

*270 Madison Ave., New York, N. Y.

With reference to adequate schools for research in tropical medicine, attention is called to the School of Tropical Medicine created by joint resolution of the legislature of Puerto Rico of June 23, 1924, which transferred to the school all the properties of the former Institute of Tropical Medicine and Hygiene. A plan of cooperation between the University of Puerto Rico and Columbia University of New York for the operation of the school was worked out in conferences between representatives of the two universities in 1925 and was put in operation in 1926. According to this agreement, the authority to determine the educational policy of the school and to make nominations to its faculty was delegated to Columbia University, subject to the approval of the special board of trustees. In other respects, the school was operated as a semiautonomous unit of the University of Puerto Rico. The primary aim of the School of Tropical Medicine in Puerto Rico is research, but it also offers opportunity to study in a tropical environment the cause and prevention of that large and ill-defined group of disorders known as tropical diseases and, at the same time, to observe the influence of tropical conditions on disease in general. Puerto Rico offers special advantages as a site for such an institution. As part of the United States, the island has unusually close cultural and commercial relations with the mainland and Canada. The distance from New York is only 1,380 miles, less than four days by steamer and one day by airplane. The island is a logical meeting place for English-, Spanish-, and Portuguese-speaking investigators and students.

The School of Tropical Medicine of San Juan was the first of its kind to be established in the Americas. This school has well-equipped laboratories for bacteriology, pathology, clinical medicine, chemistry, medical mycology and dermatology, and medical zoology. The laboratories are modern in construction and contain all the conveniences necessary in carrying foward a well-rounded research program. In addition, there are teaching laboratories of fifty-student capacity for the study of bacteriology, parasitology, and clinical pathology. The official publication of the School of Tropical Medicine is the *Puerto Rico Journal of Public Health and Tropical Medicine*, printed as a quarterly in English and Spanish by Columbia University Press, of New York City, in cooperation with the Insular Department of Health.

Adjoining the school is the sixty-bed University Hospital, devoted mainly to the diagnosis and treatment of special diseases of the tropics and operated as the school's chief teaching and research clinic. The first floor is given over to a well-organized clinic for the outpatient department, essentially in providing the facilities necessary in the selection of cases: clinical pathology laboratory and x-ray and urological divisions, together with the administrative and record offices. There are courses in public health, but the courses offered are planned primarily for graduates in medicine who wish special training in tropical medicine and hygiene. The degree of Doctor of Medicine from an approved medical school or satisfactory evidence of adequate preparation for the courses which the applicant desires is required in each case. Women are admitted on the same terms as men.

The last director of this school was Prof. P. Morales Otero. Graduates in medicine will find in the School of Tropical Medicine at San Juan, Puerto Rico, the proper environment and facilities for carrying out research on all tropical diseases.*

---

*Since the above was written regarding the Institute of Tropical Medicine at San Juan. the following changes have been made. The Puerto Rico Legislature of 1949 dissolved the connections of the School of Tropical Medicine with Columbia University and established a School of Medicine for the training of medical practitioners, using the present facilities and personnel of the School of Tropical Medicine. The institution is now under direct control of the Chancellor and the Superior Council of Education of the University of Puerto Rico, with a dean, Dr. Donald S. Martin, formerly of Duke University, who took charge the first week of April, 1950. The University Hospital has been closed, the place to be transformed into a dormitory for students but the dispensary will go on. The various pre-existing departments will maintain their identity except that mycology, bacteriology, and parasitology have been merged into a Department of Microbiology with Dr. Martin, the dean, as head. The courses for medical technicians, public health nurses, and sanitary educators will be carried on, but not those for graduates in medicine. Research will go on as usual, but the main aim for the future is the teaching of Medicine.

The College of Medical Evangelists has recently announced that a School of Tropical and Preventive Medicine is to be developed at Loma Linda, Calif. It will operate in conjunction with the School of Medicine. Medical graduates and undergraduates will be given training in tropical medicine with emphasis on preventive aspects. Special short courses will be given for nonmedical missionaries preparatory to their departure for overseas posts. Dr. Harold N. Mozar has been named director of this new unit. He was director of the United States Army's World War II School of Tropical Medicine for overseas forces in New Guinea and Chief of the Communicable Diseases Section of the 47th General Hospital.

Getting back to World War II, our fighting forces soon found themselves scattered over a vast territory, much of which was tropical. Acquaintance with many diseases hitherto unknown to the American military medical officer was gradually acquired. A number of important scientific studies were made in the field on malaria, schistosomiasis, amebiasis, trypanosomiasis, and other tropical diseases. Special hospitals and organizations were soon formed to care for many of the victoms of these diseases.

With the termination of hostilities, the important question arose as to the probability of transmission of many diseases of the tropics from the sick veteran to the healthy civilian population. Fortunately, many of the usual vectors of these diseases are not ordinarily found in our country so that inoculation of new victims from residual cases seems remote. This does not obtain with water-borne and food-borne diseases. Nevertheless, the importance of recognition of the symptomatology of such diseases by civilian physicians is still very great. Medical education is still called for with respect to tropical diseases. Again, as it has truly been said, the period of incubation of many tropical diseases is often longer than the time required to fly completely around the world; therefore the possibility of direct importation of many diseases by flying Americans or foreigners is quite manifest. A man might land in New York City and come down with a severe and comatose attack of cerebral malaria, and it might be unrecognized until autopsy reveals the true diagnosis. Medical records show that this occurred twice in New York City in recent years, so the need for alertness in diagnosis of such diseases still obtains. In other words, every practicing physician must know tropical medicine.

As far as literature is concerned, there are many excellent periodicals devoted to the study of tropical diseases; notably, the *Transactions of the Royal Society of Tropical Medicine and Hygiene*, the *American Journal of Tropical Medicine, The Journal of Tropical Medicine and Hygiene* (London), *Quarterly Journal of Tropical Medicine and Hygiene (Documenta Neerlandica et Indonesica de Morbis Tropicis)* (Amsterdam). There have been many excellent textbooks written on this and allied subjects.

My early recollection is that of an old reference book by Martin Mayer entitled *Exotische Krankheiten.* Another which was quite useful to me while working in the Hamburg Institute of Tropical Diseases was *Krankheiten und Hygiene der warmen Länder* by Ruge, Mühlens, and zur Werth. The late Admiral Stitt wrote a book entitled *Diagnosis, Prevention, and Treatment of Tropical Diseases* which has passed through several editions and is a classic. The late C. M. Wenyon, of the London School of Tropical Medicine, wrote a book called *Protozoology* which gives important underlying information on this subject. My former teacher at the Hamburg Institute, Eduard Reichenow, wrote with Doerflein *Lehrbuch der Protozooenkunde.* The French text by Neveu-Lemaire entitled *Traite d'Helminthologie Medicale et Veterinaire* is another classic. Sir Philip Manson-Bahr's textbook entitled *Manson's Tropical Diseases* has passed through thirteen editions, which is sufficient proof of its great value. Z. Taylor Berkovitz' *Clinical Tropical Medicine* was a valuable undertaking, and so are Faust's excellent treatise on *Human Helminthology*, Craig's *Laboratory Diagnosis of Protozoan Diseases*, and Belding's *Textbook of Clinical Parasitology*. A remarkably useful book is that by J. E. Ash and S. Spitz, *Pathology of Tropical Diseases*. During the war, Mackie, Hunter, and Worth issued the excellent volume entitled *A Manual of Tropical Medicine*, written under the auspices of the Division of Medical Sciences of the National Research Council. More recently, Dubois and van den Berghe, the well-known Dutch investigators, have issued their book entitled, *Diseases of the Warm Climates*. Another interesting and worth-while volume is that by L. Everhard Napier entitled *The Principles and Practice of Tropical Medicine*.

We now come to the present volume, which is by international authors. This book was organized and thought out by the writer in conjunction with Luis Benitez Soto and Oscar Felsenfeld. It was thought that a book by international authorities, from men who had had actual experience with the subjects in their respective chapters, would prove a valuable addition to the literature. This book is intended to be a guidebook for those practicing medicine in the tropics as well as for those in temperate zones who are forced to face the issue of picking out from an assembly of temperate zone diseases those which originate in the tropics or which have been transmitted from the tropics to this and other temperate-zone countries.

It is a well-known fact that two diseases have been brought back by servicemen returning from the Pacific Islands, from the China-Burma-India theater, and from the Middle East. These two diseases are amebic dysentery and hookworm. T. T. Mackie has stated that of the veterans treated at his School of Medicine, 61 per cent had parasitic infection, of which 36 per cent were amebic dysentery and 10 per cent hookworm. Mackie states that he estimates there are about one million infected veterans and that it is very important to train more physicians and laboratory specialists in tropical medicine.

With respect to malaria, which is both a tropical and a temperate-zone disease, reference is made to the presidential address of E. Harold Hinman, President of the National Malaria Society (1949). The National Malaria Society is an outgrowth of the National Malaria Committee. Hinman gives the details of the history of this organization, which are very interesting because the activities of this Society are intimately bound up with the campaign against malaria in this country. To summarize, a resolution was adopted before the Second Pan-American Scientific Congress, Washington, D. C., Jan. 7, 1916, as follows:

> That all American countries inaugurate a well-considered plan of malaria eradication and control based upon the principle that the disease is preventable to a much greater degree than has thus far been achieved, and that the education of the public in the elementary facts of malaria is of the first order of importance to the country's concern.

The National Committee on Malaria was then formed, whose objectives were (a) to stimulate interest in malaria problems, (b) to serve as a medium through which societies and individuals may become identified with the study and prevention of the disease, and (c) to coordinate the efforts of these agencies with constituted federal, state, and local authorities. The first meeting of the Committee was held at Memphis, Tenn., Nov. 12 to 15, 1917, in conjunction with the meeting of the Southern Medical Association. Subsequent meetings were held in conjunction with this Association. Since malaria attains its highest level of endemicity in the United States in the southeastern section, this was indeed a fortunate organizational arrangement.

The National Malaria Committee met for twenty-five years and was succeeded by the National Malaria Society. Just a little over fifty years ago, in August, 1897, Ross, in India, discovered the mechanism of the transmission of malaria, which permitted a sound epidemiologic approach to the control of this devastating disease. The technics for antimosquito programs developed very promptly, including utilization of petroleum oil, drainage, filling, screening, etc. By the onset of World War I extensive malaria control projects had been initiated in the southern United States by the United States Public Health Service and the International Health Board, and the disease was recognized as preventable.

Hinman called attention to the fact that with the millions of men returning from active duty in malarious areas of the tropics, there was serious apprehension that malaria in the United States, which had been steadily declining, might flare up in a widespread manner throughout a great portion of the United States. Despite numerous relapses among veterans in areas with substantial anophelism, fortunately these fears were unfounded.

There has been a general decline of malaria in this country which was believed to have begun during the last quarter of the nineteenth century. In a letter to Dr. Paul F. Russell on Dec. 12, 1947, the president of the National Malaria Society stated:

> It is becoming evident that malaria as a public health problem within the continental United States may disappear largely within the next few years. This, of course, does not indicate that the United States will lose any of its concern in the control of malaria, for it will have to maintain a program of surveillance and emergency control within its continental borders, and it is not likely that within such a brief period the interest in the control of malaria will diminish greatly in many of the tropical countries of the world in which the United States has vital interests. In view of the homogeneity of interests of the membership of the National Malaria Society, which is quite unusual in view of the heterogeneity of their professional background, it is believed that it would be most undesirable to countenance the possibility that our membership might disintegrate and that no adequate provision be made for retaining the professional contacts which have been so useful in the past. . . .

In reference to the future, Hinman, in the presidential address, stated that Russell had listed six very specific reasons for insisting upon the continuing importance of malaria in the United States: National defense programs must contemplate the possibility of coping with malarious areas; the acute world food shortage is intensified by areas undeveloped largely because of malaria; American business is expanding into malarious countries and is concerned with the efficiency of malaria control; all our imports from malarious countries carry a hidden "malaria tax"; our exports to malarious countries are restricted because malaria depresses the economic levels; and, finally, there is a need to prevent the resurgence of malaria in our own country.

It is safe to conclude that while malaria is definitely on the downgrade in this country, the above remarks of Hinman indicate that we must continue to be alert in destruction of anophelism and in carrying out preventive measures in all parts of the world with which we are economically and culturally concerned.

It is difficult to realize the extent of parasitic disease in this world, both in and out of tropical areas. The presidential address of Dr. Norman R. Stoll, of the Rockefeller Institute for Medical Research, Princeton, N. J., before the American Society of Parasitologists, Dec. 27, 1946, entitled "This Wormy World," gives data that Stoll compiled on the prevalence of parasitic disease that will astonish the uninformed.

The following figures are given by Stoll. It is generally taken as a statistical fact that there are about 2,166 million people on the entire globe. Taking Trichinella as a well-known parasite, there are about 500 million people in Europe, including Russia, with an average diaphragm infection rate of as low as 1 per cent (and this is much higher than prewar indices); that would mean that there are about 5 million cases in that area. There are about one million cases in Central and South America. Mazzotti, of the Institute of Tropical Diseases and Public Health of Mexico, estimates that there are 12 per cent Trichinella infections in Mexico City. In Canada, it is estimated that there are about 100,000 cases, and in the United States one in six Americans is affected, or about 21 million cases. Hall and Collins emphasized that "the United States has the greatest problem of trichinosis of any country in the world." Quoting again from Stoll, there are 39 million *Taenia saginata* (the beef tapeworm) infections, most ascribed to Africa and the U.S.S.R., but less than 3 million *Taenia solium* (pork tapeworm) infections, with nearly a half in Russia. There are less than 100,000 cases of hydatid infection, with South America leading. There are 20 million cases of *Hymenolepis nana* infection, two-thirds of them in Asia. There is a world total of 10 million cases of *Diphyllobothrium latum* infection, with 3 million in the Baltic littoral, northern Russia, and U.S.S.R. in Asia.

Of fish-transmitted trematodes, there are 19 million cases of *Clonorchis sinensis* (liver fluke) infection, confined to Asia, and there are indications of one million cases of the related *Opisthorchis felineus* infection, confined to fisherfolk in East Prussia, the Dnieper River basin, and northern Sverdlovsk in Asiatic U.S.S.R. There are about a few hundred thousand cases of fishborne intestinal flukes, the Metagonimus and Heterophyes, and an equal number of Echinostoma and Gastrodiscoides.

The large intestinal fluke, *Fasciolopsis buski,* confined to Asia, is responsible for 10 million cases, about half of which are in the Chekiang endemic center. There are no more than 100,000 cases of *Fasciola hepatica* infection. There are about several hundred thousand cases of *Dicrocoelium dendriticum* infection in man, found especially in the Stalingrad and Transcaucasus regions. Regarding

Paragonimus westermani cases, there are about 3 million infections of this lung fluke in Asia and a few thousand in West Africa. Of these trematode infections, altogether there are about 34 million cases. The schistosomes are responsible for more than three times as many additional trematode infections, with *Schistosoma japonicum* infections the most numerous. There are about 46 million cases of this infection. It is endemic in the Yangtze valley. Twenty per cent of the inhabitants of Chinese provinces in this valley are infected, 10 per cent in other Chinese provinces and Japanese prefectures, and 30 per cent in the Philippine Islands of Leyte, Samar, Mindoro, and Mindanao—a grand total of 46 million people. In some places in East Africa, there is a 50 per cent incidence; Scott estimates 6 million are infected in Egypt; there are about 200,000 cases in the Near East, a few thousand in Europe, a grand total of 39 million bilharzia-infected people.

Schistosoma mansoni is the most dispersed of the three schistosomes of man. It is found in the equatorial region of Africa, a band of infection from northern Nigeria westward, with Scott's 3 million cases in Egypt, making a total of 23 million in Africa. There is a third of a million in the West Indies, 30,000 cases in Venezuela according to Scott, and nearly 6 million in northeastern Brazil. This gives 29 million cases altogether, or 114 million cases with all three schistosomes.

Regarding the guinea worm and the filarids, there are about 27 million cases of *Dracunculus medinensis* in India. In Afghanistan, Iran, Arabia, and southwestern U.S.S.R., in Asia, there are 5 million more cases of the "fiery serpent." The African endemic areas furnish 15 million cases. The world has 48 million guinea worm cases.

Onchocerca is localized on the Pacific slopes of three states in Guatemala and two states of Mexico. It is found in Africa in the zone from Sierra Leone eastward. The world total does not exceed 20 million cases of infection.

There are about 7 million cases of *Mansonella ozzardi* infection in Central and South America. There are 27 million cases of *Acanthocheilonema perstans* infection in Africa, South America, and Dutch New Guinea. There are 13 million cases of *Loa loa* infection in Africa. These four filarid forms, conveyed by Simulium, Culicoides, and Chrysops, parasitize 67 million people.

As for the Wuchereria, Stoll does not distinguish in his analyses between *Wuchereria bancrofti* and *Wuchereria malayi.* They and their mosquito vectors are found throughout the tropical world. He believes that all the endemic areas are filariated, thus giving an infection rate of 758 million people, about one-third of the population of the globe.

Coming nearer home, we may discuss a very common worm found in great numbers in this country; namely, the Enterobius. In North America and Europe, including U.S.S.R., the total number of infections reaches 18 and 87 million.

Some nematodes contribute over half of the helminthiases of man. Discussing *Ancylostoma duodenale*, Stoll showed that by education and actual attack, the number of hookworm-infected Americans had decreased from 4½ million to $1\frac{3}{4}$ million between 1910 and 1935. Our present figures on hookworm infections are as follows: from one to a few million in Oceania, Europe, North America, and the U.S.S.R.; up to 359 million in Asia, including Japan, the Philippines, and Dutch East Indies. The total number of cases for the world is 457 million.

Ascaris infections in North America total 3 million; in Central and South America, 14 times as many; in Africa, nearly 60 million; in the world, 644 million—these, with hookworm, representing about half of man's helminthiases. The world total Trichuris infections comes to 355 million. Strongyloides infections in Asia and Central and South America make a world total of 35 million cases.

After surveying and emphasizing these figures, Stoll estimates that it is possible to reduce the 3,000 million human cases of helminthiases by the year 2000, when the world population will reach the figure of 3,300 million inhabitants, by the following ways:

1. By applying and strengthening the teaching of the nuclear principles that apply in the field of parasitology.
2. By encouraging by precept and example a shortening of the usual lag period in getting acceptable improvements in ideas through to where they will do the most good, and by being less tolerant when the lag seems unnecessarily long.
3. By sharpening the tools for attacking the helminthiases of man. Against the intestinal worms, education, sanitation, and treatment must be considered. New chemotherapeutic preparations are desirable.

These figures and conclusions of Stoll still further prove the necessity for medical men of all climes to acquaint themselves with the problems of tropical medicine.

Insofar as tropical medicine and diseases of the temperature zone are concerned, I cannot refrain from quoting (paraphrasing) at great length from Sir Philip Manson-Bahr's presidential address before the Royal Society of Tropical Medicine and Hygiene in 1947. In this address, entitled "The Practice of Tropical Medicine in London," Sir Philip Manson-Bahr, in most detailed manner, narrated the types of cases about which he had been consulted in London, the difficulties in diagnosis, and the manner in which diseases of the temperate and tropical zones were intermingled and mistaken one for the other. He called attention to the fact that pyonephrosis may resemble malaria. He cited a case of a man who came by air from India to London because of malaria associated with renal symptoms. In this case the true diagnosis was made, the patient responded to blood transfusions and mandelic acid, returned to India, and remained well. The splenomegaly mistakenly attributed to malaria was probably due to *Escherichia coli* septicemia. In a number of cases suspected of malaria, some other disease condition was found. He reported a case of a woman who was referred to him because of ptosis of the spleen. She had spent most of her life in India and had suffered severely from malaria. She was treated in England with Atabrine and was highly pigmented. The large, hard, moveable mass with a sharp edge jutting out at the level of the umbilicus and extending into the left iliac fossa proved to be an inoperable gastric carcinoma. He called attention to the fact that malarial cachexia may be mistaken for Addison's disease. Manson-Bahr further spoke of the effects of quinine producing an acute hemolysis which may be a precipitating factor in attacks of blackwater fever. He warned practitioners that kala-azar, while infrequent in European patients, may actually be seen far away from its normal habitat. In these cases, the appearance of the patient is different from that of the malaria patient. The eye has a different look—not quite the shining, penetrating gaze of the patient with malarial cachexia. The splenic dullness extends above the costal margin, and there may be some edema of the legs. He reports a case of tuberculosis which resembled kala-azar.

Sir Philip Manson-Bahr formulated some generalizations about amebiasis as it is seen in temperate zones such as London, England. First, there exists a good deal of wishful thinking which tends to magnify the numbers of potential amebic cases. Second, there exists a wishful willingness to ascribe pathogenic properties to any species of ameba found in the feces. Third, acute abdominal pain and extreme meteorism are not features of intestinal amebiasis. Fourth, acute onset, febrile attacks, and vomiting are not characteristic of amebic dysentery, which is usually apyrexial. Fifth, severe anemia of the pernicious type is not an accompaniment of amebic dysentery. Sixth, as compared with bacillary dysentery, tenesmus is infrequent, while loss of weight is not a marked feature. Lastly, he states that the presence of *Endamoeba histolytica* cysts in the feces does not always completely account for the whole clinical picture as is amply demonstrated in this address.

He made a number of other interesting observations pertinent to the question of the practice of medicine in the temperate zone and he took up the question of tropical-nontropical disease differentiation.

Relative to tropical sprue, he reported a number of cases referred to him as gastric carcinoma, duodenal ulcer, cholecystitis, Addison's disease, and pernicious anemia, all of which were affected with tropical sprue.

Sprue may be mistaken for Addison's disease, for cholecystitis, and for malignant diseases. Tropical ulcer is infrequent in Europeans and, when seen, must not be mistaken for anything else. He calls attention to the occurrence every now and then of cases of leprosy, which may be extremely chronic in its course and may have a latent period of over thirty years before the lesions become obvious. He warns of the necessity of diagnosis of helminthic infections which are usually symptomless and require concentration methods of the feces for demonstration of the eggs. A most interesting case of *Clonorchis sinensis* infection was recorded in a Chinese politician with a long history of cholecystitis with fever, pain, and jaundice. Cholecystograms revealed pigmented stones. In addition he was a confirmed diabetic and operation was refused point-blank. As Sir Philip Manson-Bahr put it, "Eventually he became the Japanese puppet at Nanking, so that in retaining his gall bladder he lost his head!" Infections with *Loa loa* with Calabar swellings have been seen by Manson-Bahr in London in a case originating in the tropics.

His address, from which I have quoted, is a chronicle of the ups and downs of consulting practice in tropical medicine in London. One must remember that the same thing might occur in New York, Chicago, St. Louis, or San Francisco. Thus one must not confuse tropical medicine with temperate zone medicine, and vice versa. An even keel, an understanding of clinical medicine in its entirety, is always necessary.

TABLE I. ROUTINE IMMUNIZATIONS

(From Technical Bulletin 114 by Permission of the Department of the Army)

AGENT	NUMBER OF DOSES	INITIAL SERIES		STIMULATING DOSE	
		INDIVIDUAL DOSE	INTERVAL BETWEEN DOSES	WHEN INDICATED	AMOUNT
Smallpox vaccine	1	Contents of one capillary tube		Every 3 years; within 1 year prior to departure for overseas areas; and in presence of the disease*	Contents of one capillary tube
Typhoid-paratyphoid vaccine	3	First dose, 0.5 c.c.; second dose, 1.0 c.c.; third dose, 1.0 c.c.	7 to 28 days	Annually, and in the presence of the disease	One dose, 0.5 c.c.
Tetanus toxoid (plain)	3	Each dose, 1.0 c.c.	Minimum of 21 days	One year after initial series, and upon occurrence of wounds of burns, as directed by the medical officer	1.0 c.c. a "booster dose"

*Editor's note: It is advisable in traveling in areas *where cases of smallpox are actually occurring and the risk is therefore great* to be revaccinated almost irrespective of the time of the last vaccination. This is particularly true if the course of the previous vaccination has not been carefully observed by the vaccinating physician for several days after vaccination. If within a previous six-month period the individual has had a positive "take" or a well-defined "accelerated" reaction, the traveler is safe. If the physician states that the previous reaction was "immune," he will probably advise a repetition of the vaccination to ensure against the possibility that an impotent vaccine had been used previously.

In concluding this chapter as an introduction to this subject as handled by our distinguished staff of authors, I should like to call attention to a few generalities, so well set forth in a pamphlet entitled *Health Hints for the Tropics* by Strode et al. In it are discussed climate, water, food, insects and insect vectors of disease, immunization, and miscellaneous hints. The pamphlet contains much of value. The authors warn tourists to take a middle ground when visiting the tropics, one between the glamorous attitude and that of looking upon visiting Africa as visiting the "white man's grave." It is recommended that simple rules of health be followed, care exercised in the choice of food and drink, and physical defects removed before going to the tropics. One must readjust himself to heat, light, and humidity and must remember, above all, that moderation in all things is the keystone of successful living in the tropics. He should be especially careful about the water he drinks, about the water he bathes in, and the water used for laundering. Wading, swimming, or bathing in places where schistosomes are present, such as fresh water streams, lakes, marshes, rice paddies, must be avoided. Food contamination must be looked for and avoided. Canned food offers a safety material for nutrition. Food handlers must be inspected. The vectors of disease, notably, mosquitoes which transmit malaria and those which carry dengue fever, yellow fever, and filariasis, must be considered very seriously. One must remember that sandflies, fleas, ticks, mites, lice, tsetse flies, and the reduviid or "kissing bug" may carry tropical diseases.

TABLE II. IMMUNIZATIONS REQUIRED FOR TRAVEL TO CERTAIN OVERSEAS AREAS (IN ADDITION TO ROUTINE IMMUNIZATIONS)

(From Technical Bulletin 114 by Permission of the Department of the Army)

AGENT	NUMBER OF DOSES	INITIAL SERIES		STIMULATING DOSE	
		INDIVIDUAL DOSES	INTERVAL BETWEEN DOSES	WHEN INDICATED	AMOUNT
Typhus vaccine	2	1.0 c.c. each	1 week	At 4- to 6-month intervals in presence of danger of epidemic (louse-borne) typhus	1.0 c.c.
Cholera vaccine	2	First dose, 0.5 c.c.; second dose, 1.0 c.c.	1 week	At 4- to 6-month intervals in presence of danger of cholera	1.0 c.c.
Yellow fever vaccine	1	0.5 c.c. of the proper dilution		Every 4 years, if in yellow fever endemic area	0.5 c.c. of the proper dilution
Diphtheria toxoid (plain)	4	0.1, 0.5, 1.0, 1.0 c.c.	2 days between	If Schick reaction becomes positive; usually not required	1.0 c.c. in divided doses if necessary
Plague vaccine*	2	First dose, 0.5 c.c.; second dose, 1.0 c.c.	1 week	At 4- to 6-month intervals in presence of danger of plague	1.0 c.c.

*Indicated in the presence of known cases.

TABLE III. DOSAGE OF IMMUNIZING AGENTS, AND AGE OF ADMINISTRATION, FOR CHILDREN TRAVELING OUTSIDE THE UNITED STATES, WHEN INDICATED FOR AREA OF DESTINATION

(From Technical Bulletin 114 by Permission of the Department of the Army)

IMMUNIZING AGENT	DOSAGE	AGE LIMIT
Smallpox vaccine	As for adults	All children, regardless of age
Typhoid-paratyphoid vaccine	Usual number and interval between inoculations; volume of each dose reduced according to weight (e.g., one-half adult dose for a child weighing 50 pounds)	Children over 1 year of age
Typhus vaccine	Usual number and interval; dosage reduced according to weight	Children over 1 year of age
Cholera vaccine	Usual number and interval; dosage reduced according to weight	Children over 3 months of age
Yellow fever vaccine	Usual full dose	Children over 3 months of age
Diphtheria toxoid	Usual full dose (either alum precipitated or fluid toxoid may be used; alone or in combination with other agents such as tetanus toxoid or pertussis vaccine)	All children between 3 months and 15 years of age

Spiders must not be overlooked or disdained.

In this pamphlet are given three tables relative to immunization which are reproduced here for the information of those about to proceed to the tropics.

One must especially look out for skin diseases in the tropics. The skin must be especially cared for: daily baths, with thorough drying of the skin in the arm pits, crotch, beneath the breasts, and between the toes.

In the tropics one must be food conscious, heat conscious, and insect conscious.

References

Dieuaide, Col. F. R.: 1945. Science, Dec. 28.
Hinman, E. Harold: 1949. J. Nat. Malaria Soc. 8: 1-13.
Stoll, Normal R.: 1947. J. Parasitol. 1: 1-18, Feb.
Committee on International Health and Tropical Medicine of the American Society of Tropical Medicine: Health Hints for the Tropics, American Society of Tropical Medicine.

CHAPTER 2

A GENERAL CONSIDERATION OF THE PROTOZOA

Enrique Beltrán

HISTORY

Because of the small size of these organisms, protozoa were not seen by man until he learned to use magnifying lenses. Anthony van Leeuwenhoek is generally credited with the discovery of protozoa and is justly regarded as the "father of protozoology."

After Leeuwenhoek's work, the study of protozoology advanced rapidly, especially with regard to free-living organisms. Parasitic protozoa, however, did not at first excite great interest, although various isolated observations of these forms were made. It may be said that medical and veterinary protozoology did not emerge as a branch of science until the end of the nineteenth century. Among many important contributions to this field may be mentioned the discovery of *Endamoeba gingivalis* by Gros in 1849, the first reported ameba of man; of *Endamoeba coli,* by Lewis in 1870; of *Endamoeba histolytica,* by Lösch in 1875, in Russia. Lewis, in 1878, observed the first trypanosome in a mammal, in the blood of a rat. It must not be forgotten that the first pathogenic microorganism studied by Pasteur was a protozoan *(Nosema bombycis),* the cause of pébrine in silkworms.

These observations did not awaken a true interest in the subject until the discovery by Laveran in 1880, in Algeria, of the causative agent of malaria. This discovery, as well as the confirmation of knowledge with respect to the pathogenic role of intestinal protozoa, definitely laid the basis for medical protozoology; this came about at the beginning of the present century, the work of Schaudinn playing a brilliant part.

GENERAL CHARACTERISTICS OF PROTOZOA

Protozoa are usually microscopic organisms. They are single cell organisms (Fig. 1). This permits their differentiation from metazoa, or higher forms, which are composed of more than one cell.

Some protozoa are so small that they scarcely attain a size of one micron, as, for example, Leishmania or Babesia; others, as Nyctotherus or Opalina, may be several hundred microns. Some free-living protozoa, such as *Spirostomum ambiguum,* may be as large as 2,000 microns and are visible to the naked eye.

The shapes of the protozoa vary greatly: spherical (Halteria), oval (Holophrya), changing forms (Amoeba), bell-shaped (Vorticella), etc.

Some lack firmness of body to such extent that they continually undergo changes in shape; others show more resistance, either because their cytoplasm is firmer or because they are enveloped in a rigid membrane. Occasionally, especially among the free-swimming forms, they develop true shells or carapaces, composed of various substances (chitin, calcium, and silicon salts, etc.).

All protozoa have a more or less thin membrane which envelops the body. In some (Infusoria) it is thick enough to be easily seen. In others (Mastigophora and certain Sporozoa) it is thinner. In some (Sarcodina) it is so thin that it is very difficult to observe. For this reason, it was formerly thought that there were some protozoa not provided with a membrane; these were termed "naked." With the more modern methods of microdissection, the existence of a membrane, however thin it might be, has been definitely proved in animals which once were thought to lack such a membrane. A membrane, no matter how thin, plays a most important triple role: retention, protection, and osmosis.

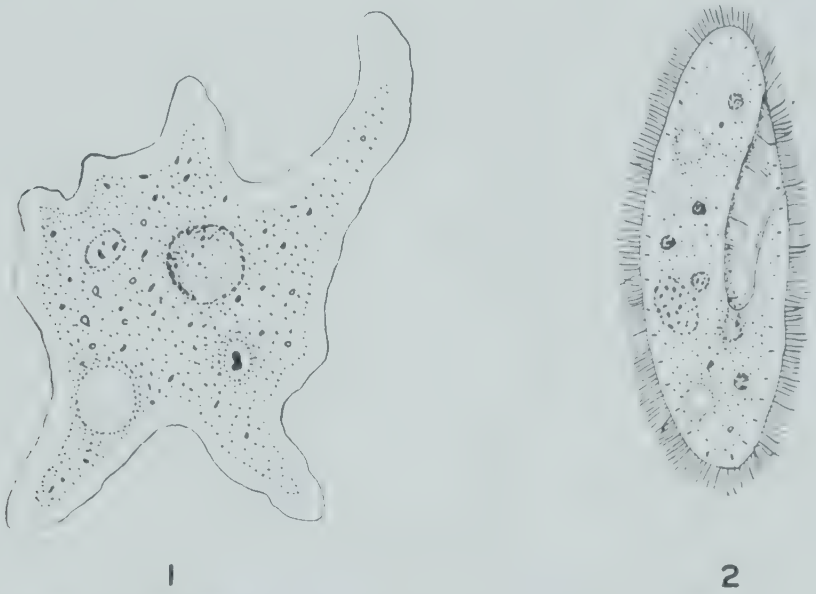


Fig. 1.—Diagrammatic representation of an ameba, *1*, and a paramecium, *2*, showing the unicellular character of protozoa. (Original drawing of T. G. de Beltrán.)

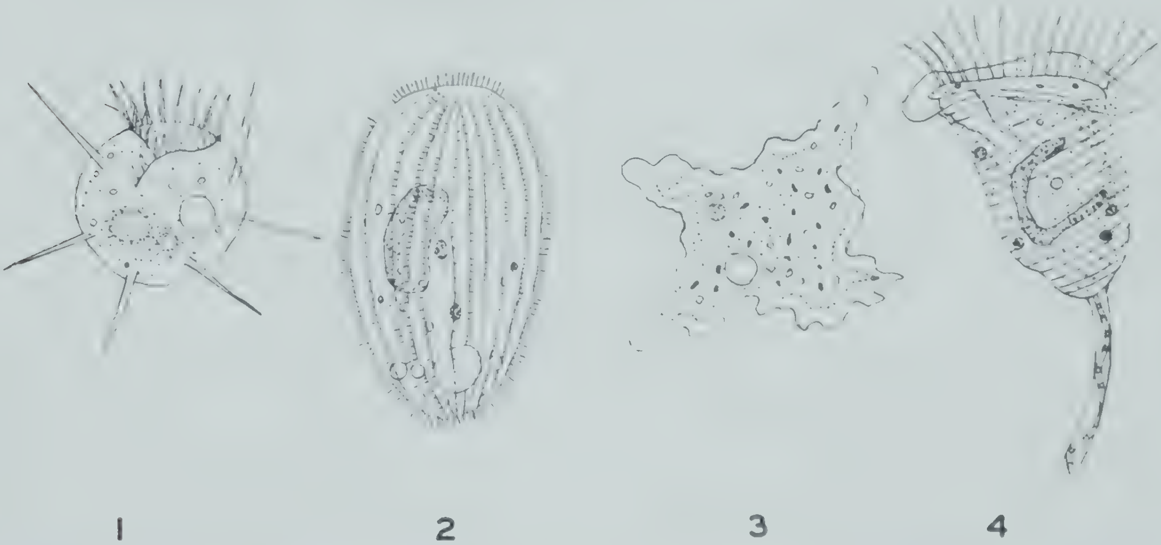


Fig. 2.—Diagrammatic representation of various forms of protozoa: *1*, Halteria; *2*, Holophrya; *3*, Ameba; *4* Vorticella. (Original drawing of T. G. de Beltrán.)

As in every cell, the **cytoplasm** is composed of a gelatinous and semifluid mass, which can usually be differentiated into two parts: an outer layer, slightly granular and relatively firm, called the *ectoplasm;* and the central mass, more fluid and granular which is the *endoplasm.* In addition to vacuoles, the cytoplasm in a great majority of protozoa also contains nutritional reserves, metabolic products, mitochondria, Golgi apparatus, and other structures that are seen in the cytoplasm of the cells of metazoa.

The **nucleus** is situated in the endoplasm. Fundamentally it may be either (1) *vesicular,* when it presents an enveloping membrane filled with nuclear fluid in which chromatin granules are observed, and generally a corpuscle, more or less central, called *karyosome (endosome);* or (2) *compact,* with the chromatin granules so compressed, one against the other, that only a uniform mass is seen within the membrane. In certain protozoa, one does not see nuclei of one of the types mentioned, but only a series of chromatin granules, perhaps combined with other substances, scattered throughout the cytoplasm; in such cases we speak of a *diffuse* nucleus. In Infusoria we observe a peculiar double or dimorphous type of nuclear apparatus, made up of two distinct elements, called *macronucleus* and *micronucleus,* respectively.

Some protozoa pass the greater part of their lives in a sedentary position because they are devoid of means of motility. The majority, however, are endowed with active locomotion that may be carried on by means of *pseudopodia,* which are variable and transitory expansions of the body; *flagella,* which are vibratory appendages, whip-like, long, but not numerous; and *cilia,* which are also vibratory appendages, smaller and more numerous than flagella.

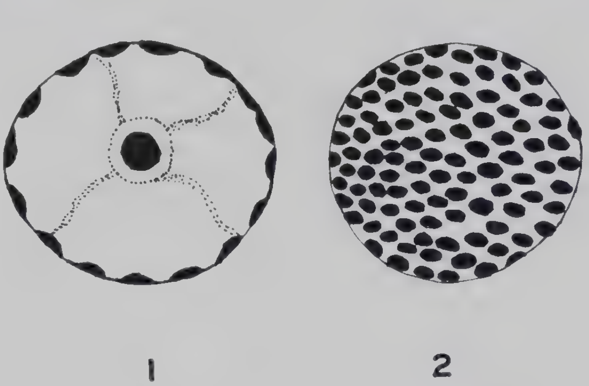


Fig. 3.—Types of nuclei of protozoa (schematic): *1,* vesicular; *2,* compact. (Original drawings of T. G. de Beltrán.)

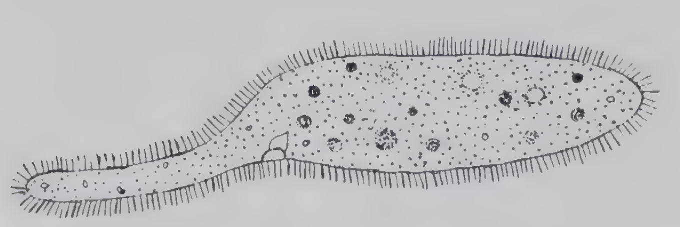


Fig. 4.—Diagrammatic representation of *Dileptus anser,* showing the diffuse type of nucleus. (Original drawing of T. G. de Beltrán.)

The large majority of free-living protozoa and a number of the parasitic protozoa derive their nourishment by ingesting animal or vegetable particles; this form of nutrition is called **holozoic.** Other protozoa derive their food from organic substances which have been dissolved and partially processed; these substances are absorbed through the membrane. Last, there is a group of chlorophyll-bearing flagellates which are able to synthesize organic material from inorganic, after the manner of plants; this method of nutrition is the **holophytic** type. This last curious group is difficult to interpret, so that botanists and zoologists are in dispute about them, some considering them to be plants, others classifying them as animals.

Reproduction may be by division of the individual to form two entities of similar size, **binary fission,** or by division of the individual into several entities of similar size, **multiple fission**; or the animal may separate a small part of its body to form a new individual, **budding**.

In the process of multiplication, the nucleus begins to divide into two or more portions, and next the cytoplasm divides. Division of the nucleus in protozoa was formerly described as amitotic. It has been observed, however, that protozoa present forms of mitosis that are more or less similar to those observed in the cells of metazoa. Moreover, in many protozoa, we observe sexual phenomena that are sometimes very complex.

The protozoan life cycle frequently presents vegetative forms, which carry on all the functions necessary to life, and cystic forms, which permit the organism to resist adverse environmental conditions under protection of the cyst wall. Occasionally the cyst may also be a form of reproduction, the organisms multiplying within the cyst.

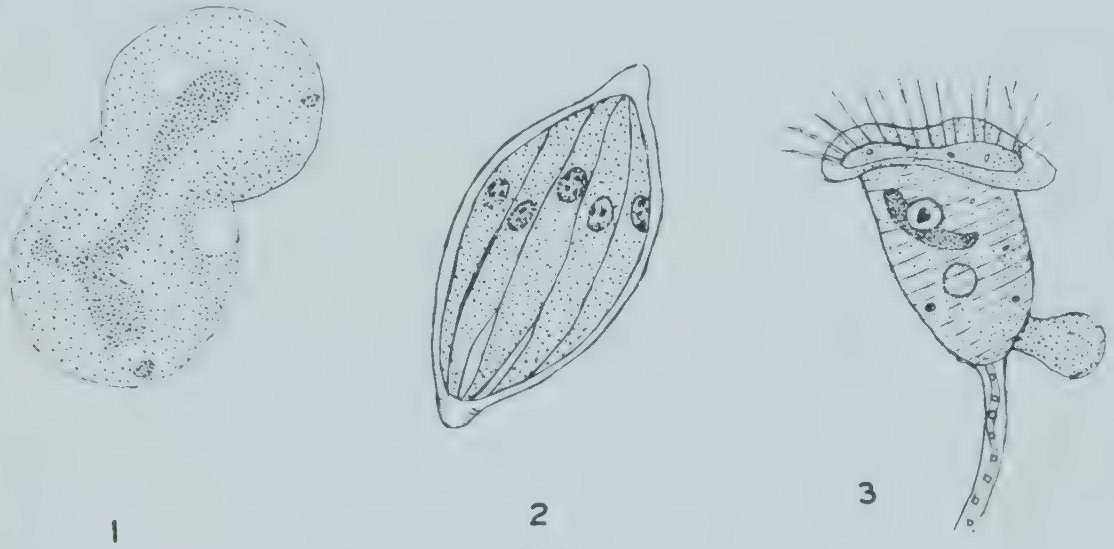


Fig. 5.—Diagrammatic representation of the different types of cellular reproduction of protozoa: *1*, binary fission (Nyctotherus); *2*, multiple fission (Monocystis); *3*, budding (Vorticella). (Original drawing of T. G. de Beltrán.)

Some parasitic protozoa pass their entire life within the host, from which they may be directly transmitted to another (*Endamoeba gingivalis* or *Trypanosoma equiperdum*); some live within the host and leave in the form of cysts, in which form they infect new persons or animals (*Endamoeba histolytica* or *Giardia lamblia*); last, there are some which must pass successive stages of their existence in different hosts (*Plasmodium vivax* or *Trypanosoma gambiense*).

CLASSIFICATION

Protozoa are classified as follows:

Class Mastigophora: Provided with flagella as organs of locomotion; vesicular nucleus; most often reproduction by longitudinal binary fission. Free-living and parasitic.

Class Sarcodina: Provided with pseudopodia as organs of locomotion; vesicular nucleus; division by binary fission, multiple fission, or budding; sometimes with elaborate shells or carapaces. Free-living and parasitic.

Class Infusoria: Provided with cilia as organs of locomotion, at least during certain phases of their existence; dimorphic nuclear apparatus, the nuclei of which may be vesicular or compact; exhibiting in the life cycle a special sexual phenomenon termed *conjugation*. Free-living or parasitic.

Class Sporozoa: Devoid of special organs of locomotion and consequently having stationary habits, with rare exceptions; reproduction by multiple fission; life cycle complicated, sometimes in different successive hosts. Exclusively parasitic.

ECOLOGY

Protozoa, with rare exceptions, may present two forms: *trophozoites,* which move and obtain their nourishment actively, and *cystic forms,* which are surrounded by a protective envelope and can thus withstand adverse conditions.

Trophozoites require a high degree of humidity in order to subsist. Most of them require a liquid medium, or at least sufficient moisture. Drying, even though not extreme, causes death of any protozoan in its vegetative form.

Cysts, within which the organism maintains a latent existence (with the exception of the phenomena of multiplication which occasionally may be observed in this phase), have a markedly greater resistance to external destructive elements, and particularly to drying, because of their enveloping cover. Cysts of protozoan parasites of man are sensitive to drying, although they are more resistant than the trophozoites.

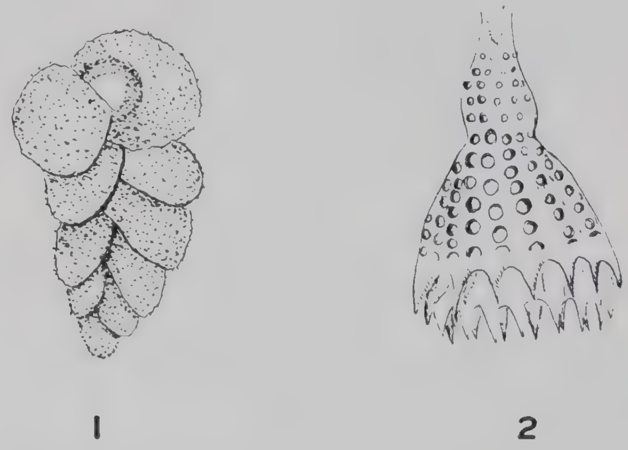


Fig. 6.—Types of shells formed by protozoa: *1,* calcareous shell of a foraminifer; *2,* siliceous shell of a radiolar. (Original drawing of T. G. de Beltrán.)

Many forms of protozoa easily accommodate themselves to changes in the medium in which they live. However, in each particular medium there is observed a predominance of certain species and a habitual association with other species, so that one may speak of *ecologic centers.* Calkins (1933) has enumerated the six chief forms according to adaptations to specific media: aquatic, semiterrestrial, terrestrial, sapropelic, coprozoic, and parasitic forms.

From the medical standpoint the last two forms are most important. The cysts of **coprozoic forms** can pass without modification through the digestive tract of man and animals, passing from the body of the host in the excreta in which, environmental conditions being favorable, further development into the trophozoite from may take place. These forms may be confused with parasitic forms, whereas they are merely incidental elements in transit through the digestive tract.

Parasitic forms are those which habitually live upon or within other organisms and which can present many stages in their adaptation to parasitic existence. Less thoroughly adapted forms are those of ectoparasites, as for example, *Hydramoeba hydroxena*, which lives on the ectodermal cells of the hydra. *Ichthyophthirius multifiliis*, an infusorian parasite of fish, is sometimes a true ectoparasite on the skin of the fish, while at other times it is beneath the skin, where it forms abscesses; it could be considered as an intermediate between ectoparasites and endoparasites.

Endoparasites also may exist in various stages. Sometimes the parasite lives simply in the cavities of the host, when it is termed *coelozoic,* such as *Endamoeba coli* in man. Others, as *Endamoeba histolytica*, penetrate into the tissues and are called *histozoic.* Finally, some not only enter the tissue, but localize within the cells themselves, as *Leishmania braziliensis*, in which case the parasitic form is termed *cytozoic.*

BIOLOGIC AND ECONOMIC IMPORTANCE

Protozoa breeding in fresh or salt water frequently constitute the principal food for larger animals. Thus, directly, or in their role as food for other larger forms, they may be of definite economic importance.

As protozoa in the ocean provided with shells die, their shells drop to the bottom as sedimentary formations, and through geological changes produce chalk, infusorial earth, silica sand, etc. Various industrial uses, filters, polishing powders, etc., give them economic value.

In humid soil there are masses of protozoa, principally sarcodines and mastigophores, the biological significance of which is not definitely known, but which in their association with bacteria living in the same medium certainly play an important part in the agricultural characteristics of the soil.

But if the foregoing aspects of these forms are important, their significance in relation to man is still more important, if we consider them in their association with other living organisms.

In the ensuing chapters will be found detailed information concerning the principal protozoa that are parasitic to man, as well as the diseases which they cause and the most adequate means of prevention and cure.

References

Calkins, G. N.: 1933. The Biology of the Protozoa, ed. 2, Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, xi-605.

Gros, G.: 1849. Fragments de Helmintologie et de Physiologie Microscopique, Bull. Soc. Imp. Nat. Moscov **22**: 549-573.

Laveran, A.: 1880. Note sur un Nouveau Parasite Trouvé Dans le Sang des Malades Atteins de Fievre Palustre, Bull. Acad. Med. **9**: 1235.

Lewis, R. T.: 1870. A Report on the Microscopic Objects Found in Cholera Evacuations, etc., Appendix to Annual Rept. of Sanitary Commissioner to Government of India, Calcutta.

Lewis, R. T.: 1879. Flagellated Organisms in Blood of Healthy Rats, Quart. J. Micr. Sc., Lond. **19**: 109-112.

Lösch, F.: 1875. Massenhafte Entwickelung von Amoben in Dickdarm, Arch. f. path. Anat. **65**: 196-218.

CHAPTER 3

INTESTINAL PROTOZOA OF MAN

ENRIQUE BELTRÁN

In the digestive tract of man there can be found various protozoa. Some cause disturbances, while others appear to be purely commensal, with no pathogenic significance.

Protozoan parasitism of the human intestine presents many very interesting problems. For more detailed information, the reader is referred to Dobell and O'Connor (1921), Hegner (1927), Lynch (1930), Gradwohl and Kourí (1948), and Beltrán (1948), or for particular problems, to Dobell (1919) and Craig (1911, 1934, 1944), etc.

We shall discuss the intestinal protozoa of man by treating separately the members of each of the four protozoan classes.

SARCODINA

Sarcodina are characterized by locomotion through transitory and variable extensions of the body called **pseudopodia.**

The group is very extensive and includes many free-living forms.

One of the five orders into which the class is divided is the order Amoebida, characterized by lack of shells and by formation of pseudopodia which are wide and variable, called *lobopodia. Amoeba proteus* is one of the better known representatives of this order.

Sarcodina which inhabit the human intestine are generally designated as *intestinal amebae* and are closely related to *Amoeba proteus*. None belong to the genus Amoeba but to other genera.

Parasitic amebae of man are small forms which do not exceed some 50 microns for the largest: with two exceptions, they may be found in the trophozoite as well as in the cystic form.

These parasites are, at the present time, considered as belonging to six different species distributed into four genera: Endamoeba, Endolimax, Iodamoeba, and Dientamoeba. The principal characteristic for differentiation is the nucleus.

The **nucleus** of all intestinal amebae is, as in all the Sarcodina, of the vesicular type. In the genus Endamoeba, the nucleus displays peripheral chromatin granules that are more or less regular, according to the species. From this peripheral chromatin, fine granular filaments radiate toward a central or excentric karyosome (endosome), usually with a rounded appearance. In properly stained specimens, one can distinguish one or more central granules, deeply staining, embedded in a matrix with less chromatic affinity. The genus Endolimax is generally described as having a nucleus which lacks the peripheral chromatin. However, some authors (Stabler, 1932) mention the presence of chromatin granules which are adherent to the membrane and which may be observed under certain conditions. Within the nucleus is a karyosome (endosome), generally of irregular form, large, and adjacent or adherent to the outer wall of the nucleus. In the genus Iodamoeba the peripheral chromatin is absent and the large, spherical karyosome is centrally located. Under usual conditions of observation, this karyosome is seen as a uniform mass, but in very good preparations there can be seen a central mass, deeply stained, surrounded by a series of small granulations with weaker affinity for dyes, described by some authors as "pearls." The genus Dientamoeba has a nucleus without peripheral chromatin and with a karyosome formed of various large and irregular granules, deeply stained, generally situated in the center, and embedded in a matrix with poor staining qualities, frequently irregular in form; the name of the genus (Greek *di*, two) alludes to the fact that two nuclei are found in many of the trophozoites.

Sarcodina which inhabit the human digestive tract are *Endamoeba histolytica* (Schaudinn, 1903), *Endamoeba coli* (Grassi, 1879), *Endamoeba gingivalis* (Gros, 1849), *Endolimax nana* (Wenyon and O'Connor, 1917), *Iodamoeba williamsi* (Prowazek, 1911), *Dientamoeba fragilis* (Jepps and Dobell, 1918).

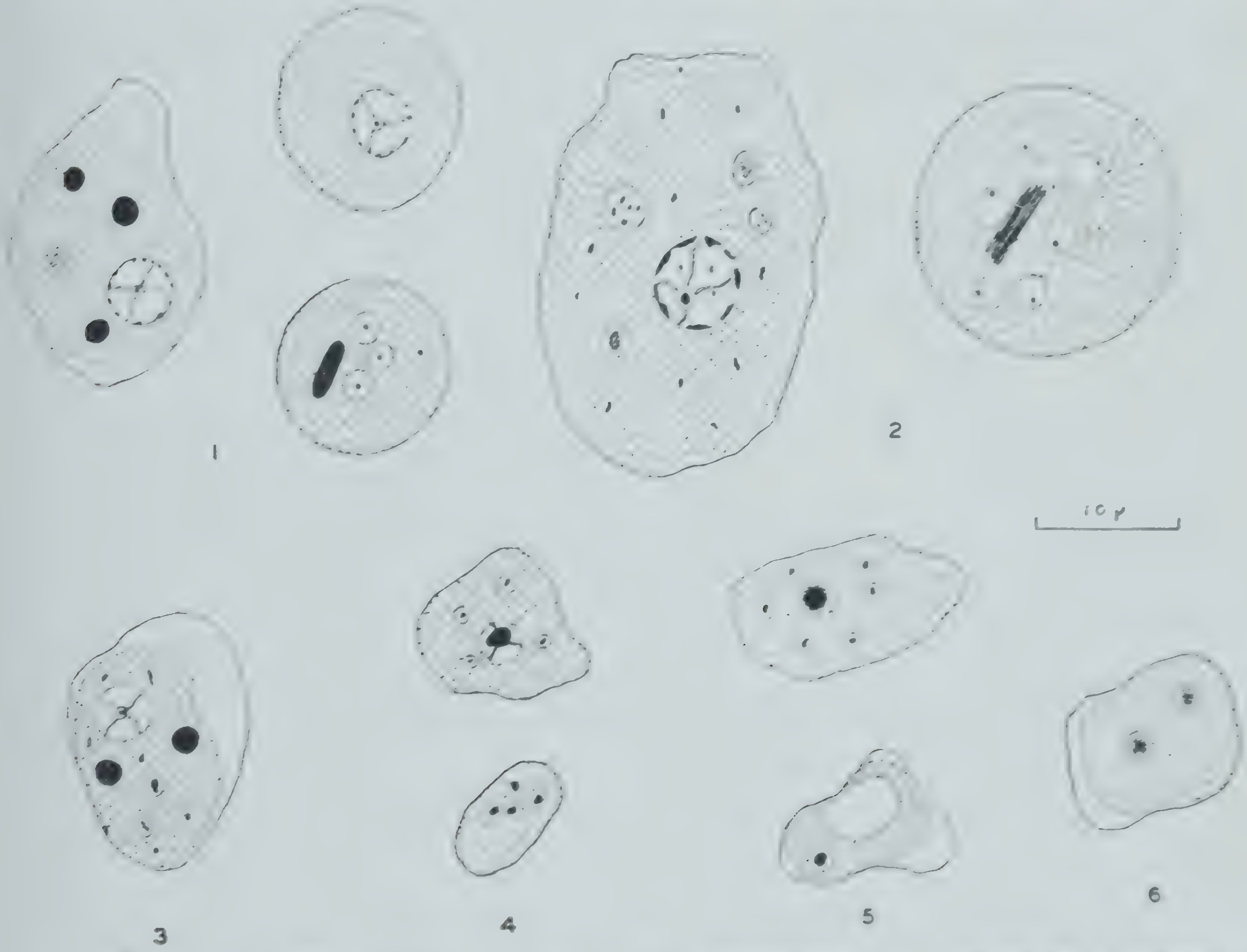


Fig. 7.—Parasitic amebae of man, schematic representation. *1, Endamoeba histolytica* (trophozoite, precyst, and cyst); *2, Endamoeba coli* (trophozoite and cyst); *3, Endamoeba gingivalis*; *4, Endolimax nana* (trophozoite and cyst); *5, Iodamoeba williamsi* (trophozoite and cyst); *6, Dientamoeba fragilis.* (Original drawing by T. G. de Beltrán.)

Although the six species listed here are considered correct without exception, some authors accept the existence of further species, the most frequently cited being *Entamoeba hartmanni* Prowazek, 1912; *Entamoeba minuta* Elmassian, 1909; *Entamoeba tetragena* Viereck, 1907; *Entamoeba dispar* Brumpt, 1925; *Councilmania lafleuri* Kofoid and Swezy, 1921; *Karyamoeba falcata* Kofoid and Swezy, 1924; but these seem to be simply synonyms of the generally accepted species.

There is also another noteworthy discrepancy with respect to the correct designation of species, the discussion centering principally upon the justification for using the generic name Endamoeba Leidy, 1879, or Entamoeba Cassagrandi and Barbagallo, 1895, and for using the species name *histolytica* Schaudinn, 1903, or *dyserteriae* Councilman and Lafleur, 1891. Another controversial point is whether the species designation *williamsi* or *bütschlii* is to be preferred for amebae of the genus Iodamoeba.

Endamoeba Histolytica (Schaudinn, 1903)

E. histolytica is a protozoan which varies in size from 10 to 30 microns, most commonly occurring in the lower range. The trophozoite moves actively, constantly changing shape. In fresh and vigorous specimens the body is frequently elongated, with but one large pseudopodium projecting in the direction of movement. A similar shape may also be observed in organisms in permanent mounts. In the usual preparations, however, the rounded forms predominate, if the sample has stood for some time after collection before being examined.

One of the most noticeable morphologic characteristics of these protozoa, when they are alive, is the ease with which the ectoplasm can be distinguished from the endoplasm. The ectoplasm is hyaline and transparent, while the endoplasm is translucent and more granular. In the endoplasm can be seen vacuoles which may contain ingested red blood cells, although many do not show these corpuscles. There is no food material within the endoplasm. In degenerated specimens, vacuoles containing bacteria and other extraneous particles can be seen. This also occurs in cultures, in which also starch granules are ingested.

The **nucleus** is spherical, vesicular in type, with a series of small peripheral, refractile, quite regular lines of granules. There is a very refractile central karyosome. In preparations stained with hematoxylin, the peripheral chromatin granules are regular in shape and of uniform size; between the granules and the small central karyosome there is a series of small radiations of chromatin granules of variable staining intensity.

The so-called **precystic forms** are round and devoid of pseudopodia or nutritional inclusions. A cyst wall is lacking.

Cysts, usually spherical or spheroidal, are of variable size, measuring from 5 to 20 microns, averaging 10 microns. It is thought that the cysts tend to be of uniform size within a certain race and that consequently there are different races of this species which differ from each other in the size of the cysts.

The **nucleus of the cyst** has the same appearance as that of the trophozoite. In newly formed cysts, only one nucleus is seen. After division, this nucleus forms two, and by the second division, four nuclei. This number is characteristic of mature cysts and predominates in specimens obtained from fecal matter.

Bar-like bodies, called **chromatoid bodies,** are frequently observed; they have rounded ends and appear very refractile in fresh specimens. In preparations stained with iron hematoxylin, they are intensely black.

Physiology.—*E. histolytica* is exclusively parasitic. It must live within the body tissues of man or animals. The trophozoites can survive for only a short period of time outside the body of the host. The cysts have greater resistance.

Like all parasites which inhabit the intestines, *E. histolytica* has become adapted to living in media poor in oxygen, but the organism is not a strict anaerobe since it can apparently be cultivated under aerobic conditions.

Life Cycle.—Mature or quadrinucleate cysts constitute the infective forms. They enter the human organism by way of the mouth, passing undamaged through the stomach, thence to the small intestine. Here the cyst wall softens and breaks, due to the action of digestive ferments, and a quadrinucleate ameba is released. The quadrinucleate ameba undergoes two cytoplasmic divisions without further nuclear division, giving rise to four active amebae. Occasionally nuclear division may also take place; this results in the production of eight very small amebae (Faust, 1943).

The metacystic amebae migrate into the large intestine and establish themselves in the walls, especially in the ileocecal region and in the first part of the ascending colon, as well as in the rectosigmoid. At these sites, at autopsy, there is seen a predominance of lesions caused by *E. histolytica*. The infection is very persistent; according to Dobell and Stevenson (1918), it may last throughout the life of the host.

While in the intestinal mucosa, the amebae multiply repeatedly by binary fission (Dobell, 1919). For reasons as yet unexplained, some of these amebae which remain in the intestine expel their nutritional material, undergo reduction in size, possibly by division, and become rounded, constituting the so-called *precystic* forms. These precystic forms are later enveloped by a resistant membrane, forming the uninucleate cysts. When they mature, they are transformed into the quadrinucleate, infective forms. These forms, if ingested by the proper host, begin again the life cycle just described.

Although the habitual site of *E. histolytica* is the large intestine, at times the parasites are carried to other organs, where they produce suppurative abscesses.

Culture.—*E. histolytica* is easily cultivated on various media, the most commonly used being those of Boeck and Drbohlav (1925), Locke egg-serum or Locke egg-albumin, Craig, St. John serum media, Tsuchiya (1934), and Balamuth.

Inoculation of Animals.—Lösch, who discovered *E. histolytica*, successfully reproduced the infection in dogs, and this method, though in little favor, has come into usage again, especially by Faust (1930). Kittens were used for the first time by Hlava in 1887; they are considered excellent laboratory animals for this purpose and are now used extensively. Jones (1947) introduced the use of rats in such experiments.

Endamoeba Coli (Grassi, 1879)

E. coli is somewhat similar to *E. histolytica*. It is usually described as being larger, varying from 20 to 40 microns.

The ectoplasm is much less hyaline and transparent than that of *E. histolytica* and is not well differentiated from the endoplasm. In the endoplasm there are a large number of vacuoles containing a variety of nutritional materials—bacteria, yeasts, cysts of other protozoa, etc. The pseudopodia are similar in shape to those of *E. histolytica* but frequently are blunt and are not projected in any definite direction.

The nucleus is characterized by peripheral chromatin granules, coarser and more irregular than those of *E. histolytica*. They are more readily distinguishable, due to their refractile character. The karyosome, which is larger and less refractile, is excentrically located.

Precystic forms which measure about 20 microns are similar to those of *E. histolytica*, from which they can be differentiated by nuclear characteristics.

The **cysts** are spherical or spheroidal, seldom irregular, and vary from 10 to 30 microns. The membrane which surrounds them presents a well-marked double contour. They are originally uninucleate; through successive division they form two, four, and eight nuclei, the last number considered typical of mature cysts. They contain a large amount of glycogen, which accounts for their dark brown color when tinged with iodine. They frequently lack chromatoid bodies; when present, these are needle shaped and sometimes joined together, forming larger or smaller clusters.

Life Cycle.—The life cycle is similar to that of *E. histolytica*, with the difference that this ameba, once established in the large intestine, lives within the lumen and feeds on bacteria and other material without invading the tissue. For this reason it is considered a simple commensal.

The **incidence** is high. It has been calculated that about 50 per cent of the entire population, of the world harbors *E. coli*. The mechanism of transmission is supposedly the same as that for *E. histolytica*.

This species is difficult to cultivate. The parasite is not easily transmitted to animals.

Differentiation Between Endamoeba Histolytica and Endamoeba Coli

Since *E. histolytica* and *E. coli* present major points of similarity, and since it is important to identify *E. histolytica* correctly, the most important characteristics generally used to differentiate these two amebae are given.

The cysts and trophozoites of *E. histolytica* are usually smaller than those of *E. coli.* Size alone, however, is not an absolute means of differentiation, since at times the sizes vary and cysts and trophozoites of *E. histolytica* are rather large.

One of the most important means of identification is the differentiation of the ectoplasm and the endoplasm and the nature of the amebic movements; this is of value, however, only in normal and vigorous living specimens.

The contents of the food vacuoles is very important: *E. histolytica* habitually shows only ingested erythrocytes, or completely lacks food vacuoles, whereas *E. coli* shows very abundant food vacuoles containing a variety of material. In *degenerated E. histolytica* are seen vacuoles containing ingested bacteria, and there are some reported cases of *E. coli* containing ingested erythrocytes (Tyzzer and Geiman, 1938).

Cysts help differentiate the two species: the size, the nature of the membrane (single in *E. histolytica,* double in *E. coli*), and the nature of the chromatoid bodies. Of greater importance is the structure of the nuclei which, as in the trophozoites, offers a more certain identification in stained slides. The number of nuclei is also a means of differentiation, but this is not always reliable. It appears (Beltrán, 1945b) that even though the number of supernucleated cysts of *E. coli* may be large, up to 20 per cent, this is of no particular importance in diagnosis, whereas the number of supernucleated cysts in *E. histolytica,* which might cause serious confusion, is barely 3 to 4 per cent.

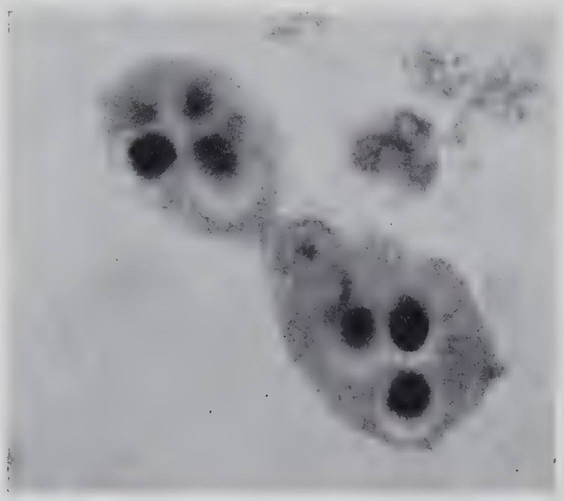


Fig. 8.—Trophozoite of *Endoamoeba gingivalis,* stained with iron-hematoxylin. The nucleus is seen in the central portion, the remnants of ingested leucocytes in the food vacuoles. (×3,000.) (Original photomicrograph of E. Beltrán.)

Endamoeba Gingivalis (Gros, 1849)

E. gingivalis, although not a true intestinal ameba, since it lives in the mouth, is mentioned here only because of its high incidence; it occurs in about

50 per cent of adults. Morphologically it resembles *E. histolytica* from which it differs in a few slight details of nuclear structure. The food vacuoles contain a variety of materials, such as bacteria and other microorganisms and the remnants of leucocytes.

This species has no cystic form in its life cycle. It is assumed that transmission from person to person takes place by direct contact, especially through kissing.

This species has aroused the interest of many authors. Some (Bass and Johns, 1915; Smith and Barrett, 1915; etc.) considered it to be of etiologic importance in pyorrhea alveolaris, although most contemporary authors do not accept this view. In accordance with our own investigations (Beltrán and Medina, 1944), we think that this subject still merits further serious consideration before it will be possible to arrive at a definite conclusion.

Endolimax Nana (Wenyon and O'Connor, 1917)

These are small amebae varying from 6 to 12 microns. Differentiation between the ectoplasm and the endoplasm is variable; while perfectly marked in some, in others it is observed only with the greatest difficulty, or not at all. The endoplasm contains abundant food vacuoles containing a variety of material. This fact, in conjunction with the characteristics of their movements, sluggish and in different directions, sometimes causes this species to be confused with small *E. coli*. The nucleus constitutes the most important diagnostic characteristic of the parasite.

Cysts are ovoid, less frequently spherical, with four nuclei in the mature state. The nuclei have the same characteristics as those found in the trophozoite, but they are barely visible in fresh specimens.

They measure approximately 8 to 10 microns along the longer axis. Young stages frequently show glycogen, distributed diffusely, or concentrated in vacuoles, which sometimes resemble those found in Iodamoeba.

Dobell (1919) described the occasional presence of filaments which stain black with iron hematoxylin.

The life cycle of this species appears to be similar to that of *E. coli,* being a simple commensal of the human intestine.

Incidence is about 10 per cent. In our investigations in Mexico, we found an incidence between 8 and 32 per cent.

Iodamoeba Williamsi (Prowazek, 1911)

These are small organisms, varying from 5 to 20 microns. The ectoplasm is not clearly differentiated from the endoplasm. The endoplasm contains numerous nutritional vacuoles with the most varied contents. Movement of the ameba is sluggish, frequently not directional.

The nucleus, which is practically invisible in fresh specimens, is the principal distinctive characteristic of these amebae in stained preparations.

Cysts are most frequently uninucleate. The nucleus is practically invisible in fresh specimens and barely detectable in preparations treated with iodine. The most notable characteristic is the great irregularity of outline. Another very characteristic structure is the glycogen vacuole with its definitely limited outline, which occupies a large part of the cyst. In fresh specimens or in specimens stained with hematoxylin, it appears as a clear space, while in specimens stained with iodine it appears as a well-defined, mahogany-colored mass.

It has often been stated in the literature that the cysts are found in large numbers in infections due to this species but that only rarely are the trophozoite forms found. It has been my experience (Beltrán, 1945a) that this is not necessarily the case, since the vegetative forms, sufficiently abundant in liquid feces, also are found in appreciable numbers in formed stools.

The life cycle is similar to that of the species just described, and it is also considered as harmless to man. It occurs quite frequently, our studies showing an incidence of 7 to 31 per cent.

Dientamoeba Fragilis (Jepps and Dobell, 1918)

These parasites are easily destroyed, for which reason the name *fragilis* has been given to the species. They are small, from 4 to 12 microns. The ectoplasm and endoplasm are clearly differentiated. They project hyaline, transparent pseudopodia which resemble those of *E. histolytica,* although they are not formed with the same rapidity. The nucleus is the most outstanding characteristic. There are often two nuclei.

The life cycle differs from other parasitic amebae of man, with the exception of *E. gingivalis,* in that no cysts are known. Because of this, details of the transmission are still obscure.

Reports of the incidence of this parasite vary. Most authors agree that it is the least frequent of the amebae of man. In our own epidemiologic surveys (Beltrán and Larenas, 1941), we have found an incidence as high as 9 per cent.

Although the majority of authors believe that this organism is not pathogenic to man, there are several reports of clinical cases supposedly caused by this species. Recently Wenrich (1944) reviewed the literature on this point and insisted upon the possible pathogenicity of these organisms, although he admits that data sufficient for absolute confirmation have not been brought forth.

MASTIGOPHORA

Members of this class are characterized by having, as organs of locomotion, long vibratory whip-like appendages, called flagella, from which is derived the name "flagellates," commonly applied to them.

Certain flagellates live in the blood and the tissues; these are called *hemoflagellates.* Another group lives in the intestine; these are called *intestinal flagellates.* Generally included in this group, although they are not, strictly speaking, intestinal inhabitants, are species found in the mouth and in the vagina.

Polymastiginia, one of the four orders into which this class is divided, is characterized by three to eight flagella, with the exception of the family Polymonadinae, which has more. In some species, there is an undulating membrane. They have one or more nuclei of the vesicular type. Certain forms which feed upon solid particles have a cytostome for ingestion, while others lack such orifices and derive their nourishment by absorbing nutritive materials through the entire body surface. Some form both trophozoites and cysts, while others have no cystic stage. There are a great number of species of both free-living and parasitic forms.

Several species live in man. Most authors agree that the following are parasitic to man: *Trichomonas hominis* (Davaine, 1860), *Trichomonas tenax* (O. F. Muller, 1773), *Trichomonas vaginalis* Donné, 1837, *Giardia lamblia* Stiles, 1915, *Chilomastix mesnili* (Wenyon, 1910), *Enteromonas hominis* da Fonseca, 1915, *Retortamonas (Embadomonas) intestinalis* (Wenyon and O'Connor, 1917).

Other species have been described, unsupported by sufficient evidence, and not accepted by the majority of authors.

There is also a great discrepancy with regard to the nomenclature of these parasites.

Genus **Trichomonas**

These are pear-shaped organisms, with rounded anterior end. The body is traversed throughout the long axis by an axostyle, which projects from the posterior end, according to the species. The flagellar apparatus consists of free flagella at the anterior end, with one flagellum extending from front to back to form the axoneme of the undulating membrane.

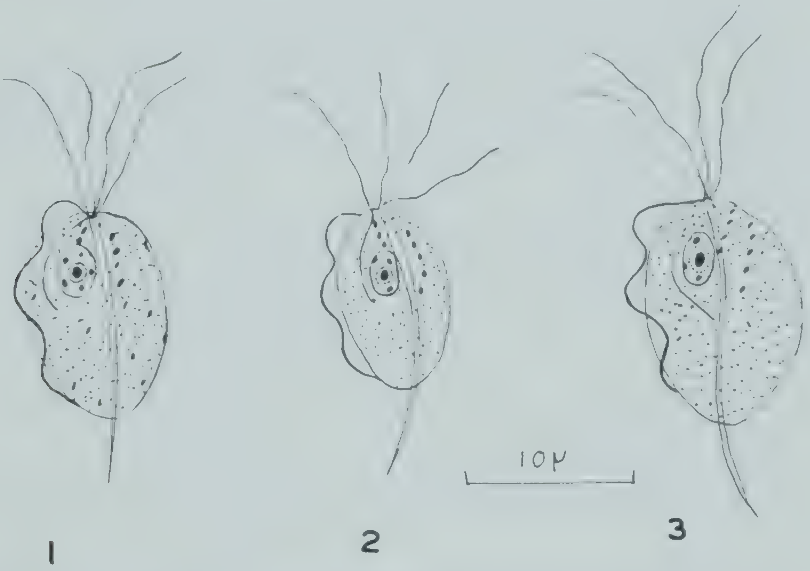


Fig. 9.—Comparative diagram of human parasites in the genus Trichomonas: *1, T. hominis; 2, T. buccalis; 3, T. vaginalis.* (Original drawing of T. G. de Beltrán.)

Trichomonas Hominis Davaine, 1860

T. hominis varies in length from 7 to 20 microns. Each anterior flagellum originates from an independent basal corpuscle. Close to this is the flagellum which forms the axoneme. The axostyle is straight or slightly curved and extends beyond the posterior extremity. The cytostome is small, buttonhole in shape, and is found near the anterior end. Near the anterior extremity is the nucleus which is spherical or slightly ovoid, with a small karyosome, with a variable quantity of chromatin granules in the nuclear material. In the anterior part of the body, between the wall and the nucleus, there is a group of small blepharoplasts, in longitudinal rows, giving a ''dotted'' effect.

Old, degenerated organisms have an ameboid appearance, with few structural details. In such cases, the most apparent characteristic is the undulating membrane, movements of which usually persist for a long time.

The parasite moves rapidly by a series of small ''jumps''; the undulating membrane moves continuously. This movement, under low magnification, appears merely to be a change in the shape of the body. The anterior flagella also vibrate rapidly.

They obtain their nourishment by ingesting various microorganisms. Occasional ingestion of red blood cells has been observed (Hegner, 1938).

Reproduction occurs by longitudinal binary fission. There are no cysts, the supposition being that transmission from subject to subject is accomplished through trophozoites which can pass through the stomach without damage.

Some investigators consider Trichomonas nonpathogenic; others believe they can produce diarrhea and colitis. Among those who take the latter view are Escómel (1937), Kofoid and Swezy (1924), and Muro (1937).

Some authors relate the problem of pathogenicity to the number of flagella; that is, they consider that only those with five flagella (the genus Pentatrichomonas) are pathogenic.

Incidence is variable. In our investigations, this parasite was found in 9 to 54 per cent.

Culture of *T. hominis* is successful in media similar to those used for *E. histolytica.* Rats can be easily infected with *T. hominis,* but the susceptibility of different strains of rats varies (Hegner and Eskridge, 1935).

Trichomonas Tenax (Muller, 1773)

This flagellate is found in the human mouth in the tartar around the teeth and in the cavities of dental caries and in the pus of pyorrhea alveolaris (Gradwohl and Kourí, 1948).

The morphology is similar to that of *T. hominis.* Whether or not they are the same species has been much discussed. Wenrich (1931, 1939) found certain morphologic differences which may be seen in Fig. 9. Experiments by Bonestell (1936) and others confirm that we are dealing with distinct species.

The incidence of this parasite appears to be rather high, since Beatman (1933) found 22.7 per cent positive cases in 350 persons examined in Philadelphia. It is supposed that transmission occurs in a manner similar to that of *E. gingivalis.*

Trichomonas Vaginalis Donné, 1837

This species shows great morphologic similarity to the preceding species; however, some differences, which can be seen in Fig. 9, may be observed.

It occurs in the vaginal mucus and reproduces by longitudinal binary fission. Formation of cysts has not been observed. Its nutritional requirements are still in dispute; some authors assume that it lives upon bacteria or that it ingests red blood cells (Andrews, 1929). Others (Bland et al., 1932) believe that leucocytes are ingested by Trichomonas and in turn that Trichomonas are ingested by leucocytes.

Transmission is venereal as well as by contact with contaminated objects.

Although the pathogenicity of this organism is still a matter for discussion, most authors hold it responsible for certain gynecologic conditions.

Incidence appears to be high in both sexes. Andrews (1938) found an infection rate of 38 per cent, Bland et al. (1932) of 17.8 per cent in women. Deo (1944) found 15.5 per cent of males infected. He believes that the male is the transmitter and the female the reservoir.

Cultivation of these organisms is successful in many media containing physiologic saline and protein material.

Giardia Lamblia Stiles, 1915

The body, the major axis of which is approximately 10 to 20 microns, is pear-shaped, with the wider part at the anterior end, tapering to a point toward the posterior end. From the posterior extremity project two tail-like flagella. If viewed from the side, the organisms have a concave structure, like a sucker, at the anterior extremity; this is the *cytostome* and serves to attach the parasite to the wall of the small intestine, producing irritation of the intestine.

The organism is seen in Fig. 10, with a large cytostomal area, peristomal fiber surrounding the two nuclei, forming a sort of bowknot, and a series of blepharoplasts from which flagella arise. The latter are two anterior, two lateral, two ventral, and two caudal. Toward the center of the body are two wedge-like parabasal bodies.

The cysts are ovoid, from 10 to 15 microns along the greater axis, with thick, resistant walls. The shape of these cysts is very characteristic. Within the cysts, two to four anterior nuclei and remnants of the fibers which form the axostyle are seen. Frequently the parabasal bodies are observed.

In fresh stools these organisms may be seen moving rapidly, with their flagella, which are more readily visible than those of other species.

Infection occurs by ingestion of cysts which pass through the stomach and reach the small intestine.

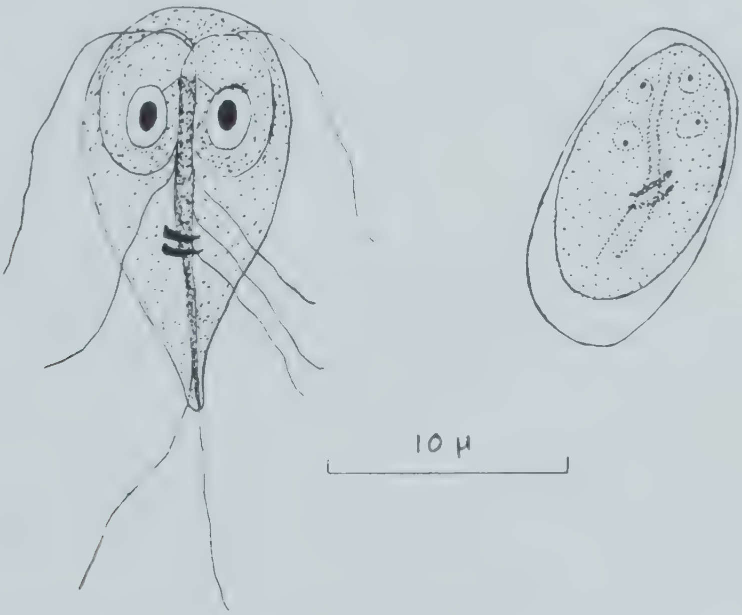


Fig. 10.—Diagrammatic representation of *Giardia lamblia.* At the left is a trophozoite; at the right, a cyst. (Original drawing by T. G. de Beltrán.)

Some authors deny a pathogenic role; others insist upon it. There are reasons for assuming that it is pathogenic.

This parasite is cosmopolitan, although more common in high, temperate regions. We have found an incidence of 6 to 34 per cent.

Chilomastix Mesnili (Wenyon, 1910)

This organism measures 10 to 20 microns along its longer axis. It also is pear-shaped but is not bilaterally symmetrical.

The posterior half of the body is often twisted. It has a single nucleus, relatively large and vesicular, near the anterior extremity. Near the nucleus there is a group of blepharoplasts from which arise three free anterior flagella. Another flagellum, with the same origin, passes within the organism, inside the cytostome, the sides of which are supported by two small lateral fibrils.

The cysts are lemon-shaped, 6 to 9 microns long. The nucleus, as well as remnants of the neuromotor apparatus, especially the flagellum within the cytostome, can be seen.

These organisms inhabit the large intestine, where they feed on bacteria and other minute particles. Most authors do not believe that they play a pathogenic role. The cysts appear to be exclusively a form of protection (Geiman, 1935).

The incidence of *C. mesnili* varies in different localities, our investigations showing them as ranging from 10 to 25 per cent.

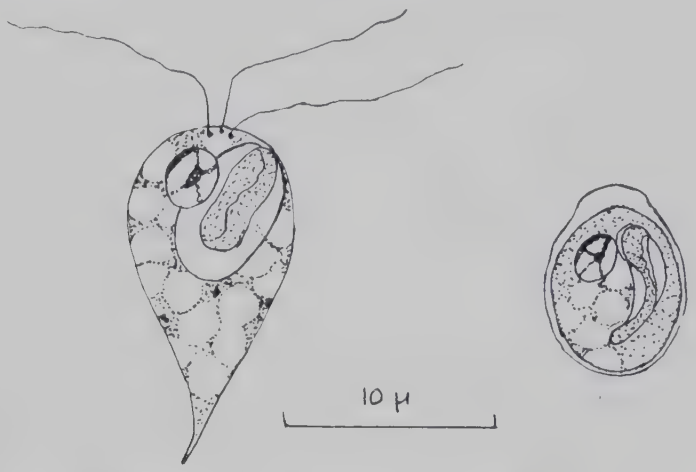


Fig. 11.—Diagrammatic representation of *Chilomastix mesnili.* At the left is a trophozoite; at the right, a cyst. (Original drawing by T. G. de Beltrán.)

Enteromonas Hominis da Fonseca, 1915

This is one of the smallest of intestinal flagellates of man, measuring 4 to 8 microns. They are of various shapes.

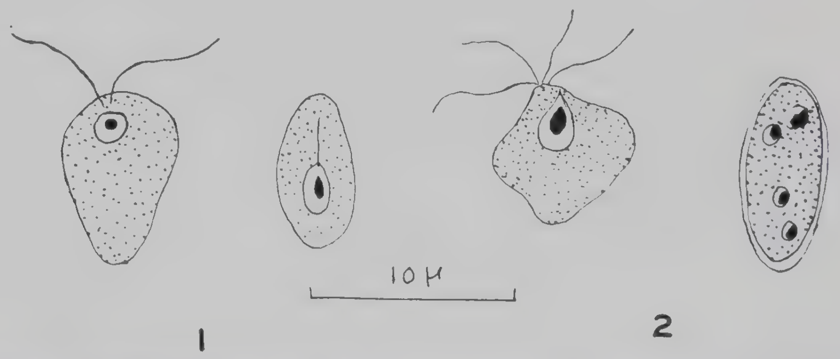


Fig. 12.—Schematic representation of trophozoite and cyst of *Retortamonas intestinalis, 1,* and *Enteromonas hominis, 2.* (Original drawing by T. G. de Beltrán.)

They have a single nucleus in the anterior extremity adjacent to a group of blepharoplasts from which originate the free flagella, as well as another flagellum which extends along the length of the body, without, however, forming an undulating membrane.

The cysts are elongated, from 6 to 8 microns long, and present from one to four nuclei, according to the stage of maturity.

Little is known of their physiology and life cycle. They are considered harmless in their relationship to man. Incidence is relatively low; in Mexico we have found 4 per cent.

Retortamonas (Embadomonas) Intestinalis (Wenyon and O'Connor, 1917)

These flagellates are small, 5 to 6 microns. The parasite presents the form of a truncated cone, with the flat extremity, corresponding to the cytostome.

in the anterior part. It has a vesicular nucleus near the anterior extremity and two free flagella of unequal size.

Cysts measure 4 to 6 microns and resemble those of *C. mesnili.*

This parasite seems to be harmless. Incidence in our investigations never exceeded 3 per cent.

INFUSORIA

These forms are characterized by vibratory locomotor appendages, called **cilia,** which may partially or entirely cover the body and which at times combine to form composite organs of locomotion such as *membranellae* and *cirri.*

The nuclear apparatus is composed of two distinct elements, the *micronucleus* and the *macronucleus,* the first having a sexual function.

A great number are parasitic. Some forms, such as *Ichthiophthirius multifiliis,* which parasitize the skin of certain fish, may be important from the human point of view.

One or more species of the genus Nyctotherus has been cited in man, but such references are now considered erroneous (Witchermann, 1938; Beltrán, 1939). We recognize at this time but one infusorial parasite of man, *Balantidium coli.*

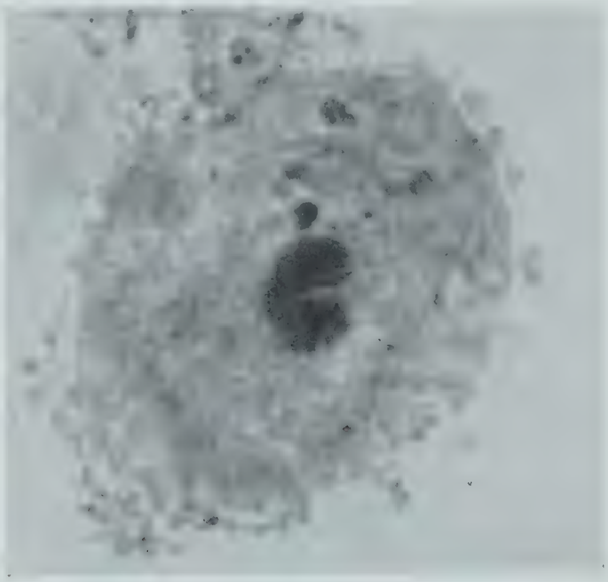


Fig. 13.—Trophozoite of *Balantidium coli,* stained with Delafield hematoxylin. Note the macronucleus in the center. (×3,000.) (Original photomicrograph of E. Beltrán.)

Balantidium Coli Malmsten, 1857

This organism is ovoid and slightly tapered at the anterior end, where a subterminal peristome is found. It varies greatly in size, according to Hegner (1930), from 30 to 200 microns, although the average size is 45 by 60 microns. The cilia are arranged in longitudinal parallel lines around the body. They are uniform except at the anterior extremity, where they become longer.

The *macronucleus,* situated near the central part of the body, is usually reniform. A small spherical *micronucleus* is found in its immediate vicinity. There are two spherical *contractile vacuoles,* situated dorsally. In the posterior portion, there is a *cytoproct* or *cytopyge,* subterminal and oblique. Numerous food vacuoles may be observed, filled with bacteria and other material.

Cysts, spherical and subspherical, are about 50 microns in diameter, with a thick membrane with double contour. Within the cyst there is a rounded mass of cytoplasm containing the nucleus.

There is no agreement as to the details of the life cycle.

B. coli causes a severe form of dysentery. The incidence is low. Young (1937) reported that in the United States scarcely forty-three cases of this infection are known to date, and in Mexico (Beltrán, 1942) we found only sixty-three, although later more cases were recorded.

Swine and various species of monkeys are often parasitized by *B. coli.*

SPOROZOA

These animals form a class represented exclusively by species that are parasitic.

The only species which inhabits the human intestine is *Isospora hominis,* of the order Coccidia, which parasitizes the epithelium of the digestive tract and its glands. Members of this order usually present alternating generations, with sexual and asexual phases, which usually occur in the same host. The infective forms are the spores, which are resistant to external environmental conditions because of their protecting coverings.

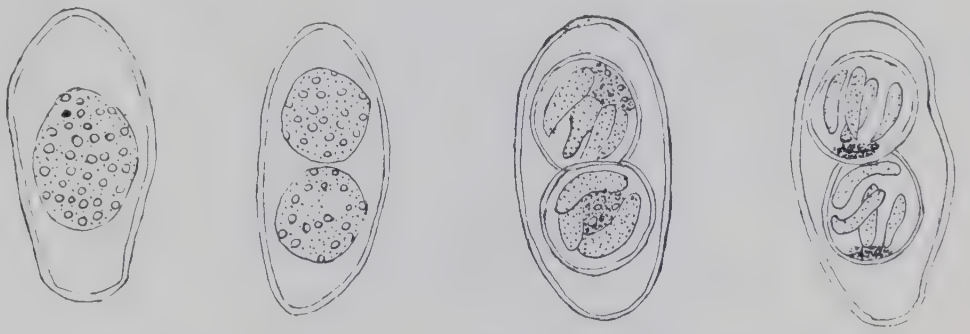


Fig. 14.—Diagrammatic representation of successive stages in the development of the oöcysts of *Isospora hominis.* (×3,000.) (Original drawing by T. G. de Beltrán.)

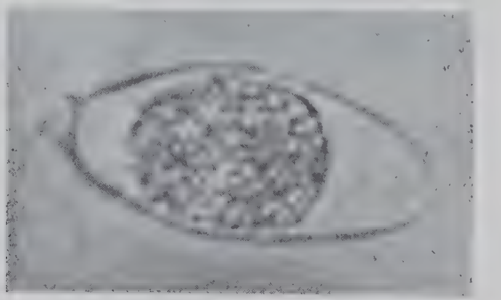


Fig. 15.—Oöcyst of *Isospora hominis,* immature (unstained specimen). (×3,000.) (Original photomicrograph of E. Beltrán.)

Isospora Hominis Fantham, 1917

Only their oöcysts have been found, the other stages of the life cycle being unknown. They are elongated, with an ovoid contour, frequently with one of the extremities bottle-neck shaped, about 29 by 13 microns. The sporocysts are formed within them, with average dimensions of 12 microns; in these are observed, when they mature, four elongated sporozoites.

Infection by this parasite appears to be rare. Magath (1934) found in the literature only some 200 known cases. In Mexico, the first case was found recently (Beltrán and Larenas, 1944). Other cases were found later, as yet unpublished.

Little is known of its relationship to the host. Most authors believe that it is pathogenic.

References

Andrews, M. N.: 1929. Observations on Trichomonas Vaginalis Donné 1837, With Special Reference to Its Incidence in England, J. Trop. Med. **32**: 237-240.

Andrews, J.: 1938. Association of Trichomonas Vaginalis Vaginitis and Leucorrhea, Am. J. Hyg. **28**: 36-39.

Bass, C. C., and Johns, F. M.: 1915. Alveolo-Dental Pyorrhea, Philadelphia.

Beatman, L. H.: 1933. Studies on Trichomonas Buccalis, J. Dent. Research **13**: 339-347.

Beltrán, E.: 1939. Puede Considerarse el Género Nyctotherus Entre los Parásitos Humanos? Rev. d. Inst. salub. y enferm. trop. **1**: 53-65.

Beltrán, E.: 1942. Incidencia de Balantidium coli en Tabasco, Mex. Rev. de Inst. salub. y enferm. trop. **3**: 319-321.

Beltrán, E.: 1944. El Problema de la Amibiasis en la República Mexicana, Rev. de med. trop. y parasitol., bacteriol., clín. y lab. **10**: 40-41.

Beltrán, E.: 1945. Influencia del Sexo en la Incidencia de Protozoarios Intestinales Humanos, Especialmente Endamoeba Histolytica, Rev. d. Inst. salub. y enferm. trop. **6**: 31-36.

Beltrán, E.: 1945a. Conflicting Views in Regard to Iodamoeba Williamsi, J. Parasitol. **31**: 289-290.

Beltrán, E.: 1945b. Supernucleate Cysts of Endamoeba Coli and E. Histolytica, Tr. Am. Micr. Soc. **64**: 283-285.

Beltrán, E., and Larenas, R.: 1941. Protozoarios Intestinales Humanos en una Comunidad Escolar de la Ciudad de México, Rev. d. Inst. salub. y enferm. trop. **2**: 193-212.

Beltrán, E., and Larenas, R.: 1944. Investigación de Protozoarios en Materias Fecales de Niños con Diarrhea, Rev. d. Inst. salub. y enferm. trop. **5**: 23-30.

Beltrán, E., and Larenas, R.: 1944a. Infección Humana por Isospora Hominis en México, Rev. d. Inst. salub. y enferm. trop. **5**: 185-189.

Beltrán, E., and Medina, M. A.: 1944. Estudios en Endamoeba Gingivalis (Gros) IV, Gac. méd. de México **74**: 449-460.

Bland, P. B., Goldstein, L., Wenrich, D. H., and Weiner, E.: 1932. Studies on the Biology of Trichomonas Vaginalis, Am. J. Hyg. **16**: 492-512.

Boeck, W. C., and Drbohlav, J.: 1925. The Cultivation of Endamoeba Histolytica, Am. J. Hyg. **5**: 371-407.

Bonestell, A.: 1936. Inoculation Experiments With Trichomonas Hominis, T. Buccalis and T. Vaginalis, J. Parasitol. **22**: 511-512.

Bundesen, H. N.: 1934. The Chicago Epidemic of Amoebic Dysentery, Pub. Health Rep. **49**: 1266-1272.

Craig, C. F.: 1911. The Parasitic Amoebae of Man, Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott Co., vii-253.

Craig, C. F.: 1934. Amebiasis and Amebic Dysentery, Springfield, Ill., Charles C Thomas Publisher, vii-315.

Craig, C. F.: 1944. The Etiology, Diagnosis and Treatment of Amebiasis, Baltimore, Williams & Wilkins, viii-382.

Craig, C. F., and Faust, E. C.: 1937. Clinical Parasitology, Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, 733 pp.

Chandler, A. C.: 1940. Introduction to Parasitology, New York, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., ix-698.

Dobell, C. C.: 1919. The Amoebae Living in Man, London, John Bale Medical Publications, Ltd., vi-155.

Dobell, C. C.: 1920. The Discovery of the Intestinal Protozoa of Man, Proc. Roy. Soc. Med. **13**: 1-15.

Dobell, C., and O'Connor, F. W.: 1921. The Intestinal Protozoa of Man, London, John Bale Medical Publications, Ltd., ix-201.

Dobell, C., and Stevenson, A. C.: 1918. A Note on the Duration of Infections With Entamoeba Histolytica, Tr. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **11**: 168-175.

Escomel, E.: 1937. Las Tricominiasis Vaginal, Vesical, Intestinal y Gingival, Lima, Peru, 18 pp.

Faust, E. C.: 1930. Experimental Acute Amebic Colitis in Dogs, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **27**: 908-911.

Faust, E. C.: 1943. Some Modern Conceptions on Amebiasis, Tr. & Stud., Coll. Physicians, Philadelphia, 4a. ser. **2**: 101-113.

Feo, L. G.: 1944. The Incidence and Significance of Trichomonas Vaginalis Infestation in the Male, Am. J. Trop. Med. **24**: 195-198.

Geiman, Q. M.: 1935. Cytological Studies of the Cilomastix (Protozoa, Flagellatas) of Man and Other Mammals, J. Morphol. **57**: 429-459.

Gradwohl, R. B. H., and Kourí, Pedro: 1948. Clinical Laboratory Methods and Diagnosis. Vol. III. Parasitology and Tropical Medicine, St. Louis, The C. V. Mosby Co.

Hegner, R.: 1927. Host-Parasite Relations Between Man and His Intestinal Protozoa, New York, Century Co., xiii-231.

Hegner, R.: 1930. The Genus Balantidium in Hegner, R., and Andrews (editors): Problems and Methods of Research in Protozoology, The Macmillan Co.

Hegner, R.: 1938. The Ingestion of Red Blood Corpuscles by Trichomonad Flagellates, J. A. M. A. **90**: 741-742.

Hegner, R., and Eskridge, L.: 1935. Susceptibility and Resistance of Rats to Infections With Trichomonad Flagellates From Rat and Man, Am. J. Hyg. **22**: 307-321.

Hinman, H. E., and Kampneier, R. H.: 1937. Clinical Intestinal Amebiasis, Am. J. Trop. Med. **17**: 263-268.

Kofoid, C. A., and Swezy, O.: 1924. Pentatrichomoniasis in Man, Am. J. Trop. Med. **4**: 33-41.

Lynch, K. M.: 1930. Protozoan Parasitism of the Alimentary Tract, New York, The Macmillan Co., xvii-258.

Magath, T. B.: 1934. The Coccidia of Man, Am. J. Trop. Med. **15**: 19-129.

Muro, P. De: 1937. Trichomoniasi intestinale et sendrome d'enterocolite muco-membranosa, Policlinico (Roma) **44**: 1-16.

Smith, A. J., and Barrett, M. T.: 1915. The Parasite of Oral Endamoebiasis, Endamoeba Gingivalis (Gros), J. Parasitol. **1**: 159-175.

Stabler, R. M.: 1932. On the Presence of Peripheral Chromatin in Endolimax Nana, J. Parasitol. **18**: 278-281.

Tsuchiya, H.: 1934. Further Studies on the Cultivation of Endameba Histolytica and a Complement Fixation Test for Amebiasis, J. Lab. & Clin. Med. **19**: 495-504.

Tyzzer, E. E., and Geiman, Q. M.: 1938. The Ingestion of Red Blood Cells by Endamoeba Coli and Its Significance in Diagnosis, Am. J. Hyg. **28**: 271-278.

Wenrich, D. H.: 1944. Studies on Dientamoeba Fragilis (Protozoa). IV. Further Observations, With an Outline of Present-Day Knowledge of This Species, J. Parasitol. **30**: 322-338.

Wenrich, D. H.: 1931. Morphological Studies on the Trichomonad Flagellates of Man, Arch. Soc. de biol. de Montevideo (Supp. pt.) **5**: 1185-1199.

Wenrich, D. H.: 1939. The Morphology of Trichomonas Vaginalis, Vol. Jub. Prof. Sadao Yoshida **2**: 65-76.

Witchermann, R.: 1938. The Present Status of Knowledge Concerning the Existence of Species of Nyctotherus (Ciliata) Living in Man, Am. J. Trop. Med. **18**: 67-76.

Young, M. D.: 1937. Balantidiasis, J. A. M. A. **113**: 580-584.

CHAPTER 4

AMEBIC DYSENTERY, HEPATIC ABSCESS, AND OTHER INTESTINAL CONDITIONS CAUSED BY PROTOZOA

OSCAR FELSENFELD AND VIOLA MAE YOUNG

AMEBIASIS

DEFINITION

Amebiasis is the proper designation for invasion of the body by *Endamoeba histolytica.* In medical circles this term is rapidly replacing the obsolete "amebic dysentery," which is now applied only to that dysenteric syndrome which characterizes severe amebic ulcerative colitis. The use of the term "amebiasis" is substantiated by the necessity of including amebic abscess, subclinical conditions, and mild disease under the same heading as more serious illnesses caused by the same organism. Many writers have felt that neither the symptomless "carrier state," nor certain cases in which the liver affection is of primary interest, without apparent dysenteric symptoms or even diarrhea, should be called "amebic dysentery." Thus the term "amebiasis" has been coined and accepted.

AGENT

Most authorities consider *E. histolytica* the only pathogenic intestinal ameba. The morphology and life cycle of the amebae are described in Chapter 3. It must be emphasized here also that only the cysts of this organism are infective. The trophozoites are easily destroyed. Cysts, however, are able to remain alive for as long as three weeks in the feces. While boiling destroys cysts in a few seconds, and temperatures of 65° to 70° C. are not resisted for five minutes, some cysts are able to survive at 2° to 4° C. for months. Chemical disinfectants do not destroy amebic cysts as quickly and reliably as they react on bacteria. Chlorine, for example, in a concentration of four parts per million parts of water, must act for thirty minutes in order to destroy cysts. This action depends upon the temperature and the hydrogen ion concentration.

Not all strains of *E. histolytica* are equally resistant and virulent. Considerable work on the virulence of amebae was performed by Meleney and Frye (1933, 1935, 1937, 1944) and Faust et al. (1946). It may be stated that the pathogenicity of amebic strains varies considerably, those from northern countries generally being less virulent. There is also dissimilarity in size of the amebae. The so-called "small form" or "small type" of *E. histolytica* was studied by Drbohlav (1925), Andrews (1942), Sappero et al. (1942), Frye and Meleney (1938), and others. Brumpt (1937) called it *Endamoeba dispar* and does not believe in its pathogenic power. Young (1944) and Felsenfeld (1945) studied the "small type" in the midwestern United States. The cysts of this type are less than 10 microns in diameter. The trophozoites contain red blood cells only exceptionally. This variety is either only slightly pathogenic or nonpathogenic for cats and dogs. It causes only mild amebiasis. Liver complications and intestinal perforations have never been observed in such infections. It disappears promptly after treatment with iodine preparations. In unstained preparations, or in preparations stained with iodine, it is easily mistaken for *Endolimax nana.*

TRANSMISSION

Patients with acute cases of typical amebiasis, where only trophozoites are excreted, do not transmit the disease as a rule. The real sources of infection are ''symptomless carriers'' or ''symptomless cyst-passers'' and persons suffering from vague intestinal complaints which in a temperate climate may be mistakenly diagnosed as ''spastic colitis,'' ''idiopathic constipation,'' or ''food allergy'' and, therefore, are not being treated. Such persons, when working as food handlers, may cause many cases of amebiasis if viable cysts are harbored under their nails or carried on their soiled hands. In many tropical and subtropical countries where amebiasis is endemic, most of the food handlers have been found to be infected when surveys were made to detect the frequency of amebiasis.

In the Near East and in China, as well as in many other countries, mainly in the tropics, night soil is used as fertilizer. Vegetables grown under such conditions may be heavily contaminated with cysts and are a constant source of infection. Before marketing, vegetables are ''freshened'' by dipping into sewage. They become contaminated with cysts and serve to spread amebiasis.

Flies and other insects, such as cockroaches, often come in contact with fecal material and may mechanically transmit the infection with their legs or mouth parts. Flies, moreover, actually breed in feces. If they swallow fecal material containing amebic cysts, they may excrete such cysts for as long as three days. Insects carrying cysts often transfer the organisms to food, which, when consumed by susceptible persons, may cause infection.

Water is a frequent source of amebiasis. Its importance in the epidemiology of amebiasis was first recognized by Manson (1925) on Cape Verde, where he traced the infection to a well. Springs, unprotected wells, cisterns, and streams may contain contaminated water. Amebic cysts may be introduced into such sources of drinking water from seepage of sewage and by the use of contaminated drinking buckets or from infected persons swimming or washing in water which flows into such drinking water. The classical example of a water-borne outbreak is that which occurred in Chicago during the Century of Progress Exposition. According to the committee report (1936), over 1,400 persons developed amebiasis, with about 100 deaths. The cause of the contamination of the water was a cross-connection between sewage and drinking water pipes in two large Chicago hotels.

Age seems to play a certain role in amebiasis. Faust (1942) and Craig (1944) stated that children have less opportunity and less time to acquire the infection. Ivanhoe (1943) studied the transmission of amebiasis in a home for children. This examination showed that under conditions favorable for the spread of the infection, that is, poor hygiene, crowding, etc., epidemiology in children does not differ from that in adults. Costa Mascaró (1945), Castelli (1944) and Tupas et al. (1946) found many cases of amebiasis in children and also in nurslings. In the observations of the senior author (1947) the youngest child with amebiasis was 16 days old; this child had contracted his infection from a ''cyst-passer'' grandmother. The majority of patients, however, are in the age group between 20 and 40 years.

Sex seems to be important; men are more often infected than women. This may, perhaps, be related to their occupations and hobbies, which lead them into situations where infection is more easily acquired. (Manson-Bahr, 1945.)

Race is not a significant factor. Indigenous inhabitants, however, seem to suffer less from complications in highly endemic zones because they have developed partial immunity during earlier infections.

Seasonal incidence is observed because there are more flies during the warmer seasons, and, consequently, a greater number of mechanical transmissions occur. On the other hand, the rainy season in the tropics causes floods which rapidly spread infected feces over a wide area. Many exacerbations are observed after holidays and feasts, when individuals are apt to overeat, thus causing a relapse of the amebiasis.

The incidence of amebiasis was analyzed by Manson-Bahr (1943), Craig (1944), Morton (1946), Cintra do Prado and Figliolini (1946), Klatskin (1946), Tallant and Maisel (1946), Elson et al. (1947), Felsenfeld and Young (1946 and 1948), and others. Craig (1944) gave the average incidence of amebic infections in the United States as 8.1 per cent, while Faust (1942) estimated it to be as high as 20 per cent. Recent regional investigations in the United States showed the following incidence of *E. histolytica:*

Wenrich and Arnett (1942)—12 per cent of food handlers and 10.7 per cent of student assistants in a Philadelphia school.

Headlee and Cable (1942)—5 per cent among students in a Kentucky rural college.

Nickel (1942)—4.4 per cent of the general population of Mississippi.

Summers (1942)—4 per cent of the students in a Florida school.

Browne et al. (1945)—14.1 per cent among gastrointestinal patients in the New Orleans area.

Felsenfeld and Young (unpublished data)—9 per cent in inhabitants of Chicago.

Incidence in state hospitals and other mental institutions seems to be high, mainly among the personnel working with amebic patients, according to Burrows (1943) and Hopp (1944). The principal reason for the high infection rate, however, is the lowered hygienic habits of mental patients, the overcrowding, and the generally poor living conditions in many mental hospitals. Birnkraut et al. (1945) found 11.5 per cent amebic infection in an asylum. While 6 per cent of the employee food handlers harbored *E. histolytica,* 14 per cent of the patient food handlers were infected. Castelli (1944), however, called attention to the fact that amebiasis is increasing not only among people living under bad hygienic conditions, but also among the rich and well to do.

In South America, former investigations revealed that 6 to 85 per cent of the population were infected with *E. histolytica.* Tropical regions are most heavily infested. Beltrán (1942, 1944) and Beltrán and Larenas (1941, 1943) have shown that in Mexico the frequency of amebiasis varies from 7 to 47 per cent or higher, according to locality and hygienic conditions. Ravelo-Barré and Thomen (1943) found 14 per cent infestation in the Dominican Republic. In Brazil, Renault and Versiani (1940), do Amaral (1943), and Velho de Silva and Lopes Pontes (1944) reported a varying per cent of the population infected, 8.33 to 40 per cent.

In Europe, 1 to 10 per cent of the population are infected. In Asia, the most heavily infested areas are in the south—Bengal, Bombay, and South China, respectively. Many cases have been reported from North Africa, fewer from tropical and South Africa. Amebiasis is not often found among the inhabitants of Australia.

PATHOLOGY

Endamoeba histolytica lives in the tissue of the intestinal wall, which it penetrates with the aid of proteolytic ferments (called *cytolysins* by their discoverer, Craig) and by motility. Those which do not enter the intestinal wall are discharged with the feces. Faust (1941) offered conclusive proof that *E. histolytica* cannot live in the lumen of the intestines and also that small lesions are found in the "cyst passers," who do not show symptoms of amebiasis. Such lesions, consisting of microscopic areas of cytolysis and superficial necrosis, are very often overlooked. In order to be observed, they must be carefully searched for by the pathologist. Thus one should not use the expression "carrier" in amebiasis, because lesions are always present when cysts occur in the stools.

The invading amebae destroy the columnar epithelium of the large intestine and dig down into the crypts of Lieberkühn. Finally, they penetrate the basement membrane of the mucosa and enter the submucosa. They engulf blood cells and remnants of tissue cells. Cysts are never found in the tissues—only trophozoites.

The microscopic picture of the lesions reveals stasis and capillary thrombosis, resulting in edema and necrosis. Later, fibrosis may develop in the vicinity. In the beginning, when secondary bacterial infection is not present, leucocytes do not appear in the picture. The amebae conglomerate near the edges of the ulcers, in the crypts, and in the interglandular tissue. They often appear in "nests." The amebae spread in the lymph spaces, in and along the thrombosed veins and capillaries, and gain access to the portal circulation, which carries them to the liver. This explains why the liver is the favored site of amebic lesions.

The macroscopic picture is in agreement with this process. The first visible lesions usually consist of yellow nodules localized mostly on the summits of the mucosal folds. They contain viscid material, filling the cavity which has its base in the submucosa. When such a lesion bursts into the lumen of the intestine, an ulcer, with undermined edges, narrow neck, and broad base, with a clean floor, is formed. This is the "flask-shaped ulcer." When the ulcer spreads horizontally in the submucosa, a "buttonhole ulcer" *(bouton-en-chemise)* originates. Small, superficial ulcers do not show inflammatory changes. They are not undermined. Many of them heal quickly and new ones are formed.

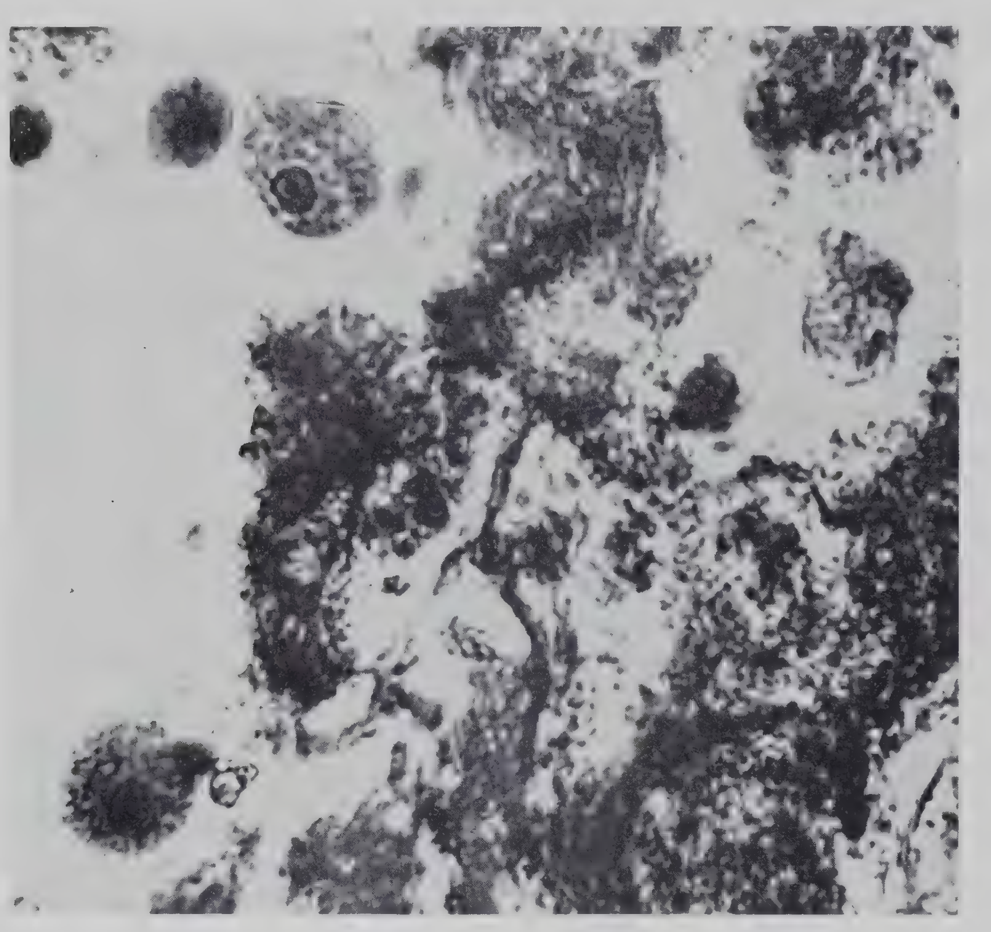


Fig. 16.—Base of an amebic ulcer, showing organisms. (Original photomicrograph of Oscar Felsenfeld.)

Deep ulcers reach into the muscular layer. They have thick, shaggy, swollen, much undermined, and elevated edges. Fresh ulcers have rough and old ulcers clean bases. There are numerous secondary hemorrhages, but the mucosa between the ulcers has a grossly normal appearance. Often sinuses are formed under the mucosa. Sometimes the whole colon is covered with round ulcers, having raised, undermined edges and white, fluffy bases. These are known as "sea anemone ulcers."

The entire colon may be covered with a dark exudate; the membrane may be undermined and burrowed. This is called the "seaweed colon." Necrotic sloughs and remnants of more resistant supporting tissue on the base of deep ulcers are described as "Dyak hair sloughs." The intestine may resemble a "buffalo skin."

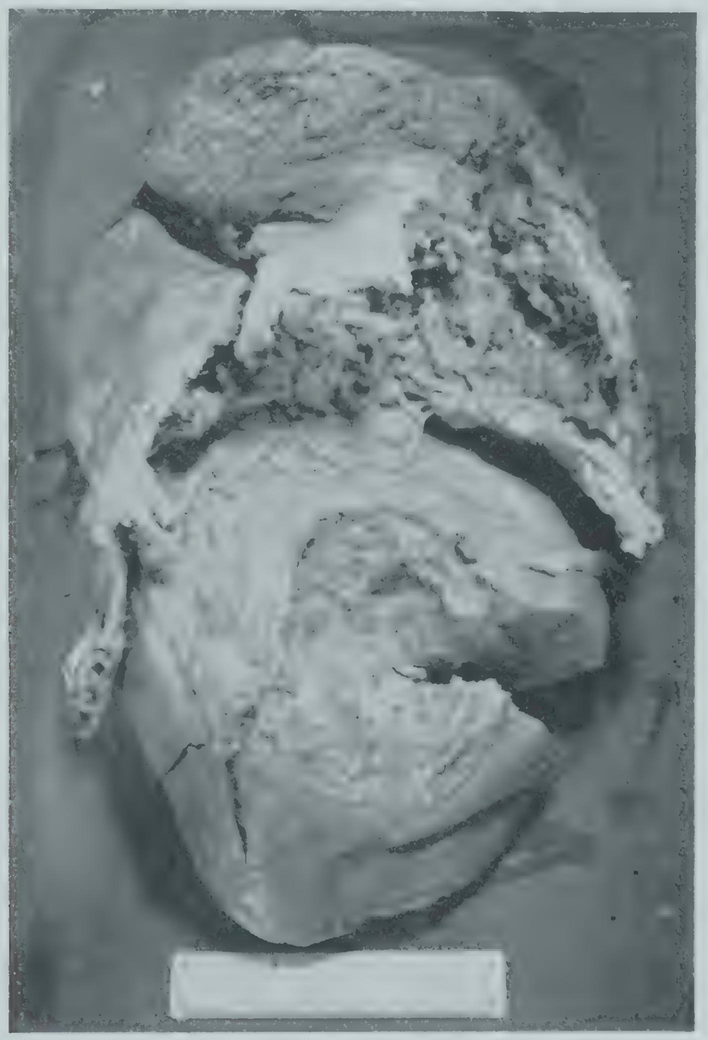


Fig. 17.—Amebic liver abscess. (Courtesy of Dr. Paul B. Szanto, Pathologist, Kankakee State Hospital.)

Solitary, isolated ulcers, with hard margins, which during life resemble malignant growths, mainly when localized in the rectum, are often found. Amebic granuloma, containing giant cells and amebae, and resembling carcinoma, is rarely observed.

The walls of the intestine are often atrophic and dilated. Even sacculation may occur between the ulcers. Fibrosis, mainly of the submucosa, leads to thickening of the intestinal wall. Frequent combinations of atrophy and hyperplasia are observed.

Secondary infections cause inflammatory changes. The pathologic diagnosis of co-existing bacillary and amebic dysentery may be very difficult. Anaerobic bacteria, mainly Clostridia, so often abundant in the intestines, may cause gangrene.

Amebic ulcerations serve as a portal of entry for allergens which often cause allergic phenomena (Napier, 1943; Klatskin, 1946).

If the ulcers heal, smooth, depressed, nonpigmented scars result. The healing process includes formation of granulation tissue and rapid regeneration.

Perforation of the ulcers occurs infrequently because of the protective hyperplastic-proliferative reaction of the serosa of the intestines.

According to Clark (1925), the lesions are most frequent and most extensive near the ileocecal valve, in the flexures of the colon, and in the rectum. About 85 per cent of the patients show ulceration of the cecum, and in about 60 per cent all parts of the lower bowel are affected. About 20 per cent of the patients do not have lesions in the rectum and sigmoid.

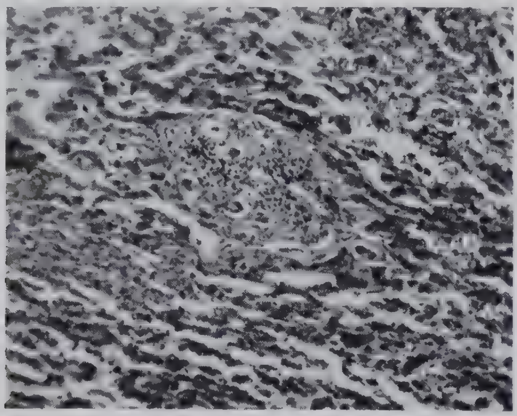


Fig. 18.—Microscopic picture of liver abscess. (Original photomicrograph of Oscar Felsenfeld.)

The pathogenesis and pathologic physiology of the liver lesions have been minutely described by Manson-Bahr (1943). They consist of foci of miliary necrosis, or coalescent, nonsuppurative areas, called "liver abscess." Both may be solitary or multiple, of variable size. The liver abscess occurs most often in the right lobe, and usually only one abscess develops. No pyogenic membrane is found if the abscess is rapidly formed. An old abscess has poorly defined connective tissue walls. Charcot-Leyden crystals, hematoidin crystals, fat globules, cholesterol, and remnants of tissue cells are found in the contents. Amebae appear only in the living tissue. The liver is enlarged. Local peritonitis and serous exudate are often seen. Fatty degeneration and formation of new bile channels are frequent.

The liver abscess may perforate into the abdominal, pleural, or pericardial cavities. It may give rise to abscess formation in the lungs, brain, or other organs. Skin lesions are rare and develop usually around amebic fistulae of the intestine. Similarly, urinary amebiasis is very unusual and originates most often following a perforation of the intestines or a perinephric or subphrenic amebic abscess into the kidneys or bladder (Watson, 1945).

CLINICAL SYMPTOMS

The *incubation time* is very irregular, from a few days to several months.

The clinical picture of amebiasis consists of many qualitatively and quantitatively different elements. Several attempts have been made to classify the diverse clinical syndromes under which amebiasis presents itself. Two of these classifications are most useful: those of D'Antoni (1942) and Craig (1944). In the following pages the clinical picture of amebiasis will be discussed, following closely D'Antoni's division of the forms of this disease.

One must realize that the clinical picture of amebiasis is governed not only by the actual extent of the pathology but also by a series of reflex and vasomotor changes induced by the lesions. Trabaud (1934) showed that the sympathetic system is of paramount importance in the production of the nervous manifestations in amebiasis. In addition, toxic and allergic phenomena play a role. These are due to the disintegration of the amebic tissue, to the activity of secondary invaders, and to the absorption of allergens through the ulcers. In the last five years we have examined bacteriologically and parasitologically stools from more than 700 patients with amebiasis. In only 3 per cent of them were we unable to find secondary invaders, such as Protei, paracolon organisms, flagellates, and others. It must be considered that these organisms may add to the general so-called "toxic" symptoms so often observed in amebiasis.

Craig (1944) stated that amebiasis always causes clinical symptoms, even in the so-called "symptomless carrier state," but these complaints may be so mild and the patient so accustomed to them that he either does not pay any attention to them or attributes them to some other cause.

Subclinical Amebiasis

This is the symptomless "carrier" or "cyst passer" state. Most of the patients do not apply for medical care, and if they do they generally come to the physician's office or to the clinic for other reasons. The majority of such "cyst passers" are discovered by parasitologic surveys, on routine gastrointestinal check-ups, and when an investigation is carried out by public health authorities to discover the source of infection of a clinically manifest case. Upon questioning, some "cyst passers" reveal vague general symptoms, such as lassitude, fatigue, occasional headaches, irritability, disturbances of sleep and appetite, vasomotor manifestations, such as a feeling of cold in the extremities, palmar perspiration, palpitation, etc. These symptoms, as Craig (1944) pointed out, are not at all typical of amebiasis. If caused by *E. histolytica,* however, they disappear after antiamebic treatment.

The danger of subclinical amebiasis is twofold. First, clinical symptoms may develop when the host-parasite relationship is disturbed. There seems to be an equilibrium established between the invading amebae and the defense mechanism of the body of the host. If this equilibrium is disturbed in favor of the parasites, the process spreads, causing amebic dysentery and even liver abscess. Cases of amebiasis of the liver, which have developed without clinical intestinal signs, and in which practically no bowel lesions are seen, originate from symptomless carrier states.

Second, the carrier is a dangerous source for the spread of amebiasis. As stated above, the disease is transmitted only by cysts. Therefore the "cyst passer'' is an effective propagator of amebiasis, mainly when he is a food handler—cook, waiter, food store clerk, marketing vegetable gardener or farmer, dairy worker, etc. Under lowered hygienic conditions, the stools of a ''cyst passer'' may contaminate supplies of water used by other people. Because of the large number of such "cyst passers" among the population of the Americas, no effective antiamebic program is possible unless they are cured.

Symptomatic Amebiasis—Syndromic Amebiasis

Amebiasis With Prevailing Constipation.—Simon (1934), Howard (1939), Manson-Bahr (1943), Craig (1944), Lopes Pontes (1945), and others emphasize constipation as an outstanding symptom in many cases of amebiasis. In the type of amebiasis designated here as ''amebiasis with prevailing constipation,'' constipation usually dominates the picture. There are, however, diarrheal episodes, mostly in the early morning hours. These attacks may be instigated or initiated by certain foods and may be attributed to food allergy, or a nervous upset may lead to their occurrence. Excessive indulgence in alcohol may also bring on an attack. The patient is awakened by the necessity for evacuation of the bowels. Pain is usually present, either diffuse or localized, in the lower abdomen. The pain may even be colicky. Colic, however, is not reported in very many cases. One or more stools terminate the attack. These are copious but, as a rule, do not contain blood or mucus. The number of bowel movements does not exceed three to four per day. The diarrhea lasts only one or two days. Following it, constipation commences, which is again interrupted by a new attack of diarrhea after a period of two or more weeks to months.

Constipation with a consecutive diarrheal attack is also observed. It is characterized by mild epigastric pain or feeling of pressure, mainly after meals, and moderate hyperchlorhydria, thus resembling gastric or gall bladder disease. This form, often observed in the Midwestern United States, was recently described in Brazil by Lopes Pontes (1945a).

Distention, particularly after eating, is a common complaint in amebiasis. It is caused by the accumulation of gas and is the source of much discomfort. Distressing flatulence and borborygmus are present, usually involving the right side of the abdomen. Manson's sign, the ''amebic splash,'' that is, sensation of fluidity upon palpation, is often observed. Discomfort, distress, or pain may appear in paroxysms lasting one or more hours. The pain may remain localized or it may migrate.

Gastric disturbance, resulting from the distention and consequent reflex pain, is frequent. The appetite may be capricious. Dislike of certain foods is not unusual.

There is no fever. On the contrary, the temperature trend is toward the subnormal, falling in the morning to 96° or 97° F. (35.5° to 36° C.), as pointed out by Craig (1944).

The general symptoms connected with this type are those described under the heading Subclinical Amebiasis. Lack of concentration and memory, sleeplessness or sleepiness, especially in the morning, and headache in the early hours are very frequent in this type of amebiasis.

These clinical symptoms explain why this disease is often mistaken for nervous, irritable, or spastic colon, food allergy, neurasthenia, duodenal ulcer, chronic gastritis, and other conditions.

The stools do not show blood, except in very rare instances. A few leucocytes and pyknotic nuclei may be present. Much undigested food is present during the diarrhea. Often several specimens, including postcathartic stools, must be examined before the amebae are discovered. Manson-Bahr (1943) recommended that the feces adhering to the rectal mucosa be examined for cysts. The authors have found this a very helpful procedure.

Amebic Diarrhea.—This type differs from the former in the development of a more expressed diarrheal pattern. The disease begins suddenly or slowly. The first attack of diarrhea or the recurrent attack may be caused by many factors, such as excess food, alcohol, nervous upset, etc. The attack is similar to that described under Amebiasis With Prevailing Constipation, except that the stools may be more numerous, as many as ten a day, the average being three to five. In addition, the attack lasts for several days, the stools remaining semifluid for some time. It is not uncommon for constipation of a short duration to follow, mainly in cases treated with intestinal absorbents and astringents.

Colic is usually present. The attacks are terminated by the evacuation of copious, light-colored or very dark, frequently semifluid stools, with mucus and a few leucocytes. There is definite relief after the evacuation of the stool. Usually much gas accompanies the feces.

The colic or the pain may be diffuse or localized. If localized, the favored sites are in the following order: over the cecum, sigmoid, descending colon, transverse colon, and lumbar region. The sigmoid is sensitive upon deep pressure. This is Manson's "amebic signpost."

The pain often shows definite changes. It may increase with cramps of short duration, changing into a feeling of deep pressure and distention. There is much gas, flatulence, and borborygmus. Flatulence may be the most outstanding complaint of the patient.

The pain may depend upon meals. In many cases, there is a feeling of fullness and distention after meals and pain appears within a few hours thereafter. There is no tenesmus.

A mild elevation of the temperature, without great changes in the blood picture, may be observed on the first day of the diarrheal attack. It usually reaches 100° F. (38° C.).

Gastric disturbance and changes in the appetite are present in many cases. While the types of amebiasis described above do not cause loss of weight, this is observed in amebic diarrhea mainly during the hot season. This loss is often compensated during the winter months. The nervous symptoms are the same as in the preceding types of amebiasis.

The stools contain mucus, some leucocytes, and pyknotic bodies. Many tissue cells, yeasts, and mold spores are common. If the disease is of longer duration, Charcot-Leyden crystals are not rare.

The clinical symptoms of amebic diarrhea must be differentiated from chronic mucous colitis. In amebiasis, strings or casts of the bowel are never evacuated. Finding amebae will establish the diagnosis. Ulcerative colitis and carcinoma, the latter resembling solitary amebic ulcers, must be differentiated also by the aid of x-ray and proctoscopic examination. Intestinal tuberculosis may cause many symptoms simulating amebiasis. Constant elevation of temperature, loss of weight, lung findings, and stool examination will determine the diagnosis. It must be pointed out that, in the authors' experience, the intestines of persons with carcinoma or diseases involving the blood-forming organs, such as leucemia, Hodgkin's disease, etc., are often invaded by *E. histolytica.* Therefore, if amebae are found, they should not be considered as the exclusive factor, for other diseases may be present. One must keep in mind, too, that there are no diseases; there are only sick people.

Intermediate Type of Amebiasis.—Many cases of amebiasis cannot be classified. The dividing line between the two preceding types is the duration of the diarrhea and the composition of the stools. One finds a number of cases which at times show the characteristics of one and at times features of the other type. Such cases should be classified as intermediates. The most common of these is the seasonal type. After excessive eating or consumption of alcohol, often at the time of national or religious celebrations, the diarrheal course develops, with mucus in the stools. Then the pattern of constipation is followed through the intervening months, reverting to the diarrheal type after new excesses.

Irregular bowel action, without frank diarrhea, with enterospastic symptoms, and weakness after defecation, as described by Browne et al. (1945), is another frequent manifestation of amebiasis which must be classified as an intermediate type.

Acute and Chronic Amebic Dysentery.—This is the classical amebiasis, mostly observed in hot climates and often becoming manifest in persons recently arriving from the tropics.

The onset is sudden or gradual. If gradual, the disease begins with a mild diarrhea; later, evacuation of feces with mucus and blood develops. Colic and tenesmus are usually absent during the acute stage. Tenesmus may develop later, as a result of anal irritation. The pains may vary in intensity.

In cases with sudden onset, the pain is generally intense and localized in the same regions as in amebic diarrhea. The stools are copious and always contain fecal material. In very acute cases, as many as twenty-five to thirty bowel movements a day are observed. The majority, however, have about five to fifteen stools per day. They contain blood-streaked mucus. When the blood is greatly altered and intermingled with mucus and feces, "anchovy sauce'' stools are observed. Pinhead-sized particles of bloody mucus simulate ''sago grains.'' Decomposed blood may give the feces a very dark discoloration.

There is much abdominal discomfort, feeling of distention, and pressure. Flatulence is common.

According to Mukherjee (1942), fever is present in about 10 to 15 per cent of the cases. It occurs more frequently in acute forms. It reaches 100° to 101° F. (38° to 38.5° C.). There is a definite loss of weight during the disease.

In fulminating cases, gangrene of the intestines develops, due to secondary infection. In other cases the ulcers penetrate rapidly and cause perforation of the blood vessels with extensive hemorrhages. They may break through the intestinal wall and initiate peritonitis. This form is fortunately rare, and ordinarily a chronic state develops.

Chronic amebic dysentery is characterized by general symptoms, as previously described. Abdominal discomfort and flatulence cause great distress. There is usually localized pain, mostly above the cecum or sigmoid. The number of stools is increased, or constipation alternates with diarrhea. There may be persistent low-grade fever, resembling brucellosis or tuberculosis. Intermittent fever, with peaks as high as 102° to 104° F. (39° to 40° C.) has also been reported. During the attack of diarrhea the stools show the characteristics of dysenteric feces; they contain various amounts of mucus and blood.

If the disease is not treated, further developments with several courses may be observed.

In unfavorable cases, loss of weight continues. A ''myxinoid'' inelastic skin develops. Sequelae and complications arise which kill the emaciated patient.

In more favorable cases, the disease may revert to a milder form. Frequently a subclinical state is the outcome. In other instances a type with constipation develops.

As to the differential diagnosis, the classical picture is easily recognized, if stool examinations are made. The acute form may resemble typhoid or Salmonella fever. However, the spleen is not enlarged in amebiasis. Differentiation from bacillary dysentery in cases with acute onset and tenesmus may be very difficult. Laboratory examination of fresh stools for both parasitic and bacillary incitants of diarrhea will solve the differential diagnosis.

Amebiasis With Localized Symptoms.—There are forms which are more or less confined to certain segments of the bowel in such a way that the resulting symptoms closely resemble other diseases. Most important of the manifestations of amebiasis are the following forms:

Amebic Typhlitis and Appendicitis.—Because more than 80 per cent of the amebic lesions involve the cecum, symptoms in this region of the bowel are not at all rare. A picture clinically resembling subacute appendicitis is a common feature. When the course is subacute or chronic, pain localized in that region is the most outstanding symptom. Acute amebic ulcers may cause elevation of temperature, to 100° to 102° F. (38° to 39° C.) Pain is always present. Nausea may be one of the complaints. While the pain is localized in the right iliac fossa, there is little alteration of the pulse and of the respiration. The number of white blood cells may be increased. If the number exceeds 15,000 to 16,000, secondary infection must be suspected. Such an invasion also causes symptoms of peritoneal irritation to a marked degree, so that all clinical signs of such an involvement—signs of Ploenius, Rovsing, and Blumberg—become strongly positive. The differential diagnosis of amebic typhlitis and appendicitis from other diseases of these portions of the bowel is of paramount importance, because operation upon the amebic intestines leads to rupturing sutures, fistula formation, cutaneous amebiasis, etc. Finding amebae in the stool and prompt reaction of the patient to emetine permit avoidance of grave consequences.

Amebic Granuloma.—Amebic granuloma is a condition often mistaken for malignancy, because the proctoscopic and x-ray pictures resemble that of annular carcinoma. This condition was recently discussed by Reddy and Rangam (1946) and Silverman and Leslie (1947). Examination of biopsy material will determine the diagnosis, as suggested by Smyth (1946).

Amebiasis Resembling Cholecystitis.—True amebic cholecystitis is very rare. Most strains of amebae are killed by bile. But when the lesions are localized in the splenic flexure of the colon or in the transverse colon, the symptoms may closely resemble cholecystitis, with or without cholelithiasis. There is a feeling of pressure, dull pain, or even cramps in the right upper quadrant, often irradiating dorsally and caudally. The pressure or the pain becomes worse after meals. Intermittent diarrhea may be present. For the differential diagnosis the following features are important: The typical attack of cholelithiasis causes much stronger pain than does amebiasis. Amebiasis only rarely shows icterus. On palpation, the point of pain is more localized in cholecystitis than in amebiasis. Laboratory examination is of the utmost value.

Amebiasis Resembling Ulcers of the Stomach or of the Duodenum.—Pain beginning two or three hours after meals is often present in mild forms of amebiasis. When the pathology is localized in the transverse colon, there may be sensitivity to pressure under the xiphoid process of the sternum or to the left side of it. In other cases there is heartburn, with hyperacidity, pain between or shortly after meals, feeling of fullness, with constipation and dark stools.

Other types are relatively rare.

Complications

The manifold complications of amebiasis may be divided into intestinal and extraintestinal types.

Perforation.—These are not very frequent. In North America, they occur only in about one out of one thousand cases of amebiasis. They may develop suddenly or slowly, according to the thickening of the wall and peritoneal reactive processes in the vicinity. The perforations are usually in the cecum, appendix, or rectum. They may be single or multiple. The result depends upon the site of the perforation. Most frequent are perforations into the peritoneal cavity, causing peritonitis. Perforations into the pericardium and urinary tract are rare. Slowly developing perforations may cause pericolic, perirectal, or perinephritic abscess.

A sudden perforation is revealed by pain, or colic, distention of the abdomen, vomiting, collapse. There is an increase in the pulse rate and in the respiration. The temperature may remain subnormal during the first hours. Manson-Bahr (1943) pointed out that in toxic patients the symptoms are not always so dramatic, and the spreading of tenderness may be the only sign of perforation. We saw several cases in which the onset of the perforation could not be diagnosed, except for the sudden change in the stools which became glassy-like and consisted of a mixture of mucus and blood without other material normally present in the feces. The perforation of amebic typhilitis or appendicitis cannot be distinguished from perforations caused by other forms of appendicitis. Rectal perforation may be seen through sigmoidoscopy.

Abscess formation does not necessarily cause many clinical symptoms if the abscess is small. Changes in the blood picture are more extensive when secondary infection is present.

Hemorrhage.—Hemorrhages originate from the erosion of vessels at the bases of intestinal ulcers. Small hemorrhages may be observed also in patients with hemorrhoids when these bleed during an attack of amebic diarrhea or dysentery. Hemorrhages always must be carefully investigated and treated accordingly.

Amebic Hepatitis.—Hepatitis occurs in 0.1 to 5 per cent of cases with amebiasis. In the northern parts of the United States, where the smaller type of ameba causes most of the infections, hepatitis is very rare. Excellent reviews of this complication were published by Warshawski et al. (1946) and Klatskin (1946). Klatskin (1946) distinguishes the following types: acute, subacute, and chronic hepatitis, which must be differentiated from amebic abscess.

The onset is usually sudden. There are, however, cases of intestinal amebiasis, with unexplainable short chills, which later develop into the classical picture of amebic hepatitis. Manson-Bahr (1943) believes that chills result from periodic invasions of the liver by amebae. There is irregular fever, especially in the acute form, frequently reaching 102° to 104° F. (38° to 39° C.), often accompanied by sweating, mainly at night. The liver is enlarged and painful. The pain frequently irradiates mostly to the shoulders, less often to the back or upward; it increases upon movement, pressure, inspiration, and cough, and sometimes by lying on the side. While toxic icterus may be present, it is an exception rather than the rule. The number of white blood cells is frequently between 15,000 and 30,000. The number of mononuclear cells is decreased. The sedimentation rate of the red blood cells is increased.

Diarrhea is observed in many cases but may be absent. Nausea and vomiting are frequent. Cough may be an outstanding symptom.

The attack may subside after a few days or may precede the development of a liver abscess. Relapses may occur, or a chronic form may develop.

The subacute and chronic forms show less pain, little or no fever, and, in some cases, little or no change in the blood picture.

The acute form must be differentiated from amebic liver abscess and other conditions. In acute cholecystitis and cholangitis, bile pigments are found in the urine. A positive van den Bergh reaction and a high icteric index are discovered upon examination of the blood serum. Icterus is also present as a rule.

The subacute, chronic, and recurrent types must be distinguished from malaria, brucellosis, chronic cholecystitis, liver cirrhosis, stasis in heart disease, schistosomiasis, and other conditions.

Amebic Liver Abscess (Figs. 17 and 18).—Craig (1944) reported liver abscess in 5 per cent and Manson-Bahr (1943) in 2 to 5 per cent of the cases of amebiasis. It is usually a late complication of amebiasis and may also develop in cases where amebae are not found in the intestinal contents.

Newcomers to the tropics are more subject to liver abscess than persons born in such a climate. Excessive use of alcohol, malnutrition, and debilitating diseases likewise are predisposing factors for this complication.

The acute form, with symptoms closely resembling amebic hepatitis, is less frequent. Usually multiple abscess formation causes the acute symptoms. The pain is often relieved by lying on the right side. The number of white blood cells is lower, according to Klatskin (1946) higher, than in amebic hepatitis. There is often nausea or vomiting. Diarrhea is frequently absent. Coughing is a usual complaint.

The more frequent chronic form begins with a feeling of pressure. Later, pain develops, which often irradiates, as the pain in amebic hepatitis. It may be more intensive at night. The fever is low at the onset, reaching its peak in the evening. Later, chills may develop. Night sweats may accompany the drop in temperature, which becomes normal or even subnormal in the morning. Gastric and intestinal disturbances may be absent. The sedimentation rate of the red blood cells is often increased. Cough may cause much complaint. The abscess frequently localizes in the right lobe. There is pain on palpation and pressure, loss of weight, and indigestion. Pressure of the abscess on the bile channels may, in rare instances, cause icterus. Any part of the liver may show enlargement. The right diaphragm is frequently elevated and its movements limited. In other cases the lower liver border is shifted caudally. Enlargement of the left lobe may cause pressure or simulate enlarged spleen. Irritation of the diaphragm and the pleura causes coughing, as well as exudation and even compression of the right lower lobe.

The abscess may perforate into the abdominal cavity or, more often, into the lung. If perforation does not terminate the disease, emaciation is the usual cause of death. Only 15 to 30 per cent of unoperated patients survive.

The number of white blood cells is between 10,000 and 35,000. Da Silva (1945) states that the larger the abscess, the lower the cell count.

When the liver abscess is secondarily infected, the fever and the leucocytosis are high. Differential diagnosis may be very difficult in such cases.

Problems of differential diagnosis are numerous. In acute amebic hepatitis there is more pain on palpation. The liver is always enlarged in toto, while in amebic abscess, as a rule, only parts show an increased volume. Suppurative cholecystitis likewise must be differentiated. Pleurisy, chronic pneumonia, empyema, and tuberculosis may be distinguished by x-ray examination. Carcinoma of the liver may cause great diagnostic difficulties. Subphrenic abscess from perforated ulcers shows gas under the diaphragm. Infected hydatid cysts and undulant fever may be excluded by laboratory tests. Kala-azar, malaria, and typhoid fever produce leucopenia and spleen enlargement.

Other Localizations of the Amebic Abscess.—Amebic abscess of the lung is usually due to a liver abscess. It contains chocolate-colored pus, which is expectorated early in the disease. Later, the pus becomes more of a yellow color and contains Charcot-Leyden crystals. The x-ray examination shows a picture similar to bronchopneumonic consolidation. Fever may or may not be present. The white blood cell count is high. There is pain, cough, and hiccup. The condition is nearly always fatal.

The same is true of brain abscesses which cause symptoms according to their localization. Abscess of the spleen, epididymis, and penis and paranephritic abscess have also been described.

Cutaneous Amebiasis.—This condition, recently analyzed by Wilson and Hurewitz (1946), seldom develops. The usual site is around the anus or after operation establishing an artificial anus in an amebic intestine, or open drainage. Punched-out ulcers or irregular, spreading ulcerations with granulating painful bases are observed.

Urinary Amebiasis.—It is an accepted fact that such types of amebiasis are very rare. They occur as sequelae of perforation of an amebic intestine or abscess into the genitourinary system, according to Watson (1945, 1945a).

Amebiasis of the sexual organs is rare.

Sequelae

Progress of amebiasis may lead to permanent changes in the intestine. These, together with the reactions of the autonomic nervous system, discussed and classified recently by Lopes Pontes (1945a), and allergic phenomena, create a number of changes, causing the patient considerable distress.

Spastic Colon.—Spastic colon, indistinguishable from spastic or "irritable" colon of other origin, may result from amebiasis. It develops chiefly in persons who have suffered from much constipation during the amebiasis. There are spastic contractions of the colon, particularly of the descending large bowel. These contractions alternate with periods of relaxation, even hypoactivity of the colon. This sequel is very frequent in North America.

Mucous Colitis.—Manson-Bahr (1945) emphasizes this sequel. In our observations of mucous colitis which develops in amebiasis there are not many eosinophiles in the stools. Finding of large casts of the bowel in the feces is also rare. Varying amounts of mucus are expelled with the stools, which may vary from day to day in the same patient.

Postamebic Gastrointestinal Disturbances.—This condition may be characterized by hyperchlorhydria or by hypochlorhydria. It is the result of a combination of the nervous disturbances, to which the lessened ability of the diseased intestines to absorb the B vitamin complex (Ascoli, 1946) adds further reasons for dysfunction. As in the preceding conditions, it may originate during the actual amebiasis and become predominant during convalescence. It often presents therapeutic difficulties, especially if for some reason an adequate diet cannot be sustained.

Intestinal Ulceration.—Manson-Bahr (1945) points out that ulcers of the small intestine may appear as a sequel to amebiasis.

Chronic ulcerative colitis of the large bowel is often observed, either as a complication or as a sequel to amebiasis. Secondary infection and disturbances of bowel innervation play a major part in its development. The clinical picture does not differ from that of the so-called ''idiopathic'' ulcerative colitis.

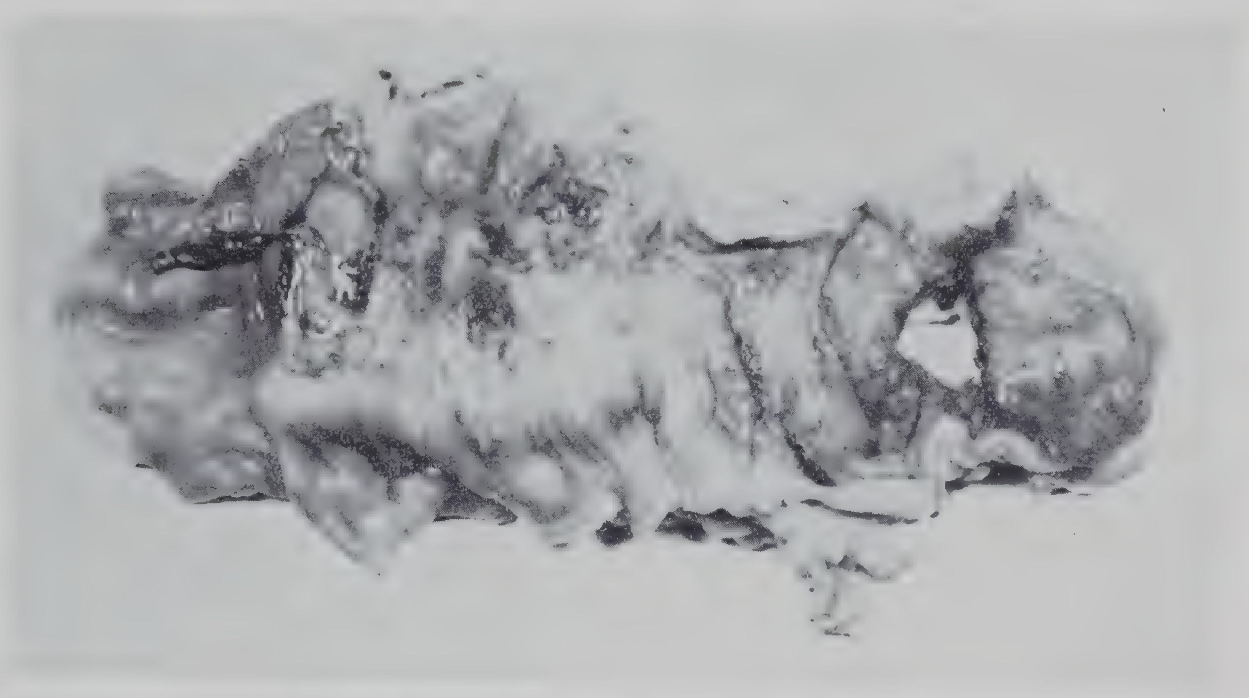


Fig. 19.—Amebic colon, showing typical ulcerations. A defect penetrating the entire wall is due to the great fragility of this diseased tissue. (From the collection of R. B. H. Gradwohl.)

Hill Diarrhea and Sprue.—While many authors consider these conditions as separate entities *sui generis,* others see amebiasis as the cause. Hill-diarrhea-like conditions of different intensity are often observed immediately following amebiasis. Disturbances of fat absorption are not rare in chronic amebiasis.

Malformations of the Colon.—Strictures and stenoses are rarely sequelae of amebiasis. Rather, dilatations and diverticula tend to develop. Megacolon has been observed. These conditions are diagnosed by x-ray.

Diseases of the Rectum.—Prolapse of the rectum and hemorrhoids are not infrequent, particularly in long-standing cases. Periproctitis, with or without abscess formation, may result, chiefly in patients with extensive secondary infections.

Malignancy.—Manson-Bahr (1945) calls attention to carcinomatosis originating in amebic and postamebic lesions. Reed and Anderson (1936) described a number of cases with malignancy observed after amebiasis. This sequela, however, seems to be rare.

Nephritis.—Interstitial nephritis is often observed in fatal cases of amebiasis. Nephritis may develop during the acute phases of amebiasis and is frequently overlooked if periodic urine examinations are not carried out. The pain in the back may be attributed to the diseased intestines, which holds true in most patients who complain of such pain. A latent nephritis is frequently discovered through the use of nephrotoxic drugs in the treatment of the amebiasis.

Neurasthenia.—Neurasthenia acompanies all types of amebiasis. Craig (1944) stated that many cases of "tropical neurasthenia" are caused by amebiasis.

SIGMOIDOSCOPIC EXAMINATION

Manson-Bahr (1945) found lesions during sigmoidoscopy in about 50 per cent of his cases; Browne et al. (1945), in about 18 per cent; Karl and Sloan (1946), in about 30 per cent. Many cases do not show such changes. The lesions are often microscopic and must be observed, according to Manson-Bahr's recommendations, through a magnifying glass.

One must emphasize that the sigmoidoscopic findings are often not paralleled by the clinical picture. Sometimes extensive lesions and only few clinical symptoms are observed, while in other cases scant pathology will be manifested by severe clinical features.

The rectosigmoidal junction and Houston's valves are the most frequent sites of visible lesions.

Often only small elevations with hyperemic margins are seen. There may be small depressions, granular patches, or scattered hemorrhages. An unchanged mucosa between the lesions is typical of amebiasis where secondary infection has not taken place.

Typical ulcers with undermined edges, easily bleeding bases, and hemorrhagic margins, covered with exudate and debris, may be seen. Large solitary ulcers are rarely observed. When they do occur, their usual location is just inside of the anal margin. They are painful and bleed easily. When the ulcers spread, they may coalesce and form larger easily bleeding defects.

X-RAY EXAMINATION

Vallarino (1925) called attention to filling defects in amebiasis. Weber (1933) and Bell (1938) consider a cone-shaped, deformed cecum characteristic of amebiasis. Ikeda (1934) stated that the x-ray picture differs according to the type of amebiasis; that is, if ulcerative, fibrous, or granulomatous processes predominate. Recently Wilbur and Camp (1946) and Arendt and Cohen (1948) revised the roentgenology of amebiasis, with the aid of studies of the mucosal pattern. Deformities of the cecum were often found. A

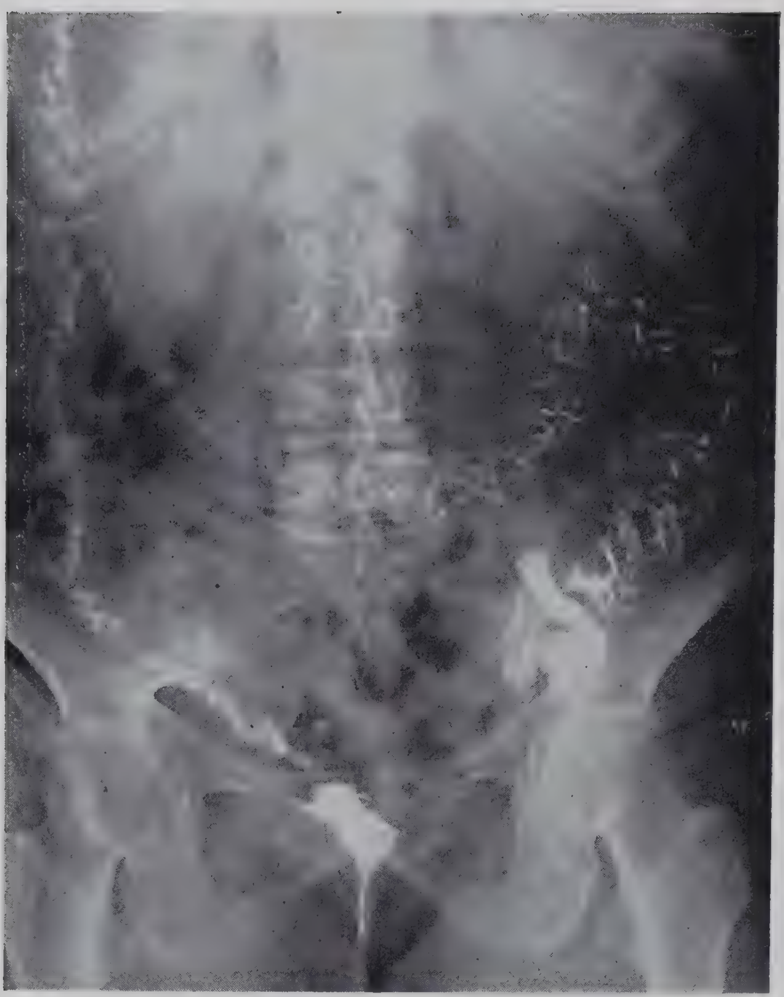


Fig. 20.—X-ray picture of bowel in amebiasis. (Courtesy of Dr. Arendt and Dr. Cohen and the Am. J. Roentgenol. & Radium Therapy, 1946.)

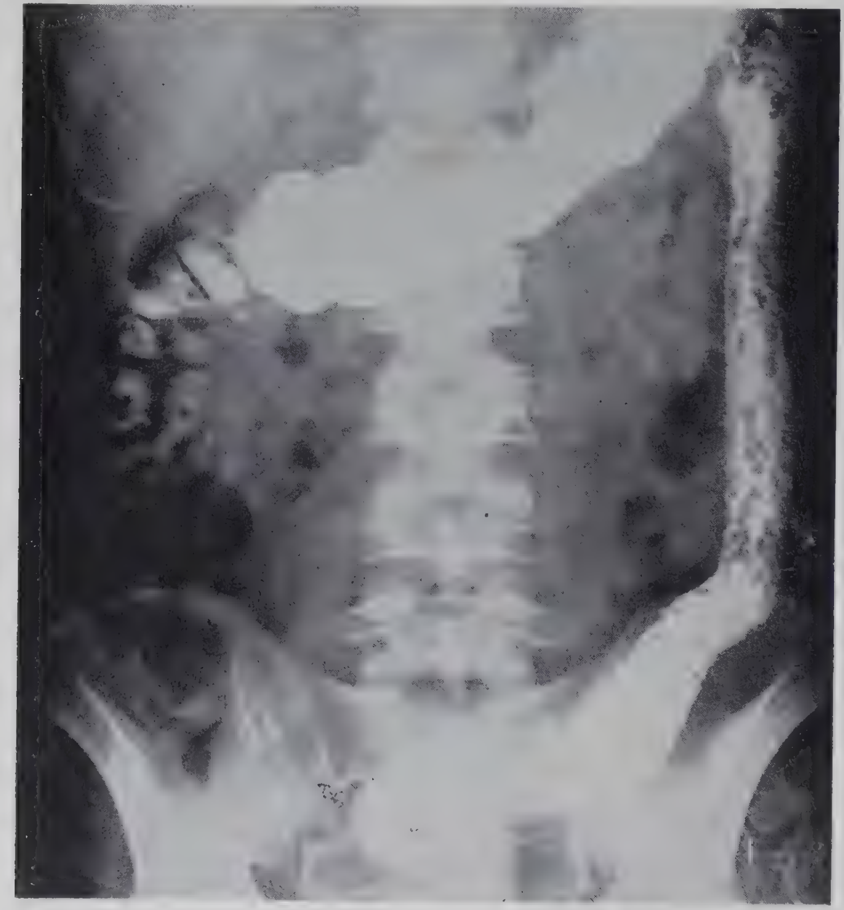


Fig. 21.—X-ray picture of bowel in chronic ulcerative colitis. (Courtesy of Dr. Arendt and Dr. Cohen and the Am. J. Roentgenol. & Radium Therapy, 1946.)

barbed-wire appearance of the bowel, similar to that seen in "irritable colon," was observed. In addition, swelling and widening of the mucosal folds, their disorientation, chiefly in the ascending colon and cecum, were present. The mucosal folds ascended with sharp angles. Soft double outlines showed swollen intestinal walls. Localized spasm over the cecum and ascending colon with irregular feathery pattern was frequently seen. In other cases, a narrowing of the sigmoid was observed. A wider system with fewer mucosal folds caused a paucity of the mucosal pattern in many cases. When chronic ulcerative colitis entered the picture, mucosal denudation in the descending colon developed. In other cases, wall defects, fibrosis, contraction and absence of haustration, or a corkscrew type of incomplete haustration were seen.

Arendt and Coheen (1948) found a mild degree of mucosal irregularity also in *Dientamoeba fragilis* and *Iodamoeba bütschlii* infections.

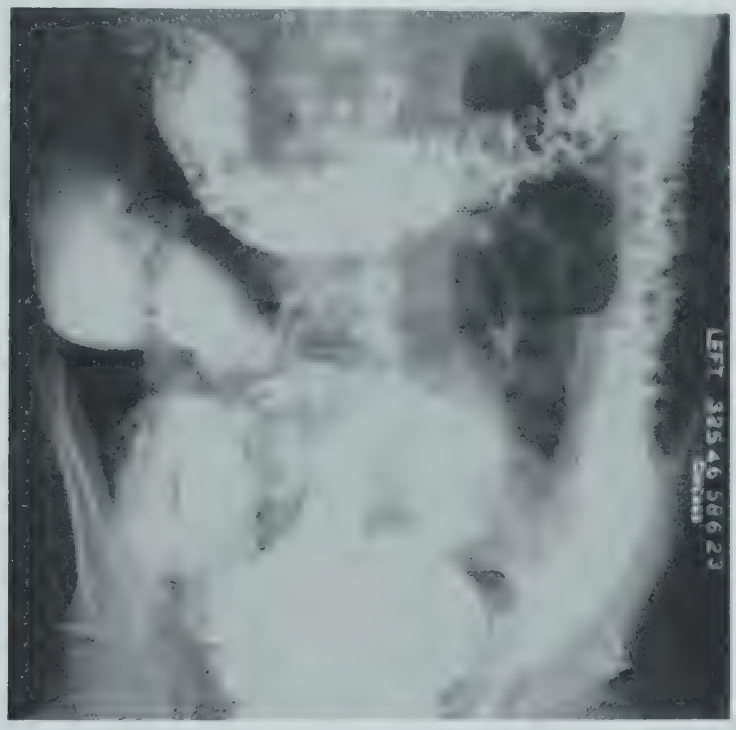


Fig. 22.—X-ray picture of bowel in bacillary dysentery. (Courtesy of Dr. Arendt and Dr. Cohen and Am. J. Roentgenol. & Radium Therapy, 1946.)

LABORATORY FINDINGS

Stool Examination

The laboratory proof of amebiasis is the finding of *E. histolytica*. As a rule, in formed stools one finds cysts, while in liquid stools trophozoites predominate.

The methods of examination are described in detail in Chapter 71 and by Gradwohl (1948).

It is imperative to examine every stool for both parasitic and bacillary incitants of diarrhea.

The cellular composition of the fecal material may give a hint as to the diagnosis. In the beginning of amebiasis, the exudate contains only a few leucocytes and extruded nuclei of white blood cells, called "pyknotic bodies" by Callender. These bodies are a constant finding in clinically manifest amebiasis. If red blood cells are present in larger numbers, they may show clumping. During the later development of amebiasis, Charcot-Leyden crystals may appear. Manson-Bahr (1945) warns against overestimating their importance. They are not specific for amebiasis. Undigested food, mycotic elements, and many epithelial cells are frequently found. When secondary infection develops, the picture may be changed.

Amebae usually disappear from the stools during a severe intercurrent bacillary intestinal disease, such as typhoid or Shigella dysentery. When these conditions clear, the amebae reappear. Exceptions, however, are often encountered, when *E. histolytica* is found and simultaneously Salmonellae or Shigellae are cultivated.

In order to be able to evaluate the results of therapy, the first stools after treatment must not be taken sooner than five days after discontinuation of the therapy. Three examinations should be performed, one week apart. Then, for six months, monthly examinations are advised. When the lesions are restricted to the upper parts of the large bowel, postcathartic stools are preferred.

Complement Fixation Tests

In cases where amebae are not found and suspicion of amebiasis persists, complement fixation tests may be performed. These are carried out with antigens prepared from alcohol-extracted amebae, according to Craig (1942). More recently the alcoholic antigen of Rees (1942) has become commercially available. The method of Bozicevich, Hoyem, and Walston (1946) (Gradwohl, 1948) is recommended.

The complement-fixation test is most valuable in amebic liver disease. It becomes negative after the disappearance of the amebae.

Blood Picture

There is no blood picture characteristic of amebiasis. A microcytic anemia is frequently seen. The red blood cell count is between 4,000,000 and 5,000,000; the hemoglobin is 65 to 80 per cent, sometimes higher.

In acute stages the white blood cell count is higher than in bacillary dysentery. In chronic cases without complications it is below 12,000. The lymphocytes may be increased and a slight monocytosis may exist. An increase in the number of the eosinophiles is observed only in some patients.

PROGNOSIS

If all types of amebiasis are considered, the disease appears as a relatively mild illness, with little mortality. When clinically manifest cases alone are taken into consideration, the mortality will be between 2 and 4 per cent. This varies, however, with the locality and intensity of the disease. While amebiasis in North America is generally mild, during the severe Chicago outbreak in 1933 the mortality reached 7 per cent. About 40 per cent of patients with amebic typhlitis and appendicitis die when operated upon.

Abscess formation makes the prognosis serious. When a liver abscess perforates into the lung, the prognosis is still somewhat better than if peritoneal perforation occurs. Brain abscess, intestinal perforations, and fulminant gangrenous cases of amebic dysentery are nearly always fatal.

TREATMENT*

Treatment of intestinal amebiasis consists of four factors: antiprotozoan, dietary, supportive, and symptomatic. All of these are of great importance and must be carried out systematically. During and after the course of therapy one must bear in mind that only in a fraction of the clinically manifest cases is the treatment finished when the stools are free from amebae. Many patients will require some special attention because of secondary infection and sequelae. Careful analysis of the clinical, sigmoidoscopic, and x-ray findings, as well as stool studies, will help to ascertain the best method for eradication of the residual troubles. Excellent discussions of the antiamebic drugs have been published recently by Manson-Bahr (1943), Craig (1944), Klatskin (1946a), Karl and Sloan (1946), Rail (1947). Arnett (1947), and others.

Antiamebic Drugs

Emetine.—This is the oldest and most highly valued drug. Experience, however, has shown that emetine does not kill the amebae but simply alleviates the toxic symptoms. On the other hand, this drug in itself is very toxic. Acting directly upon muscle fibers, it causes true myositis. The heart muscle suffers most frequently (Dack and Moloshok, 1947). The first signs of emetine intoxication are usually a drop in the blood pressure and irregular heart action. Tachycardia is often present. The patient is weak and may complain of paresthesias. Diarrhea is not rare. Symptom complexes resembling neuritis have been described. Progressive muscular atrophy and trophic disturbances of the skin, of the hair, and of the nails have also been observed. Children and pregnant women are very sensitive to this drug; therefore it should not be prescribed for them. Manson-Bahr (1943) called attention to the fact that amebae may become emetine-resistant if the drug is not used wisely.

In order to carry out the treatment in the most proper manner, the patient must remain in bed during the course of treatment and for three days following it. Blood pressure and pulse rate must be watched carefully. The treatment must be discontinued immediately if the blood pressure drops, the pulse frequently increases, or other signs of emetine intoxication appear.

Oral emetine treatment is new in America (Shrapnel et al., 1946). Emetine by mouth causes emesis and is less effective. Intramuscular injections are preferred by many authors. Some writers warn against the subcutaneous route because of the possible sensitivity of the skin. The drug must never be given per rectum or into the veins.

---

*See also Chapters 65 and 66.

The daily dose is 0.06 Gm., best divided into two portions: 0.03 Gm. in the morning and the same amount in the evening. The duration of the treatment is six to seven days, never longer than eight to ten days. If the emetine helps, it causes cessation or partial relief of the symptoms within the first four days. There is little use in continuing the drug on or after the fifth day if the condition of the patient has not improved.

A second course of emetine should not be given until at least three months have elapsed since the first course of treatment with emetine. Longer courses are advocated by Klatskin (1946 and 1946a).

Emetine is the only known drug which acts upon amebic tissue (Parmer, 1948). In spite of its toxic action, it must be used. Indications for emetine treatment are:

1. Amebic dysentery.
2. Acute or subacute amebic typhlitis and appendicitis
3. Amebic hepatitis
4. Amebic abscess

Contraindications of emetine therapy are:

1. Children
2. Pregnant women
3. Emaciated, cachectic patients
4. Cardiac disturbances, including sclerosis
5. Forms of amebiasis not listed as indications for emetine therapy.

Emetine-bismuth-iodide contains 25 to 30 per cent emetine. It is given by mouth, in gelatin or salol-coated pills. It is best used according to the principle of Manson-Bahr (1943), which, with some changes, is given below:

The patient is put to bed for the duration of the treatment and for three additional days. Fasting for three to four hours before the pill is taken is essential. The drug is given late in the evening. The treatment lasts for ten to twelve days, during which period the patient receives a total of 1.65 to 2 Gm. of the drug: 0.05 Gm. the first two days, 0.1 Gm. the next two days, and then 0.2 Gm. per day are given, together with a light sedative.

The indications and contraindications for this treatment are, in our opinion, the same as for emetine injections. The patient is observed as when emetine is injected. Vomiting is a very unpleasant effect of emetine-bismuth-iodide, often forcing discontinuation of this medication.

Derivatives of Arsonic Acid.—*Carbarsone,* Amebarson, *p*-carbamino-phenylarsonic acid, with about 28 per cent As, is given in gelatin capsules, containing 0.25 Gm. of the drug, two capsules a day, for ten days. It is also available in tablets.

Carbarsone in powder form may be used for enemas. After a cleansing enema, 200 c.c. of a warm 2 per cent solution of sodium bicarbonate and 1 per cent carbarsone are introduced. The patient must retain this enema for at least three to four hours. This is easily accomplished when the patient lies in bed and is allowed to change his position every hour. A mild sedative may be given.

Children receive 0.025 Gm. carbarsone per year of physical age every day. The treatment lasts for ten days.

Acetarsone, Stovarsol, Kubarsol, Spirocid, Fourneau 270, 3-acetylamino-4-hydroxy phenylarsonic acid, containing about 27 per cent As, is used in the same dosage as carbarsone. It is, however, absorbed from the intestine.

Both drugs are toxic for the liver and kidneys. They may cause symptoms of arsenic intoxication, such as colic, diarrhea, and dermatitis.

According to Craig (1944), arsenic preparations should be reserved for cases in which iodine preparations (and, if indicated, also emetine) have proved unsuccessful. The author suggests the use of carbarsone mainly in children who cannot receive emetine, and in combination with other drugs.

Neoarsphenamine was tried by Bruce (1946). *Milibis* has little effect.

Iodine Preparations.—*Chiniofon*, Quinoxyl, Kubalen, Anayodin, is a mixture of 4 parts of 7-iodo-8-hydroxyquinoline-5-sulfonic acid or its sodium salt containing 28 to 29 per cent iodine and 1 part sodium carbonate.

Chiniofon is an excellent antiamebic drug. Sometimes it causes diarrhea which is often stopped by bed rest and strict diet. Manson-Bahr (1943) recommends that this drug be given with small amounts of opium; for example, 0.03 Gm. t.i.d. Craig (1944) had excellent results with chiniofon.

Chiniofon is available in pills or tablets containing 0.25 Gm. There seems to be disagreement concerning the dosage of this drug. A course of 3 to 9 tablets a day, after meals, for seven to ten days, is recommended. After a one-week interval, the treatment may be repeated. Others prescribe one pill t.i.d. the first day, two pills t.i.d. the second to the fifth day, and three pills t.i.d. on the sixth and seventh days. Then for three weeks two pills t.i.d. are given every Friday, Saturday, and Sunday.

Children receive one tablet for each five years of physical age every day for a period of ten days.

For rectal application, 200 c.c. of a 2 to 3 per cent solution are given, after a cleansing enema. It is recommended that the patient follow the same precautions as in rectal therapy with carbarsone. The enemas are repeated every day for five to ten days.

Vioform, Enterovioform, Protozida, is iodo-chloro-hydroxyquinoline with 37.5 to 41.5 per cent iodine. It is a much used drug. It may cause irritation of the gastrointestinal tract, mainly of the stomach. It cannot be given per rectum.

Vioform is available in pills, tablets, or gelatin capsules, with 0.25 Gm. of the drug. Adults receive one to two tablets t.i.d. after meals for ten days. After an interval of one week, the course may be repeated. Children take one tablet per day for each five years of physical age for the period of ten days.

Diodoquin, diiodo-hydroxyquinoline, contains 63.9 per cent iodine. It causes very few secondary effects. This was emphasized by D'Antoni (1942).

In the author's experience, only one case of iodism and two cases of irritation of the bowel occurred among more than 450 patients. On the other hand, approximately 76 per cent were cured.

Adults receive 2 to 3 tablets t.i.d. after meals for twenty days. After a one-week interval, the treatment may be repeated. Children receive 2 tablets a day for each five years of physical age for ten days.

Diodoquin is the oral drug of choice, but is not given per rectum.

Combined Treatment.—Manson-Bahr (1943) gives emetine-bismuth-iodide by mouth and chiniofon in enemas for ten days. This treatment requires sedation to be given during the course. Of 535 cases of amebic diarrhea and dysentery, only 1.4 per cent showed relapses after this treatment.

Craig (1944) suggested that amebiasis be treated according to the type of the disease. He recommends emetine and chiniofon in amebic dysentery and chiniofon or Diodoquin in other types. If these drugs do not act in a satisfactory way, Carbarsone is given. The dosage of the drugs is regulated by the severity of the disease.

For a combined Protozida and Kubarsol treatment, Amebo Oral "Kuba" is used. Adults receive 4 to 8 tablets a day and children 1 tablet for each five years of physical age a day.

Browne et al. (1945) concluded that differences in various schedules of treatment are unimportant.

We feel that each drug has its own field of indications and contraindications. The choice of an iodine preparation may be difficult. One should keep in mind that if one of them is not tolerated or does not act, another may be used with success. We use Diodoquin in moderate cases and for children. Chiniofon is indicated in severe conditions since it may be given rectally. Carbarsone is used more than Acetarsone. Table IV shows our schedule of treatment.

Other Drugs.—*Bismuth subnitrate* was widely used before more effective drugs were devised. Now it is restricted to the treatment of postamebic diarrhea.

Kaolin, bolus alba, in large doses, as much as 50 to 100 Gm. a day, as an intestinal absorbent, is often given. It may, however, also absorb the antiamebic drug which is administered. Therefore it is preferably used between periods of active antiprotozoan treatment.

Antimalarial drugs, as Aralen and Pentaquine, have recently been used alone or in combinations.

Kurchi bark from *Holarrhena antidysenterica,* used as kurchine hydrochloride, 0.03 Gm. to 0.06 Gm. subcutaneously, or as kurchine bismuthiodide, 0.3 Gm. by mouth, has a questionable curative effect.

Chaparro amargoso is derived from *Castela nicholsoni,* an American plant. Its bark and leaves are used in decoctions and infusions. The dosage is 3 teaspoonfuls a day for ten days, or enema of 250 to 500 c.c. Comprehensive statistics on the action of this drug are still lacking.

Sulfonamides are beneficial in heavy secondary infections. Especially sulfadiazine is recommended by Karl and Sloan (1946).

TABLE IV. TREATMENT OF AMEBIASIS

TYPE OF AMEBIASIS	FIRST TREATMENT	CONTRAINDICATIONS	INTERMISSION	IF UNSUCCESSFUL, TREATED WITH	CONTRAINDICATION	SECOND TREATMENT IF NECESSARY
Subclinical and patients with constipational type	Diodoquin, 2-3 tablets t.i.d. for 20 days	None	10 days	Carbarsone, 1 tablet b.i.d. for 10 days	Liver and kidney disease	Repeat Diodoquin or chiniofon, 2-3 tablets t.i.d. for 10 days
Amebic diarrhea, intermediate forms, syndromic amebiasis without toxicity	Diodoquin, 2-3 tablets t.i.d. for 20 days	None	1-2 days	Carbarsone, 1 tablet b.i.d. for 10 days, and chiniofon enemas, 2-5 Gm. for 5 to 10 days	Liver and kidney disease	Repeat Diodoquin, or if unsuccessful in first course, chiniofon, 2-3 tablets t.i.d for 10 days
Toxic amebiasis, amebic dysentery	Either emetine injection, 0.03 Gm. b.i.d. for 5-7 days, or emetine per os; always with chiniofon per rectum for 5-10 days	Heart disease Severe liver or kidney damage	1-2 days	Carbarsone, 1 tablet b.i.d. or enemas for 10 days; if not tolerated, Diodoquin, 2-3 tablets t.i.d. for 10 days to 20 days	Liver and kidney disease None	Vioform, 1-2 tablets t.i.d. for 10 days; repeat after 7 days intermission
Amebic hepatitis and other extraintestinal forms	Emetine injection, 0.03 Gm. b.i.d. for 5-10 days	Heart disease	1-2 days	Revise diagnosis Aralen 0.25 Gm. t.i.d. for 10-14 days.	None	Treat amebic intestine (penicillin, sulfonamides)
Amebic abscess	Emetine injection, 0.03 Gm.b.i.d. for 5-10 days and puncture	Heart disease	According to case	Surgery	Severe cachexia	Penicillin, sulfonamides
Fulminating amebiasis	Emetine injection, 0.03 Gm. b.i.d. for 5 to 10 days	Heart disease	0	Chiniofon enemas for 10 days		Penicillin, sulfonamides.
	Penicillin O, 300,000 U	None				
	Bacitracin 120,000 U daily	None				

Emetine, penicillin, and *sulfonamides* are combined by Blanc and Siguir (1946) and Klatskin (1946), especially for acute cases and liver complications.

While this book has been in press, the following antibiotics have been found effective in amebiasis: aureomycin 2 Gm. per day for ten days; bacitracin 60,000 to 150,000 U per day for ten days; Neomycin 100,000 U daily per os, eventually combined with bacitracin; Chloromycetin 2 Gm. per day for ten to fourteen days.

Dietary Treatment

While diet must not be restricted unduly and enough should be given to support life adequately, it is dangerous to neglect the diet. D'Antoni (1942) first described a practical diet to be followed in dysentery that takes into account the food habits of the Americas and that can be easily carried out. This diet was orignally devised for the treatment of bacillary dysentery. We have recommended it in more than 800 cases of both chronic protozoan and bacillary dysentery. With a few adjustments for the requirements of the amebic patients, we recomend the diet as follows:

Permitted: All types of bread, preferably toasted; crackers, breakfast cereals; lean and well-done beef, lamb, fowl, rabbit, game; veal liver and tongue; puréed cooked vegetables such as beets, eggplant, spinach, tomatoes, green peas, lettuce, cauliflower, Irish potatoes, rice, sago; cooked prunes, apples; baked apples; pure cream and noodle soups; salt; macaroni, spaghetti, vermicelli, noodles.

Restricted: 1 or 2 cookies or biscuits a day; once a week, milk pudding; bacon, brain, lean pork; once or twice a week, boiled, baked, or fried trout, pike, red fish or haddock; juices of tomatoes and vegetables; once or twice a week, prune or pineapple juice; raw tomatoes and alligator pear; puréed carrots, artichokes, string beans, asparagus; raw or stewed pears, apples, bananas, peaches; cottage cheese; American and Swiss cheese; scrambled or poached eggs, 4 a week; one glass of milk a day, or less; one cup of coffee or one to two cups of cocoa a day; tea; vegetable fats; smoking.

Not permitted: cakes, doughnuts, pies, syrup, chocolate, Jello, candies; veal, with the exception of liver and tongue; fat meats, hamburgers, sausages, salami, kidneys; corned, dried, or cured meats; sardines, anchovies, and fish not listed as ''permitted''; vegetables and fruits not listed as ''permitted''; greasy soups; sauces, pepper, paprika, vinegar, carbonated and alcoholic beverages; root beer, ginger ale, chili sauce, ketchup, honey, nuts, pickles, spices.

This diet is empirical. Carbohydrates and vegetables with strong fibers are restricted in it, as well as irritating food. Milk and milk products, which are frequently the source of abdominal discomfort in gastrointestinal disturbances and often cause allergic phenomena, are practically eliminated. The diet is easily tolerated. The restriction of sweets, ice cream, candy, and carbonated beverages is often resented by young people, particularly in summer. We found that it is better to add to the diet orange, pineapple, and grape juice, strongly diluted with water, than to forbid all beverages and have the young patient consume sodas and sundaes topped with carbonated drinks. Weak tea, hot or iced, with flavor if desired, and Postum may be used to quench thirst and aid in the maintenance of a high fluid intake, an important point in dealing with progressive diarrheas.

Patients in acute stages are put on a high caloric, low residual diet. At least twice a day some chopped, well-done beef and beef broth or chicken soup must be given, with boiled potatoes or well-cooked rice. Once a day puréed tomatoes, beets, eggplant, spinach, or okra are served. Small pieces of white toast with butter supplement the meals. Weak tea and weak cocoa without milk, tomato and prune juice, diluted orange and pineapple juice are given. During this acute stage the food must be given every two to three hours, in small portions.

It is essential that a patient with acute dysentery remain in bed.

Supportive Treatment

Every case of clinically manifest amebiasis needs supportive treatment with liver and vitamins. Because of the impaired intestinal absorption of vitamins, only parenteral administration is really effective. Intramuscular injections are preferred. In the beginning, three, and later two, injections per week are recommended. Each injection consists of 3 to 5 c.c. of crude liver extract and at least 5 mg. thiamine hydrochloride and 75 mg. ascorbic acid. According to the condition of the patient, the injections are continued for two to three months and then the series is repeated, eventually with only one injection *a week*. Folic acid, 5 to 20 mg. per day, is very beneficial.

Symptomatic Treatment

Postamebic diarrhea and flatulence usually subside under the following treatment:

Kaolin	0.3 Gm.
Magn. oxide	0.2 Gm.

M.f.p. D.t.d. No. 20
S: 1 powder t.i.d., p.c.

Commercial combinations of kaolin and magnesium or of kaolin and pectin are also useful.

Spasm and pain in the abdomen promptly react to:

Papaverini hydrochlor.	0.4 Gm.
Novatropini sulphur	0.0025 Gm.
Acid. phenylethylbarbit.	0.2 Gm.
Sacchari	5.0 Gm.

Div. in. dos. No. 20
S: 1 powder t.i.d.

Synthetic drugs acting like papaverine (Pavitrine) are also useful.

Constipation may be treated with paraffin oil, sodium or magnesium sulfate. One to three teaspoonfuls of the sulfates are given in some water before breakfast. Sodium phosphate is also effective.

If the diarrhea does not disappear and the stools do not contain pathogenic organisms, Manson-Bahr's prescription (1943) is very helpful:

Tannic acid	10.0 Gm.
Quinine hydrochlor.	1.0 Gm.
Warm water	2 L.

M.D.S.: Enema.

When secondary infection with proteolytic organisms is present, sodium sulfaphthalidin, 3 to 6 Gm. a day for five to ten days, may be used. Sulfadiazine is given as in bacillary dysentery.

Enemas with 1:500 to 1:1,000 Rivanol are also effective.

Treatment of Complications and Sequelae

Amebic Liver Disease.—Strict bed rest is indicated and emetine is injected. Hot packings, applied without pressure, alleviate the pain.

If an abscess of the liver is diagnosed, aspiration is performed. This is carried out in an operating room, so that more extensive surgery can be performed immediately if need arises during the puncture. Either a special puncture needle or that routinely employed for lumbar puncture is used. Some workers prefer full-sized aspiration needles. It is advantageous to use an aspirator.

Local anesthesia is given. In sensitive patients general narcosis must be applied. The puncture is performed in the direction of the most prominent portion of the liver, upward-inward. Only abscesses of the right lobe are accessible for aspiration. The needle must not be introduced deeper than 10 cm. to avoid large vessels. The pus is chocolate-brown or red and thick, with pieces of necrotic tissue. Yellow or green pus signifies secondary infection. The pus aspirated at the first puncture does not contain amebae. When the pus becomes thinner in the course of repeated aspirations, amebae may appear.

After aspiration, 100,000 units of penicillin are injected into the cavity. The patient receives 200,000 units of penicillin and some soluble sulfonamide drug, for example, sulfadiazine, on the days when aspirations are performed. The injection of 10 c.c. of Lipiodol and 100,000 units of penicillin into the abscess cavity is very beneficial. Penicillin O is preferred.

Surgical operation is indicated when (1) inaccessible or multiple abscesses are present; (2) hemorrhages occur; (3) there is a secondary infection which resists treatment with antibiotics and sulfonamide drugs; (4) the abscess does not show a tendency toward healing; (5) fever persists; (6) perforation of the abscess occurs.

Before operation, penicillin and sulfonamide drugs are given. When gram-negative rods are present in the pus, streptomycin must be used. Usually either the transperitoneal or the transpleural route is used, followed by drainage. Adequate use of antibiotics and sulfonamide drugs reduce the operation hazards.

Intestinal Perforation.—While operation on a nonperforated amebic intestine is contraindicated, it is imperative to attempt surgical correction of a perforated bowel. Extensive resection is the method of choice. In dealing with a perforated amebic appendicitis, make drainage through a small surgical incision. The prognosis is always very serious.

Bleeding.—Manson-Bahr (1943) recommends cecostomy, when the usual styptics and lavages do not control the bleeding. After the operation, lavages with styptics are carried out through the artificial anus. Transfusions of whole blood and plasma, 300 to 500 c.c. for adults, are beneficial.

Malformations of the Colon.—Excision of the diseased parts is recommended if strictures or stenosis have developed. If there is no danger to life, one should wait with such an operation until the amebae disappear from the stool.

PROPHYLAXIS

Craig (1944) recommended 1 to 3 tablets of chiniofon a day while sojourning in a heavily infested locality.

General hygienic measurements are essential: (1) survey of the population, principally of food handlers and food workers, (2) treatment of all infected persons, (3) adequate food and water control. If these measures are impractical, (1) drink only boiled water and (2) eat only adequately boiled food served by clean food handlers.

AMEBIASIS CAUSED BY OTHER AMEBAE

The amebae usually found in the human intestines are *Endamoeba histolytica, Endamoeba coli, Endolimax nana, Iodamoeba bütschlii,** and *Dientamoeba fragilis.* There is no doubt concerning the pathogenic power of *E. histolytica.* Many authors, however, believe that only this ameba is able to cause amebiasis. A few observers have described pathologic conditions in which other amebae have played an important role. In the most recent literature, Derrick (1945) and Raifman (1945) reported amebiasis due to *I. bütschlii.* Some advocate that *D. fragilis* is definitely pathogenic, for example, Halawani (1933), as is proved also by the x-ray findings of Arendt and Cohen (1948).

PATHOLOGY

Amebae other than *E. histolytica* do not produce lesions similar to those found in amebic dysentery, as seen at autopsy. Tissue invasion, however, has been noted at autopsy.

CLINICAL SYMPTOMS

In patients diagnosed by us as having iodamebiasis or dientamebiasis, vague pains in the abdomen and "mushy" stool, rarely true diarrhea, lasting a few days, were present. Most of the patients were children. In adults, constipation interrupted by diarrhea was the rule. Abdominal distention and borborygmus were common. One case of dientamebiasis resembled chronic appendicitis. The stools very often contained mucus. Blood was never found.

LABORATORY FINDINGS

The stools contained undigested food, only a few epithelial cells, and, rarely, a few leucocytes. The amebae were numerous. Because of the quick disintegration of both species of amebae in the stools, the examination must be carried out with even greater haste than for *E. histolytica.* We found hematoxylin-stained slides indispensable for the diagnosis of these

---

**Iodamoeba williamsi.*

amebae. The use of a higher per cent strength of acetic acid, 10 to 20, is often recommended to afford better preservation of the structures of *I. bütschlii* and *D. fragilis.* The procedure described in Chapter 71, however, gives satisfactory results in most cases.

No significant changes in the blood picture were observed. A microcytic anemia existed in the chronic cases.

TREATMENT

Diodoquin, 2 to 3 tablets t.i.d. for twenty days, rendered excellent service. Children were given 1 tablet a day for each five years of physical age for the same period. The diet was adjusted as for amebiasis caused by *E. histolytica.*

GIARDIASIS

Giardiasis is a disease of world-wide distribution, caused by *Giardia lamblia,* a flagellated protozoan.

PATHOLOGY

No satisfactory autopsy reports are available. The x-ray findings of Welch (1944) show functional rather than anatomic changes. It is theorized that Giardiae irritate the mucosa and cause disturbances in the motor activity. The organism is most frequently found in the duodenum and often invades the gall bladder.

CLINICAL SYMPTOMS

Brown (1945) called attention to the fact that children show more symptoms than adults. The complaints consist of abdominal distention, feeling of pressure, and dull pain usually under the right ribs, increasing between meals. The pain often is not localized so precisely. It may migrate into the area under the xiphoid process of the sternum or other areas. Even short colics may be observed. Manson-Bahr (1943) distinguished acute and chronic recurrent giardiasis. In the latter type, constipation may alternate with diarrhea.

The number of stools in the diarrheal period is two to ten, usually three to five a day. They are liquid, later semisolid or solid, containing mucous but no blood. They may be sprue-like. The odor is often very offensive.

While about 3 to 18 per cent of the population of the Americas harbor Giardia, according to the geographic position, only a few of the infected persons show clinical symptoms; therefore, a subclinical type of giardiasis must be accepted.

The clinical picture often resembles that of duodenal ulcer or chronic enterocolitis. The differentiation is easy with the aid of the laboratory.

LABORATORY FINDINGS

Motile trophozoites are more frequent in liquid stools and in gall bladder contents. Formed stools usually contain cysts, which are found with relative ease. Children often show microcytic anemia.

TREATMENT

Brumpt (1937) introduced Atabrine in the treatment of giardiasis. This drug is best given 0.1 Gm. t.i.d. for seven days. Children over 10 years receive 0.1 Gm. b.i.d. for five days. Because of its toxicity in small children, Atabrine must be replaced by carbarsone or iodine preparations, in the same doses as in the treatment of amebiasis.

COCCIDIOSIS

This is a very rare infection in human beings, caused by *Isospora hominis,* a parasitic sporozoan. Kiskaddon and Renshaw (1945) collected 233 cases from the literature. Consentino (1945) described one in Brazil, Beltrán (1943) in Mexico, and Humphrey (1946) in the United States.

PATHOLOGY

The organism does not invade human tissue. No autopsy reports are available.

CLINICAL SYMPTOMS

In the two cases which we observed, only mild diarrhea was present, without pus or blood, but with much mucus in the stools. The feces were light colored and liquid and had an offensive odor. There were no general complaints. Both patients recovered within five days.

LABORATORY EXAMINATION

Characteristic spores are found in the stools, which contain undigested food, some epithelial cells, and mucus. Many authors have described Charcot-Leyden crystals in the feces.

TREATMENT

The disease is self-limited. No therapy is necessary.

BALANTIDIASIS

Balantidiasis designates invasion of the intestines by *Balantidium coli*, a ciliated protozoan.

AGENT

The disease is transferred from pig to man or from man to man by contaminated food or water. Also, farmers handling infected animals and butchers or abattoir employees become infected. The infective form is the cyst, which is very resistant to outside agents. The cysts are able to survive in feces and in water for weeks but are easily destroyed by sunshine.

PATHOLOGY

The findings are similar to those in amebiasis. The organisms penetrate between the cells of the columnar epithelium and the Lieberkühn cysts and descend to the basement membrane of the mucosa. If bacteria do not accompany the balantidia, no inflammatory reaction is observed in this stage. Later, cytolysis with consequent suppuration develops. The balantidia are found also in tissue without reaction, or with little reaction. They may show degenerative changes, which begin with karyorrhexis. The areas of suppuration are later surrounded by fibrosis.

After the necrotic tissue debris becomes detached from the intestines, irregular ulcers, with undermined edges, are seen. The mucosa between the ulcers is intact, except for occasional small hemorrhages. Secondary infection may alter the picture. If the ulcers heal, fibrotic scars are formed.

CLINICAL SYMPTOMS

Recently Jaffé and Kann (1943) described balantidiasis as occurring frequently in Venezuela. Beltrán (1942) found fifty-nine cases in Mexico. Tsuchiya and Kenamore (1945) reported on balantidiasis in the United States.

The clinical symptoms are the same as in amebiasis. Invasion of the intestines by balantidia may be symptomless, as in the case observed by us. If clinical signs of disease are present, they vary from uncertain, vague abdominal discomfort to acute dysentery. Pain and tenderness may be localized over the cecum. There is either constipation alternating with diarrhea, or a chronic diarrhea, with three to fifteen stools a day, which are semifluid or

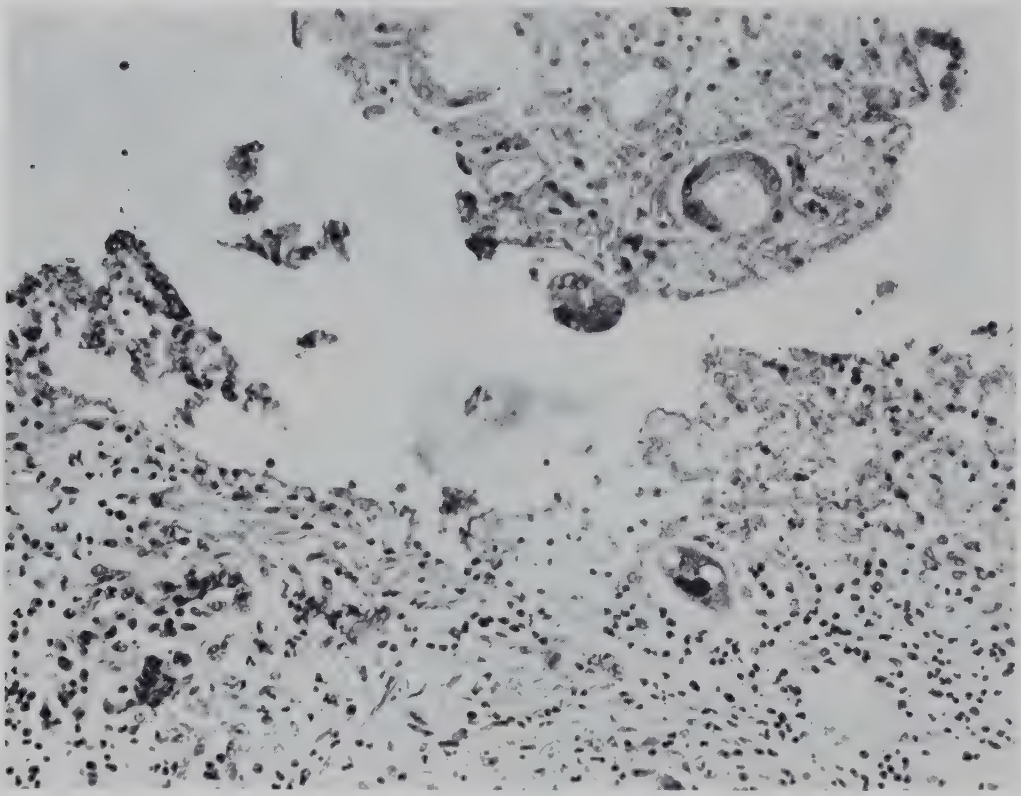


Fig. 23.—Base of balantidial ulcer. (Original photomicrograph of Oscar Felsenfeld.)

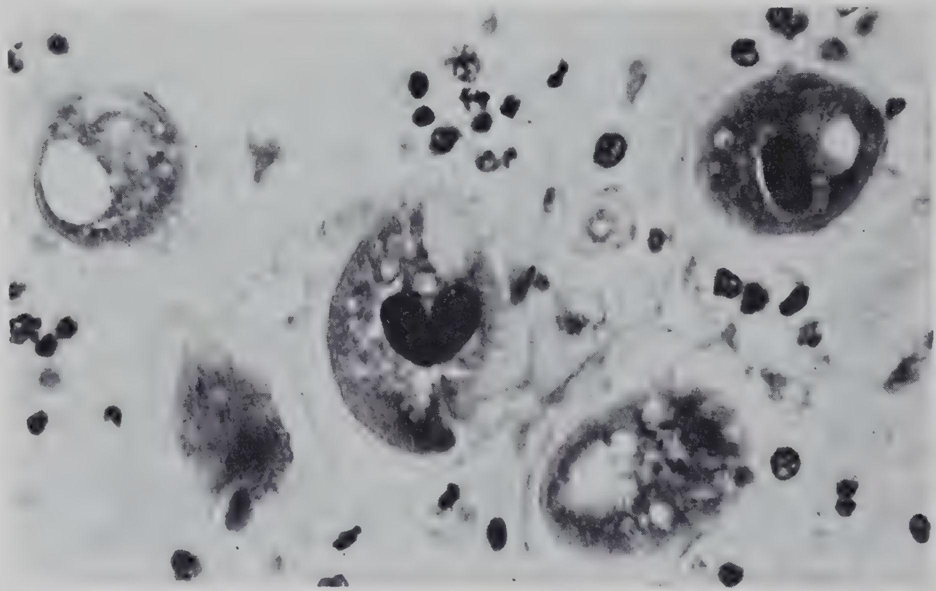


Fig. 24.—Degenerating balantidia in the intestine. (Original photomicrograph of Oscar Felsenfeld.)

fluid and light colored or greenish and have an offensive odor. While mucus is regularly found, blood appears only in acute cases. The disease cannot be differentiated from amebiasis without stool examination.

LABORATORY FINDINGS

The stool contains many balantidia in the beginning, but few leucocytes. Later the number of balantidia decreases and the number of leucocytes increases. Mucus is almost always present. Charcot-Leyden crystals may be present. In uncomplicated cases the blood picture is essentially normal.

TREATMENT

Carbarsone, 0.25 Gm. b.i.d., for ten days and chiniofon in large doses, 3 tablets t.i.d., for seven days are recommended.

The **prognosis** of balantidiasis is favorable, except in emaciated patients.

References

Amaral, F. do: 1943. Healthy Carriers of Endamoeba Histolytica, J. A. M. A. **123**: 650-652.

Andrews, J.: 1942. The Transmission of Endamoeba Histolytica and Amebic Disease, South. M. J. **35**: 693-699.

Arendt, J., and Cohen, J.: 1948. Mucosal Studies in Colitis Due to Parasites, Am. J. Roentgenol. **59**: 865-876.

Arnett, J. H.: 1947. Treatment of Carriers of Endamoeba Histolytica With Carbarsone (Arsenic Preparation), Chiniofon and Vioform, Am. J. M. Sc. **213**: 608-610.

Ascoli, M.: 1946. Ariboflavinosi in amebiasici. Gior. di med. **3**: 347-350.

Bell, J. C.: 1938. Roentgenologic Studies of the Large Bowel in Infections by Endamoeba Histolytica Before, During and After Treatment, Am. J. Roentgenol. **39**: 916-923.

Beltrán, E.: 1942. Protozoarios Intestinales del Hombre en la República Mexicana, Rev. d. Inst. salub. y enferm. trop. **3**: 161-167.

Beltrán, E.: 1942a. Incidencia de Balantidium Coli en Tabasco, México, Rev. d. Inst. salub. y enferm. trop. **3**: 319-321

Beltrán, E.: 1944. El Problema de la Amebiasis en la República Mexicana, Rev. de med. trop. y parasitol., bacteriol., clin. y lab. **10**: 40-41.

Beltrán, E.: 1944a. Infección Humana por Isospora Hominis en México, Rev. d. Inst. salub. y enferm. trop. **5**: 185-190.

Beltrán, E.: 1945. Conflicting Views in Regard to Iodamoeba Williamsi, J. Parasitol. **31**: 289-290.

Beltrán, E., and Larenas, R. M.: 1941. Protozoarios Intestinales en una Communidad Escolar de la Ciuadad de México, Rev. d. Inst. salub. y. enferm. trop. **2**: 193-212.

Beltrán, E., and Larenas, R. M.: 1943. Resultado de 489 Exámenes Protozoologicos de Materias Fecales, Rev. d. Inst. salub. y enferm. trop. **4**: 323-326.

Berkovitz-Taylor, Z.: 1944. Clinical Tropical Medicine, New York, Paul B. Hoeber, Inc.

Birnkraut, W. B., Greenberg, M., and Most, H.: 1945. Amebiasis in a Hospital for the Insane, Am. J. Hyg. **35**: 805-814.

Blanc, F., and Siguir, F.: 1946. Le Traitement des Amibiases chroniques et à rechutes par L'association Pénicilline—émétine—Sulfamides, Bull. et mém. Soc. méd. d. hôp. de Paris **62**: 471-475 and 478.

Bozicevich, J., Hoyem, H. M., and Walston, V. M.: 1946. Method of Conducting 50 per cent Hemolysis End Point Complement-Fixation Test for Parasitic Diseases, Pub. Health Rep. **61**: 529-534; Lab. Digest. **10**: 4.

Brown, R. L.: 1945. Enterozoic Parasitism in Infants, Pennsylvania M. J. **48**: 812.

Browne, D. C.: McHardy, G., and Spellberg, M. A.: 1945. Statistical Evaluation of Amebiasis, Gastroenterology **4**: 154-162.

Bruce, J. G.: 1946. Neoarsphenamine in Amebic Dysentery, Ann. Int. Med. **24**: 1025-1028.

Brumpt, E.: 1937. Précis de Parasitologie, Paris, Masson et Cie.

Burrows, R.: 1943. Studies on the Intestinal Parasites of Mental Patients, Am. J. Hyg. **38**: 293-305.

Castelli, A.: 1944. La Amebiasis en Concepción, Bol. Soc. Biol. Concepción **19**: 119-121.

Cintra do Prado, F., and Figliolini, F.: 1946. Formas Clínicas da Amebíase, Hospital (Rio de Janeiro) **30**: 769-778.

Clark, H. G.: 1925. The Distribution and Complications of Amebic Lesions Found in 185 Post-Mortem Examinations, Am. J. Trop. Med. **5**: 157-171.

Consentino, J.: 1945. Un Caso de Isosporose Humana, Arq. de biol. **29**: 55.

Costa Mascaró, A.: 1945. La Disentería Amebiana en la Infancia, Arch. de pediat. d. Uruguay **16**: 761-766.

Craig, C. F.: 1942. Laboratory Diagnosis of Protozoan Diseases, ed. 2, Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger.

Craig, C. F.: 1944. Etiology, Diagnosis and Treatment of Amebiasis, Baltimore, Williams & Wilkins.

Dack, S., and Moloshok, R. E.: 1947. Cardiac Manifestations of Toxic Action of Emetine Hydrochloride in Dysentery, Arch. Int. Med. **79**: 228-238.

D'Antoni, J. S.: 1942. Amebic and Bacillary Colitis in the New Orleans Area, Am. J. Trop. Med. **22**: 319-324.

Derrick, E. H.: 1945. An Unusual Case of Amebiasis, Trans. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **39**: 3-4.

Drbohlav, J.: 1925. Culture d'Entamoeba Dysenteriae Type Tetragena Minuta, Ann. de parasitol. **3**: 340-360.

Elson, K. A., Rogus, A. M., and Wood, F. C.: 1947. Amebiasis in an Army General Hospital in India, Gastroenterology **8**: 135-153.

Faust, E. C.: 1934. Parasitic Infections in New Orleans, J. Pediat. **2**: 53-58.

Faust, E. C.: 1941. Amebiasis in New Orleans Area as Revealed by Autopsy Examination of Accident Cases, Am. J. Trop. Med. **21**: 35-48.

Faust, E. C.: 1942. The Prevalence of Amebiasis in the Western Hemisphere, Am. J. Trop. Med. **22**: 93-105.

Faust, E. C., Heilbrunn, I., Lewis, R., and Murray, M. L.: 1946. Differences in Curability, Infectivity and Pathogenicity of Human Strains of Endamoeba Histolytica, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **63**: 270-276.

Felsenfeld, O.: 1945. The Significance of the Small Varieties of Endamoeba Histolytica, Proc. Am. Federation Clin. Research **2**: 58-59.

Felsenfeld, O.: 1947. Amebiasis in Children, Proc. Am. Federation Clin. Research (1946) **3**: 74-75.

Felsenfeld, O., and Young, V. M.: 1946. The Correlation of Intestinal Protozoa and Enteric Microorganisms of Known and Doubtful Pathogenicity, Am. J. Digest. Dis. **13**: 233-234.

Frye, W. W., and Meleney, H. E.: 1938. Pathogenicity of Strains of Small Race Endamoeba Histolytica, Am. J. Hyg. **27**: 580-589.

Gradwohl, R. B. H.: 1948. Clinical Laboratory Methods and Diagnosis, ed. 4, St. Louis, The C. V. Mosby Co.

Halawani, A. E.: 1933. Brief Note on Case of Dientamoeba Fragilis Infection Found in Egypt, J. Egyptian M. A. **16**: 47-79.

Headlee, W. H., and Cable, R. M.: 1942. Intestinal Parasitism Among Students of Berea College, Ky., Am. J. Trop. Med. **22**: 351-360.

Hopp, W. B.: 1944. On the Epidemiology of Human Intestinal Parasite Infections in a State Hospital of Indiana, Am. J. Hyg. **39**: 138-144.

Howard, J. T.: 1939. The Clinical Significance of the Carrier State in Amebiasis, Am. J. Digest. Dis. **6**: 506-510.

Humphrey, A. A.: 1946. Isospora Hominis Infection in Man, J. A. M. A. **130**: 143-145.

Ikeda, K.: 1934. Roentgenological Observations on the Colon in Amebic Dysentery, Radiology **22**: 610-618.

Ivanhoe, G. L.: 1943. Studies on the Transmission of Amebiasis in a Children's Home in New Orleans, Am. J. Trop. Med. **23**: 401-419.

Jaffé, R., and Kann, C.: 1943. Sobre Balantidium Coli en el Apendice y Apendicitis Balantidosa, Rev. sudamer. morfol. **1**: 74-82.

Karl, M. M., and Sloan, F. R.: 1946. Management of Amebiasis, Ann. Int. Med. **25**: 789-798.

Kiskaddon, R. M., and Renshaw, R. J. F.: 1945. Human Coccidiosis, J. A. M. A. **128**: 731-732.

Klatskin, G.: 1946. Classification, Diagnosis and Treatment of Hepatic Amebiasis, Ann. Int. Med. **25**: 601-631.

Klatskin, G.: 1946a. Therapy of Amebiasis in American Troops Stationed in India, Ann. Int. Med. **25**: 773-788.

Lopes Pontes, J. P.: 1945. Incidencia de Amebíase e da giardíase no Rio de Janeiro, Rev. brasil. med. **2**: 823-835.

Lopes Pontes, J. P.: 1945a. Common Features of Chronic Amebiasis, Am. J. Digest. Dis. **12**: 137-142.

Manson, P.: 1945. Quoted from Manson-Bahr, P. (1943).

Manson-Bahr, P.: 1943. The Dysenteric Disorders, ed. 2, Baltimore, Williams & Wilkins.

Manson-Bahr, P.: 1944. Amebic Dysentery, Lancet **247**: 718-720.

Manson-Bahr, P.: 1945. Manson's Tropical Diseases, ed. 12, Baltimore, Williams & Wilkins.

Meleney, H. E.: 1944. The Relationship of Clinical Amebiasis to Various Strains and Growth Requirements of Endamoeba Histolytica, Puerto Rico J. Pub. Health & Trop. Med. **20**: 59-70.

Meleney, H. E., and Frye, W. W.: 1933. Studies of Endamoeba Histolytica and Other Intestinal Protozoa in Tennessee; Comparison of Five Strains of E. Histolytica With Reference to Their Pathogenicity for Kittens, Am. J. Hyg. 637-655.

Meleney, H. E., and Frye, W. W.: 1935. Studies of Endamoeba Histolytica and Other Intestinal Protozoa in Tennessee; Further Obervations on Pathogenicity of Certain Strains of E. Histolytica for Kittens, Am. J. Hyg. **21**: 422-437.

Meleney, H. E., and Frye, W. W.: 1937. Pathogenicity of Four Strains of Endamoeba Histolytica From Chicago, Am. J. Digest. Dis. & Nutrition **4**: 37-40.

Morenas, L.: 1935. Colite para—et méta-amibiennes, J. de méd. de Lyon **16**: 541-546.

Morton, T. C.: 1946. Diagnosis of Chronic Dysentery in Service Personnel, Brit. M. J. **2**: 890-893.

Mukherjee, H. P.: 1942. Pyrexia in Amebiasis, Antiseptic **39**: 399-407.

Napier, L. E.: 1943. The Principles and Practise of Tropical Medicine, Calcutta, Thacker, Spink & Co.

National Institute of Health: 1936. Epidemic Amebic Dysentery, Bull. No. 166, Washington, U. S. Treasury Department.

Nickel, H. S.: 1942. Amebiasis and Hookworm Infections as Found in Approximately 50,000 Fecal Examinations in Mississippi, Am. J. Trop. Med. **22**: 209-215.

Parmer, L. G.: 1948. On the Relative Efficiency of Emetine in Intestinal and Hepatic Amebiasis, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **68**: 362-363.

Raifman, J.: 1945. Iodamoeba Butschlii, Rev. Gastroenterol. **2**: 293-299.

Rail, G. A.: 1947. Comparative Study of Effects of Drugs Used in Dysentery, J. Trop. Med. **50**: 3-12.

Ravelo-Barré, M., and Thomen, L. F.: 1943. Incidence of Protozoan Parasites of the Human Intestine in the District of Santo Domingo, Dominican Republic, Am. J. Trop. Med. **23**: 243-246.

Reddy, D. G., and Rangam, C. M.: 1946. Amebic Granuloma (Amoeboma) of the Large Intestine, Indian M. Gaz. **81**: 463-466.

Reed, A. C.: Quoted from Craig (1942).

Reed, A. C., and Anderson, H. H.: 1936. Amebiasis and Cancer of the Colon, Am. J. M. Sc. **191**: 237-250.

Rees, Bozicevich, Reardon, and Jones: 1942. Am. J. Trop. Med. **22**: 6, 581 (Nov.).

Renault, L., and Versiani, W.: 1940. Parasitismo Humano por Helminthos e Protozoarios em Bello Horizonte, Brasil.-med. **54**: 487-492.

Sappero, J. J., Hakansson, E. G., and Lutlit, C. M.: 1942. The Occurrence of Two Significantly Different Races of Endamoeba Histolytica, Am. J. Trop. Med. **22**: 191-208.

Shrapnel, B. C., Johnson, C. M., and Sandground, J. H.: 1946. Oral Emetine Treatment in Intestinal Amebiasis, Am. J. Trop. Med. **26**: 293-310.

Silva, S. da: 1945. Significant Observations on Amebic Hepatitis, J. Trop. Med. **48**: 152-157.

Silverman, D. N., and Leslie, A.: 1947. Inflammatory Tumors of Dysenteric Origin, J. A. M. A. **133**: 994-998.

Simon, S. K.: 1934. The Clinical Diagnosis of Amebiasis, J. A. M. A. **103**: 1063-1066.

Smyth, M. J.: 1946. Confusion of Ameboma With Carcinoma, Lancet **2**: 376-377.

Summers, W. A.: 1942. Intestinal Parasites in Boys of the Florida Industrial School, J. Parasitol. **28**: 179-180.

Tallant, E. J., and Maisel, A. L.: 1946. Amebiasis Among American Armed Forces in the Middle East, Arch. Int. Med. **77**: 597-613.

Trabaud, M. J.: 1934. L'amebiase et le System Vago-Sympatique, Bull. Acad. de méd. Paris **11**: 142-144.

Tsuchiya, H., and Kenamore, B.: 1945. Report on Case of Balantidiasis, Am. J. Trop. Med. **25**: 513-514.

Tupas, A. V., Jongco, A. P., Danis, D. F., and Chang, J. O.: 1946. Amebiasis in Children in the City of Manila, J. Philippine M. A. **22**: 293-298.

Vallarino, J. J.: 1925. Preliminary Report on the Value of the Roentgen Ray Examination in Estimating the Extent of Amebic Infection of the Large Intestine, Am. J. Trop. Med. **5**: 149-156.

Velho de Silva, J. J., and Lopes Pontes, J. P.: 1944. Amebiase Intestinal Nao Disenterica, An. Santa Casa de Misericordia **1**: 60.

Warshawski, H., Nolan, D. E., and Abramson, W.: 1946. Hepatic Complications of Amebiasis, New England J. Med. **235**: 678-681.

Wilbur, D. L., and Camp, J. D.: 1946. Amebic Disease of the Cecum, Gastroenterology **7**: 535-548.

Watson, J. W.: 1945. Urinary Amebiasis, Trop. Dis. Bull. **42**: 947-959.

Watson, J. W.: 1945a. The Effect of Urine on Entamoeba Histolytica, Ann. Trop. Med. **39**: 101-116.

Weber, H. M.: 1933. Roentgenologic Identification of Commonly Encountered Chronic Ulcerative Diseases of the Colon, Am. J. Roentgenol. **30**: 488-496.

Welch, P. B.: 1944. Giardiasis With Unusual Findings, Gastroenterology **3**: 98-102.

Wenrich, D. E., and Arnett, J. H.: 1942. Results of a Proctologic Survey of Food Handlers at a Professional School in Philadelphia, Pa., Am. J. Trop. Med. **22**: 107-115.

Wilson, W. W., and Hurewitz, M. W.: 1946. Amebiasis Cutis, M. Clin. North America **30**: 411-420.

Young, V. M.: 1944. The Incidence of Intestinal Protozoa in Mental Patients and in Cases Showing Symptoms of Amebic Dysentery, J. Parasitol. **30**: supp. 8.

Young, V. M., and Felsenfeld, O.: 1948. The Occurrence of Intestinal Protozoa in Adults in San Juan, Puerto Rico, J. Parasitol. **34**: 229-230.

CHAPTER 5

PLASMODIA OF MAN AND ANIMALS

Enrique Beltrán

HISTORY

In 1880 Laveran, in Algiers, found in the blood of patients with malaria parasites which he considered to be the cause of the disease and which today are included in the order Haemosporidia, of the class Sporozoa, in the genus Plasmodium.

Almost simultaneously with Laveran, Danilewski (1885), a Russian investigator, found in the blood of birds parasites that were very similar to those discovered by the French investigator, some of which today are considered as belonging to this same genus Plasmodium.

Koch (1898) shortly afterward found similar parasites in the blood of monkeys.

Last, Wenyon in 1908 (1926) and Aragao and Neiva (1909), independently in the same year, 1908-1909, found that reptiles also could be parasitized by Plasmodia.

It is now known that parasites of the genus Plasmodium exist in various vertebrates, including mammals, birds, and reptiles.

PLASMODIA OF MAN

Although Laveran had noted the entire asexual cycle of the parasite, it remained for Golgi (1889) to describe the different stages, thus establishing its relationship to the clinical manifestations of the disease.

Due to the work of Ross (1895, 1898) in India and of Grassi, Bignami, and Bastianelli (1898) in Italy, it was soon established that the anopheline mosquitoes transmit this disease to human beings.

The species generally accepted at present are
Plasmodium vivax (Grassi and Feletti, 1890),
Plasmodium malariae (Grassi and Feletti, 1890),
Plasmodium falciparum (Welch, 1897),
Plasmodium ovale (Stephens, 1922).

There is also lack of agreement concerning the proper designation of the genera and species of plasmodia which are found in man. The problem is still under discussion (Coatney and Young, 1941; Sabrowsky and Usinger, 1944; Beltrán, 1944). The designations given above have been accepted, according to International Rules on Zoological Nomenclature.

These plasmodia require two hosts. One phase, the asexual, occurs in human blood, while the second phase, the sexual, takes place in the mosquito. The four species present such marked uniformity in their life cycles that we can describe this cycle in general terms.

Infection in man begins with inoculation of sporozoites from the saliva of an infected mosquito. For a long time the statement of Schaudinn (1903) was accepted: that the sporozoite, after inoculation into the blood, penetrated directly into an erythrocyte; there it assumed the form that is typical of young trophozoites. Schaudinn's observations could not be confirmed by other authors. Moreover, it was proved that, from the time of inoculation by the mosquito to the first appearance of the forms which attack the red cells, there is a period during which no parasites can be observed microscopically and that the blood is not infective when inoculated experimentally into susceptible subjects.

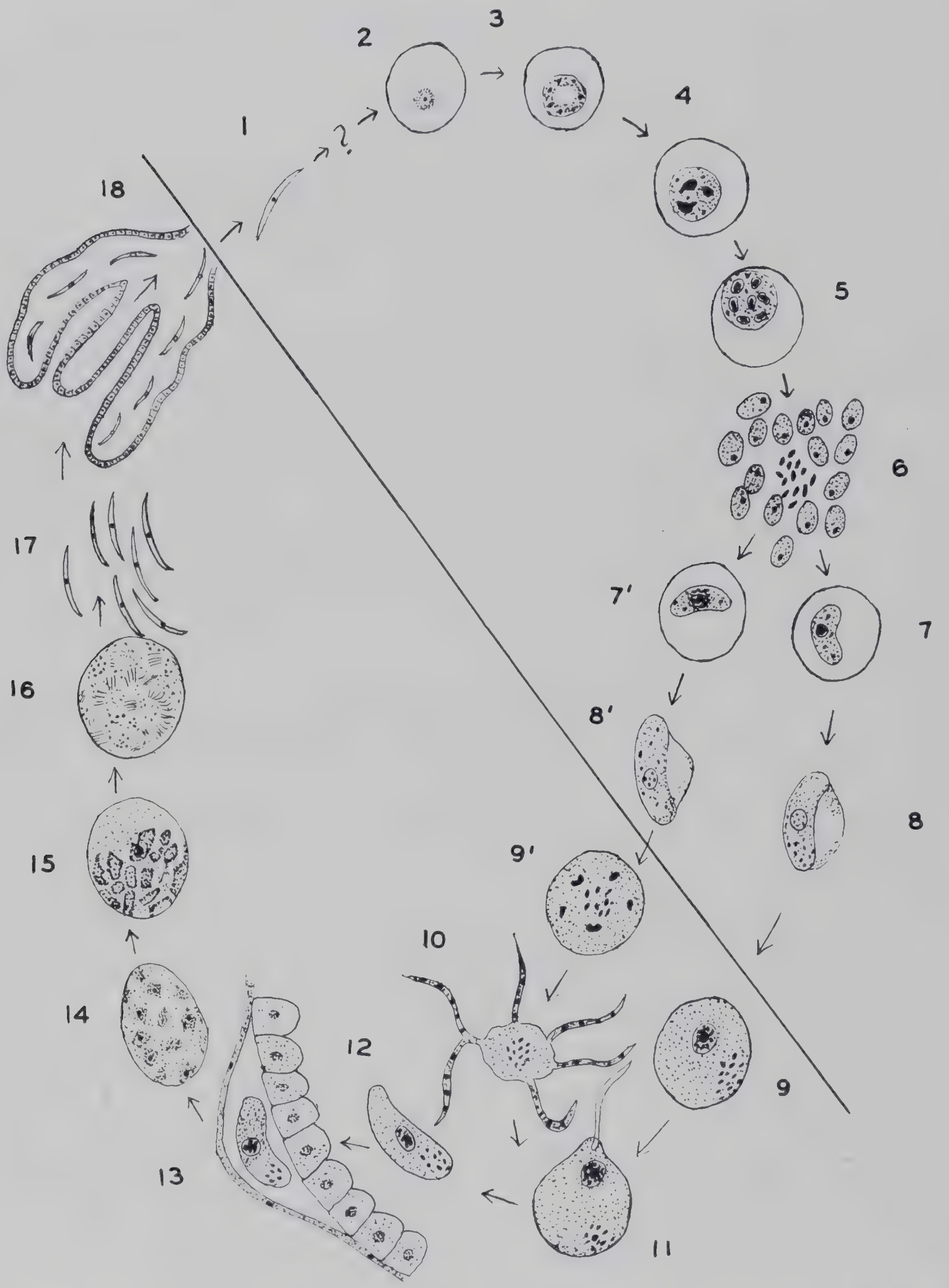


Fig. 25.—Diagrammatic representation of the life cycle of *Plasmodium falciparum*: *1*, sporozoite; *2* and *3*, trophozoite; *4*, schizonts; *5*, segmentation; *6*, merozoites, free; *7* and *8*, macrogametocytes in human blood; *9*, gametocytes in the stomach of a mosquito; *10*, flagellation; *11*, fertilization; *12*, oökinete; *13* oökinete in the intestinal wall of a mosquito; *14* and *15*, development of an oöcyst; *16*, sporocyst; *17*, sporozoites in the general body cavity of the mosquito; *18*, salivary glands of the mosquito, with sporozoites. (Original drawing of G. T. de Beltrán.)

Many authors suppose that an extraerythrocytic stage takes place in the cells of the reticuloendothelial system. Huff and Bloome (1935), using *Plasmodium elongatum* in birds, showed that not only the red blood cells but also other cells could be parasitized. Later, discovery of exoerythrocytic forms of *Plasmodium gallinaceum* was made by James and Tate (1937). Huff and Coulston (1944) demonstrated a pre-erythrocytic cycle in endothelial cells by infecting chickens with *P. gallinaceum.* This cycle occurred between the time of penetration by sporozoites and the appearance of the first intraerythrocytic merozoites. The work of all of these investigators has accentuated the hypothesis that an equivalent phase may exist in the case of human Plasmodia.

Shortt et al. (1948) reported finding exoerythrocytic forms of *Plasmodium vivax* in the liver of man following inoculation with large numbers of sporozoites.

Some time after inoculation of sporozoites into man, and possibly after undergoing the cycle just discussed, there begin to appear in the erythrocytes tiny parasites, generally ring-shaped (*trophozoites*), containing a chromatin granule and a mass of cytoplasm, usually enclosing a vacuole, from which the organism derives its ring-like appearance.

These parasites grow rapidly. They undergo changes in shape; pigment granules, varying in appearance and in number according to the species, begin to appear in the bodies of the trophozoites. These granules are formed at the expense of the hemoglobin of the host. When the parasites have grown to the proper size, the nuclear chromatin fragments into a number of portions; the name *schizont* is applied to the parasite at this stage. Later, the cytoplasm also undergoes fragmentation around each of the nuclear particles, and a number of bodies, known as *merozoites,* are formed, each having its chromatin granule. The number of merozoites varies in different species of plasmodia.

The parasite grows within the cell, destroying the cell stroma. When the merozoites have been completely formed, the red cell bursts, liberating the merozoites, which then parasitize new red cells, to repeat the cycle. This cycle is known as the *asexual* or *schizogonous* cycle.

Some time after the infection has been established, it is noted that peculiar forms appear in certain erythrocytes. In the beginning they are indistinguishable from ordinary trophozoites, but they increase in size without fragmentation of the nucleus; that is, without developing into schizonts. The pigment remains uniformly distributed throughout the body, whereas in those forms which segment the pigment becomes grouped into a central mass. When they have completed their development, *gametocytes,* or *presexual* forms, may be one of the following types: one of them stains blue with all types of Romanowsky stain; the nucleus, frequently excentric, is clearly defined. This gametocyte is the female element or *macrogametocyte.* In another type, the nucleus appears to be more diffused, and of a general reddish color. This is considered the male element, or *microgametocyte.*

If the gametocytes remain in the blood, they die after a variable period of time. To continue their development they must enter the digestive tract of the mosquito.

When a mosquito of the proper species sucks blood of a malarial individual, the parasites continue their development. The macrogametocyte leaves the red cell and is converted into a *macrogamete,* or female sex cell. The microgametocyte undergoes fragmentation of the chromatin into granules which move to the periphery, pulling with them a portion of the protoplasm to form a series of long, slender flagella. These are the *microgametes,* or male sex forms. The microgametes break away from the body of the gametocyte. One of the microgametes fuses with the macrogamete to form the *zygote.* The zygote elongates and acquires motility. It is now called an *oökinete.*

The oökinete insinuates itself between the cells of the intestinal wall of the mosquito to continue its evolution. A protective membrane develops around it, and it is now called an *oöcyst.* The fragmentation of the chromatin, followed by fragmentation of the cytoplasm, converts it into a *sporocyst,* filled with elongated motile elements called *sporozoites.* These sporocysts, after passing through the intestinal wall of the mosquito through the intercellular spaces, appear as protuberances projecting outside the digestive tube, in the general body cavity of the insect.

The sporocysts reach maturity, the wall breaks, and the sporozoites are set free into the body of the insect. They invade various organs, including the salivary glands. When such a mosquito bites a healthy person, the schizogonous cycle begins again.

Plasmodium Vivax (Grassi and Feletti, 1890)

These parasites, in the initial stages, are tiny organisms, usualy containing a chromatin granule. In most cases, only one parasite can be found in each parasitized red cell, although at times there may be more—occasionally as many as six in one erythrocyte. The parasite soon begins to grow, assuming an irregular ameboid shape, and moves rapidly within the cellular stroma. The name *vivax* is given to this species because of the vivacity of its move-

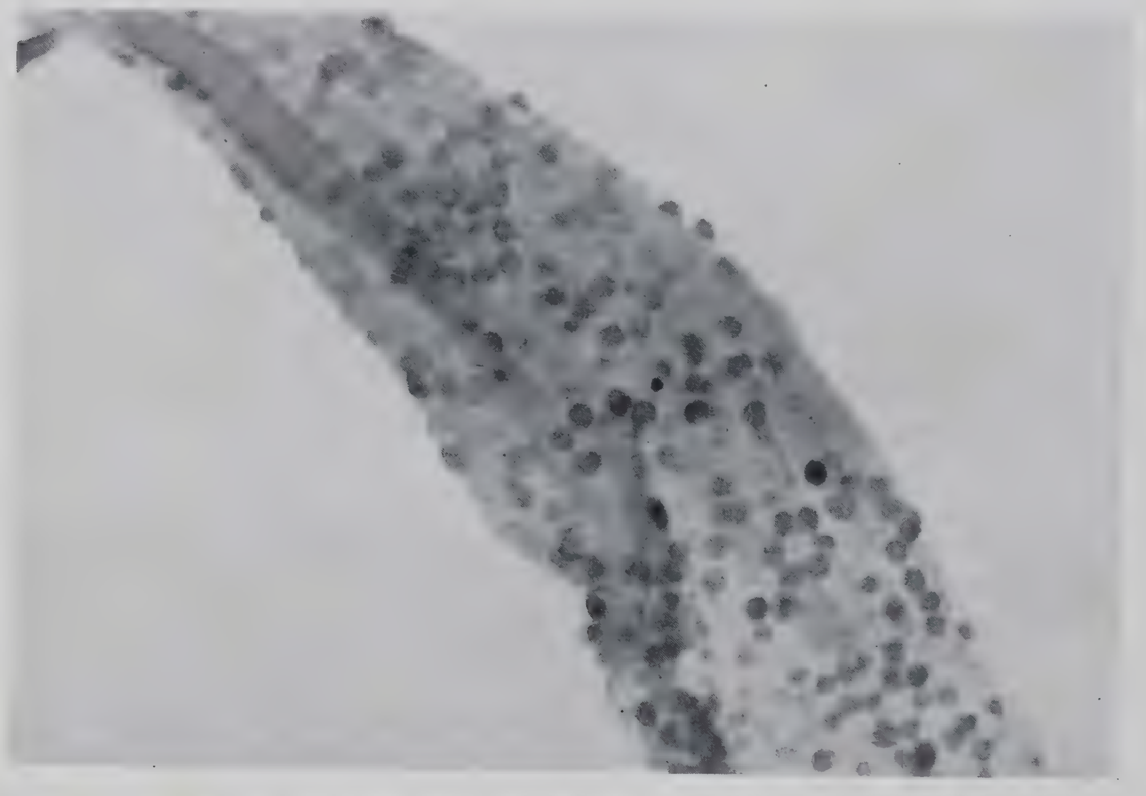


Fig. 26.—Stomach of the mosquito with oöcysts of *Plasmodium vivax*, Delafield hematoxylin stain. (×3,000.) (Original photomicrograph of E. Beltrán.)

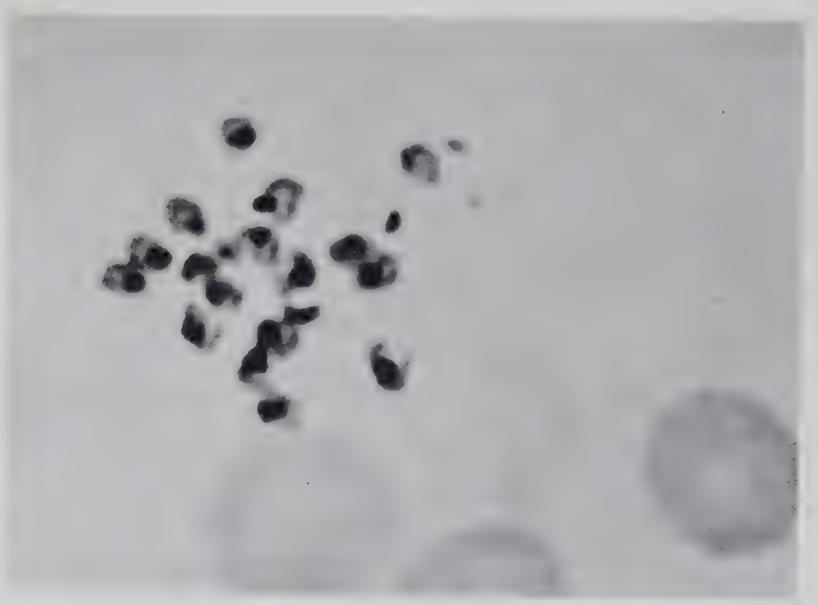


Fig. 27.—Merozoites of *Plasmodium vivax*, Giemsa stain. (×3,000.) (Original photograph of E. Beltrán.)

ments. When it attains its full growth, there appear within it golden-colored granules; these are spherical or rod-shaped bodies. These bodies are at first distributed uniformly throughout the parasite; later they tend to become grouped into one central mass.

Characteristic of this species is the increase in size of the parasitized red cells, the cytoplasm becoming filled with dark red granulations. These are called *Schüffner dots.* They are considered one of the important diagnostic characteristics of this species.

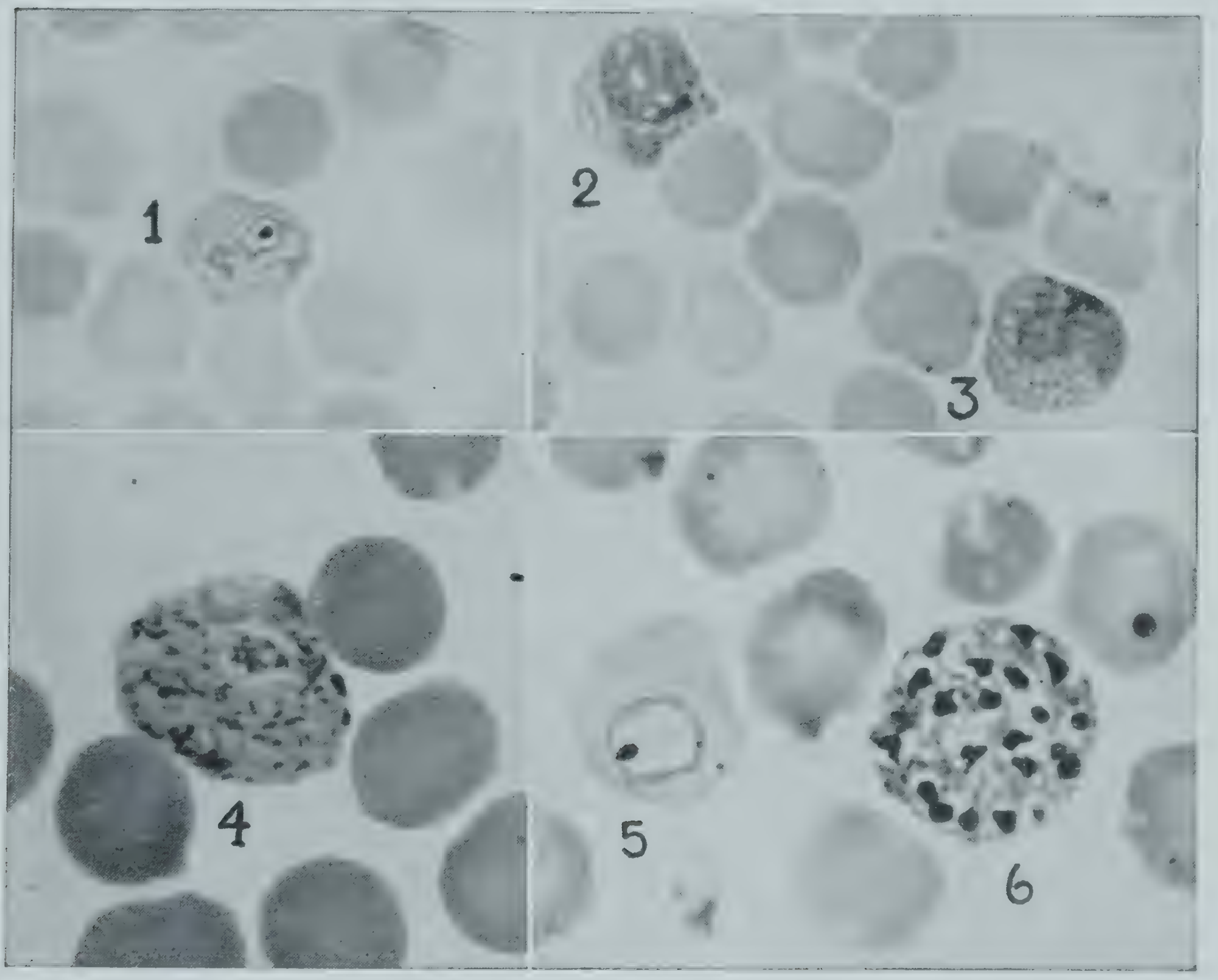


Fig. 28.—*Plasmodium vivax,* blood smear, Giemsa stain. *1,* young schizont, ameboid form, with Schüffner dots; *2* and *3,* further stage of development of schizonts; *4,* gametocyte; *5,* young ring form of trophozoite in a pale, enlarged erythrocyte; *6,* schizogonous division with numerous merozoites. Compare the size of parasitized erythrocytes with others without parasites; note enlargement of parasitized cells. (Original photomicrographs of Kourí and Basnuevo in *Lecciones de Parasitología y Medicina Tropical,* vol. III, Medical Protozoology.)

The trophozoite develops into a schizont and then into the segmented form, usually with twelve to twenty-four merozoites. In Mexican strains of parasites (Beltrán and Villasana, 1945), the average number of merozoites is fourteen to sixteen.

The schizogonous cycle of this species usually requires about forty-eight hours, a fact which explains the febrile attacks every third day. However, in double infections, or because of lack of synchronization of one of the generations of the parasites, there often can be observed a daily febrile reaction.

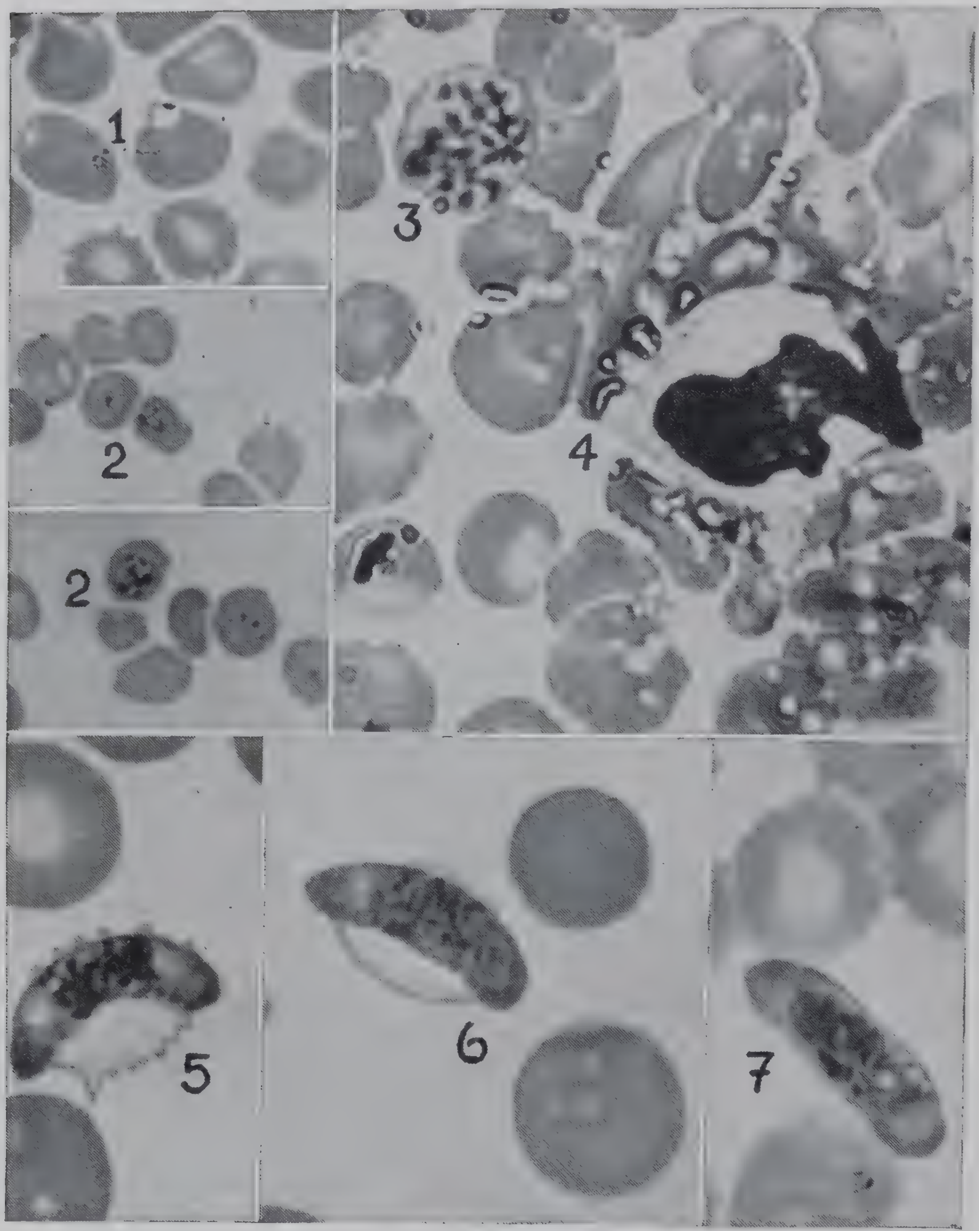


Fig. 29.—*Plasmodium falciparum*, blood smear, Giemsa stain. *1*, young trophozoite, ring form; *2*, fully developed schizont; *3*, schizogonous division into numerous merozoites, rosette form; *4*, endothelial cell in the peripheral blood; *5*, *6*, and *7*, gametocytes, typical crescent form. (Note in *5* the remnants of the parasitized erythrocyte with crenated edges.) (Original photomicrographs of Kourí and Basnuevo in *Lecciones de Parasitología y Medicina Tropical*, vol. III, Medical Protozoology.)

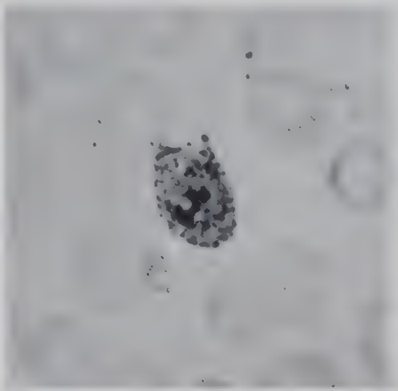


Fig. 30.—*Plasmodium ovale*, growing schizont. (Original photomicrograph of O. Felsenfeld.)

A characteristic of this species is observed in the merozoites which show marked preference for young erythrocytes or reticulocytes, a phenomenon first noted by Craig in 1920. We have been able to verify this (Beltrán, 1941; Beltrán and Sandoval, 1945).

Gametocytes are round and relatively large and are easily identified by the enlargement of the erythrocytes in which they are found. The gametocytes take a more delicate color than do those of *Plasmodium malariae.*

TABLE V. MORPHOLOGY OF MALARIAL PARASITES IN THIN BLOOD FILMS
(Courtesy of J. W. Colvin)

	P. VIVAX	P. MALARIAE	P. FALCIPARUM
Color of cytoplasm	Light blue	Deep blue	Blue
Color of pigment	Yellow to brown	Black	Brown to black
Young Trophozoites			
Form	Small and large rings	Small, compact rings	Small, delicate rings
Chromatin	Usually one dot	Large, single dot	Often double dots
Pigment	None	Absent or fine	None
Growing Trophozoites			
Form	Irregular contour	Oval or bands	Rings
Chromatin	A dot or thread	A dot or thread	Often double dots
Pigment	Fine granules	Coarse granules	Scanty granules
The Infected Blood Cell			
Appearance	Enlarged, pale	Normal	Usually normal
Stippling	Schüffner dots	None	Maurer dots
Multiple parasites	Common	Rare	Very common
Growing Schizonts			
Form	Irregular contour	Compact; oval or round	Rarely seen; resemble *P. malariae*
Chromatin	2 to 10 granules	2 to 6 granules	2 to 8 small clumps
Pigment	Fine granules or clumps	Coarse granules or clumps	Fine granules or a single mass
Mature Schizonts			
Merozoites	12 to 24; in two rings or irregular	6 to 12; single ring or cluster	8 to 32: in two rings or irregular; small
Pigment	Excentric mass	Central mass	Single, dark mass
Shape of Gametocytes	Round or slightly ovoid; larger than the red cell	Round or slightly oval; same size as red cell	Crescent- or sausage-shaped
Pigment of Gametocytes	Scattered	Clumped	Centralized

Plasmodium Malariae (Grassi and Feletti, 1890)

The general appearance of the parasite, in the various stages, is similar to that of *P. vivax.* There are, however, marked differences:

The ring forms are difficult to differentiate from those of *P. vivax.* The mature trophozoites frequently show elongated forms which extend across the erythrocyte as a band. There is no alteration in the size of the parasitized red cell. The pigment is composed of dark, irregular granules. There are no Schüffner dots. In preparations of *P. malariae,* it is not rare to find some erythrocytes containing the so-called "Ziemann stippling," which are also reddish, but with poorly defined outlines, appearing only in few cells of normal size.

The merozoites are somewhat larger than those of *P. vivax;* there are usually six to twelve of them formed, the average being eight.

The gametocytes are round, but small, and of darker color, especially the macrogametocytes, which are stained an intense blue.

The asexual cycle of this species usually requires seventy-two hours, which explains the periodicity of this type of intermittent fever, called *quartan fever.*

Plasmodium Falciparum (Welch, 1897)

With some exceptions, young forms alone are found in the peripheral blood; these correspond to the ring forms or to young trophozoites. At times as many as six ring forms of the parasite may be found in a single erythrocyte. The schizonts and segmented forms are localized in the visceral circulation. The rings are usually smaller than those of the other two species; they frequently have two chromatin granules and are found in normal-sized erythrocytes, usually near the periphery.

TABLE VI. MORPHOLOGY OF PARASITES IN THICK BLOOD FILMS
(Courtesy of J. W. Colvin)

	Forms Present
Plasmodium vivax	All stages of development
Plasmodium malariae	All stages of development
Plasmodium falciparum	Only rings or rings and crescents

The Young Trophozoites (Least Diagnostic)

As the ring form collapses, the cytoplasm becomes variously arranged in relation to the nucleus. Rarely the ring form will persist; sometimes the cytoplasm appears as a broken ring; usually it appears as a blob or dash of blue; it may be on one or both sides of the chromatin. Various descriptive terms have been applied: ''swallow'' form when there is a dash of blue on each side of the chromatin; ''comma'' form when the cytoplasm becomes a curved thread; ''flag-staff'' form when there is a dash of blue extending from the red dot.

P. vivax—Larger than others with heavier chromatin dot; cytoplasm in strings, farther from chromatin, thickest in distal part.

P. malariae—The medium-sized species; chromatin dot may be as large as *vivax;* cytoplasm close to chromatin, thickest in lateral parts.

P. falciparum—Small and delicate with tiny chromatin dot; double chromatin dots; not sufficient cytoplasm to extend far from the chromatin.

Growing and Large Trophozoites

P. vivax—Abundant masses and blobs of light blue cytoplasm connected by threads or not visibly connected; arranged in ''Y'' forms or triangles; ameboid activity reflected; older forms with fine yellow-brown pigment, irregular; chromatin round or irregular

P. malariae—Single blob of deep-staining cytoplasm, compact and close to nucleus; usually rounded, or band forms; older forms, chromatin may be obscured by crowding cytoplasm, or elongated; heavily pigmented, dark-brown to black, coarse granules

P. falciparum—Very much like young *vivax,* possibly more compact; may still show double dot forms; occasionally pigmented

Schizonts

P. vivax—Chromatin masses irregular in contour in immature forms; 12 or more nuclei in older forms; pigmented clumps

P. malariae—Pigment more abundant; 12 or less nuclei in older forms, characteristic arrangement in ''rosette'' or ''daisy'' pattern

P. falciparum—Rarely seen; small both in size of parasite and size of nuclei; pigment dark to black

Gametocytes have a crescent-shaped form, with the nucleus and pigment near the center. The peculiarity of shape of the gametocyte distinguishes this species from others found in man.

The time required to complete the asexual cycle, or schizogony, is approximately forty-eight hours, as with *P. vivax,* but there is generally marked lack of synchronization of generations, with the result that the febrile reactions, which coincide with segmentation, are irregular. The number of merozoites is also quite variable, from eight to thirty-six, with a tendency to the higher figures.

Because of the morphologic and physiologic differences between this species and the other species of human plasmodia, some authors believe that it should be placed in a distinct genus, which they would call Laverania. However, taking into acount the existence of intermediate forms in animal plasmodia, most investigators do not follow this suggestion but prefer to retain this parasite in the genus Plasmodium.

Plasmodium Ovale (Stephens, 1922)

This is the rarest malarial parasite found in nature. It is found in the Eastern Hemisphere; cases have also been found in the Western Hemisphere. The number of reported cases is still very small.

The parasitized red blood cells are oval shaped (hence the name), contain many granules, and take on a peculiar greenish hue. In other respects the parasite follows the development of *P. vivax* and *P. malariae.*

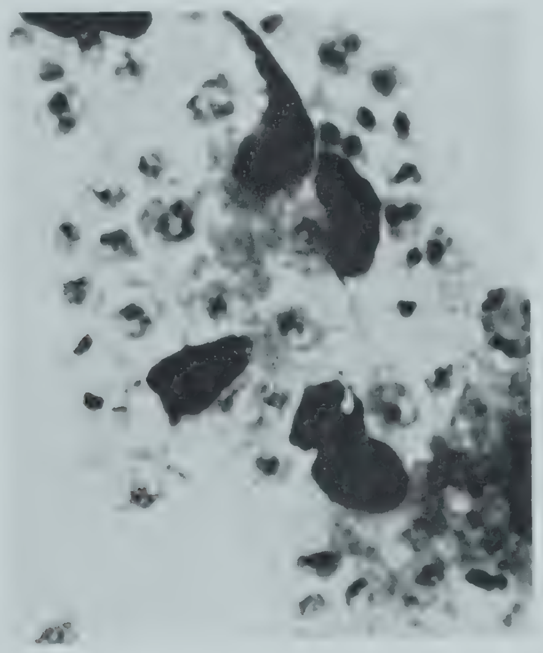


Fig. 31.—Toxoplasma. Smear from the brain of an infant. (Original photomicrograph of O. Felsenfeld.)

PLASMODIA OF ANIMALS

Plasmodia of mammals, especially of the higher apes, have been used in the study of problems pertaining to pathologic anatomy and immunity in man. Those most frequently used are *P. knowlesi, P. inui,* and *P. kochi,* found in Old World monkeys, and readily transmitted to *Macaca rhesus,* the common laboratory monkey. In the Western Hemisphere, *P. brasilianum,* a parasitic species found in the genus Aluatta, has been used extensively.

Plasmodia found in reptiles, although they have been known for a long time, have aroused relatively little interest. Thomson and Huff (1944), however, have again demonstrated the importance which reptilian plasmodia may have for chemotherapy and other research.

The most important plasmodia found in animals, and the most readily adaptable to experimental studies, are those of birds. As pointed out by Hewitt (1940), more than a dozen species may be experimentally transmitted to the canary, *Serinus canarius*. Those which are most extensively found and which have been used most frequently in the laboratory are *P. cathemerium*, *P. relictum*, and *P. circumflexum*, the canary being used generally as the experimental host.

Wolfson (1938) inoculated the domestic duck with *P. cathemerium*. Later, *P. lophurae* was also used in ducks and in chickens. Brumpt's *P. gallinaceum* (1935), a parasite of domestic poultry, is very favorable for experimental study. Versiani and Furtado Gomes (1941) found in Brazil a new species which infects the domestic hen, *P. juxtanucleare*. This species was found almost simultaneously by us in Huixtla, (Beltrán, 1941a).

FORMS RELATED TO PLASMODIA

There exist in man and in animals certain forms of parasites which in some ways may be considered related to the plasmodia.

The genus Toxoplasma is relatively common in guinea pigs. Some cases of toxoplasmosis have been reported in man, especially in children.

There are in birds intraerythrocytic parasites, related to Plasmodium, belonging to the genus Haemoproteus. There also exists in birds a parasite of the white blood cells belonging to the genus Leucocytozoon.

References

Aragao, H. de B., and Neiva, A.: 1909. Contribução Para o Estudio dos Parazitas Intraglobulares Dos Lacerdidas, Plasmodium Diploglossi n. sp., P. Tropiduri n. sp., Mem. Inst. Oswaldo Cruz. **1:** 44-50.

Ball, E. G. et al.: 1945. In Vitro Growth and Multiplication of the Malaria Parasite Plasmodium Knowlesi, Science **101:** 242-244.

Bass, C. C.: 1912. Successful Cultivation of Malaria Plasmodia, J. A. M. A. **59:** 936.

Bass, C. C., and Johns, F. M.: 1912. The Cultivation of Malarial Plasmodia (P. Vivax and P. Falciparum) in Vitro, J. Prevent. Med. **16:** 567-579.

Beltrán, E.: 1941. Infección de Reticulocitos por Plasmodium Vivax, Rev. d. Inst. salub. y enferm. trop. **2:** 327-345.

Beltrán, E.: 1941a. Hallazgo de Plasmodium Juxtanucleare Versiani y Furtado, en Gallinas de Chiapas, Rev. d. Inst. salub. y enferm. trop. **2:** 353-354.

Beltrán, E.: 1944. The Correct Names of Parasites in Human Malaria, Science **100:** 384-385.

Beltrán, E., and Sandoval, A.: 1945. Infección de Reticulocitos por *Plasmodium Vivax* en la Sangre Periférica y la Medula Esternal, Rev. d. Inst. salub. y enferm. trop. **6:** 195-198.

Beltrán, E., and Villasana, L.: 1945. Estudio Experimental Comparado de dos cepas Mexicanas de Plasmodium Vivax, Rev. d. inst. salub. y enferm. trop. **6:** 103-108.

Brumpt, E.: 1935. Paludisme Aviaire: Plasmodium Gallinaceum n. sp. de la Poule Domestique, Compt. rénd. Acad. d. sc. **200:** 783-785.

Coatney, G. R., and Young, M. D.: 1941. The Taxonomy of the Human Malaria Parasites, With Notes on the Principal American Strains. In A Symposium on Human Malaria (Moulton, F. R., editor), Washington.

Craik, R.: 1920. The Erythrocytes in Malaria, Lancet **198:** 1110.

Danilewski, B.: 1885. Zur Parasitologie des Blutes, Biol. Centralbl. **5:** 529-537.

Faust, E. C.: 1941. The Distribution of Malaria in North America, Mexico, Central America and the West Indies. In A Symposium on Human Malaria (Moulton, F. R., editor), Washington.

Golgi, C.: 1889. Sul Ciclo Evolutivo Dei Parassiti Malarici Nella Febre Terzana: Diagnosi Differenziale Tra i Parassiti Endoglobulari Della Terzana e Qualli Della Quartana, Arch. Soc. med. Torino **13:** 173-196.

Grassi, B., Bignami, A., and Bastianelli, G.: 1898. Ulteriori Ricerche Sul Ciclo Dei Parassiti Malarici Umani Nel Corpo del Zanzarone (Nota Preliminari), Atti Reg. Acad. Lincei Rendic. **8:** 21.

Hewitt, R.: 1940. Avian Malaria, Baltimore, Johns Hopkins Press.

Huff, C. G., and Bloom, W.: 1935. A Malarial Parasite Infecting All Blood and Blood-Forming Cells of Birds, J. Infect. Dis. **57:** 315-336.

Huff, C. G., and Coulston, P.: 1944. The Development of Plasmodium Gallinaceum From Sporozoite to Erythrocytic Trophozoites, J. Infect. Dis. **75:** 231-249.

James, S., and Tate, P.: 1937. New Knowledge of the Life Cycle of Malaria Parasites, Nature (London) **139**: 545.

Kikuth, W.: 1932. Zur Weiterentwicklung Synthetisch Dargestelter Malaria Mittel. Ueber die Chemotherpeutische Wirkung des Atabrin, Deutsche med. Wchnschr. **58**: 530.

Koch, R.: 1898. Reiseberichte über Rinderpest, Bubonenpest in Indien und Afrika, Tse-tse oder Surrakrankheit, Texas Fieber, Tropische Malaria, Schwarzwasserfieber. Quoted from Wenyon, 1926.

Pinkerton, H., and Weiman, D.: 1940. Toxoplasma Infection in Man, Arch. Path. **30**: 374-392.

Rohel, W.: 1926. Die Wirkung des Plasmochins auf die Vogelmalaria, Arch. f. Schiffs-u. Tropen-Hyg. **30**: 311.

Ross, R.: 1895. The Crescent-Sphere-Flagellate Metamorphosis of the Malaria Parasite in the Mosquito, Tr. Ind. Branch. Brit. M. A. **6**: 334-368.

Ross, R.: 1898. Report on the Cultivation of Proteosoma Labbe in Grey Mosquitoes, Ind. Med. Gaz. **32**: 401-419.

Sabrowsky, W. C., and Usinger, R. L.: 1944. Nomenclature of the Human Malaria Parasites, Science **100**: 190-192.

Schaudinn, F.: 1903. Studien über Krankheitserregende Protozoen. II. Plasmodium Vivax (Grassi und Feletti), der Erreger des Tertianfiebers Beim Menschen, Gesundheitsamt Beitr. **19**: 169.

Shortt, H. E., and Garnham, P. C. C.: 1948. Preerythrocytic Stage in Mammalian Malaria Parasite. Nature, **161**: 126.

Shortt, H. E., and Malamos, B.: 1948. The Preerythrocytic Stage of Mammalian Malaria. Brit. M. J. **1**: 192.

Thomson, P. E., and Huff, C. G.: 1944. Saurian Malarial Parasites of the United States and Mexico. A Saurian Malarial Parasite, Plasmodium Mexicanum n. sp., With Both Elongatum and Gallinaceum Types of Exoerythrocytic Stages, J. Infect. Dis. **74**: 48-79.

Versiani, V., and B.: Furtado Gomes, 1941. Sobre um Novo Hematozoario de Galinha: Plasmodium Juxtanucleare n. sp., Rev. brasil. de biol. **1**: 231-233.

Wagner-Jauregg, J.: 1918-19. Ueber die Einwirkung der Malaria auf die Progressive Paralysis, Psychiat.-neurol. Wchnschr. **20**: 32.

Wenyon, C. M.: 1926. Protozoology, London, Baillière, Tindall & Co., 2 vols.

CHAPTER 6

MALARIA

JOSEPH WESLEY COLVIN

Malaria (Italian colloquialism meaning "bad air") is a disease which is widespread throughout the world and endemic in a universal band bounded by latitudes of approximately 40 degrees north and 40 degrees south, but epidemic far wider. It is produced by several species of the class Sporozoa, in the phylum Protozoa, and is characterized by its recurring, periodic fever, debilitation, and chronicity. Few diseases have had as extensive investigation as has malaria, and writings concerning it extend back to Hippocrates and into lost antiquity. Certainly few diseases have touched its mark of cost to mankind. Malaria probably has a role in two million deaths annually and presents itself as a salient problem to medical minds each century. This in part is due to its prevalence, character, and the elements involved in its transmission from man-to-mosquito-to-man. There are areas where strict vigil and earnest, long untiring labor have been rewarded by the reduction or almost complete eradication of malaria as a health and economic problem. This has been done by breaking the links of the chain, in the mechanics of its transmission.

CAUSATIVE AGENTS

The malarial parasites have been discussed in Chapter 5 and the description will not be repeated here.

Clinical observations of variations in species, virulence, infectivity, and recurrences have led to the recognition of strains of plasmodia. These characteristics are apparently unrelated to the structural findings in the parasite.

Some strains under observation in the United States have been designated as follows (Coatney and Young, 1941; Boyd, 1945):

PLASMODIUM VIVAX

McCoy
Cleveland
St. Elizabeth
U. S. Public Health
New Guinea Chesson
Solomons

PLASMODIUM MALARIAE

Jones

PLASMODIUM FALCIPARUM

Spears
Long
Coker
Costa
Thomas
Perkins
Cuban
Mexican
Panamanian
Bynum
Trinidad

The opinions and views expressed in this chapter are those of the writer and do not in any way constitute officially those of the United States Navy.

The author is indebted in no small way to the following persons for their help and kindness in making this chapter possible: Captain H. L. Pugh, M.C., United States Navy, Commandant, United States Naval Medical School; Captain O. Wildman, M.C., United States Navy; Commander T. K. Ruebush (HS), United States Naval Reserve; Dr. W. W. Eldridge, Jr., Medical Director, St. Elizabeth Hospital, Washington, D. C.

TABLE VII. OBSERVATIONS ON TWO STRAINS OF VIVAX MALARIA
(From Swellengrebel and DeBeck, 1938)

NAME	PARASITEMIA WITHOUT SYMPTOMS (%)	LATENCY PERIOD (DAYS)	DAILY FEVER (%)	HIGH FEVER (%)	SPON-TANEOUS RECOVERY (%)	RELAPSES (%)
Holland	38	21	19	8	10	10
Madagascar	7	12	80	30	0	80

These are or have been used in the therapeutic induction of malaria for paretic patients. Interesting racial resistance has been found especially in Negroes toward *vivax* infections. Some workers have felt that Caucasians, too, in selected cases, have exhibited a similar resistance. James divides them into three groups: very susceptible, refractory, and between these limits, with a majority falling in the middle group. In the treatment of paretic patients, if one strain does not produce a malarial "take," a different strain is used. Success is more likely to occur with a different species entirely, though similar gradations of resistance have been reported in all species (James, 1937, *vivax* and *falciparum;* Sinton, Hutton, Shute, 1939, with *ovale*). Boyd succeeded in inoculating 100 per cent of his patients on the second try with *P. vivax* and felt that it was unsuccessful the first time because of parasitic alterations rather than the individual patients.

VECTORS

See Chapter 7.

PATHOLOGY

Malaria produces extensive physiologic and histologic changes, accompanied by a multiplicity of significant pathology. The reticuloendothelial system probably bears the brunt of the initial attack, only to be taxed later with toxic by-products and cellular debris, during erythrocytic invasion. The function and existence of red blood cells are destroyed by parasitism, with a resulting state of toxicity, whereby other nonparasitized normal erythrocytes may be destroyed by lysis. The release of blood pigment from red cells in itself causes enough disturbance to disrupt hematopoietic balance, to say little of other disruptions incident to protozoan infection. Many events occur in pathologic sequence before onset of the varied anemic states, induced by the increased destruction of red blood cells. These are the poignant manifestations of the so-called blood organs, those with sinusoids, liver, spleen, bone marrow, etc. Clark (1928) indicated that parasites have a tendency to localize in these places and pointed out that this might be a defense action on the part of the body. This resultant centralizing of parasites causes retardation of blood passage and enlargement of the organs involved, so that splenomegaly and hepatomegaly are features of the disease, when fully developed in the host. The pathologic response is one of hyperplasia, hypertrophy, and pigmentation.

Plate I.—Cycle of Development of Malarial Parasites in Man and Mosquito

1. Bite of mosquito. Injecting sporozoite into man from its salivary gland.
2-14, 2A-15A, 2B-12B. Blood stream of man.
15. Bite of mosquito. Receiving sexual forms from man.
16-24. Stomach of mosquito. Oöcysts formed on the outer wall of the mosquito's stomach.
25. Salivary gland of mosquito.
2, 2A, 2B. Free sporozoites.
3, 3A, 3B. Penetration of sporozoite into a parenchyma cell of the liver.
4, 4A, 4B. Beginning schizogony. Ring form.
2-9, 4A-10A, 4B-7B. Schizogony. Cause of fever.
5, 5A, 5B. Half-grown parasite.
6, 6A. Mature parasite.
7, 7A, 8A. Beginning division.
8, 9A, 6B. Division forms.
9, 10A, 7B. Merozoites.
10, 11A, 8B. Young male.
11, 12A, 9B. Adult male.
12, 13A, 10B. Young female.
13, 14A, 11B. Adult female.
15. Bite of mosquito. Inoculation of mosquito from patient.
16. Macrogametocyte.
17. Microgametocyte.
18. Fertilization.
19. Zygote.
20. Oökinete entering stomach wall.
21. Young cyst on outer stomach wall.
22. Cyst with sporoblasts.
23. Cyst with sporozoites.
24. Wandering sporozoites.
25. Sporozoites in salivary gland of mosquito.

CYCLE OF DEVELOPMENT OF MALARIAL PARASITES IN MAN AND MOSQUITO

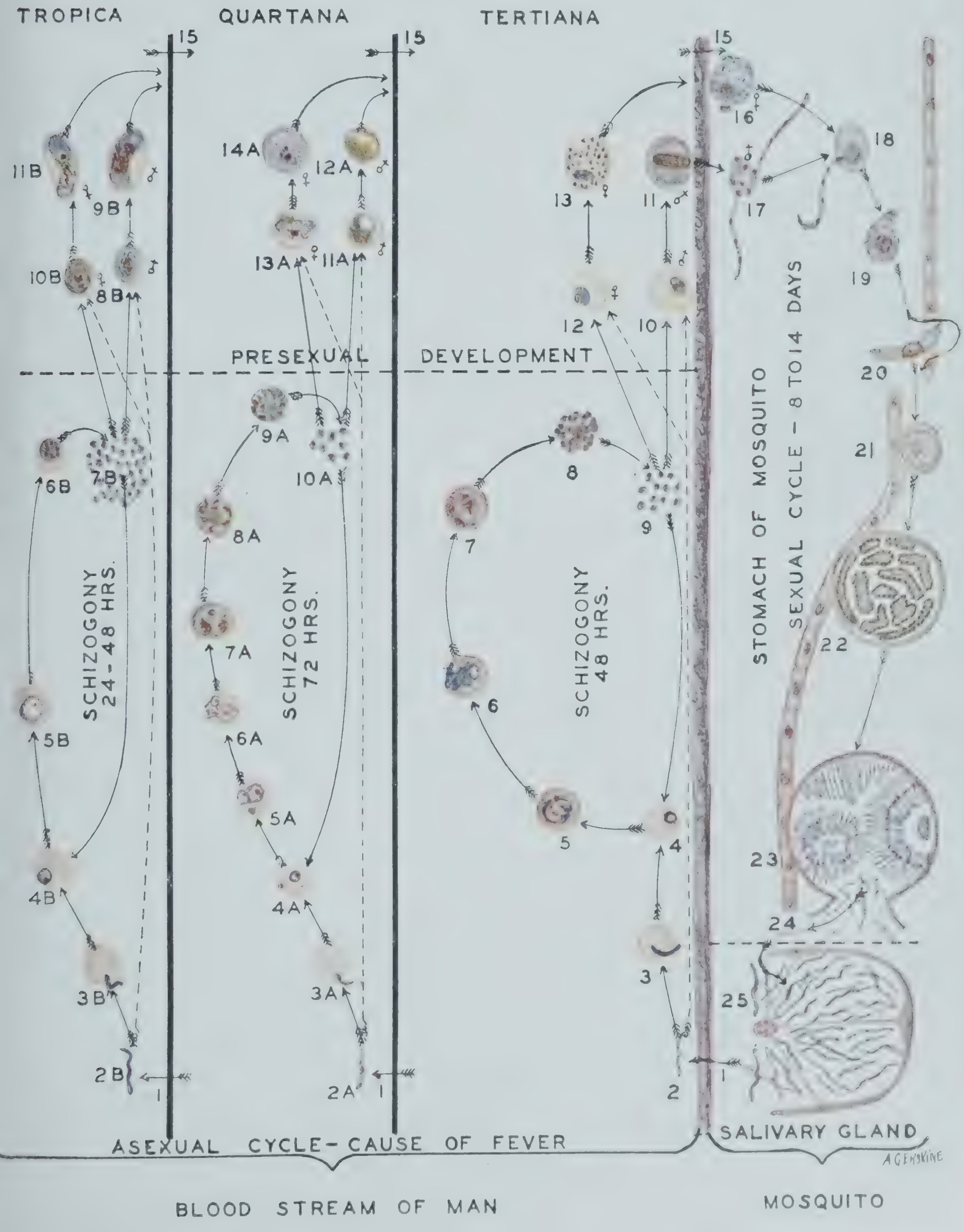

TROPICA
QUARTANA
TERTIANA
15
15
15
11B
9B
10B
8B
14A
12A
13A
11A
13
11
12
10
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
PRESEXUAL DEVELOPMENT
6B
7B
9A
10A
8A
7A
6A
5A
4A
3A
2A
1
8
9
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
5B
4B
3B
2B
1
SCHIZOGONY 24-48 HRS.
SCHIZOGONY 72 HRS.
SCHIZOGONY 48 HRS.
STOMACH OF MOSQUITO
SEXUAL CYCLE - 8 TO 14 DAYS
SALIVARY GLAND
ASEXUAL CYCLE - CAUSE OF FEVER
BLOOD STREAM OF MAN
MOSQUITO
A GERSKINE

PLATE I

(Legend on opposite page.)

The spleen and liver, in an acute case of malaria, are congested, enlarged, soft, and spongy, with a dark color. The more chronic the case, the darker and firmer the consistency. The continuous hyperplastic changes which occur in capsular fibers and internal corpuscular tissue elements bring this about. The spleen and liver are often three to four times their normal size, with a blackish cast in patients dead of long-standing malaria. Capillary thrombosis and hemorrhages, even moderately larger infarctions, have been found to occur.

Microscopically, highly pigmented cells, cloudy swelling, and necrotic foci are observed in the liver. The phagocytes, monocytes, and reticuloendothelial cells are heavily darkened with black pigment. Vacuolization, toxic changes, and fatty infiltration all may occur as complications. There may be found what is called ring hemorrhages, for example, capillaries plugged with parasitized red cells, and edema in the brain with subsequent development of malarial granulomas. Those induced by vascular thromboses are not confined locally but may be widespread over the body, occurring in the heart, which shows focal or interstitial myocarditis, in the nephritic tubular areas, pancreas, thyroid, lungs, and suprarenals, all usually appearing in fatal cases. Focal necrosis and petechial hemorrhage in the gastrointestinal tract are not rare.

Acute stages of malaria produce a drop in blood protein and reversal of A/G ratio. Blood viscosity is changed and water balance disturbed. The effect of these on kidney secretion may cause retention of by-products of body metabolism.

The overtaxation of the resistive forces of the body and the wholesale destruction of red blood cells by malaria have brought in association to it a clinical term describing a condition found in malarious areas called "blackwater fever," the pathology of this state being the same as that produced in malaria except that every finding is acutely intensified and the absence of kidney function typifies the clinical picture. There occurs in this condition a vastly overwhelming loss of total red blood cells, so much, that one to two million may be destroyed in twenty-four hours. Death may ensue in a very short time. The species identified most commonly with blackwater fever is *P. falciparum*, though recently a new malignant *vivax* strain, occurring in children, has been reported from Russia. In these cases there was found a heavy hemoglobinuria.

A state of cachexia will develop in long-standing chronic malaria, the result of the anemia and impaired function of vital organs needed to maintain good health. Intervening intercurrent infection causes complete debilitation or even death. There occurs in malignant malaria (*P. falciparum*) a greater tendency for the parasitized red blood cells to clump or agglutinate together than is evidenced by quartan (*P. malariae*) or benign tertian (*P. vivax*). This was observed many years ago in the brain and other organs after death. Cropper (1908) found this agglutination in the peripheral blood stream before death. Knisely (1941) thought the red blood cell agglutination was in liver passage, phagocytized there.

The white blood picture in malarious infections changes from one of normal tenure to one of reduced white blood count, leucopenia. This is reversed somewhat during the paroxysms and then decreases. Persistent malarial latency found in *P. vivax* and *malariae* usually brings about an increase in large mononuclear leucocytes. The picture is, therefore, one of leucopenia with a later absolute mononuclear leucocyte increase. The same, in general, applies to *P. falciparum* infections; this species is not as refractory to treatment as the other two species. Thus, there is no degree of latency.

	RED CELL PREDILECTION	PARASITIC RANGE (USUALLY)
Plasmodium vivax	Reticulocytes	8,000 to 20,000 per c.mm.
Plasmodium malariae	Mature red blood cells	Up to 10,000 per c.mm.
Plasmodium falciparum	All age cells	Up to 500,000 per c.mm.

Thus it can be seen that somewhat of a limitation is imposed on the first two, whereas with the last, practically no limit exists in untreated cases, implying a much graver prognosis.

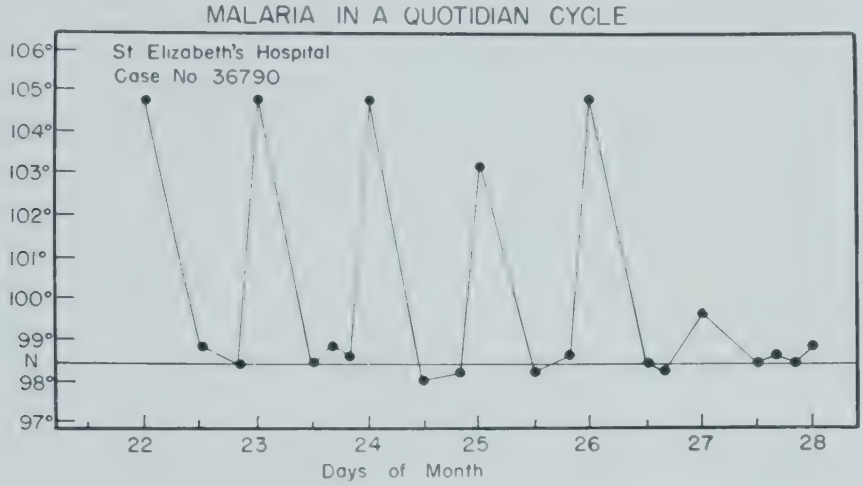
The common pathologic course of benign tertian and quartan malaria is not one of severity but rather one of extensive mildness, in which there apparently occurs a balance between the disease and resistive body forces. Undoubtedly, there is interplay between body immunity to a species, after a time, and the invasive powers of the infective species. One apparently becomes weak and the other stronger for the moment, only to reverse later.

Prolonged infection sees the exacerbations becoming farther and farther apart with these two species. That the threshold level of clinical manifestation of the disease is raised is evidenced by the fact that so many asymptomatic parasitemias are found in endemic areas. The adaptation of the body to the malarial toxins via immunity or histologic compensation, or subsidence of virulence of the species, or all these factors may explain this. The consistency of the pathologic picture in most cases suggests that the time element of change is prolonged, so that the whole scheme develops more slowly, with a balance occurring between the toxicity and destructiveness of the parasite and the ability of the host to compensate for the invasion and to live compatibly with it.

CLINICAL SYMPTOMS

Paroxysms—Typical

The clinical observations of malaria in the past have led to the common naming of the various species causing it. These are in rather prominent usage today, although it is less confusing to use the generic terms, such as *P. vivax,* etc. The clinical terms are, respectively, benign *tertian, quartan,* and *malignant tertian* or *subtertian* malaria. "Tertian" is derived from the Latin meaning "three," being applied to *vivax* malaria, the chills and fever occurring on the third day. "Quartan" comes from the Latin meaning "four," being applied to *malariae* malaria, the paroxysms occurring on the fourth day. In each instance, the first day is a day of chill and fever; in *vivax* and *ovale,* and irregularly so with *falciparum* malaria, the next chill is forty-eight hours later or on the third day. The same applies to *malariae* malaria, the time interval being seventy-two hours, and the second chill on the fourth day. "Benign" and "malignant" were added undoubtedly because of the eventual outcome of the course. *Vivax*, while severe clinically, does not have associated with it the mortality and pathology of the seemingly mild *falciparum* malaria, which became known as "malignant tertian" malaria.


MALARIA IN A QUOTIDIAN CYCLE

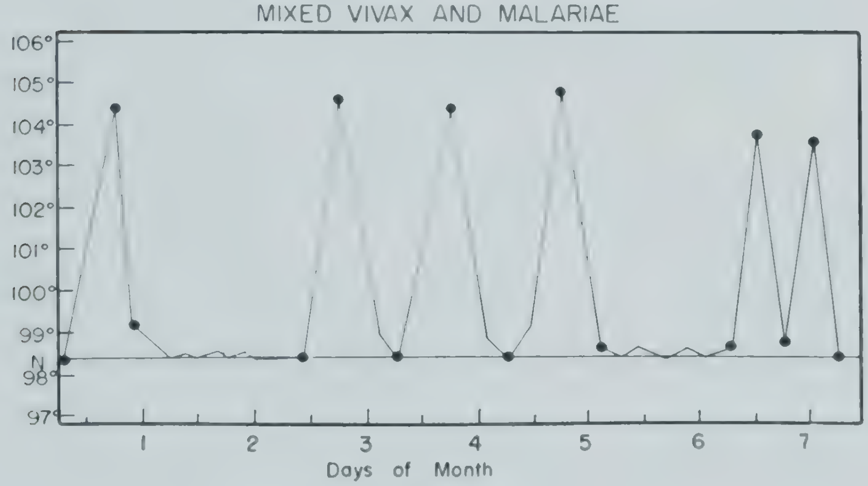
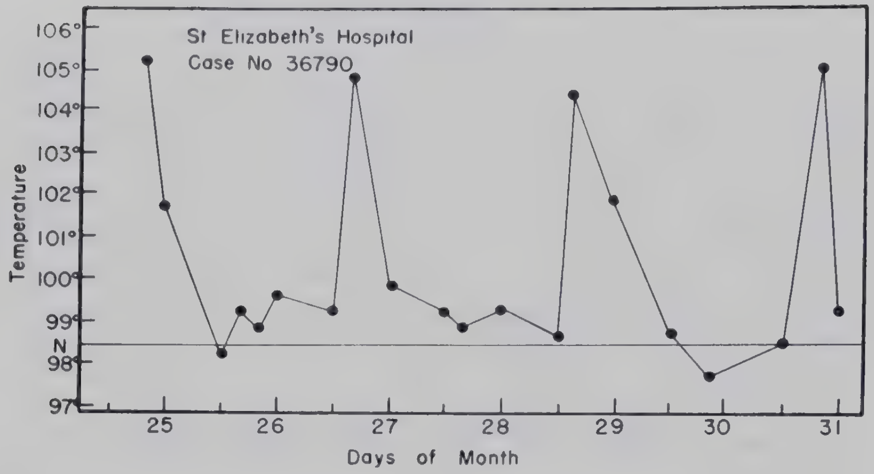

MIXED VIVAX AND MALARIAE

Fig. 32.

The chill, fever, sweat periodic syndrome is called a "paroxysm" and varies in length and periodicity with the species. The *vivax* and *malariae* paroxysms exhibit variability but occur approximately four to ten hours from the beginning to the end. *Falciparum* paroxysms are somewhat milder but last upward to from ten to even thirty-six hours. In the former two, the temperature usually falls to normal or below normal and is considered intermittent, whereas in the latter the temperature may not come down to normal but rather remains above it; hence, it is considered a remittent type and persists longer. The typical paroxysm consists of a preceding cold phase (chill), lasting from one-half to one hour, during which the patient is pale, erector pilae spasm is prominent, coarse tremors are evident, and a sense of anxiety is obvious. The body temperature rises, and chilly sensations of wave character pass over the body. This is followed by outright severe tremors and local spasms and chattering of the teeth.

MALARIA IN A TERTIAN CYCLE


St Elizabeth's Hospital
Case No 36790

IRREGULAR TERTIAN MALARIA

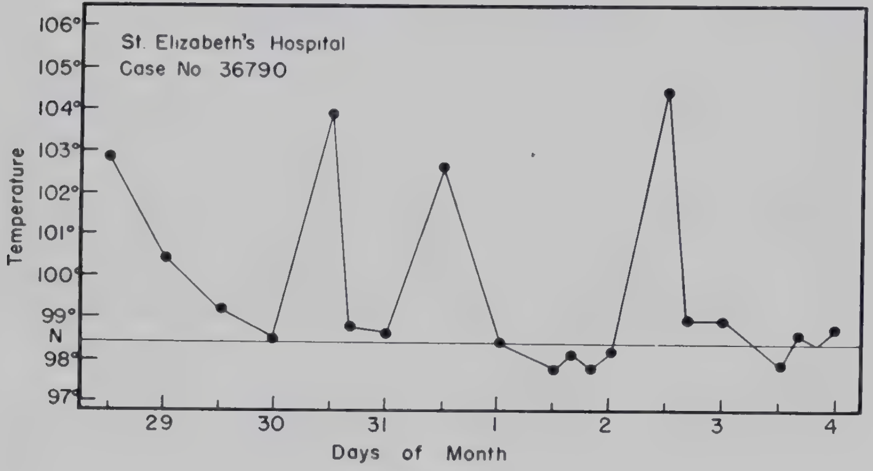

St. Elizabeth's Hospital
Case No 36790

Fig. 33.

MALARIA IN A QUARTAN CYCLE

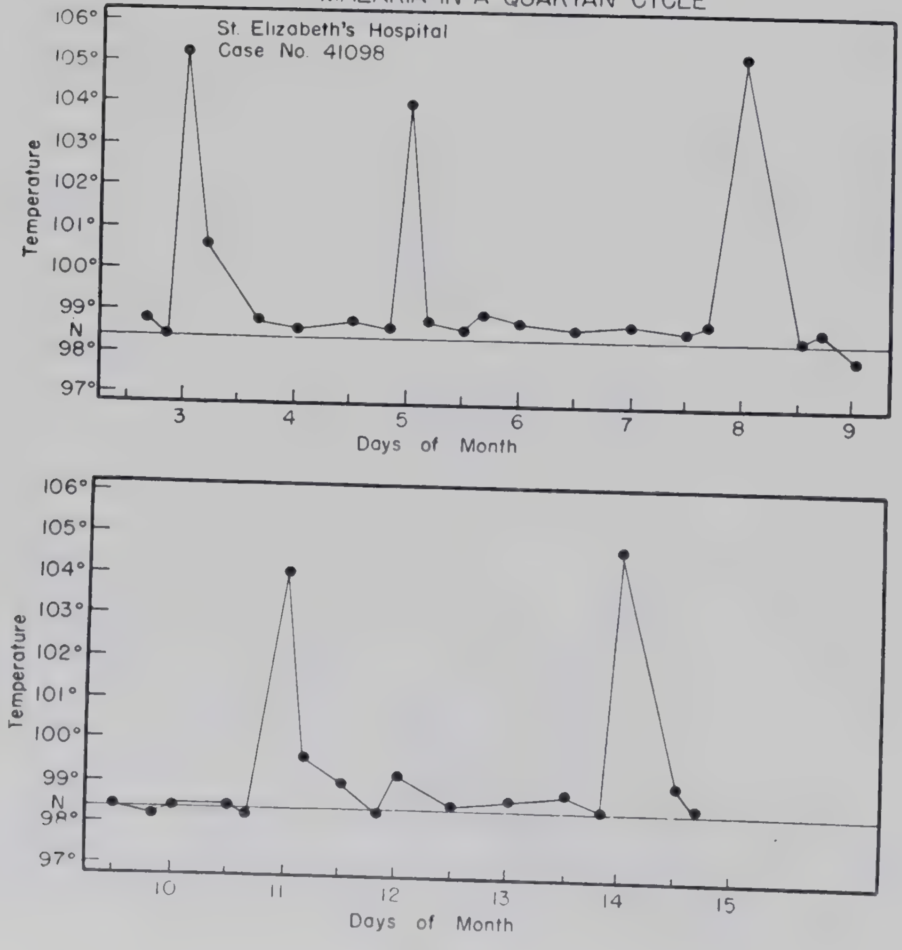

St. Elizabeth's Hospital
Case No. 41098

Fig. 34.

with a harassed, pinched appearance to the face, which may appear to have a bluish cast. An attempt is made to keep warm by using any or all means at hand. The effect of this varies with individuals, some requiring bed rest with almost collapse supportive measures and some at the other extreme, proceeding with their work though obviously seriously hampered. The mind remains clear, if not actually more alert than usual. The pulse is increased and respiratory rate is increased but is more shallow. The desire for frequent micturition is strong, and any attempt to eat may be followed by nausea and vomiting. This stage is followed by the hot or flushed phase. The face is flushed, eyes bright; the body has a red appearance. There is a sense of relief attendant to the ending of the cold stage, only to be followed by the aggravation of pyrexial symptoms of the hot stage; for example, headache becomes worse and a feeling of abdominal tenseness around the splenic area may be experienced. It is not uncommon to find herpetic lesions around the mouth and nose. This stage, with a temperature of 104 to 106° F., may last three to four hours before the final stage of the paroxysm starts, that of sweating. The skin, previously dry and hot, becomes moist and cool. The temperature falls rather rapidly, and perspiration starts about the head, spreads over the body, and becomes quite profuse, lasting two to three hours. Accompanying the temperature fall is a feeling of exhaustion, and sleep soon intervenes. In the course of a few hours, the patient awakens feeling fresh but not free of fatigue. The patient is usually well until the initiation of the next paroxysm.

Paroxysms—Atypical

The foregoing description of a typical paroxysm is almost invariably associated with the *vivax* and *malariae* species, the benign tertian and quartan malaria, respectively; also, with *P. ovale* except that with this species the clinical manifestations are somewhat milder. The atypical paroxysm can occur in individuals in mild forms, producing malarial low-grade fever, headache, and rheumatoid pains in the joints, long bones, and muscles. The symptoms are much like those preceding the onset of a "head cold." These occur in apparently highly resistant patients or partially treated cases. For the most part the atypical paroxysms are associated with malignant tertian, subtertian, or *falciparum* malaria. In this type of malaria, several clinical forms have become well known.

First is the *algid form*, thought to be due to localization of large numbers of parasitized red blood cells in the large and small blood vessels of the intestinal tract and abdominal organs. The algid type is characterized by prostration, bordering on shock, with peripheral circulatory collapse and an associated high fever. The patients may exhibit uncontrollable vomiting, severe dysentery with bloody stools, hemorrhage, and purpura. Consequently, severe malaria is clinically designated according to the most prominent symptom or sign. The aggregation of large numbers of parasitized red cells in the brain usually results in the *cerebral type* which features delirium, coma, meningismus, aphasic or hemiplegic signs. There are other types that have *cardiac* symptomatology and signs of dilated right-sided heart. These are found usually at high altitudes, connected with a fatty degeneration of the myocardium. The *bronchopneumonic* type has symptoms referable to that body area.

The subjective experience in clinical *vivax* malaria is usually more harassing than with the others. First, the prodromal symptoms, such as rheumatoid pains, etc., precede a sudden onset of paroxysm, all of which are a severe stress for the patient. These may have a periodicity. For the most part, the paroxysm, even if somewhat irregular at the start, and which may be daily in occurrence, always becomes fixed on a forty-eight hour recurrent basis. Between attacks, patients feel well, being able to do their work.

P. malariae infection has had associated with it a tendency to some nephritic involvement as a complication. Untreated *vivax* malaria and *malariae* infection will, by nature of the cell selectivity of the parasite, become limited over a period of time, whereas *falciparum* malaria, on the same basis, may exhibit no such limitation.

	PARASITES PER C.MM.	(MAX.)	PERIOD COVERED
Plasmodium vivax	20,000 to 40,000	50,000	2 to 3 yr.
Plasmodium malariae	5,000 to 10,000	20,000	7 to 10 yr.
Plasmodium falciparum	Unpredictable	No limit	2 to 6 mo.

Although the incubation period of naturally acquired malaria is approximately fourteen days, that of artificially transmitted malaria is shorter, eleven days (James, 1931). Latency is a prominent feature of both *vivax* and *malariae*. The initiation of the paroxysm is dependent upon the rupture of the mature schizonts. Manson-Bahr (1945) has suggested that the syndrome is of the nature of allergy. The manifestations of a relatively nonimmune group exposed to malarial infection have been observed in the recent war years. The latency exhibited by *vivax*, even though cases were treated adequately, plus thorough drug supervision preceding entrance into endemic areas, has caused considerable discussion. At this point exacerbations are not as frequent as previously. This leads one to suspect some resistance is developing as time passes, which may or may not be the case, but is probable. The paroxysms are apparently as severe as previously, only less frequent. Few, if any, cases of the severe *falciparum* malaria developed since adequate suppressive doses produce successful results.

The incidence of multiple infections is not as uncommon as one would imagine and, when occurring, may present an unusual picture. The presence of two groups of *vivax* or *malariae* in a patient will ofttimes present a more frequent rise of temperature *(quotidian malaria)* until the development of the schizonts becomes more synchronous, as they will tend to do in similar species infection. This is as yet inadequately explained. Infection by heterogeneous species will usually end with one or the other dominating the clinical picture; for example, if *vivax* and *falciparum* are found, the latter, having a subtertian cycle and attacking any type cell, may dominate in untreated cases. If *vivax* and *malariae* are found, it is reasonable to suppose that the *vivax* will eventually dominate, being of the shorter cycle, though the extreme latency of quartan will become evident later. In this last incidence the patient would have fever twelve days in nineteen. Perhaps there would be a double rise in temperature on the seventh, thirteenth, and nineteenth days, as *vivax* and *ovale* produce chills every forty-eight hours and *malariae* every seventy-two hours. *Falciparum* produces them irregularly, from approximately thirty-six hours onward. The symptoms are mild, almost insidious, until the more severe clinical malaria occurs. Table VIII represents clinical symptomatic differences.

TABLE VIII

	TERTIAN	QUARTAN AND SUBTERTIAN
Seriousness	Nonkilling	Killing
Distribution	Global but spotty	Tropical
Symptomatology	Severe	Milder (insidious)
Course	Regular	Irregular
Relapses	Prone	Less so
Latency	Four plus	Minus
Treatment	Resistant	Susceptible
Prognosis	Good	Guarded

Malarial Debility

The repetition of attacks of any of the malarial species, if untreated or inadequately treated, may lead to serious debility in physical and mental capacities. Here, greatly enlarged livers, and especially spleens, are observed.

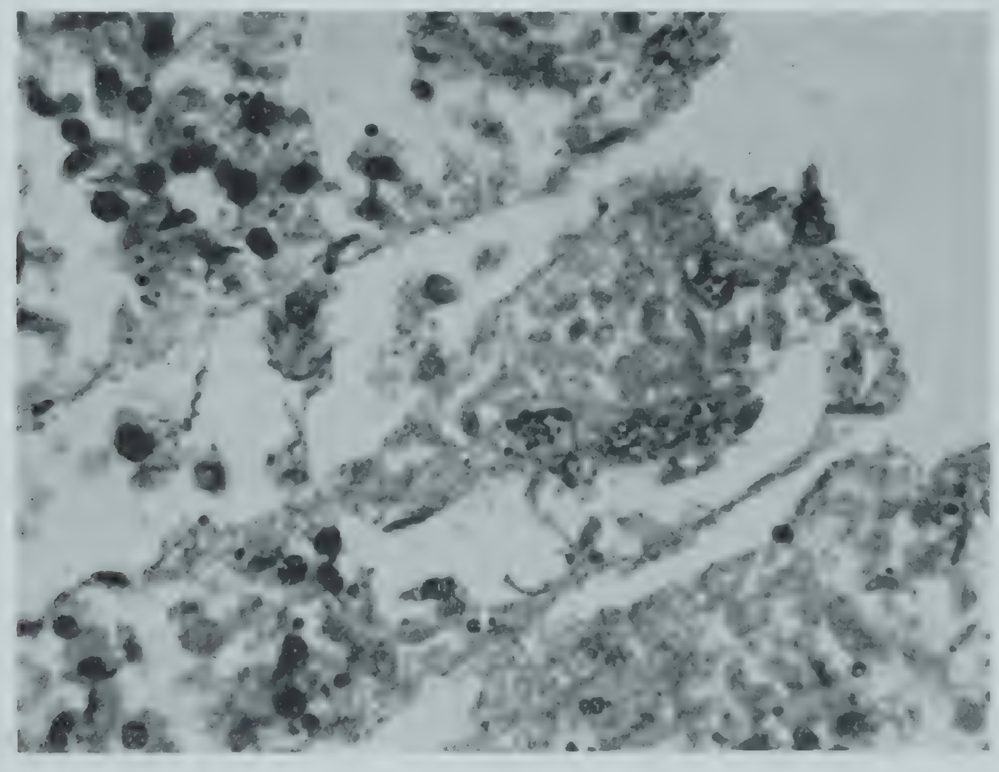


Fig. 35.—Malarial intestine. (Original photomicrograph of O. Felsenfeld.)

The skin is a sallow color, the turgor is gone, the face is pinched, and the ocular sclera is a yellowish color. A "pot-bellied" type abdomen is found, especially in children. Growth impairment may be obvious. The over-all resistance to minor ailments is drastically lowered by the chronic anemia. Patients with the more severe type may show ascites and edema of the legs.

and besides gastric disturbance, anorexia, etc., there may occur tendencies to hemorrhage. There may be a Banti-like syndrome in the picture of cachexia. The skin will ulcerate easily from abrasions, etc. As in many chronic illnesses, the true character is overshadowed by subsequent developing conditions, such as deficiency polyneuritis, paralyses, amblyopia, etc. The mental depression, deterioration of memory, and lack of concentration powers that have been associated with malaria infections and malarial debility have been found rarely, if at all, in Service-developed cases of malaria during World War II.

General Considerations

Through the many years of observation on malaria, several factors have been associated as being incident to the relapses of malaria clinically. How these operate is obscure and open to scientific criticism, but the dictates of good judgment and common sense place them in close proximity to recurrences of clinical exacerbations of latent and relapsing malaria. These factors are overindulgence in alcoholic beverages, undue exposure to elements, fatigue, shock, surgical procedures, childbirth, etc. Many authorities believe these to be contributing factors in the cause of recurrent malaria.

Malariae (quartan) is considered the worst offender in this regard, especially in view of the many years this species will persist. The patient is usually symptomless and the parasites undiscoverable in blood and in the organs, though obviously they are garnered somewhere in the body only to produce relapses when the conditions are right. These relapse periods vary in artificially induced malaria and the naturally acquired, ofttimes terminating spontaneously in the former (Boyd and Kitchen, 1937). Much emphasis has been placed on the relapses occurring in Service-acquired *vivax* malaria. Since the relapses happen frequently, they may constitute an economic burden on the patient in his usual pursuits. However, quartan malaria relapses run into many years; benign *vivax* is not expected to do this.

The question naturally arises, what influence does the malarial disease have on other conditions? The transmission of malaria, congenitally, is yet an open question. There are incidences where the malarial parasites have been found in the newborn, but in some there has been some abnormality connected either with intrauterine life or with parturition. When fetal infection does occur, it must place a severe burden on the child. There are other cases where it appears that congenital infection has no doubt occurred, most likely via the placental route (James, Brown, Tanner, Hewitt). Clark (1928), on the other hand, has made extensive surveys with this point in mind and found no crossover to fetal blood of parasites, even though the mother was heavily infected. Treatment of this is discussed under Therapeusis. There are many cases reported, and on record, of malarial infections developing from the transfusion of blood from a donor who has an asymptomatic malaria or who has had history of previous infection. The interval of time between clinical malaria in the donor and the transfusion time, to the new case, has been as long as several decades. The species involved has usually been *P. malariae*.

This type of transmission and inoculation has been found also among drug addicts (Applebaum and Gelfand, 1934; Helpern, 1934; Jolliffe, 1940; and Most, 1940).

There are several ways of determining the degree of malarial infection in a locality. These means are by using the splenic index, parasitic index, sporozoite rate in salivary gland (mosquito) or by dissection of the mosquito stomach and observing oöcysts. All of these are not without fallibility and have their points of controversy. The *splenic index* is the number of palpable spleens per 100 persons examined. The *parasitic index* is the number of positive blood smears per 100 people. The *sporozoite rate* is the number of positive mosquito salivary glands per 100 mosquitoes. *Mosquito oöcyst index* is the number of positive mosquitoes found per 100 mosquitoes examined. The *endemic index* is the parasitic index plus the splenic index. Somewhat of a criterion has been advocated on the degree of endemicity as follows:

10% or below	Low endemicity
10 to 25%	Moderate endemicity
25 to 50%	High endemicity
50 to 90%	Hyperendemicity

Under natural conditions, when the index is below 10 per cent, the other 90 per cent must have either quiescent malaria or no malaria. The thought has been suggested that this may be the type of situation where an increase in malaria could be expected on the basis of so many being more or less susceptible (Komp and Clark, 1934).

DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis of malaria rests on (1) positive blood smear; (2) periodic fever and paroxysms or periodic symptoms; (3) splenomegaly; (4) history of malaria or of having been in an endemic area; (5) the judicious ruling out of similar conditions producing a complicated malaria picture; (6) the complement fixation test which has been found to be suggestive and apparently worth while in patients of a quiescent malarial phase (Coggeshall and Eaton, 1938); (7) drug therapeutic tests with antimalarials; (8) pigmented leucocytes in the presence of leucopenia with a relative increase of monocytes, which is suggestive.

DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

Malaria can, unfortunately, simulate almost any disease; consequently, many other conditions must of necessity enter into the process of differentiation and the ascribing of a malarial state. The geographic location of the case will afford some help in this. If in a nontropical area, the tropical diseases can be eliminated fairly easily from consideration; they should be borne in mind if the patient has recently returned from the tropics. If the patient is in a tropical area, both temperate and tropical diseases must be considered. In the former area, diseases such as septic states, endocarditis, tuberculosis, pyelitis, typhoid fever, relapsing fever, tularemia, influenza, brucellosis, ratbite fever, or Haverhill fever should be thought of diagnostically. In the latter areas, add kala-azar, trypanosomiasis, Weil's disease, and especially amebic liver abscesses.

Endocarditis usually follows some acute infectious process as a complication; blood cultures and evidences of bacteriemia, irregular periodicity to the daily temperature rise, heart murmur help in differentiating it.

An exhaustive careful study will perhaps be the best method of ruling out tuberculosis. The absence of typical paroxysms and crises, a positive lung x-ray, cough, hemoptysis, and an unexplained moderate polycythemia are suggestive of tuberculous splenitis. Pyelitis usually has symptomatology referable to the urogenital system. In early cases only bacteria and some pus may be found as an abnormality in the urine. Typhoid fever is apparently easy or difficult to differentiate; outstanding features are slow pulse, increasing fever each day, history of exposure, blood culture early in the disease. Urine culture later or the Widal test is of help. Relapsing fever can usually be ruled out, using blood smears and finding the causative spirochete during the fever. An atypical, typhoid type of tularemia can be confusing. The lack of positive blood smears for malaria and the use of blood agglutinins for specific tests in the second week will rule out tularemia. Foshay's intradermal antigen is considered specific in tularemia. Influenza can be ruled out by blood smear examination and absence of catarrhal symptoms. Brucellosis can be established by blood culture and by suggestive skin tests read in forty-eight hours, the presence of agglutinins, and the opsonocytophagic index. Ratbite fever usually can be determined by dark-field or blood smear examination or lymph node puncture; there are usually lymphangitic signs and regional adenopathy in the proximity of the original ratbite. Animal inoculation into mice or guinea pigs can be used to differentiate from malaria.

Kala-azar is, in its onset, in some cases, similar to malaria, though a double daily rise in temperature has been found in some areas. The finding of Leishman-Donovan bodies by liver or splenic puncture, or using blood to culture the causative Leishmania, can usually aid in differentiating this disease from malaria. Trypanosomiasis, both the African and South American types, can be identified by finding the parasites in the blood during the acute phase. Winterbottom's sign, glandular enlargement in the neck, together with finding the parasite, are reliable in establishing a diagnosis of African trypanosomiasis. Gland puncture is not considered very reliable in Chagas' disease (South American trypanosomiasis).

Weil's disease, caused by *Leptospira icterohaemorrhagiae,* has an abrupt onset, in many cases similar to the start of a malarial paroxysm. It can be differentiated by using the blood smear to demonstrate the etiologic agent during the first few days of the disease; thereafter, the organisms appear in the urine. Most effective is injecting blood into a guinea pig or hamster, finding the Leptospira and positive agglutination tests.

Liver abscesses with periodic fever are, in certain incidences, difficult to differentiate from malaria. The blood smears, high polymorphonuclear leucocyte count, or antimalarial drug therapeutic test may be the only reliable measures in these cases.* Those abscesses due to *Endamoeba histolytica* can be identified by using what appears to be a significantly reliable test, the amebic complement fixation procedure.

Filariasis can be differentiated by unilateral swelling and adenopathy and by blood smear and serologic methods. Yellow fever has a more prolonged onset. Albuminuria occurs on the second or third day, with mild jaundice, but blood smears will aid in establishing a diagnosis of malaria.

Chronic malaria and hookworm disease can be differentiated by laboratory methods, blood smears, or finding the nematode eggs in the stools.

Blackwater Fever

For the purposes of complete understanding, a few clinical points regarding this condition are included under this section. Blackwater fever associated with *falciparum* malaria is fortunately not too common. One Navy clinician who spent more than a decade in malarial areas saw only three cases in nine years in nonimmune individuals who had entered a *P. falciparum* endemic area and resided there for only a short while. The disease appeared with the swiftness of an allergic phenomenon and probably was not too far removed from a state of that character. The patient's malaria seemingly improves, and people native to the area apparently are not subject to the disease. However, natives going from one area to another, for example, elevated regions where one species, *quartan* or *vivax*, is dominant, to sea level areas where *falciparum* is present in great numbers, have fallen victim to blackwater fever. Age or sex seems to make no difference, and the occurrence of the disease tends to be familial in character. A recent suggestion has been offered by Butts (1945) regarding this familial tendency; namely, that the Rh factor may be instrumental in the hemolysis of blood cells in blackwater fever. Factors involved in its precipitation are varied and debatable. These few listed are some, but by no means all, of the factors discussed or considered:

1. Amount of exposure to malaria
2. Fatigue
3. Exposure to debilitating conditions
4. Alcoholic beverage excess
5. Quinine
6. Atabrine
7. Arsenicals
8. Plasmochin
9. Pregnancy
10. Biologic variation in individuals

The pathologic sequence of events can be succinctly summarized as:

1. Hemolysis of parasitized and normal red blood cells at the rate of over 1,000,000 in twenty-four hours
2. Development of hemoglobinuria
3. Early appearance of jaundice
4. Usually anuria; Maigraith (1945) advances the theory that this may be due to renal anoxia

---

*Editor's note (O. F.): Paludrine and Chloroquine (Aralen), however, are active also against liver amebiasis.

This pathology overloads the reticuloendothelial system with pigment, also causing acute nephritic impairment. Clinically, a hard, severe chill ushers in the atack, protein shock being apparently a factor. The peak of the fever occurs early, and a continued pyrexia may indicate complication, especially urinary. Vomiting is frequent, and continued hiccuping is considered an ominous sign. The liver and spleen are enlarged and tender. Micturition may occur only once or twice before death. The sequelae are: red blood count may drop to 1,500,000 and hemoglobin to 10 per cent, nitrogenous product retention, bilirubinemia, blood cholesterol reduced, cholelithiasis frequently; in some patients the fever may be remittent, with recovery. The mortality rate has apparently risen from 20 per cent (6,049 cases) in 1922 to 25 per cent (305 cases treated and with alkaline therapy) since 1931 (Maigraith, 1944). The occurrence of one attack does not confer freedom from subsequent ones; consequently, moving to other climates is highly recommended; otherwise unnecessary and undue risk is being taken in regard to a safe course during the next attack.

PROGNOSIS OF MALARIAL INFECTIONS

Benign tertian and quartan malaria, *vivax* and *malariae,* respectively, seldom if ever cause death per se. The mortality ascribed to these infections is usually accompanied by complications of some other condition. The prognosis, in spite of the clinical severity, is good—the disease has been allowed to run free full courses without interference in paretic patients, and many patients treat themselves in an endemic area where mortality is practically nonexistent. Some handicap due to relapses is to be expected in patients, but none of the serious life-threatening handicaps of *P. falciparum* malaria occur. All of the various species can and may produce relapses over periods of time. The relapses so frequent early in *malariae* and *vivax* infections become farther apart as time passes, up to a certain point, where some degree of irregularity is exhibited. A strain-specific type of transitory immunity develops when the initial attack subsides. This has been shown in complement-fixing antibody and agglutinin studies. There is no apparent cross-strain immunity, as shown by the clinical evidence found in persons traveling from one endemic area to another, where they succumb with a typical attack in exposure to the new strain. Had they remained in their own area, they would have been less sick, if sick at all.

A recent article has appeared describing the effects of recurrent malaria in Service-acquired *vivax* infections. Tumulty et al. (1946) concluded that fatigability was the most prominent manifestation of the malaria and that no measurable damage or dysfunction of organs or systems was detected. They also emphasized the importance of treating the individual, as well as the malarial infection, to aid in preventing incapacitation due to maladjustment which may result therefrom. Saunders discredits the belief that malarial patients are prone to exhibit tendencies toward mental maladjustment, or psychoneurosis, due to treatment, having failed to detect this propensity in the many hundreds of malarial patients treated under his care during the war. There was less apprehension and anxiety over their malaria in some three hundred veterans of the First Marine Division from Guadalcanal at Corpus Christi, Texas, than over anything else. These men were still* under suppressive Atabrine or quinine treatment for relapses, at that time, and had been so for longer than six months. Relapse rates at that time for six- or eight-month-old *vivax* malaria were decreasing from 70 to 50 per cent, and the time between attacks was increasing from thirty-day intervals to forty-two and upward. There was no apparent incapacitation resulting from these infections. The administration of 30 to 35 gr. of quinine in addition to the regular suppressive treatment would not only stop a developing parasitemia, but it also aborted an attack. These men were being checked weekly with the thick blood smear technic.

The insidiousness of *falciparum* cases, and the attendant irregularity, must always be considered with reserve when a prognosis is being discussed. The possibility of complications developing in untreated or improperly treated cases is always present.

LABORATORY FINDINGS

The laboratory findings in typical uncomplicated malaria are fairly constant. With the onset of complicating factors, a great degree of irregularity may be manifested. The developing anemia causes a response to be initiated in the blood-forming organs and the finding of reticulocytes is usual, especially following the acute phase of the attack. The anemia is developed in proportion to the geometrically progressive invasion of erythrocytes by the parasite and the host's ability to respond to the decrease in blood count. There is leucocytosis during the pyrexial period, followed by leucopenia in the afebrile period, which also shows an increase in large mononuclear leucocytes up to about 20 per cent. The reticuloendothelial system is greatly stimulated, and an increase in phagocytosis is exhibited. It is felt by many investigators that the origin of what immunity and resistance is found may have its basis in this system.

Blood salts are somewhat altered in the pyrexial phase, especially potassium, which was found by Zwemer, Sims, and Coggeshall (1940) to rise from about 22 mg. per cent to 34 mg. per cent, only to fall back to normal in about one-half a day. Potassium is supposed to have a deleterious effect on the adrenal cortex; cases are on record of adrenal-insufficient-like syndrome in malaria infections (Junior and Brandao, 1937).

Blood sugar levels have been studied and found to be elevated during the paroxysm, only to fall afterward to a point slightly above its original level. There is a decreased tolerance for levulose (Sinton and Hughes, 1924) and a decreased tolerance for galactose (Ruge, 1935, 1939). Thus, some form of glycogenic disturbance seems to occur in the liver. Blood cholesterol (Kehar, 1937) and lecithin are increased during the chill. The blood proteins are increased, and the euglobulin proportion is always elevated (Ghosh and Sinton, 1935). The urea in blood remains about normal except in nephritic complications.

---

*1945.

Many workers have found a positive serologic test for syphilis in malaria cases. Why this occurs is obscure, but Kitchen, Webb, and Kupper (1939) have shown the test to be positive in almost all cases regularly, and the reaction persists up to four weeks in some. The cephalin-flocculation test has been found to be positive in malaria, and studies recently reported from England present the test as being positive in 96 out of 105 cases, the test tending to become negative with antimalarial treatment (Makari, 1946). A study of similar nature at the National Naval Medical Center, Bethesda, Maryland, has failed to confirm this except that there appears to be no correlation between the flocculation test and malarial parasite activity within the host. There are conflicting reports on the blood sedimentation rate changes. Bilirubin in large amounts is found in the blood plasma and gives an indirect van den Bergh reaction.

Tables V and VI, Chapter 5, list the various malarial parasite characteristics as they appear in thin blood films and thick preparations.

THERAPEUSIS*

The marked variations in individual response to the treatment of malaria have led to an equal amount of variation in the use of the drugs in treating the disease. Not only have enormous numbers of compounds and their combinations been tried, but widely varied doses of these drugs have been employed. Similarly, the effectiveness of the antimalarials has been found to vary in regard to the Plasmodia. What proves effective against one stage of the parasite species may not be so against another stage. Hence, accurate diagnosis is essential for intelligent treatment of malaria.

The treatment of malaria involves the administration of antimalarials to patients having acute attacks in primary infections, exacerbations of recurrent malaria, and chronic malaria. It also involves treating the individual, and passing on, in the way of an educational program, some comprehension of his status. Cinchona bark alkaloids and related compounds have been for years favorite "stand-bys" in the treatment of malaria in all forms. Atabrine, an acridine synthetic compound, has been found to be an effective antimalarial. Plasmochin, another synthetic compound, has been used especially as a gametocide but it has limitations in that the toxic dose is not far above the therapeutic dose. The quinoline derivative chloroquine, soon, if not already, available, has been found as effective as any antimalarial in the treatment of South Pacific *vivax* (Chesson strain) malaria relapses.†

All antimalarials apparently operate as such through their general protoplasmic poisonous properties, and, if given in sufficient doses, will cause death to all cellular elements.

The Fate of Quinine in the Body.—The fate of quinine in the body is given succinctly as follows. The oral administration of quinine is followed by rapid absorption into the body, especially from the small intestine. Absorption from rectal administration is in large part prevented by the expelling tendency due to the local irritative effect. After absorption, the bulk of the quinine is destroyed in the liver, muscles, or kidneys. Intravenous quinine disappears quickly from the blood stream because the drug is readily picked up by the endothelial system. A portion is excreted by the kidneys in the urine. A blood concentration of 10 mg. per liter or more is said to produce toxic effects. Quinine stimulates in low concentrations and depresses in high concentrations. Evidence is controversial on which has the higher concentration, serum or the cellular elements. Quinine produces a state of cinchonism by its effect on the nervous system characterized by dizziness, tinnitus, depression, etc. These result from its toxicity or to idiosyncrasy to the drug. Idiosyncrasy can be determined by skin testing a patient with a weak solution of quinine in saline. If sensitive, edema, itching, and redness will appear in a short time.

---

*See Chapters 65 and 66.

†Editor's note (O. F.): Chloroquine is now available under the name Aralen.

The Fate of Atabrine in the Body.—Atabrine is quickly absorbed and is picked up and retained by the reticuloendothelial system cells. Excretion is slow; the drug is easily found in bile and is probably reabsorbed in the intestinal tract. It is a dye and will discolor the skin with a yellowish cast that disappears following stoppage of the drug. Other excretions of the body such as tears, sweat, etc., may be stained with the yellow color. The margin of safety is large and the general toxic effects are apparently low. Idiosyncrasies have been ascribed to Atabrine, such as depressions, etc.; these have been challenged by some. The point is still in controversy.

The Fate of Plasmochin in the Body.—The course of Plasmochin in the body is similar to that of Atabrine. It is excreted more slowly and consequently has a cumulative action. Severe toxic effects have been attributed to Plasmochin, and wide use of it has been somewhat curtailed. Symptoms, such as nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, abdominal pain, tender liver and spleen, weakness, vertigo, cyanosis have been reported, the last produced by the formation of methemoglobinemia. Impaired heart, kidney, and liver functions are contraindications for its use.

The Fate of Chloroquine in the Body.—Chloroquine is apparently excreted slowly in the urine, permitting the postulation that adequate therapeutic levels can easily be maintained in the body. There appears to be a similarity between it and Atabrine in regard to the margin of safety from the therapeutic level to the toxic level. Few idiosyncrasies have been observed.

Spector, Coggeshall, and Haviland (1945) reported that they found Mapharsen, bismuth, and carbarsone ineffective as curative drugs in chronic malaria. Carbarsone had some effect on acute *vivax* malaria but was not as good as Atabrine. The others, Mapharsen and bismuth, they did not consider as indicated in the treatment of malaria.

There are new synthetic derivatives of the parent effective antimalarials being made and tested. Undoubtedly, some of these may prove more effective and produce cures in malaria. It is possible that this list will be outdated and outmoded in a short space of time. The new interest stimulated in antimalarials as the result of World War II is sure to bring results.

The effectiveness of **quinine** in the treatment of malaria is well known. It exerts an effective action on all stages of the parasite in all species of human malaria except that it appears to be not as good a gametocide in *falciparum* infections. **Atabrine** is as effective as quinine, even more so, in certain respects, in that its effect lasts longer, and it is supposed to have slightly better gametocidal properties for *vivax* and *malariae,* but apparently it exerts no effect on *falciparum* gametocytes. The dose is smaller, but skin discoloration is prominent in approximately 50 per cent of patients taking the drug. **Plasmochin** is supposed to be somewhat active on trophozoites of *malariae* and *vivax* but not so active on those of *falciparum.* However, Plasmochin is an effective gametocide in all three species. Hence, the origin of a combination of drugs in the treatment of malaria is based on this observation.

The effectiveness of the quinoline derivative **chloroquine** clinically in controlling malaria appears to be as good as any other antimalarial. Recovery is as rapid, and it seemingly stops attacks of malaria just as effectively as the other drugs. At the present time the general impression is that chloroquine increases the time between relapses better than other antimalarials in controlling *vivax* recurrences. It appears as effective as any drug in inducing clinical cures; for example, interrupting the symptomatology and not the complete cure of destroying all parasites invading the host. The specific rating of chloroquine as a gametocide and trophozoitocide at present apparently has not been evaluated.

All of these drugs, with the exception of Plasmochin, have been employed in suppressive treatment, suppression meaning to prevent the appearance of clinical manifestations of malaria while the infection still persists. Prophylaxis has come to mean the complete or partial prevention or retardation of blood infection through killing or inhibiting the tissue stage of the parasite. The choice drug for suppression during the war years was Atabrine, and it was used over long periods without any apparent deleterious effect. Results obtained only if it was taken regularly, because irregular administration is ineffective, with subsequent appearance of clinical malaria. Dosage is given in Table IX. Quinine has for years been the drug used in the malarious areas for suppression, and each locality will have its favorite palatable concoction for receiving the daily dose. Chloroquine, being excreted more slowly, will not have to be taken so frequently. If, for any reason, a patient has some intolerance for any of the suppressive drugs, an idiosyncrasy, the other one can be given. Similarly, if the patient is unable to take the drugs orally, other routes must be used. Most of these cases will probably be a severe complicated malarial one where immediate treatment must be started. Atabrine then can be given intramuscularly, 3 gr. in 5 c.c. of sterile water into each gluteal, repeated in eight hours if needed. A total of 1 Gm. in forty-eight hours is given. Oral routes should be used as soon as possible thereafter. Quinine can be given intravenously in amounts of 10 gr. in 200 to 400 c.c. of saline with slow administration. Extravasation may cause abscesses. Close observance of the patient's condition is essential, especially pulse and blood pressure. Smaller amounts of water have been used as reported in the *British Medical Journal,* January, 1946, page 32. One hundred cases of malaria were treated with 0.25 to 0.5 Gm. of quinine dihydrochloride in 1.0 c.c. of distilled water intravenously. Temperature fell to normal following one injection, but five cases of *falciparum* malaria required another injection five hours after the first. No collapse cases or deaths were reported. Administration time was over a two-minute period. Quinine, having been suspected of being a factor in the precipitation of blackwater fever, has been supplanted by Atabrine. Malaria complicating pregnancy has been quinine-treated with success. However, it would appear that none of the oxytocic action possible with quinine would occur with the use of Atabrine. Table IX shows the doses for use in suppression and therapeusis of the aforementioned antimalarials.

TABLE IX

DRUG	SUPPRESSIVE	TREATMENT
Quinine	10 to 15 gr. daily	15 gr. three times a day for two days followed by 10 gr. three times a day for five days
Atabrine (Quinacrine)	1½ gr. daily	3 gr. every four hours for six doses, followed by 3 gr. twice a day for three days
Plasmochin (Pamaquine)	Not recommended	Not recommended alone—0.01 Gm. three times a day for three or four days *only*, when used following quinine or Atabrine in treatment
Chloroquine (Aralen)	0.5 Gm. once a week	1 Gm., then 0.5 Gm. 6 to 8 hours later, followed by 0.5 Gm. for two days; after this, if necessary, suppressive treatment.

References

Appelbaum and Gelfand: 1934. J. A. M. A. **102**: 20, 1664.
Bass, C. C.: 1915. Am. J. Trop. Dis. **3**: 298.
Bass, C. C., and John, F. M.: 1912. J. Exper. Med. **16**: 567.
Boyd, M. F.: 1942. Am. J. Trop. Med. **22**: 73, 75.
Boyd, M. F.: 1933. Am. J. Hyg. **18**: 485.
Boyd, M. F.: 1934. Am. J. Hyg. **20**: 488.
Boyd, M. F.: 1945. Am. J. Trop. Med. **25**: 4, 293.
Boyd, M. F., and Kitchen, S. F.: 1937. Recurring Clinical Activity in Infection with the McCoy Strain of Plasmodium Vivax, Am. J. Trop. M. **17**: 833.
Boyd, Soule, Coggeshall, Craig, Taliaferro, and Williams: 1941. American Association for Advancement of Science.
Brumpt, E.: 1935. Paludisme aviaire, Compt. rend. Acad. d. sc. **200**: 783.
Butts, D. C. A.: 1945. Am. J. Trop. Med. **25**: 417.
Clark, H. C.: 1928. Am. J. Trop. Med. **8**: 423.
Coatney, G. R., and Young, M. D.: 1941. A Symposium on Human Malaria, A. A. A. S. pp. 19-24.
Coggeshall, L. T., and Eaton, M. D.: 1938. J. Exper. Med. **67**: 871.
Craig, C. F.: 1945. Clinical Parasitology. Craig and Faust, 1945, Lea & Febiger.
Craig, C. F., and Faust, E. C.: 1945. Clinical Parasitology, Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger.
Cropper, J.: 1908. Lancet **2**: 16.
Darling, S. T.: 1925. Rep. Isth. Canal Comm. Wash. South. M. J. **18**: 452.
Ghosh, B. N., and Sinton, J. A.: 1935. Rec. Malar. Surv. India **5**: 173.
Goodman and Bilman: 1943. The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeusis, The Macmillan Co.
Grassi, B., and Feletti, R.: 1890. Arch. ital. de biol. p. 287.
Grassi, B., and Feletti, R.: 1890. Bol. Acad. Gioenia **13**: 3-6; **14**: 2-7.
Green, R.: 1929. Bull. Inst. Med. Res. Feder. Malay States **5**: 1.
Hackett, L. W., and Russell, P. F.: 1938. Bull. Health Organ., League of Nations **7**: 1016.
Helpern, M.: 1934. Am. J. Surg. **26**: 1, 111.
Hingst, H. E.: 1936. Am. J. Trop. Med. **16**: 679.
Hinman, E. H., and Hurlbut, H. S.: 1940. Am. J. Trop. Med. **20**: 431.
Hoffman, C. C.: 1932. South. M. J. **25**: 523.
Huff, C. G., Coulston, F., and Cantrell, W.: 1943. Science **97**: 286.
Huff, C. G., and Coulston, F.: 1944. J. Infect. Dis. **75**: 231.

James, S. P.: 1931. Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **24**: 477.
James, S. P., and Tate, P.: 1937. Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **31**: 4.
James, S. P., and Tate, J.: 1937. Nature **139**: 545.
Junior, P., and Brandao, P. P.: 1937. Abstract in Trop. Dis. Bull. **35**: 657.
Kehar, N. D.: 1937. Rec. Malar. Surv. India **7**: 117.
Kitchen, S. F., Webb, E. L., and Kupper, W. H.: 1939. J. A. M. A. **112**: 1443.
Knisely, M. H., Stratman-Thomas, W. K., and Eliot, T. S.: 1941. Observations on Circulating Blood in the Small Vessels of Internal Organs in Living Macacus rhesus Infected with Malaria Parasites, Anat. Rec. **79**: 90.
Knowles, R., and Das Gupta, B. M.: 1932. Indian M. Gaz. **67**: 301.
Laveran, A.: 1881. Paris, Baillière et Cie, p. 104.
Maigraith, B.: 1945. Lancet, Sept. 8.
Maigraith, B.: 1944. Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. 38, August.
Makari, J. G.: 1946. Brit. M. J. **1**: 272.
Manson-Bahr, P.: 1943. Manson's Tropical Diseases, ed. 7, Baltimore, Williams & Wilkins Co.
Mackie, Hunter, and Worth: 1945. Manual of Tropical Medicine, Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Co.
Mayne, B.: 1926. Pub. Health Rep. **41**: 986.
Most, H.: 1940. Am. J. Trop. Med. **20**: 551.
Most, H.: 1940. Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **34**: 139.
Most, H., and Jolliffe, N.: 1940. Am. J. M. Sc. **200**: 367.
Ruge, H.: 1935. Arch. f. Schiffs- u. Tropen-Hyg. **39**: 14.
Ruge, H.: 1939. Ztschr. f. klin. Med. **136**: 311.
Saunders, George M.: Private communication.
Sinton, J. A., and Hughes, T. A.: 1924. Indian J. M. Research **12**: 409.
Sinton, J. A., Hutton, E. L., and Shute, P. G.: 1939. Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **32**: 751; **33**: 47.
Spector, S., Coggeshall, L. T., and Haviland, J. W.: 1945. Am. J. Trop. Med. **25**: 463.
Stephens, J. W. W.: 1922. Ann. Trop. Med. **16**: 383.
Strong, R. P.: 1943. Stitt's Diagnosis; Prevention, and Treatment of Tropical Diseases, Vol. 1, Philadelphia, The Blakiston Co.
Swellengrebel, N. H., and DeBeck, A.: 1938. Malaria in the Netherlands, Amsterdam, Scheltema & Holkema, Ltd.
Tareyev, E. M., Gontayeva, A. A., and Rotenburg, S. C.: 1945. American Review of Soviet Medicine. Malignant Tertian Malaria: Haemoglobinuric, December.
Tumulty, P. A., Nichols, E., Singewald, M. L., and Lidz, F.: 1946. Medicine **25**: 17.
U. S. Naval Medical School Manuals:
1. Protozoology and Helminthology.
2. Laboratory Guide to Medical Entomology With Special Reference to Malaria Control.
3. Tropical and Exotic Diseases.

Webster's New International Dictionary, 1939, ed. 2, Springfield, Mass, G. & C. Merriam Co.
Welch, W. H.: 1897. Loomis & Thompson, Syst. Prac. Med. **1**: 17, Lea Bros. & Co., N. Y.
Winterstein, M.: 1946. Brit. M. J. No. 4435, p. 32, Jan. 15.
Zwemer, R. L., Sims, E. A. H., and Coggeshall, L. T.: 1940. Am. J. Trop. Med. **20**: 687.

CHAPTER 7

MALARIA-CARRYING MOSQUITOES AND THEIR CONTROL

LUIS VARGAS

INTRODUCTION

The classification of the anophelines most widely accepted by modern authors is that of Edwards (1932), which recognizes three genera, Chagasia, Bironella, and Anopheles, the last with three subgenera for the American species, Stethomyia, Anopheles, and Nyssorhynchus. Following the work of Edwards, new additions have been made to the subgenera. Vargas (1943) described Russellia.

At the present time, the subgenus Anopheles is represented in the New World by thirty-one species divided into two groups: Anopheles and Arribalzagia.

In the following key to systematic classification, the section referring to subfamilies and genera is taken from Edwards (1932) and the section referring to tribes is from Lane and Cerqueira (1942), with slight modification.

KEY TO SUBFAMILIES AND TRIBES

1. Subcosta long, extending to and reaching the costa; vein 1 with four branches; vein 2 bifurcated; vein 3 simple; cross vein 1—2 absent; vein 4 bifurcated; cross veins 3—4 and 4—5 present; vein 5 bifurcated; vein 6 long and following margin of the wing; auxiliary vein absent or very diffuse (Family Culicidae) ------------------ 2

   Without the above-listed combination of characteristics ------------- other Diptera

2. Antenna with 14 segments, subcosta terminating at or before base of vein 2; mouth parts short; scales absent ---------------------------------- Subfamily *Dixinae*

   Antenna with 13 segments; subcosta terminating much beyond the base of vein 2; scales present -- 3

3. Mouth parts short; palpi curved; scales for the most part confined to margins of the wings --- Subfamily *Chaoborinae*

   Mouth parts modified to form a long proboscis; palpi not curved; wing veins and legs bearing scales ------------------------------------- (Subfamily *Culicinae*) ---- 4

4. First abdominal tergite without scales; posterior coxa slightly shorter than the mesepimeron; posterior margin of scutellum always rounded (slightly trilobate in *Chagasia*); palpus of female approximately the size of the proboscis (shorter in *Bironella*); squamula with complete fringe ---------------- Tribe *Anophelini* ---- 8

   First abdominal tergite with at least one spot; posterior coxa distinctly longer than the mesepimeron --- 5

5. Scuttelum always rounded at the posterior margin; palpus of female longer than the antenna; rigid, external half more slender, flexible, curved back; squama with fringe absent --- Tribe *Megarhinini*

   Scutellum trilobate; palpus of female much shorter than the proboscis; flexible, with external half not curved --- 6

6. Lobe of pronotum distinctly larger than the mesonotum	7
Lobe of the pronotum generally smaller than the mesonotum, spiracular bristles present in *Psorophora* and *Theobaldia;* fringe of squamula almost always complete	Tribe *Culicini* (in part)
7. Spiracular bristles absent (*Haemagogus, Eretmapodites*)	Tribe *Culicini* (in part)
Spiracular bristles present (substituted by scales in *Limatus*); fringe of squamula generally absent or incomplete when present	Tribe *Sabethini*
8. Scutellum slightly trilobate	Genus *Chagasia*
Scutellum uniformly rounded	9
9. Stalk of the fourth vein undulant	Genus *Bironella*[*]
Stalk of the fourth vein straight	Genus *Anopheles*

KEY TO ADULTS OF THE SUBGENERA OF AMERICAN ANOPHELES

1. Mesonotum with narrow median white fringe; body without scales; in the female the hairs of the antenna are as long as the width of the thorax; all wing scales are black; small mosquitoes	*Stethomyia*
Mesonotum with two median longitudinal black bands and two dorsal stripes; in the female, the hairs of the antenna are not as long as the width of the thorax; costa of the wing with four or five white spots, alternating regularly with black spots; abdomen without scales	*Kerteszia*
Mesonotum and costa marked otherwise	2
2. Scales of the costa, subcosta, and first longitudinal are more abundant than in the rest of the wing, forming a distinct contrast; petiole of second marginal cell is one-third to one-half the length of this cell; wings with scales of uniform coloring or only with light-colored scales in the fringe of the apex	*Coelodiazesis*
Abundant scales on all veins or with only the costa bearing the more abundant scales	3
3. The third, fourth, and fifth segments of the posterior tarsus entirely white or with narrow black rings; these segments show different spots in the median anterior tarsus	4
The third, fourth, and fifth segments of the posterior tarsus entirely black or with narrow light spots	6
4. Abdomen with scales or bands of scales posterolaterally at least in the last segments	5
Abdomen pilose, only the genital segment bearing scales; sixth longitudinal wing vein with large black spots	*Myzorhynchella*
5. Sixth longitudinal wing vein with small black spots near the extremities; wing scales not broadened	*Nyssorhynchus*
Sixth longitudinal wing vein with numerous tiny spots, with one outstanding central spot; wing scales very broad	*Shannoniella*[†]
6. Apical third of posterior femur covered with erect black scales; wings with white, yellow, and black scales	*Lophopodomyia*
Apical third of posterior femur without erect black scales	7
7. Spotted aspect of wing due to grouping of some dark scales; light scales only in the apex of the costa, first longitudinal, and in the region corresponding to the fringe; petiole of second marginal cell is 40 to 50 per cent of length of cell	*Russellia*
Wing with scales of uniform color which give a spotted appearance due to their grouping; without light-colored scales in first longitudinal and with a petiole of second marginal cell which is more than 60 per cent of length of cell; or wing with numerous, light-colored scales in various veins	8
8. Single proepisternal seta; sixth vein entirely black or with only a small median spot	*Arthuromyia*
Generally with more than four proepisternal setae; sixth vein entirely black or having up to five black spots	*Anopheles*

---

[*] Present only in New Guinea and adjacent islands.

[†] The validity of this subgenus is doubtful.

LIST OF THE ANOPHELES MORE IMPORTANT IN THE TRANSMISSION OF MALARIA

SPECIES	BREEDING PLACES	DISTRIBUTION
	Neoarctic Region*	
albimanus Wiedemann, 1821	In clear, sunny, stagnant, fresh or salt water	Southeast Texas; northeast Mexico
maculipennis var. *freeborni* (Meigen, 1818) Aitken, 1939	In fresh, clear seepage water from rice fields, drainage ditches, canals, and streams	Pacific slopes of United States; northwestern Mexico
pseudopunctipennis Theobald, 1901	In clear sunny water rich in algae	Southern United States; Northern Mexico
punctipennis Say, 1823	Shaded stream beds	Southern United States
quadrimaculatus Say, 1824	In fresh water, pools, swamps, slow streams, partially shaded or entirely in the sun, with vegetation	Northeast and southeast Atlantic coast, from New Hampshire, Ontario, and Minnesota to Mexico
	Neotropical Region	
albimanus Wiedemann, 1821	See Neoarctic region	Mexico, Central America, northern part of South America; West Indies
albitarsis Lynch Arribalzaga, 1878	Among surface aquatic vegetation in large ponds, marshes, lagoons, flood water, inundated bayous, and large bogs with not very shady vegetation	Central America from Guatemala to Northeastern Argentina and Paraguay; Trinidad
aquasalis Curry, 1932 (*tarsimaculatus,* in part)	In stagnant brackish pools from tidal swamps, sunny or shaded, less often in fresh water rice fields many miles inland	Central America (Nicaragua, Panama), Trinidad and the lesser Antilles; southward to Brazil
bellator Dyar and Knab, 1906	Rain water collected at the leaf base of bromeliads, shade trees	From Trinidad and Venezuela to Brazil
darlingi Root, 1926	Among surface aquatic vegetation in fresh, clear, shaded water of lagoons, flooded lands, muddy pools	Central America (British Honduras and Guatemala); South America (Colombia, Venezuela to Argentina)
gambiae Giles, 1902	Grassy pools, streams	Brazil
noroestensis Galvão and Lane, 1937	In fairly sunny waters as well as in shady places	Brazil
pseudopunctipennis Theobald, 1901	See Neoarctic region	From Mexico southward to Chile and Argentina
punctimacula Dyar and Knab, 1906	In shaded pools with stagnant water, morasses, and slow-moving currents	From Mexico to Peru and Brazil
tarsimaculatus Goeld, 1906	Pools	From Colombia to Paraguay
	Paleoarctic Region	
maculipennis atroparvus van Thiel, 1927	In brackish water of coastal areas; fresh inland water, prefers sun	From Sweden to the maritime provinces of Russia, Germany, and Holland; from British Isles to Japan; from Portugal to Italy; Mongolia

---

*Other valid species in the U. S. A. are:
A. occidentalis Dyar and Knab 1906 (*A. carlei* Vargas 1943)
A. aztecus Hoffmann 1935, in waters in Mexico
A. georgianus King 1939, deep southeast of U. S. A.
A. bradleyi King 1939, along the east coast of the U. S. A.
A. walkeri Theobald 1901, a day-biter in the East of the U. S. A.
A. crucians Wiedemann 1828, in acid waters, southeast U. S. A.
A. atropos Dyar and Knab 1906, in salt waters of the Atlantic

SPECIES	BREEDING PLACES	DISTRIBUTION
claviger (*bifurcatus* Meigen, 1818) Meigen, 1804	In cisterns, shallow pools, water collections in rocks; in wells	Southern Europe, North Africa, Asia Minor, and Turkestan
fluviatilis James, 1902 (*listoni* Liston, 1901)	At the headwaters of piedmont streams, pools of water, in streams, springs, and drainage canals; at times in bends of marshes, in lakes and ponds	Turkestan
maculipennis labranchiae Falleroni, 1926 (*labranchiae atroparvus*) (*labranchiae labranchiae*)	In salt water of coastal marshes, in warm fresh water of rice fields, in highland streams, in sun or partial shade	Coasts of Dalmatia, Italy, Southern Spain, Sicily, Sardinia, Corsica, Northwest Africa
maculipennis messeae Falleroni, 1926	In sunny, cold and fresh, stagnant water, large rivers; lakes and marshes	From Norway and Sweden south to Italy; eastern Mediterranean; from British Isles to north shore of Black Sea, Asiatic Russia
maculipennis typicus Meigen, 1818	Fresh water, lowlands and hills	See *messeae*
pharoensis Theobald, 1901	In swamps, floodlands, and rice fields with much vegetation	Palestine, Egypt
sacharovi Favre, 1903 (*elutus* Edwards, 1921)	In sunny inland and coastal marshes, fresh or brackish; slow streams	Italy, Sardinia, the Balkans, Russia, Palestine, Iran, Iraq, North Africa, West China
sergenti (Theobald, 1907)	In rice fields, borrow pits, canals with slow current and dense vegetation; seepage water	Canary Islands, Algeria, Tunis, Egypt, Palestine, Syria
stephensi Liston, 1901	In wells, cisterns, flower pots, tile drains, and covered irrigation canals and other temporary water receptacles, especially in inhabited communities	Arabia, Iraq, Iran
superpictus Grassi, 1899	Standing pools, small streams, rivers and irrigation drains, generally in mountainous regions; prefers edges of water	Southern Europe; Southwest Asia
	Oriental Regions	
aconitus Dönitz, 1902	Irrigation ditches, dams, reservoirs, ponds, rice fields, tide water, pools in river beds, ruts in roads	India, Ceylon, Burma, Siam, Indochina, Malaya, Sumatra, Java, Borneo
culicifacies Giles, 1901	Commonly in fresh, clear water; pools, borrow pits, farm wells, rocky or sandy river beds, rice fields, and occasionally in salt water	India, Burma, Ceylon, Siam, French Indochina, and southern Arabia
fluviatilis James, 1902 (*listoni* Liston, 1901)	See Paleoarctic region	India, Burma, Siam, French Indochina, Ceylon
hyrcanus Giles, 1900	Especially in rice fields, in stagnant water with vegetation, in canals, borrow pits, lakes, and stream banks	India, Ceylon, Burma, Siam, Indochina, China, Malaya, Sumatra, Java, the Philippines, Borneo, Iran
hyrcanus var. *sinensis* Wiedemann, 1828	Stagnant water in rice fields, marshes, and ponds and irrigation channels; sometimes along shores of streams and lakes	India, Burma, Indochina, China, Korea, Japan and Formosa, Netherlands East Indies

SPECIES	BREEDING PLACES	DISTRIBUTION
jeyporiensis jeyporiensis James 1902	Overflow from rice fields, irrigation channels, muddy banks of streams, lakes and ponds	Eastern India, southern China, Indochina
jeyporiensis candidiensis Koidzumi, 1924	Irrigation ditches	India, China, Indochina, Burma, and Formosa
leucosphyrus Dönitz, 1901	Shady pools of standing water in jungles, rocks, beds of mountain springs, hoofprints	India, Ceylon, Burma, Indochina, Malaya, Sumatra, Java, Borneo, and the Philippines
maculatus Theobald, 1901	Mostly in sunny stream beds, seepage, rice fields, ditches	India, Ceylon, Burma, southern China, Siam, Malaya, Indochina, Netherlands East Indies, Formosa, Philippines
minimus minimus Theobald, 1901	Slow-moving currents of clear sunny water, grassy springs, irrigation ditches, and rice fields	India, Ceylon, Burma, Assam, Siam, Indochina, China, Formosa
minimus flavirostris Ludlow, 1913	Frequently in clear water of shady springs; around bamboo roots	Philippine Islands
novumbrosus Strickland, 1916	Standing pools in woodlands, drainage ditches, swamps	Malaya
pattoni Christophers, 1926	Beds of mountain streams, pockets of water in banks of streams with vegetation, pools of rainwater in rocks	Northern China, Japan, Korea
philippinensis Ludlow, 1902	Tanks, standing pools, drainage channels, ditches, swamps, borrow pits, rice fields	Western India, Burma, Malaya, Siam, Indochina, Netherlands East Indies, Philippines
sergenti Theobald, 1907	See Paleoarctic region	Northwestern India
stephensi Liston, 1901	See Paleoarctic region	India, Burma
subpictus Grassi, 1899 (*rossi* Giles, 1899)	In temporary and permanent accumulations of water, salty, or contaminated by sewage	India, southern China, Malaya, Netherlands East Indies
sundaicus (Rodenwaldt, 1926) (*ludlowi* Theobald, 1903; var. *sundaica* Rodenwalt, 1926)	Brackish pools, lagoons, and marshes formed by sea water; accumulations of salt water behind dikes and similar structures	Eastern India, Burma, Siam, Malaya, Sumatra, Java, Borneo, Little Sunda
superpictus, Grassi, 1899	See Paleoarctic region	Asia Minor to northeastern India
umbrosus Theobald, 1903	Pools of standing water and shaded woodland mires; peaty marshes in jungle	India, Malaya, French Indochina, Sumatra, Java, Borneo, the Philippines
varuna Iyengar, 1924	Stagnant water, morasses, banks of springs, irrigation canals, wells	India and Burma
	Australian Region	
aconitus Dönitz, 1902	See Oriental region	Celebes
hyrcanus Giles, 1900	See Oriental region	Celebes
punctulatus Dönitz, 1901 (probably *farauti* Laveran, 1902)	Small sunny pools of rainwater; swamps, rarely in large bodies of water	New Guinea, Timor, Melanesia, Northern Australia
punctulatus (*moluccensis*) Swellengrebel and de Graaf, 1920	Fresh or salt water, clear or polluted	Moluccas, New Guinea, New Britain, Solomon Islands, New Hebrides, Admiralty Islands, Northern Australia
subpictus Grassi, 1899 (*rossi* Giles, 1899)	See Oriental region	New Guinea
umbrosus Theobald, 1903	See Oriental region	Celebes

SPECIES	BREEDING PLACES	DISTRIBUTION
	Region of Ethiopia	
funestus Giles, 1900	Grassy clear water, morasses, overgrown banks of brooks, rivers, ditches, banks of lakes, ponds, permanent seepage	Central and eastern Africa northward to Ethiopa
gambiae Giles, 1902 (*costalis* Giles, 1900)	Small pools of standing water, partly or wholly exposed to the sun, less frequently brackish water	Tropical Africa with the exception of desert and high mountain regions, Madagascar, Mauritius
hancocki Edwards, 1929	Clean shallow water holes with vegetation, ditches and wells, running brooks, swamps	Sierra Leone, Liberia, Cameroons, Uganda, Belgian Congo
hargreavesi Evans, 1927	In clear water, with vegetation, in relatively open woody areas, in marshes, banks of streams	Sierra Leone, Liberia, southern Nigeria, Gaboon, and Belgian Congo
moucheti Evans, 1925	In vegetation on borders of marshy pools, streams, slow-moving rivers, in the grass or the banks of permanent shallow morasses	Belgian Congo, Uganda, Cameroon
moucheti var. *nigeriensis* Evans, 1931	Clear water with vegetation	Southern Nigeria
nili Theobald, 1904	Shaded banks of slow-flowing, clear streams	Tropical Africa
pharoensis Theobald, 1901	See Paleoarctic region	Tropical Africa, Madagascar
rufipes Gough, 1910	Most frequently stagnant or semistagnant pools, sunny stream beds	Transvaal, Rhodesia, Kenya, Uganda, Sudan, North Nigeria, Gaboon

Note.—Nomenclature according to American Entomological Society.

GENERAL FACTS ON MOSQUITO REDUCTION

Stubbs (1945) uses the word "prevention" rather than "control" of mosquito population, as the latter word carries a connotation of willingness to accept the continued existence of the disease as being inevitable.

Soper and Wilson (1942) noted that the term ''mosquito eradication'' has been widely misused in literature dealing with mosquito campaigns. The term ''mosquito reduction,'' not ''eradication,'' is meant.

Ginsburg (1944) has clearly stated that the primary aim of mosquito extermination work is to eliminate mosquito breeding. This is generally accomplished by such mechanical methods as proper drainage, the filling-in of low areas, grading, establishing of rapid water circulation, depending upon which method is most suitable and least costly for the topography and environment of the area to be protected. Where mosquito extermination is impossible or impractical, temporary control measures are resorted to. The purpose of temporary control is to afford to the community immediate protection from mosquitoes. It may be achieved by treating mosquito breeding places with chemicals toxic to mosquito larvae and pupae. In unprotected or only partially protected areas where mosquito density has not been reduced to the minimum at which the mosquito ceases to be a discomfort to the community, various indoor and outdoor sprays and repellents against adult mosquitoes are employed.

The first step in any malaria control program should be the assembling of facts and information bearing on the location of areas in which the disease is a problem.

The more common types of surveys are blood surveys, spleen surveys, anopheline surveys, engineering surveys, and economic surveys. The data obtained are plotted on maps to show foci of infection.

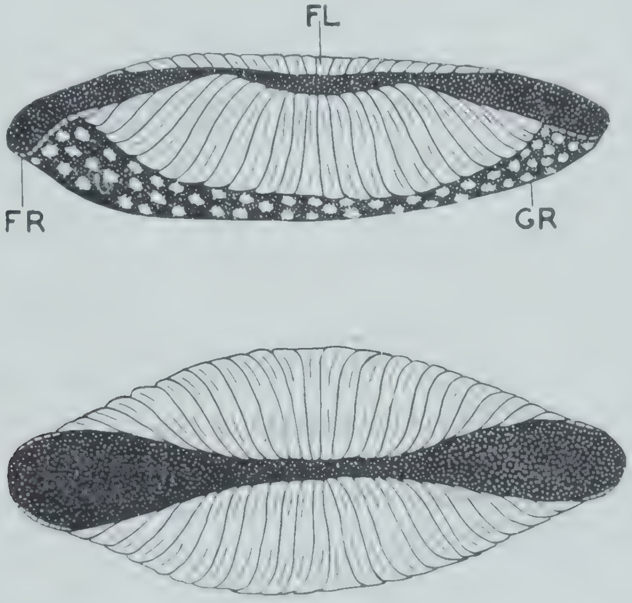


Fig. 36.—Egg of *Anopheles albimanus*. *FL*, floats; *FR*, frill; *GR*, exochorion.

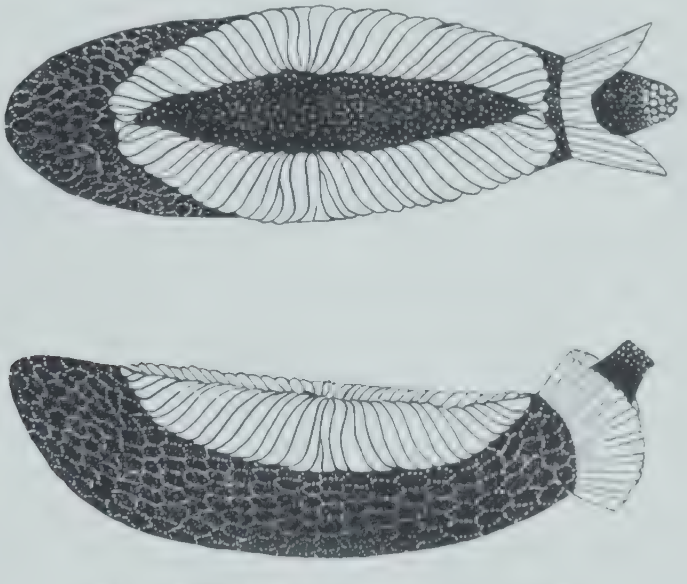


Fig. 37.—Egg of *Anopheles hectoris*.

According to Russell (1943), valuable information concerning incidence and distribution of malaria can be obtained in a short time by examination of local children between the ages of 2 and 14 years for signs of splenic enlargement. It is generally possible to attract nearly all the children of a native community to a central place by using such suitable rewards as candy, beads, pennies, etc. They will usually permit palpation for splenic enlargement and even the taking of blood smears. The use of slides with a thick

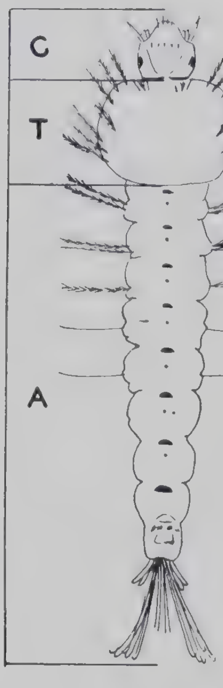


Fig. 38.

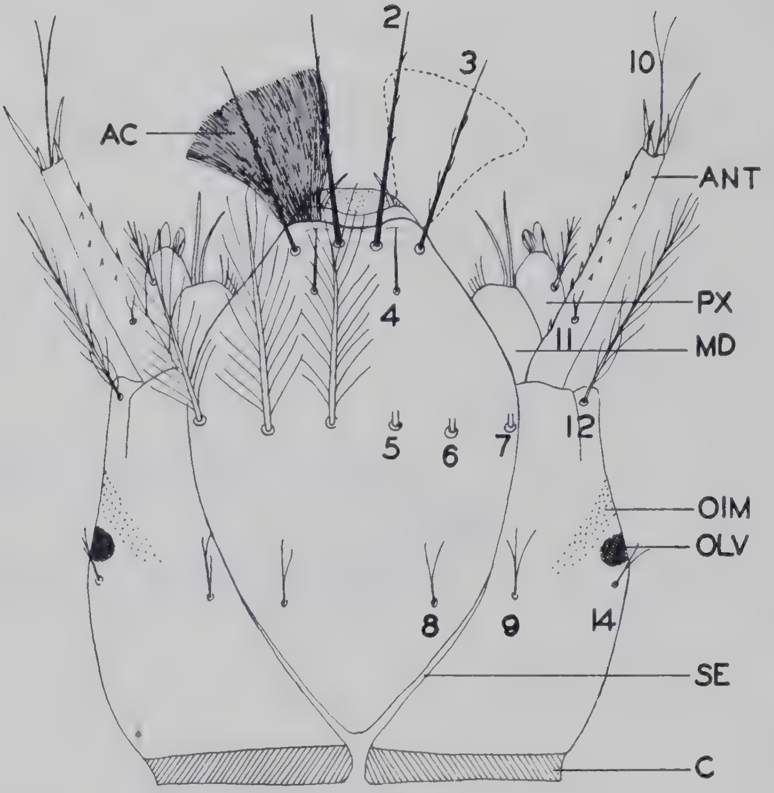

2
3
10
AC
ANT
4
PX
11
MD
12
5
6
7
OIM
OLV
8
9
14
SE
C

Fig. 39.

Fig. 38.—Larva of Anopheles. *C*, head; *T*, thorax; *A*, abdomen.

Fig. 39.—Head of larva of *Anopheles albimanus*, showing some of the appendages and dorsal head hairs. *AC*, cephalic fan or mouth brush; *ANT*, antenna; *C*, collar, *MD*, mandible; *OIM*, eye of imago; *OLV*, eye of larva; *PX*, maxillary palpus; *SE*, epicranial suture; *2*, inner anterior clypeal hair; *3*, anterior outer clypeal hair; *4*, posterior clypeal hair; *5-7*, frontal hairs; *8-9*, occipital hairs; *10*, terminal antennal hair; *11*, antennal hair; *12*, subantennal hair.

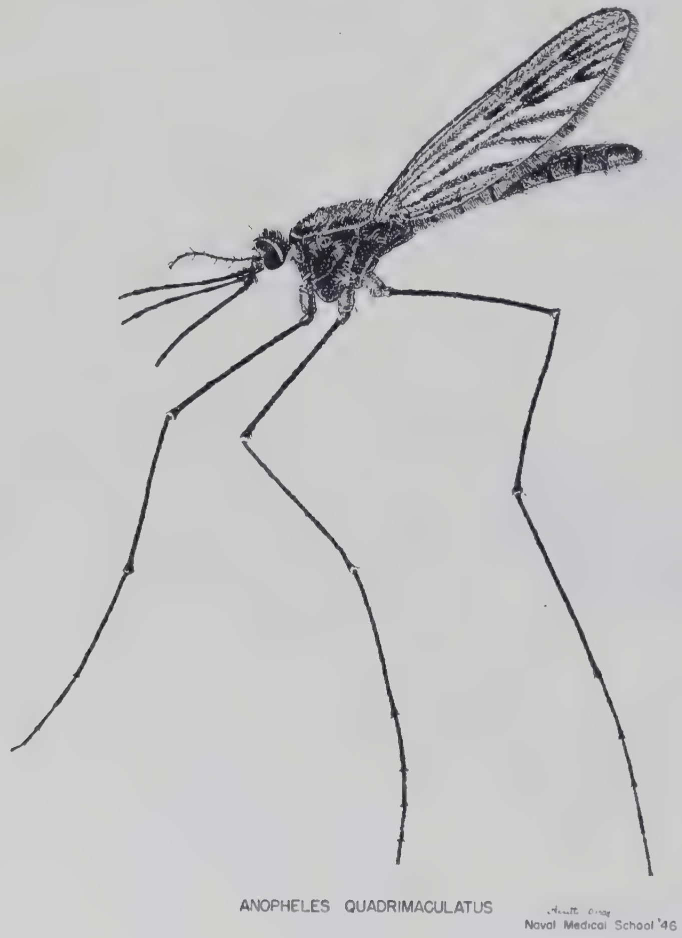

ANOPHELES QUADRIMACULATUS
Naval Medical School '46

Fig. 40.

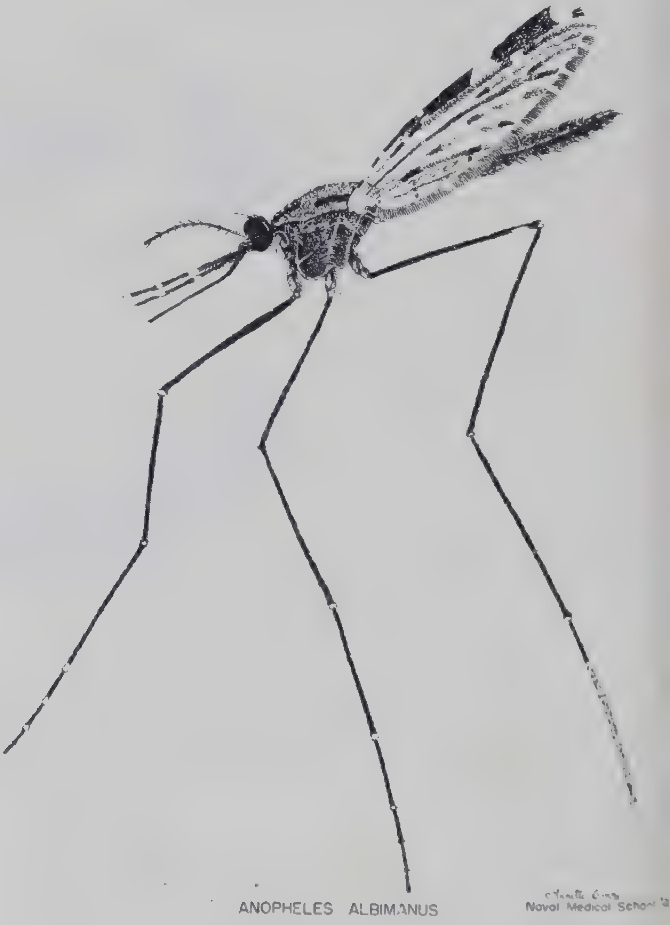

ANOPHELES ALBIMANUS
Naval Medical School

Fig. 41.

Fig. 40.—*Anopheles quadrimaculatus.* (Naval Medical School, 1946.) (Courtesy Cdr. J. W. Colvin.)

Fig. 41.—*Anopheles albimanus.* (Naval Medical School, 1946.) (Courtesy Cdr. J. W. Colvin.)

smear at one end and a thin smear at the other is the best method. The thin smears are examined only when confirmation of species is required.

In any area under study, every type of mosquito breeding place should be sampled and the mosquito larvae identified. No type of water collection, from coconut shells and tin cans to wells, pools, ponds, ditches, streams, and marshes, should be neglected.

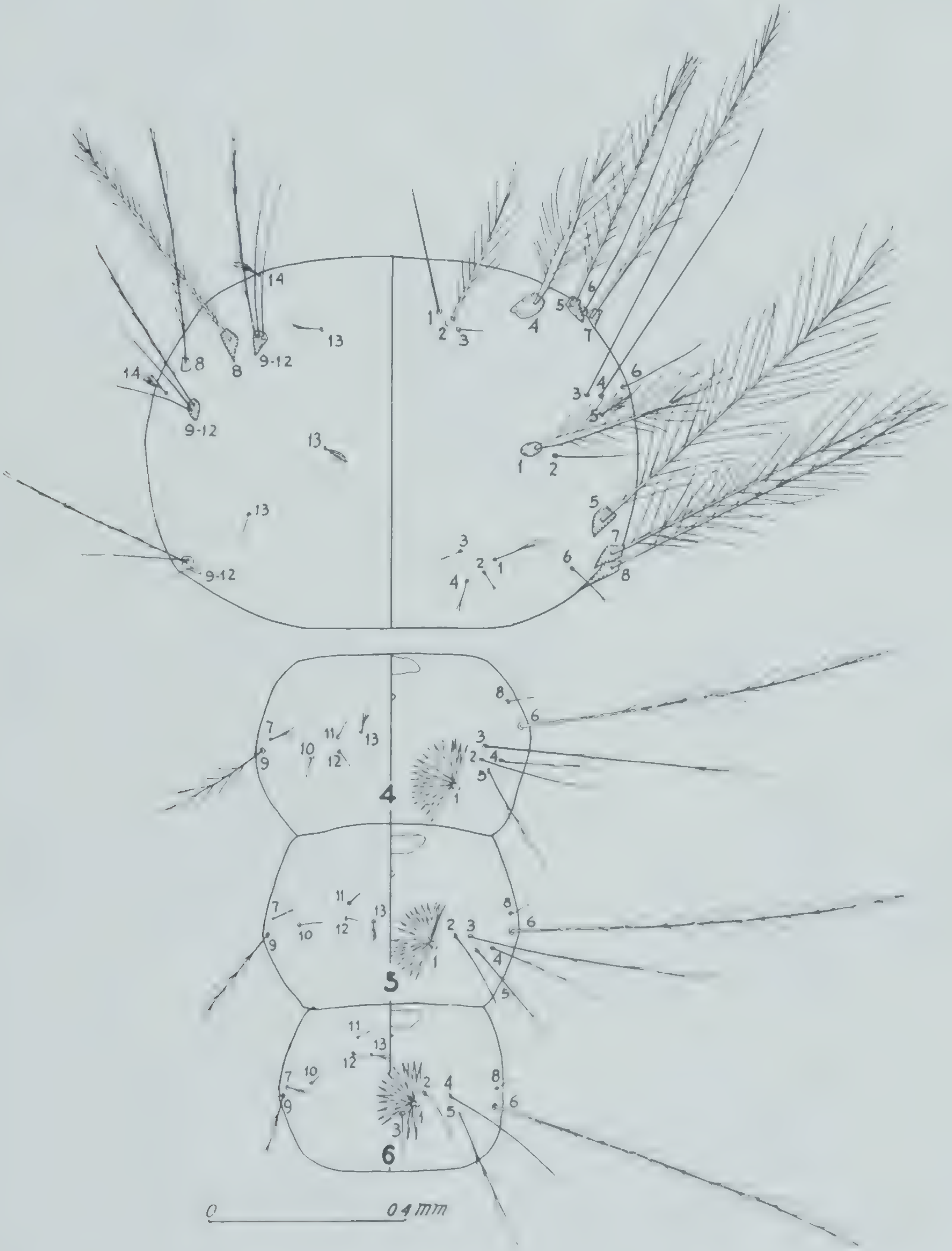


Fig. 42.—Pilotaxy or chaetotaxy of the thorax and abdominal segments of *Anopheles fausti*; right half of diagram shows dorsal hairs; left half, ventral hairs.

Adult mosquitoes should be collected from all types of resting places, not only in habitations, but also in outdoor shelters such as hollow trees, undercut banks, and the sides of wells. The collection should be made both by day and by night. Hand-collecting tubes as well as traps, both animal and light baited, are useful. Observations should be made of the biting habits of the different species to determine whether they bite by day or by night or whether they bite early in the evening or otherwise. It is also important to know whether a species spends its resting hours inside habitations where it is easily attacked or whether it leaves the house at sunrise to rest outside on vegetation or in cuts, depression wells, stone walls, etc.

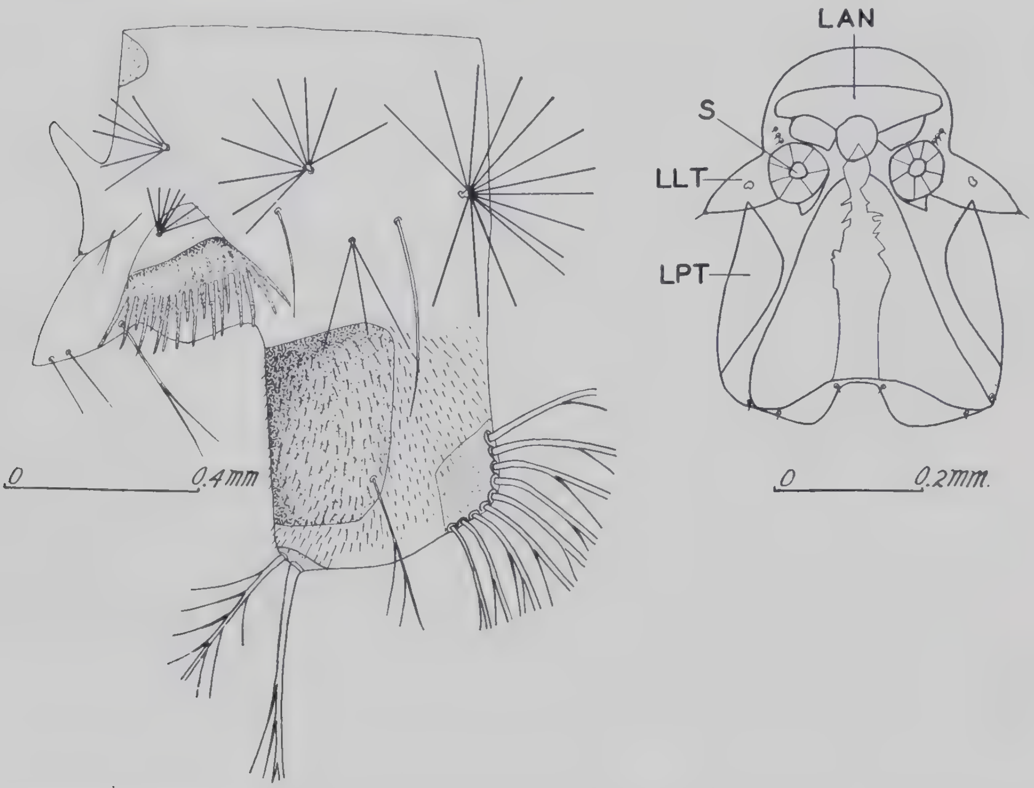


Fig. 43.—Terminal segments of the abdomen and spiracular apparatus of *Anopheles fausti*. *LAN*, anterior plate; *LLT*, lateral flap; *LPT*, posterior plate; *S*, spiracle.

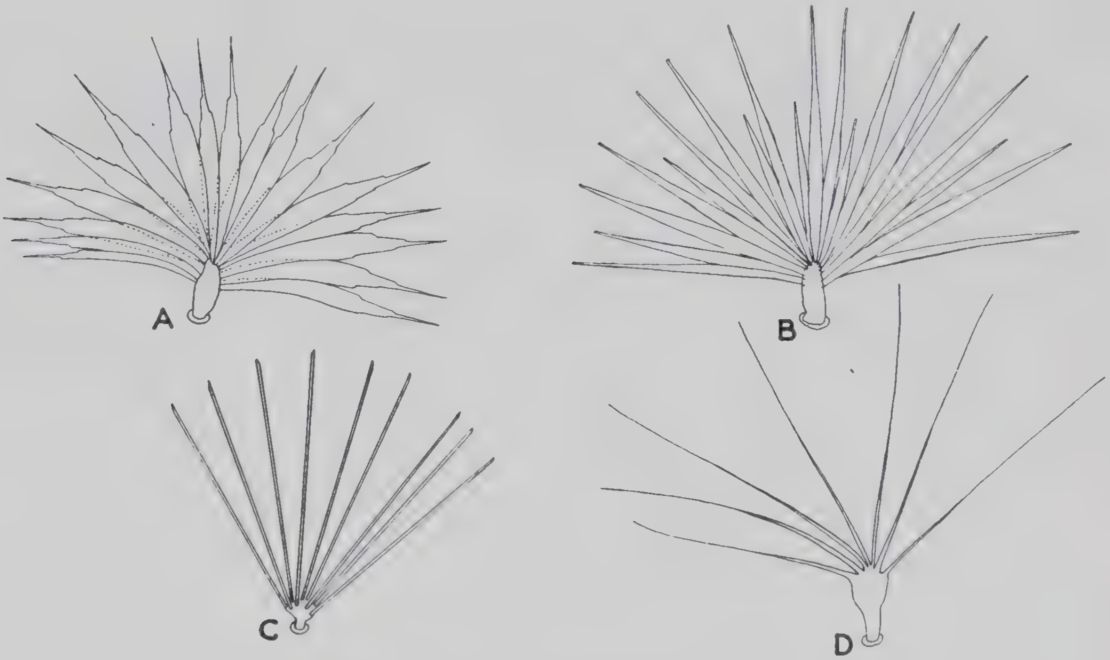


Fig. 44.—Palmate hairs of subgenera of *Anopheles*, *A*, *Anopheles*; *B*, *Nyssorhynchus*; *C*, *Russellia*; *D*, *Kerteszia*.

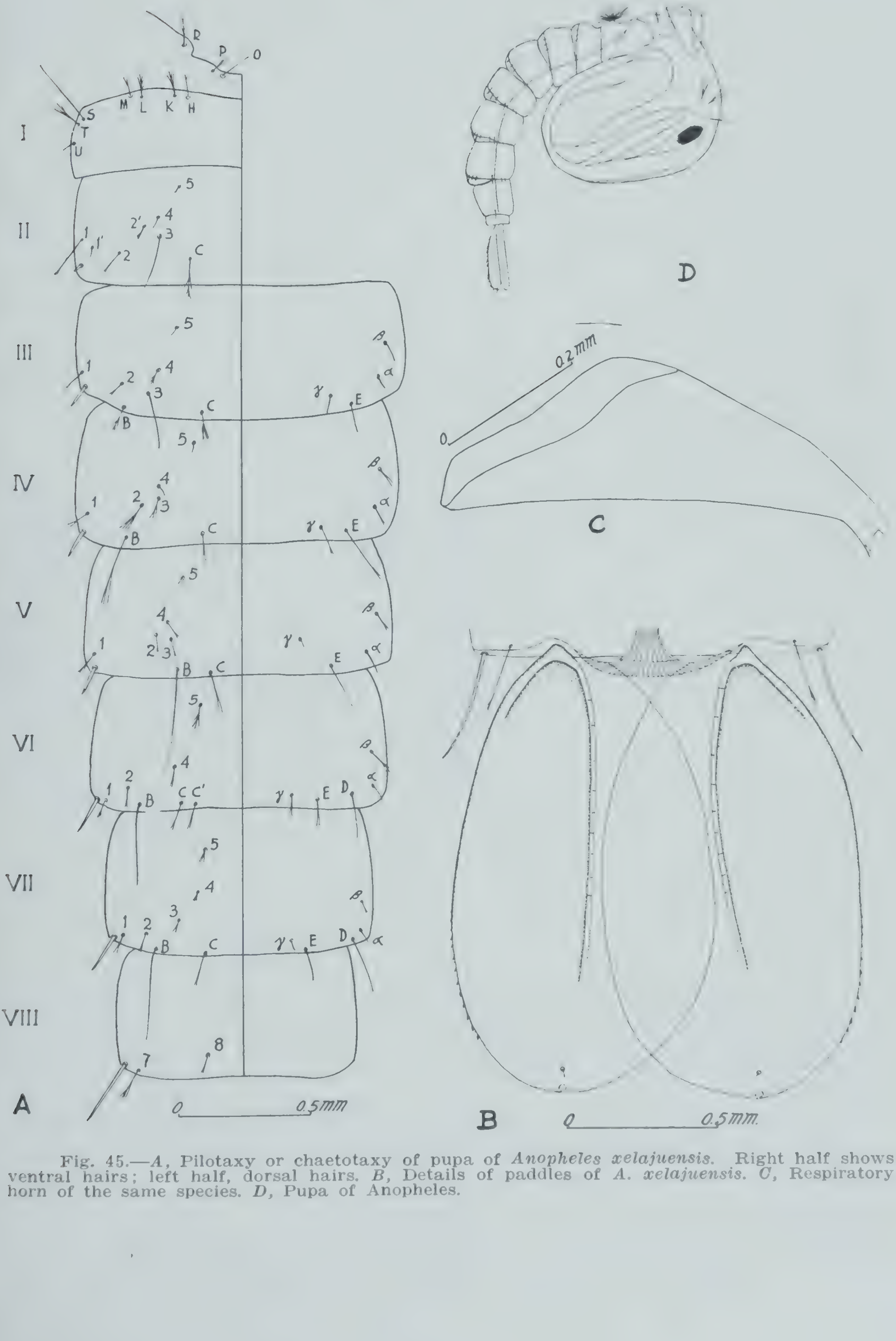

R
P
O
S
T
U
M
L
K
H
I
II
III
IV
V
VI
VII
VIII
1
1'
2
2'
3
4
5
B
C
C'
D
E
7
8
α
β
γ
A
0
0.5mm
D
0.2mm
0
C
B
0
0.5mm

Fig. 45.—*A*, Pilotaxy or chaetotaxy of pupa of *Anopheles xelajuensis*. Right half shows ventral hairs; left half, dorsal hairs. *B*, Details of paddles of *A. xelajuensis*. *C*, Respiratory horn of the same species. *D*, Pupa of Anopheles.

Mosquito breeding places vary. Those commonly encountered and readily accessible are large areas of swamps and marshes, road ditches, catch basins, ornamental ponds, water accumulations in furrows, in vegetable gardens, in hoofprints of horses and cattle in pastures, etc. The kind of oil or larvicide and the type of sprayer as well as the method of application will depend upon the location and the character of the mosquito breeding place.

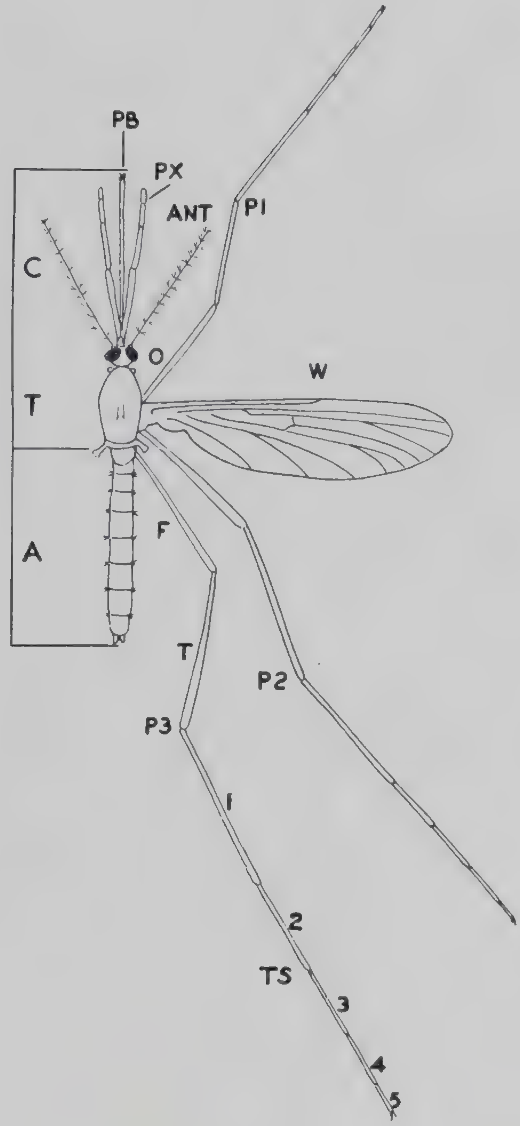


Fig. 46.

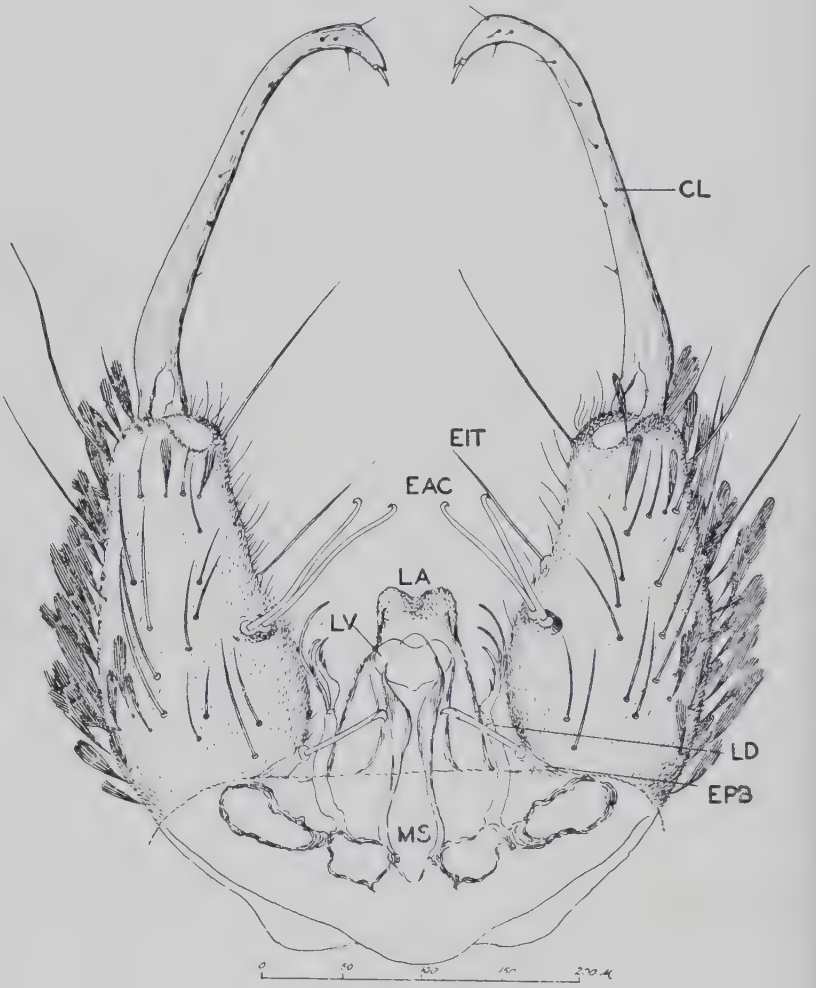


Fig. 47.

Fig. 46.—Details of female Anopheles mosquito. *C*, head; *T*, thorax; *A*, abdomen; *PB*, proboscis; *PX*, maxillary palpus; *ANT*, antenna; *O*, eye; *PL*, anterior leg; *P2*, median leg; *P3*, posterior leg; *F*, femur; *T*, fibia; *TS*, the 5 tarsal segments; *W*, wing.

Fig. 47.—Genitalia of male of *Anopheles albimanus*. *CL*, clasper; *EAC*, accessory spines *EIT*, inner spine; *EPB*, parabasal spines; *LA*, anal lobe; *LD*, dorsal lobe of claspette; *LV*, ventral lobe of claspette; *MS*, mesosome.

With the advent of DDT, many methods of malaria control have become unsatisfactory. They are mentioned here since in some circumstances they still may be followed, or the reader might want some general information about them.

By spraying DDT *inside* houses, our efforts are directed against adult mosquitoes, especially the females. Used in this manner, DDT will possibly eliminate or at least significantly reduce arthropods such as bedbugs, flies, *Aëdes aegypti*, and others, which serve as carriers of disease—dysentery, dengue, yellow fever, etc. The purpose of spraying DDT inside houses is not to kill the very last Anopheles, but rather to control the transmission of malaria.

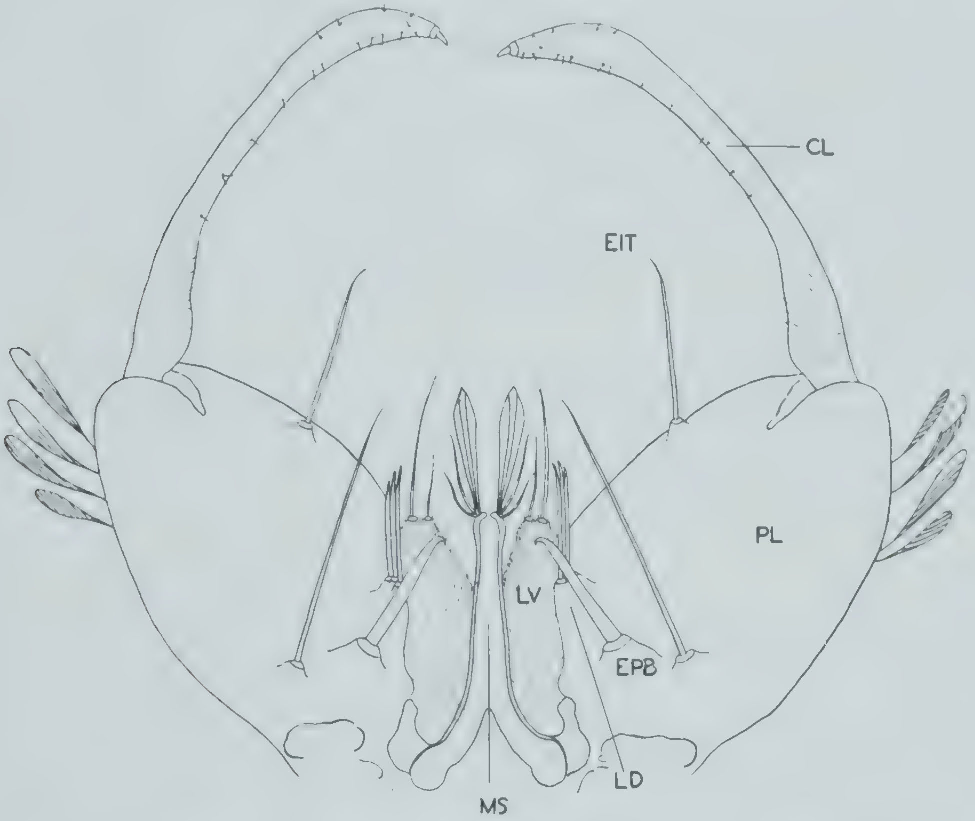


Fig. 48.—The terminalia of *Anopheles punctimacula*, male. *CL*, clasper; *EIT*, inner spine; *EPB*, parabasal spines; *LD*, dorsal lobe of claspette; *LV*, ventral lobe of claspette; *MS*, mesosome; *PL*, side piece.

HOUSING

Kiker (1941) stresses the point that the only completely effective mosquito control measures are those which permanently eliminate the breeding areas, usually by drainage. The principle of this method is also applied to bodies of water which cannot be drained, such as impounded lakes. In these waters, environment unfavorable to anophelines is produced temporarily at proper intervals by changing the water level. The method is combined with other measures which tend to prevent growth of marginal vegetation.

Observation of the fact that most anophelines confine their search for blood to evening and night hours, when families are usually in the house, has led to a search for methods of preventing entry of the mosquitoes. Mosquito-proofing has been advocated by many workers. The project involves not only providing screens for doors and windows, but also for closing all openings through which mosquitoes may enter a house. Where cracks in walls or floors are extensive, tar paper roofing is laid over the floor and a heavy craft paper is tacked on the walls. Plywood screens are made to fit tightly over fireplace openings (Stromquist, 1944).

NETTING

Russell (1943) states that nets to protect sleeping individuals are useful in preventing malaria when they are properly employed and properly maintained. The mesh of the net should not exceed 0.050 inch (0.13 cm.) to exclude all species of mosquitoes.

SCREENING

As Riley states, screening of habitations has proved to be both cheaper and more effective than mosquito bars. Today (1948) mosquito bars cost from two and one-half to three dollars each. The average family requires two bars. These bed nets last only a year and serve to protect only those in bed; during the hottest weather the nets are apt to be unused because they keep out the few prevailing slight breezes.

Screens, on the other hand, protect the entire house. They cost from eight to ten dollars and last from three to five years and even longer, depending largely upon the care. They can be renewed at much less than the original outlay by rescreening the frames.

Suitable Wire and Proper Mesh

In the tropics, especially at the seaside, it is better to use wire of noncorrosive material, such as bronze or aluminum. A hard, drawn wire, 99.8 per cent copper and of heavy gauge (0.015 inch or 0.038 cm. diameter), is suitable. Aluminum screens are also good. Plastic netting promises to be a cheap and satisfactory substitute for wire. In general, it is not safe to use screening with a mesh larger than 0.0475 inch (0.121 cm.). Heavy-grade copper wire screening has sixteen squares to the inch (about forty to the centimeter).

Installation of Screening

In installing screening, care should be taken to keep breakage to a minimum. Screen doors should open outward and, if possible, should be on the windward side of a building. Screens should be strongly constructed so that they will not sag or warp. They require springs so that they will close automatically.

DRAINAGE

Drainage still is, and, in places where practicable, probably always will be, the most desirable method of effecting malaria control through local reduction or elimination of the breeding places of the malaria-bearing species of mosquitoes. The rapidity with which the removal of surplus water is effected has an important bearing on malaria control. The malariologist is satisfied if removal is effected before a brood of mosquitoes can emerge.

According to Robertson et al. (1942) open earth ditches are, in many instances, entirely adequate, and frequently the only funds that can be provided are for this cheaper initial construction. Where the finances of a community permit, lined ditches should be the choice, on the basis of long life, efficiency, and generally lower cost for construction and maintenance.

WATER FLUCTUATION

Experiments with intermittent irrigation, or a so-called ''turn-system'' to control mosquito breeding in rice fields, have brought promising results in India, Java, Portugal, and other places. The principle of this method as a malaria control measure involves the periodic withholding of water long enough to permit the surface of fields and channels to become sufficiently dry to cause the death of mosquito larvae. The subsurface soil around the rice roots remains moist.

Anopheline vectors that breed in streams may be controlled by periodic sluicing. A small dam is built to impound water which can be released by manual or mechanical removal of a barrier or by use of automatic siphons.

OIL

The use of oil for mosquito reduction was recommended as early as 1793 in an article in *The American Advertiser* of Philadelphia on August 29. A similar suggestion, attributed to R. Southey, was made in the book *Omniana Otiosores*, published in London in 1812. But it was not until Howard published his work in 1892 that the application of oil to mosquito control became an established practice.

Herms and Gray (1940) give it as their opinion that the correct use of oil or larvicide is to supplement other measures that are in use to eliminate mosquito-breeding places. They also point out four other circumstances that call for use of oil: (1) while pending installation of primary measures; (2) as an emergency measure following floods or other unusual conditions; (3) as the only available method in a few instances where primary measures such as drainage are not applicable (*i.e.*, impounding reservoirs); and (4) in the relatively few cases where the capitalized annual cost of oiling or larviciding is considerably less than the cost of primary control measures.

The following properties are desirable in the ''ideal'' mosquito oil: quick toxic effect upon larvae and pupae; good ''spread'' on all kinds of waters; rapid penetration through debris and thick vegetation; a stable, long-lasting film; odor inoffensive to man; absence of injurious effects on fish, waterfowl, and plant life; and low cost (Ginsburg, 1944).

The ideal specifications for a larvicidal oil are

Specific gravity 20/4	0.83-0.86
Viscosity (Saybolt Universal at 100° F.)	31-43
Initial boiling point	297-414° F. (165-230° C.)
Final boiling point, maximum	800° F. (426.7° C.)
Spreading coefficient, minimum	17.0

The most important disadvantages of the oiling process are (1) the difficulty of reaching the water through a matt of vegetation and (2) the diminution of the effect by the action of wind and rain. The chief advantages are the destruction of eggs, larvae, and pupae of all kinds of mosquitoes, ease of obtaining and spraying, ease with which results can be observed, and, of course, the factor of nontoxicity.

Kerosene and gasoline may be used as larvicides since they have a marked killing effect, but they form a transitory film, are expensive, and may constitute a fire hazard.

Waste motor oils are not highly toxic to larvae. They are sometimes used effectively when applied in a fairly thick film. Better results are obtained when waste motor oil is mixed with kerosene, in the proportion of 1 to 3, with addition (if possible) of about 2 per cent of castor oil. The amount of kerosene to be added will have to be determined by experiment.

The amount of oil needed to produce a uniform, killing film, under field conditions, usually ranges from 25 to 60 gallons per acre, depending upon the nature of the breeding area, toxic properties of the oil, species of mosquitoes, method of application, and atmospheric factors, such as wind, temperature, etc.

Handling of oil is objectionable from the standpoint of fire hazards, especially near shipyards, lumber yards, ammunition factories and storage places, open fire barrels, etc.

Oil-soaked dust may be scattered over the surface of a breeding place. Russell (1943) makes the point that oil booms may be used to combat larval drift. The larvae are killed by oil-soaked sawdust or chaff thrown on the surface of the water above the boom. Russell (1943) states that when Diesel oil No. 2 is used, about 9 gallons (34 liters) are required per acre (about 4,000 square meters) of water surface for complete coverage with a uniform, stable film. With an ordinary knapsack sprayer of the Panama type, one laborer can oil about 5 acres (about 20,000 square meters) of breeding area per day if the terrain is not difficult. In general practice, the amount of oil necessary to produce a uniform film may vary from 10 to 20 gallons (38 to 76 liters) per acre. The amount of floatage and vegetation makes a considerable difference.

Usually, it is necessary to spread oil once a week.

Fuel oil will kill the larvae in less than one hour. The amount of oil required ranges from 10 to 30 gallons per acre of water surface, depending upon the amount of vegetation or debris present.

Where oil is dispersed by currents, as in streams and ditches, it may be better to attempt constant application. For this purpose there are at least three types of continuous oilers, none of which is entirely satisfactory. A continuous oiler requires a good deal of attention, generally uses more oil than would be dispensed over the same areas from a knapsack sprayer, and should not be used unless other methods are found impractical.

PYRETHRUM

According to Sinton and Wats (1935), the use of pyrethrum flowers for insecticidal purposes appears to have originated in Persia. It was introduced into Europe early in the nineteenth century. At that time and for many years afterward, a powder prepared from the flowers has been used for domestic purposes.

Steudel (1911) called attention to the possible value of the insecticidal sprays in malaria control. Giemsa (1911, 1912, 1913, 1914) finally recommended a mixture consisting of tincture of pyrethrum, soft soap, and glycerine diluted with water; he also reported that the use of a soap solution containing formaldehyde was effective and cheap.

In the United States, kerosene extracts of pyrethrum flowers began to displace the powder for household use (about 1900). As a result, a large number of proprietary insecticidal sprays are now on the market. The active principle in these is derived, for the most part, from pyrethrum.

The name "pyrethrum" applies to the dried flower heads of *Pyrethrum cinerariaefolium.*

Pyrethrin I and Pyrethrin II were isolated from pyrethrum by Staudinger and Ruzicka (1924). They are viscous liquids, soluble in petroleum ether, alcohol, acetone, ethylene dichloride, and in most of the other organic solvents.

These two substances are toxic to cold-blooded animals, such as insects, fish, frogs, crabs, and turtles. The pyrethrins are harmless to warm-blooded animals when taken by mouth.

Ginsburg (1930, 1939) has developed the New Jersey pyrethrum larvicide. It is essentially an oil emulsion of approximately the following composition: 66 per cent kerosene or similar light petroleum distillate; 0.07 per cent pyrethrin (equivalent to extract of one pound of flowers, analyzing at 0.9 per cent pyrethrin, per gallon of gasoline); 33.5 per cent water; and 0.5 per cent of a neutral emulsifier such as commercial sodium lauryl sulfate. This concentrated stock emulsion is mixed with about ten parts of water before spraying. Although the diluted spray contains only about 6 per cent kerosene, the small quantity of pyrethrin greatly increases its toxic properties so that, when applied as directed, it is equally as efficient as the regular mosquito oil in destroying larvae and pupae.

Russell (1943) considers the spray-killing of adult mosquitoes with pyrethrum extract as one of the most important measures of malaria control. When used against malaria vectors which rest indoors during the day, this solution will destroy a high percentage of the infective mosquitoes of an area and will destroy also many potential vectors. The spray also acts as a repellent, keeping mosquitoes away from sprayed dwellings and from circumscribed outdoor areas which have been sprayed.

The United States Army used three types of pyrethrum products: (1) 1:20 concentrate, each gallon (3.8 liters) containing the oleoresins of approximately 20 pounds (9 kilograms) of flowers with no less than 75 to 100 Gm. of total pyrethrin per gallon (2 to 2.5 Gm. per 100 c.c.). This concentrate, in Army practice, is diluted with 14 parts of good quality, water-white gasoline and may be used in various types of mechanical sprayers, such as those described below. (2) A prepared, ready-to-use pyrethrum spray is supplied in areas where there may be difficulty in obtaining kerosene for diluting the concentrate. This spray conforms to class AA rating as defined by the United States Department of Commerce (1938) standard specifications. The rating is based upon actual performance in tests. These sprays should contain 150 to 180 Gm. of pyrethrin or their equivalent in each 100 c.c. With either of the two kinds of sprays, about one-half ounce (15 c.c.) is required to spray 1,000 cubic feet (about 28 cubic meters). (3) The third type of product used by the Army is pyrethrum in containers holding a mixture of 20:1 concentrate, sesame oil, and liquid Freon—Freon 12. The preparation can be of 18 ounces (532 c.c.) of a mixture of liquid Freon, Freon 12, or dichlorodifluoromethylene with 0.8 per cent wax-free pyrethrin and 6.0 per cent sesame oil. The latter enhances the killing power of the pyrethrin. The vapor pressure of the solvent produces the necessary spraying pressure which does not decrease as long as liquid is present in the closed container. As the Freon 12 containing the insecticide is sprayed, it forms a fine mist from which the solvent evaporates almost immediately, leaving the pyrethrum and sesame oil suspended in the atmosphere as a cloud of fine droplets called an aerosol. Freon 12 is nontoxic to man and is noninflammable. Its role in the spray is simply that of expellent to disperse the pyrethrum sesame oil.

Popularly known as a ''health bomb,'' each dispenser of this kind is said to carry enough insecticide to fumigate 240 pup tents or a giant bomber or a space of 150,000 cubic feet.

Pyrethrum insecticide can be effectively sprayed through any ordinary spray gun used for spraying paint if air pressure of 15 pounds (7 kilograms) or more is supplied. Pressure may be supplied from a tank pumped up by hand or from gasoline or electrically driven compressors. Solidified carbon dioxide, Dry Ice, when available, in suitably constructed pressure tanks, is a good expedient.

PARIS GREEN

After the work of Roubaud in 1920 on the larvicidal properties of paraformaldehyde trioxymethylene, Barber and Hayne (1921) discovered the properties of Paris green as an effective larvicide. This product has several names, among them Schweinfurth green, Imperial green, Emerald green, and Mitis green.

Bishop (1940) reported no deleterious effect of Paris green upon vegetation and gave no evidence of destruction of aquatic organisms that are important as fish food.

Sweet and Rao (1933) reported complaints of skin eruptions suffered by laborers engaged in mixing and spreading the Paris green larvicide. The eruptions occurred principally in the axillary, inguinal, and anal regions. They were not serious and disappeared after the workmen had been instructed to bathe and to wash their clothes thoroughly immediately after work.

Larvae feeding at the surface ingest Paris green particles. This is especially true of Anopheles larvae; however, when Paris green floats long enough in still water, it is ingested by Aëdes and by some Culex larvae which feed part time at the surface.

Paris green, after sinking, is usually rendered inert. It does not repel ovipositing mosquitoes.

In Paris green mixtures, the vehicle may be powdered charcoal, calcium hydroxide, powdered soapstone, road dust, or some other dust. The vehicle must be well mixed with the poison. When lime is used, Paris green may be added in the proportion of 10 per cent by weight. This is equivalent to about 5 per cent by volume.

A Paris green dust mixture can be applied to ponds, lakes, and large streams by being blown into the air from the windward side so that it will form a cloud and be carried out over the water. The large hand-operated or motor-operated dust blower ordinarily employed in dusting trees in horticultural work may be used to throw the mixture into the air. For large bodies of water a slowly settling dust carried along by a light wind will give best results. For small bodies of water where vegetation is heavy, or for ditches and streams that are too narrow to be dusted by the "cloud" method, handfuls of the dust mixture may be thrown directly on or into the vegetation and on the surface of the water. There are automatic distributing devices for small canals and streams. The airplane may be used to apply the dust over large areas; e.g., extensive swamps. In general, the best results are obtained on a sunny day after the dew has evaporated from the vegetation. When special distributors are not available, Paris green mixed with wet or dry sand, clay, or any other kind of earth or small pebbles, and thrown by hand, is often effective.

The amount of larvicide required to treat an area will vary with the amount of vegetation. When the surface of the water is clear, about one-half ounce (14 Gm.) of Paris green, mixed with 99 parts of dust by volume, is sufficient to dust 1,000 square feet (93 square meters) of water surface. Where the vegetation consists of grass or reeds, greater quantities must be used. In such places, the percentage of Paris green should be from 2 to 5 per cent by volume, as determined by experiment.

One man can usually prepare and spread Paris green mixture along 1¼ miles (2 kilometers) of bank in one day, the exact distance depending upon local conditions.

Under average conditions, Paris green should be applied at intervals of from five to seven days in warm weather. Dusting should be repeated without delay whenever examination of the water reveals the presence of fourth-stage larvae. Dusting, otherwise, needs to be applied only often enough to prevent development of first-stage larvae and of new broods.

According to Watson and Kiker (1938), the cost of operating a dusting plane varies considerably but may be set at about forty dollars per hour. An airplane flying at the rate of eighty-two miles per hour can dust 33 acres per minute at the cost of 36.7 cents per acre.

DDT

DDT acts as a poison for the stomach of the larvae and as a contact poison for the adults. Its most remarkable characteristic is its prolonged toxic action, the residual effect.

DDT or any other insecticide is not a substitute for good sanitation such as the permanent removal of insect breeding areas.

It has been demonstrated that malaria can be effectively and cheaply reduced in towns and villages by spraying the interior of houses.

DDT with Thanite (terpene thiocyanoester) gives a "strong knockdown" and "high kill."

Experiments made in Arkansas during the summer of 1944 show that a single application of DDT greatly reduces the number of mosquitoes resting in buildings during the day for a period of about 130 days. The experiment also indicated that enough adults were killed to lower the larval population breeding in rice fields by more than 50 per cent.

Since DDT attacks both adult and larval stages of the mosquito, spraying results in immediate kill as well as affecting future breeding. DDT is water insoluble and must be sprayed either in powder form or in solution in organic solvents such as kerosene, xylene, o-dichlorobenzene, etc., or in water emulsion. Two quarts of 5 per cent solution per acre have given complete protection for several weeks.

Solutions of 2.5 per cent DDT in kerosene gave effective control of anopheline larvae when applied by boat oiling units at a rate of approximately 0.1 pound of DDT per acre, making possible a reduction of about 98 per cent in the amount of kerosene normally used.

DDT had to be mixed with 95 per cent soapstone before a satisfactory airplane dusting combination was obtained. With this mixture, 90 per cent control of *A. quadrimaculatus* larvae was effected over 200 foot swaths at rates as low as 0.05 pound per acre. Certain polymethylnaphthalenes (Velsicol) having a high solubility and a high boiling point were found to be ideal solvents for making liquid solutions of DDT to be applied by airplane. One objection to airplane sprays in this instance is their invisibility. The high visibility of the regular Paris green soapstone dust cloud aids the pilot in gaining swath widths and determining distribution.

DDT dusts applied at rates of 0.1 pound per acre gave no indication of injury to aquatic organisms other than mosquitoes, but 5 per cent solutions of DDT in kerosene applied at rates of 0.1 to 0.25 pound per acre were quite destructive to populations of aquatic insects living in close contact with the water surface, especially Hemiptera and Coleoptera. Water boatmen (Corixidae) were especially susceptible to the DDT spray. Actual dipping records showed, however, that 20 per cent solutions of DDT in Velsicol, applied as thermal aerosols at rates of about 0.12 pounds DDT per acre, gave very efficient anopheline control without significant reduction of other aquatic organisms such as May fly larvae, midge larvae, beetle larvae, and water fleas (Cladocera).

DDT is highly poisonous to water fleas and fish and to some of the other cold-blooded animals. It has killed birds that had fed upon insects killed by the chemical. It is deadly to honey bees. DDT may interfere with adequate pollination of important food and seed crops, and it does destroy beneficial insects that keep certain injurious pests under control. It is not harmful to most plants but does damage squash and other members of the squash family. When applied at the rate of 25 pounds per acre, it was found that it could retard growth of some plants. The human skin is not harmed by the dry substance or by the water suspensions, and one scientific worker took as much as 1.5 Gm. of DDT in butter without ill effects.

Massive doses, such as a teaspoonful taken by mouth, or constant and excessive exposure of the skin to DDT oil solution may cause toxic reactions. DDT should always be properly labeled. It should not be stored near food nor sprayed on food or food utensils.

Persons engaged in spraying with DDT should wear coveralls, a wide-brimmed hat, goggles, a chemical cartridge respirator, and rubber gloves. Persons applying such sprays infrequently need to wear merely coveralls that may be changed after spraying and should avoid wetting the face or any part of the body by the spray. When the spraying is done inside the home, all open fires should be extinguished. Babies' beds, children's toys, food, or utensils for eating or drinking should not be sprayed. Since DDT spray stains glass, pictures and mirrors should be removed from the walls. Any liquid spilled should be wiped up. Pets should be excluded from the house until the spray dries. When DDT dust is applied in a confined area, a dust respirator should be used (Van Keek, 1945).

If skin or eye inflammation occurs from DDT spray, the affected parts may be treated with warm boric acid solution every few hours, if necessary, until a physician is consulted. If DDT is swallowed, mustard water (one tablespoon of mustard to a glass of warm water) should be taken immediately to induce vomiting. Medical help should be enlisted. Twenty c.c. of 10 per cent calcium gluconate has been found useful in DDT poisoning (Vaz et al., 1945).

PHENOTHIAZINE

When Paris green and other larvicides are not available, phenothiazine mixed with dust or used in water is an effective substitute. It is less stable than Paris green but floats better.

COPPER SULFATE

Copper sulfate has been used, at final dilutions of 0.1 to 0.25 ppm of water, to kill algae. Some species are resistant to this concentration. Its use is not generally accepted because of the odor of the dead algae and because of the objectionable taste imparted to the drinking water.

REPELLENTS

Various chemicals possessing repelling properties have been recommended and commercialized. These chemicals are applied to the skin in the form of lotions, ointments, or powders. They may protect the individual for a period of up to several hours, depending upon the repellent properties and other factors, such as thoroughness of application, species and density of mosquitoes, atmospheric factors, etc. (see Chapter 65).

Although mosquito repellents contribute toward relief from annoyance, their application on the skin entails inconvenience. They repel mosquitoes only by actual contact. To be effective, they must completely cover all exposed parts of the body. They cause smarting of delicate parts of the skin, such as eyelids and face. The irritation may become well-nigh unbearable to highly sensitive individuals in a warm, humid climate when they perspire freely (Ginsburg, 1944).

RELIEF FROM MOSQUITO BITES

Irritation resulting from mosquito bite may be relieved by moist soap. Howard and Bishop (1932) advise wetting the end of a cloth with lather from ordinary toilet soap and rubbing gently on the puncture.

Hoffman (1941) recommends the local application of chloroform.

CHEMICAL PROPHYLAXIS

Russell (1943) emphasizes the necessity of proper treatment of all malarial cases in the work of control of malaria. Drug prophylaxis or chemoprophylaxis has a long history. It was tried against malaria long before the cause of the disease was known. Quinine and Atabrine in small doses are almost equally useful in suppressing the appearance of clinical symptoms after infection. The usual clinical chills and pyrexia are suppressed and do not reappear until prophylactic medication has been stopped. Some authorities believe that it is safe to delay the suppressive treatment for three or four days after such treatment has been indicated. There are data, however, which indicate that at least 0.6 Gm. of Atabrine should be taken within a period of two weeks to produce levels in the blood plasma at which suppressive effects are seen.

WILD LIFE

Actual work and study have led to the conclusion that, in spite of controversies which may exist between wildlife conservationists and those interested in malaria control, the program of malaria control does not have any serious effect upon wildlife.

PLANTS

Aquatic plants play a dominant role in malaria control inasmuch as they provide food and shelter for the larvae of the vector (Penfound, 1942). Several studies have been made, especially on herbicides, to determine the relation of each species of plant to anopheline propagation and to devise methods of reducing objectionable species to an innocuous state.

Chara foetida has been reported as having a marked lethal effect on mosquito larvae. Shading has been used with some success in control of Anopheles. The factors involved in shading are, on the one hand, the reduction of illumination and, on the other, the retention of moisture by the roots of the plant. Shade may prevent algae and other vegetation from flourishing.

Some success has been obtained in afforesting with *Eucalyptus robusta* to dry the Uganda swamps where *A. gambiae* and *A. funestus* breed.

FISH

In wells, gardens, and pools without much vegetation, some help in larva control may be gained by use of larva-eating fishes, such as *Gambusia affinis.*

References

Barber, M. A., and Hayne, T. B.: 1921. Arsenic as a Larvicide for Anopheline Larvae, Pub. Health Rep. **36:** 3027.

Barber, M. A., Rice, J. B., and Mandekos, A.: 1936. A Dustless Method of Diluting and Spreading Paris Green in Malaria Control, Am. J. Hyg. **24:** 41-44.

Berti, A. L.: 1936. Métodos de Ingenieria Aplicables al Control de la Malaria en Venezuela, Thesis, University Centr. Venezuela.

Bishop, E. L.: 1940. Cooperative Investigations of the Relation Between Mosquito Control and Wildlife Conservation, Science **92:** 201-202.

Boyd, M. F.: 1940. Malaria so Deep-rooted in State That Sporadic Effects at Control Are Worthless, Florida Health Notes **32:** 109-112.

Clarkson, L. M., Hazlehurst, G. H., Hasell, P. G., and Rector, N. H.: 1939. Malaria Control for Engineers, Am. Soc. Civil Engin. Proc., February.

Covell, G., Mulligan, H. W., and Afridi, M. K.: 1938. An Attempt to Control Malaria by the Destruction of Adult Mosquitoes With Insecticidal Sprays, J. Malaria Inst. India **1:** 105-113.

De Meillon, B.: 1936. The Control of Malaria in South Africa by Measures Directed Against the Adult Mosquitoes in Habitations, Quart. Bull. Health Organ., League of Nations **5:** 134-137.

Edwards, F. W.: Culicidae. Genera Insectorum. Vol. 194. Bruxelles, Desmet-Verteneuil.

Giemsa, G.: 1911. Arch. f. Schiffs- u. Tropen-Hyg. **15:** 533-536.

Giemsa, G.: 1912. Arch. f. Schiffs- u. Tropen-Hyg. **16:** 565-567.

Giemsa, G.: 1913. Arch. f. Schiffs- u. Tropen-Hyg. **17:** 181-190.

Giemsa, G.: 1914. Arch. f. Schiffs- u. Tropen-Hyg. **18:** 26-29.

Ginsburg, J. M.: 1930. Studies of Pyrethrum as a Mosquito Larvicide, Proc. New Jersey Mosquito Exterm. A. **17:** 57.

Ginsburg, J. M.: 1939. New Jersey Mosquito Larvicide, New Jersey Agric. Exper. Sta. Circular 382.

Ginsburg, J. M.: 1944. Mosquito Oils, Larvicides, Repellents, Outdoor Sprays and Their Application, New Jersey Agric. Sta. Bull. 711.

Herms, W. B., and Gray, H. F.: 1940. Mosquito Control, New York. The Commonwealth Fund; London, Oxford University Press.

Hoffman, W. A.: 1941. The Effect of Chloroform on Some Insect Bites, Science **94:** 66-67.

Howard, L. O.: 1892. An Experiment Against Mosquitoes, Insect Life **5:** 12-14.

Howard, L. O., and Bishop, F. C.: 1932. Mosquito Remedies and Preventives, U. S. Dept. Agric. Farmer's Mul. 1570.

Kiker, C. C.: 1941. Housing With Special Reference to Mosquito-Proofing for Malaria Control, Symposium on Human Malaria, Amer. Assoc. Adv. Sci. Pub. **15:** 308-314.

Knowles, F. L., and Smith, C. S.: 1945. DDT Residual House Spray. A Method of Malaria Control in Rural Areas, Pub. Health Rep. **60:** 1274-1279.

Kruse, C. W., and Metcalf, R. L.: 1946. An Analysis of the Design and Performance of Airplane Exhaust Generators for the Production of DDT Aerosols for the Control of *Anopheles quadrimaculatus,* Pub. Health Rep. **61:** 1171-1184.

McDaniel, E. I.: 1944. Mosquito Control in Michigan, 1944, Michigan Agric. Exper. Sta. Quart. Bull. **26:** 1-6.

Metcalf, R. L., and Hess, A. D.: 1944. The Relation of Particle Size to the Effectiveness of Paris Green Used in Airplane Dusting for Mosquito Control, Pub. Health Rep. **59:** 1458-1465.

Metcalf, R. L., Hess, A. D., Smith, G. E., Jeffery, G. M., and Ludwing, G. L.: 1945. Observations on the Use of DDT for the Control of *Anopheles quadrimaculatus,* Pub. Health Rep. **60:** 753-774.

Penfound, W. T.: 1942. The Relation of Plants to Malaria Control, With Special Reference to Impounded Waters, Pub. Health Rep. **57:** 261-268.

Rector, N. H.:* The Execution of Minor Drainage, Missisippi State Board Health, Bull. 1.

Riley, G. E.:* The Screening and Mosquito Proofing of Houses, Missisippi State Board of Health, Bull. 4.

---

*Without date.

Robertson, J. L., LePrince, J. A., Johnson, H. A., and Parker, W. V.: 1942. Observations on Experimental Malaria Control Drainage Ditch Linings, Pub. Health Rep. **57:** 451-463.

Ross, G. A. P.: 1936. Insecticide as a Major Measure in Control of Malaria, Being an Account of the Methods and Organization Put in Force in Natal and Zululand During the Past Six years, Quart. Bull. Health Organ., League of Nations **5:** 114-133.

Russell, P. F.: 1938. Malaria Due to Defective Irrigation, J. Malaria Inst. India **1:** 339-349.

Russell, P. F.: 1943. Military Malaria Control, War Medicine **3:** 565-584.

Russell, P. F., and Knipe, F. W.: 1939. Malaria Control by Spray—Killing Adult Mosquitoes, J. Malaria Inst. India **2:** 229-237.

Russell, P. F., Knipe, F. W., and Ramachandra Rao, T.: 1940. On Using Water Instead of Dust for Diluting Paris Green in Malaria Control, Indian M. Gaz. **75:** 740.

Russell, P. F., Knipe, F. W., and Ramachandra Rao, T.: 1942. A Water Emulsion of Pyrethrum Extract for Spray-Killing Adult Mosquitoes, Indian M. Gaz. **77:** 477-479.

Russell, P. F., and Eaton, L. S.: 1934. An Automatic Distribution Machine for Paris Green Mixture, Philippine J. Science **53:** 497-503.

Russell, P. F., and Jacob, V. P.: 1939. Some Experiments With a Cheap Method of Treating Casuarina-Pits With Paris Green to Control Anopheles Breeding, J. Malaria Inst. India. **2:** 261-271.

Sinton, J. A., and Wats, R. C.: 1935. The Efficacy of Various Insecticidal Sprays in the Destruction of Adult Mosquitoes, Rec. Malaria Survey India **5:** 275-306.

Soper, F. L., and Wilson, D. Bruce: 1942. Species Eradication. A Practical Goal of Species Reduction in the Control of Mosquito-Borne Disease, J. Nat. Malaria Soc. **1:** 5-24.

Steudel, E.: 1911. Arch. f. Schiffs- u. Tropen-Hyg. **15:** 121-123.

Staudinger and Ruzicka: 1924. Helv. chim. Acta **7:** 177.

Stromquist, W. G.: 1944. Engineering Aspects of Mosquito Control, Civil Engin. **14:** 431-434.

Stubbs, T. H.: 1945. Educational Factors in the Ultimate Control of Malaria, Monthly Bull. Indiana State Board Health **48:** 133-148.

Sweet, W. C., and Rao, B. A.: 1933. Notes on Malaria in Mysore State. IV. Experimental Control of Malaria With Paris Green and Plasmoquine, Rec. Malaria Survey India **3:** 689-718.

U. S. Department of Commerce: 1938. Household Insecticide (Liquid Spray Type), Commercial Standards 72-38—National Bureau of Standards, Washington, D. C., Government Printing Office.

Van Kleek, L. W.: 1945. The Use of DDT as an Insecticide, Connecticut Health Bull. **59:** 231-237.

Vaz, V., Pereira, R. S., and Malheiro, D. M.: 1945. Calcium in Prevention and Treatment of Experimental DDT Poisoning, Science **101:** 434-436.

Watson, R. B., and Kiker, C. C.: 1938. The Role of Airplane Dusting in the Control of Anopheles Breeding Associated With Impounded Waters, Pub. Health Rep. **53:** 251-263.

Yates, W. W., and Stage, H. H.: 1941. Factors That May Affect the Toxicity of Pyrethrum-Oil Emulsions as Mosquito Larvicides, Proc. New Jersey Mosquito Exterm. A., pp. 127-135.

CHAPTER 8

CHAGAS' DISEASE

SALVADOR MAZZA†

DEFINITION

Chagas' disease is an infectious, noncontagious disease caused by *Trypanosoma cruzi* (Chagas, 1909). Erroneously believing that during a certain stage in its life cycle in man *Trypanosoma cruzi* multiplied by schizogony, Chagas renamed it *Schizotrypanum cruzi*. However, being based on mistaken conception, this name was withdrawn by E. Chagas in 1934 and the original name given it by C. Chagas, *Trypanosoma cruzi*, is now the accepted name of this species.

The disease affects several species of animals and attacks at all ages (neither excluding nor preferring children) insofar as man or animals are exposed to contamination by the transmitting bug, a triatoma.

This bug inhabits huts and other primitive dwellings or old adobe houses in ancient towns. It is a strict hematophagous Hemiptera. It is known as "vinchuca" in Spanish-American countries, as "barbeiro" in Brazil, and as the "kissing bug" in the United States, because it so often stings the face, this frequently being the only exposed part of the sleeping individual. (See Chapter 55.)

Chagas' disease is also called "American trypanosomiasis" or "schizotrypanosis." It derives its name from Carlos Chagas, who first discovered the vector agent. Later, in 1907, he discovered the causative agent, *T. cruzi*. He described the disease itself in 1909, the natural domestic carriers of the trypanosome (cats, 1909), wild animal sources (armadillos, 1912), and, finally, the clinical manifestations in detail (1916).

The term "parasitic thyroiditis," heretofore used to designate Chagas' disease, should disappear since there is no justification for its use.

THE CAUSATIVE AGENT: TRYPANOSOMA CRUZI

(Chagas, 1909)

This trypanosome, in the blood of man, is characterized by the terminal or juxtaterminal position of the blepharoplast or kinetonucleus in the posterior extremity of the body. The kinetonucleus, because of its size, extends beyond the sides of the parasite at the posterior end, giving the appearance of an apple with a dagger thrust through it. The nucleus, usually ellipsoid or ovoid and compact, is located at a point where the last two-thirds of the organism

---

This chapter is the result of studies made by the Argentine Regional Mission, Pathologic Research, of the University of Buenos Aires in Jujuy, Argentina. All illustrations are originals of this institution. Credit is to be given to Dr. Miguel E. Jörg, Dr. Germinal Basso, Dr. Redento Basso, Dr. Ramón S. Freire, Dr. Gilberto Urcelay, Dr. S. Miyara, and Dr. J. Lovaglio. They have, with outstanding faithfulness and loyalty, with singleness of purpose, overcome great difficulties in the path of investigations along this line.

†Dr. Mazza died on July 13, 1946.

unite with the anterior third. A flagellum which stems from the blepharoplast is directed forward, following the outline of the parasite, with a few undulations, and extending beyond the anterior end as a free flagellum. It is about one-half or three-fourths the length of the trypanosome. The narrow space between the flagellum and the side of the body is occupied by the undulating membrane, which has a few folds.

Fig. 49 shows a specimen, enlarged 2,000 times, of *T. cruzi* in human blood, stained with Giemsa stain. It shows the details which permit identification of the species in blood slides.

In contrast to other known pathogenic trypanosomes, *T. cruzi* does not multiply in the blood. This process takes place within the tissues of practically all organs, especially in the cells of the reticuloendothelial system. Here, after the trypanosome becomes immobilized, it loses its flagellum and undulating membrane and is reduced to a protoplasmic mass, 3 to 5 microns in diameter, with two nuclei. One nucleus, bar-shaped, is the kinetonucleus or blepharoplast; the other, more or less circular, properly called ''nucleus,'' through successive binary fission gives rise to clusters, misnamed cysts or residual forms, of leishmanias of *T. cruzi.*

In Fig. 50, in a large endothelial cell of a lymphatic gland, a group of leishmanial elements is seen, with a frequent tendency to produce elongated, flagellated forms. Fig. 51 shows the same forms in the heart, where they are found more often.

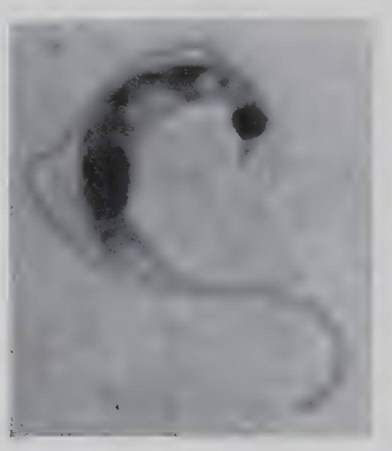


Fig. 49.—*Trypanosoma cruzi* in human blood. Giemsa stain. (×2000.)

By reacquisition of the flagellum, derived from the blepharoplast, and by progressive enlargement of the leishmania form of the parasite, there occurs transformation into flagellar elements, called *crithidia,* in which state they are capable of multiplication. Then, by displacement of the kinetonucleus of the crithidia from the anteronuclear position, which characterizes them, to the posterior extremity, becoming terminal, the crithidia are converted into *trypanosomes,* which invade the circulation and begin again the parasitic blood-to-tissue-to-blood cycle, with a dual personality, so to speak. One form is the trypanosome-form, motile and nonreproducible in the blood of mammals but circulating in it *(hemoparasitic);* the other form is the leishmania form, nonmotile, and not multiplying, evolutive, and adaptable to the tissues *(histoparasitic)* (see Fig. 52).

Trypanosomes are ingested by triatomas along with the blood of mammals. They undergo special transformation in the digestive tract, particularly in the mid-gut of the bug. The blepharoplast approaches the nucleus, the undulating membrane is lost, the parasite becomes rounded. From these elements originate the crithidial forms, with anteronuclear kinetonucleus. Their motility, until the kinetonucleus shifts into the postnuclear but not yet terminal position, results in the formation of trypanosomes called ''metacyclic'' (Brumpt). These are infectious and accumulate in the lower intestine or rectum of the bug and are eliminated with the excreta.

Mucosae in general, also the conjunctiva, constitute portals of entry for ''metacyclic'' trypanosomes from the dejecta of the triatoma. Penetration may occur even through the

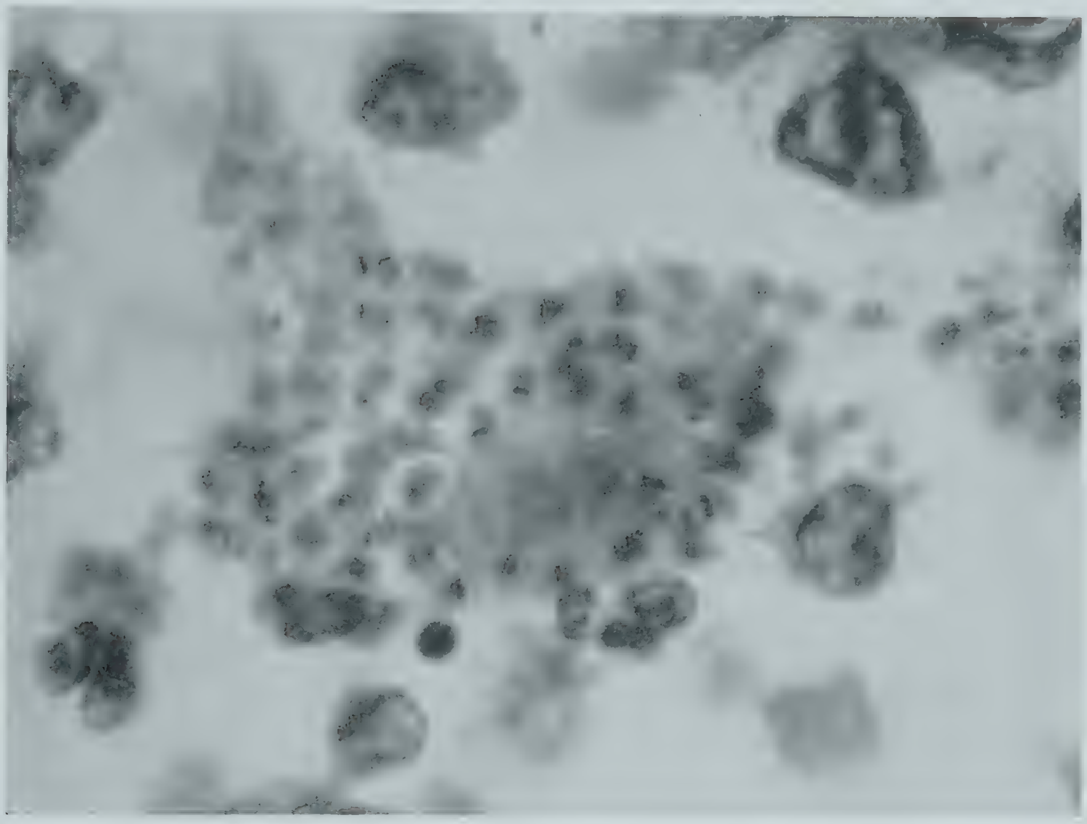


Fig. 50.—Histiocyte of a lymphatic gland, with leishmanial elements of *Trypanasoma cruzi* (evolutionary dual form of the parasite).

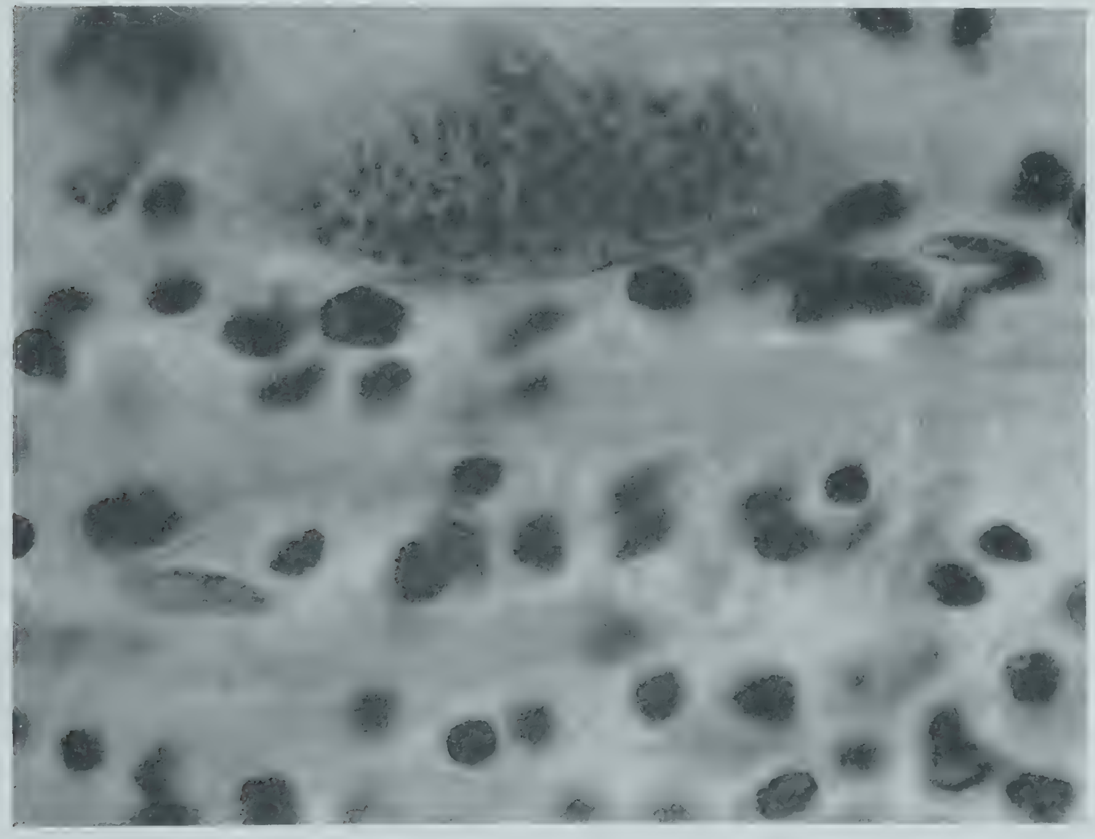


Fig. 51.—Group of leishmanial elements of *Trypanosoma cruzi* in the human heart.

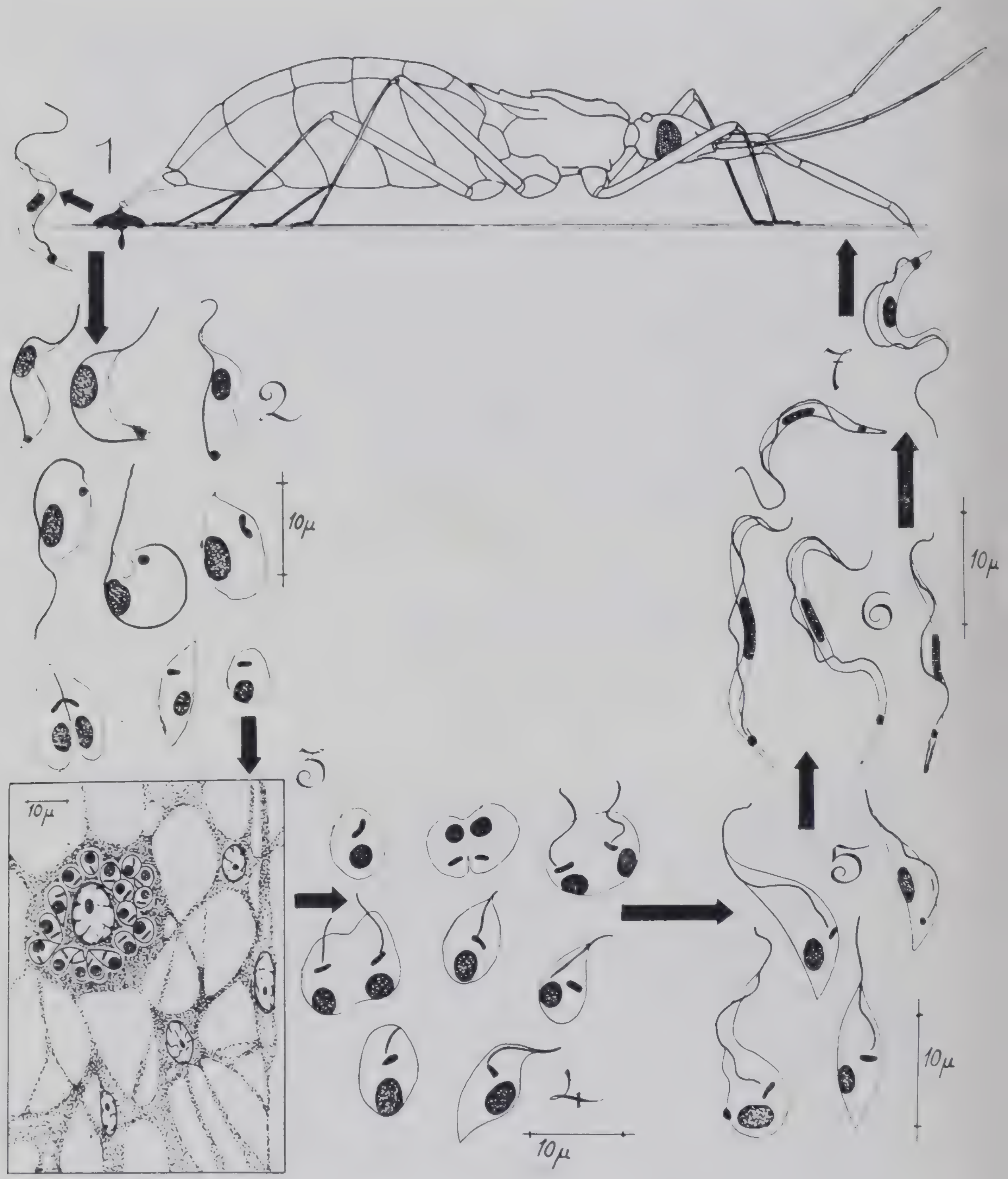


Fig. 52.—Diagrammatic representation of the cycle of development of *Trypanosoma cruzi* in animal and human infection: from bug to animal and from animal to bug (Triatominae). (After M.E.P.R.A.) (Original of Dr. M. E. Jörg.)

1, Penetration into animal by metacyclic trypanosomes from dejecta of vinchuca. *2*, Initial forms of development—dejecta of vinchuca injected intraperitoneally into newborn dog. Smear of exudate after 6 and 12 hours. Note the ameboid rounding-off and loss of flagellum, with transformation into leishmanioid elements. *3*, Leishmania forms in hypertrophic leucocytes, some showing enlargement of blepharoplastic pole. Histologic section of lymphatic gland of dog peritoneally injected. *4*, Developmental forms in parasitic foci of tissue. Smear of cardiac muscle (white rat), forty-fourth day of experimental infection. Crithidia forms derived from leishmania forms. *5*, Crithidia forms and leptomonas forms, precirculatory. Smear of diaphragmatic gland (newborn dog), dog inoculated peritoneally with dejecta of vinchuca, fortieth day of infection. *6*, Metacyclic precirculatory trypanosomes (exceptional in blood). Same material as 5. *7*, Infestation of vinchuca by trypanosomes sucked up in the circulating blood of the cutaneous capillaries.

intact skin, especially in the newborn and in infants. In contrast to infection with *Trypanosoma gambiense*, the cause of African sleeping sickness, which enters the human organism by *inoculation* of the trypanosome from the salivary glands of the tsetse fly, the vector, Chagas' disease is a result of *contamination* by excreta of the intermediary vector upon the mucous membranes, on the mucosa of the digestive system, or into the skin, through lesions produced by scratching.

The bite of the bug may also cause infection in the presence of moisture which aids the penetration of the trypanosomes from the dejecta deposited frequently by the triatoma while engorging blood or through regurgitation of the trypanosomes from the mid-gut to the pharynx and proboscis.

Moreover, infection may occur without intervention by the vector. It may take place through the placenta, or it may occur through the milk of the mother or the wet nurse if they harbor parasites in their blood; by transfusion of blood containing trypanosomes; by abrasions of the skin of the hands when skinning wild animals which are natural carriers of *T. cruzi* (cooks, taxidermists, armadillo hunters, etc.); through accidentally spurting blood into the eyes; through contact with the conjunctiva by infected fingers in laboratory personnel.

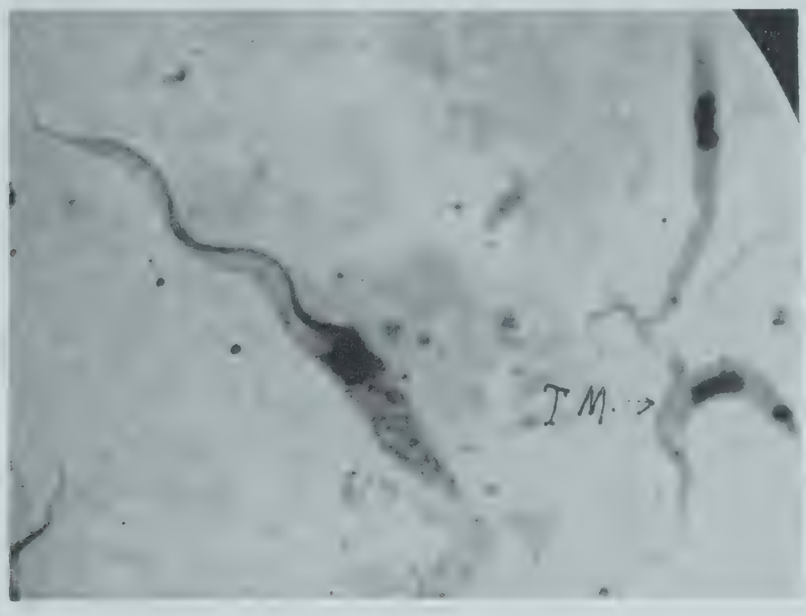


Fig. 53.—Ejecta of triatoma with crithidias and a "metacyclic" trypanosome (*TM*), *Trypanosoma cruzi.*

By using the excreta of infested transmitting bugs or the blood of mammals infected with *T. cruzi*, the parasites may be grown in artificial culture media containing rabbit blood, especially that of Novy, Neal, and Nicolle (NNN agar), Kelser, or Geiman. In these nutrient media, after five days, flagellates of crithidia and also the *leptomonas* type may be seen in the water of condensation. The latter is differentiated from the former by lack of the undulating membrane.

When the culture is inoculated into mammals, trypanosomes appear in the blood, and production of clusters of leishmanial forms takes place in the tissues, especially in smooth and striated muscle, just as when infected blood or infected triatomas are injected.

VECTORS

(See Chapter 55)

Natural Reservoirs of Trypanosoma Cruzi

Aside from dogs and cats, quite frequently the carriers of *T. cruzi* in homes infected with the trypanosome, there are numerous species of animals with natural infection.

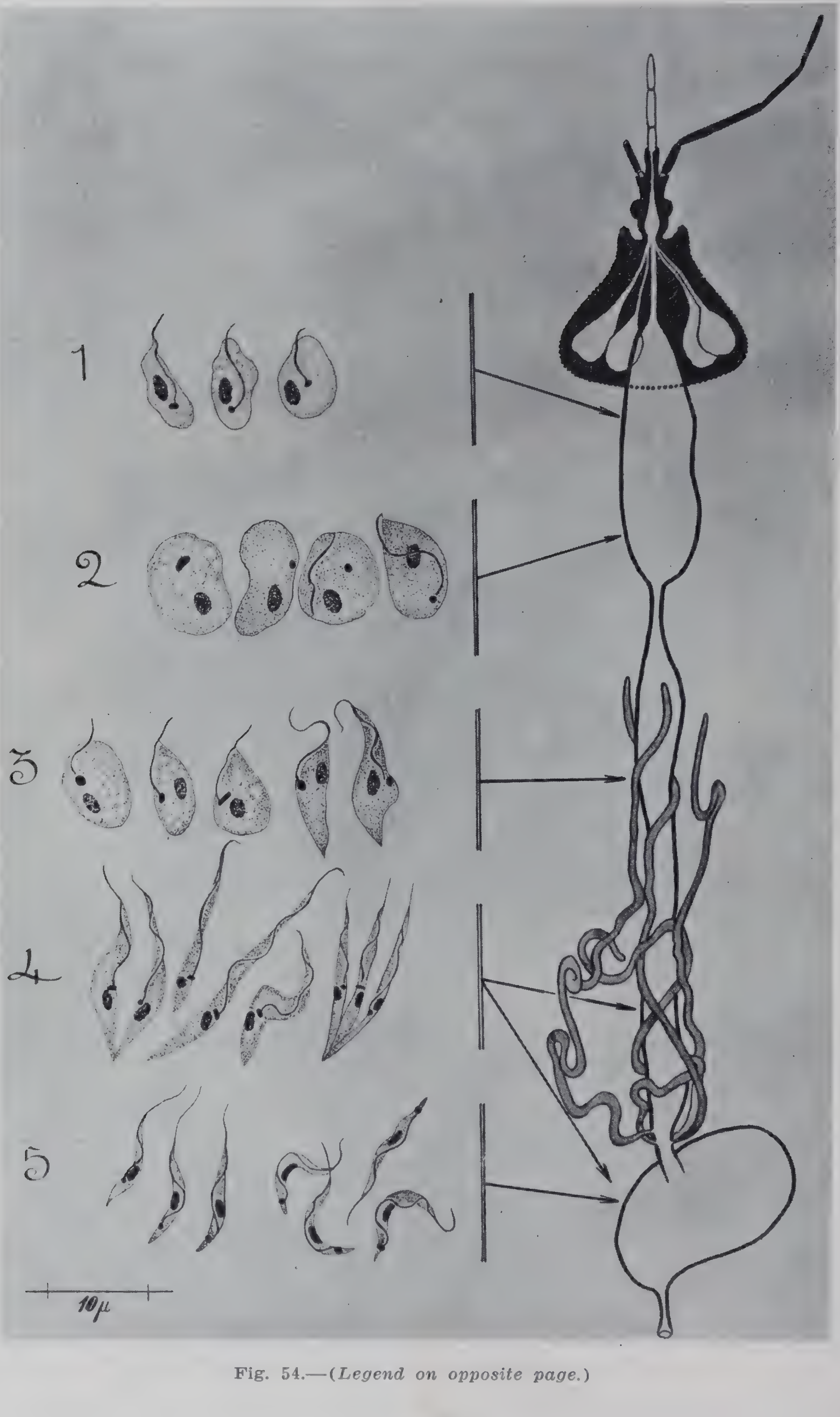


Fig. 54.—(*Legend on opposite page.*)

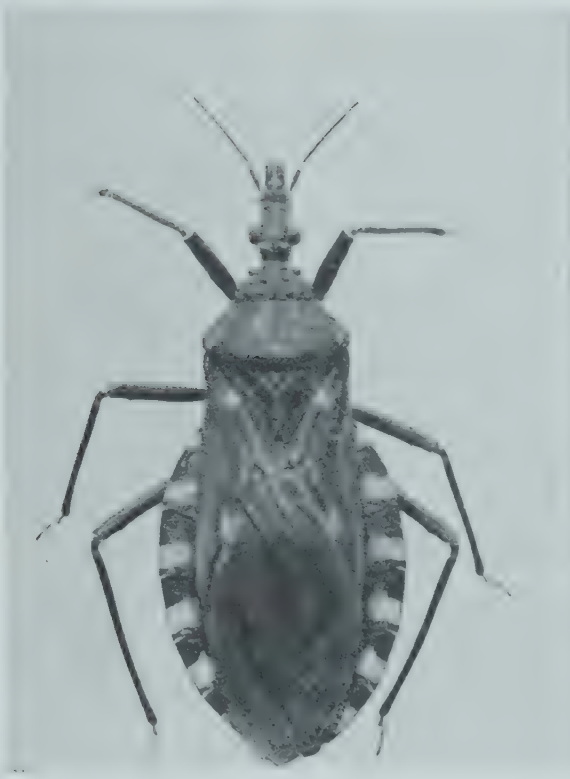


Fig. 55.

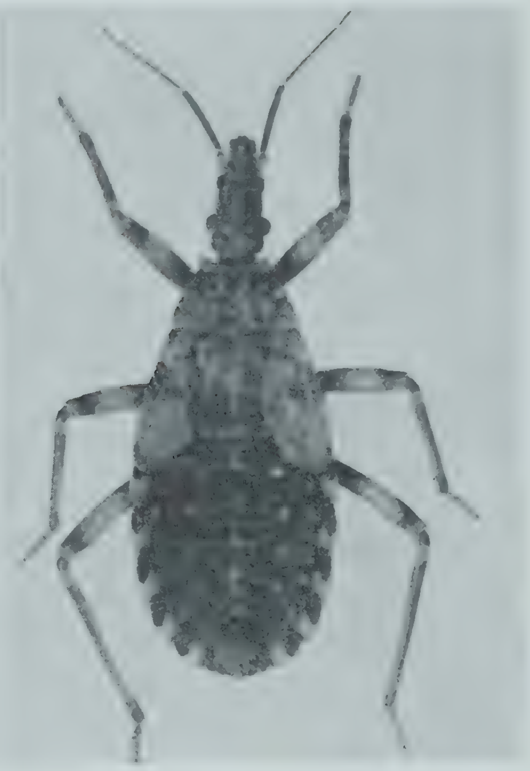


Fig. 56.

Fig. 55.—Imago of *Triatoma infestans* (approximately ×4.)

Fig. 56.—Apterous nymph (alares outlined) of *Triatoma infestans* (approximately ×7 or 8).

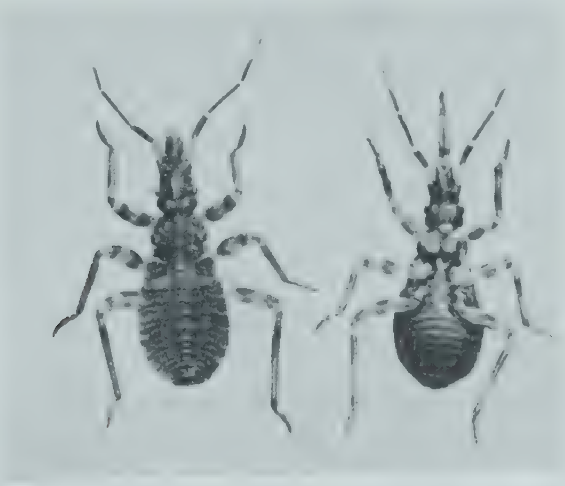


Fig. 57.—Larvae of *Triatoma infestans*, recently emerged (approximately ×12). At right, vental view with rostrum extended in position adopted by bug when ready to bite.

Fig. 54.—Evolution of *Trypanosoma cruzi* in the digestive tube of *Triatoma infestans*. (After M.E.P.R.A.) (Original of Dr. M. E. Jörg.)

1. Short, round forms, showing loss of usual shape and with retraction of the flagellum. In the ventricle, between 8 hours and 4 days after experimenal infestation.

2. Rounded forms with loss of flagellum and membrane, and with rudimentary membrane. In the posterior portion of the ventricle between 4 and 20 days after experimental infestation.

3. Progressive differentiation of crithidia forms from the rounded forms; appearance of membrane and a well-differentiated flagellum. In tubular portion of the mid-gut between 10 and 20 days after experimental infestation.

4. Progressive differentiation of crithidias in the terminal portion of the mid-gut. After 10 days of infestation.

5. Metacyclic trypanosomes in the rectal vesicle of the proctodaeum. Occasionally mixed with crithidias. Forms *2* and *3* usually present binary division.

The most common of these which have been proved in Argentina are as follows:

Edentatae:
- *Chaetophractus vellerosus vellerosus* (quirquinocho)
- *Chaetophractus villosus* (peludo)
- *Zaedyus pichycaurinus* (piche)
- *Dasypus novemcinctus* (tatu or mulita [nine-banded armadillo] of Paraguay)
- *Tolypeutes matacos* (quirquincho bola or matuco)

Marsupialia:
- *Didelphis paraguayensis* (comadreja overa) (brown weasel)
- *Lutreolina crassicandata paranalis* (comadreja colorada) (red weasel)

Canidae:
- *Pesudalopex culpeus culpeus* (red fox)

Mustelidae:
- *Grisonella huronax* (huron)

PATHOGENESIS AND PATHOLOGIC ANATOMY

Chagas' disease is a protozoan affection of purely an inflammatory type, and is not a disease entity of the reticuloendothelial system. The predominance of parasites within the cells of the reticuloendothelial system is due to their physical nature, since leishmanial and evolutionary forms of *T. cruzi* are large corpuscles, which strongly stimulate macrophagy of the reticuloendothelium. But this macrophagy always occurs toward the end of the inflammatory stage and not in the primary period.

The acute primary phase of Chagas' disease is transitory. It can be recognized by biopsy of the primary lesion (chagomas) in the skin or of neighboring adenopathy. There are foci of acute inflammation at the point of entry of the parasite, the infiltrations resembling furuncles or pyogenic phlegmon in its first stages.

At the point of the first ectodermic inflammatory focus (the portal of entry of the parasite), there occurs a lymphatic and hematogenous dissemination of the parasite. The presence of *T. cruzi* in the blood is only an *epiphenomenon* of Chagas' disease, since fundamentally this is a visceral disease, and the most important changes in the development of the protozoa occur in the tissues.

During the development of the primary ectodermic infection, the *chagoma of inoculation,* a typical acute inflammation, there occur two essential phases in this infectious focus:

1. Multiplication of the parasite, since the invaded animal body does not overcome the infection.

2. Lysis or disintegration of some of the parasites which succumb to the infection, reabsorption of substances derived from living parasites, and flooding of the body by parasites carried in the blood stream. Cytologically, the reactions of the body to the parasitic invasion are characterized by histiocytic hyperplasia, with or without the presence of parasites, in lymph glands, liver, and spleen.

The active multiplication of the parasites in the primary focus of infection is followed by early liberation into the blood stream. It may occur at the site of the chagoma or of the neighboring adenopathy. Finally, the primary inflammatory focus loses its reactive intensity, and there follows a regressive phase of reabsorption and cicatrization, and, by hematogenous dissemination, the attack of the trypanosomes against the tissues begins.

The parasites, freed from their primary fixation, migrate by means of the blood stream into the tissues. Here they attack in the manner of parasites in the primary infection. The tissue responds with an inflammatory reaction similar to the former. However, the exudative phase each time becomes shorter because of the formation, by the body, of macrophages, which serve to anchor and isolate the parasite, especially when it is large.

It may then be said for Chagas' disease in man that finding extensive histiocytic macrophagy of parasites, with such overwhelming evidence as gigantic cysts or multinucleated plasmodia, is simply the end of the focal inflammation, as a result of *endogenous reinfection* by *T. cruzi*. It is the stage preceding that of the cicatrix.

T. cruzi has the property of rapidly adopting the fertile leishmania form in fixed tissues. This parasitic form is probably more resistant than is the evolutionary flagellate form and may also present less antigenic capacity than the other.

It is for this reason that, with a combination of (1) histiocytic hyperplasia, (2) allergy, and (3) less antigenic capacity of the leishmania forms, there follows *inflammation of endogenous reinfection*, practically without leucocytic exudation.

The phenomena do not end with macrophagy, for, despite the fact that focal inflammatory reaction has ceased, parasites may again leave this focus to be disseminated throughout the body (the tissues have isolated these leishmanias by macrophagy, but the parasites evolve and finally escape the cyst), and the cycle is renewed, beginning with the first hematogenous flooding.

Because of this fact, in Chagas' disease a periodic division of morbid states may be made. The dual reactions, mechanism of infection and endogenous reinfection, differ fundamentally in the precise evolutionary movement of the disease process.

The primary infection is a very severe attack, multiple and simultaneous in many regions of the body, which accounts for the seriousness of the infection. In the second stage (chronic, according to Chagas), the attack is more scattered and there are successive phases, so that foci of infection do not exist simultaneously. In addition, although the cellular reactions are intense, they have a changed quality. The first inflammatory reactions are almost suppurative, intensely exudative, and necrotic (ulceration of the chagomas). The later inflammatory reactions are, on the other hand, more attenuated, with more evident proliferation. Special technics show that there is a greater specific parenchymatous injury than is true for the primary infection. We see a condition quite similar to that seen in syphilis; the later reactions are much less inflammatory than the primary or secondary, but the parenchymatous lesions are more serious.

At first, Chagas described a period which he called *acute*. He extended this period to include the stage of disappearance from the blood of all directly demonstrable trypanosomes. After this phase, according to Chagas, there followed another period, the *chronic period,* which lasts throughout the patient's life.

Chagas demonstrated *T. cruzi* in the blood by direct examination of fresh blood and believed that the acute stage of the disease existed for about one

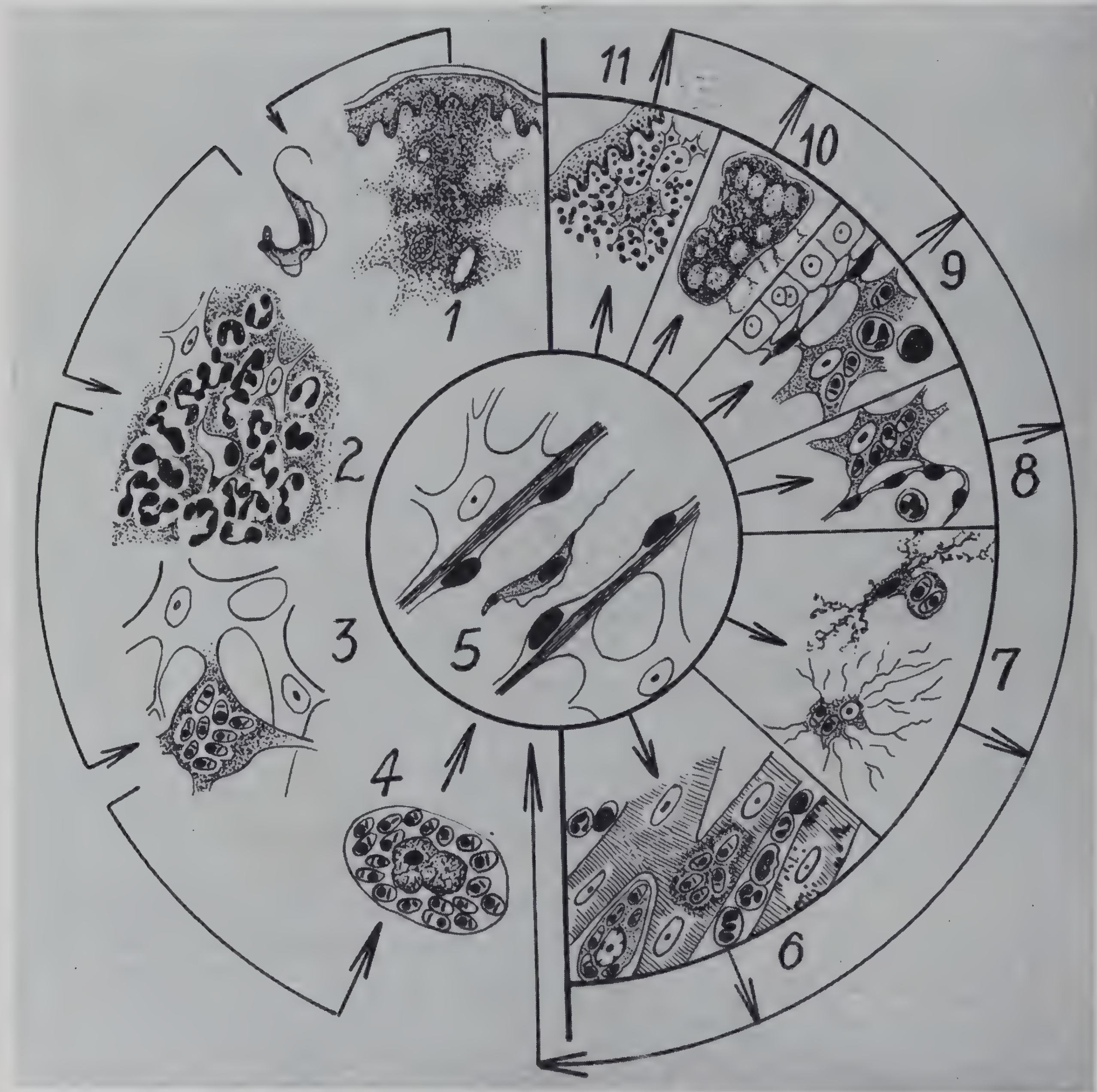


Fig. 58.—Cycle of *Trypanosoma cruzi* infection in human beings. (After Mazza and Jörg.) *1.* Inflammatory chagoma of inoculation. *2.* Local inoculation reaction, with polymorphonuclear exudate. *3.* Final period of inflammation, with macrophagy of leishmanias in reticular histiocytes. *4.* Formation of multinuclear (giant) plasmodia through confluence of histiocytes. *5.* Hematogenous dissemination. *6.* Attack on myocardium; parasites in interstitial and muscle fibers. *7.* Parasitic attack upon the nervous system; parasites in astroglia and in microglia. *8.* Parasitic attack upon the spleen. *9.* Parasitic invasion of the liver. *10,* Invasion of a gland, with systematic adenitis. *11,* Secondary mucocutaneous lesions due to parasitic dissemination and possibly to allergens.

1 and *4* represent reactions of primary infection and satellite adenopathy; *5* represents the hematic phase (hematogenous dissemination which is repeated periodically); *6* and *11* represent inflammatory attack upon the viscera and various tissues by *T. cruzi*, with the final phase of macrophagy.

month. However, he cited a case in which parasites were demonstrable in the blood for five months. The thick drop examination of the blood, method of Ross, as a laboratory procedure for the diagnosis of Chagas' disease, has enabled us to find trypanosomes in the circulation for seven to nine months or even longer. With this fact, the designation "acute stage" has lost its original meaning as generally understood in clinical practice.

Mazza and Jörg, in 1935, proposed calling the *primary period* or *primary stage* the period of time during which there are present external symptoms indicating the entry of the parasite (the designated *chagmoma of inoculation* or epiphenomenon "palpebral edema" which follows the already established chagasic infection or indicates, very exceptionally, entrance of the infection into the conjunctiva).

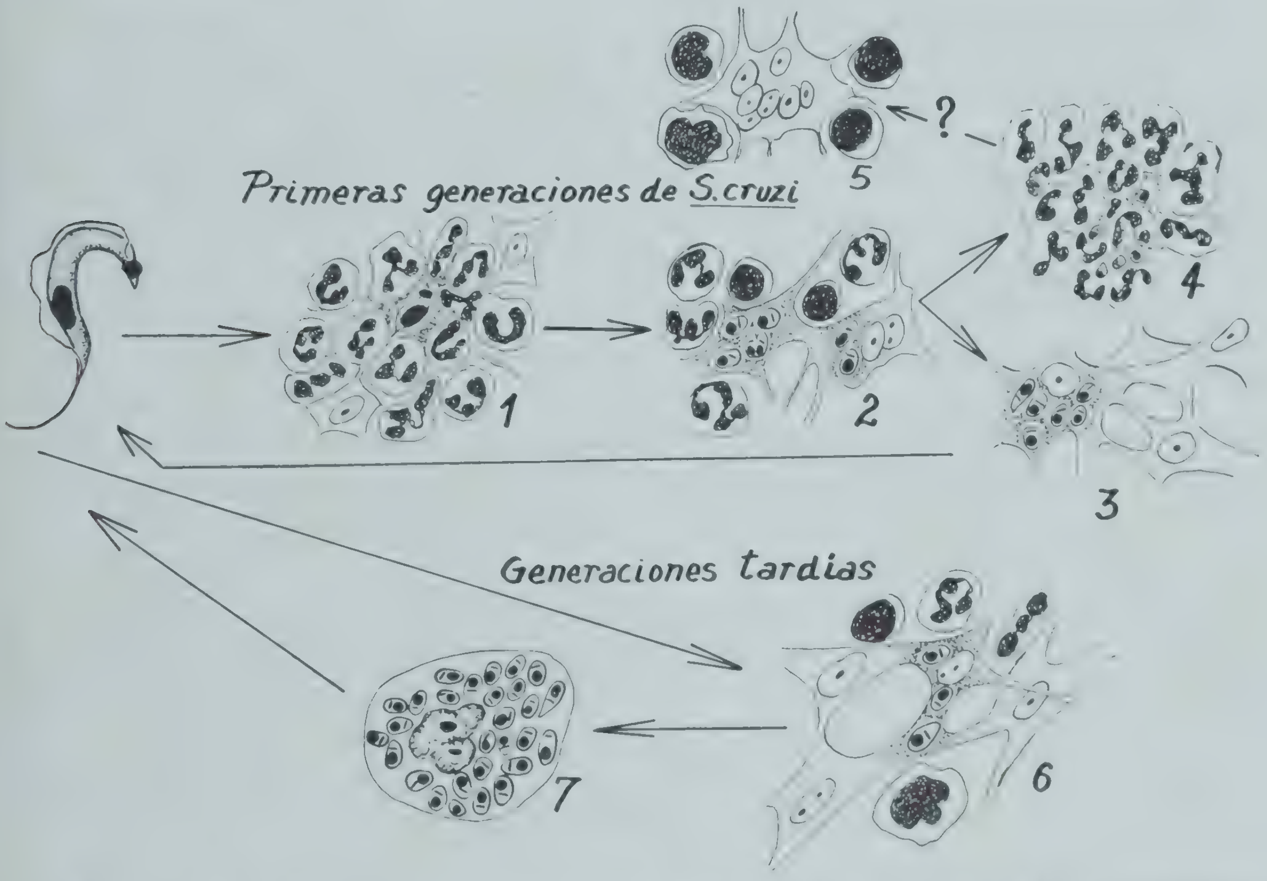


Fig. 59.—Differences between inflammatory reaction of primary infection and the successive reactions through endogenous reinfection. (After Mazza and Jörg.) (See Fig. 58.)

1, Inflammatory reaction in focus of primary infection, with much polymorphonuclear exudate. *2*, Macrophagy of leishmanias, scanty exudate persisting, occurs at the end of this inflammation. *3*, The inflammatory exudate having been reabsorbed, there is observed upon histologic examination only macrophagy of leishmanias in hyperplastic histiocytes, sometimes without other signs of inflammation. *4*, Acute inflammatory exudate is capable of destroying parasites, cytolysis existing at the same time. *5*, Products of cytolysis and parasitic destruction are capable of releasing allergens, histologically follicular giant cellular reactions, without parasites and without degeneration in the giant cells. *6*, In successive endogenous reinfection scarcely any inflammatory exudate is observed; there is, instead, early macrophagy through histiocytic hyperplasia and macrophagic stimulation. *7*, Appearance of multinuclear plasmodia, showing combined histiocytes and macrophagy.

In cases without appreciable external signs, the *primary period* comprises the entire time during which it is possible to demonstrate the parasites by means of simple microscopic examination of the blood. In the absence of trypanosomes, a rather common occurrence in affected adults, the first period is the time during which fever and tachycardia are present.

The *primary period* is characterized by chagoma of inoculation, neighboring adenitis, reactive local and general adenopathy, primary hematogenous dissemination, and primary parasitic entrance into the tissues.

When the local reaction of primary infection or primary localizaton (chagoma of inoculation or ophthalmoglandular complex) subsides, there appear allergic signs; the differential count and myocardial lesions are modified. The latter, primarily inflammatory, now become complicated with alterations in the contractile fibers. Thus the patient enters the *secondary period* or *secondary stage,* characterized by reinfection or by successive endogenous flooding of the system; this period is the so-called *"chronic"* disease of Carlos Chagas.

The *tertiary period* is understood to be that which is characterized by an intense fibrous reaction in the inflammatory foci. It is the period of myocardial fibrosis in adults, fibrous hepatitis, etc.

The most serious stage in Chagas' disease is the primary period, when the first hematogenous dissemination followed by visceral invasion occurs. The tissues are overwhelmed by an enormous number of trypanosomes, and for this reason inflammatory reactions easily interfere with vitally important functions, namely, the heart and neuraxis, or they may so alter the organic structure that the way is paved for later infection.

Thus, for example, cardiac dysfunction of the primary period is accompanied by passive circulatory pulmonary stasis and by an increased fibrinogen (since it is increased in the blood during this inflammatory stage). Moreover, endothelial lesions occur in the lung due to foci of trypanosomiasis, all of which, with fibrinogenesis and congestion, form a fertile field for the development of secondary infection, generally bronchopneumonic. This is the secondary cause of death, most frequently seen in children.

In the *primary period,* lesions of the central nervous system may lead to a serious meningitis. Since specific inflamed tissues are subject to infection, it follows that bacterial meningitis, secondary to chagasic neuraxitis from the pathogenic point of view, is a definite possibility.

In the *secondary period,* there are to be distinguished two fundamental forms of myocarditis, the dominant visceral lesion in the anatomicopathologic picture in all fatal cases following primary infection. These are:

1. The early sclerotic form with a picture of progressive myocardial fibrosis, with very characteristic morphology.
2. The early infiltrative form, insidious in its development, with rhythmic discharge of parasites into the circulation, an anatomicopathologic complex, in which are mixed inflammatory foci and extensions, allergy, secondary degeneration of contractile fibers, and moderate sclerosis, generally reticular.

THE CONJUNCTIVA IN CHAGAS' DISEASE IN FORMS WITH OPHTHALMOGLANDULAR COMPLEX

Acute primary conjunctivitis caused by *T. cruzi* is a rare complication. In much conjunctival biopsy material removed from patients with the ophthalmoglandular complex, only a very small number of positives have been found. In these cases there were large numbers of leishmanias beneath the necrotic-erosive zone of epithelium. Polymorphonuclear infiltration was very dense and formed a layer in close contact with the epithelium but did not deeply invade the chorioid.

In much of the biopsy material, *secondary conjunctivitis* predominated, or, better, *secondary inflammatory conjunctival reaction* of chagasic origin. It is not of primary exogenous origin; it is endogenous and is produced by spreading or extension of the neighboring inflammation. Cellulitis spread by superficial lymphangitis was found in most of the cases, or there was lymphangitis or direct spread of deep inflammation arising from Tenon's capsule or from the cellular orbital tissue.

Lesions most commonly found are edema of conjunctiva and chorioid and capillary and venous global congestion. Extravasation of blood is infrequent.

The most important lesion is a subepithelial infiltration with lymphangitis Infiltration consists of plasmocytes exclusively or a few lymphocytes.

In a small number of cases, the infiltration, alone or with a concomitant histiocytic hyperplasia, forms nodules which are always subepithelial. In somewhat more than half the cases are found foci of intense, histiocytic proliferation. In a fourth of all conjunctivas histologically examined there were found, within the foci of infiltration, giant cells (histiocytic plasmodia). Almost invariably their presence coincided with the presence of leishmanias, although these generally are not contained within these polykaryocytes.

In a certain number of cases the subepithelial lesions are the most recent and present less of an exudative character than those more deeply situated. In these cases it is possible to establish that the lesion has advanced from the base to the surface. Within the depth there are frequently found gigantic cellular follicles and leishmanias, whereas near the surface there is scarcely to be seen a moderate plasmocytic or lymphoplasmocytic infiltration.

These cases demonstrate clearly that here is secondary inflammatory conjunctival reaction, coming from within toward the surface.

GLANDULAR FORMS

Lymphatic Glands.—Anatomicopathologic examination of lymphatic glands extirpated from patients at different periods of Chagas' disease has enabled Mazza and Jörg to define three fundamental types of glandular lesion, designated as Types I, II, and III.

Type I, hereafter referred to as *acute chagasic adenitis*, is the most typical and specific of the glandular lesions and is characterized by acute microabscesses, necrosis, and the presence of many leishmania forms. This form of adenitis individualizes the glandular reaction to the manifestations of evident cutaneous portal of entry (chagoma of inoculation), narrows it to cutaneous primary localization in cases in which the portal of infection cannot be seen or where there is no inflammatory manifestation, and, finally, it limits it to primary lymphatic fixation in the septicemic period of Chagas' disease without previous adenitic lesions.

With the clinical regional polyadenopathy around the focus of *cutaneous primary infection* or *primary localization* (for example, facial cellulitis with its characteristic one-sided bipalpebral edema of the face), there is always found a gland with inflammatory reaction: its size and the surrounding inflammation dominate other affected glands in that zone.

Histologic study of glands of this character permit their classification as acute adenitis. Because of their resemblance to the dominant gland in neighboring adenopathy found in syphilitic chancre (''prefect'' gland of Ricard), Mazza and Jörg have designated it ''prefect'' gland of *primary chagasic adenopathy.*

It can be recognized by the deeply modified and totally obliterated glandular structure. Lymphangitis and periadenitis are always found. The cortical zone of the gland is most deeply modified. Follicular disposition is always obscure. The subcapsular lymphatic sinuses and primary perifollicular vessels are dilated and filled with the densest histiocytic proliferation. The cortical follicles are masked by proliferation and infiltration or are indistinct. They are very hyperplastic.

The medullary portion is always indistinct and is transformed into monomorphous inflammatory tissue or is sclerosed.

The glands can no longer be recognized as such, the tissue being changed into dense mottled, cellular residue, in which histiocytic proliferation is always most intense; it is compact, or inserted sporadically among the remaining lymphatics, or nodules or bands may be formed.

Apart from this, there exist foci of polymorphonuclear infiltration that show a true, acute, inflammatory aspect, phlegmonous or furunculoid, always localized in the cortical layer, with multifocal necrosis of toxic character. Around these foci there is observed hemorrhage, with erythrophagy.

This acute glandular inflammation is due to the great numbers of leishmanias of *T. cruzi* present.

Around the ''prefect'' gland with acute adenitis of Type I, there is frequently found a group of glands, enlarged, inflammatory, but with more attenuated manifestations than in the former case. Anatomically and clinically, this is primary systematic regional adenopathy or gland lesion **Type II** of Mazza and Jörg (1938).

In these glands, the division between the cortical and medullary layers is definite, although the structure is profoundly altered. In the cortical layer, the follicles are much enlarged, due to histiocytic hyperplasia which forms a clear center. Around these, there are other, newly formed nodules, of the same structure, which thus fill the cortical layer, in which appear bands and irregular masses of densely grouped histiocytes; their growth displaces and separates the original lymphatic glandular tissue.

The lymphatic sinuses of these glands are filled with dense cellular histiocytic proliferation analogous to the newly formed nodules in the cortical layer. In a small number of these glands there are polymorphonuclear foci, with small zones of necrosis, containing leishmanias.

This is the lesion of *attenuated chagasic adenitis,* with a high degree of intrafollicular histiocytic hyperplasia. It is intrasinusal and corticonodular.

When this histiocytosis, sinusal or in bands, is very greatly disseminated, it may reach the point of reproducing classical *adenitis with clear areas* as a residuum of the postinflammatory hyperplastic state of the gland. This is **Type III** of Mazza and Jörg, which these authors later designated as *generalized secondary polyadenopathy.* This appears simultaneously with or following regional adenopathy in relation to lesions of mucocutaneous primary infection or primary localization. It corresponds to macropolyadenopathy, characteristic of the tertiary form of Chagas' disease.

These lesions are absolutely nonspecific and are found in glands removed from various regions of the body. They are simple reactive cellular hyperplasias with intense histiocytosis in sinusal and follicular "epithelioid" cells.

Lacrimal and Salivary Glands.—These are often affected. *Chagasic dacryoadenitis* of the lacrimal gland, studied at biopsy of the palpebral prolongation of the orbital gland, is composed of zones of glandular parenchyma, with scant infiltration, surrounded by a large inflammatory zone which separates and destroys glandular tissue. There are acute inflammatory granulomas with marked histiocytic pattern, with a predominantly lymphocytic infiltration within them, the confluence of histiocytes forming multinuclear plasmodia.

The second type, preferably studied in parotids with accompanying gland biopsy, is a lesion carried through the lymphatics or by direct progression. There almost always exists a large inflammatory focus, poorly defined, surrounded by an unaltered gland. In the midst of this there are found leishmanias in reduced numbers, as in the lacrimal gland.

The *chagasic sialoadenitic lesion* is not the same as a bacterial lesion, since only the cortical part is involved, the center of the gland remaining undamaged. This lesion also differs from tuberculous sialoadenitis by reason of the existence of polymorphonuclear leucocytic inflammatory elements, by the absence of caseation, by the presence of histiocytic follicles surrounding the giant cells, and, finally, by the presence of leishmanias.

Skeletomuscular.—*Acute parasitic myositis of Chagas' disease,* while frequent in animals, is nevertheless rather difficult to verify in man. In biopsy of muscle in the first period of Chagas' disease, there have been found, rather regularly, foci of necrotic myositis. In this are seen fibers infiltrated at times with polymorphonuclear cells, at times with lymphocytes and plasmocytes, exceptionally with giant cells, in the midst of healthy muscle tissue. The invaded muscle segment undergoes necrosis or shows fragmentation. These foci correspond to foci or zones of residual infiltration, this in turn corresponding to primary parasitic myositis.

Even though the muscle biopsy (punch biopsy) does not, from the viewpoint of parasitology, constitute definite diagnostic proof, it does form a basis for a valuable anatomicopathologic estimate for recognition of the nature of the disease, since there are no other affections which form such limited foci of monocellular alteration.

In fatal cases, the dominant lesion is cardiac. There is acute myocarditis localized immediately below the epicardium, becoming attenuated as it advances toward the endocardium. The epicardium, intensely infiltrated, in some cases shows fibrinous villosities. There is always a small quantity of fluid in the pericardium indicative of acute inflammation. The endocardium, although less affected, shows inflammatory foci which reach the muscular spindles. At times the conduction system is also affected.

Lesions of cardiac fibers, as such, vary as much in intensity as in other characteristics. However, in clear cases of pure chagasic deaths, there exist regressive alterations in muscular fibers, sometimes in the form of very extensive simple inflammatory atrophy, sometimes in more varied degeneration: waxy, grumous, or hyaline.

In fatal Chagas' disease of long duration (ten to twenty years), the dominant lesion has always been cardiac and with the same subepicardial localization as in the acute fatal cases. There is observed, in these cases, fibrinous epicarditis and simple endocarditis, with greater intensity and greater sclerosis than are seen in the first period.

In such cases the inflammatory lesion of the myocardium develops all the lesions observed in the "first period" deaths; there are foci at all ages and in the most varied phases of evolution. Besides acute infiltration, there are found giant-cell foci and zones of sclerosis, which indicate that chronic myocarditis is present, with alternating acute changes, or foci of acute inflammation. Many of these foci resemble forms found in other chronic infectious diseases.

There exist, too, lesions of the muscle cells, sometimes in the form of granulogrumous myomalacia, with invasion of macrophages, sometimes in the form of degenerative lesions of the striated fibers.

The special characteristic of these cases is the periodic renewal of acuteness of the affection; we are dealing with an inflammation with perpetual renewal, insidiously undermining the myocardium, with localized regressive, irreparable alterations. These patients have an acute myocarditis that increases in severity until death occurs.

Hepatic lesions are variable. There is frequently steatosis (yellow liver, similar to that of yellow fever) and nodular foci of histiocytosis, often with leishmanias (Mazza and Jörg). This last type of lesion prompted Mazza to search for it by hepatic viscerotomy in cases of sudden death, especially in infants.

Acute splenitis with incipient fibrosis is the most characteristic lesion of the spleen, as is histiocytic proliferation of the germinal centers of the Malpighian follicles in relation to glandular lesions which we have designated as **Type III.**

Changes in the brain are focal corticoencephalitis with proliferation of larger cells and perivascular infiltration and proliferation, neighboring inflammatory changes, perineuronal, acute meningochoroiditis, especially in cases of toxic impregnation of the neuraxis, and neuraxitis without demonstrable parasites in the nervous tissue.

Lesions of *meningochoroido-corticoencephalitis* are much the same as lesions of encephalitis in trypanosomiasis africana. But lesions of chagasic corticoencephalitis are more frequent, with many parasites present (leishmanias). In the vascular endothelium of venules and in perivascular cells, leishmania forms are found (Mazza and Jörg). These are also present in nodules in the midst of nervous tissue. In these nodular formations, microglia cells, as well as leucocytes, intervene.

As for *chagomas of inoculation,* tumor-like lesions from the cutaneous entry of chagasic infection, these present histologically characters of most intense, erosive pseudoulcerous dermoepidermitis with hypodermic *cytosteatonecrosis.*

Metastatic chagomas, appearing in the neighborhood of the chagomas of inoculation, as if there existed a multicentric process of cutaneous tumor-like manifestations, are located in the skin, with *inflammatory cytosteatonecrosis of* subcutaneous cellular tissue.

Hematogenous chagomas are of the nature of cellulitis or dermatic hypodermatitis of hematogenous origin with different apearance in respect to tumor-like phenomena of inoculation. These chagomas, histologically, show cellulitis with *cytosteatonecrosis.* Extension of the inflammatory lesions to the dermis is slight. One variety of these chagomas is the *lipochagoma* (Mazza-Freire), which is a localization of the trypanosomic inflammation in the adipose tissue of the cheeks. In these cases, the profound cellulitis, of hematogenous character, is histologically always inflammatory cytosteatonecrosis.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY AND CLINICAL FORMS OF THE PRIMARY PERIOD OR FIRST STAGE OF THE DISEASE

In the first stage, or primary period, Chagas' disease may or may not present external signs. The most common external manifestations are as follows:

1. Chagomas of Inoculation (Mazza); also called Cutaneous-Glandular Complex (G. and R. Basso)

These may occur in any part of the body, but they are seen most frequently about the head and face, especially the forehead, the neck, the cheeks, and the lip. They are characterized by plaques of peculiar pasteboard-like hardening of the skin, not pliable, generally hot and red, which appear as if etched into the skin. When formed in the abdominal wall and thighs, these chagomas may assume large proportions. They then cause hard, "ligneous" infiltration, which makes it impossible to bend the lower limbs. They cause great pain. There is generally multiple adenopathy with one very large gland predominating. There is an elevation of temperature, usually high in infants. A sign of major diagnostic importance is tachycardia out of all proportion to the fever; and fever may even be absent. General malaise, exhaustion, osteomuscular pains, and sometimes epistaxis and chills, together with insomnia and restlessness, and, in nursing children, continuous crying, may occur either simultaneously or successively as manifestations of the *chagoma of inoculation.*

The so-called "chagomic zone" is generally surrounded by a wide, hard, elastic edema which does not pit on pressure.

In the center of this "ligneous" area there may be a reddish, hemorrhagic point with rose-colored margins. The erysipeloid outer surface of the chagoma generally shows a thin, furfuraceous desquamation.

With infants up to 1 year of age, demonstration of *T. cruzi* in the blood offers no difficulties and assures the diagnosis. In older children, adolescents, and adults, finding the trypanosomes by microscopic examination is more difficult and requires repeated periodic examinations for several days.

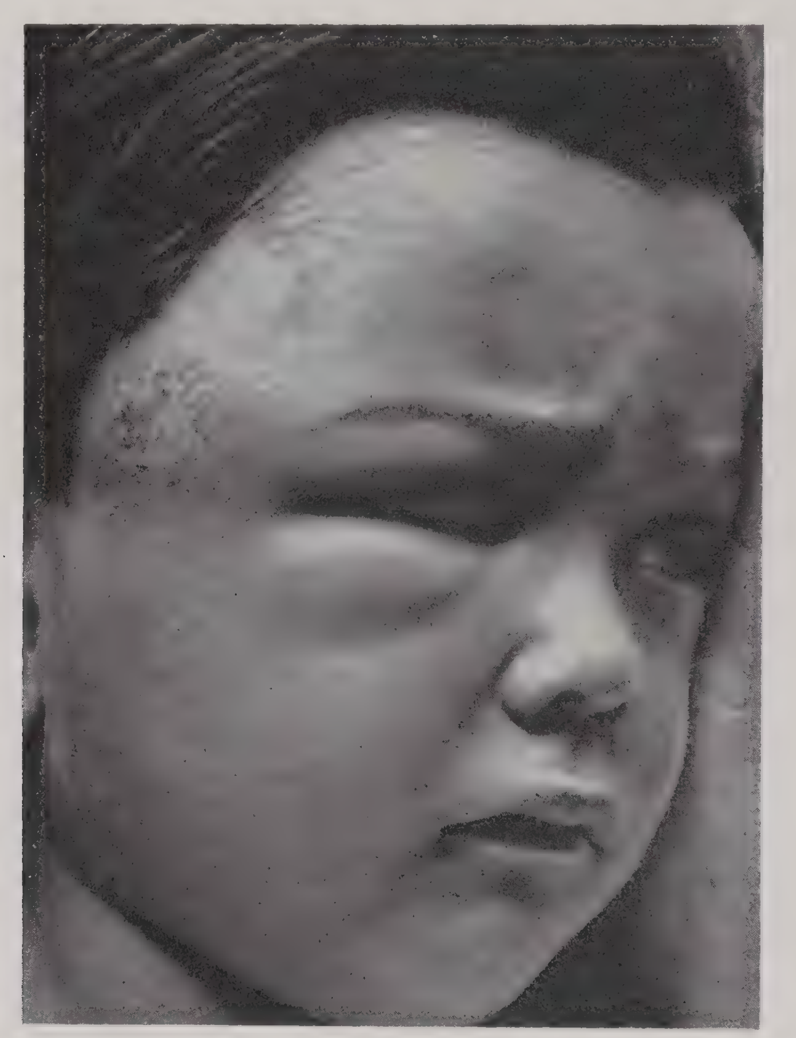


Fig. 60.—Right temporal *chagoma of inoculation* with edema of both eyelids and the corresponding half of the face; tenth day of development.

If the examination of the blood gives negative results, and if splenomegaly and more constantly hepatomegaly, are present, as well as definite signs of myocarditis as seen in the cardiac shadow upon teleroentgenography, especially of the left ventricle, with disappearance of the first sound in the mitral area and intermittent pulse, one should resort to other diagnostic measures, such as *xenodiagnosis* and *inoculation of blood* into white rats. Both procedures, however, require a minimum of twelve to twenty-five days before definite results become available.

In difficult cases the differential count aids greatly in the diagnosis, especially when there is a high *monocytosis* in children, or a very high *lympho-*

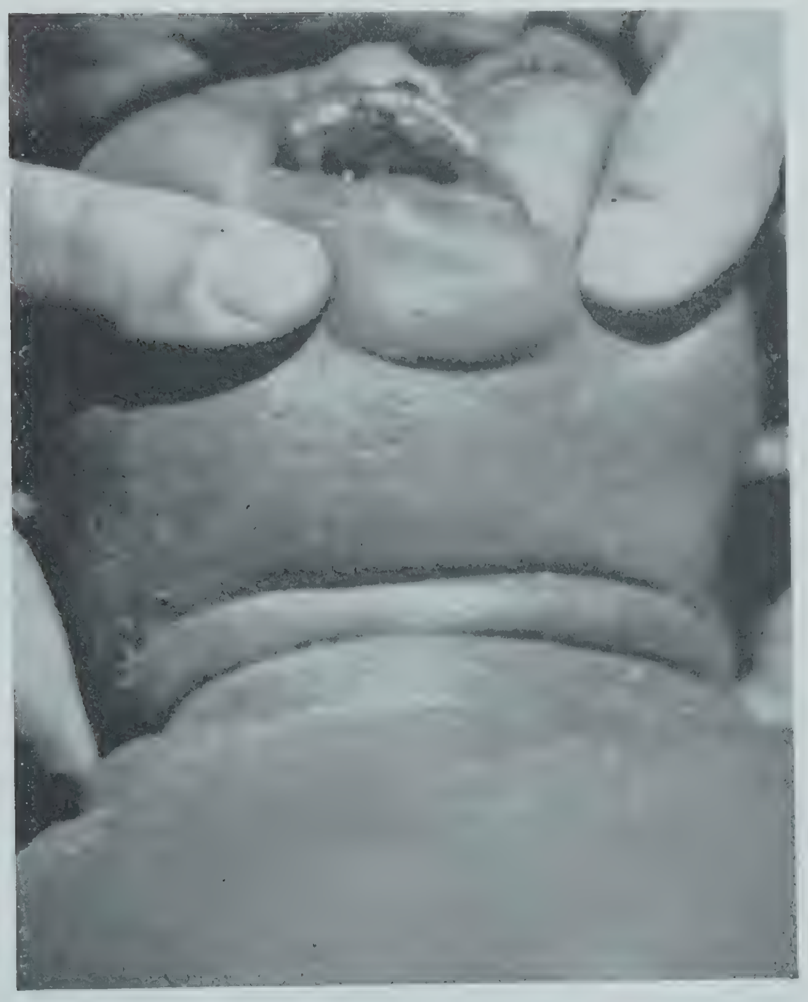


Fig. 61.—Chagoma of inoculation in the neck of a 6-month-old child; sixth day of development.

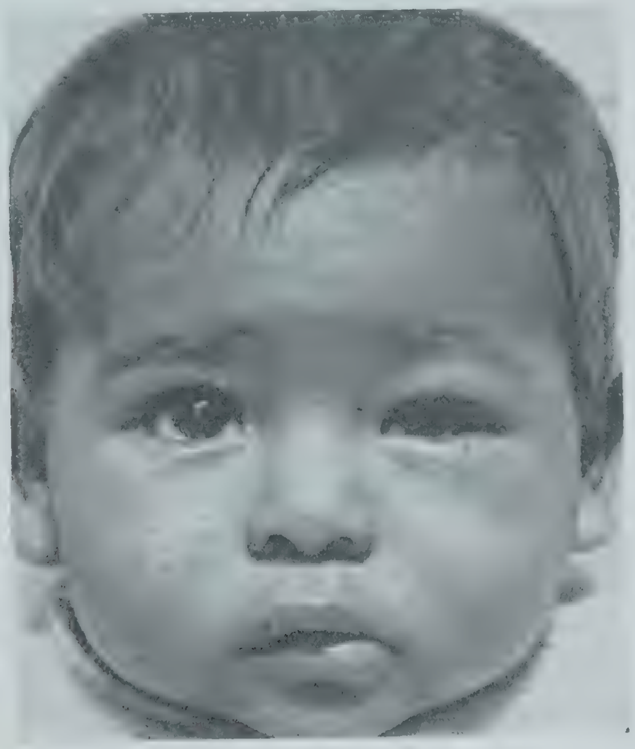


Fig. 62.—Edema of left eyelids (ophthalmoglandular complex) in the patient shown in Fig. 61 in the sixth day of the chagoma of inoculation. Shows absence of conjunctival contamination.

cytosis at other ages, accompanied by a more or less marked eosinophilia. This may occur in the first stage or primary period.

The chagoma of inoculation, if left alone, progressively disappears, usually in two or three months. Brown pigmentation, which persists at the site of the lesion, is most characteristic. There is atrophic retraction of the skin, the latter remaining adherent to the deeper planes of the chagoma, as if fixed by fibrous bands, due to disappearance of the underlying fatty tissue, and even of the smooth and striated muscles. This effect is more perceptible when the chagoma is localized in the cheeks, for, when Bichat's pad, because of its contiguity, is involved, it gives rise to *genial lipochagoma* (Mazza and Freire) of the affected side. The consequent cytosteatonecrosis causes a fibrous, retractile formation of the lipophagic granuloma. In hairy areas, alopecia is observed after the disappearance of the chagoma.

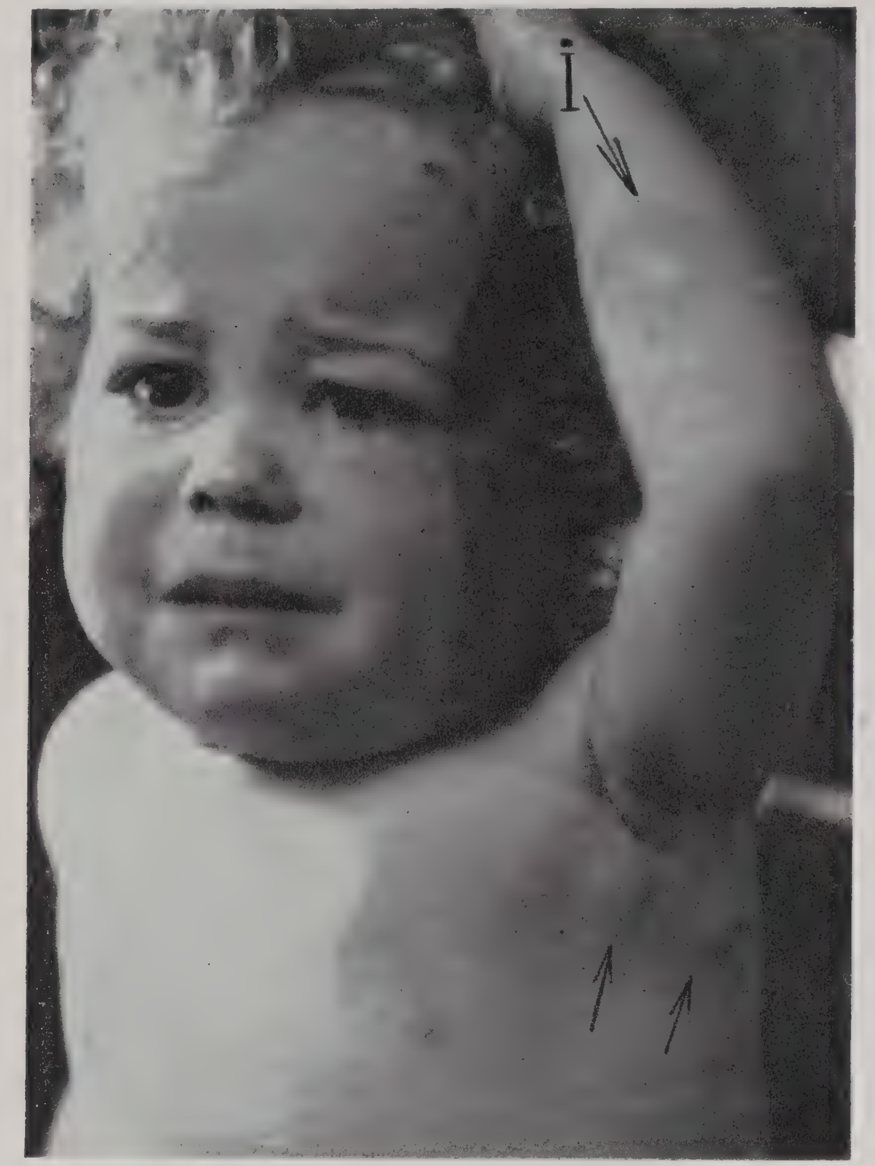


Fig. 63.—Left antebrachial chagoma of inoculation, *I*, and metastatic chagomas in left axilla (*arrows*).

By metastasis, the fatty pad of Bichat may be invaded on the side opposite the infected area.

These *metastatic chagomas* appear also in regions that are more or less symmetrical with those of the chagomas of inoculation, and they, too, undergo necrosis and formation of scabs. They may also be seen in cases which had previously shown an apparently initial ophthalmoglandular complex.

But the important chagomas are those which we have designated as *hematogenous*. They occur in patients without any previous outside portal of entry of infection. They have a characteristic appearance especially in infants. They are consistent, hard formations, which can be palpated under the skin by skin compression, in some cases without change in color, or in other cases revealing erythematous zones, characteristically indurated, so that these areas are very tough, with loss of cutaneous pliability.

These hematogenous chagomas generally disappear, leaving no effects of a permanent nature other than damage to that part of the skin where they were situated. They may become soft and form abscesses, giving the clinical impression of a septicopyemic state. The abscesses may be located symmetrically.

The chagoma of inoculation may run another course; namely, that of ulceration. In such cases, the lesion is covered with melicerous crusts or scabs which, when removed, reveal a granular surface that bleeds slightly, displaying a marked analogy to the lesions of cutaneous leishmaniasis.

These ulcerations generally heal in a short time even without treatment, leaving, after two or three months, cicatrices which, though appreciably small, are definite in size and usually hyperpigmented.

2. Unilateral Palpebral Edema: Ophthalmoglandular Complex (G. and R. Basso); Palpebrofacial Cellulitis (Mazza and Jörg)

This is a frequent manifestation, attributed by some to entry of infection into the conjunctiva. However, it often occurs in individuals with previous general infection of several days' duration; it may also follow trauma of the orbital region (fisticuffs). In many cases, edema of the eyelids is due to chagoma of inoculation in this region, at the base of the nose, or in neighboring areas, and this cutaneous inoculation does not apppear immediately.

Again, there is the question of edema of both eyelids, which, in general, arises suddenly and is usually noticed by the patient on awakening in the morning. In this condition, there is a violet-red or livid coloration of the ocular adnexa. The edema is usually very firm and does not yield to pressure; it advances rapidly toward the cheek, the base of the nose, and the temporal region and extends to the neck and down to the supraclavicular fossa.

Generally it is not painful, even on pressure, but it may be hot; the skin over the eyelids usually shows a furfuraceous desquamation.

The preauricular or pretragal gland of the affected side is usually swollen to a noticeable degree. It may be as large as a pigeon's egg or an olive, with or without periadenitis, frequently accompanied by minor neighboring adenopathy. These glandular enlargements are particularly noticeable in the submaxillary or parotid regions. This, with the edema, considerably alters the appearance of this area.

The conjunctiva of the affected sides remains unaffected in certain cases; in others, there is intense injection and edema, chemosis, and marked epiphora. Suppuration seldom occurs. Empirical medication is of no avail. Generally, seromucous secretion glues the eyelashes together. In well-established cases where the conjunctiva resembles that of Parinaud's conjunctivitis, granulation changes and inflammatory products can be noticed in both lids, especially the lower.

The lacrimal sac may, in certain cases, suppurate and give the appearance of dacryocystitis, but only in Chagas' disease is it accompanied by fever, general exhaustion, especially by tachycardia, which may occur even without fever.

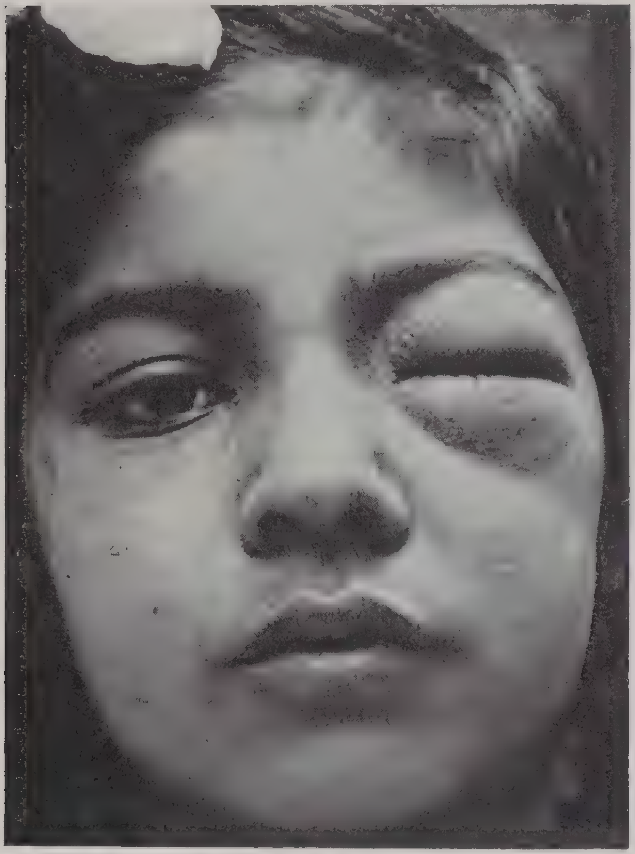


Fig. 64.

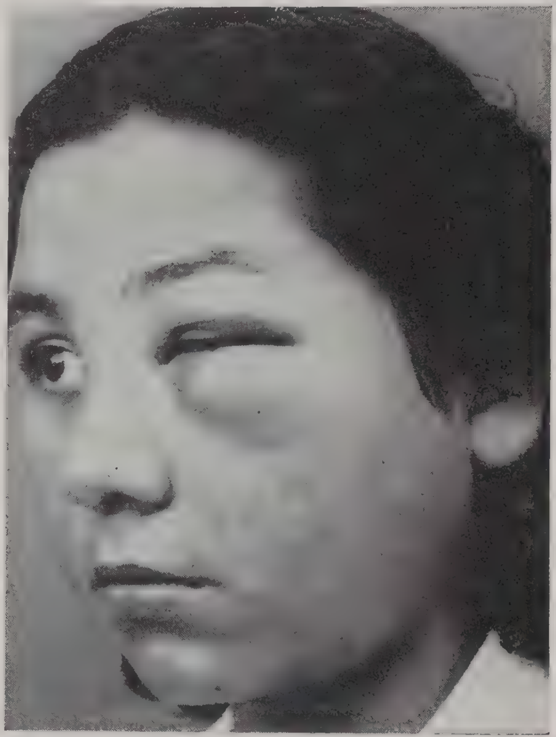


Fig. 65.

Fig. 64.—Left ophthalmoglandular syndrome or complex, thirteenth day of development (front view).

Fig. 65.—Chagoma of inoculation in the cheek, giving an impression of left ophthalmoglandular syndrome. This is a very common pseudopalpebroglandular complex. This complex is rarely observed in its pure form.

This last symptom, which denotes myocardial affection, is the most important differential point by which to distinguish true Chagas' disease from various common conditions which may simulate it. In very young children, this symptom, with bronchitis and a very severe diarrhea, is very frequently found.

Exophthalmia usually occurs in conjunction with unilateral and erythrochromic edema of the eyelids, with or without deviation of the eyeball. This is very pronounced in some cases, not reducible because of the orbital cellulitis, clearly showing its endogenous origin.

In untreated patients, *palpebral edema,* like exophthalmia, may persist for four or even seven months.

Another valuable and striking symptom, especially in patients with a preexisting ophthalmoglandular syndrome, is *dacryoadenitis chagasica* (Mazza and Benítez)—a point to be remembered in summing up the diagnosis. We have designated this as hyperplasia and congestion of the palpebral or accessory lacrimal gland. It may be determined by elevating the external part of the upper eyelid with the fingers and having the patient look downward and inward.

This symptom of dacryoadenitis chagasica is slow to disappear, and often persists after the palpebrofacial edema and other signs present in the secondary conjunctival reaction have subsided.

At times the unilateral edema of the eyelids shifts to the opposite side; more rarely it may exist simultaneously in both eyes.

At any rate, in the absence of albuminuria in these last cases, bilateral and other diffused pretragal or submaxillary adenopathy, as well as tachycardia, hepatosplenomegaly, and great exhaustion, accompanied by somnolence, and, in infants, by signs of meningeal irritation, offer clinical evidence in the diagnosis of Chagas' infection.

3. Schizotrypanides

This refers to skin manifestations of chagasic origin, so designated because of their analogy to trypanides of sleeping sickness or trypanosomiasis africana. In Chagas' disease there are different types:

(a) *Morbilliform,* not accompanied by the same essential signs of genuine measles. It does not spread to the face. There are no high temperatures. It is not contagious for other children. Koplik's spots are absent. Patients who have had measles may be affected, and the sickness may appear at other than epidemic periods.

(b) *Urticariform,* generally not pruriginous, followed by persisting zones of brown hyperpigmentation.

(c) *Multiform erythematous,* the outbreaks of various size, located preferably on the anterior surfaces of the thorax and thighs, rarely diffuse.

(d) *Ulceration,* which may appear late.

All of these schizotrypanides may follow manifestations of this infection, such as chagomas or the ophthalmoglandular complex, or they may be followed by these last-named symptoms. They cause elevations of temperature at the time of eruption, and may persist for several days, disappearing finally without complications.

4. Localized Edema, Anasarca

This edema is very firm, elastic, without crepitation, frequently following chagomas of inoculation or the ophthalmoglandular complex. It localizes in the legs and feet, sometimes ascending to the pubic and lower abdominal regions. The face usually remains swollen, due to the fact that edema of the eyelids, which was originally unilateral, now spreads. Finally, anasarca may follow these original manifestations.

But these edematous symptoms may also be found often without preceding phenomena or apparent signs of infection, apparently arising from some unknown point of entry.

Among the most frequent of these primary edematous manifestations may be mentioned edema of the scrotum, common in male infants, edema of the pubis and lower abdomen in female infants, areas of edema in both legs and thighs, edema which we have designated "grotesque" because of its appearance in midbody or in one limb only, or on the forehead.

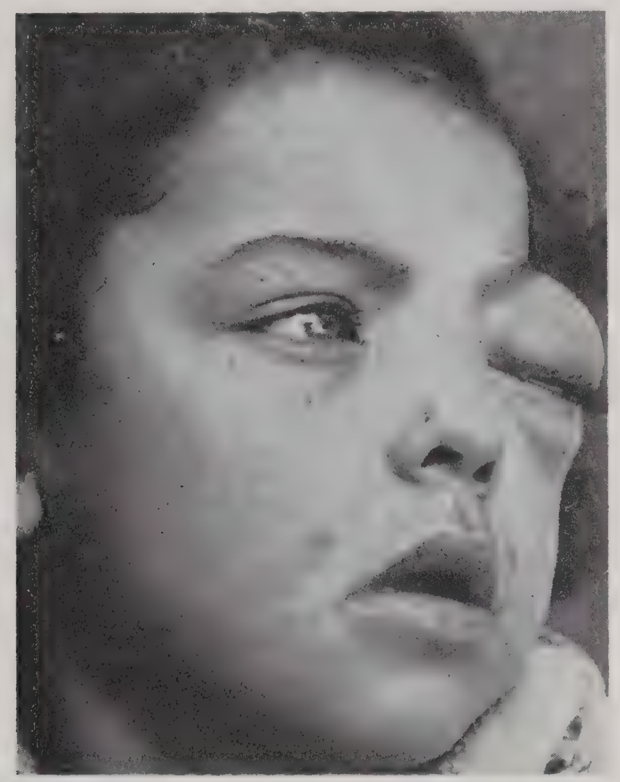


Fig. 66.

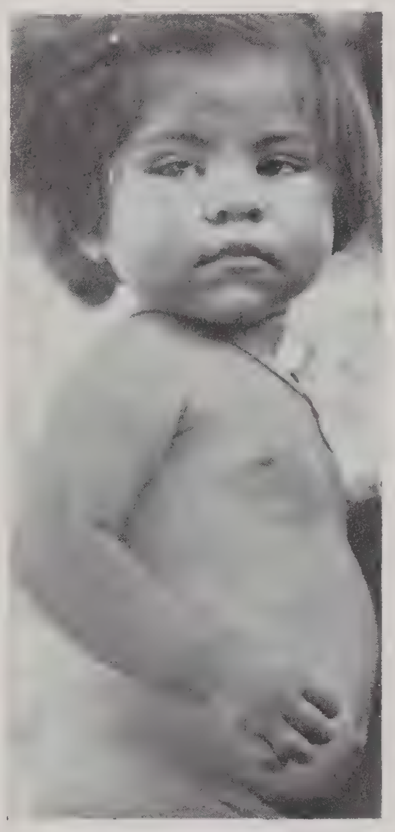


Fig. 67.

Fig. 66.—Pronounced exophthalmia, twenty-seventh day of development of chagoma of inoculation in the left upper lid.

Fig. 67.—Anasarca in a girl who was considered "fat" by her parents. With no known previous portal or entry.

In all these cases, after excluding the possibility of genuine kidney disease, if macropolyadenopathy and hepatosplenomegaly are present, and particularly if there are signs of myocardial disturbance, revealed at times only by tachycardia, especially with fever, these should induce a search for *T. cruzi* in the blood, especially in those geographical zones known to be endemic regions of Chagas' disease.

CHAGAS' DISEASE WITHOUT EXTERNAL MANIFESTATIONS

In addition to these definite forms of Chagas' disease described above, which suggest the diagnosis, even to inexperienced workers, or influence one to resort to proper microscopic examination, there are other cases which require the services of trained observers to recognize the possibility of their existence in endemic rural areas greatly infested by triatomas which harbor the developing forms of *T. cruzi.* In such cases, there is scant evidence of this infection, so that many of the cases may escape detection.

Of importance in the diagnosis of all cases is the appearance of cardiac changes, especially alterations in rhythm, with lowering of arterial tension, especially embryocardia in infants, or tachycardia of high frequency at other ages. These signs and symptoms, together with hepatosplenomegaly and multiple adenopathy, should suggest an examination of the blood for *T. cruzi.*

With no previous external signs, the most important manifestation of Chagas' disease is *primary meningoencephalitis.* It affects nursing infants exclusively and may be very serious; as a matter of fact, it is almost always fatal.

We have used the term *primary* meningoencephalitis because this localization may also occur *secondarily* in the course of the disease, with such initial manifestations as chagomas of inoculation, ophthalmoglandular complex, edema, anasarca, etc.

Convulsions are usually solitary and infrequent; in other cases, however, they are generalized, clonic or tonic, and preceded by great unrest and persistent and inconsolable crying. The convulsions at first are not of a serious character. They later become more frequent, of longer duration, and often show a tetanic character, with opisthotonus, repeated vomiting of the cerebral type, and constant crying.

These clinical forms are of short duration, and, in general, death may follow in less than a week. Few survive this stage without due treatment. According to Chagas, such patients show serious nervous syndromes, which probably, until Chagas described them, were thought to be the result of some other disease.

Those who recovered under adequate treatment, as far as is known, showed no sequelae or residual effects of the invasion of the central nervous system.

Forms that are simply primary febrile or which are accompanied by the typhoid- or tuberculosis-like state certainly are often overlooked in endemic regions.

It is of great diagnostic importance in such cases to evaluate the temperature curve; for example, a rise of 2 or more degrees in twenty-four hours, when the temperature is taken every three hours. This phenomenon, in which respect Chagas' disease resembles visceral leishmaniasis, is not constant and may be replaced by a frank notching of the peak of the evening temperature rise in Chagas' disease; it is explained by the greater or lesser invasion of the organs by the leishmania forms of the parasite.

ETIOLOGIC DIAGNOSIS

In all cases where Chagas' disease is suspected, it is essential to demonstrate the chagasic etiologic character of the disease. This test can be made by direct examination of fresh blood between cover glass and slide. Presence of *T. cruzi* is shown by its dancing movements, scarcely moving out of the field of view. This procedure is particularly useful in examination of nursing infants, where generally a large number of parasites are found in the circulating blood. In older children, adolescents, and adults, diagnosis in this manner can be made less frequently.

The *thick film* examination is of great value. The film is stained with Giemsa stain, without previous fixation. In this procedure a dilution of one drop of stain for each cubic centimeter of neutral distilled water is placed on the thick film, which has been dried in the air. The erythrocytes are hemolyzed, leaving the white blood cells, blood platelets, and the parasites properly stained.

This test should be repeated periodically or every day, making several preparations each time, and examining each carefully. *T. cruzi* in the bloood can usually be demonstrated with this method. Sometimes it is necessary to stain *five or six thick drop preparations* before arriving at a definite diagnosis.

If this test fails to reveal the parasites, it is necessary to rely on injection of 0.5 c.c. to 0.75 c.c. of citrated blood intraperitoneally into white rats. If the result is positive, trypanosomes will appear in the blood after a period of five to twelve days, and sometimes after twenty to twenty-five days.

This method is to be used for relatively recent cases and for children. For older patients, with a longer development of the disease, injection intraperitoneally of 5 to 10 c.c. of citrated blood is indicated. Up to 20 c.c. of citrated blood can be conveniently injected intraperitoneally into puppies about 1 month old to demonstrate cases during the tertiary period, especially cardiac cases. Observation of these animals should extend over a period of three months, with periodic examinations of the blood. Even though the blood examination is negative, a complete histopathologic examination of all the organs and skeletal muscles of the inoculated animal must be made.

It should be noted that animals which do not show trypanosomes in the circulation during life may nevertheless present leishmanias of *T. cruzi* either in the striated muscles or in the smooth muscles of the stomach and intestine, or in the heart or even in the skin or subcutaneous cellular tissue (Mazza).

Xenodiagnosis

(See Chapter 72.)

Biopsy

Biopsy of lymphatic glands, with proof of leishmanias in the histologic section, is a procedure which should follow those just explained; namely, the extirpation of the so-called "prefect" gland. Biopsy or punch biopsy of striated muscle is of little value because poor results are usually obtained in demonstration of leishmanias.

Residual lymphocytic-plasmocytic infiltration, with giant cells, in necrotic and fragmentary muscular segments, may give well-founded indications of Chagas' disease even in the absence of parasites.

The complement fixation reaction, or the Guerreiro-Machado reaction, applied to Chagas' disease, with serum of the patient in the presence of aqueous extract of liver from a puppy which has died of the disease, gives results of great presumptive value. It is particularly indicated in the secondary and tertiary periods of the disease. While the test may be positive, it still does not entirely exclude the necessity of inoculating the patient's blood into susceptible animals, nor does it exclude the use of xenodiagnosis.

These tests, as well as cutaneous and intradermal tests, by themselves do not assure a definitive diagnosis of Chagas' disease. They may simply indicate an old infection by *T. cruzi*. This is not unusual in localities where often all the inhabitants have overcome the chagasic infection at one time or another.

TREATMENT

In our experience, medication which has proved efficacious against other forms of trypanosomes has had no effect against *T. cruzi*. Various arsenicals have been tried, one after the other, without success, notwithstanding the fact that they are effective against other trypanosomal infections in man and in lower animals.

In 1936, a preparation known as *7602 (Ac) (Bayer)* was developed by Jensch of Leverkuffen. The composition of this drug, a *quinoline derivative*, was described by Curd in England in 1945 (Mazza, 1945). It is a *sulfate of diallyl-malonyl diamide of 2-methyl 4,6,-diamino quinoline.*

Curd also synthesized a product called *M 3024 (I.C.I.)*. Fulton (1943) showed experimentally the similarity of its effects with the original German drug. Mazza showed that *M 3024 (I.C.I.)* has the same action and clinical efficacy as *7602 (Ac) (Bayer)*. This substance, mixed with twice its weight of urea, is used as a solution prepared at the time of use. It is made by dissolving 0.15 Gm. of sterile powder, which is kept in sealed ampules, in 5 c.c. of doubly distilled water (3 per cent) and is injected intramuscularly, deep into the buttocks, using a fine needle.

The injection causes pain. Greater dilution does not prevent pain nor does it avoid discoloration at the site of injection, persisting for one or two days.

Following each treatment there is frequently a rise in temperature. There also develops unrest and malaise, in addition to a brief increase in external symptoms, in the twenty-four hours, following the first injection.

Injections may be repeated daily in the referred dosage of 0.15 Gm. and may even be doubled or tripled (0.30 Gm. or 0.45 Gm. in 10 c.c. or 15 c.c. of water, respectively), always preceded by a test for albumin in the urine. If albumin is present, it is desirable to wait until it disappears; if, however, the injection is urgently needed, the size of the dose may be decreased.

In general, after albuminuria disappears, it does not reappear when treatment is resumed provided there have been four or five days of rest. After appreciable clinical improvement (reduction of edema, glandular enlargement, decreased tachycardia, cephalalgia, fever, restlessness, somnolence), it is best to administer the drug only every other day, or at two-day intervals.

For adolescent and adult males a minimum of 0.30 to 0.60 Gm. per kilogram of body weight should be reached; 0.20 to 0.40 Gm. is used for women.

In nursing infants, especially those with the meningoencephalitic form, it is necessary to arrive at and to administer as quickly as possible a minimum dosage of 120 to 150 mg. per kilogram and even more than this amount, according to the severity of the case.

It is desirable to repeat the administration of 7602 (Ac) *(Bayer)* or M 3024 *(I.C.I.)* after a short period of rest. 7602 (Ac) *(Bayer)* and M 3024 *(I.C.I.)* have no action against other trypanosomes. *9736 (As) (Bayer)* has been used in Chagas' disease by Mazza with good clinical results.

Dosage of 9736 (As) (Bayer) is as follows: for children, doses of 1.5 c.c. up to a total of 30 c.c.; for male adults, 50 c.c., and women, 40 c.c., total doses are given.

Sodium penicillin shows pronounced clinical action, in doses of 20,000 to 30,000 Oxford units per kilogram of weight. It is given intramuscularly, in injections of 10,000 to 20,000 units every three hours. Its trypanocidal effect, however, is low.

In every case, the patient is to rest, preferably in bed, confined to his home, and must avoid hard work that may adversely affect the action of the heart.

If cardiac tonics are necessary, they are to be used with caution. Administration of vitamins, especially of the B group (thiamine hydrochloride), intramuscularly and in appreciable dosage, is more beneficial. Liver extract, especially with vitamin B, or even used alone, causes improvement many times in the majority of patients. In addition, this therapeusis favors greater toleration of other drugs.

Certain arsenicals, such as cacodylates, Sulfarsenol, neoarsphenamine, arsphenamine, Acetylarsan, Paroxyl (Stovarsol), may be conveniently used; for, although they lack specific action against the disease, they have a general tonic effect, stimulating the reticuloendothelial system, and they also act upon concomitant hereditary or acquired syphilitic lesions.

When these drugs fail, water-soluble salts of bismuth may be used, administered as for syphilis.

PROPHYLAXIS

Prophylaxis consists in avoiding contact with "vinchucas" or "kissing bugs," as the triatoma transmitters are called. Since these breed in primitive or lowly dwellings, it is through construction of adequate housing that the vector will eventually be exterminated, a very difficult problem in sparsely populated regions or in districts with great poverty.

As to personal hygiene, one should avoid placing bedding on the floors or having beds against the walls. Sleeping with mosquito netting stretched well away from the body and with the lights kept burning are also highly recommended.

References

Craig, C. F., and Faust, E. C.: Clinical Parasitology, ed. 4, Philadelphia, 1945, Lea & Febiger.

Mazza (1945).

Mazza, S., Basso, G., and Basso, R.: 1947. Investigaciones sobre la enfermedad de Chagas. Vol. 63 of Misión de Estudios de Patología. Universidad de Argentina, Buenos Aires.

CHAPTER 9

AFRICAN SLEEPING SICKNESS

OSCAR FELSENFELD

Sleeping sickness or African trypanosomiasis is often designated as "African sleeping sickness," to distinguish it from Economo's lethargic encephalitis which also formerly was called "sleeping sickness." It is a disease caused by trypanosomes and is characterized by chronic fever, more or less intensive glandular enlargement, and, in many cases, a cerebral stage with fatal outcome.

GEOGRAPHY

The geography of sleeping sickness follows the African belt of the tsetse flies (Glossina), mainly of *Glossina palpalis, Glossina tachinoides, Glossina morsitans,* and *Glossina swynnertoni,* which are the most frequent insect vectors of the disease. The northern boundary of sleeping sickness today approximately follows a line drawn from St. Louis to the Lake Chad; then along the Shari and the southern part of Anglo-Egyptian Sudan. Abyssinia and Italian Somaliland are free from it. South West Africa and the Zambezi River, with the exception of two foci, are the southern boundaries, while in West Africa, along the Gulf of Guinea, in the Congo, in Angola, Sudan, Uganda, and Kenya, the classic type ascribed to *Trypanosoma gambiense* prevails, and the Rhodesian type ascribed to *Trypanosoma rhodesiense* is found in Tanganyika, Mozambique, Nyasaland, and Rhodesia.

Etiology

Sleeping sickness is caused by trypanosomes. These organisms are very similar to *Trypanosoma brucei,* the agent of the animal disease "nagana." Two types of trypanosomes have been described as the cause of sleeping sickness: *T. gambiense* and *T. rhodesiense.* It is not possible to differentiate between these types morphologically or by animal experiments, except by production of keratitis in goats by *T. rhodesiense.* It was formerly believed that the forms of *T. rhodesiense* in the blood of injected mice or rats more frequently have their nuclei located more posteriorly than do forms of *T. gambiense* under similar experimental conditions. Some authors consider *T. rhodesiense* a human-adapted variant of *T. brucei.* Others ascribe the difference in clinical types of sleeping sicknes to the adaptation of the trypanosomes to different species of Glossina.

The organisms appear irregularly in the blood but are usually present during the periods of fever. They are most easily found in enlarged lymph glands, later occurring in body fluids, principally the cerebrospinal fluid. Aside from elongated, slender trypanosomes, rather short, broad forms with smaller flagella and posterior nuclei may be observed. After the organisms enter the tsetse fly by feeding on a patient who harbors trypanosomes, they multiply in the mid-gut, later in the hind-gut, of the Glossina. After twelve to thirty-six days, depending on temperature, humidity, and other factors, the infective metacyclic forms reach the salivary glands of the fly and may be injected into a susceptible host during a blood meal.

Trypanosomes of sleeping sickness are difficult to cultivate. They are, however, easily transferred to laboratory animals, chiefly to mice, rats, and guinea pigs.

VECTOR AND ANIMAL RESERVOIRS

The trypanosomes are usually transferred by tsetse flies after they have gone through a cyclic evolution in these insects. There is, however, a possibility of purely mechanical transfer by Glossinae and other biting insects from person to person under certain circumstances.

The principal species of Glossina which transfer sleeping sickness are: *G. palpalis* and *G. tachinoides* for *T. gambiense; G. morsitans* and *G. swynnertoni* for *T. rhodesiense.*

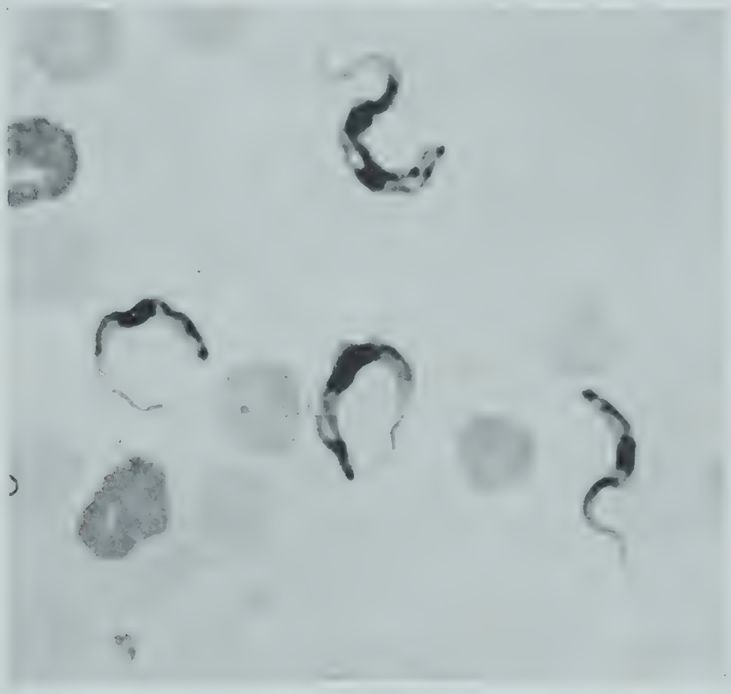


Fig. 68.—*Trypanosoma gambiense* in peripheral blood.

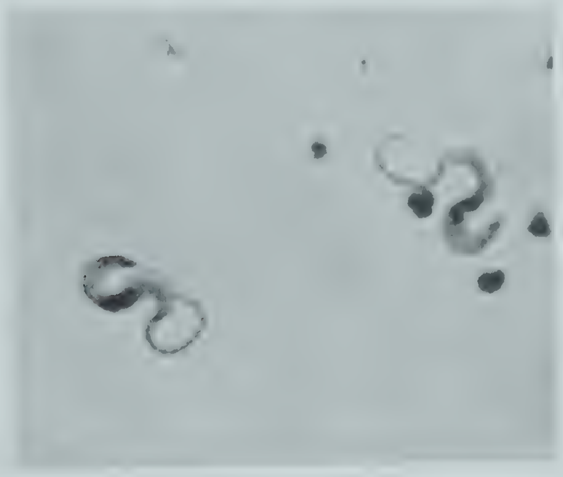


Fig. 69.—*Trypanosoma rhodesiense* in peripheral blood.

Most species of Glossina require shade and proximity of water. *G. palpalis* prefers human blood, while *G. tachinoides* is impartial in its feeding habits. *G. morsitans* and *G. swynnertoni* feed mostly on cattle and antelopes. *G. morsitans* is attracted by individuals, animals, and objects and will follow a running person or antelope for hundreds of yards.

Glossinae which live in southwest Arabia are not infected with trypanosomes. It is also worthy of note that the organisms are not transferred to the larvae of the flies.

No repellent effective against tsetse flies is known.

Of the animals naturally infected with *T. gambiense,* the best known is the marsh-inhabiting sitatunga *(Limnotragus spekei),* a shy antelope with highly cleft hoofs enabling it to step on thin roots. *T. rhodesiense* is found in the waterbuck *(Kobus ellipsoprymnus)*, reedbuck *(Redunca arundinacea)*, and duikerbok *(Cephalophus gimni)*. Cattle, goats, sheep, and even pigs have been found to harbor trypanosomes.

RESISTANCE

There is no racial predisposition to sleeping sickness. Neither does the disease prefer people of one sex or of a certain age group. Those who live near rivers or spend time working or travelling on inland waters are more exposed to the bite of tsetse flies and, therefore, fall prey more easily to sleeping sickness.

Trypanosomes, as a rule, are not transferred from the mother to the fetus. Exceptions, however, have been described.

There may be a certain degree of immunity among people who live in territories which have been infested for a long time. Manson-Bahr (1945) emphasized that sleeping sickness is less virulent in West Africa, where it has been present for a very long time, while in the newer foci of Uganda the course is more severe. Due to the lack of partial immunity, the disease is more acute in white men than in natives. The Rhodesian form, however, is generally acute both in whites and in natives.

PATHOLOGY

The bodies of patients who have died of African sleeping sickness are emaciated. Since this is due to lack of nourishment, the organic findings are, with the exception of the central nervous system and the lymphatic apparatus, rather meager.

The skin may show edema which, as a rule, is confined to the face and the perineal region. The back is less often involved. The disease is principally an affection of the lymphatic system, so that lymphatic infiltrations are often found in the skin.

The lymph glands, particularly of the neck, of the mesentery, and of the groins, are enlarged. There is increased production and proliferation of the lymph cells. The glands appear vascular. In addition to the lymphocytosis, monocytes are often found.

The brain shows changes resembling those found in general paresis. There is a chronic meningoencephalitis and a meningomyelitis. The changes in the brain predominate. The vessels are contracted. Endarteritis with endothelial proliferation causes thickening of the vessels. The perivascular space shows round-cell infiltration. Lymphocytes, neuroglia, and more or less modified plasmocytes form the infiltrate. When perivascular infiltrates attain considerable width, they are called "coat sleeve" or "cuff."

The surface of the brain shows flattened convolutions and shallow sulci. The brain tissue is edematous. The ventricles are dilated by the pressure of the increased amount of cerebrospinal fluid. The Rhodesian types show little changes in the brain.

The cerebrospinal fluid contains many mononucleated cells, such as lymphocytes, monocytes, and plasmocytes. Eosinophiles may also be present. Trypanosomes can be found in many cases. The total number of cells is 50 to 5,000 in fatal cases. There is a great increase in the protein content, which may be higher than 1.5 Gm.

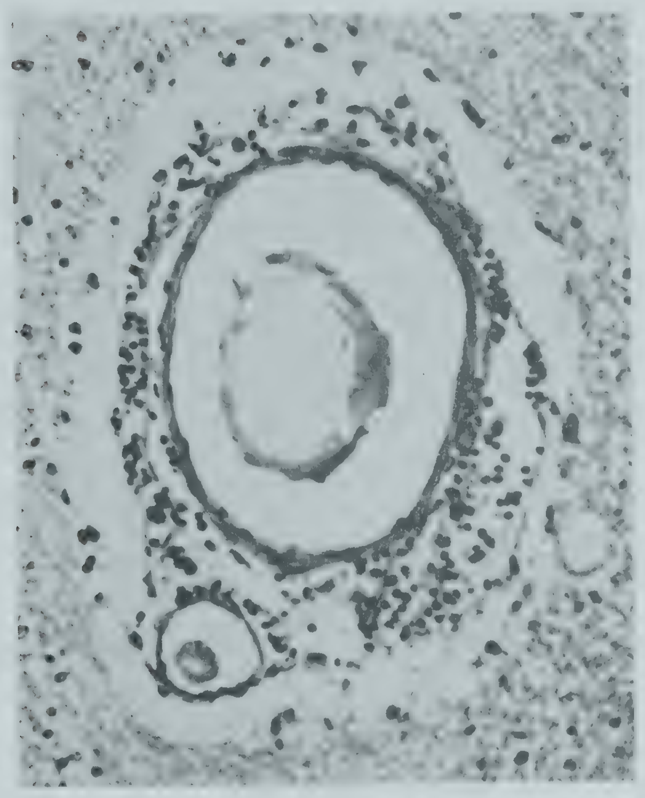


Fig. 70.—Perivascular infiltration in the brain in sleeping sickness.

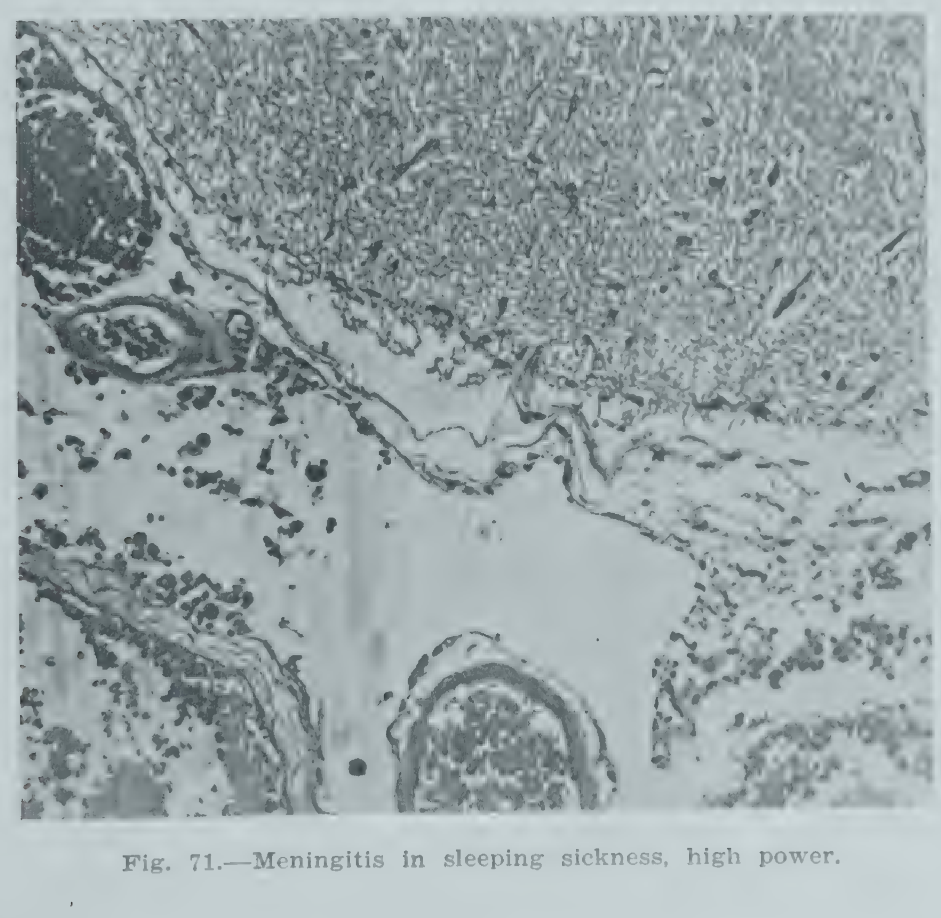


Fig. 71.—Meningitis in sleeping sickness, high power.

Glomerulonephritis is not rare. The spleen is not considerably enlarged. There is round-cell infiltration. The number of Malpighian bodies is reduced. As a rule, the liver is not enlarged. Pericardial, pleural, and peritoneal effusions are common in the Rhodesian form.

The heart shows round-cell infiltration and degenerative changes. Very intensive inflammatory alterations are common in the Rhodesian type. The lungs may show proliferation of round cells. The bone marrow shows regressive changes.

Because the immediate cause of death is some intercurrent disease, such as pneumonia, malaria, tuberculosis, dysentery, etc., the autopsy findings are often dominated by the changes caused by the terminal complicating sickness.

INCUBATION PERIOD

The incubation period is very irregular. An incubation of ten to twenty-one days is very often observed; frequently, however, it is far longer. According to some authors, the incubation period may be as protracted as several years.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

Classical Type

The initial phenomenon is the so-called trypanosome chancre. This consists of a red nodule surrounded by a pale zone. The nodule is slightly elevated and attains a diameter of one-half to one inch. Its site is the place of the bite of the tsetse fly. After a few days, usually after three, the nodule disappears, leaving a slightly pigmented spot which may be visible in white patients for a few weeks.

The first general symptom is the initial fever, which develops one week or later after the initial chancre. It is irregular; intermittent and remittent courses are observed. While the morning temperature is normal or slightly subnormal, the evening temperature may reach 103° to 104° F. The decline of the fever is rarely accompanied by the usual sweating of such states.

The pulse rate and the respiration rate increase with the height of the fever. The patient complains of headache. Neuralgia is often present. The nerves of the extremities and of the head are most often involved. The pain may be continuous or it may appear in attacks of varying intensities.

A rash composed of pinkish, circinate, nummular erythematous skin lesions is observed in white patients. The rash is often accompanied by pruritus and edema. In the native population, the erythema is scarcely visible because of the dark skin. This rash disappears after some time.

Trypanosomes appear in the blood during this period of the disease. They are more abundant during the fever periods.

Kerandel's sign is of much diagnostic value during this stage of the sickness. This sign is based upon the development of deep hyperesthesia, especially over the ulna. A slight impulse, which under normal conditions would cause only the feeling of touch, evokes delayed pain. Often the patient himself complains of unusual pain caused by small impulses.

Later the fever decreases but returns after shorter or longer periods of intermission. The recurring febrile attacks may be mild or severe. The fever may reach various levels, but the temperature is always higher in the evening. Continuous fever has also been observed.

The lymph glands become enlarged. The enlargement is most apparent in the cervical glands. Winterbottom's sign consists in the observation of enlarged lateral neck glands when the patient turns his back to the examiner. The glands are soft but later become very hard. They are usually painless but may be tender on palpation. When secondary infection is absent, they do not suppurate.

The spleen is usually enlarged and soft during this period. The liver also shows enlargement.

The patient often has cramps and paresthesia of different locations and intensities.

Persistent tachycardia, irritability, headaches, and insomnia are usual complaints.

Manson-Bahr (1945) points out the importance of erythemas composed of fugitive, patchy, annular, or irregular rings, mostly on the trunk. They may be of irregular size and shape and often become huge. They fade into the surrounding skin. These erythemas are evoked by irritation of the skin by different factors such as heat. They are often accompanied by edema.

Of great importance are the ocular disturbances. Iridocyclitis and chorioiditis are not uncommon. Such eye lesions, when not diagnosed, may develop into serious consequences during treatment with arsenicals.

The patient loses weight. Anemia develops.

This stage of sleeping sickness, characterized principally by enlargement of the glands, irregular recurring and intermittent fever, enlargement of spleen and liver, may last for a long time, even for years. Then, either spontaneous cure follows or the cerebral stage begins.

Sleeping Sickness Proper

The disease has received its name from the clinical symptoms that accompany this stage, also called the "cerebral stage," because the psychoneurologic changes induced by the developing brain pathology dominate the picture during it. The cerebral stage represents the terminal period of the disease and ends with death. It may be acute or chronic. It lasts usually three to eight months. A more extended duration of sleeping sickness, as long as one year, has also been recorded.

As a rule, sleeping sickness proper begins slowly. The patient becomes somnolent. Desire to sleep during the daytime is usually the first symptom of the onset. The intensity of the somnolence gradually increases. The patient falls asleep anywhere and in every position. If not asleep, his actions are lethargic. Speech becomes slurred. Questions elicit late and retarded answers.

Very often the patient does not speak at all if not questioned. The gait is deliberate and slow, as are the other movements. Later the patient is scarcely able to keep awake and falls asleep even while eating. There is loss of control of saliva, urine, and stool.

The habits of the patient deteriorate. He becomes negligent and unclean. Delusions and mania are often observed.

Debility is a constant development. The facial expression reflects the psychologic state. It is dull and vacant. The eyelids are lowered. The lower lip begins to hang. Saliva drips from the corner of the partly open mouth.

The neurologic symptoms are governed by the localization and extent of the cerebral and meningeal lesions. Headache, usually dull frontal or occipital pain, rarely migraine-like attacks, is the rule. Convulsions may be present. Paralysis of nerves or groups of nerves is not uncommon.

Fibrillary twitchings of the tongue and of the muscles of the arm are early symptoms of the cerebral stage. Tremor of the tongue, of the fingers, and of the upper extremities, rarely of the legs, is very frequent from the beginning of sleeping sickness.

Pruritus is a regular symptom, causing scratching with subsequent skin infections.

The knee jerks are increased in the beginning, later decreased. All reflexes are decreased during the later stage of the sickness.

Because of the diminished ability of the patient to feed himself, cachexia develops. Symptoms of avitaminosis, skin lesions, and decubitus are very frequent.

The cause of death is an intercurrent disease as pneumonia, dysentery, or injury; also attack by animals, mainly when the patient, during a maniacal outburst, runs away into the jungle and, because of his sickness, cannot protect himself adequately.

Rhodesian Sleeping Sickness

As stated above in the pathology of African sleeping sickness, the Rhodesian form shows more visceral and fewer cerebral changes.

The symptoms are similar to those of the classic or Gambian type. The Rhodesian form is more acute. The fever is usually higher, and there are fewer remissions and intermissions. Trypanosomes are numerous in the peripheral blood. The rash is very frequent and of long duration. Edema develops more frequently and is usually extensive.

There is little or no enlargement of the lymphatic glands. On the other hand, disturbances of the cardiovascular apparatus are pronounced. Tachycardia is a constant symptom. Later, irregularity of the heart action develops.

Convulsions occur very often. Mania is frequent.

Because of the rapid course of the disease, cachexia develops within a relatively shorter time. Death occurs within six to twelve months after the onset.

Abortive Forms

Persons without history of typical African trypanosomiasis, but apparently exhibiting an immunity against the disease, are often found in endemic regions. The search for abortive infections was intensified when, during surveys of the population in infested regions, trypanosomes were recovered from the peripheral blood of individuals who did not show classical symptoms. Further studies revealed that abortive cases are not rare.

There may or may not be an initial rash. Low-grade fever of irregular character, often remittent or intermittent, for a few days or weeks, is present. There is headache and general malaise. When one considers that such symptoms may occur in the tropics for a number of reasons, it can be easily understood that they may be misinterpreted, particularly if means of laboratory examination are inadequate.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

It is necessary to keep in mind that the number of parasites in the peripheral blood undergoes considerable fluctuation. The parasites are, moreover, not easily recovered from the cerebrospinal fluid in every case. Gland puncture is, therefore, the method of choice for recovering the parasites, if there is enlargement of the lymphatic glands.

The Peripheral Blood

Cultivation of the trypanosomes is not as yet so simple that it can be used as a diagnostic method.

For animal inoculation, guinea pigs are used most often. Five or 10 c.c. of the blood are injected intraperitoneally.

Microscopic search for the trypanosomes in the peripheral blood is carried out with the aid of the thick drop method, or citrated blood is well centrifuged and the sediment examined.

Both unstained and stained preparations are observed. For staining, the Giemsa method and its modification by Field are recommended.*

The Lymph Glands

The lymph glands are punctured after massage, using a relatively strong needle and a 10 or 20 c.c. syringe. Smears are prepared and then stained with the Giemsa or Field method. While strict asepsis is necessary for this operation, no anesthesia is needed.

The lateral cervical glands are easily accessible, particularly when they are enlarged. Massage of the glands during puncture enhances the operation. Unstained and stained smears are examined.

Cerebrospinal Fluid

The cerebrospinal fluid must be centrifuged in an examination for trypanosomes. The sediment can be observed under the microscope, injected into guinea pigs, or used for cultivation. Trypanosomes are often recovered from the fluid gathered through suboccipital puncture and also from sternal puncture material.

---

*See Chapter 68.

Serologic Reactions

Serologic reactions described for the diagnosis of African sleeping sickness are numerous. The so-called adhesion reaction is sometimes utilized for diagnostic purposes. This phenomenon consists of the adhesion of human red blood cells to trypanosomes, when trypanosomes are mixed with immune serum, complement, and red blood cells. In the presence of a nonspecific serum, no such clumping or adhesions occurs. Serologic reactions, however, have not as yet attained an important place in the diagnosis of sleeping sickness.

Clinical Pathology

The blood picture shows secondary anemia. The number of white blood cells is within normal limits in the beginning of the disease. Leucocytosis appears during the later stages of sleeping sickness. There is a relative increase of lymphocytes and of monocytes.

Autoagglutinins occur very often, causing rouleaux formation of the red blood cells. Cold agglutinins have not been found.

The blood sugar and the alkali reserve of the blood decrease during the disease. The serum is depleted of proteins, chiefly of the albumin fraction. The albumin-globulin ratio is low. Nonprotein nitrogen, urea, and creatinine increase in the terminal stage, while the amount of cholesterol usually decreases.

During the cerebral stage, the spinal fluid contains many cells, mostly lymphocytes and plasmocytes. The occurrence of plasmocytes in the cerebrospinal fluid is of diagnostic value.

As a rule, a considerable amount of globulin is present in the spinal fluid. The reactions of Pandy, Nonne-Apelt, and Weichbrodt are positive. The gold curve shows the paretic type.

DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

African trypanosomiasis must be differentiated from other generalized infectious diseases, such as virus encephalitis, malaria, leishmaniasis, syphilis, and leprosy; from cerebral and meningeal disorders, such as brain tumors, general paresis; and from pellagra, late beriberi, and Hodgkin's disease.

The differential diagnosis is greatly facilitated by gland puncture, if the lymphatic glands are enlarged, by the examination of the cerebrospinal fluid, and by the search for trypanosomes in the peripheral blood. The examination of the bone marrow (sternal puncture) is very helpful.

PROGNOSIS

Except for the abortive cases, the prognosis is serious in all clinically manifest cases which have not been treated. Spontaneous healing is possible but not the rule. When the cerebral stage sets in, not even intensive treatment can save a great number of the patients.

TREATMENT

The Belgian, French, and British governments have spent enormous sums for the eradication of sleeping sickness. Today, when the native populations have learned the advantages of proper medical care, the efforts of the colonial agencies are focused on the desire to have every infected person receive a regular course of treatment. It has been observed that interrupted or otherwise irregular therapy causes the appearance of drug-resistant trypanosomes.

The development and nature of drug resistance by trypanosomes is not known. It is possible to prove with the aid of microchemical reactions, or by the use of fluorescent light, that resistant trypanosomes contain less arsenic than the nonresistant forms. Eagle and Magnuson (1944) discussed the theories which attempt to explain the origin of drug resistance. This coincides with the degree to which arsenic is bound by the trypanosomes. Presumably the cell membrane of the organism becomes less permeable to the drug.

If a strain of trypanosomes becomes resistant to arsenic, it usually does not revert to the arsenic-sensitive type with ease. When arsenic-resistant trypanosomes are picked up by a tsetse fly and transferred to another individual, the organisms retain their resistance against arsenic even after passage through the Glossina. In other words, an arsenic-resistant strain may be propagated. This phenomenon causes difficulties in the therapy of subsequent cases of infection which cannot be avoided under present conditions. Proper treatment is, therefore, necessary not only for the sake of the patient himself, but also for epidemiologic reasons even to a greater extent than in many other communicable diseases.

The treatment of African sleeping sickness with arsenic preparations dates back to Ehrlich who dreamed of a *therapia sterilisans magna*, possibly through one single injection of an effective drug. His first compound, Atoxyl, however, proved to be very toxic. The most feared effect of this and other trypanocidal drugs is optic neuritis. Ocular lesions in trypanosomiasis were recently studied by Ridley (1945). It seems that diseases of the eye are not rare in sleeping sickness and that numerous drugs aggravate an already present ocular lesion rather than cause a pathology *sui generis*. In order to avoid this complication, it is essential to examine the eyes periodically, with the aid of a slit lamp and an ophthalmoscope, during the treatment. A very important method of eye examination is to show the patient small objects. If even slight impairment of the vision is apparent, the administration of the drug must be stopped immediately. It must be realized that ocular lesions often develop some time after the treatment has been completed. The relatively new aromatic diamidine compounds, such as Pentamidine (diamidinodiphenoxypentane), Stilbamidine (diamidinodistilbene), and Propamidine (diamidinodiphenoxypropane), do not cause ocular lesions but lower the blood pressure. As a result of this action, many patients suffer collapse. The blood pressure, however, rises again in about one-half hour after the injection. No fatal incident or permanent damage following the administration of these drugs has been described as yet.

The best known remedies of African sleeping sickness are tryparsamide and Antrypol.

Tryparsamide (Novatoxyl, Tryparsone, Glyphenarsine) is sodium N-phenyl-glycine-amide-*p*-arsonate. It is used both in incipient and in cerebral cases. It may be injected into the muscles (usually in 10 to 20 per cent solution). The medium dose is 80 mg. per kilogram of weight (Manson-Bahr); the total dose for one series of injections is 24 Gm. Some workers, however, advocate a total dose of 60 to 100 Gm.

According to one schedule, three injections are given every week, using first 10 c.c., then 20 c.c. of a 10 per cent solution. These injections are continued for a length of time corresponding to the severity of the disease. In advanced cases, the following amounts of a 20 per cent solution are injected: 3 c.c. on the first day, 6 c.c. on the fourth, and 10 c.c. on the eighth day; then, beginning with the twelfth day, 12 c.c. every four days until twenty injections have been given. This treatment is repeated after a three-month intermission.

Another scheme recommends one injection every week, first 1 to 1.5 Gm., then 2 to 3 Gm., according to the weight of the patient. A total of fifteen injections is given.

Children receive doses up to 80 mg. per kilogram body weight for twelve injections.

Kellesberger (1943) advocates doses of 45 mg. per kilogram of weight, a total of 30 to 50 Gm. The injections are given once a week. If necessary, the series is repeated one to three months later. Kellesberger recommends a test injection, chiefly in advanced cases. Twelve milligrams of the drug per kilogram of weight are injected for this purpose. If no untoward reaction is observed, the Tryparsamide treatment may be used.

Fowler (1945) found that massive doses given by the intravenous drip method are very effective. The patients must be hospitalized for this therapy. The time of hospitalization is about two weeks. Only children and young adults may receive this treatment.

Optical neuritis is the most dangerous side effect of the drug. The excellent therapeutic results observed in thousands of cases, however, counterbalance this undesired complication.

Antrypol (Belgamyl, Moranyl, Suramin B.P., Bayer 205, Fourneau 309, Naphuride) is given intravenously in a 10 per cent aqueous solution. The total dose is 10 Gm.

According to one schedule, every fourth day 5 c.c., later 10 c.c., are given, until the total dose has been administered.

The second scheme calls for the injection of 10 c.c. on the first, third, tenth, and thirteenth days. Then the same dose is repeated once a week. In advanced cases, doses of 15 c.c. and even 20 c.c. have been recommended.

Antrypol, however, is not effective in the cerebral stage of African trypanosomiasis. Toxic dermatitis and kidney irritation are observed. After a few injections some protein and yellow-colored granular casts occur in the urine. The appearance of the casts is due to the excretion of the drug through the urinary system. Casts may be found in the urine for about one week after the end of the treatment. Neuritis is also ascribed to Antrypol therapy.

Diamidine compounds are given in doses of 0.5 to 2 mg. per kilogram of body weight, in daily injections, for thirty days. Some workers administer them for a period as long as ninety days. Pentamidine is given intravenously; Stilbamidine and Propamidine are injected into the muscles or into the veins.

Propamidine is little used.

Stilbamidine has been found to be very effective in the mouse test by Fulton and Yoke (1943), but according to clinical reports, other drugs are more effective.

Pentamidine was recently tested by van Hoof et al. (1944) and was found reliable even for prophylactic use. Lourie (1942), Harding (1944), and Saunders et al. (1944) agree that this drug must be used only in early cases, when the white cell count in the cerebrospinal fluid is still low. Harding recommends Pentamidine when fewer than 15 cells per cubic millimeter are present in the spinal fluid, while Saunders et al. were successful in cases having even as many as 30 cells per cubic millimeter in the cerebrospinal fluid. This drug is definitely less toxic than Antrypol or Tryparsamide. It must be injected very slowly in order to prevent a sudden drop of the blood pressure which occurs in a number of patients.

Among other recently developed drugs, Melarsen oxide and "70 A" have been found very effective by Weinman and Franz (1945). Recently Melarsen B 2 to 4 mg. per kilogram per day in short series has been tried.

Combined Treatment

If the treatment with one drug is not effective, or when relapses occur, another remedy should be chosen. Trypanosome strains may be resistant to certain drugs. While this resistance is often a result of adaptation to a drug after treatment, chiefly arsenicals, naturally resistant strains also occur. Harding (1945) found that Tryparsamide-resistant cases react well to a combined treatment with Tryparsamide and Pentamidine.

For combined Antrypol and Tryparsamide treatment, Manson-Bahr (1945) recommends injections of large doses of Antrypol, then twice a week 2 Gm. of Tryparsamide; or, in three- to four-day intervals, 1.5 Gm. Antrypol, and then, after a ten- to fourteen-day intermission, six to eight weekly injections of Tryparsamide: 70 mg. per kilogram weight for a child; 55 mg. per kilogram weight for an adolescent; and 45 mg. per kilogram weight for an adult.

Another effective combination is the use of alternate injections of Antrypol and Tryparsamide in three-day intervals.

Harding (1944, 1945) obtained favorable results with concurrent daily injections of 100 mg. Pentamidine and 2 Gm. Tryparsamide for five consecutive days. In more advanced cases, however, Antrypol and Tryparsamide must be used simultaneously.

General Treatment

Any person who harbors trypanosomes in his body or shows signs of African trypanosomiasis should be isolated in a well-screened house. The diet must be mixed, rich in vitamins. Injections of vitamins C and K, and of the B-complex vitamins, are beneficial.

When the cerebral stage has already developed, proper nursing care is of utmost importance. The patient must be fed. Adequate cleanliness must be assured. When mental disturbances are present, the patient constitutes a real problem in many localities because of the lack of proper psychiatric care and facilities in the rural tropics.

Spinal punctures are beneficial. No patient should be dismissed before the findings in the cerebrospinal fluid become normal. The spinal fluid should be re-examined every three to six months for two consecutive years after the clinical cure.

Skin lesions and neurologic symptoms are treated according to the established rules of proper medical specialties.

No therapy of the optic neuritis is known to date. Other ocular lesions are treated in the usual manner.

PROPHYLAXIS

Chemoprophylaxis.—An injection of 1 Gm. Antrypol or Tryparsamide every three to six months is said to protect against African trypanosomiasis.

Individual Prophylaxis.—The tsetse flies bite during the day. Therefore one should travel only during the night in infested areas.

The breeding places of the Glossinae must be avoided.

Proper mosquito netting is very important.

Public Health Measures.—Dispersion of the tsetse flies must be prevented. Careful control of airplanes coming from areas inhabited by Glossinae has been established and seems to be effective.

Removal of the entire population from the endemic area, as carried out in Uganda, is a good but not always practical measure.

Excellent results have been obtained by cleaning the bush and undergrowth at least thirty yards from the water edge, thus destroying the breeding places of the tsetse flies.

DDT smoke has been found effective for small foci.

Fly traps have been given many trials. Not all species of Glossina are, however, attracted and caught by them.

So-called ''fly boys'' have been used successfully. They carry nets and catch tsetse flies.

References

Eagle, H., and Magnuson, H. J.: 1944. The Spontaneous Development of Arsenic-Resistance in Trypanosoma Equiperdum and Its Mechanism, J. Pharmacol. & Exper. Therap. **82**: 137-151.

Field, J. W.: 1941. Further Note on a Method of Staining Malarial Parasites in Thick Blood Films, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **35**: 35-42.

Fulton, J. D., and Yoke, W.: 1943. Studies in Chemotherapy, Ann. Trop. Med. **37**: 152-157.

Fowler, A. F.: 1945. Massive Dose Tryparsamide by Intravenous Drip Method in the Treatment of Trypanosomiasis, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **38**: 297-304.

Harding, R. D.: 1944. Trypanosomiasis Treated With Pentamidine, Brit. M. J. 1: 447.

Harding, R. D.: 1945. Late Results of Treatment of Sleeping Sickness in Sierra Leone by Antrypol, Tryparsamide, Pentamidine and Propamidine, Single and in Various Combinations, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **39**: 99-124.

Hoof, L. van, Hernard, C., and Peel, E.: 1944. Pentamidine in the Prevention and Treatment of Trypanosomiasis, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **37**: 271-280.

Kellesberger, E. R., in Bercovitz, Z. Taylor (editor): 1943. Clinical Tropical Medicine, New York, Paul B. Hoeber, Inc., pp. 193-208.

Lourie, E. M.: 1942. Treatment of Sleeping Sickness in Sierra Leone, Ann. Trop. Med. **36**: 113-131.

Manson-Bahr, P. H.: 1945. Manson's Tropical Diseases, ed. 12, Baltimore, Williams & Wilkins Co., pp. 118-143, 853-857, 978-983, 1017-1018.

Ridley, H.: 1945. Ocular Lesions in Trypanosomiasis, Ann. Trop. Med. **39**: 62-82.

Saunders, G., Holden, J. R., and Hughes, M. H.: 1944. Second Report on the Treatment of Trypanosomiasis by Pentamidine, Ann. Trop. Med. **38**: 159-168.

Weinman, D., and Franz, K.: 1945. Early Results of the Treatment of African Trypanosomiasis With Two New Arsenical Preparations, Am. J. Trop. Med. **25**: 343-344.

CHAPTER 10

LEISHMANIASIS, CUTANEOUS, MUCOCUTANEOUS, AND VISCERAL, WITH SPECIAL REFERENCE TO ITS OCCURRENCE IN THE AMERICAS

SAMUEL BARNSLEY PESSÔA

INTRODUCTION

Leishmaniasis is a disease caused by flagellate protozoa of the genus Leishmania Ross, 1903.

There are three species of the genus Leishmania which parasitize man, all of which are morphologically identical:

1. *Leishmania donovani* (Laveran and Mesnil, 1903), which causes visceral leishmaniasis, kala-azar, infantile leishmaniasis of the Mediterranean area, and the American kala-azar, or American visceral leishmaniasis.
2. *Leishmania tropica* (Wright, 1903), which causes cutaneous leishmaniasis, known also as Oriental sore, Biskra button, Baghdad boil, Delhi boil, Lahore sore, Aleppo boil, etc.
3. *Leishmania braziliensis* (Vianna, 1911), which causes leishmaniasis americana, or mucocutaneous leishmaniasis, espundia, uta, Baurú ulcer, etc.

HISTORY OF THE DISCOVERY OF THE PARASITES OF LEISHMANIASIS

Leishmanias were first recognized by Leishman (1903). In the same year, Donovan described these parasites in a disease called ''dumdum fever'' or ''kala-azar.'' Laveran and Mesnil examined some of Donovan's specimens and proposed the name *Piroplasma donovani.* Ross (1903), however, concluded that this organism was not a sporozoan and created for it the genus *Leishmania.* Nicolle (1908) gave the name *Leishmania infantum* to the parasite which causes kala-azar in the Mediterranean area. Wright, in 1903, described a similar organism in a case of Oriental sore, in a child from Syria, who had been taken to Boston. He proposed the name *Helcosoma tropicum* for this parasite. Later it was included in the genus Leishmania. The correct name of the parasite which causes Oriental sore is *Leishmania tropica* (Wright, 1903). *L. donovani* is identical with *L. infantum.*

American Leishmaniasis

1. **Cutaneous Form.**—The Indian ceramists of the pre-Columbian age in Peru represented on their vases or *huacos* numerous pathologic changes which medical observers and historians later recognized as certain diseases. Tamayo (1909) was the first to recognize the lesions shown on the Peruvian huacos as a condition long known as ''uta''; that is, mucocutaneous leishmaniasis.

In 1895, Greda, in Italy, described the disease in Italians who had returned to their country from São Paulo. In 1908, numerous patients from certain regions began to report to the Santa Casa de São Paulo Hospital with a disease at that time known by several names, Baurú ulcer, wild wound, northwest ulcer, etc., but the etiology was not yet known.

On March 30, 1909, Lindenberg reported discovery of the parasite of Baurú ulcer, this parasite being identical with the agent of Oriental sore. This discovery was later confirmed by Carini and Paranhos. In 1911, Pedroso and da Silva, using N.N.N. medium, succeeded in cultivating the leishmania from Baurú ulcer. In the same year, Splendore demonstrated leishmanias in the lesions of the mucosa. In Peru, Escomel (1911) found the parasite and identified espundia, a disease characterized by slow and progressive ulceration of the bucopharyngeal mucosa, as leishmaniasis.

In 1911, Gaspar Vianna considered the differences between the etiologic agents of mucocutaneous leishmaniasis and *L. tropica* and proposed the name *Leishmania braziliensis.*

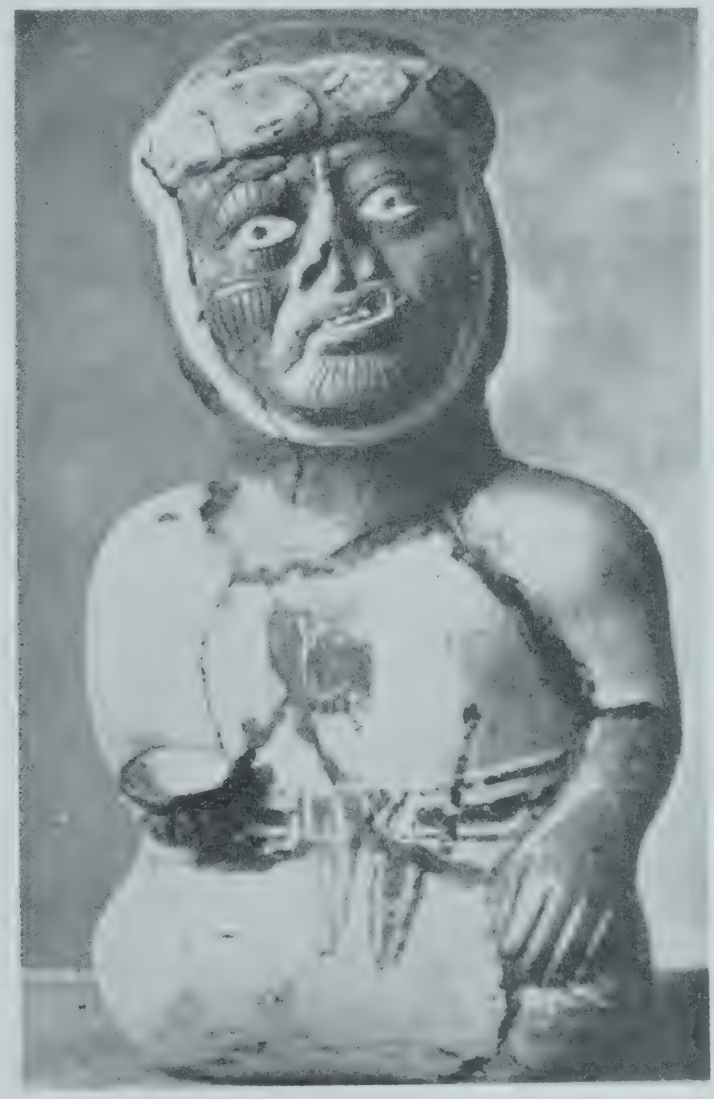


Fig. 72.—Peruvian "huaco" showing lesions attributed to American skin leishmaniasis. (After Neiva and Barbará, 1917. First Conference South Amer. Soc. Microb. & Parasitol., Buenos Aires.)

2. **Visceral Form.**—The first reference to the possible existence of visceral leishmaniasis in South America was made by Carlos Chagas, who, while traveling in the valley of the Amazon in 1911-1912, suspected the existence of kala-azar in that region. Migone (1913), in Paraguay, was the first to observe a fatal case of kala-azar in the capital of that country. Mazza and Arias (1926a) later reported two cases of infantile kala-azar in northern Argentina. In 1934, Penna reported this infection in 41 sections of liver out of 47,000 specimens. Research by a Commission of the Oswaldo Cruz Institute showed the frequency of leishmaniasis in Brazilian territory and clarified the principal points in the etiology, pathogenicity, and epidemiology of the disease. With the aid of animal inocula-

tion, and chiefly by agglutination tests, Marques da Cunha and E. Chagas (1937) separated the leishmania which causes American visceral leishmaniasis from *L. donovani* and *L. infantum* and called it *L. chagasi.* Marques da Cunha, however, after further studies, concluded that agglutination is not an adequate method for separating the various species of the genus Leishmania. For that reason, *L. chagasi* has become synonymous with *L. donovani.*

MUCOCUTANEOUS LEISHMANIASIS

GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION

The presence of mucocutaneous leishmaniasis has been noted throughout most of Latin America, from Mexico to the northern part of Argentina. The disease shows high incidence in certain regions, particularly in parts of Peru and Brazil.

In Brazil, the disease is most frequent in São Paulo. Silveira (1919) estimated that there were 15,000 cases in São Paulo; Pessôa (1941), over 40,000 patients in the endemic region.

ETIOLOGIC AGENT

The etiologic agent of mucocutaneous leishmaniasis is *L. braziliensis.* It has two forms: one, the nonflagellate, leishmania form, which is found in the human tissues and in animals susceptible to inoculation with the parasite; the other, the flagellate, leptomonas form, which is found in the digestive tube of the vector host and in cultures.

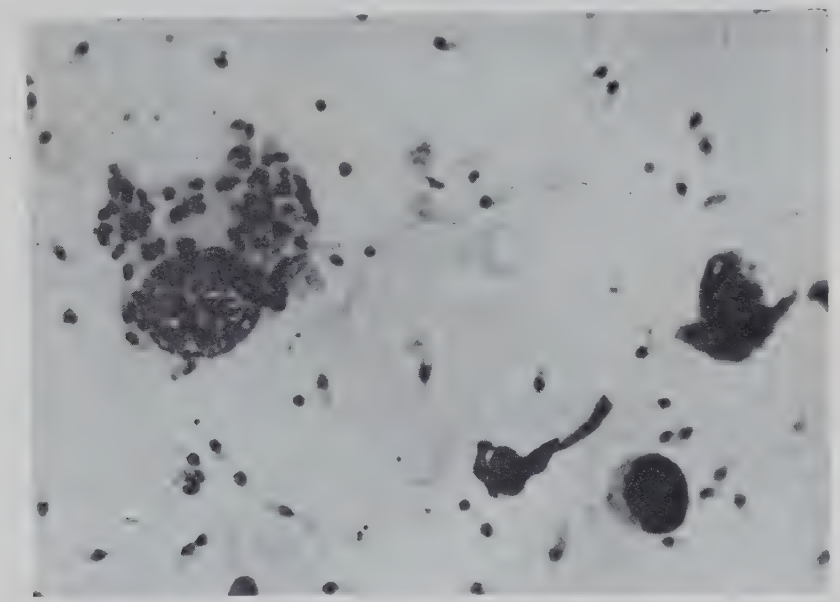


Fig. 73.—Smear of material obtained from puncture of a nonulcerative lesion; a macrophage containing 62 leishmanias may be observed. (Giemsa stain.) (After Pessôa and Barretto in I. Meeting of Derm. Syphil., Brazil, 1944.)

The nonflagellate type might be found also in the invertebrate host just as the flagellate type might be seen, very rarely, of course, in the vertebrate host.

1. **Forms Observed in the Vertebrate Host.**—The leishmania forms appear very often within the cells of the reticuloendothelial system; in smears they generally appear outside the cells, due to rupture of the cells while preparing the slides.

The typical leishmanias are oval, with one extremity more rounded than the other. They measure from 2 to 4 microns by 1.5 or 2.5 microns. This form is susceptible to variations. The distinguishing features of the parasite are the cytoplasm, the nucleus, and the kinetoplast.

2. **Forms Observed in the Insect Vector.**—When the leishmania forms are ingested by the insect vector, they evolve more or less rapidly to produce the flagellate form.

Culture

Rogers (1904) was the first to cultivate a parasite of the genus Leishmania. Nicolle, while studying visceral leishmaniasis in Tunis, showed that *L. donovani (L. infantum)* can be easily cultivated in the water of condensation of rabbit blood agar, devised by McNeal and Novy for cultivation of *Trypanosoma lewisi*. A modified medium has come to be known as N.N.N. medium. In 1908, Nicolle successfully cultivated *L. tropica*. Lindenberg in 1909 and Pedroso and da Silva in 1911 obtained the same results with *L. braziliensis*.

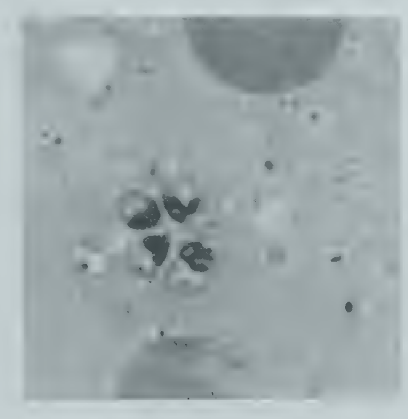


Fig. 74.—*Leishmania braziliensis.* Parasites in rosette pattern. Smear from an ulcer. (Original.)

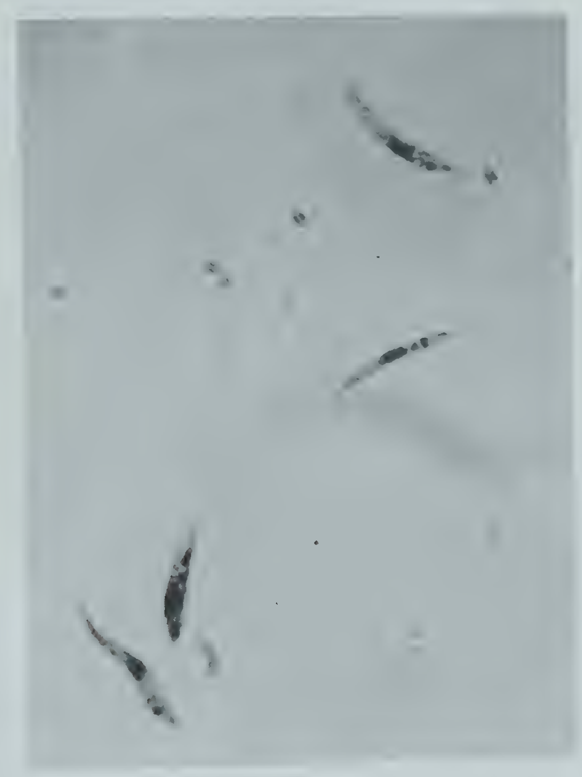


Fig. 75.—*Leishmania braziliensis*, leptomonas stages, found in the pharynx of *Phlebotomus whitmani* naturally infected. (Original.)

TRANSMISSION

Transmission by Phlebotomus

Long ago the intimate relationship between incidence of Phlebotomus and mucocutaneous leishmaniasis was noticed. Several authors, such as Neiva and Penna (1916), Neiva and Barbará (1917), Pirajá de Silva (1918), and Cerqueira (1919), studied the possibility of the transmission of the protozoan by the Phlebotomus.

Aragão (1922) found leptomonas in the digestive tube of *Phlebotomus intermedius* and reproduced the ulcer in dogs. Pifano (1940), in Venezuela, found *Phlebotomus* sp. naturally infected by leptomonas in regions of mucocutaneous leishmaniasis.

1. In the state of São Paulo there is a notably definite relationship between distribution of the disease and of the *Phlebotomus whitmani, Phlebotomus pessoai,* and *Phlebotomus migonei.* In regions of endemicity, these three species constitute almost the entire Phlebotomus fauna (Barretto, 1943).

There is a two-month lapse or period between the maximum incidence of Phlebotomus and new cases of leishmaniasis, this period of two months being within the accepted limits of the incubation period of the disease.

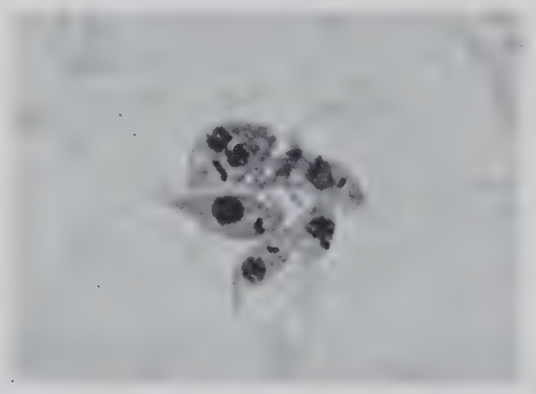


Fig. 76.—Leptomonas stages in a culture of *Leishmania braziliensis* in N.N.N. medium. (Original.)

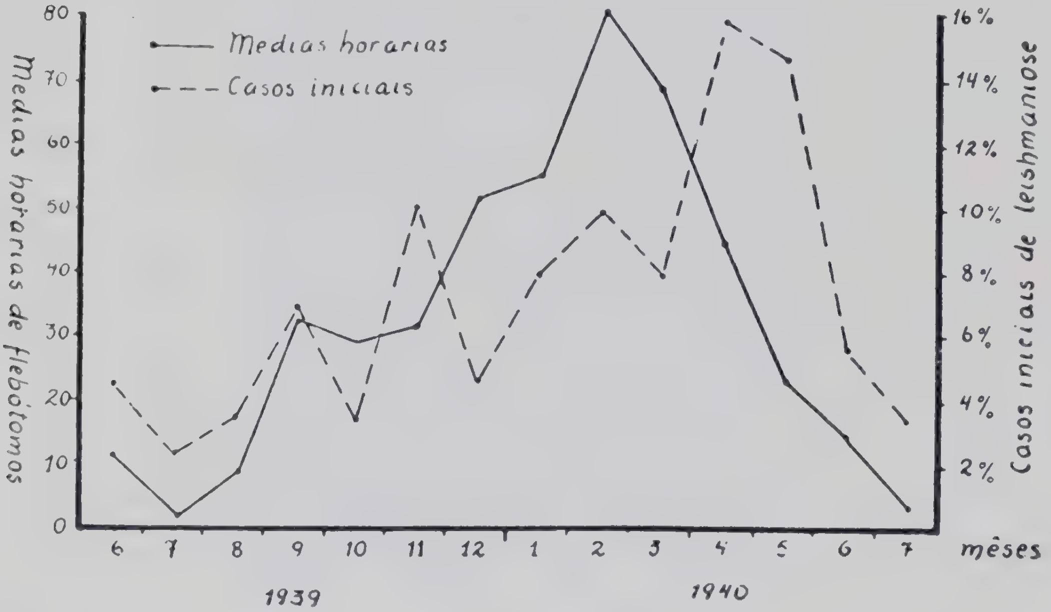


Fig. 77.—Graph showing the relationship between monthly incidence of Phlebotomus caught with human bait in Pompéia and incidence of early cases of mucocutaneous leishmaniasis. (After M. P. Barretto, 1943. In "Onservações sôbre a biologia, em condições naturais, dos flebótomos do Estado de São Paulo. Thesis.)

2. Pessôa and Pestana (1940) also found *P. migonei* infected. Coutinho (1940) observed leptomonas forms in *P. pessoai.* Finally, Pessôa and Coutinho (1941), examining by dissection and microscopically a total of 9,273 specimens of Phlebotomus, found 0.22 per cent to be naturally infected.

3. After feeding on individuals or animals infected with *L. braziliensis*, the Phlebotomus becomes infected. Pessôa and Coutinho (1941) fed *P. whitmani*

and obtained 2.17 per cent infections. In like manner, *P. fischeri* were fed, and 0.41 per cent infections obtained.

The species which seem to play a predominant role in the dissemination of the disease in São Paulo are the *P. whitmani*, *P. pessoai*, and *P. migonei*. The *P. fischeri*, with its high incidence in regions of sporadic cases of leishmaniasis, with the possibility of its being experimentally infected, and its marked anthropophilia, seems to be the transmitter of the disease in certain regions.

Other Processes of Transmission

1. **Direct Contact.**—The possibility of transmission by direct contact has been accepted by several authors.

2. **Nonhematophagous Arthropods.**—Nonhematophagous arthropods have been incriminated as transmitters of the disease. At the present time, however, this idea is not accepted because American leishmaniasis is a disease acquired in the forests, where flies are not so abundant as in the cities. The disease is endemic only in certain definite regions, whereas the housefly and other flies can be found everywhere.

Table X

Clinical Aspects of American Cutaneous Leishmaniasis

I. Cutaneous	Nonulcerative	(a) Papular (initial)	
		(b) Impetiginous	
		(c) Tuberiform	Sparse In groups In patches Diffuse infiltrative (lupoid), etc.
		(d) Nodular hypodermic	
		(e) Fungoid	Frambesioid Verruciform
	Ulcerative	(a) Ecthymatiform	
		(b) Ulcerous	
		(c) Fungoid ulcer	
		(d) Nodular ulcer	
II. Mucocutaneous	1. With mucous lesion and without apparent cutaneous lesion		
	2. With mucocutaneous lesion	Cutaneous lesion (item I)	
		Mucous lesion	(a) Infiltrative (initial) (b) Ulcerous (c) Fungoid ulcer (d) Fungoid
III. Lympathic	(a) Adenitis (initial) (b) Adenolymphangitis		

3. **Hematophagous Arthropods, Exclusive of the Phlebotomus.**—Several authors have cited hematophagous arthropods other than the phlebotomus as transmitters. Da Matta (1910), Flu (1911), Lindsay (1914), etc., incriminated ticks; Brumpt and Pedroso (1913), the Tabanidae (horseflies). Phlebotomus, however, is probably the only hematophagous arthropod which plays an important role in the transmission of American leishmaniasis.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Latitude.—Skin leishmaniasis has been found as far north as 21 degrees in the peninsula of Yucatan and as far south as 30 degrees in Argentina (Bernasconi, 1928), as well as in Brazil (Pinto, 1942).

Altitude.—Altitude is a factor which limits the distribution of the disease, for in leishmaniasis, as in malaria, the vectors become scarcer as the altitude becomes higher. Nevertheless, Escomel (1929) reported the disease in Peru at an altitude of 2,500 meters above sea level. According to Weiss (1943), ‘‘uta’’ (exclusively cutaneous type) has been found in the high regions of the Peruvian Andes, at an altitude of 1,200 to 2,800 meters above sea level. The dangerous mucocutaneous type, espundia, is found in the low regions, in the forests.

Climate.—In regions with low temperatures the disease is found along water courses and in the low areas. In high temperature areas, it is found in the high places, where the temperature is suitable to the development of the vector and also of the leishmanias in the body of the Phlebotomus.

Season.—In São Paulo, Brazil, according to Pessôa (1941), the largest numbers of cases appear in autumn (April and June) and they are less numerous in winter and early spring (July and October). Cases occur, however, throughout the entire year, due to the occasional extremely long periods of incubation. In Mexico, Beltrán and Bustamante (1942) noted a high incidence of leishmaniasis from September to December, which corresponds to autumn in that part of America.

Geography Affected.—As opposed to kala-azar and Oriental sore, American cutaneous leishmaniasis has been shown, from the first epidemiologic studies, to be a typically sylvan disease.

Pessôa (1941) showed that this fact is related to the biology of the transmitting Phlebotomus, exclusively sylvan in habits, which is found in the woods in great numbers at the time when the weather is hot and after summer rains. Since the vector insects do not develop within dwellings or in their immediate vicinity, the disease is not found in urban zones even in those cities and villages which are situated in highly endemic regions.

Age, Sex, and Race.—Leishmaniasis attacks without reference to age, sex, or race. Influence of age and sex is connected with the possibility of more or less exposure to the disease. The yellow races (Japanese) are not as frequently infected as the white and colored races because, as a rule, they do not work in the woods. Brazilians clear out the forests, after which the Japanese settle in districts that have been cleared. On certain farms, where white, black, and yellow children live under identical conditions, no significant difference has been observed in the incidence of the disease.

PATHOGENESIS

General Remarks

The invasion of the human body by *Leishmania braziliensis* usually occurs in the unprotected skin by direct inoculation of the parasite, in leptomonas form, through the bite of the Phlebotomus. After a period of incubation, during which the parasites multiply actively in the form of leishmanias, in the histiocytic elements of the skin, there appears the initial lesions. This is a papule or papular erythema. The parasitic corpuscles are found in this lesion.

These primary lesions may regress and present an abortive course, they may remain stationary, or there may slowly develop skin nodules, or, in some cases, they may further progress to the formation of ulcerative lesions accompanied by neighboring glandular tumefaction. These ulcers are at times of a torpid character; at times they go on to natural cicatrization. In other cases the lesions progress and at times present a vegetative character with no tendency to spontaneous cure. Then, by a mechanism as yet not clearly defined, by metastasis of the primary lesion, the parasites invade the nasobuccopharyngeal mucosa and cause ulcerative or vegetative lesions of a chronic course, only rarely with a tendency to spontaneous cure. The disease is chronic, with a general tendency to invade the mucosae. The possibility of a spontaneous cure varies greatly according to geographical areas, to the type of lesion, and to the part of the skin affected.

The disease is also characterized by its irregular course, there being no chronology as to the appearance of the various localizations or pathologic manifestations.

Period of Incubation

The minimum period of incubation for leishmaniasis of the skin is unknown, but according to our observations it is generally short, ten to twenty-five days. Longer periods of incubation have been observed in patients and in experimental animals, in some cases as long as ten months to a year.

Initial Lesions

After the period of incubation, the initial lesions appear. These are in the form of papules, without any definite identifying characteristics. These papules, which may or may not be pruritic, are accompanied by sensation of heat or pain.

The initial stages less frequently assume other characteristics, such as erythematous papular lesions of the skin, impetiginous lesions, small skin nodules, etc. In the beginning of the disease there is often neighboring lymphadenopathy, without apparent involvement of the lymphatic vessels: the initial leishmanial lesion is a veritable cutaneous-glandular complex. Parasitologic examination of the initial lesion shows a great quantity of parasitic corpuscles, which are also found in the enlarged lymph nodes. The ulcerative process in the initial papule, by virtue of necrosis of the outer derma, proceeds to the epithelium. Detachment occurs, with release and scattering of the necrotic material, creating an ulcer called "espundia cancrum" by Escomel (1911) and "espundia cancrum," "initial cancrum," or "cancrum of inoculation" by Argentine authors.

Another form of beginning ulceration mentioned by several authors is traumatic. These cases generally refer to patients with a traumatic lesion, which cicatrizes at first, only to open later, or which may slowly become transformed into a large ulcer with infiltration of the margins and slow increase in size, indicating that a particular infection has attacked the wound, and may determine its later development.

CLINICAL ASPECTS

The following classification of the clinical aspects of this disease is taken from the schema of Rabelho (1925) (slightly modified):

Ulcerative Forms.—These are the most common. They include types indicated in the general picture. The ulcerative lesions of cutaneous leishmaniasis show loss of deep substance, varying in size, frequently attaining or even exceeding 10 cm. in diameter. These lesions, with clear, projecting borders, have, at times, high margins intensely infiltrated; at times they are irregular, moist, and violaceous.

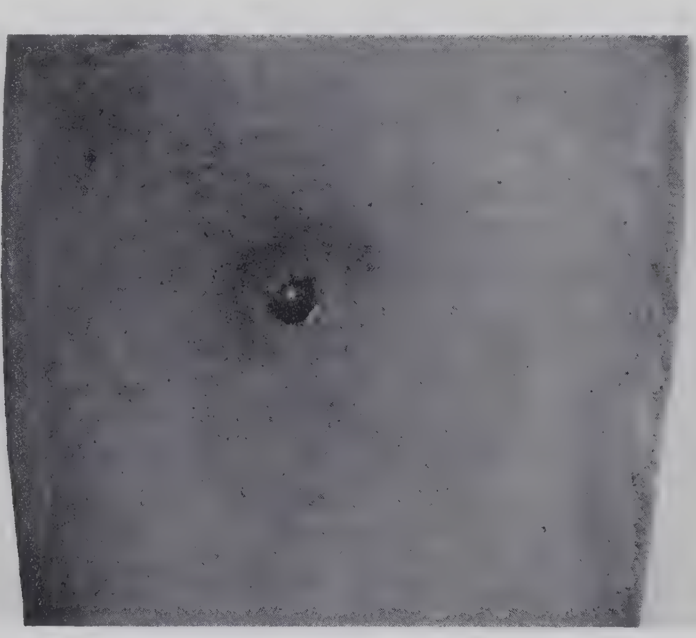


Fig. 78.—Mucocutaneous leishmaniasis. Ecthymatiform lesion. (Original of Aguiar Pupo.)

The exudate is serous, at times with a purulent secretion stagnating under the brown membrane with which the base is covered and which lies at the level of the surrounding skin. If the membrane is detached, one can see a bright red base, with gross granulations, which bleeds easily. The infiltrated margins vary greatly in width and height. In recent cases the edges are sharp, while in older cases the ulcerated surface is gradually lost. Often, around the larger ulcers, smaller ulcers form, papular in appearance at first, later becoming superficial ulcers.

Nonulcerative Forms.—The most common nonulcerative forms are the impetiginous and the tuberiform, the latter being grouped or scattered. They may also be verrucose or frambesioid. The last are most commonly encountered. The verrucose lesions have a clearer outline and are round, with surfaces of irregular wart-like form, markedly irregular, with exudation in the early stages and hard scabs in old, dry stages. The frambesioid variety is characterized by soft, papillomatous lesions, resembling those of yaws or bouba. This type is called "figueira" in the Amazon (Chagas, 1913) and can appear clinically like "pé musgoso" of "pé verrucoso," which are caused by various agents, constituting a syndrome. This syndrome is found relatively frequently among our people, especially in hospitalized leishmaniasis patients.

Lymphatic Form.—Lymphangitis and adenitis occur frequently in leishmaniasis. The lymphatic vessels are transformed into thick cords of uniform diameter, not painful, at times with dilatations easily palpable through the skin. Such nodules may rupture and become new ulcers. This lymphatic form is quite similar to leishmanial lymphangitis and sporotrichosis. The lymphatic glands are frequently involved in the initial lesions as well as in the later stages of the disease. Marked enlargement of the glands is not very common; they are seldom larger than a hazelnut.

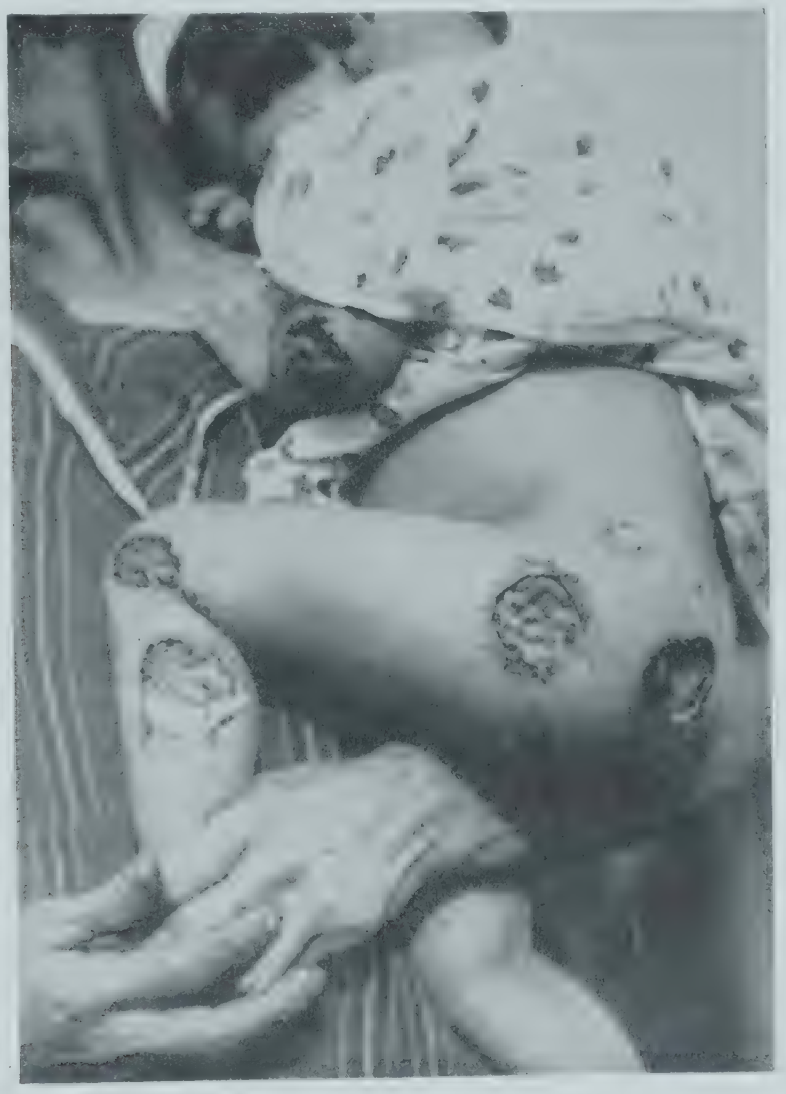


Fig. 79.—Mucocutaneous leishmaniasis. Ulcerative lesions. (Original.)

Number and Localization of the Lesions

There are usually very few lesions, one to three; there are, however, some cases in which one may find more of these lesions scattered over the body.

The lesions are usually found on the exposed parts of the body.

In Mexico, according to Beltrán and Bustamante (1942), and in Costa Rica, according to Rotter and Peña Chavarria (1935), there is a predilection for the ears, then the arms, the number of ulcers found on the legs and feet being very small. Our own experiences have verified the localization in the ears in a percentage of 0.8 to 5.3.

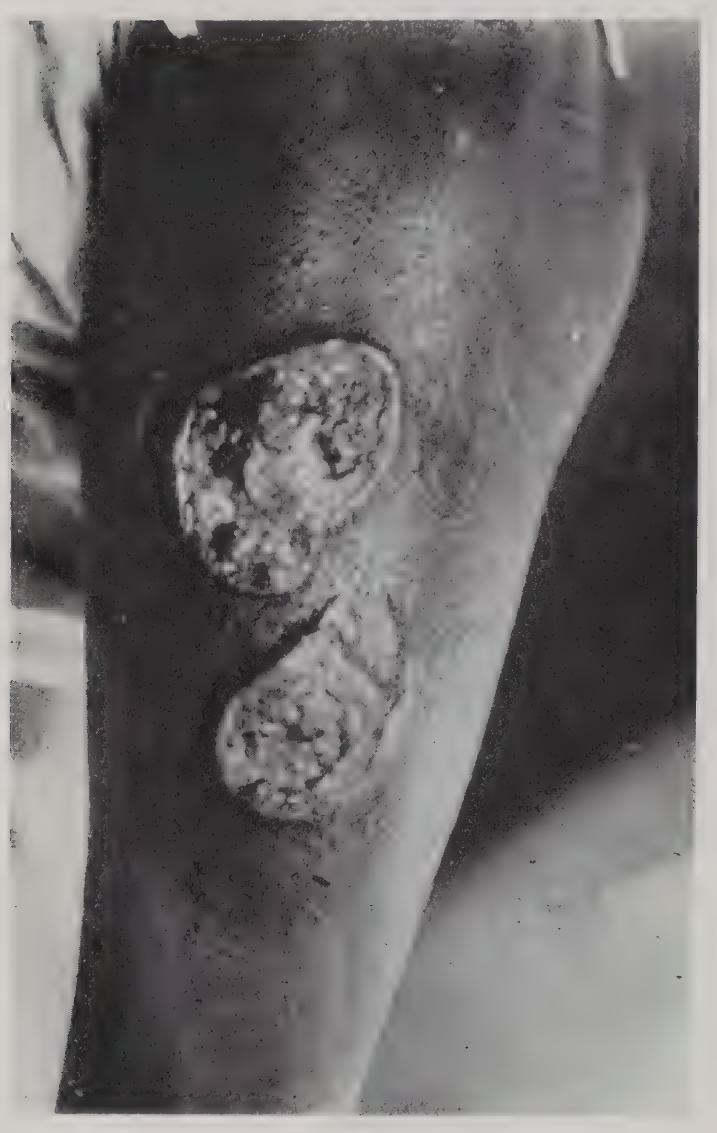


Fig. 80.

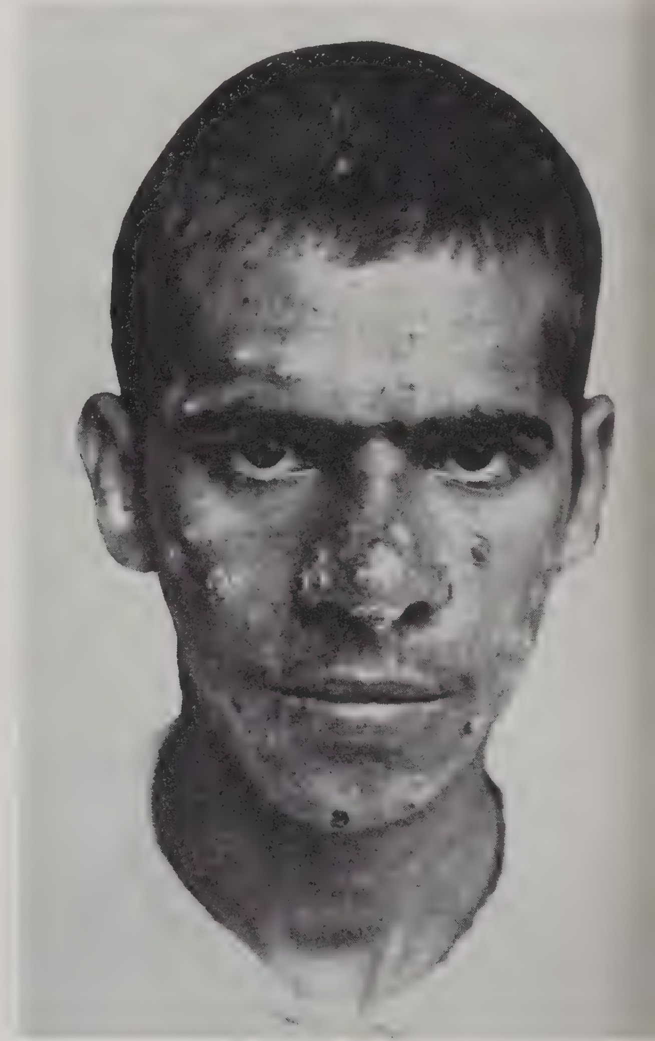


Fig. 81.

Fig. 80.—Mucocutaneous leishmaniasis. Ulcerative lesions with fungoid aspect. (Original.)
Fig. 81.—Mucocutaneous leishmaniasis. Papulotuberiform lesions. (Original of Aguiar Pupo.)

Mucosal Form.—One of the most typical characteristics of American leishmaniasis is the frequency with which the parasites produce lesions in the nasobucco-pharyngolaryngeal mucosa. This is the difference between cutaneous leishmaniasis and Oriental sore, where lesions of the mucosa are exceptional. The invasion of the mucosa in American leishmaniasis is a secondary manifestation of the cutaneous lesion. Quite often it is difficult to demonstrate lesions in the skin, since the disease may have an abortive course without leaving a scar. In about 10 per cent of the cases the cutaneous lesions appear simultaneously with lesions of the mucosa; but the mechanism should not be considered the same as that in syphilis. Although some authors believe

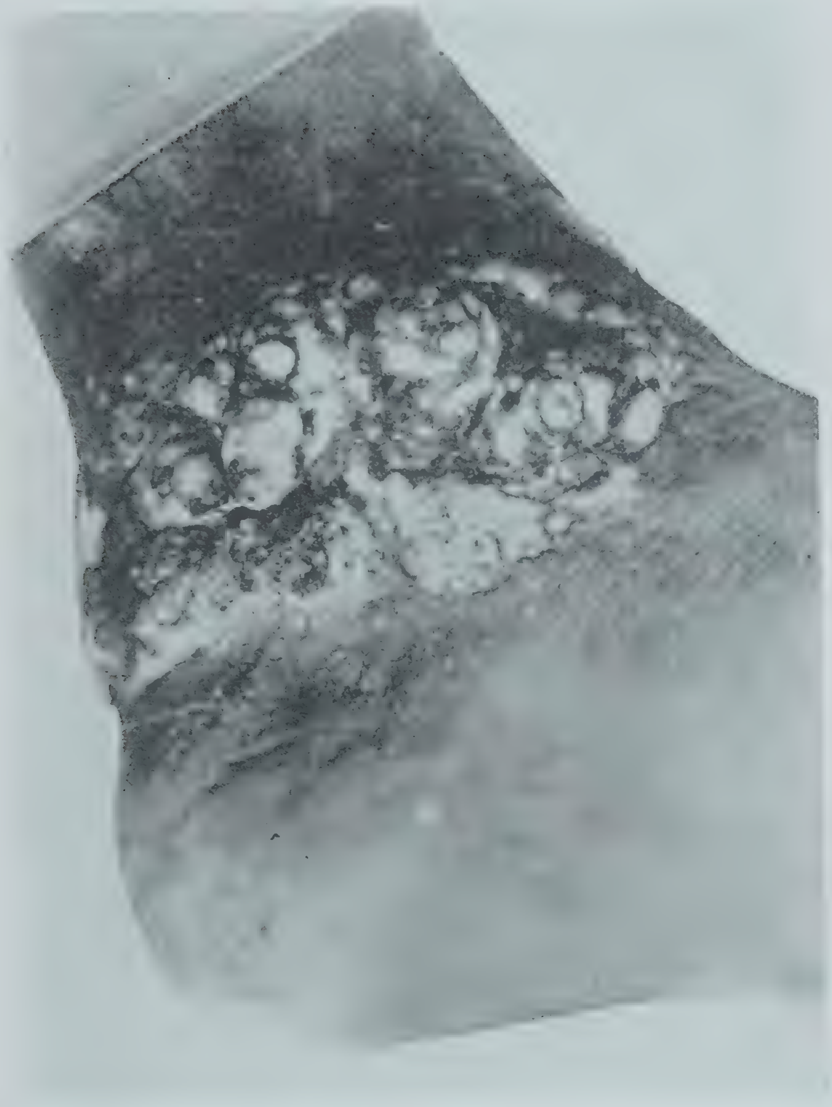


Fig. 82.—Mucocutaneous leishmaniasis. Verrucose-papillomatous lesion. (Original of Aguiar Pupo.)

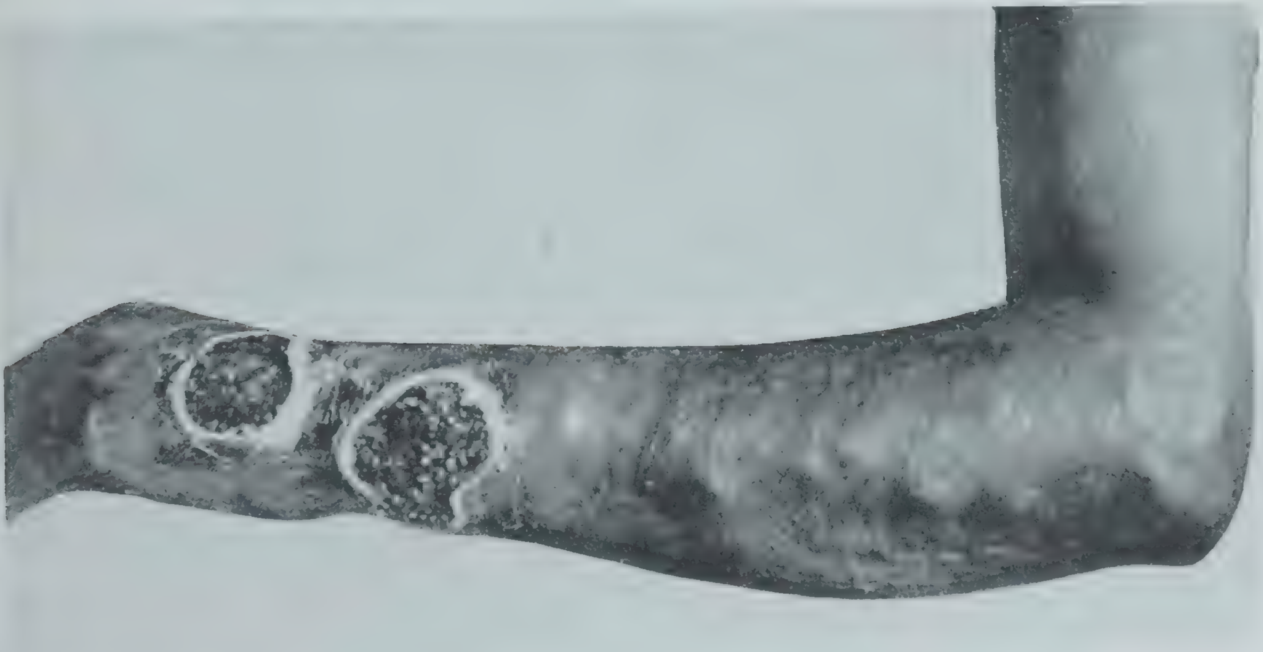


Fig. 83.—Mucocutaneous leishmaniasis. Ulcerative lesions and nodules developed in the lymphatic course. (Original of Aguiar Pupo.)

that infection of the mucosa is due to autoinoculation, the majority feel that it is disseminated through the blood stream or lymphatics. Villela, Pestana, and Pessôa (1939) showed that in certain cases localization of the parasites in the mucosa occurs very early. Material from currettage of the nasal mucosa in cases with primary skin lesions has revealed parasites in spite of its normal appearance.

Initial ulcerations of the mucosa locate almost always in the nasal mucosa; they begin with hyperemia of the anterior part of the cartilaginous process.

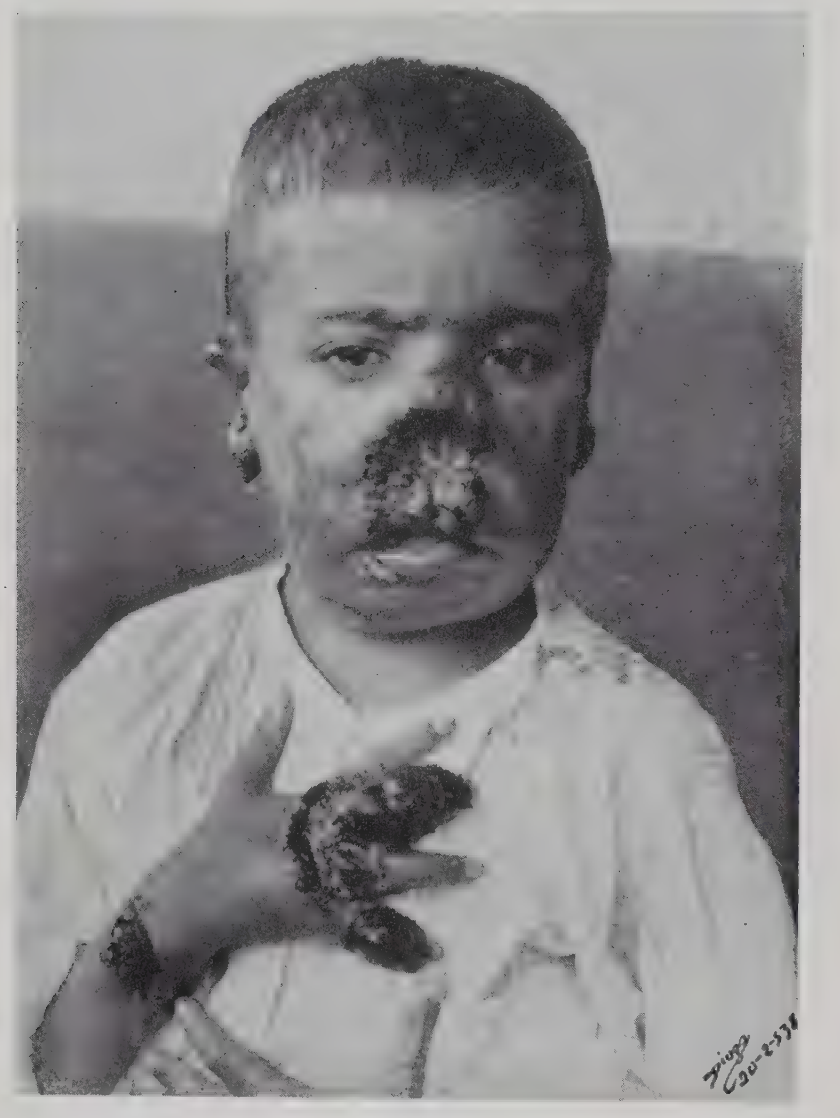


Fig. 84.—Mucocutaneous leishmaniasis, mutilating type. Fungoid ulcer of the right forearm and hand; destructive lesions of both ears; nasal lesion with destruction of the soft parts of the nose and involvement of the upper lip. (Original.)

After the ulcer has formed, it extends deeply into the tissue until there is destruction of the mucosa and invasion of the septal cartilage, and of the contralateral mucosa, which becomes infiltrated and ulcerated. Perforation of the nasal septum is one of the most common consequences of nasal leishmaniasis. In many cases the external appearance of the nose remains normal for a relatively long period of time, although internally a great deal of damage has been done. Destruction is not limited to the membrane of the

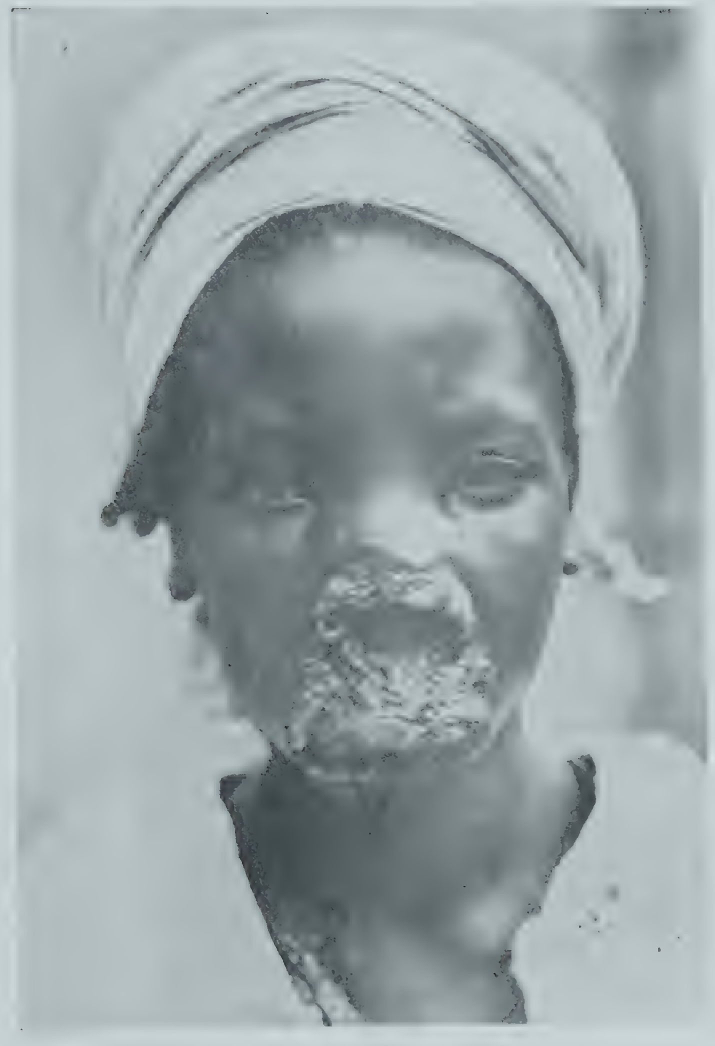


Fig. 85.—Mucocutaneous leishmaniasis, mutilating type. Destruction of soft parts of the nose and involvement of pharynx, mouth, lips, etc. (Original.)

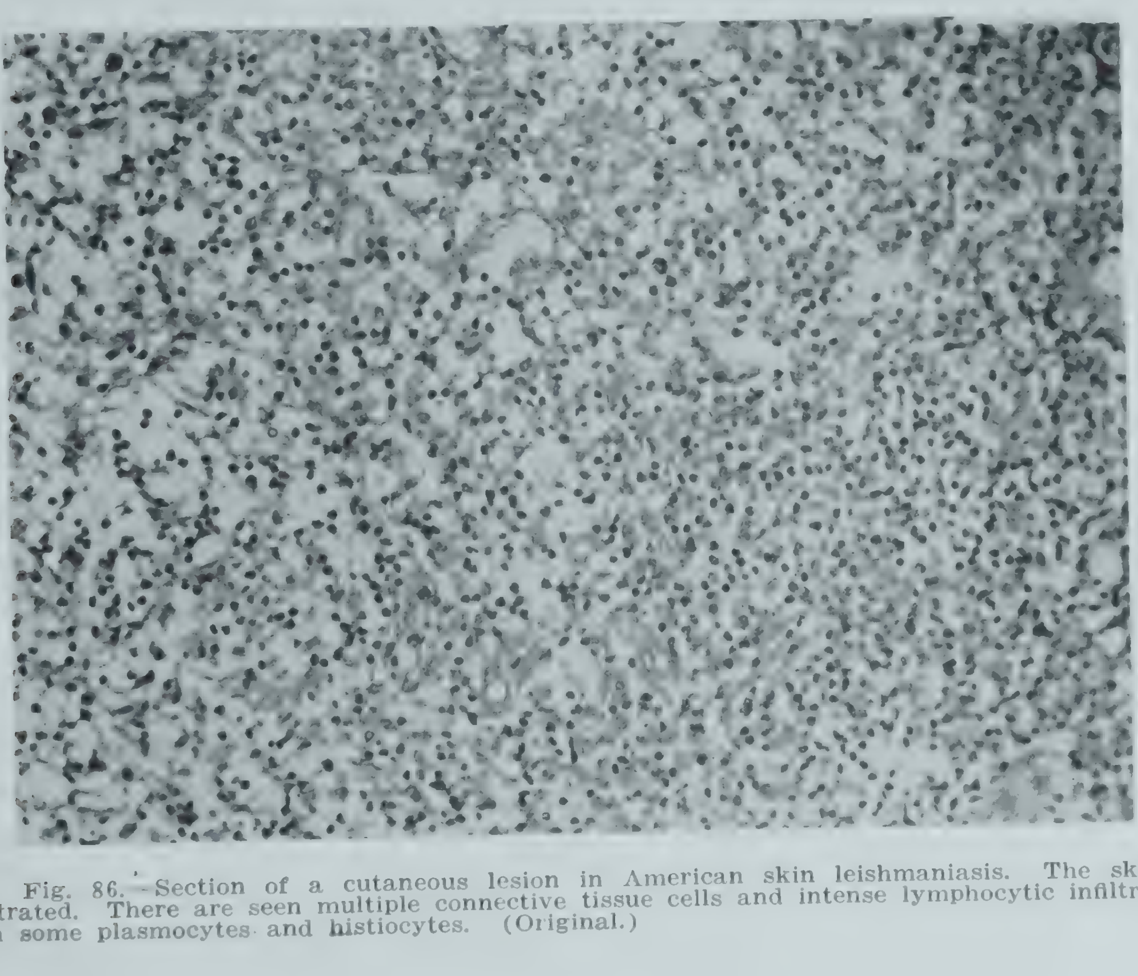


Fig. 86.—Section of a cutaneous lesion in American skin leishmaniasis. The skin is infiltrated. There are seen multiple connective tissue cells and intense lymphocytic infiltration with some plasmocytes and histiocytes. (Original.)

septum and to the quadrangular cartilage but may advance and destroy the entire cartilaginous frame of the nose, thus causing horrible disfiguration of the patient's face. The ulceration may extend still further and involve both the upper and lower lips, causing dreadful mutilation. Generally the bony frame of the nose is preserved.

Nasal lesions are persistent, progressive, resistant to therapy, diffuse; by contiguity they invade the rhinopharynx, principally the soft palate, the tonsils and their pillars, the posterolateral walls of the pharynx, the larynx, the trachea, and even the tongue and gums. In the pharynx, the infiltrative, proliferative process may cause fusion of the uvula, the pillars, the lateral cords, and the posterior wall.

Finally, in rare cases, leishmaniasis may localize in the genital or ocular mucosae.

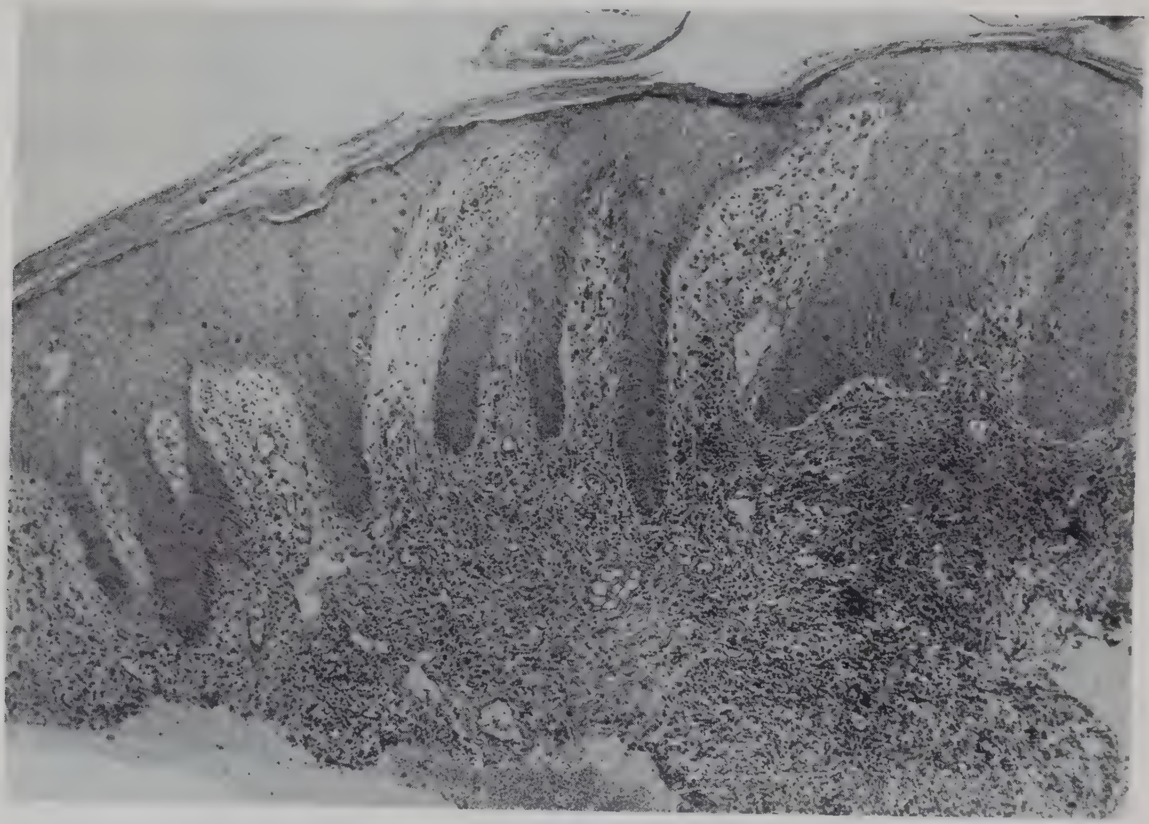


Fig. 87.—Cutaneous lesion in skin leishmaniasis. Note marked acanthosis. (Original.)

Frequency of Localization in the Mucosa: The frequency with which leishmaniasis localizes in the mucosa varies considerably. While almost nonexistent in certain regions, as in Mexico (peninsula of Yucatan), in other regions, as among us here in Brazil, it is very common.

PATHOLOGY

Skin leishmaniasis, from the histopathologic point of view, is a granuloma composed of lymphocytes, plasmocytes, and histiocytic elements, at times in equal numbers, at times with one or another of these types of cells predominating, infiltrating the derma. One may notice, in the epithelium, a proliferative phenomenon—acanthosis. Usually necrosis is produced in the center of the granuloma, with loosening of the epithelium and formation of the ulcer. Less frequently, the lesion does not ulcerate, constituting the nonulcerative type.

The ulcerative lesions consist of waste substances, varying in extent, but they extend no deeper than the middle of the derma. In the smaller lesions alterations in the margins cause little change in contour of the ulcer. In larger ulcers, the epithelial changes are more pronounced, and there may be observed marked acanthosis, invading the derma in the form of thin epithelial cords close together. Giant cells are sporadic. Well-defined tuberculoid structures, absent in rapidly progressing recent ulcers, can be found in the chronic ulcers, where also well-defined tuberculoid nodules can be seen. Eosinophiles are generally not abundant; neutrophiles are found in greater numbers in the vicinity of the ulcer. Fibroblasts, absent in recent ulcers, are found in increasing numbers in the older ulcers, with a tendency toward cicatrization.

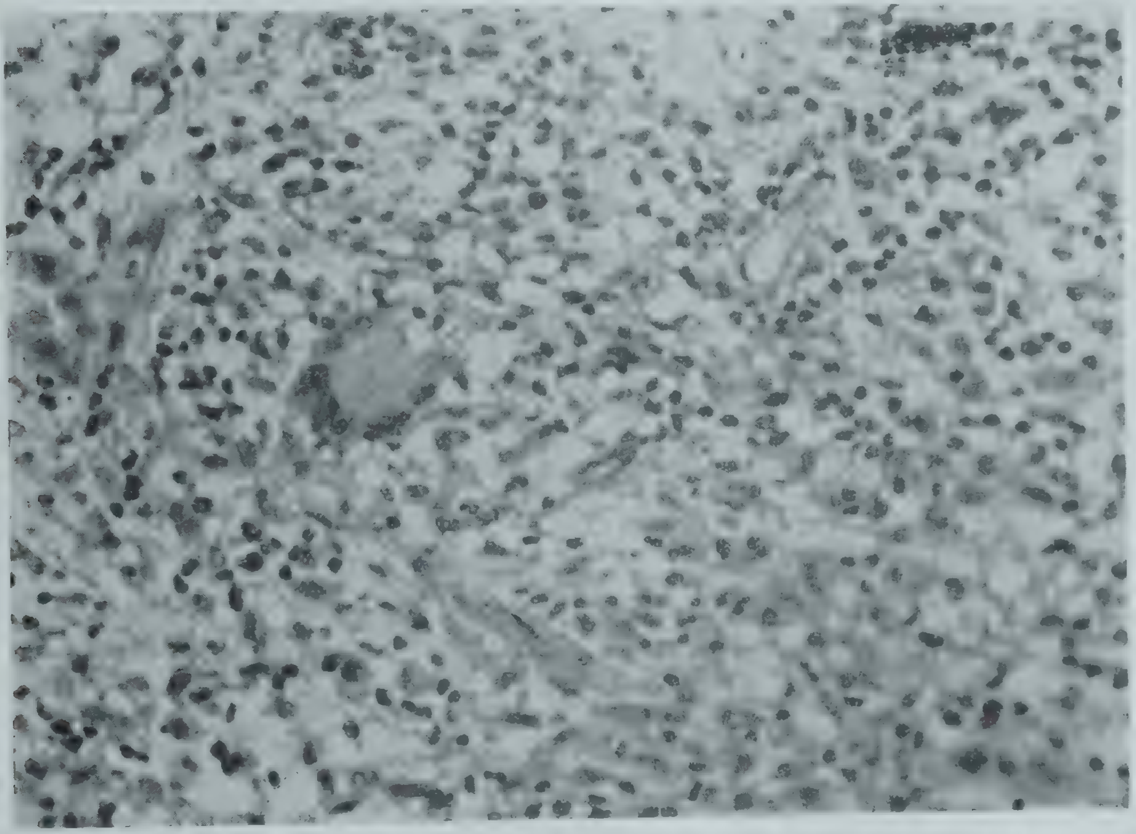


Fig. 88.—Section of mucocutaneous leishmaniasis, showing an accumulation of histiocytes and a giant cell. (Original.)

There is no difference, from the histopathologic point of view, between the verrucose and papillomatous types. There is always thickening of the skin layers. The stratum spinosum also becomes thickened, and there is a formation of horny masses which accumulate in the interpapillary spaces. This proliferation may extend irregularly into the subjacent tissues. The changes involve the derma, intensely infiltrated by histiocytic elements, with elongated and proliferous papillae. Lesions of the mucosae have been thoroughly studied by Klotz and Lindenberg (1923). They pointed out the formation of circumscribed nodules of histiocytic cells which characterize the stage of ulceration.

There are many leishmanias in the initial papular lesion or dermic nodule—they may be found in extraordinary numbers. Leishmanias are also numerous in the margins of recent ulcers which tend to progress rapidly; they usually decrease or even are absent in old and chronic ulcers with a torpid course. As to parasitism, cutaneous and mucosal lesions behave in the same way.

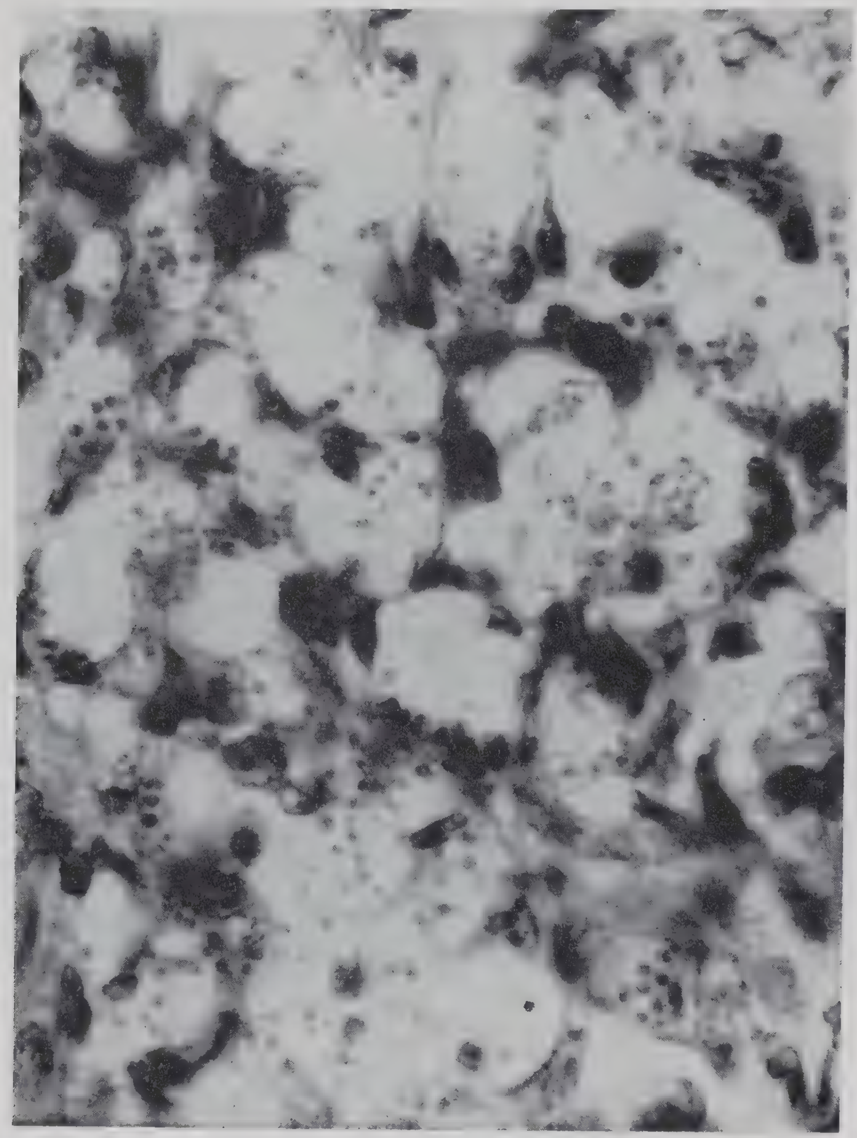


Fig. 89.—Mucocutaneous leishmaniasis. Section of an early lesion of the skin to show the intense parasitism. (Original.)

NATURAL AND EXPERIMENTAL INFECTION IN ANIMALS

Natural Infection

Pedroso (1923 and 1923a) observed a total of four cases of spontaneous leishmaniasis in the dog. Mazza (1926), in Argentina, found several dogs with ulcerations in the ears and in the flanks and discovered leishmanias in two. In 1927 Mazza reported finding leishmanias in ulcers of a dog and in an ulcer in the eye of a horse. Mello (1940) at Belém, Pará (Brazil), found numerous leishmanias in material from ulcers in the ear and nose of a cat.

Such findings seem to be merely accidental, since examinations have been made of hundreds of cats and dogs, as well as wild animals, without observing any lesions of leishmaniasis. Thus dissemination of skin leishmaniasis cannot be attributed to animals.

Experimental Infection

The disease has been produced experimentally by inoculation of triturated tissues containing the parasites or by the use of cultures of leishmania in dogs, monkeys, and mice. [Editor's Note (O. F.): Hamsters are being used in many laboratories.]

More recently, Fuller and Geiman (1942) reported that they had found an animal very susceptible to inoculation with *L. braziliensis*—the Texas squirrel, *Citellus tridecemlineatus.*

CLINICAL DIAGNOSIS

Cutaneous Form

In general, a diagnosis of cutaneous leishmaniasis is not difficult if the lesions assume the aspect of a typical ulcer. Often a glance at the lesion is sufficient to establish its nature. If, however, the lesions are verrucose, frambesioid, lymphangitic, etc., they might easily be mistaken for other disease entities, and it is very difficult to make a correct diagnosis. In such cases, one must make use of laboratory tests. The anamnesis aids in clarifying the diagnosis.

Mucosal Form

In this type, the anamnesis is very important, because the patients speak of previous lesions of the skin, and some of them still carry the evolutionary cutaneous ulcer. When these ulcers are no longer present, one may find the scars. As stated above, in some cases the patients show no skin lesions or subsequent scars. The site of the lesion, in the cartilaginous portion of the septum, its granulations and general appearance, all help to make the diagnosis. Local edema and hypertrophy, principally of the upper lip, give the patient's face a characteristic appearance which some authors call "facies leishmaniotica" and others "tapir face."

DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

The disease must be differentiated from other tropical diseases which are predominant in endemic zones. One of the most common of these is tropical ulcer. Tropical ulcer localizes in the lower third of the leg, exceptionally in other parts of the body. The pain, tendency to bleed, abundant suppuration, and odor all are elements which help in the differentiation of the two ulcerative processes.

It is also necessary to differentiate this disease from sporotrichotic lymphangitis; this is clinically impossible and is exclusively a laboratory procedure. It is also necessary to differentiate it from ecthyma and impetigo. In the differential diagnosis between nasal syphilis and leishmaniasis, it should be remembered that leishmaniasis affects the cartilaginous parts while syphilis affects the bony structure of the nose. Finally leishmaniasis might be confused with bouba and blastomycosis and, more rarely, with cutaneous and mucosal tuberculosis or with leprosy. In all these cases, the finding of the etiologic agent solves the problem.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Demonstration of the Parasite

The most important laboratory test is the demonstration of the parasite by direct methods—finding it in the ulcers, glands, or by culture.

Parasites can be demonstrated in material taken from lesions of the skin and the mucosa as well as from glands. For this purpose, curettage, puncture, or biopsy may be used. As soon as the material is obtained, it must be placed in culture media or sectioned for microscopic examination. In closed lesions, puncture with a large needle is advisable.

To find the parasite in the nasal mucosa, curettage must be performed after anesthesia with Neotutocaine. Material obtained should then be smeared on slides and stained by the Giemsa method.

Culture in appropriate media, according to some authors, increases the possibility of finding the parasite. It must be remembered that leishmanias do not grow in the presence of other microorganisms, so that several tubes must be used to make the culture.

Serologic Reactions*

Serologic reactions used for the diagnosis of kala-azar do not give satisfactory results in cutaneous leishmaniasis. Complement fixation tests are very complicated and not very successful because of lack of a good antigen.

Intradermal Reaction*

The intradermal reaction, also called Montenegro's test, is an allergic reaction. It was introduced by Montenegro (1926) and is based on the work of Wagner (1923). The test was later thoroughly studied by Buss (1929), Gomes (1939), and Pessôa and Pestana (1940).

The antigen is a suspension of leptomonas in phenolized saline solution. It is injected intradermally in dosage of 0.1 to 0.2 c.c. Positive reactions show the formation of a specific papule, which attains maximum development in forty-eight hours, remains four or five days, and then regresses and disappears in about four days, more or less, according to its intensity. This test gives a high percentage of positive results (about 95 per cent). It may be negative in early cases but in such cases parasites can always be found.

---

*See also Chapter 72.

THERAPY

Tartar Emetic

Tartar emetic was used for the first time in the treatment of cutaneous leishmaniasis by Gaspar Vianna in 1912. It must be used by intravenous injection in a 1 or 2 per cent solution. Dosage for adults is 0.10 Gm. three times a week, the initial dose being 0.06 Gm. In children from 6 to 12 years of age, a dose of 0.05 Gm. is used. Injections must be given every other day in a series of twelve to fifteen injections, with an interval of ten to fifteen days. Three or four series of treatments are given, according to the case and the tolerance of the patient.

This drug is not always well tolerated. There may be immediate or delayed reactions. The immediate bad effects are cough, brachial neuralgia, nausea, and vomiting. Delayed reactions are headache, various eruptions, albuminuria, etc. These symptoms appear principally after the use of doses larger than 0.10 Gm. A very common phenomenon which constitutes one of the greatest inconveniences connected with the use of tartar emetic is rheumatic pain. The injections also cause painful reactions in the veins of the arm, because this drug causes a certain degree of phlebitis.

The treatment must be prolonged even after the period of cicatrization until there is complete disappearance of the nodules or thickenings of the skin. Otherwise the lesions reappear within a short time and the therapy already given is useless. In the papillomatous and verrucose types, which are the more resistant to treatment, recurrences are more frequent. Recent cutaneous lesions are more prompt to show the beneficial effects of the medication. The effect of tartar emetic upon mucosal lesions is the same as upon the skin. Recurrences, however, of lesions of the mucosa are more common.

Fuadin (Neoantimosan)

Fuadin was introduced for the treatment of cutaneous leishmaniasis by Mazza and Arias (1931) in Argentina where it is prepared by Bayer and sold commercially in solutions of 6.3 per cent concentration in 1.5 c.c. and 5 c.c. ampules. The complete series is 30 c.c. or approximately 1.9 Gm. of Fuadin, equivalent to 0.30 Gm. of antimony.

Fuadin is given intramuscularly every other day. For adults, the first injection should be 1 c.c.; the second, 1.5 c.c.; and the third, 3.5 c.c. Following this, the 3.5 c.c. dosage is repeated on alternate days, or 5 c.c. are given every three days. Two or three series of eight to ten injections are given with intervals of two or three weeks between the series. Dosage for women is two-thirds of the dosage for men; for children it is 1 c.c. per each 10 kilograms of weight.

Reactions to the use of Fuadin are cough, nausea, fever, etc. In treatment with Fuadin, the efficacy of which has been stressed by many authorities, relapses are also common, and treatment must be given long after apparent cure of the lesions. Mazza and collaborators considered the action of Fuadin upon lesions of the mucosa to be superior to that of tartar emetic. In this author's experience, however, Fuadin has proved inferior to tartar emetic for lesions of the mucosa and not superior for lesions of the skin. One great advantage of Fuadin over tartar emetic is that it can be used by the intramuscular route.

Eparseno (Amino-Arseno-Phenol)

Eparseno was introduced in the treatment of leishmaniasis by Pupo (1926). It is a glucoside of arsphenamine dioxy-diamido-arsenobenzol (Manson-Bahr). Each 1 c.c. of Eparseno contains 0.12 Gm. of amino-arseno-phenol. It is given by injection at two-day intervals. For children, there is a proprietary called "Infantile Eparseno," each cubic centimeter of which contains 0.05 Gm. of the salt, this dosage being used for each 10 kilograms of body weight by intramuscular or intravenous injection.

In general, a series of 10 ampules is given, followed by an interval of ten days, until 40 or 50 ampules, according to the patient's tolerance, have been used. Due to the arsenic content of this drug, toxic phenomena occur at times, such as diarrhea, intestinal colic, erythrodermia, and polyneuritis. In such cases, treatment should be immediately discontinued, and preparations containing vitamin B, as well as strychnine injections, should be used. Injections of Eparseno are the most efficacious means of treating this disease. Lesions of the mucosa, refractory to antimony, are more rapidly cured with Eparseno. Eparseno is also efficacious in the treatment of cutaneous forms of the disease, cicatrizing the ulcers in a relatively shorter time than tartar emetic. Nevertheless, relapses occur quite often, about as often with Eparseno as with tartar emetic.

Sodium Arsenite

This arsenical compound also was introduced in the treatment of cutaneous leishmaniasis by Pupo (1935). It is used in doses of 2 to 5 mg. by intramuscular injection.

It acts efficiently in leishmanial ulcers of the skin. However, relapses are more common with this treatment than with tartar emetic, and its action on the mucosa is noticeably inferior to that of Eparseno or tartar emetic.

LOCAL TREATMENT

For the local treatment of lesions, disinfectant substances such as lactic acid are used, or injections of Atabrine, emetine, or phosphorated oil are made into the base of the ulcer. Thermocautery and diathermic fulguration and coagulation have also been used with more or less success.

Such local treatment is merely adjuvant and should always be used with specific general treatment in the form of injections of antimony or arsenicals.

PROPHYLAXIS

Campaign Against Vector.—We have found that it is virtually impossible to destroy the larval foci of Phlebotomus, since we do not know the natural breeding places of the transmitting species.

Attacks against the adult forms offer more hope of success. Good results are expected from the use of DDT, its action having been proved against several species of arthropods.

Defense Against the Bite of the Phlebotomus.—First, there is a need to construct dwellings at a distance from the jungle. According to Takaoka (1928), Phlebotomi do not fly far, so that location of homes more than 100 meters from the woods will prevent invasion by these diptera. Protection of dwellings by netting is not possible in our endemic zones.

Finally, we can recommend the use of mosquito netting, of repellents, and the protection of the exposed parts of the body by leggings, gloves, etc. Such methods, while theoretically interesting, are very difficult to apply practically.

Preventive Vaccination.—Preventive vaccination was used by Pessôa and Pestana (1940) and their collaborators of the Commission for the Study of Leishmaniasis. One preventive vaccine is composed of a phenolized suspension of leptomonas; each cubic centimeter of suspension contains 100 to 120 million of these organisms. Three injections with one-week interval are made. There is little reaction and the vaccine is well tolerated. Pessôa (1941) demonstrated the efficacy of this vaccination in a highly endemic zone (Table XI).

TABLE XI

RESULTS OF PREVENTIVE VACCINATION AGAINST MUCOCUTANEOUS LEISMANIASIS
(After Pessôa, 1941)

	NUMBER	NUMBER OF PATIENTS WHO DEVELOPED LEISHMANIASIS	PERCENTAGE
Vaccinated	444	12	2.7
Not vaccinated	683	108	15.6

CUTANEOUS LEISHMANIASIS

GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION

Cutaneous leishmaniasis is endemic in several countries of the Mediterranean area: Italy, Greece, Spain, Morocco, Algeria, Tunis, Tripoli, and Egypt. It also is found in some regions of Africa: Abyssinia, Nigeria, French Congo, etc. It is very common in Syria, Palestine, Saudi Arabia, Iraq, and other countries of Asia Minor as well as in certain regions of the U.S.S.R., as in the Caucasus and Southern Russia. There are many cases in India and Indochina.

ETIOLOGIC AGENT

The etiologic agent of cutaneous leishmaniasis or Oriental sore is the *Leishmania tropica* (Wright, 1903), the morphology of which is identical with that of *L. braziliensis*.

CULTIVATION

L. tropica was cultivated for the first time by Nicolle in N.N.N. medium. Forms and development are identical with those of *L. braziliensis*, previously described.

TRANSMISSION

Although *L. tropica* can be transmitted by direct contact, a fact known for a long time, and through the mechanical vehicle of the bite of hematophages, among them the *Stomoxys calcitrans,* as shown by Berberian (1938), today it is believed that transmission in nature is effected chiefly through the bite of the Phlebotomus.

Adler and Ber (1941) succeeded in demonstrating the transmission of *L. tropica* to man (five times out of nine attempts) through the bite of *P. papatasii.* Other vectors are *P. sergenti* and *P. caucasicus.*

IMMUNITY

According to Thomson (1931), it is believed in Mesopotamia that Oriental sore establishes active immunity, and it is customary, in routine practice, deliberately to inoculate the children in the covered parts of the body to prevent later disfiguration of the face by the naturally acquired disease. Nicolle and Noury Bey also state that experimental ulcers confer immunity. According to Marzinowski (1928), such immunity has been considered possible for many years. Colvilli, cited by this author, reports that the Jews of Bagdad, in order to keep their children from acquiring the disease, used to inoculate these children beneath the skin with the serous substance from ulcers.

Marzinowski (1928) inoculated himself as well as several of his assistants with exudate from an ulcer. All those inoculated showed immunity to new inoculations for seven years following the first inoculation.

Adler, cited by Thomson (1931), stated that after natural cure of an experimental leishmanial ulcer, no new infection followed, although the same strain and another biologically different strain were used. In the East, Marzinowski (1928), Berberian (1939), Gitelson (1928), Lawrow and Dubowskoj (1937), and others have been using, as the preferred method of immunization, inoculations with living cultures. They inoculate with living cultures of *L. tropica,* which, after a period of incubation varying from two to six months, cause ulceration which develops into a benign form, healing in six to twelve months. The last two authors have made more than 500 vaccinations with living cultures. They state that no complications have been observed. In all cases real immunity is established.

PATHOGENICITY

In man, the disease is limited to cutaneous tissue and should be designated ''cutaneous leishmaniasis.'' The period of incubation varies from several days to several months. The lesion is initiated by a papule which is transformed into an ulcer. In cases uncomplicated by bacteria or other microorganisms, the lesions show a tendency toward cicatrization and heal at the end of six months or a year, leaving a permanent scar. Various forms of the disease have been described.

DIAGNOSIS

Diagnosis is made by demonstration of the parasite in lesions by smear or culture.

TREATMENT

Treatment is similar in general to treatment of American skin leishmaniasis. As a rule, however, the disease can be cured with only locally applied drugs. Penicillin is very effective.

VISCERAL LEISHMANIASIS

GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION

The disease is found in some regions of India, as in Calcutta, in the Brahmaputra basin, in Bengal, Assam, and the southern part of India; it also exists in North China and in Indo-China. In Africa the disease occurs not only in the region of the Mediterranean (Morocco, Algeria, Tunis, Tripoli, Egypt), but also farther south in Abyssinia, Sudan, Kenya, and Nigeria.

In Europe it is disseminated throughout southern Russia. The Mediterranean area has numerous foci in Yugoslavia, Turkey, Greece, southern Italy, southern France, and Spain. Some years ago it was the general belief that in the European foci the disease was limited to infancy. Recently, however, numerous cases have been described in adults.

America.—The disease has been observed as autochthonous only in South America. As has been pointed out, the first cases were described in Paraguay and in the Chaco. Later, numerous cases were observed in Brazil. E. Chagas and A. W. Chagas (1938) saw some cases in the Mato Grosso. Barros and Rosenfeld (1942) described two cases in São Paulo, one a patient from Bolivia, the other from Ceará. In America the disease is always sylvan and sporadic; it does not occur in urban zones, but only in rural regions and in the jungle.

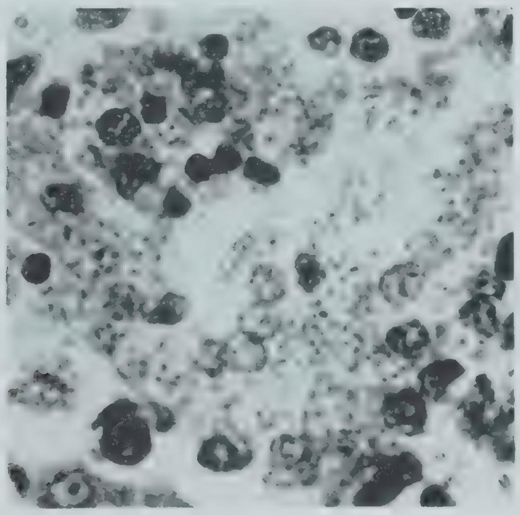


Fig. 90.—*Leishmania donovani* in spleen puncture. (Courtesy of Oscar Felsenfeld.)

ETIOLOGIC AGENT

Visceral leishmaniasis is caused by *Leishmania donovani* (Laveran and Mesnil, 1903). It has the same morphology as the two species discussed above.

The disease is known by a number of names in different regions: in India it is known as kala-azar (''black fever,'' ''dumdum fever,'' or ''tropical splenomegaly''); in the Mediterranean regions it is known as infantile kala-azar, or splenic anemia of children; and in South America it is called American visceral leishmaniasis or American kala-azar.

Cultivation

Cultures of *L. donovani* may be obtained from the spleen, as Rogers (1904) first demonstrated, or from some other organ in which the parasites exist. Mayer and Werner (1914) and Wenyon (1914) cultivated them from blood. Shortt and others (1923) succeeded in cultivating them from centrifuged urine.

The behavior and morphology of this species in cultures are the same as those of *L. braziliensis.*

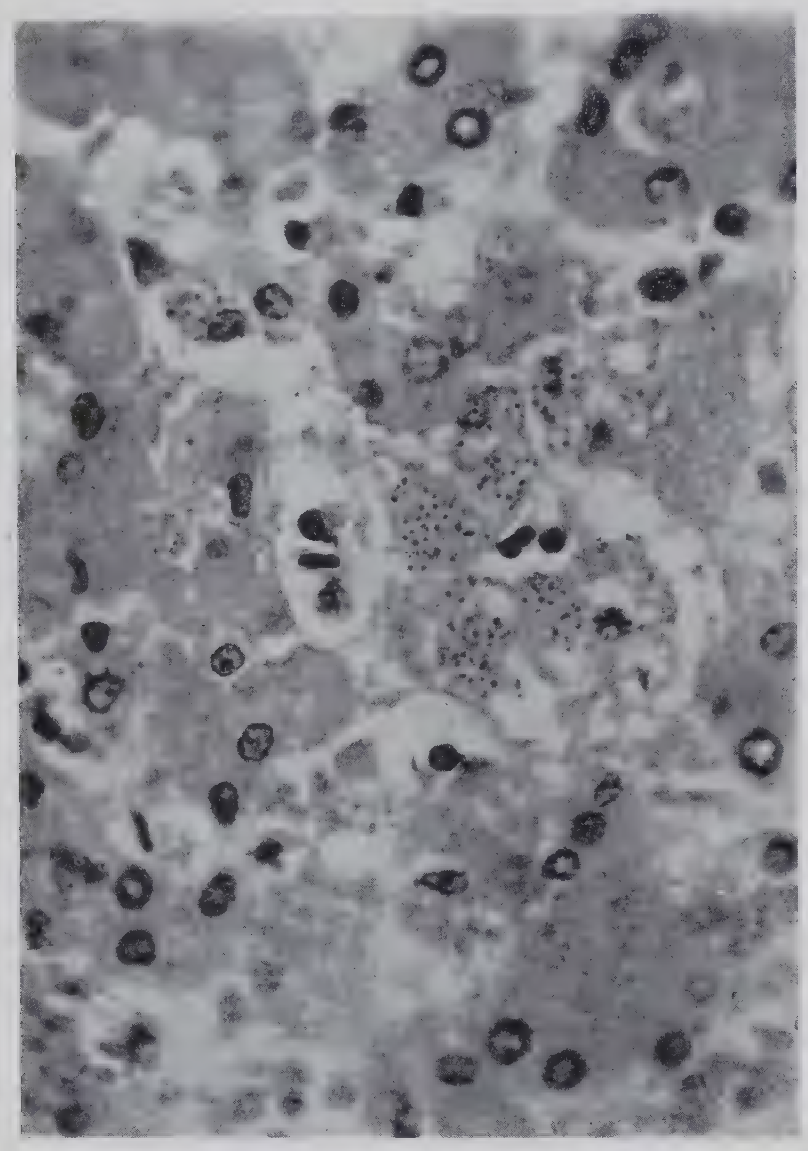


Fig. 91.—Section of liver in visceral leishmaniasis. Observe the intense parasitism in the endothelial cells. (Original.)

Habitat

L. donovani is found in man in the endothelial cells of the capillaries of the viscera, especially of the spleen, liver, the bone marrow, the intestinal mucosa, and the mesenteric glands. Leishmanias may also be found in endothelial cells of the kidney, suprarenal capsule, lung, and the meninges.

PATHOGENESIS

The disease is a reticuloendotheliosis due to invasion of the reticular tissues by leishmanias. The blocking of the reticuloendothelial system is considered as the probable cause of the anemia and the tendency toward inflammatory complications which these patients present. The spleen is enormously enlarged, the capsule thickened. There is a perisplenitis. The spleen is congested, dark red in color, and firm in consistency. Microscopically, the sinuses of the spleen are dilated, with great increase in the number of endothelial cells, containing numerous leishmanias. A great number of endothelial cells of the vessels are found to be parasitized. The liver appears to be equally enlarged. Microscopically, the cells of the liver are atrophied and degenerated. Fatty degeneration is present to a greater or less extent. Here, as in the spleen, the most notable lesion consists in the presence, especially in the hepatic sinusoids, of numerous endothelial cells, densely parasitized by Leishmania. Numerous endothelial cells of other vessels become inflamed and contain parasites. In advanced cases, an increase of fibrous tissue with destruction of parenchyma occurs. The bone marrow becomes red and friable and contains numerous macrophages filled with leishmanias as well as neutrophiles containing many of the parasites. The lymphatic glands are enlarged, and within them parasitized cells can be demonstrated. The intestine is often ulcerated, the submucosa becoming infiltrated with numerous macrophages filled with leishmanias, especially numerous about Peyer's patches.

Progressive leucopenia, with relative and absolute lymphocytosis, is seen in the blood.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The principal symptoms of kala-azar are enlargement of the spleen and often of the liver, progressive emaciation, anemia, and a type of irregular fever. Other symptoms may occur, such as enlargement of the lymphatic glands, pigmentation of the skin, and edema. The period of incubation varies, according to authorities, from six weeks to six months. After the period of incubation, the fever appears as the initial symptom. In the first few weeks, and sometimes during the first few months, the fever reaches high levels (38° to 39° C.), and may be continuous or intermittent. In the greater number of cases, however, it is irregular. In more advanced stages of the disease, the fever becomes very irregular, and there may be long periods of apyrexia followed by days and even weeks of pronounced thermal elevation.

Emaciation is constantly present. Always present in early stages, it becomes progressively more alarming; at the end of a few months of the disease, the patient shows extreme malnutrition. As a consequence of the anemia, the patient's skin and mucous membranes are very pale. In some cases there is change in the color of the skin, resulting in characteristic darkening.

An increase in volume of the spleen is a very early symptom, the organ sometimes attaining enormous proportions, reaching to the symphysis pubis. Its consistency is very hard, so that it is known, in leishmanial zones of Brazil, by the expression "hard as a board" (E. Chagas). In many regions of South America, where the disease has a high incidence, splenomegaly caused by malaria is confused with that caused by leishmaniasis. For this reason, physicians, until recently, have not always been able to make a clinical diagnosis of leishmaniasis. There is hepatomegaly, which may be very extensive. Edema, gastric disturbances and intestinal upsets, and small hemorrhages of the nasal and oral mucosa are present. Some infections develop acute progressive characters, and death may follow at the end of a few weeks or during the first months after initiation of the disease. At other times, the disease tends, from the first stage, toward a chronic character, and it may be prolonged for several months or even years.

Opinion of authors who have studied this disease is that the lesions in or on the skin constitute the so-called ''post-kala-azar dermal leishmaniasis.'' Such lesions appear some years after the acute state, and appear as depigmented areas or in nodule form.

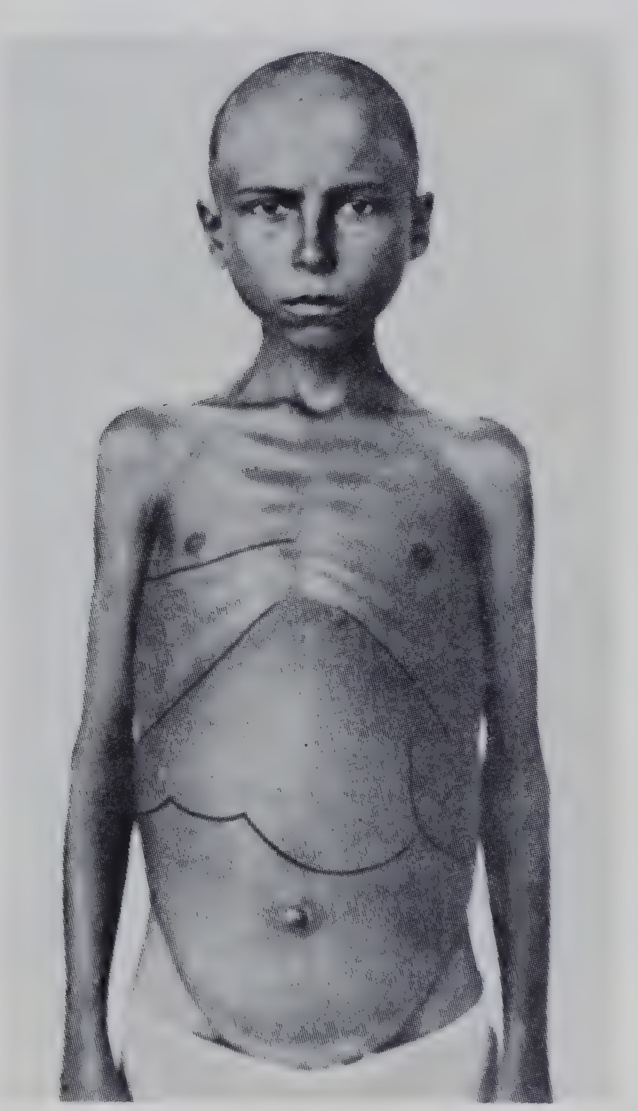


Fig. 92.—Clinical case of American visceral leishmaniasis. (After Chagas, E., et al.: Mem. Inst. Oswaldo Cruz, July, 1937.)

TRANSMISSION

Transmission of *L. donovani* occurs through bite of a Phlebotomus which has been infected by biting a diseased man or animal.

Transmission has recently been accomplished (Smith et al., 1940-1941) through the bite of the Phlebotomus. The mechanism is a partial or complete blocking of the proventricle and of the esophagus by the leptomonas forms, a fact similar to that which occurs in fleas infected with plague bacilli. Hamsters and mice exposed to the bite of the blocked Phlebotomi acquire the disease.

In Brazil, very few investigations have been made with respect to the possibility of transmission of *L. donovani* by our species of Phlebotomus. Ferreira, Deane, and Mangabeira Filho (1939) proved the presence of leptomonas forms in two specimens of *P. longipalpis* captured while sucking on a dog which was naturally infected. Chagas (1940) succeeded in infecting 75 per cent of the specimens of *P. longipalpis* and 75 per cent of *P. intermedius* by feeding on a parasitized dog. Paraense and A. W. Chagas (1940) succeeded in transmitting the disease to a hamster by inoculation with a triturate of *P. intermedius* which had been experimentally infected.

Other vectors are *P. argentipes, P. chinensis, P. langeroni, P. major, P. perniciosus,* and *P. sergenti.*

As to the mechanism of transmission, it has been shown that *L. donovani* develops in the digestive tube of the Phlebotomus in the leptomonas form. It migrates to the anterior portion of the pharynx and buccal cavity in six to nine days, after the Phlebotomus has sucked on an infected individual; it is believed that the Phlebotomus is not infectious until this time.

Another possible method of transmission is the ingestion of food or beverages contaminated with *L. donovani.* This parasite may be found in feces, urine, nasal secretions, sputum, and saliva of patients with kala-azar. This method of transmission, however, is of little practical importance.

Shortt, Craighead, Smith, and Swaminath (1930) showed the possibility of contact infection. They placed healthy hamsters in the same cage with six experimentally infected hamsters. Two of the normal animals developed a severe infection with *L. donovani.*

Natural Infection in Animals

The dog, since it is often found naturally infected chiefly in the Mediterranean region and in China, is considered a natural reservoir of the disease. On the other hand, in India human disease is not associated with dogs. The natural disease in dogs, as in man, runs an acute or chronic course, with loss of weight, fever, anemia, and enlargement of the spleen and liver. The animals may succumb to this parasitosis or to an intercurrent infection, but spontaneous cure occurs more often in dogs than in human beings.

In Brazil, Chagas et al (1938) found visceral leishmaniasis in seven dogs and one cat, as well as in other, wild animals. Dogs with visceral leishmaniasis frequently have cutaneous lesions. Chodukin and Sofieff (1930) concluded that these lesions in dogs are a symptom of a generalized infection. Richardson (1925) found a horse and de Paolis a sheep naturally infected with leishmanias identical with *L. donovani.* In Russia, gerbils are naturally infected.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

In the Mediterranean region the infection is most common in children from 1 to 4 years of age, while in India the youths are affected, although in both regions infection occurs both in adults and in infants. As to sex, men are more frequently infected than are women.

With reference to epidemiologic characteristics of American visceral leishmaniasis, it has been proved, according to studies made by the E. Chagas Commission (1938), that the disease is sporadic and does not assume the epidemic character observed in Indian kala-azar. Its cradle is the forest, since it does not occur in urban but in rural districts. Although it is primarily a disease of early childhood (1 to 2 years), cases have been found in youths and adults.

DIAGNOSIS

Clinical.—Differential clinical diagnosis should be made from malaria and schistosomiasis. If the patient does not improve under quinine treatment, malaria may be excluded from consideration. Demonstration of the eggs of Schistosoma will confirm a diagnosis of that helminthiasis.

Laboratory Methods.—These may be direct, by examination for the parasites, or indirect, by serologic reaction. Microscopic preparations can be used to demonstrate the parasites in the blood, the spleen, the bone marrow, or the liver. These preparations are stained with Giemsa or other methods.

The leucopenia may be of great diagnostic value.

Blood.—Examination of peripheral blood reveals parasites in the leucocytes. Since these are difficult to find, the blood should be diluted with an oxalate solution and immediately centrifuged in a special container. After sedimentation, the layer of leucocytes is drawn off with a pipette. Histiocytes containing many organisms are easily found. A blood culture may be made.

Puncture of the Spleen.—Puncture of the spleen is the method of choice in the search for leishmanias. According to Chagas et al. (1938), this method gives the best results in diagnosis. It has proved to be quick and efficient in all phases of the disease and practically innocuous. To make the puncture, a needle 10 cm. long and 2 mm. in diameter is introduced below the costal margin and at a distance which varies with the type of spleen. Generally parasites are found in smears from the splenic pulp, in great numbers when the case is recent. In the period of the "state of disease," leishmanias are less numerous and, for the most part, extracellular. The pulp may be used to prepare cultures of the parasites.

Puncture of the Liver.—Resort to puncture of the liver is less frequent than splenic puncture, since hepatomegaly occurs later in the disease than does splenomegaly. Finding parasites in the liver is more difficult than finding them in the spleen.

Bone Marrow Puncture.—Usually the sternum is selected when a search for parasites is to be made in the bone marrow. They are frequently found. In China, puncture of the sternum is the method of choice in the diagnosis of the disease in hospitals, dispensaries, and rural posts. It is easier and less dangerous than splenic puncture and may be repeated several times.

Indirect Methods.—Serologic methods are used quite frequently. Some of the principal tests are:

Formol-Gel Test (Aldehyde Reaction)*: This test was used by Gaté and Papacostas (1920) for syphilis, but it has been discarded here because of its lack of sensitivity. Spackman (1921), however, noticed that the serum of a patient with kala-azar becomes coagulated in a few seconds, and not in a few hours, as in the test of Gaté and Papacostas.

---

*Editor's note (O. F.): The Chopra-Napier test, consisting of the addition of a pentavalent antimony to the blood, is little used.

Place 1 c.c. of the patient's serum, free from erythrocytes, in a 9 mm. test tube.

Add 1 drop of 40% (commercial) formaldehyde.

A positive result is indicated by complete coagulation of the serum. Coagulation is complete if the serum does not move when the tube is inverted or shaken. One hour is allowed for the coagulation process.

According to Chagas et al. (1938), the test, like other serologic tests, is not absolutely specific. While it is always negative in normal individuals, solidification of the serum takes place in other diseases besides kala-azar—malaria, leprosy, bouba, and alastrim—although the process takes a long time. In American visceral leishmaniasis the reaction is slow in the early stages but increases in rapidity with the degree of infection. It is useful in diagnosis of American visceral leishmaniasis in the early stages and also it can be used for evaluating the results of therapy.

Brahmachari Test (Reaction of Ray): This consists of the formation of a turbid ring at the point of contact between the serum and distilled water.

Allow 2 or 3 c.c. of distilled water to flow slowly along the walls of a test tube containing 1 c.c. of serum.

A turbid ring forms at the point of contact in positive cases; the stronger the reaction, the more definite the ring.

E. Chagas et al. (1938) used the Brahmachari test in fifty-two cases of American visceral leishmaniasis, with results similar to those obtained in the formol-gel test. The reaction is due to increase of globulin, principally euglobulin, in the serum, with corresponding reduction in albumin. The reaction is not specific for kala-azar, but occurs as well in malaria.

Other Tests.*—Tests using peptonate of iron or Sulfarsenol of Caminopetros, etc., are little used. Complement fixation was especially studied by Moses (1919) and Marques da Cunha and E. Dias (1939). They used as antigen cultures of leishmanias washed in physiologic solutions by centrifugation and preserved in acetone for a few days. After evaporation of the acetone, the leishmanias which remained were triturated and mixed with ethyl alcohol. Positive results were obtained with this antigen, not only for visceral and cutaneous leishmaniasis, but also for Chagas' disease. This fact has been interpreted as the result of group reaction. It is a delicate test and is not readily adaptable as a routine measure.

Recently, antigens prepared from acid-fast organisms are used for complement fixation tests.

For intradermal skin tests, see Mucocutaneous Leishmaniasis.

TREATMENT

In addition to antimonials mentioned above with reference to *L. braziliensis*, some pentavalent derivatives of antimony have proved efficacious in the treatment of visceral leishmaniasis. Chopra (1936) regarded Neostibosan and Urea-stibamine as the best of these preparations.

---

*See also Chapter 72.

Neostibosan (diethylamine p-aminophenol stibinate) contains about 40 per cent antimony. Each injection of 6 c.c. contains 0.30 Gm. and is given intramuscularly. It is the less toxic of the pentavalent antimonials and is especially indicated in the treatment of the disease in children.

Aromatic diamidines are being used experimentally in therapeutics. They must be used cautiously because of their neurologic action. Best results have been obtained with Stilbamidine (4:4′diamido stibinate).

PROPHYLAXIS

As with *L. braziliensis,* prophylaxis consists of campaigns against the Phlebotomus and of prevention of bites by these diptera. Since the infection can be transmitted in feces and urine, the possibility of transmission through contaminated food should be taken into consideration. An important prophylactic measure is the elimination of dogs which serve as reservoirs of the parasites in endemic regions.

References

Adler, S.: 1940. Attempts to Transmit Visceral Leishmaniosis to Man, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **33**: 419-437.

Adler, S., and Ber, M.: 1941. Transmission of Leishmania Tropica by Bite of Phlebotomus Papatasii, Nature **148**: 227.

Adler, S., and Theodor, O.: 1928. The Exit of Leishmania Tropica Through the Proboscis of Phlebotomus Papatasii, Nature **121**: 282.

Adler, S., and Theodor, O.: 1930. The Inoculation of Canine Cutaneous Leishmaniasis Into Man and the Behaviour of Various Strains of Leishmania in Mice, Ann. Trop. Med. **24**: 197-205.

Aguila, M. N. del: 1919. Estudio Sobre la Transmissión de la Leishmaniasis de America a los Animales, An. Fac. de med. da Univ. de Lima **2**: 42-52.

Amaral, A. D. F.: 1941. Contribuição para o Estudo da Inoculação Experimental da Leishmania Brasiliensis, An. Fac. de med. da Univ. de São Paulo **17**: 303-355.

Aragão, H. B.: 1922. Transmissão da Leishmaniose no Brazil pelo Phlebotomus Intermedius, Brasil-med. **36**: 129-130.

Barretto, M. P.: 1943. Observações Sôbre a Biologia, em Condições Naturais, Dos Flebótomos do Estado de São Paulo (Diptera, Psychodidae), Tese conc. Docência Livre Fac. Med. Univ. São Paulo, São Paulo.

Barros, O. M., and Rosenfeld, G.: 1942. Leishmaniose Visceral Americana. Um caso da Bolivia, Rev. Clin. de São Paulo **11**: 91-99.

Barros, O. M., and Rosenfeld, G.: 1944. Leishmaniose Visceral Americana. Novo Caso, Rev. Clin. de São Paulo **15**: 97-102.

Beltrán, E., and Bustamante, M. E.: 1942. Datos epidemiológicos Acerca de la ''Úlcera de los Chicleros'' (Leishmaniasis Americana) en México, Rev. d. Inst. salub. y enferm. trop. **3**: 1-28.

Berberian, D. A.: 1938. Successful Transmission of Cutaneous Leishmaniasis by the Bites of Stomoxys Calcitrans, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **38**: 254-256.

Berberian, D. A.: 1939. A Second Note on Successful Transmission of Oriental Sore by the Bites of Stomoxys Calcitrans, Ann. Trop. Med. **33**: 95-96.

Berberian, D. A.: 1939a. Vaccination and Immunity Against Oriental Sore, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **33**: 87-94.

Bernasconi, V. E.: 1928. Contribución al Estudio de la Distribución Geográfica de la Leishmaniosis en la República Argentina, Bol. Inst. de clín. quir. **4**: 325-328.

Brumpt, E., and Pedroso, A.: 1913. Pesquizas Epidemiologicas Sobre a Leshmaniose Americana das Florestas no Estado de São Paulo (Brasil), Ann. paulist. de med. e cir. **1**: 97-136.

Buss, G.: 1929. Untersuchungen mit Leishmania-Vakzine, Arch. f. Schiffs- u. Tropen-Hyg. **33**: 65-83.

Cerqueira, A.: 1885. In Cerqueira, A. G. de Castro (1914).

Cerqueira, A. G. de Castro: 1914. Da Leishmaniose Tegumentar, Tese, Bahia.

Cerqueira, A. de Castro: 1919. Contribuição ao Estudo da Patogenia da Leishmaniose Americana (Nota Previa). Papel do Phlebotomus como Transmissor da Leishmaniose Tegumentar, Saude **2**: 22-27.

Chagas, A. W.: 1940. Criação de Flebótomos e Transmissão Experimental da Leishmaniose Visceral Americana, Mem. Inst. Oswaldo Cruz **35**: 327-333.

Chagas, C.: 1913. Nota Sobre a Epidemiologia do Amazonas, Brasil-med. **27**: 450-456.

Chagas, E., et al.: 1937. Leishmaniose Visceral Americana, Mem. Inst. Oswaldo Cruz **32**: 321-389.

Chagas, E., et al.: 1938. Leishmaniose Visceral Americana, Mem. Inst. Oswaldo Cruz **33**: 89-229.

Chagas, E., and Chagas, A. W.: 1938. Notas Sôbre a Epidemiologia da Leishmaniose Visceral Americana em Mato Grosso, O Hospital **13**: 471-480.

Chodukin, N. J., and Sofieff, M. S.: 1930. Zur Frage der Identität von Leishmania donovani und Leishmania canis, Arch. f. Schiffs- u. Tropen-Hyg. **34**: 369-382.

Chopra, R. N.: 1936. A Handbook of Tropical Therapeutics, Calcutta.

Cunha, A. Marques da: 1938. Sur les Infections Expérimentales de Leishmaniose Tégumentaire Americaine, Compt. rend. Soc. de biol. **128**: 211-213.

Cunha, A. Marques da: 1942. A Sôro-Agglutinação das Leishmanias, Mem. Inst. Oswaldo Cruz **37**: 35-76.

Cunha, A., Marques da, and Chagas, E.: 1937. Nova Especie de Protozoario do Genero Leishmania Pathogenico Para o Homem (Nota Previa), Leishmania Chagasi, n. sp. O Hospital, Rio de Janeiro **11**: 148-152.

Cunha, A. Marques da, and Dias, E.: 1939. Reação de Fixação do Complemento nas Leishmanioses, Brasil-med. **53**: 89-92.

Cunningham: 1885. Scient. Mem. Med. Offic. Army, India, 1.21; cited by Laveran, 1917.

Donovan, C.: 1903. The Etiology of One of the Heterogenous Fevers in India, Brit. M. J. **12**: 1401; In Bull. Inst. Pasteur **2**: 70-72, 1904.

Escomel, E.: 1911. La Espundia, Bull. Soc. path. exot. **4**: 489-492.

Escomel, E.: 1929. La Leishmaniose Américaine et les Leishmanioses en Amérique, Bull. Soc. path. exot. **22**: 35-46.

Ferreira, L. C., Deane, L., and Mangabeira Filho, O.: 1939. Sobre a Biologia dos Flebótomos das Zonas de Leishmaniose Visceral Ora en Estudo no Estado do Pará, O Hospital, Rio de Janeiro **14**: 1079-1082.

Flu, P. C.: 1911. Die Aetiologie der in Surinan vorkommender sogenannten Boschyaws, einer der Aleppobeule analogen Erkrankung, Centralbl. f. Bakt. 1 Orig. **60**: 624-637.

Fuller, H. S., and Geiman, Q. M.: 1942. South American Cutaneous Leishmaniasis in Experimental Animals, J. Parasitol. **28**: 429-431.

Gaté, J., and Papacostas, G.: 1920. Une Nouvelle Réaction des Sérums Syphilitiques; Formol-gélification, Compt. rend. Soc. de biol. **83**: 1432-1434.

Gitelson: 1928. Cited by Marzinowski, 1928.

Gomes, L. Salles: 1939. A Intradermo-reação de Montenegro na Leishmaniose e Outras Pesquizas Affins, Brasil-med. **53**: 1079-1087.

Klotz, O., and Lindenberg, H.: 1923. The Pathology of Leishmaniosis of the Nose, Am. J. Trop. Med. **3**: 117-141.

Laveran, A.: 1917. Leishmanioses, Paris, Masson & Cie.

Lawrow, A. P., and Dubowskoj, P. A.: 1937. Über Schutzimpfungen gegen Hautleishmaniose, Arch. f. Schiffs- u. Tropen.-Hyg. **41**: 374-379.

Leishman, W. A.: 1903. On the Possibility of the Occurrence of Trypanosomiasis in India, Brit. M. J. 21 nov., p. 1376; in Bull. Inst. Pasteur **2**: 70-71, 1904.

Lindenberg, A.: 1909. L'ulcère de Bauru en le Bouton d'Orient au Brésil, Bull. Soc. path. exot. **2**: 252-254.

Lindenberg, A.: 1909a. Observaçóes Inéditas Relatadas a Pedroso e Silva, 1911.

Lindsay, J. W.: 1914. American Forestal Leishmaniasis, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **7**: 259-263.

Marzinowski, E. I.: 1928. L'immunité Dans le Bouton d'Orient, Bull. Soc. path. exot. **21**: 638-641.

Matta, A. da: 1910. Leishmaniose Tropica, Rev. med. e cir. de São Paulo **13**: 440-441.

Mayer, Martin, and Werner, H.: 1914. Kultur des Kala-azar-erregers (Leishmania donovani) aus dem peripherischen Blut des Menschen, Deutsche med. Wchnschr. 1914, Nr. 2; in Arch. f. Schiffs- u. Tropen-Hyg. **18**: 672.

Mazza, S.: 1926. Leishmaniosis Tegumentaria y Visceral, Bol. d. Inst. clín. quir. **2**: 209-216.

Mazza, S.: 1926a. Existência de la Leishmaniosis Cutánea en el Perro en la República Argentina (Nota Preliminar), Prensa méd., Argent. **13**: 139-140.

Mazza, S.: 1927. Leishmaniosis Cutánea en el Caballo y Nueva Observación de la Misma en el Perro, Bol. d. Inst. clín. quir. **3**: 462-464.

Mazza, S., and Arias Aranda, C.: 1931. Fuadinversuche bei der amerikanischen Leishmaniose, Arch. f. Schiffs- u. Tropen.-Hyg. **35**: 583-591.

Migone, L. E.: 1913. Un Cas de Kala-Azar á Asunción (Paraguay), Bull. Soc. path. exot. **6**: 118.

Montenegro, J.: 1926. Cutaneous Reactions in Leishmaniasis, Arch. Dermat. & Syph. **13**: 187-194.

Moses, A.: 1919. Da Fixaçã do Complemento na Leishmaniose Tegumentar, Brasil-med. **33**: 107-108.

Neiva, A., and Barbará, B.: 1917. Leishmaniosis Tegumentaria Americana. Numerosos Casos Autóctones en la República Argentina, Conf. Sud-Amer. Soc. Microbiol. & Patol., Buenos Aires, 1916, pp. 311-372.

Neiva, A., and Penna, B.: 1916. Viajem Cientifica Pelo Norte da Bahia, Sudoeste de Pernambuco e Sul do Piauhi e de Norte a Sul de Goiaz, Mem. Inst. Oswaldo Cruz **8**: 74-224.

Nicolle, C.: 1908. Culture des Corps de Leishman Isolés de la Rate dans Trois Cas d'Anémie Splénique Infantil, Bull. Soc. path. exot. **1**: 121-126.

Paraense, L., and Chagas, A. W.: 1940. Transmissão Experimental da Leishmaniose Visceral Americana pelo Phlebotomus intermedius, Brasil-méd. **54**: 179-180.

Pedroso, A. M.: 1923. Infecção do Cão pela Leishmania Tropical, Rev. med. e cir. de São Paulo **23**: 42-45.

Pedroso, A. M.: 1923a. Infecção do Cão pela Leishmaniose Tropical, Rev. med. e cir. de São Paulo **23**: 42-44.

Pedroso, A., and Silva, P. D. da: 1911. Botão do Oriente (Leishmaniose Ulcerosa). Cultura da *Leishmania Tropica (Leishmania Wrightii)*, Arch. Soc. Med. & Cir. S. Paulo **1**: 305-314.

Penna, H. A.: 1934. Leishmaniose Visceral no Brasil, Brasil-med. **48**: 949-953.

Pessôa, S. B.: 1941. Dados Sobre a Epidemiologia da Leishmaniose Tegumentar em S. Paulo, O Hospital, Rio de Janeiro **19**: 389-409.

Pessôa, S. B.: 1941a. Segunda Nota Sôbre a Vacinação Preventiva na Leishmaniose Tegumentar Americana com Leptomonas Mortas, Rev. Assoc. paulista de med. **19**: 106-109.

Pessôa, S. B., and Coutinho, J. O.: 1941. Infecção Natural e Experimental dos Flebótomos Pela Leishmania Brasiliensis, no Estado de São Paulo, O Hospital, Rio de Janeiro **20**: 25-35.

Pessôa, S. B., and Pestana, B. R.: 1940. Infecçao Natural do Phlebotomus Migonei por Formas em Leptomonas, Provavelmente da Leishmania Brasiliensis, Acta Med. **5**: 106-111.

Pessôa, S. B., and Pestana, B. R.: 1940a. A Intradermo-reação de Montenegro nas Campanhas Sanitarias Contra a Leishmaniose, São Paulo med. **13**: 133-151.

Pessôa, S. B., and Pestana, B. R.: 1940b. Ensaio Sobre a Vacinação Preventiva na Leishmaniose Tegumentar Americana com Germes Mortos, Rev. biol. e hyg. **10**: 112-118.

Pestana, B. R., Pessôa, S. B., and Correa, A.: 1939. Notas Sobre a Leishmaniose no Municipio de Marilia, São Paulo (Alta Paulista), Folha Med. **20**: 97-98.

Pifano, F.: 1940. Sobre el Desarrollo de Leishmania Tropica Brasiliensis en Phlebotomus de Venezuela, Gac. méd. de Caracas **48**: 114-116.

Pinto, C.: 1942. Sinopse das Doenças Parasitarias do Homen, Porto Alegre.

Pupo, J. A.: 1926. Le Traitement des Leishmanioses par l'Amino-Arseno Phenol, Compt. rend. Soc. de biol. **94**: 993-994.

Pupo, J. A.: 1935. Tratamento da Leishmaniose Tegumentar Americana Pelas Injeções de Meta-Arsenito de Sodio, Rev. med. de Pernambuco **5**: 373-384.

Rabelho, E.: 1925. Contribuição ao Estudo da Leishmaniose Tegumentar no Brasil. II. Formas Clinicas, Am. Brasil. Dermat. & Syphilol. **1**: 1-25.

Richardson, U. F.: 1925. Spleen Smear of Horse Showing Possible Leishmania, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. & Hyg. **19**: 281.

Rogers, L.: 1904. Preliminary Note on the Development of Trypanosoma in Cultures of Cunningham-Leishman-Donovan Bodies of Cachexial Fever and Kala-Azar, Lancet **2**: 215-216.

Ross, R.: 1903. Note on the Bodies Recently Described by Leishman and Donovan, Brit. M. J. Nov., p. 1161; in Bull. Inst. Pasteur **2**: 70-72, 1904.

Rotter, W., and Peña Chavarria: 1935. Die Hautleishmaniose in Costa Rica, Arch. f. Schiff- u. Tropen.-Hyg. **39**: 89-99.

Sant'anna, F.: 1913. Trabalhos Experimentais Sobre um Caso de Leishmaniose de Origem Brazileira, Med. contemp. **31**: 267-272.

Shannon, R. C.: 1929. Entomological Investigations in Connection With Carión's Disease, Am. J. Hyg. **10**: 78-111.

Shortt, H. E.: 1923. The Recovery of Herpetomonas Donovani From Urine of a Kala-Azar Patient, Indian J. M. Research **11**: 319-320.

Silva, Flaviano, and Araujo, E.: 1930. Leishmaniose Experimental (Nota Previa), Brasil-med. **44**: 997-999.

Silva, Pirajá da: 1918. Com. á Sessão de 14 de Setembro de 1918 da Sociedade de Criminologia e Medicina Legal da Bahia; cited by Cerqueira, 1919.

Silveira, R.: 1919. Distribuição e Frequencia da Leishmaniose em S. Paulo, Tese Fac. Med. & Cir., São Paulo.

Smith, R. O. A., Halder, K. C., and Ahmed, I.: 1940. Further Light on the Mechanism of Sandfly Transmission of Kala-Azar, Indian M. Gaz. **75**: 67-69.

Smith, R. O. A., Halder, K. C., and Ahmed, I.: 1940a. Further Investigations on the Transmission of Kala-Azar. Part II. The Phenomenon of the ''Blocked'' Sandfly, Indian J. M. Research **28**: 581-584.

Smith, R. O. A., Halder, K. C., and Ahmed, I.: 1940b. Further Investigations on the Transmission of Kala-Azar. Part III. The Transmission of Kala-Azar by the Bite of the Sandfly P. Argentipes, Indian J. M. Research **28**: 585-591.

Smith, R. O. A., Halder, K. C., and Ahmed, I.: 1940c. Further Investigations on the Transmission of Kala-Azar. Part I. The Maintenance of Sandflies *P. argentipes* on Nutriment Other Than Blood, Indian J. M. Research **28**: 575-579.

Smith, R. O. A., Halder, K. C., and Ahmed, I.: 1941. Further Investigations on Transmission of Kala-Azar. Part IV. The Duration of Life and Other Obervations on ''Blocked'' Flies, Indian J. M. Research **29**: 783-787.

Smith, R. O. A., Halder, K. C., and Ahmed, I.: 1941a. Further Investigations on Transmission of Kala-Azar. Part VI. A Second Series of Transmissions of L. Donovani by P. Argentipes, Indian J. M. Research **29**: 799-802.

Spackman, W. C.: 1921. The Gaté-Papacostas Reaction, Brit. M. J. **2**: 266.

Splendore, A.: 1911. Buba-Blastomicosi-Leishmaniosi. Nota Sopra Alcune Affezioni Framboesiche Osservate in Brasile, Arch. f. Schiff- u. Tropen.-Hyg. **15**: 105-113.

Takaoka, S.: 1928. Estudo Topographico Sobre a Prevenção Contra a ''Leishmaniose Americana,'' Bol. Soc. de med. e cir. de São Paulo **11**: 32-47.

Tamayo: 1890. Cited by Escomel, 1922.

Vianna, G.: 1911. Sobre Uma Nova Especie de Leshmania (Nota Preliminar), Brasil-med. **25**: 411.

Vianna, G.: 1912. Com. à Sessão de 24 de Abril de 1912 da Sociedade Brasil de Dermatologia, Arch. brasil. de med. **2**: 426-428.

Villela, F., Pestana, B. R., and Pessôa, S. B.: 1939. Presença da Leishmania Brasiliensis na Mucosa Nasal Sem lesão Aparente, em Casos Recentes de Leishmaniose Cutanea, o Hospital, Rio de Janeiro **16**: 953-960.

Wagener, E. H.: A Skin Reaction to Extracts of Leishmania Tropica and Leishmania Infantum, Univ. Calif. Pub. Zool. **20**: 477-488.

Weiss, P.: 1943. Epidemiologya y Clinica de la Leishmaniosis Tegumentarias en el Peru, Rev. Med. Experm. **2**: 209-248.

Wenyon, C. M.: 1913. A Further Note on a Case of Dermal Leishmaniasis From South America, With Results of Inoculations Experiments, J. London Sch. Trop. Med. **2**: 117-119.

Wenyon, C. M.: 1914. The Culture of Leishmania From Finger Blood of a Case of Indian Kala-Azar, With Some Remarks on the Nature of Certain Granular Bodies Recently Described From This Disease, J. Trop. Med. **7**: 97.

Wenyon, C. M.: 1926. Protozoology, New York, William Wood & Co.

Wright, J. H.: 1903. Protozoa in a Case of Tropical Ulcer (''Delhi Sore''), J. M. Research **10**: 472-482.

CHAPTER II

PINTA, MAL DEL PINTO, OR CARATE

Francisco León-Blanco and Elvira Sánchez-García

The first European to use the word "carate" was Gonzalo de Oviedo y Valdez. In his work, written between 1505 and 1516, he states that in Castilla del Oro (the region corresponding to present-day Panama and Colombia) the term "carate" was used to designate a certain cutaneous affection which appears to be that which we know today as "pinta," "mal del pinto," and "carate." Thus this disease was in existence on the American continent before the conquest, and the word "carate" is of Caribbean origin.

"Pinta" is a Spanish word which is used to describe the spotted or mottled appearance of some animals. The phrase "mal del pinto" signifies "spotted sickness" or "spotted disease." In Spanish-American countries a number of common names are used in speaking of the disease, but there is a growing tendency to use only the words "pinta" or "carate" and the phrase "mal del pinto" to describe the disease and the words "pintous" (pinto) and "caratous" (caratosa) to designate those who are affected with the disease.

HISTORY

McClellan (1825) brought this disease to the attention of the Anglo-Saxon medical world and called it *pinta.* Alibert (1829) made it known under the name *carate.* In the past century, the most important contributions to the knowledge of pinta were made by León (1862), Gómez (1879), Ruiz Sandoval (1881), Iryz (1881), and Montoya Florez (1889). Ruiz Sandoval and Iryz, working simultaneously although independently, were the first to consider pinta a dermatomycosis. A great impetus was given to this theory in later years by Montoya Florez (1898).

Gratz (1913) discovered that salvarsan acted as a specific in carate. This important contribution of Gratz passed almost completely unnoticed. Menk (1926) in Colombia and González Herrejón and Pallares (1927) in Mexico, working independently, discovered that the Wassermann reaction is positive in a high percentage of cases with carate. Menk believed that patients with carate were also infected with syphilis or pian (yaws). González Herrejón and Pallares, however, considered the positive serologic test characteristic for mal del pinto. This fact and others served as a basis for his theory that mal del pinto is a treponematosis different from syphilis and from yaws.

Alfonso Armenteros, Grau Triana, and León Blanco found the treponemata in a Cuban case of pinta (1938). León Blanco (1938-1942) demonstrated the constant presence of treponemata in Mexican cases of pinta, and the specificity of these organisms.

León Blanco described the initial lesion and the early lesions of pinta, thus completing the knowledge of the developmental cycle of the affection.

Fox (1928-1930), Grau Triana (1937), González Herrejón (1927-1938), Latapí and León Blanco (1940), Pardo Castelló and Ferrer (1942), and Oteiza (1945-1946) also made important contributions to the knowledge of pinta.

ETIOLOGY

Experimental studies by León Blanco established the causative agent of pinta as a treponema; he proposed that it be named *Treponema herrejoni,* in honor of the Mexican scientist who had contributed so much to the knowledge of pinta. A few days prior to this proposal, Brumpt suggested the name *Treponema carateum,* and according to the rules of priority, the latter is the valid name of the species, all other names being synonyms.

The characteristics of this treponema (León Blanco) are as follows: When viewed against a dark background, it appears as a brilliant, cylindrical filament, coiled in a spiral about an imaginary longitudinal axis. The coils of the spiral are tight, regular, and rigid, especially in the center. At times, these coils relax and separate, to return to their original position, just like a steel spring, which, if pulled apart by both ends, quickly resumes the original position when released.

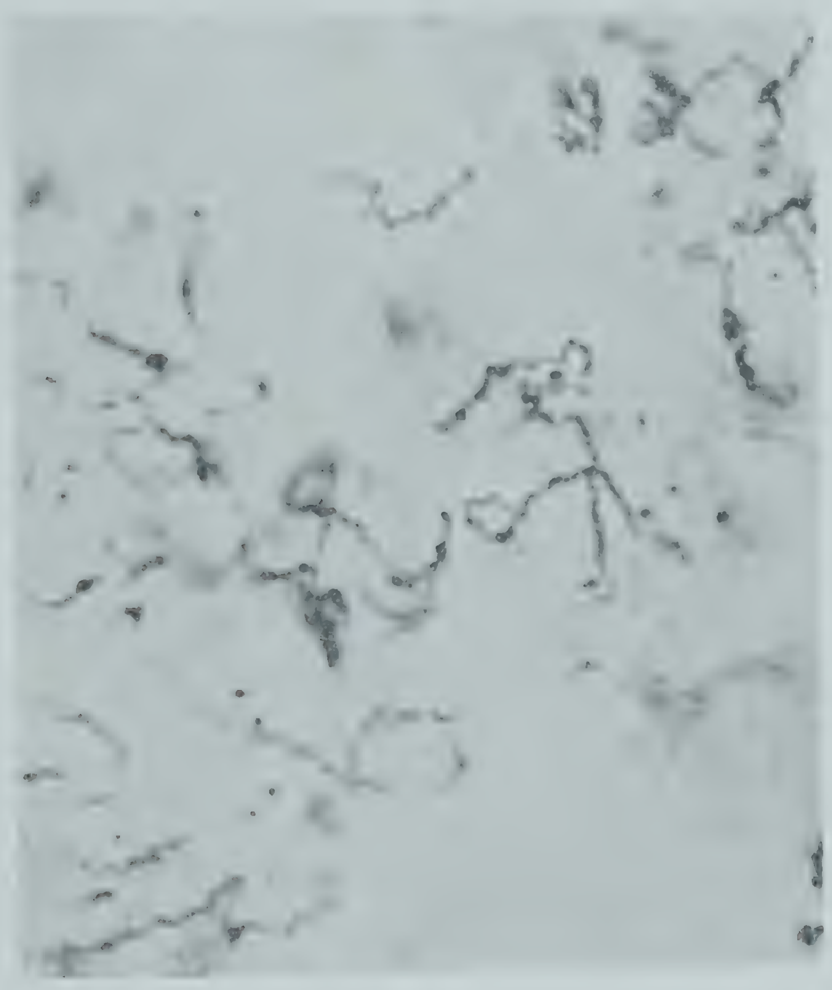


Fig. 93.—Photomicrograph of *Treponema carateum* (Krajian spirochete stain). Section of skin from autoinoculation with *T. carateum.* (Courtesy of R. B. H. Gradwohl.)

The motility of *T. carateum* is as marked as that of *T. pallidum* of syphilis. It turns rapidly about its longitudinal axis. Its movements of progression are bipolar: it can advance or retreat with equal facility. If it remains stationary, in addition to its spinning or drilling movements, one notices movements of torsion and flection, arching and assuming the shapes of the letters O, P, or S. It also has an undulant or creeping movement, in which the whole body of the treponema participates, so that it resembles the movement of a wave of contraction. The organism moves in and out of focus.

After one to six hours, according to the surrounding temperature, the treponema slowly loses its movements, until these completely cease. At this time, the coils seem to become looser or wider, and the body of the parasite then looks like an undulant ribbon in a single plane.

The treponema stains well with Giemsa stain or with aniline dyes. With aniline dyes, it is necessary to use a mordant, tannic acid or potassium permanganate. With Giemsa stain, the treponema stains a uniform, pale rose color. The Krajian and the Fontana-Tribondeau methods as used for staining treponemata of syphilis give the organism a black or dark chestnut color.

The methods of Jahnel, Warthin-Starry, and Dieterle also stain the treponemata in tissues very well.*

The organism varies in length between 7 and 22 microns. The average of a large number of measurements is 17 microns. Thickness is approximately 0.2 to 0.3 micron. Depth of the spirals is 0.8 to 1.0 micron. The number of spirals varies according to the length: short specimens have 7, longer ones 15 to 29 spirals.

After several hours of contact, 10 per cent saponin entirely dissolves the treponemata. Bile and 10 per cent sodium taurocholate have the same action. Distilled water causes them to swell.

The treponemata are killed by temperatures of 50° C. for fifteen minutes; at 41° C. they die within one or more hours.

León Blanco and Oteiza (1945) have recently succeeded in producing pintous scrotal chancres by experimental inoculation of rabbits. Pathogenicity to other animals is not known.

The organisms have not as yet been cultivated.

The distribution of the treponemata in cutaneous lesions in man varies for the initial lesions and pintids, and also for lesions of the later phase. In the initial lesions and in the pintids, treponemata are particularly abundant in the epidermis and in the intercellular spaces of the rete mucosum, especially in the acanthotic interpapillary crests, as well as in the epithelial portion of the pilosebaceous follicles. In the dermis they are localized especially in the portion occupied by the inflammatory infiltration, and they are very abundant near the blood vessels; it is not exceptional to observe them as they traverse the walls of these vessels.

In lesions of the later phase, we have never been able to find them in any place other than the rete mucosum and in the epithelial portion of the pilosebaceous follicles.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Pinta is endemic in rural or suburban areas, stopping at the outskirts of large cities, particularly in countries with a high endemic index. In countries with only sporadic cases, the disease can be found in large urban centers.

In the intertropical regions of the Americas (Mexico, Guatemala, Colombia, Venezuela, Ecuador, Peru, Brazil), the disease is most widely distributed in villages situated in the valleys of large rivers, at an altitude which varies from sea level to 2,570 meters (Chillos Valley in Ecuador). In this extensive zone there are places in which the index of infection reaches 50 to 90 per cent (pintogenous zones). There are other localities, situated a short distance from these zones, in which the disease attacks scarcely 1 to 2 per cent of the inhabitants. The cause of this unequal distribution is not clear, but there seems to be one definite factor known about its incidence—*there is no relationship between the disease and geographic conditions.*

---

*The editor (R. B. H. G.) prefers the Krajian twenty-minute stain for spirochetes in smears and tissues (see Chapter 70).

The index of infection is higher among inhabitants of villages and small towns situated between mountainous zones and the sea than among inhabitants of towns which lie near the coast. In coastal zones, rural towns and villages show a higher index of infection than less urbanized areas.

In highly infected villages, the disease occurs in family foci. However, intimate contact with pintous patients is not the sole prerequisite for infection, since it is frequently observed that in marriages of one to twenty-five years, one marital partner may be ill with the disease while the other has remained healthy.

In countries in which pinta is sporadic, the infection is not transmitted to those who live with infected individuals.

It has frequently been stated that Indians, Negroes, and those of mixed blood (mestizos—offspring of a European and an Indian or Negro) are more susceptible to pinta than the white race. This is not entirely correct, because members of the white race are equally infected when they live under the same conditions as the others. If, in Mexico, the Indians and mestizos form the largest group of patients with pinta, it is only because they are the dominant population group in the localities where the disease is prevalent. In the Catamayo Valley (Ecuador), where approximately 30 per cent of the population is infected, the disease is found principally among Negroes. There is a somewhat similar situation in Colombia. There is no special susceptibility to pinta on the part of certain races when the mode of life is identical.

Sex has no bearing on the incidence of the disease, at least not in Mexico.

Pinta can occur at any age, but the initial lesion is most often seen in persons between the ages of 5 and 20 years (León Blanco).

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

Pinta or carate has until recently been considered an infection peculiar to countries of the intertropical zones of the Americas. This idea has been challenged since cases thought to be pinta have been found in the United States (Lieberthal, 1943) and in Argentina (Fonso Gandolfo and Rugiero, 1942; Fernández and collaborators, 1945). Pinta may exist in American countries which up to now had been thought to be free from the disease, and also on other continents.

In Cuba, cases of pinta are sporadic and come from the six provinces, in none of which pintogenous zones or foci have been described. It should be emphasized that some of these patients have always lived in the capital of the Republic, and that in a large majority of the cases they have not transmitted the disease to those who live with them. Although the exact number of cases cannot be stated, they have not exceeded 100 to 120.

In Mexico, according to the First Census of Mal del Pinto carried out by the Department of Public Health, there are approximately 270,685 cases, a conservative figure if we consider that at the time of the census (1929-1932) the initial lesion and pintids were as yet unknown.

The principal pintogenous zone in Mexico is the vast geographic depression formed by the valley of the Balsas River, including the northwestern part of Oaxaca, Northern Guerrero, a part of Veracruz, and almost the whole of Morelos; also the southern part of the states of Mexico, Puebla, and Michoacán. Of less importance are zones in the states of Nayarit, Campeche, Tabasco, and Chiapas. If we consider the number of inhabitants in Mexico, 1.5 per cent of the total population is attacked by pinta.

In Colombia, carate is endemic in all the valleys and especially in the valleys of the great rivers. According to Peña Chavarría and Shipley (1925), there are approximately 400,000 cases of carate, although in reality a census of patients has never been carried out. This number corresponds to 6 per cent of the total population.

Caratogenous zones with the greatest endemic index are found in the valleys of the Magdalena and Cauca rivers; the valleys of Patía and San Juan rivers are of less importance. According to the same authors, departments or districts with the highest incidence are Huila, Magdalena, Tolima, Antioguía, Cauca Valley, Bolívar, Antlántico, Caldas, North Santander, South Santander, Boyacá, Cundinamarca, and Nariño.

In Venezuela there are about 50,000 cases of carate (Iriarte, 1940) distributed throughout the states of Barínas, Apure, Mérida, Táchira, Trujillo, Lara, Zulia, Portuguesa, Falcon, Bolívar, Yaracuy, Carabobo, and the territories of Amacuro and Amazonas.

According to L. A. León (1940), there are four pintogenous zones in Ecuador, with about 5,700 cases. These zones are the valley of the Chillos (pintogenous zone situated at a higher altitude, 2,570 meters above sea level) in the Province of Pichincha; Santa Rosa de Machala, in the Oro Province; Catamayo Valley in the Province of Loja; Archidona, Tena, and Napo, in the Province of Napo-Pastaza. According to the same author, the disease is highly distributed among the Salasac Indians in the Province of Tungurahua.

There are not even approximate data on the extent of the disease in Peru. According to Hercelles (1903), cases of pinta are seen in the District of Suyo, Province of Ayabaca (Department of Piura); in the city of Lima, in Carabaillo, and in Aucayama (Department of Lima); in Palpa, Názca, Pâmpano, and Humay (Department of Ica); in the Majéso Valley of the Province of Castilla; and in the towns of Huancarqui and Uraca (Department of Arequipa). Escomel (1931) has indicated that there are cases in Tambo, Víctor, Siguas, Camaná, and in the valley of the Madre de Dios River. Weiss (1942) has pointed out the presence of cases in Yarimaguas (Department of Loreto).

In Bolivia, Ventemillas (1944) indicated that cases of carate are found in villages situated near the Guapay or Río Grande river; and Aliaga Suárez, cited by Suárez (1944), has described four pintogenous zones in that country near the Chapare, Río Grand or Guapay, Madre de Dios, and Heath rivers, to which Suárez adds a fifth, the valley of the Beni River.

In Brazil, according to Langerón, there are many cases of carate in the state of Amazonas and in the valleys of the Purús and Juruá rivers. In these regions, entire tribes of Indians are affected. Silva (1940), Souza-Araujo (1940), and Padilha (1944) have identified Brazilian purú-purú with pinta.

Escobar P. (1945) has thoroughly studied and reported cases in Guatemala, these patients coming from the capital, from San Agustín Acasguastlán, from Frajines, Jiquimulilla, and El Molino. The extent of the disease in that country is not definitely known, but we assume that the endemic index should be high in zones which border Chiapas (Mexico).

In Honduras the disease was first reported by Lazo Arriaga (1885). In that country it seems to be extensive. In British Honduras (Belize) almost all indigenous adults suffer from the disease, according to Browne (1900); according to Cran (1900) not less than 60 per cent of the native population is caratous.

In the Republic of San Salvador, Barrientos and his collaborators (1941) reported sporadic cases of pinta.

In the United States Lieberthal (1943) and in Argentina Fonso Gandolfo and Rugiero (1942) and Fernández and collaborators (1945) reported cases with cutaneous syndromes similar to those of pinta, with positive or negative serologic reactions. But the fact that both of these countries are so far from the zones of endemic pinta and the fact that pintoid cutaneous syndromes caused by syphilis have been described (Lacapare, 1923), plus the fact that it has been demonstrated experimentally that syphilis can produce such syndromes (León Blanco, 1942), inclines us to accept with definite reservations the cases reported in the United states and Argentina as genuine cases of pinta.

Yaws is extensive in Santo Domingo and Haiti. It is not definitely known whether this disease can cause pintoid cutaneous syndromes. For this reason, there is no assurance that the disease described in Haiti by Audain (1905) under the name "boussarole" is pinta or yaws. The same may be said concerning the Dominican "busarola" which is very abundant in Paraje de Malgaren, Province of Seibo.

Browne (1901) states that the affection exists along the Gold Coast (Africa) where, on the other hand, yaws is endemic. But it is not known whether the affection to which Browne refers (and which the natives, according to this author, call "tungere") is pinta or yaws. The case described by Bettolo (1940) in Italian East Africa may be vitiligo.

Cases described by Madden and Goodman (1900) in Egypt and by Edgar (1901) and by Edgar and Boddaert (1901) in the Malay Peninsula are very atypical, and at the time that they were diagnosed, the etiology of pinta was as yet unknown. This same statement may be made concerning the case described by Woolley (1904) in the Philippine Islands.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The experimental work of León Blanco and his co-workers in the extensive pintogenous zone of the state of Guerrero (Mexico) has demonstrated that pinta begins with an initial lesion, followed after a rather long period of time by scattered cutaneous lesions with clinical characteristics distinctly like those classically known.

It seems clear that spread of the treponemata from the initial lesion takes place through the lymphatics or the blood stream. The spread of treponemata to neighboring lymph glands takes place in a very early period of the infection. However, cutaneous manifestations which indicate clinically the generalization of the infection do not appear until two to four months after the initial lesion, and sometimes not until one or more years later. During all this time, the initial lesion is a single cutaneous lesion, and serologic reactions remain negative in most cases.

From the time of appearance of the first disseminated cutaneous lesions, serologic reactions become positive in a large percentage of the cases. The longer the period of development of the disease, the higher the percentage of positive cases. From this period, serologic reactions remain constant and strongly positive during the entire course of development of pinta. On the other hand, treated cases show negative reactions during the early stages of the disease. But after pinta has been developing for years, the serologic tests are unchangeable, even when intensive treatment has been carried out. Moreover, the disseminated cutaneous lesions of the early stages of the development of pinta differ clinically, from a dermatologic point of view, from the later stages.

These facts have led us to conclude that there are two periods in the development of pinta: the *primary phase* and the *phase of generalization*. In the phase of generalization, two phases may be distinguished, an *early* phase and a *later* phase. The study of the symptomatology of pinta, therefore, will be divided into three parts. The first part will deal with the *initial lesion;* the second, with lesions of the early phase of the period of generalization *(pintids);* and the third, the lesions of the later phase of the period of generalization *(dyschromic phase).*

Primary Phase

Initial Lesion.—It has been possible to follow the initial lesion of pinta throughout its course of development in experimentally infected cases. According to latest data in our possession, the period of incubation, from the time of inoculation to the appearance of the initial lesion, varies between seven and sixty days. In some cases the lesion appears early, seventy-two hours after the inoculation.

After the stated period of incubation, a rose-colored spot, punctiform or lenticular, appears at the point of inoculation. After two or three days, this becomes infiltrated, assuming an aspect of a rose-colored papule, oval or hemispherical in shape, which stands out in relief 1 to 3 mm. from the skin; or, it may take the form of a slightly infiltrated erythematous small plaque, barely raised above the surface of the skin, pinkish, shiny, and covered slightly with furfuraceous scales. The initial papule grows slowly, and invariably, after thirty to fifty days, it assumes the appearance of a nummular erythematosquamous plaque, clearly outlined against the healthy skin, infiltrated to a greater or lesser degree, pink, and covered with laminar or furfuraceous scales. At times the scales in the periphery become partially detached and form a sort of "collar" about the initial lesion. In dark-skinned individuals, it takes on a slate-colored hue, due to accumulations of pigment in the dermis. In very scaly lesions, when the stratified scales are carefully removed, a shiny surface is seen beneath, sometimes oozing slightly, smooth.

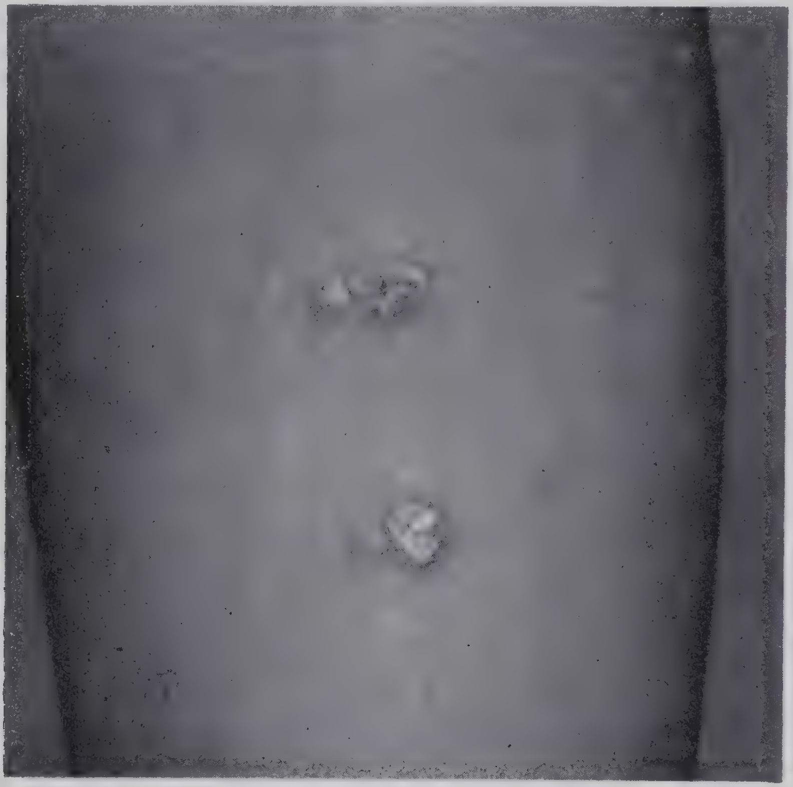


Fig. 94.—Experimental double initial lesion, approximately 30 days after inoculation. Papular phase: papules irregular, infiltrated, covered with scales. Inoculum is from one Cuban and one Mexican case. Observe identity of development and clinical aspect.

or furrowed by more or less deep wrinkle-like folds. Around it a hypochromic halo with furfuraceous scales is frequently observed.

The surface of the initial lesion continually increases in size, although very slowly, by steady excentric growth or by the appearance, in the periphery, of neighboring papules, which fuse with the original plaque as they grow. Circular or oval plaques of festooned or circinate contour result from this. They retain their erythematosquamous aspect for a long time.

In the experimental as well as in the naturally acquired disease, the initial lesion develops as the only lesion for a long time. It shows different clinical aspects according to the stage at which it is examined. In pintogenous zones with a high index of infection, there is opportunity to see many patients with initial lesions. The lesions in these cases, while retaining the fundamental appearance of erythematosquamous plaques, present a varied clinical aspect which may be reduced, schematically, to the following types:

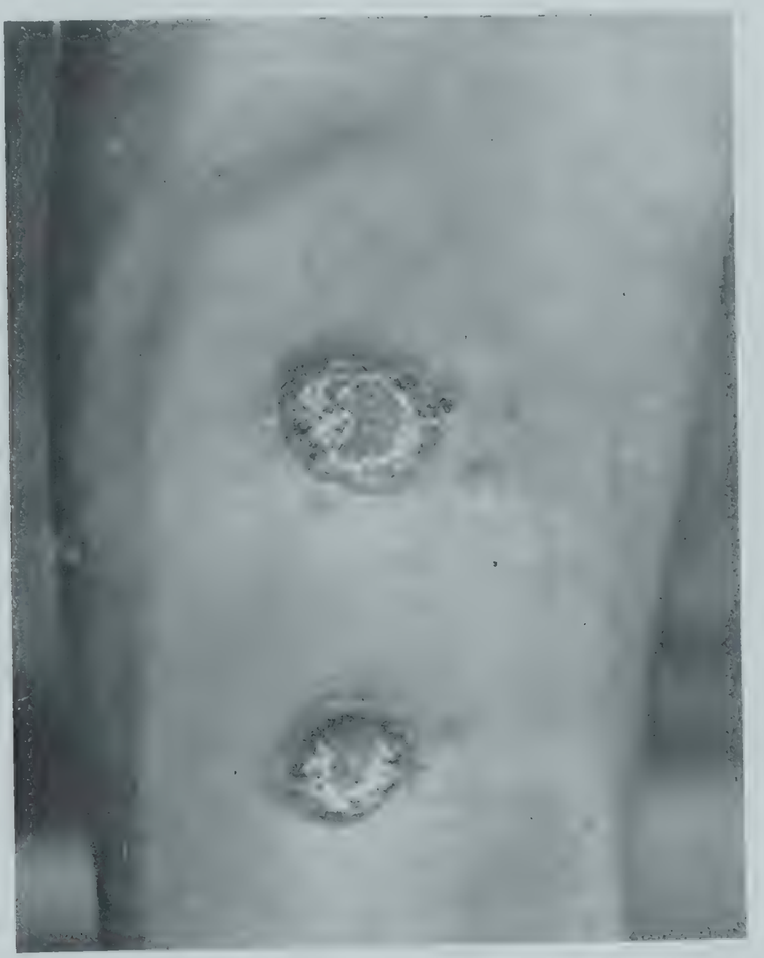


Fig. 95.—Double experimental lesion 62 days after inoculation. Erythematous-squamous phase: erythematous-squamous nummular discs, covered with laminar scales, partially loosened. Near both lesions are satellite papules. Same patient as shown in Fig. 94.

Psoriasiform Type.—This type is formed by psoriasiform erythematosquamous plaques, circular or oval, 1 to 5 cm. in diameter, limited, superficially infiltrated, and covered with stratified laminar scales, grayish-white or yellowish-white. If the scales are carefully removed, a pink, shiny surface shows underneath, slightly moist, and seeded with slightly raised papules and with ruby-colored dots corresponding to small dilated blood vessels filled with blood. Frequently, tiny drops of yellowish serous substance, rich in treponemata, ooze from the open surface.

Trichophytoid Type.—At times the initial lesion takes on the appearance of perfectly circular erythematosquamous plaques with elevated borders formed by confluent papules. The central portion is of a homogeneous or slightly pigmented pink color and is covered with fine scales. Sometimes, due to partial healing, isolated islands of normal or but slightly pigmented skin are observed within the plaque. These areas are separated by slightly raised pink borders, giving a petaloid appearance to the lesions.

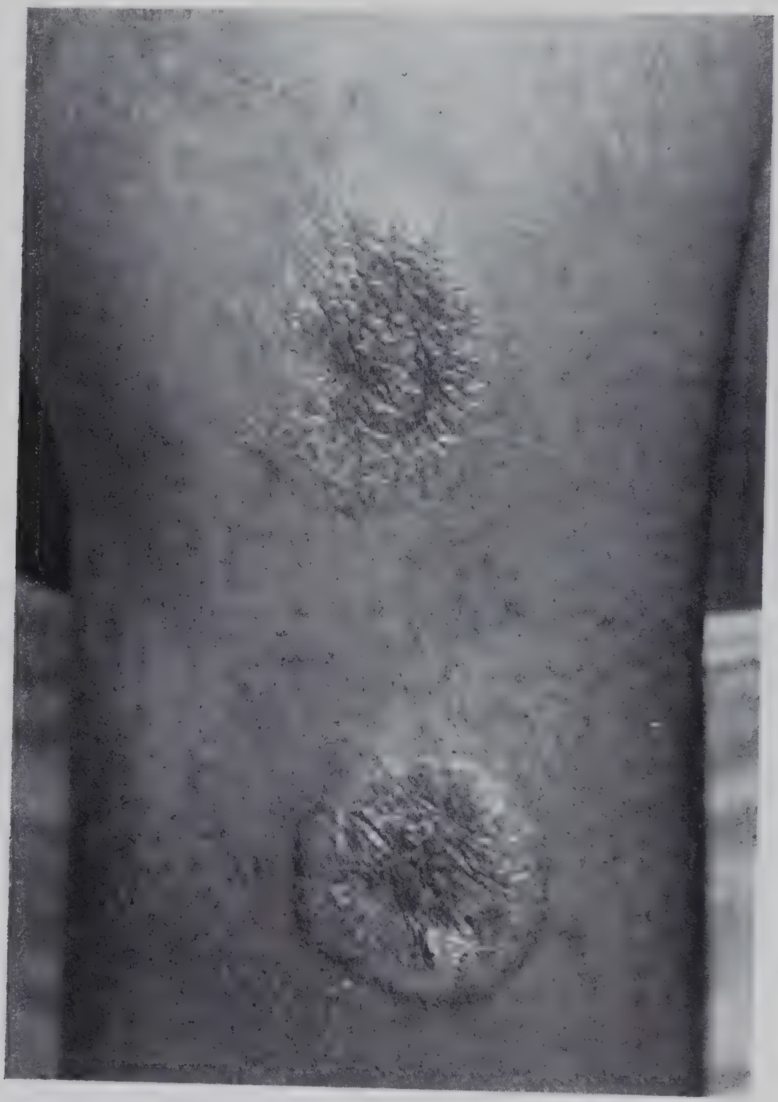


Fig. 96.—Double experimental initial lesion in erythematous-squamous phase. Circular discs 3.5 cm. in diameter, infiltrated, with raised border, furrowed by deep wrinkles and covered with transparent laminar scales. Inoculum taken from a Cuban case. Ninety-two days after inoculation.

Lichenoid Type.—This is characterized by nummular plaques which may be as large as the palm of the hand, irregular in outline, with slightly raised borders. The surface of this plaque presents a shiny cross-hatched appearance due to exaggeration of the natural wrinkles of the skin. The color varies in different subjects, but slate-colored tints predominate. Scraping with a curette or spoon detaches adherent scales.

The Large-Plaque Type.—After a development of some months, the initial lesion shows large areas of "geographic" contours, occupying an entire region of the body, or at least a major portion of a region. The surface is formed by a mixture of zones of normal or slightly atrophied skin, pigmented, hypochromic, or frankly achromic, along with other erythematous areas, covered with laminar or furfuraceous scales and seeded with smooth or scaly papules. The contours of these large plaques are polycyclic and circinate.

Transition from one clinical type to another can be verified by observation of patients over a long period of time.

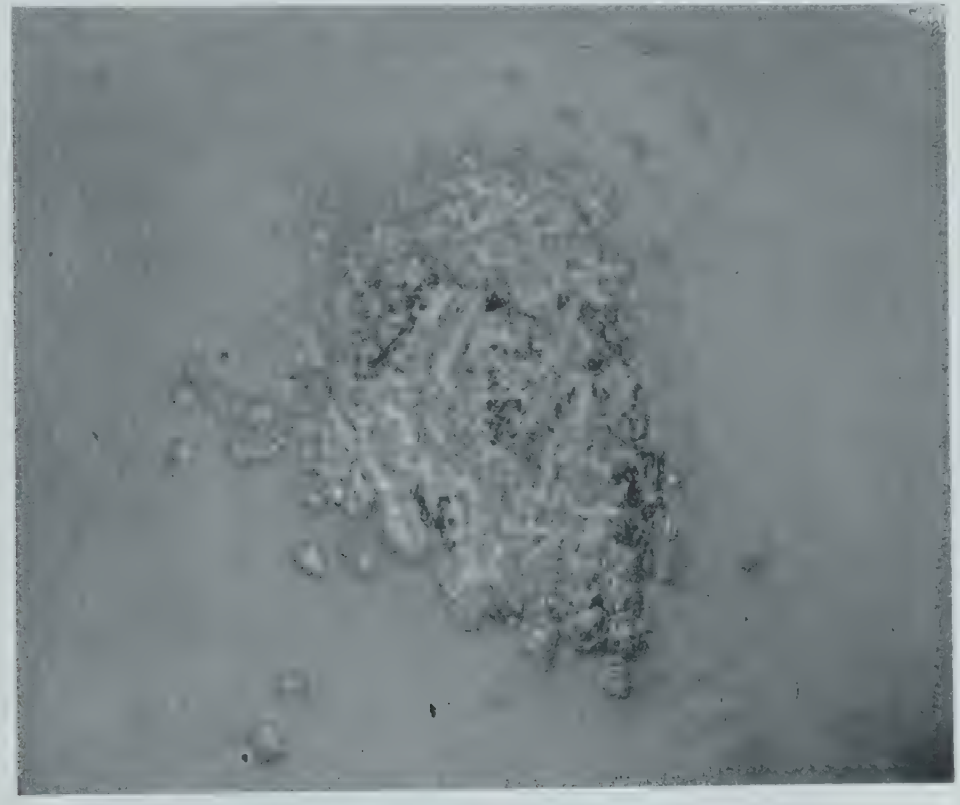


Fig. 97.—Initial experimental lesion 118 days after inoculation. Irregular erythematous-squamous plaque formed by the confluence of the primitive initial lesion with innumerable squamous papules, which in the course of development had broken out in its periphery. Observe the large quantity of squamous satellite papules. This state is quite constant in the naturally acquired disease, after the initial lesion has developed for some time. Inoculum taken from a Cuban case.

The initial lesion is always localized at the site of the portal of entry of the treponema, which usually means the uncovered parts of the body. Of 257 cases, the initial lesion was localized in 163 cases, or 63 per cent, in the lower third of the leg or in the back of the foot; in 67 cases, or 26 per cent, in the forearms and back of the hand; in 15 cases, or 5 per cent, on the face and neck; in 9 cases, or 3 per cent, on the arms, thighs, and buttocks; and in only one each, or 0.5 per cent, on the palm of the hand, the sole of the foot, and on the trunk.

The most marked subjective symptom is pruritus. In the papular phase, the initial lesion is always pruriginous in varying degrees. In the erythemato-squamous phase, pruritus is less marked and almost always intermittent. Scratching, induced by pruritus, produces excoriations which not infrequently result in secondary infection, which modifies the clinical appearance of the initial lesions of pinta to a slight degree.

One or two of the regional glands are almost always enlarged after the initial lesion has been developing for some time. In experimental cases the enlarged gland is almost always discrete: the diseased gland or glands are hard, moveable, painless, about the size of a small bean. In the fluid obtained by puncture, treponemata are constantly found upon dark-field examination.

In naturally infected cases, we have almost invariably observed one gland enlarged rather markedly; this we attribute to superimposed secondary infection. It is frequent in this type of patient and is due to negligence.

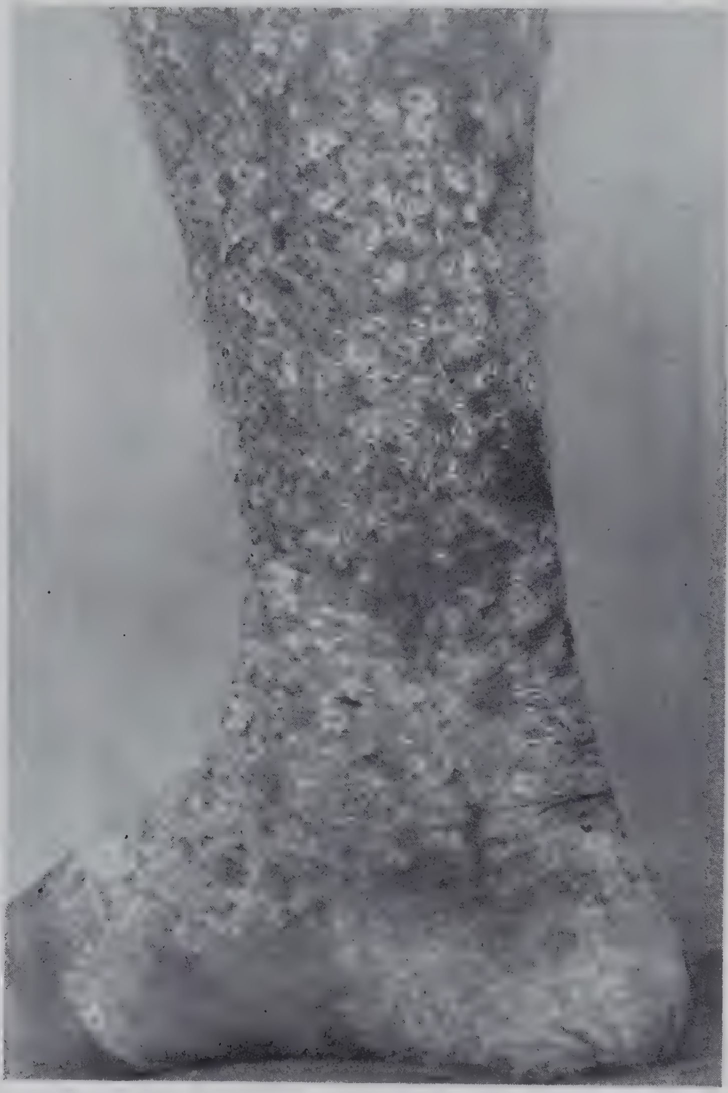


Fig. 98.—Extensive erythematous-squamous initial lesion, extended to the entire lower third of the leg, heel, and part of the dorsum and sole of the foot. It is formed by one sole patch, with distinctly limited borders, arciform, of rosy color with slate-colored zones due to deep pigmentation, abundant laminar scales of whitish color, partially loosened. Approximately 1½ years' development. Mexican case.

Early Lesions of the Period of Generalization

Pintids.—Although experimental proof is lacking, it is evident that dissemination of treponemata from the initial lesion to the various regions of the skin takes place through the blood stream or the lymphatics. Localization and multiplication of the treponemata in the skin is manifested clinically, at the beginning, by a roseola or slightly infiltrated papules.

Between the eighth and tenth days, the skin over the rose-colored spots or papules, up to now but slightly modified, shows accentuation of the natural creases and becomes covered with furfuraceous or laminar scales, giving the lesion a slightly lichenoid appearance. Thenceforward, the infiltration increases more or less, and the plaque stands out from the surrounding area like a lozenge, the scales increase, the borders become prominent so that the boundaries of the lesion as related to the surrounding skin can be perfectly seen. If the scales are detached at this time, a rosy surface, smooth or granular, may be observed. By diascopy, the rose color disappears and in its place is seen a whitish surface, hypochromic or slightly pigmented. After about thirty days, the more or less circular elements reach a diameter of approximately 1 to 1.5 cm. Growth of the surface takes place either by continuous centrifugal extension, or by fusion of a certain number of similar

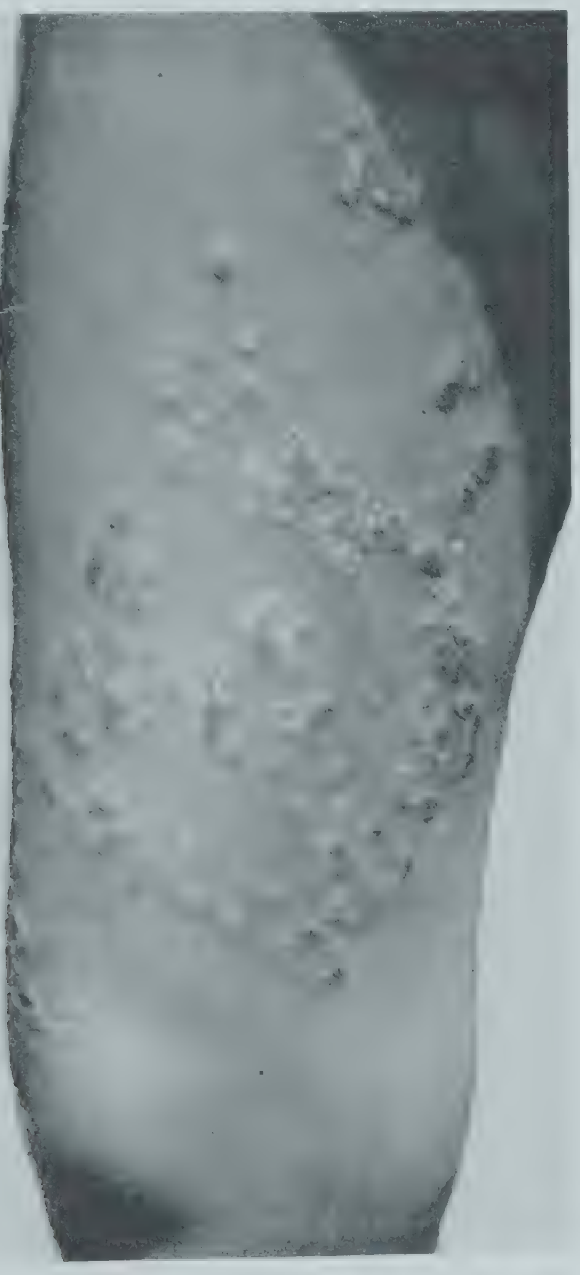


Fig. 99.—Papulo-squamous pintids. The papules are based on an extensive erythematous plaque which extends over the entire antero-internal surface of the thigh. Naturally acquired disease. Mexican case.

neighboring elements which break out in the area and fuse with the original plaque. The first method of growth results in discoid, oval, or orbicular plaques with a definite outline. The second type of growth results in circinate plaques, the borders of which are described by intersecting arcs.

The rose-colored spots or papules do not always develop toward the formation of erythematosquamous plaques. In an as yet undetermined percentage of cases, approximately 30 per cent, dyschromic disturbances predominate over inflammation and scales, and nummular or larger plaques form. These vary in shading from slate-blue to steel-gray; or they may be hypochromic and decidedly whitish. Either type may present a lichenoid appearance.

For these erythematosquamous, erythematopigmentary, or erythematochronic plaques, León Blanco has proposed the name *pintids*. This terminology is generally accepted today.

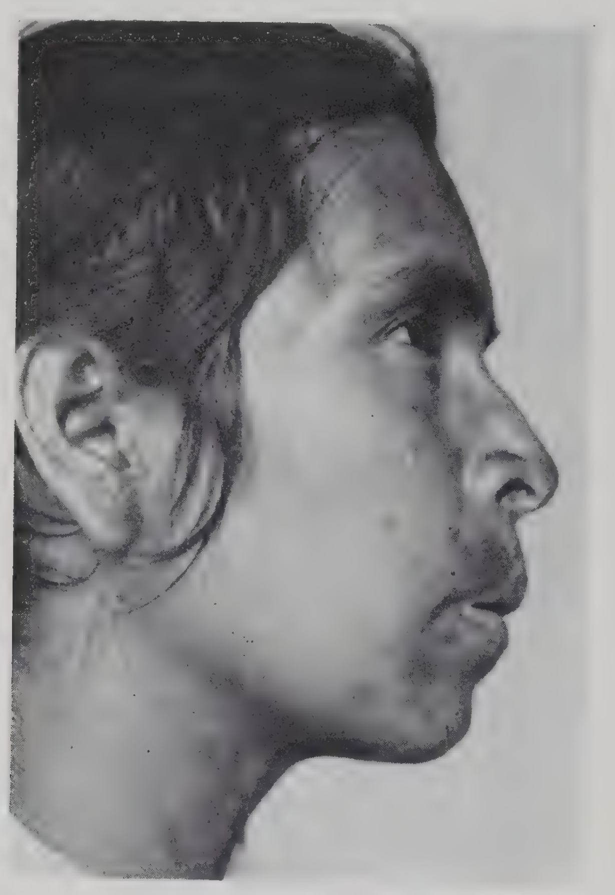


Fig. 100.—Erythemato-pigmentary pintids on face and neck. The lesions are slate-colored, masked by erythema; infiltration is very superficial and scales are lacking. Naturally acquired disease. Mexican case.

Sustained study of pintids over a long period of time shows that, in the course of months of infiltration, erythema and dyschromia are combined quantitatively in variable proportions in the different stages of development of each element. This is the cause of the variation in the clinical aspects. In general, erythematosquamous pintids maintain this characteristic during the first year of their development, but after this time, or even later, the scales become scarce and the erythema attenuates. Approximately at the end of the second year, the scales, usually furfuraceous, are barely apparent, and erythema, very discrete in the central portion, is more visible in the margins. Now pigmentary changes are the predominant symptom, especially in brunette or dark-skinned individuals, and superficial atrophy makes its appearance. In this manner, pintids take on an appearance of plaques that are more or less extensive, of pigmentary or achromic superficial atrophic dermatitis, circinate in contour.

The size of pintids, in general terms, is proportionate to the period of development. Recent pintids measure, on the average, about 1 cm. After a long period of development they may extend over an entire region of the body. Between these two extremes are found all intermediate sizes.

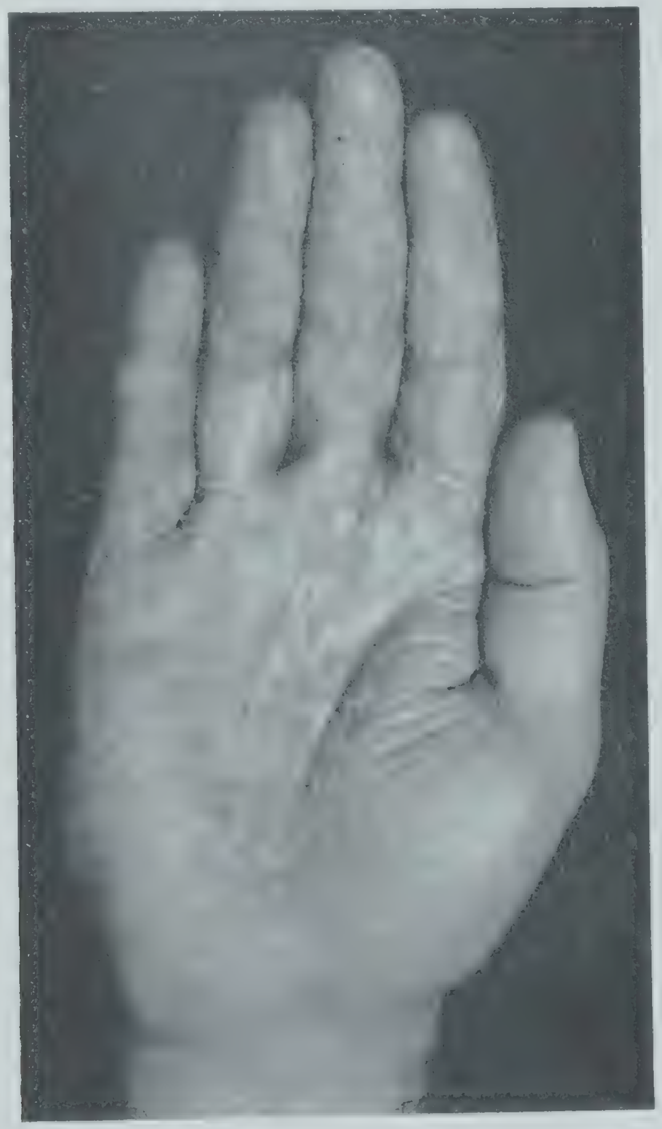


Fig. 101.—Palmar pintid of the trichophytoid type. One plaque extends from the cushions of the fingers to two-thirds of the anterior surface of the palm. It forms a pink superficies with small slightly achromic or pigmented areas, these last being steel-colored, covered with laminar or furfuraceous scales. A similar pintid is on the other hand. Mexican case.

The shape of the pintid is as variable as the size. Up to 3 or 4 cm. in diameter, they are more or less circular or oval. The large pintids are polycyclic and assume various shapes. The contour logically follows the shape of the lesion which it circumscribes, but it is usually formed by complete circles or by intersecting arcs. One of the distinctive characteristics is the perfect limitation. The margins are generally more active than the center of the lesion. In pintids which have been developing over a long period of time or in those which have been treated by topical medication, the margins are broken and form intersecting arcs separated by zones of healthy or slightly atrophic skin, which gives these pintids a markedly syphiloid aspect.

As to their morphology, numerous clinical types of pintids may be described: psoriasiform, gyrate, annular, petaloid, rosette-shaped, or sheet-like, etc. Because of their similarity to certain syphilodermas and leprous lesions, some are described as ''syphiloid'' or ''leproid'' pintids, etc.

The number of pintids varies greatly in different subjects. In some cases, the outbreak may consist solely of one or two elements; in others, twenty, thirty, or a hundred or more may appear. In either case, they may be localized in the trunk or on the extremities, and there is almost always a marked tendency to symmetry.

The development of pintids does not occur all at once. In the course of the early phase of the period of generalization, new elements appear progressively and develop in a manner similar to those which appeared earlier.

Pintids, as well as the initial lesion, may undergo spontaneous cure, or at least they might not leave a clinically appreciable cutaneous lesion. The disease may pass into a latent phase, the sole pathologic manifestation of which is the persistently positive serologic reaction (Wassermann and Kahn). At the end of four or five years or perhaps longer, cutaneous lesions begin to reappear, localized in the extremities. These are in the form of pigmented or achromic spots, which may or may not be accompanied by palmoplantar keratodermia. We have made these observations (as yet unpublished) in two cases experimentally infected. They serve to explain why a certain number of Mexican cases and almost all of the Cuban cases with late manifestations give no history of antecedent initial lesions or pintids; possibly the patients have forgotten that they had ever had any such lesions.

With the exception of intermittent pruritus and a slight increase in painful sensations, pintids present no other subjective symptoms.

When the breaking out of pintids is extensive, it is almost always accompanied by micropolyadenitis.

Cutaneous Manifestations of the Later Phase

In a certain proportion of cases of pinta, cutaneous manifestations are permanent from the time of appearance of the initial lesion to the end of life, if during this time no adequate treatment has been given. In other cases, the initial lesion and the pintids may undergo spontaneous cure and the disease may pass into a latent phase, after which cutaneous manifestations reappear especially on the skin of the distal portions of the extremities.

In the first instance, the initial lesion as well as the pintids slowly lose the erythematous and scaly aspect and assume the form of extensive superficial plaques of chronic atrophic dermatitis, pigmented or achromic, of different shapes and sizes. These new elements are not as scaly or congested as the preceding ones but appear as slightly erythematous achromic or pigmented spots. By continuous centrifugal growth and by fusion of these elements with others, the dermatosis covers progressively larger and larger areas of the skin.

In a given period of time, generally after a year of development, pinta acquires the characteristics of a universal dermatosis. At this point in the development of the disease, the most apparent symptoms are achromia and pigmentation. But a careful examination shows that these are constantly accompanied by superficial atrophoderma, more or less extensive lichenization, palmoplantar keratodermia, ichthiosiform states of the lower extremities, and inflammatory redness of more or less extensive zones of the skin. The spotted mixture of all these lesions is a typical and distinctive characteristic of this phase, which we have designated as the *late or dyschromic phase* of the period of generalization.

When pinta has passed through the latent phase, the lesions of the later phase are not so generalized and are circumscribed almost exclusively within the distal portion of the extremities or in certain limited regions of the trunk.

After studying a large number of cases, we have described, from the dermatologic point of view, two fundamental clinical forms of the dyschromic phase—one limited to the thorax or the extremities and the other more generalized.

In *the form limited to the extremities,* the typical clinical picture is symmetrical in both hands and feet. Occasionally only the hands are affected or only the feet. More rarely, only one hand or one foot may be attacked. In some cases, called *crossed pintos,* one hand and the foot on the opposite side of the body show typical lesions.

On the dorsal surfaces of the hands and on the lower third of the surface extending along the forearms, a superficial pigmented or achromic dermatitis, which displays a homogeneous or spotted slate-colored appearance, is most frequently observed. The achromic areas are situated, preferentially, on the skin which covers the metacarpophalangeal and interphalangeal articulations and the projections formed by the tendons of the extensor muscles of the fingers. Extension of achromic areas and of pigmented areas varies widely. There are cases in which achromia extends over the entire back of the hand and fingers with only small islets of pigmented skin; or, on the other hand, slaty pigmentation may predominate, with only small achromic areas. These last extend to the interdigital spaces only when the entire back of the hand has been invaded.

On the palmar surfaces of the hands and of the fingers there is generally achromia which can be diffused or limited to certain areas, but also along the achromic zones, or even within them, pigmented slate-colored spots of variable shape and size may be observed.

In some cases the achromic spots are located on skin which appears to be almost normal, perhaps slightly atrophic or scaly, without slate-colored pigmentation. In such cases, the skin surrounding the achromic spot frequently shows a slightly more accentuated pigmentation than normal, recalling the leucomelanoderma of vitiligo which it greatly resembles. But usually the achromia of pigmentation is accompanied by marked atrophy, more or less

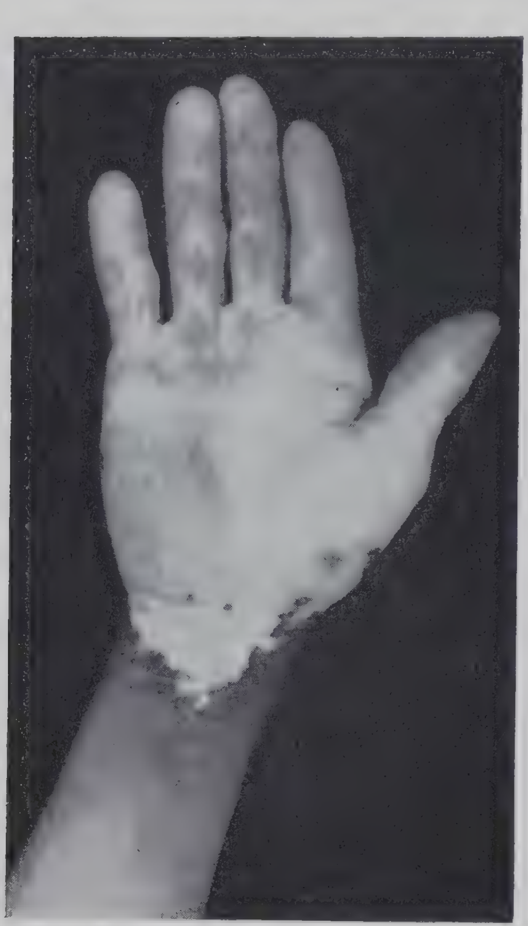


Fig. 102.—Achromia extending over the entire palm. In the thenar region bordering on the wrist are spots of slate blue pigmentation. Wrist shows triangular area of leucoderma with vertex pointed toward the elbow. Remainder of skin on the wrist shows deep pigmentation of slate blue. Mild palmar hyperkeratosis, not scaly. Mexican case.

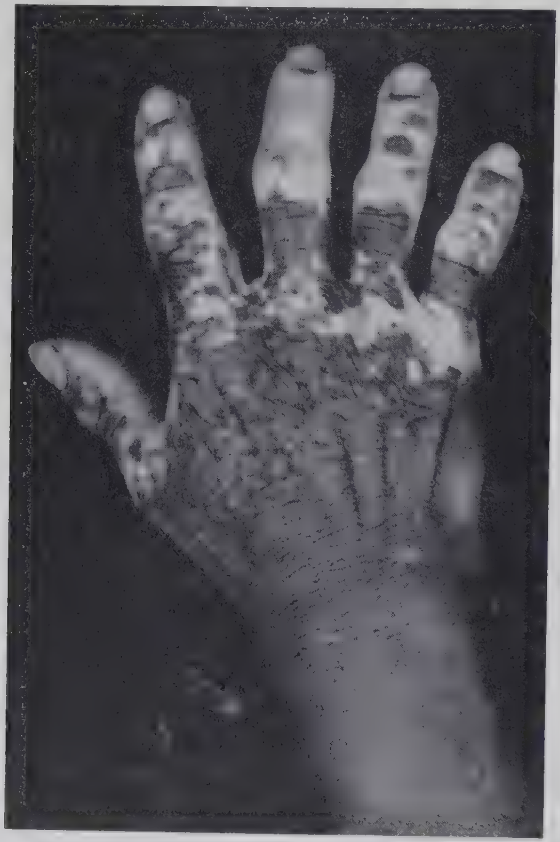


Fig. 103.—Leucomelanoderma of the dorsum of the hands. Dorsum of the wrist and part of dorsum of the hand are slate blue in color. Striated leuconychia of central finger. Mexican case.

marked desquamation, more or less extensive lichenization, with a greater or lesser degree of hyperkeratosis. The process is the same in the hands and feet. The soles of the feet and the palmar surface of the fingers present achromia and slaty pigmentation combined in all imaginable proportions. Just as in the upper extremities, pigmentary changes may or may not be accompanied by keratodermia. In the dorsum, the lesions are usually scaly and lichenoid. Achromia of the anterior surface of the wrists, triangular, with the vertex pointing toward the elbows, and achromic spots on the heels, frequently seen with characteristics of pinta, may also be observed in vitiligo, and, although frequent, they are not constant.

Palmoplantar keratodermia may be symmetrical or unilateral, diffuse or limited; it may be established simultaneously on both hands, or only the hands or the feet may be attacked.

In the palm, keratodermia is generally manifest in the form of diffuse hyperkeratosis which may or may not be desquamative, of a yellowish color, with dark areas. The natural wrinkles of the skin disappear or are accentuated or cracked, the latter being very painful. When hyperkeratosis is very markedly accentuated and extensive, movements of the hands and fingers become very difficult. More accentuated islands of hyperkeratosis are frequently observed in the form of verrucose excrescences, especially at the level of metacarpophalangeal and interphalangeal articulations. At times, palmar keratodermia passes beyond the borders and extends to the backs of the hands.

Plantar keratodermia is more frequently observed. It, too, may be circumscribed or diffuse. In its diffuse form, hyperkeratosis extends continuously from heel to toes and laterally from margin to margin. Plantar surfaces appear uniformly thickened and either smooth or seeded with partially loosened or stratified scales. Hyperkeratosis may stop at the margin of the foot, or it may pass beyond and extend to the skin which covers the tendon of Achilles and to the back of the foot. When it is very marked, along the margins as well as in the tendinous eminence, the horny substance forms polygonal blocks separated by deep furrows, or crests may form, perpendicular to the axis of the borders.

Verrucose excrescences form in the palms of the hands and also in the soles of the feet; these are painful and make walking difficult. Sometimes keratodermia extends to the lower third of the leg.

In both the palms of the hands and the soles of the feet, conical depressions are observed in the surface of the thick horny cover. These depressions are about the size of a pencil point, 2 to 4 mm. in depth, free or filled with conical plugs of horny substance, the forms of which conform perfectly to those of the depressions. They may adhere to the walls of the depressions, but generally they can be easily loosened. The entire plantar or palmar surface uniformly shows these depressions, or these may be seen only in a small part of the region.

Forms limited to the trunk are infrequent and present a distinct symptomatology. In a majority of cases, large hypochromic surfaces of "geographic" contour are localized in the shoulders, the flanks, or the anterior face of the trunk. They frequently show a slight erythematous tint and are slightly scaly. Ephilis-shaped spots and nummular areas of normally pigmented skin are usually found within the hypochromic surfaces. The margins, generally well defined by normal skin, describe full intersecting arcs. Instead of large surfaces, the hypochromic spots may appear as separate spots the size of the palm of the hand, circular or of irregular contour, scattered throughout the skin of the trunk.

Generalized clinical forms, which are frequent in pintogenous zones where a high index of infection obtains, give rise to bizarre, generalized dyschromias, which gives the patient a harlequin-like appearance.

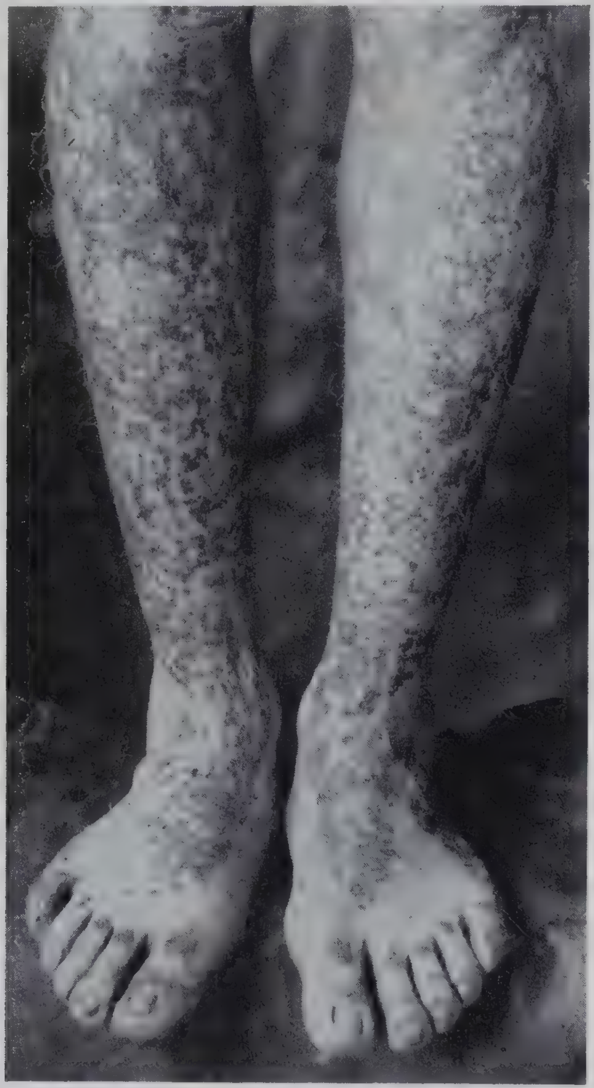


Fig. 104.—Leucomelanoderma of the lower extremities. Canities of all the hairs. Perifollicular and follicular pigmented spots are of brownish or slaty color. Mexican case.

Because of the generalization of the cutaneous lesions, this clinical form may be considered as a universal dermatosis; the macular process extends to the face, neck, trunk, and extremities. The lesions in each of these regions present distinct clinical aspects. By summarizing observations of a great number of patients, we may state that the lesions in a given region show two or three variations which, with slight differences, are repeated. This being the case, we shall, for greater clarity of description, describe that aspect which is generally present in lesions of the face, neck, trunk, and extremities.

In the case of the *face and neck,* it is almost always a question of pigmented erythroderma which extends to the whole face and neck, disposed in the form of more or less extensive plaques localized in the cheekbones, chin, forehead, and back of the nose. This last formation is usually shaped like a bat. In its diffused form, pigmentary erythroderma may appear like a mask, leaving only a narrow zone, 1 or 2 cm. wide, below the hair line. The color varies from intense blue-black to lead gray, with a livid tint due to erythema. In members of the white race or in light-skinned mestizos, the pigmentation is less apparent, and the face, neck, lobes of the ears, and the back of the neck in women show a diffuse reddening. Generally there is a distinct edema, giving a puffed or bloated appearance to the patient's face, as though he were drunk. Frequently there is capillary telangiectasis.

Pigmentation, which at first sight appears homogeneous, is formed by confluence of a series of points situated lineally along the dermic crests or around the pilosebaceous follicles.

In women whose necks and presternal regions are uncovered, the erythroderma takes the exact shape of the uncovered surface.

On the trunk, the lesions are usually hypochromic or slightly erythematous. They take the form of extensive polycyclic plaques, with the concavity of their contours directed toward the normal skin. The surface of the lesion sometimes shows lenticular spots that resemble freckles, or they may be slate-colored. In a general way, the hypochromic areas are symmetrically disposed in the scapular and paravertebral regions, separated by a wide zone of normal skin which covers the spinal column. On the anterior surface of the thorax, in the flanks, and on the abdomen, the symmetry is less apparent. On the shoulders it takes the shape of epaulets.

In old cases the hypochromia forms a continuous surface which extends uninterruptedly to the whole shoulder and to the anterior side of the thorax and abdomen. At times the skin on the trunk takes on a spotted appearance, like the skin of a leopard, due to areas of normal and pigmented skin.

In the upper and lower extremities the lesions are similar and are situated in homologous regions. There is vitiliginous achromia in the elbows and knees, in the wrists and ankles, in the planes of extension of the forearms and legs. There is atrophoderma of the back of the hands and feet. In the upper extremities the lesions are symmetrically disposed in the shoulders, arms, forearms, and hands. In the shoulders and arms the spots, usually hypochromic, are distributed in nummular areas separated by healthy skin. This produces a mottled effect. By growth, the spots become confluent, resulting in large hypochromic surfaces which extend uninterruptedly from shoulders to hands. In some patients the macular process is limited to the surfaces of extension, while in others the flexor surfaces are also affected. In general, achromia is total and vitiliginous in, or slightly over, or under, the elbows. Less frequently, the flexion and extension surfaces of arms, forearms, or of both are the sites of reticular leucomelanoderma or of diffuse leucoderma, between which are areas of normal or pigmented skin.

In some cases, the extensor surfaces of arms or forearms or of both display pigmented erythroderma, lead-gray or slaty color, slightly scaly, or, on the other hand, very scaly. The erythrodermic and pigmented surfaces show intense lichenization or are markedly squamous, and the pilosebaceous follicles are the sites of follicular keratosis, causing atrophy and the falling out of hair.

The hands may be free from or may present all the lesions which we have indicated in localized forms: achromia, pigmentation, hyperkeratosis, superficial atrophy, etc. The lesions have a pellagroid appearance when erythema is intense on the dorsal surfaces of the hands, and when it is accompanied by atrophy and slight desquamation.

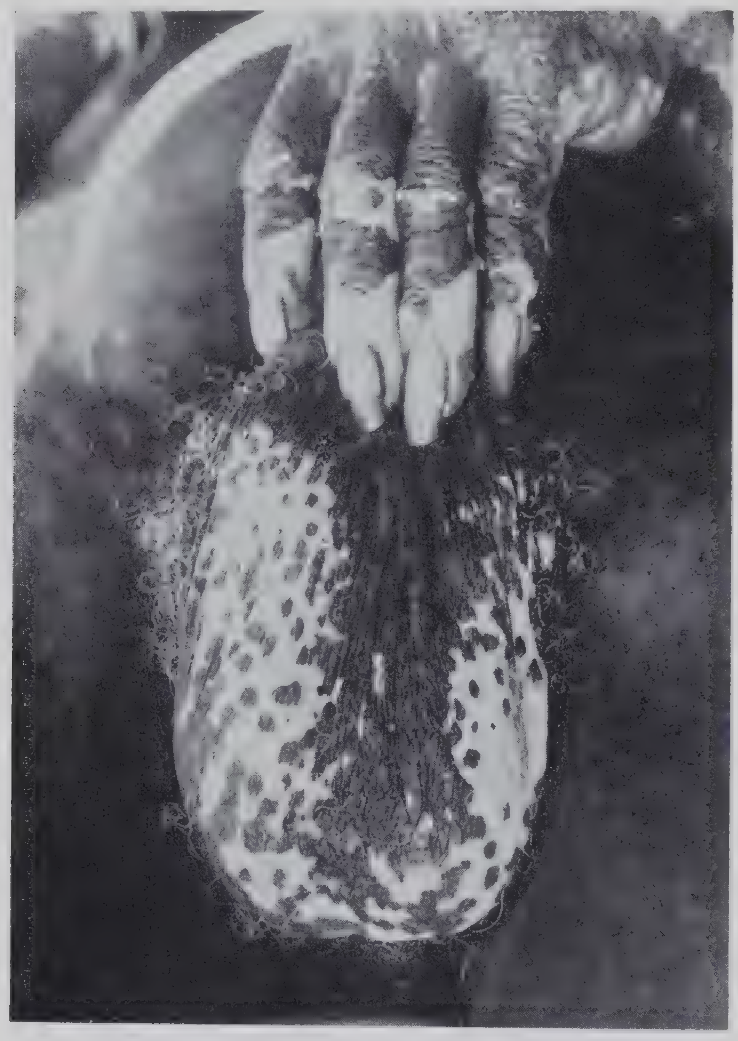


Fig. 105.—Leucoderma of the scrotum. Dark spots correspond to normally pigmented skin. Negro subject. Cuban case.

In the lower extremities, lesions are similar. In the buttocks, in the lateral surfaces of the hips, and in the thighs, hypochromia is often observed in areas of "geographic" contour which may or may not show many pigmentary carmine- or slate-colored spots. The inner surface of the thighs is frequently spared. Reticular leucoderma is often observed in the scrotum.

The legs are equally the sites of hypochromia, in isolated spots or over a continuous surface, or there may be lead-colored pigmented erythroderma. In some patients the entire leg or the major portion of it is covered with a scaly "stocking" formed by laminar or furfuraceous scales; in the last type the lesion is a dirty gray or silver-white color. These are situated upon infiltrated, cyanotic, leucomelanodermic skin, in which the creases are exaggerated. Pilosebaceous follicles show follicular keratosis.

In the feet the lesions are identical to those described in localized clinical forms.

Some authors describe pigmentary spots in hairy skin as well as in the mucosa and semimucosa. Hair in the diseased area may be normal or atrophic, or it may present canities. Canities is particularly constant when situated over leucodermic spots.

In the nails, punctiform and striated leuconychia has been described, but onychogryposis is more frequently observed.

In localized as well as in generalized forms, but more frequently in the latter, the superficial glands show variable enlargement. Glands in the axilla and groin may attain the size of a pigeon's egg.

Some authors have described aortitis in a great number of patients. We have never encountered it. Lack of extensive necroscopic investigations prevents affirmation or denial of its presence.

Pruritus has been reported by some authors and denied by others. In our experience, pruritus may be absent or mild or severe, continuous, or intermittent. Scratching frequently produces excoriations with resultant wounds, from which oozes serous fluid, in which we have found treponemata.

PATHOLOGY

All the cutaneous manifestations of pinta are the consequences of localization and multiplication of treponemata in the skin, causing chronic superficial dermitis. Pigmentation, hyperkeratosis, lichenization, atrophoderma, desquamation, and all the cutaneous lesions described above are the early or later results of this superficial dermitis.

Pintous dyschromia is the result of disturbance of the production and distribution of melanin secondary to a previous inflammation. In the hypochromic or achromic spots there is decrease or total absence of cutaneous pigment, with decrease or absence of melanoblasts as shown in the dopa-oxydase reaction. The rosy tint frequently seen in hypochromic and achromic spots is due to inflammatory erythema.

Slate-blue and lead-gray areas and all shades of both are due to an increase in dermic and, in smaller proportion, epidermic melanin. The larger the quantity of pigment in the dermis and the more superficial its localization, the darker will be the coloration. Weak lead-gray color results from lesser quantity of melanin deposited in the dermis and a simultaneous decrease of epidermic melanin. Simultaneous increase in epidermic and dermic melanin gives rise to areas with intense blue-black color. Increase in epidermic melanin without much participation of dermic melanin gives rise to spots of dark red tone; the larger the quantity of melanin, the darker these spots.

The violet color of some areas is due to erythema superimposed on deep pigmentation.

Dopa-oxydase reaction demonstrates that pigmentation coincides with hyperplasia and hypertrophy of melanoblasts, although at times a paradoxical state is observed, in which there is notable diminution or absence of melanoblasts in a slaty spot, with diminution or absence of epidermic melanin. This is due to the fact that melanin which has been phagocytized by melanophores may remain stored in them for a long time, while melanogenesis is exhausted or remains active only in a few isolated melanoblasts. In highly pigmented lesions the dermis is transformed into a reservoir of melanin.

The pathologic histology of the initial lesions and pintids is similar. Epidermis shows parakeratosis, acanthosis, intercellular edema, which sometimes gives rise to microscopic vesicles and migration of leucocytes through the epidermis. Cutis shows a dense inflammatory infiltration formed by lymphocytes, plasmocytes, polymorphonuclear leucocytes, and histiocytes. In some cases a more or less marked local eosinophilia is observed. The inflammatory infiltration is principally perivascular, although, by confluence, diffuse inflammatory infiltration of the entire superficial portion of the cutis may occur. Frequently numerous melanophores filled with melanin are observed. Exceptionally we see giant cells.

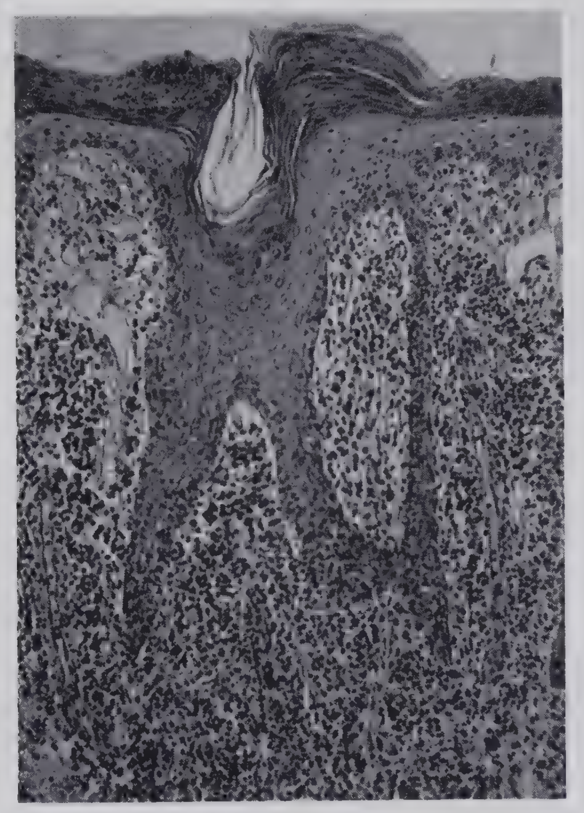


Fig. 106.—Histologic section of initial lesion in the papular phase. Parakeratosis, enlargement of the interpapillary crests, emigration of leucocytes across the epidermis. Dense infiltration of the papillar structure and of subpapillar portion formed by lymphocytes, plasma cells, polymorphonuclear neutrophiles, and histiocytes. Intense edema and marked vascular proliferation.

The histologic aspect of the lesions of the later phase depends upon the clinical aspect of the lesion taken for biopsy. In scaly and lichenoid lesions and in keratodermia, there is predominance of parakeratosis, hyperkeratosis.

and acanthosis, and the inflammatory infiltration of the cutis is intense. Proliferation and dilatation of blood vessels is marked. Elastic fibers are decreased or absent.

In atrophic lesions the epidermal layer becomes thinner, although at times isolated hyperkeratosis may be observed. With disappearance of the interpapillary crests, the dermoepidermic line of union is straight or slightly wavy, due to the fact that papillae are erased. Elastic fibers are missing in the papillary portion of the dermis. On the other hand, a condensation of the elastic network may be observed in the deep portion. In this type of lesion inflammatory infiltration is absent or at a minimum. Frequently the atrophic lesions are achromic at the same time, but this is not generally so; on the other hand, some pigmentary spots are atrophic at the same time.

Treponemata can be demonstrated in all cutaneous lesions by proper methods. In the initial lesion and in pintids, they are in the epidermis as well as in the dermis. In lesions of the later phase, we have succeeded in finding them only in the epidermis and in the epithelial portion of the pilosebaceous follicles.

The histologic lesion found in the glands adjacent to the initial lesion consists of hyperplasia and hypertrophy of the follicles. To this is added inflammatory reaction of the capsule and medulla, characterized by presence of plasma cells and lymphocytoid cells. Treponemata are encountered constantly.

In glands in the later phase a marked inflammatory reaction is observed, characterized by infiltration of the lymphoid tissue by plasma cells, basophilic cells, polymorphonuclear neutrophiles, eosinophiles, and proliferated fibroblasts. This chronic adenitis leads to such marked sclerosis that the lymphoid tissue is reduced to a narrow subcapsular band which, like a helmet, surrounds the central sclerosed portion of the gland.

Generally, and constantly in those cases which present extensive dyschromia, the affected glands show a bluish or violet color. This color is due to the enormous quantity of melanin which accumulates in the glands.

MODE OF TRANSMISSION

In 1860 J. J. León stated that pinta was transmitted from human being to human being by the bite of the "gegen" (gnat?). Since then, most authors who have made extended studies of pinta believe that the disease is communicated through a vector, possibly a hematophagous arthropod, perhaps belonging to the genus Simulium. León Blanco and Soberón Parra (1941) succeeded in transmitting the disease by using as a vector a fly of the genus Hippelates.

The easy transmissibility of pinta from person to person favors the idea of its contagiousness, and also the fact that some cutaneous lesions, accidentally opened, may be potentially infective (León Blanco). But the final decision concerning the mode of transmission still rests upon results of research to be carried out in the future.

DIAGNOSIS

Diagnosis of pinta in the dyschromic phase is not difficult, since there is scarcely any dermatosis for which it could be mistaken. However, clinical forms localized in the hands and feet, particularly frequent in countries where pinta occurs sporadically, are indistinguishable from *pintoid syndromes* caused by syphilis and yaws (Léon Blanco). This is due to the fact that at the present time there is no laboratory method which specifically differentiates these three treponematoses.

The initial lesions and pintids may be confused only with certain syphilodermas, with some epidermomycoses, and with clinical forms of cutaneous leprosy, or, in some cases, with pityriasis rosea. Laboratory methods permit easy differentiation of pinta from these last affections. But to differentiate it from syphilis, the greatest care must be exercised, since all of the diagnostic laboratory methods are the same for pinta as for syphilis. In some cases, diagnosis can be carried out only after the most minute clinical and epidemiologic studies.

The only laboratory methods useful in the diagnosis of pinta are the serologic reactions, Kahn, Wassermann, Mazzini, Meinicke, etc., and the search for treponemata in the cutaneous lesions.

In the dyschromic phase, serologic tests are positive in practically 100 per cent of the cases. Every case which in this phase shows a negative serologic reaction should not be considered as pinta unless treponemata are found in the cutaneous lesions.

In the primary period, while the initial lesion is the only lesion, serologic reactions are almost constantly negative. In the early phase of the period of generalization, reactions are positive in 70 per cent of the cases; the percentage increases as the development of the disease progresses.

Examination for treponemata in cutaneous lesions and in glands may be carried out by silver impregnation of biopsy material, using the method of Jahnel, Warthin-Starry, Dieterle,* or a dark-field examination may be made of serous matter obtained by puncture of the glands or by erosion and expression of cutaneous lesions. This last method is the most rapid and the easiest. It is essentially as follows: With a bistoury or curette a very superficial abrasion is made in the skin of the suspected lesion. Pressure with a pair of forceps is applied to express a few drops of serous matter from the lesion. If the first drops contain many red blood cells, they are discarded until a clear drop is obtained. This drop is mounted on a slide, covered with a cover glass, and examined under the dark-field microscope. A smear may be made and stained with Giemsa stain or impregnated by the Krajian or Fontana-Tribondeau methods.

TREATMENT

In Mexico and Colombia, from time immemorial, people have used metallic mercury in the form of unguents or vapor for the treatment of pinta, as well as bichloride of mercury in the form of lotions, potions, and pellets. Physicians in these countries during the past century recognized the popular tradition and regulated the mercurial medication (León, 1862).

---

*The editor (R.B.H.G.) prefers the Krajian method, Chapter 70.

Since Gratz (1913) discovered the curative action of salvarsan in this disease, arsphenamine and neoarsphenamine have been used. Mercurials and bismuths should be used only if arsenicals cannot be administered. Arsenicals cure pinta rapidly in relatively low dosage. In pinta, there is no reason for the intensive and prolonged treatment such as is used in syphilis.

A total dose of 2.50 to 3.50 Gm. of neoarsphenamine, administered every five days in doses not to exceed 0.60 Gm., cures any case of pinta definitively. All cutaneous lesions are cured, with the exception of leucodermic vitiliginous spots. At times deep pigmentations (slaty spots) remain four to six months before they disappear. This is due to the fact that reabsorption of melanin takes place slowly.

Zozaya and Varela (1943) have used penicillin with as much success in pinta as in syphilis.

In the dyschromic phase, serologic reactions are irreducible, even with the most intensive treatment. In the primary period and in the early phase of the period of generalization, reactions become negative some months after termination of the treatment.

PROGNOSIS

Prognosis in pinta is excellent. It does not seem to shorten life, and cutaneous lesions are rapidly cured under treatment.

With our present status of knowledge of the disease, it cannot be stated with certainty that pinta causes visceral lesions such as the aortitis described by some authors. It is not known whether the pathologic alterations in cerebrospinal fluid, similar to those observed in syphilis and indicated in some cases from Cuba by Pardo Castelló, are caused by syphilis or by pinta.

PROPHYLAXIS

1. The treatment of all patients should be obligatory.
2. Contact between normal and diseased individuals should be prevented.
3. Hygienic living conditions of inhabitants of pintogenous zones should be improved.

References

Browne, O.: 1901. The Prevalence of Pinta on the Gold Coast, J. Trop. Med. 3: 200.

Brumpt, E.: 1942. Un Nouveau Tréponéme Parasite de l'home: Treponema carateum Agent des Caratés ou Mal del Pinto, Compt. rend. Soc. de Biol. 130: 942.

Fonso Gandolfo, C., and Rugiero, H. R.: 1942. Mal del Pinto, Rev. méd. latino-am. 28: 12-22.

Fox, H.: 1928. Carate (Pinta) as Observed in Colombia, South America, Arch. Dermat. & Syph. 18: 673-691.

Fox, H.: 1930. Mal del Pinto as Observed in México; Its Relation to Carate, Proc. Eighth Internat. Cong. Dermat. & Syph., Copenhagen, p. 510.

Gómez, J.: 1879. Du Carathés ou Tache endémique des Cordilléres, Thése, Fac. Med., Paris.

González Herrejón, S., and Pallares, M.: 1927. Nuevas orientaciones para el estudio del Mal del Pinto, Hospital General, 2: 109-149.

González Herrejón, S.: 1938. Mal del Pinto, Monografía, Edición de la rev. de Informa. Terapeut. Leverkusen (Alemania), 1938.

Gratz, R. M.: 1913. Influencia del Arsenobenzol Sobre el Caraté, Repert. de Med. y Cirug. **5:** 123-125.

Hercelles, P.: 1903. La Pinta o Carate Tesis, Fac. Med., Lima, Perú.

Iriarte, D.: 1937. Trabajos Científicos, Caracas, Editorial ''Elite,'' pp. 37-44.

Iryz, J. M.: 1881. Memoria Sobre la Enfermedad Pintada de las Amécas, Gac. méd. de México **16:** 137-144, 153-158.

Langeron, M.: Caratés: Nouvelle Pratique Dermatologique, Paris, Masson & Cie, vol. 4, pp. 577-609.

Latapí, F., and León Blanco, F.: 1940. Las Lesiones de Principio del Mal del Pinto, Medicina **20:** 315-358.

León Blanco, F.: 1942. El Mal del Pinto, Pinta o Carate, México, Monografías Médicas Balmis, Compañía General Editora S.A.

León Blanco, F., and Oteiza, A.: 1945. The Experimental Transmission of Pinta, Mal del Pinto or Carate to the Rabbit, Science **101:** 309-311.

León, L. A.: 1940. El Mal Del Pinto en el Ecuador, Rev. de med. trop. y parasitol., bacteriol., clín. y lab. **6:** 253-276.

León, J. J.: 1860. La Tiña Endémica de Tabasco, Chiapas y el Sur de Mexico, Bol. Soc. Mex. de Geog. y Estadist. **8:** 503-521.

Lieberthal, E. P.: 1943. Pinta (Mal del Pinto, Carate) in Continental United States, J. A. M. A. **123:** 619-624.

Menk, W.: 1926. The Percentages of Positive Wassermann Reactions Found Associated With Various Diseases, Fifteenth Annual Report, United Fruit Co. Medical Department, pp. 168-170.

Menk, W.: 1926. Carate in Colombia, Fifteenth Annual Report, United Fruit Co. Medical Department, pp. 123-130.

Montoya Florez, J. B.: 1898. Recherches sur les Caratés de Colombie, Thése, Fac. Med., Paris.

Pardo Castelló, V., and Ferrer, I.: 1942. Pinta, Mal del Pinto, Carate, Arch. Dermat. & Syph. **45:** 843-864.

Ruiz Sandoval, G.: 1881. Memoria Sobre el Mal del Pinto, Gac. méd. de México **16:** 36-45, 49-64, 65-80, 81-94, 103-112.

CHAPTER 12

RELAPSING FEVER

ARDZROONY A. PACKCHANIAN

DEFINITION

Relapsing fever is an acute infectious disease characterized by alternating febrile and afebrile periods. The disease is caused by specific spirochetes and transmitted to man by soft ticks (Ornithodorus) or by body lice (Pediculus).

ETIOLOGY

The etiologic agent of relapsing fever is a spirochete belonging to the genus Borrelia. Many species of this genus have been described as the causative agent of relapsing fever; these so-called species or strains include *Bor. duttoni, Bor. hispania, Bor. kochi, Bor. novyi, Bor. obermeieri, Bor. recurrentis,* etc. At the present time it is not definitely known whether these so-called species or races are true, separate taxonomic species or whether they merely represent strains or varieties of one or two species. Morphologically, all of the so-called species and strains are identical. Likewise, the disease produced by the various ''species'' are similar clinically. These strains or variants differ from each other principally in their serologic characteristics. It is claimed that in a patient or in an animal any given strain of Borrelia assumes different serologic characteristics during each relapse.

The spirochetes which cause relapsing fever are cylindrical or slightly flattened, with pointed ends, and measure from 8 to 20 microns in length and from 0.2 to 0.3 microns in diameter. Each spirochete has about three to seven large wavy, irregular, inconstant spirals, each spiral having an amplitude of 1.5 microns. These microorganisms are highly motile and divide by transverse fragmentation. Borrelia stain readily with Wright, Giemsa, and other common bacteriologic stains. The spirochete of relapsing fever probably has never been successfully cultured in vitro. Because of their flexibility and small diameter, relapsing fever spirochetes can be passed through a thin-walled Berkefeld filter (Novy and Knapp, 1906).

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Both tick-borne and louse-borne relapsing fevers are widely distributed and found in most parts of the world. The louse-borne disease is found in cold as well as in warmer climates, while tick-borne relapsing fever occurs chiefly in warmer regions.

Louse-borne relapsing fever appears usually in the form of small or large outbreaks or epidemics, although occasionally sporadic cases are encountered. The infection apparently is not transmitted to man by the bite of the infected louse; however, if the louse is crushed and the material is rubbed into abraded skin as by scratching, infection may take place. So far as is known, the spirochetes of relapsing fever do not pass through the louse egg.

Louse-borne epidemics are frequently associated with poverty, unhygienic conditions, and troop movements. The disease is often found in close association with louse-borne typhus, and in some cases mixed infections of typhus and relapsing fever coexist (Robinson, 1942). Apparently there is no reservoir host other than man in the louse-borne relapsing fever; for this reason the delousing of people and their clothing is an effective means of limiting the spread of the disease.

Tick-borne relapsing fever occurs usually sporadically. Infected ticks transmit the spirochetes of relapsing fever by their bite to man. Many species of soft ticks (Ornithodorus) are known to be naturally infected with relapsing fever spirochetes. Of the species found in North and South America, five species, *O. hermsi, O. parkeri, O. rudis, O. talaje,* and *O. turicata,* have been proved to be vectors of relapsing fever. In Africa, Asia, and Europe, the following species have been proved to transmit relapsing fever: *O. erraticus, O. moubata, O. savignyi, O. asperus, O. tartakovski, O. tholozani,* and *O. verrucosus.*

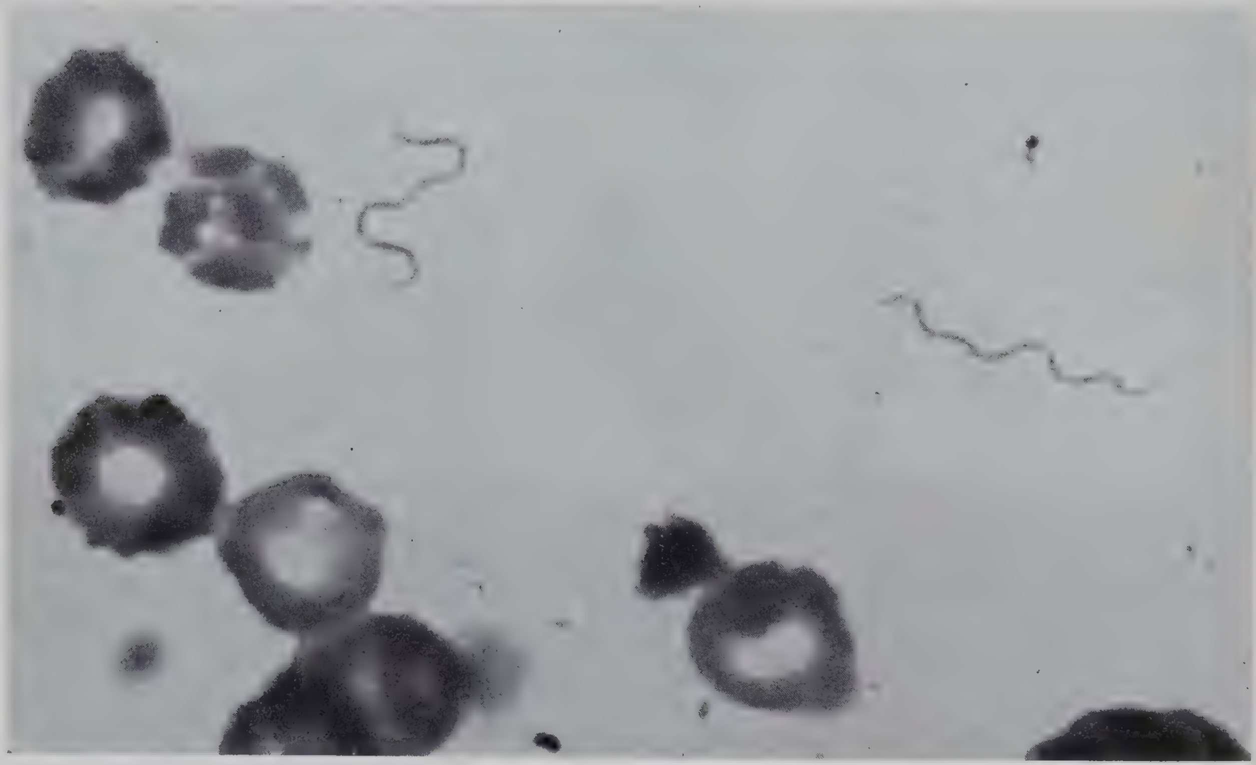


Fig. 107.—Thin blood film showing spirochetes of relapsing fever. Wright stain. (×2700.)

Inasmuch as the soft tick remains infected for life and passes the infection through its egg, it would seem that Ornithodorus itself is the principal reservoir host of *Bor. recurrentis,* although mammals such as monkeys, chipmunks, prairie dogs, rats, and squirrels may acquire the infection from ticks and serve as reservoirs for a shorter period.

Crab lice *(Phthirus pubis)* and bedbugs *(Cimex lectularius)* apparently play no role in transmitting this disease.

PATHOLOGY

Relapsing fever produces no pathognomonic morbid anatomy. However, the spirochetes may be demonstrated in the spleen, brain, and other organs.

Most of the fatal cases are due to complications, as heart failure, pneumonia, or septicemia. The spleen is nearly always enlarged and hyperemic and may be the site of microscopic miliary lesions. Small capillary hemorrhages are often noted in the various tissues.

CLINICAL PICTURE

The incubation period varies from about three to ten days. After this, fever makes its appearance quite abruptly, the temperature rising to 103° to 104° F. (39° to 40° C.) or more within a few hours. The onset may be accompanied by a chill or a chilly sensation. Headache and muscular pains are almost constant symptoms, and dizziness, nausea, and vomiting are noted frequently. The pulse is increased proportionately to the temperature. Slight jaundice is a common finding, and in severe cases the icterus may become marked. An erythematous eruption may be noted at times. Delirium and signs of meningeal irritation may be observed on rare occasions. The spleen is often palpable, and the liver is usually tender. After two to six days of fever, the temperature falls to normal by crisis, accompanied by profuse sweating.

A relapse usually occurs after a three- to ten-day period which is afebrile and relatively asymptomatic. The temperature rises almost as abruptly, but seldom goes as high as in the initial attack. The relapse as a rule does not last as long and the symptoms in general are not as severe as in the primary paroxysm. A second relapse commonly follows an apyrexial period. Not infrequently a patient has three or four relapses, and in rare cases twelve or thirteen relapses have been reported.

LABORATORY FINDINGS

During the febrile period, albuminuria is usually present. The leucocyte count is elevated to about 10,000 or 20,000 while there is fever. The Wassermann reaction is said to be positive in a small percentage of cases.

DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

There are several febrile illnesses which at the onset must be differentiated from relapsing fever. Malaria, dengue, and typhus would seem to deserve the greatest consideration as the disease progresses. Finding *Bor. recurrentis* in the patient's blood by direct microscopic examination or by animal inoculation establishes the diagnosis of relapsing fever. The presence of Plasmodium in the blood smear indicates malaria. A saddleback temperature curve, bradycardia, and leucopenia suggest dengue fever. The similarity of the epidemiology of typhus and relapsing fever and their possible coexistence make their differentiation quite important. The onset of typhus is less abrupt, and in typhus the fever remains elevated for a longer period. Relapsing fever does not give a positive OX-19 Weil-Felix reaction, although it is reported that the serum of relapsing fever patients agglutinates *Bacillus proteus* OX-K (Zarafonetis et al., 1946).

DIAGNOSIS

During the febrile period, the motile spirochetes with lashing movements may be demonstrated in a fresh wet preparation of the patient's blood by dark-field examination, preferably with a high power, dry objective. Stained thin or thick blood smears also are valuable for detection of the microorganisms in the blood. The spirochetes of relapsing fever stain readily with Wright, Giemsa, and other common bacteriologic stains, such as gentian violet and basic fuchsin. When the central nervous system is involved, the spirochetes can be demonstrated at times in the cerebrospinal fluid.

Inoculation of laboratory rats (Rattus) with the patient's blood is also a valuable method of diagnosis. About 5 to 10 c.c. of the patient's blood taken during the febrile period are placed in a sterile test tube containing a few glass beads and defibrinated by shaking. Each of one or two rats is inoculated with 1 or 2 c.c. of the defibrinated blood. The rat's blood should be examined for presence of spirochetes daily from the third to the twelfth day following inoculation, as the disease is also a relapsing condition in rats. Should it not be possible to inoculate an animal immediately, the sample of defibrinated blood may be stored in the refrigerator for a period of several weeks and mice or rats inoculated when desired. Defibrinated blood containing Borrelia, stored in an icebox for two to three months, still retains its power to infect susceptible test animals.

Since Borreliae have never been cultured successfully in vitro, cultural methods are valueless for diagnosis.

Serologic tests are still in the experimental stage and at present are not practical for clinical diagnosis.

PROGNOSIS

Relapsing fever is a self-limited disease. The mortality rate is probably less than 5 per cent, but in certain outbreaks the mortality has been estimated at about 20 per cent. The majority of cases that terminate fatally apparently are associated with debility, malnutrition, and other complicating conditions.

TREATMENT

Since relapsing fever usually terminates spontaneously, evaluation of specific treatment is difficult. Although the ideal drug for treatment of relapsing fever remains to be discovered, arsenical drugs are most commonly used and should be given early in the pyrexial period. Detrimental effects have been reported when arsenicals are given immediately preceding the crisis. The arsenicals, when administered in an afebrile period, seemingly have no effect. Some strains of the spirochetes have a tendency to become "arsenic-fast" through inadequate treatment. Neoarsphenamine (Novarsenobillon) is given intravenously in a dose of 0.3 to 0.6 Gm. for an adult and 0.01 Gm. per kilogram of body weight for children. One injection is usually adequate but injections may be repeated if necessary in two successive days, and one "stimulation dose" from six to eight days after the second injection. Oxophenarsine (Mapharsen) is administered intravenously in doses of 0.04 to 0.06 Gm.

Recently, penicillin has been used in the treatment of relapsing fever, with seemingly good results; however, the correct evaluation of this therapy and the optimal dosage will not be known until more cases are observed.

In cases that fail to respond to arsenicals, sodium or potassium bismuth tartrate given intramuscularly has been reported to be of value.

Inasmuch as the spirochetes of relapsing fever are found in the brain and cerebrospinal fluid in rare cases and since neoarsphenamine and penicillin do not reach the cerebrospinal fluid in effective quantities, relapses may be due to the persistence of the spirochetes in the central nervous system. The use of the pentavalent arsenicals (as tryparsamide or Aldersone) may be of value but have not been given an adequate trial as yet.

Symptomatic treatment and good nursing care assume great importance in the more severe cases.

References

Francis, E.: Longevity of the Tick Ornithodoros Turicata and of Spirochaeta Recurrentis Within This Tick, U. S. Pub. Health Rep. **53**: 2220.

Greaves, F. C., Gegon, H. M., and Falston, W. F.: 1945. Studies on Louse-Borne Relapsing Fever in Tunisia, U. S. Nav. M. Bull. **45**: 1029.

Ingraham, H. S., and Lapenta, R. G.: 1946. Penicillin in the Treatment of Louse-Borne Relapsing Fever, U. S. Nav. M. Bull. **46**: 1719.

Moulton, Forest Ray: 1942. A Symposium on Relapsing Fever in the Americas, Washington, D. C., Publication No. 18, American Association for the Advancement of Science.

Napier, L. E.: 1946. The Principles and Practice of Tropical Medicine, New York, The Macmillan Co., p. 233.

Novy, F. G., and Knapp, R. E.: 1906. Studies on Spirillum Obermeieri and Related Organisms, J. Infect. Dis. **3**: 291.

Novy, F. G., and Knapp, R. E.: 1908. On Spirochetal Immunity, Science **27**: 648.

Quin, C. E., and Perkins, E. S.: 1946. Tick-Borne Relapsing Fever in East Africa, J. Trop. Med. **49**: 30.

Robinson, P.: 1942. Relapsing Fever in Addis Ababa, Brit. M. J. **2**: 216.

Schubardt, V. T., and Hemphill, E. C.: 1946. Brain Involvement as a Possible Cause of Relapse After Treatment in Spirochetal Relapsing Fever, Science **103**: 422.

Shaul, J. F., and Saferstein, T. H.: 1947. Penicillin Therapy in Relapsing Fever, U. S. Nav. M. Bull. **47**: 238.

Strong, R. P.: 1944. Stitt's Diagnosis, Prevention, and Treatment of Tropical Diseases, ed. 7, New York, The Blakiston Co., vol. I, p. 321.

Stuart, G.: 1945. Relapsing Fever in North Africa and Europe, 1945, Washington, D. C., Epidemiological Bull. (UNRRA Health Division).

Tucker, W. A. L.: 1946. A Report on the Treatment of Tick Relapsing Fever With Sodium Penicillin, East African M. J. **23**: 13.

Zarafonetis, C. J. D., Ingraham, H. S., and Berry, J. F.: 1946. Weil-Felix and Typhus Complement-Fixation Tests in Relapsing Fever, With Special Reference to B. Proteus OX-K Agglutination, J. Immunol. **52**: 189.

CHAPTER 13

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS OF LEPTOSPIRAL DISEASES

A. Charlotte Ruys

INTRODUCTION

The first leptospiral disease to be recognized as such was Weil's disease. The etiologic agent of this disease was discovered in 1915, almost simultaneously by Inada and Ido in Japan and by Uhlenhuth and Fromme in France in a German military laboratory. The Japanese authors named it *Spirochaeta icterohaemorrhagiae,* the Germans *Spirochaeta icterogenes.* Noguchi (1918) suggested the generic name *Leptospira.* The generally accepted nomenclature at the present time is *Leptospira icterohaemorrhagiae,* priority being given to the Japanese authors. As early as 1916, in Japan, Ido, Ito, and Wani (1918) isolated another Leptospira from a patient with seven-day fever (nanukayami), and recognized the organism as related to but not identical with the Leptospira of Weil's disease. Other leptospiras were soon found—in Sumatra, in patients with relatively mild fevers, with clinical pictures different from the typical Weil's disease (Vervoort, 1922). During the course of the next twenty five years, a number of leptospiras were isolated: In Europe, Indonesia, Australia, Africa, and India. These differed serologically, but the various diseases which they caused resembled each other in their major symptoms, although they were quite different epidemiologically.

In this chapter, the identification of the leptospiras, the etiologic diagnosis of the disease, and the value of the serologic differentiation will be discussed.

The most recent comprehensive surveys on these problems are those of Walch-Sorgdrager and Bohlander (1939) and of van Thiel (1948), to both of which surveys several references will be made.

MORPHOLOGY

The genus Leptospira belongs to the family of Spirochaetaceae and is characterized by a flexible thread-like structure consisting of a large number of regular spiral coils. The amplitude of each coil is approximately 0.5 micron. The length of the whole Leptospira varies under normal conditions between 8 and 12 microns. Degenerative forms may reach a length of 40 microns. The width is constant and approximately 0.25 micron.

The leptospiras multiply by transverse fission, which may be followed under the microscope.

It is impossible to examine living leptospiras with the ordinary microscope because the index of refraction is nearly the same as that of the surrounding media (plasma, urine, culture fluid). Only with a dark-field condenser can they be easily recognized.

With a not-too-high magnification they look like strings of very closely packed small beads. They have hooked ends and a rather rigid middle part and move only slowly through the field, with rapid rotation on the longitudinal axis. When the medium is viscid they seem to have some traction and acquire some speed. Then also the middle part may show its great flexibility, the movement becoming like that of a snake. Sometimes the ends exhibit a whipping motion.

Great care must be taken not to mistake so-called "pseudoleptospiras" for real ones. Often thread-like fibrin structures are expelled from the blood corpuscles in blood specimens. These may show movements caused by currents in the liquid, perhaps also by Brownian movement, and may easily be mistaken for leptospiras.

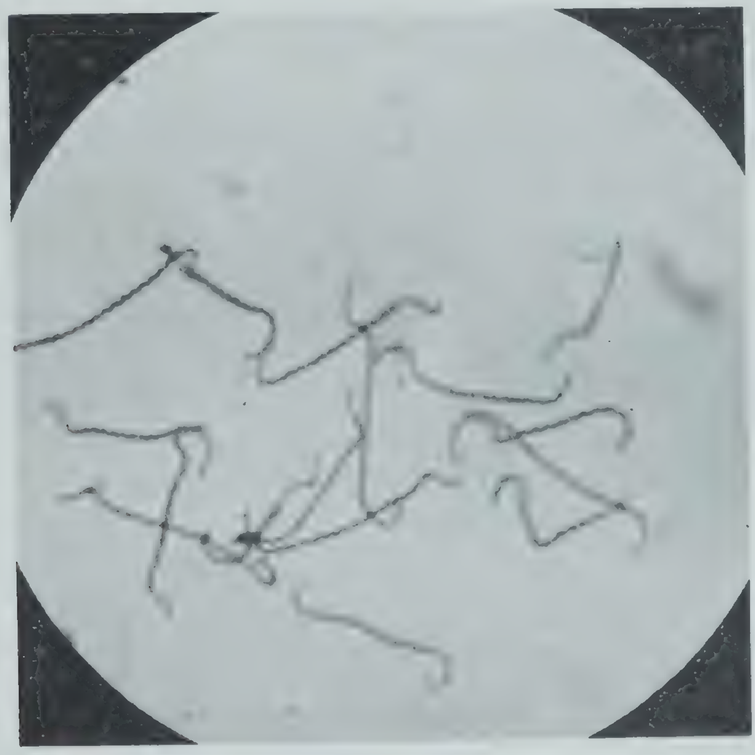


Fig. 108.—Leptospiras stained with Giemsa solution after fixation with osmic acid vapor. (×1500.)

STAINING

Leptospiras cannot be easily stained. They do not stain with simple dyes like gentian violet as the Borreliae do. Gram's method is of no use for this purpose. Good results can be obtained by staining with Giemsa solution. The oldest method is that of Zuelzer, who fixed the films with vapors of osmic acid and stained with Giemsa solution. However, Schüffner (1934) showed that the easiest method is to stain the films after drying, without preliminary fixation. With the usual fixatives the primary coils become invisible.*

---

*The editor, R. B. H. G., prefers the Krajian method described in Chapter 70.

A strongly active Giemsa solution in tap water should be applied on the dried smear for 30 minutes at 37° C. Then the stain is renewed by a fresh Giemsa solution which is again applied for 30 minutes at 37° C. Victoria-blue may also give good results. Great care must be taken to use clean slides and to wash away the stain very carefully by allowing the water to drip on the stain-covered glass and rinsing the precipitate with the water. In well-stained smears the color of the leptospiras is violet and the separate coils can be seen distinctly.

Leptospiras can be demonstrated in tissues by the Levaditi method.* Often they do not show the elementary spiral coils, but they can be easily recognized.

At times a division into a number of micro-leptospiras may be seen in films of old cultures. Gastinel and Mollinedo (1942) described in leptospiras granules with coiled filaments. They are invisible in the dark field; their nature is obscure.

FILTRABILITY

Leptospiras are able to pass through the pores of various filters. Their great flexibility, their extreme thinness, and their actively boring movements permit them to pass through the pores.

NUTRITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

Growth requirements of leptospiras are not very complicated. They can be grown in a simple buffered peptone solution:

Peptone Witte†	0.1	per cent
Phosphate buffer, pH 7.2	10	per cent
Distilled water	1	liter

Growth in this rather poor medium is, however, not very copious, and often it is not even visible at all, so that for experimental and diagnostic work it is necessary to add some enrichment. Rabbit serum is widely used for this purpose, sometimes in combination with hemoglobin. One of the simplest media is that of Vervoort (1922), wherein growth is luxurious. Sometimes, however, the tap water is not suitable for cultivation.

Vervoort Medium

(Modified by Wolff and Schüffner)

Peptone Witte†	1 Gm.
Ringer's solution	200 c.c.
Sörensen's phosphate buffer (pH 7.2)	100 c.c.
Tap water	1000 c.c.

Boil until the phosphates have been precipitated and filter after cooling. Distribute into small tubes. Sterilize at 100° C. The pH is 6.9 to 7.0.

Add 10 per cent sterile rabbit serum and inactivate at 56° C. for 30 minutes. Some rabbit sera agglutinate the leptospiras and cannot be used in the media, so that each rabbit serum must be previously tested.

---

*The editor, R. B. H. G., prefers the Krajian method described in Chapter 70.

†Editor's note (O. F.): In America, Difco or BBL peptones are used.

Another suitable medium is that of Korthof (1932), which is a slight modification of Vervoort's medium.

Korthof Medium

Peptone Witte*	400 mg.
NaCl	700 mg.
$NaHCO_3$	10 mg.
KCl	20 mg.
$CaCl_2$	20 mg.
KH_2PO_4	90 mg.
$Na_2HPO_4 \cdot 2H_2O$	480 mg.
Distilled water	500 c.c.

Heat the mixture for 20 minutes at 100° C., cool, and filter. Sterilize at 100° C. Then add 8 per cent of sterile fresh rabbit serum. Tube the mixture and inactivate for one hour at 56° C.

Noguchi (1918) prepared a semisolid medium in which growth is excellent but which is not suitable for agglutination experiments.

Noguchi Medium

Rabbit serum	1.5 parts
Ringer's solution	4.5 parts
2% agar	1.0 part

Paraffin oil to cover the surface.

Noguchi used this medium also in combination with a fluid medium consisting of 1.5 parts of rabbit serum and 4.5 parts of Ringer's solution poured over the solid medium, the whole covered with paraffin oil. A drop of rabbit hemoglobin—1 part of defibrinated rabbit blood + 3 parts of distilled water—may be added to improve the results.

Savino and Renella (1944) prepared a medium with several enrichment fluids.

Savino Medium

KH_2PO_4	2 Gm.
NaCl	3 Gm.
$MgSO_4$	0.05 Gm.
$CaCl_2$	0.01 Gm.
Distilled water	1000 c.c.

Add, as activator, 0.1 per cent of yeast extract, 0.5 per cent of caseine hydrolysate, and 0.005 per cent of hematin.

Adjust the reaction to pH 7.1 with HCl.

Sterilize for 15 minutes at 115° C.

Add 10 per cent sheep serum sterilized by filtration.

Other media have been advocated—egg agar, chorioallantoic membrane, etc.—but these have no advantages as compared with those described above, which are simple to prepare and easy to handle; the fluid media can be used in agglutination experiments.

Leptospiras must be cultivated under aerobic conditions. The optimum temperature for rapid growth is 37° C., but lower temperatures are necessary to keep the cultures alive. Incubation is mostly between 28° and 32° C. To obtain rich cultures, it is necessary to seed with large amounts of material. For subculturing, nearly one-half of a cubic centimeter of the old culture is transplanted into the fresh medium.

---

*Editor's note (O. F.): In America, Difco or BBL peptones are used.

VIABILITY AND RESISTANCE

In cultures, leptispiras may show a remarkable viability. Cultures in Vervoort's medium kept in the dark at room temperature without subculturing sometimes remain alive for years. Dinger (1932) demonstrated that in the semisolid medium of Noguchi a thick layer of leptospiras grows 10 to 12 mm. below the surface, and these organisms may remain fully virulent for years.

Leptospiras are very sensitive to acid reactions. They are killed very quickly in acid urine. To isolate them from urine, it is advisable to alkalinize the urine by keeping the patient on appropriate diet for some days before collecting the specimen. They are not very sensitive to salts. They may remain alive in sea water for several hours, but they disappear more quickly from salt and brackish water than from fresh water (Ruys and Schüffner, 1934).

They are killed at 50° to 55° C. in 30 minutes. They tolerate low temperatures well (Zuelzer, 1925). They can be kept alive in tissues for several months when frozen at −20° C. In culture fluid at this temperature, however, they survive no more than five days. They cannot be preserved by lyophilization (Stavitsky, 1945).

They have little resistance against the various disinfectants. Bile kills them quickly. They are not susceptible to sulfonamides. Of the antibiotics, penicillin is active; it has been used successfully in animal experiments (Larson and Griffitts, 1945; Borg Petersen and Rotwitt Schmidt, 1945). Good results have been reported in a few patients.

ANTIGENIC STRUCTURE

Soon after the discovery of leptospiras as the etiologic agent of various infections, the question arose as to whether those strains which differ serologically are independent species or whether they are mere variants of the same species. This problem has not been solved to date, and both theories have their adherents. The first strains recognized as differing from the classic Weil strains were *L. hebdomadis, L. akiyami* A in Japan, and *L. pyrogenes* in Sumatra, all of which cause an acute febrile disease, but mostly without jaundice, and with a much lower death rate than Weil's disease.

When still more serologically different strains had been isolated, a more elaborate study of the antigenic structure became necessary, especially since the various strains cause almost the same clinical picture in man, the differences being unimportant and only in degree. In addition, the virulence for animals is not a reliable means of differentiation either.

Antisera from patients or sera prepared by injection of cultures into rabbits agglutinate cultures of leptospiras often in a high titer.

Because of the very faint visibility of the leptospiras in ordinary light, the agglutination is poorly visible macroscopically. Pot (1936) reported that concentrated formalin-killed cultures may show agglutination visible to the naked eye, but unfortunately with these antigens the titers are lower and a much greater quantity of cultures is needed.

This method and others based on the same principle have found only few followers, so that the serologic tests must be controlled by the dark-field examination. Serum dilutions made with a buffer solution are mixed with equal quantities of a rich culture and kept at room temperature. After two hours, the results can be read provisionally, but the titer is not determined until the next day.

In the lower dilutions of a strongly active serum, agglutination is clearly visible; in the higher dilutions, lysis complicates the picture. The conglomerates of agglutinated leptospiras begin to show signs of lysis, until, at the end, only shapeless balls can be found, and finally nothing is seen except a few freely floating single leptospiras. The titer end point is the last dilution of the serum which shows some difference in number with the control.

Attention must be called to the fact that sometimes ''nests'' of leptospiras grow in rich cultures. These may resemble agglutinated leptospiras. In the ''nests,'' however, each leptospira is entire and actively moving; in agglutinated conglomerates, the leptospiras have a damaged appearance and the movements finally cease.

To avoid the danger of working with living leptospiras and to be able to have a stock of antigen ready at hand, some laboratories use formalin-killed cultures. It is necessary to use chemically pure formalin and no more than 0.5 per cent. Impurities may cause nonspecific acid agglutination (Zuelzer, 1932). When dead cultures are used, however, the lysis is absent and agglutination becomes manifest in much higher dilutions than with living cultures, where this phenomenon has been obscured by the lysis. The titer of the sera tested with killed antigens is on the whole somewhat lower than when the titer of lysis is determined with living ones (Walch-Sorgdrager, Schüffner, Bohlander, 1938). The results with these antigens are less specific than with living organisms. The formalin antigens can be kept for a limited time only, because clumping begins sooner or later, probably caused by formic acid originating from the formalin under the influence of light.

Complement fixation tests have also been used in serologic work, but they are less specific and have practically been abandoned. To determine the antigenic structure of a strain, monovalent rabbit sera are used, which should have a titer of not less than 10,000. They agglutinate and lyse strains of the same species to the same titer or sometimes less, the lowest being one-tenth of the titer.

Other species may show a strong co-reaction, but they never reach more than one-third of the titer (Walch-Sorgdrager, 1938; Walch-Sorgdrager and Bohlander, 1939).

Some species are serologically closely related *(L. canicola-L. icterohaemorrhagiae)*; others are independent *(L. bataviae)*. For an exact diagnosis, however, agglutinin absorption tests are necessary, especially in those cases where co-reactions are strong. The absorption test first described by Ruys and Schüffner (1934) and improved by Schüffner and Bolander (1939) is made as follows:

Agglutinin Absorption Test

Use a well-grown culture in Vervoort's medium, killed with 0.5 per cent formalin. Centrifuge 100 c.c. of this culture for 20 minutes at 10,000 r.p.m.

Pipette off the supernatant fluid.

Mix the remaining 0.45 c.c. of concentrated culture with 0.05 c.c. of the serum diluted to a titer of 1:3,000.

The antibodies are fixed within 4 hours, but the mixture can be left overnight at room temperature.

Centrifuge at 10,000 r.p.m. for 5 minutes, and use the supernatant fluid for agglutination tests. Van Riel (1946) prefers to perform the absorption with living cultures.

It is difficult to absorb a serum with many strains because a leptospira culture cannot be entirely deposited at the bottom of a tube, and some fluid remains in the tube. The serum is diluted with the remaining culture fluid, and it might become too greatly diluted if more strains were used. We have no absolutely monovalent sera such as we use in our bacteriologic serologic work.

Strains of the same species remove antibodies from a serum, strains of a related one only those belonging to the strain itself. The clear-cut results obtained with this method allow of an exact identification. Several species are now recognized as serologic and biologic entities in which there is correlation with a distinct epidemiologic behavior.

However, strains considered to be of the same species may show minor serologic differences. Borg Petersen (1938), whose work was confirmed by Gispen and Schüffner (1939), demonstrated that the classical Weil strains fall into two groups, one complete with the antigens A and B, the other incomplete with only A. Both behave alike pathologically and epidemiologically, so that they may be considered as two biotypes of the same species. Probably the same relation exists between *rachmat,* incomplete, and *akiyami* A, complete biotype. Van Riel found the same relation between an Indonesian strain (Benjamin) and an African strain (Mukingilwa), neither of which has been fully tested with all other sera. According to van Riel, *L. canicola* also has the two types mentioned here. Table XII is a list of strains examined with agglutinin absorption tests.

TABLE XII

MICROORGANISM	PATHOGENIC FOR MAN	DISEASE	PRINCIPAL HOST	OTHER ANIMALS FOUND INFECTED
L. icterohaemorrhagiae (complete and incomplete biotype)	+	Weil's disease	R. norv. norvegicus	R. ratt. rattus, R. ratt. alexandrinus, dog, fox, horse, pig, sheep, Arvicola terrestris
L. canicola	+	Canicola fever	Dog	
L. grippotyphosa (L. andaman B)	+	Mud fever, harvest fever	M. arv. arvalis	Cl. glareolus, A. sylvaticus
L. bataviae (L. mitis, L. oryzeti)	+	Indonesian, Weil's disease, rice-field fever	R. norv. norvegicus, Micromysminutus soricinus	R. ratt. brevicauclatus, cat, dog, R. ratt. diardii, A. sylvaticus
L. saxkoebing	+	?	A. sylvaticus, A. flavicollis	–
L. sejrø	+	Sejrø fever	Mus spicilegus, A. sylvaticus	–
L. pomona (L. australis C)	+	Swineherd's disease, leptospirosis, australis C	Pigs	Dog, R. norv. norvegicus
L. australis A. (L. ballico)	+	Cane fever	R. ratt. culmorum	Dog, R. norv. norvegicus, R. ratt. rattus
L. hebdomadis	+	Seven-day fever, nanukayami	M. montebelloi	Dog
*L. pyrogenes (L. salinem, L. australis B)**	+	Spirochaetosis febrilis	?	R. ratt. brevicaudatus
L. autumnalis (L. rachmat incomplete, *L. akiyami A* complete)	+	Autumnalis fever, hasami, akiyami	R. ratt. brevicaudatus, A. speciosus	M. montebelloi
L. ballum	+	?	Mus musculus (white variety)	Mus spicilegus
L. javanica	?	?	R. ratt. brevicaudatus, R. ratt. concolor	R. norv. norvegicus, R. ratt. diardii

A, Apodemus; R, Rattus; Microtus; Cl., Clethrionomys.

*In agglutination tests these are the same: in absorption tests there are small differences.

There are a number of other strains which have been more or less exhaustively examined: *L. bovis, L. vituloreum, L. icterohaemoglobinuriae, L. schüffneri, L. mukingilwa, L. andaman* A, the strains H and H.C., Veldrat Semarang 173, Djasiman, and many others. Our knowledge of either the serology or the epidemiology of these organisms, however, is still too incomplete to include in Table XII.

Variability

So far as I know, no variation in serologic behavior has ever been observed. The old strains from the Amsterdam collection have all remained stable. No conclusive animal experiments have ever shown a transition of one type into another. The experiments of Uhlenhuth and Zuelzer (1922) and of Baermann and Zuelzer (1928), who considered the various strains to be all variants of one classical species, are open to criticism.

Van Riel (1946), however, basing his conclusions on his experiments in Africa with a number of strains but not with all types now available, defends the thesis that intermediate types exist and that there are transitions from one type to another. He emphasizes that strains which belong serologically to *L. grippotyphosa* in Central Africa cause a disease with frequent jaundice and a high death rate. However, as long as no exhaustive study of the epidemiology has been made, the picture is not complete and conclusions are premature.

DEMONSTRATION AND ISOLATION OF LEPTOSPIRAS

In all leptospiral infections the microorganisms circulate in the blood during the first week of the illness. After the first ten days, positive blood cultures are very rare. Bone marrow has been found positive even on the twentieth day (Dreyfus and Montefiore, 1939). In the latter phases of the disease the leptospiras may be excreted with the urine. Sometimes the spinal fluid contains leptospiras in incipient stages. At autopsy, both the liver and the kidneys may contain leptospiras.

Leptospiras in the Blood

Blood films stained with Giemsa stain very rarely show leptospiras. Ordinary dark-field examination of blood also rarely gives a positive result, and many so-called positive findings have been caused by pseudoleptospiras mistaken for actual leptospiras. With the centrifugal method, however, leptospiras may be demonstrated in the blood in some cases during the first days of the illness (Ruys, 1933).

For this purpose one part of a 1 per cent sodium oxalate solution in phosphate buffer pH 8.1 is mixed with 9 parts of blood. The mixture is then centrifuged for 15 minutes at 1500 r.p.m. The clear plasma is examined under the dark-field microscope with low magnification. If no leptospiras are found, the remainder of the plasma is centrifuged for 20 minutes at 10,000 r.p.m. The sediment may show the leptospiras. Blood collected in Liquoid Roche (15 to 20 c.c. blood in 4 c.c. of a 1 per cent polyanethol sodium sulfonic acid solution in saline = Liquoid) can be used also for dark-field examination after the first centrifugation, and sediment can be obtained from the plasma (van Thiel, 1948).

It is unfortunate that this rapid method, which permits an early diagnosis within half an hour after the sample has been taken, is not absolutely reliable. In several cases, microscopically negative blood specimens yielded positive cultures or animal inoculations. On the other hand, no other method gives so quick an answer so early in the disease. All three methods should be used to demonstrate the leptospiras. The culture is the most reliable method, but it often gives positive results only after quite a long time (one and one-half to four weeks). If the material is contaminated, the addition of 400 mg. of a sulfonamide to the medium may give a pure culture of leptospiras (Stavitsky, 1945).

To demonstrate the leptospiras by means of test animals, young guinea pigs, 150 to 200 Gm., should be used, preferably also young hamsters, because these animals are sensitive to leptospiras *(L. canicola)* which are only very slightly pathogenic for guinea pigs (Randall, 1948).

The inoculation should be made into the peritoneal cavity, with 0.5 c.c. of blood. Daily examinations from the third day on may show leptospiras even in those cases in which the strain does not cause the animal to become sick. If the animal develops fever, the blood is usually positive, and pure cultures may be obtained by inoculation of the blood, obtained by puncture of the heart, into suitable media. Guinea pigs dying of leptospirosis show hemorrhages and mostly a severe jaundice. At autopsy the liver and kidneys sometimes contain leptospiras in abundance; in other cases very few or none are found. The adrenals are always positive.

White mice are also used; they are susceptible to many strains of leptospiras, but one must bear in mind that white mice may also be spontaneously infected, as first described by Bessemans and Thiry (1929) and later by Schüffner (not published). Ruys, Minkenhof, and Wolff (1948) found two colonies of white mice to be heavily infected with *L. ballum* which were excreted in very large quantities. One must be sure that the colony of mice in use is free from spontaneous infection. Bessemans, Thiry, and Tielliu (1933) demonstrated that some strains of *L. icterohaemorrhagiae* kill the mice quickly and that others cause practically no symptoms except a constant urinary excretion of leptospiras virulent for guinea pigs.

Leptospiras in Urine

Leptospiras may appear in the urine from the beginning of the second week of the illness on. Direct examination in the dark field sometimes shows the leptospiras in great numbers. If the urine is acid, most of them will be dead and will show the typical rigid appearance. Passage through a susceptible animal (guinea pig, hamster) is necessary to isolate them from the urine. The patient should be given an alkalinizing diet a few days before the specimen is to be collected, to prevent the damage of acid urine. The simplest way to obtain a positive result is to take the second portion of urine of the day and to inoculate the animals intraperitoneally with one cubic centimeter of the freshly excreted urine at the bedside of the patient. Urine sent to the laboratory seldom contains living leptospiras.

Leptospiras in the Cerebrospinal Fluid

As early as 1916, Costa and Troisier described a case of Weil's disease in which the principal symptom was meningitis. Since that time the involvement of the meninges as a constant and sometimes predominant symptom of leptospiral infection has become well known. There is, however, no correlation between the seriousness of the clinical symptoms and the pathologic changes or the presence of leptospiras in the spinal fluid.

In all cases of Weil's disease or canicola fever in Amsterdam, Minkenhof could demonstrate a serous meningitis in the second week, while in only a few cases was the number of cells high. Gsell and Rimpau (1944) stress that, in the various leptospiral forms of meningitis, during the first days of the illness no inflammatory changes can be observed, despite distinct meningeal symptoms. They always appear in the second and third weeks, however. Only rarely can the leptospiras be isolated from the spinal fluid. Schüffner and Walch-Sorgdrager (1936) found them only in one out of twenty-five cases of Weil's disease with meningeal symptoms. Cultures and animal inoculations are indicated when it is necessary to examine spinal fluid.

Leptospiras in Post-Mortem Material

The demonstration of leptospiras at autopsy may be possible by darkfield examination of smears from the liver, kidneys, or adrenals. In tissues, the silver impregnation by the Levaditi method* will show the leptospiras in these organs. Cultures will be possible only immediately after death. In all other cases, animal passage is necessary. In chronic animal carriers (rats, dogs, mice, but not rabbits or man), the process in the kidneys is sharply localized to limited parts of the cortical substance; leptospiras will be found in layers on the epithelium of the convoluted tubules. Several parts must be examined before a diagnosis of leptospiral infection can be excluded (Schüffner and Kuenen, 1923).

Leptospiras in Surface Water

Surface water is often the source of infection with leptospiras (Weil's disease, mud fever), but it is very difficult to demonstrate these microorganisms in the water. Microscopically, they cannot be distinguished from the nonpathogenic *L. biflexa* which is often found in water.

The only reliable method to date is that of van Thiel and co-workers who bring the warmed water (37° C.) into immediate contact with the tissues of susceptible animals either by bathing guinea pigs with an abraded skin in the suspected water or by letting this water flow through the subcutaneous tissue of the animal. By this method even very small numbers of pathogenic leptospiras can be isolated from the water.

SEROLOGIC DIAGNOSIS

If no leptospiras have been isolated from the patient, the diagnosis can be made serologically in a number of cases. The antibodies do not usually appear before the seventh to tenth day of the illness. They then increase rapidly and reach the highest titer in the third or fourth week. The reliability of this method depends to a great extent, however, on the number of strains with which the serum is tested.

If there are no co-reactions and the titer has risen to 1:1000 or more during the course of the illness, the probable cause of the disease may be established in this way.

---

*The editor (R. B. H. G.) prefers the Krajian method as outlined in Chapter 70.

Strong co-reactions are, however, often observed, and in these cases absorption tests are indicated (see also Ruys, Minkenhof, and Wolff, 1948). Sera of patients infected with the incomplete biotype of *L. icterohaemorrhagiae* may show titers against *L. canicola* which are as high as and at certain moments even higher than against the causative strain. This nonspecific titer rises more quickly and disappears sooner than the specific one, so that in convalescence the titer against the causative strain is always the highest. Even a rising titer against a certain strain in itself, however, is no proof that this strain is the etiologic one.

The absorption test gives immediate and more reliable information.

A titer below 1:1000 may indicate that the causative species was not included in the series of strains used for the tests; it may be only a co-reaction. In convalescence the titer drops but the serum may react positively for years after the illness, be it only in low dilutions (1:30 to 1:300).

In Sumatra, Wolff (1936) found the reaction negative one year after the disease in most cases. Low titers always indicate further careful examination.

Patients who have been treated with immune serum at the beginning of the disease form antibodies only very slowly, and high titers are not reached at all (Schüffner, 1942). The serologic diagnosis can be conclusive only if all sources of error have been considered and excluded.

Antibodies in Urine

In addition to the antibodies in the blood, the urine also may contain specific agglutinins and lysins (van der Hoeden, 1936). Formalinized cultures should be used for nonsterile urines. The concentration of antibodies has no relation to the presence of albumin in the urine. The titer of the urine is lower than that of the blood. In a few cases it was only 1:2, but it may rise to 1:256. Co-reactions are much rarer with urine than with sera.

Antibodies in Spinal Fluid

In some cases of leptospira infections, the spinal fluid contains antibodies, but seldom in larger quantities. Walch-Sorgdrager (1938) found that undiluted spinal fluid was never positive in eleven patients with Weil's disease with and without meningeal symptoms. Gsell (1946), however, mentions positive results in low titers from the second week of the illness on, especially in cases with serous meningitis. The titer varies between 1:2 and 1:100 and sometimes it is even higher than 1:100. A titer of 1:10 is considered proof of the infection.

GENERAL REMARKS

The various methods outlined above make an etiologic diagnosis possible either by isolating the causative agent or by serologic examination. A refined serologic technic is often required. The question has often been raised whether it is necessary to go so far in serologic differentiation and whether the diagnosis of a leptospiral disease without further differentiation would not be enough.

A typical case of Weil's disease may be recognized as such by its sudden onset, high fever, conjunctival injection, muscular pains, jaundice, albuminuria, and meningeal symptoms. The death rate is high. However, the mistake of Noguchi's co-workers, who mistook cases of Weil's disease for yellow fever, is too well known.

Since more attention has been paid to the frequent occurrence of less typical cases we know that practically all leptospiral infections produce in principal the same clinical picture.

In infections with some strains, jaundice is frequent (Weil's disease, *L. bovis*); with other ones it is rare (*L. canicola, L. grippotyphosa*); other groups are intermediate. Serous meningitis is a predominant feature in some (*L. canicola, L. pomona*); in others it is not often described. The renal and extrarenal disturbances which influence the production and composition of the urine (Klarenbeek and Schüffner, 1933) may be severe (*L. icterohaemorrhagiae, L. bovis, L. icterohaemoglobinuriae*) or practically absent (*L. canicola, L. grippotyphosa*). On the whole the differences are in degree, never essential. The pathogenicity of the various types or species for experimental animals is not the same, but this quality is not essential either. Thus far the only reason, but a very important one, why differentiation seems indicated is the difference in epidemiology. The serologically different strains often show a quite distinct parasite-host relationship and hence a typical epidemiologic behavior (see also Table XII).

L. icterohaemorrhagiae lives in the kidneys of the rat (*Rattus norvegicus norvegicus, Rattus rattus alexandrinus*) where it may persist for the whole of the lifetime of the animal. *L. grippotyphosa* is found in the kidneys of the vole, but after a longer or shorter period the animal may be free of it (Schüffner and Bohlander, 1943). *L. canicola* is found only in the dog as a carrier; *L. pomona* in Switzerland is found in infections of swine (Gsell, 1946). *L. hebdomadis* is confined to *Microtus montebelloi* in Japan and to dogs in Medan.

Sometimes it is difficult to decide whether finding a certain animal as a leptospira carrier is mere chance or whether it means that this is the real animal host and the reservoir which enables the parasite to persist. During the last years several diseases have been recognized as leptospiral infections; for example, swineherd's disease in Switzerland (*L. pomona*), jaundice in Palestine (*L. bovis*), a part of the cases with serous meningitis (*L. canicola, L. pomona, L. sejro, L. grippotyphosa*), and many diseases in the Belgian Congo and Australia. Several animals have been found to be carriers. It will take some time and much work before we know how far minor differences in serology are accompanied by distinct epidemiologic behavior.

The complete and incomplete biotypes seem to behave practically alike in all respects and therefore all groups are considered to belong to the same species.

As long as the epidemiology of the various types or species has not been sufficiently clarified, we think it necessary to keep them separated, even though only provisionally for some.

References

Baermann, G., and Zuelzer, M.: 1928. Die Einheitlichkeit aller tier- und menschenpathogenen Spirochäten vom Typus der Spirochaeta icterogenessyn icterohaemorrhagiae und der mit ihr verwandten Wasserspirochäten vom gleichen Typus, Centralbl. f. Bakteriol. (Abt. 1) **105:** 345-367.

Bessemans, A., and Thiry, U.: 1929. Sur une Leptospirose Spontanée de la Souris, Compt. rend. Soc. de biol. **101:** 486-489.

Bessemans, A., Thiry, U., and Tielliu: 1933. Présence du Leptospire Ictero hémorrhagique Chez le Rat d'egout en Belgique et Receptivite de la Souris Blanche Pour ce Spirochétidé, Acta brev. Neeland. **3:** 1-3.

Borg Petersen, C.: 1938. Leptospiren Untersuchungen in Dänemark, Acta Convent. tertii de trop. atque malar. morbis **1:** 396-405.

Borg Petersen, C., Rotwitt Schmidt, M.: 1945. Effect of Penicillin on Leptospirae in Vitro and on Leptospirosis in Guinea Pigs, Acta path. et microbiol. Scandinav. **22:** 462-474.

Costa, S., and Troisier, J.: 1916. Méningite Avec Subictère dans la Spirochétose Icterohémorrhagique, Bull. et mém. Soc. méd. de Hôp. 1928

Dinger, J. E.: 1932. Duurzaamheid der Smetkracht van Leptospirenkweken, Geneesk. tijdschr. v. Nederl.-Indië **72:** 1511-1519.

Dreyfus, B., and Montefiore, M.: 1939. Étude comparée de la Virulence de la Moelle Osseuse et du Sang au Cours de la Spirochétose Expérimentale du Cobaye, Compt. rend. Soc. de biol. **131:** 73-74.

Gastinel, P., and Mollinedo, R.: 1942. Sur l'évolution de Leptospira Ictero-haemorrhagiae Granule Leptospirogene, Compt. rend. Soc. de biol. **136:** 141-144.

Gispen, R., and Schüffner, W.: 1939. Die Spaltung der klassischen Leptospira icterohaemorrhagiae s. icterogenes in zwei Biotypen, Zentralbl. f. Bakt. (Abt. 1) **144:** 427-434.

Gsell, O., and Rimpau, W.: 1944. Feldfieber Meningitis in der Schweiz, Schweiz. med. Wchnschr. **74:** 51-59.

Gsell, O.: 1946. Recherches Cliniques sur les Leptospiroses Béniques, Bull. Acad. de méd. 688-693.

van der Hoeden, J.: 1936. Anticorps Spécifiques de la Maladie de Weil dans l'Urine, Ann. inst. Pasteur **56:** 206-221.

Ianad, R., Ido, Y., Hoki, R., Kaneko, R., and Ito, H.: 1916. The Etiology, Mode of Infection and Specific Therapy of Weil's Disease (Spirochaetosis Icterohaemorrhagiae), J. Exper. Med. **23:** 377-402.

Ido, Y., Ito, H., and Wani, H.: 1918. Spirochaeta Hebdomadis, the Causative Agent of Seven Day Fever (Nanu hayami), J. Exper. Med. **28:** 435-448.

Klarenbeek, A., and Schüffner, W.: 1933. Het voorkomen van een afwijkend leptospira ras in Nederland, Nederl tijdschr. v. Geneesk. **77:** 4271-4276.

Korthof, G.: 1932. Experimentelles Schlammfieber beim Menschen, Zentralbl. f. Bakt. (Abt. 1) **125:** 429-434.

Larson, C. L., and Griffitts, J. J.: 1945. A Comparison of the Effect of Penicillin and Immune Serum in the Treatment of Experimental Leptospirosis in Young White Mice and in Hamsters, Pub. Health Rep. **60:** 317-323.

Mochtar, A.: 1928. Reinkulturen von Leptospiren durch Filtrieren oder Zentrifugieren von verunreinigten Material, Centralbl. f. Bakteriol. (Abst. 1) **107:** **374-377.**

Noguchi, H.: 1918. Morphological Characteristics and Nomenclature of Leptospira (Spirochaeta) Icterohaemorrhagiae (Inada, Ido), J. Exper. Med. **27:** 575-592.

Noguchi, H.: 1918. Further Study on the Cultural Conditions of Leptospira (Spirochaeta) Icterohaemorrhagiae, J. Exper. Med. **27:** 593-608.

Pot, A. W.: 1936. A Macroscopic Agglutination Test in Weil's Disease, Lancet **1:** 1290-1291.

Randall, R.: 1948. Canine Leptospirosis, J. Am. Vet. M. A. **112:** 136-139.

van Riel, J.: 1946. Le Foyer Centro-Africain de leptospirose. Contribution au Probléme de l'unité ou de la Pluralité des Leptospiroses du Type L. Ictero-hémorrhagique, Ann. Soc. Belge Med. Trop. **26:** 197-313.

Ruys, A. Ch.: 1933. Het aantonen van Leptospira ictero-haemorrhagiae in bloed met behulp van tweevoudige centrifugatie, Nederl. tijdschr. v. geneesk. **77:** 3654-3658.

Ruys, A. Ch., and Schüffner, W.: 1934. De waarde van absorptieproeven voor de serologische diagnose van verschillende leptospira infecties, Nederl. tijdschr. v. geneesk. **78:** 3110-3114.

Ruys, A. Ch.: 1946. Weil's Disease in Amsterdam During the War, Ant. v. Leeuwenhoek **11:** 168-170.

Ruys, A. Ch., Minkenhof, J. E., and Wolff, J. W.: 1948. Significance of Immunological Differences in Leptospiras in the Diagnosis and Epidemiology of Human Leptospirosis, Proc. 4th Internat. Cong. on Trop. Med. & Mal.

Savino, E., and Rennella, E.: 1944. Leptospira y Leptospirosis en la Republica Argentina, Talleris Gráficos ''Tomás Palumbo,'' Buenos Aires.

Schüffner, W.: 1934. Recent Work on Leptospirosis, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **28:** 7-37.

Schüffner, W., and Walch-Sorgdrager, B.: 1936. Meningitis bij ziekte van Weil, Nederl. tijdschr. v. geneesk. **80:** 3000-3007.

Schüffner, W., and Bohlander, H.: 1939. Zur Technik des Absättigungsversuchs mit. Leptospiren, Zentralbl. f. Bakt. (Abt. 1) **144:** 434-439.

Schüffner, W.: 1942. Moeilijkheden bij de beoordeling van de agglutinatie-lysisproef van de ziekte van Weil, Nederl. tijdschr. v. geneesk. **86:** 163-164.

Schüffner, W., and Bohlander, H.: 1943. Ueber den verschiedenen Verlauf des durch Leptospiren hervorgerufenen Nierenprozesses bei Feldmaus und Ratte, Ztschr. f. Immunitätsforsch. u. exper. Therap. **104:** 237-243.

Schüffner, W., and Kuenen, W. A.: 1923. Het voorkomen van spirochaeten van het type der Sp. ictero-haemorrhagiae bij ratten in Amsterdam, Med. Tijdschr. f. Geneesk. **67:** 2018-2026.

Stavitsky, A. B.: 1945. Preservation of Leptospira Ictero-Haemorhagiae in Vitro, J. Bact. **50:** 118.

Stavitsky, A. B.: 1945. Studies on the Pathogenesis of Leptospirosis, J. Infect. Dis. **76:** 179-192.

van Thiel, P. H.: 1948. The Leptospirosis, Leiden, Universitaire Pers.

Uhlenhuth, P., Fromme, 1915. Experimentelle Untersuchungen über die s.g. Weilsche Krankheit (Ansteckende Gelbsucht), Med. Klinik. **11:** 1202-1203, 1264-1266, 1296, 1375-1377.

Uhlenhuth, P., and Zuelzer, M.: 1922. Ueber die biologischen und immunisatorischen Beziekungen des Erregers der Weilschen Krankheit (Spirochaeta icterogenes) zu der freilebenden Wasserspirochaete (Spirochaeta pseudo-icterogenes), Klin. Wchnschr. **1:** 2124-2130.

Vervoort, H.: 1922. Spirochaeten bij acute koortsige ziekten van onbekende oorsprong in de Tropen, Geneesk. tijdschr. v. Nederl.-Indië **62:** 697-707.

Walch-Sorgdrager, B.: 1938. Les leptospiroses, Bull. Health Organ. League of Nations **8:** 151-411.

Walch-Sorgdrager, B., Schüffner, W., and Bohlander, H.: 1938. Der Einfluss des Säuregrades auf die Seroreaktion und das Wachstum der Leptospiren, sowie Bemerkungen über das Formalinreagens, Ztschr. f. Immunitätsforsch. u. exper. Therap. **92:** 35-52.

Walch-Sorgdrager, B., and Bohlander, H.: 1939. Over de verdeling der leptospirastammen in groepen door middel van de agglutinatie-lysis reactie, Ant. v. Leeuwenhoek **5:** 100-111.

Wolff, J. W.: 1925. Untersuchungen über Kultur und Serologie der Leptospiren, Arch. f. Schiffs- u. Tropen. Hyg. **29:** 111-128.

Wolff, J. W.: 1936. Geneesk. tijdschr. v. Nederl.-Indië 499.

Zuelzer, M.: 1925. Von Prowazek's Handbuch des Pathogenen, Protozoen III: 1627-1798.

Zuelzer, M.: 1932. Elektrophoreseversuche an Spirochaeten. II Mitt. ueber electrische Ladung und Säureagglutination, Zentralbl. f. Bakt. (Abt. 1) **108:** 330-334.

CHAPTER 14

WEIL'S DISEASE

ARDZROONY A. PACKCHANIAN

DEFINITION

Weil's disease or leptospirosis is an infectious disease caused by *Leptospira icterohaemorrhagiae* and characterized by sudden onset of fever, headache, nausea, vomiting, muscular pain, jaundice, and hemorrhagic tendencies. Weil's disease is not to be confused with catarrhal jaundice or epidemic infectious hepatitis, for which a virus etiology has been suggested.

ETIOLOGY

The causative agent of the disease is a finely coiled spirochete which is now universally known as *Leptospira icterohaemorrhagiae* (Inada et al., 1916). See Chapter 13.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Leptospirosis is world-wide in distribution, occurring usually sporadically, but occasionally in small or larger outbreaks.

Wild rats *(Rattus norvegicus, Rattus rattus alexandrinus,* and *R. rattus rattus)* are the chief reservoir hosts of *L. icterohaemorrhagiae.* Once these rats become infected, they serve as carriers of leptospiras throughout their lives, eliminating the microorganisms in the urine. This contaminated urine serves as the principal source of human infection. Dogs and mice *(Mus musculus)* have been found to be infected with typical *L. icterohaemorrhagiae* and may serve as a source of human infection (Packchanian, 1938). The leptospiras gain access to the body through mucous membranes or abrasions of the skin which have come in contact with water or other substances contaminated by the excreta of infected animals. Occupations that place people in environments habituated by rats and that are conducive to skin abrasions are associated with a strikingly higher incidence of Weil's disease. Miners, fish cutters, and employees of breweries, sewage disposal plants, garbage disposal plants, abattoirs, and wharves most commonly contract the disease (Packchanian, 1941; Stiles and Sawyer, 1942).

PATHOLOGY

The most striking gross pathologic findings are hemorrhages and jaundice. Large hemorrhages are commonly found in the subcutaneous tissues, the viscera, pleura, or peritoneum; small or focal hemorrhages are found in almost all tissues. The liver and kidneys are generally enlarged to a moderate degree.

Microscopically, the liver shows changes varying from cloudy swelling to focal necrosis. Minute hemorrhages, disruption of the liver cell cords, and dilatation of the sinusoids are also commonly seen. The kidneys present degeneration and necrosis of the epithelial cells of the tubules, lymphocytic infiltration, and small hemorrhagic foci in the stroma. If the necropsy is performed soon after death before post-mortem changes have taken place, and tissue sections are made and stained by the silver stain of Levaditi or Warthin,* one may find large numbers of leptospiras in the intercellular spaces, especially of the kidneys and liver.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

After an incubation period of seven to fourteen days, the disease is commonly ushered in abruptly with a chill and pyrexia of 102° to 104° F. (39° to 40° C.), with headache and prostration. Nausea and vomiting are frequently present, and general muscular pain is characteristic. Petechial hemorrhages are sometimes observed in the skin, conjunctivae, and oral mucosa. There may be epistaxis, hemoptysis, and hematemesis in the more severe cases. Conjunctivitis and photophobia are not infrequent findings. Hiccup is often a persistent and an annoying symptom. Delirium and signs of meningeal irritation are sometimes prominent features. In most cases, jaundice develops on the third to fifth day after the onset. The intensity of the icterus and other symptoms varies greatly with the severity of the illness, and probably many cases present very little or no jaundice at all. In the milder cases, the fever terminates soon after the jaundice appears. In the more severe cases, there may be a period of normal temperature followed by a secondary rise, or the temperature may remain elevated for ten to twelve days. The liver becomes large and tender; the spleen usually is not palpable. Renal impair-

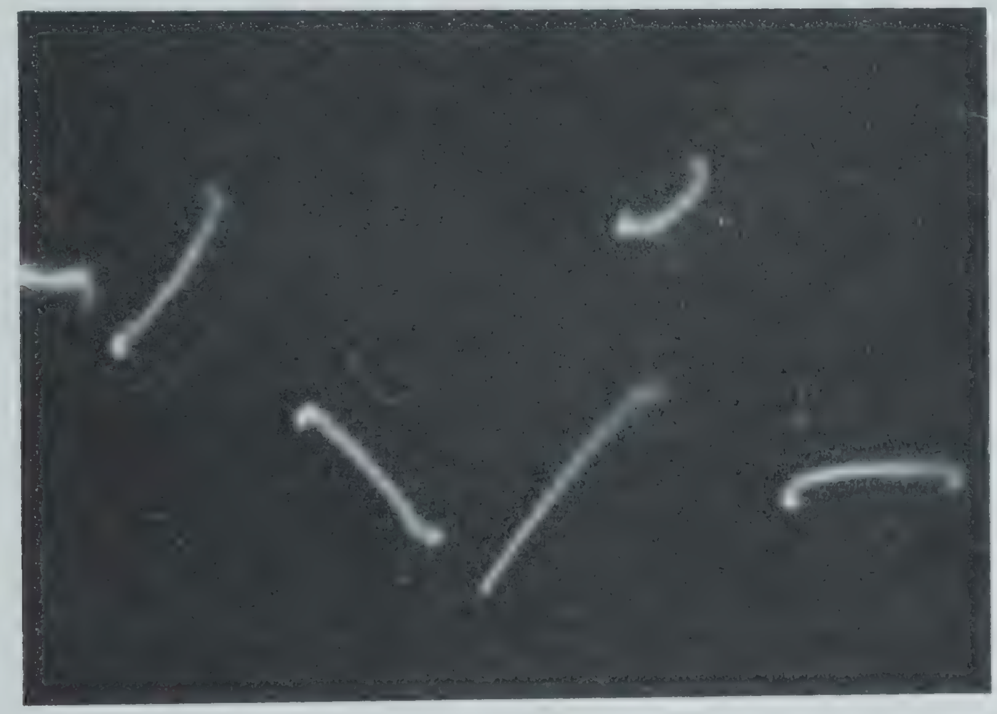
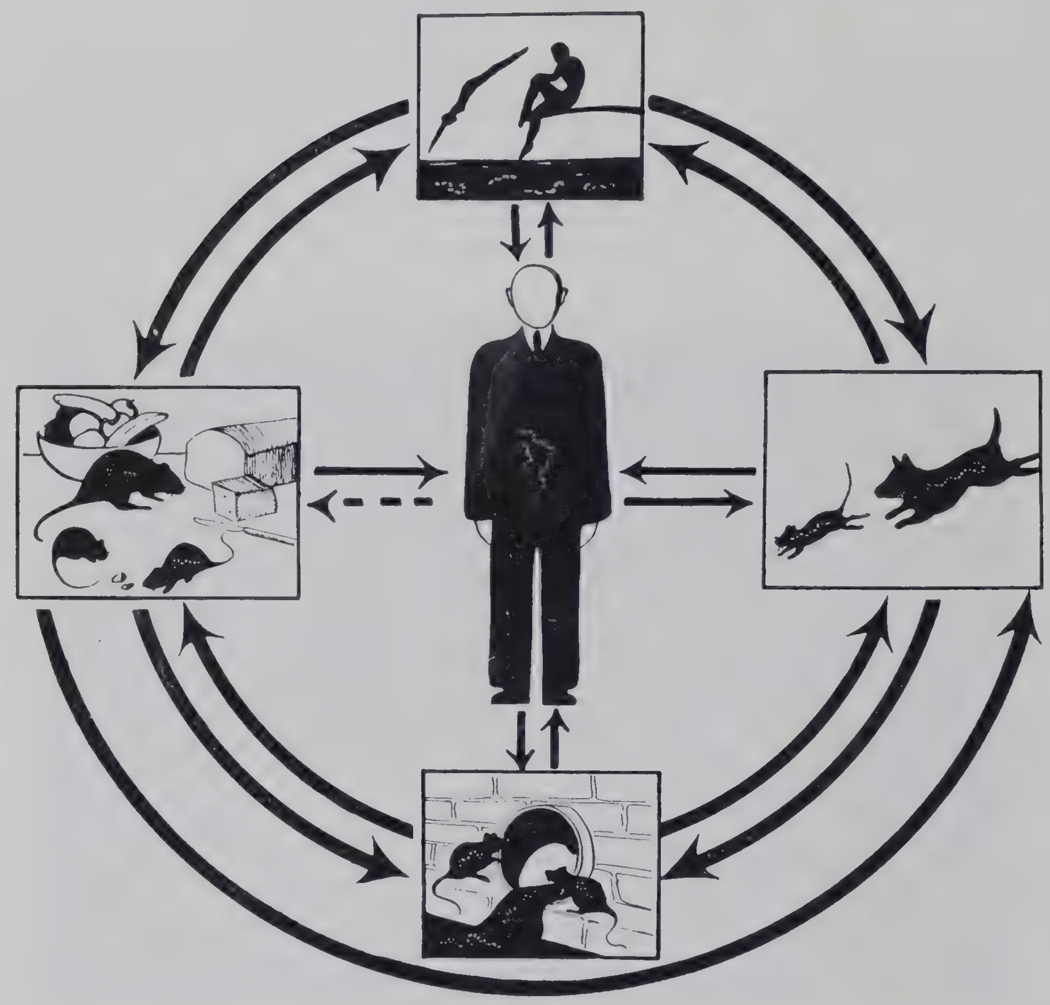


Fig. 109.—*Leptospira icterohaemorrhagiae* from a culture. Dark-field illumination. (Approximately ×4500.)

---

*The editor (R.B.H.G.) prefers the Krajian stain, Chapter 70.

ment may be revealed by oliguria or anuria and azotemia. The more severe cases present a hepatorenal syndrome, and a typical uremic state may be the final picture in the fatal cases.



WEIL'S DISEASE

(ICTEROHAEMORRHAGIC LEPTOSPIROSIS)

the cycle of infection

Fig. 110.—Cycle of infection in Weil's disease (icterohaemorrhagic leptospirosis).

LABORATORY FINDINGS

In the clinical cases of Weil's disease there is usually a leucocytosis of 10,000 to 20,000 or more, with a moderate increase in the polymorphonuclear leucocytes. Albuminuria is a rather constant finding, and a microscopic hematuria is frequently noted. Nitrogen retention is evidenced by an increase in the nonprotein nitrogen and blood urea nitrogen. The icterus index is elevated, at times to about 300. A biphasic van den Bergh reaction is typical but not constant. The urine shows an increased concentration of urobillin and has been shown to contain bile late in the illness.

DIAGNOSIS

Since there are other clinical entities which may give a similar clinical picture, the absolute diagnosis of Weil's disease can be established only by specific laboratory methods. These consist of (1) direct microscopic demonstration of *L. icterohaemorrhagiae* in the blood or urine; (2) guinea pig or deer mouse *(Peromyscus maniculatus gambeli)* inoculation with blood or urine or both; (3) culture of the microorganism from the blood or urine specimens of the patient; (4) serologic reactions; (5) demonstration of the organism microscopically in stained sections of the viscera of cases terminating fatally. See Chapter 13.

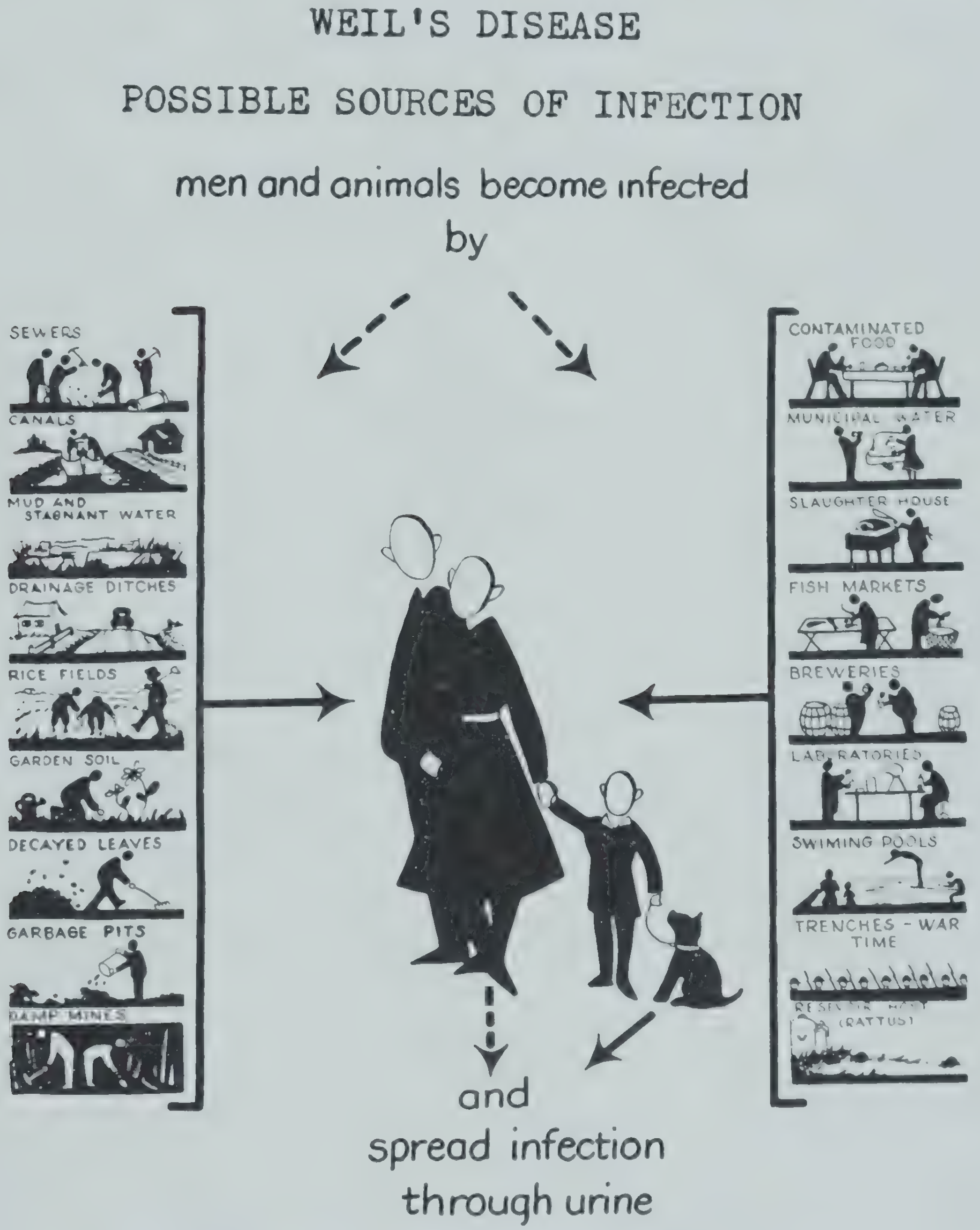

WEIL'S DISEASE
POSSIBLE SOURCES OF INFECTION
men and animals become infected
by
SEWERS
CANALS
MUD AND STAGNANT WATER
DRAINAGE DITCHES
RICE FIELDS
GARDEN SOIL
DECAYED LEAVES
GARBAGE PITS
DAMP MINES
CONTAMINATED FOOD
MUNICIPAL WATER
SLAUGHTER HOUSE
FISH MARKETS
BREWERIES
LABORATORIES
SWIMING POOLS
TRENCHES - WAR TIME
RESERVOIR HOST (RATTUS)
and
spread infection
through urine

Fig. 111.—Possible sources of infection in Weil's disease.

In the past, when the laboratory methods for diagnosis of Weil's disease were not fully developed, the differentiation of Weil's disease particularly from catarrhal jaundice and yellow fever was quite difficult, and some incorrect diagnoses have been made. For a summary of the differential diagnosis of these three diseases, see Table XIII.

TABLE XIII. DIFFERENTIAL FINDINGS OF YELLOW FEVER, WEIL'S DISEASE, AND INFECTIOUS HEPATITIS

	YELLOW FEVER	WEIL'S DISEASE	INFECTIOUS HEPATITIS
Etiology	Virus	Leptospira	Virus
Transmission	Bite of mosquito	Usually through skin abrasion	Contact (droplet and water)
Reservoir host	Man, "wild animals"	Rats (Rattus)	Man
Geographic distribution	Africa, South America	World-wide	World-wide
Persons affected	Young and adults	More often adults	Young and adults
Occupational aspect	None	Occupations associated with rat contact and skin abrasions	None
Occurrence (Morbidity)	Small or large epidemics	Sporadic	Sporadic and large or small outbreaks
Mortality	Usually high	Probably less than 5%	Probably less than 0.1%
Nature of pain	Severe muscular pain	Generalized muscular pain	Slight epigastric pain
White blood cell count	Decreased	Increased	Not changed
Culture test	–	+	–
Inoculation of *Mus musculus*	+	Carrier	–
Inoculation of deer mice *(Peromyscus maniculatus gambeli)*	?	++	Not susceptible
Guinea pig	+	+	Not susceptible
Agglutination test with leptospira	–	+	–
Mouse protection test against yellow fever virus	+	–	–
Post-mortem findings	Hepatic necrosis	Leptospiras in kidneys, liver	Catarrhal inflammation of liver

PROGNOSIS

The mortality rate in Weil's disease is rather low. Although some workers report figures as high as 30 per cent, these statistics are based mostly on hospital admissions, which include only the more severe cases. Considering cases of all degrees of severity, the mortality rate is probably less than 5 per cent. Convalescence is likely to be prolonged.

TREATMENT

Although many drugs (arsenicals, bismuth, antimonials, and sulfonamides) and antibiotics (penicillin and streptomycin) have been tried, there is no specific chemotherapy for Weil's disease at the present time. A commercial polyvalent antiserum is available and has been used with some good results; however, an insufficient number of human cases have been so treated for a correct evaluation of the serum. Convalescent serum, if obtainable, is probably of some value.

The symptomatic treatment is the primary concern. Maintenance of the fluid-electrolyte balance is of utmost importance. When the patient is able to retain food, a high protein, high carbohydrate diet with vitamin supplements is recommended. Recently, methionine has been used in cases of Weil's disease on the assumption that this compound protects the liver from damage.

References

Ashburn, L. L., and Packchanian, A.: 1943. Histogenesis of Experimental Icterohaemorrhagic Spirochetosis in Albino American Deer Mice (Peromyscus maniculatus Gambeli), Am. J. Trop. Med. **23**: 607.

Inada, R., Ido, Y., Hoki, R., Haneko, R., and Ito, H.: 1916. The Etiology, Mode of Infection and Specific Therapy of Weil's Disease (Spirochetosis Icterhemorrhagica), J. Exper. Med. **23**: 377.

Napier, L. E.: 1946. The Principles and Practice of Tropical Medicine, New York, The Macmillan Co., p. 246.

Packchanian, A.: 1938. The Prevalence of Infectious Jaundice in the United States as Determined by Agglutination and Animal Inoculation Tests, Am. J. Path. **14**: 638.

Packchanian, A.: 1941. Positive Agglutination Tests in Suspected Cases of Weil's Disease, U. S. Pub. Health Rep. **56**: 2145.

Packchanian, A.: 1943. Albino Deer Mice (Peromyscus maniculatus gambeli) as an Ideal Susceptible Test Animal for Studying Weil's Disease, Texas Rep. Biol. & Med. **1**: 411.

Packchanian, A., and Tom, N.: 1943. Persistence of Leptospira Antibodies in the Circulating Blood of Patients Recovered One to Over Twenty Years From Weil's Disease, J. Immunol. **46**: 263.

Schüffner, W.: 1943. Recent Work on Leptospirosis, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **28**: 7.

Stiles, W. W., and Sawyer, W. A.: 1942. Leptospiral Infection (Weil's Disease) as an Occupational Hazard, J. A. M. A. **118**: 34.

Strong, R. P.: 1944. Stitt's Diagnosis, Prevention and Treatment of Tropical Diseases, ed. 7, New York, The Blakiston Company, vol. 1, p. 357.

Walch-Sorgdrager, B.: 1939. Leptospirosis, Bull. Health Organ., League of Nations **8**: 143.

CHAPTER 15

FEVERS DUE TO RATBITE (INCLUDING SODOKU)

Arturo Curbelo Hernandez

In addition to the trauma caused by the common or laboratory rat, there often follows infection with specific bacteria introduced through the bite. Two of these have been described: *sodoku disease* and *Haverhill fever.* These two forms are clinically similar, although the causative agents described in each are entirely different. Sodoku and ratbite disease were formerly considered synonymous, but later studies and improved technical bacteriologic methods have changed the older concept by defining Haverhill fever as a separate entity.

Sodoku is caused by a spirillum *(Spirillum minus)*, while Haverhill fever is due to a pleomorphic bacillus *(Streptobacillus moniliformis)*.

HISTORY

That disease may follow a ratbite has probably been known since ancient times (Francis, 1932a), although references to it are from a relatively recent period. The first clinical work is that of Ives in 1831 and of Wilcox in 1839. It was not until about 1900 that Myiaka (1900) gave a reliable description of ratbite fever as a clinical entity. Later, Ogata (1908)referred to this same entity but introduced into the nomenclature the word ‘‘sodoku,’’ the Japanese name for the disease. Then descriptions and references by other authors appeared (von Ofenheim, 1909; Shikami, Horder, Middleton, 1910; Proescher and Hata, 1912), outlining the clinical features of the disease, now differentiated with relative ease from other entities and undoubtedly due to a true bacterial infection. Hata (1912) recommended treatment with arsenicals because of its resemblance to syphilis. Today this treatment is used for the spirillary form, sodoku.

Recently, numerous investigations have been carried out by different authors to demonstrate the cause of the disease; in this way numerous microorganisms have been isolated from the few cases studied: *Staphylococcus aureus* (Miyaki), *Neosporidium, Sporozoa muris* (Ogata), the *Micrococcus tetragena* (van Ofenheim), a *Telosporidium* (Shikami), and *Bacillus septicomuris* (Proescher). Some of these authors successfully inoculated laboratory animals, especially guinea pigs, but in general the investigations were not sufficiently conclusive nor was the identity of the causative agent proved.

Bacteriologic investigations began to bear fruit with the classical report of Schottmüller (1914), who isolated a Streptothrix. He called this *Streptothrix muris ratti.* This investigator also reported a similar organism *(Streptothrix teraxerus cepapi)* from a second case, in a patient bitten by an African squirrel *(Teraxerus cepapi).* This investigation marks the beginning of bacteriologic progress in the study of ratbite fever.

In 1916 a curious event occurred; in two consecutive numbers of the same medical journal two studies appeared on the etiologic factor of the disease. One of these, by Blake (1916), appearing in the January issue, established the relationship of *S. muris ratti,* previously described by Schottmüller, to the disease; the other study by Futaki, Takaki, Taniguchi, and Osumi (1916), in the February issue, reported a new spirillary organism later called *Spirochaeta morsus muris.*

The author wishes to express his gratitude to Dr. A. Anido, Dr. A. Hernández, Dr. E. Rio Leon, and Dr. D. Velasco, of Santa Clara, Cuba, for data included in this chapter.

This spiral-shaped organism which was described by the Japanese investigators became known more generally as *Spirillum minus*, according to Robertson (1924), who identified it as the species described by Carter in 1887 as the first spirochete isolated from rodents. Its taxonomic position has not been determined as yet, due to difficulties in the cultivation of this organism (Bergey, Breed, Murray, and Parker-Hitchens, 1939).

Concerning the bacillary agent the facts are more definite. The *S. muris ratti* of Schottmüller, confirmed by Blake also in a case of ratbite fever, has been observed by other investigators under different conditions. Tunnicliff isolated this microorganism from the lungs of rats with bronchopneumonia (1916a). Litterer (1917) used the term "Streptobacillus" for the first time in cases of ratbite fever in human beings. Dick and Tunnicliff (1918) found it in a case of weasel bite; Jones (1922) from the lungs of rats with pneumonia. Levaditi, Nicolaou, and Poincloux (1925) isolated *Streptobacillus moniliformis* from a clinical case not due to ratbite (erythema multiforme), without associating it with the Streptothrix of Schottmüller. This was undoubtedly the same organism. It was also isolated by Lemierre et al. (1937) and others from the blood in a typical case of ratbite fever, thus re-affirming the fact that *S. moniliformis* is a causative factor for the disease.

In 1926, Place, Sutton, and Willmer reported an epidemic in Haverhill, Mass. They isolated from the patients' blood and joints a microorganism for which they created a new genus which they called *Haverhillia multiformis*. The epidemic resulted from the use of unpasteurized milk. Later, this organism and this disease were apparently associated with ratbite (Dodd, 1926; Hazard and Goodkin, 1932; Scharles and Seastone, 1934). This led to the conclusion that the three microorganisms described under different circumstances in different countries and in different languages were identical (Brown and Nunemaker, 1942).

The suggestion made by Brown and Nunemaker to keep the name *Streptobacillus moniliformis* appears to be most pertinent, and the greater part of the most recent investigations have utilized this designation.

INFECTION BY SPIRILLUM MINUS (SODOKU)

Spirillum Minus Carter

Synonyms.—The bacterium has been described as *Spirochaeta morsus muris, Spirillum minus, Spirochaeta muris, Spirochaeta laverani,* and *Spirochaeta petit.* The first two terms are frequently found in the literature, the majority of authors preferring the term *Spirillum minus* Carter.

Morphology.—The organsm is a short, thick spirillum, measuring from 2 to 5 microns in length. It has pointed extremities, with one or more frequent and readily demonstrable flagella. The spirals are short and clearly visible in well-made preparations. They are 1 micron in length and are rigid and regular. They are very motile, in this respect resembling vibrios.

Staining Characteristics.—The microorganism stains well with aniline dyes, and also with the usual blood stains. This facilitates their study in the blood, lymph, etc.*

Culture.—*S. minus* has not been successfully cultivated in ordinary media. Observations must be made of the tissues of infected human subjects or inoculated animals.

Experimental Pathogenic Action.—It is very difficult to demonstrate this organism in man. Use of animal inoculation is preferable for diagnostic purposes.

From the experimental point of view, the guinea pig is the animal of choice in the study of sodoku disease, and the preferred routes of inoculation are cutaneous (scrotal), subcutaneous, and intraperitoneal. When inoculated with material from the patient (blood or lymph from a lesion or regional gland fluid), after an incubation period of one to two weeks, the guinea pig develops fever accompanied by glandular enlargement and marked reaction of the subcutaneous tissue of the anogenital region, especially apparent in the scrotum and prepuce of the male and the labia of the female. Spirilla appear in the blood and are demonstrable in all cases if a diligent search is made. As the process advances, other symptoms are found which are characteristic of this infection, such as falling out of hair in the ocular region, associated with intense keratoconjunctivitis. Ulceration of the skin may also occur. At the end of the fifth week the animal dies; spirilla are demonstrable in the blood, in the lymph glands, spleen, kidneys, adrenals, and even in subcutaneous tissue.

---

*The Krajian stain is recommended by the editor (R. B. H. G.).

Intraperitoneal inoculation in the mouse does not produce the same picture as in the guinea pig. Practically no clinical manifestations are produced, even after one or two weeks, the period of incubation in the guinea pig. Spirilla appear in the blood, at first scanty, then in greater numbers. The presence of organisms in the circulation of the mouse is maintained for a long time, but the animal does not succumb to infection. The rat reacts in the same way as the mouse, although the mouse is preferred for demonstration of the microorganisms in the blood.

Other rodents are also susceptible. For practical purposes the guinea pig is the animal of choice. Monkeys and rabbits also may be used.

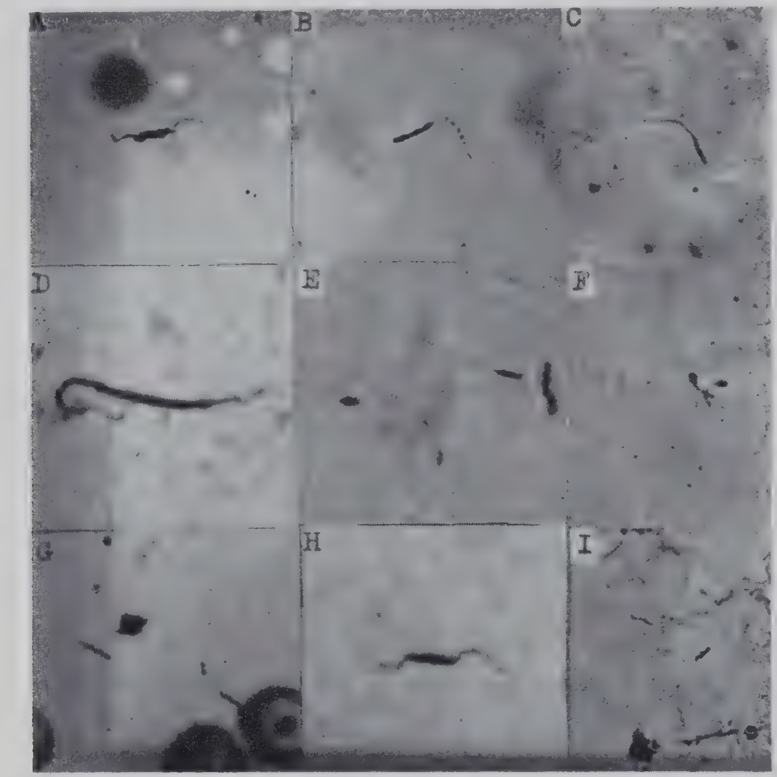


Fig. 112.—*Spirillum minus.* *A* to *F*, from lymphatic gland of human patient. Flagella can be easily seen. *G* to *I*, from blood of a guinea pig. *A* to *F*, Giemsa stain; *G* to *I*, Fontana stain.

Transmission.—The permanent reservoir of the organism is the rat and perhaps other Muridae which infect each other probably by bite or by ingestion of cadavers of those of the colony that have died and have been devoured by the others. Conjunctival fluid may act as a transmitting medium as well as the ectoparasites so common in these animals.

The bite of other animals (dog, cat, hutia, etc.) may be infectious if the animal has been bitten by a rat, but these other animals may serve as occasional reservoirs of the disease. Transmission by this means is exceptional.

Transmission may occur by mouth, although this is rare. This type of transmission was demonstrated (Laroderie) in a case of a soldier in World War I, in 1914, who ate a rat on a bet (Nevot, 1935).

Thus we have seen that transmission of sodoku may occur by animal inoculation and in various other ways, but these are exceptional in comparison with the natural manner, which is through ratbite.

PATHOLOGY

At the site of the bite, there occurs an area of intense cellular infiltration, edema, and marked degeneration, leading to necrosis. Fibrous production involves the different structures and connective tissue, leading to sclerosis.

Kaneko and Okuda (1917) described the following lesions: renal congestion and epithelial degeneration of the tubules, fatty degeneration of the liver with central lobular necrosis with hyperemia and isolated hemorrhages, congestion of lymphatic glands with interstitial hemorrhage, diffuse pulmonary congestion, intense medullary hyperplastic reaction, hyperemia, meningeal edema, and desquamation of the bladder epithelia. Spirilla can be observed in the lesions, principally in the adrenals and in the liver.

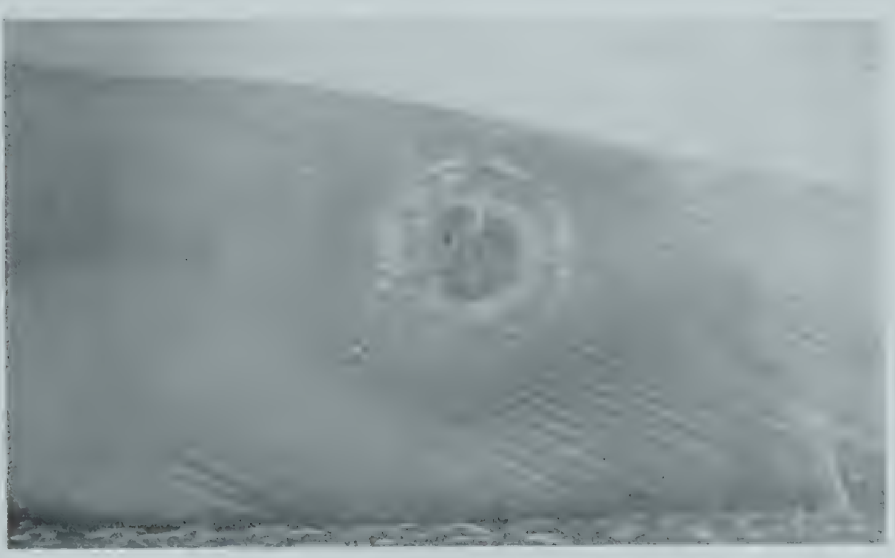


Fig. 113.—Sodoku. Chancre of inoculation. Necrosis can be seen.

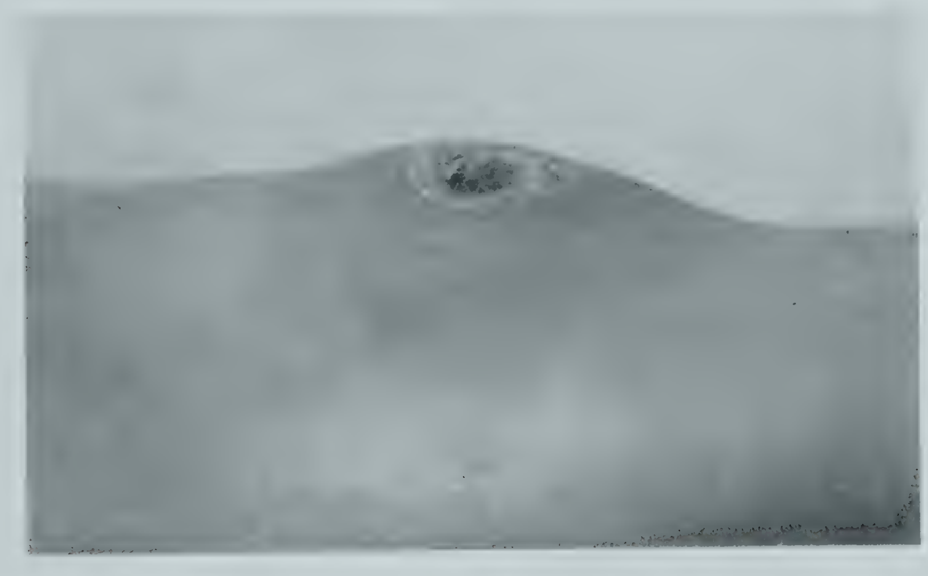


Fig. 114.—Sodoku. Chancre of inoculation. Heavy infiltration of tissue around the site of the bite.

Lesions found in guinea pigs which have died of sodoku are, on the whole, similar to those described in man, without the special characteristics which may prove of some value in diagnosis.

CLINICAL PICTURE

There is rapid healing of the wound unless secondary infection interrupts the process. This rarely occurs, since physicians as a rule treat the wound locally with antiseptics or antibiotics. Such local treatment, however, is useless in spirillary infections, because these infections are too deep seated for the antibiotics to reach them. If prophylactic treatment is desired at this point, it is necessary to cauterize as deeply as the limits of the toothmarks of the animal. In this way the development of sodoku may be prevented.

The period of incubation, from the time the bite is inflicted until the appearance of the first symptoms, is variable, averaging fourteen to fifteen days. Periods as short as forty-eight to seventy-two hours have been cited, and also long periods of about thirty days. In one case the development of the local lesion from the time of the bite to the appearance of the first symptoms was just twenty-four hours (Anido, Hernández, Rio Leon, and Velasco).

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The disease begins suddenly. History of a bite should immediately suggest the possibility of this disease. At times the prodromal symptoms occur at the site of the bite: mild edema, reddening, infiltration, paresthesia; the last, however, is not constant. The symptoms may be divided into the fundamental groups: (1) local symptoms and (2) general symptoms.

Local Symptoms

Local symptoms are divided into two groups: those which occur precisely at the site of the bite and those which affect the tissue next to the bite.

Soon after the bite, pain begins at the site of the bite, followed by swelling and reddening, with the formation of an inflammatory nodule. Edema develops around the lesion, which extends to neighboring tissue. According to the intensity of this edematous infiltration, the nodule takes on various colors, terminating in ulceration due to focal necrosis. A zone of lymphangitis is produced around the lesion.

From this point spread more or less nodulated strands of lymphangitis which extend throughout the tissues of the region. The regional glands are infiltrated and very painful and are accompanied by an inflammatory periadenitis. Suppuration rarely occurs. Adenitis is sometimes so discrete that it is very difficult to find it.

General Symptoms

General symptoms may be considered as of five groups: (1) fever, (2) exanthem, (3) nervous manifestations, (4) pain, (5) symptoms in other organs.

Fever.—Fever begins suddenly, as high as 40° C. or more, although in some cases it may be moderate with slow elevation. Frequent chills occur with each thermic elevation. This febrile period averages three to four days in duration, followed by a second, apyretic phase which may last about five days.

This gives the characteristic recurrent aspect to the fever curve. Numerous variations can be produced, however, in the different paroxysms, varying in different cases. At times the period of recrudescence is often marked by a subfebrile state, at times by a continuous fever.

Exanthem.—Exanthem is an almost constant finding in the development of the disease. In some cases it is located so close to the site of the bite that it may almost be missed. The tendency is toward generalization, but it may be localized in certain regions without special or marked predilection for any one area.

The type of lesion is rather variable. It may be a simple macular lesion, or maculopapular, or papular, or even nodular. The general appearance resembles the cutaneous lesions of syphilis or rubeola.

The color of the lesion may vary from pale pink to violet red and may even appear ecchymotic.

The size of the lesion varies; sometimes it is as much as an inch or more in diameter. There is no particular tendency to confluence, but occasionally this may occur in large patches with irregular borders.

These exanthematous lesions show a very definite characteristic—they are painful with or without pressure. Sometimes the pain may appear before the lesion is visible. The lesions are not pruriginous.

Spirilla may be found in lymph obtained from these lesions.

The exanthem is marked in the febrile period and diminishes in intensity to the point of disappearance in the intermediate intervals. As the disease progresses, the exanthem becomes progressively lighter in intensity.

Nervous Manifestations.—Nervous manifestations sometimes characterize a clinical type of the disease when they are very marked. The prognosis may be guided by the severity of the symptoms. These may range from the mild disease to the most serious type. There may be stupor, exhaustion, prostration, and coma (in fatal cases). Such disturbances as paresthesias, as well as motor disturbances, characterized by dystonia, may be present. These disturbances may be exaggerated, diminished, or totally absent.

Pain.—Pain is always associated with location in the different muscle groups of the limbs, abdomen, and thorax; also bones and joints may be affected.

Symptoms in Other Organs.—Certain organs are not affected by the disease; among these are the heart, spleen, liver, and lungs. In general, the disease does not follow typical or regular localizations.

Some authors have reported the presence of spirilla in the urine, suggesting localization of the disease in the kidney. Although albuminuria is constant, it is slight; no other abnormal constituents appear in the urine.

In some cases diffuse bronchitis may be present, accompanying febrile paroxysms of the disease.

As for involvement of the digestive apparatus, symptoms include buccopharyngeal exanthem, dysphagia, anorexia, nausea, constipation, etc. Of these, only the exanthem and dysphagia are of sufficient constancy to be clinically significant.

As to the cardiovascular apparatus, aside from the tachycardia which accompanies the fever, the majority of the patients show a marked lowering of blood pressure.

There are definite blood changes. There is almost constantly a certain degree of anemia; this may be marked, with a decrease in the hemoglobin. The red count also decreases. Rarely is there an increase in the number of red cells.

Leucocytosis occurs, although not high, fluctuating usually between 10,000 and 20,000, although in some cases it may be as high as 40,000. This occurs in the febrile periods. In afebrile periods, the leucocyte count drops markedly, sometimes as low as 4,000. In these cases, with the return of the febrile period the leucocyte count rises again. This is a fairly regular observation.

The differential count shows changes that are especially noteworthy: first, there is an increase of neutrophilic leucocytes with a normal number of mononuclears. An outstanding observation is the eosinophilia, which may be rather high. Variations of these counts may be due to other conditions which may be present in some cases.

As to serologic reactions currently used in the diagnosis of syphilis (Wassermann, Kahn, Meinicke), the authors disagree. However, a positive reaction in the absence of syphilis may aid the diagnosis, since it is possible to accept the theory of certain antigenic affinities among spirillary microorganisms.

In the serum of these patients there may appear spirochetolytic substances demonstrable by the Pfeiffer phenomenon.

COURSE

The disease shows various phases of activity, each one progressively less intense. It may last for weeks or months, exceptionally even longer.

In general, the disease, except in particularly serious cases, tends toward recovery. However, this development may be hastened by adequate treatment as soon as diagnosis has been established. When diagnosis is in doubt, the disease may run its full course, a rare occurrence at the present time.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Laboratory investigations consist of the following:

(1) Test for Presence of the Spirillum in the Patient

(a) In the blood, principally during the febrile periods, although this is difficult.

(b) At the site of the bite, either by obtaining lymph or by section of the inflamed tissue.

(c) In the lymph at the site of the exanthem.

(d) In the lymph glands, in the lymph, as well as in sections of tissue.

(2) Inoculation of Susceptible Animals

In this case the guinea pig is preferred since it develops a rather typical experimental picture, in which spirilla can be demonstrated. (See above.)

Inoculation of mice does not produce any pathologic picture, but spirilla can be demonstrated in the blood and peritoneal fluid.

One must keep in mind that spirilla are sometimes found in these laboratory animals.

(3) Demonstration of Specific Antibodies in the Serum

Serum of patients or serum from convalescents can be tested for spirochetolytic and spirocheticidal substances. This may be carried out long after the infection has passed and may serve in retrospect rather than for study of cases on hand. The serum of the patient or a convalescent or a cured subject is used, using as controls mice with spirilla in which dissolution and disappearance of the microorganisms have been observed.

PROGNOSIS

Prognosis is generally favorable, once the diagnosis has been established and adequate treatment applied. Mortality is in the neighborhood of 10 per cent.

TREATMENT

In 1912, Hata, assuming the origin of the disease to be spirochetal, recommended the use of arsenicals in treatment. Some cases respond to this treatment with marked rapidity, while others respond more slowly, so that at times it is necessary to repeat a series before complete cure is obtained.

A curious observation made by Cuban investigators (Anido, Hernández, Rio Leon, and Velasco) is that treatment is somewhat more effective when the disease is allowed to develop rather than when begun immediately upon diagnosis. This observation is contrary to most experiences with most infectious diseases.

Known antisyphilitic mercury and bismuth derivatives have been recommended and used by various authors, although in general it is recognized that their action is not as effective as trivalent arsenicals.

PROPHYLAXIS

Prophylaxis should be directed to the destruction of the reservoir of the disease; that is, against the rat. This places the problem within the general scope of community sanitation and prophylaxis.

INFECTION BY STREPTOBACILLUS MONILIFORMIS (HAVERHILL FEVER)

Streptobacillus Moniliformis (Levaditi)

Synonyms.—The bacterium has been described under many different names, among which the more important are *Streptothrix muris ratti* Schottmüller (1914), *Haverhillia multiformis* Parker and Hudson (1926), *Actinomyces actinoides* Bergey (Bergey, Breed, Murray, and Paker-Hitchens, 1939), *Actinomyces muris* Topley and Wilson (Wilson and Miles, 1946), and others. Utilization of only one name for the infections caused by this organism will be of advantage in future investigation.

Origin.—To date, *S. moniliformis* has been isolated from different parts of the body, such as the blood and other secretions and tissues in cases of bite by rats and other rodents, the lungs of rats and other sick animals, the nasopharynx of laboratory mice, and in cases in which the infection has occurred through other means such as in Haverhill fever.

Morphology.—Morphology of this microorganism has been well described by various investigators (Levaditi, Litterer, Parker and Hudson, etc.). It is necessary to recognize the fact that but few bacteria show such a high degree of pleomorphism.

On Loeffler's blood serum fine branched filaments may be observed, about 0.5 micron in width, tending to intertwine; later, fragmentation of the filaments occurs, chains of bacilli and coccoid forms now appearing. The term "moniliform" is adequate, since these filaments sometimes show a fusiform, oval, or spherical thickening, somewhat resembling Monilia. These thickenings may have a diameter several times larger than the width of the filament and may project toward one side only. The possibility of variation or association with a coccobacillus (organism L) described by Klieneberger (1935) is due to these phenomena.

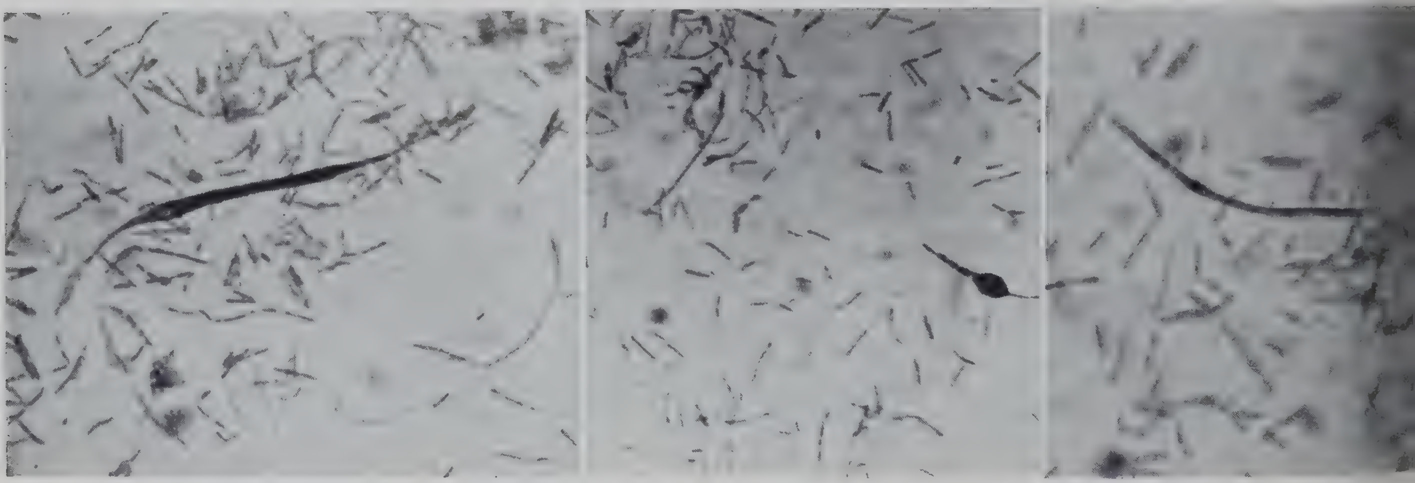


Fig. 115.—*Streptobacillus moniliformis*, from a 48-hour culture on Loeffler's blood serum medium. First Cuban case. (Courtesy A. J. Aballi and J. A. Martinez Cruz.)

Staining is irregular; it has been described as gram-negative and again as gram-positive, the latter mostly in young cultures.

It is not motile and does not have acid- or alcohol-resistant forms.

Cultural Characteristics.—Addition of blood or serum is indispensable for cultivation of the organism. On Loeffler's medium the colonies are light yellow, 0.5 to 0.7 mm. in diameter. They show a central somewhat elevated zone with a flattened periphery and irregular edges. There is no hemolysis. They grow better under anaerobic conditions and in a 10 per cent carbon dioxide atmosphere.

Recent studies show that they produce acid slowly in glucose and salicin and sometimes also in maltose and lactose. They do not form indole and do not change litmus milk, do not produce hydrogen sulfide, and do not reduce nitrates. They give negative results with the methyl red and Voges-Proskauer tests. The catalase test is negative.

Pathogenic Characteristics.—Inoculation of laboratory animals, which is of great diagnostic value, is effective in mice which are very susceptible to this bacterium. Rats, guinea pigs, and rabbits are resistant. The rabbit, however, at times shows a few inflammatory lesions, particularly arthritis.

Subcutaneous or intraperitoneal inoculation of the mouse is generally fatal within a period of seventy-two hours without the production of any characteristic or special lesions. The microorganisms are easily recovered by culture from the blood.

Variants.—There have been isolated from cultures of *S. moniliformis* pure forms of an organism similar in appearance to those of the pleuropneumonic group. Klieneberger (1935) considers these as symbiotic elements. Other investigators (Dienes, 1939; Smith, 1918; and Brown and Nunemaker, 1942) consider it a variety of the same Streptobacillus.

Transmission.—*S. moniliformis* can be transmitted either directly, by ratbite, or indirectly, by means of contaminated food.

In the first case the mechanism of the infection is analogous to that of sodoku disease; in the second, elimination of Streptobacillus in the secretions and excretions of Muridae may explain the mechanism.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Diagnosis of infection due to *S. moniliformis* cannot be considered a routine procedure. It is based upon demonstration of the organism by culture methods or by inoculation of the mouse, a highly susceptible animal and therefore the animal of choice.

The Streptobacillus can be demonstrated in the blood of the patient. Other body fluids from the patient, depending upon the kind of lesion he presents (arthritis, abscesses, etc.), may be used in cultures and inoculations to demonstrate the organism.

When the growth in the cultures is sufficient, some authors recommend agglutination tests using the serum of the patient from whom the bacillus was isolated. Agglutinins, when adequate antigen is used, do not reach a high concentration but persist for a sufficiently long period of time in the individual.

CLINICAL PICTURE

Haverhill Fever Not Caused by Ratbite

The period of incubation in the cases studied was short, between one and three days. This period is shorter than when infection occurs through a bite.

The disease begins suddenly, with chills, vomiting, headache, and fever. The last symptom is never absent; the temperature rises to around 40° C. in some cases.

One to eight days later, an exanthem appears; this is one of the most constant symptoms of the disease and persists for a variable period. This exanthem is seen principally in the anterior and lateral parts of the extremities. One characteristic of this manifestation is that it is found especially around the joints. The lesion, although not in all cases, may also appear in the face and the thorax. The eruption resembles rubeola, though at times it may be morbilliform. Frequently the lesion is of maculopapular aspect, dark red in color, rounded outline, at times with irregular margins, varying greatly in form and size (between 1 and 4 mm. in diameter), sometimes somewhat larger. Petechial hemorrhages may appear in severe cases, particularly on the extremities. Desquamation is observed in some cases.

Arthritis is as frequent a lesion and symptom as is the exanthem. It appears soon after the beginning and is generally associated with pain generalized in the limbs, especially in children. The period of duration of the disease is variable; in children it is more transient than in adults in whom it persists much longer, sometimes for many years.

Other manifestations may be present such as bronchitis, cough, and dysphagia.

The course of the disease has the general character of the infection produced by the bite and occurs in outbreaks which generally recede, only to return anew. In almost every case the first period lasts from three to five days, the patient returning spontaneously to a normal state. It is precisely at the moment of the first remission that the exanthem appears. After a lapse of two or three days, a recrudescence takes place in which the exanthem is more pronounced and there are generalized symptoms of arthritis. The process may show an intense or an attenuated development, according to the intensity of this latter manifestation. It may last for several days or weeks. Later recurrence of symptoms is variable and is influenced by different forms of treatment.

Streptobacillary Infection Due to Ratbite

The *site of the bite,* so far as incidence of the infection is concerned, does not make any difference in the processes.

As to the *period of incubation,* at first it was thought that the period was much shorter in the bacillary infection than in the spirillary type, but an analysis of the literature shows that there is no essential difference, since some cases of bacillary infection may appear quickly (in two or three days after the bite), whereas in others there has been a delay of as long as nine days, and in some cases as long as fourteen days and even longer. One observation reports a lapse of several months between the time of the bite and the onset of symptoms.

The *onset of the disease* is sudden, with fever, chills, headache, and vomiting. In this respect, there is no essential difference in the two diseases.

As to *local symptoms,* the differences are of slight diagnostic importance. Similar variations appear in both types. Lymphangitis and adenitis may develop as in spirillary infection, though in the latter healing of the wound between the time of the bite and the beginning of the disease may frequently be observed.

Regarding *general symptoms,* there is the fever, which in a major part of the cases is not very high. The fever is of markedly recurrent character, although there are some cases in which this is not true. In respect to this recurrent character of the fever, there is no difference between the two forms of the disease.

Exanthem is a symptom which is never absent and, as in sodoku, has been described by numerous authors. It may have characteristics that are quite variable in the different cases. The same is true of the spirillary form of the disease.

Nervous manifestations show no marked difference in the two forms.

Changes in the blood are practically the same: anemia, moderate leucocytosis which may be elevated in some cases, with increase in neutrophiles, and eosinophilia. This last sign is very marked in sodoku.

The most marked difference refers to arthritis; however, this manifestation, together with osseous pains, has been observed in experimentally inoculated sodoku (Solomon, Berk, Theiler, and Clay, 1926; Bayne-Jones, 1927; Herschfeld, Kibler, Colby, Koening, Schmid, and Saunders, 1929).

Some authors have tried to establish differences which may be observed clinically between the two entities. It is possible that in some aspects a great deal of observation and accumulation of data may do this, but in our present state of knowledge we can see how the major part of the symptoms are superimposed and how some cases present variations which are the same in both processes. For the moment, it is best not to depend upon these data for classification and diagnosis without waiting for results of the bacteriologic investigation.

PROGNOSIS

In general, the prognosis is good. Mortality observed in twelve cases in the United States of America has been 16 per cent.

TREATMENT

Neither type responds to specific therapy. Conclusions concerning the efficacy of the medicaments which have been used are difficult. Autogenous vaccines and the sulfonamides have no action, and information concerning these varies. Salicylates, iodine, and quinine have been used with mediocre and equally irregular effect. Arsenicals, which have a marked action in sodoku, show none here, although they have not been tried sufficiently to warrant more certain conclusions.

The impression gathered from the study of existing bibliography is that treatment is one of the points of difference in the two processes.

PROPHYLAXIS

In cases of infection by *S. moniliformis* due to ratbite, prophylactic measures, with slight variations, will be the same as those considered in sodoku disease.

In Haverhill fever or those cases of infection induced by mouth, prophylactic measures should be in the direction of obtaining bacteriologic purity of foods, principally milk and milk products. The use of pasteurized milk is highly recommended.

References

Anido, A., Hernández, A., Rio Leon, E., and Velasco, D.: 1945. Contribución al Estudio del Sodoku en Cuba. Villaclara Médica. Vol. III. Numero Especial. Ponencia de la Sociedad de Medicina y Cirugía de Santa Clara al VIII Congreso Médico Nacional.

Bayne-Jones, S.: 1927. Rat-Bite Fever; Report of a Case With Demonstration of the Causative Organism and Its Use in the Treatment of Paresis, New York State J. Med. 27: 113-116.

Bergey, D. H., Breed, R. S., Murray, E. G. D., and Parker-Hitchens, A.: 1939. Bergey's Manual of Determinative Bacteriology, ed. 5, pp. 555, 639.

Blake, F. G.: 1916. The Etiology of Rat-Bite Fever, J. Exper. Med. **23**: 39-60.

Brown, T. McP., and Nunemaker, J. C.: 1942. Rat-Bite Fever. A Review of the American Cases With Re-Evaluation of Etiology; Report of Cases, Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp. **70**: 201-327.

Das Gupta, B. M.: 1938a. Experiments on the Spirillum of Rat-Bite Fever, Indian M. Gaz. **73**: 14-17.

Dick, G. F., and Tunnicliff, R.: 1918. A Streptothrix Isolated From the Blood of a Patient Bitten by a Weasel (Streptothrix Putorii), J. Infect. Dis. **23**: 183-187.

Dienes, L.: 1939. L Organisms of Klieneberger and Streptobacillus Moniliformis, J. Infect. Dis. **65**: 24-42.

Dodd, K.: 1926. An Isolated Case of Erythema Arithriticum Epidemicum, Boston M. & S. J. **194**: 633.

Francis, E.: 1932a: Rat-Bite Fever and Relapsing Fever in the United States, Tr. A. Am. Physicians **47**: 143-151.

Futàki, K., Takaki, I., Taniguchi, T., and Osumi, S.: 1916. The Cause of Rat-Bite Fever, J. Exper. Med. **23**: 249-250.

Hata, S.: 1912. Salvarsantherapie der Rattenbisskrankheit in Japan, München. med. Wchnschr. **59**: 854-856.

Hazard, J. B., and Goodkin, R.: 1932. Haverhill Fever (Erythema Arthriticum Epidemicum); a Case Report and Bacteriological Study, J. A. M. A. **99**: 534-538.

Herschfield, A. S., Kibler, O. A., Colby, S., Koening, M. T., Schmid, O. W., and Saunders, A. M.: 1929. Sodoku Treatment in Paresis, Preliminary Report on Seventy-Two Cases, J. A. M. A. **92**: 772-773.

Jones, F. S.: 1922. An Organism Resembling Bacillus Actinoides Isolated From Pneumonic Lungs of White Rats, J. Exper. Med. **35**: 361-363.

Kaneko, R., and Okuda, K.: 1917. A Contribution to the Etiology and Pathology of Rat-Bite Fever, J. Exper. Med. **59**: 258.

Klieneberger, E.: 1935. The Natural Occurrence of Pleuropneumonia-Like Organisms in Apparent Symbiosis With Streptobacillus Moniliformis and Other Bacteria, J. Path. & Bact. **40**: 93-105.

Lemierre, A., Reilly, J., LaPorte, A., and Morin, M.: 1937. Sur une Nouvelle Fievre par Morsure de Rat, Bull. Acad. de méd., Paris **117**: 705-713.

Levaditi, C., Nicolau, S., and Poincloux, P.: 1925. Sur le Rôle Etiologique de Streptobacillus Moniliformis (nov. spec.) dans l'erytheme Polymorphe Aigu Septicemique, Compt. rend. Acad. d. sc. **180**: 1188-1190.

Litterer, W.: 1917. Study of the Streptothrix Isolated in Two Cases of Rat-Bite Fever, Tr. Sect. Path. & Physiol., A. M. A., pp. 275-287.

Middleton, G. S.: 1910. Rat-Bite Fever, Lancet **1**: 1618.

Miyaki, H.: 1900. Ueber die Rattenbiss-krankheit, Mitt. a. d. Grenzgeb. d. Med. u. Chir. **5**: 231-262.

Nevot, A.: 1935. Le Sodoku. Encyclopedic Medico-Chirurgica le Maldies Infectienses, No. 8089, p. 1.

von Ofenheim, E.: 1909. Three Cases Illustrating the Treatment of Septicemia by Vaccine Therapy, Proc. Roy. Soc. Med. **2**: 159-176.

Ogata, M.: 1908. Die Aetiologie der Rattenbisskrankheit, Deutsche med. Wchnschr. **34** 1099-1102.

Parker, F., Jr., and Hudson, N. P.: 1926. The Etiology of Haverhill Fever (Erythema Arthriticum Epidemicum), Am. J. Path. **2**: 357-379.

Place, E. H., Sutton, L. E., and Willmer, D.: 1926. Erythema Arthriticum Epidemicum, Preliminary Report, Boston M. & S. J. **194**: 285-287.

Robertson, A.: 1924. Observation on the Causal Organism of Rat-Bite Fever in Man, Ann. Trop. Med. **18**: 157-175.

Rosen, E., and Denzer, B. S.: 1944. Rat-Bite Fever Caused by Streptobacillus Moniliformis; Case Report, J. Pediat. **5**: 544-552.

Schottmüller, H.: 1914. Zur Aetiologie und Klinik der Bisskrankheit, Dermat. Wchnschr. (supp.) **58**: 77-103.

Salimbeni, A. T. I., and Sazerac, R.: 1927. Action du Bismuth sur le Spirochete du Sodoku dans l'Infection Experimentale du Cobaye, Compt. rend. Acad. d. sc. **184**: 1497-1499, 13-V.

Scharles, F. J., and Seastone, Jr., C. F.: 1934. Haverhill Fever Following Rat-Bite, New England J. Med. **211**: 711-714.

Smith, T.: 1918. A Pleomorphic Bacillus From Pneumonic Lungs of Calves Simulating Actinomyces, J. Exper. Med. **28**: 333-344.

Solomon, H. C., Berk, A., Theiler, M., and Clay, C. L.: 1926. The Use of Sodoku in the Treatment of General Paralysis, Arch. Int. Med. **38**: 391-404.

Tunnicliff, R.: 1916a. Streptothrix in Bronchopneumonia of Rats, Similar to That of Rat-Bite Fever; A Preliminary Report, J. A. M. A. **66**: 1606.

Wilson, G. S., and Miles, A. A.: 1946. Topley and Wilson's Principles of Bacteriology and Immunity, ed. 3, Baltimore, Williams & Wilkins Co.

CHAPTER 16

FRAMBOESIA (YAWS)

Albert John Sheldon

Synonyms.—Yaws (English) and pian (French, Spanish, and Italian). Colloquial names: ''buba'' or ''boubas'' (Brazil and the Dominican Republic), ''cuchipe'' (Ecuador), ''coko'' or ''coco'' (Fiji Islands), ''tonga'' (New Caledonia), ''puru'' or ''purru'' (Malaya), ''lupani'' or ''tono'' (Samoa), ''paranghi'' or ''parangi'' (Ceylon), ''patek'' (Java), ''momba'' (Angola), and ''dube'' (West Coast of Africa).

CAUSAL AGENT

Treponema Pertenue (Castellani 1905)

The organisms measure 12 to 20 microns in length and have 8 to 20 small, broad turns in the spiral. They are morphologically indistinguishable from *T. pallidum*, the etiologic agent of syphilis. Motility is accomplished by translation in the direction of the long axis, a rotary movement of the spirals, giving the impression of a corkscrew turning on its own axis, and a waving or twisting movement from side to side. The organisms are readily killed by drying and cannot withstand exposure to air and light more than twenty-four hours in a moist medium. Cultivation is difficult, if not impossible.

The spirochetes are present in large numbers in primary and secondary lesions and have been demonstrated in lymph glands, spleen, and bone marrow. They have not been found in the blood stream, but Castellani (1907) successfully infected apes by injecting blood from framboesia patients. Further evidence of their presence in the blood stream is the dissemination of the secondary lesions over the entire body. Organisms have never been demonstrated in deep organs other than those mentioned above, nor in the nodular, ulcerative, scaling, or gummatous lesions of the tertiary stage of the disease. Monkeys and rabbits, as well as apes, can be experimentally infected with framboesia. Hamsters are also susceptible.

T. pertenue organisms are readily transmitted from infected persons to others by direct contact, resulting in a high degree of communicability. Indirect contact with contaminated clothing, bedding, sleeping mats, utensils, furniture, soil, etc., is probably a less important means of spreading disease because of the marked fragility of the organisms. Kumm (1935) showed that mechanical transmission by the minute ''gnat'' fly, *Hippelates papillipes*, is possible within seven hours after feeding on open framboesia lesions by regurgitation of ingested material containing spirochetes. Venereal transmission does occur but is only incidental. Moss and Bigelow (1922) stated that primary lesions appeared on the genitals in only 1 per cent of 969 cases in the Dominican Republic. In Jamaica, Chambers (1938) reported that less than 3 per cent of 580 primary lesions were located on the genitals, mostly in children under 7 years of age. Autoinfection may occur during the early course of the disease. Lesions frequently spread locally and to opposing contiguous surfaces, particularly around the mouth, anus, and vagina. It is generally believed that congenital infection does not occur. However, Hunt and Johnson (1923) found cases of interstitial keratitis among framboesia patients in Samoa where syphilis does not exist among the natives.

Trauma plays an important role in the transmission of framboesia. It seems likely that the organisms must come in contact with an abrasion in the skin in order to initiate successful infection. It is questionable whether or not they can penetrate the intact skin. Many patients are able to give a definite history of some previous injury; others are not. It is generally accepted that the location of the primary lesion is also the site of infection. Primary lesions occur most frequently on those regions of the body exposed and likely to be traumatized; namely, the feet and legs. The ankles (malleoli) and lower third of the legs are the commonest sites of primary lesions. It is these parts of the body which are most frequently bruised, scratched, or cut on persons walking among shrubs and grasses without shoes, stockings, or trousers. The drying of mud on the feet and ankles and its subsequent removal is another probable source of abrasions. Crowded, unhygienic living conditions foster the spread of infection in family groups so that frequently all of the children, and sometimes the adults, in a family develop lesions.

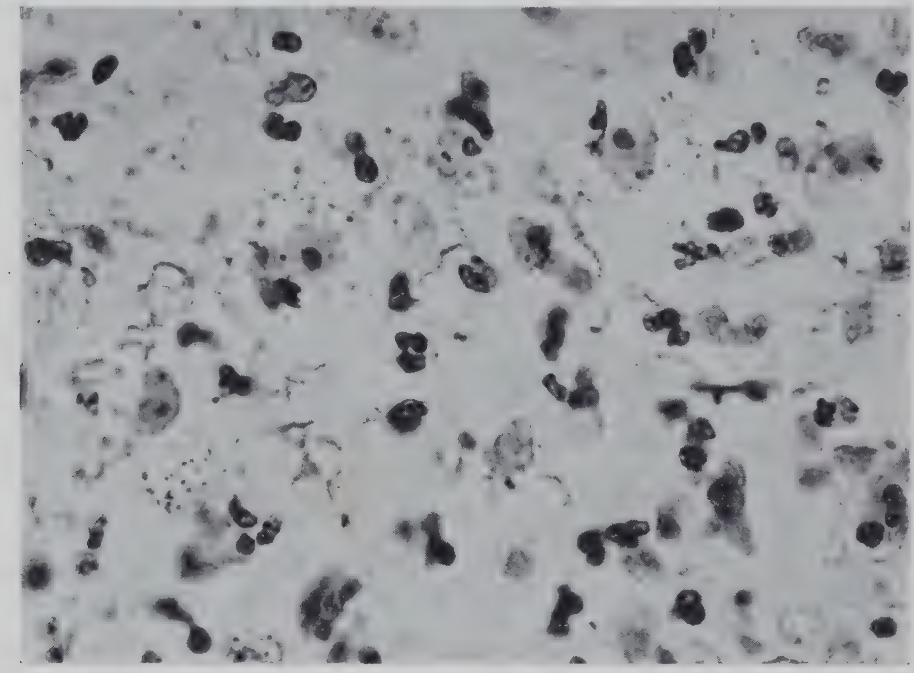


Fig. 116.—*Treponema pertenue* in the epidermis. (×970.)

Persons of all ages are susceptible to infection with *T. pertenue*. However, in most parts of the world yaws occurs most commonly in children.

The explanation for the higher incidence in children than in adults appears to lie mainly in the development of immunity by the latter as the result of previous infection. Contributing factors may be that adults and older children are generally better clad and that adults do not come in direct contact with one another to the same extent as children. Considerable epidemiologic and experimental evidence, both animal and human, supports the general belief that among inhabitants of areas where the disease is endemic one attack confers protection against a second. Immunity develops slowly and progressively over a period of years but once established seems to persist for many years even in the absence of manifest lesions of the disease. Persons who have had the disease ten years or longer as a rule exhibit a much greater resistance to a second attack than do persons who have had the disease less than three years. However, the immunity is not always complete or constant. In some patients the lesions persist for many months after the onset of the disease, and some are subject to successive crops of lesions over a period of years. While the majority of the latter are probably relapses, it is possible that some may be due to reinfection. Interruption of the normal course of the disease by treatment seems to retard the development of immunity and perhaps shortens the time before the appearance of tertiary lesions, if any are going to develop.

In most parts of the world framboesia is confined chiefly to Negroes. However, Stannus (1935) stated that the Polynesian, Melanesian, yellow-skinned races, Indian, and European races are equally susceptible to infection. Araujo (1928) reported that among 30,000 cases in Brazil, 15.2 per cent occurred in Negroes, 56.2 per cent in mestizos, 10.2 per cent in Indians, and 18.4 per cent in whites. In Cuba, Pardo-Castelló (1939) found the white race to be infected as often as the Negro—227 and 274 cases, respectively. A few cases have been reported among whites in the United States following residence in or visits to tropical areas where framboesia is endemic. Lofgren (1944) reported infection in a white sailor who had contracted the disease in American Samoa, and Rifken (1945) reported one case in a white soldier who had been on duty for over a year on various South Pacific Islands. Racial immunity, if it exists, would appear to play a role secondary to unhygienic environmental conditions in the dissemination of framboesia.

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

Framboesia is widely, though unevenly, distributed throughout the tropical regions of the world, particularly in areas with high mean annual temperatures and heavy annual rainfall. Wilson and Mathis (1930) indicated that in Haiti there appeared to be a lower incidence of infection as the altitude increased above 2,500 feet. Framboesia has frequently been introduced into subtropical and temperate countries but has never flourished there.

In the American Republics and the British West Indies framboesia is most prevalent on the West Indian Islands and the northern coast of South America. There is a high incidence of this disease in Haiti and the Dominican Republic in the Greater Antilles, and in Trinidad, Grenada, Antigua, Guadaloupe, Montserrat, Saint Lucia and other islands in the Lesser Antilles. The incidence is low in Cuba, Puerto Rico, Martinique, and Barbados. Among the Central American Republics, Costa Rica and Panama have a fairly high incidence, whereas only few cases have been reported from Honduras, Guatemala, Nicaragua, and Mexico. In South America, framboesia is very common in British Guiana, Venezuela, Colombia, and Brazil. It has been reported from Bolivia, Ecuador, Paraguay, and Peru. There are but few accurate figures for the number of cases occurring in these countries. The following is a brief summary of the available statistical information, the majority of which was compiled by the Pan-American Sanitary Bureau:

Bolivia.—Ninety-eight cases were reported to the health authorities in 1944, and 140 were reported through August, 1945.

Brazil.—McKinley (1935) stated that framboesia is spread practically all over the country. Araujo (1928) estimated 30,000 cases in a population of 1,000,000 to 1,200,000 in the northeastern states of Parahíba and Ceará. Uscátegui (1930) reported that in the relatively sparsely inhabited sections along the Amazon River from Belém, Pará, to the mouth of the Río Negro only a few cases were found.

Colombia.—Llorente, Paz, and Lince (1936) estimated there were 34,000 cases in Chocó, 6,000 in Valle, 8,000 in Cauca, and 22,000 in Nariño, representing 90 per cent of the total population. Guerra (1941) stated that there were about 80,000 cases along the coastal regions of Colombia.

Costa Rica.—McKinley (1935) reported that 2,000 cases have been recorded in the Pacific Lowlands.

Cuba.—Pardo-Castelló (1939) noted that framboesia occurs only in Oriente Province where 451 cases have been reported in over forty-nine years.

Dominican Republic.—Moss and Bigelow (1922) made a careful analysis of 1,046 cases. Lugo (1942) found numerous cases in the sugar manufacturing sections, usually among

Haitians and Jamaicans and sporadically among Dominicans. In 1944, 14,834 cases were reported to the health authorities, and 7,891 were reported through July, 1945.

Ecuador.—Villagómez (1932) reported that half of the 30,000 inhabitants of the Province of Esmeraldas were infected with framboesia. Seventy-two cases were reported to the health authorities during the period January-August, 1945.

Guatemala.—Bolaños and Selva (1934) reported having observed three cases of framboesia in Chocolá in 1931. Later many more cases were found in Madre Mia (near Chocolá) in San Pedro Jocopilas, Santo Tomás, La Unión, and Samayac, all neighboring municipalities.

Haiti.—McKinley (1935) stated that 100,000 cases of framboesia had been reported, the majority from rural districts. During 1943, 48,759 cases were reported to the health authorities; 32,195 were reported in 1944, and 11,679 were reported during the period January-July, 1945. Duvalier (1945) reported that 97,291 patients attended one rural clinic in Haiti from March, 1943, to March, 1944.

Jamaica.—Saunders et al. (1936) found that framboesia was present in large numbers of persons in St. Thomas, Portland, St. Mary, St. Catherine, Clarendon, St. Elizabeth, and St. James. Turner and Saunders (1935) recorded an incidence of 58 per cent in the Bath area and 47 per cent in the Seaforth area.

Nicaragua.—Lacayo (1935) reported four cases in Managua.

Panama.—Brosius (1930) stated that framboesia is uncommon in Almirante where he treated only 12 cases in the previous five years and 4 cases in 1930. Wilson (1934a) reported 424 cases in the province of Darien. Later the same year (1934b) he noted an average incidence of 16.4 per cent among five villages near the confluence of the Chagres and Gatuncillo Rivers, about 50 kilometers from the capital city. Seven hundred sixty-four cases were reported to the health authorities in 1944, and 84 during January-June, 1945.

Puerto Rico.—Gotay, Costa, Mandry, and Payne (1935) found 94 cases among 1,091 inhabitants of a rural section.

Venezuela.—Cases have been reported from the States of Miranda, Aragua, Guárico, Carabobo, Cojedes, Yaracua, Portuguesa, Zulia, Trujillo, Mérida, Táchira, Anzoátegui, Sucre, Nueva Esparta, and Bolívar. Vegas, Lovera, Itriago, and Medina (1943) reported 24.5 per cent of 256,793 persons infected in Carabobo. In 1944, 2,124 cases were reported to the health authorities, and 828 were reported during the period January-April, 1945.

There is a high incidence of framboesia in equatorial *Africa,* particularly in Liberia, the Gold Coast, Nigeria, French Equatorial Africa, the Belgian Congo, and Angola on the west coast, and in Kenya, Tanganyika, Zanzibar, and Mozambique on the east coast. It is common on the Comoro Islands and Madagascar. The incidence is fairly high in the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan, Uganda, Rhodesia, and Nyasaland. There is a low incidence in Algeria, Tripoli (Libya), Egypt, and Kimberley (South Africa).

In *Asia* the incidence of framboesia is high in Assam (India), Burma, Thailand or Siam, French Indo-China, Malaya, the Netherlands Indies, and the Philippine Islands. It is rare in Bengal and Travancore (India) and is said to be disappearing from Ceylon. The incidence in southern China is very low.

Framboesia is common in *northern Australia* and on a number of the *Pacific Islands;* namely, Samoa, New Hebrides, New Caledonia, Fiji, Gilbert, Ellice, Caroline, Marianas, and others.

PATHOLOGY

Framboesia is characterized by a variety of lesions, some of which tend to occur in a certain sequence. Chambers (1938) suggested the following arrangement of the lesions:

A. Primary stage
   1. Single skin granuloma (''maman pian,'' ''madre buba,'' or ''mother yaw'')
   2. Single skin macule or macular patch (''yaws spot'')

B. Secondary stage
   1. Macular skin lesions with scaling, with or without depigmentation
   2. Folliculopapular skin lesions
   3. Papular skin lesions
   4. Framboesiform skin lesions (''button yaws'')
   5. Joint lesions
   6. Bone lesions
   7. Plantar and palmar skin lesions, nonulcerative type
   8. Plantar and palmar skin lesions, ulcerative granulomatous type (''crab yaws'' or ''clavus'')
   9. Delayed or late plantar and palmar skin lesions
   10. Delayed or late bone lesions

C. Tertiary stage
   1. Nodular skin lesions
   2. Ulcerative skin lesions (''gumma'')
   3. Circinate scaling skin lesions (''ringworm yaws'')
   4. Pigmentary skin changes
   5. Gummatous lesions of skin and bone
   6. Juxta-articular nodules
   7. Goundou
   8. Gangosa
   9. Cardiovascular lesions (doubtful)
   10. Neurologic lesions (doubtful)

The histologic picture of the various primary and secondary skin lesions, as described by Ash and Spitz (1945), is essentially the same, allowing for differences in intensity and duration of the tissue reaction and for anatomic differences at the site of the lesion. The primary lesions are granulomatous with edema and hyperplastic changes in the epidermis and enlargement and elongation of the rete pegs. In lesions one to two months old the superficial portions of the epidermis are usually necrotic, and the lesions are covered by crusts composed of keratin debris, leucocytes, blood, and dried serum. Underlying this layer there is often a parakeratotic plaque. Hyperkeratosis is always present, and scattered epithelial pearls and plugged follicles are common. The pegs are elongate and irregular, presenting a characteristic interlacing, branched appearance. There is a marked degree of spongiosis and intracellular edema. Small intraepidermal vesicles and abscesses are common, especially adjacent to similar foci in the papillae. Pigment is usually absent from the epithelium. In places the elongated papillae protrude through the epidermis which is thin or absent. The upper papillary layer is edematous and hyperemic, and the lymphatics are dilated. The granulomatous infiltrate present in the lower papillary and subpapillary layers is composed mainly of plasma cells and lymphocytes, with scattered polymorphonuclear leucocytes and eosinophiles. Small vessels are not involved. Spirochetes are numerous in the epidermis, especially in the granular and basal layers. They are occasionally seen in the crusts but are seldom found in the lower segments of the dermis.

Secondary skin lesions begin, according to Goodpasture (1923), with a localization of spirochetes from the blood in certain papillae from which points the organisms infect the epidermis where conditions appear to be more favorable for their growth. The early macule shows only slight hyperkeratosis, with thinning of the epidermis due to edema and enlargement of the papillae. At a later stage, keratinization increases, small foci of spongiosis appear, plugging of follicles occurs, and there is beginning infiltration of plasma cells and lymphocytes; few organisms are present. The papule represents the nonulcerative transitional stage between the macular and the typical framboesiform lesion. In it cellular infiltration is more marked, and there are more organisms present in the epidermis than in the macular lesions. The framboesiform lesions closely resemble the primary lesions but are frequently smaller and are covered with yellow crusts. Removal of the crust reveals a superficial ex-

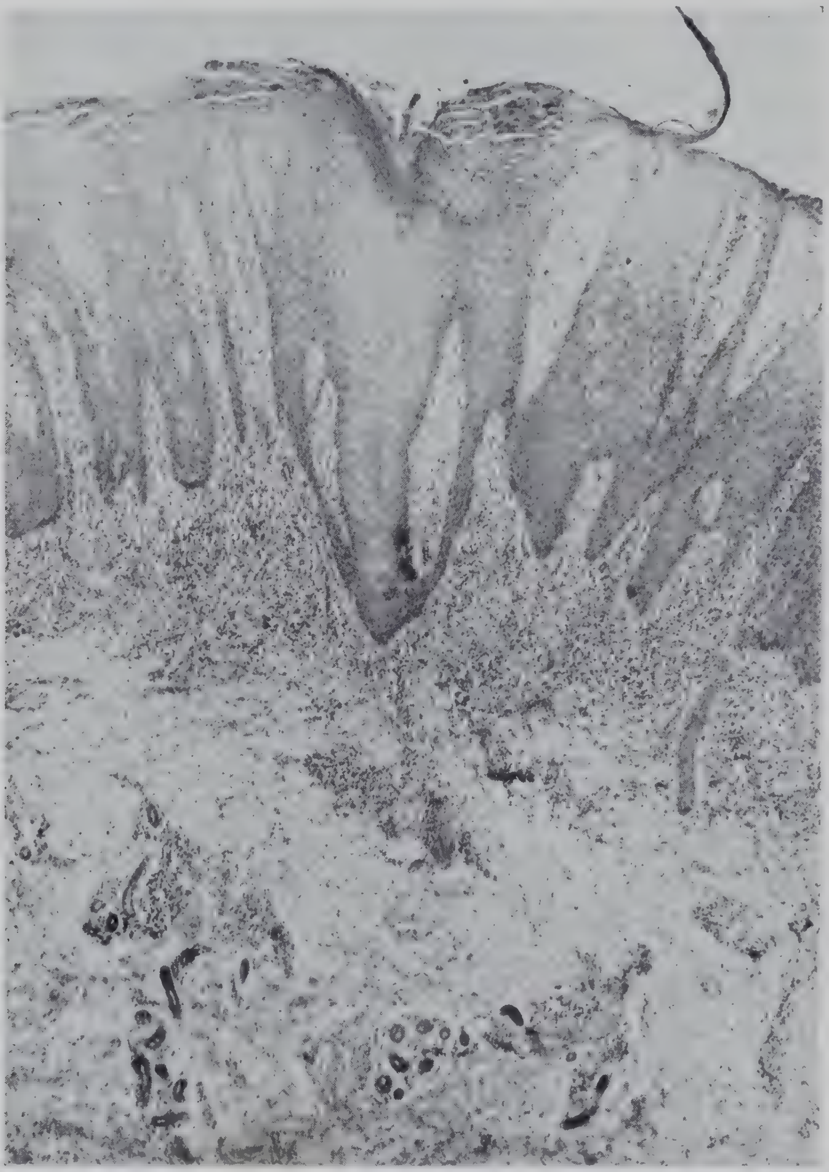


Fig. 117.—Framboesiform lesion. (×50.) This section shows marked elongation of pegs, necrosis of superficial epidermis, and intraepidermal abscesses. (From Ash and Spitz: Pathology of Tropical Diseases, W. B. Saunders Co. By permission of the authors and publisher.)

coriation with clean-cut edges. It is lined with granulation tissue which bleeds readily. Plantar and palmar skin lesions also resemble the primary lesion except for their persistence which is probably due to the continuous trauma to which they are subjected and the thickness of the epidermis in these areas.

The histology of the tertiary lesions is not well known except in the case of subcutaneous gummas. These show necrosis of tissue and ulceration of the overlying skin. The necrotic area is surrounded by a zone of epithelioid cells and numerous giant cells. Spirochetes are sometimes found in small numbers in these lesions. The gummas are similar to those of syphilis. The juxta-articular nodules show nonspecific granulomatous processes with central necrosis and a peripheral border of epithelioid cells in which numerous giant cells are scattered. Bone lesions evince periosteal proliferation and dense areas of sclerosis. Osteitis may result in a "sabre shin" or produce deformities of the arms or fingers. In gangosa, the nasal cartilages may be completely destroyed. The presence of visceral lesions is debatable. Choisser (1929) reported a series of 700 consecutive autopsies in Haiti. In 10 cases which he considered to be definitely framboesia, 8 had aneurysms of the aorta, 1 a gumma of the brain, and the other a spontaneous cerebral hemorrhage. He was unable to differentiate the pathologic process in these lesions from that of syphilis which is also prevalent in Haiti.

CLINICAL SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

Framboesia runs a comparatively mild clinical course which may be arbitrarily divided into the same three stages described for the pathologic lesions. It rarely results in death, although some untreated or inadequately treated patients may show marked cachexia. A relatively small proportion of cases may develop large destructive and disfiguring late skin and bone lesions, usually accompanied by secondary bacterial infection.

Incubation Period

The incubation period varies from three to six weeks. Frequently, the primary lesion is ushered in with prodromal systemic symptoms, such as vague abdominal discomfort, nocturnal headache, joint pains, and an irregular fever. These symptoms often abate upon the appearance of the initial lesion. As previously stated, the primary lesion occurs most frequently on the feet, particularly the malleoli; less common sites are the legs and knees, especially on the anterior aspect of the lower third of the legs. The head, neck, thighs, upper extremities, and genitals are much less frequently involved. The location of the primary lesions does not appear to influence the course of the disease. Some patients are unable to give a history of a primary lesion. In such cases, either the lesion was so small it was overlooked or it did not develop, the disease beginning with secondary lesions. Chambers (1938) reported that in Jamaica there was an increase in primary lesions during the wet seasons, indicating that environmental conditions are more favorable for the spread of infection at those times.

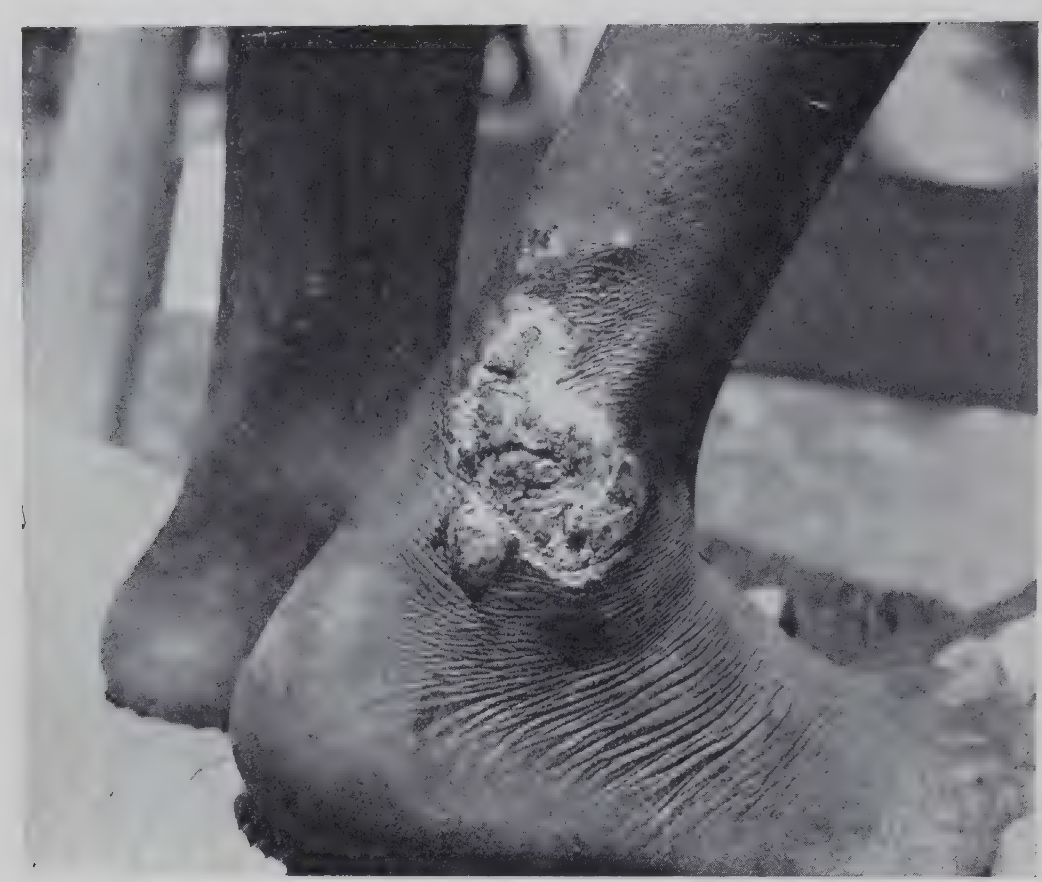


Fig. 118.—Primary lesion of framboesia on external malleolus.

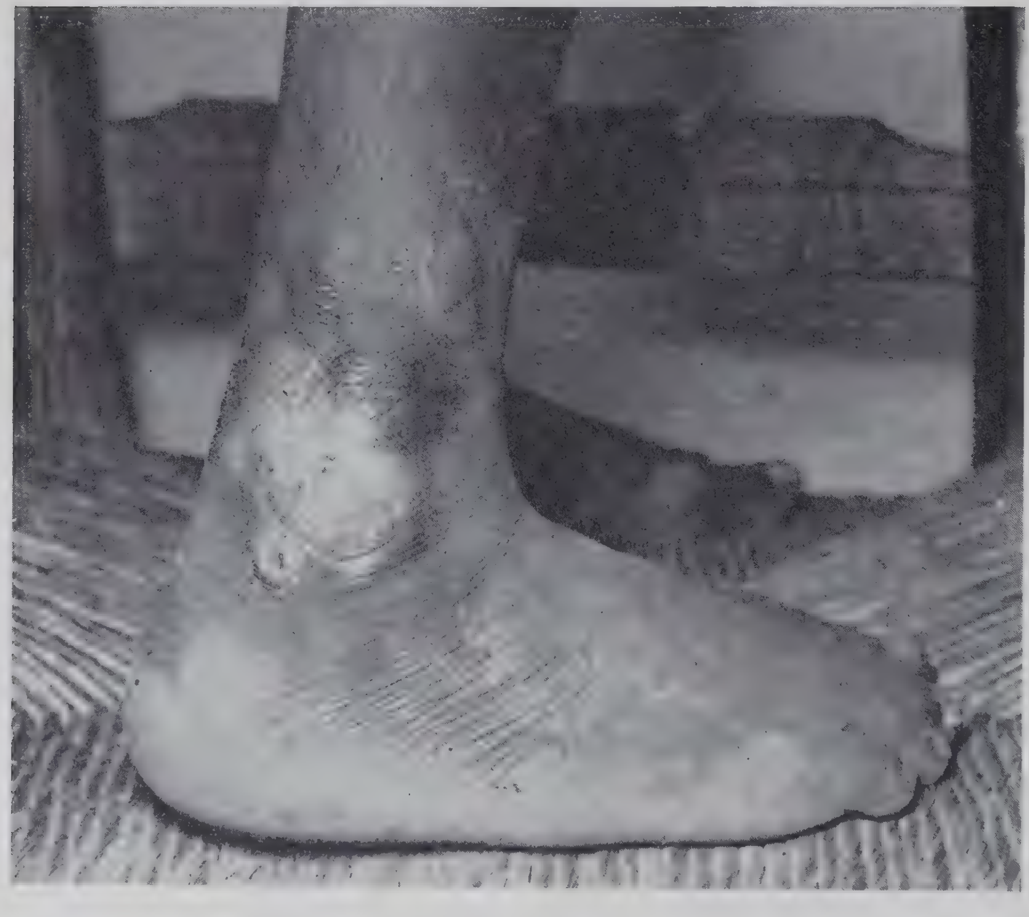


Fig. 119.—Same lesion as shown in Fig. 118 one week after treatment with 1,200,000 Oxford Units of penicillin.

Primary Lesion

At the end of the incubation period, the primary lesion appears as a small, elevated papule a few millimeters in diameter, or as a group of papules. It occasionally begins as a tiny macule which may go unnoticed. In a few days the lesion enlarges to the size of a small pea and becomes surrounded by an inflammatory areola. The epidermis begins to crack open, and a yellowish seropurulent fluid exudes from the underlying granulomatous base. The papule continues to enlarge daily and may attain a diameter of 2 to 6 cm. or more, apparently depending upon the size of the pre-existing injury. After a week, the surface becomes covered by a dark crust which oozes serum and bleeds easily. The lesion is usually painless. It may go through the stage of scab formation and healing in two to four weeks, prior to the appearance of the secondary lesions. More often, as the result of secondary infection, it persists with the secondary lesions for weeks, months, or years. Frequently it breaks down to form an ulcer with a granulating base and raised edges. As a rule, the primary lesion eventually heals, leaving a noticeable scar which may endure throughout the life of the patient.

Secondary Stage

The secondary stage manifests itself as a generalized eruption from two weeks to three months after the appearance of the primary lesion. The average time interval between the two stages is from three to four weeks. The variation in time may be the result of a number of factors: the number of organisms causing infection, repeated inoculations, the virulence of the organisms, and the extent of trauma at the site of inoculation. Transitory prodromal symptoms of fever, malaise, headache, and joint pains are, again, generally present. A slight rise in temperature of one to two degrees Fahrenheit often precedes and accompanies the secondary eruption, persisting until after the lesions have begun to recede and fresh ones no longer appear. The joint pains are not generally accompanied by heat or swelling.

The secondary lesions may be profuse over the face, limbs, buttocks, and trunk. Occasionally they may be distributed scantily in one or two places, or they may not be present at all. They are generally more numerous on the buttocks and thighs. In many cases lesions appear at the mucocutaneous borders of the nose, mouth, anus, and vagina and on the scrotum and penis. Lopez-Rizal and Sellards (1926) reported a modification of secondary lesions in a group of patients living in the mountains of Northern Luzon, Philippine Islands. The lesions were limited to the mucocutaneous junctures of the mouth, nose, anus, and genitals in approximately 90 per cent of the cases. This limitation of distribution of lesions has not been observed in patients residing in the mountainous regions of Haiti or Jamaica. Mucocutaneous lesions of the mouth occasionally spread directly to the mucous membrane of the lips.

The secondary lesions have the same characteristics as the primary lesions. Typically, desquamating macular lesions are the first to appear. In a few days elevated papules develop in some of the macular areas. They increase rapidly in size, the majority obtaining a diameter of from 2 to 4 cm. Itching occasionally accompanies the lesions. Dried serum and dead epithelium form a soft yellow crust. Later, the crust may become dark yellow, harden, and become friable, assuming a characteristic heaped-up appearance. Lesions around the mouth and nose frequently remain moist and soft. In the genital, anal, and perianal regions some lesions may be condylomatous and others somewhat flattened from pressure and are moist. In all the above locations the lesions are not usually painful, but those on the soles of the feet and the palms of the hands may be extremely so. The lack of large amounts of loose subcutaneous connective tissue in these areas results in the development of pressure symptoms. Regional lymphadenopathy frequently occurs. The generalized eruption may persist for months or years, coming out in successive crops in long-standing cases. In addition to, and occasionally in the absence of, the framboesiform eruption, some patients may show papulofollicular lesions. These appear early as discrete, round or ovoid elevations on the skin, 0.5 to 1.5 cm. in diameter. At times, the framboesiform lesions are circinate. Fox (1943) mentioned an infrequent early secondary eruption, consisting of pinhead-sized papules in groups, which has been called "keratoid yaws" be-

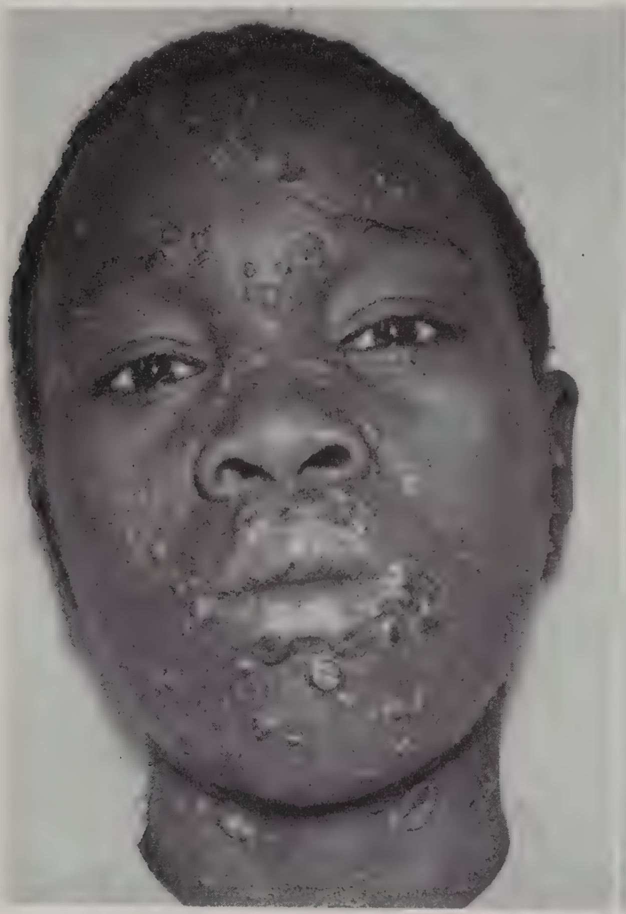


Fig. 120.

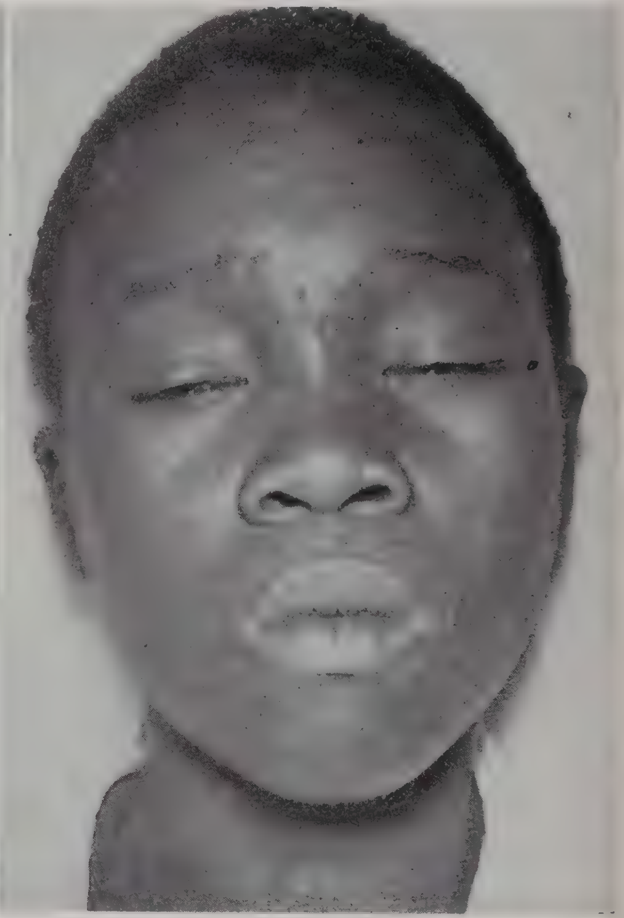


Fig. 121.

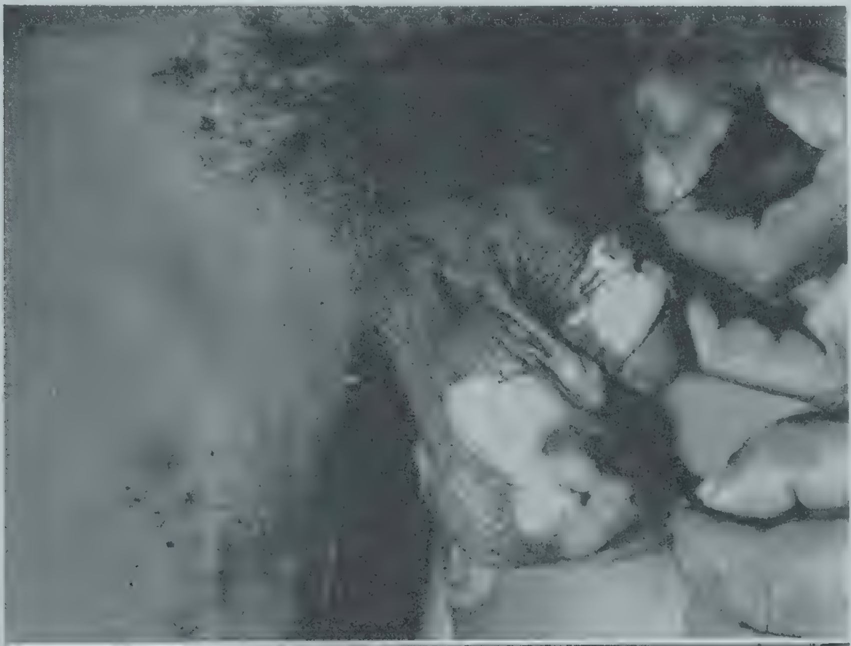
Fig. 120.—Papular lesions in the secondary stage of framboesia.

Fig. 121.—Same patient as shown in Fig. 120 one week after treatment with 1,200,000 Oxford Units of penicillin.

cause of its supposed similarity to keratosis pilaris. He suggested it more closely resembles lichen scrofulosorum.

The plantar and palmar skin lesions ("crab yaws") are a distinctive feature of framboesia. They are the counterpart of the characteristic generalized eruption. The lesions appear as punctate erosions, giving the soles and palms a moth-eaten appearance. The affected areas are thicker, drier, and harder than normal as the result of marked hyperkeratosis and desquamation. Fissures frequently accompany the lesions. The soles and palms become tender and painful. Plantar lesions may be so painful that walking becomes

Fig. 122.



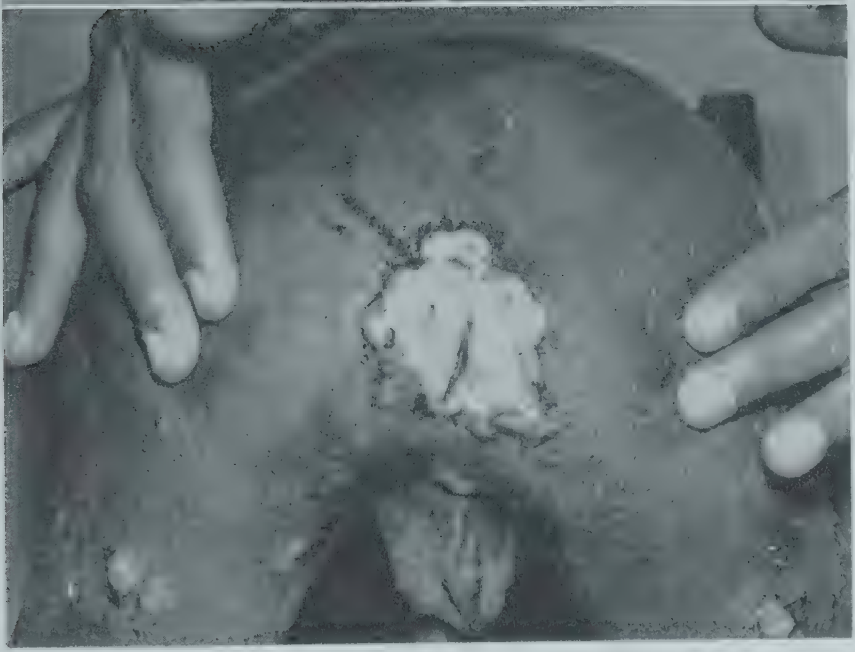


Fig. 123.

Fig. 122.—Flat, moist framboesiform lesions on the genitalia.
Fig. 123.—Flat, moist framboesiform lesions in the perianal region.

difficult and resembles the locomotion of a crab. A week or two later the lesions ulcerate and become slightly less painful. These lesions tend to remain longer than other secondary lesions and are less responsive to treatment. They may continue to appear for years after other secondary lesions have healed. Nonulcerative plantar lesions often develop late in the course of the disease, sometimes several years after the first attack.

During the secondary stage there may be definite bone involvement. The tibiae are most commonly affected; then the ulnae, radii, fibulae, tarsals, metatarsals, metacarpals, carpals, phalanges of fingers and toes, and humerii, in descending order of frequency. The maxillae, clavicles, frontal bone, femora, sternum, scapulae, and patellae are more rarely affected. Paronychiae with periosteal and bone involvement may occur. A fusiform or nodular swelling develops over some part of the bone. Pain is usually present and may be felt before there is any palpable swelling. Gross bone deformity may develop if treatment is not begun early or if it is inadequate.

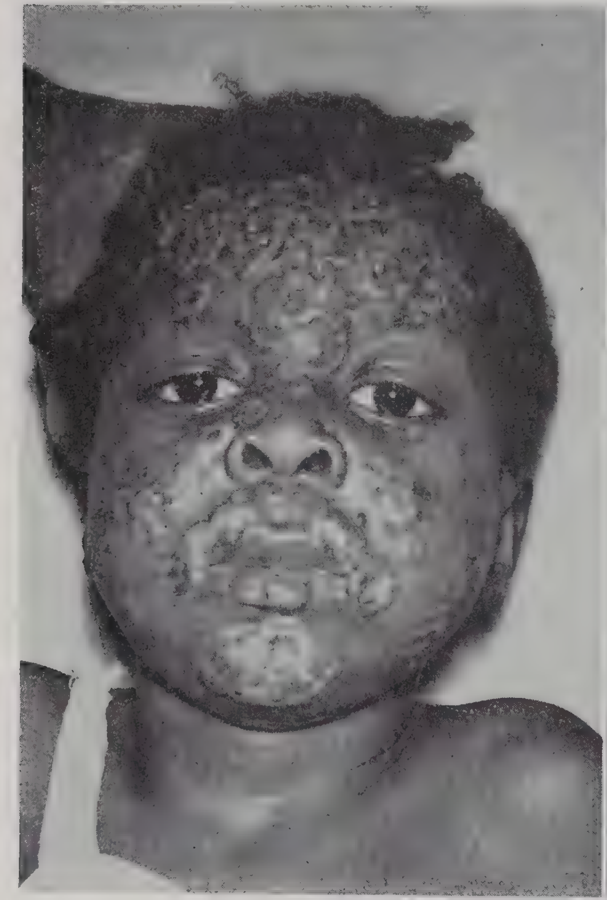


Fig. 124.

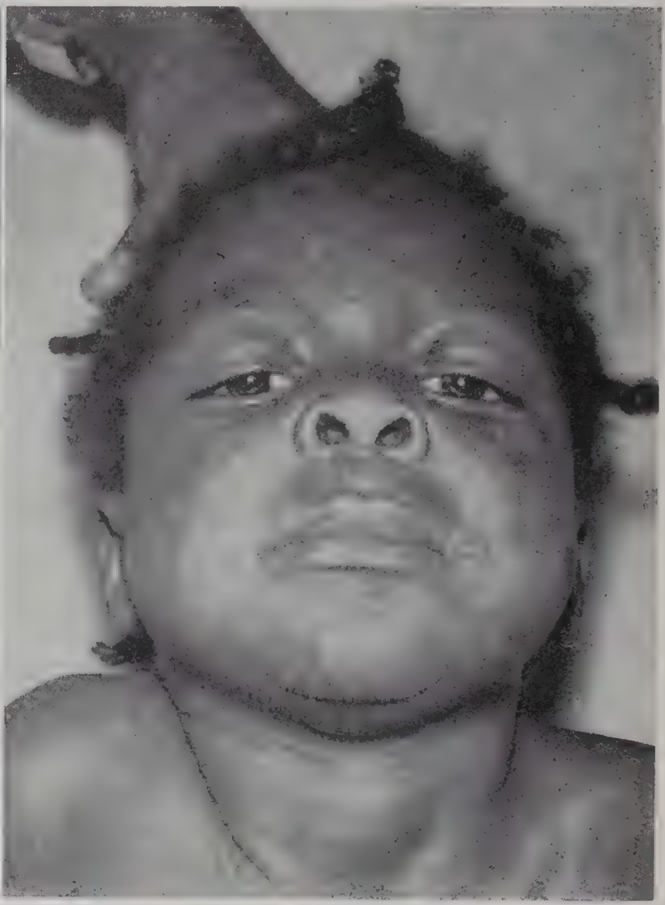


Fig. 125.

Fig. 124.—Circinate framboesiform lesions of the face.

Fig. 125.—Same patient as shown in Fig. 124 one week after treatment with 600,000 Oxford Units of penicillin.

After reaching a certain stage of development, the various types of primary and secondary lesions usually begin to regress in the absence of treatment. Healing appears to take place by the process of dehydration. Exudation diminishes, and the crusts disintegrate. The hyperkeratotic epidermis is

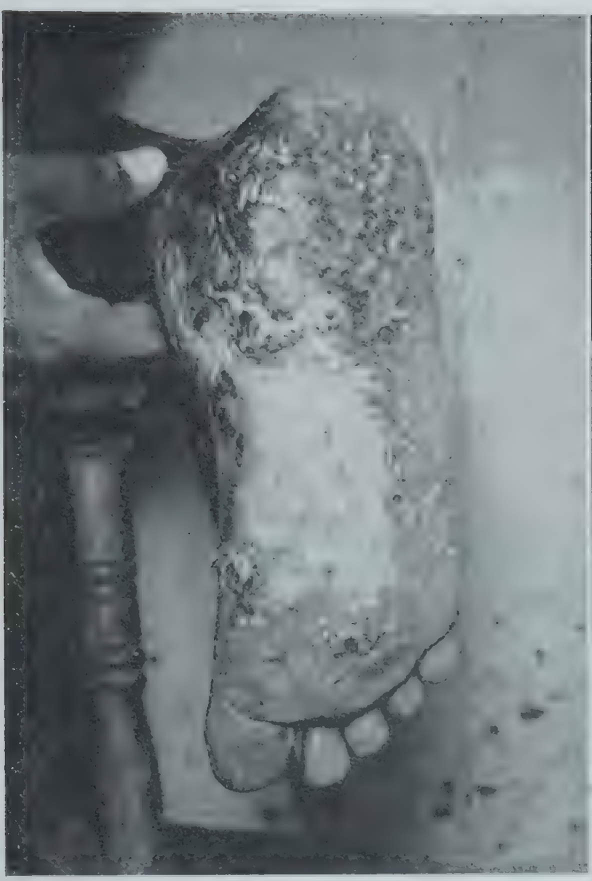


Fig. 126.

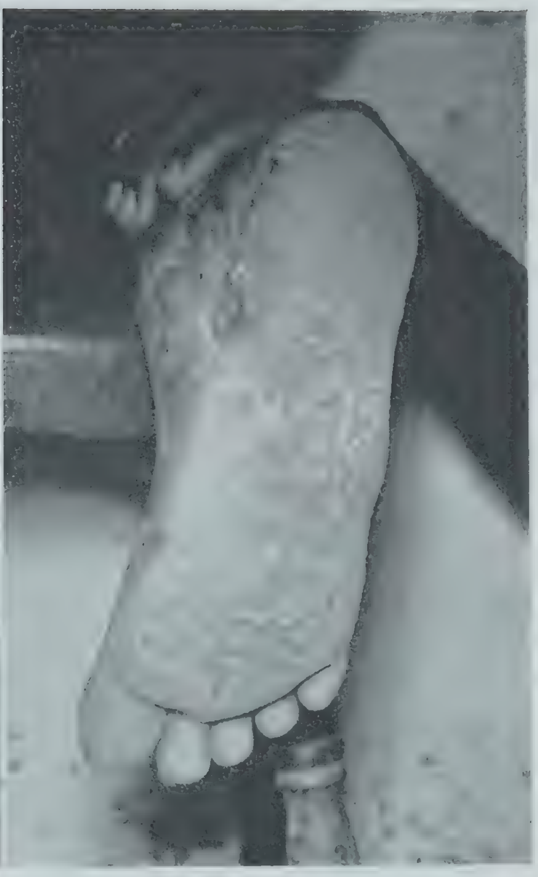


Fig. 127.

Fig. 126.—Ulcerative plantar lesion ("crab yaws") of framboesia.

Fig. 127.—Same patient as shown in Fig. 126 one week after treatment with 1,200,000 Oxford Units of penicillin.

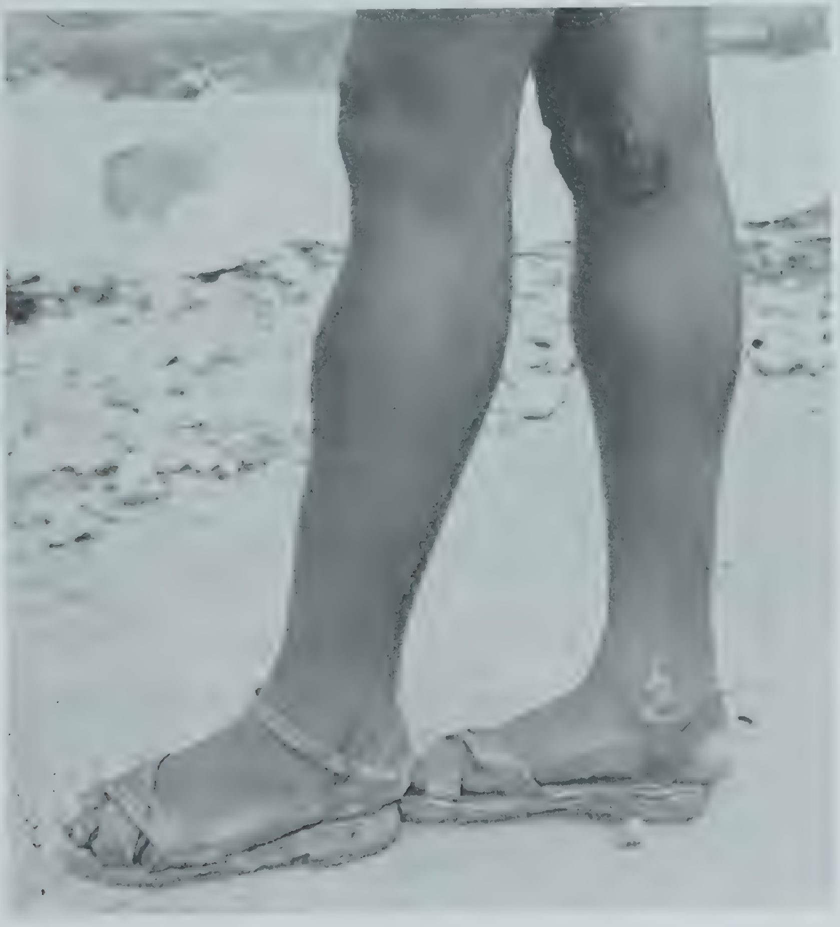


Fig. 128.—Bowing of tibiae due to framboesia.

shed, and the skin resumes its normal appearance. Increased pigmentation and occasionally depigmentation may persist for months. As a rule, primary lesions leave scars; secondary lesions do not.

Tertiary Stage

The majority of framboesia cases do not progress beyond the secondary stage so far as is known; a few cases do not go beyond the primary stage. The tertiary stage develops in a few of the untreated or inadequately treated patients in from one to several years after the initial lesion. Sometimes the secondary and tertiary stages merge, or the interval between the two may be so long that it is difficult to get a reliable history. A variety of lesions have been ascribed to the tertiary stage. Ulcerative lesions on the legs seem to be most common, some of which are of a spreading, superficial type and others deep. They frequently develop at the site of the primary lesion or in close proximity to it. The edges of the superficial ulcers are usually raised and serpiginous; the edges of the deep ulcers are often undermined. The base of the ulcer

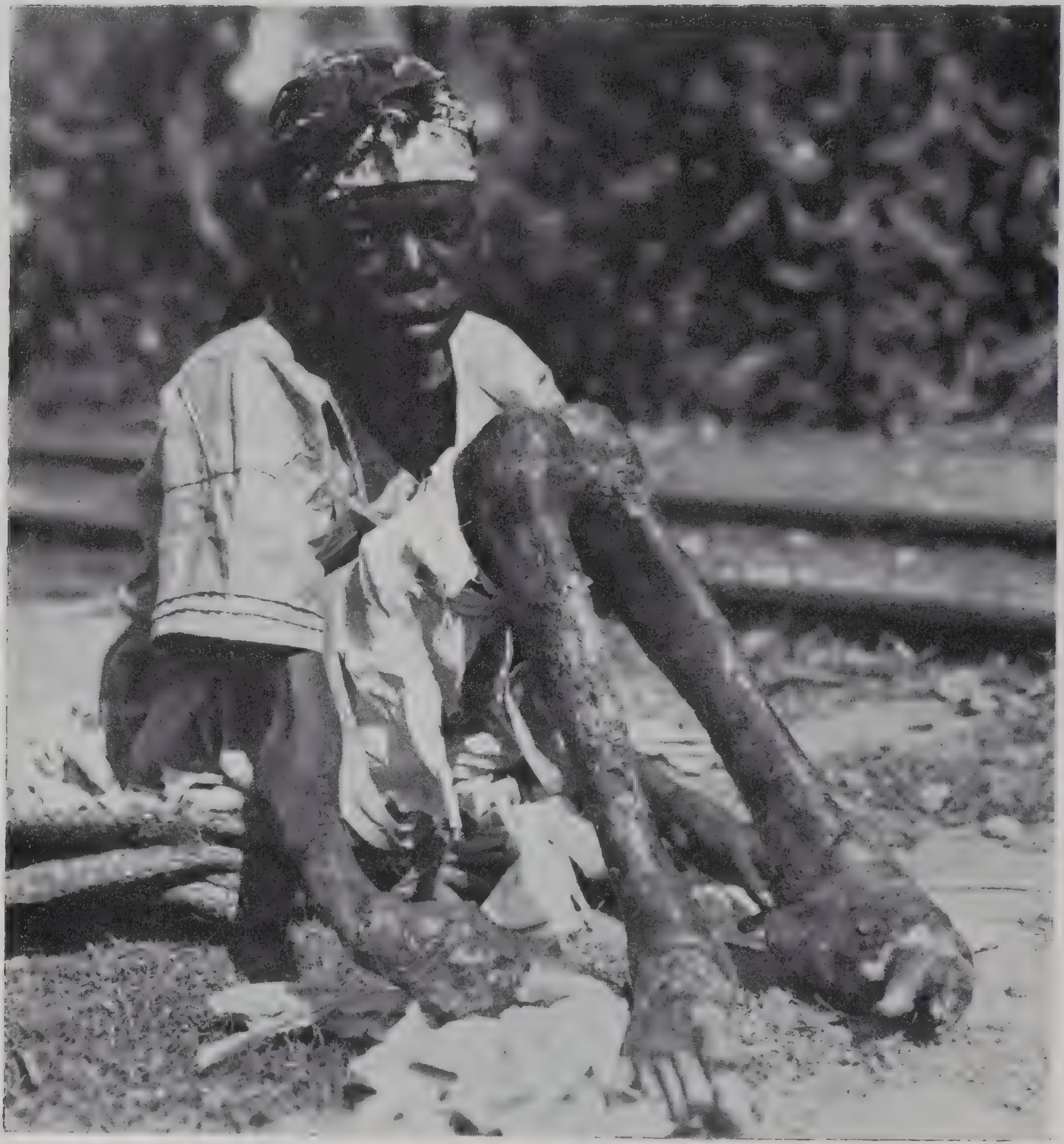


Fig. 129.—Late bone lesions in framboesia accompanied by disfigurement and wasting.

is generally granulomatous. A profuse serous or serosanguineous exudate is present. Most ulcers are secondarily infected so that their appearance is altered, and a purulent exudate is the rule. Healing is slow and may leave disfiguring scars which interfere with function of the affected area, particularly around joints.

Gummas usually start as small, firm subcutaneous nodules. After a period of weeks or months the skin over the nodule becomes red and subsequently ulcerates, producing a punched-out lesion. A serosanguineous exudate appears. Healing may take place in a few months with extensive scar formation, and disfiguration of the skin, or the ulcer may become secondarily infected and persist for many months or years. Occasionally the gummas are arranged in circles and are spoken of as "ringworm yaws."

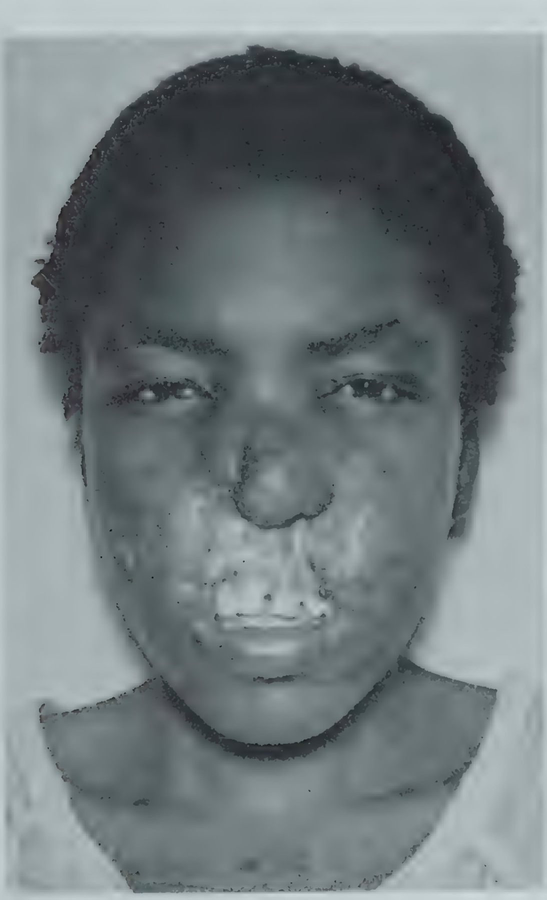


Fig. 130.—Early gangosa.

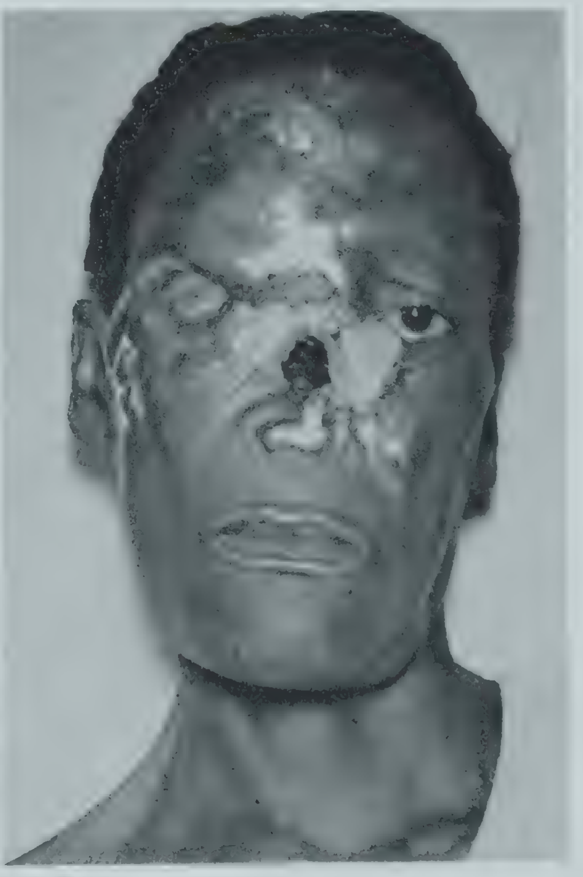


Fig. 131.—Advanced gangosa.

Gangosa appears to be initiated by the spread of infection from the upper lip or vestibule of the nose to the mucous membranes of the soft palate or the nasal passages. The membrane ulcerates, and the process advances, destroying soft tissues, bone, and cartilage. The septal cartilage and the structures of the nose are lost, leaving a cavernous opening. The process may spread to involve the adjacent parts of the upper lip and cheek. On occasion, it seems to spread to the eyes by way of the nasal ducts. Secondary infection probably plays an important role in modifying the appearance of the lesions. The incidence of gangosa in areas where framboesia is highly endemic is less than 1 per cent.

Juxta-articular nodules occur even less frequently than gangosa. They appear as firm, freely movable, painless subcutaneous masses varying in size from 1 to 3 cm. They occur most commonly on the extensor aspects of the elbow and knee joints, and less frequently over the external malleoli, temporomandibular joints, finger joints, trochanters, and sacrococcygeal joint. They seem to develop in localities which are most often subjected to pressure and to repeated trauma. The lesions persist for years, and the skin over them may become attached. Suppuration is rare.

Goundou is considered to be a rare form of tertiary lesion, which, like gummas, gangosa, and juxta-articular nodules, appears to be most prevalent in areas where treatment facilities are scarce. It develops earlier than other tertiary lesions, sometimes closely following secondary lesions in young children. It is initiated by exostosis of the frontal process of the maxilla, usually bilateral. The lesion may be accompanied by headache and a thin, purulent nasal discharge, often tinged with blood. As it progresses over a period of months, it may involve the nasal and frontal bones, producing a large oval tumor. The overlying skin is not affected. In some cases the nasal passages are obstructed.

Some writers feel that framboesia may produce neurologic and cardiovascular lesions in its late stages. Wilson and Mathis (1930) observed 1,423 consecutive cases in Haiti and stated that ptosis, blindness, and optic neuritis were occasionally encountered. No spinal fluid changes have been detected. With reference to cardiovascular lesions, none have been reported where other causal agents, such as syphilis and rheumatic fever, have been completely ruled out.

DIAGNOSIS

The most important disease to be considered in the differential diagnosis of framboesia is syphilis, particularly in the tertiary stages. Little aid can be obtained from the laboratory, since the etiologic agents are indistinguishable, and specific serologic tests are positive in both diseases. Spirochetes can readily be demonstrated by dark-field microscope examination of serum from primary and secondary framboesia lesions after removal of the crusts. The Wassermann (complement fixation), Kahn (flocculation), and other specific serologic tests are positive in over 99 per cent of patients with early framboesia. The tests become positive two to three weeks after the appearance of the primary lesion. The titer increases rapidly and becomes strongly positive during the fifth or sixth week. The tests remain positive for months or years, occasionally becoming negative in the tertiary stage.

DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

There are a number of points to be considered in the differential diagnosis of framboesia and syphilis:

1. Framboesia is prevalent in many rural areas where syphilis is practically unknown, while in cities where there may be a great deal of syphilis, framboesia is uncommon. Wilson (loc. cit.) observed that, in Panama and dif-

ferent parts of the world where a high incidence of framboesia is found, the incidence of syphilis is correspondingly low.

2. Framboesia is probably not congenital, whereas syphilis definitely is, giving rise to Hutchinsonian teeth, bossing of the frontal bones, iritis, interstitial keratitis, etc. Framboesia does not cause abortion in pregnant women, and children born to infected mothers do not show lesions or positive serologic tests.

3. The primary lesion of framboesia is usually extragenital. In syphilis the initial lesion is on the genital organs in a majority of the cases.

4. The primary lesion of syphilis is often indurated and is not usually covered with a friable crust, thereby differing from framboesia.

5. Regional lymphadenopathy is generally more marked in framboesia than in syphilis, and the glands are less firm and nodular.

6. A history of the primary lesion and evidence of its presence in the form of a scar are more often obtainable in framboesia than in syphilis.

7. The characteristic secondary lesions in framboesia covered with heaped-up, friable, yellow crusts have not been observed in syphilis.

8. Mucous membrane lesions are common in syphilis, but not in framboesia, except when direct spread from a cutaneous border is evident.

9. The typical painful "scrub yaws" lesions on the soles of the feet and the palms of the hands in framboesia apparently do not occur in syphilis.

10. Alopecia is sometimes seen in syphilis but has not been reported in framboesia.

11. Gangosa and goundou occasionally develop in the late stages of framboesia but not in syphilis.

12. Visceral lesions do not appear to develop in framboesia, whereas they are not uncommon in syphilis. In this category fall such lesions as gummas of the liver, testes, and kidneys; neurologic involvement, including meningitis, hemiplegia, arteriosclerosis, tabes dorsalis, and general paralysis; and cardiovascular lesions such as aortitis, myocarditis, and aneurysm.

13. Spinal fluid changes are a feature of syphilis but not of framboesia. Spinal fluid Wassermann and Kahn tests are negative in cases of framboesia.

14. A reciprocal immunity seems to exist between framboesia and syphilis. Schöbl and Miyao (1929) and Schöbl (1930) showed that a high degree of immunity to framboesia protected Philippine monkeys against cutaneous infection with syphilis and vice versa. In human experiments, Turner (1936) reported unsuccessful attempts to infect ten patients with latent syphilis by inoculation of *T. pertenue*. With regard to experimental infection of framboesia patients with syphilis, only one instance is reported in the literature (Charlouis, 1881). It seems likely that in such instances insufficient time had elapsed for the development of immunity.

15. There is considerable experimental evidence that *T. pallidum* possesses pathogenic properties in rabbits which differ from those of *T. pertenue*, and these may, in part, explain the differences between framboesia and syphilis in man (Pearce and Brown, 1925; Turner and Chesney, 1934).

A number of other skin conditions are to be differentiated from framboesia. Some of the more common are as follows:

1. **Pyodermas** occur frequently in tropical countries. A variety of types of lesions are seen: pustules, bullae, vesicopustules, folliculopustules, furuncles, carbuncles, paronychiae, and ulcers. The principal etiologic agents are staphylococci and streptococci. The majority of these can be readily recognized clinically. However, some become covered with yellow or honey-colored crusts closely resembling secondary framboesia lesions; others ulcerate, simulating tertiary framboesia. The crusted lesions can be differentiated by dark-field microscope examination, but the ulcers cannot, since it is difficult to demonstrate spirochetes in framboesia ulcers. The pyogenic ulcers usually have sharp, sloping edges with a foul, necrotic base as compared with the undermined edges and granulomatous base of the framboesia ulcers. However, framboesia ulcers are often secondarily infected so that it is impossible to differentiate them from pyogenic ulcers. *Borrelia vincenti,* fusiform bacilli, and *T. refringens* may be found in the ulcers in addition to the pyogenic cocci. The so-called "tropical ulcers" probably fall into this category. Differentiation of ulcers is sometimes possible by response to the type of treatment instituted. In general, pyogenic ulcers will respond to local treatment and framboesia ulcers to specific treatment.

2. **Scabies** is frequently seen in the tropics. Its characteristic distribution on the webs of the fingers, flexor surface of wrists, axillae, lower part of the abdomen and back, and penis and scrotum serves to differentiate it from framboesia. Itching is a prominent symptom, which is not the case in framboesia. Scabies may be complicated by pyogenic infection or framboesia, making diagnosis more difficult. Demonstration of the parasitic mite, *Sarcoptes scabiei,* by microscopic examination of scrapings from the lesions, is not always possible.

3. A number of **fungus infections** produce lesions resembling those of framboesia.

a. *Trichophytosis, dermatophytosis,* or *epidermophytosis* of the hands and feet may be differentiated from framboesia by their limited distribution and the presence of vesicles in the early acute stage of infection. Microscopic examination of fungus elements in a potassium hydroxide preparation will confirm the diagnosis.

b. *Tinea versicolor* or *pityriasis versicolor* is characterized by yellow or brown, irregularly sized, finely scaling macules over the shoulders, chest, upper portion of the back, axillae, and upper part of the abdomen. The etiologic agent, *Microsporon furfur,* can easily be seen in a potassium hydroxide preparation.

c. *Onychomycosis* or *"ringworm"* of the nails affects both toenails and fingernails, the former more frequently. The nail becomes friable, thickened, deformed, and discolored. Paronychial inflammation is uncommon. The lack of accompanying skin lesions tends to differentiate this condition from framboesia.

d. *Tinea cruris* or *"ringworm"* of the groin ("dhobie itch") involves the upper inner surfaces of the thighs, the inguinal folds, and occasionally the scrotum, buttocks, intergluteal folds, umbilicus, and axillae. The lesions appear as well-marginated, reddish patches with a slightly scaling surface. They often tend to clear in the center with a papular or finely vesicular scaling border. The localization and appearance of these lesions is generally sufficient to establish the diagnosis.

e. *Tinea corporis* or *"ringworm"* of the body may appear in the form of circinate and annular red scaling lesions with an inflammatory reaction and active vesicular borders, or as large, irregular, plaque-like lesions with sharp borders and no vesiculation. Fungus elements can usually be demonstrated in potassium hydroxide preparations.

f. *Tinea barbae* or *"ringworm"* of the face is a pustular folliculitis with induration and sometimes canalization. The hairs of the bearded region become loose and are easily removed. The presence of fungus elements in potassium hydroxide preparations establishes the diagnosis.

g. *Blastomycosis* is a more serious fungus infection, occurring in North and South America, which may have both cutaneous and systemic manifestations. The skin lesions usually occur on the face, neck, hands, wrists, arms, feet, or legs. They start as papules or pustules which develop into chronic ulcers. There is usually little pain, tenderness, systemic reaction, or regional lymphadenitis. Diagnosis can be made only by demonstrating the characteristic budding organisms, *Blastomyces dermatitidis* or *B. brasiliensis*, in pus from the lesions or in histologic sections.

h. *Sporotrichosis* is a chronic granulomatous fungus infection producing gumma-like skin nodules, ulcers, and abscesses. Diagnosis is based upon the cultural characteristics of the etiologic agent, *Sporotrichum schencki*, after inoculation of infected material on Sabouraud's medium and inoculation into laboratory animals (rats, mice, and guinea pigs).

i. *Actinomycosis* is a chronic, suppurating, granulomatous fungus infection of the skin characterized by multiple abscesses and fistula formation. It is most frequently seen about the face and neck ("lumpy jaw"). The characteristic yellow granules of *Actinomyces bovis* can be readily demonstrated in the pus from the lesions by microscopic examination.

j. *Maduromycosis* or *Madura foot* is a chronic granulomatous fungus infection usually limited to the lower extremities, producing extensive destruction of the soft tissues and the bony structures, particularly of the feet. In advanced cases the foot becomes a mass of cyst-like areas with intercommunicating sinus tracts and multiple externally draining sinuses. The characteristic granules of *Actinomyces* and branching mycelia of *Nocardia* and *Monosporium* can be demonstrated in potassium hydroxide preparations of pus.

4. **Cutaneous leishmaniasis** ("Oriental sore," "forest yaws") occurs in many areas where framboesia is endemic. Ulcers develop on the legs and arms which may closely resemble the primary lesion of framboesia. The subsequent development of widespread secondary lesions establishes the diag-

nosis of framboesia. Definitive diagnosis of leishmaniasis depends upon the demonstration of *Leishmania tropica* in smears or cultures made from the lesions.

5. **Mucocutaneous leishmaniasis** ("espundia") is widely distributed throughout Central and South America. Ulceration about the margins of the nose and mouth may resemble gangosa. Here, again, definitive diagnosis of leishmaniasis depends upon the demonstration of the etiologic agent, *Leishmania braziliensis,* in smears or cultures made from the lesions. This is difficult in advanced cases with extensive secondary infection.

6. **Seborrhea** or **seborrheic dermatitis** may be confused with the macular scaling lesions of the secondary stage of framboesia. Its distribution characteristically corresponds to the areas of sebaceous gland concentration; that is, scalp, mid-portion of the face, and presternal and interscapular regions. Mild to severe dermatitis may occur in the intertriginous areas of the axillae, umbilicus, crural folds, and gluteal cleft. In questionable cases the demonstration of spirochetes on dark-field microscope examination will establish the diagnosis of framboesia.

7. **Pityriasis rosea** is a common papulosquamous eruption which may resemble the early secondary stages of framboesia. Its distribution is typically over the back, chest, abdomen, arms, and thighs. The lesions tend to be arranged with the long axis along the lines of cleavage. They do not go through the course of development characteristic of framboesia lesions.

8. **Lichen planus** may simulate some of the papular lesions of the secondary stage of framboesia. The lesions frequently appear on the wrists, forearms, buccal mucosa, and genitals. They are generally violaceous, flat-topped, and angular. Itching is usually severe. Here, again, the lesions do not go through the course of development characteristic of framboesia.

9. **Psoriasis** may occasionally produce framboesiform lesions. The typical psoriatic papule or plaque has a dull red base which is covered with a silvery, moderately adherent scale. The distribution is characteristically on extensor surfaces. It is extremely chronic, and, like the secondary stage of framboesia, does not usually leave scars. Removal of the crust reveals a shiny red surface which is unlike the granulomatous base of the framboesiform lesions.

10. **Acne vulgaris** in the papular and pustular stages may be confused with the secondary stage of framboesia. The lesions are typically located on the forehead, cheeks, chin, upper chest, shoulders, and upper portion of the back. It is common in adolescents. The lack of evidence of a primary lesion and the duration of lesions serve to differentiate this disease from framboesia.

11. **Lupus vulgaris** is a form of tuberculosis of the skin which may simulate secondary and tertiary framboesia. It is characterized by plaques of small, soft, "applebutter-like" tubercles. Satellite nodules develop and then coalesce to form irregular groups of various sizes. The face, particularly the nose, is most frequently involved. The course is slow but progressive. The lesions generally break down and form small crusted ulcers which are ultimately replaced by fibrous tissue. The scarring is usually thicker and firmer

than that of framboesia ulcers unless the latter were secondarily infected. A history of contact with other cases of tuberculosis may be obtained. Definitive diagnosis of lupus vulgaris can be established by biopsy examination and guinea pig inoculation.

12. **Scrofuloderma** is a form of tuberculosis in which the skin is involved secondarily by direct extension from lymph nodes or bones. The cervical lymph nodes are those most commonly affected, becoming enlarged, firm, and adherent to the overlying skin. Over a period of months or years the overlying skin becomes thinned, purplish, and depressed. It then sloughs at one or more points to form ulcers which serve as mouths of sinuses. These extend deep into the diseased tissue and discharge purulent material. At this stage the lesion may resemble a framboesia gumma which has broken down. Constitutional symptoms are generally slight or lacking. The lesions may persist for a year with little or no change; occasionally they heal spontaneously with the formation of rough, corded cicatrices. The initial lymph node involvement is an important clinical point in differentiating this disease from framboesia. Laboratory diagnosis can be made by biopsy examination and guinea pig inoculation.

13. **Leprosy** in its early and late stages may simulate framboesia. The macules of leprosy are usually oval, bilateral in distribution, and extend peripherally, being most common on the lobes of the ears, alae nasae, forehead, eyebrows, cheeks, and chin. Sensory changes generally develop and serve to differentiate these lesions from those of framboesia. The subsequent appearance of nodules with induration and thickening of the skin results in the characteristic leonine facies of leprosy. The nodules frequently ulcerate. Neural involvement results in trophic changes in the skin. Atrophy of muscles leads to contractures and deformities, with resorption of bone and ulceration of the skin. The diagnosis of leprosy can generally be made on clinical grounds. Definitive diagnosis is based upon demonstration of the etiologic agent, *Mycobacterium leprae,* in the skin.

TREATMENT

A number of organic arsenical drugs, bismuth, and penicillin are specific in the treatment of yaws. Mercury and potassium iodide, separately or combined, tartar emetic, and carbarsone are considered to be less satisfactory therapeutic agents.

Strong (1910) first tried arsphenamine (Salvarsan) in the treatment of human framboesia and reported its marked specificity. It has frequently been observed that one injection of an arsenical drug, bismuth, or penicillin resulted in rapid healing of the primary and secondary lesions of framboesia. This has led to the assumption that this disease is easy to cure. However, in those few instances where adequate post-treatment clinical and serologic observations have been made, it has been found that the majority of these patients relapsed frequently and never attained seronegativity.

Pertinent information concerning the use of some of the above-mentioned drugs in the treatment of framboesia is given below.

Arsphenamine (Salvarsan)

The chemical base is 3,3′-diamino-4,4′ dihydroxyarsenobenzene, marketed as the dihydrochloride salt containing about 31 per cent arsenic in the trivalent form. It is given intravenously in doses equivalent to 0.010 Gm. per kilogram of body weight. The average single therapeutic dose is 0.40 Gm. for men and 0.30 Gm. for women. The drug is prepared by dissolving the powder in fresh, sterile, distilled water, 10 c.c. for each 0.1 Gm. of acid arsphenamine. The solution must then be made alkaline by the addition of 0.85 c.c. of a normal (4 per cent) solution of sodium hydroxide for each 0.1 Gm. of acid arsphenamine. After alkalinization is complete, the solution is filtered through sterile gauze, and an additional amount of water is added to make a final volume of 20 c.c. of solution for each 0.1 Gm. of arsphenamine. It must be allowed to stand for thirty minutes before being used. Solutions should not be allowed to stand more than four hours before use. Injection must be given slowly by gravity. Three to six injections at weekly intervals are generally given. It is important that the patient eat lightly on the day of injection and omit the meal following the injection.

A number of systemic reactions may follow the use of arsphenamine. The intravenous injection of 0.2 Gm. or more of unalkalinized acid arsphenamine almost always results in sudden death.

The Jarisch-Herxheimer reaction (therapeutic shock) occurs only after the first and not after subsequent injections of arsphenamine. Within a few hours after the drug is given there occurs a chill, a rise in temperature reaching 103° to 104° F., general malaise, and aching. The serious focal reactions characteristic of late syphilis have not been reported.

Several reactions following the injection of arsenicals are nonspecific and are due to the use of the intravenous route. Among these are the "tubing" reaction, the "ether" odor, and gastrointestinal reactions. The "tubing" reaction is caused by improper preparation of new rubber tubing. It most often consists of fever, vomiting, and headache. The "ether" odor occurs only after the use of arsphenamine, neoarsphenamine, and Mapharsen. The odor, which is like that of ether or garlic, is due to the presence of the drug in the blood of the nasal mucosa and occurs within a few seconds after the injection. The patient's awareness of the odor may be lessened by having him breathe through the mouth. The gastrointestinal disturbances comprise the most frequent type of reaction after the arsphenamines. Nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, headache, and malaise develop within four to twelve hours after treatment and usually last a few hours. These disturbances develop less frequently if patients are cautioned to eat lightly on the day of treatment and to omit the meal following treatment.

Angioneurotic symptoms may develop after the administration of the arsphenamines. The most common of these is the *nitritoid crisis*. The conjunctiva becomes suffused; the patient complains of being hot, of a feeling of oppression in the chest, and palpitation. If the injection is not stopped, the patient goes into shock with flushing of the skin, cough, vomiting, and severe back pain. Occasionally there develops swelling of the face, lips, tongue, or eyelids, and generalized urticaria. The patient experiences fear of impending death, and the reaction may sometimes be fatal. However, the symptoms usually disappear in twenty to sixty minutes without residual effects and even without treatment. It is safer to treat the patient by intramuscular injection of 0.5 to 1.0 c.c. of a 0.1 per cent epinephrine hydrochloride solution. The incidence of this reaction is about 0.1 per cent of all injections of arsphenamine and neoarsphenamine, but has not been reported after Mapharsen. The cause is not known. Rapid injection is undoubtedly the major factor in most cases.

Acute heart failure may result when an arsphenamine is administered to a patient with myocardial damage from cardiovascular syphilis. Thus, heart disease of any nature is a contraindication to the use of the arsphenamines.

The arsphenamines are capable of producing a wide variety of toxic manifestations in the skin ranging from minor dermatitides to grave and sometimes fatal exfoliative dermatitis. The distribution may be widespread or localized, as in the case of herpetiform and fixed arsenical lesions. The major dermatitides are due to drug sensitization and nearly always necessitate abandonment of arsenical treatment. The interval between treatment and the appearance of the rash is about five days on the average. It begins usually as a maculopapular or vesicular dermatitis, often limited at first to the extremities, but rapidly spreading over the whole body. Erythema may be generalized, and itching is severe. In the milder cases, the process may stop here, and the eruption disappears in a few days. In the more severe cases, marked scaling and exfoliation occurs, and the skin of the entire body is desquamated in large flakes. Marked constitutional symptoms and evidence of visceral damage may be associated with the eruption. Fever, malaise, and prostration are common; jaundice, albuminuria, hematuria, and polyneuritis are relatively infrequent complications. The patient should be hospitalized and treated symptomatically. Intravenous glucose (500 c.c. of 5 per cent solution) and calcium gluconate (10 c.c. of 10 per cent solution) should be given daily. Large amounts of vitamin C (0.500 Gm.) daily may be beneficial. The incidence of the dermatitides varies from 0.5 to 14 per cent of all injections of arsphenamines, being highest following sulfarsphenamine and lowest after Mapharsen injections.

Among the reactions from arsphenamines in the central nervous system are polyneuritis, hemorrhagic encephalitis, transverse myelitis, and ocular damage. These occur infrequently and usually only after a large number of injections have been made.

Blood dyscrasias due to the arsenical drugs are relatively rare. Three types of reaction are recognized: thrombocytopenia, granulocytopenia, and aplastic anemia. These are among the most serious of arsenical treatment complications, having a high mortality rate.

Postarsphenamine jaundice is a fairly frequent complication of arsphenamine therapy, occurring in approximately 0.02 per cent of all injections. The incidence is highest following neoarsphenamine and seldom, if ever, occurs after Mapharsen. Jaundice appears at variable intervals after treatment, ranging from a day to many months. It closely resembles infectious hepatitis, that is, a day or two of malaise, slight fever, generalized aching, epigastric distress, anorexia, nausea, and occasional vomiting, followed in four to eight days by the appearance of rapidly deepening jaundice of the obstructive type. As the jaundice develops, the symptoms often disappear. The liver becomes enlarged and slightly tender. Bile appears in the urine and disappears from the stools. Rarely there develop signs and symptoms of acute yellow atrophy: intractable vomiting, mental dullness, apathy, drowsiness, coma, convulsions, and death within seven to fourteen days. The mechanism of postarsphenamine jaundice is uncertain, possibly being due to the direct toxic effect of the arsenicals on the liver. Treatment is symptomatic. Daily intravenous injections of calcium gluconate (10 c.c. of 10 per cent solution) appear to accelerate symptomatic improvement.

Neoarsphenamine (Neosalvarsan)

Neoarsphenamine (Neosalvarsan) is sodium 3,3′-diamino-4,4′-dihydroxyarsenobenzene-N-methanol sulfoxylate, a derivative of arsphenamine containing 19 to 22 per cent of arsenic in the trivalent form. It is given intravenously in doses equivalent to 0.015 Gm. per kilogram of body weight. The average single therapeutic dose is 0.75 to 0.9 Gm. for men and 0.6 to 0.75 Gm. for women. The drug is prepared by dissolving the powder in fresh, distilled water, using from 2 to 10 c.c. per 0.1 Gm. of drugs. A total volume of 15 to 20 c.c. is usually employed for the average treatment. It is not necessary to alkalinize the solution as must be done when preparing arsphenamine. The drug must not be allowed to stand longer than twenty minutes. Injection is made slowly by syringe at the rate of not more than 0.1 Gm. per 30 seconds. As in the case of arsphenamine, three to six injections at weekly intervals are generally given.

Solutions of neoarsphenamine are considerably easier to prepare and administer than those of arsphenamine. It causes fewer gastrointestinal reactions, is less irritant when accidentally injected into tissues, and does not thrombose veins. Its chief disadvantage is its instability. The ampules must be kept in the dark and on ice, if possible, and must not be over six months old.

Sulfarsphenamine

Sulfarsphenamine is disodium 3,3′-diamino-4,4′ dihydroxyarsenobenzene N-dimethylenesulfonate, a formaldehyde sulfoxylate derivative of arsphenamine containing 19 per cent of trivalent arsenic. It is administered intramuscularly in doses equivalent to 0.010 to 0.025 Gm. per kilogram of body weight. The average single therapeutic dose is 0.6 Gm. for men and 0.4 Gm. for women. The drug is prepared by adding fresh distilled water to the ampule, 0.3 c.c. per 0.1 Gm. of drug. Solution should occur quickly and completely. Solutions should not be permitted to stand more than three or four hours. Here, again, three to six injections at weekly intervals are generally given.

Sulfarsphenamine is the only arsphenamine well tolerated by intramuscular injection. It is most useful in the treatment of infants and children, as well as in some obese patients and others with inaccessible veins. It is stable in solution and in the ampule. Immediate reactions are less common than with the other arsenicals, but the incidence of serious late reactions in adults is so high that sulfarsphenamine should not be employed if it is possible to use one of the other arsenicals intravenously. Fortunately, infants appear to be less susceptible to the untoward effects of the drug, and for them it is probably the drug of choice at present.

Mapharsen (Mapharside)

Mapharsen (Arsenoxide) is 3-amino-4-hydroxyphenylarsinoxide hydrochloride, representing a partial oxidation product of arsphenamine. It contains 29 per cent of trivalent arsenic. It is administered intravenously in doses equivaent to 0.0010 Gm. per kilogram of body weight, which is one-tenth that of arsphenamine. The average single therapeutic dose is 0.06 Gm. for men and 0.04 Gm. for women. The drug is prepared by dissolving the powder in fresh, sterile, distilled water, using 2 to 3 c.c. per 0.01 Gm. of drug. Solution occurs quickly with effervescence. Stirring to insure solution is permissible and deirable. Aeration and exposure for hours does not increase the toxicity or decrease the therapeutic value of the solution. A brown color may appear fter prolonged standing, but this is of no importance. Injection is made rapidly by syringe, giving the entire dose within fifteen to thirty seconds. This essens pain in the arm and decreases the possibility of thrombosis from vascular irritation. Three to six injections at weekly intervals are usually given.

Mapharsen has a number of advantages over the arsphenamines. It is asy to administer, requiring no special precautions in preparation. It can be given by syringe and can be injected rapidly as soon as the solution is made. Large amounts of solution may be prepared for mass treatment in the clinic because the solution keeps for hours. It is a pure chemical substance which is uniform in constitution and can be chemically as well as biologically standardized. The dose of Mapharsen is much smaller than that for arsphenamines o that less arsenic need be handled by the body. Gastrointestinal upsets, dermatitides, and visceral reactions are less frequent. Nitritoid reactions do not occur. Excretion appears to be more rapid than that of the arsphenamines o that Mapharsen can be given twice weekly for two or three weeks.

Acetarsone (Stovarsol)

Acetarsone (Stovarsol) is acetylamino-hydroxyphenylarsonic acid. It is a synthetic pentavalent arsenical which may be administered by mouth. The drug is supplied in tablets containing 0.05, 0.25, and 0.1 Gm. The dose for adults is 0.25 Gm. three times daily for seven days. After a week's rest the course of treatment is repeated. Its chief advantage is that it can be given orally, but this is outweighed by its toxicity and the poor results obtained with it. The full course of treatment with acetarsone may be more expensive than that of neoarsphenamine or Mapharsen.

Bismuth

Bismuth is available in a confusing number of preparations. The metallic bismuth content of these varies, so that it is necessary to acquaint oneself with the preparation being used. Some of those commonly used are as follows:

a. **Bismuth subsalicylate** is an insoluble preparation made up of a 10 per cent suspension of basic bismuth salicylate in olive or peanut oil. It contains 0.057 Gm. of metallic bismuth per cubic centimeter of drug solution. Three to six intramuscular injections of 1 or 2 c.c. (0.1 or 0.2 Gm.) at weekly intervals are recommended.

b. **Potassium bismuth tartrate** is another insoluble preparation made up of a 10 per cent suspension of basic bismuth potassium bismuthotartrate in peanut oil with 0.4 per cent of butyn. The dosage is the same as that of bismuth subsalicylate.

c. **Bismosol** is a soluble preparation of potassium sodium bismuthotartrate in 10 per cent glucose solution. It contains 0.035 Gm. of metallic bismuth per cubic centimeter of solution. It is administered intramuscularly twice or three times weekly for two or three weeks in doses of 1 c.c. (0.1 Gm.) each.

d. **Thio-bismol** is another soluble preparation of sodium bismuth thioglycollate; 0.2 Gm. is dissolved in 1 c.c. of distilled water. It contains 0.076 Gm. of metallic bismuth per cubic centimeter of solution. The dosage is the same as that of bismosol.

Toxic effects occur rarely if an acceptable bismuth compound is given properly by the intramuscular route. Injection of 1 c.c. of air into the muscle before withdrawing the needle and routine massage are two ways of decreasing the discomfort attending treatment. Large numbers of injections of insoluble bismuth have been given with no untoward local effect. Sterile abscesses and sclerosing myositis are seen infrequently. The accidental injection of bismuth into a vein may cause oil embolism of the lungs which may be fatal. Arterial embolism results in painful induration of the buttock. The insertion of the needle before syringe is attached and retraction of the plunger for several seconds to see whether blood can be aspirated are precautions to be taken in order to prevent accidents.

Certain systemic reactions may occur following the administration of bismuth. Pigmentation of the gum margins and buccal mucosa is frequently seen after six or more injections. . It persists for years but has no serious significance. Ulcerative stomatitis calls for immediate cessation of bismuth therapy. Jaundice, nephritis, and dermatitis are uncommon. At times, gastro-intestinal disturbances, malaise, fever, headache, and pains in the joints and bones develop after each injection and may be serious enough to necessitate cessation of the drug.

The insoluble bismuth preparations appear to hold preference over the soluble preparations in the treatment of framboesia. Bismuth is easier and more economical to administer than the arsphenamines and is safer for aged and weak patients. It may be used to advantage in combination with the arsphenamines or Mapharsen.

Penicillin

Penicillin is the most recent addition to the specific therapy of framboesia. It may be administered intravenously or intramuscularly. The dosage has not been definitely established, but it seems likely that it should approach that employed at present for syphilis; namely, 2,400,000 Oxford Units or more. However, there are reports in the literature of the use of as little as 10,000 U. Dwinelle, Rein, Sternberg, and Sheldon (1946) treated 500 patients in Haiti with total doses of 1,200,000 Oxford Units for adults. The patients were divided into three approximately equal groups. One group was hospitalized and each patient, regardless of age, was given thirty intramuscular injections of 40,000 Oxford Units of penicillin sodium in aqueous solution every three hours, day and night. The second group was treated on a two-day ambulatory basis in a clinic. Each adult patient received two injections of 600,000 Oxford Units of penicillin calcium in peanut oil with 4.8 per cent beeswax by weight (300,000 U. per cubic centimeter), twenty-four hours apart. The dosage in this and the subsequent group was graded down for children; those 6 to 12 years of age received a total of 600,000 Oxford Units, and those 13 to 16 years received a total of 900,000 U. The last group was treated on a one-day ambulatory basis, the adults receiving two injections of 600,000 Oxford Units of penicillin calcium in peanut oil with beeswax ten to twelve hours apart. No severe toxic reactions were encountered. Approximately one-half of the hospitalized patients were observed to have a rise in temperature of 100° to 104° F. two to eight hours after treatment was started. All temperatures gradually returned to normal in ten to twelve hours.

The response of framboesia lesions to regular arsphenamine, Mapharsen, bismuth, or penicillin therapy is rapid and remarkable. Healing of most primary and secondary skin lesions is usually complete within a week, unless extensive secondary bacterial infection is present. Bone lesions heal readily if treated early. "Crab" lesions and tertiary stage ulcers respond slowly to treatment. Gangosa and goundou may be arrested only temporarily, showing little or no improvement.

Infectious relapsing lesions occur more frequently during the first year following treatment than in the second year. Chambers (1938) reported that the percentage of relapses of cases receiving four or more treatments was less than of cases receiving three or less, whether treatment was with neoarsphenamine or with bismuth salicylate. Figures for the incidence of relapses after Mapharsen therapy are not available at present. A large number of patients have been treated with Mapharsen in Haiti with excellent clinical results. Dwinelle, Rein, Sternberg, and Sheldon (1946) reported a relapse rate of less than 1 per cent within six months after treatment with penicillin.

With regard to the effect of treatment on the blood, only a few extensive studies have been reported. Goodpasture and de Leon (1923) found that the Wassermann test which was strongly positive before treatment gradually weakened and became negative in seven cases within six months after treatment. Chambers saw reduction of seropositivity. Dwinelle, Rein, Sternberg, and Sheldon reported that approximately 98 per cent of the patients who had received 1,200,000 units of penicillin in aqueous solution over a four-day period showed definite evidence of reduction in Kahn titer three months after treatment.

PROPHYLAXIS AND CONTROL

The avoidance of direct and indirect contact with an infectious case of framboesia is an obvious preventive measure. Isolation and treatment of such cases should be carried out, if possible. Infected children should not be allowed to attend school. When feasible, the lesions should be covered with a clean dressing. The wearing of shoes, stockings, and trousers will prevent trauma of the skin of the extremities. Cuts or abrasions may be treated locally with mercury ointment. The liberal use of soap and water is an important prophylactic weapon, but this is usually beyond the economic and physical means of natives in highly endemic countries. Mass treatments regularly and continuously in these areas appear to be the only approach to control. To be successful, adequate organization, health education, sufficient funds, and trained personnel are needed. The development of a satisfactory one-treatment drug would be a valuable contribution. Penicillin in oil-beeswax or a similar preparation holds promise in this respect.

References

Araujo, O. da Silva: 1928. Le Pian au Bresil, Bull. Soc. path. exot. **21**: 387-400.

Ash, J. E., and Spitz, Sophie: 1945. Pathology of Tropical Diseases. An Atlas, Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Co.

Bolaños, E. P., and Selva, M. L.: 1934. Quoted from article on Prevalence of Yaws in Latin America in Bull. Pan Am. San. Bur. **24**: 551-559, 1945.

Brosius, O. T.: 1930. Quoted from article on Prevalence of Yaws in Latin America in Bull. Pan Am. San. Bur. **24**: 551-559, 1945.

Castellani, A.: 1905. On the Presence of Spirochaetes in Two Cases of Ulcerative Paranghi (Yaws), Brit. M. J. **2**: 1280.

Castellani, A.: 1907. Experimental Investigations on Framboesia Tropica (Yaws), J. Hyg. **7**: 558-569.

Chambers, H. D.: Yaws (Framboesia Tropica), London, J. & A. Churchill, Ltd.

Charlouis, M.: 1881. On Polypapilloma Tropicum (Framboesia), Vierteljähr Ztsch. f. Derm. u. Syph. **8**: 431 (Translated and reprinted in Selected Essays and Monographs, The New Syndenham Society, London, 1897).

Choisser, R. M.: 1929. Pathology in the Tropics: A Study Based on the Review of 700 Consecutive Autopsies in Haiti, U. S. Nav. M. Bull. **27**: 551-568.

Duvalier, F.: 1945. Contribution à l'Etude du Pian en Haiti. L'Aspect Médico-Social et l'Oeuvre de la Mission Sanitaire Américaine, Union Méd. du Canada **74**: 781-798.

Dwinelle, J. H., Rein, C. R., Sternberg, T. S., and Sheldon, A. J.: 1946. Preliminary Report on the Evaluation of Penicillin in the Treatment of Yaws, Am. J. Trop. Med. In press.

Fox, H.: 1943. Yaws, Cutaneous Leishmaniasis and Pinta, J. A. M. A. **123**: 459-462.

Goodpasture, E. W.: 1923. The Histology of Healing Yaws, Philippine J. Sc. **22**: 263-281.

Goodpasture, E. W., and de Leon, W.: 1923. The Effect of Treatment on the Wassermann Reaction in Yaws, Philippine J. Sc. **22**: 221-231.

Gotay, J. B., Costa Mandry, O., and Payne, G. C.: 1935. Intensive Methods of Control Applied to Yaws; Preliminary Report, Puerto Rico J. Pub. Health & Trop. Med. **11**: 91-101.

Guerra, A. G.: 1941. El Pian en el Litoral Pacifico Colombiano; Como Debe Orientarse su Campana, Bol. Ofic. san. panam. **20**: 895-896.

Hunt, D., and Johnson, A. J.: 1923. Yaws, a Study Based on Over 2,000 Cases Treated in American Samoa, U. S. Nav. M. Bull. **18**: 599-607.

Kumm, H. W.: 1935. Natural Infection of *Hippelates Pallipes* Loew With Spirochaetes of Yaws, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **29**: 265-272.

Lacayo, M.: 1935. Quoted from article on Prevalence of Yaws in Latin America in Bull. Pan. Am. San. Bur. **24**: 551-559, 1945.

Le Fèvre, I. D., McDermott, K. F., and Venner, R. B.: 1944. Yaws Survey on Nanumea Atoll, U. S. Nav. M. Bull. **43**: 739-741.

Llorente, M., Paz, O., and Lince, U.: 1936. Quoted from article on Prevalence of Yaws in Latin America in Bull. Pan. Am. San. Bur. **24**: 551-559, 1945.

Lofgren, R.: 1944. Yaws Treated With Penicillin; Report of Case, U. S. Nav. M. Bull. **43**: 1025-1030.

Lopez-Rizal, L., and Sellards, A. W.: 1926. Clinical Modification of Yaws Observed in Patients Living in Mountainous Districts, Philippine J. Sc. **30**: 497-505.

Lugo, S. A.: 1942. Quoted from article on Prevalence of Yaws in Latin America in Bull. Pan Am. San. Bur. **24**: 551-559, 1945.

McKinley, Earl B.: 1935. A Geography of Disease, Am. J. Trop. Med. (supp.) **15**: 3-489.

Moss, W. L., and Bigelow, G. H.: 1922. Yaws; an Analysis of 1046 Cases in the Dominician Republic, Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp. **33**: 43-55.

Pardo-Castelló, V.: 1939. Yaws. Five Hundred Cases Observed in Cuba, Arch. Dermat. & Syph. **40**: 762-773.

Pearce, L., and Brown, W.: 1925. Distinctive Characteristics of Infections Produced by *Treponema Pertenue* in Rabbits, J. Exper. Med. **41**: 673-690.

Powell, A.: 1923. Framboesia; History of Its Introduction Into India, With Personal Observation of Over 2,000 Initial Lesions, Proc. Roy. Soc. Med. **16**: 15-42.

Rifkin, H.: 1945. Yaws in a White Soldier, Bull. U. S. Army M. Dept. (No. 86), pp. 81-83.

Saunders, G. M., Kumm, H. W., and Rerrie, J. I.: 1936. The Relationship of Certain Environmental Factors to the Distribution of Yaws in Jamaica, Am. J. Hyg. **23**: 558-579.

Schöbl, O.: 1930. Duration of Antitreponematous Immunity With Regard to Syphilis in Philippine Monkeys, Philippine J. Sc. **43**: 595-598.

Schöbl, O., and Miyao, I.: 1929. Immunologic Relation Between Yaws and Syphilis, Philippine J. Sc. **40**: 91-109.

Stannus, H. S.: 1935. More Recent Views on Climatic Bubo and Some Allied Conditions, J. Trop. Med. **37**: 355-357.

Strong, R. P.: 1910. The Specific Cure of Yaws With Dioxydiamido-arsenobenzol, Philippine J. Sc. **5**: 433-451.

Turner, T. B.: 1936. The Resistance of Yaws and Syphilis Patients to Re-Inoculation With Yaws Spirochaetes, Am. J. Hyg. **23**: 431-448.

Turner, T. B.: 1937. Studies on the Relationship Between Yaws and Syphilis, Am. J. Hyg. **25**: 477-506.

Turner, T. B., and Chesney, A. M.: 1934. Experimental Yaws; Comparison of Infection With Experimental Syphilis, Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp. **54**: 174-185.

Turner, T. B., and Saunders, G. M.: 1935. Yaws in Jamaica. An Epidemiological Study of Two Rural Communities, Am. J. Hyg. **21**: 483-521.

Uscategui, S.: 1930. Quoted from article on Prevalence of Yaws in Latin America in Bull. Pan Am. San. Bur. **24**: 551-559, 1945.

Vegas, M., Lovera, I., Itriago, P. Miguel, and Medina, R.: 1943. La Campana Contra la Buba en Venezuela, Rev. san. y asist. social **8**: 1015-1061.

Villagómez Falconi, J. A.: 1932. Quoted from article on Prevalence of Yaws in Latin America in Bull. Pan Am. San. Bur. **24**: 551-559, 1945.

Wilson, P. W.: 1934a. Atypical Yaws, Am. J. Trop. Med. **14**: 1-25.

Wilson, P. W.: 1934b. Incidence of Yaws and Syphilis in Five Rural Villages, Republic of Panama, U. S. Nav. M. Bull. **32**: 391-401.

Wilson, P. W., and Mathis, M. S.: 1930. Epidemiology and Pathology of Yaws; Report Based on Study of 1,423 Consecutive Cases in Haiti, J. A. M. A. **94**: 1289-1292.

CHAPTER 17

THE VIRUSES AND VIRUS DISEASES OF MAN—GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

S. Edward Sulkin

The study of viruses has grown during the last thirty years from an obscure and little known subject into an important branch of medical science. Although viruses have been known to exist for more than half a century, their small size has precluded truly scientific study until recent years when viruses and the diseases due to them have been studied extensively. When viruses first became known, a tendency arose to assign viral etiology to any disease the causal agent of which was in question, but during the past two decades the subject has developed precision and the list of known virus diseases has begun to be differentiated. Advances have been so rapid and contributions to our knowledge so varied and numerous that only the major discoveries can be considered in this discussion.

The virus diseases, which are encountered in practically all specialties within the field of medicine, vary in their clinical and epidemiologic manifestations in the same manner as bacterial infections. Certain viruses cause disease of the central nervous system, others affect the eye, while still others may produce cutaneous lesions. The respiratory diseases caused by viruses are among the most common ailments, and numerous tropical diseases fall within this category.

THE NATURE OF VIRUSES

Much of the information concerning the nature of viruses has been obtained through the use of high speed analytical centrifuges, by x-ray analysis, by filtration through graded collodion membranes, and through the use of electron microscopy. Measurements of the tobacco mosaic virus have been made possible through the discovery of a method of separating the virus in purified and crystalline form. The tobacco mosaic virus has now been studied extensively and provides a standard scale of size by which all viruses are measured. The particle size of many of the large viruses, such as those of psittacosis and trachoma, has been determined by direct visual observation, while those too small to be resolved with ordinary light have been measured by photography with ultraviolet light or with the electron microscope. The molecules of tobacco mosaic virus, as revealed by the electron microscope, appear as pencil-like structures, while those of the virus of equine encephalomyelitis seem to be circular in shape and uniform in size. Electron microscope studies of the elementary bodies of the vaccinia virus reveal rectangular particles of uniform size in which can be seen areas of concentration somewhat darker than the surrounding material.

Many of the early workers regarded viruses as minute microbes which simply could not be resolved by means of ordinary light. These agents possess the ability to multiply when introduced into living cells. In fact, there is direct microscopic evidence that at least some of the larger viruses (e.g., elementary bodies of vaccinia) multiply by binary fission just as do bacteria. The ability to proliferate and become adapted to changes in environmental conditions is a property of the living organism distinguishing it from inanimate matter. For this reason, Green (1935) suggested that viruses might be regarded as bacteria which have lost certain enzyme systems, and, being obligate parasites, are dependent on the metabolism of the host cell for specialized functions other than reproduction. Some workers, on the other hand, have suggested that they might be nonliving autocatalytic enzyme-like agents since they cannot be cultivated apart from living cells. Supporting this view was the report by Stanley (1935) of the successful isolation of a crystalline protein possessing the properties of the tobacco mosaic virus. No conclusion can as yet be drawn regarding the true nature of the viruses, though the observations of Stanley have given new impetus to this field of investigation.

Certain species of microorganisms (e.g., Salmonella group) have been found to contain seven or eight separate antigens which make up the antigenic mosaic of the cell. A similar situation obtains with many viruses, and the antigenic complexity may be indicated by the antibodies produced. In many instances, one type of antibody is elicited by the virus and the other is produced by the soluble antigen which is separable from the virus. The virus apparently gives rise to the so-called neutralizing antibodies, while the soluble antigens produce antibodies which can be demonstrated by the classical precipitation, agglutination, or complement fixation tests. Not long ago, Smadel, Ward, and Rivers (1940) found that the soluble antigen of infectious myxoma of rabbits contained two immunologically distinct components which could be separated by certain physical methods. Vaccinia virus has been shown to have at least five antibodies demonstrable in animals which recover from infection with this agent (Smadel and Hoagland, 1942). Other viruses appear to be more simple; for example, in poliomyelitis the only humoral antibody which can be demonstrated is one which neutralizes the virus; and tobacco mosaic and rabbit papilloma produce complement-fixing and neutralizing antibodies which react with a single antigen.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Much information has been accumulating concerning our understanding of the mode of transmission of certain diseases of viral origin. But the problem is far from solved at this time. For example, the true epidemiology of poliomyelitis is not yet clearly understood. It appears certain that many factors involving environmental temperature, presence of insects, and possibility of an extrahuman reservoir of the virus must be considered. For many years it was thought that poliomyelitis was a contact disease spread by droplet infection, the virus reaching the central nervous system from the nasal mucosa by traveling along the olfactory nerve. Recent studies of the pathogenesis and pathology of poliomyelitis, however, would indicate that portals of entry other than the nasopharynx exist in the human disease. Lesions in the olfactory bulbs, which occur when the disease is produced experimentally in the monkey by instilling the virus into the nose, are uncommon in human poliomyelitis. Evidence suggests that the alimentary tract is the usual portal of entry of the virus. Supporting this view are the observations concerning the persistence of virus in stools of convalescents, presence of virus in stools of healthy contacts, and spread of the disease by healthy carriers and by flies. Whatever the portal of entry, virus may be recovered from the intestinal tract more easily than from the nasopharynx.

Numerous studies have been undertaken to determine the mode of transmission of the virus encephalitides. Several investigators suggested the possibility of mosquito transmission in St. Louis encephalitis, and the experimental transmission of the Western equine virus with *Aëdes aegypti* (Kelser, 1933) indicated a similar mode of spread in equine encephalomyelitis. Studies conducted at the Hooper Foundation of the University of California (Hammon and Reeves, 1945; Howitt and van Herick, 1942) have shown that both of these viruses are endemic in certain areas and that the sera of many mammals and birds contain neutralizing antibodies to these viruses. Hammon et al. (1942) isolated several strains of the St. Louis virus and the Western equine virus from a single species of mosquito (*Culex tarsalis* Coquillet)and found that this mosquito was capable of transmitting these viruses under experimental conditions (Hammon et al., 1942a). Other species of mosquitoes have subsequently been added to the list of possible vectors (Hammon, Reeves, and Gray, 1943). It is possible that arthropods other than the mosquito might be capable of transmitting these diseases. Supporting this idea is the observation by Blattner and Heys (1943), that experimentally infected dog ticks *(Dermacentor variabilis* Say) are capable of transmitting the disease. Smith, Blattner, and Heys (1944) also reported isolation of St. Louis encephalitis virus from chicken mites *(Dermanyssus gallinae)* and showed that mites infected in nature retained the virus after five months of propagation in the laboratory. Congenital transfer of the virus from the adult female through the egg into the first stage nymph could be affected (Smith, Blattner, and Heys, 1945).

In 1948 Smith et al. presented a concept of the epidemiology of St. Louis encephalitis based on well-documented experimental evidence. They suggest that two blood-sucking vectors may be involved: one, an arachnid, the mite, which maintains the virus in nature by transovarian passage; the other, an insect, the mosquito, which carries the virus from birds to other vertebrates, including man. Because of the similarity in the natural history of equine encephalomyelitis to that of St. Louis encephalitis, it is likely that the same factors might be involved in the epidemiology of equine encephalomyelitis. This concept is supported by the fact that the Western equine virus was isolated from chicken mites, *Dermanyssus gallinae,* in nature by the author during the course of an outbreak in horses (Sulkin, 1945).* Also, this virus has been recovered from bird mites by Reeves et al. (1947), Hammon et al. (1948), and by Sulkin and Izumi (1945). Laboratory transmission experiments with the view of demonstrating transovarian infection in mites are now in progress in this laboratory. Evidence is also conclusive that reservoirs of the equine virus exist in wild and domestic animals, including birds. For a review of recent advances in the epidemiology of the arthropod-borne virus encephalitides the reader is referred to the excellent article by Hammon (1948).

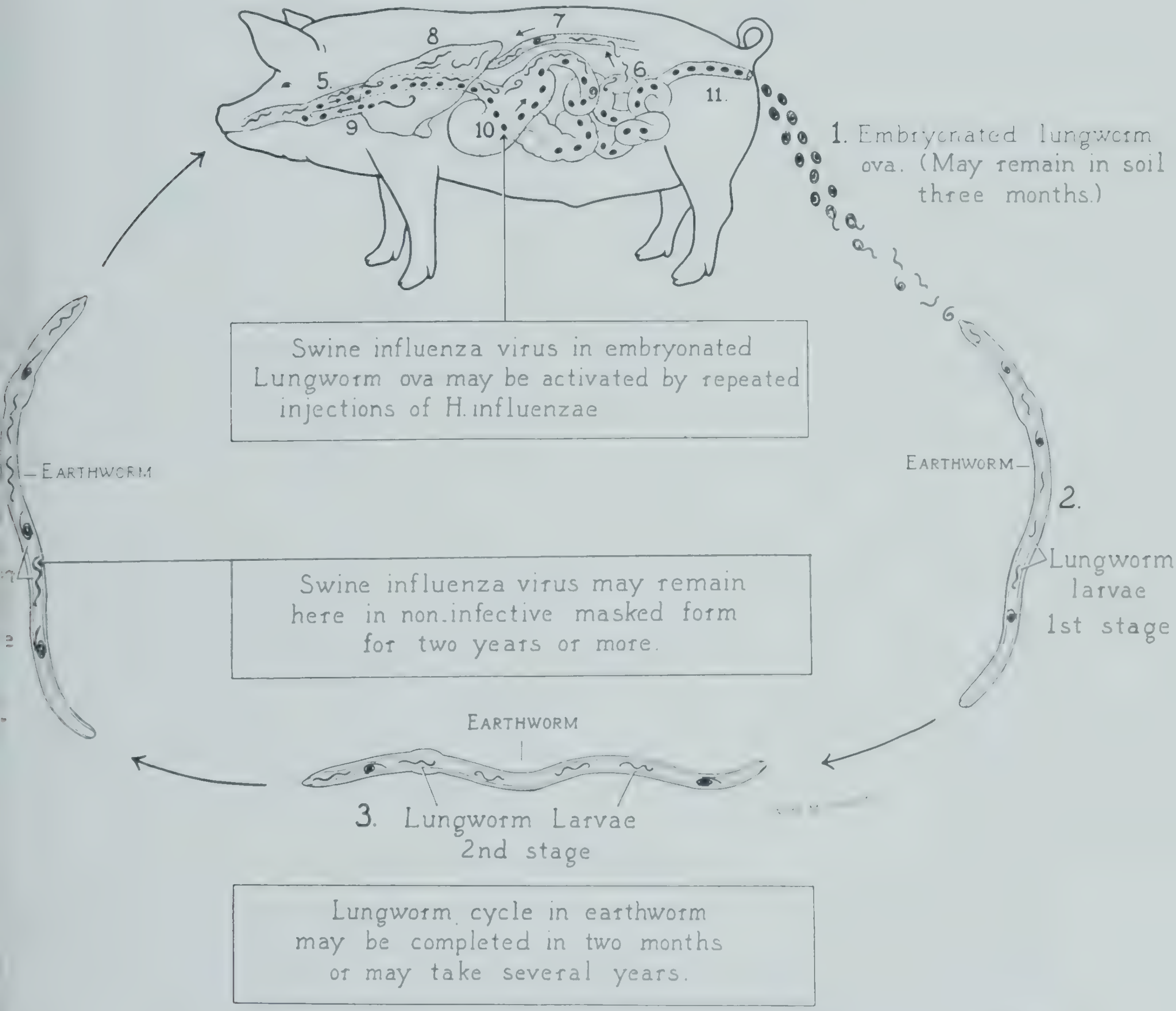

8
7
5.
6
11.
9
10
1. Embryonated lungworm ova. (May remain in soil three months.)
Swine influenza virus in embryonated Lungworm ova may be activated by repeated injections of H. influenzae
EARTHWORM
EARTHWORM
2. Lungworm larvae 1st stage
Swine influenza virus may remain here in non-infective masked form for two years or more.
EARTHWORM
3. Lungworm Larvae 2nd stage
Lungworm cycle in earthworm may be completed in two months or may take several years.

Fig. 132.—The swine lungworm as a reservoir and intermediate host for swine influenza virus (Shope).

Embryonated eggs, which are laid by the adult female lungworm in the bronchi of the swine, are coughed up, swallowed, and then elimated in the feces, *1*. Upon ingestion by earthworms, the lungworm eggs pass through developmental cycles, *2*, *3*, until the third larval stage, *4*, is reached. The earthworm harboring the infective lungworm larvae is then eaten by a pig, *5*, and finally reaches the swine respiratory tract by way of the blood stream and lymphatics, *6*, *7*, *8*, where the larvae become adults. The embryonated lungworm eggs which are laid in the bronchi of the swine are again coughed up, *9*, swallowed, *10*, and eliminated in the feces, *11*, thus completing the cycle.

(From Sulkin: Texas State Journal of Medicine, **40**: 240, 1944, by permission of the publisher.)

---

*Since this manuscript was submitted for publication, Howitt and her associates (1948) reported isolation of the virus of Eastern equine encephalomyelitis from chicken mites (***Dermanyssus gallinae***) and chicken lice (***Eomenacanthus stramineus***).

The epidemiology of many of the other virus diseases is equally perplexing. One of the greatest mysteries of epidemiology is what happens to a virus between epidemics and what causes it to reappear from its quiescent state. An important step toward the solution of this problem was made by Shope (1943) when he noted that swine lungworms (*Metastrongylus elongatus* and *Choerostrongylus pudendotectus*), nematodes parasitic in the bronchioles of the lungs of swine, were capable of harboring swine influenza virus and of transmitting it from animal to animal. Complicating this apparently simple mode of transmission is the fact that the lungworm has an intermediate host of its own. Fig. 132 indicates diagrammatically the life cycle of the swine lungworm and represents the author's interpretation of Shope's studies concerning the swine lungworm as a reservoir and intermediate host for swine influenza virus. The virus apparently persists in the lungworm in a noninfective form from which it can be provoked into activity by appropriate stimuli (intramuscular injections of *Hemophilus influenzae suis*). The fact that noninfective virus is able to survive for at least two years in the lungworm larvae in the earthworm and, in addition, for several months in the swine respiratory tract would explain survival of the virus between epidemics. Furthermore, Shope (1943) observed that transmission of swine influenza virus by lungworms takes place only if experiments are conducted during the fall and winter months, which fits well with the seasonal incidence of swine influenza. What causes fully active swine influenza virus to become noninfective when taken up by the lungworm and to resume its infectivity when it again finds itself within a susceptible host is still unknown. These observations, probably the most important in the field of virology in recent years, suggest that a similar cycle might operate in many virus diseases of the human being. In recent studies Syverton et al. (1947) showed that the parasitic nematode *Trichinella spiralis* can serve as a vehicle for the experimental transmission of lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus from one host to the next. These observations may have practical implication in the epidemiology of human lymphocytic choriomeningitis.

DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis of certain diseases of viral origin may be confused by their frequent association with other infectious processes of similar clinical manifestations. For example, influenza during the acute phase may be accompanied by infectious "colds" and later may be complicated by pneumonia or central nervous system involvement. Also, encephalitis may complicate such diseases as smallpox, measles, mumps, chicken pox, and whooping cough. The study of virus diseases is rendered more difficult by the interrelationship of these maladies with other infections, both bacterial and viral. In recent years correlated clinical, laboratory, and epidemiologic studies have permitted investigators to dissociate certain virus diseases which present similar clinical manifestations and to establish well-defined criteria for determining their identity.

The procedures followed in the laboratory diagnosis of diseases caused by viruses are analogous to those used in bacterial infections. Conclusive evidence consists in the demonstration and identification of the virus. This may be accomplished in some of the virus diseases by using susceptible laboratory animals or chick embryos instead of the ordinary culture media used for the isolation of bacteria. Once the virus is recovered, identification is accomplished by determination of the animals for which it is pathogenic, routes by which it can be injected, tissues it infects, lesions produced, and through the use of the classical immunologic reactions; i.e., neutralization, complement fixation, agglutination, or precipitation reactions. The most conclusive evidence is available when virus has been recovered from a patient and an increase in neutralizing or complement-fixing antibodies demonstrated in the convalescent serum of the same individual; nevertheless, laboratory studies have indicated that serologic procedures alone are valuable even in the absence of virus recovery. When it is not feasible to attempt recovery of virus from tissues, immunologic tests should be carried out using the blood serum obtained during the early stages of the disease and again after recovery of the patient. The presence of specific antibodies is of particular significance if blood specimens taken during the acute phase are negative and become positive with convalescence of the individual.

The clinical syndrome produced by some viruses is quite consistent, permitting the physician to make a proper diagnosis without resorting to laboratory aids. Typical of such diseases are measles, chickenpox, and smallpox. Again, some virus diseases cannot be differentiated until an etiologic diagnosis has been made and the causative agent has been identified by means of laboratory procedures. Thus, for example, the clinical, patho-ogic, and epidemiologic manifestations of the neurotropic virus diseases (excluding poliomyelitis and rabies) are so alike that it is practically impossible o establish the identity of a particular disease without the aid of laboratory studies. The "infectious encephalitides," embracing a number of distinct diseases of the central nervous system, must be identified etiologically if reliable epidemiologic data are to be obtained and if this group of diseases is to be properly classified. Knowledge concerning the "virus encephalitides" would be greatly enhanced if physicians made an earnest effort to secure laboratory aid for the identification of the causative virus.

Much work has been done in recent years to simplify laboratory procedures, and attention has been directed toward the use of the complement fixation test for the diagnosis of the human virus encephalitides. The test described by Casals and Palacios (1941) and by Havens et al. (1943) is sufficiently specific o differentiate the various experimental infections caused by the neurotropic viruses. This test has already yielded encouraging results when used in the diagnosis of human infections induced by some of these viruses (Casals, 1947; Sulkin and Izumi, 1945). Because of the dangers inherent in the use of virulent antigens in these tests, attempts have been made to inactivate them without altering the efficacy of the material (Sulkin and Pike, 1949). Avirulent antigens have been prepared by means of ultraviolet light irradiation and such antigens can be lyophilized and kept for long periods of time. Only recently, Casals (1945) described a simple method for producing avirulent mouse brain antigen for complement fixation tests by the application of heat at 60° C. for thirty minutes. The heated antigens retained a sufficiently high titer to warrant their use.

Because of the increased interest in the development of complement-fixing antigens derived from chick embryo and mouse brain tissues, Cox (1948) and associates undertook development of antigens free from nonspecific factors. They found that such antigens for a variety of neurotropic viruses could be prepared without appreciable loss in antigenicity by extraction in the desiccated state with benzene. Such antigens are rapidly becoming available commercially. In addition to its use with the virus encephalitides, the complement fixation test has been found to be of practical value in the diagnosis of a number of other diseases of viral etiology, including influenza, lymphogranuloma venereum, yellow fever, and mumps. The test appears to be of particular value in the diagnosis of those cases of acute aseptic meningoencephalitis in which previous involvement of the salivary glands was inapparent (Kane and Enders, 1945).

Other developments in the field of virology have simplified procedures used in the diagnosis of this group of diseases. For example, the necessity for using bacteriologically sterile material in virus study has been largely overcome by the use of ether, Zephiran, the antibiotics, and sulfonamide compounds to rid specimens of bacterial contaminants. The use of bactericidal agents obviates the need for filtration which is frequently unsatisfactory because the viral agent may itself be retained along with the undesirable bacteria. A number of reports have appeared in the literature concerning the usefulness of these bactericidal agents. Ether may be used to destroy bacterial contaminants without affecting the poliomyelitis, rabies, or measles viruses. Zephiran has been found satisfactory for the isolation of the influenza virus from throat washings. With a few possible exceptions, the growth of viruses in living hosts appears to be unaffected in the presence of a wide variety of antibiotics. Reference has been made to the isolation of the herpes virus by primary inoculation of unfiltered sputums treated with penicillin (Rose et al., 1945). The isolation of the mumps virus directly from human saliva by inoculation with penicillin into the amniotic cavity has also been reported (Beveridge, Lind, and Anderson, 1946). Streptomycin and tyrothrycin were found useful in the isolation of psittacosis virus from fecal material by direct injection into the yolk sac of developing chick embryos (Morgan, 1947a). The sulfonamides, alone and in combination with antibiotics, have proved useful in eliminating bacterial contaminants from specimens examined for various viruses.

The discovery by Hirst (1941), and independently by McClelland and Hare (1941), that influenza virus possesses the capacity to agglutinate erythrocytes provided a valuable new approach to the study of viral agents. The so-called hemagglutination test is now widely used in the diagnosis of epidemic influenza, and the antigenic pattern of strains of influenza isolated during different epidemics has been compared by means of this technic. It is now known that other agents, including those of vaccinia, variola, fowlpox, Newcastle disease, ectromelia of mice, mumps, pneumonia virus of mice, and pleuropneumonia-like organisms, cause specific agglutination of erythrocytes. With all of these agents the agglutination of erythrocytes may be inhibited by the addition of specific immune serum; for this reason the reaction has already been widely applied to various aspects of virus research. Recently, two strains of mumps virus have been isolated directly from human penicillin-treated saliva by inoculation into the amniotic cavity of the chick embryo, and hemagglutinin was detected after three to four days' incubation (Beveridge, Lind, and Anderson, 1946). It has been suggested that the hemagglutination test with this virus may provide a more rapid and convenient diagnostic method for detecting increases in antibody concentration than other serologic procedures.

Skin sensitivity tests are being developed which may prove valuable in the diagnosis of viral diseases. A cutaneous sensitivity test is of particular value under circumstances where facilities for examining serum for specific antibodies are not readily available. Such tests have been described for vaccinia and lymphogranuloma venereum, but the latter is the only viral disease in which a skin test, the Frei intradermal test, is now widely employed as a diagnostic aid. With improved methods for growing viruses in high titer, there is reason to believe that intradermal reactions will be employed with increasing frequency. In recent years a number of other intradermal tests with antigens of viral origin have been introduced. Nagler (1944), and more recently Rose and Molloy (1947), reported specific dermal reactions in herpetic persons receiving intracutaneous injection of heat-inactivated herpes virus cultivated in the chick embryo. Since a positive reaction could be correlated with the presence of circulating antibody, this test may eventually be of value in differential diagnosis. Influenza virus produces a cutaneous reaction in most adults and in some children, and it is possible according to Beveridge and Burnet (1944) that allergy to the virus may play a part in resistance to infection. Whether or not this reaction will be useful in determining susceptibility to influenza remains to be seen. A dermal sensitivity test for mumps using parotid glands of infected monkeys as antigen may be of value in the diagnosis of this disease. It has been shown that persons exhibiting erythematous dermal reactions forty-eight hours after inoculation of this material may be, from the practical standpoint, considered resistant to mumps (Enders et al., 1946). Dermal sensitivity tests will undoubtedly be further investigated because of their potential importance as diagnostic procedures.

Recommended laboratory procedures have been summarized by several investigators (Sulkin and Harford, 1943; Sulkin, 1943; Francis et al., 1948; van Rooyen and Rhodes, 1948).

PROPHYLAXIS

Earlier workers believed that artificial immunity could not be induced unless active virus was used in preparing the vaccines. While this may be true in the case of some viruses, it appears that in many cases a considerable amount of protection is afforded by inactive viruses (equine encephalomyelitis, influenza, rabies, and others). To be sure, immunity conferred with inactive agents is of short duration and vaccination should be repeated at frequent intervals.

In recent years efforts have been directed toward the development of prophylactic measures against various diseases through the use of attenuated and inactivated viruses. Epidemic influenza has received special attention. Various vaccines have been given parenterally, while others have been given intranasally. The formalinized complex influenza A-canine distemper vaccine of Horsfall and Lennette (1940) which received extensive clinical trial has been superseded by an influenza type A and B vaccine developed by wartime research. This vaccine, which is now available for civilian use, is effective in providing protection against the type A and B influenza viruses which have been the most prevalent causes of epidemics in recent years (Francis et al., 1947). This vaccine contains influenza virus concentrated from allantoic fluid of developing chick embryos by adsorption on an elution from embryonic erythrocytes. During the winter of 1943-1944 extensive investigations of the prophylactic effect of influenza vaccination were carried out under the auspices of the Commission on Influenza of the Army Epidemiological Board. These studies indicate that subcutaneous vaccination of a human population with the newly described vaccine exerts a definite effect on the susceptibility to influenza A during an epidemic of high incidence (Francis, 1945).

A number of investigators have emphasized that possible untoward reactions may be due to allergenic and anaphylactogenic properties of vaccines prepared from embryonic tissues of developing chicks. It has recently been suggested that intradermal injection of small doses of vaccine may obviate these difficulties. Van Gelder et al. (1947) recently compared the rise in antihemagglutinins following intradermal and subcutaneous inoculation of concentrated vaccine prepared from strains of A and B influenza viruses. The intradermal dose, which was about one-tenth the subcutaneous dose, induced a greater mean antibody response, and the incidence of generalized reactions was lower in the group which received intradermal inoculations. Similar findings were recently reported by Weller et al. (1948). Actually, the prophylactic value of intradermal vaccination has not as yet been demonstrated.

Little attention has been given to the problem of passive immunity because of the transient nature of the protection conferred. Passive immunity can be produced experimentally, however, by intranasal instillation of small amounts of immune serum prior to inoculation with influenza virus. Russian investigators (Smorodintseff et al., 1940) reported startling results following biweekly inhalations of vaporized antiserum given to a large number of individuals before and during an epidemic of influenza A. These observations were subsequently confirmed by Krueger et al. (1944) who investigated the efficacy of this procedure in the prophylaxis and therapy of experimental influenza.

For several years a living neurotropic strain of virus was used in vaccination against yellow fever. Because of the pathogenicity of this virus for the nervous system, vaccination of the human being was accompanied by adequate protecting doses of immune serum. The development of a strain of virus, attenuated by prolonged cultivation in vitro, led to the production of a relatively safe vaccine which does not require the concomitant administration of immune serum. The effectiveness of this vaccine, which has been used extensively since 1937, has been indicated by the demonstration of protective antibodies in vaccinated persons and by the curtailment of epidemics of jungle yellow fever (Bugher and Gast-Galvis, 1944).

The need for an effective type of vaccination of man against the viruses of equine encephalomyelitis became apparent when reports appeared of the occurrence of human infection under natural conditions and laboratory infection resulting from exposure to the virus (Sulkin and Pike, 1949). Beard et al. (1940) vaccinated a group of laboratory workers with a formalin-treated chick embryo vaccine prepared with Eastern and Western strains of equine encephalomyelitis. No instance of infection by these agents has been observed in the vaccinated group. These observations are significant in view of the high incidence of infection among laboratory workers with the Eastern or Western types or with the Venezuelan type of equine encephalomyelitis (Sulkin and Pike, 1949). According to Beard et al. (1941), the immunity induced in man by formalin-treated vaccine is of a temporary nature, requiring revaccination of those continually exposed to infection. Immunity in horses resulting from actual infection is enduring in contrast to the immunity induced by injections of chemically treated vaccine (Cox and Olitsky, 1936).

Not long ago, Sabin (1943) undertook to develop suitable and safe vaccines for protection of human beings against the St. Louis and Japanese B types of epidemic encephalitis. The resulting vaccines, in which the virus has been rendered noninfective by formalin, were capable of conferring protection rapidly, could retain their potency after storage for long periods of time, and produced no ill effects on inoculation in healthy persons. The effectiveness of these vaccines must await further trial under natural conditions (Sabin, 1947; Warren, Smadel, and Rasmussen, 1948).

Poliomyelitis has been intensively investigated in an effort to find a method of active immunization that will be both effective and safe. Inactivated vaccines fail to produce satisfactory protection, while vaccines containing active virus, though possibly effective, may lead to infection. A few years ago two large-scale experiments on active immunization of human beings were terminated because of this danger. In 1945 Milzer et al., using the mouse-adapted Lansing strain of poliomyelitis virus, described a completely inactivated vaccine which confers a high degree of protection against subsequent intracerebral inoculations in mice. Since immunologically distinct strains of poliomyelitis virus are known to exist, these workers suggest that a vaccine for prophylaxis against human poliomyelitis must not only be safe and highly antigenic but should contain several different strains of poliomyelitis virus. Extensive study in animals suggest promising results (Morgan et al., 1947).

Encouraging results with rabies and St. Louis encephalitis viruses were also reported by Levinson et al. (1945) with a vaccine similar to that just described (Milzer et al., 1945). Several lots of rabies vaccine inactivated by this irradiation technic consistently induced a higher degree of immunity in mice than control phenolized vaccine. The irradiated rabies vaccine showed no significant loss of potency after six months' storage at 5° C. Similarly, two lots of St. Louis encephalitis vaccine inactivated by irradiation conferred a high degree of immunity in mice. These reports are of a preliminary nature, and the results cannot be evaluated until more extensive studies are available.*

Sabin and Schlesinger (1945) reported the production of immunity to dengue fever with virus modified by propagation in mice. These investigators observed that beginning with the seventh passage in mice the virus had undergone extensive modification in its pathogenic properties. Human volunteers who were inoculated with the seventh, ninth, or tenth mouse-passage dengue virus, either alone or in combination with yellow fever vaccine, were found to be immune when they were exposed to the bite of *Aëdes aegypti* mosquitoes of proved infectivity. Other volunteers who served as controls developed typically severe unmodified dengue.

TREATMENT

A national approach to research on the treatment of virus infections presents numerous difficulties because of the nature of the virus itself. These agents multiply intracellularly and little is known regarding the mechanism of their pathogenesis. Furthermore, since viruses lack independent enzyme systems, their metabolism must be intimately associated with that of the host cell. Their only attribute of life appears to be their ability to reproduce, and even here the energy of the host cell is necessary. It is not, therefore, surprising that they have proved refractory to the antibiotic, sulfonamide, and other chemotherapeutic agents which have been so effective in combating other agents of disease. On the basis of our present knowledge regarding these simpler forms of life, the most promising method of attack with drugs would be that directed toward the reproductive process. It is probable that the virus, after gaining access to susceptible tissues of the host, stimulates the cell in such a way that it is diverted from its normal function to that of synthesizing the virus complex. Since these synthetic processes are presumed to be catalyzed by enzymes, virus reproduction may be inhibited by the phenomenon of drug-enzyme-substrate competition.

Sulfonamide therapy has proved successful in trachoma, inclusion blennorrhea, and lymphogranuloma venereum, though there is increasing evidence that the causative agents of these diseases do not fall within the category of true viruses. Scattered reports of successful treatment of other virus diseases have appeared, but the observations still require confirmation. Apparently, good results with certain therapeutic agents may be due either to mistaken diagnosis or to the beneficial effects of concomitant therapy. These criticisms apply to certain studies indicating a favorable effect of the sulfonamides in the treatment of trachoma. Favorable experimental results with sulfonamides in the treatment of lymphocytic choriomeningitis have not been consistent; when effective they were dependent upon early administration and more nearly approached prophylaxis than treatment. Sulfonamide therapy has been given extensive trial in patients with primary atypical pneumonia. Neither symptomatic improvement nor alteration in the febrile course was observed with any degree of consistency; many patients were even more uncomfortable when receiving the drugs. Sufficient evidence exists to conclude that the sulfonamide drugs have no direct effect on infections caused by viruses. Secondary infection of the vesicles in smallpox is believed to be responsible for much of the late toxemia in this disease. It has been shown (Leishman, 1944) that the administration of sulfonamides throughout the course of the infection has strikingly diminished the degree of secondary infection and consequently lessens mortality. Penicillin has been observed to have a similar effect (Jeans, Jeffrey, and Gunders, 1944).

---

*Editor's note (O. F.): The Lederle Laboratories have recently developed an avian rabies vaccine which is very promising.

Extensive attempts at serotherapy have likewise been unsuccessful in treatment of virus diseases. The primary difficulty with serotherapy lies in he fact that viruses are intracellularly situated and the immune bodies cannot reach the infectious agent because they are unable to enter the cell. Evidence also indicates that in most virus diseases all cells which are subject to infection have already been invaded by virus by the time symptoms appear. Future success in the treatment of virus diseases with immune bodies will depend to a great extent upon the development of methods for earlier diagnosis. For each intracellular parasite the appropriate time beyond which parenteral injection of antibodies is no longer effective must be determined experimentally. Despite several reports to the contrary, the treatment of virus diseases is of no value after the infection has become established. Convalescent serum, on the other hand, has been employed with success in prophylaxis and in modifying the course of certain diseases, including measles, mumps, and chicken pox. The antibiotics have thus far been found to be almost wholly without beneficial effects in the treatment of virus diseases. Heilman and Herrell (1944) found penicillin to be effective in the treatment of ornithosis, but Kramer et al. (1944) suggested that the action of penicillin was not curative even though the mice remained well for appreciable intervals of time, since the virus could be recovered from the brain and other tissues of uch animals. Evidence is accumulating to indicate that aureomycin, a new antibiotic prepared from *Streptomyces aureofaciens*, and Chloromycetin, may prove of value in the treatment of diseases caused by members of the psittacosis-lymphogranuloma group.

In view of the apparent ineffectiveness of the various antibiotics, antisera, and sulfonamides in the treatment of virus diseases, another approach to the problem is indicated. In the light of our knowledge today, treatment of virus diseases in general is largely a matter for future development.

References

Beard, J. W., Beard, D., and Finkelstein, H.: 1940. Vaccination of Man Against Virus of Equine Encephalomyelitis (Eastern and Western Strains), J. Immunol. **38**: 117.

Beard, D. W., Finkelstein, H., and Beard, J. W.: 1941. Repeated Vaccination of Man Against Virus of Equine Encephalomyelitis, J. Immunol. **40**: 497.

Beveridge, W. I. B., Lind, P. E., and Anderson, S. G.: 1946. Mumps. I. Isolation and Cultivation of the Virus in the Chick Embryo, Australian J. Exper. Biol. & M. Sc. **24**: 15.

Beveridge, W. I. B., and Burnet, F. M.: 1944. A Cutaneous Reaction to the Influenza Viruses, M. J. Australia **1**: 85.

Blattner, R. J., and Heys, F. M.: 1943. Blood-Sucking Vectors of Encephalitis, Experimental Transmission of St. Louis Encephalitis to White Swiss Mice by the American Dog Tick, Dermacentor Variabilis Say, J. Pediat. **23**: 371.

Bugher, J. C., and Gast-Galvis, A.: 1944. The Efficiency of Vaccination in the Prevention of Yellow Fever in Colombia, Am. J. Hyg. **39**: 58.

Casals, J.: 1945. Heated Avirulent Antigens for Complement Fixation Tests With Certain Encephalitis Viruses, Science **102**: 619.

Casals, J.: 1947. Complement Fixation Test for Diagnosis of Human Virus Encephalitides, J. Immunol. **56**: 337.

Casals, J., and Palacios, R.: 1941. Complement Fixation Test in Diagnosis of Virus Infections of Central Nervous System, J. Exp. Med. **74**: 409.

Cox, H. R.: 1948. Specific Complement Fixing Diagnostic Antigens for Viral and Rickettsial Diseases, Am. J. Pub. Health. **38**: 351.

Cox, H. R., and Olitsky, P. K.: 1936. Active Immunization of Guinea Pigs With Virus of Equine Encephalomyelitis; Immunization With Formalized Virus, J. Expér. Med. **63**: 745-765.

Enders, John F., Kane, Lewis W., Maris, Elizabeth, and Stokes, Joseph: 1946. Immunity in Mumps. V. The Correlation of the Presence of Dermal Hypersensitivity and Resistance to Mumps, J. Exper. Med. **84**: 341.

Francis, T., Jr.: 1945. The Development of the 1943 Vaccination Study of the Commission on Influenza, Am. J. Hyg. **42**: 1.

Francis, T., Jr., and others: 1947. The Present Status of Vaccination Against Influenza, Am. J. Pub. Health **37**: 1109.

Francis, T., Jr., and others: 1948. Diagnostic Procedures in Virus and Rickettsial Diseases, American Public Health Association.

Green, R. G.: 1935. On the Nature of Filtrable Viruses, Science **82**: 443.

Hammon, W. M., and Reeves, W. C.: 1945. Recent Advances in the Epidemiology of the Arthropod-Borne Virus Encephalitides, Including Certain Exotic Types, Am. J. Pub. Health **35**: 994.

Hammon, W. M., Reeves, W. C., Brookman, B., and Izumi, E. M.: 1942. Mosquitoes and Encephalitis in Yakima Valley, Washington; Arthropods Tested and Recovery of Western Equine and St. Louis Viruses From Culex Tarsalis Coquillett, J. Infect. Dis. **70**: 263.

Hammon, W. M., Reeves, W. C., Brookman, B., and Gjullin, C. M.: 1942a. Mosquitoes and Encephalitis in Yakima Valley, Washington; Summary of Case Against Culex Tarsalis Coquillett as Vector of St. Louis and Western Equine Viruses, J. Infect. Dis. **70**: 278.

Hammon, W. M., Reeves, W. C., Cunha, R., Espana, C., and Sather, G.: 1948. Isolation From Wild Bird Mites (Liponyssus Sylviarum) of a Virus or Mixture of Viruses From Which St. Louis and Western Equine Encephalitis Viruses Have Been Obtained, Science **107**: 92.

Hammon, W. M., Reeves, W. C., and Gray, M.: 1943. Mosquito Vectors and Inapparent Animal Reservoirs of St. Louis and Western Equine Encephalitis Viruses, Am. J. Pub. Health **33**: 201.

Hammon, W. M.: 1948. The Arthropod-Borne Virus Encephalitides, Am. J. Trop. Med. **28**: 515.

Havens, W. P., Watson, D. W., Green, R. H., Lavin, G. I., and Smadel, J. E.: 1943. Complement Fixation With Neurotropic Viruses, J. Exper. Med. **77**: 139.

Heilman, F. R., and Herrell, W. E.: 1944. Penicillin in Treatment of Experimental Ornithosis, Proc. Staff Meet., Mayo Clin. **19**: 57.

Hirst, G. K.: 1941. The Agglutination of Red Cells by Allantoic Fluid of Chick Embryos Infected With Influenza Virus, Science **94**: 22.

Horsfall, F. L., Jr., and Lennette, E. H.: 1940. Complex Vaccine Effective Against Different Strains of Influenza Virus, Science **91**: 492.

Howitt, B. F., Dodge, H. R., Bishop, L. K., and Gorrie, R. H.: 1948. Virus of Eastern Equine Encephalomyelitis Isolated From Chicken Mites (Dermanyssus Gallinae) and Chicken Lice (Eomenacanthus Stramineus), Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **68**: 622.

Howitt, B. F., and van Herick, W.: 1942. Relationship of St. Louis and Western Equine Encephalitic Viruses to Fowl and Mammals in California, J. Infect. Dis. **71**: 179.

Jeans, W. D., Jeffrey, J. S., and Gunders, K.: 1944. Penicillin and Smallpox, Report of 4 Cases, Lancet **2**: 44.

Kane, L. W., and Enders, J. F.: 1945. Immunity in Mumps. III. Complement-Fixation Tests as an Aid in the Diagnosis of Mumps Meningoencephalitis, J. Exper. Med. **81**: 137.

Kelser, R. A.: 1933. Mosquitoes as Vectors of Equine Encephalomyelitis, J. Am. Vet. M. A. **82**: 767.

Kramer, S. D., Greer, H. A., and Szobel, D. A.: 1944. Chemoprophylactic and Therapeutic Action of Wide Variety of Chemical Compounds on Two Neurotropic Virus Infections in Mice, J. Immunol. **49**: 273.

Krueger, A. P., Personnel of Naval Laboratory Research Unit No. I, and Lyons, W. R.: 1944. The Inhalatory Route for Prophylaxis and Treatment of Experimental Influenza. I. The Distribution of Inhaled Material, Am. J. M. Sc. **207**: 40.

Leishman, A. W. D..: 1944. Outbreak of Smallpox in British Troops, With Note on Use of Sulfathiazole in Treatment, J. Roy. Army M. Corps **82**: 58.

Levinson, S. O., Milzer, A., Shaughnessy, H. J., Neal, J. L., and Oppenheimer, F.: 1945. A New Method for the Production of Potent Inactivated Vaccines With Ultraviolet Irradiation. II. Sterilization of Bacteria and Immunization With Rabies and St. Louis Encephalitis Vaccines, J. Immunol. **50**: 317.

McClelland, L., and Hare, Ronald: 1941. The Adsorption of Influenza Virus by Red Cells and a New in Vitro Method of Measuring Antibodies for Influenza Virus, Canad. Pub. Health J. **32**: 530.

Milzer, A., Oppenheimer, F., and Levinson, S. O.: 1945. A New Method for the Production of Potent Inactivated Vaccines With Ultraviolet Irradiation. III. A Completely Inactivated Poliomyelitis Vaccine With the Lansing Strain in Mice, J. Immunol. **50**: 331.

Morgan, Isabel M., Howitt, A., and Bodian, D.: 1947. The Role of Antibody in Experimental Poliomyelitis. II. Production of Intracerebral Immunity in Monkeys by Vaccination, Am. J. Hyg. **45**: 379.

Morgan, H. R.: 1947a. Use of Chemotherapeutic and Antibiotic Agents in the Isolation of Viruses From Contaminated Sources, J. Clin. Investigation **26**: 1191.

Nagler, F. P. O.: 1944. A Specific Cutaneous Reaction in Persons Infected With the Virus of Herpes Simplex, J. Immunol. **48**: 213.

Reeves, W. C., Hammon, W. McD., Furman, D. P., McClure, H. E., and Brookman, B.: 1947. Recovery of Western Equine Encephalomyelitis Virus From Wild Bird Mites (Liponyssus Sylviarum) in Kern County, California, Science **105**: 411.

Rose, H. M., and Molloy, Eleanora: 1947. Cutaneous Reactions With the Virus of Herpes Simplex, J. Immunol. **56**: 287.

Rose, H. M., Molloy, Eleanora, and O'Neill, Elizabeth: 1945. Effect of Penicillin on Bacterial Contamination of Eggs and Tissue Cultures Inoculated With Unfiltered Sputum, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **60**: 23.

Sabin, A. B.: 1943. St. Louis and Japanese B. Types of Epidemic Encephalitis; Development of Noninfective Vaccines; Report of Basic Data, J. A. M. A. **122**: 477.

Sabin, A. B.: 1947. Epidemic Encephalitis in Military Personnel. Isolation of Japanese B Virus on Okinawa in 1945, Serologic Diagnosis, Clinical Manifestations, Epidemiologic Aspects and Use of Mouse Brain Vaccine, J. A. M. A. **133**: 281.

Sabin, A. B., and Schlesinger, R. W.: 1945. Production of Immunity to Dengue With Virus Modified by Propagation in Mice, Science **101**: 640-642.

Shope, R. E.: 1943. Virus Diseases, Swine Influenza, Ithaca, N. Y., Cornell University Press, p. 85.

Smadel, J. E., Ward, S. M., and Rivers, T. M.: 1940. Infectious Myxomatosis of Rabbits; Demonstration of Second Soluble Antigen Associated With the Disease, J. Exper. Med. **72**: 129.

Smadel, J. E., and Hoagland, C. L.: 1942. Elementary Bodies of Vaccinia, Bact. Rev. **6**: 79.

Smith, M. G., Blattner, R. J., and Heys, F. M.: 1945. Further Isolation of St. Louis Encephalitis Virus; Congenital Transfer of Virus in Chicken Mites (Dermanyssus Gallinae), Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **59**: 136.

Smith, M. G., Blattner, R. J., and Heys, F. M.: 1944. The Isolation of the St. Louis Encephalitis Virus From Chicken Mites (Dermanyssus Gallinae) in Nature, Science **100**: 362.

Smith, M. G., Blattner, R. J., Heys, F. M., and Miller, A.: 1948. Experiments on the Role of the Chicken Mite, Dermanyssus Gallinae, and the Mosquito in the Epidemiology of St. Louis Encephalitis, J. Exper. Med. **87**: 119.

Smorodintseff, A. A., Gulamow, A. G., and Tschalkina, O. M.: 1940. Über die spezifische prophylaxeder epidemischen grippe durch inhalation anti-gripposen serums, Ztschr. f. klin. Med. **138**: 756.

Stanley, W. M.: 1935. Isolation of a Crystalline Protein Possessing the Properties of Tobacco-Mosaic Virus, Science **81**: 644.

Sulkin, S. E.: 1943. The Laboratory Diagnosis of Virus Diseases. In Gradwohl, Clinical Laboratory Methods and Diagnosis, Ed. 3, St. Louis, The C. V. Mosby Co., p. 1332.

Sulkin, S. E.: 1945. Recovery of Equine Encephalomyelitis Virus (Western Type) From Chicken Mites, Science **101**: 381.

Sulkin, S. E., and Harford, C. G.: 1943. The Laboratory Diagnosis of Virus Diseases, J. A. M. A. **122**: 643.

Sulkin, S. E., and Pike, R. M.: 1949. Viral Infections Contracted in the Laboratory, J. A. M. A.

Sulkin, S. E., and Izumi, E. M.: 1945. Evaluation of in Vitro Tests in the Diagnosis of Virus Diseases, J. Lab. & Clin. Med. **30**: 1.

Sulkin, S. E., and Izumi, E. M.: Isolation of Western Equine Encephalomyelitis From Tropical Fowl Mites, Liponyssus Bursa (Berlese), Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **66**: 249.

Syverton, J. T., McCoy, O. R., and Koomen, J., Jr.: 1947. The Transmission of the Virus of Lymphocytic Choriomeningitis by Trichinella Spiralis, J. Exper. Med. **85**: 759-769.

Van Gelder, D. W., Greenspan, F. S., and Dufresne, N. E.: 1947. Influenza Vaccination; Comparison of Intracutaneous and Subcutaneous Methods, U. S. Nav. M. Bull. **47**: 197.

Van Rooyen, C. E., and Rhodes, A. J.: 1948. Virus Diseases of Man, ed. 2, New York, Thomas Nelson & Sons.

Warren, J., Smadel, J. E., and Rasmussen, A. F.: 1948. The Antibody Response in Human Beings Inoculated With Japanese Encephalitis Vaccine, Chick Embryo Type, J. Immunol. **58**: 211.

Weller, T. H., Cheever, F. S., and Enders, J. S.: 1948. Immunologic Reactions Following the Intradermal Inoculation of Influenza A and B Vaccine, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **67**: 96.

CHAPTER 18

YELLOW FEVER

Henrique de Azevedo Penna

Yellow fever is an acute infectious disease caused by a specific virus and transmitted by certain species of mosquitoes. It attacks man and certain sylvatic animals, especially monkeys, and occurs generally in the form of epidemics and epizootics. In nonfatal cases a permanent immunity is established.

HISTORY

Yellow fever probably has existed in America and Africa since time immemorial. However, the first descriptions which permit identification of this illness with some degree of certainty date from the middle of the seventeenth century in America,* and only in 1778 was it recognized in Africa† (Carter, 1931).

At the beginning, a great variety of names was given to this disease. Among these may be mentioned *vomito prieto,* used by the early Spanish observers, which called attention to a very characteristic symptom. The name ''yellow fever'' was introduced later to describe this malady. It originates from the jaundice which so frequently is a part of the clinical picture (Griffith Hughes, 1750, cited by Carter).

During the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries, this disease, which is essentially a tropical one, was carried to other regions by ships transporting not only people suffering from yellow fever but also the mosquito vector, which found suitable conditions for its propagation in the water containers on board.

Certain large cities became endemic foci and served as sources for disseminating the illness to regions far from the tropical zone. In these new regions it occurred in the form of epidemics, which generally burned themselves out, as the vector could not survive the hardships of the cold season.

Various cities of the United States were thus stricken.

The epidemic in Cadiz, Spain, in 1730, marks the first introduction of this disease into Europe.

Whether yellow fever originated in Africa or America is a question which has been much discussed, and probably a satisfactory answer will never be found. It is certain, however, that the virus must have been brought many times from Africa to America and vice versa, especially on the slave ships.

The beginning of the twentieth century saw the start of an era which can appropriately be called the scientific era of yellow fever, during which various discoveries were made which constitute real milestones in the history of this disease.

The first of these discoveries is the transmission of the disease by the mosquito *Aëdes (Stegomyia) aegypti.*‡ The study which proved this fact beyond a doubt was initiated in 1900 in Havana by the American Army Commission under the direction of Walter Reed (Senate Document No. 822, 1911). The theory that yellow fever was transmitted by *aegypti* had been formulated in 1881 by C. Finlay, chiefly on the basis of epidemiologic considerations.

---

*The epidemic of Yucatan in 1648; Lopes de Cogolludo's report, 1688.

†Schote's report, published in 1782, describing the epidemic in San Luis in Senegal, 1778.

‡*Aëdes (Stegomyia) aegypti* Linnaeus, 1762, is the correct name of the species. It should be noted, however, that this mosquito has been mentioned in the medical literature under many names, among others *Stegomyia fasciata* and *Aëdes argenteus.*

Knowledge about this mode of transmission made it possible to combat yellow fever by controlling the vector. The first anti-*aegypti* campaigns in Havana, Panama, and Rio de Janeiro gave spectacular results.

The second fundamental discovery is the susceptibility of monkeys to yellow fever. In 1927 Stokes, Bauer, and Hudson, working in Nigeria, West Africa, managed to produce yellow fever in the Asiatic *rhesus* monkey *(Macaca mulatta)*. Thus, it was possible to study the disease in a laboratory animal, and many uncertainties concerning its etiology, pathology, and immunology were elucidated, increasing enormously our knowledge about this illness.

The third important discovery was made by Theiler in 1930. This worker demonstrated that yellow fever virus produced in white mice, when inoculated directly into the central nervous system, a fatal encephalitis with multiplication of the virus and permitting serial passage. In this manner a laboratory animal became available which had many advantages over the *rhesus* monkey, because mice are more easily obtained and they are much cheaper. Thus, studies of the virus progressed very rapidly, resulting, in a short while, in the development of an efficient vaccine and of a neutralization or protection test.

The fourth discovery of great importance is the finding that yellow fever may exist in nature in the absence of *A. aegypti.*

In 1932, Soper studied an epidemic of yellow fever in the State of Espirito Santo, Brazil, in which the urban mosquito *A. aegypti* could not be incriminated as the vector (Soper et al., 1933). Later, similar epidemics of great extension occurred in other regions of Brazil as well as in other South American countries; this new epidemiologic modality of the disease has been called "jungle yellow fever."

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

Surveys dealing with the distribution of immunity have shown that yellow fever is much more widely distributed in Africa than was originally thought, and these studies have made it possible to determine the approximate boundaries of the immunity zone on that continent (Sawyer and Whitman, 1936). Studies made by Mahaffy, Smithburn, and Hughes (1946) indicate that the disease has recently occurred in the Belgian Congo, Uganda, Anglo-Egyptian Sudan, Eritrea, Somaliland, Kenya Colony, and Northern Rhodesia. To the east, positive tests have been obtained up to the coast of the Red Sea in Eritrea, and to the south all the way to Balovale in Northern Rhodesia. In Tanganyika Territory and Zanzibar no indications of recent infection have been found. Abyssinia has not been adequately studied.

In Central America and Mexico the studies by Kumm and Crawford (1943), in which about 4,000 blood samples were collected in eighty-five localities and examined for the presence of neutralizing antibodies, show that only in the region east of Panama have cases occurred in recent years. Most of the South American countries have been visited by yellow fever since 1925, with the exception of Chile and Uruguay, in accordance with immunologic surveys (Soper, 1937).

It is the opinion of certain epidemiologists that the Amazon valley constitutes a permanent focus of yellow fever, which is principally maintained in jungle animals. From this enormous endemic region epidemics originate from time to time and invade the more densely populated areas.

The series of epidemics which broke out in the central and southern states of Brazil, beginning in 1934, are a classical example of this invasion (Soper, 1938). Starting in the state of Goiaz, the disease spread over the entire southern part of this state and a portion of the state of Minas Gerais during the hot season from 1934 to 1935, apparently disappearing during the succeeding cold months, only to reappear anew during the following summer from 1935 to 1936, this time in the state of São Paulo. And thus it continued, always disappearing during the winter and reappearing during the hot season, in contiguous regions, until the epidemic burned itself out after having passed through the southern part of the state of Minas Gerais as well as the states of Rio de Janeiro and Espirito Santo, and to the south through Paraná and Santa Catarina.

For a decade, viscerotomy posts in the states of Amazonas and Pará have consistently produced a few positive cases each year, indicating that the disease remains endemic in the forests of the Amazon river valley.

No yellow fever exists in Asia. The reason why the disease has not invaded certain points on the Asiatic continent, where the vector *A. aegypti* is found in abundance, is not known.

ETIOLOGIC AGENT

In 1901, the American Commission in Havana showed that the causative agent of yellow fever is filtrable through Berkefeld candles. However, only after the discovery in 1927 of an animal in which the disease could be experimentally produced was it possible to demonstrate that this etiologic agent has the characteristics of a so-called filtrable virus.

In man, the virus is found in the blood up to the third or fourth day of the disease. Later it disappears from the circulation, giving place to antibodies capable of neutralizing it. During the period in which the virus is found in the blood of man and other susceptible vertebrates, it may infect certain species of mosquitoes which feed thereon.

The virus does not multiply in culture media which do not contain living cells.

Yellow fever virus measures approximately 20 millimicrons (Findlay and Broom, 1933; Pickels and Bauer, 1940) and is therefore classified among the smallest of viruses. It keeps poorly at room temperature. At very low temperatures, such as those obtained with dry ice (–78° C.), it will remain active for long periods of time. The best process of preservation, however, consists in desiccating the virus rapidly in a vacuum in the frozen state (Sawyer, Lloyd, and Kitchen, 1929). When dry and kept in sealed glass containers it will remain active for several months in a refrigerator (8° C.) and for an almost indefinite period of time at temperatures below 0° C.

When inoculated into rhesus monkeys it will produce a disease similar to that found in man. Other species of monkeys can also be infected but they rarely die; the rhesus, therefore, has been particularly valuable for experimental work.

When introduced into the central nervous system of white mice, yellow fever virus produces a fatal encephalitis. It can be kept alive through serial passages in this animal when inoculated by the intracerebral route. After a certain number of passages, alterations occur, and as a result the virus will no longer produce yellow fever in man or monkeys. This modified virus is called *neurotropic* and has been employed in the vaccination of human beings (Sawyer, Kitchen, and Lloyd, 1932; Laigret, 1934).

When inoculated into developing chick embryos a few days old, the virus multiplies and can be maintained serially. This observation has a practical application in the preparation of vaccine. (Elmendorf and Smith, 1937.)

The virus also multiplies, though such high titers are not obtained, in embryonic tissues from mice or chickens maintained alive in vitro (Lloyd, Theiler, and Ricci, 1936). Through serial cultures in embryonic tissue it has been possible to obtain a modification of the virus which has been extensively employed in the immunization of human beings. This strain is known in the literature by its laboratory designation, 17D (Theiler and Smith, 1937a).

The modification consists of an attenuation of the virulence, resulting not only in the disappearance of the property of producing yellow fever, but also in a greatly reduced neurotropism or the capacity to produce encephalitis.

Noguchi stated in 1919 that the etiologic agent of yellow fever was a filtrable Leptospira to which he gave the name *Leptospira icteroides,* morphologically similar to *Leptospira* *icterohaemorrhagiae*, the cause of Weil's disease (Noguchi, 1919, 1925). This point of view was widely accepted until 1927, when the possibility of studying the disease experimentally in monkeys furnished means of correcting this error.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Isolation of Virus

To isolate virus, blood or serum which has been taken from the patient during the first three days of fever is injected into a series of 6 or 12 white mice. Each mouse is inoculated intracerebrally with 0.03 c.c. of the material, which should preferably be injected immediately after it has been collected.

If virus is present, the animals will become sick and die, usually after a week. It is advisable to make passages with the material from one of the sick mice to another group before trying to make an immunologic identification of the agent.

Neutralization Test

The neutralization test serves a double purpose: (1) to identify yellow fever virus, and (2) to determine the presence of specific antibodies in a given serum sample.

Identification of the Virus.—After a few serial passages in the brains of white mice, the virus adapts itself to and kills mice more regularly but after a longer interval than in the first passage. A suspension in physiologic saline is prepared from the brains of mice which have become sick as a result of infection with this modified virus. To various dilutions of this suspension a constant quantity of a known immune serum is added. There should also be a control with a serum known to be nonimmune. Each mixture is injected intracerebrally into a group of 6 or 12 mice. The virus will be that of yellow fever if the immune serum protects the animals in one or more dilutions, provided that mice which received normal serum and the virus succumb.

Determination of the Presence of Specific Antibodies in a Serum.—The unknown serum is added to a filtered suspension of triturated brains from mice which have become sick after the inoculation of neurotropic yellow fever virus. Generally desiccated material is used. The dilution of the suspension is calculated in such a manner that a virus concentration is obtained which, with certainty, can be neutralized by an equal volume of a standard immune serum, and which is sufficient to kill all the animals when mixed with the same volume of normal serum.

Three-hundredths of a cubic centimeter of the mixtures of unknown sera and the virus are injected cerebrally into each of 6 mice. After a few days encephalitis can be noted in the animals if the sera do not contain neutralizing antibodies, whereas all mice which received sera containing such antibodies will remain well. These tests are usually made with many sera in a single run, always including controls with sera which are specifically known to be positive and negative. (Theiler, 1933; Sawyer and Lloyd, 1931.)

This test serves to make an accurate diagnosis when made with two serum samples—one collected during the first days of the illness and the other during the convalescent period.

In the case of yellow fever the first sample should be negative and the second positive.

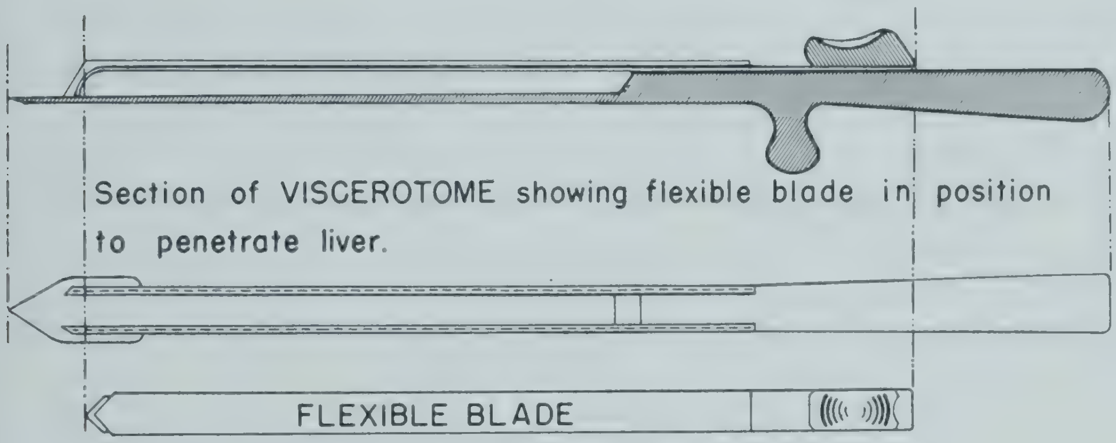
By means of protection or neutralization tests, retrospective diagnoses of yellow fever can also be made in any given population, and from the age of the youngest individual found immune, the date of the last appearance of this disease may be estimated.

By this means studies have been made on the geographic distribution of immunity to yellow fever, which has been found to be much more widespread than was originally anticipated (Sawyer, 1934).

Viscerotomy

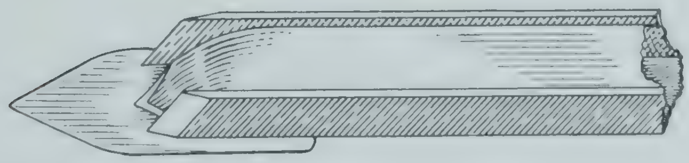
In fatal cases, histopathologic examination of the liver, when made by an expert, usually furnishes information of great diagnostic value. Based on this fact, services for the collection of liver specimens on an extensive scale, from fatal cases of febrile illnesses of short duration, have been organized in various countries.

Drawing No. 1


Section of VISCEROTOME showing flexible blade in position to penetrate liver.
FLEXIBLE BLADE

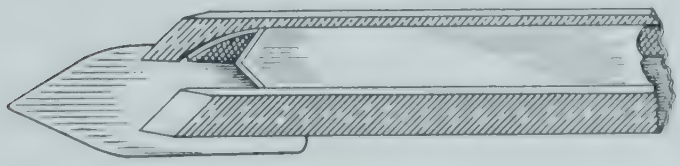
Top view of viscerotome with flexible blade withdrawn

Drawing No. 2



Cutting end of viscerotome with flexible blade in position to penetrate the abdominal wall of the body.

Drawing No. 3



The same end of the viscerotome with the flexible blade in position to enter the liver.

Fig. 133.

These liver specimens are removed from the cadaver by an instrument called "viscerotome" (Rickard, 1931), which has been distributed to special agents in the indicated zones. "Viscerotomy" is easily done, and the collection of such material can be carried out by laymen. The liver specimens are placed in glass containers with a 10 per cent solution of formalin in physiologic saline, and afterward they are sent to the laboratory (Rickard, 1937).

Through the viscerotomy service, yellow fever has been discovered in various regions where its existence was not previously suspected (Soper, Rickard, and Crawford, 1934). In Brazil alone there are 1,303 viscerotomy posts in operation, and during the past sixteen years 365,584 liver specimens have been collected and examined.

Complement Fixation

Many attempts have been made to use the complement fixation reaction in yellow fever studies. Aragão, Moses, Frobisher, G. E. Davis, Lennette, and Perlowagora are some of the investigators who have studied this problem.

More recently, Perlowagora and Hughes (1946), working with a purified antigen, have obtained results useful for epidemiologic investigations.

Since complement-fixing antibodies in the blood of man and susceptible animals disappear after a relatively short period of time, while neutralizing antibodies persist, it is possible to draw conclusions regarding the probable date of infection by carrying out both tests simultaneously.

EPIDEMIOLOGIC VARIETIES AND VECTORS

Immunologically, pathologically, and clinically yellow fever is one and the same disease in America and in Africa. Epidemiologically, however, two forms are recognized: an *urban* form, which is transmitted from man to man through the mosquito *A. aegypti,* and another variety known as *jungle yellow fever,* which is transmitted by vectors other than *A. aegypti* (Soper, 1936).

The presence of the virus, of the *aegypti* mosquito, and of a susceptible human population are the necessary factors for the maintenance of urban yellow fever.

The virus is present in the blood stream of the patient up to the third day of the fever. *A. aegypti* which feed upon such blood become capable of transmitting the disease after a few days' period, which is called the *extrinsic incubation period* (Carter, 1900), and remain infective for the rest of their lives.

The extrinsic incubation period, which in nature is about 12 days, can be interpreted as the time necessary for the virus to multiply in the mosquito so that it reaches the salivary glands.

The life span of *A. aegypti* is approximately three months.

Only the females feed on blood and are infected in nature.

All experiments aimed at demonstrating hereditary transmission of the infection in mosquitoes have failed.

A. aegypti is essentially a domestic insect, which for oviposition prefers small water containers found inside of or in close proximity to human habitations.

The immunity conferred by yellow fever is absolute and permanent, and therefore the urban form of the disease would disappear from a locality were it not for the fact that the susceptible population is renewed through the introduction of nonimmune individuals coming from other places, or infants born in that locality. Such spontaneous elimination of the disease has in fact occurred, because in order that this might happen it is not necessary that all susceptible individuals should disappear. It is merely sufficient that the reduction of nonimmune individuals reach a certain critical level.

The control of yellow fever by means of combating the vector has reduced the urban form to a condition of secondary importance.

The *jungle form* was recognized for the first time in 1932 during an epidemic in Vale do Canãa, Espirito Santo, Brazil (Soper, et al., 1933). It was not possible at that time to determine the vector.

Following this outbreak various epidemics were observed in Brazil, as well as in other South American countries, which furnished opportunities for the study of the epidemiologic characteristics of this form of the disease.

Only persons who live near the woods or who enter the forest by chance or to work are attacked.

It seems to be well established that the virus can exist and propagate in the forest without the presence of human beings, and that the latter frequently play the role of accidental victims only.

Neutralizing antibodies against the virus have been found in the blood of forest animals, especially monkeys, which indicates that some of them are infected in nature. On one occasion yellow fever virus was isolated from the blood of marmosets captured in the woods near Ilhéus in the state of Bahia, Brazil, without the appearance of any known human cases in that neighborhood (Laemmert, Ferreira, and Taylor, 1946).

Yellow fever virus was isolated from *Haemagogus capricornii* Lutz and *Aëdes leucocelaenus* Dyar and Shannon (Shannon et al., 1938).

Bugher et al. (1944) showed that Haemagogus mosquitoes were more abundant in the tree tops, which seemed to be their natural habitat. Mosquito captures, which until then had been made at ground level, did not furnish a true indication of the abundance of these insects in the forest. This observation explained the apparent scarcity of Haemagogus mosquitoes in woods where the disease was known to exist, the survival of the virus from one rainy season to another, as well as the occurrence of a great number of cases of yellow fever among wood cutters.

In Africa it has been difficult to prove the existence of jungle yellow fever, that is to say, the transmission of the disease by mosquitoes other than *A. aegypti,* principally due to the wide dissemination of that species. In various regions of Africa this insect shows an unusual type of behavior, being found in uninhabited forests where it breeds in tree holes.

During an epidemic in 1941 in the proximity of the Semliki forest, Uganda, yellow fever virus was isolated from two lots of *A. (Stegomyia) simpsoni* Theobald. The immunity rate in monkeys captured in that area was 61 per cent.

In 1942, the virus was again isolated from *A. simpsoni* in the complete absence of any known human cases, which indicated the probable existence of an extrahuman cycle.

As *A. simpsoni* normally inhabits the forest edges, further searches for other sylvatic vectors were made, and in April, 1944, virus was isolated from a group of Aëdes captured in the midst of the Semliki forest, which include neither *A. aegypti* nor *A. simpsoni.* This observation demonstrated the existence of yellow fever in Africa in the absence of human beings, as the Semliki forest is not inhabited by man (Smithburn and Haddow, 1946). *A. africanus* appears to be the forest species most likely to be implicated.

CLINICAL FORMS, SYMPTOMS, DIAGNOSIS, AND TREATMENT

There is a great variation in the severity of yellow fever. Generally two distinct phases mark the course of the disease: the first, a period of general reaction or infection, and the second, a period of intoxication in which the symptoms are principally caused by liver damage. In many cases the symptoms are so mild and noncharacteristic that yellow fever is not diagnosed at all but receives a vague denomination such as grippe.

There is a sudden onset of fever, photophobia, and congestive phenomena, such as facial congestion, principally noticeable in the sclerae, and headache. These symptoms are followed by a gastric upset which may develop into nausea and even vomiting. Albuminuria is almost always present. These symptoms disappear within a few days and the patient recovers completely.

The clinical diagnosis of this benign form of yellow fever can rarely be made in isolated cases; that is to say, outside of epidemics. It is, however, the most common form of this disease and is responsible for the majority of immune individuals found in nature.

In more severe cases the general state of health declines rapidly and symptoms of intoxication appear. The patient is very restless. Vomiting occurs frequently and the vomitus may be of a dark color due to hemorrhages in the gastric mucosa. The stools may also be dark. Jaundice appears. The patient shows great prostration. Oliguria, followed by anuria and coma, is part of the terminal picture when death occurs. Fatalities most frequently occur between the fifth and the eighth day of illness.

There exist, however, possibilities of survival even in very severe cases showing all the symptoms of the so-called classical cases.

Some of the *symptoms* or phenomena deserve special mention.

Frequently the *fever,* which is high at the onset (39°-40° C.), does not fall much during the course of the disease, whereas the rapid pulse, noted initially, slows down, causing a discrepancy between the pulse and the temperature, which is known in the literature as *Faget's sign* (Faget, 1875).

Albuminuria is one of the most common symptoms and is of considerable value for clinical diagnosis. In benign cases it may be very slight, but it is rarely absent. In severe cases it is very intense and may be measured in grams per liter. Almost always albuminuria is present from the onset.

Pronounced *oliguria* is a symptom of the advanced phase of the disease and is an important factor in giving a bad prognosis.

Hemorrhages during the initial phase are almost invariably related to the nasal mucosa and the gums. If this blood enters the stomach, it may later be vomited in the form of black vomit. However, the real black vomit is derived from hemorrhages in the gastric mucosa and is rarely encountered in the initial stages. In some cases where violent hemorrhages are involved, unaltered blood is vomited, because sufficient time has not elapsed to permit the action of the gastric juices. At times hemorrhages may be generalized, hematemesis, melena, epistaxis, and cutaneous hemorrhages occurring simultaneously.

The *jaundice* in yellow fever is in many cases not as striking as the name of the disease might indicate, and it appears relatively late. Frequently it is only a yellowish tinge, most noticeable in the sclerae, becoming more pronounced toward the end of the disease. There are, however, cases in which the jaundice is intense. After death it is generally more easily recognized.

The clinical diagnosis during epidemics can usually be made with considerable certainty in the more severe cases and with reasonable accuracy in benign ones. The diagnosis of isolated cases, however, should always be based on laboratory procedures, among which the most exact is the isolation and identification of the virus. If this is not possible, then one may compare two blood samples for the presence of specific antibodies. The first sample should be taken during the first three days of illness and the second during the period of convalescence.

In fatal cases histopathologic examination of the liver usually permits the making of a definite diagnosis.

Among those diseases which occur in epidemic form and which may show a resemblance to yellow fever, one might mention Weil's disease, malaria, relapsing fever, and dengue. In the first three the identification of the etiologic agent establishes the diagnosis. The absence of severe or fatal cases in dengue is an important characteristic in differentiating the two diseases.

No specific treatment is known against yellow fever.

The application of immune serum is of value only as a prophylactic measure.

When the serum is introduced before or simultaneously with the virus in experimental inoculation, it prevents the disease. The intracellular habitat of the virus does not permit antibodies introduced after the virus to exert any effect at all.

Liver necrosis, which is the principal lesion responsible for the symptoms of the disease, develops rapidly, and since it is an irreversible process, it is not susceptible to any treatment whatsoever.

Experiments directed at neutralizing the toxic effect caused by the destruction of the liver, the administration of calcium salts, which has given satsfactory results in certain other intoxications also caused by liver necrosis, have been in vain.*

It is, however, advisable to follow certain general rules in the symptomatic treatment of patients (Soper, 1942).

Transportation of the patient from one locality to another should be avoided.

A laxative may be given on the first day. The food intake should be imited to fruit juices.

Depressant antipyretics should not be used.

Convalescence is at times prolonged. The patient should therefore not reassume his activities too soon, particularly if they involve heavy physical exertion.

MORBID ANATOMY

The general appearance of the cadaver in yellow fever is not characteristic.

Jaundice, when present, is more easily recognized than during life. In certain regions ecchymotic patches on the icteric skin produce a purplish appearance.

Flecks of dried blood around the mouth and nostrils indicate the occurrence of hemorrhages.

---

*One of the editors (O. F.) recently suggested the use of vitamin B_{12} and methione.

On opening the abdominal cavity, a brownish-yellow color of the liver is noted, which becomes even more evident after the organ has been removed and exsanguinated. This color is said to resemble chamois yellow or the color of boxwood.

The lobular pattern is distinguishable on cut section which shows the same coloration as the surface of the liver. There is no alteration in the size of this organ.

The dark contents of the stomach can generally be seen through its wall. After opening, the contents are found to consist of dark brown material which has often been compared to coffee grounds. On other occasions the stomach contains a yellowish fluid in which dark particles of partially digested blood are floating. In the gastric mucosa there will be found, aside from capillary congestion, varying numbers of small black spots corresponding to the places where hemorrhages have occurred.

Macroscopic examination of the other organs will reveal nothing unusual, except the general yellowish tinge which is most marked in such places as the subcutaneous tissues or the inner surface of the large blood vessels and indications of hemorrhages which may be found in almost any organ.

The macroscopic lesions encountered at autopsy are not of a nature which permit an undoubted diagnosis of yellow fever and indeed several other diseases may present a similar appearance, especially certain types of poisoning.

Microscopic examination reveals lesions of the kidneys, heart, spleen, and other organs.

It is in the liver, however, that pathologic changes of the greatest diagnostic value are to be found. Examining the tissue with the low power of the microscope, a certain disorganization of the parenchyma can be distinguished which is most apparent in the midzone of the lobule. There is a jumbling of the liver cords with distortion of the sinusoids. The presence of fatty droplets in the cytoplasm of the hepatic cells is a constant finding.

The principal lesion, however, is the necrosis of the parenchymatous cells. In sections stained with hematoxylin and eosin the necrotic cells stand out as rounded bodies, highly acidophilic, and surrounded by a narrow clear zone, as if shrunk. Nuclei, also acidophilic, may be distinguished from the cytoplasm only with difficulty. In such cells a nucleus is sometimes found flattened against its surface and believed to belong to a phagocytic cell. Councilman (1890) was the first to describe the appearance of the necrotic liver cell in yellow fever, and for that reason cells or parts of cells with this type of degeneration are known as "Councilman bodies." The distribution of these bodies in the microscopic section is very characteristic. They are scattered over almost the entire lobule, in an irregular manner, usually isolated, and are more abundant in the midzone of the lobule. Rocha Lima (1912) called attention to this midlobular predominance and to the spotty distribution of the necrotic cells. There is no tendency to focal necrosis, and all lobules are

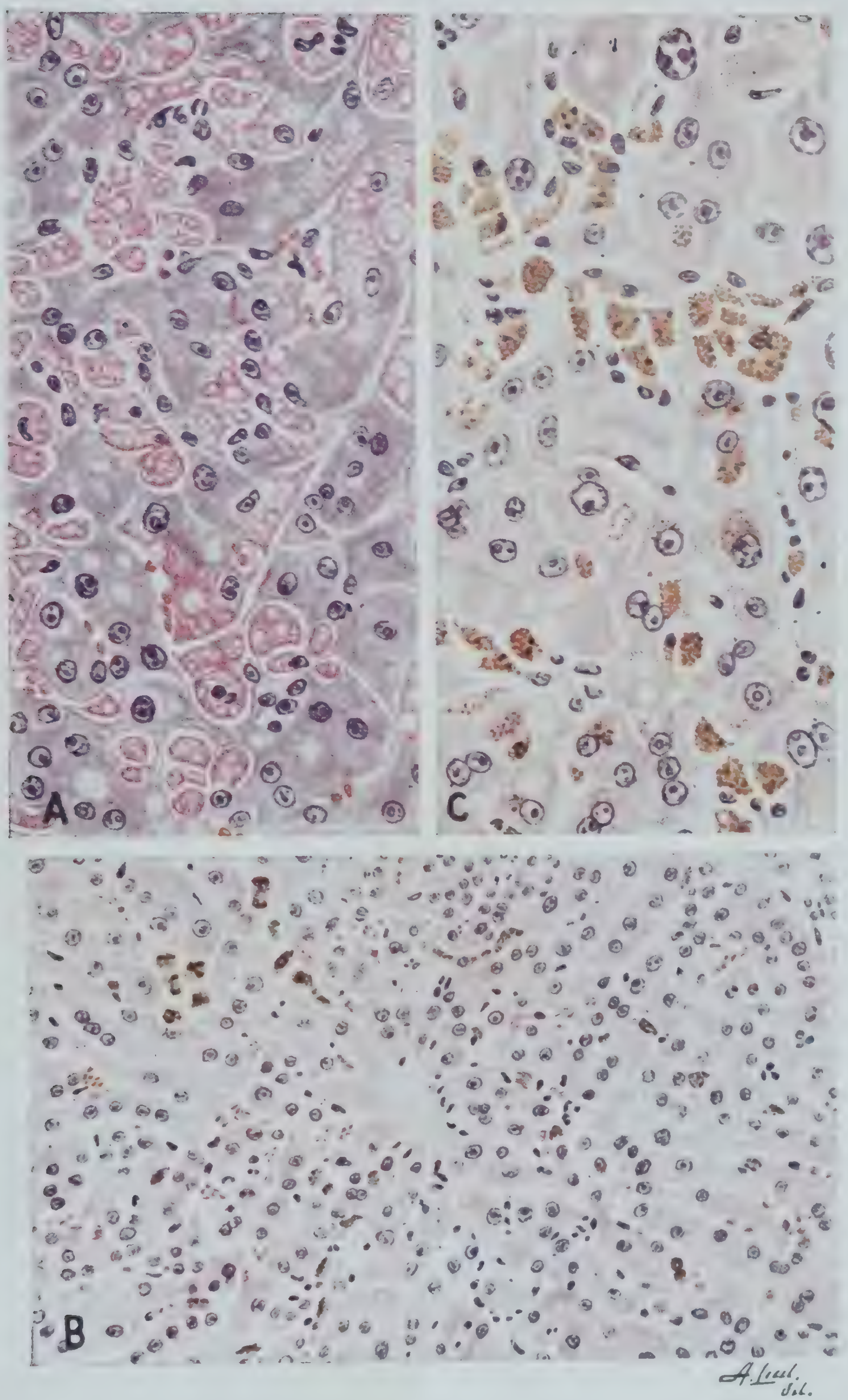


Plate II.—*A*. Classical picture of yellow fever in section of human liver stained with hematoxylin and eosin. Councilman bodies are distributed throughout.

B and *C*. Sections of human liver in which the classical picture is not found but in which bright ochre-colored granular bodies are scattered throughout the lobule, with the greatest concentration in the midzone. These granular bodies have been used as a basis for the diagnosis of yellow fever in cases in which eosinophilic Councilman bodies could not be found.

(From Villelà, E.: Histology of Human Yellow Fever when Death Is Delayed, Arch. Path. 31: 665-669, 1941. Reproduced by permission Archives of Pathology, the American Medical Association, and the Rockefeller Foundation.)

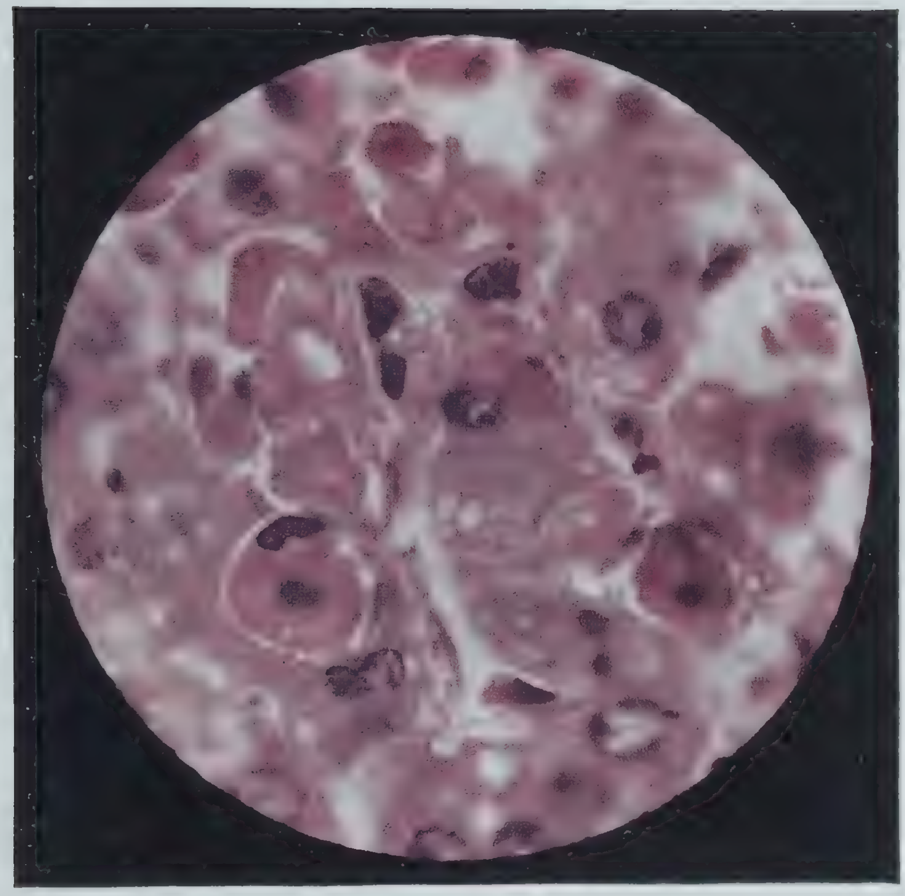


Plate III.—Histologic section of a yellow fever liver, stained with hematoxylin and eosin. Oil immersion objective. Ansco color film.

Councilman bodies stained pink. A nucleus believed to belong to a phagocytic cell can be seen flattened against one of these bodies.

uniformly affected. Even in cases where the major part of the liver cells are necrotic, some cells can still be seen around the central vein which have not been affected.

The degree of necrosis varies from individual to individual, ranging from 5 to 100 per cent, with an average of 80 per cent, in a series of cases studied by Klotz and Belt (1930a).

The cells which have not undergone necrosis present different stages of degeneration, from cloudy swelling to an advanced stage of necrobiosis. Such necrobiotic cells are characterized chiefly by a granular and vacuolated appearance of the cytoplasm and are generally increased in size. The nuclei show swelling and margination of the chromatin, and one or more nucleoli are easily visible. Sometimes acidophilic substances are encountered in the nuclei, forming aggregations which Torres (1928, 1931) identified as "nuclear inclusions." In human viscerotomy material collected in Brazil, nuclear inclusion bodies are rarely found and can be considered as exceptional so that they are of diagnostic value only when present. In the experimental disease in rhesus monkeys, on the other hand, intranuclear inclusions almost invariably form part of the histologic picture and are thus of value in making the diagnosis. They may also be found in the nuclei of certain cells of the nervous system in mice and monkeys which have died from yellow fever virus encephalitis.

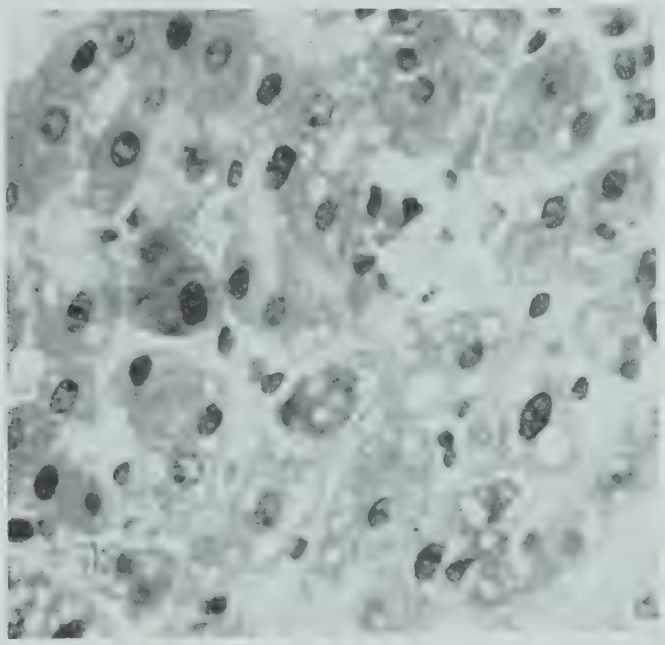


Fig. 134.—Biopsy of the liver in yellow fever, showing fatty degeneration and acidophilic cells. (Courtesy of Oscar Felsenfeld.)

The alterations found in the liver are of a degenerative character rather than inflammatory, although some leucocytes may be encountered.

In cases that survive, regeneration of the liver tissues is rapid and complete, with no residual fibrosis (Klotz and Belt, 1930b).

Villela (1941) described a histopathologic picture in the liver which permits the diagnosis when death is delayed and presumably is caused by some intercurrent disease. Twenty-three cases were studied where death had occurred between the eighth and seventeenth day. The diagnosis was based on the presence of rounded, granular bodies of a vivid ochre yellow color, predominantly distributed in the midzone of the lobule. Villela believed that they represent Councilman bodies already in a stage of disintegration.

When viscerotomy service was begun in Brazil, it was believed that the microscopic findings in the liver were sufficiently characteristic to permit the establishment of a diagnosis per se. As wider experience was gained from suspect cases and through field investigations, it was found that other diseases might show similar findings or even reproduce the histologic picture of the yellow fever liver.

Only an examiner with great practice is therefore in a position to distinguish the lesions found in yellow fever from those encountered in certain rare cases of acute yellow atrophy, peritonitis, meningitis, poisoning with arsenic, antimony, or carbon tetrachloride, the latter being widely used as a vermifuge.

Belt (1939) described liver lesions found in cases of severe burns which had been treated with tannic acid, and these lesions were indistinguishable from those produced by yellow fever.

However, none of these observations are of such a nature as to interfere seriously with the practical value of viscerotomy.

In the majority of cases an expert can make the distinction, and field investigations usually clear up the remainder of cases in which confusion still persists.

PROPHYLAXIS

Anti-Aegypti Measures

The maintenance of urban yellow fever depends on the cycle man-*aegypti*-man.

The most practical method of interrupting this cycle, and thus controlling the disease, consists in combating the mosquito.

In order for yellow fever to disappear from a locality, it is not necessary to eliminate the vector completely. It is sufficient to reduce it below a critical number (Carter, 1931).

The *aegypti index* is the per cent of houses found harboring larval foci.

In the past it was believed that only the big urban centers could maintain the disease endemically due to the constant introduction of nonimmune individuals, and that if these seedbeds were destroyed, the disease would disappear from all nearby places through the process of spontaneous elimination.

Although this program of mosquito control in key centers proved successful in certain places, it failed in others.

In the northeastern part of Brazil, for instance, during the campaign which began in 1923 with the cooperation of the Rockefeller Foundation, yellow fever disappeared from the principal cities on the coast but continued to occur in villages and among the smaller towns of the interior.

The demonstration of the existence of the jungle form of the disease and of the possibility of the importation of the virus from the forests to the cities where it may be spread by *A. aegypti* finally brought an end to this key center theory and indicated the necessity of a program of eradication wherever *A. aegypti* were found (Soper and Wilson, 1942).

The anti-*aegypti* measures adopted by the National Yellow Fever Service of Brazil may serve as a model for similar campaigns that may be organized in other countries, because the efficiency of the methods finally adopted has been tested through many years of practical application.

Brazil, which extends over a territory that measures 8,542,000 square kilometers, has been divided for administrative purposes into six "circumscriptions" and these in turn in sixteen sectors, each directed by a specialist.

Some of the procedures used in the beginning, such as quarantine, isolation of the patient, and destruction of adult mosquitoes by fumigation, were abandoned in favor of antilarval measures directed against the foci of *A. aegypti.*

The search for and destruction of these foci are handled by a large group of sanitary inspectors who examine buildings and deal with potential mosquito breeding places by oiling.

Other specialized groups of inspectors are employed in the capture of adult mosquitoes in order to give a better orientation to those who are searching for hidden breeding places that may have escaped attention on previous inspections.

Successive areas are worked in territorial sequence and those already clean are carefully watched.

The final objective is the complete eradication of *A. aegypti* from vast areas rather than merely reducing the numbers below the critical level (Soper, Wilson, Lima, and Antunes, 1943).

Vaccination

The first attempts at vaccination were made with virus which had been inactivated by chemical substances. Results were unsatisfactory.

In 1931, in an attempt to put an end to the long series of laboratory infections that were occurring in New York and Africa, a certain number of individuals were experimentally vaccinated with active virus. The strain used was the one adapted to the nervous system of mice, or the so-called neurotropic virus. This virus, when injected subcutaneously into rhesus monkeys, confers immunity without producing yellow fever. On the other hand, when it is injected intracerebrally, it produces fatal encephalitis. However, even when injected subcutaneously, it did produce encephalitis in certain exceptional cases. For that reason it was considered dangerous to use this strain for vaccination of human beings without simultaneously injecting an adequate amount of immune serum. The immunity conferred by the application of this method was satisfactory and no further accidental laboratory infections were recorded. (Sawyer, Kitchen, and Lloyd, 1932.)

In 1935, the neurotropic virus was substituted for an attenuated virus by cultures in embryonic mouse tissue (strain 17E), but the immune serum continued to be injected simultaneously (Lloyd, Theiler, and Ricci, 1936). In order to reduce the volume of the serum injected, hyperimmune monkey serum was later employed. This was obtained by injecting massive doses of the virus into an already immune rhesus monkey and collecting the serum nine days later, when the maximum concentration of antibodies occurs (Theiler and Smith, 1936).

Beginning with 1937, however, a strain of virus so attenuated that it no longer requires the complementary use of immune serum has been employed on a large scale for the immunization of human beings.

This modification of the virus was obtained by serial cultures in chick embryo tissues from which the major portion of the nervous tissue had been removed. This strain is known as 17D. (Theiler and Smith, 1937a, 1937b.)

Several million people have already been vaccinated with the 17D strain of yellow fever virus, principally in Brazil and among the Armed Forces of the United States.

At the time when the vaccine is to be used, it is diluted to contain not less than 1,000 MLD for mice to each 0.5 c.c., the volume injected into each person, preferably subcutaneously.*

Certain accidents have occurred during mass vaccination campaigns, of which the most serious was the appearance of jaundice among persons vaccinated. This illness is known as homologous serum jaundice.

Postvaccination cases of jaundice of late appearance had already been reported by Findlay and MacCallum (1937) in England and by Soper and Smith (1938) in Brazil after vaccination with modified virus and supplementary immune serum.

When the 17D strain of virus was first used without immune serum, more than a million persons were vaccinated without cases of jaundice having been known to occur.

At the beginning of 1940, an outbreak of postvaccination jaundice was observed in the state of Espirito Santo, Brazil, where more than a thousand cases were investigated which were principally related to the use of two vaccine lots, believed to have been contaminated by an icterogenic agent derived from what was supposed to be normal human serum that had been used in the preparation of those lots of vaccine. Some fatal cases were recorded. The principal lesions were found in the liver and corresponded essentially to those described in cases of acute or subacute yellow atrophy of the liver (Fox, et al., 1942).

In 1942, another outbreak of postvaccination jaundice was noted among the Armed Forces of the United States (Sawyer et al., 1944).

These accidents caused a temporary interruption of the vaccination program, and investigators directed their efforts to finding means of perfecting the methods of preparing vaccine so as to eliminate the possibility of contamination by such icterogenic agents.

---

*Editor's note (O. F.): Fox et al. (Am. J. Hyg., 38: 113, 1943) recommended only 500 MLD (LD_{50}) for mice for human vaccination.

Yellow fever virus does not pass bacteriologic filters well unless its vehicle contains a high percentage of proteins. Human serum was added to the vaccine in order to facilitate this filtration process, primarily because it was believed to be harmless when inoculated into man. The icterogenic agent, which is filtrable and resists heating at 56° C. for half an hour, was introduced inadvertently into the vaccine with this serum component.

In order to prevent this hazard, filtration of the vaccine has been discontinued and bacteriologic sterility now depends exclusively on rigorous aseptic precautions.

No more cases of jaundice have occurred since the adoption of this modification in the technic employed in the preparation of vaccine.

Encephalitis vaccination methods utilizing the Dakar strain from mouse brain suspended in arabic gum have been adopted by the Pasteur Institute in French West Africa and have been employed on a large scale in the French colonies in that area. Laigret (1934) used three subcutaneous injections in progressively decreasing dilutions, spaced over a few days. This method, although it confers a good immunity, caused the occasional appearance of unpleasant reactions, which at times involved the nervous system. (Sorel, 1936.)

Since 1939 the French method has consisted of cutaneous scarifications, sometimes together with smallpox vaccine.

The scratch method simplifies the technic of application, 7,890,417 vaccinations having been given in French West Africa from 1939 to 1943, without any serious reactions having been recorded. (Rapport sur le fonctionnement technique de l'Institut Pasteur de l'Afrique Occidental Française en 1943.)

References

Bauer, J. H., and Pickels, E. G.: 1940. Apparatus for Freezing and Drying Virus in Large Quantities Under Uniform Conditions, J. Exper. Med. **71**: 83-88.

Belt, T. H.: 1939. Liver Necrosis Following Burns, Simulating the Lesions of Yellow Fever, J. Path. & Bact. **48**: 493-498.

Bugher, J. C., Boshell-Manrique, J., Roca-Garcia, M., and Osorno-Mesa, E.: 1944. Epidemiology of Jungle Yellow Fever in Eastern Colombia, Am. J. Hyg. **39**: 16-51.

Carter, H. R.: 1900. A Note on the Interval Between Infecting and Secondary Cases of Yellow Fever From the Records of the Yellow Fever at Orwood and Taylor, Mississippi, in 1898, New Orleans M. & S. J. **52**: 617.

Carter, H. R.: 1931. Yellow Fever: An Epidemiological and Historical Study of Its Place of Origin, Baltimore, The Williams & Wilkins Co.

Councilman, W. T.: 1890. Description of the Pathological Histology of Yellow Fever. In Sternberg, G.: Report on the Etiology and Prevention of Yellow Fever, U. S. Marine Hosp. Service, Pub. Health Bull. No. 2, 151-153.

Davis, N. C.: 1932. The Effect of Various Temperatures in Modifying the Extrinsic Incubation Period of the Yellow Fever Virus in Aëdes Aegypti, Am. J. Hyg. **15**: 163-176.

Elmendorf, J. E., Jr., and Smith, H. H.: 1937. Multiplication of Yellow Fever Virus in the Developing Chick Embryo, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **36**: 171-174.

Faget, J. C.: 1875. The Type and Specificity of Yellow Fever Established With the Aid of the Watch and Thermometer, Paris, J. B. Baillière & Sons.

Findlay, G. M., and Broom, J. C.: 1933. Experiments on the Filtration of Yellow Fever Virus Through "Gradocol" Membranes, Brit. J. Exper. Path. **14**: 391-400.

Findlay, G. M., and MacCallum, F. O.: 1937. Note on Acute Hepatitis and Yellow Fever Immunization, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **31**: 297-308.

Finlay, C. E.: 1940. Carlos Finlay and Yellow Fever, New York, Oxford University Press.

Finlay, C. J.: 1881. El Mosquito Hipotéticamente Considerado Como Agente de Transmisión de la Fiebre Amarilla, An. Acad. de cien. méd., Fis. y Nat. de la Habana **18:** 147-169.

Fox, J. P., Manso, C., Penna, H. A., and Pará, M.: 1942. Observations on the Occurrence of Icterus in Brazil Following Vaccination Against Yellow Fever, Am. J. Hyg. **36:** 68-116.

Klotz, O., and Belt, T. H.: 1930a. The Pathology of the Liver in Yellow Fever, Am. J. Path. **6:** 663-687.

Klotz, O., and Belt, T. H.: 1930b. Regeneration of Liver and Kidney Following Yellow Fever, Am. J. Path. **6:** 689-697.

Kumm, H. W., and Crawford, P. J.: 1943. The Recent Distribution of Endemic Yellow Fever in Central America and Neighboring Countries, Am. J. Trop. Med. **23:** 421-431.

Laemmert, H. W., Jr., Ferreira, L. C., and Taylor, R. M.: 1946. An Epidemiological Study of Jungle Yellow Fever in an Endemic Area in Brazil. Part II. Investigations of Vertebrate Hosts and Arthropod Vectors, Am. J. Trop. Med. **26:** 23-69.

Laigret, J.: 1934. Sur la Vaccination Contre la Fièvre Jaune par le Virus de Max Theiler, Bull. office internat. d'hyg. pub. **25:** 1078-1082.

Lins, S. A.: 1929. Contribuição ao Estudo Clínico da Febre Amirella, Arch. de Hyg. **3:** 195-404.

Lloyd, W., Theiler, M., and Ricci, N. I.: 1936. Modification of the Virulence of Yellow Fever Virus by Cultivation in Tissues in Vitro, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **29:** 481-529.

Mahaffy, A. F., Smithburn, K. C., and Hughes, T. P.: 1946. The Distribution of Immunity to Yellow Fever in Central and East Africa, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **40:** 57-82.

Noguchi, H.: 1919. Etiology of Yellow Fever: II. Transmission Experiments on Yellow Fever, J. Exper. Med. **29:** 565-584.

Noguchi, H.: 1925. Yellow Fever Research, 1918-1924: A Summary, J. Trop. Med. **28:** 185-193.

Peltier, M., Durieux, C., Jonchère, H., and Arquié, E.: 1939. Penetration du Virus Amaril Neurotrope par voie Cutanée. Vaccination Mixte Contre la Fièvre Jaune et la Variole, Bull. Acad. de méd. Paris **121:** 657-660.

Peltier, M., Durieux, C., Jonchère, H., and Arquié, E.: 1940. Vaccination Mixte Contre la Fièvre Jaune et la Variole sur des Populations Indigènes du Sénégal, Bull. acad. de méd., Paris **123:** 137-147.

Perlowagora, A., and Hughes, T. P.: 1946. The Complement Fixation Test in Yellow Fever Epidemiology. The Use of Globulin Antigen in Immunity Surveys, J. Immunol. **55:** 103-119.

Pickels, E. G., and Bauer, J. H.: 1940. Ultracentrifugation Studies of Yellow Fever Virus, J. Exper. Med. **71:** 703-717.

Rickard, E. R.: 1931. The Viscerotome, an Instrument for the Removal of Fragments of Liver for Pathological Examination Without Autopsy, The Rockefeller Foundation Quart. Bull. **5:** 310-320.

Rickard, E. R.: 1937. The Organization of the Viscerotome Service of the Brazilian Cooperative Yellow Fever Service, Am. J. Trop. Med. **17:** 163-190.

Rocha Lima, H. da: 1912. Zur pathologischen Anatomie des Gelbfiebers, Verhandl. d. deutsch. path. Gesellsch. **15:** 163-181.

Sawyer, W. A., Lloyd, W. D. M., and Kitchen, S. F.: 1929. The Preservation of Yellow Fever Virus, J. Exper. Med. **50:** 1-13.

Sawyer, W. A., and Lloyd, W. D. M.: 1931. The Use of Mice in Tests of Immunity Against Yellow Fever, J. Exper. Med. **54:** 533-555.

Sawyer, W. A., Kitchen, S. F., and Lloyd, W.: 1932. Vaccination Against Yellow Fever With Immune Serum and Virus Fixed for Mice, J. Exper. Med. **55:** 945-969.

Sawyer, W. A.: 1934. The Present Geographic Distribution of Yellow Fever and Its Significance, Harvey Lect., 1934-1935; lecture delivered Dec. 20, 1934.

Sawyer, W. A., and Whitman, L.: 1936. The Yellow Fever Immunity Survey of North, East and South Africa, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **29:** 397-412.

Sawyer, W. A.: 1937. A History of the Activities of the Rockefeller Foundation in the Investigation and Control of Yellow Fever, Am. J. Trop. Med. **17:** 35-50.

Sawyer, W. A., Meyer, K. F., Eaton, M. D., Bauer, J. H., Putnam, P., and Schwentker. F. F.: 1944. Jaundice in Army Personnel in Western Region of United States and Its Relation to Vaccination Against Yellow Fever, Am. J. Hyg. 39: 337-430; **40:** 35-107.

Senate Document No. 822: 1911. Yellow Fever. A Compilation of Various Publications. Results of the Work of Maj. Walter Reed, Medical Corps, United States Army, and Yellow Fever Commission, Washington, Government Printing Office.

Shannon, R. C., Whitman, L., and Franca, M.: 1938. Yellow Fever Virus in Jungle Mosquitoes, Science **88**: 110-111.

Smithburn, K. C., and Haddow, A. J.: 1946. Isolation of Yellow Fever Virus From African Mosquitoes, Am. J. Trop. Med. **26**: 261-271.

Soper, F. L., Penna, H. A., Cardoso, E., Serafim, Jr., J., Frobisher, Jr., J., and Pinheiro, J.: 1933. Yellow Fever Without Aëdes aegypti. Study of a Rural Epidemic in the Valle do Chanaan, Espirito Santo, Brazil, 1932, Am. J. Hyg. **18**: 555-587.

Soper, F. L., Rickard, E. R., and Crawford, P. J.: 1934. The Routine Post-Mortem Removal of Liver Tissue From Rapidly Fatal Fever Cases for the Discovery of Silent Yellow Fever Foci, Am. J. Hyg. **19**: 549-566.

Soper, F. L.: 1936. Jungle Yellow Fever. A New Epidemiological Entity in South America, Revista de Hygiene e Saude Pública **10**: 107-144.

Soper, F. L.: 1937. The Geographical Distribution of Immunity to Yellow Fever in Man in South America, Am. J. Trop. Med. **17**: 457-511.

Soper, F. L., and Smith, H. H.: 1938. Yellow Fever Vaccinations With Cultivated Virus and Immune and Hyperimmune Serum, Am. J. Trop. Med. **18**: 111-134.

Soper, F. L.: 1938. Yellow Fever: the Present Situation (October, 1938) With Special Reference to South America, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **32**: 297-332.

Soper, F. L.: 1942. Treatment of Yellow Fever, J. A. M. A. **118**: 374-378.

Soper, F. L., and Wilson, D. B.: 1942. Species Eradication: A Practical Goal of Species Reduction in the Control of Mosquito-Borne Disease, J. Nat. Malaria Soc. **1**: 5-24.

Soper, F. L., Wilson, D. B., Lima, S., and Antunes, W. S.: 1943. The Organization of Permanent Nation-Wide Anti-Aëdes Aegypti Measures in Brazil, New York, The Rockefeller Foundation.

Sorel, F.: 1936. La Vaccination Anti-amarile en Afrique Occidentale Française, Bull. Office internat. d'hyg. pub. **28**: 1325-1356.

Stokes, A., Bauer, J. H., and Hudson, N. P.: 1928. Experimental Transmission of Yellow Fever to Laboratory Animals, Am. J. Trop. Med. **8**: 103-164.

Theiler, M.: 1930. Studies on the Action of Yellow Fever Virus in Mice, Ann. Trop. Med. **24**: 249-272.

Theiler, M.: 1933. A Yellow Fever Protection Test in Mice by Intracerebral Injection, Ann. Trop. Med. **27**: 57-77.

Theiler, M., and Smith, H. H.: 1936. L'emploi du Sérum Hyperimmun de Singe dans la Vaccination Humaine Contre la Fièvre Jaune, Bull. Office internat. d'hyg. pub. **28**: 2354-2357.

Theiler, M., and Smith, H. H.: 1937a. The Effect of Prolonged Cultivation in Vitro Upon the Pathogenicity of Yellow Fever Virus, J. Exper. Med. **65**: 767-786.

Theiler, M., and Smith, H. H.: 1937b. The Use of Yellow Fever Virus Modified by in Vitro Cultivation for Human Immunization, J. Exper. Med. **65**: 787-800.

Torres, C. M.: 1928. Inclusions Nucléaires Acidophiles (Dégénérescence Oxychromatique) dans le Foie de Macacus Rhesus Inoculé avec le Virus Brésilien de la Fièvre Jaune, Comp. Rend. Soc. de Biol. **99**: 1344.

Torres, C. M.: 1931. Oxychromatic Degeneration (‘‘Intranuclear Inclusions’’) in Yellow Fever, Mem. Inst. Oswaldo Cruz **25**: 148-211.

U.N.R.R.A.: 1945a. Standards for the Manufacture and Control of Yellow Fever Vaccine, Epidemiol. Inform. Bull. **1**: 365-370.

U.N.R.R.A.: 1945b. Third Report of the Expert Commission on Quarantine, Epidemiol. Inform. Bull. **1**: 687-692.

U.N.R.R.A.: 1946. Fourth Report of the Expert Commission on Quarantine, Epidemiol. Inform. Bull. **2**: 580-586, 689.

Villela, E.: 1941. Histology of Human Yellow Fever When Death Is Delayed, Arch. Path. **31**: 665-669.

Whitman, L.: 1937. The Multiplication of the Virus of Yellow Fever in Aëdes Aegypti, J. Exper. Med. **66**: 133-143.

CHAPTER 19

DENGUE AND DENGUE-LIKE FEVERS

Gustavo Pittaluga

DENGUE

Dengue is a benign disease that may assume such widespread epidemic proportions as to become a serious community problem.

HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

The term ''dengue'' was first used in Mexico during the epidemic of 1824 to 1828. This epidemic covered the Atlantic side of the intertropical zone of North America, from South Carolina (U. S. A.) to the Antilles and Venezuela, and particularly the Mexican coast. The name is derived from the Spanish word *derrengado* (bent, crooked) or *abatido* (dejected), or from the Spanish-American *denguero* (prudish, affected) or *amanerado* (full of mannerisms), and refers to the state of asthenia so characteristically observed in these patients. In 1869, the Royal College of Physicians of London adopted this name in its nomenclature, giving the term ''dengue'' preference over other names for the disease in Europe and America—''*colorado*'' (smutty or ruddy), ''pantomime,'' ''influenza,'' ''dandy-fever,'' ''break-bone fever,'' etc.

This disease was first identified as a specific clinical entity in North and South America and the Antilles by the Spanish and French in the middle of the seventeenth century. At first (Boyce, 1910) it was called *chapetonada* (a disease of Europeans due to change of climate) because of the eruption. It was considered an ''acclimatization fever.'' Others in Guadalupe (1648) described an epidemic of a disease with similar symptoms, and called it *coup de barre* (Finlay, 1912; Levaditi and Lepine, 1938). Later, especially during the nineteenth century, dengue epidemics appeared everywhere in tropical and subtropical zones: on the southern coast of Spain, in Cadiz and Seville (1784-1788); in the Indies (1824-1826); in Greece (1845-1865); on the northern coast of Africa (1856-1868); in all Mediterranean ports (1889); and again in America, from Louisiana (30,000 cases in 1922) down the coast of Mexico as far south as Venezuela, and down to Rio de Janeiro. Last, a serious pandemic occurred in Greece and the eastern Mediterranean area in 1927-1928, with an extensive outbreak in Spain. This ended, for a time, the epidemic cycles of dengue, with endemic foci left in many places. I personally observed the epidemics in Greece and Spain (1928) and later studied a more limited outbreak in Havana (Cuba) in October-November, 1944. (Pittaluga, 1945.)

SYMPTOMATOLOGY AND DEVELOPMENT OF THE CLINICAL SYNDROME

The disease usually lasts 5 or 6 days. The period of incubation is brief: 2 to 7 days (Zuelzer, 1874; Guiteras and Cartaya, 1906; Manoussakis, 1928; Simmons, 1931). The prodromal period is mild. Healthy individuals experience a mild headache, general indefinite malaise, and at times a state of excitation at the beginning of the disease. The following day there is rapid elevation of temperature, 38.5° to 39° C., in some cases as high as 40° C., and an intense headache severe enough to confine the patient to bed. The headache seldom has the characteristics of migraine. It is a cranial pain, sometimes so pronounced that it requires not only the usual sedatives to which it responds very little, but also the application of ice bags. Soon absolute anorexia occurs, at times with veritable pronounced food repugnance; thirst and constipation are also symptoms.

These symptoms are accompanied by spasmodic epigastric sensation, without true pain, without rigid or painful abdomen, without any diarrhea, but with polyuria and pollakiuria lasting 2 to 3 days. It shows, at times, from the first day on, a cutaneous hyperemia, principally on the face and upper part of the body, which has an aspect of transitory diffuse hyperemia. On the third or fourth day there occurs a true exanthem. In connection with the symptoms described above, there appears a crisis; the intense headache disappears, and the fever, which tends to be low from the third day, becomes normal or, in some patients, there is fleeting hypothermia, with more or less marked asthenia which can induce a state of syncope. The tongue in this period is thickly coated. There is an eruptive polymorphous rash appearing much like the

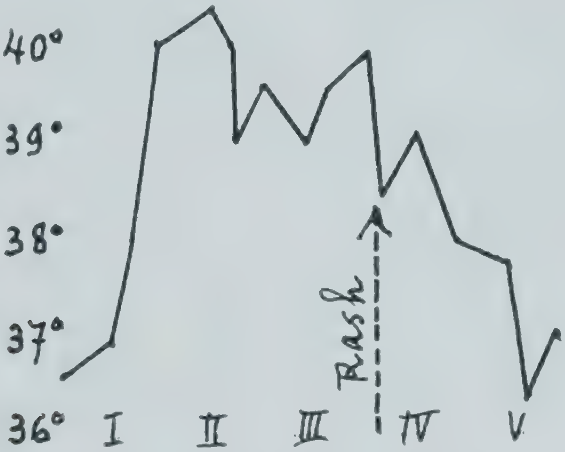


Fig. 135.—Temperature curve and appearance of the "rash" (between the third and fourth day) in a case of dengue observed in Greece (Manoussakis).

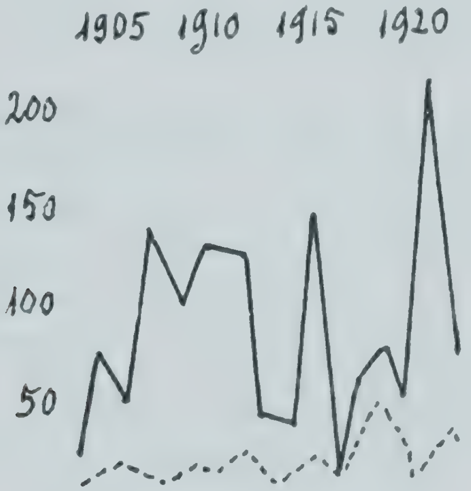


Fig. 136.—Graph showing the number of cases of dengue in American soldiers (————) as compared with native patients (--------) in the Philippines, from 1905 to 1920 (figures show the percentages for 1,000 individuals in each group) (Silver Hall, Hitchens).

erythema of rubeola. It varies in color and intensity, according to the endocrine and neurovegetative condition of the patients. The rash lasts approximately 2 or 3 days. On the sixth or seventh day there is a light epidermic desquamation, scarcely appreciable in most cases. In some cases, a singular symptom is observed, consisting of acroerythroderma, with slight edema of the palms of the hands, paresthesia, cramps, and itching. In some cases there is pronounced muscular asthenia accompanied by diffuse pain in the muscles, drawing sensation, and, in rare cases, signs of slight cardiac dysfunction. Acroerythroderma, when present, often lasts 3 or 4 days. The neuromuscular asthenia lasts a week or longer after all other symptoms have disappeared. Generally on the seventh day the symptoms subside. No splenomegaly is noted. There is, however, a mild hepatic congestion. No catarrhal or mucous inflammation of the respiratory tract is observed, nor pulmonary symptoms, except in patients with previous bronchopulmonary affections of other origin which may be exacerbated. In rare cases, a slight subicteric tinge is observed. Pronounced photophobia, persistent insomnia, vomiting, and small mucous hemorrhages (mouth, intestine) may be present in some cases but do not constitute true elements of the syndrome. More frequently there is slight albuminuria, with barely observable traces of albumin, without renal lesions. The pulse rate does not increase with the rise in temperature. There is a bradycardia with rarely more than 90 to 100 beats per minute, even during the height of the fever. The blood pressure is often low. Convalescence may be prolonged for 2 or 3 weeks. The mortality of this disease, if uncomplicated, is nil. With the exception of rare complications that originate in some previous illness, all patients recover.

HEMATOLOGY AND SEROLOGY

Dengue does not cause anemia. The red blood cell count usually remains within normal limits, falling, at the most, to 4,500,000 on the fifth or sixth day. Loss of red blood cells is, therefore, very slight, but there may be mild hematoxic signs such as anisocytosis and poikilocytosis. Leucopenia is a constant finding. In my experience the count fluctuates between 1,000 and 4,000 leucocytes per cubic millimeter on the fifth day, although in most cases it is not below 3,000 (Stitt, 1907; Joannides, 1930; Simmons, St. John, and Reynolds, 1931; Pittaluga, 1945). The leucopenia is accompanied by a relative monocytosis which may be as high as 14 per cent according to Joannides and others (1930). There may be toxic changes, both cytoplasmic and nuclear, of the neutrophilic granulocytes, often with karyorrhexis (fragmentation of the nuclear mass), and pathologic granules. There is a left shift in the differential picture. Young forms, metamyelocytes and stabs, increase beginning on the third day. The differential count and the white count return to normal soon after the beginning of convalescence. No immature or pathologic cells have ever been observed in the blood stream (Simmons et al., 1931; Pittaluga, 1945).

Coles (1937) described the presence of small endoglobular corpuscles in blood preparations from dengue patients. This finding has not been confirmed by other observers.

Degenerative changes in the leucocytes, particularly the polymorphonuclears, have been ascribed to a circulating leucotoxin in the plasma, perhaps with myelotoxic action (Joannides). This may account for the leucopenia. Experimental proof is lacking.

Serologic investigations are negative.* The serum of patients after an attack of dengue does not seem to contain antibodies capable of neutralizing the virus. Blanc and Caminopetros proved during the Greek epidemic that the plasma or the serum of convalescent patients has no protective action in vivo or in vitro (Blanc and Caminopetros in Levaditi, 1938).

PATHOLOGIC ANATOMY AND PATHOLOGY

Autopsies have rarely been performed in dengue. The pathologic findings reported by some investigators (Corpanaris, 1928; Photakis, 1929), during the great epidemic, must be accepted with reservations because of the possibility of other existing pathologic processes. The only lesions attributable to dengue are hepatic congestion with slight hepatitis, without inflammatory foci, slight myocarditis, congestion or hemorrhagic lesions of the gastrointestinal mucosa. Spleen and adrenals are normal. There are no lymphatic glandular inflammatory reactions.

EPIDEMIOLOGY AND TRANSMISSION

Epidemics of dengue correspond to the geographic distribution of mosquitoes of the genus Aëdes (Stegomyia). Graham in Syria (Beyrouth, 1903) first demonstrated the transfer of dengue by mosquitoes without giving the exact species of the vector. Later, Cleland, Bradley, and McDonald (1916) in Australia and Siler, Hall, and Hitchens (1925) in the Philippines excluded mosquitoes of the genus Culex, particularly *Culex fatigans*, although transmission of the disease in the eastern part of the Mediterranean had been attributed to this species. Siler, Hall, and Hitchens (1926) proved that transmission is effected by mosquitoes of the genus Aëdes, particularly by *A. aegypti (Stegomyia fasciata)*. The great epidemic in Greece in 1928 verified these facts in an incontroversial way. Blanc and collaborators (1938) showed that there were two successive epidemics: one in the fall of 1927 with approximately 20,000 cases; another from June through October, 1928. The following year, 1929, cases appeared only sporadically. The number of known cases between July and October of 1928 in the Greek provinces in which Aëdes mosquitoes are abundant was close to 800,000; in the districts of Western Macedonia, where Aëdes is rarely found, if found at all, a total of 167 cases was reported. The epidemic of "colorado"† ("ruddy fever") in Andalusia (Spain) in the same year, in the Mediterranean littoral, and along the river valleys, was not seen in areas where the Aëdes mosquito is found. In the Philippines, Simmons et al. (1930) confirmed the epidemiologic and experimental data by demonstrating that a local species of this mosquito, *Aëdes albopictus,* transmits the dengue virus. It is apparent, then, that the old hypothesis previously presented in Havana (Cuba) at the turn of the century by Agramonte and others can be confirmed: that the dengue virus is transmitted to man by the same insect vectors that transmit the virus of yellow fever.

Dengue follows the geographic distribution and number of Aëdes between 30 degrees north and 30 degrees south latitude. In Asia, India; in Africa, the west coast and equatorial Africa; in Europe, the Mediterranean area; in America, the shores of Louisiana through Mexico, the Antilles down to Brazil. Through extraordinary rapidity of invasion and the intensity of propagation, the virulence of the epidemic is shortly exhausted and remains for years in a latent state, with rare sporadic cases among persons not immunized by previous epidemics (Blanc, 1938; van Rooyen and Rhodes, 1940).

---

*A different opinion has lately been expressed by A. B. Sabin.

†Not identical with Colorado tick fever.

PATHOGENIC AGENT

It is not necessary to consider here the hypotheses or supposed discoveries of pathogenic agents of dengue which have never been confirmed. McMullin (1919) suggested the possibility that dengue is simply an allergic manifestation caused by repeated inoculations of proteins contained in the fluid from the salivary glands of mosquitoes. We must recall the mistaken theory of the spirochetal nature of the virus of yellow fever which followed Noguchi's error (1919) with respect to *Leptospira icteroides.* Finally, the possibility of Rickettsiae (Sellards and Siler, 1928) in mosquitoes of the Aëdes genus infected by dengue patients was also disproved and abandoned.

The work of Ashburn and Craig in the Philippines (1907) initiated the scientific studies of dengue virus. The combined results of the investigations carried out in the last few years are as follows (Blanc, 1938; van Rooyen and Rhodes, 1940): The virus passes through most filters and is found in high concentration in the blood during the period of fever (Blanc and Caminopetros; Manoussakis, 1928; Kligler and Aschner, 1928; Simmons et al., 1931). Cultures in the chick embryo, obtained by Shortt, Rao, and Swaminath (1936), with blood from cases of dengue have caused lesions on the chorio-allantoic membrane.

The virus retains its virulence in the serum of patients at room temperature for one to two months, according to Blanc and Caminopetros (1930). The virus resists temperatures as low as −20° C. for at least 48 hours (Holt, Fleming, and Kintner, 1931), and x-rays and ultraviolet rays. Hoffmann, Mertens, and Snijder (1932), in Amsterdam, succeeded in transmitting the disease to volunteers by injection of desiccated blood serum shipped from Java and preserved for 285 days. Manoussakis demonstrated that the virus is destroyed by heat of 50° C. for one-half hour.

Direct transmission of infected blood to normal individuals causes a typical disease—experimental dengue. Mosquitoes become infected when they feed on patients during the first three days of the disease. After the fourth day, the proportion of infected mosquitoes seems to be less (Kamal). Chandler, Blanc, Caminopetros, and others succeeded in infecting groups of Aëdes mosquitoes with blood of patients on the fifth day of infection. The virus can be found in the cerebrospinal fluid. Nasopharyngeal exudate and urine have always been negative as infecting agents.

TRANSMITTING INSECTS

In the Mediterranean basin and in Africa and Central American foci, *A. aegypti* is the transmitter. In the Philippines, Simmons et al. (1930) demonstrated that two species of the same genus, *A. albopictus* and *A. scutellaris,* can be vectors. *A. albopictus* is also found in Sumatra, according to Snijder, Dinger, and Schüffner (1931), who succeeded in transporting infected *A. albopictus* from Sumatra to Amsterdam and in reproducing typical cases of dengue in volunteers through the bite of these mosquitoes. Chandler and Rice (1923) obtained positive inoculations with the *Aëdes argenteus* species in Texas.

The role of *Culex fatigans* in the transmission and epidemiology of dengue has been rejected by Kligler, Aschner, Blanc, and Caminopetros (1928), and others. Transmission of the virus is not a purely mechanical function; it represents a biologic process, the conditions and phases of which are still not known. The mosquitoes are not infectious for 7 to 10 days after biting a dengue patient. The infected insect ceases to be infective when the atmospheric temperature drops to 18° C.

Blanc and Caminopetros (1928) obtained positive results of transmission by infected Aëdes after a period of 84 days. These mosquitoes were kept in the laboratory at 22° C. A group of Aëdes gave positive results 174 days after they had been experimentally infected. This long survival of the virus may explain, in part, the diffusion and duration of the great epidemic outbreaks, since the same mosquito can infect several persons successively (Blanc, 1938).

The identity of the transmitting mosquito, when considered with the corresponding endemic foci, has suggested the probability that dengue virus is merely an attenuated virus of yellow fever. Cuban physicians at the beginning of this century, particularly Agramonte and Guiteras (1906), studied this problem with reference to the differential diagnosis of the two diseases. The more recent experiences with cross immunity, however, show that the dengue virus is capable of producing in monkeys *(Macaca mulatta* or *rhesus)* a certain degree of protective action against inoculations of the yellow fever virus (Dinger and Snijder, 1931).

RESULTS OF EXPERIMENTAL INOCULATION

As to experimental inoculation of animals, we must depend exclusively upon results obtained in monkeys. In the lower animals—guinea pigs, rats, rabbits, dogs—the virus can probably be propagated without apparent symptoms, according to Koizumi et al. (1917), Blanc and Caminopetros (1928).*

IMMUNITY

Immunity developed during dengue infection is possible, but it is variable and usually of short duration. Simmons et al. (1931), Sharp and Hollar (1935), and Blanc and Caminopetros (1930), Manoussakis, and others (1931) in Greece agree in assuming that there is acquired immunity for one to four years. In endemic zones, at the start of an epidemic, few natives develop the disease, but a large proportion of individuals who live away from the endemic zone, as well as newcomers to the region, become ill. Epidemic outbreaks, even when most intense, as in Greece (1928) or in Spain (1928-1929), terminate abruptly, with only a few sporadic cases remaining. This can be explained only on the basis of an immunity acquired during a mass attack. Finally, experimental observations—inoculation of virus into individuals who have recovered from dengue—point to the existence of very definite immunity.

There is no proof of the existence of any protective action in the sera of convalescents (Holt, Fleming, and Kintner, 1931; Manoussakis, Blanc, and others). Fresh and old sera were both used; some sera were concentrated; some were administered as early as the first day of the disease; some were administered as a preventive measure—yet no protecting antibodies were found.

DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

During epidemics, diagnosis of dengue is quite easy, because these cases present a stereotyped syndrome. With sporadic or isolated cases, or even

---

*Editor's note (O. F.): For mouse adaptation, see Sabin, A. B., and Schlesinger, R. W.: 1945. Science, **101**: 640.

among the first patients examined at the beginning of an epidemic, a differential diagnosis is difficult between grippe (influenza) or some eruptive disease, particularly measles, or an attenuated form of rickettsiosis (spotted fever). The clinical syndrome of dengue appears quite characteristic to a careful observer; it can be readily distinguished from other infectious, endemic-epidemic processes. No matter what part of the body is affected in grippe or influenza, including the gastrointestinal form, the mucosae, particularly of the respiratory tract, are always invaded. These are not affected in dengue. On the other hand, the neurotoxic symptoms of grippe are relatively latent, while in dengue these symptoms are prodromal—headache, anorexia, asthenia, and pyloric-splanchnic spasms. Last, there is no ''rash'' in influenza as there is in the more or less diffuse form of dengue. Caution is advised in dealing with children, bearing in mind the possibility of many other conditions, of measles particularly. The fleeting character of the rash is more pronounced in dengue. Signs of congestion of the mucous membranes, conjunctiva, etc., do not occur in dengue as they do in influenza.

PROGNOSIS

Prognosis is favorable except in complicated cases. Death rate does not exceed 0.03 per cent (statistics of McCallum and Dwyer, during the epidemic of Queensland, 1927; of Blanc et al. in Greece, 1928; and of Calvo and others in Spain, 1929). During epidemics, the hematoxic and neurotoxic effects of dengue increase mortality among patients already affected by chronic disease such as tuberculosis and diseases of the liver and of the heart.

Complications not only obscure the prognosis in some cases but may also affect the differential diagnosis. These are: (1) gastric hemorrhage, renal complications, etc., at times mucocutaneous hemorrhages which on certain rare occasions (Georgopoulos, 1928) reveal endothelial or vascular origin; (2) ocular lesions—iritis, keratitis, and paralysis of the oculomotor nerve; (3) changes in the nervous system, particularly neuritis, at times transitory psychosis with extreme asthenia; (4) cardiac changes, usually functional, rarely a true myocarditis.

TREATMENT

Treatment is purely symptomatic. It necessitates bed rest, liquid diet, vitamin C, or orange or lemon juices. Aspirin is given the first few days. Antibiotics are of no avail. Sulfonamides are dangerous and should not be administered because of the leucopenia; they are not indicated from an etiologic point of view.

PROPHYLAXIS

Individual prophylaxis by vaccination has been tried with doubtful results to date—an active serum treated with bile (Blanc and collaborators).* General prophylaxis consists of campaigns to destroy the mosquitoes that transmit the disease.

---

*Editor's note (O. F.): A very promising vaccine has been described by Sabin, A. B., and Schlesinger, R. W.

PHLEBOTOMUS FEVER (SAND-FLY FEVER)

Phlebotomus fever, or sand-fly fever, has been known for a long time by a variety of names—"pappataci fever," "three-day fever," "dog fever," etc.—in Italy and the Balkans. It is an acute fever with rapid course, first studied by Doerr et al. (1909). The pathogenic agent appears to be a virus transmitted to man by the bite of a small diptera of the genus Phlebotomus, especially by the species *Phlebotomus pappatasii*.

CLINICAL SYMPTOMS

The clinical syndrome has frequently been confused with dengue. It differs in its more rapid course. The fever usually lasts for 3 days, increasing to 39° to 40° C. (104° F.) at first. There is intense reddening of the face and congestion of the conjunctiva (swollen and bloodshot eyes, "dog eyes," hence the German name "Hundskrankheit" or the English "dog disease"). There is no real "rash" but dry skin with papules and isolated vesicles, extending in many cases to the tongue, palate, and mucous membranes of the mouth. Hypersensitivity, often localized pains in various parts of the body, indicates possible involvement of the nervous system in the disease. Trabaud (1931) observed these nervous symptoms. Jayle, Mastier, and Rameev (1935) described neuroretinitis in some cases; LeGac and Albrand and others (1937-1940) noted alterations of the cerebrospinal fluid—increase of pressure, albumin, and cell count. These observations proved the neurotoxic action of the virus. Relative bradycardia, even during the short period of fever, and especially persistent leucopenia (van Rooyen and Rhodes, 1940), around 3,000 to 3,500 leucocytes per cubic millimeter (on the fourth or fifth day), without anemia, are characteristics in common with dengue.

EPIDEMIOLOGY AND GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

Epidemiology and geographic distribution of the disease are related to the ecology of Phlebotomus, particularly *Phlebotomus pappatasii* Shortt. Endemic foci are found in the Balkans (Adriatic Coast, Yugoslavia, Italy, and Greece) (Gabbi, 1915; Sergent, 1914; Whittingham and Rook, 1923); in North Africa (Algeria, Egypt, Sudan, Kenya) (Jewell and Kauntze, 1932); in southern Russia (Petrov, 1931; Gridnew, 1929); in northern India (Punjab, Chitral, etc.) (McCarrison, 1906; Poole nad Sachs, 1934); in China (Yang, 1934); and in South America (Colombia, Venezuela) (Cogollo Duque, 1935).

Diptera of the genus Phlebotomus are transmitters of pathogenic protozoa of the genus Leishmania. These protozoa produce diseases important in tropical pathology, such as kala-azar and espundia. The possible relationship between sand-fly fever and leishmaniasis has not been studied and is therefore unknown. They are two entirely different diseases.

The virus of sand-fly fever has been studied during the past few years by Kligler and Aschner (1928), by Shortt, Poole, and Stephens (1935), Shortt, Pandit, and Rao (1938), and others. It has been cultivated on the chorioallantoic membrane of the chick embryo and in tissue cultures and successfully inoculated into monkeys (Macacus) (Tedeschi and Napolitani, 1911; Shortt, Poole and Stephens, 1935). It remains virulent upon experimental animal inoculation. Lower mammals are refractory to it. Acquired immunity is brief, according to Lepine, Lambert, Shortt, and collaborators (1935), although McCarrison demonstrated that injection of 2 c.c. of infective blood did not produce symptoms of the disease in subjects who had recovered from an attack (Birt, 1915).

DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

Differential diagnosis is not always easy, particularly from the early stages of dengue or from influenza.

TREATMENT

Treatment is purely symptomatic. Absolute rest is necessary during illness and tonics during convalescence.

PROPHYLAXIS

Since no vaccine is available at present, prophylaxis must be limited to prevention of bite by the Phlebotomus. These insects are not infectious if the atmospheric temperature drops to 54° F. (18° C.) according to Whittingham and others (1923). Aromatic substances, such as oil of citronella, keep them away. They live in low, damp, dark places, in basements, behind furniture, etc. The upper floors of dwellings are usually free from Phlebotomus. Successful campaigns against the larvae of these diptera are more difficult to carry out than against the larvae of the common mosquitoes (Anopheles, Culex, Aëdes).

RIFT VALLEY FEVER

Rift Valley fever is a disease of sheep and newborn lambs and is transmissible to man. It was discovered in 1931 in Kenya Colony (East Africa) by Daubney, Hudson, and Garnham (1931) and later observed by others in the Sudan and in West Africa. Cases of experimental accidental infection have been observed in laboratories (Kitchen, 1934; Francis and Magill, 1935), one with thrombophlebitic complications terminating fatally (Schwentker and Rivers, 1934).

CLINICAL SYMPTOMS

Clinical symptoms in man are similar to those of dengue, although they are more acute—headache, nausea, vomiting, chills, sudden fever (39° C. or more), transitory joint and muscle pains, hepatic congestion, subicteric tint, neurotoxic signs, vertigo, photophobia, and, at times, mental confusion. There is also pronounced leucopenia with a tendency toward agranulocytosis. Findlay (1932), Francis and Magill (1935), and others observed toxic changes in the cytoplasm and nuclei of granulocytes with persistent leucopenia during the period of convalescence

THE VIRUS

In susceptible animals, the virus produces hepatitis with necrotic foci, without perihepatitis and without splenomegaly, although the spleen, in infected sheep and lambs, may show hemorrhagic foci. Sometimes pericarditis, as well as hemorrhagic nephritis, is present.

The virus is filtrable, as is that of dengue. According to observations of Broom and Findlay (1933), it is about 23 to 35 millimicrons. Certain species of African monkeys, such as the Cebus, are particularly susceptible to the virus (Findlay, 1932). The virus is decidedly pathogenic for rodents (Rattus, Epymis, Cricetus, Microtus, and others).

Protective antibodies have been found in the blood of experimentally infected animals. These antibodies are able to neutralize 1,000 rat units of the virus (Schwentker and Rivers, 1934). Findlay and MacCallum (1937) demonstrated a certain degree of antagonism between the virus of Rift Valley fever and the virus of yellow fever. Other observers have insisted upon a possible common origin of the two viruses which cause very similar hepatic-cellular lesions and which are probably transmitted by the same mosquitoes of the genus Aëdes. Daubney and Hudson, however, stated that the virus of Rift Valley fever can survive on the pupa of the tick of *Rhipicephalus appendiculatus* for 7 days without losing its virulence. It may also be transmitted by direct contact (van Rooyen and Rhodes, 1940).

References

Agramonte, A.: 1906. Clinic Notes Upon a Recent Epidemic of Dengue, American Society of Tropical Medicine, Philadelphia, May.
Ashburn, P. M., and Craig, C. F.: 1907. Philippine J. Sc. B. **2**: 97; id J. Infect. Dis. **4**: 440.
Birt, C.: 1915. Brit. M. J. **2**: 158.
Blanc, G.: 1938. Dengue. In the Treatise of Levaditi, C., and Lepine, P.: Les Ultravirus des Maladies Humaines, Paris, Maloine, vol. 2, pp. 42, 823, 835, 836, 838, 840, 846, 847-858, 853, 860.
Blanc, G., and Caminopetros, J.: 1928. Bull. Soc. path. exot. Paris **21**: 525.
Blanc, G., and Caminopetros, J.: 1929. Arch. de l'Inst. Pasteur hellén. **2**: 277.
Blanc, G., and Caminopetros, J.: 1928. Arch. de l'Inst. Pasteur hellén. **2**: 176.
Blanc, G., and Caminopetros, J.: 1930. Ann. de l'Inst. Pasteur, Paris **44**: 367.
Boyce, R.: 1910. J. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **13**: 357.
Broom, J. C., and Findlay, G. M.: 1933. Brit. J. Exper. Path. **14**: 179.
Chandler, A. C., and Rice, L.: 1923. Am. J. Trop. Med. **3**: 233.
Cleland, J. B., Bradley, B., and McDonald, W.: 1916. M. J. Australia **2**: 179.
Coles, A. C.: 1937. J. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **40**: 52.
Corpanaris, P.: 1928. Bull. de l'Office internat. d'hyg. pub. **20**: 159.
Couvy, L.: 1921. Bull. Soc. path. exot. **14**: 198.
Daubney, R., Hudson, J. R., and Garnham, P. C.: 1931. J. Path. & Bact. **34**: 545.
Dinger, J. E., and Snijder, E. P.: 1931. Arch. f. Schiffs- u. Tropen-Hyg. **35**: 497.
Doerr, R., Franz, K., and Taussig, S.: 1909. Das Pappataci—Fieber, Vienna.
Duque, J. Cogollo: 1935. Bol. Ofic. San. Panamer. **14**: 1143.
Findlay, G. M.: 1932. Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **25**: 229.
Findlay, G. M., and MacCallum, F. O.: 1937. J. Path. Bact. **44**: 405.
Finlay, Carlos: 1912. Trabajos Selectos, Havana, p. 132.
Francis, T., and Magill, T. P.: 1935. J. Exper. Med. **62**: 433.
Gabbi, U.: 1915. Arch. f. Schiffs- u. Tropen-Hyg. **19**: 160.
Georgopoulos, M.: 1928. München. med. Wchnschr. **75**: 2.
Graham, H.: 1903. J. Trop. Med. **6**: 209.
Gridnew, V. M.: 1929. Russk. j. trop. med. **6**: 69.
Guiteras, J., and Cartaya, J. T.: 1906. Rev. de med. trop., Habana **7**: 39.
Hoffmann, J. M., Mertens, W. K., and Snijder, E. P.: 1932. Proc. Acad. Sc. Amsterdam **85**: 909.
Holt, R. L., Fleming, W. D., and Kintner, J. H.: 1931. Philippine J. Sc. **66**: 593, 601.
Jayle, G. E., and Mastier, P.: 1935. Bull. Soc. franç. Ophth. **45**: 273.
Jewell, N. P., nad Kauntze, W. H.: 1932. Handbook of Tropical Fevers, London.
Joannides, G. S.: 1930. Arch. de l'Inst. Pasteur hellén. **2**: 295.
Kitchen, S. F.; 1934. Am. J. Trop. Med. **14**: 547.
Kligler, I. J., and Aschner, M.: 1928. Ann. Trop. Med. **22**: 151.

Koizumi, T., Yamaguchi, K., and Tonomura, K.: 1917. J. M. A. Formosa (ref. in Trop. Dis. Bull., 1918, **12**: 77).

LeGac, P., and Albrand, L.: 1937. Bull. Soc. path. exot. Paris **30**: 354.

Lepine, P.: 1927. Bull. Soc. path. exot. Paris **20**: 251.

Levaditi, C., and Lepine, A. C.: Les Ultravirus, Cap. I. vol.

Manoussakis, E.: 1928. Recherches sur la Fievre Dengue, Paris, France.

Manoussakis, E.: 1928. Bull. Soc. path. exot. **21**: 200.

Manoussakis, E.: 1931. Rev. d'hyg. **53**: 18.

McCallum, F., and Dwyer, J. P.: 1927. M. J. Australia **1**: 10.

McCarrison: 1906. Indian M. Gaz. **41**: 7.

McMullin, J. J. A.: 1919. U. S. Nav. M. Bull. **13**: 87.

Petrov, V. P.: 1931. Ref. in Trop. Dis. Bull. **28**: 94.

Photakis, B. A.: 1929. Arch. f. Schiffs- u. Tropen-Hyg. **33**: 333.

Pittaluga, G.: 1938. Les Infections a Bartonella, Bull. Inst. Pasteur **36**: 961.

Pittaluga, G.: 1945. Rev. de med. trop. y parasitol., bacteriol., clín. y lab. **11**: 1.

Poole, L. T., and Sachs, A.: 1934. J. Roy. Army M. Corps **63**: 73.

Schwentker, F. F., and Rivers, T. M.: 1934. J. Exper. Med. **59**: 305.

Sellards, A. W., and Siler, J. F.: 1928. Am. J. Trop. Med. **8**: 299.

Sergent, E.: 1914. Bull. Soc. path. exot. Paris **7**: 660.

Siler, J. F., Hall, M. W., and Hitchens, A. P.: 1926. Philippine J. Sc. **29**: 1.

Siler, J. F., Hall, M. W., and Hitchens, A. P.: 1926. Dengue. Monograph No. 20, Bureau of Science, Manila.

Sharp, W. B., and Hollar, E.: 1935. Am. J. Trop. Med. **15**: 247.

Shortt, H. E., Poole, L. T., and Stephens, E. D.: 1935. Indian J. M. Research **23**: 279.

Shortt, H. E., Pandit, C. G., and Rao, R. S.: 1938. Indian J. M. Research **26**: 229.

Shortt, H. E., Rao, R. S., and Swaminath, C. S.: 1936. Indian J. Med. Res. **23**: 865.

Simmons, J. S., St. John, J. H., and Reynolds, F. H. K.: 1930. Philippine J. Sc. **41**: 215.

Simmons, J. S.: 1931. Am. J. Trop. Med. **11**: 77.

Simmons, J. S., St. John, J. H., and Reynolds, F. H. K.: 1931. Philippine J. Sc. **44**: 4.

Snijder, E. P., Dinger, E. G., and Schüffner, W. A. P.: 1931. Am. J. Trop. Med. **11**: 171.

Stitt, E. R.: 1907. U. S. Nav. M. Bull. **1**: 30.

Tedeschi, A., and Napolitani, M.: 1911. Centralbl. Bakt. Orig. I, 61.

Trabaud, J.: 1931. Bull. Acad. Med. Paris **105**: 218.

Van Rooyen, C. E., and Rhodes, A. J.: 1940. Virus Diseases of Man, London, Oxford University Press, p. 421, 424, 432, 510.

Vervoort, H.: 1922. Nederl. Tijdschr. v. Geneesk. **63**: 800.

Vervoort, H.: 1923. Nederl. Tijdschr. v. Geneesk. **63**: 169.

Whittingham, H. E., and Rook, A. F.: 1923. Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. London **17**:

Yang, F. H.: 1934. Far-East A. Trop. Med. Nanking **1**: 495.

Zuelzer, W.: 1874. Dengue Oder Dandy-Fieber; in Handb. d. Spez. Pathol. de Ziemssen, Leipzig 2: 482.

CHAPTER 20

PSITTACOSIS
(ORNITHOSIS, PSITACOSIS)

KARL F. MEYER

DEFINITION

Psittacosis, although primarily an avian infection, occurs sporadically and in epidemics among human beings in many parts of the world. It is an acute, specific disease, characterized in the early stages by high fever and but slight physical involvement, and later by patchy pneumonitis and severe toxemia. It is caused by a viral agent *(Miyagawanella psittaci)* which primarily attacks reticuloendothelial cells. It is acquired by exposure to psittacine birds, pigeons, ducks, chickens, and petrels.

HISTORY

The first two cases of psittacosis were described by Jürgensen (1876). At Ulster, Switzerland, in 1879, Ritter described 7 cases of a peculiar, acute pneumonia, with 3 deaths; the outbreak coincided with the arrival of imported sick parrots in the vicinity. He reported the disease by the clinically correct and descriptive title of ''pneumotyphus'' but emphasized that pneumonia and typhoid were not epidemic there at the time. Autopsies on the birds were negative. Similar observations were made at Bern in 1882 (Ost), at Leipzig in 1886 (Wagner), and at Bonn in 1887. A large outbreak (47 cases with 13 deaths) in Paris in 1892, which followed importation of parrots from Buenos Aires, was investigated by Dujardin-Beaumetz, who concluded that it was of human origin since a certain number of patients apparently had no contact with the suspected birds, many of which showed no signs of illness. The following year, Dubief established conclusively that a household outbreak of 5 cases, with 3 deaths, was caused by contact with an infected parrot. Strong support favoring the concept of a specific infection was gained through the work of Nocard, who fatally infected a healthy parrot by placing in its cage the dried wings of parrots involved in the Paris epidemic of 1892. He also isolated from the wings a gram-negative, motile bacillus, Nocard's bacillus, which Gilbert and Fournier considered etiologically related to the parrot and human diseases. This organism, known as *Bacillus psittacosis,* is indistinguishable from *Salmonella typhimurium,* and was not demonstrated in subsequent epidemics. The name ''psittacosis'' (from the Latin *psittacus,* a parrot) was given by A. Morange in 1895 in a thesis summarizing experiences with the disease in France.

The history of the disease in countries other than France is of interest. Outbreaks in Italy were traced to importations of Amazon parrots. In Germany (Duhringsdorf, 1892, and Krefeld, 1899) the human disease was observed to follow exposure to parakeets or lovebirds. The most important outbreak due to this species of the parrot family occurred at Zülpich (near Cologne) in 1909, when 2 apparently healthy parakeets infected their owners, 5 nurses, and 19 visitors who had congregated at the funeral of the husband. Careful bacteriologic examination of a sacrificed parakeet yielded indifferent streptococci (Bachem, Selter, and Finkler, 1910). Direct contagion from person to person, although rare, was incontestably established by Leichtenstern (1898), who investigated several outbreaks in Cologne. Prior to 1929, psittacosis was rare in England (Beddoes, 1914, and Thomson, 1929) and in the United States. An outbreak in Wilkes-Barre, Pennsylvania, reported by McClintock in 1917, resembled in many ways those occurring in this country during the past seventeen years. The infection had doubtless been endemic in bird stores for many years but had escaped detection as a human disease. Although the Paris epidemic of 1892 was caused by parrots coming from South America, only one case in 1904 has been described by Souza in Brazil.

From a relatively obscure disease, human psittacosis was suddenly raised to a malady of world-wide interest in 1929-1930, when it appeared in twelve different countries and involved approximately 750 to 800 persons. Careful inquiries by Roubakine (1930), by Elkeles and Barros (1931), and by Barros (1940) indicate that South American parrots were the main source of the infection and that the world-wide distribution sprang from an epizootic among parrots in Brazil (for details, see Meyer, 1942). With the discovery by Meyer and Eddie in 1931 and 1932 of the prevalence of latent psittacosis in local breeding establishments and aviaries in California, observations later confirmed in Canada, Germany, Austria, Holland, and England, the endemicity and the independence of the disease from imported birds were established. Evidence furnished by Meyer and Eddie, and later by Burnet, conclusively proved the existence of psittacosis in wild Australian parakeets, parrots, lorikeets, and cockatoos. Canaries and finches are proved sources of human infections. Later, it was further recognized that the bird-to-man infection chain does not depend solely on parrots and parakeets. Viral agents morphologically indistinguishable from psittacosis have been demonstrated in fulmars and petrels *(Fulmar glacialis)* by Haagen and Mauer (1939); in pigeons by Coles (1941), Meyer, Eddie, and Yanamura (1942), Smadel, Wall, and Gregg (1943), and Labzoffsky (1947); in chickens by Meyer and Eddie (1942); and in Pekin ducks and sea gulls by Eddie and Meyer (1947). The infection spectrum thus far known is exceedingly broad, and spontaneous parasitism by the viral agents in many different birds and even mammals may be anticipated.

It was not until the 1929-1930 pandemic that Lillie (1930) in the United States, the British microscopist Coles (1930), and Levinthal (1930) in Germany discovered the minute viral bodies in exudates, blood, and organs of human beings, birds, and experimentally infected mammals. In rapid succession, Krumwiede and associates, Armstrong and McCoy in the United States, Bedson and Western in England, Levinthal in Germany, and Sacquépée in France established the disease agent as a filtrable virus, while subsequent studies by Bedson (1930), Gordon (1930), and Bedson and Bland (1932) definitely confirmed the etiologic relationship. The discovery by Krumwiede, McGrath, and Oldenbusch, that the virus is readily transmitted to white mice, enabled Bedson to demonstrate the morphologic cycle in mammalian tissues. Propagation of virus in embryonated eggs by Burnet and Rountree (1935), and tissue culture technics devised by Bland and Canti (1935), Lazarus and Meyer (1939), and Yanamura and Meyer (1941) furnished antigens for immunologic studies and aided development of the complement fixation test. Demonstration of the viral agent in the sputum of patients by Rivers and Berry (1932 and 1935) advanced diagnostic technics. A reproducible neutralization test enabled Hilleman (1945) to differentiate the antigenic relationship of avian and mammalian psittacosis viral agents. Observations on a high person-to-person communicability of psittacosis-like agents (Louisiana outbreak, Olson and Treuting, 1944) encourages the hypothesis that nonavian, possibly human strains may play a role in the ecology of the disease (Eaton et al., 1941, Meiklejohn, et al., 1944, Smadel, 1943, and Zichis and Shaughnessy, 1945). The study of human primary pneumonia not incurred by known bacteria has in recent years led to the discovery of viral agents indistinguishable from those causing psittacosis. Additional psittacosis-like viruses were isolated from the respiratory tract of both apparently healthy and diseased mammals. The viruses which comprise this group are listed in the current literature under the following names: Miagawanellae, meningopneumonitis virus, mouse pneumonitis virus, Australian mouse pneumonitis virus, feline pneumonitis virus, San Francisco (S.F.), the Illinois, and the Louisiana pneumonitis viruses (Reiman, 1947).

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Geographic Distribution

Statistical data presented by Elkeles and Barros (1931), Paffenberg (1936), Barros (1940), Meyer (1943), and Meyer and Eddie (1947), although incomplete, fully attest to the world-wide distribution of psittacosis. Sporadic cases and household epidemics have been reported from Algeria, Argentina, Australia, Austria, Brazil, Canada, Czechoslovakia, Denmark, Egypt, England, France, Germany, Guatemala, Hawaiian Islands, Mexico, Netherlands, Poland, Portugal, San Salvador, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland, and the United States. Excepting cases in Algeria traced to South American parrots, the disease has thus far remained unrecognized in Africa, despite at least one infection attributed to psittacine birds recently brought to England from West Africa. The mild, ambulatory, or subclinical infections encountered with increasing frequency in recent years do not appear in current data but are numerous. A tabulation of official and nonofficial histories records for the period 1931-1946 in the United States 554 cases of psittacosis with *62 deaths.* During the early years of this period, the majority of the infections (317 cases) were attributed to distribution and sale of locally bred and raised parakeets, but later restriction on importation of psittacine birds checked this source of infection. With the discovery of infectivity in fulmars, pigeons, and chickens (1940), and more recently in ducks, several hundred human infections (186 fulmars, 103 pigeons, and 5 ducks) have been traced to these birds. Epidemiologists all over the world must carefully investigate every avian and mammalian contact before inquiring into the possibility of human spreaders of virus.

Epidemic Features

The relative infrequency of human cases in Australia, Brazil, Argentina, Mexico, and probably other Latin American countries, where avian psittacosis prevails among wild birds in the natural state, is not surprising in the light of newer knowledge on the natural history of the infection. The existence of epizootics among wild birds has been observed only in rare instances (Burnet and Parodi and Silvetti), since dead bodies are eaten by other animals or decompose. In birds, infection originates from parents in the nest, and infected fledglings either suffer no symptoms or have overcome them by the time they are ready to fly. During the breeding period, females suffer a transient activation of the infection and become shedders of the virus. This invisible, cyclical spread in wild birds in the forests has little opportunity for transfer to human beings, but in domesticated birds its danger is apparent. Parrots are usually caught young, collected in depots, and shipped to all parts of the world. There is ample documentation of birds becoming sick, dying, and proving to be heavily infected with psittacosis a week or two after capture. Overcrowding in shipping cases, unsanitary conditions, and change in climate provoke these mortalities and afford ample opportunity for spread of virus to man. Investigations on aviary-bred parakeets and in pigeon lofts by Meyer and Eddie clarified the ecology of the host-virus reactions. In an infected parakeet aviary, pigeon loft, or zoological garden kept under the best sanitary conditions, the majority of adult birds appear healthy, although virus may be demonstrated in their spleens, livers, and intestinal contents. Occasionally young birds may show signs of illness, such as inactivity, loss of appetite, soiling of the vent, and nasal discharge; a variable proportion may die. Overcrowding, overbreeding, uncleanliness, and lack of care upset the balanced

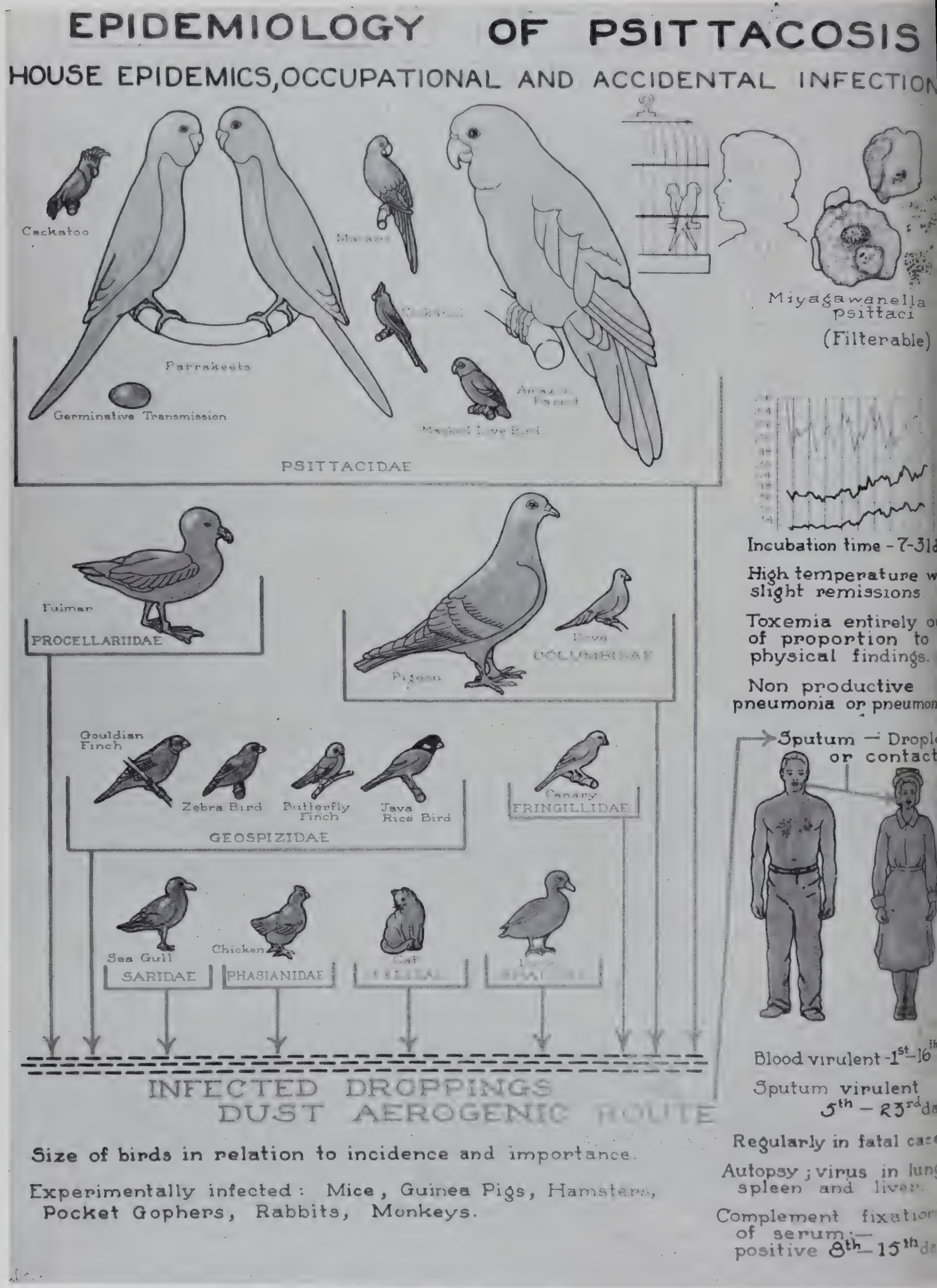

EPIDEMIOLOGY OF PSITTACOSIS
HOUSE EPIDEMICS, OCCUPATIONAL AND ACCIDENTAL INFECTION
Cockatoo
Macaws
Cockatiel
Parrakeets
Germinative Transmission
Amazon Parrot
Masked Love Bird
PSITTACIDAE
Miyagawanella psittaci
(Filterable)
Incubation time - 7-31
High temperature w slight remissions
Toxemia entirely o of proportion to physical findings.
Non productive pneumonia or pneumon
Sputum — Dropl or contact
Fulmar
PROCELLARIIDAE
Pigeon
Dove
COLUMBIDAE
Gouldian Finch
Zebra Bird
Butterfly Finch
Java Rice Bird
GEOSPIZIDAE
Canary
FRINGILLIDAE
Sea Gull
SARIDAE
Chicken
PHASIANIDAE
Cat
INFECTED DROPPINGS
DUST AEROGENIC ROUTE
Blood virulent - 1st-16
Sputum virulent 5th - 23rd da
Regularly in fatal cas
Autopsy; virus in lun spleen and liver.
Complement fixatio of serum:— positive 8th-15th da
Size of birds in relation to incidence and importance.
Experimentally infected: Mice, Guinea Pigs, Hamsters, Pocket Gophers, Rabbits, Monkeys.

Fig. 137.—The epidemiology of psittacosis.

immunity in the individual birds and favor epizootics. Enormous masses of virus are dispersed by sick and dying birds, providing a means of spread to owners, ultimate purchasers, or other contacts. How long psittacine birds or pigeons are infective is not definitely known, but epidemiologic and laboratory observations leave little doubt that they may carry or intermittently shed virus for years.

Fleeting or prolonged exposure in a room, house, pet store, aviary, breeding establishment, pigeon loft, or barnyard where visibly diseased or apparently healthy parrots, parakeets, canaries, pigeons, ducks, or chickens are kept may result in human infections. Usually the responsible birds have been recently acquired. In the past, single cases escaped detection, and the reports deal principally with the well-known house epidemics, which gave the epidemiology of psittacosis its characteristic, stereotyped pattern. Apart from its epidemiologic interest, this feature of the disease is of diagnostic value, especially in differentiating psittacosis from influenza, which is more pandemic and rarely appears in localized outbreaks. The handling of feathers from parrots, or the cleaning of dead fulmars, pigeons, chickens, and ducks have been responsible for infections. Removal of manure from pigeon lofts is not infrequently followed by human psittacosis.

Mode of Transmission

The mode of transmission of the avian virus to man is manifold: (1) Direct contact with the diseased birds or objects fouled by excreta is the most common mode of transmission. (2) Indirect transfer by air played an important role in the Zülpich epidemic, in the cases reported by Horder and Gow (1930), and in the outbreak at the National Institute of Health (McCoy, 1934). (3) Bite wounds may initiate infection (Laubscher et al., 1945). The dispersion of the viral agent adherent to desiccated fecal droppings may be readily demonstrated in "sentinel experiments" with Java sparrows as advocated by Meyer (1942). Furthermore, the ease with which inhalation of virus induces pneumonic lesions in susceptible mammals amply attests to the respiratory tract as the principal portal of entry for the virus. Finally, the main burden of infection in human cases falls on the respiratory tract; lobular distribution of the pneumonic consolidation and inflammation of the mucosa of the upper respiratory tract are constant features of cases that come to autopsy.

DISTRIBUTION AND PREVALENCE

Distribution is world-wide. Statistical data, however, must be considered approximations which deal with frank clinical cases. No attempt has been made to secure information concerning the subclinical or mild cases, often suspected but only occasionally proved serologically, which have been encountered with increasing frequency in recent years.

Seasonal Incidence.—The great epidemics of the past occurred during the winter, and in Germany and Argentina the predominance of the disease at that time of the year (January to April) is striking. The phenomenon is probably due to prolonged and frequent contact with infected birds in the closed rooms of a winter household. It is well to emphasize, however, that severe psittacosis on the Faroë Islands and among pigeon fanciers is not uncommon in midsummer and early fall. Observations indicate that the disease can be contracted throughout the year (Meyer, 1942).

Age, Sex, Race, and Occupation.—People of middle age, rarely children, are involved in the single or multiple case infections which develop in the same household. With the aid of the complement fixation test, Meyer and Eddie (1947) detected 15 juvenile cases of mild pneumonitis in a group of 111 persons handling pigeons, chickens, and parrots who gave positive reactions in diagnostically significant titers. Thus, while disposition is not confined to older age groups, the likelihood of contracting the disease increases with age. The recent isolation of a psittacosis virus from the lung of a 14-year-old boy who handled birds further attests to the susceptibility of younger age groups.

There is a greater incidence of psittacosis in women than in men. The heavier distribution in women is ascribable to propinquity; that is, more women than men raise parakeets commercially or keep them as pets. Where the interest in the bird-raising business has shifted to males, the likelihood of infection and high case fatality rate are well documented. In the outbreak at Córdoba, Spain, which followed auctioning of highly infected birds by male traders and barterers, the ratio of males to females was 49:36 (Barros). That occupational psittacosis is quite common in persons engaged in the breeding, raising, care, transportation, and sale of psittacine birds, pigeons, and ducks has not been accepted by all, although published records amply attest to its existence (Meyer, 1942 and 1943). The apparent immunity of men and women continuously exposed to heavily infected parakeets, parrots, or pigeons is in part attributable to subclinical infections. Limited serologic surveys among employees in aviaries, pigeon lofts, and zoological gardens lend support to this interpretation of epidemiologic observations. A survey of 110 cases in California revealed that 45, or nearly 40 per cent, were owners of parakeet aviaries or pigeon lofts, or that members of their families were. During the height of experimental investigations of psittacosis in 1929 and 1930, 38 laboratory infections were contracted. Despite the institution of precautionary measures, an additional 17 cases with 2 deaths have occurred in Germany, Argentina, and the United States since 1934.

Human Case-to-Case Infection.—Older observations and new reports show the increasing frequency of human case-to-case infections. In at least 23 instances involving 30 nurses, contact with sick birds was definitely excluded. Twice repeated human-to-human passage has been seen by Haagen and Krückeberg (1937), and a chain transmission in the third generation has been reported by Hamre. A physician contracted the disease from a fatal case and was visited by an intern, who developed psittacosis and recovered, but who, while ill, infected his nurse, who died; she in turn had transmitted the virus to a second nurse. More disconcerting are the transmissions which have occurred in hospitals. In an epidemic in Buenos Aires reported by Loizaga and Averbach (1945), interhuman contagion was a striking feature of the outbreak, extending at times to the third passage. The experience detailed by Eaton, Beck, and Pearson (1941) illustrates the infectiousness of a man who transmitted psittacosis to 3 nurses. The 1943 epidemic of a severe pneumonitis in the Bayou region of Louisiana, in which there were 8 deaths in 19 recognized infections among nursing attendants late (48 hours before death) in the illness of fatal cases, emphasizes the importance of direct contact in human-to-human transmission (Treuting and Olson, 1944). Statistics such as these should serve to remind physicians that the occupational hazard to themselves and to nurses is considerable.

ETIOLOGY

The Causative Organism

The infective agent of psittacosis in birds and man is an obligatory intracellular parasite. It is specific and forms particulate elementary bodies. The agent develops in the cytoplasm of the reticuloendothelial cells, in tissue cultures of mesenchyme cells, in fibroblasts, and in epidermis, epithelial, and liver cells, or cells derived from all three embryonic layers (Yanamura and Meyer, 1941). On the basis of morphologic and antigenic similarities, psittacosis agents and those of lymphogranuloma venereum of man and of mouse and feline pneumonitis have been placed in a group intermediate between the rickettsiae and the true filtrable viruses.

The viral agent common to the group is an infective, spherical, or hemispherical—not rod-shaped—elementary body, tinctorially demonstrable with basic dyes. The infective bodies are usually 300 to 450 millimicrons in size and are held back partially or completely by the usual filters. They are readily propagated in the yolk sac of the embryonated hen's egg and in tissue cultures. They are agglutinated by specific antisera and serve as antigens in diagnostic complement fixation tests. They generate protective antibodies in birds and mammals, including man. Moshkovsky (1945) has suggested the name *Miyagawanella psittaci* for the agent and has grouped it in the family of the Chlamydozoaceae.

Morphology and Staining Reactions

In microscopic preparations, thin films made from plastic exudates and stained with Giemsa solution, or preferably according to the method of Macchiavello, the elementary bodies appear as purplish, dark-red, or blue spherical structures, singly or in pairs. In tissue cultures or in material from yolk sacs they increase rapidly in size and become embedded in a homogeneous ground substance or matrix. These initial bodies at first divide into elements of comparable size, but as multiplication progresses, the elements of division become smaller and smaller, until the final elementary body stage is reached (Bland and Canti, 1935). Yanamura and Meyer (1941), by relating morphologic findings in films and sections to the intervals of the dynamic time sequence in tissue cultures, established the following cycle of development:

One or more elementary bodies, which are red when tinged according to Macchiavello, or black-purple according to Castañeda, invade a cell and incite (if the cell is healthy) the formation of a single common matrix. If the virus particles disperse at opposite ends of a cell, each group may be surrounded by a separate matrix, thus inducing double or triple infection foci within one cell. These forms correspond to the ''plaques'' of Bland and Canti, or to the ''inclusion bodies'' of Levinthal. The matrix of the homogeneous inclusion bodies stains blue-green according to Macchiavello and, since it is not densely colored, the early virus particles are readily identified in increasing numbers. These large forms, measuring 2 to 12 microns, appear 18 to 24 hours after infection. As the matrix becomes less dense, tinctorial differences become apparent. The larger virus particles are stained blue, while the smaller forms (0.3 to 0.4 micron) are red.

Electron photographs suggest that the elementary bodies contain a large amount of water and show two components: a dense substance, usually centrally located, and a thinner, surrounding substance, which appears to represent a limiting membrane from which the central mass retracts (Hamre, Rake, and Rake, 1947).

Some elementary bodies have a sticky substance on their surfaces, and it is not unlikely that this is responsible for the different tinctorial reactions. In living preparations, the initial particles, immobile in the originally rigid homogeneous inclusion bodies, increase in motility until finally in the flexible virus colony they undergo rapid oscillatory (Brownian) movement. This change more or less coincides with the conversion from blue to red staining reactions. The inclusion body is always surrounded by a definite membrane which persists even when in multiple infections one or two colonies coalesce. Free dispersal of the elements of a colony through the cytoplasm is rarely observed.

At the forty-eighth hour the matrix of the inclusion body presents evidences of liquefaction. By that time, the elementary bodies which stain deeply red in Macchiavello preparations have become so numerous that they may pack the cytoplasm. Death of the host cell and autolysis of the colony releases myriads of particulate elementary bodies, which are capable of invading and repeating the cycle in new cells.

Levinthal's observation, that in damaged cells the virus multiplies without a definite matrix formation, is readily demonstrated in agar tissue cultures, in which the embryonic cells are merely in a state of functional survival. The time required for completion of the developmental cycle is much shorter. Large and small elementary bodies divide and multiply to enormous numbers in the cytoplasm of highly vacuolated cells. In prepartions stained by the Giemsa method the membrane is quite distinct, although no matrix can be demonstrated. Filtration tests (Lazarus and Meyer, 1939) through collodion membranes and recent electron micrographs by Kurotchkin et al. (1947) established the mean diameter of the elementary bodies as 455 mμ ± 78 mμ. The size of the feline pneumonitis virus in gold-shadowed preparations is reported as 525 mμ ± 84 mμ (Hamre et al., 1947).

The initial bodies in the plaques are always larger than the parent organisms and, according to Bedson and Bland, are low in virulence, since they apparently encounter difficulties in entering into cells. That the cytoplasmic plaques or inclusion bodies are true virus colonies made up of elementary bodies is conclusively established. Merely the exact nature of the matrix remains uncertain. Although findings in tissue cultures strongly incriminate it as a product of the cytoplasm, it is recalled that Findlay (1938) suggested that it may conceivably originate as a secretory product from the elementary bodies.

Cultivation and Propagation

Psittacosis viruses are readily grown in media of the Maitland, Li-Rivers, and the Zinsser-Fitzpatrick-Wei agar tissue types (Yanamura and Meyer, 1941). More recently the roller tube tissue technic has come into use (Morgan and Wiseman, 1946). Chorio-allantoic, amniotic, allantoic, and yolk inoculations in chick embryos are continuously employed for the preparation of highly infective suspensions which are used for serologic and immunologic studies and routine examinations (for details, consult Beveridge and Burnet, 1946).

Resistance to Physical and Chemical Environment

Prolonged centrifugation—6 to 8 hours—at 15,000 r.p.m. has been shown to deposit the major portion of the virus. Exposure to 56° C. for 30 minutes does not completely destroy virus in mammalian organs. Chick embryo virus is readily inactivated at 60° C. for 10 minutes. Crude heavy suspensions in broth may remain infectious at ±4° C. for several weeks, but preparations of elementary bodies in buffered saline are noninfectious 29 days after preparation and storage. Frozen at −70° C., the virus remains active for over 2 years.

In 50 per cent glycerin in buffered saline at pH 7.6 and at ±4° C., heavy suspensions retain their activity for 10 to 20 days. Sputums and human lung specimens rapidly lose their potency in glycerin. Formalin, 0.1 per cent, and phenol, 0.5 per cent, inactivate the psittacosis virus in 24 to 36 hours, while 10 per cent ether at room temperature destroys it within 30 minutes on heavy chick embryo suspensions or in agar tissue cultures.

Toxin

According to Rake and Jones (1944), yolk sacs infected with the meningopneumonitis virus of Francis and Magill and shaken with amniotic and allantoic fluid are toxic to mice on intravenous or intraperitoneal injection. This toxin is labile and is not readily separated from the elementary bodies. Specific antitoxins produced in rabbits and chickens are effective against a few lethal doses of it. Many of the lesions observed in animals infected with the Louisiana virus bear signs of toxemia.

Virulence

Psittacosis viruses isolated from different species of animals, and from man, vary considerably in their effects on mice. Strains of proved pigeon or duck origin produce irregular mortalities in white mice on intraperitoneal inoculation. It is claimed that some strains which are adapted to human beings lose their pathogenicity for mice and birds; latent infections are demonstrable only up to 21 days by subinoculation (Meiklejohn et al., 1944).

Antigenic Structure

In 1936, Bedson found that psittacosis virus, which he used as a reagent in the complement fixation test, contained at least two important antigens: one, heat-labile, was destroyed by temperatures above 60° C., while the other could withstand boiling. As a result of infection, antibodies to both antigens are produced, the latter in considerably greater quantity. Although the role of the antibodies to heat-stable antigens in immunity to psittacosis serum is not known, they constitute a reliable index of infection. The heat-stable antigen is also ether soluble, and in all probability is common to the protein molecule of all viruses in the lymphogranuloma-psittacosis group. Infected yolk sacs or mouse spleen suspensions treated with phenol, then boiled and centrifuged, yield clear supernatant fluids, which produce allergic reactions in sensitized guinea pigs and suggestive precipitin reactions with specific antisera. Nothing definite is known about the antigens, which give rise to species-specific antibodies responsible for the highly specific protection against different members of the lymphogranuloma-psittacosis group, or of the neutralization of toxins (Hilleman, 1945).

Distribution in the Body and Routes of Escape

Through inoculations of parakeets (Bedson, 1930) and mice (Eddie and Meyer, 1947), blood from patients tested during the first two weeks of the disease has been repeatedly found to contain the virus. It was Coles (1930) who first observed elementary bodies in sera from patients. Sputum (up to and including the twenty-sixth day) and occasionally throat garglings and vomitus may yield the infective agent in animal tests. At autopsy, virus is readily demonstrable in the pleural exudates, pneumonic lesions, spleens, and livers of human beings. It has been regularly isolated in exudates, blood, livers, spleens, kidneys, intestinal and cloacal contents, and urine from parrots, pigeons, and ducks. The virus escapes from the body of birds and mice via the intestinal and nasal discharges. In latent infection of birds, virus is confined to the spleen and liver, irregularly to the intestinal contents. Numerous investigators have seen viral bodies in man in the epithelial lining of the pulmonary alveoli, in the liver, the Kupffer cells, and in macrophage cells of splenic sinuses. With the aid of the differential staining method of Noble, which reveals red elementary bodies against a green background, viral elements are readily seen in nearly every organ of animals and birds dead of psittacosis.

SUSCEPTIBLE ANIMALS

(1) Mammals

For the isolation of the virus, the *mouse* may be infected by the intraperitoneal, intravenous, subcutaneous, intranasal, and intracerebral routes and by feeding. Death may occur in 3 to 30 days, with an average of 6 to 10 days. Some mice will recover or latent infection may persist for 10 to 12 months (Meyer and Eddie, 1933, and Bedson, 1938). When death has occurred 2 to 4 days after inoculation, autopsy shows the abdominal viscera covered by a thin, sticky exudate, with endothelial cells and leucocytes packed with elementary bodies. When death occurs 10 to 20 days after inoculation, the viscera are coated with a thick layer of film; the enlarged liver shows marginal necrosis, and the spleen is voluminous and soft. Mice with latent infections have enlarged spleens. Psittacosis virus administered intranasally produces widespread consolidation of either lobe of the lung. Discrete, grayish foci of pneumonia are manifested as the limiting infective dilutions of virus are approached (Rudd and Burnet, 1941, and Hornus, 1940).

With the exception of feline strains and certain murine strains (Grebb), most psittacosis viral agents injected intracerebrally cause irritability, motor hyperactivity, ataxia, convulsive seizure, and death within 3 to 6 days. Microscopically, the meningoencephalitis is characterized by an exudate of polymorphonuclear and mononuclear cells, which extends along the blood vessels into the brain. The cellular elements are usually very rich in viral bodies (Gordon, 1930, Rivers and Berry, 1931). In the *feeding* experiments reported by Fortner and Pfaffenberg (1934), a high percentage (78 per cent) of the mice succumbed to abdominal psittacosis; in 17 of 46 cadavers, pneumonic lesions were also found. Ingestion is apparently associated with inhalation of the virus.

Most strains of psittacosis are reported to have little visible effect on *guinea pigs* when inoculated intraperitoneally. They incite a prolonged febrile reaction. However, strains recently isolated in Louisiana (Olson and Larson, 1944-1945; Fite, Larson, and Olson, 1946) and California from human cases of pneumonitis are highly virulent for guinea pigs, irrespective of inoculation routes. The intensity of the clinical illness depends on the doses given; anorexia, fever, listlessness, and loss of weight are followed by death within 4 to 10 days.

Some strains produce fatal meningoencephalitis in *rabbits* infected by the intracerebral route. Pulmonary focal infiltrations and extensive pneumonic consolidations, occasionally fatal, may be produced by intratracheal injection of virus (Rivers and Berry, 1931; and Morgan, 1946).

Monkeys are susceptible to intratracheal and intracerebral inoculations, while intraperitoneal injections may produce no ill effects (Olson and Larson, 1945). Pocket gophers *(Thomomys bottae bottae)*, Syrian hamsters *(Cricetus auratus)*, cotton rats *(Sigmodon hispidus)*, and squirrels *(Citellus beecheyi)* are successfully infected by intranasal and intracranial routes.

(2) Birds

Reports from Australia and Argentina indicate that spontaneous psittacosis is common among wild parrots, parakeets, and conures, probably as a population regulator. At least 33 different species of the parrot family are known to be hosts to the virus. Common to all is a high incidence of prolonged latent infection, which is frequently responsible for introducing the disease to finches and canaries in bird shops and aviaries. High mortalities in importations (Meyer and Eddie, 1939, and Dunnahoo and Hampton, 1945) or outbreaks in zoological gardens (Burnet, 1935; Troup, Adam, and Bedson, 1939; and Tomlinson, 1941) follow crowding in unsanitary cages or exposure to low temperature, which induces relapses in latent infections. Enormous virus dispersal rapidly spreads the infection from diseased to susceptible birds. A variable number may die but a great many carriers develop.

The clinical disease in different species of parrots, parakeets, or conures infected with psittacosis virus is not characteristic. Autopsies and laboratory examinations are imperative to prove the nature of the disease. Far reaching is the discovery that visibly "healthy" birds harbor the virus and, as shedders, disseminate the organisms. Psittacosis among finches in the wild has not been reported. Canaries, as well as finches, are aberrant hosts which acquire infection, as a rule, from exposure to diseased parakeets or parrots, or through seeds contaminated by droppings of these species (see Meyer, 1942).

The observations of Coles (1940), Meyer et al. (1942), Smadel et al. (1943 and 1945), Andrewes and Mills (1943), and Labzoffsky (1947) prove a wide distribution of psittacosis in the *pigeon* lofts of the United States, Canada, South Africa, and Great Britain. Complement fixation tests seem to indicate that the majority of the birds are infected as squabs, and latency of the virus may be demonstrated in at least 10 to 20 per cent of the pigeons. Relatively few acute, spontaneous infections uncomplicated by salmonellosis or by other viruses have been studied; however, epizootics have been described (Smadel et al.). *Chickens (Gallus gallus)* have been found to carry virus in their organs and cloacal contents when in contact with pigeons (see Meyer, 1943). Recent studies by Eddie and Meyer have proved the existence of acute and chronic psittacosis among *Pekin ducks* (Anasplatyrhynchos) commercially bred and raised in California and on Long Island. Extent of the disease in fulmars or petrels *(Fulmar glacialis)* on the Faroë Islands and in Iceland is unknown (Haagen and Mauer, 1939, and Bedson, 1940). Parakeets *(Melopsittacus undulatus)*, Amazon parrots *(Amazona festiva, Amazona aestiva)*, parrotlets *(Forpus passerinus)*, African lovebirds *(Agapornis personata)*, and green paroquets *(Myiopsitta monachus)* readily acquire psittasosis by exposure in cages or by inoculation. Loss of weight, weakness, watery stools, and nasal discharges are observed during the course of the disease, which in a fair percentage may not be fatal. Autopsy findings reveal a semipurulent coating on the walls of the air sac and the inner lining of the sternum. The liver is usually swollen, pale saffron to ocher-colored, occasionally studded with small and large necrotic areas. The spleen is usually enlarged and sometimes spotted with fine necroses. The kidneys are swollen, grayish, and soft. Only in rare instances are lesions demonstrable in the lung. In chronic infections, the gross lesions are essentially negative except for a definitely enlarged spleen, thickening of the air sacs, and scars of healed necroses in the liver. Ricebirds *(Munia oryzivora)*, canaries *(Serinus canaria)*, sparrows *(Zonotrichia* and *Passer domesticus)*, and various finches *(Carpodacus mexicanus, Poephila,* and *Cyanospiza)* may be fatally infected by inoculation or exposure.

TRANSMISSION

Since no intermediate hosts and vectors have been established, the mode of virus transmission from bird to bird and from bird to man is relatively simple. Inhalation and, in aviaries, ingestion play the principal roles.

IMMUNITY

Individuals recovering from an attack of psittacosis are generally believed to be resistant to reinfection. Records of second infections are not numerous, but when the total experience with the disease is taken into consideration, they are significant. Rasmussen (1938) reported two women patients who contracted the fulmar disease a second time. Wenckebach (1936) and Meyer (1939-1940) have records of proved second attacks which may be interpreted as relapsing cases or as reinfection. Apparently, the immunity is not absolute, and the residual virus held in certain tissues is not always in an innocuous equilibrium.

Another problem deserves consideration in connection with immunity to psittacosis. Persons who come in contact repeatedly with infected birds may develop subclinical forms of the disease and possibly act as transient human carriers of infection (Gerlach, 1936).

Finally, a viral agent endowed with persistence in the tissues occasionally produces a chronic carrier stage after recovery. A patient who is still shedding virus in the sputum eight years after a severe psittacosis infection has recently been discovered by Meyer and Eddie (1947). Parrots, parakeets, pigeons, mice, guinea pigs, rabbits, and monkeys which recover from one attack of psittacosis are usually resistant to a second inoculation.

To what extent immunity is dependent on latent infection has not been determined. Observations by Yanamura and Meyer (1942) on mice and Eddie and Meyer on monkeys and pigeons amply attest to the fact that immunity of the nonsterile type fails to operate when a relatively large superinfection is administered by the intracerebral or intranasal route. On the other hand, it is equally well known that guinea pigs which have recovered from an infection, and with organs free from psittacosis virus, resist reinfection with massive doses of Louisiana virus. The ability of mice to acquire immunity and resist artificial infection is apparently determined by the genetic constitutions of individual animals. Following a relatively mild infection, some indivduals acquire a low-grade immunity protective against frank disease, but not against persistent latent infection, while others develop an immunity which enables them to resist infection by destroying a dose of virus not exceeding 100 M.L.D. (Yanamura and Meyer, 1941). Is it therefore not reasonable to consider that the immunity of human beings recovered from psittacosis is in part dependent on genetic factors and on the relative dose of the viral agent to which they are exposed on reinfection?

Active immunity against psittacosis has been produced in mice by repeated inoculation of viral suspensions inactivated by methylene blue or 0.2 per cent formalin. A considerable degree of immunity has been conferred to ricebirds and parakeets with formalin-treated, noninfective tissue culture antigens. Monkeys, guinea pigs, mice, rabbits, and chickens have been hyperimmunized with live virus; their sera have been found to contain complement-fixing, protective, and toxin-neutralizing antibodies (see Hilleman, 1945). Immunizations of human volunteers against psittacosis have been carried out with dilutions of live virus subcutaneously administered (Rivers and Schwentker, 1934). Suspensions of infected mouse livers and spleens, diluted 1:1,000 to 1:10, respectively, were given intramuscularly in 0.5 c.c. amounts in increasing concentrations at weekly intervals. No ill effects were observed, and the sera were later shown to have developed neutralizing antibodies. The injection of antigens prepared from phenol-killed, ether-extracted yolk sac suspensions, if administered repeatedly in large amounts, likewise stimulates the production of antibodies in man. Antigens prepared from infected yolk sacs lyophilized before extraction, and rich in elementary bodies, protected 75 per cent of mice following three abdominal injections against 1 to 10 M.L.D. by the respiratory or the intracerebral route (Wagner et al., 1946). Early reports on the question emphasized that neutralizing antibodies could not be demonstrated in the sera of convalescent cases of psittacosis. By using a more delicate technic, however, Rivers and Schwentker (1934) found that monkeys recovered from psittacosis pneumonia or vaccinated with live virus possessed neutralizing antibodies in their sera, but the titer was relatively low. Some human beings with positive histories of psittacosis possessed demonstrable neutralizing antibodies. Similar observations were made by Meyer and Eddie (1939) on sera from human patients, guinea pigs, and birds hyperimmunized with live virus.

The neutralization test, while not too reliable for diagnosing psittacosis, has, in the hands of Hilleman (1945), proved invaluable in the identification of members of the lymphogranuloma-psittacosis group. By intraperitoneal inoculation of chickens or rabbits, he prepared neutralizing antisera of relatively high titer and sharp specificity. Serum-virus mixtures are tested by intranasal or intracerebral inoculation of mice. By means of cross serum-neutralization tests, Hilleman, and, more recently, St. John and Gordon (1947), observed that the pigeon pneumonitis and meningopneumonitis viruses of Francis and Magill are similar to each other and different from other agents of the group. Mouse pneumonitis viruses proved to be similar, but different from all other agents. The lymphogranuloma virus was found to differ from all other agents thus far tested. The protective effect of antisera on experimental infections has also been demonstrated by these tests.

As early as 1930, Bedson had shown that the sera of psittacosis patients react specifically in *complement fixation tests* when brought in contact with infectious mouse spleen. Improvements in antigen preparation by Bedson (1935 and 1936), Meyer and Eddie (1939), and Smadel, Wertman, and Reagan (1943) lead to the demonstration of complement-fixing antibodies as early as the tenth day of the patient's illness, with increasing titers during convalescence. Parrots and parakeets (Meyer and Eddie, 1939), recovered from psittacosis, develop antibodies that fix complement with psittacosis and lymphogranuloma antigens. The sera of pigeons (Eddie and Francis, 1942) react only in the presence of psittacosis antigens. In the course of active immunizations with live or dead virus, specific complement-fixing antibodies are demonstrable in the sera of mice, guinea pigs, rabbits, and monkeys. The complement fixation test is a useful aid in the survey of shipments of imported psittacine birds and flocks of pigeons. Anitbodies are present in the majority of these birds when in a latent state of infection; it is therefore the best tool for the quick survey of sources of infection.

Bedson (1933), Lazarus and Meyer (1939), Hilleman (1943), and Labzoffsky (1946) have shown that the hyperimmune sera of guinea pigs, rabbits, monkeys, and chickens *agglutinate* purified suspensions of elementary bodies in titers as high as 1:320. Agglutinins are, in fact, the only antibodies which, besides protective properties, may be demonstrated in the sera of hyperimmune chickens and ducks. Convalescent sera obtained from human beings contain agglutinins in diagnostically significant titers. Studies by Meyer (1941) implicated phagocytic activity, possibly aided by humoral antibodies, in the immunity process. Heat-stable psittacosis antigens produce definite *allergic cutaneous reactions* in guinea pigs, and occasionally in man (Vilches et al., 1946). Frei antigen fails to incite typical skin reactions in patients recovered from psittacosis or in carriers. Antigens prepared from yolk sacs infected with meningopneumonitis or psittacosis virus produced skin reactions—erythema and induration—when injected intradermally into rabbits convalescent from respiratory meningopneumonitis infections (Morgan, 1947).

PATHOLOGY

The changes found at autopsy are those of a general septicemia with inflammatory processes in the lungs. Detailed pathologic data may be found in Haedke (1898); Leichtenstern (1899); Oberndorfer (1930); Hutchinson, Rowlands, and Simpson (1930); Maclachlan, Permar, and Rogers (1930); Peterson et al. (1930); Sturdee and Scott (1930); Bortz and Green (1930); Scholte (1930); Polayes and Lederer (1932); Lillie (1933); Foord (1934); Mansens (1934); Haagen and Krückeberg (1937); Barros (1940); Binford and Hauser (1944); and Tanner et al. (1945). This mass of literature emphasizes the following findings:

Lungs.—The consolidated areas are readily palpable and are sharply demarcated from normal lung tissues. They appear as gray or gray-reddish, sometimes as purplish or plum-colored (Binford and Hauser) lesions without compensatory emphysema. On section they are smooth, moist, glistening, or of dry granular appearance. The pleura may be glistening or exhibit petechiae and fine, fresh fibrin deposits. The trachea and bronchi may contain a small amount of serous-mucoid fluid; in the majority of cases they are empty and the mucosa is not swollen. When the psittacotic process is complicated by secondary, terminal bacterial invasion, the bronchi are distended and filled with purulent exudate. Tracheobronchial lymph nodes may be enlarged. Microscopic examination invariably discloses that areas which grossly appeared to be completely consolidated consist of lobular changes not evenly distributed throughout the tissues. Alveoli containing air or serum are dispersed through the consolidated portion of the lung substance. Exudates in the alveoli are irregularly distributed and uneven in character. The early lesions consist of outpourings of fluid into alveolar spaces and interstitial tissues, accompanied by hemorrhages. The septal capillaries are frequently plugged by hyaline thrombi. In fully developed lesions, the interstitial and interalveolar spaces contain abundant fibrin and a great number of lymphocytes, macrophages, and desquamated alveolar epithelial cells. The composition of the alveolar exudate, slight infiltration of the alveolar septa, and little change in large bronchioles and bronchi give the anatomic type of pneumonia in psittacosis a very characteristic pattern. It is doubtless not absolutely specific, since in etiologically proved cases the wide dilatation of the peribronchial and perivascular lymphatics packed with mononuclear cells is quite similar to lesions seen in interstitial pneumonias associated with other viral agents. However, Binford and Hauser were able to note definite differences in the microscopic lesions produced in the lungs by psittacosis viral agents and those of Q fever or other virus pneumonias. According to Polayes and Lederer (1932), the edematous, swollen, hemorrhagic larynx, epiglottis, and trachea show, microscopically, a monocytic exudate with areas of extravasated blood. All cells in the alveolar exudate and the lymph sinuses of the hilar lymph nodes show active phagocytosis and intracytoplasmic elementary bodies.

In the **liver,** which is slightly enlarged with parenchymatous degeneration, the characteristic microscopic lesions are paracentral or centrolobular focal necroses. A proliferation and accumulation of macrophages and hyaline thrombi in the sinuses and interstitial tissues precede the development of necrosis. Kupffer cells contain the elementary bodies. The usual changes in structure of the **spleen** are those of an acute tumor having relatively small follicles and engorged sinuses filled with phagocytic cells. Cloudy swelling and hypertrophy of the muscle are the principal changes in the **heart.** Varying degrees of degenerative changes involve the parenchyma of the **kidneys.** Hemorrhages and capillary thrombi have been observed in the adrenals in infections caused by the highly toxic Louisiana virus. Congestion and edema of the **brain and spinal cord** are not infrequent. Sprunt and Berry (1936) found no evidence of changes in the neurons but proliferative and degenerative changes in the capillary endothelium and hemorrhages which they attributed to toxic factors, secondary to the presence of pneumonia. On the other hand, Polayes and Lederer (1932) demonstrated proliferation of neuroglia and changes in the neurons; they could find no evidence of demyelinization as claimed by Peterson et al. (1930) and others.

CLINICAL ASPECTS

Clinically recognized psittacosis in man is a severe illness with a high mortality in the older age groups of both sexes. Mild, ambulatory cases and latent infections occur; in fact, persons exposed to the same infective agent may suffer from the disease in completely different degrees of severity. The duration of the actual disease is usually 2 to 3 weeks. Convalescence is nearly always protracted and tedious.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

From the many clinical descriptions published since 1879 (Hegler, Adamy, Sturdee and Scott, Hutchinson, Rowlands, and Simpson, Peterson, Spalding, and Wildman, Thomson and Hillier, 1930, Grassi et al. and Barros, 1940, Garcia, 1940, Bozzola et al., Loizaga and Averbach) the strikingly uniform manifestations confused with influenza, atypical pneumonia, and typhoid fever repeat themselves with remarkable regularity. A characteristic of the disease is the disparity between the extent and severity of findings discovered upon physical examination and the superficial appearance of well-being which the patients exhibit, only to be followed abruptly by a state of collapse.

The **incubation period,** when determined with certainty, varies from 7 to 14 days (average, 10 days) after exposure; 2 to 3 weeks may elapse between the acquisition of birds and onset of the first case. In 3 cases in which single exposures occurred for a few hours, the incubations were 7, 8, and 9 days, respectively. An interval of 8, 13, and 30 days, respectively, elapsed between the onset of illness and the discharge of three nurses from care of psittacosis patients. When the disease is transmitted from one human case to another, it may have an incubation time as short as 4 to 6 days (Hegler, 1930; Sturdee and Scott, 1930; Loizaga and Averbach, 1945). An exceptionally long incubation of 82 days (Armstrong et al., 1930) may possibly be explained as a relapse of latent infection provoked by another, intercurrent infection.

The **onset** may be sudden, with chilly sensations, fever, anorexia, sore throat, general malaise, and severe headache, or the first symptoms may often be very vague and the beginning of the illness gradual and insidious. The **fever,** in many respects similar to that of typhoid fever, is usually 100° to 102° F., with a gradual rise of the stepladder variety. During the second week, in severe cases, the temperature maintains itself at a high level with slight morning remissions even in fatal cases, or may fall to normal about the seventh or eighth day in mild cases. Termination by crisis is rare, and during convalescence the temperature may be subnormal. The **pulse** is apt to be slow in relation to temperature. Nose bleed occurs in 25 per cent of the cases. The headache may be occipital, nuchal, or frontal; it is intense, intractable, and not relieved by the usual analgesics.

Except in mild cases, **pulmonary involvement,** manifest by its objective signs, is an essential feature of human psittacosis. A slight, irritating, dry cough during the first few days may persist or increase in intensity to painful paroxysms; cough, despite extensive lung signs, may be insignificant or absent throughout the illness. The sputum is always scanty or entirely absent; it is at first mucoid but later may become mucopurulent. In rare instances it is tinged with blood, usually when copious secondary infection is an accompaniment. Abnormal signs about the lungs are often scanty. The earliest demonstrable changes may be confined to an area of dullness, on percussion, at the bases of the lungs. Crepitations may be heard as early as the fifth day. Usually, the real extent of pneumonitis is not evident until roentgenologic examination is made. The wedge-shaped appearance of the early pulmonary process is frequently of diagnostic significance, as well as the scattered, patchy areas of consolidation over one or both lungs which give psittacosis the picture of a migrating pneumonia. Pleural reaction is generally slight or absent. Physical signs begin to disappear by the beginning of the third week, but x-ray examinations disclose a slow but ultimately complete resolution. Despite extensive involvement of the lungs, the rate and depth of respirations are not increased except in fatal cases, in which a rate as high as 60 has been reached.

The relative slowness of the **pulse** is a characteristic feature throughout the course of the illness. In nearly all fatal cases the pulse becomes rapid and weak; cyanosis and low blood pressure may be marked; collapse at some time during the illness is common. Thrombophlebitis has been known to occur and may cause relapses and death due to pulmonary thrombosis. Insomnia, restlessness followed by drowsiness, disorientation, apathy, mental depression, and even delirium may occur in all except mild cases. Photophobia accompanies the headache.

The **gastrointestinal tract** is involved in most cases. Nausea and vomiting are common early symptoms. The tongue is furred. Either constipation or diarrhea may be present. The spleen is palpable in very few cases. Albuminuria of varying degrees is not infrequent, and transient glycosuria has been reported. Skin rashes or ''rose spots'' have been noted by Gastou (1892), Horder and Gow (1930).

The **blood picture** in psittacosis is not markedly altered. The leucocyte count is usually normal or subnormal; definite leucopenia is found in only 25 per cent of the patients. Leucocytosis occurs late in the acute phase or in early convalescence. No significant abnormalities are noted in the hemoglobin percentage or in the bleeding and coagulation times.

Relapses, particularly in cases inadequately treated with serum or penicillin, are by no means uncommon. With the aid of newer diagnostic procedures and in the course of epidemiologic surveys, mild and inapparent infections are being recognized with increasing frequency. The symptomatology of mild cases has been described by Sturdee and Scott (1930). The patient is feverish, with headache and general pains in the limbs, and the attack may last for only a few days.

DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

Definite as is the clinical entity of psittacosis in man, nevertheless certain diagnosis in any one case and in any one stage of such a case may offer great difficulty. A typhoid-like illness with pulmonary involvement and negative Widal test is very suggestive of psittacosis. A clean-cut separation of the patients from those who have pneumonitis due to other causes is quite difficult (Reiman, 1947). Furthermore, the response of the lung tissue to psittacosis infection resembles that described for other viruses. Clinically, roentgenologically, and pathologically the psittacotic pneumonias resemble the severest forms of commonly occurring viral pneumonias. A history of association with birds suggests a diagnosis of psittacosis, but recently cases of influenza or so-called "atypical pneumonia" with no definite history of avian exposure have been ultimately diagnosed as psittacosis. Moreover, recent facts definitely contradict the observation that a person-to-person type of spread prevails in influenza only.

PROGNOSIS

The prognosis of psittacosis is difficult. As long as the pulse remains below 100, the ultimate outcome is invariably good. Until recently, the *case fatality rate* of reported cases has been uniformly high (approximately 20 per cent) in the United States, Germany, and Argentina. In the 167 cases reported by Armstrong, it was 24 per cent; in 301 other cases, it was 17 per cent. In a house epidemic due to parakeets observed by Meyer, Eddie, and Stevens (1935), all four victims died. According to Fortner and Pfaffenberg, the rate in Germany for 106 cases was 18 per cent in 1933-1934, then 20 per cent, but it rose to 36 per cent in a group of 25 cases in 1937-1938 (Haagen and Mauer). The 186 cases described in the *Rev. med. Argentina* had a fatality rate of 39, or 20 per cent; however, in the outbreak described by Loizaga and Averbach, the fatality in 28 cases was 13, or 46 per cent. With the recognition of mild and ambulatory infections, the case fatality rate in a series of 228 cases studied between 1940 and 1946 dropped to 21, or 9.3 per cent (Meyer and Eddie, 1947). As a rule, the age groups 40 to 60 are particularly liable to fatal infections. With the introduction of penicillin as a therapeutic agent, it is anticipated that the fatality rate will be further reduced.

TREATMENT

Symptomatic treatment and careful nursing should be conducted along lines similar to recognized procedures used in pneumonia. Isolation in a quiet environment is imperative in order to reduce the risk of person-to-person transmission. Since 1930 the *serum of convalescent* and even of normal persons has been used. In general, doses of from 50 to 200 c.c. have been administered intramuscularly or intravenously. It is difficult to judge objectively the value of the treatment, since neutralizing antibodies are rarely present in the sera, and in animal experiments human convalescent serum exerted no curative effect. In the early experiments by Rudd and Burnet (1941) and unpublished observations of Eddie and Meyer, *there is no experimental proof that any of the sulfonamide compounds is of value* on two strains of the psittacosis virus. More recently, Meiklejohn et al. (1946) have shown that sulfadiazine is effective against two classical strains, which may in part explain the clinical cure reported by Hinshaw (1940). Significant, and in harmony with the biology of the viral agent, are the observations that mice which survived the infection became carriers after therapy was discontinued.

In view of the *greater effectiveness of penicillin* on all the strains thus far tested, there is no need to resort to sulfonamide therapy. Heilman and Herrell (1944), Bedson and May (1945), Meiklejohn et al., and Wiseman et al. (1946) produced evidence that experimental psittacosis in the mouse responds to treatment with penicillin. The workers at the Hooper Foundation (Meyer and Eddie, 1947) treated experimentally infected mice and ricebirds. Therapeutic results were convincing, provided treatment was instituted early in the course of the infection and the antibiotic was used in large doses. Ricebirds were apt to die from relapses 22 to 27 days after intensive treatment with 6,000,000 units, over a period of 17 days, had been discontinued. Successful treatment of human psittacosis has been reported by Turgasen (1944), Flippen, Gaydosh and Fittipoldi (1945), and by Meyer and Eddie (1947). Observations suggest that the antibiotic acts on the extracellular phase of the viral agent, when it is not actually multiplying. Whenever the immunity mechanism is sluggish or impaired by toxin action, penicillin treatment must be prolonged until the antibodies of the host are capable of taking over the bacteriostatic and bacteriolytic effect of the antibiotic. The dynamic action of penicillin on psittacosis specifies a high dose level (40,000 to 100,000 units every 4 hours) in rapid succession early in the course of the infection, in order to reduce the number of viral elements and to permit the normal body defense mechanism to dispose of the few stragglers. Adherence to these principles will greatly reduce the unduly high human case fatality rate from psittacosis and prevent the development of virus carriers.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The laboratory diagnosis of psittacosis requires considerable time, and the ultimate isolation of the specific virus in the sputum or blood is, from the patient's standpoint, largely an academic matter. Therefore, recourse is made to the indirect method of diagnosis, which consists of the demonstration of specific antibodies.

Isolation of the Virus During Acute and Convalescent Phase of Psittacosis and at Autopsy.—During the acute and convalescent phase of suspected cases of psittacosis, every effort should be made to isolate the virus by inoculation of mice with specimens of citrated human blood or sputum when they are obtainable. The diagnosis of human psittacosis is usually made in retrospect, since not infrequently the virus is present in small quantities and repeated animal passage may be required for its demonstration (see Rivers and Berry, 1935; Bedson, 1936. Systematic inoculation of lung and splenic tissues from autopsies with lesions of pneumonitis has with increasing frequency led to the isolation of the psittacosis virus. In a series of 228 cases of clinically and serologically proved psittacosis, the nature of the infection was established in 52, or 22 per cent (Meyer and Eddie, 1947).

Complement Fixation Test.—Demonstration of complement-fixing antibodies is being used with increasing success to demonstrate that a given acute illness is caused by a member of the psittacosis-lymphogranuloma group. Although at present it is impossible to differentiate sharply between human psittacosis and lymphogranuloma venereum, serologic tests are frequently the only means of making a rapid diagnosis (see Meyer, 1942; Smadel et al., 1943).

The ubiquity of elementary body viral agents capable of inciting antibodies in man places restrictions on the diagnostic value of the complement fixation test. In persons not previously exposed to viruses of the psittacosis-lymphogranuloma group, complement-fixing antibodies may appear in the sera as early as within a week (fourth to eighth day) after the onset of symptoms. If the titer rises within the next 4 or 5 days, a tentative diagnosis of psittacosis may be rendered and specific treatment instituted. Additional serum specimens should be examined and the rise in titer noted. A serum with a titer of 1:16 or greater, when obtained from a patient with clinical manifestations suggestive of psittacosis, may be considered positive; as a rule, a fourfold or more increase in titer is observed during convalescence. Precautions are necessary in the interpretation of the tests.

Patients with a positive Wassermann reaction may react strongly with the psittacosis antigen, when they are simultaneously infected in a latent stage with the virus of lymphogranuloma (Rake and Jones, 1944). The sera of patients with acute infections may occasionally yield significantly high complement fixation titers which fade during convalescence in contrast to the psittacosis infections, in which the titer rises during convalescence, and usually persists for many months, even years. These fleeting reactions are probably anamnestic and may result from the reappearance of antibodies indicative of a previous, unrecognized latent infection. Individuals constantly exposed to psittacosis agents, such as aviary owners, pet shop employees, pigeon breeders, etc., as a rule show complement-fixing antibodies in their sera in titers varying from 1:8 to 1:32++++ (see Meyer, 1942). Cold agglutination of erythrocytes and agglutinins for streptococcus MG do not appear in significant titer in psittacosis (Finland, 1945).

PREVENTION

Prevention of psittacosis is difficult because the nature of the disease is recognized only when it appears in epidemic form. Rigorous isolation should be applied to all severe cases during the febrile and acute clinical stages of the disease. Patients with coughs should not be examined or treated without the use of rubber gloves, face masks, and goggles. The so-called Bouquet mask or a similar type for use in pneumonic plague has been employed in several outbreaks. All discharges must be disinfected.

Immunization of human volunteers against psittacosis has been carried out with dilutions of live virus given subcutaneously and with phenol-killed ether-extracted yolk sac suspensions. The value of these protective inoculations has not been determined.

All proved cases of psittacosis should be reported, and investigations to trace the source of infection must be instituted in order to locate the bird shop, breeding establishment, or pigeon loft distributing visibly diseased or apparently healthy but infected birds. The incriminated birds should be sacrificed and sent to the Public Health Laboratory for examination. Bird stores, aviaries, and pigeon lofts should be quarantined until the suspected birds have been destroyed and the premises thoroughly cleaned and disinfected by painting, etc.

Strict regulation of the traffic in psittacine birds based on import restrictions, quarantine, laboratory examination, and the creation of noninfected flocks of parakeets, attempted in the California plan, ultimately failed. Prohibition of traffic in psittacine birds, particularly parakeets, by several states and cities has been effective only in part. Violations of the Federal quarantine regulations are by no means uncommon. The new interstate quarantine regulations (June 15, 1947) of the United States Public Health Service (Section 12.22) restrict the transport to two psittacine birds which must be accompanied by the owner and must have been in his possession for the preceding two years. The effect of this renewed effort to restrain the traffic of infected parakeets will be awaited with interest.

The problems which involve the barnyard flocks, the flocks of pigeons in parks and on city plazas, and the possible role of mammals or man himself as a source of psittacosis have thus far received little intelligent attention because of the inadequacy of the available epidemiologic facts. Educational campaigns have been generally ineffective because cage birds are so generally loved.

References

Adamy, G.: 1930. Klinische Erfahrungen über die Papageienkrankheit (Psittakose). Inclusive Discussion, Deutsche med. Wchnschr. **56**: 217-219.

Andrews, C. H., and Mills, K. C.: 1943. Lancet **1**: 292.

Armstrong, C., McCoy, G. W., and Branham, S. E.: 1930. Filterability of the Infective Agent of Psittacosis in Birds, Pub. Health Rep. **45**: 725-726.

Baker, J. A.: 1944. A Virus Causing Pneumonia in Cats and Producing Elementary Bodies, J. Exper. Med. **79**: 159-172.

Barros, E.: 1940. La Psitacosis Durante el Decenio 1929-1939, Prensa Méd. Argent. **27**: 603-643.

Beck, M. D., Eaton, M. D., and O'Donnell, R.: 1944. Further Laboratory Studies on the Classification of Psittacosis-Like Agents, J. Exper. Med. **79**: 65-77.

Bedson, S. P.: 1930. Psittacosis. Rept. Public Health Med. Subjects **61**: 59-74.

Bedson, S. P.: 1933. Immunological Studies With the Virus of Psittacosis, Brit. J. Exper. Path. **14**: 162-170.

Bedson, S. P.: 1935. Use of Complement Fixation Reaction in the Diagnosis of Human Psittacosis, Lancet **2**: 1277-1280.

Bedson, S. P.: 1936. Observations Bearing on the Antigenic Composition of Psittacosis Virus, Brit. J. Exper. Path. **17**: 109-121.

Bedson, S. P.: 1938. Study of Experimental Immunity to the Virus of Psittacosis in the Mouse, Brit. J. Exper. Path. **19**: 353-360.

Bedson, S. P.: 1940. Virus Diseases Acquired From Animals (Chadwick Lecture, Abridged), Lancet **2**: 577-579.

Bedson, S. P., and Bland, J. O. W.: 1932. Morphological Study of Psittacosis Virus, With Description of Developmental Cycle, Brit. J. Exper. Path. **13**: 461-466.

Bedson, S. P., and Bland, J. O. W.: 1934. Developmental Forms of Psittacosis Virus, Brit. J. Exper. Path. **15**: 243-247.

Bedson, S. P., and May, H. B.: 1945. Penicillin in Experimental Psittacosis of Mice, Lancet **2**: 394-396.

Bedson, S. P., and Western, G. T.: 1930. Psittacosis, Brit. M. J. **1**: 882.

Bedson, S. P., Western, G. T., and Levy-Simpson, S.: 1930. Observations on the Aetiology of Psittacosis, Lancet **1**: 235-236.

Beveridge, W. I. B., and Burnet, F. M.: 1946. The Cultivation of Viruses and Rickettsiae in the Chick Embryo, Medical Research Council Special Report Series No. 256, London, 92 pages.

Binford, C. H., and Hauser, G. H.: 1944. An Epidemic of a Severe Pneumonitis in the Bayou Region of Louisiana. III. Pathological Observations. Report of Autopsy on Two Cases With Brief Comparative Note on Psittacosis and Q Fever, Pub. Health Rep. **59**: 1363-1373.

Bland, J. O. W., and Canti, R. G.: 1935. Growth and Development of Psittacosis Virus in Tissue Cultures, J. Path. & Bact. **40**: 231-241.

Bortz, E. L., and Green, B.: 1930. Psittacosis, J. A. M. A. **95**: 400-404.

Bowser, B. M., and Nigg, C.: 1946. Studies on Lymphogranuloma Venereum Complement Fixing Antigens. II. Serological Studies With Boiled Phenolized Antigens, J. Immunol. **53**: 269-275.

Bozzola, J. A., Fabian Leoz Eduardo F. Tusón, and Juan Viacava y Salvador Viggiano: 1937. Brote de Psitacosis en la Provincia de Buenos Aires, Semana méd. **1**: 345-357.

Bulacio Nunez, A. W.: 1944. Psitacosis de Origen Autoctono en la Ciudad de Tucumán; brote epidémico, Rev. san. mil., Buenos Aires **43**: 1422-1440.

Burnet, F. M.: 1935. Enzootic Psittacosis Amongst Wild Australian Parrots, J. Hyg. **35**: 412-420.

Burnet, F. M.: 1939. Note on Occurrence of Fatal Psittacosis in Parrots Living in Wild State, M. J. Australia **1**: 545-546.

Burnet, F. M., and MacNamara, J.: 1936. Human Psittacosis in Australia, M. J. Australia **2**: 84-88.

Burnet, F. M., and Rountree, P. M.: 1935. Psittacosis in the Developing Egg, J. Path. & Bact. **40**: 471-481.

Coles, A. C.: 1930. Microorganisms in Psittacosis, Lancet **1**: 1011-1012.

Coles, J. D. W. A.: 1940. Psittacosis in Domestic Pigeons, Onderstepoort J. Vet. Sc. & Animal Indust. **15**: 141-148.

De Burgh, P., Jackson, A. V., and Williams, S. E.: 1945. Spontaneous Infection of Laboratory Mice With a Psittacosis-Like Organism, Australian J. Exper. Biol. & M. Sc. **23**: 107-110.

Dunnahoo, G. L., and Hampton, B. C.: 1945. Psittacosis. Occurrence in the United States and Report of 97 Per Cent Mortality in a Shipment of Psittacine Birds While Under Quarantine, Pub. Health Rep. **60**: 354-357.

Early, R. L., and Morgan, H. R.: 1946. Studies on the Chemotherapy of Viruses in the Psittacosis-Lymphogranuloma Venereum Group. III. Effect of Certain Chemotherapeutic Agents on the Growth of Psittacosis Virus (6 BC Strain) in Tissues Cultures and Eggs, J. Immunol. **53**: 151-156.

Early, R. L., and Morgan, H. R.: 1946. Studies on the Chemotherapy of Viruses in the Psittacosis-Lymphogranuloma Venereum Group. IV. Effect of Certain Chemotherapeutic Agents on Psittacosis Virus (6 BC Strain) Infections in Mice, J. Immunol. **53**: 251-258.

Eaton, M. D., Beck, M. D., and Pearson, H. E.: 1941. A Virus From Cases of Atypical Pneumonia; Relation to Viruses of Meningopneumonitis and Psittacosis, J. Exper. Med. **73**: 641-654.

Eaton, M. D., Martin, W. P., and Beck, M. D.: 1942. The Antigenic Relationship of the Viruses of Meningopneumonitis and Lymphogranuloma Venereum, J. Exper. Med. **75**: 21-33.

Eddie, B., and Francis, T., Jr.: 1942. Occurrence of Psittacosis-Like Infection in Domestic and Game Birds of Michigan, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **50**: 291-295.

Elkeles, G., and Barros, E.: 1931. Die Psittakosis (Papageienkrankheit) mit Besonderer Berücksichtigung in der Pandemie des Jahres, 1929-1930, Ergebn. d. Hyg. Bakt., Immunitätsforsch. u. exper. Therap. **12**: 529-639.

Findlay, G. M.: 1938. Inclusion Bodies and Their Relationship to Viruses. In von Doerr, R., and Hallauer, C.: Handbuch d. Virusforschung, Wien, Julius Springer, pp. 292-368.

Finland, M.: 1945. Cold Agglutinins. II. Cold Isoagglutinins in Primary Atypical Pneumonia of Unknown Etiology With a Note on the Occurrence of Hemolytic Anemia in These Cases, J. Clin. Investigation **24**: 458-473, 497-502.

Fite, G. L., Larson, C. L., and Olson, B. J.: 1946. An Epidemic of a Severe Pneumonitis in the Bayou Region of Louisiana. VII. Histopathology in Laboratory Animals, Pub. Health Rep. **61**: 1100-1115.

Fleming, A.: 1946. Penicillin: Its Practical Application, Philadelphia, The Blakiston Company, p. 289.

Foord, A. G.: 1934. The Pathology of Psittacosis; Discussion With Case Report, Am. J. Clin. Path. **4**: 247-259.

Fortner, J., and Pfaffenberg, R.: 1934. Das Gehäufte Wiederauftreten der Psittakose, Ztschr. f. Hyg. u. Infektionskr. **116**: 397-416.

Francis, T., Jr., and Magill, T. P.: 1938. An Unidentified Virus Producing Acute Meningitis and Pneumonitis in Experimental Animals, J. Exper. Med. **68**: 147-160.

Garcia, P. P. P.: 1940. Impressiones Clinico-Epidemiologicas Sobre el Ultimo Paroxismo de Psitacosis en la Capital Federal, Prensa méd. Argent. **27**: 2463-2514.

Gerlach, F.: 1936. Beobachtungen bei der in österreich Auftretenden Psittakose, Ztschr. f. Hyg. u. Infektionskr. **118**: 574-594.

Gerlach, F.: 1936. Menschen als Psittakosevirusträger Nach "Stummer" Infektion mit Psittakosevirus, Ztschr. f. Hyg. u. Infektionskr. **118**: 709-723.

Gönnert, R.: 1941. Die Bronchopneumonie, Eine Neue Viruskrankheit der Maus, Zentralbl. f. Bakt. (Abt. 1) **147**: 161-174.

Gönnert, R.: 1941. Über ein Neues, dem Erreger des Lymphogranuloma Inguinale Ähnliches Mäusevirus, Klin. Wchnschr. **20**: 76-78.

Gordon, M. H.: 1930. Virus Studies Concerning the Aetiology of Psittacosis, Lancet **1**: 1174-1177.

Haagen, E., and Krückeberg, B.: 1937. Zum Psittakoseproblem. Betrachtungen auf Grund von Beobachtungen und Untersuchungen im Jahre 1935-1936, Veröffentl. a. d. Geb. d. Volksgesunddienst. **48**: 381-474.

Haagen, E., and Mauer, G.: 1938. Ueber Eine auf den Menschen Übertragbare Viruskrankheit bei Sturmvögeln und Ihre Beziehung zur Psittakose, Zentralbl. f. Bakt. (Abt. 1) **143**: 81-88.

Haagen, E., and Mauer, G.: 1939. Die Psittakose in Deutschland. (Bericht für das Altreich auf Grund der Untersuchungen im Institut "Robert Koch" für das Jahr 1937-1938), Deutsche med. Wchnschr. **65**: 808-809.

Haedke, M.: 1898. Über Endemische Pneumonie, Deutsche med. Wchnschr. **24**: 220-222.

Hamre, D. M., and Rake, G.: 1944. Feline Pneumonitis (Baker), a New Member of the Lymphogranuloma-Psittacosis Group of Agents, J. Infect. Dis. **74**: 206-211.

Hamre, D., Rake, H., and Rake, G.: 1947. Morphological and Other Characteristics of the Agent of Feline Pneumonitis Grown in the Allantoic Cavity of the Chick Embryo, J. Exper. Med. **86**: 1-6.

Hegler, C.: 1930. Psittakose, Deutsche med. Wchnschr. **56**: 148-150.

Heilman, F. R., and Herrell, W. E.: 1944. Penicillin in the Treatment of Experimental Ornithosis, Proc. Staff Meet., Mayo Clin. **19**: 57-65.

Heilman, F. R., and Herrell, W. E.: 1944. Penicillin in the Treatment of Experimental Psittacosis, Proc. Staff Meet., Mayo Clin. **19**: 204-207.

Herzberg, K.: 1942. Mikroskopische Darstellung des Filtrierbaren Mäuse-Pneumonieerregers "Greifswald," Zentralbl. f. Bakt. (Abt. 1) **149**: 386.

Hilleman, M. R.: 1945. Immunological Studies on the Psittacosis-Lymphogranuloma Group of Viral Agents, J. Infect. Dis. **76**: 96-114.

Hilleman, M. R., and Gordon, F. B.: 1944. Immunologic Relations of Psittacosis-Lymphogranuloma Group of Viral Agents, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **56**: 159-161.

Hilleman, M. R., and Nigg, C.: 1946. Studies on Lymphogranuloma Venereum Complement Fixing Antigens. III. The Solubility in Ether of an Active Fraction, J. Immunol. **53**: 201-208.

Hinshaw, H. C.: 1940. Psittacosis. Possible Response to Sulfapyridine, Proc. Staff Meet., Mayo Clin. **15**: 657-662.

Hoge, V. M.: 1934. Psittacosis in the United States; Incidence, Scientific Aspects and Administrative Control Measures, Pub. Health Rep. **49**: 451-462.

Horder, T., and Gow, A. E.: 1930. Psittacosis. Record of Nine Cases, With Special Reference to Morbid Anatomy in Two of Them, Lancet **1**: 442-445.

Hornus, G.: 1940. Psittacose Pulmonaire Expérimentale de la Souris Blanche, Ann. Inst. Pasteur **64**: 97-116.

Hutchison, R., Rowlands, R. A., and Levy-Simpson, S.: 1930. A Study of Psittacosis, Brit. M. J. **1**: 633-646.

Karr, H. V.: 1943. Study of a Latent Pneumotropic Virus of Mice, J. Infect. Dis. **72**: 108-116.

Kempf, A. H., Wheeler, A. H., and Nungester, W. J.: 1945. Isolation of an Agent Belonging to the Psittacosis-Lymphogranuloma Group of Viruses, J. Infect. Dis. **76**: 135-143.

Krumwiede, C.: 1930. The Virus of Psittacosis, Weekly Bull. City of New York Health Dept., Feb. 15.

Krumwiede, C., McGrath, M., and Oldenbusch, C.: 1930. The Etiology of the Disease Psittacosis, Science **71**: 262-263.

Kurotchkin, T. J., Libby, R. L., Gagnon, E., and Cox, Herald R.: 1947. Size and Morphology of the Elementary Bodies of the Psittacosis-Lymphogranuloma Group of Viruses, J. Immunol. **55**: 283-287.

Labzoffsky, N. A.: 1946. Rapid Agglutination Test as Possible Aid in Laboratory Diagnosis of Ornithosis, J. Infect. Dis. **79**: 96-100.

Labzoffsky, N. A.: 1947. Ornithosis Among Wild Pigeons in Ontario, Canad. Pub. Health J. **38**: 187-192.

Larson, C. L., and Olson, B. J.: 1946. An Epidemic of a Severe Pneumonitis in the Bayou Region of Louisiana. VI. A Comparative Study of the Viruses of Lymphogranuloma Venereum, Psittacosis and Louisiana Pneumonitis. Pub. Health Rep. **61**: 69-78.

Laubscher, J. H., Wentzien, A. J., and Jordan, C. F.: 1945. Psittacosis in Iowa; Report of Case, J. Iowa M. Soc. **35**: 44-46.

Lazarus, A. S., and Meyer, K. F.: 1939. The Virus of Psittacosis. I. Propagation and the Developmental Cycle in the Egg Membrane, Purification and Concentration, J. Bact. **38**: 121-151.

Levinthal, W.: 1930. Die Ätiologie der Psittakosis, Klin. Wchnschr. **9**: 654, Med. Welt **4**: 588.

Levinthal, W.: 1935. Recent Observations on Psittacosis, Lancet **1**: 1207-1210.

Lillie, R. D.: 1930. Psittacosis. Rickettsia-Like Inclusions in Man and in Experimental Animals, Pub. Health Rep. **45**: 773-778.

Little, R. D.: 1933. I. The Pathology of Psittacosis in Man. II. The Pathology of Psittacosis in Animals and the Distribution of Rickettsia Psittaci in the Tissues of Man and Animals, Nat. Inst. Health Bull. **161**: 1-66.

Loizaga, N. S.: 1940. De la Psitacosis, Enfermendad Humana Producida por el Virus de un Morbo Aviario, El Hornero **8**: 232-246.

Loizaga, N. S., and Averbach, S.: 1944. Contribución Clínica al Estudio de la Psitacosis; Brote Epidémico Generado por un Virus Particular, Rev. d. Inst. bact., Buenos Aires **12**: 332-336.

Loizaga, N. S., and Averbach, S.: 1945. Sobre Una Epidemica de Psitacosis Predominio del Contagio Interhumans, Rev. Med. y. Cien. Afines **7**: 298-359.

MacLachlan, W. W. G., Permar, H. H., and Rogers, C. A.: 1930. Psittacosis. Clinical and Pathological Report of Three Cases, Ann. Int. Med. **4**: 260-276.

Mansens, B. J.: 1934. De Pathologische Anatomie van de Psittacosis bij den Mensch, Nederl. tijdschr. v. geneesk. **78**: 5818-5829.

Meiklejohn, G., Beck, M. D., and Eaton, M. D.: 1944. Atypical Pneumonia Caused by Psittacosis-Like Virus, J. Clin. Investigation **23**: 167-175.

Meiklejohn, G., Wagner, J. C., and Beveridge, G. W.: 1946. Studies on the Chemotherapy of Viruses in the Psittacosis-Lymphogranuloma Group. I. Effect of Penicillin and Sulfadiazine on Ten Strains in Chick Embryos, J. Immunol. **54**: 1-8.

Meyer, K. F.: 1939-1940. The Host-Parasite Relationship in the Heterogenous Infection Chains. Harvey Lectures, Series **35**: 91-134.

Meyer, K. F.: 1941. Phagocytosis and Immunity in Psittacosis, Schweiz. med. Wchnschr. **71**: 436-438.

Meyer, K. F.: 1942. The Ecology of Psittacosis and Ornithosis, Medicine **21**: 175-206.

Meyer, K. F.: 1943. Psittacosis and Ornithosis. In Beister, H. E., and Devries, Louis (editors): Diseases of Poultry, Ames Iowa, The Iowa State College Press, chap. 22, pp. 433-464.

Meyer, K. F., and Eddie, B.: 1933. Latent Psittacosis Infections in Shell Parakeets, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **30**: 484-488.

Meyer, K. F., and Eddie, B.: 1934. Psittacosis in the Native Australian Budgerigars, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **31**: 917-920.

Meyer, K. F., and Eddie, B.: 1939. Psittacosis in Importations of Psittacine Birds From the South American and Australian Continent, J. Infect. Dis. **65**: 234-241.

Meyer, K. F., and Eddie, B.: 1939. The Value of the Complement Fixation Test in the Diagnosis of Psittacosis, J. Infect. Dis. **65**: 225-233.

Meyer, K. F., and Eddie, B.: 1942. Spontaneous Ornithosis (Psittacosis) in Chickens the Cause of a Human Infection, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **49**: 522-525.

Meyer, K. F., and Eddie, B.: 1947. Human Virus Infections of Animal Origin, J. A. M. A. **133**: 822-829.

Meyer, K. F., Eddie, B., and Stevens, I. M.: 1935. Recent Studies on Psittacosis, Am. J. Pub. Health **25**: 571-579.

Meyer, K. F., Eddie, B., and Yanamura, H. Y.: 1942. Active Immunization to the Microbacterium Multiforme Psittacosis in Parakeets and Ricebirds, J. Immunol. **44**: 211-217.

Meyer, K. F., Eddie, B., and Yanamura, H. Y.: 1942. Ornithosis (Psittacosis) in Pigeons and Its Relation to Human Pneumonitis, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **49**: 609-615.

Mooser, H.: 1943. Eine Virus-Bronchopneumonia also Komplikation der experimentellen Fleckfieberpneumonie der weissen Maus, Schweiz. Ztschr. f. Path. u. Bakt. **6**: 372-378.

Morange, A.: 1895. De la Psittacose ou Infection Spéciale Déterminée par des Perruches, Thése de Paris.

Morgan, H. R.: 1946. Use of Yolk Sac Antigens for Skin Tests in Rabbits Infected With the Virus of Meningopneumonitis, J. Immunol. **54**: 103-106.

Morgan, H. R., and Wiseman, R. W.: 1946. Growth of Psittacosis Virus in Roller Tube Tissue Culture. Use in Vaccine, J. Infect. Dis. **79**: 131-133.

Morgan, H. R., and Wiseman, R. W.: 1946. Use of Bacteriostatic Agents in Preparation of Seed Cultures of Psittacosis Virus, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **62**: 130.

Moshkovsky, C. D.: 1945. The Cytotropic Agents of Infections and the Positions of the Rickettsiae in the System of Chlamydozoa, Uspekhi sovremennoi biologii, Reviews and general paper **19**: 1-44.

Nigg, C.: 1942. Unidentified Virus Which Produces Pneumonia and Systemic Infection in Mice, Science **95**: 49-50.

Nigg, C., and Bowser, B. M.: 1943. Enhancement With Phenol of the Serological Reactivity of Lymphogranuloma Venereum Antigens, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **53**: 192-194.

Nigg, C., and Eaton, M. D.: 1944. Isolation From Normal Mice of a Pneumotropic Virus Which Forms Elementary Bodies, J. Exper. Med. **79**: 497-510.

Nigg, C., Hilleman, M. B., and Bowser, B. M.: 1946. Studies on Lymphogranuloma Venereum Complement Fixing Antigens. I. Enhancement by Phenol or Boiling, J. Immunol. **53**: 259-268.

Nocard, E., and Dobove: 1896. Sur un Memoire de les Docteurs Gilbert et Fournier, Bull. Acad. de méd., Par. **36**: 429.

Oberndorfer, S.: 1930. Pathologisch-anatomische Befunde bei Psittakosis (Papageienkrankheit), München. med. Wchnschr. **77**: 311-312.

Olson, B. J., and Larson, C. L.: 1944. An Epidemic of Severe Pneumonitis in the Bayou Region of Louisiana. IV. Preliminary Note on Etiology, Pub. Health Rep. **59**: 1373-1374.

Olson, B. J., and Larson, C. L.: 1945. An Epidemic of a Severe Pneumonitis in the Bayou Region of Louisiana. V. Etiology, Pub. Health Rep. **60**: 1488-1503.

Olson, B. J., and Treuting, W. L.: 1944. An Epidemic of a Severe Pneumonitis in the Bayou Region of Louisiana. I. Epidemiological Study, Pub. Health Rep. **59**: 1299-1311.

Parodi, A. S., and Silvetti, L. M.: 1946. La Psitacosis en los Psitacidos Silvestres (Myiopsitta Monacha, Bodde) de la República Argentina, Prensa méd. argent. **33**: 529-530.

Peterson, E., Spalding, O. B., and Wildman, O.: 1930. Psittacosis; a Clinical and Roentgenologic Study of Seven Cases With Post Mortem Observations in One Case, J. A. M. A. **95**: 171-179.

Pfaffenberg, R.: 1936. Die Psittacosis (Papageienkrankheit) in den Jahren 1931-1935. Epidemiologie, Forschungsergebnisse, Bekämpfung, Ergebn. d. Hyg., Bakt., Immunitätsforsch. u. exper. Therap. **18**: 251-331.

Pinkerton, H., and Swank, R. L.: 1940. Recovery of Virus Morphologically Identical With Psittacosis From Thiamin-Deficient Pigeons, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **45**: 704-706.

Polayes, S. H., and Lederer, M.: 1932. Psittacosis. With Results of Post Mortem Examination in a Case Including Studies of the Spinal Cord, Arch. Int. Med. **49**: 253-269.

Rake, G., and Jones, H. P.: 1942. Studies on Lymphogranuloma Venereum. I. Development of the Agent in the Yolk Sac of the Chicken Embryo, J. Exper. Med. **75**: 323-338.

Rake, G., and Jones, H. P.: 1944. Studies on Lymphogranuloma Venereum. II. The Association of Specific Toxins With Agents of the Lymphogranuloma-Psittacosis Group, J. Exper. Med. **79**: 463-486.

Rasmussen, R. K.: 1938. Ueber eine durch Sturmvögel übertragbare Lungenerkrankung auf den Färöern, Zentralbl. f. Bakt. (Abt. 1) **143**: 89-93.

Reiman, H. A.: 1947. The Viral Pneumonias and Pneumonias of Probable Viral Origin, Medicine **26**: 167-219.

Rivers, T. M., and Berry, G. P.: 1931. Psittacosis. IV. Experimentally Induced Infections in Monkeys, J. Exper. Med. **54**: 129-144.

Rivers, T. M., and Berry, G. P.: 1932. A Laboratory Method for the Diagnosis of Psittacosis in Man, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **29**: 942-944.

Rivers, T. M., and Berry, G. P.: 1935. Diagnosis of Psittacosis in Man by Means of Injections of Sputum Into White Mice, J. Exper. Med. **61**: 205-212.

Rivers, T. M., Berry, G. P., and Rhoads, C. P.: 1930. Psittacosis; Observations Concerning the Experimental Disease in Parrots, Mice, Rabbits, Guinea Pigs and Monkeys, J. A. M. A. **95**: 579-583.

Rivers, T. M., Berry, G. P., and Sprunt, D. H.: 1931. Psittacosis. Experimentally Induced Infections in Parrots, J. Exper. Med. **54**: 91-103.

Rivers, T. M., and Schwentker, F. F.: 1934. Vaccination of Monkeys and Laboratory Workers Against Psittacosis, J. Exper. Med. **60**: 211-238.

Rosebury, T., Ellingson, H. V., Meiklejohn, G., with the assistance of Schabel, F.: 1947. A Laboratory Infection With Psittacosis Virus Treated With Penicillin and Sulfadiazine, and Experimental Data Bearing on the Mode of Infection, J. Infect. Dis. **80**: 64-77.

Roubakine, A.: 1930. General Review on Psittacosis. League of Nations Monthly Epidemiological Report **9**: 141-175.

Rudd, G. V., and Burnet, F. M.: 1941. Intranasal Infection of Mice With the Virus of Psittacosis, Australian J. Exper. Biol. & M. Sc. **19**: 33-38.

Scholte, A. J.: 1930. Over de pathologisch-anatomische Afwijkingen van de Psittacosis, Nederl. tijdschr. v. geneesk. **74**: I, 2741-2747.

Smadel, J. E.: 1943. Atypical Pneumonia and Psittacosis, J. Clin. Investigation **22**: 57-65.

Smadel, J. E., Jackson, E. B., and Harman, J. W.: 1945. New Virus Disease of Pigeons; Recovery of Virus, J. Exper. Med. **81**: 385-398.

Smadel, J. E., Wall, M. J., and Gregg, A.: 1943. An Outbreak of Psittacosis in Pigeons, Involving the Production of Inclusion Bodies, and Transfer of the Disease to Man, J. Exper. Med. **78**: 189-204.

Smadel, J. E., Wertman, K., and Reagan, R. L.: 1943. Yolk Sac Complement Fixation Antigen for Use in Psittacosis-Lymphogranuloma Venereum Group of Diseases, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **54**: 70-74.

Sprunt, D. H., and Berry, G. P.: 1936. Psittacosis; Review of Literature on Lesions of Central Nervous System With Report of Case, J. Infect. Dis. **58**: 129-133.

St. John, E., and Gordon, F. B.: 1947. Studies on the Immunological Relationship of the Psittacosis-Lymphogranuloma Venereum Group of Viruses, J. Infect. Dis. **80**: 297-306.

Sturdee, E. L., and Scott, W. M.: 1930. Psittacosis. Repts. Publ. Health Med. Subj., London **61**: 9-58.

Tanner, F. H., Corey, G. W., Everett, H. H., Jr., Everett, H. H., Sr., and Neely, O. A.: 1945. Psittacosis. Report of a Fatal Case With Some Unusual Histopathologic Findings, Nebraska M. J. **30**: 386-390.

Thomson, A. P., and Hillier, W. T.: 1930. Lancet **1**: 396.

Tomlinson, T. H., Jr.: 1941. An Outbreak of Psittacosis at the National Zoological Park, Washington, D. C., Pub. Health Rep. **56**: 1073-1081.

Treuting, W. L., and Olson, B. J.: 1944. An Epidemic of a Severe Pneumonitis in the Bayou Region of Louisiana. II. Clinical Features of the Disease, Pub. Health Rep. **59**: 1331-1350.

Troup, A. G., Adam, R., and Bedson, S. P.: 1939. An Outbreak of Psittacosis at the London Zoological Gardens, Brit. M. J. **1**: 51-55.

Turgasen, F. E.: 1944. J. A. M. A. **126**: 1150.

Vervoort, H., and Ruys, A. C.: 1939-1940. The Recognition of Psittacosis, Antonie van Leeuwenhoek **6**: 11-21.

Vieuchange, J.: 1938. Psittacose. In Levaditi, C., and Lepine, P.: Les Ultravirus des Maladies Humaines, Paris, Maloine, vol. 2, pp. 863-897.

Vilches, A. M., and Averbach, S.: 1944. Contribución el Estudio de la Psitacosis; Epidemiología de un Brote en 1942, Rev. d. Inst. bact., Buenos Aires **12**: 347-354.

Vilches, A. M., Parodi, A. S., and Chialvo, E.: 1946. Relaciones Antigénicas (Sensibilidad Cutánea y Fijación de Complemento) Entre Virus "X," Baker y Linfogranuloma Venéreo, Rev. méd. Buenos Aires **6**: 268-272.

Wagner, J. C., Meiklejohn, G., Kingsland, L. C., and Hickish, H. W.: 1946. Psittacosis Vaccines Prepared From Chick Embryo Tissues, J. Immunol. **54**: 35-46.

Wenckebach, G. K.: 1936. Wiedererkrankung an Psittakosis, Med. Klin. **32**: 1594-1595.

Wiseman, R. W., Meiklejohn, G., Lackman, D. B., Wagner, J. C., and Beveridge, G. W.: 1946. Studies on the Chemotherapy of Viruses in the Psittacosis-Lymphogranuloma Group. II. Effect of Penicillin and Sulfadiazine on Several Strains in Mice, J. Immunol. **54**: 9-16.

Yanamura, H. Y., and Meyer, K. F.: 1941. Studies on the Virus of Psittacosis Cultivated in Vitro, J. Infect. Dis. **68**: 1-15.

Yanamura, H. Y., and Meyer, K. F.: 1942. Active Immunity to the Microbacterium Multiforme Psittacosis in the Mouse, J. Immunol. **44**: 195-209.

Zichis, J., and Shaughnessy, H. J.: 1945. Isolation of an Apparently New Virus From Two Fatal Pneumonia Cases, Science **102**: 301-302.

Zuccarini, J. A., and Molinelli, E. A.: 1939. Psitacosis en La República Argentina, Semana méd. **2**: 1204-1207.

CHAPTER 21

ENCEPHALITIS AND ALLIED DISEASES

LUIS VARGAS

EQUINE ENCEPHALOMYELITIS

The first published reference to equine encephalomyelitis is attributed to Large of the New York City Veterinary College, who, in 1867, described the disease among horses on Long Island. The next paper was published by Williams (1898) who described an outbreak in the Snake River Valley of Idaho. Buckley and MacCallum (1901) reported on an outbreak of equine encephalomyelitis in Maryland. Meyer, Haring, and Howitt (1931) reported that, in their investigation of a highly fatal outbreak among horses and mules in the San Joaquin Valley of California, they isolated a filtrable virus responsible for the epizootic disease then prevalent. As the virus was found to produce inflammation of both the brain and spinal cord, they designated the disease *encephalomyelitis.* This strain later was designated as the "Western" strain of equine encephalomyelitis. The first cases appeared in July and continued to occur in large numbers until the advent of cool weather in October and November, when the disease disappeared. In the San Joaquin Valley outbreak in 1930, about one horse in ten showed symptoms; approximately 50 per cent of the cases terminated fatally.

EASTERN TYPE OF EQUINE ENCEPHALOMYELITIS

According to Randall (1942), in 1933 the disease appeared in horses along the Atlantic Seaboard. Giltner and Shahan (1933) and Ten Broeck and Merrill (1933) reported isolation of an "Eastern" strain of equine encephalomyelitis virus which, though similar to the "Western" type, differed from it immunologically.

Epizootics of the Western variety among horses have been characterized by a high attack rate, a low fatality rate, and a subacute form of the disease. Epizootics of the Eastern variety are characterized by a low attack rate, a high fatality rate, and a more acute and fulminating type of disease. The areas of Eastern and Western equine encephalomyelitis are divided by the Appalachian range of mountains. In Alabama, which lies directly at the southern end of this mountain range, both forms of the malady are known to have occurred. In the spring of 1941, Randall and Eichorn (1941) isolated the Eastern strain from a suspected horse from Brownsville, Texas. Téllez Girón and Valdéz Ornelas (1941) identified the same strain in an outbreak in the state of Tamaulipas, Mexico.

Meyer (1933) suggested the possibility of human infection. He reported briefly 3 cases of encephalitis in men closely associated with horses having equine encephalomyelitis. He was unable to isolate the virus from a fatal case or to demonstrate neutralization of the virus of equine encephalomyelitis by blood serum obtained during convalescence from a nonfatal case. He presented these cases with the suggestion that in the future the central nervous systems of patients who have died of typical human encephalitis be investigated for the presence of the virus of equine encephalomyelitis. Fothergill, Dingle, Farber, and Connerly (1938) and Webster and Wright (1938) isolated, in Massachusetts, the Eastern type virus, from human brains, coincident with an epizootic in horses. It was the first time that equine encephalomyelitis had been demonstrated in infected species other than horses and mules.

WESTERN TYPE OF EQUINE ENCEPHALOMYELITIS

Eklund and Blumstein (1938) reported 6 cases of encephalitis among farmers in Minnesota in 1937, all of whom had been in contact with horses sick with equine encephalomyelitis. Two of the men died after an illness of four to five days, and the third after an illness of weeks. It was found that the serum of 1 of the surviving 3 neutralized the Western strain of equine encephalomyelitis virus (in January, 1938). Howitt (1938), during the California outbreak, isolated a ''Western'' strain from the brain of a child, and in the next year from the blood of a man showing symptoms of encephalitis. Fothergill, Holden, and Wyckoff (1939) isolated the virus from the spinal fluid. Wheeler (1941) reported that 50 per cent of patients with encephalitis in Kansas showed antibodies for this ''Western'' type.

The Western variety of equine encephalomyelitis has been recognized as one of the most prevalent forms of encephalitis. In the summer of 1941 alone, 1,700 cases were recorded in Minnesota and North Dakota. Howitt (1942) examined 498 human sera from cases with diseases produced by neurotropic viruses and found that 213 (42.3 per cent) neutralized the Western virus. Leake (1941) reported on a large epidemic which occurred in North Dakota, recording 96 deaths from a total of 1,080 patients, an incidence of 167 per 100,000 and a mortality rate of 8.9 per cent. Wheeler (1941), Casals, Curnen, and Thomas (1943), and Lennette and Koprowsky (1943) reported laboratory infections and emphasized the high contagiosity.

LATIN AMERICAN STRAINS OF EQUINE ENCEPHALOMYELITIS

Rosenbusch (1935) isolated in Argentina a horse virus similar to the Western type. Tabusso (1935) and Schmidt (1936) found the same type in Peru and Chile, respectively. Kubes and Ríos (1939) found in Venezuela a new encephalomyelitis virus that was reported again by Soriano Lleras and Figueroa (1942) from Colombia, and by Kubes (1943a) from Trinidad.

Shahan and Giltner (1945) reported that in 1944 an epizootic of equine encephalomyelitis occurred in Cuba; five strains submitted for examination were of the Eastern type. A vaccine was prepared from one of the Cuban strains. This protected equally well against the homologous strain, one of the other Cuban strains, and a representative Eastern virus from the United States.

Early in 1945, a sample of guinea pig brain, from infection with a supposed equine encephalomyelitis virus, was received from Ecuador. Guinea pigs immune to Eastern and Western virus succumbed to intracerebral inoculation with this virus. All guinea pigs immunized with Venezuelan type vaccine withstood intracerebral challenge with approximately 100 M.L.D. of the Ecuadorian virus, which was thus diagnosed as the Venezuelan type.

The vaccine prepared with the Venezuelan strain conferred complete protection against the homologous virus and the virus isolated in Trinidad (Kubes, 1943).

In 1913 and 1915 the Brazilian literature recorded clinical observations on equine encephalomyelitis. In March, 1937, in Tatuhy, state of São Paulo, an epizootic was studied by Carneiro (1937). The virus isolated at that time seemed to be similar to the Argentina (Western) virus, but in further trials made by Carneiro and Cunha (1943) and Carneiro (1944) it was not possible to detect immunologic relationship between the Brazilian, the Argentinian, a strain of Western type from California, and the Venezuelan type viruses. The immunologic relationship to the Eastern type virus is much closer, though incomplete. To these authors it seemed that the Brazilian strain should be classified as a variety of the Eastern type.

According to Valdés et al. (1943), there was an epidemic of meningoencephalomyelitis in Córdoba, Argentina, during the autumn and summer of 1940 and 1941. Some scattered cases had previously been observed, but this was the first epidemic of encephalitis to be recognized in Argentina. The author observed 80 cases in the University Hospital, with a higher incidence in children. Of 67 seriously ill patients, 40 per cent died, and 16 per cent presented serious aftereffects such as hydrocephalus, epilepsy, and mental disturbances. Of the entire group, only 44 per cent recovered without sequelae. Neutralization tests with convalescent sera were negative with the Japanese B and St. Louis, as well as Eastern and Western, equine encephalomyelitis viruses.

The infection was transmitted to white mice by inoculation of an emulsion of brain material; it was possible, too, to convey the infection from mice to mice. The epidemic coincided with an epizootic in horses and was followed by one in birds.

In Córdoba, Argentina, cases of infantile encephalitis have been confirmed several times since late in 1940. Valdés et al. (1943) observed cases in children born of apparently healthy mothers. These authors described 8 cases at ages ranging from 5 days to 9 months; all were studied clinically and pathologically and presented the first signs without any exception a few hours or days after birth.

Soriano Lleras (1943) pointed out that Ordoñez in 1943 reported that in Bogotá and Tenjo he had observed 7 human cases of encephalomyelitis. He added that the disease was described for the first time in Colombia by Franco in 1923. Guerrero, in 1927, collected 6 more cases, one in La Dorada and five in Bogotá. Ordoñez in 1940 observed the disease in Bogotá, Bucaramanga, La Dorada, and Tenjo, but the etiologic agent was not clear. It is believed that there was a severe outbreak in that year. Early in 1941, in La Sabana, and especially in Bogotá, equine encephalomyelitis appeared in epidemic form; Soriano Lleras (1943) established that the agent was the Venezuela type virus. The rarity of human cases contrasts with the frequency with which equine encephalomyelitis appears, this having been studied by Tavares in Tolima more than twenty years ago; later, epizootic outbreaks occurred in El Cauca, Atlántico, Valle, Tolima, Bolivar, Huila, Magdalena, La Guajira, Arauca, Cundinamarca, and Antioquía.

TRANSMISSION

It has been observed that the disease appears in early summer, reaching its peak late in August or September, and disappearing with the coming of killing frosts. Infection follows natural water courses and irrigation systems; Its greatest prevalence is in rural areas among horses kept in the pastures at night. Meyer et al. (1931) had expressed the belief that the virus is transmitted by an insect vector.

Kelser (1933) proved that the mosquito *Aëdes aegypti* is capable of transmitting the virus of equine encephalomyelitis from guinea pig to guinea pig and from guinea pig to horses. It was further shown that the transmission was not mechanical but occurred after multiplication of the virus within the mosquito, and that once infected the insect was capable of transmitting the disease for most, if not all, of its ordinary life. Simmons, Reynolds, and Cornell (1934) proved transmission of the disease by *Aëdes albopictus.* Merrill, Lacaillade, and Ten Broeck (1934) succeeded in transmitting both Eastern and Western strains through *Aëdes sollicitans,* the New Jersey salt marsh mosquito, and also *Aëdes cantator.* Madsen and Knowlton (1935) added *Aëdes nigromaculis* and *Aëdes dorsalis* to the list of transmitters, and Ten Broeck and Merrill (1935) and Kelser (1937) added *Aëdes vexans;* Kelser (1938) added *Aëdes taeniorhynchus;* Davis (1940) added *Aëdes triseriatus* to this group of experimentally infected mosquitoes. Hammon et al. (1941) reported that *Culex tarsalis* was found to be harboring the virus in nature. They found that the same species of mosquito harbors the virus of St. Louis encephalitis. Hammon and Reeves (1943) demonstrated transmission by *Aëdes lateralis* (Meigen). Syverton and Berry (1936) showed that the Rocky Mountain spotted fever tick, *Dermacentor andersoni,* is capable of transmitting the disease experimentally from guinea pigs to ground squirrels and further suggested that the gopher, *Citellus richardsoni,* may be the natural host of the virus because of its susceptibility.

The virus of Japanese encephalitis has been isolated from *Culex pipiens* var. *pallens* and *Culex tritaeniorhynchus* in epidemic areas by both Russian and Japanese workers; and Culex, *Aëdes togoi, Aëdes albopictus,* and *Aëdes japonicus* have been shown to be capable of transmitting the disease to mice or monkeys in the laboratory. Mitamura et al. (1937, 1940) reported that mosquitoes bred in the laboratory from larvae or eggs collected in an epidemic area were occasionally infected. It has been reported that a virus of encephalomyelitis infection of mice somewhat similar to Theiler's virus is encountered in laboratory mouse colonies in the East, which, clinically, in animal susceptibility range, and even serologically, cannot be readily differentiated from Japanese B virus encephalitis. To prevent the establishment of this virus from accidental introduction we must control more species than Anopheles and *A. aegypti* near air and seaports. The genus Culex and certain other genera can no longer be considered mere pests.

Mitamura et al. (1940) reported the transmission of St. Louis virus by *Culex pipiens* var. *pallens, Culex tritaeniorhynchus* and *Armigeres obturans.* The Western type was transmitted by Culex.

Hammon and Reeves (1945) report that more detailed laboratory tests on inoculated chickens have shown that a very high dilution of St. Louis virus, if inoculated subcutaneously into a chicken, gives rise regularly to a virus concentration in the blood to a titer higher than in the inoculum, for a period of 2 or 3 days, occasionally for as long as 4 days. No mammal thus far tested has proved to be as good a potential source of mosquito infection. However, despite this apparently satisfactory and well established concept of the epidemiology of this disease, mosquito-fowl-mosquito and occasionally a biologically aberrant infection mosquito-to-man or -horse, the cycle is still incomplete. Chickens and other birds tested have shown no evidence of ability to serve as chronic or latent carriers of the virus. Hibernating *C. tarsalis* and *C. pipiens* collected during the winter in Washington and California have not been found infected so far, although 5,429 have been tested. These results do not support the early hypothesis of winter ''carryover,'' presented by Hammon et al. (1941, 1942) based on the fact that many Culex hibernate as adults. In addition, they tested the eggs and progeny of infected *C. tarsalis* and *C. pipiens* and found no evidence of transovarian passage of the virus. Therefore, the true reservoir or the whereabouts of the virus during the winter and during the seasons when there is no apparent infection is unknown.

Hammon and Reeves (1945) state that one strain has just been isolated from *Aëdes dorsalis* (Meigen) caught in Kern County, California. This is the first isolation of St. Louis virus from any source in California, although serologic evidence of its presence had been repeatedly obtained. It is also the first isolation of St. Louis virus from an Aëdes mosquito.

In the West, most of the cases have occurred among adult male farm workers in contrast to the Eastern type infection which has had the highest incidence in children. In 28 cases studied in the Yakima Valley, Washington, by Hammon et al. (1945), the mean age was 36, as compared with 46 for 1940 and 25 for 1941. They recorded 4 cases in children less than 1 year old, males greatly predominating only in the adult and teen-age working group. By using five New Jersey-type light traps, they showed that the activity of *C. tarsalis* correlated well with the epidemic curve.

Hammon and Reeves (1942, 1943, 1943a) have demonstrated that *C. tarsalis* is an efficient vector of both Western equine and St. Louis viruses. It feeds predominantly on fowl and occasionally on mammals. It becomes readily infected by feeding on fowls at a time when virus is present in the blood, and mosquitoes infected become, in turn, infective by their bite after a suitable extrinsic incubation time at proper temperatures. It thus appears that this species is an important vector of both Western equine and St. Louis viruses.

Hammon and Reeves (1945) found *C. pipiens* infected with St. Louis and Western equine viruses. This species is also used in the laboratory as a vector of St. Louis virus and thus can be considered a natural vector. However, in all laboratory tests, this species has lost every detectable trace of Western equine virus in 24 hours. It would appear that the recovery of Western equine virus from a mosquito of this species in nature is an indication that the specimen had recently engorged on an infected "reservoir" and that the virus probably would have disappeared within a few more hours.

Culiseta inornata is capable of acting as a vector in the laboratory and, if present in large numbers, might serve as a vector of importance. *Anopheles freeborni* has been demonstrated to lose all detectable virus within 24 hours.

The Western type of equine encephalomyelitis virus was isolated by Sulkin (1945) from chicken mites, *Dermanyssus gallinae* (de Geer) in nature, during an outbreak in which there were at least 3 cases of infection in man. Smith, Blattner, and Heys (1945) reported the isolation of the St. Louis virus on three different occasions from *D. gallinae* and demonstrated the infection in the progeny.

It is believed by Gilyard (1944) that in Trinidad the principal vector may be *Taeniorhynchus titillans*, but other species cannot be excluded. The virus has been isolated from mosquitoes captured in the field, and the vaccine elaborated with the Venezuelan virus has fully protected experimental animals against it. A fatal human case is reported in a sailor about 40 kilometers distant from the animal outbreak and is considered as the first human case of equine encephalomyelitis virus Venezuelan type. *T. titillans* is a common mosquito ranging from the southeastern states of the United States to South America. This author was able to demonstrate for the first time a mosquito infection from a large mammal with any of the equine viruses. This is, therefore, another arthropod-borne virus encephalitis affecting man, with large mammals, including horses and man, among the hosts from which mosquitoes may become infected. Similar in this respect is the Japanese B virus.

In some experiments *Stomoxys calcitrans, Tabanus punctifer,* and *Haematobia serrata* were not proved to be capable of being vectors of equine encephalomyelitis.

Remlinger and Bailly (1936, 1936a) reported a large number of birds to be susceptible to the Argentine virus. These included the greyleg goose *(Anser cinereus)*, the hawk *(Circus rufus)*, the European blackbird *(Turdus merula)*, the tawny vulture *(Vultur fulvus)*, the white stork *(Ciconia ciconia)*, and the mallard duck *(Anas boschas)*. The Argentine virus is immunologically identical with the Western virus.

Nevertheless, the reservoir of the encephalomyelitis virus is unknown. The horse does not seem to be a suitable reservoir according to Randall (1942), since the virus can be isolated from its blood stream only during the early stages of the disease, and a chronic carrier state has not been established. Pheasants, pigeons, and prairie chickens have been found infected under normal conditions. Hammon et al. (1941), working in the Yakima Valley, found the blood serum of many mammals and birds from the region to show neutralizing antibodies to the virus. The avian species included the chicken, goose, owl, pigeon, turkey, flicker, killdeer, pheasant, and quail; the mammals included the cow, dog, goat, horse, pig, sheep, field mouse, and weasel. This indicates the wide host range of the virus. As mosquitoes readily feed on mammals and birds, this further stresses their importance as vectors of the disease.

Inoculation into a wide variety of vertebrates by dermal routes has not afforded any results suggesting a true reservoir state, but Blattner and Heys (1944) found that *Dermacentor variabilis* (Say) is capable of transmitting the infection, and that transovarian infection occurs, thus suggesting a potential reservoir. Hammon and Reeves (1945) note, however, that no naturally infected ticks have been found, and there is little to suggest that the dog might serve as a link in a tick infection chain. Moreover, *D. variabilis* is unlikely at any stage in its development to infect fowl. These authors found a heavy chicken tick infection, *Argas persicus* (Oken), in the San Joaquin Valley. However, none was found infected among 2,958 tested during 1943 and 1944, but in the laboratory, experimental infection has persisted at least 12 days.

Syverton and Berry (1936) were able to infect *D. andersoni* and they demonstrated transovarian infection.

Kitselman and Grundmann (1940) isolated the virus, fatal to guinea pigs, from *Triatoma sanguisuga* Lec., collected from a pasture near Garrison, Kansas. The virus, when first isolated, appeared to be of low virulence, but the virulence was built up rapidly by serial passage. The virus also killed consistently following intranasal instillation and foot pad inoculation.

IDENTIFICATION AND PROPERTIES

The virus of equine encephalomyelitis is estimated to be from 20 to 30 mμ in size. It may be preserved in 50 per cent glycerin under refrigerated conditions for some time. It apparently loses its virulence quite readily in a dried condition. It is easily destroyed by heat and by chemical preparations commonly used as disinfectants.

Gallia (1944, 1945) investigated the in vitro effect of different drugs on the Venezuelan equine encephalomyelitis virus. No antibiotic known to date (1949) is effective.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

Eklund (1942) and Feemster (1938) described the disease in human beings as follows: The clinical picture in human encephalitis of the Western type closely resembles the St. Louis disease. There is usually an abrupt onset with severe headache and high fever, together with chills, chilly sensations, nausea or vomiting, pain in the neck, the back, the abdomen, or in the extremities. In young children the onset is sudden, with high fever and convulsions. A day or two after the onset, drowsiness appears; the temperature continues to be elevated. The patient becomes mentally retarded and, when not disturbed, drops off to sleep. Shortly thereafter, tremors about the mouth and hands may appear. Delirium and disorientation take place in some cases; in others, drowsiness progresses to coma. Rigidity of the neck muscles is the most frequent finding, but lack of abdominal reflexes, and tremors of the lips, tongue, and hands are common. Less frequent are positive Kernig and Babinski signs, abnormal tendon reflexes; difficulty in speech and swallowing are rather uncommon except in children. Mental retardation and paralysis sometimes occur. The temperature is high for about five days, then it drops rapidly. About two days after the temperature declines, the symptoms improve, and in ten to fourteen days the patient is well on the road to recovery.

In fatal cases the fever continues high, drowsiness progresses to coma, and death usually follows in 5 to 7 days. The mortality from the Western type appears to be about 10 per cent, although 7 to 20 per cent have been reported.

In the Eastern infection, onset is more abrupt, pointing to an early and severe invasion of and injury to the central nervous system, high fever, vomiting, and appearance of drowsiness or coma, all becoming manifest in 24 to 48 hours. The cerebrospinal fluid is under increased pressure, of hazy to ground-glass appearance, with cell counts varying from 200 to 2,000 per cubic millimeter; from 60 to 90 per cent of the cells are polymorphonuclear leucocytes. There is a high fatality rate (75 per cent), a predilection for children, and marked sequelae in the survivor, such as paralysis and mental changes.

According to Adamson and Dubo (1942), a patient affected by equine encephalitis Western type has the aspect of and acts like a person alcoholically intoxicated in the first degree, showing a red face, sweat, tumefaction, with mask expression, and redness of the eyes and nose. Speech is difficult; there are tremors of the tongue, lips, and hands. Notwithstanding the intense cephalalgia, somnolence, and mental confusion, the patient seems to be only slightly worried about his condition and probably after recovery will not recall any details of his illness. In addition, the patient shows absence of abdominal reflexes, but the Babinski sign is positive, there is nystagmus, and the cerebrospinal fluid shows monocytes.

The most convincing proof of the disease is a positive complement fixation reaction* or the neutralization test. In localities in which equine encephalomyelitis has been observed, an unknown proportion of the population perhaps may show positive blood reactions. The serum may be negative during the first weeks and even later. The test must be repeated in all suspicious cases.

Clinically it is very difficult to differentiate the disease from poliomyelitis; cases with slight encephalitis may resemble serious poliomyelitis cases. In this latter, perhaps one may observe cephalalgia, somnolence, sweating, mental disturbances, and abnormal reflexes characteristic of encephalitis. Rigidity of the neck muscles and paralysis indicate poliomyelitis: nystagmus, tremors, and monocytes in the cerebrospinal fluid all point to encephalitis. The acute symptoms of poliomyelitis disappear within 4 to 5 days, while those of encephalitis perhaps may last one week.

The pathology of the disease in man is reported as similar to that described for animals. It is stated that in man the general type of pathology in lethargic encephalitis, St. Louis encephalitis, and encephalomyelitis is practically the same, the differences consisting chiefly in the degree and extent of involvement.

Randall (1942) sounds a note of caution about brain material from fatal suspected cases submitted to laboratories for virus isolation: shortly after death certain chemical changes take place, with formation of lactic acid, that readily destroy the virus. Therefore, in suspected cases that end in death, remove the brain promptly and place selected portions of it in sterile 50 per cent buffered glycerin. The virus will remain viable for many days. The brain material, in a dilution of 1:100, should be injected intracerebrally into three groups of guinea pigs. One group should be previously immunized against the Western type, the second group against the Eastern type, and the third group not immunized. If equine encephalomyelitis virus is present, all of the guinea pigs, except those immunized against the specific type, should die in 3 to 5 days. In a typical case in man, a diagnosis of encephalitis should not be difficult, but it is impossible to state whether it is the St. Louis or equine type. It is often difficult to differentiate this disease from abortive poliomyelitis or tuberculous meningitis and, when there are no neurologic findings, from the common infectious diseases such as undulant fever. An etiologic diagnosis can often be made. The virus itself is most often isolated from the brain at autopsy. It has rarely been isolated from the blood or spinal fluid. Usually the diagnosis is made by the neutralization test in which a series of tenfold dilutions of the virus are made. Virus suspensions diluted 1:1,000, 1:10,000 and 1:100,000 are mixed with equal amounts of the patient's serum, and groups of mice are inoculated intracerebrally. If the patient has had the disease, the mice will be protected; serum may have protective power as early as one week after onset of the disease. The time when the serum has its maximum protective power is not known, but, when taken at the end of the second or third week, will probably in most cases show protection. Protective antibodies have been demonstrated in the sera of patients two years after recovery from the disease, and it is possible that they may persist longer. Sera of patients with no history of encephalitis seldom show protection, so that a positive neutralization test, together with the clinical findings of encephalitis, justifies a diagnosis of encephalitis of the equine type. It is preferable, if possible, to secure blood serum early and demonstrate that antibodies are not present early in the disease but are developed during the illness or convalescence.

---

*Editor's note (O. F.): Lederle Laboratories, Inc., and the Markham Laboratories, Chicago, Ill., produce reliable antigens for such tests.

As Shahan and Giltner (1945) state, infection by equine encephalomyelitis virus is almost invariably followed, in the event of recovery, by the formation of virus-neutralizing antibodies in the blood serum. In some few cases, these may endure for a comparatively short time, but they usually persist for months. The antibodies develop after inapparent or occult infections and after vaccinations with formalin-inactivated virus such as is utilized in the present-day chicken-embryo vaccine.

Noran and Baker (1945) state that the lesions in Western equine encephalitis may be progressive, resulting in a chronic form of this disease, especially in infants and children. In one case they found that cysts had replaced both frontal lobes and were separated from one another by glial tissue. The rest of the brain represented widespread parenchymal changes consisting of diffuse and focal areas of demyelinization. The vascular involvement varied from collars of perivascular infiltrations to the narrowing and occlusion of the vessels by an endothelial proliferation. Vascular calcification was prominent. Apparently the vascular alterations indicate that the parenchymatous lesions are secondary to cerebral ischemia. The outstanding pathologic changes in the blood vessels suggest a vascular spread of the equine virus.

Kubes (1943) systematically studied the immunologic relations between the Colombian and Venezuelan viruses. The results obtained suggest the immunologic identity of both viruses. Nevertheless, the antigenic potency of the vaccine elaborated with the Venezuelan virus is higher than with the other.

Havens et al. (1943) found a definite cross reaction in the complement fixation test between Eastern equine encephalomyelitis and Western encephalomyelitis viruses. On the other hand, the conclusions reached by Casals (1945) were that by complement fixation test with guinea pig hyperimmune sera (1) Venezuelan equine encephalomyelitis virus is not related to either the Eastern or Western viruses; (2) two strains of the Western type differ in their capacity to develop the complement-fixing antibody; (3) the relationship between the Eastern and the Western types is doubtful. Cross reactions rarely occur in 1:2 and 1:4 dilutions; more often they arise in the same dilutions as nonspecific partial reactions, since in that zone other antigens as well are reactive with the same sera.

Casals (1945) reports that avirulent lyophilized antigens that retain their properties, specificity, antigenicity, and lack of anticomplementary power for at least two years can be prepared with the Western type virus.

At present, the antigens of the Western type, Eastern type, lymphocytic choriomeningitis, and St. Louis viruses should be used as a routine practice.* If the serum is anticomplementary or if a nonspecific reaction occurs, the test should be repeated with serum inactivated at 56° C. for twenty minutes. If this procedure does not eliminate the nonspecific reaction, the serum must be classified as unfit for the test.

Guinea pigs are highly susceptible to Venezuelan, Eastern, and Western equine encephalomyelitis viruses. From these animals, hyperimmune sera can be obtained.

ST. LOUIS ENCEPHALITIS AND LYMPHOCYTIC CHORIOMENINGITIS

St. Louis virus is pathogenic for mice and hamsters; these two species are used for the production of hyperimmune serum for the St. Louis and lymphocytic choriomeningitis viruses. Casals (1945) has prepared hyperimmune sera which, following inactivation at 56° C. for 20 minutes, had titers of 1:64 to 1:128. The serum is heated at this temperature following dilution in order to prevent coagulation. Sometimes a partial nonspecific fixation of the complement occurs with the dilutions 1:2 and 1:4.

Lymphocytic choriomeningitis hyperimmune sera have been obtained in mice only.

PATHOLOGY

Encephalitis is the term commonly used for nonpurulent inflammation of the brain. Only those clinical cases with virus etiology will be discussed. According to Hassin (1933), in epidemic or lethargic encephalitis, the ectodermal and mesodermal tissues of the brain are involved, including the meninges, pia-arachnoid. The meshes of the pia may be greatly distended and may contain hematogenous elements, mainly lymphocytes and plasma cells. Quite numerous around the congested and hyperemic blood vessels, they are often mixed with fibroblasts, polyblasts, macrophages, and rod cells. The infiltrating cells are present throughout the pia; that is, around every part of the brain, especially around the cerebellum.

Frequently the subjacent cortex is also infiltrated, but in general the vascular changes here are milder than in the pia. They are more marked in the subcortical areas, mainly around the smaller veins. Here, the vascular infiltrations, for instance, may be so marked that the lumina of the blood vessels become compressed or even obliterated. The usual infiltrative elements are lymphocytes; plasma cells are rare and appear late in the infection; other cells are the same as in the pia—polyblasts, fibroblasts, and rod cells. They are all confined to the adventitial spaces of Virchow-Robin. In some cases the infiltrations are so dense that they overflow these spaces and invade the surrounding parenchyma. The perivascular infiltrations are especially prominent in the substantia nigra, around the Sylvian aqueduct, and in the optic thalamus. Hemorrhage and softening are, as a rule, absent, and polymorphonuclear cells may be present in very acute or peracute cases. Small scattered hemorrhagic foci occasionally may be seen, but they are not associated with reactive glial phenomena and thus may be considered agonal.

---

*Editor's note (O. F.): Obtainable from Lederle Laboratories, Inc., and from Markham Laboratories.

Poliomyelitis may resemble epidemic encephalitis. The main differential feature, however, as pointed out by Hassin (1933), is in the parenchymatous changes which are present in the anterior horn cells in poliomyelitis. Here, within a few days, or even hours, the ganglion cells may become destroyed, as evidenced clinically by sudden paralysis and early degenerative muscular atrophy. In epidemic encephalitis the majority of the ganglion cells are unaffected or exhibit only a slight cloudy swelling, mild chromatolysis, and occasional neurophagia. Mild as the inflammatory phenomena in the spinal cord are, their presence in encephalitis justifies the designation of the latter as a disseminated encephalomyelitis.

Koprowsky and Lennette (1944) found that the pathogenesis of the infection produced by the Venezuelan equine encephalomyelitis virus in chick embryos is similar to that of the Eastern and Western viruses. There was no change in the virulence of the virus for mice as a result of membrane passages.

One might expect that the clinical and histologic pictures of lethargic or any other forms of encephalitis would be affected by the duration of the disease, the age of the patient, the virulence of the infection, and other factors. Though a number of clinical varieties of epidemic encephalitis have been recognized—hyperkinetic, delirious, tabetiform, and other types—there is no manifest pathologic difference.

Hassin (1933) says that the specific feature of typhus encephalitis is an abundance of nodules and their widespread dissemination, which spares no part of the nervous system. The same may be said of the ganglion cell changes. Ganglion cell changes occur throughout the brain and may be either mild, as in encephalitis, or very severe, as in poliomyelitis.

The nodules, so much in evidence in typhus encephalitis, are also very prominent in encephalitis which occurs in malignant endocarditis.

Trichinosis encephalitis is a rather rare form of meningoencephalitis. It shows a combination of mesodermal and degenerative phenomena. Both are due to invasion by Trichinella larvae which can be demonstrated in the tissues of the brain or within the meninges.

In rabies, the central nervous system is in a state of inflammation, a disseminated encephalomyelitis, with the presence of Negri bodies. The inflammatory foci are the same as in lethargic encephalitis.

CULTIVATION, TREATMENT, AND IMMUNOLOGY

Carneiro (1944) tested duck and goose eggs as to their suitability for virus culture. The results were identical with those obtained with chick embryo.

Intraperitoneal neutralization tests with the Venezuelan equine encephalomyelitis virus were found by Lennette and Koprowsky (1944) to be feasible in mice as old as 200 days. Inoculations of serum-virus mixtures subcutaneously into 3-day-old mice, or intraperitoneally into 8-day-old mice, provided a highly sensitive means for detecting antibodies to the St. Louis encephalitis virus. Tests in mice 14 or more days of age were less sensitive or not feasible. With the viruses of Eastern and Western equine encephalomyelitis, Japanese B encephalitis, and West Nile disease, a highly sensitive test was afforded by the use of mice up to 14 days of age. Tests in 21-day-old mice were less sensitive or inadvisable because of lack of uniformity in the results. Present evidence suggests that subcutaneous inoculation of test mixtures into 3-day-old mice may constitute a more sensitive quantitative test than does intraperitoneal inoculation into older, but still highly susceptible, mice. Where adequate susceptibility to extraneural (subcutaneous or intraperitoneal) infection exists, this route of inoculation of serum-virus mixtures is much more sensitive for the demonstration of neutralizing antibodies than the intracerebral route.

Treatment

Supportive treatment, mainly large volumes of physiologic salt solution fortified with glucose and given intravenously, is indicated to overcome dehydration. Medicinal treatment is largely symptomatic and should be conservative. Good nursing is essential. It is reported that lumbar puncture gives marked relief of headache.

Immunization is very effective in animals. Due to the number of deaths which have occurred among personnel working with these viruses, it is now general practice to vaccinate, at least once yearly, all laboratory workers employed in the manufacture of encephalomyelitis vaccine.

Davison (1941) and Gold and Hampil (1942) have tried serotherapy in human beings, but the results are inconclusive.

Stramonium and scopolamine are recommended for insomnia and for muscular rigidity and spasm. They act as cerebral sedatives and hypnotics.

OTHER VIRUS DISEASES

Russian spring-summer encephalitis occurs annually in forest regions of the eastern U.S.S.R., and to a lesser degree in European Russia. It occurs only during the spring and early summer, coinciding with the activity of ticks. The virus has been isolated from man, rodents, and ticks. Casals and Webster (1943, 1944) have shown it to be very similar to, or identical with, the virus of louping ill of sheep in Scotland, also known to be tick-borne. Silber and Shubladze (1945) have reported that louping ill is the tick-borne encephalitis of western U.S.S.R., but that a different virus is responsible for tick-borne encephalitis in the Far Eastern area. The tick is not only the vector, but also the reservoir, since transovarian passage of the virus normally occurs.

Louping ill is transmitted by the sheep tick. Distribution is limited to tick-infested areas, and its seasonal occurrence in April, May, and early June, and again in September, bears a close relationship to the months of greatest tick activity. It has been estimated to be 15 to 20 mμ in size. The virus is quickly destroyed at room temperature but may be preserved for considerable time at low temperatures. It can be easily preserved in 50 per cent glycerin at 4° C.

According to Merchant (1942), this disease may be easily transmitted, by various means, under experimental conditions, to sheep and, less regularly, to cattle, goats, and swine. The virus has also been transmitted to monkeys, mice, and field voles. Under experimental conditions the incubation period appears to vary from 5 to 9 days after intracranial infection. Cases of human infection have been recorded as mild and of short duration, followed by complete recovery. Sheep exposed to this disease under natural conditions usually show clinical symptoms in from 6 to 18 days. The onset of the disease is characterized by a high temperature and symptoms of a central nervous disturbance. Progressive incoordination, tremors, clonic muscular spasms, and paresis are often observed. Recovery often occurs without the development of nervous symptoms. Permanent irregularities in locomotion may follow the manifestation of severe nervous symptoms. Animals which have recovered from this disease developed complete immunity.

The Russian spring-summer encephalitis differs from the remainder of this group principally in respect to paralytic manifestations. Shoulder girdle paralysis or paresis is reported to occur quite frequently. Virus has been isolated from the blood, the cerebrospinal fluid, and the urine of infected persons. Case fatality rates average about 30 per cent. The Russians have effectively used a formalinized tissue vaccine to protect man in the areas involved.

The name Japanese B encephalitis has been used to distinguish from the von Economo type, which the Japanese called type A, an epidemiologically and clinically distinct type of epidemic encephalitis. Hammon and Reeves (1945) stated that they have demonstrated the ability of six species (three genera) of California mosquitoes to transmit the Japanese B virus to animals and have demonstrated its presence in the blood of inoculated chickens. The Japanese and Russians themselves have reported transmission by only five species (two genera). This disease did not attract much attention until the great epidemic of 1924 which involved over 6,000 persons with 3,797 reported deaths. Since then, annual epidemics have been recorded, sometimes from numerous regions. Between 1924 and 1937, from Japan alone, 21,355 cases with 12,159 deaths were reported. Case fatality rates have ranged from 42 to 75 per cent. Epidemics or sporadic cases have also been reported from Formosa, the Southern Ryukyu Islands, eastern China, and the eastern U.S.S.R. Smithburn and Jacobs (1942) reported, as a result of serologic tests, that "the St. Louis and Japanese 'B' viruses have been active over broad expanses of territory in Central Africa." Sabin (1943) reported a number of positive serologic tests for Japanese B virus in the Cincinnati area.

Smorodintseff et al. (1940) had already shown that the Russian spring-summer encephalitis is different from the autumn encephalitis, which is identical with the Japanese B type. Sabin (1943) reported the elaboration of a vaccine for experimental use in man.

According to Grieg (1933), the virus of louping ill of sheep is transmitted in nature by certain ticks *(Ixodes ricinus)*. Alexander and Neitz (1933, 1935) transmitted the disease from infected to normal sheep by the nymphs of other ticks *(Rhipicephalus appendiculatus)* infected as larvae and by adults infected as nymphs. This worker was unable, however, to demonstrate virus in eggs or larvae obtained from infected females. The virulence of the infection appeared to be increased by passage through the tick hosts. Smithburn et al. (1940) isolated a virus, which they have called the ''West Nile virus,'' by the intracerebral inoculation of mice with serum from a mildly febrile woman in Uganda, Africa. It produces encephalitis in the mouse, the monkey, and the hamster. Philip and Smadel (1943) have transmitted the virus in the laboratory by the bite of *A. albopictus* mosquitoes. The virus is related immunologically to the St. Louis-Japanese B group. Smithburn and Jacobs (1942) believe that the antibodies are specific for this virus in man.

Bugher et al. (1944) have isolated two unidentified viruses by the intracerebral inoculation of mice from mosquitoes caught in Colombia. They called the viruses ''Sabethine I'' and ''Anopheles I,'' from the genus of mosquitoes from which they were isolated.

Hammon and Reeves (1945), in the summer of 1945, isolated from *A. dorsalis* mosquitoes caught in Kern County, California, an unidentified virus (BFS-91) which produces encephalitis in mice, cotton rats, and hamsters, and which can be cultivated by various methods in the chick embryo. Sera from a number of encephalitis patients and from domestic and wild animals from the area in which it was found have neutralized it in protection tests. In 1944, from the same area and from the same species of mosquitoes, another virus (BFS-283) was isolated, which also has proved to be difficult to identify, and, in all probability, is identical to BFS-91.

Evidence is therefore accumulating that there are a large number of arthropod-borne neurotropic viruses of man and other animals and that they are of world-wide distribution, and of no small importance.

The term ''acute lymphocytic choriomeningitis'' was suggested by Armstrong and Lillie (1934). This condition was formerly referred to as acute serous meningitis, idiopathic meningitis, acute benign lymphocytic meningitis, meningitic form of encephalitis, and acute aseptic meningitis.

Armstrong and Lillie (1934) recovered an undescribed filtrable virus from a monkey-to-monkey transfer of infectious material from the brain of a patient who had died of encephalitis during the St. Louis epidemic of 1933. Inasmuch as this virus is immunologically distinct from the encephalitis virus, producing in experimental animals an infiltration of round cells in the meninges and choroid plexus, they designated it the ''virus of experimental lymphocytic choriomeningitis.'' Scott and Rivers (1936) described a method of obtaining the virus from the cerebrospinal fluid and demonstrated that their virus likewise produced a characteristic histologic pattern in animals and was serologically

TABLE XIV.—THE "ENCEPHALITIS" GROUP OF VIRUSES AND VIRAL DISEASES
(According to Felsenfeld)

VIRUS	MORTALITY AND UNUSUAL CLINICAL PICTURE (IF ANY)	VECTOR TO MAN	ANIMAL RESERVOIR	VECTOR TO ANIMALS	VIRUS ISOLATED FROM BLOOD AND C.S.F.	EXPERIMENTAL ANIMAL TO BE USED	NEUTRALIZED BY SERUM AGAINST	NEUTRALIZES VIRUS	REMARKS
St. Louis	Small	Mosquitoes	Fowl, horses	Ticks, mites	Rare	(Young) Mouse I.C.; rabbit I.C., and guinea pigs I.P not sensitive	Japanese B	West Nile	Neutralizing antibodies in serum appear late
Japanese B	High	Mosquitoes, ticks	Dogs, horses, goats, cattle, rabbits	As man; also helminths	Often	As St. Louis	0	St. Louis West Nile	As above
Eastern equine	High	Mosquitoes (ticks, mites)	Horses, mules, donkeys, pigs, rabbits, fowl	As man	Rare	Mouse I.C.; rabbits and guinea pigs I.C. sensitive	Brazilian virus related		
Western equine	Low	As Eastern					Argentinian virus related		
Venezuelan	High	As Eastern	Horses, mules, donkeys	As man	Yes	As Eastern equine	Similar to Eastern equine		Rare in human beings
Far Eastern (Russian spring-summer)	Medium	Mosquitoes, ticks	Horses, wild rodents, birds	As man	Rare	Mouse I.C.	Related to louping ill and West Nile		
Louping ill	None	Ticks	Sheep	Ticks	Yes	Mouse I.C.	Related to Far Eastern virus		Rare in human beings
Lymphocytic choriomeningitis	Very small	Mosquitoes, bedbugs, helminths	Mice	As man	Often	Mouse I.C., guinea pigs I.C.; rabbits not sensitive	Related to Humphrey's virus		Complement-fixing antibodies appear first
Australian X disease	High	?	Monkeys	?	?	Monkey	Probably related to Japanese B		Virus was lost

Virus B	High Ascending myelitis	?	Monkeys	?	Yes	Monkey I.C. and I.O.	Related to herpes simplex and may be identical with W virus		Inclusion bodies; only laboratory infection in man
Swineherd's disease	Low Similar to dengue	?	Swine	?	During first phase	Monkey I.C.	0		Some claim that disease caused by Leptospira
Bwamba fever	None Similar to dengue	Mosquitoes	?	?	Yes	Mice I.C.	0		Only few cases described
Colorado tick fever	None Similar to dengue	Ticks	?	?	Yes	Hamster I.P.	0		
West Nile fever	?	?	?	?	?	Mice I.C.	St. Louis and Japanese B	St. Louis	Related to louping ill and Far Eastern virus; few cases studied

Mengo virus: Isolated from mosquitoes, mongooses, monkeys, and man in Mengo, Uganda.
Ilhéos virus: Isolated in Brazil. Only subclinical human infections found.
Semliki Forest and Bunyamvera viruses: Isolated in Africa from monkeys and mosquitoes. Antibodies found in human beings. Can be propagated in mouse.
Encephalomyocarditis virus: Isolated in Manila from mild disease. Can be propagated in mouse.
Lot 6 virus: Isolated from vaccine in the Entebbe yellow fever laboratory.
Colombian viruses of Roca-Garcia (Anopheles A and B, Wyeomyia: Isolated from mosquitoes.)

Routes of inoculation: I.C., intracerebral; I.P., intraperitoneal; I.O., intraocular.

identical to the virus recovered by Armstrong and Lillie, as well as to the virus which Traub (1935) demonstrated in his colony of normal-appearing white mice.

According to Blackfan (1940), lymphocytic choriomeningitis, in man, is a benign disease. It attacks both sexes. As to age incidence, the patients are about equally distributed in each decade up to 40 years, except during the first decade, when there are very few cases. The majority of patients with the meningeal form are under 40 years of age. Children are only exceptionally affected. It is apparently a seasonal disease, as the majority of cases occur during the winter and spring months.

In accounting for the relatively high immunity among older individuals, as contrasted with the relatively low immunity of persons under 17, Armstrong and Wooley (1937) suggest that immunization of older individuals may have occurred during an epidemic seventeen years or more before, thus leaving a large number of persons under 17 years of age susceptible to infection with the specific virus.

According to Blackfan (1940), while conclusive proof as to the portal of entry of the virus of lymphocytic choriomeningitis in human beings is lacking, the basic evidence at the present time seems to point to droplet infection from the upper part of the respiratory tract, in both the meningeal and nonmeningeal forms of the disease. A number of closely allied or identical strains of the virus of lymphocytic choriomeningitis have been described in different places throughout the United States, England, and the European continent.

Blackfan (1940) stated that the onset of lymphocytic choriomeningitis often is preceded by signs referable to a minor respiratory infection, commonly called ''flu,'' ''grippe,'' or ''cold.'' The symptoms usually subside before signs of meningeal irritation make their appearance—a severe headache, beginning insidiously or abruptly.

Lillie and Armstrong (1945), who studied the pathology of lymphocytic choriomeningitis in mice, stated that the more striking gross and histologic observations in mice are polyserositis with serous exudate involving the pleura and the peritoneum. Fatty degeneration of the liver, and, to a lesser extent, of the kidneys, appears as early as the third day and persists into the third week. Focal necrosis occurs in the liver and, rarely, in the adrenal cortex and the corpora lutea. More diffuse and irregular but sometimes focal necrosis is seen in the thymus, the spleen, the lymph nodes, and the bone marrow. Scattered capillary thrombi occur in the liver and other viscera. Generalized lymphocytic infiltrations, sometimes including larger lymphoid and plasma cells, some macrophages, and fewer polymorphonuclear leucocytes, involve serosal tissues of the pleura and the peritoneum, the renal cortex and pelvis, the liver, the salivary glands, the pancreas, the lungs, the heart, the adrenal glands, and, less frequently, the tissue of the rest of the gastrointestinal-genitourinary tracts, as well as the originally reported locations of the meninges, the choroid plexus, the ependyma, and, in addition, the spinal ganglia. From the fact that similar visceral lesions occur not only in mice but also in intracerebrally inoculated monkeys and guinea pigs, it appeared to Lillie and Armstrong (1945) that the visceral lesions are a general effect of the virus, not peculiar to any one species. Since in mice such visceral reactions appear earlier and more often after other cerebral inoculation, and since natural routes of infection are generally other than neural, it appears that spontaneous infections should produce visceral lesions proportionately more often than cerebral inoculation does and that such lesions might well dominate the pathologic picture in natural infection.

Alice (1945) in Bahia isolated from gray mice a virus similar to that of the lymphocytic choriomeningitis, and with the virus infected guinea pigs intracerebrally and intraperitoneally. Rabbits and cats are refractory. Convalescent serum from guinea pigs neutralizes the virus of the lymphocytic choriomeningitis.

References

Adamson, J. D., and Dubo, S.: 1942. Clinical Findings in Encephalitis (Western Equine), Canad. M. A. J. **46**: 530-537.

Alexander, R. A., and Neitz, W. O.: 1933. The Transmission of Louping Ill of Sheep by Ticks (Rhipicephalus Appendiculatus), Vet. J. **89**: 320.

Alexander, R. A., and Neitz, W. O.: 1935. The Transmission of Louping Ill by Ticks (Rhipicephalus Appendiculatus), Onderstepoort J. Vet. Sc. **5**: 15.

Alice, F. J.: 1945. Ocurrencia em Camondonges Cinzentos "Mus Musculus" de um Virus que se Assemelha ao da Coriomeningite Linfocitaria, Brasil-med. **59**: 224-225.

Armstrong, C., and Wooley, J. G.: 1937. Benign Lymphocytic Choriomeningitis. Laboratory Studies With the Virus and Their Possible Bearing on the Infection in Man, J. A. M. A. **109**: 410-412.

Armstrong, C., and Lillie, R. D.: 1934. Experimental Lymphocytic Choriomeningitis of Monkeys and Mice Produced by a Virus Encountered in Studies of the 1933 St. Louis Encephalitis Epidemic, Pub. Health Rep. **49**: 1019-1027.

Baird, R. D., and Rivers, T. M.: 1938. Relation of Lymphocytic Choriomeningitis to Acute Aseptic Meningitis (Wallgren), Am. J. Pub. Health **28**: 47-53.

Blackfan, K. D.: 1940. Lymphocytic Choriomeningitis. Virus and Rickettsial Diseases With Special Consideration of Their Public Health Significance, Cambridge, Mass., Harvard University Press.

Blattner, R. J., and Heys, F. M.: 1944. Blood-Sucking Vectors of Encephalitis: Experimental Transmission of the St. Louis Encephalitis (Hubbard Strain) to White Swiss Mice by the American Dog Tick, Dermacentor Variabilis Say, J. Exper. Med. **79**: 439-454.

Brown, G. O., Muether, R. O., Pinkerton, H., and LeGier, M.: 1944. Influenzal Encephalitis, Proc. Central Soc. Clin. Res. **17**: 37-38.

Buckley, S. S., and MacCallum, M. G.: 1901. Acute Hemorrhagic Encephalitis Prevalent Among Horses in Maryland, Am. Vet. Rev. **25**: 99-102.

Bugher, J. C., Boshell-Manrique, J., Roca García, M., and Osorno Meza, E.: 1944. Epidemiology of Jungle Yellow Fever in Eastern Colombia, Am. J. Hyg. **39**: 16-51.

Carneiro, V.: 1937. A Encephalomyelite Infecciosa dos Equidos no Brasil, Arch. Inst. biol. **8**: 115-134.

Carneiro, V.: 1944. Estudos de Imunidade Cruzada Entre o Virus Brasileiro da Encefalomielite Infecciosa do Cavalo e os Virus Americanos. Pelas provas de Seroneutralizacao, Arch. Inst. biol. **15**: 209-238.

Carneiro, V.: 1944a. Comportamento do Virus da Encefalomielite Infecciosa do Cavalo per Inoculacao na Membrana Coriolantoide de Embriao de Marreco, Arch. Inst. biol. **15**: 331-338.

Carniero, V., and Cunha, R.: 1943. Estudos Sobre a Encefalomielite Infecciosa dos Equidos no Brasil, Arch. Inst. biol. **14**: 157-194.

Casals, J.: 1945. The Technique and Practical Applications of the Complement-Fixation Test for Diagnosis of Infection With Encephalitis Virus, J. Bact. **50**: 1-5.

Casals, J., and Webster, L. T.: 1943. Close Relation Between Russian Spring-Summer Encephalitis and Louping Ill Viruses, Science **97**: 246.

Casals, J., and Webster, L. T.: 1944. Relationship of the Virus of Louping Ill in Sheep and the Virus of Russian Spring-Summer Encephalitis in Man, J. Exper. Med. **79**: 45-63.

Casals, J., Curnen, E. C., and Thomas, L.: 1943. Venezuelan Equine Encephalomyelitis in Man, J. Exper. Med. **77**: 521-530.

Davis, W. A.: 1940. A Study of Birds and Mosquitoes as Hosts for the Virus of Eastern Equine Encephalomyelitis, Am. J. Hyg. **32**: 45-57.

Davison, R. O.: 1942. Encephalomyelitis in Saskatchewan, 1941, Canad. Pub. Health J. **33**: 388-398.

Dopter, C.: 1924. Paris méd. **14**: 47.

Editorial: 1941. New Developments in Knowledge of Encephalitis, J. A. M. A. **117**: 1361-1363.

Eklund, C. M.: 1942. Human Encephalitis Due to Virus of Equine Encephalomyelitis, Vet. Med. **37**: 70-76.

Eklund, C. M., and Blumstein, A.: 1938. The Relation of Human Encephalitis to Encephalomyelitis in Horses, J. A. M. A. **111**: 1734-1735.

Fairbrother, R. W., and Hurst, J.: 1930. Ann. Rep. Lister Inst., 1929.

Feemster, R. F.: 1938. Outbreak of Encephalitis in Man Due to the Eastern Virus of Equine Encephalomyelitis, Am. J. Pub. Health **28**: 1403-1410.

Fothergill, L. D., Dingle, J. H., Farber, S., and Connerley, M. L.: 1938. Human Encephalitis Caused by the Virus of the Eastern Variety of Equine Encephalomyelitis, New England J. Med. **219**: 411.

Fothergill, L. D., Holden, M., and Wyckoff, R. W. G.: 1939. Western Equine Encephalomyelitis in a Laboratory Worker, J. A. M. A. **113**: 206-207.

Gallia, F.: 1944. El Efecto ''in Vitro'' de la Tiourea y Otros Compuestos Químicos Sobre el Virus Encephañomielítico Tipo Venezuela, Bol. Inst. Invest. Vet., Caracas **2**: 203-248.

Gallia, F.: 1945. The ''in Vitro'' Effect of Thiourea on the Venezuelan Equine Encephalomyelitis Virus, Canad. J. Compar. Med. & Vet. Sc. **9**: 131-134.

Giltner, L. T., and Shahan, M. S.: 1933. The 1939 Outbreak of Infectious Equine Encephalomyelitis in the Eastern States, North Am. Vet. **14**: 25-27.

Gilyard, R. T.: 1944. Mosquito Transmission of Venezuelan Virus Equine Encephalomyelitis in Trinidad, Bull. U. S. Army Med. Dept. **75**: 96-107.

Gold, H., and Hampil, B.: 1942. Equine Encephalomyelitis in Laboratory Technician With Recovery, Ann. Int. Med. **16**: 556-569.

Grieg, J. R.: 1933. Louping-Ill, Bull. Inst. Pasteur **31**: 200.

Hall, A. J., and Yates, A. G.: 1926. The Sheffield Outbreak of Epidemic Encephalitis in 1924, Med. Research Council. Rept. No. 108.

Hammon, W. M., and Reeves, W. C.: 1942. Culex Tarsalis Coquillett a Proved Vector of St. Louis Encephalitis, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **51**: 142-143.

Hammon, W. M., and Reeves, W. C.: 1943. Laboratory Transmission of Western Equine Encephalitis Virus by Mosquitoes of the Genera Culex and Culiseta, J. Exper. Med. **78**: 425-434.

Hammon, W. M., and Reeves, W. C.: 1943a. Laboratory Transmission of the St. Louis Encephalitis Virus by Three Genera of Mosquitoes, J. Exper. Med. **78**: 241-253.

Hammon, W. M., and Reeves, W. C.: 1945. Recent Advances in the Epidemiology of the Arthropod-Borne Virus Encephalitides, Including Certain Exotic Types, Am. J. Pub. Health **35**: 994-1004.

Hammon, W. M., Reeves, W. C., Brookman, B., and Gjullin, C. M.: 1942. Mosquitoes and Encephalitis in the Yakima Valley, Washington. V. Summary of Case Against Culex Tarsalis Coquillet as a Vector of the St. Louis and Western Equine Viruses, J. Infect. Dis. **70**: 278-283.

Hammon, W. M., Reeves, W. C., Benner, S. R., and Brookman, B.: 1945. Human Encephalitis in the Yakima Valley, Washington, 1942, J. A. M. A. **128**: 1133-1139.

Hammon, W. M., Reeves, W. C., Brookman, B., Izumi, E. M., and Gjullin, C. M.: 1941. Isolation of the Viruses of Western Equine and St. Louis Encephalitis From Culex Tarsalis Mosquitoes, Science **94**: 328-330.

Hassin, G. B.: 1933. Histopathology of the Peripheral and Central Nervous Systems, Baltimore, William Wood & Co.

Havens, W. P., Jr., Watson, D. W., Green, R. H., Lavin, G. P., and Smadel, J. E.: 1943. Complement Fixation With the Neurotropic Viruses, J. Exper. Med. **77**: 139-153.

Howitt, B.: 1938. Recovery of the Virus of Equine Encephalitis From the Brain of a Child, Science **88**: 455-456.

Howitt, B. F.: 1942. Human Equine Encephalomyelitis and St. Louis Encephalitis in California, 1939-1941, Am. J. Pub. Health **32**: 503-515.

Kelser, R. A.: 1933. Mosquitoes as Vectors of the Virus of Equine Encephalomyelitis, Am. Vet. M. A. J. **82**: 767-771.

Kelser, R. A.: 1937. Transmission of the Virus of Equine Encephalomyelitis by Aëdes Taeniorhynchus, Science **85**: 178.

Kelser, R. A.: 1938. Transmission of the Virus of Equine Encephalomyelitis by Aëdes Taeniorhynchus, J. Am. Vet. M. A. **92**: 195.

Kitselman, C. H., and Grundmann, A. W.: 1940. Equine Encephalomyelitis Virus Isolated From Naturally Infected Triatoma Sanguisuga Le Conte, Kansas Agric. Exper. Sta. Tech. Bull. No. 50, 50 pages.

Koprowski, H., and Lennette, E. H.: 1944. Pathogenesis of Venezuelan Equine Encephalomyelitis Virus Infections in the Developing Chick Embryo, J. Bact. **48**: 463-472.

Kubes, V.: 1943. Relaciones Inmunológicas Entre el Virus Encefalomielítico Equino de Colombia y el de Venezuela, Puerto Rico J. Pub. Health & Trop. Med. **18**: 402-411.

Kubes, V.: 1943a. Virus Encefalomielítico Equino, Tipo Venezuela, en Trinidad, Bol. Inst. Invest. Vet., Carcas. **1**: 169.

Kubes, V., and Ríos, F. A.: 1939. Infectious Equine Encephalomyelitis in Venezuela. Advance Data Concerning the Causative Agent, Canad. J. Comp. Med. **3**: 43.

Kubes, V., and Gallia, F.: 1944. Neutralización del Virus Encefalomielítico Equino Tipo Venezuela por Sueros Humanos, Bol. Inst. Invest. Vet., Caracas **2**: 179-200.

Large, A.: 1867. Fatal Epidemic Among Horses in America, The Veterinarian **67**: 635.

Leake, J. P.: 1941. Epidemic of Infectious Encephalitis, Pub. Health Rep. **56**: 1902.

Lennette, E. H., and Koprowski, H.: 1943. Human Infection With Venezuelan Equine Encephalomyelitis Virus, J. A. M. A. **123**: 1088-1095.

Lennette, E. H., and Koprowski, H.: 1944. Neutralization Tests With Certain Neurotropic Viruses. A Comparison of the Sensitivity of the Extraneural and Intracerebral Routes of Inoculation for the Detection of Antibodies, J. Immunol. **49**: 375-385.

Lillie, R. D., and Armstrong, Ch.: 1945. Pathology of Lymphocytic Choriomeningitis in Mice, Arch. Path. **40**: 141-152.

Madsen, D. E., and Knowlton, G. F.: 1935. Mosquito Transmission of Equine Encephalomyelitis, J. Am. Vet. M. A. **86**: 662-666.

Mecklen, E.: 1897. Appendicites Grippales, Bull. et Mem. Soc. méd. hôp. de Paris.

Merchant, I. A.: 1942. Veterinary Bacteriology, Ames, Iowa, Iowa State College Press.

Merrill, M. H., Lacaillade, C. W., Jr., and Ten Broeck, C.: 1934. Mosquito Transmission of Equine Encephalomyelitis, Science **80**: 251-252.

Meyer, K. F.: 1932. A Summary of Recent Studies on Equine Encephalomyelitis, Ann. Int. Med. **6**: 645-654.

Meyer, K. F., Haring, C. M., and Howitt, B. F.: 1931. Newer Knowledge of the Neurotropic Infections on the Horse, J. Am. Vet. M. A. **32**: 376-389.

Mitamura, T., Kitaoka, M., Watanabe, S., Hosoi, T., Tenjin, S., Seki, O., and Nagahata, K.: 1939. Weitere Untersuchungen über die Ubertragung der japanischen epidemischen Enzephalitis durch Mücken. Tr. Soc. path. jap. **29**: 92-105.

Mitamura, T., Kitaoka, M., Watanabe, S., Iwasaki, T., Ishikawa, I., Tenjin, S., Jo, K., Yoshida, H., Yoshimatsu, D., Warabioka, K., Shimizu, M., and Watanabe, T.: 1940. Uber die Bedentung der Mucken für die Ubertragung vershiedener Enzephalitis Virusarten, Tr. Soc. path. jap. **30**: 561-570.

Mitamura, T., Yamada, S., Hazato, H., Mori, K., Hosoi, T., Kitaoka, M., Watanabe, S., Okubo, K., and Tenjin, S.: 1937. Ueber den Infektionsmodus der epidemischen Enzephalitis. Experimentelle Untersuchungen über ihre Ansteckung durch Mücken, Tr. Soc. path. jap. **27**: 573-580.

Noran, H. H., and Baker, A. B.: 1945. Western Equine Encephalitis: Pathogenesis of Pathologic Lesions, J. Neuropath. & Exper. Neurol. **4**: 269-277.

Paige, B. H., Corven, D., and Wolf, A.: 1942. Toxoplasmic Encephalomyelitis; Further Observations of Infantile Toxoplasmosis; Intrauterine Inception of Disease; Visceral Manifestations, Am. J. Dis. Child. **63**: 474-514.

Philip, C. B., and Smadel, J. E.: 1943. Transmission of West Nile Virus, by Infected Aëdes Albopictus, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **53**: 49-50.

Randall, R.: 1942. Equine Encephalomyelitis, Army Vet. Bull. **36**: 157-171.

Randall, R., and Eichhorn, E. O.: 1941. Science **93**: 595.

Reisch, O.: 1930. Zur Klärung der Bedingungen für das Auftreten der Encephalitis post vaccinationem, Wien. klin. Wchnschr. **43**: 103-105.

Remlinger, P., and Bailly, J.: 1936. Transmission de l'Encéphalomyélité Argentine des Equidés à L'oie au Canard, à la Buse et au Merle, Comp. rend. Soc. de biol. **121**: 146-149.

Remlinger, P., and Bailly, J.: 1936a. Transmission de l'Encéphalomyélite des Equidés (Virus Californien) au Vautour Fauve (Vultur Fulvus Briss.), Compt. rend. Soc. de biol. **123**: 562-563.

Rosenbusch, F.: 1934. Ueber die Epizootische Enzephalomyelitis der Pferde in Argentinien, Ztschr. Infektionskr. Haustiere **47**: 48.

Rous, P., and Murphy, J. B.: 1911. Tumor Implantations in the Developing Embryo. Experiments With a Transmissible Sarcoma of the Fowl, J. A. M. A. **56**: 741.

Sabin, A. B.: 1943. The St. Louis and Japanese "B" Types of Epidemic Encephalitis, J. A. M. A. **122**: 477-486.

Sanarelli, G.: 1926. Les Enteropathies Microbiennes, Paris, Masson & Cie.

Schmidt, H.: 1936. Encefalomielitis o Meningitis Cerebroespinal de los Equinos, Bol. del Curso de Med. Vet., Santiago de Chile **1**: 34.

Scott, T. F. M., and Rivers, T. M.: 1936. Meningitis in Man Caused by a Filterable Virus. I. Two Cases and the Method of Obtaining a Virus From Their Spinal Fluids, J. Exper. Med. **63**: 397-414.

Shahan, M. S., and Giltner, L. T.: 1945. A Review of the Epizootiology of Equine Encephalomyelitis in the United States, J. Am. Vet. M. A. **107**: 279-288.

Silber and Shubl'adze, A. K.: 1945. Louping Ill in the USSR, Am. Rev. Soviet Med. **2**: 339-341.

Simmons, J. S., Reynolds, F. H. K., and Cornell, V. H.: 1934. Successful Transmission of the Virus of Equine Encephalomyelitis (Western Type) Through Aëdes Albopictus, Ann. Rep. Surg. Gen., p. 186.

Smadel, J. E.: 1942. Common Neurotropic Virus Diseases of Man, U. S. Nav. M. Bull. 40: 1020-1036.

Smith, M. G., Blattner, R. J., and Heys, F. M.: 1945. The Isolation of the St. Louis Virus From Chicken Mites (Dermanyssus Gallinae) in Nature, Science **100:** 362-363.

Smithburn, K. C., and Jacobs, H. R.: 1942. Neutralization—Tests Against Neurotropic Viruses With Sera Collected in Central Africa, J. Immunol. **44:** 9-23.

Smithburn, K. C., Hughes, T. P., Burke, A. W., and Paul, J. H.: 1940. A Neurotropic Virus Isolated From the Blood of a Native of Uganda, Am. J. Trop. Med. 20: 471-491.

Smorodintseff, A. A., Shubladse, A. K., and Neutroev, V. D.: 1940. Etiology of the Autum Encephalitis in the Far East of the U.S.S.R., Arch. f. ges. Virusforsch. **1:** 37-559.

Soriano Lleras, A.: 1943. Nota Sobre la Encefalomielitis Equina en Colombia, Bol. Inst. Nac. Hig. Samper Martínez **11:** 3.

Soriano Lleras, A., and Figueroa, L.: 1942. Aislamiento de un Virus de un Caballo Atacado de ''Peste Loca'' en Bogotá, Bol. Inst. Nac. Hig. Samper Martínez **8:** 3.

Stallybrass, C. O.: 1931. The Principles of Epidemiology, New York, The Macmillan Co.

Sulkin, S. E.: 1945. Recovery of Equine Encephalomyelitis Virus (Western Type) From Chicken Mites, Science **101:** 381-383.

Syverton, J. T., and Berry, G. P.: 1936. An Arthropod Vector for Equine Encephalomyelitis, Western Strain, Science **84:** 186-187.

Syverton, J. T., and Berry, G. P.: 1937. The Tick as a Vector for the Virus Diseases, Equine Encephalomyelitis, J. Bact. **33:** 60.

Tabusso, M. F.: 1935. Immunización Contra la Encefalomielitis Equina, Bol. de la Direc. Agr. y Gan. Lima, No. 17.

Téllez Girón, A., and Valdéz Ornelas, O.: 1941. La Presencia del Virus Tipo Este de la Encefalomielitis Equina en la Epizootia Ocurrida en el Estado de Tamaulipas, México, Durante el año de 1941, Rev. Soc. Hist. Nat. **2:** 251-259.

Ten Broeck, C., and Merrill, M. H.: 1933. A Serological Difference Between Eastern and Western Equine Encephalomyelitis Virus, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **31:** 217-220.

Ten Broeck, C., and Merrill, M. H.: 1935. Transmission of Equine Encephalomyelitis by Mosquitoes, Am. J. Path. **11:** 837.

Traub, E.: 1935. A Filtrable Virus Recovered from White Mice, Science **81:** 298-299.

Valdés, J. M., Piantoni, C., and Orrico, A.: 1943. Encefalitis Congénitas Observadas en el Curso de Una Epidemia de Encefalitis en Niños Mayores, Día med. **15:** 1008-1015.

Von Economo, C.: 1917. Encephalitis Lethargica, Wien. klin. Wchnschr. **30:** 581.

Von Economo, C.: 1923. Encephalitis Lethargica, Wien. klin. Wchnschr. **73:** 777, 835, 1113, 1243, 1934.

Watson, D. W., and Smadel, J. E.: 1943. Susceptibility of Hamsters to Peripheral Inoculation of Western, Eastern and West Nile Encephalitis Viruses, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **52:** 101-104.

Webster, L. T., and Wright, F. H.: 1938. Recovery of Eastern Equine Encephalomyelitis Virus From Brain Tissue of Human Cases of Encephalitis in Massachusetts, Science **88:** 305-306.

Wheeler, J. A.: 1941. Western Equine Encephalomyelitis Occurring Among Human Beings in Kansas During the Summer of 1940, J. A. M. A. **117:** 1972.

Williams, W. L.: 1898. Enzootic Cerebro-Spinal Meningitis in Horses and Hog Cholera in Idaho, 14th Ann. Rep. U. S. B. A. I., pp. 179-187.

Woodland, C. J., and Smith, M. E.: 1942. Acute Encephalitis; Mild Epidemic Observed at Station Hospital, Fort Sam Houston, Texas, J. A. M. A. **120:** 358-361.

Woodruff, A., and Goodpasture, E.: 1931. The Susceptibility of the Chorioallantoic Membrane of Chick Embryos to Infection With the Fowl-Pox Virus, Am. J. Path. 7: 209-222.

Yates, A. L.: 1925. Nasal Sinuses as Route of Infection in Encephalitis Lethargica, Proc. Roy. Soc. Med. **40:** 13.

CHAPTER 22

LYMPHOGRANULOMA VENEREUM

JUAN L. SOTO ROZAS

Synonyms.—Climatic bubo, sixth venereal disease, Nicolas-Favre disease, subacute guinal lymphogranulomatosis, subacute inguinal lymphogranulomatosis of intraglandular urulent foci, lymphogranulomatous type of inguinal adenopathy, benign inguinal lymphoranuloma, poradenolymphitis, subacute inguinal poradenitis, poradenitis, subacute inguinal mphadenitis, lymphogranulomatosis inguinalis, lymphogranulomatosis of the inguinal glands, guinal lymphogranuloma, benign inguinal lymphogranuloma, venereal lymphogranulomatosis, enereal lymphopathy, fourth venereal disease, poradenitis nostras (Stannus-Stannus, 1933).

DEFINITION

Lymphogranuloma venereum is a generalized disease. It is acquired, like yphilis, usually by sexual contact. It is principally genito-rectal, with reference for lymphatic and nervous tissues, with possible invasion of other rgans, such as, the digestive tract, respiratory apparatus, cerebrospinal axis nd its sheaths, joints, blood vessels, the eye in all its segments, at times the eart, ovary, abdominal and pelvic peritoneum, spleen, and skin.

FREQUENCY AND GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

The disease is frequent in Mexico. Of 1,618 cases of venereal disease registered at entral Military Hospital in 1945, 59 cases (3.6 per cent) were lymphogranuloma enereum. It has been calculated that in the Mexican Army the disease is present in a proortion of 1.5 per cent. In the fourteen dispensaries of the Federal District which treat enereal diseases, and in Morelos Hospital in Mexico City, there were (1945) 133 patients ith lymphogranulomatosis among the 76,698 dispensary venereal patients and 87 cases among ,653 hospitalized patients. The over-all percentage, then, is 0.26 per cent for civilians with enereal diseases.

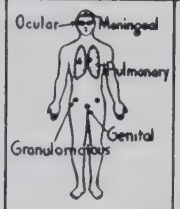
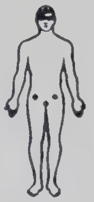
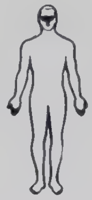
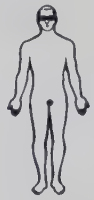
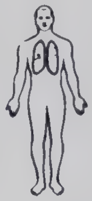
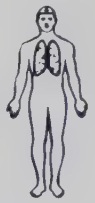
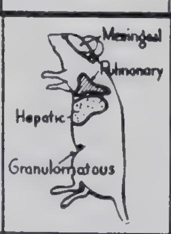
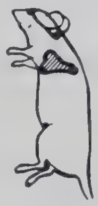
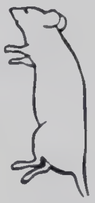
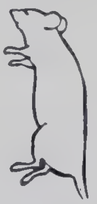
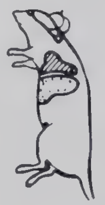
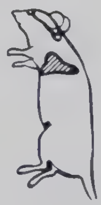
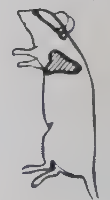
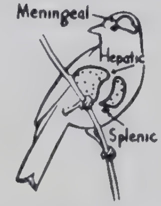
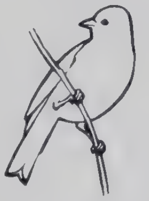
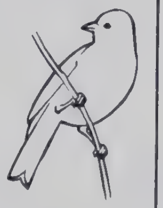
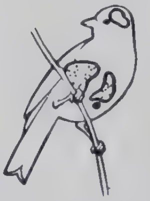
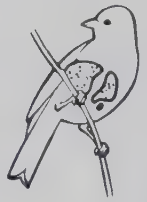
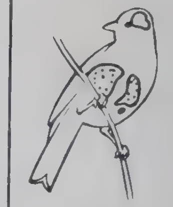
In the United States, of 3,000 patients admitted to the Anti-Venereal Medical Center in ot Springs, Arkansas, 1.6 per cent were lymphogranulomatous, according to a report by raham (1941) covering the period between 1937 and 1939.

It is not possible to submit exact data on the incidence of the disease for any particular egion, since the means for establishing a precise diagnosis have been inadequate until very ecently, and because, in most countries, there are no regulations to compel the reporting to ealth authorities of cases of this disease which occur within their jurisdiction. For many ears it was held that lymphogranuloma venereum was an exclusively tropical disease and that t had extended to temperate regions. It is now known that it is world-wide in its distribuion, although it is most prevalent in tropical zones.

ETIOLOGY

This disease was unknown before 1913 as a nosological entity, and therefore many tiologic agents were described. Durand, Nicolas, and Favre of Lyon published, in 1913, their emarkable work dealing with this disease, differentiating it clinically from other venereal

SIMILARITIES AND DIFFERENCES AMONG MEMBERS OF LYMPHOGRANULOMA-PSITTACOSIS GROUP OF INFECTIVE AGENTS*

CHARACTERISTICS		AGENT OF						
		Lymphogranuloma Venereum	Trachoma	Inclusion Conjunctivitis	Psittacosis	Human Atypical Pneumonia (Eaton et al)	Acute Meningo-pneumonitis (Francis and Magill)	Mouse Pneumonitis (Nigg)
Morphology	Elementary Bodies. (125-250 mμ diam.)	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
	Cyclical Development	+	+	+	+		Probable (+)	+
Tinctorial Characteristics	Gram-negative	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
	Giemsa-blue to purple	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
	Macchiavello-red and blue	+			+	+	+	+
	Positive Glycogen Reaction	–	+	+	–			
Disease in Primates	 Ocular Meningeal Pulmonary Genital Granulomatous							
Disease in Rodents	 Meningeal Pulmonary Hepatic Granulomatous							
Disease in Birds	 Meningeal Hepatic Splenic							
Infectivity in Chick Embryo	on Chorio-allantois	±	–	–	+ + +		+ + + +	±
	via Yolk-sac	+ + + +	–	–	++++		+ + + +	+++
	via Allantoic-sac	±	–	–			+ + + +	–
	via Amniotic-sac	±	–	–	++++		+ + + +	
Carrier State in Host After Infection		+	+	+	+	–	+	+
Cross-reactions in Complement Fixation Tests		+	+	+	+	+	+	
Cross-reactions in Intradermal Test with Lg. V. Antigen		+	–			+		

---

* Rake, G., Shaffer, M. F., Jones, H. P., and McKee, C. M. Unpublished data.

Fig. 138.—Similarities and differences among members of lymphogranuloma-psittacosis group of infective agents. (From Rake, G., Shaffer, M. F., Jones, H. P., and McKee, C. M.: Unpublished data; courtesy of E. R. Squibb & Sons, New York.)

diseases, and indicating its infectious and contagious characteristics. In 1930 Sven, Hellerstroem, and Wassen showed that lymphogranuloma venereum is produced by a virus which is filtrable through Chamberland 13 and Berkefeld V filters. It was not until 1935 that Miyagawa et al. verified the existence of visible forms in tissues and secretions of infected organs. The polymorphism of the agent has been verified (Coutts et al., 1938, 1942; Herzberger and Koblmüller, 1938). It was thought to follow a development cycle, beginning with elementary bodies which grow, multiply by division, and collect in plaques and, in turn into vesicles which disintegrate and release new elementary bodies which then infect new cells (Shaffer et al., 1940).

Dimensions vary from a fraction of 1 micron to 4 to 6 microns, exceptionally even larger. Until recently, the agent had not been cultivated on routine laboratory media, but it had been transmitted to animals. In 1930 Hellerstroem and Wassen inoculated monkeys intracerebrally; in 1932, Levaditi et al. found the mouse to be more satisfactory. Grace and Suskind (1934) introduced mouse brain antigen for use in the intradermal reaction of Frei (1925). This reaction, the Frei test, was originally carried out with pus extracted by aseptic puncture from softened buboes not due to secondary infection. This antigen is now being replaced by mouse brain antigen and antigen made from chick embryo (Rake et al., 1940; Shaffer et al., 1943).

Rake and associates* noted the existence of similarities and differences between infectious agents of a group, called the ''lymphogranuloma-psittacosis'' group, which includes agents of lymphogranuloma venereum, trachoma, inclusion conjunctivitis or blennorrhea, psittacosis, and human atypical pneumonia (also called virus pneumonia), acute meningopneumonitis, and pneumonitis in rats (induced experimentally). Fig. 138 shows the numerous similarities between lymphogranuloma venereum and psittacosis. In a culture of psittacosis on chick lung, violent Brownian movement was observed, such as had already been seen in lymphogranuloma cultures. In addition, several investigators found in cultures on chick embryo that both agents (lymphogranuloma and psittacosis) have developed cycles so similar that the forms described for either could almost be mistaken for the other.

The agent is susceptible to the action of sulfonamides. It survives in suspensions of both brain and chick embryo in the frozen state. It resists desiccation, glycerin, and freezing in vacuum, but does not resist ultraviolet light, 0.1 per cent formalin, 2 per cent urea, 50 per cent glycerin, or ether.

The discovery that individuals clinically not lymphogranulomatous react positively to the Frei test calls attention to the probable existence of a large number of latent and potentially dangerous infections in sexually promiscuous individuals. However, it is important to remember that a serologic relationship exists among the various agents of the lymphogranuloma-psittacosis group. Also, on occasions when the Frei test might be of great value, recent primary or secondary syphilis will give positive lymphogranulomatous reactions. These reactions appear to be more sensitive than the intradermal reaction (Schaffer et al., 1941). It has been found in laboratory practice that, while the Frei test turns from positive to negative under treatment, other reactions remain positive (Schaffer et al., 1943). This does not coincide with observations made in our Lymphogranuloma Venereum Service in Central Military Hospital. Here it has been found, in a study of 22 cases (18 glandular and 4 rectal), that treatment by antigens or by sulfonamides does not influence positivity to the Frei test.

---

*At the Squibb Research Laboratories.

Attention should be called to the vesicular reaction of Ottolina (1943) who experimented with cerebrospinal fluid concentrated in vacuum and injected intradermally. This procedure produces a vesicle at the point of injection. The results obtained were the same as with the Frei test.

TRANSMISSION

Most frequent means of transmission is by sexual act, whether normally or abnormally executed: inmissio penis in anum; suctio penis; inmissio linguae in genitalia mulieris; oscula in anum alterium; ejaculatio seminis alterius in os proprium, semen devoret. These practices, whether contraceptional or perverted, extend and spread lymphogranuloma venereum.

In the male, the primary lesion, Bory chancre (Bory, 1921), is generally in the penis, meatus, or anterior urethra. In the female it may be in the vagina, cervix of the uterus, labia majora, and labia minora. The localization of this lesion explains the gland invasion which follows, as will be seen later.

In the passive pederast, the initial lesion is localized in the anus or in the rectum. Coutts et al. (1940) have cited cases of Bory chancre of the lips, tongue and pharynx, with cervical adenopathy, lymphogranulomatous cheilitis, marginal glossitis, tonsillitis, pharyngitis, and laryngitis. Perhaps the ingested microorganisms can cause lesions in the entire digestive tract.

Other organs which may be affected include the spleen, liver, eye (Coutts and Espildora, 1934), by direct inoculation or by general invasion, respiratory system (lungs), joints, the cerebrospinal axis (Sabin and Aring, 1942), perhaps even the heart and arteries (May, 1944), and also the skin (Kleber, 1930).

Laboratory workers have been infected by the sneeze-spray of infected experimental animals. In other cases, the organism has penetrated through the skin on the hands (Harrop et al., 1941).

PATHOLOGIC ANATOMY

Bory chancre is a plasmoma without polymorphonuclears, with newly formed blood vessels near the surface; this distinguishes this chancre from the primary lesion of syphilis and from soft chancre.

Microscopically, the epidermis is thickened, as are also the interpapillary prolongations, papillae becoming thinned out; there is infiltration between epidermis and dermis, principally of polynuclear leucocytes, filling the edematous epidermis. Vessels are dilated, with cells and intercellular spaces in edematous condition; the clear limit between the epidermis and the Malpighian body cannot be seen; the number of spindle cells is increased and they are in a state of division. According to Favre (1930), there are no polymorphonuclears in the pathologic fluid, for which reason he called the lesion a "plasmoma." In the center there is a microabscess, similar to microabscesses of the glands, in the walls of which are found epithelial cells, polymorphonuclears, and acidophilic mononuclears in great abundance, which enclose the Gamna corpuscles (Gamna, 1923).

Microscopic lesions in gland tissue show increased volume or glands adherent to each other and to surrounding connective tissue which is found to be infiltrated and hardened. On extirpation, there is obtained a hard, fibrous mass, softened in some portions, and very vascular. Superficial glands are small, hard, and reddish; the inflammatory tissue which follows consists of large, also hard, wine-colored masses with small abscesses; in the center are two or more enlarged glands, yellowish-white, and soft, containing numerous microabscesses. In sections we see fibrous filaments, outlining small cavities filled with serum and pus. In the interglandular tissue abscesses also exist, with this difference: they are larger and generally fistulous.

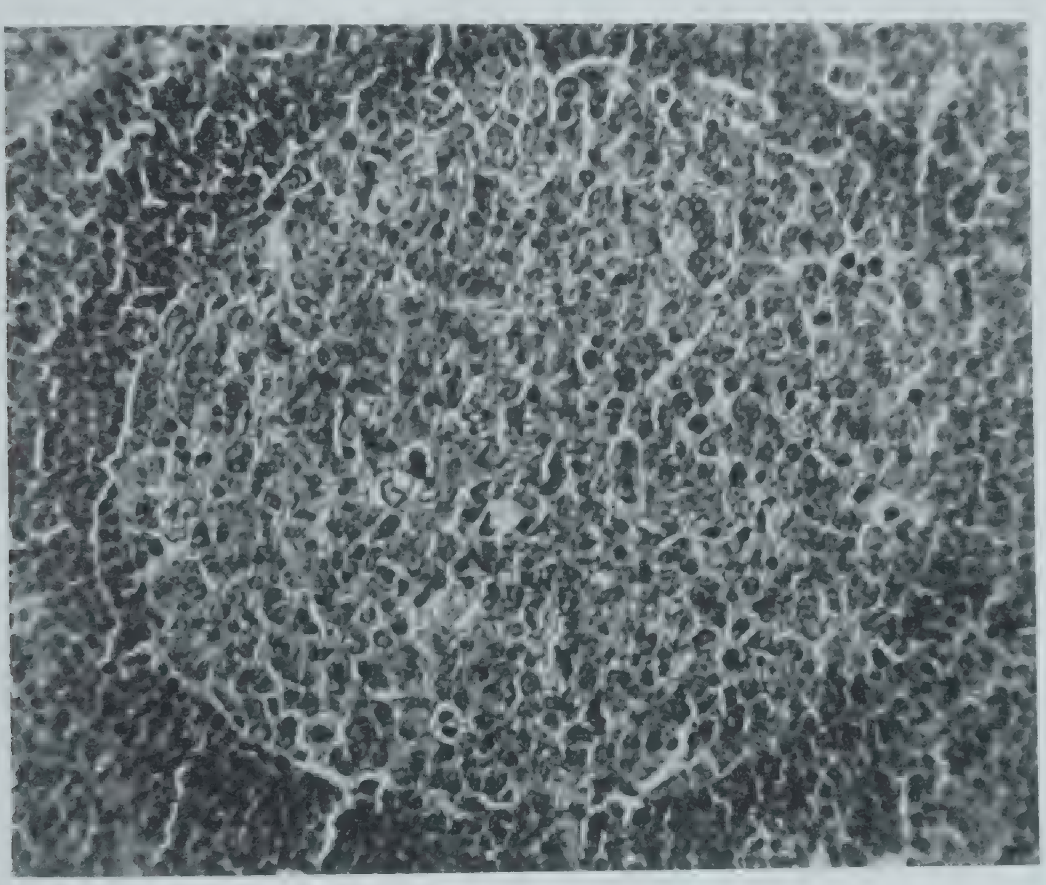


Fig. 139.—Lymphocytic-plasmocytic infiltration of connective tissue. (Photomicrograph by Mayor M. C. E. Contreras R.; collection of Soto.)

Microscopic sections reveal the microabscesses limited by the epithelial cover. In the glands can be distinguished the external cortical zone, the internal cortical zone, the intermediate zone, and the central zone. In the external cortical zone, small nests of macrophages are found; these have large nuclei poor in chromatin. The internal cortical zone is a fibrous skeleton which forms large alveoli, in the depth of which are found polynuclears, lymphocytes, and connective tissue cells. The intermediate zones present multiple cellular elements, remnants of polymorphonuclear leucocytes with fibrin among them. The central zone is composed of unrecognizable cellular fragments made up of small clusters, irregular, oval, round, or elliptical, scattered in a fibrous sheath. Some of these elements have pyknotic nuclei (Phylactos, 1922).

Genito-ano-rectal lesions (Jersild's syndrome) are characterized by elephantiasic edema which deforms the organ. In some parts, these are infiltrated, with tense superficial covering, while in other parts there may be deep sclerous ridges. There are hard or soft nodules, fistulas indiscriminately scattered, dry or suppurating. In the female, the vagina may be intact, with at times slight infiltration. If the rectum is invaded, initial lesions are simply inflammatory, later becoming sclerotic (cicatricial), with narrowing of the diameter of the organ generally in the area of from 3 to 4 cm. from the anal sphincter to about 8 or 10 cm.; that is, the stenosis corresponds to the region of the glands of Gerota, which, in the female, are anatomically located at this point. Proctoscopically, we observe red and violet-colored mucosa, edematous, sometimes ulcerated, vegetative, and stenotic.

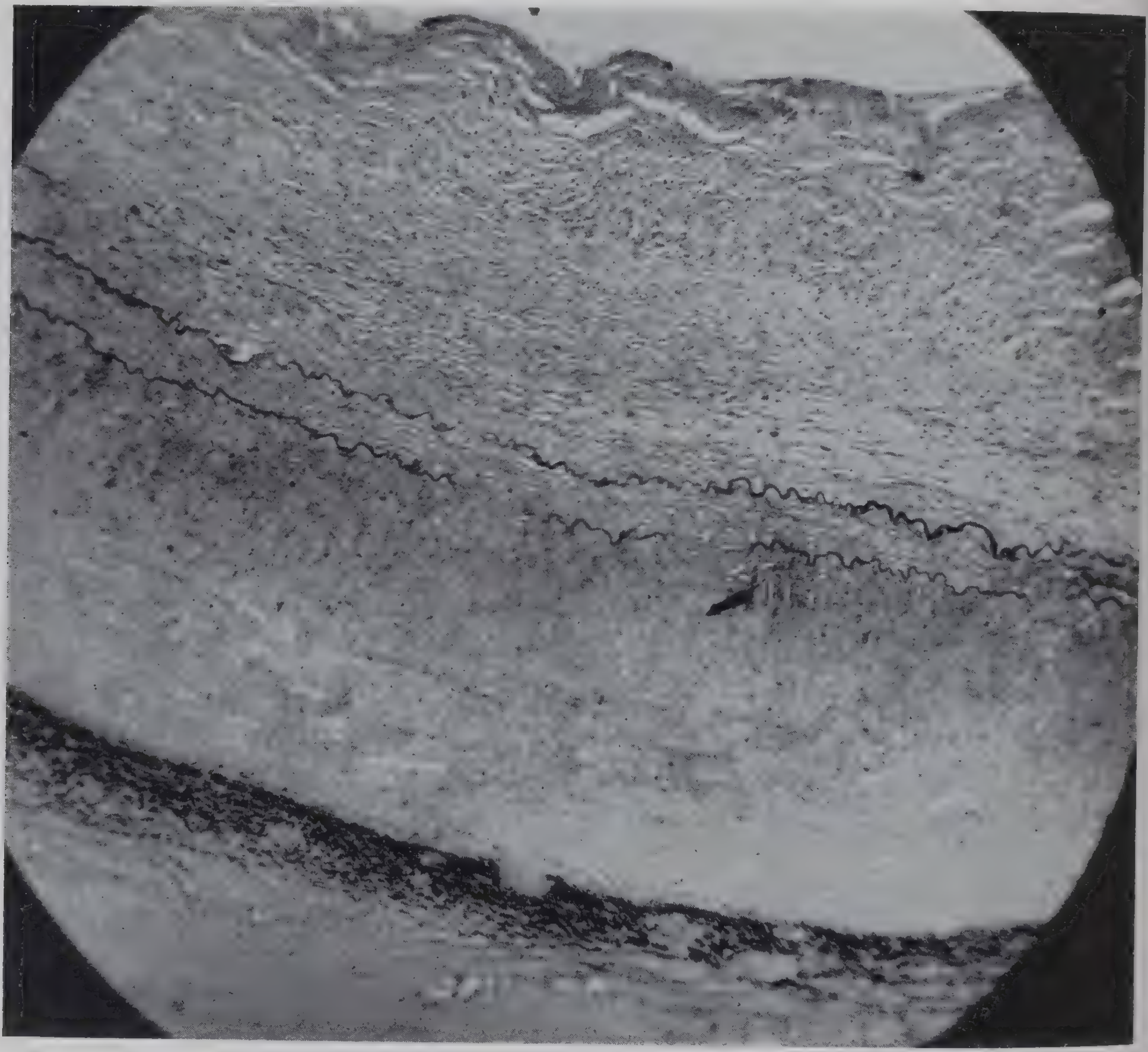


Fig. 140.—Marked endarterial thickening; duplication and lack of continuity of internal tunica elastica. (Photomicrograph by Mayor M. C. E. Contreras R.; collection of Soto.)

Microscopically, the lesions are such as are present in all forms of elephantiasis: sclerosis, new formation of connective tissue, edema, cellular infiltration, vascular lesions, granular tissue with enormous infiltration of leucocytes and plasma cells. In some cases the infiltration is perivascular; in others it resembles tuberculous follicles. There are epithelial cells, giant cells surrounded by lymphocytes, and numerous plasma cells. This process invades the dermis and cellular tissue, where we find edema, infiltration, and sclerosis. The lymphatics are dilated and contain numerous lymphocytes and plasma cells. Even when there is no elephantiasis, but only ulceration, there are always signs of sclerosis, lymphangitis, and vascularitis, just as in elephantiasis.

CLINICAL FORMS

Like syphilis, lymphogranuloma venereum also presents the primary lesion or chancre of inoculation and, later, various lymphatic, mucocutaneous, vascular, visceral, osteoarticular, nervous, etc., localizations, so that this disease also presents the picture of general infection.

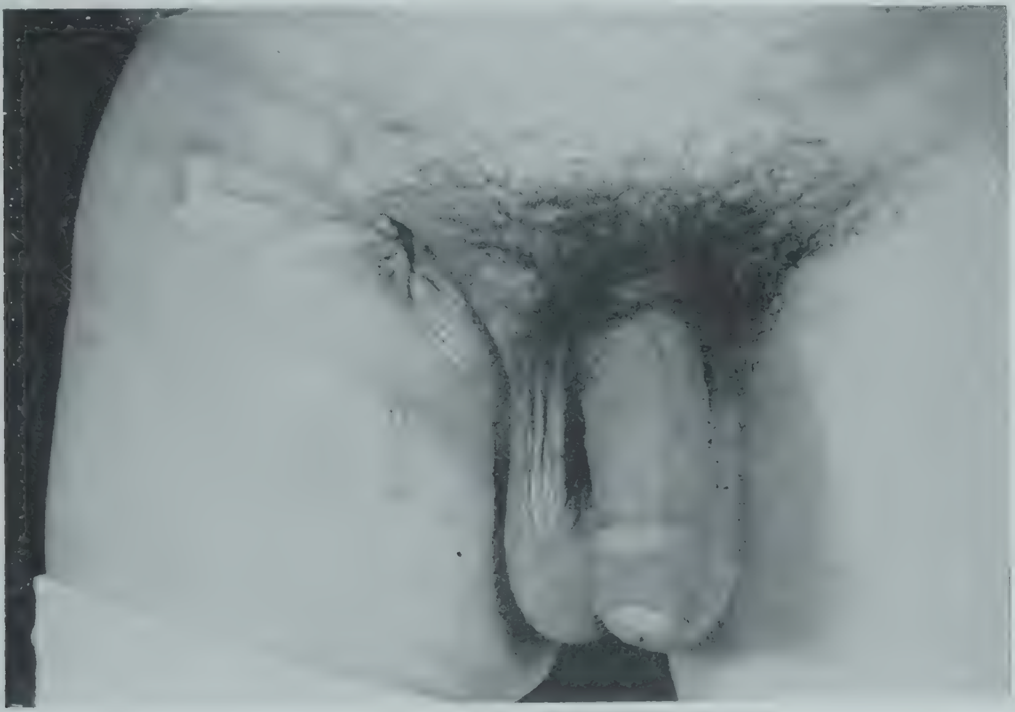


Fig. 141.—Cicatrix of femoral ligature and extirpation of lymphogranulomatous glands. (Collection of Soto.)

The initial lesion or Bory chancre (Bory, 1921, 1924) presents unmistakable characteristics in its typical form; however, it is frequently confused with soft chancre, the primary lesion of syphilis, mixed chancre (Ducrey-syphilis), or other venereal diseases. Often this infection does not occur alone but simultaneously with another venereal disease (in association with the soft chancre of Ducrey, with syphilis, or with gonorrhea).

Sézary (1935) classified the initial lesion, on the basis of its appearance, into herpetiform, syphiloid, and nodular chancres, with three subtypes: pure nodular, ulcerated and follicular nodular chancriform (like Ducrey's soft chancre), infiltrating.

Pure nodular chancre is characteristic: a rounded nodule 5 to 10 mm. in diameter, painless, but little inflamed, firm, covered by normal colored or slightly pink mucosa, and lasting several weeks. Unfortunately, these characteristics help but little in making an early diagnosis in most cases, since this type of lesion is not the most frequent (9 per cent). The most frequent form is the herpetiform chancre (73 per cent) which, as the name implies, looks very much like herpes, with which it may be confused because of its ulcerative manifestations. It is a very small chancre, of brief duration, sometimes fleeting, so that unless the physician finds traces of it or unless the patient tells of having had the ulcer, one might suppose that the adenitis was the beginning of the morbid process (bubo d'emblée).

Next in frequency is the syphiloid form (12 per cent). This is so much like a primary syphilitic lesion that, according to Sézary, it is frequently confused with it, until typical adenopathy makes its appearance and establishes the differential diagnosis. The syphiloid chancre, an ulceration with an indurated base, persists for several weeks when left to itself.

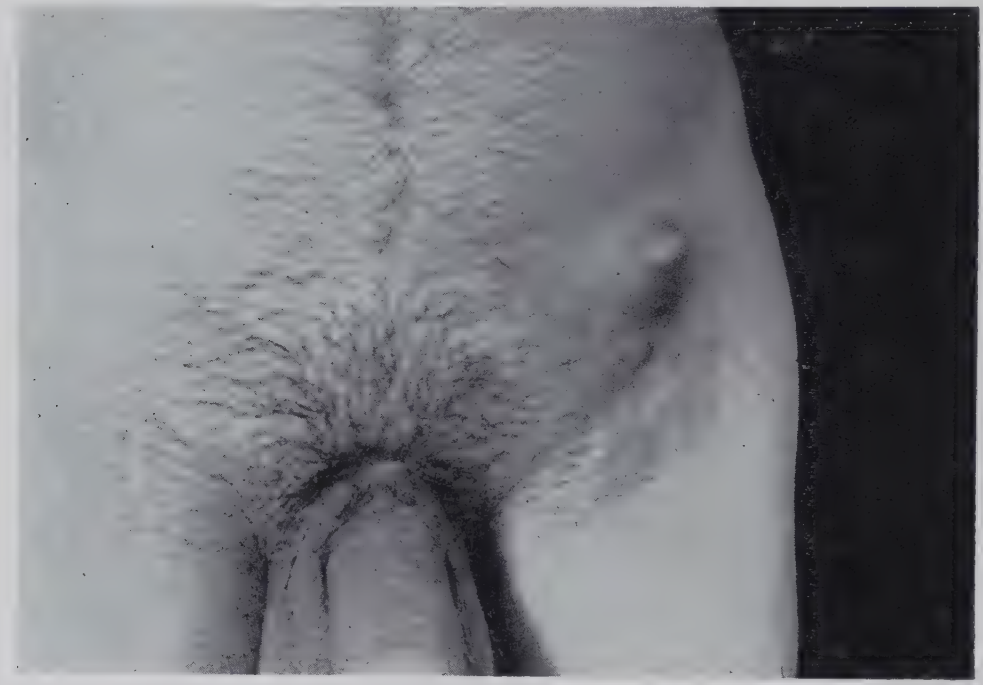


Fig. 142.—Fluctuating lymphogranulomatous bubo. (Photograph by O. Pérez; collection of Soto.)

The chancriform type may be confused with soft chancre because of the irregular ulceration with a soft base, which heals in several weeks, leaving a scar. It has a frequency of 6 per cent.

Finally, the infiltrating Bory chancre has the lowest frequency (3 per cent) according to Sézary. Below the skin or mucosa, which may be normal in color or reddish, an infiltrated area may be noted upon palpation. It varies in form and in dimensions, may be thick or thin, and the contour may be either regular or irregular.

Bory chancre appears usually 20 to 40 days after inoculation. The incubation period may, however, be shorter (8 to 15 days). Duration of the chancre depends upon various factors: treatment, virulence of the infectious agent, infiltration of the lesion, natural defenses of the patient. It may be fleeting or it may last for weeks or even months.

Although the most frequent localization of the initial lesion is on the penis, it may also localize in the meatus, the urethra, the anus, or the rectum, or, as in syphilis, it may be extragenital.

Meatitis, described by Coutts, presents a reddened meatus, edematous and infiltrated generally to a moderate extent, at times more or less inflamed. Urethritis appears as mild (urethritis of Waelsch?) and asymptomatic, showing a thin whitish or whitish-yellow discharge, with a few shreds in the urine collected in the first vessel. Leucocytes, epithelial cells, and mucus are found. No bacteria are seen, but the secretion may be antigenic, since it contains Miyagawa corpuscles or their products.

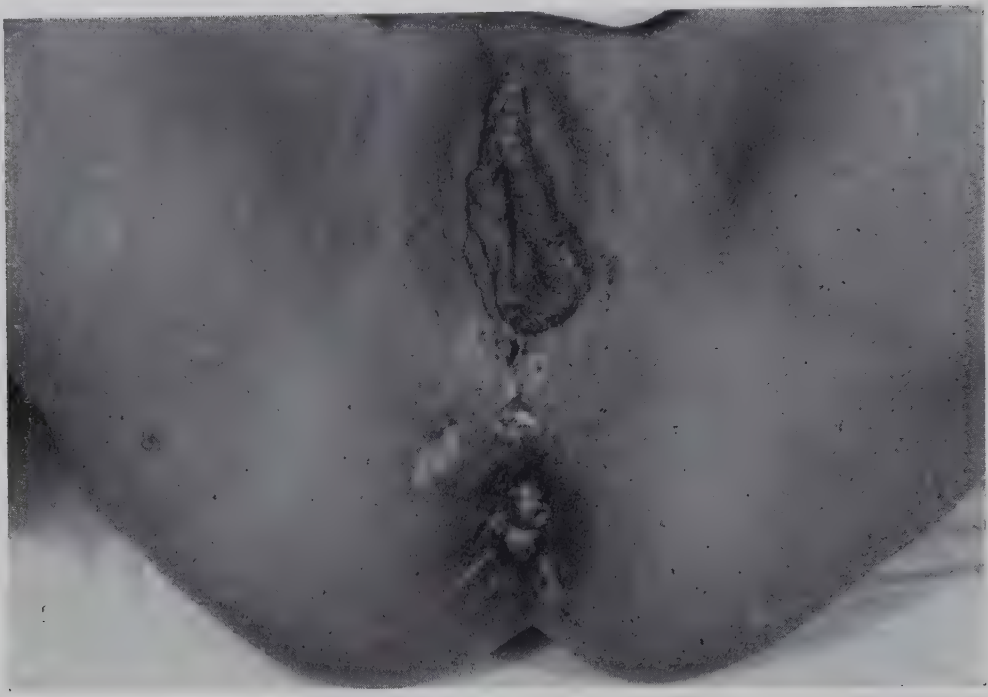
The infection may spread from any of these initial lesions along the corresponding lymphatic vessels to the inguinal and iliac glands on both sides, resulting in formation of various changes according to the location. If it occurs in the lymphatic vesicles of the penis (truncal lymphangitis of May, 1940), it is palpable. It may form an abscess which discharges and leaves a fistula. Another important sign, described by May as quite frequent, is what he calls "early regional edema." This is due to obstruction of lymphatic circulation and to lymphangitis. When it localizes in the prepuce, which becomes violet in color, this author calls it "violet edema of the prepuce." According to other authors it may occur later as a sign of further outbreaks of the disease and should be looked for, moreover, in the penoscrotal angle, in the pubis or hypogastrium, and in the muscle (femoral triangle).

Within 1 to 6 weeks after the appearance of the Bory chancre, we see inguinal adenitis, unilateral or bilateral. The tumor-like mass is ovoid, varying from the size of a pigeon egg to that of a turkey egg. In some cases, however, the adenitis precedes by several days the Bory chancre, or "d'emblée" appears without this antecedent adenitis. Inguino-iliac adenitis may present various forms, from syphiloid to abortive, and may develop suddenly or slowly.

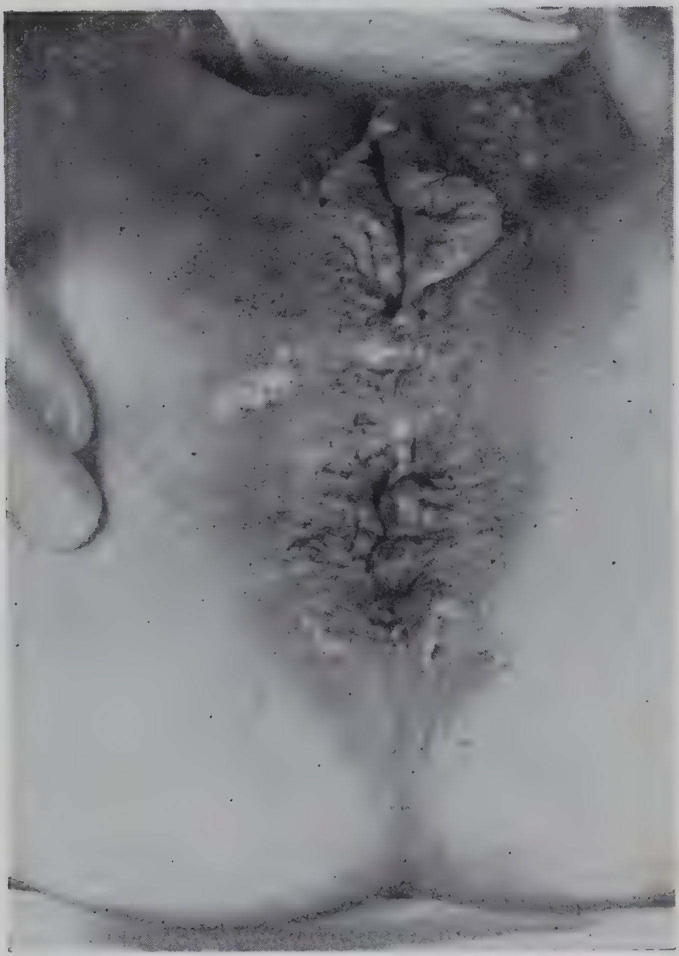
The patient experiences discomfort on one side of the groin or both on walking. Glands are slightly enlarged, hard, isolated, with one larger than the others, with little or no pain (syphiloid adenopathy). A few days later, periadenitis appears, which unites the glands, resulting in a hard formation which adheres to the skin. This may extend toward the iliac fossa and embrace the iliac glands (in one-third of the cases), constituting, according to Sézary, the pathognomonic sign. Or it may extend toward the anterosuperior iliac spine and invade all the inguinal glands or toward Scarpa's triangle including the inferior or external group and the central glands (inguino-central form).

In about one-third of the cases this adenitis is bilateral. It frequently begins on one side and then passes to the other, with different characteristics. Two to four weeks later, the signs and symptoms are characteristic and well defined:

1. Palpation with pressure upon these glands, in spite of the appearance of acute inflammation, elicits no pain (Favre's sign of "glandular disturbance").

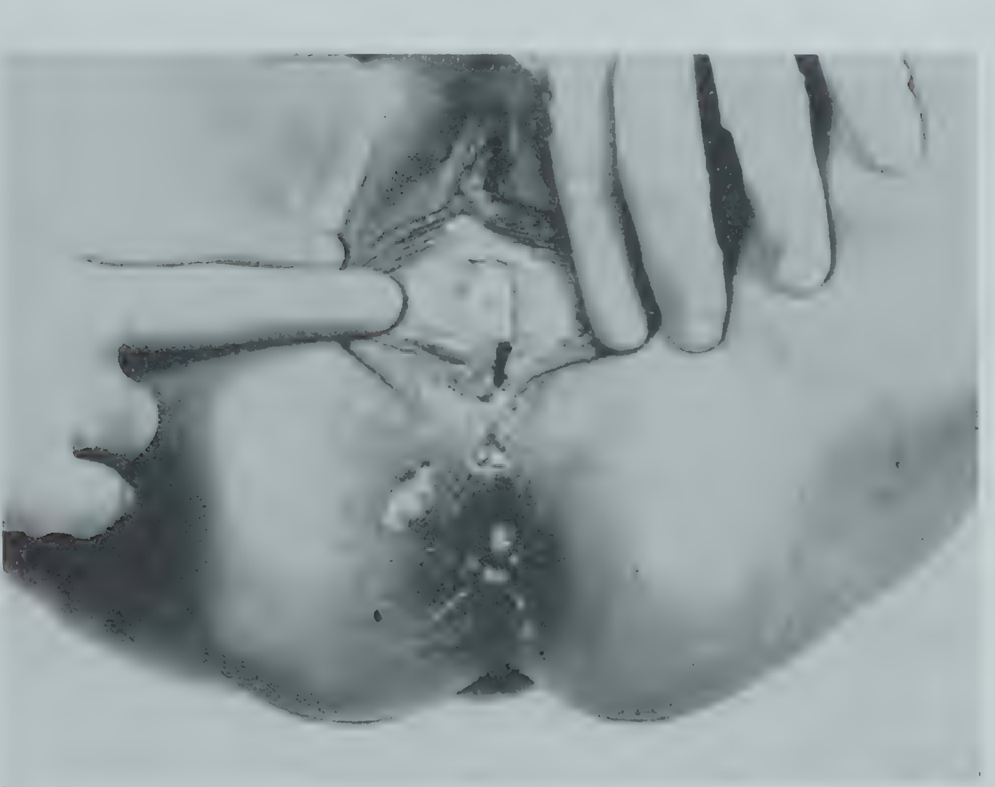


A.

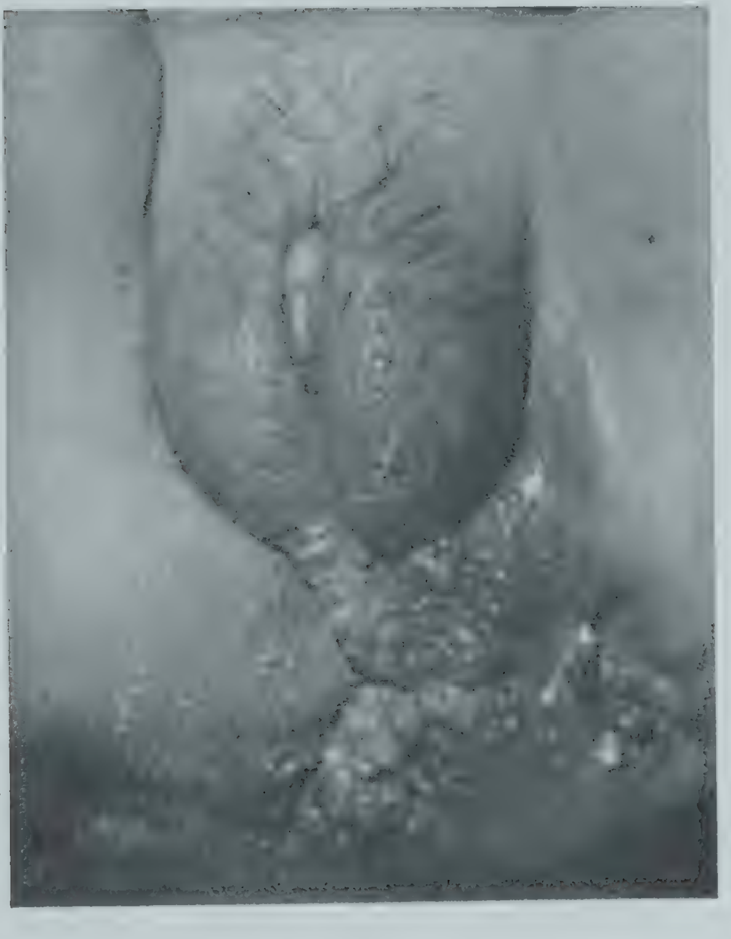


B.

Fig. 143.—*A, B, C,* Invasion of genitals and anus (Jersild syndrome). *D,* Vulvar elephantiasis. Perineal-anal invasion. (Photograph by O. Peréz.)



C.



D.

Fig. 143 (Cont'd).—For legend see opposite page.

2. The entire mass can be moved upon a deep plane ("shaking sign" of Favre).

3. Color of the skin changes from reddish to violaceous (violet adenitis of Favre).

4. The periadenitis, upon infiltration of cellular tissue, gives a sieve-like aspect to the mass ("accompanying cellulitis" of Favre).

5. When the tumor-like mass is palpated, softened spots are found in the midst of the hard mass; these are small intraglandular or periglandular collections, which remain isolated ("suppurating pockets with hard margins" of Favre, 1933).

When these abscesses open spontaneously they leave multiple fistulae with thin, viscous, gummy, serosanguinolent, yellowish, or whitish secretion. The intermediate skin generally remains intact. However, there are cases in which this process is confused with adenitis due to soft chancre. This confusion is caused as much by the quantity as by the character of the pus (suppuration in mass of Pautrier, 1924). If left to itself, the adenitis terminates in atrophy of the glands and in sclerosis (after several months or even years). During the course of development of the adenitis, various lesions can be found in the same tumor-like mass, ranging from definitely hard all the way to fistulas perforating through the softened areas. At times (Soto, 1945), although rarely, the process invades the femoral vessels, resulting in hemorrhage and perhaps in death, if application of a ligature does not stop the loss of blood in time.

At times the infectious agent invades the genitourinary organs as a form of lymphogranulomatous epididymitis (Coutts) with localization in the tail, which most frequently develops fistulae. Or, the invasion may take the form of ulcerative, leucoplastic, or vegetating lesions in the urethra, terminating in most cases in stenosis of the canal. These lesions may extend to the posterior urethra and to the vesical neck, presenting corresponding symptomatology (Banciu, Coutts and Opazo, 1939). In the genital apparatus further spread appears later: genital elephantiasis, involving the external organs, male and female, due to obliteration of superficial lymphatic vessels, and invading the labia majora and minora in the female, and the prepuce or the entire penis and even the scrotum in the male. Sequelae in the male may be a continuation of the Bory chancre, of a bubo, an inguinal fistula, or plastic induration of the penis (May, 1940) with nodules or fibrous plaques in the median-dorsal line of the penis, in the septum intercavernosum. These formations are due simply to Miyagawa corpuscles which are carried directly to the region by the lymphatic route or which proceed by continuity from urethritis, littritis, and periurethritis of the same origin. May found 66 positive results with the Frei reaction in 85 cases of this disease. Finally, the invasion may take the form of urethroperineal or urethrorectal fistulae, accompanied by urethritis, periurethritis, genital elephantiasis, and at times rectal stenosis (vulvar esthiomene and Jersild's syndrome).

Rectal invasion may be a direct infection from abnormal sexual practices; it may be an indirect infection from secretions, clothing, utensils, instruments, fingers, etc.; or it may be a later complication of an old and forgotten Bory chancre or of a lymphogranulomatous meatitis or urethritis. With reference to the direct infection, Quiroga (1940) published the results of investigations, in collaboration with Lima and Zuccari, made in a prison in Buenos Aires. He made Frei tests on 100 prisoners, 20 of whom were pederasts. The results were positive in 7 cases of each group. In the normal group it was possible to find scars of old inguinal lymphogranulomatoses. In 7 sodomy habitués, there were rectal manifestations of a lymphogranulomatous character which were not seen in any of the normal subjects. However, it is not to be assumed that every rectal lymphogranulomatosis is proof of pederasty. Bensaude, "the wizard of rectoscopy" as he is called in Paris, and Lambling state that more than four-fifths of such patients are passive pederasts (1934).

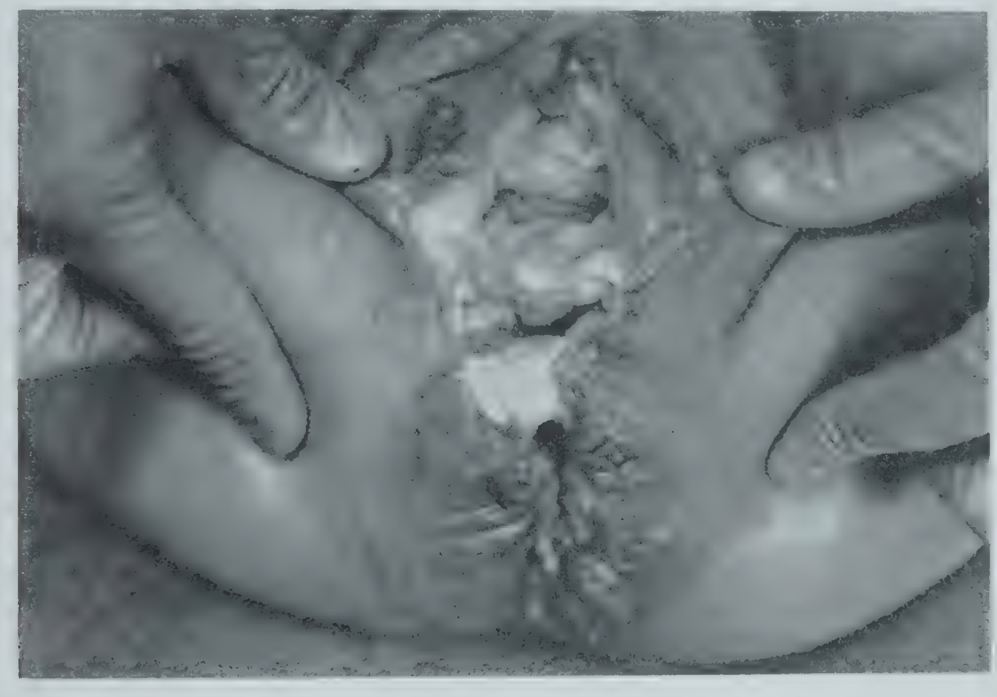


Fig. 144.—Jersild syndrome: genito-ano-rectal invasion; stenosis of the rectum. (Photograph by O. Pérez; collection of Soto.)

In these cases, infection penetrates across the mucosa, by excoriation or by simple inflammatory lesions, to the lymphatic network of the rectum. The tissues first invaded are the submucous and the intramuscular; next involved is the tissue between the rectum and the perirectal fascia or the peritoneum; and finally, tissue is involved which could be called "extramural," around the rectal wall, which communicates with the glands described by Gerota, 3 to 8 cm. from the anus. Great importance has been assigned to infection of the glands of Gerota, but, at the present time, Favre states that rectal infection is "very little adenophilic."

In addition to lymphangitis and adenitis, there may be lesions of blood vessels (arteries and veins) and local inflammatory lesions which, acting upon one and another, behave similarly, with ulcers and sclerosis production (Cohen, 1930). Savignac (1937) calls this form of rectitis "chronic stenosal venereal rectitis," because in many patients other venereal diseases exist, such as syphilis, soft chancre, and gonorrhea.

The process begins with all the symptoms and signs of acute rectitis, the etiologic diagnosis of which is of enormous importance. If subjected to intense specific treatment, the disease can be cured in the majority of cases and rarely develops into chronic ulcerative or vegetating forms or the stenotic form. Aravantinos (1935) reiterates the importance of diagnosis and states that the Frei test is indispensable for every patient with acute rectitis. The chronic ulcerative form, the infiltrated or vegetating form, lasts for several years. In the majority of patients from 30 to 50 years of age, the disease terminates with a stricture of the rectum, which in the beginning is inflammatory and then cicatricial. If not treated, the prognosis is fatal. Generally some intercurrent affection (cachexia and tuberculosis, pyelonephritis, bronchopneumonia), at times a complication (intestinal occlusion, perforation of the intestine and peritonitis), results in death.

Since this is a general infection, fever occurs, irregular in most cases; it seldom reaches 40° C. and occasionally passes unnoticed. Other general symptoms common to all infections are anorexia, prostration, loss of weight, headache, anemia, etc.

There have been described rheumatoid, painful manifestations, arthralgia, and cutaneous eruptions—the polymorphous and nodular erythema type, scarlatiniform, urticariform, ecthymatiform, pruriginous rash, furunculosis, hard nodules which soften, resulting in fistulae, which can be classified as lymphogranulomatous chancres.

OTHER LOCALIZATIONS

Kitagawa (1934), on ophthalmoscopic tests of the eye in thirty lymphogranulomatous patients, found peripapillary edema and dilatation and tortuosity of blood vessels in most of the cases. American, European, and Japanese authors have identified the symptoms and signs found in lymphogranulomatosis with the oculoglandular syndrome of Parinaud. Appelmans referred to the case of a young physician who was accidentally infected at the University of Louvain. The Frei test was made repeatedly and gave constantly positive results. Coutts and Sanders published the case of a patient with the oculoglandular syndrome of Parinaud in whom the Frei test was intensely positive and who improved rapidly under sulfonamide therapy. Inoculations were made from a fragment of the diseased conjunctiva into the brains of a monkey and mice. Antigens obtained from these tissues gave positive reactions in patients with lymphogranulomatosis. (See Oliphant et al., 1942.)

McNie (1942), of New York, discussed the same subject and stated that the disease was lymphogranulomatosis. This could be demonstrated perfectly since Miyagawa corpuscles were found in the posterior surface of the cornea in eyes experimentally infected with the aqueous humor taken from patients with Parinaud's syndrome.

Vergara Espino, in an informal verbal communication before the Society of Gastroenterology, stated that the reddening of the papilla which he had observed was due to mild neuritis, without serious effect upon the field of vision or upon the acuteness of vision.

In 1938, a case at the General Military Hospital was studied by the Chief of Ophthalmological Service, the then Col. M. C. Adolfo Viguri Viguri. The patient, a 45-year-old woman, had unmistakable antecedent history of inguinocrural-glandular lymphogranulomatosis. About a month after the development of the disease, disturbances in the left eye began: oculopalpebral congestion, sensation as if there were particles of sand in the eye, abundant yellowish suppuration, and conjunctivopalpebral growths (papillomatous neoformations in crest-like groups), principally in the lower eyelid, which were not modified by antigenic treatment. Harrop, Rake, and Schaffer (1941) described two cases of nasal laboratory infection from the sneeze-spray of infected rats. Septic fever with chills was observed, with sweating, articular rheumatism, and headache, pharyngitis or laryngitis, and adenopathy of the neck. These authors refer to another case in which infection occurred through the skin of the hands.

Cases have been described of accidental infection of surgeons who later developed buboes in the axilla (Klotz, 1890). Primary lesions have been described on the tongue of one patient 3 weeks after he had practiced cunnilingus. Two small lesions appeared on the side of the tongue, and five weeks later a voluminous tumor developed in the neck glands (Stannus, 1933). Chronic chapping of the lips, thickening of the tongue, and cheilitis in persons who had practiced "coitus ab ore" have been described by Coutts and other venereologists, as have glossitis marginata and lichen, produced by the agent of lymphogranulomatosis, which also causes tonsillitis, pharyngitis, and laryngitis. Milian has reported cases in which aphthae and buccal and genital lichen were found together. Brulé (1937) in Paris and Coutts in Valparaíso described myositis of the nucha, in patients practicing "suctio penis," who presented the genito-ano-rectal syndrome of Jersild. Coutts also observed two cases of plastic linitis of the stomach, with positive Frei test, two cases of lymphogranulomatous patients with duodenitis and periduodenitis, and other patients with duodenal ulcer.

In addition, Crohn et al. found "terminal ileitis," also called "regional enteritis," to be a granulomatosis. This may affect not only the small intestine but also the large intestine and might be confused with appendicitis (Crohn et al., 1932) because of the pain and palpable swelling in the right iliac fossa. Left alone, it may lead to acute obstruction, perforation of the intestine, and formation of fistulae which open into the abdominal viscera or into the abdominal wall. These cases were almost always found among young persons between 20 and 30 years of age.

Goodman (1936) found ulcerative colitis and stenotic lymphogranulomatous colitis in the ascending, transverse, and descending colon. Cases of meningoencephalitis have also been described (Sabin and Aring, 1942), and spinal fluid from patients with lymphogranulomatosis has been used successfully as antigen in the Frei test (Aléman Pérez).

In forms which have persisted for several months, localization occurs in the joints in approximately one-tenth of the cases. The joints most frequently invaded are, in the order of frequency, the wrist, fingers, elbows, the ankles, and the knees (Grace, 1941). In some cases there is articular damage with reddening and great sensitivity of the skin covering the region. The articular elements are not destroyed, however, and the function of the joint is eventually completely restored when the disease has been cured, although the resultant arthritis may persist for years or may at times cause invalidism if the disease itself has not been properly treated.

During the period of invasion, lymphogranuloma venereum presents general phenomena which vary in different patients. All, however, confirm the fact that we are dealing with a generalized infection. Among the most frequent indications are headache, fever, chills, sweating, anorexia, nausea, vomiting, weakness, loss of weight, and prostration. Also common are muscular pains and a feeling of tenderness in the muscles, arthralgia, rheumatoid pains both in active or passive movement, either accompanied by or without swelling or inflammation of the throat, conjunctivitis, or generalized rash.

DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

Lymphogranuloma venereum, as with most genital infections, may be acute or chronic. Both forms may be confused with many local or general febrile conditions because of the similarity of signs and symptoms, for example, in acute affections of the digestive and respiratory systems. The disease may be confused with other venereal diseases, with tuberculosis, Hodgkin's disease, lymphatic leucemia, tularemia, filariasis, actinomycosis, dysentery, ulcerative colitis, etc.

Table XV is a summary of the most important differential characteristics of some diseases which most frequently make the diagnosis of lymphogranuloma venereum difficult.

LABORATORY FINDINGS*

The Frei test, the complement fixation test, and the Miyagawa corpuscles, regarded as the organism of the disease, have already been considered.

The intradermal test of Frei is positive only at the peak of the allergic period; that is, when specific antibodies have been formed in the infected organism. This usually occurs only about 2 weeks after inoculation, although at times it can occur later, so that it is not difficult to understand that the test is negative at the beginning of the disease. The test may also give negative results during the menstrual period and in the not-so-rare cases of florid syphilis, when the two diseases exist in the same patient at the same time. It is said that the test remains positive for the duration of the patient's life.

Interpretation of results should be made from the fourth day. According to Sulkin (1941), the reaction appears in 24 to 48 hours, reaching a maximum in 3 days, after which it gradually decreases in intensity. A positive reaction

---

*Antigens may be obtained from E. R. Squibb and Sons.

DISEASE	ETIOLOGY	PERIOD	INITIAL LESION	INGUINAL ADENOPATHY	SPECIFIC TESTS
Lymphogranuloma venereum	Virus	Approximately 15 days	Herpetiform, painless (may be unnoticed)	Generally unilateral (left); decided inflammation, the size of fist or larger; reaches several glands; painful with characteristic coloration of the skin; suppuration is frequent; fistulae are multiple; substance aspirated from the fluctuant glands does not contain bacteria unless secondary infection exists	1. Frei test with human mouse-brain, chick embryo antigens 2. Complement fixation test with chick embryo antigen
Syphilis	Treponema pallidum (Schaudinn)	2 to 6 weeks	Characteristic soft chancre; hard-rimmed, painless; appears at first as an umbilicate papule	Characteristic Ricord's pleiades; glands of definite consistency; acute inflammation generally does not exist; suppuration very rare	1. Wassermann test 2. Kahn test 3. Dark-field examination may show treponemata*
Soft chancre	Hemophilus ducreyi	3 to 8 days	Painful ulcer with granular base, abundant pus; bleeds readily; lesions may be multiple due to autoinfection	Glands enlarged in approximately one-third of cases (usually with acute inflammation); bubo soft, painful, and tends to suppurate, forming one fistula	1. Ducrey bacillus found in the initial lesion 2. Ito-Reenstierna test positive
Gonorrhea	Neisseria gonorrhoeae	3 to 5 days	Characteristic urethritis with profuse suppuration	Generally appears after termination of urethral suppuration; may be unilateral or bilateral; rarely suppurates	1. Typical diplococcus found in pus 2. The microorganism may be cultivated
Tuberculosis	Mycobacterium tuberculosis (Koch's bacillus)	Insidious	May be of three forms—(1) ulcer with excavated borders; miliary tubercles may be seen it its base; (2) ulcer with nodules of characteristic "apple jelly" appearance; (3) indurated lesion with fistulous apertures	Hard, with well-defined inflammation growing slowly and adhering to skin; glands open through simple or multiple fistulae discharging pus	1. Bacillus tuberculosis in pus 2. Biopsy shows characteristic tubercles 3. Tubercle bacillus may be injected into animals experimentally
Inguinal granuloma	Donovan bodies	3 to 6 weeks	Ulcerated papule; extends in serpiginous form; forms cicatrix in center, extending toward periphery	Inguinal lymphadenitis occurs only when secondary infection of the initial lesion exists	Donovan bodies found in scrapings from lesions; pathognomonic cells with foamy cytoplasm containing cysts of Donovan bodies may be seen by using Wright or Giemsa stain
Malignant tumor	Etiology unknown	Insidious	Epithelioma appearing generally in patients past 40 years of age; granular ulcer which bleeds freely, with hard base	Characteristic malignant invasion	Biopsy shows character of the malignant utmor

*Editor's note (O. F.): For biopsy, see Chapter 70.

consists of a papule, vesicle, or pustule with a diameter larger than 6 mm. (Grace, 1939). According to our observations, the reaction persists after the fourth day for several weeks. A corresponding subject should always be used in carrying out the test so that unspecific reactions will be eliminated, for these have a maximum diameter of only 6 mm. and decrease after three days.

The reaction is more intense in inguinal than in rectal cases: it seems that the attack upon the skin by the infectious agents influences this.

Although some investigators have obtained better results by using mouse brain antigen, most of the American workers (Sulkin, Rake and Grace, and Greenblatt, 1941, Mortara and Greenblatt, 1943, Axelrod, 1942) agree that the chick embryo antigen, Lygranum, is superior to all others for use in the Frei test, and that this antigen constitutes a more satisfactory procedure in the diagnosis of lymphogranuloma venereum. In a study made by our Service (González Jasso, 1941), of 105 cases at Central Military Hospital, we reached the same conclusion.

The sole disadvantage of this test is its delayed appearance. Ravaut et al. (1932) proposed a hemo-reaction for an early diagnosis. An active antigen is injected intravenously; this produces a temperature of 39° to 40° C. after 12 to 18 hours. The fever remains for 24 to 48 hours and is accompanied by general malaise, chills, headache, insomnia, weakness, arterial hypotension, and leucopenia. This test has one disadvantage: it can be used only once. A second test on the same patient with the same quantity of antigen gives a weaker reaction, and it is necessary to give twice or four times the usual dose to obtain the same results. Continued injections eventually have no effect. It is stated that this test is negative in all patients who are not carriers of the lymphogranuloma agent, which would give the test a specificity of 100 per cent. Regarding its sensitivity (Flandin and Turiaf, 1936), the test is positive in 97 per cent of the cases.

As for the complement fixation test, we repeat that in both primary syphilis and in neurosyphilis these tests may give false positive results. The intradermal test, made with a good antigen, is of greatest value in these cases. On the other hand, lymphogranulomatous patients may exhibit false positive reactions for syphilis (Heyman and Webb, 1946). The practical advantages of the complement fixation test are its simplicity, rapidity, the small quantity of serum required (1.6 c.c.), and its appearance one week after initiation of the symptoms. The test can be carried out at the same time and with the same tube of serum as the test for syphilis made before marriage. The patient is not required to return to the laboratory as he must for the intradermal test. It appears, then, in general, that this test would be more useful for learning the incidence of the disease among the general population, since positive cases could be submitted to clinical examination and to the intradermal test. This would place a large number of cases of lymphogranuloma venereum under sanitary control. Most of these cases are unrecognized at the present time.

The test for the neutralization power of the patient's serum (Levaditi et al., 1932) has not as yet come into common use. The presence of Miyagawa corpuscles in infected tissues as seen in secretions is to be considered diagnostic of the disease. These corpuscles can be seen microscopically with certain stains—eosin methylene blue, Macchiavello, Giemsa, Noble. Inoculation of mouse brain and chick embryo may also be carried out to facilitate the search.

The Schilling differential count should also be mentioned. In our study, results were as follows: leucocytosis, 77 per cent; decrease in red blood cells, 55 per cent; neutrophilia, 41 per cent; lymphopenia, 45 per cent; monocytopenia, 41 per cent. Hyperglobulinemia was found in 48 per cent of the patients and hyperproteinemia in 16 per cent.

TREATMENT

Treatment of this general infection is medical, no matter what organs are attacked. Quinine was used in 1879 in Hungary in the belief that malaria was being treated. Prior to 1927, localizations in the glands were surgically handled, while rectal lesions were confused with "syphiloma" of Fournier, and the external genital lesions, especially in females, were confused with elephantiasis and so-called "esthiomene" of the vulva. In 1921 Ravaut and Scheikewitch discovered certain lymphogranulomatous formations in pus and mistook these for amebae. They treated 4 cases of gland-fistula with emetine and obtained favorable results. Ravaut (1921) concluded that emetine had cured his patients. Rodríguez Meza (1936), in Mexico, tried the treatment. At the present time, however, it has fallen into disuse.

In 1923, in Argentina, Destéfano and Vaccarezza (1927) introduced tartar emetic in the form of intravenous injections. The results were good. This preparation has certain objectionable features: it is unstable, it is toxic, and it is not well tolerated by some patients (nausea, vomiting, vertigo, general malaise, chills, cough, intense pain throughout the length of the injected member, and later intense polyarticular pains, muscular pain, and general debility). For this reason, other salts have been sought. Neoantimosan was later named *Fuadin*. Other products are Neostibosan, Neostam, and, in France, in 1934, Anthiomaline (lithium antimony thiomalate) (Sézary and Facquet, 1934).

Neostibosan has given better results than Fuadin (López Engelking, 1934). Polak (1933) reported cures using Stibial. Hissard (1933) reported cure of 2 cases of urethritis which he called "benign subacute," since the Frei test was negative.

According to Laurens (1935), Anthiomaline administration cured 50 per cent of the cases, or its use resulted in great improvement conducive to cure. In 26 per cent of the cases, partial improvement was effected, while in only 14 per cent, fistula formation could not be avoided.

It may be concluded, then, that preparations of antimony constitute excellent medication for this disease, but the treatment is inconstant, and fistula formation and recurrences incline one to believe that the treatment is not specific.

Some success, on a lesser scale, was obtained with sodium salicylate (Chevalier and Fiehrer), iodine (Ravaut), xylol administered orally in capsules (Menéndez, in El Salvador), copper ammonium sulfate (Carnot), and injections of gold (Almquist, Lepinay, Kalz, etc.) before the era of the sulfonamide drugs.

Early in 1938 attempts were made to evaluate the therapeutic power of the sulfonamides in the different clinical types of this disease. In 23 cases of lymphogranuloma, Gjuric (1938) successfully used continuous treatment with Fuadin and Prontosil and recommended an ointment containing 10 per cent Prontosil to be applied to the open buboes. Later many other authors tried various sulfonamides both on human beings and on laboratory animals, notably guinea pigs and mice. It was found that treatment of the laboratory animals with sulfonamides (Findlay, 1940a and 1940b) reduced mortality rates from 84 to 49 per cent if the animals had received sulfonamide daily in their food.

It was observed, however, that in practically no case did rats remain indefinitely free of all symptoms whether they had been treated or not. This observation is important because, in spite of the sulfonamide treatment, the majority of patients persist in showing positive Frei tests and positive complement fixation reactions, which indicates that the infection probably is still present, in latent form, and these individuals have been converted into the highly dangerous "carriers" (Jones et al., 1941).

Several studies have been carried out to determine the therapeutic value of various compounds. It may be stated that, in vitro as in vivo, sulfadiazine holds the first place in treatment, followed by sulfathiazole, sodium sulfanilate, sulfaguanidine, and sulfanilamide.

Chloromycetin has been used with some success in this disease. This product was initially obtained from a new species of soil organism isolated in Venezuela, now designated as *Streptomyces venezuelae*. It is identified chemically and is the first antibiotic to be produced synthetically on a practical basis. Chloromycetin in a dose of 1.0 Gm. every eight hours for 14 days has induced clinical cure, although the "elementary body" may still remain demonstrable in the tissues.

Since 1940 (Grace, 1941), sulfathiazole has been used at the Grace Clinic in the following manner: 1.5 Gm., that is, 3 tablets of 0.50 Gm. each, are given three times a day for two weeks for a total dosage of 4.5 Gm. daily. During the three following weeks, 1 Gm., or 2 tablets, are given in the same manner. The treatment is discontinued for 3 weeks and is then repeated for 5 weeks. This 5-week period is not always necessary to terminate the treatment. In lymphogranulomatous ophthalmia, sulfadiazine (Oliphant et al., 1942) has been used as follows: 3 Gm. (6 tablets) divided into 3 doses daily for 5 days, with 3 days of rest, then repetition of the treatment. The patient is considered cured after he has taken 30 Gm. of sulfadiazine. Sulfanilamide has cured 80 per cent of inguinal cases in 6 weeks and the remaining 20 per cent in 16 weeks with a total of 52 Gm. Rectal cases required 10 months, with a total of 172 Gm. to cure 39 per cent of the patients. In one case, 584 Gm. were administered in the course of a year, without results.

Gray and Barnes (1940) tried injections of Frei antigen subcutaneously and intradermally with good results. Grace (1941) used intravenous injections. Prats (1939) used the same method of treatment but also used sulfonamide simultaneously. The number of satisfactory results rose from 56 to 92 per cent. Finally, Bercovitz (1940) achieved success with intensive subcutaneous treatment. He injected the antigen every 5 days, increasing the dose from 0.1 c.c. up to 1.0 c.c. Best results have appeared in cases of rectal obstruction, although slowly and gradually. Treatment should last at least a year but the patient must be under observation for a much longer period.

Kalz (1932) and Kalz and Sayler (1933) used injections of serum from lymphogranulomatous convalescents with better results than with Solganal, radium therapy, Neostibosan, or surgical treatment. On our Service, blood injections from the patient himself, as well as from other convalescents, have been utilized rather successfully (Cruz Martínez, 1939).

Sulfonamides have also been used parenterally. Alemán Pérez (1943), who originated the method in our country, used, first, soluble sulfapyridine (Streptocid), then para-aminobenzol sulfamido-methylene-sulfoxylate of sodium (Deseptyl), and last, 30 per cent sulfamido-succinate of sodium (Sulfavibus) at pH 7.0. The maximum injected dose of Streptocid was 3 Gm.; of Deseptyl, up to 6 Gm.; and up to 9 Gm. Sulfavibus were used in one injection. It is necessary at the beginning of the treatment, at the time of application, to mix the product with cocaine to prevent pain (novocain must not be used because it forms a combination which may diminish the activity of the compound). Injections are made twice a week. A decided improvement is observed after 6 or 8 injections. Alemán Pérez treated 30 female patients with satisfactory results. On our Service 50 patients with various localizations have been treated to date, with very good results.

The following therapeutics are used in the Mexican Army: sulfathiazole, sulfasuxidine, sodium sulfamidosuccinate, 30 per cent (Vibus Laboratories, Mexico, D. F.); Frei antigen for treatment, called "Antigenfabre" (Vibus Laboratories), composed of a solution of infected mouse brain with the globulin, mucoproteins, and scleroproteins removed. Antigenfabre, in the form of an amino acid compound, is dispensed in 10 c.c. ampule-vials. Norms have been established for the use of these products* and have been sent to all Military physicians of the Republic:

"*Sulfathiazole:* Initial dose, 0.10 Gm. multiplied by 1/6 of the patient's weight. Total dose in 24 hours, 0.10 Gm. multiplied by 2/3 of the patient's weight.

"*Sulfasuxidine:* Initial dose, 0.10 Gm. multiplied by 1/3 of the patient's weight. Total dose for 24 hours, 0.10 Gm. multiplied by the weight.

---

*Oficio-Circular, Sanidad Militar, Dirección, Oct. 15, 1944, México, D.F.

"*Sulfavibus* (for local infiltration): 10 c.c. daily, taking into account that this amount is equivalent to 3 Gm.; to be combined with oral treatment, keeping in mind the patient's tolerance.

"*Intramuscular Antigenfabre* (smaller doses must be used for intravenous injections): Initial dose, 0.25 c.c.; maximum dose, 2 c.c. or more, according to tolerance. With reactivation of lesions, dilute in physiologic saline, 0.75 c.c. of saline for every 0.25 c.c. of antigen. Apply two or three times a week." (In Central Military Hospital, up to 140 c.c. of Antigenfabre have been used.) (Soto, 1945.)

"*Repodral:* Initial dose, 3.5 c.c., continue with 5 c.c. until a total of 10 or 15 injections have been given. After a rest period of 30 days (accumulation) another equal series may be used. Never to be used simultaneously with sulfonamides (Peryassu, 1939, reported good results) unless antigen therapy can be applied."

Manifestations of the disease to be treated are (1) abdominal iliac inguinal adenopathy, (2) acute or chronic nonstenosing rectitis, (3) chronic stenosing rectitis. (Other localizations have not been considered in these soldiers, although such localizations are frequently present in their associates.)

Adenopathy should be treated with sulfathiazole and with antigen therapy (minimum treatment of one month). If it does not yield to treatment, the affected tissues are infiltrated with 10 c.c. of Sulfavibus daily. (Fluctuating buboes are to be punctured and a volume of Sulfavibus equal to the amount of extracted liquid is to be used.)

Chronic rectitis, not stenosing, should be treated in the same manner, except that in acute phases 2 Gm. of sulfasuxidine, instead of sulfathiazole, are administered every 8 hours, and a daily infiltration with Sulfavibus of the accessible affected parts is practiced, with due regard to tolerance, until clinical cure has been effected. (In all cases of open lesions, including rectal lesions, surgical sulfathiazole powder should be applied.)

Chronic stenosing rectitis: Patients must be sent to a hospital for surgical treatment. This consists of resecting the stenotic rectum with or without prior colostomy or simply making an artificial anus, according to the state of the patient (Borjas, 1942).

Jersild's syndrome and elephantiasis in women are treated by infiltration and by surgery, carrying out the indicated operations in each case.

References

Alemán Pérez, J., and Son: 1945. Unpublished data. Hospital Morelos, Mexico.
Alemán Pérez, J.: 1943. Nota Preliminar Sobre el Tratamiento de los Síndromes Génito-Ano Rectales por Medio de Inyección Intersticial de Sulfamídicos, Arch. mex. ven. síf. y dermat. **2:** 116-121.
Alemán Pérez: Personal communication. Mexico, D. F. (See Ottolina, C.)
Aravantinos, A.: 1935. Sur une Nouvelle Forme Clinique de la Maladie de Nicolas-Favre, Presse méd. **43:** 1918.
Arroyo, E.: 1943. Se modifica la Reaccion de Frei por el Tratamiento. Thesis, Military Medical School, Mexico, D. F.

Axelrod, S. J.: 1942. Diagnosis of Lymphogranuloma Venereum; Evaluation of Virus Antigen (Lygranum) Prepared From Culture on Chick Embryo, Am. J. Syph., Gonor. & Ven. Dis. **26:** 474-488.

Bensaude, R., and Lambling, A.: 1934. Considerations sur L'etiologie, la Pathogenie, et le Traitement des Rectites Stenosantes et des Retrecissements Inflamatoires du Rectum, Paris C. R. 43 Congres Fr. de Chir. 182.

Bercovitz, Z.: 1940. Recent Advances in Treatment of Chronic Ulcerative Colitis, M. Clin. North America **24:** 683-704.

Borjas, A.: 1942. La Enfermedad de Nicolas Favre o Cuarta Enfermedad Venerea. Contribución al Estudio, Tratamiento quirúrgico de sus Localizaciones Ano-Rectales, J. Internat. Coll. Surgeons **5:** 50-62,

Bory, L.: 1921. Le Chancre Lymphogranulomateus, Bull. Soc. franç. de dermat. et syph. **28:** 451.

Bory, L.: 1921. Roger-Widal, editor, Chancre et Bubon Poradeniques; Nouveau Traité de Médecine, Paris, Masson & Cie.

Brulé, M.: 1937: La Cellulite de la Nuque Dans les Affections du tube Digestif et son Importance Diagnostique, Press, méd. **45:** 18-20.

Cohen, R.: 1930. Le Syndrome Ano-vulvaire, Ann. d. mal. vén. **25:** 641-654.

Coutts, W. E., and Espildora, C.: 1934. Signos Oculares de la Linfogranulomatosis Venerea Subaguda, Rev. méd. de Chile **62:** 633.

Coutts, W. E., Martini, J., Brieve, I., Lerner, J., and Said, A.: 1942. Visible Forms and Possible Life Cycle of Lymphogranuloma Venereum Virus, J. Trop. Med. a. Hyg. **45:** 137-143.

Coutts, W. E., Martini, J., and Gacitua, M.: 1938. Entwicklungsformen des Virus des Lymphogranuloma Inguinale, Dermat. Wchnschr. **107:** 1404-1406.

Coutts, W., Opazo, L., and Montenegro, M.: 1940. Digestive Tract Infection by the Virus of Lymphogranuloma Inguinale, Am. J. Digest. Dis. **7:** 287-293.

Coutts, W. E., and Opazo, L.: 1939. Sindromaes Linfogranulomatosos de la Cavidad Bucal, del Intestino Delgado y Grueso, del Recto y del Ano, Rev. chilena de hig. y med. prev. **2:** 85-116.

Crohn, B. B., Ginzburg, L., and Oppenheimer, G.: 1932. Regional Ileitis; a Pathological and Clinical Entity, J. A. M. A. **99:** 1323-1328.

Cruz Martínez, A.: 1939. La Enfermedad de Nicolas Favre. Su Tratamiento en nuestro medio. Thesis, Military Medical School.

Destéfano, F. S., and Vaccarezza, R. F.: 1927. Tratement de la Poradénite Inguinal Subaigue par les Injections d'Émétique. Résultats obtenus dans 85 cas, Presse méd. **35:** 1378-1379.

Durand, M., Nicolas, J., and Favre, M.: 1913. Lymphogranulomatose Inguinale Subaigue, D'Origine Genital Probable, peut etre Venerienne, Bull. Soc. des Hôp. **31:** 274.

Favre, M.: 1930. Bull. Soc. franç. de dermat. et syph. 75.

Favre, M.: 1933. Notes Cliniques de Pathologie Inguinale, Ann. de dermat. et syph. **4:** 909-927.

Findlay, G. M.: 1940a. Action of Sulfanilamide on Virus of Lymphogranuloma Venereum, Brit. J. Exper. Path. **21:** 356-360.

Findlay, G. M.: 1940b. Chemotherapeutic Investigations on Virus of Lymphogranuloma Venereum, Lancet **2:** 682.

Flandin, Ch., and Turiaf, J.: 1936. Technique et Valeur de la Réaction de Frei Dans la Maladie de Nicolas-Favre, Bull. Soc. franç. de dermat. et syph. **43:** 320-329.

Frei, W.: 1925. Eine Neue Hautreaktion bei Lymphogranuloma Inguinale, Klin. Wchnschr. **4:** 2148-2149.

Gamna, C.: 1923. Sulla Linfogranulomatosi Inguinale. Richerche Cliniche et Etiologiche, Gior. Biol. et Med. Sperim **46:** 31-35.

Gay Prieto, J. A.: 1927, 1928. January. Contribucíon al Estudio de la Linfogranulomatosis Inguinal o Ulcera Adenogena de Nicolas y Favre, Actas Dermo-Sif. **2:** 122-174.

Gjuric, N. J.: 1938. Neue Wege in der Behandlung des Lymphogranuloma Inguinale, München. Med. Wchnschr. **85:** 335-337.

González Jasso, A.: 1941. Estudio Clinico Comparativo de las Reacciones Para el Diagnostico de la Enfermedad de Nicolas y Facre con Antigenos de Origen Animal y Humano. Tesis, Escuela Medico Militar, Mexico, D. F.

Goodman, J.: 1936. The Relationship of Colitis and Proctitis to Lymphopathia Venerea, Am. J. Syph., Gonor. & Ven. Dis. **20:** 394-407.

Grace, A. W.: 1941. Lymphogranuloma Venereum, Bull. New York Acad. Med. **17:** 627-646.

Grace, A. W.: 1939. Frei Antigen Prepared from Mouse Brain, Arch. Dermat. & Syph. **39:** 347.

Grace, A. W., and Rake, G.: 1943. Complement Fixation Test for Lymphogranuloma Venereum; Results Obtained With Its Use, Arch. Dermat. & Syph. **48:** 619-625.

Grace, A. W., and Suskind, F. H.: 1934. Successive Transmission of Virus of Lymphogranuloma Inguinale Through White Mice, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **32:** 71-72.

Graham, W. E., and Norris, E. W.: 1941. Venereal Lymphogranuloma. Results Following Sulfanilamide Therapy, Ven. Dis. Inform. Bull. (Supp. 13), 18-25.

Gray, L. A., and Barnes, M. L.: 1940. Lymphogranuloma Venereum in the Female, Am. J. Surg. **48:** 277-283.

Greenblatt, R. B.: 1941. Value of Frei Antigen of Chick Embryo Origin in Diagnosis of Lymphogranuloma Venereum, J. Oklahoma M. A. **32:** 423-424.

Harrop, G. A., Rake, G., Shaffer, M. F.: 1941. Group of Laboratory Infections Ascribed to Lymphogranuloma Venereum, Tr. Am. Clin. & Climatol. A. **56:** 154-159.

Herzberger, D., and Koblmüller, L. O.: 1938. Klin. Wchnschr. **16:** 1173.

Heyman, A., and Webb, E. L.: 1946. False Positive Serologic Reactions for Syphilis in Lymphogranuloma Venereum, J. Ven. Dis. Inform. **27:** 122-126.

Hissard, R.: 1933. L'Urétrite vénérienne, subaiguë bénigne, Bull. Soc. franç de dermat. et syph. **40:** 1782-1785.

Jones, H. P., Rake, G., and McKee, C. M.: 1941. Chemotherapy of Lymphogranuloma Venereum With Sulfonamide Drugs, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **48:** 318-323.

Kalz, F.: 1932. Rekonvaleszentenserum bei Lymphogranuloma Inguinale, Dermat. Wchnschr. **95:** 1839-1842.

Kalz, F., and Sagher, F.: 1933. Zur Therapie des Lymphogranuloma Inguinale Dermat. Wchnschr. **97:** 1754-1761.

Kitagawa, K.: 1934. J. orient. Med. **20:** 48.

Kleber, W.: 1930. Dermat. Wchnschr. **91:** 1776.

Klotz, H. G. 1890. Ueber die Entwicklung der sogenannten strumösen Bubonen und die Indicationen für die Frühzeitige Exstirpation derselben, Berl. klin. Wchnschr. **27:** 132, 153, 176.

Laurens, M.: 1935. Le traitement de la maladie de Nicolas Favre par l'antimoine III Thiomalate de Litium. Thesis Paris.

Lederle Laboratories, Inc.: The Chemotherapy of Lymphogranuloma Venereum, New York. Unpublished data.

Levaditi, C., Ravaut, P., and Schoen, R.: 1932. Réceptivité de la souris à l'égard du virus de la maladie de Nicolas et Favre, Compt. rend. Soc. de biol. **109:** 285-289.

Levaditi, C., Ravaut, P., Shoen, R., and Cachera: 1932. Communication a la Academie de Medecine de Paris, January 29.

Lopez Engelking, R.: 1934. El Tratamiento Medico Quirurgico de la Cuarta Enfermedad Venerea o Linfogranulomatosis Subaguda Benigna 88. Thesis, Universidad Nacional, Mexico.

Mann: 1943. Lymphogranuloma Venereum, a Monograph, New York, E. R. Squibb & sons, p. 793.

May, José: 1944. Gac. méd. de Uruguay **7:** April, May.

May, José: 1940. Poradenolinfitis. Enfermedad de Nicolas Favre o Linfogranulomatosis venerea. Ed. El Siglo Ilustrado, Montevideo.

McNie, Dr.: 1942. Arch. de oftal. 3.

Melczer, M., and Sipos, K.: 1937. Komplementbindungsversuche bei Lymphogranuloma Inguinale, Arch. f. Dermat. u. Syph. **176:** 176-183.

Miyagawa, Y., Mitamura, T., Yaoi, H., Ishii, N., Nakajima, H., Okanishi, J., Watanabe, S., and Sato, K.: 1935. Studies on the Virus of Lymphogranuloma Inguinale Nicolas, Favre and Durand, Jap. J. Exper. Med. **13:** 331-339.

Moreno Castellaños, M.: 1942. El Hemograma de Schilling en la Enfermedad de Nicolas Favre. Thesis, Military Medical School, Mexico, D. F.

Mortara, F., and Greenblatt, R. B.: 1943. Comparative Study of Antigens of Human Pus, Mouse Brain, and Chick Embryo Origin for Diagnosis of Lymphogranuloma Venereum, Ven. Dis. Inform. **24:** 14-17.

Nigg, C., and Bowser, B. M.: 1943. Enhancement With Phenol of Serological Reactivity of Lymphogranuloma Venereum Antigens, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **53:** 192-194.

Oficio-Circular: 1944. Sanidad Militar, Dirección, México, D. F., Oct. 15.

Oliphant, J. W., Powell, W. F., and Perrin, T. L.: 1942. Sulfadiazine in Lymphogranuloma Venereum Ophthalmitis, J. A. M. A. **118:** 973-974.

Ottolina, C.: 1943. La Reaccíon Vesicular; Método Para el Diagnóstico de la Infección por Virus Poradénico, Rev. Policlin. Caracas **12:** 13-20.

Pautrier, L. M.: Roederer, J.: 1924. Ulcere Venerienne Adenogene, Bull. Soc. franç. de dermat. et syph. **31:** 43.

Peryassu, D.: 1939. Accão dos Preparados Sulfamidicos sobre a Lympho-granulomatose Venerea, Brazil-med. **53**: 309-311.

Phylactos, A.: 1922. Lymphogranulomatose des ganglions inguineaux; Ulcère vénérien adénogène. Thesis, University of Lyon, France.

Polak, H. J.: 1933. Lymphogranulomatosis Inguinalis und Urethritis non Specifica, Dermat. Wchnschr. **96**: 233-235.

Prats, G. F.: 1939. Algunas Consideraciones Diagnósticas y Tratamiento Químico-Biológico de la Linfogranulomatosis Benigna (Enfermedad de Nicolas y Favre), Rev. argent. dermatosif. **23**: 513-521.

Quiroga, I. Marcial: 1940. Manifestaciones Tardías de la Linfogranulomatosis Venérea, Rev. méd latino-am. **26**: 275-294.

Rake, G. U., and Grace, A. W.: 1943. Lymphogranuloma Venereum, a Monograph, New York, E. R. Squibb & Sons.

Rake, G., McKee, C. M., and Shaffer, M. F.: 1940. Agent of Lymphogranuloma Venereum in Yolk Sac of Developing Chick Embryo, Proc. Soc. Exptl. Biol. and Med. **43**: 332-334.

Ravaut, P.: 1921. Le Traitement de l'Anffection Dite Lymphogranulomatose Inguinale Subaigue par les Injections d'emetine, Bull. et mém. soc. méd. d. hôp. de Paris **20**: 865.

Ravaut, P.: Levaditi, C., and Maisler: 1932. La Valeur Diagnostique et Therapeutique des Injections Intraveineuses du Virus de la Maladie de Nicolas-Favre d'Origine Simienne, Bull. Soc. franç. de dermat. et Syph. **7**: 1262.

Ravaut, C. P., and Scheikevitch, L.: 1921. Bull. Soc. méd. hôp., Paris **45**: 310.

Rodriguez, Meza, L.: 1936. La Emetina en el Tratamiento de la Enfermedad de Nicolas y Favre. Thesis, Fac. de Med., Mexico.

Sabin, A. B., and Aring, C. D.: 1942. Meningoencephalitis in Man Caused by Virus of Lymphogranuloma Venereum, J. A. M. A. **120**: 1376-1381.

Savignac, R.: 1937. Lettres a un Jeune Practicien sur les Maladies de L'anum et du Rectum, Paris, Masson & Cie.

Shaffer, M. F., Rake, G., and McKee, C. M.: 1940. Agent of Lymphogranuloma Venereum in the Lungs of Mice, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. and Med. **44**: 408-410.

Shaffer, M. F., Rake, G., Grace, A. W., McKee, C. M., and Jones, H. P.: 1941. New Aids in Diagnosis of Lymphogranuloma Venereum, Am. J. Syph., Gonr. & Ven. Dis. **25**: 687-698.

Shaffer, M. F., Rake, G., and McKee, C. M.: 1943. Lymphogranuloma Venereum, a Monograph, New York, E. R. Squibb & Sons.

Sézary, A.: 1935. Le Chancre Lymphogranulomateux, Presse Méd. **43**: 1531-1532.

Sézary, A., and Drain, M.: 1935. La Frequence et la Formes Cliniques du Chancre Lymphogranulomateux (Maladie de Nicolas-Favre), Bull. Soc. franç. de dermat. et syph. **42**: 757-760.

Sézary, A., and Facquet, J.: 1934. Communication a la Societe de Dermatologie, Paris, May 17.

Soto, J. L.: 1945. Un Caso Raro de Linfogranulomatosis, Rev. Hosp. Central Militar, Mexico, D. F. **1**: No. 1.

Stannus, Hugh Stannus: 1933. A Sixth Venereal Disease, London, Baillière, Tindall & Cox, p. 53.

Sulkin, E. S.: 1941. The Frei Test for Lymphogranuloma Venereum, J. A. M. A. **116**: 2663-2665.

Sven, Hellerstroem, and Wassen, E.: Eighth International Congress of Dermatology and Syphilology, August, 1930.

Vergara Espino, L.: El fondo del ojo en la Enfermedad de Nicolas y Favre, Rev. de gastro-enterol. de México.

Yanamura, H. Y., and Meyer, K. F.: 1941. Studies on Virus in Psittacosis Cultivated in Vitro, J. Infect. Dis. **68**: 1-15.

CHAPTER 23

GRANULOMA INGUINALE

Robert B. Greenblatt

DEFINITION

Granuloma inguinale, as the name implies, is a granulomatous process which usually occupies the inguinal region. It is a mildly contagious, chronic, and progressive autoinoculable disease involving skin and corium and occasionally the lymphatics. The well-known proclivity of the disease for the external genitalia has earned for it a place in the category of the venereal diseases. Its venereal origin, however, has never been absolutely proved (Greenblatt, 1943).

ETIOLOGY

The etiologic agent of granuloma inguinale is the Donovan body or *Donovania granulomatis* (Anderson, De Monbreun, and Goodpasture, 1945). The disease has been reproduced in human beings by inoculation of aspirated pus from pseudobuboes of granuloma inguinale which contained no other organisms than Donovan bodies. The Donovan bodies are strictly tissue parasites of man, but have been successfully cultivated in the yolk sac of developing chick embryos (Anderson, 1943; Beveridge, 1946; Dienst et al., 1947), in yolk agar medium (Dienst et al., 1948), and less luxuriantly in certain yolk-free media (Rake and Oskay, 1948). The inoculation of this organism into volunteers, however, has not been followed by typical reproduction of the disease.

INCUBATION PERIOD

Little is known about the incubation period of granuloma inguinale. The incubation period as recorded in various case reports in the literature varies from 8 days to 12 weeks. In the experimental production of the disease in human volunteers by inoculation of aspirated pus which contained only Donovan bodies, the classic burgeoning granulation tissue, so typical of the disease, was apparent by the fiftieth day.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Granuloma inguinale is considered generally as a venereal disease, and the consensus is that it is acquired by coitus. The frequency of a history of sexual exposure and the antecedent appearance of a primary penile lesion in the vast majority of males suffering from granuloma inguinale bespeaks a venereal origin for the disease. In spite of the fact that the lesions occur chiefly in the genital region, some doubt exists as to its venereal origin.

Granuloma inguinale in this country occurs predominantly in Negroes. In many instances its occurrence in white men or women definitely could be traced to sexual exposure to Negroes.

CLINICAL SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

The disease makes its appearance insidiously, without premonitory symptoms or constitutional upset. The disease begins as a vesicle, papule, or nodule. The surface epithelium becomes excoriated or eroded, leaving an ulcer with a beefy red granular base. Early lesions have been observed to be small button-like lesions raised above the surface or a fine granular film covering the glans penis, with occasional nodules gently bulging the surface. An early lesion which is frequently observed is a clean, raised, velvety, smooth tuft of granulation tissue situated at the mucocutaneous border of the vaginal orifice, at the preputial orifice, or on the glans or inner surface of the prepuce. The margin of the lesion is sharply defined. The primary lesion in the female is usually found on the vulva or vagina. Occasionally, it is found on the cervix or in the perigenital zone. The granulation tissue, if traumatized, bleeds easily. The lesions are not painful, which accounts for the fact that the patients rarely seek medical care early in the course of the disease. The inguinal manifestations are secondary to the genital lesions. Occasionally, inguinal lesions appear without a trace of a genital lesion, although a history of a previous genital lesion which healed spontaneously is frequently obtained.

CLINICAL COURSE

The lesions show very little tendency to heal; they spread by continuity or contiguity. Extension is often slow, showing only insidious progress. Occasionally, the spread is more rapid and there is a predilection for moist contact surfaces, particularly in the crurosacral folds. Daughter lesions frequently develop near the larger lesions. These coalesce after a time to form extensive ulcerative processes. The advancing border of the lesion has characteristic rolled edges, the granulation tissue piling over onto the bordering epithelial surface.

The ulcerative process may reach a stage where it remains more or less stationary for many years. Secondary pseudoelephantoid enlargement of penis, scrotum, or labia may occur. The lesions may show a tendency to scar formation at one margin and chronic progression at another. Exacerbations of progression are common and sometimes so extensive as to occupy great surfaces. The lesions, when present for several months to years, have a sour-smelling, peculiarly pungent, characteristic odor.

EXTRAGENITAL LESIONS

Most of the extragenital lesions are secondary to pudendal lesions, although in a few instances purely extragenital lesions have been described. Extragenital lesions occur in about 6 per cent of all cases of granuloma inguinale.

HISTOPATHOLOGY

Granuloma inguinale reveals in the pure or unmixed cases a uniform histologic picture. The essential features are (1) the massiveness of the cellular reaction in which the luxuriant granulation tissue is surcharged with plasma cells; (2) the relative and conspicuous paucity of lymphocytes; (3) the diffuse sprinkling of polymorphonuclear leucocytes, with focal collections in the superficies and papillae; (4) the pronounced marginal epithelial proliferation simulating early epitheliomatous changes; (5) the pathognomonic large mononuclear cells scattered in various numbers throughout the granulation tissue.

The pathognomonic cell is specific for granuloma inguinale. The relatively large size of the cell, the diameter of which varies from 25 to 90 microns, and the many intracytoplasmic cysts filled with deeply stained bodies are its cardinal features (Pund and Greenblatt, 1937).

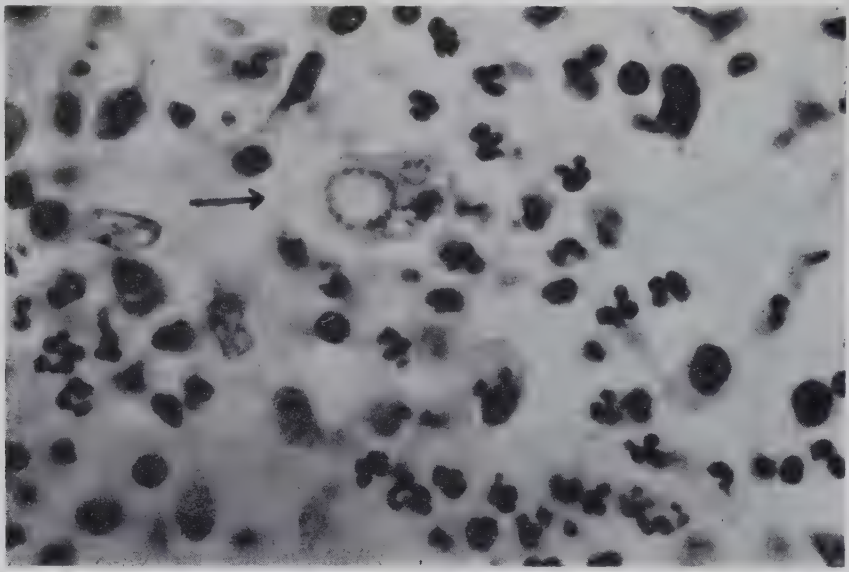


Fig. 145.—Histologic section of granuloma inguinale showing pathognomonic cell. Arrow points to large mononuclear cell. (Reproduced through the courtesy of Pund, E. R., and Greenblatt, R. B.: J.A.M.A. **108**: 1401, 1937.)

COMPLICATIONS

Fusospirochetosis is the most common complication of granuloma inguinale. The lesions become ulcerative, progressive, foul smelling, and painful, and are often refractory to specific therapy. Syphilis, chancroid, and lymphogranuloma venereum may be coexistent. Occasionally, superimposed malignancy has been found to complicate the picture. Secondary elephantoid enlargement of the penis, scrotum or vulva, and clitoris may occur.

DIAGNOSIS

The clinical picture may be so classical, the exuberant beefy red velvety tufts of granulation tissue so striking that the diagnosis is unmistakable. Nevertheless, a diagnosis of granuloma inguinale should be made only when

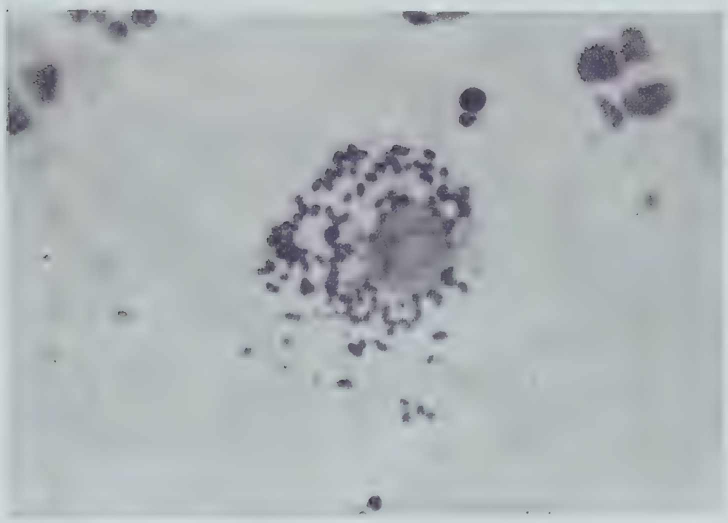


Plate IV.—Donovan bodies from spreads of lesion (granuloma inguinale).

Donovan bodies are demonstrated in spreads or when histologic study of biopsy reveals the pathognomonic cell.

Spreads.—Spreads are made by obtaining a minute piece of granulation tissue from the surface of the wound, if it appears to be clean, or from the deeper part of the lesion, if it appears to be markedly infected. The exudate covering the infected lesions should first be removed. The small piece of granulation tissue is best obtained with a sharp instrument such as a small bone curette. The tissue obtained is smeared along several glass slides or crushed between two slides and then spread along the slide. The slides are then dried and stained. Wright stain has proved most satisfactory but Giemsa stain may be used to equal advantage. The demonstration of Donovan bodies is possible in every case of granuloma inguinale.

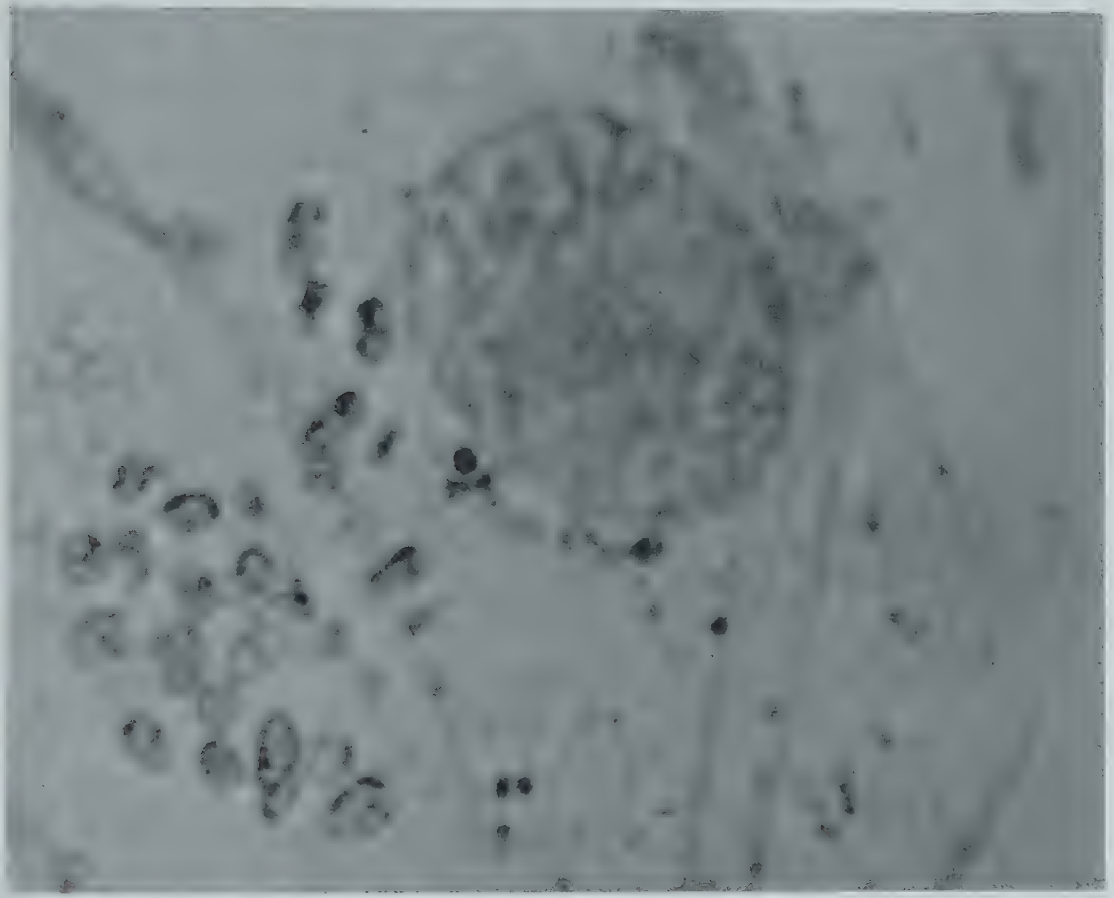


Fig. 146.—Donovan bodies from spreads of lesion (greatly magnified).

Biopsy.—When spreads fail to corroborate the clinical diagnosis one may resort to histologic methods. Paraffin sections of biopsy material stained with hematoxylin (Delafield) and eosin or by the Dieterle silver technic will demonstrate the pathognomonic cell and the characteristic inclusion bodies with moderate ease in all cases of granuloma inguinale.

TREATMENT

1. *Streptomycin.*—1 Gm. every 6 hours for 5 days for a total of 20 Gm. is usually sufficient to cure 90 per cent of the cases of granuloma inguinale. Complete healing usually takes place 1 to 4 weeks after cessation of therapy.

Relapses will occur in 10 per cent. Many of these (50 per cent) may be expected to respond to a second course of streptomycin.

2. *Oral aureomycin* is a most effective antibiotic and even streptomycin-resistant cases have responded to this drug (Greenblatt et al., 1948). The dosage is 250 mg. capsules orally administered 4 times daily until healing is complete. The usual dose required varies from 10 to 15 Gm. Extensive cases may require more.

3. *Chloromycetin* has been found to heal the lesions in a total dose ranging from 20 to 40 Gm. with lesions as large as 70 sq. cm. The total dose has been given within an average of 12 days. Patients having had previous treatment with other medicaments or surgery have responded to Chloromycetin. In the event that examination of the tissue for Donovan bodies is still positive in a reasonable time or 5 to 7 days after Chloromycetin is started, therapy should be continued until healing is complete.

Greenblatt, Wammock, Dienst, and West (1949) have reported excellent immediate results treating five granuloma inguinale patients with Chloromycetin. These investigators have commented on advantages in being able to give Chloromycetin orally as compared with streptomycin parenterally and without appearance of nausea and vomiting even in the larger doses.

4. *Antimonials.*—The effectiveness of antimonial therapy decreases in direct proportion to the chronicity of the lesions. Early granuloma inguinale responds rapidly to therapy with various antimony preparations. *Tartar emetic* (1 per cent) may be given intravenously in ascending doses beginning with 1 c.c. and increasing the dose by 1 c.c. until a dose of 10 c.c. is reached. It is administered every 2 or 3 days. When the maximum is reached the dosage is decreased by 1 c.c. in descending strength until it is reduced to the initial dosage. After a 2-week rest period, medication is again started. Toxic manifestations such as joint pains, sore gums, anorexia, nausea, and vomiting are often encountered with tartar emetic. Freshly prepared 1 per cent solutions are said to be more effective than stock ampules.

Fuadin (Winthrop) has proved to be superior to tartar emetic. It is more convenient to administer and toxic reactions are seldom encountered. The solutions are stable and are available in 1.5, 3, and 5 c.c. ampules. The initial dosage of Fuadin is 1.5 or 3 c.c. intramuscularly. The dosage is then raised to 5 c.c. and given 3 times per week.

Anthiomaline (Merck) is another stable and useful preparation that yields good results in a high percentage of cases. It is available in 3 c.c. ampules and is administered intramuscularly 3 times per week. Usually definite improvement in the lesions may be noted within 4 to 6 weeks. Either Fuadin or Anthiomaline should be continued until healing is complete. Medication should then be administered at weekly intervals for a period of 6 months if recurrences are to be avoided. If the lesions remain refractory to treatment then a change to streptomycin or aureomycin should be instituted.

PROGNOSIS

Before the advent of streptomycin and aureomycin only 50 per cent of patients responded to therapy. Recurrences in this group were quite frequent. Neglected or therapy-resistant patients often harbored the disease for 10 to 15 years. With increasing age, declining health and resistance, there was a gradual activation of the lesions. The ulcerations became so extensive as to occupy the whole pudendal region, lower part of the abdomen, buttocks, and thighs. The patients became anemic, bedridden, cachectic, and finally died. With streptomycin, aureomycin, and Chloromycetin hope may now be offered to every patient. Cases resistant to streptomycin may be encountered but they are very few and these respond to aureomycin.

References

Anderson, K.: 1943. The Cultivation From Granuloma Inguinale of a Micro-Organism Having the Characteristics of Donovan Bodies in the Yolk Sac of Chick Embryos, Science **97**: 560-561.

Anderson, K., De Monbreun, W. A., and Goodpasture, E. W.: 1945. An Etiologic Consideration of Donovania Granulomatis Cultivated From Granuloma Inguinale (Three Cases) in Embryonic Yolk, J. Exper. Med. **81**: 25-40.

Beveridge, W. I. B.: 1946. Action of Antimony and Some Other Bacteriostatic Substances on Donovania Granulomatis Isolated in Chick Embryo, J. Immunol. **53**: 215-223.

Chen, C. H., Greenblatt, R. B., and Dienst, R. B.: 1948. Streptomycin in the Therapy of Granuloma Inguinale, J. M. A. Georgia **37**: 373.

Dienst, R. B.: Greenblatt, R. B., and Chen, C. H.: 1948. Laboratory Diagnosis of Granuloma Inguinale and Studies on the Cultivation of the Donovan Body, Am. J. Syph., Gonor. & Ven. Dis. **32**: 301-306.

Dienst, R. B., Reinstein, C. R.: Kupperman, H. S., and Greenblatt, R. B.: 1947. Studies on the Causal Agent of Granuloma Inguinale, Am. J. Syph., Gonor. & Ven. Dis. **31**: 614-617.

Greenblatt, R. B.: 1943. Management of Chancroid, Granuloma Inguinale and Lymphogranuloma Venereum in General Practice, Ven. Dis. Inform. (Supp. 19).

Greenblatt, R. B., Dienst, R. B., Chen, C. H., and West, R. M.: 1948. Oral Aureomycin in the Therapy of Streptomycin-Resistant Granuloma Inguinale, South. M. J.

Greenblatt, R. B., Dienst, R. B., Kupperman, H. S., and Reinstein, C. R.: 1947. Granuloma Inguinale: Streptomycin Therapy and Research, Ven. Dis. Inform. **28**: 183-188.

Greenblatt, R. B., Kupperman, H. S., and Dienst, R. B.: 1947. Streptomycin in the Therapy of Granuloma Inguinale, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **64**: 389-390.

Greenblatt, R. B., Wammock, V. S., Dienst, R. B., and West, R. M.: 1949. J. M. A. Georgia **38**: 206.

Kupperman, H. S., Greenblatt, R. B., and Dienst, R. B.: 1948. Streptomycin in the Therapy of Granuloma Inguinale, J. A. M. A. **136**: 84-88.

Pund, E. R., and Greenblatt, R. B., 1937. Specific Histology of Granuloma Inguinale, Arch. Path. **23**: 224-229.

Rake, G., and Oskay, J. J.: 1948. Cultural Characteristics of Donovania Granulomatis, J. Bact. **55**: 667-675.

CHAPTER 24

DISEASES DUE TO BACTERIA—THEIR DISTRIBUTION AND OCCURRENCE IN THE TROPICS

Oscar Felsenfeld

Bacterial infections usually enumerated among the tropical diseases are leprosy, cholera, shigellosis, salmonellosis, plague, tularemia, melioidosis, and undulant fever. Leprosy belongs to the chronic granulomatous diseases and is caused by a Mycobacterium which, like the entire genus in which it is classified, is not, strictly speaking, a true bacterium or bacillus. Cholera is evoked by a Vibrio, which again has a special taxonomic position. All other bacterial diseases enumerated in this group, with the exception of shigellosis, are primarily animal infections. They cause illness or carrier state in livestock, fowl, or rodents, and are transferred to man only under favorable conditions. Such circumstances arise more frequently in the tropics. Thus, the endemic and epidemic foci of these diseases are more frequently encountered in warm countries than in cold climates.

The principal factors which enhance the propagation of bacterial (and other) infections may be reiterated. Lack of personal cleanliness is favorable for multiplication of vermin and helps food contamination. Insufficient protection of water, milk, and food and improper preparation and lack of veterinary supervision of livestock cause the propagation of infections. Crowded and filthy housing supports the spread of disease from man to man. Where economic and social conditions and lack of education compel people to live under such circumstances, epidemics cannot be avoided. The temperature and the moisture of the tropics favor multiplication of the vectors and of the pathogenic organisms. Improper food and living habits, chronic devastating illnesses, and other factors which lower the general resistance foster the spread of bacterial diseases.

The absence of an adequate number of properly equipped and well-staffed laboratories in numerous tropical regions, the indolence of certain governing groups, the lack of health education, and mistrust toward the physician make it very difficult in many places to draw a representative picture of the true epidemiologic state. Many statistics are based on pure guesswork. Even such valiant attempts as that of McKinley (1935) to present the real state of affairs brought incomplete results, partly because of lack of cooperation and partly because data simply are not available due to the inadequate laboratory and epidemiologic services in several countries and colonies. During World War II, the United States Army Medical Intelligence Branch collected priceless data from regions formerly closed to such investigations. Some of them are already available (1944) and constitute excellent contributions to our knowledge of tropical infections. The Bulletin of the Office of Inter-American Affairs and numerous surveys carried out by the Rockefeller Foundation and other similar institutions greatly broaden the information available in this field of medicine.

Only essential improvements, work, and more work in the tropical field can bring liberation from bacillary (and other) scourges of mankind.

References

Anonymous: 1944. Notes on Tropical Diseases for Air Force Medical Officers, Revised edition, Orlando, Fla., Arctic, Desert and Tropical Branch, AAF Tactical Center.
Manson-Bahr, P.: 1945. Manson's Tropical Diseases, ed. 12, Baltimore, Williams & Wilkins Co.
McKinley, E. B.: 1935. A Geography of Disease, Washington, D. C., George Washington University Press.

CHAPTER 25

BRUCELLOSIS

MAXIMILIANO RUIZ CASTAÑEDA

Brucellosis, also known as Malta fever or undulant fever, is an infection of domestic animals, mainly cattle, goats, and hogs. Because of the relationship between these animals and man, this infection is readily acquired by man. In animals, brucellosis is characterized by its localization in the reproductive organs, resulting in abortion. Abortion can also occur in human beings, but is not a necessary sequela of the infection. The disease must be considered a bacteriemia with persistence of the organisms in various organs and tissues. This results in immunologic responses which cause characteristic symptoms.

Animals, while showing the common effects of epidemic abortion, are infected with Brucella types which are pathogenic for the respective species. Bovines are infected by *Brucella abortus* (Bang, 1897), goats by *B. melitensis* (Bruce, 1887), and hogs by *Br. suis* (Traum, 1914). The resemblance of these bacteria to each other was pointed out by Evans (1918). Huddleson (1934) gave definite methods for differentiating them bacteriologically.

From a biologic point of view, each species of Brucella maintains its characteristics in each respective animal, but under special conditions one species of animal may become infected with bacteria originally borne by others. This is of epidemiologic importance. Bovine stock, which under natural conditions are infected with *abortus* of low virulence for man, may acquire *melitensis,* which has a higher infective power for human beings. From the clinical point of view, the three Brucella strains may cause similar symptoms in spite of different virulence, so that all must be considered equally harmful.

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

Human brucellosis occurs throughout most of the world. The prevalence of a certain variety of the infecting agent in a specific zone depends fundamentally upon the proportion of the three species of domestic animals and the food habits of the population. In regions where the beef industry is well developed, *abortus* is the most prevalent (United States, Argentina, Uruguay, Cuba, etc.). In countries where goat's milk compensates for lack of cow's milk, the infection is caused principally by *melitensis* (Mexico, the Andean zones, and perhaps in the majority of the Latin-American countries). In countries in which pork is the predominant meat, human infection with *suis* is frequent (certain zones of the United States).

The proportion of animals infected with Brucella is of secondary importance for the frequency of human brucellosis. In countries where adequate precautions are taken in the handling and distribution of milk, infection by *abortus* is reduced to cases in rural zones beyond sanitary control. In tropical countries, infection by *abortus* is of little importance because, since the colonial era, it has been the custom to boil milk to prevent spoilage. In certain rural zones, however, milk is generally consumed fresh and raw. The danger of consuming raw milk reaches incredible proportions in zones where rural populations must drink goat's milk (various regions of Northern Mexico). An important source of infection from both *abortus* and *melitensis* is cheese, especially when it is freshly prepared. The majority of cases observed in Mexico City are infections from eating goat cheese.

TRANSMISSION

The mechanism of transmission of brucellosis to man is simple. Bovine infection is readily acquired by persons who handle infected cattle, through direct contact with infected membranes and perhaps by inhalation of dust containing Brucellae. Purriel and collaborators (1944) attached special significance to these means of transmission, giving them priority over infection by consumption of raw milk. The most definite means of infection by *suis* is contact with infected meat. On the other hand, a most important manner of acquiring infection with *melitensis* is through the digestive system. The virulence of this organism is such that in many cases a very small quantity of

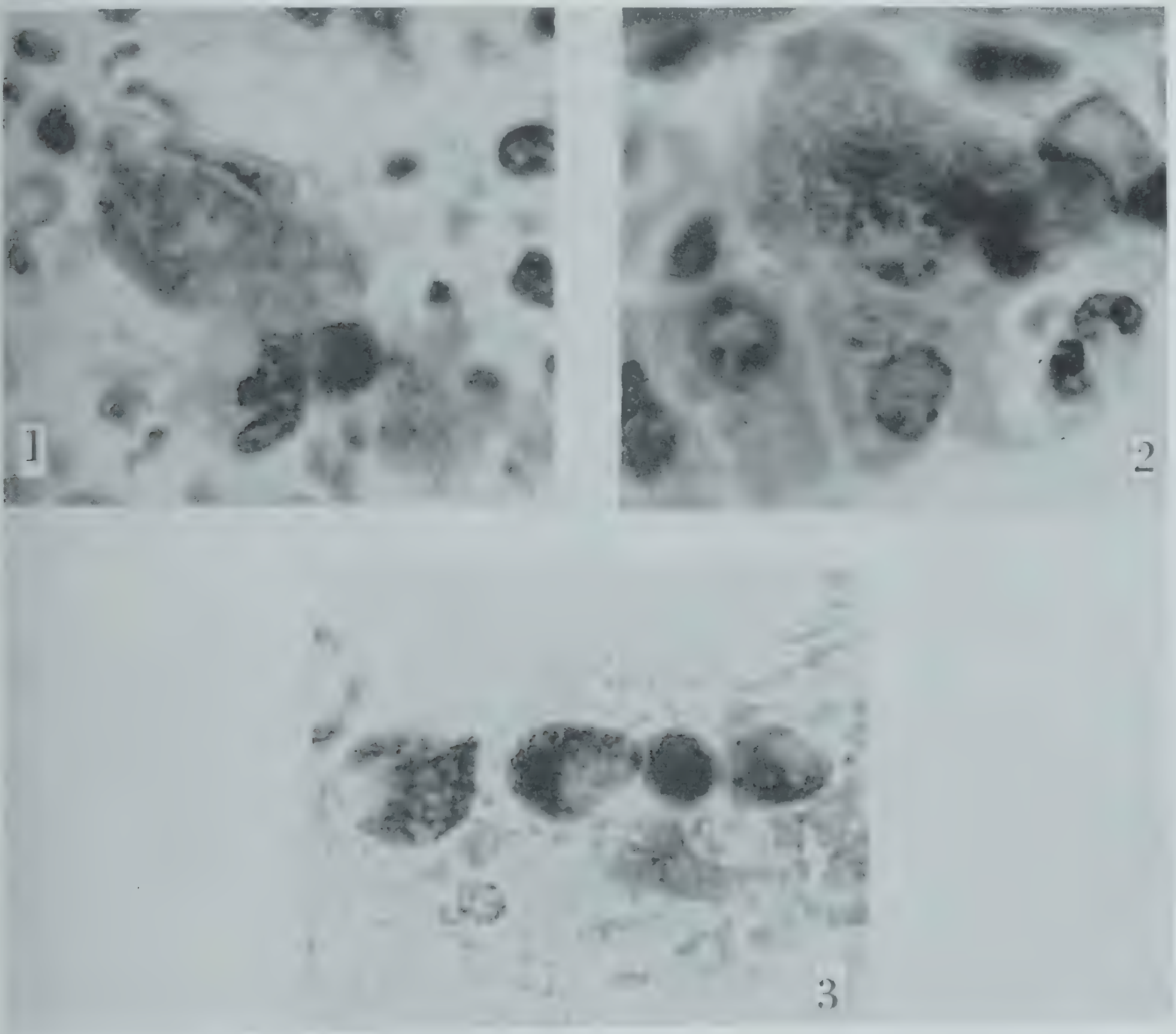


Fig. 147.—*1*, Alveolar cell packed with *Brucella melitensis*. Mouse inoculated intranasally. (×1600.) *2*, Testis of guinea pig inoculated with *Brucella abortus*. Interstitial cell. (×1,000.) *3*, Testis of guinea pig inoculated with *Brucella melitensis*. Parasitized macrophages. (×1,000.) *1* and *2*, Nyka stain. *3*, Formalinized Giemsa stain.

milk or a small piece of fresh cheese is sufficient to cause infection. We recall a family of seven persons who acquired the infection simultaneously by eating a total of less than 100 Gm. of goat cheese.

PATHOLOGY

The presence of Brucellae in the cytoplasm of cells of the epithelial layer of the bovine placenta has been known since the work of Smith and Fabyan (1912). Goodpasture and Anderson (1937) and Buddingh and Womack (1941) presented important evidence in regard to the multiplication of Brucella within certain cells of the chick embryo when these organisms were inoculated on the chorioallantoic membrane. An interesting finding has been reported by Meyer (1943) who found colonies of Brucella situated intracellularly in the cells of Bowman's capsule in a fatal case of *suis* infection.

Nyka, in our laboratory, has not found intracellular Brucellae in man, but his findings indicate the existence of intracellular organisms, although in small numbers.

It is evident that in the pathogenesis of brucellosis, as suggested by Buddingh and Womack and by Meyer, the intracellular position of the Brucellae plays a primary, fundamental, and important role in the mechanics of the infection as well as in the defensive processes, a concept which must be taken into account in the diagnosis, prognosis, and treatment of the disease. However, we must not underrate the fact that Brucella can develop outside the cells, especially within spaces destroyed by inflammatory processes and in fluids in various cavities.

It is believed (Loeffler, 1930, and most authorities) that histologic lesions found in experimentally infected guinea pigs show marked agreement with those found in man. Lesions in the guinea pig were first described by Smith and Fabyan (1912). The infection produces changes similar to those of chronic lesions in tuberculosis. These are observed in most organs in a perivascular or interstitial location. The focal lesions consist of grouping of epithelioid cells surrounded by lymphoid cells. The general aspect is that of a chronic granulomatous infection. According to Hughes (1897), a large number of acute cases present no characteristic histologic lesions, except in the spleen, which correspond to lesions of the type observed in acute pyrexia.

Sharp (1934) referred to the general appearance of the granulomatous infection and emphasized the tuberculoid form of the nodules, the similarity being more marked when Langhans' cells are occasionally found, but which show none of the caseation so characteristic of tubercular nodules.

Meyer (1943) stated that cultures made from organs and tissues revealed considerable quantities of Brucellae, especially noticeable in the kidney where the most characteristic lesions were found, including the presence of Brucella colonies in the cells of Bowman's capsule. This author noted massive infiltration of the stroma adjacent to the affected cells by monocytes, lymphocytes, plasma cells, and occasionally polyblasts.

Two fatal cases of acute brucellosis caused by *melitensis*, studied in collaboration with Villasenor and Costero in this hospital, showed but meager macroscopic manifestations except in the liver, spleen, and kidney, where red and white infarcts were seen with small subcapsular abscesses not larger than 2 millimeters. In one of the cases the lesions **in the kidney** were abundant, not in the glomerulus as described by Meyer but in the interstitial spaces. The inflammatory infiltrations were of variable intensity and location and contained numerous polymorphonuclear cells, lymphocytes, monocytes, and polyblasts. Occasionally there were so many polymorphonuclears that an abscess-like appearance was given to the lesion. Numerous centers of infiltrated zones presented a definite necrotic aspect.

We found **in the spleen** zones of infiltration made up mainly of macrophages and lymphocytes but with numerous polymorphonuclears distributed not only in the infiltrated sites but also in a diffuse form throughout the entire organ. At several places, groups of polymorphonuclears showed an abscess-like formation. Intense congestion was present, with enlargement of the sinuses and, occasionally, extravasation of red corpuscles.

In the liver, numerous leucocytes were observed in the sinuses, as well as moderate lymphocytic infiltration in the space of Kiernan. Small lymphocytic infiltrations were found distributed throughout the organ. Small foci of necrosis and red infarcts, 2 to 3 mm., were observed. Many polymorphonuclears were seen within the infarcts. Mononuclear cells, containing intraprotoplasmic formations which might have been Brucella colonies, were observed in the spleen and liver.

It is of interest to add that positive cultures of various organs showed colonies from zones with microscopic lesions as well as from points where there were no lesions. The characteristic granulomatous appearance described by various authorities was not seen in these cases. On the other hand, in a chronic case of brucellosis described by Tovar (1943) and in one referred to by Costero (1945), there were found, especially in the spleen, nodular lesions made up of more or less numerous groupings of epithelioid cells surrounded by numerous lymphocytes, the general aspect of which was suggestive of tubercular nodules.

From the study of other cases, including the spleens of two splenectomized patients, Nyka found that the principal lesions are in the liver, kidney, and spleen. The bone marrow was not studied.

Liver.—The liver showed interstitial hepatitis, with enlarged intertrabecular spaces strewn with variable numbers of polymorphonuclear leucocytes, lymphocytes, and plasmocytes. There was a marked hyperplasia of Kupffer's cells; the number was far greater than normally found. The liver cells, in almost all cases, showed a variable degree of fatty degeneration which usually affected the central part of the lobules. In some cases, foci of necrosis were seen, strewn in a random fashion all over the organ. A variable degree of cirrhosis was an almost constant feature, although it was not possible to ascertain whether that lesion was produced by Brucella or whether it was due to influences of cirrhosis of the liver from some source other than the organism.

Kidney.—The changes were the same as with *Br. melitensis* (above).

Spleen.—The spleen showed a great variety of lesions from the most acute forms of splenitis with heavy congestion, dilatation of the sinuses, swelling of the splenocytes, and a great number of polymorphonuclear leucocytes to chronic lesions characterized by a variable degree of sclerosis or by foci of necrosis with epithelioid and sometimes giant cells.

Except in the liver, Brucellae were regularly found in the lesions.

In addition to these lesions which are considered characteristic of brucellosis, many kinds of inflammatory localizations in various organs and tissues have been pointed out, corresponding to the numerous complications of the disease. These lesions have characteristics common to infections without special structure, varying from small cellular infiltrations to destructive phenomena of great intensity.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

We do not wish to discuss the symptoms of brucellosis as presenting an over-all picture in which the role of the specific type of Brucella has been omitted. This is often done because it is impossible to find clinical forms that can be considered characteristic of each type of Brucella. In fact, the various forms of acute brucellosis pointed out by Simpson (1940) may be caused by any of the three Brucellae. This statement also applies to the insidious, latent, or chronic forms described by Evans (1934) as well as to the complications caused by localization of these organisms in various organs or tissues. Our experience with cases, principally those caused by *melitensis,* has impressed upon us the necessity of considering the symptomatology as somewhat different from that described with respect to groups of patients infected by *abortus.*

We wish to submit data on the incubation period of brucellosis and to present a description of the symptomatology in infection by *melitensis* as observed in over 900 patients. Following this, we wish to make a similar presentation of infections by *abortus,* availing ourselves of information from North and South American sources.

Incubation Period.—Information from various authors interested in determining the lapse of time between exposure and appearance of the first symptoms gives an idea of the extraordinary irregularity of the incubation period. There are variations which depend not only upon the type of infective organism but also upon the virulence of each strain and the number of Brucellae which enter the body. In some cases the symptoms appear a few days after exposure; in others they appear weeks, months, or even years later. Severe infections with clinical pictures similar to influenza, typhus, or typhoid infections are seen when the periods of incubation are short. On the other hand, when symptoms appear after a long incubation period they are not striking. The resulting clinical picture includes most of the chronic brucelloses with insidious beginning. In our experience, principally with brucellosis of caprine origin, the most frequent length of the period of incubation is 2 weeks.

Following the period of incubation, brucellosis may manifest itself as one of three fundamental clinical types: acute brucellosis, brucellosis with acute onset followed by a chronic phase, and chronic brucellosis with insidious beginning.

Brucellosis Caused by Brucella Melitensis

The early stage of the disease shows no difference from other acute infections, notably typhoid fever. In many cases the diagnosis is uncertain until the febrile period has extended beyond 3 weeks. During this phase many types of complications may occur. The process may vary from malignant brucellosis with a rapid and fatal termination to a benign form, at times amounting simply to an evening rise of temperature.

Fever may continue, with a tendency to diminish in intensity, for periods of time varying from 1 to 3 months. During this period, a definite state of malnutrition becomes apparent. When the infection develops in patients under favorable conditions, symptoms are noticeably restricted; there are night sweats and pains in various joints, at times of extraordinary severity, particularly in the sacroiliac region, which necessitates immobilization because of pain. Frequently, when the patient submits to proper treatment, manifestations of the initial stage of infection gradually disappear. It is common, however, in acute cases, to find that the fever persists for 15 days to 2 months or more, followed by improvement, with diminution or disappearance of the various symptoms. Improvement lasts from a few days to 2 weeks; this is followed by reappearance of fever, pains, and, frequently, new symptoms. The fever may be continuous, intermittent, remittent, or simply irregular; pains in the joints often become alarming. Among the various symptoms and complications which may arise, it is not unusual to observe orchitis, abortion, myositis, arthritis, osteitis, endocarditis, and purpura. There is general debility with marked loss of weight, anemia, nervousness, and mental depression which is very characteristic. In this phase of the disease, periods of relief may occur, even with disappearance of the symptoms. This fluctuation may end with marked improvement or more severe symptoms may set in, which may terminate fatally either from direct effects of the infection itself or from complications. The duration of this secondary period is variable. With the disappearance of clinical manifestations of the secondary phase, the patient may become completely cured. Often, however, late manifestations appear, such as those listed, or other inflammatory changes may occur in any part of the body. The infection respects no organs or tissues.

Brucellosis Caused by Brucella Abortus

The infection appears in one of the three fundamental clinical forms indicated above. In contrast to cases of infection by *melitensis*, however, many cases of *abortus* infection begin insidiously. Chronic brucellosis, sometimes called the Evans type, is included in this group.

Abortus infection with acute onset may be equally as severe as *melitensis* infection. However, in one group of cases observed in Uruguay (Purriel et al., 1944) which presented clear evidence of the bovine origin of the infection, the initial symptoms were not so striking. While the fever was variable in form and intensity, it was not sufficiently elevated, so that several days or in some cases several weeks passed without any apparent need for hospitalization. The clinical picture at this stage corresponds to that of influenza with marked asthenia. Due to increasing general debility, the patient prefers to remain immobilized. When the fever is very high, the physical and psychic states of the patient suggest a typhoidal condition. Profuse perspiration, persistent headache, muscular pain, usually in the flexor muscles of the legs, neuralgia, hyperesthesia, and other nervous disturbances are concomitant symptoms. Some cases show bronchial irritation and digestive disturbances accompanied by diarrhea or persistent constipation. The acute phase lasts 8 to 15 days and even longer in some instances. In the Purriel group of cases mentioned above, improvement with complete recuperation was observed in uncomplicated cases. When complications due to brucellary foci were present, the clinical manifestations continued for a long time.

Spink and Hall (1945) reported their observations on 35 cases which occurred in Minnesota where the infecting agent, according to these authors, was probably *abortus* since most of the patients had drunk milk from infected cows. There were cases which began abruptly, like influenza, with or without gastrointestinal disturbances. The fever showed a variety of forms and various degrees of intensity; asthenia was marked as in the cases described by the Uruguayan authors, and additional symptomatology was practically the same. Other cases began insidiously. In both studies, in Uruguay and in Minnesota, the benign tendency of the disease was marked.

Although it is difficult to find many clinical descriptions of bacteriologically verified cases, the impression one gathers from the literature, especially the American literature, is that the data presented here may be considered as the common picture of infection by *abortus*.

In a comparison of descriptions of infections by *melitensis* and *abortus* it is evident that *melitensis* characteristically causes severe infections. The infection begins acutely and is of longer duration than the acute phase of the infection caused by *abortus*. In cases produced by *abortus*, the illness frequently begins insidiously or with such minor symptoms that many cases are recognized only when they become chronic. It is of interest, also, that in infection by *melitensis* headache is less frequent and gastrointestinal disturbances in acute cases are rare.

Brucellosis Caused by Brucella Suis

This author is of the opinion, in accord with reports from North American writers, that the infection caused by *suis* is more severe than that caused by *abortus* and has a greater tendency to localize in the bones.

CHRONIC BRUCELLOSIS

In infection produced by *Br. melitensis* or *Br. abortus*, a chronic phase may follow the acute stage or chronic brucellosis may appear without an apparent initial attack.

Differentiation between clinical manifestations of the various forms of chronic brucellosis is difficult. In general, chronic cases due to *melitensis* have previously presented an acute initial stage. The symptomatology of chronic brucellosis is quite variable, but generally it includes the following triad: a febrile condition, asthenia, and subjective disturbances which are seldom explained by some organic lesion. To this triad may be added manifestations due to complications caused by localization of the causative agent in various organs or tissues or to secondary infections that readily occur as a result of weakening of organic defenses.

The febrile cycle, at times, assumes a special character which justifies the name "undulant fever" which has been given to brucellosis. The undulations are due to the fact that periods of improvement and even of suspension of the symptoms are interspersed during the course of the disease. The fever curve may assume various forms. It may be intermittent, remittent, occasionally continuous, sometimes showing only an occasional rise of evening temperature. Loss of weight is proportionate to the intensity of the fever as is also the asthenia and psychic condition.

COMPLICATIONS

So many complications may occur during the acute phase that space forbids a complete discussion of them in this chapter. We shall, therefore, describe only those most frequently observed in our 900 patients infected with *Br. melitensis.*

Four cases of abortion were observed during the phase of invasion as well as several months after this stage. On the other hand, 3 women with chronic brucellosis had normal deliveries.

Orchitis was observed in 14 out of 265 infected males. This complication appears as an intense inflammation of the testis and epididymis, sometimes affecting only the epididymis. The inflammation appears as a redness with distention of the scrotum, swelling being unilateral or bilateral. Pressure on the organ results in intense pain. When orchitis occurs during the period of subsiding fever and remission of the disease, there is a severe febrile exacerbation which usually lasts for several days. The course of this complication is relatively rapid; it generally disappears in 1 or 2 weeks, and seldom leaves any evidence of pathologic changes in the affected organ.

Arthritis may appear in various joints. The intra-articular fluid is rich in Brucella but seldom has the characteristics of a purulent discharge. Joint complications generally develop rapidly, followed by complete functional recovery.

A relatively frequent complication in infection by *melitensis* is a painful syndrome of the gluteal region which results in functional incapacity often requiring confinement to bed for weeks and even months; there are grave consequences due to physical and mental depression. Since there is no evidence of important involvement of the sacroiliac joint and since the pain is greatly relieved by local anesthesia, it is assumed that this trouble results from local inflammatory processes in the gluteal muscles or in their sites of insertion.

Nervous disturbances have been observed during the acute phase. Among these are encephalitis accompanied, in one case under our observation, by epileptiform attacks. Myelitis, radiculitis, and neuritis have also been noted. In spite of the severity of these manifestations, patients usually make a complete recovery.

Osseous complications should be listed among the most important manifestations of brucellosis. Spondylitis and abscesses in the ribs have been observed with relative frequency. We have not encountered intense osteomyelitis such as Harris (1941) described.

We have seen less frequently many complications due to localization of Brucellae in various organs. These have been described in detail by several authors. Purpura, described by several authors, was observed in 50 out of 600 cases in which the diagnosis of brucellosis was confirmed by blood culture. In some cases, purpura appeared after the ingestion of drugs; in other cases, after administration of vaccines or filtrates of Brucella; in still others, the purpura was thrombocytopenic. In 20 patients, however, there was no apparent cause to justify the occurrence of such a complication. In these 20 cases, purpura appeared in the lower extremities. It was markedly symmetrical. Brucellae were isolated by scraping these lesions which had resulted from bacterial embolism distributed over a peripheral capillary net, with local reaction enhanced by the allergic status of the patient.

DIAGNOSIS

Brucellosis shows such variations in its clinical manifestations that it is not practical to attempt to make a diagnosis without recourse to laboratory tests. Clinicians have for a long time depended upon the finding of agglutinins as the fundamental element in diagnosis. There has been much discussion concerning the advantages and disadvantages of this method. It is inadequate to depend entirely upon agglutination without using other tests. In fact, there have been cases of brucellosis with bacteriemia in which the agglutination test for Brucella was negative or of slight significance. In chronic brucellosis, according to Evans (1938), a marked percentage of individuals show no agglutinins.

Our opinion is that, for practical purposes, agglutination tests carried out with sensitive and specific antigens are of great help, not only in recognizing the existence of the infection but also in following the development of the disease and in guiding the treatment.

Agglutination Test

Screening Test.—The screening test is used as a preliminary test and may be performed at the patient's bedside. A drop of antigen* is mixed with a smaller drop of blood taken by puncture of the finger or of the ear lobe. A positive reaction shows blue clumps which separate completely from the red blood cells. A negative reaction is characterized by a brownish-green appearance. Since the antigen is titrated to produce agglutination only when the agglutinins are at titers higher than 1:100, a positive reaction eliminates doubtful and negative tests.

Negative reactions, however, are not considered as final until corroborated by the classical test tube reaction or by Huddleson's (1934) method.

The screening test is especially valuable in rural zones where laboratory aid is not available.

Titration of Agglutinins.—Huddleson's rapid slide test is very useful as a diagnostic procedure and also as an indication of agglutinin content in the serum. When it is desirable to determine agglutinin titers higher than 1:500, the tube agglutination method with suitable antigens is recommended.

Differential Serologic Test.—When a serum is positive, it is our practice to use differential tests to determine the type of agglutinins present. We use a substitute for the absorption method, calling it the "selective agglutination" method (Castañeda, 1942). It is easy to demonstrate in a few minutes whether the serum is from infection by *abortus*, *suis*, or *melitensis*. Identification has been completed in more than 600 cases of brucellosis where the selective agglutination test results have been checked by bacteriologic control.

Opsonic Test

The opsonic test, recommended by Huddleson and collaborators (1932), is an important indicator if systematically studied in each patient, particularly when related to the numbers of available polymorphonuclear leucocytes. It displays fluctuations often related to the condition of the patient; it increases in intensity with recovery near at hand, persisting after disappearance of the symptoms. In order to prevent laboratory accidents by handling live Brucella, we have recommended the use of formalin-killed *Br. abortus*.

Allergic Test

This test determines hypersensitivity to Brucella or its by-products. It is carried out by means of intracutaneous injection of appropriate antigens. In sensitive persons a cutaneous reaction occurs, characterized by redness of the skin, edema, and painful sensation at the site of the injection. Patients begin to show cutaneous reactions usually at the end of the first month of illness. The reaction increases in intensity with the development of the disease, often reaching a maximum months later, and remains for indefinite periods.

---

*We use an antigen suspension containing *Br. abortus* and *Br. melitensis* treated with 16 per cent formalin for 48 hours, washed, heavily tinted with methylene blue, centrifuged, and resuspended in 1:1,000 sodium citrate solution. It is standardized with sera of known titers. The concentration of the organisms is about 100 billion per cubic centimeter.

Suspensions of dead Brucellae or their soluble products prepared by various technics are used as antigens. Among the latter, "brucellergen" prepared by Hershey and recommended by Huddleson (1934) and the extracts used by Morales Otero and González (1938) are especially useful.

Antigens prepared with whole Brucellae often cause very intense lesions at the site of the injection. It is not unusual to observe inflammatory zones with necrotic centers. These antigens may stimulate formation of agglutinins so diagnostic errors might be made at a later examination (Evans and collaborators, 1938). For some years, we have been using as a routine an extract obtained by partial trituration of a mixture of *Br. melitensis, Br. abortus,* and *Br. suis* (Castañeda and Carrillo, 1941). This product is diluted until definite cutaneous reactions are produced with 0.1 c.c. injected intracutaneously. The test dose contains an insignificant quantity of antigenic material, but this is insufficient to stimulate the formation of antibodies against the Brucellae.

The local reaction is sufficient to be apparent even in persons of dark skin without, however, producing necrotic lesions.

The cutaneous test is of great value not only for diagnostic purposes but also as a means of verifying epidemiologic data.

The use of the intradermal reaction as the sole test in the diagnosis of brucellosis has been criticized, and we are in accord with this point of view. No test, except the isolation of the organisms, must by itself be considered as decisive. The clinical study of a case must form the basis upon which all additional evidence in one sense or another may be built.

Hematologic Studies

Our observations in a group of about 900 patients, most of whom were infected by *melitensis* (Castañeda and Guerrero, 1946), showed leucopenia in nearly one-third and figures close to normal or above normal in the rest of the group. The percentages of lymphocytes were higher than normally found with a corresponding decrease in polymorphonuclear leucocytes. The increase in lymphocytes, often in absolute numbers, seems to indicate increased lymphogenesis in brucellosis. On the other hand, there seems to be an interfering effect in the yield of polymorphonuclear leucocytes, which may be reduced in absolute numbers.

As to the changes in morphology and other characteristics of white and red blood cells, we have no data to indicate that this is of diagnostic interest in brucellosis. Anemia, frequently pointed out as a complication of the infection, is related to the general status of the patient, especially with respect to the intensity and persistence of the febrile reaction.

Blood Cultures

Laboratory tests, briefly indicated above, constitute satisfactory proof of infection by Brucella when they are positive and in agreement with clinical data. When they are negative, they indicate absence of the infection. But judgment must be reserved until completion of those bacteriologic studies covering isolation of the organism from the blood, from focal lesions, or from bile, urine, feces, etc.

Various media may be used in the isolation of Brucella from the blood, but we find Bacto-tryptose used in broth and agar practical.* Experience has shown the considerable difficulties in obtaining cultures from the blood of patients and the danger of handling the material in the process of isolation and identification of Brucella. In order to obviate these difficulties we have recommended (Castañeda and Guerrere, 1946) the use of a double medium which has proved very valuable.

Tryptose agar† in amounts of 20 c.c. is distributed in 100 c.c. flat-sided bottles and autoclaved. The medium is allowed to solidify in one of the narrow sides of the bottle. With sterile precautions 15 c.c. of sterile Bacto-tryptose, dissolved in 2 per cent sodium citrate, are added. The bottle is closed with an adequate rubber stopper and incubated for several days as a test for sterility. Carbon dioxide may be added before or after setting the stopper.

The blood is taken as usual by means of autoclaved syringes and ejected through the rubber stopper in amounts of 10 c.c. At 48-hour intervals the broth and blood mixture is spread over the agar layer, the bottle immediately replaced in its vertical position, and incubated at 36° C. If the blood culture is positive, colonies of Brucella may be observed in the agar layer after the fourth day, but most frequently after the sixth day. If no colonies are observed after 20 days of incubation the culture is considered negative.

Identification of Brucella is rapidly made by determination of the atmospheric requirements of the isolated organism, by the production of H_2S, and by the type of agglutinogen which predominates in the antigenic constituents of the organism. In our laboratory, we determine the type of agglutinogen by the use of selective agglutination; this has given satisfactory results. Recourse may be had, however, to the absorption of the agglutinins or to agglutination by monovalent sera recommended by Evans (1937) and by Wilson and Miles (1932). In a well-equipped laboratory, determination of the type of newly isolated strains can be carried out with bacteriostatic media recommended by Huddleson (1934).

The possibility of infection by rough variants of Brucella must not be overlooked. In such cases, special studies too complicated to be included in this chapter may be required.

Treatment

Data on the pathogenesis of brucellosis are meager, yet they are worthy of consideration as a basis for treatment. There can be no doubt that the possibility of development of Brucella within various types of cells—a more active development than is supposed—constitutes a serious obstacle to successful therapeutic attack. Because of its intracellular position, the Brucella persists in spite of the high immunity attained by the tissues. This persistence explains the allergic character of the principal manifestations of brucellosis.

Most methods recommended for the treatment of brucellosis are not efficacious so that we have maintained an attitude of prudent vigilance, availing ourselves of the natural defenses of the individual and avoiding using drugs of uncertain or perhaps harmful effect. As a consequence of this uncertain therapy, the physician might be responsible for damages which could endanger his patient's life.

---

*For use, see Gradwohl: Clinical Laboratory Methods and Diagnosis, ed. 4, vol. II, St. Louis, 1948, The C. V. Mosby Company, pp. 1478 and 1516.

†Difco Laboratories, Detroit, Mich.

We consider it unnecessary to recall the numerous methods and drugs recommended in the past. Of those most commonly used, we shall discuss briefly the treatment by vaccines, which are given with the idea of increasing the immunologic defenses of the patient. Experience shows the uncertainty of the results in the acute phase of brucellosis. In the chronic phase it seems to us unreasonable to add to the already hyperimmune condition an increase in stimulation. The administration of hyperimmune serum or whole blood has not been of value in our cases of acute or of chronic brucellosis.

Chemotherapy has recently again been brought to the attention of clinicians, this time based on extensive experimental work in which such drugs have shown their usefulness against Brucella. Streptomycin and sulfadiazine are credited with being the most useful.* Experimental work by Spink and collaborators (1948), however, showed that either drug used separately has considerably less antibrucella effect if administered into infected developing chick embryos than if both drugs are administered simultaneously. Application of this combined treatment to human brucellosis was made by Eisele and McCullough (1947) and by Spink et al. with most encouraging results. Spink et al. recommended the administration of 0.5 Gm. of streptomycin every 6 hours for 2 weeks and simultaneously an initial dose of 4 Gm. of sulfadiazine and 1 Gm. every 4 hours thereafter. The sulfadiazine should be continued for longer periods. This method of treatment is now on trial (1948); one must await the accumulation of sufficient data before definite conclusions can be drawn.

In this respect, we must keep in mind that brucellosis is often a relatively mild disease which may be of short duration with early disappearance of the infecting agent from the blood stream, and that in the chronic phase of the disease the usefulness of the antibrucella agents may be of little or no value.

In brucellosis one may expect that the acute phase will be followed by temporary remission and later by recurrences, usually characterized by hypersensitivity to Brucella products. For this reason we have followed, for the past eight years, the plan of "desensitizing" the patients so as to reduce to a minimum any disturbances caused principally by temperature elevations. For this purpose, we have used extracts obtained from Brucella, very active as allergens but insufficient as stimulants for increased antibody production. These extracts are the same as those used for the determination of skin sensitivity and are administered subcutaneously in 2 weekly doses, beginning with 1 skin-test dose and gradually increasing to 20 doses. As may be expected, this treatment has little or no effect on the acute phase of the disease, but in most cases it may be instituted as early as possible with the hope that at the termination of the acute stage the patient may be in a better condition to tolerate the constant discharge of products of Brucella which are accompanied by the symptoms described above.

---

*Recently aureomycin and Chloromycetin have been recommended.

Frequently, particularly when no important localizations of Brucella are present even though bacteriemia continues for weeks and even months after termination of the acute phase, patients submitted to the desensitization treatment present a minimum symptomatic picture. Many patients have returned weeks and even months later complaining of reappearance of symptoms. Renewal of desensitization improves their symptoms, which gradually subside.

Because of the allergic nature of most of the symptomatology in chronic brucellosis, treatment by desensitization has given more consistent beneficial results. On the other hand, this method is of no value in anergic patients; anergy frequently is found in severe and persistent bacteriemia related to considerable multiplication of the organisms in the spleen, liver, endocardium, and other important foci of Brucella.

Since the treatment by desensitization causes little or no trouble to the patients, it may be continued for several weeks or months. As a general rule, we advise continuance of treatment until the agglutination titers become lower than 1:200, checking the immunologic picture of each patient periodically.

In spite of the enthusiasm over successful results by recent therapeutic methods in brucellosis, we consider that the solution is far from favorable because of the complexity of the mechanism of brucellary action, namely, the peculiar intracellular position of the organism and the concomitant phenomena of bacterial allergy. It is hoped that further knowledge of antibiotic action may help in the solution of these problems.

COMPLEMENTARY THERAPY

Complications of brucellosis such as abscesses, arthritis, and ascites may be benefited by direct injection of sulfathiazole associated with urea. Penicillin has been used successfully whenever complications due to bacterial sensitivity to that drug occur. The consequences of neutropenia in brucellosis are appreciable as seen by the facility with which ordinarily insignificant local infections become severe enough to warrant surgical handling. We find it necessary to extract all infected teeth, remove infected tonsils, and even to resort to resection of the gall bladder after confirmation of persistent infection, whether brucellary or from another cause. As long as a secondary abscess persists there is always the possibility that the pathogenic bacteria or saprophytes may provoke serious complications such as spondylitis, myositis, suppurated arthritis, and osteomyelitis.

In addition to changes in the white count, many patients show a reduced number of red cells, requiring blood transfusion in certain cases; occasionally we have administered liver extract and ferrous salts to anemic patients. We have administered vitamins, preferably thiamin, especially in cases with high and persistent fevers; calcium salts have been given when needed. We cannot include in this chapter those aspects of symptomatic treatment which depend upon widely varied circumstances. We shall give data only on one relatively frequent complication which requires special treatment.

In the gluteal region, at the level of the sacroiliac joint, there is often present a myalgia of such intensity as to prevent the patient from moving. The psychic effect of the myalgia is such that fear of pain on movement keeps him in bed for weeks or even months. Contractures and muscular atrophy complicate this condition. Carrillo (1944) described the technic followed in our clinic for the treatment of this complication. Five to 10 c.c. of procaine are injected into the painful site at a convenient depth. When the trouble is not articular, the patient experiences immediate relief. When he discovers that he can move without excessive pain, he acquires confidence, his appetite improves, and his mental state changes. The treatment is repeated 3 to 4 times at 48-hour intervals. Usually the patient recovers his ability to move within a few days.

One of the most dangerous complications is that which results from hypersplenism leading to severe hemolytic anemia, agranulocytosis, or thrombocytopenic purpura. Splenectomy may be required in such circumstances.

References

Bang, B.: 1897. Etiology of Epizootic Abortion, J. Comp. Path. Ther. **10**: 125-149.

Bruce, D.: 1887. Practitioner **39**: 161.

Buddingh, G. J., and Womack, F. C.: 1941. Observation on the Infection of Chick Embryos With Bacterium Tularense, Brucella and Pasteurella Pestis, J. Exper. Med. **74**: 213.

Calder, R. M., Steen, Ch., and Baker, L.: 1939. Blood Studies in Brucellosis, J. A. M. A. **112**: 1893.

Carrillo, C. C.: 1944. Memoria del IV Congreso Nacional de la Brucellosis, Morelia, Mexico, Edit. Inst. Invest. Cient. Universidad de Nuevo Leon, pp. 313.

Castañeda, M. Ruiz: 1942. Brucellosis. Monograph series of Revista Medicina, Mexico.

Castañeda, M. Ruiz: 1942. Selective Agglutination. A Possible Substitute for the Absorptive Test in the Classification of Brucella, Salmonella or Their Antisera, J. Immunol. **43**: 203.

Castañeda, M. Ruiz: 1947. Studies on the Pathogenesis of Brucellosis, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **64**: 298.

Castañeda, M. Ruiz, and Carrillo, C. C.: 1941. Treatment of Brucellosis With Brucella Antigens, Am. J. Trop. Med. **21**: 185.

Castañeda, M. Ruiz, Tovar Mancera, R., and Velez, R.: 1942. Studies on Brucellosis in Mexico. Comparative Study of Various Diagnostic Tests and Classification of the Isolated Bacteria, J. Infect. Dis. **70**: 97.

Castañeda, M. Ruiz, and Guerrero, G. I.: 1946. Studies on the Leucocytic Picture in Brucellosis, J. Infect. Dis. **78**: 43.

Costero, I.: 1945. Lecture, Institute of Cardiology, Mexico (unpublished).

Eisele, C. W., and McCullough, N. B.: 1947. Combined Streptomycin and Sulfadiazin Treatment in Brucellosis, J. A. M. A. **135**: 1053.

Evans, A. C.: 1918. Further Studies on Bacterium Abortus and Related Bacteria. II. A Comparison of Bacterium Abortus With Bacterium Bronchisepticus and With the Organism Which Causes Malta Fever, J. Infect. Dis. **22**: 580-593.

Evans, A. C.: 1934. Chronic Brucellosis, J. A. M. A. **103**: 665.

Evans, A. C.: 1937. The Distribution of Brucella Melitensis Variety Melitensis in the United States, Pub. Health Rep. **52**: 295.

Evans, A. C., Robinson, F. H., and Baumgartner, L.: 1938. Studies on Chronic Brucellosis. IV. An Evaluation of the Diagnostic Laboratory Tests, Pub. Health Rep. **53**: 1507.

Goodpasture, E. W., and Anderson, K.: 1937. Problem of Infection as Presented by Bacterial Invasion of Chorio-Allantoic Membrane of Chick Embryos, Am. J. Path. **13**: 149.

Harris, Harold J.: 1941. Brucellosis (Undulant Fever): Clinical & Subclinical, New York, Paul B. Hoeber, Inc.

Huddleson, I. F.: 1934. Brucella Infections in Animals and Man, New York, Commonwealth Fund.

Huddleson, I. F., Hardy, A. V., Debono, J. E., and Giltner, W.: 1939. Brucellosis in Man and Animals, London, Oxford, Commonwealth Fund.

Huddleson, I. F., Johnson, H. W., and Hamann, E. E.: 1932. A Study of the Opsonocytophagic Power of the Blood and Allergic Skin Reaction in Brucella Infection and Immunity in Man, Am. J. Pub. Health **23**: 917.

Hughes, M. L.: 1897. Mediterranean, Malta, or Undulant Fever, London, Macmillan and Co.

Hughes: 1897. Quoted from Harris, p. 31.

Loeffler, W.: 1930. Febris undulans Bang des Menschen, Würzb. Abhandl. a. d. Gesamtgeb. d. Med. **26**: 365.

Meyer, K. F.: 1943. Observations on the Pathogenesis of Undulant Fever. Essays in Biology in Honor of Herbert M. Evans, Berkeley, Calif., University of California Press, p. 439.

Morales Otero, P., and Gonzalez, L. M.: 1938. Purified Protein Antigen From Brucella, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **38**: 703.

Munger, M.: 1941. A Study of the Leucocytic Picture in Brucellosis, Michigan State College. Agr. Exp. Station. Tech. Bull. **177**: 35.

Purriel, P., Risso, R., and Espasandin, J.: 1944. Brucelosis. Estudio de esta enfermedad en Uruguay, Editorial Independencia, Montevideo.

Sharp, W. B.: 1934. Pathology of Undulant Fever, Arch. Path. **18**: 72.

Simpson, W. M.: 1940. Brucellosis (Undulant Fever). In Tice: Practice of Medicine, vol. 4, Chap. 24, Hagerstown, Md., W. F. Prior Company, Inc.

Smith, T., and Fabyan, M.: 1912. Ueber die pathogens Wirkung des Bacillus abortus Bang, Zentralbl. f. Bact., Orig. **61**: 549-555.

Spink, W. W., and Hall, W. H.: 1945. The Diagnosis and Treatment of Brucellosis, M. Clin. North America **29**: 343.

Spink, W. W., Hall, W. H., Shaffer, J. M., and Braude, A. I.: 1948. Human Brucellosis. Its Specific Treatment With a Combination of Streptomycin and Sulfadiazine, J. A. M. A. **136**: 383.

Tovar, R.: 1943. Lesiones raras causadas por Brucella Melitensis, Medicina, Mexico **23**: 423.

Traum, J. E.: 1914. Report, Chief, Bureau of Animal Industry, 30.

Wilson, G. S., and Miles, A. A.: 1932. Serological Differentiation of Smooth Strains of Brucella Group, Brit. J. Exper. Path. **13**: 1.

CHAPTER 26

TULAREMIA

LEE FOSHAY

Tularemia is an infectious disease of an extraordinarily large number of natural hosts, readily transmissible to man. Although its greatest prevalence is in the North Temperate Zone, Tovar (1944) verified its existence within the tropics, and it is likely that further search will enlarge its present geographic range.

CAUSATIVE AGENT

Bacterium tularense is a gram-negaitve, nonmotile, unencapsulated, highly polymorphous microorganism with obligate requirements for cystine. The morphologic units described by Hesselbrock and Foshay (1945), ranging from 3 μ to less than 0.3 micron, and comprising globi, globules, bacillary forms, delicate filaments, and minute, filtrable minimal reproductive units, were confirmed by the electron micrographic study of Eigelsbach, Chambers, and Coriell (1946), who measured minute units as small as 90 to 110 millimicrons. Although it exhibits serologic relationships with Brucella, *Bact. tularense* is biologically unrelated to the Brucella or the Pasteurella, but is more closely related to certain members of the Borrelomycetaceae.

VECTORS AND NATURAL HOSTS

The chief mammalian natural hosts are rabbits and hares, all rodents, many carnivores, some marsupials and insectivores, and a few artiodactyls, the rabbits and hares being the chief transmitters to man. Among arthropods the chief hosts and vectors are many ticks, flies, fleas, lice, and mites, with ticks of the genus Dermacentor and flies of the genus Chrysops being the chief vectors to man. The chief avian hosts, and occasional vectors to man, are quail, pheasant, grouse, chicken hawk, and horned owl. Other hosts responsible for rare infections of man, and possibly for maintenance of contamination of natural waters, are certain fish, crustacea, snakes, frogs, and turtles. An extensive list of vertebrate hosts was recently published by Burroughs, Holdenried, Longanecker, and Meyer (1945). Ticks of the genera Haemaphysalis and Dermacentor are chiefly responsible for maintenance of the reservoir of infection among vertebrates. Since these ticks transmit the infection transovarially to succeeding generations, they are both reservoir hosts and vectors. Man-to-man transmission is rare. Most human infections follow contact with infected animals, principally rabbits and hares, or the bites of infected ticks or flies. The proof of infectiousness of extensive natural waters by Karpoff and Antonoff (1936) in Russia, by Hüseyin (1937) and Öz (1938) in Turkey, and by Jellison (1942) and Parker (1943) and their associates in northwestern United States prompts continued search for water-borne infections.

PATHOLOGY

The organs most frequently affected are the skin and conjunctivae, regional and remotely located lymph nodes, lungs, spleen, liver, and the large serous membranes. The fundamental lesion is necrosis, at first coagulative, later often liquefactive. The surfaces and cut sections of organs usually show few to numerous grayish-white focal necroses. Liquefaction necrosis is frequent in lymph nodes. The lungs may be normal, or may show solitary or few large discrete nodules, numerous miliary focal necroses, or solitary, multiple, or confluent areas of bronchopneumonia, or combinations of these lesions. Pneumonias may be caused by mixed infections. The heart seldom shows gross lesions. Pericarditis, pleuritis, and peritonitis occur, usually with effusion. Thrombophlebitis, enteritis, meningitis, and encephalitis have been observed, also stomatitis, mastitis, and focal lesions in the kidneys and suprarenal glands.

Microscopic lesions soon exhibit subacuteness or chronicity. Early lesions show chiefly necrosis of tissues and exudates, often with extensive karyorrhexis; older lesions become granulomatous with little or no necrosis. The fundamental cellular reaction is reticuloendothelial-monocyte-epithelioid. The exudate of uncomplicated tularemic pneumonia is typically mononuclear, and may be composed entirely of macrophages. The comprehensive monograph by Lillie, Francis, and Parker (1937) should be consulted for detailed studies.

CLINICAL SYMPTOMS

The distinguishing features of the four clinical types described by Francis (1927), and the type frequencies determined by the writer for 1,443 cases are as follows:

Ulceroglandular, with primary lesions and regional buboes. This is the commonest type, with a frequency of 84 per cent.

Oculoglandular, with conjunctival primary lesions and regional buboes. The type frequency was 4 per cent.

Glandular, with buboes but without any primary lesion. The type frequency was 2 per cent.

Typhoidal, with neither primary lesions nor buboes. The type frequency was 10 per cent. This type differs notably in that its pneumonia frequency is three times greater, and its fatality rate is four times greater than those of the combined bubonic types.

The incubation period is usually from 2 to 5 days, but may vary from less than 24 hours to 13 days. Prodromal symptoms are rare. The onset is characteristically sudden, with chills or chilly sensations, fever, sweats, aching bodily pains, and sometimes nausea and vomiting. Colicky abdominal pain and diarrhea may occur at the onset. Headache and mental dullness occur frequently. Severe infections usually produce delirium, stupor, and a semicomatose state.

Subsequent to the abrupt, prostrating onset, most patients develop chancrelike primary lesions and regional buboes. Primary lesions usually develop at contaminated areas before buboes become apparent. Either is usually apparent within 2 days after onset, and either or both may be present at the onset. Primary lesions begin as painful, necrotizing papules which enlarge, ulcerate, and become indolent ulcers with raised edges, vertical walls, and ragged necrotic floors. Most occur on the fingers, hands, or arms but they may arise on the skin elsewhere or on the mucosa of the oral, nasal, and pharyngeal cavities. A characteristic feature is the development of a primary lesion and rapid enlargement of regional lymph nodes without intervening lymphangitis. Regional nodes always enlarge first. Further lymphatic extension may engender remote bubo formation, even in contralateral nodes without corresponding primary lesions. Small, multiple dermal lymphangitic nodules, resembling those of sporotrichosis, appear on the hands and arms in about 7 per cent of cases.

Fever is always present, usually to 39° or 40° C. (102.2° to 104° F.). There is often an initial rise, a remission, and a secondary rise to the initial level. The initial rise usually lasts from 2 to 5 days, the remission from 1 to 3 days, and the secondary rise from 1 to 2 weeks, followed by a gradual decline to normal. In the absence of regional localizations the febrile period usually lasts from 2 to 4 weeks. If pneumonia is present, high fever may persist for 4 to 6 weeks. Fever may accompany repeated suppuration of buboes or persisting infection in serous cavities for weeks, and even for months. The fever is, typically, daily remittent with wide fluctuations, but in the severest forms it becomes nonremittent at a high level.

Cough is a frequent early symptom, usually accompanied by bronchitic râles. Unless pneumonia develops, it usually disappears before the third week.

Although the studies by Blackford (1935a, 1935b, 1941) and his associates showed that about 90 per cent of patients develop roentgenologic evidence of bronchopulmonic changes, the pneumonia frequency is about 18 per cent; hence the majority of early bronchopulmonic lesions do not develop into pneumonic areas. Bronchopneumonia may occur in any lobe, may be solitary or multiple, and with or without pleurisy that may be dry or with effusion, but most develop from the hilar regions. By extension or confluence they may present the physical signs of lobar pneumonia. Bronchopneumonia is an inconstant but an integral part of the general disease, primarily hematogenous in origin. Early consolidations frequently fail to produce clinical signs.

The high frequency of pneumonia in the typhoidal type has suggested the possibility of a primary pneumonic type in which initial infection occurs by inhalation. Stuart and Pullen's (1945) review favors this view, but the summarized evidence is unconvincing. The existence of a bacteriemia during the initial phase, first demonstrated by Francis (1927), has been repeatedly verified by animal inoculations and cultures of blood and, indirectly, by most pathologic findings, as Foshay (1937) observed. Although some laboratory workers acquired tularemic pneumonia after infected animals sneezed or coughed into their faces, others who were similarly exposed and infected did not develop pneumonia. The presence of *Bact. tularense* in the sputum of patients with pneumonia has been confirmed frequently, but not one human infection ascribable to this source has been recorded although many hundreds of nonimmunes have been subjected to this kind of exposure. The experience of the author with a considerable number of scientific workers who were exposed to infected aerosols or dust clouds containing strains of maximal virulence was that, although a number acquired tularemia, the incidence of tularemic pneumonia was notably lower than that usually observed in the bubonic clinical types. Tularemia has not yet exhibited a primary pulmonic type, with air-borne transmission from person to person, analogous to the pneumonic form of plague.

A variable and nonpathognomonic exanthem occurs in about 20 per cent of cases, usually during the second or third week. The various eruptions are described and illustrated by Hitch and Smith (1938). Typical erythema nodosum occurs infrequently.

Weakness, loss of weight, recurring chills, sweats, and sensation of prostration are characteristic of the acute phase. After the fourth week profound fatigue is often the outstanding complaint. The gravest **prognostic sign** is the association of constant delirium or stupor with a nonremittent high fever, often but not always indicative of the onset of septicemia. Additional findings confirmatory of septicemia are progressive enlargements of the liver and spleen, deepening jaundice, progressing involvements of the lungs, brain, and meninges, with deepening coma.

The duration of disease varies from 2 weeks to 15 months or longer, but is usually about 4 months. The most frequent causes of prolonged illness are successively suppurating buboes, persisting or migratory pneumonic lesions and their sequelae, and persisting infection of the pleural or peritoneal cavities. Suppurative adenitis occurs in more than half of all cases with buboes, usually during the second month and thereafter. Buboes that have disappeared may suddenly reappear as late as 2 or 3 years after apparently complete recovery. Many of these liquefy rapidly.

Cases that are mild throughout the entire course are seldom seen, but in many the symptoms that recur with the secondary rise in temperature are milder than those of the usually stormy onset. These patients may be bedridden for only a few days and become ambulatory soon thereafter.

The **prognosis** for survival is good in the absence of pneumonia, less favorable if pneumonia is present, and grave if septicemia supervenes. Patients with pre-existing coronary or rheumatic heart disease are notably poor risks. Most deaths occur between the eleventh and eighteenth days of disease; usually from septicemia, less frequently from severe intoxication or heart failure. The case fatality rate is about 6 or 7 per cent.

Relapses or recrudescences occur infrequently, from 8 months to 2 years after onset. Although usually solitary and of short duration, infrequent examples of repeated relapses throughout 1 to 2 years have been observed.

Recovery from attack confers a permanent immunity. Inapparent or subclinical tularemia is rare, and apparently limited to scientists who have either handled strains of low virulence or who have been protected by prophylactic vaccination. Francis (1936) noted that repeated exposures may induce trivial local reinfections in recovered persons.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Although 90 per cent of human tularemia, representing the bubonic types, can usually be diagnosed from epidemiologic and clinical findings, the deceptive typhoidal type often presents great difficulties. Laboratory tests, if properly applied and interpreted, give extremely reliable confirmation.

Serum Agglutination Test.—The macroscopic agglutination test is the standard and preferred procedure. Slide tests to demonstrate serum agglutinins may be used as presumptive tests but they are inadequate to resolve the commonest diagnostic difficulties which require estimation of titers.

Serum agglutinins never appear before the eighth day of disease; they usually appear during the second week, and rise rapidly to high titers in the third week. Infrequently their appearance may be delayed until the third week and, rarely, until the fourth week. Third-week titers are seldom below 1:640. All patients develop agglutinins unless death occurs prior to the end of the second week, and even then most will reveal postmortem titers. Agglutinins acquired by infection usually persist for the life of the patient, the titer falling gradually. Ascending titers from zero during the first week to high levels during the third or fourth weeks are wholly convincing. Titers that remain at about the same moderate level, in the absence of characteristic clinical findings, occur typically in recovered, immune individuals. Ransmeier and Ewing (1941) recently presented a critique of the agglutination test.

Reciprocal cross agglutination with *Brucella* may occur, especially whenever the homologous titer is high. Since the homologous titer is almost always the higher one, cross agglutination seldom causes diagnostic difficulties. This is also true for the much less frequently observed falsely positive Weil-Felix reaction. Since agglutinins usually persist for many years, this test can never be used to indicate recovery.

Intradermal Tests.—Intracutaneous injection of 0.05 c.c. of a dilute formalin-killed suspension, the test dose containing about 6,000 cells, provokes a specific papulo-erythematous reaction after 48 hours. Positive reactions occur in about 93 per cent of cases early in the disease, before serum agglutinins appear. Intradermal tests may stimulate agglutinin formation, as noted by Friedewald and Hunt (1939), but the inconstant and low titers so produced are easily distinguishable from agglutinin curves caused by infection. Immune persons usually give positive reactions for many years after recovery.

Cultures.—Cultures of blood or exudates on glucose or glycerol cystine blood agar are sometimes successful. Isolation is more reliable after inoculation of source materials into mice or guinea pigs, followed by heart blood or splenic pulp cultures at time of animal death. The danger of self-infection from handling infected animals is great; it is less, but still significant, from handling virulent cultures.

Smears.—It is useless to attempt confirmation by examination of stained smears since it is practically impossible to distinguish bacteria from minute karyorrhectic fragments or other granules.

Blood Counts.—There are no characteristic blood findings. Leucocytes vary from 5,000 to 20,000 per cubic millimeter, with usually a polynucleosis, but the counts have no diagnostic value. A mild to moderate degree of secondary anemia is an inconstant finding.

TREATMENT

General Management.—Complete rest in bed is necessary during the initial phase when fever is high, prostration is severe, and drenching sweats are frequent. Since man-to-man transmission is extremely rare, strict isolation of the patient is unnecessary. Rubber gloves should be worn to dress ulcerated primary lesions, to incise and dress suppurating buboes, and to perform paracenteses. Otherwise there is no need for precautionary measures beyond ordinary care and cleanliness on the part of sickroom attendants.

The diet should be liquid during the severe phase, high in carbohydrate and fruit juices; semisolid to light as the fever declines; with resumption of full diet as soon as appetite returns. Chair privilege and ambulatory status may be granted as soon as temperature and pulse rate are normal, and as strength returns.

Specific Therapy.—Serum therapy, according to reports by Foshay (1940, 1946), induces significant lowering of mortality and highly significant reductions in morbidity. Although effective in terminating prolonged illness not in excess of 10 months, the most significant favorable effects follow treatment before the end of the second week of disease, and especially in patients with the typhoidal clinical type.

In the absence of pneumonia 30 c.c. of the serum, administered intravenously or intramuscularly, is usually sufficient. If pneumonia is present, the initial dose should be 60 c.c., and more may be necessary. Reduction in fever and re-establishment of mental clarity are the best guides for quantity, frequency, and duration of treatment.

Chemotherapy.—Streptomycin is a valuable and effective therapeutic agent. Early reports by Foshay and Pasternack (1946), Abel (1946), Foshay (1946), and Howe, Coriell, Bookwalter, and Ellingson (1946) indicate that it induces prompt and highly significant reductions in morbidity, that it is more effective than serum therapy for the desperately ill patient, but that streptomycin, like serum, may exert little effect in the late stages of prolonged illnesses.

A total dosage of 2 Gm. of streptomycin base is sufficient. This may be given, after solution in physiologic saline, either by intramuscular injection every 3 hours or by continuous hypodermoclysis, at a rate of 0.25 Gm. every 12 hours for 2 days, followed by 0.25 Gm. daily for 4 additional days.

Penicillin is ineffective.* No sulfonamide, nor any other drug, has been demonstrated to modify significantly the natural course of the disease.

Indications for Therapy.—Early treatment during the severe initial phase will effect the greatest shortening of disease and the lowest mortality. The presence of pneumonia, pleurisy, peritonitis, or other visceral lesions are indications for prompt treatment. The intervention of sustained high fever associated with delirium and stupor is an urgent indication. Continued disease into or beyond the second month, usually caused by lymphatic, pulmonary, serosal, or other regional localizations, should be treated to avoid serious sequelae and to prevent the establishment of prolonged illness and disability.

---

*Editor's note (O. F.): Recently aureomycin, Chloromycetin, Neomycin, and terramycin have been recommended.

Patients who have weathered the severe phase and who have reached the fourth week of disease without pneumonia or other visceral lesions, with little or no fever, and without evidence of progressive bubo formation will seldom need special treatment.

Ocular lesions are best treated locally with continuous wet dressings of warm magnesium sulfate-saline solution, with frequent lavage of the conjunctival sac with warm boric acid-saline solution.

Primary lesions should not be incised unless secondary pyogenic infection requires drainage. Dressings wet with saturated solution of magnesium sulfate are sufficient. Suppurating buboes require drainage as soon as the nodes become liquefied.

PROPHYLAXIS

Prophylactic studies by Foshay (1942) and associates indicate that prophylactic vaccination prevents many infections and markedly ameliorates the disease if it is acquired subsequently. Until better vaccines become available, personal prophylaxis must depend upon avoidance of sources of infection, the use of rubber gloves to handle infected animals or carcasses, and the removal of ticks before attachment occurs. Whenever the disease is fly-borne, personal prophylaxis is difficult. The chlorination studies of Foote (1943) and associates indicate that standard chlorination procedures should give effective community prophylaxis against water-borne tularemia.

References

Abel, O., Jr.: 1946. The Use of Streptomycin in Tularemia, J. Missouri M. A. **43:** 167-169.

Archer, V. W., Blackford, S. D., and Wissler, J. E.: 1935b. Pulmonary Manifestations in Human Tularemia: A Roentgenologic Study Based on Thirty-Four Unselected Cases, J. A. M. A. **104:** 895-898.

Blackford, S. D.: 1935a. Pulmonary Manifestations in Human Tularemia: A Clinical Study Based on Thirty-Five Unselected Cases, J. A. M. A. **104:** 891-895.

Blackford, S. D., and Casey, C. J.: 1941. Pleuropulmonary Tularemia, Arch. Int. Med. **67:** 43-71.

Burroughs, A. L., Holdenried, R., Longanecker, D. S., and Meyer, K. F.: 1945. A Field Study of Latent Tularemia in Rodents With a List of All Known Naturally Infected Vertebrates, J. Infect. Dis. **76:** 115-119.

Eigelsbach, H. E., Chambers, L. A., and Coriell, L. L.: 1946. Electron Microscopy of Bacterium Tularense, J. Bact. **51:** 22 (abstract).

Foote, H. B., Jellison, W. L., Steinhaus, E. A., and Kohls, G. M.: 1943. Effect of Chlorination on Pasteurella Tularensis in Aqueous Suspension, J. Am. Water Works A. **35:** 902-910.

Foshay, Lee: 1937. Cause of Death in Tularemia, Arch. Int. Med. **60:** 22-38.

Foshay, Lee: 1940. Tularemia: A Summary of Certain Aspects of the Disease Including Methods for Early Diagnosis and the Results of Serum Treatment in 600 Patients, Medicine **19:** 1-83.

Foshay, Lee: 1946. A Comparative Study of the Treatment of Tularemia With Immune Serum, Hyperimmune Serum and Streptomycin, Am. J. Med. **1:** 180-188.

Foshay, Lee, and Hesselbrock, W.: 1945. Some Observations on the Filtrability of Bacterium Tularense, J. Bact. **49:** 233-236.

Foshay, Lee, Hesselbrock, W., Wittenberg, H. J., and Rodenberg, A. H.: 1942. Vaccine Prophylaxis Against Tularemia in Man, Am. J. Pub. Health **32:** 1131-1145.

Foshay, Lee, and Pasternack, A. B.: 1946. Streptomycin Treatment of Tularemia, J. A. M. A. **130:** 393-398.

Francis, E.: 1927. Tularemia, Atlantic M. J. 30: 337-344.

Francis, E.: 1936. Immunity in Tularemia, Tr. A. Am. Physicians **51**: 394-398.

Friedewald, W. F., and Hunt, G. A.: 1939. The Diagnosis of Tularemia, Am. J. M. Sc. **197**: 493-503.

Hesselbrock, W., and Foshay, Lee: 1945. The Morphology of Bacterium Tularense, J. Bact. **49**: 209-231.

Hitch, J. M., and Smith, D. C.: 1938. Cutaneous Manifestations of Tularemia, Arch. Dermat. & Syph. **38**: 859-876.

Howe, C. S., Coriell, L. L., Bookwalter, H. L., and Ellingson, H.: 1946. Streptomycin Treatment in Tularemia, J. A. M. A. **132**: 195-200.

Hüseyin, Kemal: 1937. How Do Human Beings in Our Country Contract Tularemia? Rev. Thérap. Clin. et Exper. **7**: 109-112.

Jellison, W. L., Kohls, G. M., Butler, W. J., and Weaver, J. A.: 1942. Epizootic Tularemia in the Beaver, Castor Canadensis, and the Contamination of Stream Water With Pasteurella Tularensis, Am. J. Hyg. **36**: 168-182.

Karpoff, S. P., and Antonoff, N. I.: 1936. The Spread of Tularemia Through Water as a New Factor in Its Epidemiology, J. Bact. **32**: 243-258.

Lillie, R. D., Francis, E., and Parker, R. R.: 1937. The Pathology of Tularemia, Nat. Inst. of Health Bull. No. 167, Washington, D. C.

Öz, Talat V.: 1938. Study of Tularemia in Thrace During the Summer of 1937, Zentralbl. f. Bakt. (Abt. 2) **129**: 102 (abstract).

Parker, R. R., Steinhaus, E. A., and Kohls, G. M.: 1943. Tularemia in Beavers and Muskrats and the Contamination of Natural Water and Mud With Pasteurella Tularensis in the Northwestern United States, J. Bact. **45**: 56-57 (abstract).

Ransmeier, J. C., and Ewing, C. L.: 1941. The Agglutination Reaction in Tularemia, J. Infect. Dis. **69**: 193-205.

Stuart, B. M., and Pullen, R. L.: 1945. Tularemic Pneumonia: Review of American Literature and Report of 15 Additional Cases, Am. J. M. Sc. **210**: 223-236.

Tovar, R. M.: 1944. Tularemia en Mexico. I, Medicina **24**: 343-351.

CHAPTER 27

PLAGUE

ATILIO MACCHIAVELLO

(TRANSLATED BY ANTHONY DONOVAN)

GENERAL DESCRIPTION

Plague is an acute, febrile, transmissible disease, infectious and contagious, the specific etiologic agent of which is *Pasteurella pestis.* It is essentially a zoönosis of rodents, and under certain circumstances it is transmitted to man, usually by the bites of fleas infected from rodents in the septicemic phase of acute plague. The fleas abandon their natural hosts when these die of the infection, and seek blood meals on secondary hosts, one of which may be man.

In exceptional circumstances, secondary pulmonary localizations may occur in bubonic or septicemic plague, and may give rise to air-borne contagion from man to man, thus provoking cases of primary plague pneumonia without the involvement of rodents or fleas in the transmission cycle.

Human plague (oriental plague, or plague "of the Orient," the "Black Death," or simply "the plague") continues to be one of the most important problems of tropical medicine. On the American continent the disease manifests certain specific characteristics which will be emphasized in the course of the descriptions below.

HISTORY

It is not possible to state with exactitude the first time that plague occurred among mankind, although there are documents as ancient as the Bible (I Samuel, Chapters 5 and 6) wherein the disease is mentioned as "tumors in the secret parts." Dionysius the Hunchback, Dioscorides (first century A.D.), Poseidonius (150-135 B.C.), Rufus of Ephesus (*circa* 100 A.D.), and Oribase (325-400 A.D.) among others, described or cited data referring to plague, especially in Libya, Egypt, and Syria. The epidemics known as the plague of Athens, described by Thucydides (430 B.C.), the Antonine plague, and the plague of Carthage, all antedating the Christian era, possibly were not plague. However, the great pandemic which began in 542 A.D., generally called the plague of Justinian—*glandularia* or *pestis inguinaria*—was undoubtedly plague; it began in Pelusium, extended to Constantinople, Italy, Gaul, Germany, and has been described by Gregory of Tours in Provence, by Procopius of Caesarea in Constantinople, and by Evagrius in Antioch. After 50 years of epidemic manifestations, it receded from Europe and Asia Minor, having wiped out half the population of the Roman Empire.

In the fourteenth century, from 1346 to 1353, there occurred the most terrible of all pandemics of plague. Beginning in Asia Minor, it advanced to eastern Europe, where it took a toll of 13 million victims (Hecker, 1832). It then extended along the Mediterranean Sea, and progressively invaded all the countries of Europe except the arctic zones of Greenland and Iceland, with death of a quarter of the population of the continent. Pope

Clement VI estimated the total number of deaths caused by the Black Death to have been 42,386,486. Pneumonic plague was mentioned for the first time (Guy de Chauliac, 1363, and others), as well as quarantine measures which were initiated in Reggio, in 1374, and in Venice, in 1422, and were adopted by other countries.

Between the fifteenth and eighteenth centuries epidemic outbreaks of plague continued, notably those of Milan, 1630; London, 1665, in which year 60,000 of the 450,000 inhabitants of the English capital died of the disease; Marseilles, 1720, where the epidemic was so intense as to cause a thousand deaths daily, and a total of 40,000; Messina, 1743, where 43,000 perished; and Russia, 1770, with a mortality of 80,000. In the nineteenth century, plague retreated toward the Orient, and in passing caused the epidemics of Constantinople in 1803 and 1813, with final outbreaks in Benghazi, Tripoli, in 1858, and in Russia, 1878-1879.

The disease was now thought to have been dislodged definitely from Europe when, in 1894, the city of Canton was invaded by the infection from Chinese Yünnan. In 1896 plague appeared in Bombay, transported from Hong Kong or Pakhoi, or, according to Hirsch, directly from Guhrwal and Kumaun. Rapidly the epidemic extended to various points in India* by land and water routes, and soon to the entire world, obtaining a foothold in South America in 1899, and in North America one year later.

Curiously enough, plague entered South America by the inland river port of Asunción, Paraguay, in April, 1899 (Agote and Medina, 1901). From here the infection was transmitted to the Argentine ports of Rosario, Formosa, Corrientes, and Buenos Aires (September, 1899, to January, 1900). The second incursion of plague on the continent was at Santos, Brazil, in 1899 (Andrade, 1899), and the third at Montevideo, Uruguay, in 1900 (Fernández Espiro, 1916).

On the west coast of South America, plague first occurred in 1903, at Callao, Peru (Artola, 1903), and soon after in Iquique, Chile (Macchiavello, 1932). In 1904, Antofagasta, Chile, was infected directly from India by means of a shipment of jute sacks (Ferrer, 1905). In 1908 the chief plague episode in South America began in Guayaquil, Ecuador (Suárez, 1927). From there the infection jumped to LaGuayra, Venezuela (Acosta and Razetti, 1909). Bolivia was infected much later, in 1921-1922, but the source of the infection is not clear (Veintemillas, 1936).

In the United States the disease was reported in San Francisco on March 6, 1900 (Kinyoun, 1901). Soon murine plague spread inland and gave rise to the disease in wild rodents, and this type of infection, suspected by Blue in 1903 and confirmed by Wherry (1908), has been maintained and has been spreading eastward up to the present time.

Cases of plague were reported from Mexico, in 1902, at Ensenada de Todos los Santos and Mazatlán (Licéaga, 1903). With the exception of Haiti, Colombia, and Central America (but including British Honduras and Panama), all of the countries of the American continent have suffered plague infection to a greater or lesser extent (Moll and O'Leary, 1940-1942).

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

Nearly every important country of the world was invaded during the course of the last pandemic, which originated in Yünnan, China. At present the principal endemic foci of plague in rodents are: murine—India, China, Manchuria, Mongolia, Burma, Dutch East

---

*It was during this epidemic that the most notable contributions to the knowledge of plague were made, by Kitasato (1894), Yersin (1894), Hankin and Leumann (1897), Childe (1898), and the scientific commissions sent by European governments, especially the Austrian (Albrecht, Ghon, Müller, and Poeck), the German (Gaffky, Pfeiffer, Stricker, and Dieudonné), the British (Trasser, Wright, and Ruffer), and the Russian (Wyssokowitz, and Zabolotny), commissions which worked until 1900-1901. Later the Government of India, the Royal Society of London, and the Lister Institute organized the famous Indian Plague Research Commission whose brilliant investigations, published in reports embodied in special numbers of the *Journal of Hygiene* ("Plague" numbers and "Reports"), extended the work of the earlier investigators, and although it is true that little was added to the fundamental observations reported by the latter, the Plague Commission developed scientific methods and technics of investigation which are classical. Among therapeutic and preventive measures, anti-plague serum was originated by Yersin, Calmette, and Borrel (1895), plague vaccine was developed and used on a large scale by Haffkine (1897).

Indies, East Africa, Madagascar, West Africa, and in South America, Brazil, Bolivia, Peru, and Ecuador; sylvatic—United States, principally the western states, China, Mongolia, Transcaucasia, South Africa, and Argentina.

ETIOLOGIC AGENT

Pasteurella pestis, discovered by Yersin in 1894, is a member of the group causing hemorrhagic septicemias. Taxonomically it belongs to the genus Pasteurella, and may be characterized as a heterotrophic microorganism, 1 to 2 microns long, a coccobacillus, but with accentuated pleomorphism, nonmotile, nonspore-forming, rarely capsulated, often showing a pseudo-capsule or envelope (Rowland, 1914); aerobic and a facultative anaerobe; easily stained with the aniline dyes, with a characteristic bipolar staining; gram-negative. Under favorable conditions the morphology is variable, giving rise to the so-called involution forms. It grows easily on ordinary media. It does not liquefy gelatin; broth is not made turbid, but a film is formed, with stalactite formations (Haffkine), which break on the slightest movement. Milk is not coagulated, nor is litmus milk altered, or at the most a slight acidity develops. On solid media the colonies appear like dewdrops in 48 hours, and soon form a basal extension on which secondary colonies grow. Usually only rough colonies are described, whether virulent or not; but some authors also describe smooth colonies (Pirie, 1927; Rachinski, 1930; Otten, 1934; Pokrovskaya, 1934; Macchiavello, 1941). Excessive envelope formation causes a viscous growth. Indol and H_2S formation, and Voges-Proskauer test are negative. Rhamnose and glycerine are occasionally fermented, the latter only by certain strains called "glycerine-postive" or "alpha" by Kurauchi (1930), and "continental" by Berlin and Borzenkov (1940), in contrast with the other "glycerine-negative," "beta," or "oceanic" strains. Optimum temperature is between 25° and 30° C. Growth takes place between 0° and 43° C.

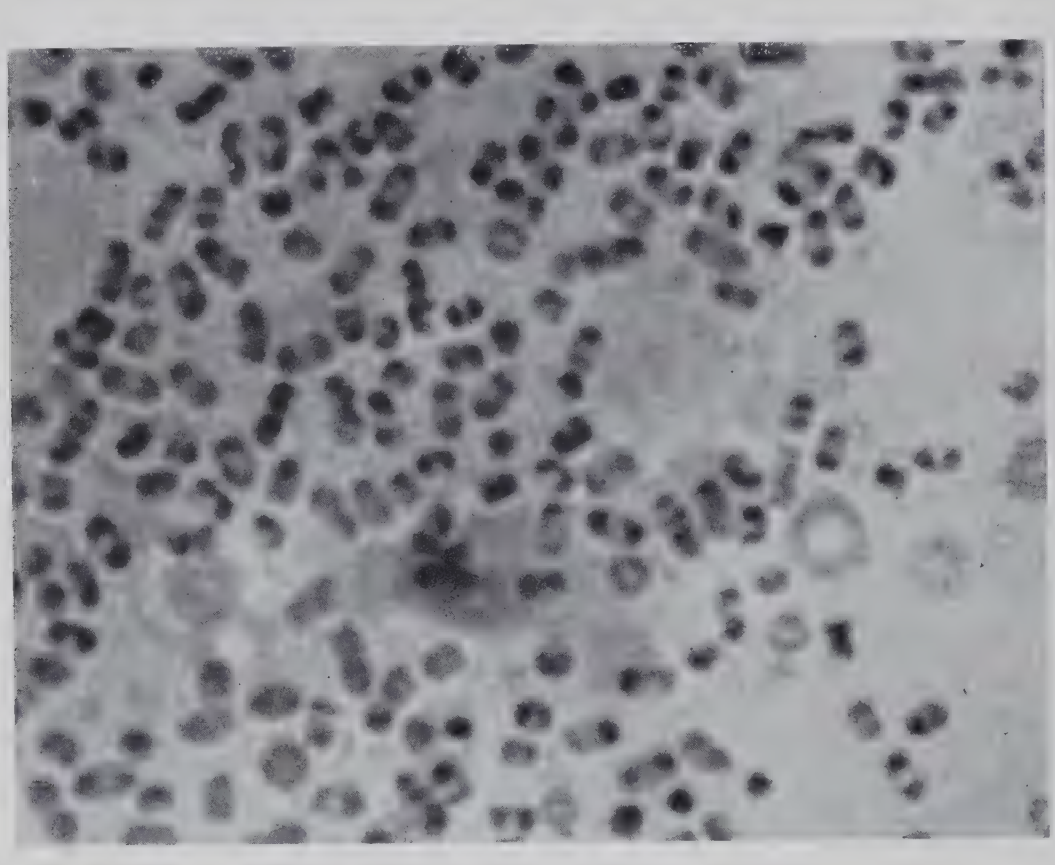


Fig. 148.—*Pasteurella pestis* (×3,000, approx.).

Past. pestis constitutes a single serologic group. Different strains vary in virulence, morphology, colony structure, etc. It has slight resistance to the effects of external agents, such as sunlight and desiccation, except when protected by organic substances. It deteriorates rapidly under tropical conditions (Macchiavello and Paracompos, 1941); it maintains its viability and virulence in the cold (Kasanski, 1898; Francis, 1943). Experimentally, it produces typical disease in laboratory rodents; differentiation is aided by its property of penetrating intact or slightly abraded skin and mucous membranes (Albrecht and Ghon, 1898-1900).

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Apart from the etiologic agent the epidemiology of plague is influenced by the hosts and vectors of the infection, by the surrounding conditions, and by the sources and means of contagion and spread of the disease.

Hosts

Plague is primarily a disease of rodents, these rodents acting as hosts. Taxonomically they belong to the families Muridae (rats and mice), Sciuridae (squirrels and marmots), Leporidae (hares and rabbits), Jaculidae (gerbilles), and Cavididae (guinea pigs). Ecologically rodents may be classified as domestic, especially those of the subfamily Murinae, genus Mus and Rattus; wild, those most closely related to plague being Sciuridae of the genera Citellus and Marmota; and hibernating rodents, the more important of these being the tarabagan *(Arctomys bobac)* of Mongolia and Transbaikalia, the suslik *(Citellus citellus)* of Russia, the gerbille *(Taterona lobengulae)* of South Africa, and the ground squirrel *(Citellus beecheyi)* of the United States. In Asia the Sciuridae are the ancestral reservoirs of plague; in Africa and America, these have been infected by domestic rodents. Among the latter, those most actively involved in plague are rats especially *Rattus norvegicus (Mus decumamus)*, *Rattus rattus rattus*, and *R. r. alexandrinus*, which are differentiated by their habits (sewer rats, roof rats, and palm rats, respectively), and appearance. Plague is infrequent in animals other than rodents. There is mention of its occurrence in monkeys, Insectivora, Carnivora (especially cats, ferrets, and the mongoose), in camels, didelphis, etc.

Vectors

The principal vector of plague infection, and practically the only one, is the flea (Ogata, 1897; Simond, 1898; Gauthier and Raybaud, 1903), an arthropod of the class Insecta, order Siphonaptera, the principal ones being Pulicidae, subfamily Pulicinae, with the genera Ctenocephalides, Hoplopsyllus, Juxtapulex, Pulex, and Xenopsylla (fleas of the dog and cat, of squirrels, of pigs, of man, and of rats, respectively); Dolichopsyllidae, subfamilies Ctenophthalminae (genus Ctenophthalmus) and Dolichopsyllinae (genera Ceratophyllus, Diamanus, Nosopsyllus, Oropsylla, Orchopeas, Opisodasys, Opisocrostis, and Thrassis), the genus Nosopsyllus *(faciatus, londiniensis*, etc.) being fleas of rats in cold or temperate climates, and the others principally infesting sylvatic rodents, marmots, squirrels, and others; Malacopsyllidae, of the genus Rhopallopsyllus which includes the fleas of domestic and wild guinea pigs; Tungidae, principally the genus Echidnophaga *(E. gallinacea*, the chicken flea); and Hystrichopsyllidae, among which the Leptopsyllinae, *L. musculi (segnis)*, the domestic mouse flea, is of interest to us. Besides the fleas of wild rodents, the fleas which are important in the transmission of plague are the Nosopsylla, in temperate climates, and in hot climates the Xenopsylla, especially *X. cheopis* and, secondarily, *X. astia* and *X. braziliensis.*

Ecologic Conditions

Ecology plays a preponderating role in the development, maintenance, extension, and decline of plague, with regard to surrounding physical conditions, social conditions, the external macroclimate, or the microclimate of the rat burrows. Physical conditions favorable to plague may be nautical (ports), urban, rural, or sylvatic, the first three with relation to domestic rats; the rural conditions with relation to wild rodents which, although living separate from human habitations, share with rural man the areas cultivated by him or his agricultural or field-dwelling neighbors; the sylvatic, totally independent of man, this explaining the rarity of human plague of sylvatic origin.

Social conditions influence the development of plague through population density, congestion, and use of buildings, the facilities existing for the renewal, maintenance, and increase in rodent populations, etc.

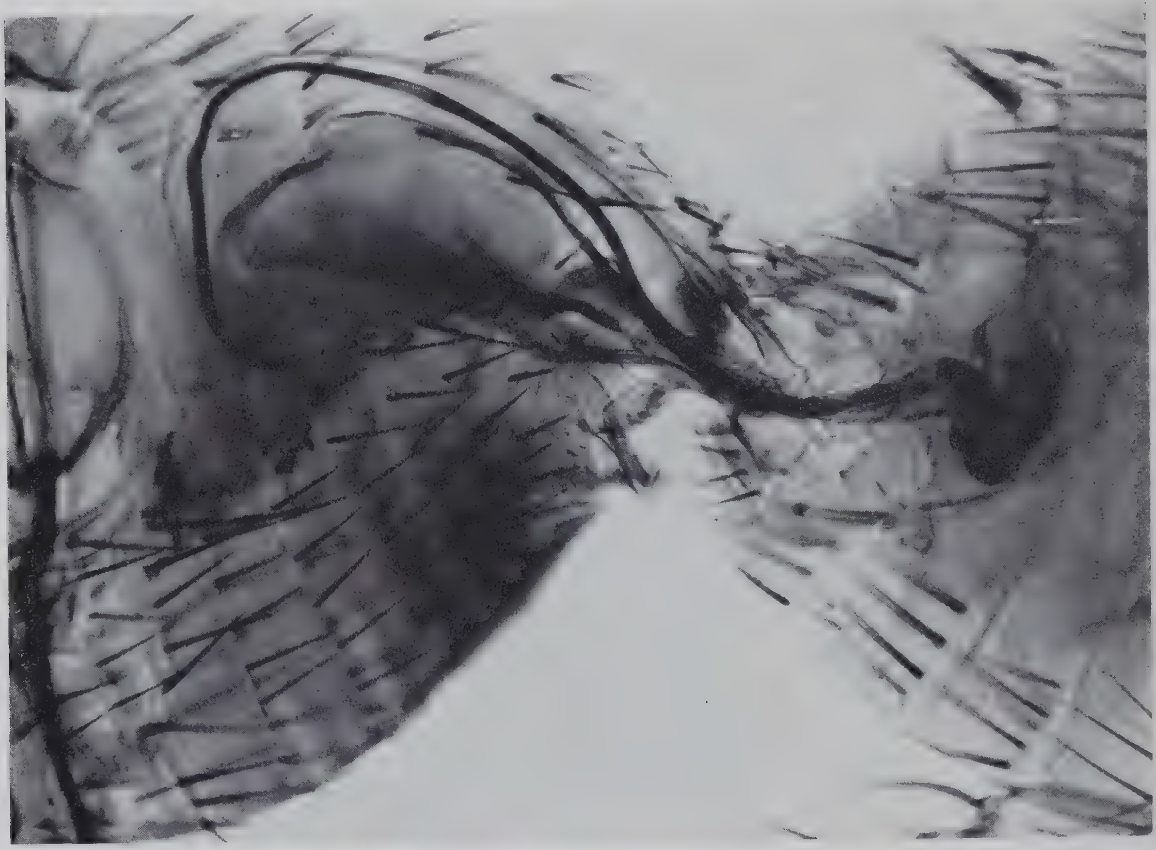


Fig. 149.—*Xenopsylla cheopis* in act of copulation.

External climatic conditions, the *macroclimate,* define the geographic limits of plague, principally through the effects of humidity and temperature on fleas. The incidence of the disease is also influenced by the mechanical action of torrential rains on rats and fleas, when they are dislodged from burrows (Eskey, 1934). Climate also influences incidence of this disease through the effects of cold, and possibly through atmospheric oxygen tension, by effecting the development of the pneumonic forms. Temperature and humidity govern the developmental cycle of the flea, including procreation, evolution from egg to adult, and longevity; they affect the relationship between fleas and hosts, the periodicity and frequency of the infection, the duration of extrinsic incubation, the duration of the proventricular blockage in plague-infected fleas, the hibernation of fleas, and their survival time away from their hosts; they influence, moreover, the initiation, duration, and decline of the so-called "plague seasons," which vary from one locality to another. Different species of fleas require different levels of humidity and temperature to transmit plague. *X. cheopis*, for example, transmits the infection most effectively at temperatures between 15° and 26° C., with humidity from 75 to 95 per cent. *Nasopsyllus fasciatus* and *N. londiniensis* can transmit at lower temperatures, but with decreased activity (Raybaud, 1911; Bacot, 1915; Macchiavello, 1942).

Microclimate refers to the conditions within the rat burrows, which may differ greatly from those of the external air. The progressive occurrence among rodents of the completely subterranean and "silent" epizootics is made possible by the influence of the microclimate (Buxton, 1933; Russell, 1934, Macchiavello, 1941). It also favors the survival of plague-infected fleas in rat burrows for long periods of time—up to 8 months for *X. cheopis*, according to observations of the author in Peru (1945).

Epidemiologic Mechanism

The sources of plague infection are the blood of infected rodents in the septicemic phase of the disease and the sputum of human plague pneumonia cases; the route of transmission is the pulicine vector or air-borne droplets. Other materials of human or animal origin also may be infectious—urine, feces, the skins of wild rodents—but this is exceptional. Regarding the dissemination of plague, it has been observed that the great pandemics originate in the ancestral foci of the disease, whereas epidemics within a country, after the first invasion, originate from other more or less recent outbreaks, and locally there is generally an annual recurrence *in situ*.

It is not known what was the mechanism of plague infection before the Norwegian rat *(R. norvegicus)*, which reached Europe in 1716 (Jorge, 1928), and the black rat *(R. rattus)* (invading that continent with the return of the Crusaders in the twelfth century) had attained the preponderance of today (Hinton, 1918).

The role played by rats in the epidemiology of plague is influenced by several factors, such as the period of procreation, the density of the murine population, the development of immunity or resistance, etc.; but maintenance of plague by chronic infection, by cannibalism among the rats, or by other means is unimportant. A better explanation for the perpetuation of the infection is the continuous passage of plague from rat to rat, in violent outbreaks in months climatically favorable for plague (plague season), and in a more attenuated form during the remainder of the year (Russell, 1934). This explanation, however, is not completely satisfactory nor has it been proved. There is an increasing tendency to attribute to fleas the preponderating role in the maintenance of interseasonal plague (Evseeva and Firsov, 1932; Wassilieff, 1933; George and Webster, 1934; Macchiavello, 1945), just as earlier the importance of the flea in the transmission of the disease was proved.

Plague of fleas is not always transmissible. Blockage of the proventriculus by a plug of *Past. pestis* is necessary before the flea can transmit the disease. Blockage occurs only after a period of extrinsic incubation of the infection, which is shorter in the *X. cheopis*, longer with *N. fasciatus*, and also varies with climatic conditions (Bacot and Martin, 1914; Eskey and Haas, 1940). A "blocked" flea infects the blood which it has ingested from a healthy individual, in its buccal cavity. The blood is regurgitated and thus infects the wound produced by the bite. Climatic conditions which regulate pulicine biology are important in defining the plague season. Carrying over of the infection from one plague season to another depends largely upon whether the epidemic is complete or incomplete (Gill, 1928; Browning-Smith, 1912; Kunhardt, 1912; Strickland, 1933), for repetition of the disease is more apt to occur when a number of susceptible rats have survived among the murine population.

A plague epizootic in a locality may not be accompanied by epidemic manifestations, but these generally occur in variable grades, depending largely upon the species of rats and fleas present. When *R. norvegicus* co-exists with *R. rattus,* there is first an epizootic among the Norwegian rats, then among the latter rodents and, later, human infection (Indian Plague Research Commission). In hot, tropical climates and in cold climates, an epizootic may remain completely subterranean, without producing a single human case, the epizootic being favored by the favorable microclimate of the nests.

When an epizootic is complete, that is to say when it affects all the rodents of a locality, it tends to disappear in a single plague season. When it is incomplete, it tends to perpetuate itself year after year. Perhaps the role of the fleas is important in maintaining interseasonal plague in certain countries, as has already been stated.

Rats play an important role in the transportation of plague to distant parts (''metastasis''), but perhaps fleas are even more important than rats. In the Western Hemisphere, infection along the coast of the South Pacific (Chile and Peru) was transmitted through bales of jute bags from India, carrying infected fleas. This was suspected by Long and Mostajo, 1934, and proved by Macchiavello, 1945. Human epidemics are conditioned entirely by the variables rats, fleas, and climate, to which must be added the degree of contact which rats have with men and the density of the human population. From the practical point of view every human case of plague should be considered as terminal, except cases of plague pneumonia. The intervention of *Pulex irritans* in the transmission of plague from man to man appears unimportant (Petrie and Todd, 1923; Martin, 1913; Macchiavello, 1944), although a few authors consider it relatively important (Wilkinson, 1920; Lethem, 1923; Hirst, 1922; Wu Lien-teh, 1926; Eskey, 1930).

Transmission of plague pneumonia occurs by droplet infection, as in other respiratory infections. Pollitzer (1943) has suggested that the decline in epidemics of primary plague pneumonia is due to the fact that the infection is so grave and the secondary septicemia develops so early that the patients die before they begin to cough and expectorate, thus cutting the chain of contagion.

Sylvatic plague is maintained principally by the involvement of its own vectors, which act in part as reservoirs. On the other hand, the role played by these same animals in maintaining the latent infection during hibernation is also important. In Asia and Russia human infection from wild rodents in most cases takes place by direct contact.

In only three American countries—the United States, Argentina, and Brazil—is there evidence of the extension of plague from domestic to wild rodents, but the definite and independent establishment of the infection in wild rodents has been proved only in the United States. The actual situation with regard to sylvatic plague in North America has been reviewed by Meyer (1942). In 1903, Blue suspected the relationship between a fatal case of plague occurring in Contra Costa County, California, and squirrels which had died in large numbers, between 1903 and 1905, by a plague epizootic proved by Long and Wherry. By catching and exterminating squirrels, which was begun by Long, Wherry (1908) was able to prove plague infection among them. In 1910, under the direction of

McCoy, plague had been found in 402 of 150,000 squirrels examined (0.26 per cent). Studies by this author and by Meyer and Eddie proved the susceptibility to plague of a series of wild rodents which later were found infected in nature. Until 1934, the California ground squirrel *(Citellus beecheyi beecheyi)* was the only rodent recognized as responsible for sylvatic plague. By 1942 Meyer and Eskey had extended the list to 31 rodents as follows: *Citellus beecheyi douglasii, C. b. fisheri, C. armatus, C. beldingi oregonus, C. columbianus columbianus, C. c. nuficandus, C. lateralis chrysodeirus, C. richardsonii elegans, C. r. nevadensis, C. r. richardsonii, C. variegatus grammurus, C. v. utah, C. washingtoni loringi, C. w. washingtoni,* all of these corresponding to six large and nine small species of ground squirrel; red squirrels of the genus Tamiasciurus, *T. douglasii albolimbatus;* flying squirrels of the genus Glaucomys, *G. sabrinus lascivus;* chipmunks of the genus Cynomys, *C. leucurus zuniensis, C. parvidens;* and the marmots *M. flaviventris engelhardti* and *M. f. nosophora.* Together with these Sciuridae, the family Cricetidae, of native wood rats and wood mice, is represented by the genus Neotoma *(N. cinerea occidentalis, N. fuscipes mohavensis, N. lepida intermedia),* and by the genus Peromyscus *(P. truei gilberti, P. truei truei)*; and the family Heteromyidae, by the genus Dipodomys (*D. ordii ordii,* the kangaroo rat). The order Lagomorpha (rabbits and hares) is represented by *Sylvilagus nuttallii nuttallii.*

By inoculation with an emulsion of fleas obtained from rodents, Eskey was able to establish the experimental transmitting capacity of about twenty of the fifty species found on sylvatic rodents. Although it is known that *D. montanus* and *H. anomalus,* parasites of *C. beecheyi,* are capable of transmitting plague, very little is known of their bionomics.

In 1941, plague infection was known in 12 of the western states of the United States, and in the Province of Alberta, Canada. Of the 504 cases of human plague which occurred in the United States between 1900 and 1944, only about 65 were related to sylvatic plague, nearly all of these in California. The true causes of the extension of sylvatic plague into new areas are difficult to determine. Infection by contiguity plays a certain role, and possibly also the transportation of infected fleas by field mice or by certain predatory birds (Jellison, 1939), which are resistant to the disease.

In Argentina, human plague of sylvatic origin is also rare, and it is possible that originally sylvatic or field rodents contracted plague from domestic species. Uriarte (1935, 1936), Savino (1935), De la Barrera (1936, 1939, 1940, 1942), Pardal (1941), Alvarado (1938), Falla (1941) and others have studied the epidemiology of sylvatic plague, calling it at times rural or field plague. According to these studies, rodents found infected up to the present time are: *Graomys griseoflavus griseoflavus, Gr. gr. centralis, Hisperomys murillus cordobensis, Galea musteloides leucoblephara, Microcavia australis, M. a. joannia, Lepus europeaus,* etc. A recent paper of Savino (1944) suggests, nevertheless, the concomitance of plague in rats with epizootics in rodents termed "peri-domestic." Further studies are required to establish the independence of sylvatic plague as a primary entity. Studies are also lacking on the vector capacity of a large number of new species of fleas collected by De la Barrera and classified by Jordan (1939 and 1942); such as, *Hectopsylla gemina, H. cypha, Polygenis platensis cisandinus, Panallius galeanus, Dysmicus barrerai, D. hapalus, D. ixanus, Tiarapsylla argentina, Tiamastus plesius, T. longinasus, Dilostichus octomyos, Eritranus andricus, Ectinorus trionyx, E. disjugis, E. polymerus, E. setosicornis,* etc. Experimentally, sensitivity to plague infection has been proved in a large number of wild rodents, although these have not been found spontaneously infected.

The author (1941) demonstrated that true sylvatic plague does not exist in Brazil. Epizootics, which at times are extensive among sylvatic rodents, *Galea spixi,* rabbits, etc., accompany the infection in field rats, *Cercomys, Oryzomys intermedius,* and mice. The species *Peramys domesticus* and some *Didelphis* species appear to act as intermediaries between domestic and sylvatic plague episodes. The climatic conditions in open fields, especially the extreme dryness of the air, impede the maintenance of a pulicine fauna in sylvatic animals. *X. cheopis,* in the few months of the year in which the climate is favorable, is a temporary parasite of sylvatic rodents, being transported by *Galea* and the other animals already mentioned. Sylvatic plague has not been described in the other South American countries.

PATHOLOGY

In laboratory animals the principal signs of experimental plague are necrosis at the point of inoculation; neighboring lymphadenopathy; gelatinous edema and congestion of the subcutaneous tissues, especially around the aforementioned gland enlargement, showing an intense periadenitis; congestion, hemorrhage, or caseation of the gland; necrotic points in the spleen or liver, accompanied by hypertrophy and cloudy swelling; rarely necrotic points or areas in the lung; pleural effusion; hypertrophy of the heart; congestion, emboli, or hemorrhages in the serosa; septicemia. In many animals the localization of the buboes in spontaneous plague is different from that in experimental plague, and is due to the site of predilection of the fleas (the neck in rats). Both chronic plague and the "inapparent" plague mentioned by McCoy (1910), Morales (1921), Bordas et al. (1922), Williams and Kemmerer (1923), Long (1932), and Macchiavello (1932) have been found by us in South America, although we are not prepared to define their epidemiologic importance. The type called "peste mitigada" by Swellengrebel and Otten (1914) is seen more frequently; this is very similar to that found in rats in certain zones in Peru. We have described a special pathology in laboratory animals inoculated with Brazilian strains of *ingua de frio* (ambulatory plague) (1941).

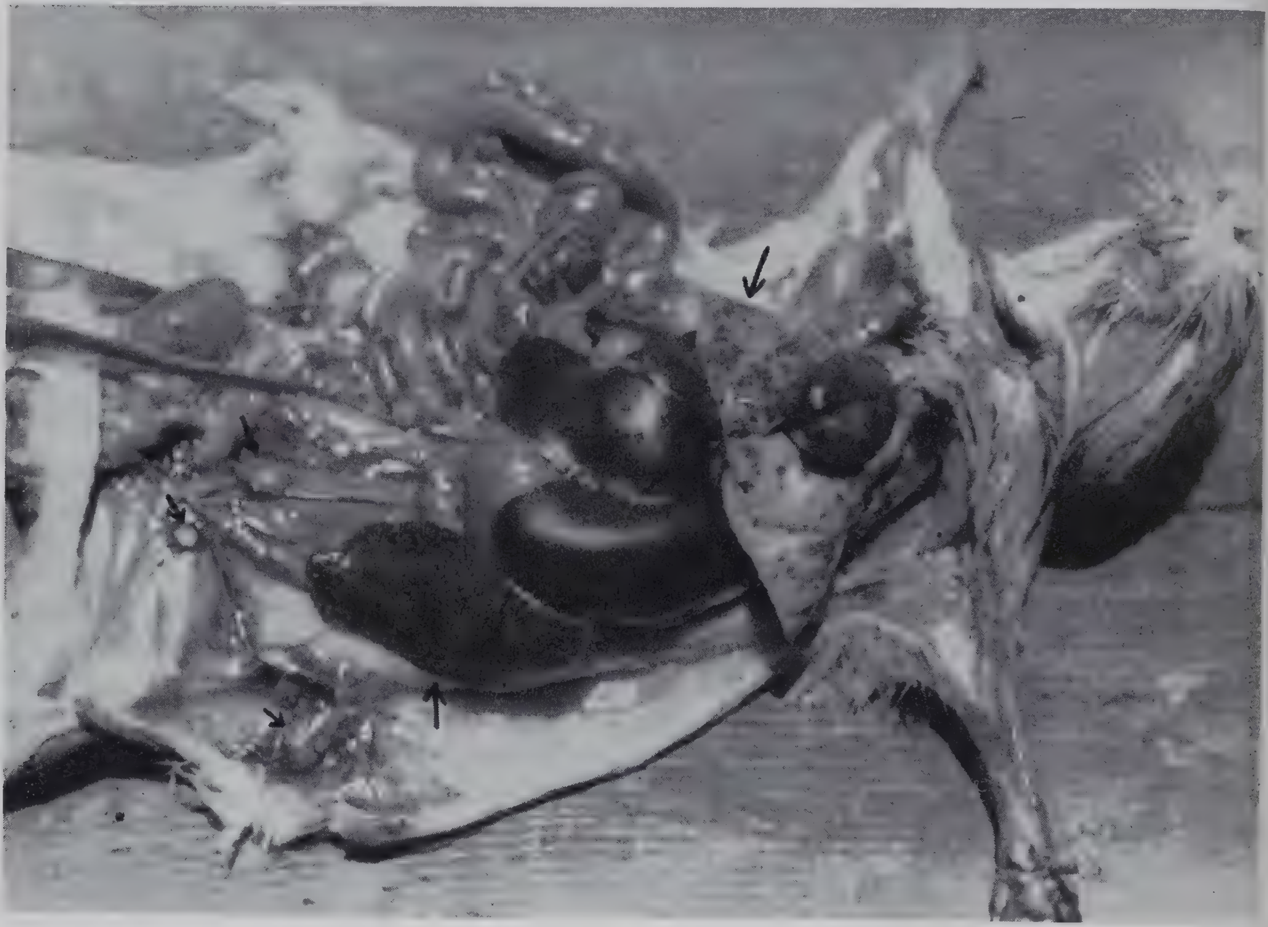


Fig. 150.—Typical plague lesions of lymph glands and spleen in guinea pig inoculated by abdominal scarification. Note also lung lesions, which are seen less frequently.

In human plague the pathologic findings may be summarized as follows:

In bubonic plague: (1) A vesicle indicating the site of the infective bites is rarely observed; (2) congestion, hemorrhage, and edema of the lymphatic glands, especially those which make up the primary bubo, surrounded by edema and periglandular infiltration and by a hemorrhagic exudate due to extravasation of blood; (3) toxic destruction of the vascular and lymphatic endothelium, manifested by blood extravasations and by cutaneous and serosal petechiae; (4) congestion of all the organs, especially the spleen, liver, brain, meninges, and kidneys; (5) dilatation of the right heart, with fatty degeneration of the cardiac muscle; (6) hypertrophy of the spleen.

In secondary plague pneumonia, the lymphatics of the parenchyma are especially involved, while in primary plague pneumonia the process is essentially an alveolitis (Nattan-Larrier and Richard, 1931). At first the pneumonia is lobular; later there is a tendency to lobal involvement. There are congestions of the bronchial mucosa and hypertrophy of the bronchial glands; there is also congestion of the larynx and trachea. An exudate which is hemorrhagic, but which contains little fibrin, fills the alveoli and bronchioles; desquamated cells and enormous numbers of *Past. pestis* are found in this exudate. In the septicemic form, pathologic findings are relatively lacking, except for generalized congestion and splenic hypertrophy.

A detailed study of the physiopathology of experimental plague infection was made by Macchiavello and Urigüen (1944) in guinea pigs, using Ecuadorian strains characterized by their great invasive capacity and slight toxicity. These studies may help in understanding the mechanism of the secondary pneumonic localization in bubonic plague. Primary plague pneumonia has been intensively studied by Wu Lien-teh (1926, 1936).

CLINICAL PICTURE

Clinically there are two types of human plague: with and without buboes. The latter may occur with septicemia or with pulmonary localizations. It is for this reason that three clinical forms of plague are usually described: bubonic, septicemic, and pneumonic.

The relative frequency of the bubonic type predominates, but is variable from one place to another. In India, 70 per cent of the cases are bubonic and the rest septicemic, pneumonic plague being rare. In Chile, in 1903, of 214 human cases of plague, the frequency of type was: bubonic, 70.6 per cent; ambulatory, 9.5 per cent; septicemic, 15.5 per cent; pneumonic, 4.4 per cent. In Brazil, in 1939-1940, of 205 cases the proportions for the same types were: 71.2 per cent, 19 per cent, 9.8 per cent, and 0.0 per cent. In Ecuador, Sáenz Vera (1939) found that, whereas on the coast only 0.5 per cent were pneumonic cases, in the sierra there were approximately 25 per cent.

Bearing in mind that each one of these clinical forms may develop into the other types, it is convenient to define the original clinical pictures with the designation *primary,* and the later additional clinical pictures as *secondary*—definitions justified by their physiopathologic evolution.

Although cutaneous plague and gastrointestinal plague may on occasion appear initially as primary clinical forms, intrinsically they are variations of the bubonic or septicemic types. The so-called cerebral plague, plague meningitis, chronic plague, plague marasmus, *pestis minor,* or *minior,* ambulatory plague, and *pestis major* should not be considered as independent clinical entities.

PRIMARY BUBONIC PLAGUE

Period of Incubation

The period of incubation is from two to five days, with a maximum of ten to twelve days. In cases of accidental inoculation (Pestana and Levi in Oporto, Strickner in Bombay, Evans in Calcutta) the period was from two to three days. In 26 cases which had had only one exposure to infection, the author found an average incubation period of three and a quarter days, including the time the flea delayed in biting the individual. In India, incubation periods of twelve to fifteen hours have been reported.

Prodromal Symptoms

In the great majority of cases the disease has an acute onset without premonitory symptoms. In cases where the invasion is slow, it is difficult to define which symptoms should be catalogued as prodromal, especially if the cardinal sign—the bubo—appears late. If the chill is considered as the initial symptom, the prodromal symptoms may on occasion include general weakness, anorexia, dizziness, nausea, lumbar pain, restlessness, and weakness of the extremities. The primary cutaneous lesions are at times of great importance.

Invasion

Most commonly the invasive period is not only sudden but extremely acute, the disease beginning with a single prolonged intense chill, or with less severe but repeated chills accompanied by trembling or shaking. The initial clinical picture resembles that of any grave infectious disease. After the chill there follow fever, weakness, headache, nausea, vomiting, anxiety, retrosternal constriction, vague aches, backache, conjunctival injection, vertigo, a reeling gait (plague drunkenness), swollen facies, furred tongue, rapid pulse, dyspnea, etc. At times, in a few hours, and usually within a day, the disease is fully developed.

Course

During this period one or more of the following symptoms and physical signs are seen, varying in intensity from the complete absence of one or more to the predominance of a group, giving a special clinical picture. The clinical manifestations vary from one epidemic to another, or in the same outbreak, and even in the same house the cases are subject to great individual variation. The nervous, digestive, respiratory, and lymphatic signs and symptoms are those which contribute most in defining the general aspect and the apparent or real gravity of the cases. The **fever** develops sharply, the body temperature rising to 40° to 41° C. (104° to 105.8° F.) and sometimes higher. The maximum temperature is usually not reached during the first 24 hours but in the afternoon of the second or third day. The fever may run an irregular course, but usually there are daily morning remissions. Between the third and fifth days there may be a considerable drop in temperature, as much as two or three degrees centigrade (Valassopoulo, 1901; Simpson, 1905), followed by a secondary rise which may reach or pass the previous level with a renewed intensity of the symptoms. In one or two days more the fever again diminishes and morning remissions occur. These are each time more accentuated, with the afternoon rise in temperature less every day until in five to eight days a normal temperature is reached, or there continues only a slight hyperthermia. In some cases the temperature remains above normal for ten or more days. Late temperature rises are usually due to complications.

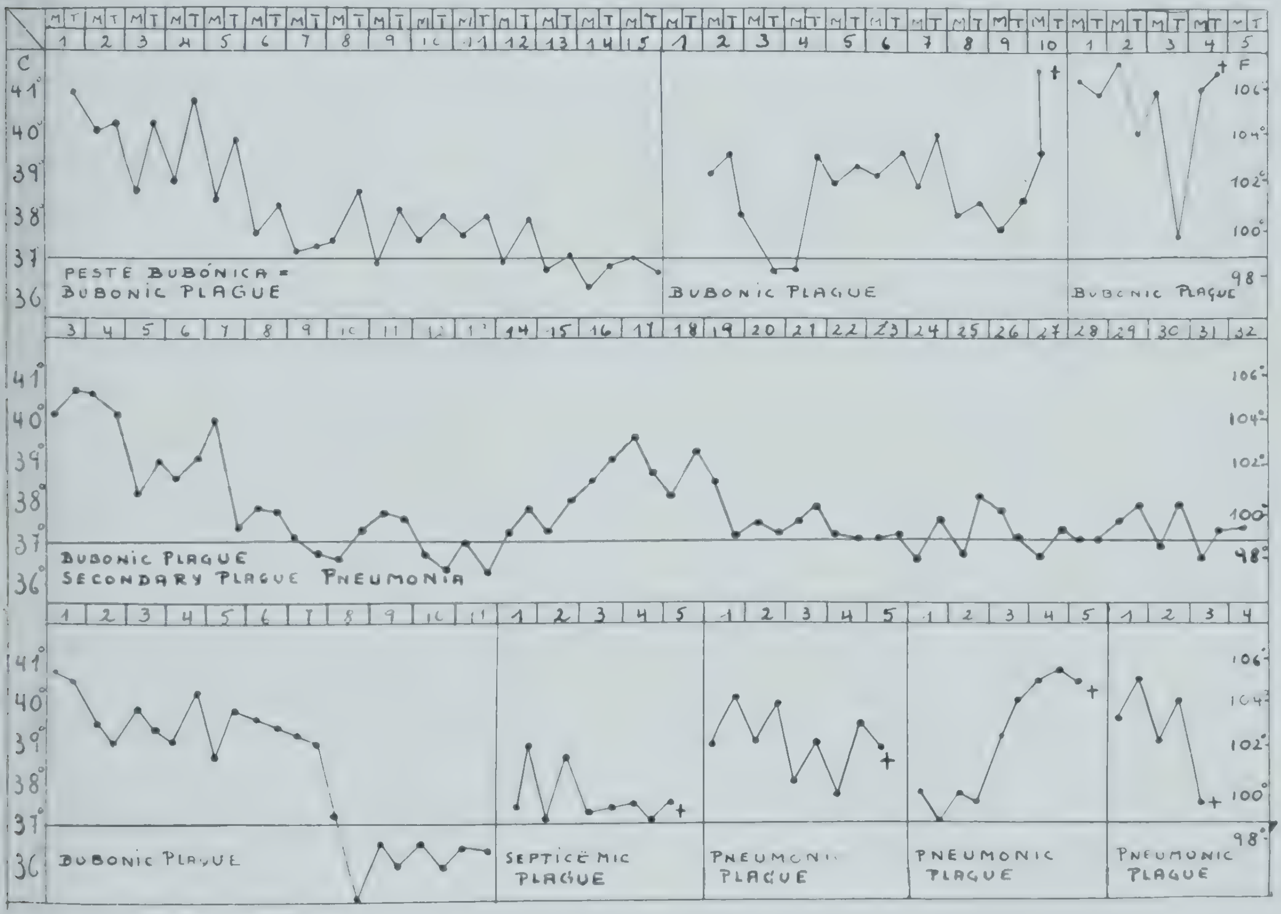


Fig. 151.—Temperature curves in bubonic plague, secondary plague pneumonia, septicemic plague, and pneumonic plague.

The **temperature curve** is not of great prognostic value, although fever is higher in serious cases. A sharp fall in temperature with increase in pulse rate is a bad prognostic sign, and, when due to collapse, results in a rapidly fatal termination. A gradual decline in temperature is a sign of a normal course. Toxic cases may show hypothermia. In benign cases there might be no elevation in temperature during the entire course. With the development of fever, and at times preceding it, there occurs an intense frontal headache, at times almost unbearable, and resembling migraine.

Nausea, followed by vomiting, at first mucous, later bilious, is an early symptom; this may disappear or persist throughout the course of the sickness. Essentially it is of nervous origin, exceptionally only is it due to gastrointestinal causes. The same is possibly true with the **diarrhea** and **constipation.** The diarrhea is fetid, at times dysenteric, and at times choleriform; the latter is more frequent in the septicemic cases. The **tongue** shows a creamy or whitish central coating with the tip and borders clean and red. The coating is dry, with a mother-of-pearl or porcelain-like luster, which finally becomes coffee-colored or yellowish ("sulfur tongue"), and at times even almost black. The lips, gums, and teeth are covered with sordes. The tremulous tongue is protruded with difficulty. Symptoms, real or apparent, and signs related to the digestive apparatus are anorexia or a voracious appetite, thirst, which is often very intense, injection of the fauces, pharynx, and palate; inflamed tonsils, covered with a membrane; dryness and burning of the throat; a fetid yellowish diarrhea.

Respiratory symptoms usually are not notable except in those grave cases in which a developing pulmonary edema causes a marked dyspnea with as high as 30 to 50 respirations per minute. The patient constantly complains of thoracic oppression and constriction, especially retrosternal pain. Cough appears late, and produces only slight sputum which is at first viscous and later purulent, but without blood, which is almost always present in pneumonic cases. Physical examination of the lungs shows congestion and bronchitis. Late in the course of bubonic plague, especially in the less acute cases, a secondary pneumonia may develop, recognizable by the accentuation of the described symptoms, by diminution of vesicular breath sounds, by crepitus, and by aggravation of the general condition. These secondary pulmonary localizations are not as serious as primary plague pneumonia, and many of the patients recover. However, this is very important in the genesis of epidemics of plague pneumonia.

In the **cardiovascular system** the alterations are not intense at the beginning and may even be entirely absent in benign cases. In toxic patients there are precordial oppression, and tachycardia of from 110 to 140 per minute, not always in relation to the degree of fever and the fall in arterial blood pressure. The initial tense pulse soon becomes weaker and more frequent, then dicrotic, then anacrotic with disappearance of the rebound wave, and finally thready, intermittent, and so imperceptible that it cannot be counted. Sudden death due to cardiac failure may occur at any moment in the course of the disease, and sometimes during convalescence. Cardiac sounds are weak but otherwise normal. The septicemia may be detected in the blood, even in benign cases and before the appearance of fever. A polymorphonuclear leucocytosis with neutrophiles predominating is the general rule.

Nervous system symptoms are very important, as they give an indication of the apparent severity of the cases, although those with the most marked nervous signs are not always necessarily fatal. Symptoms of nervous system involvement are rarely lacking in serious cases; but they may be insignificant with relation to the gravity of the lymphatic signs; they vary from one case to another, and during the course of the disease, some being transitory and others continuous.

In the beginning there are depression, vomiting, nausea, headache, a staggering gait, difficulty of speech with stuttering, insomnia, restlessness, and at times a tendency to wander even from one town to another. Later, motor and sensory involvement is the rule, although this is not always grave. The general aspect of the patients depends in large measure upon the degree of nervous involvement. At times they appear semiconscious and mentally confused, answering questions with difficulty, with slow hesitant speech, leaving words and phrases unfinished, and with stuttering. The mental confusion may progress to complete cloudiness, hebetude, and stupor. The patient mutters incoherent phrases in a voice almost inaudible. Delirium, continuous or intermittent, is passive, although crises of excitation may occur. When quiet, patients lie immobile, lethargic, although conscious, with the eyes half closed and fixed, the mouth half open, the relaxed facial musculature giving an expression of apathy or resignation. This appearance may change into that of a profound intoxication of fatal prognosis.

More commonly in the actively sick, the face is congested and swollen; the eyes brilliant, sunken; the conjunctivae injected; the expression anxious, restless, and at times expressing pain or fear. When hallucinatory delirium with excitation occurs, and the expression becomes menacing or terrified, the sick person may go to the extreme of committing suicide or homicide. Patients in this state often flee from their homes or hospitals.

In very severe cases a lethargic or comatose state develops, with a total loss of sensibility; these are signs of impending death. The plague *facies*, therefore, is neither uniform nor constant, and depends in large part on the toxicity of the infectious agent.

Difficulties in the motor system appear early or late and consist of trembling, muscular spasms, convulsions, contractures, and preagonic carphology. In other cases, the *facies* is determined by the degree of muscular relaxation.

Sensory alterations are variable, and include cutaneous hyperesthesia, dulling of the sense of hearing (at times more apparent than real), speech difficulty, alterations in the sense of taste, intense thirst, etc.

Obviously, plague has multiple nervous manifestations. In India and China types with delirium and stupor are the rule. In Africa and especially in South America, these symptoms are lacking in the great majority of cases. The classical descriptions of the Black Death of the Middle Ages are surprising in view of the number of curious nervous symptoms then described, but which are not now seen.

Cutaneous lesions of bubonic plague may occur early or late, with very distinct pathologic significance. Primary cutaneous plague, the lesion of

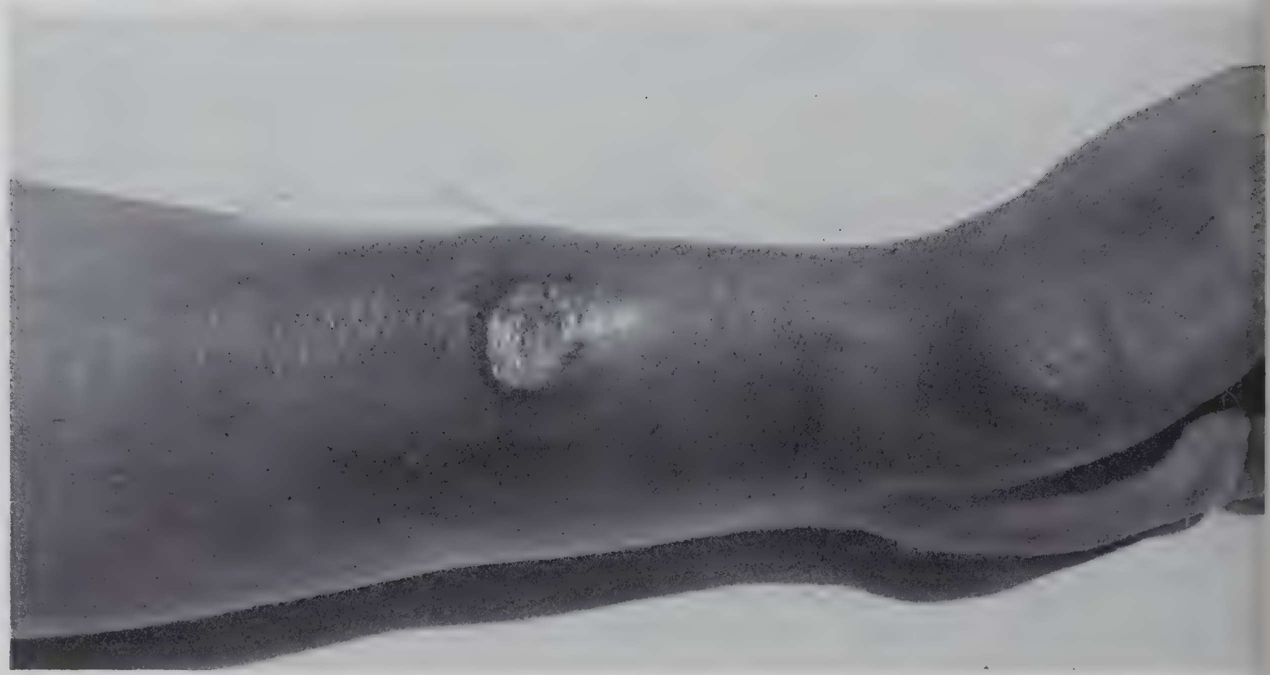


Fig. 152.—Primary cutaneous plague lesion (plague carbuncle).

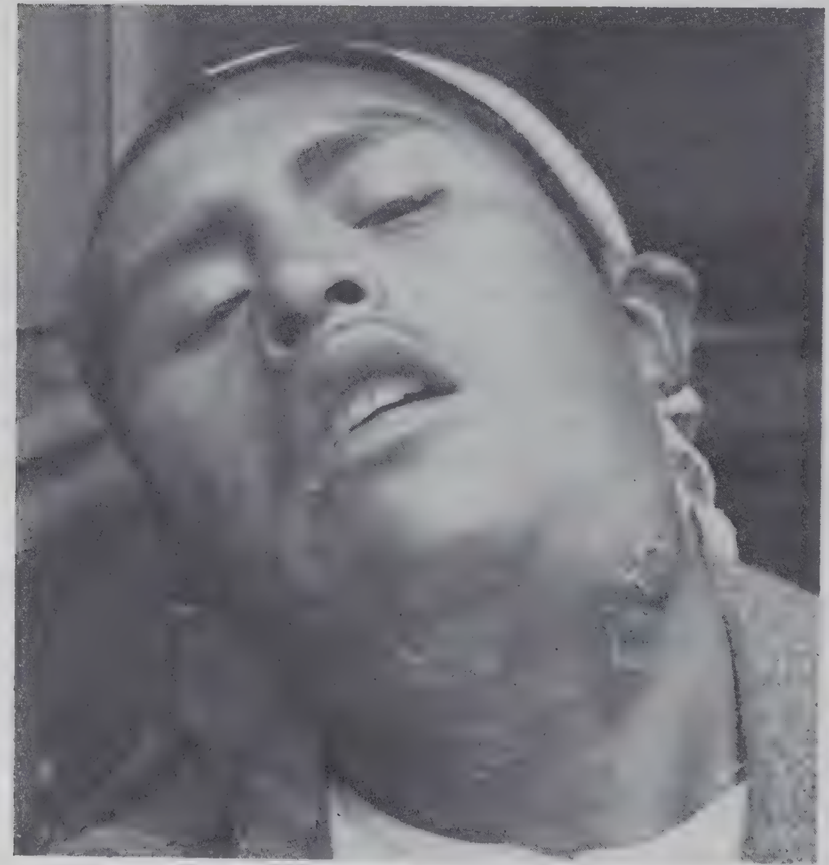


Fig. 153.—Primary plague carbuncle overlying submandibular bubo.

inoculation, was clearly described during the Black Death and the Great Plague of London. At the present time it is less common, being observed usually in relation to benign epidemics (Peru). Many of the classical texts of recent times do not even describe it. It begins as a red macule which becomes papular and spreads, with the center taking on a blackish hue (plague "carbuncle"). In the center a phlyctenule develops, filled at first with clear serum which later becomes hemorrhagic and at times purulent. The vesicle

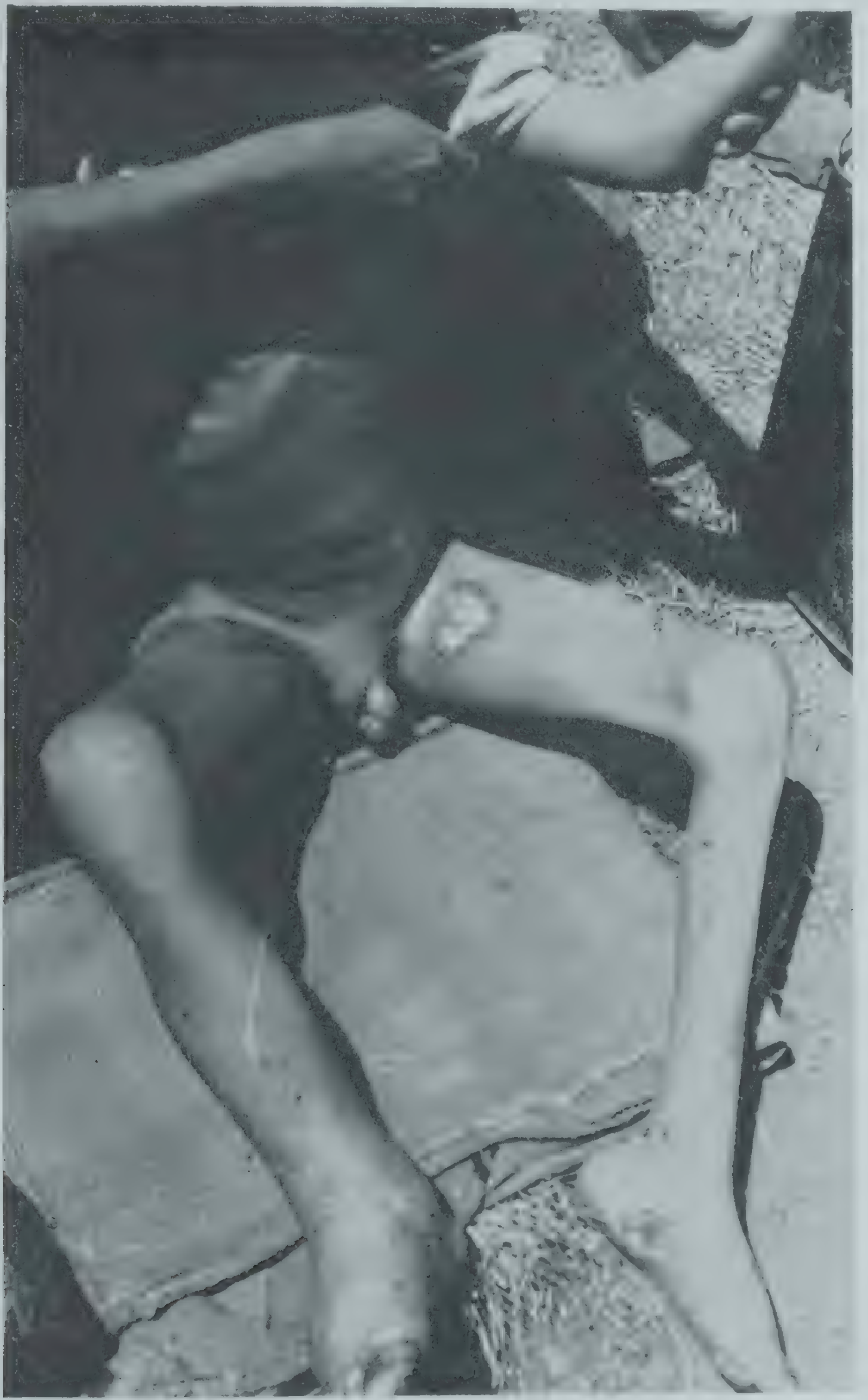


Fig. 154.—Plague cachexia. Typical bubonic case initiated 2 months prior to the photograph. Left femoral bubo suppurated, leaving indolent ulcer. Generalized cutaneous petechiae and ecchymoses. Interference with lymph drainage in right leg.

becomes umbilicated, breaks, and dries, forming a blackish scab; finally, a pustule is formed which drains a watery liquid. The gangrenous center of the ulcer is dark-colored and hard, whereas the borders are raised and clear-cut, violaceous, with surrounding edema.

The primary carbuncle precedes the bubo by one or more days, or is simultaneous with the bubo, and is usually localized near the ankles or wrists. It has been frequently observed in some Peruvian epidemics, though totally absent in others; it has a benign prognostic significance.

In the course of the disease cutaneous manifestations are general (dry and burning skin or, in very toxic cases, a cold and pallid epidermis), or localized, the latter being the more important, although they are seen only in certain epidemics and in certain regions, being notably absent in others. The lesions seen are petechiae, ecchymoses, pustules (varioloid), and gangrene. They have been given the general term "carbuncle." Petechiae of variable size may appear over the buboes or independent of them, especially on the abdomen or extremities. They are dark, similar to the ecchymoses, which distinguishes them from the generalized pustular plague eruptions that at times resemble smallpox (plague variola). More often, dark pustules (carbuncles) appear after the development of the bubo, are not very numerous, and occur in any part of the body and in any period of the disease. These lesions may develop like the primary plague carbuncle, with a tendency to scarring, or they may extend into the subcutaneous tissues and involve a large inflamed area, with necrosis from the central depths to the surface, leaving a leathery, indolent ulcer with firm edges and of varying depth and size. When they exceed the usual size, which is from 2.2 to 5 cm. in diameter, they may expose the aponeuroses, the muscles, and even the bones. These great necrotic cutaneocellular ulcers occur most often in the gluteal and scapular regions. Their prognosis is generally benign.

The late pustular eruption is due to emboli of plague bacilli of low toxicity. The late-developing plague carbuncle is rare in South America, but such is not the case with the so-called "plague smallpox" or "plague variola" which has been reported in Chile (1903) and very frequently in Ecuador.

It is not uncommon to see extensive necrosis of the skin at the sites of the lymphatic glands, accompanied by petechial eruptions, circulatory disturbances (elephantiasis), marasmus, etc., usually with fatal termination.

Of all the symptoms and clinical signs of bubonic plague, the most important are those related to the **bubo,** an indication of involvement of the lymphatic system. In so-called ambulatory plague, the bubo may be the only sign of disease. In the disease *ingua de frio* (cold bubo) of Brazil, which corresponds to this type, we have proved bacteriologically its plague etiology (1941). Epidemics of ambulatory plague have been observed in the northeast of Brazil and in Ecuador. The so-called benign plague, formerly called *pestis minor* or *aura pestilentialis minor* or *minior,* is more frequently seen: this manifests itself by early vague symptoms—slight fever, headache, conjunctival congestion, dizziness, and vertigo—the significance of which is made clear by the appearance of the bubo, although this is not accompanied by much pain nor by the characteristic inflammation. In a week or ten days the bubo is reabsorbed or suppurates, or becomes indurated. A chronic form of benign plague was seen in northeast Brazil (1941); the buboes, whether suppurated or not, or whether softened or woody, showed periodic inflammatory exacerbations which did not interfere with the patients' occupations, although they caused a certain degree of debility and anemia. In *pestis minor* the patient may be ambulatory or may take to his bed for one or two days, rarely longer.

In grave cases the bubo is a notable sign which may usher in the clinical course even before a rise in temperature. Commonly, however, the bubo occurs simultaneously with, or later than, the fever, and it may appear very late. The patient feels a sharp pain in the lymph gland area where the bubo will develop, a pain which may be so intense as to mask the other symptoms. Soon one or more enlarged glands appear which, separated at first, soon fuse into a single mass which makes up the bubo, a mass which grows slowly or rapidly, reaching variable sizes, from the size of an almond to that of an orange, usually about the size of a walnut or a hen's egg. The smaller buboes are usually more painful and serious. Around the bubo there develops an inflammatory zone of varying size; it is hot, hard, reddened, edematous, and painful to the slightest touch. Soft edema and mild inflammation usually accompany the largest buboes. The inflammatory edema reflects the periadenitis and subcutaneous congestion which at times develop into a bloody effusion. This entire clinical picture requires one to five days for development, and usually daily changes in its evolution are noticeable.

The shape of the bubo is oval or round; the surface is irregular. At first more or less free in the subcutaneous tissues, it soon becomes fixed and adherent to the neighboring tissues. The superficial consistency is pasty; deeper it is firmer. Over the bubo the skin is smooth, tense, red, hot, swollen, and does not crease. Rarely in South America, but more often in other countries, there appear over the bubo hemorrhages and phlyctenules, carbuncles, petechiae, processes which occasionally go on to ulceration and gangrene. Deep buboes, and large superficial buboes, are usually accompanied merely by a simple local sensitivity on palpation or pressure. After a variable number of days the inflammatory signs and pain diminish; the bubo softens or indurates, or is reabsorbed, or breaks down and suppurates. When reabsorption takes place, the pathologic process has a sequence inverse to that occurring in its formation, leaving as a residue indurated glandular tissue and pigmentation of the skin. When induration takes place, the entire gland becomes woody, or perhaps only one part or several parts, which alternate with zones which are more or less soft or softening. In cases of suppuration the skin becomes thinned over the gland, which opens spontaneously between the seventh and fifteenth days, draining a granular pus for a variable time, in ordinary cases from 10 to 15 days. In other cases the suppuration may last one or two months and is accompanied by tissue necrosis of varying degree, cases having been described in which the tissue loss is so extensive that cavities are formed in which may be seen vessels, nerves, or bone.

The most important localizations of the buboes are:

1. In the inguinal region, either near the crural arch (inguinal buboes), with the axis directed obliquely toward the middle line and downward, or in any part of Scarpa's triangle (femoral or crural buboes) with the axis vertical. Inguinal buboes may be partially intra-abdominal. The periglandular edema often extends to the abdominal wall, or down the thigh as far as the knee. Even in the benign ambulatory cases it is possible to detect the infected persons by noting the limp corresponding to the extremity in which the bubo is located.

2. Buboes may occur in the iliac region. The diagnosis is difficult when there is no accompanying inguinal bubo; cases have been mistakenly diagnosed as appendicitis and patients subjected to operation (Macchiavello, 1932).

3. Axillary buboes are usually accompanied by an extensive soft edema which advances from the breast as far as the neck and toward the deeper parts, which may interfere with respiration. The patient lies on his back with the arm abducted from the trunk. Many times, involvement of the subpectoral glands favors secondary pneumonic localization (Gaud and Jorge, 1933).

4. Cervical buboes may be retroauricular, submaxillary, supraclavicular, etc. Edema is variable and may be almost absent or very extensive, reaching the face or the thorax, and at times involving the larynx and pharynx. Two types of cervical glands must be distinguished with relation to their origin and prognosis: those which arise from *tonsillar plague* or *plague angina*—very frequent in the sierra of Ecuador (Martinez Vinueza, 1930) among the Indians who kill fleas and lice with their teeth—cases which commonly terminate in pneumonia, and in which the tonsillar inflammation is enormous (de Souza, 1913; Brites, 1922), and those which derive from a cutaneous point of entry; these are evidently more benign.

5. Epitrochlear and popliteal buboes are less frequent, and usually occur in cases with multiple localizations.

Double and symmetrical buboes are a frequent finding. At times they are multiple, located in different places; they may appear simultaneously or one after the other, in neighboring or widely dispersed areas, the former due to lymphatic progression of the infection and the latter to hematogenous spread.

Of the types with multiple localizations, note the syndrome described by Macchiavello (1941), called "multiglandular plague fever." It is characterized by a septic fever curve, attenuated plague bacteriemia, and a secondary septicemia caused by nonvirulent microorganisms. The course is prolonged for a month or more, during which time there appear successively from 4 to 14 or more variously situated large buboes. There are alopecia, cachexia, and slow recuperation with a prolonged convalescence; or death may follow.

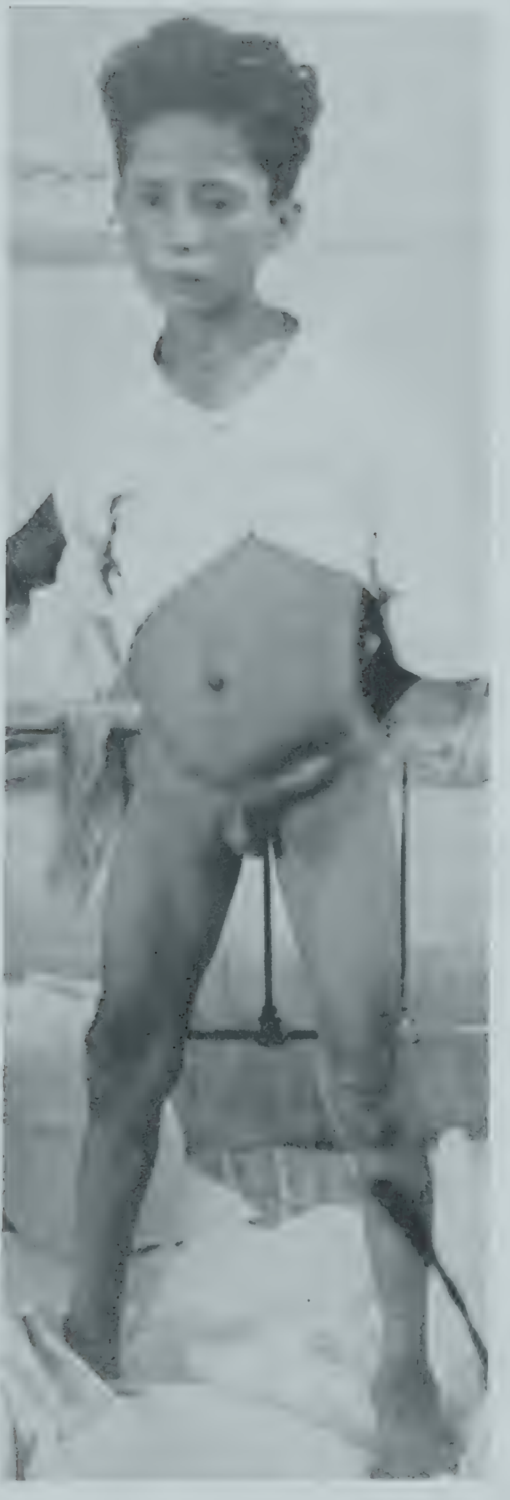


Fig. 155.—Inguinal bubo. Common plague *facies.*

Renal manifestations in the course of bubonic plague are inconspicuous and usually are overlooked. The urine is scanty, highly colored, low in chlorides and urea, with albumin and at times cylindruria and even hematuria. Retention of urine is seen rather frequently, but anuria is exceptional. Elimination of plague bacilli in the urine has been reported.

Evolution and Termination

Bubonic plague usually has a course of 6 to 8 days if it does not terminate fatally. Between the sixth and seventh days the fever may recede, accompanied by sweating, with favorable changes in the *facies* and in the general condition, pulse rate, and psychic manifestations. Buboes which have suppurated heal with scarring between one week and a month. Convalescence does not always accompany improvement in the symptoms, the patients often continuing in a debilitated condition, although afebrile. There is very often a false impression of improvement, but the pulse soon becomes rapid and small, fetid diarrhea begins, and dyspnea, sweating crises, insomnia, apathy, and weakness are all increased. The buboes drain an abundant fetid pus without any tendency to scar formation; the patient finally dies after the twentieth day.

Death nevertheless usually occurs within the first few days. In fulminating cases it may occur in 12 to 24 hours; in grave cases, in from 2 to 3 days. Death usually occurs before the sixth day from toxemia, cardiac failure, cerebral involvement, or secondary causes such as hemorrhage, asphyxia, etc.

A certain number of cases of bubonic plague, in one epidemic or another, develop a secondary plague septicemia. It is possible that all bubonic cases, except the ambulatory, develop a plague septicemia or bacteriemia at one or another period.

Complications

Complications are frequent, and a few, as the pulmonary, are exceptionally important. They include pulmonary edema, bronchitis, pleurisy, pneumothorax, and above all, secondary pneumonia. The origin of this secondary pneumonia is as follows: *Past pestis* reaches the lungs from any lymphatic region; it enters the thoracic duct and passes into the left subclavian vein, giving rise to pulmonary emboli which act as a substratum for focal bronchopneumonic processes, at times becoming confluent, with a secondary plague pneumonia. Usually this process requires a bacterial strain of great invasive power and slight toxigenicity, combined with a lengthy survival time of the patient. It is a fact that the secondary pneumonias appear late in bubonic cases of mild evolution, and under circumstances which facilitate the extension of the infection by way of the lymphatics, such as physical exercise. Macchiavello and Urigüen (1944) have reported experimental proof of the foregoing. Additional complications which have been described include gastrointestinal upsets, abortion with death of the fetus, arthritis, conjunctivitis, corneal ulcer, various hemorrhages, chronic plague, and marasmus. By marasmus we mean a progressive emaciation accompanied by stupor and profound weakness. On the other hand, in chronic plague the patient has apparently mild symptoms, but may die with visceral abscesses in the spleen, liver, or lung, similar to the chronic plague of rodents. The buboes may be complicated by secondary pyogenic infection, abscesses, skin furuncles. A true plague meningitis has been seen on rare occasions (Lafont et al., 1915; Paso, 1925; Godinho, 1903; Sanhueza, 1907; Meyer et al., 1937.

The sequelae of plague are nearly always temporary and related to the nervous system (aphasia, dementia, ataxia), to the skin (gangrene), or to the sense organs (blindness).

An attack of plague is supposed to leave a permanent immunity. Simpson, however (1905), cited several cases of a second attack, with the second not always the more benign, some cases terminating fatally.

PRIMARY PLAGUE SEPTICEMIA

Cases without buboes, and with *Past. pestis* present in the blood stream, are held to be **primary plague septicemias.** They are generally more serious than the bubonic cases. Many cases catalogued as septicemic have deep buboes which are typical but which are not diagnosed during life. In true plague septicemia, the glands are slightly hypertrophied and inflamed as a consequence of the generalized hematogenous infection. However, the blood stream invasion may be so sudden and acute that the sickness may end in death even before 24 hours, with no involvement of the lymphatic system. Most commonly the clinical aspect is the same as that of a grave bubonic case, with numerous nervous symptoms, and no bubo. In very toxic cases, the temperature is moderate, the facies pallid, the general aspect anxious or stuporous, with a thready pulse and intense dyspnea; after a final period of coma with relaxation of the sphincters, carphology, etc., the patient dies. But few cases of typical plague septicemia recover; at times a late bubonic localization occurs secondarily, and all symptoms regress until recovery takes place. The percentage of septicemic cases in Asia is quite high— up to 30 per cent. In America the primary septicemic form is exceptional, and at most includes less than 5 per cent of the cases.

So-called **gastrointestinal plague,** which is related to the septicemic form, includes various types. Höjel, in Bombay, described a typhoid form with epigastric pain, abdominal tension, rachialgia, hypertrophy of the liver and spleen, abdominal petechiae, a typhoid state, and involvement of Peyer's patches, without concomitant lesions in the mesenteric glands. Wilm, in 1896, in Hong Kong, described a violent gastrointestinal form accompanied by mesenteric gland involvement, but without external buboes. In Brazil, in 1941, we saw an amarillic form, apt to be confused with yellow fever because of the icterus, the color of the vomitus, and the general symptoms, which were especially violent in the digestive apparatus (hemorrhages, hematemesis, melena, vomiting, and violent diarrhea), with complete absence of buboes.

Similarity to yellow fever can be judged from the fact that often in dealing with these cases, the Brazilian Yellow Fever Service has been mistakenly requested to control yellow fever.

We have recently been able to confirm the existence of benign or ambulatory cases of plague septicemia (Peru), characterized by the absence of buboes, a feeling of intoxication, oneiric delirium, and at times fever which does not last more than one or two days. The usual diagnosis of these patients is ''benign grippe,'' but blood cultures revealed the presence of very attenuated strains of plague bacilli.

PRIMARY PLAGUE PNEUMONIA

Primary plague pneumonia is even more serious than plague septicemia. In epidemics, it spreads from person to person either by direct contact with individuals engaged in the commercial handling of skins of wild rodents in areas where sylvatic plague exists, or from an original case of secondary plague pneumonia in a bubonic case. Transmission occurs from person to person by droplet infection. The evolution may be fulminating, with death in a few hours, or death may occur between the second and fifth day of sickness, the average survival time (Wu Lien-teh, 1936) in the epidemic at Harbin being 1.8 days in 1,128 cases. The clinical aspect depends on the gravity of the infection, but in general the patient does not lose consciousness, even when delirious. Symptoms and signs observed most frequently are fever, which remains high until death, malaise, restlessness, a feeling of retrosternal constriction, cardiac failure, and terminal cyanosis. The pneumonia is indefinite, difficult to auscultate and percuss, and lobular at the beginning, although it may become lobar later. The paucity of physical signs is in contrast to the grave clinical picture even when, in reality, the patient does not appear to be suffering (Wu Lien-teh, 1926). The principal signs are cough, with a scanty, viscous blood-tinged sputum which later becomes more fluid, bright red, and loaded with plague bacilli (Murdock, 1939). The contagiousness of these cases is enormous, after a noninfectious period of 24 to 48 hours (Zabolontny), when the cough has not yet begun. The mortality is practically 100 per cent, so that one doubts the diagnosis in any case in which the patient recovers. The diagnosis in early cases may be suspected when one encounters a patient with an atypical pneumonia and in whom the dyspnea and marked tachycardia, and at times the gravity of the clinical picture, cannot be explained on the basis of insignificant pulmonary signs.

DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis of plague in any of its forms is simple, if the existence of plague in the locality in epidemic or endemic form is known. Nevertheless, every time plague has invaded a country, it has given rise to extensive debate. The initial clinical picture of bubonic plague can be confused with any acute infection. The bubonic forms require differential diagnosis from other glandular diseases, especially those of acute venereal origin. Primary plague septicemia may be suspected but not proved clinically without bacteriologic confirmation. This also applies to plague pneumonia.

Definite diagnosis is usually made by means of the specialized public health services. For those who wish to make their own diagnoses the suggestions we have recently made (1945) concerning the identification of *Past. pestis* and the procedure of Webster, transcribed by Wu Lien-teh et al. (1936), are recommended. In general, definite diagnosis is based on the presence of *Past. pestis* in the suspected material—lymph gland pus, blood, or sputum—which may be detected by direct examination of stained slide, by inoculation into susceptible animals (guinea pigs are most useful), and by culture. A combination of the three methods is preferable.

PROGNOSIS

In India the bubonic form has a mortality rate of 60 to 90 per cent; in America, it can be as low as 15 per cent although usually it is around 35 to 40 per cent. The septicemic form has a mortality rate of 90 to 95 per cent, and the primary pneumonic form, 100 per cent.

TREATMENT

Up to the present time the nonbiological treatment of plague has been ineffective, except for symptomatic measures—rest in bed, cleanliness, purgation, hydrotherapy in cases with hyperpyrexia, antipyretics when there is no cardiac involvement, cardiac tonics, morphine as a sedative, etc. The sulfonamides recommended by Schütze (1939), Carman (1938), Chopra (1941), Villafañe Lastra et al. (1941), Plum (1942), Burga Saavedra (1942), Wagle et al. (1941), Sokhey (1940), Savino and Morales Villazón (1942), Durand (1939), Girard (1941), Wayson and McMahon (1944), etc., both in experimental animal plague as well as in the human disease, and especially sulfathiazole and sulfadiazine, appear to give good results in bubonic and septicemic plague. At the present time sulfadiazine is recommended; we have had even better results, experimentally, with sulfamerazine. A sufficient dosage must be given to maintain a sulfonamide blood level of 15 to 20 mg. per cent during the first 4 or 5 days of the disease. The initial dosage recommended should be equivalent to 4 Gm. (60 gr.) of sulfadiazine, with subsequent doses of 2 Gm. every 4 hours day and night until the fever drops, and thenceforward 0.5 Gm. every 4 hours until the fifteenth day. The author (1946) is of the opinion that the statistics collected in South America on the value of treatment are not very convincing, and believes that in many benign epidemics drugs have been applied so indiscriminately that part of the mortality is due to abuses in treatment.

With regard to the biological treatment of plague, the use of bacteriophage has proved to be ineffective. With regard to the use of hyperimmunized horse serum in plague (antiplague serum) we personally share the point of view of Chosky, that it is useful only when applied early in large doses (100 c.c. intravenously, followed by one or more similar injections at 6-hour intervals if necessary). Serum improves the general condition of the patient and lengthens the average survival time, but usually it does not prevent a fatal outcome except in a small percentage of cases. The serum therapy has proved of no definite value in South America, and at times there is a higher mortality among the plague patients treated with specific serum than in the control cases, and a very high incidence of anaphylactic phenomena similar to serum sickness. We do not advise the use of serum except in grave cases treated before the second day of the disease, excluding the septicemic and violent pneumonic forms, in which we feel that serum is useless.

Penicillin in the treatment of plague has not been extensively studied. This also applies to streptomycin, although Hornibrook (1946) has obtained promising experimental results in plague mice. He also found that streptomycin inhibited the growth of *Past. pestis* in broth in a dilution of 1:160,000. A preparation containing 200,000 units per gram was used. It was tested by Sokhey with excellent results in India (1948).

PROPHYLAXIS AND METHODS OF CONTROL

From the epidemiology and the clinical course of plague it can be concluded that methods of prophylaxis and control should be based on one of the following points: methods against rodents, methods against fleas, and methods relating to human beings, sick or well. In all countries where plague is an important sanitary problem, these methods are under the jurisdiction of official services of public health, and many of them have been incorporated into international conventions (the International Sanitary Convention of Paris, 1926, with the recent modification under the auspices of UNRRA, and the Pan-American Sanitary Code, which include the early agreements of the Washington Convention, 1905).

The methods used against rodents vary considerably, depending upon whether one is dealing with wild or domestic species. Since the living habits of the former are so variable, it is not possible to outline a general plan of action; but trapping, poisoning, shooting, destruction of burrows, fumigation, etc., may be found useful. In certain regions it may be advisable to provide direct means of individual protection, as in the case of persons hunting for skins, and others who for whatever reason must come into direct contact with these rodents.

Antirat procedures include all measures used to make buildings and dwellings rat-proof.

Deratting measures may be applied in any situation where the destruction of rodents is necessary, such as ships, ports, cities, fields, and sylvatic areas. The principal methods of deratting are fumigation (which by certain methods destroys fleas as well), trapping, and poisoning.

Fumigation may be performed with carbon monoxide, ethylene bichloride, sulfur derivatives (sulfurous anhydride) and especially with hydrocyanic acid, which may be made in situ with potassium or sodium cyanide and sulfuric acid, or purchased in a liquid state in steel cylinders, or absorbed in aluminum earths or on special paper discs, or in the form of calcium cyanide.

Eradication also can be accomplished by toxic gases applied to the rat burrows (calcium cyanide) or by the use of flame-throwers, introduced by Donovan and Hopkins in coöperation with Long (1941). Traps of the snap or "guillotine" and wire cage type are used.

Poisoning is carried out with baits attractive to rats: flour, fish, fruits, crackers, liquids, etc. The continual use of the same bait as a vehicle renders it ineffective, since the rats stop eating it in a few days. The poison used preferably is white arsenic in 18 per cent strength. In other places the use of phosphorus has become more popular (Darvault paste, Danysz paste, Schattermann's poison, etc.), barium carbonate, red squill, strychnine, potassium cyanide, thallium sulfate, and gypsum (which acts by hardening in the rat's stomach). We believe that the introduction of sodium fluoroacetate, called "1080" (a rat poison developed by North American investigators), opens a new path in rodent poisoning (Ormsbee, 1945; Johnson, 1945; Kalmbach, 1945).

Methods against fleas include many of those employed against rats, such as flame-throwers in rat burrows and on floors, cyanogen gas in rat burrows, hydrocyanic acid gas on ships, etc. Repellents have also been used, such as kerosene, cresol, and others, all of which are of only temporary effectiveness. The introduction of DDT (Zeidler, 1874; Muller, 1939; Orlando Laboratories, Florida, 1944) has opened a new field in the fight against the vector of plague. Similar new insecticides, such as Gammexane or "666," the gamma isomer of hexachlorocyclohexane, have similar effects (Slade, 1945).

Working in cooperation with the National Anti-Plague Service of Peru, the author has applied to the prevention and control of plague the two most powerful arms which we have at the present time as insecticides and rodenticides, respectively—DDT and "1080" or sodium fluoroacetate. "1080" and DDT may be used advantageously as well in the control of sylvatic plague. Another poison recently introduced, which appears to be effective especially against *R. norvegicus,* is alpha-naphthyl-thiourea (ANTU), a drug which in small doses produces a marked serosal exudation into the thoracic cavity. The repeated application of this poison produces a high degree of tolerance. It acts as a contact poison as well as by ingestion (Richter, 1945). McClosky and Smith have studied the pharmacology of this chemical (1945).

Methods used with relation to human beings vary, dependent upon whether one is dealing with well people or with patients sick with plague. Personal prophylaxis consists in: (1) Avoidance of the infection. (2) Protective vaccination either with suspensions of avirulent living microorganisms (the vaccines of Otten and of Girard) or with vaccines made with killed plague bacilli (especially the Haffkine). This is not the place to discuss the value of these procedures; but if they are used, the recommended dosage must be employed according to the indications. (3) The application of antiplague serum as a preventive. We believe that this last procedure should be reserved exclusively for very special cases, since the reactions caused by the sera, at least those available in South America, are often severe.

Measures to be taken with the patient depend on the clinical form of plague. In primary plague pneumonia the only control method is the strict and early isolation of the sick. In uncomplicated bubonic plague, isolation is not strictly necessary but it is useful in view of the possibility of secondary pneumonic localizations or of gland suppuration or the opening of other cutaneous lesions.

Concurrent and terminal disinfection must be carried out. In the fatal cases, the cadavers must be cremated, or buried in quicklime or some other disinfectant.

Finally, it must be mentioned that in all countries where plague occurs, organizations for the control and prevention of the disease have been created which utilize more or less standard methods, such as the classification and examination of rodents and their ectoparasites, and the inoculation of the viscera of rodents and of emulsions of fleas into laboratory animals to discover murine infection before human cases occur. These services maintain rat-flea indices for the various zones under control, as well as data on plague infection which permit prognostication on the local evolution of the infection. Moreover, quarantine stations and the services of port physicians control the international dissemination of the disease. Cholera, yellow fever, and, above all, plague constitute the most compelling forces for the cooperative development of international sanitary activities.

References

Acosta Ortiz, P., and Razetti, L.: 1909-10. La peste en Venezuela, Actas de la IV Conferencia Sanitaria Internacional, pp. 201-204.

Agote, L., and Medina, A. J.: 1901. La peste bubónica en la República Argentina y el Paraguay, Buenos Aires.

Albrecht, H., and Ghon, A.: 1898, 1900. Informe de la Comisión Austriaca de la Peste. Report of the Austrian Plague Commission. Denkschriften der Kaiserlichen Akademie der Wissenschaften, Pt. I and II, **66:** 1898; Pt. III, **66:** 1900.

Alvarado, C. A.: 1938. La peste rural en Jujuy, An. dep. nac. de Hig., Rep. Argentina **36:** 51.

Andrade, Nuno de: 1899. Brasil-med., Nov. 8, p. 411.

Artola, M. R., Arce, J., and Lavorería, D. E.: 1903. La peste bubónica, Bol. Acad. nac. de med., Lima, Peru **3** (3).

Bacot, A. W.: 1914. A Study of the Bionomics of the Common Rat Fleas and Other Species Associated With Human Habitations, With Special Reference to the Influence of Temperature and Humidity at Various Periods of the Life History of the Insect, J. Hyg. **13:** (Plague supp. III) 447-654.

Bacot, A. W.: 1915. Observations on the Length of Time That Fleas (Ceratophyllus Fasciatus) Carrying Bacillus Pestis in Their Alimentary Canals Are Able to Survive in the Absence of a Host and Retain the Power to Re-infect With Plague, J. Hyg. **14:** (Plague supp. IV) 770-773.

Bacot, A. W.: 1915. Further Notes on the Mechanism of the Transmission of Plague by Fleas, J. Hyg. **14:** (Plague supp. IV) 774-776.

Bacot, A. W., and Martin, C. J.: 1914. Observations on the Mechanism of the Transmission of Plague by Fleas, J. Hyg. **13:** (Plague supp. III) 423-439.

Barrera, J. M. de la: 1936. Peste rural, Rev. d. Inst. bact. **7:** 439-506.

Barrera, J. M. de la: 1939. Contribución al conocimiento de la peste selvática en la Argentina. Caracteres del brote de Mendoza, 1937, Rev. d. Inst. bact. **8:** 423-423-455.

Barrera, J. M. de la: 1940. Estudios sobre peste selvática en Mendoza, Rev. d. Inst. bact. **9:** 565-586.

Barrera, J. M. de la: 1942. El último brote de peste selvática en Mendoza, Rev. d. Inst. Bact. **10:** 390-393.

Bergey, D. H., Breed, R. S., Murray, E. G. D., and Hitchens, A. P.: 1939. Bergey's Manual of Determinative Bacteriology, ed. 5, Baltimore, Williams & Wilkins Co., p. 289.

Berlin, A. L., and Borzenkov, A.: 1940. Fermentative Activity of Mongolian Strains of Plague Bacillus, Vestnik mikr., epidemiol. i parazitol. **17**: 215.

Blackmore, G. J.: 1902. Rats and Plague, Lancet **11**: 984.

Blue, R.: 1903. Quoted by Meyer, K. F.: The Ecology of Plague, Medicine 21: 143-174 (p. 145).

Bordas, Dubief, and Tanon: 1922: Quelques considérations sur la peste et sur les rats, Presse méd. **30**: 831-833.

Brites, G.: 1922. Compt. rend. Soc. de biol. **86**: 1044.

Brooks, R. St. John: 1917. The Influence of Saturation Deficiency and of Temperature on the Course of Epidemic Plague, J. Hyg. **15**: (Plague supp. V) 881-899.

Browning-Smith, S.: 1912. Proc. 2nd All-India Conf., Simla 3: 17.

Burga Saavedra, V.: 1942. Das casos de peste bubónica tratados con sulfatiazol, Actual. méd. peruana **8**: 26-27.

Buxton, P. A.: 1933. Effect of Climatic Conditions Upon Populations of Insects, Tr. Roy Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **26**: 325.

Carman, J.: 1938. Prontosil in the Treatment of Oriental Plague, East African M. J. **14**: 362-366.

Chauliac, Guy de: 1363. La grande chirurgie, Art. des apostémes de la poitrine.

Childe, L. F.: 1898. Brit. M. J. **2**: 858.

Choksy, N. H.: 1908. Brit. M. J. **1**: 1282, Cit. by Simpson, A Treatise on Plague, p. 324, and Indian Plague Commission, J. Hyg. **12**: (Plague supp. II) 329 (1912).

Chopra, N. R., De Monte, J. H., and Chaterji, B. C.: 1941. A Case of Plague Successfully Treated With Sulphapyridine, Indian M. Gaz. **76**: 89-90.

Creel, R. H., and Akin, C. V.: 1928. The Rat. Arguments for Its Elimination and Methods for Its Destruction, Pub. Health Bull. No. 180, Washington, D. C., United States Government Printing Office.

Dieudonné: 1903. Art. Sobre peste. Art. on plague, Kolle & Wassermann Handbook **2**: 475.

Donovan, A., and Hopkins, E. D.: 1941. Flame-thrower, Bol. Ofic. san Panam. **20**: 1007.

Durand, P.: 1939. Action du 693 M.B. (Dagenan) dans l'infection pesteuse, Bull. Soc. path. exot. **32**: 267-271.

Durand, P.: 1939. Dagenan dans le traitement de la peste, Arch. Inst. Pasteur de Tunis **28**: 96-106.

Dürck: 1904. Beiträge zur pathologischen Anatomie der Pest, Ziegl. Beitr. **6**: suppl. Heft.

Eager, J. M.: 1908. The Present Pandemic of Plague, Washington, D. C., United States Government Printing Office, pp. 1-30.

Eskey, C. R.: 1930. Chief Etiological Factors of Plague in Ecuador and the Anti-Plague Campaign, Pub. Health Rep. **45**: 2077-2115.

Eskey, C. R.: 1934. Epidemiological Study of Plague in the Hawaiian Islands, Pub. Health Bull. No. 213.

Eskey, C. R.: 1938. Infection pesteuse chez des ecureuils fouisseurs et des Puces des ecureuils fouisseurs, Bull. Office internat. d'hyg. pub. **12**: 2825.

Eskey, C. R., and Haas, V. H.: 1940. Plague in the Western Part of the United States, Pub. Health Bull. No. 254, pp. 1-83.

Evans, F. C., and Holdenried, R.: 1941. Field Study of Ground Squirrel (Citellus Beecheyi) in Relation to Sylvatic Plague, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **47**: 63.

Evseeva, V. E., and Firsov, I. P.: 1932. Fleas as Carriers of Virus During Winter, Rev. Microbiol., Saratov **11**: 281-283.

Faya, L.: 1941. Nuevo brote de peste en Cañada Grande, Bol. Dep. de Hig., Córdoba **1**: 11-21.

Fernández Espiro, E.: 1916. Historia de la peste bubónica en Montevideo. Primer Congreso de Medicina Nacional, Montevideo **4**: 238.

Ferrer, L.: 1905. Cited in Macchiavello: Historia de la peste en Chile, Rev. d. Inst. bact. **3**: 24-66, 1932.

Francis, E.: 1943. Twenty-year Survival of Virulent Bacillus Pestis Cultures Without Transfer, Pub. Health Rep. **58**: 1379.

Gaffky, Pfeiffer, Stricker, and Dieudonné: 1899. Bericht über die Tätigkeit der sur Erforschung der Pest in Jahre 1897 nach Indien entsandten Komission, Arbieten aus dem Kaiserl. Gesundheitsamte **16**.

Gaud, M., and Jorge, R.: 1933. Bull. Office internat. d'hyg. pub. **25**: 1924.

Gauthier, J., and Raybaud, A.: 1902. Sur le rôle des parasites du rat dans la transmission de la peste, C. R. Hebd. de la Soc. de Biol. **54**: 1497.

Gauthier, J., and Raybaud, A.: 1903. Recherches experimentales sur le rôle des parasites du rat dans la transmission de la peste, Rev. d'hyg., Par. **25:** 426.

George, P., and Webster, W.: 1934. Plague Inquiry in Cumbum Valley, South India, Indian J. M. Research **22:** 77.

Gill, C. A.: 1928. The Genesis of Epidemics, London.

Girard, G.: 1935. Vaccination de l'homme contre la peste au moyen de germes vivants (Virus vac. E. V.), Bull. Acad. de méd., Paris **114:** 15.

Girard, G.: 1941. Tratamiento de la peste experimental y humana por sulfamidados—Treatment of Plague by Sulphonamides, Experimental and Human Bull. Soc. path. Exot. **34:** 37-48.

Girard, G., and Girard, M.: 1939. Remarcable efficacité du corp 693 M.B., p-aminobenzene sulfamydopyrine, dans le traitement de la peste experimental, Bull. Soc. path. Exot. **32:** 480.

Girard, G., and Robic, J.: 1934. Vaccination contre la peste au moyen d'une souche de bacilles de Yersin, vivants, de virulence atténuée, Bull. Acad. de méd., Paris **111:** 939-945.

Girard, G., and Robic, J.: 1935. Considérations sur les possibilités de la vaccination de l'homme contre la peste, Gaz. méd. de France, p. 663.

Godinho: 1903. Peste meningea—Meningeal Plague, Brasil-med. **15:** 303.

Haffkine, W. M.: 1902. Summarized Report of the Bombay Plague, Research Laboratory for 1896-1902, Bombay. (Also: 1897. Brit. M. J. **1:** 424 and **2:** 1864.)

Hamdi: 1904. Ueber die histologischen Veränderungen bei der Pest der Menschen, Ztschr. f. Hyg. **48:** 337.

Hankin, E. H.: 1898. La propagation de la peste, Ann. Inst. Pasteur **12:** 705.

Hankin, E. H.: 1905. On the Epidemiology of Plague, J. Hyg. **5:** 79.

Hankin, E. H., and Leumann, B. H. F.: 1897. Centralbl. f. Bakt. (Abt. I) **22:** 438.

Hata: 1904. Ueber experimentall erzeugte chronische Pest bei unvollständig immünisierten Tieren, Mitt. d. Med. Ges. in Tokio **17:** Ref. Centralbl. f. Bakt. **34.**

Hecker, J. F. C.: 1832. Der Schwarsetod in vierzehnten Jahrhundert. (English translation of B. G. Babington: The Black Death, in Epidemics of the Middle Ages, The Sydenham Society, 1846, London.)

Hinton, M. A. C.: 1918. Rats and Mice as Enemies of Mankind, Brit. Museum (Nat. Hist.) Economic Series No. 8.

Hirsch, A.: 1883. Handbook of Geographical and Historical Pathology. English translation, London, of Handbuch der historisch-geographischen Pathologie, 1881, Stuggart.

Hirst, L. F.: 1922. J. Ceylon Br., Brit. M. A. **19:** 17.

Hirst, L. F.: 1926. Ceylon J. Sci., Section D, **1:** 155.

Hirst, L. F.: 1927. Ibid. **1:** 277.

Höjel: Cited in Simpson: A Treatise on Plague, London, Cambridge University Press, 1905.

Holsendorf, B. E.: 1937. The Rat and Ratproof Construction of Buildings, Pub. Health Rep., supp. No. 131, Washington, D. C., United States Government Printing Office.

Hornibrook, J. W.: 1946. Streptomycin in Experimental Plague, Pub. Health Rep. **61:** 535-538.

Hueppe, F.: 1886. Berl. klin. Wchnschr. **23:** 753, 776, 794.

Jawetz, E., and Meyer, K. F.: 1943. Avirulent Strains of Pasteurella Pestis, J. Infec. Dis. **73:** 124-143.

Jawetz, E., and Meyer, K. F.: 1944. The Behaviour of Virulent and Avirulent P. Pestis in Normal and Immune Experimental Animals, J. Infect. Dis. **74:** 1-13.

Jawetz, E., and Meyer, K. F.: 1944. Studies on Plague Immunity as Plague Immunity in Experimental Animals. I. Protective and Antitoxic Antibodies in the Serum of Actively Immunized Animals, J. Immunol. **49:** 1-14.

Jawetz, E., and Meyer, E. K.: 1944. Studies on Plague Immunity as Plague Immunity in Experimental Animals. II. Some Factors on the Immunity Mechanism in Bubonic Plague, J. Immunol. **49:** 15-30.

Jellison, W. L.: 1939. Sylvatic Plague: Study of Predatory and Scavenger Birds in Relation to Its Epidemiology, Pub. Health Rep. **54:** 792-798.

Jellison, W. L., and Good, N. E.: 1942. Index to the Literature of Siphonaptera of North America, Nat. Inst. of Health Bull. No. 178, Washington, D. C., United States Government Printing Office.

Johnson, M. S.: 1945. Test of 1080 in Rat Control, Supplemental Report, United States Naval Air Station (mimeographed).

Jordan, K.: 1939 and 1940. Cinco nuevos siphonapteros de la República Argentina, Novitates Zoologicae **41:** 292-303, 1939; and Rev. d. Inst. bact. dep. nac. hig., Buenos Aires **9:** 605-622, 1940.

Jordan, K.: 1942. On the Siphonaptera Collected by Dr. J. M. de la Barrera in the Province of Mendoza During 1939, Rev. d. Inst. bact. **10**: 401-460.

Jorge, R.: 1927. Les faunes régionales des rongeurs et des puces dans leur rapport avec la peste, Bull. Office internat. d'hyg. publ. **19**: 1094-1109, 1257-1288.

Jorge, R.: 1928. Rongeurs et puces dans la conservation et transmission de la peste, Paris, Masson et Cie.

Jorge, R.: 1933. Summa epidemiologica de la peste. Epidemies anciennes et modernes, Bull. Office internat. d'hyg. pub. **25**: 425.

Jorge, R.: 1935. La peste Africaine, supp. au Bull. mens. de l'Office internat. d'hyg. pub. **27** (9).

Kasanski, M. W.: 1898. Die einwirkung der Winterhälte auf die Pest und Diphterien bacillen, Centralbl. Bakt., Abt. I, **23**: 25.

Kalmbach, E. R.: 1945. "Ten-Eighty," a War-Produced Rodenticide, Science **102**: 232-233.

Kinyoun, S. J. S.: 1901. Bubonic Plague, Occidental M. Times **15**: 287-303.

Kitasato, S.: 1894. Preliminary Notice on the Bacteriology of Bubonic Plague, Lancet **2**: 928.

Kohls, G. M.: 1940. Siphonaptera. A Study of the Species Infecting Wild Hares and Rabbits of North America North of Mexico, Nat. Inst. of Health Bull. No. 175, Washington, D. C., United States Government Printing Office.

Kolle, W.: 1901. Berichte über die Thätigkeit der zur Studien über Pest eingerichteten Station des Intituts für Infektionkrankheiten 1899-1900, Ztschr. f. Hyg. **36**: 411.

Kolle, W., and Martini, E.: 1902. Ueber Pest, Deutsche med. Wchnschr. **28**: 1-3.

Kunhardt, J. C. C.: 1912. Proc. 2nd All-India Sanit. Conf., Simla **3**: 48.

Kurauchi, K.: 1930 and 1931. Differentiation of B. Pestis From Allied Organisms by Means of Their Biological Properties, J. Orient. Med. **12**: 49-52, 1930; Kitasato Arch. Exp. Med. **8**: 45-59, 1931.

Lafont, A., Lecomte, A., and Heckenroth, F.: 1915. Bull. Soc. path. exot. **8**: 92.

Lethem, W. A.: 1923. J. State Med. **31**: 508. Cited in Wu Lien-teh et al.: Plague, 1936, pp. 297-298.

Lignieres, J.: 1901. Contribution a l'étude et a la classification des septicemies hemorraghiques, Buenos Aires.

Liceága, E.: 1903. Gaz. Med. Mex. 34-36.

Lillie, R. D.: 1945. Studies on the Pharmacologic Action and the Pathology of Alphanaphthylthiourea (Antu). II. Pathology, Pub. Health Rep. **60**: 1108-1113.

Liston, W. G.: 1905. Plague, Rats and Fleas, Calcutta, Thacker, Spink & Co.

Long, J. D.: 1931. Cooperative Campaign for the Eradication of Plague in Peru. Final Report, Pub. Health Rep. **46**: 2161-2168.

Long, J. D.: 1935. La peste bubónica en la costa occidental de Sud-América en 1934, Pub. Health Rep. **50**: 923.

Long, J. D.: 1936. Choice of Rat Poison in Anti-plague Work, Pub. Health Rep. **51**: 551.

Long, J. D.: 1942. Cited in Meyer: The Ecology of Plague, Medicine **21**: 145.

Long, J. D., and Mostajo, B.: 1934. Experiencias con pulgas come portadoras de peste bubónica, Bol. Ofic. san. panam. **13**: 1016-1024.

Low, R. Bruce: 1920. The Progress and Diffusion of Plague, Cholera and Yellow Fever Throughout the World, 1914-1917, Reports on Public Health and Med. Subjects, No. 3, London, Ministry of Health.

Macchiavello, A.: 1932. Historia de la peste en Chile, Rev. d. Inst. bact., Chile **3**: 24-66.

Macchiavello, A.: 1933. Breves consideraciones sobre la anatomía patológica de la peste murina, Bol. Ofic. san. panam. **12**: 799-804.

Macchiavello, A.: 1937. Epidemiología de la peste chilena, Rev. chilena de hig. y med. prev. **1**: 69-87.

Macchiavello, A.: 1941. Some Special Epidemiological and Clinical Features of Plague in Northeast Brazil, Pub. Health Rep. **56**: 1657-1661.

Macchiavello, A.: 1941. Contribuciones al estudio de la peste bubónica en el Nordeste del Brasil, Publicación No. 165, Ofic. san. panam., Washington, 331 pp.

Macchiavello, A.: 1942. Epidemiologia continental de la peste bubónica. Actas de la XI Conferencia Sanitaria Panamericana, Rio de Janeiro, 1942, Imprenta Oficial.

Macchiavello, A.: 1943. Epidemiologia de la peste bubónica en el Ecuador con especial referencia a la Región Interandina, An. Soc. méd.-quir. d. Guayas **24**: 1094-1152, 1171-1227. (Also a summary in Epidemiology of Plague in Ecuador, Am. J. Pub. Health **33**: 807-811.)

Macchiavello, A.: 1945. Reinfección pestosa de puertos peruanos, por pulgas provenientes de la India en fardos de sacos de yute, Informe a la Of. Sanit. Panamer. (Files Pan-American Sanitary Bureau.)

Macchiavello, A.: 1945. Instrucciones para el diagnóstico, tratamiento y aislamiento de enfermos de peste bubónica y para la recolección de muestras destinadas a examenes de laboratorio, Bol. Ofic. san. panam. **24**: 704-712.

Macchiavello, A.: 1946. Plague Control With DDT and "1080," Tumbes, 1945, Am. J. Pub. Health **36**: 842-854.

Macchiavello, A., and Paracampos, H.: 1941. In Contribuciones al estudio de la peste bubónica en el Nordeste del Brasil, Publicación No. 165, Of. Sanit. Panamer., Washington.

Macchiavello, A., and Urigüen, D.: 1944. Experimental Plague in Guinea Pigs Inoculated With Past. Pestis of Ecuadorian Origin, Puerto Rico J. Pub. Health & Trop. Med. **19**: 577-601.

McClosky, W. T., and Smith, M. I.: 1945. Studies on the Pharmacologic Action and the Pathology of Alphanaphthylthiourea (Antu). I. Pharmacology, Pub. Health Rep. **60**: 1101-1108.

McCoy, G. W.: 1909. Subacute Plague in Man Due to General Squirrel Infection, J. Infect. Dis. **6**: 670.

McCoy, G. W.: 1909. The Susceptibility of Gophers, Field Mice and Ground Squirrels to Plague Infection, J. Infect. Dis. **6**: 283.

McCoy, G. W.: 1910. Plague Among Ground Squirrels in America, J. Hyg. **10**: 589-601.

McCoy, G. W.: 1911. Studies Upon Plague in Ground Squirrels, Pub. Health Bull. No. 43, Washington, D. C., United States Government Printing Office.

McCoy, G. W.: 1911. Susceptibility to Plague of the Weasel, the Chipmunk and the Pocket Gopher, J. Infect. Dis. **8**: 42.

McCoy, G. W., and Smith, F. C.: 1910. Susceptibility to Plague of Prairie Dog, the Desert Wood Rat, and the Rock Squirrel, J. Infect. Dis. **7**: 374.

Markl, G.: 1903. Zur Kenntnis des Mechanismus der Künslichen Immunitätsgegen Pest, Ztschr. f. Hyg. **42**: 244-254.

Martin, C. J.: 1913. Brit. M. J. **1**: Jan. 4 and 11. Cited in Wu Lien-teh et al.: Plague, 1936, p. 297.

Martinez Vinueza, J. J.: 1930. Sobre angina y viruela pestosa en el Ecuador, Bol. Ofic. san. panam. **9**: 1189.

Meyer, K. F., Connor, C. L., Smyth, F. S., and Eddie, B.: 1937. Chronic Relapsing Latent Meningeal Plague, Arch. Int. Med. **59**: 967-980.

Meyer, K. F.: 1936. Sylvatic Plague Committee, Am. J. Pub. Health **26**: 961.

Meyer, K. F.: 1937. Sylvatic Plague Committee **27**: 777.

Meyer, K. F.: 1938. Sylvatic Plague, Am. J. Pub. Health **28**: 1153.

Meyer, K. F.: 1939. Sylvatic Plague, Am. J. Pub. Health **29**: 1225.

Meyer, K. F.: 1942. The Known and the Unknown in Plague, Am. J. Trop. Med. **22**: 9.

Meyer, K. F.: 1942. The Ecology of Plague, Medicine **21**: 143-174.

Meyer, K. F.: 1942. Dispositions of Rodents as Factor in the Epidemiology of Plague, Medico-surgical Trib. to H. Brunn, Berkeley, Calif., University of California Press, pp. 307-316.

Meyer, K. F.: 1943. Plague, M. Clin. North America **27**: 745.

Meyer, K. F., and Eddie, B.: 1935. Sylvatic Plague in California. Discussion of Its Extent in Years 1934-35, California & West. Med. **43**: 399.

Meyer, K. F., and Eddie, B.: 1938. Persistence of Sylvatic Plague, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **38**: 333.

Meyer, K. F.: Holdenried, R.: Burroughs, A. L., and Jawetz, E.: 1943. Sylvatic Plague Studies. In Apparent Latent Sylvatic Plague in Ground Squirrels in Central California, J. Infect. Dis. **73**: 114-157.

Mitchell, J. A., Pirie, J. H., Harvey, and Ingram, A.: 1927. The Plague Problem in South Africa, 1927, Johannesburg.

Moll, A., and O'Leary, Sh. B.: 1940, 1942. Plague in the Americas: An Historical and Quasi-Epidemiological Survey, Bol. Ofic. san. panam. **19**: 451-461, 576-584, 759-771, 878-887, 1081-1097; **20**: 138-149, 254-262, 365-374, 697-714, 1149-1155; **21**: 245-252, 780-785, 874-883, 980-1000.

Morales Otero, P.: 1923. Estudio epizoótico de la epidemia de peste bubónica en Puerto Rico, 1921, Bol. Asoc. méd. de Puerto Rico **44**.

Murdock, J. R.: 1939. Peste pulmonàire a Riobama, Equateur, Bol. Of. Intern. d'hyg. Publ. **31**: 1022.

Murdock, J. R.: 1940. Pneumonic Plague in Ecuador During 1939, Pub. Health Rep. **55**: 2172-2178,

Nattan-Larrier, L., and Richard, L.: 1931. Les lésions histologique de la peste pulmoniae primitive, Bull. Soc. path. exot. **24**: 388.

Ogata, M.: 1897. Ueber die Pestepidemie in Formosa, Centralbl. f. Bakt. **21**: 774.

Orlando Laboratories, Fla.: 1944. P. N. Annand. Tests Conducted by the Bureau of Entomology and Plant Quarantine to Appraise the Usefulness of DDT as an Insecticide, J. Economic Entomology **37**: 125-159.

Ormsbee, R. A.: 1945. A Summary of Field Reports on 1080, Oct. 26, NRC, RCC (mimeographed).

Otten, L.: 1911. Plague in Java, Rep. Dutch Ind. Med. Serv., 23.

Otten, L.: 1934. La vaccination experimentale dans la peste. I. Vaccine non vivant, Bull. Office internat. d'hyg. pub. **26**: 1805.

Otten, L.: 1935. Vaccination contre la peste, Bull. Office internat. d'hyg. pub. **27**: 332.

Otten, L.: 1936. Plague Immunization With Live Vaccine, Indian J. M. Research **24**: 73.

Pardal, E.: 1941. Peste en Cañada Grande (Provincia de Córdoba) y en otros lugares de la Provincia de San Luis, Bol. san. Dep. nac. hig. **5**: 335-356.

Paso, J. R.: 1925. Plague Meningitis, Semana méd. **2**: 1139.

Petrie, G. F.: 1929. Plague: In a System of Bacteriology, London **3**: 137.

Petrie, G. F., and Todd, R. E.: 1923. Plague Report, Egypt. Dep. Publ. Health, Rep. No. 5, Cairo.

Pirie, J. H. H.: 1927. Notes on Veld Rodents and Some Other Animals Associated With Plague, Pub. S. African Inst. M. Research **3**: 109-118.

Plum, D.: 1942. The Plague Epidemic in Naibori With Special Reference to Place, Incidence and Treatment, East African M. J. **19**: 3-9.

Pokrovskaya, M.: 1934. Culture of Avirulent Strain of Plague Bacilli, Vestnik mikr., epidemiol. i parazitol. **13**: 3.

Pollitzer, R., and Li, C. C.: 1943. Some Observations on the Decline of Pneumonic Plague Epidemics, J. Infect. Dis. **72**: 160-162.

Rachinski, B.: 1930. Rev. de Microbiol. **9**: 369.

Raybaud, A.: 1911. Presse méd. **19**: 179.

Richter, C. P.: 1945. The Development and Use of Alphanaphthylthiourea (Antu) as a Rat Poison, J. A. M. A. **129**: 927-931.

Rowland, S.: 1912. The Relation of Pseudotubercle to Plague as Evidenced by Vaccination Experiments, J. Hyg. **12**: (Plague Suppl. II) 350-357.

Rowland, S.: 1914. The Morphology of the Plague Bacillus, J. Hyg. **13**: (Plague supp. III) 418-422.

Russell, A. J. H.: 1934. Far East. A. Trop. Med. Tr. Ninth Cong. **2**: 725.

Saenz Vera, C.: 1939. Breves observaciones sobre pneumonia pestosa en el Ecuador, Proc. 8th Am. Sc. Congr., p. 292.

Sanhueza, A. C.: 1907. Rev. méd. de Chile: 129 (Mayo).

Savino, E.: 1935. Peste rural en el Departamento de Leventué (La Pampa), Rev. d. Inst. bact. **7**: 141-150.

Savino, E., and Morales Villazón, N.: 1942. Acción de la sulfanilamida y sus derivados en la Peste Experimental, Rev. d. Inst. bact. **11**: 70-76.

Slade, R.: 1945. The Gamma Isomer of Hexachlorocyclohexane (Gammexane). An Insecticide With Outstanding Properties, The Hunter Memorial Lecture (Reprint), pp. 1-29.

Simond, P. L.: 1898. La propagation de la peste, Ann. Inst. Pasteur **12**: 625.

Simpson, W. J.: 1905. A Treatise on Plague, London, Cambridge University Press.

Schütze, H.: 1939. Chemotherapy of Plague, Lancet **50**: 266.

Sokhey, S. S., and Dikshit, B. B.: 1940. Sulphathiazol in Bubonic Plague, Lancet **238**: 1040-1042.

Souza, Jr., A. de: 1913. Bull. Soc. Portugaise Sci. Nat. **6**: 119 and 127. Cited in Wu Lien-teh et al.: Plague, 1936.

Strickland, C.: 1933. Analysis of 7 Years Epidemics of Plague Involving 2,520 Infected Villages in Belgaum and Dharwar Districts, Bombay, Presidency, Indian J. M. Research **21**: 29-65.

Strong, R. P.: 1906. Vaccination Against Plague, Philippine J. Sc. **1**: 181.

Strong, R. P.: 1907. Studies in Plague Immunity, Philippine J. Sc. **2**: 155.

Suárez, P.: 1927. Algunas observaciones sobre la peste negra y la pulga cheopis en el Ecuador, Quito, Impr. Nac. pp. 1-10.

Swellengrebel, N. H., and Otten, L.: 1914. Arch. f. Schiffs- u. Tropen-Hyg. **18**: 149.

Taylor, J.: 1933. Haffkine's Plague Vaccine, Indian M. Research Memoirs No. 27, Calcutta, Thacker, Spink & Co., pp. 1-125.

Tidswell, F.: 1901. Some Practical Aspects of the Plague at Sydney, J. Sanit. Inst. **21**: IV, 549.

Thompson, A.: 1900. Report of an Outbreak of Plague at Sydney.

Uriarte, L.: 1936. Peste, pulgas y roedores agrestes, Rev. d. Inst. bact. **8**: 142.

Uriarte, L., and Morales Villazón, N.: 1935. A propósito de peste en roedores agrestes de Argentina, Rev. d. Inst. bact. **7**: 185.

Valassopoulo, A.: 1901. La peste d'alexandrie en 1899, Paris, Norbert Maloine.

Veintemillas, F.: 1936. La peste bubónica en Bolivia, La Paz, pp. 1-193.

Verjbitzki, D. T.: 1904. The Part Played by Insects in the Epidemiology of Plague, J. Hyg. **8**: 162-208.

de Villafañe, Lastra, T., Sosa Gallardo, J., and Videla, L. F.: 1941. Tratamiento de la peste de Oriente por medio de sulfanilamido-tiazol, Semana méd. **1**: 1073-1079.

Wagle, P. M., Sokhey, S. S., Dikshit, B. B., and Ganapathy, K.: 1941. Chemotherapy in Plague, Indian M. Gaz. **76**: 29-32.

Wassilieff, A.: 1933. Les rongeurs et puces de Tunisie et leur rôle dans la propagation de la peste, Arch. Inst. Pasteur de Tunis **22**: 443.

Wayson, N. E., and McMahon, M. C.: 1944. Plague. Sulfadiazine Treatment of Guinea Pigs Infected by Artificial Methods or by Flea Transmission, Pub. Health Rep. 385-401.

Webster: Cited in Wu Lien-teh et al.: Plague, 1936, pp. 179-180.

Wherry, W. B.: 1908. Plague Among the Ground Squirrels of California, J. Infect. Dis. **5**: 485-506.

Wilkinson: 1920. Progress and Diffusion of Plague, 1914-1917, London, Brit. Min. of Health.

Williams, C. L.: 1916. Plague Diagnosis in Rats, Pub. Health Rep. **31**: 2199.

Williams, C. L.: 1920. Diagnosis and Detection of Rodent Plague, Am. J. Pub. Health, Nov. (Reprint) 1-14.

Williams, C. L., and Kemmerer, T. W.: 1923. Plague-Infected Rats Without Visible Lesions, Pub. Health Rep. **38**: 1873-1881.

Wilm: 1897. A Report on the Epidemic of Bubonic Plague at Hong Kong in the Year 1896, Hong Kong.

Wu Lien-teh: 1926. A Treatise on Pneumonic Plague, Geneva, League of Nations Health Organization.

Wu Lien-teh, Chun, J. W. H., Pollitzer, R., and Wu, C. Y.: 1936. Plague, a Manual for Medical and Public Health Workers, Weishengshu National Quarantine Service, Shanghai Station.

Yersin, A.: 1894. La Peste Bubonique a Hongkong, C. R. Acad. Sc., Paris **119**: 356; Ann. Inst. Pasteur **8**: 663.

Yersin, A.: 1897. Sur la peste bubonique, Ann. Inst. Pasteur **11**: 81.

Yersin, A., Calmette, A., and Borrel: 1895. La peste bubonique, Ann. Inst. Pasteur **9**: 589.

Zeidler, Othmar: 1874. Verbindungen von Chloral mit Brom- und Chlorbenzol, Deut. Chem. Gesell. Ber. **7**: 1180-1181.

CHAPTER 28

CHOLERA (ASIATIC CHOLERA)

EDWARD HENDERSON AND HARRY SENECA

DEFINITION

Cholera is an acute, infectious, systemic disease caused by a specific organism, *Vibrio comma*, and characterized by an overwhelming diarrhea, nausea, and vomiting, followed by dehydration, medical shock, and renal insufficiency, with a dramatic course and high mortality. It is endemic in parts of the Orient, particularly India and China, and has appeared in epidemic form in many other parts of the world.

Synonyms.—Various terms which refer to cholera in general are Asiatic, Indian, epidemic, malignant, pandemic, spasmodic, and pestilential cholera. Old clinical terms such as asphyctic, algid, typhoid, and automatic cholera refer to clinical forms in which the several manifestations seem to predominate. A less acute disease which has been attributed to other vibrios is known as bilious, European, simple, or sporadic cholera, or *cholera nostras*. Unfortunately the name *cholera* has been loosely given to numerous diarrheas of impressive severity, none of which is cholera; hence we have "winter" and "summer" cholera, *cholera morbus* (acute gastroenteritis), and *cholera infantum* (summer diarrhea in children).

HISTORY

An early description of diarrheal disease attended by very high mortality occurs in the Indian writings of Susruta in the seventh century. One naturally looks to India for early recognition of this disease. However, other enteric diseases doubtless depopulated the ancient world, if not nearly so well as cholera, and none of the historic descriptions of epidemic diarrhea, prior to the nineteenth century, wholly rules out other diagnoses. During the nineteenth century, the world was shaken by repeated, authentic pandemics of cholera which originated in India and traveled by land and sea routes throughout Asia, and, aided by religious pilgrims and the Suez Canal, throughout Europe and as far as the United States. Napier (1943) presented a map of the world in which is traced the course of travel of two of the early epidemics.

The first pandemic began in 1817 and extended to Asiatic Russia, Persia, Arabia, Ceylon, and the Far East. The next, in 1826, involved, in addition, all of Europe (1832) and localities in the United States (1836-1838). Successive pandemics originated in India in 1842, 1863, 1879, 1891, and 1902, and each spread widely, but thereafter effective control measures were instituted by many countries and cholera ceased to be world wide. No outbreak occurred in the United States after 1873, and quarantine in this country was effective from 1911. Elsewhere the disease continued to flare, as in parts of Europe and especially Russia, and in the present century small epidemics have been seen in the Philippines as recently as 1935-1936. The most recent notable epidemic (anonymous, 1947) appeared in Egypt in 1947; it consisted of more than 20,000 cases, with an admitted mortality of 48 per cent.

The disease was long attributed to a poison of oriental origin, transmitted by the air; i.e., a miasma. (In the Arabic language, cholera is called *hawa asfar*, "yellow air." Apparently the ancient Arabian physicians associated the disease with filth, decay, etc., which this expression suggests.) Each epidemic inspired additional concepts of the etiology, as when Scott, in 1832, decided that a soldier in his command "generated this disease within him by a fit of intoxication," and that it was "intemperance which . . generates and spreads the calamity" (Phalen, 1942). Snow (1855) collected evidence of the distribution of cases in London which pointed directly to the cause in water supplied from a certain pumping station and did not hesitate to draw conclusions. He was perhaps the first investigator to demonstrate that water, rather than air, was the medium of transmission. Scott (1939) refers to a discovery by Pouchet, as early as 1849, of vibrios in the stools of cholera patients. The definitive demonstration of the cholera vibrio is attributed to Koch (1883). Unfortunately it was attended by considerable disbelief and confusion owing to nonpathogenic vibrios which were also detected, and some matters, such as the real significance of the El Tor vibrio, remain disputed by bacteriologists to the present day.

The earliest efforts to treat cholera utilized anything that could be conceived to have virtue, from drugs to physical therapy, and while a certain proportion of victims survived both the disease and the treatment, there was and is nothing to suggest that anything was gained. Saline, however, was injected as early as 1831 by Thomas Latta (1831-1832). Doubtless the dosage was insufficient in these early trials, else the importance of fluid would have been appreciated half a century sooner. It was not until 1909 that Rogers (1915) used saline in the amounts now generally employed, which alone has been the decisive feature of treatment as it remains today. The 1947 epidemic in Egypt gave opportunity to try a great number of sulfonamide derivatives, several of which seemed to reduce mortality somewhat when given early enough in the course, although statistical proof is not striking; but even then it was obvious that Latta's treatment was the indispensable, determining measure. In the 1947 epidemic, also, there was demonstrated a specifically effective method of restoring kidney function in uremic subjects with testosterone and, in consequence of this, in such cases there was what some have regarded as an outspoken reduction in mortality.

From the seventh century to the present day, cholera has existed in the region of the Ganges delta and has been disseminated from there to the entire world. Effective measures have almost entirely excluded it from the West and much of Europe, but the Near East continues to suffer periodic outbreaks, supported, probably, by now well-established local stores of the vibrio. Transmission of the disease is so well understood, and is nominally so readily subject to effective control, that one might expect that the disease would have been eradicated for all time in India and eventually in the entire world. That this has not been accomplished is explained freely in various ways, and there are even those who cynically point to the disease as a source of relief from "overpopulation." Two nations, India and Pakistan, both newborn, have the opportunity to succeed on their own behalf where for centuries others have failed, and the next few years will show whether in time to come there might not cease to be such an appalling thing as epidemic cholera.

ETIOLOGY

Vibrio comma is a bacterium of the order Eubacteriales, family Pseudomonadaceae, which includes only the vibrios and Pseudomonas as of clinical interest (Breed et al., 1948). Of its tribe, Spirilleae, vibrio is the only known pathogen, and although vibrios are quite numerous, only one pathogen, *Vibrio comma*, is recognized. This species has been divided into three strains, Inaba, Ogawa, and Hikojima, the virulence of which is undisputed, but it also includes "another vibrio" known as El Tor, which has appeared at times as a pathogen, beyond doubt, and at other times as an object of terrible perplexity (Linton, 1940).

Synonyms.—Koch's name for this organism was *Kommabacillus.* It is frequently designated by the specific names *comma, cholerae,* and *cholerae asiaticae:* thus *Spirillum cholerae asiaticae, Pacinia choleraeasiaticae, Microspora comma, Vibrio cholerae, Bacillus cholerae, B. comma,* or colloquially simple as ''the cholera vibrio.''

Classification

At one time the effort to classify vibrios was concerned with the distinction between *V. comma,* with some other chemically and antigenically similar vibrios, and ''other vibrios'' of no clinical importance—so-called groups A and B, respectively. A tremendous amount of work has now reduced the problem to vibrios which, although they have a common H antigen, can be distinguished by their O antigen as belonging to group I of a possible six groups (Gardner and Venkatraman, 1935). Group I includes vibrios not hemolytic to goat or sheep cells, that is, ''true'' *V. comma,* and vibrios which are hemolytic, or at least more markedly and permanently hemolytic, than the preceding, that is, the El Tor vibrios. Unhappily, some El Tor vibrios are described within the other O groups; but this is not the only source of difficulty with this type, strain, or variant, whichever it may be.

Morphology and Colonies

The cholera vibrio is a slightly curved rod, 0.5 by 1 to 5 microns, observed singly and in chains which tend to be spiral. It is gram-negative and motile and has a single terminal flagellum. It forms small (1 to 2 mm.), circular, slightly convex, moist, glistening, translucent colonies on solid media. These are yellowish-white on gelatin, brownish-white on agar, and colorless (or later pinkish) on MacConkey's medium and are surrounded by a small zone of ''hemodigestion'' on blood agar. In broth there is a slight turbidity and also a flocculent precipitate, with wrinkled pellicle. Gelatin is liquefied.

Reactions.—It forms acid but not gas from glucose, fructose, mannose, galactose, maltose, sucrose, mannitol, and (slowly) glycerol but not from lactose, arabinose, inulin, or dulcitol. The combination mannose+, sucrose+, arabinose– has been suggested (Heiberg, 1935) as a determinant for *V. comma* but is not specific since the same type of reaction has been noted with other vibrios.

It is an obligatory anaerobe, living at an optimum temperature of 37° C. and an optimum pH of 7.6 to 8, with poor tolerance to an acid medium.

It forms indole and nitrite from nitrate, and thus it gives the *cholera red* reaction, provided reducing agents such as carbohydrates are not present in excess (Sen et al., 1946). Hydrogen sulfide is formed. Starch is hydrolyzed actively at high pH. It is Voges-Proskauer negative.

Resistance

To proliferate, the vibrio must have water, salt, and organic matter. It has been stated that it is easily (Napier, 1943) or readily (Kahn, 1942) killed by drying; nevertheless, vibrios have been found viable four years after having been dried and sealed. The vibrio is also killed by overgrowth of other organisms, as in water containing sewage. Optimum conditions appear to be about 1 per cent salt and 2 p.p.m. peptone, but the organism can survive for weeks in concentrations one-tenth of these or less. It does not withstand temperatures above 42° C. or below 14° C., nor pH below 6 (nor, it is said, above 9.4). Heating at 55° C. destroys the vibrio after 15 minutes. The usual organic (phenol) and inorganic ($KMnO_4$,$HgCl_2$) poisons destroy it rapidly. Numerous races of bacteriophage, including the specific races A and N, destroy the cholera vibrio.

Water in tanks is more conducive to survival of the vibrio than free-running waters. Water which has been sterilized by autoclaving enables it to survive for 3 days or more, utilizing, probably, organic material which has been thus broken down (Lahiri et al., 1939). Foods of many kinds have been studied to determine whether the vibrio can remain viable within or upon them, or can be transmitted by them. Dates have been considered (Yen, 1947), but not conclusively (Gohar, 1948b). Butter appears definitely to have transmitted the disease (Grattan, 1939). Likewise the question whether or not vibrios can survive in the soil, and under various climatic conditions, has been studied (Sanyal, 1941), and it has been concluded that moist soil containing an optimum concentration of nitrates and organic matter is capable of harboring the organism for long periods.

Variation

Like many other organisms, the cholera vibrio readily becomes adapted to any environment in which it can survive at all. Sufficiently prolonged cultivation, as upon laboratory media, yields organisms differing in carbohydrate and protein composition from the parent strain, that is, "variants." If specific antisera are contained in the medium, the serologic specificity of intact, virulent "smooth" organisms is abolished, and there result the metabolically inactive, more generalized, "rough" forms. Phage has a similar effect. An extensive literature has classified the native vibrio (as obtained from patients with cholera) and its subsequent variations, using metabolic and serologic criteria. That such variations are equally possible in nature must be emphasized. They would explain the progressive increase in virulence during an epidemic and the change from low to higher virulence in carriers.

Immunologic Types (Heiberg, 1935; Linton, 1940).—The original or Inaba vibrio is accompanied even in the same epidemic by the Ogawa type or variant (Felsenfeld, 1939b; Pasricha, 1942; Soman and Nail, 1945), as well as the "intermediate" Hikojima type (Fournier, 1940). In any collection of vibrios (Burrows et al., 1946) or in vibrios collected in any one region (Felsenfeld, 1939b), there is found a varying proportion of each of these, together with El Tor vibrios. The fact that not all El Tor vibrios fall in the O antigen group I has been mentioned; notwithstanding, the group I antiserum has practical diagnostic value as revealing some 85 per cent pathogenic strains (Taylor, 1936). This method of typing has been carefully studied (Burrows et al., 1946). The possibility remains, however, that any type may change over into another, and what have been regarded as types may not be more than variants (Shrivastava and White, 1947).

The El Tor Vibrio

Older literature discusses at length whether this vibrio is ever a pathogen. It is a proved cause of clinical cholera, in localized epidemics, as in Celebes (DeMoor, 1938, 1939; van Loghem, 1938) in 1938 and 1940, and in East Africa (Marras, 1938). It makes slight difference practically whether such outbreaks are termed "choleriform" merely because the organism is more hemolytic than expected of a proper cholera vibrio—especially when the metabolic and serologic criteria conform so closely.

The El Tor vibrio may be pathogenic in one locality and not in another (Abdoelrachman, 1944, 1945). It may include "types" within its "type" (van Loghem, 1946). It has repeatedly been described (Read and Pandit, 1941; Venkatraman et al., 1941) as occurring in the absence of clinical cholera, in patients having food intoxication (Kato, 1941), and in patients with gastroenteritis, which it may have caused (Felsenfeld, 1939a). Thus it is not unreasonable to think of this vibrio as a type of *V. comma*, susceptibility to which varies more greatly than to the other types. The occurrence of epidemic cholera proves that the susceptibility of the host, and the virulence of the El Tor vibrio, can reach the same degree as with other *V. comma*.

The hemolytic power of the El Tor vibrio, on which its identification relies in part, is generally greater than that of the so-called nonhemolytic vibrios, but the distinction is far from absolute. Even recognizing the difference between "true hemolysis" (van Loghem, 1938; Bernard et al., 1939; Felsenfeld, 1944; Gohar, 1932; Kabeshima, 1918; Mertens and Beeuwkes, 1940; Read et al., 1942) and "hemodigestion" (Read et al., 1942), the hemolytic action that will be seen depends on the detailed technic used, the age of the culture, its history since isolation from the disease, and peculiar properties of the blood that is used (Otten, 1939). A "true" vibrio which has not grown in the laboratory for more than a few hours *may* be strongly hemolytic, while after 24 hours the property may be lost; a sojourn in artificial media is more prone to change the hemolytic power of "true" vibrios than of El Tor vibrios (Doorenbos, 1936, 1937). Thus, hemolysis is only an approximate guide to the identity of the vibrios, and new criteria would be most desirable in its stead. These are being sought: e.g., lecithinase (Felsenfeld, 1944).

Mode of Transmission

Water is the principal offender, especially when latrines used by infected persons are so situated as to contaminate the water supplies of others. Milk contaminated by unclean handling, vegetables contaminated by infected water, dates, and butter, as well as flies (Whitmore, 1929) which may convey vibrios from feces to food, have been mentioned. "Cholera nests," scattered groups of cases infected in such indirect ways, are thus explained. Various insecticides such as DDT have been used during epidemics in an effort to eradicate house flies and other insects. These may conceivably carry the vibrio (Felsenfeld, 1937). Even direct personal contact, if sufficiently close and prolonged (as on board ship), may spread cholera (Whitmore, 1929). Cockroaches and rats have been suggested as a method of distribution (Napier, 1943). Some writers have expressed confidence in the safety of milk which has soured, since the vibrio does not flourish in an acid medium, but it has been shown that vibrios remain viable in sour milk for as long as 6 days (Whitmore, 1929). Food handlers harboring the vibrio must be thought of also as vectors.

Pathogenicity

V. comma is known to produce disease naturally only in man. Peritonitis can be produced by intraperitoneal injection of viable organisms into mice, guinea pigs, and some other small laboratory animals, and intravenous injections is fatal to rabbits, but these do not necessarily reveal the route taken by vibrios in clinical infection (Sanarelli, 1916), or even furnish a basis for evaluating vibriocidal drugs.

The susceptibility of the host is variable and is obscured by such factors as the number and virulence of the organisms reaching the gut. The normal acidity of the gastric juice is thought to destroy most of the vibrios. However, the deliberate swallowing of cholera cultures has led to every possible result from noninfection to fulminating disease and death. Experience shows that impaired general health, and particularly gastrointestinal disorders, even including the use of a cathartic, predisposes to invasion by cholera vibrios. The vibrios may have already been present (carrier state), and became invasive when the patient was malnourished, fatigued, intoxicated, ill with other disease, or, as it has been said, "worried." It may also be impossible to recognize a single predisposing factor in robust persons who acquire and succumb to the disease. As with many tropical diseases, the newcomer is said to be more susceptible than the native, and while this may be apparent in other conditions, it is difficult to imagine greater susceptibility than that among the natives, say, of India, who perish by the hundreds of thousands.

Carrier State

As a rule, a cholera carrier either is convalescent after cholera or is in the incubation period of the disease. There is rarely a normal or healthy carrier, although low-grade or subclinical infections occur. Usually, the vibrios do not persist longer than 3 to 5 days after ingestion, either in patients or in carriers. Exceptionally they may be present for 2 weeks, and periods as long as 3 and 4 weeks are mentioned. It is regularly found (Wilkinson, 1943) that the carrier rate, or proportion of subjects examined who show the vibrios, rises to 20 per cent just before an epidemic of cholera. In view of incomplete knowledge of the transformation of vibrios from one to another "type," which occurs in the laboratory and also, from statistical data, in the field, it may not be important whether the vibrios are true pathogens. Indeed, at the outset of the process, they may theoretically be of low virulence; but then one visualizes the transfer of organisms from one host to another, as unsanitary conditions permit, until a number of ''animal passages'' have taken place in the human population. Some of the subjects may be in poor health, or some may be susceptible enough to experience a mild diarrhea, and the vibrios they discharge will have gained in virulence. Presently they are found in sufficiently large numbers to be detected in the stools. Soon the infecting dose and the virulence are sufficient to produce recognizable cholera in a few persons. From this point the extent of an epidemic is limited only by the facility with which vibrios can be transmitted from one person to another.

The carrier state is important in facilitating an unobserved transfer of organisms among the population. It is also important to the carrier himself, as antecedent to clinical cholera at any time his susceptibility may increase. Harboring the organisms does not confer immunity, nor does clinical cholera preclude susceptibility at a later date. Carriers may show no symptoms of the disease for a few days and yet later come down with the most overwhelming form of cholera.

A person who is a carrier at one time may cease to show organisms and later again may have them. Whether this is necessarily the result of a reinfection, or whether the organisms lurk in the intestine or gall bladder so that the carrier state is actually much more prolonged than it seems, cannot be concluded. The situation is met, in careful cholera control, by reexaminations of supposedly ''negative'' subjects.

Epidemic Characters

In India, the disease reaches its peak during the warm, rainy season, when the humidity is high. As the humidity declines, the epidemic severity subsides, until at 10 per cent relative humidity the disease reaches a standstill. This was likewise observed in Egypt.

The progress of an epidemic is related to the phage titers which are found. When phage is at a maximum, the epidemic comes to an end, while very low titers are seen during the height of an epidemic, when almost all vibrios isolated are typical and agglutinable. Vibrios surviving the action of phage become atypical, nonagglutinable, and, in due course, nonpathogenic.

GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION

The world distribution of cholera changes little from year to year; for many years it has been confined to India and the Far East; the exception is the appearance of epidemic cholera in the Mediterranean area such as the recent epidemic in Egypt. Cholera statistics are always somewhat unreliable (Seal, 1945). Reports vary in completeness but probably never exceed the actual incidence. Some districts may lack medical personnel entirely, and others may be reluctant to admit the presence of the disease even when it has been recognized, since it is today a serious reflection on the very civilization that harbors it. Hence one may conclude that cholera is as prevalent as is shown, where it is shown to be prevalent, and one may suspect it to exist in any neighboring district, particularly when reports are lacking. The distribution, as it affects cities, might be misleading, since it is only in cites that cogent sanitary improvements exist, but cities necessarily have the burden of reporting many cases coming to them from outlying districts.

The division of India into Pakistan and India, while shown by boundaries, has no immediate influence upon the density of cholera throughout the region, and this has therefore been shown in a uniform manner.

Pilgrimages.—Since the turn of the century, cholera has been largely confined to the Far East; its spread westward to the Near East depends on religious pilgrimages to Mecca. Mohammedan pilgrims from India, the Far East, and the East Indies, where the disease is endemic, come in contact with pilgrims from the Near and Middle East and North Africa. When the latter group acquire the infection, they give rise to epidemics on returning to their own countries. At present, persons going to Mecca are required to be vaccinated against cholera, and, when possible, to have negative stool cultures for the vibrio. Large numbers are examined on their return, at the end of the pilgrimage, as they pass through government quarantine stations in Egypt; if no vibrios are isolated, the group is declared free of cholera and all are permitted to depart, while if vibrios are found, strict quarantine measures are enforced. During the past 15 years, a new automobile route was authorized for pilgrimages, from Baghdad, through the heart of Arabia, to Mecca. In 1938, Seneca isolated an El Tor vibrio from a Persian pilgrim returning from Mecca through Iraq to Iran.

The Egyptian epidemic of 1947 was produced by vibrios introduced by British soldiers proceeding from India to England.

The Ganges River is sacred to the Hindus. During pilgrimages, the devout bathe in the river, and the disease acquires epidemic fury. It is reported that when the ashes of Mohandas Gandhi were committed to the river, this occasioned bathing by a great many persons, which was followed by the occurrence of several hundred cases of cholera.

PATHOLOGY

The disease process in cholera begins with the multiplication, in the alkaline medium of the small intestine, of so many vibrios as have survived passage through the stomach. They may barely sustain themselves, and no disease be manifest (carrier state), or they may give rise to mild diarrhea lasting a short time. If the infection is massive and virulent, and the physical condition of the host unfavorable, the intestine is invaded and the full-blown disease begins. The present belief is that it is the endotoxin released by disintegrating vibrios which is responsible for the destruction of the intestinal epithelium.

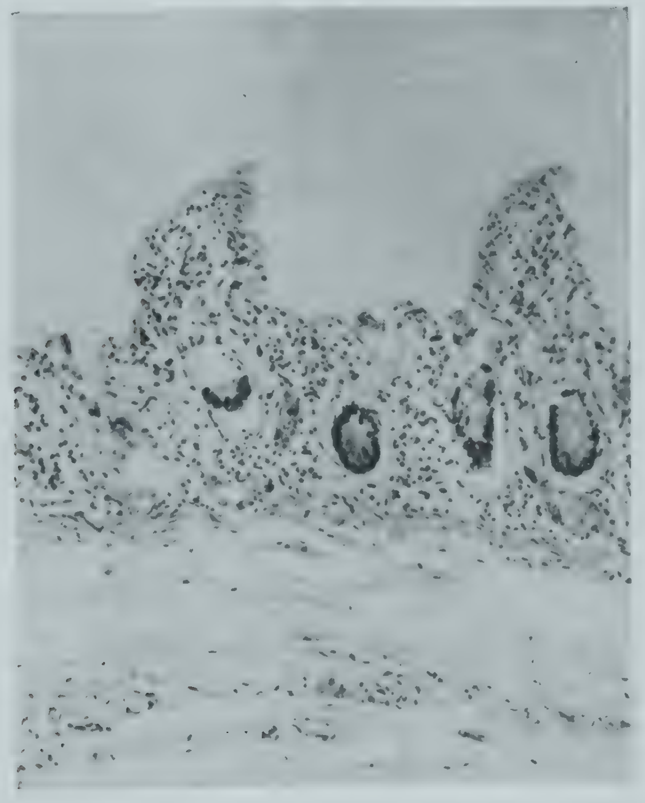


Fig. 156.—Intestine in Asiatic cholera, showing denudation of the epithelium, round cell infiltration, edema of the submucosa. Low power magnification (×100). (Courtesy of Oscar Felsenfeld.) (From Gradwohl: Clinical Laboratory Methods and Diagnosis, ed. 4, 1948, The C. V. Mosby Co.)

With injury and desquamation of the epithelium, a serous effusion of prodigious amount pours into the lumen. This is passed off as a diarrhea characterized by whitish shreds of desquamated epithelium ("rice water" stools). Microscopically these shreds contain cells, which may be greatly deteriorated or are practically debris, and mucus, possibly with a few erythrocytes; there is virtually no sign of inflammatory reaction.

The central feature of the disease is the loss of so much body fluid, in consequence of diarrhea and vomiting, as to produce a state of medical shock. (See Table XVI.) This includes hypotension, peripheral vascular collapse, tissue dehydration and anoxia, acidosis, and renal insufficiency. These features almost fully explain the clinical findings in cholera. It may be that the toxin directly damages the kidneys, as shown by albuminuria and casts, and, at autopsy, by congestion and necrosis, but considerable renal damage can equally result from ischemia and the shutting down of glomerular filtration, so that under these circumstances the renal failure is of purely "extrarenal" origin. It is difficult, in fact, to identify a feature of the disease that can be attributed to the distribution of a toxin, the one exception being the *sicca* variety of the disease.

TABLE XVI. CHOLERA AND OTHER DISEASES COMPARED

(Presented in abbreviated form from Scudder, 1940)

THE BLOOD	CHOLERA	ADRENAL INSUFFICIENCY	ACUTE INTESTINAL OBSTRUCTION	SURGICAL SHOCK
Physical characteristics				
R.B.C.	+	+	+	+
Hemoglobin	+	+	+	+
W.B.C.	+	+ (Terminal −)	+	+
Specific gravity	+	+	+	+
Hematocrit	+	+	+	+
Total solids	+	+	+	+
Anions				
Cl'	−	−	−	− (+)*
HCO_3'	−	−	+ (−)*	−
HPO_4''	+	+	+	−
SO_4''		+	+	
Proteins	+	+	+	−, +†
Total acid	−	−	−	
Cations				
Na+	−	−	−	−
K+	+	+	+	+
Ca++	+	+	+	+
Mg++	+	+	+	
Total base	−	−	−	
Nonprotein nitrogen (various criteria)	+	+	+	+
Blood sugar	+	−	+	+
pH	−	−	−	−

+, Increased; -, decreased.
*Minority finding in parentheses.
†Depending on circumstances.

Organs Other Than the Intestine

The vibrios make their way, no doubt via the portal system of veins and the lymphatics, to the liver and biliary tract and are often observed in the

gall bladder. If the patient survives long enough, this may show injury. Organisms have been found in exudates from the **lung** in patients who later develop pneumonia. This has given rise to debate whether septicemia exists, particularly since vibrios are rarely detected in the circulating blood. (Greig, 1913, 1914, 1915, 1916; Nichols, 1916.)

Post-Mortem Findings

Post-mortem findings reveal little more than is obvious during life: extreme dehydration, as reflected in the external appearance, general tissues, and serous membranes; and some reaction about the lymphoid patches of the ileum. It is customary to mention also the early rigor mortis and odd positions of the head and extremities. When there has been renal involvement, the tubules are markedly dilated and the lumen is filled with proteinaceous material; there is some interstitial edema, but the blood vessels are essentially normal.

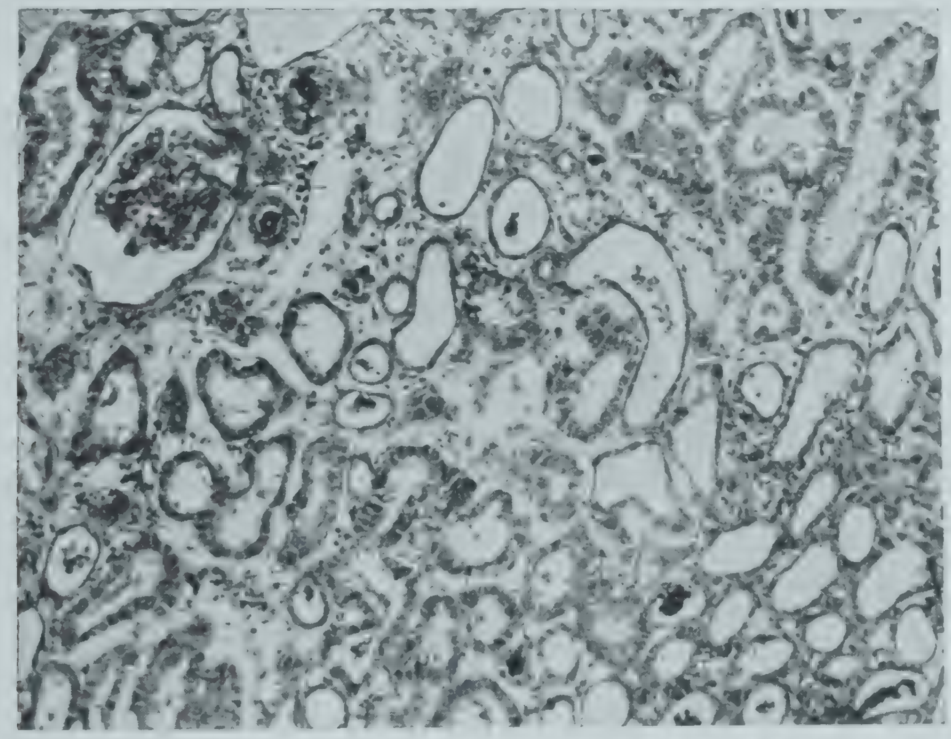


Fig. 157.—Kidney in Asiatic cholera. Low-power magnification (×150). (Courtesy of Oscar Felsenfeld.) (From Gradwohl: Clinical Laboratory Methods and Diagnosis, ed. 4, 1948. The C. V. Mosby Co.)

CLINICAL SYMPTOMS

The symptoms of cholera develop logically from the known disease processes and are peculiar only in respect to their unparalleled intensity. What appear a multiplicity of signs and symptoms are the effects of damage to the intestinal mucosa (diarrhea and vomiting), extreme fluid loss, medical shock (with the clinical picture of shock generally), and consequent circulatory failure and renal insufficiency (uremia). The origin and character of the several symptoms will be considered in detail.

Diarrhea

The diarrhea is due to, and consists of, the massive transudation of extracellular fluid through intestinal epithelium which has been damaged by the endotoxin. A direct action of this toxin on the permeability of living intestine (rabbit, guinea pig) has been demonstrated (Burrows, 1944) and has been likened to that of spreading factors (Burnet and Stone, 1947) (such as hyaluronidase), although not identical with any of these. While any profound injury to a wide area of mucosal surface would lead to a similar outpouring of fluid (one should think similarly of an extensive burn of the body surface), the injury in cholera is produced by a "mucolytic" enzyme. Although information is accumulating about such processes, no one thus far has, to our knowledge, attempted to influence the disease at this point.

The stools in cholera are at first simply diarrheal, and fecal, but in a very short time all feces are washed out and the character changes to a thin, grayish-white fluid containing white flocculi ("rice water") of epithelial debris. A single passage may easily amount to more than a liter at the height of the diarrhea. Later, as the patient's body fluids are severely depleted, the volume progressively diminishes. If recovery occurs, the proper color of the stool gradually returns and its consistency improves, although it is usual for constipation to follow. If the patient does not recover, the diarrhea gradually ceases altogether for want of body fluid.

Vomiting

Diarrhea *precedes* the vomiting in cholera. When vomiting does begin, it is usually massive and occurs in successive attacks which are forceful and exhausting, and in some patients it may be persistent. It expresses, one would think, a profound irritation of the gut, even though it is more profuse, automatic, and projectile than is ever seen in lesser gastrointestinal disease. Unlike "central" vomiting, it is excited by giving almost anything by the mouth, save cracked ice and very small portions of fluid, and is often accompanied by violent retching. Retching may occur alone. The great effort of retching and the gratuitous loss of fluid add gravely to the patient's affliction. At first the gastric contents are given up, and then rice water fluid from the intestine is vomited. The vomitus may be blood-tinged or may contain blood. Vomiting ceases as the patient begins to recover, but it also ceases when the patient is too exhausted and dehydrated to vomit more (moribund).

Dehydration markedly changes the patient's appearance within a few hours. The skin becomes wrinkled and inelastic, so that the finger tips have a "washer-woman" appearance; the cheeks and eyes are sunken and the nose "pinched" so that the bones of the face are prominent and suggest the appearance of a skeleton. The skin is cold and clammy, and perspiration is scant and sticky or soon ceases altogether. There is extreme thirst.

Other Symptoms

Circulatory failure is of the extracardiac or shock type and is due to extreme depletion of the circulating blood volume. It is quite unlike congestive failure, for the heart is intact, at least until its function and structure are damaged by anoxia. The heart sounds become rapid and faint, and the pulse becomes thin, and thready, and even imperceptible. The blood pressure may be too low to provide a reading. Eventually the cardiac rhythm becomes irregular and the action still weaker.

Owing to circulatory insufficiency, tissue respiration is impaired. All the tissues suffer damage through anoxia. The clinical sign of this is peripheral *cyanosis,* which at first is just recognizable as a bluish cast but later advances to a dark gray, or violet, or leaden color, a very unfavorable sign. (The combination of cyanosis, apathy, and the death's-head appearance is referred to as the *cholera facies.*) Because of the defective circulation, and possibly the disturbed electrolyte balance as well, there are agonizing *muscular cramps* in the abdomen and extremities, which may develop early but are usually marked when dehydration is advanced. These are somewhat relieved when infusions are given. Other evidences of great general weakness are the feeble, husky voice, the shallow and rapid respirations, diminished reflexes, and the complaint of utter exhaustion.

Renal failure results from circulatory insufficiency and eventually irreversible kidney damage. As the systolic blood pressure falls below the minimum needed for glomerular filtration, some 40 to 50 mm., oliguria and anuria are observed. Azotemia then develops. Some elevation of the blood concentration of nonprotein nitrogen bodies is a common finding, while extravagant and persistent elevation is a most unfavorable sign, usually accompanied by the symptoms of uremia. This is a common cause of death in cholera.

In the older writings, much attention is given to the acidosis which naturally develops with renal insufficiency. Marked acidosis, as shown by a fall in the pH of the blood, is a concomitant of uremia and an unfavorable sign.

The **central nervous system** is surprisingly little disturbed through the catastrophe. While mental confusion is encountered, it is not the rule; on the other hand, the patient's mind appears to be clear during the diarrheal stage, even though he is obviously in a profound state of apathy. The so-called typhoid state is, however, in contrast to this. The patient becomes drowsy, consciousness is clouded, and extreme confusion develops, and with rising temperature the patient passes into delirium. This condition may persist for many hours until coma supervenes and the patient expires; or it may pass off into a condition of normal sleep, with final recovery. As uremia develops the same events may be seen.

The **skin** shows dehydration, as has been described. In addition, there have been seen urticarial or morbilliform eruptions in the later course (on the fifth-sixth and ninth-twelfth days, respectively) which are attributed to allergy (Soucek, 1916).

Fever in cholera is not ordinarily marked, except as noted above, since it is masked by the subnormal temperature and disordered heat regulation of the shock state. With the stage of reaction, the temperature may rise to 101° to 102° F., and in a few patients this may be observed from the time of admission, but many patients are practically afebrile after the first day or two. Often a rise in temperature precedes death, especially with uremia, and then quite high figures are seen. We have no reason to believe that elevations were due to pyrogenic infusion fluids, in our time, as they may have been in the past. The fact that little or no fever is often seen even when the patient's fluid balance has been restored reasonably well suggests that cholera is not an especially febrile disease, just as Napier (1943) declares. Nor is it an especially "toxic" disease, as consideration of the symptoms will show, or a so-called toxemia.

COURSE OF THE DISEASE

Cholera progresses through well-defined clinical stages, provided the patient survives each of them. At any stage save that of incubation, he may succumb to the extreme results of fluid loss, but, enduring these, he may yet die of renal insufficiency. If the temporary renal shutdown is not fatal, i.e., if it does not exceed his tolerance, then recovery will follow and complications are relatively unimportant. Uremia is hardly a "complication"; it is a completely characteristic feature of cholera and a direct result of the essential disturbance of fluid balance. The complications are pneumonia, keratitis (corneal ulcer), cholecystitis, parotitis, jaundice, and abortion.

Incubation.—This stage may occupy from 1 to 5 days, usually 3 days, and may be characterized by vague abdominal distress and infrequently nausea and vomiting, but it is not usually certain that the patient accurately recalls these events. It is probable that most patients have no symptoms during this stage. If, however, the ingestion of vibrios took place long before the onset, which was precipitated by intercurrent disease (e.g., dysentery), then the incubation period must have been the duration of the carrier state, or a matter of weeks. A very brief incubation period, perhaps only a few hours, is occasionally found during an epidemic, but its significance is difficult to determine.

Evacuation.—The diarrhea usually begins abruptly and with violence and is soon accompanied by profuse vomiting. The stools are passed with a sense of relief, yet the patient is quickly prostrated, with retching, muscular cramps, and occasionally hiccup. Dehydration becomes obvious within a few hours, and signs of circulatory embarrassment, together with extreme thirst, rapidly follow. Depending on the body resources, evacuation may continue for only a few hours, or intermittently for as long as several days. During this time the picture of extreme shock develops. Exceptionally the onset may be progressive, with only a mild diarrhea and feculent stools, but even then, within an hour or two, the stage of evacuation is in full course.

Collapse.—This is the stage of circulatory failure, called the "algid" stage, in which the patient lies prostrate, with rapid, weak, and later irregular pulse, distant heart sounds, extreme hypotension (with a systolic pressure of 60 mm. or less, and frequently not determinable) and shallow, rapid respirations. Vomiting and retching cease, although diarrhea may continue on a diminishing scale. There is still no impairment of mental faculties, although some patients begin to have clouding of consciousness and even, in moribund cases, coma. The body temperature is likely to be normal, but the skin and even the breath are chilly. The patient is an appalling sight, as if already dead, and yet he may live through this stage. Anuria may be present.

Reaction.—Now the peripheral circulation begins to return, and the skin feels warmer. Diarrhea has ceased. Although oliguria may be present, there is usually some irregular increase in the amount of the urine, with considerable albumin and casts. The patient's color improves, and the pulse is stronger. Bile-stained stools may be formed in small amounts, but more often nothing is passed. If the patient can produce a liter of urine in 24 hours, it is assumed that recovery will follow.

Renal Failure: To reach the stage of reaction does not insure recovery. This will depend on the re-establishment of urinary secretion. Even though the circulation returns, azotemia may increase, with hypertension, delirium, convulsions, and death in uremia.

Sometimes the return of kidney function is intermittent, and finally unsuccessful. As in other diseases with renal insufficiency, the blood pressure rises as if to bring about adequate filtration by force; in cholera, this will occur as well as the restored circulation can permit. Some nitrogen is thus cleared, but the blood pressure may fall off again, and anuria may return. See-sawing of this kind may continue, and the patient may die, or the quantity of urine may increase progressively, albumin become a little less, and azotemia steadily diminish, until an ample flow of urine makes recovery a certainty. We have witnessed the latter course during the administration of testosterone (Henderson et al., 1948) when clinical findings suggested irreparable kidney damage. From 15 to 25 per cent of the deaths in cholera occur in uremia. The proportion is larger in patients with damaged or overburdened kidneys (e.g., pregnant women). Any measure which materially aids the restoration of renal function is of great practical value in cholera.

The fact that some patients react well, and then go on to uremia, has given rise to the supposition that as the circulation improves, more toxin can be absorbed from the damaged intestine, and specific injury to the kidney is produced by this toxin. On examination it will not be found that any lasting gain in renal function has been established and then lost. On the contrary, the patient is in renal failure from the stage of collapse, and only intermittently produces a little urine, by the mechanism described, before dying eventually of uremia. The case for a systemic action of cholera toxin is supported by some other findings but not so well by conditions involving the kidney.

Convalescence: This is usually rapid, but the patient is long in a weakened condition and in early convalescence may collapse as a result of undue effort. This is attributed to "heart failure," whatever the cause.

Manner of Death: In severe cases, the stage of evacuation passes rapidly into the stage of collapse, and with increasing cyanosis and circulatory failure the patient, although conscious, may expire at any time. An increasingly rapid, thready and irregular pulse, or a leaden complexion with labored, shallow respirations ("asphyxial stage"), or the advent of coma may portend the loss of the patient.

Clinical Varieties: Even in a single epidemic, all grades of severity can be found. The mild, somewhat benign diarrheas ("cholerine") are limited to the early cases. Patients with this so-called "choleraic diarrhea" may remain ambulatory and never advance to the point of renal insufficiency. They serve admirably as carriers.

Cholera, or "cholera gravis," is otherwise that disease which has been described, differing from case to case only in the earliness of death and the predominant clinical features: algid, asphyctic, typhoid, uremic, etc. An interesting clinical variation is found in children, where the picture of meningitis is commonly imitated.

Cholera sicca (cholera siderans) is a rare form of cholera characterized by sudden collapse and death of a patient before there has even been any diarrhea. Post-mortem examination shows the presence of rice water, containing cholera vibrios, in the intestine. Because of this perplexing phenomenon, it is not possible to rule out a toxin as the cause of profound systemic disturbances in at least a few cases of cholera. Whereas cholera sicca is said (Whitmore, 1929) to occur in very old or severely debilitated subjects, as after dengue or with pulmonary tuberculosis, it is not limited to such patients. Thus one may reflect on disturbances of salt and water balance severe enough to exceed the functional capacity of the adrenal cortex in any patient whose condition is extremely bad, but in the case of robust individuals other explanations must be sought.

LABORATORY FINDINGS

Serology

Agglutination produced by the patient's serum begins to appear on the fourth day of the disease, in low titer (1:40), and reaches high values at about the seventh day (up to 1:1000) (Pasricha and Chatterjee, 1939; Yacob and Chaudri, 1945). The "H" antigen produces the more common and marked immune response. The response is more or less specific for the infecting strain; that is, this is better agglutinated than the "standard" organism such as Inaba, but exceptions occur. Accompanying nonpathogenic vibrios may excite no serologic response whatever. Because of the late development of serologic findings, they are not of immediate diagnostic usefulness, but they have confirmatory value and may be indispensable if vibrios have not been found in the stools. *Agglutinins against Brucella,* in titers of 1:500, may develop following vaccination against cholera (Eisele et al., 1946).

Blood Characteristics

Leucocytosis is present in cholera. The sedimentation rate is moderately increased (15 to 35 mm. in 1 hour). The features of hemoconcentration are marked: specific gravity, 1.060 to 1.080; hematocrit, 0.47 to 0.82; hemoglobin, 85 to 140 per cent; erythrocytes, up to 8,000,000 (Felsenfeld, 1938). The chemical abnormalities of dehydration, acidosis, and eventually azotemia are characteristic. Blood phenol is reported to be elevated in relation to the severity of the disease. The measurement of hemoconcentration can be carried out according to Scudder, 1940. (See also Gradwohl, 1948.)

Bacteriologic Diagnosis

In the Field.—With a common microscope and one stain, such as carbol fuchsin, vibrios can be recognized in the stool.

A film composed of mucus shreds from the stool should be dried, stained with carbol fuchsin 1:10 dilution, dried, and examined. When cholera vibrios are present, they appear as the characteristic comma bacillus and generally have the "fish-in-stream" appearance. Such an examination does not, of course, distinguish *V. comma* and nonpathogenic vibrios, and it should be borne in mind that even in a cholera epidemic almost half the vibrios seen are not pathogens (Heiser, 1914; Munson, 1915). Identification must be made finally upon a stool sample, or peptone-water culture, or even a tied loop of intestine, sent to the laboratory. If a high-titer anticholera rabbit serum is available, then agglutination can be tested with a bit of mucus from the stool (Dunbar, 1913). An indifferent serum will not affect the motility of the vibrios, while specific serum will cause motility to be lost. If a clear difference is found between two specimens treated thus, the test has real significance, but if negative, no conclusions should be drawn, since a limited number of true *V. comma* might respond to the test but be overlooked among other vibrios. The occurrence of nonmotile *V. comma* in some epidemics must also be remembered.

In the Laboratory (Seneca).—Specimens should be sent with the least delay, but if distances are great, agar slants can be inoculated in the field and be found useful as long as 2 weeks afterward under tropical conditions (Whitmore, 1929), or feces can be suspended in salt solution of 0.5 to 5 per cent strength (Panganiban and Schöbl, 1918) or in an equal part of bile for preserving the vibrios for several weeks.

The laboratory diagnosis of cholera depends on agglutinating, with specific serum, the vibrios which have been grown in pure culture from a specimen. To accomplish this, it is necessary to cultivate *V. comma* in a medium which prevents the growth of enteric organisms as well as possible, such a medium almost always being very alkaline. Prolific invention has been applied to such media, which now include, besides agar and peptone water, Dieudonné alkaline blood agar, Panja D.E.C. medium (1943), or Aronson plate (1915), alkaline meat infusion agar (Goldberger, 1913), bismuth sodium sulfite broth with brilliant green (Wilson and Blair, 1931) or without the dye but buffered to high alkalinity (Read and Pandit, 1941; Wilson and Reilly, 1940), potassium tellurite (Gohar, 1948a), starch-egg medium with a striking combination of dyes (Wilson and Reilly, 1940), a simple alkaline agar (Volpino, 1916), and a great many others (Read et al., 1941; Strong, 1943), practically all of which serve very well. (See Gradwohl, 1948.) The ideal medium, one upon which only cholera vibrios will grow, has yet to be discovered.

Depending on the material received, several procedures can be adopted.

Abundant specimens can be plated directly on Aronson's medium and *V. comma* taken off for agglutination at 18 hours; subculture should be made on plain or alkaline agar, however, to eliminate contaminants. The D.E.C. plate or Dieudonné's medium may be used and agglutination tested after 24 hours. It is usual to inoculate an alkaline agar plate also directly from the specimen. More scanty specimens should be first enriched by culture in alkaline peptone (pH 8 to 9) and vibros taken off the surface after 4 to 8 hours for further culture. Water should be cultured in 0.1 part of peptone with salt (peptone, 10 per cent, and sodium chloride, 5 per cent) for 24 hours in flasks and organisms taken off the surface. At appropriate stages, a loopful of material is studied for form and motility.

Agglutination Test: Taking an organism in pure culture which shows the morphology and motility of *V. comma,* agglutination is conclusive evidence of its identity (McLaughlin and Whitmore, 1910). A high-titer anti-O serum is used in serial dilutions up to 1:500 or 1:1,000 and a loopful taken for a hanging-drop preparation. Material from a plate colony is mixed with it, and with an indifferent serum or saline in a control preparation, and the two preparations compared for agglutination and for loss of motility.

Immune serum can be prepared by inoculating a rabbit with a small number, half of a 2 mm. loopful, of known *V. comma,* suspended in saline and injected intravenously, and bleeding the animal after 8 days. Such sera are also commercially available.

Macroscopic agglutination (Strong, 1943) is carried out in a test tube, using a loopful of pure agar culture suspended in normal saline, 1 c.c., to which is added 1 c.c. of saline containing the antiserum, and the mixture incubated for 2 hours. The mixture is turbid to begin with, but if complete agglutination has occurred, it is perfectly clear and the organisms are found precipitated at the bottom of the tube. Incomplete agglutination is seen as a residual turbidity, with some precipitation. Agglutination should be complete at a serum dilution of 1:1000.

Pfeiffer's phenomenon is an agglutination test which uses the peritoneal cavity of the guinea pig as the vessel and lysis of the vibrios as an end point. It is reliable and rapid, the peritoneal fluid being withdrawn after 15 to 20 minutes to determine whether the vibrios are nonmotile and deteriorated; if so, Pfeiffer's phenomenon is present, and the organisms are those for which the serum has activity.

Culture of stools for *V. comma* is made routinely as follows:

1. Inoculate Dunham peptone water, incubate 8 hours.
2. Make Gram stain, look for vibrios.
3. Streak one of the following and incubate: D. E. C. plate, Dieudonné's medium, Aronson's medium, alkaline agar plate, or other solid media.
4. Isolate suspicious colonies.
5. Agglutination with ''O'' antiserum.
6. Hemolysis using 5 per cent sheep or goat cells.

If there is no beta type hemolysis, the organism is *V. comma;* if beta hemolytic, it is El Tor type.

DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

In any epidemic, when bacteriologic proof has been secured for prior cases (see above), an overwhelming gastroenteritis is automatically assumed to be cholera. In isolated cases, and indeed even in the presence of epidemic cholera, it may be necessary to distinguish cases of exceptionally severe shigellosis and of ''food poisoning,'' as well as some more unusual disorders such as malarial diarrhea, meningitis, etc. Not only is dysentery apt to coexist in cholera country, but there is great likelihood of cholera carriers being precipitated into clinical cholera by an intercurrent shigellosis, etc., so that the diseases may co-exist in the individual patient. Fortunately, energetic treatment for cholera alone is appropriate to both diseases, and in the circumstances of epidemic cholera, the differentiation would seem academic.

Dysentery due to Shigella or Salmonella may show mucus or blood in the stools but not fluid of the rice water character, and there may be abdominal pain or cramps but not generalized muscular cramps involving the extremities; anuria is not likely to occur. The prolonged diarrhea of salmonellosis, when it occurs, may be markedly similar to cholera and has given rise to the expression "cholera nostras" for infections due to *S. typhimurium* or *S. enteritidis.* A conclusive diagnosis must rest on bacteriologic study.

Food poisoning can often be traced to its source, involves a limited circle of patients, and has an incubation period of 12 hours or less, unusually short for cholera. Knowing the source, one might appraise whether it seems a likely medium for transmitting cholera. But the clinical picture can be quite as cataclysmic as cholera itself, and differentiation on these grounds may not be possible.

Botulism is a prostrating disease due to the ingestion of the *Clostridium botulinum* toxin preformed in food. It has an incubation period of several days, with limited distribution. It can be distinguished from cholera by the absence of rice water diarrhea and the development, presently, of central nervous symptoms (paralysis: dysphagia, diplopia, aphonia).

Malaria prevails in much of the cholera country and may occur in a prostrating diarrheal form. The stools are not rice water, and the temperature is found high or cyclic. A high temperature or splenomegaly should call for quick examination of a blood film, and malaria may be found which demands immediate treatment. If cholera is known to exist nearby, the treatment should be instituted for *both* diseases.

Poisoning with mushrooms, arsenic, mercury, etc., gives rise to more conspicuous vomiting than diarrhea and generally has a more limited local distribution than cholera. If emesis is well established, intensive saline therapy should be used on the assumption that cholera might *also* be present, if known to be prevalent.

PROGNOSIS

No one can accurately assess the absolute mortality due to cholera, even within a single epidemic, because of the uncertain proportion of the cases which are actually seen and diagnosed. Under some conditions there may be one, or there may be ten patients, of whom no one knows, for each one who is treated, in part because of the uncertain communications present in the eastern world and in part because of the panic, chaos, and vast overwork of medical personnel that are present in cholera epidemic areas. If, therefore, one speaks of 50 per cent mortality, this includes some patients who have enjoyed medical cognizance and usually some treatment, and others who have entered into local statistics, with uncertain accuracy as to both number and diagnosis. It is usually said that the "average mortality" is 50 per cent. "Untreated cases" are said to have 40 to 75 per cent mortality. Of patients actually under medical supervision, about 20 to 30 per cent die, the greater number in the stage of collapse and the remainder later of uremia, but with intensive treatment, administered under favorable hospital conditions, the mortality may be less than 10 per cent. It must be appreciated that patients who live long enough to reach the hospital are necessarily a selected group, forming a small proportion of those involved in an epidemic. The aged, those with renal impairment, and pregnant women are especially liable to uremia, and as pregnant women usually abort, there are the considerable further risks of sepsis. Children have especially high mortality from cholera.

The several clinical manifestations which influence individual prognosis have been mentioned in the clinical secton (above).

TREATMENT

An extraordinary variety of supposedly therapeutic measures has come down through the history of cholera, and many of these seem difficult to abandon, however shadowy the evidence of benefit. More recent contributions have no better standing, even though their logic is more familiar, and among these are potassium permanganate (to "oxidize" the "toxin"), kaolin (to "adsorb" the same), and a variety of "disinfectants." With due respect to the honored history of these many objects, it should be emphasized that *nothing* should be given the cholera patient *by mouth* unless there is excellent reason to believe it will influence the disease process. This does not, however, leave an open field for the hypodermic injection of digitalis, epinephrine, etc., the rationale for which can be debated.

Intravenous saline is the definitive and curative treatment of cholera. It should be given as early as possible, and as frequently as necessary to preserve the volume of circulating blood, as shown by the hematocrit or blood specific gravity. The blood pressure is a late sign for appraising blood volume; it falls only when no further compensation for a drastically reduced volume is possible, and by this time it may be most difficult to restore the circulation even by energetic fluid therapy. No rule should be set for the dosage of saline, if repeated blood studies are practical; the dosage is a *sufficient* amount (Latta, 1831-1832) taking 1.060 as the highest permissible blood specific gravity and 50 as the highest hematocrit value. If repeated determinations cannot be done, an empirical dosage of 2,000 c.c. for adults can be set for the outset of treatment, to be repeated every 4 to 6 hours. The dosage and interval can be modified according to the amount of fluid loss which is obvious in the individual patient. If one administered a large excess of saline, it would be possible to induce congestive heart failure, the signs of which are dilatation of veins in the neck and presacral edema (in a recumbent patient); but as this is not found during the treatment of cholera, it can be assumed that one is still short of restoring the lost fluid in average, epidemic cases. Hence the use of saline may be as liberal as desired. Only patients with known cardiac pathology, or those who pass from dehydration to congestion as a result of treatment, call for especial caution. At the extreme are patients who have so little remaining blood that the veins, when cut down for instilling the infusion, do not even bleed: in such cases the requirement for fluid is so great that it may never be satisfied, far less exceeded.

The saline to be administered should, ordinarily, be physiologic salt solution, 0.85 per cent NaCl, pyrogen-free, in distilled water. Hypertonic saline (13.75 Gm. NaCl, 0.25 Gm. $CaCl_2$ per liter) is advised in "more severe" cases; in fact, it is difficult to distinguish which cholera patients are less severe than others, or to show that one solution has served better than the other. The same is true of improved solutions containing, for example, 5 per cent glucose (Gaertner, 1915). These supply a modicum of nutrition (200 calories per liter!) which is of undoubted aid. In actual practice, one employs the materials at hand. Even distilled water has been employed with apparent benefit (Sen Gupta, 1945).

If there is actually any choice of solutions, new information inclines one to the choice of a potassium-containing infusion, such as Rogers' hypertonic mixture of NaCl 8 Gm., $CaCl_2$ 0.25 Gm., and KCl 0.4 Gm., for the following reasons: (1) As the patient recovers, water is regained more quickly than electrolyte, leaving the patient in a state analogous to salt depletion or water intoxication, even though this fact is not apparent on clinical grounds. Nominally, at least, an excess of salt is desirable from the time of collapse. (2) Data from the treatment of infantile diarrheas, in which fluid loss reaches somewhat the magnitude found in cholera, suggest that one effect of a loss of extracellular fluid is movement of intracellular fluid outward to take its place in some measure. As the latter contains primarily potassium, there is a depletion of tissue potassium stores, not remedied by the usual sodium-salt infusions, and adding subsequently to the general electrolyte derangement and systemic weakness. Infusions providing a small proportion of potassium salts have, in infants, yielded considerably better results as judged clinically. It is our belief that the same rationale applies in cholera. As has been mentioned, however, it is not possible to distinguish on either clinical or statistical grounds whether one or another solution is the more appropriate, hence the recommendation must be made on the basis of physiologic theory rather than conclusive experience.

The solution should be warmed, preferably to higher than the body temperature, before administering. Any convenient container partially filled with warm water and, if possible, surrounded by an insulating jacket for night or cold weather can be used to suspend the infusion bottle and keep its contents warm. Whether an excessively warm infusion dilates the peripheral vessels and nullifies its own effectiveness in fitting the blood volume to the vascular bed may be disputed, but certainly the temperature *at the needle* should never be less than 99° F. and it ought to be 2 or 3 degrees higher in any except febrile patients. The possibility of adjusting each patient's infusion to his body temperature at the time, however attractive in theory, is remote under the usual conditions of epidemic cholera.

Some fluid can be given by hypodermoclysis as well. This is an auxiliary measure, of no consequence in combating acute shock since the uptake of fluid from the tissues is slow at best. Intraperitoneal injections are more difficult to give but act rapidly and well (Deb, 1947). Finally, fluids can be given by rectum, if evacuation is not still in progress, or has not yet begun (cholera sicca) (Goff and Denney, 1915).

Much emphasis has been given in the past to the use of alkaline infusions—made up with sodium bicarbonate (Rogers, 1917), lactate (Banerjee, 1936; Banerjee, et al., 1936; Hartmann, 1929; Hartmann and Senn, 1932), gluconate, etc.—in order to combat acidosis (Hartmann, 1929; Hartmann and Senn, 1932; Rogers, 1916; Sellards, 1917). It should be remembered that acidosis develops because of renal failure, and, despite the gratifying results that appear to attend the use of bicarbonate solutions, it is not at all clear that correcting acidosis favorably influences renal function. In all instances where this was thought to happen, ample volumes of fluid had been restored to the general circulation, which alone would have regained the acid-base controlling function of the kidneys. The practical objection to bicarbonate solutions is that they cannot be sterilized without decomposition to the hemolytic sodium carbonate; the theoretical objection is that a great proportion of chloride, lost from the digestive tract, also needs to be replaced (Banerjee, 1941). That sodium chloride can be given in excess does not seem likely.

The custom of designating one type of infusion as most suitable for the stage of evacuation, another for collapse, still another if uremia threatens, one especially adapted for controlling shock, etc., appears to ignore the single underlying disorder that gives rise to these successive manifestations. It may be remarked that a sudden accession of fluid may be poorly handled by patients in collapse, hence the first infusion must be administered slowly and with close observation, and with particular notice of the temperature of the fluid. When the response to saline infusions is limited, it must be recalled that the advanced stages of diarrhea entail a loss of protein as well, which can be made up by adding human plasma to the infusion, if it is available. There are otherwise no necessary departures from the intensive use of saline infusions as the central treatment of cholera.

Sulfonamides.—Since in any cholera epidemic up to 100 per cent of untreated patients will die, while more than 90 per cent of patients treated with saline will survive, it is difficult to appraise the effect of treatment directed against the vibrio itself. It should also be remembered that the organism does not survive more than 3 to 5 days, even if no drug is used, so that treatment must have effect in the earliest course of the disease if it is to accomplish anything of use; later, it can only add to the embarrassment of the kidneys.

Thus far there have been reports of the use of sulfaguanidine (Chopra et al., 1941; Chu et al., 1946; Gupta et al., 1945; Huang, 1944; Indian Research Fund Association Report, 1943, 1944, 1946; Seal, 1947), succinylsulfathiazole (Indian Research Fund Association Report, 1946), sulfadiazine

(Chu and Huang, 1946, and Chu et al., 1946; Indian Research Fund Association Report; Reimann et al., 1946), a modified sulfathiazole (Bhatnagar et al., 1948), and various other sulfonamides (Lehiri, 1945; Pasricha, 1942; Sadusk and Oswald, 1946; Sen and Basu, 1945). Only one drastic experiment (Indian Research Fund Association Report, 1946) used the drug without saline, in 53 cases, with a mortality of 21 per cent, compared with 75 per cent in 44 control patients. This certainly furnishes proof of the theoretical value of anti-infective therapy, but its practical significance must be doubted since any patient receiving medical attention at all can equally well receive saline, when the mortality is even lower. The difference produced by sulfonamides among saline-treated patients is less manifest: with sulfaguanidine, the mortality is reduced from 6 to 2 per cent (Indian Research Fund Association Report, 1946) or from 5 to 1 per cent (Gupta et al., 1945), or, in a smaller series, from 39 to 17 per cent (Indian Research Fund Association Report, 1946); with sulfadiazine, from 10 to 0 per cent (Chu and Huang, 1946). Thus taking all the experience together, it can be said that the best modern treatment is apt to produce a mortality of 6 per cent, while the further addition of sulfonamides will reduce this to only 3 per cent (Seneca and Henderson). Yet the inclusion of a few more, or less, favorable cases in a series, or the difference of a day's time in starting treatment, may lead adventitiously to greater contrasts than this.

A choice of sulfonamides is easily made. All who have tropical experience look with dread upon compounds like sulfadiazine, an absorbable sulfonamide having a likelihood to precipitate in the kidney if the patient is at all dehydrated (and even if he is not). Regardless of its activity against the cholera vibrio, sulfadiazine is not a drug of choice in the tropics, and very particularly not in the fluid depletion of cholera. Instead, one should elect one of the nonsystemic or "unabsorbable" compounds. In view of irregularities of its behavior, sulfaguanidine is not an ideal member of this class. The choice lies between succinylsulfathiazole and phthalyl sulfacetimide, and of these, phthalyl sulfacetimide is known to have not only excellent vibriocidal power but a striking ability to become absorbed into the proper tissue of the intestine rather than, so to speak, accumulate within the lumen where it can affect the free, noninvading organisms only. Our own experience (Seneca and Henderson) in a preliminary series of 40 cases was quite satisfactory. Only one patient was lost, and no toxic action of any kind could be attributed to phthalyl sulfacetimide. If, therefore, the means are at hand to supplement the established fluid therapy of cholera with sulfonamides, the use of phthalyl sulfacetimide is especially to be recommended. Failing this, succinylsulfathiazole should be of some value. Other compounds, including some recent innovations for which the evidence is unimpressive, are better dispensed with, rather than add further injury with doubtful benefit.

Other Methods.—It would be tedious to enumerate the preparations which have no recognizable value in cholera but enjoy earnest support in various parts of the world. From olden times we have purgatives, permanganate, kaolin (Arneth, 1916; Kuhne, 1918), essential oils, alcohol, atropine, irrigations of the stomach, acids by mouth, coffee to aid the kidneys, digitalis to aid the heart, Adrenalin, cupping, hot packs, mustard plasters, etc. More recently we hear of bacteriophage (Jadin, 1936; Pasricha, 1942; Sen and Basu, 1945), antitoxic serum, antivibrio serum, drugs such as Atabrine (Panja, 1945), dyes such as brilliant green (Panja and Ghosh, 1943), antibiotics such as streptomycin (Reimann et al., 1946), etc. It is seldom reported that any of these measures has failed to produce marked benefit in a goodly series of cases, especially since all are treated with saline infusions and have an excellent chance to recover for that reason.

The use of chloramphenicol (Chloromycetin) in experimental cholera infection has been reported by Gauld et al. (1949). Gauld and fellow workers attempted to determine the activity of this drug against *V. comma* both in vitro and in the treatment of mice experimentally inoculated with this organism. Chloromycetin was tested for its inhibitory effect upon two strains of *V. comma* cultured in single strength brain heart infusion broth with a pH of 7.6. Complete inhibition of growth was obtained with 0.005 mg. of Chloromycetin per cubic centimeter of culture media. In vivo experiments were made with Chloromycetin. Each experiment included groups of mice that were inoculated with *V. comma* and treated with sulfadiazine. Cultures of the Inaba and the Ogawa strains of *V. comma* on veal infusion broth were used to induce the experimental disease in mice. In each instance 0.5 c.c. of inoculum suspended in 5 per cent hog gastric mucin was injected intraperitoneally. While it is not possible to reproduce the human disease in laboratory animals, the intraperitoneal injection of large doses of *V. comma* into mice causes a rapidly developing septicemia and peritonitis, lacking, however, the vomiting, diarrhea, and extreme dehydration characteristic of cholera in man. The important conclusions from this work were that Chloromycetin is an effective antibiotic for the treatment of mice experimentally inoculated with *V. comma,* when given in adequate doses between 1 hour before and 2 hours after the injection of the organisms. These experiments suggest the possible usefulness of the drug as a chemoprophylactic agent among human contacts of cholera.

Editor's note (O. F.): Recently bacitracin, neomycin, and terramycin have proved useful in experimental cholera.

Testosterone.—We (Henderson et al., 1948) have administered large doses of testosterone propionate to cholera patients who were in uremia, less as a therapeutic measure than as a study in experimental medicine, the object being to utilize the restorative function known to be exerted upon the injured kidney by androgenic hormones. (The supporting data, being rather extensive, are presented in full in our report.) The resulting decline in mortality was sufficiently obvious to confer a therapeutic status to the experiment. In 27 *uremic* patients the mortality was less than 20 per cent, as compared with 70 per cent usually found under the same circumstances in the same epidemic. We employed 25 or 50 mg. testosterone propionate daily by intramuscular injection, an essentially arbitrary amount; there is no objection to much larger doses. Our impression was that renal function was more rapidly (and more usually) restored in the treated patients, and in typical cases it was possible to trace a relationship between the treatment and this effect, although only an extended series could show this conclusively. Not a large number of cholera patients, nowdays, die in uremia, but of *deaths* in cholera, uremia is responsible for a very large proportion. We have felt that our experiment should be continued wherever the circumstances permit. While the beneficial effect of testosterone is mainly related to kidney function, it should not be overlooked that it also produces sodium chloride and water retention which is probably responsible for part of the physiologic benefit. It is known that the adrenocortical hormone, administered as desoxycorticosterone acetate, has even more marked action and aids in maintaining the blood pressure under adverse conditions of water balance. It might well be found that both hormones can be used to advantage prophylactically, if the opportunity is presented, rather than permit uremia to develop. Moreover, when utilized sufficiently long in advance of collapse, the use of testosterone may contribute greatly to improved nitrogen balance.

General Management.—The cholera patient should be put at rest and disturbed as little as possible. Morphine should be administered to relieve anxiety, restlessness, and muscular cramps; the dosage should not be calculated to reduce the diarrhea, as this is futile. No food can usually be given by mouth, as it will be vomited immediately. Every effort should be made to induce the patient to take fluids by mouth. Many cannot take fluids, but one must keep trying to get fluids into these patients. Where water or fruit juice cannot be tolerated, try shaved ice, a spoonful at a time, or, better still, shaved ice with ginger ale. Some control of the vomiting can be secured with small doses of cocaine, such as 8 mg. (1/8 gr.), and it may be advantageous to administer this dropwise under the tongue, in smaller amounts. Intravenous fluids should be started as soon as the diagnosis is made and should be continued. If phthalyl sulfacetimide is available, 5 Gm. should be given as early as possible, then 1 Gm. every 2 hours for 5 days, by mouth.

When the stage of collapse is reached, other medication should be withheld but the infusions maintained, perhaps with the addition of glucose, 5 per cent, and thiamine (2 mg. per liter of glucose solution). Glycosuria can be ignored. If testosterone propionate is used, it can be begun at any time, but preferably before renal insufficiency is advanced, unless one is making a deliberate selection of cases; and at least 50 mg. should be administered daily.

PROPHYLAXIS

Control of Transmission.—When cholera is known to exist in a region, utmost attention must be paid to the sterilization of water—not only drinking water, which can be observed and controlled, but also the water which contaminates vegetables, sea food, etc. For this reason eating uncooked food is dangerous. Even fruits, before being peeled, should be washed clean in boiled water, or steeped in boiling water. Ice and all contents of an ice refrigerator must be suspected. Water in wells can be treated, according to the local fashion, with either potassium permanganate or calcium hypochlorite, in order to produce a residual chlorine content of 2 ppm. or higher. (Convenient testing devices can be used to show whether the residue is sufficient. If the taste is obnoxious, the water can be allowed to stand for a day, if protected from contamination, or a little ammonia can be added before chlorination.) Since there is not universal agreement upon the security given by these measures, it is likely that more water will be boiled as the epidemic becomes more oppresive. The inclination toward tea drinking in cholera country has probably saved countless European lives.

Contaminated water can be found on the hands, as well as the food, especially if one is dealing with cholera patients. Personal cleanliness is urgently needed.

In the presence of an actual case of cholera, continuous disinfection of the patient's dejecta, and of linen and other articles in contact with the patient, must be carried out. There must be no opportunity for patients or carriers to contaminate the water supplies (or food) with their feces. Flies must be dealt with by screening and by insecticide sprays used indoors, and their bodies must be treated as infected material.

Most of these efforts are self-evident. One must have full cognizance of the infectious material discharged by patients and carriers and where it goes. One must have full knowledge of what comes into the mouth, and where it comes from. Trained personnel are aware of both; indifferent native personnel may pay little attention to either.

On a more than local scale, the importation of cholera into a new region or country can be guarded against by quarantine, a delay allowing incubating cholera to become manifest (Smith, 1938), but carriers can be detected only by repeated stool examinations and remain an important hazard. It is said (Strong, 1943), however, that epidemic cholera has not been transmitted by a carrier of more than 2 months' standing. Air travel has introduced a new complexity, since the incubation period of cholera may not elapse en route, as it necessarily does in sea travel, and thus rules have been placed in effect to delay the arrival of persons from cholera country until incubation can be completed. In the end, of course, the control of the disease depends above all upon the security of water supplies in the country of arrival. That this is never perfect has been vividly shown, for example, by amebiasis in Chicago, and may at any time become apparent again.

Immunization.—The use of vibrio material as an inoculation material was introduced as early as 1885 by Ferrán, who employed living organisms injected subcutaneously. At present a variety of methods is used to prepare vaccine (Jennings and Linton, 1944; Pandit, 1948; Ranta and Dolman, 1943; Sokhey, 1944) and various tests such as the guinea pig (Sugino, 1935) and "mouse protection tests" (appraising the antibodies developed in the human subject's serum) are carried out in the effort to evaluate the materials used (Ciuca and Balteanu, 1926; Griffitts, 1944; Ranta and Dolman, 1944). Inoculations are usually subcutaneous (but they may also be intradermal—Panja and Das, 1947) and consist of 8,000 million killed *V. comma* per cubic centimeter, the dosage being 0.5, 0.5, and 1.0 c.c. at intervals of 7 to 10 days. By various criteria, the induced immunity is short, lasting only 6 months or less, so that reinjection of 1 c.c. is practiced every 4 months in the presence of epidemic cholera. While the older literature contains a diversity of opinion as to the effectiveness of vaccination, and indeed it might be impossible to show conclusively that it is effective, experience strongly favors it. In India, for example, cholera is ten times as common among unvaccinated as among vaccinated persons, using either a phenolized or a "protein-free" material (Pandit, 1948; Sokhey, 1944). A similar reduction of morbidity was reported in the Greek army (Arnaud, 1914) and in other armies (Kersten, 1918). The Nizzam of Hyderabad forbade pilgrims to cross his territory unless they were vaccinated against cholera, when it was found that the disease was practically eradicated from their groups *(palkies)* even though it had been present when they started (Rao, 1947). Though morbidity may occur even with vaccination, the mortality is demonstrably smaller. We did not see patients with cholera who had been given complete vaccination 3 weeks or more previously, while those who had been inoculated more recently were indistinguishable from other patients. It is not necessary to use a vaccine prepared from numerous strains of cholera vibrio. The Ogawa and Inaba types should be present, and recently isolated strains probably have greater protective value than stock organisms.

Recently a cholera toxoid, obtained from El Tor vibrios (Gohar, 1948c; Takita, 1939), has been employed; it has been combined with killed vibrios and administered simultaneously with vaccine of dysentery bacilli, a rational and desirable combination (Felsenfeld and Young, 1945).

Despite the probable value of vaccination, the most important factor to protect against cholera is general and personal hygiene.

Chemoprophylaxis.—Bacterial inoculation, while statistically effective, ensures variable protection to the individual, and then only after a delay of several weeks. It is evident that greater security can be secured for persons close to an actual epidemic. This has been attempted by giving prophylactic doses of sulfadiazine (Peterson, 1946), but it is our belief that a less toxic sulfonamide is desirable for routine use in large groups of people. We have indicated (Seneca and Henderson) that such a compound as phthalyl sulfacetimide can be used for this purpose. It is applicable to routine administration on a large scale, without immediate supervision, since no detectable blood concentration is set up and there is no conceivable hazard of crystalluria. Controlled groups such as military personnel or hospital staffs, exposed to cholera in a region, can be afforded continuous protection from the first day by a standardized prophylactic dose such as 1 Gm. daily. Whether such a simple measure will ever find province- or nation-wide application, as in India, is problematic, although the far more troublesome vaccination has been extended to groups as extensive as several million persons as a result of admirable public health activity in China. It would be a happy and novel event if the cholera vibrio, transmitted as freely as before, never found a human intestine in which it could survive and multiply.

REFERENCES

Abdoelrachman, R.: 1944-1945. Vibrio Research in Hejaz in Connection With the El Tor Problem, A. van Leeuwenhoek Nederl. tijdschr. voor hygiene, microbiol. en serol. **10:** 93.

Anonymous: 1947. Cholera in Egypt, Chron. World Health Organ **1:** 157.

Arnaud, F.: 1914. Le Choléra dans l'armée hellénique, Bull. Acad. de méd., Paris **71:** 384.

Arneth, J.: 1916. Zur Behandlung der Cholera, Deutsche med. Wchnschr. **42:** 935.

Aronson, H.: 1915. Eine neue Methode der bakeriologischen Cholera-diagnose, Deutsche med. Wchnschr. **41:** 1027.

Banerjee, D. N.: 1936. Is Cholera Kidney a Form of Nephrosis? J. Indian M. A. **5:** 160.

Banerjee, D. N.: 1941. Hypochloremia in Cholera, Indian M. Gaz. **76:** **416.**

Banerjee, D. N., and Datta, C. K.: 1936. Sodium Lactate in the Prevention and Treatment of Cholera, J. Indian M. A. **5:** 168.

Bernard, P. N., Gillerm, J., and Gallut, J.: 1939. Sur quelques caractères des hemolysines des vibrions choleriques, Compt. rend. Soc. de biol. **130:** 228.

Bhatnagar, S. S., de SA, J., Fernandes, F., and Dinekar, P. V.: 1948. Chemotherapy of Cholera With a New Sulphonamide Compound (''6257''), Brit. M. J. **4554:** 719.

Breed, R. S., Murray, E. G. D., and Hitchens, A. P.: 1948. Bergey's Manual of Determinative Bacteriology, ed. 6, Baltimore, Williams & Wilkins Co.

Burnet, F. M., and Stone, J. D.: 1947. Desquamation of Intestinal Epithelium in Vitro by V. Cholerae Filtrates, Australian J. Exper. Biol. & M. Sc. **25:** 219.

Burrows, W.: 1944. The Endotoxin of the Cholera Vibrio, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **57:** 306.

Burrows, W., Mather, A. N., McGann, V. G., and Wagner, S. M.: 1946. Studies on Immunity in Asiatic Cholera, 2, J. Infect. Dis. **79:** 168.

Campbell-Renton, M. L.: 1942. The Recovery of Cholera Vibrios After Drying, J. Path. & Bact. **54:** 121.

Chatterjee, H. N.: 1946. Further Biochemical Study of the Blood of Cholera Patients, Trans. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **39:** 321.

Chopra, R. N., deMonte, A. J. H., and Chatterji, B. C.: 1941. Sulfanilyguanidine in Cholera, Indian M. Gaz. **76:** 712.

Chu, L. W., and Huang, C. H.: 1946. Effect of Sulfadiazine on Cholera, Am. J. Trop. Med. **26:** 281.

Chu, L. W., Huang, C. H., Chang, C. T., and Kao, H. C.: 1946. Sulfonamide Drugs in the Treatment of Cholera, Am. J. Trop. Med. **26:** 825.

Ciuca, M., and Balteanu, I.: 1926. Reactions de la peau dans la vaccination cutanée, Compt. rend. Soc. de biol. **90:** 317.

Deb, S. N.: 1947. Intraperitoneal Saline in Cholera, Indian J. M. Research **41:** 166.

DeMoor, C. E.: 1938. Un vibrion du type El Tor responsable, dans la partie sud de l'Isle de Célèbes, d'une epidemie présentant les apparances complètes du choléra, Bull. Office internat. d'hyg. pub. **30:** 1510.

DeMoor, C. E.: 1939. Epidemic Cholera in South Celebes Caused by Vibrio El Tor, Mededeel, v. d. dienst d. volksgezondh. in Nederl.-Indië **28:** 320.

Doorenbos, W.: 1936. Sur la présence d'hémolysines dans les jeunes cultures du vibrion cholérique, Compt. rend. Soc. de biol. **121:** 128.

Doorenbos, W.: 1936. Le choléra, Rev. d'hyg. **58:** 675.

Doorenbos, W.: 1937. Le choléra, Rev. d'hyg. **59:** 22.

Dunbar, W. P.: 1913. Asiatic Cholera. In Osler and McCrae: Modern Medicine, ed. 2, Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, pp. 1-672

Eisele, C. W., McCullogh, N. B., Beal, G. A., and Burrows, W.: 1946. Development of Brucella Agglutinins in Humans Following Vaccination for Cholera, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **61:** 89.

Felsenfeld, O.: 1937. Recovery of Cholera and Paracholera Vibrios From Water, Food, and Insects in Endemic Regions. Publ. Balkan. Inst. Epidemiology, No. 37, Sofia Bulgaria.

Felsenfeld, O.: 1938. Recherches en choléra, Compt. rend. Soc. microbiol. slav. **3:** 181.

Felsenfeld, O.: 1939a. El Vibrio El Tor, Mem. Inst. Ferrán **9:** 37.

Felsenfeld, O.: 1939b. Tipos de cólera vibrios, Pag. Hig. **23:** 17.

Felsenfeld, O.: 1944. The Lecithinase Activity of Vibrio Comma and the El Tor Vibrio, J. Bact. **48:** 155.

Felsenfeld, O., and Young, V. M.: 1945. Simultaneous Vaccination Against Bacillary Dysentery and Cholera With Toxoid-Vaccine, Am. J. Trop. Med. **25:** 421.

Fournier. J.: 1940. Sur quelques caractères de vibrions cholériques isolées à Chang-Hai en temps d'epidémie, Bull. Soc. path. exot. **33:** 421.

Gaertner, G.: 1915. Bemerkungen zur Pathologie und Therapie der Cholera Asiatica, Wien. med. Wchnschr. **65:** 182.

Gardner, A. D., and Venkatraman, K. V.: 1935. The Antigens of the Cholera Group of Vibrios, J. Hyg. **35:** 262.

Gauld et al.: 1949. J. Bact. March.

Goff, A. P., and Denney, O. E.: 1915. Clinical Observations on Asiatic Cholera in Manila in 1914, J. A. M. A. **64:** 1148.

Goldberger, J.: 1913. Some New Cholera Selective Media, Treasury Dept., United States Public Health Service, Hygienic Laboratory Bull. No. 91.

Gohar, M. A.: 1932. Some Observations on the Hemolysin and Toxin of Cholera and Related Organisms, Zentralbl. f. Bakt. **126:** 61.

Gohar, M. A.: 1948a. Isolation of the Cholera Vibrio, J. Trop. Med. **51:** 59.

Gohar, M. A.: 1948b. Cholera in Egypt, J. Trop. Med. **51:** 95.

Gohar, M. A.: 1948c. Cholera Vaccines, J. Trop. Med. **51:** 144.

Gradwohl, R. B. H.: 1948. Clinical Laboratory Methods and Diagnosis, ed. 4, vol. I. St. Louis, The C. V. Mosby Co.

Gradwohl, R. B. H., and Kourí, Pedro: 1948. Clinical Laboratory Methods and Diagnosis, ed. 4, St. Louis, The C. V. Mosby Co.

Greig, E. D. W.: 1913-1914. An Investigation of the Occurrence of the Cholera Vibrio in the Biliary Passages, Indian J. M. Research **1:** 44.

Greig, E. D. W.: 1913-1914. Preliminary Note on the Occurrence of the Comma Bacillus in the Urine of Cases of Cholera, Indian J. M. Research **1:** 90.

Greig, E. D. W.: 1914-1915. The Invasion of the Tissues by the Cholera Vibrio and Further Observations on Pneumonia in Cases of Cholera, Indian J. M. Research **1:** 1.

Greig, E. D. W.: 1914-1915. Lesions of the Gall-Bladder and Biliary Passages in Cholera: A Bacteriological, Histological and Experimental Study, Indian J. M. Research **2:** 28.

Greig, E. D. W.: 1914-1915. The Agglutinins in the Blood of Cholera Cases, Indian J. M. Research **2:** 733.

Greig, E. D. W.: 1916. Further Observations on Lesions of the Biliary Passages of Rabbits Dying After Repeated Intravenous Injection of Living Vibrios: A Contribution to the Study of Experimental Cholera Infection, Indian J. M. Research **3:** 397.

Grattan, H. W.: 1939. An Outbreak of 28 Cases of Cholera Among British Troops in Benares, J. Roy. Army M. Corps **72:** 21.

Griffitts, J. J.: 1944. Mouse Protective Antibodies in Human Serums Following Injections With Cholera Vaccine, Pub. Health Rep. **59:** 1374.

Gupta, S. K., Chatterji, B. C., Paul, B. M., and Ghose, R. N.: 1945. Sulfanilyguanidine in Cholera, Indian M. Gaz. **80:** 288.

Hartmann, A. F.: 1929. Pathogenesis and Treatment of Acidosis and Alkalosis, South. M. J. **22:** 517.

Hartmann, A. F., and Senn, M. J.: 1932. Studies in the Metabolism of Sodium d-Lactate, J. Clin. Investigation **11:** 337.

Heiberg, B.: 1935. On the Classification of Vibrio Cholerae and the Cholera-Like Vibrios, Copenhagen, Arnold Busck.

Heiser, V. G.: 1914. Cholera in the Philippines During 1913, M. Rec. **86:** 827.

Henderson, E., Seneca, Harry, Girgis Abd El Messih, and Weinberg, Marvin: 1948. Androgens and Renal Function. Effect of Testosterone Propionate in Uremia Due to Cholera, J. Clin. Endocrinol. **10:** 851.

Huang, Joo-Se: 1944. Treatment of Asiatic Cholera With Sulfaguanidine, J. A. M. A. **125:** 23.

Indian Research Fund Association Report Scientific Advisory Board for Year 1943. Cholera Treatment Enquiry Under the Director, School of Tropical Medicine, Calcutta.

Indian Research Fund Association Report Scientific Advisory Board for Year 1944. Cholera Treatment Enquiry Under the Director, School of Tropical Medicine, Calcutta.

Indian Research Fund Association Report Scientific Advisory Board for Year 1946. Cholera Treatment Enquiry Under the Director, School of Tropical Medicine, Calcutta.

Jadin, J.: 1936. Le bacteriophage anti-cholerique, Compt. rend Soc. de biol. **123:** 297.

Jennings, R. K., and Linton, R. W.: 1944. Production and Properties of BRF Direct Cholera Vaccine, J. Franklin Inst. **238:** 65.

Kabeshima, T.: 1918. Notes sur la nature biologique des vibrions d'El Tor, Compt. rend Soc. de biol. **81:** 616.

Kahn, M. C.: 1942. Public Health and Preventive Medicine, New York, Oxford University Press.

Kato, M.: 1941. A Vibrio Strain Isolated From Patients Having Food Intoxication, Saikingaku Zasshi **54**: 43.

Kersten, H. E.: 1918. Ueber eine Choleraepidemie, ihre Bekämpfung und die Einfluss der Schutzimfung auf ihren Verlauf, München. med. Wchnschr. **65**: 563.

Koch, K.: 1883. Deutsche med. Wchnschr. **9**: 615, 743, 884; **10**: 63, 111, 191, 221, 725.

Kuhne, V.: 1918. Kaolin in the Treatment of Cholera, Rev. méd. de la Suisse Rom. **38**: 555.

Lahiri, M. M., Das, P. C., and Malik, K. S.: 1939. The Viability of Vibrio Cholerae in Natural Waters, Indian M. Gaz. **74**: 742.

Latta, T.: 1831-1832. Malignant Cholera, Lancet **2**: 274.

Lehiri, S. C.: 1945. Sulfaguanidine, Sulfathiazole and Extract of Suprarenal Cortex in Treatment of Cholera, J. Indian M. A. **14**: 113.

Linton, R. W.: 1940. The Chemistry and Serology of the Vibrios, Bact. Rev. **4**: 261.

Loh, V. T., and Tai, T. Y.: 1935. Study of the Blood and Cholera With Note on Urine Analysis, Chinese M. J. **50**: 651.

McLaughlin, A. J., and Whitmore, E. R.: 1910. Cholera and Cholera-Like Vibrios Encountered in the Philippines, Philippine J. Sc., Manila (Sec. B: Med. Sc.) **5**: 403.

Marras, F. N.: 1938. Osservazioni sierologishe in rapporto alla agglutinabilita del Vibrio di El Tor isolato durante il pellegrinaggio del 1937, Ann. di med. nav. e. colon. **44**: 107.

Mertens, W. I., and Beeuwkes, H.: 1940. Haemolysis Experiments With Cholera, El Tor and Celebes Vibrios, Mededeel. v. d. dienst. d. volksgezondh. in Nederl.-Indië **29**: 10.

Misra, K. N.: 1945. Treatment of Cholera and Diarrhea; Observations on 210 Cases, J. Indian M. A. **14**: 113.

Munson, E. L.: 1915. Cholera Carriers in Relation to Cholera Control, Philippine J. Sc., Manila **10**: 1.

Napier, L. Everard: 1943. The Principles and Practice of Tropical Medicine, London, W. Thacker & Co.

Nichols, H. J.: 1916. Experimental Observations on the Pathogenesis of Gallbladder Infections in Typhoid, Cholera and Dysentery, J. Exper. Med. **24**: 497.

Otten, L.: 1939. Cholera El-Tor Problem, Geneesk. tijdschr. v. Nederl.-Indië **79**: 642.

Otten, L.: 1939. Cholera El-Tor Problem, Mededeel. v. d. dienst. d. Volksgezondh. in Nederl.-Indië **28**: 13.

Pandit, C. G.: 1948. Composition and Efficacy of Cholera Vaccines, Proc. 4th Internat. Congress Trop. Med. and Malaria **1**: 301.

Panganiban, C. S., and Schöbl, O.: 1918. Preservation of Cholera Stools for delayed Bacteriological Examination, Philippine J. Sc., Manila **13**: 275.

Panja, G.: 1945. Treatment of Cholera With Atabrine, Indian M. Gaz. **80**: 133.

Panja, G., and Das, N. N.: 1947. Immunity after Intradermal Inoculation of Cholera Vaccine, Indian J. M. Research **35**: 3.

Panja, G., and Ghosh, S. K.: 1943. The Action of Dyes on Vibrios, Indian J. M. Research **31**: 5.

Panja, G., and Ghosh, S. K.: 1943. A Modified Medium for the Isolation of Dysentery, Enteric and Cholera Organisms, Indian M. Gaz. **78**: 43.

Pasricha, C. L.: 1942. Evaluation of Different Methods of Treatment of Cholera, Proc. 6th Pacific Congr. Sc. **5**: 63.

Pasricha, C. L., and Chatterjee, D. N.: 1939. H and O Agglutinins in Cholera Patients, Indian M. Gaz. **74**: 330.

Pasricha, C. L., Lahiri, M. N., Das, P. C., and Paul, B. M.: 1939. The Serological Types of Vibrios Isolated From Cholera Patients in Calcutta, Indian M. Gaz. **74**: 680.

Peterson, J. S.: 1946. Epidemiological Studies in Cholera, Chinese M. J. **64**: 271.

Phalen, J. M.: 1942. General Winfield Scott—Sanitarian, Mil. Surgeon **90**: 694.

Ranta, L. E., and Dolman, C. E.: 1943. Observations in Cholera Vaccine, Canad. J. Pub. Health **34**: 26.

Ranta, L. E., and Dolman, C. E.: 1944. A Mouse Protection Test for Cholera Vaccine, Canad. J. Pub. Health **35**: 473.

Rao, S. R.: 1947. Role of Palkies in the Epidemiology of Cholera, Indian M. Gaz. **82**: 746.

Read, W. D. B.: 1939. Differential Isolation of V. Cholerae, Indian J. M. Research **26**: 851.

Read, W. D. B., and Pandit, S. R.: 1941. Distribution of V. Cholerae and El Tor Type Strains in Certain Rural Areas in India, Indian J. M. Research **29**: 403.

Read, W. D. B., Pandit, S. R., and Das, P. C.: 1942. Action of V. Cholerae and El Tor Type Strains on Goat's Corpuscles, Indian J. M. Research **30**: 183.

Read, W. D. B.: Venkatraman, K. V., and Ramakrishnan, C. S.: 1941. A Preserving Medium for the Transmission of Specimens for the Isolation of Vibrio Cholerae, Indian J. M. Research **29**: 681.

Reimann, H. A., Chang, G. C. T., Chu, L.-W., Liu, P. Y., and Ou, Y.: 1946. Clinical Study and Experimental Therapy With Streptomycin, Am. J. Trop. Med. **26**: 631.

Rogers, L.: 1915. The Results of the Hypertonic and Permanganate Treatment in 1,000 Cases of Cholera; With Remarks on the Value of Alkalis in the Prevention of Uremia and the Role of Atropin, Lancet **2**: 219.

Rogers, L.: 1916. Further Work on the Reduction of the Alkalinity of the Blood in Cholera; and Sodium Bicarbonate Injections in the Prevention of Uremia, Ann. Trop. & Parasitol., Liverp. **10**: 139.

Rogers, L.: 1917. The Mortality From Postcholeraic Uraemia: a 70 Per Cent Reduction Through Intravenous Injections of Sodium Bicarbonate, Lancet **2**: 745.

Sadusk, J. F., and Oswald, E.: 1946. In Vitro Effect of Various Sulfonamides on V. Cholerae, Am. J. Trop. Med. **23**: 631.

Sanarelli, G.: 1916. Pathogenie du cholera. Reproduction experimentale de la Maladie, Compt. rend. Acad. d. sc., Par. **165**: 538.

Sanyal, S. N.: 1941. The Epidemiology of Cholera, Calcutta M. J. **38**: 349.

Schöbl, O.: 1916. Further Studies on Experimental Cholera Carriers, J. Infect. Dis., Chicago **19**: 145.

Scott, H. H.: 1939. History of Tropical Medicine, London, Edward Arnold & Co.

Scudder, John: 1940. Shock: Blood Studies as a Guide to Therapy, Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott Co.

Seal, S. C.: 1945. The Problem of Endemicity of Cholera in Bengal, Indian M. Gaz. **80**: 414.

Seal, S. C.: 1947. Sulfaguanidine in the Treatment of Cholera Under Rural Conditions; a Report on 290 Cases, J. Indian M. A. **17**: 85.

Sellards, A. W.: 1917. The Principles of Acidosis and Clinical Methods for Its Study, Cambridge, Mass., Harvard University Press.

Sen, A. N., and Basu, U. P.: 1945. Synergetic Effect of Sulfanyl Benzamide on V. Cholerae Bacteriophage, Indian M. Gaz. **80**: 194.

Sen, S. N., Basu, N. B., and Chakraborty, D. C.: 1946. Studies on the Biochemistry of the ''Cholera-Red'' Reaction, Indian J. M. Research **34**: 151.

Sen Gupta, S. K.: 1945. Ordinary Water in Place of Distilled Water in Saline Transfusion in Cholera, Indian M. Gaz. **80**: 618.

Seneca, Harry: Laboratory Diagnosis of Cholera. To be published.

Seneca, Harry, and Henderson, Edward: Phthalyl sulfacetimide. To be published.

Shrivastava, D. L., and White, P. B.: 1947. Note on the Relationship of the So-Called Ogawa and Inaba Types of V. Cholerae, Indian J. M. Research **35**: 117.

Smith, H. F.: 1938. Revue des mesures adoptes pour empecher l'introduction du cholera dans les Iles Philippines, Bull. Office internat. d'hyg. pub. **30**: 1524.

Snow, J.: 1855. Report on the Cholera Outbreak in the Parish of St. James, Westminster, During the Autumn of 1854; presented to the Vestry by the Cholera Inquiry Committee, July.

Sokhey, S. S.: 1944. Report of the Scientific Advisory Board, Indian Res. Fund Assoc. 115.

Soman, D. W., and Nail, S. K.: 1945. Sub-Types of Cholera Vibrio Isolated From Cholera Patients in Bombay, Indian M. Gaz. **80**: 512.

Soucek, A.: 1916. Ueber das Exanthem bei der Cholera asiatica, Wien. med. Wchnschr. **66**: 428.

Strong, R. P.: 1943. Stitt's Diagnosis, Prevention and Treatment of Tropical Diseases, ed. 6, Philadelphia, The Blakiston Co.

Sugino, K.: 1935. Antigenic Properties of the Cholera Vaccine Prepared by the Philippine Bureau of Science, Philippine J. Sc. **58**: 153.

Takita, J.: 1939. Preparation of Toxin and Antitoxin of El Tor Vibrio, Kitasato Arch. Exper. Med. **16**: 218.

Taylor, J.: 1936. Recherches sur le cholera dans l'Ind., Bull. Office internat. d'hyg. pub. **28**: 1905.

Taylor, J.: 1938. Nouvelles observations sur la valeur de l'agglutination ''O'' pour le diagnostic cu vibrion cholérique, Bull. Office internat. d'hyg. pub. **30**: 1442.

United Nations: 1947. Cholera in Egypt. United States Public Health Serv. Rep. **62**: 1784.

Van Loghem, J. J.: 1913. Unterschied zwischen Haemolyse u. Haemodigestion auf der Blutagarplatte, Zentralbl. f. Bakt. **70**: 70.

Van Loghem, J. J.: 1938. Un vibrion ''El Tor'' pathogéne isolé aux Indes neerlandaises, Bull. Office internat. d'hyg. pub. **30**: 1520.

Van Loghem, J. J.: 1946. Le vibrion El Tor isolé a la Mecaue, Ann. Inst. Pasteur **72:** 976.

Venkatraman, K. V., Krishnaswami, A. K., and Ramakrishnan, C. S.: 1941. Occurrence of Vibrio El Tor in Natural Sources of Water in the Absence of Cholera, Indian J. M. Research **29:** 419.

Volpino, G.: 1916. L'uso del terreno di Aronson nella diagnosi rapida del vibrione cholerigeno, Policlin., Roma (sez. prat.) **23:** 549.

Von Roemer, L. S. A. M.: 1917. Over de cholera te Batavia in 1915 en 1916, Geneesk. tijdschr. v. Nederl.-Indië **57:** 295.

Whitmore, E. R.: 1929. Asiatic Cholera. In Tice, Frederick: Practice of Medicine, vol. 4, Hagerstown, Md., W. F. Prior Co., p. 39.

Wilkinson, P. B.: 1943. Cholera in Hong Kong, Lancet **1:** 169.

Wilson, W. J., and Blair, E. M. M.: 1931. Further Experience of the Bismuth Sulphite Enrichment Media in the Isolation of Bacillus Typhosus and B. Paratyphosus B From Feces, Sewage and Water, J. Hyg. **31:** 138.

Wilson, W. J., and Reilly, L. V.: 1940. Bismuth Sulphite Media for the Isolation of Vibrio Cholerae, J. Hyg. **40:** 532.

Yacob, K. M. B., and Chaudri, J. R.: 1945. A Note on the Presence of O Agglutinins in the Blood of Cholera Patients, Indian M. Gaz. **80:** 291.

Yen, C. H.: 1947. A differential Medium for the Isolation of the Cholera Vibrio, Chinese M. J. **65:** 188.

Editorial: 1947. Epidemiology of Cholera, Lancet **2:** 694.

Editorial: 1947. Cholera, British M. J. **2:** 619.

CHAPTER 29

SALMONELLOSIS. SHIGELLOSIS

Oscar Felsenfeld and Viola Mae Young

SALMONELLOSIS

(Typhoid and Paratyphoid. Salmonella Infections. Enteric Fever)

DEFINITION

Salmonellosis is a disease or carrier state caused by bacteria belonging to the genus Salmonella.

ETIOLOGY

The members of the genus Salmonella are usually characterized as gram-negative, non-spore-forming, mostly motile, aerobic, and facultative anaerobic microorganisms which ferment dextrose and mannitol with the formation of acid and gas (with the exception of the typhoid bacillus, the fowl cholera organism, and a few so-called anaerogenic strains which produce acid only, but no gas); do not ferment sucrose, lactose, or salicin; do not form indole or acetylmethylcarbinol; and which have a serologic pattern which fits into the White-Kauffmann-Edwards schema. All Salmonellae are pathogenic for man and animals.

The genus was named for Salmon, who first described an organism belonging to this group *(S. choleraesuis)*. Some bacteria previously placed into different genera have now been definitely added to the Salmonella group: the typhoid bacillus *(S. typhi* or *S. typhosa)* and the fowl cholera organism *(S. gallinarum)*. Some difficulties have been experienced with the nomenclature of Salmonellae.

In spite of the efforts of the Salmonella centers, obsolete and unaccepted nomenclature is frequently used. Table XVII shows the most frequently used terms.

The isolation of Salmonellae is described in Chapter 71. Here we wish only to re-emphasize that the exact diagnosis of the type is a task which must be carried out in specially equipped laboratories, called Salmonella centers. It is recommended, however, that the local laboratory test the basic biological properties of every organism suspected of being a Salmonella, eventually perform an agglutination test with a polyvalent serum, and report to the physician, ''Salmonella present. Type to follow.''

Details regarding the typing of Salmonellae are contained in the publications of Kauffmann (1941), Edwards and Bruner (1943), Monteverde (1943), Felsenfeld (1945), and Gradwohl (1948).

About 150 types and varieties of Salmonella are known to date. While any of them might be encountered in a given case or outbreak of salmonellosis, but 15 strains comprise the majority of types isolated from man.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

To Hormaeche et al. (1940) belongs credit for the so-called ''Montevideo Doctrine'' which asserts that persons contracting Salmonella infections react

Table XVII. Nomenclature of Salmonellae and Shigellae

PRESENT SCIENTIFIC NAME	SYNONYMS
Salmonella typhi	*Eberthella typhosa* *Salmonella typhosa* *Bacillus typhosus* *Bacterium typhosum* Typhoid bacillus
Salmonella paratyphi A	*Salmonella paratyphi* *Bacillus paratyphosus A* *Bacterium paratyphosum A* Paratyphoid A bacillus
Salmonella paratyphi B	*Salmonella schottmuelleri* *Bacillus paratyphosus B* *Bacterium paratyphosum B* Paratyphoid B bacillus
Salmonella paratyphi C	*Salmonella hirschfeldii* *Bacillus paratyphosus C* *Bacterium paratyphosum C* Van Loghem's bacillus Paratyphoid C bacillus
Salmonella typhimurium	*Salmonella enteritidis* Breslau *Salmonella aertrycke* *Bacillus pestis-caviae* *Bacterium typhi-murium* *Bacillus aertrycke* *Bacillus breslau*
Salmonella choleraesuis	*Salmonella suipestifer* *Bacillus suipestifer* *Bacterium suipestifer* Hog cholera bacillus
Salmonella enteritidis	*Salmonella enteritidis* Gaertner *Bacillus enteritidis* *Bacillus enteritidis* Gaertner *Bacterium enteritidis* *Bacterium enteritidis* Gaertner *Bacillus gaertner*
Shigella dysenteriae	*Shigella dysenteriae* (Shiga) *Bacterium dysenteriae* Shiga Shiga-Kruse bacillus
Shigella ambigua	*Shigella ambigua* Schmitz *Bacterium dysenteriae* "Schmitz" Schmitz bacillus
Shigella paradysenteriae	*Shigella paradysenteriae* Flexner *Shigella paradysenteriae* Flexner-Boyd *Bacterium dysenteriae* Flexner Flexner bacillus
Shigella alkalescens	*Bacterium alkalescens*
Shigella sonnei	*Shigella dysenteriae* Sonne *Shigella dispar** *Bacterium dysenteriae* Sonne *Bacterium dysenteriae* Sonne-Kruse Sonne bacillus Sonne-Kruse bacillus Sonne-Duval bacillus
Shigella dispar	*Shigella dispar* Castellani

*Often confused with *Shigella dispar* Castellani.

in different manners depending on several factors, among which age and general health play a great role. Thus septicemia and meningitis are more frequent in young animals and in infants than in healthy adults. Similarly, higher mortality is observed in debilitated people. The strain of the organism is of lesser importance for the course of the disease. This doctrine has been generally accepted, chiefly after statistical proof by Edwards and Bruner (1943), Bornstein (1943), Seligmann et al. (1946), and Hinshaw et al. (1944) invalidated the "Kieler Doctrine" which gave credit only to the strain of Salmonella in the determination of the course of the infection.

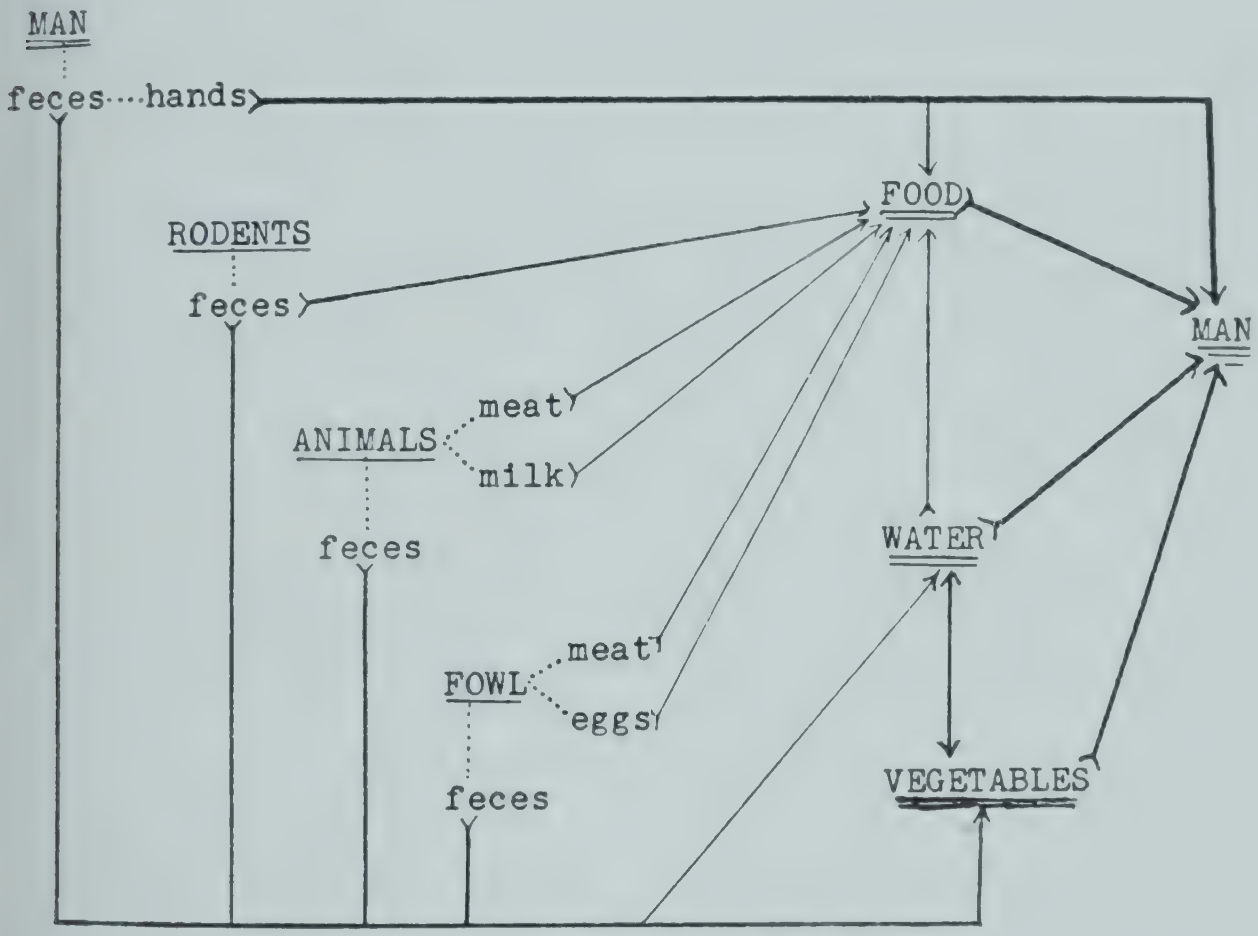


Fig. 158.—The transmission of Salmonella.

Certain Salmonellae, as *S. typhosa, S. paratyphi* A and C, are mostly transferred from man to man. Patients during the actual illness are not such dangerous sources of infection as are symptomless carriers. Salmonellae transmitted from man to man are most frequently transferred by dejecta which adhere to the fingers of food handlers and by drinking water which has been soiled with fecal material. The supervision of food handlers, including dairy workers, is an important measure for the prevention of salmonellosis. The story of "Typhoid Mary" is so well known that it need not be repeated here. Not only are those Salmonellae which, like the typhoid bacillus, are common to man but not animals propagated by food handlers but other Salmonellae are also frequently spread by human beings.

In America, where large quantities of fowl and eggs are consumed, Salmonellae which occur in fowl are frequently found in human salmonellosis. Hinshaw et al. (1944) and Kessel et al. (1945) first emphasized this fact. The meat of poultry, eggs, and egg products may carry the infection.

Meat of hogs and cows very often contain Salmonellae. Rubin et al. (1942), Cherry et al. (1943), Hormaeche et al. (1940), and others have found Salmonellae even in the best, federally inspected market meat. Brain, lymph nodes, and liver seem to be the most frequent sites of Salmonellae in animals. The animals may be symptomless carriers.

Rodents frequently harbor Salmonellae without dying of the infections. Rats and mice may contaminate stored food with their droppings and thus transmit the infectious agent to man.

Flies are recognized vectors of salmonellosis. They carry the organisms passively, on their wings or legs, also in stool particles.

Certain foods provide an excellent medium for the growth of Salmonellae. Nearly all milk and egg products, as cream, mayonnaise, and ice cream, are capable of supporting multiplication or survival of these organisms. Salmonellae survive on vegetables kept in the icebox for many weeks (Felsenfeld and Young, 1945).

The duration of the carrier state is variable. Rubinstein et al. (1944) found that about 2 per cent of all persons infected with Salmonellae excrete these organisms for a period longer than 1 year.

For the enumeration of the sources of infection and carrier state, reference is made to the articles of Bornstein (1943), Felsenfeld (1945), and Gradwohl (1948). Only the epidemiology and distribution of the most common Salmonella strains will be discussed in this chapter.

S. typhosa, the typhoid bacillus, causes only human infection, mostly in the form of typhoid fever. The organism is transferred from man to man chiefly by carriers who act as food handlers, and by polluted water. It occurs throughout the world but is a particularly serious problem in neglected rural communities with little or no sewage disposal or food and water sanitation. The average mortality is 8 per cent. Many epidemics of typhoid fever may be traced with the aid of bacteriophage typing of the causative organism. According to the phage susceptibility, several subtypes of *S. typhosa* are known.

S. paratyphi A predominates in subtropical and tropical regions. It is also present in continental Europe. This infection follows the typical man-to-man pattern. It is natural that food and water soiled with excreta of both active cases and of carriers play an eminent role in the communication of paratyphoid A infections.

S. paratyphi B causes about 20 per cent of the salmonellosis cases in America. It is usually communicated by man but has frequently been recovered from pigs, cows, sheep, and rats, chiefly in South America. It is present all over the world, being superseded, however, in some areas by the more numerous paratyphoid A infections.*

S. paratyphi C is practically unknown in America but it is frequent in the Near East, India, and Netherlands Indies. Its epidemiology resembles that of *S. paratyphi A.*

S. typhimurium is the most common Salmonella, causing about 30 to 35 per cent of all Salmonella infections. It usually produces an enteritis of a few days' duration. *S. typhi-*

---

*In recent years, *S. paratyphi B* has been encountered less frequently.

murium is spread by man, hogs, rodents, cows, and fowl. Human carriers, meat of infected animals and fowl, eggs, and food contaminated by rodents are the chief sources of human disease.

S. choleraesuis occurs throughout the world. Most infections are observed in America, England, and the Pacific area. Pork is the principal source of infection. Human carriers are extremely rare. This organism is the most dangerous of the Salmonellae, causing septicemia, with a mortality of about 25 per cent.

S. derby is found under all climes but attains local importance only in America. The chief sources of infection are man, fowl, and hogs. Sick poultry seems to play the greatest role. *S. derby* usually causes only enteritis.

S. thompson is rare in America but frequent in Europe where it attacks man and poultry. Few cases have been reported from the tropics. Most infections originate from eggs.

S. montevideo is found most frequently in the New World and in the Mediterranean area. Man, fowl, and hogs harbor this organism. In human beings, enteritis is the most common clinical manifestation.

S. oranienburg occurs more frequently in Europe than does *S. montevideo*. It has the same epidemiologic features.

S. newport has a world-wide distribution, acquiring much local importance in the warmer parts of America, in India, and in the Pacific area. Man, poultry, and hogs are the principal sources of infection. The disease appears under various clinical pictures of salmonellosis.

S. enteritidis is a major cause of salmonellosis in Europe, India, and the Pacific area but is only a minor agent in America, being infrequent in American fowl.

S. dublin is practically unknown in North America but is very often encountered in South America, South Africa, Australia, and England. It is endemic in cattle. *S. dublin* infection of ducks in Denmark is the probable cause of its frequency in human beings in that country.

S. panama is a typical organism of the New World. It is often isolated from man, poultry, and pigs, causing in human beings every clinical form of salmonellosis.

S. anatum is frequent in America, the Mediterranean area, and Netherlands Indies. It is readily isolated from man, poultry, and hogs. The disease usually caused by *S. anatum* is enteritis.

Other Salmonellae, which are more unusual, may attain local importance, but these are of less frequency. The strains enumerated above cause 90 per cent of the world's Salmonella infections. To complete the list, the following Salmonellae may be mentioned:

S. saint paul, S. reading, S. abortusbovis, S. bredeney, S. bareilly, S. hartford, S. tennessee, S. muenchen, S. berta, S. sendai, S. pullorum, S. gallinarum, S. london, S. give, S. meleagridis, S. newington, S. new brunswick, S. senftenberg, S. pretoria, S. worthington, S. kentucky, S. minnesota, and *S. urbana.*

Because of the infrequent occurrence of these Salmonellae, any statement regarding their means of communication would be merely theorizing without adequate foundation.

PATHOLOGY

The post-mortem findings differ in most cases according to the clinical form of salmonellosis. Deviations from this rule, however, are frequent. Extensive changes with few clinical symptoms, and vice versa, are by no means rare exceptions. There is little connection between the causative organism and the pathologic changes, except in a few instances, such as in the classic picture presented by typhoid fever, *S. choleraesuis* infections, etc. In the following paragraphs the classification of salmonellosis according to Hormaeche et al. (1940) is followed, with regard to Manson-Bahr's (1945) observations.

The Classical Enteric Fever

In most instances, classical enteric fever is a separate, well-defined clinical entity with typical pathologic findings. It is described in more detail in Chapter 30.

Classical enteric fever is a disease of the lymphatic tissues of the intestine, spleen, and bone marrow, and is characterized by the invasion of these organs by large mononuclear phagocytes, also called ''typhoid cells.'' The initial hyperplasia may dissolve through resorption or focal necrosis may develop, chiefly when vascular occlusions caused by bacterial emboli enter into the picture.

The invasion by large mononuclears causes hyperplasia of the Peyer's patches and solitary lymph follicles. These lymphatic structures become enlarged and project above the surface of the intestine. The changes are most evident in the lower part of the ileum and are difficult to follow in the large intestine because of the less extensive lymph follicles in that part of the bowel. After swelling, necrosis follows. Round, oval, or elongated ulcers result which, due to the topography of the Peyer's patches, extend along the longitudinal axis of the intestine. When only a part of the lymphatic structure necrotizes, irregular ulcers result.

The ulcers have a relatively clean floor. They reach into the muscularis but may be so deep that they extend to the peritoneum. Edema is usually observed in the environment of the ulcers.

These changes either are resorbed or they heal practically without any scar formation. Perforations develop in certain instances.

The abdominal lymphatics are congested and enlarged, due to the invasion by large mononuclears. The spleen is acutely congested and enlarged; it is deep red and soft. The sinuses are distended. There are many red blood cells in the pulp. Large mononuclear cells are very numerous; small areas of necrosis are not infrequent. The bone marrow shows many large mononuclear cells and necrotic foci. The liver is large, swollen, and cloudy. There is a proliferation of the mononuclear cells and focal necrosis, usually causing small lesions. The gall bladder shows only slight inflammation as a rule. The kidneys do not reveal much pathology; cloudy swelling is often observed.

The heart muscle may suffer degenerative changes; brown atrophy is frequently observed in fatal cases. The femoral and saphenous veins and the cerebral sinuses are often thrombosed. The lungs may suffer from ''pneumotyphoid'' caused by Salmonellae, in which typical organisms are isolated from the sputum. Secondary bronchitis and bronchopneumonia seem to be more frequent than the lobular typhoid pneumonia.

The bones, chiefly the tibia, sternum, ribs, and spine, may be the seats of chronic suppurative lesions. The rose spots of the skin are caused by bacillary emboli of the capillaries.

It is self-evident that the quantity and extension of these lesions may vary from case to case.

Typhoid-Like Fever (Salmonella Fever)

As stated before, although any Salmonella may cause this symptom complex, the principal agents are the paratyphoid bacilli, *S. sendai*, *S. panama*, and others. The pathology has been much discussed. Recent contributions, such as that of Angrist and Mollow (1946), shed much light upon the pathology of this form of salmonellosis.

Autopsy findings in Salmonella fever show wide variations. The picture of classical typhoid (enteric) fever is not infrequent in fatal cases. More often, however, specific post-mortem changes are lacking. Little or no pathology is present in the lymphatic tissues. Inflammation may dominate the picture, without much hyperplasia. The participation of organs other than the intestine may be less than in the classical enteric fever. The lungs and bones are rarely affected. Venous thrombi are only exceptionally found. Perforations are infrequent. The spleen is not always enlarged. Emboli of the skin capillaries are rare, except in paratyphoid B fever. The gall bladder is often attacked.

Septicemia

There is a bacteriemia in all cases of classical enteric fever and in Salmonella fever. A separate clinical entity, called "Salmonella septicemia," includes a symptom complex in which the septic, high, remittent fever predominates. Little or no changes are found in the intestines. If such alterations are present, they may be typhoidal in nature, or only a nonspecific inflammation is seen. When the case is examined at autopsy, the initial intestinal disturbances, which frequently introduce Salmonella septicemia, are already healed in the great majority of fatalities. Frequently, however, the infection enters the blood stream through the tonsils, without passing through the intestines. In such instances the participation of the intestinal lymphatic apparatus is not necessarily greater than that of the other parts of the body. Bronchitis and bronchopneumonia are the most frequent collateral findings.

Salmonella septicemia may lead to diseases of various organs. Meningitis, parametritis, cholecystitis, endocarditis, pneumonia, pyelitis, nephritis, and osteomyelitis are the most frequent forms of inflammation and abscess formation. Meningitis and osteomyelitis are more common in infants while pneumonia, pyelonephritis, and cholecystitis occur more frequently in old people.

Salmonella septicemia seems to be far more common in young children and in persons suffering from other diseases—arteriosclerosis, diabetes, nephritis, and leucemia—than in healthy adults. Thus, the autopsy findings are obscured by the pathology which must be attributed to the wasting disease which lowered the resistance of the patient to such an extent that the development of the septicemia became possible.

Enteritis

Salmonella enteritis (or gastroenteritis) rarely is a direct cause of death. Death is somewhat more frequently observed when salmonellosis causes a pseudoappendiceal syndrome upon which surgery is performed. It is understood, however, that salmonellosis may cause a true appendicitis; but the pseudoappendiceal picture is more frequent.

Hormaeche et al. (1940) divide Salmonella gastroenteritis in children into a dysenteric and a choleriform group. The pathologic findings, however, are only exceptionally characteristic. There may be hyperemia and inflammation. If ulceration is present, the ulcers are very often small. In many cases they are limited to the large intestine. In some cases an acute gastritis is present (Angrist and Mollow, 1946). Sometimes the lesions reach the rectosigmoid and resemble bacillary dysentery.

The lesions heal without scar formation or give rise to sequelae, such as mucous colitis, ''irritable colon,'' or ulcerative colitis.

Pseudosurgical Syndrome

Pseudosurgical syndrome is a clinical picture rather than a pathologic entity. It was most extensively studied by Seligmann et al. (1944, 1946). Salmonella enteritis may appear under the clinical picture of appendicitis, cholecystitis, or inflammations of the female genital organs. The pathologic changes are rarely typical and the diagnosis is made by laboratory examinations.

Carrier State

Persons who excrete Salmonellae without being actually ill are called ''Salmonella carriers.'' Such a state may develop after an attack of salmonellosis and the patient is then called a ''convalescent carrier.'' The ''contact carrier'' acquired his infection during an outbreak without becoming sick. The ''chronic carrier'' excretes Salmonellae for a considerable length of time, e.g., for more than one year. The ''active carrier'' harbors the organisms in his intestinal canal, while the ''passive carrier'' discharges them only during the period of ingestion.

The most outstanding pathologic changes are found in chronic carriers. The gall bladder usually shows only a slight inflammation in enteric fever. In most carriers, however, the gall bladder contains numerous lymphatic ''nests'' and infiltrates. Whether Salmonellae can predispose to the formation of gall stones, or whether gall stones favor the settlement of Salmonellae, is open to discussion. Extirpation of the gall bladder has cured numerous carriers; this practice is much recommended by many authorities.

CLINICAL SYMPTOMS

The clinical symptoms as related to statistics on the occurrence of Salmonellae are discussed by Edwards and Bruner (1943), Rubinstein et al. (1944), Seligmann et al. (1946), Varela and Zozaya from Mexico (1942), Vaccaro et al. from Chile (1943), Kitching from Canada (1945), Bruner (1945) and Maccolini (1941) from the Mediterranean area, Hayes and Freeman from India (1945), Lindberg and Bayliss from the Pacific area (1946); they are described in the survey articles of Hormaeche et al. (1940), Bornstein

(1943), and Felsenfeld (1945). To these basic forms must be added the "classical enteric fever" of Manson-Bahr (1945), as well as the pseudosurgical syndrome emphasized by Seligmann et al. (1944, 1946). The great importance of the different course of salmonellosis in children is pointed out by Hormaeche et al. (1940, 1943). As has been emphasized, Salmonella infections tend to produce a graver disease in young children. The classical typhoid fever, however, often has a light course in this age group, due to the greater tendency to resorption of the intestinal infiltrations and lesser tendency to vascular occlusions of the relatively wide intestinal capillaries in children.

The clinical forms of salmonellosis will be discussed according to the already enumerated types of this disease.

Classical Enteric Fever

This disease is decreasing in the United States (1946). The number of observed cases decreased during the past years to one-fifth of its former height. The classical picture, as described by Manson-Bahr (1945), is not too often observed today, because of the use of vaccination, sulfonamide medication, and antibiotics. The latter drugs are often applied during the beginning of the disease when it is mistaken for a pulmonary illness, dysentery, meningitis, or sepsis.

The incubation period is 3 to 21 days, seldom shorter or longer.

The course of the classical typhoid type follows the well-known pattern characterized by increase of the body temperature during the first week, continuous fever during the second and third weeks, followed by lysis during the fourth and fifth weeks. This fever curve, however, may be shorter or longer in any of its parts. Much material regarding the typical typhoid fever has been collected and published by Manson-Bahr (1945), Ganguli and Zeug (1945), and Stuart and Pullen (1946).

According to these descriptions and personal observations, the classical typhoid fever begins with a gradually rising temperature, or, in about 10 per cent of the cases, it begins suddenly. A sudden onset may be accompanied by chills or rigor. These initial chills must be distinguished from the transient chills which occur in many typhoid patents during the later course of the disease. In most instances the initial elevations of temperature are not observed by the physician because patients only rarely are seen during the first days of the disease.

The temperature reaches 102° to 105° F. during the peak of the febrile stage. While during the first week (ascending phase) the daily variations of the temperature do not exceed 1° to 1.5° F., in the second and third weeks (continuous fever) the difference between maximum and minimum temperatures may be between 1° and 5° F. Remitting temperatures begin usually during the third week, but often occur as early as the second week. The lysis extends for 1 to 2 weeks, with marked remissions. Thus the entire febrile period lasts 4 to 6 weeks. While the classical temperature curve is preserved, the fever may last from 3 to 15 weeks.

Headache, malaise, insomnia, apathy, and dizziness are regular features of the picture. Pain in the back and in the limbs is often reported. Anorexia is usually present; stupor develops in about 75 per cent and delirium in about 30 per cent of the cases. Psychosis is rare.

While a "stiff neck" is present in about 10 per cent of the patients, meningismus and meningitis are not very frequent. These must be differentiated by cerebrospinal fluid examination.

The tongue is coated; its margins are often clean, thus presenting the picture of the "typhoid V." The mouth is dry, and thirst is a frequent complaint. The cheeks are flushed, giving the patient the well-known "facies typhica."

An early symptom is epistaxis, which is observed in about 25 per cent of the patients. Respiratory catarrhs are very frequent, being present in about 50 per cent of the cases. The number of cases with bronchitis increases during the later course of the disease. While coryza is very frequent, bronchitis develops in about 75 per cent, pneumonia in about 10 per cent of the cases. Bronchopneumonia and pneumonia usually develop during the third week or later.

The pulse is slow, principally before the temperature reaches its maximum. The pulse rate is slower than one would expect from the temperature, rarely exceeding 96 to 120 per minute at 103° to 105° F. A dicrotic pulse is present in about 40 per cent of the patients. This dicrotism is mostly observed during the second and third week of the disease. The blood pressure is usually low. A soft systolic blowing sound is present in about 30 per cent of the cases; it is not of organic nature. Endocarditis, myocarditis, and pericarditis are very rare. Thrombophlebitis is a complication in about 5 per cent of the patients; it develops usually on the legs, with an insidious onset. Thrombophlebitis rarely occurs before the third week of the illness.

Less than 50 per cent of the patients have diarrhea. Pea-soup stools are present in about 30 per cent of the cases. Only about 10 per cent of the patients have diarrhea in the beginning of the disease, and severe diarrhea does not develop in more than 20 per cent of the cases. Constipation follows the diarrhea, and may be very obstinate.

Foul breath and sordes are frequent. Herpes labialis is only exceptionally seen. Nausea and vomiting occur in about 40 per cent of the patients.

The abdomen is usually distended and tender upon pressure. An enlarged liver may be felt in about 25 per cent of the cases, usually after the temperature assumes the continual character. The spleen is increased in size; it becomes palpable at the end of the first week in about 75 per cent of the patients, in other instances later. It is not excessively enlarged. The organ is tender and soft. Spleen enlargement may persist during the entire course of the disease or for only a few weeks or days.

Cholecystitis and jaundice occur in about 5 per cent of the cases.

Other organ involvements, such as cystitis, pyelitis, neuritis, conjunctivitis, arthritis, osteomyelitis, and otitis, are not too frequent.

Rose spots (roseola typhosa) occur during the second week, less frequently during the first or third week, in about 30 per cent of the patients. These spots are pale, slightly raised, macular, round, oval, or slightly irregular, about 2 to 5 mm. in diameter, varying considerably in shape and size and disappearing upon pressure. There may be few or many roseolae, distributed on the abdomen, chest, and extremities, most often on the trunk. The face is rarely involved. The soles, the palms, and the scalp do not become involved. The spots do not itch. Roseola appears in crops lasting for 2 to 6 days.

Among the other skin affections occurring in typhoid fever, furuncles, decubiti, and other ulcerations are the sign of uncleanliness, insufficient nursing care, and circulatory weakness.

Relapses of typhoid fever are not rare; they are observed in about 15 per cent of the cases. They develop 3 to 40 days after the termination of the typical fever curve and last for 1 to 6 weeks. They are more frequent in patients treated with antibiotics.

Typhoid-Like Fever (Salmonella Fever)

In the tropics, Salmonella fever is frequently caused by Salmonellae other than the typhoid bacillus. In persons who have been immunized against typhoid fever, the classical picture of typhoid is rarely observed. The disease very often takes the course of Salmonella fever. While children suffer more often from grave forms of salmonellosis, a mild course of typhoid is not rare in them. The fever, however, usually reaches a far higher peak than in adults.

Salmonella fever differs from the classical typhoid fever by generally having a shorter duration. Cases with a prolonged course, however, have also been observed. The fever rarely exceeds 104° F.

The disease may begin suddenly, with a chill, though an insidious onset is far more common. Anorexia, headache, and malaise are frequent symptoms. The tongue is usually coated. The patient does not have the characteristic toxic appearance of a person suffering from classical typhoid fever.

Epistaxis may occur. Labial herpes has also been described.

There is no discrepancy between the temperature and the pulse rate in most cases.

Abdominal pain is usually intense. There is distention and often meteorism. The spleen may or may not be enlarged. The meteorism, particularly in children, does not always permit palpation of this organ.

Rose spots are frequently observed in the tropics in paratyphoid B fever but are usually absent in other Salmonella infections.

Diarrhea may be entirely absent. Constipation throughout the entire course of the disease is often experienced in children. On the other hand, profuse diarrhea, beginning during the first or second week of the disease, is not uncommon.

A pseudosurgical syndrome, assuming the picture of an appendicitis, cholecystitis, or pelvic inflammation, is often present.

Pharyngitis and bronchitis are more common in typhoid infections than in salmonellosis caused by other organisms.

On the whole, the clinical picture of typhoid-like fever is not characteristic. The diagnosis cannot be made solely by physical examination and observation.

Septicemia

The prodromal stadium may begin with diarrhea which usually disappears during the later course of the disease. In such cases, the stools are light colored or green and contain mucus.

The septicemia proper frequently begins with chills, followed by the stage of diarrhea, either immediately or several days later. In many instances no bowel disturbances are present at all and the only symptom is fever. In a small number of cases the beginning is insidious, with slowly rising temperatures.

The fever is remittent. There are great differences between the morning and the evening thermometer readings, 5° F. or more. Continuous fever may be present for some days, but its general character remains remittent. The duration of the febrile episode is irregular; 3 to 6 weeks may be considered average.

There is malaise, headache, pain in the back and in the limbs, anorexia, and thirst. Delirium may be present. Insomnia and apathy are frequent. The tongue is heavily coated and the mouth is dry.

The pulse is soft and usually accelerated. A dicrotic pulse is not often observed.

Abdominal distention and pain may be present but often there is no intestinal discomfort. The spleen is usually enlarged, soft, and tender.

Rose spots are very rarely seen.

Bronchitis is often the most outstanding symptom and may dominate the clinical picture to such an extent that only the diagnosis of bronchitis or bronchopneumonia is made.

Salmonella septicemia is often observed in newborn babies and in older persons, in the latter case usually superimposed upon a wasting sickness, as arteriosclerosis, diabetes, tuberculosis, leucemia, nephritis, or malaria. The presence of these diseases may stand so strongly in the foreground that the possibility of a superimposed salmonellosis is not considered, especially in the absence of diarrhea.

Salmonella septicemia frequently leads to localized affections. In children, meningitis is the most frequent and most feared localization. Salmonella meningitis in children was extensively studied by Neter (1944) who called attention to the necessity of considering Salmonellae as a possible cause in every case of meningitis. The clinical picture of Salmonella meningitis does not show symptoms which permit its differentiation from acute meningitis caused by other nonacid-fast organisms.

Cholangitis, cholecystitis, pleuritis, pericarditis, thrombophlebitis, osteomyelitis, and pelvic inflammations often occur during or after Salmonella septicemia. An abscess may develop in nearly any part of the human body following such an infection.

There is very little in the clinical picture of Salmonella septicemia that would permit the diagnosis of this disease solely on the ground of physical examination and observation.

Enteritis

The incubation time of Salmonella enteritis varies from 8 hours to 2 weeks.

The fever has nothing in common with the curve observed in typhoid. In most cases, there is no fever at all. About 40 per cent of the patients have low-grade fever, lasting from 2 to 4 days. The temperature seldom exceeds 102° F. Exceptionally, chills, high fever, and prostration, with quickly fatal ending, are observed, usually in otherwise sick, debilitated persons.

The onset is sudden in 90 per cent of the cases. There is diarrhea, similar to bacillary dysentery. The number of stools varies from 2 to 20 a day. The stools contain much mucus but usually no blood.

There is abdominal distention, pain, and meteorism. The pain may be localized in the appendiceal, gall bladder, pelvic, or rectosigmoidal region. It must be kept in mind that true Salmonella appendicitis, cholecystitis, and salpingitis do exist, and therefore these symptoms must be evaluated carefully. Dicrotic pulse or an acutely enlarged spleen is very rarely seen.

There is usually little toxicity. Headache and malaise may be present. Rose spots are not observed. Bronchitis is rare. Vomiting is a frequent symptom, chiefly in the beginning of the disease.

The proctoscopic examination reveals in about 30 per cent of the cases an inflamed intestine similar to that observed in mild bacillary dysentery.

Syndromic Salmonellosis

As previously stated, salmonellosis may occur under the picture of appendicitis, cholecystitis, or pelvic inflammation. Such symptoms may be due to acute pathology of the intestines in the neighborhood of the appendix, gall bladder, or pelvic organs. On the other hand, Salmonellae may attack these organs. The differential diagnosis is made by clinical examination and laboratory investigation.

In the tropics, salmonellosis often occurs in a malarial or relapsing fever type, when the fever falls for a few days and rises again after such intervals. According to the length of the periods between the attacks, a malarial or a relapsing fever-like curve may be observed.

The dengue-like or influenza-like type of typhoid is characterized by high fever of short duration, involvement of the respiratory organs, and critical fall of temperature.

Carrier State

As a general rule, no symptoms are observed in chronic carriers. In several instances, however, thorough examination of the history and of the present state will reveal vague symptoms which may be attributed to the gal bladder or to the kidneys. Many carriers are accustomed to abdominal discomfort and do not complain about them.

COMPLICATIONS AND SEQUELAE

Any clinical form of salmonellosis may give rise to complications o sequelae.

Perforations

Perforations are the most feared complications in typhoid fever. Perforations occur during the period of intestinal ulcerations in about 2 to 5 pe cent of the typhoid cases.

The beginning is usually sudden. Tenderness and rigidity of the abdomen develop within a very short time. Hiccup is frequently present. Collapse occurs very often. During the later course symptoms of peritonitis develop.

Hemorrhages

It is often difficult to draw the line between "normal" bleeding from typhoid ulcers and hemorrhage. An alarming hemorrhage consists of the expulsion of tarry stools, or even pure blood without a considerable admixture of fecal material. Hemorrhages from the higher parts of the small intestine may cause hematemesis. Such intensive bleeding is observed as often as in about 10 per cent of the patients in the tropics. There may be only one large hemorrhage or the bleeding may be repeated. The amount of blood varies considerably in each case.

Respiratory Disorders

Bronchitis is not uncommon in salmonellosis. Pneumonia or bronchopneumonia develops in about 10 per cent of the cases of typhoid fever and Salmonella septicemia. Salmonellae may be present in the sputum, or the lung involvement may be caused by secondary invaders.

Manson-Bahr (1945) calls attention to the possible activation of tuberculosis during salmonellosis and suggests that pulmonary tuberculosis be considered in every case of prolonged bronchitis or bronchopneumonia during typhoid fever. The author noted that in cases of pulmonary tuberculosis the clinical condition became worse due to *Salmonella paratyphi B* infections in a children's hospital.

Pleuritis occurs in about 3 per cent of the cases. Empyema is rare.

Circulatory Disturbances

Thrombophlebitis is observed in typhoid fever and in Salmonella septicemia. It is usually a late complication, and the beginning is insidious. The legs are most frequently involved. Thrombophlebitis may cause embolism with all its sequelae.

Endocarditis, myocarditis, and pericarditis are rather rare. They are observed in less than 1 per cent of Salmonella infections. The myocardial involvement is often demonstrated only with the aid of electrocardiography.

Decubiti develop in patients with circulatory disturbances and in persons lacking proper nursing care.

Cholangitis and Cholecystitis

These are more frequent complications and sequelae of salmonellosis than is generally known. About 5 per cent of all Salmonella infections show a low-grade cholecystitis, and more than 25 per cent reveal an impaired liver function when tested with sensitivity reactions, e.g., the cephalin cholesterol flocculation test.

Pathologic changes in the gall bladder are often found in so-called "healthy chronic carriers" of Salmonellae.

Nervous System Disturbances

Meningitis is frequent in small children. Neuritis is infrequent but has been described as a sequela in typhoid and paratyphoid infections.

Meningismus is not rare. It can be differentiated from meningitis by laboratory examination.

Genitourinary Lesions

Salpingitis, parametritis, or perimetritis has been observed in about 1 per cent of female patients suffering from salmonellosis. Salmonella endometritis seems to be rare. The symptoms do not differ from those caused by other pyogenic organisms.

Pyelitis and pyelonephritis belong among the less common Salmonella infections. Involvement of the urinary system caused by secondary invaders is not rare in typhoid fever, typhoid-like fever, and Salmonella septicemia. While the organisms are excreted through the urine in about 25 per cent of febrile salmonellosis, lesions of the kidneys or the urinary bladder due to Salmonellae themselves are infrequent.

Pregnant women often miscarry during febrile salmonellosis. Enteritis, however, is easily tolerated during gestation.

Locomotor Apparatus

Salmonella arthritis belongs among the rarities. Osteomyelitis, chiefly in children, is more frequently observed. Typhoid bacilli, *S. typhimurium*, and *S. paratyphi B* are the chief offenders. The ribs, the spine, and the bones of the extremities are the most frequent seats of suppurative lesions which show very little tendency to spontaneous healing.

Abscess Formation and Skin Lesions

Salmonellae, chiefly those which cause septicemia, may cause localized suppurative lesions in the form of abscesses of the skin, of the brain, or of the internal secretory glands. Pus in the pleural and abdominal cavities may contain Salmonellae.

Atrophic skin lesions may occur, and alopecia often develops after typhoid fever.

It must be pointed out that the skin of persons living in the rural tropics often suffers from bacterial and mycotic lesions as well as from bites of arthropods. Rose spots must, therefore, be evaluated carefully. Furunculosis is not rare in hot regions during febrile salmonellosis.

Intestinal Tract

As a rule, lesions in the intestinal tract heal without scar formation. In some cases, however, chronic nonspecific colitis has been observed as a sequela of Salmonella enterocolitis. Salmonellae have also been recovered from spastic colitis ("irritable colon"), mucous colitis, and regional ileitis. While an "irritable colon" or ulcerative colitis is less frequently observed after salmonellosis than in connection with a Shigella, *Endamoeba histolytica,* or streptococcal infection, the role of Salmonellae in regional ileitis is a matter which merits further attention. We have isolated Salmonellae from 2 (out of 6) cases of regional ileitis; the organisms were identified as *S. typhimurium* and *S. montevideo,* respectively.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Isolation of Salmonellae

The methods recommended for the isolation of Salmonellae from feces and urine are described in Chapter 71.

One must keep in mind that several repeated stool examinations are necessary to recover the causative agent. Both stools and urine must be investigated.

In the classical typhoid fever, in Salmonella fever, and septicemia, the organisms are cultured from the blood stream and from the bone marrow with relative ease. Methods recommended for such cultures are described in Gradwohl: *Clinical Laboratory Methods and Diagnosis,* ed. 4, 1948, pp. 1565-1576. In this chapter, we wish only to point out that best results are obtained when every blood sample is inoculated simultaneously into three media: brain heart infusion with p-amino-benzoic acid, agar, and penicillinase; fluid thioglycollate medium; and trypticase soy broth. Salmonellae grow in the first and last of these liquids. If gram-negative rods are seen in smears from these culture fluids, blood and tryptose agar plates are streaked from them. Salmonella colonies, which grow well under aerobic and anaerobic conditions and in a carbon dioxide atmosphere, are identified by the usual procedure.

It must be kept in mind that blood and bone marrow cultures are positive for Salmonellae more often during the first period of the disease than during the later weeks.

Agglutination Reactions

The most frequent types of agglutination tests performed in salmonellosis are:

The Tube Agglutination Test (Widal Reaction).—This test is carried out by preparing serial dilutions of the patient's serum from 1:10 to 1:2360 and adding suspensions of Salmonellae to each dilution.

The Slide Agglutination Test (Spot Agglutination Test).—This reaction was devised by Welch and Stuart (1936). Small, decreasing amounts of the patient's serum are placed, with a Kahn pipette, into excavations of a glass plate. Three-hundredths amounts of a heavy suspension of Salmonellae are added to each drop of serum and the results are read after a few minutes.

The Whole Blood Test.—The whole blood test was described by Brumpt (1940). A drop of freshly collected or dry blood is mixed with 1 drop of antigen which contains sodium citrate. Agglutination developing within 1 minute is considered significant and equivalent to a positive Widal test with at least a 1:80 dilution of the serum.

The Vi Agglutination Test.—The technic and significance of the Vi agglutination test have been discussed by Brower (1944), Soman (1945), and Gunther (1946) (Gradwohl: *Clinical Laboratory Methods and Diagnosis*, ed. 4, 1948, p. 1468). This test is helpful in detecting typhoid carriers. On the other hand, it is positive in a fairly large number of uninfected persons.

After vaccination or previous attacks of salmonellosis and in diseases caused by agents other than Salmonella (malaria, pyelitis, etc.), sera often give positive agglutination tests. On the other hand, Salmonella infections which involve only the intestinal tract and even Salmonella fever due to certain strains (as *S. paratyphi A*) do not show an increased agglutination titer.

Frequently gross incongruities have been observed between the strain isolated from the patient and the result of the agglutination tests. The antigens commonly used for the serologic detection of salmonellosis in America are prepared from the typhoid bacillus and from *S. paratyphi A* and *S. paratyphi B*, while the great majority of salmonelloses are caused by other organisms (Bornstein, 1943; Seligmann et al., 1946; Felsenfeld, 1945). When the usual antigens are tested, an amazing maze of negative and positive findings results. There are many cross reactions between Salmonellae. It is recommended, therefore, that polyvalent antigens be used. Bornstein (1943) and Felsenfeld (1947) devised such agglutinogens. A positive reaction with these antigens indicates only that the patient has Salmonella antibodies.

The difficulties described above warrant a cautious evaluation of agglutination tests in salmonellosis. It must be kept in mind that negative results are not only possible but frequent, and that positive agglutination tests may be due to other causes. The following procedure is therefore recommended:

The agglutination test should be employed first in the beginning of the disease. It must be repeated 1 week to 10 days later. Significance must be attributed only to high titer (1:60 or more) reactions both with O and H antigens and to agglutination tests which, upon repetition, show at least a fourfold increase of one or both of the agglutination titers.

Recently developed excellent culture methods for the detection of Salmonellae from the patient reduce the importance of serologic tests.

Hematology

Anemia is not rare in salmonellosis. Cases with fever show most commonly a decrease in the number of red blood cells and of hemoglobin. The lowest findings are frequently recorded during the third or fourth week of the disease.

A slight increase in the number of white blood cells is not unusual in the earliest days of salmonellosis; 8,000 to 11,000 leucocytes per cubic millimeter are frequently counted during this period.

Leucopenia is the rule during the later course of febrile salmonellosis. There is a decrease in the polymorphonuclear cells, with a relative increase in the mononuclears. The number of white blood cells returns to normal by the end of the sickness.

The leucopenia is caused by the leucotoxin, the presence of which has been proved in a number of Salmonella cultures.

Perforations of the intestine, suppurative processes, secondary infections, and other similar conditions may cause leucocytosis.

Urinalysis

Urinalysis frequently reveals the presence of protein during the first part of febrile salmonellosis. Casts are observed in a small percentage of the cases.

The diazo reaction is frequently positive in febrile salmonellosis. Reports are lacking on large-scale examinations in cases suffering only from Salmonella enteritis.

PROGNOSIS

The over-all mortality of salmonellosis is 5 to 6 per cent. The fatality rate differs according to the age group and the clinical form of salmonellosis. In America, the death rate of classical typhoid fever varies between 10 and 15 per cent, in children from 5 to 10 per cent, in old people from 25 to 35 per cent. The mortality of Salmonella fever is 5 to 10 per cent, in children 10 to 15 per cent, in old people 15 to 20 per cent. The fatality of Salmonella septicemia is 15 to 20 per cent, in children 40 to 60 per cent, in old people 30 to 70 per cent. Enteritis kills 1 to 3 per cent of the patients.*

DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

Sepsis may be differentiated by the result of blood cultures. It is essential that no sulfonamides and no antibiotics be given to the patient before the blood is drawn.

Miliary tuberculosis is often difficult to differentiate from febrile salmonellosis. Frequent cultures of blood, stools, and urine for Salmonellae, ophthalmoscopic examination, x-ray pictures of the chest, and, in many cases, the rose spots will determine the diagnosis.

---

*Recent antibiotics have greatly reduced these mortality rates.

Typhus shows a rapid pulse, a persistent increase in the white blood cells, and a typical eruption.

Malaria and relapsing fever may be excluded by the examination of blood smears. The consistency and size of the spleen in malaria are different in many instances.

Beginning meningitis may be mistaken for typhoid fever and vice versa. The type of vomiting, the rigidity of the neck which develops during the third to fifth day, and Kernig's symptom will lead to the proper diagnosis. It must be kept in mind, however, that Salmonella meningitis is not as rare as generally thought. Many cases of Salmonella meningitis are diagnosed as "influenza meningitis" when the differentiation is based solely upon the finding of "gram-negative pleomorphic rods resembling influenza bacilli" in the smears from the spinal fluid. Such organisms are often proved in culture as Salmonellae.

Brucellosis has its own immunology and bacteriology. The brucellergin test, the opsonocytophagic index and, in many cases, the specific agglutination and blood culture will help to establish the diagnosis of an attack of brucellosis resembling Salmonella fever.

Appendicitis differs from Salmonella pseudoappendicitis by the increase in white blood cells. It must be remembered, however, that an initial slight leucocytosis is not rare in salmonellosis. The true appendicitis caused by Salmonella cannot be differentiated from appendicitis evoked by other factors.

Tuberculous peritonitis in children may cause numerous differential diagnostic difficulties. Laboratory examination gives proper leads for the diagnosis.

Gastroenteritis caused by Staphylococci differs from Salmonella infections by the shorter period of incubation, lack of fever, preponderance of vomiting, abdominal cramps, diarrhea, and prostration.

Streptococcus gastroenteritis is usually mild, with nausea, abdominal pain, and diarrhea.

The last two diseases, as well as atypical cases of cholera and bacillary dysentery, can be differentiated only by the isolation of a Salmonella, Shigella, or Vibrio from the patient or of the cocci from the incriminated food.

TREATMENT

Specific Serum

Serotherapy is recommended in classical typhoid fever. Felix produced a serum which proved promising in animal experiments and in clinical trials. Felix's serum is given in 25 c.c. doses, on 3 successive days, during the early course of the disease. The serum reduces the toxic symptoms. Serotherapy during the later course of Salmonellosis is valueless.

Sera against other Salmonellae are not available. Their use would be restricted to septic cases.

Sulfonamide Drugs

Kolmer and Rule (1941) and Lawrence and Sprague (1941) found sulfonamides slightly effective in vitro and in animal experiments with Salmonellae. Hardy (1943) was able to reduce temporarily the number of excreted typhoid bacilli by sulfonamide medication. Hutner and Zahl (1942), Rachmilewitz and Braun (1943), and others found that sulfonamide drugs reduced the toxicity of Salmonellae. Most authors, however, are very skeptical about the use of sulfonamide preparations in salmonellosis.

We have seen but little influence of sulfonamides upon salmonellosis except in the reduction of toxic symptoms. The fever curve may be altered and the organisms are more difficult to isolate from the patient during sulfonamide treatment. The use of such drugs, therefore, is recommended only in septic cases and in carriers after gall bladder removal (Manson-Bahr, 1943).*

Antibiotics

Thomas and Levine (1945) and Riser et al. (1946) studied the action of penicillin upon Salmonellae. Penicillin caused the appearance of involution forms of typhoid bacilli. Different strains showed varying susceptibility to penicillin. About 10 units per c.c. were necessary to prevent the multiplication of typhoid bacilli.

According to our experiments, the susceptibility of Salmonellae to antibiotics shows great variations. In most cases of salmonellosis the only result of penicillin and streptomycin medication is that it impairs the effectiveness of laboratory diagnostic methods.

Bigger (1946), McSweeney (1946), and Comerford et al. (1946) found that penicillin and sulfathiazole given simultaneously act synergetically upon cases and carriers of typhoid fever. This method of treatment deserves further trial. In vitro experiments show that combinations of soluble sulfonamide drugs and antibiotics (penicillin and streptomycin) have a very favorable action upon Salmonellae. Shwartzman (1945) was able to improve the action of penicillin by adding to it methionine, threonine, and methionine sulfoxide.

Streptomycin has been regarded as a most promising antibiotic. It was first tested in vitro and in animals by Schatz et al. (1944), Jones et al. (1944), and West et al. (1945). Extensive experiments in human salmonellosis were carried out by Elias and Durso (1945) and Reimann et al. (1945).

The dose of streptomycin is 1 to 4 million units per day, given per os or injected. In our experience, 4 million units daily are necessary for the average case. It is important to keep in mind that the susceptibility of Salmonella strains to this antibiotic varies greatly. Unwanted reactions from the liver, skin, and other organs are frequent. The treatment must be carried out for a long time, at least 4 days after the symptoms have disappeared. Because of its collateral action, streptomycin should be reserved for serious cases of salmonellosis and supported by sulfonamides. Daily doses of 2 to 4 Gm. of sulfapyridine, sulfathiazole, sulfadiazine, or phthalyl sulfacetimide, given with an equal amount of sodium bicarbonate, are recommended for this purpose. Sulfonamide medication is possible, however, only when the urinary output can be maintained at a high level.

---

*See also Chapters 64 and 65.

As this book goes to press, two new antibiotics, aureomycin and Chloromycetin have been introduced in the treatment of salmonellosis. Experiments have shown that these drugs are more effective in salmonellosis than is streptomycin. Dihydrostreptomycin, a detoxicated form of streptomycin, has also been introduced.*

Vaccine Therapy

Vaccine therapy, favored so much in the past, has few adherents at present. Magrou and Brisou (1945) recommended it, using alcoholized vaccines.

Transfusions

As Dewar (1946) pointed out, convalescent whole blood has a beneficial action upon typhoid fever. Even when convalescent blood is not available, whole blood, in doses of 500 c.c., is strongly indicated in hemorrhages.

Plasma has proved very beneficial in toxic cases. About 250 to 500 c.c. should be given daily.

In dehydration, when blood products are not available, infusions with 5 per cent glucose are recommended; 2 to 4 liters are given daily. Plasma injections may be combined with glucose infusions.

Hydrotherapy

When the temperature is higher than 102° F., washing with water at 20° to 25° C. 3 or 4 times a day, with a sponge, is recommended. Some aromatic spirits or vinegar may be added to the water.

An ice bag may be applied to the head when the patient's condition indicates it.

Dietary Treatment

The ancient starvation diet is no longer used in typhoid fever. A diet consisting of 4,000 to 5,000 calories is given. The protein intake must not fall below 75 Gm. Manson-Bahr (1945) calls attention to the necessity of selecting for the patient such food from the dietary list that he likes.

The fluid intake must be 4 to 6 liters a day. Fruit juices, weak tea or coffee, and soups will make up most of this amount. To increase the caloric value, lactose or sucrose should be added to the fluids.

Meat broth and cream soups are recommended. Milk is best tolerated in the form of custards, chocolate, and malted milk. Four to 8 eggs are recommended each day. Butter is given frequently.

Toast, crackers, mashed potatoes, well-cooked rice, tapioca, strained cereals, farina, Jello, puddings, and oranges complete the diet.

No food is given during intestinal bleeding.

---

*At the time of proofreading, neomycin and polymyxin D as well as glucomycin, have also proved beneficial in salmonellosis.

The diet must be supplemented with vitamins, preferably in injections. Fifty to 100 mg. thiamine hydrochloride, 500 to 1,000 mg. ascorbic acid, and 1 to 2 mg. vitamin K must be injected daily. If infusions or transfusions are given, these substances are dissolved in the fluid. Folic acid may be added.

Specific Chemotherapy

Reiter and Marburg (1943) recommended the use of tin stearate and colloidal metallic tin. Twenty 0.012 Gm. tablets are given the first day, 10 tablets per day during the subsequent 9 days.

Kleeberg (1941, 1945) advocates the use of mandelic acid in typhoid. Severe diabetes, peptic ulcer, and nephritis are contraindications for this treatment. Good results have been observed in mild cases.

Clark et al. (1945) observed excellent results with gentian violet in animals infected with Salmonellae. This method may also find use in human medicine.

Constipation and Diarrhea

Cathartics must never be given in constipation. A tepid saline enema will bring prompt action without endangering the patient.

Diarrhea was considered a symptom worthy of suppression by many authorities of the European Continent. Large amounts of kaolin and animal charcoal were given. About the latter Thomayer (1919), reporting on a long series of typhoid cases, remarked: "It colors the stools black. I have not observed any other effect of this medication."

It is customary to give absorbents in Salmonella enteritis. Kaolin alone or in combination with magnesium is the drug of choice.

Against abdominal discomfort during Salmonella enteritis, combinations of papaverine and belladonna, occasionally with a small addition of a barbiturate, may be used. In most cases, however, one does not find it necessary to employ such medication.

Complications

Oral hygiene is of utmost importance. A cold cream can be used to treat the lips.

Bronchitis, bronchopneumonia, and pneumonia are treated according to the rules of the management of such diseases. Ipecac (ipecacuanha), however, is often badly tolerated and codeine may increase the constipation.

When an intestinal perforation occurs, an operation must be contemplated. Whole blood, 250 to 500 c.c., or 500 to 1,000 c.c. of plasma are given daily. Glucose infusions are also indicated. Generous doses of streptomycin and penicillin should be given, together with sulfaguanidine, sulfasuxidine, or sulfaphthalidine.

In cases of hemorrhage, morphine or Pantopon is injected. Most authorities recommend refraining from the use of opium. Large transfusions.

500 to 1,000 c.c. of whole blood, are indicated. No food is given per os for a few days, when weak tea and milk with lactose or sucrose may be tried. Manson-Bahr (1945) recommends 2 to 4 mg. vitamin K daily, and twice a day an enema with 1 liter of tepid saline. During the later course of the disease the amount of food is slowly increased until the full Salmonella diet is given.

Other complications are treated according to the rules of medical or surgical therapy applied to pyogenic infections.

Carriers

Carriers may often be cured by gall bladder extirpation. In some states, e.g., Massachusetts, this procedure is officially recommended. Sulfonamide treatment is indicated after the operation.

PROPHYLAXIS

The general rules for prevention of salmonellosis can be summarized as:

1. Search for Human Carriers

Every person who has had salmonellosis should be subjected to repeated stool and urine examinations. After febrile salmonellosis the bile should also be examined for Salmonellae.

2. Eradication of Animal Disease

Fowl, hogs, and cows are known carriers of salmonellosis. Flocks of birds should be protected against Salmonella infections by enforcing quarantine rules and vaccination. Carriers are frequent among animals the meat of which is used for human consumption. Such animals do not necessarily show gross pathologic changes except by thorough inspection. Extensive bacteriologic surveys are, therefore, needed to clear these foci of infection.

3. Protection of Food

Protection From Human Carriers.—Only persons known not to harbor Salmonellae, Shigellae, or *Endamoeba histolytica* should be permitted to handle food. Food handlers should be subjected to periodic examinations.

Destruction of Salmonellae in Infected Foods.—Meat and milk of infected animals and meat and eggs of infected birds often contain Salmonellae. Pasteurization of the milk is a satisfactory measure for destroying Salmonellae. Unfortunately, eggs and meat are not often brought to a sufficiently high temperature during cooking to destroy Salmonellae in the inside portions of the meat, puddings, and other products.

Proper Storage of Food.—Rodents are often infected with Salmonellae and may contaminate food during storage if they have access to it.

Proper Cleaning of Vegetables Eaten Raw.—Vegetables fertilized with human or animal excreta or contaminated by fowl fecal material may carry Salmonellae. Proper washing and cooking will destroy these organisms.

4. Sanitary Water Supply

Wherever wholesome and safe water has been secured, typhoid fever has decreased or even disappeared. If well-protected natural sources are not available, filtration, chlorination, or the simple but very effective method of boiling will produce good water.

5. Proper Sewage Disposal

Protection of the community from fecal infection can be accomplished only by instituting proper rules for the disposal of fecal and urinary material. Education of the population is the first step to be taken to accomplish this measure. Septic tanks and properly operating sewage systems are the most effective measures against intestinal infections. Where not even septic tanks can be installed, the borehole latrine should be tried.

6. Other Sanitary Measures

Shellfish have often been proved to convey salmonellosis. Control of shellfish is, therefore, essential.

Flies may transfer Salmonellae passively from feces to food. Control of flies is necessary for any successful antienteric program.

Fomites, such as books used by salmonellosis patients, easily transfer the infection. Disinfection is essential.

7. Protective Immunization

The most commonly used vaccine consists of 1,000 million typhoid bacilli, and 750 millions each of *S. paratyphi A* and *B* per c.c. At weekly or 10-day intervals, 0.5, 1.0, and 1.0 c.c. is injected under the skin. If revaccination is necessary, 0.1 c.c. of the vaccine is injected under the skin. This vaccine is the "T.A.B." vaccine. The past war years brought much progress in its composition and application. The typhoid organism used in the T.A.B. vaccine was the Rawlings strain, which was substituted by the "Boxill #58" strain isolated from a carrier in Panama.

Much attention is being paid to the importance of the Vi antigen in typhoid vaccination. Such a vaccine was devised by Felix. It contains in each c.c. 1,000 million typhoid Vi and 500 millions of each *S. paratyphi A, B,* and *C* organisms. Two-tenths to 0.25 c.c. is injected first. After 3 weeks, 0.4 to 0.5 c.c. is given.

Luippold and Longfellow (1942, 1943, 1946) proved in a long series of experiments that there is some cross-protection between typhoid and paratyphoid B organisms, while *S. paratyphi A* does not show cross-protection with any of these Salmonellae. They found, too, that the T.A.B. vaccine protects against the organisms from which it is prepared, against *S. enteritidis*, and against *S. typhimurium*, but not against *S. choleraesuis* and *S. oranienburg*. It has also been proved that the Vi antigen from *S. ballerup* or *E. coli* 5396 protects against the Vi factor of the typhoid bacillus. Luippold (1946) prepared a stable extract of the Vi antigen from *E. coli* 5396/68 which is used as an additional immunizing agent but not mixed into the T.A.B. vaccine because of the clinical reactions caused by such mixtures.

Freund and Bonanto (1946) found that killed organisms injected in a lanolin-oil-water mixture give rise to antibodies which persist for a very long time. Clime (1942), Morgan et al. (1943, 1945), and Linton and Jennings (1943) greatly contributed to the development of chemically purified vaccines.

According to Manson-Bahr (1945), the Royal Air Force of Great Britain during the war used a T.A.B. vaccine with sodium lauryl sulfate.

Alum precipitated typhoid-paratyphoid vaccines were described by Léon et al. (1941) and Shevchenko (1942). These vaccines are given in a single injection.

Ultraviolet irradiation was used successfully for the preparation of typhoid-paratyphoid vaccines by Troitskii et al. (1942), and by Oliver and Bonet-Maury (1946). Remlinger described a chromo-vaccine (1945); Ruiz Merino (1946), a brilliant green vaccine.

Oral vaccination is not used in the Americas. Perhaps the last proof of the uselessness of such vaccines was supplied by Moor and Wallace (1941).

Much interest is paid to intracutaneous T.A.B. vaccination. This method was found very effective by Leme and Carrijo (1943) and Carrijo et al. (1945). The intervals and dosage vary, according to the authors.

Kamp (1943) gave children weekly injections of 0.1, 0.15, and 0.2 c.c. No generalized reactions were observed.

Ristori and Schwartz (1944) injected at 3-week intervals 0.05, 0.1, and 0.15 c.c. The results were good.

Reyes (1945) used 3 injections, 0.1 c.c. each, at monthly intervals. No undesired reactions were observed and the results were better than those achieved by using the classical injection route.

Luippold (1945) developed a mouse protection test for the evaluation of Salmonella vaccines. This test, together with the determination of the amount of mouse-protective antibodies in the serum of the vaccinated individuals, is the best measure for the control of the immunization.

The many million doses of T.A.B. vaccine given during the war proved its prophylactic value and innocuousness. Tilden and Arnold (1943), however, described histiocytic reactions after intradermal injections, which persisted for many months. deMonte and Gupta (1941) brought up the question of the so-called "provocative typhoid" which is observed when exposed persons are immunized. It is believed that if the Vi antigen is used, a "negative phase" of a few days' duration does not develop after the injection of the vaccine and, consequently, the vaccinated person does not become more susceptible to typhoid fever during the "negative phase."

It is recommended that every year revaccination be carried out with 1 single dose of the vaccine.

SHIGELLOSIS

(Bacillary Dysentery)

DEFINITION

The terms "shigellosis" and "bacillary dysentery" are frequently used to designate the same disease. Shigellosis, however, is the correct name of infections caused by Shigellae. Bacillary dysentery is a clinical syndrome consisting of frequent bowel movements with the evacuation of mucus and, in many cases, blood or pus. Bacillary dysentery is most frequently due to Shigellae. Neter (1942) and others proved that bacteria other than Shigellae may also cause bacillary dysentery, chiefly in children and old persons. Paracolon organisms, Protei, and Pseudomonades are often the agents of such disturbances. While discussion is still progressing on the pathogenic power of certain paracolon and Proteus strains, most Shigellae found in man are considered pathogenic.

ETIOLOGY

Shigellae are gram-negative, nonspore-forming, noncapsulated, nonmotile organisms which form acid but not gas from dextrose and, frequently, also from other carbohydrates. They grow well on the usual media under aerobic and anaerobic conditions. They do not produce acetylmethylcarbinol.

The present American classification of Shigellae is based upon the studies of Neter (1942). According to Neter, Shigellae may be divided into four groups:

I. Mannitol-negative, lactose-negative—*Sh. dysenteriae* Shiga and Sachs, *Sh. ambigua* Schmitz, and *Sh. newcastle.*

II. Mannitol-positive, lactose-negative—*Sh. paradysenteriae* and *Sh. alkalescens.*

III. Mannitol-negative, lactose-positive—no human pathogen.

IV. Mannitol-positive, lactose-positive—*Sh. sonnei* and *Sh. dispar.*

Sh. dysenteriae Shiga and Sachs are very rare in America. *Sh. ambigua* is more frequent, especially in South America.

The most frequent strains of *Sh. paradysenteriae* are I, II, III, IV, and VI. The geography of these types was recently discussed by Hardy (1945), Hardy et al. (1942, 1945), Kuhns (1943), Fulton (1945), and Nelson et al. (1946) in North America, Macumber (1942) in Panama, Pot (1945) in Curacao, Hormaeche et al. (1943) in South America, Fortune and Ferris (1945) in New Guinea, Nelson et al. (1945) in India, Yáñez (1944) in Spain, Westermann (1944) in the Netherlands, Elrod and Wormus (1946) in France, Boyd (1946) in the Middle East, and Young (1947) in global relations. It seems that Boyd's 88 type is rapidly spreading. It was disseminated over Europe by the German Army.

Sh. alkalescens is not considered pathogenic by most authors.

Sh. sonnei was first described by Duval in America but it is often called the Sonne-Kruse bacillus. The designation "*Shigella sonnei*" seems to be firmly entrenched. Because of the mild clinical form produced by this organism, the disease is often diagnosed as "food upset," "summer diarrhea," "institutional diarrhea," or "just a simple intestinal indisposition." Many cases are reported from children's institutions, mental hospitals, and military camps. *Sh. sonnei* infections are observed in all parts of the world.

Sh. dispar includes *Sh. ceylonensis* and *Sh. madampensis.* The pathogenicity of *Sh. dispar* has been questioned by most authors.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

The means of spread of Shigellae have been discussed by Neter (1943), Manson-Bahr (1943), and Kuhns (1943).

Children suffer very frequently from shigellosis. The younger the child, the greater the danger of a fatal outcome of the disease. Biocca (1941) found that in some states of Brazil 30 to 35 per cent of deaths in children under 2 years of age are due to shigellosis. The statistics of Hormaeche et al. (1943) confirm the frequency of this infection among children. When we discount Shigella cultures received from the Armed Forces and isolated from veterans in our statistics, children have been the source of more than 70 per cent of the Shigellae typed in this center.

Army camps frequently suffer from shigellosis. As Bargen (1945) points out, such epidemics have occurred mostly during the period when the camp was being put into use and disappeared later when hygienic measures became firmly established.

Shigellosis used to be a scourge of the armies. The great epidemics of this disease during the South African War and the Gallipoli campaign discussed by Manson-Bahr (1943) were not repeated in the second world war, due to the use of sulfonamides, better sanitary conditions, and educational efforts.

Persons suffering from other diseases, such as malaria, kala-azar, tuberculosis, or malnutrition, are more likely to contract shigellosis. The same holds true of mental patients and old people. Thousands of inmates of German and Hungarian concentration camps died from shigellosis superimposed over extreme malnutrition. This condition was called the "Ukraine diarrhea."

Shigellosis spreads readily among people living under crowded conditions, as in some mental hospitals, prisons, and Indian bazaars, where the rules of hygiene are not kept either because of weakened mental abilities of the inmates or because of the personal ignorance of the inhabitants.

Carriers are very dangerous. Only human carriers of shigellosis are known to date. "Convalescent carriers" excrete Shigellae long after the dysentery has healed. Many such carriers are "intermittent carriers," who excrete the organisms only during certain periods of time. These are easily overlooked when the stool examinations are not repeated. Inadequate treatment with sulfonamides or antibiotics unfortunately aids in producing a carrier state. "Symptomless carriers" and "contact carriers" have never, to their knowledge, shown symptoms of shigellosis. Transitory carrier states are often observed in overcrowded hospitals or isolation wards where cases or carriers of different Shigella strains are congregated.

About 3 per cent of persons who have suffered from shigellosis become chronic carriers. *Sh. sonnei* very frequently produces this condition, while *Sh. paradysenteriae* carriers are more often intermittent carriers. The greatest danger of carriers arises when they are used as food handlers: cooks, waiters, dairymen, packers in the food industry, etc.

Food is a frequent vehicle of shigellosis. It may be contaminated not only by carriers but also by human excreta used as fertilizer.

Manson-Bahr (1943) first proved the role of the housefly in the propagation of shigellosis. Houseflies may carry feces containing Shigellae on their wings, legs, or proboscides. They may swallow infected feces and either regurgitate or, more commonly, deposit the material by defecation. Food contaminated in this way readily becomes the source of shigellosis.

Water is another important source of shigellosis. Shigellae may survive for a long time in untreated water. Several water-borne epidemics of shigellosis have been described. The authors observed one such outbreak in a community of 7,000 people when the sewer broke into the water pipe line at the same time that chlorination failed.

Milk may be contaminated during handling by carrier food handlers. Pasteurization, however, readily kills Shigellae. Water from a contaminated source used to wash bottles in a dairy may cause infection of the milk (Green and McLeod, 1943).

PATHOLOGY

In the presentation of the pathology of shigellosis and in the discussion of its clinical symptoms the classical descriptions of Manson-Bahr (1943) will be followed.

Shigellosis causes acute or chronic changes in the intestines. The pathology shows different degrees of severity. Each of these may be accompanied by a specific clinical picture. Exceptions from this rule, however, are not very rare.

The inflammatory changes are most often localized in the lower part of the bowel. The rectosigmoid, the descending colon, the flexures, and the cecum are frequently involved. The lowest part of the ileum also may show pathology. Round cell infiltrations, hemorrhages, necrosis with subsequent ulcerations and, in chronic cases, with fibrosis and hypertrophy are the basic features. It is not clear as yet how much must be ascribed to the role of the excretion of absorbed toxins in the production of these changes. A sympatheticotonic reaction of the intestine has been described by several authors.

In acute cases, the mucous membrane shows inflammation. Hyperemia is present, with dilated capillaries and veins. This hyperemia of the follicles is characteristic in the beginning of the process. Edema and hemorrhages follow, chiefly in the submucosa. Neutrophilic leucocytes and macrophages originating from the capillary endothelium of the bowel contribute to the infiltrates. The capillaries show thrombosis. Blood extravasation also occurs.

As a result of these changes, necrosis ensues. Irregular, "snail track-like" ulcers develop, often on the summits of the mucosal folds. These ulcers may be superficial or they may reach to the muscularis. The size of the ulcers varies. They often communicate by channels or sinuses. The communicating channels may extend under the hypertrophic mucosa.

Necrosis of the superficial layers may lead to the formation of diphtheroid pseudomembranes. Or a necrotic mass may cover the entire intestine. This mass is usually green or black, due to altered hemoglobin and bile pigments. When the pseudomembranes or the coagula fall off, ulcerated surfaces become apparent. In other cases much granulation tissue is seen.

In fulminating cases the entire bowel is very friable and much bleeding occurs. The lumen is obstructed with mucous and bloody masses.

In a well-developed shigellosis the intestine is edematous, inelastic, and contracted.

Round-cell infiltrations of the mesenteric lymph glands are very frequent.

The spleen is congested. The kidneys may show patchy glomerular congestion, tubular necrosis, and cloudy swelling. A lymphoid peritonitis may accompany severe and fulminating inflammations.

Perforations are very rare.

Chronic shigellosis is a common disease, but the diagnosis is frequently missed. It is characterized by productive and ulcerative lesions. Any of these two components may predominate. The picture is frequently very colorful.

The ulcers may be shallow or deep. They do not have undermined edges. The ulcers follow the direction of the mucosal folds. They have dirty gray or brown bases. The mucosa is swollen and often granular. In some instances the entire mucosa is destroyed.

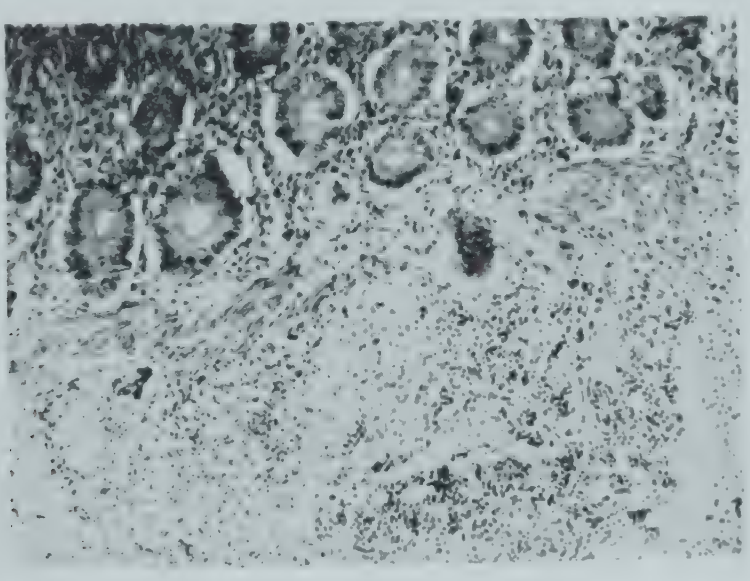


Fig. 159.—Section through colon in bacillary dysentery showing type of infiltration.

The fibrotic reaction is strongest in the mucosa and in the submucosa. Scarring, even stenosis, may result.

Pseudopolyposis is not rare.

Manson-Bahr's "retention cysts" are pseudoadenomata, which cause jelly-like elevations of the mucosa. They may be disseminated over the entire intestine. The retention cysts contain mucus and usually a large number of Shigellae. Their presence causes frequent reinfections and the carrier state.

Secondary infection, or a double infection with Shigellae and *Endamoeba histolytica,* may produce aberrant pictures.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The incubation time is 1 to 10 days.

Manson-Bahr (1943) divided shigellosis into the following clinical forms:

1. Mild dysentery, the catarrhal form
2. Acute dysentery, the classical bacillary dysentery

3. Fulminating dysentery, which includes the gangrenous and the choleriform subtypes
4. Relapsing dysentery
5. Chronic dysentery
6. Sonne dysentery.

This classification will be followed in this chapter, except for the sequence of the forms.

Catarrhal Dysentery

The onset is often slow. In many cases, however, the beginning is sudden. The first symptom is diarrhea, consisting of frequent evacuation of the bowel. Usually 3 to 12 stools are produced during the day. These consist first of soft feces, later becoming bilious and watery. Their volume decreases. Mucus is a characteristic ingredient of the stools.

There is little or no fever. The tongue is clean. Prostration may be present.

Cramps and straining are the chief complaints. The griping is more severe when the lesions are nearer to the cecum, while tenesmus predominates when the pathology is more extensive in the rectosigmoid. Tenesmus, however, usually develops only after several bowel movements.

Vomiting is rare.

This clinical form is most often due to *Sh. sonnei, Sh. alkalescens,* or *Sh. ambigua,* rarely to *Sh. paradysenteriae.*

Shigella Food Poisoning

Shigellosis contracted by eating food contaminated with Shigellae may follow any of the several clinical forms of this disease. In a number of cases, however, perhaps due to the toxins of Shigellae present in the food or as a sequela of the presence of some additional organism capable of causing food poisoning, this clinical picture is observed:

The onset is sudden in most persons who have participated in the infected meal.

There is diarrhea, with 4 to 15 stools a day. The feces are light colored, yellow, or green. Much mucus is present.

The tongue is clean or coated. There may be some fever. Prostration is present.

Cramps, increasing into colic, are always observed. Griping pains are more frequent than tenesmus.

Nausea and vomiting are regularly present.

This clinical form is most often due to *Sh. sonnei* or *Sh. alkalescens,* less frequently to *Sh. paradysenteriae.*

Sonne Dysentery

The onset is sudden or insidious. In the latter case, frequent bowel movements without discomfort introduce the disease. The diarrhea consists of stools which are at first brown, then yellow or green. "Tomato-soup" stools are often seen. Mucus is always present in the feces.

There may or may not be fever. The tongue is clean or white. Prostration is usually present.

Cramps and colic, griping pains, and tenesmus may be present. Griping pains are very frequent, chiefly at the beginning of the illness.

Nausea and vomiting are often observed.

A respiratory catarrh is the characteristic feature of this clinical form of shigellosis. The disease often begins with pharyngitis or bronchitis, and the diarrhea appears only a few days later. Catarrhs of the respiratory tract may dominate the clinical picture so that the diagnosis of an influenza attack, later eventually modified with an *epitheton ornans* and called "intestinal flu," may be born.

Epidemics of Sonne dysentery resembling "intestinal flu" frequently occur in large cities. An accumulation of such cases was observed in 1946 among children in Chicago.

It must be emphasized that *Sh. sonnei* infections often cause other clinical types of shigellosis.

Classical Bacillary Dysentery

The classical type of shigellosis is classified by Manson-Bahr as "acute dysentery."

The onset is usually sudden. The disease, however, may begin as a single diarrhea, without characteristic stools. The diarrhea, when fully developed, is severe. As many as 20 to 40 stools are evacuated each day. They are first feculent, then mucus and blood appear in them. The mucus may be bile stained. The amount of the feces decreases, so that only small masses of viscid, jelly-like, bloody mucus are evacuated. These stools resemble "red currant jelly" or "meat washings." The stools are odorless or have an albuminous odor. If gangrene complicates the disease, the stools become gray and are very offensive.

Fever is usually present. It does not usually exceed 103° F. The face is flushed. The tongue is white or coated. Great prostration is present.

The cramps and colic are severe. There is straining; griping pains and tenesmus are present, according to the localization of the process.

Vomiting is rather rare.

Dysuria is frequent.

Upon physical examination, the abdominal muscles are rigid and make palpation difficult. When they relax, the contracted, spastic colon may be felt.

This clinical form of shigellosis is usually due to *Sh. dysenteriae*, *Sh. ambigua*, and *Sh. paradysenteriae*.

Gangrenous Dysentery

This is a fulminating shigellosis, usually with a fatal outcome.

It begins with chills. The temperature is elevated and may reach 102° to 104° F. Then diarrhea develops. There are usually many green or gray, offensive stools. The abdomen is sunken and tender. The tongue is thickly coated. Pain, cramps, and tenesmus may or may not be present. The disease lasts usually only a few days.

This type of shigellosois is caused by *Sh. dysenteriae.* Clostridia are thought to play a great role as secondary invaders.

Choleriform Dysentery

This is a fulminating shigellosis, usually with a fatal outcome.

The course of the disease is characterized by subnormal temperatures, circulatory weakness, and liquid, offensive stools.

This type of shigellosis is caused by *Sh. dysenteriae.* We have observed it also in institutionalized old people. The etiologic agents were *Sh. dysenteriae* and *Sh. paradysenteriae.*

Relapsing Dysentery

Relapses of dysentery may occur in any clinical form. They are most often observed, however, in the classical type of shigellosis.

A new attack of dysentery develops when the patient has already begun to recuperate. Such relapses may last for variable lengths of time. Before the introduction of sulfonamides, relapses were of varying severity. At present, however, the intensity and duration depend upon the medication. Relapses are often observed when too small doses are given or when the drug is discontinued too soon.

Chronic Shigellosis

Chronic shigellosis is one of the greatest problems of gastroenterology and much deserved attention is paid to it in contemporary literature. Manson-Bahr (1943), D'Antoni (1943), Silverman and Friedrichs (1943), Bargen (1945), and Felsen (1945) contributed much to the knowledge of the disease.

The clinical picture very often resembles amebic dysentery, or, in some cases, the sequelae—ulcerative colitis, "irritable colon," etc.—are prominent, and only bacteriologic, sigmoidoscopic, and x-ray examination will reveal the real cause of the sickness.

The disease may begin as a chronic shigellosis per se, with an attack of diarrhea and in some cases fever. The stools may contain a varying amount of blood and mucus. This state may last, with shorter or longer remissons or intermissions, for a very long period of time.

In other cases the patient recuperates after an attack of acute shigellosis only to develop after months, or even years, a state of alternating diarrhea and constipation. The initial attack may have been so mild that it was overlooked.

In some instances diarrhea is scarcely present; rather, the patient has constipation. In these cases, psychoneurotic symptoms may be prominent. There is fatigue, lassitude, inability to concentrate, morning headaches, and alterations of the appetite. Abdominal discomfort, with feeling of pressure or even pain along the descending colon and rectosigmoid, in the flexures or over the appendiceal region, may be present.

Complications and Sequelae

It is sometimes difficult to draw a dividing line between complications and sequelae. They are, therefore, discussed under the same heading.

Ulcerative Colitis.—Ulcerative colitis with a chronic course is a frequent sequela of shigellosis. The transition is usually slow and gradual. In many cases, however, the beginning of the ulcerative colitis is severe. The sigmoidoscopic picture and the course of the disease do not differ from those observed in the so-called "nonspecific" ulcerative colitis originated by other factors. Felsen (1945) made excellent contributions to this subject.

Regional Ileocolitis.—Regional ileitis and colitis may be caused by bacillarly dysentery. This sequela is relatively rare.

Deformities and Hypertrophy of the Colon.—Narrowing of the lumen is a frequent sequela of deep ulcerations. Stenosis may also develop. Megacolon is infrequent. Into this group belong prolapse of the rectum and polyposis. While prolapse is more often observed in children, polyposis is more frequent in adults.

Nutritional Disturbances.—Many patients suffering from chronic shigellosis become sensitized against certain foods, chiefly against milk and eggs. Such allergies must be kept in mind when the patient's diet is compiled.

Nutritional deficiencies are more frequent in shigellosis than is commonly thought. There is an impaired absorption of members of the vitamin B group. The metabolism of vitamin K is also frequently disturbed.

Nutritional deficiencies may become very severe. The "walking skeletons" of the tropics are frequently the results of Shigella infections.

Functional Disturbances of the Digestive Tract.—The formation of several digestive enzymes may be impaired. Dyschlorhydria, usually in the form of hypochlorhydria, is common.

Mucous colitis is very frequent. A so-called "irritable colon" is observed in most cases of chronic shigellosis and may appear in any patient as a sequela of an acute shigellosis.

Ascites is not rarely seen in India following shigellosis. This sequela is very rare in the Americas.

Perforation.—Perforation of the bowel rarely occurs in shigellosis. The symptoms are those observed in perforations due to other diseases.

Urogenital Apparatus.—Shigella pyelitis has been observed. Pregnant women seem to be more frequently attacked by this form of shigellosis than other members of the general population (Haynes et al., 1941, and Diddle and McKee, 1942).

Pyelitis, cystitis, and urethritis caused by other bacteria are not infrequent complications of shigellosis.

The kidneys are under great stress during the disease. In many fatal cases, death occurs as a result of renal insufficiency.

Arthritis.—Arthritis is observed only in *Sh. dysenteriae* infections. It usually develops during the period of convalescence. There is fever and swelling of the joints. The knees and the ankles are the usual seats of this complication. Organisms are not recovered from the exudates but these fluids readily agglutinate Shigellae.

Eye Complications.—Conjunctivitis frequently accompanies Shigella arthritis. Conjunctivitis alone or with iridocyclitis is rather rarely observed. It occurs only in *Sh. dysenteriae* infections.

Reiter's Syndrome.—Reiter's syndrome, consisting of an "aseptic" urethritis, conjunctivitis, and arthritis, is considered by some authors a sequela of shigellosis.

Other Complications.—Peripheral neuritis and parotitis are often mentioned as possible complications and sequelae of shigellosis. They are very rare.

SIGMOIDOSCOPIC FINDINGS

The sigmoidoscopic appearance of shigellosis was described in great detail by Manson-Bahr (1943) and Felsen (1945).

At first small elevations, with or without a yellowish apex, are observed. Then small ulcerations ensue, which spread and coalesce. The ulcers are irregular in size, shape, and extent. They are not very deep.

The mucosa is inflamed and reddened. The entire mucosa may show inflammation. Later edema appears, often followed by bleeding and pus formation.

In the pseudomembranous type, the membranes may be seen. A bleeding, uneven, granular surface lies under the membrane. This surface is often covered with pus. Frequently, only remnants of the membrane, resembling strings or threads, are seen.

Regeneration is characterized by the formation of granulation tissue. The mucosa remains reddish-pink for a long time. After healing, a pitted mucosa is frequently seen.

The sigmoidoscopic patterns of chronic shigellosis were classified by Manson-Bahr as:

1. Superficial ulcerations
2. Granular mucosa
3. Generalized mucoidal inflammation with deep involution of the bowel wall.

There is great irritability of the rectosigmoid during shigellosis. It is recommended, therefore, that sigmoidoscopic examinations be carried out only by proctologists or physicians with considerable experience in the handling of this instrument.

X-RAY EXAMINATION

The x-ray picture of shigellosis has been mentioned in Chapter 4. Due to the acute course of most cases of shigellosis, not much material is available for such studies. Bargen (1945) called attention to the irregular and yet extensive distribution of Shigella ulcers which may be observed by studies of the mucosal pattern of the bowel.

LABORATORY EXAMINATION

Stool Examination

Shigellae are only exceptionally isolated from the blood and from the urine. The examination of the stools is, therefore, the only available means for detection of these organisms.

Many Shigella strains are fastidious. Nonselective and medium-selective plates must be used for this reason. The SS agar (Difco), and D.E.C. plate of Panja and Ghosh, the D.C.L.S. medium (Baltimore Biological Laboratory), MacConkey's plate, and eosin methylene blue agar are most often inoculated. Several plates should be streaked with each specimen, or, when the results are negative, the examination should be repeated.

An excellent method to collect material is the rectal swab technic devised by Hardy et al. (1942). See Chapters 71 and 72.

The colonies isolated on the diagnostic plates are identified according to the procedure described in Gradwohl: *Clinical Laboratory Methods and Diagnosis,* vol. 2, 1948.

Agglutination Tests

Agglutination tests using the patient's serum and antigens prepared from Shigellae are of little value. Hulst (1940), Draper (1945), and others proved that so-called "natural" agglutinins may be present in healthy individuals. On the other hand, agglutinating bodies develop late in the disease, usually during the second or third week, when the diagnosis has already been easily established by stool examination. Their titers are frequently low. Agglutination with serum dilutions 1:160 and higher are usually considered positive. Many cross-reactions are observed with paracolon organisms and other bacteria. The value of the agglutination test is, therefore, very problematic.

Cytology of the Stools

Much attention should be paid to the cellular composition of the stools. Red blood cells and polymorphonuclear leucocytes are often present. Macrophages with remnants of engulfed cells and cell fragments are frequent. They are readily mistaken for amebae, except in hematoxylin-stained preparations. There is much debris present. It must be pointed out that in catarrhal shigellosis the number of cells may be very small. Mucus is, however, always present.

Young leucocytes and macrophages are numerous when ulcerations are forming. Their number diminishes during healing. At the end of the disease old leucocytes with pyknotic nuclei, and numerous epithelial cells, dominate the picture. The cellular elements are often embedded in streaks of mucus.

Hematology

The peripheral blood does not show great changes. In the beginning, chiefly in severe cases, however, there may be a leucocytosis with as many as

30,000 cells. The number of white blood cells decreases during the further course of the disease.

Anemia develops in severe shigellosis. Due to the dehydration, the number of red blood cells may remain normal even in such cases.

DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

The only decisive factor for the diagnosis of shigellosis is the cultural proof of the presence of Shigellae in the feces. When, however, the patient has been given sulfonamide therapy before a sample is taken for laboratory examination, the bacteriologic diagnosis is greatly endangered. Except under the most primitive conditions one cannot find any excuse for omitting such an examination. Modern preserving fluids and present-day transportation facilities permit the delivery of a fecal sample to a laboratory in most cases.

The bacteriologic examination may be more difficult in chronic bacillary dysentery. As Manson-Bahr (1943) pointed out, it is extremely difficult to recover Shigellae from a chronic dysenteric granulosis of the rectosigmoid. When ulcerative colitis has developed, the organisms are rarely found.

Bacteriologic and parasitologic examination will differentiate amebiasis, giardiasis, salmonellosis, schistosomiasis, tuberculosis, and other infections. Inguinal adenitis and a positive Frei test are characteristic for lymphogranuloma venereum. Blood examination will exclude malarial dysentery. Positive serologic tests characterize syphilis of the bowel. Intestinal actinomycosis is rare and usually shows different lesions when examined sigmoidoscopically.

A diagnosis of sprue must be made from the appearance of the stools, flat glucose tolerance curve, a steatorrhea, and typical x-ray picture.

A carcinoma of the rectosigmoid may cause considerable diagnostic difficulties. The sigmoidoscope and the x-ray are the most potent aids in establishing the presence of this neoplasm.

Diverticulitis, intussusception, foreign bodies, hemorrhoids, thyrotoxicosis, uremia, poisoning with mercury and arsenic also must be considered when the diagnosis of shigellosis is made.

PROGNOSIS

The over-all mortality of shigellosis is 4 to 5 per cent. It is higher in children and in older people. The prognosis is grave in fulminating forms. *Sh. dysenteriae* infections formerly caused mortality rates as high as 25 to 50 per cent before the advent of the sulfonamides. At present, the fatality rate is considerably lower.

Manson-Bahr (1943, 1945) calls attention to the necessity of watching the stools, the tongue, and the pulse during shigellosis, because the prognosis is based upon observation of these conditions.

TREATMENT*

Fluid Intake

The most important part of the therapy is to assure an adequate intake of fluids. The daily urinary output *must* be kept above 1,500 c.c.

If a proper urinary output cannot be achieved by oral administration, infusions with 5 per cent glucose are recommended. As much as 4 liters can be given daily. The average dose is 2 to 3 liters per day.

Serum Therapy

Forty to 50 c.c. of specific or polyvalent serum are given intravenously, twice a day, in 250 to 500 c.c. of physiologic saline. The serotherapy must be begun early. There is no need to give serum during the later days of the disease.

The serotherapy must be limited to toxic cases. Because of the large amounts of serum necessary to combat the symptoms, desensitization is necessary prior to the injections.

One hundred fifty to 200 c.c. of convalescent serum or plasma give good results.

Whole blood, 250 to 500 c.c. daily, is very beneficial in toxic cases.

General Measures

It is very important that every patient with an acute shigellosis or with an attack of a recurrent chronic dysentery remain in bed.

The patient must be kept warm.

Sulfonamide Drugs

The critical evaluations of sulfonamides in dysentery by Lyon (1941), Hardy et al. (1943), Bose et al. (1945), and Bargen (1946) show that a drug must be chosen according to the case and that the patient and *not* the disease must be treated. Hardy et al. (1943) and Woodrow and Douglas-Henry (1945) recommended sulfadiazine. Bulmer and Priest (1942), West (1943), Fairley and Boyd (1943), Page (1944), and Yannet et al. (1944) were satisfied with sulfaguanidine. Kuhns (1943), Manson-Bahr (1945), and Bargen (1945) recommended a choice between sulfaguanidine and sulfasuxidine, the latter being less toxic but perhaps also less active. Streicher (1945) had excellent results with Sulfaphthalidine which is now being used on a larger scale.

Sulfonamide drugs must not be given for a longer period than 14 days. During the treatment frequent urine examinations must be carried out and the drug discontinued whenever an excess is present in the urine. Periodic hematologic examinations are also indispensable, to avoid damage to the hematopoietic system.

Two to 4 Gm. of sodium bicarbonate must be given with each dose of sulfonamide drugs.

---

*Recently, antibiotics, aureomycin, Chloromycetin, terramycin, and neomycin per os have been recommended.

Insufficient urinary output is a contraindication for sulfonamide medication.

It is good practice to begin the treatment of acute toxic shigellosis with 5 to 6 Gm. of sulfadiazine divided into 5 or 6 doses during the first day, then 3 Gm. of sulfaguanidine *or* 4 Gm. of sulfasuxidine *or* 2 Gm. of Sulfaphthalidine every 4 hours until the number of stools is 4 or less per day; finally, the same amount of the selected sulfonamide 3 times a day until the stools become normal for 2 days.

In cases which do not show toxic symptoms, 3.5 Gm. of sulfaguanidine *or* 5 Gm. of sulfasuxidine *or* 2 Gm. of Sulfaphthalidine are given 4 times a day until the stools become normal for 2 days.

In chronic cases, 0.5 Gm. of sulfadiazine *and* 2 Gm. sulfasuxidine 4 times a day for 14 days, the course repeated after 14 days' intermission, has proved beneficial. Good results have also been seen by giving 1 Gm. Sulfaphthalidine 4 times a day for the same periods of time.

Recently, phthalyl sulfacetimide (Thalamyd) has been introduced in the treatment of shigellosis. This drug is only very slightly absorbed but it penetrates the intestinal mucosa. It has proved very effective in the therapy of bacillary dysentery, ulcerative colitis, and cholera. Adults receive 6 to 9 Gm. daily; children 0.2 Gm. per kilogram body weight per day.

Vaccine Therapy

Vaccine therapy is recommended in chronic shigellosis. Autogenous vaccines are used. Berge and Fauconnier (1941) recommend this treatment.

Bacteriophage

Soesman (1941), McKay (1943), and Burke (1944) recommend this therapy; Boyd and Portnoy (1944) and Morton and Engley (1945) reject it. It is little used in the Americas. The bacteriophage is given orally or per rectum, 2 c.c. daily.

Dietary Treatment

During the acute stage of dysentery, an easily digested, high caloric diet rich in vitamins and low in residue is given.

The fluid intake must be 4 to 6 liters a day. Weak tea, rice water, and soups are recommended. Fruit juices are not always well tolerated. Orange Crush may be tried. Lactose or sucrose is added to the fluids to increase their caloric value.

It is advisable to give only fluids during the first and second days of the disease. The diet is supplemented later with jellies and egg yolk. Amino acids, usually 2 teaspoonfuls 3 times a day, are beneficial.

When gross bleeding has stopped, puddings, custards, chocolate and malted milk, butter, toast, crackers, well-cooked rice and tapioca are added.

In chronic dysentery, the diet described under "Amebiasis" will render excellent service.

Intestinal Absorbents and Aperients

Kaolin and its combinations, as Kaopectate, Kaomagma, etc., are helpful for the absorption of the toxins. These are indicated during the diarrhea or when much flatulence is present. If absorbents are given, the sulfonamide medication must be timed in such a way that these drugs are not absorbed (and thus inactivated) by the kaolin.

Many authors advocate the use of aperients before treatment. As Manson-Bahr (1943, 1945) points out, saline cathartics must not be given in dehydrated cases because they cause further loss of water. One tablespoon (4 Gm.) of sodium sulfate in about 150 to 200 c.c. warm water is the best cathartic in constipation during chronic dysentery.

Relief of Pain

Heat is essential in the treatment of dysentery. Dry hot pads or pillows placed on the abdomen relieve pain and cramps. Short hot baths are also useful.

Lavages with 0.1 to 0.2 per cent potassium permanganate may be used in cases with pseudomembranes. Washings of the bowels with 1.5 per cent tepid boric acid serve the same purpose.

Opium, morphine, and papaverine render excellent services in the treatment of acute shigellosis. They may be given in injections, in enemas, or in suppositories. It is recommended that these drugs be combined with belladonna. A small dose of barbiturates may be added.

℞ Tinct. opii 30 min.
Tinct. belladonnae 10 min.
Elix. phenobarbitur. 20 min.
Starch and water q.s. ad 2 oz.
S.: Enema.
℞ Papaverin sulf. 0.3 Gm.
Atropin sulf. 0.002 Gm.
01. Cacao q.s. u. ft. suppos. no. 10
S.: One suppository 1-3 times a day.

Treatment of Complications

Ulcerative colitis is treated with sulfonamides, dietary and other measures used in that disease, if caused by other factors.

The prognosis of ulcerative colitis, *quoad sanationem*, is not favorable. If surgical treatment is advised, Manson-Bahr (1943, 1945) favors appendicostomy.

Nutritional disturbances are treated with proper diet and injections of vitamins.

Sulfonamide drugs and heat are recommended in arthritis and in eye complications.

Treatment of Carriers

The sulfonamide treatment of carriers must be planned as in chronic shigellosis. In order to be able to check the results of this therapy, several stool specimens must be examined. It is of paramount importance to collect stools with the aid of the Hardy swab or through the proctoscope and also to examine postcathartic fecal specimens, because of the varying sites of the lesions.

A carrier must be checked at least for 3 months before release. During this period at least 6 stools must be examined.

Carriers of *Sh. sonnei* are frequently refractory to sulfonamide medication. Changing from one drug to the other is recommended in such cases.

There is little use in examining the stools for Shigellae during sulfonamide treatment because the medication may inhibit the growth of Shigellae on diagnostic plates. The first release specimen must not be taken earlier than 1 week after the sulfonamide administration has been discontinued.

Carriers often require prolonged sulfonamide treatment. It must be kept in mind that this medication also reduces the number of organisms which are necessary for certain normal physiologic functions of the bowel. Care must be exerted, therefore, to avoid both sulfonamide intoxication and nutritional disturbances.

PROPHYLAXIS

General rules for the extermination of shigellosis may be summarized as:

1. Control of Carriers

No food handler harboring and excreting Shigellae shall be allowed to handle or prepare food. Repeated stool examinations before and during employment are necessary to detect carrier food handlers. It is important that not only food handlers in the usual sense (waiters, cooks, cowhands, dairy workers, food packers, etc.) be examined but also nurses and maids who nurse and feed children.

2. Food Control

Shigellae pathogenic for man do not occur in animals the meat, milk, or eggs of which are used for human consumption. Protection of food from infection by human carriers, flies, and contaminated water will, therefore, keep food free from Shigellae.

3. Water and Sewage

Water-borne shigellosis is more frequent than is generally thought. The water may be contaminated with sewage, either by seepage or by direct evacuation of such material into it.

Chlorination or boiling destroys Shigellae promptly.

4. Flies

Flies are dangerous vectors of shigellosis. One of the most efficient measures in the campaign against shigellosis is screening or other methods which keep flies away from food.

5. Vaccination

Much progress has been made in vaccination against shigellosis during the last years. As Weil and Farsetta (1944, 1945) proved, the specific antigens which are different for each type of Shigella play a great role in immunity. Because of the great number of types, it is very difficult to produce polyvalent vaccines. In addition, Shigella vaccines cause severe reactions.

Morgan and Partridge (1941) used alkali-treated material for immunization. Halbert et al. (1945) reduced the toxicity of the antigens by injecting saline-in-mineral-oil emulsions. Treffers (1946) found that acetylated antigens are less toxic. Olitzki and Koch (1945) worked out a special method for the production of effective antigens.

While whole organisms or their extracts are used for vaccination against *Sh. paradysenteriae*, *Sh. ambigua*, and *Sh. sonnei*, formolized toxin (toxoid or anatoxin) is injected very often for the protection against shigellosis caused by *Sh. dysenteriae*, the only member of the genus which produces a true toxin.

Olitzki and Koch (1945), Farrell (1943), Anderson et al. (1945), and Dubos and Geiger (1946) recently made considerable contributions to the technic of the preparation of *Sh. dysenteriae* toxoid. Farrell et al. (1944) has had good experiences with it in human volunteers. Olitzki and Koch (1945) have observed excellent results in a great number of exposed persons.

Experiments on volunteers with vaccines were performed by Morgan and Schutze (1943) and Goebel et al. (1945). Cooper et al. (1944) immunized children with a *Sh. paradysenteriae* vaccine and found that intravenous injections cause the greatest elevation of mouse-protective antibodies. Forsyth (1942) and Felsenfeld and Young (1945) prepared mixed vaccines against *Sh. dysenteriae* and *Sh. paradysenteriae*.

Proper hygienic measures and the encouraging results of sulfonamide treatment have greatly reduced the necessity for antishigellosis vaccination. Such vaccination is still advisable, however. Toxoid injections and, during epidemics, vaccines prepared from the strains which cause the outbreaks are indicated in the tropics.

Prophylaxis with the aid of dysentery bacteriophage is recommended by Dumesh (1942) but is rarely used in the Americas.

6. Drug Prophylaxis

Sulfadiazine or Sulfaphthalidine, 0.5 Gm. twice a day, are said to be effective for the prophylaxis of shigellosis.

References

Abramson, D. J.: 1945. Renal Typhoid Fever, J. Urol. **54**: 422-429.

Aguilar, D. L.: 1946. Absceso hepatico post-tifoidico, Monterrey med. **1**: 2649.

Anderson, C. G., Brown, A. M., and MacSween, J. C.: 1945. The Production, Purification and Titration of Neurotoxin of Shigella Dysenteriae, Brit. J. Exper. Path. **26**: 197-208.

Angrist, A., and Mollow, M.: 1946. Bacteriologic, Clinical and Pathologic Experience With 86 Sporadic Cases of Salmonella Infection. Am. J. M. Sc. **212**: 336-346.

Anonymus.: 1946. Typhoid in Large Cities of the United States in 1945, J. A. M. A. **131**: 817-821.

Ames, W. R., and Robins, M.: 1943. Age and Sex Factors in the Development of the Typhoid Carrier State and a Method for Estimating Prevalence, Am. J. Pub. Health **33**: 221-230.

Baeza, C. G.: 1942. Infant Dysentery in Chile, Proc. 8th Am. Sc. Congress **6**: 395.

Bagchi, H. N.: 1946. Diagnosis of Fever in the Tropics, Antiseptic **43**: 178-181.

Bargen, J. A.: 1945. Modern Concepts of Intestinal Infection, Detroit, Wayne Co. M. Soc. Publications.

Bargen, J. A.: 1946. The Use of the Newer Sulfonamides and Antibiotics in Intestinal Diseases, M. Clin. North America **30:** 919-931.

Bender, C. E.: 1946. Salmonella Fever, Northwest Med. **45:** 660-665.

Berge, C., and Fauconnier, J.: 1941. La dysenterie bacillaire dans la IVe Région Maritime, Arch. Inst. Pasteur de Tunis **30:** 103-117.

Berkovitz, Z. T.: 1944. Clinical Tropical Medicine, New York, Paul B. Hoeber, Inc.

Bigger, J. W.: 1946. Synergetic Action of Penicillin and Sulphathiazole on Bacterium Typhosum, Lancet **1:** 81-83.

Biocca, F.: 1941. Observaçoes estatísticas e bacteriológicas sôbre a disenteria bacilar no Brasil, Arq. de biol. **25:** 247-255.

Bornstein, S.: 1943. The State of the Salmonella Problem, J. Immunol. **46:** 439-496.

Bose, A. N., Sen Gupta, P. N., and Basu, U. P.: 1945. Sulpha Drugs in Bacillary Dysentery, Indian M. Gaz. **80:** 385-388.

Boyd, J. S. K.: 1938. The Antigenic Structure of the Mannitol Fermenting Group of Dysentery Bacilli, J. Hyg. **38:** 477-499.

Boyd, J. S. K.: 1940. Laboratory Diagnosis of Bacillary Dysentery, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **33:** 553-571.

Boyd, J. S. K.: 1945. Enteric Group of Fevers in Prisoners of War From the Western Desert, With Special Reference to Prophylactic Inoculation, Brit. M. J. **1:** 719-721.

Boyd, J. S. K.: 1946. Laboratory Findings in Clinical Dysentery in the Middle East Forces Between August, 1940, and June, 1943, J. Path. & Bact. **58:** 237-241.

Boyd, J. S. K., and Portnoy, B.: 1944. Bacteriophage Therapy in Bacillary Dysentery, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **37:** 243-262.

Bray, W. E., and Meredith, J. M.: 1942. Fatal Salmonella Intracranial Infection in an Infant, J. Lab. & Clin. Med. **28:** 152-156.

Brower, E. H.: 1944. The Detection of Vi Aggultinins in the Sera of Typhoid Carriers, Am. J. Hyg. **40:** 154-162.

Brumpt, L.: 1940. Utilization de l'hémo-agglutination en pratique médicale, Bull. Soc. path. exot. **33:** 390-393.

Bruner, D. W.: 1945. Salmonella Types Encountered in the Mediterranean Theater, Mil. Surgeon **97:** 324-327.

Buddington, W. T., and Gilman, B. B.: 1942. Urinary Typhoid Carriers, New England J. Med. **227:** 400-402.

Bulmer, E., and Priest, W. M.: 1942. Sulphaguanidine in the Treatment of Bacillary Dysentery, J. Roy. Army M. Corps **79:** 277-286.

Burke, E.: 1944. Phage for Dysentery. Brit. M. J. **1:** 407.

Carrijo, L. N., Pires, C. D. A., and Brandão, C.: 1945. Vacinação T. A. B., Mem. Inst. Butantan **18:** 45-54.

Cherry, W. B., Sherago, M., and Weaver, R. H.: 1943. The Occurrence of Salmonella in Retail Meat Products, Am. J. Hyg. **37:** 211-215.

Clark, G., Quan, M. S., and Galton, M. M.: 1945. The Use of Gentian Violet in the Treatment of Diarrhea, J. Am. Vet. M. A. **106:** 166.

Clime, H.: 1942. Immunization Against Typhoid and Paratyphoid With Alcohol-killed, Alcohol-preserved and Heat-killed, Phenol-preserved Vaccine, J. Hyg. **42:** 411-415.

Cobley, J. F. C., and Wilson, T. E.: 1946. Report of Salmonella Blegdam Septicemia and Suppurative Pericarditis With Recovery, M. J. Australia **1:** 439-442.

Comerford, C. H., Richmond, H., and Kay, W. W.: 1946. Typhoid Carriers, Lancet **2:** 343-345.

Cooper, M. L., Tepper, J., and Keller, H. M.: 1944. Active Immunization of Children and Animals With Shigella Paradysenteriae Flexner, J. Bact. **47:** 477.

Cornil, L., and Roger, H.: 1946. Etude anatomo-pathologique de l'encéphalite végétative typohoïdique, Semaine d. hôp. Paris **22:** 681-686.

Cossery, G. N.: 1946. Enteric Fevers in Egypt, J. Hyg. **44:** 284-285.

D'Antoni, J. S.: 1943. Symposium on Tropical Medicine; Bacillary Dysentery, With Special Reference to Chronic Form (Shigella Colitis), Clinics **2:** 936-954.

deMonte, A. J. H., and Gupta, S. K.: 1941. Should Anti-typhoid Inoculation Be Practiced in a Household Exposed to Typhoid Infection? Indian M. Gaz. **76:** 464-468.

Dewar, H. A.: 1946. Treatment of Typhoid Fever With Convalescent Whole Blood, J. Roy. Army M. Corps **86:** 249-253.

Diddle, A. W., and McKee, A. P.: 1942. Urinary Infection in Pregnancy Due to Flexner Dysentery, Am. J. Obst. & Gynec. **44:** 481-486.

Draper, F.: 1945. Natural Bacterial Agglutinins in the Child's Serum, M. J. Australia **32:** 385-393.

Dreyfuss, F.: 1945. Typhoid Bacilluria and Appendicitis, Am. J. M. Sc. **210:** 591-595.

Dubos, R. J., and Geiger, J. W.: 1946. Preparation and Properties of Shiga Toxin and Toxoid, J. Exper. Med. **84:** 143-156.

Dumesh, M. G.: 1942. Bakteriofagoprofilaktika dizenterii, Zhurnal Mikrobiol. 1: 68-72.

Ecker, E. E., Kuehn, A. O., and Recroft, E. W.: 1942. Salmonella Schottmülleri Isolated From Sacrolumbar Lesion of Twenty-four Years' Duration, J. A. M. A. 118: 1296-1297.

Edwards, P. R., and Bruner, D. W.: 1943. The Occurrence and Distribution of Salmonella Types in the United States, J. Infect. Dis. 72: 58-67.

Elias, W. F., and Durso, J.: 1945. Blood, Urine and Fecal Levels of Streptomycin in the Treatment of Human Infections With E. Typhosa, Science 101: 589-591.

Elrod, R. P., and Wormus, E. A.: 1946. Shigella Types in Eastern France, J. Infect. Dis. 79: 39-42.

Fairley, N. H., and Boyd, J. S. K.: 1943. Dysentery in the Middle East With Reference to Sulphaguanidine Treatment, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. 35: 253-285.

Farrell, L.: 1943. Shigella Toxoid, Canad. J. Pub. Health. 34: 130-139.

Farrell, L., Fraser, D. T., and Ferguson, H.: 1944. Trial of Dysentery Toxoid (Shiga) in Human Volunteers, Canad. J. Pub. Health 35: 311-316.

Felsen, J.: 1945. Bacillary Dysentery, Colitis and Enteritis, Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Co.

Felsenfeld, O.: 1945. The Salmonella Problem, Am. J. Clin. Path. 15: 584-608.

Felsenfeld, O., and Young, V. M.: 1945. The Viability of Salmonella on Artificially Contaminated Vegetables, Poultry Sc. 24: 353-355.

Felsenfeld, O., and Young, V. M.: 1945a. Simultaneous Vaccination Against Bacillary Dysentery and Cholera With Toxoid-Vaccine, Am. J. Trop. Med. 25: 421.

Felsenfeld, O.: 1947. Polyvalent Antigens for the Diagnosis of Salmonellosis in Different Climates, Am. J. Trop. Med. 27: 285-292.

Foley, A. E., and Poisson, E.: 1945. A Cheese-borne Outbreak of Typhoid Fever, Canad. J. Pub. Health 36: 116-118.

Forsyth, W. L.: 1942. The Preparation of a Vaccine Against Bacillary Dysentery, Indian J. Med. Research 30: 213-228.

Fortune, C., and Ferris, A. A.: 1945. Diarrheal Diseases in New Guinea, M. J. Australia 32: 337-344.

Freedman, A.: 1943. Four Cases of Paratyphoid Fever With Unusual Complications, Ohio State M. J. 39: 418-420.

Freund, J., and Bonanto, M. V.: 1946. The Duration of Antibody Formation After Injection of Killed Typhoid Bacilli in Water-in-oil Emulsion, J. Immunol. 52: 231-234.

Frossman, G.: 1946. Three Cases of Skeletal Changes Around the Knee Joint in Paratyphoid Fever in Infants, Acta radiol. 27: 294-296.

Fulton, McD.: 1945. Gram-negative Intestinal Bacilli From the Southwest, South. M. J. 38: 693-696.

Ganguli, P., and Zeug, P. G.: 1945. Typhoid Fever, Calcutta M. Rev. 12: 165-173, 253.

Girard, L.: 1946. Le traitement de la fièvre typhoide, J. de méd. de Lyon 27: 517-521.

Goebel, W. F., Binkley, F., and Perlman, E.: 1945. Studies on the Flexner Group of Dysentery Bacilli; Specific Antigens of Shigella Paradysenteriae (Flexner), J. Exper. Med. 81: 315-330.

Goodall, J. F.: 1944. Typhoid Septicemia, Lancet 1: 851-852.

Goyle, A. N., and Shaikh, A. H.: 1946. Enteric Fevers in Lahore, Indian M. Gaz. 81: 116-121.

Gradwohl, R. B. H.: 1948. Clinical Laboratory Methods and Diagnosis, ed. 4, St. Louis, The C. V. Mosby Co.

Green, C. A., and McLeod, M. C.: 1943. Explosive Epidemic of Sonne Dysentery, Brit. M. J. 1: 259-261.

Gunn, W.: 1943. Treatment of Typhoid Fever in the Services, Med. Press 210: 44-47.

Gunther, C. B.: 1946. Studies on the Vi Agglutination for the Detection of Typhoid Carriers, Am. J. Clin. Path. 16: 293-305.

Halbert, S., Smolens, J., and Mudd, S.: 1945. Reduced Acute Toxicity of Antigens in Saline-in-Mineral-Oil Emulsion, J. Immunol. 51: 39-43.

Hardy, A. V.: 1943. The Bacteriostatic Action of Sulfadiazine on E. Typhosa in Carriers and Cases, Pub. Health Rep. 58: 833-839.

Hardy, A. V.: 1945. Shigellosis (Bacillary Dysentery) Among Institutional Inmates, Psychiat. Quart. 19: 377-397.

Hardy, A. V.: 1945a. Further Cultural Observations on the Relative Efficiency of Sulfonamides in Shigella Infections, Pub. Health Rep. 60: 1037-1042.

Hardy, A. V., Bruns, W., and DeCapito, T.: 1943. Cultural Observations on the Relative Efficacy of Sulfonamides in Shigella Infections, Pub. Health Rep. 58: 689-699.

Hardy, A. V., Shapiro, R. L., Chant, H. L., and Siegel, M.: 1942. Studies of Acute Diarrheal Diseases. Shigella Infections Among Institutional Inmates, Pub. Health Rep. 57: 1079-1094.

Hardy, A. V., and Watt, J.: 1945. Studies in Acute Diarrheal Diseases. Etiology, Pub. Health Rep. 60: 57-66.

Hardy, A. V., and Watt, J., Petterson, J., and Schlosser, E.: 1942. Studies of the Acute Diarrheal Diseases. New Procedures in Bacteriological Diagnosis, Pub. Health Rep. **15**: 521-535.

Hayes, W., and Freeman, J. F.: 1945. The Incidence, Type and Bacteriology of Salmonella Infection in the 5th Army in India, Indian J. M. Research **33**: 177-194.

Haynes, E., Manalan, S. A., and Harvery, B. B.: 1941. Pyelitis With Septicemia Caused by Sh. Paradysenteriae, J. Lab. & Clin. Med. **27**: 1007-1009.

Hinshaw, W. R., McNeil, E., and Taylor, T. J.: 1944. Avian Salmonellosis, Am. J. Hyg. **40**: 264-278.

Hidgson, A. E.: 1944. Specific Serum Therapy in Typhoid Fever, Brit. M. J. 339-340.

Hormaeche, E., Bonabe, J., Carrau, A., Zerbino, V., Aleppo, P. L., Peluffo, C. A., Peluffo, E., Praedri, J. A., Ramón Guerra, A., and Surraco, N. L.: 1940. Estudios sobre la etiología de las diarreas infantiles, Montevideo, J. Garcia Morales.

Hormaeche, E., Surraco, N. L., Peluffo, C. A., and Aleppo, P. L.: 1943. Causes of Infantile Summer Diarrhea, Am. J. Dis. Child. **66**: 539-551.

Hulst, D. L.: 1940. Onderzoekin over bacillaire dysenterie in Leiden en omgeving, Leiden, Univerzitet thesis.

Hutner, S. H., and Zahl, P. A.: 1942. The Action of Sulfanilamide Compounds on the Lethal Factor of Bacterial Toxins, Science **96**: 563-564.

Jones, D., Metzger, H. J., Schatz, A., and Waksman, S. A.: 1944. Control of Gram-negative Bacteria in Experimental Animals by Streptomycin, Science **100**: 103-105.

Jordan, J., and Jones, H. E.: 1945. Typhoid Fever in Immunised Personnel, Lancet **2**: 333-335.

Kamp, M.: 1943. Mass Fever Immunization, J. Indiana M. A. **36**: 584-585.

Karunakaran, R. C. O., and Pillai, P. K. S.: 1942. Paratyphoid Infections in India, Indian M. Gaz. **77**: 524-530.

Kauffmann, F.: 1941. Die Bakteriologie der Salmonella-Gruppe, Copenhagen, Ejnar Munksgaard.

Kessel, J. F., Parrish, M., and Cavell, K.: 1945. Shigella and Salmonella Encountered in Southern California, J. Bact. **49**: 522-523.

Kitching, J. S.: 1945. Salmonellosis, a Public Health Problem, Canad. J. Pub. Health **36**: 396-400.

Kleeberg, J.: 1941. Influence of Mandelic Acid Upon the Course of Typhoid Fever, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **35**: 191-196.

Kleeberg, J.: 1945. Mandelic Acid as an Aid in Typhoid Therapy, Acta med. orient. **2**: 187-191.

Kolmer, J. A., and Rule, A. M.: 1941. Sulfonamide Compounds in the Treatment of Experimental B. Typhosus (Eberthella Typhosa) Infections in Rabbits, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **48**: 388-390.

Kuhns, D. M.: 1943. The Control of Endemic and Epidemic Diarrhea; Preliminary Report, South. M. J. **36**: 393-401.

Laha, P. N.: 1946. Post-Typhoid Palatal Paralysis, Indian M. Rec. **66**: 10.

Landor, J. V.: 1941. Typhoid Fever, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **35**: 1-11.

Laton Jaume, V.: 1946. Consideraciones sobre 140 casos de fiebre tifoidea observados en el servicio de medicina del Hospital de Pedro Visca, Arch. de pediat. d. Uruguay **17**: 57-67.

de Lavergne, V., and Helluy, J. R.: 1946. Trois cas d'encéphalite typhique, Rev. méd. Nancy **71**: 120-124.

Lawrence, C. A., and Sprague, K. D.: 1941. Effects of Sulfanilamide, Sulfapyridine, Sulfathiazole and Sulfanylguanidine Upon Colon-Typhoid-Dysentery Group, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **48**: 696-700.

Leme, J. S. M., and Carrijo, L. N.: 1943. Vacinação T.A.B., Mem. Inst. Butantan **17**: 117-119.

Léon, A. P., Escarza, F., and Rabasa, E.: 1941. Immunización activa arteficial contra las fiebres tifoidea y paratifoidea A y B, Rev. d. Inst. salub. y enferm. trop. **2**: 161-186.

Léon, A. P., and Morales, J. G.: 1943. Contribución al estudio de las propriedades antitóxicas y anti-infecciosas del suero anti-Salmonella typhi, Rev. d. Inst. salub. y enferm. trop. **4**: 239-258.

Lindberg, R. B., and Bayliss, M.: 1946. Salmonella Types of the Pacific Area, J. Infect. Dis. **79**: 91-95.

Linton, R. W., and Jennings, R. K.: 1943. The Preparation and Properties of a New Type of Typhoid Vaccine, J. Franklin Inst. **236**: 592-593.

Llort Escalente, J., and Vargas, R.: 1942. Investigación de shigelas y salmonelas como factor patógeno en diarreas infantiles, Arch. Hosp. Rosal. **34**: 1409-1448.

Longfellow, D., and Luippold, G. F.: 1942. Typhoid Vaccine Studies. The Production of Cross-Immunity Between Members of the Typhoid-Paratyphoid Group of Microorganisms, J. Immunol. **45**: 249-260.

Longfellow, D., and Luippold, G. F.: 1943. Typhoid Vaccine Studies. Typhoid-Paratyphoid Vaccine, Am. J. Pub. Health **33**: 561-568.

Luippold, G. F.: 1945. A Proposed Typhoid Immunogenic Unit for the Evaluation of Antityphoid Immunizing Substances, Am. J. Pub. Health **35**: 153-158.

Luippold, G. F.: 1946. Typhoid Vaccine Studies. The Suitability of Vi Antigen as an Auxiliary Immunogen for Typhoid Vaccine; Progress Report, Am. J. Pub. Health **36**: 15-25.

Lyon, G. M.: 1941. Chemotherapy in Acute Bacillary Dysentery, West Virginia M. J. **37**: 25-28.

Maccolini, R.: 1941. Sulla frequenza in Italia dei vari tipi di Salmonella, Boll. d. Soc. ital. di microbiol. **13**: 3-6.

MacLennan, J. D.: 1945. The Non-mannitol Fermenting Dysentery Bacilli, J. Path. & Bact. **57**: 307-315.

Macumber, H. H.: 1942. Acute Bacillary Dysentery, Arch. Int. Med. **69**: 624-635.

Madruga, M.: 1943. Um caso de empiema por Salmonella typhimurium, Hospital, Rio de Janeiro **24**: 65-72.

Magrou, E., and Brisou, J.: 1945. Contribution à la vaccinothérapie dans les infections typho-paratyphoïdiques par les vaccins à l'alcool, Bull. et mem. Soc. méd. d. hôp. de Paris **61**: 417-420.

Makari, J. C.: 1946. The Cephalin-Cholesterol Flocculation Test in Typhoid and Typhus Fevers, J. Trop. Med. **49**: 70-72.

Manson, G. L.: 1943. Sulphadiazine and the Paratyphoid B Carrier, Lancet **1**: 724.

Manson-Bahr, P. H., editor: 1945. Manson's Tropical Diseases. A Manual of the Diseases of Warm Climates, ed. 12, Baltimore, William Wood & Co.

Manson-Bahr, P.: 1943. The Dysenteric Disorders, ed. 2, Baltimore, William Wood & Co.

Manson-Bahr, P.: 1943a. Epidemic Dysentery in the Armed Forces, M. Press **210**: 37-40.

McKay, F.: 1943. Dysentery and Its Treatment, Practitioner **151**: 170-174.

McSweeney, C. J.: 1946. Sulphathiazole and Penicillin in Typhoid Fever, Lancet **2**: 114-117.

Minor, G. R., and White, M. L.: 1946. Some Unusual Thoracic Complications of Typhoid and Salmonella Infections, Ann. Int. Med. **24**: 27-39.

Monsón, M. C. M.: 1945. Consideraciones clínicas de la fiebre tifoidea en el niño en Guatemala, Juventud. med. **2**: 279-282.

Monteverde, J. J.: 1943. Diagnóstico de los típos de Salmonela, Buenos Aires, Prensa de la Faculdad de la Medicina Veterinaria.

Moor, H. D., and Wallace, L. B.: 1941. Investigation of Protective Antibodies Produced by Oral Administration of Typhoid Vaccine, J. Lab. & Clin. Med. **26**: 1583-1586.

Morgan, H. R.: 1945. Active Immunization With Purified Somatic Antigens of E. Typhosa, S. Paratyphi and S. Schottmuelleri, Am. J. Pub. Health **35**: 614-620.

Morgan, H. R., Favorite, G. O., and Horneff, J. A.: 1943. Immunizing Potency in Man of a Purified Antigenic Material Isolated From E. Typhosa, J. Immunol. **46**: 301-307.

Morgan, W. T. J., and Partridge, S. M.: 1941. Studies in Immunochemistry, Biochem. J. **35**: 1140-1163.

Morgan, W. T. J., and Schutze, H.: 1943. Prophylactic Inoculation With the O Antigen of Bact. Shigae, Lancet **1**: 284-285.

Morton, H. E., and Engley, F. B., Jr.: 1945. Dysentery Bacteriophage, J. A. M. A. **127**: 584-591.

Muller, B., and Bois, J.: 1945. Les néphrites de la fièvre typhoïde, J. méd. de Lyon **26**: 775-784.

Nelson, C. T., Borg, A. F., Spizizen, J., and Barnes, M. J.: 1946. Occurrence of Shigella Types in the Military Population of the Southeastern United States—1943 and 1944, Am. J. Hyg. **36**: 51-54.

Nelson, J. B., Tenbroeck, C., and Dammin, G. J.: 1945. Distribution of Shigella in India as Determined by Spot Agglutination With Absorbed Sera, Am. J. Pub. Health **35**: 51-54.

Neter, E.: 1942. The Genus Shigella, Bact. Rev. **6**: 1-36.

Neter, E.: 1943. Bacteriological, Epidemiological, Immunological and Chemotherapeutic Aspects of Bacillary Dysentery, Gastroenterology **1**: 37-54.

Neter, E.: 1944. Salmonella Choleraesuis Meningitis, Arch. Int. Med. **73**: 425-429.

Neter, E. R., and Clark, P.: 1944. Salmonella Enterocolitis in Infants and Children, Am. J. Digest. Dis. **11**: 323-325.

Olitzki, L., and Koch, P. K.: 1945. Production of Potent Toxins by Shigella Dysenteriae (Shiga) in a Synthetic Medium, Nature **151**: 334.

Olitzki, L., and Koch, P. K.: 1945. Observations on the Use of Dysentery-Toxoid, Acta. med. orient. **4**: 57-58.

Oliver, H. R., and Bonet-Maury, P.: 1946. Action comparée de la chaleur et de l'irradiation sur le pouvoir antigenique et les proprietes du bacille typhique, Ann. Inst. Pasteur **72**: 222-229.

Page, S. G.: 1944. Sulfaguanidine in the Treatment of Bacillary Dysentery, Bull. U. S. Army M. Dept. **72**: 50-62.

Painton, J. F., and Hantman, S.: 1945. An Outbreak of Sonne Dysentery, J. A. M. A. **128**: 1152-1155.

Picasso, B. V. M., and Aguero, F.: 1944. Interesante caso de pseudoreumatismo infeccioso paratifico A, Nicaragua med. **2**: 315-322.

Pot, A. W.: 1945. Bacillary Dysentery in Curaçao, Am. J. Digest. Dis. **12**: 70-73.

Rachmilewitz, M., and Braun, K.: 1943. Sulphapyridine in Typhoid Fever, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **37**: 157-162.

Ral, S. V.: 1942. On the Prophylaxis and Treatment of the Enteric Group of Fevers, Antiseptic **39**: 486-492.

Rebattu, P.: 1946. Paralysie des dilatateurs à la suite d’une fièvre typhoïde, Ann. d’otolaryng. **12**: 413.

Reinmann, H. A., Elias, W. F., and Priece, A. H.: 1945. Streptomycin for Typhoid, J. A. M. A. **128**: 175-180.

Reiter, R., and Marburg, K.: 1943. The Bactericidal Effect of Tin and Its Applications to the Treatment of Typhoid Fever, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **36**: 305-318.

Remlinger, P.: 1945. Chromo-vaccination par cultures sur milieu solide, Arch. Inst. Pasteur d’Algérie **22**: 265-266.

Research Laboratories, U. S. Army Medical School: 1941. Immunization to Typhoid Fever, Baltimore, Johns Hopkins Press.

Reyes, M. O.: 1945. Intra-dermovacunación antitífica, Rev. méd. cubana **56**: 411-416.

Reyes Terra, J. M., and Dubourdieau, J.: 1945. Complicaciones en el curso y convalescencia de una fiebre tifoidea, Arch. urug. de med., cir. y especialid. **27**: 512-524.

Riser, N. W., Farrington, R. F., and Breese, B. B.: 1946. Response to Penicillin by a Typhoid Carrier, Am. J. M. Sc. **212**: 331-335.

Ristori, C. C., and Schwartz, M. B.: 1944. Primovacunación antitifica por via intradermica, Rev. chilena de hig. y med. prev. **6**: 171-186.

Rodriguez Salinas, C.: 1946. El polimorfismo clínico de la fiebre tifoidea, Guatemala med. **11**: 11.

Roger, H., and Gastaut, H.: 1946. Les amyotrophies au course de la fièvre typhoïde, Marseille méd. **83**: 23-31.

Rubinstein, A. D., Feemster, R. F., and Smith, H. N.: 1944. Salmonellosis as a Public Health Problem, Am. J. Pub. Health **34**: 841-853.

Rubenstein, D., and Johnson, B. B.: 1945. Salmonella Appendicitis, Am. J. M. Sc. **210**: 517-523.

Rubin, H. L., Scherago, M., and Weaver, R. H.: 1942. The Occurrence of Salmonella in the Lymph Glands of Normal Hogs, Am. J. Hyg. **36**: 43-47.

Ruiz Merino, J.: 1946. Un nuevo tipo de vacuna tífo-paratífica al verde brillante, Rev. san. e. hig. púb. **20**: 460-477.

Schatz, A., Bugie, E., and Waksman, S. A.: 1944. Streptomycin, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **55**: 66-69.

Scott, E. P., and Bruce, J. W.: 1946. Typhoid Empyema, Am. J. Dis. Child. **71**: 277-279.

Seidenstein, H.: 1946. Salmonella Osteomyelitis, Bull. Hosp. Joint Dis. **6**: 126-132.

Seligmann, E., and Hertz, J. J.: 1944. Salmonella Infections. Report of 37 Cases Observed at Beth Israel Hospital, New York, in Past 4 Years, Ann. Int. Med. **20**: 743-751.

Seligmann, E., Saphra, I., and Wassermann, M.: 1946. Salmonella Infection in the U. S. A., J. Immunol. **54**: 69-87.

Shevchenko, F. I.: 1942. Odnokratnye priviki tifozno-paratifosnymi kvastovymi vaktsinami, Zhurnal Mikrobiol. **1**: 3-14.

Shwartzman, G.: 1945. Concerted Antibiotic Effect of Penicillin, Methionine, Threonine and Methionine Sulfoxide Upon Brucella, Eberthella, Salmonella and Shigella, Science **102**: 148-150.

Silverman, D. N., and Friedrichs, A. V.: 1943. The Increasing Incidence and Complications of Chronic Bacillary Dysentery, New Orleans M. & S. J. **95**: 401-407.

Silverman, D. N., and Leslie, A.: 1945. Simulation of Chronic Bacterial Dysentery by Paratyphoid B Infection, Gastroenterology **4**: 53-60.

Soesman, J.: 1941. De polyphaagbehandeling van bacillaire dysenterie in de algemeene praktijk, Geneesk. tijdschr. v. nederl.-Indië **81**: 1862-1874.

Soman, D. W.: 1945. The Distribution of Typhoid Vi Agglutinins in Normal Sera With Special Reference to Their Diagnostic Value in Typhoid Fever, Indian M. Gaz. **80**: 90-92.

Streicher, M. H.: 1945. Phthalylsulfathiazole, J. A. M. A. **129**: 1080-1083.

Stuart, M. B., and Pullen, R. L.: 1946. Typhoid, Arch. Int. Med. **78**: 629-661.

Sujoy, E.: 1945. Parototis tifica, Arch. argent. de pediat. **24**: 125-131.

Taunay, A. E., and Silva, M. B.: 1943. Salmonelose com localização extraintestinal, Rev. Inst. Adolfo Lutz **3**: 244-246.

Thomas, A. R., Jr., and Levine, M.: 1945. Some Effects of Penicillin on Intestinal Bacteria, J. Bact. **49:** 623-627.

Thomayer, J.: 1919. Pathologie a therapie chorob vnitrních, ed. 2, Prague, Bursik & Kohout.

Tilden, I. L. and Arnold, H. L., Jr.: 1943. Chronic Granuloma Following Intradermal Injection of Typhoid Vaccine, Arch. Path. **36:** 13-18.

Treffers, H. P.: 1946. The Detoxification by Acetylation of Soluble Antigens From Shigella Dysenteriae (Shiga) and E. typhosa, Science **103:** 387-389.

Troitskii, V. L., Veger, R. A., and Solovev, J.: 1942. Morfologicheskie issledovania bakteriinykh vaktsin, Zhurnal Mikrobiol. **1:** 24-31.

Tullis, J. L.: 1945. Typhoid in Previously Immunized Subjects, War Med. **7:** 95-99.

Uiberall, E.: 1944. Las complicaciones nerviosas tardas en las infecciones tificas y paratificas, Rev. méd. de Chile **72:** 793-800.

Vaccaro, H., Perez, M. M., and Valenzuela, E. P.: 1943. Salmonelosis y shigelosis en Chile, Rev. chilena de pediat. **14:** 153-176.

Valledor, T., Garcia Perez, E., and Pedrera, J.: 1942. Meningitis purulenta a Salmonella eastbourne en un lactante de tres meses, tratado con sulfadiazina, Bol. Soc. cubana de pediat. **14:** 413-429.

Varela Fuentas, B., Canzani, R., and Rubins, P.: 1946. La ictericia en las infecciones por el bacilo tifico, Día méd. **18:** 58-61.

Varela, G., and Olarte, J.: 1942. Aislamiento de Salmonella typhi-murium en un caso de peritonitis, Medicina, Mexico **22:** 107.

Varela, G., and Zozaya, J.: 1942. Salmonelas aisladas en la ciudad de Mexico, Rev. d. Inst. salub. y enferm. trop. **3:** 131-134.

Vila, O.: 1942. Orqui-epididimitis tifica, Rev. méd. de Rosario **32:** 791-794.

Wahl, M.: 1946. Critique de quelques méthodes de traitement de la fièvre typhoïde, Concours méd. **68:** 373.

Weil, A. J.: 1943. Progress in the Study of Bacillary Dysentery, J. Immunol. **46:** 13-46.

Weil, A. J., Black, J., and Farsetta, K.: 1944. The Serological Types of Shigella Paradysenteriae (Flexner), J. Immunol. **49:** 321-351.

Weil, A. J., and Farsetta, K.: 1945. The Type-Specificity of Immune Protection Against Shigella Paradysenteriae (Flexner), J. Bact. **51:** 301-305.

Weil, A. J., and McFarlane, J. A.: 1944. Protection of the Developing Chick Embryo With Specific Serum Against Infection With Shigella Paradysenteriae (Flexner), J. Immunol. **48:** 291-295.

Weinstein, L.: 1946. Typhus-Bacillus Infection of a Surgical Wound, New England J. Med. **234:** 184-187.

Welch, H. and Stuart, C. A.: 1936. A Rapid Slide Test for the Serologic Diagnosis of Typhoid and Paratyphoid Fevers, J. Lab. & Clin. Med. **21:** 411-417.

West, M. G., Doll, E. R., and Edwards, P. R.: 1945. Inhibition of Salmonella Cultures by Streptomycin, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **60:** 363.

West, R. F.: 1943. Bacillary Dysentery, M. J. Australia **30:** 344-347.

Westermann, C. D.: 1944. Over het voorkommen van Shigella dysenteriae type Newcastle en het kweeken van dysenteriebacteriën uit de faeces, Nederl. tijdschr. v. geneesk. **88:** 242-244.

Wheeler, K. M.: 1944. Serological Identification of Dysentery Bacilli, Am. J. Pub. Health **34:** 621-629.

Wheeler, K. M.: 1944a. Antigenic Relationships of Shigella Paradysenteriae, J. Bact. **48:** 87-101.

Wheeler, K. M., and Stuart, C. A.: 1946. The Mannitol-Negative Shigella Group, J. Bact. **51:** 317-325.

Woodrow, E. P., and Douglas-Henry, D.: 1945. The Treatment of Gastro-enteritis with Sulphadiazine, South African M. J. **19:** 387.

Yáñez, J. P.: 1944. Estudios sobre la disenteria bacilar, Rev. san. e hig. púb. **18:** 173-195.

Yannet, H., Deutsch, J. V., and Lieberman, R.: 1944. The Use of Sulfaguanidine for Prophylaxis in Sonne Bacillary Dysentery and in the Control of the Carrier State, Yale J. Biol. & Med. **16:** 443-450.

Young, V. M.: 1947. Geographical Distribution of Shigella, Am. J. Trop. Med. **27:** 293-299.

CHAPTER 30

SALMONELLOSIS, TYPHOID FEVER, SHIGELLOSIS IN CHILDREN

SALMONELLOSIS IN CHILDREN

Antonio Sellek

TYPHOID FEVER IN CHILDREN

Antonio Sellek
Gustavo Cardelle
Juan A. Jimenez

SHIGELLOSIS IN CHILDREN

Antonio Sellek

SALMONELLOSIS IN CHILDREN

Hormaeche and Peluffo define salmonellosis as "an infectious-contagious disease which presents all the characteristics and manifestations of a true infection, with progressive development, variety of localizations, and high mortality."

The immunology, epidemiology, and bacteriology have been discussed in Gradwohl (1948).

Biochemical characteristics routinely used in identifying Salmonellae do not easily differentiate them from paracolons, which are "slow" fermenters of lactose and sucrose. Paracolons also seem to occupy an important position in pathology; they have frequently been isolated from cases of acute enteritis. Curbelo Hernandez, Soto Pradera, and Montalvo Urrutibeascoa reported (1945) an outbreak of gastroenteritis due to paracolons among newborn infants.

BACTERIOLOGIC EXAMINATION OF SALMONELLOSIS BY CULTURE

The following method is used by us for fecal material:*

When the samples are to be sent from a distance, the Teague and Clurman mixture is used. (This is a sterile 30 per cent buffered glycerin in saline solution.) A fresh feces specimen or, better, mucus, pus, or blood, when available, is inoculated in an enrichment medium (selenite F or tetrathionate broth) as well as seeded directly, after previous washing, on such media as SS agar and MacConkey agar. All are incubated for 18 to 24 hours. From the enrichment medium, seedings are made in SS agar and MacConkey agar.

Tetrathionate broth, SS agar, and MacConkey agar are considered excellent. Suspected colonies are transferred to tubes of plain broth containing the sugar series. If the

---

Photographs in this chapter are from autopsies made during an epidemic outbreak of meningitis in the newborn by *Salmonella havana*. Studies made by Angel A. Aballí and collaborators in the Municipal Children's Hospital in Havana (21 cases).

*For a different procedure, see Chapter 71.

organism is gram-negative, motile, produces acid and gas in glucose,[*] mannitol, maltose, and sorbitol, does not produce indol nor ferment lactose, it is suspected of belonging to the genus Salmonella. Serologic identification is too complicated for routine hospital laboratory use. The agglutination tests for antigenic analysis can be made in Salmonella Centers[†] or in well-equipped laboratories with experienced personnel.

Where proper equipment is lacking and there is no Center available for the necessary service, pediatricians must be guided solely by the characteristics of the genus.[‡]

Blood Culture.—Blood culture is very important as an early step in the isolation of strains of Salmonella with great invasive power. Blood cultures are often positive, while the feces are negative.

Salmonellae in Cerebrospinal Fluid.—Salmonellae are present in the cerebrospinal fluid in cases of Salmonella meningitis. Twenty-one cases of meningitis in the newborn were studied in this hospital by Curbelo and Martinez Cruz. In 1940, Guerra, Peluffo, and Aleppo reviewed the literature and collected 56 cases of meningitis due to Salmonella. Neter later compiled 22 cases. The species most frequently found were *S. schottmuelleri,* 8 cases; *S. typhimurium,* 17; *S. choleraesuis,* 5; *S. enteritidis,* 34; and 13 cases were of a heterogeneous group of species (*havana, dublin, eastbourne, jena,*[§] *london*). In Cuba, Valledor et al., reported a case of meningitis due to *S. eastbourne* which was cured by sulfapyridine and sulfadiazine.

Salmonellae may also be isolated from cultures of urine, pleural fluid, peritoneal fluid, etc.

FREQUENCY

Incidence of the different types of Salmonellae may vary in different countries and even in different localities in the same country. See Chapter 29.

CLINICAL SYMPTOMS

The majority of our cases in children during the early days of their lives have been caused by a septicemic type with extraordinary intensity of infectiveness, and have almost constantly been accompanied by meningoencephalitic symptoms and high fatality. During the first years of life, it is possible to observe diarrheal forms of mucogranulous or purulent, mucohemorrhagic type, constituting the most marked symptomatology and therefore confused with dysenteric affections in such infants.

Other cases are manifested as pyretic gastroenteritis with a typhoid pattern, and only bacteriologic investigations can establish their true nature. It is interesting to note that the choleriform syndrome may appear frequently in these cases, either as a dyspeptic type, "toxic dyspepsia" with intense dehydration, or as an episode within one of the forms indicated above, generally leading to a fatal disturbance of the acid-base balance. On other occasions we have been able to verify the marked neurotropic tendency such as occurred in our epidemic of 1936. We have observed localization also in the respiratory apparatus in more or less severe form, sometimes causing fatal bronchopneumonia.

At times the septic picture is accompanied by visceral rupture, which affects widely separated sites, or forms may be accompanied by arthritis and

---

[*] Exceptions are listed on page 507.

[†] Credit should be given to P. R. Edwards, the pioneer in Salmonella Centers, who contributed so much to the knowledge of salmonellosis (O. F.).

[‡] Divergent opinion is to be found in Chapters 29 and 71 of this book and in Gradwohl (1948).

[§] Editor's note (O. F.): Not considered a species per se today.

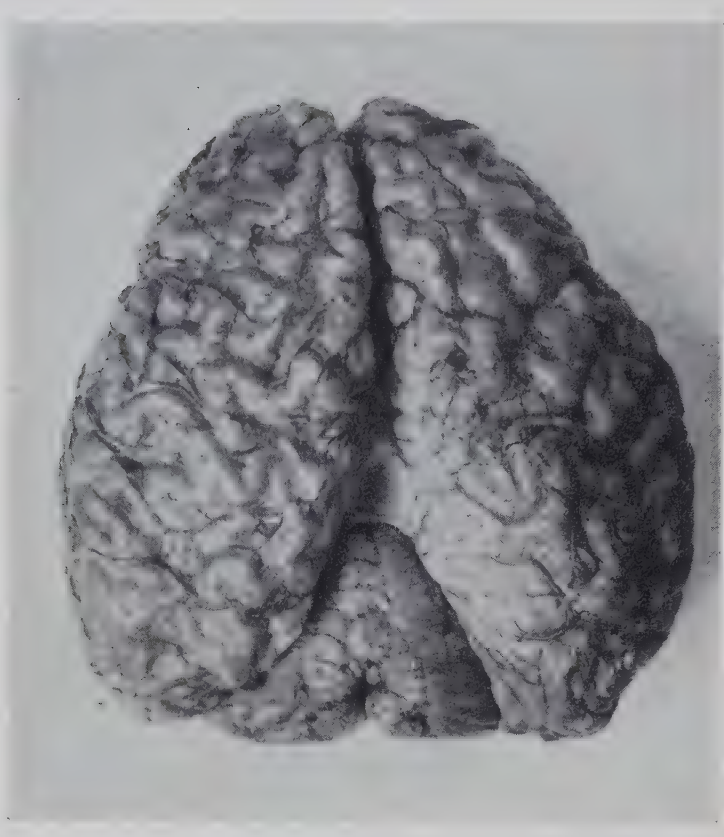


Fig. 160.—Purulent meningitis (salmonellosis) covering the cerebellum. (Courtesy of F. Sala Panisello, Children's Municipal Hospital of Havana.

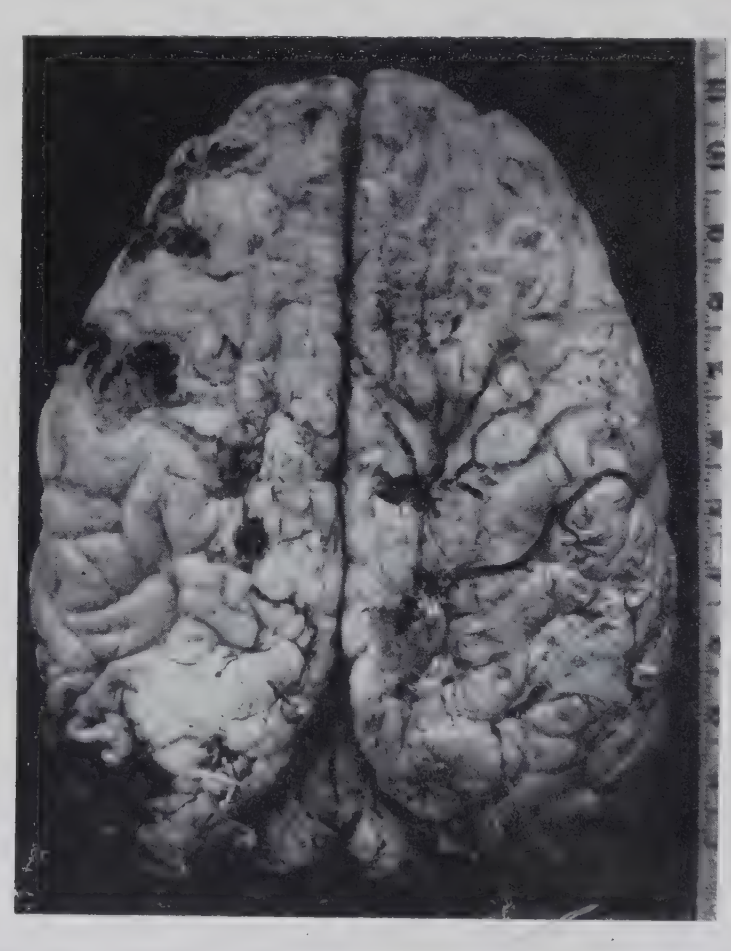


Fig. 161.—Purulent meningitis with hemorrhagic foci disseminated through the left hemisphere, branching into the other hemisphere. (Meningitis due to *Salmonella havana.*) (Courtesy of F. Sala Panisello, Children's Municipal Hospital of Havana.)

osteomyelitis, secondary anemia, and even a hemorrhagic syndrome such as we had occasion to observe at an autopsy in 1936.

Aballí divides salmonellosis in children into the following clinical types: (1) slight digestive upset, with dyspeptic syndrome; (2) enterocolitis, very frequently with dysenteric syndrome; (3) toxic form of the infantile cholera type; (4) septic form with typhoid pattern; (5) neurotropic septicemia in the newborn; and (6) septic form with tendency to varied localizations.

The hemogram in salmonellosis may show transient leucopenia with relative lymphocytosis. Later, this leucopenia is superseded by leucocytosis, the intensity of which depends upon the clinical course of the disease and the complications.

THE WIDAL SEROREACTION IN SALMONELLA INFECTIONS

Positive agglutination reactions may be observed in patients with Salmonella infection. Cross-reactions, however, do occur. Differentiation may be attempted by repeating the test every two or three days, since the agglutinins continue to increase in titer against the specific bacterium which is causing the infection. In extraintestinal Salmonella infections the bacteria at times cannot be isolated from the feces, but the serum of the patient nevertheless agglutinates the organisms at very high titers.

Occasionally, the serum of patients infected by Salmonellae shows lack of agglutinin "O" titer, or a very low titer for "O," but the agglutinins for "H" may be high; these may be formed exclusively against one of the phases.*

TREATMENT

Zerbino writes that 50 per cent of cases of enteric infection in Uruguay are of specific enteritis (Shigella or Salmonella). His experience was with 384 children up to 2 years of age, three-fourths of whom were less than one year old. Aballí, Jr., and J. A. Martinez Cruz indicated that, in Cuba, specific enteric infections are the most frequent cause of diarrhea in well-nourished children. Their figures were taken from private patients (116 cases). In his work "Acute Diarrhea in Infancy and Childhood," Aballí (1944), suggested the following plan of treatment: Except in very mild cases a period of starvation should be allowed. This helps control the symptoms rapidly. In cases with severe vomiting, nothing is given by mouth; otherwise water or tea is given. For babies, the quantity of liquid is 3 ounces per pound of weight every 4 hours. A mixture of sodium chloride and sodium bicarbonate helps prevent the upset of the acid-base balance. After improvement of the diarrhea, a mixture of agar and pectin is used for 12 to 36 hours. This is followed by acidophilus milk. After 24 to 48 hours, if it is well tolerated, the amount of food is increased to cover the caloric requirements.

Patients on a protein-free diet over a long period must be given transfusions of whole blood and plasma to prevent hypoproteinemia.

---

*See also Chapter 29.

In severe cases, vitamins B_1 and C are administered during the early stages, and later factors of the B-complex and liver extract are injected intramuscularly. In older children, the first food should be fruit juices. Four or five days later they may be given boiled chicken or fish and skimmed milk. Regular diet was occasionally begun ten days after commencement of the diarrhea.

In undernourished children, blood transfusions and infusions are administered if necessary to correct dehydration.

Symptomatic treatment is indicated at times: tincture of paregoric is used against tenesmus and diarrhea. Stimulants such as adrenalin and Coramine are given in syncope.

Treatment with sulfonamide drugs combined with dietary and symptomatic medication is the classical treatment. Agustín Castellaños published studies of major interest on this subject. Insoluble forms of the drug (sulfaguanidine, sulfasuxidine) are of little value in salmonellosis, although these drugs are useful in shigellosis. Salmonellae enter the body by way of the mouth and cause inflammatory lesions in the digestive tract. The bacteria have a tendency to spread throughout the body by way of the blood stream, and to localize extraintestinally. Therefore, according to Castellaños, soluble sulfonamide drugs are to be used in treating the disease. These drugs are easily absorbed and high concentrations can be reached in the blood; they act upon the bacteria not only in the intestines but also in the blood and remote organs. Experimental and clinical studies dealing with the question indicate that *S. choleraesuis* is greatly affected by soluble sulfonamide drugs. It is possible that some serious cases caused by *S. enteritidis* and *S. typhimurium* may also react to these drugs. According to clinical observations, paratyphoid A does not seem to be affected by the soluble sulfonamide drugs, although experimental studies indicate that it is susceptible to them. Administration of the soluble drugs does not influence the clinical course in paratyphoid B and C infections in man. In the opinion of Zerbino et al. the use of sulfonamide drugs in Salmonella enteritis is efficacious when a diffusing agent is indicated. Sulfathiazole (Zerbino et al.) has reduced mortality from 40 per cent to 7.1 per cent.

Castellaños places sulfadiazine first among the sulfonamide drugs, because it is less toxic and is better tolerated; sulfathiazole is placed next, and then other drugs which are absorbed.

The patient shows clinical improvement within 24 to 72 hours if the sulfonamide drug is effective. If no improvement is noted at the end of this period, another sulfonamide drug is substituted. This rotation sometimes gives excellent results. When lack of tolerance is indicated (vomiting), the drug may be administered parenterally, intramuscularly, or intravenously, as the case may require (Castellaños). In chronic cases, an autogenous vaccine is indicated (Castellaños). Drugs with localized action give uncertain results.

In infections due to a combination of bacteria—Shigellae associated with one or more types of Salmonella, or several types of Salmonellae together—a soluble sulfonamide drug by itself will suffice.*

---

*It is interesting to note that antibiotics are less active in Salmonellosis in children than in adults.

PROGNOSIS

Prognosis is related to the age of the child. The type of Salmonella is also important, those belonging to group C of the Kauffmann-White schema being extraordinarily malignant (Saphra).

PROPHYLAXIS

See Chapter 29.

TYPHOID FEVER IN CHILDREN

Typhoid fever is an acute infectious disease caused by *Salmonella typhosa (Eberthella typhosa)*, which was discovered in 1880.

That it may be transmitted from mother to fetus was first demonstrated by Eberth in 1889 (fetal or congenital typhoid). Typhoid fever in children presents certain individual features which distinguish it from typhoid fever in adults. Rare in nurslings, it becomes increasingly frequent as age advances. This is due, not to lesser susceptibility on the part of babies, but rather to less opportunity for contagion. It is found only exceptionally in breast-fed infants, although we had the opportunity of observing one case in an 8-month-old child in a strongly infected area.

Typhoid fever is found in all countries. While absent in some regions, in others it is endemic in character. In tropical countries it predominates during the rainy season. In general, it increases in summer and decreases in winter. In the temperate zones it is more frequent in autumn and early winter.

PATHOLOGIC ANATOMY

Lesions of the tissues due to the typhoid bacillus involve principally the cells of the reticuloendothelial system—macrophage cells—plasma cells, and lymphocytes. Consequently the lymphoid tissue of the whole organism, especially in the path of the primary invasion, shows the most typical changes.

Lesions outside the reticuloendothelial system develop secondarily, often as a result of the combined action of the bacteria and physicochemical agents. It is to be recalled that *S. typhosa* is a gram-negative bacillus with a complex flagellar cover. It is capable of producing a strong endotoxin which is responsible for the general intoxication characteristic of the disease.

Typical specific lesions in typhoid are definitely the result of the action of multiple factors.

When the typhoid bacillus appears in the intestinal mucosa it is attacked by macrophages as a result of proliferation of the mucosal reticulum and that of the lymphatic follicles. These cells envelop the bacilli, even though the cytoplasm of such cells contains other dead cells, living organisms, fragments of leucocytes and lymphocytes, plasma cells, or red cells. The engorged macrophages wander in and out of lymphatic and capillary channels and invade the neighboring lymphoid tissue.

Constant proliferation of enlarged mononuclear cells occurs; there is invasion of the lymphatic follicles; this structure is eventually converted into a large, pale-colored mass, composed of histiocytes, some uninuclear cells, other cells with nuclei in mitosis, the majority in a state of active phagocytosis. Typhoid bacilli, if present, may be seen in the cytoplasm of the macrophages. They do not exhibit the delicate appearance of the bacilli from cultures, but appear as long, rod-like organisms, swollen and deformed.

In the usual lesions of typhoid, it is very difficult to find bacilli unless death has occurred only a few hours ago, thus facilitating the growth of *S. typhosa.*

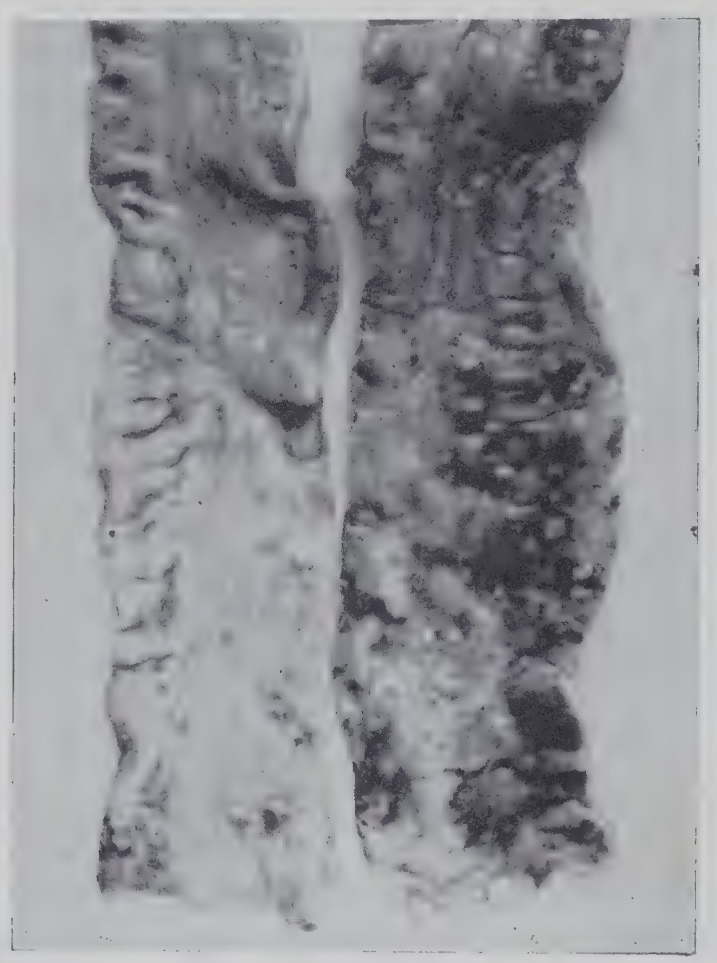


Fig. 162.—*Left,* follicular colitis; *right,* follicular-ulcerative colitis.

Not all macrophages survive the lethal action of the toxins of the engulfed bacilli. Necrosis of the cells and of adjacent tissue results; this is a typical lesion in the disease. Lymphatic and blood capillaries are seen blocked by large masses of macrophages and precipitated fibrin; this thrombosis interferes with the nutrition of the tissues, thus promoting the lethal effects of the bacterial action. Capillary obstruction by itself, however, is not considered responsible for the necrosis.

The final result of this process is the transformation of normal lymphatic follicles of the intestinal mucosa into enlarged corpuscles of a soft, succulent consistency; this condition is found in masses of necrotic tissue which is gray or yellowish-gray, sometimes hemorrhagic.

The necrotizing process is extensive and involves the surrounding tissue, with intense ulceration of the mucosa, followed by secondary infection with intestinal bacteria. Deep-seated lesions, such as those of mesenteric glands, spleen, liver, and bone marrow, undergo liquefaction. If the patient survives the infection, these deep-seated lesions heal by cicatrization or partial reparation of the destroyed tissue.

If extensive necrosis or secondary infection is present, the cellular reaction is complicated by the appearance of polymorphonuclears, although mononuclears continue to predominate: These determine the morphologic character of the reaction. Notwithstanding the fact that typical lesions may develop on a large scale in areas where there are large numbers of reticuloendothelial cells, a typhoid lesion or granuloma may develop in any tissue of the system, because of the specific nature of the lesions.

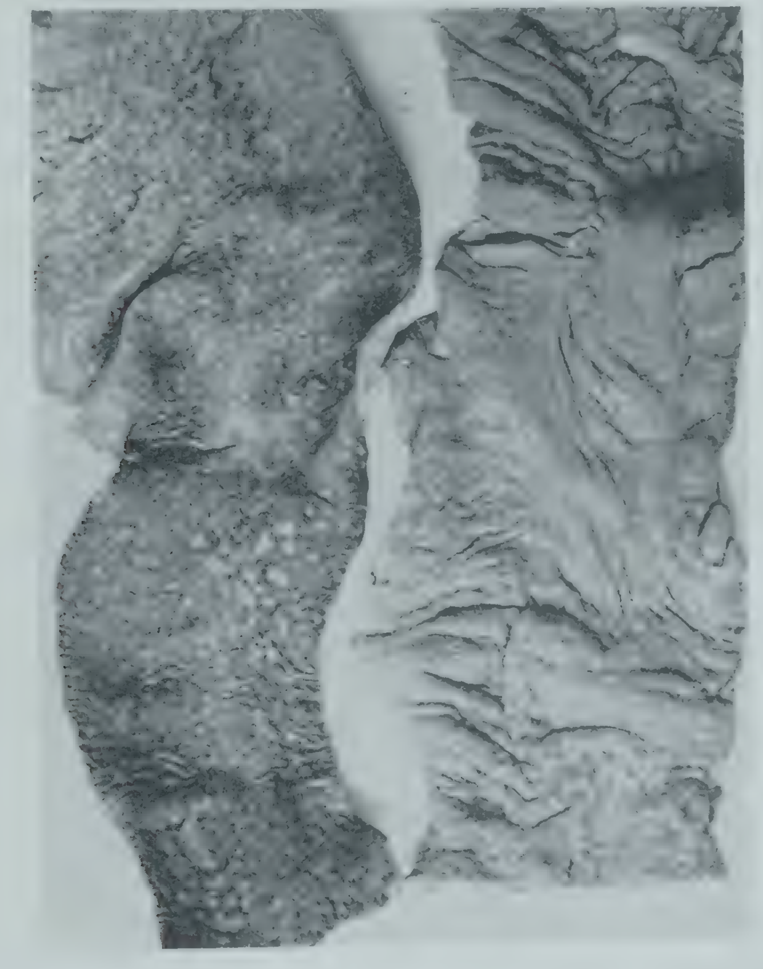


Fig. 163.—Left, ulcerohemorrhagic colitis; right, pseudodiphtheritic colitis.

The macroscopic and microscopic characters of the granuloma differ in various organs, due to the difference in structure of the organs. Lesions of the separate tissues are:

Digestive Tract.—Localization of lesions in the digestive tract is determined entirely by the distribution of lymphoid tissue. In severe cases, acute ulcerative lesions may develop in the mouth and in the pharynx. When these lesions are secondarily infected, large diffuse pseudodiphtheritic areas of the mucosa are formed. The secondary infection conduces to the formation of large retropharyngeal and peritracheal abscesses, accompanied by necrosis of the laryngeal tissue and by chondritis of the laryngeal and tracheal cartilages. The epiglottis is not affected, since it is not composed of lymphoid tissue. Lesions in the mouth and in the pharynx reside in the lymphoid tissue, as described above, appearing first as local enlargements which ulcerate and rapidly become subject to secondary infection.

The esophagus usually does not show any alterations. The stomach, on rare occasions, presents mild, round ulcerations with a necrotic center. These are situated in the lymphoid tisue. They are elevated, swollen, greenish-yellow in color, with notched border.

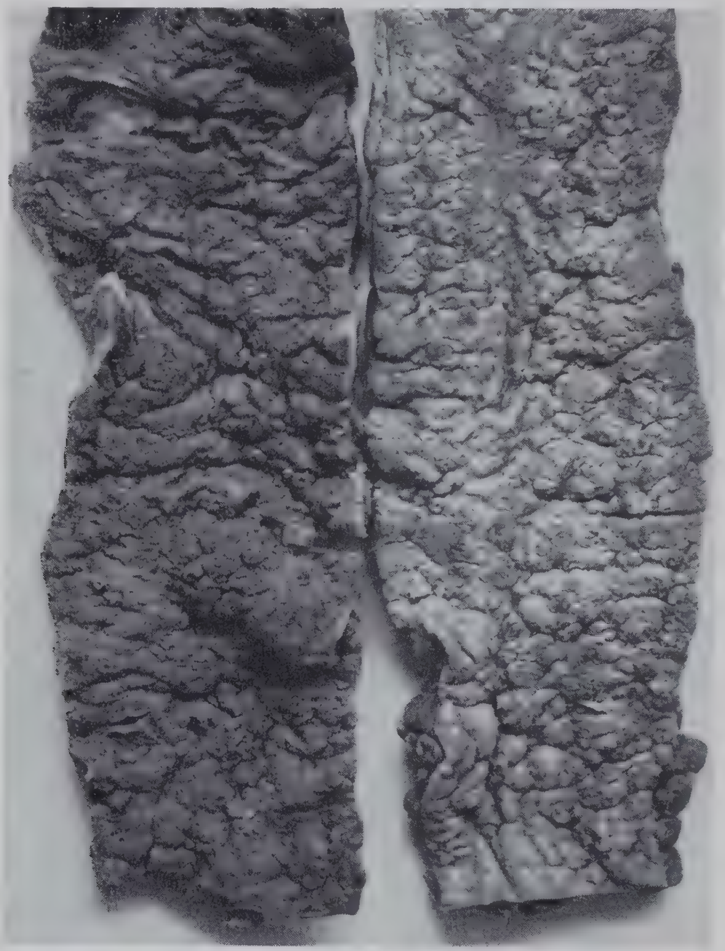


Fig. 164.—Polypoid-diphtheroid colitis.

Although ulcerative lesions sometimes are found in the duodenum, typhoid lesions in this part of the digestive tract are rarer than in the stomach. Lesions are scant in the small intestine, in the upper part as well as in the lower part of the jejunum. They increase progressively in number and in size in the ileum as they approach the ileocecal valve, since in this portion lymphatic formations known as Peyer's patches are more abundant.

At autopsy of patients who have died of typhoid fever during the second or third week of the disease, all of the successive stages of development of typhoid lesions can be seen. These range from simple hyperemia and edematous enlargement of the small lymphatic follicles to confluent lesions, with ulceration and hemorrhage. Where the lesions are isolated, they are found situated in the direction of the longitudinal axis of the intestine, with a predilection for lymphoid tissue. The neighboring tissue of the intestinal wall is always edematous and enlarged, sometimes double or triple the normal size. Hyperemia of the affected area imparts an intensely red color to the intestine.

Slight lesions involve the mucosa and submucosa. More intense lesions provoke different necrotic processes which extend beyond the closed follicles of the intestine to the entire intestinal wall. In such cases, areas are extremely altered, lymphatic and blood capillaries are blocked, resulting in the necrosis of the whole intestinal wall; in consequence, the intestine perforates, often followed by localized or general peritonitis.

In the colon, lesions are most numerous at the cecum and the ileocecal valve, sometimes giving rise to pseudotumors which produce constipation or diarrhea. Further along the cecum, lesions decrease in number, since this portion of the intestine does not have a great quantity of lymphoid tissue. Perforating lesions of the colon are very rare. The appendix is always involved and may be the site of extensive ulceration, especially in the young subject.

Lymphatic glands of the mesentery are always involved in the typhoid process. Beginning with those situated nearest the cecum (the normal area of drainage for the ileocecal segment) the mesenteric lymph glands undergo inflammatory changes, showing some swelling and necrosis; however, not all glands situated in this area of drainage are involved.

Rapid necrosis takes place in enlarged glands. In those most affected, there may be seen a change in appearance caused by hemorrhage and thrombosis. Areas of various coloration, yellow, red, gray, and black, may be observed. Histologic examination reveals alterations in the structure of the glands. The first changes seen are the proliferation of limiting cells of the sinuses and of the reticulum with formation of a large number of macrophages, a situation similar to that described in the intestine.

Examination of the glands of a patient who has died of typhoid shows that typhoid bacilli are not immediately found in great quantity, but the number of bacilli is greatly increased in the glands a few hours after death. In this process, many macrophages are destroyed, but new macrophagic cells replace them. The germinal centers apparently disappear, being replaced by pale masses of macrophages. The gland cells as well as the periglandular tissue are affected, proliferation of the reticulum and intense mononucleosis being noted. If the glands undergo necrosis and the patient recovers, these necrotic areas either cicatrize or are restored by tissue proliferation.

Spleen.—Splenomegaly is the most constant and characteristic finding in patients dying of typhoid fever. This is due to the intense proliferation of the reticulum. The same occurs in the mesenteric glands. Intense blood regurgitation of the splenic sinuses occurs. The typhoid spleen is of a soft, friable consistency, intensely red in color, with the capsule subject to great tension. Sections show the pulp to be of a reddish-gray color and containing a great quantity of splenic debris. Malpighian corpuscles are easily distinguished, sometimes appearing normal, sometimes hypertrophic. They are gray with yellowish-white areas of necrosis. Occasionally, large necrotic areas of infarcts may be observed in the spleen. Histology is similar to that observed in the lymphatic glands.

Liver.—The liver is increased in size, swollen, of a reddish-gray color, sections appearing congested, with necrotic areas which are not constant but which are uniformly distributed. They cannot be seen easily macroscopically but can be seen readily in tissue sections. The hepatic function is not greatly changed by the alterations in the liver. The icterus sometimes observed in typhoid is due not to alteration of the hepatic cells but to changes in the cells of the reticulum and to changes in the biliary canals.

Mallory and Wreed, who made a thorough study of the focal alterations in the liver, attributed these changes to thrombosis of the capillaries or to obstruction of the sinuses, and compared this process to that which takes place in the glands. One can observe in the liver the typical typhoidal granuloma with its great macrophagic activity and central necrosis.

In the extrahepatic biliary passages, constant lesions are: acute cholecystitis, chronic ulceration of the gall bladder, and calculous cholecystitis. It has been demonstrated in some gallstones that the center of the calculi had been formed by bacillary bodies. Infection in the biliary canals and in the common duct gives rise to acute inflammation from which almost pure cultures of typhoid bacilli can be obtained by biliary drainage.

Bones and Bone Marrow.—In the course of the disease or sometimes months or years later, periosteal lesions due to the typhoid bacillus occur, often with no other manifestations of generalized infection. There occur swelling and pain of the long bones (tibia, femur) or of the vertebrae, with later development of spondylitis. A characteristic lesion is the periosteal abscess with intense advanced necrosis. Rupture of the abscess causes a lesion of the bone which results in osseous caries extending to the bone marrow, with eventual true typhoidal osteomyelitis.

Cardiovascular System.—In the heart, typhoid causes degenerative lesions of the muscular fibers with phenomena of fibrillary fragmentation; in the cardiac connective interstitial tissue hemorrhagic phenomena and thrombosis of the vessels are observed (myocarditis).

In the capillaries and veins the thrombotic lesions are due to accumulation of macrophages and precipitation of fibrin, eventuating occasionally in complete occlusion. Thrombosis, independently of cellular obstruction, is due to necrosis produced by the action of bacterial toxins upon the endothelium. In the course of primary bacteriemia, bacteria sometimes accumulate in the capillaries of the papillae of the skin and cause hyperemic reactions with accumulations of macrophages, with resulting thrombosis; this is typical of dermal lesions during the first week of typhoid (roseola typhosa).

Phlebitis is frequent in typhoid, as demonstrated by splenic and pulmonary infarcts; at times it may be fatal, particularly when pulmonary emboli ensue.

Trachea, Bronchi, and Lungs.—Typhoid fever causes hemorrhagic tracheitis and bronchitis, as well as hemorrhagic pneumonia, in which many typhoid bacilli may be found.

Genitourinary System.—Most typical lesions of the genitourinary tract are focal lesions of the kidney (focal hemorrhagic nephritis).

Muscles.—Interstitial hemorrhage is observed with Zenker type degeneration of the muscular fibers. Lesions of the rectus abdominis major are very frequent.

Brain and Meninges.—Meningeal lesions are of two orders: one caused by the toxin; the other, specific in typhoid fever, in which McCollum has found the same alterations as in the primary lesions.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

Symptomatology is atypical in the nursling. In the older child, symptoms are similar to those in adults, although milder.

In children, as in adults, typhoid fever may present various clinical forms: moderate, benign, or grave forms.

Typhoid fever begins more or less insidiously in the child, with a mild, progressively rising fever, and with few intestinal manifestations. At times, however, and perhaps more frequently than in adults, the disease begins with high fever, convulsions, and headache. On one occasion we saw it begin with an acute gastroenteritis and anhydremia, which led to a severe acidosis; this case developed with extreme gravity, and death followed in 80 days.

Fever.—The temperature reaches 39° or 40° C. between the seventh and tenth days, maintaining a "plateau" for 8 to 10 days, then descending gradually by lysis in 4 to 6 days, then returning to normal. Altogether this requires 20 to 25 days, so that on the whole the disease has a somewhat shorter and more benign development than in adults. The fever generally is of the continuous type, with slight morning remission, 39° C., and evening elevation, 39.5° to 40° C., progressively rising during the first week, and stabilizing in 10 to 15 days. A period of wide variations then begins: 40° to 37.5° C.; 39.5° to 36° C., etc., for 4 to 5 days, finally descending to normal or even to subnormal (hypothermic) temperatures for several days. Naturally, the fever curve may be modified by respiratory complications or complications of some other kind which frequently take place during an attack of typhoid fever.

Circulatory Apparatus.—Examination of the heart in a typical case does not reveal any changes of importance. At times upon auscultation a functional blowing murmur may be heard, especially when the temperature is very high. Occasionally arrhythmia may be present. Blood pressure is maintained within the normal limits if there are no complications.

The pulse in infants follows the temperature, in general; in certain cases there may even be a slight tachycardia. A pulse rate of 160 to 180 is not uncommon without the unfavorable prognosis which would be made under similar circumstances in the adult. Exceptionally, bradycardia is observed, but only in older children. A dicrotic pulse is sometimes present, but it is much less common than in adults.

Respiratory Apparatus.—In the majority of cases, a mild cough begins on about the fifth or sixth day, and auscultation shows rhonchi and sibilant râles, proof of a mild bronchitis. Occasionally bronchopneumonia occurs as a complication.

Digestive Apparatus.—The lips are dry and frequently labial herpes is observed. The tongue is dry, desquamating along the borders, with the center coated. At times a true stomatitis is observed. However, in well-nourished patients with good habits of cleanliness, changes of the lingual and labial mucosae are scarcely visible.

Vomiting is relatively rare. Diarrhea may be present, but in the majority of patients constipation develops or stool movements may be normal. It has been stated before that typhoid may begin with an acute gastroenteritis.

Intestinal hemorrhage is much less frequent in children: it appears in seven to fourteen days, suddenly, at times in a serious form, at times in relatively mild form. Bleeding is not excessive—30 or 40 grams; it may recur on successive days. In the course of the hemorrhage, arterial tension is lowered, the patient is restless, and the temperature falls to 37.5° or 38° C.; the child complains of abdominal pain. Ordinarily, after several days the child expels no more blood and there is general improvement. Serious hemorrhage is exceptional in children.

Abdomen.—The abdomen is distended and ballooned, and on palpation feels soft, with marked borborygmus in the right iliac fossa.

Spleen.—Splenomegaly is frequent in children, although in a somewhat lesser degree than in adults.

Liver.—The liver is not enlarged.

Skin.—The frequency of roseola in typhoid has been already stated. These spots are seen on the shoulders, arms, and the abdomen. They appear in eight to ten days. In Cuba these spots are exceptionally rare in infantile typhoid.*

Nervous System.—Typhoid in children is characterized by the relatively few changes in the nervous system. Convulsions are rare. Most children are somnolent, but prostration is observed only in grave cases. Slight irritability of the nervous system may be observed in small children. In severe cases there is marked stupor, delirium, and trembling.

Loss of speech is relatively frequent in infantile typhoid. It begins gradually at the end of the disease, and it may persist for several weeks after cure. According to our observations, speech has always returned gradually, at the end of a period, in all cases of children with mutism. Nevertheless, some cases of true aphasia due to organic lesions of the central nervous system (hemorrhage) have been reported in the literature.

Hematopoietic System.—In severe forms, a moderate anemia of the hypochromic type frequently develops, due to a nutritional deficiency, especially when the diet is not sufficiently balanced and there is diarrhea.

Endocrine Glands.—In some patients we have seen the adipose-genital syndrome of Fröhlich develop after typhoid fever; we would not, however, presume to attribute this to the action of the typhoid bacillus.

Sensory Organs.—In many cases a slight conjunctivitis is observed. At the end of the disease, faulty accommodation is not rare. The ear may show inflammatory changes, otitis media, generally caused by secondary infections.

---

*The same observation has been made in the United States.

Hair.—In some children, as in adults, hair falls out completely during convalescence. It not infrequently happens that the new hair is wavy in individuals who formerly had straight hair.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS OF TYPHOID FEVER

Direct isolation of the organism from the blood, urine, feces may be effected; or indirect investigation of its specific agglutinins (O and H) in the blood serum may be made. The presence of these agglutinins is at times presumptive, at times conclusive, in the diagnosis. The hemogram also plays an important part in the diagnosis.

Blood Culture.—During the first week of the disease (bacteriemic phase), the blood culture is positive in 70 to 90 per cent of the cases, according to most authorities. Much later, blood cultures are of little value. In children who have had typhoid and who no longer have fever, there may be a recurrence, if the blood cultures remain positive.

Bone Marrow Culture.—That *S. typhosa* can invade the bone marrow has been known for many years.

In clinical practice in typhoid fever it gained interest with the work of Gerbasi, who obtained 13 positive results by tibial puncture (1925). Debré (1935) obtained bone marrow by sternal puncture, which he cultivated with excellent results in 10 cases (first and second week of the disease). Chediak, Prado, and Martinez Cruz (1938), at the Municipal Children's Hospital in Havana, in a group of 8 cases, established an early diagnosis by this means and found that this method offers a higher percentage of positivity than any other diagnostic method (blood culture, bile culture, Widal reaction). Later, their observations totaled 30 cases with even more satisfactory results than those given in the preliminary report. According to their figures, bone marrow cultures taken between the eleventh and fourteenth days of the fever gave early positive results, usually within 24 hours.

Stool Culture.—Stool cultures are positive during the first ten days of the disease in only 10 to 20 per cent of the cases, but 80 to 95 per cent are positive during convalescence.

Bile Culture.—Bile culture is valuable not only to discover carriers, but also in cases in which other laboratory methods are negative. Hurtado and Castellaños (1926) stress the ease and harmlessness of duodenal intubation with Einhorn's sound, especially in hospitals where fluoroscopic installations are available, which simplify and hasten the time of intubation.

Serologic Diagnosis.—Agglutinins and other types of antibodies are found in the blood serum during the course of the disease and during convalescence from typhoid fever. These persist for years in the blood of clinically cured patients.

Following the work of Grubler and Durham in 1898, Widal suggested the test which today bears his name, for use in the clinical identification of the disease; the practical value of this test has been verified. For details of the serologic diagnosis of typhoid fever, see Gradwohl: *Clinical Laboratory Methods and Diagnosis,* ed. 4, vol. 2, 1948.

No diagnostic value can be conceded to a positive result in the Widal test in serum dilutions lower than 1:80. We have come to the conclusion that the Widal test is positive at the end of the first week, with maximum agglutination titers from the fourteenth to the twenty-fourth day. Occasionally, however, it is positive on the third or fourth day. See also Chapter 29.

Hemogram.—The blood picture is typical in typhoid fever in the child, according to observations in this hospital by Barreras. At the end of the first week, approximately the sixth day, the number of leucocytes is between 6,000 and 8,000 per c.mm., occasionally from 4,000 to 5,000, with neutrophilia, shift to the left, the "stab" count reaching 10 to 20 per cent, lymphopenia, and disappearance of the eosinophiles. Before the sixth day, the hemogram offers no special information except for an occasional slight leucocytosis and an increased number of "stabs." Leucocytosis (16,000 and higher) is found in the presence of pyogenic infections. The eosinophiles reappear during the final phase of the disease. They are important for the prognosis.

Blood Sedimentation.—Blood sedimentation tests are of value to estimate the intensity of the infection and, in convalescence, to determine when the child can return to his usual activity.

DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

Paratyphoid Fever.—Identification of the bacterium by culture and use of specific sera permit an accurate diagnosis.

Acute Gastroenteritis.—Acute gastroenteritis may mark the beginning of typhoid fever. In gastroenteritis, the number of stools is very numerous. The condition begins suddenly—this, however, may also be true of typhoid fever. There is no splenomegaly. Examination of the feces often shows Salmonellae or Shigellae. Blood culture and serologic reactions enable one to make an accurate diagnosis in cases of prolonged intestinal sepsis.

Influenza.—Influenza is characterized by a febrile process which frequently is not accompanied by respiratory manifestations. There is no splenomegaly. The disease has a short period of development. Laboratory examinations in prolonged forms of influenza are helpful.

Pneumonia.—Pneumonia can be confused with typhoid when the pneumonic process is deep and low and physical signs are absent. Cough, however, and changes in the respiratory rhythm, with the absence of abdominal symptoms, are valuable differential data. The hemogram will show an intense leucocytosis. Radiographs will present the characteristic Weil's triangle.

Typhobacillosis of Landouzy.—The clinical picture described by Landouzy almost always corresponds (Cardelle) with a primary tuberculous infection in infancy, especially after the second year of age. Prolonged fever, ballooning of the abdomen, mild splenomegaly, and coma point to a typhoid condition, especially when pulmonary manifestations are absent. An antecedent infection, a positive Mantoux test, and the finding of Mycobacteria, with negative Widal test, permit establishing the diagnosis.

There are no pulmonary signs in the first ten or fifteen days in Landouzy's disease, in contrast to the early pulmonary congestion sometimes seen in typhoid fever, so that, paradoxically, pulmonary manifestations may be observed in the beginning of a typhoid fever.

Miliary Tuberculosis.—Miliary tuberculosis sometimes simulates typhoid. Biological tests, radiography, and blood examinations establish the diagnosis.

Malaria.—When a double parasitic cycle exists, the fever is continuous and the general state is grave. Definitive diagnosis can be established by finding Plasmodia in the blood.

Brucellosis.—In the child, brucellosis causes a prolonged fever of the undulant type accompanied by splenomegaly and at times by coma. Serologic tests and blood cultures enable one to make the diagnosis.

Meningitis.—Typhoid fever may begin with a meningeal syndrome. On the other hand, purulent meningitis may begin with coma, continuous fever, and splenomegaly. Lumbar puncture is helpful.

Other Infections.—Other septic pictures may be mistaken for typhoid fever. Some of these are acute appendicitis, acute articular rheumatism, osteomyelitis, infectious mononucleosis, pyelitis, and acute endocarditis. Close examination of the patient and laboratory tests will aid in making the correct diagnosis.

CLINICAL FORMS

Mild Form

These forms, common in nurslings, are characterized by prolonged pyrexia without great disturbance in the general state. At times a slight splenomegaly leads one to suspect *S. typhosa*. Development of the disease is short, ten to twelve days. The principal symptoms are absent. In the case of every nursling or small child with an indeterminate pyrexia, blood cultures should be made as well as the serologic tests for typhoid (Widal, Welch and Stuart, 1936). The disease does not always develop in a mild form. We have seen several nurslings with the classical syndrome of the disease: abdominal ballooning, splenomegaly, intestinal hemorrhage. In such cases the prognosis is grave.

Severe Forms

Prolonged Form.—In some cases, typhoid fever may be prolonged for 40 days, 2 months, or more, as in our case of a 3½-year-old girl who died after 83 days, during which period all the usual complications of the disease were seen.

Delirious Form.—In this type, the child presents nervous excitability, with delirium and agitation. The temperature is generally high; the pulse is rapid. It is relatively frequent in children 6 to 12 years of age.

Ataxoadynamic Form.—This is a form with great prostration which may result in coma. There is a tendency toward hypothermia. The pulse is weak. Carphology is much less frequent in children than in adults.

Hemorrhagic Form.—In some patients there is a tendency toward hemorrhage; "sooty" gums, intestinal hemorrhage; epistaxis; petechiae.

COMPLICATIONS

Typhoid complications are numerous. Only those which are frequent can be mentioned in this chapter. See Chapter 29.

Complications in the Respiratory Tract

Pulmonary congestion usually develops benignly, during the early days of the disease.

Bronchopneumonia.—Bronchopneumonia is present later in the course of the disease or it may appear during convalescence. The process develops with relapses and remissions in two or more weeks. The prognosis is serious.

Empyema.—Empyema is almost always the consequence of a pulmonary complication due to bacteria other than typhoid bacilli.

Complications in the Circulatory Apparatus

The most frequent complication is myocarditis, which usually appears in the early period.

Complications in the Digestive Apparatus

The complication most to be feared in the adult—intestinal perforation—is rarely seen in childhood.

Perforation of the gall bladder may also occur in the course of an attack of typhoid fever; it is accompanied by peritonitis. More than 50 cases in children have been reported.

Complications in the Nervous System

Aphasia has already been mentioned. There may be other, more severe, complications: meningitis, hemiplegia due to cerebral emboli, and very rarely polyneuritis. We have observed polyneuritis only in patients on a prolonged typhoid diet; we believe it is due to lack of vitamin B_1.

PROGNOSIS

In children under 2 years of age, the mortality is just as high as or higher than in adults; after 2 years, the mortality decreases, and is lowest between the ages of 4 and 10 years. When a good state of nutrition has been successfully maintained, as with present methods of feeding, the prognosis is much better than when patients are placed on needlessly prolonged diets. Death at the present time generally occurs from complications: myocarditis, intestinal perforation, encephalitis.

TREATMENT*

It can be clearly stated that despite progress in the diagnosis and prophylaxis of typhoid fever there is as yet no specific treatment for the disease. Vaccines, sera, chemicotherapeutic procedures all remain useless. The bacteriophage is too inconstant in its action to be relied upon. The fundamental treatment of typhoid fever continues to be hygienic and dietetic.

Hygienic and Dietetic Treatment

Bed Rest.—Absolute rest in bed is one of the elements of good treatment. Good nursing care will always be of great value.

---

*See Chapter 29.

Feeding.—In nurslings, breast feeding should be maintained throughout the course of the disease, making exceptions according to general manifestations and temperature.

If the child is older, the necessary quantities of calories and vitamins and volume of liquids should be given, taking account of the increased needs of the feverish patient.

Adequate diet must be approached gradually, dependent upon digestive tolerance. A bland diet should be used, preferably purée of strained vegetables, meat or fish finely minced; eggs; milk; fruit juices or marmalades.

A valuable addition to the typhoid diet is glucose and cereals flavored with maltose; and vitamins, particularly vitamin B_1 (10 mg. daily) and vitamin C (100 to 200 mg., up to 500 mg. daily). We have not seen serious nutritive alterations (edema, typhoid polyneuritis, hemorrhagic syndrome) in well-fed patients.

Blood plasma, which brings protective elements as well as proteins and liquid to the patient, seems to be indicated in dehydration or in grave forms of the disease. The quantity to inject is 20 to 25 c.c. per kilogram of body weight. If the patient is dehydrated, liquids shall be administered orally, hypodermically, or by venoclysis. A nursling requires, on the average, 150 c.c. of liquid per kilogram of weight daily, in cases of severe intoxication more, but special care should be taken not to exceed the necessary quantity in order to prevent production of a water balance disturbance.

Symptomatic Therapeutics

Diarrhea.—When diarrhea occurs, give skimmed milk. Feeding should be decreased until after the intestinal disturbance improves. Antidiarrheal medicaments of the inert type may be used: kaolin, pectin, or a diet of apples for 24 or 48 hours.

Constipation.—Laxatives of the mechanical type should be used, with a base of mineral oil, agar-agar, psyllium, etc.

Purgative Medication.—Purgatives should never be used in typhoid fever.

Hyperthermia.—We are not particularly partial to antithermics of the chemical type (aspirin, amidopyrin) although antithermic medication, preferably aspirin, may be used. The best treatment of typhoid hyperthermia is hydrotherapy.

Headaches and Nervous Manifestations.—The best treatment is an icecap applied to the head.

Myocarditis.—Treatment of myocarditis can be summarized as absolute rest, ice pack applied to the heart, and strychnine. Addition of vitamin B_1 to the diet or by injection is useful.

Intestinal Hemorrhage.—Faced with the possibility of intestinal hemorrhage, the following measures should be undertaken immediately:

1. Liquid diet for the duration of symptoms
2. Ice bag applied to the abdomen
3. Opium (elixir of paregoric, laudanum, etc.)

Intestinal Perforation.—The only treatment for intestinal perforation is surgical. This also applies to perforation of the gall bladder.

Specific Treatment

Vaccination.—Numerous attempts have been made to treat the disease by vaccine administration, either subcutaneously or intravenously, but these have not been satisfactory in practice. (See also Chapter 29.)

Serotherapy.—From the first suggestions of Chantemese to the recent work of Schwartzman, the proponents of this method have not as yet seen any results proportionate to their enthusiasm. (See also Chapter 29.)

Bacteriophage Treatment.—We have used bacteriophage treatment in many cases, and on two occasions have seen it bring about the crisis in very severe typhoid fever cases. Until more is known about the adjustment of the typhoid bacillus to its bacteriophage, this therapeutic measure must remain uncertain.

Chemotherapy.—Chemotherapy has not given us satisfactory results on the few occasions on which we have used it.[*]

PROPHYLAXIS

The campaign against typhoid is launched by controlling drinking water, drainage, sewage, food handling, and carriers.

Antityphoid Vaccination.—The triple vaccine TAB contains, per cubic centimeter, 1,000,000,000 typhoid bacilli, 750,000,000 paratyphoid A, and 750,000,000 paratyphoid B. It is given subcutaneously at intervals of 7 to 10 days, in the following doses:

Up to 2 years	0.2 to 0.4 c.c.
From 4 to 7 years	0.4 to 0.6 c.c.
After 7 years, the dose is the same as for adults	0.5, 1.0, and 1.0 c.c.

Nurslings less than 6 months of age are unsatisfactory antibody producers, and vaccination at this time is usually not satisfactory. For intradermal administration of the vaccine in children, 3 doses are used: 0.05 c.c., 0.1 c.c., and 0.1 c.c. This is the most satisfactory method, according to Tuft and others (1941), of all the methods in use, because the reaction is reduced to a minimum.

SHIGELLOSIS IN CHILDREN

Dysentery is an acute intestinal infection. It has been known since the time of Hippocrates.[†]

The disease may occur at any age in the child. It is more common during the first year than in the following years. It is endemic in all countries, especially in tropical regions. In general, it is more frequent in rural than in urban districts, and is more prevalent in summer, being endemic the rest of the year. Outbreaks occur in asylums, nurseries, hospitals, and other institutions dedicated to child care.

---

[*] See Chapters 29 and 65.

[†] See Chapter 29 and Gradwohl (1948).

Mortality of shigellosis is generally greater during the first month of the child's life. Clinical manifestations caused by the Shiga type are more severe than those due to the Flexner group. The Shiga type causes the highest percentage of mortality from toxemia at any age in the child.

In general, the incubation period of bacillary dysentery is short, varying from 24 to 48 hours. It may at times be as long as 3 to 6 days.

CLINICAL PICTURE

Clinically the disease is divided into the so-called acute form and the chronic or prolonged form. The acute form includes mild forms or larvate dysentery and hypertoxic, nervous, algid, typhoid, gangrenous, hemorrhagic, and other forms.

Aballí gave the following description of the clinical picture of the toxic form:

The child, apparently in normal health, suddenly loses his appetite, and vomits. Diarrheal manifestations of a fermentative type follow, becoming phlegmonous and finally mucohemorrhagic, and changing from a nonfetid character to a final putrid state. The picture is progressively intensified in relation to phenomena of intoxication until the death of the patient, sometimes within 12 hours. Most cases develop more slowly. The intestinal symptoms may be accompanied by abdominal pain and intense tenesmus, causing rectal prolapse.

At times the vomiting is intense, or persistent, aggravating the situation by dehydration. The patient's abdomen may be boat shaped (acute development) or distended (rapid form). It is very painful to the touch and to palpation in the region of the ascending colon, the cecum, and the sigmoid region. The pain may be constant, causing the child to become restless and to complain continually.

In the upper portion of the digestive tract there may be observed swollen gums, dry lips, and even crusts and bloody fissures—ulceration of cheeks and gums. The tongue is moist; it may be coated or desquamated.

Hepatomegaly is present; splenomegaly is absent.

As to the respiratory apparatus, slight bronchitic phenomena are observed in these cases, as well as hyperplastic adenoiditis and tonsillitis.

In the circulatory apparatus there may be noted slow pulse, from 80 to 90 maximum, to 40 to 60 minimum, according to age. This "slow-down" is very marked in severe cases and in the final stages which terminate in rectal prolapse. Cardiac tone is weakened. There is generally observed no alteration of rhythm and no cardiac souffle.

Symptomatology of the nervous system is: exhaustion and indifference to surroundings; in severe cases, typhous aspect with hallucinatory phenomena at times. Cutaneous and tendonous reflexes are diminished.

The temperature varies. In mild cases there may be slight febriculas or the patient may be apyretic. Severe cases present marked hyperthermia with fever of 39° C., according to the toxicity, followed by an algid state which may be prolonged for a longer or shorter period and which continues until recovery or death.

Associated with bacillary dysentery there may be ocular lesions such as scleroconjunctivitis, iritis, cyclitis, ulcer of the cornea, serpiginous ulcer, motor paralysis, etc. Another complication of bacillary dysentery is otitis media. This was observed by Nedelson (1939) in 30.6 per cent of 153 patients.

PATHOLOGIC ANATOMY

Salas found:

> "Dysenteric bacillary colitis is present in children of a few months of age in the form of follicular ulcerative colitis; in children 2 to 12 years of age, it shows the picture of dysenteric colitis of adults. Histopathologic lesions begin in the mucosa, the epithelial cells being the first to develop lesions, due to the toxic action of the bacillus. There are changes in the capillaries, with dilatation and desquamation of endothelial cells, leading to capillary permeability, with subsequent infiltration of the mucosa by blood cells.
>
> Phagocytosis may be due to metamorphosis of endothelial cells. In the more advanced stage of the disease, alteration occurs in the Lieberkühn glands, a degenerative process which takes place in the mucosal cells. Hyperplasia of lymphoid follicles in the submucosa is secondary to the initial lesion, possibly because of the action of toxins or bacteria carried through the lymphatic or hematogenic routes."

LABORATORY EXAMINATION

Etiologic diagnosis of this disease can be made only by bacteriologic examination of fecal matter. Other laboratory findings, however, are also important.

Microscopic examination of the first feces reveals the presence of leucocytes, erythrocytes, and cells from the lining of the intestines, usually mixed with clots of greenish mucus. A few gram-negative, nonmotile bacilli are present. Macroscopically, the fecal matter is homogeneous in appearance, with bloody spots and striations, or a mucohemorrhagic clot. At times the material is serosanguineous and often it contains portions of gangrenous mucosa (gangrenous form intensely fetid). Occasionally the material is purulent or mucopurulent, having the appearance of pus from sputum or an abscess.

In cases of intense dehydration, there is lowering of the alkali reserve and acetone is present in the urine. Urinalysis reveals moderate albuminuria with granular and hyaline casts, erythrocytes, and an increase in the number of leucocytes.

Data gathered from hematologic studies (G. Prado) reveal the following:

1. Absence of anemia in 90 per cent of the cases. This may be due to anhydremia usually seen in the patients.

2. Neutrophilia and left nuclear shift, present in all cases; myelocytes present in 40 per cent.

3. Absence of eosinophilia, lymphocytosis, and a marked increase in irritation cells.

4. Monocytosis, as high as 20 per cent, present in a large percentage of cases.

5. Nuclear changes (basic chromatin) and alterations of the cytoplasm of the neutrophiles (toxic granules) are always present. In serious cases, toxic granules may be found in all neutrophiles.

6. The bone marrow shows the infectious pattern.

Infection is localized in the intestine, and for this reason blood cultures remain constantly negative. It is only in very severe cases that these may be positive. Only eighteen cases of septicemia due to dysentery bacilli have been reported in medical literature.

Diagnosis is usually made by isolating the bacteria from fecal material, that is, by bacteriologic examination, which is the sole means of determining the nature of the disease.

Serologic Tests

Macroscopic agglutination methods are used. Interpretation of results is difficult since children suffering from dysentery have agglutinins for different types of Shigella. Only the following titers, or higher titers, are of positive value: Shiga, 1:50; Flexner, 1:200; and Sonne, 1:150. When a serum shows agglutinins simultaneously for different Shigellae, the species which agglutinates at the highest dilution is probably the cause of the infection.

TREATMENT

General treatment, recommended by Aballí, consists in combating the anhydremia and the intoxication by administration of water and electrolytes. Opium in the form of a tincture gives good results. This may be associated with bismuth and tannin (albumin tannate, acetyltannic acid). In prolonged cases, autogenous vaccines may be used, but, although they have proved useful for some investigators, others have denied their value.

There is no agreement among authorities with respect to the diet for children with dysentery. A liquid diet for 12 to 48 hours, varying with the toxic state of the patient, gives good results. Re-alimentation should begin with defatted lactic acid milk. Patients must be given vigilant care during this period, for they may lack tolerance for carbohydrates, in which case they must receive an added quantity of proteins. This addition may be made advantageously by means of Casec (*Mead Johnson*), or by using the albumin milk of Finkelstein.

German authors especially have shown the advantages of treatment of bacillary dysentery with the apple diet (Moro).

Felsen (1939) recommended neutralization of specific toxins by appropriate sera and established the fact that dysenteric serum is of value during the first 24 to 48 hours. If no useful results are obtained, he recommended using immune blood. According to Seidlmayer (1939), the serum is beneficial in cases accompanied by encephalitis. The property of producing exotoxins is not constant in the Flexner and Sonne types, and this may perhaps account for the uselessness of the serum in certain clinical conditions due to these organisms.

At the Children's Municipal Hospital of Havana, García Montes, Silva, and O. Fernández used the Flexner antidysentery serum successfully in a series of 16 cases. They employed 2 or 3 doses of 20 c.c. in 24 hours, continuing to use it daily until cessation of acute intestinal symptoms and toxemias were obtained.

In commenting upon the practical importance of treatment of Shigellosis by sulfonamide drugs, we shall discuss the subject according to the findings by Castellaños (1945). Since shigellosis is a disease of the digestive tract, sulfonamide drugs which act on intestinal lesions should offer the best results, such as sulfaguanidine and sulfasuxidine. These are toxic to a lesser degree and are more readily tolerated and more innocuous than the soluble sulfonamides. Some investigators such as Cooper, Zucker, and Wagoner (1941), Halper and Cunningham, Yannet, Leiboitz and Deuth, Tudor, Hardy and Watt (1942), Scroggie, Manchaca (1941), Zerbino (1942), etc., have demonstrated that there is no difference in the treatment of bacillary dysentery in the child with one type of sulfonamide or another.

Some dysentery bacilli are more resistant to sulfonamides than others. According to Hardy and Watt, the *sonne* infection is of this type.

Although sulfaguanidine and sulfasuxidine are the drugs of choice in shigellosis, in cases of diarrhea of unknown etiology where the bacteriologic report might be delayed, it is well to follow the suggestions of certain South American pediatricians (Serogie, Zerbino, Peluffo, Aleppo, Menchaca, etc.) to begin treatment of infantile diarrhea with a soluble drug such as sulfathiazole or sulfadiazine. Other pediatricians prefer to begin the treatment with sulfaguanidine or sulfasuxidine for 48 to 72 hours. If the patient improves, he is kept on these drugs without resorting to the soluble forms (sulfathiazole or sulfadiazine).

According to Cooper, in refractory cases of shigellosis, rotation of the sulfonamides at times shows good results. Castellaños insists that in Cuba there are many refractory cases of shigellosis which can be overcome by rotation of the sulfonamides, but that sometimes sulfonamide therapy is of no value. Such cases, according to Castellaños, can be treated by autogenous vaccines (oral and by injection).

Aballí and Castellaños have directed attention in Cuba to the possibility that there may be certain species of Shigella resistant to sulfonamides, which have been developed by use of small and continuous doses of the drug.

The dosage recommended by Castellaños for the treatment of shigellosis by sulfonamides is:

Sulfasuxidine: Initial dosage of 0.25 Gm. per kilogram of body weight; then 0.25 Gm. per kilogram per day, divided into six equal doses. In a severe case the initial dose may be omitted and one tablet every four hours should be used day and night.

Sulfaguanidine: Initial dosage 0.10 Gm. per kilogram of weight, then 0.05 Gm. per kilogram of weight. Two tablets to be taken as initial dose, followed by one tablet every four hours.

Sulfadiazine: In severe cases, the initial dose is from 0.05 Gm. to 0.10 Gm. per kilogram of weight; then 0.20 Gm. per kilogram of weight within 24 hours; or one may be taken every 4 hours, 6 times a day, 2.5 cg. per kilogram in each dose. Tevrett and Nelson recommend half of this dosage.

Sulfathiazole: In severe cases, initial dose is 0.10 Gm. per kilogram of weight, then treatment to be maintained on the basis of 0.20 Gm. per kilogram per day, or 0.03 Gm. per kilogram of weight in each dose, to be taken every 4 hours.*

Sulfonamide dosage may be increased or decreased according to the intensity of the clinical picture and depending upon the tolerance of the patient, so that a set quantity cannot be maintained.

The dosage recommended above is to be maintained while the symptoms are present. With improvement in intestinal movements and disappearance of the fever, improvement in hydration, doses may be taken at 6-hour intervals. In severe cases, according to Castellaños, sulfonamides should be taken for 6 to 8 days, even though the clinical condition of the patient is very satisfactory. In less severe cases, the time may be reduced to 4 days, never less.

Abballí, Jr., gives the figures (Table XVIII) of results obtained in the treatment of 74 cases of shigellosis.

TABLE XVIII

	CASES	GOOD RESULTS	NO RESULTS	PER CENT OF FAILURES
Sulfaguanidine	54	39	15	27
Sulfasuxidine	10	6	4	40
Other sulfonamides	10	6	4	40

PROPHYLAXIS

Contamination by bacillary dysentery is proportional to the conditions of sanitation in the community and to personal hygiene. See also Chapter 29.

References

Salmonellosis in Children

Aballí, A. A., and collaborators: 1937. Salmonelosis del recién nacido, Bol. Soc. cubana de pediat. 9: 123.
Aballí, A. J., and Martinez Cruz, J.: 1944. Acute Diarrhea in Infancy and Childhood, Bol. Soc. cubana de pediat. 16: 386.
Abramson, H., Fraut, S., and Oldewbusch, C.: 1939. Salmonella Infection of the Newborn: Its Differentiation From Epidemic Diarrhea and Other Primary Enteric Disorders of the Newborn, M. Clin. North America 23: 531.
Bergey and collaborators: 1939. Manual of Determinative Bacteriology, ed. 5, Baltimore, Williams & Wilkins Co.

---

*Editor's note (O. F.): Phthalyl sulfacetimide (Thalamyd, Schering) has given excellent results in recent experiments. The maximum dose is 0.2 Gm. per kilogram of body weight per day.

Bonaba, J., Carrau, A., and Hormaeche, E.: 1939. Estudios sobre la etiología infecciosa de las diarreas infantiles, Arch. de pediat. d. Uruguay **10:** 445.

Bonaba, J., Carrau, A., Hormaeche, E., Zerbino, V. Y., and others: 1940. Estudios sobre la etiolología infecciosa de las diarreas infantiles, Montevideo, Ed. J. García.

Borman, E. K., Wheeler, K. M., and Mickle, E. L.: 1943. Salmonella Typing in a Public Health Laboratory, Am. J. Pub. Health **83:** 127.

Bornstein, S. A.: 1942. A Practical Suggestion for the Serological Type Determination of Salmonella Organisms, J. Bact. **44:** 719.

Bornstein, S.: 1942. Epidemiologic Aspects and Laboratory Diagnosis of Salmonella Infections, New York State J. Med. **42:** 2215.

Bornstein, S.: 1942. Infections With Organisms of the Salmonella Group, New York State J. Med. **42:** 163.

Bornstein, S., Saphra, I., and Strauss, L.: 1941. Frequency of Occurrence of Salmonella Species, J. Infect. Dis. **69:** 59.

Bornstein, S., and Strauss, L.: 1941. Selective Action of Sulfanylguanidine on Different Salmonella Types and Its Practical Importance, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **47:** 112.

Bornstein, S., and Schwartz, H.: 1942. Salmonella Infections in Infants and Children, Am. J. M. Sc. **204:** 546.

Bornstein, S.: 1943. The State of the Salmonella Problem, J. Immunol. **46:** 439.

Bornstein, S., Saphra, I., and Wassermann, D.: 1943. The Occurrence of Salmonella Antigens in Dysentery in the United States, J. Infect. Dis. **72:** 58.

Briceno-Inagorry, L: 1942. Lae salmonelas en la patología humana, estudio bacteriológico en Venezuela, Gac. méd. de Caracas **49:** 9.

Cardelle, G., Curbelo, A., and Martinez-Cruz, A. J.: 1944. Una observación interesante de salmonelosis (paratifoidea A), Bol. Soc. cubana de pediat. **16:** 119.

Castellaños, A.: Las enterocolitis mucopiosanguinolentas, La Propagandista Maximo Gomez, 359.

Castellaños, A.: 1945. Indicacion de las sulfadrogas en los trastornos diarreicos del nino, Rev. mex. de pediat. **14:** 149.

Castellaños, A., Curbelo, A., and Martinez Cruz, A. J.: 1944. Salmonellas a Cholera suis (tipo americano), Bol. Soc. cubana de pediat. **16:** 165.

Clipton, W. M., and Weiner, M.: 1938. Infections With Salmonella Suipestifer in Childhood, Am. J. Dis. Child. **55:** 553.

Contribución al estudio etiopatogénico de las diarreas de verano en Cuba. Comunicación a la Sociedad Cubana de Médicos Laboratoristas Clínicos Sésion de Mayo 3 de 1946.

Crozier, T. H.: 1938. Meningitis Due to Bact. Enteritidis, Ulster, M. J. **7:** 261.

Curbelo, A., Insua Cartaya, A. G., and Toyos, V.: 1935. Un caso de infeccion humana por S. suipestifer, Rev. de parasitol. clin. y lab. **10:** 107.

Curbelo, A.: 1941. Las bacterias patogenas del hombre, La Habana.

Curbelo, A., Martinez Cruz, J., and Galen, E.: 1944. Salmonelosis a S. derby, Bol. Soc. cubana de pediat. **16:** 201.

Curbelo, A., and Martinez Cruz, J.: 1941. Historia de la salmonella havana, Arch. de med. inf. **10:** 170.

Curbelo, A., and Martinez Cruz, J.: 1944. Segunda observación de salmonella selandia, Bol. Soc. cubana de pediat. **16:** 37.

Curbelo, A.: 1945. El estudio de la salmonella. Necesidad de la creación de un centro en Cuba, Arch. de med. int. **9:** 127.

Curbelo, Hernandez, A., Soto Pradera E., and Montalvo Urrutibeóscoa, J. R.: 1945. La patogenicidad de los paracolibacilos, Bol. Soc. cubana de pediat. **17:** 3.

Curbelo, A., and Drake, T.: 1946. Primer caso de salmonelosis a S. give, Bol. Soc. cubana de pediat. **18:** 33.

Difco Manual: 1939. A New MacConkey's Agar.

Difco Manual: 1939. Tetrathionate Broth.

Edwards, P. R., and Bruner, D. W.: 1943. The Occurrence and Distribution of Salmonella Types in the United States, J. Infect. Dis. **72:** 58.

Edwards, P. R., and Bruner, D. W.: 1943. Serological Identification of Salmonella Cultures. Circular 54, University of Kentucky Agricultural Experiment Station, Kentucky.

Ferguson, W. W., and Hook, E. A.: 1943. Urease Activity Proteus and Salmonella Organisms, J. Lab. & Clin. Med. **28:** 1715.

Gonzales, D. H., and Florin, C.: 1945. Tratado de las enfermedades infecciosas Ed. Vazquez Buenos Aires.

Greenberg, M.: 1943. The Significance of the Widal Reaction in Enteric Diseases of Children J. Pediat. **23:** 150.

Grichener, E., Montaut, M., and Romer, J.: 1942. Las shigellosis y salmonellosis como causa de las diarreas infantiles en la ciudad de Rosario, Semana méd. **49:** 1356.

Grichener, E.: 1941. Técnicas usadas en el Instituto de Higiene de Montevideo para el cultivo y aislamiento de Shigellas y Salmonellas, Día méd. **13**: 1276.

Grichener, E.: 1944. Las Salmonelas en patología humana, Rev. méd. de Rosario **34**: 896, 1111.

Guerra, A. R.: 1943. Localizaciones extraintestinales de las salmonellas en el niño, Pediat. Américas **1**: 350.

Guerra, R., Peluffo, C. A., and Aleppo, P. L.: 1940. Septicemias y bacteriemias por salmonelas en el lactante, Arch. de pediat. d. Uruguay **10**: 669.

Herning, W. M.: The Antigenic Structure of the Bacteria Incriminated in the Four Unrelated Outbreaks of Food Infection, South African M. J.

Hollis, H. Ch., and Barron, W. E.: 1944. Meningitis Due to Salmonella Oranienburg, J. Pediat. **24**: 568.

Hormaeche, E., and Peluffo, C. A.: 1942. Las salmonelosis humanas, Montevideo.

Hormaeche, E., and Peluffo, C. A., and Aleppo, P. L.: 1940. Las salmonelosis en patología infantil, Arch. de pediat. d. Uruguay **8**: 11.

Hormaeche, E., Peluffo, C. A., and Aleppo, P. L.: 1936. Nueva contribución al estudio de las diarreas infantiles de verano, Arch. urug. de med., cir. y especialid **9**: 113.

Hormaeche, E., Peluffo, C. A., and Aleppo, P. L.: 1942. Salmonella cerro, un nuevo tipo de salmonela, Arch. de pediat. d. Uruguay **13**: 368.

Hormaeche, E., and Peluffo, C. A.: 1941. Salmonellosis in Infancy and Its Diagnosis, Puerto Rico J. Pub. Health & Trop. Med. **17**: 99.

Hormaeche, E.: 1939. Patología y epidemiología de las salmonelosis infantiles, Arch. de pediat. d. Uruguay **10**: 501.

Hormaeche, E.: 1940. Importancia de la infección como causa de las diarreas infantiles de verano. Estudios sobre la etiología infecciosa de las diarreas infantiles, Informe de la Sociedad Uruguaya de Pediatría a la 10ª Jornada Pediatrica Rioplatense, Montevideo, April.

Hurtado and Castellaños: 1926. Mimeograph. Fiebre Tifoidea sin aglutinación, confirmada por la Presencia del B. de Eberth en la Bilis. Importancia del Bilicultivo.

Kauffmann, F.: 1930. Der Antigen Aufbau der Typhus-Paratyphus gruppe, Ztschr. Hyg. Infektionskr. **111**: 233.

Kauffmann, F.: 1941. Die Bacteriolgie der salmonellagruppe, Copenhagen, Einar Munksgaard.

Kelir, R. W., and Butterfield, C. T.: 1943. Notes on the Relation Between Coliform and Enteric Pathogens, Pub. Health Rep. **58**: 589.

Kun, L., and Svastits, P.: 1936. Occurrence of Bacillus Suipestifer in a Case of Infection in a Child, Orvosi hetil. **79**: 827.

Leifson, E.: 1936. New Selenite Enrichment Media for the Isolation of Typhoid and Paratyphoid (Salmonella) Bacilli, Am. J. Hyg. **24**: 423.

Leifson, E.: 1935. New Culture Media Based on Sodium Desoxycholate for the Isolation of Intestinal Pathogens and for the Enumeration of the Coli Bacilli in Milk and Water, J. Path. & Bact. **40**: 581.

Ligniéres, J.: 1901. Contrib. l'etude a la classification des septicen'es hemorragiques. LaPasteurellosis, Ann. Inst. Pasteur **15**: 734.

Littman, M. L.: 1943. Rapid Identification of Enteric Pathogenic Bacteria, War Med. **4**: 31.

Luippold, F. G.: 1945. Una introduccion a los principios de la clasificación de los tipos de salmonella, Arch. de med. int. **9**: 132.

Lyon, G. M., and Folsom, T. G.: 1941. Meningitis Due to Salmonella Suipestifer, West Virginia M. J. **37**: 249.

Molloy, M. S., Winter, J. E., and Steinberg, P.: 1943. SS Agar for the Isolation of Eberthella, Salmonella, and Shigella Groups From Feces, J. Lab. & Clin. Med. **28**: 1021.

Mosher, W. E., Wheeler, S. M., Chant, H. L., and Hardy, A. V.: 1941. An Outbreak Due to Salmonella Typhimurium, Pub. Health Rep. **56**: 2415.

Neter, E.: 1942. Salmonella Choleraesuis (Weldin) Bacteriemia, Am. J. Dis. Child. **64**: 255.

Neter, E.: 1944. Salmonella Choleraesuis Meningitis, Report of a Case and Seven of the Literature on Salmonella Meningitis, Arch. Int. Med. **73**: 425.

Paulson, M.: 1937. The Clinical Use of Desoxycholate and Desoxycholate Citrate. New Culture Media for the Isolation of Intestinal Pathogens, Am. J. M. Sc. **193**. 1.

Peluffo, E.: 1943. Las salmonellas en la patología infantil, Pediat. Américas **1**: 347.

Peluffo, E., Guerra, R., and Aleppa, P. L.: 1940. Meningitis supurada en un lactante a salmonella typhi murium, Arch. de pediat. d. Uruguay **11**: 48.

Report of the Salmonella Subcommittee of the Nomenclature Committee of the International Association of Microbiologists 1939 Proceedings of the Third International Congress, New York.

Rhodes, A. J.: 1942. A Small Outbreak of Diarrhea Associated With Paracolon Bacillus, J. Hyg. **42**: 99.

Rustigian, R., and Stuart, C. A.: 1941. Decomposition of Urea by Proteus, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **47**: 108.

Sanchez Santiago, B.: 1938. Meningitis a salmonella, Arch. de med. inf. **8**: 188.

Saphra, I., and Silberberg, M.: 1942. Taxonomy of Salmonella-like Coliform Organisms, J. Immunol. **44**: 129.

Schiff, F., and Saphra, I.: 1940. Variety of Types in Paratyphoid C Infections, J. Infect. Dis. **66**: 97.

Schiff, F., and Saphra, I.: 1941. A New Salmonella Type: Salmonella Havana, J. Infect. Dis. **68**: 125.

Schiff, F.: 1941. Aspecto bacteriologico de las salmonellosis, Arch. de med. inf. **10**: 143.

Schiff, F., and Saphra, I.: 1939. A New Salmonella Type, J. Infect. Dis. **65**: 126.

Schiff, F.: 1938. Salmonella Panama. Occurrence in Various Infections of Infants in New York, J. A. M. A. **111**: 2458.

Schiff, F., and Strauss, L.: 1939. Occurrence of Several Unusual Types of Salmonella in Human Infections, J. Infect. Dis. **65**: 160.

Seligmann, E., and Saphra, I.: 1943. Anaerobic and Indol Forming Salmonella Variants, Am. J. Hyg. **38**: 223.

Seligmann, P. R., Saphra, I., and Wassermann, M.: 1943. Salmonella Infections in Man—An Analysis of 1,000 Cases Bacteriologically Identified by the New York Salmonella Center, Am. J. Hyg. **38**: 226.

Seligmann, E., Saphra, I., and Wassermann, M.: 1944. Occurrence of Some Unusual Salmonella Types in Man, Am. J. Hyg. **40**: 226.

Seligmann, E., and Saphra, I.: 1943. Salmonella Infection in Man, Am. J. Hyg. **38**: 226.

Seligmann, E., and Hertz, J. J.: 1944. Salmonella Infections. Report of 37 Cases Observed at Beth Israel Hospital, New York, in the Past Four Years, Ann. Int. Med. **20**: 743.

Sevage, W. G., and White, P. B.: 1925. Investigation of the Salmonella Group With Special Reference to Food Poisoning, Medical Research Council (Great Britain), Special Report, Series No. 91.

Smith, J.: 1921. Gaertner Meningitis Complicating Gaertner Enteritis, Lancet **2**: 705.

Stewart, C. A., Wheeler, K. M., Rustigian, R., and Zimmerman: 1943. Biochemical and Antirelationship of the Paracolon bacteria, J. Bact. **45**: 101.

Taylor, J., Edward, F. G. D., and Edwards, R. P.: 1945. Salmonella Cardiff, Brit. M. J. **1**: 368.

Topley, W. W. C., and Wilson, G. S.: 1938. The Principles of Bacteriology and Immunology, ed. 2, Baltimore, William Wood & Co.

Valledor, T., García Perez E., and Pedrera, J.: 1944. Meningitis purulenta a salmonella Eastbourne en un lactante de tres meses tratado con sulfadiazina Bol. Soc. cubana de pediat. **16**: 413.

Weaber, B. J., and Sherwood, L.: 1935. Hematogenous Osteomyelitis and Pyarthrosis Due to Salmonella Suipestifer, J. A. M. A. **105**: 1188.

Welch, H., and Stuart, C. A.: 1936. A Rapid Slide Test for the Serological Diagnosis of Typhoid and Paratyphoid Fevers, J. Lab. & Clin. Med. **21**: 41.

Weldsdon, K. F., and Gibson, A.: 1941. Meningitis Due to Salmonella, Lancet **1**: 665.

White, P. B.: 1926. Further Studies of the Salmonella Group, Medical Research Council (Great Britain) Special Report, Series No. 103.

Zerbino, V., and collaborators: 1940. Infección enteral por salmonellas y enteritis salmonelósicas, Jornada Pediátrica Rioplatense.

Zerbino, V.: 1942. Infección y sulfonamidoterapia en trastornos digestivonutritivos y enteritis del lactante, Arch. argent. de pediat. **18**: 195.

Typhoid Fever in Children

Aballí, A. A.: Conferencias de Clínica Infantil, Universidad de la Habana.

Abricossoff, M.: 1940. Typhoid in Infants of 15 and 18 Months, Bull. Soc. pédiat. de Paris **37**: 581.

Alpers, B. J., and Pattey, C. A.: 1936. Cerebral Birth Conditions, Am. J. Dis. Child. **52**: 144.

Argudín, M.: 1944. Contribución al estudio profiláxtico de la fiebre tifoidea, Bol. Soc. cubana de pediat. **16**: 23.

Bercovitz, Z. Taylor, editor: Clinical Tropical Medicine, New York, P. and B. Hoeber.

Besredka, A.: 1927. Local Immunization (Translated by H. Poltz), Baltimore, Williams & Wilkins Co.

Bhatnager, S. S.: 1938. Agglutination in the Diagnosis of Typhoid Fever and Typhoid Carrier Condition, Brit. M. J. **2**: 1195.

Bhatnager, S. S.: 1944. Prognostic Value of Laboratory Investigations on Typhoid, Brit. M. J. **125**: 417.

Bray, W. E.: 1936. Synopsis of Clinical Laboratory Methods, St. Louis, The C. V. Mosby Co.

Buize, C.: 1937. Cure of a Typhoid Carrier Cholecystectomy, Nederl. tijdschr. v. geneesk. **8:** 5536.

Bull, H.: 1942. Typhoid at the Age of Fourteen Months, Am. J. Dis. Child. **63:** 919.

Cannatta, R.: 1940. Purulent Meningitis Caused by Typhoid Bacillus, Pediatria **48:** 59.

Carbat, A. L.: 1928. The Oral Method of Prophylactic Typhoid Immunization, M. J. & Rec. **126:** 57.

Cardelle, G., Curbelo, A., Martinez Cruz, J.: 1944. Una observación interesante de Salmonella (paratifoidea A), Bol. Soc. cubana de pediat. **16:** 119.

Carey, B.: 1940. Use of Sulfanilamide and Related Compounds in Diseases in Infancy and Childhood, J. A. M. A. **115:** 925.

Castellaños, A.: 1935. Fiebre tifoidea serológicamente negativa confirmada por el bilicultivo, Arch. de med. inf. **4:** 376.

Castilo, P. A.: 1946. Conferencias de verano. Universidad de la Habana.

Chediak, M., Prado, G., and Martinez Cruz, J. A.: 1938. Importancia del médulo cultivo en el diagnóstico de la fiebre tifoidea, Rev. méd. cubana **49:** 440.

Chesney, A. M.: 1922. The Use of Phenol Red and Bromocresol Purple as Indicators in the Bacteriological Examinations of Stools, J. Exper. Med. **35:** 181.

Cluver, E.: 1929. Oral Immunization Against Typhoid in South Africa, Lancet **216:** 1302.

Coleman, M. B.: 1941. Eberthella Typhosa and Other Bacillary Incitants of Enteric Disease. Diagnostic Procedures and Reagents, Am. J. Pub. Health **1:** 239.

Crim, P. D., and Short, D. M.: 1938. A study of Oral Typhoid Vaccination as Measured by Blood Agglutinins, Am. J. M. Sc. **96:** 826.

Curbelo, A.: 1941. Las bacterias patógenas del hombre, Cultural, Habana.

Current Comment: J. A. M. A. **114:** 330, 1940.

Debré, R., Lamy, M., Bonnet, H., and Broca, R.: 1935. La médulloculture, Bull. et mém. Soc. méd. d. hôp. de Paris **51:** 1723.

Diehich, H.: 1937. Typhoid Fever in Children. A Study of Sixty Cases, J. Pediat. **10:** 191.

Dinger, J.: 1939. Value of the Widal Agglutination Test in the Diagnosis of Typhoid Fever in the Tropics, Nederl. tijdschr. v. geneesk. **83:** 10.

Dontchenko, I.: 1937. The Course of Typhoid in Immunized Subjects, Vrach. de lo.

Downs, M. C., and Bond, C. G.: 1937. Occurrence of ''O'' and ''H'' Agglutinins Following Subcutaneous and Oral Administration of Typhoid Vaccine, Am. J. Pub. Health **27:** 889.

Duval and Schttemberg: Textbook of Pathology.

Eberth: 1899. Get der Typhusorganismus auf den Fetus über, Fortschr. d. med. **7:** 161.

Eliot, P.: 1940. The Vi Agglutination as an Aid in the Detection of Chronic Typhoid Carriers, Am. J. Hyg. **31:** 8.

Farrel, M. E.: 1939, Typhoid and Paratyphoid Fever in Children, West Virginia M. J. **35:** 227.

Felton, L. D., and Wakeman, F. B.: 1937. Essential Immunizing Antigen of Typhoid Bacillus, Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp. **60:** 178.

Ferrer, H., and others: 1941. Peritonitis debida a perforación de la vesícula biliar en el curso de la fiebre tifoidea accompañada de peritonitis suppurativa, Arch. argent. de pediat. **15:** 579.

Fonso Gandolfo, C.: 1945. Clínica de las enfermedades infecciosas. Su tratamiento, 3ª Ed., Edit. Rioplatense.

Forbus: Reaction to Injury.

Foreign Letters, Australian Correspondent: 1939. J. A. M. A. **112:** 1521.

Foreign Letters, London Correspondent: 1945. J. A. M. A. **127:** 1070.

Fukabori, Y.: 1933. The Blood Picture of Typhoid Fever in Children, J. Pediat (Tokyo) **389:** 1915.

Gerbasi, M.: 1925. Ricerche sulla patogenesi e sulla diagnosi della febbre tifoide nei bambini, Pediatria **32:** 113.

Gonzáles, H. D., and Fioriana, C.: 1945. Tratado de las enfermedades infeciosas, Ed. Vázquez, Buenos Aires.

Gradwohl, R. B. H.: 1948. Clinical Laboratory Methods and Diagnosis, ed. 4, St. Louis, The C. V. Mosby Co.

Grasset, E., and Girwood, A. I.: 1940. Combined Tetanus Typhoid Immunization, South African M. J. **14:** 169.

Green, G.: 1925. Paraffin Rings in Microscope Slides, Am. J. Pub. Health **15:** 651.

Greenberg, M.: 1943. The Significance of the Widal Reaction in Enteric Diseases of Children, J. Pediat. **23:** 150.

Griffith, J. P. C., and Mitchell, A. G.: 1943. The Diseases of Infants and Children, Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Co., and Tratado de Pediatria, Salvat.

Gunther, C. B., and Tuft, L.: 1938-39. A Comparative Study of Media Employed in the Isolation of Typhoid Bacilli From Feces and Urine, J. Lab. & Clin. Med. **24:** 461.

Hajna, A. A., and Perry, C. A.: 1937-38. A Comparative Study of Selective Media for the Isolation of Typhoid Bacilli From Stool Specimens, J. Lab. & Clin. Med. **23:** 1185.

Hoffstadt, R. E., Thompson, R. L., and Martin, C. L.: 1929. Immunological Studies of Typhoid Vaccine by Mouth, Am. J. Hyg. **9:** 37.

Holt, L. E., and Howland, J.: Tratado de Pediatria. Editorial Hispano-Americana, Mexico.

Holt-Harris, J. E., and Teague, O.: 1936. New Culture Medium for the Isolation of Bacillus Typhosus From Stools, J. Infect. Dis. **18:** 596.

Huang, C. S.: 1939. Perforation of the Gallbladder in Children, Chinese M. J. **56:** 564.

Jonses, E. R.: 1936. Use of Brilliant-Green-Eosin Agar and Sodium Tetrathionate Broth for the Isolation of Organisms of the Typhoid Group, J. Path. Bact. **42:** 455.

Kauffmann, F.: 1937. Diphasic Nature of Typhoid Bacilli. Ztschr. f. Hyg. u. Infektionskr. **119:** 103.

Kending, L. E.: 1940. Typhoid Fever in Childhood, Arch. Pediat. **57:** 1.

Kolmer, J. A.: Clinical Diagnosis by Laboratory Examinations, New York, D. Appleton-Century Co.

Kolmer, J. A., and Boerner: Approved Laboratory Technic, ed. 2, New York, D. Appleton-Century Co.

Körning, K.: 1941. Diagnosis of Typhoid Fever by Aspiration of Bone Marrow, Abst. Am. J. Dis. Child. **61:** 1088.

Kracke, R.: 1938. Textbook of Clinical Pathology, William Wood & Co.

Krumwiede, C. J., Pratt, J. S., and Williams, H. I.: 1916. The Use of Brilliant Green for the Isolation of Typhoid and Paratyphoid Bacilli From Feces, J. Infect. Dis. **18:** 1.

Leifson, E.: 1936. New Selenite Enrichment for the Isolation of Typhoid and Paratyphoid (Salmonella) Bacilli, Am. J. Hyg. **24:** 423.

Levinson, S. A., and MacFate, R. P.: 1943. Clinical Laboratory Diagnosis, ed. 2, Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger.

Ling, C. C.: Meduloculture in Diagnosis of Typhoid and Paratyphoid, Abst. Am. J. Dis. Child.

Mackenzie, E., and Taylor, E.: 1945. Study of Vi Agglutination Test for Detection of Typhoid Carriers, J. Hyg. **44:** 31.

Manson-Bahr, Philip: 1943. Synopsis of Tropical Medicine, Williams & Wilkins Co.

Medical News: J. A. M. A. **113:** 1041, 1939.

Mohr, L., Staehlin, R., and Bergmann: 1946. Tratado de medicina interna, Editorial Labor.

Mollov, M., Winter, J. E., and Steinberg, P.: 1936-37. SS Agar for the Isolation of Eberthella, Salmonella, and Shigella Groups From Feces, J. Lab. & Clin. Med. **22:** 1216.

Moor, H. D., and Brown, I.: 1936-37. A Comparative Study of Oral and Subcutaneous Vaccination Against Typhoid Fever Based on Agglutination Titrations, J. Lab. & Clin. Med. **22:** 1216.

Morris, J. F., and Sellersan, F. E., and Brow, W.: 1941. The Primary Isolation of Small Colony Strains of E. Typhosa From Blood, Feces, Urine, and Sputum, J. Infect. Dis. **68:** 117.

Naccri, A.: 1937. Clinical and Bacteriological Study of Typhoid in Infancy, Pediatria **45:** 33.

Park, W. H., and Williams, A. W.: Pathogenic Microorganisms, ed. 10, Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger.

Peluffo, E., and Castello, C. E.: 1939. Complicaciones meningoencefalicas de tifoidea en el niño, Arch. de pediat. d. Uruguay **10:** 35.

Queries and Minor Notes: 1937. J. A. M. A. **108:** 665.

Queries and Minor Notes: 1939. J. A. M. A. **112:** 1752.

Queries and Minor Notes: 1939. J. A. M. A. **112:** 2086.

Queries and Minor Notes: 1939. J. A. M. A. **113:** 1510.

Ramon, G.: 1937. Associated Vaccinations, J. A. M. A. **108:** 986.

Ruiz Sanchez, F.: 1944. Las agglutininas naturales y el diagnóstico de la fiebre tifoidea en Guadalajara, Jal., Medicina, México **24:** 135.

Sacks, M. S., and Hathel, F. W.: 1941. A Note on the Bacteriological Culture of Bone Marrow in Typhoid Fever, J. Lab. & Clin. Med. **26:** 1024.

Scott, E. P., and Ortner, A. B.: 1944. Successive Intestinal Perforations With Recovery, Am. J. Dis. Child. **68:** 119.

Sellers, J. F., Morris, J., and Reynolds, F. M.: 1934. Notes on the Application of Bismuth Sulfite Medium to the Isolation of B. Typhosus From Feces, J. Lab. & Clin. Med. **20:** 202.

Smith and Gault: Essentials of Pathology.

Sullkin, S. E., and Willet, J. C.: 1939-40. A Triple Sugar-Ferrous Sulfate Medium for Use in Identification of Enteric Organisms, J. Lab. & Clin. Med. **25:** 649.

Szirmi, F.: 1940. Value of Vitamin C in Treatment of Acute Infectious Diseases, Deutsches Arch. f. klin. Med. **185:** 434.

Tabit, F.: 1938. A Modification of Wilson and Blair's Bismuth Medium From Both Typhoid and Paratyphoid Bacilli, J. Path. & Bact. 46: 181.

Todd, J. C., and Sanford, A. H.: 1939. Clinical Diagnosis by Laboratory Methods, W. B. Saunders Co.

Tuft, L., Yagle, E. M., and Rogers, S.: 1941. Antibody Response to Typhoid Vaccine, J. Infect. Dis. 61: 88.

Tupar, A. V., and Quintos, F. N.: 1936. Typhoid Fever in Children, J. Philippine Islands M. A. 16: 545.

Vázquez, Pausa A.: Personal communication.

Weech, A. A., and Chen, K. T.: 1929. Typhoid Fever Report on a Case of an Infant Less Than One Month of Age, Am. J. Dis. Child. 38: 1044.

Weill-Hallé, P., Klotz, B., and Lauttmann, F.: 1938. Grave Typhoid Fever Complicated by Polyneuritis, Bull. Soc. pédiat. de Paris 36: 658. (Ext. Am. J. Dis. Child.)

Welch, H., and Mikle, E. L.: 1936. Rapid Slide Test for the Serological Diagnosis of Typhoid Fever, Am. J. Pub. Health 26: 248.

Welch, H., and Stuart, C. A.: 1936. A Rapid Slide Test for the Serological Diagnosis of Typhoid and Paratyphoid Fevers, J. Lab. & Clin. Med. 21: 411.

Wilson, W. J.: 1923. Reduction of Sulfites by Certain Bacteria in Media Containing a Fermentable Carbohydrate and Metallic Salts, J. Hyg. 21: 392.

Wilson, W. J.: 1928. Isolation of B. Typhosus From Sewage and Shellfish, Brit. M. J. 1: 1061.

Wilson, W. J.: 1933. Isolation of Enteric Bacilli From Sewage and Water. Its Bearing in Epidemiology, Brit. M. J. 2: 560.

Wilson, W. J., and Blair, E. M.: 1927. Use of Glucose Bismuth Sulfite Iron Medium for the Isolation of B. Typhosus and B. Proteus, Am. J. Hyg. 26: 374.

Wilson, W. J., and Blair, E. M.: 1931. Further Experience With the Bismuth Sulfite Media in the Isolation of the Bacillus Typhosus and B. Paratyphosus B From Feces, Sewage, and Water, J. Hyg. 31: 138.

Young, R. N., and Osgood, E. E.: 1935. Sternal Marrow Aspirated During Life: Cytology in Health and in Disease, Arch. Int. Med. 55: 186.

Yu, H.: 1939. Further Studies of the Serum Treatment of Typhoid, Chinese M. J. 56: 29.

Shigellosis in Children

Aballí, A. A., Castellaños, A., Salas Panicello, F., Curbelo, A., and Martinez Cruz, M. J.: 1936. Sobre la disentería bacilar en Cuba, Bol. Soc. cubana de pediat. 8: 236.

Aballí, A. J., and Martinez Cruz, J.: 1944. Acute Diarrhea in Infancy and Childhood, Bol. Soc. cubana de pediat. 16: 386.

Abente, H. F., and Rordriguez, D. A.: 1942. Los Nuevos derivados sulfamídicos en el tratamienta eficaz de la disentería bacilar, Arch. de pediat. d. Uruguay 13: 390.

Aguilar, R.: 1941. El tratamiento de las colitis mucosanguinolentas por la sulfapiridina, Rev. mex. de pediat. 11: 181.

Anderson, E. V.: 1941. The Chemotherapy of Infectious Diarrhea With Sulfathiazole, J. Pediat. 18: 732.

de Assis, A.: 1939. Disentería (conceito das shigelosis), Arch. Bas. de Med. 25: 447.

de Assis, A.: 1939. Sobre a capacidade patogênica experimental de "Shigella alcalescens." O Hospital, Rio de Janeiro 16: 441.

Barker, P. S.: 1943. Treatment of Dysentery Carriers With Succinyl Sulfathiazole, Am. J. Digest. Dis. 10: 443.

Belding, D. L., and Marrston, A. T.: 1938. A Textbook of Medical Bacteriology, New York, D. Appleton-Century Co., Inc.

Belderbreak, B. J., Aschley, G. C., and Rohner. M.: 1935. An Outbreak of Dysentery Caused by the Sonne Type Bacillus, Northwest Med. 34: 37, 95.

Bergey, D. H., and collaborators: 1939. Bergey's Manual of Determinative Bacteriology, ed. 5, Baltimore, Williams & Wilkins Co.

Bojlén, K.: 1934. Dysentery in Denmark, Comm. Inst. Serotherap de L'Etat Danois, Copenhagen, 24: 1.

Bonaba, J., Hormaeche, E., Zerbino, V., Peluffo, Guerra, Surraco, N.: 1940. Estudios sobre la etiología infecciosa de las diarreas infantiles, Editorial J. García Morales Montevideo.

Camarella, H.: 1939. Datos sobre el cuadro clínico de la disentería bacilar, Orvosi hetil. 83: 490.

Cammarella, C., and Rita, G.: 1940. First Report of the Bacillus of Schmitz in Cases of Infantile Dysentery in Rome, Lattante 11: 87; abstracted in Am. J. Dis. Child.

Camner, M.: 1938. Encephalitic Manifestations in Digestive Disturbances of Infancy, Bull. Soc. de Pedia. de Iasi 9: 34; abstracted in Am. J. Dis. Child.

Cardelle, G., and Aballi, J. A.: 1943. Estado actual del empleo de las sulfonamidas en pediatria, Arch. Soc. Clin. Studies Havana 38: 63.

Castellaños, A.: 1945. Las enterocolitis muco-pio-sanguinolentas. La Propagandista Máximo Gómez 359, Habana. Indicacíon de las sulfadrogas en los trastorno diarrecicos del niño, Rev. mex. de pediat. **14**: 149.

Cooper, M. E., Furcolou, M. L., Greme, M. A., and Cullen, G. E.: 1939. The Relation o Dysentery to Acute Diarrhea of Infants and Children, J. Pediat. **15**: 172.

Cooper, M. L., Keller, H. M., and Glesne, L. R. B.: 1942. Bacillary Dysentery in Infants Evaluation of Three Media, Sodium Desoxycholate-citrate, SS, and MacConkey for the Isolation of Shigella paradysenteriae From Stools, J. Pediat. **20**: 596.

Cooper, M. L.: Zucker, R. L., and Wagoner, S.: 1941. Sulfathiazole for Acute Diarrhea and Dysentery of Infants and Children, J. A. M. A. **117**: 1520.

Costa, A., and Romero, H.: 1943. Estudios sobre la discentería bacilar de la infancia, Rev chilena de pediat. **14**: 905.

Curbelo, A.: 1941. Las bacterías patógenas del hombre, Editorial Cultural La Habana

Dack, G. M.: 1943. Food Poisoning, University of Chicago.

Denison, G. A., and de Holl, G.: 1935. Bacillary Dysentery in Infants and Children, J Infect. Dis. **56**: 124.

Depetris, P., Elkeles, G., Gonzalez Alvarez, F., and Segura, A. S.: 1940. Consideraciones sobre el reconocimiento, tratamiento y profilaxis de la disentería bacilar en la infancia, Arch. de pediat. d. Uruguay **11**: 557.

Difco Manual: 1939. Tetrathionate Broth.

Difco Manual: 1939. A New MacConkey's Agar.

Difco Manual: 1943. Ed. 7, Detroit.

Felsen, J.: 1939. Infectious Diarrhea of the Newborn, Arch. Pediat. **56**: 133.

Felsen, J.: 1939. Newer Concepts of Bacillary Dysentery and Other Like Intestinal Infection, New York State J. Med. **39**: 1526.

Garces Baeza, C.: 1938. Comentario acerca de la etiología y patogenía de las disenterías, Rev. d. Inst. bact. de Chile **6**: 33.

García Montes, G., Silva, A., and Gonzalez, O.: 1937. Nuestra experiencia en el tratamiento de 16 casos de disentería bacilar, Bol. Soc. cubana de pediat. 9: 319.

Garrison, F. H., Jr.: 1940. The Modern Treatment of Bacillary Dysentery, South M. J. **33**: 533.

Ginsburg, M. H., Hirscherg, E. M., and Brisker, F.: 1939. Bacillary Dysentery. A Preliminary Report Stressing the Blood Picture, J. A. M. A. **113**: 1321.

Hall, L. C.: 1942. Use of Sulfaguanidine in Enteric Infection, J. Pediat. **20**: 328.

Hardy, A. V., Watt, J., and Decapito, T.: 1942. Studies of the Acute Diarrheal Diseases, Pub. Health Rep. **57**: 521.

Hardy, A., and Watt, J.: 1938. The Acute Diarrheal Disorders, Am. J. Pub. Health 2: 730.

Hardy, A. V., and Watt, J.: 1943. Newer Procedures in Laboratory Diagnosis and Therapy in Control of Bacillary Dysentery, Am. J. Pub. Health **34**: 503.

Hardy, A. V., Watt, J., deCapito, M., and Kolodny, M. H.: 1939. Studies of Acute Diarrheal Diseases, Differential Culture Media, Pub. Health Rep. **54**: 287.

Hormaeche, E., and Surraco, N.: 1938. Un nuevo capítulo de nuestra patología ''La disentería bacilar,'' An Fac. de med. de Montevideo **23**: 171.

Hormaeche, E., Surraco, N., and Aleppo, P. L.: 1939. La disentería bacilar en relación con las diarreas infantiles de verano, Arch. de pediat. d. Uruguay **10**: 573.

Hormaeche, E., Surraco, N., Peluffo, C. A., and Aleppo, P. L.: 1943. Causes of Infantile Summer Diarrhea, Am. J. Dis. Child. **66**: 539.

Leifson, E.: 1935. New Culture Media Based on Sodium Desoxycholate for the Isolation of Intestinal Pathogens and for the Enumeration of Colon Bacilli in Milk and Water, J. Path. & Bact. **40**: 581.

Leifson, E.: 1936. New Selenite Enrichment Media for the Isolation of Typhoid and Paratyphoid (Salmonella) Bacilli, Am. J. Hyg. **24**: 423.

Littman, M. L.: 1943. Rapid Identification of Enteric Bacteria, War Med. **4**: 3.

Long, P. H., Bliss, E. A., Ott, E., Trevett, G. T., and Nelson, R. A.: 1941. Studies on Sulfadiazine, Bull. John Hopkins Hosp. **69**: 297.

Lyon, G. M.: 1942. Chemotherapy in Acute Bacillary Dysentery, West Virgina M. J. **13**: 390.

Makie, T. T., and Schweiger, M.: 1937. Specificity of the Agglutinin Reaction for Shigella Dysenteriae and Escherichia Coli, J. Bact. **37**: 27.

Marochetti, H.: 1939. Shiga-Krause Dysentery in Infant, Med. Inf. Rome **10**: 179; abstracted in Am. J. Dis. Child.

Marshall, E. R., Bratton, A. C., Edwards, L. B., and Walker, E.: 1941. Sulfanilguanidine in the Treatment of Acute Bacillary Dysentery in Children, Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp. **68**: 94.

Menchaca, F., and Moyano, C. L.: 1941. El sulfathiazol en las enterocolitis disenteriformes, Arch. argent. de pediat. **15**: 338.

Menchaca, J. F.: 1941. La sulfaguanidina en diarreas infantiles de la ciudad de Santa Fe, Arch. argent. de pediat. **12**: 473.

Mollov, M., Winter, J. E., and Steinberg, P.: 1943. SS Agar for the Isolation of Eberthella, Salmonella, and Shigella Groups From Feces, J. Lab. & Clin. Med. 28: 1021.

Nedelson, S. I.: 1939. The Course of Otitis Media Complicating Baciliary Dysentery in Infancy, Vrach. delo 21: 243; abstracted in Am. J. Dis. Child.

North, H. E.: 1935. Bacillary Dysentery in Rockhampton With Account of the Distribution and Type of Bacillary in Other States, M. J. Australia 1: 519.

Park, W. H., and Williams, A. W.: Pathogenic Microorganisms, ed. 10, Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger.

Paulson, M.: 1937. The Clinical Use of Desoxycholate and Desoxycholate-Citrate Agars—New Culture Media—for the Isolation of Intestinal Pathogens, Am. J. M. Sc. 193: 688.

Poth, E. J., Chenoweth, B. M., and Knotts, F. L.: 1942. A Preliminary Report on the Treatment of Bacillary Dysentery With Succinyl Sulfathiazole, J. Lab. & Clin. Med. 28: 162.

Prado Vargas, G.: 1937. Contribución al estudio del hemograms en disentería bacilar de la infancia, Rev. de med. trop. y parasitol., bacteriol., Clín. y lab. 3: 437.

Schferstein, J. S.: 1935. Specific Prophylaxis and Therapy in Summer Diarrhea Jahrb. f. Kinderh. 144: 34; abstracted in Am. J. Dis. Child.

Schwarzenberg, L., and Cousino, J.: 1939. Disentería (grupo Flexner tipo Z) en un niño de once meses de edad, Rev. chilena de pediat. 10: 154.

Sears, H. J., et al.: 1935. An Outbreak of Dysentery Caused by the Sonne Type Bacillus, Northwest Med. 34: 37.

Seidlmayer, H.: 1939. Treatment of Dysentery in Childhood With Bacteriophage, Ztschr. f. Kinderh. 60: 579.

Simmons, J. S., and Gentzkow, C. J., editors: 1935. Laboratory Methods of the United States Army, ed. 4, Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger.

Sordelli, A.: 1933. Epidemia de disentería bacilar en las varillas, Semana méd. 40: 73.

Sordelli, A., and de la Barrera, J. M.: 1933. Epidemia de disentería bacilar en Caseros, Semana méd. 2: 240.

Stebins, L. E.: 1940. Recent Studies of Epidemic Diarrhea and Dysentery, South M. J. 33: 197.

Taylor, G.: 1941. Sulfathiazole Therapy of Infantile Diarrhea, J. Pediat. 18: 469.

Tomasi, J.: 1935. The Dysentery Epidemic of 1933 in Budapest, Arch. f. Kinderh. 104: 75; abstracted in Am. J. Dis. Child.

Topley, C. W. W., and Wilson, S. G.: 1936. The Principles of Bacteriology and Immunity, ed. 2, Baltimore, William Wood & Co.

Valdes, J. M., and Sosa, J. B.: 1941. Tratamiento de la disentería con el sulfaaminotiazol, Día méd. 13: 117.

Zerbino, V.: 1941. Las enteritis en la primera infancia, Arch. argent. de pediat. 15: 1.

Zerbino, V., Norbis, A., and Aleppo, P. L.: 1941. Sulfathiazol y sulfanilamidas en las enteritis del lactante, Arch. urug. de med., cir. y especialid. 19: 1.

Zerbino, V., et al.: 1942. Infección y sulfonamidoterapia en trastornos digestivosnutritivos y enteritis del lactante, Arch. argent. de pediat. 18: 195.

CHAPTER 31

LEPROSY

V. Pardo Castelló

Leprosy may be defined as a chronic infectious and contagious disease, caused by *Mycobacterium leprae,* presenting periods of quiescence and activity, which preferably affects the skin and peripheral nerves but which may also affect the internal organs of the human body to a greater or lesser extent.

Leprosy is widespread throughout the world. Its prevalence is in inverse proportion to the standard of living of a community. Leprosy is prevalent in backward, poverty-stricken, filthy centers of human aggregations. However, even among the cleanest, most sanitary, and healthiest peoples, some cases of leprosy are found. China, Indo-China, India, Japan, and the South Sea Islands are the greatest leprosy foci. In the Americas, Brazil and Colombia have the largest number of cases, with the Antilles, Mexico, Argentina, and other South American countries following. It is said that there are about 5,000 lepers in Cuba, but only about 2,500 are known to and supervised by the sanitary authorities. In the United States, leprosy is endemic along the coast of the Gulf of Mexico, from Key West to Texas; on the west coast a number of cases are discovered each year; and along the Atlantic seaboard a smaller number is also diagnosed. In New York City there are a number of patients with leprosy at large, since the State of New York has no provision for isolating or otherwise restraining these patients. Most cases in the United States are sent to the National Leprosarium in Carville, La., a model institution, with a total of about 300 patients. In Cuba there are 2 leprosaria, housing about 600 patients, and an official body under the Ministry of Health supporting 10 ambulatory or dispensary centers for the diagnosis of leprosy.

In Europe, leprosy is endemic in certain provinces of Spain and Italy, and a number of cases are found in France, England, and in the Balkans. In Russia and the Near East, leprosy is rather prevalent, especially in Turkey and Asia Minor. Sweden and Norway, which were endemic centers of leprosy during the nineteenth and the early part of the twentieth century, have succeeded in eradicating the disease in the last twenty-five years.

Leprosy affects both sexes and all races, but men are more often the victims of this disease than women. The first symptoms are usually seen in early youth, although children and old people may also acquire the disease. One of the earliest cases seen by the author was of a child who had acquired the disease from the midwife and who presented the first symptoms of leprosy at the age of 4 months. In endemic areas, children are considered more susceptible to the infection than adults.

Leprosy is not hereditary nor has a single authenticated case of congenital leprosy ever been reported. Children born of leprous mothers remain healthy and develop normally if removed from their environment. Climate and food have no relationship to leprosy. This disease is not a tropical condition; although it is common in the tropics, it is also frequent in the coldest climates, such as Russia, as it was in Scandinavia. It is a disease which is prevalent among the poorest classes, among those who live in crowded quarters and under unsanitary conditions.

Leprosy has never been successfully inoculated into lower animals; although a similar disease has been described in the rat, it is generally conceded that this disease is not the same as that which affects the human being. Transmission of leprosy to the hamster has also been reported, but so far these experiments have not been corroborated.

ETIOLOGY

Leprosy is caused by *Mycobacterium leprae*, known as the Hansen bacillus, an acid-fast organism which, up to the present time, has remained uncultivated. This is a short bacillus with fine ends, staining red with Ziehl-Neelsen's method, and resembling the bacillus of tuberculosis. It may be differentiated from the tubercle bacillus because it is usually grouped in masses held together by mucus or at least in cigar-like bundles. These bacilli are easily found in most cases of leprosy in the mucous membranes of the nose, in the lymph which oozes from superficial erosions of the skin, or, better still, in the scrapings of the corium after a superficial cut or after curetting of the epidermis. They are usually found in huge numbers in tissue sections of the lepromatous types of leprosy. The round or oval masses of bacilli, apparently held together by a mucoid substance, are called *globi*. The bacilli may be found also in the peripheral nerves, as well as in the liver and other viscera in advanced cases of leprosy.

It is not known whether *Myco. leprae* may live outside the human tissues. The actual mode of contagion is also obscure although it is assumed, in the majority of cases, that prolonged personal contact with the patient must exist before the disease is acquired. Direct inoculation on the skin with development of an initial lesion has been reported by some observers, but it is also generally accepted that the disease may have access to man through the mucous membranes of the nose and mouth.

Inoculations of human beings have not been successfully performed, although few doubt that it is possible in susceptible individuals.

PATHOLOGY AND IMMUNOLOGY

The tissues attacked by *Myco. leprae* react, in general, first in an indeterminate, simple inflammatory way, and later, when the tissues have been in prolonged contact with the specific agent, in a nodular or lepromatous type or in a tuberculoid type. This has been the basis of the newer classification of the forms of leprosy by the South American school of leprologists. We believe the new classification should be universally adopted with elimination of the older, unsatisfactory classification into cutaneous, neural, and mixed types. The works of Rabello (1936), Sousa Lima (1938), Schujman (1940), and others in Brazil, and of Baliña and Basombrio (1938), Fernández (1942), Basombrio (1943), and others in Argentina should be consulted by those interested in the details of these most excellent contributions to the knowledge and understanding of leprosy. The author presented a résumé of the subject in 1942 (Pardo Castelló, 1943) before the annual meeting of the American Medical Association.

The *nodular* or *lepromatous type* shows diffuse infiltration of the dermal and hypodermal tissues. It is a granulomatous infiltration composed of numerous large, vacuolated, badly staining foam cells, loaded with hundreds of acid-fast bacilli (Virchow's ''Leprazellen'') and many lymphocytes and plasma cells. This type of pathologic change occurs in those tissues that have poor defense and allow an easy and rapid invasion of the specific agent, and is, therefore, typical of the serious and severe forms of leprosy.

The *simple inflammatory tissue reaction* is seen in many early cases of leprosy, characterized by lymphocytic perivascular, periglandular, and perifollicular infiltration, vascular dilatation, and congestion and edema. This type of cellular reaction is seen in recently infected cases where insufficient time has elapsed for proper defense development or for the surrender of the tissues to the invader. In time, this type changes into the lepromatous or the tuberculoid type.

In the *tuberculoid type*, the cellular infiltration is characteristic; it occurs in the form of well-defined masses situated in the whole of the dermis, usually beginning around the blood vessels, glands, and hair follicles, sometimes in the form of cellular nests, sausage-shaped or oval collections, composed of lymphocytes, large foam cells, and multinucleated giant cells, resembling the infiltrate of the tuberculids or, better, that of sarcoidosis. This type is seen in patients whose tissues have adequate defenses against the specific agent as stated in the law of Jadassohn and Lewandowsky (quoted by Sulzberger, 1940). In these tissues it is very difficult to find the Hansen bacillus, which may be seen occasionally embedded in the giant cells, never in the large numbers seen in lepromatous tissues. Tuberculoid leprosy occurs therefore as a benign type of the disease, with a chronic, usually nonmutilating course, at times with spontaneous regression and cure.

The simple inflammatory type is usually transitory and in due time changes either to the lepromatous or to the tuberculoid type, but once the type is established it remains so for the duration of the life of the patient, except in very exceptional cases still the subject of dispute by leprologists. Most leprologists state, and the author is in accord with them, that a tuberculoid type never changes into a lepromatous type, but occasionally a lepromatous type may develop adequate defenses and change into the tuberculoid or more benign type. This latter occurrence is very rare. In any case the presence of lepromatous lesions under the microscope brands the case as definitely ''lepromatous'' regardless of the simple inflammatory structure of other lesions; equally, the presence of a tuberculoid structure brands the case as "tuberculoid" even if the majority of other skin biopsies demonstrate simple inflammatory reaction.

THE LEPROMIN TEST (MITSUDA TEST)

The antigen for the lepromin test is made with tissue rich in *Myco. leprae* and is called *lepromin*. Although Rost (cited by Jeanselme) as long ago as 1907 made an antigen from a suspension of Hansen's bacilli, the application of such antigen to the study of immunity in leprosy was first published by Mitsuda (1924) in 1916. Little attention was paid to his work until the International Congress of Leprologists met in Copenhagen in 1923.

The value of the test lies in the fact that an interdermal injection of minute quantities of lepromin antigen produces a definite allergic reaction in certain patients with leprosy, while it elicits no reaction at all in others.

The test is made by injecting 0.1 to 0.15 c.c. of lepromin intradermally either into the skin of the scapular region or upon the anterior surface of the thigh, above the knee. Any other location may be used, but Fernández (1942) advises the scapular region because it is usually devoid of hair, it is out of the reach of the fingers, and is away from the curious eyes of the patient.

At the end of 24 to 48 hours, there is a light erythema which is attributed to the presence of foreign protein material and which disappears in a few days, usually 3 to 4. The site of the test then remains apparently normal until the beginning of the third week when, if the test is positive, a slight papular infiltration is noted, gradually increasing in size until it attains the size of a pea. The infiltration is deep in the dermis and the color is bright red. There may be some tenderness on pressure and, occasionally formation of a central focus of necrosis with ulceration, causing a permanent scar.

The Mitsuda test is positive in about 90 per cent of normal individuals, in practically all cases of tuberculoid leprosy, and in about 50 per cent of patients presenting the simple inflammatory type which is characterized by the presence of macular lesions. It is negative in practically every case of lepromatous leprosy, in about 10 per cent of apparently normal persons, and in about 50 per cent of patients with the simple inflammatory type of leprosy.

The Mitsuda test is not a diagnostic procedure for leprosy. It serves the very useful purpose of determining the defenses of the subject and, therefore, shows the resistance of the patient to the invasion of the *Myco. leprae*. *It is therefore a prognostic test.* When it is negative the patient shows no defenses and is an easy prey or victim of the disease. When it is positive it shows that the subject possesses adequate defenses against the *Myco. leprae* and that, therefore, if he is already affected, he will suffer from a mild case and may live without the mutilations and deformities of the severe lepromatous type of leprosy. When the Mitsuda test is negative in a person without symptoms of leprosy, it shows that the person is susceptible to the disease and therefore should avoid contact with lepers. This test is applied to all prospective employees of leprosaria, and those with negative Mitsuda tests are not allowed to serve in such institutions.

In individuals who have never been in contact with lepers, the Mitsuda test is also positive in the majority of cases.

In the early, macular type of leprosy corresponding to the simple inflammatory type, the observer may predict the future of the patient according to the results of the Mitsuda test. If the test is negative, the patient will develop a lepromatous case with all the severe manifestations of leprosy. If, however, the Mitsuda test is positive, it may be safely predicted that the patient will develop a tuberculoid type of leprosy, with the usual benign evolution of such type.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The incubation period of leprosy may be very long, in some cases 10 and even 20 years. Again, it may be rather short, a few weeks or a few months. In the majority of cases it is impossible to ascertain the infective contact and, therefore, the time of incubation remains unknown.

Leprosy may begin insidiously, taking months and even years to develop a few symptoms, but it also may start with an acute attack. In the first case the phenomena observed are successively as follows: rhinitis with profuse mucous discharge or crust formation which makes breathing through the nose difficult, epistaxis, cutaneous and neural symptoms such as macules, nodules, disturbances of pigmentation, areas of anesthesia and paresthesia, especially along the ulnar region of the forearm, atrophy of the small muscles of the hands, loss of sensation to temperature and pain in the extremities with the development of bullae, swelling of the dorsa of the hands, loss of hair on the outer half of the eyebrows, atrophy of the skin with scaliness, reabsorption of the phalanges, mal perforans plantaris, and other symptoms to be described later.

When leprosy begins in the form of an acute attack, the patient, apparently healthy until a few hours before, suddenly develops chills and fever, peripheral aches and pains, headache, arthritis, and on the skin a macular or maculonodular eruption with the symptom-complex of erythema multiforme or erythema nodosum. The diagnosis may be quite difficult and often the case is diagnosed as erythema multiforme of the allergic or infectious (streptococcus) type. This acute stage may last for several days or weeks, while the patient becomes emaciated. Often the condition regresses and a few permanent lesions remain, together with beginning atrophy of the muscles of the extremities. During this period the erythrocytic sedimentation test may be extremely accelerated, as high as 150 millimeters in one hour. The number of Hansen bacilli in the skin and in the capillary blood is enormous.

When the contacts of a patient with leprosy are examined, one often finds one or two such contacts suffering from leprosy of the simple inflammatory or the tuberculoid type, quite unknown to the patient. These cases show a few macular lesions or one or two infiltrations with few if any bacilli but with the typical disturbances of sensations which characterize these lesions of leprosy. Very often only an area of anesthesia is found without apparent discoloration or change in pigmentation.

THE CLINICAL FORMS OF LEPROSY

The three fundamental types of leprosy, lepromatous, tuberculoid, and simple inflammatory, may affect the skin, the peripheral nervous system, and also the eyes, the larynx, the mammary and sexual glands, and the viscera. We shall describe in succession the symptoms of leprosy in the skin, in the peripheral nerves, and in the other organs mentioned. These histopathologic types correspond to fairly well-defined clinical types and may be diagnosed on clinical inspection by the experienced physician. As in many other conditions, there are exceptions to this rule and at times even the most experienced diagnostician must wait for a pathologic report before expressing a definite opinion concerning the type of leprosy in a particular case.

The correlation of the clinical manifestations of leprosy with the histopathologic changes, the immunologic response, and the bacteriologic findings may be better expressed in Table XIX.

TABLE XIX

CLINICAL	PATHOLOGY	IMMUNOLOGY	BACTERIOLOGY
Lepromatous Nodules, lepromas, diffuse infiltration "en nappe," loss of eyebrows, rhinitis, leonine facies, fever, and peripheral pains Mutilations: Nose, extremities	Diffuse infiltration of dermis, foam cells, "Leprazellen" with globi. Atrophy of the epidermis Atrophy of hair follicles and glands. Areas of necrosis	Mitsuda test negative in 90 per cent	Skin: Many bacilli, singly, in bundles, and globi; in sections and capillary blood Nerves: Numerous bacilli singly and in bundles in and between nerve fibers in sections
Tuberculoid Flat dark red infiltrations, well-defined geographic, annular borders; enlargement of nerves, no fever, atrophy of hands. Includes the old neural types	Patchy sarcoid-like areas of infiltration around blood vessels, hair follicles, and glands. Foam and giant cells, no globi Nerves: Profuse infiltration, same type	Mitsuda test positive in 90 per cent	Skin: Occasional bacilli in sections Nerves: Occasional bacilli in sections
Simple Inflammatory Macular lesions with little or no elevation; pink, red, or dyschromic areas of anesthesia without clinical changes	Lymphocytic infiltration around blood vessels, glands, and hair follicles. No foam or giant cells, no globi	Mitsuda test positive in 50 to 40 per cent; negative in 50 to 60 per cent	No bacilli or only occasional in sections

The occurrence of simple inflammatory or tuberculoid lesions of the internal organs is questionable, since only the lepromatous cases in the advanced periods of the disease show certain visceral changes. It is rather improbable that the early manifestations of leprosy, consisting of simple nonspecific inflammation, and the benign tuberculoid manifestations of this disease affect the internal organs.

Leprosy of the Skin and Mucous Membranes

The most common and typical lesion is the *leproma*, a circumscribed, elevated, prominent nodule, affecting the dermis and subcutaneous tissue and varying in size from that of a millet-seed to that of a tomato, that is, from a few millimeters to several centimeters in diameter. The color is deep red, dark red, or purplish according to location and duration. The surface is smooth and shiny in the majority of cases, with dilated pilosebaceous follicles sometimes filled with inspissated sebaceous material. As a leproma ages, the skin becomes wrinkled and scaly, resembling senile skin.

Lepromas may appear on an apparently healthy skin, or on a previously existing macular lesion, and may be so numerous as to cover the whole surface of the body; but even in the most profuse cases, the scalp, the flexures, the inguinocrural regions, and the temporal regions are usually free of lesions. The earliest affected parts are the lobes of the ears, the eyebrows, the forehead, the nose, the chin, and the extensor surface of the extremities, especially the elbows and knees. Often the lesions are symmetrically situated.

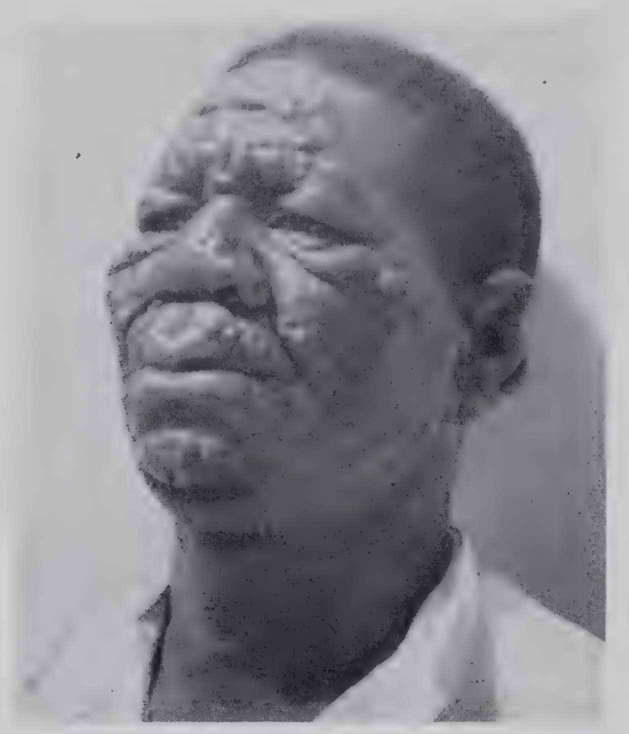


Fig. 165.—Typical lepromatous facies. (Courtesy of Raul Piñeyro.)

When they occur on the face, the lepromas deform the features of the patient; the ears are serrated or grossly lobulated, and the lobes of the ear are often studded with deep-seated shot-like infiltrations. When lepromas are numerous on the face, the patient presents a cruel and brutish appearance which has been known for a long time under the inappropriate name of *leonine facies.*

Lepromas may also present a diffuse appearance, in the form of plaques of varying size, usually several centimeters in diameter, flat, and with indistinct borders. At times these plaques are so extensive as to cover large areas of skin. They are a variegated color in which deep red, pink, dark red, and purplish mix and intermingle. The surface may be smooth, wrinkled, or scaly according to the time of evolution. These are called lepromas "en nappe."

Lepromas may remain unchanged for a long time, several months or years, but often they undergo a softening process, becoming necrotic, and break down to form ulcers with undermined edges, dirty purulent floors, and foul secretion. These ulcers finally heal, leaving depigmented or pigmented irregular scars, at times atrophic and scaly. After attaining a certain size, some lepromas begin to recede and finally are reabsorbed without ulceration and disappear, leaving depressed scars covered by wrinkled and scaly epidermis. The ulcers caused by these lepromas are very slow in healing, an easy prey to secondary infection, and when situated in the fingers and toes, may cause opening of the joints and loss of the phalanges. All of these lesions are usually completely painless.

The mucous membranes may also be the site of lepromas, especially those of the nose. Rhinitis is one of the earliest manifestations of leprosy. This rhinitis begins in the form of a chronic catarrh, with crust formation, snuffles, continuous secretion of mucus, and occasional epistaxis. Later the septum of the nose ulcerates, the secretion becomes abundant, purulent, and offensive; the nose sinks, producing the shape of a saddle or of the so-called telescopic deformity, that is, the lower part of the nose seems embedded in the upper part. The mucus contains an enormous amount of Hansen bacilli. The palate and the nasopharynx may also be the site of lepromas. In the final stage the hard palate breaks down, the bone is eliminated in the form of splinters, and an opening occurs between the floor of the nose and the mouth; water and food escape through this opening. The tongue may show chronic glossitis, being lobulated, fissured, and studded with lepromatous nodules. Lepromas localized in the larynx are particularly dangerous. The voice becomes husky, then whispered; finally, the infiltration of the vocal cords and of the glottis and epiglottis may make intubation imperative, if possible, or the urgent performance of a tracheotomy.

The *simple, nonspecific inflammatory* lesions of the early cases of leprosy, frequently found in contacts with a certain patient, consist of macules of three types: erythematous, leucodermic, and pigmented. These lesions usually exist in small numbers; at times there are only one or two of them, and occasionally they are very numerous.

The erythematous macules are the most common and are also observed during acute exacerbations. They vary in size from a few millimeters to several centimeters and at times may cover extensive areas of the skin surface, usually by the confluence of various smaller lesions. The outline is round or oval; at times they tend to clear up in the center to form ring-like or crescent shapes or they may form circinate or geographic lesions. These hyperemic macules are at first smooth, but later they may show a furfuraceous type of scales and present a powdery aspect. Sometimes these scales are so abundant and imbricated that they resemble the lesions of psoriasis.

The color of these erythematous lesions is pink or light red at first, but as they grow older they become purplish and at times take a salmon or sepia hue. The outlines of the individual lesions are fairly regular and well demarcated from the surrounding skin. Two or more areas of erythema may coalesce and form geographic figures. When several lesions of different duration coexist, the skin takes on a peculiar variegated appearance.

The pigmented macules are frequently an end result of the evolution of erythematous changes but often primarily pigmented macules appear too. They are round, oval, irregular patches of slaty, brown, or chocolate color and often intermingle with the erythematous and achromic lesions. The purely pigmented macules of leprosy affect the trunk and extremities but are much less common than the erythematous.

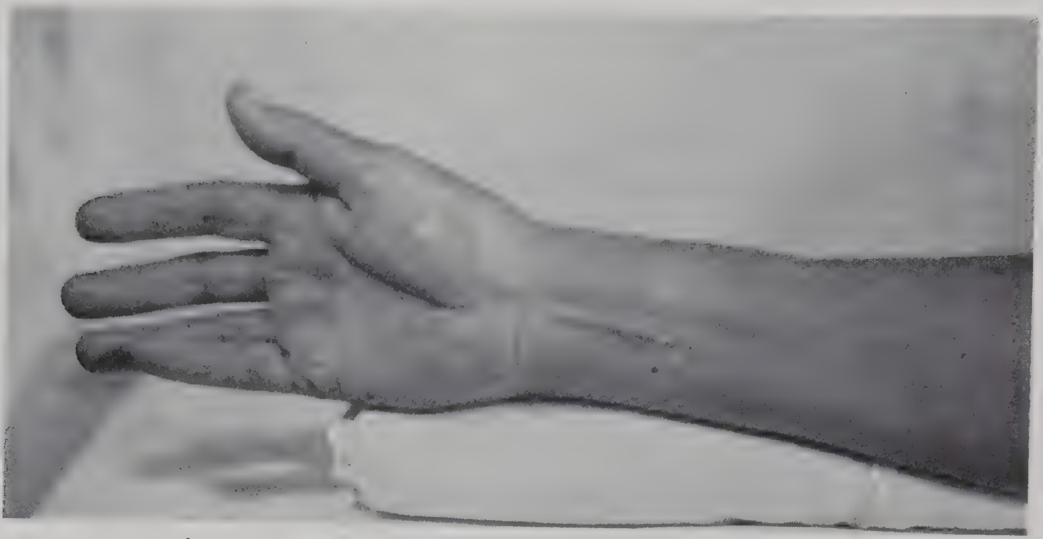


Fig. 166.—Early simple inflammatory lesion of leprosy. A solitary anesthetic, erythematous manifestation.

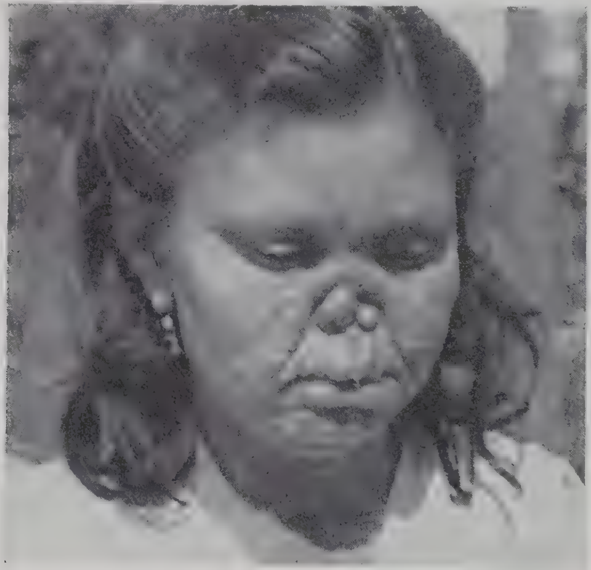


Fig. 167.—Lepromatous manifestations with destruction of the septum of the nose. (Courtesy of Raul Piñeyro.)

The achromic or leucodermic spots or macules of leprosy often form a halo around the pigmented or the erythematous macules. The color is not as white as that of the vitiligo lesions but rather ashy, and they are never scaly. Often the order is reversed and the achromic spots are surrounded by an erythematous or a pigmented ring. These dyschromic lesions were known formerly as *vitiligo gravior* and also as *morphea alba gravis.*

Of all these lesions, the erythematous are the most common, the achromic are rare, and the pigmented still rarer.

All of these lesions have a common character, with disturbances in sensations invariably present in all. There is absence of sensation to pain and to temperature but, as a rule, the sensation of touch is preserved. The touch sensation may be lost in advanced cases.

All the macular lesions of leprosy are known by the common term *leprids.*

The *tuberculoid* lesions of the skin are usually observed in a pure state but occasionally are combined with the macular lesions described above. The diagnosis of this type of leprosy may be difficult but it is possible with the aid of clinical examination by an expert who has seen many cases of leprosy. However, the clinical diagnosis should be confirmed by pathologic examinations whenever possible. The cutaneous lesions of tuberculoid leprosy are small nodules of the size of a pinhead, purplish, disseminated or grouped, slightly prominent, resembling patches of lupus vulgaris or of miliary sarcoid; perifollicular papules of lichenoid type resembling the lesions of lichen scrofulosorum; dermo-hypodermic nodules the size of a filbert or even larger, few in number, with a deep red or purplish surface frequently located on the extremities where sometimes they resemble the lesions of erythema induratum of Bazin; flat plaques, round or oval in outline, serpiginous or capriciously outlined, covering from several centimeters to large areas of skin, especially on the trunk, with their centers slightly depressed, lighter in color, sometimes scaly, and the edges well raised, covered with papular elevations; achromic, lenticular lesions, or plaques with round, oval, or irregular outline, and with little infiltration in the surrounding skin.

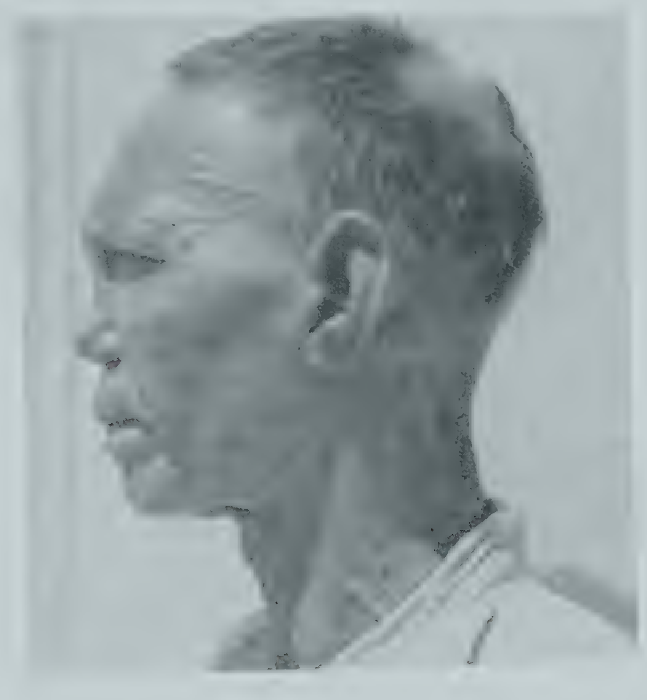


Fig. 168.—Alopecia in a case of lepromatous type of leprosy. (Courtesy of Raul Piñeyro.)

These manifestations of tuberculoid leprosy are also anesthetic, usually more so in the center than on the periphery.

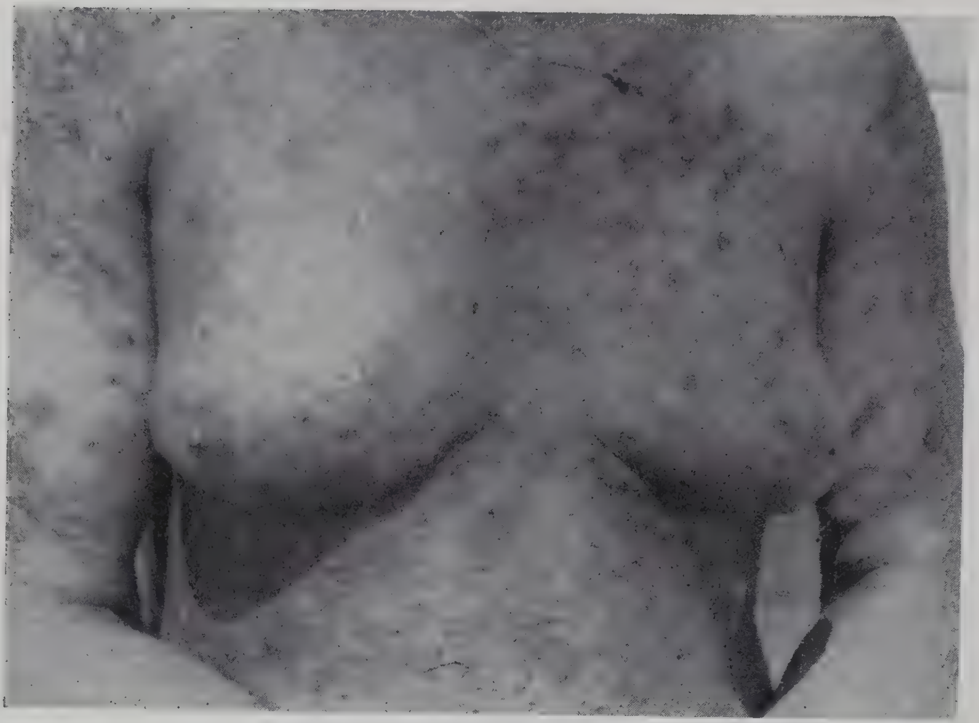


Fig. 169.—Gynecomastia in a man with lepromatous leprosy. (Courtesy of Raul Piñeyro.)

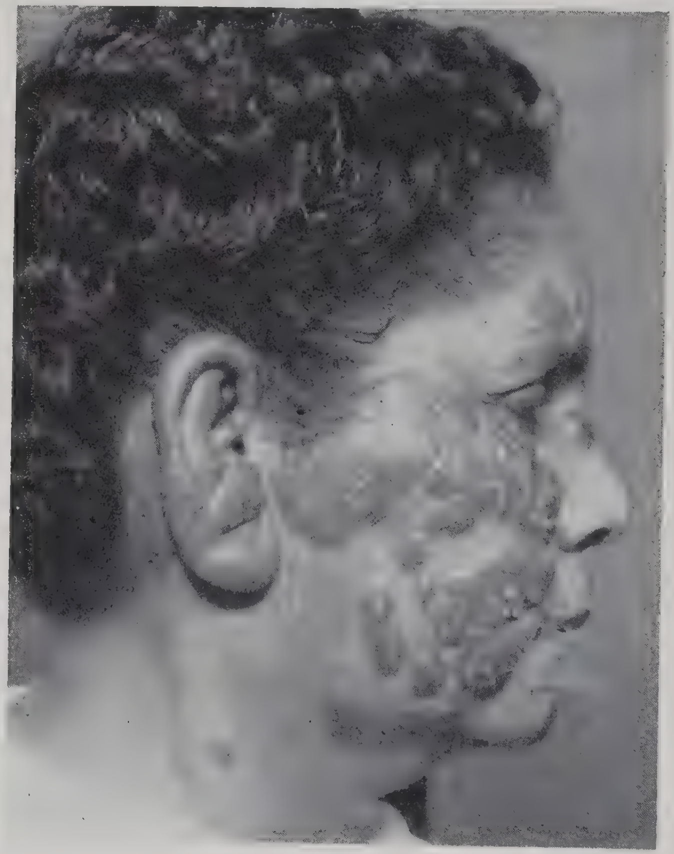


Fig. 170.—Tuberculoid leprosy; flat nodules of the skin.

These lesions of tuberculoid leprosy may be difficult to differentiate from those of the simple inflammatory type when the lesions are beginning to change. Then the pathologic diagnosis must serve as the deciding factor.

Leprosy of the Nerves

Myco. leprae attacks the peripheral nerves, causing neuritis, usually symmetrically. The large nerve trunks are either uniformly thickened or present nodular enlargements resembling beads. The nerves most frequently affected are the ulnars which may be palpated behind the elbows along the epitrochlear canal, the auricular branch of the superficial cervical plexus which may be felt or seen across the sternocleidomastoid muscle, the popliteals, the peroneals, and less frequently the radial and median nerves. This polyneuritis may cause intense pain, but as a rule the nerve is destroyed and as a result the skin of the affected parts becomes anesthetic. The cranial nerves are often affected too, especially the facials and the oculomotors.

It is generally accepted that this neuritis progresses centripetally, at times reaching the spinal roots to cause radiculitis; very rarely myelitis has been reported. *Myco. leprae* seems to invade the skin nerve endings first, the bacilli ascending along the nerve trunks, causing their gradual degeneration.

Leprous neuritis causes excruciating pains with paroxysmal exacerbations in some patients, particularly in the tuberculoid type of the disease which is often confined to the nerves, with almost complete absence of cutaneous manifestations. Hyperesthesia and burning sensations are also experienced by some patients. Later, after the nerves have degenerated, anesthesia is the persistent phenomenon throughout the life of the patient. These zones of anesthesia are usually in the form of bands along the extremities, beginning along the ulnar border of the hands and forearms and later spreading to the entire upper extremities. Pain and thermal sensations are first affected, with the result that the patients suffer burns without noticing them, while smoking, cooking, or leaning against a stove. At times, the first indication to the patient is the smell of burning flesh. The sensation of touch persists unaffected for the longest period and is lost only when the disease reaches its most advanced stages. Then the leper cannot pick up a pin or button his clothes without a great deal of difficulty. The touch of a feather or of a flake of cotton on the affected parts is not noticed by the patient.

This neuritis is also present in all the macular and nodular lesions of leprosy to a greater or lesser degree, so that this sign becomes one of the most typical of the disease and serves to identify it in cases when the diagnosis is in doubt.

When neuritis is of long standing the complete degeneration of the nerve trunks causes trophic disturbances: paralysis, muscular atrophies, retractions, and deformities of the fingers and toes, ulcers, and gangrene.

Leprous neuritis is an interstitial neuritis, in cases of lepromatous leprosy, the large nerves being invaded by enormous amounts of lepra bacilli without much defensive reaction. The nerves are filled with bundles of bacilli or studded with globi and the nerve fibers show progressive degeneration; there is not much cellular infiltration or focal inflammation. In the tuberculoid types, on the contrary, the nerves show few if any lepra bacilli, but the nerve tissue is greatly invaded by the presence of typical tuberculoid cellular infiltrations composed of lymphocytes, epithelioid cells, and often giant cells of the Langhans type. These cells are grouped in masses resembling the foci as seen in the same type of lesions in the skin. A particular type of tuberculoid leprosy of the nerves ends in necrosis, causing the formation of a collection of necrotic material with the appearance of pus which adheres to the skin resembling an abscess, finally opening and leaving a small ulcer. This type of neuritis has been described as *neuritis nodular colliquativa* by Rabello of Rio de Janeiro (1932).

The Trophic Disturbances in Leprosy

The trophic disturbances, which are the result of peripheral neuritis described above, may be discrete or very numerous according to the individual case. They are usually less frequent in early cases and more severe and numerous in advanced cases. The tuberculoid types of leprosy may show some of these disturbances rather early in the disease while the lepromatous cases may not present them until the most advanced stage. Early manifestations of the lepromatous types are bullae on the bony prominences such as the elbows, knees, and the knuckles, localized gangrenous patches on the hands and feet, and painless ulcers, usually on the soles, especially on the head of the first metatarsal bone, or elsewhere on the feet. The bullae usually develop suddenly, break open, or they may dry without breaking and recur repeatedly on the same sites, causing extreme atrophy of the skin and even atonic ulcers and finally depigmented atrophic scars. The ulcers may also be the result of the breaking down of the lepromas or of localized areas of necrosis and gangrene. On the fingers and toes these atonic ulcers, foul and bleeding, secreting yellowish-green pus, usually completely painless, may open the finger joints and cause mutilation by loss of the phalanges. The fingers fall off in pieces without the least pain. Secondary infection may cause chronic lymphangitis which is seen along the extremities in the form of dark brown ascending streaks. On the feet, these mutilations often begin in the form of mal perforans plantaris, common in both lepromatous and tuberculoid cases; these are located on the head of the first and of the fifth metatarsal bones, on the base of the toes, or on the calcaneus. These are deep ulcers, funnel-shaped, with callous borders, reaching deeply into the skeletal parts and destroying them, so that sequestra are very frequently expelled through the ulcers without any pain. These patients walk with scarcely any difficulty on infected, bleeding feet, sometimes almost reduced to stumps.

As to the skin glands, certain disturbances are also observed, especially hyperhydrosis. The lepra patient perspires freely and soaks his clothes, sometimes without exertion, especially in the early stages of the disease. Later, this phenomenon becomes less marked and the sweat secretion may be greatly decreased in the more advanced stages. The sebaceous secretion increases first, especially on the face; later it undergoes a similar regression and the skin may be dry, scaly, and wrinkled in the later stages of the disease. The faces of these patients often present a senile appearance due to wrinkling and dryness.

An early symptom of lepromatous leprosy is the alopecia of the outer half and later of the whole of the eyebrows. The eyelashes may fall off, as may the hair of the body, especially in the axilla, the pubis, and the extremities. The beard and mustache also become thinned out, with finally a complete alopecia of the face. The hair of the scalp is not affected in most cases, but in others there may be patchy alopecia similar to and often indistinguishable from alopecia areata. These patches often affect the edge of the scalp causing the *ophiasic* type of alopecia areata. The alopecia of the scalp may be very extensive and the patient may be practically bald. It is interesting to note that in the areas along the large blood vessels of the scalp the hairs are preserved the longest. Although alopecia in leprosy has been considered as a dystrophic phenomenon, it has been demonstrated by many, including the author, that the hair follicles in these cases of the lepromatous variety are surrounded by cellular infiltration very rich in acid-fast bacilli.

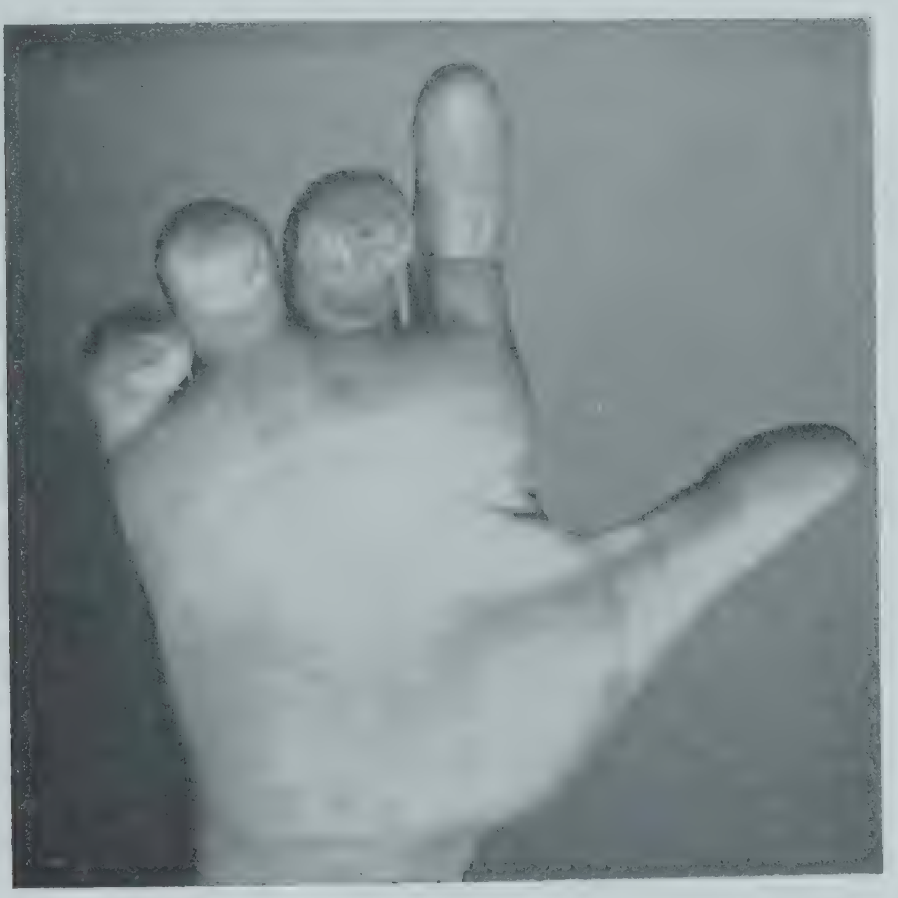


Fig. 171.—Tuberculoid leprosy. Leper claw. Note ulceration of the finger tips and atrophy of the last phalanx.

The nails in leprosy present many and varied dystrophic phenomena. They are brittle, discolored, deformed, twisted, atrophic, sometimes reduced to stumps on the ends of the atrophied fingers or toes. The nails may be replaced by scar tissue or may be entirely absent, the finger or toe showing a necrotic ulceration instead. One of the earliest manifestations observed in the lepromatous type of the disease is the *gable nail of leprosy* described by Pardo Castelló (1946). The free edge of the nail is indented and the outer surface of the nail presents a ridge longitudinal to the posterior wall of the nail, the whole resembling a gabled roof. Diffusion of the lunula over the posterior two-thirds of the nail is an early phenomenon in cases of lepromatous leprosy.

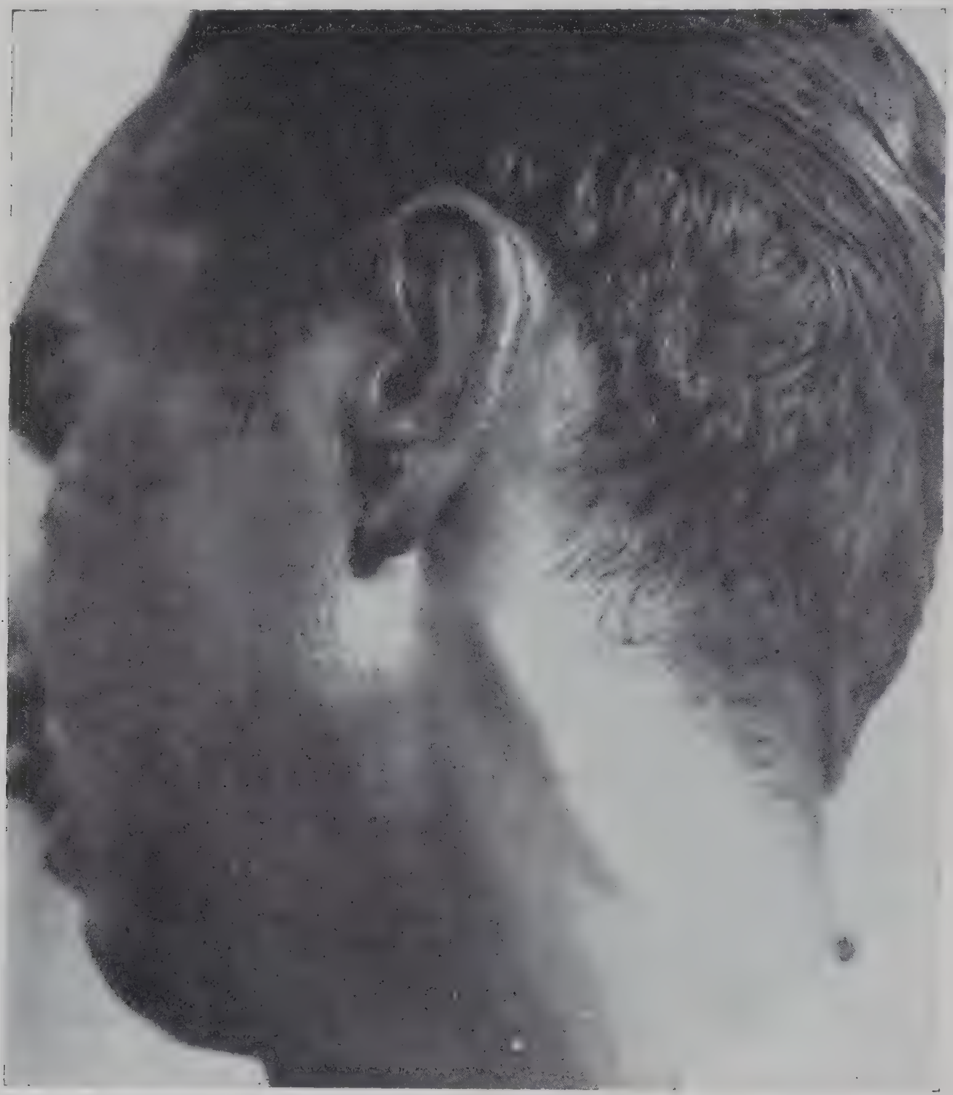


Fig. 172.—Tuberculoid leprosy. Enlargement of the auricular branch of the superficial cervical plexus.

The muscles are affected early in cases of tuberculoid leprosy and may be equally although not as extensively atrophied in lepromatous cases. The first symptoms are present in the small muscles of the hands, the interosseous muscles, and the muscles of the thenar and hypothenar regions, the hands being thin, atrophic, the fingers retracted, and the palms flat and even. Sometimes the line of the heads of the metacarpal bones forms a prominence across, and the retracted fingers seem to clench the palm. The movements of opposition of the thumb are greatly limited or even entirely abolished. The extensor muscles of the forearm are next in frequency to atrophy, and as a result the hand effects several atrophic positions such as the so-called "monkey hand," "preacher's hand," and "ulnar claw," according to the degree of retraction of the several fingers and thumbs. Sometimes there are awkward and bizarre combinations of deformities of the hands and feet due to atrophy of the muscles, reabsorption of bone, and mutilations, sometimes resembling those seen in chronic rheumatism. In the lower extremities similar deformities may be occasioned by atrophy of the muscles of the feet and calves and of the extensor muscles of the leg. The foot drop, similar to that seen in alcoholic and saturnine polyneuritis, is one of the most common phenomena of leprosy in the lower extremities. In the upper extremities, hand drop due to radial paralysis is an infrequent phenomenon. The muscles of the face are paralyzed and later become atrophic due to polyneuritis of the facial and oculomotor nerves. The face becomes expressionless, indifferent, and occasionally there is a paralysis of the orbicularis oris with Bell's syndrome and a progressive atrophy of the muscles innervated by the facial nerve. All these muscular atrophies are more frequent and more extensive in cases of tuberculoid leprosy.

The bones of the extremities may suffer a process of reabsorption without ulceration so that the hands and feet seem shortened and deformed, so much so that the fingers and toes may be reduced to small stumps attached to the metacarpus, with the atrophic residue of the nails on their ends. A frequent lesion, especially in the small bones of the fingers, is the so-called *analgesic whitlow* and also *Morvan's disease*. In these cases, one or several fingers show inflammation and enlargement, quickly becoming necrotic and gangrenous, with the elimination of sequestra, this process being entirely indolent.

VISCERAL LEPROSY

Lesions of leprosy in the viscera are almost exclusively limited to cases of the lepromatous type. Tuberculoid leprosy very rarely affects any of the internal organs.

The most frequently affected organs are the eyes, the anterior segment being the site of inflammation: conjunctivitis, iritis, keratitis, iridocyclitis, and glaucoma. Choroidoretinitis has also been observed. These inflammatory reactions very often end in complete loss of vision.

The lymphatic glands are frequently enlarged, one of the common symptoms of the lepromatous type, especially the glands of the groins and of the axillae. These glands are large, soft, with a certain amount of periadenitis, and entirely painless.

Enlargement of the liver and spleen is a common symptom in advanced cases of the lepromatous type and jaundice may be observed in the final stages. The lesions are those of chronic hepatitis and cirrhosis. Autopsy reveals these organs studded with thousands of small lepromas, very rich in Hansen bacilli, and, in long-standing cases, with predominantly cirrhotic lesions and amyloid degeneration.

Leprosy of the ovaries and of the testicles is a frequent and an early occurrence in lepromatous patients, which explains the sterility of the majority of patients with leprosy. When these lesions develop early in life, they may cause arrest of development; these patients may have many of the characteristics of children or of eunuchs. Lepromatous orchiepididymitis shows clinically by the presence of small lepromas of the size and shape of lead shot, sometimes larger, causing enlargements of the testicles, lasting months or years, with final atrophy and fibrosis. Finally, the testicles are reduced to small nodules, sometimes no bigger than olives. These lesions may be among the earliest of leprosy, present long before the skin manifestations become apparent, in which case the differential diagnosis between the lesions of tuberculosis of the testicles and epididymis and leprosy may have to be considered.

Enlargement of the breasts in men occurs rather frequently, the mammae being so prominent, due to the presence of lepromas and sometimes to true hypertrophy of the glandular tissue, that they become feminine in type. Patients are very sensitive about this deformity and try to hide it as much as possible. The relation of atrophy of the testicles to mammary hypertrophy has been pointed out.

Nephritis is a common complication in the advanced periods of lepromatous patients, the urine showing casts, albumin, and renal epithelial cells. Hansen bacilli are often found in the urine, being quite abundant in advanced cases. Amyloid degeneration of the kidneys is a frequent autopsy finding. Equally frequent in advanced and terminal cases are gastrointestinal, cardiac, and pulmonary complications.

In lepromatous leprosy there is a bacillary septicemia, the *Myco. leprae* being easily demonstrated in the capillary blood as well as in the venous blood. In tuberculoid forms such findings are never seen.

In the great majority of patients with leprosy, skin and neural symptoms are mixed in different proportions, especially in lepromatous cases, but skin and visceral symptoms predominate here, with neural and dystrophic manifestations second in importance and frequency. On the other hand, in tuberculoid cases the skin symptoms are much less varied than in those of the lepromatous types, while frequently the neural symptoms predominate, visceral symptoms being usually absent. The so-called "pure neural leprosy" is a type of tuberculoid leprosy of the peripheral nerves, with complete or almost complete absence of cutaneous manifestations, except for the atrophic, dystrophic, and anesthetic symptoms due to the chronic degenerative neuritis. The author has demonstrated that every case of this purely neural type belongs to the category of tuberculoid leprosy, the histologic changes constantly found in the nerves warranting this sweeping statement.

In the simple inflammatory, nonspecific type of leprosy, the lesions are first of the macular type on the skin and often also coincident with some neural enlargement and areas of anesthesia of the skin. These cases are rare and are found only in the very early stages of the disease. These are usually cases found when examining the contacts of leprosy cases, and often, as stated above, the patients are unaware of the presence of such lesions. It must be emphasized that these patients sooner or later become either lepromatous or tuberculoid cases, and this possibility may be predicted by the result of the lepromin test (see p. 589).

LEPRA REACTION

Leprosy is a chronic disease, lasting many years, presenting varied and progressive symptoms over a period of months and years. During this chronic course, however, acute episodes may occur; these are known as *reactions* or, better, as *lepra reactions.* Occasionally leprosy is initiated with one of these acute attacks, the first intimation that the patient has any pathologic condition.

This acute condition is characterized, in the lepromatous cases, by malaise, headache, backache, chills, fever, peripheral painful neuritis, and outbreaks of new nodular lesions, bright red in color, which may develop in a few hours, and which resemble an acute attack of erythema multiforme. The fever may be as low as 37.5° C. or as high as 41° C., with morning remissions and even exacerbations. The peripheral neuritis may be accompanied by excruciating pain making sleep impossible. The rash, composed of erythematous patches, papules, nodules, and urticarial plaques, may invade the whole skin surface and the patient seems swollen and deformed beyond belief. Old lesions may show central necrosis and ulceration. In some patients, enlargement of the liver and spleen and acute orchiepididymitis have been observed. The patient may die in this acute condition; however, that is a rare occurrence. As a rule, the condition lasts a week or a few months and gradually subsides. At times patients remain in acute attacks, with very little remission, for 6 months to a year.

Needless to say, the occurrence of repeated acute attacks aggravates the prognosis in leprosy.

During the attacks of lepra reaction, the bacilli may be found in huge numbers in the tissues, in the peripheral blood, in the venous blood, and even in the arterial blood. Erythrocytic sedimentation rate may be very rapid, usually 100 mm. or more during the first hour.

In tuberculoid leprosy, lepra reaction develops in a less dramatic fashion. Fever is usually absent and if present is rarely above 38° C. There may be activation of the pre-existing lesions, and a few others may appear. Peripheral neuritic pains may be quite troublesome, and bacilli may be found in scant numbers in the swollen lesions. The patient is usually able to go about and do his chores without much trouble, contrary to lepromatous patients in lepra reaction. These must remain in bed, unable to move, for weeks and months, during which time they may become emaciated and progressively weaker. In the acute phase of tuberculoid leprosy, the erythrocyte sedimentation rate is seldom much increased, usually not more than 20 mm. during the first hour.

Lepra reaction may be brought about by injudicious treatment with Promin or chaulmoogra oil, by intercurrent diseases, by excessive eating or drinking, by excessive exercise, by sexual debauches, or at times it may occur without any apparent reason.

Loss of weight, lack of the usual normal feeling, loss of appetite, and sudden increase in the rate of erythrocytic sedimentation are forerunners of a lepra reaction and should be an indication for rest in bed, emptying the intestinal canal, cessation of treatment with chaulmoogra oil or with Promin, and the call to put the patient on a bland diet.

LAZARINE LEPROSY

This rare variety of the disease was described first by Zambaco Pashá of Istambul (1897) and later by Pardo Castelló and Caballero (1931) of Cuba and by Fernández Vautrai (1941) of Brazil. Leprologists are still undecided as to whether this is a distinct form of leprosy or whether it is simply a variety of the tuberculoid type. Some leprologists ignore this type of the disease; others consider that it consists only of the prevalence of the formation of bullae and areas of necrosis as a symptom of leprosy. However, the cases seen by the author and Guillermo Caballero in Matanzas, Cuba, were to all appearances genuine cases of monosymptomatic leprosy, consisting of the development of areas of necrosis at the site of an edematous infiltration or of a bloody bulla in a formerly apparently normal person. These lesions progress with destruction of the subcutaneous tissue, the tendons, and muscles, and even to the extent of opening of the joints of the extremities, causing tremendous mutilations. The progress is slow and healing of these necrotic areas leaves retracted and atrophic scars. These lesions are always indolent, frightful mutilations, apparently with no pain whatsoever. The diagnosis is made by bacteriologic examination of the necrotic tissues, where millions of acid-fast bacilli are found with all the characteristics of the *Myco. leprae.* All attempts to cultivate these bacilli have ended in failure. The pathologic anatomy of the affected tissues is that of a tuberculoid infiltration ending in necrosis, which is a phenomenon never seen in the usual types of tuberculoid leprosy. It is easy to find acid-fast bacilli in enormous numbers in the bullae, which are the first lesions to appear.

The outcome of these cases is occasionally fatal. More often the ulcers heal, leaving deformities and anesthetic scars, and the patient may recover or suffer later from the chronic lesions of leprosy.

THE DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS OF LEPROSY

The diagnosis of leprosy offers no difficulty in the great majority of cases, especially the lepromatous type. The coincident cutaneous and neural lesions, disturbances of sensation, and the dystrophic manifestations are characteristic. However, in some types of leucemia cutis affecting the face, the cutaneous nodules and infiltrations "en nappe" may simulate the *leonine facies* of leprosy. In these cases the absence of anesthesia to pain and temperature, as well as the histopathologic changes and the absence of acid-fast bacilli, will settle the differential diagnosis. Mycosis fungoides may offer a similar problem in some cases.

The tuberculoid types of leprosy of the skin and of the nerves may cause difficulties in diagnosis more often than the lepromatous types. Here the cutaneous lesions may be difficult to differentiate from those of sarcoidosis, so much so that some investigators believe that sarcoidosis may be due to *Myco. leprae* in some cases. However, the diagnosis may be made by the histamine test and by the presence of anesthesia in leprosy and its absence in sarcoidosis, but the clinical picture as well as the histopathologic findings may be very similar. In cases of the pure neural tuberculoid syndrome of leprosy, confusion with syringomyelia is quite possible, but the usual enlargement of the ulnar nerves and the histamine test which remains normal in syringomyelia are sufficient to establish the diagnosis. Alcoholic and diabetic polyneuritis, as well as the polyneuritic syndrome due to avitaminosis, beriberi, lead, and bismuth, may cause confusion, but they are not difficult to differentiate. In any case, biopsy of the ulnar nerve will settle the diagnosis of leprosy.

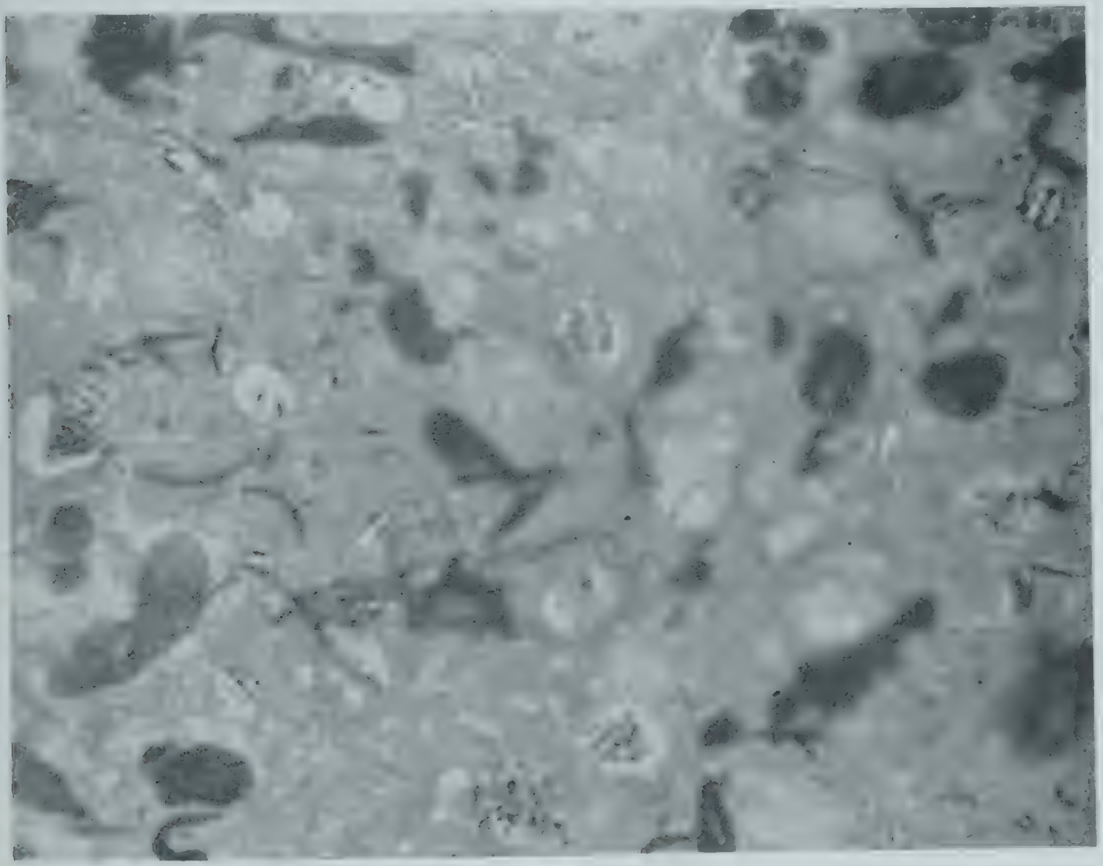


Fig. 173.—Section of lepromatous tissue. Note the clear spaces (*globi*) filled with bacilli.

The acute attacks of lepra reaction may be mistaken for acute erythema multiforme, allergic reactions to drugs or food, erythema nodosum of streptococcal nature, and the exanthematic fevers. In countries where leprosy is endemic, a diagnosis of acute leprosy must always be in the mind of the general practitioner, and in these cases the presence of Hansen bacilli is usually easy to demonstrate.

It must be emphasized here that the presence of *Myco. leprae* in the nasal secretions, in the capillary blood, or in dermal scrapings is diagnostic of leprosy.

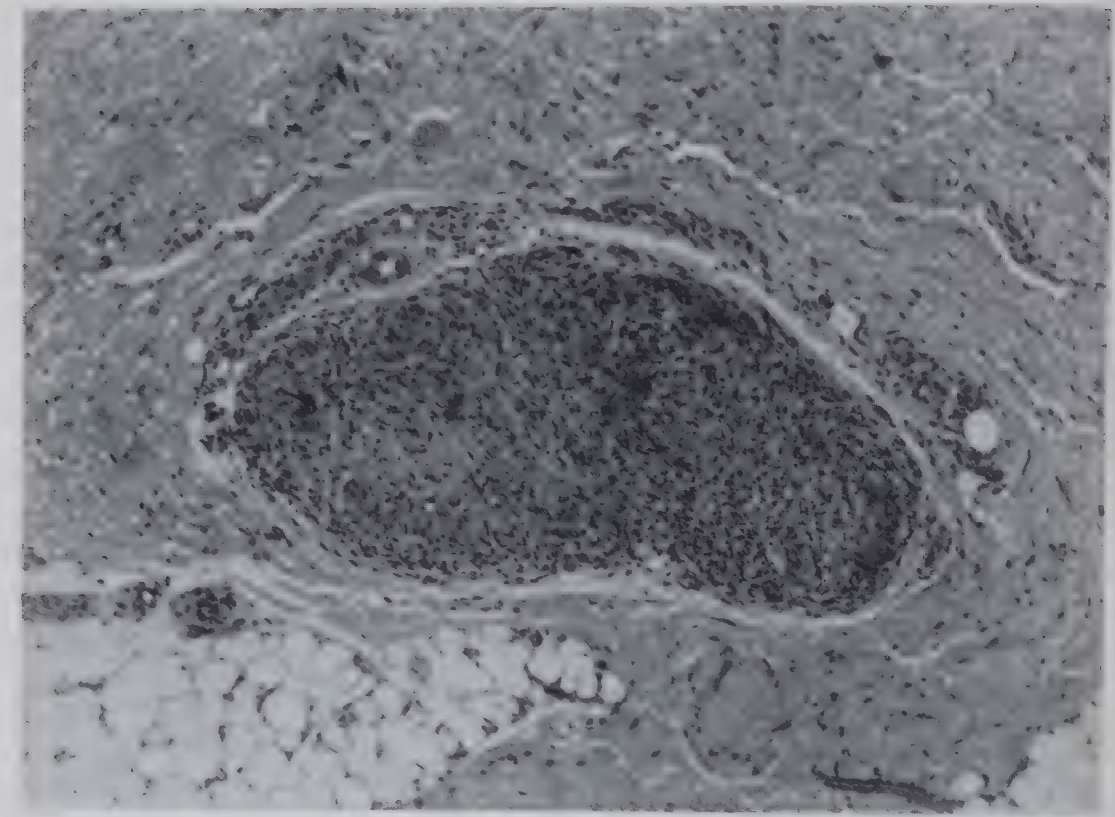


Fig. 174.—Section of tuberculoid leprosy of the skin. Typical sausage-shaped infiltration resembling sarcoid.

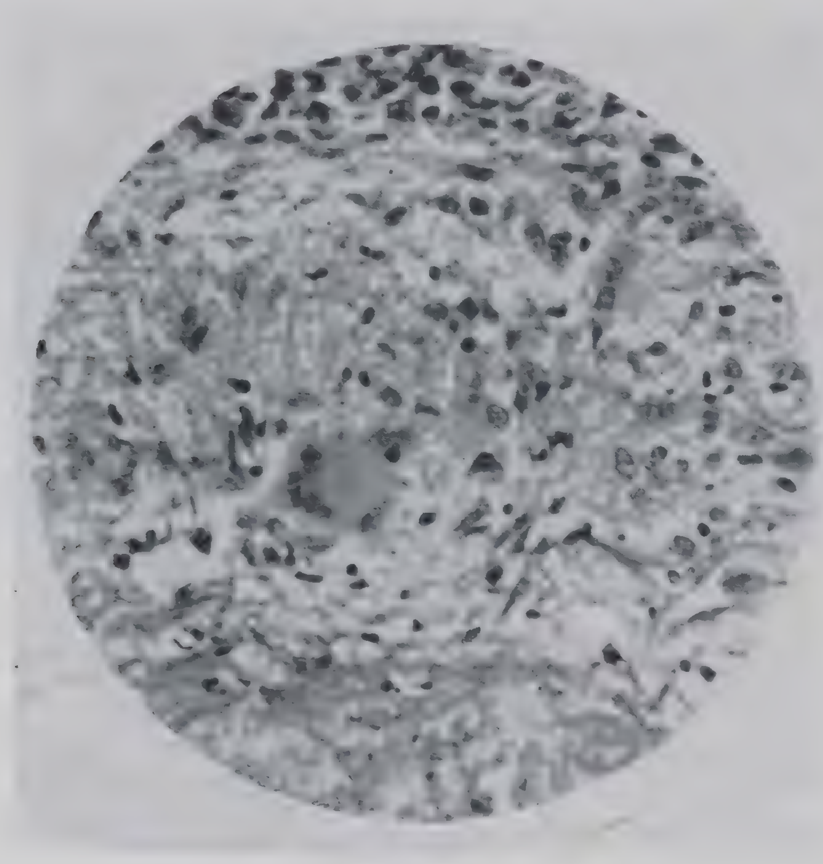


Fig. 175.—Section of ulnar nerve showing typical tuberculoid structure in a case of tuberculoid leprosy limited exclusively to the peripheral nerves (formerly called "neural" leprosy).

but absence of the organism does not exclude the possibility of the existence of this disease. It must be remembered that it may be impossible to demonstrate *Myco. leprae* in the macular lesions of the simple inflammatory type and in the tuberculoid lesions of the skin and nerves.

The diagnosis of the early macular lesions or of the areas of anesthesia without morphologic skin changes, so often found in contacts when following up leprosy patients, may offer a serious diagnostic problem, and at times the definite diagnosis must be postponed for lack of evidence. In these cases the histamine test may be the only method of diagnosis.

The Histamine Test

Among the pharmacodynamic tests used for the study of circulatory physiologic and peripheral innervation, the histamine test is the most important for the dermatologist. It is of very great importance in the diagnosis of leprosy, syringomyelia, polyneuritis, and areas of anesthesia of central and peripheral origin.

Technic.—

Place a drop of 1:1,000 solution of histamine phosphate on the affected skin to be tested.

Place another drop at a point between the suspected area and the adjacent normal skin, and a third drop on the normal skin.

Lightly prick the epidermis through these drops, using the point of a hypodermic needle, being careful not to cause bleeding.

Immediately dry the drops of histamine with cotton and carefully watch the sites of the test.

Within 25 to 40 seconds after the pricking of the skin, the *normal skin* shows an area of erythema with irregular outline, usually 5 to 20 mm. in diameter, later reaching as much as 5 centimeters.

In 60 to 100 seconds, a wheal forms in the erythematous area, centered by the point where the needle entered the epidermis. Finally, after 3 minutes, a hemorrhagic point may appear at the site of the needle prick. The wheal usually measures 2 to 5 mm. in diameter.

The reaction persists for approximately 20 minutes, but at times the erythema and the wheal are still present after 45 minutes. There are individual variations due to age, room temperature, and local circulatory conditions. The test is useless on the Negro skin.

The test on the place *between the affected and the normal skin* shows the same succession of phenomena on the normal half of the skin, but on the affected half the erythematous reaction stops abruptly and is absent on that part of the skin, but the wheal is always present without the peripheral erythema.

On the *anesthetic skin*, erythema is wholly lacking, while the wheal is present and remains the usual length of time.

The test causes no subjective sensations, either on the normal or on the affected skin.

The test has also been made by scarification and by intradermal injection of histamine, but results are more clear-cut with the technic described above.

Similar tests made with salt solution and with distilled water cause a fleeting reaction similar to the one described above. However, these reactions are not constant and may be more or less absent or more or less marked according to the personal reactivity of the patient, due to the individual capacity to liberate "H" substance under the trauma of the needle point.

This test is adequate for the diagnosis of areas of anesthesia or of early erythematous lesions due to leprosy, especially in children and in noncooperative patients.

It must be pointed out, however, that any type of degenerative peripheral neuritis may give an abnormal histamine test and that, therefore, it is not exclusively diagnostic of leprosy. Furthermore, the test is not reliable when performed at a room temperature below 24° C. or when performed on aged persons with slow or impaired peripheral circulation.

It is important in the differential diagnosis between leprosy and syringomyelia, since in the latter condition the histamine test is normal.

The test is read as *normal* or *abnormal,* not as positive or negative.

PROGNOSIS OF LEPROSY

The outlook for a patient with leprosy (untreated) is usually unfavorable. Leprosy is a chronic progressive disease, especially the lepromatous types. The prognosis is therefore grave, and only when the cases are recognized and diagnosed early in the disease can one be optimistic as to the future. However, patients with the tuberculoid type of the disease often suffer only from a few dyschromic or erythematonodular lesions without any discomfort, living a happy and useful life. These tuberculoid types have been known to regress and remain asymptomatic for the remainder of their lives, which amounts to a spontaneous cure. Even in moderately advanced cases of tuberculoid leprosy with enlargement of the ulnar and other nerves, and atrophy and retraction of the hands, the disease may remain arrested after a number of years and no further symptoms appear. In lepromatous leprosy, occasional patients heal after a time, usually years, the patient presenting no apparent new symptoms, but remaining maimed, wrinkled, senile-like, with distorted extremities and deformed nose. These have been called the "burned-out lepers," and in such cases *Myco. leprae* may be absent.

These remarks refer to cases left without any attempt at treatment. When the patients are properly housed, fed, and treated, the prognosis may be better and a certain number of cases of leprosy get well, although carrying forever the scars of the disease. The number of patients paroled from leprosaria as arrested or probably cured is increasing, and newer methods of approach to treatment and hygienic measures promise a still greater proportion of discharges.

Most patients of the lepromatous type of leprosy progress toward disability, blindness, laryngitis, with occlusive inflammatory lesions leading to tracheotomy, cachexia, and death. Some patients are the victims of intercurrent disease, but it is to be noted that tuberculosis is not frequent among these patients.

TREATMENT*

Treatment must be considered first from the point of view of prophylaxis and second from the point of view of treatment of the individual.

The most important prophylactic treatment concerns isolation of the patients in sanitaria, hospitals, or colonies. The present tendency among the foremost Brazilian and Argentinian leprologists is to segregate these patients in colonies, that is, in small communities of about 500 to 1,000 people, with homes, stores, clubs, theaters, sports fields, and hospitals and dispensaries. Here these patients, living as they would at home, can visit their doctors in the dispensaries to receive advice and treatment as often as needed, while performing their work in the community and contributing to their own support. These colonies produce their own dairy products, truck gardens, meat, and other products, while the inmates help to keep the community clean and orderly, being properly remunerated for their work.

When a wage earner is committed to one of these colonies, his family is cared for by the authorities and properly protected, there being for the children institutions called *preventoria* where they are educated and taught a trade, until the age of 18, when they are discharged, equipped with the necessary instruments or tools for their work.

Each institution is equipped with hospital facilities for intercurrent diseases and with beds for chronic, disabled patients.

One of the most important measures for the prophylaxis and early detection of cases of leprosy is the careful and minute examination of those who have been in contact with a leprosy patient—the near relatives, the friends, and the neighbors of such patients. These contacts frequently have a few undetected symptoms of early leprosy and offer the best opportunity for quick and successful treatment. The author has found a number of such cases with one or two isolated lesions, where surgical removal of such lesions has been successful, and these patients have remained without further symptoms of the disease. This fact leads to the belief that leprosy may be locally inoculated into the skin and remain as a localized condition for some time.

The treatment of leprosy requires devotion and faith on the part of the physician as well as of the patient. The mental attitude of these patients, especially when fugitives from sanitary authorities or when finally segregated, must be taken into consideration. That is why the type of institution recommended and used by the South American leprologists is the most humane and effective of all; the patients may live as normal human beings, do their work, have their homes, and in cases where a whole family is affected, live as a unit. The will to live, the hope of getting well, and a busy life are important factors contributed by the patient in the treatment of leprosy.

It must be stated here that it is not necessary to segregate patients with the simple inflammatory or the tuberculoid type of leprosy unless they cannot live within the set of rules advised by the sanitary authorities, or when they are destitute. In cases of tuberculoid leprosy or of the early simple inflammatory type, with no Hansen bacilli are demonstrable, these patients may remain at home under sanitary supervision and under the proper treatment. There is no more reason to segregate these patients than to segregate early cases of pulmonary tuberculosis when no bacilli are found in the sputum.

---

*See also Chapters 64 and 65.

Leprosy is not a highly contagious disease, and the fear that its presence causes in a community is unjustified. It is accepted by all leprologists that contagion of leprosy requires prolonged contact with a patient of the lepromatous type, defective hygienic surroundings, and poor bodily defenses. Attendants, nurses, employees, doctors, Sisters of Charity and of other religious orders caring for these patients remain healthy and unaffected after years of contact with leprosy patients, and they use only the logical preventive measures that any other bacterial disease requires.

The treatment of the disease itself calls, in the first place, for a complete examination of the patient to set aright any deviation from the normal health that may be found, such as intestinal parasites, disturbances of gastric or intestinal digestion, liver disorders, focal infections, parasitic skin diseases, anemia, malaria, avitaminosis, and others. The patient must be placed in the best possible physical condition to resist the spread of the disease of leprosy. The importance of hygienic and nutritional measures cannot be overemphasized here, and in this connection leprosy shows as marvelous an improvement as tuberculosis under the proper combination of rest or exercise as the case may be, nutritious food high in caloric value and in vitamin content, clean living quarters, and plenty of fresh air and sunshine.

Milk in plentiful amounts, fresh meat, fish, and poultry, simply cooked and condimented, vegetables, fruits, sugar in plentiful amounts, starches in the form of cereals, potatoes and other tubers, supplemented by calcium salts and vitamins, form the menu of patients with leprosy. Eggs may be eaten in moderation, fats in small amounts, but as a rule butter and lard as well as oils should be used sparingly. Pork, sausages, salted meat, fish, and fried foods are entirely forbidden. Chocolate, cakes, and pastries are allowed on few occasions, and alcoholic beverages are prohibited. Desserts should consist of stewed or preserved fruits, gelatin, hard candies, Junket, and other milk desserts.

There is no specific treatment for leprosy. Two methods of treatment are used at present with fair percentage of success, when treatment is started early in the disease: chaulmoogra oil and certain sulfonated drugs, of which Promin is the best known.

Chaulmoogra oil is obtained by the expression of seeds of several trees of the Hydnocarpus, Teraktogenos, and also in Brazil of the Carpotroche families. The best known species are the *Hydnocarpus wightiana* and the *Teraktogenos kurzii.* The expressed oil must be refined, neutralized, and sterilized before use. The ethylic and benzylic esters of chaulmoogra oil have also been used.

In the experience of the author and his associates, the best preparation is the refined and neutralized chaulmoogra oil in the form of intradermal and intramuscular injections. The ethyl esters are painful and often cause muscular infiltrations and nodular formations. The benzylic esters are less irritating to the muscles, but offer no special advantage over the pure refined oil.

Chaulmoogra oil as received in tin containers from India and Burma is mixed with dead leaves, pieces of bark, and other detritus, and has an acidity of 2 to 3 per cent due to the presence of fatty acids. This oil is mixed with petroleum ether in the proportion of approximately 1 part of oil to 15 parts of petroleum ether. This solution of the oil is treated with an amount of 38 per cent sodium hydroxide equal to the acidity of the oil. The potassium salts of the fatty acids thus formed are separated in the form of soaps. To this turbid solution, anhydrous sodium sulfate is added, the whole filtered and distilled, evaporating the residue in vacuum. The resulting oil, practically neutral in reaction, lighter than the original oil, is distributed in ampules and sterilized. The best chaulmoogra oil deviates polarized light to the right an average of 48°.

This oil is injected intramuscularly in doses varying from 1 to 10 c.c. into the gluteal muscles. These injections are at first given once a week, later 2 or 3 times a week, with a total dosage of 5 to 30 c.c. weekly. As a rule the tolerated dose is about 15 to 20 c.c. weekly, although some exceptional cases may be able to tolerate as much as 30 and 40 c.c. In most cases, 5 c.c. 3 times a week is well tolerated. The dosage must be used according to the weight and the tolerance of the patient. Women as a rule are unable to tolerate as high doses as men, and in children the dose of 3 c.c. twice a week is a fair amount. In the experience of the author, extremely high doses are unnecessary, and the maximum of 20 c.c. weekly for adults is advised. It is wise to start treatment with 1 c.c. twice a week, increasing gradually. Painful reactions, fever, increase in the sedimentation rate, loss of weight, loss of appetite are signs of intolerance, in which case treatment with chaulmoogra oil should be stopped and later begun in smaller and slowly advancing doses. Continuance of treatment in the presence of the symptoms mentioned above exposes the patient to the danger of an acute lepra reaction. After the patient has received 300 c.c. of the oil, it is advisable to allow a rest period of at least 1 month.

In early cases and in the macular and tuberculoid lesions, the intradermal use of chaulmoogra oil is of great benefit. The oil is injected into the dermis of the affected skin, in doses of 0.1 to 0.2 c.c., with a fine needle. A certain amount of the oil always flows back along the path of the needle, but the wheal caused at the site of the injection insures local absorption of the greater part of the oil dermally injected. In this manner the local lesions receive from 1 to 3 c.c. of the oil and the rest of the dose is injected intramuscularly. The advantage of this method of treatment is apparent in the more frequent and quicker resolution of the local lesions, which often disappear in a few months, leaving only areas of anesthesia which are usually permanent. The author strongly recommends the intradermal use of chaulmoogra oil especially in the tuberculoid lesions of leprosy.

The oral administration of chaulmoogra oil has been abandoned because of the gastric and intestinal disturbances which it causes, which prevent the use of therapeutically active doses. Intravenous injection of the oil has also been recommended, but it causes acute discomfort, coughing attacks, dyspnea, cephalic congestion, tachycardia, and other untoward symptoms. It is not advised.

Chaulmoogra oil may be used for long periods of time in the manner described above. The degree of improvement varies with different subjects. It is practically nil in some cases. The steady improvement of others makes this method of treatment an excellent therapeutic procedure which should be tried in every case. In cases of tuberculoid, early simple inflammatory lesions, and early cases of lepromatous types, the success of chaulmoogra oil is at times slightly less than miraculous.

It must be stated here that successful treatment with chaulmoogra oil requires a strong and healthy patient, and that the general hygienic measures already explained, the use of calcium, vitamin B complex, and plenty of fresh air, graduated exercise and rest, proper living habits, and wholesome food are a sine qua non for success. Anemic, undernourished patients and patients with intestinal parasites, improper feeding habits, and low defenses do not tolerate chaulmoogra well and their condition becomes aggravated under this treatment.

Promin (Parke, Davis & Co.), the sodium salt of *p,p′*-diamino-diphenyl-sulfone-N-N′-di(dextrose sodium sulfonate), used originally in the therapeusis of tuberculosis, was used for the first time by Faget and his associates of Carville, La., in the treatment of leprosy in 1943 (1943, 1945) with encouraging results. Promin was later considered by Faget and his associates as the best drug ever used in the treatment of leprosy. The author and his associates (1946), in 1945 and 1946, used Promin in the treatment of over 30 cases of leprosy with promising results and remarkable improvement in some cases.

Promin is furnished in capsules containing 0.20 Gm. and 0.40 Gm. each for oral use, and in ampules containing 1 Gm. of the product in 2 c.c. of water for intravenous use. Promin causes hemolytic anemia and therefore must be used with caution. The dosage by mouth varies from 0.20 to 1.20 Gm. per diem, and intravenously from 1 to 5 Gm. per diem, usually 6 days a week, resting on Sundays. The intravenous injections are much better tolerated than the orally administered capsules, and, therefore, at present only the intravenous route is used. Treatment is continued for several months with an occasional 2 weeks of rest. In the author's experience, one patient was able to tolerate a year of continuous treatment with oral Promin, with steady improvement and without any untoward symptoms. Anemia is treated with iron salts and good food, but occasionally treatment with Promin must be discontinued due to the low hemoglobin and erythrocyte count. Intestinal disturbances, icterus, neuritis, dermatitis exfoliativa, eczematous reactions, and a bluish discoloration of the skin are often observed but seldom require discontinuation of the treatment with Promin. Lowering the dose, or at the most providing a few weeks rest.

allows the resumption of the optimum amount of Promin by the intravenous route. The maximum dose of 5 Gm. is not well tolerated and it is better not to go above 3 Gm. for women and 4 Gm. for men.

Promin is not a specific for leprosy. It does not seem to act bacteriolytically against *Myco. leprae* since, even after prolonged treatment, numerous bacilli are seen in the slowly receding lesions. Its therapeutic action is more marked on the lesions of the mucous membranes, and a rapid improvement in the rhinitis, laryngitis, and mouth lesions are usually among the first favorable results. The cutaneous lesions improve more slowly and gradually, and some are not affected, while in some cases new lesions appear even while the patient is under treatment with Promin. The eye lesions also show remarkable improvement. The thickened nerves do not show any improvement under treatment with Promin.

Promin is a valuable addition to the treatment of leprosy but must be used with caution, and no definite results can be predicted.

Promizole, a later improvement on Promin, has been used recently by physicians of the Carville Leprosarium with favorable results.

Treatment of the acute lepra reaction is one of the most important and difficult problems. Chaulmoogra oil is entirely contraindicated in these cases, and Promin does not seem to have any action on the symptoms of this unpleasant and serious complication. The careful watch on the sedimentation rate, the temperature, and the weight of the patient may warn the attending physician of the impending acute reaction, and by stopping chaulmoogra treatment in time, he may be able to prevent its occurrence.*

Patients with acute lepra reaction must be put to bed, a saline purgative administered, and a light bland diet prescribed. All previous medical treatments must be stopped. Calcium gluconate, hypertonic dextrose solution, and **antimony and potassium tartrate,** 1 per cent solution in 1 to 5 c.c. doses intravenously, are the best therapeutic measures. The intravenous administration of antimonium and potassium tartrate is the treatment of choice, and in some cases it is the only measure that will control the temperature and make the patient comfortable. Treatment may be continued for days and weeks without any apparent disturbance except an occasional backache or arthritic pain. Very often the lesions of leprosy retrogress under the use of this antimonium salt, the patient regains his normal weight, and the sedimentation rate returns to normal. The author has used treatment with this antimonium salt in cases of this sort for months, with very beneficial results for the patient.

Other procedures that may be of benefit in certain cases of leprosy are: large doses of thiamin chloride, 100 to 200 mg. daily, cauterization of ulcerations and lepromas of the mucous membranes with trichloracetic acid, removal of troublesome lepromas, neurotomy, or dissociation of the nerve trunk in cases of chronic painful neuritis, tracheotomy, and amputation of certain fingers and toes when beyond hope of repair.

---

*Editor's note (O. F.): Johansen and Erickson (Proc. 4th Internat. Congr. Trop. Med. and Malaria, 1948) emphasize that correction of deformities and disfigurement, by plastic surgery, are successful in Promin-, Diasone-, and Promizole-treated patients.

Penicillin and other antibiotics have no effect on leprosy, but they are very useful in the treatment of secondary infections, in the clearing up of chronic ulcers and infections of the eye, ear, nose, and throat.

References

Baliña, P. L., and Basombrio, G.: 1938. Classification des formes cliniques de lèpre, Rev. brasil. de leprol. **6**: 225.
Basombrio, G.: 1943. La lepra, Editorial *El Ateneo*, Buenos Aires.
Faget, G. H., et al.: 1943. Promin Treatment of Leprosy, Pub. Health Rep. **58**: 1729.
Faget, G. H., and Pogge: 1945. The Therapeutic Effect of Promin in Leprosy, Pub. Health Rep. **60**: 1165.
Fernández, J. M. M.: 1942. A propósito de una nueva clasificación de las formas de lepra, Rev. méd. de Rosario **32**: 923.
Fernández Vautrai, Raul: 1941. Comentarios sobre a chamada lepra lazarina, Rev. brasil de leprol. **9**: 263.
Jeanselme: Nouvelle pratique dermatologique, **8**: 859, Masson & Cie, Paris.
Mitsuda, Kensuke: 1924. Troisième Conference Internationale de la Lèpre, Paris, J. B. Baillière et fils, p. 219.
Pardo Castelló, V.: 1946. Diseases of the Nails, Springfield, Ill., Charles C Thomas, Publisher, p. 141.
Pardo Castelló, V., et al., 1946. El tratamiento de la lepra por el Promin, Bol. Soc. cubana dermat. y sifil. **3**: 120.
Pardo Castelló, V., and Caballero, G. M.: 1931. Lazarine Leprosy; Peculiar Monosymptomatic Form of Leprosy, Arch. Dermat. & Syph. **23**: 1.
Pardo Castelló, V., and Tiant, F. R.: 1943. Leprosy, J. A. M. A. **121**: 1264.
Rabello, E., Jr.: 1936. Una clasificação clinica epidemilogica das formas da lepra, Rev. brasil. de leprol. **4**: 375.
Rabello, E., Jr.: 1938. Etiologie général et pathogénie de la Lèpre tuberculoide, Rev. brasil. de leprol. **6**: 291.
Schujman, S.: 1940. A proposito da una nueva clasificación de la Lèpra, Rev. brasil. de leprol. **8**: 111.
Sousa Lima, M.: 1938. Clasificação das leprides, Rev. brasil. de leprol. **6**: 63.
Sulzberger, M. B.: 1940. Dermatologic Allergy, Springfield, Ill., Charles C Thomas, Publisher, p. 204.
Zambaco Pashá: 1897. Les lepreux ambulantes de Constantinople, Paris, Masson & Cie, p. 261.

CHAPTER 32

HUMAN BARTONELLOSIS OR CARRIÓN'S DISEASE

Hernando Groot

DEFINITION

Human bartonellosis or Carrión's disease is a pathologic condition produced by *Bartonella bacilliformis.* It is characterized by a first period in which the pathogenic microorganism may be found in large numbers in the peripheral blood, accompanied by a variable degree of anemia and usually pains and fever. The symptoms may be very severe or, on the contrary, absent, and between these extremes cases showing intermediate phases of symptomatology may be found. After this period, in most cases, a second stage follows in which appears an eruption of small hemangioma-like tumors with or without deep nodular elements. The eruptive element has been designated with the name "verruga," and is known in the medical literature as "verruga peruana." The names "Oroya fever" and less frequently "Carrión's fever" have been given to the severe forms of the first period, in which the final outcome is frequently death. For a better understanding, in the present discussion, the two periods of the disease will be designated as the "noneruptive stage" and the "eruptive stage," respectively.

HISTORICAL REVIEW

It is quite probable that bartonellosis existed in Peru before the discovery of America. Reproduction of the verrugas have been found in statuettes and pottery made by the pre-Colombian Indians in Peru, who, as it is well known, possessed a high degree of culture and medical knowledge (d'Harcourt, 1939). During the Spanish Conquest, in 1531, Pizarro's soldiers were attacked in Coaque, Ecuador, by a severe, unfamiliar disease (Pizarro, 1571), which has been considered as bartonellosis. The chronicles of that time designated the disease as "Verrugas." Although Maldonado (1931), who has carefully studied historical data, thinks that this epidemic was a combination of yaws and malaria, it is generally believed that the disease observed in Coaque was bartonellosis. It must be mentioned, however, that verrugas has not been reported from this region in recent times. The first medical document on the subject, by the Peruvian physician Gago de Vadillo, was not written until 1630. In the subsequent years there appeared several references to the eruptive stage of the disease; among them, one of Bueno and later those of Unanue (in Rebagliati, 1940) are remarkable. But it was not until the nineteenth and twentieth centuries that really significant knowledge of the malady was gained.

In 1870 a severe disease of obscure origin, characterized by fever and anemia, attacked the workmen of the Central Railway in the region between Lima and Oroya, particularly in the zone between the towns of Chosica and Matucana. It appeared in epidemic form, and caused a large number of deaths (approximately 7,000). The Peruvian physicians became greatly interested in the epidemic, and the name "Oroya fever" was given to the disease. Different opinions were held in regard to the origin of such an epidemic. Among them, it is important to note, was that of Espinal, who thought verruga peruana and Oroya fever were manifestations of the same disease (in Odriozola, 1898). Among other cases, Espinal refers to that of an American engineer who suffered from Oroya fever in Peru, and later, after his return to the United States, had an eruption of verrugas.

In 1885, Daniel A. Carrión, a medical student, inoculated himself with verruga material. After 21 days of incubation, he developed a disease with the typical symptoms of a clinical attack of Oroya fever. Carrión himself diagnosed it as such. The disease progressed to a fatal end after 18 days of illness. According to La Puente, Loli, and Vega, pallor of the skin was noted at autopsy, the liver was enlarged, the mesenteric lymph nodes were hypertrophied, almost doubled in size, while the spleen was not as heavy as usual (in Weinman, 1944). It is clear that after an inoculation of verruga material, Carrión developed a typical clinical attack of Oroya fever. Hence the conclusion followed that Carrión had demonstrated the etiologic identity of the epidemic disease, Oroya fever, with the old known verruga. In his memory, the name of ''Carrión's disease'' was given to the malady.

In 1898, Odriozola's monograph ''La maladie de Carrión ou la verruga peruvienne'' appeared. It is an excellent work in which all the data known up to that time were carefully summarized. In 1905 Barton discovered the etiologic agent of the disease, *Bartonella bacilliformis* (Strong et al., 1915), in the red blood cells of patients with Oroya fever. In 1913, the Harvard Commission, Strong, Tyzzer, Brues, Sellards, and Gastiaburú, made original and valuable investigations on certain aspects of the disease. This commission reached the conclusion that Oroya fever and verruga peruana were two different diseases. Although the common opinion of Peruvian scientists was that the two syndromes were of the same origin (based on clinical, epidemiologic, and experimental findings), at that time absolute and complete proof of the etiologic unity was still lacking. It was not until 1926 when Noguchi and Battistini published their methods for the cultivation of *B. bacilliformis* that it was shown that cultures from verruga and Oroya fever patients contained the same microorganism. These microorganisms behaved consistently in the same manner in cultures as when injected into monkeys. The identity of the two diseases was proved, beyond any doubt, by these studies. The Harvard expedition to Peru in 1937 fully confirmed this theory.

Space prevents review in detail of all works performed by Peruvian investigators. The contribution of Peruvian medicine to the knowledge of Carrión's disease is really outstanding.

Our knowledge of human bartonellosis has increased substantially in recent years, but there are still many important questions unsolved. In 1944, Weinman published his excellent monograph *Infectious Anemias Due to Bartonella and Related Red Cell Parasites*, in which not only the actual data on bartonellosis are fully presented and discussed, but the unsolved problems in this field are carefully defined. The reader is referred to this monograph for further information.

ETIOLOGY

Morphology

The etiologic agent of Carrión's disease, *Bartonella bacilliformis*, presents an extreme degree of pleomorphism. Coccus-like, ring, oval, rod-shaped (straight, or more or less curved), and granular forms are found. The arrangement of the microorganisms in the red blood cells is also variable. Sometimes they form a short chain of cocci or a chain of rods, or they may resemble Chinese letters or a circumflex accent. The size of the coccus-like forms is 0.3 to 1 micron, and that of the rods 0.5 to 3 microns. Curved rods of 7 microns have been seen, but not frequently. *B. bacilliformis* is gram-negative and is stained reddish-violet with Romanowsky stains, such as Giemsa. Frequently bipolar staining is observed.

In the endothelial cells lining blood and lymph channels of viscera from fatal cases of Oroya fever, the organisms are sometimes discrete and rod-shaped, but most commonly they appear as granular or amorphous round masses, which distend the cells. Sometimes in the edges of these clusters, organisms with more or less typical morphology are seen.

In the cutaneous nodules, *B. bacilliformis* appears within the endothelial cells as rod-shaped organisms or as clusters of microorganisms. However, the size of such clusters is not as large as that usually observed in the visceral cells from cases of Oroya fever.

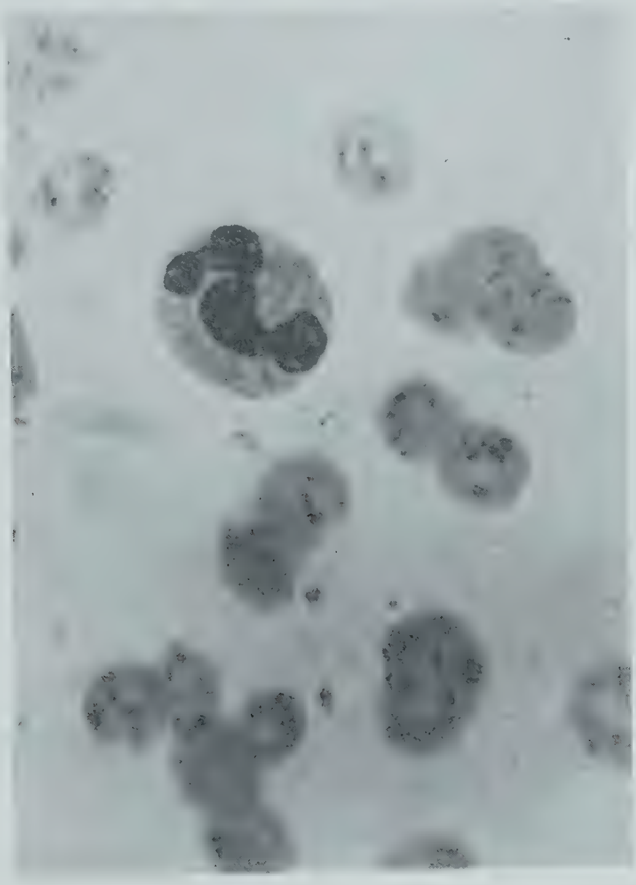


Fig. 176.—*Bartonella bacilliformis* in the peripheral blood from a case of Oroya fever. Giemsa stain (×1480). (Photograph by C. Sanmartin.)

Pinkerton and Weinman (1937) have shown that *B. bacilliformis*, grown in tissue cultures, appears early as small spherical clusters, 3 to 10 microns in diameter, of sharply stained diplobacillary rods in the cells. Later, usually by the sixth day, the cells are packed with clusters of less discrete organisms, often coccoid, granular, or amorphous in such a way that they give a picture quite similar to that observed in infected endothelial cells from cases of Oroya fever.

In other media;* such as Noguchi's leptospira medium or Geiman semisolid or solid medium, the different forms of the Bartonellae are seen, but commonly they appear as clusters of organisms in which it is not easy to recognize the individuality of the parasites, except in the periphery. Sometimes, in these clusters, when Giemsa stain is used, it appears as if the organisms were embedded in an amorphous substance stained a lighter blue. The author has observed that, in order to study the morphology of the Bartonellae in such cultures, it is sometimes advantageous to stain with diluted fuchsin.

---

*See Chapters 71 and 73.

Motility

In fresh preparations of blood from Oroya fever cases, it is possible to recognize a very slow movement of the Bartonellae within the infected red cells. In young cultures, *B. bacilliformis* is motile. Special flagellar stains such as Zettnow reveal three to five unipolar flagella (Geiman, 1944). Using dark-field illumination, nonmotile spirals are frequently seen in cultures. These spirals are sometimes quite long, up to 50 microns. They have been considered as abnormal cast-off flagella. Such spirals have not been seen in dark-field preparations of fresh blood from Oroya fever patients.

Cultivation*

B. bacilliformis does not grow in ordinary media. Blood agar and Noguchi semisolid medium for leptospira have been commonly employed. In Noguchi's medium, growth becomes grossly visible near the surface of the medium in about 5 to 15 days. This growth appears often as a nebulous zone 5 to 10 mm. below the surface of the medium. Sometimes, especially in cultures from blood, more or less isolated, granular colonies are observed. It is not rare that in this medium the growth is poor or, if obtained, is realized with considerable difficulty.

More recently several media have been developed. Pinkerton and Weinman (1937*a*) have shown that in tissue cultures *B. bacilliformis* develops within the cytoplasm of cells as well as in the surrounding medium. Jimenez (1940) has used successfully beef infusion agar to which cystine, glucose, and rabbit blood were added. He has also shown that the *x* factor is necessary, but not the *v*, for the growth of Bartonella. Jimenez and Buddingh (1940) have cultivated the organism in the chorioallantoic fluid of the developing chick embryo; 8- and 12-day-old embryos were used, and the incubation was performed at 25° to 28° C. Chorioallantoic fluid, aspirated by a pipette and transferred to test tubes, also proved to be successful.

The best results are obtained by using the media devised by Geiman (1941).*

Classification

The general consensus is to classify *Bartonella bacilliformis* as a bacterium. Topley and Wilson (1945) place this microorganism among ''miscellaneous bacteria.'' We do not know yet, with certainty, where among the bacteria it should be placed. The genus Bartonella was created in 1913 by Strong et al.

Repeatedly marked resemblances of human Bartonellae to Rickettsiae have been pointed out, and Strong (1942) believes it is wise to separate both from the true bacteria and from the filtrable viruses. Alzamora (1945) believes Bartonella should be placed in an intermediate position between true bacteria and Rickettsiae.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Geographic Distribution

The disease is known to occur only in certain regions in western South America. The zone extends from approximately 2 degrees north to 13 degrees south latitude. In Peru, the disease is observed in two regions: one, the Pacific watershed, which includes 21 zones and corresponds to equal numbers of hydrographic formations that extend from the western slopes of the Andes to the Pacific; the other, the Marañon watershed formed by the regions around eighteen rivers in the Amazon basin (Rebagliati, 1940). In Ecuador the disease has been found in the provinces of El Oro (Hertig, 1940), and Loja (Montalvan, 1940), near the Peruvian border. In Colombia, bartonellosis occurs in the southwest of the country, in a large area around the city of Pasto (Patiño-Camargo, 1939).

---

*See Chapters 71 and 73.

In these three countries the disease is observed in the same system of mountains, the Andes; in regions with similar definite conditions of topography, hydrology, climate, fauna, and flora. These zones are found in the narrow valleys formed by rivers and streams between mountains, and in the highly inclined slopes of these, near the water courses. The climate is relatively hot in the day and cool during the night. In Peru the vegetation is rather luxuriant down in the valleys, but scanty in the surrounding mountains. The zone is sparsely inhabited. In that country the disease is endemic at altitudes between 500 and 3,000 meters (1,640 and 9,840 feet) above sea level. The lowest verruga zone recorded by Rebagliati (1940) is Esquina de Asia, at 200 meters (656 feet), but it is not stated that these cases were not imported (Weinman, 1944). The highest zone, according to the same author, is Huasta, at 3,375 meters (11,700 feet). In Colombia, according to the present available information, bartonellosis exists only at places with altitudes between 1,300 and 1,850 meters (4,260 and 6,000 feet), with daily temperatures of 18° to 25° C. (64° to 77° F.), somewhat lower during the night, and with the same conditions as previously stated, except that these regions are densely populated and that the soil is very fertile and the vegetation abundant in the slopes of the mountains as well as in the valley bottoms. In Colombia the upper and lower limits of the zone are sharply defined. In many places in which the density of houses and population is the same above and below 1,850 meters (6,000 feet), all persons who live above such altitude have nevertheless remained free from the disease.

Transmission

In 1913 Townsend reached the conclusion, a priori, that the insect vector was a sand-fly, a Phlebotomus. So certain did he feel of his inference, that he called the sand-fly *Phlebotomus verrucarum* (Noguchi, Shannon, Tilden, and Tyler, 1928). Subsequent studies have confirmed his point of view. Noguchi et al. (1929) injected saline suspensions of crushed wild Phlebotomi, captured in the verruga zone, intradermally into rhesus monkeys, and in this way obtained an infection in these animals. The infection was detectable only by blood cultures, which yielded positive cultures for *B. bacilliformis.* Similar results were obtained by Battistini (1929, 1931). Wild Phlebotomi collected in the endemic area have given pure cultures of *B. bacilliformis,* and, when fed on rhesus monkeys, produced infections detectable by blood culture (Battistini, 1931, Hertig, 1942). The sand-flies selected for Hertig's experiments were *P. verrucarum.*

From the Peruvian verruga zone three species of Phlebotomi have been described: *P. verrucarum* (Townsend, 1913), *P. peruensis* (Shannon, 1929), and *P. noguchii* (Shannon, 1929). Noguchi, Shannon, and associates thought that the role as vector of *P. noguchii* was certain, that *P. verrucarum* was a probable transmitting agent, and that the role of *P. peruensis* was doubtful (1929). Hertig (1942), however, believes that the females of Shannon's sand-fly material were predominantly *P. verrucarum.* Hertig, with his experiments and observations, has demonstrated, at least in the regions studied by him, that the most important vector is *P. verrucarum.*

The degree of infection in Phlebotomi in natural conditions is a question not yet answered. It may probably vary from one place to another.

The mechanism of transmission is through feeding. In regard to the position of Bartonella in Phlebotomus, Hertig has been able to recover pure cultures of *B. bacilliformis* from the intestines of females of *P. verrucarum,* which had fed about 60 hours previously (1942). The same author obtained pure cultures of *B. bacilliformis* from wild sand-flies. He has found also that frequently the three species of Peruvian Phlebotomi in the endemic area may present massive infections of the tip of the proboscis with an unnamed organism in certain aspects similar to *B. bacilliformis.* Such infections have been found in males and in females, and in females which have never had a blood meal.

Phlebotomus belongs to the family Psychodidae of the order Diptera Phlebotomi are small, moth-like flies, rarely exceeding 5 mm. in length. Their bodies and wings are densely covered by hairs. They may be distinguished easily from other Diptera by the position of the wings, which are held upward so that the costal margins form angles of about 60 degrees with each other and with the body (Hertig, 1942). Only the females are hematophagous. Their flight is noiseless, and oscillating when disturbed. During the day they hide on walls in dark corners, in dark rooms, caves, crevices, etc. The breeding places are difficult to find. These are moist, dark places, with organic matter, under stone, in rock interstices, in cracks of old walls, in chicken houses. In the endemic areas in Colombia, Phlebotomi are found in enormous numbers in the humid and dark caves where Panama hat weavers work.

Hertig states that *P. verrucarum* readily bites man, enters houses freely, and is found associated with man and domestic animals, both in buildings and in outdoor places, far from human dwellings. *P. peruensis,* similar in habits, is scarce when compared with *P. verrucarum. P. peruensis* is usually found in the upper limit of the verruga zone. *P. noguchii* appears to have an entirely outdoor existence, and does not bite man. This sand-fly commonly feeds on field mice.

Probably in Colombia, as in Peru, the insect vector is a Phlebotomus. Several species of Phlebotomi have been found in the Colombian endemic areas, but not those usually found in Peru. The recorded Colombian species are *P. longipalpis; P. evansi; P. osornoi, P. colombianus,* and *P. monticolus* var. *incarum* (Ristorcelli and Dao, 1941).

Sources of Infection

The only known reservoir of virus in human bartonellosis is man. Man and the insect vector are the only living beings known to be naturally infected with *B. bacilliformis.* Man may have the microorganism in the peripheral blood long before the appearance of symptoms, during the different manifestations of the disease, and for a long time after the clinical attack. The existence of asymptomatic human infections, in people living in endemic zones, either with or without previous history of the disease, has been demonstrated several times (Battistini, 1927; Mackehenie, 1934; Weinman and Pinkerton, 1937; Howe, 1943a; Groot, 1946). The incidence of such carriers in the infected areas is significantly high—10 per cent—perhaps higher. Thus, from the present data, the importance of man as a source of infection appears to be clear.

Epidemics and Endemicity

In infected areas, Carrión's disease remains endemic most of the time. However, under certain circumstances, the disease extends to neighboring zones, especially after the rainy seasons. It seems that most of the cases among natives, in endemic areas, occur early in childhood, and the incidence in adults is low. However, a large number of asymptomatic infections is observed. It is significant to record that when people from a disease-free region move to an endemic area—at least in Peru—they become infected sooner or later, provided they remain unprotected from the bites of Phlebotomi. Carrión's disease usually evolves, in its most severe forms, in these previously unexposed persons.

Epidemics may occur when large numbers of previously unexposed people move into the endemic areas, or when the disease extends to or appears in new territories. Example of the former is the well-known epidemic of 1870 in the Central Railway workers (see above). Recently, in Colombia, a very serious epidemic of Carrión's disease developed in zones where the disease had not been reported before (Patiño-Camargo, 1939). The epidemic began in 1936, reached its peak during 1938, 1939, and 1940, and from 1941 began to subside slowly. Up to September, 1941, the infected area included the valleys and neighboring zones of the rivers Guáitara, Juanambu, Pacual, and Mayo. By the end of 1941, cases began to appear in Bolivar, a somewhat isolated village about thirty miles north of the endemic zone and separated from this by a high (2,200 meters—7,200 feet—of altitude) chain of mountains. This village, because of such proximity, had been permanently and carefully watched, from the epidemiologic standpoint, during the previous years. No cases had been reported, but the presence of large numbers of Phlebotomi (species not identified) had been fully established. The appearance of the disease in Bolivar apparently occurred after patients in the eruptive stage went to reside there.

Under epidemic conditions, there is no difference either in sex or age incidence. The case fatality rate seems to be somewhat higher during epidemics than in endemic conditions.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

Incubation Period

The incubation period varies considerably. In experimental human cases, it has been from 16 to 21 days. In the present discussion, the end of the period of incubation is considered as the moment when the first clinical manifestations are observed, and not from the presence of Bartonellae in the blood. The author (1946) reported the case of a patient who developed Oroya fever 4 months after she had positive blood cultures for *B. bacilliformis*. The patient had been living in the endemic area for the last 3 years.

Ricketts (1947) found, in 7 cases which remained in endemic zones from only a few hours to 3 days, the following incubation periods: from 20 to 23 days in 4 cases; 40 days in 1 case; from 88 to 90 days in 1 case; and 100 days in 1 case. The same author states that in five patients who had not previously lived in "verruga" zones, the disease appeared after 19 to 30 days of residence in the infected area.

For a better understanding, it is desirable to describe separately the two periods of the disease: the noneruptive stage and the eruptive stage. Within the first, the syndrome usually known as Oroya fever will be discussed.

Noneruptive Stage

The clinical manifestations in the noneruptive stage vary from very severe cases in which high mortality is observed to cases in which symptoms are either absent or are very slight and can easily pass unrecognized. In the latter, the so-called noneruptive stage really does not exist (from the clinical standpoint), and thus the appearance of verrugas is the first observed symptom. All intermediate cases may be found. The severe case will be described first.

OROYA FEVER

The onset may be acute with high fever reaching 40° C. (104° F.), chills, and sweating, but more commonly, it is insidious, marked by malaise, headache, pains in the joints and long bones, and fever. A rapid, progressive anemia develops from the beginning.

As the disease progresses, the fever continues, and the anemia is more and more marked. The skin and mucous membranes become pale. The number of red blood cells diminishes to less than two million per cubic millimeter, sometimes to less than one million, and large numbers of Bartonellae are found in the erythrocytes. The pains are severe. The general state of the patient is poor. The tongue is coated at the center, red at the point and edges. There is anorexia, sometimes polydipsia, nausea, vomiting, and frequently diarrhea. Epistaxis and presence of petechiae in the skin are also frequent. The arterial tension is low and the pulse is always accelerated, both in febrile and in apyretic periods. Cardiac murmurs are often heard. There is intense polypnea. Commonly prostration is observed and the patient, indifferent to his surroundings, may present delirium. On the contrary, insomnia may occur. The lymph nodes are enlarged. The liver is commonly, but not always, moderately hypertrophied. In most cases the spleen is normal in size. Complications such as paratyphoid infections have been reported.

In fatal cases all symptoms are aggravated, the prostration increases, insomnia is frequent, sometimes delirium occurs, the number of Bartonellae in the red cells is greater, anemia becomes more and more severe, diarrhea is always observed, complications may appear—frequently pericarditis or a secondary infection—and the patient dies.

The duration of these fatal cases is variable. There are extremely acute cases in which death comes as early as the tenth day, but usually the fatal outcome is not observed until the third to the sixth week.

In Jaramillo's series, death took place from the twenty-first to the twenty-sixth day in 4 cases, and at the fortieth day in 1 case (1939). In Groot's observations, death came from the fifteenth to the eighteenth day in 4 cases, from the nineteenth day to the twenty-second day in 4 cases, from the twenty-seventh day to the thirtieth day in 2 cases, and from the thirty-eighth day to the forty-sixth day in 4 cases.

In cases which recover, after a variable period of 2 to 6 weeks, the fever decreases slowly, the Bartonellae disappear from the blood stream (as detected by films), sometimes quite suddenly There is an amelioration of all symptoms, pains decrease, the anemia ceases, and the number of erythrocytes begin to increase slowly. The patient enters convalescence. In certain cases the disappearance of the Bartonellae from the blood stream does not coincide with the cessation of the anemia (Hurtado et al., 1938), but it usually does.

The rate of decrease in the percentage of infected red cells in most cases follows a similar trend.

In favorable cases, infected erythrocytes are detectable by films for a period of time. This finding varies in different patients: in 3 cases reported by Jaramillo, Bartonellae disappeared at the twenty-seventh, twenty-eighth, and thirty-eighth day, respectively, after the beginning of the disease, and in 5 cases studied by the author, the disappearance occurred at the thirteenth, twenty-third, twenty-fourth, twenty-eighth, and forty-eighth day, respectively.

The end of Oroya fever is considered when the Bartonellae are no longer seen in the films, fever has disappeared, anemia is no longer being produced, and the number of erythrocytes has begun to increase.

In most cases, and very often, when the patient has not recovered completely—1 to 2 months after the termination of the Oroya fever—the eruption of "verrugas" appears. Apparently only in few cases does eruption not occur.

Some Symptoms in Detail.—

Fever.—The fever follows no definite pattern, and extreme variations are observed. Generally it is of the intermittent or remittent type or a combination of both. There is almost always a slight or marked evening exacerbation. The difference between the morning and evening temperatures is usually not more than 1.5° C. (2.7° F.), but this may at times be 2° C. (3.6° F.). The remittent type seems to be more common. In favorable cases, fever decreases slowly (in lysis). In fatal cases, death may come with high, normal, or subnormal temperature. The temperature rarely exceeds 40° C. (104° F.). Of 21 cases studied by the author, in only 3 were there exacerbations above 40° C. In Jaramillo's series, out of 10 cases, only 1 showed more than 40° C. The highest temperature is commonly between 38° an 39.5° C. (100.4° and 103.1° F.). The morning temperature may be normal, and usually is not above 38° C. (100.4° F.).

The Blood.—From the beginning of the disease, a rapid, progressive anemia develops. Figures of about 1,000,000 red cells per cubic millimeter

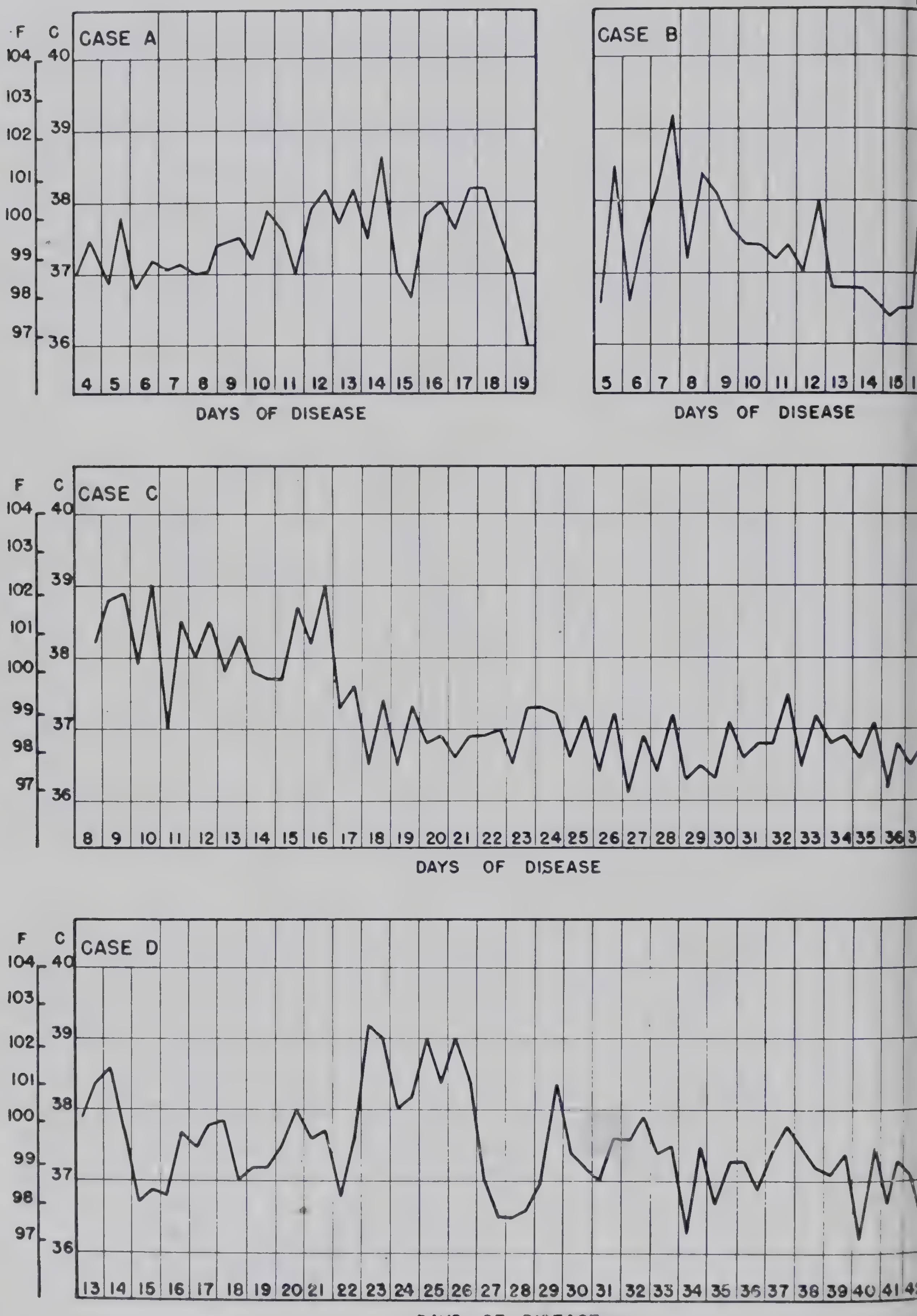


Fig. 177.—Temperature charts of 4 patients with Oroya-fever. Patients *A* and *B* died. Patients *C* and *D* recovered.

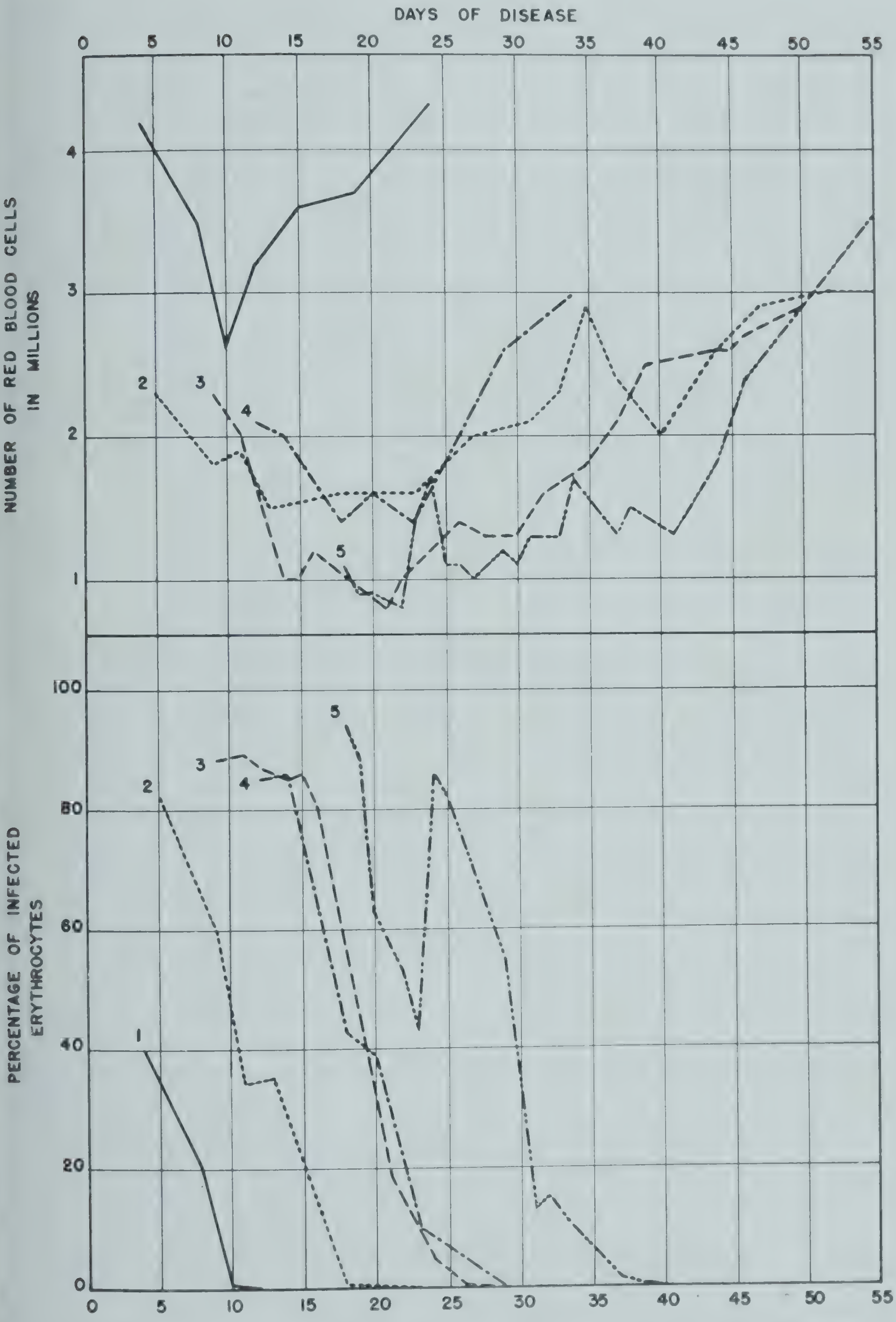


Fig. 178.—Red blood cell counts made at frequent intervals, with associated percentages of infected cells in 5 untreated recovered cases of Oroya fever.

are common. The rate of decrease in the number of erythrocytes is quite rapid. Sometimes as many as 300,000 red cells per cubic millimeter of blood are lost in twenty-four hours. The volume, diameter, and thickness of the red cells are greater than normal. The mean hemoglobin concentration is usually low (Hurtado, Pons, and Merino, 1938), but it may be normal (Groot, 1941). The blood volume is decreased, especially when the anemia is very pronounced. Hyperbilirubinemia is often observed, but by no means is it constant. The regenerative activity of the bone marrow is well marked and large numbers of reticulocytes and normoblasts are found in the peripheral blood. The number of these cells usually is proportional to the seriousness of the anemia. Quite often megaloblasts are found.

The number of Bartonellae in the red cells varies. Sometimes 99 per cent of the erythrocytes are infected, and it is possible to find ten to fifteen organisms in a single cell, but these are extreme cases. Basophilic red cells and macrocytes are usually less infected. Reticulocytes uncommonly present Bartonellae unless the number of microorganisms in the peripheral blood is very high. Only in exceptional cases, with a very high degree of parasitism, are the microorganisms found in the normoblasts. Bartonellae are seen sometimes in the cytoplasm of monocytes.

Apparently destruction of the red cells is the fundamental cause of the anemia. The mechanism of such destruction, however, remains completely obscure. Production of hemolysins by the Bartonellae has never been demonstrated in vitro or in vivo. Direct action of the Bartonellae on the red cell, and exaggerated erythrophagocytosis have been considered as possible, but definite proof is lacking.

Leucopenia may be observed at the beginning of the disease. It is generally accepted that, in uncomplicated cases, the number of leucocytes is customarily normal (Hurtado, 1938). In 19 cases in which blood counts were performed almost daily during the course of the disease, the author has observed: in 13 cases, normal counts throughout the entire course of the disease; in 3 cases, normal values throughout the course of the disease with slight leucocytosis during convalescence; and in 3 cases, occasional slight leucocytosis, with normal values most of the time.

The differential count is not typical. It is possible to find either a very slight lymphocytosis or, more commonly, polymorphonucleosis.

During the period of severe anemia, there is always an increase in young polymorphonuclears and younger cells of the myeloid series.

The sedimentation rate is markedly increased, giving values between 100 and 172 mm. in 1 hour with the Westergren method. Making the correction for the degree of anemia, values from 85 to 120 mm. in 1 hour are usually found. The Gaté-Papacostas formol-gel test is sometimes positive, as well as the flocculation of serum globulin with distilled water (Groot, Mayoral, and Martinez, 1941).

The occurrence of autoagglutinins seems to be rare. Monge described some cases and the author had the opportunity of finding 1 case in a series of 26 patients.

Pain.—Pain is always present, and may be the first observed symptom. Often it persists during the convalescence. The pains are located most commonly in the joints—hands, feet, knees, ankles—and in the epiphyses of the long bones. Pressure on the bones may be painful or may exaggerate an already existing pain. These pains may be intermittent. Rachialgia is frequently observed. Headache is quite common and is almost always constant.

Nervous Symptoms.—Among the most common symptoms usually reported are dizziness and vertigo. Insomnia is frequent. Delirium often occurs, especially just before death, and in such cases carphologic movements may be observed. Convulsions have been reported, but it seems that they are not usual.

Urine.—The urine is usually concentrated and dark amber in color. It may contain small amounts of albumin, usually not more than 0.20 Gm. per liter, and some hyaline and granular casts. Urobilinogen is commonly increased.

MILD CASES

Numerous cases show only a mild symptomatology, for a few days to weeks or even a month or more of duration, characterized principally by slight and occasional fever, malaise, arthralgias, often moderate anemia. In these cases, small numbers of Bartonellae may be seen in blood films, or the microorganism may be demonstrated only by blood cultures. Ordinarily these patients do not need to interrupt their usual occupations or remain in bed. The eruption of verrugas may take place when such constitutional symptoms are still present. When this is the case, the fever usually mounts and the joint and bone pains are markedly increased. In other cases this vague symptomatology subsides, and after a variable period of time the eruption appears.

On the other hand, the clinical manifestations may be absent or so mild that they pass unrecognized.

Eruptive Stage

The eruptive stage is characterized clinically by the appearance of small hemangioma-like tumors in the skin and subcutaneous nodules. In most cases, constitutional symptoms of variable intensity, such as fever and arthralgias, are present at the beginning of the eruption.

Verrugas may appear: (1) after a previous attack of Oroya fever; (2) when the patient has presented some time before mild symptoms of the noneruptive stage of the disease; (3) when the patient has been presenting mild constitutional symptoms in the days or weeks immediately prior, and still presents them; and (4) when the patient gives no history of previous disease, is apparently in good health, and cannot recall any particular symptom in the preceding days or months. In (1) verrugas usually appear from 2 to 8 weeks after the remission of the anemia, when the patient is still convalescing from the previous attack of Oroya fever and the number of red blood cells is not yet normal. Weiss (1932) has described cases in which the appearance of verrugas took place 18 months later, and frequently periods of 6 to 10 months have been recorded. In (2), conditions similar to those of (1) occur. In (3) the constitutional symptoms may precede the eruption for only a few days, and these symptoms may be exacerbated at the beginning of the eruption to recede completely shortly thereafter. The incidence of (4) seems to be not rare. Such an occurrence was observed by the author in 9 out of 42 verruga cases in epidemic conditions.

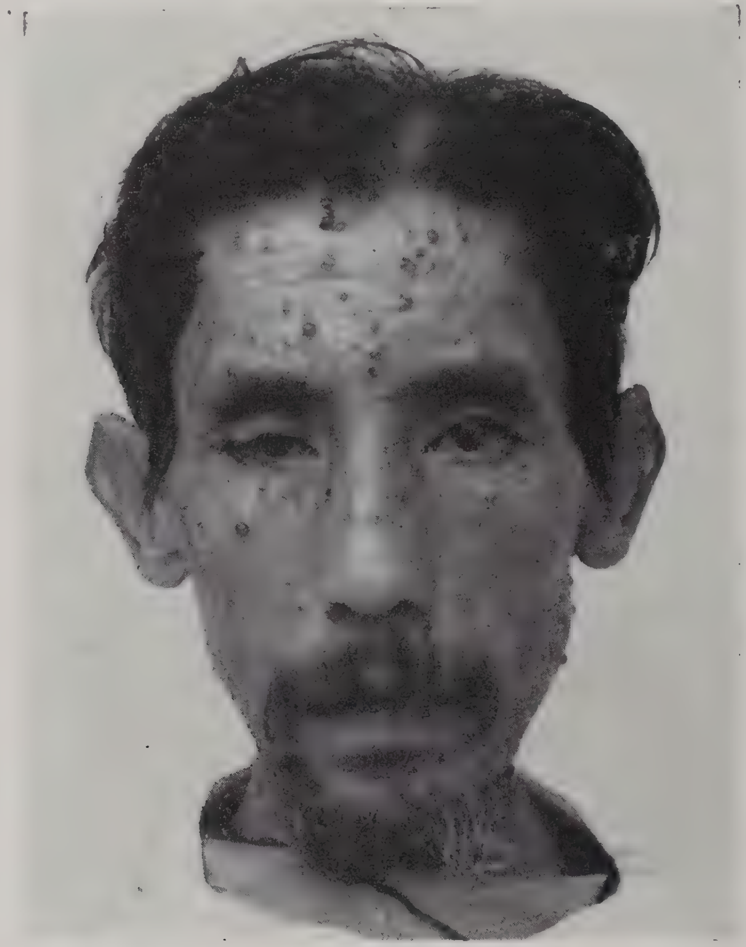


Fig. 179.—Human bartonellosis, eruptive stage. Disseminated miliary and nodular lesions of the face. Palpebral conjunctiva of the right eye with verrugas. Most of the lesions were pink or bright red. The patient still shows emaciation due to the preceding attack of Oroya fever.

In the eruptive stage, the lesions may develop from (1) the superficial layers of the skin and certain mucosae; (2) the deep layers of the skin; and (3) the subcutaneous tissue. Verrugas in (1), usually small, are designated as "miliary"; verrugas in (2) and (3), as "nodular." Miliary lesions are small, 1 to 3 mm. in diameter, or somewhat larger, 7 to 8 mm. They are round, raised, hemispheric, red or cherry colored, covered with a thin layer of shiny skin, sharply circumscribed from the surrounding tissue, which presents no sign of inflammation. Early in their evolution, verrugas which grow in the deeper layers of the skin give, upon palpation, the sensation of a hard nodule; later they appear at the surface of the skin. The lesions which develop in the subcutaneous tissue at first appear as hard nodules which may reach a size of several

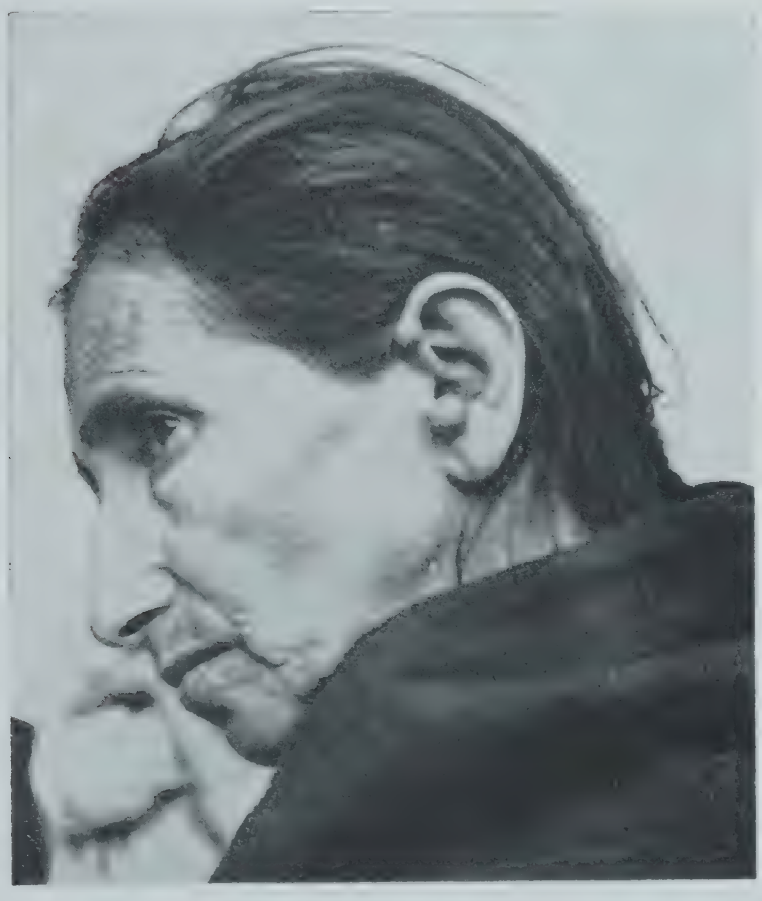


Fig. 180.—Human bartonellosis, eruptive stage. Two verrugas of the ear.

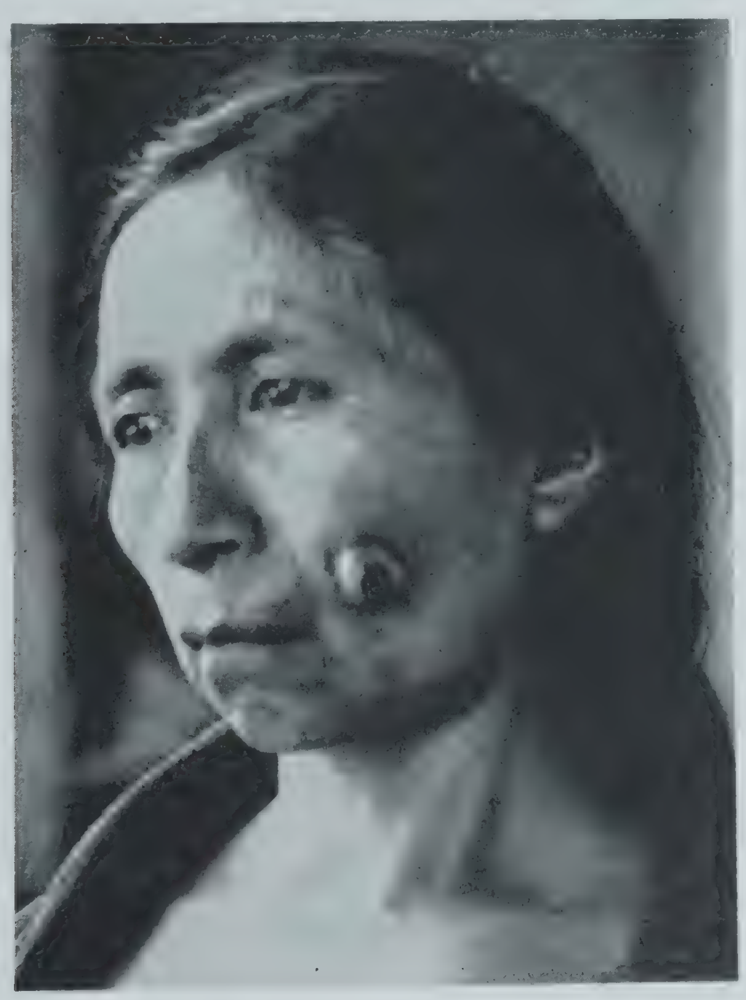


Fig. 181.—Human bartonellosis, eruptive stage. Large verruga of the left cheek.

centimeters. The nodule adheres to and raises the covering integument and at this point may regress without causing further pathologic changes, except sometimes the reddening of the skin; or, on the other hand, they may erode the skin, reach the surface, and appear then as red tumors with irregular contours, frequently pediculated. Such tumors are usually designated as verruga of the "mulaire" type.

Miliary lesions may appear anywhere in the skin or in the mucous membranes of the mouth, nose, and eye, although they are more frequent in the face and limbs. They may be few in number, or, on the other hand, extremely numerous, disseminated throughout the surface of the body. Benavides (1942) reported a case with 1,272 eruptive elements.

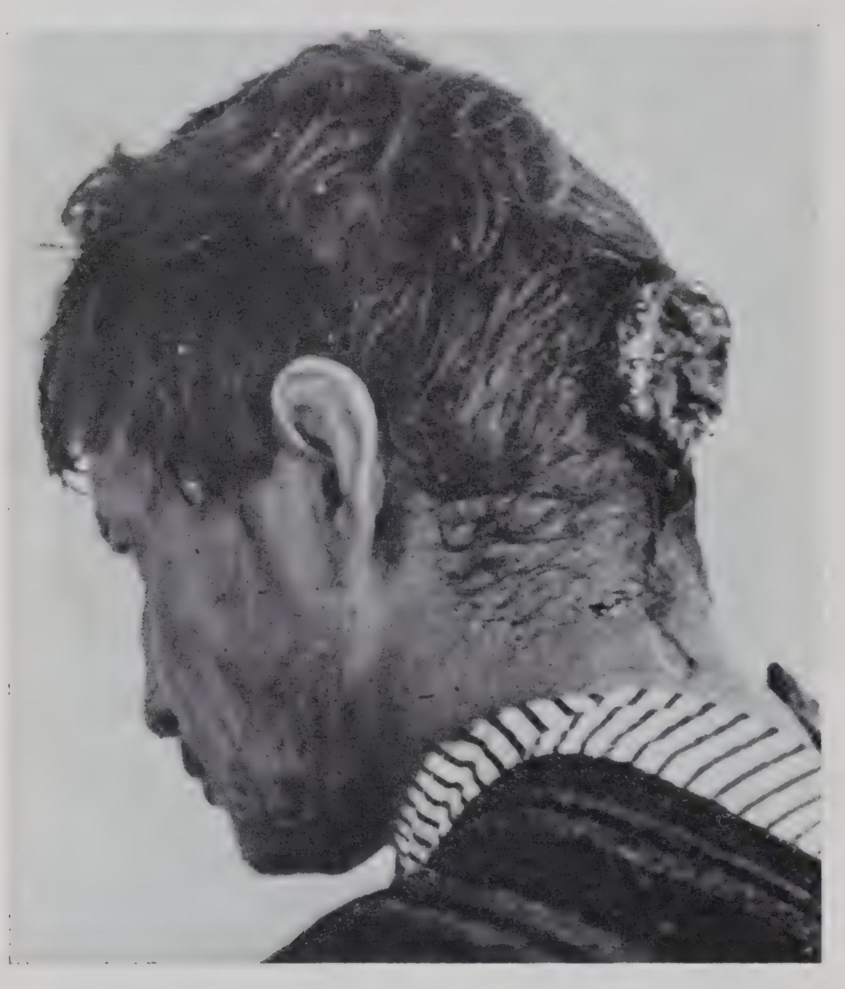


Fig. 182.—Human bartonellosis, eruptive stage. Large verruga of the "mulaire" type.

Nodular and tumor lesions ("mulaire") are far less numerous than miliary verrugas. Subcutaneous nodules often appear near the elbows and the knees, where they are usually painful and may cause functional disturbance of the limbs.

Verrugas bleed easily, and some of them may appear to be covered by a blood crust. "Mulaire" lesions are especially prone to bleed and are almost always secondarily infected.

The duration of the eruption varies. It may persist from 1 month to 2 years (Odriozola, 1898), but usually it lasts 1 to 6 months. In Jaramillo's series the duration of the eruptive stage was 7 weeks in 2 cases, 8 weeks in 1 case, 9 weeks in 1 case, 12 weeks in 2 cases, and 20 weeks in 1 case (1939).

Frequently the eruptive elements appear in successive outbreaks, so that it is possible to find in the patient verrugas in different phases of evolution. The lesions heal without leaving a scar unless they have been secondarily infected.

The preceding description does not cover all the observable clinical cases, but it certainly applies to the large majority. Odriozola described some cases in which Oroya fever followed the eruptive stage. Likewise, forms with mild symptomatology and marked rheumatoid pains, which persist for months or years and which cease with the eruption of verrugas, have been reported, as well as cases of long duration in which the principal symptom was the repeated appearance of discrete eruptive lesions.

IMMUNITY

People who have had the disease and continue to live in endemic areas in most cases do not present second attacks of Carrión's disease. Certainly some cases of repeated attacks of verruga have been reported, but they are far from common. This leads us to think that in most cases a lasting immunity develops after the disease. From experimental data we know also that monkeys show resistance to reinoculations.

The numerous cases in which Bartonellae are found in the blood long after recovery from the disease indicate that the immunity which usually follows the clinical attack coexists, at least in some cases, with latent infection; and the presence of Bartonellae in healthy people without previous history of the disease shows that in these cases there is a balance between the infected man who cannot eradicate his infection and the infective agent which does not cause apparent disturbances in its host. This balance may be disturbed with the consequent development of Carrión's disease in the carrier; or, possibly, it may not be disturbed but the infection may remain completely asymptomatic throughout its course. This condition is similar to the state of premunition which exists in animal bartonellosis. In rats infected with *Haemobartonella muris*, the infection usually remains asymptomatic; but when such rats are splenectomized, the latent infection is changed into apparent disease. This may occur also when rats are secondarily infected with several species of Salmonellae and Pasteurellae, or when combined A and C avitaminoses are produced in the infected rodents.

The duration of the latent infection following the disease has not yet been established; however, it may be long. Mackehenie (1934) reported a case of an engineer who gave positive cultures 16 months after an attack of verruga, and a patient with "nervous symptoms" who, 6 months later, yielded pure cultures of *B. bacilliformis*. Howe (1943*a*) obtained positive blood cultures from a person who had had the disease 5 years previously. Most of these postconvalescent asymptomatic infections have been reported from people living in the endemic zone, so that it is impossible to evaluate whether such cases represent single or repeated infections. Postconvalescent asymptomatic infections may become apparent even after long periods of time, although such cases appear to be extremely rare. Escomel (in Weinman, 1944) reports a case of a patient who had had an attack of verruga, then lived in Europe for 20 years; upon his return to Peru and before he had passed through any known endemic zone, a tumor developed on his toe; this was a typical verruga with numerous demonstrable Bartonellae. The patient stated that during his residence in Europe he had had similar tumors.

Howe (1942, 1943*a*) demonstrated the presence of specific agglutinins in the blood in cases during or after the disease. In the noneruptive stages, titers as high as 1:160, but usually 1:20, were found. During the eruptive stage, titers ranged from 1:80 to 1:320.

PATHOLOGIC ANATOMY

Oroya Fever

Fatal cases of Oroya fever show at autopsy signs of an advanced anemia. There is usually marked emaciation. Disseminated petechiae may be observed in the subcutaneous tissue. The lymph nodes are moderately but clearly enlarged, and when cut appear pink or reddish. The spleen may be normal or slightly enlarged and may show numerous infarcts (Strong et al., 1915). Hepatomegaly is sometimes observed. Frequently the pericardium contains a large amount of fluid, serous in appearance (Groot et al., 1941; Weinman, 1944). Disseminated hemorrhagic petechiae may be found in different viscera.

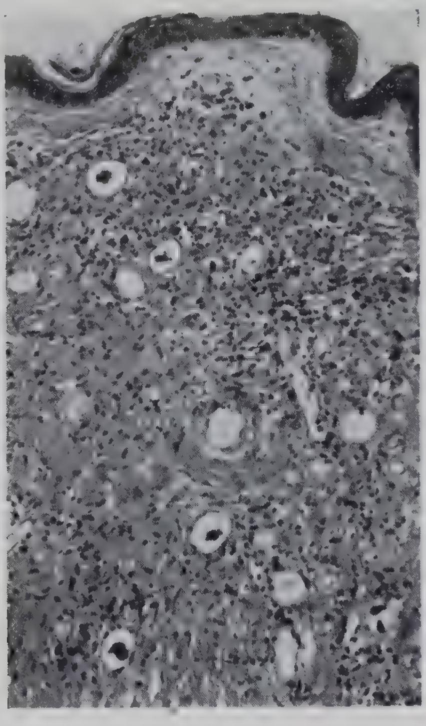


Fig. 183.—Skin biopsy in Oroya fever, showing cellular infiltration and vessels with agglomerates of *Bartonella bacilliformis*. (Courtesy of Oscar Felsenfeld.)

Microscopically, besides the presence of Bartonellae in the red blood cells, the most striking finding is the lesion observed in cells of the reticuloendothelial system. The lesion consists of the development of Bartonellae within the cytoplasm of endothelial cells of sinusoids and of lymph and blood capillaries (Strong et al, 1915). Infected cells have been found in the lymph nodes, in the liver, bone marrow, spleen, kidney, intestines, adrenals, pancreas, in the skin, and occasionally in the heart and lung (Weinman, 1944). In the infected cells the Bartonellae sometimes are discrete and rod-shaped, as seen in more than 80 per cent of infected Kupffer cells of the liver (Pinkerton and Weinman, 1937); but in the remaining 20 per cent and in all other organs the microorganisms appear aggregated in granular or amorphous spheroidal masses which distend the cells, sometimes to an extreme degree. Marked erythrophagocytosis by the Kupffer cells of the liver and the macrophages of the spleen is observed. These cells also contain hemosiderin (Ash and Spitz, 1945).

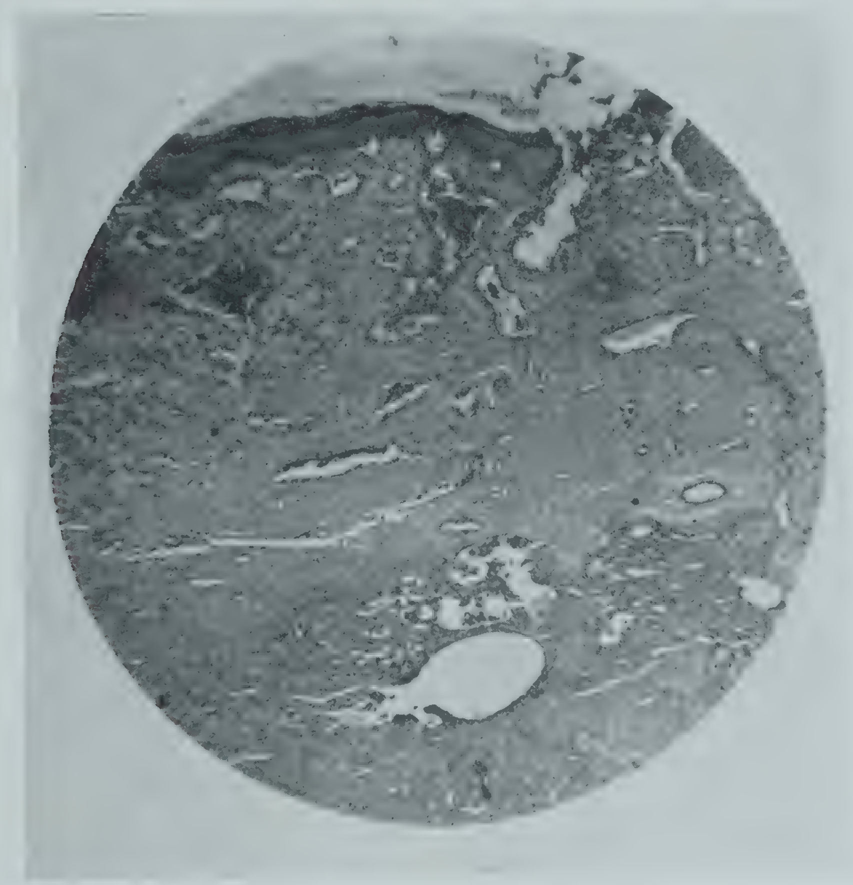


Fig. 184.—Section of a verruga. Hematoxylin-eosin stain. Low power. (Photograph by C. Sanmartin.)

The liver presents areas of necrosis of the central type about the hepatic vein (Strong et al., 1915). Hurtado, Pons, and Merino (1938) have reported degeneration also around the central veins. According to Weinman (1944), it is likely that such necroses are due to anoxemia. Strong attributed them to a probable toxin, not yet isolated. The spleen is congested, with infarcts, venous thromboses, marked erythrophagocytosis, and large amounts of pigment, yellow or yellowish-brown, present within the macrophages as well as in free masses outside the cells. This pigment does not give the iron reaction. The bone marrow shows functional hyperactivity, that is, a transformation to red marrow of a great part of the yellow marrow of the long bones. The enlarged lymph nodes are congested, with dilated sinuses. Strong (1915) has reported ulcerations in the large intestine with distinct undermining of the mucosa at the edges. These lesions occurred near capillaries with numerous infected endothelial cells.

Eruptive Stage (Verruga)

The lesion consists of newly formed vessels of different sizes lying in connective tissue, with edematous zones, hemorrhagic foci, and a marked proliferation of the endothelial cells of the vessels. Bartonellae are present in these proliferated cells. They are rod-shaped or form round masses. However, these clusters are never as pronounced as in the organs in Oroya fever cases, and the distention of the infected cells is significantly less common than in Oroya fever (Pinkerton and Weinman, 1937). The epithelial cover of the verruga is thin, sometimes with signs of parakeratosis (Groot, Mayoral, and Martinez, 1941), and may be absent in some places, in which case it is replaced by a layer of fibrin and leucocytes. At the periphery of the lesion the capillaries may be markedly dilated. As the lesion progresses, the connective tissue becomes more abundant, and in some cases may present a fibrosarcomatous appearance. When the verruga becomes older, the fibroblasts and the collagen fibrils increase in number. The epithelial cover may be hypertrophied, and portions of cornified epithelium may be seen in the depth of the connective tissue mass (Strong, 1915; Groot et al., 1941). When secondarily infected, the lesions develop purulent foci.

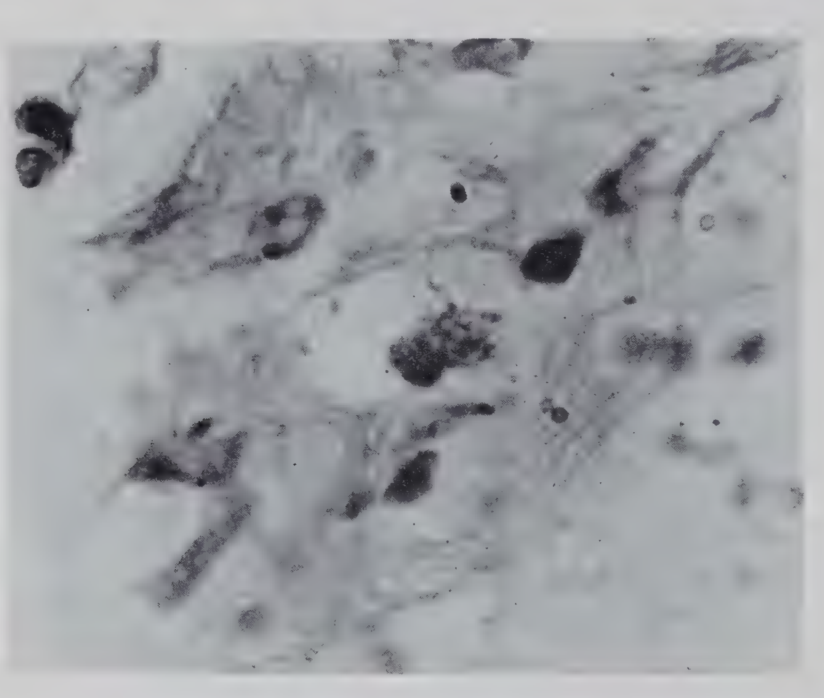


Fig. 185.—Section of a verruga. *Bartonella bacilliformis* within the protoplasm of a macrophage. Giemsa stain (×1280). (Photograph by C. Sanmartin.)

The histology of the subcutaneous nodules is similar to that of the cutaneous lesions. The subcutaneous nodule is usually surrounded by a connective tissue capsule which sometimes sends thin walls into the mass of the lesion. In its center, foci of necrosis may be found (Groot et al., 1941).

Weinman (1944) found, in sections of apparently normal skin from a case of Oroya fever, proliferated and infected endothelial cells together with large numbers of capillaries. The lesion thus appeared as the possible beginning of a verruga.

DIAGNOSIS

Noneruptive Stage

Demonstration of the causative agent in the peripheral blood makes the diagnosis and is essential for such a diagnosis. The procedures usually followed are the microscopic examination of stained films, both thin and thick, and when necessary blood cultures in suitable media. When the disease is well established, the irregular fever, the rapid and severe anemia, the high erythrocytic sedimentation rate, the pains in the joints, the enlargement of the lymph nodes, the environment in which the patient has recently lived, are all data of great value for a diagnosis.

However, early in the disease, or when the disease runs a very mild course, the clinical manifestations are by no means marked, and the Bartonellae might not be found by microscopic examination of the blood. In these cases it is necessary to make blood cultures. For this purpose the medium which has given the best results in the hands of the author is Geiman's semisolid medium (see above).

Eruptive Stage

The appearance of the verrugas is so characteristic that it is difficult to mistake the disease for any other. The clinical diagnosis may be confirmed by demonstration of the Bartonellae in the lesions. Sections should be prepared with Regaud's fixative, stained later with Giemsa stain. The verruga may resemble an angioma, an angiofibroma, or a botryomycoma. These tumors, however, are almost always single and congenital. Bassewitz described, in Brazil, "angiofibroma cutis circumscriptum contagiosum," a condition similar to verruga. So far the true nature of Bassewitz' tumors has not been established, and from present data there is not sufficient information on which to base a differential diagnosis.

The subcutaneous nodules, when they have not eroded the skin, may resemble fatty tumors, fibromata, and similar pathologic conditions. However, the coexistence with typical miliary verrugas, the localization near the joints, and the course of the disease furnish the diagnosis. In doubtful cases, bacteriologic and histologic study of the lesions should be made.

In this period blood cultures are often positive.

The disease is not transmissible to the usual laboratory animals. Even monkeys are difficult to infect.

PROGNOSIS

When a patient presents the Oroya fever syndrome, prognosis is not good. The mortality in such cases is high, about 40 per cent. The individual prognosis depends upon the general state of the patient. Among bad prognostic symptoms are: low blood pressure, extreme tachycardia, normal temperature with large numbers of Bartonellae in the blood, the appearance of complications such as pneumonia or salmonellosis, and the marked increase of urobilinogen in the urine. The daily examination of the blood gives very useful data about the course of the disease and its possible termination. Generally the degree of anemia is proportional to the seriousness of the prognosis, and a small number of reticulocytes is unfavorable. The appearance of eosinophiles is usually considered as a good prognostic sign (Hurtado et al., 1938; Groot et al., 1941).

During the eruptive stage, recovery is the rule. However, Odriozola (1898) has described some cases in which Oroya fever followed the appearance of verrugas, but such cases seem to be extremely rare. In Colombia no deaths have been reported during the eruptive stage.

TREATMENT

Several drugs have been used in the treatment of Oroya fever, almost always without significant beneficial effects. Neoarsphenamine, Prontosil, sulfanilamide, sulfapyridine, neutral salts of acriflavin, quinine have not proved successful. SDT 386, a Bayer arsenic and antimony compound, which has given good results in *Haemobartonella muris* infection of rats, is useless in Carrión's disease.

Recently penicillin has been used. Although the present data are not conclusive, there is some evidence that this antibiotic is helpful, at least in certain cases. Castro (1945, 1946) treated 59 Oroya fever patients with doses between 100,000 and 2,000,000 units. He states that in most cases there was a notable amelioration of the symptoms after the treatment. Among the 59 patients, 10 died. Castro has found a mortality of 40 per cent in untreated cases. Aldana (1945, 1946), Aldana and Tisnado (1945), Robinson (1945), Vila y Acuña (1945), and Merino (1945) employed total doses ranging from 240,000 to 1,600,000 units, using a daily dose between 100,000 and 200,000 units. Most of the patients received a total of 600,000 units. When the treatment was begun, 13 patients had a marked degree of anemia. Of their 14 Oroya fever patients, 3 died: 1 because of a pneumonia complication, and 2 who were received for treatment with very severe anemia and in a markedly poor condition. The authors report significant improvement of the clinical condition in the remaining 11. One of these 11, however, later developed salmonellosis and died. The element of fever was improved in most cases and a marked drop in the number of Bartonellae in the peripheral blood was observed 8 to 72 hours after initiation of treatment. Seven months after the penicillin treatment, none of the recovered patients had developed verrugas. The number of these observations is small; however, the results seem encouraging.

Howe (1943*b*) treated 3 cases with immune rabbit serum. In such cases the degree of reduction of Bartonellae in the blood stream was more rapid than in the controls. In 1 case the time in which the eruptive stage appeared after Oroya fever had receded was notably short.

Good nursing care and well-balanced and adequate diet are essential. The administration of ferrous sulfate, liver extracts, vitamins B_1 and C is usually recommended as accessory measures. Blood transfusions are indicated especially when the anemia is marked. These transfusions should be large and should be repeated frequently.

The therapeutic measures during the eruptive stage tend to maintain the patient in good condition. Care must be taken to prevent secondary infection of the verrugas. Excision sometimes is indicated. When this is the case, it is preferable to await full growth before operating. This occurs when the verrugas near the joints cause limitation of function of the limbs, or when the lesions become gangrenous. Vila y Acuña (1945) and Aldana and Tisnado (1946) have reported three cases of verrugas treated with penicillin. They report that a marked improvement of the condition is observed and that the treatment hastens the improvement of the lesions. One of the cases was treated after 4 months of development and cure was reported 2 weeks later. In the second case, after approximately 15 days of development, treatment was given over 11 days, and a few days later the patient was discharged with "notable improvement." In the third case, after a period of 28 to 58 days, the patient was treated for 10 days, at the end of which many lesions had totally disappeared and no new eruptive elements had appeared.

PROPHYLAXIS

From a theoretical standpoint, 3 kinds of prophylactic and control measures might be considered: (1) those intended to prevent Phlebotomi from biting man; (2) those intended to destroy the insect vector; (3) prophylactic immunization.

In regard to the first, staying after dusk only in Phlebotomus-proof houses and departure from the endemic zone at night have been suggested. To reduce sand-flies DDT has been used recently and appears promising. Hertig and Fisher (1945) found this insecticide effective against Phlebotomi in Italy and in the Dead Sea area. Unfinished experiments in Colombia performed by Mondragón on a wide scale in two villages in the endemic area have shown, so far, a significant decrease in bartonellosis morbidity rate after the application of DDT.

As far as prophylactic immunization is concerned, the search for a possible effective vaccine has begun. Very limited experiments have been performed, though, and the results cannot be considered as conclusive. Howe and Hertig (1943) vaccinated a group of 22 previously unexposed volunteers who intended to establish residence in a highly endemic district. The vaccine consisted of injection of a formol-killed suspension of *B. bacilliformis* which had been grown in Geiman solid medium. Out of the 22 volunteers, 19 developed specific agglutinins, with titers up to 1:160, after the vaccination. After a variable time of residence in the verruga zone, 12 of the vaccinated persons had positive blood cultures for *B. bacilliformis* and developed mild systemic symptoms, such as slight fever, arthralgias, and headache. Only one of these 12 patients had to be hospitalized, but 5 later showed eruption of verrugas. The author vaccinated, with a similarly prepared vaccine, 44 children in the village of Bolivar (Colombia). The vaccinated children and 45 unvaccinated controls were watched during the following 3 years. Two cases of Carrión's disease were observed among the vaccinated individuals, and 6 cases among the controls. During those 3 years, 10 per cent of the entire population of Bolivar presented Carrión's disease.

References

Aldana, L.: 1945. Acción *in vitro* de la penicilina sobre la Bartonella baciliforme, Rev. san. de policía **5:** 65-69.

Aldana, L.: 1946. Estado actual del tratamiento de la enfermedad de Carrión por la penicilina, Rev. méd. peruana **19:** 517-534.

Aldana, L., and Tisnado, S.: 1945. Penicilina y enfermedad de Carrión, Rev. méd. peruana **18:** 343-411.

Alzamora, V.: 1945. Contribución al estudio de la bartonellosis humana, Gac. méd. Lima **2:** 78-89.

Arce, J.: 1931. Verrue péruvienne ou maladie de Carrión, Rev. sud-am. de méd. et de chir. **2:** 1017-1034.

Ash, J. E., and Spitz, S.: 1945. Pathology of Tropical Diseases, Philadelphia and London, W. B. Saunders Co., pp. 25-29.

Battistini, T.: 1929. Estudios sobre la verruga peruana, La accion medica, Lima.

Battistini, T.: 1931. La verrue péruvienne. (Sa transmission par le phlébotome), Rev. sud-am. de méd. et de chir. **2:** 719-724.

Battistini, G., Puglisevich, J. M., and Tisnado, S.: 1947. Accion in vitro de la estreptomicina sobre Bartonella bacilliformis, Gac. méd. Lima **3:** 136-137.

Benavides, A.: 1942. Estudio clínico y anatomopatológico de las verrugas y nódulos subcutaneos de la bartonellosis humana o enfermedad de Carrión, Bogotá, Editorial Santafe.

Castro, F.: 1945. Ensayos de penicilina en la bartonellosis, Heraldo méd., Bogotá **3:** 6-7.

Castro, F.: 1946. Tratamiento de la bartonellosis por la penicilina, Heraldo méd., Bogotá **4:** 21-22.

Geiman, Q.: 1941. New Media for the Growth of Bartonella Bacilliformis, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **47:** 329-332.

Geiman, Q.: 1944. Organisms of Uncertain Classification. In Simmons, J. S., and Gentzkow, C. J.: Laboratory Methods of the United States Army, ed. 5, Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, pp. 551-557.

Groot, H.: 1942. Anotaciones sobre la historia y el origen de la bartonellosis humana, enfermedad de Carrión, en Colombia, Publicaciones del Laboratorio de Higiene de Narino, Pasto, Colombia, Imprenta Deparamental.

Groot, H.: 1946. Infección inaparente en bartonellosis humana, Inform to the Sociedad de Biología de Bogotá.

Groot, H., Mayoral, P., and Martinez, L. E.: 1941. Resumen de observaciones y estudios sobre bartonellosis, Rev. Fac. de med., Bogotá **10:** 377-402.

d'Harcourt, R.: 1939. La médecine dans l'ancien Pérou, Paris, Norbert Maloine.

Hertig, M.: 1937. Carrión's Disease. V. Studies on Phlebotomus as the Possible Vector, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **37:** 598-600.

Hertig, M.: 1938. Notes on Peruvian Sand-flies, Identification of Females of Phlebotomus Verrucarum and P. Noguchii, Am. J. Hyg. **28:** 463-468.

Hertig, M.: 1940. Cultivo de la Bartonella bacilliformis de un caso de verruga en el Ecuador, Bol. Ofic. san. panam. **19:** 756-758.

Hertig, M.: 1942. Phlebotomus and Carrión's Disease, Am. J. Trop. Med. (supp.) **22:** 1-81.

Hodgson, C. H.: 1947. The Treatment of Carrión's Disease With Large Transfusions, Am. J. Trop. Med. **27:** 69-75.

Howe, C.: 1942. Demonstration of Agglutinins for Bartonella Bacilliformis, J. Exper. Med. **75:** 65-75.

Howe, C.: 1943a. Carrión's Disease. Immunologic Studies, Arch. Int. Med. **72:** 147-167.

Howe, C.: 1943b. Immune Serum Therapy for Oroya Fever, Arch. Int. Med. **72:** 429-438.

Howe, C., and Hertig, M.: 1943. Prophylactic Immunization Against Carrión's Disease, J. Immunol. **47:** 471-428.

Hurtado, A., Pons, J., and Merino, C.: 1938. La anemia de la enfermedad de Carrión, Lima, Imprenta Gil.

Jaramillo, R.: 1939. Contribución al estudio de la bartonellosis en Colombia, Rev. hig. y med. esc. **22:** 13-70.

Jimenez, J. F.: 1940. Carrión's Disease. I. Some Growth Factors Necessary for Cultivation of Bartonella Bacilliformis, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **45**: 402-405.

Jimenez, J. F., and Buddingh, J. G.: 1940. Carrión's Disease. II. Behavior of Bartonella Bacilliformis in the Developing Chick Embryo, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **45**: 546-551.

Kuczynsky-Godard, M. H.: 1937a. La inmunidad fisiológica. III. La vitamina B-1 y la enfermedad de Carrion, La Reforma Medica, Lima, July 1.

Kuczynsky-Godard, M. H.: 1937*b*. Nota adicional. El curso de la infección experimental, La Reforma Medica, Lima, Sept. 15.

Mackehenie, D.: 1930. L'erythropoiese dans L'anémie grave de la maladie de Carrión (verrue peruvienne), Rev. sud-am. de méd. et de chir. **1**: 563-569.

Mackehenie, D.: 1932*a*. Mesenchyme et maladie de Carrión, Rev. sud-am. de méd. et de chir. **4**: 323-336.

Mackehenie, D.: 1932*b*. L'anémie dans la maladie de Carrión, Rev. sud-am. de méd. et de chir. **3**: 968-972.

Mackehenie, D.: 1934. Verrue péruvienne et typhus exanthématiques, Rev. sud-am. de méd. et de chir. **5**: 747-762.

Mackehenie, D.: 1937. Un caso de verruga humana por autoinoculación experimental, La Reforma Medica, Lima, Sept. 15.

Maldonado, A.: 1931. La berruga de los conquistadores del Peru, Crón. méd., Lima **48**: 313-345.

Merino, C. F.: 1945. La penicilina en el tratamiento de la enfermedad de Carrión, Rev. méd. peruana **18**: 329-341.

Monge, C., and Weiss, P.: 1930. A propos de l'hematologie de la maladie de Carrión, Rev. sud-am. de méd. et de chir. **1**: 570-574.

Montalvan, J. A.: 1940. Un foco de Bartonellosis en el Ecuador, Bol. Ofic. san. panam. **19**: 154.

Noguchi, H.: 1927. VII. The Response of the Skin of Macacus Rhesus and Anthropoid Apes to Inoculation With Bartonella Bacilliformis, J. Exper. Med. **45**: 455-463.

Noguchi, H.: 1928. X. Comparative Studies of Different Strains of Bartonella Bacilliformis With Special References to the Relation Between the Clinical Types of Carrión's Disease and the Virulence of the Infecting Organism, J. Exper. Med. **47**: 219-234.

Noguchi, H., Shannon, R. C., Tilden, E. B., and Tyler, J. R.: 1928. Phlebotomus and Oroya Fever and Verruga Peruana, Science **68**: 493-495.

Noguchi, H., Shannon, R. C., Tilden, E. B., and Tyler, J. R.: 1929. Etiology of Oroya Fever. The Insect Vectors of Carrión's Disease, J. Exper. Med. **49**: 993-1008.

Odriozola, E.: 1898. La maladie de Carrión ou la verruga peruvienne, Paris, G. Carre et C. Naud.

Patiño-Camargo, L.: 1939. Bartonellosis en Colombia. Bartonellosis del Guáitara o fiebre verrucosa del Guaitara, Rev. Fac. de med., Bogotá **7**: 467-501.

Patiño-Camargo, L., Cifuentes, P., and Sanchez-Herrera, M.: 1940. El primer caso de bartonellosis (fiebre verrucosa del Guáitara o verruga) en Bogotá, Rev. Fac. de med., Bogotá **9**: 351-360.

Pinkerton, H., and Weinman, D.: 1937*a*. Carrión's Disease. I. Behavior of the Etiological Agent Within Cells Growing or Surviving in Vitro, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **37**: 587-590.

Pinkerton, H., and Weinman, D.: 1937*b*. Carrión's Disease. II. Comparative Morphology of the Etiological Agent in Oroya Fever and Verruga Peruana, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **37**: 591-593.

Pizarro, Pedro: 1571. Relation of the Discovery and Conquest of the Kingdoms of Peru; English translation by Philip Ainsworth Means, New York, 1921, The Cortes Society.

Rebagliati, R.: 1940. Verruga peruana, Lima, Press Torres Aguirre.

Ricketts, W. E.: 1947. Carrión's Disease. A Study of the Incubation Period in 13 Cases, Am. J. Trop. Med. **27**: 657-659.

Robinson, F.: 1945. Accion de la penicilina en la fase hematica de la verruga peruana, Rev. san. de policía **5**: 75-80.

Samper, B., and Montoya, J. A.: 1940. Estudios bacteriológicos y experimentales de un germen aislado en una epidemia de bartonellosis en el departamento de Narino (Colombia), Rev. Fac. de med., Bogotá **9**: 197-218.

Strong, R. P.: 1942. Verruga Peruana and Oroya Fever. In Stitt's Diagnosis, Prevention and Treatment of Tropical Diseases, ed. 6, Philadelphia, The Blakiston Co., vol. 2, chap. 29, p. 1003.

Strong, R. P., and Tyzzer, E. E.: 1915. Pathology of Oroya Fever, Third Report, J. A. M. A. **46**: 965-968.

Strong, R. P., Tyzzer, E. E., and Sellards, A. W.: 1915. Differential Diagnosis of Verruga Peruviana, Fifth Report, J. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **18**: 122-125.

Strong, R. P., Tyzzer, E. E., Brues, C. T., Sellards, A. W., and Gastiaburu, J. C.: 1915. Report of First Expedition to South America, 1913, Cambridge, Harvard University Press.

Topley, W. W. C., and Wilson, G. S.: 1945. Principles of Bacteriology and Immunity, ed. 3, London, Edward Arnold & Co., vol. 1, pp. 903-904.

Tyzzer, E. E., and Weinman, D.: 1939. Haemobartonella, N. G. (Bartonella Olim pro Parte), H. Microti, N. SP., of the Field Vole, Microtus Pennsylvanicus, Am. J. Hyg. **30**: 141-157.

Vila y Acuña, E.: 1945. Quimioterapia de la verruga peruana por la penicilina, Rev. san. de policía **5**: 71-74.

Weinman, D.: 1944. Infectious Anemias Due to Bartonella and Related Red Cell Parasites, Tr. Am. Philosophical Society **33**: 243-345.

Weinman, D.: 1946. Human Bartonella Infection and African Sleeping Sickness, Bull. New York Acad. Med. **22**: 647-670.

Weinman, D., and Pinkerton, H.: 1937*a*. Carrión's Disease. III. Experimental Production in Animals, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **37**: 594-595.

Weinman, D., and Pinkerton, H.: 1937*b*. Carrión's Disease. IV. Natural Sources of Bartonella in the Endemic Zone, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **37**: 596-598.

Weiss, P.: 1932. Contribución al estudio de la verruga peruana o enfermedad de Carrión, Rev. méd. peruana **4**: 5-25, 55-70.

CHAPTER 33

TROPICAL PHAGEDENIC ULCER (VINCENT'S ULCER)

GANAPATI PANJA

Synonyms.—Ulcus tropicum, tropical ulcer, Naga sore (Assam, India), Cachar boil, Malabar ulcer, Jungle Ghao, Gala (Gwalior, India), Annam ulcer, Cochin sore, Aden ulcer, Yemen ulcer, Mozambique ulcer, Delago sore, Natal sore, Rhodesian sore, Zambesi sore, tropischer phagedenismus (German), Ulcère phagèdenique des pays chauds (French), Goyana ulcer, Chaco ulcer (Argentina), Tropical sloughing phagedaena.

The best name should be either "tropical phagedenic ulcer" or Vincent's ulcer, as the word "phagedenic" means "eating canker" and such a phagedenic condition with presence of copious slough and Vincent's fusiform bacilli is characteristic of the ulcer.

The simple name "tropical ulcer" is misleading as there are, in the tropics, many ulcers free from phagedena and fusiform bacilli. Tropical ulcers described by Golden and Padilla (1946) at Guatemala are not the phagedenic ulcers. There is no exudate in a 2-week-old ulcer and no fusiform bacilli found in any case.

Ulcers described by Dostrovsky and Sagher (1946) at Palestine are probably not tropical phagedenic ulcers. These are neither oval nor circular, are surrounded by superficial detachment of epidermis, and are free from fusiform bacilli.

There are sloughing ulcers in the tropics, but without any fusiform bacilli. These are not tropical phagedenic ulcers. Hence the very best name should be Vincent's ulcer; Costa (1944) has also suggested the same name.

The earliest record of the disease is found in a Burma expedition recorded in James Annesley's *Researches Into the Cause, Nature, and Treatment of the More Prevalent Diseases of India* (1828). The disease was known in Algiers (North Africa) in 1896.

DEFINITION

It is an acute specific ulcer, single or multiple, circular or oval, punched-out and excavated, with indurated and raised borders, varying in size from 1¼ to 2½ inches in diameter, confined mostly to the lower legs, feet, and toes, associated with copious and often fetid pus, tenacious slough, serosanguineous discharge, pain and a tenderness, and rarely accompanied by enlarged neighboring glands, fever, and constitutional symptoms. The ulcer develops later into a chronic stage without the foregoing typical features.

ETIOLOGY

Geographic Distribution and Incidence

This has been well shown by Clements (1936). It is very interesting to note that the ulcer is found more often near the Equator in tropical and subtropical countries that are included in a belt drawn around the globe between the 35th latitude north and the 10th latitude south where the average yearly temperature is 70° F. The disease is almost unknown in the regions beyond 35 to 40 degrees N and 20 degrees S, although 160 cases have been recorded by Lichtman (1947) in Durban, Natal, Union of South Africa, at 30 degrees S. There are very few cases above an altitude of 1500 feet above sea level. The countries where ulcers have been found are given below:

Equatorial Africa.—Gold Coast, Kenya, Mozambique, Sierra Leone, Liberia, Gambia, Nigeria, Northern Rhodesia, Oran, Nyasaland, Tanganyika, Uganda, Sudan, Zambezi, Algeria, Belgian Congo, Somaliland, Tripoli, Libya, and Madagascar.

Central and South America.—British Guiana, San Domingo, Jamaica, Trinidad, Argentina, and Brazil.

Asia.—Syria, Aden, Israeli, Persia, Red Sea Islands, India, Burma, Federated Malay States, Yemen, Java, Siam, Singapore, Indonesia, Indo-China, Melanesia, Philippine Islands, New Guinea, and southern China.

Europe.—Caucasia.

In many tea districts of Assam and Cachar in India, the disease is endemic, occurring almost every year and sometimes in an epidemic form.

Hughes states that in Assam, India, 35 to 40 per cent of the labor population in the tea gardens is temporarily disabled. Charters (1947) found, among 292 Somali soldiers admitted, no less than 143 affected with tropical ulcer. Grenoilleau (1946) actually recorded 7,925 cases in 1943 and thought that there were likely to be 57,401 actual cases. Though the diagnosis of all kinds of ulcers is not given, there is little doubt that the majority belonged to the phagedenic type. According to Manson-Bahr (1940), the ulcer is a great scourge in the Solomon Islands and indeed in the whole of Melanesia.

It is clear from all these records that the disease is important from the standpoint of public health.

Season and Epidemiology

Most cases occur when the weather is hot and humid. Clements (1936) noted the highest incidence in New Guinea towards the end of the rainy season when the soil was still damp. Roy (1928) records the maximum incidence in July in Assam, when there is usually very heavy rain. Abundant rainfall and warm and damp soil are favorable factors. Panja (1945) noted in July to December of 1943 a large number of cases occurring in Calcutta. Grenoilleau (1946) records an epidemic beginning in July and subsiding at the end of December. He goes on to state that the seasonal character of the disease is of an estivo-autumnal type.

Pattanayak (1944) notes the highest peak in August and September, whereas Nath (1946) finds the highest incidence in October to December. Luthra (1946) found cases for 2 months after the rains in the Punjab.

From a consideration of all the data, it is evident that the epidemic is prevalent in the rainy season and for 2 to 3 months in the postmonsoon period, and it gradually disappears as winter approaches. There is one peculiarity in the epidemiology of the disease. It is endemic in certain localities, for example, Assam in India, whence the epidemic spreads in some years. Cases were unknown in Bengal for many years, but in 1943 an epidemic spread not only in Bengal but almost all over India including Bombay, Gujrat, Madras, Central Provinces, Orissa, and Punjab, etc. As usual, there is also a periodicity in the epidemic. There were many cases and many papers published during the years 1932 to 1936 and again in 1943 to 1946. In Algeria, an epidemic occurred in 1943, starting from July and persisting through the end of December. There were several thousands of cases with the result that an average daily 50 admissions into hospitals was recorded; the highest peak was in the middle of October. In fact, the disease affected the population, including Europeans, especially the womenfolk, to such a degree that it amounted to a veritable scourge (Grenoilleau, 1946). In some years in Assam, according to Hughes (1931), as already stated, 35 to 40 per cent of the coolie population is affected in the tea gardens at Sylhet. Roy (1928) records average duration of absence from duty in a year in a garden at Sylhet at 41.4 days and consequently a great economic loss is sustained by the tea garden companies. Patterson (1908) remarked, "This year the typical phagedenic ulcers have swept like a plague up the whole of Assam on both banks of the Brahmaputra River and have temporarily incapacitated many thousands of coolies. . . ."

Age

The disease is common in young adults engaged in active occupation. Roy (1928) records the disease in 99.6 per cent of adults and 0.4 per cent of children and infants. Ghose (1934) found the disease in only 3 children out of 69 cases. In the Calcutta epidemic recorded by Panja (1945), no young children and infants were found affected. Clements (1936) notes the highest incidence in ages 10 to 40 among 250 cases studied and remarks that children under 5 years are scarcely affected. Pandit (1946) writes that the largest number of patients falls in the age group of 10 to 30 years.

From all these records it can be concluded that the largest number of victims falls in the age group of 10 to 36 years. Cases are extremely rare below the age of 5, and old people are scarcely affected.

Sex

The disease has a higher incidence in males, and it may be 6 times more frequent than in females.

It is interesting to note that in certain tea gardens of Assam, the female population is more often affected. This might be due to the fact that the laboring population in those gardens consists of a preponderance of females. Grenoilleau (1946), in Algeria, records women victims more often among 857 European cases and suggests bare legs (without stockings) as being the predisposing cause of infection.

Occupation and Nationality

Occupation is a very important predisposing cause. Barefooted laboring classes are the most frequent victims in the tea gardens of India. Hughes states that in Assam 35 to 40 per cent of the labor population is temporarily disabled during the busiest season of the year. This fact alone suggests the possibility of an infection attacking the legs from the soil. Besides, occupation leads often to trauma which favors the entry of infection as will be shown later on. Europeans are not barefooted and do not go about in the mud. It is mainly for this reason that they are very rarely affected. In India, not a single case among Europeans is recorded, although they are in close association with the labor population in the tea gardens. The better class Indians who have clean habits, wear shoes, and do not work in the fields escape the disease. As stated above, Grenoilleau (1946), in Africa, recorded many cases among Europeans, especially women. The reason put forward by him is that women, although they wear shoes, have their lower legs exposed to insect bites, scratches, etc., and this allows entrance of infection from the soil.

Trauma

Trauma is a very important predisposing cause and may take the form of abrasions, cuts, puncture wounds, mosquito or leech bites, burns, injection thorn pricks, smallpox vaccination, or skin diseases such as impetigo, boils, pustules, trophic ulcers of leprosy, etc. Most of the cases give history of trauma in some form or other. It has also been proved experimentally that trauma is necesssary for the production of a sore.

Clements (1936) in his series of 179 cases found sores in 114 cases definitely traumatic in origin. Burnie (1931) in 250 cases noted ulcers occurring at the sites of injury in 244 cases. Fox (1921) found sores developing at the sites of inoculation of cholera vaccine in 14 coolies. Blanchard (1914) recorded ulcers on vaccination pustules. Almost all the writers on the disease are unanimous in acclaiming trauma as being the starting point in most cases. Trauma or skin disease also reduces the reduction potential of tissues and thus favors the development of a sore by subsequent infection.

Diet

Much attention has been paid to diet as being the possible cause of the disease. Some workers regard general malnutrition as an essential factor.

McCulloch et al. (1928) and Brown (1935) laid the etiology on low protein and fat, high carbohydrate, and inadequate vitamin supply. Clements (1936) carried on a careful observation of the diet in New Guinea and came to the conclusion that deficiency of the vitamin B complex associated with diet rich in carbohydrates but low in protein and fat was undoubtedly a predisposing factor. Earle (1942), on the other hand, thought nicotinic acid was the important factor. Almost similar results were obtained by Orr and Gilks (1931) in East Africa and Burnie (1931) in Nigeria. Edge (1921) considered the condition to be a deficiency disease. Scott (1941) and Charters (1943) laid stress on deficiency in vitamin A as being the precursor of the production in tropical ulcer. The latter tested improvements in ulcers by giving calcium, codliver oil, and milk, and comparing results with a control group, but his number of cases was so small that no statistical significance can be attached to his results. Corkill (1939) also does not agree with his results and says that vitamin A improves the rate of healing of many kinds of ulcers. Moreover, it has been found that healing takes place in an average number of 45 days when vitamin A is given and at the same time the ulcers are dressed with codliver oil. In the control group, however, when the ulcers are only dressed with zipp and no vitamin given, the average number of days is less, that is, 39 days. Blank (1947) was of the opinion that vitamin B deficiency was an important predisposing cause and called the malady a ''poor man's disease.'' Lichtman (1947), in Natal, considered the condition to be mainly nutritional in origin. He found the disease strikingly seasonal. In autumn, the diet of the people consisted mainly of maize, and the disease was in its highest peak in May, but in winter people had cattle flesh as well, with the result that the disease disappeared. Calcium deficiency has been cited by Brown (1935) and Loewenthal (1932) as an important predisposing cause. Brown found daily intravenous calcium chloride definitely beneficial. Loewenthal gave intravenous calcium chloride, 15 grains in 10 c.c. of distilled water daily, and found 52 per cent cured and 32 per cent improved. On the other hand, Brown (1935), Clements (1936), and Earle (1942) did not find any deficiency in calcium in the blood.

It may be stated here that if calcium deficiency or malnutrition is the important cause, these questions arise: Why do the ulcers occur mainly on the lower legs? Why does penicillin cure all cases even if associated conditions are neglected? There are many other workers who have strong reasons to believe that malnutrition is not the important cause.

Patterson (1908), with his wide experience, found the disease in healthy persons as well. Buchanan and Sanderson (1935), in Africa, found no favorable response to diet rich in vitamins. Hughes (1931) noted no improvement by feeding with codliver oil, orange juice, and yeasts. Marsh and Wilson (1945) remarked that most of their cases healed, even though slowly, in spite of their dietetic errors. In Panja's (1945) series of 61 cases, malnutrition was noted in but 4 cases; 57 cases were in good health.

The author's position is based upon the following facts:

1. The disease was not seen in Calcutta for years prior to the epidemic of 1943 although dietetic deficiency had long been common.
2. The disease was seasonal and the epidemic subsided in spite of the prevailing dietary deficiency.

3. Ulcers occurred in the majority of persons with no signs or history of dietary deficiency.

4. In a family when one member was affected, others were rarely affected, although the same dietetic conditions prevailed.

5. Ulcers were invariably limited to the lower legs. Other parts of the body ought to have been affected as well if dietary deficiency was the cause.

6. Healthy volunteers were successfully inoculated with the ulcer material or cultures of the fusiform bacilli.

7. Ulcers in all cases responded well to treatment with copper sulfate or penicillin, but not to supplementary diet.

Manson-Bahr reports that he has treated several severe cases in healthy and well-fed Europeans. Pattanayak (1944) found a number of healthy or robust persons developing tropical ulcers. Pandit (1946, 1947), working in an endemic area for 3 years, did not notice malnutrition in any case. Roy (1928), in his study of a large number of cases in the tea gardens, does not consider malnutrition to be the chief predisposing cause. Bharucha (1943) had 179 patients, all Indian soldiers receiving a uniform diet as laid down by Army authority, not known to be deficient in any essential constituents.

It is clear from all these reports that diet, calcium, or vitamin deficiencies are not essential predisposing causes.

Associated Diseases and Debility

Associated diseases and debility have been cited by various workers and much stress has been laid particularly on malaria and hookworm infections as possible predisposing causes. Manson-Bahr has pointed out that the distribution of the disease follows that of malaria. Malaria, however, is rampant every year in the villages of Bengal in India but tropical ulcer is unknown there for years. Patterson (1908), with his vast experience in Assam, was convinced that malaria, kala-azar, and debilitating conditions did not influence this disease. Bharucha (1943) wrote that associated diseases, such as malaria, dysentery, anemia, and avitaminoses, were not present in an active form in his 179 cases. Marsh and Wilson (1945) believe that even if associated diseases are neglected, the ulcers will heal with proper local treatment. It is not reasonable to place the blame on the associated diseases when epidemics of the disease occur in certain seasons and treatment with penicillin cures all cases in spite of nontreatment of associated diseases. Such diseases, of course, lower the vitality and tend to prolong the course and severity of the disease.

The important causes can be summarized in the alliterative words of Marsh and Wilson (1945), all beginning with the letter "F": "Filth, Food, Friction, and Fusospirillosis." Infection with the fusiform bacilli is the major factor as will be shown later. Under the present state of our knowledge, spirochetes cannot be incriminated in the etiology. Lack of cleanliness is certainly a more contributory factor than friction or injury, for even after implantation of the fusiform bacilli through injury, if proper care is taken, the disease is very likely to be prevented. Lack of food, that is, malnutrition, lowers the vitality and may render patients liable to infection; proof of this is not yet established, however. There is, of course, no doubt that when once a person is attacked malnutrition and debility will prolong the course and severity of the disease.

BACTERIOLOGY

The bacteriology of this disease has been studied in detail by a number of workers. When a film of pus from a typical ulcer is examined from day to day by staining with Gram's, Leishman's, Giemsa's, and Ziehl-Neelsen's stains, gram-positive fusiform bacilli are always found. Vincent's spirochetes are found in some ulcers. Gram-positive cocci, diphtheroids, and gram-negative bacilli are sometimes found. No acid-fast bacilli or protozoa are seen.

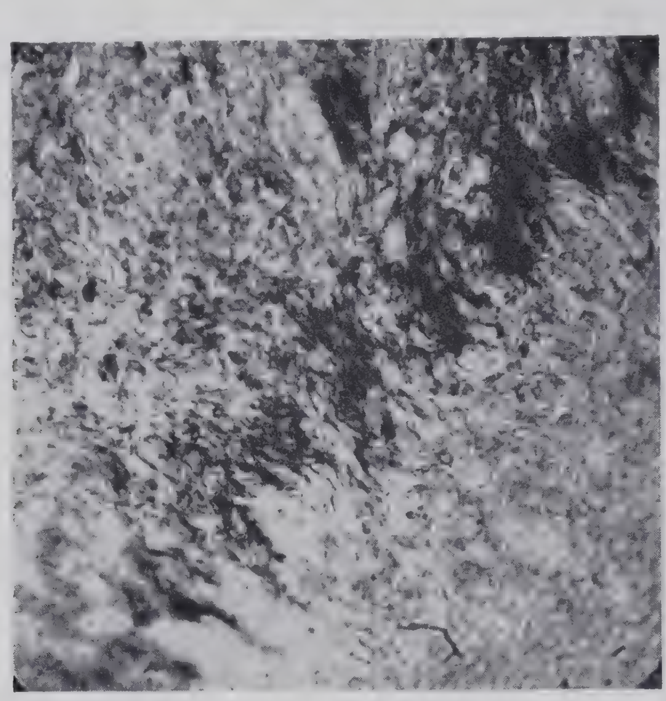


Fig. 186.—Section of Naga sore showing the row of fusiform bacilli in the depth of the ulcer.

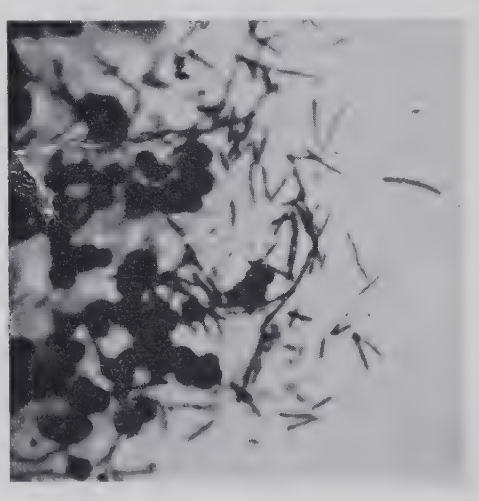


Fig. 187.—Smear from Naga sore showing fusiform bacilli.

It is claimed that Le Dantec (1884) was the first to find the Vincent bacillus (fusiform bacillus). Vincent (1896) found fusiform bacillus and spirillum in 40 out of 47 Arabian tourists suffering from the disease. Blanchard (1905) and von Prowazek (1907) attributed the cause of the ulcers to the spirochetes. Noguchi considered the spirochete to be the same as *Treponema vincenti.* Keysselitz and Mayer (1909), working in Africa, were perhaps the first to describe fully the fusiform bacilli and the spirochetes. Apostolides (1922), in Smyrna, studied 202 cases and was of the opinion that the only causative agent, the sine qua non of tropical ulcer, was the fusiform bacillus in association with *Spirochaeta schaudinni.* Roy (1928), in Assam, in his study of 386 ulcers, found fusiform bacilli in only 129, and in about one-half the number on repeated examination. Spirochetes were found in only 7. Besides, he observed gram-positive diplococci in the ulcers. He was inclined, therefore, to suggest that the diplococci might be the causal organisms and fusiform bacilli were secondary invaders. It might be said here that not a single worker up to this day has corroborated his finding of diplococci. Panja (1945) found, besides fusiform bacilli, organisms such as cocci, diphtheroid bacilli, gram-negative bacteria, and sometimes Clostridia, but there was no constant association between any of these organisms and active stage of the ulcer except with the fusiform bacilli.

Panja (1932, 1937, 1938, 1945) found fusiform bacilli in all his cases and suggested that their presence was a criterion for diagnosis. A fact of great importance in some of his cases was that, in 17 ulcers, fusiform bacilli alone were found by him on repeated microscopic examinations and no other organisms were detected by aerobic culture using blood agar. The fusiform bacilli seemed to disappear when the ulcers were healing but reappeared when healing was interfered with by artificial means. A constant association was noted by him between the presence of fusiform bacilli and the characteristics of a typical phagedenic ulcer.

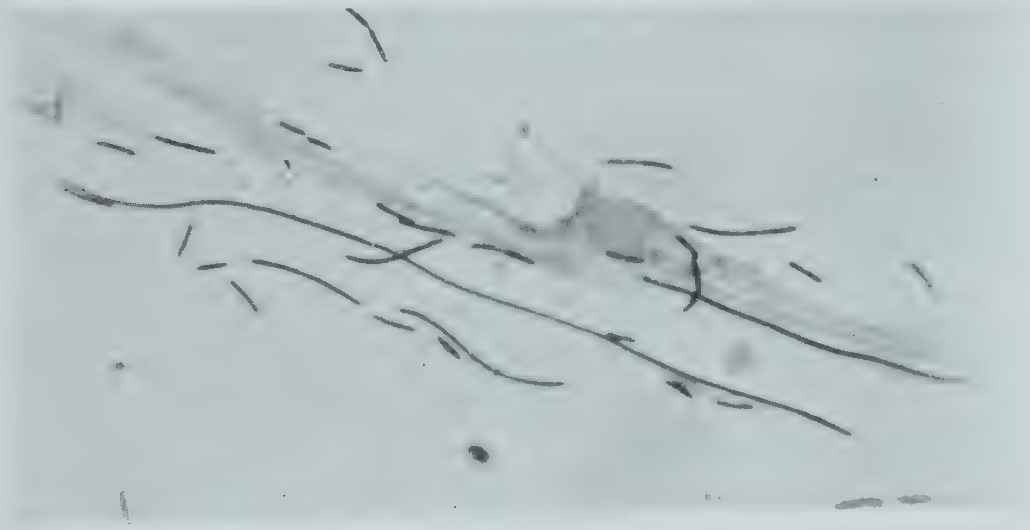


Fig. 188.—Leptothricial forms of fusiform bacilli as seen in Naga sore pus under oil immersion objective.

The overwhelming evidence is that fusiform bacilli are constantly associated with tropical ulcers and spirochetes only partially. These latter may either be living in symbiosis with the bacilli or may represent some stage in the development of the bacilli. There are some proofs, as will be shown later on, in support of this latter proposition. The absence of fusiform bacilli in a few cases can be explained by the following facts: that such ulcers may not be tropical ulcers at all, that the ulcers may be in the healing stage when search for the bacilli is made, and that a thorough search for the bacilli has not been undertaken from day to day.

Fusiform bacilli have also been found often in the undermined edges of ulcers whereas none has been seen from the surface of such ulcers.

Cultivation of Fusiform Bacilli and Spirochetes

Fusiform Bacilli.—Fusiform bacilli are reported to have been successfully cultivated years ago under anaerobic conditions by Weaver and Tunnicliff (1905) on horse serum agar, by Tunnicliff (1906, 1911) on ascitic agar slants, by Peters (1911) on Dorset's egg medium, by Krumwiede and Pratt (1913) on horse serum agar by their special inverted Petri dish method of anaerobiasis, by Semple et al. (1919), by Panja (1932) on gelatin serum agar, by Slanetz and Rettger (1933) on blood or potato extract agar with gentian violet under an atmosphere of 2 per cent carbon dioxide gas, by Smith (1933) on sheep serum agar with a fragment of ulcer tissue and poured plate method. Most of the workers obtained, in 3 to 5 days, fine colonies like those of Streptococci, with irregular edges.

Microscopically, Krumwiede and Pratt described the bacilli as slightly curved, with tapering ends, sometimes filamentous or in long chains, gram-negative, nonmotile, and fermenting galactose and saccharose, with a foul odor in cultures. Bergey describes the fusobacterium as gram-negative rods with tapering ends, usually nonmotile, and showing granules in the body. With Giemsa stain, the bacilli are light brown with maroon-colored granules (Fox, 1921).

More recently Panja (1945) successfully cultivated the fusiform bacilli anaerobically on sheep blood agar in which he incorporated a little sterilized pus from tropical ulcers. A thick inoculum was streaked on blood agar slope or plate. Fine, translucent colonies were seen after 3 to 4 days' incubation at 37° C. The majority of the cultures were viable for 7 to 10 days only. Solidified serum or egg medium was found liquefied when it was inoculated with pus containing fusiform bacilli. Microscopically, the organism was sometimes seen to be motile, showing brisk, twisting, and sometimes a circling movement. It was gram-negative, fusiform, arranged either singly or in pairs or in chains characteristically clustered. Seshadrinathan (1945) obtained pure cultures of the bacilli on 1 per cent nutrient agar incorporated with 25 per cent rabbit blood in an atmosphere of 90 per cent hydrogen and 10 per cent carbon dioxide at 37° C. by the cup technic. He put fine emulsion of pus made in normal saline into the cup and obtained transparent fine colonies a little away from the cup, but his subculture was not successful. Pandit (1946, 1947) reported cultivation of the fusiform bacilli from tropical ulcer on blood agar in an atmosphere of hydrogen and 5 per cent carbon dioxide gas. Colonies are fine like Streptococci.

The bacillus is a strict anaerobe, gram-negative, nonmotile, pleomorphic, does not ferment any ordinary serum sugars, but produces indol. The organism does not grow well on Slanetz and Rettger's (1933) medium, although the fusiform bacilli from the mouth grow very well on this medium. These differ in morphology and colony characteristics from the fusiform bacilli of tropical ulcer. Varney (1927) classified the fusiform bacilli isolated from various sources into four types. His type III is almost similar to Panja's culture; that is, gram-negative, slightly curved individual bacilli or occurring in long wavy chains and huge clusters.

Spirochetes.—E. C. Smith (1930) cultivated the spirochetes on modified Wenyon's human blood-saline agar under aerobic conditions in 48 hours at 37° C.

A number of workers have noted fusiform bacilli changing into spirillary forms and vice versa. Tunnicliff (1906) noted in the culture of fusiform bacilli filamentous and spirillary forms. Sanarelli (1927) regarded spirochetes and fusiform bacilli as different forms of the same organism. In fact, he was able to change one from the other and vice versa. D. T. Smith (1932) repeatedly found fusiform bacilli changing into spirochetal forms. Smith (1933) sometimes found nonmotile spirochetal forms in third-day-old culture of fusiform bacilli. Tunnicliff (1933) noted colonies of fusiform bacilli after the fifth day of culture changing into rough forms. Microscopically, such rough colonies were found to contain spiral forms of the bacilli. Tunnicliff and Hammond (1934) made a careful study of the rough colonies of fusiform bacilli and came to the conclusion that the fusiform bacillus and the spirillum were different forms of the same parasite. Panja (1945) found fine colonies of pure spirillary forms on repeated subculture changing into the usual colony forms of fusiform bacilli but his spirillary forms did not resemble Vincent's spirochetes. Pandit (1946, 1947), on the other hand, did not obtain transformation of fusiform bacilli into spirochetal forms. It is therefore not yet definitely settled whether the fusiform bacilli and spirochetes are different forms of the same parasite.

Experimental Production of Tropical Ulcer

1. With Pus.—Experimental production of ulcer in man with pus from tropical phagedenic ulcers was tried by various workers. Cross (1900), P. Blanchard (1914), Balliano (1916), Shillong (1919), Fox (1921), Pampana (1923), Burnie (1931), Panja (1932, 1945), and Pandit (1946) succeeded in reproducing ulcers in human volunteers by inoculating them with the pus from tropical sores. Blanchard's first attempt was unsuccessful, but in his second series of cases he succeeded by first necrotizing the skin with concentrated potassium hydroxide solution and 5 days later applying the pus on the necrotic area. Apostolides (1922) records the case of a nurse whose forearm was scratched with an infected knife that had been used to incise a tropical ulcer 2 hours previously. An ulcer similar to tropical ulcer developed at the site of the scratch. Panja inoculated the arms and legs of volunteers intradermally with the pus and covered with a sterile dressing. On the third day, a pustule formed; within 7 days, a typical ulcer showing fusiform bacilli developed. In some of his cases, he performed the very important experiment of using samples of pus showing only fusiform bacilli on microscopic as well as cultural examination and succeeding in reproducing the ulcer. The filtrate of such pus was found noninfectious. The same was corroborated by Pandit. He also applied such pus on ordinary ulcers and found that typical tropical ulcer developed in a few days. On the other hand, workers such as Sen (1922), Ruge et al. (1925), and Smith (1933) failed to reproduce the ulcers. Still, on the basis of accumulative evidences of expert workers, there is little doubt that the pus from a typical tropical ulcer showing fusiform bacilli is infectious to man and, when inoculated either on arms or legs, can reproduce typical ulcers showing the fusiform bacilli.

As regards experimental reproduction of ulcers in animals, the majority of workers have failed.

2. **With Cultures.**—As very few workers have succeeded in obtaining a pure culture of the fusiform bacilli or spirochetes on laboratory media, attempts at reproducing ulcers with cultures of the bacilli or spirochetes have not been undertaken on a large scale. Fox (1921), in India, inoculated men with impure culture of fusiform bacilli; his experimental ulcers were atypical, ''not at all like the Naga sore,'' in his own words. Panja (1932), in Calcutta, applied pure cultures from gelatin-serum agar to scarified skin without any success, but when the culture was mixed with gram-positive cocci or diphtheroid bacilli, an ulcer was reproduced but lasted for a few days only. Smith (1933), in Africa, tried inoculation experiments on 8 volunteers with a pure culture of the bacilli isolated by him. Boil-like lesions developed in 2 cases only, typical ulcer in none, and ulcers regressed in 2 to 5 days showing only scanty fusiform bacilli.

Smith (1930) believed Spironema to be the cause. He reported he had succeeded in culturing the organism in modified Wenyon's blood-saline agar. His culture consisted of spirochetes, fusiform bacilli, and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa.* With this mixture he reproduced ulcers showing fusiform bacilli and spirochetes. His culture was, therefore, not pure and his results were not confirmed by Brown (1935). Berry (1943) carried on an interesting observation for 3 years in the school children in Nyasaland. He noted that when abrasions on the skin of the children were infected with cocci, no ulcers occurred, but when infected with cocci as well as fusiform bacilli, typical ulcers were seen. He also found a preponderance of fusiform bacilli on the skin during the rainy season. This he supposed to be due to dampness and flies.

Panja (1945), during the epidemic of 1943, in cases of tropical ulcer in Calcutta, repeated his previous finding (1932). He succeeded in obtaining pure colonies of fusiform bacilli like those of Streptococci on his ''pus''-blood agar medium, and later on ordinary freshly prepared sheep blood agar. He inoculated 11 apparently healthy volunteers intradermally either on the upper arm or lower leg with 0.2 c.c. of a thick suspension of 5 different strains of pure cultures of fusiform bacilli in the third or fourth generation. The site of inoculation was squeezed hard with a pair of sterilized forceps immediately after inoculation and on 2 subsequent days so as to crush the tissue and produce the required oxidation-reduction potential for multiplication of the fusiform bacilli; a sterile dressing was kept on the lesion. In all the cases, ulcers developed, preceded by a purulent bleb and marked edema and tenderness at the sites of inoculation, varying from one-half to 1 inch in diameter within 4 to 6 days. Fever with rigor and edema of the whole limb were present at the beginning in some cases, but these soon subsided, leaving only an ulcer discharging copious pus and typical gram-negative fusiform bacilli, seen not only in films but also in pure state by culture. He could not find any spirochetes or other microorganisms in any stage of the reproduced ulcer. Ulcers healed in 10 to 20 days without any treatment except a sterile dressing. Cultures from experimental sores yielded a pure growth of fusiform bacilli, and with subcultures from the artificial sores, further tropical ulcers were reproduced. Ulcers were also produced with a mixture of fusiform bacilli and Streptococci and such ulcers were larger and took a longer time to heal. As he did not find spirochetes in the ulcers in any of his cases, he had no occasion to try cultures of spirochetes and inoculation experiments with these. Small doses of cultures of *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Streptococcus pyogenes*, diphtheroids, and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* that were isolated from some natural ulcers were injected intradermally into volunteers, followed by crushing of the tissues at the site of inoculation, but no typical tropical ulcer with presence of fusiform bacilli could be reproduced. His key notes of success were heavy inoculum, intradermal injection, repeated crushing of tissues after inoculation, and application of bandage to prevent access of air and light.

Vincent (1945) reproduced ulcers with cultures of fusiform bacillus in guinea pigs and rabbits by previously crushing the tissues at the site of inoculation, and reproduced larger ulcers when Staphylococcus, Streptococcus, and Pseudomonas were mixed with the culture of fusiform bacillus. He therefore came to the conclusion that the tropical ulcer was caused by fusiform bacilli frequently in association with *Borrelia vincentii* and other microorganisms, especially Staphylococcus and Streptococcus. Pandit (1946, 1947), with great difficulty, succeeded in obtaining a pure culture of the fusiform bacillus on blood agar in an atmosphere of hydrogen and 5 per cent carbon dioxide gas; with a thick suspension of fresh culture, he inoculated 5 volunteers intradermally but did not succeed in reproducing the ulcer. His failure appears to be due to the fact that he probably did not repeatedly crush the tissues at the site of inoculation nor cover with a bandage.

Serology

Panja (1945) found fusiform bacilli isolated from ulcers agglutinable with the rabbit sera against several strains of the bacilli; agglutinins were also found in some sera during recovery. As the bacilli were autoagglutinable, slide agglutination test with fresh cultures were carefully conducted.

Summary of the Facts on Bacteriology

On reviewing all this research on the etiology of the disease, a tentative conclusion can be made. An infection is the major factor in the causation of the disease, though Blank (1947) has raised the question as to why thousands of American troops working in the endemic area of Assam escaped the disease and why there was no infection transmitted from one person to another. This can easily be explained by the fact that the fusiform bacillus is a strict anaerobe and cannot therefore multiply in an unbroken and clean skin. Even if the bacillus is implanted on an injured skin, it cannot produce an ulcer if care is taken of the injury at the beginning. American troops know very well how to take care of their injuries. That the fusiform bacillus is the true cause of the disease is established by the following evidences given by Panja (1945):

1. Fusiform bacilli are constantly associated with typical active tropical phagedenic ulcers and no other ulcers. No such constant association is seen with spirochetes or any other microorganisms that are sometimes found in the ulcers.

2. In some tropical ulcers, fusiform bacilli only are found by microscopic and cultural examination and no other microorganisms either by microscopic or aerobic cultural examination.

3. On histologic examination, as will be shown later in the chapter, fusiform bacilli have penetrated into the deeper layers of the ulcer while secondary invaders are found more superficially.

4. The disease is reproducible in a number of human volunteers with pure primary as well as the third or fourth subculture of the organism under a special technic, and the organism is recoverable in pure culture from experimental ulcers. Ulcers are also reproduced with cultures of the organism isolated from experimental sores. Koch's postulates are thus fulfilled.

5. The disease may also be reproducible in animals if suitable precautions are taken.

6. No evidences of a virus are found in the ulcer.

7. Malnutrition, deficiencies, debility, associated diseases, and local infections with organisms other than the fusiform bacilli prolong the course of the disease.

8. Infection, as will be shown later, is derived from the soil and the grasses; therefore, the barefooted laborers are more commonly affected during the monsoon and postmonsoon months when they are engaged in active work.

9. Infection enters through some break in the skin caused either by trauma or skin disease. Poor laborers often acquire the disease because (a) they are more liable to injuries during work and (b) they do not take care of their injuries.

Reservoir of Infection

Apostolides (1922) and Clements (1936) put forward evidence regarding human mouths as possible sources of fusospirochetal infection. But Panja (1945) found the gums of most of his cases healthy and was not convinced of the possibility of infection from the mouth. Pandit (1947) went still further and demonstrated that the mouth fusiform bacilli were different from the fusiform bacilli of tropical ulcers in their morphology, colony characters, and the ease with which they are cultivatable on Slanetz and Rettger's (1933) medium. Roy (1928) has suggested that the soil may be the source of infection. He found cases of clean ulcers without any fusiform bacilli returning with slough and fetid odor and full of fusiform bacilli when the patients were allowed to go about in the mud without any surgical dressing. Panja also suspected the soil as the source of infection and went on to say that the infected soil from the endemic areas of Assam was carried during the war by the wheels of motor lorries plying incessantly from Assam to Bengal. Grenoilleau (1946) is reported to have actually found the fusiform bacilli in the soil, particularly when wet. Napier (1947), in his book on tropical medicine, states that the bacilli remain below the superficial soil in the dry season but come out on the top with the mud in the rainy season. There is no doubt that the soil theory is attractive, but further experimental proofs are necessary to corroborate this. It is interesting to make a note of a very early observati made by Young (1932) that the termite (a white ant) may be the reservo of infection. He found the ant harbored the fusiform bacilli, but his observ tion has not been confirmed.

Mode of Infection

Clements (1936) has suggested that spitting or application of saliva chewed grass to wounds transmits the infection from the mouth. Flies hav been reported as probable vectors by Patterson (1908), Fox (1921), an Grenoilleau (1946), but no support is given to this mode of transmission b Roy, Panja, and Pandit. Patterson believes that the eye gnat which has clos seasonal coincidence with the ulcer may be responsible for spread of th disease. Roy (1928), on the other hand, carried on artificial experiments i Assam with mango flies and eye gnats *(Siphunculina funicola)* fed on tropica ulcer; he concluded that such gnats were incapable of producing ulcers o scratches and could not play a prominent part in an outbreak. He suggeste that the prick of the shrubby herb (Mimosa), which is abundantly present i the tea gardens, might carry the infection from the soil to the skin.

HISTOPATHOLOGY

Histopathology has been studied in detail, particularly by Keysselitz an Mayer (1909), Wolbach and Todd (1912), E. C. Smith (1932), Clements (1936 Panja (1945), and Pandit (1947). In the homogeneous upper layers of th ulcer composed of pus and slough, pus cells, red blood cells, fibrin, fusiform bacilli, often pyogenic organisms, and sometimes spirochetes are found. I the deeper layers an extensive coagulation necrosis is seen in the form of pseudomembrane. Next to this, that is, a little below the floor of the ulcer, dense "palisade" of fusiform bacilli forms a diagnostic picture. Below th row of fusiform bacilli, there exists a dense and very thick layer of vascul granulation tissue and polymorphonuclear leucocytes. Wolbach and Tod noted also an extensive plasma cell infiltration. They also found (Levadit

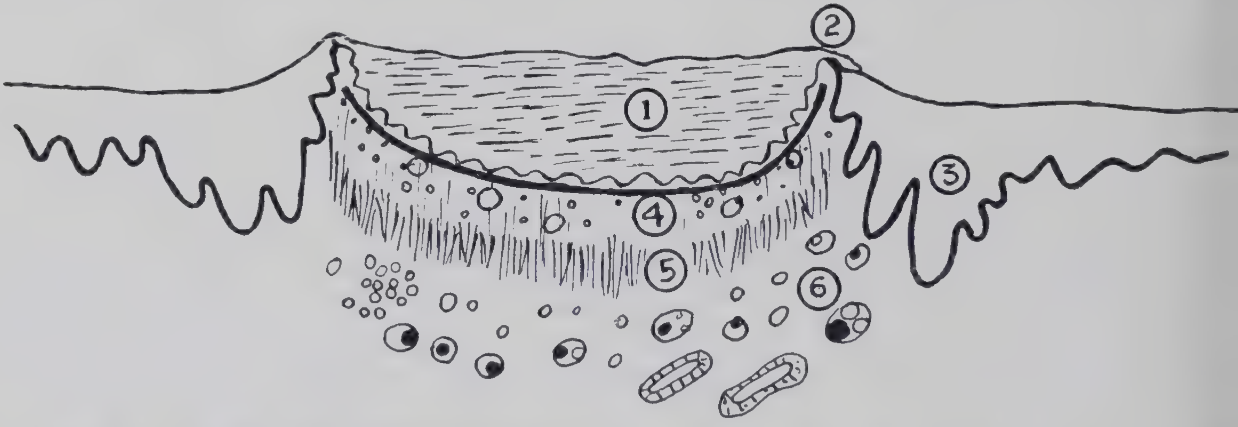


Fig. 189.—Naga sore, diagnostic section: *1*, slough; *2*, elevated edge; *3*, acanthosis in th prickle cell layer; *4*, vascular granulation tissue; *5*, felted mass of fusiform bacilli; *6*, granu lation tissue—plasma cells, endothelial cells, eosinophilic cells, red blood cells—reaching u to sweat glands.

stain) spirochetes in the granulation tissue at a considerable depth below the surface of the ulcer. Keysselitz and Mayer confirmed this finding. Smith, by practicing two kinds of staining—one by the Warthin method and the other by dilute Giemsa stain—demonstrated spirochetes ahead of the row of fusiform bacilli, invading to a considerable depth the granulation tissue at the base. He found the Malpighian layer of the epidermis in the neighborhood of the ulcer margin densely infiltrated with spirochetes. Spirochetes were also observed by him in the walls of small blood vessels. Costa (1944) also demonstrated spirochetes in the depth of the ulcer. At the margins of the ulcer there is marked acanthosis, that is, an extensive proliferation of the rete. It is interesting to note that Clements found the above histologic changes in his experimental ulcers also in rats.

When an ulcer is in the chronic indolent stage, these histologic changes are not found except for the presence of granulation tissue and newly formed fibrous tissue. Golden and Padilla (1946), in their very careful and excellent histologic study, demonstrated widespread damage of arterial and venous supply resulting in stenosis of lumina, but unfortunately the ulcers they investigated at Guatemala were not typical phagedenic ulcers showing copious pus and fusiform bacilli.

CLINICAL PICTURE

As a rule, the typical clinical picture in the active stage of the disease presents itself in the form of a painful ulcer, circular or oval, $\frac{1}{2}$ inch to $2\frac{1}{2}$ inches in diameter. The ulcer is full of copious and sometimes foul-smelling grayish-yellow, blood-tinged, thick slough with serosanguineous discharge, delimited by raised, clear-cut, and slightly undermined margin, and is commonly situated on the anterior aspects of lower legs of barefooted laboring people. It is especially found during the months of July to December. On microscopic examination, the pus shows many gram-negative fusiform bacilli and there also may be spirochetes and other microorganisms present. Thus the disease is a distinct clinical and bacteriologic entity.

The incubation period varies from 2 to 4 days.

Site.—The ulcer is commonly found below the knees, that is, on parts of the body most exposed to telluric contamination. Lichtman (1947) found it on the anterior surface of legs in the middle or lower third in 41.4 per cent of the cases. Occasionally the trunk, elbows, and fingers are affected and destruction of the nail bed may follow.

Now the question arises as to why the lower legs and ankles are so commonly involved. The answer to this is that the infection is derived from the soil and grasses, that the legs are most liable to trauma, particularly in the barefooted, and that the adventitia of blood vessels of the lower third of the leg is very richly supplied with vasoconstrictor nonmedullated nerve fibers with the result that the amount of blood available to the tissues is reduced, rendering the latter more prone to infection.

Starting Point.—The ulcer starts most commonly in some form of trau —cuts, abrasions, bites, or some skin disease. Mohanty (1945) gives figures in 76 ulcers from 36 cases thus: 29 on abrasions, 12 on blebs due tight shoes, 6 on superficial cuts, 3 on boils, 25 on scabies, and 1 on burn.

Number.—Ulcers may be single or multiple. Some authors found sin ulcers in 90 per cent of their cases. Panja (1945) found single ulcers in cases out of 61, and Pandit (1947) in 50 cases out of 75. Multiple ulcers m be from 2 to 20. Debsarma (1945) found 14 in 1 case; Panja found 16 i case and 20 in another.

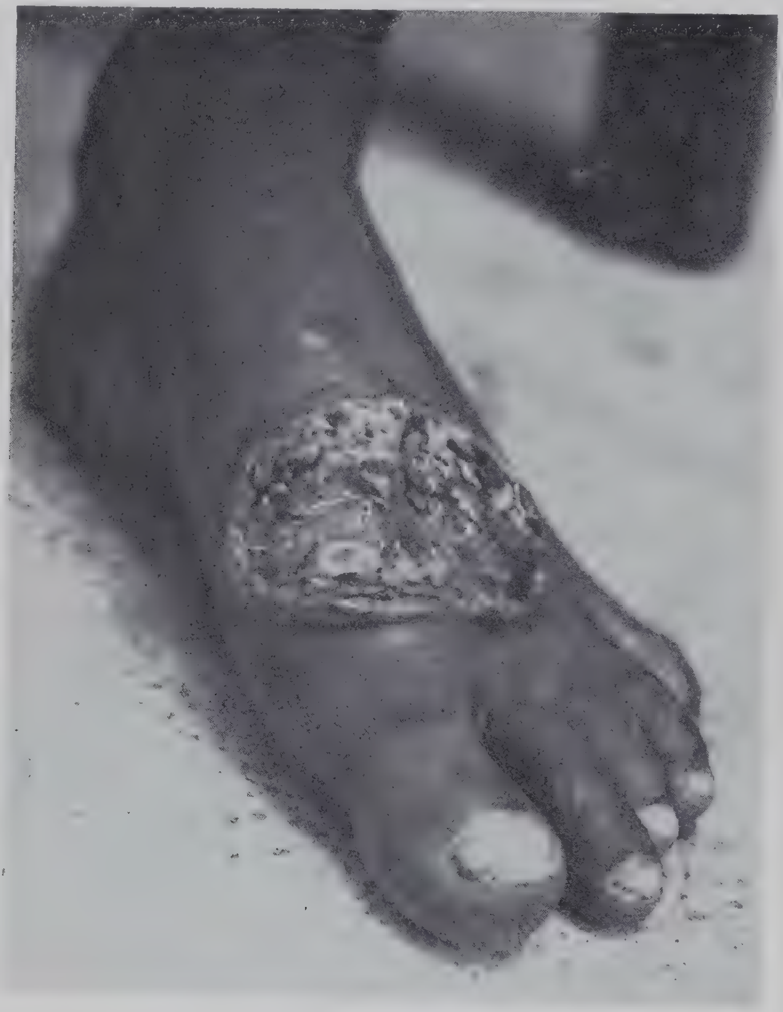


Fig. 190.—Ulcus tropicum. 1 year.

Size.—The size varies from that of a pea to more than 2 inches in diamete The majority are from ½ to 2½ inches (Luthra, 1946, ½ inch to 3½ inches Seshadrinathan, ¼ inch to 3½ inches). The largest size recorded by Ra (1946) is 4 by 12 inches; and by Luthra 5 by 10 inches.

Shape.—Circular or oval, more often circular, and sometimes so nearl perfectly circular as if marked out with a compass.

Edge.—Raised, undermined, and bluish-red. The ulcer has a cup-shap appearance. The surrounding tissue is generally normal but in early case is edematous and red.

Cavity.—Cup-shaped, full of grayish-yellow, blood-tinged, thick, often foul-smelling pus and slough. Pus is sometimes so copious that several spoonfuls can be removed with a Volkmann's spoon. The pH of pus varies from 7.4 to 8.0.

Floor.—Formed by exquisitely tender, bleeding granulation tissue. The slough is adherent to the base. The ulcer may exceptionally be deep enough to expose tendons, muscles, and even bones. Lichtman (1947) records extension to tendons and bones in 34 per cent of his cases. In the majority of cases, the ulcerative process does not extend beyond the deep fascia.

Evolution.—Various stages of the ulcer have been described. In the early stage, there is either a bleb with seropurulent and sanguineous content or a blunt, conical, painful papule. In 2 or 3 days the characteristic phagedenic or sloughing phase starts, and by a process of coagulative necrosis, pus and gangrenous slough are formed. The ulcer spreads rapidly in 5 to 8 days, and the patient feels difficulty in walking and sometimes has to be carried in arms. A peculiar watery serosanguineous discharge with a putrid odor runs down from the ulcer. Later, after weeks or months, the chronic indolent stage begins. The edge of the ulcer becomes rolled and the base hard; slough is either absent or present to a slight degree, fusiform bacilli are no longer found, and pain is considerably diminished. It is at this stage that considerable disagreement has occurred as to correct clinical, bacteriologic, and histologic diagnosis. It may be that the so-called tropical ulcers in Guatemala (Golden and Padilla, 1946) are of this stage. The authors have not found in ulcers of 2 weeks' duration any exudate or fusiform bacilli.

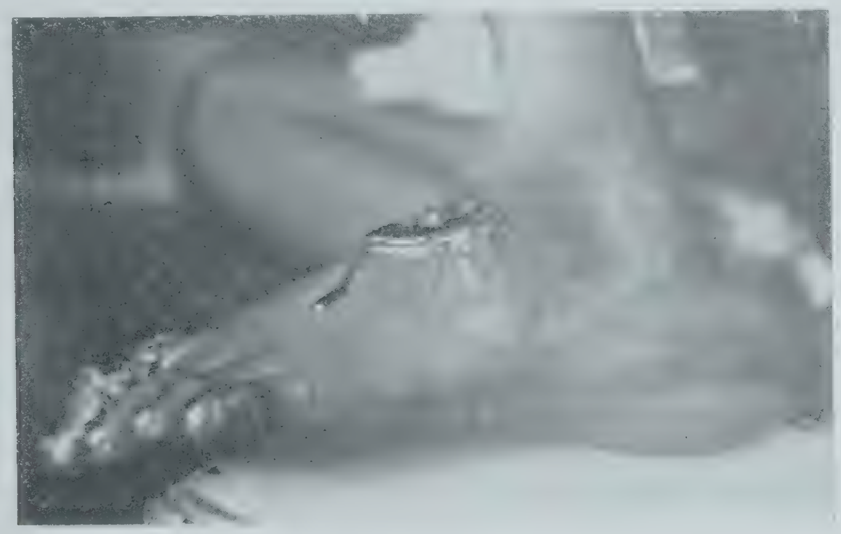


Fig. 191.—Naga sore showing typically raised margin.

In the healing stage, the ulcers are clean and practically painless. Epithelization starts at the periphery. Microscopic examination may show gram-positive cocci only. The healing is often slow and ends in a whitish scar.

Neighboring glands as a rule are not enlarged. Pattanayak (1944) and Abbasi (1944) did not find any enlarged glands. Clements (1936) found enlarged and tender glands in only 4 per cent of his cases, and Apostolides (1922) in 10 per cent only. It is only when there is a secondary infection with cocci and gram-negative bacilli that glands are involved, and in such cases pyogenic organisms are found in the ulcers as well as in the glands. The disease is, as a rule, nonfebrile except in very severe cases with pronounced secondary infection and complications. Clements has recorded fever in the acutely phagedenic type in young children.

COURSE AND PROGNOSIS

Prognosis is usually good. Death is extremely rare, though morbidity is high in some countries. Most cases heal in 6 weeks to 3 months. Average stay in the hospital before penicillin treatment was discovered was 141 days (Hughes, 1931), though copper sulfate or ''lock-up'' treatment considerably reduced the number of days. On the other hand, Pinkerton (1947), from South Iran, writes that before the advent of penicillin, type II acute phagedenic ulcer used to cause death unless amputation was performed.

IMMUNITY

There is no immunity, either local or general. A patient may get another fresh ulcer when old ulcers have completely healed. Panja (1945) could reproduce fresh ulcers at the sites of healed ulcers. Pandit (1945) recorded recurrence of ulcers within 1 year in 8 per cent of his cases. Lichtman (1947) noted scars of previous ulcers on the backs of hands and forearms in 43 per cent of his cases.

COMPLICATIONS

As a rule, there are no complications and the disease is arrested at the deep fascia, but sometimes bones and tendons are exposed. Bharucha (1943) found osteoplastic periostitis in 13 cases out of 179 cases studied. Formation of subperiosteal new bones or extensive osteoporosis was noted. Shepherd (1946) observed osteomyelitis in some of her cases. There is at times a serious danger to the life or limb of a patient. At Uganda, 2 cases are on record: a father had an ulcer which divided his tibia and the son was suffering from an ulcer extending from knee to ankle. Both had to undergo lifesaving amputation. Spontaneous fractures of tibia and fibula have been recorded. Tetanus, erysipelas, lymphangitis, and phlebitis may occur, but they are extremely rare.

In a few cases, *Staphylococcus aureus* has been isolated by blood culture by some workers.

DIAGNOSIS

The phagedenic phase of the disease commonly seen presents no difficulties in diagnosis. The points for diagnosis are:

1. Circular or oval ulcer with raised, clear-cut, slightly undermined margin, cup-shaped, full of copious, grayish-yellow, blood-tinged pus and slough, with serosanguineous discharge, very tender to touch, and situated as a rule on the lower extremities, below the knees.

2. Patients are often barefooted laborers, usually from an endemic area, generally poorly nourished.

3. History of trauma or skin lesion frequently present.

4. No constitutional symptoms as a rule.

5. The criterion of diagnosis: the presence of fusiform bacilli, sometimes of spirochetes.

DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

The following diseases come under consideration in differential diagnosis:

Veld sore (Septic sore, desert sore, Barcoo rot) is a chronic *shallow*, punched-out ulcer, usually multiple, present on the back of the hands, forearms, or legs, and sometimes on the face, mainly seen in Europeans settling in the tropics. The ulcer begins like the vesicle of an impetigo, full of straw-colored fluid. There is little undermining under the edge. Streptococcus and Staphylococcus only are usually found in the discharge.

Cutaneous diphtheritic ulcer is a punched-out deep ulcer, multiple in 75 per cent of cases, with rolled edge and floor covered by adherent membrane, seen usually in Europeans, and located on their extremities.

Corynebacterium diphtheriae can be isolated in the majority of the cases. Faucial diphtheria occurs in some of the cases, and diphtheria bacilli may be isolated from the nose and the throat. Diphtheritic neuritis may be present as a complication. Antidiphtheritic serum, 4,000 units subcutaneously in the vicinity of the ulcer, shows a strikingly beneficial effect.

Diphtheritic ulcers of Chittagong hill tracts of India (Garigha, "wheeled" sore) are found on the lower extremities, have rolled edges and hard bases covered by membrane, and little or no pus. Avirulent diphtheria bacilli have been isolated from every case and ulcers have been reproduced by inoculation of the bacilli (Pasricha and Panja, 1940). Antidiphtheritic serum is of no value in such ulcers.

Cutaneous leishmaniasis (Oriental sore, Baghdad boil, or Delhi boil) is seen on exposed parts of the body; it starts with a hard papule which develops later into an ulcer with ragged edges, thick crust on the top, and marked reddish edema at the periphery. *Leishmania tropica* is easily demonstrable in deep scrapings of the ulcer or at the edematous margin.

Ecthyma is a superficial itchy ulcer with a hard edge and adherent yellowish crust and without any undermining. Staphylococcus and sometimes Streptococcus are found in the lesion; sulfathiazole therapy acts like a specific.

Syphilitic gummatous ulcer, yaws, varicose ulcer, trophic ulcer of leprosy, tuberculous ulcer, cancerous ulcer, sporotrichosis, and **indolent ulcers** from various causes must sometimes be distinguished from the tropical phagedenic ulcer. There are no fusiform bacilli in any of these lesions.

TREATMENT

Papers have been published on this aspect of the disease more often than any other phase of the disease. Various lines of treatment have been advocated from time to time by various writers, and good results have been claimed by each with his own form of treatment. After prolonged suffering, spon taneous cures have also been noted. A careful dressing with simple norma saline alone cures many cases. To assess the value of a particular form treatment, several factors such as the number of days for cure, the state health of the patient, his diet, whether the treatment is ambulatory or the pa tient is in a hospital, and the stage of the ulcer—all should be taken into con sideration.

Hare (1946) has summarized the comparative value of several lines treatment as follows:

Bharucha (1943)—Dressing with copper sulfate solution, 1 in 150, unti all sloughs separate, then dressing with 40 per cent codliver oil in petroleu jelly, average healing time, 35 to 54 days; but dressing with sulfanilamid and iodoform powder, each 50 per cent, average healing time, 20 to 36 days.

Panja and Ghosh (1944)—Dressing with sulfanilamide dusting powder average healing time 21 to 42 days; but sulfanilamide dusting powder locall in the early stage and copper sulfate in later stage, average healing time 4 days.

Rao et al. (1945)—Sulfathiazole paste (sulfathiazole 12, calcium oleate 2 beeswax 3, codliver oil 60, water 40), average healing time, 30 to 35 days.

Marsh and Wilson (1945)—Occlusion by plaster of Paris after bipp and zipp,* average healing time, 31 to 39 days.

Brecher (1946)—Occlusive treatment by adhesive plaster, average healing time, 42 days.

Hare (1946)—Vitamin A by mouth and dressing with codliver oil, average healing time, 45 days; but dressing with zipp, average healing time, 39 days.

James (1932)—Excision and skin grafting, average healing time, less than 2 weeks, very successful.

Numerous drugs have been used by various workers:

Bactericides: Formalin, iodine, mercury, iodoform, electrolytic chlorine, eusol

Spirocheticides: arsenic, bismuth, antimony
Oxidizing agent: potassium permanganate
Reducing agent: pyrogallic acid
Caustics: copper sulfate, silver nitrate, phenol
Dyes: acriflavine, Mercurochrome, gentian violet
Astringents
Emollients
Hydrotherapy.

A résumé of the treatment by various workers is given:

Vincent's Dusting Powder.—Vincent (1945) dried the ulcer after cleaning with normal saline and then applied the dusting powder (calcium hypochlorit 1 part, boric acid 9 parts) and renewed the dressing every 3 or 4 days. He noticed healing in 2 or 3 weeks. Corpus (1924), more than 26 years ago, followed practically the same method. He washed with a solution of potassium per manganate (1:4,000), and then dusted with Vincent's powder and found clean granulation tissue from the fourth to sixth day.

---

*Zipp = zinc oxide 1, iodoform 2, and liquid paraffin 2.

Copper Sulfate.—Treatment with local application of copper sulfate was first advocated by Annesley (1828) in the Burma expedition more than a century ago, and later in 1922 by Mathur who reported that all the ulcers healed quickly when treated with copper sulfate lotion. He went on to say that the drug appeared to be specific. Still later, in 1925, the drug was used by Terdschanian in 10 per cent strength. McGuire (1933) used the drug in the following formula: copper sulfate, 180 gr.; phenol, pure, 1 fluid drachm; distilled water, 1 fluid ounce; this formula was followed by a dusting powder composed of iodoform, 1 part, and bismuth subgallate, 3 parts, and was used for 2 years in about 2,000 cases in the Assam tea gardens. McGuire found it extremely useful. One objection to the use of this mixture is that phenol is not soluble in the small amount of water used and, therefore, it floats on the top of the water. Later (1944), he followed James (1938) and replaced water by glycerin. Gunther (1938) used the drug in a dilution of 1:150 as a wet dressing, renewed it every 4 hours, and continued in this way for 36 hours, when all sloughs cleared up. He found the drug to be apparently specific. James (1938) advocated the formula: copper sulfate, 240 gr.; phenol, 1 fluid drachm; glycerin, 1 fluid ounce. The results were good. Such an application according to Panja (1945) was too strong and caused much pain, sometimes lasting for the whole night and disturbing sleep. Earle (1940) used the drug successfully in the same strength as Gunther. Panja and Ghosh (1944) employed the drug at the beginning to remove all sloughs and then recommended dusting with a sulfanilamide powder. Panja (1945) advised repeated dressing, at least 3 times a day, by irrigation with plain boiled water or weak mercuric chloride solution to remove the anaerobic condition formed by the thick slough and under which the fusiform bacillus shelters and multiplies. The irrigation was followed by painting with copper sulfate solution in glycerin (copper sulfate, 120 gr.; phenol, 1 fluid drachm; glycerin, 1 fluid ounce) and was then repeated soon after the pain so as to remove the excess of the caustic. Finally, to ensure anaerobiasis, a thick absorbent pad soaked in a solution of potassium permanganate (1:5,000) was applied. All pus and sloughs from even bad cases disappeared in 2 to 4 days. When no pus was noticed for 3 to 4 consecutive days and when clean granulation was visible, it was only then that the use of copper sulfate was discontinued and plain boric or scarlet red ointment was applied. To test the real efficacy of a drug Panja waited for the result after applying a final dressing with a bland ointment and not with saline, because a saline dressing alone, repeatedly changed, was found by him to cure several cases. Smythe (1946) treated 637 cases by first washing and then painting with pure phenol instead of copper sulfate solution, 6 times a day; he found the result satisfactory.

Occlusive Dressing.—Occlusive dressing by plaster of Paris has been advocated by a number of workers: Connell and Buchanan (1933), Grindlay (1944), Connell (1944), Walker-Taylor (1945), Irvine (1945), Diniz (1945) Hammond (1945), Marsh and Wilson (1945), Gill (1945), and Jarvis (1945).

Connell and Buchanan (1933) used, with success, zipp (zinc oxide 1, iod form 2, and liquid paraffin 2) first and then applied plaster of Paris on th top. Grindlay (1944) recommended dusting with a sulfonamide after me chanical cleaning, then application of zipp with a piece of lint, and, on th top, plaster of Paris kept in position for 2 to 3 weeks. After this period, h found clean granulation tissue, ready for skin grafting. Connell (1944) als advocated exactly the same method. Walker-Taylor (1945) practiced curet tage or excision followed by occlusive dressing with plaster of Paris, and h found the average number of days of hospital stay to be 28.2 in the first grou of cases and 17.8 in the next group. Diniz (1945) also used plaster of Paris but called the method "Zeno process," which was recommended for burns b Professor Zeno in 1943. Hammond (1945) used, with success, the occlusiv dressing made up with plaster of Paris 3, tragacanth 1, and acriflavine, 0.001 all ground in a mortar before application. He called such a dressing "Almaza Patch." Marsh and Wilson (1945) advised their "lock-up" method of treatment by bipp followed by zipp, and then encasing the lesion in plaster of Paris. Out of 85 cases, 59 healed in an average time of a little over 2 weeks. Gill (1945), in Palestine, practiced the ambulatory treatment with satisfactory results by dusting first with sulfanilamide powder and then applying plaster of Paris. The ulcers healed in 1 to 3 weeks. Jarvis (1945) used zipp, followed by plaster of Paris, with apparently good results.

Adhesive plasters were used by some workers in place of plaster of Paris. Sayers (1932) reported excellent results with a 3-inch spiral bandage of adhesive elastoplast changed every 3 to 4 days, and later weekly. Bell (1934) used strapping with adhesive zinc oxide plaster with gratifying results. Nath (1946) recommended strapping with Leucoplast in place of plaster of Paris and noticed healing in 15 days, whereas treatment with copper sulfate and sulfonamide resulted in healing in 35 days, a much longer time than in the fixation method.

Local Sulfonamide Therapy.—Bayley (1939) reported good results with sulfanilamide applied externally. Earle (1942) used sulfanilamide locally in early ulcers and found local application of whale oil extremely valuable in advanced ulcers. Abbasi (1944) recorded "marvelous results" in his 11 cases with sulfanilamide dusting powder. Mina (1945) painted the ulcers with 2.5 per cent tincture of iodine and then covered them with a dry powder consisting of sulfanilamide 1 part, and magnesium sulfate 1 part. Healing took place in 8 to 14 days. He deprecated the use of watery solutions of any antiseptic. Scovel (1946) used daily dressing with sulfonamides and zinc peroxide for 5 days, followed by daily irrigation with warm normal saline under moist dressing for 8 days. Finally, he practiced surgical method of treatment by pinch skin grafts. Hare (1946) made a comparative study of the treatment by sulfonamides, copper sulfate, magnesium sulfate, and codliver oi but finally decided on penicillin as the best. In his large series of cases, Grenoilleau (1946) used sulfanilamide dusting powder; he sprayed Sulfarsen or Novoarsenobenzol solution every 2 to 3 days and achieved rapidly a goo effect. Smythe (1946), on the other hand, found sulfonamides or iodoform of little value in the active stage of the disease.

Iodoform.—Kerby (1932) obtained best results by curettage, followed by application of bipp. McGuire (1933) used iodoform as a dusting powder mixed with bismuth subgallate, following the treatment with copper sulfate. Hoffman's (1941) zisp (zinc peroxide, iodoform, sulfanilamide, and liquid paraffin) has also been used with success. Costa (1944) cleaned the ulcers with a solution of potassium permanganate (1:8,000) and then applied 15 per cent iodoform in ether.

Operative Treatment.—James (1932) practiced excision and immediate skin grafting under spinal anesthesia. He noted complete success in 41 out of 45 cases. Healing took place in an average period of 13 days. Kerby (1932) also advocated preliminary curettage to obtain the best results. Skin grafting has been recommended by many workers when the ulcers are found clean and granulating.

Miscellaneous.—Hayman (1914) tried x-ray exposure and obtained disappearance of all pain in the first few days, and rapid cure by cicatrization, but Clements (1936) discredits this result. Corpus (1924) used 3 per cent solution of arsphenamine locally in 598 cases in the Philippines, and cured 410 cases. He declared the treatment "most effective." James (1925) applied wet dressing with 25 per cent solution of magnesium sulfate and found it "uniformly successful." Hughes (1931) used quinine or cinchona as a dusting powder and found "very good results." Innes (1931), like Hughes, used quinine externally and recorded the results as "magical." Brown (1935) found magnesium sulfate as the most suitable dressing. Mohiuddin (1943) used a wet dressing with Novoarsenobenzol, 0.3 Gm. in 1 ounce of distilled water, with satisfactory result. Pampana (1923) obtained excellent results with daily dressing of acriflavine solution (1:1,000). Shircore (1944) irrigated the ulcers with potassium permanganate (1:4,000), dusted with his A-K powder (acriflavine 3.5 gr., water $\frac{1}{2}$ pint, and kaolin $\frac{1}{2}$ pound), and then covered with a piece of lint wrung out in sterilized almond oil every other day. He found highly gratifying results. Amaral, in Brazil, found local application of normal dried serum exceedingly successful.

Summarizing all the above lines of external treatment that have been advocated and practiced in the old days, the following four methods appear to be most successful: (1) frequent cleansing with potassium permanganate solution (1:5,000) and dressing with normal saline; (2) application of copper sulfate- phenol- glycerin; (3) occlusive dressing with plaster of Paris or elastoplast; and (d) excision and immediate skin grafting in suitable cases.

Internal Treatment

Scott (1917) found antimony parenterally useful. Mei (1920) used tartar emetic intravenously and externally as a dusting powder with apparently good results. Crichlow (1920) found Galyl injection "wonderfully effective." Apostolides (1922) recorded best results with intravenous Novoarsenobenzol. Abraham (1923) found good results with his new treatment, namely, hot dressing with calx chlorinata and 2 per cent antimony tartrate intravenousl Loewenthal (1932) gave daily intravenous injection of 15 gr. of calciu chloride dissolved in 10 c.c. of distilled water and found rapid separation slough, and healing. But his cure rate was 52 per cent only. There was n improvement in about 12 per cent of his cases, and 4.4 per cent of the patien died. Brown (1935) found calcium chloride, 15 to 30 gr. intravenously dail "definitely beneficial," and also parathyroid by mouth, which promoted rapi epithelization. Berry (1943) used intravenous tartar emetic, 1 to 10 c.c. 1 per cent solution, in Indo-China; he reported good results. Ulcers took to 8 days to heal. Tournier recorded a single subcutaneous injection of 0.3 Gm. of Novoarsenobenzol dissolved in 4 per cent sodium chloride most satisfactory. Houssiau gave intramuscular injection of bismuth on 3 successiv days; he also applied bismuth hydroxide externally and obtained complet healing in a case. Pons found that a course of 4 to 5 injections only of antispirillary vaccine exerted a rapid action on the ulcers and he noted cessatio of all pains in 48 hours and cicatrization after the fourth day. On the othe hand, Panja (1945) obtained no good results with a vaccine made from cultures of fusiform bacilli.

Conclusion

Regarding the internal treatment and general management, most workers are of the opinion that calcium, arsenic, antimony, sulfonamides, non specific vaccines, or even vaccines made from a culture of fusiform bacillus and vitamin feeding are generally of no value. No rapid healing or healing at all is obtained by these medicaments. Rest is certainly important. deeply ulcerated locomotive organ is not expected to do well if it is burdene with gravitational stasis and at the same time allowed to continue its work Athough ambulatory treatment may cure all cases, still if rest be enforced cure is certainly hastened. If a patient is poorly nourished and debilitated or suffering from diseases such as malaria, dysentery, etc., good feeding an treatment of his associated ailments will promote more rapid healing.

PENICILLIN

Recently penicillin has been spoken of highly and declared to be the dru of choice, or apparently specific, by several workers starting from Hamm an Ouary (1944) and Panja (1945) working independently in America and India respectively, down to Moreau and Ouary (1945), Blank (1947), Webb (1946), Hare (1946), Whitestone (1947), Pinkerton (1947), and Gutch (1947). Panja while working on the sores in Calcutta in 1943, had sufficient experimental and circumstantial grounds to formulate "no fusiform, no Naga sore," and knowing that penicillin was effective in fusospirochetal affections, he thought o trying the drug in tropical ulcer; unfortunately, no penicillin was then available to the civil population in India. He had to write to Fleming for suppl of a culture of *Penicillium notatum* and to prepare crude penicillin in Czapek Dox medium in his laboratory. But when his crude penicillin was ready, h received a supply of penicillin (Lilly) which he used externally as a dressi in 1 available case only, in 1944, as the epidemic had then largely subsided. Judging from his experiences in treating a large number of cases by various methods of treatment, he was impressed with the dramatic result in 1 case alone. So a note was sent in 1944 to the *Indian Medical Gazette* without any knowledge that in the same year (1944) Hamm and Ouary had found penicillin effective in 18 cases. They used the drug locally in a strength of 2,800 units per c.c., and they found all sloughs and pain disappearing within a few days and complete healing taking place in 3 to 4 weeks. Moreau and Ouary later (1945) used penicillin, 250 units per c.c., in 19 cases as a local dressing with success. Blank (1947) recorded in detail with photographs the successful use of penicillin parenterally, 20,000 units intramuscularly every 3 hours, covering 18 doses, for about 2¼ days on only 1 bad case, and remarked that the penicillin treatment was the treatment of choice. Webb (1946) used the drug, 500 units per c.c., as a local dressing twice a day, and at the same time gave a maximum number of 6 intramuscular injections, 15,000 units at a time, at intervals of 3 hours. Ulcers became clean in 1 to 3 days. Hare (1946) practiced the combined method, that is, locally 500 units per c.c. for about 5 days, and 15,000 units intramuscularly in 12 hours. When the ulcers cleaned up, a scarlet red ointment was applied. Complete healing took place in a little over 3 weeks, whereas in cases of ulcers treated by methods other than penicillin, complete healing took place in more than 4 weeks. Whitestone (1947) treated cases in the hospital with a local dressing of the drug, 500 units per c.c. in most cases, and also parenterally once a day, but in bad cases only. Average stay in the hospital was 23.1 days with the penicillin-treated cases and 34.2 days in the control group of cases. Pinkerton (1947), in South Iran, used 2,000 units every 4 hours for 5 days, and found the drug to exert a specific and rapid action. He remarked also that the disease of type II, that is, the acute phagedenic type, used to cause death before the advent of penicillin unless timely amputation was performed. Gutch (1947) sprinkled dry penicillin powder over the surface of ulcers and then covered with petroleum-jelly gauze. In 32 cases out of 35 so treated, healthy granulation tissue appeared in 1 to 3 days, and he could apply pinch graft on the tenth day.

From all these reports, it is evident that penicillin promises to be the drug of choice for successful treatment of a disease which has hitherto incapacitated so many people in the tropical and subtropical countries of the world. The advantages of penicillin treatment are that the treatment can be ambulatory, there is no local or systemic reaction, pain is relieved in 24 hours, and quick healing takes place. The treatment is also very simple and can be carried out by the patient himself.

The treatment of tropical phagedenic ulcer may thus be summarized: If the patient can be admitted to a hospital, well and good. If not, he can have ambulatory treatment. The ulcer should be washed thoroughly by means of a douche jet with plain boiled water or with potassium permanganate solution (1:5,000), and while the douche jet is playing on the ulcer, all adherent slough should be disengaged with a sterile cotton swab. It is not usually possible to remove all the sloughs if an irrigator and a cotton swab are not used. Even by using this method, it may not be possible to have a clean base at one sitting. After washing the ulcer, all fluids should be mopped up with a piece of absorbent cotton wool, and then a sterile pad of gauze or absorbent cotton soaked in penicillin solution, 500 to 1,000 units per c.c., should be applied. On the top of this should be put oil silk and nonabsorbent cotton and bandage. The ulcer should be dressed in this way twice a day. An intramuscular injection of 20,000 units of penicillin should also be given and repeated every 3 hours if the ulcer is of severe type. As a rule, repeated dressing with penicillin alone suffices, and injections are not required. When no pus is seen for 3 consecutive days, a boric ointment with shark or codliver oil (2 fluid drachms to an ounce) or scarlet red ointment should be applied. If there is delay in healing, skin grafting by the pinch method should be practiced. General condition of the patient and associated ailments should also be looked after at the same time to promote faster healing.

PROPHYLAXIS

As an injury is the starting point in most cases, the wearing of puttees has been advised, and incidence of the disease found enormously decreased (Roy, 1928). Such a practice is not always possible. Cleaning of the lower legs after a day's work is very important, and whenever there is any injury or impetigo or boil or bite, penicillin ointment should be applied, if possible. If this is not available, the parts should be painted with tincture of iodine followed by tincture of benzoin compound or a boric ointment may be applied. Grenoilleau (1946) has advised the use of tincture of Mercurochrome and immediate bandaging. In fact, every precaution should be taken to prevent any skin lesion from turning into the tropical ulcer. A daily routine inspection of the legs of all laborers before joining the day's work should be carried on during an epidemic season. Such a procedure is sure to curtail the incidence to a very large extent. Destruction of flies has been advised, but this does not appear to be essential, nor is it a practical proposal.

References

Abbasi, M. M. A.: 1944. Antiseptic **41**: 604.
Abraham, R. B.: 1923. Indian M. Gaz. **58**: 479.
Acton, H. W.: 1932. Ann. Rep. Calcutta School of Trop. Med., p. 41 (quoted in Colonial Med. Rep. No. 305, J. Trop. Med. 1935, **38**: 2).
Albernaz, P. M.: 1925. Brasil-med. **2**: 123.
Annesley, James: 1928. Researches Into the Cause, Nature, and Treatment of the More Prevalent Diseases of India, Bombay Ltd. **2**: 7.
Apostolides, A. G.: 1922. J. Trop. Med. **25**: 81.
Balliano, A.: 1916. Morgagni, **58**: 205 (Abstr. in Trop. Dis. Bull. 1917, **9**: 208.
Basu, A. K.: 1943. J. Indian M. A. **12**: 161.
Bell, P. S.: 1934. Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **27**: 511.
Berry, W. T. C.: 1943. Nyasaland Protec. Ann. Rep. Med. Dep., p. 12.
Bharucha, D. R.: 1943. Indian M. Gaz. **78**: 532.
Bharucha, D. R.: 1944. Indian M. Gaz. **79**: 200.
Blanchard, Par. M.: 1914. Bull. Soc. path. exot. **7**: 96.
Blanchard, R.: 1905. Arch. de parasit., Paris **10**: 84, 129.
Blank, H.: 1947. Am. J. Trop. Med. **27**: 383.
Bopaiya, M. S., and Radhakrishna Rao, M. V.: 1942. Indian M. Gaz. **77**: 139.
Brecher, G.: 1946. Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **39**: 449.
Brown, A. A. F.: 1935. J. Trop. Med. **38**: 157, 170, 187, 201, 215.

Buchanan, J. C. R., and Sanderson, Iain: 1935. Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **28**: 505.
Burnie, R. M.: 1931. West African M. J. **4**: 77.
Byron, F. E.: 1930. Bull. Inst. M. Research, Federated Malay States, No. 4.
Charters, A. D.: 1943. Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **37**: 205.
Charters, A. D.: 1947. J. Trop. Med. **50**: 22.
Clements, F. W.: 1936. M. J. Australia **2**: 615.
Connell, W. K.: 1944. East African M. J. **21**: 255.
Connell, W. K., and Buchanan, J. C. R.: 1933. Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **27**: 239.
Corkill, N. L.: 1939. Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **32**: 519.
Corpus, T.: 1924. J. A. M. A. **82**: 1192.
Costa, O. G.: 1944. Arch. Dermat. & Syph. **49**: 260.
Crichlow, W.: 1920. J. Trop. Med. **23**: 227.
Cross, D. K.: 1900. J. Trop. Med. **3**: 85.
Le Dantec: 1884. Arch. de med. et pharm. nav. **71**: 133.
Debsarma, D. N.: 1945. Antiseptic **42**: 515.
Delamare, G., Gatti, C., and Bruyn, D., 1932. Bull. Acad. de méd., Paris **107**: 115.
Diniz, O.: 1945. Brasil-med. **59**: 129.
Dostrovsky, A., and Sagher, F.: 1946. Arch. Dermat. & Syph. **54**: 408.
Earle, K. Vigors: 1940. Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **34**: 105.
Earle, K. Vigors: 1942. Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **35**: 241.
Early, E. P. N. M., and Bharucha, D. R.: 1944. Indian M. Gaz. **79**: 200.
Edge, B. E.: 1921. Lancet **1**: 1327.
Fox, E. C. R.: 1921. Indian J. M. Research **8**: 694.
Ghose, A. K.: 1934. Indian M. Gaz. **69**: 316.
Ghosh, D.: 1946. Indian M. Gaz. **40**: 3.
Gill, S.: 1945. Arch. Dermat. & Syph. **51**: 243.
Golden, A., and Padilla, E.: 1946. Arch. Path. **41**: 612.
Grenoilleau, G.: 1946. Bull. Office Internat. d'hyg. pub. **38**: 634.
Grindlay, J. H.: 1944. Bull. U. S. Army M. Dept. **74**: 74.
Gunther, Carl, E. M.: 1938. M. J. Australia **1**: 348.
Gutch, C. F.: 1947. U. S. Nav. M. Bull. **47**: 801.
Hamm, W. G., and Ouary, G.: 1944. U. S. Nav. M. Bull. **43**: 981.
Hammond, A. G.: 1945. East African M. J. **22**: 241.
Hare, K. P.: 1946. Indian M. Gaz. **81**: 449.
Hughes, M.: 1931. Malayan J. M. **6**: 116.
Innes, Flora R.: 1931. Indian M. Gaz. **66**: 430.
Irvine, C.: 1945. Brit. M. J. **1**: 120.
James, C.: 1932. Lancet **2**: 1095.
James, Clifford S.: 1938. Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **31**: 647.
James, J. F.: 1925. Indian M. Gaz. **60**: 274.
Jarvis, J. F.: 1945. East African M. J. **22**: 134.
Kerby, T. R. F.: 1932. Lancet **1**: 235.
Keysselitz, G., and Mayer, M.: 1909. Arch. f. Schiffs- u. Tropen-Hyg. **13**: 137.
Khandehar, K. G.: 1929. Indian M. Gaz. **64**: 696.
Kini, M. G., and Vyaghreswarudu, C.: 1947. Indian J. Surg. **9**: 1.
Krumwiede, C., and Pratt, J. S.: 1913. J. Infect. Dis. **13**: 438; **12**: 191.
Lewis, J. A., and others: 1945. Trop. Dis. Bull. **42**: 405.
Lichtman, J. A.: 1947. Clin. Proc. **6**: 165.
Loewenthal, L. J. A.: 1932: East African M. J. **9**: 136.
Loewenthal, L. J. A.: 1932. Lancet **2**: 889.
Luthra, P. N.: 1946. Indian M. Gaz. **81**: 169.
McCulloch, W. E., et al.: 1928. West African M. J. **2**: 96, 101, 104.
McGuire, C.: 1933. Brit. M. J. **2**: 918.
McGuire, C.: 1944. Indian M. Gaz. **79**: 190.
Manson-Bahr, Philip H., editor: 1940. Manson's Tropical Diseases, ed. 11, London, Cassell and Co., Ltd., p. 674.
Marsh, F., and Wilson, H. A.: 1945. Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **38**: 259.
Mathur, S. N.: 1922. Indian M. Gaz. **57**: 96.
Mei, A.: 1920. J. Trop. Med. **23**: 38.
Mina, H.: 1945. Brit. M. J. **1**: 369.
Mohanty, J. K.: 1945. J. Indian M. A. **14**: 263.
Mohiuddin, M.: 1943. Indian M. Gaz. **78**: 61.
Moreau, P., and Ouary, G.: 1945. Bull. Soc. path. exot. **38**: 216.
Napier, L. E.: 1947. Principles and Practice of Tropical Medicine, London, W. Thacker & Co., p. 542.
Nath, T.: 1946. Indian M. Gaz. **81**: 169.

Nathan, N. S.: 1945. Indian M. Gaz. **80**: 7.
Onorato, R.: 1927. Bull. Soc. path. exot. **20**: 145.
Orr, J. B., and Gilks, J. L.: 1931. Med. Res. Council Sp. Rep. Series, No. 155.
Pampana, E. J.: 1923. Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **17**: 331.
Pandit, S. R.: 1945. Rep. Sec'y Advisory Board, Indian Research Fund Assoc., New Dehli, p. 63.
Pandit, S. R.: 1946. Rep. Sec'y Advisory Board, Indian Research Fund Assoc., New Dehli, p. 92.
Pandit, S. R.: 1947. Rep. Sec'y Advisory Board, Indian Research Fund Assoc., New Dehli, p. 54.
Panja, D., and Ghosh, L. M.: 1944. Indian M. Gaz. **79**: 17.
Panja, G.: 1932. Indian M. Gaz. **68**: 117.
Panja, G.: 1937-1938. Tr. Calcutta M. Coll. Reunion **1**: 10.
Panja, G.: 1945. Indian J. M. Res. **33**: 11.
Panja, G.: 1945. Indian M. Gaz. **80**: 283.
Pasricha, C. L., and Panja, G.: 1940. Indian J. M. Res. **27**: 643.
Pattanayak, G. C.: 1944. Indian M. Gaz. **79**: 521.
Patterson, R. L.: 1908. Indian M. Gaz. **43**: 401.
Peters, W. H.: 1911. J. Infect. Dis. **8**: 455.
Pinkerton, J. M.: 1947. J. Trop. Med. **50**: 243.
Plaut, H. C.: 1894. Deutsche med. Wchnschr. **20**: 920.
von Prowazek, S.: 1907. Arbeiten von dem Offentlichen gesundheitsamt der Stadt Berlin **26**: 23.
Rao, M. V. R., Colah, R. B. M., and Kalle, R. B.: 1945. Indian M. Gaz. **80**: 128.
Rao, V. R.: 1946. Indian J. Surg. **8**: 2.
Roy, D. N.: 1928. Indian M. Gaz. **63**: 673.
Ruge, R., Mühlens, P., and Verth, M. Z.: 1925. Krankh. u. Hyg. d. Warmen, Länder,
Sanarelli, G.: 1927. Ann. Inst. Pasteur **41**: 1637.
Sayers, E. G.: 1932. Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **26**: 49.
Scott, L. B.: 1917. Indian M. Gaz. **52**: 231.
Scovel, R. E.: 1946. U. S. Nav. M. Bull. **46**: 439.
Semple, D., Price-Jones, C., and Digby, L.: 1919. J. Roy. Army M. Corps **33**: 217, 281.
Sen, K. C.: 1922. Indian M. Gaz. **57**: 286.
Seshadrinathan, N.: 1945. Indian M. Gaz. **80**: 344.
Shandi, H. R.: 1932. South. Surgeon **1**: 51.
Shepherd, Margaret M.: 1946. Brit. J. Surg. **33**: 352.
Shillong, W.: 1919. King Edward VII Memorial Pasteur Institute, Third Annual Report.
Shircore, J. O.: 1944. Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **37**: 345.
Singh, S.: 1945. Antiseptic **42**: 378.
Slanetz, L. W., and Rettger, L. F.: 1933. J. Bact. **26**: 599.
Smith, D. T.: 1932. Oral Spirochetes and Related Organisms in Fuso-Spirochetal Disease, Baltimore, Williams & Wilkins Company.
Smith, E. C.: 1930. Proc. Roy. Soc. Med. **24**: 217.
Smith, E. C.: 1932. Proc. Roy. Soc. Med. **26**: 167.
Smith, E. C.: 1933. J. Hyg. **33**: 95.
Smith, E. C.: 1936. Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **30**: 259.
Smythe, E. A.: 1946. J. Roy. Army M. Corps **87**: 141.
Sternfeld, J., and Hirsch, W.: 1947. Harefuah, Jerusalem **33**: 162.
Stitt, E. R.: 1942: Diagnosis, Prevention, and Treatment of Tropical Diseases, ed. 6, Philadelphia, The Blakiston Co., 1095.
Strong, R. P.: 1906. Philippine J. Sc. **1**: 91.
Trivedi, T. H.: 1934. Indian M. Gaz. **69**: 146.
Tunnicliff, R.: 1906. J. Infect. Dis. **3**: 148.
Tunnicliff, R.: 1911. J. Infect. Dis. **8**: 316.
Tunnicliff, R.: 1933. J. Infect. Dis. **52**: 280.
Tunnicliff, R., and Hammond, A. G.: 1934. J. Infect. Dis. **55**: 380.
Varney, Philip, L.: 1927. J. Bact. **13**: 275.
Vincent, H.: 1896. Ann. de l'Inst. Pasteur, Paris **10**: 488.
Vincent, H.: 1945. Bull. Acad. de méd., Paris **129**: 545.
Walker-Taylor, P. N.: 1945. Lancet **2**: 40.
Weaver, G. H., and Tunnicliff, R.: 1905. J. Infect. Dis. **2**: 446.
Weaver, G. H.: 1906. J. A. M. A. **46**: 481.
Webb, J. G.: 1946. Brit. M. J. **2**: 49.
Whitestone, Mary: 1947. Indian M. Gaz. **82**: 9.
Wolbach, S. B., and Todd, J. L.: 1912, 1913. J. Med. Research **27**: 27.
Young, J. A.: 1932. West African M. J. **5**: 49.

CHAPTER 34

RESPIRATORY SCLEROMA (RHINOSCLEROMA)

WILLEM KOUWENAAR

Rhinoscleroma is an infectious disease of the respiratory tract, with formation of granulomatous tissue with characteristic pathologic structure, occurring from the nose to the bronchi, and caused very probably by infection with *Klebsiella rhinoscleromatis* von Frisch.

It was first described by Hebra (Vienna) in 1870 in eastern Europe, and has since been found in many other countries.

In the majority of the endemic foci the malformation of the nose is not the principal or clinically most important localization of the scleromatous process; in many cases this organ is not involved in the process at all. It is, therefore, advisable to change the old name, rhinoscleroma, given by Hebra, and to speak of the disease as "scleroma respiratorium" or "respiratory scleroma."

ETIOLOGY

Although experimental reproduction of the disease by inoculation with *K. rhinoscleromatis* has not as yet been successful, sufficient proof exists that this microorganism is indeed the cause of the disease.

This bacterium, first isolated and described by von Frisch in 1882, belongs to the group of gram-negative encapsulated bacteria. It grows well on common media, so that it can be easily cultivated. It is closely related to other capsulated bacteria, *K. ozenae* and *K. pneumoniae,* but cultural differences exist, and although the capsular antigens of the three species are affiliated, all examined strains of *K. rhinoscleromatis* have in common a specific body antigen. Thus this bacterium can be differentiated clearly from the other Klebsiellae.

The *K. rhinoscleromatis* proved to be a sharply defined species, strictly uniform, culturally as well as antigenically, the capsules being constantly of the "C" type. The strains obtained with the necessary precautions from the patients with scleroma belonged without exception to this species, and *K. rhinoscleromatis* was found only in patients and their immediate contacts, and never in regions free from scleroma. There exist, however, strains of *K. ozenae* the body antigen of which shows close relationship to that of *K. rhinoscleromatis* (Wielenga, 1937).

Thus it appears that *K. rhinoscleromatis* is a one-sided specialized representative of the capsulated bacteria and so fulfills the conditions required of a true pathogenic microorganism.

The bacterium is found in the pathologically altered tissues of patients with this disease. It is necessary to make the culture from material collected from the deeper layers of the scleromatous tissue and not from the surface of the mucosa. With this precaution, pure cultures are as a rule obtained. In slides made from the tissue, the bacterium can be found in cells which are highly characteristic of the pathologic picture of the disease, the cells of Mikulicz, and between the cells, often in a group. The Klebsiellae can be cultivated in a large majority of the cases. They have not been found in all patients, but negative results can be explained by the fact that material was taken from an unfavorable place, or that the bacteria disappeared as a result of local cicatrization and cessation of the process of inflammation. Also, according to Snijders, bacteriophage may be present, even in young cultures; these inhibit the growth and isolation of the Klebsiella. At any rate, these very rare negative results do not invalidate the thesis that this microorganism is the cause of the disease.

Apart from patients, *K. rhinoscleromatis* is found in a small number of persons without clinical symptoms of scleroma, living in close contact with the patients; very probably these persons must be considered as carriers of the bacterium, especially those in whom the complement fixation test has been found to be negative.

The bacterium has never been found outside the foci of scleroma. This also adds to the probability that von Frisch's Klebsiella is indeed the causal agent of this disease.

Some authors still doubt the etiologic role of the Klebsiella: Ash and Spitz (1945) and Reyes (1946), who think it probable that the disease is caused by a virus, the Klebsiella growing symbiotically in the pathologic tissue. The peculiar geographical distribution of *K. rhinoscleromatis*—namely, only in certain localities where scleroma occurs, and there only in patients and in some of their immediate contacts—speaks against this hypothesis.

The third postulate of Koch, the empirical production of the disease by inoculation of the Klebsiella, is the only one which has not yet been realized. Although this must leave some uncertainty as to the etiology of the disease, very little doubt can exist that the bacterium of von Frisch is, indeed, the causative agent of the disease. The same situation exists in leprosy; in that disease the significance of Hansen's bacterium is generally accepted.

EXPERIMENTAL PRODUCTION OF SCLEROMA

De Simoni (cited by Hajek) tried to produce scleroma in man by injecting an emulsion of Klebsiellae into the nasal mucosa of a cachetic tuberculous patient, without success. Rona (1899) injected the bacteria into the ear lobe of a patient with nasal scleroma, but here also no result was seen in the course of five months. Schlötter (cited by Hajek) implanted fresh scleromatous tissue under the skin of his arm, again without result.

Many authors have tried to produce scleroma by inoculating animals with *K. rhinoscleromatis.* Many times granulomata have actually been produced after injection of the bacteria into the skin or the eye of mice, guinea pigs, rats, and rabbits. These lesions showed the characteristic pathologic picture of the scleroma and from these granulomata the Klebsiella could be recovered (Sercer, 1932). It is doubtful, however, whether these lesions can be considered truly scleromatous. The lesion produced is a disease of very short duration. The granuloma appears after 8 or 10 days, and disappears after a few weeks, so that the very important characteristic of scleroma, the chronicity, is absent.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Since scleroma was first diagnosed by Hebra, knowledge about this disease has steadily increased, and with increasing knowledge more and more cases have been discovered. In Russia, for instance, only 21 cases were registered in 1888; in 1911, 128 cases; and in 1932, no less than 1,460. The disease has also been described for many years in other countries.

The principal focus of the disease is in *eastern Europe:* the Ukraine (along the Pripyat River), White Russia, and Poland. More than 75 per cent of all cases observed have originated from these countries. From this large focus it spreads toward the north

(Estonia, Latvia, former East Prussia), the east (Russia), the south (Yugoslavia, Hungary, Romania), and the west (Czechoslovakia, Germany). It is chiefly a disease of the Slavs; possibly they introduced it in other countries by immigration.

In other European countries small foci are described, often including only a few cases. The largest foci, probably related, are found in southern *Switzerland* (canton of Valais) and *Italy* (from the north, where most of the cases occur, to Naples and even Catania). It is possible that this focus also originates in emigration from eastern Europe. Isolated cases have been described from Sweden, Denmark, and France, very probably imported.

Some patients are reported in *Siberia* and *Turkestan,* most of them having migrated from Russia. One case was seen in the Hopeh province in *China.*

In the *United States,* several cases have been reported, the large majority imported from eastern Europe. But apart from these, a number of cases have been seen in persons born in the United States and who had never left the country. In statistics from the American Subcommittee on Rhinoscleroma, published by Belinoff (1932), of 37 cases registered, 26 certainly were Russians, Poles, etc., and 11 were born in North America—cases are mentioned from North Carolina and Cincinnati, Ohio (Alloway), New York (Tarell), Michigan (Howland), Greenville (Jervay), and Arkansas (Moore). Probably autochthonous cases were also described by Wende (1896, cited by de Moor), Stelwagon (1913), Watkins (1921; a Negro from Maryland, who for short times had been in South America), Kernan (1924), Canfield (cited by Wielenga; a case from Michigan; the parents had emigrated from Poland), Wood (1925, cited by Wielenga; the parents were immigrants from Austria), Figi and Thompson (1928; from New Jersey), Simpson and Ellis (1939; a patient from South Carolina), and perhaps a few others. According to Cunning and Du Pont (1943), 102 cases have been reported from the United States and Canada, including 16 in native-born subjects. Very little is known about the contact of those patients with immigrants from a focus of scleroma in Europe or Central and South America. The significance of scleroma respiratorium for the United States seems not yet clearly established.

In South America, cases have been reported from *Brazil* (Florence, 1909—1 patient; Duarte, 1923—2 cases; Terra cited by de Moor—8 Negroes; Falçao, 1945, who states that 26 cases have been reported since 1890, 16 of them autochthonous), and especially from *Chile,* where del Rio (1909, cited by de Moor) saw 31 cases. Scleroma has also been reported from *Argentina* (Balina and Aberestury, 1933, who saw 5 patients from the Andes, 4 born in Argentina; these cases are perhaps related to the focus in Chile). Vidal (1891, cited by Argaud and Laval saw the disease in *Peru.*

Endemic foci of scleroma likewise exist in *tropical countries.*

In *Asia,* a relatively large number of cases have been reported from India and Indonesia. In *India,* the disease is widely scattered over the northern and central parts of the country; Keegan (cited by Snijders, 1931) saw 11 cases from the Central Provinces; Castellani and Chalmers mention one case from Ceylon; Acton (cited by Snijders, 1931) saw several cases from the Punjab, Nepal, Bengal, Bihar, Orissa, and the Central Provinces; Rao and Menon (1941) described 6 patients in Vizagapatam (Orissa), Mohanty (1945) one case in Orissa, Ghosh and Panja (1945) a case in Calcutta. It appears that some concentration of the cases occurs on and around the Chota Nagpur plateau.

In the *Indonesian archipelago,* a major focus exists. After Snijders and Stoll (1921) had discovered the first patient in 1918, altogether about 90 cases were found among the Batak population in northern Sumatra (Kouwenaar et al., 1934). In southern Sumatra a focus exists in the Pasoemah district (Kuilman et al., 1937: 10 cases). In Bali, 13 patients were described by Noosten et al. (1934); later 29 more cases were discovered. In northern *Celebes,* scleroma is also rather frequent; Leimena and Sardito (1936) and Ooomen and Kischner (1938) found at least 15 patients suffering from the disease. In *Java* several patients with scleroma were described (Djoehana et al., 1934; Kuilman, 1938: a Chinese with symptoms of nose, pharynx, and larynx; Maasland, 1935; Ramali, 1936; and others). Here the cases are disseminated over the central and eastern parts of the island, and no definite focus could be found, although possibly a concentration occurs in southeastern Java, where more primitive conditions still prevail; Islam with its ritual ablutions will counteract the spread of scleroma among the population of this island. Finally in Flores, 5 cases were seen by Haulussy and Sardjito (1939).

Up to 1940, some 150 to 200 cases were found in Indonesia, so that this archipelago may be rightly considered as one of the major endemic centers. Recalling that in most of the places systematic examination of the often backward population has not yet been carried out efficiently, the real number of infected persons may be much higher.

Shawket al-Zahawi saw a patient with scleroma in Iraq. Some cases have also been described in Palestine, possibly imported from Russia.

Possibly 1 case in a Frenchman originated in the Philippines (Argaud and Laval, 1925); however, the patient had left the islands 25 years before the disease was discovered.

Crawford and Gerundo (1947) described 2 cases from Hawaii.

In Central America scleroma respiratorium has been described from many countries:

San Salvador: Alvarez (1885), 30 cases (cited by de Moor, 1929); Reyes (1946), 200 cases.

Guatemala: Castellani (1926), 6 cases.

Costa Rica: Peña Chavarría and Nauck (1929), 5 cases in 4 years; Rotter and Peña Chavarría (1933), 4 patients, 1 with a secondary growth in the colon; Mühlens (1927), several cases.

Colombia: Findler (cited by de Moor), 1 case; Peña Chavarría and Nauck (1929), according to whom the disease is located in the colder climate of the hills.

Cuba: Castello Dominguez (1923), 1 case; Gonzalez (cited by Wielenga), 1 case.

Martinique: Vildrain (cited by Belinoff), 2 unconfirmed cases.

Mexico: Pietro (cited by de Moor), 1 case; Alderson (1914), 1 patient; Lewis (cited by Belinoff), 2 cases.

In *Africa,* the disease occurs principally in the northern part of the continent. In *Egypt,* a major focus exists, as described by Cole Maddon (1929) and Shaheen Hassan Bey (cited by Wielenga), according to whom about 20 patients with scleroma are observed annually in the Cairo hospitals. Some cases are described from *Morocco, Algeria,* and *Tunisia* (Brault et al., cited by Argaud; Dekester and Martin, 1923; Decrop et al., 1925, cited by de Moor; Berge, 1942). In Central Africa 1 case was reported by Fischer (1932) near *Lake Victoria;* Worms (cited by Belinoff) saw 3 unconfirmed cases in *Togo.*

Altogether, about 3,000 to 4,000 cases are known in the entire world, but no doubt more cases will be found. The disease is by no means just a curiosity; on the contrary, it is of sufficient importance to justify more extensive examination of the population of many of the aforementioned countries as well as the surrounding districts. Apart from the clinical observation, bacteriologic, serologic, and pathologic examination are necessary to guarantee reliable results.

The distribution of scleroma respiratorium in circumscribed foci suggests that it is a contagious disease; this hypothesis also best explains the other epidemiologic features.

Scleroma is a disease that principally attacks the poorer population. According to Belinoff's vast statistics (1932), 94.5 per cent of the known cases in eastern Europe are poor laborers and peasants. The same is true of most of the cases in the tropics. Bad housing, insufficient food, according to some authors (Lewis, cited by Belinoff) even nutritional imbalance, and often very primitive living conditions (sleeping closely together in badly ventilated houses may be of great importance) are present in all major foci. It is essentially a disease of the "great unwashed." Long existing, prolonged contact in an unhygienic environment, among people of primitive hygienic habits, seems to be necessary for successful infection. In this and other aspects the epidemiology of scleroma closely resembles that of leprosy. These circumstances will cause repeated infestation over a long time, which seems to be necessary for development of the disease, perhaps by eventually creating a hypersensitivity to the bacterium; probably also the infecting organism may become more virulent by frequent transference (as in the case of the meningococcus).

Burack believes that the geologic condition of the soil, especially humidity, is of importance, too. Knowledge of any possible secondary factors which enable the bacterium to invade and to thrive in the human tissue is still lacking.

Infection appears to occur directly from man to man. It probably takes place by inhalation of droplets from a coughing or sneezing patient, or possibly by direct contact.

In the described conditions nasal infection in general is very frequent in a focus of scleroma. This was shown by Wolff (1934), who examined the nasal flora of a large number of otherwise healthy Bataks (the population group in northern Sumatra) with endemic scleroma, and compared the results with examinations of other Indonesians, most of them living in the same country.

The very frequent occurrence of fecal bacteria in the nose, also observed by others (it is the general experience that cultivation of *K. rhinoscleromatis* from the nasal mucosa is often made impossible by growth of quickly spreading Protei on the culture media), points to extremely defective hygienic conditions. Frequent introduction into the nose of the scleroma bacterium in an infected vehicle seems plausible.

Perhaps the observation of many authors (Streit, 1932; Elbert et al., 1927) that cases of *ozena* are also frequently seen in countries where scleroma is endemic has some importance to the possibility of invasion of the *K. rhinoscleromatis* in the nose. The significance of atrophy of the nasal mucosa has been discussed in the section on clinical symptoms.

The appearance of multiple cases of scleroma in one family is quite common and is further proof of the contagiosity of the disease.

Apparently the disease has had many new victims in the last 50 years in Russia, Ukraine, Poland, etc., although better medical supervision of the exposed population, better knowledge of the disease and its diagnostic possibilities (bacteriology, complement fixation test, pathology), and also the development of modern surgical methods may explain a considerable part of the numerical increase in registered cases. In addition, World War I (1914-1918) resulted in the introduction of scleroma in places where the disease had formerly been unknown. But in many countries scleroma is disappearing. In Switzerland, it is diminishing in frequency rather quickly, apparently through the hygienic education and improvement in sanitary conditions, reaching the formerly primitive human settlements in the remote valley (Barraud, 1923). In Austria, scleroma has almost completely disappeared.

It can thus be understood that scleroma has never been able to take root in the more civilized countries of western Europe and North America. This likewise explains why the disease, endemic among the Bataks of north Sumatra, never attacked the surrounding populations, as the people are Mohammedans and consequently live, as a rule, in better conditions of cleanliness. No racial immunity exists: isolated cases may occur in other people, but the way of living seems to be the principal factor.

Probably this also explains the fact that in most of the endemic areas outside eastern Europe only small foci are found, between which no close contact exists. These foci may be the remnants of a larger and more general endemic.

The epidemiologic distribution of scleroma in eastern Europe can be explained by direct contact. The connection between the scattered foci in the tropics is more difficult to understand. The situation existing in Indonesia makes a hypothesis possible.

At the present time a direct connection between the different Indonesian foci does not exist, but in every major focus (except possibly north Celebes) the principal inhabitants are descended from archaic strata of the population, who many centuries ago migrated in large numbers from India, and are still anthropologically and ethnologically related (a common megalithic culture is found in these countries) to the Munda races from India (Chota Nagpur), among whom scleroma also occurs. Possibly, as Snijders (1931) suggests, the disease was introduced in Indonesia with these migrating peoples in the remote past and has since survived among the descendants of these immigrants, who still adhere to many of their archaic and primitive customs. In this way, a relationship between the foci in north and south Sumatra, Java, Bali, and Flores can be established.

All arguments point to the belief that scleroma respiratorium is an old disease, slowly disappearing with the advent of better hygienic living conditions. That the medical history of scleroma is only about 80 years old, an argument used by Streit (1932) for his hypothesis that scleroma is a recent disease, can be explained by the scanty medical supervision in these usually backward countries, and by the supposition that the diagnosis formerly was faulty, just as today the uninformed make a diagnosis of leprosy, frambesia, lupus, or lues in classical cases of scleroma.

PATHOLOGY

The scleromatous process consists principally of a massive and dense infiltration of plasma cells, with some leucocytes and lymphocytes. In the early stage of development, many engorged blood vessels are present. In the slides stained with hematoxylin-eosin, many round red bodies are seen between the cells. They occur sometimes in a cell with a still recognizable nucleus; sometimes the nuclei are separated after degeneration of the rest of the cell and form the bodies of Russell or Pellizari. These are not specific but are found in many plasmocytic infiltrations. Scattered through the infiltration, single or in clusters, occur large cells with a frothy aspect, usually consisting only of a small pyknotic nucleus, narrow strands of cytoplasm, and a membrane, so that, at first sight, these cells give the impression of empty holes in the preparation. The cells do not contain fat. These are the cells of Mikulicz, and are highly characteristic for the scleromatous process. Their origin is uncertain.

Except in the most recently developed parts of the granuloma, fibroblasts may be seen; many bands of collagen connective tissue are spread through the lesion and often a hyaline mass is seen in the large parts of plasmocytic infiltration. This explains the characteristic cartilaginous consistency of the scleromatous granuloma. Later the connective tissue increases, and in old lesions it forms the greater part of the granuloma, which becomes smaller in this final stage of retraction and cicatrization.

The epithelium is often hyperplastic, with desquamation, sometimes atrophic. In the mucous membranes, metaplasia may be observed. Scanty numbers of bacteria may be present.

Malignant degeneration (carcinoma or sarcoma) is very rarely seen (Szmurlo, 1932).

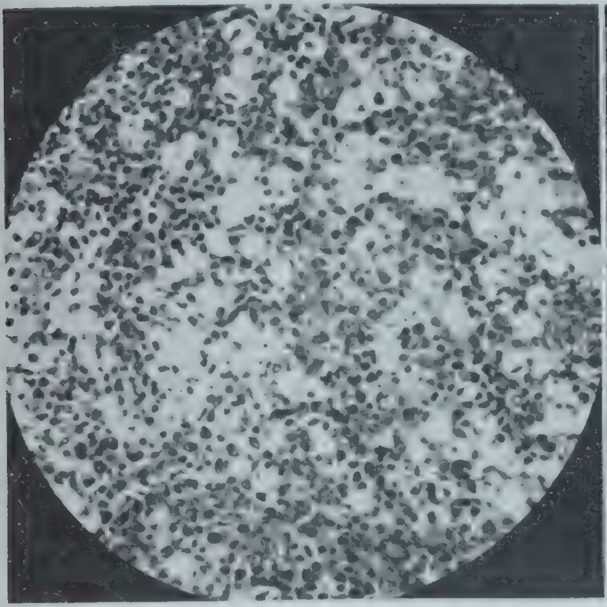


Fig. 192.

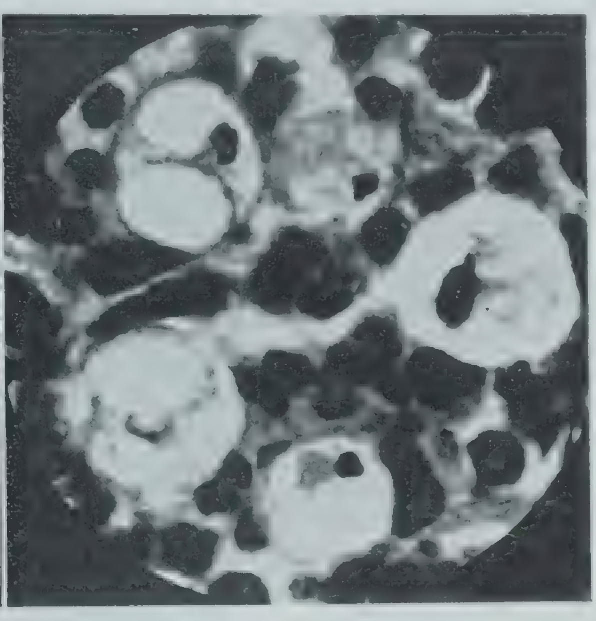


Fig. 193.

Fig. 192.—Plasmocytic infiltration with many Mikulicz cells. (×250.) (Courtesy of E. P. Snijders.)

Fig. 193.—Mikulicz cells. (×1500.) (Courtesy of E. P. Snijders.)

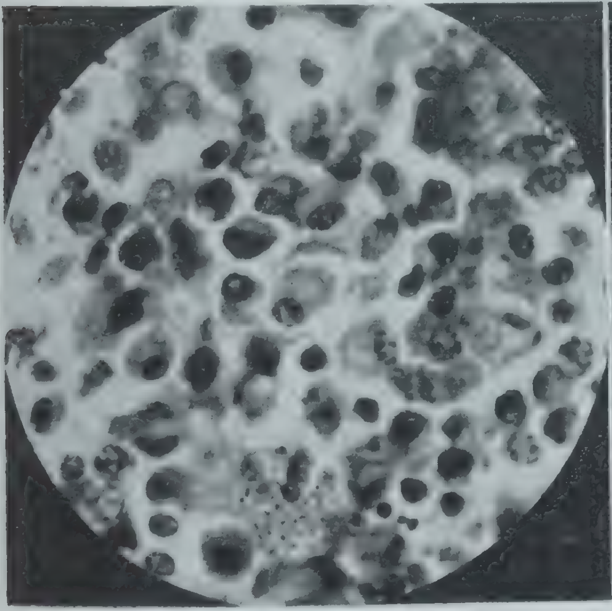


Fig. 194.

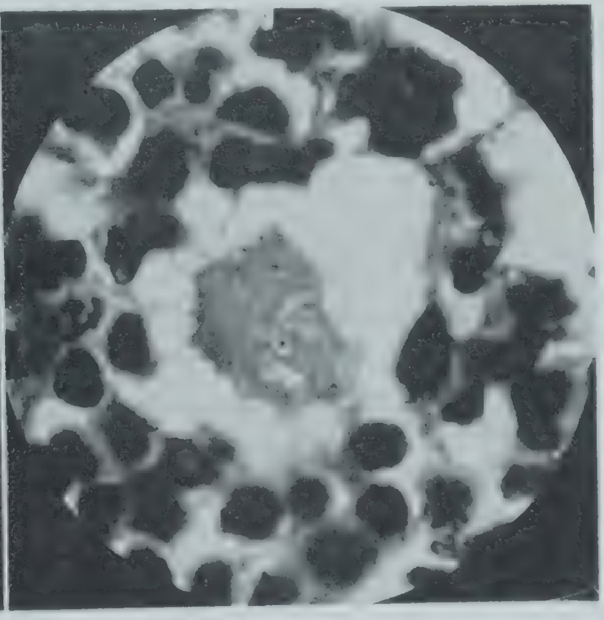


Fig. 195.

Fig. 194.—Russell cells; Mikulicz cells with Klebsiellae. (Courtesy of E. P. Snijders.)

Fig. 195.—Capsulated bacteria in Mikulicz cells. (×1500.) (Courtesy of E. P. Snijders.)

When special methods of staining (Heidenhain's hematoxylin, Levaditi's silver impregnation) are applied, many capsulated bacteria may be found in the Mikulicz cells and also in the interstitial spaces: the *K. rhinoscleromatis.* In the interstice they may form large masses, resembling colonies.

CLINICAL PICTURE

The scleromatous inflammations may localize in almost any part of the respiratory tract, from the nose and the mouth to the larger bronchi. They develop simultaneously or successively in different places, as separate affections, and in each place the process may spread to adjacent organs.

If the granulomatous process begins in the *nose,* the first complaint of the patient is usually a very irritating local itching, sometimes with attacks of sneezing, and eventually with some pain. Severe epistaxis occurs repeatedly and is often welcomed by the patient because the itching may disappear for some time after the bleeding. The nasal secretion is usually only slightly increased.

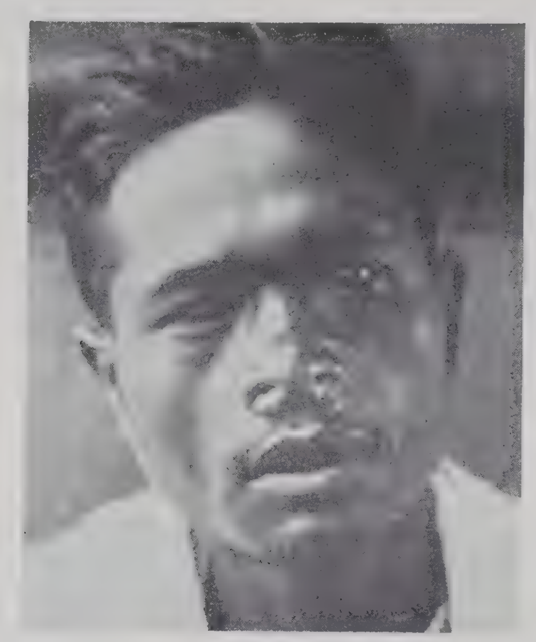


Fig. 196.—Rhinoscleroma. Scleroma of nose and upper lip.

In most cases of nasal scleroma the process begins in the nasal cavity, often at the bottom of the septum. Generally the skin is also attacked in an early stage, the tip and wings of the nose are swollen and often take a bluish-red color, at times resembling the picture of rhinophyma. Often these two lesions are connected by a small band of infiltration under the nostrils. Later, the skin of the nose becomes infiltrated over its whole extent, but the epithelial layer remains unbroken for a long time. The nose becomes more and more enlarged (Hebra's nose) partly by the external process, but often chiefly because the cavum nasi is filled with granulomatous tissue which closes the passage more or less completely; at times this tissue protrudes from the nostrils and also fills the choanae. These granulomata are usually bluish-red, sometimes gray; if not too old, they bleed easily on touch. Occasionally the growth has a pedicle and resembles a common polyp. The granulomata in the mucous membranes are often covered by sticky slime and crusts. At times ulceration develops with production of mucopurulent discharge, occasionally with an evil odor. The olfactory sense is often only slightly impaired, but ultimately it is completely lost.

The lesions occur as diffuse extensive infiltrations, or as localized small nodes or even papules. It is characteristic of the disease that the infiltrations are sharply circumscribed and that the surrounding tissue does not display any reaction. The swollen parts are usually very hard, of the consistency of wood or cartilage; often, however, the young granulomatous masses in the mucosa are much softer. The sense of pain seems to differ in different countries; according to Burack (1932) absence of pain is characteristic of the scleroma of eastern Europe, but Kouwenaar et al. (1934) in Sumatra found the lesions in the mucosa, notably the younger granulomata, very painful to touch.

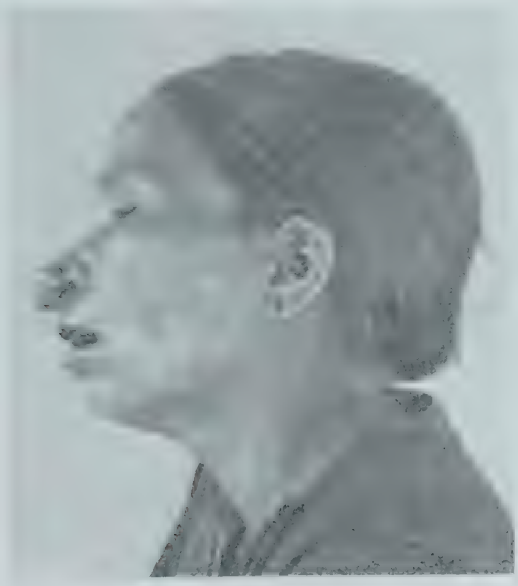


Fig. 197.—Scleroma of nose.

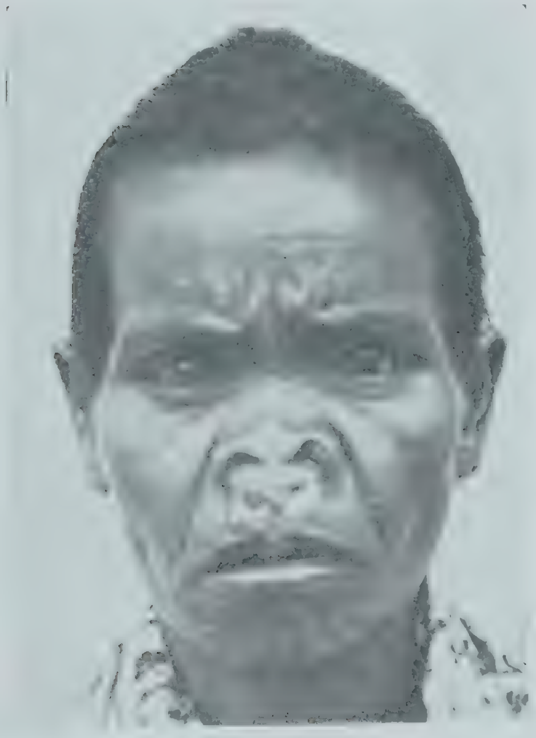


Fig. 198.—Rhinoscleroma. Infiltration of nose and upper lip.

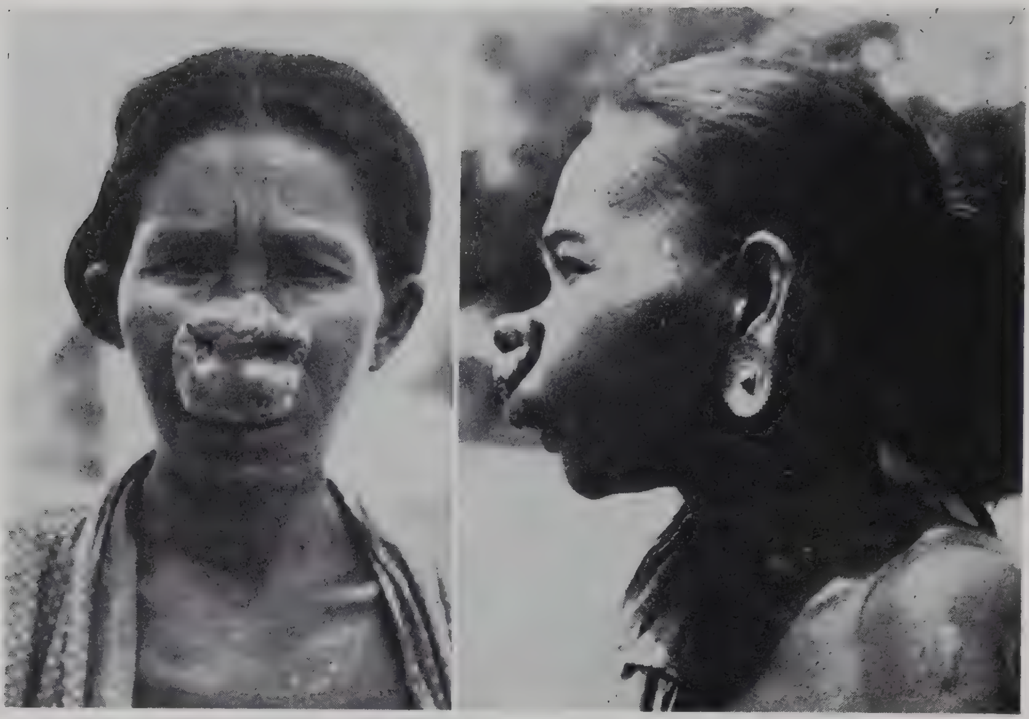


Fig. 199.—Rhinoscleroma. Extensive infiltration of nose and upper lip.

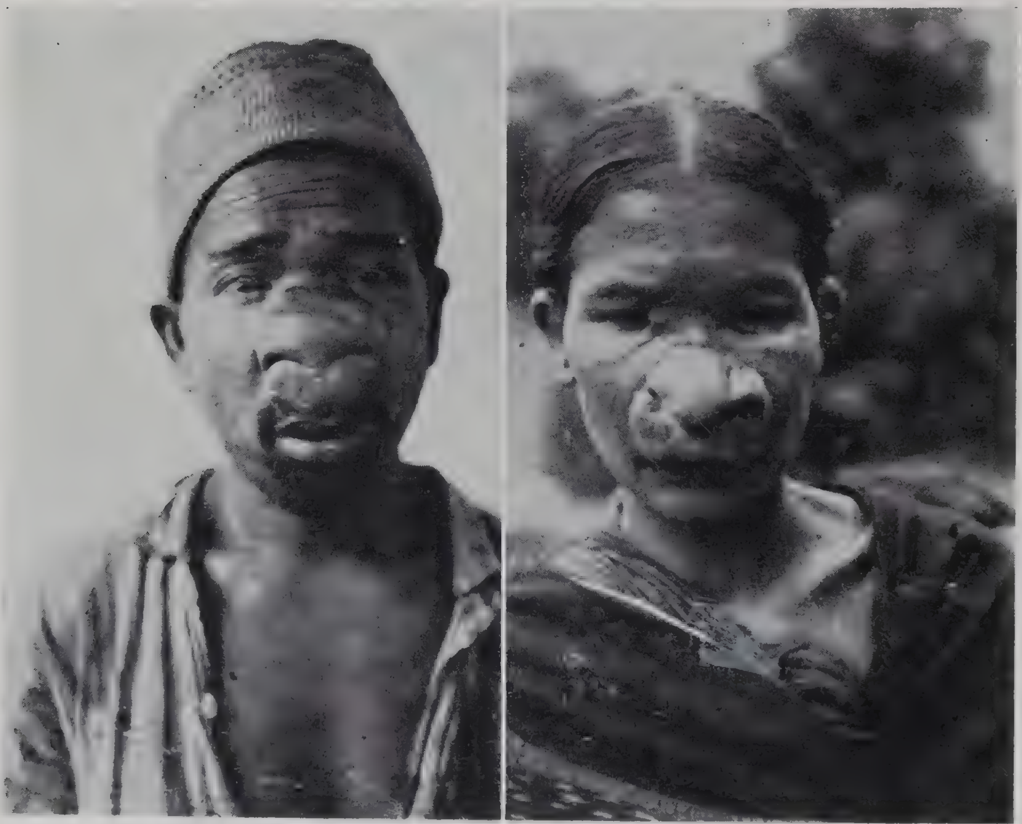


Fig. 200.—Rhinoscleroma. Hebra's nose.

As a rule the lesions are distributed rather symmetrically, although sometimes growth on one side and destruction and cicatrization (as described below) on the other side may be present; very seldom one side only is affected.

A peculiar form of the scleromatous affection of the nose is the *atrophic* or *pseudo-ozenic form*, clinically resembling *ozena*. Scleroma bacteria may be isolated from the nose, and the complement fixation test may be positive. Of course, this does not mark the patient as suffering from scleroma; it is possible that people with this condition of the nasal mucosa can become carriers more readily than other contacts with a normal mucosa. Putschowski thinks that an atrophic stage nearly always precedes the development of the typical granulomatous lesions, but the common occurrence of this picture is very much open to question and is denied by many authors. According to Burack a careful examination of these cases of atrophic scleroma usually reveals the presence of very small granulations, especially at the entrance of the nasal cavity.

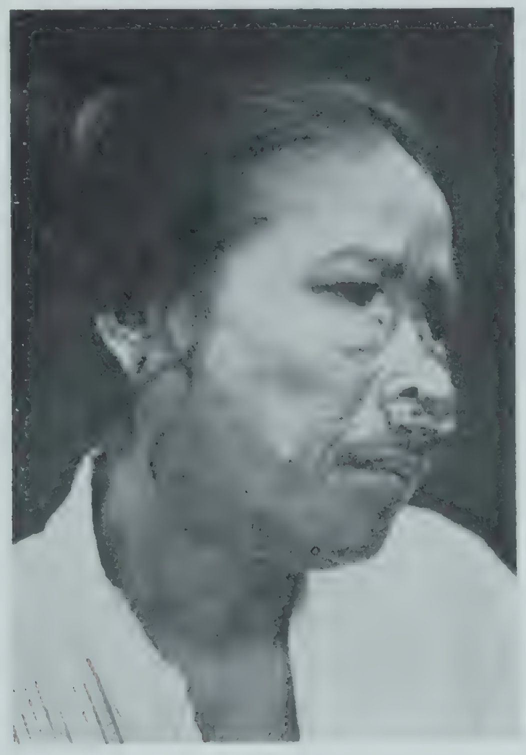


Fig. 201.—Rhinoscleroma. Granuloma of upper lip and lacrimal sac.

Sometimes the atrophic process is found in a patient who already shows manifest scleromatous granulomata in the nasopharynx or larynx. Others, however, believe that this atrophic mucosa is the only suitable basis for the invasion and development of the scleroma bacterium in the human nose (Sivak, 1941).

From this first localization the scleromatous process may spread along different paths:

1. The *paranasal sinuses* (Highmore's antrum and frontal sinus) may be filled with granulomatous masses; severe headache may be the consequence.

2. Infiltration of the *upper lip* develops early; very characteristic is the formation of a hard, sharply circumscribed semicircular swelling under the

nose, often growing through the lip, with formation of granulomata at the inner side. The infiltration usually stops at the red margin of the lip.

3. When perforation in the alveolar process of the *maxilla* occurs, the teeth are loosened and expressed. Growth through the hard *palate* is often seen, seldom with an open perforation. Small papules may develop on the gingiva. The mucosa of the cheek is rarely attacked.

4. The *pharynx* is often involved, with formation of infiltration in the soft palate, the tonsils, and also other parts of the pharynx. The pharyngeal arc may be infiltrated and later retracted, forming a sharp upper angle. Deglutition is usually only very slightly impaired. Synechiae between uvula and pharynx often occur. The infiltration can attack the choanae, the aperture becoming narrowed and sometimes completely closed. Also the fornix of the pharynx can take part in the process. When the opening of the Eustachian tube is surrounded by the inflammation, narrowing and occlusion of the tube may follow: many patients complain of buzzing in the ears and moderate deafness. Very seldom the growth invades the inner ear; even perforation through the ear and protrusion from the external auditory meatus has been reported. In very severe cases the whole nasopharynx is closed and separated from the oral pharynx.

5. Growth occurs also along the *lacrimal duct* with formation of a granuloma in the inner corner of the eye and in the lacrimal sac. Sometimes a fistula of the duct exists. The infiltration may proceed through the orbital fissure into the orbit with formation of exophthalmus.

6. Very seldom infiltrations are found in the *tongue*, sometimes as native granulomata, sometimes infiltrating from the pharynx into the basis of the tongue.

7. Scleroma of the *larynx* is very frequent in many countries. Characteristic is the formation of subglottic infiltrations, appearing as a third pair of vocal cords; sometimes as a separate wedge, at times attached to the cord. As a result the voice becomes hoarse, and later aphonic. Separate infiltrations develop in the vocal cords themselves or in the wall of the larynx. The granulomata may be covered with slime and crusts. Stenosis may develop, concentric or as a slit, and suffocation is a real danger. Sometimes infiltrations develop in the region of the aryepiglottic cartilage with malformation and retraction of the epiglottis. Edema of the glottis and laryngeal perichondritis may develop. In the larynx the atrophic form of scleroma has likewise been described, often conjointly with hypertrophic processes.

8. The *trachea* can be attacked, according to Burack (1932) in a much larger percentage than appears from the literature. The disease develops by spreading from the larynx, or as primary granulomata. Again circular stenosis may develop, or synechiae may be found with formation of strings or membranes crossing the lumen of the trachea. A place of predilection for the growth of granulomata is the bifurcation of the trachea with ingrowth in one or both *bronchi*. The smaller bronchi are very seldom involved in the process.

9. According to the majority of the authors the *cervical lymphatic glands* are enlarged in most cases. This may be partly due to the secondary infection following ulceration, but several authors (Rona, 1899; Sercer, 1932) could cultivate the Klebsiella from the glands. Pathologic examination showed only subacute unspecific inflammation.

The granulomata may grow for many years; the spread of the process through the tissues, as a rule, is very slow, but sometimes very rapid growth can be observed. Ultimately a serious malformation develops in many cases, resulting in the typical "Hebra's nose," laryngeal stenosis, etc.

The patients do not suffer unduly from the disease, and for a long time disturbances in general health are only slightly marked. Complaints of nervousness, cold hands and feet, and menstrual disorders are often reported.

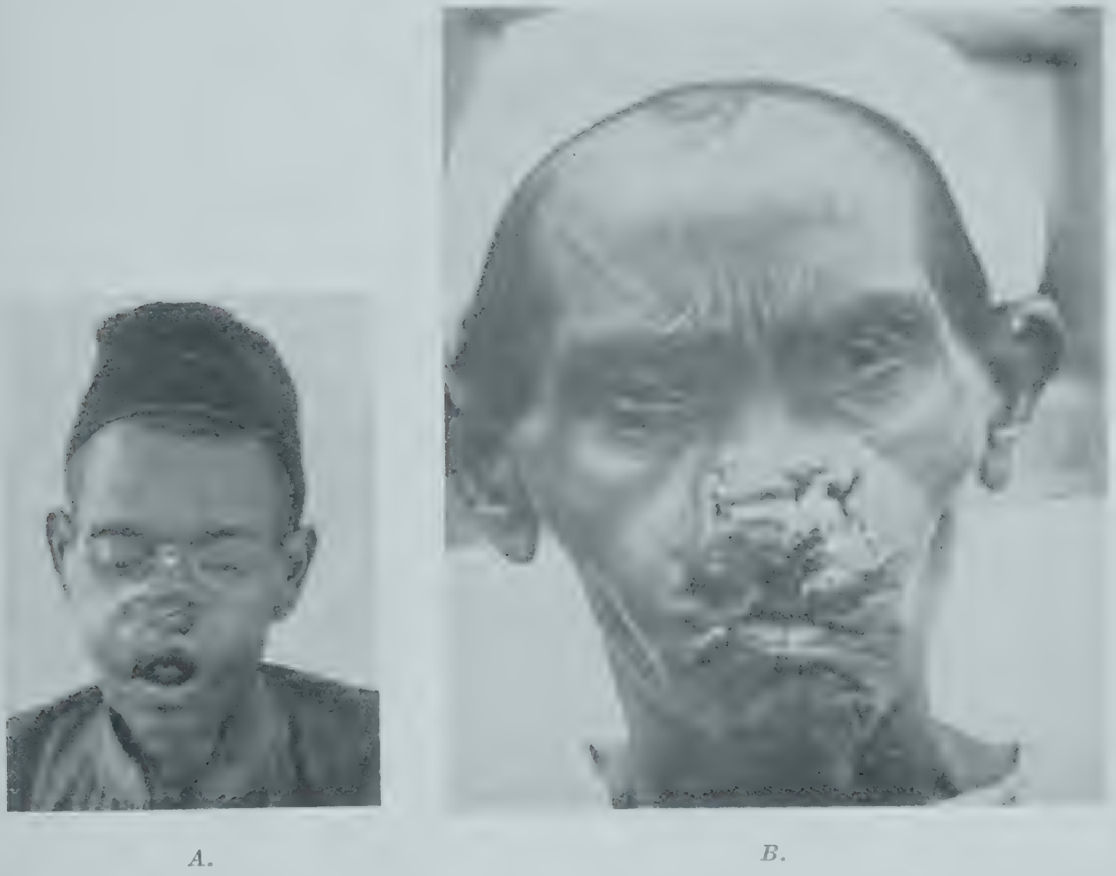

A. *B.*

Fig. 202.—*A* and *B*, Rhinoscleroma. Destruction and cicatrization.

Comparatively little is known regarding microscopic and biochemical changes in the blood. Burack (1932) saw leucocytosis in 10 per cent of his cases only and shift to the left in 60 per cent. Severe anemia seldom occurs. The sedimentation rate is sometimes high. A rise in the calcium and potassium (Kalin, 1927) and cholesterin level, and an increase of the pH of the blood have been observed, especially in severe cases.

Emphysema, emaciation, anemia, and finally cachexia are not infrequently found in the final stages in cases with stenosis.

In the course of the years, many cases show a decrease in size of the granulomata, usually by retraction due to the formation of more connective tissue, sometimes by ulceration and massive destruction of the tumor, followed by cicatrization. In this way, a quiescent stage is reached with large external and internal defects and temporary cessation of the spread of the infection. In a single patient all different stages of growth and destruction may be present at the same time.

These processes cause the tumefaction to disappear locally, and by the retraction of the newly formed connective tisue new complications may arise. In the nose in the later stages of the disease, a very narrow circular stenosis can be found, as a diaphragm or a funnel, consisting of very tough connective tissue, with an opening of only 1 or 2 mm. Malformation of the nose and upper lip appear, as may be seen from the accompanying figures; the external nose may disappear; cicatrization of the inflammation in the pharynx, larynx, and trachea likewise can produce stenosis.

The clinical picture in this stage can be indistinguishable from that of gangosa (rhinopharyngitis mutilans), but the scleromatous nature of the process can be proved by cultivation of the bacterium, by a positive complement fixation test with rhinoscleroma antigen, by a negative Wassermann reaction, and, finally, by the characteristic pathologic changes in tissue recovered by biopsy from a still active portion of the lesion.

From this description it will be plain that the clinical picture can present a great many different aspects. Burack, especially, who compiled the descriptions from literature before 1932, gives a very complete list of all possibilities.

The clinical picture seems to differ in different countries: in Sumatra, Snijders (1931), Kouwenaar et al. (1934), and Oomen and Kirschner (1938) found destructive processes not uncommon, whereas Burack rarely observed them on an extensive scale in eastern Europe. The chief localizations of the disease may likewise vary, as may be gathered from Table XX, showing the frequency of the different localizations of the disease.

TABLE XX

AUTHOR	Burack	Pachonsky	Putschkowsky	Kordatawa	Lehm
COUNTRY	White Russia	Poland	Ukrajina	Russia	Poland
TOWN	Minsk	Krakow	Kiew		Lwow
NUMBER OF OBSERVATIONS	460	273	?	143	457
LOCALIZATION (%)					
Nose	74.1	56.8	72.9	84.6	75.0
Pharynx	51.3	24.5	25.7	27.2	30.0
Nasopharynx	57.2	63.0	60.0	62.9	?
Larynx	72.4	81.7	58.5	62.9	70.0
Trachea	35.0	27.4	?	13.2	6.7
Bronchi	16.3	4.4	?	7.6	1.1

These statistics contain particulars of large numbers of patients all originating from eastern Europe (Poland and the U.S.S.R). The frequencies of observed cases of scleroma of the larynx and especially of the trachea and bronchi differ considerably. This difference may be explained, at least partially, by a varying thoroughness of the examination. But this cannot explain all, for the figures regarding localizations in other organs likewise show marked differences. The reason for these differences are unknown; Burack mentions climate and social circumstances.

Generally speaking, the cases reported from tropical countries are few and scattered. Statistics of Kouwenaar et al. (1934) are somewhat different. Among 55 cases in Bataks in Sumatra, they saw, in 100 per cent, affections of the nose; in 17.6 per cent, of the pharynx and nasopharynx; and only once a dubious lesion in the larynx. One must remember, however, that all these observations were made in the field under primitive conditions, and that only a part of the patients were examined by an expert laryngologist. It is therefore probable that cases of scleroma of the larynx have been overlooked. However, it is very striking that the observers did not find a single case of scleroma in which the process had given rise to more or less serious complaints of laryngeal disturbances, dyspnea, stenosis, or even aphonia, and also that on questioning neither the physicians practicing in the endemic area nor the population had any knowledge of patients with these complaints or of any who had died of suffocation. Neither do other authors, describing scleroma in Indonesians, mention laryngeal involvement; among the extensively published cases (about 100), slight and dubious lesions from the larynx were present in only 3. It seems indeed probable that a difference exists and that scleroma respiratorium in Indonesians has less tendency to attack the larynx and trachea than is the case in Europe.

Scleroma respiratorium is a very chronic process; the disease can last for many years. It is a disease of young adults; 70 to 80 per cent of the cases observed for the first time occur between the ages of 20 and 35 years, but possibly these infections have existed for many years. Children may also be affected. The youngest patient observed was 2 years and 7 months old (Burack). According to all statistics, incidence in women is higher than in men (58.5 per cent and 41.5 per cent, respectively, in Belinoff's inclusive statistics; in Indonesia the literature contains descriptions of the disease in 74 women and 31 men patients).

Nothing is known about the period of incubation, nor is it known how the disease is acquired. The first symptoms in many cases are likely to cause such slight complaints that the patient is first seen and the diagnosis made many months or even years after the beginning of the disease.

Once the infection has begun, the disease may progress slowly for many years, causing granulomata of ever-increasing size and number and attacking other regions of the respiratory tract. Patients who have had the disease for more than 50 years have been observed (Burack). The prognosis *quoad vitam* is usually favorable; the general health is only slightly impaired. There is danger of stenosing processes developing in the larynx, trachea, or bronchi, but if treatment is adequate to maintain the possibility of respiration (by tracheotomy, for instance), life can again be prolonged for years.

DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis is based on the following criteria:

1. Clinical Picture

In the majority of cases, the malformation is very typical. Physicians with knowledge of the disease can easily differentiate this from tumor, lupus, lues, frambesia, or leprosy; diagnosis of the last two diseases is frequently made in the tropics by those not familiar with scleroma. The residual forms with cicatrization or massive ulcerations may closely resemble lupus or rhinopharyngitis mutilans (gangosa, frambesia). In true gangosa, however, the Wassermann reaction is nearly always positive. Polyps of the nose are much softer; they are pedunculated and have a different appearance. The initial and atypical forms, like the atrophic form, are difficult to evaluate, and here other diagnostic means are of greater importance. For a definite diagnosis positive results of the following examinations are necessary:

2. Bacteriologic Examination

The Klebsiella must be cultivated from the deeper layers of the tissue, but with this precaution they are found in a large majority of the cases. A positive culture greatly supports the diagnosis; however, carriers exist among the immediate contacts of the patients.

3. Complement Fixation Tests

The complement fixation reaction was first described by Goldzieher and Neuber (1909), and later confirmed; the technic has been modified by many investigators. An extract of *K. rhinoscleromatis* is used as antigen. According to the general experience, this reaction, if performed with sufficient care, is specific. Neuber and Adam (1934) saw a positive reaction in 80 to 90 per cent of the manifest cases, Wolff (1934) in 92.5 per cent, Guerkesse and Aloukère (1935) in 95 per cent. Unspecific reactions occur rather seldom; Wolff, e.g., found them in only 1 per cent of 501 controls. According to Alooker (1941) a negative reaction in a suspect patient can be converted into a positive reaction by intravenous injections of tartar emetic.

Besides the manifest cases, positive reactions are also found in a number of people living in close contact with these patients, just as is the case in finding Klebsiellae. It is still uncertain whether a person with a positive complement fixation reaction is indeed suffering from the disease, that is, developing anatomical lesions, or whether these have developed before. It also seems possible that a carrier may develop a positive complement fixation test.

The only other disease in which a positive test with scleroma antigen sometimes occurs is *ozena;* Wiraboff (1929) saw 7 per cent positive reactions among 57 patients. However, these observations were made in a geographic focus of scleroma, and secondary infection with *K. rhinoscleromatis* was found in 6 per cent of his *ozena* patients; 2 of these carriers also had a positive complement fixation test. Indeed, *K. ozaenae* may have some capsular antigen and even body antigen in common with *K. rhinoscleromatis.*

The complement fixation reaction, then, is usually positive in the patients. Sometimes contacts are found with a positive reaction but without distinct scleromatous lesions. In those cases doubt exists whether these are patients with scleroma or are healthy carriers, contact with the bacterium having resulted in production of antibodies but not in the development of clinical and anatomical symptoms. An unspecific reaction is of rare occurrence.

The reaction is a very valuable aid in the diagnosis of scleroma. Especially in epidemiologic investigations (field work) has extensive use been made of this test.

4. Agglutination Test

Agglutination tests with *K. rhinoscleromatis* have given inconstant results and have not yet found extensive use. According to Neuber and Adam (1934) and Guerkesse and Aloukère (1935), the agglutination test is very specific: the latter authors found that the results parallel the complement fixation reaction in 45 out of 52 cases. It is necessary to use the bacterial variant without a capsule.

When more satisfactory technics are developed, the agglutination reaction will probably prove of more importance than at the present time.

5. Intracutaneous Allergic Test

Neuber (1933) saw that a positive cutaneous reaction appears after intracutaneous injection of a suspension of the Klebsiellae (prepared by treating dried bacteria with ether), together with a focal reaction. The observation, however, must be prolonged for at least 8 days, the reaction occurring during the first 3 days being nonspecific. No positive reactions were seen in cachectic patients. According to Neuber, these patients can be temporarily anergic to the bacteria; after injection of a gold preparation (Solganol-B Oleosum—Schering) they became allergic and the reaction positive. Kuilman et al. (1937) also saw satisfactory reactions, but other authors could not report consistent results.

The intracutaneous reaction needs more confirmation but will probably become a useful adjuvant to the diagnosis.

6. Histologic Section

The characteristic pathologic picture in tissue removed by biopsy is usually clear enough to preclude any doubt.

TREATMENT

No unanimity of opinion exists as to the best methods of treatment of scleroma. Good results have been reported following treatment with x-rays or radium: often the granulomata decrease in size and are absorbed for the greater part. One danger is the formation of cicatricial tissue in the larynx with stenosis and danger of suffocation. Radiation must be applied repeatedly for a long time to prevent relapses. Reyes (1946) gives 7 applications of roentgen rays (200 KV, filter 0.5 mm. copper and 1 mm. aluminum, focal distance 50 cm., dose 200 r. per day) for 7 consecutive days, and repeats these courses of radiation several times over a 2-year period.

Administration of polyvalent vaccines made from *K. rhinoscleromatis* has been developed by Neuber, and very satisfactory results have been reported. As stated above, focal reaction may be observed even after the diagnostic intracutaneous injection of Klebsiella, and long-continued administration of these bacterial suspensions may bring about complete disappearance of the granulomata. If no success is obtained, preliminary injections of Solganol may be necessary (see skin reaction). Recently Neuber (1941) and Belinoff (1941) advised alternating treatment with vaccine and gold preparations, combined with transfusions of blood or serum of convalescent patients.

Treatment by drugs has been tried with a large number of preparations. Success has been reported from the use of tartar emetic or gold injections, preferably in combination with injections of vaccines. Reyes (1946) recommends azosulfamide. Devine et al. (1947) noted disappearance of all clinical symptoms after 2 months of treatment with streptomycin; the patient received a total dose of 97.25 Gm. of that antibiotic. No relapse was seen within 10 months. More experience with these newer remedies is needed.

In those cases where the growth of the granulomata, secondary cicatrization, or even acute glottis edema endanger life by suffocation, surgical intervention will be indicated. Stenosis of the larynx or of the upper trachea sometimes can be relieved by intubation, but usually the effect is unsatisfactory and tracheotomy or laryngofissure with removal of the growths, or electrocoagulation is necessary. Plastic operations may be helpful. Also the stenosing process in the nose, the malformation of the pharynx, and stenosis of the choanae can be managed surgically. Large external tumors can be ablated. Local application of dry ice is advised. The prognosis of surgical treatment is uncertain; in some patients growth of new granulomata necessitates repeated operations; in others destruction and cicatrization helps to diminish the symptoms, and life can be prolonged considerably.

References

Alderson: 1914. A Case of Rhinoscleroma, J. Cutan. Dis. incl. Syph., N. Y. **32**: 308.

Alooker: 1941. The Possibility of Intravenous Injection of One Percent Solutions of Tartaras Stibiatus as a Means to Convert the Negative Reaction of Complementary Binding (Bordet-Gengou) Into a Positive One in Cases Which Are Suspicious as Scleromatic as Also in Those of Atypical and Latent Forms of Scleroma, Zentralbl. f. Hals-, Nasen- u. Ohrenh. **34**: 411.

Argaud, and Laval: 1925. Sur un cas de rhinosclérome, Arch. internat. de laryng. **31**: 1164.

Ash, J. E., and Spitz, Sophie: 1945. Pathology of Tropical Diseases. An Atlas, Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Company, p. 14.

Balina, and Aberestury: 1933. Ein Fall von in Argentinien entstandenem Rhinosclerom, Arch. f. Schiffs- u. Tropen-Hyg. **37**: 542.

Barraud: 1923. Considerations sur le rhinosclérome, Arch. internat. de laryng. **29**: 839.

Belinoff, S.: 1932. Épidemiologie du sclérome, rapports sur le sclérome. II Congr. internat. d'Oto-Rhino-Laryngologie Madrid, Staikoff, Sofia.

Belinoff, S.: 1941. Ueber die Pathologie und Therapie des Skleroms, Zentralbl. f. Hals-, Nasen- u. Ohrenh. **34**: 348.

Berge, C.: 1942. Étude bacteriologique d'un bacille de Frisch isolé du premier cas de rhinosclérome publié en Tunesie, Arch. Inst. Pasteur de Tunis **31**: 197.

Burack, S.: 1932. Klinik und Therapie des Rhinoscleroms, Rapports sur le sclérome. II Congr. internat. d'Oto-Rhino-Laryngologie Madrid, Staikoff, Sofia.

Castellani, A., and Chalmers: 1919. Manual of Tropical Medicine, London, Baillière. Tindall & Cox.

Castellani, A.: 1925. Tropical Rhinoscleroma, J. Trop. Med. **28**: 5.

Castello Dominguez, J.: 1923. Rhinoscleroma; Report of a Case, J. Trop. Med. **26**: 197.

Cole, Maddon: 1923. In Byam, W., and Archibald, R. G. (editors): The Practice of Medicine in the Tropics, New York, Oxford University Press, vol. 3, p. 2518.

Crawford, H. E., and Gerundo, M.: 1947. Rhinoscleroma; Report of First Two Cases Recognized in Hawaii, Hawaii M. J. **7:** 23.

Cunning, D. S., and Du Pont, Guerry: 1943. Scleroma, Eye, Ear, Nose, and Throat Monthly 552.

Dekester and Martin: 1923. Un cas de rhinosclérome au Maroc, Arch. internat. de laryng. **29:** 424.

Devine, K. D., Weed, L. A., Nicholls, D. R., and New, E. B.: 1947. Rhinoscleroma Apparently Cured With Streptomycin, Abstract Medica **1:** 356.

Djoehana, M., Mochtar, A., and Sardjito, M.: 1934. Een geval van Rhinoscleroom op Java, Geneesk. tijdschr. v. Nederl.-Indië. **74:** 1465.

Duarte: 1923. Zwei Fälle von Rhinosclerom, Zentralbl. f. Haut- u. Geschlechtskr. **12:** 470.

Elbert, B., Feldmann, B., and Gerkes, W.: 1927. Die epidemiologische und klinische Bedeutung der Komplementbindungsreaktion bei Rhinosklerom, Centralbl. f. Bakteriol. (Abt. 1) **101:** 384.

Falçao, P. C.: 1945. Contribuçao ao estudo do rhinoscleroma no Brazil, Brasil-med. **59:** 136.

Figi, F. A., and Thompson, L.: 1928. Rhinoscleroma, J. A. M. A. **91:** 637.

Fischer, D.: 1932. Studien zur Pathologie und Epidemiologie Ost-Afrikas, Beobachtungen und Untersuchungen in Mandatsgebiet Tanganyicka (Deutsch-Ost Afrika), Beiheft Arch. f. Schiffs- u. Tropen-Hyg. (Beihft. 1) **36:** 1.

Florence: 1909. Rhinoscleroma cum contaminacao do olho, Centralbl. f. Bakteriol. (Etc.), Jena (Ref.) **48:** 326.

Ghosh, L. M., and Panja, D.: 1945. A Case of Rhinoscleroma, Indian M. Gaz. **80:** 511.

Goldzieher, and Neuber: 1909. Untersuchungen über das Rhinosclerom, Centralbl. f. Bakteriol. (Etc.), Jena (Orig.) **51:** 121.

Goslings, W. R. O.: 1933. Onderzoekingen over bacteriologie en serologie van het Scleroma respiratorium, Thesis, Amsterdam.

Goslings, W. R. O., and Snijders, E. P.: 1934. Untersuchungen über das Scleroma respiratorium (Sklerom); das Sklerom in Niederländisch-Indien, nebst einigen Bemerkungen über die Epidemiologie dieser Krankheit, Zentralbl. f. Bakt. (Abt. 1) **132:** 343.

Goslings, W. R. O., and Snijders, E. P.: 1936. Untersuchungen über das Scleroma respiratorium (Sklerom); die antigene Struktur der Skleromstämme im Vergleich mit den anderen Kapselbakterien, Zentralbl. f. Bakt. (Abt. 1) **136:** 1.

Guerkesse, W. M., and Aloukère, S. M.: 1935. La réaction de fixation der Complément dans le sclérome, comme méthode de contrôle de l'efficacité du traitement, Ann. Inst. Pasteur **55:** 441.

Hajek, M.: 1932. Geschichte des Skleroms, Rapports sur le sclérome, II Congr. internationale d'Oto-Rhino-Laryngologie, Madrid, Staikoff Sofia.

Haulussy, M., and Sardjito, M.: 1939. Rhinoscleroom op Flores, Geneesk. tijdschr. v. Nederl. Indië **79:** 2626.

Have, B., ten: (1943. Onderzoekingen over de groep der kapselbacillen, Thesis, Amsterdam.

Kalin: 1928. Rhinoscleroma, J. A. M. A. **90:** 816.

Kernan : 1924. Case of Rhinoscleroma, Laryngoscope **34:** 738.

Kouwenaar, W., Maasland, J. H., and Wolff, J. W.: 1934. Rhinoscleroom op Sumatra, Geneesk. tijdschr. v. Nederl.-Indië **74:** 1187.

Kuilman, J., Kaiser, P. J., and Sardjito, M.: 1937. Rhinoscleroom in Pasoemah Highlands of Southern Sumatra, Geneesk. tijdschr. v. Nederl.-Indië **77:** 770.

Kuilman, J.: 1938. Geval van Rhinoscleroom bij een Chinees, Nederl. tijdschr. v. geneesk. **82:** 2274.

Leimena, J. M., and Sardito, M.: 1936. Rhinoscleroom in de Minahassa, Geneesk. tijdschr. v. Nederl.-Indië **76:** 2010.

Maasland, J. H.: 1935. Rhinoscleroma, Geneesk. tijdschr. v. Nederl.-Indië **75:** 2162.

Mohanty, J. K.: 1945. Presence of Rhinoscleroma in the Koraput District of S. Orissa, Indian M. Gaz. **80:** 458.

de Moor, C. E.: 1929. Het Rhinoscleroom in het bijzonder in de tropen, Amsterdam, Thesis.

Mühlens: 1927. Festschrift B. Nocht, Hamburg, Friederichsen, p. 361.

Neuber, E.: 1932. Serologische und allergische Reaktionen beim Sklerom, Rapport sur le Sclérome. II. Congres internat. d'Oto-Rhino-Laryngologie, Madrid, Staikoff Sofia.

Neuber, E.: 1933. Serologische und allergische Reaktionen beim Sklerom, Wien. klin. Wchnschr. **46:** 935.

Neuber, E.: 1941. Serologische und allergische Reaktionen des Skleroms und seine specifische Therapie, Zentralbl. f. Hals-, Nasen- u. Ohrenh. **34:** 78.

Neuber, E., and Adam, J.: 1934. Beiträge zur Diagnose und spezifischen Therapie des Kehlkopfskleroms, München. med. Wchnschr. **81**: 351.

Noosten, H. H., Kirschner, L., and Vos, J. J. Th.: 1934. Rhinoscleroom op Bali, Geneesk. tijdschr. v. Nederl.-Indië **74**: 835.

Oomen, H. A. P. C., and Kirschner, L.: 1938. Endemisch Scleroom in een Minahassisch dorp, Geneesk. tijdschr. v. Nederl.-Indië **78**: 1032.

Peña Chavarría, A., and Nauck, E. G.: 1929. Zur Rhinoskleromverbreitung in Mittelamerika, Arch. f. Schiffs- u. Tropen-Hyg. **33**: 12.

Ramali: 1936. Een nieuw geval van Rhinoscleroom op Java, Geneesk tijdschr. v. Nederl.-Indië **76**: 3313.

Rao, B. T., and Menon, T. B.: 1941. A Study of Rhinoscleroma in Vizagapatam, Indian M. Gaz. **76**: 321.

Reyes, E.: 1946. Rhinoscleroma, Arch. Dermat. & Syph. **54**: 531.

Rona: 1899. Über die Rhinosclerombacillen, Arch. f. Dermat. u. Syph., Wien & Leipz. **49**: 265.

Rotter, W., and Peña Chavarría: 1933. Über Darmrhinosklerom. (Zugleich ein Beitrag zur Verbreitung des Rhinoskleroms in Mittelamerika), Virchows Arch. f. path. Anat. **289**: 345.

Sercer, A.: 1932. Die experimentelle Pathologie des Skleroma, Rapport sur le Sclérome, II Congres internat. d'Oto-Rhino-Laryngologie, Madrid, Staikoff Sofia.

Shawket Al-Zahawi: 1939. Un cas de rhinosclérome en Irak, Bull. Office internat. d'hyg. pub. **31**: 1473.

Simpson, C. A., and Ellis, F. A.: 1939. Rhinoscleroma, Zentralbl. f. Bact. **134**: 131.

Sivak, M.: 1941. Das Sklerom in der Slowakei, Monatschr. f. Ohrenh. **75**: 55.

Snijders, E. P., and Stoll, A.: 1921. A Case of Rhinoscleroma in a Malay Woman in Sumatra, Tr. 4th Cong. Far East Assoc. Trop. Med., p. 269.

Snijders, E. P.: 1931. An Endemic Focus of Rhinoscleroma in Sumatra, Proc. Roy. Neth. Acad. Sc. **34**: 1426.

Stelwagon: 1913. Rhinoscleroma, J. Cutan. Dis. incl. Syph., N. Y. **31**: 427.

Streit, H.: 1932. L'étiologie du sclérome, rapports sur le sclérome, II Congr. internat. d'Oto-Rhino-Laryngologie, Madrid, Staikoff Sofia.

Szmurlo, J.: 1932. L'anatomie pathologique du sclérome, rapports sur sclérome, II Congr. internat. d'Oto-Rhino-Laryngologie Madrid, Staikoff Sofia.

Watkins: 1921. J. A. M. A. 1928-*91*-643.

Wielenga, D. K.: 1937. Onderzoekingen over het Scleroma respiratorium en de groep der kapselbacillen. Amsterdam, Thesis.

Wiraboff, A. W.: 1929. Die biologischen Beziehungen zwischen Osaena und Sklerom, Zentralbl. f. Bakteriol. **112**: 469.

Wolff, J. W.: 1934. See Kouwenaar, W., Maasland, J. H., and Wolff, J. W.: Rhinoscleroma in Sumatra, geneesk. tijdschr. v. Nederl.-Indië **74**: 1187, Sept. 11, 1285, Sept. 25.

CHAPTER 35

RICKETTSIOSES OR RICKETTSIAL DISEASES

ATILIO MACCHIAVELLO

(TRANSLATED FROM SPANISH INTO ENGLISH BY ANTHONY DONOVAN)

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

Diseases generally classed under the heading "typhus fevers" (or *typhus group of fevers*, of English authors) are caused by *rickettsias* and therefore are included under the general heading "rickettsial diseases" or simply "rickettsioses."

RICKETTSIAS

Rickettsioses are diseases caused by rickettsias. Pathogenic rickettsias, however, form only a small group of the large family of Rickettsiaceae Pinkerton, 1936, which includes microorganisms interposed between bacteria and filtrable viruses, similar to *R. prowazeki*, described and named by da Rocha Lima, 1916, the type species. Like bacteria, the rickettsias have a definite morphology, with perfect individualization of each element. Under the electron microscope is seen a limiting cellular membrane quite distinct from the internal protoplasm (Plotz, Smadel, Anderson, and Chambers, 1943; Weiss, 1943; Mudd and Anderson, 1945). They differ from bacteria in that they are not able to live independently—for example, in bacteriologic cultures—since preformed substances produced by living cells are necessary for their development. (This shows that the enzyme system of the rickettsias is incomplete.) They must, like filtrable viruses, live intracellularly. This dependence is not as rigid as it is with viruses, for some of the rickettsias live extracellularly, like, *R. burneti* and *R. quintana* or *wolhynica,* although with definite dependence upon the metabolism of certain types of cells. Their intracellular life demands that they be related to hosts and reservoirs, and, when pathogenic, to vectors. There is a tendency to accept as true rickettsias only those related to an arthropod host, temporary or permanent, the permanent host being the natural reservoir. Other reservoirs are found among the higher vertebrates, especially rodents.

The same rickettsia may show different grades of adaptation for different arthropods or mammals. When the adaptation to an arthropod is perfect, the rickettsia is hereditary; when it is imperfect, the insect becomes ill and may die, as in the case of *Pediculus humanus* infected with *R. prowazeki.*

Our knowledge of rickettsias is incomplete; definition and classification is therefore difficult. It is understandable that the pathogenic types are the best known.

Key to Family Rickettsiaceae Pinkerton, 1936*

Small bacteriform microorganisms, often pleomorphic; gram-negative, with staining properties *sui generis;* obligate cellular parasites with distinct grades of specific adaptation for arthropod hosts and susceptible animals.

I. Obligate cellular parasitism in the sense of not multiplying in the absence of living tissue; not necessarily intracellular
  A. Host and vector *Ixodidae;* facultatively intracellular
    Genus I — *R. burneti* Derrick, 1939
      R. diaporica Cox, 1939
  B. Vector *Pediculidae;* extracellular
    Genus II — *R. wolhynica* Töpfer, 1916
      R. weigli Mosing, 1936
II. Obligate intracellular parasitism
  A. Pathogenic in variable degree for the arthropod vector and for mammals
    Genus III — *Rickettsia*
      R. prowazeki da Rocha-Lima, 1916
      R. mooseri Monteiro, 1931
  B. Not pathogenic for the arthropod vector (or host)
    1. Pathogenic for mammals
      (a) Host and vector *Trombidiidae*
      Genus IV — *R. orientalis* Nagayo et al., 1930
      (b) Host and vector *Ixodidae*
        aa. Intracytoplasmic
      Genus V — *R. ruminantium* Cowdry, 1925
        R. canis Donatien and Lestoquard, 1936
        R. ovina Donatien and Lestoquard, 1936
        R. bovis Donatien and Lestoquard, 1936
        bb. Intracytoplasmic and intranuclear
      Genus VI — *Dermacentroxenus* Wolbach, 1919
        D. rickettsi Wolbach, 1919
        R. conori Brumpt, 1932
        R. pijperi Amaral and Monteiro, 1932
    2. Nonpathogenic for mammals
      (a) Localization in various tissues and organs of the arthropod host; at times causes formation of mycetomas
      Genus VII — *R. ctenocephali* Sikora, 1918
        R. lectularia Arkwright et al., 1921
      (b) Localization in a single organ, tissue, or cell type
      Genus VIII— *Wolbachia* Hertig, 1936
        W. pipientis Hertig, 1936

The entire systematization of the rickettsial group was revised by Macchiavello (1945).

Subsequent to the preparation of this chapter, a new rickettsial disease was described under the name "rickettsialpox." (Refer to Chapter 36.)

The etiologic agent of rickettsialpox is *R. akari* Huebner, Jellison, and Pomerantz, 1946. *R. akari* is morphologically similar to *R. prowazeki* and *R. mooseri;* diplococcal and diplobacillary forms have been found. It stains well with the Giemsa and the Macchiavello methods but poorly with methylene blue or the Gram stain.

Rickettsia burneti and **Rickettsia diaporica** (the American variety of the former).—Cox (1938) described them as lanceolate or bipolar bacilli, sometimes diplobacillary, sometime filamentous. Within the cells, in the cytoplasm, are found isolated bipolar or diplo-

---

*Editor's note (O. F.): Bergey's *Manual of Determinative Bacteriology* (1948) classifies the completely studied Rickettsiaceae which are pathogenic for man as *Rickettsia prowazekii, R. typhi, R. rickettsii, R. conorii, R. tsutsugamushi, R. akari,* and *Coxiella burnetii.*

bacillary forms, or groups of rickettsias in rounded masses, although some of these masses may show less differentiated organisms of a coccoidal or granular type. In animals as well as in tissues or egg cultures, the organism grows and develops well extracellularly. Morphologically it is similar to *R. prowazeki,* although somewhat larger, which may be due to the fact that it stains more intensely with Giemsa and with the Macchiavello stain.

Rickettsia wolhynica.—The morphology in mammals is diplococcal or diplobacillary, and in lice, in addition, oval or round, with polar staining (Töpfer), larger, more nearly oval, shorter, thicker, and at the same time less pleomorphic, than *R. prowazeki.* The organisms are grouped in layers or palisades on the intestinal epithelium of the louse, for which they are not pathogenic. It stains more easily and more intensely than the rickettsia already mentioned. It is not known for certain whether or not it is hereditary in the louse.

Rickettsia prowazeki and **Rickettsia mooseri.**—In mammals it is paired, coccoid, or lanceolate (Wolbach, Todd, and Palfrey, 1922). In lice it is extraordinarily pleomorphic, according to da Rocha Lima. In tissues (cultures) it is paired, lanceolate, and less frequently filamentous (Nigg, 1930; Zinsser and Macchiavello, 1936). With Giemsa stain, it usually shows a halo, and in the so-called multiplying forms demonstrates red- and blue-staining material. In peritoneal exudates of rats and in tissue cultures, the author has observed filamentous forms of 10 and 15 microns and longer. There is no morphologic difference between *R. prowazeki* and *R. mooseri,* although the latter is more diffused in the tissues of susceptible animals and grows more easily in tissue cultures. As with all the rickettsias, except *R. burneti* and its variant *diaporica,* it is not filtrable. It is not hereditary in the louse, which dies when the parasitization of the epithelial cells of the digestive tract produce distention, rupture, and desquamation of the tract. In mammals it lives in the cytoplasm of the endothelial cells. The murine variety prefers the serosal cells of the tunica vaginalis of rats. The typical cellular form was described by Pinkerton in 1936, and before, as a growth en masse of organisms. It has been cultivated in the louse by Weigl (1920); in tissues with plasma by Wolbach and Schlesinger (1923), Zinsser and Batchelder (1930), and Pinkerton and Hass (1931); in cultures by Maitland and modified Maitland method by Nigg and Landsteiner (1930-1931), Kligler and Aschner (1934), Zinsser and Macchiavello (1936); in tissue-agar by Zinsser, Wei, and Fitzpatrick (1937-1938); in eggs by Cox (1939) in the vitelline sac; and on the chorioallantoic membrane by Zia (1934).

Dermacentroxenous rickettsi.—In mammals it is paired, frequently surrounded with a halo, in lanceolate form, with or without polar granules, and rounded. In the tick it is more pleomorphic, and, with the bacilliform type without chromatoid granules, are found lanceolate diplobacilli and small intranuclear rods, with chromatoid granules (Wolbach et al., 1922). The lanceolate type is similar to and as large as a pneumococcus and is not like the form of *R. prowazeki.* In ticks it is found all through the tissues. In tissue cultures, Pinkerton (1936) found multiplication scant in the cytoplasm but abundant in the nucleus, the morphology being distinct for each localization. To the three types described by Wolbach, a fourth (Spencer and Parker, 1930) has been added. This is not infectious, but produces immunity.

R. brasiliensis is synonymous with *D. rickettsi. R. conori* of boutonneuse fever and *R. pijperi* of South African tick fever are morphologically similar to *D. rickettsi.*

Rickettsia orientalis.—This is a short diplobacillus with bipolar staining (0.3 to 0.5 by 0.8 to 2.0 microns). It grows diffusely in cell cytoplasm but does not distend the cells. It can be seen easily if the anterior chamber of the eye of experimental animals is inoculated and Descemet's membrane examined. It does not grow intranuclearly.

Attempts to classify the rickettsial diseases have been numerous, some being clinical (R. Jorge, 1933; Benhamou, 1938), others serologic (Felix and Rhodes, 1931; Monteiro, 1931), some utilizing the class of arthropod vector (Megaw, 1930; Veintemillas, 1944), with at times the primary transmission cycle considered (Napier, 1946). Other classifications are based on multiple criteria such as epidemiology, pathology, serology, immunology, clinical characteristics, etc., among them being those of Amaral and Monteiro (1931), Biraud and Deutschmann (1936), Burnet (1937), Zinsser (1937), Castañeda (1942), and Plotz and Wertman (1945).

THE RICKETTSIAS AND THEIR CLASSIFICATION

TABLE XXI. CLINICAL-ETIOLOGIC CLASSIFICATION OF THE RICKETTSIOSES

ETIOLOGIC AGENT	GROUPS OF RICKETTSIOSES (CLINICAL CLASSIFICATION)	DISEASES COMPRISING EACH GROUP
	I. *Nonexanthematic rickettsioses or with evanescent exanthemata*	
1. *R. burneti*	1. Not recurrent	Australian "Q" fever
R. diaporica		American "Q" fever
2. *R. wolhynica*	2. Recurrent	Trench fever or quintana fever
	II. *Exanthematic rickettsioses*	
	A. *Human*	
3. *R. prowazeki*	1. Petechial exanthematic rickettsiosis	Classical exanthematic typhus fever—Brill's disease
R. mooseri		Exanthematic murine typhus
4. *D. rickettsi*	2. Macular exanthematic rickettsiosis	Spotted fever
R. conori	3. Boutonneuse exanthematic rickettsiosis	Boutonneuse fever
R. pijperi		South African tick fever
5. *R. orientalis*	4. Maculopapular exanthematic rickettsiosis	Scrub typhus
	B. *Animal*	
6. *R. ruminantium*	1. Reticuloendothelial rickettsiosis	Heartwater disease of cattle
7. *R. canis*	2. Monocytic rickettsiosis	Canine typhus

The foregoing clinical classification does not consider epidemiologic variants, nor virulence, nor geographic localization, which are apart from clinical criteria.

TABLE XXII. RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN THE RICKETTSIOSES

RICKETTSIOSES	INITIAL ULCER	EXANTHEMA	VECTOR	WEIL-FELIX REACTION	SPECIFIC COMPLEMENT FIXATION TEST
1. Nonexanthematic and nonrecurrent rickettsioses					
"Q" fever	0	0	Not necessary	0	Yes
2. Recurrent rickettsioses					
Trench fever	0	0	Louse	0	?
3. Exanthematic rickettsioses		0			
a. Petechial					
Classic exanthematic typhus	0	Petechial	Louse	OX19+++ OX_2+	Yes
Murine typhus	0	Petechial	Flea and rat louse	OX19++ OX_2+	Yes
b. Macular					
Rocky Mountain spotted fever	0	Macular	Tick	OX19+ OX2+ OXK+	Yes
c. Papular					
Boutonneuse fever	+	Papular	Tick	OX19+ OX2+	Yes
d. Maculopapular					
Scrub typhus	+	Maculopapular	Mite	OXK+++	Yes

HISTORICAL NOTES ON RICKETTSIAL DISEASES

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

The rickettsial disease group has been increasing continuously while at the same time investigative methods have been improved, particularly those related to the etiology.

No clinical or epidemiologic description extant assures us that the rickettsioses were known by Hippocrates or other physicians of ancient times. In the Cronica Cavense of the year 1083 (a monastery near Salerno), there is mentioned ''a fever accompanied by petechias,'' the first reference which makes one suspect exanthematic typhus. Up to 1490, in Spain, typhus played a prominent role in the war between the Saracens and the Spaniards, and during the siege of Granada, typhus broke out in epidemic form, taking a toll of 17,600 victims among the soldiers. The medical historians of the period (Luis de Toro, 1574; López de Corella, 1574; Mercado, 1574; Carmona, 1582; Pérez, 1590; Martínez de Leiva, 1597; Bocungelino, 1600; and Soria, 1635), whose works have been reviewed by Villalba (1802), believed that typhus was introduced into the Iberian peninsula by Spanish soldiers infected on the Isle of Cyprus, from then on giving rise to a great number of epidemic outbreaks and extending to America in Mexican territory simultaneously with the conquests of Hernán Cortéz.

In 1546, Geronimo Fracastorio described typhus in a masterly manner in Chapter VI of Volume II of ''*De Contagione,*'' referring to the epidemics in Italy during the years 1505 and 1528. Zinsser (1935) stressed the importance of this episode, saying: ''In 1530, Charles V was crowned ruler of the Roman Empire at Bologna, by the power of typhus fever.''

The relationship of typhus to war, famine, migrations, political, social, and economic upheavals, and other public calamities was early recognized in history. Charles V, himself, in 1552 was forced to give up the siege of Metz because his army was greatly reduced in numbers by typhus. From 1618, the beginning of the Thirty Years' War, until 1630, typhus dominated the entire continent of Europe. In Hungary, its incidence was such that it was called *morbus hungaricus.* Its frequency in political prisons gave it the name *morbus carcerorum.* Lazarus Riverius (1623) described the first epidemic in France, in Montpellier, as *febris maligna pestilens,* which was repeated in Lyons and Limogès, in 1628 (with 60,000 and 25,000 deaths, respectively), in Poitièrs in 1651, and in Burgundy in 1666.

In England, from the first, typhus was associated with prisons (jail fever), and the judgments against prisoners parasitized with lice *(Black Assizes)* caused repeated epidemics, such as the well-known epidemic at Oxford University in 1577, which cost the lives of 510 persons, among them 100 members of the University. In 1643, according to Willis, it destroyed great numbers of individuals in Parliament and the Royal Army during the siege of Reading. In Ireland the so-called *Irish ague* occasioned the outbreak of Cork, 1708, and later the epidemics of 1718, 1729, 1735, 1740, and 1797. During the entire eighteenth century, typhus scourged Europe: Moscow in 1735, Germany in 1740, Flanders in 1743, Spain in 1762, Naples in 1764. During the Seven Years' War, the French Revolution, the Crimean War, the Napoleonic campaigns, especially that in Russia, and later, during economic depressions in Silesia, 1846, and London, 1862, typhus greatly reduced in numbers the armies and civilian populations until the middle of the nineteenth century, when it began to decline. In the Franco-Prussian War it had a secondary role. Finally it was restricted to the Balkans and Russia until World War I in 1914.

Typhus began in Serbia with extraordinary virulence. At one time 2,500 cases were isolated daily in military hospitals alone. In the postwar period, it is calculated that there were between 6,000,000 and 10,000,000 cases in Russia within 4 years.

Advances in the prophylaxis of the disease were seen during the Italian conquest of Abyssinia, where African troops, according to Castellani, had more than 20,000 cases, with not a single one among the European troops. World War II is another example of the fact that typhus is no longer necessarily a disease of armies. Statistical data, on the other hand, show the damage it still does among civilian populations of belligerent or occupied countries.

As was to be expected, America could not be kept free from typhus, and first the *Conquistadores* and later the colonists and immigrants were the cause of serious epidemics. In Mexico the disease has been recognized since 1530; in Chile since 1554 (Rosales); in Colombia since 1630 (''the plague of Santos Gil''); in Peru since the beginning of the Conquest. In Canada and the United States, it is mentioned in Quebec and Montreal, 1820, Halifax, 1827, Boston, 1838 and 1847, New York, 1818, 1825, 1837, 1852, 1861-65, 1881, and 1892, Philadelphia, 1827, 1836, 1847, 1864, and 1880, New Orleans, 1847, with some recent epidemic outbreaks in Iowa (Boyd, 1917), California (Cumming and Senftner, 1917), and New Mexico (Armstrong, 1922), the latter possibly originating in Mexico. Among the Indians of South and Central America, as in Mexico, typhus is endemic; not so in the United States, where there is mentioned only one serious outbreak, among the Navajo Indians, on the San Juan Reservation, New Mexico, 1920-1921.

In Africa, typhus has occurred since time immemorial in the northern Mediterranean zone. Recently, in Uganda (1932), Transvaal, Union of South Africa, and in Basutoland, important outbreaks have occurred. In Asia, typhus has been definitely recognized only recently.

The enormous number of references available in relation to classical exanthematic typhus contrasts with the scanty information to be found on the other rickettsial diseases, with reference to history as well as incidence. This is understandable, as most of the rickettsias are local diseases of an endemic or sporadic character, without much influence on the political, social, or economic lives of the people, and without dramatic aspects which spontaneously attract attention.

In 1837 (Gerhardt), typhus was definitely distinguished from typhoid fever (Stille, also, 1838), this being the first decisive advance in the study of rickettsial diseases.

Palm (1878) and Baelz and Kawakami (1879) described for the first time Japanese river fever, although it is supposed that the disease (tsutsugamushi) had been known for 1,000 years. Ten years later Maxcy (1899) identified Rocky Mountain spotted fever, although about 1873 it had been described in the vicinity of the Snake River, Idaho.

There were established, then, the three predominating groups of exanthematic rickettsioses, although their etiologic relationship was not realized at the beginning, nor were they always clinically differentiated in the places where they existed together. Spotted fever, in the United States, was the first rickettsiosis in which important results were obtained in experimental studies. In 1902, it was observed in the Bitterroot Valley of Montana, with a high mortality, of 70 to 80 per cent. Wilson and Chowning immediately proved *Dermacentor andersoni* as its transmittor, a supposition confirmed by McCalla (1905) who transmitted the disease from man to man by ticks removed from patients, and by Ricketts (1906) who in turn transmitted it to laboratory animals—monkeys and guinea pigs—being unaware of the experiment already mentioned, which was not published until 1908. Previously (1906), Ricketts had proved the susceptibility of these animals to spotted fever; in 1907, he demonstrated the hereditary character of the infection in ticks, and, in 1909, he believed that he saw the specific infecting microorganisms in the blood of human beings, guinea pigs, and monkeys with the disease and in the tissues of the vector.

Nicolle, Comte, and Conseil (1909) demonstrated that typhus is transmitted by lice, and also showed the susceptibility of guinea pigs and monkeys to experimental infection, facts confirmed by Ricketts and Wilder (1910) while working with Mexican typhus *(tabardillo)*. Again they thought they could see the etiologic agent of typhus in preparations from the blood of patients and from the intestinal contents of lice. By means of cross-immunity experiments they showed that typhus and spotted fever are different diseases. From 1898 until 1910-1911, Brill, in a series of notable studies, emphasized the epidemiologic and clinical differences between typical exanthematic typhus and cases of the disease which today bears his name, sporadic cases seen in New York and Boston, which Anderson and Goldberger (1912) proved to be attenuated forms of typhus.

During the following years, experiments were concentrated on the etiologic agent of typhus, 30 or more microörganisms being suspected. It is possible that Hegler and Prowazek

(1913), Sergent, Foley, and Vialette (1914), and Nicolle, Blanc, and Conseil (1914) saw the organism in the feces of lice collected principally on individuals with typhus; but the merit of describing, naming, and proving the etiologic role of *Rickettsia prowazeki*—so named in honor of the two martyrs to typhus, Ricketts and Prowazek—belongs entirely to da Rocha Lima. Da Rocha Lima created the genus *Rickettsia* and clearly defined its morphology, its connection with the louse vector, its staining properties, its differentiation from the bacteria, the stages in its intracellular development in the intestinal cells of the louse, and the relationship of this cycle with human infection.

The studies of da Rocha Lima represent a notable contribution to our knowledge of rickettsial disease and an example of scientific work carried out without any vacillation, in the face of a great many contradictory conditions, many of which, at the time, appeared to be true. In reality, during the period 1914 to 1916, in the midst of World War I, the opportunities for working on typhus increased, but at the same time investigations were complicated by a series of scientific discoveries quite difficult to interpret. Plotz (1915) had described as the etiologic agent a microorganism which seemed to fulfill all the requirements for specificity; Nicolle proclaimed the possibility that typhus was an infection caused by a filtrable virus. Various authors denied or doubted the bacterial nature of rickettsias, or of their pathogenicity. Experiments on lice were made difficult by the lack of knowledge of the histology and biology of the insect, and also by the contamination of the colonies with nonspecific and nonpathogenic rickettsias *(R. pediculi)*. The Weil-Felix reaction lent support to the suggestion of an etiologic connection between typhus and *Proteus*. Last, trench fever and its possible cause, *R. wolhynica* or *quintana*, a parasite of the louse, added more confusion to that already mentioned. During that period the knowledge of rickettsias was broadened by the successive and rapid discoveries of new species (*R. melophagi, R. lectularia, R. ctenocephali*, etc.), these findings culminating with the work of Cowdry (1923, 1925) and of Wolbach and his school. Wolbach (1919) established definitely the etiologic role of rickettsia in spotted fever, creating and defining the new genus *Dermacentroxenus*, and, in 1922, with Todd and Palfrey, contributed irrefutable proofs for establishing the specificity of *R. prowazeki* as the cause of typhus. In addition, his notable studies in pathology amplified the classical work of Popoff (1875), Fraenkel (1914, 1915), Prowazek (1915), Aschoff (1915), Ceelen (1916), Jaffé (1918), Grzywo-Dabrowzki (1918), Herzog (1918), Nicol (1919), Spielmeyer (1919), and many others and demonstrated the presence of rickettsias in the typical lesions (1920, 1922).

During the decade 1910-1920, five other important events merit being mentioned. The first was the discovery of a new exanthematic disease, ''nodular-scarring fever,'' recognized by Conor and Bruch (1910) in Tunis, and later found at numerous points on the coast of the Mediterranean, and finally found to be identical with Kenya fever. The second was the opportunity offered by World War I (1914-1918) to prove epidemiologically the role played by the louse as vector of typhus and to base prophylaxis on measures for eradicating this parasite. The third was the incorporation of the Weil-Felix reaction, using *Proteus* OX, in diagnostic measures for typhus, a reaction which has been extended to the other exanthematic rickettsioses, and which, thanks to the accidental finding of the Kingsbury strain, served later on, in the hands of Felix and Rhodes, to form the basis for a serologic classification of the diseases of this group. (Incidentally, the antigenic nature of rickettsias is surmised by means of comparative studies with *Proteus* X.) The fourth event was the discovery and description of trench fever (quintana or Wolhynian fever), possibly caused by *R. wolhynica*, a disease which reached epidemic proportions between 1915 and 1918 among the warring armies. Recognized first in Flanders and France by Graham, Hunt, and Rankin, it soon was found in Poland, Austria, Italy, Greece, Egypt, and elsewhere. Although experiments demonstrated the transmitting role of the louse and the presence of virus in the blood of patients, the lack of susceptibility of laboratory animals, the lack of autopsies, and the presence of the rickettsia in lice fed on individuals apparently well gave rise to many suppositions which at the moment lead to no positive conclusions as to the true nature of the disease and its relationship with other rickettsioses. Finally, it is important to note in this decade another event of no less value than those already mentioned, the multiplication of studies on diseases similar to

Japanese river fever and investigations on the larvae of *Trombicula akamushi*, the red mite. (Ashburn and Craig, 1908, in the Philippines; Breinl, Priestly, and Fielding, 1914, in North Queensland; Dowden, 1915, in the Malay States; Hatari, 1921, in Formosa; Lagrange, 1923, in Annam.)

By 1926 the studies of Maxcy managed to break the unity of exanthematic typhus, which had not been destroyed by the researches of Brill. On epidemiologic grounds he showed that the endemic typhus of the southern part of the United States has a direct relationship with rats and their ectoparasites. Mooser (1928) established a diagnostic sign in guinea pigs inoculated experimentally with virus of Mexican typhus (Mooser's sign). Dyer et al. (1931) obtained murine virus from fleas of rats caught in Baltimore, and Mooser, Castañeda, and Zinsser (1931) obtained murine virus from brains of rats trapped in the prison of Belen, Mexico. The former transmitted the infection from rat to rat by means of fleas, and the latter by means of rat lice. Murine virus is obtained in the most diverse countries, in Syria, Greece, Tunis, Chile, Manchuria, Malay States, Russia, etc. At first the endemic character of murine typhus caused it to be confused with the sporadic disease described by Brill; this was clarified by the work of Zinsser (1934), who proved the classical nature of the disease in the northeastern part of the United States and characterized it as recurrent typhus. At first, the lack of comparative studies of the various viruses discovered gave rise to new terminology, generally of a geographic character, causing much confusion, on the one hand, and on the other, demonstrating the incorrectness of considering Mexican typhus as the equivalent of murine typhus. The designation *endemic typhus* for the recently discovered disease and *epidemic* for classical typhus also appeared to be inadequate when it was considered that the murine virus could become epidemic if implanted in man and transmitted to other individuals by means of lice. Zinsser thought that if, originally, typhus was a disease of rats, and that if the latter invaded Europe only with the return of the Crusaders (as the first unmistakable reference to rats is made in the works of Giraldus Cambrensis, 1147-1223), it is entirely possible that the epidemic typhus of the Middle Ages and of today is really a new disease of mankind, which would explain why it is not mentioned in ancient classical medical treatises.

In its turn, Rocky Mountain spotted fever also lost its unity when, in 1930, the so-called "Eastern type" was discovered, in contrast to the classical type of the West. In 1932, Reimann, Ulrich, and Fisher mentioned the Minnesota variety. In 1928, Piźa, Meyer, and Gomes first described the typhus of São Paulo. In 1933, a similar affection was reported in Minas Geraes. In 1935, Pijper and Dau studied African tickbite fever. Patiño, Afanador and Paul described, in 1937, a focus of petechial fever in Tobia, Colombia. Recent laboratory studies indicate that all these diseases represent at most simple variants of Rocky Mountain spotted fever, and, including boutonneuse fever of the Mediterranean, have close generic connections with it (Parker and Davis, 1933; Dyer, 1933; Badger, 1933; Haas and Pinkerton, 1936; Amaral and Monteiro, 1931; Monteiro, 1933; Dias and Martins, 1937; etc.).

In connection with tsutsugamushi, scrub typhus, and other variants of the fevers transmitted by mites, the investigations of Lewthwaite and Savoor (1936), as well as the recent studies of American Army doctors stationed in the Far East, should be mentioned as being outstanding in determining the unity of the group and the local variants.

During recent years we have witnessed a better understanding, as well as a greater extension, of a curious disease, "Q" fever, which should more properly be called "burnetiosis." Discovered in Australia, as a disease associated epidemiologically with ticks and rodent vectors, it has been finally determined to be a sickness transmitted principally from man to man, giving origin, at times, to explosive epidemics of atypical pneumonias, often called "Balkan grippe."

Also, while World War II afforded new and unexpected fields for the investigation of rural typhus (scrub typhus, tsutsugamushi fever) in the South Pacific theater of operation, in the heart of New York City there appeared a new rickettsiosis, resembling in appearance chicken pox, which forms by itself an entity unmistakable among its analogous diseases—rickettsialpox. The history of this disease is instructive and offers a field for interesting speculations, on which, unfortunately, we cannot enlarge in this place. (See Chapter 36.)

Technics used in the study of the rickettsioses have undergone radical changes and have been enriched with methods more exact than those of scarcely 20 years ago, when the Weil-Felix reaction and animal inoculation dominated this field.

The veritable chaos which existed only 10 years ago with regard to classification of the rickettsial diseases and relationships among them is disappearing, thanks to application of the methods of investigation mentioned above. To Megaw must be accorded the honor of being possibly the first to suggest a logical grouping and classification of the rickettsioses. Definitive classification will come with more detailed knowledge of the antigenic constitution of the rickettsias and of their mutual inter-relationships.

CLINICAL ASPECTS, EPIDEMIOLOGY, AND PATHOLOGY OF THE RICKETTSIAL DISEASES

I. NONEXANTHEMATIC RICKETTSIOSES

1. "Q" FEVER

Synonyms.—Australian "Q" fever, American "Q" fever, Nine Mile fever, pneumonitis diaporica, burnetiosis, Queensland fever.

Definition

"Q" fever is a rickettsiosis caused by *R. burneti* and its variant *R. diaporica.*

General Considerations

The term "Q" fever is derived from the region of Queensland, Australia, where the disease was originally observed. The term could advantageously be replaced by the name "burnetiosis," as proposed by Macchiavello (1945).* Both "Q" fever and trench fever are among those rickettsioses which are nonexanthematic or which exhibit only a transitory exanthem. "Q" fever is differentiated clinically from trench fever by its lack of recurrent characteristics.

The Australian and the American varieties of "Q" fever are intimately related, the causative agent of each disease having the same antigenic constitution, although varying in virulence. The apparently different epidemiology of the two varieties does not depend on intrinsic peculiarities of the infectious agent but rather on differences in reservoirs and vectors and in the routes and methods of propagation of the infection. The portal of entry of the virus is of preponderant importance in determining the modality of the clinical picture.

For many years the disease was known only in Australia as a natural infection, and in the United States accidental infections occurred among laboratory workers. In 1946, the disease appeared in Amarillo, Texas, in cattle handlers, and showed the characteristics of a spontaneous infection.

On the other hand, 8 outbreaks of "Q" fever were observed among the allied troops in Italy, Greece, and Corsica during 1944 and 1945. Five of these were thoroughly studied, and in 3 *R. burneti* was recovered in laboratory animals. A laboratory outbreak at Fort Bragg, attendant upon the manipulation of infected chick embryos, was similar to outbreaks seen in the laboratories of the United States Public Health Service. Perhaps the most important human outbreak so far was one which occurred in a group of 1,638 soldiers who returned to the United States from Italy; one-third of the men were infected, apparently before leaving for America, in the airdrome of the base of Grottaglie. The first South American case was recently diagnosed in Panama.

---

*Editor's note (O. F.): Coxiellosis has also been suggested.

From the foregoing it is clear that ''Q'' fever has a wider geographic distribution than heretofore suspected, and the geographic designations of ''Australian'' and ''American'' varieties have no foundation to warrant their continued use.

Epidemiology

In Australia the disease was first seen in Brisbane, about 1937, and possibly earlier (1935) and was described by Burnet. This writer, with Freeman, Dyer, and others, studied the epidemiology of ''Q'' fever and established the true cycle of infection in vectors and reservoirs, and an accidental cycle involving man only by chance.

The aerial spread of the disease and its remarkable diffusion explain why these accidental infections may affect groups of individuals subjected to the same ambient conditions. The possibility of contagion from person to person by the respiratory tract (dispersion of droplets of saliva and sputum) has not been proved.

Mass infection by the aerial route, which is characteristic of the laboratory infections seen in the United States (Fort Bragg), is not intrinsically different from the infection observed in abattoir workers in Brisbane, and in Amarillo, Texas, and the outbreak which began in Grottaglie is similarly related to this group. On the other hand, the true cycle of ''Q'' fever in rodents and vectors has not been established in the United States, it being known only that *D. andersoni* is the carrier of the virus.

In Australia the zootic cycle of ''Q'' fever includes a reservoir (the bandicoot *Isoodon torosus*), a vector which transmits among the bandicoots *(Haemaphysalis humerosa)*, a vector from these to young cattle *(Ixodes holocyclus)*, and a disseminator from the latter to adult cattle *(Boophilus annulatus)*, and among adult cattle *(Haemaphysalis bispinosa)* (Derrick, 1944). Since *R. burneti* multiplies in the digestive canal of the tick, parasitizing the cells, as do other rickettsias, it passes to the feces as soon as a rupture of these cells occurs. Feces accumulate in the hair of the cattle, and then the workmen who handle the hides in the abattoirs become infected from these feces. In this respect ''Q'' fever of the Brisbane abattoir is a true occupational disease.

In the United States *R. diaporica* was isolated in Montana by Davis and Cox (1938) in *D. andersoni* collected at Nine Mile Creek, this being an example of an infectious agent discovered prior to recognition of the disease. Parker and Davis (1938) showed that the rickettsia is hereditary in the tick, and they achieved experimental transmission with ticks. In 1939, Davis isolated three new strains of *D. andersoni* in Wyoming. The following year he found that in *Ornithodorus turicata* the virus could survive for 1,001 days, without being transmitted by the bite, nor hereditarily, although passing to the feces. Cox (1938) isolated, cultivated, and described the virus and its properties and described the experimental disease. Parker and Steinhaus (1943) observed that the rickettsia could live for about 3 months in the organs of convalescent guinea pigs. Studies directed toward recognition of the natural reservoirs of the disease and the existence of other vectors have not been carried out, nor is there complete knowledge of the probable cycle, as mentioned in Australia, a cycle which must exist, inasmuch as the outbreak in Amarillo (Irons et al., 1946) involved about 40 individuals working in cattle corrals and in a meat cannery.*

In the outbreaks recently described in Italy and elsewhere, an intimate relationship between cases and certain animals, such as swallows, rats, mice, and cattle, as well as deposits of hay accumulated in the attics of rural dwellings, has been suspected. In the Grottaglie epidemic an extrahuman source of infection, along with an unknown intermediary factor, was suspected.

---

*Editor's note (O. F.): Since this chapter has been in press, "Q" fever has been found all over the U. S. A. (Strauss and Sulkin: Am. J. Pub. Health 39: 492, 1949.)

In 1939, Dyer established the identity of the Queensland disease with that of Montana, demonstrating minor differences: that American "Q" fever does not infect monkeys, that it produces a local reaction in the skin of guinea pigs at the point of subcutaneous inoculation, and that it is more virulent for laboratory animals. The immunologic identity was proved by Bengtson in 1941; she also studied the possibilities of vaccination and passive protection with immune serum.

Many facts are still unknown in our epidemiologic knowledge of this disease.

In the first case of "Q" fever which occurred in the United States (Dyer, 1938), in the Montana Laboratory, the epidemiology was not established with certainty. In the following outbreak in Washington, D. C., which occurred in the laboratories of the United States Public Health Service in 1940, Hornibrook and Nelson studied the 15 cases of pneumonitis which developed among the 153 employees of the National Institute of Health. The source of infection was not established, although direct transmission by arthropods was disproved, and the possibility of droplet infection appeared more likely. In these cases, as in the first one, the isolation of the rickettsia and the serologic reactions left no doubt as to the nature of the disease and its similarity with the Australian infection (Dyer, Topping, and Bengtson).

Clinical Symptoms

There have been a sufficient number of observations at the present time to permit a general description of the clinical aspects of the disease. In many of the cases described previously as having no pneumonitis despite the evident infection by the respiratory route, it is possible that the pulmonary localization was not perceived. Nevertheless, while awaiting more complete studies, it is desirable to describe the clinical pictures seen in various outbreaks independently.

In Australia, "Q" fever was described by Derrick (1937) as an acute, febrile disease of man, of low mortality, resembling an attenuated form of typhus, and with an evolution of 7 to 24 days' duration. The beginning is sudden, with fever rising to 40° C., and, after marked daily remissions, ends in crisis, generally at the end of 1 week. Typical cases have headache, malaise, anorexia, conjunctival injection, photophobia, backache and pains in the extremities, and bradycardia. An exanthem was seen in only 1 of 9 cases. The blood shows no changes and the Weil-Felix reaction is always negative. In certain cases the disease runs a more chronic course.

In the case of Dyer (1938), which occurred in May of that year, a probable incubation period of 10 to 16 days was suspected. The sickness began with pains in the eyeballs, tiredness, and general malaise. In the days following, there were chills and slight fever for 4 or 5 days. On about the fifth day these symptoms ceased, and the patient had profuse sweating at midnight, a crisis which was repeated on 4 consecutive nights. Aside from certain dental and joint pains (fingers), the patient felt well, had a normal appetite, and slight constipation. The pulse rate fluctuated between 72 and 90. The hemogram and urinalyses were normal except for slight indications of albumin in the urine, and blood culture and serum agglutination tests for typhoid, brucellosis, and tularemia were negative. A Weil-Felix reaction of 1:160 was related to a former attack of typhus and with vaccination against Rocky Mountain spotted fever. The "X" strain of *R. diaporica* was isolated from the blood.

In the 15 cases described by Hornibrook and Nelson (1940), the disease was characterized by a sharp onset but was mild, a few cases resembling coryza and others having headache, chills, fever, malaise, generalized diffuse pains, and rarely nausea, vomiting, and a nonproductive cough. During the course of the disease half of the patients had retrosternal and thoracic pain. All had insomnia. Physical signs were practically absent, except for slight pulmonary dullness, a small increase in the respiratory sounds, of a bronchovesicular nature, and heavy crepitus over the area where the x-ray showed the presence of pneumonitis. The pulse was full but with bradycardia in relation to the temperature. All laboratory tests were negative, including those on blood, urine, sputum, cerebrospinal fluid, etc.

The soft infiltrative lesion, single or multiple, and of a density not uniform as in lobar pneumonia, resembled on the x-ray plate a patchy bronchopneumonia. Pneumonitis occurred 5 times in the lower right pulmonary lobe, and in 2 patients more than one lobe was involved.

In the outbreaks seen in Italy the disease had a sudden onset, with chills, fever, sweating, general malaise, weakness, frontal headache, anorexia, at times muscular aches, vague thoracic pains, at times pleural in nature, and diarrhea with abdominal cramps.

Among the soldiers who became sick in the United States although they were infected in Italy, there was a period of incubation not less than 13 days on the average. In rather more than half of the cases the disease began gradually; in the rest, onset was sudden, with a more acute beginning and more severe headache. Many had a sensation of chilliness, or frank chills, muscular aches, and slight gastrointestinal and respiratory symptoms. The average duration of the disease was 4 days, but in 10 per cent of the cases it was 7 days. Although febrile, the disease was benign in all.

In the Fort Bragg laboratory outbreak, 14 of 16 patients had pneumonitis on x-ray examination, and the average duration of the febrile period was from 7 to 10 days.

Most of the Italian cases occurred in winter and spring.

Complications

In 3 cases a severe meningismus was observed with no alterations in the spinal fluid.

Mortality

A fatal termination of the disease is exceptional.

Immunity

Convalescents, human or animal, develop immunity. The presence of antibodies can be detected by laboratory methods (agglutination, complement fixation, protection tests). The appearance of antibodies may be late, toward the end of the disease. Immunologically, all the strains of *R. burneti* or *diaporica* so far isolated are equal, differing, however, in virulence.

Diagnosis

Diagnosis is based on the x-ray detection of pneumonitis, on isolation of the rickettsial agent in guinea pigs or mice, and on serologic tests to show the presence of antibodies, a method which also permits serologic investigation of groups.

Differential Diagnosis

Differentiation must be made from all the pneumonitides or atypical pneumonias described, as cited by Dyer (Bowen, 1935; Allen, 1936-1937; Bock, 1938; Reimann, 1938; Smiley, 1939; Murray, 1940; and especially Kneeland and Smetana and Longcope, 1940). Pneumonitis caused by toxoplasmosis must also be considered (Pinkerton and Henderson, 1941). At present, isolation of the causal agent is the most exact method of differentiation.

Pathology

The preliminary studies of Burnet and Freeman (1937) on the microscopic pathology of "Q" fever in experimentally infected mice have been amplified by the similar investigations of Lillie (1942) in guinea pigs, of Findlay and Perrin and Bengtson (1942) in mice inoculated by the peritoneal or nasal route, and by Lillie, Perrin, and Armstrong (1941) in monkeys *(Macaca mulatta)* and in man.

In guinea pigs and mice the lesions depend largely on the route of inoculation. The two chief types of lesions are a focal perivascular lymphocytic exudate and granulomas with giant cells having excentric nuclei. The small pulmonary foci, or nodules of "hepatization," present an alveolar exudate, epithelioid cells, and lymphocytic and monocytic interstitial infiltration and are very similar to, although not identical with, the foci of pneumonitis seen in man, in which the alveolar exudate has much more abundant fibrin.

Firm granular hepatization is found in man about as often as are foci of pneumonitis. Congestion may occur in the rest of the lung, and edema in 1 or more lobules. The spleen is large, with friable pulp. The heart is dilated.

On microscopic examination, slides of the lung tissue correspond to the picture of pneumonitis described by Kneeland and Smetana (1940). In the zone of hepatization the alveoli, bronchioles, and part of the bronchi are occluded by compact fibrinocellular exudate. The cells consist of lymphocytes, plasma cells, large mononuclears, and erythrocytes. At times pyknotic elongated nuclei, fibroblasts, and bits of desquamated alveolar epithelium are found. In the denuded area the exudate appears to adhere to the alveolar wall. Polynuclear neutrophiles are scarce or absent. Interalveolar septa are scarcely thickened and present accumulations of lymphoid and plasma cells and large mononuclears. The capillaries contain but little blood; there is always some degree of fibrosis. In the peribronchial connective tissue, as well as in the perivascular and pleural, there are focal accumulations of carbon-filled macrophages, as well as lymphocytes and plasma cells. Rarely, large cells resembling the foreign body giant cell are seen in the exudate. The spleen presents the picture of "acute splenic tumor," according to the description of Kneeland and Smetana.

Summarizing, the most important findings are:

1. Nodular or confluent-nodular hepatization, with peribronchial or peribronchiolar localization.
2. Alterations of the alveolar epithelium.
3. Interstitial lymphocytic infiltration.
4. Collapsed alveoli filled with polygonal epithelioid cells.
5. The large blood vessels enveloped with a dense lymphocytic, and at times monocytic, sleeve.
6. The pleura, over the zone of hepatization, shows stratified mesothelial proliferation and polynuclear neutrophilic infiltration.

Since the end of World War II, the publication of all the reports about the epidemics of so-called "Balkan grippe" have added to our knowledge of "Q" fever. This "grippe" was seen in the civilian population of Greece and in the armies of the United States, England, and Germany in both the Balkans and Italy, and appeared as epidemic outbreaks of atypical pneumonia during 1944 and 1945. These outbreaks appeared to be different from influenza, and Athens was suspected as being the source of the infection. It was noteworthy that in an outbreak observed in Italy among a regiment of parachute troops, the majority of cases occurred in a single company of the regiment; also, the outbreak was explosive, with a case incidence of 30 per cent, and there were no other associated respiratory diseases. Caminopetros had isolated a strain of "Q" fever in Athens and had maintained it in guinea pigs for about a year without identifying it, this being done subsequently by the Commission on Acute Respiratory Diseases. In various epidemic outbreaks, the cases were proved serologically.*

Studies of Caminopetros (1948) showed that goats and sheep in the suburbs of Athens were infected and that the infection passed to the milk and was preserved by refrigeration. Later investigations have shown that "Q" fever is endemic in Italy, both in the north and south, and in Corsica. Returning troops gave origin to an outbreak in the United States in a bomber group in Virginia.

Cheney and Geib (1946) proved the existence of "Q" fever in Panama.

There is increasing interest in this disease in the United States. Recent publications tell of the outbreak of 47 cases which occurred in February, 1946, in Building No. 5 of the National Institute of Health. Thirteen cases had pneumonitis, and 5 had bloody sputum. The attenuated cases were more difficult to diagnose. The Italian antigen proved useful in serologic studies. Treatment was ineffective.

---

*Editor's note (O. F.): Robbins et al. (J. Hyg. **44**: 6-63, 1946) described an explosive outbreak among troops in Italy, suspected of being propagated by dust. The transmission of "Q" fever by dried feces of naturally infested ticks on hides also must be considered, especially in Australia.

The detailed report of the outbreak in Amarillo, Texas, in 1946 (Topping et al., 1947), described 55 cases, with 2 deaths. There were 136 employees in the 3 branches of the involved abattoirs.

In August, 1946, Shepard reported 33 cases of "Q" fever among 81 employees in a Chicago packing house. The average incubation period was 19 to 25 days.

Huebner et al. (1948) report 17 cases in Los Angeles County and 100 additional cases in southern California related to infection in cattle (10 to 20 per cent of the cows), from which 4 strains of *R. burneti* were found in 4 different dairies. Oliphant and Parker report 3 additional cases of laboratory infections in 1948. Huebner, Hottle, and Robinson (1948) tried out streptomycin in experimental infection of chick embryos with "Q" fever, with mediocre results.

II. THE RECURRENT RICKETTSIOSES

2. TRENCH FEVER

Synonyms.—Wolhynian fever, quintana or five-day fever, fünftagefieber; pyrexia of unknown origin; Meuse fever; shin fever.

Definition

An infectious, febrile disease, of recurrent character, possibly caused by *R. quintana (wolhynica)* and transmitted from man to man principally by the human louse *(Pediculus corporis* and *Pediculus v. capitis)*.

Characteristics

Recurrent pyrexia with an incubation period varying from 1 week to 1 month, following which there supervenes a series of as many as 10 to 12 febrile paroxysms (average, 4 to 6), with an individual duration of 20 to 30 hours, exacerbations which are accompanied by chills, fever, and sweating. During the clinical course there are signs of grippe, various pains, splenomegaly, changes in sensibility, evanescent exanthematic eruptions, and moderate leucocytosis. It is stated that the Weil-Felix reaction is negative. The course of the disease is prolonged, convalescence is long and stormy, and subsequent immunity is transitory. Mortality is nil.

Incidence and Geographic Distribution

Trench fever was a disease peculiar to World War I. It is possible that the epidemics of "military sweating" described during the previous century had the same etiology. In 1915 it was observed in epidemic form in Poland and Volhynia, being described by His and Werner in the German Army. Graham, Hunt, and Rankin and McNee, Brunt, and Renshaw (who named it trench fever) saw it on the Allied front. The reports of the American and English commissions, presided over by Strong and Byam, respectively, are the most valuable sources of information on the disease, and from these we have taken the data which follow. Byam estimates that during 4 years there were about 800,000 cases among the Allied troops. Strong believes that between one-third and one-fifth of all cases of sickness among the combatants were due to trench fever. It occurred in epidemic form in Flanders, France, Poland, Galicia, Bukovina, Italy, Salonica, and Macedonia, and cases occurred as well in Mesopotamia and in Egypt. It did not assume importance during World War II, although a few cases were reported. Pechtel and Werner (1940) and Peña Yañez (1940) cite cases.

Etiology

The specific cause of quintana fever has been much discussed; the infectious agent has not been clearly established. It is known that the blood of those suffering from the disease is infectious for healthy men from a few hours after the appearance of clinical symptoms until about 450 days later in the exceptional cases of such long duration, and that infectiousness is permanent even in the intervals between febrile bouts.

The presence of *R. quintana* in lice fed on the sick, and its absence in healthy lice; its appearance in lice between the fifth and the eighth day after ingestion of infectious blood and its progressive increase in the feces during the following days; the lack of pathogenicity of the rickettsia for lice and the duration of the infection during the life of the louse; its nonhereditary character and the parallelism between infectiousness, the presence of virus, and of the rickettsias in the lice like the parallelism between the mechanism of infection of trench fever and exanthematic typhus fever (lice feces spread over the bites, abrasions of skin, or conjunctiva); elimination of the virus in urine (as in murine typhus)—all suggest that *R. quintana* is quite possibly the specific agent of the disease, although, as in other rickettsial diseases, it has not been demonstrated directly in infectious material of human origin, including blood. The negativity of the Weil-Felix reaction, the lack of pathologic findings, the lack of reaction in laboratory animals inoculated experimentally with the virus, and the lack of recent outbreaks all are factors which, taken together, leave this problem without an immediate solution.

Munk and da Rocha Lima and Sikora found *R. pediculi*—nonpathogenic and indistinguishable from *R. quintana*—in lice fed on healthy individuals. The large number of asymptomatic cases and the prolonged duration of the virus in convalescents or in chronic cases, the existence of a certain apparent racial immunity in countries with much pediculosis, the prolonged infectiousness of the louse feces for 4 or more months after excretion, and the high resistance of the virus to external physical agents suggest the necessity of caution in deciding against the identity of the two rickettsias. Even the different degree of virulence shown in each may have another explanation than those put forward by the opponents to the theory of the rickettsial etiology of trench fever, which arguments may be summarized as follows: *R. quintana* is identical with *R. pediculi,* and since the latter occurs in normal lice fed on normal individuals, the presence of the former in cases of trench fever lacks etiologic significance, another agent being the true cause of the disease.

Epidemiology

From the foregoing many considerations can be involved on the epidemiology of this disease. It is worth-while to recall that the louse is the only important agent in the transmission of the disease, and the convalescent carrier, or the inapparent case, the principal reservoir. In exanthematic typhus fever the louse does not act as a reservoir because the rickettsial infection is fatal for it; in trench fever the louse is not affected by the virus and maintains it for the rest of its life. It follows that the louse is also an important reservoir of virus—a terminal reservoir, since the infection is not hereditary. Excreta of infected lice are the immediate source of human infection, and blood of the sick is the source of the infection in lice.

The disease has the same general epidemiology as human exanthematic typhus—i.e., it is favored by war, famine, misery, crowding, cold, association of sick and well—by all the factors which favor lousiness. But the carriers and inapparent cases on the one hand and the volume of susceptible population and the degree of lousiness on the other are the factors which determine the epidemic or endemic evolution of the disease.

Clinical Description

The **incubation period** is generally asymptomatic, with prodromal symptoms (headache, malaise, restlessness, insomnia). Toward the end of this period, which on the average is 10 to 20 days in duration (6 to 7 days in cases of experimental infection caused by inoculation of the virus and 30 or more when the disease is transmitted by lice), the disease proper begins, either suddenly or gradually.

In grave cases the **onset** is abrupt; the illness may begin when the individual is in the midst of his normal occupation, and he may suffer an actual collapse. Early dizziness may impede walking. Onset is accompanied by chills, and rarely by nausea and vomiting. In a few hours the temperature reaches 39.5° or 40° C. (103-104° F.). The fever curve later assumes one of the following three types:

1. Fever of about 3 days' duration, followed by recovery.
2. Initial fever followed by an afebrile period and later with new exacerbations of temperature, up to 12 or more (4 to 6 on the average), febrile recurrences which may show regular 5- to 7-day intervals of apyrexia, or irregular periods of apyrexia.
3. More or less continuous irregular fever in which an elevation of temperature is incorporated with the developments described below, without any intervening period of normal temperature.

On the second or third day, or later, and sometimes at the time of the second rise of fever, there develops an evanescent exanthem, in 5 per cent of cases according to Haagen, more frequently according to others. This lasts 6 to 48 hours and consists of a few to many (up to 200) pink spots of uniform size varying from 2 to 4 mm. up to 6 to 8 mm. in diameter, appearing only on the chest, back, and abdomen, and disappearing without residues. These roseolas are macular, rarely papular, still more seldom vesicular, and they always become pale on pressure.

During the **course of the disease** the pulse is accelerated in proportion to the temperature, alterations corresponding to paroxysmal tachycardia being noted, and often, especially in cases of slow evolution, accentuated cardiac irregularities. Systolic arterial pressure is high. Respiration is normal, unless there is an effort dyspnea.

From the beginning of the disease intense headache is observed, principally frontal, at other times intracranial, rarely parietal or occipital, and there are retro-orbital pains. One of the characteristics of the disease is the generalized aching which, after the first attack, becomes localized in various sites, especially in the lower extremities, and changing in location from day to day. These pains are osseous, cartilaginous, muscular, tendinous, articular, etc., and may be continuous or abrupt and transitory, but in all cases they are more intense at night, and worse in the tibial regions (shin fever) and in the lumbar areas, where they are usually, though not always, symmetrical.

Beginning with the onset the general aspect of the patient is that of restlessness and malaise; he cannot find a comfortable position in bed. The early congestion of the conjunctivae and the catarrh resemble grippe. The tongue, coated for several days, later becomes clean. Sweating crises are abundant and erratic. The feeling of chilliness is variable. Nervous symptoms are rare, nystagmus being sometimes seen, and delirium seldom. Changes in the sensory perceptions are constant, with or without pain. States of local analgesia have been described, although general hyperalgesia is the rule. There are alterations in the tendon reflexes, which are commonly increased, although they may be abolished (patellar, Oppenheim). Polyuria, with nycturia, is a frequent symptom, but it is not accompanied by important changes in the urine nor by nephritis.

In the febrile excesses which follow, these signs are also exacerbated, although not always with the same initial intensity. Neither is it common for the symptoms to disappear during the remissions. The spleen, which at the onset is slightly increased in volume, increases with each exacerbation, to diminish partially in size afterward. Usually it is difficult to palpate the spleen at the onset due to muscular resistance caused by the intense left hypochondriac pain. Splenomegaly extends to 1 or 2 fingerbreadths below the costal margin, and in chronic cases the spleen becomes hard and permanently hypertrophied.

Leucocytosis seldom exceeds 20,000 per cubic millimeter, with polymorphonuclear neutrophilia; it increases during the febrile periods, to regress later. In chronic cases a relative mononucleosis may be seen. The Weil-Felix reaction is said to be negative, but this point requires further study.

The **evolution of the disease** depends largely on the type of fever curve. In many cases fever is slight and irregular, and the patient is alternatively chilly and sweating several times a day, with pains of variable localization which are troublesome without causing the patient to feel seriously ill from the combination of symptoms. In other cases the successive relapses wear out the patients, who lose weight to the extent sometimes of becoming cachectic or of developing mental and nervous conditions which can be mistaken for neurasthenia. In these prolonged forms one finds debility, rigidity, and a tendency to fainting, headache, lack of desire for the slightest exertion, pain, irritability, lassitude, sweating, coldness of the extremities, palpitations, and cardiac irregularities, all of which may occur with or without fever. In more advanced cases, with symptoms of disordered action of the heart, the patient presents a picture which has been classified as neurasthenia.

After a variable time (before 2 months in 85 per cent of cases), recovery is complete, and a certain degree of immunity is present. Chronic cases, o 15 months' duration or more, are infectious and at the same time very susceptible to "superinfection" (experimental).

Immunity after recovery lasts for 6 months, and perhaps somewhat longer.

Among the clinical forms there have already been mentioned those which come from the variable course of the fever and from the number of relapses. Mention has also been made of a gastrointestinal type and a cerebral form; inapparent, abortive, light subacute, chronic, and neurasthenic types are self-explanatory. The type with an undulating fever curve and the paroxysmal type are the most frequent.

There is no mortality from the disease, in contrast with the profound incapacity which some cases show during the course of the infection and with the extreme loss of weight in many others (36 pounds in 5 months in a case of Byam).

Prognosis

Prognosis is good, but in 10 to 20 per cent of cases the illness is prolonged, a few reported lasting 3 to 4 years. The majority of cases requiring more than 6 months for complete cure are found among adults over 35 years of age. Byam established that 18.2 per cent of his chronic cases were in poor physical condition before acquiring the disease. Early treatment, especially bed rest, makes a rapid cure more probable. Relapses occur at all stages of the disease, including the chronic cases. In England, only 6.2 per cent of 236 cases treated in Hampstead left the hospital symptom-free.

Differential Diagnosis

Diagnosis of the disease is based principally on the fever curve, on the distribution of the pains, and, above all, on the knowledge of the presence of an epidemic. Differentiation must be made from typhoid fever, malaria, cerebrospinal meningitis, influenza, dengue, rheumatic fever, relapsing fever, exanthematic typhus, sodoku, Weil's disease, and, in chronic cases, from various cardiac affections, neurasthenia, and diseases which cause loss of weight and splenomegaly.

Treatment

Treatment is exclusively symptomatic, rest and general medication being important.

Pathology

Since trench fever is not a fatal disease, autopsy reports on cases do not exist.

The studies of Schmincke on skin biopsies reveal that at the level of the roseola are lesions of the corium consisting of edema, hyperemia, and perivascular infiltration of lymphocytes, with a varying number of polymorphonuclear neutrophiles. There are no lesions of the endothelium of the vascular wall, nor is there thrombosis.

Prophylaxis

The prophylaxis of trench fever, more than of any other of the rickettsial diseases, is similar to that of classical typhus.

3. RICKETTSIOSIS (RICKETTSIEMIA) WEIGLI

Mosing (1936) described an epidemic of a relapsing fever resembling trench fever among the workers in the laboratory of Professor Weigl who were in charge of feeding the lice used in the preparation of the vaccine of this investigator. It is supposed that the infectious agent is a rickettsia called *R. weigli.* The disease is a septicemia which has no relation to exanthematic typhus. The relationship of *R. weigli* with *R. quintana* and *R. pediculi* has not been determined. Some writers suggest that these are attenuated forms of trench fever.

R. weigli is differentiated from *R. prowazeki* by its larger size, extracellularity, and nonpathogenicity for lice.

Other authors mention similar epidemic outbreaks under similar conditions, but more exact studies on this matter are lacking.

III. PETECHIAL EXANTHEMATIC RICKETTSIOSES

4. EXANTHEMATIC TYPHUS

From the clinical point of view there are no differences between human typhus transmitted by lice and murine typhus transmitted by fleas. A separate clinical description of the latter would duplicate, along general lines, moderate cases of the former.

On the other hand, the diseases are epidemiologically different, and thus a separate description is required for each disease. The differentiation of the virus, based on experimental methods and laboratory tests, has been described in the general section.

Synonyms.—Of the 80 or more terms applied to classical exanthematic typhus, and of the 50 used to designate murine typhus, mention will be made only of those most frequently used.

Murine Typhus.—Mexican typhus, American, New World, pinareño, Manchurian, Indian typhus of Bangalore, soricino of Tunis, of Alexandria, of Athens, of the Toulon battleships, of Saigon-Cholon; tropical urban type W; ship typhus, nautical; endemic, petechial endemic, urban endemic of Rome, benign endemic of Cochin-China; Mexican tabardillo; Red Congolese fever; flea typhus; rat disease of Towoomba; typhus minor, ancestral, orchitic; eruptive fever; estival nondiffusible dermotyphus; sporadic typhus of Tonkin; Maxcy's disease; Hone's disease; intermediate, minor, murine, or endemic richettsiosis.

Classical Typhus.—Human typhus, humanized, European, Old World, historical, major, epidemic, ataxic; petechial fever; tabardillo; pintas; dermotyphus. Brill's disease is a sporadic form of classical typhus and must not be confused with the endemic murine typhus of the southeastern United States.

Definition

Typhus is a disease caused by *R. prowazeki* or *R. mooseri* and transmitted from man to man by the human louse and from rat to man by rat fleas, especially *Xenopsylla cheopis.* It is not possible clinically to define the etiologic agent in the absence of epidemiologic or experimental data.

Epidemiology

We have already mentioned that the investigations of Maxcy, Mooser, Zinsser, and Castañeda, and Dyer et al. were successful in identifying and characterizing the typhus called "Mexican" by Mooser, a denomination which the author changed to "murine" or "endemic" in 1932, when its universal occurrence was made clear. From the beginning Zinsser maintained that this differentiation, based on the separation of this typhus from that transmitted by lice, was incorrect, since both can occur in epidemics or endemically. Other writers thought that the designation *transmitted by fleas* would correspond more properly to the murine virus to differentiate it from the virus *transmitted by lice*, but it soon became evident that among louse-infested populations murine typhus could assume the man-louse-man cycle, that is to say, could become "humanized," to use Zinsser's expression, and that under these epidemic conditions it might or might not lose its characteristic property of producing the serotal reaction (Mooser, Varela, and Pilz, 1934; Castañeda, 1939; León, 1944). On the other hand, Zwierz (1938) has isolated, from rats, nonorchitic strains. The virus, once humanized by many louse-man passages, would lose definitely its orchitic quality and its adaptation to rodents, as would be the case of the virus of epidemic typhus observed in Europe. The foregoing would signify that the sign of Mooser indicates that the typhus virus is still in close relationship to rodents but that its absence does not include possibility of a murine origin for the virus, and that, therefore, the sign does not have pathognomonic value to define the intrinsic antigenic nature of the virus. In this sense the complement fixation test is more exact for the reason that it is related to this antigenic composition. But since epidemiologically the loss of the orchitic capacity indicates epidemization of the virus, or, in other words, passage by the man-louse cycle, it must be considered that the differences between *R. prowazeki* and *R. mooseri* may depend more on the loss or acquisition of the qualities imposed by the changes in vector and host, which indirectly would require the acceptance of a close relationship between both viruses. This appears to have been proved serologically by Zinsser and Castañeda (1932), cytologically by Pinkerton (1936), and antigenically by Craigie et al. (1946), and Topping et al. (1945). The moment in which an epidemized murine virus ceases to be murine has not been defined by any specific test. *Reversible* nonorchitic strains, that is, those which may reacquire orchitic properties, and the so-called *intermediate* strains, signify an advanced progress along this road, beyond which differentiation is not possible at the present time. If the humanization of the virus signifies definitive changes toward what is understood by the term classical virus, this differentiation would obviously be impossible.

Therefore, epidemiologically speaking, in considering murine virus we must discuss it separately in rodents and in man, and, in relation with each of these, both in the condition of endemicity as well as of epidemicity.

But little or nothing is known about the endemic or epidemic occurrence of murine typhus among rodents. From time to time epidemics may possibly occur, but the persistence of the virus in the flea during the life of the latter inclines one to think that the usual situation is one of typhus endemicity among the rodents. In man, epidemiologic conditions cause what seems to be endemicity, but in reality only sporadic cases of murine typhus occur in man. Now, if this typhus becomes epidemic, it will resemble classical typhus, and therefore does not merit separate consideration. It must be especially noted that some writers, such as Megaw, believe that humanization and epidemization of murine typhus probably does not occur, and that in those countries in which this phenomenon is described it is more likely that both types of typhus exist independently and simultaneously.

Whatever the relation is between murine and classical typhus, these can be described in relation to man in their most definite and peculiar epidemiologic manifestations.

(a) **Murine Typhus.**—Murine typhus in man, as studied by Maxcy in the southern part of the United States, has the following epidemiologic characteristics:

1. Sporadic incidence, especially in the fall.
2. No relationship, in the sense of contagion, between cases.
3. Absence of lice as vectors.
4. Greater incidence in men than in women and children.
5. Relationship of the cases to work places (such as food warehouses), which are heavily infested with rats and fleas.
6. Possibility of proving the existence of typhus in rats and fleas by isolation of the virus or by special tests (serologic, etc.).
7. Low specific human mortality.
8. Clinical symptomatology commonly more benign than in louse-borne typhus, etc.

We mentioned earlier the investigations which tend to concede certain value to the transmission of murine virus from rodents to man by the ingestion of food contaminated with the urine of typhus rats or by infection of the mucosa with rat excreta or with the feces of infected fleas.

(b) **Classical Typhus.**—Petechial exanthematic typhus transmitted by lice is maintained in endemic form in many countries, such as Peru, Ecuador, Poland, the Balkans, etc., and in these and in many others it has frequently assumed epidemic characteristics. These epidemic periods have been well studied, but not so the endemic.

From the point of view of dynamic epidemiology, endemic typhus (classical) is characterized by a permanent equilibrium existing in parasite, vector, and individual—susceptible or immune—in such form that the same number of cases of typhus are produced in the same period of time and within the same area, being proportional to the density of the population.

This endemic condition is seen in zones of heavy pediculus infestation, of uniform social structure and of rudimentary economy, especially in densely populated, homogeneous rural zones with little movement away from the limits of the area. Change in one factor (immigration, for example) may initiate an epidemic outbreak.

Epidemic zones, in their turn, are characterized by a very variable curve of incidence of typhus and by a constant focal diffusion. The epidemics may last for several years (with seasonal variations) and are followed by an interepidemic pause. They depend on a heavy louse infestation, economic and social crises, crowding together of uniform groups of population (shelters for unemployed, asylums, collective houses, prisons, etc.), and changes in the makeup of the population (immigrants, soldiers, etc.), and they develop by preference in dense and changing urban populations. In epidemiologic dynamics there is a constant and persistent imbalance among rickettsia, vector, and man, a disequilibrium which begins in susceptible human and social terrain, progressively increasing and of a focal character, augmenting to collective immunity as a resultant of the infection, or until improvement in adverse social factors (exhaustion, dislocations of human masses, starvation, crowding, etc.) or control measures limit it, initiating a phase of endemicity, or a phase of interepidemic quiescence, or, more rarely, complete eradication of typhus. The detailed study of the epidemiology of both types of cases is very interesting, and the infectious agent, the vector, the source and reservoir of the infection, the state of susceptibility or immunity of the individuals, and the surrounding conditions all must be considered, as is done in the following paragraphs.

Endemicity

It appears that *R. prowazeki* has less virulence and the infected louse a longer survival time during endemic periods. The extensive infection in children explains adult immunity, the low mortality of typhus (which is more benign in children), the apparent low incidence (infantile typhus resembles grippe often, or develops without an exanthem), the endemic aspect, and the local persistence. The existence of human or animal reservoirs has not been proved; the louse may be a temporary reservoir. Woodsmen and children maintain the infection. Nicolle, originally, and later many others, among them Minkevitch (1930) and Korostobetz (1933), have pointed out this fact.

Nicolle suspected the existence of inapparent carriers of typhus. Ramsine (1929) found 13 per cent of healthy adults with a positive Weil-Felix reaction in an epidemic near Belgrade. Later, Barykin (1930), Afanassiewa and Tretjak (1933), Ciuca et al., Ermiloy et al. (1935), Barykin et al. (1930), Kraus and Castillo (1931), Veintemillas (1935), and others have proved that in zones of typhus endemicity 50 per cent or more of adults have serologically demonstrable immunity.

Endemic phenomena develop preferentially in rural areas of uniform population and show few seasonal variations. Cases have no apparent connection one with another. The grouping together of people (at fairs, religious celebrations, group agricultural undertakings, peregrinations, etc.) breaks the uniformity and interrelationship of the population and provokes small epidemic outbreaks, circumscribed in foci, and of capricious dispersion, which commonly are self-limited.

Epidemicity

A typhus epidemic may occur in a zone previously free from the disease or in a zone infected after a variable interepidemic period. The extent of the epidemic will depend on numerous factors: the susceptibility of the population, antihygienic factors and their distribution by social groups, the degree and extension of louse infestation, the season of the year and meteorologic conditions, collective nutrition, crowding, etc.

In any case, the epidemic extends by the successive formation of new foci in increasing progression and of arbitrary distribution, although intrinsically the epidemic depends on the presence, distribution, and activity of the vector.

Imported epidemics, and epidemic outbreaks in endemic zones, usually begin with grave cases; epidemics which follow interepidemic latent periods have a large number of attenuated cases.

The louse becomes infected by sucking the blood of the typhus cases but becomes infectious only in 3 to 8 or more days (up to 1 month in exceptional cases) of extrinsic incubation of the infection and remains infected during the rest of its life, which, in this circumstance, does not extend beyond 15 days. The louse dies of starvation due to functional incapacity of the intestinal epithelium, the parasitized cells of which burst and flake off. In this period the feces of the louse are loaded with rickettsias. Human infection does not take place through the bite of the insect, but when the feces from infected fleas are rubbed into the bite wound by scratching or by reaching the mucosal surfaces (conjunctiva), and even by the absorption, through the respiratory tract, of dried feces (laboratory infections). Starzyk (1938) demonstrated the long survival time of rickettsias in louse feces; Blanc and Balazard (1937), in flea feces. Fedjin (1936) believed that louse feces could remain infectious up to 1 year. Eyer, Przybylkiewiez, and Dillenberg suspected the occurrence of laboratory infections from dust containing the dried feces of lice. The life of the louse is of variable duration during an epidemic. Specimens taken from patients in the sixth day of the disease had an average survival time of 5.3 days at the height of the epidemic and of 11.8 days toward the end of the epidemic, 2 years later. We have found lice alive 25 days after having been removed from patients when the lice are kept in a closed space without food (1939). They may, however, live under such conditions for 45 days or more. The feces may remain infectious for years; this explains the annual reappearance of typhus in the so-called "typhus houses" or old foci. *R. prowazeki* is not hereditary in the vector, and therefore the louse-louse cycle does not exist unless one accepts the occurrence of infection by means of the feces of new generations of lice (Pchenichnof and Raikher, 1936). Nevertheless, it must be emphasized that the important fundamental cycle is man-louse-man, within the classical mechanism; that is, blood of a typhus case-intestine of the louse-feces-bite wound-typhus in a susceptible individual. The same louse may infect many persons. Different cases of typhus are not equally infectious to the louse (Mooser, 1945). Macchiavello (1938, 1939) found the following percentage of infection in lice according to the gravity of the cases of typhus and the day of evolution of the disease: serious cases—11.1 per cent on the third day, 80 per cent on the tenth, 50 per cent on the fifteenth; less serious cases—40 per cent on the fourth day, 20 per cent on the twelfth day; mild cases—50 per cent on the fifth day, 25 per cent on the eighth. In grave cases, 50.1 per cent of lots of 6 lice each recovered during the course of the disease were positive, infecting guinea pigs; in less serious cases, 35.7 per cent, and in light cases, 17.8 per cent. The so-called ambulatory or inapparent cases do not infect lice fed on them, but in convalescents, infected lice can be found during the course of the disease up to about 10 days after the fever drops (in exceptional cases up to 2 months). The transportation of infected lice by healthy individuals who later may or may not become ill with typhus is much less frequent than the transportation of infected lice by immunes (Macchiavello and Cifuentes, 1942).

In practice the only source of infection for the louse is the blood of a typhus patient, this infectiousness varying with the gravity of the case (during the entire course of the sickness in grave cases, and possibly from the end of the incubation period; for 9 days in ordinary cases; and for 5 days in light cases). This infectiousness of the blood varies in any one patient even during a single day and is proportional to the gravity of the case, always disappearing in 24 to a maximum of 36 hours after the drop in temperature.

Regarding the conditions which affect receptivity of a population, we mention that there are no natural immunes; that children tolerate the infection better than adults; that Indians and Negroes appear less susceptible than whites; that typhus is more frequent in men than in women; that the epidemic curve of typhus begins first in men; that during epidemics a large number of inapparent cases exist side by side with clinical cases; that the inapparent case plays no important role in disseminating the disease but, on the other hand, contributes to modifying the epidemic curve (Macchiavello, 1938, 1939, 1942, 1945).

With relation to social conditions, typhus develops in foci, and in large urban centers these predominate in unsanitary areas, being limited to them. With regard to climate, typhus is more prevalent toward the end of winter and in spring, since heat and excessive humidity influence the biology of the louse as well as affect general sanitary conditions (less clothing, less crowding, more cleanliness, etc.).

Although it is certain that nutrition plays a part in the evolution of epidemic typhus, lack of vitamin C is not a factor, as was suggested by Zinsser, Castañeda, and Seastone, Giroud, and others, although our investigations, with Cifuentes and Ovalle (1939, 1942, 1945), indicate that vitamin C has an indirect effect on typhus by its capillary-protective action. It is possible that a low ingestion of albumin influences the gravity of the disease during periods of collective famine. An analysis of the epidemic curve of typhus and its evolution will not be made here.

Clinical Description

We have said that exanthematic typhus is a clinical entity. A general clinical description may be made, but it must be kept in mind that the clinical forms are quite variable, ranging from grave hypertoxic cases to the so-called inapparent or subclinical typhus; that is to say, cases with no symptoms. Exanthematic typhus may be defined as a transmissible disease which in its typical form develops with high fever, stupor or the "typhus" state, and a maculopetechial exanthem. There are recognized a period of incubation, a period of frank illness with two phases, the pre-eruptive and the eruptive, and a terminal period, ending in death or convalescence.

The **incubation period** is 10 to 12 days, with extremes of 8 to 20 (9 to 10 days in human cases inoculated experimentally by Veintemillas, Bolivia, 1944). It is generally asymptomatic with indefinite prodromal symptoms at the end of the period of incubation (malaise, lassitude, general weakness, anorexia, character changes, etc.).

The **onset** is sharp, with chills, fever, pains in the back and extremities, vertigo, nausea, and, above all, a very intense headache, a distinctive sign even in mild cases.

During the **pre-eruptive phase** the patient presents a characteristic facies, bloated and congested; there is injection of the conjunctivae (with bloody streaking), a thick-coated tongue which the patient has difficulty in protruding, asthenia, which progresses to prostration, a progressive intense headache, nocturnal delirium, dulling of the senses but no interference with consciousness, a relaxed abdomen and a persistent constipation, continuous elevation of temperature between 39° and 40° C., rarely rising to 40.5° C. or more, the fever showing slight fluctuations and a variable morning remission, and with a drop of 1° or 2° at the end of the pre-eruptive phase.

The **eruptive phase** begins on the fourth or fifth day and is characterized by the exanthem and stupor. The exanthem develops all at once, at first as pinkish, pale macules of irregular and inexact outline, varying in size between a pinhead and a lentil and disappearing on pressure. In a few hours the number of spots increases and they become more or less confluent, developing without any particular order on the abdomen, back, arms, and thighs, covering the extremities except for the elbows, palms of the hands, and soles of the feet, and with no involvement of the face or scalp. The face may show an exanthem (in 4 per cent of cases, according to Megaw), although this occurrence, at least in South America, is exceptional. On the other hand, Megaw says that in 1 to 5 per cent of cases eruption may appear on the palms, while Veintemillas observed this frequently in Bolivia. In 24 hours the macules become dark red or wine colored, and a day later they are definitely purpuric and petechial and do not disappear on pressure.

The **stupor** or **typhus state** is the extreme prostration accompanied by indifference to external surroundings, insomnia, and persistent delirium accompanied by visions, the delirium being mild or violent. The patient lies inert, passive, in dorsal decubitus, or on his side with knees flexed. The face is flushed and tense, the mouth half opened, the tongue dry and cracked (geographic tongue), the lips and gums covered with sordes. Deafness is a frequent and at times intense symptom. During this period cardiac, renal, pulmonary, nervous, or other involvement may be observed (these are separately described), and progressive wasting of the body tissues begins.

Between the eighth and the ninth day, clouding of the intelligence may be complete, and from this moment nervous symptoms become accentuated and pulmonary and cardiac signs increase. About the twelfth day the **terminal period** begins; this ends in recovery or death. In the former case, the patient appears to show increased agitation, but toward nightfall he feels better, the temperature begins to decline by short lyses, and convalescence is initiated with a crisis of sweating and polyuria, and with the recovery overnight of consciousness, intellectual faculties, and appetite. In the fatal cases there is seen at times a rise in temperature over the previous fever level; a state of "coma vigil" ensues, in which the patient appears to be awake but nevertheless is unconscious; the sphincters relax, subsultus tendinum occurs; likewise carphology, collapse, and death. In other cases the temperature may fall to normal or below, the general condition remains grave for 2 to 4 days, and the patient dies in syncope in the midst of prolonged unconsciousness or delirium.

All these enumerated symptoms develop during a cycle of 14 days on the average, after which, in those patients who recover, the fever lessens and a long and stormy convalescence begins. This may commence with hypothermia, sinus bradycardia, asthenia, fatigue, and, at times, nervous and other sequelae.

Systemic Alterations or Complications

The so-called complications of typhus are actually systemic alterations which depend essentially on greater or lesser involvement of the small blood vessels of each organ, due to rickettsial infection. But with these alterations, true complications occur as follows:

(1) SKIN

The eruption may develop early or late, appearing between the third and seventh day. The rash has a mulberry color; at times it is hemorrhagic, accompanied by hematuria, hematemesis, and melena.

(2) HEART, BLOOD VESSELS, AND BLOOD

Acute myocarditis is manifested by cardiac softening ("dead leaf" of French authors), diminution of cardiac sounds, alterations in rhythm, cardiac gallop, and fall in arterial blood pressure. Some writers believe that this acute myocarditis, complete or partial, is accompanied by a process of coronary endocapillaritis or endarteritis, which would explain the cardiac collapse, syncope, and sudden death. Garretón Silva, Hervé, and del Solar (1935) found the following on electrocardiographic examination:

1. That alterations in rhythm varied from slight extrasystolic arrhythmia to grave auricular fibrillation.

2. That changes in conduction time involved especially a lengthening of the P-R interval, most often on the eighth to tenth day of illness, the time interval at the beginning of convalescence being from 0.22 to 0.30 second or even 0.40 second instead of 0.12 to 0.16 second (normal); less frequently auriculo-ventricular block of the Wenckeback type occurred.

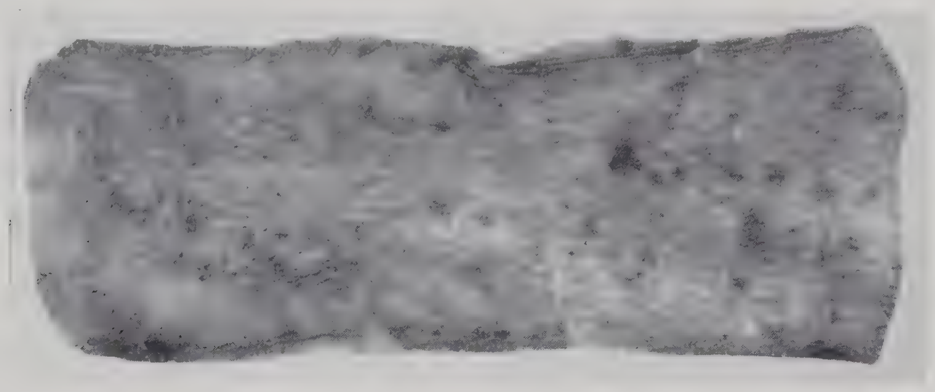


Fig. 203.—Human exanthematic (epidemic) typhus. Section of skin from the trunk, with typical exanthematic petechiae. (Courtesy of E. Herzog, University of Concepción, Chile; reproduced from *Anat. e Histología patol, de las lesiones orgán. de Tifo Exant. etc.; IX Reunion of the Argentine Society of Regional Pathology,* Mendoza, 1935, pp. 574-600.)

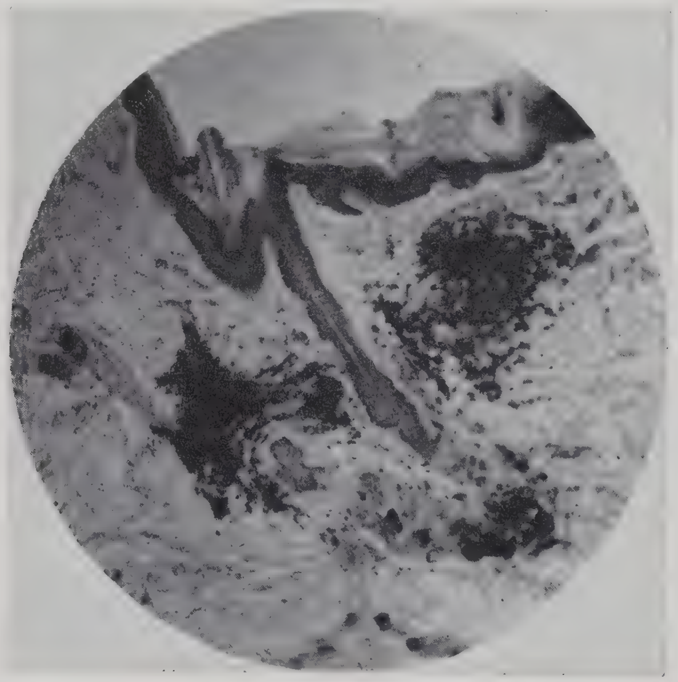


Fig. 204.—Human exanthematic (epidemic) typhus. Nodular perivascular exanthematic infiltrations, predominantly leucocytes, in the reticular and subcutaneous strata. Oxydase stain. (×41.) (Courtesy of E. Herzog, University of Concepción, Chile.)

3. That the most important changes were those of the ventricular complex, modifications in the Q wave, associated with lesions in the ventricular septum, being observed in 30 per cent of cases; in 48 per cent, thickening, hooking, and low voltage occurred, reaching maximum intensity at the height of the disease; in other cases they saw flattening or inversion of the T wave, and when this was found in the 3 leads, the prognosis was grave, mortality being 40 per cent. They showed that marked alterations in the T wave occur in 82 per cent of severe typhus cases, this having a diagnostic and prognostic value in hypertoxic cases.

Luz (1942), Holler (1941), Fonseca (1942), and Woodward and Bland (1944) found similar or even more serious alterations of electrocardiography, but they state that these are not of grave import, do not persist in convalescence, and are not responsible for circulatory phenomena. In Chile, Herzog and collaborators, especially Fernandez (1935), found that the most frequent histologic lesion is an acute focal interstitial disseminated myocarditis, diffuse myocarditis being less common, and that these lesions are not observed in typhus convalescents dying from other causes. Schnittenhelm specifically denies the importance of myocarditis and other cardiac alterations in explaining circulatory changes. Fishberg (1940) found that in many infectious diseases peripheral circulatory insufficiency affects the heart, without any organic lesion occurring. Harrell, Venning, and Wolff (1944) and Woodward and Bland (1944) suggest that cardiac failure does not take place in typhus. The low arterial pressure has been suggested as being due to cardiac failure. Macchiavello and Cifuentes (1942) found that systolic pressure is not as low as stated by other authors; the fall in pressure is principally diastolic, and low differential pressure figures are noted until convalescence; but these changes in blood pressure are not of cardiac origin. At present, all investigators agree that the great majority of symptoms usually considered as of a cardiac origin are in reality due to profound alterations in the endothelium of the small blood vessels, resulting in an increased permeability which causes manifold changes: edema, escape of water, salts, and plasma into the tissues, diminution in blood volume, hypochloremia, and hypoproteinemia, especially of the albumin fraction, which may drop to values one-fifth or less than normal, low arterial pressure, relaxation of vascular tone, alkalosis, and increase of blood nitrogen (protein) to 90 or more milligrams per cent. Many cephalic, nervous, and renal symptoms—but not all, by any means— are due to this mechanism rather than to specific lesions. American writers point out the marked similarity between typhus and shock due to burns and suggest that the therapy should be the same; that is, above all, the restoration of circulatory volume. Alessandri, since 1934, has noted that the results of the parenteral injection of physiologic saline were at times disastrous and at times helpful. Only recently has this been explained as due to escape of albumin (along with salts and water) into the tissues, a phenomenon originating in the drop in osmotic pressure of the crystalloids (Harrell et al., Woodward and Bland, 1944). We raised the question (1945) as to whether, in cases treated with convalescent serum, the apparent good results and the contradictory results were not due to the serum itself (homologous) and not to any specific antirickettsial effect.

There are some true changes in the blood, such as anemia and alterations in the leucocytes, but sudden variation in cell count is usually due to changes in hemoconcentration, quite variable in accordance with the dehydration or rehydration of the patient. Despite these fictitious alterations, the following changes may be established: a moderate leucocytosis subsequent to an initial phase of leucopenia; neutrophilia with marked regenerative shift, with 30 per cent or more of juvenile and stab forms. Leucocytosis and neutrophilia occur suddenly at the end of the disease when there is hyperpyrexia. The eosinophiles disappear gradually during the course of the illness, and in an irregular form. The lymphocytes are in inverse ratio to the polymorphonuclear leucocytes, with an absolute and relative increase after the first 7 days, and more at the end of the febrile periods. Monocytes increase between the eighth and sixteenth days to constitute 15 to 20 per cent of the white cells. As a rule, plasma cells also appear. Myelocytes vary in number, at times being numerous. The sum of all these characteristics forms the "gay" blood picture of Schilling. Platelets decrease in number during the eruption and rise at the end of the febrile period. In experimental studies of typhus hematology (1926, 1939), and in a minute analysis of 238 human cases (1945), we concluded that the hematology of typhus requires further study, taking into consideration all the factors involved, because the blood picture appears to depend in large measure on vascular changes and on composition changes in the blood (alkalosis, hypochloremia, hypoproteinemia, volume changes).

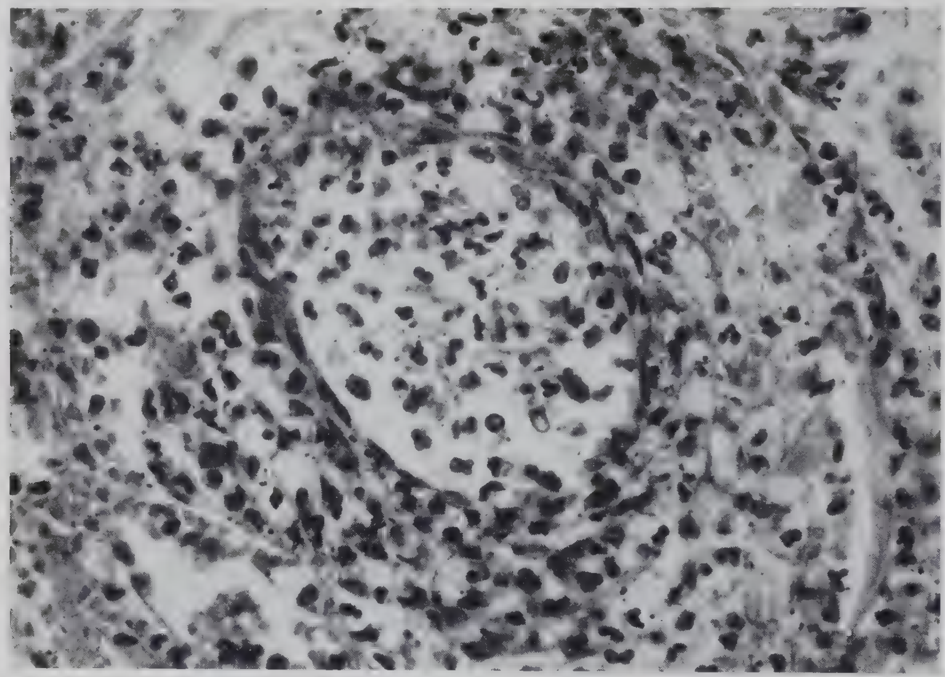


Fig. 205.—Human exanthematic (epidemic) typhus. Markedly dilated chorionic capillary with partial endothelial necrosis. In the interior, leucocytes, endothelial cells, and erythrocytes. Intense perivascular infiltration with hemorrhage. Oxydase stain. (×400.) (Courtesy of E. Herzog, University of Concepción, Chile.)

Along with the pathologic changes caused indirectly by alterations in the small vessels, there are others which depend directly upon vascular lesions such as thromboarteritis, gangrene of the extremities, or of the skin or scrotum. Arteritis causes chorioretinitis, optic atrophy, labyrinthitis, and other changes in the sense organs. Phlebitides are less frequent. For the reason that these findings are only occasional, since typhus rarely attacks blood vessels larger than the arterioles, the foregoing changes are to be considered usually as complications.

(3) RENAL CHANGES

With renal changes, as with cardiac pathology, there is a profound difference of opinion as to importance and interpretation. Benhamou (1938 and the French school in general, with which in some degree Yeomans et al. (1945) are in agreement, attribute great importance to hyperazotemia as a cause of many symptoms of the disease, including the ataxo-adynamic syndrome, crises of jacksonian epilepsy, epileptiform convulsions, intractable vomiting, stupor and "coma vigil," persistent hiccup, myoclonia, miosis, Cheyne-Stokes respiration, coma, and death. Wolbach et al. (1922) specifically state that in their series there were no urinary alterations indicative

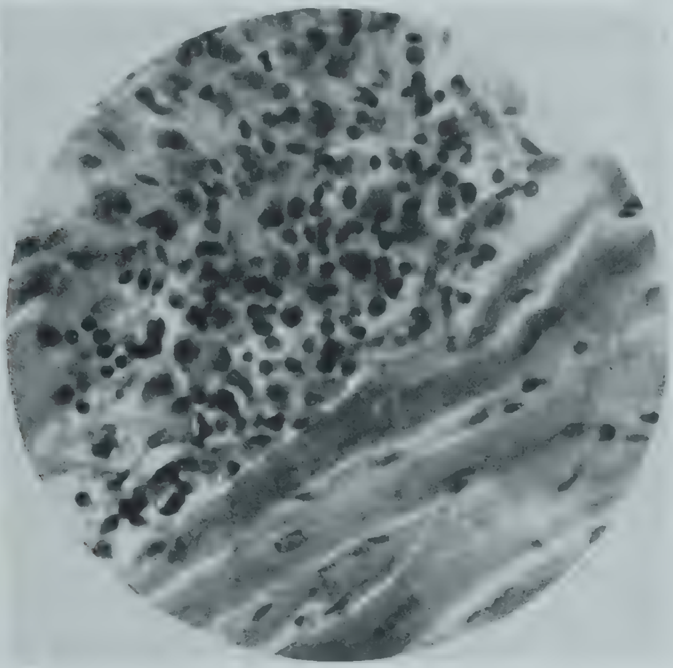


Fig. 206.—Human exanthematic (epidemic) typhus. Focal exanthematic myocarditis. Typical perivascular nodule with lymphocytes, histiocytes, plasma cells, and polymorphonuclear leucocytes. (×270.) (Courtesy of E. Herzog, University of Concepción, Chile.)

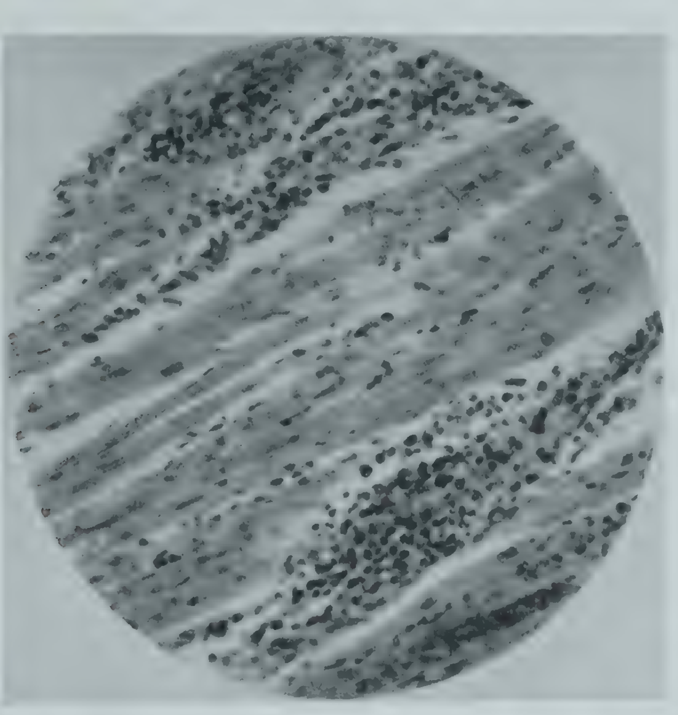


Fig. 207.—Human exanthematic (epidemic) typhus. Focal perivascular exanthematic myocarditis and "blade" or oval forms. (×170.) (Courtesy of E. Herzog, University of Concepción, Chile.)

of acute nephritis. Schäffer (1944) found no uremia in the group he studied and concluded that this was seen only in cases complicated by glomerulonephritis in certain epidemics in cold climates. In Chile, Alessandri and collaborators, especially Lozada, Etcheverry, and others, since 1934, studied the chemical alterations in the blood in a large series of hospitalized patients. Their results coincide with those obtained by all authors who consider that the essential pathologic physiology of typhus depends on the changes resulting from capillary permeability (the "transmineralization" of Schäffer), with hypochloremia, hypoproteinemia, dehydration, etc., the azotemia being a consequence of hemoconcentration, faulty nitrogen assimilation, diminished ingestion of fluids and of protein, and only rarely due to a true renal lesion; when this occurs it is due more to circulatory disturbances than to the infection. Cafarena (1936), in autopsying 40 typhus cases, found acute diffuse glomerulonephritis in 67.5 per cent, combined with interstitial nephritis, and acute focal interstitial nephritis in 22.5 per cent, none of these findings being specific for typhus. In 50 per cent of the cases there were hyperemia and leucocytosis of the interlobular capillaries, not found in ordinary glomerulonephritis.

(4) NERVOUS SYSTEM DISTURBANCES

Nervous system disturbances are common in typhus and usually develop during the second week, which period is sometimes called the *nervous phase*. From the time of Murchison, Trousseau, Gueneau de Mussy, Cantacuzéne, etc., the following groups have been described:

(a) **Psychic Disturbances.**—Acute psychomotor delirium (acute infectious mental confusion; infectious oneiric delirium), generalized or systematized (with somnambulism or automatism), or depressive (suicidal) or with special tendencies (reduplication of the personality); also, an absolute amnesia may remain during convalescence. In fatal cases there occurs acute terminal delirium.

(b) **Meningeal Reactions.**—Meningotyphus.

(c) **Cephalic Localizations.**—Localized endarteritis, or infectious encephalitis; hemiplegias, monoplegias, jacksonian crises, etc.

(d) **Bulbopontine Localizations.**—Tachycardia, polypnea, collapse; labioglosso-laryngeal paralysis, frequent in the second week and of fatal prognosis; ocular paralyses; facial paralysis; permanent deafness, etc.; dysarthria, disturbances in swallowing, etc.

(e) **Spinal Cord Localizations.**—Generally appear late, provoking vesical paralysis, urinary retention, and relaxation of the anal sphincter.

(f) **Extrapyramidal Disturbances.**—Resemble those of epidemic encephalitis, with diplopia, myoclonia, crises of hiccup, contractures, pseudoparkinsonian tremors, etc.

(g) **Peripheral Neuritis.**—Of the brachial plexus, popliteal nerve, sciatic nerve, etc.

(h) **Involvement of Vegetative Nervous System.**—Asthenia, rapid fatigue, hypotension, malnutrition, muscular emaciation, and other findings.

It has recently been reported that uremia is an important cause of these disturbances. This may be true in the terminal period of the disease, in which azotemia is an important contributing cause, but once again we may say that

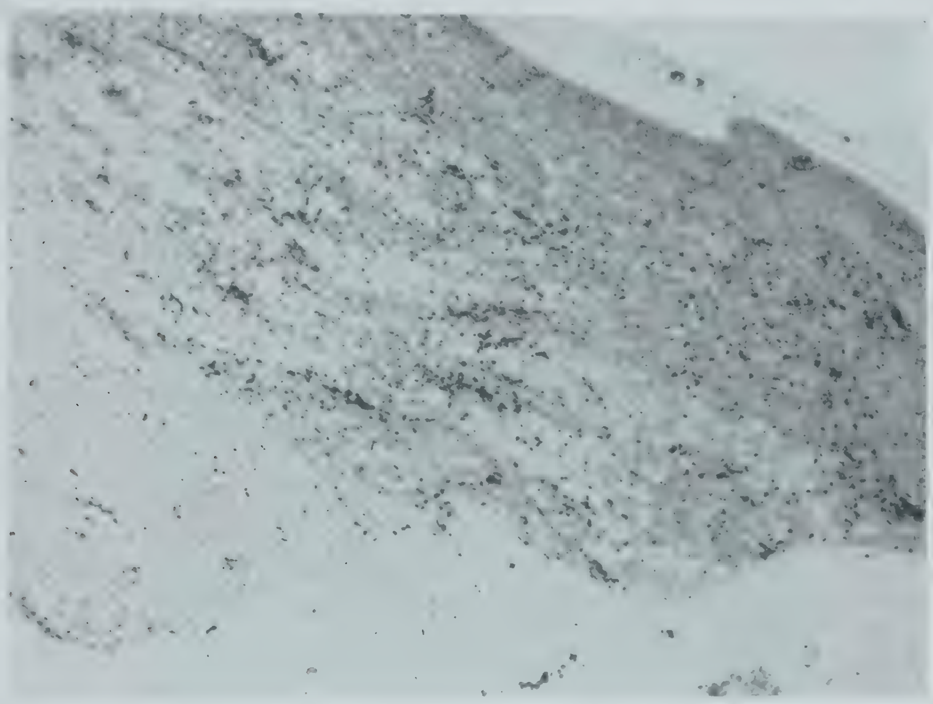


Fig. 208.—Human exanthematic (epidemic) typhus. Acute diffuse exanthematic ganglionitis of the nodose ganglion of the vagus nerve. Oxydase stain. (×28.) (Courtesy of E. Herzog, University of Concepción, Chile.)

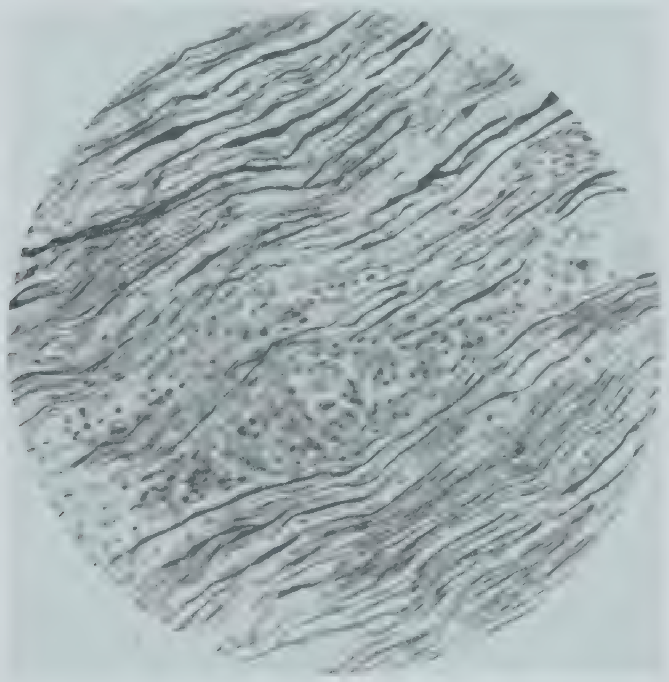


Fig. 209.—Human exanthematic (epidemic) typhus. Focal exanthematic perivascular neuritis of the vagus nerve. Gross. (×180.) (Courtesy of E. Herzog, University of Concepción, Chile.)

the nervous symptoms result from a double order of phenomena: the localization of the infection in the nervous centers, which are exposed to the powerful rickettsial toxin, and the vascular alterations mentioned, including the changes in the composition of the blood.

(5) DISTURBANCES IN THE RESPIRATORY APPARATUS

Coryza and "grippe" are almost constant at the beginning of typhus there may be tracheobronchitis or laryngitis, with dysphonia and a painfu cough, with scant pulmonary signs. Late bronchopneumonia is a frequen complication.

(6) DIGESTIVE DISTURBANCES

Aside from the alteration in the tongue ("parrot" tongue) and lingua tremor with difficulty in protruding the organ, we mention only anorexia an repugnance for food, constipation (although diarrhea may also occur in fifth of the cases), and vomiting.

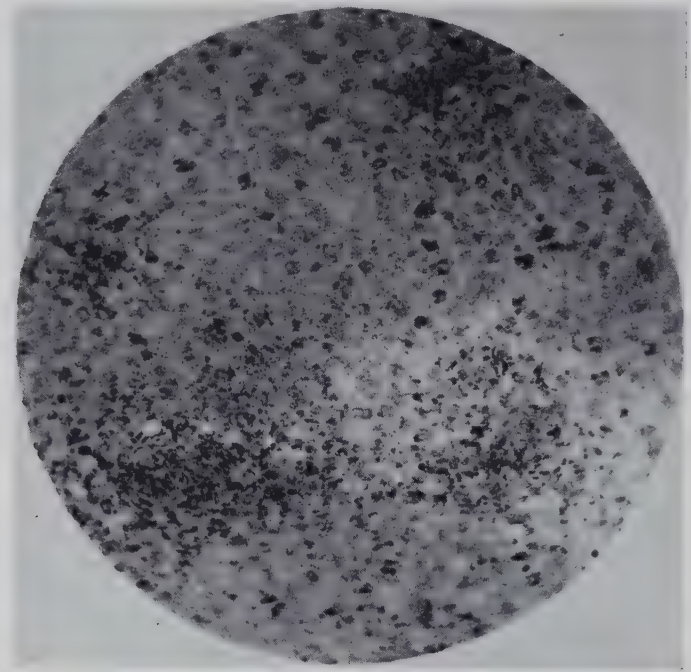


Fig. 210.—Acute diffuse interstitial nephritis. Renal medulla. Human exanthematic (epidemic) typhus. Oxydase stain. (×100.) (Courtesy of E. Herzog, University of Concepción, Chile.)

Frequency of Symptoms and Clinical Signs

In this respect it must be pointed out that the majority of studies o series of cases by different authors indicate selection of cases in one sens or another, and therefore the figures relative to the frequency of symptoms do not correspond to the total number of typhus cases but rather to the total number studied.

Clinical Forms

Typhus is so protean in its manifestations that a type description is always artificial. Clinical forms are classified in accordance with their gravity and with the predominance of certain symptoms. The following may be distinguished:

1. Fulminating typhus, *typhus siderans*, typhus without exanthem, rapidly fatal.

2. Severe typhus, *typhus gravis*, with 3 clinical varieties, the hypertoxic the ataxo-adynamic, and the hemorrhagic.

The severe hypertoxic cases generally have a continuous high temperature (41° C. or more), but not rarely cases occur in which the temperature is only slightly above normal. Nervous phenomena are marked (violent continuous delirium, fibrillary contractions, subsultus tendinum, carphology, intense dyspnea without lung changes, miosis of the pupils, relaxation of the sphincters). Cutaneous phenomena (widespread eruption, purpuric or hem-

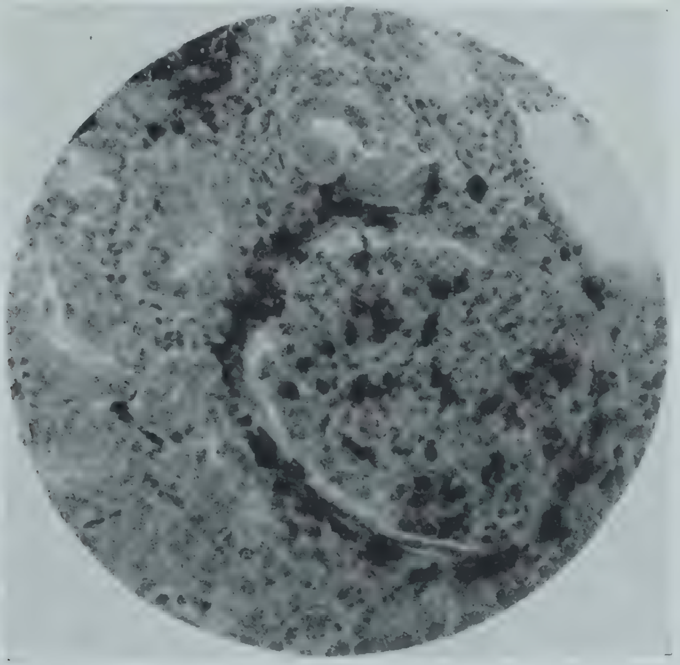


Fig. 211.—Acute glomerulonephritis with capsulitis. Human exanthematic (epidemic) typhus. Oxydase stain. (×170.) (Courtesy of E. Herzog, University of Concepción, Chile.)

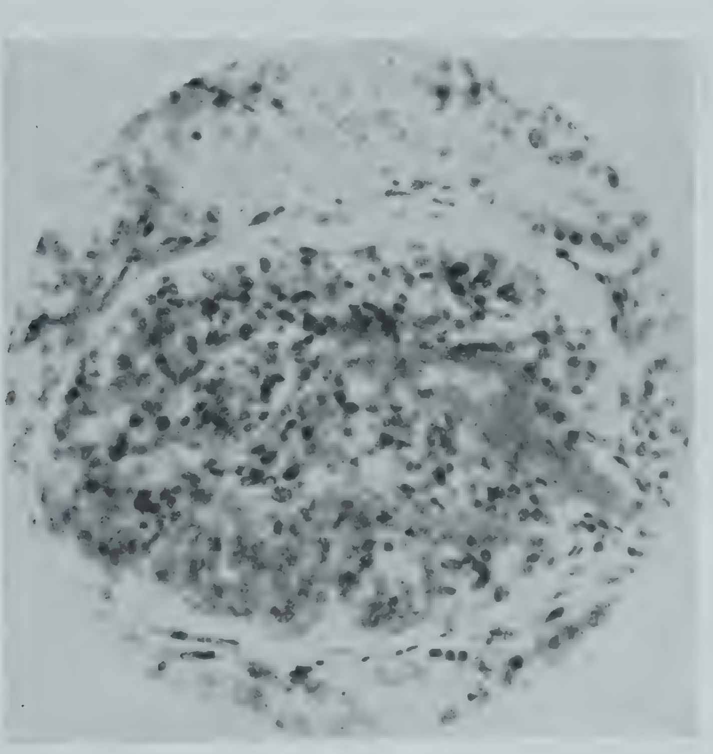


Fig. 212.—Intense acute glomerulitis with hyperemia of the capillary network and of the vascular pole. Human exanthematic (epidemic) typhus. (×340.) (Courtesy of E. Herzog, University of Concepción, Chile.)

orrhagic) and cardiovascular signs (mild carditis, arrhythmia) parallel the nervous symptoms. Death occurs with a terminal hyperpyrexia between the eighth and tenth days, but there is another type, also common, in which the defervescence of the fever is followed by hypothermia and death. In the ataxo-adynamic forms, a violent delirium predominates, with gesticulation and excessive talking; there is excessive movement of the musculature and extreme agitation, all of which may persist until death or, between the tenth and twelfth day, adynamia, profound stupor, and coma. In the severe hemorrhagic type the eruption includes gingival hemorrhages, hematuria, and melena, a fatal outcome being frequent.

3. Clinical forms of *average gravity* do not require special description.

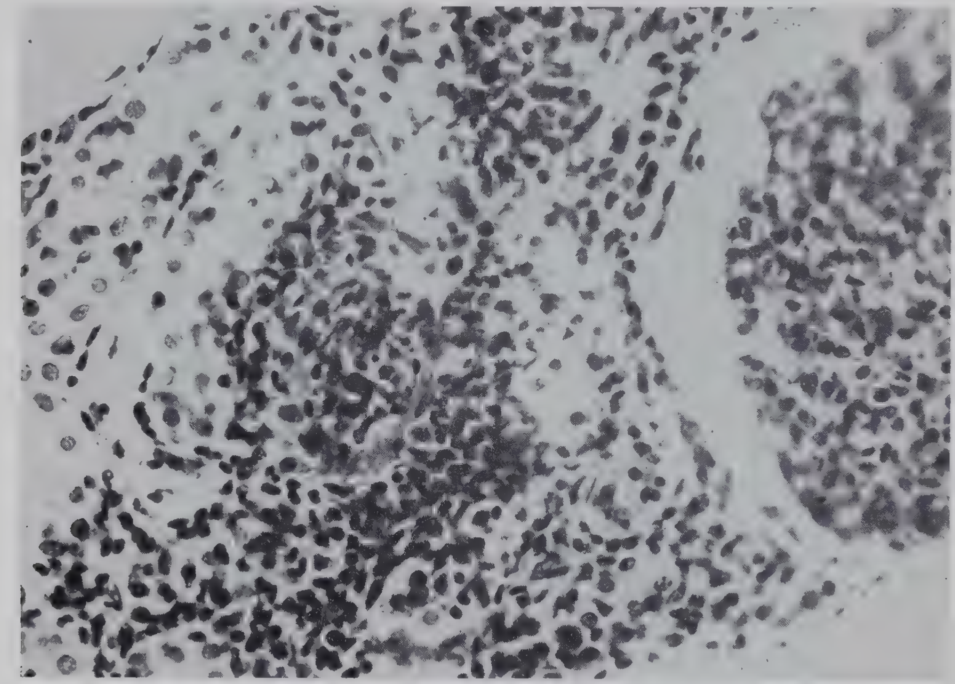


Fig. 213.—Exanthematic perivascular infiltration of the renal cortex with partial necrosis of the endothelium of an arteriole. Human exanthematic (epidemic) typhus. (×290.) (Courtesy of E. Herzog, University of Concepción, Chile.)

4. *Mild typhus* includes all those cases with a short fever curve, with the exanthem less intense and less extensive, and with slight nervous signs and few complications. The majority of cases of murine typhus and many of the classical typhus cases occurring in endemic zones correspond to this type. Mild cases are very frequent even during epidemics and have great epidemiologic importance because they are controlled as are the more serious cases.

One of the mild forms is called *abortive typhus,* which begins with the usual symptoms, at times intense, but in which after 6 or 7 days there is a sharp crisis, followed, for not more than 2 or 3 days, by only minor symptoms, and finally, by a short convalescence.

Another mild form is the *infantile typhus,* in which nervous complications are rare, mortality is low, and not infrequently the exanthem is absent, or the eruption is atypical. Infantile typhus commonly resembles grippe, but often there is definite splenomegaly.

The so-called *ambulatory typhus (typhus ambulans)* is self-explanatory, with a predominance of symptoms resembling grippe and with no eruption. Headache is one of the important symptoms.

5. *Inapparent typhus (typhus levissimus)* is usually without symptoms, for which reason it is called asymtomatic, subclinical, and also serologic typhus, since it is detected only by serologic reactions (agglutination, complement fixation, and others). It is important to note that the diagnosis should be made only when increasing titers are found with these tests, using fresh serum and frequent tests as well as proved antigens. The inapparent case does not have the epidemiologic importance, in our opinion, that other investigators attribute to it.

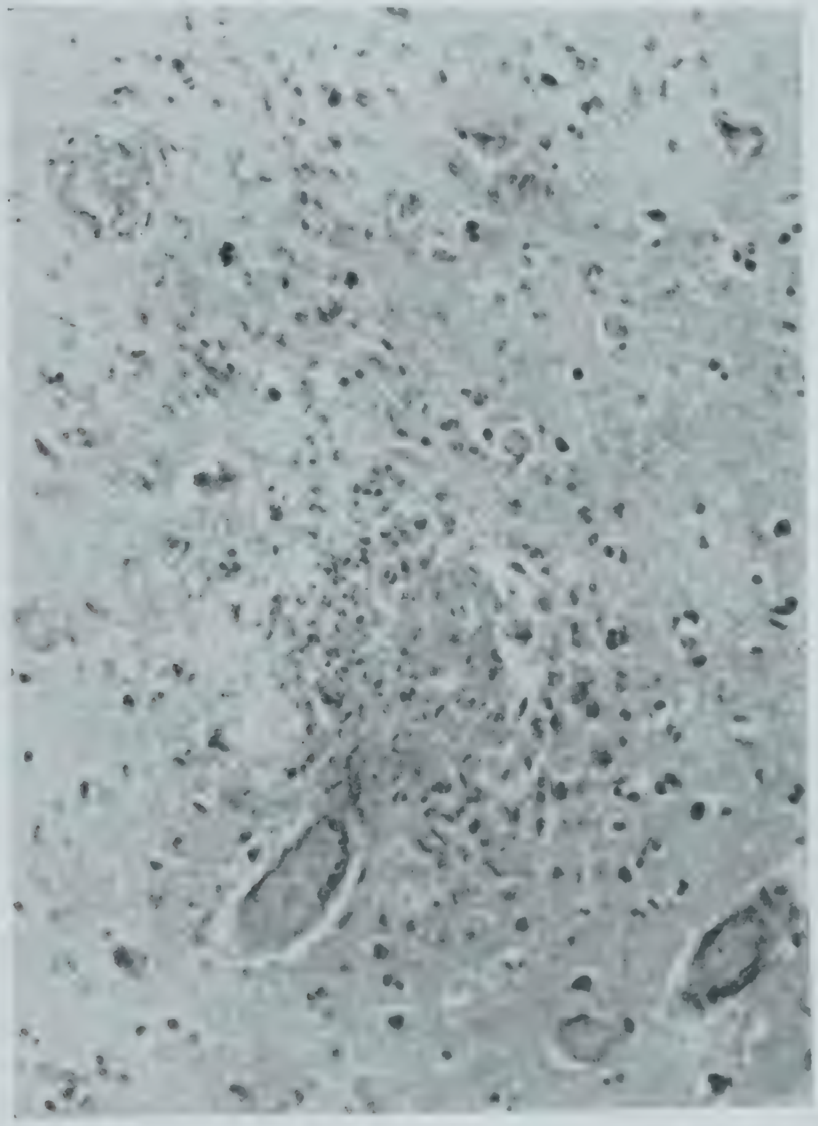


Fig. 214.—Cerebral typhus nodule. Patient S. F. Clinically, nervous system form; on autopsy, typhus meningo-encephalomyelitis. Neotropical exanthematic typhus, Minas Geraes, Brazil. (Photograph ×250.) (Courtesy of Octavio de Magalhães.)

The foregoing classification has only a descriptive value, since in individual cases the clinical gravity has little relation to mortality, although the latter is greater in those groups with severe nervous or cutaneous symptoms.

Complications

Only the important complications will be mentioned: parotiditis, phlegmonous involvement of the lymph glands, otitis, mastoiditis, abscess and edema of the glottis, laryngotyphus, secondary pneumopathies (bronchial pneumonias, other pneumonias), purulent pleurisy, association localizations, gangrene, etc. In cases without complications, the prompt recuperation of patients is remarkable, except for pains in the legs and feet, rapid pulse, and some adynamia.

Immunity

Typhus confers a lasting immunity on the patient, although some authors mention the possibility of a second attack, generally attenuated, after several years. Zinsser (1934), in studying Brill's disease, concluded that this was a late recrudescence of typhus originally occurring in youth in immigrants from the Near East. This theory presupposes latency of the infectious rickettsial agent in a state of premunition. Loss of immunity would occur as a result of intercurrent diseases which diminish the biologic resistance of these individuals. The author (1938, 1945) expressed the opinion that the immunity of these inapparent cases seen in epidemic periods is relatively short, as the epidemic curve of typhus appears to indicate. The supposition that man is a reservoir of classical rickettsial virus has not been directly proved, and the author does not know of any positive experiment in which lice fed on convalescents become infected 2 or 3 days after the definitive drop in temperature.

Prognosis

The prognosis of typhus varies from epidemic to epidemic and is also variable in classical and murine typhus. Mortality due to murine typhus may be less than 1 per cent. On the other hand, louse-transmitted typhus may have a mortality of 22 per cent without marked annual variations. The age of the patients also influences mortality.

In Chile the mortality during childhood and youth is greater in rural areas than in the city of Santiago, while the reverse is true during adult ages, the total mortality for rural areas being less (15.1 per cent compared with 24 per cent, 1939), which is a characteristic of rural typhus endemicity, as stated in the section on epidemiology.

The majority of typhus deaths occur between the ninth and twelfth day, unless death is due to complications. Clinical severity does not always indicate a fatal termination, but those cases which begin with marked nervous disturbances, with sustained hyperpyrexia or subnormal temperatures, with leucocytosis of 20,000 or more, and with a continued low titer in the Weil-Felix reaction, or those cases with bronchopneumonia, pneumonia, venous thrombosis, etc., all have a poor prognosis.

Differential Diagnosis

The differential diagnosis of exanthematic typhus must be made with regard to the 2 varieties of typhus, that is to say, murine or classical, as well as with regard to other diseases.

Murine typhus may be suspected on epidemiologic grounds and confirmed by laboratory tests already mentioned.

As for other diseases, differentiation is difficult when epidemiologic data are lacking and the typhus case is sporadic. The differential diagnosis must be made from typhoid fever, relapsing fever, measles, meningococcic septicemia with eruption, and human toxoplasmosis as described by Pinkerton and Henderson. It was by means of a strict differential analysis of the clinical symptoms resembling those of typhus that we were able to make a diagnosis of the first case of toxoplasmosis proved during the life of the patient, who in this instance recovered (Guayaquil, 1942, 1944).

Before the development of the eruption, typhus may be confused with any infectious disease, especially grippe. At times it is very difficult to differentiate from other rickettsial diseases. The basis for differentiation described in the first section of this chapter should be used in these cases.

It may be said in general that serologic tests (Weil-Felix, specific agglutination of rickettsias, complement fixation), especially when successive examinations show increasing antibody titers, are the most useful diagnostic aids. The different strains of Proteus OX allow investigations to be directed toward the rickettsial groups defined by Felix and Rhodes. The possibility of residual and nonspecific Weil-Felix reactions (anamnestic), including those in healthy individuals, must be considered.

Pathology

The macroscopic examination of the cadaver of a typhus case is not sufficient to identify the disease. Cadaveric hypostasis or skin color may lessen the value of the eruption as a diagnostic point. Congestion of the conjunctivae, epithelium, cerebrum, and leptomeninges, punctiform visceral hemorrhages, dilatation of both cardiac ventricles, splenic hypertrophy (inconstant), and the waxy degeneration of the abdominal muscles are not specific, and the complications usually serve only to confuse the diagnosis.

On the other hand, microscopic histologic examination permits the detection of almost specific changes, which are seen only in other rickettsioses, such as in the spotted fevers, as well as in typhus.

The specific lesion of exanthematic typhus was mentioned by Popoff (1875) and described in the skin by Fraenkel (1914, 1915) and in the brain by von Prowazek in 1914. The findings of these authors have been confirmed by Aschoff (1915), Benda (1015), Ceelen (1916), Bauer (1916), Jaffé (1918), G. Herzog (1918), Spielmeyer (1919), Nicol (1919), Wolbach and Todd (1920), Wolbach, Todd, and Palfrey (1922), Marinesco (1922), Morgenstern (1922), Golden (1945), Dawidowsky (1924), Wolbach (1948), Wohlwill (1944), and others. In Chile, Palacios, Chavez, and Avendaño (1935) studied the pathology of experimental typhus, and Herzog (1918), and Wolbach (1940, 1948), human typhus pathology, introducing new methods for study.

The specific lesion is essentially (1) a lesion of the small blood vessels of the skin, nervous system, and some viscera, which results from the localization of the infectious agent in the vascular endothelium, and (2) the reaction produced in the neighboring tissues by its presence. At the beginning it is seen that the intracellular localization of the rickettsias in the vascular endothelium causes degenerative changes, followed by proliferative reactions and infiltrative phenomena. The aggregate of these focal lesions is the typhus nodule or Fraenkel's nodule.

Lesions on the skin are more frequent, but not exclusively so, on a level with the rashes, in the capillaries, small arteries and veins, and around the sweat-secreting glands, papillas, and subpapillary plexus. On the first day of the exanthem, the endothelia are edematous, sometimes to the extent of closing up the vascular lumen. The endothelial cells show signs of mitosis, stain slightly, and occasionally are filled with rickettsias. The connective tissue adjacent to the involved blood vessel contains many polymorphonuclear neutrophiles (Dawidowsky, Wolbach, et al.), well brought out by the oxydase reaction introduced by E. Herzog (1935). Toward the fifth day of the disease there is evidence of the formation of mural thrombi on the walls of the blood vessels, and at times occlusive fibrinous thrombi and the appearance of perivascular cells, among them macrophages with clear cytoplasm, polymorphonuclears, and scavenger cells. The typhus nodule thus formed is focal and progressive in character, and during the succeeding days new nodules are formed in the larger vessels, including those of the subcutaneous tissues. Lesions of the intima are less frequent and those of the media exceptional. In addition to the nodules, there occurs a diffuse perivascular infiltration in the skin made up of mononuclear phagocytes, lymphoid cells, plasma and scavenger cells and many polymorphonuclear leucocytes, as demonstrated by Versin Castellón using the oxydase reaction.

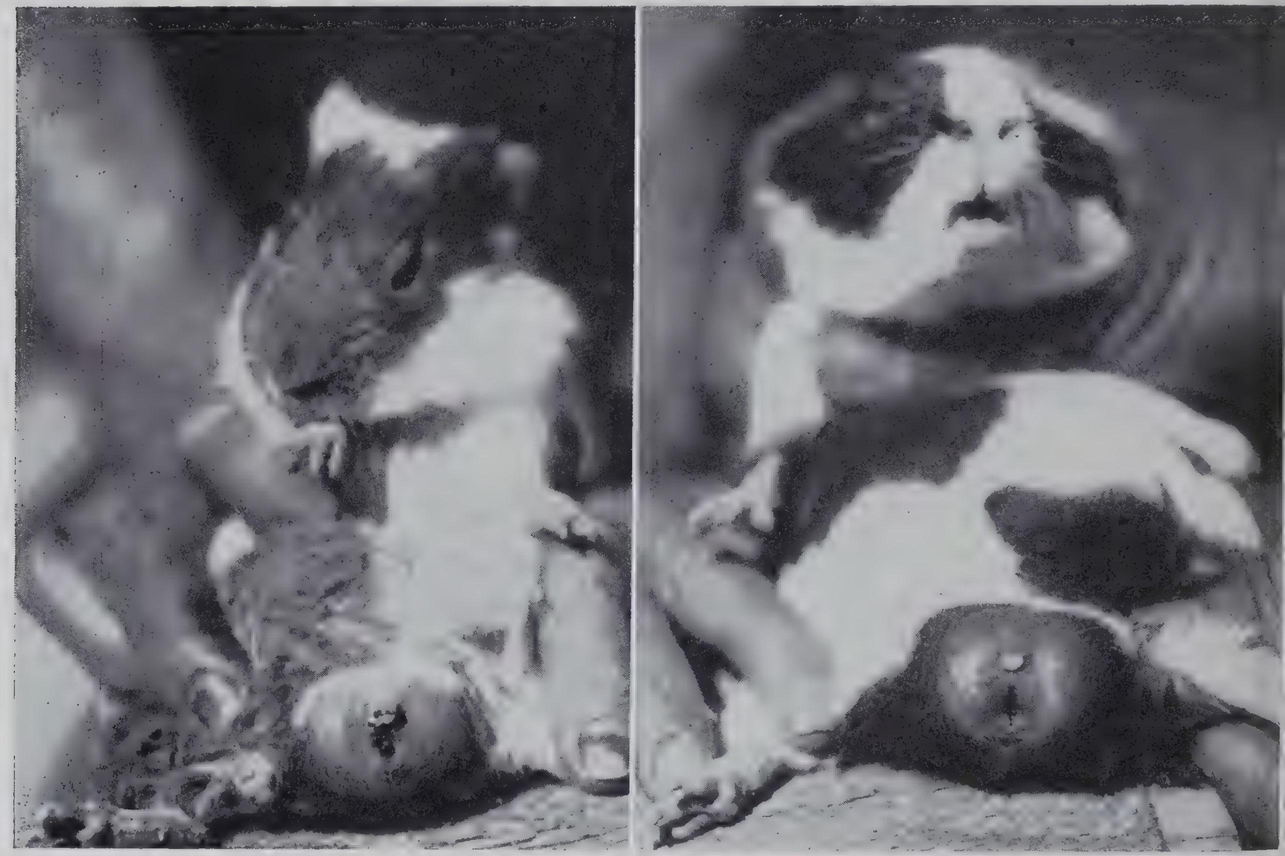


Fig. 215.—Experimental inoculation of guinea pig with virus of "neotropical exanthematic typhus." Scrotal reaction on the seventh day of the disease. Minas Geraes, Brazil. (Courtesy of Octavio de Magalhães.)

Hemorrhages around the capillaries and arterioles occur about the eighth day due to endothelial degeneration and rupture. Regression of the thrombi takes place by means of organization, and the disappearance of the nodules is brought about by the perinodular proliferation of fibroblasts, around the eighteenth day, with disappearance as well of the infiltrating cells, through phagocytosis.

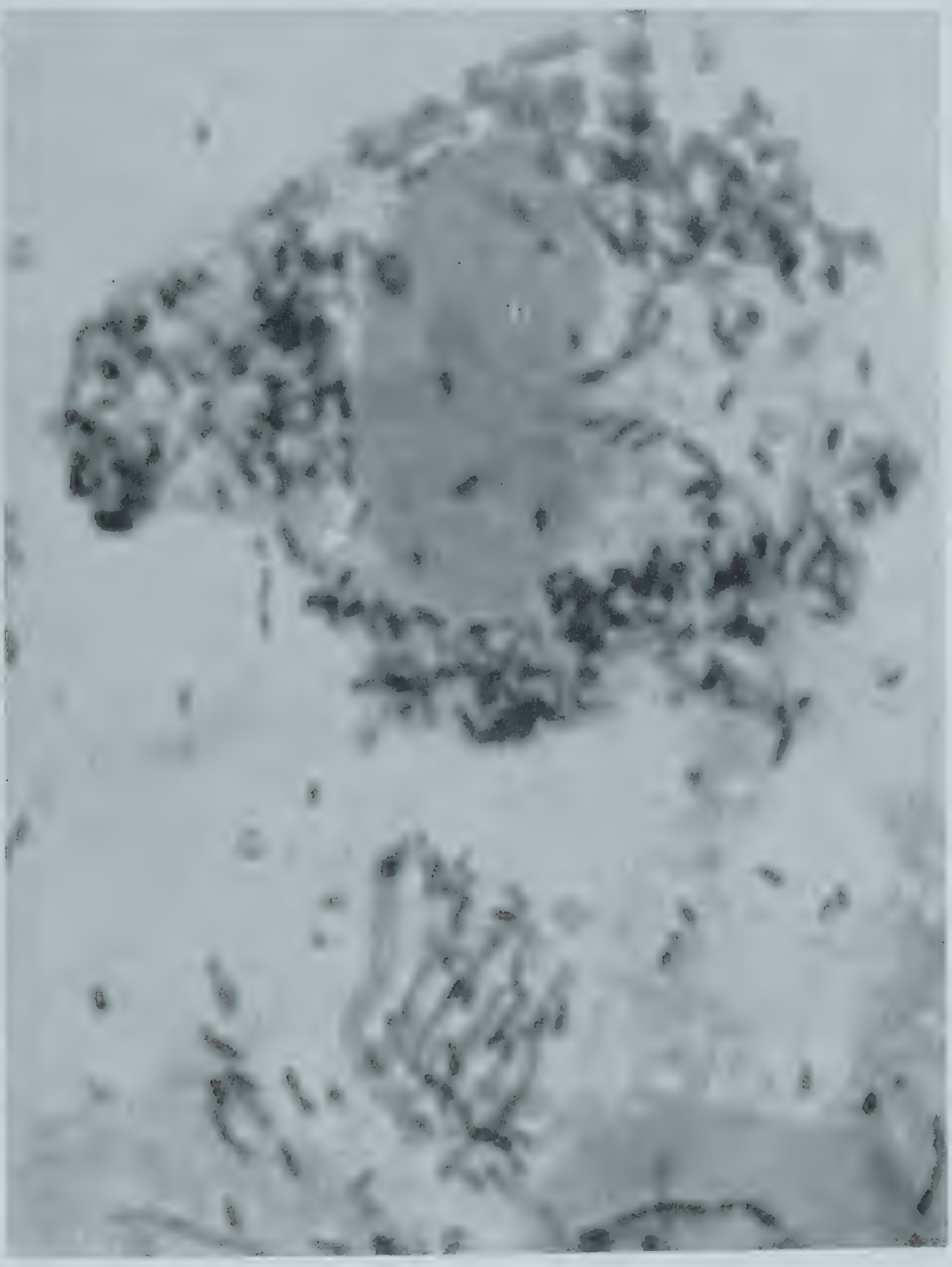


Fig. 216.—*Rickettsia mooseri* in peritoneal serosal cells of rats irradiated with x-rays. Observe the filamentous and chain forms. Author's stain.

The nervous system is surpassed only by the skin in the abundance of lesions. These are also nodular, with endothelial degeneration, thrombi, hemorrhages, and perivascular infiltration of macrophages and polynuclear cells but without lymphocytes. The preferred location is in the gray matter (mesencephalon, pons, floor of the fourth ventricle, bulb, molecular layer of the cerebellum, the medulla, etc.). Lesions are more prevalent in the capillaries and precapillaries and not in the arterioles as in the skin. In the nodules the focal blood vessels show thrombonecrotic lesions (G. Herzog, Jarisch, Dawidowsky), but Jaffé and Spielmeyer found neither serious necrosis nor proliferation of the cells of the intima or adventitia. According to some (Wohlwill), if the terminal membrane which exists between the blood vessels and the parenchyma is intact, the proliferative lesion is mesenchymatous at the expense of adventitial elements and ''Plasmazellen.'' Other authors believe that the true typhus nodules are formed by a proliferative glial reaction, principally of the microglia (Kodama and Futaki, 1929), and rarely of macroglia (Wohlwill), or of the oligodendroglia in foci of the white matter. Spielmeyer describes 4 types of nodules: compact foci of 0.1 to 1.5 mm. diameter; nodules occurring in rosettes in the cerebral and cerebella cortex; the so-called *Strauchartiges* or *Gliastreuchwerk* of the molecular layer of the cerebellum; and the *Gliastern* formed by 1 or 2 pericapillary layers of glial cells in the pons and medulla. The participation of neuroglia and vascular elements in the formation of typhus nodules in the brain was well studied by von Prowazek. Along with the circumscribed lesions are found diffuse infiltrations without selective topography. The nodules develop in distinct epochs, those of the medulla being the earliest. They regress by disintegration or cellular migration and disappear without leaving any signs in about 2 months.

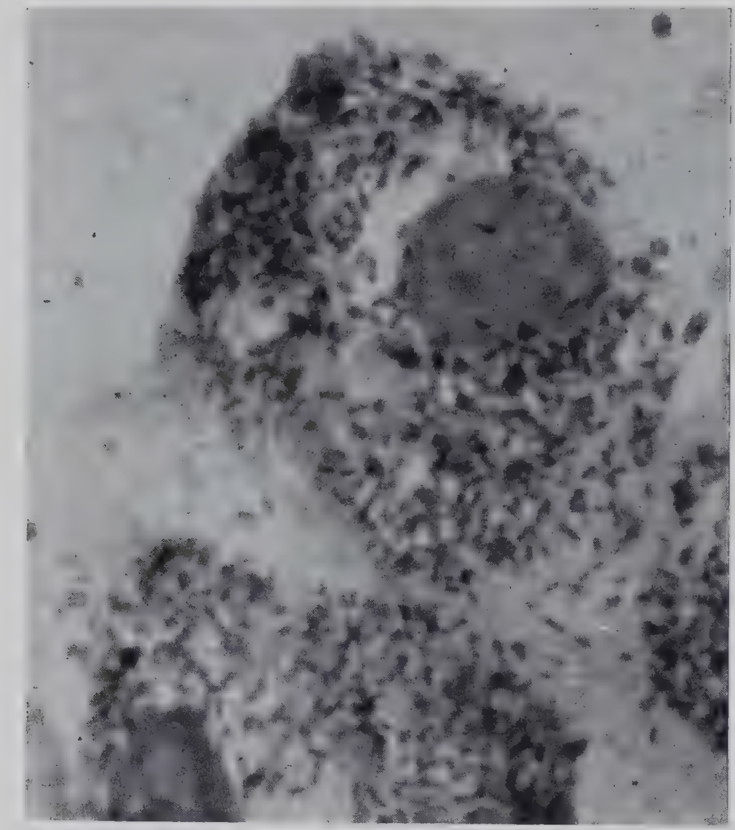


Fig. 217.—Typical distribution of *Rickettsia prowazeki* in serosal cells. Author's stain.

The diffuse and focal lesions of the peripheral nerves have been studied by Morgenstern, Marinesco, Versine, Wohlwill, and others and are less important than the lesions of the sympathetic and parasympathetic systems studied by Abrikossoff (1923), Morgenstern (1922), Mogilnitzky (1924), Dawidowsky (1924), and especially E. Herzog and Oyarzun, who described the diffuse inflammatory processes and the focal nodules. The sympathetic ganglia (especially the superior cervical ganglion), the vagus (ganglion nodosum), and the intervertebral ganglia present a focal ganglionitis with discrete degeneration of the nervous parenchyma. These lesions appear early, and the cellular degenerations and alterations are varied and intense.

The pathologic lesions of the peripheral vegetative nervous system, which according to Dawidowsky precede those of the central nervous system, will explain, according to Herzog, the vegetative symptoms observed in typhus patients.

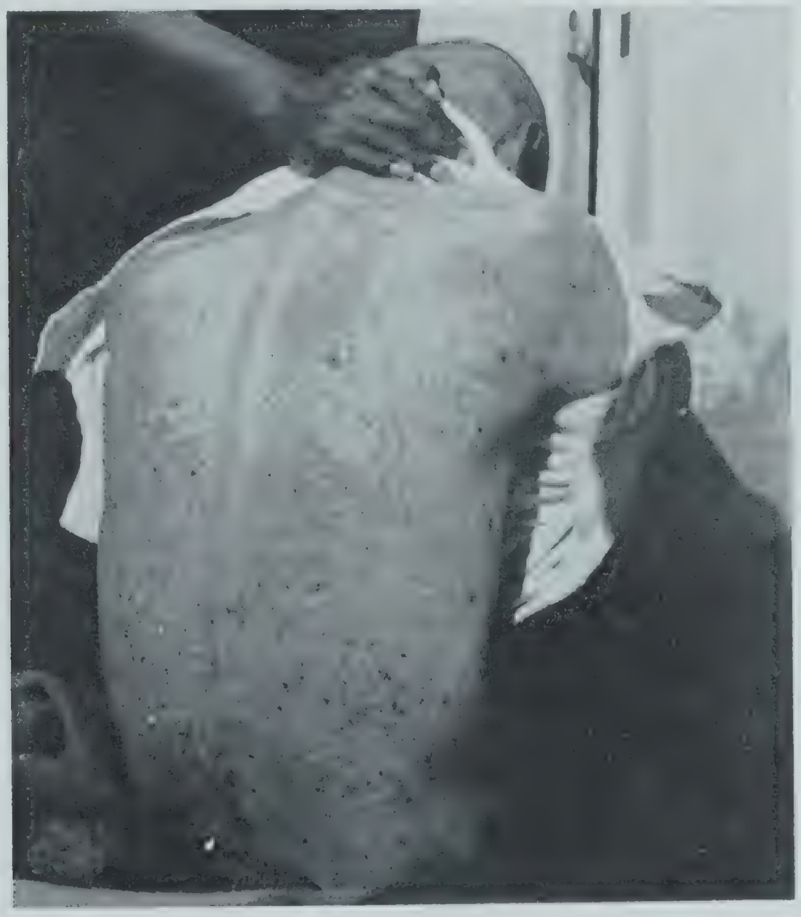


Fig. 218.—Exanthem in epidemic exanthematic typhus. Bolivian case. (Courtesy of Felix Veintemillas.)

Herzog and Rodriguez and Fernandez found alterations of 2 general types in the heart in 97.7 per cent of cases: the first, an interstitial inflammatory process (interstitial myocarditis in small foci, or diffuse), with a predominance of granulocytes (55 per cent of cases), in the first or second week, and an assortment of other cells, and with no damage to the muscle fibers; the second, focal nodules like those already described. The lesions disappear without scarring. Golden (1945) found similar lesions.

In the kidney, Herzog and Cafarena found no lesions in only 10 per cent of cases. In 67.5 per cent there occurred a diffuse acute glomerulonephritis and pure or combined interstitial nephritis, and in 22.5 per cent there was pure interstitial nephritis, focal or diffuse. In the former there occurs intense hyperemia and an increase in cells from the beginning, giving a positive oxydase reaction. Golden (1945) found interstitial nephritis and hemoglobinuric nephrosis.

Other alterations are found in the suprarenal capsules and in the gonads, in the hematopoietic organs, spleen, and lymph glands, and in the liver and other parenchymatous organs; in general, many of these are due to vascular changes or to increased activity of the reticuloendothelial system. Golden believes that collapse in typhus cases is due to a focal necrosis and cytolysis of the suprarenals in addition to interstitial myocarditis and nervous system lesions.

Wolbach and Todd (1920) and later with Palfrey (1922) deserve great credit for correlating these vascular endothelial lesions with the presence of rickettsia and of associating rickettsial activity with various perivascular manifestations.

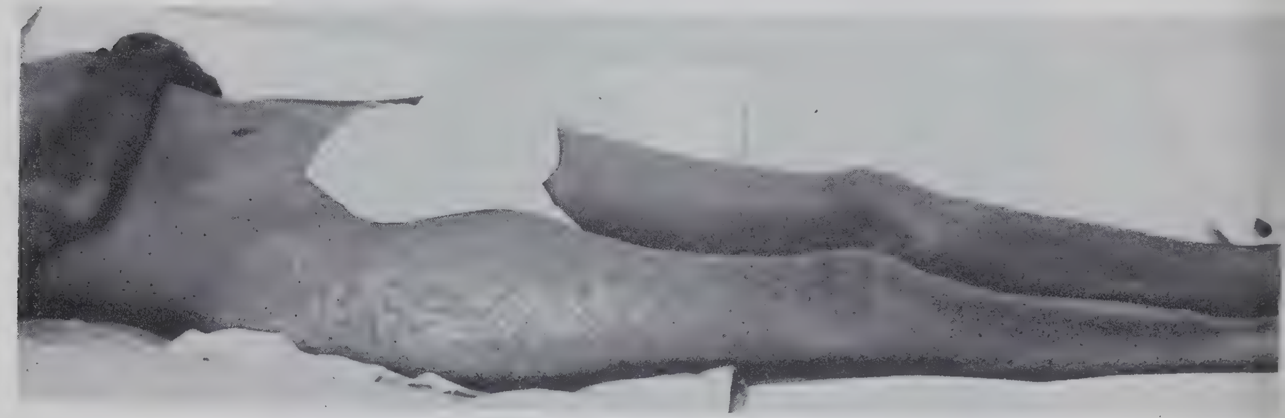


Fig. 219.—Common grave form, fatal case of "neotropical exanthematic typhus," Minas Geraes, Brazil; polymorphous exanthem, principally petechial. (Courtesy of Octavio Magalhães.)

The modern investigations of Herzog and collaborators in the Institute of Pathology of the University of Concepción, Chile, have been correlated with the new physiopathologic interpretation of the disease, especially with reference to the much discussed participation of the heart and the kidneys. They have also made it possible to establish an organic basis for the symptomatology dependent on the vegetative nervous system. It is noteworthy that in all the pathologic studies of series of cases, variations occur from one epidemic to another, and it is therefore imprudent to make quantitative generalizations with regard to local findings in defining a standard pathology in a disease as multiform as is typhus.

MURINE TYPHUS

There is little that can be stated with exactitude regarding the pathology of murine typhus, since it is rarely fatal. In the few cases studied it has been possible to establish that the pathology of the disease follows the same general lines outlined for exanthematic typhus, although the specific lesions are less intense, especially those of the nervous system.

IV. EXANTHEMATIC MACULAR FEVERS

5. ROCKY MOUNTAIN SPOTTED FEVER

Synonyms.—Blue disease; black disease; pinta fever, Bull fever; Rocky Mountain spotted fever, Western type, Eastern type, Minnesota variant (Zinsser); tick fever; Bitterroot spotted fever; specific infectious endarteritis (Wolbach); macular neoarctic macular rickettsioses (Amaral and Monteiro). Although in part differing epidemiologically, alike antigenically (or, to date, not distinguishable), are the spotted fevers described in Mexico, Brazil, Colombia, and India, under the following names: Sinaloa fever, Choix fever, exanthematic fever of São Paulo, São Paulo typhus, exanthematic neotropic typhus (Magalhaes); macular fever of São Paulo; typhus of Minas Geraes; Brazilian rickettsioses (pinto); macular neotropic rickettsioses; Brazilian typhus; Pisa disease (Meyer and Gomez); Tobia petechial fever; Tobia spotted fever of Colombia and Santander; Indian tick typhus; Megaw's disease; sporadic typhus-like disease of India, Kenya fever, and possibly also some forms of South African, North Queensland, and Russian tick-borne fever.

Definition

Rocky Mountain spotted fever is an acute exanthematic macular febrile rickettsiosis, caused by *Dermacentroxenus rickettsi*, and transmitted by the bite of various ticks.

Characteristics

An exanthematic disease distinguished by macular exanthem first, petechial later, preceded and accompanied by fever, headache, and various other aches, phenomena consequent to the specific endangiitis, principally of the peripheral blood vessel.

Geographic Distribution

Before the recent knowledge of the enormous incidence of murine typhus, Rocky Mountain spotted fever was the most important rickettsial disease in the United States and still is from the point of view of its severity; this is also true in Brazil. Wolbach (1919) summarized the incidence in the United States from 1885, according to data collected in United States Public Health Reports (No. 36, 1912); Cooley and the Montana State Board of Entomology mention, for the years 1885-1912, 215 cases with 139 deaths, and an annual mortality rate between 33.3 and 100 per cent; for 1913-1918 in Bitterroot Valley, 44 cases; and for other localities in Montana, 1915-1918, 58 cases (including one from Idaho). Summarizing various sources of information, Wolbach gives the following distribution of the different known cases: between the years 1910 and 1918—Nevada, 81; Washington, 27; Colorado, 25; Montana, 135; Wyoming, 128; Oregon, 65; California, 39; Idaho, 1,909; Utah, 84; and South Dakota, 2. The cases reported by the United States Public Health Service, between 1928 and 1938 (in part), totaled, according to Gordon, 1,943: New England and Middle Atlantic states, 65; Central Northeastern and Northwestern states, 137; South Atlantic states (Delaware, Maryland, District of Columbia, Virginia and West Virginia, North and South Carolina, Georgia, and Florida), 951; Central Southeast (Kentucky, Tennessee, and Alabama), and Central Southwest, 60; Mountain States (Montana, Idaho, Wyoming, Colorado, New Mexico, Arizona, Utah, Nevada), 2,044; Pacific (Washington, Oregon, and California), 645. Gordon establishes that, of the 2,190 cases reported between 1933 and 1937, 1,435 (65.5 per cent) were in the mountainous states and 601 (27.4 per cent) in the Pacific states.

In Brazil, for the region of São Paulo, Dias and Martins (1939) mention a total of 88 cases between 1929 and 1933. Magalhaes, in the district of Minas Geraes, mentions 135 serious cases between the years 1929 and 1937. The statistics of Patiño Camargo, i Colombia, for the zone of the Tobia and Negro rivers, and those of Montoya and Boshell in Santander, refer to infection in the municipal districts of Nimaima, Villeta Quebradanegra, Utila, La Peña, Betulia, San Vicente, and Zapatoca, mentioning some 14 cases, practically all fatal, between 1935 and 1942.

In Mexico, statistics are very incomplete. Bustamante and Varela (1943, 1946 found the disease in Sonora, Sinaloa, Durango, St. Luis de Potosí, and Veracruz. In India there is as yet no clear definition as to the status of this disease, although Topping et al recently proved its presence.

Epidemiology

Spotted fever is essentially a rural disease which is transmitted accidentally to ma during his journeyings through zones where infected ticks live (woodsmen, countrymen tourists, etc.). In some instances the ticks are transported to houses by dogs, giving rise t urban cases. In Brazil, where the dog is a reservoir of the infection and where the vectors are habitual parasites of this animal, the disease has high domestic incidence, a has been noted by Magalhaes, who also pointed out its characteristic suburban distributio in Minas Geraes.

Because this disease is only accidental in relation to man, and because of the habit of the vectors, epidemic characteristics can rarely be assumed in districts with a ver dense rural population and high tick incidence. Infected zones generally show littl tendency to spread. The proportion of infected ticks, in spite of the hereditary transmission of the virus, remains more or less stable, according to various studies made i the United States, although it varies from one site to another (1 in 300 on a average). Climatic conditions favor transmission of the infection to man, the disease being more frequent during the period of the tick's activity (spring) and when ma enters upon activities which put him in closer contact with ticks.

In order for the tick to be able to transmit the infection, it is necessary for the virus to be "reactivated." Nonvirulent, though immunizing, types have been describe (Spencer, 1929). Infection is maintained in the vector, so that a vertebrate reservoir i not essential. Some ticks do not bite man, and therefore can transmit the infection only among their rodent hosts; for example, the *Haemaphysalis leporispalustris* of the rabbit; others, such as the argasid tick, attack man only exceptionally. But both arthropods share their hosts with *D. andersoni* and in this way can cooperate indirectly in the dissemination of the disease. The principal ticks which transmit the infection to man are: *D. andersoni* in the western states of the United States; *D. variabilis* in the eastern states *Amblyomma americanum* in Texas and Oklahoma; *Amblyomma cajennense* in Brazil an Colombia and perhaps along the east coast of Mexico and *R. sanguineus* in other sections o Mexico. Infection takes place by means of the insect bite, but only after several hours o feeding of the tick on man (according to Parker, 1938, 8 hours or more). Infection ma also occur by crushing the tick on the skin. Moreira and Magalhaes (1935) and Días an Martins (1937) have demonstrated, in Brazil, the important role played by dogs in domesti spread of the disease. Although numerous animal reservoirs of the infection exist, among them opossums, wildcats, and wild rabbits, the disease occurs rarely in travelers, being more domestic, rural, or suburban. In the United States, adult ticks are the principal transmitters. although among children nymphal ticks play a certain role. In Brazil the disease is transmitted chiefly by nymphs of *A. cajennense* (Magalhaes and Moreira), although *A. striatu* has also been found spontaneously infected (Salles Gomes). Magalhaes and Moreira believ that *Cimex lectularius* is an important vector of the disease, which would explain the famil incidence of cases (as many as 12 in a single house).

In the warm regions of Brazil, the incidence of the disease may be limited to the coole dry season. Greater incidence has been found to occur in young adult males (Wilson

Chowning, 1902), but this seems to be due to other factors than a greater age group susceptibility. All races appear to be equally susceptible, but in Brazil the disease is more frequent among Mulattoes because of their greater relative proportion in infected areas. There are fewer fatalities from the disease among children than among adults, and mortality is highest among the aged. Although the specific mortality is variable from one site to another, even in near-by areas, the prognosis is always grave, mortality being over 80 per cent in Brazil and Colombia. In the United States, the so-called Western type, commonly of high virulence, has been contrasted with the Eastern type of more attenuated virulence. Topping has demonstrated that this distinction is not valid, both grave and benign cases being observed in any of the infected regions. Moreover, all the strains of spotted fever are alike, immunologically, the clinical, pathologic, and experimental differences seen being due to variations in virulence which at times are transitory.

Clinical Description

There is no typical clinical picture which describes all cases of Rocky Mountain spotted fever, since severe and mild variations are observed with such different aspects that they cannot be included in a common description. Magalhaes, in Brazil, designated the disease "neotropical exanthematic typhus," not considering the term "macular" or "spotted" fever to be exact, because the eruption, as seen in that country, is more of a pleomorphic type. Cases are divided clinically into fulminating, grave, and ambulatory, with hypertoxic, nervous, and other forms also described. The same situation exists in the United States with the types called "Western," "Eastern," and "Minnesota." The following description is, therefore, a résumé of the findings which may be observed in the course of the disease.

In the experiment of McCalla (1908), the incubation period was from 3 to 9 days. The incubation period is usually considered to be between 3 and 14 days. The disease has a sudden onset, with chills, headache, generalized and joint pains, and fever, which rises rapidly to 40° C. (104° F.) or higher and remains high, without morning remissions. In more benign cases there may be an initial chill followed by several days of vague premonitory symptoms such as malaise, anorexia, etc. In fulminating cases the temperature may reach 41° or 42° C. (106° or 107° F.) and remain high until death.

During the height of the disease the patient may present the majority of symptoms of a grave typhus: bloated face, coated tongue with reddened edges and tip, constipation, photophobia, a bronchial cough, tachycardia, dyspnea, headache, fever, deafness, etc.

Usually on the third to the fifth day, with extremes of 2 to 7 days, the eruption appears, first on the wrists, ankles, and back, then on the forehead, arms, legs, and chest, and finally on the abdomen; the face may also be involved, as well as the palms of the hands, soles of the feet, and even the mucosae (enanthem). At first the exanthem is macular, with spots 4 to 5 mm. in diameter which disappear on pressure. The macules become reddish or violaceous and toward the eighth to tenth day are frankly petechial. The skin is smooth and shiny, and its general appearance has been described as marble-like, or resembling the shell of a turkey egg. At times a light subicteric tint is seen. The disappearance of the eruption begins with the decline (by lysis) of the fever, although the petechiae persist for a long time, especially if large subcutaneous hemorrhages have occurred. Necrosis of the skin may also occur at various sites, being most frequent in the scrotum, prepuce, fingers, and ears. A slight desquamation or even exfoliation of the skin persists during convalescence, at times actual molds being formed. There also occur areas of dead, white epidermis and blotches corresponding to certain petechial lesions.

In very grave cases the temperature may fall below normal 1 to 3 days before exitus, death occurring generally between the tenth and fourteenth days except in fulminating cases, when it occurs even earlier.

In nonfatal cases the patient presents variable nervous and mental symptoms (restlessness, insomnia, hyperesthesia, deafness, delirium, coma), after which convalescence begins with a drop in the temperature by lysis during the third week. Gastrointestinal disturbances are not characteristic; the urine shows a mild albumin reaction and a few granular cylindrical casts and is concentrated. There is moderate anemia, a slight leucocytosis, and an increase in the percentage of large mononuclears. Edema, cyanosis, and splenomegaly may occur. Convalescence is relatively prolonged.

Complications

The important complications are pneumonia, phlebitis, and hemorrhage; the chief sequelae are deafness, thromboangiitis obliterans, nervous disturbances, partial intestinal obstruction. Second attacks of the disease are not rare, and in mild cases immunity is not definite.

Clinical Forms

Ambulatory, abortive, nervous, and other forms have been described; their importance rests in the diagnostic difficulties they present when they lack the eruptive phase, and when their evolution is benign they are confounded with other rickettsioses, especially with murine or epidemic typhus in areas where they co-exist.

Differential Diagnosis

In endemic zones diagnosis is simple and is made by a history of tick bite, by the initial localization of the eruption, etc. In those countries where epidemic and murine typhus as well as spotted fever apparently occur, such as India and Colombia, diagnosis is extremely difficult and requires laboratory tests.

The Weil-Felix reaction is of value in suggesting the presence of a rickettsial disease, but it is of slight differential value. Virulence of strains isolated in animals is not necessarily related to virulence for man of these same strains.

The differential diagnosis must include also other diseases presenting exanthemata, such as the hemorrhagic purpuras, cerebrospinal meningitis, Colorado tick fever, and others.

Prognosis

Prognosis is always grave; in the United States the average mortality is 22 per cent, and in Brazil it is over 80 per cent.

Variants

Megaw (1917) was the first to suspect the existence of the disease in India, reporting his own infection caused by a tick bite. Later Boyd (1935), Heilig and Naidu (1942), these latter also with Topping (1943), and recently Napier (1946) have studied the typhus diseases of India and have proved that at least a portion are Rocky Mountain spotted fever. The subject requires further investigation.

In South Africa, as previously mentioned, the studies of Pijper et al. reveal the existence of a disease called South Africa tick bite fever. Although the infectious agent is of the same group as *D. rickettsi (var. pijperi)* and the vectors are ticks *(Haemaphysalis leachi* and others), its relationship to the spotted fever group has not yet been completely worked out. The Brazilian, Colombian, and Mexican forms of the disease are identical with the classical, varying only epidemiologically.

Pathology

Macroscopically one finds petechiae, hemorrhages, and icterus; there is venous congestion, and the blood is dark and fluid. Histopathologic findings have been studied extensively by Wolbach, and more recently by Lillie (1941), who reviewed the cases in the literature. Comparative studies of typhus, spotted fever, and tsutsugamushi fever have been published by Settle, Pinkerton, and Corbett (1945) and by Allen and Spitz (1945).

Pathologic findings are in general similar to those seen in classical typhus, but there are a few marked differences. Ricketts mentioned increase in volume of the lymph glands; also outstanding is the splenomegaly and the extensive hemorrhages, and the necroses reflect the extension of the vascular lesions. The splendid studies of Wolbach demonstrate that the most conspicuous lesions are the alterations which take place in the blood vessels, principally those of the skin, subcutaneous tissues, muscles, and testicles and adnexa, lesions which resemble those of typhus but which differ in showing a more profound destruction of the inner layers and a lesser perivascular infiltration. The rickettsias first cause the well-known alterations in the endothelium and later in the smooth muscle of the vessel wall. Endothelial proliferation, vascular necrosis, thrombosis, infarction, and hemorrhage are prominent and cause areas of necrosis in the skin and subcutaneous tissues. The more serious the case, the less time there is for development of these necroses before the death of the patient. For the same reason cerebral lesions (typhus nodules) are seen only in prolonged or attenuated cases (Lillie, 1941). In addition, intranuclear and intracytoplasmic rickettsias in the endothelial cells and smooth muscle cells are pathognomonic of the disease. Finally, Wolbach has pointed out that the experimental disease in the guinea pig duplicates point by point the clinical and pathologic findings of the disease in man.

V. BOUTONNEUSE RICKETTSIOSIS

6. BOUTONNEUSE FEVER

Synonyms.—Eschar-nodular fever, exanthematous fever, dothiendermie aiguë, Marseilles fever, summer dermotyphus, fever of the Mediterranean littoral, Kenya fever, Olmer's disease, disease of Conor and Bruch, etc.

Definition

Boutonneuse fever is an acute, febrile, papular exanthematic rickettsiosis caused by *R. conori* and transmitted by *Rhipicephalus sanguineus,* the brown dog tick.

Geographic Distribution

Prior to its description by Conor and Bruch (1910), the disease was known along the Mediterranean coast and in the Black Sea area. It is endemic in these regions, especially in Italy, Greece, Spain, Tunis, France, and Portugal. A small epidemic outbreak of 34 cases has been reported from Constanza, Romania. In Kenya, Roberts and Tonking (1933) described the disease as a local fever, later recognizing its true relationship to boutonneuse fever of the Mediterranean.

Epidemiology

Rhipicephalus sanguineus being an ectoparasite of the dog, most of the epidemiologic characteristics of the disease are conditioned by this fact. The dog is the reservoir of the infection. Human susceptibility appears to be generalized, and there is no preference for certain age groups. The virus is hereditary in the tick, and the disease has greater prevalence in summer.

Relationship to Spotted Fever

Badger (1933) and Hass and Pinkerton (1936) showed the antigenic relationship between boutonneuse fever and Rocky Mountain spotted fever. *R. conori* should be considered to be a subspecies of *Dermacentroxenus rickettsi,* from which it is differentiated by the infrequency of intranuclear localization of the former in the typical form of the microorganism. A cross immunity exists betwen the two, and it is remarkable that vaccination against spotted fever does not protect against boutonneuse fever (Parker).

Clinical Description

The disease resembles closely both epidemic typhus and erythema multiforme. Onset is sudden, with chills and fever to 40° C. (104° F.); there are generalized aches and malaise, constipation or rarely diarrhea. At the site of the tick bite a black macule, the *tâche noire* of Piéri and Brugeas (1925), appears, a papular lesion resembling that seen in scrub typhus and which later develops into an indurated "button," nodose and painless, of blackish color and which ulcerates in the center and is accompanied by glandular swellings in the lymphatics which drain its site. This black escharo-nodular lesion is not seen in the Rocky Mountain spotted fever of the United States, and only exceptionally is it seen in Brazil. It appears in benign cases, while in tsutsugamushi fever a similar lesion is seen only in serious cases and is lacking in the mild ones.

On the third or fourth day of the disease the eruption appears, at first on the trunk, soon extending to the entire body, including face, palms, soles, and scalp. At the beginning it is macular and disappears on pressure, being made up of lesions separated from each other by normal skin. Later the macules develop into papules which later acquire a petechial aspect. These papules vary in number and extent and may be nearly confluent.

The course of the disease is about 12 days, and the patient does not appear to be very ill. Mental and nervous symptoms and signs are usually absent. The fever, which at first shows light morning remissions of 1° to 2° C., begins to fluctuate more markedly and ends by lysis. The exanthem disappears without desquamation.

Complications and Prognosis

Complications are practically nil, and there is usually no mortality. In the epidemic of Constanza (Romania) there was a single fatality in the 34 cases.

Differential Diagnosis

The usual low titer of the Weil-Felix reaction and the absence of strong agglutinins in positive cases limits the value of this test, especially when exanthematic typhus occurs in the same locality. Differentiation from the other rickettsioses is made by the presence of the *tâche noire*, the absence of lice, the character of the exanthem, and the laboratory tests outlined elsewhere in this chapter.

Pathology

Pathology has not been studied in boutonneuse fever because the mortality rate is practically zero. Histologic examination of the primary lesion shows a granulomatous process in which rickettsias have been described. In typical lesions of the maculopapular exanthem, there are structural changes consisting chiefly of edema of the vascular endothelium, and in the case of petechial lesions, perivascular cellular infiltration, congestion, and hemorrhage (Olmer, 1933).

VI. THE MACULOPAPULAR EXANTHEMATIC RICKETTSIOSES

RURAL TYPHUS

(TSUTSUGAMUSHI FEVER, SCRUB TYPHUS)

Synonyms.—Tsutsugamushi-byo, shimamuchi, akamuchi, shashitsu disease, Kedani fever, Yochu-byo, mijtekoort, tropical typhus, rural tropical typhus, tropical scrub typhus, Japanese river fever, coastal fever of Australia, coastal fever of Queensland, sugar cane cutters' fever, Japanese flood fever, typhus of the Malay States, Indian typhus type XK, tropical pseudotyphus of Malaysia, rural pseudotyphoid of Sumatra, pseudotyphoid of Deli, river fever of Formosa, classical mite fever of Schüffner, mite-borne typhus, Japanese type, Oriental rickettsiosis, Sumatra type, Malayan type of tropical rickettsiosis, Australian type of tropical rickettsiosis, endemic glandular fever, tropical typhus K form, mite fever, mite fever of Sumatra, Indian mite typhus, etc.

Definition

An acute exanthematic febrile disease caused by *R. orientalis* and transmitted to man by mite larvae.

Characteristics

After an incubation period of 4 to 20 days a febrile phase ensues which lasts 2 to 3 weeks, accompanied by ulcerative lesions of the skin, with necrosis and with infarction of the lymph glands, generalized lymphadenitis, and a maculopapular eruption. The fever ends by lysis, and the mortality is variable.

Incidence and Geographic Distribution

The disease has been recognized in Japan for more than a thousand years and is endemic in the prefectures of Akita, Yamagata, and Niigata and along the banks of the Omono, Mogami, Shinano, Uonuma, Agano, and other rivers. Two thousand seven hundred forty-seven cases occurred in Niigata from 1903 to 1917; there were 111 cases in Yamagata from 1913 to 1917; in Akita, 1915-1917, 133 cases. The annual incidence in Japan does not exceed 400 cases. In Formosa scrub typhus is prevalent in the Kwarenko district.

In 1921 Hatari identified the disease in Formosa, and Morishita (1942) listed the following incidence: on the island of Formosa proper, 1923-1927, 403 cases with 52 deaths (mortality, 12.3 per cent); 1928-1932, 475 cases with 42 deaths (11.3 per cent mortality); 1933-1937, 144 cases with 15 deaths (9.6 per cent mortality); 1938, 22 cases with 6 deaths (27.3 per cent mortality). On the Fisherman's Islands there were 284 cases between 1932 and 1938, with 16 deaths, a mortality of 5.6 per cent.

Later, the disease described in Sumatra by Schüffner and Wachsmuth (1908) as pseudotyphoid of Deli, and by Driel (1928) as mite fever, was identified with the disease observed in Malaya. In the Malay States scrub or rural typhus had been identified by Lewthwaite and Savoor with tsutsugamushi fever, it being pointed out that the absence of an eschar in scrub typhus was not enough to warrant its classification as a separate entity. It is known that variations of scrub typhus exist in Indo-China, China, Cambodia, Korea, the Philippines, Ceylon, the Bismarck Archipelago, New Guinea, Java, Australia, China, Burma, India, Siam, Annam, and in other countries, but statistics as to its true incidence do not exist.

The identity of the local variants of scrub typhus is similar to that of the variants of Rocky Mountain spotted fever. In 1945, Bengtson found a certain degree of serologic heterogenicity in strains of tsutsugamushi fever. A degree of cross fixation, but not of identity, was observed in 37 human cases in Burma and the Philippines in 1946 by the use of different antigens, but definite serologic groups could not be defined. Irons (1946) attempted to correlate the variations in severity seen in cases in 3 different areas with variations in virulence of the rickettsial strains isolated from a few cases and came to the conclusion that the most virulent strains were derived from the human outbreaks showing the highest mortality. Our understanding of the occurrence of these variants of scrub typhus has increased with the study of epidemics among American troops stationed in Oceania. These outbreaks show that scrub typhus has a wide endemic distribution, but it is not known why the disease is relatively less frequent among the indigenous populations of the endemic areas. We have no exact data as yet on the number of cases of tsutsugamushi fever which occurred in the Allied troops in the Pacific Islands and in Asia, but an idea of its frequency can be obtained from the limited reports which serve as the basis for the clinical description which follows and which include the 70 cases of Ahlm and Lipshutz (1944): 225 (41 in British soldiers) seen by Klein (1945) in the Chin Hills of North Burma, 24 cases described by Philip and Kohls (1945) in New Guinea and the adjacent islands, 222 cases reported from the Philippines by Philip et al., 195 seen in New Guinea by Berry, Johnson, and Warshauer (1945), the 230 cases of Logue from the Southwest Pacific (1944), 626 cases among

Australian troops hospitalized in New Guinea studied by Williams, Sinclair, and Jackson, 931 analyzed by Griffiths (1945) in Dutch New Guinea, 173 reported from the New Guinea Archipelago by Browning et al. (1945), 1,000 cases described by Tattersall and Tattersall and Parry (1945) in India, the 235 cases of Sangster and Kay (1945), the 49 cases of Anderson and Wing (1945), 615 treated by Deshmukh among African combat troops in Burma, 75 cases seen by Mendell (1946) in New Guinea, 86 in Chinese soldiers described by Agress and Evans (1946), 64 cases of Machella and Forrester (1945) of which 40 were among Chinese, and, in addition, the cases of Sokolow and Garland (1945), Howell (1945), Levine (1945), Philip et al. (1946), Dame (1945), Andrew (1945), Kohls et al. (1945), etc. It is possible that some of the cases reported are included in more than one series.

Epidemiology

The earlier observations of Baelz (1879), Hatari (1915 to 1919), Kawamura and Yamaguchi (1920), Nagayo (1916 and 1923), Wolff (1929 to 1932), Kouwenaar, Delbobe, Fletcher and Lesslar, Anigstein, and more recently the reports of Heaslip (1941) in Australia, Morishita (1939) (1942) in Formosa, and others give us an understanding of the classical epidemiology of the disease in the different endemic areas of the Pacific. Baelz was the first clearly to correlate the disease in Japan with the inundations of certain rivers, and he termed the disease *Japanese flood fever.* Later Hatari, in Formosa, proved that river flooding was not essential for the occurrence of the sickness and that there were endemic zones which were not subject to inundation, and which, moreover, changed in location from time to time.

Then Morishita made a comparative analysis of conditions on Formosa and on the Island Boko of the Fishermen's Islands, and found that on Formosa epidemics occurred both in the lowlands and in the mountainous zones up to 6,500 feet altitude. The disease was found in the fields, river banks, foot hills, flatland woods, and elsewhere, being essentially a disease of field workers; that is, those who work with domestic animals, woodcutters, farmers. This preference for certain labor classes is related to the habits of the field workers and explains why there is greater incidence in the age group over 15 and under 50, and also why there are more cases in men than in women. Slightly less than two-thirds of cases were between 15 and 35 years of age. On the other hand, on the Fishermen's Islands the disease is found in the villages themselves, around human habitations, the only sites where vegetation adequate for the development of Trombicula exists. The rest of these islands is subject to strong winter monsoons which blow up much salt water, impeding the growth of vegetation favorable to the vector. Moreover, the host of the vector, *Rattus rattus rufescens,* the reservoir of the etiologic agent, found spontaneously infected by Yamamiya (1933), is essentially domestic. All this explains the domestic character of the disease and the fact that all age groups are attacked, but with a preponderance of cases among children less than 15 years of age (70 per cent), and men and women show the same incidence.

During the occupation of the Pacific islands by American troops, numerous epidemics of scrub typhus, of variable extent, were observed. Some of the investigators mentioned above have attempted to correlate the characteristics of the terrain with the relative incidence of cases, concluding in general that more cases were seen where forest vegetation was most abundant, as in the areas midway between the beach and the forest, abandoned cocoanut groves, forests with dense low-growing vegetation, and all other sites favorable to the development of Trombicula, the presence of which (when infected) is the immediate cause of the disease. Whether the infection will be epidemic or endemic depends on the number of individuals exposed to these areas. Some authors have stressed that the true reservoir of scrub typhus is the vector itself, it being unnecessary to seek a rodent or other reservoir to explain the permanence of the disease in endemic zones. Mackie et al. (1946) have proved infection in *T. deliensis* and hereditary transmission of the virus.

The percentage of infection of Trombicula larvae in the *yudokuchi* or infected areas is quite variable and depends on characteristics of soil and vegetation, such as *kunai* grass, *talahib (Saccharum), kogan (Imperator).* The larvae fall to the ground after their single blood meal. Adult mites, not being hematophagous, do not transmit the disease to man but transmit it hereditarily through ovarian infection. The new larval generation is therefore infectious, transmitting to man possibly through the larval saliva. Although numerous species of Trombicula are known, only *T. akamushi* and *T. deliensis* (synonymous, according to Womersley, with *T. fletcheri* and *T. welchi*, respectively) have been found naturally infected; it is probable that other mites such as *Laelaps australiensis* also transmit the disease.

The cause of the seasonal incidence in some areas is not clear. In Japan the disease predominates from July to September, in the summer season, coincident with the larval activity of *T. akamushi*. There is year-round incidence in Formosa. On many of the Pacific islands where the disease had been unreported among the natives, there were epidemic outbreaks among American troops.

Local variations in mortality, including that among soldiers, may be related to virulence. Japan has had a high mortality rate from scrub typhus, between 30 and 60 per cent. In Formosa it averages about 12 per cent, varying from 3.3 per cent in youths to nearly 50 per cent in the aged. In the Fishermen's Islands mortality usually is about 5.6 per cent.

Clinical Description

One learns from the publications mentioned that no one clinical description of scrub typhus will conform with all the cases. The presence or absence of some symptom or physical sign may be not only a local characteristic but may be seen in patients in a single outbreak. The description which follows is more a summary of the possible symptomatology than an attempt to describe any single case.

The disease begins with the bite of the mite larva, the patient not being aware of the bite or noting it only on touching the affected part. Normally mite bites are irritating due to the salivary secretion, but infected mites cause an initial papular lesion which later becomes ulcerated and necrosed due to the secretions of the arthropod and the secondary infection. The lesion consists of a small wound in which the mite larva can be perceived with a hand lens. The wound develops with necrosis in an area 4 to 6 mm. in diameter, the necrotic portion covered by a scab surrounded by a red or pink areola; later an ulcer measuring 6 to 10 mm. in diameter is formed. Generally there is a single scab, though at times two are found; it is round and firm, with a dark center, without concomitant lymphangitis, although there does occur involvement of the lymph glands which drain the site of the bite. In some cases the lesion is a papule and resolves without ulceration. Usually the ulcer begins to cicatrize at the end of the second week of illness.

After an asymptomatic incubation period of 4 to 20 days (10 on the average), the sickness begins with headache, fever, malaise, anorexia, feelings of chilliness at times alternating with waves of heat sensation, burning on urination, cough, and regional lymph gland swelling.

The fever is remittent in type, the temperature rising by successive daily steps during the first week to reach 39.5° to 40.5° C. (103° to 105° F.). During the second week a constant maximum level is maintained, which later falls by lysis, the fever curve lasting in all from 10 to 21 days, rarely more. Griffiths showed that in grave cases of 14 to 21 days' duration the fever fell by lysis (in 70 per cent of the total cases), while in mild cases with short convalescence the fever falls by crisis (30 per cent of the total) after 11 to 16 days of fever. In the cases of Browning et al. fever lasted fewer than 14 days in only 3 per cent of cases, 14 to 21 days in 80 per cent, and over 21 days, up to 32, in 17 per cent. Kohls et al. reported that their mild cases had an average of 14.6 febrile days and the grave ones 18 days of fever.

With the onset of fever there appears an intense conjunctival congestion, with photophobia and at times subconjunctival hemorrhages. Headache is intense and persistent, the tongue is coated, there is constipation, or at times diarrhea, and abdominal distention. The patient begins to cough, and this becomes accentuated and incessant. There develop dyspnea and cyanosis, generalized muscular aches, especially in the lumbar region, cutaneous hyperesthesia, precordial pains, a relative bradycardia (when compared with the fever), apathy, clouding of the sensorium of varying degrees up to stupor, mental confusion or even delirium. There is persistent insomnia, sweating crises, deafness, moderate splenomegaly, at times enlargement of the liver. One finds the local scab at the site of the bite and generalized lymphadenopathy, this latter of great differential value. By the tenth day of illness the patient is usually in a deplorable condition.

Between the third and twelfth day, more frequently between the fourth and seventh, and usually by the sixth day, a variable percentage of cases develop a more or less well-defined maculopapular exanthem which in the majority is limited to the extremities and the trunk (and at times exclusively in one or the other location). Sometimes the face is involved, and even the palms and soles. At first the eruption is macular, reddish or coffee-colored, disappearing on pressure; later it persists on pressure. Papules may not be very numerous, although cases are cited which had an urticarial appearance. Individual lesions vary in size from a pinhead to a diameter of 1 cm. They may be isolated or grouped but rarely are confluent. Some authors have observed that the eruption appears to be macular or papular on the face, concentrated in the cheek areas, later extending to the rest of the body. Others describe a punctiform subcuticular eruption on the forearms and trunk, appearing on the second day of fever. The rash may last 1 or 2 days only, but generally it is fully developed in 3 to 5 days, and, after an average duration of 6 days, begins to fade, leaving a slight pigmentation of the skin in some cases. Others show no exanthem whatever, and it does not develop in those undergoing a second attack of scrub typhus. It is neither painful nor does it itch. A day or so after the beginning of the exanthem one may find mucosal eruptions in the form of pin-point reddish spots on the soft and hard palate and on the buccal mucosae. The eruption has been compared to that of measles.

Toward the end of the second week the disease is at its height. The unconscious patient may have tachycardia, dyspnea, cyanosis, delirium. At this time respiratory and circulatory disturbances, as well as nervous signs in grave cases, reach their maximum. The ulcer is very evident and from now on tends to heal, and the exanthem begins to disappear. The fever tends to diminish and symptoms in general lessen in intensity, the adenopathy decreases, and there is profuse sweating, increased diuresis (3 days before the drop in fever according to Andrew), and frequent bowel movements. Convalescence may be brief or prolonged, depending on individual circumstances and on the complications which ensue. Mortality is variable.

Mild cases may be diagnosed by the presence of the scar, local or general lymphadenitis, fever, and exanthem, remembering that one or more of these findings may not appear. The Weil-Felix reaction with Proteus OXK clarifies the diagnosis in doubtful cases.

During the course of the disease anemia is exceptional. The classical hemogram shows leucopenia with lymphocytosis of 40 to 80 per cent, with the appearance of a type of lymphocytes which recalls those seen in infectious mononucleosis. Recent series of cases show that leucopenia is not a constant finding, and there may even be leucocytosis up to 20,000.

The Weil-Felix reaction generally develops late and is of value only when the titer increases. It is said that it appears on the average in 9 days and reaches significant titers from the tenth to the sixteenth day. In attenuated cases it is often absent. Other laboratory findings are inconstant, there being mentioned decrease in coagulation time of the blood, delayed clot retraction time, prolonged bleeding time, hypochloremia, hypoproteinemia, increased sedimentation rate, azotemia, acidosis, normal spinal fluid, and albumin in the urine, with a positive diazo reaction.

In grave cases the patient may die between the twelfth and sixteenth day, death being preceded by cyanosis, edema, filiform pulse, low blood pressure, cold extremities, Cheyne-Stokes respiration, and coma. Death is due to cardiac or respiratory failure. Levine showed (1945), in a group of 130 convalescents from scrub typhus, that electrocardiographic changes were minimal and that venous pressure, circulation time, and vital capacity were normal. Exercise tolerance tests, on the other hand, revealed neurocirculatory asthenia with poor vascular tone as a consequence of the generalized vasculitis of the height of the disease. Browning et al. (1945) found minor electrocardiographic alterations in 14 per cent of 112 convalescents, cosisting of low QRS voltage, changes in the T wave and in the S-T segment, and, in a few cases, defective conductibility. At the end of one month about half were normal again. Howell (1945) found no abnormality, electrocardiographically, in 200 consecutive cases of scrub typhus, nor did Berry et al. find any serious cardiac abnormality.

Many of the deaths that occur are due to respiratory involvement, especially bronchopneumonia. Among other complications of the disease are lobar pneumonia, pleurisy, pulmonary abscess, bronchitis, pulmonary infarct, empyema, laryngitis, pharyngitis, subconjunctival hemorrhage, epistaxis, hemoptysis, hematemesis, melena, venous thrombosis and symmetrical gangrene rarely, retrobulbar neuritis and various paralyses, hallucinations, delirium, urinary retention, sensory disturbances, neuritis, parotitis, etc.

Donegan (1946) found in 101 cases that ocular difficulties were transitory vascular and not due to nerve changes. Dame (1945) found enlargement of the blind spot in 50 convalescents, with contractions of the visual fields and scotomata in 98 per cent. Seventy-eight per cent of cases had deafness during the height of the disease, but only 11 per cent showed, during convalescence, slight alterations in the cochlear system, though 59 per cent had abnormal thermic response in the vestibular system.

Diagnosis

In addition to the clinical picture already described, diagnosis is aided by the Weil-Felix reaction, with Proteus OXK, specific complement fixation test with *R. orientalis*, inoculation of susceptible laboratory animals, especially mice, and examination of the blood.

Differential Diagnosis

Before the eruption appears, differentiation must be made from the tropical pyrexias prevalent in the area, especially malaria. Once the exanthem is evident, differential diagnosis must include the other rickettsioses occurring in the region. During epidemics the identification of cases without eruption is somewhat easier. Diagnosis of the disease depends on laboratory tests not within the province of the clinician.

Prognosis

Mortality from scrub typhus or tsutsugamushi fever is variable, in Japan being from 30 to 60 per cent, in Formosa 12 per cent, in the Fishermen's Islands 5.6 per cent. During World War II mortality varied greatly from one outbreak to another.

The duration of the disease is decidedly correlated with the gravity of the case. Andrew found that in serious cases the incubation period was 12 days; in less serious ones, from 12 to 17 days; and in subclinical cases, 18 days. The length of the florid period, in serious cases, was found by Griffiths to be 14 to 21 days, and in ordinary cases from 11 to 16 days. In the series of Browning et al. of 173 cases, 81 per cent had a convalescence lasting up to 2 months. The shortest period of hospitalization was 2 weeks and the longest 16 weeks. Of 27 cases, 75 per cent had returned to their normal occupations by 3 months and the remainder by 6 months. Six patients died in 14.6 days on the average. Death was more frequent at advanced ages. Hayashi, Nagayo, Morishita, and others found mortality to be very low in children and very high in adults, up to 50 per cent in the aged in Formosa and to 100 per cent in Japan. The most frequent cause of invalidism during convalescence is neurocirculatory asthenia; a psychoneurosis may also develop, the individual believing himself to be a cardiac invalid. Direct cause of death appears to be peripheral circulatory failure due to capillary lesions. Increased capillary permeability may result in pulmonary edema, which is the cause of death in a certain number of cases, and which often is confused with the bronchopneumonia mentioned in the literature (Browning et al., 1945). Allen and Spitz do not believe that this mechanistic theory suffices, and they think that the peripheral circulatory collapse originates in suprarenal insufficiency.

Pathology

In addition to the classical studies of Tanaka, Hayashi, and Kawamura, we cite the findings of Williams et al. (1944) (58 cases), McGovern in Australia (1945) (14 cases), Hicks (1945) (24 autopsies in Australia), Browning et al. (1945) (6 autopsies), as well as the works of Settle, Pinkerton, and Corbett (1945) and of Allen and Spitz (1945), who make a comparative analysis of the pathologic characteristics of scrub typhus, Rocky Mountain spotted fever, and classical typhus.

There is emaciation, lymphadenopathy, the scar (at times absent), enlargement of the liver and spleen, edema, dilatation of the right heart. Lobar pneumonia may be found, or ecchymoses and other evidence of diffuse hemorrhagic diathesis; there is lack of coagulation of the blood in the vessels, no thromboses, extreme fluidity of the blood, and pulmonary edema.

Microscopic lesions include the following:

1. Generalized edema and desquamation of the capillary endothelium; diffuse interstitial infiltration with lymphocytes, plasma cells, monocytes, histiocytes, and, at times, polymorphonuclear leucocytes; and parenchymatous cellular degeneration.
2. Spotty circumscribed perivasculitis.
3. The scar, associated with secondary staphylococcic infection, the thrombophlebitis and arteritis being septic in type. Rickettsial reaction is seen in the veins remote from the central area and consists of mononuclear infiltration of the large vessels, nonocclusive thrombosis, and endothelial edema.
4. In the skin lesion there is no necrosing arteritis, but in the arterioles, capillaries, and veins lesions similar to the nodules of typhus are seen.
5. Petechial hemorrhages in the serosa, vessels, mucosa of the renal pelvis, testicles, and lymphatic glands.
6. Myocardial edema, and epicardiac infiltration with inflammatory cells; diffuse cellular myocardial infiltration, rarely perivascular; mononuclear infiltration of the intima of the large vessels, with normal media, and in the adventitia a perivascular collection of round cells in the vasa vasorum.
7. Diffuse or focal hepatization of the lungs; thickening, due to edema, congestion, and cellular infiltration, of the alveolar walls; hemorrhages in the alveoli and their walls.
8. Cellular proliferation and vasculitis in the splenic pulp; edema and desquamation of the endothelial sinusoids; lymph gland lesions are similar, and also there are seen multinuclear giant cells resembling Dorothy Reed cells (Browning).
9. Hepatic congestion with mild fatty degeneration; infiltration not perivascular.
10. Edema and cloudy swelling of the kidneys; at times endothelial desquamation of the glomerular capillaries; diffuse cellular infiltration.
11. In the central nervous system the lesions are vascular infiltrations, edema, gliosis, and degeneration of the ganglion cells. The cerebral nodules resemble those of typhus.

12. Allen and Spitz believe that the vascular atony is possibly of suprarenal origin and not due to structural changes in the vessels. Many of the reactions seen have allergic characteristics.

Settle et al. find the lesions of tsutsugamushi to consist in acute generalized endangiitis, vasculitis, and perivasculitis, similar to the changes in typhus and in Rocky Mountain spotted fever, from which they differ in the following points: in exhibiting a primary ulcer and local or general lymphadenitis; in producing a specific pericarditis, pleuritis, or peritonitis, and interstitial pneumonitis; in causing more frequent involvement of the large arteries, especially the aorta; in showing less frequent vascular thrombosis; and in the nonhemorrhagic character of the cutaneous eruption. In laboratory animals—the white rat and the guinea pig—another characteristic is the occurrence of a mucous peritonitis with many serosal cells replete with rickettsias (whatever the route of introduction of the virus), while cerebral nodules are found only in those animals inoculated subcutaneously.

Variants

Until an analysis of the antigens of a sufficient number of strains of *R. orientalis* has been carried out, it will not be possible to establish on a sure basis whether or not the clinical varieties of scrub typhus correspond to stable antigenic variations of the etiologic agent.

TREATMENT AND PROPHYLAXIS OF THE RICKETTSIAL DISEASES

I. THERAPEUTICS OF THE RICKETTSIAL DISEASES

The therapeutic measures against the various rickettsioses are (1) nonspecific therapy, and (2) specific treatment.

(1) Nonspecific Treatment

(a) **General Measures.**—General measures are (1) *maintenance of the patient in as good a general condition as possible* (attention to the diet, hydrotherapy, care of the skin, cleanliness of the body orifices, especially the oral cavity, ice bags to the head, maintenance of bowel evacuation, control of diuresis, etc.) and the *administration of palliative or symptomatic treatment* adequate for the correct functioning of the different organs and systems, such as diuretics (lactose, squill, Theobromine), cardiac tonics (Digitaline Nativelle, intravenous ouabain, camphor, sparteine, caffeine, ice to the precordium, etc.), nerve sedatives, and others, depending on the indications of involvement or malfunction of the various systems.

The resemblance of the rickettsial diseases to shock indicates the desirability of restoring blood volume with glucose or glucose and saline solutions, after blood protein content has been re-established to its normal value by the use of blood serum or plasma. Fluid intake of the patient should be around 4 liters daily. For patients with anuria or oliguria, intravenous 50 per cent glucose should be used. Chloride balance may be advantageously restored by the administration of ammonium chloride in doses up to 6.0 Gm. daily (Macchiavello, 1938).

The author has tried nearly all the other nonspecific therapeutic measures recommended in the literature but without favorable results. These are abscess fixation, subcutaneous injection of aseptic pus, and injection of leucocytes, of sterile milk, of vaccines, etc.

(b) **Chemotherapy.**—We have tried the following drugs, with negative results: Neosalvarsan and Acetylarsan, Lugol's solution, Mercurochrome, triple flavine, Electrargol, and various mercurials. Magalhaes (1942) was also unsuccessful with colloidal copper sulfate, Fuadin, tartar emetic, Septicemine, Omnadin, atropine, orthophenol, Neostibosan, Bayer 205, Atabrine, Sanochrysine, etc. Of little value, also, are Electromartiol, Urotropin, sodium salicylate, Aurocolobiase, etc. Veintemillas (1943) recommended 1 to 2 per cent iodized tartar emetic. Pinkerton and Hofgaarden (1942) had no results with Fuadin and atabrine.

Macchiavello (1938, 1939) and Macchiavello, Cifuentes, and Ovalle (1940, 1945) exhaustively studied the effect of ascorbic acid on the typhus virus, in vitro and in vivo. There was no in vitro action on *R. prowazeki.* In animals and in typhus patients, temperature is lowered during the administration of this substance, and when given early in the disease by the intravenous route in daily doses of 1.0 Gm. or more, the general symptoms are improved, especially those due to capillary alterations. The same authors (unpublished) used vitamin B_1 in large doses in cases of anoxia, in what may be considered emergency treatment; this was used also in cases of arrhythmia and cardiac failure. Pinkerton and Bessey (1939) showed that lack of riboflavin produced, in rats, loss of resistance to typhus. It should be recalled, however (Najjar et al., 1944), that man can synthesize riboflavin in appreciable quantities in the gastrointestinal tract.

As soon as the era of the sulfonamides began, these drugs were used extensively. Our results with sulfapyridine and sulfathiazole (1938) were unfavorable, as were those reported by Kikuth, 1939 (1940), Wohlrab (1942), and Scheller, but we did not see in man the noxious effects of these drugs which were reported in guinea pigs with experimental murine typhus and spotted fever by Topping (1939), observations corroborated by Pinkerton and Hofgaarden (1942), Durand and Balozet (1941) Steinhaus (1943), etc. On the other hand, we noted a decrease in complications, also reported by Monk (1942) and by Harmsen and Siegler (1944). Today the sulfonamides have been discarded in the treatment of rickettsial diseases except in pulmonary or other similar complications which respond to this therapy.

Peterson reports beneficial results, experimentally, with a preparation called "Forbisen" and with toluidine blue (1944). Andrewes, King, van den Ende, and Wilker (1944) tried out more than 100 drugs, finding activity in those designated V 147 and V 186 (p-sulfonamidobenzamidine hydrochloride and its amidoxine), but these were ineffective in human beings.

Penicillin has been applied to the treatment of rickettsioses. Greiff, Pinkerton, and Moragues (1944) and Moragues, Pinkerton, and Greiff (1944) believed they saw a certain inhibitory effect on the growth of the rickettsia of murine typhus in egg culture and some results in the treatment of experimental murine typhus in mice. Edmunds (1944) reported cure of a case of Rocky Mountain spotted fever treated with penicillin; Magalhaes and Rocha (1944), in dealing with experimental infections in guinea pigs with São Paulo typhus, found the drug effective when applied intraperitoneally in doses of 25,000 to 30,000 Oxford units per 24 hours. Yeomans et al. (1944) reported its use in 4 cases of typhus but drew no conclusions; however, they advise penicillin for those complications which respond to its action. Fitzpatrick (1945) tried it without success in experimental infection of guinea pigs with Rocky Mountain spotted fever, pointing out, as do Hamre et al. (1943), that it is toxic for these animals in high dosage. Summarizing, it appears that penicillin is not effective against rickettsias. Steinhaus and Parker (1943) obtained negative results against the agent of Rocky Mountain spotted fever with tyrothricin.

On the other hand, p-aminobenzoic acid (PABA) seems to be of first importance in the treatment of rickettsial diseases in which it has so far been tried, and at the moment it is the treatment of choice. Snyder, Maier, and Anderson (1942) were the first to use it against experimental typhus in mice, obtaining 80 per cent survival as compared with 20 per cent in the controls. Hamilton, Plotz, and Smadel (1943, 1945) proved that it inhibited the growth of the typhus and spotted fever rickettsias in fertile egg cultures. Yeomans, Snyder, Murray, Ecke, and Zarafonetis (1945) gave the drug in doses of 4.0 to 8.0 Gm. initially, followed by 2.0 Gm. every 2 hours, orally, in 20 typhus patients, and obtained surprising results. Anigstein and Bader (1945, 1946) proved the antrickettsial activity of PABA in experimental spotted fever, and Rose, Duane, and Fischel believed they obtained equally good results in a human case. Snyder and Zarafonetis (1945) and Murray, Zarafonetis, and Snyder (1945) found that it prevented a fatal outcome in gerbilles inoculated with the virus of tsutsugamushi fever. Tierney (1946), in treating 18 cases of this disease with dosages sufficient to obtain a blood level of 30 to 60 mg. per cent of PABA, noted shortening of the duration of the disease, especially of the duration of fever, with diminution of symptoms, among them lymphadenitis, and a lowering in the number of complications and fatalities. The drug is to be discontinued if patients show mental confusion or if the white cell count drops to 4,000 per cubic millimeter with less than 30 per cent of neutrophiles.

P-aminobenzoic acid does not act directly on the rickettsias; it is possible that it is effective through the inhibition of certain enzymes necessary for the cellular metabolism of the organisms.

P-aminobenzoic acid has been used successfully in murine typhus in about 40 cases (Smith, 1946; Levy and Arnold, 1946; Diaz Rivera et al., 1946), the usual dosage being 2 Gm. in 25 c.c. of 5 per cent sodium bicarbonate every 2 hours. PABA should be given before the eighth day of the disease; the optimal dosage is not known; experimentally, it inhibits the growth in chick embryos of *R. prowazeki* and *R. mooseri* in a dosage of 5 mg. per cent but o *R. orientalis* in doses of only 35 mg. per cent.

Recently acridine compounds have also been tried out, especially Mepacrine, Nitroacridine 3582, and its arsenical salt known as Rutenol. Holler et al obtained good results with these drugs in the treatment of epidemic typhu and trench fever. Experimental confirmation was rendered by Smadel et al (1947) using *R. prowazeki, R. mooseri, R. rickettsi,* and *R. orientalis.* The mod of action of the acridinic compounds is different from that of PABA. Mor studies of these drugs are needed.

Streptomycin has some action on the growth of rickettsias in fertile egg (Morgan et al., 1947; Smadel et al., 1947).

The best therapeutic results have been obtained with Chloromycetin an antibiotic obtained from a Streptomyces isolated from earth taken from a field near Caracas, Venezuela, and now produced in crystalline form (Ehrlich et al., 1947). Maclean (1947) and Smadel and Jackson (1947) showed that Chloromycetin has a definite inhibitory action, in fertile egg cultures, on the rickettsias of classical and murine typhus, spotted fever, and scrub typhus. It also is active against the etiologic agent of rickettsialpox, the *R. akari.* Therapeutic effects against typhus have been demonstrated by Payne (1948) in Bolivia and by Smadel et al. (1948) in Mexico. It is equally effective against tsutsugamushi fever (Smadel et al., 1948). The drug is administered orally, using an initial dose of 4 Gm. followed by 0.25 Gm. every 2 hours. In tsutsugamushi fever, treatment for 24 hours or less usually suffices.*

Smadel, Woodward, et al. (1948) reported the successful treatment of 25 scrub typhus patients with Chloromycetin. Characteristic clinical features of the disease were present in each case, and from the blood of each could be recovered the specific rickettsia or a diagnosis accomplished by agglutination or complement-fixation procedures. All treated patients received initial doses of 50 mg. Chloromycetin per kg. of body weight followed by 0.2 to 0.3 Gm. every two to four hours. At first, treatment was continued for at least 12 days following onset of symptoms with a total dosage of 8 to 15.5 Gm. Duration of treatment was gradually reduced, and the last 7 patients received a total of 6 Gm. within a single 24-hour period.

Dyes have been found effective experimentally, but tryout on human beings has not been warranted (methylene blue, Otto and Schäfer, 1936; Kikuth and Schilling, 1944; toluidine blue, Peterson, 1944); activity against various rickettsias has been demonstrated.

According to Ferro-Luzzi and Ferro-Luzzi (1947), aspirin greatly lowers the mortality and diminishes the complications of typhus, although it only slightly shortens the course. In a series of 94 patients they had only 1 death (with a mortality of 14.8 per cent in the control series). In a second series the mortality among 74 cases of typhus was 5.4 per cent (with the rate 10.7 per cent among the 112 control cases).

---

*Editor's note (O. F.): Aureomycin and Terramycin are also very effective.

"Forbisen," used by Peterson (1944), is 4,4′-*bis*-antipyrine. Although theoretically riboflavin ought to be an effective therapeutic agent, since its absence favors development of the disease in rats, it has been found ineffective, experimentally, in mice.

2. Specific Treatment

(a) **Convalescent Serum.**—Lewascheff (1893), Legrain (1894), Detre and Bussiere, Decourt and Sallard (1930), Feliu and Frackmann (1933), Durand (1933), Veintemillas (1936), Ashenhov, Pfeffer, and Sauwerky (1943), Alwens and Frank (1943), and Castaño Castillo (1944) have reported some favorable results in the treatment of typhus with convalescent serum, as has Bühler with whole blood (1944). Chilean physicians, who have used serum extensively in recent epidemics, agree with Levaditi and Lepine (1938) that it is useless. In 1939 we tried serum treatment again, using convalescent serum concentrated by a simple technic (Macchiavello, 1943). Our experimental results (Ovalle, 1939) were very favorable in guinea pig typhus, but in human typhus there was no therapeutic effect, though the procedure was very effective in preventing the disease. Perhaps the same holds true for the other disease of this group.

(b) **Serum of Hyperimmunized Animals.**—Nicolle, in Bizert, treated typhus cases with immune serum of donkeys, with doubtful results. The antityphus serum of Zinsser and Castañeda (1934), prepared in horses, was shown to have real preventive value and was used by Varela and Bosque Pichardo (1934) and by Bustamante, Varela, and Rios Negri (1935) in the control of epidemics of murine typhus in Mexico and by Macchiavello (1937) in Chile in the control of epidemics of classical typhus fever. A medical commission appointed by the Mexican Department of Health, and Macchiavello (1938), concluded that this serum, known as the Harvard serum, had a certain beneficial effect in the early treatment of both types of typhus. Wolman (1944), in Abyssinia, used an antityphus serum prepared in horses with living rickettsias from lice intestines. Dosages of 20 c.c. given twice on the first day, and 20 c.c. daily for 3 more days, reduced the mortality to 3.6 per cent; in controls it was 10.9 per cent. Topping (1941), Kuretchin, van der Scheer, and Wyckoff, 1943, and Fitzpatrick (1945) found that hyperimmune rabbit serum was effective in preventing spotted fever and had some therapeutic value in human cases.

In 1937 Burnet and Freeman demonstrated the presence of protective antibodies in the sera of convalescents from "Q" fever (experimentally). Bengtson (1941) developed a hyperimmune rabbit serum capable of neutralizing up to 500,000 minimal infecting doses per cubic centimeter in guinea pigs. We do not know whether this preparation has been used in the therapy of the rickettsioses. It should be mentioned that the protective or curative power of a serum does not parallel its Weil-Felix titer but rather its virus-neutralizing power.

In conclusion, there is outlined the following scheme for the management of cases proved or suspected of having one of the various rickettsial diseases:

1. In cases seen during the incubation period (or in contacts exposed to grave cases of one of the rickettsial diseases transmissible from person to person) give from 5 to 20 c.c. of convalescent serum, preferably concentrated, or hyperimmune animal serum.

(2) In cases seen at the beginning of the disease one may use p-aminobenzoic acid, vitamin C, ammonium chloride, physiologic saline, and hyperimmune animal serum.

3. In grave cases with circulatory failure, hypoproteinemia, anoxia, nervous symptoms, oliguria, etc., use blood serum or plasma, restore chloride balance by the oral or intravenous route, give sufficient, but not excessive, amounts of fluid, and administer vitamin C, vitamin B_1, suprarenal extract, and hypertonic glucose; cardiac tonics are given only when necessary. The first therapeutic aim should be to treat the vascular shock of the patient. PABA and hyperimmune serum do not appear to be effective in late treatment of grave cases.

4. Penicillin and sulfadiazine are used in the infectious complications when it can be expected that they will respond to these medications.

5. In all cases, careful nursing attention, as well as a diet rich in proteins, is essential, and adequate laboratory control of the therapeutic measures should be instituted, especially when we use drugs the activity of which depends upon the continual maintenance of a certain blood level of the drugs.

II. PROPHYLAXIS OF THE RICKETTSIAL DISEASES

Megaw's division of the typhus fevers into 2 groups, the *demic* and the *zootic,* has practical value which is appreciated when one confronts the problem of the prophylaxis of the rickettsioses, since methods applicable to the control of classical typhus fever (for example, an epidemic disease transmitted from person to person when lice are the vector) cannot be the same as methods used against most of the other rickettsial diseases, which are, for the most part, endemic or sporadic in character. Whereas the demic group requires procedures of control which affect the general population and the vector, both as regards the sick persons as well as his contacts, the zootic group requires methods which do not have the same amplitude and which, at the most, may be related to the exposed population or to the infected vectors having usually an individual rather than a general character.

Prophylactic measures against the rickettsioses are of two general classes: (1) those which destroy the infective agent indirectly by means of elimination of its vectors or reservoirs and (2) those which protect the individual against the infective agent. Collective protection of the members of a community implies the operation of an official sanitary organization. Methods at our disposal in carrying out this protection are either biologic, especially sera and vaccines, or nonbiologic, such as insecticides, rodenticides, administrative and legal procedures, etc.

These methods require selective application, which varies according to whether one is dealing with epidemic periods or not, whether work is being carried out in urban or in rural zones, and, in general, depends on the epidemiologic variations which each disease has. Thus, for example, in those countries where classical typhus exists, some of the population can be protected from infection by the collective application of antigens composed of dead or of living organisms. During epidemics, however, vaccines made of killed organisms are contraindicated, although live vaccines may be used. Serum prophylaxis may also be resorted to. The use of combined serum and vaccine as proposed by Zinsser and Macchiavello (1936) and Macchiavello (1938) has not yet been tried in human beings for fear of an inadequate balance between the virus and the neutralizing serum. Experimentally the method has proved to be excellent. For typhus contacts serum protection is effective (Macchiavello, 1938). However, during large epidemics and under conditions of crisis and collective disorganization, it has been demonstrated, as in Naples during World War II, that the elective control method is the use of insecticides with a residual activity. This has the following additional advantages: simple in application, low in cost, almost unlimited production of insecticides, and lethal effect of insecticides on a large variety of disease vectors. On the other hand, vaccination confers a protection to the individual which is constant, which means that an immunized person may move about and live exposed in infected regions with a factor of safety which is conferred by no other method of prophylaxis. Vaccination is an acceptable method of protection for hospital personnel, the Armed Forces, in prisons, asylums, etc.; insecticides with residual action are best used in cases of emergency, of social disorganization, public calamities, etc., when faced with the beginning of an epidemic.

VACCINATION

Vaccination against the rickettsial diseases is still in its initial phase. The progress achieved during the past few years has been almost wholly that of vaccination against exanthematic typhus, both in methods of vaccine preparation and in its application.

Vaccines developed against the rickettsioses can be classified according to their antigenic specificity and, therefore, according to which rickettsial disease each vaccine is used against; they can be classified also according to the state of viability of the component rickettsias or according to the immunizing material and its method of preparation, distinguishing in this respect vaccines originating in infectious material (antigens) coming from arthropods, from the organs or tissues of mammals, from tissues, cultivated in vitro or from in vivo cultures (fertile eggs), or, finally, according to the use made of the vaccine material, whether to prevent infection with homologous virus or with heterologous viruses.

Most of the vaccines are variations of a few methods; the multiplicity of denominations is hardly justified and serves only to cause confusion. The immunizing power in laboratory animals of infectious products which contain rickettsias (which have been attenuated or killed) is not sufficient, in our opinion, to warrant calling these products *vaccines,* a term which should be reserved for immunizing substances of vaccinial nature which have well-defined methods of preparation and which have been developed with the objective of effective human application, even though this objective may not yet have been realized. On this basis the following vaccines are outlined.

A. "Q" Fever

I. Vaccine of Bengtson (1941).—

Prepared with *R. diaporica* using (1) spleen and liver of infected mice and (2) method of Cox. It is a killed vaccine, carefully standardized, and has shown good results experimentally. It should be used to protect laboratory workers who handle "Q" fever virus and workers in abattoirs dealing with infected animals.

B. Exanthematic Typhus

I. Vaccines Prepared With Killed Organisms.—

(a) **Vaccines Prepared With Organisms From Arthropods.—**

1. **Vaccine of da Rocha Lima (1918):** First prepared with a triturate of lice, later with lice intestines from insects fed on typhus cases.

2. **Vaccine of Weigl, 1929 (1933):** Purified emulsion of intestines of lice experimentally infected by the anal route according to the method of Weigl (1920). Given in three doses, the original concentration of the total dosage is equivalent to 175 lice and 8,750 million rickettsias; the present concentration is equivalent to 90 or fewer lice. Satisfactory results reported by Weigl (1933), Chodzko (1933), Mosing (1938), Herzig (1939) (in 120,000 vaccinated persons in Poland, 0.09 per cent developed typhus either during immunization or up to one year later), Anigstein (15 cases developed among 10,000 immunized medicosanitary personnel), Tohang and Lotsong (1934), and Rutten (1936) (among 200 Belgian missionaries in China, typhus disappeared for at least 5 years, where before there were 4 or 5 cases annually), Liu, Zia, and Wang (1938), Radlo (1937) (after 13,980 vaccinations in Jaworow, the annual incidence was reduced from 200 to 12), Mariani (1939) (of 13,076 individuals vaccinated in Ethiopia, 8 developed typhus, 5 of whom had not received the third dose of vaccine), Eyer, Przybylkiewicz, and Dillenberg (1940) (15 cases among personnel preparing vaccine), Eyer (1941) (good results in the medical service of the German army). Although of proved efficacy, this vaccine is very difficult to prepare on a large scale.

3. **Vaccine of Chrzanowski and Mosing (1933):** Feces of lice are used; phenolized, and the vaccine is prepared in the same manner as that produced in Weigl's laboratory.

(b) **Vaccines Prepared With Infected Organs From Experimentally Infected Animals or From Typhus Patients.—**

4. **Vaccine of Handi:** Prepared from blood of human cases of typhus. The blood is inactivated at 60° C. or by chilling (42 hours in the refrigerator). Results are inconstant.

5. **Vaccine of Blanc (1915):** Spleen and suprarenal capsule of guinea pigs infected with typhus. The organs are triturated and suspended in physiologic salt solution for one-half hour at 60° C. Modifications of da Rocha Lima, Doerr and Pick, Doerr and Schnabel, Russ and Kirchner, Landsteiner and Hausmann, using other organs, especially brain, phenolized or glycerolized. Inconstant results; not satisfactory.

6. **Adaptation of Snyder and Liu (1941) of the Zinsser and Castañeda Vaccine:** Suspension of peritoneal scrapings from mice infected with the European strain and irradiated with x-rays (intraperitoneal inoculation of the virus).

7. **Adaptation of Durand and Sparrow (1940) Using Modification of Durand and Giroud (1940) of the Castañeda Vaccine:** Utilizes rickettsias obtained from the specif pneumonia produced in mice by inoculation with the virus from lice intestines.

Modification of Giroud and Durand (1940) using rabbit lung.

Modification of Combiesco, Zotta, Manciulesco, Pop, and Tascau (1941) using dog lung.

The preparation of these vaccines is dangerous, and personnel have been infected in practically all the laboratories where they are made (Zurich, 6 cases reported by Löffler and Mooser, 1942; Bucharest, 10 cases reported by Biraud, 1943). Previous vaccination does not prevent infection. The vaccine has been used extensively in Madrid, Poland, Germany, and Romania, with good results. Experimental studies of Topping and Bengtson, 1942 (1945), on the Giroud vaccine prepared by Plotz, showed good protection although inferior to that conferred by the alum-precipitated Cox vaccine.

(c) **Vaccines Prepared With Tissue Cultures of Rickettsias in Vitro.—**

8. **Vaccine of Zinsser and Macchiavello:** Nigg and Landsteiner (1930, 1932) adapted the Maitland-Rivers technic to the cultivation of rickettsias. Kligler and Aschner (1934) showed that these cultures produced protection when used as vaccines in guinea pigs. Zinsser and Macchiavello (1936), introducing modifications to allow for large-scale production, demonstrated the possibility of obtaining a vaccine with high antigenic potency. Macchiavello (1938) showed further proof of the experimental value of the vaccine, but its application to human beings was postponed due to the development of the following method.

9. **Vaccine of Zinsser, Fitzpatrick, and Wei (1939):** The original vaccine of Zinsser, Wei, and Fitzpatrick (1937) utilized cultures in agar-tissue and was a simple modification of the Maitland method with the innovation of replacing the tunica vaginalis of guinea pigs first with rat embryos and later with chick embryos. The vaccine was prepared as in the preceding method of Zinsser and Macchiavello.

Modification of Zinsser, Plotz, and Enders (1940): In the preceding method the origin of the organisms was the tunica vaginalis of guinea pigs infected with European (classical) virus. The authors changed the seed, using the vitelline membrane of chick embryos (Cox method) inoculated with classical typhus.

(d) **Vaccines Prepared With Tissue Cultures in Vivo.—**

10. **Vaccine of Cox and Bell (1939):** Vitelline sacs of fertile eggs infected by the method of Cox (1938) are used. Wash in physiologic salt solution, remove excess liquid, and weigh. Grind in a mortar with alundum and suspend in 10 per cent or more of physiologic saline.

Add 1 per cent of phenol and 0.5 per cent of formol.

Shake with glass beads for an hour, store at 2° C. for variable lengths of time, and refine by differential centrifugation.

Originally 3 doses 1 week apart were used for human vaccination. According to Topping, Bengtson, and Henderson, 1943 (1945), the different strains of classical typhus have equal antigenicity and can be used indiscriminately in vaccine preparation. Craigie (1942) made a fundamental advance by introducing the ether extraction technic. Topping and Bengtson, following the procedure of Finlayson (alum precipitation), improved the strength of the Cox and Bell vaccine. When Topping and Shear found the soluble substance mentioned elsewhere and proved its antigenicity, they preserved it in the vaccine along with the rickettsias. The toxins evolved in the egg cultivations are destroyed with formalin.

It has been chiefly with this vaccine that the most decided progress in vaccination against the rickettsial diseases has been achieved, the work of the investigators of the National Institute of Health of the United States Public Health Service being outstanding. Thanks to these studies, the antigenic value of the vaccine has been improved and the number of required doses decreased.

II. **Vaccines Prepared With Living Virus of Classical Typhus.—**

The trial of vaccination with living virus in exanthematic typhus (homologous virus) has only historical interest (Nicolle, 1916; Sparrow, 1924; Nicolle, Sparrow, and Conseil, 1926; Balteanu and Constantinesco, 1937; Combiesco, 1937, using blood or organs of animals infected with typhus, the virus diluted or attenuated by cold or heat or disinfectants, or coated with substances such as lanolin or olive oil to retard absorption). Opposition to the use of this type of vaccine is due not only to the difficulty of standardizing it and to the failures which have taken place in attenuating the virus in those vaccinated, but also to the fact that the virulence of the blood from inapparent cases of typhus has been proved (Ramsine, 1929; Yu, 1931; Kuteischikow, Dosser, and Bernhoff, 1933; Balteanu and Constantinesco, 1937).

C. Murine Typhus

I. Vaccines Made With Killed Virus.—

(a) **Vaccines Made With Virus From Arthropods.—**

1. **Vaccine of Dyer et al. (1932):** A triturate of fleas infected with murine virus, suspended in phenolized physiologic saline.

(b) **Vaccines Made With Virus From Animal Tissues.—**

2. **Vaccine of Zinsser and Castañeda (1931):** A suspension of triturate of tunica vaginalis from guinea pig or rat, inoculated with murine typhus, in 0.85 per cent physiologic saline, formolized to 0.2 per cent.

Modification of Zinsser and Castañeda (1932): Methods were introduced to lower the resistance of the guinea pigs and rats, and especially to produce leucopenia, such as the action of cold, benzol, lack of vitamin C, and x-rays. Macchiavello (1936, 1938) tried thorium X, quinine, antileucocytic serum, etc., without favorable results. The irradiation method, modified by Macchiavello and Dresser (1935) produced abundant rickettsias in the periotoneal exudates of rats without requiring costly installations, ordinary hospital x-ray apparatus being used.

3. **Vaccine of Castañeda (1939):** Rats, mice, or rabbits are used and are inoculated by the nasal route with murine virus; a hepatization of the lungs due to rickettsial pneumonia occurs. Vaccine is made by triturating the lungs and purifying the product by differential centrifugation. Ten rats produce 1 Gm. of rickettsias, and 1 liter of vaccine is prepared from 10 Gm. of the centrifugalized product. Three doses are injected at intervals of 1 week.

(c) **Vaccine Prepared With Murine Rickettsias in Tissue Cultures.**—The methods applicable to murine virus are the same as those cited for classical virus. Since the production of this type of vaccine is less than that obtained with the x-ray method of Zinsser and Castañeda, there has been little interest in its further development.

(d) **Vaccine Prepared With Virus Cultivated in Living Tissue.—**

4. **Vaccine of Cox and Bell (1939):** Prepared in fertile eggs according to the Cox method as for vaccine against exanthematic typhus. *R. mooseri* develops abundantly.

II. Vaccines Made With Living Virus.—

Vaccines prepared with living virus have been developed not as a method of protection against murine typhus, which is a benign disease, but as a method of developing a high cross immunity against exanthematic typhus. The method is based on the following: (1) murine virus can be easily attenuated to produce an inapparent or light disease in man; (2) this mild illness leaves a homologous and cross immunity of long duration; (3) immunity appears rapidly, more or less in 10 days, and lasts about 5 years; (4) large groups of people can be vaccinated in a short time, the usual source of virus being easily obtainable and practically inexhaustible; (5) vaccination can control an epidemic in 2 or 3 weeks if applied to all or a majority of the affected population; (6) only 1 inoculation is needed. These vaccines were developed in the face of the difficulty of obtaining large quantities of homologous vaccine against exanthematic typhus. At present this difficulty has almost completely disappeared with the methods of vaccine production of Cox and of Castañeda.

(a) **Vaccines Prepared With Virus From Arthropods.—**

5. **Blanc Vaccine: Adaptation of Blanc (1937):** Flea feces are dried under vacuum, the fleas having been fed on typhus rats. The feces are then emulsified and treated with

bile at the time of use. The method allows for standardization—1 mg. equals 100 doses when dissolved in bile-treated buffer solution.

6. **Weigl Vaccine: Adaptation of Sparrow (1939):** Lice are infected with the "Tunis I" murine virus by the Weigl method. The final rickettsial suspension is introduced into man by the conjunctival route, immunity being developed by an inapparent infection.

(b) **Vaccines Prepared With Virus From Animal Tissue.—**

7. **Vaccine of Blanc (1933):** The technic of preparation is described in detail by Blanc (1936). A triturate is made of tunica vaginalis, spleen, and suprarenal from guinea pigs inoculated with the Casablanca "IMC-III" strain of murine virus and is diluted with 2 liters of physiologic saline. At the time of use, 5 per cent sterile ox bile is added and allowed to act for 15 minutes. The injection of the virus vaccine is made in the deltoid in doses of 1.0 c.c. for adults, 0.5 c.c. for children from 8 to 15 years of age, and 0.25 c.c. for the 1- to 8-year age group.

Many experiences showed the method to be effective. At first 19 volunteers were satisfactorily immunized. Vaccination was then made in the prison at Adir in 1934 (723 individuals), in Ali-Moumin in 1936 (823 prisoners), in Petitjean, Morocco, in 1935 (8,234 persons), and in 12,000 members of the tribe of Abu-el-Ahmed, and in Casablanca more than 1,300,000 persons had been vaccinated up to 1938, according to Gaud (1938, 1939). Among native Moroccans, not more than 1.5 per cent had a mild reaction, without stupor and with good general condition (Baltazard, 1938). Among Europeans, up to one-third of those vaccinated reacted to certain lots of vaccine. In Chile, of 520 vaccinated, 227 had mild typhus, or a febrile reaction, and 5 deaths occurred (Quiros, 1935). The virus was recovered in guinea pigs (Vaccaro et al., 1935, and Palacios, Chavez, and Avendaño, 1935). According to the investigation commission designated by the Medical Society of Chile, there were about 800 vaccinated, of whom 23 per cent had grave murine typhus. In the conference of experts called by the League of Nations, Zinsser (1937) raised the objection that the Blanc virus was not stable. Ciuca and Ionesco-Mihaesti (1941) maintained that murine virus should not be imported into places where it does not already exist. Mooser (1941) maintained that the greatest danger was that the murine virus might become epidemic virus. There must be kept in mind the tendency to accept man as a reservoir of classical typhus and possibly of any rickettsial virus, after infection, although this may be inapparent and the individual may even develop immunity. The innocuousness of the virus and the impossibility of its being transmitted by lice were demonstrated by Baltazard (1938), who opposed the points of view just mentioned. Neither in North nor in South America is there acceptance of typhus vaccine made from living virus of any sort.

8. **Vaccine of Nicolle, Laigret, and Durand (1936):** This consists of a triturate of brains of typhus-infected guinea pigs and rats, mixed with egg yolk, desiccated, and emulsified in olive oil. The virus is not attenuated, but absorption is slow. In Tunis, 32,481 vaccinations were made with it from 1935 to 1937, and subsequently around 100,000. In the first group there were only 13 cases of murine typhus caused by the vaccine, 8 of these in Europeans. The use of this vaccine has stopped various epidemic outbreaks.

Modification of Laigret and Durand (1937): Guinea pig and rat brains are mixed with sodium phosphate and then desiccated.

Modification of Laigret and Durand (1939): Mouse brain is used instead of guinea pig and rat. The vaccine is standardized at 200 mouse units per dose; the final vehicle is physiologic salt solution rather than olive oil. A single dose is used. From May, 1939, to May, 1940, 200,488 immunizations were performed with this vaccine, without a single case of "vaccination typhus."

Scarification Vaccination of Laigret, Fabiani, and Vargues (1942): This is not another vaccine but a new technic in applying the previous vaccine by cutaneous scarification. The value of the method has not yet been proved.

D. Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever

1. **Vaccine of Spencer and Parker (1930):** Tick larvae are fed on infected rabbits (larvae of *D. andersoni*). When they reach the adult state they are triturated; the vaccine is purified and sterilized as in similar methods in which arthropods are used. Good results have recently been reported by Parker.

2. **Vaccine of Bengtson:** Prepared in tissue cultures in Maitland media using Baker's instead of Tyrode's solution. Good results on experimental trials.

3. **Cox Vaccine (1939):** Prepared from rickettsias cultivated by the Cox method. Good experimental results.

Of these vaccines, only that of Spencer and Parker has been widely used in man; a positive reduction in the number of cases has been obtained in areas of great infectivity.

E. Other Rickettsioses

With the exception of São Paulo typhus, in which a vaccine of the Spencer and Parker type but using *A. cajennense* has been developed, the use of vaccines against the other rickettsial diseases, such as boutonneuse fever, has not progressed beyond the experimental stage.

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS ON VACCINATION AGAINST THE RICKETTSIOSES

In order that a vaccine against any of the rickettsial diseases be considered efficient, it should comply with the following requisites: (1) innocuous for man; (2) easy to produce; (3) potent; that is, produce a satisfactory and persistent immunity in vaccinated individuals; (4) easy to apply. Regarding the last point, the most useful vaccines from the sanitary standpoint are those which require a single dose only.

Killed vaccines are innocuous; that is to say, they are free of the danger of producing vaccinal typhus or of transforming inoculated individuals into virus carriers. They have the following inconveniences: (1) More than 1 injection, usually 3, are required. Possibly alum-precipitated vaccines will enable us to use a single dose. (2) Large quantities of rickettsias are needed in their preparation, which has been a difficulty now obviated by the methods of Cox and of Castañeda. (3) They produce immunity of short duration, less than a year. The recent work of Topping et al. shows that immunizing power of typhus vaccines can be increased with the use of soluble antigen. They showed also, in a large group of vaccinated persons, that immunity decreased in about 5 months and was nearly gone at 9 months, but that if "booster" doses are given, there is an enormous rise in immunity within 2 weeks, and this is maintained for long periods and decreases slowly.

Living vaccines or virus vaccines have the advantage of producing rapid immunity, either by premunition or by premunition followed by immunity; immunity is higher, more lasting (at least 5 years), and more ample in the sense that the virus vaccines protect not only against infection by homologous virus but also by related viruses, as is the case with the murine virus vaccine which protects against exanthematic typhus. The quick immunity developed has suggested to some authors that this is due to a state of "precedence" ("prèseánce") (Blanc, Noury, and Baltazard, 1935), which is that condition in which the presence of a living microorganism prevents superinfection with new doses of the same microorganism. Minimal doses of virus are needed to produce attenuated or inapparent infection, and the vaccine can be produced economically and in enormous quantities (for example, a single guinea pig can supply 2 liters of the bile-treated vaccine of Blanc). The risks are the production of vaccine typhus; the variable titer of the vaccine and therefor irregularities in its action; racial selectivity, which implies that Europeans may develop vaccine typhus while natives do not; and the creation of reservoirs of virus, with the possibility of introducing murine virus in localities where it does not already exist.

Although apparently there are appreciable advantages in the use of living vaccine of murine origin, we feel that with the modern method of preparation of killed vaccines and of quantity production, and their applicability to endemo-epidemic areas, the arguments for the use of living vaccines are weakened, and the danger of produeng not only vaccine typhus but, as occurred in Chile, grave and even fatal cases of typhus stands out against their use.

Another point of great interest regarding vaccines is the measurement of their immunizing power. The earlier technics consisted of guinea pig inoculation and subsequent infection to demonstrate the protection conferred by the vaccine. Donovick and Wyckoff (1945) summarized the possibility of making this method more exact, comparing the duration of fever in vaccinated guinea pigs with controls in testing vaccinal immunity. Complement fixation tests are also used in determining the immunizing titer of vaccines. But recent studies show that this is not a true test of protection, since antigens heated at 60° C. for only 4 minutes may cause a marked fixation of complement but confer no immunity. On the other hand, the neutralization test in the white mouse, using serum from the vaccinated person, has proved to be an exact measurement of the degree of immunity present and therefore is the best test of immunizing potency so far developed.

Allergic Reactions.—Some writers, among them Roth (1945), have recently described serious allergic reactions in individuals receiving the Cox vaccine against typhus, reactions due possibly to some residual allergen in the egg material used in preparing the vaccine.

INSECTICIDES AND RODENTICIDES

Until recently the majority of the methods developed to control the vectors of the rickettsial diseases were directed against lice, especially the methods of collective control. Measures against fleas, mites, and ticks were mostly confined to personal endeavor (cleanliness, the use of insect-proof clothing, removal of insects, etc.), mass protection against the vectors being little developed, such as the ridding of agricultural areas of insects, the use of antagonistic insects against the vectors (as *Ixodophagus*, suggested by Brumpt for the destruction of the ticks which transmit Rocky Mountain spotted fever), etc. The destruction of animal reservoirs had not been considered in detail.

The majority of insecticides used against lice deserve only to be mentioned (10 per cent oil of wintergreen; 15 per cent oil of turpentine; chloroform water, 5:1,000; xylol in petroleum jelly, 90 drops to 30 Gm.; 5 per cent solution of anisol; 2 per cent phenol; mercurial salves; benzine vapors; and a few commercial preparations such as Cuprex, Laute, Antiparasite W, etc.). Also, it was not always easy to rid clothing of parasites. Primitive but efficient and economical methods are boiling and ironing. For large scale use, with the intervention of a specialized organization, we have the use of steam (the Serbian barrel, autoclave), dry heat applied for 1 hour at least, at 90° C., storage of clothing for prolonged intervals, the use of sulfur (totally ineffective usually), and cyanide gas applied in closed chambers through the action of sulfuric acid on sodium cyanide, to obtain a concentration of the gas of about 10 grams per cubic meter, or the use of hydrocyanic acid gas, or, still better, Zyklon B.

Repellents*

Howard summarized the action of the repellents known up to 1916. The military campaigns in the Pacific, and the great incidence of scrub typhus among the soldiers, brought about the need for active repellents against mites. The more important now in use are dimethylphthalate, benzyl benzoate, phenylbenzoate, 2-phenyl-cyclohexanol, and dibutylphthalate. All these have little toxicity and are only weak irritants of the skin; they retain their effectiveness after clothes are washed two or more times.

Repellents are little used against ticks, fleas, or lice. DDT has no repellent action. The mixture of Indalone, Rutgers 612, and dimethylphthalate, known as "6-2-2," seems to have a certain repellent activity against various insects. Recently another repellent and insecticide has been recommended—"NMRI 448," which is said to be several times more active than dimethylphthalate.

Repellents are used by the so-called "barrier" method—applying them to the exposed parts and to all openings in clothing; also by manual application to clothing, by mechanical pulverization, or by immersing clothing in an emulsion of the repellent in water. Dimethylphthalate is used in this way by making an emulsion of 7.5 parts of the chemical in 35 gallons of water containing 6 pounds of soap.

Insecticides

Except for pyrethrum and a few dangerous (for the use of the public) insecticides such as hydrocyanic acid, most of the insecticides in present use in the control of the vectors of the rickettsial diseases were produced as a result of the war effort, the most important contributions being made by Americans and English. Details and summaries of the experimental work carried out in the laboratories at Orlando, Florida, are found in Report 100 of the Insect Control Committee (1945) besides in the original publication of Annand et al. (1944). Summaries and indices of the literature on DDT have been compiled by Roark and McIndoo (1944, 1946) and Roark (1944, 1945). The two most important insecticides in use against rickettsioses are DDT and 666. The use of insecticides varies according to whether one is trying to control arthropods on living persons or beings, or in habitations, or in infested land areas and depends also on the biology and habits of the vector.

---

*See also Chapter 66.

(a) "**DDT**" **(Dichloro-Diphenyl-Trichloro-Ethane).**—The action of DDT on human lice (head and body lice) was tested by Bushland, MacAlister, Eddy, and Jones (1944), using a 3 per cent powder. They found that DDT is the most effective agent against lice, although it does not kill the eggs. However, its residual action destroys the new generation. Clothing to which DDT has been applied may be washed repeatedly without loss of action of the substance, especially if the clothing has been impregnated with high concentrations of DDT in a volatile solvent. Applied as a powder, using any type of pulverizer, in doses of 1 ounce per person, DDT prevents reinfestation for about 1 month. The epidemic of typhus in Naples was controlled with DDT alone. Experiments with military prisoners (Ahnfeldt, 1944) and studies in North Africa (Sergent and Beguet, 1944) showed the same favorable results as those of Payne, Ortiz Mariotte, and Malo Juvera (1945) in Mexico.

Publication of the detailed reports of Soper et al. (1945) and Soper et al. (1947) allows one to appreciate the results obtained in North Africa and in Naples. Ten per cent DDT in pyrophyllite was tried out in the Maison-Carrée Prison near Algiers, in the city and suburban areas of l'Arba, and among prisoners in a concentration camp (at times comparing DDT with MYL), with the following results: DDT and MYL are powerful insecticides which achieve practically the eradication of lice in closed communities when applied every 15 days; in communities where the inhabitants work and live with a highly pediculous population, those treated even only once showed a low infestation a month after the application of DDT powder. These treatments can be given effectively without removing the clothing of the individuals, using mechanical applicators.

The increasing spread of the epidemic in Naples caused a transfer of activities to Italy, and the report of Soper et al. covers the period 1943-1945. The outbreak began in Italy in February, 1942, apparently brought in by a train coming from the Russian front, filled with repatriated soldiers destined for hospitalization in Foggia and Bari. Typhus began there in the hospitals, as it did in Naples in March. The first case in the civilian population was reported in Aversa, about 12 miles from Naples, in April. From July 1, 1943, to June 1, 1944, there were 2,020 cases in Naples (511 of which came from outside the city), with 429 deaths. The height of the epidemic was reached in December, 1943, and it began to subside by January, 1944. The last cases occurred in April in Naples, and in May outside the city. This result was obtained by the establishment, in December, 1943, of delousing services which achieved a total of 3,000,000 applications of DDT (and MYL). The operation was performed on clothed individuals by the use of hand-operated dust guns. Patients and their families, and the general population, were treated in fixed stations, and, in addition, systematic dusting of certain areas block by block, of air-raid shelters, etc., was performed.

A summary of this work was presented by Soper (1945) at the First Inter-American Congress on Typhus Fever in Mexico City.

Viel and Romero (1945) ended an epidemic of exanthematic typhus in Chile by the exclusive use of DDT and pointed out the simplification of the campaign as compared with the previous control methods used in that country. The Pan-American Sanitary Bureau is making a study of the comparative value of prophylaxis with vaccine and with DDT in the control of typhus in Colombia and Guatemala.

The effect of DDT on fleas has been investigated by Lindquist (1944), Smith and Davies (1944), Macchiavello (1946), Ludwig and Nicholson (1945), etc. Stage (1946) sums up the forms of application: In aerosol there is a transitory effect, and the method is not recommended; DDT powder is used on floors, rat burrows, and burrows and nests of other reservoirs; a 5 per cent solution in kerosene, or any other oily solution, is useful against larvae. One gallon per thousand square feet of the 5 per cent suspension or emulsion should be used; 1 pound of 10 per cent powder suffices for a similar area. Macchiavello (1946) studied the action of DDT on 14 species of fleas, finding it equally effective in all; working with fleas on their animal hosts, he found DDT less effective against *Echidnophaga gallinacea* (Davis) and *H. suarezi.* In mass treatment, a 2 per cent DDT powder is equally effective against fleas as the 5 or 10 per cent powders.

The action of DDT against ticks must be considered in a different light from its effect on the other insects mentioned, since generally one attempts to control ticks not in close relation to man but to the hosts of the ticks, and with the areas where they abound, whether dwellings, agricultural areas, or wild vegetation. Observations of Smith and Gouck and of Gouck and Smith, in relation to *A. americanum,* demonstrated the efficacy of DDT against ticks; also, 5 per cent DDT powder, in the amount of 3 pounds per acre, killed ticks in all stages when applied to forage fields. Rude and Smith (1944) and Rude (1945) found a similar effect of DDT on *A. maculatum* on cattle, the action lasting for 3 weeks. The preparation "1037" (5 parts DDT, 47 parts resin, 33 parts Hereolyn, and 15 parts dibutylphthalate) had a residual insecticidal action of 3 to 6 weeks in Texas. Blakeslee, using 15 Gm. of 10 per cent DDT powder on dogs, and ½ pound per house, controlled an intense infestation with *Rhipicephalus sanguineus.* Gouck and Smith (1944) had equal results with dogs. Powders have not been very effective against *D. variabilis,* but 3 pounds of DDT per acre has shown high tick mortality in agricultural zones.

With regard to *Ixodes ricinus scapularis, Dermacentor albopictus, Amblyomma cajennense* (Wasicky and Unti, 1944), results are similar: at times ineffective action of DDT in powder form; slow but sure action when the substance is incorporated with an adherent which does not dry out. This agrees with the experience of McDuffie with *A. americanum,* in Camp Bullis, who at times was unsuccessful with as many as 40 pounds of 10 per cent DDT powder per acre.

Results are not favorable with the argasids *Ornithodorus megnini, O. moubata,* and *O. turicata.* Dove (1945) sums up the experiments carried out with DDT on insects dangerous to man.

DDT does not seem very useful against mites. *Liponyssus bacoti* and *Echidnolaelaps echidinus* do not appear sensitive to it. The author found no appreciable reduction in 6 different species of mites found on rats and mice, both wild and domestic, using 10 per cent DDT powder in areas where the reduction in number of fleas found free or on rodents was greater than 90 per cent. A gamasid found on fleas which were killed with DDT in rat burrows treated with the insecticide appeared to be completely insensible to it.

(b) **The Gamma Isomer of Hexachlorocyclohexane (''Gammefane,'' ''666'').**—Hexachlorocyclohexanone ($C_6H_6Cl_6$) is an amorphous solid, optically active, of which 4 isomers are known, the alpha and beta being inactive as insecticides. The gamma form makes up from 10 to 12 per cent of crude ''666'' and is difficult to obtain in the pure state. It is very stable, slightly soluble in water (10 p.p.m.). Its penetrating and rather irritating odor is a serious disadvantage. It dissolves well in xylol, carbon tetrachloride, methanol, and benzine. Perchlorethylene is used for spray vehicle as it is nontoxic and noninflammable. Water emulsions are made using turkey red oil, triton X-100, or Goulac as emulsifiers. Its poisonous action is by contact or ingestion, and as a fumigant. It is not toxic for man but produces headache and mucosal irritation. The following information is taken from Slade (1945) and Jenkins (1945).

''666'' was developed in England and has not been as extensively studied as DDT. Its insecticidal activity has been proved against a large number of insects, including fleas, lice, and mites. It can be applied as a powder, in solutions, as emulsions, or as a gas. The last is obtained by volatilization on hot metal plates. Mixtures containing 20 per cent of the powder can be diluted to 5 or 2 per cent.

It is not yet clear how many times more toxic it is for insects than DDT, but it is highly effective against many which are not affected by DDT. We were interested in showing that various mites tested on cloth impregnated with a concentration of ''666'' of 4 Gm. per square foot were inactivated in 32 seconds and extinct in 15 minutes. In fields treated with 10 pounds per acre of ''666,'' there was almost complete eradication of mites. It is believed to be 10 to 20 times more toxic for lice and fleas than DDT and to have a longer residual action, even in the open.

(c) **Other Insecticides.—**

Although DDT in 2 per cent emulsions has shown insecticidal action against head lice for 1 week (Busvine and Loeson, 1945), as have powder forms, other louse poisons have been strongly recommended, among them the powder MYL (0.2 per cent pyrethrins, 2 per cent n-isobutyl undecylenamide, 2, 2-dinitroanisel 2 per cent, and phenol S, pyrophyllite to 100), and the emulsion NBIN (benzyl benzoate, 68 pints; DDT, 6 pints; methyl para-aminobenzoate, 12 pints; and Tween 80, 14 pints; this concentrate is diluted in 5 volumes of water before application).

Methyl bromide is used to destroy lice and nits in clothing. The German preparation Lausete is 4 times less effective than DDT. Annand, Snyder, and

Morton (1945) cite a long list of substances effective against mites and mention 15 compounds capable of controlling 90 per cent of the mites in contaminated areas, the best being "666" in dosage of 10 pounds per acre, at which dosage sulfur and DDT are both ineffective (Annand, Linduska, and Morton, 1945).

RODENTICIDES

Domestic and wild rodents are the principal reservoirs of the rickettsioses. However, the unrestricted use of rodenticides, especially in rural or wild areas, might interfere with the development of species of animals useful to man. According to Ormsbee (1945) a good rodenticide should have the following properties: high toxicity, acceptability to rodents, rapid action, freedom from odor and taste, stability, nontoxic for human skin, no tolerance production, easy solubility, low cost, easy manufacture, abundance of the necessary raw materials, etc.

1. **Sodium Fluoroacetate ("1080").**—Developed as a rodent poison in the United States, this substance is very stable, very soluble, without odor or taste, very active, and rapidly absorbed by the intestines. It is a white powder, fine, light, nonvolatile, and not absorbed by the skin. It is dangerous because it is easily confused with flour or baking powder. No known antidote exists. It is used dissolved in water in amounts of 5 to 10 Gm. per liter, or on solid baits or mixed with cereals in similar dosage. Toxicity for various animals is between 0.1 to 0.2 mg. per kilogram (dog) to from 8 to 10 mg. per kilogram (domestic mouse). It has been used successfully against domestic rats by Johnson, Greeley, Bühler, Pryor, Clark, Gorman, Kelly, Treichler, Trapido, Wiley, Landon, Macchiavello (1945) and against rats and numerous wild animals by Cox, Brown, and especially Kalmbach. Slorer (1946) summarized the bibliography and Ormsbee wrote several general summaries. Its comparative toxic value against *R. norvegicus* (Dieke, expressed in MLD mg./kg.) is: "1080," 0.22/0.01; strychnine sulfate, 4.8/0.4; ANTU, 6.9/0.5; thallium sulfate, 15.8/0.9; zinc phosphate, 40.5/2.9; arsenic trioxide, 138/13; red squill ("reinforced"), against females 133/10, against males 276/29; barium carbonate, 148/340.

The disadvantages of "1080" are its extreme toxicity, the lack of an antidote, and the fact that it can be washed away by rains. The percentage of rodents killed with the poison varies with conditions. Used under optimum control conditions, the writer has obtained as high as 75 per cent destruction of the murine population in urban zones.

2. **Alpha-Naphthyl-Thiourea** (ANTU).—The studies of Richter, Dieke, and of Richter and associates have shown that α-naphthyl-thiourea is a poison the effect of which is practically limited to *R. norvegicus* and is therefore specific. Studies and field work with ANTU have been made by Kifer (1944), Upton, Wiley, Leslie et al., Macchiavello, Woke, Nicholson, Ludwig, and Grimaley, etc. (1945, 1946). According to Richter, ANTU works by causing overwhelming exudation into the pleural cavity of rats. The author found it

experimentally satisfactory but of less value than "1080" in field work. Defects in the poison include the finding that rats become accustomed to it, that it is less effective against young rats, and that its odor and taste are more marked than in "1080," in which these are almost nil. An advantage is that it works as a contact poison as well as by ingestion. Recently ANTU in 20 per cent powder has been mixed with DDT in 10 per cent powder, the mixture being insufflated in rat burrows and distributed along rat runs and galleries, killing both rats and fleas. ANTU is almost insoluble in water but can be mixed with a large variety of baits. It is not toxic nor irritating to man, and scarcely so for domestic animals.

ADMINISTRATIVE METHODS IN PROPHYLAXIS

Prophylactic methods vary, principally in relation to the biology of the vector or reservoirs, to the special epidemiologic condition of each rickettsial disease, to ecology, and to the economic and cultural situation of the human group in which the disease occurs. The administrative and legal measures of most value are those which have been developed in the control of exanthematic typhus.

A. Typhus Transmitted by Lice

In all countries where typhus is a disease of national importance, official control services have been developed, backed by adequate legislation. Typhus control measures may be divided into individual and collective.

(a) **Individual Methods of Typhus Control.—**

1. Declaration of cases.

2. Investigation of the source of infection. This is of fundamental importance. In Valparaiso, Macchiavello and Grossi (1937) succeeded in tracing the lines of contagion in 90 per cent of cases.

3. Isolation. The sick should be hospitalized, the patient and his clothing receiving a careful delousing on admission.

4. Quarantine. Typhus contacts must be deloused, have their temperatures taken daily, and protected with hyperimmune serum in doses of 5 to 20 c.c., depending on the potency of the serum. They should be checked up to the maximum period of incubation of typhus. In justified cases, quarantine camps have been constructed for typhus contacts.

(b) **Methods of Collective Prophylaxis.—**

Collective methods may be thus divided:

1. Control of lousiness. In rural zones, delousing by means of mobile brigades equipped with portable material for cutting hair and cleansing the sick and for disinsectizing clothing by dry or moist heat; in urban areas, the setting up of stations for bathing and disinfestation (called, in Chile, cleansing houses—*Casas de Limpieza*). These usually have sections for men and women and a general section for treating clothing. They are designed so that a parasitized individual enters at one extremity of the building ("dirty

side'') and leaves by the other extremity (''clean side''). For the en masse delousing of clothing, bed clothing, etc., cyanide chambers are used. Clothing is mechanically ventilated before being returned.

2. Control of epidemics.

(*a*) Every report is immediately investigated. The sick are hospitalized and the contacts are put under vigilance, the formation of new foci by contacts other than members of the family being investigated. At times special brigades are required to discover occult cases, which may work by house-to-house inspection.

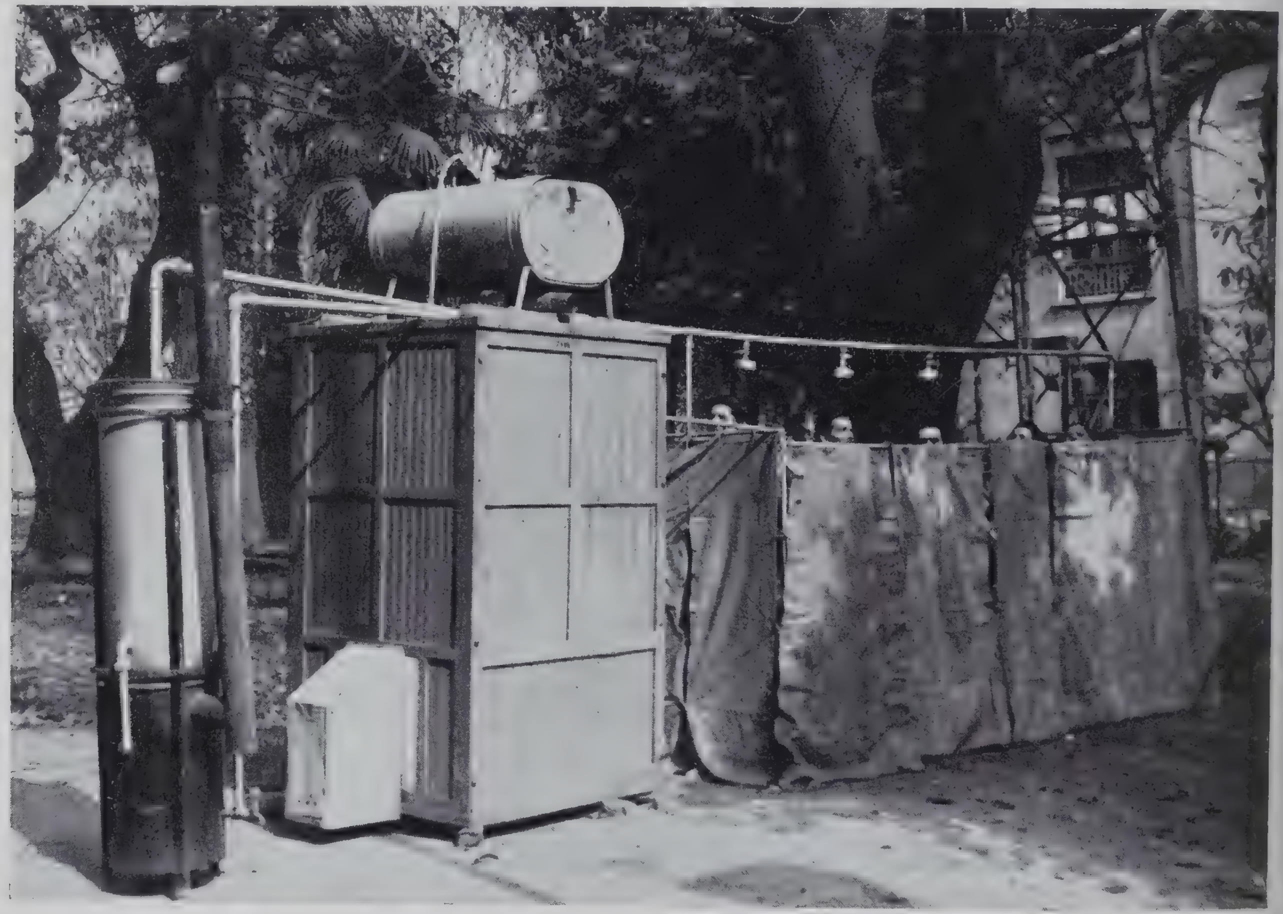


Fig. 220.—Portable hot water bath installation, with attached chamber for delousing clothing by dry heat.

(*b*) Statistical control of mortality rates in the offices of registrars, or of similar officials, of hospitals, cemeteries, etc. Also data on the number of sick in hospitals, jails, barracks, asylums, and other places of collective living, including, as far as possible, factories and schools.

3. Control of the means of dissemination of typhus. This includes inspection of boardinghouses, hotels, theaters, and other places of public gatherings; repression of vagrancy; disinfestation of public vehicles, trains, and other means of transportation; repression of commerce in used clothing; disinfestation of dwellings, etc.

4. Sanitary education. An antityphus campaign requires an autonomous technical organization backed by sufficient legal powers.

(c) Modern Methods of Typhus Control.—

Collective sero-prophylaxis has eradicated epidemics of typhus in Mexico and in Chile. Vaccination with living vaccines prepared from murine strains (Blanc, in North Africa) is also a method that can be recommended. Vaccination with killed vaccines prepared with homologous virus, Cox or Castañeda types, can be recommended as a permanent measure to be used in protecting populations subject to sharp typhus epidemics.

The procedure of choice in cases of emergency is the use of 10 per cent DDT powder in doses of 1 ounce per person. The powder can be applied with any sort of hand pulverizer or blower, without undressing the individual, blowing the powder into the openings in the clothing so that it reaches the innermost parts. Davis, Malo Juvera, and Hernandez Lira (1944) studied the application of other antilouse powders and liquids in civil populations.

B. Typhus Transmitted by Fleas

It will be understood that in those rickettsial diseases which are chiefly rodent diseases, transmission to man is possible only when a vector capable of transmitting the infection exists. Generally the human incidence of this type, called "zootic" by Megaw, is low and accidental and therefore prophylaxis cannot be systematized nor follow common norms.

Against murine typhus, in urban zones, general methods similar to those used against bubonic plague can be employed. Macchiavello (1932) observed that the murine typhus in Antofagasta, Chile, increased after an intense campaign of deratization, coincidentally with a transitory elevation in the *cheopis index* per rat. Later the disease and the *cheopis* index dropped in parallel. When the Antiplague Service in that city was terminated in 1939, murine typhus began to increase, along with an increase in the murine population. In the United States, because of the notable increase in murine typhus, the methods used in controlling bubonic plague were extended to typhus control. To this end there was organized the Typhus Fever Control Unit of the United States Public Health Service, which aided this work in various ways. Eskey (1943) laid the foundations for murine typhus control, recommending external ratproofing of edifices and rat and flea control within buildings by means of trapping, poisoning, and fumigation. Some of the southern states have organized extensive studies and campaigns to this end. The introduction of DDT as an insecticide and of "1080" and ANTU as rodenticides has simplified this work. Henderson (1945), in Georgia, outlined a procedure for controlling rat ectoparasites by the use of insecticides with a residual action, recommending the use of 5 pounds of DDT per industrial establishment, 1 pound per residence in urban areas, and 2½ pounds per barnyard in rural areas. Treatment should be repeated each 3 months. In Lavaca County, Davis, Rude, and Brundrett used 10 per cent DDT followed by 1080. In this way the danger that fleas infected with typhus may attack man, when their hosts die, is avoided. The control of rodents and their ectoparasites with DDT and 1080 was carried out by Macchiavello (1946) in two Peruvian towns with excellent results. In places where the typhus reservoir is *R. norvegicus,* a mixture of ANTU (20 per cent) and DDT (10 per cent) in pyrophyllite can be used to advantage. The work of eradicating fleas from rat nests and burrows must be minute and complete. A partial treatment of burrows does not result in a permanent reduction of the flea indices in the rats, which comes to light especially after the use of poison, when there then appear a few examples of rats with unusually high numbers of fleas per rodent (100 or more).

C. The Spotted Fevers

Prophylaxis of the spotted fevers varies according to whether one is dealing with the North American types, with São Paulo fever, boutonneuse fever, etc. This is due chiefly to the vectors and to geographical localization. When the ticks are prevalent in wooded areas, and the cases occur in individuals who accidentally come in contact with these zones (woodcutters, hunters, tourists, etc.), prophylaxis is completely an individual matter (avoiding tick bites, using adequate clothing with all openings provided with elastic wristlets, anklets, etc., the prompt removal of all parasites found on clothing or body). In areas of greater incidence, mass vaccination with the Spencer-Parker or the Cox vaccine is recommend. Anigstein, Bader, Young, and Neubauer (1944) recommend the injection of immune serum around tick bites. Armstrong and Topping decry this treatment (1944). Recently certain repellents have been shown to be somewhat effective against mites. Also, DDT may be useful in treating domestic animals which are tick hosts. The use of ''666'' promises to be of value in treating terrain and dwellings in which infestation by these arthropods justifies measures of this nature.

D. Scrub Typhus

The previous considerations may be applied to the prophylaxis of any of the variants of scrub typhus. As a result of war, the United States Army developed a series of repellents and mite poisons which have been mentioned previously. Also, ''666'' promises to be a splendid residual eradicator against mites.

E. ''Q'' Fever and Trench Fever

The prophylaxis of ''Q'' fever by means of vaccination and sero-vaccination in those exposed has been tried in Australia. It is reasonable to assume that the extermination of the vector ticks and of the reservoirs by means of residual-acting insecticides and of poisons such as ''1080'' will be tried in the future. As regards trench fever, under epidemic conditions, the same delousing methods used in typhus should be applied.

References

Afanassiewa, A., and Tretjak, K.: 1933. Ueber Flektyphusvirusträger, Zentralbl. f. Bakt. (Abt. 1) 130: 123-128.

Agress, C. M., and Evans, E. R.: 1946. Clinical Survey of Eighty-Six Cases of Scru Typhus, Bull. U. S. Army M. Dept. 5: 163-169.

Ahlm, C. E., and Lipshutz, J.: 1944. Tsutsugamushi Fever in the Southwest Paci Theater, J. A. M. A. 124: 1095-1100.

Alexander, R. A., and Mason, J. H.: 1939. Studies of the Rickettsias of the Typhus-Rocky-Mountain-Spotted-Fever Group in South Africa. II. Morphology and Cultivation, Onderstepoort J. Vet. Sc. Animal Ind. **13**: 25-39.

Allen, A. C., and Spitz, S.: 1945. A Comparative Study of the Pathology of Scrub Typhus (Tsutsugamushi Disease) and Other Rickettsial Diseases, Am. J. Path. **21**: 603-681.

Alwens, W.: 1943. Clinical Aspect of Typhus Fever, Bull. War Med. **4**: 36-37.

Amaral, A., do, and Monteiro, J. L.: 1931. Histoire naturelle et classification des rickettsioses. Position systématique du ''typhus exanthematique de São Paulo,'' Rev. Sud-Am. de Med. et de Chir. **4**: 781-817.

American Association for the Advancement of Science: 1948. Rickettsial Diseases of Man (A Symposium), Dec. 26-28, 1946, Washington, D. C.

Anderson, J. F., and Goldberger, J.: 1912. Collected Studies on Typhus, Hyg. Lab. Bull., No. 86, Washington, D. C.

Anderson, W. L., and Wing, W. M.: 1945. Tsutsugamushi Disease (Scrub Typhus). A Clinical Study of Forty-Nine Cases, War Med. **8**: 163.

Andrew, R.: 1945. A Note on the Incubation Period of Scrub Typhus and Its Correlation With Clinical Severity, M. J. Australia **2**: 335.

Andrewes, C. H., King, H., van den Ende, M., and Walker, J.: 1944. Substances Chemotherapeutically Active Against Typhus Rickettsiae, Lancet **1**: 777-781.

Anigstein, L., and Bader, M. N.: 1945. Para-Amino-Benzoic Acid. Its Effectiveness in Spotted Fever in Guinea Pigs, Science **101**: 591-592.

Anigstein, L., and Bader, M. N.: 1946. Antirickettsial Activity of Para-Amino-Benzoic Acid (PABA). Effect of PABA on Experimental Spotted Fever, Texas Rep. Biol. & Med. **4**: 260-278.

Armstrong, C.: 1922. Typhus Fever on the San Juan Indian Reservation, 1920 and 1921, Pub. Health Rep. **37**: 685.

Armstrong, Ch., and Topping, N. H.: 1944. Prophylaxis of Spotted Fever, J. A. M. A. **125**: 930.

Aschner, M., and Kligler, I. J.: 1936. Behaviour of Louse-Borne (Epidemic) and Flea-Borne (Murine) Strains of Typhus Rickettsiae in Tissue Culture, Brit. J. Exper. Path. **17**: 173-178.

Aschoff, L.: 1915. Ueber Anatomische Befunde bei Fleckfieber, Med. Klin. **9**(29): 798.

Badger, L. F.: 1933. Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever and Boutonneuse Fever. A Study of Their Immunological Relationship, Pub. Health Rep. **48**: 507-511.

Badger, L. F., Dyer, R. E., and Rumreich, A.: 1931. An Infection of the Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever Type. Identification in the Eastern Part of the United States, Pub. Health Rep. **46**: 463-470.

Baelz, E., and Kawakami: 1879. Das japanische Fluss-, oder Ueberschwemmungsfieber, eine acute Infektionskrankheit, Virchows Arch. f. path. Anat. **78**: 373.

Barykin, W., Minervine, S., and Kompaneez, A.: 1930. Le typhus exanthematique inapparent et son importance epidemiologique, Arch. Inst. Pasteur de Tunis **19**: 422-432.

Bauer, E.: 1930. Zur Anatomie und Histologie des Flecktyphus, München. med. Wchnschr. **63**(15): 541.

Begg, A. M., Fulton, F., and van den Ende, M.: 1944. Inclusion Bodies in Association With Typhus Rickettsiae, J. Path. & Bact. **56**: 109-113.

Bell, E. J., Bennet, B. L., and Whitman, L.: 1946. Antigenic Differences Between Strains of Scrub Typhus as Demonstrated by Cross-Neutralization Tests, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **62**: 134-137.

Benda, C.: 1915. Mikroskipische pathologische Defunde im Gehirn eines Fleckfieberfalles, Ztschr. f. ärztl. Fortbild. **(15)**: 464.

Bengtson, I. A.: 1937. Cultivation of the Rickettsiae of Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever in Vitro, Pub. Health Rep. **52**: 1329-1335.

Bengtson, I. A.: 1937. Cultivation of Rickettsia of Endemic (Murine) and Epidemic (European) Typhus Fever in Vitro, Pub. Health Rep. **52**: 1336-1340.

Bengtson, I. A.: 1941. Immunological Relationships Between the Rickettsiae of Australian and American ''Q'' Fever, Pub. Health Rep. **56**: 272-281.

Bengtson, I. A.: 1941. Complement Fixation in Endemic Typhus, Pub. Health Rep. **56**: 649-653.

Bengtson, I. A.: 1943. Studies on Active and Passive Immunity in Q Fever Infected and Immunized Guinea Pigs, Pub. Health Reports **56**: 327-345.

Bengtson, I. A.: 1944. Complement Fixation in the Rickettsial Diseases—Technique of the Test, Pub. Health Rep. **59**: 402-405.

Bengtson, I. A.: 1945. Apparent Serological Heterogeneity Among Strains of Tsutsugamushi Disease (Scrub Typhus), Pub. Health Rep. **60**: 1483-1488.

Bengtson, I. A., Topping, N. H., and Henderson, R. G.: 1945. Epidemic Typhus: De onstration of a Substance Lethal for Mice in the Yolk Sac of Eggs Infect With Rickettsia Prowazeki, Nat. Inst. of Health Bull. **183**: 25-29.

Benhamou, E.: 1938. Les Rickettsioses, Encyclopedie Med.-Chir., Maladies Infectieus 2: fasc. 8102-B: 1-11.

Benhamou, E.: 1935. Le Typhus exanthematique, Encyclopedie Med.-Chir., Maladies fectieuses, 2: fasc. 8103: 1-12.

Bennet, B. L., Smadel, J. E., and Gauld, R. L.: 1947. Differences in Strains of Ricketts orientalis as Demonstrated by Cross-Neutralization Tests (abstract), J. Bact. 5 93.

Berry, M. G., Johnson, A. S., and Warshauer, S. E.: 1945. Tsutsugamushi Fever: Cli ical Observations in 195 Cases, War Med. **7**: 71.

Biraud, Y.: 1937. La prophylaxie du typhus exanthematique et la vaccination con cette maladie, Bull. Org. Hyg. S. de N. **6**: 216-235.

Biraud, Y.: Etat actuel de la vaccination contre le typhus exanthematique a poux, D S. de N., C.H. 1444; Geneve 18-XI-1939.

Biraud, Y.: 1943. The Present Menace of Typhus Fever in Europe and the Means Combating It, Bull. Health Organ. League of Nations **10**: 1-64.

Biraud, Y., and Deutschman, S.: 1936. Typhus et autres affections exanthematiques rickettsias. Répartition geographique et epidemiologique, Rapport Epid. S. de **15**: 1-16, 99-160.

Blaizot, J.: 1935. La vaccination contre le typhus exanthematique. Exposé de la métho par virus vivant bilié, Tesis, Imprim. de Montligeon, La Chapelle.

Blake, F. G., Maxcy, K. F., Sadusk, J. F., Kohls, G. M., and Bell, E. J.: 1945. Studi on Tsutsugamushi Disease (Scrub Typhus, Mite-Borne Typhus) in New Guin and Adjacent Islands: Epidemiology, Clinical Observations, and Etiology in t Dobadura Area, Am. J. Hyg. **41**: 243-373.

Blanc, G.: 1936. Histoire et enseignements d'une vaccination contre le typhus e anthematique faite a Petitjean (Maroc), Rev. d'Hyg. **58**: 252-272.

Blanc, G.: 1937. La vaccination contre le typhus exanthematique, Maroc Méd. **17**: 20 213.

Blanc, G.: 1938. Vaccination contre le typhus et autres fievres exanthematiques p virus vivant, Acta conventus tertii de morbis tropicis (Amsterdam) **1**: 509.

Blanc, G., and Baltazard, M.: 1937. Longue conservation à sec du virus de typhus muri dans les déjections de puces infectées, Compt. rend Soc. de Biol. **204**: 1046-104

Blanc, G., and Baltazard, M.: 1938. La contamination par voie muqueuse, mécanism habituel de transmission du typhus murin dans la nature. Rôle du virus sec d déjections d'ectoparasites dans l'épidemiologie des typhus, Bull. Acad. de me Paris **120**: 109-114.

Blanc, G., Bruneau, J., Martin, L. A., and Maurice, A.: 1948. Quelques donnée nouvell sur le virus de la ''Q'' fever marocaine, Compt. rend. Acad. d. sc. **226**: 607-60

Blanc, G., Noury, M., and Baltazard, M.: 1935. Préséance et prémunition au cours d typhus exanthématique et au cours de l'infection inapparente par virus bili Compt. rend. Acad. d. sc. **201**: 1226-1227.

Boshell-Manrique, J., and Montoya, J. A.: 1942. Un nuevo foco de Fiebre Petequial d tipo de las Montañas Rocallosas en Colombia, Bol. Inst. Nac. Hig. Samp Martinez (Colombia) **5**: 21.

Boyd, M. F.: 1917. Recent Appearance of Typhus Fever in Iowa; a Report, J. Io M. Soc. **7**: 45.

Breinl, F.: 1933. Versuche zur Züchtung des Felsenfiebervirus in vitro, Zentralbl. Bakt. (Abt. 1) **130**: 316-319.

Breinl, A., Priestly, H., and Fielding, J. W.: 1914. On the Occurrence and Patholog of Endemic Glandular Fever, a Specific Fever Occurring in the Mossman Distri of North Queensland, M. J. Australia **1**: 391.

Brigham, G. D.: 1937. Susceptibility of Animals to Endemic Typhus Fever, Pub. Healt Rep. **52**: 660-662.

Brigham, G. D.: 1938. Susceptibility of Animals to Endemic Typhus Virus. Secon Report, Pub. Health Rep. **53**: 2078-2079.

Brigham, G. D.: 1941. Two Strains of Endemic Typhus Fever Virus Isolated Fro Naturally Infected Chicken Fleas (Echidnophaga gallinacea), Pub. Health Re **56**: 1803.

Brigham, G. D., and Dyer, R. E.: 1938. Endemic Typhus Fever in Native Rodents, J. M. A. **110**: 180-183.

Brill, N. E.: 1898. A Study of Seventeen Cases of a Disease Clinically Resembling Typhoid Fever, but Without the Widal Reaction; Together With a Short Rev of the Present Status of the Sero-Diagnosis of Typhoid Fever, New York M. **67**: 54-82.

Brill, N. E.: 1910. An Acute Infectious Disease of Unknown Origin. A Clinical St Based on 221 Cases, Am. J. M. Sc. **139**: 502.

Browning, J. S., Raphael, M., Klein, E. F., and Coblenz, A.: 1945. Scrub-Typhus, Am. J. Trop. Med. **25**: 481-492.

Brumpt, E.: 1936. Le virus de la fievre pourprée des Montagnes Rocheuses peut se conserver plus de 600 jours dans le corps de l'*Ornithodorus turicata,* mais n'est pas transmis par la piqure de cet acarien, Ann. de parasitol. **14**: 629-631.

Burnet, E.: 1937. Les rickettsioses humaines, Arch. Inst. Pasteur de Tunis **26**: 391.

Burnet, F. M.: 1938. Tissue Culture of the Rickettsia of Q Fever, Australian J. Exper. Biol. & M. Sc. **16**: 219-224.

Burnet, F. M.: 1942. The Rickettsial Diseases in Australia, M. J. Australia **2**: 129-134.

Burnet, F. M., and Freeman, M.: 1937. Experimental Studies on the Virus of "Q" Fever, M. J. Australia **2**: 299-305.

Bustamante, M. E., and Varela, G.: 1946. III. Estudios de Fiebre Manchada en Méjico. Hallazgo del Amblyomma cajennense naturalmente infectado en Veracruz, Rev. d. Inst. salub. y enferm. trop. **7**: 75-78.

Byam, W.: 1919. Trench Fever, London, Oxford University Press.

Cabasso, V.: 1947. Mass Infection of Body Lice With Rickettsia Prowazeki, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **64**: 439.

Cafarena, M.: 1936. Participación anatomopatológica de los riñones en el tifus exantemático, Bol. Soc. Biol. (Concepción, Chile), **10**: 23-34.

Caminopetros, J.: 1948. Q Fever, a Respiratory Human Epidemic Disease in the Mediterranean Area, Determined Milk-Borne Infection From Goats and Sheep, 4th Cong. Trop. Med. & Malaria, Washington, D. C.

Caminopetros, J., and Contos, B.: 1933. Intradermoreaction á la fievre boutonneuse, Compt. rend. Acad. de sc. **196**: 967-969.

Canesa, E.: 1935. Un método rápido de agglutinación para el diagnóstico serológico del tifo exantemático, Rev. d. Inst. bact. de Chile **5**: 47-51.

Castañeda, M. R.: 1930. New Stain for Rickettsia Bodies, J. Infect. Dis. **47**: 416-417.

Castañeda, M. R.: 1934. The Antigenic Relationship Between Proteus X-19, and Typhus Rickettsia. II. A Study of the Common Antigenic Factor, J. Exper. Med. **60**: 119-125.

Castañeda, M. R.: 1935. The Antigenic Relationship Between Bacillus Proteus X-19 and Rickettsiae. III. A Study of the Antigenic Composition of the Extracts of Bacillus Proteus X-19, J. Exper. Med. **62**: 289-296.

Castañeda, M. R.: 1936. Studies on the Mechanism of Immunity in Typhus Fever. III. Demonstration of Opsonins for Rickettsia Prowazeki in Typhus-Immune Serum, J. Immunol. **31**: 227-236.

Castañeda, M. R.: 1936. Studies on the Mechanism of Immunity in Typhus Fever. Complement-Fixation in Typhus Fever, J. Immunol. **31**: 285-291.

Castañeda, M. R.: 1939. Experimental Pneumonia Produced by Typhus Rickettsiae, Am. J. Path. **15**: 467-475.

Castañeda, M. R.: 1940. Profilaxis específica del tifus exantemático, Mejico.

Castañeda, M. R.: 1945. Differentiation of Typhus Strains by Slide-Agglutinative Tests, J. Immunol. **50**: 179-183.

Castañeda, M. R., and Zia, S.: 1933. The Antigenic Relationship Between Proteus X-19 and Typhus Rickettsiae. A Study of the Weil-Felix Reaction, J. Exper. Med. **58**: 55.

Ceder, E. T., Dyer, R. E., Runreich, A., and Badger, L. F.: 1931. Typhus Fever in Feces of Infected Fleas (*Xenopsylla cheopis*) and Duration of Infectivity of Fleas, Pub. Health Rep. **46**: 3103-3106.

Ceelen, W.: 1916. Histologische Befunde bei Fleckfieber, Klin. Wchnschr. **53**: 530.

Ceelen, W.: 1919. Die pathologische Anatomie des Fleckfiebers, Ergebn. d. allg. Path. u. path. Anat. **19**: 307-350.

Chambers, L. A.: 1946. Products of Sonic Disruption of Rickettsiae and of Certain Bacterial Pathogens, J. Bact. **51**: 642.

Cheney, G., and Geib, W. A.: 1946. The Identification of Q Fever in Panama, Am. J. Hyg. **44**: 158-172.

Chodzko, W.: 1935. Une nouvelle infection a rickettsia, Rickettsiaemia weigli, Bull. office internat. d'Hyg. pub. **27**: 1-4.

Chrzanowski, B., and Mosing, H.: 1933. Sur l'emploi des rickettsia des crottes de poux pour la vaccination contre le typhus exanthématique, Arch. Inst. Pasteur de Tunis **22**: 346-349.

Ciuca, M., Balteanu, J., and Constantinesco, N.: 1934. Controle expérimental de la forme inapparente du typhus exanthématique chez l'homme, Compt. rend. Soc. de biol. **117**: 514-516.

Ciuca, M., Balteanu, J., and Constantinesco, N.: 1935. La maladie inapparente comme réservoir humaine de typhus exanthématique. Son importance épidemiologique, Bull. Office internat. d'hyg. Pub. **27**: 1554.

Ciuca, M., and Ionescu-Mihaesti, C.: 1941. Contributions à l'étude de la virulence des Rickettsia prowazeki (a l'occasion d'une epidemie de laboratoire), Bull. Sect. Sc. Acad. Roumaine **24**: 183-200.

Clancy, C. F., and Cox, H. R.: 1946. The Cultivation of Rickettsia Orientalis in Fer Hen's Eggs, J. Bact. 51: 629.

Clavero del Campo, G., and Perez Gallardo, F.: 1941. Tifus Exantemático, Madrid, G A. Aguado.

Clavero del Campo, G., and Perez Gallardo, F.: 1943. Técnicas de laboratorio en el ti exantemático, Madrid, Imp. de Prens. Exp.

Cohen, S. S., and Chargaff, E.: 1944. Studies on the Composition of Rickettsia Prowaz J. Biol. Chem. 154: 691-704.

Combiesco, D., Zotta, G., Manciulesco, E., Pop, A., and Tascau, J.: 1941. Vaccinati du cobaye contre le typhus exanthématique historique avec des rickettsies cu vées in vivo dans le poumon de souris et de chien et tuées par le formol, B Acad. de méd. Roumanie 11: 310.

Commission on Acute Respiratory Diseases: 1946. Epidemics of Q Fever Among Tro Returning From Italy in the Spring of 1945. II. Epidemiological Studies, A J. Hyg. 44: 88-102.

Commission on Acute Respiratory Diseases: 1946. Identification and Characteristics the Balkan Grippe Strain of Rickettsia Burneti, Am. J. Hyg. 44: 110-122.

Commission on Acute Respiratory Diseases: 1946. A Laboratory Outbreak of Q Fe Caused by the Balkan Grippe Strain of Rickettsia Burneti, Am. J. Hyg. 44: 1 157.

Communicable Diseases Center—Typhus Control Branch, Engineering Division, U.S.P.H. 1947. Evaluation Data for Murine Typhus Fever Control Activities, 1946, lanta, Ga.

Conor, A., and Bruch, A.: 1910. Une fiévre éruptive observée en Tunisie, Bull. Soc. pa exot. 3: 492-496.

Consultation of Experts on the Prevention of Typhus and Vaccination Against That D ease: 1937. Bull. Health Organ., League of Nations D6: 213-222.

Contreras, M., and Macchiavello, A.: 1932. Clinica y epidemiología del tifo endémi benigno observado en Antofagasta en 1931-1932, Antofagasta, Imp. Drogett.

Cowdry, E. V.: 1926. Rickettsiae and Disease, Arch. Path. & Lab. Med. 2: 59-90.

Cox, H. R.: 1938. A Filter-Passing Infectious Agent Isolated From Tick. III. Descri tion of Organism and Cultivation Experiments, Pub. Health Rep. 53: 2270-227

Cox, H. R.: 1938. Use of Yolk Sac of Developing Chick Embryo as Medium for Growi Rickettsia of Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever and Typhus Groups, Pub. Heal Rep. 53: 2241-2247.

Cox, H. R.: 1939. Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever. Protective Value for Guinea Pig Vaccine Prepared From Rickettsiae Cultivated in Embryonic Chick Tissue Pub. Health Rep. 54: 1070.

Cox, H. R.: 1939. Studies of a Filter-Passing Infectious Agent Isolated From Tick V. Further Attempts to Cultivate in Cell-Free Media. Suggested Classificatio Pub. Health Rep. 54: 1822-1827.

Cox, H. R.: 1939. The Cultivation of Rickettsia diaporica in Tissue Culture and in th Tissues of Developing Chick Embryos, Pub. Health Rep. 54: 2171.

Cox, H. R.: 1940. Rickettsia diaporica and American Q Fever, Am. J. Trop. Med. 20 463-469.

Cox, H. R.: 1941. Cultivation of Rickettsiae of the Rocky Mountain Spotted Feve Typhus Q Fever Groups in the Embryonic Tissues of Developing Chicks, Scienc 94: 399-403.

Cox, H. R.: 1948. Method for the Preparation and Standardization of Rickettsial Va cines. Symposium on Rickettsial Diseases, December, 1946, Boston, American A sociation for the Advancement of Science.

Cox, H. R., and Bell, E. J.: 1939. The Cultivation of Rickettsia diaporica in Tissue Cu ture and in the Tissues of Developing Chick Embryos, Pub. Health Rep. 54: 217 2178.

Cox, H. R., Tesar, W. C., and Irons, J. V.: 1947. Q Fever in the United States. Isolatio and Identification of Rickettsias in an Outbreak Among Stock-Handlers an Slaughterhouse Workers, J. A. M. A. 133: 820.

Craigie, J.: 1944. An Alkaline Thionin Method of Staining Rickettsia, Canad. J. Researc 22: 89-91.

Craigie, J.: 1945. Application and Control of Ethyl-Ether-Water Interface Effects to th Separation of Rickettsiae From Yolk Sac Suspensions, Canad. J. Research 2 104-114.

Craigie, J., Watson, D. W., Clark, E. M., and Malcomson, M. E.: 1946. The Serologic Relationships of the Rickettsiae of Epidemic and Murine Typhus, Canad. J. search 24: 84-103.

Crichton, W. H.: 1946. Naples Typhus Epidemic, Brit. M. J. 1: 996.

Cumming, J. G., and Senftner, H. F.: 1917. The Prevention of Endemic Typhus in C ifornia, J. A. M. A. 69: 98.

Dame, L. R.: 1945. Eye and Ear Sequelae of Scrub Typhus Fever, Bull. U. S. Army M. Dept. **4**: 554-557.

Davis, D. E.: 1947. The Use of DDT to Control Murine Typhus Fever in San Antonio. Texas, Pub. Health Rep. **62**: 449-463.

Davis, G. E.: 1939. The Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever Rickettsia in the Tick Genus Ornithodoros. 6th Pacific Sc. Cong. **5**: 577-579.

Davis, G. E., and Cox, H. R.: 1938. A Filter-Passing Infectious Agent Isolated From Ticks: I. Isolation From Dermacentor Andersoni, Reactions in Animals, and Filtration Experiments, Pub. Health Rep. **532**: 2259.

Davis, G. E., and Parker, R. R.: 1933. Additional Studies on the Relationship of the Viruses of Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever and São Paulo Exanthematic Typhus. Pub. Health Rep. **48**: 1006-1011.

Davis, G. E., and Parker, R. R.: 1934. Comparative Experiments on Spotted Fever and Boutonneuse Fever (I), Pub. Health Rep. **49**: 423-428.

Dawidowsky, J. E.: 1924. Die Path. Anat. u. Pathol. des Fleckfiebers, Ergebn. d. allg. Path. u. path. Anat. **20**: 2, II.

Derrick, E. H.: 1937. Q Fever, a New Fever Entity: Clinical Features, Diagnosis and Laboratory Investigation, M. J. Australia **2**: 281-299.

Derrick, E. H.: 1939. Rickettsia Burneti: the Cause of Q Fever, M. J. Australia **1**: 14.

Derrick, E. H.: 1944. The Epidemiology of Q Fever, J. Hyg. **43**: 357-361.

Dias, E., and Martins, A. V.: 1937. Aspectos do typho exanthematico em Minas Geraes, Brasil-med. **51**: 431-441.

Dias, E., and Martins, A. V.: 1939. Spotted Fever in Brazil. A Summary, Am. J. Trop. Med. **19**: 103-107.

Diercks, F. H., and Tibbs, R. O.: 1947. A Rapid Method for the Staining of Rickettsia Orientalis, J. Bact. **53**: 479.

Doerr, R., and Pick, R.: 1918. Wien. klin. Wchnschr. **31**: 829.

Doerr, R., and Schnabel, A.: 1919. Wien. klin. Wchnschr. **32**: 523.

Dolgopol, V. B.: 1948. Histologic Changes in Rickettsialpox, Am. J. Path. **24**: 119-133.

Donovick, R., and Wyckoff, R. W. G.: 1945. Tests of Epidemic Typhus Vaccines, Pub. Health Rep. **60**: 560-563.

Dove, W. E., and Shelmire, B.: 1931. Tropical Rat Mites, Liponyssus Bacoti Hirst, Vectors of Endemic Typhus, J. A. M. A. **97**: 1506-1510.

Durand, P.: 1932. Le chien réservoir de virus de la fievre boutonneuse, Compt. rend. Acad. d. Sc. **194**: 981-989.

Durand, P., and Balozet, L.: 1941. Sérothérapie anti-typhique. 120 cas des typhus traités par le sérum obtenu par inoculations de rickettsias de poumon de souris, Arch. Inst. Pasteur de Tunis **30**: 1-22.

Durand, P., and Sparrow, H.: 1940. Dévelopment dans le poumon des virus typhiques et boutonneux instillés par voie respiratoire, Compt. rend. Acad. d. sc. **210**: 420. Arch. Inst. Pasteur de Tunis **29**: 1-24.

Durand, P., and Sparrow, H.: 1940. Inoculation pulmonaire des virus typhiques et boutonneux, Compt. rend. Acad. d. sc. **210**: 420-422.

Dyer, R. E.: 1933. Relationship Between Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever and ''Exanthematique Typhus of São Paulo, Pub. Health Rep. **48**: 521-522.

Dyer, R. E.: 1934. Endemic Typhus Fever: Susceptibility of Woodchucks, House Mice, Meadow Mice, and White Footed Mice, Pub. Health Rep. **49**: 723-724.

Dyer, R. E.: 1934. Effect of Flea Passage on Epidemic Typhus Virus, Pub. Health Rep. **49**: 224-225.

Dyer, R. E.: 1938. A Filter-Passing Infectious Agent Isolated From Ticks. IV. Human Infection, Pub. Health Rep. **532**: 2277-2282.

Dyer, R. E.: 1939. Similarity of Australian ''Q'' Fever and a Disease Caused by an Infectious Agent Isolated From Ticks in Montana, Pub. Health Rep. **54**: 1229-1237.

Dyer, R. E., Badger, L. F., and Rumreich, A.: 1932. Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever (Eastern Type). Transmission by the American Dog Tick (Dermacentor variabilis), Pub. Health Rep. **46**: 1403.

Dyer, R. E., Ceder, E. T., Lillie, R. D., Rumreich, A., and Badger, L. F.: 1931. Typhus Fever. The Experimental Transmission of Endemic Typhus Fever of the United States by the Rat Flea, Xenopsylla cheopis, Pub. Health Rep. **46**: 2481-2499.

Dyer, R. E., Rumreich, A., and Badger, L. F.: 1931. Typhus Fever. A Virus of the Typhus Type Derived From Fleas Collected From Wild Rats, Pub. Health Rep. **461**: 334-338.

Dyer, R. E., Topping, N. H., and Bengtson, I. A.: 1940. An Institutional Outbreak of Pneumonitis. II. Isolation and Identification of Causative Agent, Pub. Health Rep. **55**: 1945-1954.

Dyer, R. E., Workman, W. G., Badger, L. F., and Rumreich, A.: 1932. The Experime Transmission of Endemic Typhus Fever of the United States by the Rat Ceratophyllus fasciatus, Pub. Health Rep. **47**: 931-932.

Dyer, R. E., Workman, W. G., and Rumreich, A.: 1932. Endemic Typhus Fever Recovered From Wild Rat Trapped at Typhus Focus in the United States, Health Rep. **47**: 2370-2372.

Ehrlich, J., Bartz, Q. R., Smith, R. M., Joslyn, D. A., and Burkholder, P. R.: 1947. Chl mycetin, a New Antibotic From a Soil Actinomycete, Science **106**: 417.

Ende, M. van den, Stuart-Harris, C. H., Fulton, F., Niven, J., Andrewes, C. H., Begg, A. Elford, W. J., White, M. H. G., Hawley, W. L., Mills, K. C., Hamilton, F., Thomas, C. C.: 1946. Chemotherapeutic and Other Studies on Typhus, Se Medical Research Council Special Report No. 255, London.

Eskey, C. R.: 1943. Murine Typhus Fever Control, Pub. Health Rep. **58**: 631-639.

Eyer, H.: 1941. Das Problem der Fleckfieberschutzimpfung und ihre Bedeutung für Prazis, Der oeffentl. Gesundheitsdienst **7**: 97-106.

Eyer, H., Przybzylkiewicz, Z., and Dillenberg, H.: 1940. Das Fleckfieber bei Sch geimpften, Ztschr. f. Hyg. u. Infektionskr. **122**: 702-719.

Feinstein, M., Yesner, R., and Marks, J. L.: 1946. Epidemics of Q Fever Among Tro Returning From Italy in the Spring of 1945. I. Clinical Aspects of the Epide at Camp Patrick Henry, Virginia, Am. J. Hyg. **44**: 72-87.

Felix, A.: 1916. Die Serodiagnostik des Fleckfiebers, Wien. klin. Wchnschr. **29**: 873-

Felix, A.: 1930. Typhus Fever. A System of Bacteriology, London, His Majest Stationery Office **7**: 412-432.

Felix, A.: 1933. Serological Types of Typhus Virus and Corresponding Types of Prot Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **27**: 147-172.

Felix, A.: 1944. Technique and Interpretation of the Weil-Felix Test in Typhus Fe Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **37**: 321-341.

Felix, A., and Rhodes, M.: 1931. Serological Varieties of Typhus Fevers, J. Hyg. 225-246.

Fernandez, V. M.: 1935. Investigaciones anatómicas sobre la Miocarditis Exantemátic la participación del sistema específico del corazón en el Tifus exantematico, Te Santiago.

Ferro-Luzzi, G., and Ferro-Luzzi, S.: 1947. Therapeutic Study on Louse Borne Typh Boll. Soc. ital. di med. e ig. trop. (Eritrea) **7**: 5-23.

Fielding, J. W.: 1933. Typhus: Modified Breinl Method for Staining Rickettsiae Other Inclusions, M. J. Australia, May 15, 435-436.

Findlay, G. M.: 1941. Laboratory Investigations on Typhus, Proc. Roy. Soc. Med. 157-160.

Findlay, G. M.: 1941. Relationship of Exanthematic and Endemic Typhus, Lancet 659-660.

Findlay, G. M.: 1941. Typhus Immunisation, Lancet **1**: 671.

Finlayson, M. H., and Grobler, J. M.: 1940. A Study of South African Epidemic Typ Strains and the Protection Afforded by the Zinsser-Castañeda Vaccine Agai Infection With These Strains, South African M. J. **14**: 129-134.

Finlayson, M. H., and Grobler, J. M.: 1941. Vaccination Against Epidemic Typhus South Africa, South African M. J. **15**: 125-127.

Fitzpatrick, F. K.: 1945. Penicillin in Experimental Spotted Fever, Science **102**: 96-9

Fletcher, W.: 1930. Typhus-Like Fevers of Unknown Aetiology, With Special Refere to the Malay States, Proc. Roy. Soc. Med. **23**: 1021-1027.

Fletcher, W., and Lesslar, J. E.: 1925. Tropical Typhus in the Federated Malay Stat Bull. Inst. Med. Res. (Fed. Malay States), No. 2.

Fletcher, W., Lesslar, J. E., and Lewthwaite, R.: 1928 and 1929. The Aetiology of Tsutsugamushi Disease and Tropical Typhus in the Federated Malay States. Preliminary Note, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **22**: 161-174; and **23**: 57-

Fonseca, F., and Wohlwill, F. (Con col. de Pinto, M. R.): 1944. Tifus exantemáti Barcelona and Buenos Aires, Salvat Editores.

Fox, J. P., and Peterson, O. L.: 1948. The Antirickettsial Effect of Thionine Dyes. On the Mode of Action of the Thionine Dyes in Combating Experimental Inf tions of Mice With Rickettsia Orientalis and Rickettsia Mooseri, J. Immunol. 299-321.

Fraenkel, E.: 1914. Ueber Fleckfieber u. Rosecla, München. med. Wchnschr. **61**: 57.

Fraenkel, E.: 1915. Zur Fleckfieberdiagnose, München. med. Wchnschr. **62**: 805.

Fraenkel, E.: 1917. Ueber Fleckfieberroseola, München. med. Wchnschr. **64**: 1289.

Fulks, R. B.: 1947. Rickettsialpox, a Newly Recognized Disease, Bull. Dept. Health **19**: 732-734.

Fulton, F., and Begg, A. M.: 1946. Chemotherapeutic and Other Studies of Typhus. V. The Antigenic Structure of Typhus Rickettsiae. Series Medical Research Council Special Report No. 255, London.

Fulton, F., and Joyner, L.: 1945. Cultivation of Rickettsia Tsutsugamushi in Lungs of Rodents: Preparation of a Scrub-Typhus Vaccine, Lancet **2:** 729-733.

Garreton Silva, A., Hervé, L., and Del Solar, A.: 1935. Des altérations de l'electrocardiogramme au cours du typhus exanthématique, Arch. d. mal. du coeur **28:** 5.

Gaud, M.: 1933. Sur de nouveaux cas de fiévre boutonneuse au Maroc, Bull. Inst. Hyg. (Maroc) **3:** 42-50.

Gaud, M.: 1935. Sur la vaccination humaine contre le typhus par la méthode de G. Blanc, Bull. Office internat. d'hyg. pub. **27:** 474-480.

Gaud, M., and Bonjean, M.: 1938. L'epidemie de typhus d'octobre 1937 à Septembre 1938, Bull. Inst. Hyg. (Maroc) **6:** 65.

Gaud, M., and Vaissiere, R.: 1932. La fiévre boutonneuse ou exanthématique au Maroc, Bull. Inst. Hyg. (Maroc) **5:** 23.

Gear, J.: 1938. South African Typhus, South African J. M. Sc. **3:** 134-160.

Gear, J., and Douthwaite, M.: 1938. The Dog Tick Haemaphysalis leachi as a Vector of Tick Typhus, South African M. J. **12:** 53-55.

Gildemeister, A.: 1941. Fleckfieberbekampfung, Deutsche med. Wchnschr. **46:** 1278.

Gildemeister, A., and Haagen, E.: 1940. Fleckfieberstudien. I. Mitteilung: Nachweis eines Toxins in Rickettsien-Eikulturen (Rickettsiae Mooseri), Deutsche med. Wchnschr. **66:** 878-880.

Gildemeister, A., and Haagen, E.: 1942. Fleckfieberstudien. II. Mitt. Ueber die Züchtung der Rickettsia Mooseri und der Rickettsia Prowazeki im Dottersack des Hühnereies und uber die Herstellung von Kulturimpstoffen, Zentralbl. f. Bakt. (Abt. 1) **148:** 257-264.

Giroud, P.: 1938. La sensibilité cutanée locale vis-a-vis d'un virus typhique murin est inversement proportionnelle a la receptivité generale de l'organisme, Compt. rend. Soc. de biol. **128:** 590-591.

Giroud, J.: 1938. Les anticorps des infections exanthématiques. Le test de seroprotection cutanée locale, Bull. Soc. path. exot. **31:** 245-256.

Giroud, P., and Pantheir, R.: 1941. Il est possible d'adapter directement au poumon de souris un virus de typhus historique isolé et conservé sur cobaye, Compt. rend. Acad. d. sc. **212:** 61.

Giroud, P., and Panthier, R.: 1942. Adaptation directe au poumon de souris d'une souche de typhus historique isolée et conservée sur cobaye. Comportement des rickettsies au cours de cette experimentation, Ann. Inst. Pasteur **68:** 137-153.

Glaser, R. W.: 1930. The Intracellular "Symbionts" and the "Rickettsiae," Arch. Path. **9:** 79-96, 557-576.

Golden, A.: 1945. Morbid Anatomy of Typhus as Seen in Recent Guatemalan Epidemic: Observation on Disease, Arch. Path. **39:** 226-231.

Gomes, L. S.: 1932. Presence de rickettsias dans l'endothelium et dans les parois des vaisseaux testiculo-scrotaux de cobayes infectés experimentalement du typhus exanthématique de São Paulo, Compt. rend. Soc. de biol. **110:** 134-136.

Goodman, C.: 1935. A Skin Test to Suggest the Diagnosis of Recovered Typhus and Thromboangiitis, Bull. New York Acad. Med. **11:** 403-412.

Gordon, J. E.: 1940. Clinical Features of Rickettsial Diseases in Virus and Rickettsial Diseases; a Symposium, pp. 828-871.

Gottfried, S. P.: 1945. A Preliminary Study of Blood Chemistry in Scrub Typhus, Am. J. Clin. Path. **15:** 71-76.

Greenberg, M., and Pellitteri, O.: 1947. Rickettsialpox. Bull. New York Acad. Med. **23:** 338-351.

Greenberg, M., Pellitteri, O., and Jellison, W. L.: 1947. Rickettsialpox—A Newly Recognized Disease. III. Epidemiology, Am. J. Pub. Health **37:** 860-868.

Greenberg, M., Pellitteri, O. J., Klein, I. F., and Huebner, R. J.: 1947. Rickettsialpox—A Newly Recognized Rickettsial Disease. Clinical Observations, J. A. M. A. **133:** 901-906.

Grzywo-Dabrowski, W.: 1918. Untersuchungen uber die pathologische Anatomie des Fleckfiebers, Virchows Arch. **225:** 299.

Gunther, C. E. M.: 1935. Endemic Typhus in New Guinea, M. J. Australia **1:** 813-814.

Hamilton, H. L., Plotz, H., and Smadel, J. E.: 1945. Effect of the Para Aminobenzoic Acid on the Growth of the Typhus Rickettsiae in the Yolk Sac. of the Infected Chick Embryo, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **58:** 255-262.

Hamilton, H. L.: 1945. Effect of Para-Aminobenzoic Acid on Growth of Rickettsiae and Elementary Bodies, With Observations on Mode of Action, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **59:** 220-226.

Hamilton, H. L.: 1945. Specificity of the Toxic Factors Associated With the Epidemic and the Murine Strains of Typhus Rickettsiae, Am. J. Trop. Med. **25:** 391-395.

Hampton, S. F.: 1947. Anaphylactic Shock in Egg-Sensitive Individuals Following Vaccination With Typhus Vaccine; a Study of the Antigenic Relationship of Egg and Chicken Meat Antigens and Typhus Vaccine, J. Lab. & Clin. Med. **32:** 109-117.

Hamre, D. M., Rake, G., McKee, C. M., and MacPhillamy, H. B.: 1943. Toxicity of Penicillin as Prepared for Clinical Use, Am. J. M. Sc. **206:** 642-652.

Harmsen and Siegler: 1944. Sulfonamide Therapy of Malignant Diphtheria, With Special Reference to Typhus Associated With Diphtheria, Deutsche med. Wchnschr. **70:** 27.

Harrell, G. T., Venning, W., and Wolff, W. A.: 1944. The Treatment of Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever With Particular Reference to Intravenous Fluids. A New Approach to Basic Supportive Therapy, J. A. M. A. **126:** 929-934.

Harvey, D.: 1933. Typhus and Typhus-Like Diseases, Trop. Dis. Bull. **30:** 343-349, 406.

Harvey, D.: 1935. The Typhus Group of Fevers, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **29:** 118-119.

Harvey, D.: 1935. Typhus Fevers, J. Roy. Army M. Corps **65:** 1-8.

Hass, G. M., and Pinkerton, H.: 1936. Spotted Fever, J. Exper. Med. **64:** 601-623.

Hatari, J.: 1921. Tsutsugamushi Disease in Formosa (Summary), Tr. 4th Cong. Far Eastern Assoc. Trop. Med. **2:** 187.

Hayashi, N.: 1920. Etiology of Tsutsugamushi Disease, J. Parasitol. **7:** 53-68.

Heaslip, W. G.: 1940. An Investigation of the Condition Known as Coastal Fever in North Queensland: Its Separation From Scrub Typhus, M. J. Australia **2:** 555-564.

Hegler, C., and Prowazek, S. von: 1913. Untersuchungen über Fleckfieber (vorläufiger Bericht), Klin. Wchnschr. **50:** 2035-2040.

Heilig, R., and Naidu, V. R.: 1941. Epidemic Typhus in Mysore, Indian M. Gaz. **76:** 705-710.

Henderson, R. G.: 1945. Notes on the Mouse Test With Typhus Vaccine, Nat. Inst. Health Bull. **183:** 33-35.

Henderson, R. G., Begg, A., and Fulton, F.: 1946. The Standardization of a Scrub Typhus Vaccine, J. Path. & Bact. **58:** 381-389.

Henderson, R. G., and Topping, N. H.: 1945. Epidemic Typhus Fever: Neutralization of the Toxic Substance, Nat. Inst. Health Bull. **183:** 41-56.

Herzig, A.: 1939. La prophylaxie contre le typhus exanthématique par la vaccination d'apres la methode du professeur R. Weigl, Presse méd. **47:** 571-573.

Herzog, E.: 1935. Alteraciones histo-patologicas del sistema nervioso vegetativo periférico en el tifus exantemático, Arch. Chilenos de morf. **1:** 606-616.

Herzog, E.: 1935. Anatomía e histología patológica de las lesiones orgánicas del tifus exantemático durante la última epidemia de Chile (1932-1935), 9a Reunión Soc. Arg. de Pat. Regional (Mendoza), pp. 574-600.

Herzog, E., nad Rodriguez, H.: 1936. Die Beteiligung des Myocards beim Fleckfieber (Myocarditis exanthematica), Virchows Arch. **296:** 403.

Herzog, G.: 1918. Zur Pathologie des Fleckfiebers, Zentralbl. f. allg. Path. u. path. Anat. **29:** 97.

Holler, G.: 1941. Zur Klinik des Fleckfiebers, Med. Klin. **37:** 459-484.

Hone, F. S.: 1922. A Series of Cases Closely Resembling Typhus Fever, M. J. Australia **1:** 1-13.

Hornibrook, J. W., and Nelson, K. R.: 1940. An Institutional Outbreak of Pneumonitis. I. Epidemiological and Clinical Studies, Pub. Health Rep. **55:** 1936-1944.

Howell, W. L.: 1945. Absence of Electrocardiographic Changes in Scrub Typhus Fever, Arch. Int. Med. **76:** 217-218.

Hudson, N. P.: 1940. A Macroscopic Agglutination Test With Typhus Rickettsiae Prepared From Infected Rodent Lungs, J. Infect. Dis. **67:** 227-231.

Huebner, R. J.: 1947. Report of an Outbreak of Q Fever at the National Institute of Health, Am. J. Pub. Health **37:** 431-440.

Huebner, R. J., Hottle, G. A., and Robinson, E. B.: 1948. Action of Streptomycin in Experimental Infection With Q Fever, Pub. Health Rep. **63:** 357-362.

Huebner, R. J., Jellison, W. L., Beck, M. D., Parker, R. R., and Shepard, C. C.: 1948. Q Fever in Southern California. I. Recovery of Rickettsia Burneti From Raw Milk, Pub. Health Rep. **63:** 214-222.

Irons, J. V., and Cox, G. W.: 1946. An Epidemiological Investigation of Typhus Fever in Texas, 1943-1945. Texas State J. Med. **42:** 332-336.

Irons, J. V., and Hooper, J. M.: 1947. Q Fever in the United States. Clinical Data of an Outbreak Among Stock Handlers and Slaughterhouse Workers, J. A. M. A. **133:** 815-818.

Irons, J. V., Murphy, J. N., and Wolfe, D. M.: 1947. Q Fever in the United States. Serologic Observations in an Outbreak Among Stock Handlers and Slaughterhouse Workers, J. A. M. A. **133:** 819.

Irons, J. V., Topping, N. H., Shepard, C. C., and Cox, G. W.: 1946. Outbreak of Q Fever in the United States, Pub. Health Rep. 61: 784.

Jacobsthal, E.: 1917. Zur Komplementbindungsreaktion zwischen Fleckfieberläussextrakt und Fleckfieberserum, Klin. Wchnschr. 54: 1028.

Jaffé, R.: 1918. Zur Pathologischen Anatomie des Fleckfiebers, Med. Klin. 14: 210.

Jame, L., and Aujaleu, E.: 1935. Les fièvres typho-exanthématiques ou rickettsioses, Arch. de méd. et pharm. mil. 102: 445-498.

James, G. W., III, and Walker, H.: 1947. Para-Aminozenzoic Acid in the Treatment of Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever, Virginia M. Monthly 74: 161-167.

Jewell, N. P., and Cormack, R. P.: 1930. Typhus Fever With a Description of the Disease in Kenya, J. Trop. Med. & Hyg. 33: 301-305.

Joannon Infante, J.: 1939. Reacción clínica de aglutinación, Rev. méd. de Chile 67: 1036-1045.

Joannon Infante, J.: 1939. Reacción de Weil-Felix clínica en la campaña contra el Tifo Exantemático, Bol. Ofic. san. panam. 18: 1134-1137.

Jorge, R.: 1933. La famille typho-exanthématique, Bull. Office internat. d'hyg. pub. 25: 284-304.

Juillard, J., and Henaff: 1939. Troubles du metabolisme hydrochloruré au cours des typhus epidemique et murin; chloropexie vasculaire et systeme reticulo-endothelial. Considerations generales, Rev. serv. san. mil. 110: 197-266.

Jungmann, P.: 1917. Klinik und Aetologie des wolhynischen Fiebers, Klin. Wchnschr. 54: 147-149.

Jungmann, P.: 1919. Das wolhynische Fieber, Berlin, Julius Springer.

Kawamura, R.: 1930. Die tsutsugamushi-Krankheit. In Handbuch der pathogenen Mikroorganismen, ed. 3, 8 (II): 1404.

Kawamura, R.: 1926. Studies on Tsutsugamushi Disease (Japanese Flood Fever), Med. Bull., Univ. of Cincinnati, Nos. 1 and 2.

Kawamura, R., Imagawa, Y., and Ito, T.: 1932. Weil-Felix'sche Reaktion bei der Tsutsugamushi-Krankheit, Tr. Jap. Path. Soc. 22: 691-697.

Kemp, H. A.: 1931. Endemic Typhus Fever. Rat Flea as a Possible Vector, J. A. M. A. 97: 775-777.

Kicks, J. D.: 1945. Post-Mortem Changes in Scrub Typhus, M. J. Australia 32: 57-59.

Kikuth, W., and Schilling, I.: 1944. Chemotherapeutische Versuche beim Fleckfieber (R. mooseri) mit methylenblau, Zentralbl. f. Bakt. (Abt. 1) 151: 293-302.

Kimura, R., Fujisawa, Y., and Misugi, Y.: 1931. Studien über die Tsutsugamushi-Krankheit in der Gewebezüchtung, Tr. Jap. Path. Soc. 21: 426-431.

Kingsburg, A. N.: 1930. Tropical Typhus, Ann. Rep. of the Inst. Med. Res. (Fed. Malay States), pp. 3-17.

Kitashima, T., and Miyajima, M.: 1918. Studien ueber die Tsutsugamushikrankheit, Kitasato Arch. Exper. Med. 2: 91.

Klein, H. S.: 1945: An Epidemic of Scrub Typhus, J. Roy. Army M. Corps. 85: 187-190.

Kligler, I. J., and Aschner, M.: 1933. Cultivation of European Type of Typhus Rickettsia in Presence of Live Tissue, Proc. Exper. Biol. & Med. 31: 349-351.

Kligler, I. J., and Aschner, M.: 1934. Immunization of Animals With Formolized Tissue Cultures of Rickettsia From European and Mediterranean Typhus, Brit. J. Exper. Path. 15: 337-346.

Klueva, N., Trotsky, V., and Kasakov, A.: 1932. On the Question of Typhus Virus Carrying by Healthy Persons, Rev. Micr. Epid. & Parasitol. 11: 17-23.

Kodama, M.: 1932. On Classification of Typhus in Its Epidemiological, Clinical and Etiological Observations, Kitasato Arch. Exp. Med. 9: 357-361.

Kohls, G. M.: 1948. Vectors of Rickettsial Diseases. A Symposium, American Association for the Advancement of Science, pp. 83-96.

Kohls, G. M., and Armbrust, C. A., Irons, E. N., and Philip, C. B.: 1945. Studies on Tsutsugamushi Disease (Scrub Typhus, Mite-Borne Typhus) in New Guinea and Adjacent Islands: Further Observations on Epidemiology and Etiology, Am. J. Hyg. 41: 374-396.

Kauwenaar, W.: 1940. Research on Sumatra Richettsioses: XL. Pathological Anatomy of Mite Fever in Man, Geneesk. tijdschr. v. Nederl. Indië 80: 1119.

Krontovskaya, M. K., and Shmatikov, M. D.: 1943. On the Epidemiology of the Tick Spotted Typhus of Central Siberia, Zhur. Mikrob. Epid. Immunol. Nos. 1-2, 65-68.

Ksenjoposky, A. V.: 1916. Review of the Pests of Volhynia and Report of the Work of Volhynia, Zemstvo of Volhynia, Jitomir.

Kudicke, R., and Steuer, W.: 1940. Arb. a. d. staatl. Inst. f. exper. Therap. 40: 38.

Kuteischikow, A., Dosser, E. M., and Bernhoff, F. G.: 1933. Der experimentelle symptomlose Flecktyphus beim gesunden und unempfänglishen Menschen, Zentralbl. f. Bakt. (Abt. 1) 129: 262-265.

Laigret, J., and Durand, R.: 1936. Technique de la preparation des vaccins enrobes dans le jaune d'œuf, Arch. Inst. Pasteur de Tunis 25: 570-576.

Langan, A. M., and Mathew, R. Y.: 1935. The Establishment of "Mossman," "Coastal" and Other Previously Unclassified Fevers of North Queensland as Endemic Typhus, M. J. Australia **2**: 145-148.

Le Chuiton, F., Pirot, R., Berge, C., and Pennaneac'h, J.: 1938. La voie digestive dans la transmission du typhus murin à bord des bâtiments de guerre, Bull. Acad. de méd., Paris **119**: 175.

Leon, A. P.: 1942. Precipitación de sueros anti-tifo por la orina de enfermos de tifo exantematico. Una nueva reacción serológica para el diagnóstico del tifo, Rev. d. Inst. salub. y enferm. trop. **3**: 201-208.

Leon, A. P.: 1944. Suero anti-tifo de conejos convalescientes en el tratamiento del tifo exantemático, Rev. d. Innst. salub. y enferm. trop. **5**: 117-128.

Leon, A. P.: 1945. La reacción de fijación del complemento inversa en el diagnostico del tifo exantematico, Rev. d. Inst. salub. y enferm. Trop. **6**: 167-172.

Leon, A. P.: 1945. Reacción de Weil-Felix tipo Kahn, Rev. d. Inst. salub. y enferm. trop. **6**: 173-179.

Lépine, P.: 1938. Typhus et fiévres exanthématiques. In Les ultravirus des maladies humaines, Paris, Maloine, pp. 633-745.

Lépine, P., and Lorando, N.: 1935. Le typhus exanthematique du chat, Bull. Soc. path. exot. **28**: 356-360.

Levine, H. D.: 1945. Cardiac Complications of Tsutsugamushi Fever (Scrub Typhus) Investigations of Their Persistence, War Med. **7**: 76.

Levy, M. D., and Arnold, W. T.: 1946. Para-Amino-Benzoic Acid in the Treatment of Endemic Typhus, Texas State J. Med. **42**: 314-316.

Lewthwaite, R.: 1930. Clinical and Epidemiological Observations on Tropical Typhus in the Federated Malay States, Bull. Inst. Med. Res. (Fed. Malay States) **1**: 1-42.

Lewthwaite, R., and Savoor, S. R.: 1936. Recent Work on the Typhus-Like Fevers of Malaya, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **29**: 561.

Lewthwaite, R., and Savoor, S. R.: 1940. Rickettsia Diseases of Malaya. Identity of Tsutsugamushi and Rural Typhus, Lancet **1**: 255-305.

Lewthwaite, R., and Savoor, S. R.: 1940. The Relation of Sumatra Mite Fever to the Tsutsugamushi Disease of British Malaya, Brit. J. Exper. Path. **21**: 117.

Lillie, R. D.: 1931. Pathology of the Eastern Type of Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever, Pub. Health Rep. **46**: 2840-2859.

Lillie, R. D.: 1935. Histologic Reaction to the Virus of the Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever in Chick Embryos, Pub. Health Rep. **50**: 1498-1501.

Lillie, R. D.: 1941. Pathology of Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever, Nat. Inst. Health Bull. **177**: 1-59.

Lillie, R. E.: 1942. Pathologic Histology in Guinea Pigs Following Intraperitoneal Inoculation With the Virus of Q Fever, Pub. Health Rep. **57**: 296-306.

Lillie, R. D., Perrin, T. L., and Armstrong, C.: 1941. An Institutional Outbreak of Pneumonitis. III. Histopathology in Man and Rhesus Monkeys in the Pneumonitis Due to the Virus Q Fever, Pub. Health Rep. **56**: 149-155.

Lipman, B. L., Byron, R. A., and Casey, A. V.: 1944. Clinical Survey of Scrub Typhus Fever, Bull. U. S. Army M. Dept. No. 72, pp. 63-70.

Löffler, W., and Mooser, H.: 1942. Zum Ubertragungsmodus des Fleckfiebers. Beobachtungen anlässlich einer Laboratoriums-Gruppeinfektion, Schweiz. med. Wchnschr. **72**: 755.

Logue, J. B.: 1944. Scrub Typhus: Report of Epidemic in the South-West Pacific, U. S. Nav. M. Bull. **43**: 645.

McCalla, F. P.: 1908. Direct Transmission From Man to Man of the Rocky Mountain Spotted (Tick) Fever, Med. Sentinel **16**.

Macchiavello, A.: 1934. Estudio bacteriológico, serológico y experimental del Tifo Endémico benigno de Antofagasta, Imp. Drogett.

Macchiavello, A.: 1937. Rickettsiae, Rev. chilena de hig. & med. prev. **1**: 5-25.

Macchiavello, A.: 1937. Estudios sobre tifus exantemático. III. Un nuevo método para tenir Rickettsia, Rev. chilena de hig. & med. prev. **1**: 101-106.

Macchiavello, A.: 1937. Erradicación del tifo exantemático de Valparaiso, Inf. y Proyec. San., Santiago, No. 2, pp. 190-197.

Macchiavello, A.: Rickettsia, simbiontes y virus filtrables. Sistemática del grupo Rickettsia, Rev. chilena de hig. & med. prev. **1**: 297-330.

Macchiavello, A.: 1938. Investigaciones sobre bacteriología e inmunología del tifo exantemático, Imp. Universo, Santiago.

Macchiavello, A.: 1939. Estudios sobre hematología del tifo exantemático esperimental: II. Cambios hematológicos en ratas albinas inoculadas con tifo exantemático variedad mejicana (murino), Rev. chilena de hig. & med. prev. **2**: 169-177.

Macchiavello, A.: 1939. Investigations of Chilean Exanthematicus Typhus and Experimental Exanthematous Typhus, Proc. 6th Pacific Sc. Cong. **5**: 649-675.

Macchiavello, A.: 1943. El suero de convaleciente concentrado en las enfermedades infecciosas, con especial aplicación al tifo exantemático, el sarampión y la varicela, Rev. Fac. de med., Bogotá 11: 577-584.

Macchiavello, A.: 1947. Métodos no biológicos en la Profilaxis del tifo exantemático, la Reu. Interam. del Tifo (Mex.) pp. 267-273.

Macchiavello, A.: 1947. Notes on the Taxonomy of the Rickettsias and the Classification of the Rickettsioses (a Summary), la Reu. Interan. del Tifo (Mex.), pp. 405-426.

Macchiavello, A.: 1947. Aspectos clínicos de las enfermedades rickettsiales en algunos paises sud-americanos, la Reu. Interam. del Tifo (Mex.) pp. 361-385.

Macchiavello, A.: 1945. Estudios sobre Tifo exantemático. VI. Influencia de la vitamína C. sobre la evolusión de la curva térmica del tifo humano y del tifo experimental, Rev. chilena de hig. & med. prev. 7: 189-196.

Macchiavello, A., and Cifuentes, O.: 1942. El tifo exantemático en Chile, Rev. chilena de hig. & med. prev. 5: 109.

Macchiavello, A., and Cifuentes, O.: 1942. Significación epidemiológica de los caracteres clínicos del tifo exantemático al final de una epidemia, Actas de la XI Conferencia Sanitaria Panamericana, Rio de Janeiro.

Macchiavello, A., and Contreras Macaya, M.: 1934. Epidemia de Tifo exantemático en la región de San Pedro de Atacama y sus alrededores, Imp. Drogett, Antofagasta.

Macchiavello, A., and Grossi, V.: 1937. Unpublished Observations During the Typhus Epidemic, Valparaiso.

Macchiavello, A., and Ovalle, H.: 1945. Estudios sobre tifo exantemático. VII. Acción in vitro del ácido ascórbico sobre el virus del tifo exantemático, Rev. chilena de hig. & med. prev. 7: 197-210.

McCrae, T.: 1907. Typhus Fever. In Osler: Modern Medicine, Philadelphia 2: 232.

Machella, T. E., and Forrester, J. S.: 1945. Mite or Scrub Typhus. Clinical and Laboratory Study of 64 Cases, Am. J. M. Sc. 210: 38.

Mackie, T. E., Davis, G. E., Fuller, H. S., Knapp, J. A., Steinacker, M. L., Stager, K. E., Traub, R., Jellison, W. L., Misspangh, D. D., Austrian, R. C., Bell, E. J., Kohls, G. M., Wei Hsi, and Girsham, J. A. V.: 1946. Observations on Tsutsugamushi Disease (Scrub Typhus) in Assam and Burma. Preliminary Report, Am. J. Hyg. 43: 195-218.

McLimans, W. F., and Grant, C. W.: 1947. Therapy of Experimental Tsutsugamushi Disease (Scrub Typhus), Science 105: 181-182.

McNaught, J. G.: 1911. Paratyphoid Fevers in South Africa, J. Roy. Army M. Corps 16: 505-514.

Magalhaes, O.: 1939. Tifo exantemático em Minas Gerais—13° comunicaçao, diagnostico, Acta medi., Rio de Janeiro 13: 4-13.

Magalhaes, O.: 1939. Tifo exantemático em Minas Gerais—Anatomie patologica, Brasil-med. 53: 104-113.

Magalhaes, O.: 1940. Tifo exantemático em Minas Gerais—Molestia humana inaparente; cao naturalmente infectado, Brasil-med. 54: 503-504.

Magalhaes, O.: 1941. Diagnosis of Exanthematous Typhus of Brasil in Minas Gerais, J. Trop. Med. 44: 134-139.

Magalhaes, O., and Penna, R.: 1939 and 1940. Tifo exantemático em Minas Gerais—estudos electrocardiográficos, Brasil-med. 53: 950; 54: 519-526, 541-544, 558-560, 578-581, 592-596, 605-608.

Magalhaes, O., and Rocha, A.: 1944. Tifo exantematico neotrópico no Brasil. Ensaios terapéuticos con a Penicilina, Mem. Inst. Oswaldo Cruz 41: 59-64.

Makari, J. G.: 1946. The Cephalin-Cholesterol Flocculation Test in Typhoid and Typhus Fevers, J. Trop. Med. & Hyg. 49: 70-72.

Malcomson, M. E., and Wishart, F. O.: 1946. Studies of the Serology of Typhus Fever. Complement-Fixing Antibody Response to Vaccination and to Infection, Canad. J. Pub. Health 37: 411-421.

Malcomson, M. E., and Wishart, F. O.: 1946. Studies of the Serology of Typhus Fever. Weil-Felix Test and Complement Fixation With Proteus OX19 Following Typhus Fever Infection and Vaccination, Canad. J. Pub. Health 37: 461-466.

Marcandier and Bideau: 1930. Note sur l'epidemiologie de la fiévre exanthématique observée a bord de navires de guerre a Toulon. Role possible d'un acarien du rat dans la transmission, Rev. d'hyg. 52: 353-364.

Marinesco, M.: 1922. Ann. Inst. Pasteur 36: 209.

Mason, J. H., and Alexander, R. A.: 1939. Studies of the Rickettsias of the Typhus-Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever Group in South Africa. IV. Discussion and Classification, Onderstepoort J. Vet. Sc. Animal Ind. 13: 67-76.

Maxcy, K. F.: 1926. An Epidemiological Study of Endemic Typhus (Brill's Disease) in the Southeastern United States, With Special Reference to Its Mode of Transmission, Pub. Health Rep. 41: 2967-2995.

Maxey, K. F.: 1926. Clinical Observations on Endemic Typhus (Brill's Disease) in Southern United States, Pub. Health Rep. **41**: 1213-1220.

Maxey, K. F.: 1929. Endemic Typhus of the Southeastern United States. The Reaction of the White Rat, Pub. Health Rep. **44**: 1935-1943.

Maxey, K. F., and Havens, L. C.: 1923. A Series of Cases Giving a Positive Weil-Felix Reaction, Am. J. Trop. Med. **3**: 495.

Maxey, E. E.: 1899. Some Observations on the So-Called Fever of Idaho, Med. Sentinel **7**: 433-438.

Megaw, J. W. D.: 1921. A Typhus-Like Fever in India, Possibly Transmitted by Ticks, Indian M. Gaz. **56**: 361-371.

Megaw, J. W. D.: 1927. Typhus-Like Fevers Conveyed by Ticks, Tr. 7th Cong. Far Eastern Assoc. Trop. Med. **2**: 509-516.

Megaw, J. W. D.: 1930. Les fievres resesemblant au typhus transmisses par le tiques, Bull. Office internat. d'hyg. pub. **22**: 1527-1547.

Megaw, J. W. D.: 1935. Typhus Fevers in the Tropics, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **29**: 105-110.

Megaw, J. W. D.: 1945. Scrub Typhus as a War Disease, Brit. M. J. **2**: 109-112.

Megaw, J. W. D., and Rao, S. A.: 1928. Tick Typhus and Other Sporadic Fevers of the Typhus Group, Indian M. Gaz. **63**: 306-318.

Mendell, T. H.: 1946. Scrub Typhus Fever (Tsutsugamushi Disease) in New Guinea. Report of 75 Cases, Am. J. M. Sc. **211**: 9-22.

Mogilnitzky, B. N.: 1924. Ztschr. f. d. ges. Neurol. **91**.

Monteiro, J. L.: 1931. Tipho endemico de S. Paulo. I.-Formas do typho na America e una nova infecçao observada en S. Paulo, Brasil-med. **45**: 1096-1100.

Monteiro, J. L.: 1931. Sobre a presença de Rickettsia brasiliensis n. sp. nas cellulas endotheliales de parede peritoneal en cobaias innoculadas no peritoneo com o virus do typho endemico de S. Paulo, Brasil-med. **45**: 805-807.

Monteiro, J. L.: 1933. O Typho exanthematico de S. Paulo e suas relaçoes com a febre maculosa das Montanhas Rochosas, a luz das provas de immunidade cruzada, Brasil-med. **47**: 437-442.

Mooser, H.: 1928. Reaction of Guinea-Pigs to Mexican Typhus (Tabardillo). Preliminary Note on Bacteriological Observations, J. A. M. A. **91**: 19-20.

Mooser, H.: 1928. Experiments Relating to the Pathology and the Etiology of Mexican Typhus (Tabardillo). I. Clinical Course and Pathologic Anatomy of Tabardillo in Guinea-Pigs, J. Infect. Dis. **43**: 241-276.

Mooser, H.: 1928. An American Variety of Typhus, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **22**: 175-176.

Mooser, H.: 1929. Tabardillo, an American Variety of Typhus, J. Infect. Dis. **44**: 186-193.

Mooser, H.: 1941. Ueber die Beziehungen des murinen Fleckfiebers zum klassischen Fleckfieber, Schweiz. Ztschr. Path. u. Bakt. **3**: 318-322.

Mooser, H.: 1941. Experimente zur Frage der epidemiologischen Bedeutung inapparenter Infektionen beim Fleckfieber, Schweiz. Ztschr. Path. u. Bakt. **4**: 1-26.

Mooser, H.: 1945. Die Beziehungen des murinen Fleckfiebers zum klassichen Fleckfieber, Acta Tropica, Supplementum 4, Basel, Friedrich Reinhardt Aktiengesellschaft.

Mooser, H.: 1946. Twenty Years of Research in Typhus Fever, Schweiz. med. Wchnschr. **76**: 877-882.

Mooser, H., and Castañeda, M. R.: 1932. The Multiplication of the Virus of Mexican Typhus Fever in Fleas, J. Exper. Med. **55**: 307-328.

Mooser, H., Castañeda, M. R., and Zinsser, H.: 1931. Rats as Carriers of Mexican Typhus Fever, J. A. M. A. **97**: 231-232.

Mooser, H., and Dummer, C.: 1930. On the Relation of the Organisms in the Tunica Vaginalis of Animals Inoculated With Mexican Typhus to Rickettsia Prowazeki and to the Causative Agent of That Disease, J. Exper. Med. **51**: 189-207.

Mooser, H., Varela, G., and Pilz, H.: 1934. Experiments on the Conversion of Typhus Strains, J. Exper. Med. **59**: 137-157.

Moragues, V., Pinkerton, H., and Greiff, D.: 1944. Therapeutic Effectiveness of Penicillin in Experimental Murine Typhus Infection in dba Mice, J. Exper. Med. **79**: 431-438.

Moreira, J. A., and Magalhaes, O.: 1933, 1935, 1936, 1937. Typho exanthematico em Minas Gerais, Brasil-med. **47**: 599-601; **49**: 465-470; **50**: 727-731, 881-882; **51**: 388-392, 583-584.

Morgan, H. R., Stevens, D. A., and Snyder, J. C.: 1947. Effect of Streptomycin on Growth of Rickettsiae in Eggs, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **64**: 342-345.

Morgenstern: 1922. Virchows Arch. **238**: 223-227.

Morishita, K.: 1942. Tsutsugamushi Disease: Its Epidemiology in Formosa, Proc. 6th Pacific Sc. Cong. **5**: 639-647.

osing, H.: 1936. Une nouvelle infection à Rickettsia; Rickettsia weigli nov. sp., Arch. Inst. Pasteur de Tunis **25**: 373-387.

udd, S., and Anderson, T. F.: 1945. Bacterias, rickettsias y virus patógenos, demostrables con el microscópio electrónico; sus relaciones con la inmunidad y la quimioterapia, Morfologia, Puerto Rico J. Pub. Health & Trop. Med. **20**: 529-547; addendum (supp.) **20**: 1-12.

unk, F., and Rocha-Lima, H. da.: 1917. Klinie und Aetiologie des sogenannten "wolhynischen Fiebers" (Werner-Hissche Krankheit). II. Ergebnis der aetiologischen Untersuchungen und deren Beziehungen zur Fleckfieberforschung, München. med. Wchnschr. **64**: 1422-1426.

urray, E. S., Zarafonetis, C. J. D., and Snyder, J. C.: 1945. Further Report on Effect of Para-Aminobenzoic Acid in Experimental Tsutsugamushi Disease (Scrub Typhus), Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **60**: 80-84.

agayo, M.: 1923. The Tsutsugamushi Disease or Japanese River Fever. Practice of Medicine in the Tropics, London, Oxford University Press, p. 2134.

eill, M. K.: 1917. Experimental Typhus Fever in Guinea Pigs. A Description of a Scrotal Lesion in Guinea Pigs Infected With Mexican Typhus, Pub. Health Rep. **32**: 1105-1108.

Nelson, C. T.: 1947. The Serologic Response in Murine Typhus as Measured by the Weil-Felix, Rickettsial Complement Fixation, and Rickettsial Agglutination Reactions, J. Lab. Clin. Med. **32**: 360-366.

icol, K.: 1919. Pathologischen anatomische Studien bei Fleckfieber, Zentralbl. f. allg. Path. u. path. Anat. **4**: 120.

icolle, C.: 1909. Reproduction experimentale du typhus exanthematique chez le singe, Compt. rend. Acad. d. sc. **149**: 157-160.

icolle, C., 1925. Contribution a l'étude des infections inapparentes. Le typhus exanthématique inapparent, Arch. Inst. Pasteur de Tunis **14**: 149-212.

Nicolle, C.: 1933. Unité ou pluralité des typhus, Bull. Soc. path. exot. **26**: 316-340; 375-376.

Nicolle, C., Comte, C., and Conseil, E.: 1909. Transmission expérimentale du typhus exanthématique par le pour du corps, Compt. rend. Acad. d. sc. **149**: 486-489.

Nicolle, C., Conseil, E., and Conor, A.: 1911. Le typhus experimentale du cobaye, Compt. rend. Acad. d. sc. **152**: 1632-1634.

icolle, C., and Laigret, J.: 1932. Inoculation typhique par voie nasale, Arch. Inst. Pasteur de Tunis **21**: 25-31.

icolle, C., and Laigret, J.: 1935. Vaccination contre le typhus exanthematique par le virus tiphique vivant, desseché et enrobé, Compt. rend. Acad. d. sc. **201**: 372-374.

icolle, C., Laigret, J., and Giroud, P.: 1933. Passaege des virus des fievres exanthematiques par la voie digestive chez le rat, Compt. rend. Acad. d. sc. **196**: 225-227.

icolle, C., and Lebailly, C.: 1919. Les infections experimentales inapparentes. Exemples tirés de l'étude du typhus exanthématique, Arch. Inst. Pasteur de Tunis **11**: 1-5.

icolle, C., and Sparrow, H.: 1935. Infection par la voie conjonctivale des petits singes avec le virus typhique murin i des rats de Tunis, Compt. rend. Acad. d. sc. **200**: 1702-1704.

igg, C.: 1935. On the Preservation of Typhus Fever Rickettsia in Cultures, J. Exper. Med. **61**: 17-26.

igg, C.: 1936. Studies on Culture Strains of European and Murine Typhus, J. Exper. Med. **63**: 341-351.

igg, C., and Landsteiner, K.: 1930-1931. Growth of Rickettsia of Typhus Fever (Mexican Type) in the Presence of Living Tissue, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **28**: 3-5.

igg, C., and Landsteiner, K.: 1932. Studies on the Cultivation of the Typhus Fever Rickettsia in the Presence of Live Tissue, J. Exper. Med. **55**: 563-576.

oad, H. B.: 1946. Tsutsugamushi Fever in Natives, M. J. Australia **2**: 20.

liphant, J. W., and Parker, R. R.: 1948. Q Fever: Three Cases of Laboratory Infection, Pub. Health Rep. **63**: 1364-1370.

itzki, L., and Buechler, E.: 1946. Studies on the Detoxication of the Labile Rickettsia Toxin, Brit. J. Exper. Path. **27**: 220-224.

lmer, D.: Sur une infection epidemique avec exantheme de nature indeterminée, Marseille méd. 1921, 1925.

lmer, D., and Olmer, J.: 1933. Fiévre boutonneuse: Fiévre exanthématique du littoral Mediterranéen, Paris, Masson & Cie.

tiz Mariotte, C.: 1944. Desparasitación en masa aplicada al dominio de un brote epidémico de tifo, Salub. y asist. **1**: 9-25.

o, R.: 1934. Flecktyphus und endemische Fleckfieber, Wien. med. Wchnschr. **60**: 1299-1303; 1341-1344.

Otto, R., and Munter, H.: 1930. Fleckfieber. In Handbuch der pathogenen Mikroorganismen, ed. 3, **8**: 1107-1262.

Otto, R., and Schäfer, W.: 1936. Arb. a. d. staatl. Inst. f. exper. Therap. **33**: 73.

Otto, R., and Wohlrab, R.: 1939. Experimentelle Untersuchungen über Rickettsien-Impstoffe gegen Fleckfieber, Arb. a. d. staatl. Inst. f. exper. Therap. **38**(S): 64.

Otto, R., and Wohlrab, R.: 1940. Über die Auswertung von Rickettsia mooseri-Impstoffen im Mäuseversuch, Ztschr. f. Hyg. u. Infectionskr. **122**(S): 220.

Otto, R., and Wohlrab, R.: Über neuere Impfstoffe gegen Flecktyphus, Arb. a. d. Staatl. Inst. f. exper. Therap. **40**: 1.

Ovalle, H.: 1939. Estudio sobre tifo exantemático. Suero de convalesciente concentrado. Nota preliminar, Rev. chilena de hig. y med. prev. **2**: 349-361.

Oyarzun, R.: 1935. Alteraciones histopatológicas del nervio vago y su ganglio nudoso en el tifus exantematico, Tesis, Santiago, Chile.

Palacios, R., Chávez, R. F., and Avendaño, M. O.: 1935. Aislamiento de virus murino de individuos inoculados con vacuna Blanc, Rev. d. Inst. bact. de Chile **4**: 49-52.

Palm, T. A.: 1878. Some Account of a Disease Called Shima-Mushi or Island Insect Disease by the Native of Japan Peculiar (It Is Believed) to That Country and Hitherto Not Described, Edinburgh M. J. **24**: 128.

Parker, R. R.: 1935. Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever. Epidemiology With Particular References to Distribution and Prevalence in the Western United States, Northwest Med. **34**: 111-121.

Parker, R. R.: 1938. Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever, J. A. M. A. **110**: 1185-1188; 1273-1278.

Parker, R. R.: 1941. Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever; Results of 15 Years' Prophylactic Vaccination, Am. J. Trop. Med. **21**: 369-383.

Parker, R. R., and Davis, G. E.: 1933. Further Studies on the Relationship of the Viruses of Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever and São Paulo Exanthematic Typhus, Pub. Health Rep. **48**: 839-843.

Parker, R. R., and Davis, G. E.: 1938. A Filter-Passing Agent Isolated From Ticks. II. Transmission by Dermacentor andersoni, Pub. Health Rep. **53**: 2267-2270.

Parker, R. R., and Steinhaus, E. A.: 1943. American and Australian Q Fevers: Persistence of Infectious Agents in Guinea Pig Tissues After Defervescence, Pub. Health Rep. **58**: 523-527.

Patiño Camargo, L.: 1922. El tifo negro o exantemático en Bogotá, Bogotá, Editorial de Cromos.

Patiño Camargo, L.: 1941. Estudios sobre Rickettsiosis en Colombia, I. El Tifo negro, Rev. Fac. de med., Bogotá **9**: 607-613.

Patiño Camargo, L.: 1941. Brote epidemico de tifo negro o exantemático en Bogotá, Rev. Fac. de med., Bogotá **10**.

Patiño Camargo, L.: 1941. Nuevas observaciones sobre un tercer foco de fiebre petequial (maculosa) en el hemisferio americano, Bol. Ofic. san. panam. **20**: 1112-1124.

Patiño Camargo, L.: 1946. Rickettsia Produced Exanthematic Typhus Diseases in Colombia, Med. Bull. (Standard Oil Co.) **6**: 168-184.

Patiño, L., Afanador, A., and Paul, J. H.: 1937. A Spotted Fever in Tobia, Colombia, Am. J. Trop. Med. **17**: 639.

Payne, E. H., Knaudt, J. A., and Palacios, S.: 1948. Treatment of Epidemic Typhus With Chloromycetin, J. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **51**: 68-71.

Pchenichnof, A. V., and Raikher, B. I.: 1936. Arch. Inst. Pasteur de Tunis **25**: 402.

Peterson, O. L.: 1944. Therapeutic Effect of Forbisen and of Toluidine Blue on Experimental Typhus, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **55**: 155-157.

Peterson, O. L., and Fox, J. P.: 1947. The Antirickettsial Effect of Thionine Dyes. The Use of Methylene Blue and Toluidine Blue to Combat Experimental Tsutsugamushi Disease (Scrub Typhus), J. Exper. Med. **85**: 543-558.

Peterson, J. C., Overall, J. C., and Shapiro, J. L.: 1947. Rickettsial Diseases of Childhood. A Clinical Pathologic Study of Tick Typhus, Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever and Murine Typhus, Endemic Typhus, J. Pediat. **30**: 495-528.

Philip, C. B.: 1943. Nomenclature of the Pathogenic Rickettsiae, Am. J. Hyg. **37**: 301-309.

Philip, C. B.: 1947. Observations on Tsutsugamushi Disease (Mite-Borne or Scrub Typhus) in Northwest Honshu Island, Japan, in the Fall of 1945. I. Epidemiological and Ecological Data, Am. J. Hyg. **46**: 45-59.

Philip, C. B., and Kohls, G. M.: 1945. Studies on Tsutsugamushi Disease (Scrub Typhus), (Mite-Borne Typhus) in New Guinea and Adjacent Islands. Tsutsugamushi Disease With High Endemicity on a Small South Sea Island, Am. J. Hyg. **42**: 195-203.

Philip, C. B., and Parker, R. R.: 1938. The Persistence of the Viruses of Endemic (Murine) Typhus; Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever and Boutonneuse Fever in Tissues of Experimental Animals, Pub. Health Rep. **53**: 1246-1251.

ilip, C. B., Woodward, T. E., and Sullivan, R. R.: 1946. Tsutsugamushi Disease (Scrub Typhus or Mite-Borne Typhus) in the Philippine Islands During American Reoccupation in 1944-1945, Am. J. Trop. Med. **26**: 229-242.

jper, A., and Crocker, C. G.: 1938. Rickettsioses of South Africa, South African M. J. **12**: 613-630.

jper, A., and Dau, H.: 1933. A Preliminary Report on a Typhus-Like Virus in South African Rats, South African M. J. **7**: 715-716.

nkerton, H.: 1929. Rickettsia-Like Organisms in the Scrotal Sac of Guinea-Pigs With European Typhus, J. Infect. Dis. **44**: 337-346.

nkerton, H.: 1936. Criteria for the Accurate Classification of the Rickettsial Disease (Rickettsioses) and of Their Etiological Agents, Parasitology **28**: 172-189.

nkerton, H.: 1942. The Pathogenic Rickettsiae With Particular Reference to Their Nature, Biologic Properties, and Classification, Bact. Rev. **6**: 37-78.

nkerton, H.: 1940. Diagnosis and Classification of the Rickettsial Diseases, Virus and Rickettsial Diseases, pp. 817-827.

nkerton, H., and Bessey, O. A.: 1939. The Loss of Resistance to Murine Typhus Infection Resulting From Riboflavine Deficiency in Rats, Science **89**: 368.

nkerton, H., and Hass, G. M.: 1931. Typhus Fever. III. The Behaviour of Rickettsia Prowazeki in Tissue Cultures, J. Exper. Med. **54**: 307-314.

nkerton, H., and Hass, G. M.: 1932. Spotted Fever: I. Intranuclear Rickettsiae in Spotted Fever Studied in Tissue Culture, J. Exper. Med. **56**: 151-156.

iza, J. T., Salles Gomes, F., Mayer, J., Fleury, J. P., Castro, O., Rodriguez, C., and da Rocha Lima, H.: 1931. Le typhus exanthematique a São Paulo, Compt. rend. Soc. de biol. **106**: 1020-1022.

iza, J. T., Meyer, J. R., and Gomes, L. S.: 1932. Typho exanthematico de São Paulo, São Paulo, Sociedade Impressora Paulista.

lotz, H.: 1943. Complement Fixation in Rickettsial Diseases, Science **97**: 20-21.

lotz, H., Olitsky, P. K., and Baehr, G.: 1915. The Etiology of Typhus Exanthematicus, J. Infect. Dis. **17**: 1-68.

lotz, H., Smadel, J. E., Anderson, T. F., and Chambers, L. A. 1943. Morphological Structure of Rickettsiae, J. Exper. Med. **77**: 355-358.

lotz, H., and Wertman, K.: 1942. The Use of the Complement Fixation Test in Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever, Science **95**: 441-442.

otz, H., and Wertman, K.: 1945. Modification of Serological Response to Infection With Murine Typhus by Previous Immunization With Epidemic Typhus Vaccine, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **59**: 248-251.

llard, M., Davis, E. E., and Olson, T. A.: 1946. The Serological Detection of Murine Typhus in Flea Feces, Am. J. Hyg. **44**: 244-248.

poff, L.: 1875. Zentralbl. f. med. Wissch. 36.

imera Reunion Interamericana del Tifus: 1945. Actas, Mexico.

owazek, von S.: 1914. Atiologische Untersuchungen über den Flecktyphus in Serbien 1913 und Hamburg 1914, Beitr. z. Klin. d. Infektionskr. **4**: 5-31.

ello, P.: 1937. Observations sur la vaccination contre le typhus exanthématique par le vaccin de Weigl, Arch. Inst. Pasteur de Tunis **26**: 4.

umsine, S.: 1929. Sur l'existence de la forme inapparente du typhus exanthématique chez l'homme, Arch. Inst. Pasteur de Tunis **18**: 247-254.

avenel, S. F.: 1947. Para-Aminobenzoic Acid Therapy of Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever. Outline of a Comprehensive Plan of Treatment With Report of Five Cases, J. A. M. A. **133**: 989-994.

eimann, H. A., Ulrich, H. L., and Fisher, L.: 1932. Differential Diagnosis Between Typhus and Spoted Fever. Report of a Case and the Isolation of a New Mild Type of Spotted Fever Virus, J. A. M. A. **98**: 1875.

ketts, H. T.: 1906. The Study of "Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever" (Tick Fever?) by Means of Animal Inoculation. A Preliminary Communication, J. A. M. A. **47**: 33-36.

ketts, H. T.: 1906. The Transmission of Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever by the Bite of the Wood Tick (Dermacentor Occidentalis), J. A. M. A. **47**: 358.

ketts, H. T., and Wilder, R. M.: 1910. The Transmission of the Typhus Fever of Mexico (Tabardillo) by Means of the Louse (Pediculus Vestamenti), J. A. M. A. **54**: 1304.

ketts, H. T., and Wilder, R. M.: 1910. The Relation of Typhus Fever (Tabardillo) to Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever, Arch. Int. Med. **5**: 361.

ketts, H. T., and Wilder, R. M.: 1910. Further Investigations Regarding the Etiology of Tabardillo, Mexican Typhus Fever, J. A. M. A. **55**: 309-311.

vers, T. M. (editor): 1948. Viral and Rickettsial Infections of Man, Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott Co.

Robbins, F. C., Gauld, R. L., and Warner, F. B.: 1946. Q Fever in the Mediterranean Area: Report of Its Occurrence in Allied Troops. II. Epidemiology, Am. J. Hyg. **44:** 23-50.

Robbins, F. C., and Ragan, C. A.: 1946. Q Fever in the Mediterranean Area: Report of Its Occurrence in Allied Troops. I. Clinical Features of the Disease, Am. J. Hyg. **44:** 6-22.

Roberts, J. I., and Tonking, H. D.: 1933. A Preliminary Note on the Vector of Tropical Typhus in Kenya, East Africa M. J. **9:** 310-315.

Rocha Lima, H. da: 1916. Zur aetiologie des Fleckfiebers, Zentralbl. f. allg. Path., u. path. Anat.

Rocha Lima, H. da: 1916. Beobachtungen bei Flecktyphuslausen, Arch. f. Schiffs- u. Tropen-Hyg. **20:** 17.

Rocha Lima, H. da: 1916. Zur Aetiologie des Fleckfiebers, Klin. Wchnschr. **53:** 567-569.

Rocha Lima, H. da: 1916. Zum Nachweiss des Rickettsia prowazeki bei Fleckfieberkranken, München. med. Wchnschr. **64:** 33.

Rocha Lima, H. da: 1919. Die Ueber tragung des Ruckfallfiebers und des Fleckfiebers, Deutsche med. Wchnschr. **45:** 732.

Rocha Lima, H. da: 1918. Schutzimpfungsversuche gegen Fleckfieber, München. med. Wchnschr. **65:** 1454-1456.

Rocha Lima, H. da: 1930. Rickettsien. In Kolle, Kraus, and Uhlenhuth: Handbuch der Pathogenen Mikroorganism **8:** 1347-1368.

Rocha Lima, H. da, Reiss, J., and Silberschmidt, K.: 1939. Methoden der Virusforschung, In Handbuch d. biol. Arbeist-method. hrsg. von Abderhalden, II Abt. Volume 12, Division T.I.: 1347.

Rodriguez, H.: 1935. 120 necropsias de tifus exantematico, Arch. Chilenos de Morf. **1:** 1935.

Rogers, L., and Megaw, J. W. D.: 1944. Tropical Medicine, ed. 5, Baltimore, Williams & Wilkins Co., pp. 147-180.

Romeo, B. J.: 1946. Convalescence From Scrub Typhus, Bull. U. S. Army M. Dept. **6:** 167-173.

Rose, H. M., Duane, R. B., and Fischel, E. E.: 1945. The Treatment of Spotted Fever With Para-Aminobenzoic Acid, J. A. M. A. **129:** 1160-1161.

Rumreich, A. S.: 1933. The Typhus and Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever Group. Developments in Epidemiology and Clinical Considerations, J. A. M. A. **100:** 331-334.

Rumreich, A. A., Dyer, R. E., and Badger, L. F.: 1931. The Typhus Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever Group. An Epidemiological and Clinical Study in the Eastern and Southeastern States, Pub. Health Rep. **46:** 470-480.

Rutten, J.: 1936. La mortalité de missionaires avant et apres l'emploi du vaccin de Weigl, Pekin, Varia Dossiers de la Commission Synodale.

Rutten, J.: 1940. Weigl's Vaccine Against Typhus in Mongolia, Chinese M. J. **58:** 257.

Sangster, C. B., and Kay, H. B.: 1945. Scrub Typhus: Clinical Aspects, M. J. Australia **2:** 138-145.

Schüffner, W.: 1913. Pseudo-Typhus in Deli, Tr. 3rd Congr. Far Eastern Assoc. Trop. Med. p. 309.

Sergent, E., Foley, H., and Vialette, C.: 1914. Sur des formes microbiennes abondants dans le corps de poux infectés par le typhus exanthématique, et toujours absentes dans poux témoins, non typhiques, Mém. Soc. Biol. **77:** 101-103.

Settle, E. B., Pinkerton, H., and Corbett, A. J.: 1945. A Pathologic Study of Tsutsugamushi Disease (Scrub Typhus) With Notes on Clinicopathologic Correlation, J. Lab. & Clin. Med. **30:** 639-661.

Shankman, B.: 1946. Report of an Outbreak of Endemic Febrile Illness, Not Yet Identified, Occurring in New York City, New York State J. Med. **46:** 2155-2159.

Shepard, C. C.: 1947. An Outbreak of Q Fever in a Chicago Packing House, Am. J. Hyg. **46:** 185-192.

Shepard, C. C.: 1945. Typhus Fever: Antigen of the Rickettsiae of Typhus Fever and the Changes Produced by Heat, Nat. Inst. Health Bull. **183:** 93-110.

Shepard, C. C., and Topping, N. H.: 1945. Technic of a Precipitation Test for the Study of Typhus Fever, Nat. Inst. Health Bull. **183:** 87-92.

Shepard, C. C., and Topping, N. H.: 1947. Preparation of Suspensions of Rickettsiae From Infected Yolk Sacs Without the Use of Ether, J. Immunol. **55:** 97-102.

Shepard, C. C., and Wyckoff, R. W. G.: 1946. The Nature of the Soluble Antigen From Typhus Rickettsiae, Pub. Health Rep. **61:** 761-767.

Shkorbatov, V. I.: 1943. Experiments With Urine in Quick Diagnosis of Typhus Exanthematicus, J. Microbiol., Epid., Immunol. (1-2), (23-25).

Silva-Goytia, R.: 1944. Fijación de complemento con sueros de enfermos de tifo exantematico, Rev. d. inst. salub. y. enferm. trop. **5:** 241-245.

Smadel, J. E.: 1948. The Complement-Fixation and Agglutination Reaction in Rickettsial Diseases. Symposium on Rickettsial Diseases, December, 1946, American Association for the Advancement of Science.

Smadel, J. E., and Jackson, E. B.: 1947. Chloromycetin, an Antibiotic With Chemotherapeutic Activity in Experimental Rickettsial and Viral Infections, Science **106**: 418-419.

Smadel, J. E., Jackson, E. B., Bennett, B. L., and Rights, F. L.: 1946. A Toxic Substance Associated With the Gilliam Strain of R. Orientalis, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **62**: 138-140.

Smadel, J. E., Jackson, E. B., and Gauld, R. L.: 1947. Factors Influencing the Growth of Rickettsiae. I. Rickettsiostatic Effect of Streptomycin in Experimental Infections, J. Immunol. **57**: 273-284.

Smadel, J. E., Leon, A. P., Ley, H. L., and Varela, G.: 1948. Chloromycetin in the Treatment of Patients With Typhus Fever, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **68**: 12-19.

Smadel, J. E., Snyder, J. C., et al.: 1946. Chemotherapeutic Effect of Nitroakridin and Rutenol in Rickettsial Infections in Eggs and Mice, Federation Proc. **5**: 254.

Smadel, J. E., Snyder, J. C., Jackson, E. B., Fox, J. P., and Hamilton, H. L.: 1947. Chemotherapeutical Effects of Acridine Compounds in Experimental Rickettsial Infections, J. Immunol. **57**: 155-171.

Smadel, J. E., Woodward, T. E., Ley, H. L., Philip, C. B., Traub, R., Lewthwaite, R., and Savoor, S. R.: 1948. Chloromycetin in the Treatment of Scrub Typhus, Science **108**: 160-161.

Smith, D. J. W.: 1942. Studies in the Epidemiology of Q Fever. 10. Transmission of Q Fever by the Tick Ixodes Holocyclus (With Notes on Tick Paralysis in Bandicoots), Australian J. Exper. Biol. & M. Sc. **20**: 213-217.

Smith, D. J. W.: 1942. Studies in the Epidemiology of Q Fever. 11. Experimental Infection of the Ticks Haemaphysalis Bispinosa and Ornithodorus sp. with Rickettsia Burneti, Australian J. Exper. Biol. & M. Sc. **20**: 295-296.

Smith, D. J. W., and Derrick, E. H.: 1940. Studies in the Epidemiology of Q Fever. 1. The Isolation of Six Strains of Rickettsia Burneti From the Tick Haemaphysalis Humerosa, Australian J. Exper. Biol. & Med. Sc. **18**: 1-8.

Smith, P. K.: 1946. The Use of Para-Aminobenzoic Acid in Endemic (Murine) Typhus, J. A. M. A. **131**: 1114-1117.

Snyder, J. C.: 1948. The Treatment of the Rickettsial Diseases in Man. Symposium on Rickettsial Diseases, December, 1946, American Association for the Advancement of Science.

Snyder, J. C., Maier, J., and Anderson, C. R.: 1942. Report to the Division of Medical Sciences of the National Research Council, Washington, D. C., Dec. 26.

Snyder, J. C., Yeomans, A., Clement, D. H., Murray, E. S., Zarafonetis, C. J. D., and Tierney, A.: 1947. Further Observations on the Treatment of Typhus Fever With Para-Aminobenzoic Acid, Ann. Inst. Med. **27**: 1-27.

Snyder, J. C., and Zarafonetis, C. J. D.: 1945. Effect of Para-Aminobenzoic Acid in Experimental Tsutsugamushi Disease (Scrub Typhus), Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **60**: 115-117.

Sokolow, M., and Garland, L. H.: 1945. Cardiovascular Disturbance in Tsutsugamushi Disease, U. S. Nav. M. Bull. **45**: 1054-1068.

Soper, F. L., Davis, W. A., Markham, F. S., Riehl, L. A., and Buck, P.: 1945. Louse Power Studies in North Africa, Arch. Inst. Pasteur d'Algérie **23**: 183-223.

Soper, F. L., Davis, W. A., et al.: 1947. Typhus Fever in Italy, 1943-1945, and Its Control With Louse Powder, Am. J. Hyg. **45**: 305-334.

Spencer, R. R.: 1929. Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever, J. Infect. Dis. **44**: 257-276.

Spencer, R. R., and Parker, R. R.: 1930. Studies on Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever, Hygienic Laboratory Bulletin **154**: 116.

Spicknall, Ch. G., Huebner, R. J., Finger, J. A., and Blocker, W. P.: 1947. Report of an Outbreak of Q Fever at the National Institute of Health. I. Clinical Features, Ann. Int. Med. **27**: 28-40.

Spielmeyer, W.: 1919. Die zentralen Veranderungen beim Fleckfieber und ihre Bedeutung fur die Histopathologie der Hirnrinde, Ztschr. f. d. ges. Neurol. u. Psychia. **47**: 1.

Starzyk, J.: Vitalité, toxicité et pouvoir d'immunisation de Rickettsia Prowazeki conservées hors de l'organisme du pou, en milieu liquide et en miliew sec, Compt. rend. Soc. de biol. **123**: 1221-1225.

Starzyk, J.: 1938. Vitalité, virulence et pouvoir immunisant de Rickettsia Prowazeki conservées en dehors de l'organisme du pou, Arch. Inst. Pasteur de Tunis **27**: 263-281.

Steele, J. M., MacLimans, W. F., Grant, C. W., and Tullis, J. L.: 1946. Studies in Tsutsugamushi Disease (Scrub Typhus). V. The Effect of Methylthionine Chloride (Methylene Blue) on Tsutsugamushi Disease in Man, Nav. M. Res. Inst. pp. 1-22.

Steinhaus, E. A.: 1946. Insect Microbiology. Ithaca, N. Y., Comstock Publishing Co.

Steinhaus, E. A., and Parker, R. R.: 1944. Fiebre petequial experimental de las Montañas Rocallosas, resultado del tratamiento con algunas drogas, Rev. Fac. de med., Bogotá **12**: 402-404.

Strong, R. P., Shattuck, G. C., Sellards, A. W., Zinsser, H., and Hopkins, J. G.: 1920. Typhus Fever With Particular Reference to the Serbian Epidemic, Cambridge, Mass., Harvard University Press.

Strong, R. P., Swift, H. F., Opie, E. L., MacNeal, W. J., Baetjer, W., Pappenheimer. A. M., Peacock, A. D., and Rapport, D.: 1918. Trench Fever. Report of Commission, Medical Research Committee, American Red Cross, London, Oxford University Press.

Suarez, E., Palacios, R., Chavez, F., Avendaño, O., and Sesnic, R.: 1935. La enfermedad inaparente como reservorio de virus tífico, Rev. d. Inst. bact. de Chile **5**: 1-7.

Symposium held at the Harvard School of Public Health: 1941. Virus and Rickettsial Diseases, 1939 (June 12-17), London, Cambridge University Press, pp. 789-907.

Tattersall, R. N.: 1945. Tsutsugamushi Fever on the India-Burma Border, Lancet **2**: 392-394.

Tattersall, R. N., and Parry, T. E.: 1945. An Outbreak of Typhus Fever (OXK) in India, Indian M. Gaz. **80**: 433-437.

Tierney, N. A.: 1946. Effect of Para-Aminobenzoic Acid in Tsutsugamushi Disease, J. A. M. A. **131**: 280-285.

Tierney, N. A.: 1947. The Effect of Para-Aminobenzoic Acid in Rickettsial Diseases, South M. J. **409**: 81-83.

Tierney, N. A., and Yeomans, A.: 1946. Metabolic Studies in Louse-Borne Typhus; Observations on Serum Electrolyte Pattern, Serum Protein Partition and Nitrogen Balance, J. Clin. Investigation **35**: 822-837.

Topping, N. H.: 1939. Experimental Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever and Endemic Typhus Treated With Prontosil or Sulfapyridine, Pub. Health Rep. **54**: 1143-1147.

Topping, N. H.: 1940. Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever; Treatment of Infected Laboratory Animals With Immune Rabbit Serum, Pub. Health Rep. **55**: 41-46.

Topping, N. H.: 1941. Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever. A Note on Some Aspects of Its Epidemiology, Pub. Health Rep. **56**: 1699-1703.

Topping, N. H.: 1945. Cross Immunity Between Four Strains of Tsutsugamushi Disease (Scrub Typhus), Pub. Health Rep. **60**: 945-947.

Topping, N. H.: 1945. Note on the Preparation of Epidemic Typhus Vaccine, Nat. Inst. Health Bull. **183**: 30-32.

Topping, N. H.: 1947. The Rickettsiae, Ann. Rev. Microbiol. **1**: 333-350.

Topping, N. H., Bengtson, I. A., and Henderson, R. G.: 1945. Epidemic Typhus Fever: a Study of the Antigenicity of Various Strains of Typhus Virus, Nat. Inst. Health Bull. **183**: 57-64.

Topping, N. H., Bengtson, I. A., and Shear, M. J.: 1945. Studies of Typhus Fever Vaccines, Nat. Inst. Health Bull. **183**: 1924.

Topping, N. H., Heilig, R., and Naidu, V. R.: 1943. A Note on the Rickettsioses in India, Pub. Health Rep. **58**: 1208-1210.

Topping, N. H., and Shepard, C. C.: 1946. The Preparation of Antigens From Yolk Sacs Infected With Rickettsiae, Pub. Health Rep. **61**: 701-707.

Topping, N. H., Shepard, C. C., and Irons, J. V.: 1947. Q Fever in the United States; Epidemiologic Studies of an Outbreak Among Stock Handlers and Slaughterhouse Workers, J. A. M. A. **133**: 813-815.

Varela, G., and Parada Gay, M. A.: 1933. Consideraciones sobre el tifo exantemático y la producción de orquitis con la cepa de Tunez, Medicina, México **13**: 552.

Varela, G., and Zozaya, J.: 1945. Distribución en Mexico de las cepas de tifo exantemático hasta ahora estudiadas, Rev. d. Inst. salub. y enferm. trop. **6**: 11-14.

Veintemillas, F.: 1935. El tifus exantemático boliviano o el tifo altiplánico, La Paz, Escuela Tipográfica Salesiana.

Veintemillas, F.: 1939. Vaccination Against Typhus Fever With the Zinsser-Castañeda Vaccine, J. Immunol. **36**: 339.

Veintemillas, F.: 1944. Tratado sobre las Rickettsiasis y las fiebres exantemáticas. El tifus del altiplano, La Paz, Escuela Tipográfica Salesiana.

Versín Castellón, M.: 1934-1935. Histo-patología de la piel en el tifus exantemático y sus relaciones con los nervios intercostales y ganglios intervertebrales, Bol. Soc. Biol. Concepción, Chile **8 & 9**: 41-54.

Weigl, R., 1920. Studies on Rickettsia Prowazeki, Przglad. Epid. **1**: 15.

Weigl, R.: 1930. Die methoden der aktiven Fleckfieber Immunisierung, Bull. Acad. Polon. Sc., Med. **4**: 25-62.

Weigl, R.: 1933. Faits d'Observation et experiences demonstrant l'efficacite du vaccin a rickettsia pour la prevention du typhus, Arch. Inst. Pasteur. de Tunis **22**: 315-320.

Weil, E., and Felix, A.: 1916. Zur serologischen Diagnose des Fleckfiebers, Wien. klin. Wchnschr. **29**: 33-35.

Weiss, L. J.: 1943. Electron-Micrographs of Rickettsiae of Typhus Fever, J. Immunol. **47**: 353-357.

Wertman, K.: 1948. The Weil-Felix Reaction. Symposium on Rickettsial Diseases, December, 1946, American Association for the Advancement of Science.

Wiley, J. S.: Typhus Control Program of the U. S. Public Health Service, July 1-11.

Wiley, J. S.: 1946. Recent Developments in Murine Typhus Fever Control, Am. J. Pub. Health **36**: 974-983.

Williams, Roger W.: 1944. A Check List of the Mite Vectors and Animal Reservoirs of Tsutsugamushi Disease, Am. J. Trop. Med. **24**: 355-357.

Wilson, L. W., and Chowning, W. M.: 1902. The So-Called "Spotted Fever" of the Rocky Mountains. A Preliminary Report to the Montana State Board of Health, J. A. M. A. **39**: 131-136.

Wohlrab, V. W.: 1939. Beiträge zur chemotherapie des Fleckfiebers, Arb. a.d. staatl. Inst. f. exper. Therap. **38**: 85.

Wohlrab, V. W.: 1940. Experimentelle chemotherapie des Fleckfiebers, Arb. a. d. Staatl. Inst. f. exper. Therap. **40**: 15.

Wohlrab, R.: 1941. Immunisierung gegen Fleckfieber, Med. Klin. **21**: 532.

Wolbach, S. B.: 1919. Studies on Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever, J. M. Research **41**: 1-197.

Wolbach, S. B.: 1940. The Rickettsial Diseases. A General Survey. In Virus and Rickettsial Diseases, Cambridge, Mass., Harvard University Press, pp. 789-816.

Wolbach, S. B.: 1948. The Pathology of Typhus Fever, Boston, Am. Assoc. Advanc. Sci.

Wolbach, S. B., and Todd, J. L.: 1920. Note sur l'etiologie et l'anatomie pathologique du typhus exanthématique au Mexique, Ann. Inst. Pasteur **34**: 153-158.

Wolbach, S. B., Todd, J. L., and Palfrey, F. W.: 1922. The Etiology and Pathology of Typhus, Cambridge, Mass., Harvard University Press.

Wolman, M.: 1944. Treatment of Typhus With Antityphus Horse Serum, Lancet **2**: 210-212.

Woodward, T. E.: 1948. Clinical Course of Murine Typhus. Symposium on Rickettsial Diseases, December, 1946, American Association for the Advancement of Science.

Woodward, T. E., and Bland, E. F.: 1944. Clinical Observations in Typhus Fever With Special Reference to the Cardiovascular System, J. A. M. A. **126**: 287-293.

Yeomans, A.: 1947. Progress in Rickettsial Disease Therapy, With Special Reference to Para-Aminobenzoic Acid, Lancet **67**: 60-63.

Yeomans, A.: 1947. Typhus Fever. In Oxford Medicine, London, Oxford University Press, vol. 5, pp. 439-466.

Yeomans, A.: 1948. The Symptomatology, Clinical Course and Management of Louse-Borne Typhus Fever. Symposium on Rickettsial Diseases, December, 1946, American Association for the Advancement of Science.

Yeomans, A., Snyder, J. C., Murray, E. S., Zarafonetis, C. J. D., and Ecke, R. S.: The Therapeutic Effect of Para-Aminobenzoic Acid in Louse-Borne Typhus Fever, J. A. M. A. **126**: 349-356.

Yeomans, A., Snyder, J. C., Murray, E. S., Ecke, R. S., and Zarafonetis, J. C. D.: 1945. Azotemia in Typhus Fever, Ann. Int. Med. **23**: 711-753.

Yu, I.: Das Wesen des Fleckfiebervirus im Kleinderlauskörper, Zentralbl. f. Bakt. (Abt. 1) **121**: 304, 1931.

Zarafonetis, C. J. D. 1948. The Serological Reactions in the Rickettsial Diseases in Man, General Considerations. Symposium on Rickettsial Diseases, December, 1946, American Association for the Advancement of Science.

Zia, S.: 1934. The Cultivation of Mexican and European Typhus Rickettsiae in the Chorio-Allantoic Membrane of the Chick Embryo, Am. J. Path. **10**: 211-218.

Zinsser, H.: 1935. Rats, Lice and History, Boston, Little, Brown & Co.

Zinsser, H.: 1937. The Rickettsial Diseases, Varieties, Epidemiology and Geographical Distribution, Am. J. Hyg. **25**: 430-463.

Zinsser, H.: 1940. Epidemiology and Immunity of the Rickettsial Diseases. In Virus and Rickettsial Diseases, Cambridge, Mass., Harvard University Press, pp. 872-907.

Zinsser, H., and Castañeda, M. R.: 1930. Studies on Typhus Fever. II. Studies on the Etiology of Mexican Typhus Fever, J. Exper. Med. **52**: 649-659.

Zinsser, H., and Castañeda, M. R.: 1931. Studies on Typhus Fever. V. Active Immunization Against Typhus Fever With Formalized Virus, J. Exper. Med. **53**: 325-331.

Zinsser, H., and Castañeda, M. R.: 1932. A Method of Obtaining Large Amount of Rickettsia Prowazeki by X-ray Radiation of Rats, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **29**: 840-844.

Zinsser, H., and Castañeda, M. R.: 1933. On the Isolation From a Case of Brill's Disease of a Typhus Strain Resembling the European Type, New England J. Med. **209**: 815-819.

Zinsser, H., and Castañeda, M. R.: 1933. Studies on Typhus Fever. XI. A Report on th Properties of the Serum of a Horse Immunized With Killed Formolized Rickettsi J. Exper. Med. **57**: 391-398.

Zinsser, H., and Castañeda, M. R.: 1934. Active and Passive Immunization in Typh Fever, Proc. Nat. Acad. Sc. **20**: 9-11.

Zinsser, H., & Castañeda, M. R.: 1934. Studies on Typhus Fever. XII. The Passiv Immunization of Guinea Pigs Infected With European Virus With Serum of Horse Treated With Killed Rickettsia of the Mexican Type, J. Exper. Med. 59 471-478.

Zinsser, H., Fitzpatrick, F., and Wei, H.: 1939. A Study of Rickettsiae Grown on Aga Tissue Cultures, J. Exper. Med. **69**: 179-190.

Zinsser, H., and Macchiavello, A.: 1936. Enlarged Tissue Cultures of European Typhu Rickettsiae for Vaccine Production, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **35**: 84-87.

Zinsser, H., and Macchiavello, A.: 1936. Further Studies on Typhus Fever. On Homo ogous Active Immunization Against the European Strain of Typhus Fever, J Exper. Med. **64**: 673-687.

Zinsser, H., and Schoenbach, E. B.: 1937. Studies on the Physiological Conditions Pre vailing in Tissue Cultures, J. Exper. Med. **66**: 207.

Zinsser, H., Wei, H., and Fitzpatrick, F. K.: 1937. Agar Slant Tissue Cultures o Typhus Rickettsiae (Both Types), Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **37**: 604-606.

Bibliographical References on Insecticides and Rodenticides

Annand, P. N., et al.: 1944. Tests Conducted by the Bureau of Entomology and Plan Quarantine to Appraise the Usefulness of DDT as an Insecticide, J. Econ Entomol. **37**: 125-159.

Committee on Medical Research, Office of Scientific Research and Development: In secticides and Insect Repellents Developed for the Armed Forces at the Orlando Fla., Laboratory, Trop. Dis. Rep. 19, Revision, July 1, 1945.

Gresley, D.: 1948. Methods of Application of DDT. Symposium on Rickettsial Diseases December, 1946, American Association for the Advancement of Science.

Knipling, E. F.: 1948. Insecticides, Especially DDT. Symposium on Rickettsial Diseases December, 1946, American Association for the Advancement of Science.

Macchiavello, A.: Peste bubónica en el Perú. XI. Estudio experimental sobre la acción de DDT y "1080" sobre pulgas y roedores, Files Pan. Am. San. Bureau.

Roark, R. C.: 1944. A List of Publications on 2,2-bis (Parachlorophenyl)-1,1,1,-Trichloro ethane (Called DDT) From 1874 to April 30, 1944, Inclusive, Bureau of Entomol and Plant Quarantine, Div. of Insecticide Investigations, June.

Roark, R. C.: 1945. A Second List of Publications on DDT, Bureau of Entomol. and Plant Quarantine, May.

Roark, R. C.: 1945. A Third List of Publications on DDT, January Through June, 1945 Bureau of Entomol. and Plant Quarantine, November.

Roark, R. C., and McIndoo, N. R.: 1946. A Digest of the Literature on DDT Through April 30, 1944, Bureau of Entomol. and Plant Quarantine, May.

Roark, R. C., and McIndoo, N. R.: 1946. A Second Digest of the Literature on DDT (May 1, 1944, to Dec. 31, 1944), Bureau of Entomol. and Plant Quarantine, May

Roark, R. C., and McIndoo, N. R.: 1947. A Third Digest of the Literature on DDT (January Through June, 1945), Bureau of Entomol. & Plant Quarantine, June

Storer, T. I., and Margery, P. M.: 1946. Bibliography of Rodent Control, Nat. Res Council, Rep. No. 182, June.

Storer, T. I., and Margery, P. M.: 1948. Bibliography of Rodent Control (First Supplement), U. S. Public Health Service.

CHAPTER 36

RICKETTSIALPOX

Morris Greenberg

DEFINITION

Rickettsialpox is a disease of rickettsial origin first recognized in New rk City in 1946 (Greenberg et al., 1947a). It is characterized clinically by e appearance of an initial lesion, followed in about one-half to one week by acute onset of illness with fever, headache, backache, and other symptoms, d then by a generalized papulovesicular rash. The entire course, from initial sion to recovery, is about 3 weeks.

CLINICAL FINDINGS

The **incubation period** is 1 to 2 weeks.

The **initial lesion** is a rounded, firm, red papule which grows until it at- ins a diameter of 1 to 1.5 cm. The center becomes vesiculated and the vesicle en dries and shrinks, forming a black eschar. The skin around the papule normal at first, but later becomes erythematous. There are no subjective mptoms. After about 3 weeks the scab falls off, leaving a small scar. The gional nodes usually become enlarged but are only slightly tender. The imary lesion may appear anywhere on the body and probably represents e site of entry of infection.

The onset of symptoms is sudden, with fever, chills or chilly sensations, eats, headache, backache, lassitude, and photophobia. The fever frequently aches 103° to 104° F., with morning remissions, and lasts, with the other mptoms, for a week.

The **rash** appears a few days after onset of symptoms. The lesions re- mble the initial lesion but are smaller. At first they are maculopapular but come vesicular. The vesicles then dry and the scabs fall off without leaving scar. They are generalized and discrete and may appear on mucous mem- anes. They are rarely seen on the palms and soles. They may be abundant, derate, or scanty in number, and last about a week. There are no subjective mptoms.

There are no other unusual physical signs or symptoms. Pulse follows e fever, respirations are normal, heart and lungs are normal on physical amination and x-ray. There have been no complications and no deaths.

LABORATORY FINDINGS

Except for a leucopenia, the usual laboratory findings are negative. The glutination reactions for typhoid, paratyphoid A and B, tularemia, brucello- and leptospirosis are likewise negative. The Weil-Felix reaction with *oteus* OX19, OX2, and OXK is negative during convalescence as well as during the acute stage, as is the heterophile antibody reaction. Complement fixation tests are negative for syphilis and psittacosis, and for murine, epidemic, and scrub typhus.

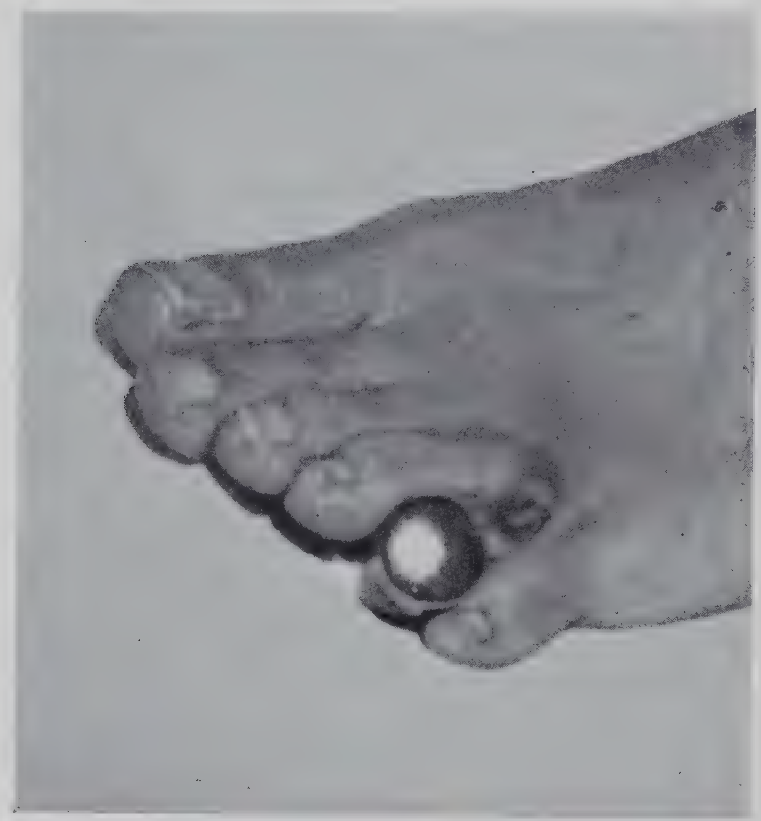


Fig. 221.—Initial lesion of rickettsialpox in interdigital space between the fourth and fifth toes. (A button has been placed between the toes to bring out the lesion more clearly.)

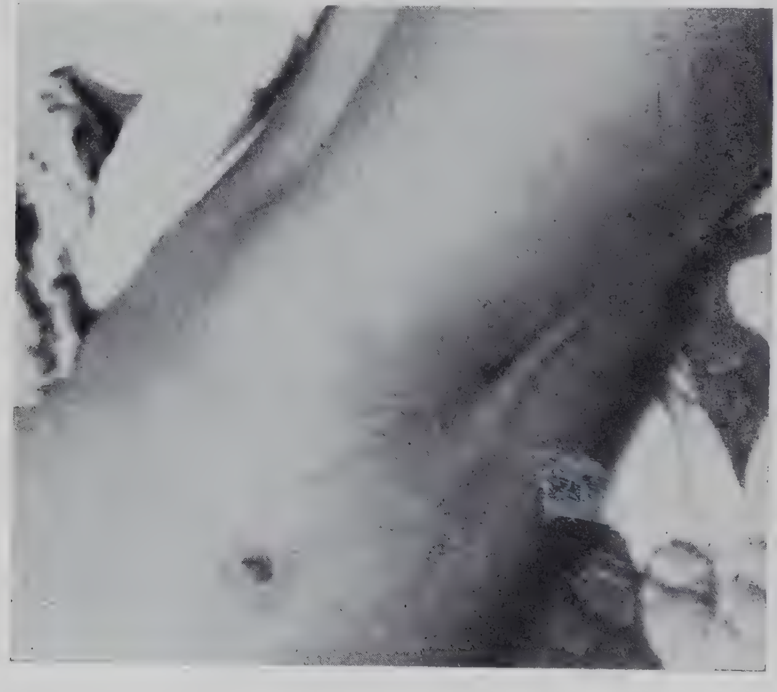
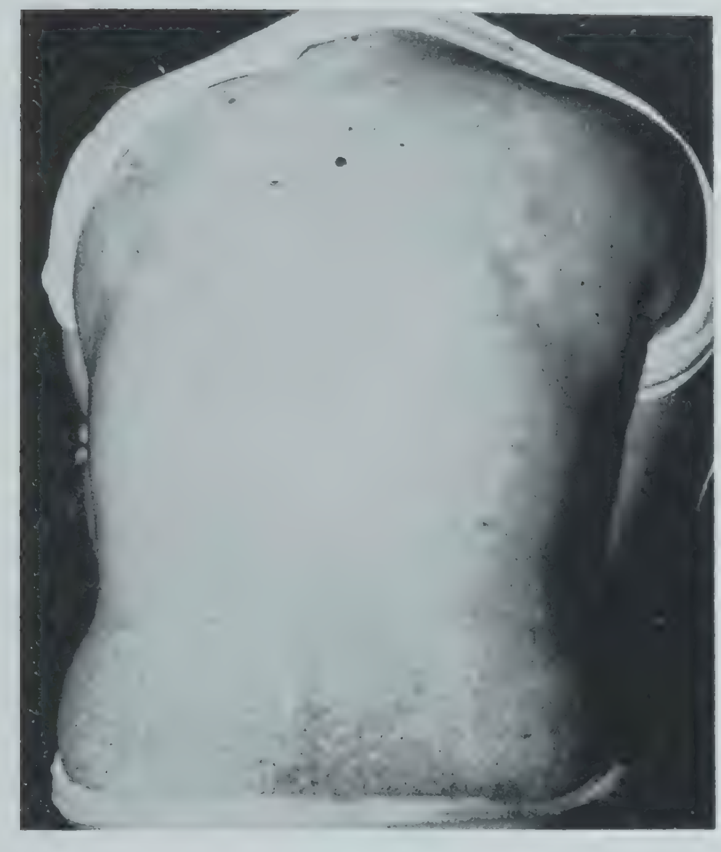


Fig. 222.—Primary lesion on left arm in crusted stage.

PATHOLOGY

Biopsies of skin lesions and of a regional lymph node (Dolgopol, 1948) showed essentially the pathology of rickettsial disease. In the section of skin



ig. 223.—Rash of rickettsialpox. The rash is more marked over the lower back and sides.

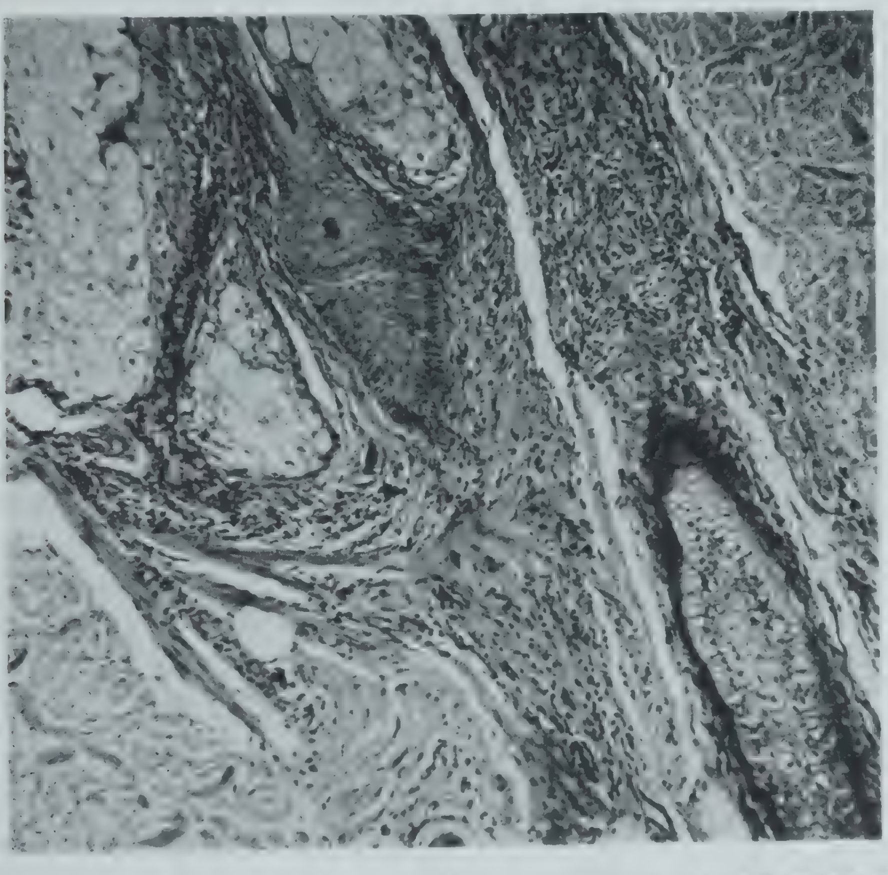


Fig. 224.—Biopsy of primary lesion. Mononuclear cellular infiltrates around a hair d and sebaceous glands. Dark clumps beneath a sebaceous gland are mast cells. (Courtesy Vera B. Bolgopol.)

there were groups of mononuclear cells around the blood vessels. The capillaries showed endothelial swelling which bulged into the lumen. In some of the capillaries, strands of fibrin were observed. Mast cells were seen in the perivascular cellular aggregations, around hair shafts and sweat glands and in the derma. Rickettsia-like bodies were not observed.

DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

Rickettsialpox should be differentiated from the other rickettsial diseases and from some other diseases that it resembles clinically, as follows:

Chicken Pox.—This is the disease with which it has most frequently been confused, because the rash in both is vesicular. In chicken pox, however, there is no initial lesion, the papule becomes vesiculated in its entirety, so that at certain stages only vesicles are seen, and fever does not usually precede the rash. The complement fixation test is specific for rickettsialpox.

Smallpox.—This disease is much more severe than rickettsialpox. Headache and backache precede the fever. The rash is vesicular at first but becomes pustular and lasts a long time. Symptoms are severe and the mortality rate is high.

Infectious Mononucleosis.—A rash occurs rarely in infectious mononucleosis. The blood picture is typical and the heterophile antibody reaction is positive.

Other Rickettsial Diseases.—The other rickettsial diseases are characterized by rashes which are macular, maculopapular, or petechial. Only in rickettsialpox are the lesions typically vesicular. Rocky Mountain spotted fever, epidemic typhus, and tsutsugamushi or scrub typhus are more serious diseases with fairly high mortality rate. The Weil-Felix reaction is positive with *Proteus* OX19 in Rocky Mountain spotted fever, epidemic and endemic typhus, and boutonneuse fever, and with *Proteus* OXK in scrub typhus. Only in rickettsialpox is the Weil-Felix test negative. Finally, the complement fixation tests are specific, except that some crossing occurs with Rocky Mountain spotted fever.

ETIOLOGY

A rickettsial organism *(Rickettsia akari)* can be recovered from the blood of patients in the acute stage of the disease (Huebner et al., 1946a). Mice which have received injections with such blood show inactivity, rapid breathing, and ruffled fur approximately 9 days later. Pathologically, they show a large edematous liver and a very large engorged spleen. Suspensions of liver and spleen produce similar symptoms in other mice when passed serially. In guinea pigs the suspensions cause scrotal swelling and fever in 3 to 4 days. Suspensions of brain from the mice cause symptoms in other mice. Brain suspensions will kill developing chick embryos in about a week, when injected into yolk sacs, and films made from the yolk sacs show numerous intracellular and extracellular tiny diplobacilli which stain well by the Macchiavell method. Yolk sac suspension is easily transferred to other eggs and causes illness in mice and in guinea pigs similar to that caused by animal passage ma erial. It does not grow on acellular media. The recovered organisms show a high degree of specificity when tested by the complement fixation reaction against sera from normal individuals, recovered patients, and cases of other diseases including other rickettsial infections, except for cross-reactions with Rocky Mountain spotted fever. Significant rises in titer can be demonstrated in patients when blood is obtained early and later in the disease. The sera of recovered patients will also give positive results when tested against Rocky Mountain spotted fever antigen in about 80 per cent of the cases, usually in lower titers, but will give negative results if tested against other antigens, including those of the other rickettsial diseases. The sera of recovered patients give negative Weil-Felix tests with antigens of *Proteus* OX19, OX2, and OXK, except occasionally, when they are positive in low titers.

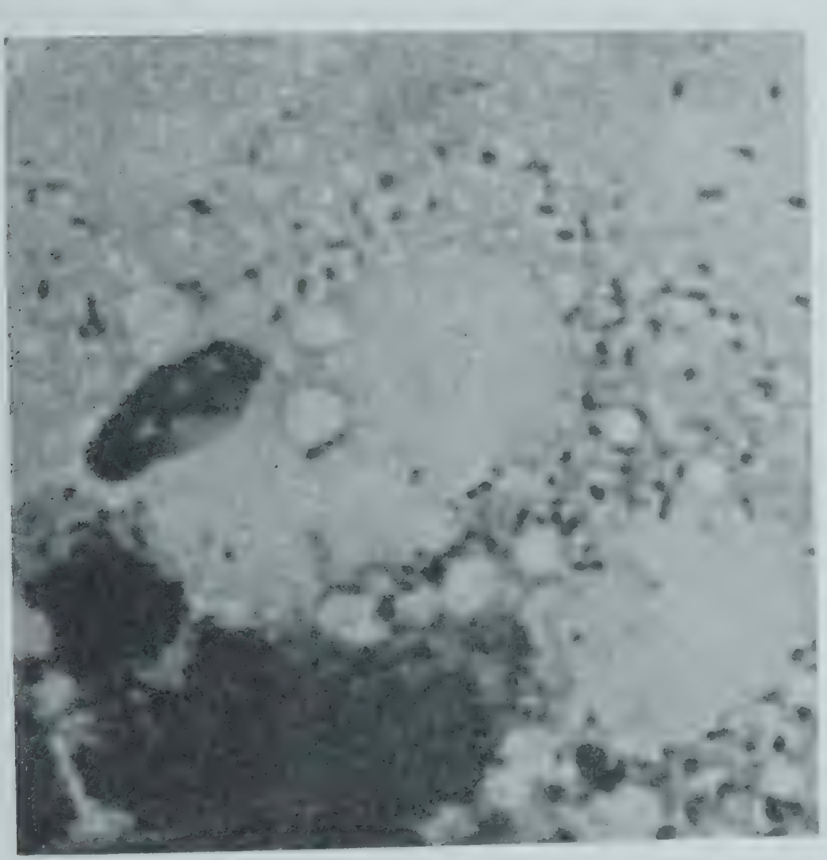


Fig. 225.—Smear of *Rickettsia akari* from yolk sac. Stained by the Machiavello method.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

The original study was made in 1946 in New York City (Greenberg et al., 1947b). An epidemic of an exanthematous disease occurred in one of the boroughs of the city and was sharply confined to a group of 69 three-storied buildings in 3 blocks, each block consisting of 23 connected houses. Approximately 480 families, comprising 2,000 individuals, occupied these dwellings. Over a 3-month period, 124 cases were found, an incidence rate of 6.2 per cent, equally divided between the sexes and approximately the same in children and adults. The residents had lived in the houses for years, and very few had been away from the city in the month preceding the outbreak. Occupations varied widely, meals were not eaten in common, and food supplies were obtained from the same shops by the sick and the well. Milk was pasteurized the water supply came from the city system and was adequately chlorinated and the plumbing was in good sanitary condition.

The environmental sanitation was good both in the houses and in th neighborhood; ticks and mosquitoes were absent except for some specimens of *Culex pipiens* larvae found in a mosquito breeding impoundment in the basement of an unfinished house near by and specimens of adults of the same species found in some of the basements.

The epidemiologic investigation incriminated the dwellings themselves as the site of the source of infection. Numerous house or field mice, *Mus musculus*, were observed in apartments, basements, halls, and courtyards and were heard in the walls of the buildings. They were trapped and combed for ectoparasites. These were recovered and identified as *Allodermanyssus sanguineus* (Hirst). Similar mites were recovered in mouse harborages and on incinerator walls in the basements. They were blood-sucking arthropods. Smears made from those engorged showed mammalian erythrocytes.

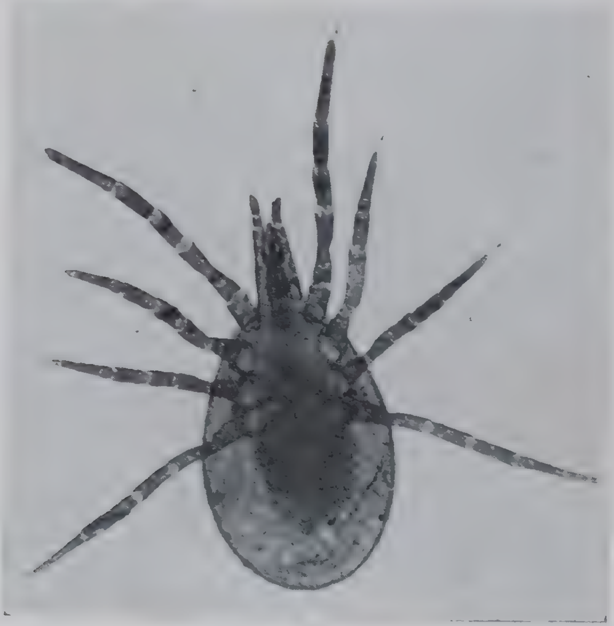


Fig. 226.—*Allodermanyssus sanguineus* (Hirst). Adult stage.

Mites from a number of pools were ground and injected intraperitoneally into male guinea pigs (Huebner et al., 1946b). On the fourth day, fever and scrotal swelling were noted. Tunica washings from these pigs were injected into guinea pigs and mice and caused characteristic illness. They likewise killed chick embryos 7 days after inoculation into yolk sac, and smears from the yolk sac, stained by the Macchiavello method, showed typical rickettsia-like organisms. Used as antigens in the complement fixation test, they gave results similar to the organisms recovered from the patients' blood.

The final link in the chain was forged when *R. akari* was also recovered from mice trapped in the buildings (Huebner et al., 1947). The recovered organisms were identical with those obtained from the blood of patients and from trapped mites. It appeared that infected mites survived and propagated y obtaining blood meals from mice, which served as a reservoir. The surival and multiplication of mice was simplified by the presence of incinerators n the buildings. These were not fired frequently, and food accumulated in hem, so that they became excellent harborages for the animals. When the nfected mites were accidentally introduced into the apartments or when enants visited the basements, the mites attached themselves to the human bengs and infected them.

Since the outbreak was first studied, cases have been reported in 4 oroughs of the city (Greenberg, 1948). During 1946 (June to December), 77 cases were reported, including those in the epidemic area; in 1947, 157 ases; in 1948, 141 cases, and in 1949, 107 cases. Most of the sporadic cases ave come from the boroughs of Manhattan and Bronx. Multiple cases n a house are common. Apparently the disease has existed in the city for a ong time without being recognized. Conditions being ripe, an epidemic ocurred in a restricted area, which focused itself on the attention of the health uthorities. No cases have as yet been reported outside of New York City.

TREATMENT

Rickettsialpox is a self-limited disease. The acute symptoms last so short time that specific therapy is not essential. The symptoms yield readily to he ordinary antipyretics and sedatives. Aureomycin acts specifically in this s in other rickettsial diseases, and chloramphenicol and terramycin, although ot sufficiently tried, appear to act likewise (Rose et al., 1950).

References

olgopol, Vera B.: 1948. Histologic Changes in Rickettsialpox, Am. J. Path. 24: 119-133.

reenberg, Morris: 1948. Endemic Features of Rickettsialpox, New York State J. Med. 48: 502-506.

reenberg, Morris, Pellitteri, Ottavio, Klein, Irving F., and Huebner, Robert J.: 1947a. Rickettsialpox—A Newly Recognized Disease. II. Clinical Observations, J. A. M. A. 133: 901-906.

reenberg, Morris, Pellitteri, Ottavio, and Jellison, William J.: 1947b. Rickettsialpox—A Newly Recognized Disease. III. Epidemiology, Am. J. Pub. Health 37: 860-868.

uebner, Robert J., Stamps, Peggy, and Armstrong, Charles: 1946a. Rickettsialpox—A Newly Recognized Rickettsial Disease. I. Isolation of the Etiologic Agent, Pub. Health Rep. 61: 1604-1614.

uebner, Robert J., Jellison, William L., and Pomerantz, Charles: 1946b. Rickettsialpox—A Newly Recognized Disease. IV. Isolation of a Rickettsia, Apparently Identical With the Causative Agent of Rickettsialpox, From Allodermanyssus Sanguineus, A Rodent Mite, Pub. Health Rep. 61: 1677-1682.

ebner, Robert J., Jellison, William L., and Armstrong, Charles: 1947. Rickettsialpox—A Newly Recognized Disease. V. Recovery of Rickettsia Akari From a House Mouse (Mus Musculus), Pub. Health Rep. 62: 777-780.

ose, Harry M., Kneeland, Yale, Jr., and Gibson, Count Dillon: 1950. Treatment of Rickettsialpox With Aureomycin, Am. J. Med. 9: 300-307.

CHAPTER 37

HELMINTHIASIS

(A) GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS; (B) NEMATODIASIS OR DISEASES CAUSED BY NEMATODES OR ROUNDWORMS (ASCARIASIS, ENTEROBIASIS OR PINWORM INFECTION, STRONGYLOIDIASIS, NECATORIASIS AND ANCYLOSTOMIASIS OR HOOKWORM DISEASE, TRICHURIASIS OR WHIPWORM INFECTION)

PEDRO KOURÍ

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

Helminthology is the study of worm parasites, or helminths. General helminthology has progressed considerably in recent years. We shall here consider only those helminths parasitic to man.

Although the classification of the helminths used in this section does not always exactly follow zoological classification, we have adopted it for its simplicity and practical value in clinical work.* For classification of the Helminths, see Gradwohl and Kourí (1948) and Kourí and Basnuevo (1949).

HISTORY OF HELMINTHOLOGY

In 1838, Ancylostoma was discovered by Dubini in the intestines of the cadaver in a young man in a hospital in Milan.

In 1851, *Schistosoma haematobium* was discovered by Bilharz, in Egypt, in the blood of the portal vein of man and was considered the causal agent of Egyptian hematuria.

In 1835, *Trichinella spiralis* was found in man by Owen in England; later, in 1846, it was found by Leidy in pigs.

Between 1852 and 1863, following the experiments of von Siebold, Küchenmeister, Leuckart, and Naunyn, the life cycle of *Echinococcus granulosus* was described.

In 1861, Leuckart, in 1863, Mosler, and others explained the life cycle of *Taenia saginata,* while that of *T. solium* was described by van Beneden in 1853, Haubner and Küchenmeister in 1855, and Leuckart in 1856.

In 1869 Fedtschenko, in Turkestan, showed that the larvae of *Dracunculus medinensis* penetrate into the *Cyclops coronatus,* where they undergo metamorphoses.

In 1873, Weinland suspected *Lymnaea truncatula* as the intermediate host of *Fasciola hepatica,* but experimental proof was made independently by Leuckart in Germany and Thomas in England in 1883, who described the complete life cycle.

In 1882, Leuckart recognized that *Strongyloides intestinalis* and *S. stercoralis* were the parasitic and the free-living forms of the same nematode.

In 1888, Perroncito, and in 1886-1887 Leichtenstern, first suggested the life cycle of *Ancylostoma duodenale,* but Looss, in 1896-1897, demonstrated penetration of the skin by the infectious larval form, and its migrations into the lungs, trachea, and pharynx, before localization in the intestine, where it develops into the adult stage.

---

*Editor's note: The original nomenclature of Dr. Kourí has been changed in some places to conform to the more generally accepted usage in the literature on tropical medicine.

In 1902, Stiles and Ashford simultaneously discovered a new hookworm, *Necator americanus,* as the cause of retarded mental and physical condition of the ''poor whites'' of the South in the United States (Stiles) and ''tropical anemia'' in Puerto Rico (Ashford).

In 1909-1913, Miyagawa, Fujinami, and Miyairi and Suzuki showed the intermediate host of *Schistosoma japonicum* to be a mollusk of the genus Oncomelania, and proved that the furcocercariae enter through the skin. In 1915, Leiper described the complete life cycle of *S. haematobium* and of *S. mansoni.*

In 1915, Robles, of Guatemala, noted for the first time the presence of onchocerciasis in America, and suspected the intermediate host to be a Simulium.

In 1916, Stewart and, in 1920-1921, Ramson and Foster, demonstrated the migrations of the larvae of *Ascaris lumbricoides* in hepatic and pulmonary studies.

In 1910-1917, Kobayashi, 1918 Muto, 1925-1926 Nagano, 1924-1927 Faust and Khaw described the life cycle of *Clonorchis sinensis.* In 1915-1919, Nakagawa, 1906 Yoshida, 1917 Ando, in 1918-1921 Kobayashi and other Japanese authors described the life cycle of *Paragonimus westermani;* and in 1917, Yokogawa, Katsurada, and Muto, the life cycle of *Metagonimus yokogawai.*

In 1917-1918, Janicki and Rosen described the complete life cycle of *Diphyllobothrium latum;* the last larval stages in the fish had been known since Braun first suggested it in 1883.

In 1915, Leiper proved the intermediate host of *Loa loa* to be a Chrysops, and Kleine incriminated two African varieties: *Chrysops dimidiata* and *C. silacea.* In 1926, Blacklock described the vector of *Onchocerca volvulus* in Africa as the *Simulium damnosum.* In 1927-1928, Sharp was able to follow the complete life cycle of *Dipetalonema (Acanthocheilonema) perstans* in *Culicoides austeni* and *C. grahami,* and in 1931 Strong showed that the intermediate hosts of *Onchocerca volvulus* in Mexico and Guatemala are *Eusimulium avidum, E. mooseri,* and *E. ochraceum.*

In 1931-1933, Kourí and Arenas described the specific action of emetine hydrochloride in human fascioliasis hepatica. Kourí, Basnuevo, and others described the clinical picture of this disease in man, and Kourí described an original technic for the diagnosis.

In 1938, Luis A. Léon described *Raillietina quitensis* in Ecuador.

In 1938, Kourí, Macho Doval, Basnuevo, Cardelle, Rappaport, Sotolongo, and others reported a new parasite in human beings in Cuba, *Inermicapsifer cubensis* (Kourí, 1938) which Kourí had studied since 1935 in more than 45 cases of human parasitism.

LABORATORY METHODS FOR THE DIAGNOSIS OF DISEASES CAUSED BY HELMINTHS

It is our belief that it is not always possible to make an accurate diagnosis of parasitism from the symptomatology alone, for often this is a presumptive diagnosis. In countries where parasitism is frequent and is thoroughly investigated by laboratory methods, one can usually make an accurate diagnosis with the aid of laboratory methods.

Laboratory methods in helminthiases are discussed in Chapter 72 and will not be given here.

NEMATODIASIS OR ROUNDWORM INFECTIONS

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

Nemathelminthes, which include Nematoda, Gordiacea, and Acanthocephala, are invertebrate artiozoa with chitinous integument, usually conical or spherical spermatozoa, with ameboid movements, unsegmented bodies, and without articulated legs. The bodies are cylindrical and have celomic cavities filled with a liquid which bathes the genital and digestive organs. The sexes are usually separate. Most of the Nemathelminthes are endoparasites.

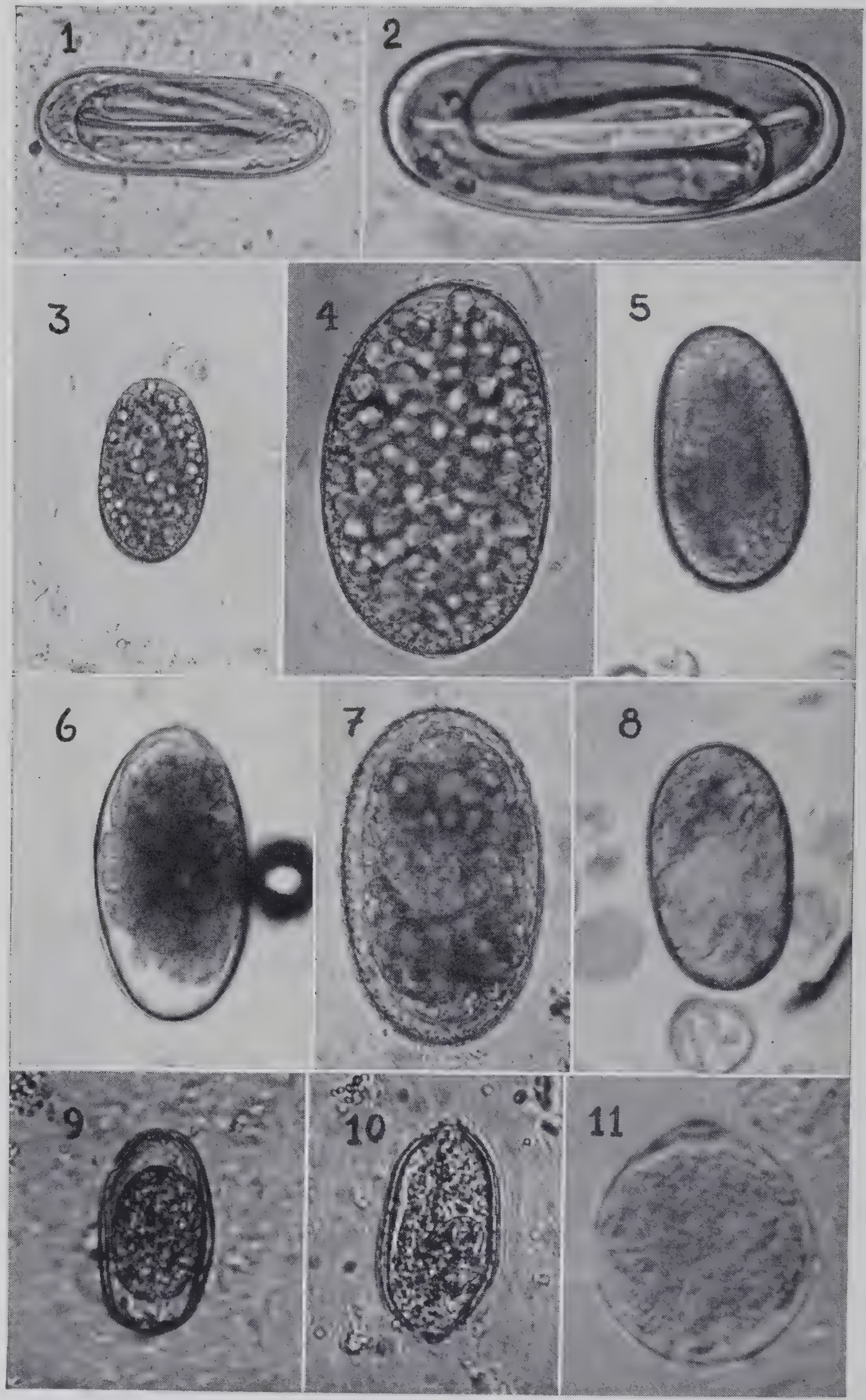


Fig. 227.—Microscopic pseudoparasites. Eggs in transit and nonparasitic elements frequently found in human feces. *1* and *2*, Egg of *Heterodera radicicola*; *3* to *8*, eggs of *Tyroglyphus* sp. in different stages of development; *9* and *10*, vegetable elements; *11*, pine pollen grains. (Original photomicrographs.)

Nematodes are vermiform, elongated and cylindrical, whitish or pink, sometimes with dark bands. Some, like *Ascaris lumbricoides*, are large; others, like *Trichinella spiralis* and *Strongyloides stercoralis*, are very small. The relative lengths and widths vary, the filaria being long and slender and the Ascarides long and rather thick. At the anterior extremity they at times show lips, at times papillae, at times a buccal capsule. The posterior end is thin and usually straight in the female, and cylindrical-conical and dorsally or ventrally coiled in the male, or it may show cuticular expansions (alar appendages or alae), or more developed expansions (*copulatory bursae*). Males are smaller than females.

Certain "**microscopic pseudoparasites**" may be confused with nematodes: all those microscopic elements found in secretions or excretions of man, which might be confused with actual parasitic elements.

(1) **Elements in Transit.**—Eggs, larvae, etc., of Nemathelminthes of animals, or vegetables, swallowed by man in food, may merely pass through the alimentary tract without causing parasitism, and undergo but slight modification or no modification at all. Other nonparasitic elements are vegetable cells, pollen grains, etc., swallowed with food, which may be mistaken for eggs.

(2) **Elements Derived From Outside Contamination.**—This includes those elements in (1) above, but these are microscopic elements which contaminate the stools after passage.

Examples of microscopic pseudoparasites of parasitic nature, in simple transit, are eggs of *Heterodera marioni*, swallowed with tubers when these are parasitized by *H. marioni;* the larvae of *Turbatrix aceti*, swallowed in vinegar, with olives, and in certain fermented liquids; likewise the eggs, larvae, and adult forms of various species of Tyroglyphus swallowed with food.

Microscopic pseudoparasites in transit include various vegetable cells or pollen grains often erroneously interpreted as parasitic elements. Examples are eggs of an Oxyuris of the cockroach, larvae of *Turbatrix aceti*, eggs and larvae of flies. Eggs, larvae, and adult forms of Tyroglyphus can be carried by the wind and may drop on the feces or into the concentration solutions. Pollen grains may also be carried by the wind and fall into the feces in uncovered containers, to be found later in microscopic examination.

The diagnosis of the various nematodiases is discussed separately under each parasite and will not be given here.

DISEASES CAUSED BY WORMS BELONGING TO THE ORDER ASCARIDATA

Ascariasis

(Parasitism Produced by *Ascaris Lumbricoides*)

Synonyms.—Ascaridiasis, large roundworm infestation.

HISTORY

This parasite is called "lumbricoides" because of its similarity to the earthworm. It was known to the Greeks and Romans by the name *lumbricus teres*.

In 1863, Davaine observed that the ingested eggs were hatched in the intestine of man. In 1916, Stewart discovered the migration of the larval form through the lungs of rats. In

1921, Ransom and Cram, in 1922, Koino and Koino, and in 1927, Ransom and Foster demonstrated that after the larvae have migrated through the body they develop into mature worms in the intestine of man.

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

Ascaris lumbricoides is a cosmopolitan parasite, found in every part of the world, but is more abundant in tropical countries because the high temperatures aid in its development, and the poor hygienic conditions of certain tropical areas promote infestation.

CAUSATIVE AGENT

Ascaris Lumbricoides Linnaeus, 1758
(The Large Intestinal Roundworm)

Synonyms.—*Stomachida vermis* Pereboom 1780; *Stomachida pereboomii* Goeze 1782; *Ascaris suum* Goeze 1782; *Fusaria lumbricoides* (Linnaeus 1758) Zeder 1800; *Ascaris ovis* Rudolphi 1819; *Lumbricoides vulgaris* Méret 1821; *Ascaris suilla* Dujardin 1845; *Ascaris maritima* Leuckart 1876 (?); *Ascaris texana* Smith and Goeth 1904.

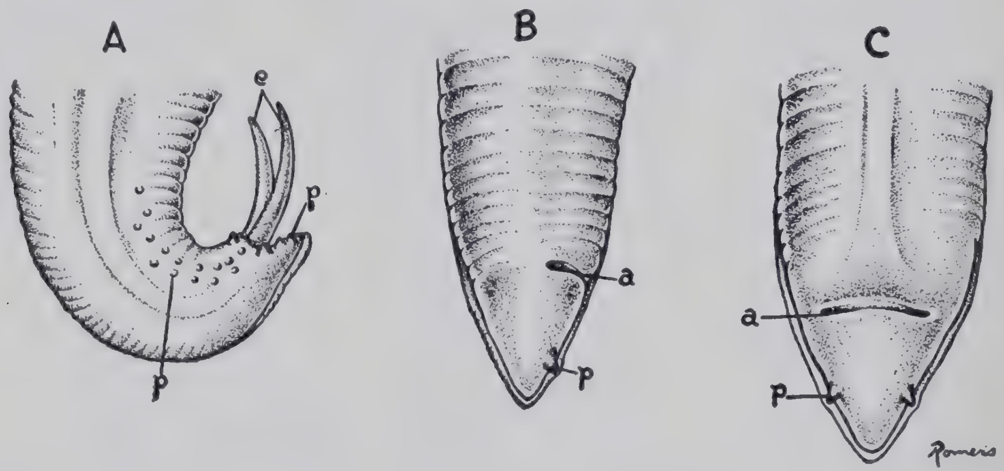


Fig. 228.—*Ascaris lumbricoides. A,* Posterior extremity of the male: lateral view: *e,* spicules; *p,* papillae. *B,* Posterior extremity of the female; lateral view. *C,* Posterior extremity of the female, ventral views: *a,* anus: *p,* papillae. (Original drawing of Kourí and Basnuevo in Lecciones de Parasitología y Medicina Tropical; courtesy of Editorial Profilaxis S. A., Havana.)

Ascaris lumbricoides is a large cylindrical worm tapering to pointed ends, with the anterior end thinner than the posterior. Pink while alive, it turns whitish when fixed in formalin, and yellowish when fixed in alcohol.

The females are usually 20 to 35 cm. long, sometimes reaching 40 cm., and about 5 mm. broad. The males are smaller, 15 to 30 cm. long and 2 to 4 mm. broad.

They are provided with a chitinous and resistant outer layer, transversely striated, and with two lateral narrow streaks extending along the entire body length; these longitudinal lines correspond to the lateral fields. Female reproductive organs are often observed through the transparent parasite when viewed before a light.

The mouth, at the anterior extremity, is provided with 3 lips, each convex on the outer surface and finely denticulated in the inner margin. One lip is dorsal, the other 2 lateroventral. Between the lips is the infundibulum, at the bottom of which the mouth opens.

At the part of the anterior third nearest the middle third of the *female* parasite is a narrower section, the waist. A distinguishing characteristic of the *male* is the appearance of the posterior end, which curves ventrally.

Like all nematodes, Ascaris has a body wall limiting a celomic cavity, within which cavity are the reproductive and digestive organs, bathed in a liquid matter containing the ascaris toxin: **ascaron.**

The *fertilized eggs* are ovoid, 50 to 75 by 40 to 60 microns. The shell is formed by 2 membranes, the outer, festooned or mammillated, the inner smooth, stout, colorless, and refractive. There is a spherical, sharply limited granular protoplasm within the egg, but not occupying the whole of the egg cavity.

The *unfertilized eggs* are very atypical, the morphology extremely variable. They are generally larger and longer than fertilized eggs, even though some are small; then their size and appearance vary. The shell is much thinner. They lose the outer mammillated shell

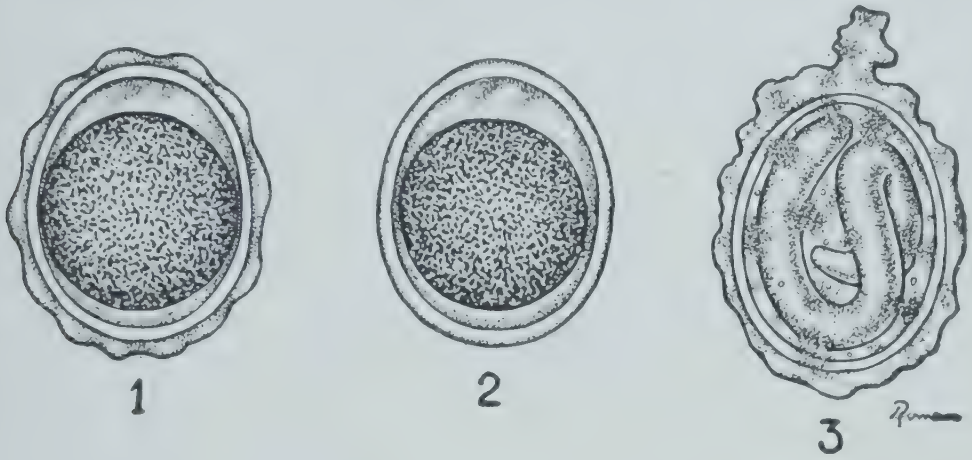


Fig. 229.—*Ascaris lumbricoides.* Typical fertilized eggs. *1* and *2,* Containing a single cell; *2* has lost the outer covering from the pressure of the cover glass; *3,* containing a vermiform embryo. (Original drawing of Kourí and Basnuevo in Lecciones de Parasitología y Medicina Tropical; courtesy of Editorial Profilaxis S. A., Havana.)

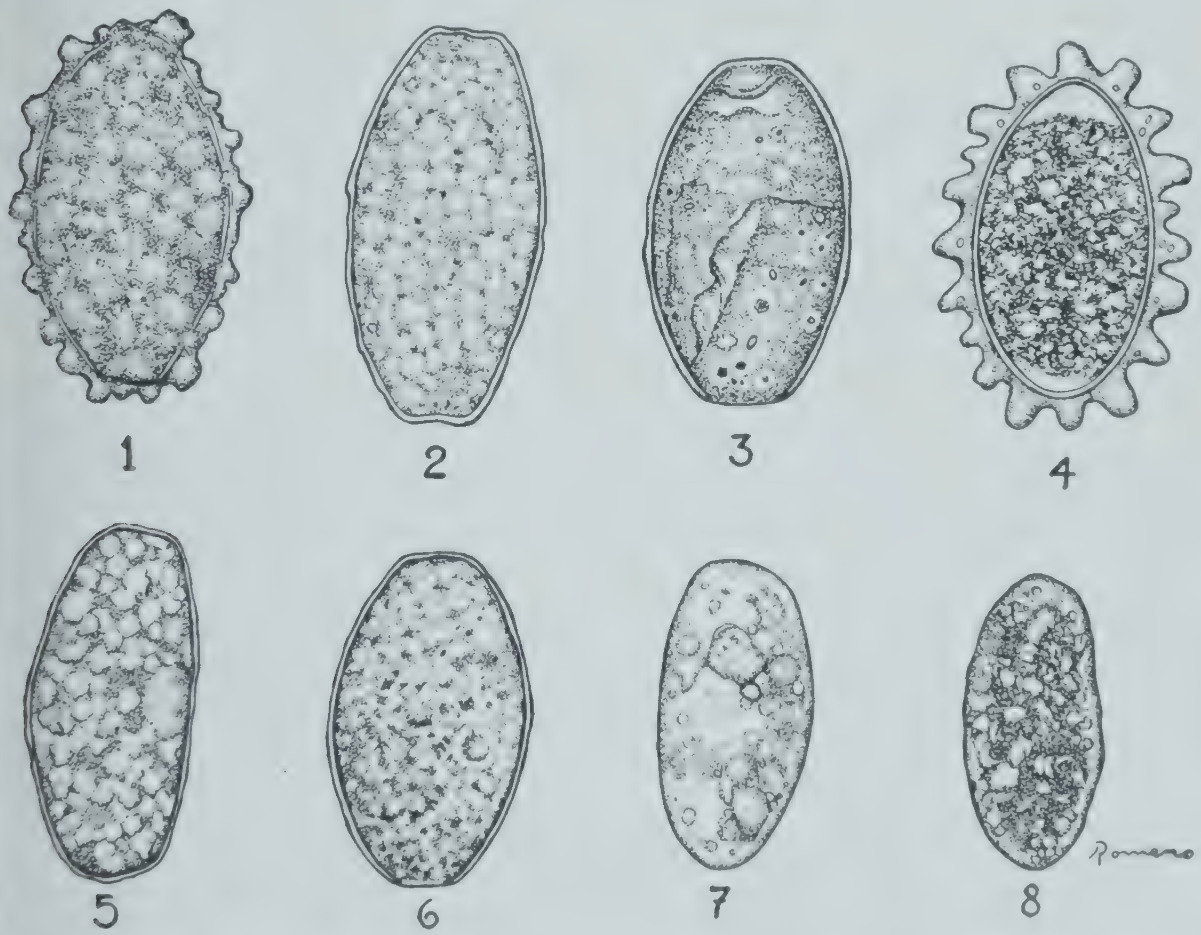


Fig. 230.—*Ascaris lumbricoides.* Unfertilized eggs. *1* and *4,* Removed from the uterus of the female parasite—these have scalloped external shell; *2* and *3, 5* to *8,* in feces—these have lost the scalloped external shell from the pressure of the cover glass. (Original drawing of Kourí and Basnuevo in Lecciones de Parasitología y Medicina Tropical; courtesy of Editorial Profilaxis S. A., Havana.)

as a result of the moderate pressure of the cover glass on the slide, as in fertilized eggs; but if the pressure increases they are totally destroyed and disappear from the preparation. These eggs show large refractive granules, similar to drops of fat, occupying the whole egg cavity and lacking a limiting membrane proper.

Life Cycle

The fertilized adult females lay eggs in the intestine of the host, and the eggs are passed with the stool. Outside the body the time required for embryonation varies according to the temperature: 9 to 13 days under optimum conditions (22° to 23° C.) in dark, moist places. Once the egg has embryonated, it becomes very resistant, and can live for a long time in an external medium, resisting freezing, putrefaction, and temperatures as high as 42° C. Moist temperatures of 70° C. and higher kill the egg. Direct heat from the sun is extremely harmful to them.

The embryo undergoes an intraovular molting in an external environment and becomes infestive, enters the mouth of the host through various mechanisms (food, material contaminated by flies, etc.), is swallowed, and enters the duodenum. The intestinal juices soften the eggshell, stimulating the movements of the intra-ovular embryo, which emerges through an opening of the shell as a vigorous larva 0.2 to 0.3 mm. by 13 to 15 microns.

The larvae bore through the wall of the small intestine into the lymphatic and mesenteric vessels and enter the lungs through the right heart. They remain in the lungs for several days, undergo a second and a third molting on the fifth or sixth and the tenth days, respectively, then penetrate into the capillary and alveolar endothelia to reach the pulmonary alveoli. From here they enter the bronchioles, bronchi, and trachea, then migrate up to the epiglottis. They are then swallowed, pass through the stomach, and reach the duodenum. Here they undergo a fourth and last molting between the twenty-fifth and twenty-ninth days. They develop into adult males and females 69 to 75 days after ingestion of the egg.

From the lungs, the larvae may accidentally return to the heart by way of the veins, particularly in massive infestations. They pass through the left ventricle into the general circulation and localize in different organs and tissues of the host, such as the lymphatic glands, thyroid, thymus, spleen, brain, and spinal cord, where they may cause clinical manifestations. They may accumulate in the kidney to be passed with the urine, or they may enter the placenta and fetus.

The usual habitat of this parasite is the small intestine of man. In erratic parasitism, it may be found in any other part of the digestive tract. The number of parasites ranges from 100 to 200; in exceptional cases there may be more than 1,000; usually there are only 8 to 10.

The life span is unknown.

A. lumbricoides which infests man is morphologically identical to *A. suum* of swine, but biologically they are different species. Koino and other investigators have demonstrated that the Ascaris which parasitizes man cannot be transmitted to swine, and vice versa.

PATHOGENESIS AND PATHOLOGY

Certain individuals can tolerate the parasitism very well even when they harbor a great number of parasites. With only a few parasites, others may show important clinical manifestations, a fact commonly noted in most helminthiases.

Pathogenesis refers to the mechanism by which the parasites act upon the organism which harbors them. The following actions are the most common:

Spoilative Action

Withdrawal of nutritive substances from the host is called *spoilative action* and is an important consideration in hyperparasitized children. Ascaris takes from its host substances necessary for nourishment and development—chyme or blood. It has been much debated whether or not Ascaris is hematophagous; that is, whether or not it feeds on blood. Investigations and experiences toward this end seem to demonstrate that Ascaris does not feed on blood, or, if so, only exceptionally.

Toxic Action

The liquid from the celomic cavity of Ascaris is irritating to mucosae and may produce allergic phenomena, as urticaria and asthma. Chimamura and Fugii isolated a toxin from Ascaris, which they called *ascaron*. Ascaron injected into horses may cause death. Intradermal injection of Ascaris extracts can cause anaphylactic shock in patients who harbor the parasite. Hypersensitivity of such individuals can be passively transferred to guinea pigs by injecting the guinea pigs with sera of such patients after this sensitizing injection. The guinea pigs may die if they are reinjected with the celomic liquid of Ascaris.

Certain clinical phenomena observed in ascariasis, such as epileptiform and eclamptic attacks, neuritis, and paralysis, have been attributed to the action of Ascaris toxin on the nerve cells. Objections have been raised to conclusions that such symptoms are caused by the Ascaris for the reason that this parasite favors development of intestinal bacteria which can produce neurotoxins, and these bacterial toxins, and *not* the Ascaris toxin, would then be responsible for such phenomena.

Traumatic or Infectious Action

Ascaris can produce lesions of the intestinal mucosa by means of its powerful denticulated lips. Occasionally Ascaris has been found in the peritoneal cavity. According to Blanchard these worms may enter the peritoneum through abscesses of the intestinal wall, caused by pyogenic bacteria inoculated into the lesion of the mucosa produced by the bite of the Ascaris. At times one finds neither intestinal lesions nor scars; thus Brumpt believes it possible for the young Ascaris to bore through the intestine and then develop as erratic parasites in the peritoneum.

Ascaris may not only carry bacteria from the lumen of the intestines to the biliary and pancreatic ducts but may also inoculate the intestinal mucosa with bacteria. It has been much debated whether or not Ascaris can inoculate the mucosae with typhoid bacilli, or whether both the worm and the bacilli are ingested simultaneously in epidemics of typhoid fever where parasitism by Ascaris is also present and frequent.

Mechanical Action

When *A. lumbricoides* occur in great numbers, they may twist together and form large balls, causing intestinal occlusion, with serious consequences. They may also cause hernial strangulation.

Erratic Ascaris

Under certain circumstances, Ascaris tends to leave the small intestine and travel through various parts of the body. This is called *erratic parasitism.* It may migrate to the stomach and be expelled by vomiting, with alarming symptoms, fainting, cyanosis, cold sweats, filiform thready pulse, vertigo, and nausea. More often it travels to the large intestine and is expelled through the anus. It may migrate to the esophagus, thence into the larynx and the trachea, causing asphyxiation. From the pharynx it may penetrate into the Eustachian tube, perforate the eardrum, and reach the external ear or ascend through the nasal fossae, enter the lacrimal ducts, and emerge in the internal angle of the eye.

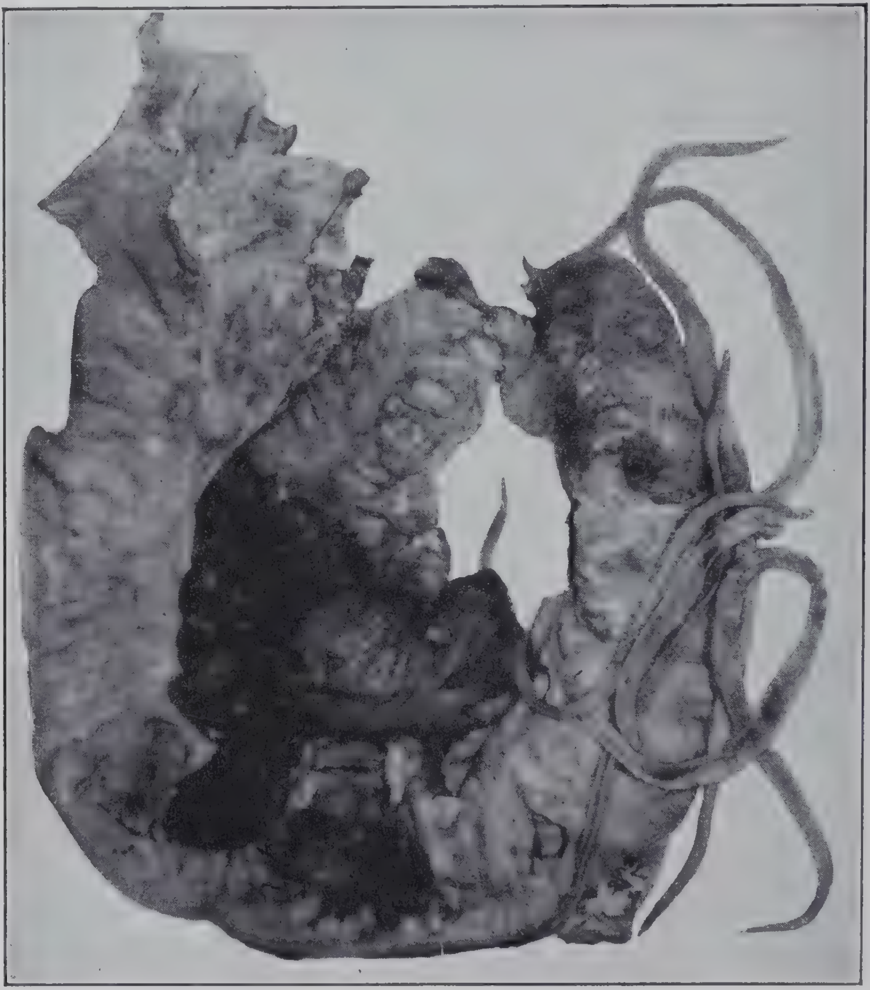


Fig. 231.—*Ascaris lumbricoides.* (Autopsy of a case of Salas, Jimenez, and Guernica in the Children's Municipal Hospital of Havana.) Gangrene and perforation due to ileo-ceco-colic invagination with peritonitis resulting from ascariasis and trichuriasis. Anatomical specimen in the Carlos Finlay Museum of the Institute of Tropical Medicine, University of Havana. (Courtesy of Revista de Medicina Tropical y Parasitología 2: No. 5, 1936.)

In massive parasitism it may bore through the pancreatic ducts, the bile ducts, the gall bladder, and even the intrahepatic bile ducts, which it may obliterate.

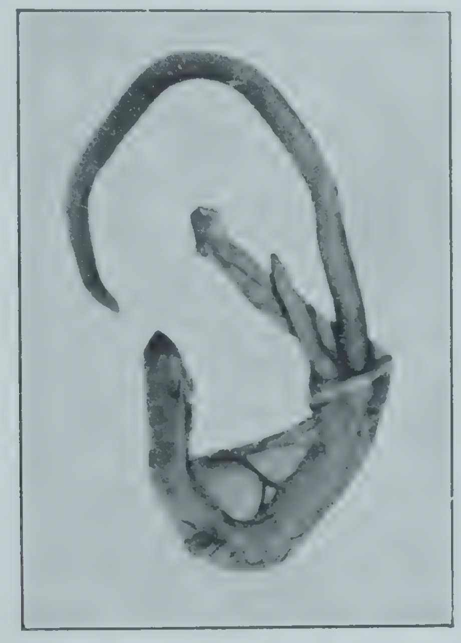


Fig. 232.—*Ascaris lumbricoides* in the lumen of an appendix. Anatomical specimen in the Carlos Finlay Museum of the Institute of Tropical Medicine, University of Havana.

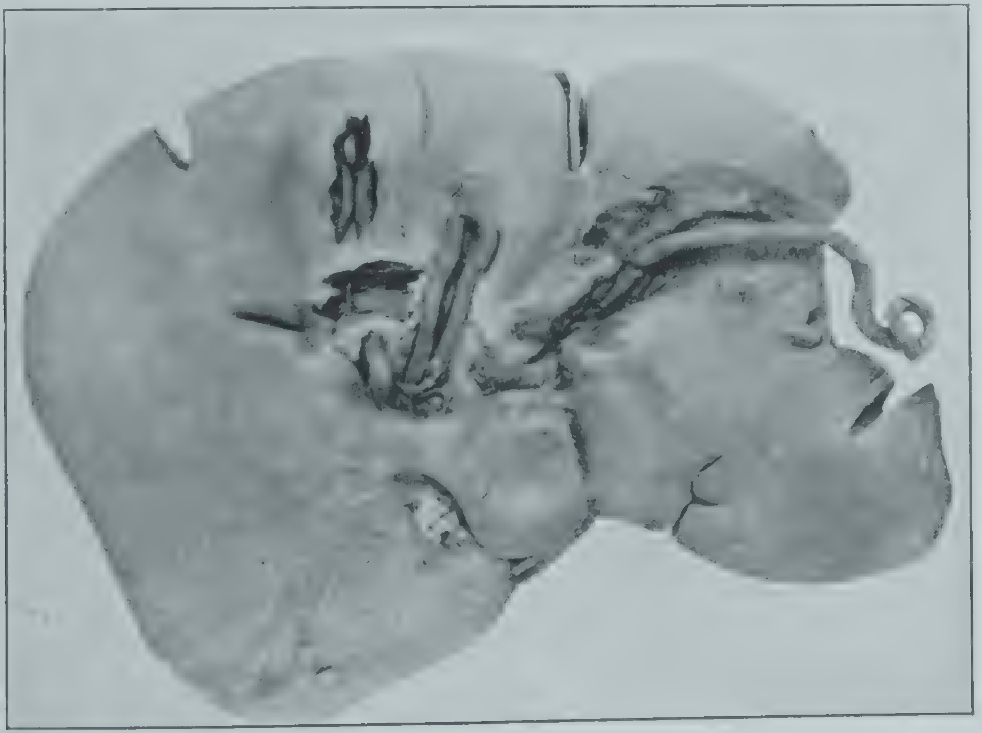


Fig. 233.—*Ascaris lumbricoides.* Photograph of the liver (autopsy by Castillo and Salas) showing the parasites in the common bile duct, gall bladder, and intrahepatic ducts. Anatomical specimen in the Carlos Finlay Museum of the Institute of Tropical Medicine, University of Havana. (Courtesy of Archivos de Medicina Interna, Havana 3: No. 3, 1937.)

Ascaris has been known to enter the appendix and cause intense pain, which disappears after the parasite has been expelled. Occasionally an acute appendicitis develops, especially if the parasite remains in the same site, which favors bacteriologic action. At times it may even perforate the appendix.

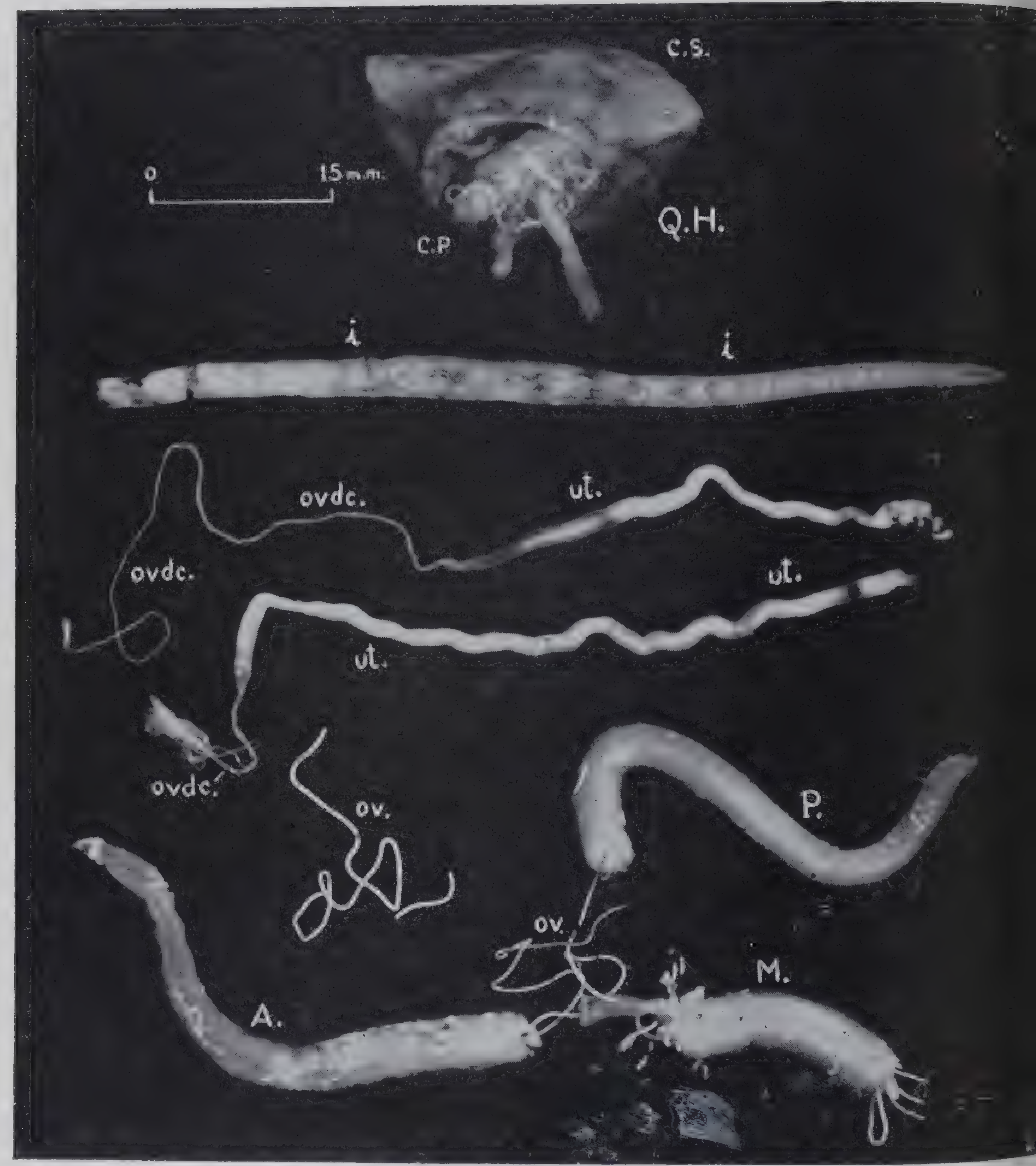


Fig. 234.—*Ascaris lumbricoides.* Ascaridian hepatic nodule removed by Noabo and Alvoré during operation for cholecystitis calculosa. *Q.H.*, Hepatic tumor containing portions of a large female *A. lumbricoides* within the cystic cavity. The other objects in the photograph are remnants of the same Ascaris found in the cystic cavity which was left in the liver: *i*, intestine; *ut*, uterus; *ovdc*, oviducts; *ov*, portion of the ovaries; *A*, *M*, and *P*, anterior, central and posterior portions of the same female *A. lumbricoides.* (Original photograph.)

Ascaris has also been found in pulmonary abscesses, in caseous tuberculous glands; in the pleural cavity, peritoneum, bladder, vagina, urethra, etc., with formation of fistulas or abscesses.

Irritative or Inflammatory Action

When found in great numbers Ascaris causes chronic irritation of the intestines, resulting in intestinal catarrh, with consequent diarrhea or even dysenteric syndrome. It is possible that this intestinal disturbance favors the penetration of *Salmonella typhosa* and other pathogenic intestinal bacteria.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

Gastrointestinal Disorders.—Intense parasitism with Ascaris presents the following symptoms: pain in the stomach, sensation of epigastric pressure, difficulty in digestion, abdominal swelling, and at times vomiting and diarrhea. Appetite may be exaggerated, decreased, at times absent. At times the picture may simulate a real typhoid or dysentery, or even a choleriform state. Ascaris can also provoke appendicular pain, or it may produce true suppurative appendicitis, or symptoms of duodenal and gastric ulcer.

Nervous Disorders.—These may be motor, sensory, and psychic: tetanic convulsions, epileptiform attacks, paresthesia and paralysis, etc.; violent pain, neuritis, delirium, hallucinations, etc. Meningitic complications, insomnia, nightmare, physical and mental arrest, etc., can also be observed. Neurovegetative disorders may at times be observed—tendency to vertigo and syncope—disorders which are in reality caused by toxic action on the central nervous system rather than by simple reflex phenomena, since the symptoms do not subside immediately after expulsion of the parasites, but some days later.

Allergic Phenomena.—Asthma, urticaria, pulmonary disorders, eosinophilia, Loeffler's syndrome may develop. For other symptoms see the section on pathogenesis and erratic Ascaris.

DIAGNOSIS

Direct microscopic examination of feces and concentration methods constitute the usual procedures in diagnosis of this parasitism. Consecutive examinations at several days' intervals should be practiced.

In gastroduodenal and biliary localization of the parasite, eggs may be found by examining duodenal contents (Kourí and Basnuevo, 1933).

If the host harbors only male Ascaris, the microscopic diagnosis is often negative.

If the patient harbors *young* females which are not yet able to lay eggs, the microscopic examination is also negative.

If the host harbors one or more adult females, but no males, or young males incapable of fertilizing the females, unfertilized eggs will be found in the feces.

In cases of ascariasis due to *male* Ascaris, diagnosis can be made by radiologic examination. Sometimes the body of the Ascaris can be seen as an empty space in the opaque barium shadow, and at other times the intestine of the worm is filled with barium and can be seen as an opaque line. In addition, radiography is advantageous in diagnosis because it may help to detect the location of the parasite.

PROGNOSIS

In general, prognosis is favorable, particularly if the diagnosis is properly made. Even in severe cases, if the diagnosis is made in time and proper treatment is instituted, a rapid cure may be obtained.

TREATMENT

There are two very efficacious agents in the treatment of *A. lumbricoides*—chenopodium and hexylresorcinol. Santonin is no longer recommended since the curative dose cannot be tolerated.

Oil of chenopodium is administered as follows: Children are given 2 drops per each year of age, and adults are given up to 1.5 Gm. as total doses, together with castor oil given in the morning on an empty stomach, and a saline purgative 4 hours later if there has been insufficient evacuation.

Oil of chenopodium gives the best results. Carbon tetrachloride or tetrachloroethylene, with chenopodium, reinforces its anthelminthic action. This last drug has given excellent results in the treatment of triple infestation by *A. lumbricoides, Necator americanus,* and *Ancylostoma duodenale.*

Hexylresorcinol* (1,3-hydroxy-4-hexylbenzene) has also been used very successfully in doses of 1 Gm. for adults, and 0.6 Gm. for children under 6 years of age, and 0.8 Gm. for children between the ages of 6 and 10, in capsules of 0.2 Gm. each, given in the morning after a night's fast. A saline purgative is administered 2 hours later. Combination of this drug with tetrachloroethylene has been recommended in Cuba by Basnuevo and Kourí: Hydroxylene in doses of 10 capsules for adults, each capsule containing 0.1 Gm. of the 1,3-hydroxy-4-hexylbenzene and 0.30 c.c. of tetrachloroethylene. Children are given 1 capsule for each 2 years of age. It is very efficacious, not very toxic, and is easily administered. This is the best treatment in associated helminthiasis, particularly Ascaris with Necator, and is of great value in anthelminthic campaigns.

PREVENTION

Epidemiology

In Cuba this parasitism is much more frequent in rural districts than in cities. This can be explained on the basis of the different hygienic conditions under which people live in these regions. In rural districts, infected persons disseminate the eggs of the parasite by defecating on the ground. Rains and floods carry the feces over broad areas and disseminate the eggs, thereby contaminating vegetables and drinking water. People who live in such regions are therefore constantly exposed to the danger of eating food containng embryonated eggs of the parasite and becoming infected. On the other and, warm climates favor rapid intra-ovular development of the eggs, the nfestive forms, within 10 to 15 days, which explains the high percentage and ntensity of parasitism among farmers in Cuba. In large cities like Havana, with modern sanitation facilities and adequate sewage disposal, the parasitism s less frequent and not so intense, and parasitized patients do not spread the parasitic eggs.

---

*Editor's note (O. F.): In the United States, Caprokol and Crystoids are used; these contain hexylresorcinol in 0.1 and 0.2 Gm. capsules. The same dosage as above is recommended.

Nevertheless, mild infestations (1 or 2 Ascaris) are possible and even relatively frequent in Havana if one eats fresh vegetables, like lettuce and water ress, which have been cultivated outside the city limits on lands contaminated by human excreta used to fertilize the soil. This type of soil fertilization, practiced by some Chinese farmers in Cuba, is contrary to sanitary ordinances.

Individuals who, by their customs, appetite, occupation, age, etc., are more readily exposed to contamination, such as farmers, miners, and children, are more frequently and intensely parasitized. Not only are children and young animals more frequently exposed to infestation, they are more susceptible than adults and older animals. Adults are in a state described by Brumpt as "natural periodic immunity."

Prophylaxis

General prophylaxis is the same as for other intestinal parasites:

1. Education.
2. Building of latrines; banning use of human excreta as fertilizer.
3. Finding the sources of infestation through coprologic surveys.
4. Treatment of parasitized patients.

Individual prophylaxis consists in preventing ingestion of embryonated ggs, the infestive form, along with contaminated food.

The following measures are recommended:

1. Filtration or boiling of water.
2. Thorough washing of vegetables with water that is not contaminated r that has been boiled, or abstinence from eating raw vegetables coming from parasitic sources.
3. Protecting food from flies and other mechanical vectors.

Enterobiasis

PINWORM INFECTION

(Parasitism Produced by *Enterobius Vermicularis*)

Synonyms.—Oxyuriasis, enterobiasis, pinworm infection.

HISTORY

This parasite has been known since ancient times. It was first described by Linaeus in 1758.

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

It is a cosmopolitan parasite.

CAUSATIVE AGENT

Enterobius Vermicularis (Linnaeus 1758) Leach, 1853

(The Human Pinworm or Seatworm)

Synonyms.—*Ascaris vermicularis* Linnaeus 1758; *Oxyuris vermicularis* Bremser 1819; *Oxyurias vermicularis* Stiles 1905; *Fusarella vermicularis* Seurat 1916.

E. vermicularis is a whitish, very small worm. It was described by Linnaeus in 1758. The posterior extremity of the female is very long and sharp; of the male, conical and coiled. In the anterior extremities of both are 2 striated vesicular expansions of the cuticle. The mouth has 3 retractable lips, without teeth, 1 dorsal, 2 lateroventral. Two prismatic lateral ridges, which are very characteristic, extend longitudinally on each side of the body. The male is 2 to 5 mm. long, the female 9 to 11. For further descriptive details, see Gradwohl and Kourí (1948).

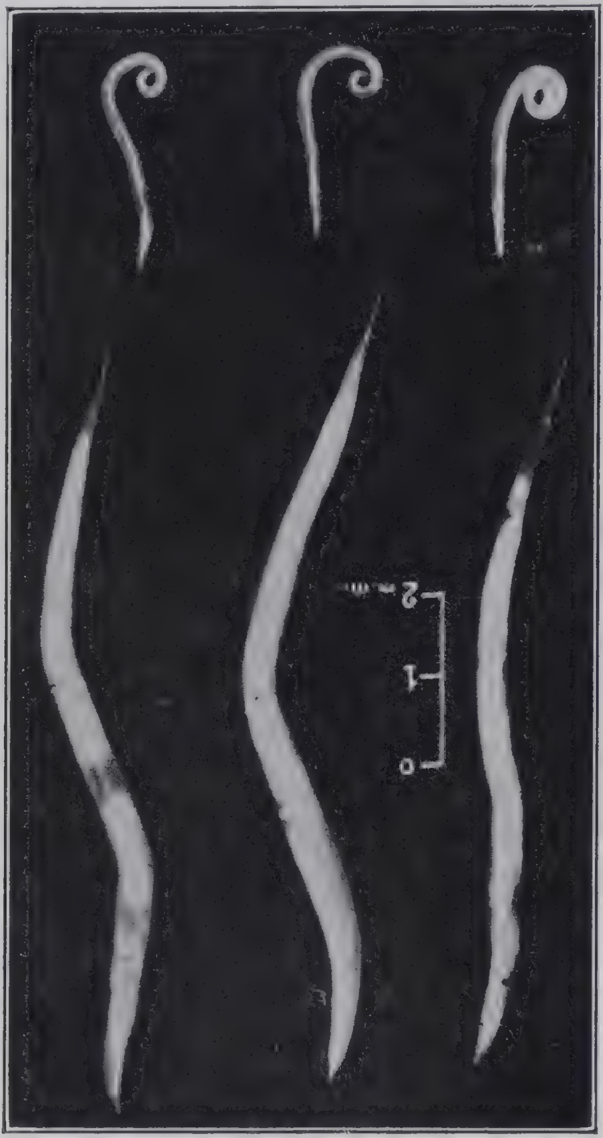


Fig. 235.—*Enterobius vermicularis. Above,* 3 females; *below,* 3 males. (Original figure of Kourí and Basnuevo.)

The *eggs* are oblong, asymmetrical, flat on one side and convex on the other, about 60 by 30 microns. They have a double wall. Because of the albuminous nature of the external wall, the eggs adhere to each other, forming a cluster. The two walls of the eggs are completely separated from each other except at a very small zone in the cephalic pole, on the convex side. The eggs are embryonated at the time of laying, containing the gyriniformis or tadpole-shaped embryos. In a few hours, under the favorable conditions of humidity and temperature of the rectal mucosa and the anus, the embryo passes into a second folded vermiform embryonal stage. There it remains in the eggs and is found in the feces, together with numerous females, or it may be found in the groove between the buttocks.

Life Cycle

The embryonated eggs laid by the females in the rectum and anus of the patient are immediately infective, which accounts for the autoinfestation in this helminthiasis.

The embryonated eggs enter the host through the alimentary canal, reach the stomach and duodenum where the digestive secretions soften their walls, permitting the embryos to escape; the embyos then grow in situ. Without further migration they undergo 2 moltings before reaching the adult stage with subsequent differentiation of the sexes.

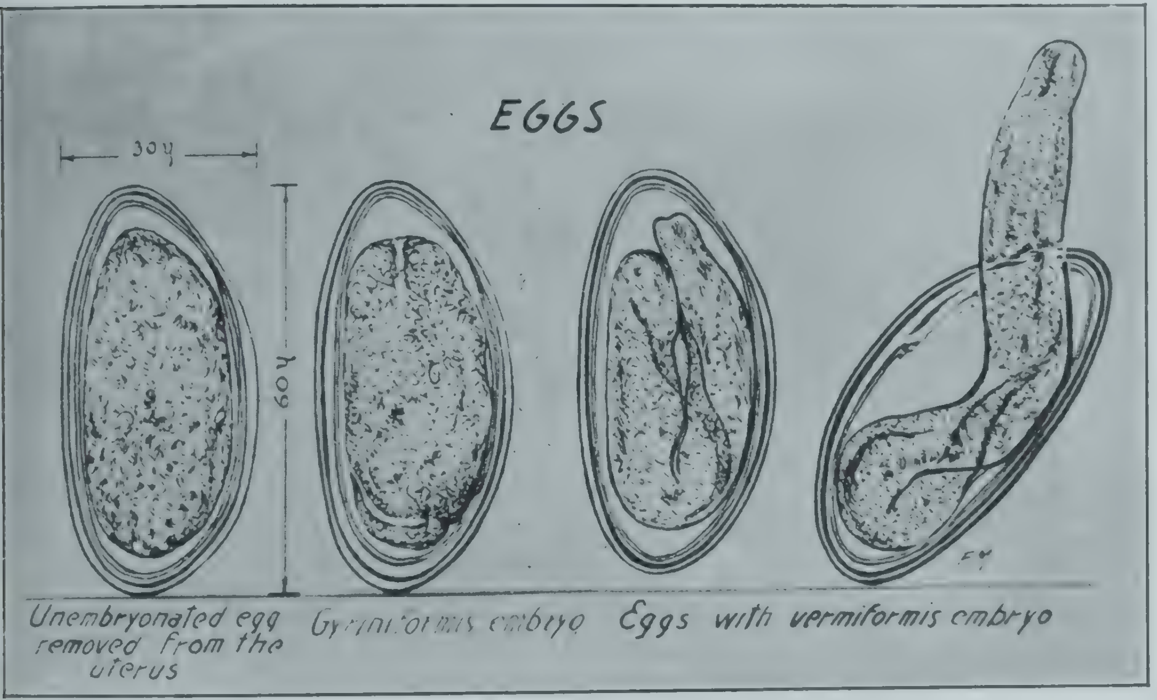

EGGS
30μ
60μ
Unembryonated egg removed from the uterus
Gyriniformis embryo
Eggs with vermiformis embryo
F.V.

Fig. 236.—*Enterobius vermicularis.* Various final stages in the development of the eggs. (Original.)

After copulation the male and female pass into the large intestine where their ife cycles continue. The uteri of the gravid females are greatly distended by the large number of eggs. A special type of tropism causes the female to migrate toward the anus where by biting it causes most intense itching, especially at night. This itching causes the host to scratch himself, and the parasites are torn up and carried under the nails, or are expelled with the feces. The males generally remain in the cecum and appendix where they ultimately die. The duration of this cycle in the female is 2 to 3 weeks, which favors spontaneous recovery if there is no autoinfestation.

The egg is an essential microscopic finding for a correct diagnosis of parasitism by E. *vermicularis,* but its presence is not constant in the feces of parasitized individuals because he female parasite does not lay eggs in the intestine but migrates to the rectum and anus and there lays the eggs, or empties the uterus after leaving the body.

EPIDEMIOLOGY AND SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The group of symptoms produced in infestations with *E. vermicularis* is called *enterobiasis* or *oxyuriasis.* The infestation is more frequent in children and in women than in men. When mild, it is easily tolerated, causing only slight disturbances, but when massive the clinical symptoms may be serious and affect the general status. A mild infestation may become massive through autoreinfestation.

Serious disturbances may occur in the digestive, nervous, and genital systems and may lead to a general systemic instability. In the digestive system, pruritus ani is the most constant symptom. It is usually intense; during the night it becomes almost unbearable. Due to the violent scratching, the perineal and perianal regions are traumatized; congestion and inflammation follow; many hemorrhagic zones develop; the cutaneous surface is covered with a bloody mucous excretion containing the gravid females and eggs of the parasite. Similar lesions occur in the rectum. Chronic catarrhal inflammation develops in the intestine. This inflamed mucosa produces mucous secretions frequently blood-stained and containing numerous eggs and parasites.

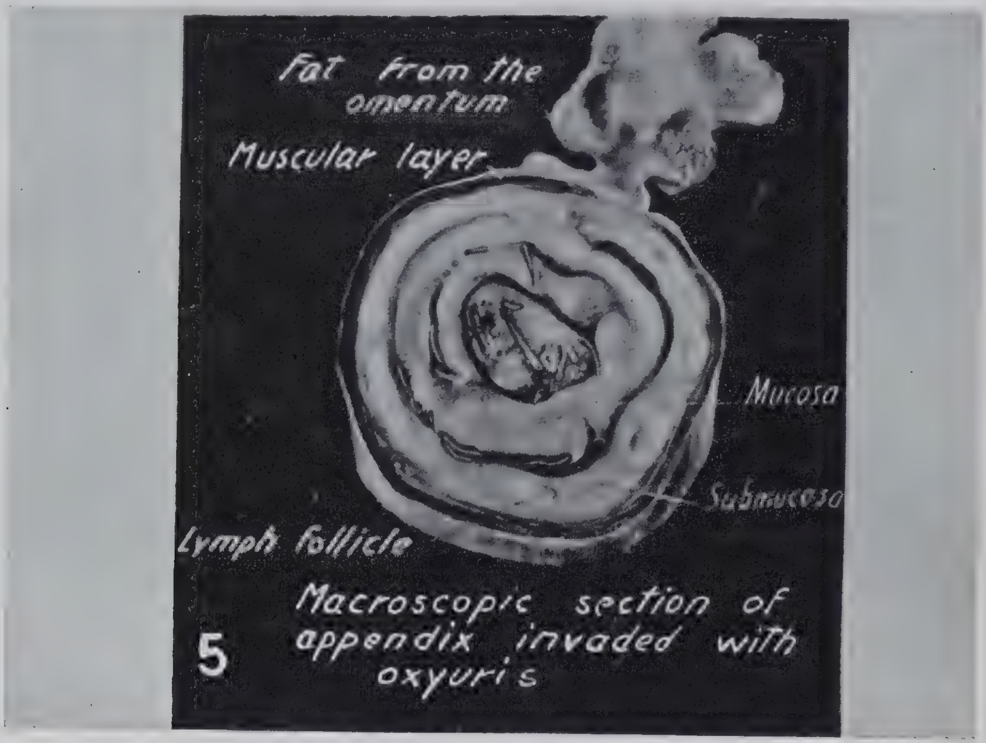


Fig. 237.—*Enterobius vermicularis.* Macroscopic section of appendix with the parasite. (Original.)

Enterobius frequently produces lesions in the appendix. Bacteria present in the intestinal flora, which usually do not cause disease, penetrate through the lesions and become active, thus causing enterobial appendicitis.

Among nervous disturbances are changes in character: the individual becomes sad, irritable, and sometimes melancholic. If the infestation is not treated rather promptly, this may lead to a definite neurosis or even a psychosis. In children it may lead to epileptiform or hysteriform spells, convulsions, chills, dizziness, diminution of vision and hearing, tinnitus aurium, and incontinence of urine.

Disturbances of the genital system are very frequent—erections, erotic dreams, seminal discharges, onanism, nymphomania, and menstrual disorders. The parasites may migrate from the anal region to the vulva and the vagina.

causing violent pruritus, inflammation, leucorrhea, and, as a result of the undue scratching, lesions are to be found in the clitoris and labia. The parasites may migrate to the uterus and even reach the peritoneum through the Fallopian tubes, causing inflammatory processes. Certain cases of parasitic metritis are refractory to treatment. Secretions are abundant and contain parasites and eggs.

In cutaneous enterobiasis of the genitocrural groove, which resembles intertrigo-like eczema, the parasites and their eggs are found in the epidermal lesions.

The toxic action of the parasite produces urticaria and periodic, spasmodic coryza.

If the disease is not immediately treated, it increases in severity, the digestive disturbances become more aggravated, nervous instability is augmented, the system in general is greatly affected; hence the patient suffers from lack of appetite, becomes emaciated and finally anemic.

DIAGNOSIS

The **clinical** diagnosis can be made presumptively from the presence of pruritus ani and intestinal disturbances, but as a rule only by the finding of females or, in rare instances, of the eggs in the feces. Frequently the parasite is discovered by the patient himself or, in the case of children, by the parents. For **laboratory diagnosis,** use of anal swabs, etc., see Chapter 72.

TREATMENT

(See also Chapter 64 for discussion of hexylresorcinol, phenothiazine, Lubisan, Acranil.)

Prior to the discovery of the parasiticidal action of gentian violet against E. *vermicularis*, reinfestation occurred quite frequently despite the complicated and repeated treatments which were used.

The medicaments most commonly used were santonin, calomel, oil of chenopodium, carbon tetrachloride, tetrachloroethylene, hexylresorcinol, bismuth carbonate in large doses, aluminum subacetate, thymol, phenothiazine, and others. Some have been used very frequently, and without justification, despite the interesting investigations of Wright, Brady, and Bozicevich (1938) relative to the efficacy of gentian violet in the treatment of enterobiasis.

Gentian violet administered by the oral route has been used with excellent results. This was suggested by W. H. Wright, Chief, Division of Zoology, National Institutes of Health, United States Public Health Service, who made experimental observations on this question in collaboration with Brady and Bozicevich.

Wright et al., treated a total of 163 cases of enterobiasis with gentian violet. Of these 163 cases, 64 were adult and 99 were children under 16 years of age. Many of the latter patients were 4 years or over. Thirty-six of the 63 cases were noncooperative; 5 individuals could not complete treatment because of reactions caused by the drug. Of 122 patients who completed their treatments by both methods, 112, or 91.8 per cent, were negative on post-treatment swab examinations. In 104 cases there was no reaction to the treatment. There were untoward effects in some cases, such as nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, constipation, headache, dizziness, lassitude, and griping abdominal pain, but none were of a serious nature. These investigators withhold treatment from individuals suffering from moderate or severe cardiac, hepatic, renal, and gastrointestinal disease. Patients should abstain from alcohol during the period of treatment.

In the event that the patient is infested with *Ascaris lumbricoides,* it is advisable to attempt removal of the ascarids before administering the gentian violet treatment.

Wright, Brady, and Bozicevich recommended for adults doses of 6 cg. 3 times daily before each meal for 8 consecutive days in series; treatments should be repeated after a week's rest. Children are given 1 cg. daily for each year of age.

In 1940 in Cuba, the excellent qualities of this drug were confirmed in numerous cases of this parasitism. It had been used since Wright and Brady presented their work in Havana at the Section on Parasitology of the Seventh Medical Pan-American Congress. D'Antoni and Sawitz also confirmed this work.

This medication does not require a special diet or previous purgatives, and the patient may continue his accustomed manner of living and his usual occupation. The drug is usually well tolerated except in a few rare cases in which it causes vomiting and nausea. In such cases medication must be discontinued for a few days and later resumed with smaller doses, over such a period of time as necessary to administer the total dose, which is the same in each case. For children the dose is usually mixed with something sweet and given in a dessert.

PROPHYLAXIS

In all cases of enterobiasis it is good practice to examine all members of the patient's family and to institute proper treatment at the same time of all of the parasitized persons. This prevents reinfestation of those who have been cured because it is possible for them to be reinfested by others who harbor the parasite.

Separate and treat all infested persons. Brush the hands carefully with soap and water, taking care to brush the nails, which should be cut short. All clothing must be washed in boiling water.

The best prophylaxis, and perhaps the only efficient means of preventing this infestation, is mass treatment of all parasitized persons in families, nurseries, asylums, schools, etc. Prior to prophylactic treatment, examine all such persons, including clinical exploration, individual and collective, as well as repeated microscopic examination of scrapings from the perianal region. When it is impossible to make such a survey, impose collective treatment when there is clinical evidence of infestation.

Strongyloidiasis

(Parasitism Produced by *Strongyloides Stercoralis*)

Synonym.—Cochin-China diarrhea.

HISTORY

Strongyloides stercoralis was first observed in 1876 by Normand in the diarrheal feces French soldiers of Cochin-China. Bavay described 2 different forms, but it was Leuckart ho, in 1884, proved that both forms belong to alternate generations of the same species. skanazy, in 1900, showed that the female invades the intestinal mucosa and there pro- ces lesions. Durme, Looss, Ransom, and Fülleborn described the mode of invasion: in, blood, lungs, trachea, pharynx, and the later migration into the intestine (1902-1904).

Kreis reported the male in 1932. It was believed until that year that development the egg was by parthenogenesis. Faust (1933-1935) made a detailed study of the de- elopment of the larva to the adult stage.

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

Environmental conditions requisite for the development of *S. stercoralis* are simi- r to those of Necator and Ancylostoma. For this reason, coexistence of both parasites ith Strongyloides is a frequent finding. On the other hand, Strongyloides may develop at mperatures lower than the other two; therefore, it is much more widely distributed than the hers, occurring in regions where Ancylostoma cannot survive. While parasitism with this ganism frequently occurs, nevertheless *S. stercoralis* is found less frequently than all the her roundworms observed in Cuba.

CAUSATIVE AGENT

Strongyloides Stercoralis (Bavay, 1876) Stiles and Hassall, 1902

Synonyms.—*Anguillula stercoralis* Bavay 1877; *Anguillula intestinalis* Bavay 1877; *Lep- dera stercoralis* Cobbold 1879; *Leptodera intestinales* Cobbold 1879; *Pseudorhabditis ster- ralis* Perroncito 1871; *Rhabdonema strongyloides* Leuckart 1883; *Rhabditis strongyloides* euckart 1883; *Strongyloides intestinalis* Grassi 1883; *Rhabdonema intestinalis* Blanchard 385.

The parasite has two adult forms and a rather complex cycle of development. There e two types of larvae: one rhabditiform, the other filariform. Of the two adult forms, one parasitic, localizing in the intestinal mucosa, particularly in the duodenum. The non- arasitic form grows in artificial fecal cultures through the evolution of the rhabditiform rva.

The first adult form is called ''strongyloid'' because of the long cylindrical esopha- is. The second form is called ''rhabditoid'' because of the double bulbous shape of the sophagus.

The first adult form has been shown by Faust to be diecious; that is, having both xes.

Life Cycle

The female parasite lays its eggs in the intestinal mucosa. The eggs immediately urst and the rhabditiform larvae escape into the intestinal lumen, are expelled in the ces, and develop in the following fashion:

1. The larva enlarges and elongates, the esophagus changes into the strongyloid pe (long, cylindrical), the primitive genital organ narrows, the tail elongates and be- mes bifid. The parasite molts once, and the larva changes from the rhabditiform into e filariform type. This is the infesting form.

2. The rhabditiform larva (first rhabditiform larva) increases in size. The primitive genital organ becomes hypertrophic. The larva undergoes one molting, retaining the rhabditoid type of esophagus; then the genital organs appear, and the larva is transformed into either the male or the female adult form. Copulation takes place, and the female becomes gravid, the eggs being embryonated in the uterus. The female then lays eggs. These eggs hatch, freeing the rhabditiform larvae (second rhabditiform larvae) which are identical with the original or first rhabditiform larvae. This second rhabditiform larva, born in the fecal substance, is transformed into a filariform larva by a mechanism similar to that previously described, and is the infestive form. Thus the infestive form of the larva is formed either directly through transformation of the first rhabditiform larva or indirectly through transformation of the second rhabditiform larva, which in turn is a product of a sexual nonparasitic generation. The former is called the short or direct cycle; the latter, the long or indirect cycle.

When the infesting form comes in contact with the skin or mucous membrane, it penetrates deeply and migrates to the lungs, either by way of the circulatory system (Fülleborn) or of the connective tissue (Brumpt), regardless of which cycle of development the larva follows. Upon reaching the lungs, it travels up the respiratory tree to the larynx and into the pharynx. It then goes down the esophagus, passes through the stomach, and finally reaches the duodenum where it changes into the adult parasitic, or strongyloid, form. The fertilized female bores through the mucosa where it lays embryonated eggs. These hatch and the rhabditiform larvae emerge. The larvae are expelled during defecation, and a new cycle begins.

The habitat of the *strongyloid female, parasitic, or intestinal form* is the mucosa, not the lumen, of the small intestine. This female measures 2.2 mm. by 34 microns. The anterior portion of the body is very thin; the posterior portion thickens and terminates in a conical tail. Its integument has fine transverse striations. The mouth has 4 very small lips.

The *eggs* are ellipsoid, approximately 50 to 60 by 30 to 40 microns. They have a very thin single colorless refractive wall. They fill the uteri of the gravid female, those lying closer to the vulva becoming embryonated. In fecal cultures, some of the eggs may burst, giving rise to rhabditiform larvae within the uterus of the rhabditoid female.

DIFFERENCES BETWEEN THE RHABDITIFORM LARVAE OF STRONGYLOIDES STERCORALIS AND THOSE OF NECATOR AMERICANUS

Morphologic.—

1. The rhabditiform larvae of Necator, just as it emerges from the egg, is smaller than the rhabditiform larva of Strongyloides.

2. The mouth of the rhabditiform larva of Strongyloides is shorter than the mouth of the rhabditiform larva of Necator.

3. The rudiment of the genital organs of the rhabditiform larva of Strongyloides is much more developed and more clearly seen than the rudiment of the genital organs of the rhabditiform larva of Necator, which is barely perceptible and practically does not exist.

4. There is also some difference in the esophageal bulb of the 2 rhabditiform larvae, the esophagus of the larva of Necator being relatively narrower and longer on the whole.

Biological.—Other data are related to the evolution of the larvae in coprocultures:

1. The rhabditiform larva of Strongyloides develops rapidly, in its short cycle, and becomes a filariform larva, morphologically and structurally different from the filariform larva of Necator.

2. The development, in coprocultures, of the characteristic sexual forms of Strongyloides permits us to make a diagnosis, because Necator has no sexual forms in coprocultures.

3. Fresh feces in strongyloidiasis may contain rhabditiform larvae of Strongyloides but generally no eggs, while fresh feces in necatoriasis usually do not contain rhabditiform larvae of Necator but do contain the eggs. In short, nonembryonated eggs in re-

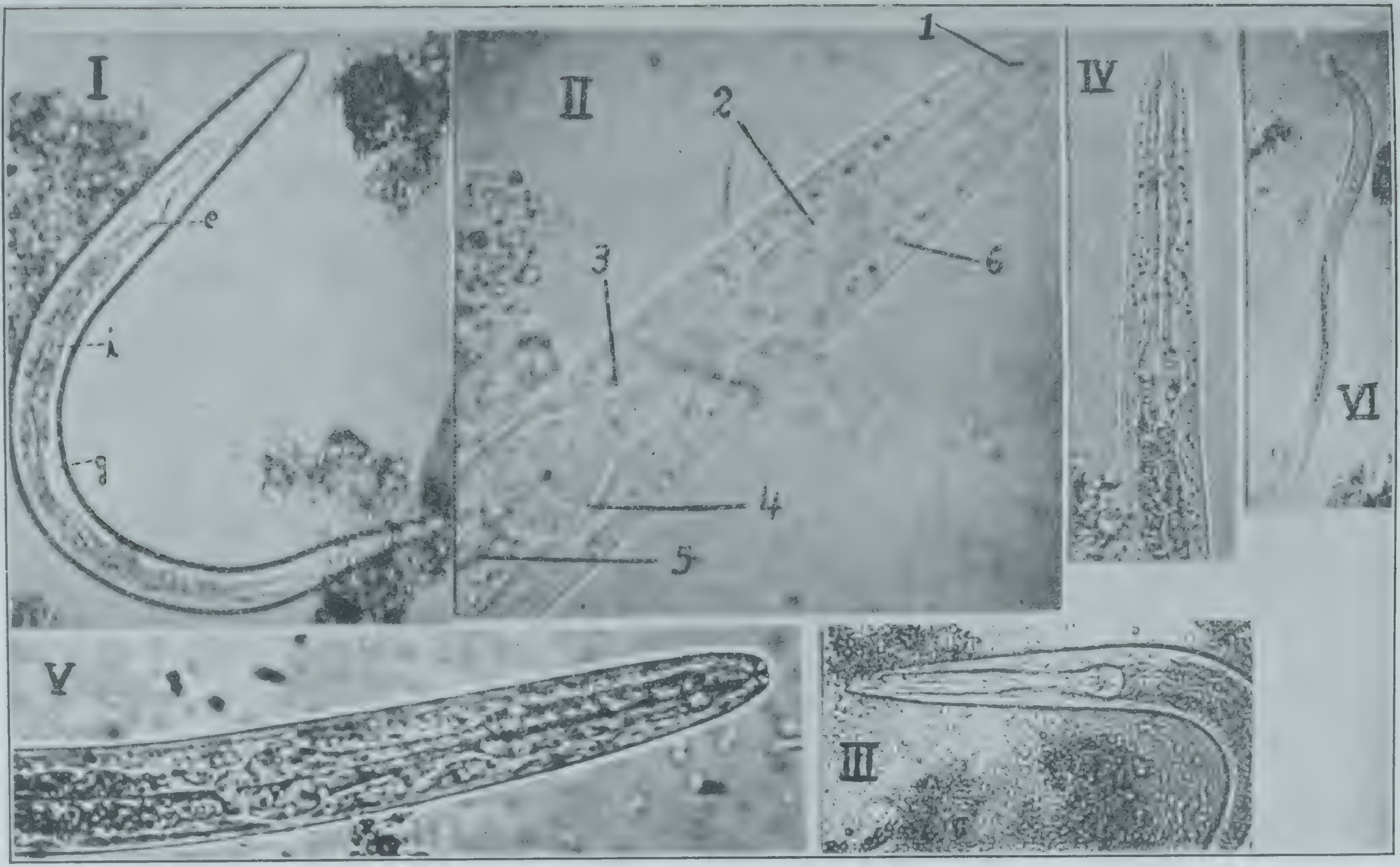


Fig. 238.—*Strongyloides stercoralis* and *Necator americanus* (*III*). Rhabditiform larva in feces, and stages of development into the filariform larva in coprocultures.

I, Typical rhabditiform larva in fresh feces: *e*, esophageal bulb; *i*, intestine and its lumen; *g*, rudiment of genital organ.

II, Photograph of anterior quarter of parasite: *1*, short mouth; *2*, anterior end of esophagus; *3*, narrow portion of esophagus; *4*, esophageal bulb; *5*, lumen of intestine; *6*, granulations.

III, Esophagus and intestine of rhabditiform larva of *N. americanus.*

IV and *V*, Mouth, esophagus, and intestine of developing stage of *S. stercoralis* rhabditiform larva.

VI, Developing larva becoming filariform larva.

(After Kourí, Basnuevo, Fermoselle, and collaborators.)

cently passed stools may be either Necator or Ancylostoma, but if these feces contain rhabditiform larvae, the larvae are those of *S. stercoralis.* The eggs of Necator, in recently passed feces, are not embryonated, while those of Strongyloides are always embryonated in duodenal fluid obtained by intubation, or in diarrheal fecal material. Since (in Cuba) *N. americanus* and *S. stercoralis* are so frequently found together in the same patient, it is of paramount importance that the morphologic and biological differential characteristics be constantly kept in mind while making microscopic examinations of stools, so as to determine whether one or both parasites are present.

HABITAT

The female *S. stercoralis* localizes in the duodenal mucosa or the upper portion of the human jejunum. Therefore, the larval forms and sometimes the embryonated eggs are frequently demonstrated through duodenal intubation even though examination of the feces has proved negative.

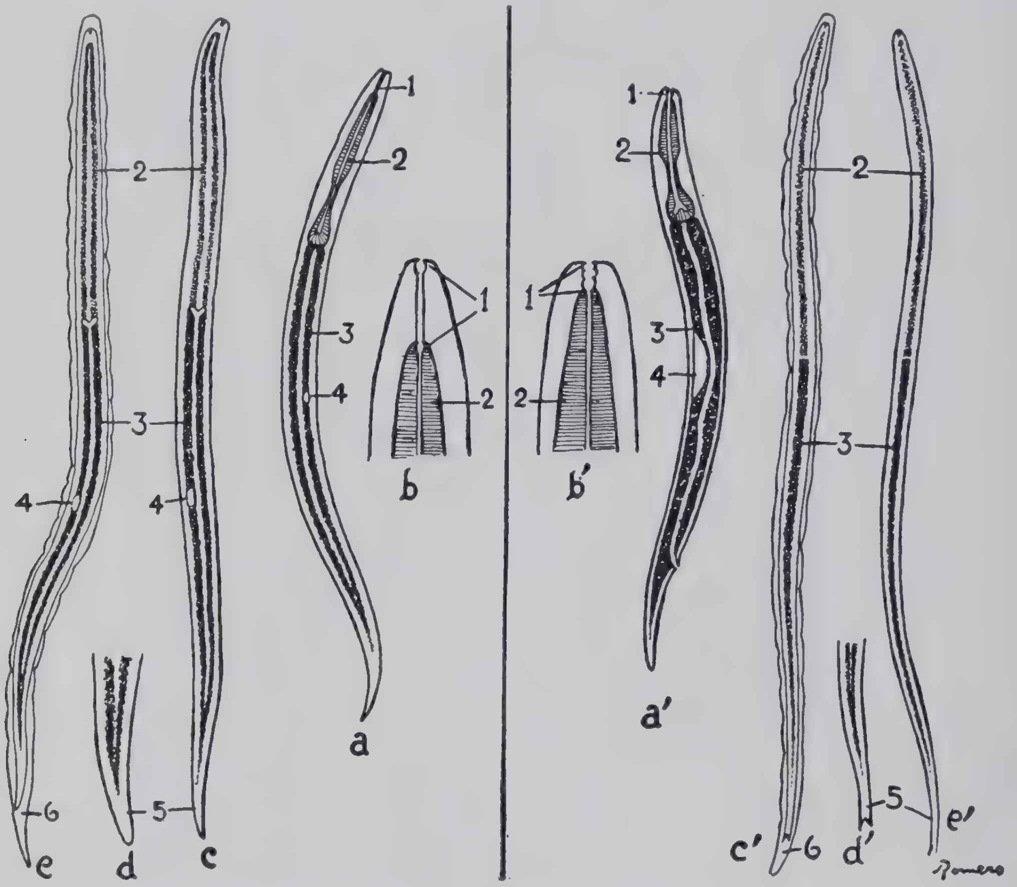


Fig. 239.—*Strongyloides stercoralis* and *Necator americanus,* larval forms. Rhabditiform larva of *a, N. americanus,* and *a′, S. stercoralis;* anterior end of the rhabditiform larva of *b, N. americanus,* and of *b′, S. stercoralis. c,* Filariform larva of *N. americanus* with *d,* posterior end: *c′* filariform larva of *S. stercoralis.* before molting, with *d′,* poster end. *e,* Infective form of *N. americanus* (sheathed filariform larva); *e′,* infective form of *S. stercoralis* (filariform larva without sheath). *1,* Mouth; *2,* esophagus; *3,* intestine; *4,* rudiment of genital organ; *5,* posterior end of the filariform larva; *6,* sheath of the filariform larva. (After Kourí and Basnuevo in Lecciones de Parasitología y Medicina Tropical, courtesy of Editorial Profilaxis S. A., Havana.)

Fülleborn reported eggs and females of this parasite in the trachea and in the lung tissue. Faust has recovered both rhabditoid males and strongyloid females in the tracheae of experimentally infested dogs. Larvae have also been found in a case of pleural hemorrhage (Froes), in the muscular coat of the colon (Yokogawa), and in the urine.

The strongyloid species found in dogs and cats are morphologically identical with those found in man. Fülleborn, Sandground, and Chandler believe that they are the same species; Brumpt and others state that they belong to different species *(S. canis, S. felis)*.

Basnuevo and Kourí have found Strongyloides larvae in dogs. They believe that this was the first time this parasite had ever been seen in dogs in Cuba. Different species of Strongyloides infest different animals: *S. fülleborni*, chimpanzees; *S. suum*, hogs; *S. papillosus*, sheep; *S. avium*, chickens; *S. siminae*, monkey.

NUMBER AND LIFE SPAN

The number of parasites varies in different cases. Usually the parasitism is mild or moderate. Less frequently, there are cases of massive parasitism in which larvae are abundant in the feces. In Kourí's statistics, only once have the eggs of the parasite been found in the stools of a patient with profuse diarrhea. They can ordinarily be found by coproculture, but these eggs come from free-living females and not from the parasitic females. Eggs of parasitic females are often found in fluids obtained by duodenal intubation, enveloped in mucus. The eggs contain embryos with active movements, which rapidly cause the eggs to burst and free the rhabditiform larvae.

The life span seems to be quite long, judging by one case in an endemic zone (Leichtenstern) in which the feces showed larvae for 13 years.

Patients in Havana have carried the parasite for nearly 10 years; reinfection in Havana is difficult. These cases have all been cured with gentian violet.

Nevertheless, if we agree with Thira, Nishigori, and Faust that internal reinfestation (hyperinfestation) is possible, then the life span of the parasite is very difficult to determine.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

In severe parasitism, local skin reactions such as urticaria, violent pruritus, papular eruption, and edema may appear at the site of penetration. Because of the irritation of the intestine, disturbances such as hemorrhagic diarrhea may occur. Anemia and eosinophilia may be observed.

Migration of the larvae through the lungs may be accompanied by slight fever, general malaise, anorexia, bronchial catarrh, and other signs of pulmonary irritation, on rare occasions by symptoms of mild bronchopneumonia.

The general state might be affected in cases of severe or prolonged diarrheas, with loss of weight, weakness, anorexia, relatively mild anemia, vertigo, edema, and tachycardia upon the slightest effort.

Mild parasitism causes little disturbance. In the tropics infestation by this parasite is frequently associated with necatoriasis, ancylostomiasis, and other helminthiases.

DIAGNOSIS

Diagnosis is made by microscopic examination of the feces, where the rhabditiform larvae are found. If the feces remain without examination for some time after they have been passed, the evolutionary forms may be found, filariform larvae, and even sexual forms. Refer to Chapter 72 for details.

TREATMENT

For a long time *S. stercoralis* resisted all known anthelminthic drugs. It was not until gentian violet was introduced that the problem of treatment of this parasitosis successfully was solved.

Thymol, male fern, oil of chenopodium, carbon tetrachloride, flowers of sulfur, emetine, and other medicaments have been used in strongyloidiasis by different authors, with mediocre results.

De Langen, in 1928, first proved the efficacy of gentian violet in this disease. Faust, in 1929, was the first to use it in the United States, in 47 patients controlled by repeated coprologic examinations. Forty-five of these patients were completely cured of this parasitism. In tropical America, Ceballos Carrión, in Guayaquil, Ecuador, in 1934, treated and cured 17 children with gentian violet.

Kourí and Basnuevo, in 1935, successfully treated with gentian violet 8 patients who had had this parasitism for 4, 5, or 8 years and who had resisted all previous anthelminthic treatment. Kourí, Sellek, and Rivera, in 1936, reported 7 cases of this parasitism in children treated and cured with this drug, controlling the treatment by counting the larvae before, during, and after administration of the gentian violet. Since then, all cases of strongyloidiasis at the Dispensary of the Institute of Tropical Medicine of the University of Havana have been successfully treated with gentian violet (Kourí, Basnuevo, and Sotolongo). Falla Alvarez and others have also reported cure of patients with this medication.

Medicinal gentian violet (hexamethylene-pararosaniline chloride) is used in 5 cg. tablets given in doses of 3 tablets daily for adults (15 cg. daily), 1 after each meal, for 20 consecutive days. It may also be given in doses of 4 tablets daily (20 cg.), before meals, for 15 consecutive days, with a total dose of 3 Gm., in a course of treatment which can be repeated, if necessary, after 7 to 10 days' rest.

Older children are given the same dose as adults. Younger children receive this drug in doses of 1 cg. daily for each year of *apparent* age, as in enterobiasis, in divided daily doses, given before meals, for 20 consecutive days, in a course of treatment which can be repeated, if necessary, as with adults, after a rest period of 7 to 10 days.

D'Antoni, of the Department of Tropical Medicine of Tulane University, has shortened the length of treatment to 4 days, giving larger daily doses, and increasing the dose progressively, with good tolerance, as follows:

First day: 6 cg., 3 times a day, or 18 cg. daily.
Second day: 9 cg., 3 times a day, or 27 cg. daily.
Third day: 12 cg., 3 times a day, or 36 cg. daily.
Fourth day: 15 cg., 3 times a day, or 45 cg. daily.

The total dose in 4 days is 1.26 Gm., or 1 Gm. and 26 cg. administered in 4 days.

In the United States, gentian violet is available in enteric-coated tablets containing 0.01 and 0.5 Gm., respectively.

In refractory cases, 25 c.c. of 1 per cent aqueous solution of gentian violet (25 cg.) may be introduced directly into the duodenum with satisfactory results.

This drug is usually well tolerated and does not require special diet or previous purgatives. It has a mild irritative action on the intestinal mucosa and is a mild cardiac stimulant.

In pulmonary infections, and in cases of massive or old intestinal infestation, treatment may be given intravenously. The patient receives, while fasting and at bed rest, 0.5 per cent gentian violet in quantities not greater than 25 c.c., by slow intravenous route. This injection may be repeated on alternate days up to a total of 5 injections.

Kourí has had considerable experience with intravenous injections of 0.5 per cent gentian violet in 5 c.c. ampules administered on alternate days for 2 consecutive months to patients with symptoms of lymphangitis, chylurias, and filarial hematochyluria (Kourí, Basnuevo, and Sotolongo). It was well tolerated and showed excellent clinical results. Intravenous injections were also used by Olivier and Kandou in 1927 in the treatment of clonorchiasis. Concentration of the aqueous solution of gentian violet should not exceed 0.5 per cent, and not more than 25 c.c. should be administered at a time.

Even though the larvae of Strongyloides still appear in the stools for a few days or weeks after treatment, experience has shown that the parasitic females may finally die (Craig and Faust).

PREVENTION

General Prophylaxis

General prophylactic measures are similar to those described for the other nematodiases.

Man is the principal disseminator of this disease, although cats and dogs harbor certain species of Strongyloides (*S. canis* and *S. felis*), which are biologically and morphologically indistinguishable from the Strongyloides which are parasitic to man.

Individual Prophylaxis

As in hookworm disease, protection of the skin, especially of the hands and feet, is necessary to prevent cutaneous penetration by the larvae from soil contaminated with excreta. Entrance of the larvae through the mouth seldom occurs.

DISEASES CAUSED BY WORMS BELONGING TO THE ORDER STRONGYLATA

Hookworm Disease

(Parasitism Produced by Hookworms: *Necator Americanus* and *Ancylostoma Duodenale*)

Synonyms.—(1) For *Necator americanus* infection: necatoriasis, New World hookworm infection, American hookworm infection, American uncinariasis of certain texts; (2) for *Ancylostoma duodenale* infections: uncinariasis, ancylostomiasis, Old World hookworm infection; (3) for both hookworm infections: in Egypt, Egyptian chlorosis; in the West Indies, edematous cachexia, stomach ailment of the Negroes, heart trouble of the Negroes; in Brazil, conconçao and opilaçáo (pro parte); in tropical Africa, anemia or intertropical hypohemia; in Europe, anemia of miners, tileworkers, and tunnel workers.

HISTORY

This disease probably existed among the ancient Egyptians. The clinical picture was described in Italy, Arabia, and Brazil long before Dubini in 1838 discovered the *Ancylostoma duodenale.* It seems certain that a species of animal Ancylostoma had previously been described and given the name ''hookworm'' because of the radial appearance of the copulatory bursa of the male. In 1842 Dubini gave the name *Ancylostoma duodenale* to the parasite found for the second time in human cases. This parasite was assumed to be the same as that previously described in Egypt, to which the name Egyptian chlorosis had been given.

In 1866, Wucherer found this parasite in patients who had died of tropical anemia in Brazil.

In 1879, Grassi and Parona described the presence of eggs in the stools of patients with tropical anemia. It was thought at that time that the disease was confined to tropical or subtropical zones, but this proved to be erroneous when some time later a case of anemia caused by Ancylostoma was reported to have originated in St. Gothard's tunnel in Switzerland.

Between 1877 and 1880 the etiology and diagnosis of hookworm disease were established, largely through the work of the Italian investigators, Grassi, Maggi, Pavesi, and the Parona brothers. The symptoms and treatment were described by Concato, Perroncito, Bozzolo, and Graziadei between 1879 and 1881. After the St. Gothard tunnel was completed, the disease spread throughout the mining regions of Hungary, Germany, France, Holland, Belgium, Spain, England, and Sicily, carried by miners who had become infected in the St. Gothard tunnel.

Perroncito, 1880, was the first to discover the metamorphosis of the rhabditiform free-living larva into the filariform infective larva, while the development of the adult worm in the intestine was first described by Leichtenstern in 1886.

Penetration of the skin by the infective filariform larva of *Ancylostoma duodenale* was described in 1886 to 1897 in Egypt by Looss. Following the accidental spilling of a culture of the larvae of this parasite on his hands, he noticed a local dermatitis with pruritus, and later was able to find eggs of the Ancylostoma in his stools. He therefore concluded that he had become infected through the skin. Looss, in 1911, while working with *A. caninum* of dogs, showed experimentally the path followed by the infective larva from the skin to its usual habitat in the intestine, after having passed through the lungs, the trachea, and the glottis.

The disease has been known in the southern part of the United States since 1845, but the parasite, *Necator americanus,* was not seen until 1893, and was not differentiated from the Old World species, *A. duodenale,* until 1902, when Stiles, in studying specimens sent to him, recognized that he was dealing with a new species. The specimens were sent by Smith and Clayton from the United States and later by Ashford from Puerto Rico. Stiles first called the parasite *Uncinaria americana,* a name which he later changed to *Ancylostoma americanum.* The name was finally changed to *Necator americanus,* by which it is known today.

Many of the anemias in the southern parts of the United States, Puerto Rico, and Cuba were later attributed to this species. In 1909, the Sanitary Commission of the Rockefeller Foundation was established to combat this disease, and since that time this organization has cooperated with the governments of various countries throughout the world in an effort to control this disease.

Ashford was the first to describe the parasite as the cause of anemia in farmers of Puerto Rico. On Nov. 24, 1899, he sent the following telegram to the Chief Surgeon in San Juan, ''Today I have proved the cause of the pernicious anemias in the Island; they are caused by *Ancylostoma duodenale.*''

About 1 year and 8 months after the discovery by Ashford in Puerto Rico, Guitéras (1901) reported the first case in Cuba, in a patient who had come from the southern part of the United States. Later the work of Agramonte, Guitéras, Plasencia, Entralgo, Lebredo, etc., contributed to the knowledge of the spread and distribution of this parasite in Cuba.

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

Necator americanus predominates in the Western Hemisphere, Central and South Africa, southern Asia, the East Indies, Polynesia, Micronesia, and Australia; *Ancylostoma duodenale*, along the coastal regions of northern Africa, the Mediterranean, southern Europe, north India, China, and Japan. Associated in small numbers with *N. americanus*, the latter can be found in south India, Burma, the Malayan Peninsula, central and southern China, the eastern part of the archipelago of the East Indies, Polynesia, Micronesia, Australia, Brazil, Paraguay, and Cuba.

Hookworm can be found throughout the tropical and subtropical zones between 45° north and 30° south latitude, with the exception of *A. duodenale*, which is seen farther north in the mining districts of Europe.

N. americanus is thought to have been introduced into the New World by Negro slaves and immigrants from Central and South Africa, while *A. duodenale* was introduced, in small numbers, from the west, by Chinese laborers. Soper, in Paraguay, in examining thousands of stools of patients under treatment, found Ancylostoma 13 times more frequently than Necator in regions where the European population was very small. Maplestone in India found approximately 5 Ancylostomas for every 1 Necator. In Cuba, *N. americanus* is found in considerably larger numbers of cases than *A. duodenale* (Lebredo: more than 90 per cent; Kourí). In the few cases in which Ancylostoma is found, it is usually associated with Necator and has been seen in patients from the provinces of Pinar del Río and of Oriente, and of the Isle of Pines (Kourí). *N. americanus* predominantes in Puerto Rico.

Loughlin and Stoll (1948), in a report on hookworm infection in American servicemen with reference to the establishment of *A. duodenale* in the southern United States, call attention to one of their helminthologic features of World War II in the form of exposure of servicemen to infection with hookworm in areas infested with *A. duodenale*, particularly in the Pacific Islands. Reports of studies confirming this are gradually accumulating. The information available to date, together with certain emphases arising from the further examination of data secured by American authorities on Navy and Marine personnel while on Guam, are brought together in this contribution to determine their relationship to the question of the potential establishment of *A. duodenale* in the United States. They showed epidemiologic data concerning the probable establishment of *A. duodenale* in the southern United States. Of servicemen returning from the Pacific, 1 in 15 has been reported infected with this species of hookworm. Also, analysis of hookworm infections carried by American servicemen from the South suggest a continuation into young adulthood (18 to 29 years) of faulty hygienic habits acquired in childhood. The presence in returnees of these ages of a measurable incidence of *A. duodenale* is thus combined with evident persistence of practices favorable for dissemination of hookworms. The suspicion is thus increased that *A. duodenale* has an opportunity to appear in areas of current hookworm infection. Confirmation of such suspicion must await the discovery of the first instance of proved autochthonous infection, probably in one of the southern coastal states.

CAUSATIVE AGENTS

The causative agents are *N. americanus* and *A. duodenale.*

Necator Americanus (Stiles 1902) Stiles 1903 and **Ancylostoma Duodenale** (Dubini 1843) Creplin 1845

Synonyms.—(1) For *Necator americanus: Uncinaria americana*, Stiles 1902; *Ankylostoma americanum*, Verdun 1907; *Necator africanus*, Harris 1910; *Necator argentinus*, Parodi 1920; *Necator suillus*, Ackert and Payne 1922. (2) For *Ancylostoma duodenale: Agchylostoma duodenale*, Dubini, 1843; *Strongylus cuadridendatus*, von Siebold 1851; *Dochmius ankylostomum*, Molin 1860; *Sclerostoma duodenale*, Cobbold 1864; *Strongylus duodenalis*, Schneider 1866; *Dochmius duodenalis*, Leuckart 1876; *Uncinaria duodenalis*, Railliet 1885; *Ankylostomum duodenale*, Lutz, 1885.

N. americanus is a pinkish-white round worm, frequently stained dark by digested blood. The *male* is 7 to 9 by 0.3 mm.; the *female,* 9 to 11 by 0.4 mm. The body is cylindrical. The posterior and anterior extremities of the female are thin; the posterior extremity of the male is broader because of the copulatory sac or bursa. This species is smaller and thinner than *Ancylostoma duodenale.* Males of *A. duodenale* are 8 to 11 by 0.4 mm.; the females are 10 to 18 by 0.6 mm.

The position assumed by the Necator is very characteristic. The body describes an arc, with the ventral surface on the inner side. The anterior extremity curves back over the body so that the buccal capsule faces the convex dorsal surface. The position of the body in the male is similar, but the curvature is greater.

Ancylostoma shows an irregular curvature. The cephalic end is straight or slightly curved, following the general curvature of the body.

Table XXIII shows the differences between *N. americanus* and *A. duodenale.*

TABLE XXIII

	ANCYLOSTOMA DUODENALE	NECATOR AMERICANUS
Buccal capsule	Teeth, 2 on each side	No teeth, but lip-like pouch-formed plates
Distal end of female	A very fine sharp point or tail	No tail or point
Distal end of male	Spicules originating from the copulatory bursa, diverging, and ending in a point; the bursa is umbrella-shaped	The spicules from the copulatory bursa lie near the end, close together, and bear a hooklet; the bursa looks as if it contains 2 lobes
Sexual orifice of female	Lies behind the middle of the body, on the convexity	In front of the middle of the body, on concavity
Position of body in rigor mortis	The head and, in the male, also the distal end are bent in from the ventral side of the body ("C" position)	The head and, in the male, also the distal end are bent from the dorsal side, almost hook-shaped
Size	Somewhat larger and thicker than Necator	Somewhat shorter and more slender than Ancylostoma

The *eggs* of *N. americanus* are ellipsoid, about 70 by 40 microns, longer than those of *A. duodenale,* which are 60 by 40 microns. The wall is very thin, colorless, and refractive.

The egg is composed of a granular grayish substance divided into 4 to 8 cells or metameres (blastomeres). Each metamere has a clear rounded zone which represents the nucleus.

The eggs of Necator and Ancylostoma do not develop in the intestine because of the temperature, lack of oxygen, and the presence of inert gases. In an external environment there are some factors which favor, others which arrest, development of the eggs.

1. **Reaction of the Medium.**—Very alkaline, but particularly very acid, stools inhibit the development.

2. **Chemical Conditions.**—Oxygen favors, sea salts and sulfates arrest, the development. The eggs can live for 28 days in feces in sewage.

3. **Physical Conditions.**—Optimum temperature is 25° to 30° C. Humidity and darkness favor development of the egg.

4. **Favorable Soil.**—Certain soils favor development of eggs of Necator and Ancylostoma: in warm climates, plantations, especially coffee, banana, and sugar cane, rubber, and cacao; in mild climates, brickyards and tile works; and in cold climates, mine pits, where the eggs find correct conditions for their growth. In these media, the intraovular development of the embryo takes place in 24 hours, according to Chandler.

When the eggs are ingested by coprophagous cockroaches *(Periplaneta americana)*, they are often destroyed; nevertheless, some continue their development when excreted by these insects. Cockroaches, in this respect, are more useful than harmful to man. The eggs remain viable in the digestive tract of chicks, which may disseminate the infection.

Life Cycle

The egg is passed in the feces and undergoes a series of developmental changes giving rise to a vermiform embryo. The embryo, when hatched, becomes a rhabditiform larva, which molts, changing into a filariform larva.

This second (filariform) larva again molts, remaining enclosed in the old sheath. This third or mature larva, the infesting form, is very active. When it comes in contact with the skin of its host, it bores through, enters the circulatory system, and casts aside its old sheath. The larva is then carried to the right side of the heart. The heart pumps it into the capillaries of the lung, where the larva pierces the endothelium and invades the respiratory system. From the alveolus it makes its way up through the smaller bronchioles, the larger bronchioles, the bronchi, the trachea, the larynx, and then into the pharynx, reaches the digestive system, and passes down the esophagus into the stomach, finally into the intestine. In the intestine the larva molts for the third time, and now has a temporary buccal capsule.

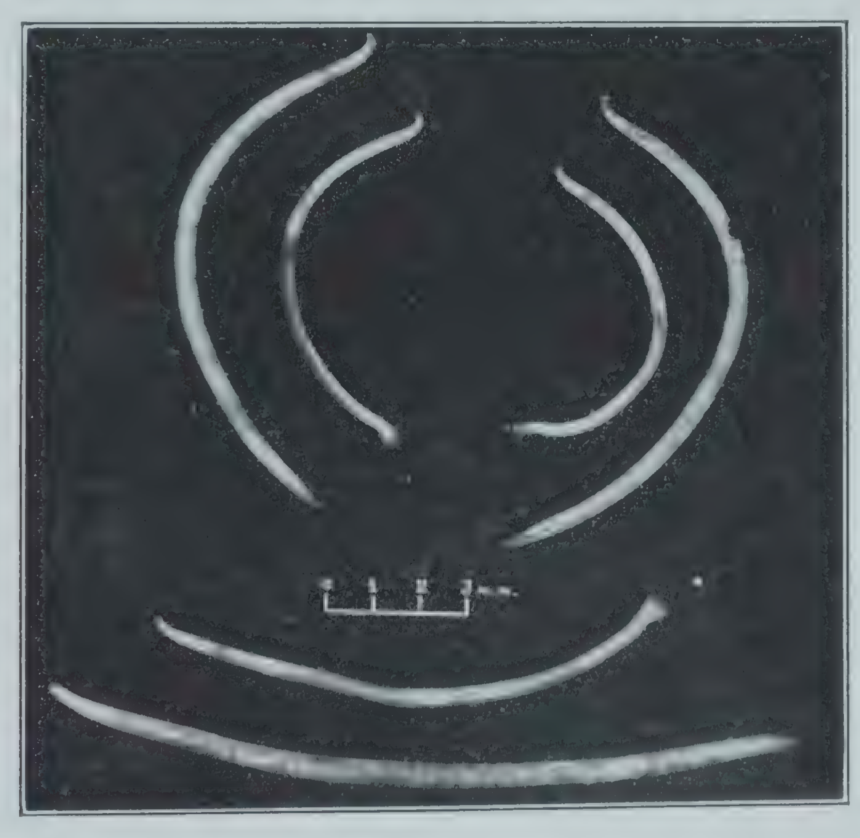


Fig. 240.—*Above, Necator americanus*, male and female (2 pairs). *Below, Ancylostoma duodenale*, male and female (1 pair). (Original figure.)

The larva molts once more and becomes a worm with a permanent buccal capsule. In about 3 or 4 weeks, this worm develops into an adult male or female. Copulation takes place, the female lays the eggs, and a new cycle is begun.

BIOLOGIC CHARACTERISTICS OF THE INFESTIVE LARVAE OF NECATOR AMERICANUS

Resistance.—The larvae may live 2 to 10 months in soil in plantations and mines, even though they do not ingest food. They can live 18 months in water in the laboratory, which protects them from their natural enemies (Ackert).

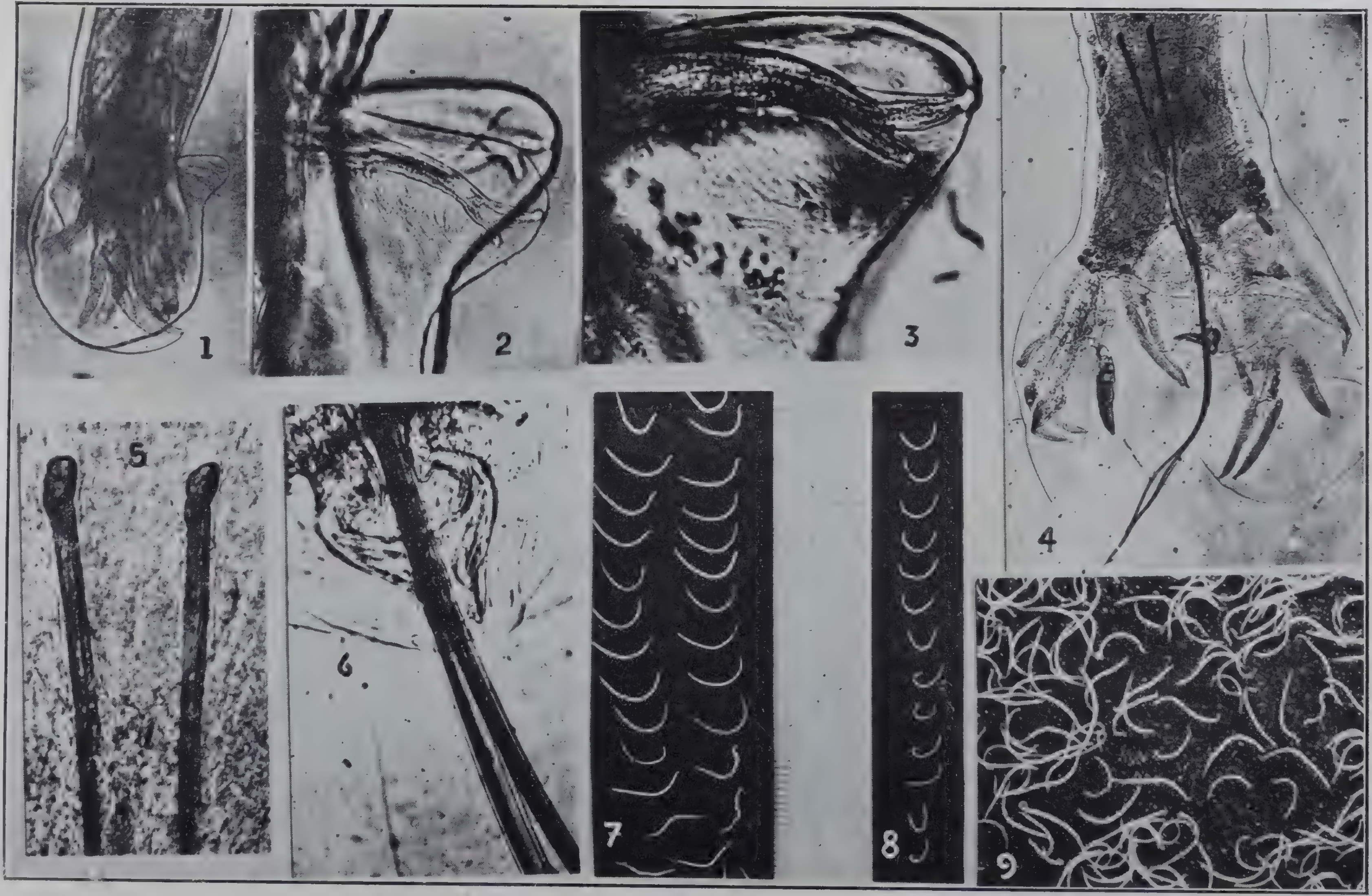


Fig. 241.—*Necator americanus.* *1*, Lateral view of copulatory bursa; *2*, two small lobes and two small posterior rays, lateral view; *3*, small bidigitate posterior ray extending into small posterior lobe; *4*, copulatory bursa, posterior view, spicule and cloaca, rays; *5*, the 2 spicules at their origin; *6*, the 2 spicules as they project through the cloaca; *7*, females, natural size; *8*, males, natural size; *9*, males and females, natural size. (Original photograph.)

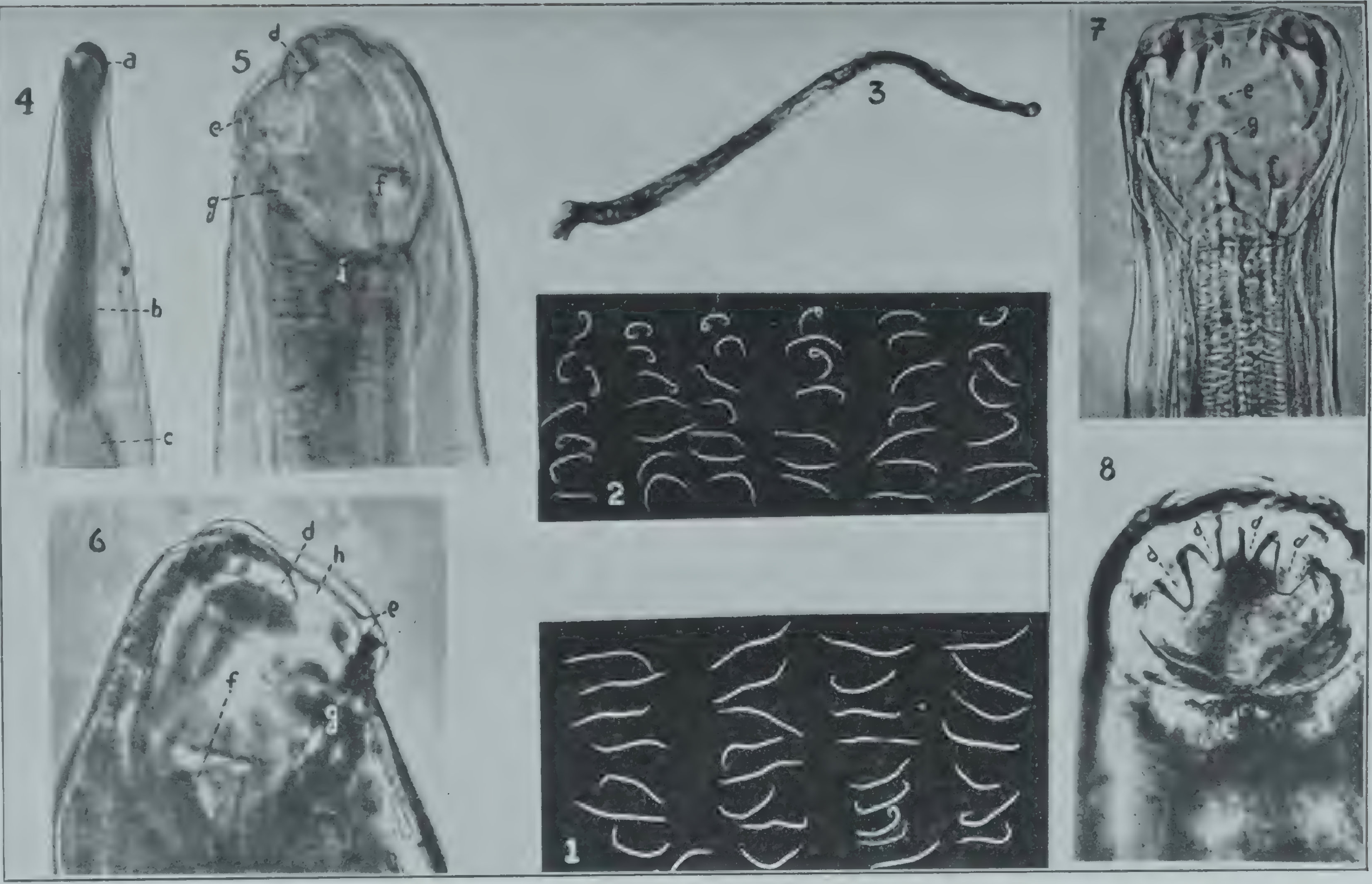


Fig. 212.—*Ancylostoma duodenale.* *1*, Females; *2*, males, natural size; *3*, male, magnified; *4*, straight anterior extremity: *a*, buccal capsule; *b*, esophagus; *c*, intestine; *5* and *6*, lateral view of buccal capsule; *7* and *8*, front view of buccal capsule; *d*, ventral hooklets; *e*, dorsal points; *f*, lateroventral pharyngeal plates; *g*, dorsal pharyngeal tooth, adherent to capsule; *h*, opening of buccal cavity; *i*, muscular pharynxes. (Original photographs.)

Focus.—The natural abode of the larvae is the soil in plantations upon which parasitized individuals have defecated.

Distribution of the Larvae in the Soil.—The larvae usually do not leave the place where they escape from the egg which has been deposited in human excreta.

Tropism.—

Geotropism: Infestive larvae leave the soil when the air is humid and warm because their thermotropism and hydrotropism are more intensive than is their geotropism. This causes them to climb up walls, trees, or any objects which touch the ground, if these objects are moist. If the humidity of the atmosphere changes, and the air begins to dry, the larvae die because they cannot turn around to return to the moist ground. Chandler, in the Indies, placed straw on the ground; the larvae rose to the surface of the straw when damp because of the morning dew, and then died when the straw dried in the afternoon sun.

When the larvae climb, they ascend no higher than 30 cm. For this reason, dark wells or latrines are to be abandoned when the level of the excreta reaches 20 to 30 cm. below the ground.

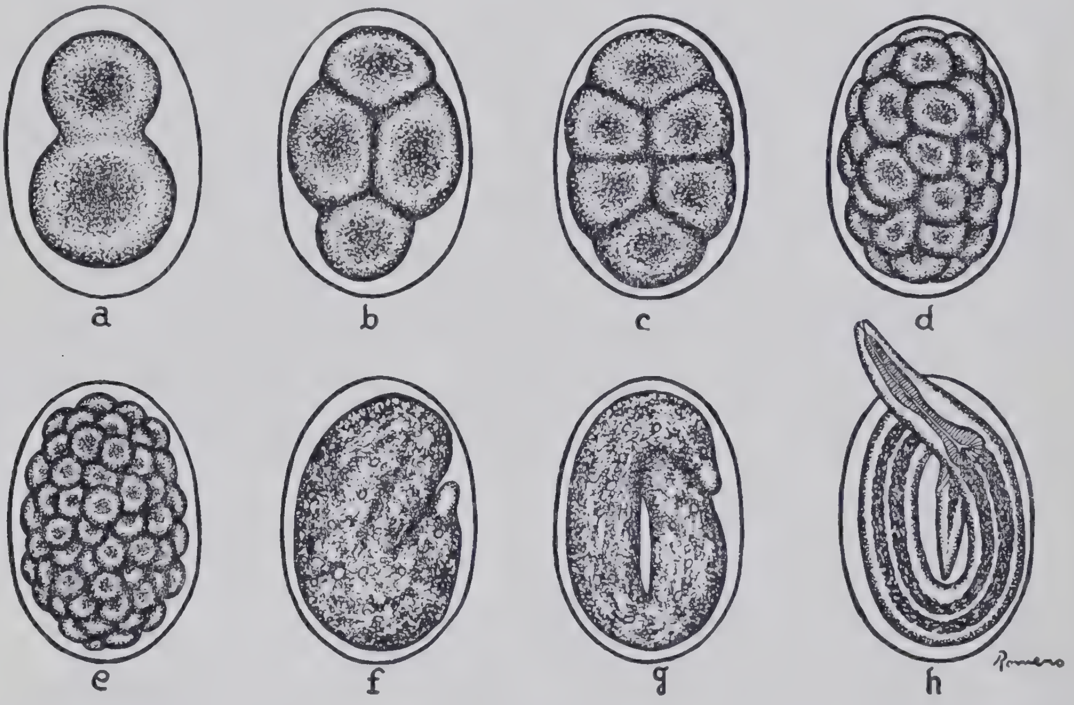


Fig. 243.—*Necator americanus.* Development of the egg. *a, b, c,* Eggs with 2, 4, and 6 metameres; *d,* beginning of the morula stage; *e,* morula in a more advanced stage; *f,* egg with tadpole-like embryo; *g,* egg with vermiform embryo; *h,* egg with rhabditiform larva. (Original drawing of Kourí and Basnuevo in Lecciones de Parasitología y Medicina Tropical; courtesy of Editorial Profilaxis S. A., Havana.)

Hydrotropism and Thermotropism: Larvae show positive hydrotropism, which is utilized in diagnosis by coproculture. This attraction for water is still greater if the temperature of the water is higher than the temperature of the environment, within certain limits (positive thermotropism). This thermotropism is intensely positive if the temperature of the water varies between 35° and 37° C.

Some authors believe that thermotropism constitutes one of the determining factors in penetration of the skin by the larvae, because the temperature of the skin (36° C.) is higher than that of the soil.

Thigmotropism and Histotropism.—Thigmotropism is the property of a living organism to react to contact with strange bodies; histotropism is the property of larvae to become attracted to and penetrate tissues. Frequently the larva is indifferent in its selection of a host, and when it comes upon an animal that is not its habitual host, it may bore through the animal's skin and then die. This indifference in the selection of a host may be used to advantage in agronomical prophylaxis; a considerable number of infestive forms may be destroyed in this manner (Brumpt). Unfavorable animals used for destruction of these larvae are called animal "traps"—dogs, pigs, and other animals.

According to Ackert, the larvae of Necator lose their power to penetrate tissues in 18 months, but they retain their positive thermotropism.

The most economical method of destruction of the infestive form of Ancylostoma is to leave the excreta in the latrines and permit putrefactive gases to kill the infestive forms. Sea salt, bichloride of mercury, Lysol, calcium chloride, formalin, etc., require prolonged contact with the larvae in order to kill them (Lambinet), but the cost of such chemicals is too great to justify their use, particularly since the results attained are quite dubious (Brumpt).

HABITAT, NUMBER, AND LIFE SPAN

N. americanus and *A. duodenale* live in the small intestine of man, especially in the upper portions. Sometimes they ascend to the pyloric wall of the stomach, or descend to the cecum or even the ascending colon.

Necator has been found in some species of African monkeys and in chimpanzees and pigs. Experimental infection of puppies, cats, and Macacus has been carried out.

It is not unusual for individuals to harbor as many as 200 to 400 worms, and, in infections with severe anemias, as many as 500 to 1,000 have been reported. Smillie and Augustine reported a case with 3,000 Ancylostomas. In Cuba 1 case was seen (Epifanio Domínguez) with nearly 2,000 Necators.

According to Grassi and Parona, 1,000 Ancylostomas (500 males and 500 females) in the intestine correspond to 15,000 to 18,000 eggs per gram of feces. Thus by multiplying the number of eggs contained in 1 drop of feces by 2, the approximate number of Ancylostomas harbored may be obtained.

The life span of the parasite is probably 1 to 5 years.

Pathogenic Role

The severity of the lesions and symptoms produced by *N. americanus* or by *A. duodenale* depends upon various factors, such as the number of worms, the course of infection, resistance of the host, and reinfestation.

According to Darling, for each 12 worms there is a decrease of 1 per cent in the hemoglobin of the host. Thus 240 worms will cause a 20 per cent reduction in hemoglobin, or, in other words, the hemoglobin will drop from 95 to 75 per cent; a thousand worms will reduce the hemoglobin to approximately 15 per cent.

According to Smillie and Spencer, children who harbor less than 25 parasites do not show symptoms; with 26 to 100 parasites, they show hypochromemia with mild mental retardation; with more than 100 parasites they show severe disturbances: arrest in development, retarded mental and sexual development, and severe anemia.

Kourí has noted that individuals with more than 1,000 Necators usually show hemoglobin values as low as 12 to 15 per cent, less than 1,000,000 erythrocytes, and generalized edema.

At the onset of the anemia, there is leucocytosis of 17,000 per cubic millimeter, with great increase in eosinophiles. Later, the leucocyte count drops to normal or below normal, with a moderate eosinophilia, which remains for some months. In severe cases there is usually total absence of eosinophiles.

Spontaneous disappearance of the hookworms is relatively rapid during the first 6 to 12 months, greatly influencing the clinical symptoms of the disease (Chandler).

Resistance of the Patient.—Children are less resistant to the infection and its clinical manifestations than are adults, females less than males, and whites less than Negroes.

The nutritional state of the patient frequently constitutes the most important point in this problem. Most patients suffering from severe anemias are undernourished, and consequently have very poor resistance. Numerous clinicians, including Ashford, Faust, Rhoads, Castle, Payne, Lawson, and Kourí, have found that a balanced diet to which liver and iron have been added can completely compensate for the loss of blood due to the hookworm, even though the worms are not expelled.

Reinfestation.—In an endemic focus, individuals are constantly exposed to reinfestation. Thus, new generations of worms are added to or replace those already present in the intestines. ''Indubitably many patients develop considerable resistance to reinfestation (premunition), particularly those who are well nourished, who have had an initial massive infection.'' (Lörincz in Craig and Faust.)

PATHOGENESIS

The injury from these parasites is caused by various mechanisms:

Spoilative Action.—Parasites, to obtain nourishment, extract blood and tissue from the individuals who harbor them. Congestion and hemorrhage occur in the small lesions produced by the parasites, stimulated by the anticoagulating toxin secreted by the worms. Not only is blood lost from the constant sucking of the parasites, but blood seeps from the wound, which bleeds after the parasite moves to another part of the mucosa. The powerful buccal capsule and musculature of the esophageal bulb are responsible for the large amount of blood that the parasites can withdraw.

It has been estimated that about 0.67 c.c. (0.38 to 0.84 c.c.) of blood is extracted daily by each hookworm recently implanted in the intestine of man. After several months or years, *N. americanus* does not extract more than 0.2 to 0.5 c.c. of blood daily. If the quantity (0.67 c.c.) of blood extracted daily by a single parasite is multiplied by the thousands of worms which may be present, and repeated day after day over a long period of time, it is easy to understand the mechanism of the secondary anemias, so frequently seen in hookworm disease.

If parasitized individuals are well nourished and, more important, if liver extracts, iron, vitamins, and animal proteins are administered in large enough quantities, no anemia occurs, because the parasitized patient can compensate for the daily loss of blood under this treatment. Then, too, once the anemia is established, no matter how severe it may be, or how many worms are harbored, it rapidly disappears upon administration of iron, liver extracts, and vitamins, if the patient is kept on a balanced diet, even though the parasites have not been removed (Rhoads, Castle, Payne, and Lawson).

Traumatic and Bacterial Action.—Traumatic action produces mainly small lesions in the intestinal mucosa produced by the parasite when it bores through the mucosa or at times even the submucosa, or aspiration, by means of the muscular esophagus, of a portion of the tissue into its buccal cavity. This tissue first undergoes necrosis due to the toxins of the parasite, is dislodged, and finally is loosened by the oral and pharyngeal portions of the powerful buccal capsule (work of Kourí on Ancylostoma of dogs).

The parasite ruptures the blood capillaries causing interstitial hemorrhages. Areas of necrosis are observed around the cephalic pole of the parasite in dogs, and also massive infiltration with leucocytes, especially polymorphonuclear neutrophiles and eosinophiles.

Bacterial action is a result of traumatic action, in that the bacteria of the intestinal flora may enter the lesions and invade the tissues.

Toxic Action.—According to Smith and Loeg, Ancylostoma secretes an anticoagulating toxin; according to Alessandrini, also a hemolytic toxin. According to Weinberg, Lebredo, and Kourí, it also secretes a cytolytic and histolytic toxin which softens and necrotizes the tissue.

According to Lussana, the urine of patients with anemia due to ancylostomiasis is toxic for rabbits, which become anemic if injected with this urine. The urine of these patients is not toxic after the Ancylosomas have been removed. This does not, however, prove that the anemia of patients with hookworm is due to the action of the secreted toxins, which may inhibit hematopoietic activity or cause hemolysis of red blood cells, or both, as some authors believe. The anemia produced by hookworms cannot be of the hemolytic type since there is no decrease in red cell resistance to hypotonic salt solutions, nor is there splenomegaly or reticulocytosis. Neither is it of the aplastic type, since it is a secondary microcytic hypochromic anemia which readily responds to iron therapy.

The rare cases of primary macrocytic hyperchromic anemia reported in hookworm disease may result from a predisposition of the patient or they may constitute anemias *sui generis* superimposed upon hookworm disease.

As stated above the anemia seems to be caused by chronic loss of blood, frequently associated with an iron deficiency or a state of chronic malnutrition.

PATHOLOGY

Alterations occur in the blood, viscera, and particularly the digestive tract. In advanced stages of the disease the number of erythrocytes may be less than 1,000,000, and the hemoglobin content as low as 17 per cent or less. However, there are cases of polycythemia and high hemoglobin due, perhaps, to stimulation of the hematopoietic organs by the hemotoxins absorbed. Usually, eosinophilia is marked, although in the last stages of the disease it may be mild or moderate, or it may be absent.

At autopsy, the cadaver does not appear emaciated. The edematous condition exaggerates the adipose status. The tissues are pale; the liver, heart, and kidneys show fatty degeneration; the serous cavities show effusions. The duodenum and jejunum display a considerable number of minute wounds surrounded by small ecchymotic zones. If an autopsy is performed within 3 hours after thė death of the patient, the parasites can still be seen clinging to the walls of the intestines.

Rotter reported from the Pathological Institute of the Hospital de San Juan de Dios, San José, Costa Rica, a number of interesting histologic observations in fatal cases of ancylostomiasis. There were hemorrhages due to the bites of the hookworms into the mucosa of the intestine. These are very characteristic small submucosal hemorrhages in the center with a darker, pin-point-sized dot, indicating the size of the bite. Microscopically, the tissue showed many extravasated red cells. The hemorrhages sharply demarcate the muscularis from the mucosa. The mucosa itself is practically free from blood. There is some thickening of the submucosa, with deposits of hemosiderin, and scar-forming connective tissue. The submucosa is eight to ten times the normal thickness.

There are chronic inflammatory changes in the mucosa in the neighborhood of the bleeding points. In many cases polymorphonuclear neutrophiles accumulate around the area of hemorrhage, amounting almost to a phlegmonous condition. The common picture seen in practically all cases of chronic ancylostomiasis is a marked thickening and sclerosis of the submucosa. The connective tissue is rigid, often transformed into hyaline material. Some small spots of hemorrhages are noted microscopically, which defy recognition with the naked eye. The muscularis is very much thickened in all cases, often fragmented and studded with cells. The number of glands in the mucosa is decreased. Eosinophilic cells are seen in large numbers.

CLINICAL SYMPTOMS

Note the difference between the meaning of the terms ''hookworm disease'' and ''hookworm infection.'' These are not synonyms. Cases of infection by Necator and Ancylostoma frequently occur without clinical signs or symptoms, that is, without causing clinically manifest disease, due to the fact that the presence of a small number of worms in the human intestine usually does not produce clinical manifestations and in certain cases individuals may harbor hundreds of the worms without apparent symptoms. These symptoms depend upon various factors in addition to the number of worms: the resistance and constitution of the host; food habits of the host, with either sufficient or insufficient amounts of the principal food elements, particularly proteins, iron, and vitamins.

Skin.—Penetration into the skin by the filariform larvae of *N. americanus* frequently results in local pruriginous dermatitis, called ''ground itch'' or ''dew itch,'' with edema, erythema, and papular or vesicular eruption, which usually disappears spontaneously in approximately 2 weeks unless a secondary bacterial infection enters the abrasion, in which case more advanced lesions develop (Mazamorra in Cuba and Puerto Rico; Panighão in Brazil). *A. duodenale* very rarely produces this dermatitis.

Lungs.—The infective larva, when migrating to the lungs and entering the capillary and alveolar endothelia, causes microscopic trauma with small hemorrhages. When the number of larvae migrating through the lungs is considerable, the lesions may be larger, with alveolar hemorrhage and round-cell infiltration, causing difficulty in breathing. These pneumonic lesions of the period of invasion of hookworm disease are not as frequent as in strongyloidiases and ascariases.

Intestines and General Health.—There are three stages in hookworm disease: the initial, or stage of invasion; the chronic; and the final, or termination of the disease. Based upon the severity of the symptoms, the cases may be classified as mild, without anemia; moderate, with appreciable anemia; and severe, with severe anemia.

In *mild cases,* the anemia is insignificant, and there are no clinical symptoms, but the infected individual shows less resistance to intercurrent diseases. These cases may be considered as simple "carriers without clinical symptoms."

In the *second* or *moderate stage,* blood loss is not restored by the host; that is, the host shows moderate lack of blood regeneration. The symptoms consist of pyrosis, flatulence, abdominal fullness, and epigastric pain, which frequently disappear upon eating solid food or even upon ingestion of soil, clay, mud, etc. (geophagia). There may be a moderate intermittent fever, lassitude, and sometimes vasomotor disturbances, dyspnea, cardiac breathing, and palpitation. Poor food habits lead to malnutrition, which unquestionably contributes to the development of this stage of the infection.

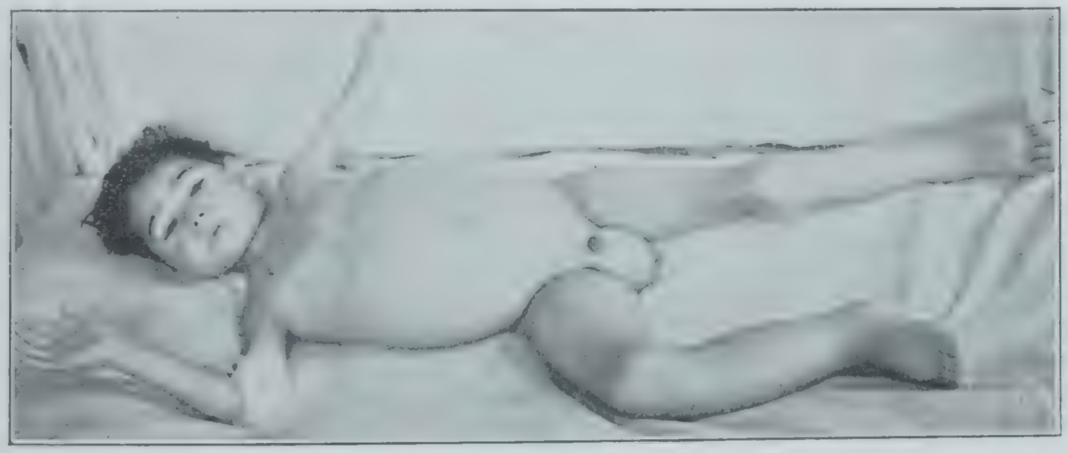


Fig. 244.—Edematous cachexia caused by *Necator americanus* in a child (Las Animas Hospital of Havana), with severe hyperchromic anemia of the Biermer type. Death several days later. Generalized edema, ascites, hydrocele, edema of the lower extremities, more marked on the right side. (Original photograph of Kourí and Basnuevo in Lecciones de Parasitología y Medicina Tropical; courtesy of Editorial Profilaxis S. A., Havana.)

The *third* or *severe stage* shows complete lack of compensation, with the classical picture of hookworm disease. There are constipation or diarrhea, incomplete digestion of food, and intensification of the symptoms described in the second stage of the disease. The skin is dry and rough; perspiration is diminshed; the pale yellow appearance of the skin and mucosae is noticeable in ndividuals with white skin; the hair is dry and lifeless; edema of the face, particularly of the eyelids, and of the lower extremities is characteristic and contrasts with the emaciation of the rest of the body.

A typical physical sign in children is the swelling of the abdomen, which has been commonly referred to as "potbelly" in English and "barrigones" in Spanish. It should not be forgotten that a deficient diet is capable of causing swelling of the abdomen in the absence of helminthic infections, such as *Ascaris lumbricoides,* to which this physical sign is also attributed. One should not forget that the classical picture of this disease in its severe stage was described before the clinical manifestations of malnutrition were known and that a great number of the symptoms seen in hookworm disease may be attributed to this, because this disease presents combined symptoms of malnutrition and helminthic infection.

Endocrine secretions may be diminished and puberty retarded in these cases. The picture also shows edema, weak pulse, mental retardation, apathy, and even sexual impotence or sexual incontinence. If treated inadequately, the disease may terminate in complete physical exhaustion with cardiac insufficiency and anasarca occasionally resulting in death.

During pregnancy, parasitized patients are predisposed to grave toxicosis with albuminuria, edema, and diminished renal function. According to Vickramasuriya, hookworm disease during pregnancy is more serious than syphilis, eclampsia, or puerperal infection, and plays an important role in fetal mortality.

The correlation between advanced hookworm disease and nephrosis with edema, albuminuria, hypoproteinemia, and hypocholesterinemia, has been described by numerous authors (De Villeba, Nébias, Pondé, and García Carrillo). Suárez in 1933 in Puerto Rico found hypoproteinemia. Porter in 1937, in chronic hookworm anemia, found that there is compensation for the loss of hemoglobin through an increased vital capacity of the lungs, which is more noticeable in people living in high altitudes. There is also an increased tolerance of the tissues for lack of oxygen.

The systolic pressure is notably lowered, and the demand for a greater volume of circulating blood in the internal organs results in a low fluid content of the peripheral blood, which is reflected in the intense paleness of the skin. Cardiac hypertrophy is the natural sequel of prolonged hookworm anemia.

DIAGNOSIS

The clinical diagnosis is relatively easy in those regions where this parasitic infestation occurs. It may be confused with malarial cachexia or beriberi. Confirmation of the diagnosis should be made by examination of the feces where the eggs are numerous. In cases of mild infestation, one must resort to coprocultures and concentration methods, such as saturated solution of sodium chloride or Telemann's method. See Chapter 72.

PROGNOSIS

The prognosis is severe in the tropics, especially in isolated regions where the diagnosis is delayed or never made. In these regions the parasite is abundant and is frequently associated with other intestinal parasites and with malaria. Septicemic complications of intestinal origin are frequent. At times, however, in spite of all these apparently unfavorable factors, even the most massive infestations, if treated properly, may be cured.

TREATMENT

1. **Treatment of Decompensation.**—In severe cases with intense anemia, eneralized edema, prostration, and other symptoms, the patients are kept in ed and given a balanced diet, particularly rich in animal proteins, with vitamins and mineral salts, supplemented by iron and liver extracts, orally or by njection. Liver and iron are indispensable and give surprisingly good results. ccasionally, *small* and repeated blood transfusions are necessary. This treatment should precede anthelminthic therapy, so as to restore rapidly the paient's strength and blood loss, and to balance the protein metabolism so that he anthelminthic therapy may be more easily tolerated.

Moderate and mild cases may be given the anthelminthic treatment at nce.

2. **Anthelminthic Treatment.**—Of the anthelminthic medicaments, carbon trachloride, tetrachloroethylene, hexylresorcinol, and oil of chenopodium re the most effective. Thymol, chloroform, beta-naphthol, extract of male ern, and other drugs have also been used with variable results, but at the resent time, the first four drugs are most generally used.

Dosage: Carbon tetrachloride and tetrachloroethylene are administered n doses of 3 c.c. for adults and 0.10 to 0.20 c.c. for each year of age for chilren up to the age of 15 years. Hexylresorcinol is given in doses of 1 Gm. for dults and for children older than 10 years. Oil of chenopodium is given in oses up to 1.5 c.c. for adults and 0.10 to 0.15 c.c. for each year of age for chilren.

Of these 4 medications, the most effective for the removal of the hookorm is, first, carbon tetrachloride, then tetrachloroethylene, the latter being ss toxic than the former. Carbon tetrachloride is apparently more effective gainst *N. americanus* than against *A. duodenale* (Kourí). Hexylresorcinol less effective, but it has the advantage of being less toxic, and of acting multaneously against Ascaris and hookworms. Oil of chenopodium is the ost effective medication known against Ascaris, being less effective against he hookworms, but its toxicity is greater than the last two, although, if administered properly, it offers no danger for the patient.

The combination of carbon tetrachloride (3 c.c.) with oil of chenopodium 1.5 c.c.) diluted in sufficient quantities as a purgative vehicle, to make a total olume of 60 c.c., or distributed in 10 gelatin capsules, has the advantage of cting simultaneously against Ascaris and hookworm, so frequently associated endemic areas. In this way, the grave accidents provoked by mobilization the Ascaris can be prevented. Carbon tetrachloride and tetrachloroethyne, in acting against these parasites, neither kill nor numb them, but make em more active, producing obstruction, or causing serious complications. henopodium also heightens the action of carbon tetrachloride or tetrachlorothylene.

In mass treatment, for ambulatory cases, children, the aged and debilitated, the drug of choice is hexylresorcinol, because of its low degree of xicity and ease of management, although it is necessary to repeat the treatment one or more times to obtain total eradication of the worms. Hexylresorcinol is administered when the patient is fasting, in proper doses for adults and children, after a saline purgative the preceding night. The patient should continue to fast for 5 hours after the capsules have been taken, and a saline purgative, which some omit, can be given 2 hours after taking the drug. A light dinner the night before treatment and liquid food 5 hours after the medication are recommended.

When administering carbon tetrachloride associated with chenopodium and tetrachloroethylene, 3 c.c. in 27 c.c. of a purgative vehicle, have the patient eat a light meal the night before treatment and take a saline purgative before going to bed.

The drug should be given while the patient is fasting. The patient should remain in bed and should receive liquid nourishment for the day. As these two anthelminthics cause rapid purgative action, usually no other purgative is necessary, unless the desired results have not been obtained by the medicaments.

If any of the anthelminthic treatments ingested cause excessive purgative action, or if they cause dehydration, with vomiting and frequent defecation, the symptoms must be combated by the usual procedure, hydrating the patient and even including venoclysis if necessary.

Administration of calcium several days before treatment with carbon tetrachloride is a good procedure since, as a rule, there is hypocalcemia in hookworm disease as well as in intoxications by this drug.

Alcohol is contraindicated during the treatment with carbon tetrachloride and tetrachloroethylene. Carbon tetrachloride is contraindicated in alcoholism, cardiac, hepatic, renal, and pulmonary diseases. The drug may be instilled directly into the duodenum by the Lyon sound while the patient is fasting. A few minutes after instillation, if necessary, 50 c.c. or more of a 33 per cent magnesium sulfate solution may be given.

Hydroxylene is a combination of hexylresorcinol with tetrachloroethylene, containing 0.10 Gm. of the first and 0.3 c.c. of the second drug in each capsule, in bottles of 10 capsules, giving the total dose for adults. Children are given one capsule for each year of age. It is given in the morning while the patient is fasting, using the same procedure as for the other anthelminthics. In this combination, suggested by Basnuevo in 1947, the combined actions of the two medicaments have proved advantageous, effective, and less toxic against hookworm-Ascaris combinations and against each of these worms alone.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Although the skin is the usual site of entrance of the filariform infective larvae of hookworms, infection by way of the mouth is possible if the infective form is ingested with food or drink, and in such case development is usually direct, without a period of migration within the host.

Freezing and desiccation rapidly kill the eggs and larvae, for which reason hookworm disease is endemic only in those tropical or subtropical areas in which the average precipitation reaches more than 50 inches yearly. The customs and special habits of some countries, particularly in the tropics and subtropics, persistently maintain hookworm infection. Farmers in Cuba and elsewhere, for example, are in the habit on plantations of passing their stools on the soil. The areas are frequently dark and damp. The optimum temperature of the summer months (28° to 32° C.) and the rainfall make those places most appropriate for development of the eggs into larval forms. In this manner foci of hookworm disease are formed on plantations, and occasionally in the cellars of houses, where children sometimes defecate, and in other places where children play. These conditions generally occur in the valleys of Central America and the Antilles. In other regions (southern United States), foci exist in the damp sand on beaches. In the cold regions of Europe, infection occurs in the mine pits. Since the infective filariform larvae usually do not leave the places in which they have developed unless carried away by rains, only those individuals who frequently defecate in such places will be infected and reinfected, especially if they wear no shoes. This explains why hookworm disease in denser population centers is present frequently in high percentage and intensity, while away from these foci or between focus and focus, if it is found at all, it is of a very mild degree.

The custom of the Chinese of using human excreta as fertilizer for vegetable crops contributes to the persistent maintenance of a high incidence of hookworm among Chinese farmers. If they store the excreta for some months, later to be used as fertilizer, in cement reservoirs, the larvae rapidly die because of the lack of oxygen and the presence of other gases.

Direct examination will not disclose mild infestations, which are discovered by concentrating the eggs, especially if the flotation method is used. However, none of these methods give adequate information as to the intensity of hookworm disease. This information can be obtained by the methods of Stoll nd Lane, which give the number of eggs per gram of feces as a basis for calculation of the number of worms harbored by each individual, and consequently the intensity of the infestation in any region (hookworm load).

Age.—Infestation is more frequent between the ages of 13 and 19 years, but occasionally maximum infestation may be found among younger children (who are more susceptible) although they are not exposed to infestation as often as are adults.

There seems to be a certain degree of immunity against reinfection so hat the first infestations progressively immunize man against future invasions.

It has been proved that there is a gradual and spontaneous reduction in he number of hookworms if there is no reinfestation. It has been estimated hat there is a 90 per cent spontaneous reduction of *N. americanus* and *A. duodenale* within 1 or 2 years, and total elimination after 5 or 7 years.

Sex and Occupation.—Infection is almost as frequent in males as in females, although slightly higher in males, due possibly to the fact that males are more likely to be exposed to infection. It is the male who generally works the oil, in tile works, in mines, etc. It is known that certain occupations expose one more often to hookworm infection than others. Farmers and their families who cultivate the soil, tile workers, workers in brickyards, and miners are exposed to hookworm infection by their occupations because they often work in complete absence of the most elementary sanitary facilities.

Race.—The white race is more susceptible than the Negro, not only to hookworm infection, but also to its consequences. Thus the most intense infestations and the most severe clinical symptoms are often seen in whites, rarely if ever in Negroes. The percentage or incidence of hookworm infection has been found to be 10 times higher among whites than among Negroes in the state of Mississippi (Keller, Leathers, and Ricks).

PROPHYLAXIS

Individual prophylaxis consists in protecting the individual against the infective filariform larvae—shoes to be worn in infected areas, and gloves in mines. In the coffee-growing regions of Brazil the percentage of infections was 9 times higher among barefooted laborers than among those wearing shoes; in certain rural districts, children under 14 years of age were more intensely infected than older children (Smillie). When the children begin to wear shoes, the incidence of infection decreases (Smillie and Augustine).

General prophylaxis consists in:

1. **Treatment of Parasitized Individuals.**—Individual treatment, controlled by laboratory examinations, may be sufficient in those regions in which the percentage of infection is low and environmental conditions are not favorable for the development and survival of the larvae in the soil.

Mass treatment is recommended when the percentage of infestation is high, when there are no facilities for discovering parasitized individuals, and where hygienic conditions are lax.

These treatments lower the contamination of the soil and the chances of acquiring infection. Unless mass treatment includes the entire population and is repeated at regular intervals, and local sanitary conditions are improved, the effects are only transitory (Scott and Barlow).

2. **Sanitary Disposal of Human Excreta.**—In rural districts where sewers are impracticable, laws should be enacted to insure sanitary disposal of fecal matter, compelling construction of sanitary latrines, and forbidding defecation on the ground. The use of human fertilizer for vegetable gardens and plantations should be permitted only after chemical disinfection or storage for months in cement pits sealed against water. There the eggs and larvae rapidly die.

3. **General Education.**—Carrying out of sanitary measures is surprisingly difficult, since it is almost impossible to overcome the resistance of farmers to construction, use, and care of latrines, even though these latrines are installed free of cost, as is now being done by the Cuban government. It is difficult to overcome the lifelong habits which some peasants have of depositing their excreta on the ground, or to accustom them to use and take care of latrines. Through general education by means of consultations and lectures on sanitary

ubjects, with posters, motion pictures, and other means within the scope of heir modest learning, they should be taught how easily disease is propagated, ts enormous harm, the danger of defecating on the ground, and the necessity of using latrines. This type of education is even more important than roper installation of latrines.

Compulsory laws are less effective than instruction. Instruction in san- tation should be given in homes, schools, clubs, and elsewhere. As a general ule, human cooperation is easier through persuasion than by compulsion.

We recommend that before and after establishment of a control program or hookworm disease, the average incidence of infection (hookworm load), ts extension, degree of soil contamination, and the environmental conditions e determined by surveys to establish more adequate prophylactic measures nd to follow up the efficacy of these procedures.

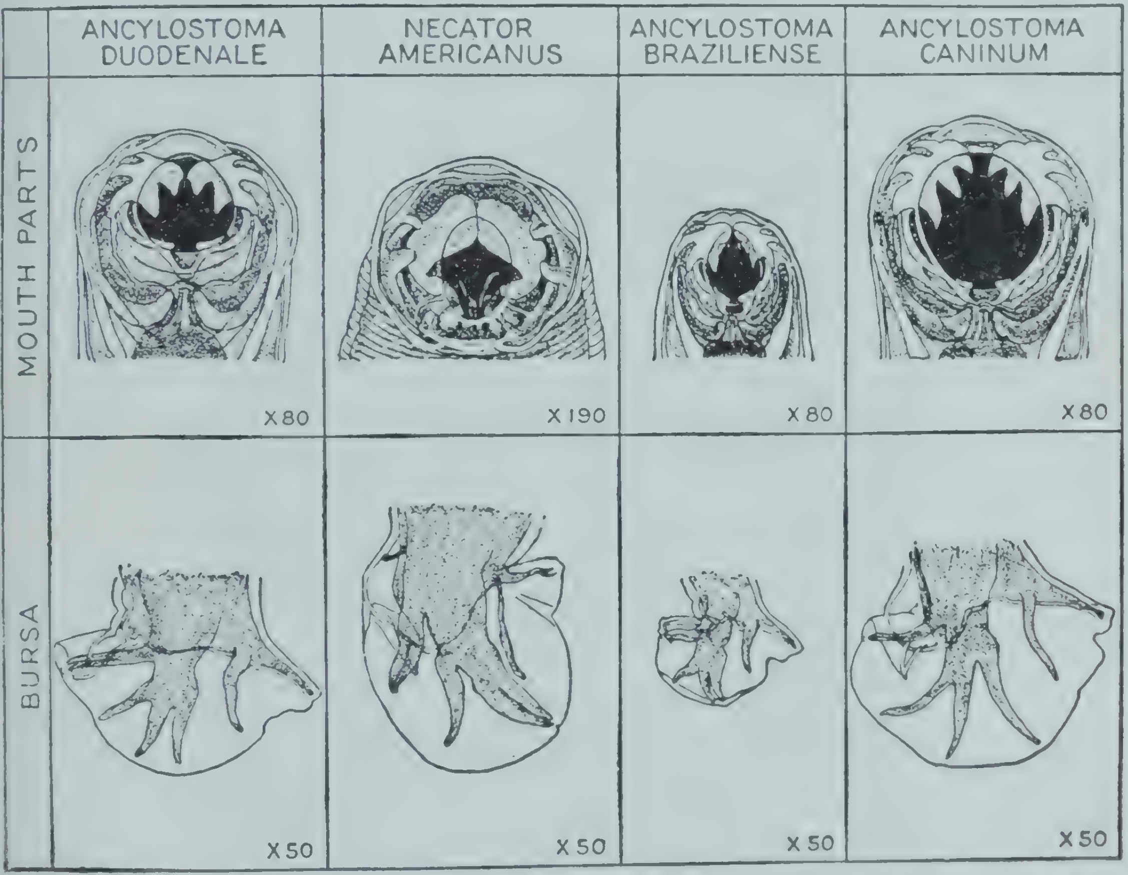


Fig. 245.—Comparative study of the buccal capsules, *above,* and of the copulatory bursae, *elow,* of the principal hookworms which parasitize man. (Redrawn from Looss, 1911, in elding, Textbook of Clinical Parasitology, New York, 1942, D. Appleton Century Co., by per-ission of the author and the publisher.)

Ancylostoma Malayanum (Alessandrini 1905) Lane 1916

Synonym.—*Unciniaria malayana* Alessandrini 1905.

This species was first described by Alessandrini in 1905 in the Malayan bear *(Ursus alayanus).* In 1916, Lane reported the same worm in the Himalayan bear *(Ursus troquatus).* orke and Maplestone, in 1926, found this worm in man.

The *male* worm is 12 to 15 mm. long and 0.6 mm. wide; the *female,* 15 to 19 by 0.6 mm. his species is the longest and thinnest of all the known species in this genus. The buccal psule is similar to that of *A. duodenale* but much smaller. The inner tooth of each ventral ntal plate is similar to that of *A. duodenale.* The outer tooth is longer, tapered, and narrower at the base. The copulatory bursa is large and the rays are thick. The terminal portions of the dorsal rays are quite sinuous. The spicules are very long and delicate. The eggs are similar to those of *A. duodenale.*

Creeping Eruption

Ancylostoma Braziliense Gómez de Faria 1910

Synonyms.—*Ancylostoma ceylanicum* Looss 1911; *Agamonematodum migrans* Kirby-Smith, Dove and White 1926 (larva).

This species was first discovered in 1910 by Gómez de Faria in dogs and cats in southern Brazil. It was described by Looss, the following year, in a human case in Ceylon. Since 1911 it has been reported several times in the intestine of man, dogs, and cats in Asia and on the American continent.

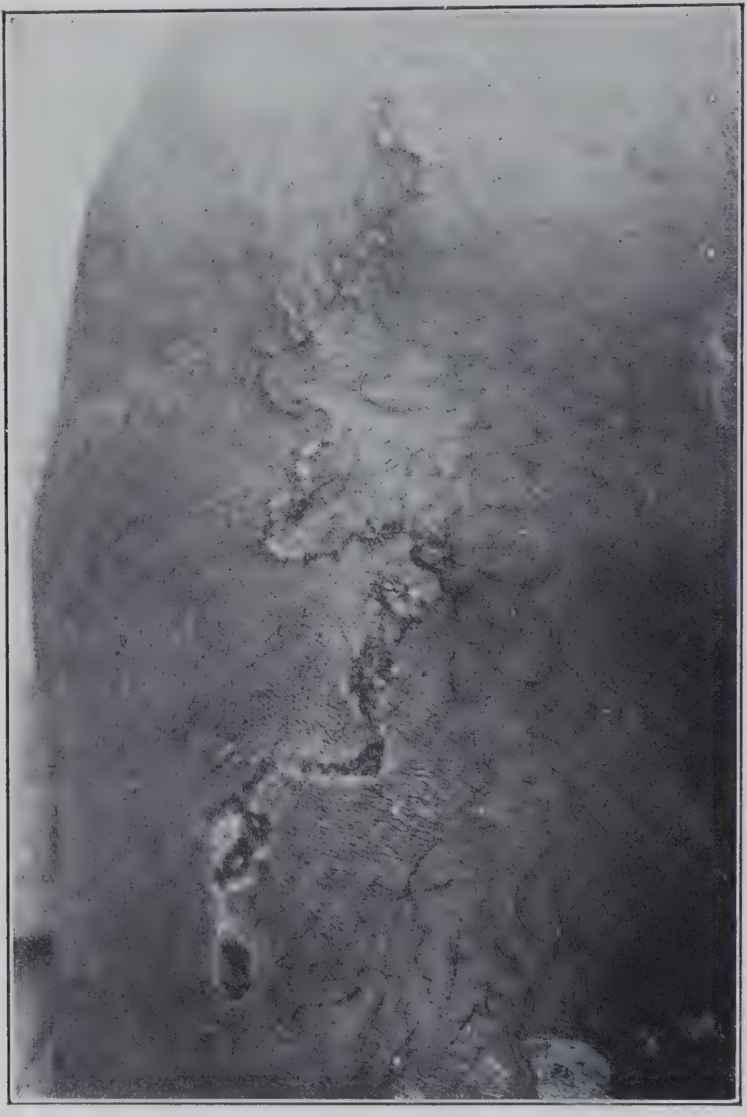


Fig. 246.—Larva migrans. Lesions on the internal surface of the right leg and knee.

In human cases it is usually a mild infection concomitant with *N. americanus.* In dogs and cats infected by this worm, it is usually seen in conjunction with the predominating parasite *A. caninum.*

The *male* parasite is 7.7 to 8.5 by 0.35 mm. The *female* is 9 to 10.5 by 0.37 mm. The buccal capsule differs from that of *A. duodenale* in that the orifice is smaller, while each dental plate carries a small inner tooth, curved back, and one large lateral tooth. The bursa the male is smaller, as wide as long, and the rays are short and plump. The eggs resemble ose of *A. duodenale.* Kirby-Smith, Dove, and White (1925 to 1928) showed that the filari-rm infective larvae of this species are more frequently viable if they enter the host through e mouth than through the skin, and that the larvae which penetrate into the human body rough the skin are responsible for the "creeping eruption" (larva migrans) seen in the uthern part of the United States.

Ancylostoma Caninum (Ercolani 1859) Hall 1913

Synonyms.—*Sclerostomum caninum* Ercolani 1859; *Strongylus caninus* Ercolani 1859; *ncinaria canina* (Ercolani 1859) Railliet 1900.

This is the common Ancylostoma of dogs and cats. Distribution is practically cosmo-olitan, but it is replaced in part, in tropical regions, by the species *A. braziliense.* It is ubtful whether it is a natural parasite of man, although it was once reported in a Filipino Manalang, 1925).

The *male* is about 10 by 0.4 mm. The *female* is 14 by 0.6 mm. The buccal capsule is e widest and has the longest buccal orifice of all the species described in this genus. Each f the 2 ventral dental plates bears 3 teeth, the inner tooth being small and the outer large. he copulatory bursa is large and supported by long, fine, typical rays. The spicules are ick and relatively small. The *eggs* are quite similar to those of *A. duodenale* but are ightly larger. They are 64 by 40 microns.

The **life cycle** is similar to that of *A. duodenale.* Prenatal infection of dogs was dem-nstrated by Foster in 1932. The canine and feline varieties are biologically different Foster and Daengsvang, 1932).

The larvae of certain animal nematodes, especially *A. braziliense* and *A. aninum*, may occasionally bore through the human skin and live for a period time in the skin where they creep or advance, giving rise to an extremely uriginous dermatitis on that part of the surface of the skin which is covered the larva in migration. This condition is known as *larva migrans* or *eeping eruption.* The original dermatitis may be complicated with pyo-ermatitis and superficial ulcerations following violent scratching.

Although the larvae of *A. braziliense* are most often responsible, equally are the larvae of *A. caninum* and others.

Infection occurs on beaches when the skin comes in contact with sand hat has been contaminated by egg-infested canine fecal material. This con-ition has been repeatedly reported in Cuba (Pardo-Castelló, Braulio Saenz, tc.). A patient of Kourí's showed 4 larva migrans in different parts of the high, buttocks, and knee.

Intestinal infections by *A. braziliense* have not as yet been reported in hu-an beings in the southern United States, but in the coastal areas around the ulf of Mexico, especially in Florida, and in eastern Texas, human cutaneous fection is relatively frequent. It is caused by larvae of species of the canine feline strains.

The **treatment** consists in the local application, at the extremity of the ea where the larva is found, of carbonic snow or ethylene chloride. Sec-ndary pus infections of the skin must also be treated.

Prophylaxis consists in preventing contact of the skin with damp sand, in demic zones, and in periodic treatment of ancylostomiasis of dogs and cats.

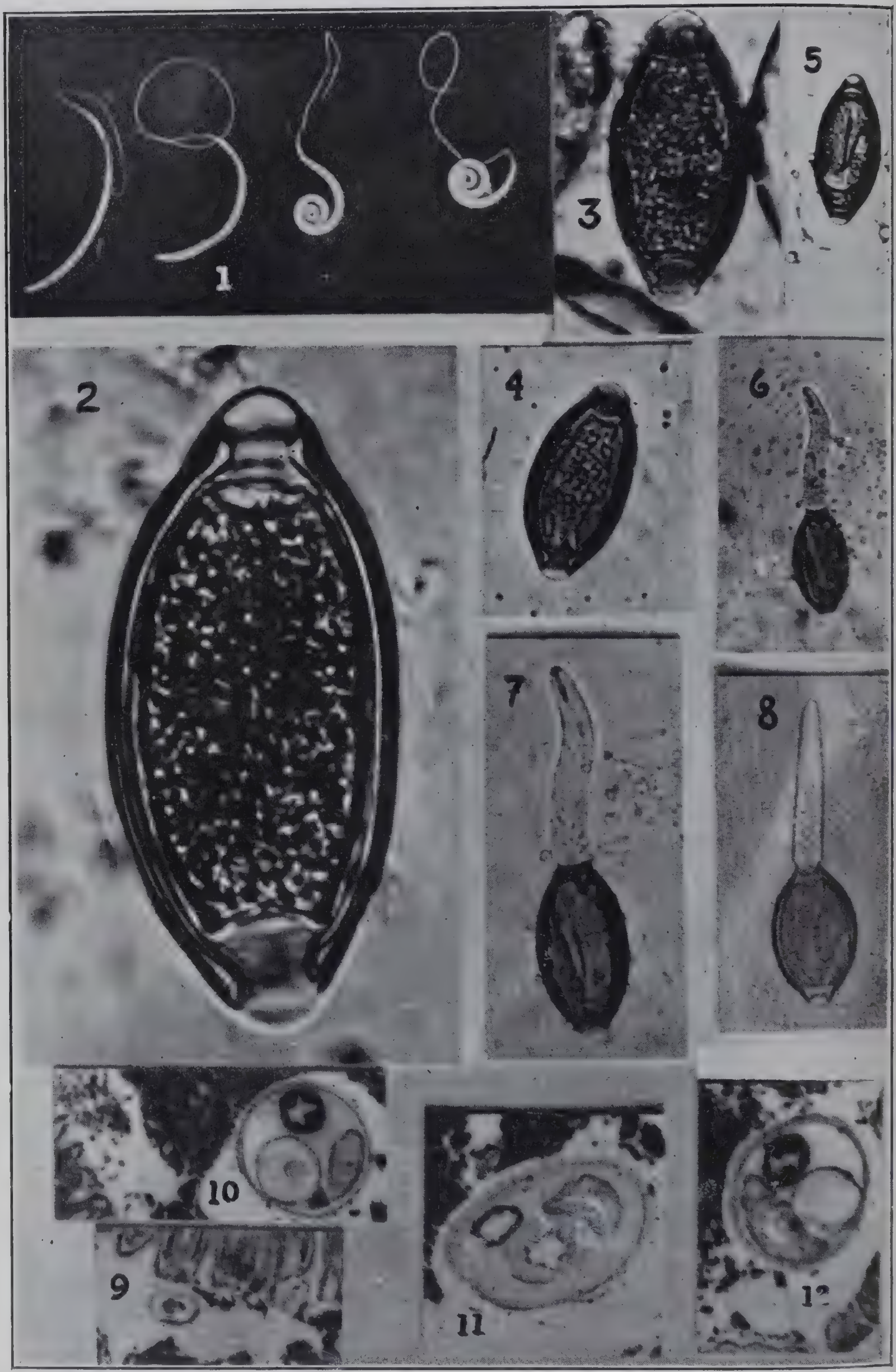


Fig. 247.—*Trichuris trichiura.* *1, left,* 2 females; *right,* 2 males; *2, 3,* and *4,* eggs; *5,* embryonated egg; *6, 7,* and *8,* embryo emerging through one of the poles of the egg; *9* to *12,* stained histologic sections (*9,* thin portion; *10* to *12,* thick portion) *of T. trichiura* in the lumen of the appendix. (Kourí and collaborators. From an article by J. Alfonso.)

DISEASES CAUSED BY WORMS BELONGING TO THE ORDER TRICHURATA

Trichuriasis or Whipworm Infection

(Parasitism Caused by *Trichuris Trichiura*)

Synonyms.—Whipworm infection, trichocephaliasis.

HISTORY

This parasite was first described by Linnaeus in 1771. In 1761 Roederer had classified in the genus Trichuris. Goeze in 1782 placed it in the genus Trichocephalus.

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

Trichuris is a cosmopolitan parasite, but it is much more abundant in tropical countries here the high temperatures permit very rapid development of the eggs.

It is the most common of all intestinal parasites in Cuba. According to Kourí, Calvó, nd Basnuevo (1938), of 7,246 coprologic examinations made in Cuba, 31 to 49 per cent iowed this parasite. The largest percentage is found in Consolación del Sur, province of inar del Río, with 64.76 per cent positive cases in more than 283 fecal examinations. These ercentages would probably have been much higher had concentration methods been used and erial examinations made.

According to Verdún, 80 to 85 per cent of the miners of northern France showed eggs f this parasite in their fecal material. In Paris, according to Brumpt, Trichuris was found the intestines of 30 out of 100 adults examined.

CAUSATIVE AGENT

Trichuris Trichiura (Linnaeus, 1771) Stiles, 1901

Synonyms.—*Ascaris trichiura* Linnaeus 1771; *Trichocephalus suis* Schrank 1788; *richocephalus apri* Gmelin 1790; *Trichocephalus dispar* Rudolphi 1802; *Mastigodes hominis* der 1803; *Trichocephalus crematus* Rudolphi 1809; *Trichocephalus trichiurus* Linnaeus 771) Blanchard 1895.

The female *Trichuris trichiura* is approximately 4 to 5 cm. long. Its wide portion, ich is about half as long as the narrow, describes an arc, the concave side facing the ven- al part of the body. The *male* worm is smaller than the female, 3 to 4 cm. long. The icker end is spirally coiled with the convex surface lying ventrally. For further details, see radwohl and Kourí (1948).

These parasites are pink when alive. The blood-filled intestine may be seen through e transparent cuticle as a dark line, which proves that this parasite is hematophagous. The orms become white when placed in formalin.

The *egg* is elongated and symmetrically narrowed at the poles. It is approximately 50 25 microns. It is brownish, the intensity of color depending on the duration of its pas- ge through the intestine. The dark color is due to impregnation of the eggshell with bile. e eggshell is thick and perforated at the poles. Each orifice is closed by a refractive, aline, colorless albuminous plug, which permits the embryo to emerge. The egg consists finely granular protoplasm.

Life Cycle

The adult parasites usually live in the cecum and appendix. After fertilization the fe- le lays eggs, which are expelled in the feces. When environmental conditions are favor- e, the embryo develops in about 3 or 4 weeks, but at low temperatures in 6 months to a ar. If the embryonated egg is ingested, it reaches the intestine, and becomes softened. The embryo escapes, forcing off one albuminous plug at the pole. The free larva grows in situ until it becomes an adult form. After copulation the fertilized eggs are passed in the feces, and a new cycle begins.

There is no autoinfestation with *T. trichiura.*

T. trichiura is usually found clinging to the intestinal mucosa, with the thin anterior portion buried beneath the epithelium. It lies parallel to the mucosa. In several cases it has been found deeply buried in the submucosa. It is hematophagous.

It usually localizes in the cecum and appendix of man, rarely in other parts of the colon, and very rarely in the small intestine. In massive infestation the parasites can become implanted in the rectum. Kourí has observed 3 cases of rectal prolapse in children, in which a great number of Trichuris were found attached to the prolapsed and congested mucosa, with the end portion of the parasite completely imbedded in the mucosa, the parasite lying above and parallel to the mucosa.

The *number of parasites* harbored is small, from 1 to 10, although there are cases of intense parasitism where a thousand or more parasites are found.

In 1930 Kourí found a case of a 6-year-old girl who expelled, after administration of 30 c.c. of milk of *Ficus glabrata,* three bunches of Trichuris, one of which contained 1,583 parasites, of which 881 were females and 702 were males. Moosebrügger reported a case with 900 Trichuris. According to this author, it is possible to calculate the approximate number of Trichuris by estimating the number of eggs per gram of feces. One gram of feces is rendered homogeneous in water and placed in a conical cup. After a few minutes' sedimentation, 1 drop of the sediment is placed on a slide and covered with an 18 by 18 mm. cover glass, and examined. The number of eggs in 1 drop, multiplied by 10, gives the approximate number of parasites.

The *life span* of the Trichuris is unknown and is very difficult to calculate. Premunition does not occur.

The infestive form is the embryonated egg, which is very resistant to adverse environmental conditions; this explains the frequency of parasitism with this worm since the opportunities for infestation are numerous in man (eating vegetables containing embryonated eggs or transferring the infection on contaminated fingers).

PATHOLOGY

Toxic Action.—It has been pointed out that conditions similar to pernicious anemia in man have been produced in lower animals infected with large numbers of parasites. Although cases of severe anemia caused by this parasite have been observed in man, they are very rare in Cuba; the principal cause of parasitic anemia in Cuba is *N. americanus.*

Eosinophilia is not very pronounced. Guiart observed that the urticarial crisis disappears once the parasites are expelled.

Traumatic Action.—Trichuris has very slight traumatic effect upon the intestinal mucosa. It does not produce ulcerative lesions. It is capable of affecting the sympathetic nerve endings, thus causing reflex phenomena of intestinal origin.

Infectious or Bacterial Action.—Although this parasite may be capable of aiding bacteria of the intestinal flora to gain entrance into the body of the host, some authors, without experimental evidence, have exaggerated its role in the transfer of typhoid fever, cholera, and dysentery.

Inflammatory Action.—Inflammatory reactions have been observed around the body of the parasite in the intestinal wall, due possibly to pyogenic bacteria in the tissues (Weinberg and Joyeux).

SYMPTOMS

When the parasitism is mild, it may go unnoticed since no definite symptoms are present; but in massive infestation, nervous and digestive disorders as well as inflammatory processes in the appendix may be produced.

Nervous Disorders.—When nervous disorders are present, they are somewhat similar to those of ascariasis and other worm diseases. They disappear when the parasites are expelled.

Digestive Disorders.—When the number of parasites is very large, they may cause digestive disorders consisting of diarrhea, abdominal pain, and tenesmus, simulating a dysenteric syndrome, or they may even cause a true dysenteric picture. Sometimes they are accompanied by muscle guard and, upon pressure, of spontaneous pains in the cecum.

One case of "chronic enteritis and fatal anemia due to Trichocephalus" was reported in 1895 by Moosebrügger. In Cuba severe anemia attributed to Trichuris has never been found, even in cases of patients who harbored more than 1,000 parasites.

Appendicitis Due to Trichuris

According to Blanchard, *T. trichiura* was first discovered in the appendix f man by Morgagni. In Paris, of 800 appendices of adults examined at autopsy by Brumpt, about 4 per cent of the appendices and 30 per cent of the ecums contained this parasite. Brumpt recommended that a careful investigation of these organs be made, not only at autopsy where the parasites re frequently overlooked, but also in the parasitologic laboratory.

Lejars (1897), Guinard (1900), Girard (1901) and Menetrier (1909) reported Trichuris in appendices. Metschnikoff was the first to call attention to his problem. In 1901, he reported that, by the use of the anthelminthics, he ad cured 3 cases of apparent appendicitis. He recommended frequent administration of vermifuges and believed that the frequency of appendicitis is due o abandonment of this method of treatment. Since that time, Guiart has treated appendicitis with thymol.*

In Cuba the frequency of Trichuris has been reported by Calvó in surgically removed appendices in the Municipal Hospital of Havana. Three hundred and seventy-five appendices were examined; 20, or 5.33 per cent, contained worms classified as follows: *E. vermicularis,* 15, or 4 per cent; *T.*

---

*Editor's note: These findings are not borne out by the American study of all surgical ssues removed in the operating rooms in the United States.

trichiura, 5, or 1.33 per cent; *A. lumbricoides,* 1, or 0.27 per cent; both *T* *trichiura* and *E. vermicularis,* 1, or 0.27 per cent. Parasites were observed mor frequently in the appendices of children than of adults, and were more commo in acute than in chronic cases.

Mechanism of Appendicitis Due to Trichuris.—Appendicitis caused b Trichuris may be due to two different mechanisms: (1) irritation of th sympathetic nervous plexus, provoking a pseudoappendicitis (Blanchard) (2) inoculation of pyogenic bacteria, thus causing a true bacterial appendiciti resulting from the growth of the bacteria (Metschnikoff). In the case of parasitic pseudoappendicitis, vermifuges may give good results provided the penetrate the appendix, but in cases of true bacterial appendicitis these drug would have to act not only as vermifuges, but as antiseptics as well (Brumpt)

Method to Be Followed in Parasitic Appendicitis Which Is Not Acute.—In chronic and even in subacute appendicitis, when the surgeon has decide not to act immediately, the recommended method consists of treatment directe against the parasite (if it exists). If the symptoms or disorder provoked b the parasite disappear, an unnecessary operation may be averted. Sometimes even after extirpation of the appendix, the parasitized patients continue to have the same symptoms, which do not disappear until the parasite have been expelled by proper treatment. In acute or subacute appendicitis i which prompt intervention is decided upon by the surgeon, operation is necessary even if the origin is parasitic. In Cuba, where parasitism is so frequent one should systematically bear in mind the possibility of a parasitic etiolog in appendicitis so that prompt surgical action may be taken. All surgicall removed appendices should be systematically examined for parasites in th laboratory, so that in positive cases proper treatment may be instituted. I this way recurrences after appendectomy may be avoided in some cases.

DIAGNOSIS

Accurate diagnosis can be made only by thorough microscopic examinatio of the feces. The presence of the characteristic egg is sufficient evidence. Se Chapter 72.

TREATMENT

Most of the anthelminthics which have been used are, for the greater part without any specific action. Thymol, oil of chenopodium, extracts of various species of Ficus *(glabrata, laurifolia, doliaria)* *(leche de higuerón,* see Chapte 64), and of the fruit of the papaya tree have been successfully used, especiall the last two. Usually, several treatments are necessary to effect a complete cur Oral administration of pentavalent arsenic compounds reduces the number o parasites in the intestines (Kourí et al.). A series of such treatments may effe a total or almost complete cure. Ferric ammonium citrate in large doses give over a long period of time has been used recently.

Iron sulfate, the juice of *Bromelia pinguin* (rat pineapple), and coco oil *(Cocos nucifera,* L.) have also been used.

Our experience in treating infestations by Trichuris, one of the most frequent and refractory intestinal parasites in Cuba, shows that in such cases ost medicaments are valueless. In some cases treated with the latex of *Carica apaya* (Papaya), and particularly with the latex of *Ficus glabrata (leche de iguerón),* Kourí has succeeded in causing expulsion of hundreds and thousands f Trichuris in cases of intense parasitism. This trichurifugal or trichuricidal ction of *Ficus glabrata* is not constant, so that a total and definitive cure is not lways obtained.

Robbins isolated the active principle from the latex of *Ficus glabrata,* hich he called Ficin.

Thymol.—Thymol has been used in some refractory cases. In finely pulverized form it is given in 3 one-gram capsules daily for 3 consecutive days t 1-hour intervals, as recommended by Guiart. The number of eggs found n the feces has been known to decrease with this treatment, but complete ure is lacking after one treatment. When thymol is administered, patients hould be warned against drinking any of the solvents of this drug—alcohol, hloroform, ether—against eating fats, etc., while under treatment, because bsorption of thymol is extremely dangerous, even fatal in some cases.

Oil of Chenopodium.—Oil of chenopodium, obtained by distillation of the lant commonly known as Apazote, Pazote, Mexican tea, etc. (*Chenopodium mbrosioides* var. *anthelminthica*), is very efficient in its action against Trichuris, although it is not a specific. It acts through its active principle, Ascaridol. he dose is 1 to 3 drops for each year of age in children, and up to 1.5 c.c. for dults, mixed with 30 to 60 c.c. of castor oil as a purgative. This drug is toxic given in doses greater than prescribed here.

Ferric Ammonium Citrate.—Ferric ammonium citrate, in large doses, has een used in Cuba in the treatment of trichuriasis. Kourí has concluded that is beneficial in its action on the patient, acting as a tonic, and increasing e patient's strength and weight, red count and hemoglobin. It cannot be ated, however, that it has any direct action upon Trichuris. Patients recover clinically, and the number of eggs diminishes, but a total and definitive ure is not obtained.

Ferric ammonium citrate is administered in doses of 15 to 20 Gm. daily or adults, and 1 Gm. daily for each year of age for children for a period of 0 or more consecutive days. (This dose exceeds the usual 2 to 3 Gm. given aily in the U. S. A. and by British physicians.—O. F.) In cases of colic or iarrhea, the dose is decreased, or powdered ferric ammonium citrate is given ith powdered leaves of belladonna, bismuth subcarbonate and kaolin. The eces become dark or black.

Pentavalent Arsenicals.—Cases of refractory trichuriasis have led to the e of all types of antiparasitic drugs. Since 1933 Kourí has used the sodium lt of oxy-acetyl-amino-phenyl arsonic acid (Pentarsenol), administered rally, 1 to 3 or 4 tablets of 0.25 Gm. each given daily to adults, and ½ to 2 blets of 0.05 Gm. to children, at the rate of 0.07 Gm. per kilogram of body weight as a total dose, distributed over 10 days. The patient should b watched closely, and treatment should be discontinued at the slightest sig of arsenic intoxication.

Kourí and his co-workers submitted all these medications to rigorou control and found that Pentarsenol is the most efficacious antitrichuric medication (Kourí, Basnuevo, Anido, Sotolongo, and others), but it cannot b stated that this drug is specific against Trichuris. A specific antiparasiti medication is one which will lead to the expulsion of 90 to 100 per cent of th parasites during the first treatment in 90 to 100 per cent of the cases treated

Absence of Trichuris eggs from the stools after treatment does not necessarily prove complete cure of the parasitism, since it is known that negativ phases exist in mild infestations. Nor does the persistence of the eggs in th excreta after treatment necessarily mean that the drug is ineffective, becaus if the eggs have not been counted, one cannot ascertain whether or not th number of parasites has decreased, or how much the decrease has been. Counting the parasites expelled during treatment, however, gives an index of th efficacy of the drug used.

PROPHYLAXIS

Prophylaxis is similar to that directed against *A. lumbricoides.*

General prophylaxis consists in (1) education of the public; (2) use o latrines; (3) avoidance of usage of human fertilizer; (4) discovering the focus of infestation by means of coprologic surveys; (5) treating parasitized individuals.

Individual prophylaxis consists in avoiding ingestion of embryonated eggs in food by (1) filtration or boiling of water; (2) washing all vegetables wel with water which is not contaminated or which has been boiled; refraining from eating raw vegetables coming from foci of infestation; (3) protection against flies; (4) washing the hands before eating.

References

Brady, F. J., and Bozicevich, J.: 1937. Studies on Oxyuriasis, VIII. A Preliminary Note on Therapy With Gentian Violet. Willard H. Wright, Frederick J. Brady, and John Bozicevich, National Institute of Health, U.S.P.H.S., Washington, D. C., Proc. of the Helminthological Society of Washington **5:** 1.

Gradwohl, R. B. H., and Kourí, Pedro: 1948. Clinical Laboratory Methods and Diagnosis. Parasitology and Tropical Medicine, ed. 4, vol. 3, St. Louis, C. V. Mosby Co.

Kourí, Pedro: 1930. Proposición de un modelo de informe de análisis parasitológico de heces fecales, An. de viás digest., sangre y nutricion **2:** 57-74.

Kourí, Pedro, and Basnuevo, Jose G.: 1933. Rev. d med. y cir. de la Habana **38:** 517, Aug. 31.

Kourí, Pedro, and Basnuevo, Jose G.: 1949. Lecciones de Parasitología y Medicina Tropical, ed. 3, Havana, Cuba.

Kourí, Pedro, Caivó Fonseca, R., and Basnuevo, J.: 1938. Parcentaje y distribución geográfica de la verminosis intestinal en Cuba, Rev. de med. trop., y parasitol., bacteriol., clín. y lab. **4:** 231-261.

Loughlin, E. H., and Stoll, N. R.: 1948, Hookworm Infection in American Servicemen, J. A. M. A. **136:** 157-161.

Rotter, W.: 1931. Über die histologischen Veränderungen des Dünndarms bei ankylostomiasis, Virchow's Arch. f. path. anat. **280:** 587-594.

Wright, W. H., Brady, F. J., Bozicevich, J.: 1938. Rev. de med. trop. y parasitol., bacteriol., clín. y lab. **4:** 3.

CHAPTER 38

TRICHINOSIS

IRVING RAPPAPORT

Trichinosis, also known as trichiniasis and trichinelliasis, is a parasitic lisease caused by the nematode, *Trichinella spiralis*. *T. spiralis* is classified by hitwood and Chitwood (1937) as an aphasmidian nematode in the order noplida, suborder Dorylaimina, superfamily Trichuroidea. *T. spiralis* and *richuris trichiura* have morphologic similarities. *T. spiralis* is the only species f the genus *Trichinella*. It is capable of parasitizing almost every species of nammal, to a slight degree birds, and is one of the few nematodes which comletes its entire life cycle in the same host.

HISTORY

The cysts of *T. spiralis* were first reported by Tiedemann in 1822 and later by Hilton 1833, and others. The larvae of the parasite were first seen by Paget in 1835 in the muscles f a cadaver. The organism was described and named *Trichina spiralis* by Owen in the ame year, but the genus was later renamed *Trichinella* by Railliet in 1895, owing to the pririty held by a genus of diptera of the same name. The terms ''trichina,'' ''trichinosis,'' nd ''trichiniasis'' still persist.

Zenker (1860) was the first to demonstrate the pathogenicity of the parasite.

It is probable that many acute cases of the disease and even epidemics occurred prior 1860, but they were most likely regarded as typhoid fever or botulism. Within the next ve years, two severe epidemics occurred in Germany (Rupprecht, 1864; Kratz, 1866). In e one at Hettstädt there was a mortality of 16 per cent. In the 1865 epidemic of Hedersben, total population 2,000, 337 people became ill and 101 died. The latter epidemic was aused by a single butcher who noticed an abnormal appearance of the meat of a hog and had erefore mixed it with that of two healthy animals. He confessed to this adulteration shortly efore his own death resulting from eating the same pork (Anonymous, 1866). These epiemics established trichinosis as an important public health problem. For many years therefter, countries accused one another of exporting infected pork.

LIFE CYCLE AND MORPHOLOGY OF TRICHINELLA SPIRALIS

It is difficult to credit any single individual with the discovery of the entire life cycle f *T. spiralis*. It may be said that, through the combined contributions of the investigators entioned above and others, the more important stages in the life history were expounded. ore intricate phases of the development of the parasite are continuously being reported.

When a lower animal or man ingests raw or insufficiently cooked muscle containing in- ctive larvae, the latter are liberated in the stomach and small intestine by the action of di- stive juices on the muscle and cysts. The mature excysted larvae measure 0.9 to 1.28 by 035 to 0.04 mm. in the greatest width. In vitro in the cold, these larvae are coiled, but on rming they become motile by uncoiling themselves and waving their extremities about in a ip-like manner.

Within 5 hours after feeding meat to an animal, the larvae burrow into the crypts of ieberkühn or under the epithelium of the intestinal mucosa. They do not remain in the lu- en of the small intestine since they do not possess organs for attachment as do many other nematodes, and apparently cannot withstand the movements of the intestinal contents. Within or partially penetrating the mucosa, the developing larvae grow to maturity and mate after passing through a series of molts (Bugge, 1934; Kreis, 1937; Weller, 1943). By the second to third day, the female possesses an egg-laden uterus, copulation probably occurring about the end of the second day and even before molting is completed. On about the fifth day and thereafter, embryos may be seen in the anterior portion of the uterus.

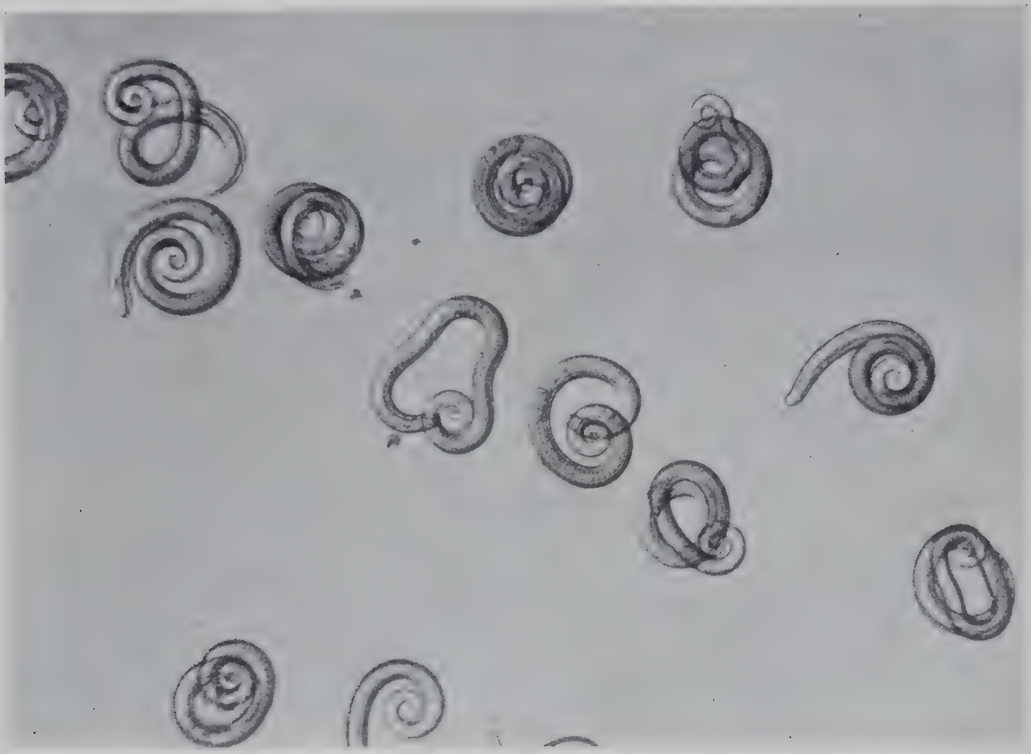


Fig. 248.—Infective *Trichinella spiralis* larvae obtained by peptic digestion of muscle.

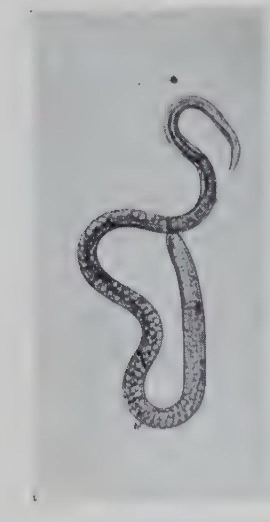


Fig. 249.

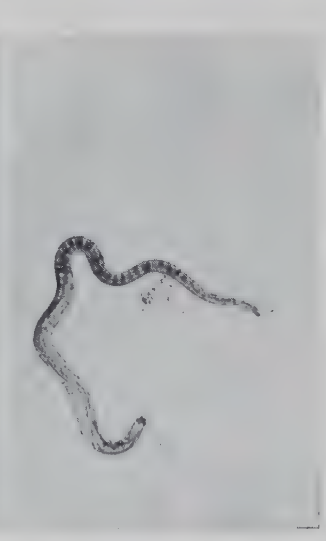


Fig. 250.

Fig. 249.—Adult female *Trichinella spiralis* from the intestine of an infected animal. Note the uterus laden with eggs and embryos.

Fig. 250.—Adult male *Trichinella spiralis* from the intestine of an infected animal. Note the posterior terminal papillae.

The mature female measures usually from 3 to 4 mm. in length, by 0.060 to 0.072 mm. in greatest width. Considerable variations in the size of females may be observed, however, some forms being smaller and some greatly exceeding these measurements. Males of *T. spiralis* are more equal in size, usually from 1.4 to 1.6 mm. long by 0.033 to 0.040 mm. in greatest width. The sexes can easily be distinguished morphologically. The female is larger. The esophagus, as indicated by the dark stichocytes or esophageal gland cells, occupies the narrowed anterior two-fifths of the body; the uterus almost fills the posterior three fifths and is laden with eggs and embryos; the vulva is situated anterior to the uterus in the posterior part of the esophageal region; the posterior part is broad, smooth, and rounded. The male is much smaller. The narrow esophageal region extends through almost the entire anterior half of the body; the testis is finely granular; the posterior end of the worm terminates in two conical papillae which are very conspicuous.

The adult apparently feeds on plasma and cell fluid which are probably obtained by means of the piercing action of a minute buccal stylet.

Many textbooks on general parasitology state that the male disappears from the intestine soon after fertilization of the female. Many reports in the literature, however, do not uphold this view. Rappaport (1943b) found that in mice there was considerable regularity in the longevity and sex ratios, particularly in those animals infected with a dose of larvae bordering on the lethal. On the whole, the ratios of males to females during the first 2 weeks of infection varied from 2:3 to 1:2, and the total number of adults in the intestine remained relatively constant. After the sixteenth or eighteenth day, however, the females were eliminated from the intestine more readily than the males and to such a degree that there was a reversal of the sex ratio in favor of the males. In some instances, the reversal was so complete that males were found to the exclusion of females in the small intestine after the third week. During the fourth week, the majority of the males also were eliminated. Adults were not observed later than 54 days after infection. In larger experimental animals, it appears that the longevity of the adults seems to depend upon the host species. In man Zenker (1860) found male and female *T. spiralis* 38 days after infection; Cohnheim (1865), after 50 days; Kratz (1866), after 8 and 12 weeks; and Carter (1949) 115 days after onset of symptoms.

Both males and females penetrate the intestinal mucosa (Graham, 1897). The males are found only superficially under the epithelium, but the females burrow deeply, as far as the muscularis mucosae which seems to act as a bar-ier (Askanazy, 1894, 1895). Most investigators agree that the female worms eposit their young in the mucosa, thus enabling the larvae to migrate via he lymphatic system into the blood stream. At the time the young larvae re laid, they measure 0.09 to 0.12 mm. by about 0.006 mm. From the blood tream the larvae have been found to pass into almost every organ of the body. Thus, the symptomatology of the disease during this migratory phase is almost unlimited. The larvae develop and encyst, however, only in voluntary striated muscle. In organs other than voluntary muscle, larvae either degenerate and set up an inflammatory reaction in the region parasitized or else pass into the body cavities where they degenerate (Graham, 1897). Matoff 1940) has expressed the view that most of the larvae in organs other than oluntary muscle migrate into the body cavities but do not necessarily degen-rate. Instead, they may regain entrance into the circulatory system. If this s true, the majority of the larvae finally make their way to the voluntary musculature where they encyst. Matoff in this manner explained the reason for the extensive muscle involvement in the disease. Graham gave a good xplanation for the finding of more larvae in the musculature than in other rgans. He supposed that since the capillaries of the muscles are the smallest n the body, the larvae should find their exit there more readily. He gave he dimensions of muscle capillaries as 0.005 to 0.006 mm. in diameter and the

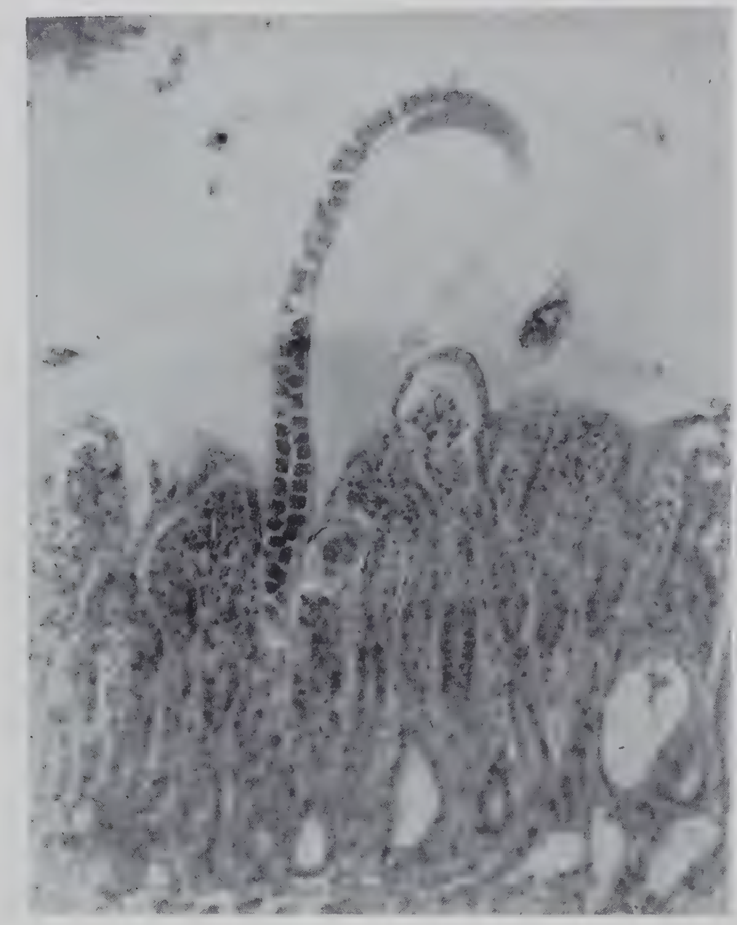


Fig. 251.—Adult female *Trichinella spiralis* between the villi and penetrating the intestinal mucosa of a mouse. Original photomicrograph. (From Nauss: Medical Parasitology and Zoology; courtesy of Paul B. Hoeber, Inc.)

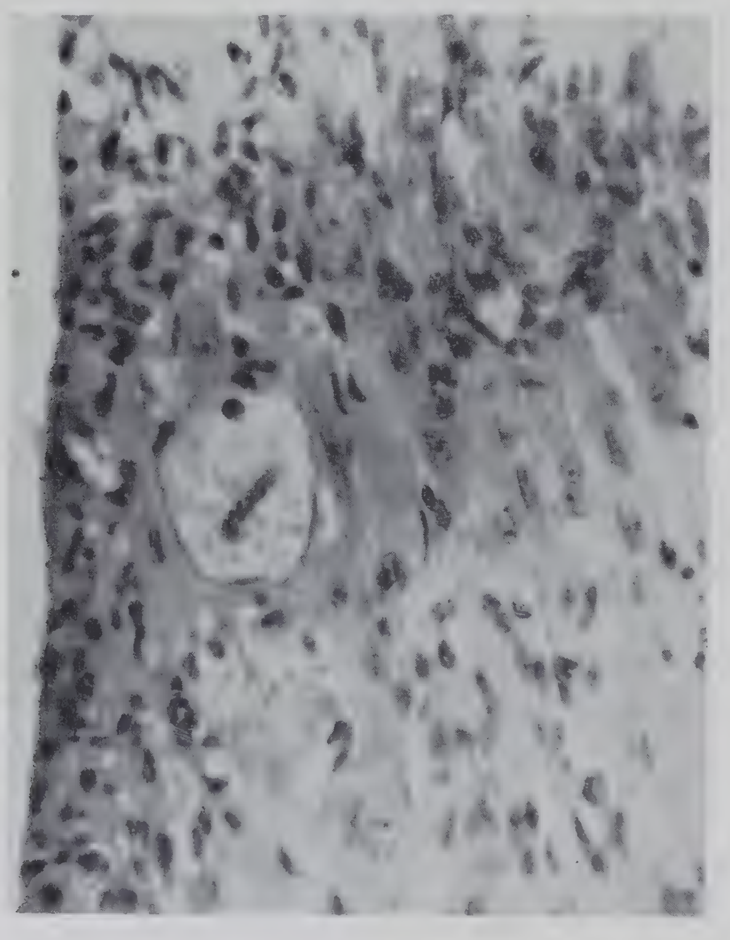
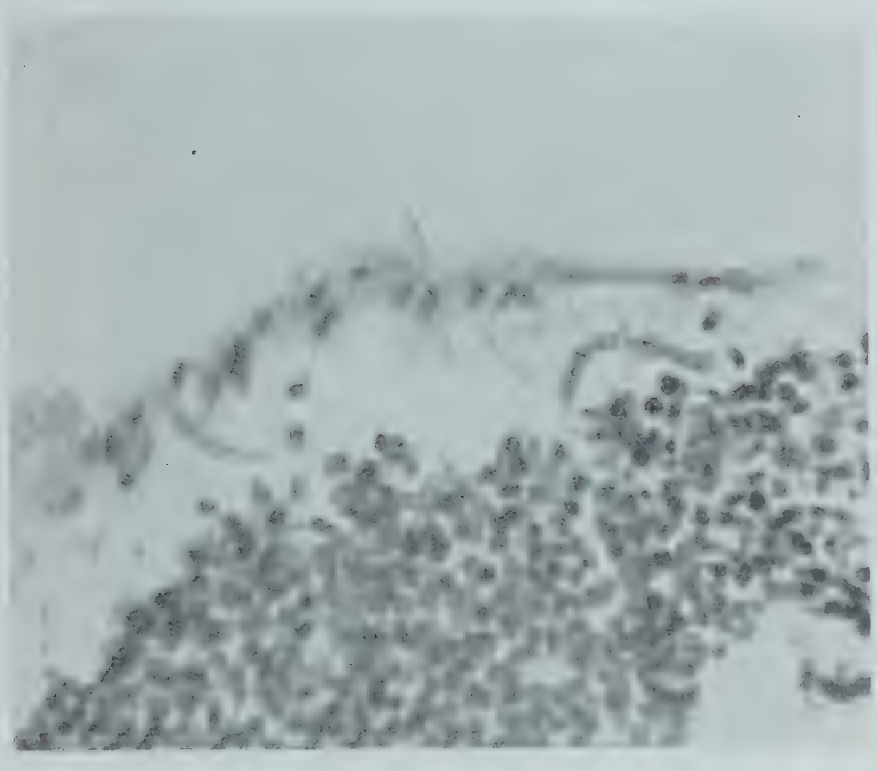
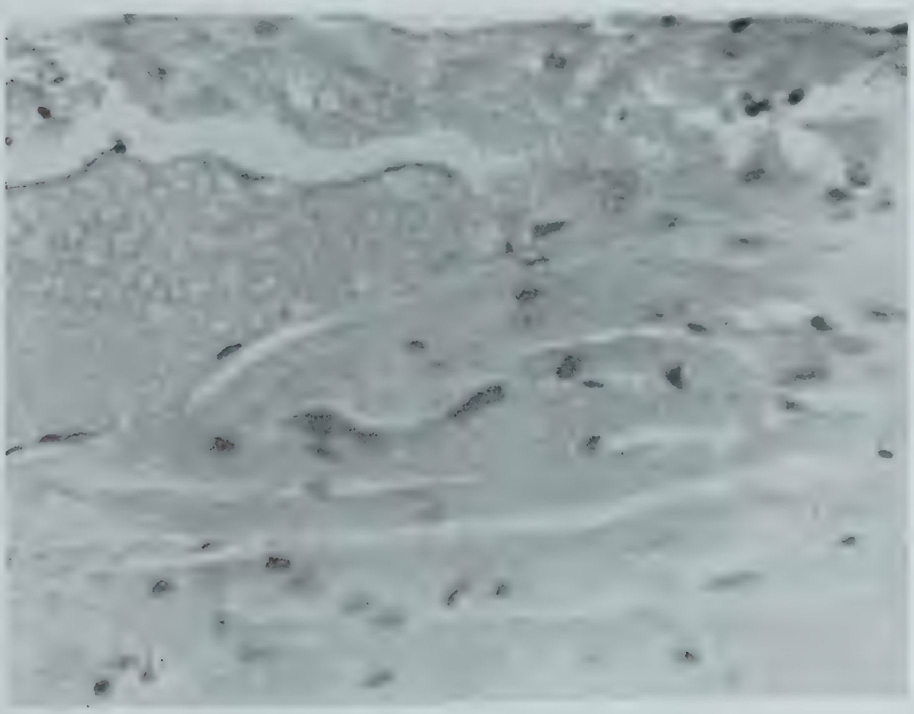


Fig. 252.—Section of heart muscle of a mouse showing a larva within a venule. Original photomicrograph. (From Nauss: Medical Parasitology and Zoology; courtesy of Paul B. Hoeber, Inc.)



ig. 253.—*Trichinella spiralis* larvae in the marginal sinus of a mediastinal lymph node of a mouse. These larvae probably reached this organ via the circulatory system.



g. 254.—*Trichinella spiralis* larva in heart muscle of a mouse. Note the very early degeneration of the cardiac muscle fibers adjacent to the parasite.

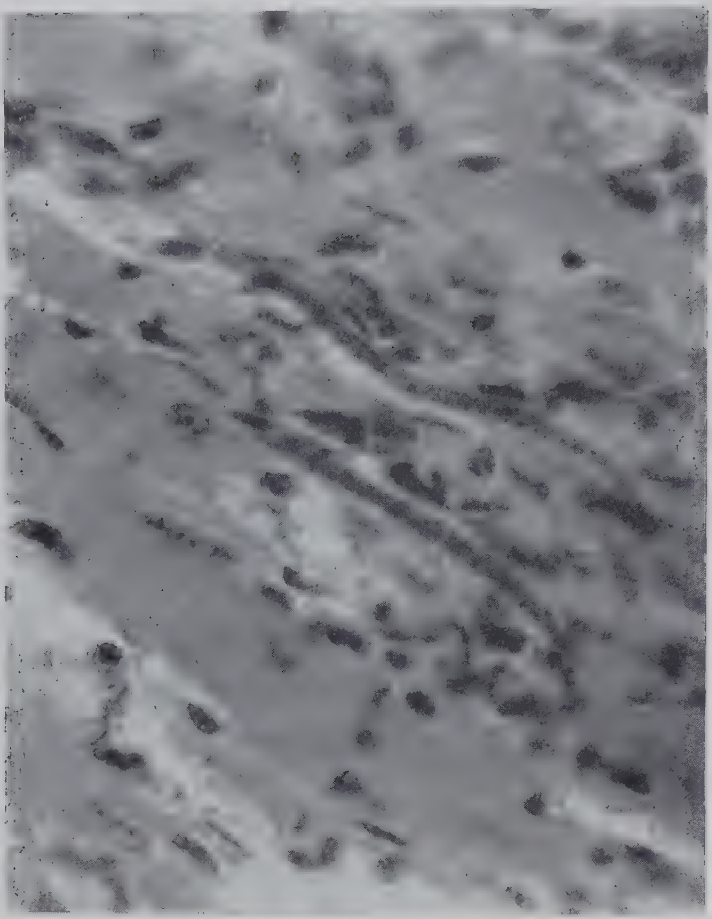


Fig. 255.—*Trichinella spiralis* larvae in heart muscle of a mouse. Note the extensive degeneration of cardiac muscle fibers with very little cellular infiltration. This pathology is still a little too early to show the leucocytic infiltration which is so often found.

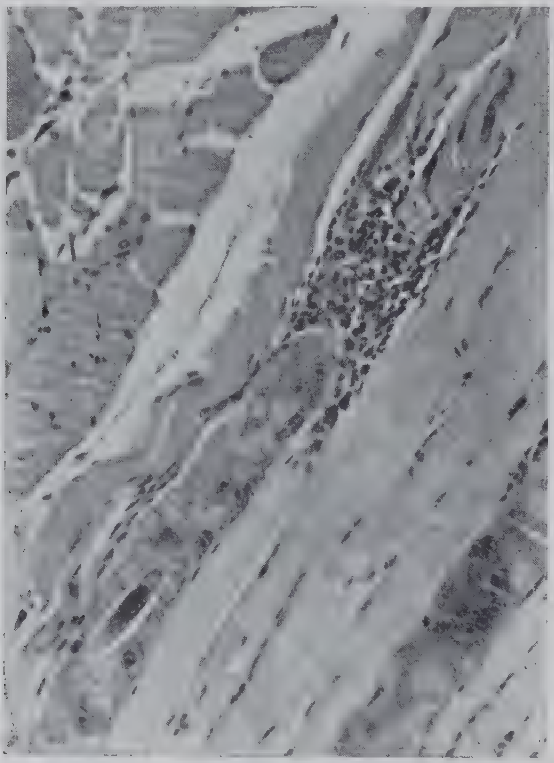


Fig. 256.—Early invasion of voluntary muscle fibers by *Trichinella spiralis* in a mouse. Note the distribution of the early cellular reaction.

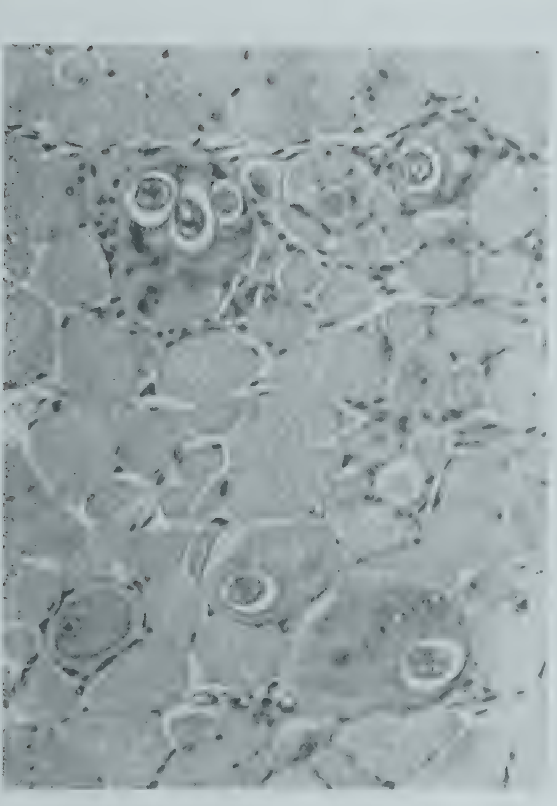


Fig. 257.—Cross section of the same muscle as shown in Fig. 256. Note the extensive swelling and degeneration of the affected muscle fibers.

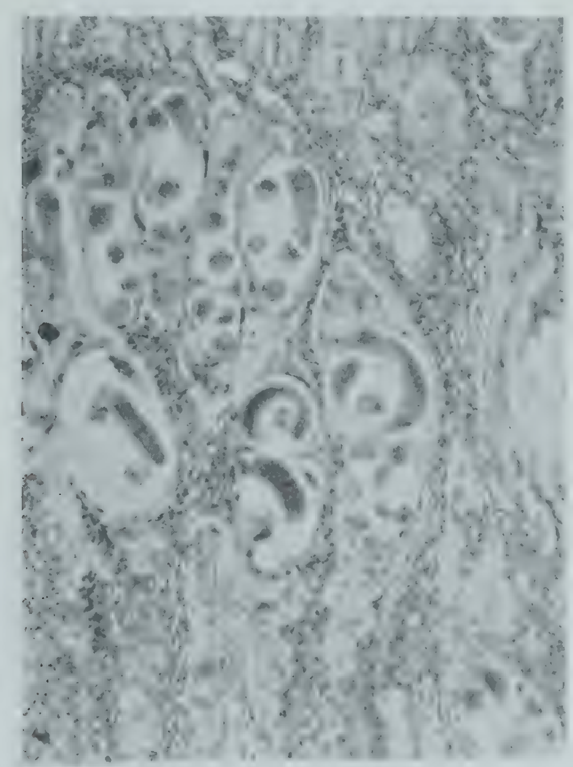


Fig. 258.—Early encystment of *Trichinella spiralis* larvae in voluntary muscle of an fected animal. Note the appearance of the cyst walls, the early closure of the cysts, 2 rasites within a single cyst, and the extensive cellular reaction around the cysts. Original otomicrograph. (From Nauss: Medical Parasitology and Zoology; courtesy of Paul B. Hoe-r, Inc.)

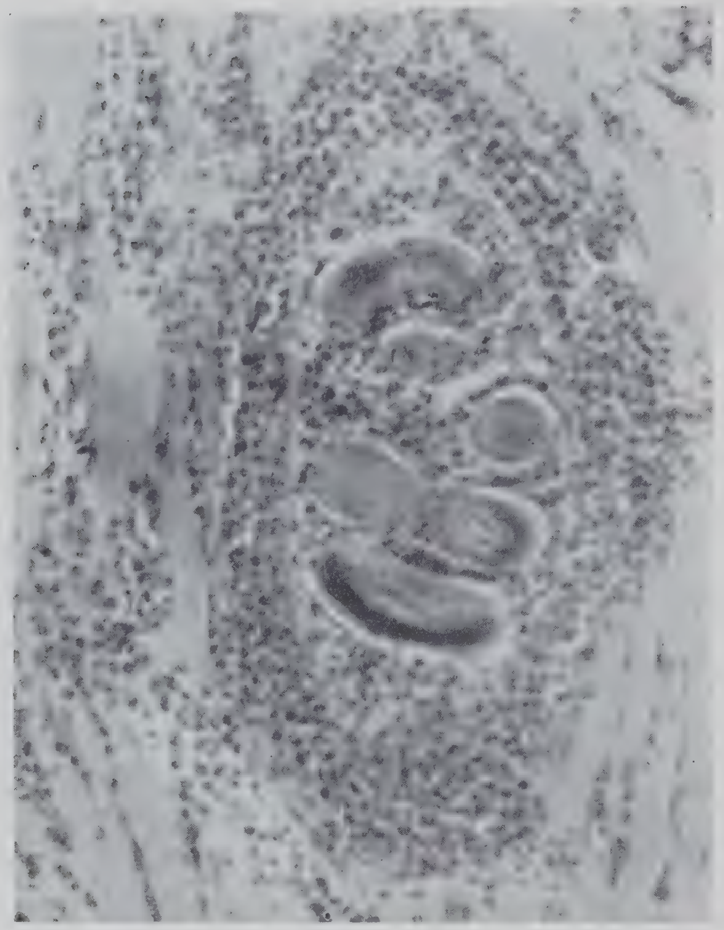


Fig. 259.—Section of voluntary muscle of an animal showing a *Trichinella spiralis* larva undergoing degeneration. It is believed that this occurs when the sarcolemma of a newly parasitized muscle fiber is not sufficiently resistant to the cellular infiltration.

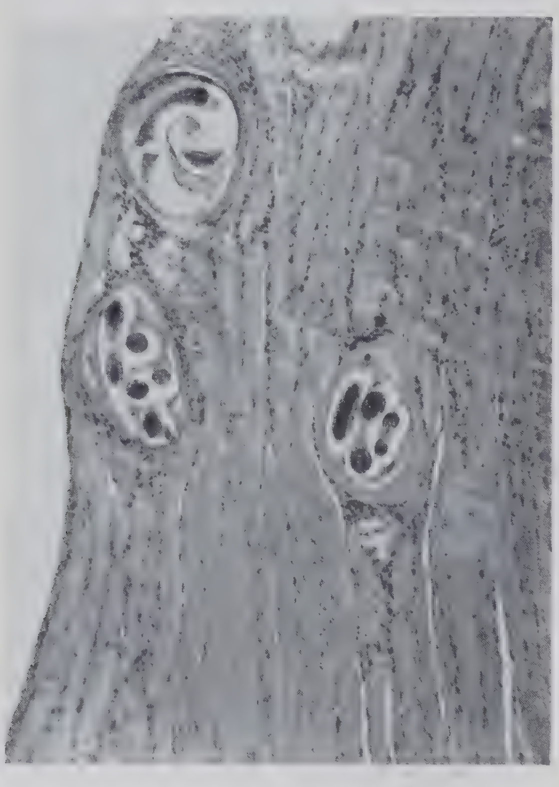


Fig. 260.—Section of voluntary muscle showing old *Trichinella spiralis* cysts. The animal was infected 18 months previously. Note the thickness of the cyst walls, the fatty infiltration at the pole of one of the cysts, and the reduction in cellular reaction as compare with Fig. 258. Original photomicrograph. (From Nauss: Medical Parasitology and Zoology courtesy of Paul B. Hoeber, Inc.)

larvae as 0.005 mm. (0.006 to 0.007 mm. according to Hemmert-Halswick and Bugge, 1934). He also presented sections to illustrate the view that larvae may be forced out of the capillaries owing to the static pressure of the blood behind them, this pressure probably being increased by muscle contraction.

The greatest deposition of larvae occurs over a period of 6 days in rats (Levin, 1941) and 4 to 8 days in mice (Rappaport, 1943b). This deposition occurs early, beginning about the sixth day of infection, and corresponds closely to the longevity of the females in the small intestine. In man the deposition of larvae probably occurs over a much longer period of time owing to the longer life span of the female *T. spiralis*. The number of larvae that a single female deposits has been variously estimated to be from 10 to 15,000 (Matoff and Wapzarowa, 1937). It must be considered, however, that an accurate answer to this question is almost impossible to determine since many larvae are probably destroyed during the migratory stage and even in the musculature. In addition, resistance of the host, size of the initial dose of larvae, immunity, and other factors probably play a large role in determining the number of larvae deposited and the number actually reaching encystment.

In the muscles, the larvae penetrate the individual muscle fibers and grow at the expense of the protoplasm. The sarcolemma becomes thickened and a cyst wall is formed about the larva, which by this time has become coiled. Encystment may be said to begin immediately upon entrance of a larva into a muscle fiber, although the cyst wall does not become closed at the poles until about the third week of the disease. Infective larvae may be found as early as the seventeenth day of infection (Nolf and Edney, 1935). After a number of months, the cyst wall becomes thicker and may begin to calcify, and fat droplets are sometimes found at the poles. Encysted larvae often remain viable and infective for many years even though the cyst walls may be calcified. The encysted larva dies when it becomes calcified itself.

PATHOLOGY AND SYMPTOMATOLOGY

From a consideration of the life cycle of *T. spiralis*, one can understand why the pathology and symptoms of the disease are very numerous and often unpredictable. The degree of parasitism is probably the most important factor in determining the severity of the disease in individual cases. In other words, the symptomatology, pathology, and prognosis depend to a large extent upon the number of infective larvae ingested, the life span of the adult females, the number of young larvae deposited, and the organs invaded by these larvae.

The question concerning the dose of larvae lethal for an animal is difficult to answer. Rappaport (1943a) found that it was almost impossible to predict the survival time of mice unless massive doses of larvae were given; mice receiving over 90 larvae per gram of body weight in most instances died between the third and fifth days of infection. McCoy (1932), with monkeys, found that a dose of 5 larvae or more per gram of body weight was invariably fatal in 3 to 41 days. Craig and Faust (1945) estimated the lethal dose for man to be about 5 larvae per gram of body weight.

As in the discussion of the life cycle, the pathology and symptomatology of the disease may be considered under the 3 phases of the disease: *intestinal, migratory,* and *musculocystic.* Some workers (Rupprecht, 1864) prefer to include the early muscular phase with the migratory phase. For reasons stated below, the author feels that his classification is more applicable for a better understanding of the disease. Kratz (1866) believed that separation into phases may be confusing since all 3 phases may overlap.

Intestinal Phase

The intestinal phase lasts as long as adult *T. spiralis* remain in the intestine and begins shortly after ingestion of infective larvae. The pathology may vary from a mere increased activity of the goblet cells to desquamation of the mucosal epithelium with superficial necrosis of the ends of the villi (Askanazy, 1895). In fatal cases occurring early and during the height of this phase, the destruction of the mucosa may be so severe that the glandular texture is obliterated; such early fatalities are, however, rare. In intensive infections, there is often a round-cell infiltration of the mucosa and submucosa, usually in rows or in round perivascular patches. Seldom are neutrophiles found in appreciable numbers. Most workers believe that it is in the mucosa of the intestine and in the lumen of the central lacteal of a villus that the larvae are deposited by a female and rarely, if ever, in the lumen of the intestine. The muscularis mucosae appears in most instances to be the limiting border of the invading female worm.

The majority of patients ill with trichinosis show some intestinal symptoms which may occur within a few hours after consuming infected meat and may last a month or longer. These symptoms occur most commonly during the first week of infection, last for 1 or 2 weeks, and are usually of a gastrointestinal nature. Diarrhea is the most prevalent symptom, resulting, probably, from the intestinal catarrh. Stools in such cases may be pea soup-like as in typhoid fever or liquid as in cholera. Other symptoms may include abdominal aches, constipation, belching, bloating, nausea and vomiting, loss of appetite, bad breath, coating of tongue, headache, low-grade fever, dizziness, general weakness, and even prostration. Diagnosis is difficult and may be confused with other gastrointestinal disturbances.

Rupprecht (1864) and Kratz (1866) reported a peculiar muscular weakness or mild paralysis which began during the early part of the intestinal phase. It is possible that this condition may have been caused by an intestinal toxemia or by the early stages of larval migration into the muscles.

Migratory Phase

The migratory phase is a very important one. In most instances, the physician is consulted some time during this period. The migratory phase begins with the deposition of larvae by the adult females in the intestine as early as the fifth day of infection and may last as long as 11 or 12 weeks, with the greatest migrations of larvae occurring between the second and fourth weeks of the disease. Owing to the varied symptoms, differential diagnosis is very difficult.

In the lungs the larvae may produce catarrhal and embolic phenomena with marked congestion and edema. Small petechial hemorrhages are often noticed. Hemoptysis is an occasional symptom. Bronchopneumonia is a complication to look for; it may occur as early as the fifteenth day but more often during the fourth to sixth week of the disease.

Trichinous myocarditis is an important and common manifestation. Many workers believe that this condition results from a toxemia since larvae are infrequently found in heart muscle. The reason for this is probably that, by the time a patient comes to autopsy, the larvae have migrated out of the heart muscle and into the pericardial cavity. Figs. 254 and 255 illustrate the early stages of cardiac muscle degeneration; both are a little too early to show the extensive cellular infiltration, rich in eosinophiles, which occurs during the third week of the disease. Electrocardiographic findings in lighter infections may demonstrate temporary flattening of the T-waves, low amplitude QRS, left axis deviation, nodal premature contractions, prolongation of PR interval, and other changes. In more severe cases, there may be an intraventricular block resulting from injury to the conducting mechanism (Spink, 1935; Cushing, 1936; Beecher and Amidon, 1938).

A case of trichinosis of the myocardium was reported by Terry and Work 1940). This case was misdiagnosed as acute rheumatic fever and not until autopsy was the true cause determined, when *T. spiralis* larvae were found in the heart muscle. The heart was dilated, with a few small hemorrhages in the ubepicardial fat. The myocardium was pale reddish-brown, dull and flabby, with no fibrosis or mural hemorrhages. Microscopically, the larvae were found between swollen, hyalinized muscle fibers surrounded by collars of eosinophiles, lymphocytes, neutrophiles, histiocytes, and a few plasma cells.

T. spiralis larvae never encyst in heart muscle. They are usually found between the cardiac muscle fibers and sometimes within a fiber. The reason hat they do not complete their development in the heart has never been answered adequately. It is probable that the rapid movement of this organ forces the larvae out of the cardiac fibers which possess a sarcolemma much finer and less firm than is found in voluntary striated muscle (Askanazy, 1895; Graham, 1897; Hemmert-Halswick and Bugge, 1934).

The central nervous system is another important region which may be afected during the migratory phase. Nervous disorders are often encountered which may vary from headaches to convulsions, hemiplegia, encephalitis, and meningitis, with changes in various neurologic signs and reflexes. The gross pathologic findings vary with the symptoms. Frequently there are scattered punctate hemorrhages, in some cases with intense meningeal congestion, edema nd vacuolization of the cortex. Microscopically, the pathology is often indistinuishable from that of epidemic encephalitis,* with characteristic cuffing of the

---

*Syverton et al. (1947) were able to transmit the virus of lymphocytic choriomeningitis by means of *T. spiralis* infections.

perivascular tissues. The finding of migrating larvae in the areas of cellular infiltration may be the only pathologic finding in the section whereby one can differentiate between trichinous and other encephalitides. Similar lesions may be seen in the spinal cord. The spinal fluid is usually clear, under pressure, and may contain young larvae.

Other organs such as **liver, kidney, spleen, pancreas,** and **bone marrow** are infrequently involved to any serious degree. Fatty changes may occur in the liver and kidneys. The lymph nodes may be mildly inflamed; larvae in such instances are occasionally found in the marginal sinuses (Fig. 253). The bone marrow may be hyperplastic and show a predominance of eosinophilic myelocytes. Larvae breaking out of the capillaries may cause subcutaneous petechial and subungual hemorrhages accompanied by a pruritis. Capillary hemorrhage of the eyelids and conjunctiva occurs commonly and may be one of the causes of the prominent facial edema, as discussed below. Bulbar chemosis is a frequent manifestation. Fever is an important and prominent symptom, but this may be a direct result of the muscle involvement.

Musculocystic Phase

The most seriously involved organs of the body during the migratory stage are usually the muscles in which most of the larvae finally encyst. Some authors prefer to include the pre-encystment muscular phase with the migratory phase of the disease. Since, however, the entrance of a young larva into a muscle fiber is a definite entity and is really the beginning of the final encystment stage, it is felt that the invasion of the musculature should be considered separately. Furthermore, exclusion of the voluntary muscle involvement from a discussion of the migratory phase emphasizes the importance of larval migration into other organs, a matter which is so often overlooked in general descriptions of the disease. The average medical student and practitioner usually have only a vague idea of the life cycle of *Trichinella spiralis* and think only in terms of adult worms in the intestine and coiled, encysted larvae in voluntary, striated muscles.

In heavy infections, practically all voluntary muscles are affected. There seems, however, to be a greater invasion of certain muscle groups, especially those of the diaphragm, tongue, shoulders, neck, thighs, cheeks, and eyes. Why these muscles are more favored for encystment is not definitely known. Lewis (1928) believed that muscle glycogen plays an important role, that those muscles low in glycogen content are most frequently affected. Such muscles are usually the most active, possess a greater blood supply, and probably, therefore, are exposed to greater parasitization. Attempts, however, to produce paralysis or to increase the blood supply of certain muscles did not result in any appreciable difference in the extent of invasion by larvae (Berger and Stähelin, 1928; Scheifley, 1937).

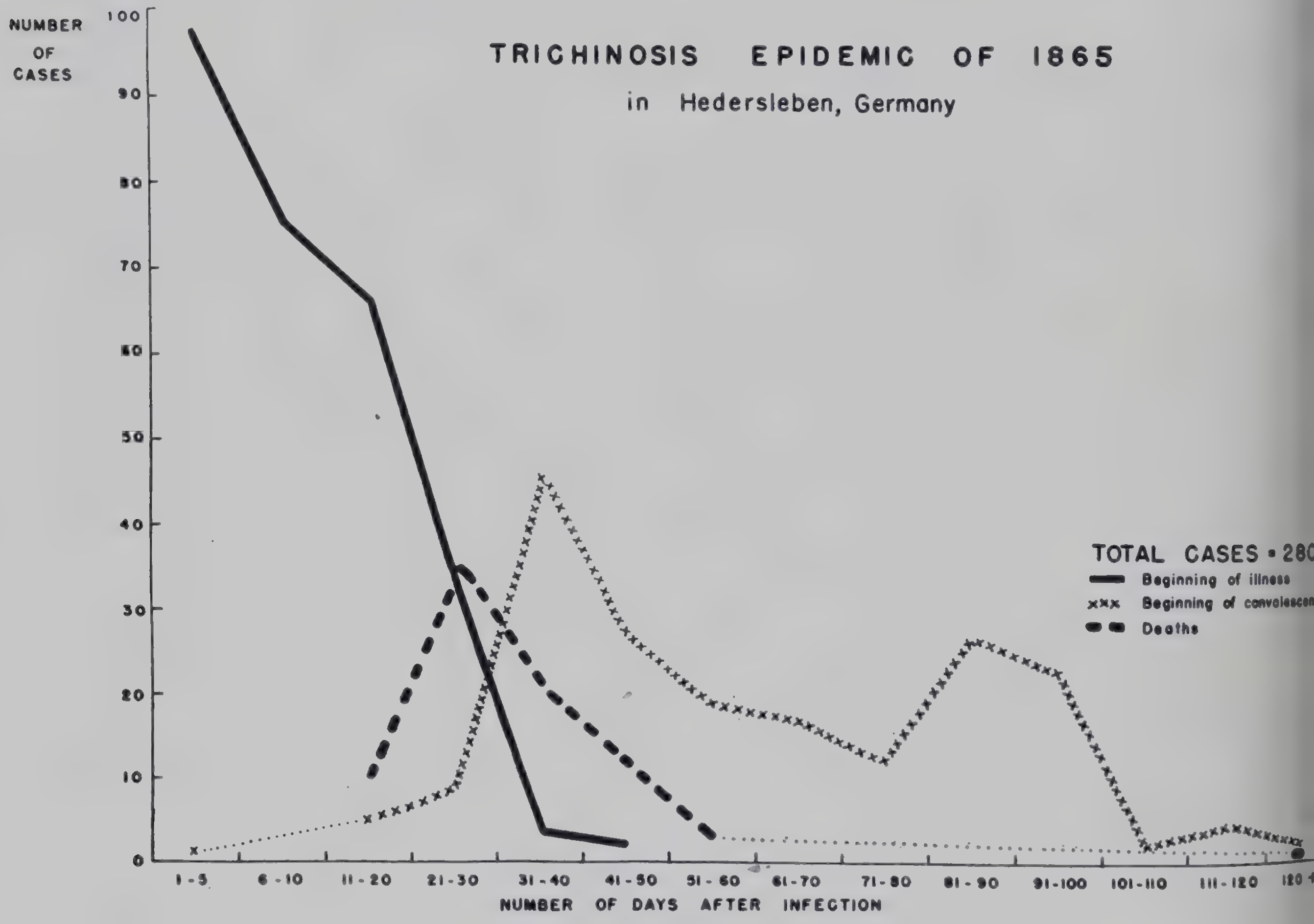
The young migrating larvae break their way out of the muscle capillaries and enter the adjoining connective tissue (Hertwig and Graham, 1895; Graham, 1897). From there, they make their way into muscle fibers. The earliest changes of a parasitized fiber are seen in the striations which are bent forward by the larva. The fiber protoplasm then begins to take on a granular appearance, staining basophilically. Within a short time, the nuclei of the fiber become enlarged (Fig. 257) and may be so conspicuous that in some instances they may be as large as half the diameter of the fiber. The larva within the fiber apparently feeds on the muscle protoplasm and glycogen. As a result of disintegration products and movements of the larva, the fiber swells considerably (Figs. 256 and 257). During the early development of the larva in the fiber there is often very little cellular reaction except at the poles of the region parasitized. The sarcolemma takes on a thick gelatinous appearance which ultimately forms the cyst wall. The poles of the cyst are closed off later, apparently by the action of the numerous cells in those regions. Graham (1897) was of the opinion that the sarcolemma plays an important role in the protection of the cyst from infiltrating leucocytes and that if these cells do succeed in penetrating the sarcolemma, the larva will be destroyed (Fig. 259). The cellular reaction around the cysts becomes more prominent (Fig. 258) and, later, a fatty infiltration may be noted at the poles. The cyst wall continues to grow in thickness and after a number of months the cellular and fatty reactions diminish in intensity (Fig. 260). Just within the cyst wall and about the larva may be seen remnants of the muscle fiber and its nuclei (Figs. 258 and 260); occasionally, there may be more than one larva within a cyst. Calcification of the cyst wall occurs slowly and may, after a number of years, become complete.

Muscle fibers adjacent to those parasitized are also affected. This is probably the result of a local toxemia or pressure on them by the swollen parasitized fibers. These adjacent fibers show evidence of degeneration, as exemplified by fragmentation, hyalinization, and granulation. Their nuclei may also become considerably enlarged. A cellular infiltration may sometimes be found within nonparasitized fibers.

The symptomatology during the early musculocystic stage may be complicated by the involvement of organs other than the muscles. The most prominent symptoms are, however, those arising from the invasion of the muscle fibers themselves.

Fever almost always accompanies the early phase of muscle invasion. It is usually of a remittent type and may vary from 101° to 105° F., the intensity often depending upon the severity of the infection. Only occasionally may there be a chill. The duration of the fever may be from several days to a month or more and is likewise related to the severity of the parasitism. The cause of the increased temperature is not definitely known but it may be the result of extensive degeneration of tissues and larvae during their migrations and development in the musculature. The increase in muscle lactic acid, creatine, and purine bases during the disease are further indications of extensive degenerative changes in the musculature (Flury, 1913; Flury and Groll, 1913; Herrick, 1915; Harwood, Spindler, et al., 1937). A secondary bacteriemia may be another cause of fever but such a complication is rare. A low-grade fever may begin during the early part of the intestinal phase and increase in intensity as the muscles become affected. In other instances, the fever might not make its appearance until the second or third week of the infection.

Facial edema is frequently the earliest important symptom to be noticed and may occur as early as the seventh day, although its onset is usually during the second or third week of the infection. It persists about a week and in some instances may recur. It begins as a circumorbital swelling which is so inflammatory in nature as to simulate a pansinusitis (Pepper, 1931). Ophthalmologic services are frequently the first to be visited by the patients. The cause of this facial edema is not known. It is believed to be the result of both the direct migration of young larvae into the subcutaneous tissues and conjunctiva, and parasitization of the superficial facial muscles. A dependent edema may occur later but this may be the result of myocarditis.



Data from F. Kratz, 1866

Fig. 261.—Graph illustrating the course of the 1865 trichinosis epidemic in Hedersleben, Germany. The total population of the city was 2,000; 337 became ill, of which 101 died. Of 280 cases included in this graph, there were 84 deaths, 64 of which were due to respiratory paralysis; the single death occurring after 195 days was associated with an old tuberculosis. (From data compiled by Kratz, 1866.)

The muscle tenderness, pain, and edema are usually in the large muscle masses such as the thighs, calves, shoulders, and back. Mastication and deglutition are painful. Hoarseness is a symptom resulting from invasion of muscles and tissues of the larynx, glottis, and pharynx. Respiratory difficulty is often encountered, as emphasized in Kratz's (1866) report of the Hedersleben epidemic in which 64 of 84 deaths were due to respiratory paralysis. Muscle contracture, spasm, stiffness, and weakness are other frequent muscular symptoms. These muscular conditions are the direct result of damage to the muscle fibers by the invading and encysting larvae. They attain their peak in 4 to 6 weeks and may not subside completely for many months.

CLINICAL LABORATORY FINDINGS

By far the most common finding in trichinosis is a leucocytosis of between 10,000 and 20,000, sometimes as high as 75,000. This leucocytosis is mainly due to an increase in the eosinophiles which in the differential count may be as high as 80 per cent. The eosinophilia may occur as early as the seventh or eighth day but is often not evident until the third week of the disease. It progresses rapidly to a peak but frequently exhibits considerable daily variations. After the peak is reached in about the fourth or fifth week, there is a steady decline over a period of months and even years. The peak is usually reached after the most severe symptoms of muscle invasion have passed. Many workers do not feel that the extent of eosinophilia is an indication of the severity of the disease, but Brown (1897) believed that the eosinophilia varied directly with the muscle symptoms. In severe, fatal cases, the eosinophile count may drop rapidly before death. As for the differential count in severe, nonfatal cases, it is not unusual to find an eosinophilia above 50 per cent and the neutrophiles as low as 6 per cent, the latter varying inversely with the number of eosinophiles. Lymphocytes are often reduced in the differential count but they usually show an increase with the subsidence of the eosinophilia. Monoyte counts may show slight fluctuations. Erythrocyte counts may be increased early in the disease as a result of dehydration; later, there may be a mild anemia which usually does not fall below 3,000,000 per cubic millimeter. Other hematologic findings are relatively normal, except for an increase in eosinophilic myelocytes in examination of sternal bone marrow and, possibly, a prolongation in blood coagulation time.

The urine is often normal, but albumin, a trace of sugar, a few hyaline and granular casts, several erythrocytes and leucocytes, and a positive diazo eaction may be present.

Blood chemistry determinations usually do not offer much information oncerning the disease. The variations from the normal may be slight changes n blood sugar, calcium-phosphorus ratio, cholesterol, bilirubin, and nonproein nitrogen during the early part of the disease. Hanes (1936) reported a ase with severe edema, hypoproteinemia, and a reversal in albumin-globulin atio, which were believed to have been the result of vomiting and starvation.

The spinal fluid is usually normal, but in cases of encephalitis, it may be nder pressure. The cells, mainly lymphocytes, may be slightly increased in umber. Rarely is blood present.

DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis of trichinosis is often very difficult. A large percentage of cases, even severe ones, are frequently misdiagnosed. Diagnosis is made by history and clinical findings, immunologic tests, and demonstration of the parasite. The last named method is by far the most reliable.

History and Clinical Diagnosis

Perhaps the most common findings in a case of trichinosis are fever, facial edema, myositis, and a high eosinophilia not associated with any allergy or other parasitism. It may be well to summarize the symptomatology by listing various other diseases and conditions with which trichinosis may be confused (Hall, 1937; Kaufman, 1940; Gould, 1945; and others).

Intestinal derangements	Infectious gastroenteritis Food poisoning Intestinal influenza Colitis Dysentery Cholera
Fever and headache	Grippe or influenza Septicemia Undulant fever Typhoid fever Fever of undetermined origin
Edema	Acute nephritis Sinusitis Dermatomyositis Mumps Angioneurotic edema Acute alcoholism
Neurologic	Poliomyelitis Encephalitis Meningitis Polyneuritis Periarteritis nodosa Cerebral thrombosis and hemiplegia Chorea Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis Psychoses
Cardiac	Rheumatic fever Endocarditis Myocarditis
Pulmonary	Pneumonia Hemoptysis Bronchitis Pleurisy Asthma
Skin	Scarlet fever Measles Rickettsial diseases Syphilis
Myositis	Grippe or influenza Tetanus Acute appendicitis or acute surgical abdomen Gall-bladder disease Peptic ulcer Renal colic Beriberi Muscular hypertrophy Botulism

Grippe and influenza, acute nephritis, sinusitis, typhoid fever, and rheumatic fever are the commonest diseases with which trichinosis is confused.

Immunologic Tests

Immunologic tests are excellent means of aiding in the diagnosis and are considered highly presumptive or even specific by some workers. The two most popular are the intradermal and precipitin tests. There have been numerous papers published on the preparation of antigen for these tests. Probably the best and simplest method is that of Bozicevich (1938), using a saline extract of dried, powdered *T. spiralis* larvae obtained by pepsin-hydrochloric acid digestion of the musculature of heavily infected rats. The extract is prepared in a stock solution of 1:20 of the dried powder and sterilized by heat at 58° C. Precipitin ring tests are made with dilutions of 1:100 to 1:5,000 or higher. Nonspecific reactions may occur in dilutions up to 1:500, and it is therefore best to determine the highest titer which will give a positive reaction.

The intradermal test is made with 0.01 c.c. of dilutions of 1:10,000, 1:8,000, and even 1:5,000. There are 2 types of reaction in the intradermal tests, immediate and delayed. In the immediate type, a blanched wheal of 5 mm. or larger, with or without pseudopodia, is formed within a period of 10 to 30 minutes. In most instances, the reaction is considered positive if the wheal formed by the extract exceeds that of the control (saline in the case of Bozicevich's antigen) by 3 mm. or more. In the delayed reaction, occurring in a small percentage of cases, there is a reddish, edematous area about 2 or 3 cm. in diameter which forms and diminishes slowly, with its peak at about 12 to 24 hours.

The intradermal test is more sensitive, becomes positive earlier, and lasts longer than the precipitin test. The latter becomes positive, usually, during the fourth week of the infection and persists for a varying length of time, sometimes as long as 1 to 3 years. The intradermal test becomes positive, usually, during the third week of the infection and may persist for as long as 7 years, or longer. The delayed intradermal reaction is more frequently found during the early stage of the infection. Both tests, together, are excellent for diagnosis. If a positive skin test and a negative precipitin test are encountered throughout the illness, it is possible that the patient may have had a previous infection and does not have acute trichinosis. If the skin test is positive and the precipitin test changes from negative to positive during the course of the illness, the indications are strongly in favor of the view that the patient is suffering from the acute stage of trichinosis.

A small percentage of individuals, however, exhibit false positive reactions, the reasons for which are not known. False positive reactions have been reported in other worm infections (Augustine, 1937), periarteritis nodosa, infectious mononucleosis (Bassex, Thomson, and Silver, 1949), and neoplastic diseases of the reticuloendothelial system (Southam, Thomson, and Burchenal, 1949). Frequently, the complement fixation and skin tests will be negative, while the precipitin test may be falsely positive.

Identification of the Parasite

Examination for Adults.—Only rarely are *T. spiralis* adults found in liquid stools. Since this type of examination is so frequently unsuccessful, it is not encouraged.

Examination for Migrating Larvae.—Young larvae may be found in the blood and spinal fluid during the migratory phase, especially in heavy infections. These larvae are found during the second week of the disease and may be present until the fourth week or longer. The most common method is to hemolyze 1 to 5 c.c. of unclotted venous, arterial, or capillary blood in 10 volumes of a dilute acid, such as 3 per cent acetic acid. After laking, the material is centrifuged. The entire sediment is then examined microscopically either as a fresh wet preparation under a cover glass or as a stained smear. The larvae are easily recognized under low-power magnification by their size (about 0.1 mm.). In cases with hemoptysis, young larvae may be seen in the sputum; in central nervous system involvement, they may be found in centrifuged spinal fluid. Migrating larvae might be found in other parts of the body such as in fluid obtained by duodenal intubation, but such examination is not often successful.

Larvae in the Musculature.—Finding larvae in the musculature is by far the surest method and is often positive in moderate and heavy infections. If the pork consumed by the patient is still available, examination of it should be made. Larvae may be found in biopsies of the deltoid or other suitable muscles quite early in the disease, although they are usually not present in appreciable numbers until the end of the second week. There are several methods of examining the musculature: by pressed preparations, sectioning, and peptic digestion.

The *pressed preparation* is the simplest and most useful method. A few small particles of muscle are placed between two 2 by 3 inch glass slides and the slides are bound tightly together with rubber bands. The entire biopsy material is then examined under a dissecting microscope or under the low-power objective of a compound microscope. Immature as well as mature encysted larvae are readily seen by this method.

Histologic sectioning and staining of the biopsy specimen is frequently used, offers permanent preparations, and enables one to study the pathologic changes in the muscle. It has its disadvantages, however, in that the entire biopsy specimen is not examined, unless serial sections are made.

Peptic digestion involves mincing and treatment of the specimen at 37° C., with shaking, in 30 volumes of 0.5 per cent hydrochloric acid and 1 per cent pepsin until it is completely digested. The entire material is then strained through a 40-mesh sieve, sedimented, and washed in water by resedimentation; when the supernatant fluid becomes relatively clean, the sediment is examined microscopically (Fig. 248). This method is useful only when the larvae in the musculature are mature, since immature larvae are not resistant to digestion. Mazzotti and Pastrana (1943) found the compression method superior for examination of diaphragms.

X-ray may be used for diagnosis of very old cases of trichinosis since
alcified cysts are seen on a properly exposed x-ray plate. This method,
owever, is rarely used, except academically or for diagnosis of persistent
rheumatic'' pains and weakness of the musculature.

IMMUNITY

There is little information published in the literature concerning immunity
trichinosis in human beings. It is believed that it may play a role in re-
ucing the extent of recent infection if the individual had previously con-
umed very lightly infected, undercooked pork on several occasions and had
this way acquired nonclinical trichinous infections. This view is held by
any workers. Many authors, however, have reported the finding of young
nd old calcified cysts side by side in sections of muscle. Animals previously
fected exhibit an early expulsion of larvae and adults from the intestine and
n increased tolerance to massive doses of larvae (McCoy, 1931a, 1939, 1940;
achman, 1938; Roth, 1939, 1943; Rappaport and Wells, 1949; and others).
he question of immunity in human beings, therefore, remains unanswered
t the present time. All one can say is that it may influence the infection to
me degree but there is no absolute immunity produced.

TREATMENT

Some workers (Gould, 1945) feel that treatment with an antiserum may
beneficial. It is felt, however, that there is no satisfactory experimental
idence for its justification. Most work has been done with animals passively
munized with antiserum before and immediately after infection and not
a time when diagnosis is most apt to be made; e.g., during the second week.

There is no specific treatment for trichinosis. Some textbooks advise the
e of cathartics and anthelminthics to eliminate the adults from the intestine
t there is no experimental justification for such procedure.

To date, the only treatment of any value during the acute stages of the
sease is symptomatic treatment. Complete bed rest is essential for the
nagement of the fever, myocarditis, myositis, and other symptoms. An
tempt should be made to anticipate the symptoms and to treat each symptom
it develops. Thus, if there is dehydration due to excessive diarrhea, vomit-
g, and perspiration, parenteral fluids are indicated. The diarrhea may
treated with bismuth and paregoric, constipation with mild salts. In the
ent of a myocarditis and heart failure, restriction of salt may be advisable.
njunctivitis may be treated symptomatically. Central nervous system
olvement may be relieved by lumbar taps. If shock develops, either
ravenous plasma or blood transfusion is advisable. Pneumonia is a com-
cation to be guarded against. Analgesics, sedatives, and even morphine
often useful in relieving the myositis. Sponge baths with tepid water are
pful. A developing anemia is treated with iron. In the event of respira-
y paralysis, the use of a mechanical respirator is indicated. In a similar
nner, the other numerous symptoms may be treated.

An important consideration is the diet of the patient. Hanes (1936) reported a case exhibiting severe edema and hypoproteinemia resulting from starvation. In experiments with mice (Rappaport, 1943a) it was found that animals receiving a mash of bread and milk survived larger doses of *T. spiralis* larvae than those kept on a diet of solid food and water. In many instances, mice were found dead with their mouths filled with soft food and their stomachs empty, apparently because deglutition was exceedingly painful. Heavily infected animals frequently died during the second and third weeks of infection if they were deprived of soft food for as short a period as 5 hours.

Very little experimental work has been done in regard to diets in the control of the acute stage of the disease. Vitamin A deficiency may cause a persistence of female worms in the intestine and thus result in a larger number of larvae deposited by them (McCoy, 1934). Excessive vitamin loss is an important factor in any febrile condition. Vitamin therapy with proper diet is, therefore, probably essential in the management of the acute stages of trichinosis.

The above symptomatic and dietary treatment should be continued as long as indicated. Complete bed rest is by far the most important and should be continued until the myocarditis and acute myositis subside sufficiently. During convalescence, muscular exertion and fatigue are not desirable.

PROGNOSIS

The prognosis is dependent upon the initial dose of larvae ingested and other factors which may influence the course of the disease, such as immunity from a previous infection, resistance of the patient, and organs involved during the migratory phase. Some workers feel that an early mild or moderate diarrhea is a favorable sign since developing larvae and adults may be more easily eliminated. Severe dysenteric symptoms are often a poor prognostic sign. Likewise, symptoms of myocarditis, encephalitis, pneumonia, and, later, respiratory paralysis indicate a questionable prognosis. A sudden fall to normal of the eosinophile count and a sudden change in the immunologic tests from positive to negative are often bad omens.

The course of an epidemic in regard to the beginning of illness (incubation period), deaths, and the beginning of convalescence is illustrated in Fig. 261. In most instances, the incubation period is early. Deaths occur during the second to sixth week. Convalescence is a long, drawn-out process which may last for many months, as indicated by early fatigue and muscular weakness. Excessive damage to the heart and central nervous system may be permanent. In regard to the influence of *T. spiralis* on tumor formation, there is no authentic evidence of such complication resulting directly from the parasitism.

PREVALENCE

Trichinosis is found in most parts of the world, especially in regions where garbage feeding of hogs is a common practice and pork is consumed in a raw or partially cooked state. Autochthonous cases have not been reported from uba (Kourí, Basnuevo, and Sotolongo, 1943), Puerto Rico (Bachman, Molina, nd Oliver-Gonzalez, 1934) and a number of other Latin American countries where it is a common practice to cook pork well. In surveys of cadavers and y skin testing, Perrin (1942) and Mazzotti and Hube (1944) found an inidence as high as 12.5 per cent in Mexico City. Martinic (1942) found an ncidence of 13 per cent in Santiago, Chile. Cases of trichinosis have been eported from Brazil and British Guiana (McKinley, 1935).

Surveys of thousands of cadavers after autopsy indicate that the arasitism is less in the southern United States. On the whole, it is estimated hat about 15 per cent of the entire population in the United States have been nfected with *T. spiralis* at one time or another (Hall and Collins, 1937; Hall, 1938; Sawitz, 1939; Catron, 1940; Kerr, Jacobs, and Cuvillier, 1941; and thers). Only about 2.5 per cent of those infected, however, had histories of linical symptoms of the disease (Wright and Brady, 1940). Trichinosis is, herefore, quite widespread, but, owing to the fact that most cases are usually ery light, they are missed or overlooked.

Many cases of trichinosis are familial and local in origin. Outbreaks freuently occur in isolated families or groups after a meal of inadequately rocessed or cooked pork from a locally slaughtered hog. Many cases also esult from eating hamburgers adulterated with pork scraps. The sale of uch "beef" hamburgers is forbidden by law in many places but, nevertheless, hey are still sold at many small lunch counters. Jerked bear meat has been eported as a cause of minor outbreaks among hunters, and even dog meat has een known to cause outbreaks in man.

The disease is usually transmitted from hog to hog by the feeding of unooked garbage containing pork scraps. In the United States, surveys have hown that about 10 per cent of garbage-fed hogs and only 1 per cent of grain-ed hogs are infected with *T. spiralis* (Wright and Brady, 1940). Rats and ice probably play a role in maintaining the infection in nature.

PREVENTION

Obviously, the control of the disease is important and involves both the roper care and feeding of hogs on the part of the farmer and adequate rocessing of pork and pork products by meat packers and housewives. If arbage is to be fed to hogs, it should be thoroughly cooked. Hogs should e raised on sanitary farms where the rodent population is kept at a minimum.

Pork products (salted, smoked, etc.) under United States Government spection are safe without cooking. It has been found that larvae may emain alive up to 300 days in pork kept at ordinary refrigeration temperaure. Pork, however, may be made safe for eating by refrigeration at 5° F. r 20 days, as is required by the United States Department of Agriculture. ugustine (1933) reported that quick freezing at -34.6° C. for about 6 hours esults in the destruction of larvae. The best advice to housewives is thorough oking of pork for a period long enough for the center part of the meat to ecome thoroughly done.

Inspection of freshly killed hogs for trichinosis is not a routine procedure in the United States since most hogs are so lightly infected that they may be missed. Such inspection would, therefore, lead to a false sense of security. The method of skin testing of hogs may prove useful but it is still in the experimental stage and would probably be a difficult procedure to carry out in most abattoirs.

References

Anonymous: 1866. The Last New Disease, Lancet **1**: 16.

Askanzy, M.: 1894. Zur Lehre von der Trichinosis, Centralbl. f. Bakteriol. [Etc.], Jena **15**: 225.

Askanazy, M.: 1895. Zur Lehre von der Trichinosis, Arch. f. path. Anat. [Etc.], Berl. **141**: 42-71.

Augustine, D. L.: 1933. Effects of Quick Freezing Upon Infective Larvae of Trichinella Spiralis, J. Parasitol. **19**: 175.

Bachman, G. W.: 1938. Factors Involved in Resistance to Worm Infections With Special Reference to Trichinosis, Rev. de med. trop. y parasitol., bacteriol., clín. y lab. **4**: 121.

Bachman, G. W., Molina, R. R., and Oliver-Gonzalez, J.: 1934. Anomalous and Nonspecific Reactions With Trichinella Spiralis Antigen in Relation to Other Disease Conditions, Am. J. Hyg. **20**: 415-423.

Bassen, F. A., Thomson, A. E., and Silver, A.: 1949. The Occurrence of False Positive Trichina Precipitin Tests in Infectious Mononucleosis, J. Lab. & Clin. Med. **34**: 543-548.

Beecher, C. H., and Amidon, E. L.: 1938. Electrocardiographic Findings in 44 Cases of Trichinosis, Am. Heart J. **16**: 219-224.

Berger, E., and Stähelin, A.: 1928. Studien über den Mechanismus der Trichinelleninfektion, das Verhalten gelähmter Muskeln, Centralbl. f. Bakteriol. (Abt. 1) **108**: 397-401.

Bozicevich, J.: 1938. Studies on Trichinosis. XII. The Preparation and Use of an Improved Trichina Antigen, Pub. Health Rep. **53**: 2130-2138.

Brown, T. R.: 1897. Studies on Trichinosis, Johns Hopkins Hosp. Bull., Balt. **8**: 79-81.

Bugge, G.: 1934. Trichinen im Darm, Arch. f. Tierheilkd. **68**: 24.

Carter, J. R.: 1949. Plasma Cell Hyperplasia and Hyperglobulinemia in Trichinosis, Am. J. Path. **25**: 309-323.

Catron, L.: 1940. The Incidence of Trichinosis in 300 Autopsies at the University Hospital, Ann Arbor, Michigan, Am. J. Hyg. **32**: 12-23.

Chitwood, B. G., and Chitwood, M. B.: 1937. An Introduction to Nematology, Baltimore, Monumental Printing Co., sec. I, Part I, pp. 16-19.

Cohnheim, J.: 1865. Tödliche Trichinose mit parenchymatöser Degeneration von Leber, Herz, und Nieren, Virchow's Arch. f. path. Anat. [Etc.], Berl. **33**: 447-451.

Craig, C. F., and Faust, E. C.: 1945. Clinical Parasitology, ed. 4, Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, p. 281.

Culbertson, J. T., and Kaplan, S. S.: 1938. A Study Upon Passive Immunity in Experimental Trichiniasis, Parasitology **30**: 156-166.

Cushing, E. H.: 1936. Electrocardiographic Changes in Trichinosis, Am. Heart J. **11**: 494-496.

Flury, F.: 1913. Beiträge zur Chemie und Toxikologie der Trichinen, Arch. f. exper. Path. u. Pharmakol., Leipz. **73**: 164-213.

Flury, F., and Groll, H.: 1913. Stoffwechseluntersuchungen an trichinösen Tieren, Arch. f. exper. Path. u. Pharmakol., Leipz. **73**: 214-232.

Gould, S. E.: 1945. Trichinosis, Springfield, Ill., Charles C Thomas, Publisher, pp. 189-236.

Graham, J. Y.: 1897. Beiträge zur Naturgeschichte der Trichina spiralis, Arch. f. mikr. Anat., Bonn. **50**: 219-275.

Hall, M. C.: 1937. Studies on Trichinosis. III. The Complex Clinical Picture of Trichinosis and the Diagnosis of the Disease, Pub. Health Rep. **52**: 539-551.

Hall, M. C.: 1938. Studies on Trichinosis. VI. Epidemiological Aspects of Trichinosis in the United States as Indicated by an Examination of 1,000 Diaphragms for Trichinae, Pub. Health Rep. **53**: 1086-1105.

Hall, M. C., and Collins, B. J.: 1937. Studies on Trichinosis. II. Some Correlations and Implications in Connection With Incidence of Trichinae Found in 300 Diaphragms, Pub. Health Rep. **52**: 512-527.

Hanes, F. M.: 1936. Trichinosis Complicated by Hypoproteinemia, Internat. Clin. **4**: 67-85.

arwood, P. D., Spindler, L. A., Cross, S. X., and Cutler, J. T.: 1937. Guanidine Retention in Experimental Trichinosis of Rabbits, Am. J. Hyg. 25: 362-371.

emmert-Halswick, A., and Bugge, G.: 1934. Trichinen und Trichinose, Ergebn. d. allg. Path. u. path. Anat. 28: 313-392.

errick, W. W.: 1915. Review of Recent Studies in Trichinosis, J. A. M. A. 65: 1870-1872.

ertwig, R., and Graham, J. Y.: 1895. Untersuchungen über die Entwickelung der Trichinen, München. Med. Wchnschr. 21: 504-505.

aufman, R. E.: 1940. Trichiniasis: Clinical Considerations, Ann. Int. Med. 13: 1431-1460.

err, K. B., Jacobs, L., and Cuvillier, E.: 1941. Studies on Trichinosis. XII. The Incidence of Human Infection With Trichinae as Indicated by Postmortem Examination of 3,000 Diaphragms From Washington, D. C., and From 5 Eastern Seaboard Cities, Pub. Health Rep. 56: 836-855.

ourí, P., Basnuevo, J. G., and Sotolongo, F.: 1943. Lecciones de parasitología y medicina tropical, ed. 2, Habana, A. Muniz y Hno, vol. 2, part 1, p. 284.

ratz, F.: 1866. Die Trichinenepidemie zu Hedersleben, Leipzig, Wilhelm Engelmann.

reis, H. A.: 1937. Die Entwickelung der Trichinellen zum reinfen Geschlechtstier im Darme des Wirtes, Zentralbl. f. Bakt. 138: 290-302.

evin, A. J.: 1941. Recovery of Trichinella Spiralis Larvae in Early Stages of Infection, J. Parasitol. 27: 107-113.

ewis, J. H.: 1928. Influence of Glycogen on the Infection of Muscle With Trichinae, Tr. Chicago Path. Soc. 13: 12-15.

cCoy, O. R.: 1931a. Immunity of Rats to Reinfection With Trichinella Spiralis, Am. J. Hyg. 14: 484-494.

cCoy, O. R.: 1931b. The Course of Experimental Trichiniasis Infections in Rats, J. Parasitol. 18: 123.

cCoy, O. R.: 1932. Experimental Trichina Infections in Monkeys, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. 30: 85-86.

cCoy, O. R.: 1934. The Effect of Vitamin A Deficiency on the Resistance of Rats to Infection With Trichinella Spiralis, Am. J. Hyg. 20: 169-180.

cCoy, O. R.: 1939. Immunity to Trichiniasis in Rats, Proc. 3rd Internat. Cong. for Microbiol. p. 474.

Coy, O. R.: 1940. Rapid Loss of Trichinella Larvae Fed to Immune Rats and Its Bearing on the Mechanism of Immunity, Am. J. Hyg. 32: 105-116.

cKinley, E. B.: 1935. A Geography of Disease, Am. J. Trop. Med. 15: 213, 297.

artinic, M. A.: 1942. Estudio sobre triquinosis en Santiago, con especial referencia a su importancia clínica y epidemiológica y a la intradermo reacción diagnóstica de Bachman, Rev. chilena de hig. y med. prev. 5: 131-166.

atoff, K.: 1940. Untersuchungen über den Wanderungsweg der Jungtrichinellen im Wirtskörper, Ztschr. f. Infektionskr. 56: 237, 261.

atoff, K., and Wapzarowa, M.: 1937. Wieviel Jungtrichinellen kann eine weibliche Darmtrichinelle gebären? Ztschr. f. Infektionskr. 51: 89.

azzotti, L., and Hube, E. L.: 1944. La prueba intracutánea de Bachman para el diagnóstico de la triquinosis en 1,000 personas sanas de la ciudad de Mexico, Rev. d. Inst. Salub. y Enferm. Trop. 5: 31-36.

azzotti, L., and Pastrana, A.: 1943. La investigación de triquinosis en tejidos musculares por el metodo de digestion, Rev. d. Inst. Salub. y. Enferm. Trop. 4: 337-342.

olf, L. O., and Edney, J. M.: 1935. Minimum Time Required by Trichinella Spiralis to Produce Infective Larvae, J. Parasitol. 21: 313-314.

lf, L. O., and Edney, J. M.: 1937. The Larval Production of Trichinella Spiralis in Rats Given Graduated Numbers of Larvae, J. Parasitol. 23: 567-568.

epper, O. H. P.: 1931. Trichiniasis, M. Clin. North America 15: 271-277.

rrin, T. G.: 1942. Algunos estudios sobre triquinosis ignoradas, Rev. de med. trop. y parasitol., bacteriol., clin. y lab. 8: 59-64.

ppaport, I.: 1943a. A Comparison of Three Strains of Trichinella Spiralis. I. Pathogenicity and Extent of Larval Development in the Musculature, Am. J. Trop. Med. 23: 343-350.

ppaport, I.: 1943b. A Comparison of Three Strains of Trichinella Spiralis. II. Longevity and Sex Ratio of Adults in the Intestine and Rapidity of Larval Development in the Musculature, Am. J. Trop. Med. 23: 351-362.

ppaport, I., and Wells, H. S.: 1949. Immunity to Reinfection in Trichinosis, J. Parasitol. 35 (Suppl.): 14.

th, H.: 1939. Experimental Studies on the Course of Trichina Infection in Guinea Pigs. III. Immunity of Guinea Pigs to Re-infection With Trichinella Spiralis, Am. J. Hyg. 30: 35-64.

Roth, H.: 1943. The Role of the Intestinal Phase of Trichina Infection in the Establishment of Immunity to Reinfection, Am. J. Hyg. **38**: 99-111.

Rupprecht, B.: 1864. Die Trichinenkrankheit im Spiegel der Hettstädter Endemie betrachtet, Hettstädt, J. Hüttig.

Sawitz, W.: 1939. Trichinella Spiralis; Incidence of Infection in Man, Dogs, and Cats in the New Orleans Area as Determined in Postmortem Examinations, Arch. Path. **28**: 11-21.

Scheifley, C. H.: 1937. Localization of Trichinella Spiralis in the Muscle of Its Host, Am. J. Hyg. **25**: 349-353.

Southam, C. M., Thomson, A. E., and Burchenal, J. H.: 1949. False Positive Trichina Precipitin Reactions in Neoplastic Disease, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **72**: 354-357.

Spink, W. W.: 1935. Cardiovascular Complications of Trichinosis, Arch. Int. Med. **56**: 238-249.

Syverton, J. T., McCoy, O. R., and Koomen, J., Jr.: 1947. The Transmission of the Virus of Lymphocytic Choriomeningitis by *Trichinella spiralis*, J. Exper. Med. **85**: 759-769.

Terry, L. L., and Work, J. L.: 1940. Trichinosis of the Myocardium, Am. Heart J. **19**: 478-485.

Weller, T. H.: 1943. The Development of the Larvae of Trichinella Spiralis in Roller Tube Tissue Cultures, Am. J. Path. **19**: 503-516.

Wright, W. H., and Brady, F. J.: 1940. The Medical and Public Health Aspects of Trichinosis, Bull. (circular) of Federal Security Agency, U.S.P.H.S., Nat. Inst. Health, Washington, D. C., August.

Zenker, F. A.: 1860. Ueber die trichinen-Krankheit des Menschen, Virchow's Arch. f. path. Anat. **18**: 561-572.

CHAPTER 39

FILARIASIS

Donald L. Augustine

Filariasis is an infection with nematode parasites of the superfamily ilarioidea, in which clinical manifestations may be either present or absent. he parasites are commonly known as filarial worms. The adults or parental rms of this group are long and thread-like. They are characteristically issue parasites inhabiting the lymphatics, blood vessels, connective tissues, or erous cavities of land vertebrates, namely, frogs, lizards, birds, and mammals. he progeny of the adult worms are motile larvae and, because of their minute ize, are known as microfilariae. These microfilariae are deposited with or ithout periodicity within the body of the host and must escape through the kin during the feeding of a bloodsucking insect for further development and ransmission to a new host. Whereas adult filarial worms are markedly host pecific, the ability of microfilariae to develop in a wide range of bloodsucking rthropods, particularly mosquitoes, is a prominent feature of the group. The arental forms of most species of filarial worms infecting man have been udied by relatively few workers. They rarely enter in the diagnosis, and, erefore, only references to original studies on their morphology and taxomy will be recorded here. Specific diagnosis is usually established on orphologic and biologic characters of microfilariae.

CAUSAL AGENTS

Of the great number of species of filarial worms, only *Wuchereria banofti* (Cobbold, 1877) Seurat, 1921, *W. malayi* (Brug, 1927) Rao and Mapleone, 1940, *Onchocerca volvulus* (Leuckart, 1893) Railliet and Henry, 1910,* d *Loa loa* (Cobbold, 1864) Castellani and Chalmers, 1913, are important athogens for man. Less important species infecting man include *Mansonella zardi* (Manson, 1897) Faust, 1929, *Acanthocheilonema perstans* (Manson, 91) Railliet, Henry, and Langeron, 1912, *A. streptocerca* (Macfie and Corson, 22), and a number of forms known only in the microfilaria stage.

These later-named species, while of questionable pathogenicity, must be nsidered in establishing a specific diagnosis, and knowledge of their geoaphic distribution and characteristics of their microfilariae is, therefore, esntial. They will be briefly discussed in the following paragraphs and will t receive further attention.

Mansonella Ozzardi (Manson, 1897) Faust, 1929

Mansonella ozzardi is limited geographically to Central America, the northern countries South America, the northern states of Argentina, and probably occurs in most of the

---

**Onchocerca volvulus* and onchocerciasis are given detailed discussion in Chapter 40.

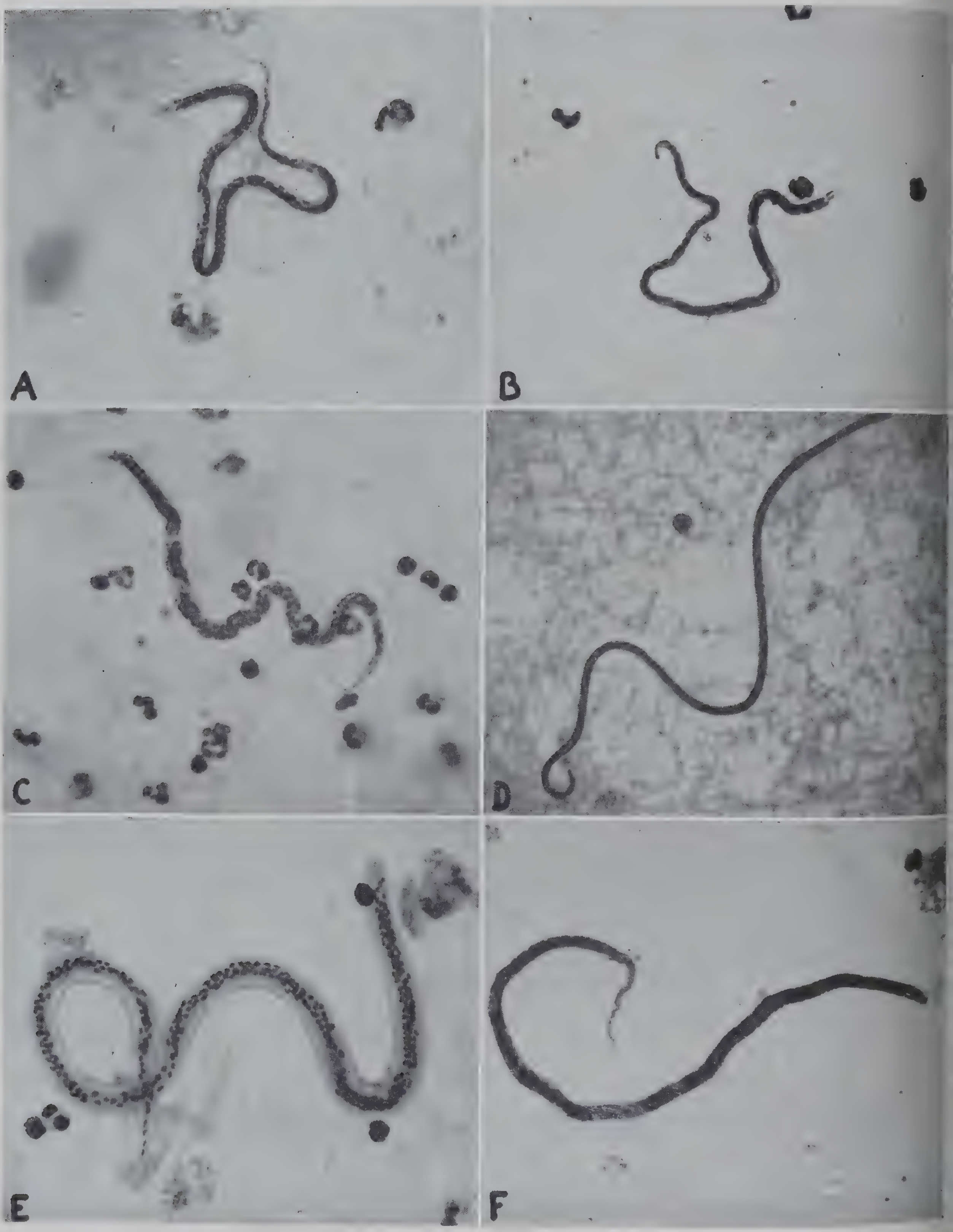


Fig. 262.—Microfilariae. Original photomicrographs. (×840.) *A, Mansonella ozzardi* and *B, Acanthocheilonema perstans* from stained films received from Harry Schwachman; *C, Wuchereria malayi* from Candido Africa; *D, Acanthocheilonema streptocerca* from Louis van den Berghe; *E, Wuchereria bancrofti* from F. W. O'Connor; *F, Loa loa.*

ands of the West Indies. Like all other filariases, the distribution is discontinuous and otted within the endemic countries. The incidence of infection is likewise variable, but in me native villages over 50 per cent of the inhabitants have been found positive upon blood amination. Our knowledge of the adult worms is based largely on the original studies of aniels (1902) of a few specimens obtained at autopsy on a native of St. Lucia by Dr. O. lgey. Five specimens, all female, were found in the connective tissue of the mesentery. ey varied from 65 mm. to 81 mm. in length, and from 0.21 to 0.25 mm. in breadth. The erofilariae are very small, usually not more than 200 microns in length and 5 microns in eadth. They show no periodicity in the peripheral blood, they are exceedingly active in esh blood films, and in stained films they assume outlines of small bowknots. They are un- eathed and have a sharply pointed tail, free of nuclei, a character which early suggested e common name, "the sharp-tailed filaria of British Guiana." Development of the micro- aria is completed in the midge *Culicoides furens,* which insect is believed to be the usual ctor (Buckley, 1934).

This organism apparently does not cause clinical symptoms.

Acanthocheilonema Perstans (Manson, 1891) Railliet, Henry, and Langeron, 1912

Acanthocheilonema perstans, except for its apparent absence in the Greater Antilles, has geographic distribution in the Western Hemisphere similar to that of *Mansonella ozzardi.* some localities it has been known to be characteristically limited to coastal areas, whereas *ozzardi* may extend inward along river valleys (McCoy, 1933). *A. perstans* in the Americas probably of African origin where its incidence is high throughout west coastal countries the Congo Basin.

The parental worms were first discovered by Daniels (1902) in British Guiana and were urately described in 1903 by Low. They occur in the connective tissue of the mesentery, renal and retroperitoneal tissues, the pericardium, and occasionally in subcutaneous cysts. e microfilariae were first discovered by Manson in 1891 in the blood of a West African gro suffering from sleeping sickness in the London Hospital. They are unsheathed, non- iodic microfilariae. They are practically identical in size with the microfilariae of *M. ardi,* but can readily be identified in stained films by the bluntly rounded caudal extremity taining prominent nuclei to its tip (Fig. 262). In Africa, the midge *Culicoides austeni* a known vector of *A. perstans* (Sharp, 1928). Its vector in the Americas has not been ntified.

A. perstans is not believed to cause disease, except allergic phenomena.

Acanthocheilonema Streptocerca (Macfie and Corson, 1922) Stiles and Hassall, 1926

Microfilariae of *Acanthocheilonema streptocerca* were first discovered in small pieces skin of healthy natives of the Gold Coast, Africa, and later reported in natives in the mfe division of the British Cameroons. About 50 per cent of the inhabitants in some vil- es have been found infected. The microfilaria is unsheathed, and, in stained preparations, averages 215 microns in length, its greatest diameter being about 3 microns. It strikingly embles a shepherd's staff with its crook at the caudal extremity (Fig. 262). In stained sec- es of parasitized skin the microfilariae lie in the tissue spaces of the corium, usually close to rete mucosum. They do not occur in the blood. It is not unusual for native inhabitants show simultaneous infection with *A. streptocerca, O. volvulus,* and *A. perstans.* Very re- ly, Peel and Chardome (1946) reported the finding of the parent worm (female) of *A. ptocerca* in the chimpanzees *Pan paniscus* and *Pan satyrus* in the Belgian Congo.

Wuchereria Bancrofti (Cobbold, 1877) Seurat, 1921

BANCROFTIAN FILARIASIS

HISTORICAL

The enormous enlargements of parts of the body, particularly of the legs and external genitals, so frequently accompanying bancroftian filariasis, were noted and much studied long before the etiologic agent, *Wuchereria bancrofti,* was discovered. According to Menon (1935), the first, and a very good description, of these conditions was written about 600 B.C. by Sushruta in India. The disease was probably also known at that time in Persia, Arabia, Egypt, and parts of Africa. Hillary (1766) gives a very good account of its occurrence in Barbados, describing the recurring attacks of fever, the lymphangitis, the lymphadenitis, and the slowly increasing swellings of the affected part up to the stage at which typical elephantoid appearances become definite and prominent. Hillary was certain that the disease had been brought to the West Indies from Africa by Negro slaves and, at his time, was observed to be ''too frequent among them and among the white people also.'' Neumann (O'Connor and Beatty, 1938) estimated that, in 1881, 6 per cent of the population of St. Croix, Virgin Islands, had elephantiasis.

Observations demonstrating the etiology of elephantiasis were initiated in 1863 by the French surgeon, Demarquay, who found microfilariae in chylous urine of a person who had lived in Cuba, were continued by Lewis (1879) in India, and culminated in the research of Patrick Manson in China between 1876 and 1900 (Manson, 1903). Early in his investigations Manson discovered filarial periodicity and experimentally demonstrated that the mosquito *Culex quinquefasciatus* was an essential intermediate host and the common agent for dissemination of the parasite.

In 1876 Bancroft in Australia discovered an adult female specimen in a lymphatic abscess. This was described as *Filaria bancrofti,* Cobbold, 1877. Twenty-five years ago it was removed from the genus Filaria and placed under the genus Wuchereria, a name which had been applied to it in 1877 by da Silva Araujo of Brazil in honor of Dr. Wucherer, a prominent Brazilian physician and parasitologist of that time. Later investigations were largely directed along epidemiologic and pathologic lines. Noteworthy among these are the studies by Bahr (1912), O'Connor (1923, 1932), Anderson (1924), Fülleborn (1929), Iyengar (1938), and Poynton and Hodgkin (1938). Keen interest in bancroftian filariasis developed during World War II following the report of its high frequency and its serious disabling effect in thousands of United States Navy personnel who were serving in the South Pacific areas.

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

Wuchereria bancrofti is widespread in tropical and subtropical countries. It characteristically occurs in island populations or along more or less broad, low-lying coastal areas of the larger islands and continents. Indigenous infections are seldom to be found in the foothills or beyond coastal plains.

In Asia, the parasite is established along the coastal areas from Arabia to the Shantung province in Eastern China. It is prevalent throughout the islands of the East China Sea, southern Japan, southern Korea, and the Oceanic Islands. In Australia its distribution is mainly limited to the Queensland coasts. In Africa the infection is found in a few east and west coastal areas, lower Egypt, Madagascar, and neighboring islands. Contrary to apparently current belief, it does not extend across tropical Africa, i.e., it does not occur in the Central Congo areas (Rodhain, 1938; Brutsaert, 1944; van den Berghe, 1946). Brumpt (1936) does not include the Congo as an endemic area of bancroftian filariasis, and, according to Sharp (1928), the infection is rare or absent in the Mamfe area of the British Cameroons. In the Americas, *W. bancrofti* is very common along the northern coast of South America, particularly the littoral of the Guianas and Venezuela, to a lesser extent along the northern coast of Colombia, and it is generally prevalent throughout the Antilles.

The spread of bancroftian filariasis necessarily depends on the extent of the migration of individuals showing microfilariae in the blood, on the presence or absence of appropriate mosquitoes in new areas to serve as intermediate hosts, on sanitation levels, and on favorable local meteorologic conditions.

Although bancroftian filariasis is widespread throughout warm countries, it is always a focal infection, and is neither evenly distributed nor uniformly prevalent in any country. The spotted and discontinuous distribution of the parasite within endemic areas is due to differences in local physical factors and sanitation, and to the presence or absence of favorable mosquito vectors. A favorable high temperature with a suitable amount of moisture is absolutely necessary for the development of the parasite in the mosquito and for its transfer from the mosquito to human skin. The low incidence of infection, or absence of infection in many places, particularly in the interior of China where proved mosquito carriers are present, is attributed to cold or to dryness with high temperature (Feng, 1931). It is particularly difficult to understand why indigenous infections are rare if not absent along the Caribbean shores of Central and North America where conditions outwardly appear to be identical with those of the endemic areas of northern South America.

Within endemic areas, bancroftian filariasis primarily occurs in urban populations. It is often restricted to a few towns or to sections of towns which are densely populated and where sanitary conditions are poor. It is particularly common in overcrowded dwellings of poor people, and the incidence and morbidity in a given family may be striking.

BIONOMICS

The parental forms of *W. bancrofti* are parasites of the lymphatic system of man only. They may be found at any point in the lymphatic system, but they occur most frequently in the limbs, scrotum, and inguinal regions. The two sexes are frequently coiled together in the periglandular tissues, the afferent lymphatics, and in the cortical sinuses. In heavy infections they may also occur in the medullary sinuses. They probably do not migrate from the site of their development.

The adult worms, like other nematodes, show marked sexual dimorphism. The male worm measures about 40 mm. in length and 0.1 mm. in diameter, and the female is at least twice as large. Further anatomical details of the parental forms will not be recorded here since the adult worms seldom enter in the diagnosis. When their identification is desired, the specimens should be examined by a person well experienced in nematode morphology and taxonomy.

The microfilariae occur in the lymph, the blood stream, and under certain conditions (chyluria) may be found in the urine. In fresh preparations under low power of the microscope they appear as exceedingly active, thread-like objects, as they lash their way among the blood corpuscles. Unless the slide is properly prepared and stained, very little definite structure can be determined. After staining with hematoxylin a certain amount of structure can be made out (Fig. 262). They vary from 250 to 300 microns in length, and from 7 to 10 microns in breadth. They are covered with a hyaline sheath which may extend some distance beyond the anterior and posterior limits of the body. These sheaths are not apparent on the microfilariae in the circulating blood. The sheath is formed on the slide in the clotting and drying blood. The larva is mechanically held in the thickening medium, and in its efforts to push on and back out, its outer covering is stretched. It usually does not escape and the covering is retained as a distinct outer membrane (Augustine, 1937). Bancroftian microfilariae are thus ''sheathed'' larvae and the presence of the sheath is a diagnostic character.

In stained blood films the microfilariae assume a smooth, graceful curve. The head is rounded, and it has been described as bearing a minute spear or stylet. This structure is seldom apparent and its existence is questioned (O'Connor, 1936). The body of the micr filaria is mainly composed of small nuclei. A clear space, the nerve ring, is present at a poi about ⅕ of the length of the body backward from the anterior end. Another break in co tinuity of the nuclei occurs at about the junction of the upper ⅓ and the lower ⅔ of the bod This second clear area is known as the "anterior V-spot," or excretory pore. A smaller spo is visible a short distance from the end of the tail which is known as the "posterior V-spot which represents the anal opening. The nuclei do not extend into the tip of the head or int the tip of the tail.

Key to Microfilariae of Man*

1. Microfilariae characteristically present in blood------------------------------------
   Microfilariae characteristically present in lymph spaces of skin, no periodicity--------
2. Sheath present, periodicity--
   Sheath absent, no periodicity--
3. Nocturnal periodicity (usually)--
   Diurnal periodicity ---
4. Tail tapering to fine point, nuclei do not extend to tip of tail; body assumes graceful, sweeping curves in stained film; length 300 μ ± ----------*Wuchereria bancrofti*
5. Tail tapering to fine point but swollen at levels of 2 nuclei; body assumes stiff, irregular outline with sharp flexures in stained film; length 230 μ ± --*Wuchereria malayi*
6. Tail tapering to fine point, nuclei extend to tip of tail; body assumes stiff, irregular outline with angular flexures in stained film; length 300 μ ±-----------*Loa loa*
7. Tail sharply pointed, nuclei do not extend to tip of tail; length 200 μ ±------------ --*Mansonella ozzardi*
8. Tail bluntly pointed with knob-like tip; nuclei extend into tip of tail; length 300 μ ± --*Acanthocheilonema perstans*
9. Tail abruptly narrowed, sharply pointed and gracefully curved; nuclei do not reach tip of tail; length 300 μ ± --------------------------------*Onchocerca volvulus* 1
10. Tail sharply pointed and bent, resembling a shepherd's crook; body nuclei in single row extending to tip of tail; body characteristically rigid and straight or slightly curved, length 200 μ ± ------------------------*Acanthocheilonema streptocerca*

In most endemic areas the microfilariae characteristically exhibit a marked nocturna periodicity. They are found in greatest number between 10 o'clock in the evening and o'clock in the morning, but during the day usually few if any microfilariae are readil demonstrable in the peripheral blood. We have no adequate explanation for this remarkabl phenomenon. In most areas of the Philippine Islands, however, and on some of the Sout Pacific Islands, namely, Tahiti, the Tonga, Fiji, Samoan, Wallis, and Ellice Islands, the micro filariae show no periodicity and remain in about equal numbers at all hours of night and day

For further development and dissemination of the parasite, the circulating microfilaria must be ingested by suitable mosquitoes, the sole vectors of bancroftian filariasis. The factor which determine the suitability of particular mosquitoes are not known. Development take place readily in mosquitoes of a variety of genera, including *Culex, Aëdes,* and *Anophele* but closely related species within these genera differ widely in their ability to serve as host For example, *Aëdes scutellaris pseudoscutellaris* is a very favorable host, but *A. aegypti* an *A. vexans* are not.

Metamorphosis of the microfilariae and their development into the infective stage fo man occur in the thoracic muscles of mosquitoes. Under highly favorable conditions the in fective stage is reached after about 10 days. It travels through the thoracic muscles into th interior of the labium (the sheath which encloses the biting mouth parts), where it awaits a opportunity to get back to man, which opportunity is presented when the mosquito again feed upon man. Unlike the development of the malaria organisms in the mosquito, there is n multiplication of filaria larvae within the body of its vector. On the contrary, only a fractio of the number of the microfilariae ingested by the mosquito develop to the infective stage It has been estimated that about 35 per cent of the microfilariae ingested by mosquitoes di in the stomach blood clot, and that a very heavy mortality of larvae may also occur afte their arrival in the thoracic muscles (O'Connor and Beatty, 1938). The worms are pathogenic in the mosquito. Many infected mosquitoes die during the first few days after an infective blood meal. At every step of transmission, only a few parasites are involved. The transmission of bancroftian filariasis is, therefore, accomplished with much less certainty than that of malaria.

---

*Personal history of patient, including travel, likely exposure to filariasis, and knowledg of the geographic distribution of filariid species should always be considered before diagnosi is established.

When the mosquito feeds upon a person, the infective larvae escape from the distal portion of the labium of the mosquito and momentarily become free on the skin. They then actively enter the human host by penetrating the moist skin, entering presumably through the wound made by the mosquito or through a breach in the skin.

Nothing is known about the larvae after they enter the human host until they appear as adult worms in the lymphatic system. Judging from observations on a related species, *Dirofilaria immitis,* found in the dog, the development of *W. bancrofti* to functional sexual maturity probably requires at least several months. For production of microfilariae it is necessary that the worms of opposite sex come to lodge and develop together in the same spot. Successful infections, therefore, probably are in most cases the result of mass biting by infected mosquitoes.

PATHOLOGY

It must be admitted that great gaps still remain in our knowledge of the mechanics of pathologic changes in bancroftian filariasis. Despite positive statements in the literature concerning the host-parasite relationships, these reactions remain largely an assemblage of ideas and lack experimental proof. Experimental proof, however, is difficult because man is the only vertebrate host of *W. bancrofti,* and with the exception of the recent studies by Menon et al. (1944) on lizard filariasis in India, no similar histologic changes have been associated with any known filarial species infecting the lower animals.

The disorders in bancroftian filariasis are usually attributed to interference with the lymphatic system. It is generally held that living microfilariae are not particularly pathogenic. Experiments have shown that living microfilariae readily pass unharmed through normal lymph nodes. Direct observations have shown that they are exceedingly active in the blood stream. They are not only carried about with the blood stream, but they also actively move against the blood stream in the arterioles, making slow progress by bracing themselves against the walls of the vessel. They frequently occlude the capillaries, and then suddenly break through the stagnated column of blood cells to re-enter the active circulation. They apparently never make permanent plugs or form emboli (Augustine, Field, and Drinker, 1936).

In view of the fact that some, probably many, of the infective larvae which may gain entrance into the host may be destroyed before reaching maturity, and that hundreds of thousands of microfilariae are constantly being destroyed within the body, it is entirely possible that at least some of the manifestations of bancroftian filariasis are allergic responses. The observation of Bozicevich and Hutter (1944) support this view. These authors, in a

study of intradermal and serologic tests for filariasis, noted in some of th
cases of bancroftian filariasis that an exacerbation of symptoms of lymphan
tis together with pain in the scrotum and lymph glands followed the injecti
of small amounts of *Dirofilaria immitis* antigen.

Early in the study of bancroftian filariasis it was believed that, in a
dition to the presence of the worm itself, traumatism or some other cause w
needed to provoke lymph stasis and lymphangitis. The British Filariasis Co
mission in 1924 went so far as to say that the worm, per se, produces no sym
toms and that all the pathologic manifestations associated with filariasis a
due to secondary infections by pyogenic bacteria. To French scientist
Montestruc and Bertrand (1937), and Chabeuf (1938), the parasite plays
more or less accidental role in the production of tropical lymphangitis
lymphatic filariasis, and Grace (1943) holds that tropical lymphangitis is pr
duced by a combination of lymph stasis caused by the parasite and subs
quent infection by beta-hemolytic streptococcus. Dickson et al. (1943
Michael (1944), King (1944), and Zuckermann and Hibbard (1945), havin
studied filariasis cases among United States Navy personnel who served i
the South Pacific areas, urged a return to the orthodox opinion of the dire
responsibility of the worm for the clinical manifestations of bancroftian filariasi
but the evidence on which bacterial infection was ruled out is not convincin
The observations of Dubruel (1909) in Tahiti and neighboring islands are of i
terest. Dubruel observed that fluid withdrawn in the presence of lymphangiti
showed streptococci more frequently than that withdrawn between attack
This observation is in accord with the results of the experimental studies o
elephantiasis by Drinker et al. (1934, 1935) in which bacteria (streptococci
could rarely be isolated from edema fluid except at the beginning of an a
tack of chills and fever. At the present time, however, most authors lea
toward the view that the maturing and adult parasites and their secretion
are responsible for the inflammatory reactions of bancroftian filariasis, pa
ticularly in the early stages. Some of the more serious later complications ar
obviously due to secondary infection.

In most cases of bancroftian filariasis the living worms cause little or n
damage other than varying degrees of blockage of afferent vessels of th
lymph node (O'Connor, 1932; Hartz, 1944). Their presence early cause
simple dilatations of the vessel. Occlusion of the vessel may follow, due t
an accumulation of epithelioid cells and lymphocytes within the lumen an
its subsequent narrowing and obliteration by granulomatous perilymphangi
tis. Severe inflammatory reaction, giant cell formation, and massive fibros
are prominent in the environment of dead and dying worms, the reaction be
coming more marked with advancing disintegration and calcification of th
parasites. In heavy and long-standing infections extensive areas can be in
volved, resulting in complete obstruction of lymph drainage to a part, de
velopment of lymphedema, and elephantiasis, due to subsequent extensiv
fibrous overgrowth. This sequence of events has been produced under ex

perimental conditions by Drinker and Homans (1934), who also demonstrated that loss of lymph circulation predisposes to bacterial (streptococcic) infection.

Eosinophilic leucocytes may be rare or absent about living worms, but characteristically occur in enormous numbers in the vicinity of dead and disintegrating parasites. In the early stages of disease, neutrophilic leucocytes may be absent from the cell picture, thus indicating that the inflammation at this time is not necessarily caused by bacterial infection.

The skin of elephantoid tissue in bancroftian filariasis is characteristically dense and leathery and, because of destruction of the sweat glands, is dry. It may be smooth and glossy, but it is frequently rough, warty, and even nodular. Folds appear and deep abscesses frequently develop following abrasion and bacterial or mycotic infection.

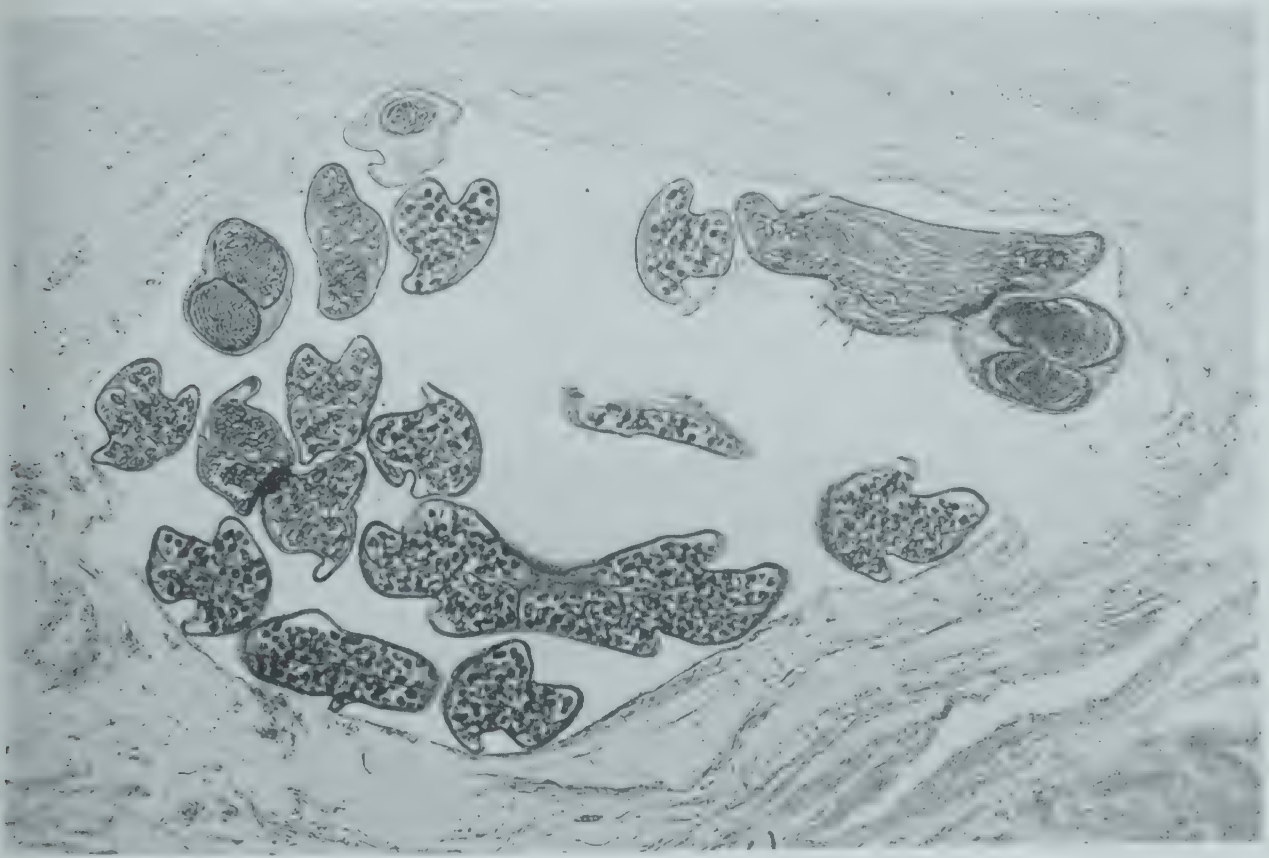


Fig. 263.—Living female *Wuchereria bancrofti* in dilated lymphatic vessel near the rete testis. There is no inflammation, obstruction, or hypertrophy of the vessel. Note presence of myriads of ova and microfilariae in sections of the worm. (Original photomicrograph of material received from F. W. O'Connor.)

In the absence of demonstrable parasitism, the pathology in bancroftian filariasis is essentially the same pathology as in sporadic cases of lymphadenopathy and elephantiasis in which filariasis is not a factor. Elephantiasis, grossly identical with bancroftian filariasis, is common among natives of inland tropical Africa areas where *W. bancrofti* is not indigenous. To what extent this type of endemic elephantiasis resembles endemic bancroftian elephantiasis is not known (Sharp, 1928; Rodhain, 1938; Brutsaert, 1944; van den Berghe, 1946).

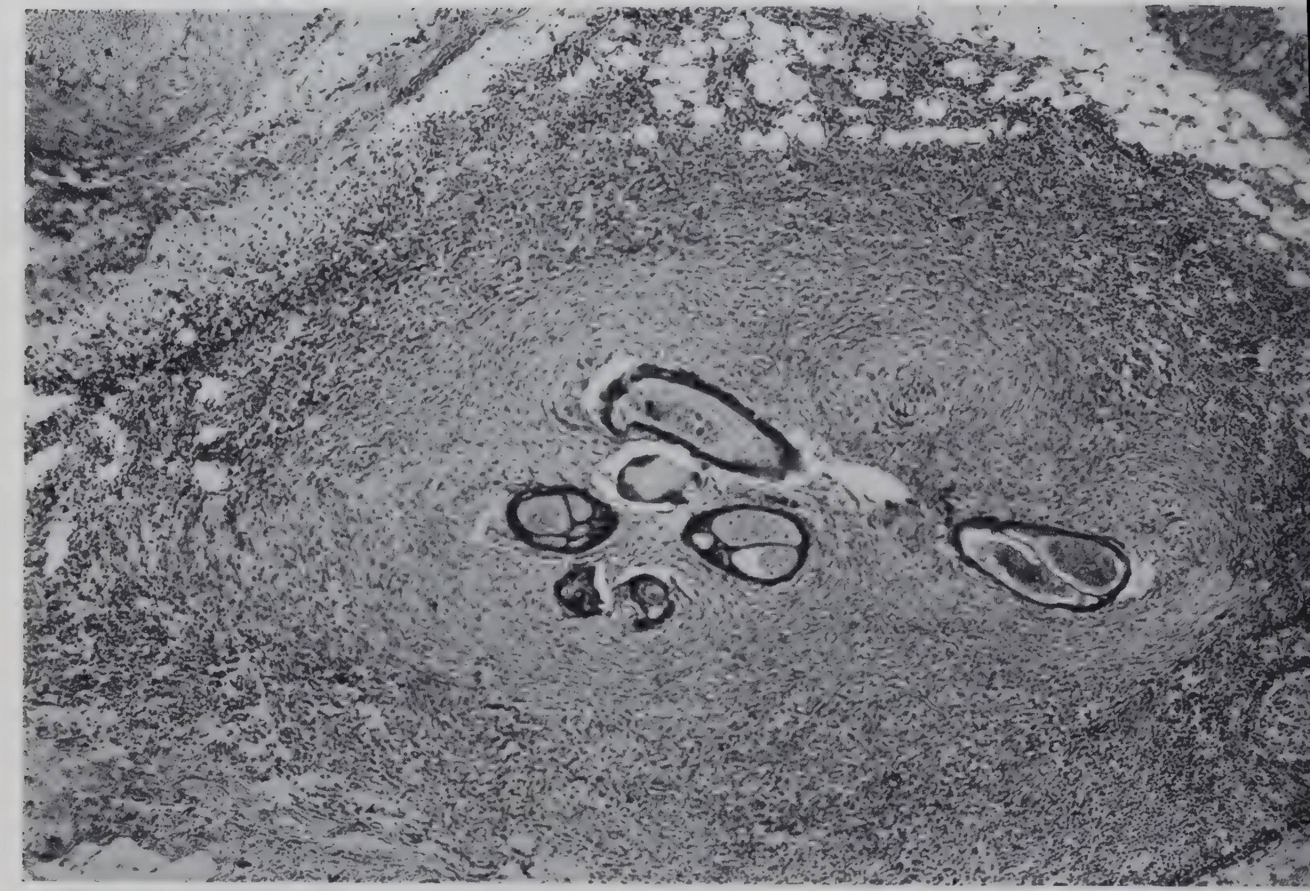


Fig. 264.—Sections of a degenerating adult *Wuchereria bancrofti* in the cortical sinu of an inguinal lymph node. The vessel is completely obliterated following extensive fibrot changes. (Original photomicrograph of material received from F. W. O'Connor.)

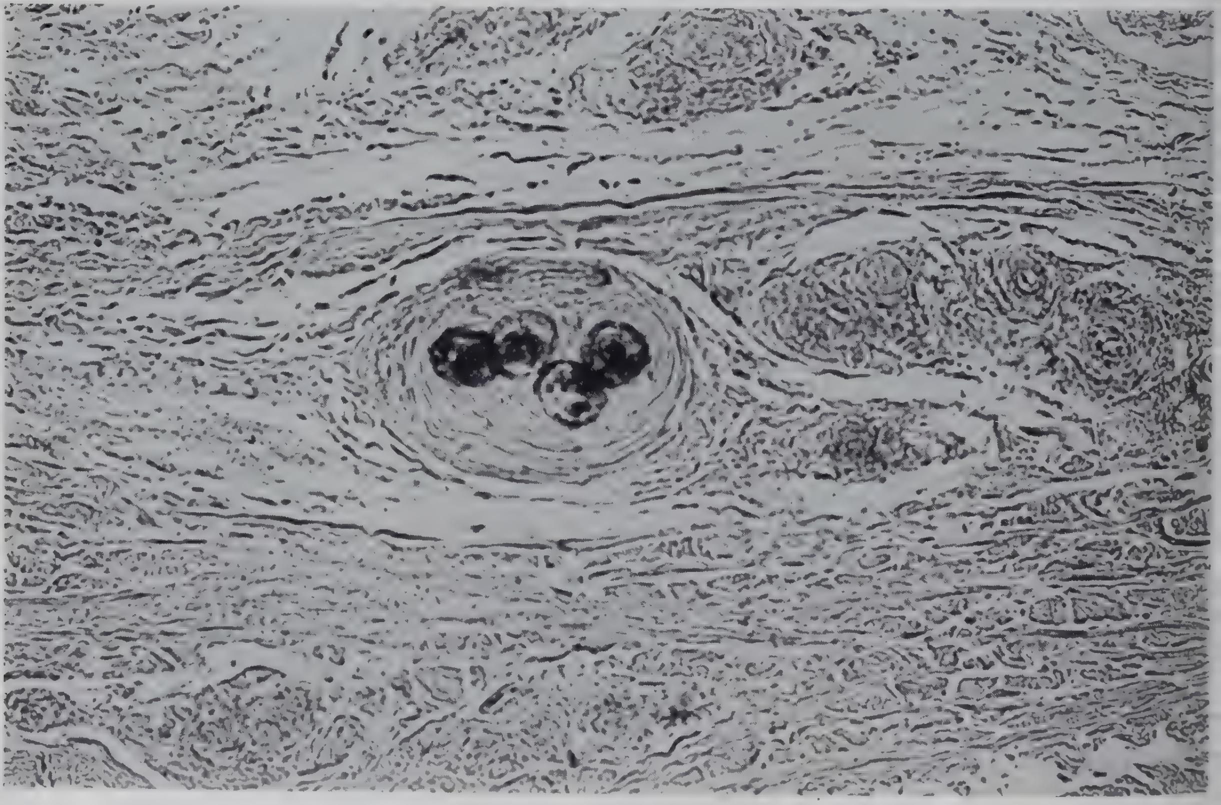


Fig. 265.—Four sections of a calcified adult *Wuchereria bancrofti* in a subcutaneous lymph vessel. A "focal spot." Inflammation has subsided; the vessel is occluded. Note the formation of concentric rings of fibrous tissue. (Original photomicrograph of material received from F. W. O'Connor.)

CLINICAL SYMPTOMS

In some endemic areas such as Fiji (O'Connor, 1923), more than 70 per cent of the population has been reported infected with *W. bancrofti*. The infected individuals can be conveniently placed under two categories: (1) persons positive for microfilariae, usually upon blood examination, and (2) persons showing manifestations of filarial disease, i.e., elephantiasis. The majority of the first group are symptomless, while the majority of the second group do not show microfilariae in the peripheral blood.

Prior to World War II, observations on the clinical manifestations of bancroftian filariasis were largely related to native populations or Europeans of long residence in endemic regions among whom the earliest signs and symptoms were difficult to trace. It was generally held that one or many more years had to pass before a demonstrable infection (microfilariae in the blood) could become clinically manifest. However, during the recent war, a great number of cases were reported among military forces in which the onset of symptoms appeared within a few months after arrival in highly endemic areas, an insufficient time for the parental parasites to have attained sexual maturity.

The symptoms of bancroftian filariasis can be divided into inflammatory and obstructive (O'Connor and Hulse, 1935). The effects of inflammation are the first to appear, and these may include lymphedema, lymphangitis, lymphadenitis, funiculitis, epididymitis, orchitis, filarial fever, myositis, and abscess. Obstructive phenomena are the result of progressive inflammatory reactions. They include lymph varix, chyluria, hydrocele, and elephantiasis.

The early signs and symptoms of bancroftian filariasis are both vague and variable, but attacks of lymphedema, lymphadenitis and lymphangitis, of one form or another, are at present considered cardinal signs of the disease in endemic areas. The initial attacks may appear without warning and without apparent cause, but sometimes develop following unusual exertion or exposure. Lymphangitis in bancroftian filariasis appears to be characteristically retrograde. The local symptoms are usually associated with varying degrees of generalized malaise, pain, numbness, fatigue, and slight rise of temperature ("filarial fever"). At the height of a severe attack the entire arm or leg may become red, tender, and painful, but within the affected extremity there may be one or more areas, "focal spots," where the pain is especially severe. Both living and degenerate parasites have been found in biopsy material removed from such areas. These symptoms in foreign residents may be complicated by psychic trauma, particularly fear of impotence or sterility (Zeligs, 1945). The initial attacks usually cease spontaneously after a few days, but tend to recur after shorter or longer intervals.

In the obstructive phase of bancroftian filariasis, lymphatic dilatation without rupture leads to lymph varix. Lymph varices or varicose glands commonly occur in the skin, particularly on the abdomen, legs, or arms, in the groin, in the scrotum, the spermatic cord, and in the abdominal lymphatics around the kidneys and those of the bladder wall. Hydrocele commonly occurs in bancroftian filariasis. When not complicated by infection the hydr cele fluid is clear and straw colored, and may contain microfilariae. Lymp varices frequently develop spontaneously, without local or general symptoms and may become marked without the patients' being conscious of them Chyluria frequently develops upon rupture and drainage of a lymph varix int bladder or kidney pelvis. Here again, the onset is usually abrupt, often without warning, but frequently preceded by pain or aching in the kidney region The urine may be chylous at one time but clear at another, depending o temporary closure of the ruptured lymphatic.

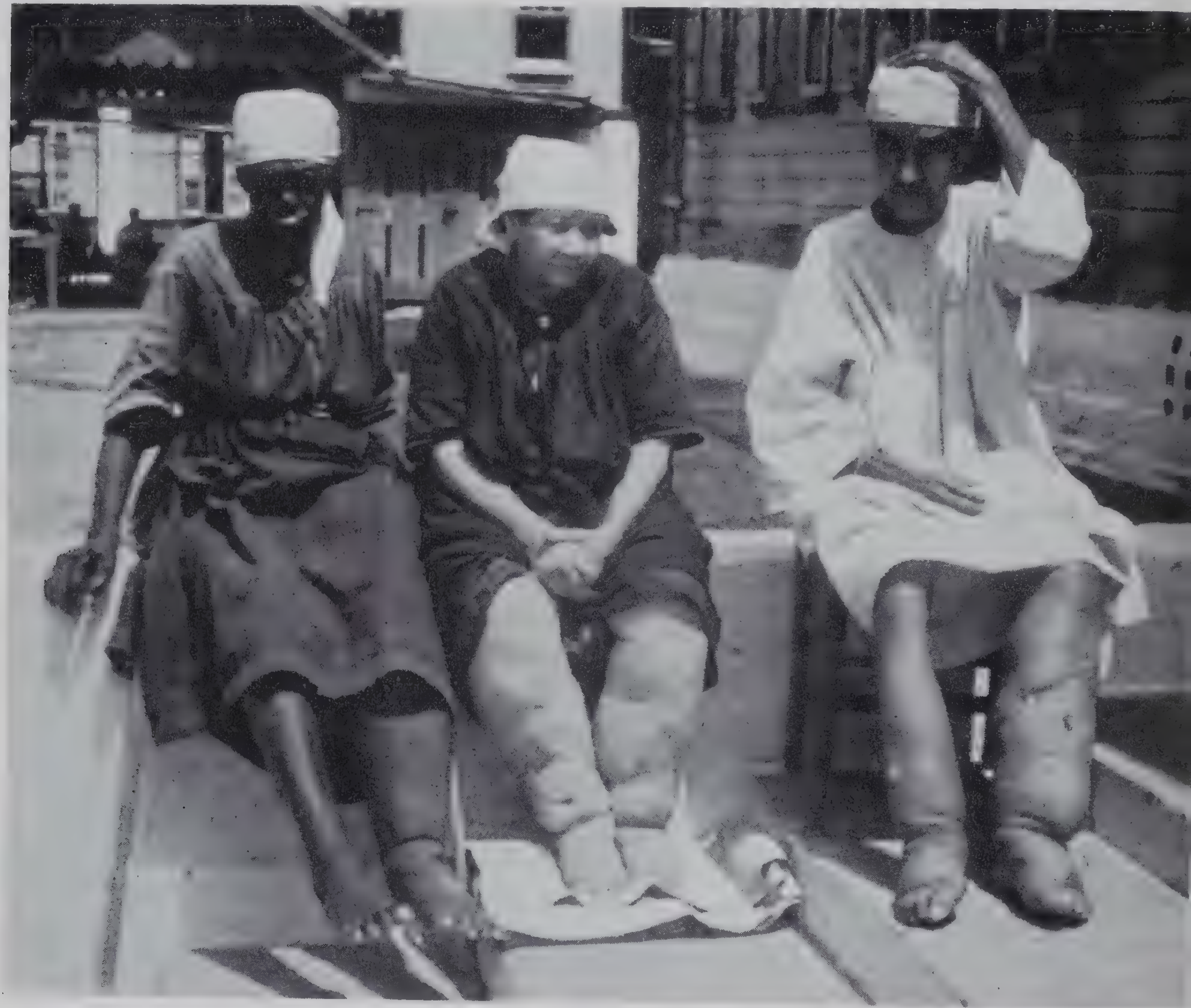


Fig. 266.—Elephantiasis of the legs attributed to bancroftian filariasis. Three cases seen in British Guinea. (Photograph by T. H. Weller.)

Elephantiasis is the most striking phase of bancroftian filariasis. The scrotum and legs are more frequently involved, and less frequently the arms, penis, breasts, and vulva. Elephantiasis usually develops after repeated attacks of lymphangitis. The process may be slow, but in some cases enormous enlargements have developed within a few years.

The blood picture is not usually altered in bancroftian filariasis. Eosinophilia is frequently present, but probably in most instances is related to concomitant helminth infection.

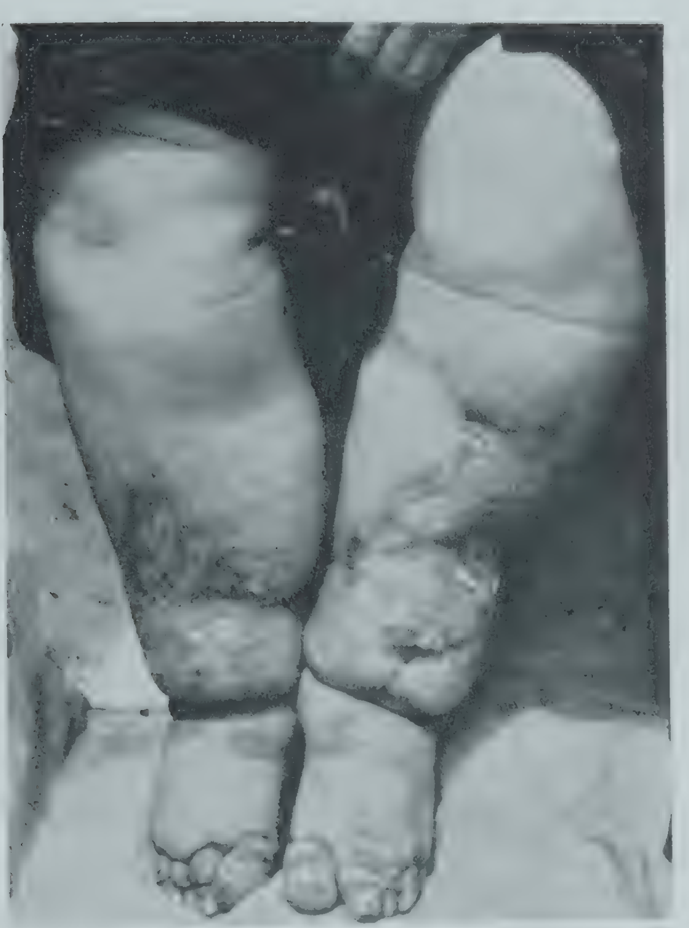


Fig. 267.—Elephantiasis of both legs, of 45 years' duration, attributed to bancroftian filariasis, in a woman 70 years old. A British Guinea case. (Photograph by T. H. Weller.)

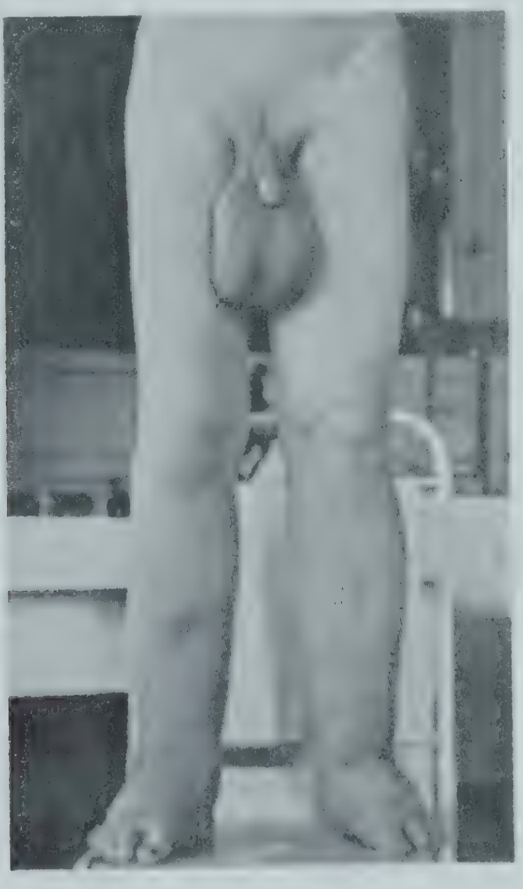


Fig. 268.—Elephantiasis of the scrotum and legs, attributed to bancroftian filariasis. British Guinea case. (From Romiti, 1930.)

DIAGNOSIS

The absolute diagnosis of bancroftian filariasis is usually made on findi the characteristic microfilariae in the blood. When obtaining blood for e amination, the phenomenon of periodicity should be considered. Both d and night specimens should be collected. It should also be remembered th microfilariae might not be present in the peripheral blood of many cas showing suggestive signs and symptoms in both early and advanced phases infection, and that, therefore, negative findings do not necessarily exclude t diagnosis of filariasis. Conversely, the presence of microfilariae does not nec sarily imply filarial disease.

1. Demonstration of Parasitism*

For the examination of blood for microfilariae, 6 or 8 large drops of blood are allowe to drop from the tip of the finger onto an ordinary clean slide and are evenly spread, befor clotting, over the surface of the slide. The blood films are dried in a level position, protecte from insects and dust, but freely exposed to the air. They are then dehemoglobinized i water. When laking of the hemoglobin is complete, the slides are examined while still we under low power of the microscope. The microfilariae, if present, appear as glistening object and are readily distinguishable.

For morphologic study and identification of the microfilariae, the dehemoglobinize preparations may be stained with steaming Delafield's hematoxylin for 5 minutes and the washed with tap water. They should then be differentiated momentarily in acid alcoho washed again in tap water until blue, dehydrated in absolute alcohol, cleared in xylol, an mounted in Canada balsam, Clarite ''x'' (thermoplastic hydrocarbon resin, a product o the Neville Co., Pittsburgh, Pa.), or any other satisfactory mounting medium.

If this method fails to reveal infection, further search for microfilariae should be mad by using a method which will concentrate them. For such examination about 10 c.c. of venous blood are withdrawn, laked, and centrifugalized for about 2 minutes at 2,000 revolutions pe minute. The sediment is then transferred to a few drops of physiologic saline on a glass slide for immediate microscopic examination. The microfilariae usually regain activity in the saline The concentration method should be used in the examination of chylous urine for microfilariae.

Search for adult parasites in biopsy material is not recommended as a routine diagnostic procedure. Adult worms are usually found in not more than 30 per cent of the cases. The histopathologic changes within the node are suggestive but not specific for bancroftian filariasis. Sporadic elephantiasis in temperate climates shows most, if not all, the pathologic changes associated with elephantiasis in filariasis. Finding these changes usually has been considered confirmatory of the diagnosis in persons known to have been exposed to infection and in whom clinical symptoms are present, but actually it calls for further careful search of the worm in the excised material and for further search of microfilariae in the blood.

2. Diagnosis Based on Clinical Manifestations

Frequently the diagnosis is made upon the presence of certain characteristic symptoms when they are noted in natives or foreign residents in endemic areas. These symptoms are usually referable to the early stages and include lymphangitis, lymphedema, lymphadenopathy, myositis, and sometimes abscess. There is, however, considerable disagreement among authorities on just what should be included under "signs and symptoms" of bancroftian filariasis. Lymphangitis, lymphadenitis, lymphedema, and particularly permanent enlargement of the epitrochlear gland are considered by Buxton (1928) and others to be the earliest positive signs of the disease. Iyengär (1938), however, excludes the presence of enlarged glands, lymphadenitis, and abscess because he could not determine to what extent they represented filarial disease, but he includes elephantiasis, lymph scrotum, hydrocele, and lymphangitis, particularly retrograde lymphangitis. Buxton recorded hardness or enlargement of the testicle and epididymis and the presence of hydrocele as manifestations of bancroftian filariasis; but finding it difficult to define the boundary between a normal testicle and epididymis and one that was enlarged or fibroid, he concluded that the male genitalia do not provide useful physical signs in the diagnosis of filariasis. Recently, Webster (1946), from a study of case histories of 80 adult white persons with an average duration of residence of 26 years in the Samoan Islands and showing signs and symptoms of bancroftian filariasis, concluded that the mere presence of palpable axillary, inguinal, or epitrochlear glands is of little value in the diagnosis in areas where bacterial infections of extremities are extremely common.

---

*See also Chapters 68, 72, and 73.

During World War II, 10,421 cases of bancroftian filariasis were reported among United States Navy personnel following service in the South Pacific area, particularly in the Samoan Islands (Coggeshall, 1946). The diagnosis in most of these cases was based upon (1) the presence of a transient retrograde lymphangitis, localized lymphedema, or lymphadenitis; (2) service leading to exposure to infection; and (3) a positive reaction to an intradermal test.

To evaluate the importance of lymphadenitis in filariasis, a careful physical examination, with particular reference to the presence of palpable lymph nodes, was made on 200 men of the above group with a clinical diagnosis of bancroftian filariasis, 271 patients with malaria, and on 98 men who had not been in tropical areas. The data obtained from this study showed no significant differences either in the number of men with demonstrable adenopathy or in the average number of nodes in any particular area. Patients in the overseas groups had larger nodes than those in the control group, which difference could be accounted for by the existence of active fungous infections in the overseas group. Although lymphadenitis is usually considered to be the most frequent clinical manifestation of bancroftian filariasis, in the above study it could not be used as a diagnostic criterion.

There is close agreement among the authors that lymph varix, chyluria, and elephantiasis are usually indicative of bancroftian filariasis in the later stages when occurring in natives and foreigners having had prolonged residence in an endemic area.

3. Immunologic Tests

Various skin tests have been employed in the diagnosis of filarial infections. The number of positive intradermal responses following the use of (1)

Dirofilaria immitis and (2) *Litomosoides carinii* (filarial parasites of the d and the cotton rat, respectively) antigens in suspected cases of filariasis led the conclusion that this test was of diagnostic value (Taliaferro and Hoffma 1930; Fairley, 1931; Culbertson et al., 1945; Michael, 1944). Later applic tions of these tests, however, gave irregular and uncertain results. Fal positive reactions are believed due to cross-sensitivity, i.e., a helminth grou reacting factor from nematode infections other than filarial worms (Bozicevic and Hutter, 1944; Wright and Murdock, 1944; Saunders et al., 1946), and t immune responses produced by infective filaria larvae of lower anima (Augustine and Lherisson, 1946). Unfortunately, immunologic tests, at pre ent, cannot be relied upon for final decision in the diagnosis of filariasis.

The only positive way of making a diagnosis of bancroftian filariasis is b identification of the infecting parasite, either adult worms or microfilaria The recognition and correct diagnosis of this disease, in the absence of dem onstration of the parasite, is usually difficult and requires detailed study Lymphadenopathy, lymphedema, and lymphangitis should always suggest th possibility of bancroftian filariasis when occurring in persons living or hav ing lived in endemic countries. Of these, the commonest and most charac teristic, if not specific, initial manifestation of the disease is an acute transien retrograde lymphangitis.

TREATMENT

There is no accepted chemotherapy of bancroftian filariasis. At the present time antimony compounds, Neostibosan (Culbertson et al., 1945) and Anthiomaline (Brown and Thetford, 1946), hold the highest promise, but still remain in the experimental stage. According to Brown and Thetford (1946), patients treated with Anthiomaline experienced a marked microfilaria reduction which persisted for at least 2 years, and some patients became microfilaria-negative. Patients treated with Anthiomaline showed no evidence of inflammation, lymph stasis, or other manifestations which might be expected to develop following the death of adult parasites and microfilariae and the concurrent release and absorption of toxic material. The toxicity of these compounds should be further investigated before they can be recommended for general use.

Santiago-Stevenson et al. (1947) obtained highly favorable results, including rapid disappearance of microfilariae from the blood stream, following oral administration of 1-diethyl-carbamyl-4-methyl-piperazine dihydrogen citrate (Hetrazan). The drug was administered orally 3 times daily, before or after meals, or every 8 hours. The individual dose varied from 0.5 mg. to 2 mg. per kilogram of body weight, and the number of days during which treatment was given varied from 3 to 21 days. The drug is reported to have been well tolerated in all of the 26 cases treated. More recently Hewitt et al. (1950) reported a reduction in total microfilariemia up to 99.6 per cent in 6 patients treated with various doses of Hetrazan and re-examined 1 year later. The microfilaria-positives in this group were reduced by 79.4 per cent. No disturbing systemic reactions occurred during treatment.

Palliative measures, with elevation of the affected part, are usually recommended for the immediate treatment of acute inflammatory attacks, but Glauser (1945) and Coggeshall (1946) did not find heat, cold, massage, or infrared rays to affected parts beneficial. Rest usually affords relief. Following removal of the patient afflicted with early filariasis from the endemic area to favorable surroundings, the disease soon runs a self-limited course before actual evidence of parasitism can be demonstrated. Bancroftian filariasis is seldom fatal. Sulfonamide drugs are recommended in the treatment of filarial lymphangitis complicated by streptococcal or staphylococcal infection. Pressure bandages are recommended in early elephantiasis of the legs (Knott, 1938). The bandaged leg must be exercised to prevent cyanosis. The large fibrotic tissues of advanced elephantiasis have been frequently removed successfully by surgery (Auchincloss, 1930; Torgerson, 1930; del Toro et al., 1930; Romiti, 1930; Knott, 1932).

PREVENTION AND CONTROL

In view of the fact that the parasite is transmitted solely through the bites of mosquitoes, its prevention is primarily one of mosquito control. *Culex quinquefasciatus*, which is world-wide in its distribution and which is probably the commonest vector of bancroftian filariasis, is essentially a domestic mosquito. It breeds near dwellings in cisterns, rain barrels, discarded tin cans, sewage drains, and ditches. Tight screens and gauze coverings will prevent mosquito breeding in cisterns, vats, and rain barrels. Discarded pots, tins, and other utensils should be buried or destroyed, and drains and ponds kept clear of vegetation in order to effect proper mosquito control. All breeding places should receive weekly treatment with larvicides. In the Oceanic Islands, where *Aëdes scutellaris pseudoscutellaris* is the most important vector, attention must be centered on discarded cocoanut husks and shells, natural and artificial cavities in trees, tin cans and other possible containers of clean water. O'Connor (1923) observed that the Pacific rat makes breeding places for this mosquito in trees by gnawing and gutting young cocoa pods. In Queensland, Australia, *Anopheles amictus* is an efficient vector of bancroftian filariasis.

Factors which favor endemicity of bancroftian filariasis are known to vary greatly, not only in different countries but also in different nearby localities within an endemic country. Thorough analysis and understanding of these factors are essential before effective control can be realized. The identity of the mosquito and knowledge of the conditions which permit it to flourish are of first importance in control of the disease in mankind. Better housing conditions, screening of doors and windows, and the use of bed nets are often recommended, but such measures, although effective if properly carried out, are seldom applicable in native villages. At the present time the only effective measures against bancroftian filariasis are those which can be applied directly against the mosquito vector.

Wuchereria Malayi (Brug, 1927) Rao and Maplestone, 1940

Wuchereria malayi was discovered in 1927 by Leichtenstein in the Dutch East Indi Leichtenstein had failed, after numerous attempts, to infect *Culex quinquefasciatus* and oth culicine mosquitoes with microfilariae of the area. Noting the absence of acute forms of t disease, although elephantiasis of the leg was common, it occurred to him that he might dealing with a new species of filaria. Brug (1927) examined Lichtenstein's material, four morphologic characteristics distinct from bancroftian microfilariae, and proposed the nar *Filaria malayi* for the parasite. The parental worms were first described and discussed Rao and Maplestone (1940) and later studied by Bonne, Lie Kian, Joe, Molenkamp, ar Mreyen (1941). The adults were found to be morphologically similar to the adult of *bancrofti,* and they are also parasites of the lymphatic system.

W. malayi appears to be strictly oriental in geographical distribution. It is known t occur in the Federated Malay States, Sumatra, Java, Ceylon, parts of India, Indo-China, an in northeastern Chekian Province of China. It is often the dominant species of a give region and, whereas *W. bancrofti* characteristically occurs in villages and towns, *W. malay* occurs typically in rural districts along river or forest settlements.

Elephantiasis of the feet and legs is characteristically associated with W *malayi* infection. The genitals and upper extremities are rarely involved a in bancroftian filariasis. The microfilariae show nocturnal periodicity, bu do not disappear entirely from the peripheral blood during the daytime. The resemble bancroftian microfilariae but are identified by the presence of tw distinct nuclei in the tip of the tail (Fig. 262). Mosquitoes of the genu Mansonia, subgenus Mansonioides, are the principal vectors, particularl *Mansonioides annulifera.* These are nocturnal feeders and are most activ during the evening from 7 to 9 o'clock.

Recently, extensive studies have been made on the control of filariasis i India, particularly in Travancore, where *Microfilaria malayi* is chiefly con cerned (Sweet and Pillai, 1937; Iyengar, 1938). It was demonstrated by thes investigators that the presence of a floating plant, *Pistia stratioites,* is essentia for the breeding of Mansonia. The female mosquito does not ordinarily la eggs except on the leaves of Pistia, and the larvae, being structurally adapte to obtain their supply of oxygen from the air cavities in the root, are no capable of living apart from this particular plant.

In experimental areas the clearance of ponds and tanks of Pistia markedl reduced the incidence of Mansonia mosquitoes and checked further spread o the infection. Pistia plants can be cheaply and effectively removed by hand Here we have an excellent example of the suppression of a mosquito-borne disease by a strictly limited species control of the carrier.

Loa Loa (Cobbold, 1864) Castellani and Chalmers, 1913

Loa loa is a relatively important filariid species. Infection with it is frequently associated with acute inflammatory responses and transient edematous swelling in various parts of the body, known as "Calabar swellings."

Loa loa is indigenous only in tropical West Africa and along the Congo River and its tributaries. It is noted occasionally in other countries among Europeans and Americans particularly missionaries who have lived for some time in the endemic areas.

The parental worms are parasites of the subcutaneous tissues, particularly of the arms, legs, and head, and have been found in the peritoneum. When fully mature, they characteristically migrate and frequently appear beneath the skin in various parts of the body. Because of this habit they have been observed more often than any other adult filarial species infecting mankind.

The male worm measures from 25 mm. to 35 mm. in length and about 0.35 mm. in breadth. The female varies considerably in length, up to 70 mm., and is about 0.5 mm. in breadth. The average length is about 50 mm. The cuticle is embossed with wart-like projections except at the anterior extremities of both sexes and at the tail of the male, which areas are smooth. The microfilariae show diurnal periodicity, appearing in the morning and disappearing at about 9 o'clock in the evening. They are sheathed forms. In stained films, they appear somewhat stiff and angular, whereas microfilariae of *W. bancrofti* assume more sweeping and graceful curves (Fig. 262).

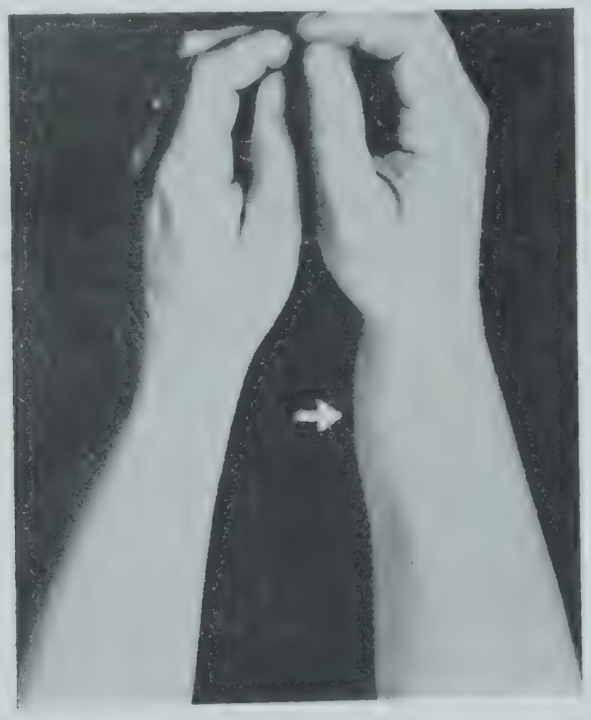


Fig. 269.—Loaiasis. Calabar swelling of right wrist. (From Guy, Cohen, and Jacob, 1943.)

Loa loa is transmitted to man by mangrove flies, *Chrysops dimidiata* and *C. silacea*. The development of the parasite in these hosts is similar to that of other filariid worms.

Development of the worm in man is slow. It has been estimated that the life span of the adult worm is about 15 years. Calabar swellings, which are generally regarded as allergic responses, may reappear for years in the absence of other evidence of loaiasis. Aside from the itching and irritation caused by migrations of the adult worms and the transient subcutaneous swellings, apparently no damage is done and the patient usually enjoys good general health. There is no effective chemotherapy known. The adult parasites may be readily extracted through a small incision when they appear in the conjunctiva.

References

Anderson, J.: 1924. Filariasis in British Guiana, Res. Mem., London School Trop. Med. 5 122 pp.

Auchincloss, Hugh: 1930. A New Operation for Elephantiasis, Puerto Rico J. Pub. Healt & Trop. Med. **6**: 149-150.

Augustine, Donald L.: 1937. Observations on Living "Sheathed" Microfilariae in th Capillary Circulation, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **31**: 55-60.

Augustine, Donald L., Field, Madeleine E., and Drinker, Cecil K.: 1936. Observations on Living Microfilaria Immitis in the Capillary Circulation of Bats, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **30**: 231-232.

Augustine, Donald L., and Lherisson, Camille: 1946. Studies on the Specificity of Intradermal Tests in the Diagnosis of Filariasis, Am. J. Hyg. **43**: 38-40.

Bahr, P. H.: 1912. Filariasis and Elephantiasis in Fiji, J. London School Trop. Med., supp. No. 1, 200 pp.

Bonne, C., Lie Kian, Joe, Molenkamp, W. J. J., and Mreyen, F. W.: 1941. Wuchereria Malayi, Adult Worm of Microfilaria Malayi, Geneesk. tijdschr. v. Nederl.-Indië **81**: 1487-1500.

Bonne, C., Lie Kian, Joe, Molenkamp, W. J. J., and Mreyen, F. W.: 1942. Trop. Dis. Bull. **39**: 184.

Bozicevich, John, and Hutter, A. M.: 1944. Intradermal and Serological Tests With Dirofilaria Immitis Antigen in Cases of Human Filariasis, Am. J. Trop. Med. **24**: 203-208.

Brown, H. W., and Thetford, N. D.: 1946. Further Studies on the Treatment of Filariasis Due to Wuchereria Bancrofti With Lithium Antimony Thiomalate, Am. J. Hyg. **44**: 379-383.

Brug, S. L.: 1927. Een nieuwe Filaria-soort (Filaria malayi), parasiterende bij den Mensch (Voorloopige Mededeeling): Geneesk. tijdschr. v. Nederl.-Indië **5**: 750-754.

Brumpt, Emil: 1936. Précis de parasitologie, ed. 5, Paris, Masson & Cie., 2 vols., 2139 pp.

Brutsaert, Paul: 1944. Personal communication.

Buckley, J. J. C.: 1934. On the Development, in Culicoides Furens Poey, of Filaria (Mansonella) Ozzardi Manson, 1897, J. Helminthol. **12**: 99-118.

Buxton, P. A.: 1928. Researches in Polynesia and Melanesia. An Account of Investigations in Samoa, Tonga, the Ellice Group, and the New Hebrides in 1924, 1925, London School Hyg. and Trop. Med. J. Suppl. 260 pp.

Chabeuf, M.: 1938. La chimiothérapie antistreptococcique dans les "filarioses" lymphatiques au Cameroun, Bull. Soc. path. exot. **31**: 429-436.

Coggeshall, L. T.: 1946. Filariasis in the Service Men, J. A. M. A. **131**: 8-12.

Culbertson, J. T., Rose, H. M., and Oliver-Gonzalez, J.: 1945. The Chemotherapy of Human Filariasis by the Administration of Neostibosan, Second Report, Am. J. Trop. Med. **25**: 403-406.

Daniels, C. W.: 1902. Adult Form of Filaria Demarquaii, J. Trop. Med. **5**: 357-359.

Del Toro, Jorge, Pons, Juan A., and Rodríguez-Molina, R.: 1930. Case Reports on Twelve Auchincloss or Modified Auchincloss Operations for Filariasis, Puerto Rico J. Pub. Health & Trop. Med. **7**: 3-10.

Dickson, J. G., Huntington, R. W., Jr., and Eichold, Samuel: 1943. Filariasis in Defense Force, Samoan Group; Preliminary Report, U. S. Nav. M. Bull. **41**: 1240-1251.

Drinker, C. K., and Homans, J.: 1934. The Experimental Production of Edema and Elephantiasis as a Result of Lymphatic Obstruction, Am. J. Physiol. **108**: 509-520.

Drinker, C. K., Ward, H. K., and Lyons, C.: 1935. Increased Susceptibility to Local Infection Following Blockage of Lymph Drainage, Am. J. Physiol. **112**: 74-81.

Dubruel, C. M. E.: 1909. Contribution à l'étude de l'étiologie de l'elephantiasis arabum, Bull. Soc. path. exot. **2**: 355-359.

Fairley, N. H.: 1931. Serological and Intradermal Tests in Filariasis, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **24**: 635-648.

Feng, Lan-chou: 1931. Filariasis in China With Special Reference to Its Distribution and Transmission, Nat. M. J. China **17**: 464-474.

Fülleborn, F.: 1929. Filariosen des Menschen. In Kolle and Wassermann: Handbuch der pathogenen Mikroorganismen, Jena, Gustav Fischer, pp. 1043-1224.

Glauser, Frank: 1945. Filariasis in Returning Marines, U. S. Nav. M. Bull. **44**: 21-26.

Grace, A. W.: 1943. Tropical Lymphangitis and Abscesses, J. A. M. A. **123**: 462-466.

Guy, W. H., Cohen, Mortimer, and Jacob, F. M.: 1943. Infection With Loa Loa, Arch. Dermat. & Syph. **47**: 763-767.

Hartz, P. H.: 1944. Contribution to the Histopathology of Filariasis, Am. J. Clin. Path. **14**: 34-43.

Hewitt, R. I., White, E., Hewitt, D. B., Hardy, S. M., Wallace, W. S., and Anduze, R.: 1950. The First Year's Results of a Mass Treatment Program With Hetrazan for the Control of Bancroftian Filariasis on St. Coix, American Virgin Islands, Am. J. Trop. Med. **30**: 443-452.

Hillary, W.: 1766. Observations on the Changes of the Air and Concomitant Epidemical Diseases in the Island of Barbados, ed. 2, London, Hawes, 136 pp.

Iyengar, M. O. T.: 1938. Studies on the Epidemiology of Filariasis in Travancore, Indian M. Research Mem. no. 30, pp. 1-179.

King, Boyd G.: 1944. Early Filariasis, Diagnosis and Clinical Findings: A Report of 268 Cases in American Troops, Am. J. Trop. Med. **24**: 285-298.

Knott, James: 1932. Elephantiasis of the Scrotum. Operative Technique, Am. J. Surg. **16**: 78-80.

Knott, James: 1938. Treatment of Filarial Elephantiasis of the Leg by Bandaging, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **32**: 243-252.

Lewis, T. R.: 1879. The Microscopic Organisms Found in the Blood of Man and Animals, and Their Relation to Disease, Calcutta, Govt. Printing Office, 91 pp.

Low, G. C.: 1903. Filaria Perstans, Brit. M. J. **1**: 722-724.

McCoy, O. R.: 1933. The Occurrence of Microfilaria Ozzardi in Panama, Am. J. Trop. Med. **13**: 297-310.

Manson, Patrick: 1903. The Filariae Sanguinis and Filariasis, Tropical Diseases, London, William Wood & Company, pp. 545-604.

Menon, T. B.: 1935. Problems in Filariasis, Maharaja of Travancore Curzon Lectures (1934-1935) (University of Madras), Madras, Thompson & Co., Ltd., 67 pp.

Menon, T. B., Ramamurti, B., and Sundarasiva, Rao D.: 1944. Lizard Filariasis. An Experimental Study, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **37**: 373-386.

Michael, Paul: 1944. Filariasis: Histopathologic Study, U. S. Nav. M. Bull. **45**: 225-236.

Montestruc, E., and Bertrand, Ch.: 1937. Note sur l'étiologie et le traitement de la lymphangite tropicale, Bull. Soc. path. exot. **30**: 695-698.

O'Connor, F. W.: 1923. Researches in the Western Pacific, Res. Mem., London School Trop. Med. **4**: 57 pp.

O'Connor, F. W.: 1932. The Aetiology of the Disease Syndrome in Wuchereria Bancrofti Infections, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **26**: 13-33.

O'Connor, F. W.: 1936. Personal communication.

O'Connor, F. W., and Beatty, H.: 1938. Wuchereria Bancrofti in Mosquitoes of St. Croix, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **31**: 413-430.

O'Connor, F. W., and Hulse, C. R.: 1932. Some Pathological Changes Associated With Wuchereria (Filaria) Bancrofti Infection, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **25**: 445-454.

O'Connor, F. W., and Hulse, C. R.: 1935. Studies in Filariasis, Puerto Rico J. Pub. Health & Trop. Med. **11**: 167-272.

Peel, E., and Chardome: 1946. Note préliminaire. Sur des filaridés de chimpanzés, Pan Paniscus and Pan Satyrus au Congo Belge, Rec. trav. sc. méd. Congo belge **5**: 244-247. Trop. Dis. Bull. **43**: 1159.

Poynton, J. O., and Hodgkin, E. P.: 1938. Endemic Filariasis in the Federated Malay States, Bull. Inst. M. Research, Federated Malay States **1**: 1-67.

Rao, S. S., and Maplestone, P. A.: 1940. The Adult of Microfilaria Malayi Brug, 1927, Indian M. Gaz. **75**: 159-160.

Rodhain, J.: 1938. La pathogénie des filarioses humaines. Acta Tertii de Tropicis Atque Malariae Morbis, Amstelodami, Pars I, pp. 205-217.

Romiti, Cesare: 1930. Contributo al trattamento chirurgico della elefontiasi dello scroto (con la discrizione della tecnica personale di resezione plastica adottata), Rassegna internaz. di clin. e terap., 24 pp.

Santiago-Stevenson, D., Oliver González, J., and Hewitt, Reginald I.: 1947. Treatment of Filariasis Bancrofti With 1-Diethylcarbamyl-4-Methylpiperazine Hydrochloride ("Hetrazan"), J. A. M. A. **135**: 708-712.

Saunders, George M., Bianco, Anthony A., and Jordan, William S.: 1946. Intradermal Tests With "Dirofilaria Immitis" Antigen as a Diagnostic Aid in Human Filariasis, U. S. Nav. M. Bull. **46**: 1242-1253.

Sharp, N. A. Dyce: 1928. Filariasis in the Cameroon, With Special Reference to Skin Infections With Microfilaria, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **21**: 413-416.

Sharp, N. A. Dyce: 1928. Filaria Perstans; Its Development in Culicoides Austeni, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **21**: 371-396.

Sweet, W. C., and Pillai, V. M.: 1937. Clearance of Pistia Stratiotes as a Control Measure for Filaria Malayi Infection, Indian M. Gaz. **72**: 730-734.

Taliaferro, W. H., and Hoffman, W. A.: 1930. Skin Reactions to Dirofilaria Immitis in Persons Infected With Wuchereria bancrofti, J. Prev. Med. **4**: 261-280.

Torgerson, William R.: 1930. Preliminary Report on the Auchincloss Operation for El phantiasis, Puerto Rico J. Pub. Health & Trop. Med. **6**: 411-418.

van den Berghe, L.: 1946. Personal communication.

Webster, E. H.: 1946. Filariasis Among White Immigrants in Samoa, U. S. Nav. M Bull. **46**: 186-192.

Wright, W. H., and Murdock, J. R.: 1944. Intradermal Reactions Following the Use o Dirofilaria Immitis Antigen in Persons Infected With Onchocerca Volvulus, Am J. Trop. Med. **24**: 199-202.

Zeligs, M. A.: 1945. Psychosomatic Aspects of Filariasis. Present Day Evolution J. A. M. A. **128**: 1139-1142.

Zuckermann, Sam Stuart, and Hibbard, James S.: 1945. Clinicopathologic Study of Earl Filariasis With Lymph Node Biopsies U. S. Nav. M. Bull. **44**: 27-36.

CHAPTER 40

ONCHOCERCIASIS

Luis Benitez Soto and Amelia Sámano Bishop

CAUSAL AGENT

Onchocerca Volvulus Leuckart 1893

Synonyms.—*Microfilaria nuda* Rodenwaldt 1914; *Onchocerca volvulus caecutiens* Brumpt 1919.

Onchocerciasis is caused by the filarial worm *Onchocerca volvulus* Leuckart. Several species of simuliid flies play a part in the transmission of the disease.

HISTORY

Onchocerca volvulus Leuckart was first described by Leuckart in 1893; he found the parasite in a native of the Gold Coast, Africa. Blacklock, in 1926, observed the metamorphosis of the larval forms in the African vector *Simulium damnosum* and also found the larvae in the skin of African natives. In America, Robles, in 1915, found the filariae in onchocercomas of the scalp in inhabitants of the Pacific slopes. Hoffmann, in 1930, for the first time traced the development of the microfilariae in *S. callidum*. Ochoterena (1930) demonstrated the microfilariae in an eye excised from a blind patient.

Manifestations of American onchocerciasis were described by several investigators. Brumpt (1919) considered the American filaria a new species because of the slight variations in the size of the males, the arrangement of the papillae, and the distribution of the onchocercomas in the body. The observations of Sandground (1934), Fülleborn, and others, and more recent studies of Caballero (1945), have definitely shown that the African and American parasites belong to the same species.*

MORPHOLOGY OF THE ADULT PARASITE

The worms are opalescent, white, with transverse striations and annular thickenings; head bluntly rounded; alimentary canal straight, with subterminal anus. The tail of the male is markedly curved and has a slightly bulbous end; perianal and caudal papillae in variable numbers; spicules unequal. The posterior end of the female is bluntly rounded; vulva at the anterior part of the body, at times postesophageal. This species is viviparous.

THE MICROFILARIAE

The microfilariae vary in size. There are small and large forms. The small forms are 0.15 to 0.287 mm. in length by 5 to 7 microns in breadth; the large forms are 0.285 to 0.360 mm. in length by 6 to 9 microns in breadth according to some authors. The anterior end is enlarged and bluntly rounded; posterior end abruptly narrowed with sharply curved extremity; no cells with deeply staining nuclei in the terminal part of the body. The microfilariae show coiling or twisting movements.

---

*Editor's note (R. B. H. G.): The first case of onchocerciasis was found in Venezuela by Potenza in 1948. Later, the same author in collaboration with Gonzalez, Vogselsang, Anduze, and Torres published the results of their studies which were made to determine the epidemiologic characteristics of this disease. In a not yet limited zone corresponding to the states of Monagas and Sucre there was a global infestation of 24.6 per cent. In this zone simuliids that transmit the disease have been found.

Biologic Characteristics

The adult *Onchocerca volvulus* lives in the encapsulated onchocercoma located in the subcutaneous tissues of the body. Within such lesions the parasites are found intricately coiled. They give rise to microfilariae which find their way into the skin. It is not unusual to find more than one male worm associated with one female in a solitary nodule (Sandground, 1938).

The microfilariae are found free in the connective and subcutaneous tissue, in the lymph spaces, in all parts of the eye, particularly in the superficial layers of the cornea, and only accidentally in the deeper parts of the body.

The size of the adult specimens is variable, from 100 mm. to 700 mm. long according to several authors.

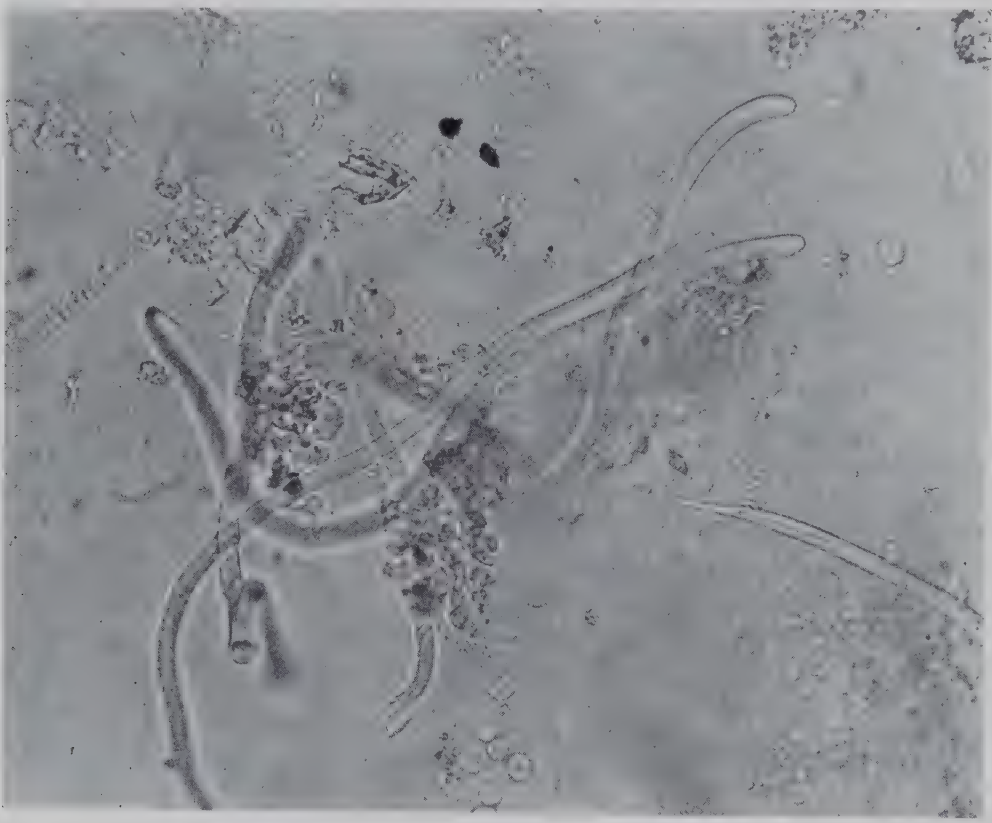


Fig. 270.—Microfilariae from the lymphatic spaces of the skin.

HOST

Onchocerca volvulus has only one definitive host—man. The intermediate hosts are *Simulium ochraceum*, *S. callidum*, *S. metallicum* in America, and *S. damnosum* and *S. neavei* in Africa.

LIFE CYCLE

The ovoid or elliptical eggs develop in the uterus of the filarial worm and contain an embryo. When the larvae reach maturity, they are released in great numbers. At this time they migrate to the subcutaneous tissue, through the intercellular spaces.

Infection of the flies takes place through contamination of the biting parts. The route of migration of the infective larvae in the insect is largely conjectural (Sandground, 1938).

Hoffmann (1930) traced the development of microfilariae in *S. callidum* and showed that the larvae, 68 hours after being ingested by the fly, had developed into sausage shape. He divided the development cycle into 4 stages: first, passage of microfilariae to the stomach and then to the thoracic muscles of the fly; second, the shortening process; third, the "sausage shape"; and fourth, the development into a mature worm-like larva.

The microfilariae develop especially in the dorsoventral muscles of the fly (Vargas, 1942), and during their growth one or more ecdyses probably take place (Blacklock, 1926). The infective forms of microfilariae are found in the head of the fly after a period of 10 days or longer.

VECTORS

There are 5 species of simuliid flies involved in the transmission of American and African onchocerciasis: *Simulium metallicum* Bellardi 1859, *S. callidum* Dyar and Shannon 1927, *S. ochraceum* Walker 1860, and *S. nearei* Roubaud 1915, in Africa, and *S. damnosum*.

Robles (1919) in America and Dry (1922) in Africa alluded to the possibility of a Simulium as transmitter of onchocerciasis. In 1926, Blacklock, in Sierra Leone, observed the metamorphosis of the larvae of *O. volvulus* in the transmitter *S. damnosum* and reported the presence of microfilariae in the intestine of the fly. Later (1930), he found the microfilariae in the thorax of flies which had previously bitten diseased natives.

In America, Hoffmann (1930) showed the occurrence of microfilariae in the stomachs of *S. callidum* and *S. ochraceum*. A short time later, Hoffmann was able to observe localization of the larvae in the thoracic muscles of both species. Bequaert (1928) in Liberia, confirmed the observations of Blacklock; and Hissette (1932), in the Belgian Congo, found the stages of development in *S. damnosum* and in *S. nearei*. Strong (1931), in America, verified Hoffmann's findings.

Flies of the genus Simulium are commonly known as "jejenes" in Mexico, Central America, and Argentina. Under this name some other groups are also included (Vargas, 1945), such as Ceratopogoninae and Phlebotomus. In the onchocercal regions of Chiapas (Mexico), the transmitters are known as "moscos alazanes" or "moscos de café." In the United States, they are usually called "buffalo flies," "black flies," or "turkey gnats," and in Central Africa, "jinja."

Habitat of the Vector

According to Hoffmann, the African and American transmitters differ little in their biologic manifestations. The American vector insects are adapted to the damp, hot weather of the virgin forests where they seem to seek shelter in shady places. They live at altitudes of 2,000 to 4,500 feet above sea level.

The adult flies leave the forest very early in the morning and migrate to the less dense woods near the farms. In these early morning hours the Simulium bites the upper part of the body (Hoffmann). Later, when the sun rays are very intense, the black flies take refuge in shady places in coffee plantations and neighboring forests. At this time the females seek the moisture of the ground, so that workers in plantations are frequently bitten on the legs (Hoffmann, 1931).

It becomes apparent that not all species of the Simulium attack the same regions of the human body: *S. ochraceum* bites principally the head and *S. metallicum* and *S. callidum* the lower parts of the body. These vectors persist throughout the entire year but are more abundant from September to January or February.

The African species *S. damnosum* and *S. nearei* live at elevations of 1,000 to 1,500 feet above sea level. They are chiefly confined to hilly countries covered with grass and bushes near streams and rivers.

Blacklock (1926) stated that the Simuliidae do not bite earlier than 6:00 A.M., and that in the middle of the day the fly would not go far in order to bite, not even 5 yards as a rule. The flies were found biting, however, in bright sunny weather at any hour of the day, provided they had only a yard or two to go from their shelter. On dull or cloudy days without rain, they bite freely at any hour of the day. The flies especially choose shaded portions of the legs, and if the shade afforded by the long grass is favorable, they attack the face, neck, an shoulders. As a rule the bite is low on the body, mostly below the knees, in Africa, becau of the scarcity of overhead shade.

Morphology of the Vectors

The Genus Simulium.—The Simuliidae are 1 to 6 mm. in length, have a stout bod and short legs. The mouth parts are formed for piercing and sucking. The thorax has characteristic "humped" appearance. The head has 11 jointed antennae with hairs; palp are 4-jointed.

The eyes are contiguous in the male and distinctly separated in the female. Wings ar broad and iridescent, with well-developed veins; legs with hind basitarsus produced apically second hind tarsus with dorsal incision.

Life Cycle of the Vectors

Oviposition and Eggs.—It has been found that only the female flies attack man. A blood meal appears to be a necessary factor in the development of the ova (Jobbins-Pomercy, 1916; Wu, 1931; and Cameron, 1922). At least 2 days must elapse after the blood meal before the development of the egg begins. When the females are ready to lay their eggs, in favorable weather in the evenings or before sunset, they gather in large swarms and fly toward the breeding places.

The larvae of the Simuliidae can usually be recognized by the bending of the body in a "U" or "J" shape when drawn aside from the water (O'Kane, 1926). An ideal breeding place for the larvae of the pupae is in streams with rocky bottoms and abundant aquatic vegetation (Vargas, 1945). When the larvae are ready to pupate, they seek protected places such as the underside of stones, stems, and leaves.

The duration of the larval period of the Simuliidae varies widely in some species: 4 to 7 weeks. During this time the larvae undergo 6 molts.

Puppation takes place in the larval habitat. The larvae spin their silken cocoons, which are conical, shaped like an open pocket, or boat-shaped, as in *S. damnosum.* The cocoons are flat on the attached side and convex on the free surface.

The species can be easily recognized by dissection of the mature pupa (Hoffmann, 1931). The color of the legs is almost characteristic in the case of *S. metallicum* and *S. callidum;* in *S. ochraceum* the specific black color appears rather late. Hoffmann (1931) and Edwards (1939) consider the structure of the respiratory organs to be of diagnostic value. *S. ochraceum* and *S. callidum* are provided with respiratory appendages with 8 lobes; *S. damnosum* with 11 short, thick, and very unequal lobes; and *S. metallicum* presents a respiratory organ with just 6 long branches arising from 3 main stems, each of which divides into 2 simple branches.

The pupal period varies according to the different species and the weather; it is longer in cooler weather and generally takes 3 to 7 days.

The duration of the life cycle varies according to the different species of Simuliidae and to the altitude. The observations of several investigators have shown that it varies from 3 to 15 weeks (Needham, 1901; Verdat; Johnsen, 1903; Jobbins-Pomeroy, 1916; Emery, 1914). Vargas (1945) has obtained development of several species, among them *S. callidum* and *S. metallicum,* at a water temperature of 14° C.; the time required for the entire cycle was 3 weeks.

Mechanism of Transmission

It has been suggested (Vargas, 1942) that when the insect introduces the mouth parts into the skin, the fly injects a certain amount of saliva that exerts a chemotactic influence, causing a concentration of the microfilariae near the surface of the skin for as long as 18 minutes while the Simulium ingests numerous microfilariae.

The microfilariae reach the alimentary canal of the fly and then migrate to the thoracic muscles, where further development takes place into infective forms, which then go to the head and finally to the labial structures to escape when the insects bite human beings.

The bites of the different black flies vary in severity. Gibbins (1938) considers that the bite of *S. damnosum* is perhaps the most severe. Balfour (1906) states that "the insect bites fiercely and is a veritable terror in certain parts of the Sudan." The bite of the American transmitter *S. ochraceum* does not seem to be very annoying from the beginning of the attack. The bites of *S. callidum* and *S. metallicum* are very painful. Subsequently a papular lesion develops, followed by edema, pruritus, and hemorrhage which may last for several days.

The effects of the bites vary according to individual susceptibility; sometimes the lesions may cause fever.

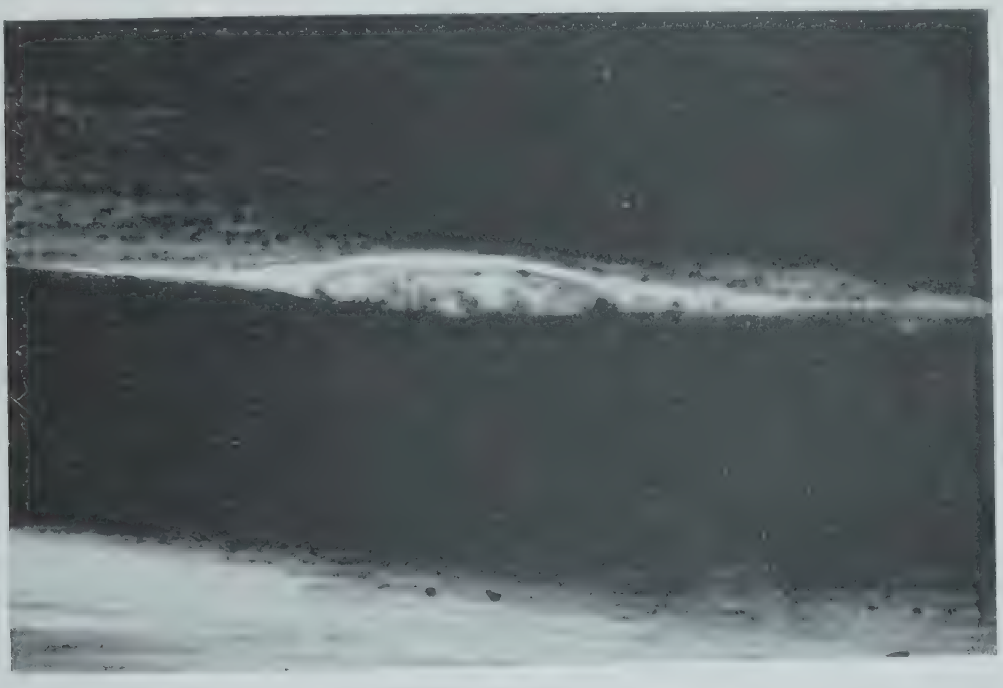


Fig. 271.—"Sausage" stage of a microfilaria in the thoracic muscles of a fly. (After Hoffmann.)

CLINICAL SYMPTOMS

The adult *O. volvulus* or the microfilariae produce in the human organism a number of clinical manifestations which have received the name "onchocerciasis." The most frequent manifestations occur in the skin and in the eyes, and these make up the most characteristic objective signs of the disease (Benitez Soto, 1936).

Onset

It is very difficult to recognize the beginning of the disease because the precise moment of the bite of the infective fly is not known.

Robles (1919) considered the incubation period to be about 3 months, including the appearing of the onchocercoma and the other manifestations. He based his opinion on observations of people who had come from uninfested places and had established quarters in onchocercal regions, and who showed characteristic manifestations 3 months after arrival. Hoffmann and Vargas (1931) believe that onchocercomas appear 8 or 9 months after the infection. These authors base their opinion on finding such lesions in children 9 months after birth. They were also able to observe the clinical manifestations which appeared within the first year of the development of the disease at a coffee plantation, recently invaded. Stron et al. (1934) observed lesions in 4 children less than 10 months old.

The incubation period may be considered as between 3 and 9 months.

Cutaneous Lesions

The following cutaneous lesions have been described in American an African onchocerciasis: onchocercoma, mal morado, "erisipela de la costa," edema, elephantiasis, pruriginous and xerodermatous conditions of the skin. The latter were mentioned by Strong (1938) especially among diseased individuals from the Province of Lusambo, but we have also observed them in America.

Onchocercoma

Basing his opinion on the evidently granulomatous histologic structure of the lesions, Benitez Soto (1936) proposed the name "onchocercoma" for the cutaneous lesions which had formerly been called by other workers "cysts," "tumors," "nodules," or "fibromata."

Location of the Onchocercoma.—The location of the onchocercoma varies according to the geographic regions. Generally, in Africa, the lesions are situated on the trunk.

Appelmans (1935) states that in the Belgian Congo onchocercomas are frequently found near the costal region, the scapula, shoulders, iliac crests, knees, and elbows.

In America, these onchocercomas are found especially on the head. Strong (1938) mentions Blacklock's findings in Africa of 8 patients who had the onchocercoma on the head, but this was exceptional.

In 95 per cent of African cases of onchocerciasis, the onchocercomas are situated on any part of the body, but not on the head, according to several investigators mentioned by Strong.

In Guatemala, Robles (1919) found 99 per cent of the cases of onchocercoma localized on the head.

Benitez Soto, in 1945, at the hospital in Huixtla, Mexico, found that of 23 patients with onchocerciasis, 22 had numerous onchocercomas on the head, and the only one who had no lesions had mal morado. In other words, of 22 patients observed at random, all either had or had had onchocercomas on the head, with or without other lesions on the trunk and extremities; that is, 100 per cent of the cases of onchocercoma showed cephalic localization.

Finally, in African onchocerciasis, in the majority of cases the situation of the onchocercoma is not cephalic, as opposed to the American which localizes principally on the head.

In American onchocerciasis, the cephalic onchocercomas show some predilection for temporal, parietal, and occipital regions, and certain cases prefer also the anterior and superior iliac spine.

Cause of the Location of the Onchocercoma.—It has been said that the location of the onchocercoma depends upon the site of the bite of the fly as assumed from the observations of Blacklock in Africa (cited by Strong et al., 1934) and of Hoffmann (1930) in America. Benitez Soto (1938) at that time believed that it is not possible to give a satisfactory explanation regarding the cause of the location of such onchocercomas.

Number.—Although the cause of the location of the onchocercomas is still an unsolved question, this is not so of their number, both in African and in American onchocerciasis. Strong (1938) states that in Guatemala, Mexico, Sierra Leone, Liberia, and parts of the Belgian Congo, the number of onchocercomas generally varies from 1 or 2 up to 5 or 6, although cases have been found with as many as 26 and 150 onchocercomas and with as few as only 1.

Robles (1919), in Guatemala, reported that the number of onchocercomas may vary from 1 to 17 and considered the presence of only 1 as very rare.

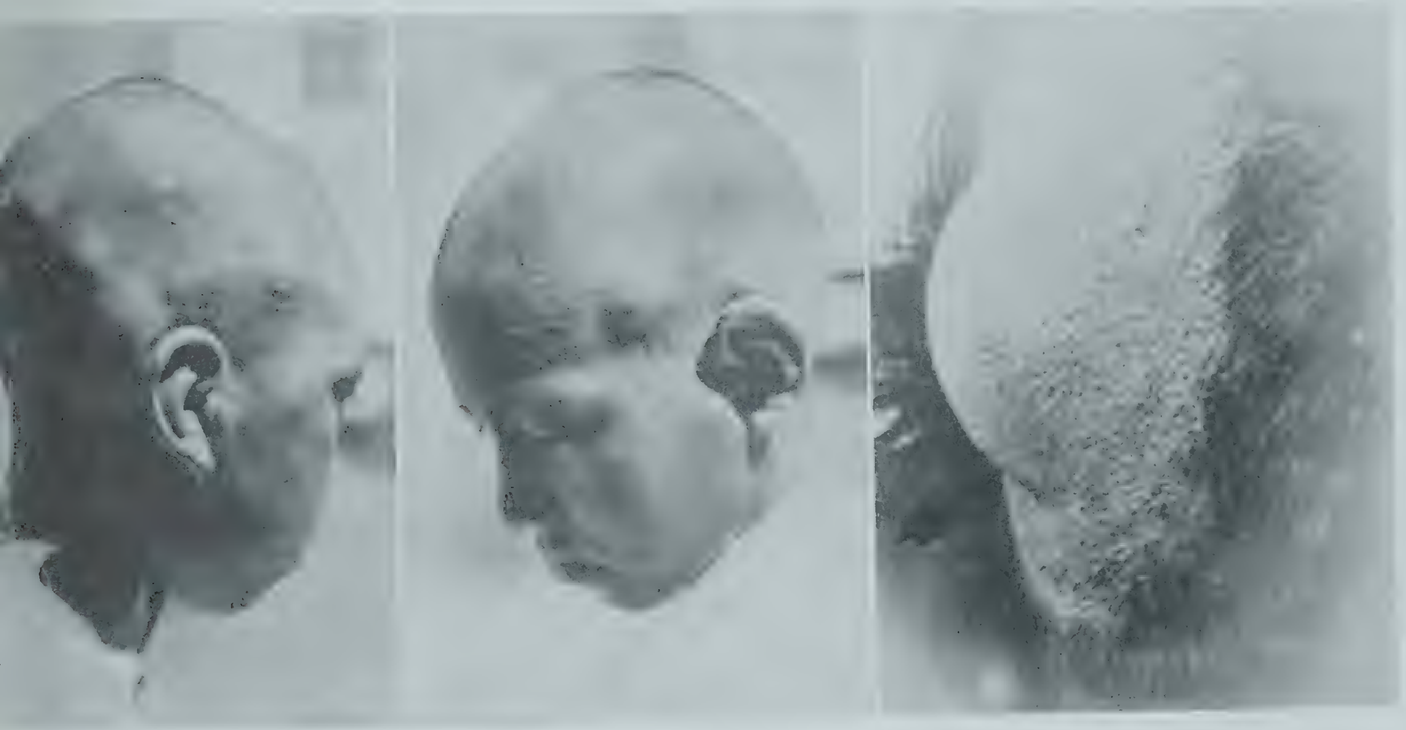


Fig. 272.—Cephalic onchocercoma.

Benitez Soto (1945) showed the exceptional finding of 1 onchocercoma and the frequency of multiple onchocercomas, varying in these cases from 4 to 8. We call attention to the fact that patients often presented a certain number of onchocercomas which were surgically removed. A short time later, new onchocercomas appeared, and these were also removed; the sum is estimated in these data.

Strong (1938) believed that the great variation in the number of onchocercomas in different localities might have been partially explained on the basis of the number of times that the individual had been bitten by the infected Simulium.

It is important to point out the lack of absolute symmetry in the location of the onchocercomas, a fact that Robles (1919) had already observed; he stated that the lesions are distributed at random.

Size.—Darriba (1935) believes that the onchocercoma is generally a li tle larger in African onchocerciasis than in the American type. Benitez So (1936) stated that the size of the onchocercoma of American onchocerciasis variable and commonly proportional to its age.

Some onchocercomas vary in size from several millimeters to that of pigeon egg. Appelmans (1935) calls attention to the fact that these very sma onchocercomas might be overlooked by the physician.

Shape.—The shape is usually globulose according to Benitez Soto, wit slight modifications—ovoid, moniliform, and pear-shaped. This author considers such modifications to be due to mechanical action caused by hardness o the anatomic parts with which they come in contact.

Color.—The color is uniformly pinkish-white.

Hardness.—Onchocercomas are very hard, almost cartilaginous in som cases, with the appearance of exostosis, especially when they are not movable Appelmans (1935), in Leopoldville, found onchocercomas so hard that they simulated juxta-articular nodules.

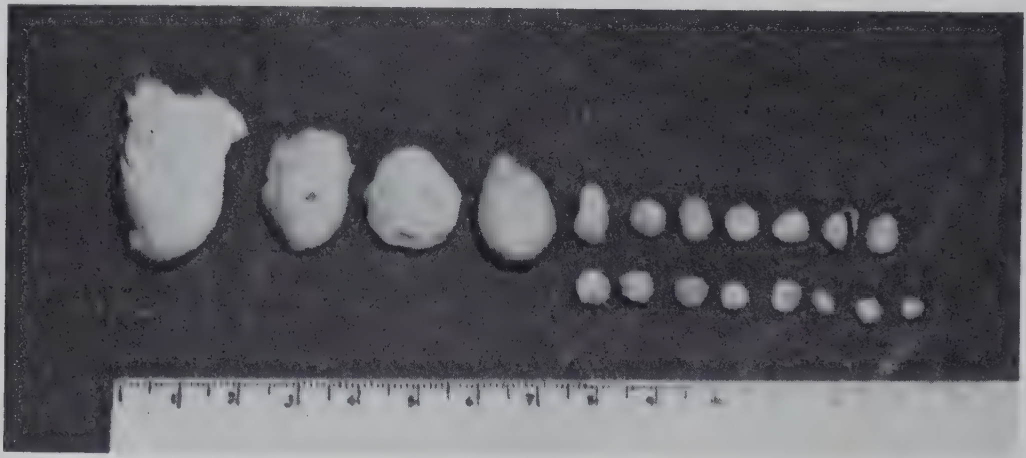


Fig. 273.—Different sizes of onchocercomas.

Mobility.—Mobility varies, but commonly they are only slightly movable. In some sites the limited mobility and the situation near an osseous plane may cause them to resemble exostoses.

Sensitiveness.—Both American and African types are genuinely painless.

Appearance of the Sections.—Thin sections present a characteristic aspect (Benitez Soto, 1936), which consists of the presence of bands and empty elliptical, circular, or irregular spaces.

Mal Morado

The name "mal morado" is given to a number of cutaneous manifestations with chronic evolution caused by the *O. volvulus.* Robles (1919) described such chronic states of the disease, emphasizing the "absolutely typical livid greenish color" of the face.

Fülleborn (1923), in examining a boy in Hamburg who had come from the onchocercal region of Mexico, found in the skin a blue-greenish spot and discrete edema. In fact, there are 2 principal symptoms of this syndrome, a violaceous-green color, sometimes light, and a discrete hard edema of the skin which gives it a glossy aspect.

Benitez Soto has observed that these symptoms are present in children as well as in adults, and are the same for men and women, but that they generally occur in the white race.

The location of the disturbance is more evident in the face and neck than in other parts of the body. Sometimes the palpebral regions swell so that a patient can hardly open the eyes. In other cases the edema is marked in the auricle.

In the more typical forms the swelling is hard, especially about the face. The eyelids, the ears, and the cheeks become thicker, the skin appearing tense and glossy. Some deformity of the auricle might take place, but the interesting disturbance is the green-violaceous color of the affected regions. This color is not so intense as to be noticed immediately but is seen upon careful observation, and occasionally it is associated with urticaria.

The cutaneous disturbances are modified after some time by complications due to scratching.

Investigations show microfilariae in the skin of these parts. Histologic study reveals in them a discrete lympho-plasmocytic infiltration with some eosinophiles.

There is as yet no satisfactory explanation of the color of the skin edema of mal morado.

''Erisipela de la Costa''

Robles (1919) gave the name ''erisipela de la costa'' to an acute condition of the disease characterized by edema of the face and neck, marked edema of the eyelids and lips, red tense skin, shiny and painful, in association with a rise in temperature of 39° to 40° C., prostration, convulsions, and delirium. Similar symptoms have been described for the extremities. The description given by Robles is of an infectious type of erysipelas, and several authors have questioned the filarial origin; they have suggested that this is an allergic phenomenon or a real erysipelas caused by scratching the skin, with a resultant secondary streptococcus infection of the skin leading to the typical erysipelatous lymphangitis. This opinion seems to be correct, because no typical cases of ''erisipela de la costa'' actually associated with onchocerciasis have been found.

In short, lesions described as an acute condition of the disease, and called ''erisipela de la costa,'' have not proved to be of onchocercal origin, and it has been suggested that these are allergic or infectious conditions, the latter produced by a streptococcus.

Xerodermatous Conditions

According to Strong (1938), xerodermatous conditions are more common in African than in American onchocerciasis. They are more frequent and more marked in cases of repeated edema, especially in old cases. Benitez Soto has

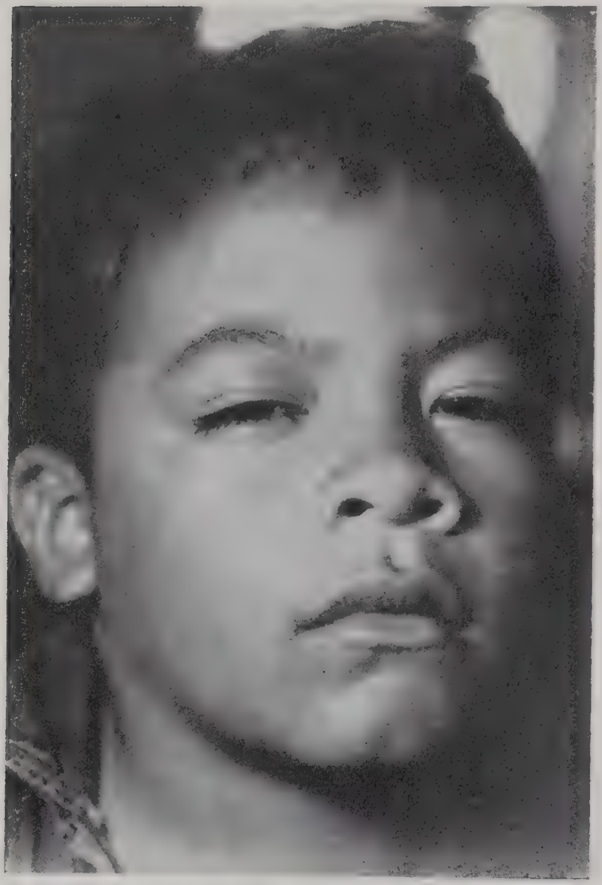


Fig. 274.—Discrete edema especially in the cheeks and eyelids.

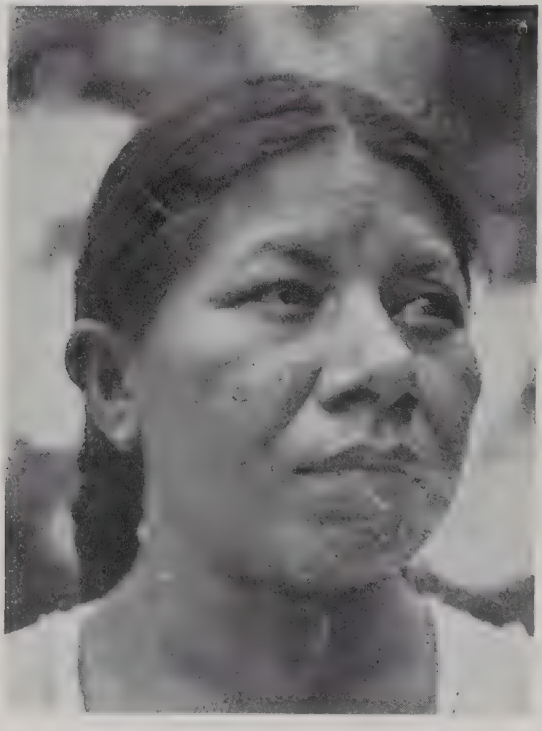


Fig. 275.—Edema of the face, eyelids, and neck, glossy and tense skin. These symptoms had been attributed to "erisipela de la costa."

observed them particularly in the faces and in the auricles in Mexican patients. The symptoms are dense swelling, an indurated edema of the skin, reddish-brown color, and marked deformity of the auricles as well as desquamation of the horny layer of the skin. Microscopic examination of sections of the skin reveals slight perivascular infiltration with lymphocytes and eosinophiles. It is thought that the degree of infection and the susceptibility to the products of metabolism of the filarial worms, their movements, and the secondary infection produced by scratching might be the origin of such manifestations. We believe that certain anatomic conditions should be considered, such as the looseness of the connective tissue (predilection for the auricles) and the ease with which they can be violently scratched.

Pruriginous Conditions

Pruriginous or xerodermatous conditions (Strong, 1938) are more common in Africa than in America; they consist of slight induration of more or less wide areas, sometimes a little dark, and the intense prurigo. Microfilariae have been found in such areas, and it has been suggested that the pruriginous conditions are the result of an allergic condition.

Edema

We have pointed out the presence of certain swellings, particularly of the face and ears, in "erisipela de la costa" and in mal morado. Now we must describe a chronic edematous condition with thickened skin and face, slight induration, painless, and creased. This edema gives to the face a certain appearance which some physicians have called "facies onchocercosa." This designation is not proper, because not all the patients show it, and furthermore it is rare. These parts of the skin always present microfilariae.

Elephantiasis and Hydrocele

Laigret, Chesterman, Dejou, and other authors (quoted by Strong) have reported elephantiasis and hydrocele in African onchocerciasis caused by *Onchocerca volvulus;* this finding has not been confirmed in Mexico.

Ocular Lesions

A brief revision of the historical accounts regarding the eye complication in onchocerciasis shows that Robles (1916) was the first to report them in Guatemala. Calderón (1917) and Pacheco Luna (1919) reported further observations derived from their studies in the same country. Brumpt (1919), according to Hissette (1932), created the species *O. volvulus caecutiens,* being impressed by Robles' description of the ocular disturbances which are frequently associated with onchocerciasis in America. Thus African and American onchocerciases were believed, at that time, to be different. Further studies, among which are those of Hissette (1932), showed that ocular disturbances were also frequent in human African onchocerciasis. This finding, added to the fact that the African *O. volvulus* is morphologically identical with the American form (Caballero, 1945), affords sufficient basis to affirm that the 2 organisms are in reality only 1 species—*O. volvulus.*

Fülleborn and Zschuke (cited by Hissette, 1924, 1926) did not find a large number of severe ocular complications in the highly infected regions of Guatemala.

Muñoz Ochoa (cited by Hoffmann, 1925) says, with regard to Mexican onchocerciasi "the patient attacked by the filarial worm gradually loses his sight"; further, "the mai disturbances are in the vision, and at the end of the disease the patient becomes blind. Larumbe (1928) reports some disturbances that he observed; Pardo (1927) doubts whethe ocular disturbances may suddenly cease after the removal of the onchocercoma. In 193 Silva published an article concerning the study, in 1925, of a patient from Guatemala wh was afflicted with ocular disturbances. Silva was able to see, in the vitreous body, a parasit that he thought was a filaria.

Torroella (1931) clearly observed the living microfilariae in the cornea and anterio chamber. Ochoterena (1930) described the eye lesions and reported the presence of microfilariae in sections of the organ.

Later, Strong (1931) also described microfilariae in the eye. In 1932 Hissette presented detailed clinical descriptions of eye disturbances in African onchocerciasis. In 193 Applemans reported the uniform distribution of microfilariae through the uveal tract. Hissett (1932) stressed the remarkable frequency of ocular complications in numerous African regions.

Torres Estrada (1942) suggested the possibility of observing microfilariae in the vitreous body by direct ophthalmoscopy.

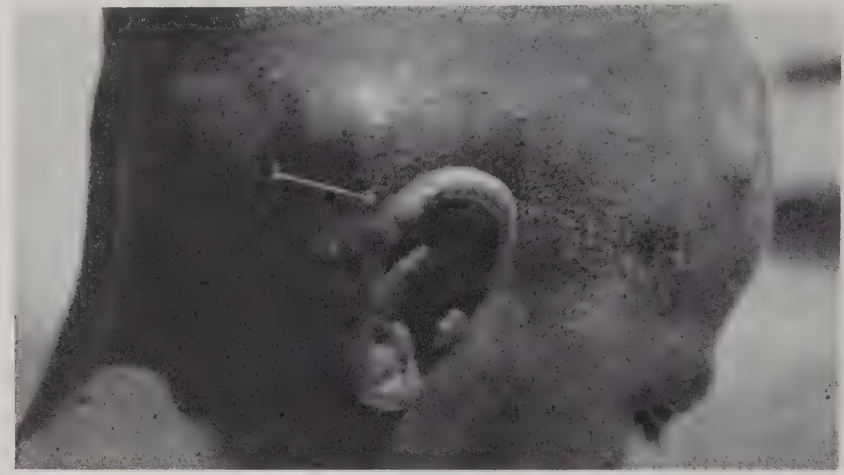


Fig. 276.—The arrow shows the xerodermatous auricle.

Fonte Barcena (1945) described the conjunctival syndrome, and the same author, with Puig and Quiróz (1945), reported the results of their ophthalmologic investigations carried out in the onchocercal region of Chiapas. Puig (1946) published an article with further details of the former work.

The Onset.—According to Hissette, onset is slow and occurs late in African onchocerciasis. On the contrary, Torroella (1931) considers that the onset is rapid in American onchocerciasis. The same authors state that the most characteristic phenomenon at the beginning of the disturbance consists of pain very much like the piercing of a pin, increasing during the day, especially during the hours of most intense light.

Incidence and Other General Characteristics.—There was a time when it was thought that ocular lesions were predominant in American onchocerciasis. Numerous investigators have demonstrated that ocular lesions also occur in African onchocerciasis. The authorities have not come to a common accord regarding the percentage of such lesions in onchocercal patients. D'Hooghe

(1935) reported 12.1 per cent; Hissette (1938) found them very prevalent; Giaquinto Mira, Diaz, and Estevez in Guatemala found about 40 per cent of ocular lesions.

Fülleborn (1931), in Guatemala, noted very rare eye disturbances. Mühlens (1932), at La Granja, Mexico, found that 10 to 20 per cent of the patients had ocular disturbances. Strong et al. (1934), in Guatemala, found 5 per cent of cases; Hissette, in Hebbo, and Puig, Fonte Quiróz (1945), in the onchocercal region of Huixtla, Mexico, found—in only a few observations—75 per cent of the same disturbances.

Finally, ocular disturbances are prevalent in both African and American onchocerciasis and vary in proportion according to the observers.

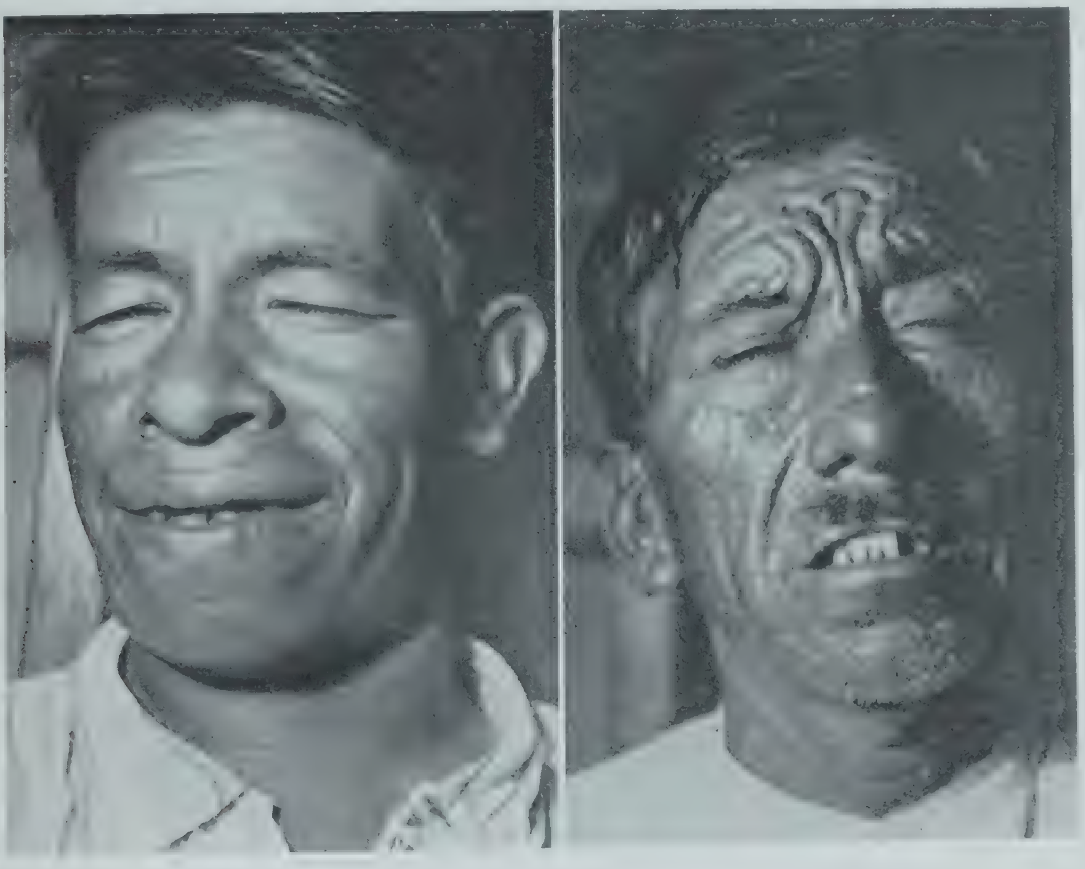


Fig. 277.—"Facies" improperly called "facies onchocercosa."

According to Figueroa Ortiz and co-workers, of 22,580 patients, 8,083 suffered from ocular disturbances, which is 33.88 per cent, a very high percentage. In spite of the high percentage of eye disturbances, the scarcity of blindness is striking. Among the same 8,083 patients, 104, or 1.28 per cent, were blind.

The time between the onset of the disease and the beginning of ocular lesions, according to Hissette (1938), is short; according to Puig, Fonte Barcena, and Quiróz (1945), it is 7 or 9 years.

Clinical Manifestations.—Appelmans (1935) divides the clinical manifestations into 3 stages: (1) keratoconjunctivitis, not suppurative, and scleritis; (2) uveitis (plastic iritis, sometimes associated with cyclitis and choroiditis); and (3) blindness. We prefer to consider these from the point of view of the

anatomic location of the lesions, for we believe that it is somewhat artifi
to divide them into stages, because ocular manifestations have no regular
methodical development.

Keratoconjunctivitis and Scleritis: The patients complain of photophobi
epiphora, burning sensations, or of foreign bodies. Objectively it is possible
perceive blepharospasm, punctate keratitis, corneal and conjunctival vasc
larization, edema, and conjunctival pigmentation.

The photophobia is more marked during the hours of increasing sunligh
at midday, and is quite variable from one patient to another.

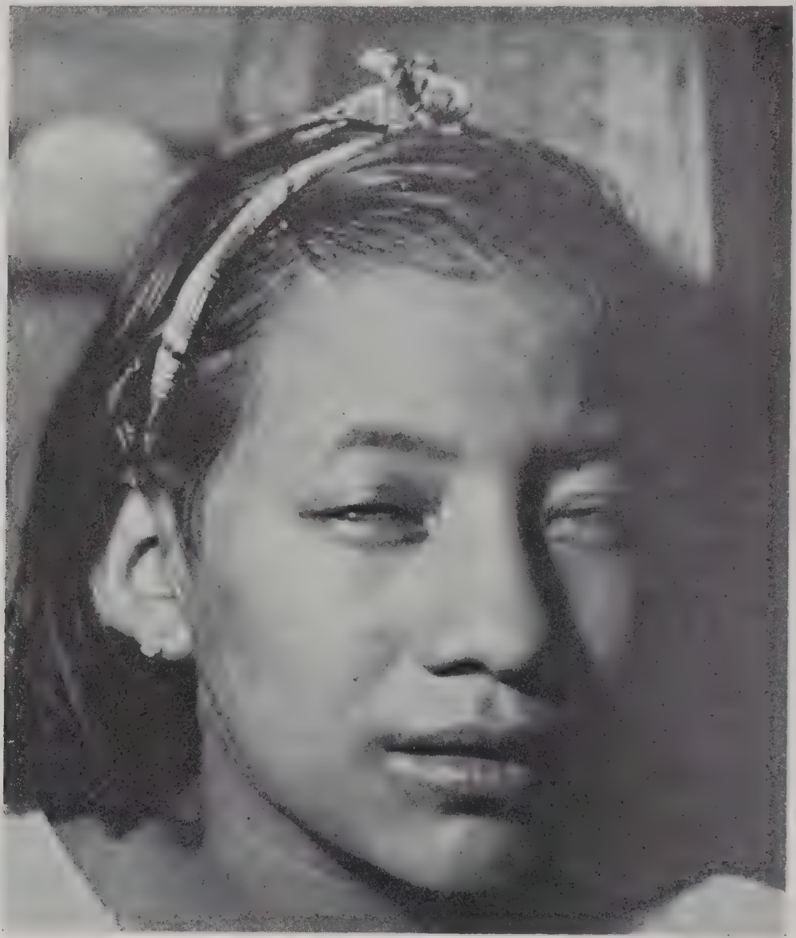


Fig. 278.—Blepharospasm due to ocular onchocercal lesions.

Epiphora: Epiphora is a consequence of disturbances in the anterior chamber and is also variable in intensity. The burning sensation and sensation of a foreign body are due to the inflammatory process and to the presence of microfilariae in the eye. A slight or marked blepharospasm is sometimes observed, especially during examination of the eye.

Punctate keratitis is characterized by the presence of numerous punctations or round infiltrations about the superficial corneal margin, which progress to the center, while the oldest become vascularized. As a result of the corneal infiltration, the peripheral vascularization of the cornea at the place of greater disturbance, which is generally discrete, sometimes gives rise to superficial vessels, the "onchocercal pannus" of Hissette (1938). It may be so marked in the conjunctiva that it can present a triangular-shaped sclerocorneal base with the vertex toward the palpebral fissure, pale reddish in color, more or less corresponding to the horizontal meridian of the eye.

Fonte Barcena (1945) reports conjunctival pigmentation, but this feature has not been frequently described. This phenomenon is characterized by the brown color taken by the conjunctiva, especially at the triangular region of vascularization. Fonte Barcena (1945) states that the combination of the red color of the blood vessels and the brown pigment constitute the characteristic "marron" color of the onchocercal eyes. Benitez Soto has seen patients with these symptoms; he considers that the "marron" shade is just a shade of brown. The edema about the conjunctiva is not well marked and generally it is of little importance as a symptom of onchocerciasis. Appelmans (1935) reported a deep congestion at the level of the limbus, which is spread to the equator of the ocular globe as the sclerotic process is touched by the inflammatory process.

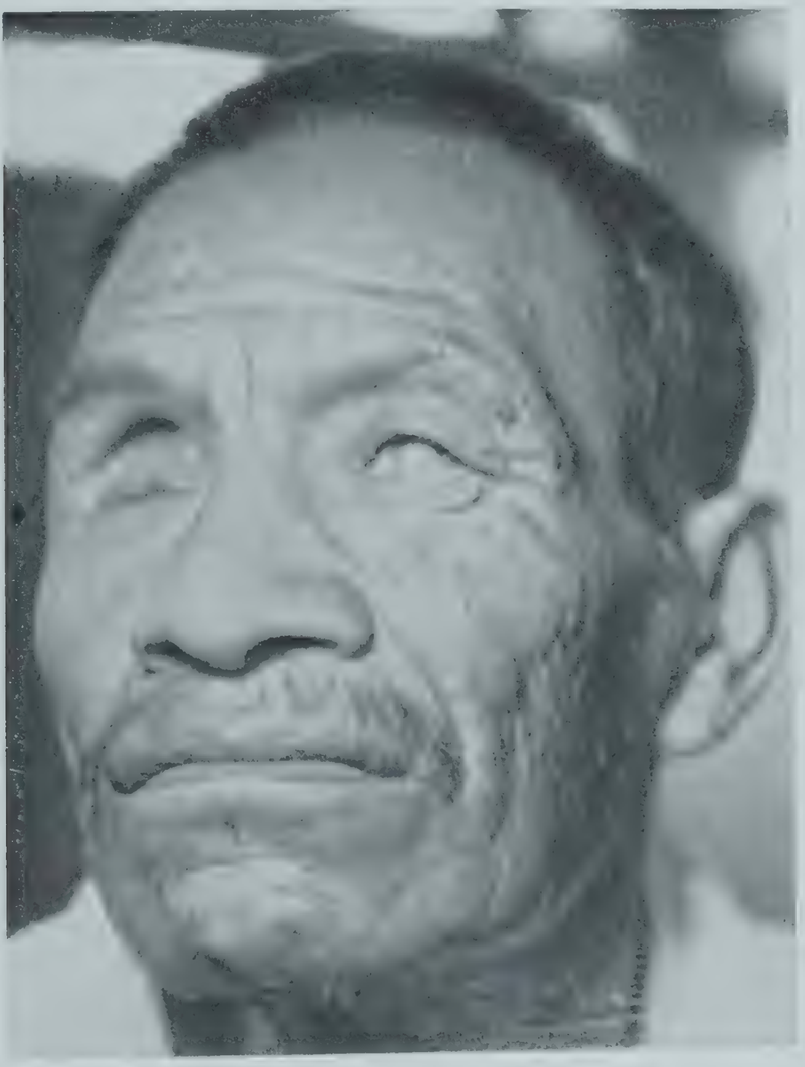


Fig. 279.—Blindness due to onchocercal infection.

Iritis, Cyclitis, and Chorioiditis: Hissette (1932), as well as Appelmans (1935) in Africa, Pacheco Luna (1919) in Guatemala, Larumbe (1930), Torroella (1930), and Puig, Fonte Barcena, and Quiróz in Mexico, have confirmed the frequency of iritis in onchocercal patients, and at times the more severe disturbances (blindness). Very characteristic is the intense supraorbital a periorbital pain as well as slightly decreasing vision, reduction of pigment the iris, partial destruction of the pupillary margins, and formation of furth synechia. The ciliary body is painful to pressure. According to Hisset (1932), chorioiditis is rarely present alone; frequently it occurs as chorioi retinitis, uveal lesions, and pathologic changes in the adjacent membran The alterations correspond to retinitis with color change and the occurrence red patches. The chorioid vessels are visible. The pigment is irregularly di tributed.

Retinitis: The retina appears spotted due to the irregular distribution the pigment.

Puig, Fonte Barcena, and Quiróz (1945) did not find, in Mexico, lesions the fundus of the eye in the patients from Huixtla.

Scott (1945), in Africa, observed several cases of atrophy and retinitis.

Ocular Atrophy: Ocular atrophy and total blindness constitute the fina process in the lesions of the uvea. Sometimes this phenomenon is secondar to glaucomatous complications.

It is interesting to point out the fact that not once during our last visit t the onchocercal region of Chiapas could we find a single individual who ha really been blinded recently due to onchocercal infection. On the other hand according to statistics of Figueroa Ortiz and co-workers, 1.28 per cent of thos affected by ocular disturbances become blind. This percentage is very low i comparison with the former figures.

It seems that there are 3 factors involved in the origin of ocular disturbances: (1) mechanical, determined by the presence of microfilariae i different parts of the eye; (2) chemical, caused by some product of metabolis of the filariae; and (3) allergic, especially determined in susceptible individuals. It has not been possible to demonstrate the evident causal action o any of these phenomena, so that we just mention them here.

Other Disturbances

Casis Sacre and Rico Bustamante (1936), Casis Sacre (1938), and Balanzario Rosas (1942) pointed out the importance of the epileptic syndrome i onchocerciasis. Vargas (1945) has refuted this; he believes that such lesion and alterations are caused by cysticercosis due to *Taenia solium*.

PATHOLOGY

This study deals with the onchocercoma, the alterations of the skin, and the ocular and blood disturbances.

Onchocercoma

The microscopic characteristics of these lesions and the name that we suggested in 1936 (Benitez Soto) are mentioned under *cutaneous lesions*, and w shall now deal only with the microscopic changes. The panoramic view shows a small or a large onchocercoma, African or American, which consists of parts: a superficial or capsular part, and a deep or granulomatous part. The superficial part is band shaped and encircles most of the entire surface; it is of variable thickness and bears bulky prominences with distinct outlines. Sometimes it is perforated by the exit of the parasite. The connective tissue is dense and fibrous and forms a tough capsule. The connective tissue bundles sometimes present hyalinization in the superficial parts. This process varies in intensity with different onchocercomas.

Some lymphocytic infiltration is seen at times between the thick collagenous bundles. The deep layer consists of the parasites and the onchocercal tissue.

Parasites.—The parasites might be either microfilarial or adult filarial worms. The microfilarial parasites are numerous in the uterine cavity of the females and at times in the loose parts of the onchocercal tissue, especially in the exudative parts.

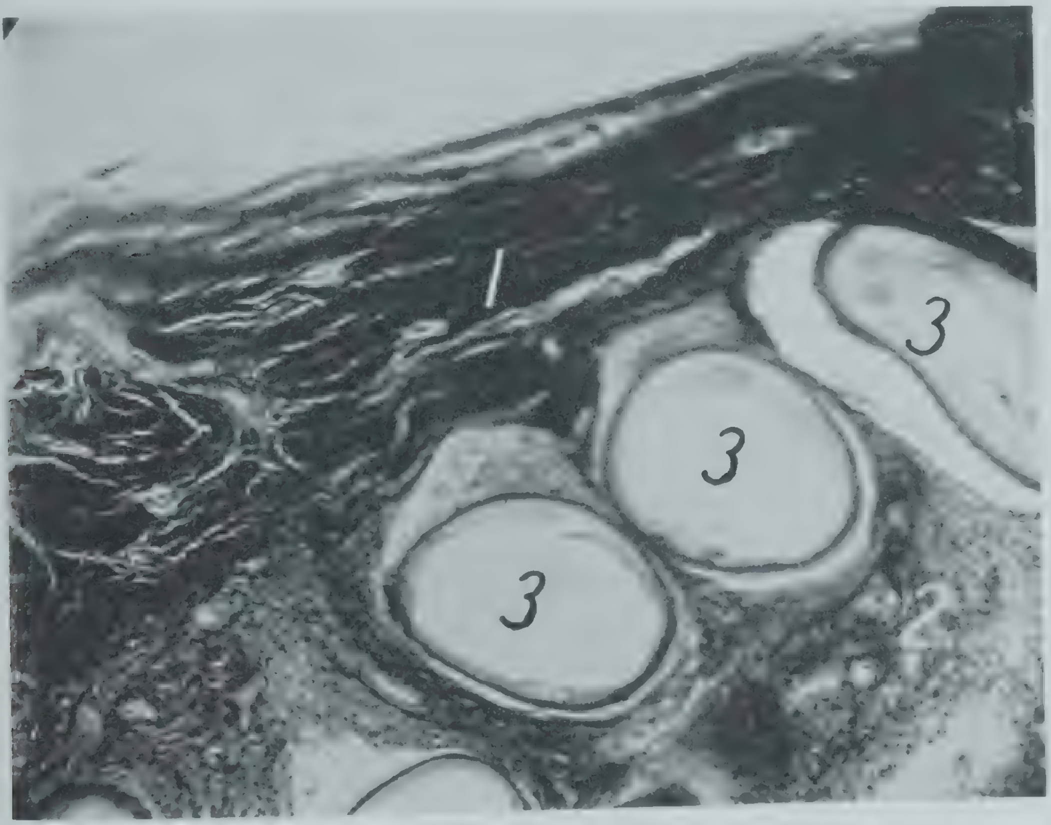


Fig. 280.—*1*, Fibrous external band; *2*, granulomatous tissue: *3*, section of filariae.

The adult filarial worms appear in cross or oblique sections, but since they are usually coiled, the sections show numerous cavities corresponding to the multiple sectioning which they have undergone. The uterus of the female, filled with embryos, is distinct. Frequently at the margins of the onchocercoma the parasite appears to be folded and wrinkled, with decreased diameter, covered with dense fibrous tissue, thus resembling dead or encysted filariae.

Onchocercal Tissue.—Onchocercal tissues are of 2 types: young and adult, frequently mixed and without precise limits.

Young: Two varieties are found: the exudative and the granulomatous.

The exudative type is not frequent but is characteristic and well defi It usually has crescent-shaped short spaces, well marked, and composed serous layer, coagulated and granular within, which is an accumulation erythrocytes, lymphocytes, polymorphonuclear neutrophiles, fibrocytes, histiocytes. The lymphocytes are relatively abundant; the polymorphonucle are scarce; the other cells are of a neutrophilic variety which someti undergo the transformation of the pyocyte; fibrocytes with vesicular nuclei scarce. At times the neutrophiles predominate and take the characteristics pyocytes, and true microabscesses are formed.

The granulomatous type seems to be the most interesting; it appea first and the adult types are derived from it.

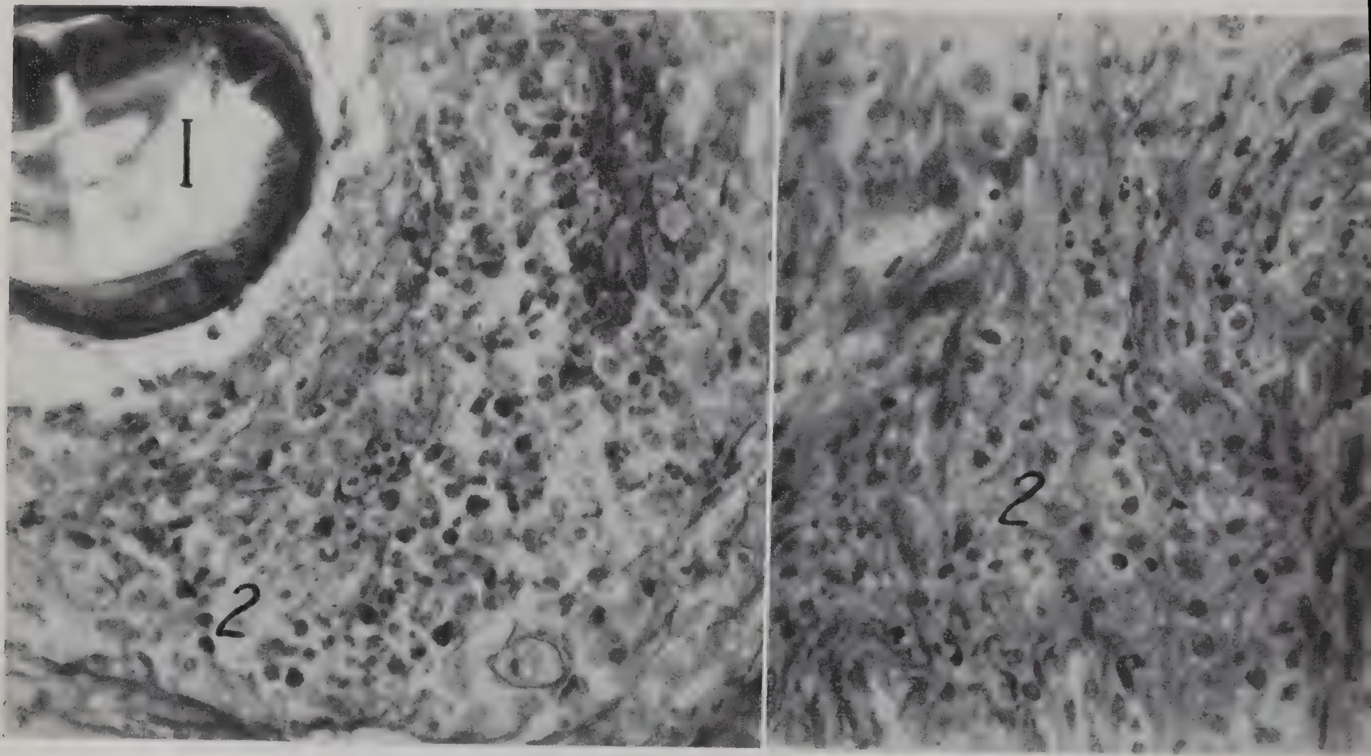


Fig. 281.—Two sections of an onchocercoma. *1*, A section of a filarial worm; *2*, a typic granulomatous tissue.

It consists of cells and fibers. The cells undergo a characteristic polymorphism, which might be of hematic or of connective tissue origin. Element of hematic origin are lymphocytes, plasma cells, and polymorphonuclear neutrophiles and eosinophiles. The elements of connective tissue origin ar fibrocytes, histiocytes, and giant cells. The lymphocytes are abundant but wit normal characteristics. The polymorphonuclear neutrophiles have no definit arrangement and are isolated or in small groups. Eosinophiles are rar Plasma cells are mixed with other cellular varieties or form small perivasc lar nodules. Among the cells of the connective tissue group are young fibr cytes, almost embryonal, with large, round, and vesicular nucleus barel chromophilic.

The histiocytes are numerous, without distinct limits, with pale cytoplas and vesicular nucleus; are isolated, and form small groups within the mesh a fine collagenous network; or are arranged in layers. Giant cells may be al

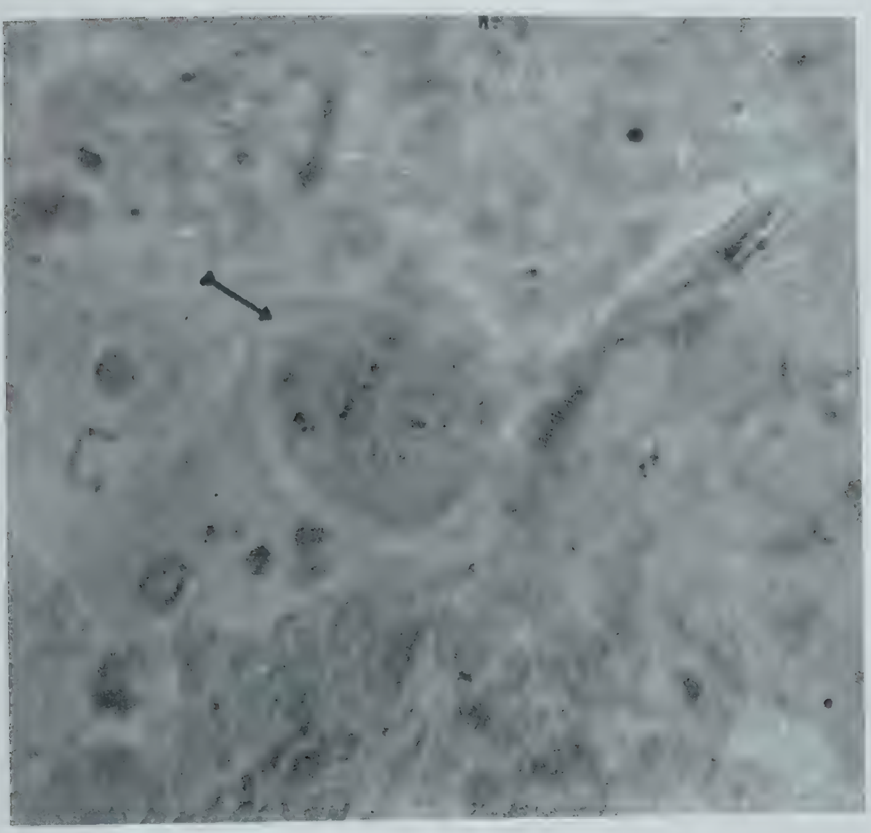


Fig. 282.—The arrow shows the giant cells of the onchocercoma.

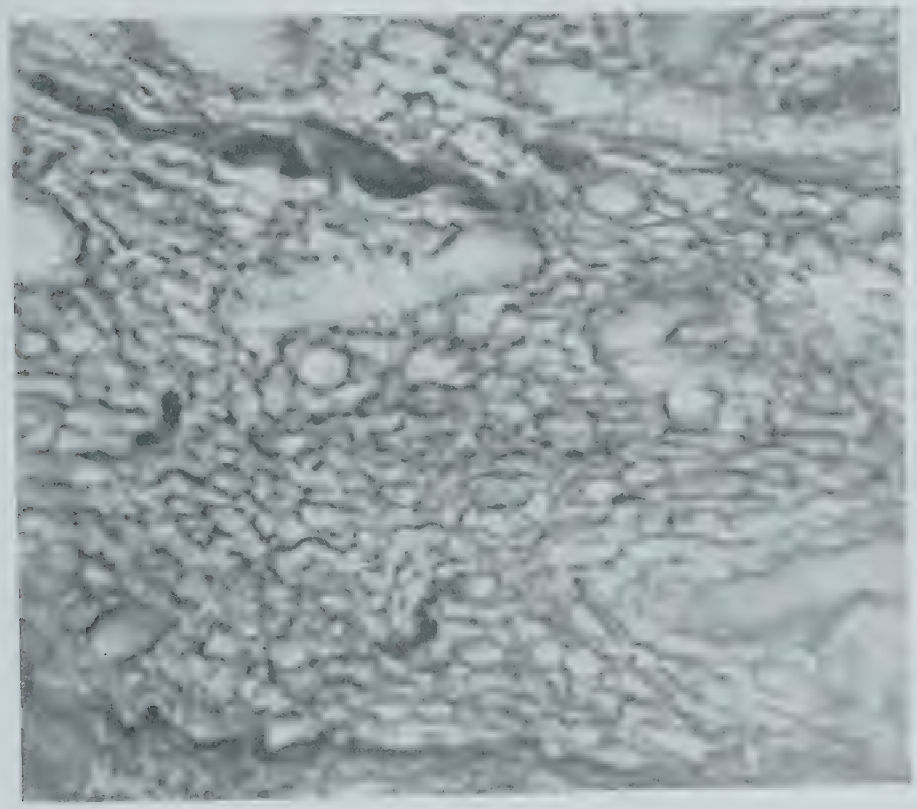


Fig. 283.—Dense fibrous formation in an African onchocercoma.

sent; if they are present, the size is in inverse ratio to their age and va considerably; some are 20 to 30 microns, while others measure 200 micro It is possible to find some small cells next to the large ones. Round for prevail, but oval, elliptical, angular, and long forms might be present. T cytoplasm is very abundant, homogeneous, with 2 to 40 nuclei arranged a morula. These cells dwell in the fine collagenous fibers; their density a distribution is very irregular.

Adult: The adult form may be of 2 varieties: the adult proper and t fibrous.

The adult form has the same cells as the granulomatous variety, but t collagenous bundles are numerous, with fibroblasts and fibrocytes in t spaces. At times this tissue comes in direct contact with the filaria, but co monly it is continuous with the internal surface of the fibrous capsule so th it resembles fibrous bands derived from the capsule.

In the fibrous variety, the same elements generally take part except th the abundance of collagenous fibers is remarkable.

In large onchocercomas, fibrillogenesis is very intense. The blood vesse are very numerous in the granulomatous and less in the fibrous type; co monly present is an endarteritis.

Histogenesis: According to Ochoterena (1931), onchocercomas are pr duced by a filarial worm stopping in a lymphatic vessel and by the centripet fibrillogenesis. Benitez Soto (1936) stated that unquestionably the parasi or its toxins, or both, predetermine the formation of such lesions. There an additional factor; namely, the presence of free fragments of the parasite.

Cutaneous Lesions

Cutaneous lesions vary according to the region where they are presen When they are xerodermatous, the keratinization is exaggerated and the irre ular detachment of the crust is well marked. Microscopic examination show congestion, diffuse or perivascular infiltration, with mononuclear cells, at time with polymorphonuclear neutrophilic and eosinophilic leucocytes; discrete fibr sis; and, at times, microfilariae. Arroyo (1931) has described cases of atrophy o the Malpighian stratum with thinning of the interpapillary sites of the epiderma regions of the microscopic lesions or lesions of mal morado.

The disturbances are more marked in the dermis. The microfilariae ar found in the lymphatic spaces of the connective tissue, in different proportion but especially under the epidermal layer. The more deeply they invade, th less often are they found. Hoffmann (1930) considered that this was due to positive phototaxis.

The distribution and number of microfilariae are variable; they are mor abundant about the onchocercomas. Furthermore, in the connective tissue o the dermis, a moderate or slight inflammatory process is present, which co sists of cells such as fibroblasts, lymphocytes, plasma cells, and some pol morphonuclear neutrophiles and eosinophiles, arranged in small perivascula groups or in a diffuse manner.

This infiltration is not in relation to the microfilariae. There is not really a granulomatous character. Arroyo (1931) and Mohammed (1931) believe that the intensity of the inflammatory process is in direct relation to the severity of the infestation, and Strong et al. (1934) considers susceptibility as a complementary feature. Arroyo (1931) has described another lesion which consists of the thickening of the collagenous bundles of the dermis which consequently becomes thicker. Strong et al. (1934) believes that the inflammatory reactions described are a result of the irritation caused by the microfilariae and their movements or by the disintegration of dead microfilariae. Arroyo (1931) supposes that it may be the response to a mechanical irritation which determines the presence of the microfilariae or the outcome of the soluble substances which they produce, acting as chemotropic bodies.

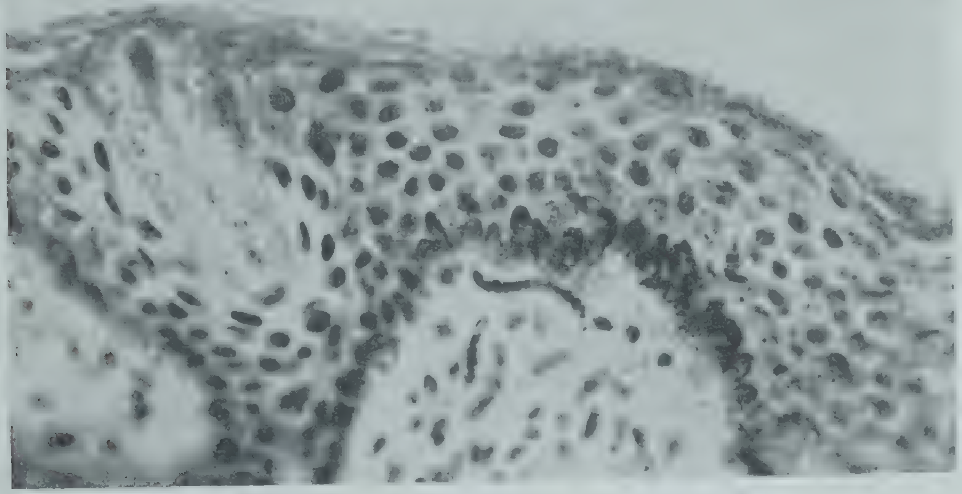


Fig. 284.—Section of skin from face in onchocerciasis. Subepidermal microflariae are visible.

Ocular Lesions

According to Hissette (1932) and Appelmans (1935) the onchocercal eye is not modified microscopically. However, we have found that microscopically the ocular lesions are characterized by the presence of microfilariae in different parts of the eye and alterations of the histologic components of this organ. Silva (1932) reported the observation in 1925 of a movable body in the vitreous humor which he thought might be a microfilaria. This observation was made under doubtful circumstances as to the identification of the organisms, which deprives it of value. Torroella in 1931 reported the observation in vivo of microfilariae in the human eye. Ochoterena (1930) found microfilariae in histologic sections of the eye, and Strong (1931) several months later confirmed their presence in the conjunctiva, iris, and cornea. Hissette (1932) affirms that the microfilariae are found in the conjunctiva, sclerotic cornea, iris, ciliary body, chorioid, anterior chamber, and optic nerve. Other authors later confirmed finding the microfilariae in vivo and in sections and have even suggested methods of observing them easily (Torres Estrada, 1943). The number and location of the microfilariae are variable, but they are commonly more numerous in the superficial parts in the connective tissues and at the slope of the iridocorneal angle.

Cornea.—Vascularization occurs near the periphery (Strong et al., 19 with deposit of exudate about the sclerocorneal limbus and lympho-plasmoc and monocytic infiltration (Hissette, 1932). The corneal epithelium is irregu there is infiltration in the stratum mucosum, or stratum Malpighii, with leu cytes, and folding of Bowman's membrane (Ochoterena, 1930), or its destr tion in certain places.

Conjunctiva.—Strong (1932) believes that the lesions of the bulbar c junctiva superficially, near the cornea, resemble those seen in the skin. Fo Barcena (1945) has described a brown pigmentation corresponding to palpebral sulcus.

Sclera.—According to Hissette (1932), the sclera is actually normal, b Puig (1946) states that Fonte Barcena believes that in some cases it underg the general process.

Iris.—Ochoterena (1930) states that the anterior endothelium is swoll and detached at some places, and that there is edema and diminution of pi ment; according to Hissette (1932), there are synechiae in the iridocorneal ang with reduction of the anterior chamber, but without synechiae in the pupilla border of the iris; according to Puig et al. (1948) there occur edema, atrophy the stroma, and slight inflammation, together with alteration of the posteri pigmented epithelium and of the muscles.

Ciliary Body.—Appelmans (1935) reports atrophy in toto.

Chorioid.—Congestion, edema, and cellular infiltration have been observ in the chorioid.

Retina.—In cases with lesions of the retina, these are discrete and co respond to retinitis or hemorrhages (Hissette, 1932).

Optic Nerve.—Scott (1945) reports atrophy in certain cases.

According to Riveroll Noble (1947), everything points to the fact that t ocular lesions in onchocerciasis are of the chronic inflammatory type, n specific, and that they are similar to those produced by a foreign body.

Blood Changes

Studies to date reveal a slight anemia of the hypocythemic type (Gonzále Guzmán, 1930), and according to the same author, Benitez Soto (1930), Hof mann and Vargas (1931), and Ruiz (1945), a marked eosinophilia. Benite Soto (1930) reported 22.7 per cent eosinophiles, and González Guzmán, 3 per cent; Ochoterena found 30 per cent in one count; Hoffmann and Varga (1931) found a variation of 10 to 40 per cent; Ruiz (1945) found 15 to 40 pe cent. This eosinophilia decreases as the onchocercal lesions disappear (Rui 1945).

EPIDEMIOLOGY AND ENDEMIOLOGY

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION AND ALTITUDE

Onchocerciasis is a disease which occurs throughout well-defined areas. In America it i found in Mexico and Guatemala.* There are two zones in Mexico, one in the state of Chiapa and one considerably extensive zone in Oaxaca.

---

*Recently another onchocerciasal infestation has been found in Venezuela. See footnot on p. 893.

In Africa, onchocerciasis prevails in Sierra Leone, Liberia, and the Gold Coast, Dahomey, northern part of Nigeria, the Cameroons, and Congo, also reaching Uganda (Strong et al., 1934). Onchocerciasis is more extensive in Africa than in America.

Robles (1919) has reported onchocerciasis distributed in a zone extending from the fire volcano to the volcano Atitlán at an altitude of 600 and 1200 meters. Fülleborn (1932) reported onchocerciasis in Mexico at altitudes between 700 and 1200 meters, and Lorenzana (1941) mentions onchocerciasis at 150 to 1700 meters above sea level.

ENVIRONMENT

Environment exerts a powerful influence upon the prevalence and spread of the disease. In America, onchocerciasis is endemic in the coffee plantations; this is due to the fact that the workmen are exposed to the bite of the fly which transmits the disease. In these temperate-hot zones, flowing streams are favorable for breeding of the Simulium, and workmen who spend the daytime hours in coffee plantations are exposed to attacks of the flies.

In Africa, in the Province of Lusambo, the production of cotton and manioca and the collection of the piassava palm are factors which predispose to infection, as are the frequent bathing in streams and the collection of drinking water from such streams (Strong, 1938).

MODE OF PROPAGATION

Mexican physicians who are waging a campaign against this disease, especially in Chiapas, have shown that the disease is spreading. They explain this fact by the nomadism of the workmen. Frequently workmen who collect the coffee are infected after they come to the plantations, then at the end of the harvest they return to their own towns, sometimes a considerable distance away, thus helping in the dissemination of the disease.

The natives of certain localities make long trips to fulfill religious obligations and either pass through or stop in the infested regions. When they return home, propitious biologic conditions in the environment cause the disease to form a new focus.

Infection in Central America and in Mexico is acquired mostly between the months of October and February, the dry season. During the rainy season the Simuliidae almost disappear. It is during these months that the coffee crops are being gathered.

LABORATORY FINDINGS

The most important laboratory findings, from the standpoint of diagnosis, are (1) microfilariae in the skin or in the conjunctiva, (2) microfilariae in the suspected onchocercoma, (3) histopathologic findings in the onchocercoma, and (4) marked eosinophilia in the peripheral blood.

Microfilariae in the Skin and Conjunctiva.*—MacFie and Corson's technic consists in taking a piece of skin, shaking it in a few drops of saline solution, and covering it with a cover glass. Microscopic examination should be made with the iris diaphragm partially closed. Rapidly moving mi filariae are frequently seen by this method.

---

*See also Chapter 72.

When the skin gives negative results and ocular lesions point to disease, a similar technic can be used for the conjunctiva; at times the resu are positive.

The best results are secured with skin taken near the onchocercoma a with pieces of superficial skin in which hemorrhage has not occurred. T modus operandi consists of the use of a razor blade placed on the previou disinfected skin, holding between the forefinger and thumb of the other hand portion of the skin. The razor blade should be placed on this skin almos parallel to the surface in such manner as to raise a small flat fragment of th skin. Further steps have been described above.

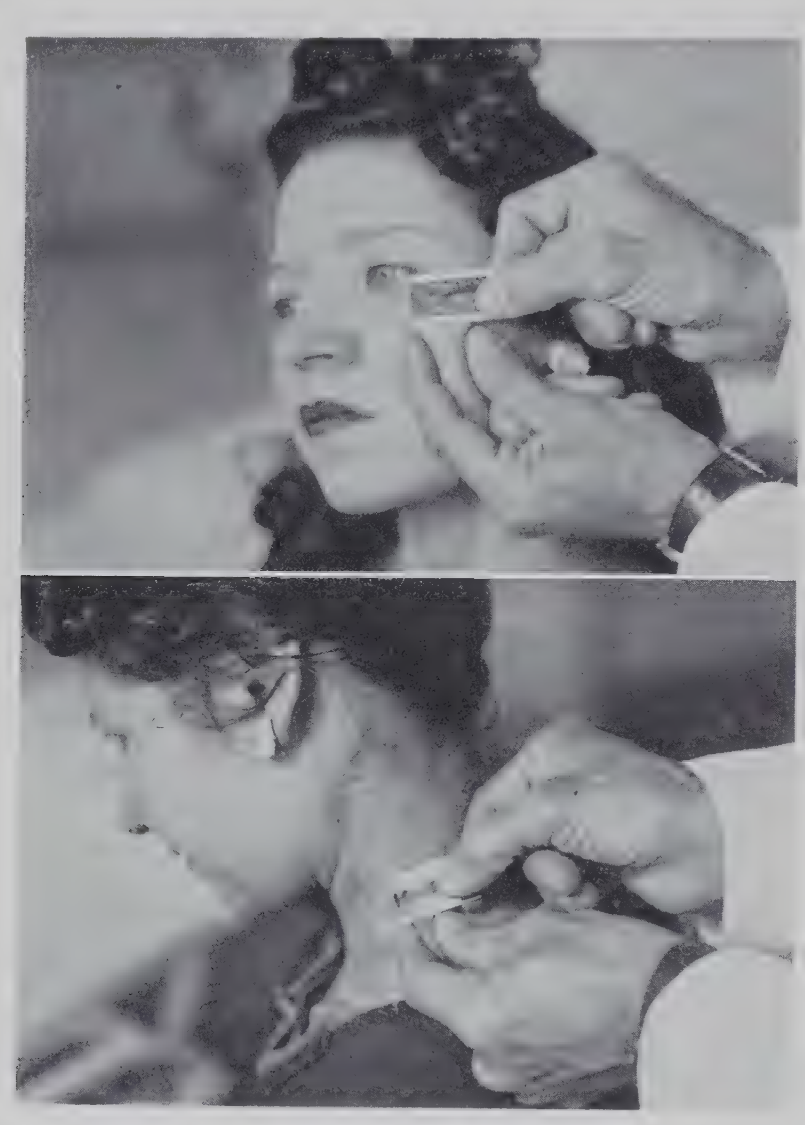


Fig. 285.—MacFie and Corson's technic for the investigation of microfilariae in the skin.

We have tried another method. We slightly close a Kocher forceps on pinch of skin to produce blanching of the skin and then pierce it with needle to allow a few drops of serum to escape. These are placed between slide and cover glass and examined. Our results have not been as favorable as those obtained by MacFie and Corson's technic.

Microfilariae in the Suspected Onchocercoma.—The onchocercoma should be punctured, the contents aspirated, and then immediately examined on a slide with a cover glass. It is possible to find numerous microfilariae, but it is also possible that the investigation will give negative results if only adult parasites are present, or if the adult parasites are of the same sex, or if they are dead.

Discovery of Microfilariae in the Eye.—With the biomicroscope it is possible to see the microfilariae in the anterior chamber of the eye. They appear as very minute thread-like bodies, thin and refractive, moving incessantly, and frequently escaping from the field of observation.

Pathologic Findings in the Lesions.—Pathologic findings in the lesions are so valuable that alone they are able to confirm the diagnosis.

Peripheral Blood.—There is usually a marked eosinophilia present.

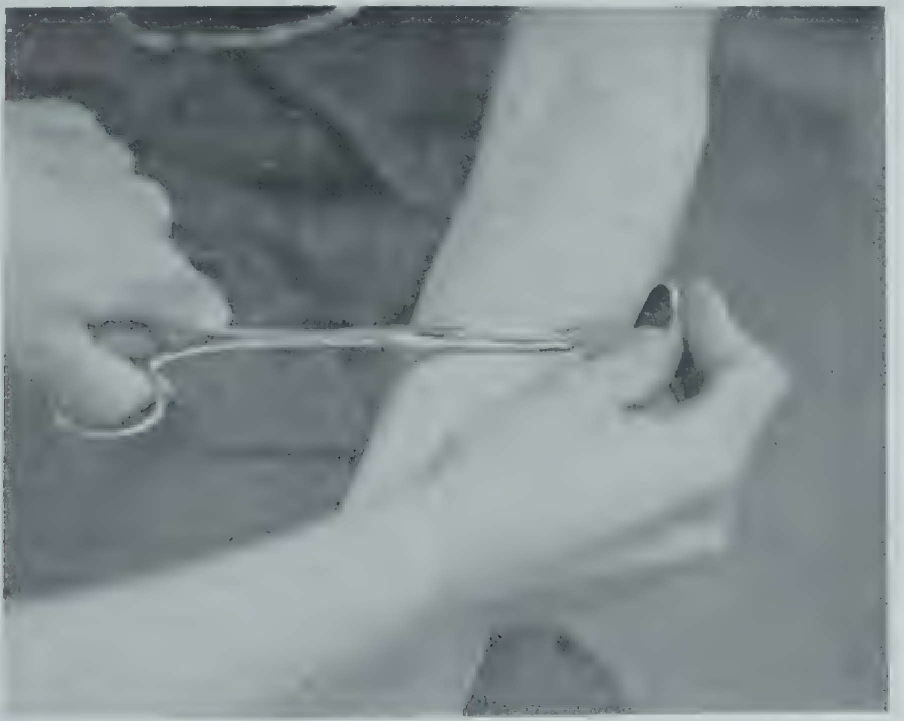


Fig. 286.—The author's technic of pressure by forceps and piercing with needle.

Other Findings.—The complement fixation reactions of Gutierrez Villegas (1931) and others, the cutaneous allergic reactions discussed by Hoffmann and Vargas (1931), Mazzotti and Osorio (1943), and Wright and Murdock (1944), the investigation for microfilariae in the spinal fluid, and the erythrocytic sedimentation test of Linzenmeier have not proved to be of value in the diagnosis of onchocerciasis.

PROGNOSIS

Onchocerciasis is not a fatal disease. Its seriousness consists of the possibility of blindness from atrophy of the eyeball or of a secondary glaucoma. However, the regular surgical removal of the onchocercoma, as well as careful search of the substances which elude ordinary exploration and future removal of them, has reduced the number of onchocercal patients.

TREATMENT

A filaricide has been eagerly sought, a product which, when inj ingested, or applied in some manner, might destroy the microfilariae in body of the patient with onchocerciasis. Several diluted solutions of ne red have been used in vitro or in vivo. Hoffmann and Vargas (1931) Plasmochin and Septisemina. These authors, as well as Estevez (1935), Atabrine. Torroella applied subconjunctival injection of Plasmochin ocular disturbances, and Zuniga Cisneros (cited by Hoffmann and Var used it for cutaneous onchocercal lesions. This product has been used Diaz and Giaquinto Mira. Some other substances have been tried at Medical Center of Huixtla, such as cyanide of mercury. Wright used Fua Balanzario Rosas (1937) used essential oil of chenopodium, Bustamante (19 calcium gluconate and other chemical substances. Unfortunately none pro to be effective.

Mazzotti and Hewitt (1948) have used the known filaricide, the chloride 1-diethylcarbamil 4-methylpiperazine (Hetrazan*) on several patients w onchocerciasis. They have given 2 mg. per kilogram of body weight by mo for periods varying from 15 to 21 days. The results have been good. La trials point to Hetrazan as an efficacious drug against the *Onchocerca volvu*

Surgical removal of the onchocercoma is the only treatment that impro the cutaneous lesions and prevents ocular invasion; sometimes eye disturban are practically cured (2 cases reported by Pacheco Luna, 1942).

PROPHYLAXIS

Two preventive measures should be used: first, destruction of the vecto and, second, protection against the bites of the Simulium.

DDT has given the best results in destruction of the vectors, not es cially adults, but the immature form. These are the results obtained fr experiments in Guatemala and Mexico. Blocks of plaster impregnated w DDT were placed in little streams. It has been shown that DDT in wa solution at 1:10,000,000 killed the larvae.

With a special apparatus which rhythmically drops a small quantity DDT, similar effects can be secured. This should be done in the dry seas which in Central America is from October to May. Streams are often d transportation is easier, and less expenditure for drugs is needed, as well fewer personnel.

In this manner, if the Simuliidae do not completely disappear, at lea there is a considerable reduction in the number per area, and the inhabita are bitten much less by the flies. Probabilities of being infected are less, cause the rate of infestation of the flies is low and transmission is particular difficult.

Garnham (1948) described effective measures for killing the Simuliu which he carried out in Kenya, Africa, during the last few years. In his c unication he emphasizes that the Simulium never goes into houses and its reeding places are in the tropical forests, where it breeds on the rocks under ne cascades and waterfalls of rivers flowing through these forests. The larva described as crawling about on rocks under water and eventually becoming xed as a pupa on a rock right underneath a big waterfall. The adult breaks rough the pupa's skin and goes up to the surface of the water and flies off. e emphasizes that they breed nowhere else except in these places and it was r that reason that an insecticide, DDT, was placed where they thought would work best. By introducing the insecticide into the river above the rea of infestation the poison could eventually come into contact with all imulium larvae downstream. They found that the larvae would then be illed even at a distance of as far as 15 miles. A DDT emulsion was placed here there was a water mill, into the chute of which the insecticide was allowed drip. The emulsion remained permanent for weeks, providing there was orough mixing. It was introduced just over the millrace, and then there ere dozens of waterfalls downstream ready to re-emulsify any of the oil hich had separated out. River water was added to the emulsion in a 4-gallon n and the mixture transferred to a similar tin suspended by ropes over the queduct of the mill. One or 2 holes were made in the bottom of this tin to ve a standard rate of delivery. For instance, a circular hole $\frac{3}{8}$ of an inch diameter dripped approximately 12 gallons in 30 minutes. The rate of sage was 5 parts of DDT in 1,000,000 parts of water. This is well above e lethal dose. The rate of flow of the water was estimated by the cusecs or number of cubic feet per second of water. DDT was applied every 10 s or fortnight for 5 months and then stopped entirely. Garnham's results re sensational. He completely eradicated the fly from the area treated. The es began to disappear 2 or 3 weeks after the first dose, and the last fly was n 65 days later. They even offered to pay for any fly brought to the station t none was brought. The area in which this work was done was about 65 are miles in extent close to a mining region. In this area native population rveys showed that at least 86 per cent of the men and 37 per cent of the ildren were infected. Cases already infected remained so, but he estimated at there would be no more new cases.

---

*Lederle Laboratories, Inc.

Other preventive measures are more difficult to use and less effective; ertheless, other measures are advised, such as the application of insect re- llent liquids on the unprotected parts of the body, Indalone, dimethyl- thalate, and Rutgers 612, and the formula "622," which is a mixture of all ee. All are harmless. To prevent attack by the flies, the inhabitants uld stay out of the woods, streams, and places with dense Simulium popula- n as much as possible.

References

ams, A. R. D.: 1938. A Case of Onchocerciasis (Filarial Blinding), With Manifestations Developing in Britain, Lancet 1: 545-548.
ullas, F. J., et al.: 1947. Oncocercosis. Imprenta Universitaria, Guatemala.
ez Barredo, Constantino: 1928: Contribución al estudio de la Onchocercosis en Guatemala, Tesis.

Appelmans, M.: 1935. Les troubles visuels dans l'onchocercose Africaine, Rev. belge méd. 7: 525-538.

Arroyo, Jesus: 1931. Algunos estudios histopatológicos en la piel de los onchocercos Medicina, México 19: 563-567.

Arroyo, Jesus: 1931. Los quistes de la onchocercosis, Medicina, México 11: 697-705.

Ash, J. E., and Spitz, Sophie: 1945. Pathology of Tropical Diseases, Philadelphia an London, W. B. Saunders Co., pp. 251, 267-270.

Azurdina, J.: 1924. Discusión del trabajo presentado por Fülleborn acerca de ''Th Blinding Filaria of Guatemala,'' International Conference on Health Problem in Tropical America, Boston, Mass., published by United Fruit Company, p. 256.

Balanzario Rosas, Isaias: 1937. Algunas consideraciones y estudios sobre la onchocercosi Medicina, México 17: 294-306.

Balanzario Rosas, Isaias: 1937. Algunos datos sobre el tratamiento contra la onchocerc sis, Medicina, México 17: 331-334.

Balanzario Rosas, Isaias: 1942. La oncocercosis y el síndrome epiléptico, Prensa méd Mex. 7: 62-64.

Baranov, N.: 1926. Eine neue Simulide. Art und einige Bemerkungen über das System der Simuliden. Neue Beitr. Syst. Insektenk; (Beil. Zeitschr. Wiss. Insekten—biol.) 3: 161-164.

Barragan Callejas, Heron: 1932. La onchocercosis en Chiapas, México, Tesis.

Benitez Soto, Luis. 1930. Contribución al conocimiento de la formula leucocitaria del onchocercoso, An. Inst. Biol., Méx. 1: 181-184.

Benitez Soto, Luis: 1936. Los oncocercomas de la oncocercosis americana, Rev. méx. de cir., ginec. y cáncer 4: 442-475.

Benitez Soto, Luis. 1946. Datos históricos de la oncocercosis en México a través de la literatura respectiva, Rev. méx. de cir., ginec. y cáncer 14: 171-192.

Benitez Soto, Luis: 1947. Nota sobre la frecuencia de la ceguera como complicacíon ocular en la oncocercosis, An. Soc. méx. de oftal. y oto-rino-laring. 21: 340-349.

Benitez Soto, Luis: 1947. Histological Studies in Biopsy Skin Specimens Taken From Patients With Oncocerciasis and in Onchocercomas, The Laboratory Digest, St. Louis 2: 1-5.

Bequaert, J. C.: 1934. Notes on the Black-Flies or Simulidae, With Special Reference to Those of the Oncocerca Region of Guatemala. In Onchocerciasis With Special Reference to the Central America Form of the Disease, Contribution from the Department of Tropical Medicine and the Institute of Tropical Biology and Medicine, Harvard University 6: 175-224.

Bequaert, J. C.: 1928. The Black-Flies or Simulidae of the Belgian Congo. In Onchocerciasis in Africa and Central America, Am. J. Trop. Med. 1: 116-136.

Blacklock, D. B.: 1926. The Development of Onchocerca Volvulus in Simulium Damnosum, Ann. Trop. Med. 20: 1-48.

Blacklock, D. B.: 1926. The Further Development of Onchocerca Volvulus Leuckart in Simulium Damnosum, Theob., Ann. Trop. Med. 20: 203-218.

Blacklock, D. B.: 1927. The Insect Transmission of Onchocerca Volvulus (Leuckart, 1893); Cause of Worm Nodules in Man in Africa, Brit. M. J. 1: 129-133.

Blanchard, M., and Laigret, J.: 1924. Recherches sur la transmission d'Onchocerca Volvulus par diverses parasites, hematophages, Bull. Soc. path. exot. 17: 409-417.

Boletin Oficina Sanitaria Panamericana: 1932. Onchocerciasis, Bol. Ofic. san. Panam. 4: 436-438.

Brumpt, Emile: 1919. Une nouvelle filaire pathogene de l'homme, Bull. Soc. path. exot. Paris 12: 464.

Bryant, J.: 1935. Endemic Retino-choriditis in the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan and Its Possible Relationship to Onchocerca Volvulus, Arch. f. Schiffs- u. Tropen-Hyg. 39: 297.

Bustamante, Miguel E.: 1925. Probable existencia de la onchocercosis en Chiapas, Gac. méd. México 61: 496-502.

Bustamante Vasconcelos, J. I.: 1940. Contribución al estudio del foco onchocercoso del Edo. de Oaxaca, Escuela Médico Militar, México, Tesis.

Caballero, Eduardo C.: 1931. Bibliografía relativa a la onchocercosis en México y Guatemala, 1919-1930, supp. of An. Inst. Biol., Méx., 1-5.

Caballero, Eduardo C.: 1941. Resumen histórico acerca de los estudios relativos a la onchocercosis, Folleto de divulgación científica del Instituto de Biología, México. No. 37.

Caballero, Eduardo C.: 1944. Estudios helmintológicos de la región oncocercosa de México y de la República de Guatemala, An. Inst. Biol., Méx. 15: 87-109.

Caballero, Eduardo C.: 1945. Estudios helmintológicos de la región oncocercosa de México y de la República de Guatemala, An. Inst. Biol., Méx. 16: 367-409.

Calderon, Victor M.: 1917. Enfermedad nueva en Guatemala, Juven. méd., Guat. 177: 97-115.

Calderon, Victor M.: 1917. Enfermedad nueva en Guatemala, Juven. méd., Guat. 177: Robles, y de las enfermedades que produce, Guatemala, Tesis.

Casis Sacre, G., and Rico Bustamante, F.: 1937. Oncocercosis, Medicina, México **17:** 88-95, 114-126.

Casis Sacre, G.: 1938. El Síndromo epiléptico y sus relaciones con la onchocercosis, Bol. Salub. Hig. méx. **1:** 11-31.

Casis Sacre, G.: 1947. Estado de nuestros conocimientos sobre la oncocercosis, Medicina de México **27:** 345-350.

Castellani, A.: 1925. Diseases of Central America, J. Trop. Med. **28:** 1-14.

Coggeshall, L. T.: 1945. Malaria and Filariasis in the Returning Serviceman; Ninth Charles Franklin Craig Lecture, Am. J. Trop. Med. **25:** 177-184.

Comision Para el Estudio del Mal del Pinto y la Onconcercosis: 1930. Investigación acerca de las lesiones oncocercosas oculares en México, Salubridad, Méx. **1:** 648-668.

Compendio Medico: 1945. Aspectos clínicos de algunas enfermedades tropicales: Oncocercosis, Kala-azar, Fiebre de Oroya, Philadelphia, Pa. **38:** 8-11.

Coppez, Leon: 1935. Un cas de filaire sous-conjontivale, Le Scalpel, Liege **11:** 324-326.

Corson, J. F.: 1922. The Occurrence of Larvae of Onchocerca Volvulus (Leuckart 1893) in the Skin of the Natives of the Gold Coast, Ann. Trop. Med. **16:** 407-420.

Culbertson, J. T., Rose, H. M., and Oliver-Gonzalez, J.: 1945. Chemotherapy of Human Filariasis by the Administration of Neostibosan, Am. J. Trop. Med. **25:** 271, 403.

Dampf, Alfonso: 1927. Un simúlido nuevo de México (orden Diptera, Sub-orden Nematocera) procedente de Tiltepec, Oaxaca, Rev. Mex. de Biol. **7:** 125-130.

Dampf, Alfonso: 1931. Los simúlidos transmisores de la Onchocercosis en los Estados de Oaxaca y Chiapas, Medicina, México **11:** 753-761.

Dampf, Alfonso: 1933. Concentration of Microfilaire by the Salivary Secretions of Blood-sucking Insects, Science **77:** 20-21.

Dampf, Alfonso: 1936. Los ceratopogónidos o jejenes (insecta, Diptera, fam. ceratopogonidae) como transmisores de filarias, Medicina, México **16:** 227-233.

Dampf, Alfonso: 1942. La carretera panamericana y el problema de la oncocercosis, Bol. Ofic. san panam. **21:** 753-757.

Darriba, Antonio R.: 1935. Oncocercosis americana, Medicina de los países cálidos, Mad. **8:** 561-573.

De la Fuente, Julio: 1941. Creencias indígenas sobre la Onchocercosis, el Paludismo y otras parasitosis, América Indígena, México **1:** 43.

De la Torre, Ignacio: 1931. Sur l'onchocercose au Mexique, Bull. Office internat. d'hyg. pub. **23:** 2017-2020.

De Leon, J. Romeo: 1941. La pulga, transmisor de la Onchocercosis o enfermedad de Robles, La Escuela de Farmacia, Guat. **3:** 25-26.

De Leon, J. Romeo: 1945. Nuevas especies de simúlidos en la región Occidental de Guatemala. Apuntes para una Monografía sobre los simúlidos de Guatemala, Tipografía Nacional, Guatemala.

Departamento de Salubridad Publica: 1930. Estado actual del estudio de la onchocercosis en México, Bol. Ofic. san. panam. **11:** 1290-1301.

Departamento de Salubridad Publica: 1935. Reglamento de la Campaña contra la Onchocercosis, Diario Oficial, México, 13 de abril.

Departamento de Salubridad Publica: 1938. Decreto que reforma los artículos 4 y 12 del Reglamento de la Campaña Contra la Onchocercosis, Diario Oficial, México, 28 de abril.

Dhayagude, R. G.: 1945. Microfilarial Granuloma of the Spleen; Observations in 12 Additional Cases, Arch. Path. **40:** 275-278.

Diaz, A. Francisco: 1936. La Onchocerciasis de Robles, Bol. San. de Guat. **7:** 37-48.

Diaz, A. Francisco: 1943. Onchocerciasis, Department of Public Health, Guatemala.

Direccion General de Agricultura: 1935. La albahaca en el combate de Onchocerciasis, Rev. Agric., Guat. **3:** 177.

Dry, F. W.: 1922: A Human Disease Possibly Carried by Simulium in Kenya Colony, Bull. Ent. Res. **12:** 233.

Estevez, P. Carlos: 1921. Ligeros apuntes sobre onchocercosis en Guatemala. Juven. méd., Guat. 211, 212, 213.

Estevez, P. Carlos: 1935. Ensayos terapéuticos de la oncocercosis, Bol. San. de Guat.

Estevez, P. Carlos: 1940. Tumores de filaria onchocerca sp. Dr. Robles, Juven. méd. Guat. 198, VI-15: 174.

Fischnaler, Humberto A.: 1939. La Onchocerca Caecutiens y su acción patógena, Rev. med. latino-am. **24:** 479-485.

Fonte Barcena, Anselmo: 1945. Los síndromes conjuntivales—agudo y crónico—en la oncocercosis de Chiapas, Arch. Asoc. ceg. Méx. **3:** 49-77.

Fülleborn, F.: 1908. Ueber filaria volvulus (Leuckhart), Arch. f. Schiffs- u. Tropen 1-17.

Fülleborn, F.: 1923. Kommt "Küsten-Erysipel" und Onchocerca caecutiens ausse Guatemala auch Mexiko vor? Arch. f. Schiffs- u. Tropen-Hyg. **27**: 386-390.

Fülleborn, F.: 1924. The "Blinding Filaria" of Guatemala (Onchocerca Caecuti Brumpt, 1919), International Conference on Health Problems in Tropical Amer Kingston, Jamaica, Boston, Mass.

Fülleborn, F.: 1929. Filariosen des Menschen. In Kolle and Wassermann: Handbuch pathogenen Mikroorganismen, Jena, Gustav Fischer, VI, pp. 1194-1196.

Fülleborn, F.: 1931. Ueber juckende Hautescheinungen bei zwei deutschen Onchocer Tragern aus Sudmexiko, Arch. f. Dermat. u. Syph.

García Rivera, Andres: 1930. Lecciones de parasitología y enfermedades tropica Habana Cultural, T. **1**: 89-90.

Gaxiola, Vinicio: 1946. Aspectos clínicos de la onchocercosis, México, Tesis.

Garnham, P. C. C.: 1948. Report of a Meeting of The Ross Institute Industrial Adviso Committee, January 6, London School of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine, pp. 12-

Giaquinto Mira, Mario: 1934. Sulla presenza delle microfilarie di "Onchocerca caecutie Brumpt" nel nervo optico, Riforma Méd. **50**: 858-861.

Giaquinto Mira, Mario, Diaz, Francisco, and Estevez, P. Carlos: 1935. Ensayos terapé ticos en la onchocerciasis, Bol. San. de Guat. **6**: 1001-1012.

Giaquinto Mira, Mario, Diaz, Francisco, and Estevez, P. Carlos: 1935. Ensayos terapé ticos en la onchocerciasis, Bol. San. de Guat. **42**: 975-1007.

Giaquinto Mira, Mario: 1937. Contributo agli studi sul problema della transmissione del onchocercosis nel Guatemala, Ann. d'ig. **47**: 109-125.

Gibbins, E. G., and Loewenthal, L. J. A.: 1933. Cutaneous Onchocerciasis in a Simuliu Damnosum-Infested Region of Uganda, Ann. Trop. Med. **27**: 489-496.

Gibbins, E. G., 1937. Simuliidae of the Buganda Eastern and Western Provinces Uganda, Bull. Ent. Res. **28**: 289-309.

Gibbins, E. G.: 1938. The Mouth-Parts of the Female in Simulium Damnosum Theobal With Special Reference to the Transmission of Onchocerca Volvulus Leuckar Ann. Trop. Med. **32**: 9-20.

González Castro, Jose: 1946. Filáridos humanos y sus filariosis, Med. colon., Madrid 28-56.

González Guzmán, Ignacio: 1930. Algunos datos para la hematología de la onchocercosi Arch. Anat. Fisiol., Grales, México **2**: 81-88.

González Guzmán, Ignacio: 1934. Estudios histopatológicos y nucleolares sobre los tejido onchocercósicos, Rev. Mex. de Biol. **14**: 51-88.

González Herrejon, Salvador: 1930. Algo de mucho interés en la investigación de Onchocercosis, Hosp. gen. Méx. **4**: 263-265.

Ganzález Herrejon, Salvador: 1936. Estado actual del problema de la Oncocercosis e la República Mexicana, Bol. Ofic. san. Panam. **8**: 735-743.

González Herrejon, Salvador: 1938. Estado actual del problema de la Oncocercosis en República Mexicana, Pasteur, Méx. **2**: 88-92.

Graham, Scott J.: 1945. Onchocerciasis. A Study of Ocular Complications in 342 Africa Cases, Am. J. Ophth. 28, 6:

Guerrero, P.: 1922. Relaciones entre el mixoedema y la filaria, onchocerca, clorodermias Juven. méd., Guat. **18**: 326-336.

Gutierrez Villegas, Luis: 1931. Reacción de fijación de complemento, con la sangre d enfermos de Onchocercosis, Medicina, México **11**: 366-371.

Hardwicke, C.: 1928. Onchocerciasis in Southern Mexico, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **21**: 495.

Hissette, Jean: 1938. Onchocerciasis in Africa and Central America; Ocular Onchocerciations oculaires au Congo Belge, Ann. Soc. belge de med. trop. **12**: 433-529.

Hissette, Jean: 1938. Onchocerciasis in Africa and Central America; Ocular Onchocercasis, Am. J. Trop. Med. (supp.) **18**: 58-90.

Hoffman, W. A.: 1939. Culicoides Filariferus, New Species; Intermediate Host of an Unidentified Filaria From Southwestern Mexico, Puerto Rico J. Pub. Health & Trop. Med. **15**: 172-174.

Hoffmann, Carlos C.: 1925. Nota preliminar acerca de la existencia de la Onchocerca caecutiens en el Sur de México, Bol. Inst. hig., Méx. **2**: 27-29.

Hoffmann, Carlos C.: 1930. Investigaciones sobre la transmisión de la onchocercosis de Chiapas, An. Inst. Biol., Méx. **1**: 59-62.

Hoffmann, Carlos C.: 1930. Nuevas investigaciones acerca de la transmisión de la onchocercosis de Chiapas, Rev. méx. de biol. **10**: 131-140.

Hoffmann, Carlos C.: 1930. Estudios entomológicos y parasitológicos acerca de la onchocercosis de Chiapas, Salubridad **1**: 669-697.

Hoffmann, Carlos C.: 1930. Nota relativa a la transmisión de la onchocercosis. Hosp. gen., Mex. 4: 388-389.

Hoffmann, Carlos C.: Un simulium nuevo de la zona cáfetera de Chiapas, An. Inst. Biol., Méx. 1: 51-54.

Hoffmann, Carlos C.: 1931. Los simúlidos de la región onchocercosa de Chiapas, An. Inst. Biol., Méx. 1: 293-306.

Hoffmann, Carlos C.: 1930. Über Onchocerca im Süden von Mexiko und die Weiterentwicklung ihrer Mikrofilarien in Eusimulium Mooseri, Arch. f. Schiffs- u. Tropen-Hyg. 34: 461-472.

Hoffmann, Carlos C.: 1931. Los simúlidos de la región onchocercosa de Chiapas, An. Inst. Biol., Méx. 2: 207-218.

Hoffmann, Carlos C., and Vargas, Luis: 1931. Nuevos comunicaciones acerca de la onchocercosis de Chiapas, Rev. méx. de biol. 11: 127-147.

Hoffmann, Carlos C., and Vargas, Luis: 1932-33. Algunas observaciones de experimentación terapéutica con la Atebrina Bayer en el Paludismo, la Onchocercosis y otros padecimientos, Bol. Inst. Hig. Méx. 1: 57-65.

Hurtado, Juarez: 1934. Contribución al conocimiento de la onchocercosis en México, Fac. de Medicina, México, Tesis.

Joyeux, C., and Sautet, J.: 1937. Contribution à l'étude de la culture des microfilares, Compt. rend. Soc. de biol. 126: 361-362.

Larumbe, J. E.: 1930. Causas de la ceguera en Tiltepec, Oaxaca, Medicina, México 20: 179-188.

Larumbe, J. E.: 1930. La onchocercosis en Oaxaca, An. Soc. méx. de oftal. y oto-rino-laring. 8: 16-26.

Lorenzana, R. Luis: 1941. La Onchocercosis, An. Esc. Nac. de Ciens. Biol., Mex. 2: 285-328.

MacFie, J. W. S., and Corson, J. F.: 1922. A New Species of Filarial Larva Found in the Skin of Natives in the Gold Coast, Am. Trop. M. A. Parasitol. 16: 465-471.

Mackie, Thomas T., Hunter, G. W., III, and Worth, C. B.: 1945. A Manual of Tropical Medicine, Philadelphia and London, W. B. Saunders Co., pp. 349-355.

Marroquin, Ernesto G.: 1940. Anotaciones respecto a la evolución del huevo de Onchocerca caecutiens, Bol. San. de Guat. 11: 24-26.

Martinez-Báez, M.: 1935. Sur la structure histologique des nodules à Onchocerca volvulus et à O. caecutiens, Ann. de parasitol. 13: 207-230.

Martinez C. Domingo: 1931. Algo sobre la onchocercosis, conreferencias especiales al foco de Oaxaca, Escuela Nacional de Médicina, México, Thesis.

Mazzotti, Luis, and Osorio, Maria Teresa: 1943. Experimentación sobre pruebas alérgicas intracutáneas en el diagnóstico de la oncocercosis, Rev. d. Inst. salub. y enferm. trop. 4: 353-357.

Mazzotti, L., and Hewit, R. I.: 1948. Tratamiento de la oncocercosis por el cloruro de 1-dietilcarbamil-4-metilpiperazina (hetrazán), Medicina, Mexico 28: 39-42.

Mohammed, A. S.: 1931: Contribution to the Study of the Pathology and Morbid Histology of Human and Bovine Onchocerciasis, Ann. Trop. Med. 25: 215-298.

Mohammed, A. S.: 1931. The Transmission of Human and Bovine Onchocerciasis, Ann. Trop. Med. 25: 509-519.

Molina Izquierdo, Tacito: 1919. Rapport on onchocerciasis, Am. J. Ophth. 2: 4.

Mora, C. F.: 1922. Trastornos psíquicos en un caso de Onchocercosis, Juven. méd., Guat. 19: 522-524.

Mühlens, Peter: 1932. Infecciones por filarias en la América Central y del Sur, Rev. méd. german.-ibero-am. 5: 253-268.

Mühlens, Peter: 1936. Mitteilungen aus der Praxis ein fall von Onchocerca volvulus bei einem Deutschen aus Kamerum, Arch. f. Schiffs- u. Tropen-Hyg. 40: 28-32.

Najera Angulo, L.: 1936. La Onchocerca volvulus en Fernando Poo, Primer Congreso Nacional de Sanidad., Actas 4, Madrid, pp. 241-293.

Nettel, Roberto F.; 1941. Onchocercosis. Los nódulos de localización difícil (Onchocerca caecutiens Brumpt), Medicina, México 21: 409-413.

Nettel, Roberto F.: 1943. Onchocercosis. Vías de invasión del ojo, Medicina, México 23: 368-373.

Nettel, Roberto F.: 1944. Onchocercosis. Biopsia y su interpretación clínica, Medicina, México 24: 265-273.

Nettel, Roberto F.: 1945. Contribución al estudio de la distribución de los simúlidos en el estado de Chiapas, Medicina, México 25: 455-459.

Nettel, Roberto F.: 1945. Importancia del xenodiagnóstico y de la investigación de microfilarias en su fase de transición, Medicina, México 25: 194-203.

Nettel, Roberto F.: 1947. Contribución al estudio del tratamiento de la onchocercosis, Medicina, México 27: 53-69.

Ochoa, M. M.: 1931. Contribución al estudio epidemiológico de la Onchocerca caecutiens, Bol. de la Dirección General de Salud Pública, Guat. 1: 619-627.

Ochoterena, Isaac: 1927. Contribución al conocimiento de la onchocerca en México, Rev. mex. de biol. 7: 55-68.

Ochoterena, Isaac: 1930. Contribución para el conocimiento de la onchocercosis e México, Hosp. gen., Méx. 4: 351-352.

Ochoterena, Isaac: 1930. Nota acerca del fototactismo de las microfilarias de onchocerc volvulus caecutiens, An. Inst. Biol. Méx. 1: 307-308.

Ochoterena, Isaac: 1930. Estudio anatómico de las microfilarias de onchocerca volvulu caecutiens por medio de las coloraciones vitales, An. Inst. Biol., Méx. 1: 309 312.

Ochoterena, Isaac: 1930. Contribución al conocimiento de la histología del ojo oncho cercoso, An. Inst. Biol., Méx. 1: 205-213.

Ochoterena, Isaac: 1931. Proceso histológico de formación de los fibromas onchocercosos An. Inst. Biol., Méx. 2: 109-115.

Pacheco Luna, Rafael: 1918. Disturbances of Vision in Patients Harboring Certain Filarial Tumours, Am. J. Ophth., St. Louis 1: 2.

Pacheco Luna, Rafael: 1919. Disturbances of Vision in Patients Harboring Filaria Tumours, Am. J. Ophth., St. Louis 2:

Pacheco Luna, Rafael: 1936. Manifestaciones clínicas de la visión en la onchocercosis, Rev. Guat. Méd. 1: 9.

Pacheco Luna, Rafael: 1940. Historia del descubrimiento de la onchocercosis, Guat. Médica 5: 8-10.

Pacheco Luna, Rafael: 1942. Dos casos de oncocercosis estudiados después de 24 años de aparente curación, An. Soc. mex. de oftal. y oto-rino-laring. **17**: 14-17.

Pardo, Ramon: 1927. A propósito de los ciegos de Tiltepec, Gac. méd. Mex. **58**: 195-205.

Parsons, A. C.: 1908. Filaria volvulus Leuckart, Its Distribution, Structure and Pathological Effects, Parasitology **1**: 359-363.

Peña Trejo, Francisco: 1932. Nota sobre la onchocercosis (San Salvador), Bol. Ofic. san. panam. **2**: 709.

Pittaluga, G., and Goyanes, J.: 1932. Contribución al estudio de la Onchocerca volvulus, Méd. Paises Cálidos. Madrid **5**: 24.

Puig Solanes, M., Fonte Barcena, A., and Quiróz, J. A.: 1945. Investigación oftalmológica en la zona oncocercosa de Chiapas, Salub. y asist. **2**: 69-96.

Puig Solanes, M.: 1946. Estado actual del problema clínico ocular de la oncocercosis, Rev. méd. d. Hosp. gen. **8**: 399-412.

Puig Solanes, M., et al.: 1948. Oncocercosis, Universidad de México.

Quevedo, Arturo: 1941. Ocular Onchocerciasis, Am. J. Ophth. **24**: 1185-1189.

Railliet A., Henry A.: 1910. Les Onchocerques. Nematodes parasites du tissu conjunctif, Compt. rend. Soc. de biol. **68**: 248, 251.

Reti, A.: 1942. Mixoedema y Filaria, Juven. méd., Guat. **19**: 471-474.

Rifkin, Harold, and Thomson, Kenneth J.: 1945. Structural Changes in Early Filariasis, Arch. Path. **40**: 220-224.

Riveroll Noble, Bertha: 1947. Informe preliminar del estudio histopatológico de dos ojos oncocercosos, Bol. Ofic. san. panam. **26**: 596-606.

Robles, Rodolfo: 1917. Enfermedad nueva en Guatemala, Juven. méd., Guat. **17**: 97.

Robles, Rodolfo: 1919. Onchocercose humaine au Guatemala produisant la cecite et l'erysipéle littoral, Bull. Soc. path. exot. Par. **12**: 441-460.

Rodenwaldt, J.: 1912. Fieberhafte Abszesse mit Onchocerca volvulus und Notizen zur Morphologie des Parasiten, Arch. f. Schiffs- u. Tropen-Hyg. **16**: 30-31.

Rodhain, J., and Valcke, G.: 1935. Quatre nouveaux cas de parasitisme par l'onchocerca volvulus chez l'Europeen, Ann. Soc. belge. de med. trop. **15**: 361-365.

Rodhain, J., and Gravilov, W.: 1935. Un cas de localisation profonde de ''microfilaria volvulus,'' Ann. Soc. belge de med. trop. **15**: 551-560.

Rodhain, J.: 1936. Contribution à létude de la localisation ganglionnaire des microfilaria de ''Onchocerca volvulus,'' Ann. Soc. belge de méd. trop. **16**: 253-271.

Rodhain, J., and Gravilov, W.: 1937. Les localisations tissulaires de Microfilaria volvulus (Leuckart), Nocht Festschr. pp. 513-516.

Rosal, Rodolfo: 1940. Onchocercosis americana y onchocercosis africana, Guat. Méd. 5: 24-25.

Roubaud, E., and Jannot, E.: 1920. Presence d'Onchocerca volvulus dans un absces sus-pubien. Quelques précisions morphologiques sur le parasite, Bull. Soc. path. exot., Par. 13: 252-254.

Ruiz R., F.: 1944. Datos para la exploración clínica del oncocercoso, Bol. Ofic. san. panam. 23: 1081-1088.

Ruiz R., F.: 1945. Contribución al estudio de la eosinofilia en la oncocercosis, Sugestiones, Méx. **114**: 16-21.

Ruiz R., F.: 1947. Tratamiento experimental en la oncocercosis, Con el ''naphuride sodium,'' Medicina, México **27**: 475-476.

Ruiz R., F.: 1947. Estado actual del tratamiento de la oncocercosis, Medicina, México **27**: 245-250.

Ruiz R., F.: 1948. Datos para el diagnóstico de la oncocercosis en su fase inicial, Medicina, México **28**: 67-69.

Saenz, C. F.: 1922. Dos observaciones sobre Onchocercosis, Juven. med., Guat. **19**: 531-532.

Salubridad, Depto: 1930. Estado actual del estudio de la onchocercosis en Méx., Bol. Ofic. san Panam., Washington, D. C. **9**: 11.

Sandground, J. H.: 1934. On the Validity of the Various Species of the Genus Onchocerca Diesing in Onchocerciasis—With Special Reference to the Central American Form of Disease. Contributions From the Department of Tropical Medicine and the Institute for Tropical Biology and Medicine, Harvard University **6**: 133-172.

Sandground, J. H.: 1938. Helminthological Observations and Their Bearing on Certain Aspects of Biology Onchocerca in Onchocerciasis in Africa and Central America, Am. J. Trop. Med. **18**: 91-115.

Sharp, N. A. D.: 1926. A Contribution to the Study of Onchocerca volvulus Leuckart, With Some Observations on Its Prevalence in Nigeria, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **19**: 373-388.

Sharp, N. A. D.: 1927. A New Site for Onchocerva Volvulus, Lancet **2**: 1290.

Silva, Rafael: 1932. Ocular Onchocercosis, South. M. J. **25**: 113-117.

Smart, John: 1935. The Internal Anatomy of the Black-Fly, Simulium Ornatum Mg., Ann. Trop. Med. **29**: 161-170.

Snodgrass, R. E.: 1943. The Feeding Apparatus of Biting and Disease Carrying Flies; a War Time Contribution to Medical Entomology, Smithsonian Miscellaneous Collections **104**: 1.

Stains, G. S., and Knowlton, G. F.: 1934. A Taxonomic and Distributional Study of Simulidae of Western United States, Ann. Ent. Soc. Am. **36**: 259-280.

Strong, Richard P.: 1931. Onchocercosis en Guatemala. Preliminary Report, United Fruit Company Medical Department **20**: 152-160.

Strong, Richard P.: 1932. Onchocercosis in Guatemala, United Fruit Company Medical Department Twentieth Annual Report, Boston, Mass.

Strong, Richard P., Sanground, J. H., Bequaert, J. C., and Muñoz Ochoa, M.: 1934. Onchocerciais. With Special Reference to the Central American Form of the Disease, Cambridge, Harvard University Press.

Strong, Richard P.: 1938. Onchocerciasis in Africa and Central America, Am. J. Trop. Med. **18**: 1-57.

Strong, Richard P.: 1938. Onchocerciasis in Africa and Central America, Am. J. Trop. Med. (supp.) **18**: 1-57.

Strong, Richard P.: 1945. In Stitt's Diagnosis, Prevention and Treatment of Tropical Diseases, vol. 2, Philadelphia, The Blakiston Co., pp. 1350-1378.

Toledo Somoza, Efrain: 1937. Campaña sanitaria contra la onchocercosis, Medicina, México **17**: 376, 398, 449.

Torres Estrada, Antonio: 1940. Hallazgo de un parásito filariforme en el humor acuoso de una paciente oncocercosa, operada de catarata, Gac. méd. de México **70**: 572-581.

Torres Estrada, Antonio: 1942. Posibilidad de observar con el oftalmoscopio las microfilarias del vítreo en los pacientes afectados de oncocercosis, Gac. méd. de México **72**: 98-106.

Torres Estrada, Antonio: 1942. Patogenia de la queratitis punteada de la oncocercosis, Gac. méd. de México **72**: 609-618.

Torroella, Juan Luis: 1930. Contribución al estudio de la onchocercosis en sus manifestaciones oculares, An. Inst. Biol., Méx. **1**: 201-203.

Torroella, Juan Luis: 1930. Contribución al estudio de la onchocercosis en sus manifestaciones oculares, Hosp. gén. Méx. **4**: 438-440.

Torroella, Juan Luis: 1931. Nota sobre la terapéutica de la onchocercosis ocular, Medicina, Mexico **11**: 761-762.

Torroella, Juan Luis: 1931. Nota sobre la observación de microfilarias de Onchocerca in vivo en el ojo humano, Hosp. gen. Méx. **5**: 863.

van den Berghe, L.: 1936. Note préliminaire sur la localisation extranodulaire de "onchocerca volvulus" chez l'homme, Ann. Soc. belge de méd. trop. **16**: 549-551.

van Hoof, L.: 1934. Serological Reactions in Onchocerciasis, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **27**: 609-617.

Vargas, Luis: 1941. Simulium lane-portoi N. N. (Simuliedae, Dept.) y lista de simúlidos mexicanos, Rev. d. Inst. salub. y enferm. trop. **2**: 115-122.

Vargas, Luis: 1941. Nota sobre el papel de algunos artrópodos en la transmisión de Onchocerca volvulus, Rev. d. Inst. salub. y enferm. trop. **2**: 365-373.

Vargas, Luis: 1941. Notas sobre la importancia sanitaria de los simúlidos y de su morfología interna, Rev. d. Inst. salub. y enferm. trop. **2**: 213-236.

Vargas, Luis: 1942. Algunas consideraciones sobre el desarrollo de Onchocerca volvulus en los simúlidos, Rev. d. Inst. salub. y enferm. trop. **3**: 57-65.

Vargas, Luis: 1943. Nombres y datos nuevos de Simúlidos del Nuevo Mundo, Rev. So Mex. de Historia Natural, Vol. I, Nos. 3-4.

Vargas, Luis. 1943. Nuevos datos, sobre simúlidos méxicanos (Dipt. Simulidae), Re d. Inst. salub. y enferm. trop. **4**: 359-370.

Vargas, Luis: 1944. Culicoides diabólicus en México. Caracteres del macho, Rev. d. Ins salub. y enferm. trop. **5**: 163-169.

Vargas, Luis: 1945. Notas sobre la oncocerciasis; el factor luz y los simúlidos adultos, Re d. Inst. salub. y enferm. trop. **6**: 61-66.

Vargas, Luis: 1945. Notas sobre la oncocerciasis; consideraciones sobre la población d simúlidos adultos, Rev. d. Inst. salub. y enferm. trop. **6**: 51-59.

Vargas, Luis: 1945. Notas sobre la oncocerciasis; algunos factores que afectan l fijación de las larvas de simúlidos, Rev. d. Inst. salub. y enferm. trop. **6**: 67-70

Vargas, Luis: 1945. Simúlidos del Nuevo Mundo, Monografía No. 1 del Instituto d Salubridad y Enfermedades Tropicales, Méx.

Vargas, Luis: 1945. Notas sobre la oncocerciasis; epilepsia y oncocerciasis, Gac. méd. d México **75**: 236-242.

Vargas, Luis: 1945. Cuatro nuevas especies y otros datos sobre simúlidos de México, Rev d. Inst. salub. y enferm. trop. **6**: 71-82.

Vargas, Luis: 1945. Notas sobre la oncocerciasis; algunos consideraciones epidemiologicas, Salub. y asist. **2**: 57-69.

Vargas, Luis: 1948. Los simúlidos en la transmisión de la oncocerciasis americana, Medicina, México **28**: 177-190.

Vargas, Luis, Diaz Najera, A., and Martinez Palacios, Amado: 1943. Tres simúlidos nuevos para México, Rev. d. Inst. salub. y enferm. trop. **4**: 287-292.

Vargas, Luis, Martinez Palacio, Amado, and Diaz Najera, A.: 1944. Simulium (Gigantodax) wrighti, n. sp., en México (Dipt. Simuliidae), Rev. d. Inst. salub. y enferm. trop. **5**: 37-41.

Vega, Crisoforo: 1946. Anotaciones bibliográficas acerca de la oncocercosis en México y Guatemala, 1917-1945, Universidad N. A. Mex., pp. 1-20.

Velez, Daniel M.: 1930. Notas complementarias acerca de la onchocercosis en México, Pasteur, Méx. **1**: 247-250.

Vera, B. Rodolfo: 1938. Estado actual de los conocimientos sobre la oncocercosis en México, Escuela Médico Militar, México, Tesis.

Villalobos, Samuel: 1928. La onchocercosis en Montecristo de Guerrero, Chis. Bol. Dept. Salub. Pub. Méx. **1**: 9-28.

Villalobos, Samuel: 1930. Datos para un capítulo de la historia de la onchocercosis en México, Pasteur, Méx. **2**: 250-255.

Wright, Willard H., and Murdock, John R.: 1944. Intradermal Reactions Following the Use of Dirofilaria Immitis Antigen in Persons Infected With Onchocerca Volvulus, Am. J. Trop. Med. **24**: 199-202.

CHAPTER 41

DRACONTIASIS OR GUINEA WORM DISEASE

Alfred E. A. Hudson

DEFINITION

Dracontiasis is the invasion of the tissues of man by a nematode worm, *Dracunculus medinensis.*

HISTORICAL REVIEW

The worm *Dracunculus medinensis* has been known to man probably longer than any other parasite. It has been called by many names: the Medina or guinea worm, the serpent or dragon worm. Velsh in 1674 referred to it as *Filaria medina;* Linnaeus, in 1758, as *Filaria medinensis.* Several writers (Strong, 1945) are of the opinion that this is the fiery serpent that caused the Israelites so much trouble during their stay on the shores of the Red Sea (Numbers 31; referred to by Moses). It has also been suggested that it was Moses who taught the sorely oppressed Israelites how to extract the worm by winding it on a small stick.

There is no definite proof nor reason to believe that *D. medinensis* is the fiery serpent that troubled the Israelites. The worm enters the human body in drinking water containing the infected intermediate host, the Cyclops. The incubation period is 10 to 14 months in the human being. Inasmuch as the Israelites complained about lack of water it seems unlikely that this worm is the fiery serpent referred to, especially when so very many were bitten or troubled by the serpents spoken of in the Bible.

The writings of Agatharchides, 140 B.C. (Strong, 1945), contain mention of the word *Drakontion.* Plutarch, Galen, and Leonides referred to this condition, and Paulus Aegineta and Avicenna not only descibed the symptoms and invasion, but they also described the method of extracting the worm. Pigafetta (1598), in his account of his journey through the Congo, mentions his observations of infection with this parasite.

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

Africa in ancient days was well stocked with this infection; to this day there are highly endemic areas in a number of its tropical regions, the Nile valley, Arabia (the interior and along the Red Sea coast), Uganda, Equatorial Africa, all the way from Mauritania to Gabon; Persia, Turkestan, India, especially the west coast, around Bombay, the Central Provinces, patches of the Northwest Provinces and certain areas of Madras, chiefly the west of Madura, are endemic centers. In the eastern half of India the worm is very rare (Chopra, 1936).

Strong (1945) states that distribution in indigenous areas is very patchy. In India the incidence per 100,000 varies from 6 in Bengal to 3,964 in Mysore and West Madras (Lane and Low in Strong, 1945). In Colaba district of Bombay (Pradham, 1930), it was found that 10 per cent of the population suffers annually with this parasite, while in Deccan at certain seasons nearly one-half of the population is bothered with the worm. According to Manson-Bahr (1944) there are places on the west coast of Africa where nearly every native has one or more of the worms in his body. In the southwest part of the Nizam's dominions at Sholapur lives some 15,000 people, 95 per cent of whom are acting as host to the *D. medinensis* (Mirza, 1932).

Infection has visited the Caribbean, the Guianas, and a small area of south Brazil. It was formerly believed to have been endemic in Fiji. Curaçao, Demerara, and Surinam have in the past been endemic regions. Chitwood (1933) found reports of 10 cases of invasion b *D. medinensis* in human beings in the United States, 4 of whom were of foreign origin. Ther was some doubt as to whether the cause of the infection in the remaining 6 was in realit *D. medinensis,* since it was shown by Chitwood (1933) that a species of Dracunculus morphologically identical with *D. medinensis* occurs in the fox, raccoon (Chandler, 1942), and mink in Iowa, Nebraska, New York, and Pennsylvania, and in Ontario, Canada. This could possibly have been the guinea worm.

D. medinensis has also been found in the fox in the United States by Benbrook (Strong, 1945). This parasite has been found as a natural infection in dogs, horses, cattle, polecats, leopards, wolves, gibbons, and baboons from the Old World. It is highly improbable that here in the United States man will become infected since the means of transmitting the parasite are lacking and our public health standards as now existing are a distinct barrier to completion of the life cycle by this parasite.

ETIOLOGY

The Parasite—Dracunculus Medinensis (Linnaeus 1758)

Synonyms.—*Gordius medinensis,* Linnaeus, 1758; *Vena medinensis* (Linnaeus 1758) Gallandant, 1773; *Dracunculus graecorum,* Gruner, 1777; *Filaria medinensis* (Linnaeus, 1758); Gmelin, 1790; *Furia venamedinensis* (Linnaeus 1758) Modeer 1795; *Fuellebornius medinensis* (Linnaeus, 1758) Leiper, 1926.

Dracunculus medinensis is classified in the subfamily Dracunculineae (Stiles, 1907), family Dracunculidae Leiper, 1912. The females of this family are 35 to 50 times larger than the males. Members of the genus Dracunculus have a cephalic shield; the vulva is near the head. The adult female worms are elongated, cylindrical, and whitish or milky in color. At the anterior extremity the worm is bluntly rounded; at the posterior extremity it is recurved. Many believe that this formation enables the parasite to retain its hold in tissue. The cuticula is smooth and unmarked.

The mouth is minute, triangular in shape, and lies in an oval or quadrate prominence surrounded by an inner and an outer circle containing papillae. The mouth opens directly into the narrow esophagus, merging with the glandular esophagus just in front of the cervical papillae, which Manson-Bahr refers to as a single-bulb esophagus. The glandular esophagus is continued into the cylindrical mid-intestine, which empties by a short conical rectal opening consisting of a very minute orifice. The uterus seems to occupy nearly the entire body of the mature female, and is densely packed with coiled embryos. The vagina apparently becomes obliterated in the mature worm after impregnation. The uterine tubes (Looss cited by Strong, 1945) open into the posterior part of the esophagus by a common duct, prolapse of the esophagus through the mouth taking place at the time of parturition. After delivery of the larvae, it is withdrawn.

Leiper (1907) does not hold with the statements above, but believes that the worm discharges its young by prolapse of the uterus, and that this does not take place through the mouth but by rupture just outside the circumoral ring of the papillae, which possibly may represent the vagina.

The **adult female worm** is 75 to 120 cm. long by about 1.5 to 1.7 mm. wide. Napier (1943) and Manson-Bahr (1944) gave the size of the female as 32 to 120 cm. by 1.5 mm.

It is only recently that definite information has been presented concerning the **adult male parasites.** Since the male had not been discovered in man, it was suggested that it disappeared after impregnating the female worm. A single male worm, measuring 40 mm., was supposedly found from a natural infection in India. In 1906, Leiper, working in Africa, fed a monkey with Cyclops containing infective larvae of *D. medinensis.* Daniels (1906), 6 months later, found within the monkey 5 immature worms, 2 males and 3 females. These worms were placed in the Museum of the London School of Tropical Medicine; but no description has so far been published.

Fairley (1925) experimentally fed 22 monkeys *(Macacus sinicus)* with infected Cyclops, but without success.

It has been reported that Brug infected Cyclops with the larvae of the guinea worm, then fed these to a gibbon *(Hylobates leucisus)* and more than a year later the seemingly uninfected gibbon was killed and from it was extracted a full grown female *D. medinensis.* No males were found.

The **larvae** of *D. medinensis* do not circulate in the blood or lymph, but remain in the body of the parent worm, and are discharged only at the time of parturition and when the head of the worm comes in contact with water, or when the worm is ruptured during extraction. The **life span** of the larvae in clear water is 6 days, in muddy water or moist earth 2 to 3 weeks. The larvae are filiform, flattened, with long slender tails and rounded heads. The transverse striations of the cuticle are plainly seen.

The larvae have no boring apparatus or other means of penetration of the tissues, so that they are unable to enter the integument of their intermediate host, Cyclops (Strong, 1945). They are 550 to 750 by 17 microns. The alimentary canal has a rudimentary anus and a bulbous esophagus. There are two glands at the root of the tail. The embryos cannot swim in water, but sink, coil, and release again, moving by a side-to-side lashing of the tail and a tadpole-like movement of the body.

TRANSMISSION

There is no insect host involved in the transmission of *D. medinensis* to man; in this way the method of infection differs from that of other filariidae. As the anterior or head end of the adult female nears the human skin, a papule is formed in the dermis, rapidly becoming a vesicle. Shortly afterward, the blister ruptures; if the part comes into contact with water, the head of the parasite is thrust out through the opening in the blister. Prolapse of the uterus of the parasite then takes place through the ruptured anterior wall of the mouth, and actively motile, first stage larvae are discharged in series into the water. The jerky movements of these embryos attract the Cyclops, as a fly attracts a trout, and the larvae are swallowed by the Cyclops. The crustacean may contain as many as 20 larvae, but if more than 4 are present, the larvae seem to die. While there is no change in their size while in the intermediate host, 2 or 3 ecdyses take place. The tail is absorbed, the larvae become cylindrical, and the posterior extremity trilobed. Development requires 4 to 6 weeks. When they are 1 mm. long, they acquire a simple muscular esophagus.

The infected Cyclops is swallowed by man in drinking water containing these copepods. The gastric juices of the body dissolve the Cyclops, and the larvae become active and burst out. Later these larvae pass through the walls of the stomach and the duodenum and migrate through the tissues, where the developed male and female worms lodge in the subcutaneous connective tissue. The female worms are mature in 10 to 14 months and are then ready to give up their young. It has been suggested that after the male fertilizes the female, it dies and disappears. Craig and Faust (1945) have suggested that the female guinea worm may not even require fertilization to produce viable progeny.

The Crustacean Intermediate Host

Class Crustacea, subclass Copepoda, order Eucopepoda, genera Cyclops and Diaptomus (water fleas).

Cyclops.—The species of this genus measure about one-twelfth of an inch (just visible to the naked eye). They are pear-shaped, the broad end being anterior. They are armed with bristles, the principal organs of locomotion for the Cyclops. This small water flea propels itself in short jerks by rapidly flexing these appendages. The alimentary tract is a simple tube which extends from the mouth to the anus. A dilated portion of this tube is referred to as the stomach. It is here that the embryos of the *D. medinensis* are found. At least 12 different species can serve as intermediate hosts for the parasite.

The known intermediate hosts of the guinea worm are *Cyclops coronatus, C. bicuspidatus, C. quadricornis, C. prasinus, C. viridis, C. serrulatus, C. strenuus,* and *C. leuckarti.*

Manner in Which D. Medinensis Infects the Cyclops

It was Fedshenko's (Turkestan) theory that the embryo of the worm penetrates the Cyclops by piercing the exoskeleton between the segments on the ventral surface. Wenyon (Manson-Bahr, 1944) stated that he had seen this take place in his experiments conducted in the Sudan. Leiper, however, is of the opinion that such infection of the Cyclops does not take place, but that invasion of the Cyclops is by way of the alimentary tract. Leiper placed large numbers of the *D. medinensis* embryos in water, then placed several Cyclops in this same water and 6 hours later found that many of the Cyclops contained several embryos in the mid-intestine. These embryos were very active and in no way appeared to be affected by the digestive fluids of the Cyclops. Twenty-four to 48 hours after the Cyclops had been placed in the water with the embryos, the embryos had left the mid-intestine and were seen lying in the body cavity. It is interesting to note that no digested embryos were seen in the alimentary tract.

Roubaud (1929) stated that infection of the Cyclops is via the alimentary tract. Roubaud further stated that the nauplius larva of the Cyclops is as susceptible to the infection as are the adult Cyclops, and that as many as 3 or 4 embryos are commonly found in a single Cyclops larva. Roubaud (Strong, 1945) later stated that the embryos of *D. medinensis* show no development in the body cavity of the Cyclops even after 3 months. Endemic dracontiasis, according to Roubaud, depends upon a very complex equilibrium of relationship between (1) the time required for the annual development of the female *D. medinensis* in man, (2) the regular recurrence of the necessary seasonal conditions, and (3) the condition of human existence which favor transmission of Cyclops. These 3 factors hence have a definite bearing on the prevention of the disease in man.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Infection in human beings results from ingesting water containing the Cyclops which contain the embryos of the guinea worm. The parasite is common in small open wells, step-down wells, or any open water places where infected persons can walk or wade, and which contain the intermediate host, the Cyclops. As most infections in man produce lesions of the legs and feet, dissemination of the larvae is facilitated by the step-wells.

It is a common custom in India for people performing religious ablutions to rinse out their mouths with water. This increases the infection if the water is drawn from step-wells. All persons ingesting water containing the infected Cyclops are susceptible to guinea worm invasion. According to Manson-Bahr (1944), 38 per cent of the Cyclops in the step-wells in India are infected, and the infected Cyclops lie at the bottom of the wells. Therefore, more people are infected in the dry season when the wells are practically empty.

Washing clothes in wells containing infected Cyclops contributes to infection. The great mass of infections in India occur between the months of February and May. It is obvious that one invasion by the guinea worm does not protect from another. Multiple invasions are common.

Sites of Appearance of the Worm

The adult female tends to travel toward the legs and feet. The female worm appears in the extremities in 85 to 90 per cent of cases. Manson-Bahr (1944) states that in India the worm has been known to occur on the backs of water carriers who carry the water skins on their backs. The worm has been observed in the penis and scrotum. In rare cases it has been found in the arms, chest, and in the orbit. Claree (Strong, 1945) has reported a case in which the guinea worm appeared in the tongue.

According to Forbes (Strong, 1945), the head of the guinea worm appears in 77 per cent of the cases in the legs; 22 per cent, in the feet; 9 per cent, in the arms and hands; 4 per cent, in the abdominal wall; 4.5 per cent, in the scrotum; 3.5 per cent, in the back and buttocks; 1 per cent, in the eye; and 1 per cent in the penis.

Fairley (1925) reports that in 140 persons infected with the guinea worm (harboring a total of 266 worms), the parasite appeared at the surface of the skin of the leg in 218 persons, in the arms in 15, in the back in 11, in the buttocks in 5, and in the scrotum in 4.

SYMPTOMS

The period of incubation in man is 10 to 14 months. During this time the female worm reaches the adult stage, and no symptoms appear during this time. Lane and Low (Strong, 1945) state that in some cases the worm has caused indefinite pains and aching sensations as well as tingling sensations and a "feeling as if a cord were under the skin." As a rule, however, no symptoms occur until a few hours before the gravid female makes her appearance near the surface of the skin. The early symptoms consist of a local erythema, sometimes a slight fever, and a generalized urticaria, with intense itching. Nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea may follow (Fairley, 1925). In many cases there are intense dyspnea, asthma-like symptoms, and often giddiness and syncope. According to Fairley and Liston (1924) these symptoms are the result of the toxic secretions of the worm, which are elaborated by it at the time of parturition and quickly absorbed by the host. It has been said that the early symptoms perhaps resemble histamine poisoning. The symptoms vary greatly, of course, depending upon the patient's susceptibility. A few hours after the onset of the systemic symptoms, the local lesion or lesions appear. Sometimes, however, the lesion appears with the symptoms. The lesion commences by the formation of small papules, or ofttimes a single papule, from the center of which the skin becomes raised and a small vesicle or blister appears. This inflamed area increases in size during the next day or two. The blister and its margin very slowly become more indurated, may cover an area 2 mm. to 6 cm. in diameter. This blister usually ruptures if it is not opened, and shows a small erosion and small perforation. Often the head of the parasite is seen protruding from this opening. If the head is not seen and the opening is sprayed with a stream of cold water (from a sponge or syringe), in a very few seconds a drop of milky fluid often exudes and flows upon the surface. Sometimes instead of this milky fluid a small tube, the uterus of the worm, may be projected through the opening when sprayed with cold water. In this function the tissues of the head are often ruptured. When the uterus has extended through the opening about 1 inch, it fills with an opaque milky material, ruptures, then deflates, the fluid running over the surface of the lesion. This material contains vast numbers of the embryos of the *D. medinensis*. Fresh spraying with cold water after an hour or so will bring about the ejection of more embryos or larvae, this continuing from time to time until th worm is emptied of all its young. The expulsion of the larvae is produced b the contraction of the worm when the skin is chilled by the cold water, thereb forcing out the uterus in small lengths until it is fully emptied.

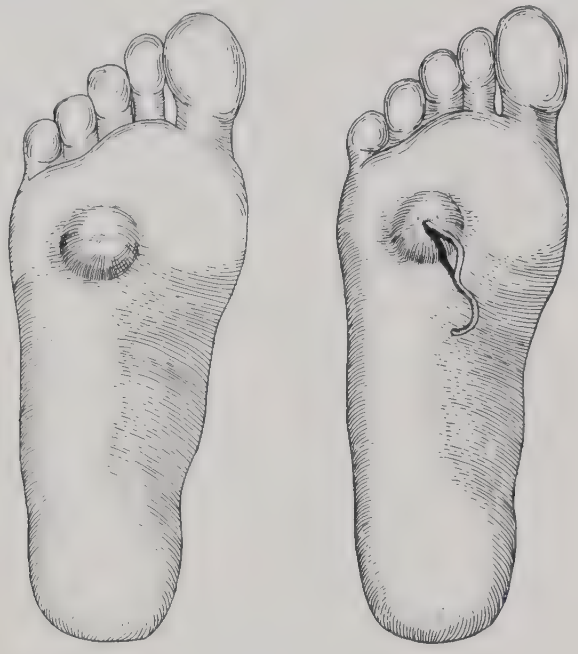


Fig. 287.—Drawing of a blister prior to appearance of worm and guinea worm protruding from blister.

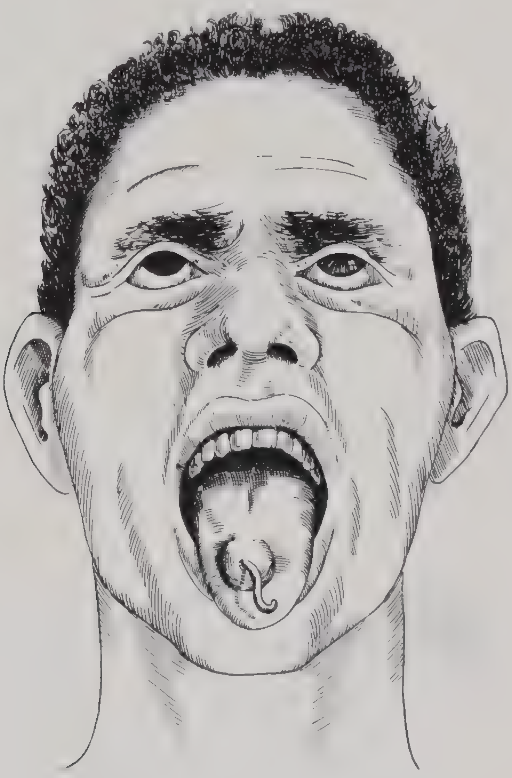


Fig. 288.—Unusual case—guinea worm protruding from tongue. Drawn from a description.

With the rupture of the blister, usually all toxic symptoms subside. Often the area around the worm becomes very much inflamed and edematous, with great pain. Cellulitis may result, due to secondary bacterial invasion.

The greatest danger in these cases of guinea worm infection is septic infection with acute cellulitis at the sites of the parasites. Often this may take the form of abscess formation without the worm's having perforated the skin, and this is likely to occur when the uterus of the worm is ruptured subcutaneously—the irritating substance producing the inflammation. More often, however, this serious complication results from rupture of the uterus after perforation of the skin has taken place, often the result of trying to extract the worm in a rough and careless manner before the uterus has had time to empty and while, perhaps, the terminal hook is deep down in the tissues. Staphylococci or streptococci, ever-present upon the skin, now gain entry into the already inflamed tissues, and a severe, often fatal, acute cellulitis is the result.

Sometimes the worm dies before reaching maturity, or the adult worm fails to come to the surface. If there is no associated sepsis, it may become absorbed or calcified, or an abscess may result. In some cases the calcified worms give rise to sciatica, synovitis, or periostitis. Pradham (1930) states that in India, near Bombay, in 23 per cent of the cases of guinea worm infection a joint is infected, often the ankle, which frequently leaves a permanent and crippling condition. When the worm is present in the lower part of the leg or foot, walking becomes impossible, as the foot swells and becomes very inflamed and tender. Sometimes the worm invades the breast, producing mastitis or a mammary abscess. If the worm should invade the scrotum and bacterial invasion take place, epididymitis or orchitis might result, with ultimate destruction of the testicles.

DIAGNOSIS

Diagnosis is often possible only when the worm shows itself at the lesion when ready to discharge its young. Often the parasite is clearly outlined just beneath the skin. At times the adult worm has been found coiled within an abscess. The larvae have been found in fluid aspirated from an affected joint.

Exact location of the living worm may be determined by radiography. Injections of Lipiodol or Collargol (Hudellet, 1919, advised using an injection of 2 c.c. of 10 per cent Collargol) renders the parasite opaque.

The blood picture is not typical, although Lane (Strong, 1945) found that eosinophilia of 13 per cent was average. Many cases, however, have shown no increase in the eosinophiles.

An intradermal test for diagnostic purposes was introduced by Ramsay (1935).

The antigen is obtained by adding 0.25 Gm. of the dried guinea worm to 100 c.c. of ether. The mixture is shaken at room temperature for 2 hours to remove the lipoids. The dried, ether-free residue is extracted by shaking for 4 hours in 100 c.c. of physiologic saline at 37° C. The mixture is centrifuged, then passed through a number 6 Seitz filter, and 0.25 c.c. of this material is used for injection.

Ramsay (1935) reported that 47.6 per cent of the persons gave a positi reaction. It is important to note that several of the patients stated that th had never been infected with the parasites. This test is not used routinely, sin it is considered far from reliable. Ramsay was unable to produce an antige which gave a reliable precipitin test.

TREATMENT

The prognosis is good, and if the worm is carefully removed no unfavorable conditions will follow.

However, if sepsis occurs, serious complications may follow. When th worm is located near a joint, permanent deformities may occur.

As soon as the worm is discovered at the surface of the skin, the patien must be put to bed and the affected part immobilized and elevated. Continued use and motion of the limb until the worm is removed may result i secondary infection.

There are several methods of treatment, all with one objective—removal of the parasite: (1) removal by winding the worm on a stick; (2) injection of drugs which lead to rapid dissolution and absorption of the worm; and (3) surgical removal.

1. The time-honored method of winding the worm around a small stick is perhaps the most used, and is considered by many as the most efficient. If the blister has not ruptured, it should be opened aseptically with fine pointed scissors and dead skin around the lesion cut off. Several thicknesses of gauze sponges or pads moistened with sterile cold water are placed over the lesion and changed at least twice a day to hasten discharge of the larvae. As soon as the worm protrudes from the lesion, a piece of silk thread, fastened to a small stick, is tied around it. Each day one or two turns are slowly made on the stick to produce extraction of the worm. Great care must be used to see that the turns are gradual, for the worm may be easily ruptured if too much force is used. Leaving the worm in place may produce serious cellulitis. Extration by this method requires a minimum of 11 days, more often 15 to 20 days. Many physicians advise against this method because of the danger of rupturing the worm, with possible resulting complications.

2. The destruction of the worm may be accomplished by injection of certain drugs, such as tartar emetic, intravenously, a dose of 1 Gm. every other day for 4 or 5 injections (Macfie, Fairley et al., 1925), Novarsenobenzol (Jeanselme and Montpellier), "Kermes" mineral (Chaigneau and Tournier) (Strong, 1945). Kermes mineral is a trisulfide of antimony. Use of these drugs is not advisable, for, besides being of little value, they have produced marked toxic reactions in several of the cases under treatment. Some workers have advised injection of chloroform or cocaine into the worm to kill it. Perchloride of mercury, injected into the worm, has been used by some. This drug kills the worm and is said also to render it sterile. All of the methods of directly injecting into the worm are difficult, as inserting the needle into the body of the worm requires no little skill on the part of the operator. The perchloride of mercury injection in a 1:1000 solution has produced good results, but it produces intense local pain and causes much irritation.

Moorthy (1933) recommends injection of a 1:1000 acriflavin solution. This drug produces no pain or irritation, nor does it cause any systemic disturbance, and it seems to give immediate freedom from the local itchiness.

Both Bauvallet and Morard (1933) condemn the method of injecting the worm. Elliot (1942) recommends injection of phenothiazine. This, to date, appears to be the drug of choice. Phenothiazine or thiodiphenylamine is dibenzo 1, 4 thiazine, closely related to methylene blue.

Phenothiazine should be injected while hot. The patient must be watched carefully for toxic symptoms, as shown by nausea, vomiting, hemolysis, and later by pallor and hematuria. Constipation seems to be a factor in poisoning by this drug. When given to constipated patients, the toxic effects are rapid and severe. The drug should not be used in persons with hepatic, renal, gastrointestinal, or cardiac diseases. On no account should it be used in treating guinea worm infections in very young children.

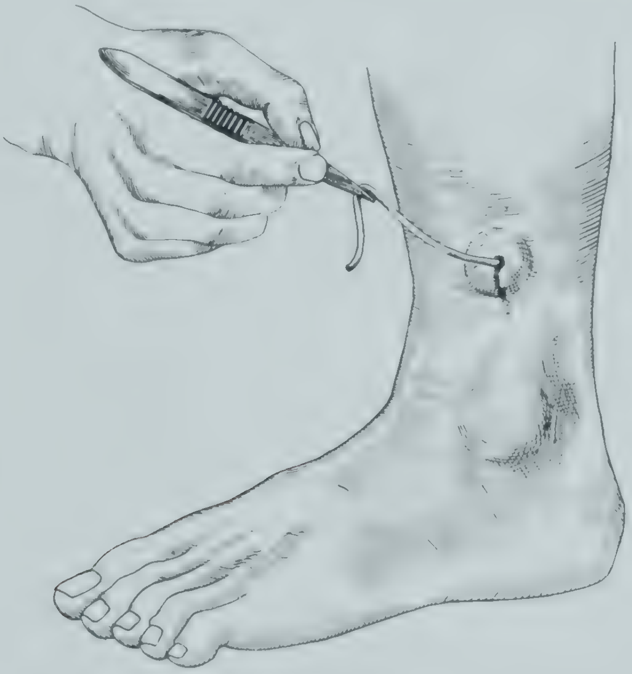


Fig. 289.—Extraction of guinea worm.

Olive oil emulsions of phenothiazine have produced good results when injected in areas around the worm. However, the oral use of phenothiazine in helminthic infections has been discontinued because of possible severe toxic reactions. This drug in the emulsion form no doubt holds much promise in the treatment of guinea worm infection. Manson-Bahr in 1938 was the first to introduce phenothiazine in the treatment of helminthic infections.

"Elliot (1942) reported on the satisfactory use of phenothiazine emulsion in the treatment in 23 cases of 59 cases of guinea worm infection which he observed in a British military hospital in West Africa." (Craig and Faust, 1945.)

The preparation of the emulsion is as follows:

"*For Dracunculiasis.*

"Triturate 2 Gm. of phenothiazine with 0.35 Gm. of lanolin in a sterile mortar with 15 c.c. of sterilized olive oil (heated to 150° C. for one hour). The addition of 5 c.c. of sterile water produces an emulsion. Add another 20 c.c of sterile olive oil, pour the emulsion into a sterilized 2 oz. bottle, seal, and autoclave at 115° C. for 30 minutes.

"*Injection.*

"(1) Assuming the lesion is on the dorsum of the left foot proceed as follows: Inject the limb with a 3 per cent solution of Novutox (Novocain) as follows: 2 c.c. into the vastus medialis muscle of the left thigh just lateral to its center. Make two similar injections, one in the calf muscles in the upper third of the leg and the other in the dorsum of the foot. (2) Shake the phenothiazine emulsion vigorously. Inject 20 c.c. of the emulsion into the vastus medialis muscle and 10 c.c. of the remaining 20 c.c. into each of the other sites into which the Novutox was injected. (3) Massage the injection sites firmly for 5 minutes.

"It is important to inject half the emulsion as near the buried worm as possible. As much as 4 Gm. of phenothiazine may be injected at one time if needed.

"This preparation should be made and sterilized just before use." (Mackie, Hunter, and Worth, 1945.)

For the treatment of the urticaria and asthma which result from the absorption of the toxins from the parasite, the subcutaneous injection of about 10 minims of a 1:1000 solution of adrenalin hydrochloride immediately eases the patient (Fairley and Liston, 1924).

PREVENTION AND CONTROL

Since infection results from drinking water containing Cyclops, which have in their body cavities larvae of *D. medinensis,* destruction of the Cyclops is important. In Africa the ponds in the neighborhood of native villages are sources of infection, while in India the step wells are the main source of infection. Prevention and control of the disease are dependent upon:

1. *Elimination of all step wells* (Leiper, 1907, and Moorthy, 1932).

2. *Destruction of the Cyclops.* Treat the water with quicklime in a dilution of 1:1000 (Pradham, 1930, and Davis, 1931). When used in a strength of one drachm per gallon, the water is potable in 2 days and is free of copepods for 14 days. Copper sulfate plus perchloron is also very effective. Caustic potash and permanganate of potash have been used with success in killing the Cyclops in the water. None of the above disinfectants will kill the eggs of the Cyclops as effectively as they will kill the adults, with the result that Cyclops reappear in the water within 30 days or so after treatment.

3. *Biologic methods of control may be used.* The placing of any small plankton-feeding minnow will tend to keep down the Cyclops. In India in the step wells Moorthy and Sweet (1936) have used *Barbus puckelli* with excellent results. These fish were added 1 month after treatment of the water with perchloron.

4. For personal prophylaxis *boiling drinking water* will destroy the larvae. *Straining the water* through coarse linen will remove the Cyclops. The latter method seems the simpler and more practical.

References

Bercovitz, Z. T.: 1944. Clinical Tropical Medicine, New York, Paul B. Hoeber, Inc.

Brumpt, E.: 1936. Precis de Parasitologie, ed. 5, Paris, Masson & Cie.

Byam, W., and Archibald, R. G.: 1921-1923. The Practice of Medicine in the Tropics, London, Oxford University Press.

Chandler, Asa C.: 1942. The Guinea Worm, Dracunculus Insignis (Leidy, 1858), a Common Parasite of Raccoons in East Texas, Reprint from Am. J. Trop. Med. **22:** 153-157.

Chandler, Asa C.: 1944. Introduction to Parasitology, ed. 7, New York and London, Chapman & Hale, Ltd.

Chitwood, B. G.: 1933. Does the Guinea-Worm Occur in North America? J. A. M. A. **100:** 802-804.

Chopra, R. N.: 1936. A Handbook of Tropical Therapeutics, Calcutta, Art Press.

Craig, C. F., and Faust, E. C.: 1945. Clinical Parasitology, ed. 4, Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger.

Davis, L. J.: 1931. Note on Some Experiments With Agents Lethal to Cyclops, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **24:** 631-633.

Elliot, M.: 1942. A New Treatment for Dracontiasis, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **35:** 291-301.

Farley, N. H., and Liston, W. G.: 1923-24. Pathology of Dracontiasis, Indian J. M. Research **11:** 915-932.

Fairley, N. H.: 1925. Studies on Guinea Worm Disease, Coll. Papers from Indian J. M. Research & Indian M. Gaz., Calcutta.

Huff, C. G.: 1943. A Manual of Medical Parasitology, Chicago, Univ. Chicago Press.

Leiper, R. T.: 1907. The Etiology and Prophylaxis of Dracontiasis, Brit. M. J. **1:** 129.

Liston, W. G.: 1937. Guinea-Worm Disease, British Encycl. Med. Pract. **6:** 61.

Mackie, T. T., Hunter, G. W., and Worth, C. B.: 1945. A Manual of Tropical Medicine, Philadelphia and London, W. B. Saunders Company.

Mackin, J. G.: 1927. Dracunculus Globocephalus n. sp., From Chelydra Serpentina, J. Parasitol. **14:** 91-94.

Manson-Bahr, P.: 1944. Manson's Tropical Diseases, ed. 12, London, Williams & Wilkins.

Mirza, M. B.: 1932. Dracontiasis (Naevu) in Sholapur (H. E. H. The Nizamis State), Proc. Muslim. Assn. Adv. Sci. **1:** 27-31.

Moorthy, V. N.: 1932. Treatment and Prophylaxis of Dracontiasis, Indian M. Gaz. **67:** 617-619.

Moorthy, V. N.: 1932. An Epidemiological and Experimental Study of Dracontiasis in the Chitaldrug District, Indian M. Gaz. **67:** 498-504.

Moorthy, V. N., and Sweet, W. C.: 1936. Biological Method for Control of Dracontiasis, India M. Gaz. **71:** 565-568.

Moorthy, V. N., and Sweet, W. C.: 1936. Note on Experimental Infection of Dogs With Dracontiasis, Indian M. Gaz. **71:** 437-442.

Moorthy, V. N.: 1937. A Redescription of Dracunculus Medinensis, J. Parasitol. **23:** 220.

Moorthy, V. N.: 1938. Observations on Development of Dracunculus Medinensis Larvae in Cyclops, Am. J. Hyg. **27:** 437, 460.

Moorthy, V. N., and Sweet, W. C.: 1938. Further Notes on the Experimental Infection of Dogs With Dracontiasis, Am. J. Hyg. **27:** 301-310.

Moorthy, V. N.: 1942. Recent Advances in Guinea Worm Studies, Reprint from the Madras Medical College Magazine 21, No. 2, January.

Napier, L. E.: 1943. The Principles and Practice of Tropical Medicine, London, W. Thacker & Co.

Nauss, R. W.: 1944. Medical Parasitology and Zoology, New York, Paul B. Hoeber, Inc.

Patton, W. S., and Evans, A. M.: 1929. Insects, Ticks, Mites, and Venomous Animals, Croydon, H. R. Grubb, Ltd.

Pradham, Y. M.: 1930. Observations on Experiments Designed to Combat Dracontiasis in Endemic Area by Col. Morison's Method of "Liming Wells," Indian J. M. Research **18:** 443-466.

Ramsay, G. W. St. C.: 1935. Observations on an Intradermal Test for Dracontiasis, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **28:** 399-404.

Rogers, L., and Megaw, J. W. D.: 1944. Tropical Medicine, ed. 5, London, J. & A. Churchill, Ltd.

Simmons, J. S., Wayne, T. F., Anderson, G. W., and Horek, H. M.: 1944. Global Epidemiology: A Geography of Disease and Sanitation, Vol. I, India and the Far East; The Pacific Area, Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott Company.

Southwell, T., and Kirshner, A.: 1938. Some Observations on Guinea Worm Larvae, Ann. Trop. Med. **32:** 193.

Strong, R. P.: 1945. Stitts Diagnosis, Prevention, and Treatment of Tropical Diseases, ed. 7., Philadelphia.

CHAPTER 42

CESTODIASIS OR DISEASES CAUSED BY TAPEWORMS (TAENIASIS, HYDATID DISEASE, HYMENOLEPIASIS, HUMAN DIPYLIDIASIS, HUMAN INERMICAPSIFERIASIS HUMAN RAILLIETINIASIS, DIPHYLLOBOTHRIASIS, SPARGANIASIS)

Pedro Kourí

Platyhelminthes, or flatworms, are metazoa with soft integument; para sitic adult forms without integument; bilaterally symmetrical; no celomi cavity; usually flat, more rarely cylindrical (Schistosoma). The majority are hermaphroditic, although some have separate sexes (Schistosoma). They are almost always tape-like and segmented (Cestoda), or leaf-shaped and not segmented (Trematoda); without digestive tract (Cestoda) or provided with an incomplete digestive tract, without anus (Trematoda); excretory system bilaterally symmetrical, ending in flame cells or *solenocytes*. The Platyhelminthes generally have organs of attachment, such as suckers and hooklets. The majority are endoparasites.

TAENIASIS SAGINATA AND SOLIUM (BEEF AND PORK TAPEWORM INFECTIONS)

Taeniasis Saginata

(Parasitism Produced by *Taenia Saginata,* the Beef Tapeworm)

Synonyms.—Beef tapeworm infection.

HISTORY

The common "unarmed" tapeworm of man was observed in ancient times. It was differentiated from *Taenia solium* by Goeze in 1872. The larval stage was apparentl first observed in cattle by Wepfer in 1675. In 1861 Leuckart first demonstrated experimentally that cattle serve as the intermediate host of this worm.

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

Taenia saginata is so common in Cuba, and *T. solium* so exceptionally rare, that we may regard the former as the only one occurring in that country. This scarcity of *T. solium* infestation is observed in almost all the countries of the world "except in the Slavic countries, Czechoslovakia and Jugoslavia." (Faust, 1929.) Faust states that infection with *T. solium* is common whever raw or inadequately cooked or processed pork is consumed b man. The frequency of *T. saginata* is probably due to the fact that beef, which is the intermediate host of *T. saginata,* is frequently eaten raw or only slightly cooked; as a result the parasites are not destroyed in the preparation of this food. Moreover, *Cysticercus bovis* (larval stage of *T. saginata*) is not as easily detected in meat as *C. cellulosae* (larval stage of

T. solium). Infestation with the latter occurs often. The pig, a coprophagous animal, can ingest an entire proglottid, and even a fragment of the strobila containing thousands of eggs. The larvae localize in the interfascial tissue of the muscles of pigs. Since the larvae exist in great numbers, and their color contrasts with that of the muscle fibers, they are easily detectable, and therefore the meat is not eaten. On the other hand, *C. bovis* usually occurs in small numbers because cattle, herbivorous animals, ingest only few eggs, which are found in the adipose tissue and are difficult to detect, so that the contaminated meat is probably eaten.

This parasite is found frequently in those countries in which the inhabitants eat raw or slightly cooked beef, as in Ethiopia and Syria. In Cuba it is more frequent among Syrians and Spaniards than among the natives, but of course this does not necessarily mean that it is rare among the latter. The indigenous people show less infestation with *T. saginata,* which is acquired through eating raw beef, than with those other parasites which are acquired through drinking contaminated water or eating vegetables. There is more frequent infestation also with those parasites which penetrate through the skin or are inoculated by vector hosts.

Kourí and his collaborators in Cuba confirm the above, because beef does not form part of the usual diet of the Cuban rural population. Impoverished by a lower economic status, these people are not often able to indulge in the luxury of eating meat. When they do, they generally eat it well cooked.

CAUSATIVE AGENT

Taenia Saginata Goeze, 1782

Synonyms.—*Taenia solium* Linnaeus 1763 *pro parte; Taenia cucurbitina* Pallas 1781 *pro parte; Taenia inermis* Brera 1802; *Taenia dentata* Nicolai 1830; *Taenia lata* Pruner 1847; *Taenia mediocanellata* Küchenmeister 1852; *Taenia zittavensis* Küchenmeister 1852; *Taenia abietina* Weinland 1858; *Taenirhynchus mediocanellatus* Weinland 1858; *Taenia tropica* Moquin-Tandon 1860; *Taenia capensis* Moquin-Tandon 1860; *Taenia (Cystotaenia) mediocanellata* Leuckart 1863; *Taenia lophosoma* Cobbold 1866; *Taenia nigra* Laboulbene 1875; *Taenia fenestrata* Huber 1896; *Taenia hominis* von Linstow 1902; *Taenia tonkinensis* Railliet and Henry 1905; *Taenia philippina* Garrison 1907.

This tapeworm is 4 to 10 meters long. Three portions are important: the scolex (head); the neck; and the body or strobila, which is composed of segments or proglottids.

The scolex is at the narrow end of the parasite and resembles a terminal bud when observed wtih the naked eye; it is thicker than the neck. The shape of the scolex under the microscope is fusiform with a terminal quadrangular base. It has 2 pairs of elliptical suckers, 0.7 to 0.8 mm. in diameter, which usually contain black pigment. It has no rostellum or hooklets. The neck connects the scolex with the strobila. The first segments are short and wide; the width is greater than the length. They become progressively longer the farther they are from the scolex, although they still remain short and wide for a great portion of the chain. They gradually become square; as they reach the end of the chain, the length increases until those at the caudal end (gravid segments) are longer than wide, being 1 to 2 by 0.5 cm. Live segments constantly change their shapes by constricting and stretching.

An important characteristic of this species is that the gravid segments separate from the strobila and leave the body of the host, either passively in the feces or actively by crossing the anal sphincter and creeping around the perineal and adjacent regions of the host.

Bacigalupo's Phenomenon.—

As demonstrated by Bacigalupo in 1931, and later proved by Kourí, the gravid proglottid of *T. saginata* tears open its terminal uterine ramifications when it separates from the strobila, and thus permits the eggs to escape. Koruí has observed that expulsion of

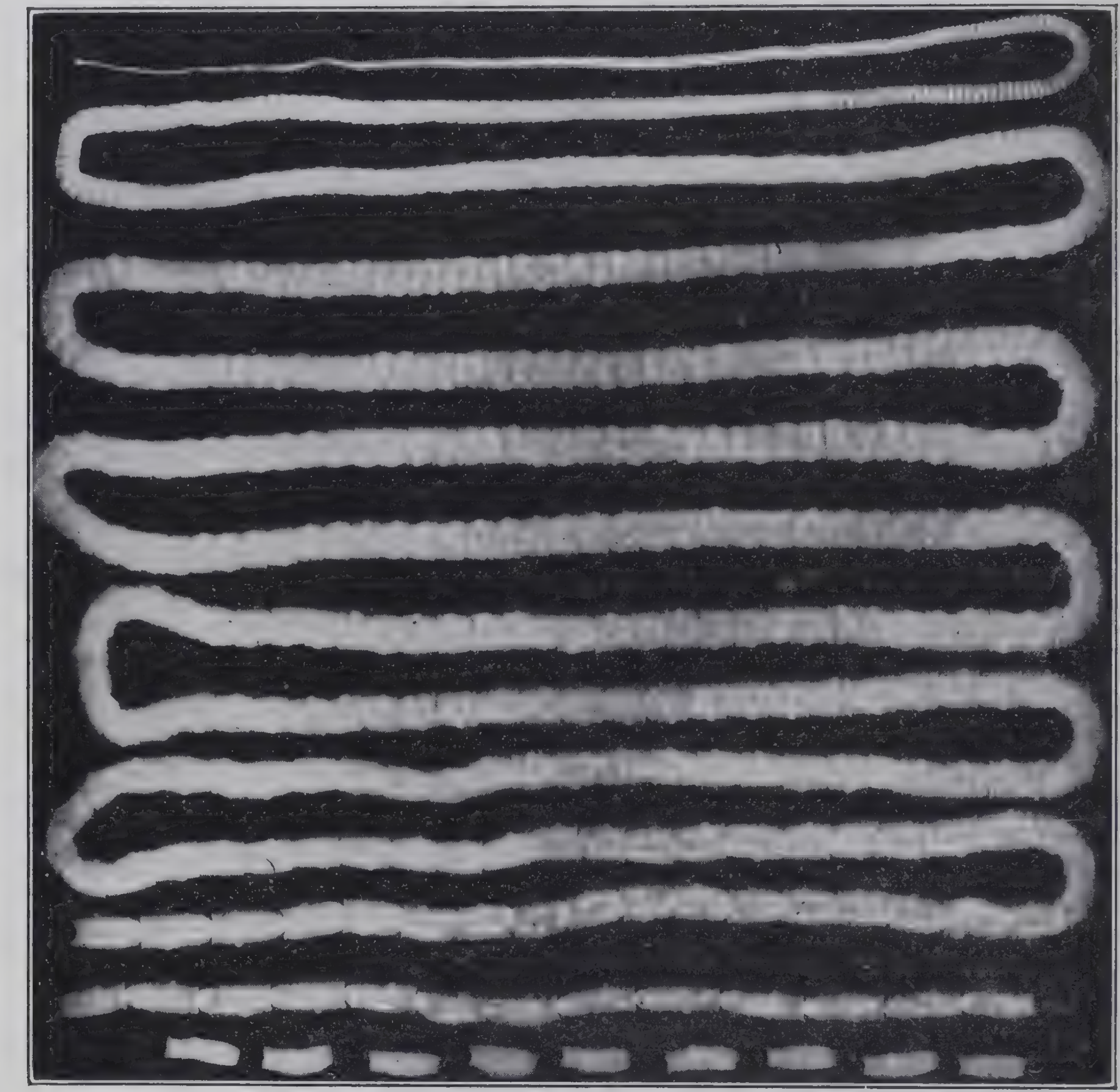


Fig. 290.—*Taenia saginata.* Complete specimen expelled after treatment. *Above,* scolex and fine portions of strobila; *below,* gravid proglottids separated from the strobila. (Original photograph of Kourí.)

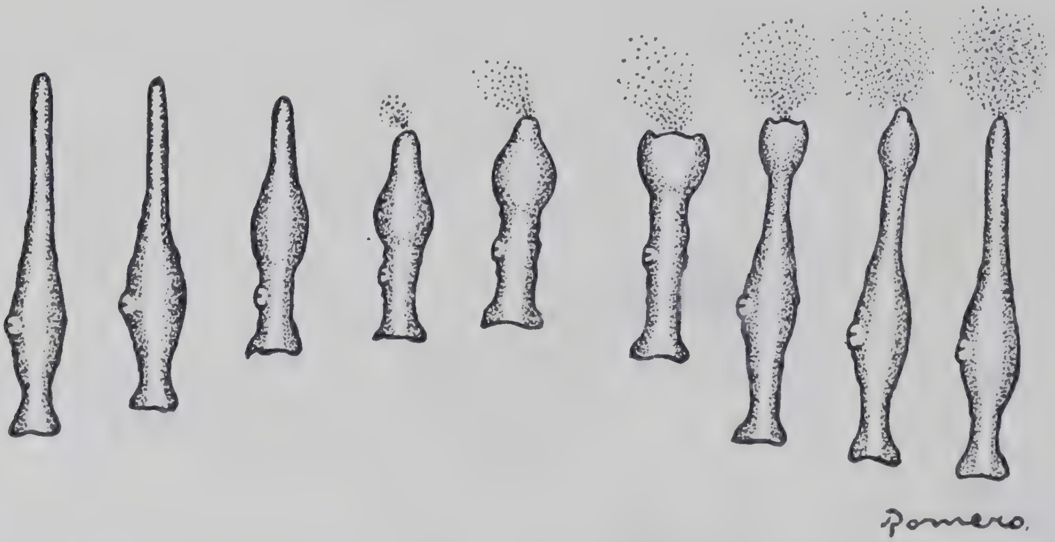


Fig. 291.—*Taenia saginata.* Different appearances of the same gravid (living) proglottid. During contraction, a fine white powder, composed of thousands of eggs, is expelled from one of the extremities (Bacigalupo's phenomenon). (Original drawing of Kourí and Basnuevo in Lecciones de Parasitología y Medicina Tropical; courtesy of Editorial Profilaxis S. A., Havana.)

the eggs takes place at practically every point of the surface of the proglottid; expulsion possibly occurs also by rupture of the uterine branches at the point where the eggs are being expelled. This explains, contrary to the accepted concept, the frequency with which eggs are found in the feces by microscopic examination, in spite of the fact that proglottids have no orifice through which to lay the eggs. A similar phenomenon has been observed by Kourí and his co-workers in the gravid proglottids of *Dipylidium caninum*, which expels egg capsules.

The *egg* consists of an ovoid embryophore, 20 to 30 by 30 to 40 microns, with a thick dark brown radially striated wall. Inside this embryophore is the hexacanth embryo or onchosphere which is 20 microns in diameter. The embryophore is covered by a thin, easily detachable external membrane.

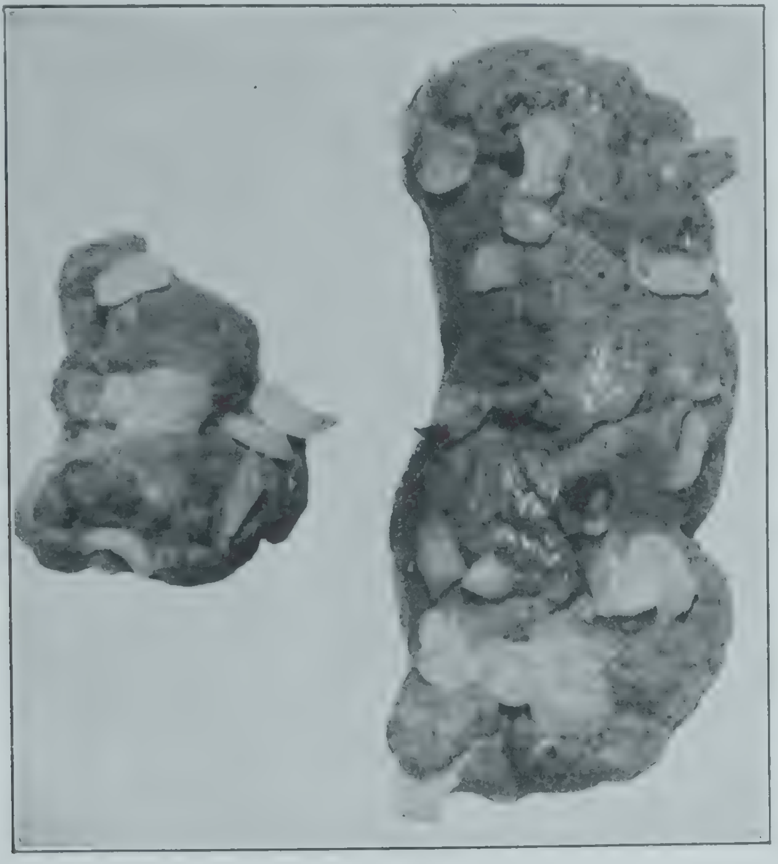


Fig. 292.—*Taenia saginata.* Feces, covered with gravid proglottids, expelled by a 3-year-old girl. (Original photograph of Kourí.)

The parasite habitually is anchored to the upper portion of the small intestine. One case has been cited with infestation in the gall bladder. Vomiting of fragments of the parasite or penetration of gravid proglottids into the appendix is seldom seen, yet localization of gravid proglottids of *T. saginata* in the appendix is not rare in countries where the parasite is most abundant. Kourí (1927), in Cuba, saw *T. saginata* infestation of the appendix with all the symptoms of acute appendicitis; an emergency operation had been performed on this patient. Gravid proglottids have been found in the appendix by Fortún, and more recently by Alfonso (1937). In 1940, we were sent an appendix containing 2 proglottids. It had been removed from a patient with all the symptoms of acute appendicitis (Miyares, Calixto García Hospital). Usually, because of the diagnosis of acute appendicitis, an emergency operation is performed, but the organ often shows no macroscopic or histologic signs of acute inflammation (Kourí, unpublished).

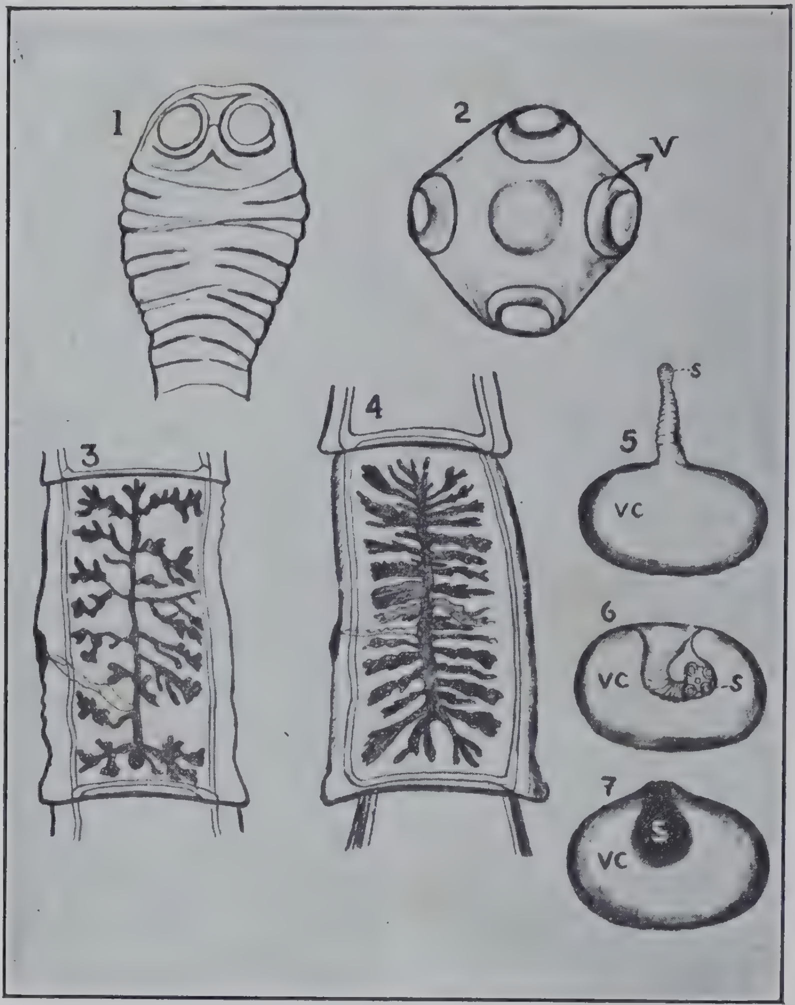


Fig. 293.—*Taenia saginata* and *Taenia solium* (modified from Blanchard). *1* and Lateral (*1*) and top view (*2*) of the unarmed scolex of *T. saginata, V*, one of the 4 suctori sulci; *3* and *4*, gravid segments of *T. solium* (*3*) and *T. saginata* (*4*). The uterine ram fications are more numerous in *T. saginata* (*4*). *5, 6*, and *7*, *Cysticercus bovis.* Protrude scolex in (*5*) and invaginated scolex in (*6*) and (*7*); *s* scolex; *vc*, caudal vesicle.

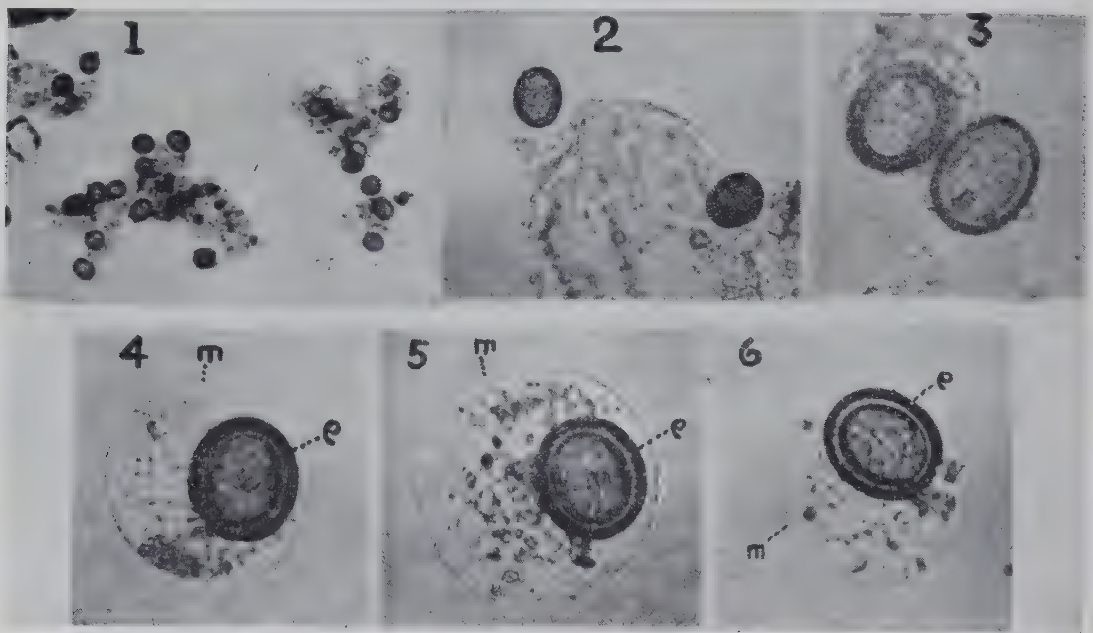


Fig. 294.—*Taenia saginata.* *1* to *6*, Photomicrographs of eggs, progressively increasin magnification; *4*, *5*, and *6*: *m*, external membrane of the egg; *e*, embryophore containi onchosphere or 6-hooked embryo. (Originals of Kourí.)

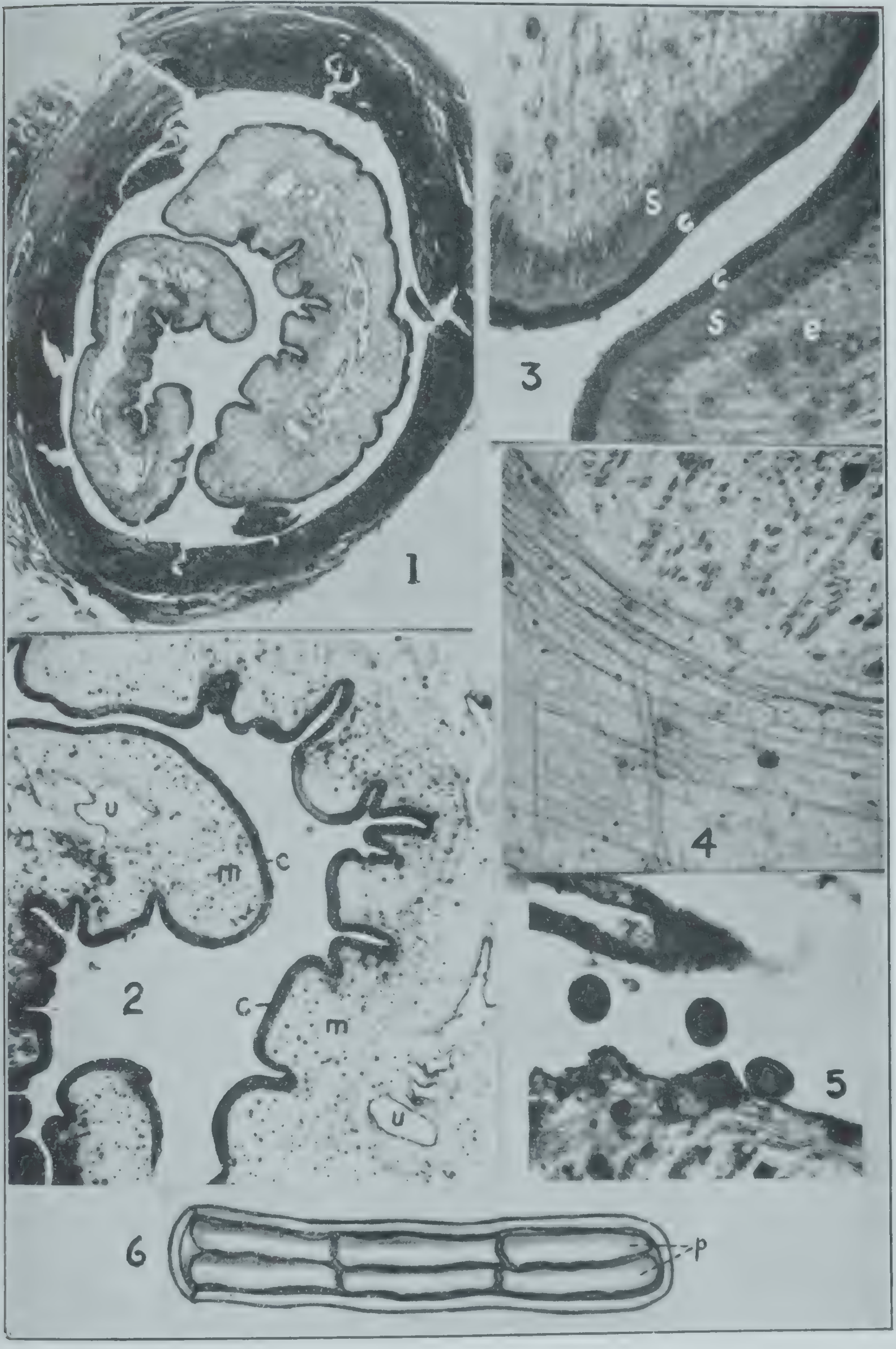


Fig. 295.—*Taenia saginata,* photomicrographs; gravid segments in the lumen of the appendix. (Kourí.) *1,* Histologic section of an appendix with a cross section of the gravid proglottids of *T. saginata.* This appendix contained 6 proglottids, paired, and extending to the base of the organ, with the long axis parallel to the long axis of the lumen, *6.* *2,* Magnified portion of the proglottid, with *c,* cuticular zone; *m,* muscular zone; and *u,* central uterine zone. *3,* Peripheral or cuticular zone of the proglottid with *c,* the cuticle; *s,* subcuticular cell coat; and *e,* adjacent stroma. *4,* Stroma of proglottid showing oblique and circular muscle fiber zone (below to the left) and the small bundles of long muscle fibers cut in cross section (above to the right). *5,* Uterine cavity and eggs. *6,* Schematic drawing of the appendix with the six proglottids, *p.*

Usually only 1 parasite is harbored by the host, very seldom 2 to 4. Th expression ''solitary worm,''* commonly used, is derived from this fact. On patient, however, expelled 12 scolices, at least 12 parasites, with about 6 meters of strobila (Kourí).

The host apparently acquires immunity after infestation with the first, o the first few, parasites, which protects him from further infestation with th same species. This may be true during the time he harbors the parasites. I it is true, those cases in which the host harbors more than one parasite ca be explained as simultaneous infestations, occurring from a single ingestion o food containing the parasites. However, it rarely happens that 12 *Cysticercu bovis* are ingested in a single meal, since beef is not heavily infested as a rule

The life span of the parasite may possibly be several years, although it is usually 2 to 4 years. It is necessary, however, to investigate those patients who have been expelling proglottids in their feces for 10 or even 20 years to determine whether these are or are not true reinfestations. If immunity exists, reinfestation cannot take place until all parasites have disappeared from the intestines. The expulsion of prolottids in the feces will cease for a time until the new specimens have reached the gravid stage.

Life Cycle

Cattle ingest the embryophores with water or food; the delicate membrane covering these embryophores is dissolved by the gastrointestinal secretions. This liberates the hexacanth embryo or onchosphere. Although the embryo is ordinarily 20 microns in diameter, it can stretch and become thinner, enabling it to pass through structures. They traverse the intestinal mucosa and enter either the portal system or the lymph circulation. Thence they are carried to the right side of the heart which sends them through the pulmonary circulation to the left heart. From the left ventricle they go through the aorta to all parts of the body, localizing in the adipose tissue and in the striated muscles, especially in the cardiac and internal masseter muscles. Here they grow and become hydropic. Each embryo is finally transformed into a vesicle containing a transparent liquid and an unarmed scolex. This vesicle is the larval form, *Cysticercus bovis,* which is capable of infesting man.

When raw or slightly cooked beef containing the larvae is eaten, the larval forms *(C. bovis)* reach the human intestine. The intestinal secretions digest the wall of the cyst, liberating the scolex. The scolex anchors itself to the mucosa; the neck proliferates to form the proglottids and develop into the adult worm. The formation of the adult tapeworm takes from 2 to 3 months. At the end of this period the expulsion of gravid segments begins and hence dissemination of the eggs. If these eggs are then ingested by a bovine, a new cycle begins.

Cysticercus Bovis

Cysticercus is an ovoid vesicle measuring 5 to 10 by 3 to 4 mm. When observed in muscle tissue, it is surrounded by a fibrous capsule. If pressed between the fingers, it offers an elastic resistance. If this fibrous capsule is opened and dissected, separating it from the cysticercus, the latter appears as an elongated vesicle, thin-walled, colorless, and transparent in fresh preparations, but whitish when fixed in 10 per cent formalin. It contains a colorless liquid and an opaque yellowish-white body, variable in size, which adheres to the wall, making a prominence in the cavity of the cyst. This opaque body corresponds to the invaginated scolex. The larva will die at a temperature of 46° C. It will live for a period of about 40 days in meat kept at a temperature of 1° to 4° C. It does not survive a temperature of –8° to –10° C. for more than 3 hours. Its vitality can be determined by adding bile; the presence of bile causes evagination of the scolex if the larva is still alive, or it may produce a whipping motion of the vibratory flame cells in the living cysticercus.

---

*According to Leuckart, the term "solium" is derived from a Syrian word "shushl" which is derived from the Arabic word "susl" or "sols." It has been Latinized and became the word "solium." It has no relationship to the Latin word "solus" which means "alone" or "one." (Editor's note—R. B. H. G.)

Parasitism by this larva is known as *bovine cysticercosis* and is observed in various bovine species and antelopes, seldom in man.

Differences Between Taenia Saginata and Taenia Solium

The scolex of *T. saginata* is quadrangular and unarmed, while that of *T. solium* is spherical and smaller and bears a rostellum with 2 crowns of hooklets. The uterus of the gravid proglottids of *T. saginata* has a greater number of ramifications (15 to 30 each) which are thin and dichotomous, while the uterus of the gravid proglottids of *T. solium* has a smaller number of ramifications (5 to 10 each) which are thicker and usually dendritic. The gravid proglottids of the former escape one by one either passively in the feces or actively by forcing their way through the anal sphincter. The gravid proglottids of the latter are expelled passively in fragments in the feces.

T. saginata is usually longer and contains a greater number of segments. Near the end of the vagina is a sphincter (R. de Noyer). *T. solium* is shorter, has a smaller number of segments, and the vagina is not provided with a sphincter. The larva of *T. saginata, Cysticercus bovis,* localizes in adipose tissue and striated muscles. It is detected with difficulty because there are few larvae, and their color resembles that of the tissues in which they are embedded. The larva of *T. solium*—*C. cellulosae*—localizes in the muscle tissue of the pig, and accidentally in man. Infestation of pork by these larvae is easy to detect because of the great numbers of parasites and their localization in the interfascial spaces where they offer marked contrast to the tissues, which accounts for the rarity of infestation of human beings by *T. solium.*

PATHOGENICITY

The presence of the adult form of *T. saginata* may result in a group of symptoms which when combined are called *taeniasis.* The larvae cause *cysticercosis.* Cysticercosis is more frequently caused by *C. cellulosae,* the larval form of *T. solium.*

SYMPTOMS

The parasite is quite well tolerated by certain individuals, clinical symptoms being totally absent or very mild. In nervous people and children this parasite may cause variable symptoms which at times may be very serious.

Gastrointestinal disorders may be characterized by an increased appetite (bulimia) or, the contrary, total loss of appetite (anorexia). Pressure or pain in the epigastrium, diffuse pain, intestinal colic, and even symptoms similar to those of acute appendicitis are quite frequent. Dyspepsia of various types, heartburn, eructation, nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea, sometimes alternating with constipation, are other common symptoms of this type of parasitosis. At times a dysenteriform syndrome has been reported.

Appendiceal colic may be caused by 2 different processes: (1) penetration of the gravid proglottids into the lumen of the appendix, and (2) friction produced by the passage of the parasite through the ileocecal valve. At times the patient expels fragments of the living parasite; this expulsion is accompanied by deep abdominal pains (Brumpt).

Certain nervous reflexes of intestinal origin characterized by weakness dizziness, anxiety, etc., either diminish or totally disappear upon ingestion of food.

Hepatic colic accompanied by jaundice and vomiting, and even clinical pictures resembling those of hepatic cirrhosis (epistaxis, ascites, edema, etc.) have been pointed out in teniasis.

Nervous symptoms are often serious, especially in children. They consist of epileptiform, eclamptiform, and hysteriform attacks, and choreoid phenomena. Convulsions accompanied by violent headaches (migraine) and constipation may simulate meningitis (verminous meningismus).

Psychoneurosis is quite common, especially in the form of hypochondria or melancholia. Kourí observed a case of so-called schizophrenia which was cured some time after removal of the tapeworm. Cases of catalepsy, paralysis, strabismus, loss of voice, dyspnea, asphyxia, arrhythmia, palpitations, xanthopsia (yellow vision), diplopia, inequality in the pupil (anisocoria), amaurosis, and even blindness (periodic or continuous) have been observed. Nasal pruritus, pruritus ani, and urticarial crises have also been seen. In some cases, the general state of the individual may be affected, with loss of weight, weakness, and mild anemia. All these symptoms are undoubtedly of verminous origin since they disappear shortly after expulsion of the parasite.

CYSTICERCOSIS

Cysticercosis is frequently caused by the larval form of *T. solium* in man. Infestation occurs through ingestion of food contaminated with eggs of the parasite, or less frequently, in carriers of tapeworms, by internal autoinfestation when the gravid proglottids reach the stomach through violent antiperistaltic movements. The symptoms produced vary in accordance with the location of the cysticercus, which in order of frequency are the eye and its adnexa, nervous system, skin and cellular tissue, musculature, heart, and other viscera. When the infestation is intense the cysticercosis may be generalized.

Dixon and Hargreaves (1944) have emphasized that cysticercosis is an important cause of convulsions occurring in persons who have been exposed to infestation. Their report is based on 10 years of clinical study of 284 cases. Autoinfestation seems to be a common occurrence, judging from the fact that 26 per cent of the patients gave a history of tapeworm infestation. Dixon and Hargreaves emphasize that a tapeworm may be harbored unnoticed for years. The symptoms described showed great variety. Severe mental deterioration is unusual, but changes in personality and disorders of behavior may occur with or without convulsions. The diagnosis is not always easy. There may be no detectable cysts and no calcification demonstrable radiographically. History is of great importance. In these cases 274 were undoubtedly infested in the Indian Army. It is noteworthy that 2 of their patients had never been outside the British Isles. Only 9 were women. Nine were children when infested. They believe that a patient with service in India and a suggestive history should be given the benefit of the doubt, in spite of repeatedly negative clinical and radiographic investigations.

In regard to the curative value of neurosurgery, these authors stressed that although the cerebral symptoms may be purely local in character there are, as a rule, multiple cysts in the brain. In none of their cases where the cysticerci were removed from the brain were convulsions relieved. The only indication for surgery is threatening blindness from papilledema which calls for decompression. They believe that calcified cerebral cysticerci are not unusual and insist that more would be detected if more thorough examinations were made.

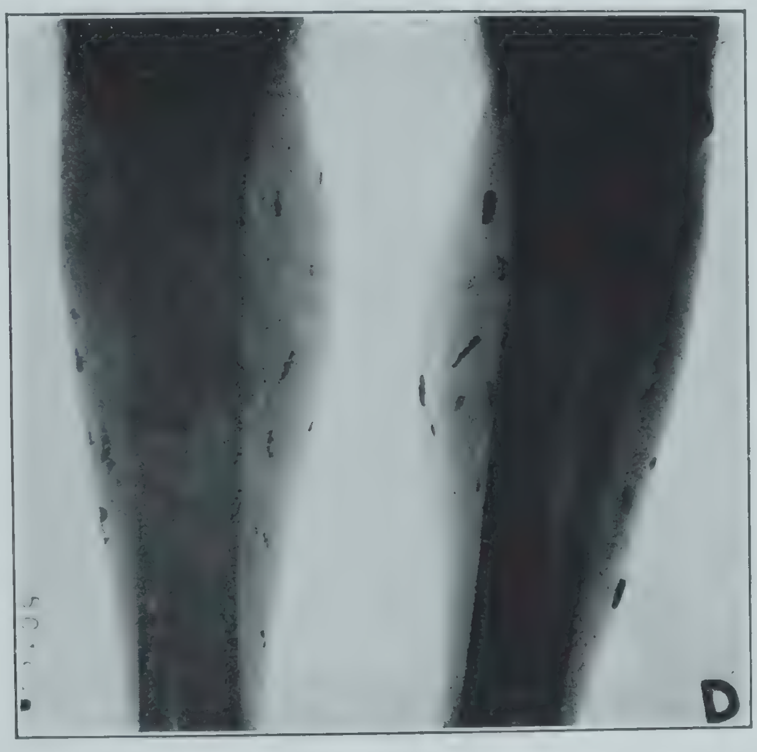


Fig. 296.—X-ray of the lower limbs of a patient with generalized cysticercosis. Note the calcified Cysticercus in the soft tissues. (Original of Kourí, Basnuevo, and Sotolongo.)

In suspected cases, radiographic search of the whole body is indicated, beginning with the limbs. At times only a single calcified cyst may be found. X-ray examinations of the skull are very important. Calcification in the brain, when it occurs, appears to affect mainly the scolex. Most films show this type of calcification. Radiographs of the skull show that quite frequently a calcified cyst wall appears as a shell or halo outside the scolex, and occasionally calcification can be seen starting in the cyst wall first.

Eosinophilia is not very important, since it is found in only approximately 10 per cent of the cases. Negative results in complement fixation and skin reactions are valueless, as has been found frequently in very heavily infested patients, and these tests are not recommended.

Incubation period from infestation of body to onset of cerebral symptoms has been found to be from a few months to about 20 years.

DIAGNOSIS

Direct Methods

Refer to Chapter 72.

Indirect Methods

Eosinophilia is frequent, though not constant or specific in parasitism b *T. saginata.* Complement fixation and intradermal reactions, applicable i echinococcosis and other parasitoses, have not given satisfactory results i parasitism by *T. saginata.* It is never necessary to apply these methods i teniasis.

TREATMENT

The day before administration of the drugs put the patient on a liquid diet, or simply substitute his regular supper with liquid food. Instruct him to take a laxative or an enema before going to bed. Next day, administer the drug, then a strong cathartic. The patient should have complete rest to prevent nausea and vomiting and should be given a diet of fruit juices.

The drugs most frequently used are root bark of the pomegranate tree, pelletierine, male ferm *(Dryopteris filix-mas),* Finland fern, pumpkin seeds, Kamala, thymol, chloroform, and carbon tetrachloride.

The anthelminthic preparation recommended by Kourí and many other physicians is a mixture of an ether extract of *D. filix-mas* and chemically pure carbon tetrachloride dissolved in enough castor oil to have cathartic effect, or in soft gelatinous capsules, observing the recommendations above for preparation of the patient.

This drug is a taenifuge. With it Kourí has obtained 90 to 100 per cent cure (Kourí, Basnuevo, Sotolongo, Nogueira). Due to its prompt purgative action, the parasite is expelled in blocks or pellets, either complete, or at times fragmented, or even disintegrated, so that it is not necessary that the patient pass his stools in warm water. It also eliminates the disagreeable practice of injecting morphine into the parasite as it hangs from the anus of the patient.

Although some authors believe that the combination of oil of male fern and carbon tetrachloride is contraindicated, Kourí has had no serious consequences with this combination in the thousands of cases of helminthiasis treated with oily solutions of these 2 substances (Kourí and Basnuevo).

Tenicida "Kuba" (liquid) is administered in doses of 4 c.c. for each year of age for children and 60 c.c. for adults, and in capsules, 1 for each 2 years of age in children and 12 capsules for adults. The male fern used in Kourí's formula is an ether extract for Tenicida "Kuba" liquid, and oleoresin for Tenicida "Kuba" in capsules.

Male fern is given in doses of 0.30 to 0.50 c.c. for each year of age in children and up to 6 to 8 c.c. for adults;[*] carbon tetrachloride, 0.10 to 0.15 c.c. for each year of age for children and up to 3 c.c. for adults.

---

[*] Editor's note (O. F.): Many American and British authors prefer smaller doses, about one-half of these.

The same plan is followed in treatment of intestinal parasitism by *T. solium*, *Hymenolepis nana*, *Inermicapsifer cubensis*, *Hymenolepis diminuta*, *Dipylidium caninum*, *Diphyllobothrium latum*.

An investigation must be made to determine if the scolex has been expelled too, for if it is not, the taenia will develop again in about 2 or 3 months. In order to determine if the scolex has been expelled, the patient should pass all his stools (feces and anthelminthic compound) in a large jar. This jar should be carried to the laboratory and its contents washed through a strainer. The residue should be examined in a flat dish against a dark background. The fact that the scolex cannot be found does not necessarily mean that it has not been expelled, for it may have disintegrated or it may be expelled later. For this reason it is not advisable to repeat the treatment until the patient begins to expel segments again.

PROPHYLAXIS

General prophylaxis consists in preventing the ingestion of meat contaminated with *C. bovis*. Health authorities should demand efficient inspection of beef before it is released to the public. It should be kept in mind that the parasites are found in great numbers in the internal masseter (musculis pterygoideus internus) and heart muscles of the animal. Abattoirs should be equipped with autoclaves and refrigeration. At temperatures of −8° to −10° C. the larvae will die in about 2 or 3 hours. The dissemination of contaminated human feces in places where cattle graze should be prevented, and all individuals suffering from this parasitosis should be effectively treated.

Individual prophylaxis consists in eating only well-cooked beef or in substituting lamb or horse meat for beef in the diet.

In Arenas' examination of 3,000 bovine animals killed in the Industrial Abattoir of Havana, 103 animals were shown to be infested with *C. bovis*, 3.43 per cent of the animals examined. This shows clearly the reason for frequency of *T. saginata* in human beings in Cuba.

TAENIASIS SOLIUM
(THE PORK TAPEWORM)

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

This tapeworm has a cosmopolitan distribution and is found wherever raw or inadequately cooked pork is eaten. While it is rare in the United States, England, and Canada, the infection rate is higher in Mexico and Central and South America. It is in the Slavic groups in Europe that the disease is most comonly found. In Russia the rate varies from 0.2 to 1.5 per cent.

CAUSATIVE AGENT

Taenia Solium* Linnaeus 1758

Synonyms.—*Taenia cucurbitina* Pallas 1766, *T. pellucida* Goeze 1782, *T. vulgaris* Werner 1782, *T. dentata* Batsch 1786, *Halysis solium* Zeder 1803, *Taenia armata humana* Brera 1808, *T. tenella* Cobbold.

---

*See footnote on p. 944.

The adult tapeworm measures from 2 to 3 meters in length but may become as lo as 8 meters or more. The scolex is globular with a diameter of 600 microns to 1 mm.; shows pigmentation. The rosellum, which is apical and capable of invaginating itse carries 2 crowns of hooklets arranged in alternate rows. They number 22 to 32. Th vary in size from 160 to 180 microns; some are smaller, 110 to 140 microns. The neck short. Behind this structure are the immature, mature, and gravid proglottids. The ful developed proglottid is almost a square and, while the gravid proglottids are longer tha broad, they do not attain the length of the corresponding proglottids of *T. saginata.* M ture proglottids of *T. solium* generally simulate those of *T. saginata,* except that the test in the former number 150 to 200 compared with 300 to 400 in *T. saginata.* The ovary in *solium* is trilobed instead of bilobed as in *T. saginata.* The complete strobila of *T. soliu* usually shows less than 1,000 distinct proglottids.

The *eggs* are expelled with fragments of the chain after expulsion from the patien The egg contains a hexacanth embryo or onchosphere about 20 microns in diameter and arme with 6 stylets. The eggs cannot be distinguished from those of *T. saginata.* They come ou of the gravid proglottid either before or after the proglottids have become detached fron the strobila. Outside of the human body they remain viable for weeks in soil, and wher ingested by hogs or man, hatch immediately. The liberated onchosphere penetrates the intestinal wall and reaches the lymphatic or circulatory system. The embryos are distribute throughout the body, usually localizing in the musculature or subcutaneous tissue. Within 6 to 70 days they become metamorphosed into infective bladder worms or *Cysticercus cellulosae* measuring 5 by 8 to 10 mm. Cysticerci reach man when he ingests raw or inadequately prepared pork. The larvae are digested out of the cysts and become attached to the intestina wall and grow to maturity in 4 to 12 weeks. *T. solium* adults are believed to have survive as long as 25 years in the intestine of man.

Life Cycle

Man is the definitive host of *T. solium,* and the hog is the usual intermediate host. Two forms of human infection occur. When man serves as the definitive host, the adult tapeworm is present in the intestine. This infection is acquired by the ingestion of raw or insufficiently cooked pork containing viable cysticerci. In cysticercosis man serves as intermediate host; in the larval stages, cysticerci are present in the tissues. Human infection results from ingestion and subsequent hatching of viable eggs. They enter the alimentary canal in food or drink contaminated by feces from persons harboring the adult worm. Oral infection may occur when eggs are carried from feces to the mouth on the hands of infected persons. Occasionally other animals such as dogs or sheep are infected with cysticerci. Taeniasis solium infection with the adult worm is usually not found among Jews or Mohammedans since they rarely eat pork, but cysticercosis may occur in these people. The infection is maintained in nature by improper disposal of human feces which permits ingestion of the eggs by the normal intermediate host, the hog.

PATHOGENICITY AND PATHOLOGY

The mature tapeworm in the intestine seldom causes significant pathologic changes, but a moderate eosinophilia may be present. The cysticerci may be lodged in any tissue of the body and are most frequently found in the subcutaneous tissues, brain, eye, skeletal musculature, heart, liver, lungs, and abdominal cavity. The larvae cause a local surrounding inflammatory reaction with infiltration by neutrophiles, eosinophiles, and lymphocytes with stimulation of fibroblast production. The larvae subsequently become enclosed within a fibrous capsule, or necrosis may occur, followed by caseation and calcification. Giant cells may be found around the lesion. The cysts vary from 0.5 to 2 or even 3 cm. in length.

SYMPTOMS

Digestive disturbances, hunger pains, and diarrhea alternating with constipation are found. (See Cysticercosis, p. 946.)

DIAGNOSIS

The differentiation between *T. saginata* and *T. solium,* on the basis of appearance of the eggs, has been discussed above. It is not possible to differentiate them in this manner. It is necessary to differentiate between the mature proglottids pressed between 2 slides and held to the light. The uterus may be injected with India ink to facilitate the determination of the number of main lateral uterine branches which vary between 7 and 13 in *T. solium.*

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Examination of mature proglottids as just indicated is vital. The differential blood count is of no assistance due to lack of eosinophilia. Skin and precipitin tests are not specific. Exact diagnosis depends upon recovery of larvae by excision of the cyst and identification of the species by the presence of 2 rows of hooklets of an equal size on the inverted rostellum. Stool examination should be made for the presence of eggs.

TREATMENT

Oleoresin of Aspidium is the best drug. This drug is contraindicated in very old or very young persons. There is no specific treatment for cysticercosis. The day before the institution of treatment the patient should omit his evening meal or should take only milk and should take an enema before going to bed. On the following morning, he takes the anthelminthic drug and a purgative, remaining in bed to avoid the nausea and vertigo which are sometimes produced by the treatment. After the administration of the taenifuge and the purgative, the patient prepares a vessel containing tepid water to receive the stools and to preserve the scolex. If the scolex does not leave the intestine, it is necessary to repeat the medication 2 or 3 times. The taenifuges which are most useful are ethereal extract of male fern, with or without calomel, in a dose of 6 to 8 Gm. for adults and 2 to 3 Gm. for children. Pelletierine, which is an alkaloid of this drug, should not be given to children because it produces toxic symptoms. The following formula is advised.

Sulfate of Pelletierine	0.25	Gm.
Extract of cocoa	1.	Gm.
Distilled water	15.	Gm.
Orange syrup	25.	Gm.

One-half hour after administration of the tenicide give the patient 40 to 60 Gm. of castor oil.

PROPHYLAXIS

Rigorous exclusion of pork products which have been insufficiently cooked and destruction of feces by sulfuric acid and of all dejecta from the carriers of taenia to avoid contamination of new intermediate hosts are recommended. The campaign against the use of imperfectly cooked pork is the mos efficacious method of preventing infestation in man.

HYDATID DISEASE (ECHINOCOCCOSIS)

(Parasitism Produced by the Larval Form of *Echinococcus Granulosus*—the Hydatid Worm)

Synonyms.—Echinococciasis, echinococcosis, echinococcus disease.

HISTORY

Hippocrates, Aretaeus, and Galeno knew the disease clinically. Redi (1684), Hartmann (1685), and Tyson (1691) suspected its animal nature. Pallas (1766) noted the similarity of human hydatidosis to that of other mammals. Goeze (1782) was the first to study the scolex of the larva and to compare it with that of Taenia. Hartmann (1695) and Rudolphi (1808) studied the adult form in the intestines of dogs. Von Siebold (1852), Haubner, Leuckart, Küchenmeister, and Nettleship fed the scolices from domestic animals to dogs, which then developed the adult worms in their intestines. Later Naunyn (1863), Krabbe and Finsen (1863), and Thomas, by feeding the scolices from man to dogs, caused the development of the adult form in the dogs.

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

Echinococcus granulosus and its larval form, the hydatid cyst, are found in all continents.

In Europe the disease is present in Russia, northern Germany, Bulgaria, Hungary, England, France, and Spain; in Asia, in Arabia, Baikal Lake region, Indo-China; in Africa, in Algeria, Tunis, Morocco, Egypt, Ethiopia; in North America the disease is very rare; in South America it is found in Argentina, Uruguay, Chile; and in Mexico. Many cases are imported into Cuba from other countries. It is seen in the southern part of Australia (Victoria) and in Tasmania. In certain localities 33 per cent of the cattle and sheep are infested.

CAUSATIVE AGENT

The disease is produced by the larval form of *Echinococcus granulosus.* In its adult form, *E. granulosus* is a habitual parasite of the intestines of canines. In its larval form it parasitizes the tissues of man, pigs, sheep, cattle, etc., and constitutes what is known as hydatid cyst.

Echinococcus Granulosus (Batsch 1786) Rudolphi 1805

Synonyms.—*Hydatigena granulosa* Batsch 1786; *Polycephalus hominis* Zeder 1803; *Polycephalus echinococcus* Zeder 1803; *Echinococcus hominis* (Zeder 1800) Rudolphi 1810: *Acephalocystis granulosa* Laennec 1812; *Echinococcus polymorphus* Diesing 1850; *Taenia echinococcus* (Zeder 1803) von Siebold 1853; *Taenia echinococcus veterinorum* (Rudolphi 1810) Küchenmeister 1885; *Taenia nana* van Beneden 1858 (*nec* von Siebold 1852); *Echinococcifer echinococcus* Weinland 1861; *Echinococcus hepatis* Scholler 1862; *Echinococcus multilocularis* Leuckart 1863; *Echinococcus alveolaris* Klemm 1883; *Echinococcus cysticus* Huber 1891.

This tapeworm is the smallest of the important cestodes of man. It is 3 to 6 mm. long. The scolex is pyriform, provided with 4 ovoid suckers, and has a projecting rostrum with a double crown of 30 to 36 hooklets. The neck is short, becoming narrow toward the back. The strobila is composed of only 3 to 4 proglottids. The first is immature, long and wide;

the second is mature, almost twice as long as wide, and shows well-developed genital apparatus, both male and female. The third and fourth, if present, become gravid and reach a length of 2 mm. and a width of 0.6 mm. The uterus, filled with eggs, twists into a spiral; when it is distended, the walls may burst and free the eggs, before or after the gravid proglottid is passed.

The *eggs* number 500 to 800 in the gravid proglottid. They resemble those of *T. saginata* and *T. solium,* are 32 to 36 by 21 to 30 microns. They contain a hexacanth embryo. These eggs, in the excreta of the dog, are very difficult to differentiate from eggs of some species of Taenia and Multiceps.

Description of Larva (Hydatid Cyst).—The hydatid cyst is of variable size which may reach the size of the head of an adult human being. It is frequently localized in the liver, lung, abdominal cavity, pelvis, or any other part of the body of the host. It is composed of 2 parts: (1) a fibrous capsule or adventitious membrane formed by proliferation of the connective tissue of the host which limits and encysts the larva and (2) the larva which is found inside the fibrous capsule.

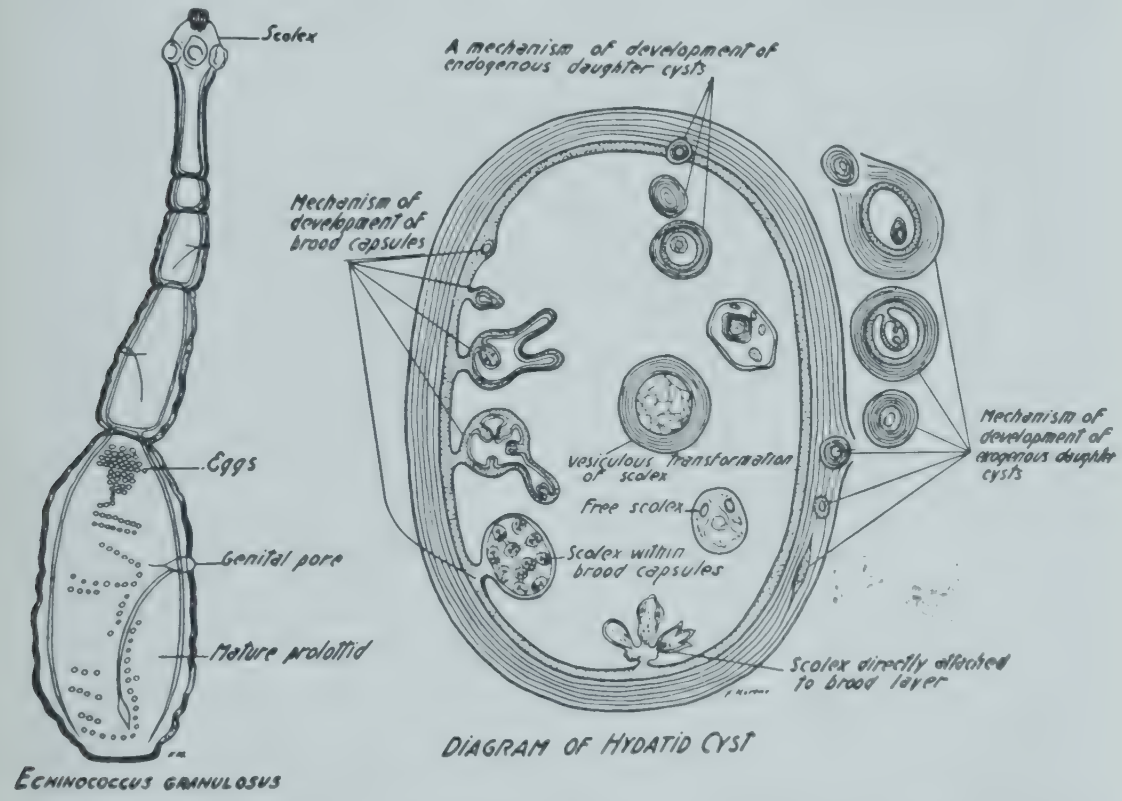

Scolex
Eggs
Genital pore
Mature prolottid
ECHINOCOCCUS GRANULOSUS
A mechanism of development of endogenous daughter cysts
Mechanism of development of brood capsules
Mechanism of development of exogenous daughter cysts
Vesiculous transformation of scolex
Free scolex
Scolex within brood capsules
Scolex directly attached to brood layer
DIAGRAM OF HYDATID CYST

Fig. 297.—Schematic drawing of *Echinococcus granulosus: left,* adult parasite; *right,* larva or hydatid cyst. (According to Leuckart in Blanchard, and Kourí.)

The cyst contains the hydatid liquid, which is transparent and colorless. In fertile cysts, *brood capsules* are found in this liquid, and, together with the scolices and loose hooklets, are referred to as "hydatid sand." Sometimes endogenous *daughter vesicles or cysts* develop from the mother cyst.

Brood Capsules and Scolex.—These capsules are formed by proliferation of the internal germinal layer. They are spherical and 0.33 mm. in diameter. Their walls have the same structure as the germinal layer; it gives rise, through internal proliferation, to a variable number of scolices. These brood capsules, at first attached, develop a pedicle and finally are set free in the cystic cavity. They form the grains of the hydatid sand.

When the brood capsule bursts, the scolices become arranged around the membrane which is now in the center. Many scolices remain free in the cavity of the cyst. They are usually invaginated. The crown of hooklets and the 2 pairs of suckers are clearly visible. Other scolices are completely or only partially protruded. Free hooklets are often found in the cavity of the cyst.

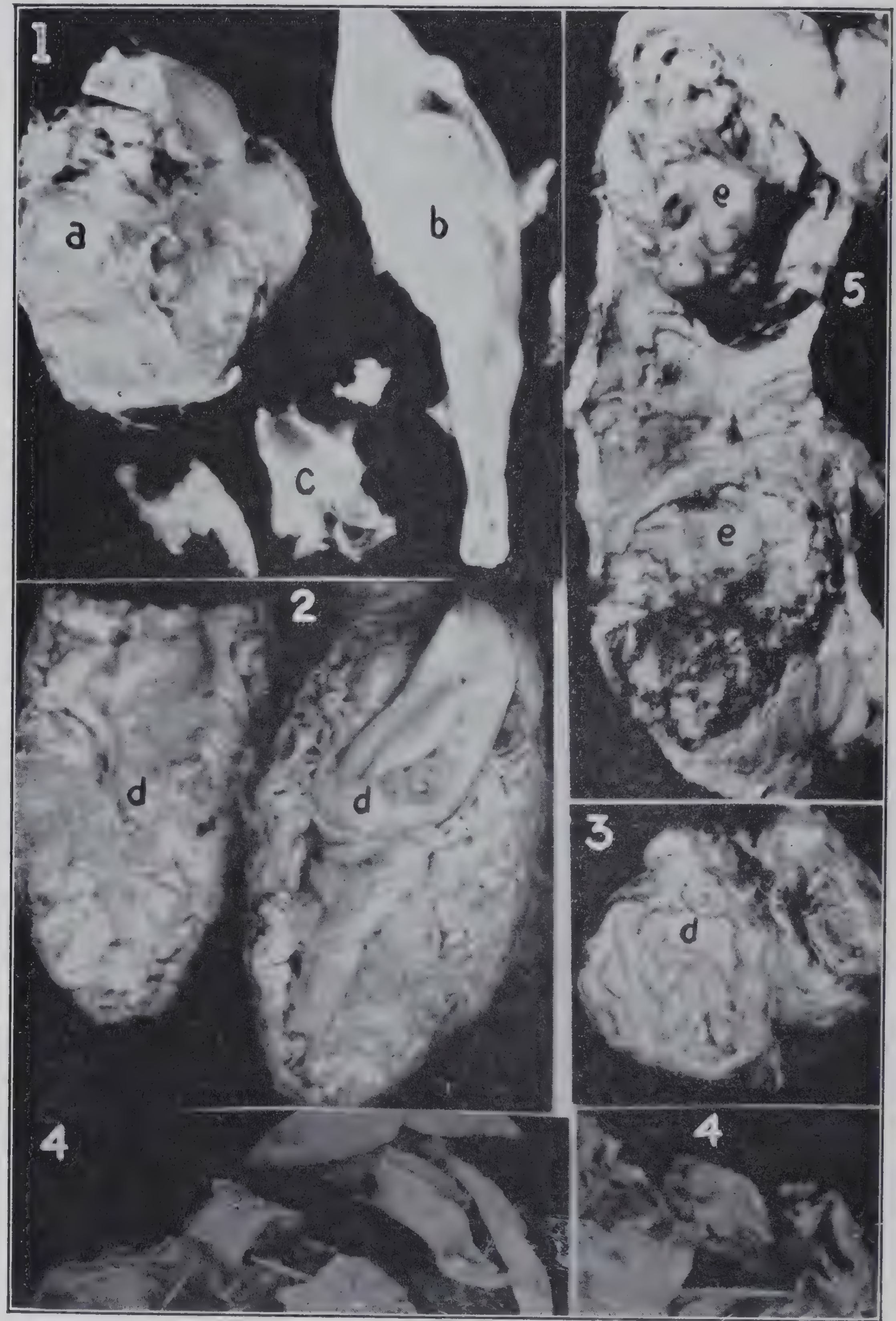


Fig. 298.—*Echinococcus granulosus. 1* to *5*, Five hydatid cysts from the pelvis of Spanish woman who had lived in Cuba for 20 years. *1*, Normal hydatid cyst; photograph is half the natural size: *a*, fibrous wall of the tumor; *b*, cuticular membrane of the larva, rolle into a cone shape; *c*, exogenous daughter cysts. *2* and *3*, Dead hydatid cysts. The tumor ha lost its liquid; the folded cuticular membrane *d* occupies the entire tumor, which becomes solid and smaller. *d*, Surface of a tumor cut in two, showing the membrane or wall of th larvae which occupy the entire cavity, slightly larger than natural size. *4*. Partitioned an calcified hydatid cyst, portion of tumor. *5*. Solid calcified hydatid cyst; *e*, surface of tumo cut in two, one-half the natural size. (Originals of Kourí.)

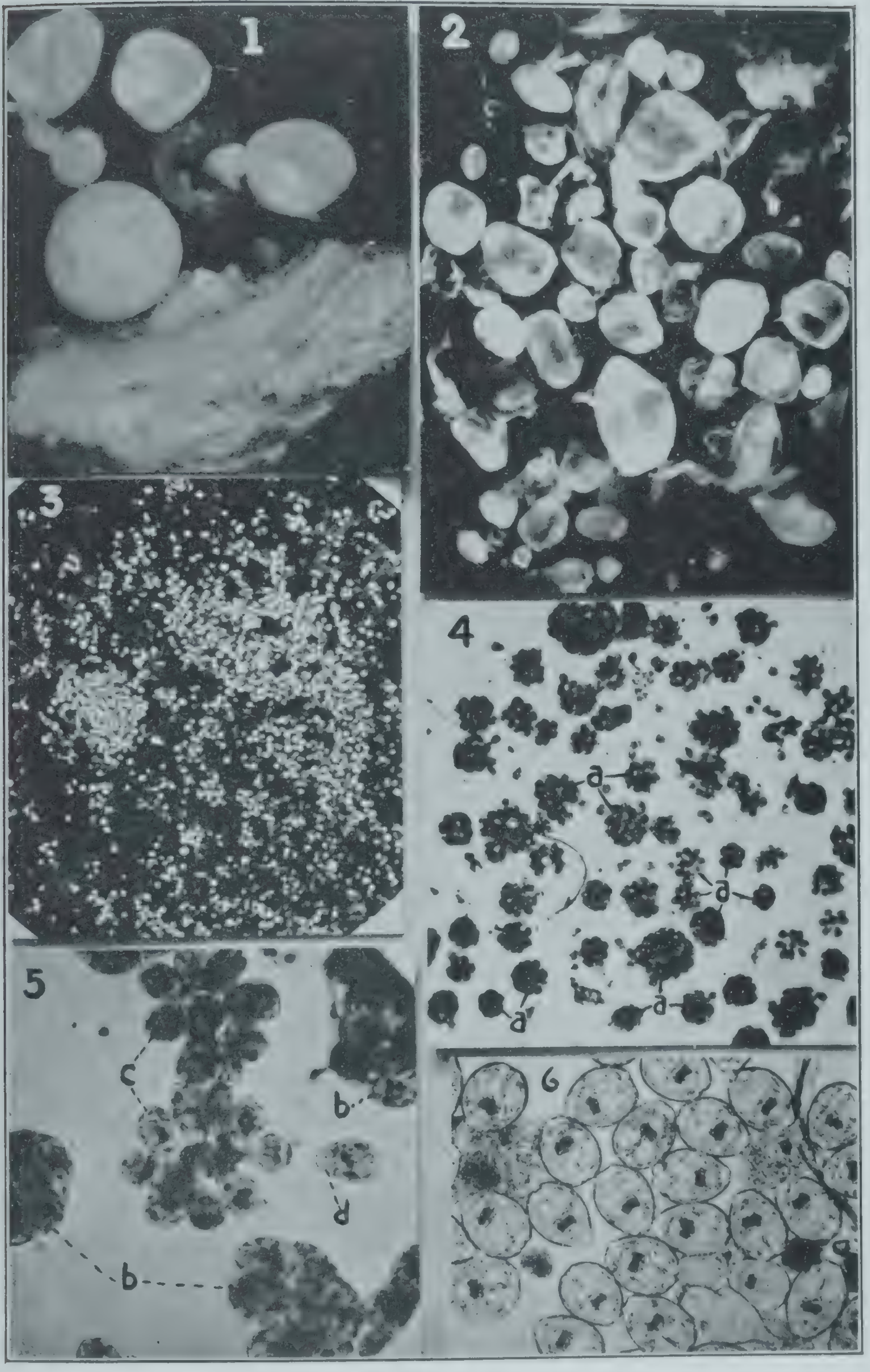


Fig. 299.—*Echinococcus granulosus*. *1* and *2*, Endogenous daughter cysts, natural size. *1*, Hydatid cyst of the liver opening into the bile ducts (treated by Vidal and Camejo). Cysts expelled in the feces. *2*, Case treated by Kourí. *3*. Slightly enlarged photograph of hydatid sand. Material sent by Bacigalupo. Each grain of sand is a brood capsule enclosing a varying number of scolices. Photographed over a dark background with illumination from above. *4*. Photomicrograph of hydatid sand, low power. Each brood capsule, *a*, encloses a variable number of scolices and represents a grain of sand. *5*. Brood capsules, *b*, slightly magnified. Each consists of a group of scolices, enveloped by a germinal membrane, which when broken assumes a central position, with the scolices radially attached. *c*. *d*. Free scolex. *6*. Free scolices, low magnification. (Original of Kourí.)

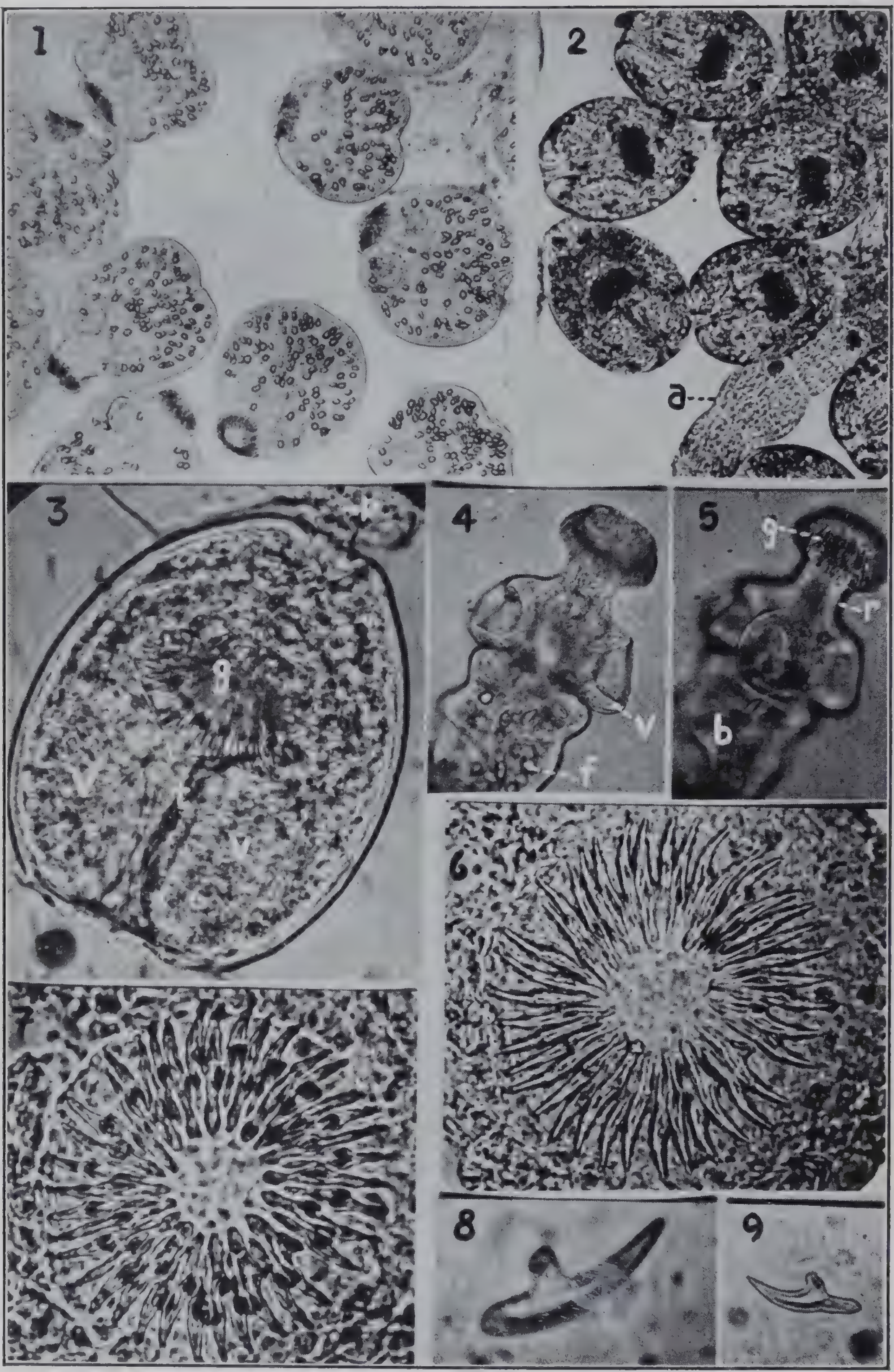


Fig. 300.—*Echinococcus granulosus. 1,* Scolices in fresh material; the crown of hooklets in different stages of protrusion. *2,* Invaginated scolices, fixed in 10 per cent formalin; *a,* protruded scolex. *3,* Invaginated scolex greatly magnified. Note its shape, crown of hooklets, *g,* pedicle in narrow pole, *p,* suctorial sulci or suckers, *v,* and the line of invagination and protrusion of the scolex, *t. 4* and *5,* Completely protruded scolices, fixed in 10 per cent formalin. The crown of hooklets, *g,* rostellum, *r,* suckers, *v,* and pouch, *b,* containing the refractive granules, *f,* are clearly visible. *6* and *7,* Crown composed of 2 rows of hooklets of 2 different sizes. *8* and *9,* Free hooklets of 2 different sizes. (*1* and *3,* Originals of Aguirre Pequeño. Others are originals of Kourí.)

Daughter Cysts or Vesicles.—The daughter cysts may be endogenous or exogenous, dependent upon whether they are found inside or outside the true wall of the mother cyst. They vary in size, sometimes reaching large dimensions. The wall has the same appearance, structure, and functions as that of the mother cyst. In the cavity of these daughter cysts there are fluid, brood capsules, and scolices. The exogenous daughter cysts develop into new hydatid cysts which are similar to the original cysts. Sometimes they communicate with each other and form cysts with an embossed-like surface.

The daughter cysts may originate in 2 different manners: (1) by proliferation (toward the inside or outside) of pieces of the germinal layer confined to the cuticular layer; (2) by vesiculate transformation of the scolices, or by transformation of the brood capsules. The numerous cysts in secondary echinococcosis are developed in the second manner.

Hydatid cysts of animals usually lack daughter cysts because animals are usually slaughtered while young, and daughter cysts grow only in cysts which have been developing for many years. Some hydatid cysts may lack brood capsules and scolices, especially in animals; these cysts are known as sterile cysts or acephalocysts. These are usually small, young cysts in which the scolices have not had time to develop.

Life Cycle

The adult tapeworm is found in great numbers in the intestine of parasitized dogs, its anterior portion imbedded in the mucosa. The eggs are expelled in the feces. When the eggs are ingested by an intermediate host, they reach the intestine, where their external covering is digested, leaving the embryos free. The embryos, aided by their hooklets, bore through the intestinal mucosa and enter the blood capillaries, the lymphatics, and the liver through the portal system. Some may remain in the liver or migrate to the right ventricle of the heart and, through the lung circulation, into the left heart. They may remain in the lung capillaries or proceed through the aorta and be disseminated to any part of the body. A hydatid cyst develops at the point of localization of these embryos. The path followed by the embryos in the circulation explains the frequency of the presence of hydatid cysts in the liver and the lung.

When the definitive host (dog, jackal, wolf) ingests viscera containing a fertile hydatid cyst, the scolices become attached to the intestinal mucosa where they develop into adult parasites. The number of adult taeniae which develop in the intestine is proportional to the number of scolices in the ingested cyst. A period of 4 to 6 weeks elapses from the time of ingestion to the formation of the adult tapeworm. The embryos of *E. granulosus* can elongate and pass through the smallest capillaries. The development of the embryo in a hydatid cyst is very slow. In the first month the larva consists of a nodule 1 mm. in diameter containing an embryo approximately 0.33 mm. in diameter. After the second month the larva has doubled its volume and has become hydropic. The cyst proper is formed after the fifth month. Brood vesicles or scolices develop a few months later.

PATHOGENESIS

The development of the hydatid cyst in the host causes the diseases known as hydatid echinococcosis and alveolar echinococcosis. Both diseases vary as to the character of the symptoms and lesions produced.

Hydatid echinococcosis may be either primary or secondary. In the former a single hydatid cyst is developed. In the latter the rupture of a fertile primary hydatid cyst gives rise to multiple secondary cysts. The rupture may be spontaneous or traumatic, or due to surgical intervention. It causes a dissemination of numerous scolices into the peritoneum, liver, spleen, and lungs, with consequent formation of daughter cysts.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

The parasitized dog constitutes the most immediate danger of infestation for man. The eggs contaminate the soil, vegetables, other food, drinking water and other objects. Contact with healthy sheep which are guarded by infested shepherd dogs is dangerous. These sheep are contaminated by the eggs excreted in the feces of the shepherd dogs. Direct contact with the dog itself is dangerous. The bodies of these animals, and also their muzzles, may contain eggs which come from the ground, feces, or anus of some other dog infested with the parasite.

Man is susceptible to the disease at any age. The disease is less frequent in children under 10 years of age and in old people than in adolescents and middle-aged individuals. The maximum frequency is between 20 and 40 years of age.

Sex has no influence on susceptibility to infestation. Occupation is an important factor in the frequency of the disease. Farmers, butchers, and sausage makers are particularly exposed to infestation by the parasite. The disease is more frequent among the poor than among the rich and is seen more often in the country than in the city.

The parasite may live in any climate. Factors favoring infestation are occupation, personal and food habits. Where cattle raising is one of the main industries, where meat, milk, and their derivatives are important products, and wherever man and dog inhabit the same cabin, conditions are ideal for the spread of this disease.

Importation of infested cattle or dogs which infest other animals, such as cattle, pigs, sheep, and goats, spreads the disease in countries where the parasite did not exist before.

In Iceland in 1860 the incidence of hydatidosis was 1 case in 50 inhabitants. Dogs were very numerous, 1 to every 3 inhabitants. Twenty-eight per cent of the dogs were infested. After a vigorous campaign to exterminate the parasite in 1927, the number of infestations among the inhabitants had decreased to 1 case of hydatidosis to every 1,500 persons. This ratio is 30 times better than before. To reduce the incidence, the proportion of dogs was reduced to 1 every 15 inhabitants. The viscera of infested animals were burned (Finsen, Krabbe, Mathiasson).

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

General Symptoms

The hydatid cyst exerts mechanical (compression), destructive traumatic, and toxic effects upon the body. If the tumor is localized in a favorable site, it may grow freely without causing any disturbances. Its presence may not cause symptoms to attract its host's attention throughout life, but may be found only at autopsy. Usually the growing tumor is revealed either by its great size or by compression of the surrounding tissues. More or less important symptoms may be determined by its localization. The symptoms are very serious when the cyst develops in the brain. Dense tissues which offer resistance to its growth are traumatized and finally destroyed by pressure and local toxic action. This occurs in bony tissues, in the diaphragm, bile ducts, and bronchi.

In general, the toxic action is manifested by urticaria at the beginning of the disease. Serious anaphylactic shock may later occur subsequent to rupture of the cyst and absorption of the liquid contents by the peritoneum.

Cases of infantilism due to development of the cyst in individuals who have not yet reached puberty have been pointed out by Devé. These are cured by extirpation of the tumor. Eosinophilia is usually present. Intradermal, precipitin, and complement fixation reactions are positive. These reactions prove the existence of antibodies in patients with this disease and, therefore, the presence of toxins or antigens in the liquid contents of the cyst.

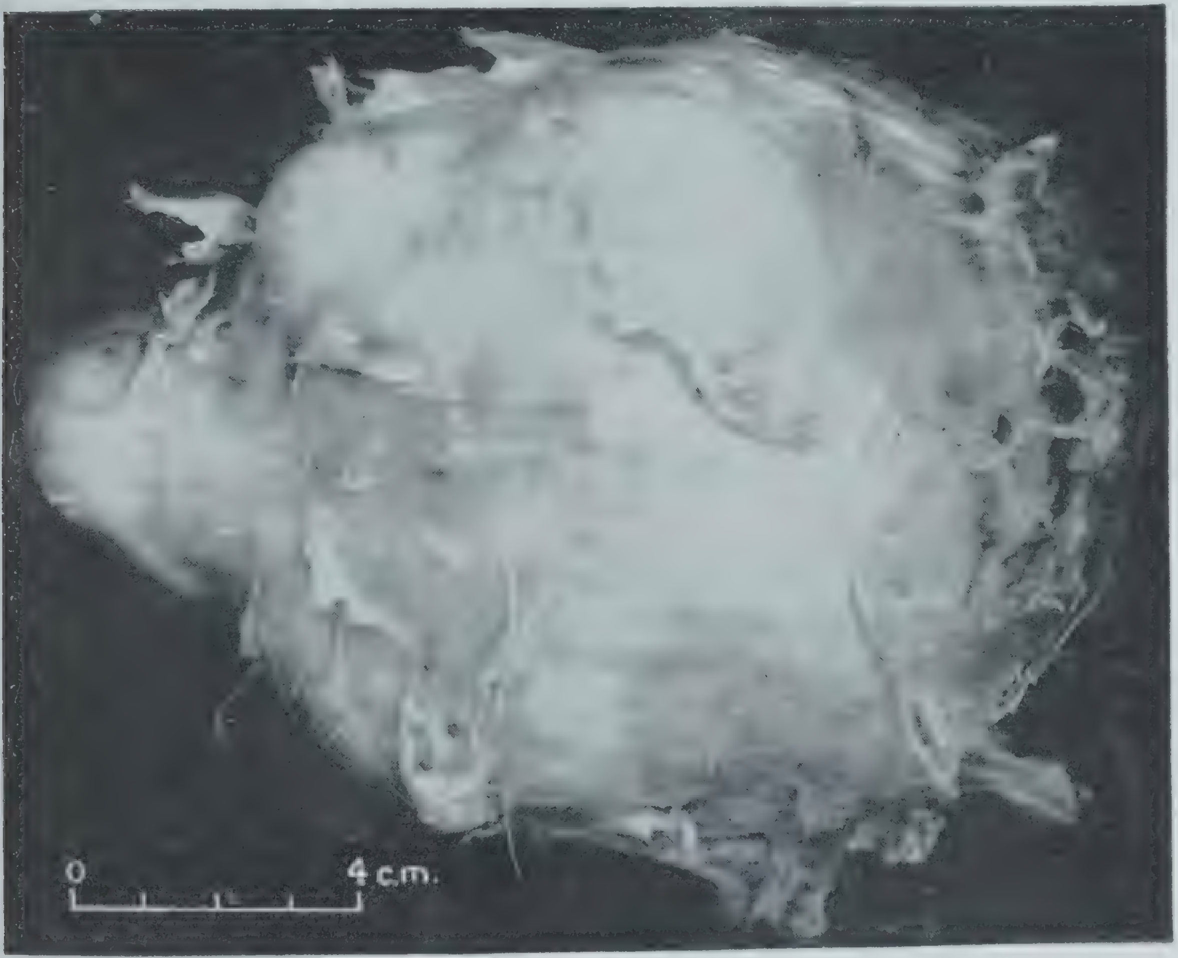


Fig. 301.—*Echinococcus granulosus.* Large hydatid cyst extirpated (by Leza and Fernández) from the abdomen in secondary echinococcosis. (Original of Kourí in Lecciones de Parasitología y Medicina Tropical; courtesy of Editorial Profilaxis S. A., Havana.)

Local Symptoms

Local symptoms depend on the location of the cyst in the body. Sixty-five per cent of all hydatid cysts occur in the liver, 10 per cent in the lungs. Thus the liver is affected by this parasite more often than all of the other organs combined.

In order of frequency, the other organs affected are kidneys, brain, pelvic organs, spleen, and bones. Circulatory system, orbit, face, spinal column, pleura, neck, greater and lesser omentum, and wall of the stomach are less frequently diseased.

Hydatid cyst of the liver might not be noticed. When symptoms do appear, it is usually several years after the beginning of the disease. At first hepatic and epigastric pains are present, which may or may not radiate to the right shoulder. Lack of appetite, especially for fats, usually accompanies these symptoms. If a patient with a hepatic tumor has a history of relapsing urticaria and a high percentage of eosinophiles in the blood, hydatidosis of the liver may be suspected. This is particularly true if the patient comes from a country where this parasitosis abounds. This suspicion should be confirmed or excluded by laboratory investigations.

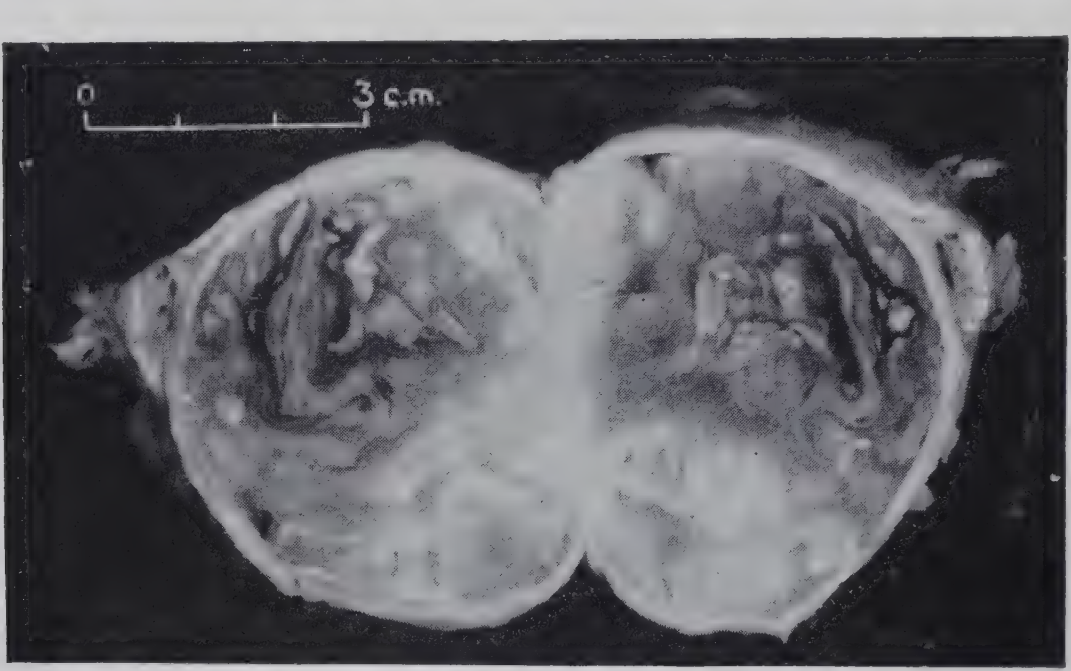


Fig. 302.—*Echinococcus granulosus.* Small, dead, solidified hydatid cyst extirpated during the operation in which the cyst shown in Fig. 301 was removed. There were 2 other, larger hydatid cysts. The cuticular membrane and wall of the daughter vesicles, devoid of liquid, folded, form a gelatinous mass, white and solid. (Original photograph of Kourí and Basnuevo in Lecciones de Parasitología y Medicina Tropical; courtesy of Editorial Profilaxis S. A., Havana.)

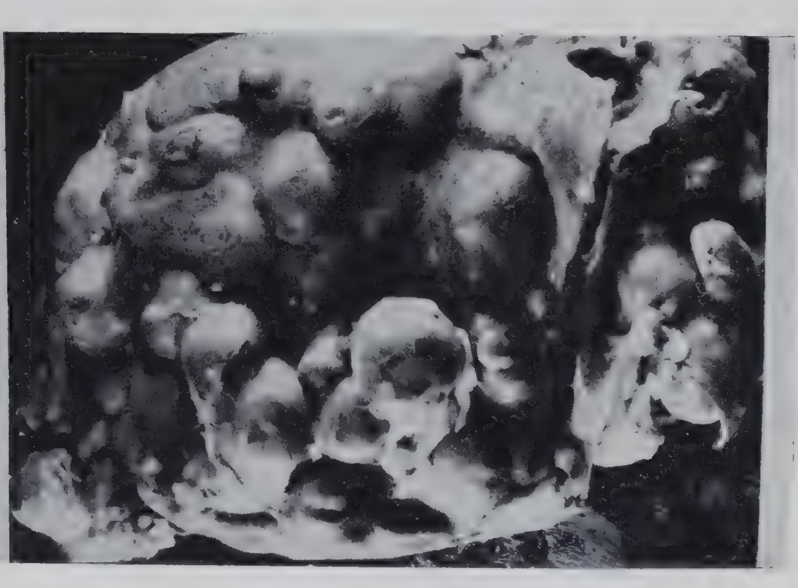


Fig. 303.—*Echinococcus granulosus.* Photographs of hog's liver filled with hydatid cysts in various stages of development. Natural spontaneous infestation. (Originals of Aguirre Pequeño.)

Later the tumor attains voluminous size and pushes out the abdominal wall, causing a noticeable distention of the abdomen. The pressure exerted by the tumor may be so great as to cause perforation of the bile ducts and blood vessels.

By palpating with one hand and percussing with the other, one can feel a hard tumor, dull to percussion, and frequently painless. At times the palpating hand feels the sensation of a definite tremor similar to that produced by touching a mass of gelatin. This was pointed out by Briançon and is known as "hydatid tremor." It is characteristic of all cysts containing fluid under pressure.

Spontaneous recovery may follow death of the larva. The cystic fluid is reabsorbed; the cuticular membrane becomes folded; the tumor becomes solid, and may be calcified. In such instances it may be well tolerated by the host. Spontaneous cure may also follow rupture of the cyst with drainage of its contents into the bile duct, intestine, and thence elimination in the feces.

Death of the larva may be caused by spontaneous bacterial infection, or may be subsequent to puncture of the cyst. Suppuration accompanied by fever and pain usually follows infection or puncturing of the cyst. If the abscess drains to the outside, recovery is possible, but if it opens into the peritoneum, serious complications ensue which may end fatally.

Seepage of bile, spontaneously, or after puncture, into the cavity of the cyst kills the parasite, but suppuration follows, leading to a serious condition.

Kourí found in Cuba some cases of hydatid cysts of the liver which were degenerated and filled with a yellow pulp. From this yellow mass he isolated fragments of the cuticular membrane. These fragments were stained yellow. Microscopic examination of the pulp showed characteristic hooklets of the parasite. One of these cases was found at operation by Presno in 1927, another by Salas and López on autopsy.

In 1937, Vidal and Camejo reported a case of hydatid cyst of the liver spontaneously opening into the bile ducts. The patient claimed she expelled "little globules" in her feces. These globules were the daughter vesicles.

Cuban medical literature shows numerous cases of hydatid cyst, most of them in Spaniards who have been living there for from 10 to 20 years. Only one doubtful autochthonous case has been reported.

Hydatid cyst of the lung is relatively rare in man. It is more frequent among animals. Its site is usually the base of the lung, more frequently on the right side. At first the symptoms may be very slight or absent, but after the cyst has attained sufficient size, especially if it is superficial, the tumor may cause distention of the thoracic wall. Vocal fremitus may be diminished or absent. The wall of the thorax immediately opposite the infested zone is dull to percussion. No vesicular sounds can be heard.

Functional symptoms most frequently observed are compression cough, dyspnea, hemoptysis, bronchitis, and pleurisy.

Spontaneous rupture of the cyst into a bronchus may cause expulsion of a clear salty liquid, daughter vesicles, and fragments of the cuticular mem-

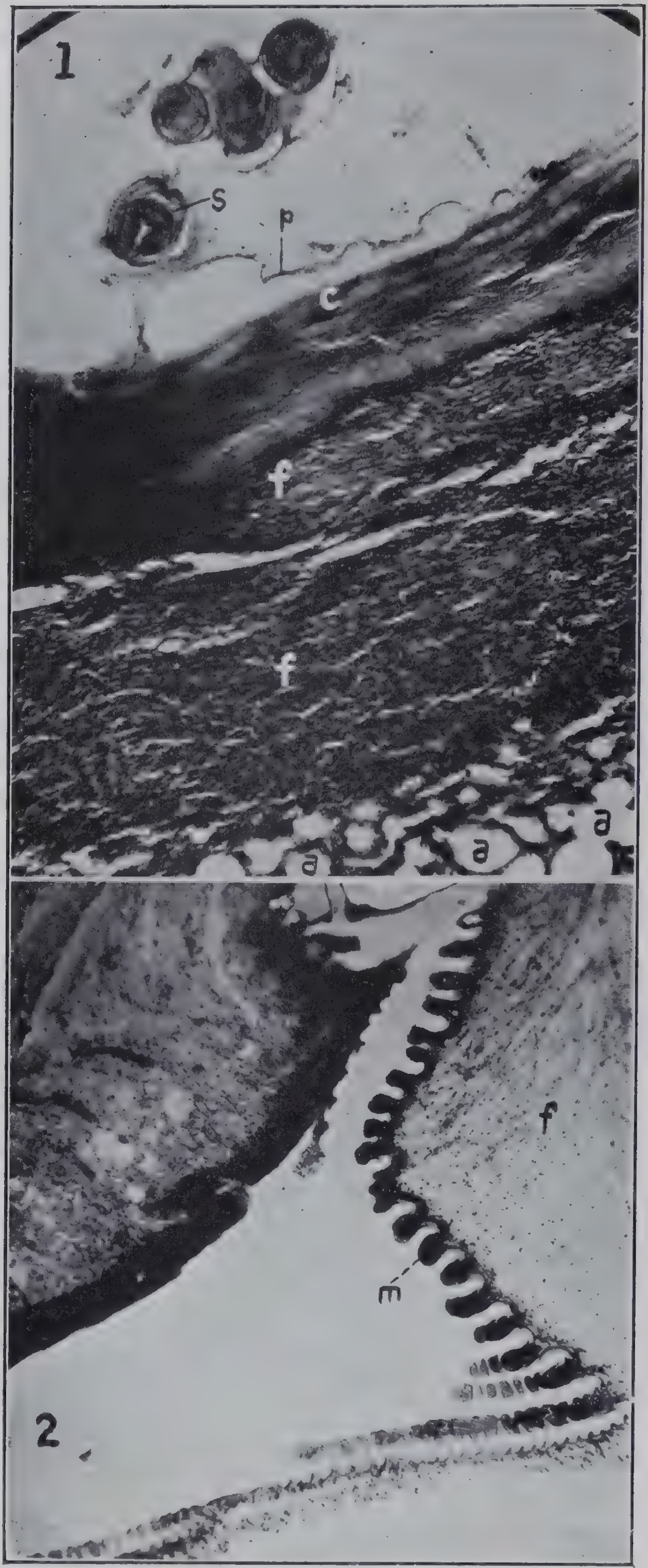


Fig. 304.—*Echinococcus granulosus.* *1.* Photomicrograph of a microscopic section of a hydatid cyst of the lung; *S*, scolex, *p*, germinal membrane, *c*, cuticular coat, *f*, fibrous capsule *a*, alveoli of the repelled pulmonary parenchyma. *2*, Germinal membrane of the wall of a hydatid cyst in the liver of a pig. *m*, papilla of germinal membrane; *f*, fibrous tissue. (Original of Kourí.)

brane, at times with hemoptysis. Scolices and hooklets may be observed microscopically. If the cyst bursts into the pleural cavity, a hydatid hydropneumothorax is produced.

After rupture of the tumor, the cavity of the cyst may suppurate and simulate a tuberculous lesion or bronchial dilatation. This suppuration may become chronic, eventually causing cachexia.

Hydatid cysts of the peritoneum are often secondary, subsequent to rupture of a primary hydatid cyst. Tumors will grow freely in the peritoneal cavity and, as a rule, attain considerable size. They then simulate ascites, ovarian cyst, or other abdominal tumors.

Hydatid cysts of the pelvis are usually secondary. These cysts constitute tumors often diagnosed as cysts of the ovary or fibromas. They cause symptoms of compression and may be the cause of dystocia.

Hydatid cyst of the kidneys is rare. As a general rule, the infestation consists of a unilateral cyst, more often of the left kidney. It usually develops in the cortical substance. Atrophy of the cortex ensues. Compensatory hypertrophy of the healthy kidney develops. Signs of renal insufficiency are, therefore, usually absent.

Rupture of the cyst into the renal pelvis occurs more frequently than into the peritoneal and pleural cavities. Nephritic colic and mechanical or reflex retention of the urine are commonly present in this case. Scolices and hooklets appear in the urine.

Hydatid cyst of the brain is not rare. It is observed more often in children than in adults. The site of infestation may be the meninges, the white or the gray substances of the brain. The tumor never attains a large size. It causes atrophy. When the cyst is superficial, slow destruction of the cranial bones may occur. The symptoms are those of brain tumors. It usually causes death.

Hydatid cyst of the bones occurs commonly in the pelvis, tibia, humerus, or vertebral column. The tumor has a pseudomultilocular aspect. It can reabsorb bone tissue.

Hydatid cyst of the circulatory system, when in the myocardium, causes palpitation and arrhythmia. Rupture of the cyst into the cardiac cavity produces embolism. Similar results follow in cysts of the pulmonary, axillary, and crural arteries. Aneurysm may be produced.

Natural Changes in Hydatid Cysts.—Cysts may degenerate, retract, or become calcified. Bacterial infection between the cuticular and adventitious membranes kills the larva. Bacteria enter the hydatid fluid, which, being a good culture medium, aids their growth; abscess formation follows. If this abscess drains and opens directly on the outside of the body, or into an organ which leads to the outside, recovery is possible, but if it ruptures into a serous cavity, death is almost inevitable.

Large cysts have very thin walls and may rupture spontaneously or as a result of mechanical action. If the cyst ruptures to the outside of the body, recovery may ensue, but if it opens into a body cavity, the patient might suffer

anaphylactic shock. This shock is very seldom fatal. Secondary echinococ
sis usually develops after dissemination of endogenous daughter cysts, br
capsules, and scolices into the serosa.

DIAGNOSIS

The clinical diagnosis of hydatidosis is very difficult because hydatido
simulates many diseases, depending on the organ in which the larva is foun
Hydatid cyst should be suspected in an individual who has a hard abdomin
tumor with or without hydatid tremors, eosinophilia, and relapsing urticar
This is especially true if the patient lives or has lived in a country where t
parasite is common.

X-ray pictures showing a distinct circular shadow may be invaluable f
the diagnosis, especially in cases of pulmonary cysts.

Diagnositic puncture should not be performed when the abdominal cavit
is the site of infestation. The patient is exposed to serious anaphylactic shoc
by peritoneal absorption of hydatid fluid. Bacterial infection of a puncture
cyst may cause abscess formation. The scolices which escape into the perit
neum may give rise to a secondary echinococcosis.

The diagnosis can be established by finding hooklets, scolices, vesicle
membrane, or hydatid fluid in feces, bile, urine, sputum, or vomica, or in th
material obtained by puncture, operation, or at autopsy. The finding of hook
lets is important because of their resistance to disintegration, even in degen
erating or suppurating cysts.

In most cases serologic methods must be used to establish the clinical di
agnosis. Precipitin, complement fixation, and intradermal tests may be used.[*]

PROGNOSIS

According to Vegas and Cranwell, the death rate in hydatidosis is 13.
per cent. Spontaneous recovery is very rare; the prognosis is always grave.

TREATMENT

Medical treatment has to date failed to effect cure. Tartar emetic an
neosalvarsan have been used without success. Croste stated that he had obtained good results by using injections of antimony in a relapsing case o
hydatidosis. This patient had to be operated upon several times. When antimony was used, the patient recovered.

The best treatment is surgical extirpation of the cyst. The abdomen is opened, and the tumor is sutured to the abdominal wall. One per cent formalin is injected, marsupialization of the cyst is effected, and the parasite is removed.

Diagnosis of all cases should be made as early as possible, and the opera
tion should be performed immediately after diagnosis.

---

[*] See Gradwohl and Kourí, 1948, pp. 529 and 530, and Chapter 72.

PROPHYLAXIS

Theoretically, prophylaxis might be effective if the cycle is interrupted at any stage, but practically the easiest thing to do is to keep dogs from becoming infected. It is almost impossible to keep man, dogs, and cattle from contact with each other, but if dogs are prevented from acquiring the parasite, hydatidosis might be reduced in incidence or even completely eliminated.

Devé and Blanchard recommend:

1. Confiscate and incinerate all contaminated animal viscera.
2. Prohibit the presence of dogs in all abattoirs.
3. Educate the public about the danger of feeding dogs with viscera from infested animals.
4. Insist on proper inspection of all abattoirs by veterinary officials.
5. Give fullest publicity to the pathogenesis of echinococcosis and preventive methods.
6. Purchase and dispose of all infected viscera (Ivanissevich).

Infested dogs should be destroyed or treated with anthelminthics. In Iceland, where dogs are restricted, fines have been imposed on those who break the law; this parasitosis has been completely eradicated in that country. In Cuba, where echinococcosis has recently appeared, it is important that serious and more thorough inspection of meat in the abattoirs be made. Fortunately, veterinarians of the future will be better prepared for this task.

HYMENOLEPIASIS NANA (DWARF TAPEWORM INFECTION)

(Parasitism Produced by *Hymenolepis Nana*)

HISTORY

This species was discovered by Bilharz in 1851 in the small intestine of a native child in Cairo. Grassi and Rovelli in 1887, 1892, studied the life cycle and proved that the parasite does not require an intermediate host.

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

H. nana is relatively common in certain countries and totally absent in others with the same climate and in the same latitude. Brumpt believes that this strange limited geographical distribution is due to the fact that the eggs exhibit low resistance to certain environmental conditions and die when exposed to them.

In Europe, it is rarely found in the north, quite commonly in the south. Kourí has treated numerous cases of adults who had migrated to Cuba from the north of Spain (Asturias) where the parasite is probably very abundant. In Africa, the parasite is frequent in the north (Egypt and Algeria). It has been observed in Transvaal and in West Africa. In Asia it is quite common in Central India where it is found that 10 to 20 per cent of the inhabitants are affected (Chandler, in the Punjab). It is rare in Indo-China; it has been observed in Japan.

It is quite rare in New Guinea (0.4 per cent) and the Philippine Islands (1 to 2 per cent), and very rare in Australia. It is totally absent in many of the small East Indies islands.

It is frequent in Argentina, Uruguay, Puerto Rico, and Cuba and is the commonest tapeworm in the southern United States. It has been observed in Brazil, the Guianas, and other countries.

CAUSATIVE AGENT

Hymenolepis Nana (von Siebold, 1852) Blanchard, 1891

Synonyms.—*Taenia nana* von Siebold 1852; *Taenia aegyptiaca* Bilharz 1852; *Di* *canthus nanus* Weinland 1858; *Hymenolepis fraterna* Stiles 1906.

H. nana is a small worm 25 to 40 by 0.5 to 0.7 mm. The scolex has a retracta rostellum with a single crown of 20 to 30 hooklets. The neck is long. The anterior segme are very short. They graduallly increase in size, although the width is always greater th the length. The gravid segments separate from the chain and are partially digested, a then liberate the eggs, which can also free themselves from the gravid segments before t segments separate from the strobila.

The *eggs* are spherical or subspherical and have 2 covers in addition to the wall of t hexacanth embryo, which can be considered a vitelline embryonic membrane. According Kourí the dimensions are: external cover, 47 by 36 microns; internal cover, usually oblon 28 by 23 microns, with a rounded protuberance in each pole, from which rise 4 to 8 sinuo refractive filaments which occupy the space between the 2 covers. Within the internal cov is found the onchosphere or hexacanth embryo, 26 by 20 microns. The 3 pairs of hookle are lancet-shaped and 11 microns long.

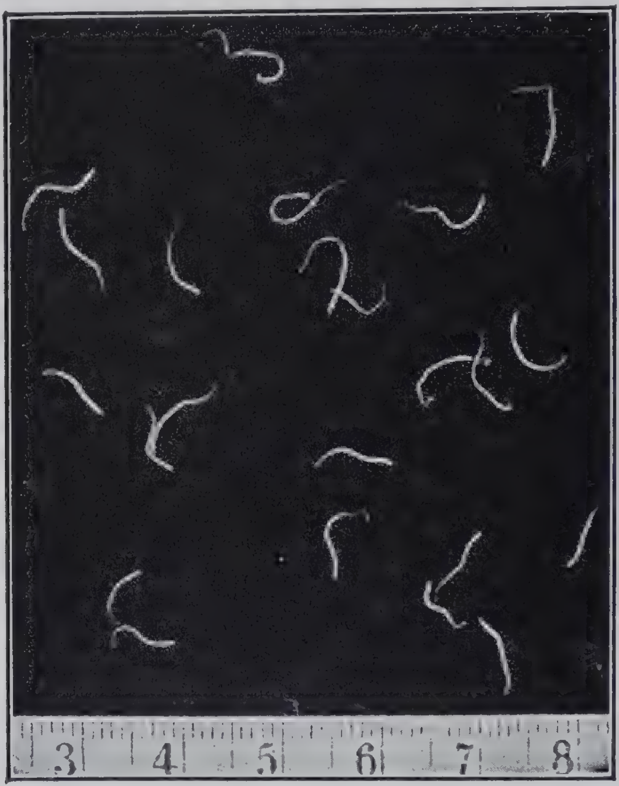


Fig. 305.—*Hymenolepis nana.* Millimeter scale; dark background; illumination fro above. Specimens of human origin, fixed in 10 per cent formalin. (Original photograph o Kourí, 1½ times the natural size.)

These eggs are colorless and refractive. They are usually found in great numbe in direct examination of the feces, due to partial disintegration of the gravid proglottids o the tapeworm, which are very fragile.

The parasite is usually found in the distal portions of the ileum of ma It is found in certain rodents, especially rats and mice. In Cuba it is usual found in the gray rat, often associated with *H. diminuta.* Man acts as both t intermediate and definitive host.

Usually massive infestation is seen, especially in children, because of aut infestation. Lutz counted up to 2,000, Grassi more than 4,000. Bacigalu

7,360, Rodriguez Molina more than 7,000, and Kourí 1,000 worms in single cases. The parasites are usually expelled in small fragments embedded in mucus.

The life span is short in rodents which spontaneously become free of the parasites. Older rodents are refractory to infestation. This seems to indicate that the animals acquire an immunity. The life span in man is impossible to determine because of autoinfestation. Parasitism is 3 times more frequent among children than in adults.

Life Cycle

H. nana has 2 life cycles. In the direct life cycle, man is both the intermediate and definitive host. As the intermediate host he harbors the larval form, and as the definitive host, the adult parasite. In the indirect cycle the larvae develop in fleas *(Ctenocephalides canis, Xenopsylla cheopis, Pulex irritans, Tenebrio molitor,* and *T. obscurus).*

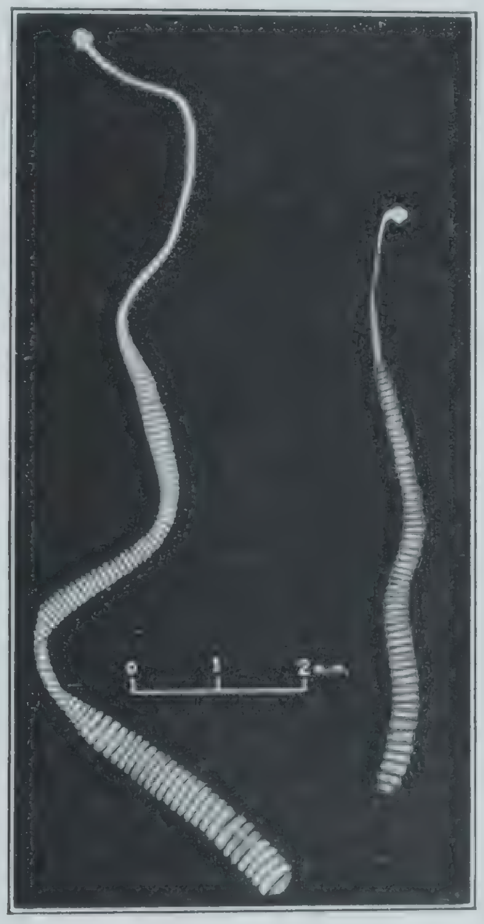


Fig. 306.—*Hymenolepis nana.* Two specimens. Dark background; greatly enlarged; fixed in 10 per cent formalin. (Original photograph of Kourí.)

The *cysticercoid* or larval form of this parasite *(Cerocystis hymenolepis nana)* in the lirect cycle has not yet been found in the human intestine but has been studied experimentally.

Direct Life Cycle.—When the eggs are ingested by the host, the hexacanth embryos are et free and attach themselves to the villi of the small intestine. After 72 hours the larvae cercocystis, cysticercoid, scolex) break through and the scolices become attached to the wall f the intestine. Here the neck proliferates, resulting in the formation of the adult parasite. his process requires 2 weeks. Upon reaching gravidity, the distal proglottids separate from he parasite, disintegrate, and liberate the eggs. The eggs are expelled in the feces. If in ested directly (by external autoinfestation or in contaminated food), they enter the in estine and a new cycle begins.

Grassi claims that *H. nana* of man and *H. fraterna* of rats are the same species, therefore the life cycle of *H. nana* in man must be identical with that of *H. fraterna* in r According to the studies of Calandruccio, Saeki, Goldman, and Woodland, the life cycle *H. nana* in man is direct, and identical with that of *H. fraterna* in rats (Brumpt).

Indirect Life Cycle.—The intermediate host in the indirect cycle is an invertebra Several authorities found armed cysticercoids in rat fleas *(Ceratophyllus fasciatus, Xenopsy cheopis).* They considered these cysticercoids as the larval forms of *H. nana* (Dampf, Ni and Minchin, Johnston). However, Bacigalupo produced experimental infestation in larv of fleas with eggs of *H. nana* and *H. fraterna* and infested young adults of *T. molitor* an *T. obscurus* in the same way. Later Brumpt succeeded in repeating this experiment wit *T. molitor* and thus completed the description of the cysticercoid in the body cavity of the insects. This type of cysticercoid is different from that developed in the intestinal villi o the rat.

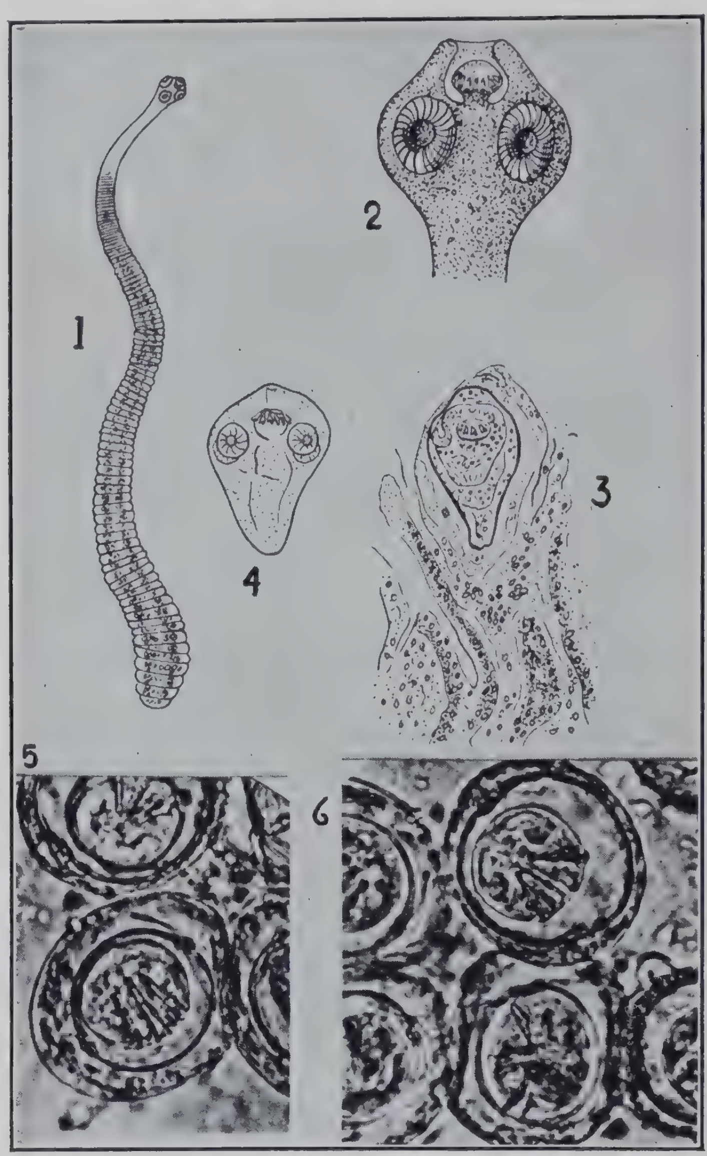


Fig. 307.—*Hymenolepis nana.* *1,* Adult, ×12 (according to Leuckart). *2,* Scolex (according to Blanchard). *3,* Cysticercoid of *H. fraterna* in an intestinal villus of a mous (original of Brumpt). *4,* Cysticercoid of *H. fraterna* recently escaped from a villus to becom attached to the intestinal wall of a mouse (original after Brumpt). *5* and *6,* Photomicrograph of the eggs of *H. nana* in human feces, ×600 (originals of Kourí).

Identification

Do *H. nana* and *H. fraterna* belong to the same species? This is a very importan question from the viewpoint of epidemiology and prophylaxis, since rats may play an in portant role in the propagation of *H. nana* in man. Differences in the geographic distribution of both parasites, as well as differences in location of the parasite in the intestines in experimental infestation of rats, have led several authors to consider them 2 distinct species (Joyeux, Blanchard, Bacigalupo).

Bacigalupo claims that when he infested rats with eggs from human feces and with eggs from feces of rats he observed that the former became localized in the distal portions and the latter in the proximal portions of the small intestines of the animals.

Kourí noted that, in spontaneous infestation of rats with *H. fraterna,* large numbers of parasites do not appear, although many parasites are found when man is infested spontaneously. Parasites in human feces are much shorter than those obtained from rats, probably due to the fact that specimens obtained after anthelminthic administrations are fragmented. Recently Kourí and others confirmed that *H. nana* from human sources is much shorter than *H. fraterna* from rats.

Joyeux tried without success to infest rats with the eggs of Hymenolepis derived from human sources (1920). Later, many other authors succeeded in producing this infestation. The percentage of infestation in these experiments, however, was smaller than that obtained by using eggs from murine sources (Saeki, Uchimura; Kiribayashi, Bacigalupo; and Woodland).

It is probable that we are dealing with biologic species or races of the same parasite, as is the case with Ancylostoma of dogs and of cats. These 2 species are morphologically identical; nevertheless, they are not transmissible from one animal to the other. Another example is the Ascaris group. The species which infests man does not infest pigs and vice versa. These 2 species are, however, morphologically identical. Further investigation in this field is necessary to elucidate this as yet unsolved problem.

PATHOGENICITY

Lesions and symptoms are serious because of the intensity of the infestation. It causes congestion of the intestinal mucosa, lymphoid infiltrations, and small ulcerations, resulting in slight intestinal hemorrhages. Frequently clinical pictures of enteritis and nervous symptoms are observed (epileptiform convulsions and laryngospasms). Eosinophilia is usually present.

DIAGNOSIS

Diagnosis is established by microscopic examination of the feces for the presence of the eggs, which are usually found in large numbers. The concentration method of Willis facilitates the discovery of the eggs. Direct examination and concentration methods of low and high density solutions should be used. (See Chapter 72.)

TREATMENT

Treatment is the same as for taeniasis. The efficacy of oil of chenopodium has been proved. Usually several treatments are necessary, for relapses are quite common. Kourí has observed several cases in children over a period of many years. These children have been subjected to various treatments, with expulsion of numerous parasites, without having attained definitive and complete cure.

PROPHYLAXIS

Since both direct infestation by ingestion of the eggs and autoinfestation are possible, the prophylactic procedure is the same as that followed in enterobiasis. Parasitized children should be treated and kept from contact with other children. It should be remembered that ingestion of the arthropods intermediate hosts of the parasite, constitutes another method of contracting the disease. Rats are the habitual host of *H. fraterna,* which is considered by some authors to be identical with *H. nana.* If this is true, then the feces of parasitized rats are sources of infestation. Fleas *(Xenopsylla cheopis* and *Ceratophyllus fasciatus)* of these rats are another source of infestation.

HYMENOLEPIASIS DIMINUTA (THE RAT TAPEWORM INFECTION)

(Parasitism Produced by the Rat Tapeworm)

HISTORY

Hymenolepis diminuta, a common tapeworm of the mouse and rat, is also found in man. It was discovered by Olfers in 1766 in rats in Rio de Janeiro and was described in man by Weinland in 1858.

Hymenolepis Diminuta in Man

According to Riley and Shannon, 61 cases of human parasitism by *H. diminuta* had been reported up to 1922. Between 1922 and 1944, more than 200 additional cases of human parasitism with this tapeworm were reported, 15 of which occurred in Cuba, where it infests white and gray rats. Other cases were reported in Argentina, Brazil, Costa Rica, the United States, Ecuador, Guatemala, Mexico, Granada, Martinique, Nicaragua, Belgium, Italy, East Africa, U.S.S.R., Japan, India, and the Philippines.

Man is accidentally infected by swallowing insects or other arthropods parasitized by the larval form. These insects have previously been infected by ingesting the eggs of the parasite disseminated in the excreta of the Muridae, their habitual definitive hosts. The number of parasites harbored is usually 1 to 3, although cases have been reported with as many as 19 specimens.

CAUSATIVE AGENT

Hymenolepis (Hymenolepis) Diminuta (Rudolphi, 1819) Blanchard, 1891

Synonyms.—*Taenia diminuta,* Rudolphi 1819; *T. leptocephala,* Creplin 1825; *T. flavopunctata,* Weinland, 1858; *T. varesina,* Paroma 1884; *T. minima,* Grassi, 1886; *Hymenolepis diminuta,* R. Blanchard 1891.

The *adult worm* is 20 to 60 cm., at times 75 cm. long, and about 3.5 mm. wide, and has a small scolex, 200 to 300 microns in diameter, which bears a rudimentary unarmed rostellum without hooklets. The rostellum is hidden in a small infundibulum. The neck is short, measuring 500 by 150 microns.

The proglottids, including those which are gravid, are rather short and wide. The caudal proglottids become separated from the rest of the strobila, partly distinegrate, and liberate the eggs. The eggs frequently leave the gravid proglottids in the last tenth of the strobila before detachment of the proglottids.

The *eggs* are spherical and have 2 walls and a hexacanth embryo. The outer wall is yellowish, radially striated, and the inner surface wrinkled. The diameter is 60 to 80 microns. The inner wall is refractive and colorless. It encloses the hexacanth embryo, 36 microns by 28. The hooklets of the embryo are 11 microns longs.

This parasite is found in the proximal portions of the small intestine of rats and mice, of which it is a habitual parasite.

Life Cycle

The life cycle is indirect and requires an intermediate host. The eggs are passed in the feces and are ingested by an insect which acts as intermediate host, and embryos are liberated in the digestive tract of the insect. These embryos bore through the wall and localize in the body cavity, where they develop into the larval or cysticercoid form *(Cerocystis hymenolepis diminuta).*

Joyeux has demonstrated that the larvae of the rat flea *(Ceratophyl'us fasciatus* and *Xenopsylla cheopis)* are infested by the embryos. In this case the embryos develop into adult forms before the larvae of the insects attain their adult state. Grassi and Rovelli have demonstrated experimentally that the cysticercoids ingested by rats, mice, or man develop into adult forms in a period of 15 days.

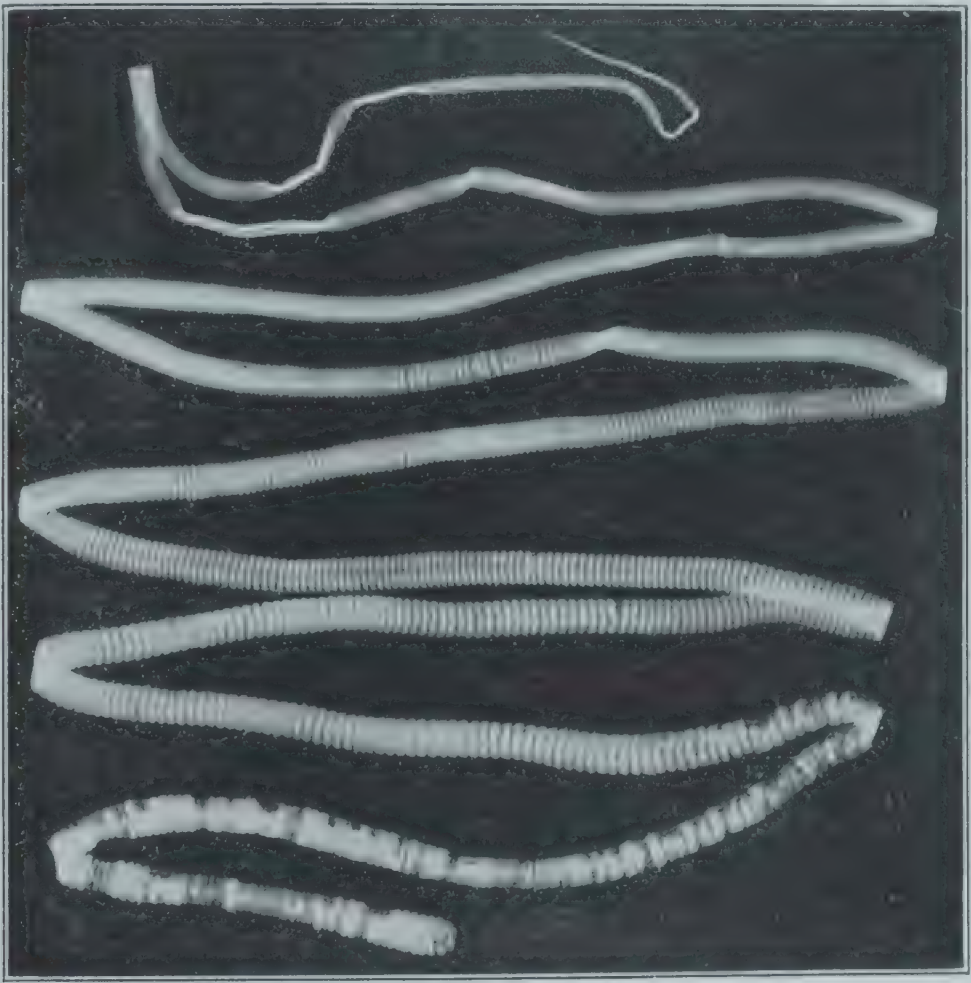


Fig. 308.—*Hymenolepis diminuta* of murine origin; 75 cm. long. Obtained at autopsy of a rat. The scolex is very small. All proglottids, gravid included, are wider than long, so that it is difficult to see the separation between the proglottids with the naked eye. The segmentation is easily seen with a magnifying glass, as in this photograph. Observe the transparent zones in the gravid proglottids, which have liberated the eggs (in the last portion of the strobila). (Original of Kourí and Basnuevo in Lecciones de Parasitología y Medicina Tropical; courtesy of Editorial Proflaxis S. A., Havana.)

Intermediate Hosts.—

The following are known to be spontaneously infested:

Asopia (Pyralis) farinalis (caterpillar and butterfly); *Akis spinosa, Scaurus striatus, Dermestes peruvianus* (larva), *Ulosonia parvicornis* (adult stage); *Anisolabis annulipes* (earwig); *Ceratophyllus fasciatus,* and *Xenopsylla cheopis.*

The following have been experimentally infested:

Tinea granella, T. lionella, Aglossa dimidiata, Aphornia gularis; Tenebrio molitor (adult stage only), *Geotrupes sylvaticus; Leptopsylla musculi, Ctenocephalides canis, Pulex irritans. Ceratophyllus wickami* (larval stage only); *Fontaria virginica.*

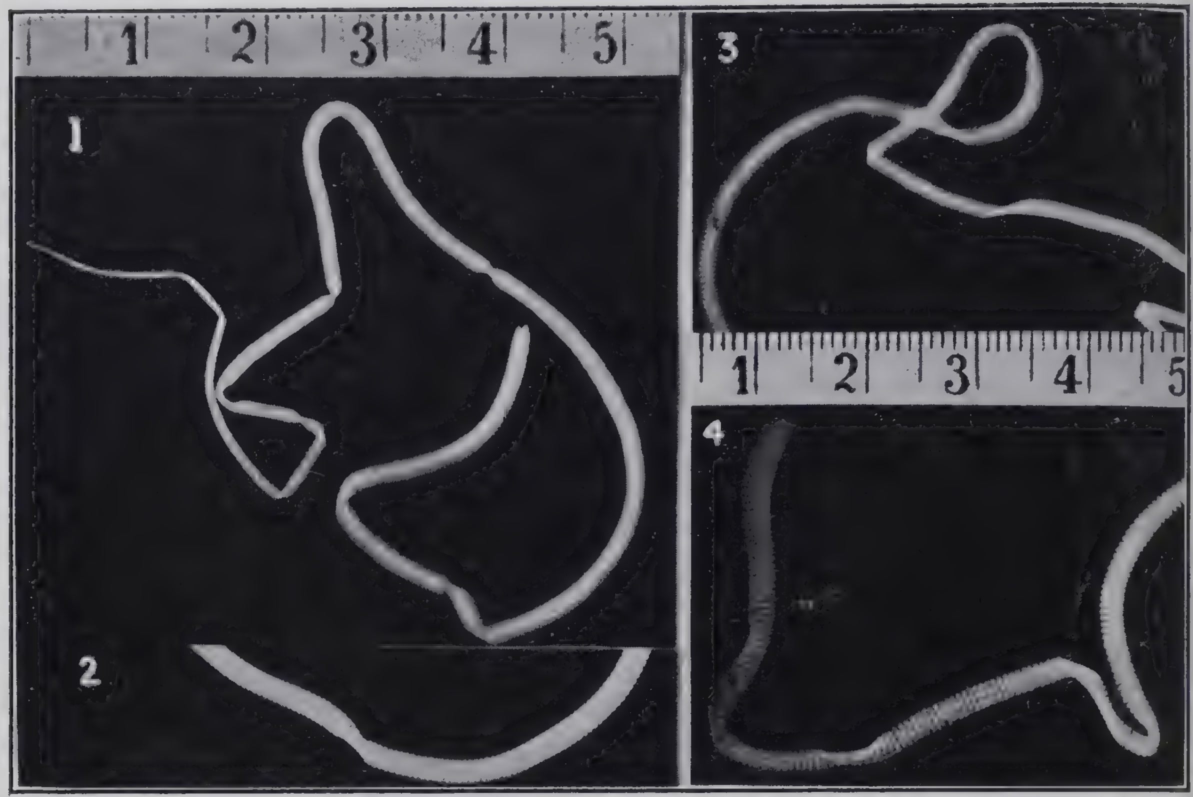


Fig. 309.—*Hymenolepis diminuta.* Smaller specimen, derived from rat. *1,* Complete small specimen. *2, 3,* and *4,* Fragments of a larger specimen. Note the finely serrated borders and the transverse striations which are very close together and resemble the segments. Dark background; illumination from above. Millimeter scale (×1.80). (Originals of Kourí.)

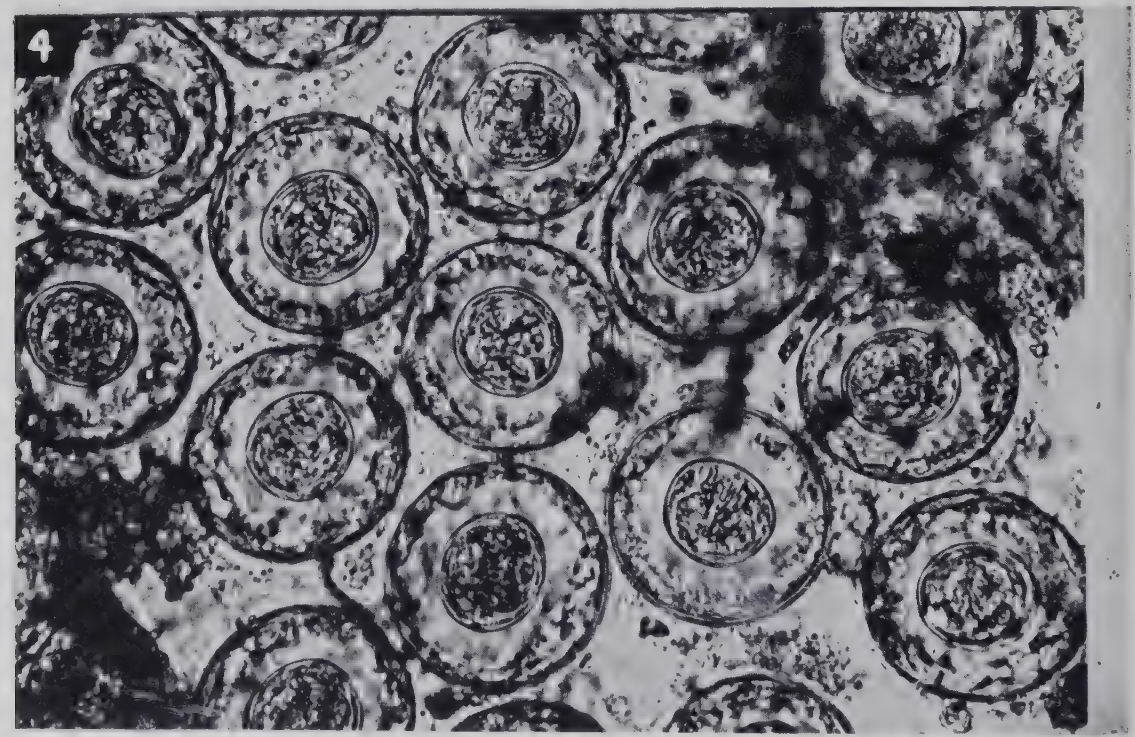


Fig. 310.—*Hymenolepis diminuta* eggs (×310) from the gravid proglottids. They ar large and spherical and have 2 widely separated walls. The outer wall is yellow with radia striations, its inner surface wrinkled. The inner wall is smooth, colorless, and refractive an not so definitely round as the outer wall. The inner membrane contains the embryo with pairs of hooklets. (Original photomicrographs of Kourí.)

According to Joyeux, cockroaches are not infested. According to Bacigalupo, the following insects act as intermediate hosts in Argentina: *Dermestes vulpinus* Fabricius; *Dermestes peruvianus* Castelnau; *Ulosonia parvicornis* Fairmaire; *Anisolabis annulipes* Lucas; *Embia (Rhagadachir) argentina* Navas.

PATHOGENICITY AND SYMPTOMATOLOGY

Pathogenicity and symptomatology are in general similar to the taeniases.

DIAGNOSIS

Diagnosis is made by microscopic examination of feces for the presence of the eggs. Direct and concentration methods should be used.

TREATMENT

Treatment is the same as for taeniases in general, although sometimes the patient expels the complete parasite or part of it, spontaneously or following a purgative.

PROPHYLAXIS

Ingestion of insects infested with the larvae of the parasite should be prevented. *Asopia farinalis*, a lepidopterid often found in flour, may be ingested by eating bread which is not well baked. Rat fleas *(Xenopsylla cheopis* and *Ceratophyllus fasciatus)* and dog fleas *(Ctenocephalides canis)* may contaminate man, especially children.

HUMAN DIPYLIDIASIS

(DOG TAPEWORM INFECTION)

(Parasitism Produced by *Dipylidium Caninum,* the Double-Pored Dog Tapeworm)

CAUSATIVE AGENT

Dipylidium Caninum (Linnaeus 1758) Railliet 1892

Synonyms.—*Taenia canina* Linnaeus 1758 *pro parte; T. moniliformis* Pallas 1781; *T. cucumerina* Bloch 1782; *T. elliptica* Goeze 1783; *T. cateniformis* Goeze 1782; *Alyselminthus cuneiceps* Zeder 1800; *T. canina felis* Rudolphi 1810; *T. prismatica* Rudolphi 1810; *T. cunipes* Diamare 1893; *Dipylidium cati* Neumann 1896; *D. oerleyi* von Ratz 1900; *D. sexcoronatum* von Ratz 1900; *D. walkeri* Sondhi 1923; *D. halli* Tubangui 1925; *D. compactum* Millzner 1926; *D. crassum* Millzner 1926; *D. diffusum* Millzner 1926; *D. gracili* Millzner 1926; *D. longulum* Millzner 1926; *D. caninum* López-Neyra 1927; *D. carracidoi* López-Neyra 1928; *D. porimamillanum* López-Neyra 1928.

This tapeworm is a habitual parasite of the intestines of dogs and cats. The parasite was found in large numbers in 50 per cent of dogs autopsied in Havana (Arenas, Kourí, Basnuevo, 1933).

According to Blanchard (1907), 60 cases of human parasitism by *D. caninum* had been reported up to 1907. Since that date, new cases have been reported in different countries. The number of human cases has been increased by several hundreds in Germany, Denmark, Italy, Switzerland, Norway, Sweden, Austria, Holland, France, England, United States, Costa Rica, Philippines, Japan, and China. Fermoselle and Portuondo (1936) reported the first case in Costa Rica. We believe that human parasitism by this worm, especially among children, is not so infrequent as it seems. Many cases remain unknown for some time because of the difficulty of establishing the diagnosis.

No human cases had been reported in Cuba until recently. Calderín, a student of Ko presented a specimen which had been passed by a young girl. Some time later, Kourí had opportunity of studying another case in a human being from the province of Oriente. T patient expelled several specimens of this parasite.

In 1943, Montero reported another patient from Oriente, Cuba. This was a child w had spontaneously expelled 3 specimens. In Camagüey, Cuba, one case reported Rodríguez León was a child who had expelled 5 specimens of the parasite, which were sent Kourí for confirmation. Another case report was sent by Manuel Saínz Ortiz and Rivacol of Moron. One case report was sent from the province of Las Villas, Cuba, by Federi Escobar of Ranchuelo, and 2 patients were reported by Iznaga in 1942. Two patients we treated at the Institute of Tropical Medicine of the University of Havana (Kourí, Basnue Sotolongo), making a total of 10 cases of human dipylidiasis reported in Cuba up to 1944.

Dipylidium caninum is 10 to 50 cm. by 2 to 3 mm. The scolex is relatively small, a though larger than that of *H. nana* and *H. diminuta,* and has a retractile rostellum whi bears 4 crowns of thorn-like hooklets. The size of the hooklets decreases gradually from t anterior to the posterior crown which bears the smallest hooklets. There are 4 large, elliptic suckers.

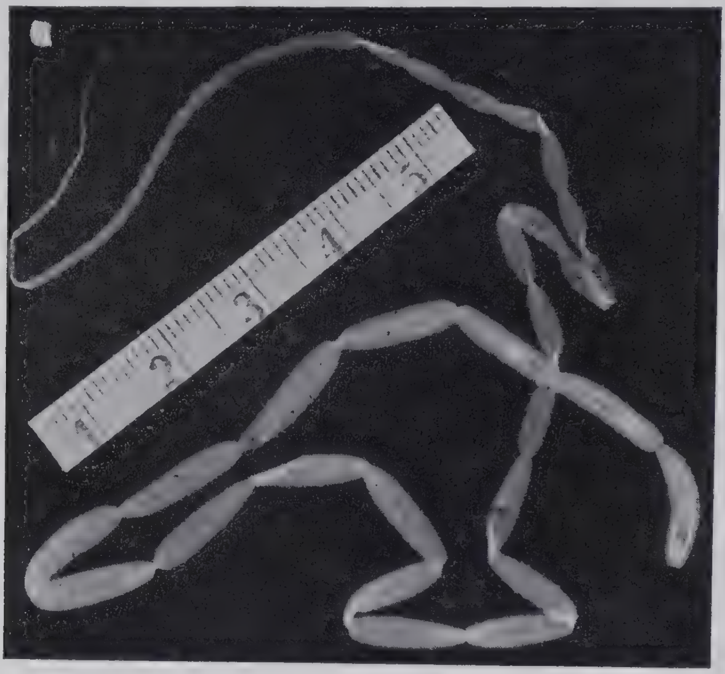


Fig. 311.—*Dipylidium caninum,* complete specimen, large size in 10 per cent formalin Dark background; illuminated from above. Millimeter scale. (×1.60.) (Original photograp of Kourí, Arenas, and Basnuevo.)

The mature and gravid proglottids are longer than wide. They have convex borders an resemble cucumber seeds.

The *eggs* are almost spherical, 52 by 45 microns. There are 2 thin covers, the inner, 3 by 31 microns, containing a hexacanth embryo, 28 to 30 microns in diameter, with hooklets 9 microns long.

The eggs occur in groups of 8 to 16 within the oviferous capsule, which is enclosed withi the gravid proglottid.

This parasite is found in the upper small intestines of dogs and cats. One case of localization in the gall bladder and one of encysted proglottids in the colon of an infected ca are known.

The number of parasites harbored is at times considerable, especially in young animals. The number in human cases is 1 to 5 specimens.

Life Cycle

The gravid proglottids pass outside the body and there expel oviferous capsules contai ing eggs. These eggs are ingested by intermediate hosts, dog lice and fleas (*Trichodec*

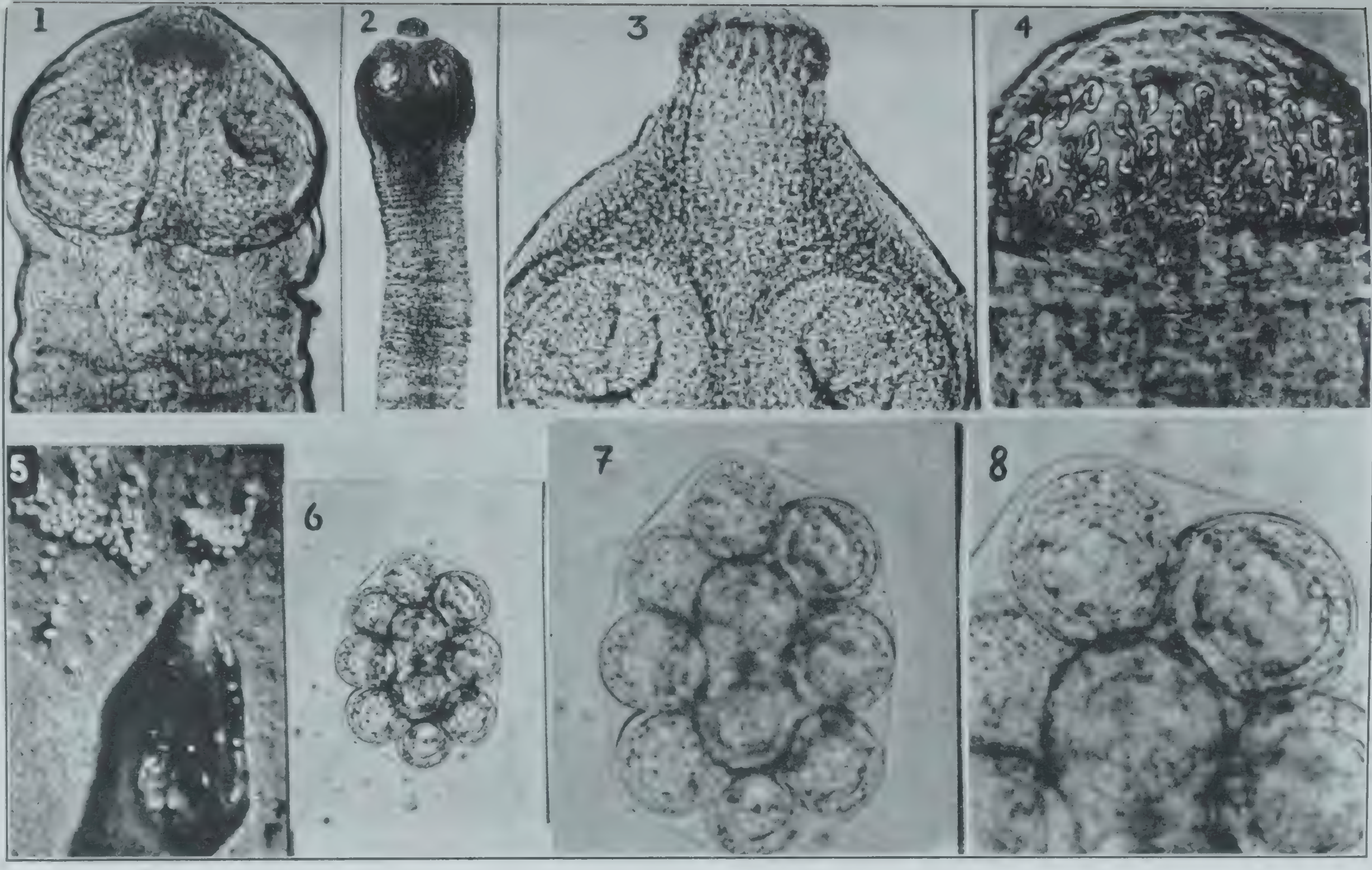


Fig. 312.—*Dipylidium caninum.* *1,* Scolex with invaginated rostellum and crown of hooklets. Note 2 of the suckers. *2,* Scolex with protruding rostellum and crowns of hooklets. Note neck and 2 suckers. *3,* Scolex with rostellum completely protruded and bearing 4 crowns of hooklets. Note 2 of the suckers. *4,* Protruded rostellum bearing 4 crowns of thornlike hooklets. The hooklets decrease in size gradually from the upper to the lower crown. *5,* Phenomenon of laying oviferous capsules by the gravid living segments, liberated from the strobila and passed in the feces (Kourí). Illuminated from above; gray background. The clusters of white discs toward the narrower pole of the gravid segment are oviferous capsules. *6, 7,* and *8,* Oviferous capsules with different magnifications. They contain a variable number of eggs with double thin wall, colorless, and refractive. The egg contains a hexacanth embryo or onchosphere. (Original photomicrographs of Kourí.)

canis and *Ctenocephalides canis),* and the human flea *(Pulex irritans).* They localize in t body cavities of these insects and develop into larvae *Cryptocystis trichodectis.* Joyeux h demonstrated that fleas become infested while in the larval state and that the cysticerco develops when the insect reaches the adult form. The definitive host (usually dogs and cat accidentally man) becomes infested by ingestion of parasitized fleas and lice.

DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis, as a rule, remains unsuspected until the gravid proglottid or fragments of the parasite are accidentally discovered in the feces. Sinc the eggs or oviferous capsules usually do not appear in the feces, microscopi examination of the feces is insufficient. The therapeutic test might be usefu in diagnosis. The gravid proglottids of *D. caninum,* like those of *T. saginata* are found singly outside the body; therefore, the discovery of these segment is sufficient evidence to establish the diagnosis.

Examination of the feces includes microscopic examination, direct and by concentration methods, and macroscopic examination, direct and by screening.

When the gravid proglottids are received in a dry state, they are contracted and of an amber color. They regain their original appearance if placed in water.

Another point of similarity between *T. saginata* and *D. caninum* is an observation made by Kourí of a "phenomenon of laying oviferous capsules" through one of the poles of the gravid proglottid of *D. caninum.* This phenomenon is similar to that described by Bacigalupo in the gravid segment of *T saginata.*

TREATMENT

The treatment is the same as for taeniasis, although at times the patients spontaneously expel the parasites.

PROPHYLAXIS

Handling of dogs which might be infested is to be avoided as much as possible. Fleas and lice from these animals contaminate food. Since dogs are domestic animals and it is almost impossible to separate them completely from man, one should try to rid them of this parasite. Parasitism in dogs is usually intense because these animals eat their fleas and lice. It is advisable to rid dogs of fleas and lice. Keep them from living on the ground in dark, wet places where optimal conditions are likely to exist for the development of these insects.

HUMAN INERMICAPSIFERIASIS

(Parasitism Produced by *Inermicapsifer Cubensis*)

HISTORY

The first case was reported in 1930, a second case in 1935, 2 in 1937, 11 in 1939, 17 more in 1940, making a total of 32 cases reported from 1930 to 1940. There has been a rapid increase in the number of cases reported each year. To date, more than 75 cases of human parasitism with this tapeworm have been reported in Cuba.

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

Inermicapsifer cubensis can probably be found throughout the 6 provinces of Cuba, although most of the cases come from the 4 western provinces. The greatest numbers have been reported in the province of Havana, followed, in order, by Las Villas, Matanzas, and Pinar del Río. Forty-five cases have been reported from the Province of Havana, where large foci are in Bejucal, Santiago de las Vegas, Rancho Boyeros. Cases have been reported in San Antonio de lo Baños, Güira de Melena, Quivicán, La Salud, La Vibora, City of Havana, and Reparto Miramar. Some cases were from Marianao, Bauta, and Guanabana.

Hernández and Entralgo, of Santa Clara, province of Las Villas, reported 4 cases in 1943, and Ramos of Caibarién reported 5. Kourí and Basnuevo also reported 1 case from Santa Isabel de las Lajas. Twelve cases have been reported from the province of Las Villas to date.

In the province of Matanzas, 1 case came from Agramonte, 3 from Cabezas, and 2 from the city of Matanzas. Fourteen cases have been reported to date.

In the province of Pinar del Río, 2 cases were from the city of Pinar del Río and 3 from Artemisa. One specimen was submitted to Kourí by I. Ortiz from Lara, Venezuela. Its existence is suspected in Puerto Rico.

CAUSATIVE AGENT

Inermicapsifer Cubensis (Kourí 1938) Kourí 1940

Synonyms.—*Raillietina cubensis* Kourí 1938; *Raillietina (R) kouridovali* Dollfus 1940; *Raillietina (R) loechesalavezi* Dollfus 1940.

This cestode measures 27 to 42 cm. and has 310 to 368 proglottids. The scolex, without rostellum or hooklets, is approximately 630 by 610 microns. The suckers are unarmed. They are about 185 microns in the longest diameter, and about 150 microns deep. The neck has been estimated to be 3 mm. long. Proglottids of the midportion of the strobila are broader than long, about 2.3 by 1.5 mm. The gravid proglottids, which are discharged in the feces, are 3 to 3.75 by 1 to 2 mm. The free living gravid proglottid has variable shapes, but when fixed in 10 per cent formalin, it tends to become round and is rather opaque. If allowed to die before fixation, it becomes elongated, flat, and transparent. The gravid proglottids contain 48 to 175 egg capsules, varying greatly in size and shape. Each contains 6 to 11 eggs, 55 by 49 microns. The shell has 3 layers; within the shell is a small hexacanth embryo, 22 by 19 microns, the hooklets of which are approximately 6 microns long. For further details, see Gradwohl and Kourí (1948).

Life Cycle.—Unknown.

Number and Life Span.—The patients usually harbor a single specimen. Two of Kourí's patients expelled 2 specimens each; when treated, another patient expelled 3. A patient of Nogueira expelled 4 specimens after administration of treatment. Seven specimens were harbored by a 2-year-old child (Kourí and Sotolongo).

The life span of the parasite in its human host does not seem to be very prolonged, usually several months. The parasite is not very resistant within human hosts, which usually are infants, rarely adults. Man is probably an accidental host; the parasite is easily expelled with the administration of castor oil or any other cathartic. However, one of Kourí's patients (according to the patient's mother) had expelled gravid proglottids continuously for 6 years.

SYMPTOMS

Age.—In most of the cases the ages of the patients ranged from 1 to 2 years (18 cases) although there are cases of children less than 1 year old, of

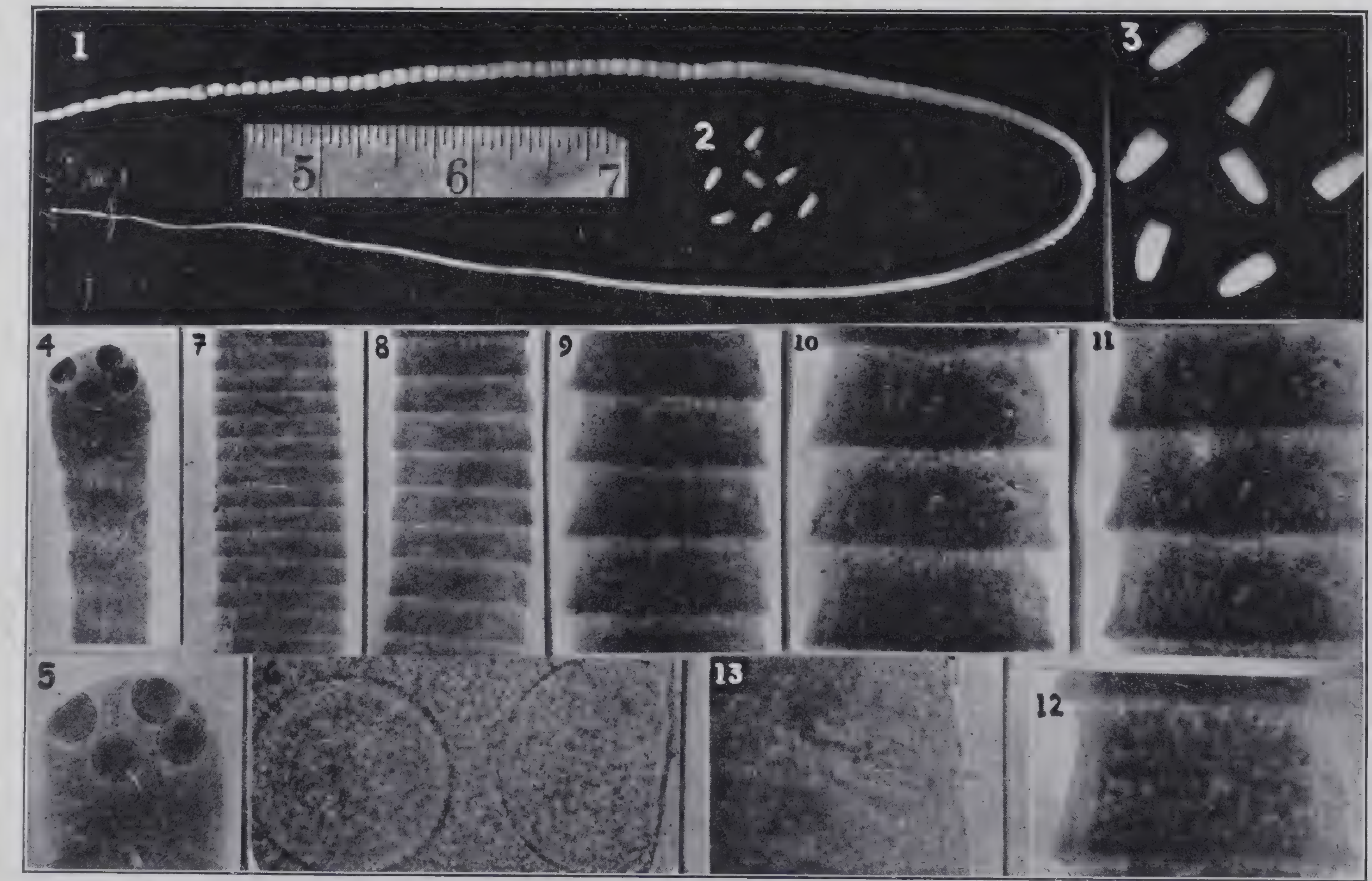


Fig. 313.—*Inermicapsifer cubensis* (Kourí, 1939). *1* to *3*, Photographs; dark background; illuminated from above; specimens fixed in 10 per cent formalin. *1*, Entire specimen expelled by a 9-year-old boy during treatment. Four-fifths natural size; scale in inches. Case treated by Kourí and Macho Doval. *2*, Mature proglottids, life size, freed from the strobila and expelled in the feces. *3*, Same proglottid magnified. *4* to *13*, Photomicrographs of various magnifications. Specimen fixed in 10 per cent formalin. Illuminated from below. *4* and *5*, Scolex and neck. Two pairs of suckers. *6*, Two of the suckers, magnified. Proglottids from different sections of the strobila. *13*, Unilateral genital pores in the

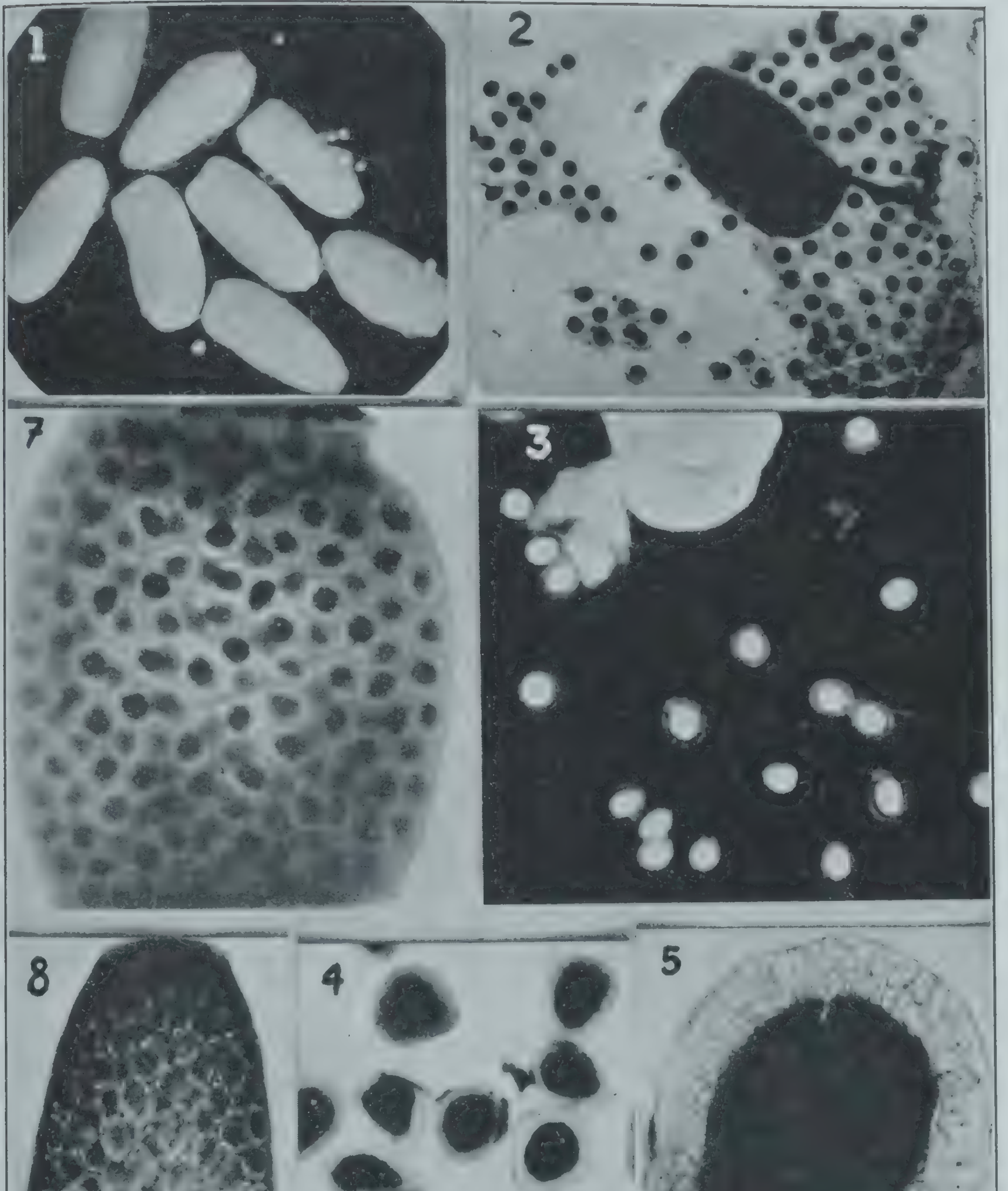


Fig. 314.—*Inermicapsifer cubensis* (Kourí, 1939). *1*, Eight mature proglottids. Low magnification; specimen fixed in 10 per cent formalin; dark background; illuminated from above. *2*, Pressure on the cover glass caused one of the proglottids to burst, permitting escape of 150 capsules. Cover glass preparation, specimen in 10 per cent formalin. Illuminated from below. Ruptured proglottid. *3*, Oviferous capsules and ruptured proglottid. Dark background, illuminated from above. Capsules appear as white discs with a light halo. The mature proglottid is actually a sac of oviferous capsules. *4*, Oviferous capsules faceted from pressure against each other. Illuminated from below. The dark central and the clear, transparent peripheral zones are clearly visible. *5*, Magnified oviferous capsule. *6*, Each oviferous capsule contains 3 to 6 eggs, small and spherical, with a thin single covering, each containing a small excentric embryo with very narrow hooklets, very difficult to see. The eggs cannot be seen if the capsules are exposed to light. They are in intimate union with the parenchyma. *7*, Proglottid from center of the strobila. *8*, Mature segment. Oviferous capsules may be seen if the segment is exposed to light. (Original photomicrographs of Kourí.)

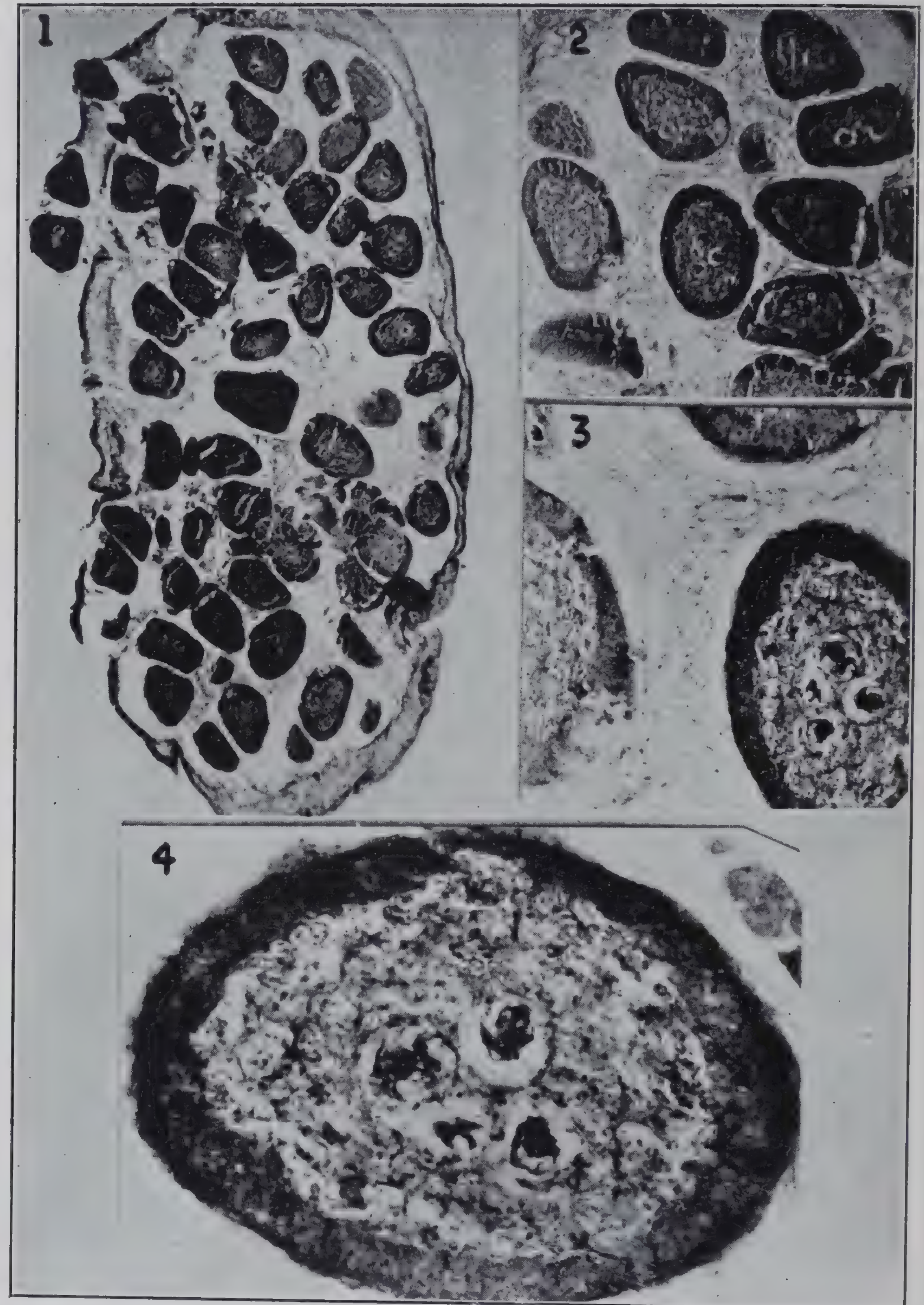


Fig. 315.—*Inermicapsifer cubensis* (Kourí, 1939). Photomicrographs, various magnifications, of microscopic sections of mature segments stained with hematoxylin and eosin. *1*, Section of a mature proglottid. Note wall and oviferous capsules (×38). *2*, Oviferous capsules (×80). *3*, Oviferous capsules (×160). *4*, One of the above capsules under higher magnification (×320). The lighter central portion shows 4 eggs closely connected with the parenchyma (continuous) and surrounded by a deeply stained peripheral ring. Other capsules show 6 eggs. The histology of the capsule explains the difficulty of extracting the eggs from the oviferous capsules. (Originals.)

older children, and even of adults, although these cases are less frequent. Fifty-seven patients were children below the age of 13 years, 3 were older patients, 1 was 16 years old, 1 was 18, and 1 was 35 years of age. Nine patients were 3 to 4 years old, 11 were 2 to 3 years, 7 were 4 to 5 years old. The youngest was 5 months old.

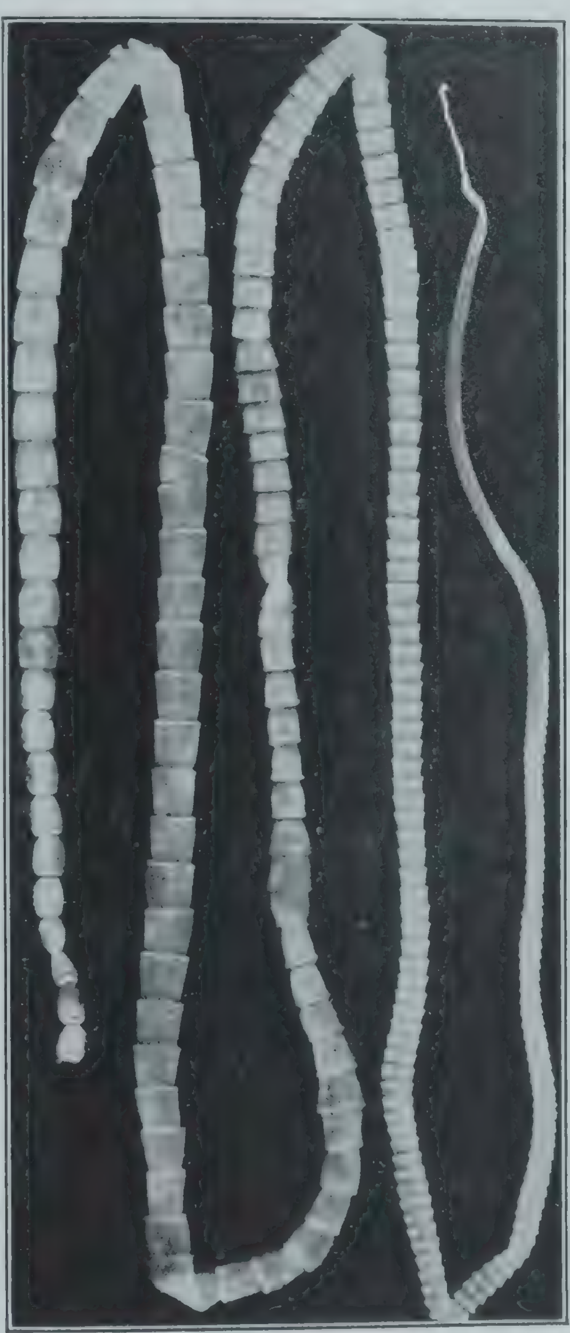


Fig. 316.—*Inermicapsifer cubensis* (Kourí, 1939). One of 3 complete specimens expelled after treatment. It is 42 cm. long and has 368 proglottids, beginning the count 4.52 mm. from the scolex. (Original photograph of Kourí and Basnuevo in Lecciones de Parasitología y Medicina Tropical; courtesy of Editorial Proflaxis S. A., Havana.)

Sex.—Of 62 cases reported, 33, or 53.5 per cent, were male.

Race.—In all 57 cases where a record of the race was made, patients belonged to the white race with the exception of 2 Negro patients.

The parasite may give rise to mild symptoms in some patients; in others the symptomatology has not been ascertained.

DIAGNOSIS

Usually infestation is discovered by the presence of small whitish objects resembling rice grains in the feces. These are often noted by the parents. Frequently expulsion of fragments of strobila in the feces, either spontaneously or after the administration of cathartics, makes the diagnosis possible. Microscopic examination of the feces is negative, but by macroscopic examination one may recover the gravid proglottids, which rise to the surface of the fecal matter several minutes after it has been passed. The best procedure for identification of these gravid proglottids and differentiation of them from starch fragments and rice grains is to compress them between a slide and cover slip. If they are actually gravid proglottids of the parasite, they will burst and liberate a great number of characteristic oviferous capsules. Dilution and screening of the feces, using 3 screens of decreasing mesh, should be performed when searching for this parasite.

The gravid proglottids, when alive, slowly change shape due to the slow creeping movements. If they are fixed in 10 per cent formalin while still alive, they assume a spherical shape and become whiter and more opaque. If they die spontaneously, they are in muscular relaxation and are then elongated and flattened and more transparent (Kourí).

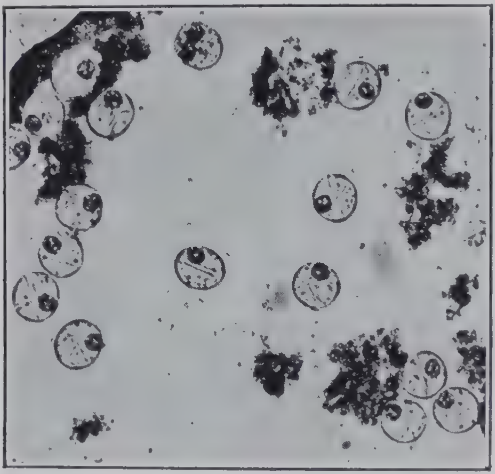


Fig. 317.—*Inermicapsifer cubensis* (Kourí, 1939). Eggs obtained by crushing egg capsules between slide and cover slip. Medium magnification. (Original photomicrograph of Kourí and Basnuevo in Lecciones de Parasitología y Medicina Tropical; courtesy of Editorial Profilaxis S. A., Havana.)

TREATMENT

The parasite is expelled with relative ease. Castor oil, or any oil cathartic, frequently administered to children by their mothers, results in the expulsion in some cases of fragments of strobila and even of the entire parasite.

Spontaneous expulsion of the entire parasite, with scolex and numerous proglottids, occasionally takes place. Recently a patient to whom we had administered 3 treatments with negative results, and who constantly passed proglottids during the intervals between treatments, spontaneously expelled an entire parasite and a great number of proglottids while taking *Bacillus acidophilus* as milk treatment for fever and digestive disorders.

Kourí et al. use and recommend a mixture of an ether extract of male fern (Aspidium) and carbon tetrachloride in an oil suspension (Tenicida "Kuba"). The dosage is 4 c.c. per year of age, in 1 complete single dose. Two to 4 hours later a saline cathartic should be administered.

For adults we use a dose of 60 c.c.

One patient who was given Necato "Kuba" expelled 2 complete parasites.

PROPYHYLAXIS

Although the biology of this parasite is unknown, we should take the same general precautions as with other intestinal helminthiases. The manner in which man becomes infested with the parasite has not as yet been determined. We are not concerned with which is the definitive, habitual, or normal host, or with whether the parasite has a direct or indirect cycle; that is, if it does or does not need an intermediate host during its life cycle.

HUMAN RAILLIETINOSIS

(Parasitism Produced by Species of Raillietina)

Raillietina (R.) Quitensis (Léon 1938) Joyeux and Baer 1940

The characteristics as described by Luis A. León are as follows: This cestode is 10 to 12 meters long and 3 mm. wide at the caudal end. This estimate is considered somewhat exaggerated (Joyeux and Baer) in view of the fact that several worms expelled at the same time might have been considered as a single individual. The scolex is 1 by 0.5 mm. The rostellum is retractile and has 2 crowns of concentric hammer-shaped hooklets. The suckers are ovoid and are about 0.5 mm. long. They are armed with a row of permanent hooklets. Each specimen consists of more than 5,000 segments. The anterior segments are wider than long, the center segments square, and the gravid segments at the caudal end rectangular. In the free state these proglottids are ovoid and resemble grains of rice. Each terminal proglottid contains 200 to 250 oviferous capsules, which are polygonal, 200 microns in diameter. The onchospheres are ovoid and are provided with long hooklets. Each segment has unilateral genital pores. For further details see Gradwohl and Kourí (1948).

The uterus quickly breaks up into parenchymatous egg capsules which completely fill the gravid proglottids and extend beyond the excretory vessels in a lateral field. From 130 to 300 egg capsules may be counted in each gravid proglottid. They are pressed so tightly against one another that they finally assume a polyhedral shape; their diameter varies from 180 to 200 microns; each capsule has 8 to 10 eggs. The embryo measures 23 microns in diameter.

Joyeux and Baer claim that *R. (R.) quitensis* León, 1938, as well as all the new species described by Dollfus, should be considered synonymous with *R. (R.) demerariensis* (Daniels, 1895). The American species should thus be named:

Raillietina (R.) Demerariensis (Daniels, 1895)

Synonyms.—*R. quitensis* León, 1938; *R. (R.) luisaleoni* Dollfus, 1939; *R. (R.) equatoriensis* Dollfus, 1939; *R. (R.) brumpti* Dollfus, 1939; *R. (R.) leoni* Dollfus, 1939.

The life span is estimated at more than 12 and 15 years, respectively, in 2 cases reported by León., These estimates were based on the length of time the patients had been expelling proglottids in their feces.

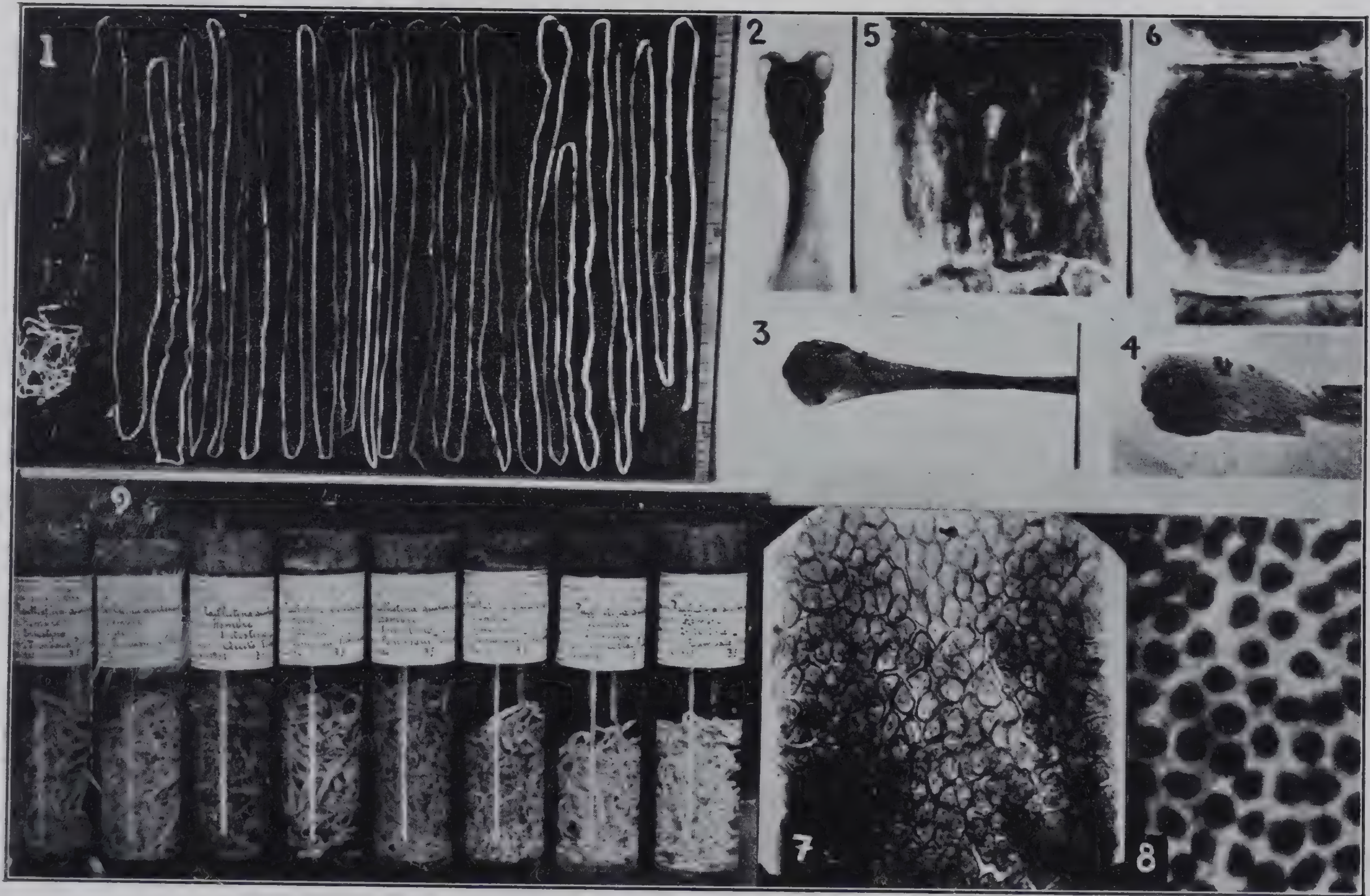


Fig. 318.—*Raillietina quitensis* (L. A. León, 1938). *1*, The parasite. *2*, *3*, and *4*, Scolices of the Ecuadorian species. *5* and *6*, Proglottids from the anterior portion of the strobila. *7*, Proglottid from the center portion of the strobila. *8*, Proglottid from the caudal end. *9*, Eight specimens. (Originals of León.)

HOSTS AND GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

In 9 of 16 cases of infestation reported by León, 5 patients were women, 3 were children, and 1 was a man. Later León described 2 more cases.

The intermediate host and the biology of this species are not known. León believes that the intermediate host is to be found among the following: *Pediculus capitis, P. vestimenti, Pulex irritans,* and some small mollusks, Bulimus, commonly called ''churros,'' which constitute the favorite meal of the country people of the mountainous region of the province of Pichincha; and in Coleoptera *Leucopilaca albescens* and *Heterogomphus boucieri,* commonly called ''catchos'' in Eucador. The above cases were observed in that region.

Raillietina (R.) Madagascariensis (Davaine 1869) Joyeux and Baer 1929

Synonyms.—*Taenia madagascariensis* Davaine 1869; *Davainea madagascariensis* (Davaine 1869) Blanchard 1891.

This parasite was discovered by Grenet in children of the Comoro Islands. Several more cases were reported later in Asia, Australia, and the East Indies.

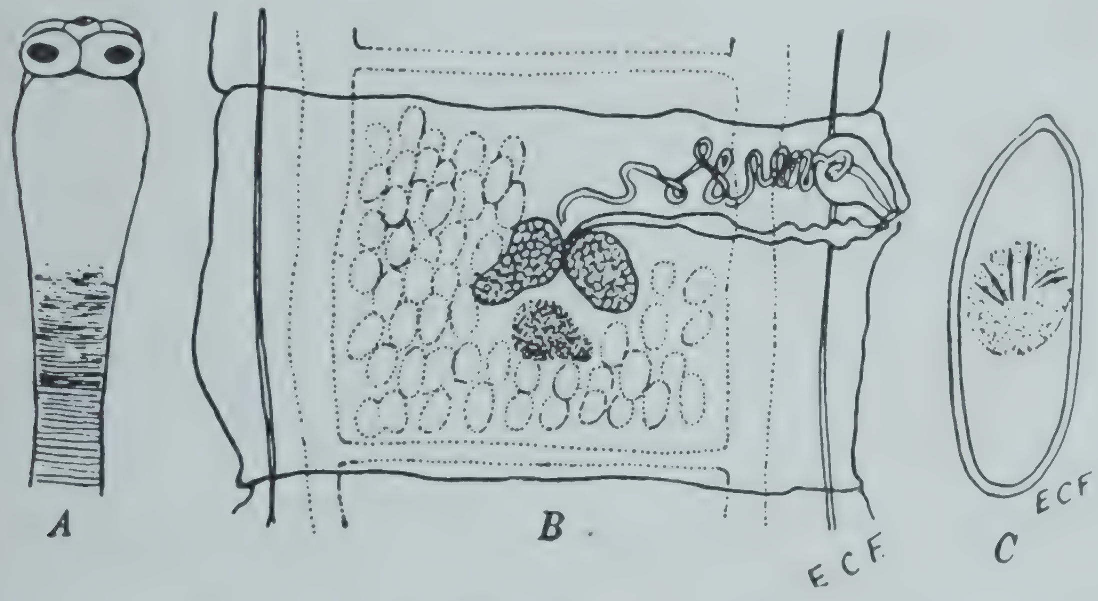


Fig. 319.—*Raillietina (R.) madagascariensis. A,* Scolex (after Blanchard in Brumpt). *B,* Mature proglottid (×40); *C,* mature egg (×600) (adapted from Garrison by Faust in Lecciones de Parasitología y Medicina Tropical by Kourí and Basnuevo; courtesy of Editorial Profilaxis S. A., Havana).

The adult parasite is 24 to 39 cm. by 1.4 mm. The scolex has 4 deep, proximal suckers, with very little space for the rostellum, which is located among them, and which is pillow-shaped. The rostellum is provided with 90 to 110 hooklets, in 2 rows. Although the scolex is well marked off from the body, there is no visible neck; the nonsegmented anterior portion is slightly wider than the scolex.

The adult parasite has 500 to 700 proglottids. The sexually immature proglottids are narrow; the mature proglottids are 1½ times wider than long. The gravid proglottids are twice as long as wide.

The *eggs* are fusiform or elliptical, about 57 by 21 microns. The embryo or onchosphere is 8 to 15 microns in diameter and is provided with 3 pairs of lancet-shaped hooklets.

The **life cycle** of this parasite is unknown, but it is believed that cockroaches of the genus Periplaneta serve as intermediate hosts.

Epidemiology, pathogenesis, and symptomatology of this parasitosis have not as yet been studied.

Diagnosis is made by obtaining the gravid proglottids of the parasite o by microscopic observation of the typical eggs.

Ether extract of male fern has been used with good results in thi parasitism.

Proper **prophylactic methods** against this parasite have not as yet bee studied.

Raillietina (R.) Celebensis (Janicki 1902) Joyeux and Baer 1929

Synonyms.—*Davainea formosana* Akashi 1916; *Raillietina formosana* (Akashi 1916) Joyeux and Baer 1929.

Only 2 human cases of parasitism by this cestode have been described, one in Japan, the other in Formosa. Rats serve as a reservoir for the parasite. This species is differentiated from *R. madagascariensis* in that it is larger, has more than 700 proglottids, the suckers lack hooklets, it has more oviferous capsules in each segment, and there are more eggs per oviferous capsule. The *eggs* are larger than those of *R. madagascariensis,* measuring 99 by 46 microns, while the hexacanth embryo is 12 to 14 microns in diameter. The life cycle is unknown. The epidemiology and symptomatology have not been studied as yet.

Raillietina Asiatica (von Linstow 1901) Stiles and Hassall 1926

Synonyms.—*Taenia asiatica* von Linstow 1901; *Davainea asiatica* (von Linstow 1901) Braun 1903.

This species was described from a study of a single specimen containing 750 proglottids but no scolex. It was expelled by a patient in Persia. The creation of a new species on the basis of only one incomplete specimen leaves much to be desired.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY, DIAGNOSIS, AND TREATMENT

All species of Raillietinas found in human cases may be divided into 3 groups:

1. African species, found in Madagascar and neighboring islands.
2. Asiatic species, found in the Far East and the Netherlands and East Indies.
3. American species, found in the Guianas and Ecuador.

Joyeux and Baer claim that these 3 groups may be reduced to 2 distinct groups, differentiated as follows:

1. African and Asiatic, which would correspond to the species *Raillietina (R.) madagascariensis.*
2. American, corresponding to *R. (R.) demerariensis.*

Symptomatology.—According to León, the most marked symptoms are abdominal pain, nausea, intermittent diarrhea, dizziness, and mental sluggishness. There may be circulatory and nervous disturbances, anemia, and eosinophilia.

Diagnosis.—Accurate diagnosis is easily made because the patients expel gravid proglottids in the feces.

Treatment.—León has obtained good results with ethereal extract of *D. filix-mas* along with calomel.

Prophylaxis follows general measures.

DIPHYLLOBOTHRIASIS (FISH TAPEWORM INFECTION)

(Parasitism Produced by the Adult Form of *Diphyllobothrium Latum;* Fish or Broad Tapeworm Infection)

Synonyms.—Bothriocephaliasis, dibothriocephalus anemia, fish tapeworm infection, broad tapeworm infection.

HISTORY

The Bothriocephalus was individualized as a distinct species by Plater de Basel (Switzerland) in 1602. Bonnet correctly described the scolex in 1777, differentiating it from *T. solium.*

It was observed in North America by Weinland in 1858 and by Leidy in 1879 in infected patients who had emigrated from Europe. The first cases of American origin were reported by Ward in 1906, Nickerson 1906-1911, and Warthin in 1911, although several cases of doubtful origin had been found before this, in 1895, in the states of the Great Lakes region.

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

Since the intermediate hosts are dispersed throughout the world, it is not strange that this parasite is also more generally encountered than formerly thought, although in fewer numbers in countries where fish is not eaten raw or partially cooked.

This cestode is found in regions near the Great Lakes, where the intermediate hosts are abundant, and where fish constitutes a major portion of the diet of the population. It has been introduced into several foci in the lake regions of Minnesota, southern Michigan, and Manitoba and Nippigon Lake, Ontario, Canada. No autochthonous human case of *Diphyllobothrium latum* infestation has been reported in Cuba, although 2 cases have been reported. One species found frequently in cats in rural districts, another species in dogs, are still to be classified.

On 2 different occasions, fragments of Diphyllobothrium expelled by children were sent to Kourí; they were similar to those harbored by cats in Cuba.

In Germany it has been seen in East Prussia; it is also seen on the coast of Denmark, and in Finland, 30 per cent of the population in coastal regions are infected, with 30 to 76 per cent infection in Karelia. One hundred per cent of pikes and 51 to 82 per cent of perches in that country are infected (Petruschensky and Tarassow, 1932). In Russia proper, Diphyllobothrium is frequent along the shores of the Baltic Sea, in Leningrad, and in Moscow. In Archangel, 74 per cent of the Russians and 95 per cent of the Samoyeds are infected. In Sweden the parasite is found in the northern region of Argernian and Lapland. In Holland it is less frequent. In Italy it is found near Lakes Verese, de Monate, Ternate, and others; in Switzerland, in Lake Geneva and Lake Neuchatel, where 95 per cent of the burbots and 58 per cent of the perch, as well as the pike, are infected. It is frequent in Romania where caviar from pike eggs is eaten raw in large quantities. The parasite is rare in Belgium, France, England, and Spain. In Asia, *D. latum* is found in Russian Turkestan, in Palestine, and in Japan. In Africa, the parasite is found in the lake N'gani, in Ouganda, and in the Belgian Congo. It has also been reported in Madagascar.

CAUSATIVE AGENT

Diphyllobothrium Latum (Linnaeus 1758) Lühe 1910

Synonyms.—*Taenia lata* Linnaeus 1758; *T. vulgaris* Linnaeus 1758; *T. membranacea* Pallas 1781; *T. tenella* Pallas 1781; *T. dentata* Batsch 1786; *T. grisea* Pallas 1796; *Bothriocephalus balticus* Küchenmeister 1855; *B. cristatus* Davaine 1874; *B. latissimus* Bugnon 1886; *Dibothriocephalus latus* Lühe 1899; *Bothriocephalus taenioides* León 1916; *Dibothriocephalus minor* Cholodkowsky 1916.

D. latum is usually 2 to 10 meters long, although it may be as long as 15 or 20 meters. This species is very much smaller, only 1 meter or less, in the intestines of dogs and cats which, with man and other mammals, constitute the habitual or normal definitive hosts. The sc is narrow, elongated, and flat, spatulate, or almond-shaped. It is 2 to 5 mm. long and ha ventral and 1 dorsal long groove-shaped sucker or bothrium. The proglottids, small at first, crease progressively in size. They are usually much wider than long. The segments from middle of the strobila to the caudal end are gravid. In the central part of each segme there is a dark lobulated mass which represents the uterus filled with eggs. The last ⅘ the stroblia is formed by mature and gravid proglottids. The genital pore is located in t center on the ventral surface. Beneath the genital pore there is a ''laying orifice,'' ''tocostome,'' or uterine pore.

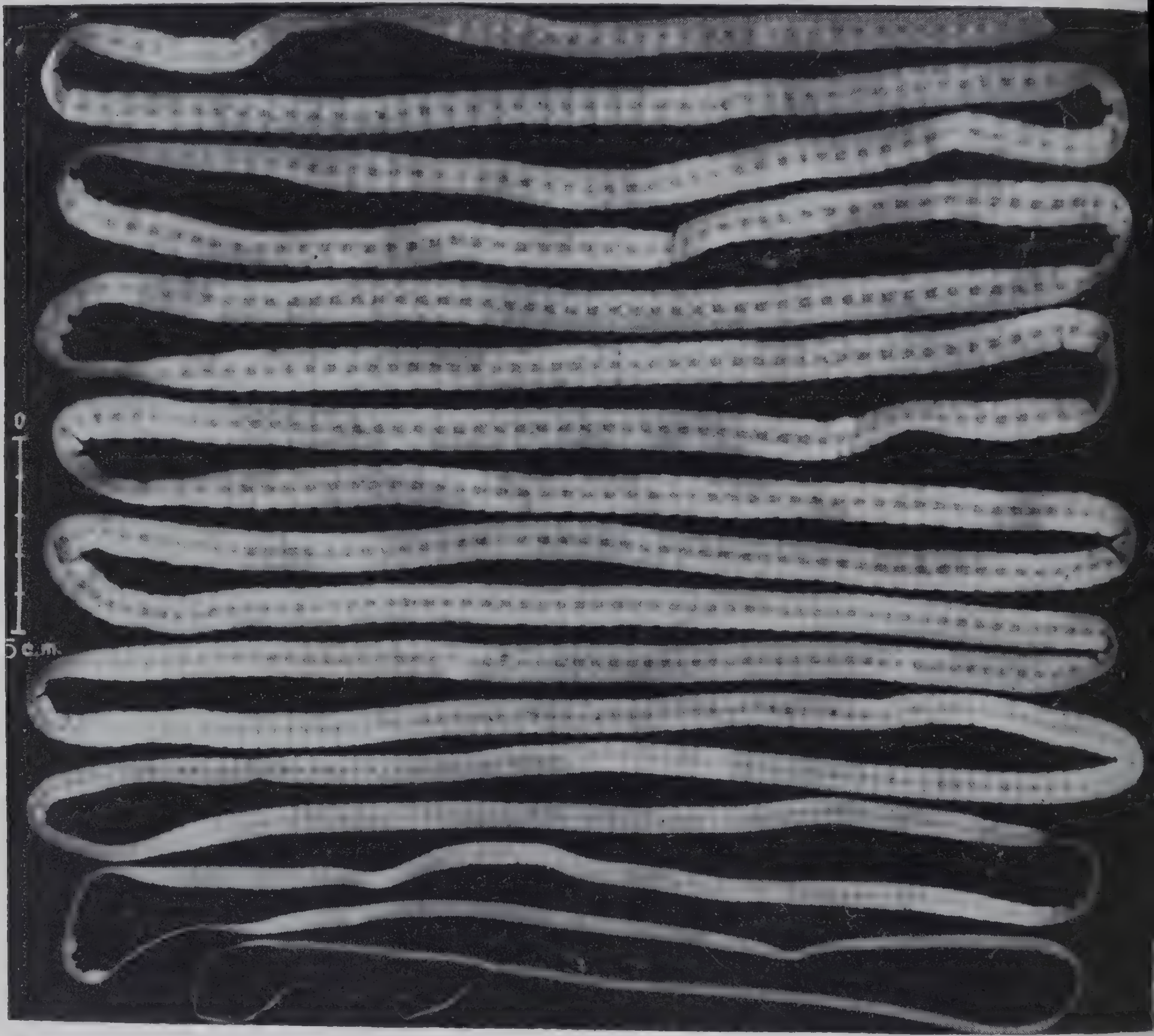


Fig. 320.—*Diphyllobothrium latum.* Complete adult specimen expelled during treatment. (Second case of Kourí, 1943, in Lecciones de Parasitología y Medicina Tropical by Kourí and Basnuevo; courtesy of Editorial Profilaxis S. A., Havana.)

The gravid proglottids of *D. latum,* by contrast with those of *T. saginata,* lay eggs until the uterus is empty. Then they contract and disintegrate, and the remnants are eliminated in the feces.

Eggs, 70 by 45 microns, may be found in great numbers in the feces. They are ellipsoid, have a brown-yellowish color, and are provided with operculated coverings. The operculum is relatively large and is found at the thicker pole of the egg.

Life Cycle

Diphyllobothrium inhabits the small intestine of man, dogs, cats, and other mammals. The eggs are passed in the feces and eventually enter water. Eleven to 15 days after reach-

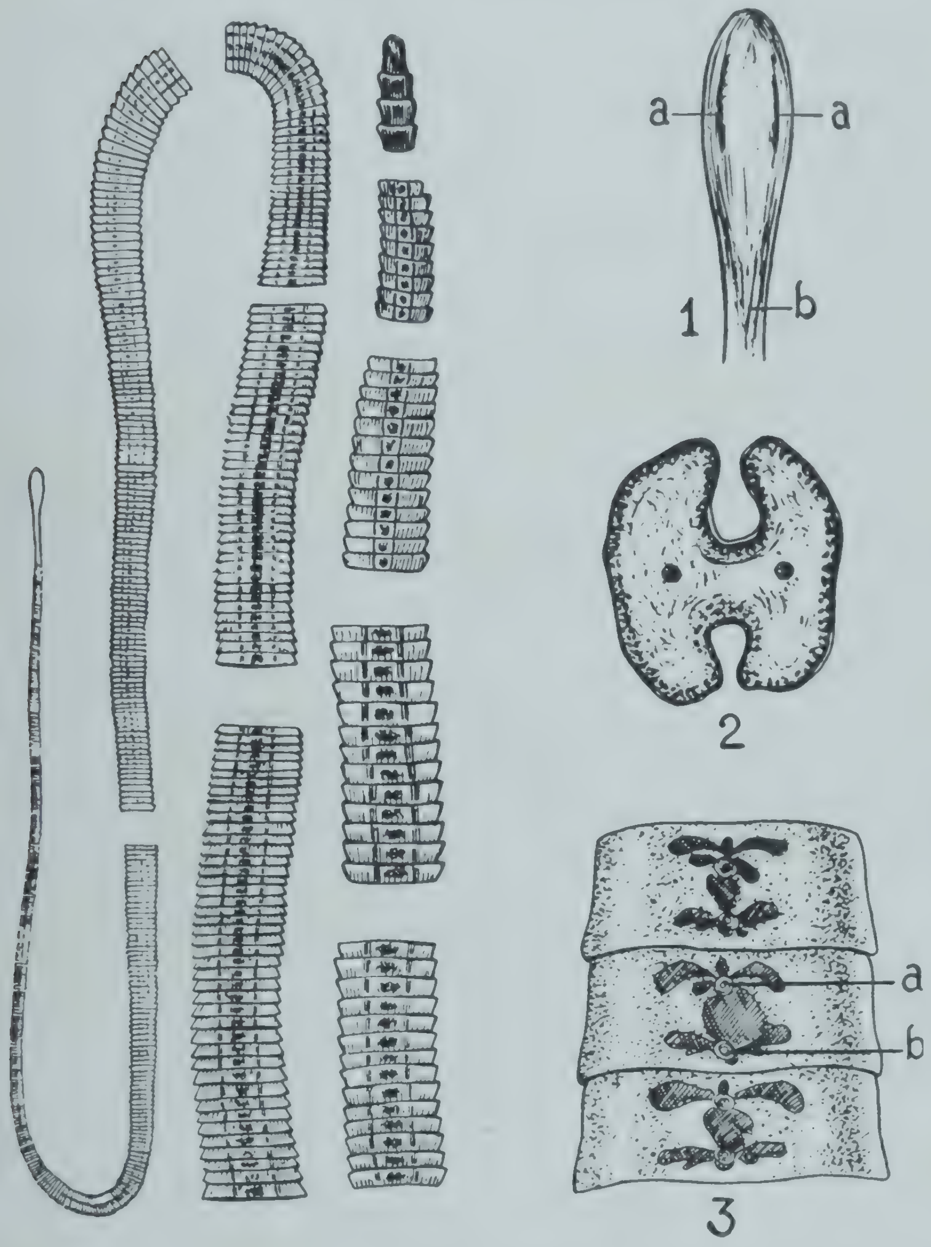


Fig. 321.—*Diphyllobothrium latum. Left,* drawing of the adult parasite (after Leuckart in Brumpt). *Right,* Drawing of *1,* scolex, with *a,a,* bothria; *b,* neck; *2* cross section of the scolex; *3,* ventral surface of proglottids or segments showing the uterine rosettes with *a,* genital pore and, *b,* laying orifice (after Guiart).

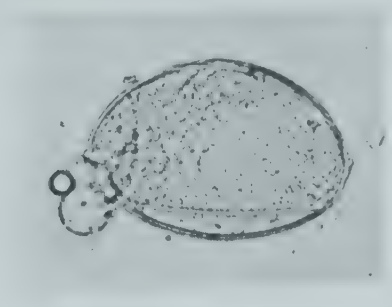


Fig. 322.—Egg of *Diphyllobothrium latum* (×400). (From the collection of R. B. H. Gradwohl.)

ing the water of proper temperature (15° to 25° C.), ciliated hexacanth embryos, or coracidia develop. These force their way through the opercula and swim around in the water for 1 hours, then are ingested by certain small crustaceans called Cyclops. In the Cyclops, the embryos develop into primary larvae in 2 to 3 weeks and are known as procercoid larvae which have a caudal sphere with 6 embryonal hooklets called cercomer. When these larvae are ingested by the secondary intermediate hosts, fish, they bore through the intestinal wall and become encysted in different organs. Here they develop into the secondary or pleocercoid larvae, or sparganum. Large fish are usually infected by eating small fish infected with these larvae. The secondary larvae pass into the intestines of the definitive host, man, dog, or cat, when the fish containing the parasites is eaten raw or poorly cooked. The scolex becomes attached to the wall of the intestine. Through proliferation of the scolex, the proglottids are formed, and finally the complete adult parasite, in 5 to 6 weeks, although after the second week eggs can already be found in the feces. The gravid proglottids deposit eggs which are eliminated in the feces to start a new cycle.

The *adult parasites* live in the small intestine of man, dogs, cats, seals, pigs, foxes, bears, and numerous carnivora, as well as in Pinnipedea and Cetaceae. According to Le Bas, 40 to 95 per cent of certain fishes in Switzerland harbor the plerocercoid larvae in regions where the parasite is rare in man, which seems to indicate that in such regions man is not the principal definitive host of *D. latum.*

Number.—Usually the human host harbors only 1 or 2 specimens of the parasite, but 1 human case has been described in which 90 specimens were found, and 1 monkey was known to harbor 100 specimens of the parasite. According to Le Bas, 2 to 4 million eggs per gram of feces corresponds to one adult worm harbored in the intestines. Association of this parasite with *T. saginata, T. solium,* and *Diplogonoporus brauni* has been reported.

Life Span.—Riley described a case which harbored the parasite for at least 13 years.

PATHOGENICITY

The parasite is often well tolerated and causes only slight or no symptoms. Infestation with *D. latum* may produce the same disturbances as seen in taeniasis. In certain regions, especially along the coast of the Baltic Sea, this parasite frequently causes an acute anemia which resembles pernicious anemia.

Bothriocephalic Anemia

Patients show pallor and weakness; cardiovascular disturbances, such as edema, ocular hemorrhage, with marked pallor of the eyeground and of the optic nerve, are also present.

There may be gastrointestinal disorders such as vomiting and diarrhea. The anemia is severe. See Chapter 68, Diphyllobothrium Anemia.

DIAGNOSIS

Diagnosis is established by direct microscopic examination of the feces, where the eggs are found in great numbers. At times the patient expels long strobila.

PROGNOSIS

Diphyllobothriasis is usually benign and generally well tolerated. A small percentage of those who harbor the parasite develop an anemia similar to pernicious anemia, which usually disappears after expulsion of the parasite.

TREATMENT

Same as for taeniasis.

PROPHYLAXIS

General Prophylaxis.—Dissemination of the eggs of the parasite, which are expelled by the millions with fecal material, should be avoided. Parasitized individuals should be found and cured, as well as animals which harbor the parasite. This is quite difficult to carry out because of the great numbers of animals which serve as definitive hosts.

Drains and sewers should not open directly into rivers or lakes. The waters from these sewers should be decanted and deposited in special depositories, or filtered or disinfected with formalin or chlorine before the water reaches the rivers or lakes; otherwise the first intermediate host (copepods) and the second intermediate hosts (fish) will be infested.

The stools of parasitized individuals should be treated with sulfuric acid.

Education of the public should be carried out.

Individual Prophylaxis.—Individual prophylaxis consists in avoiding eating fish which are poorly cooked. It must be remembered that the larvae do not die unless they are boiled for 10 minutes. They succumb in 48 hours if the viscera are placed in olive oil and lemon juice, vinegar, or covered with a saturated solution of salt.

SPARGANIASIS

(Diseases Caused by Spargana or Larval Forms of Diphyllobothrium)

HISTORY

In 1882 Manson discovered the sparganum in the tissues of a patient autopsied in China. Other similar larvae had been seen, on numerous occasions, in patients from China, Japan, Formosa, French Indo-China, and less frequently in Africa *(S. baxteri)*, Java, and Sumatra, Holland, British Guinea, and Texas. Larvae are morphologically not differentiable and are commonly found in the subcutaneous tissue between the muscles of frogs, snakes, birds, and some mammals, in foci of infection. These spargana, when extracted from the host and inoculated orally into dogs and cats, developed different species, but they were closely related to the Diphyllobothrium, members of the subgenous Spirometra. It is impossible to ascribe a name to species of Sparganum without experimental proof of its life cycle in a dog or cat, and a study of the strobila of the adult which matures in the small intestines of these experimental hosts. However, *Sparganum mansoni* is usually the name which is given to the larval stage.

In 1937, 1938, Mueller showed that *D. mansonoides,* which has its procercoid stage in *Cyclops leuckarti, C. viridis, C. bicuspidatus*, and others, a sparganum stage in the rat and in the Rhesus monkey, and definitive stage in cats and dogs, is the common species of the subgenus Spirometra in the United States.

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

This cestode was first discovered in its larval form by Manson in 1882, at autopsy. It is commonly known as Manson's cestode. It is found quite frequently in China and Japan, and has also been reported in Puerto Rico by Cram in 1926 and in New Orleans, La., by

Faust. The adult parasite does not infect man (Faust, Campbell, and Kellog, 1929); b the larval forms, sparganum, of this and other similar species have been found in huma parasitism in the Far East, most commonly in subcutaneous and ocular sparganiasis. Sever hundreds of human cases have been diagnosed to date in that region.

CAUSATIVE AGENT

Diphyllobothrium (S.) Mansoni (Cobbold 1882) Joyeux 1928

Synonyms.—*Ligula mansoni* Cobbold 1882; *Bothriocephalus liguloides* Leuckart 1886 *Bothriocephalus mansoni* (Cobbold 1882) Blanchard 1888; *Dibothrium mansoni* (Cobbol 1882) Ariola 1900; *Sparganum mansoni* (Cobbold 1882) Guiart 1910; *Sparganum railliet* von Ratz 1912; *Dibothriocephalus mansoni* (Cobbold 1882) Manson-Bahr 1925; *Diphyllobothrium eranacei* (Rudolphi 1819) of Iwata 1933, *pro parte.*

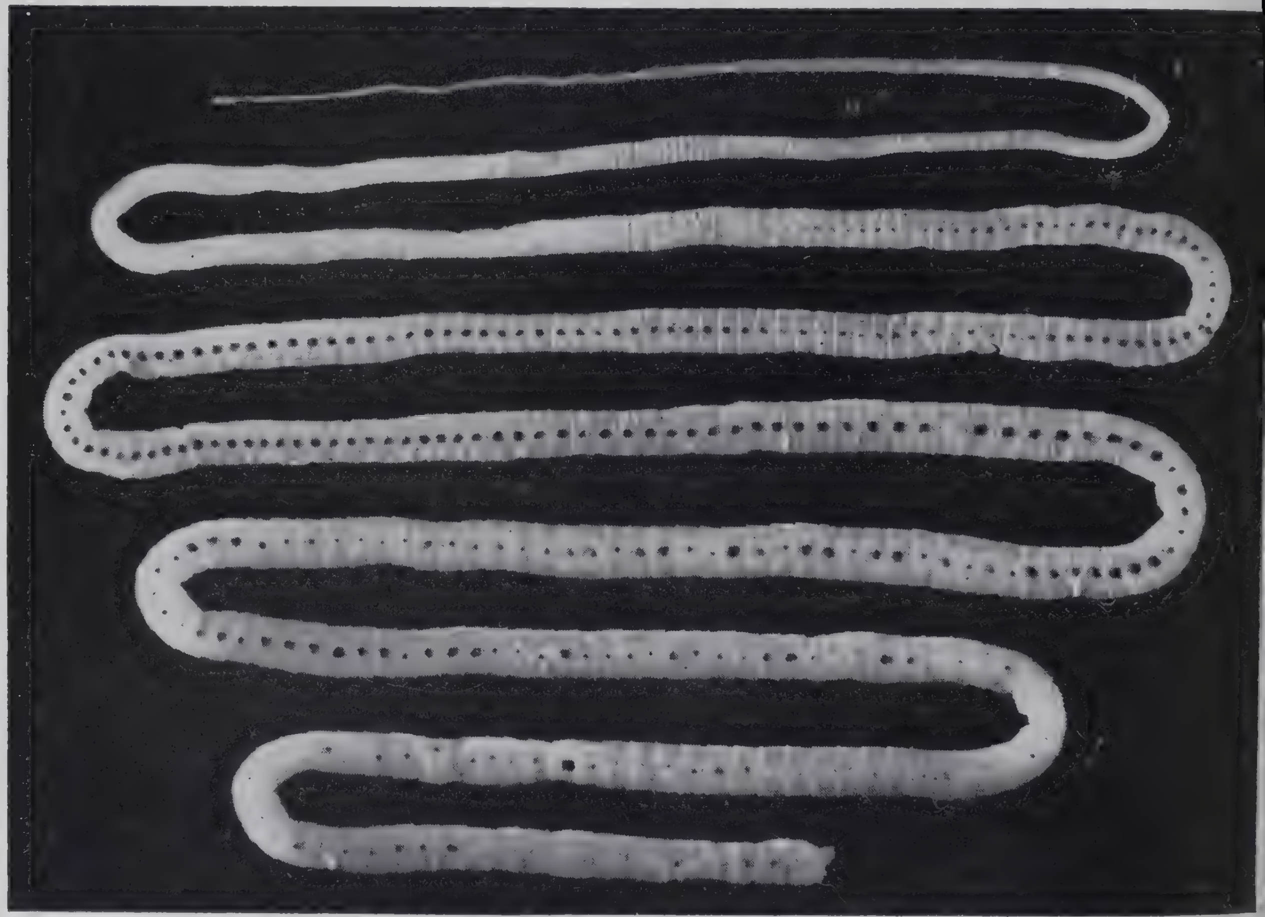


Fig. 323.—*Diphyllobothrium (S.) mansoni,* adult, from cat experimentally infested with plerocercoid larvae from the *Hyla septentrionalis* (tree toad). Note the central uterine rosette, characteristic of the mature and gravid proglottids, and the almond-shaped scolex. (After Kourí, 1947. in Lecciones de Parasitología y Medicina Tropical by Kourí and Basnuevo; courtesy of Editorial Profilaxis S. A., Havana.)

The *adult parasite* lives in the small intestines of dogs, woves, foxes, cats, wild cats, leopards, and tigers. When first seen, it resembles *D. latum.* It can be differentiated fro the latter by its delicate structure, and lesser length, being only 60 cm. to 1 meter long. The scolex is 1 to 1.5 mm. by 0.4 to 0.8 mm. The free borders of the bothria are well developed. The proglottids are wider than long, except for the gravid proglottids which are almost square. The eggs vary in size, 52 to 68.5 by 32 to 43.5 microns.

The sparganum of *D. mansoni* is much larger than that of *D. latum.* A great number of animals serve as secondary intermediate hosts for the parasite: frogs, snakes, birds, an mammals, including man.

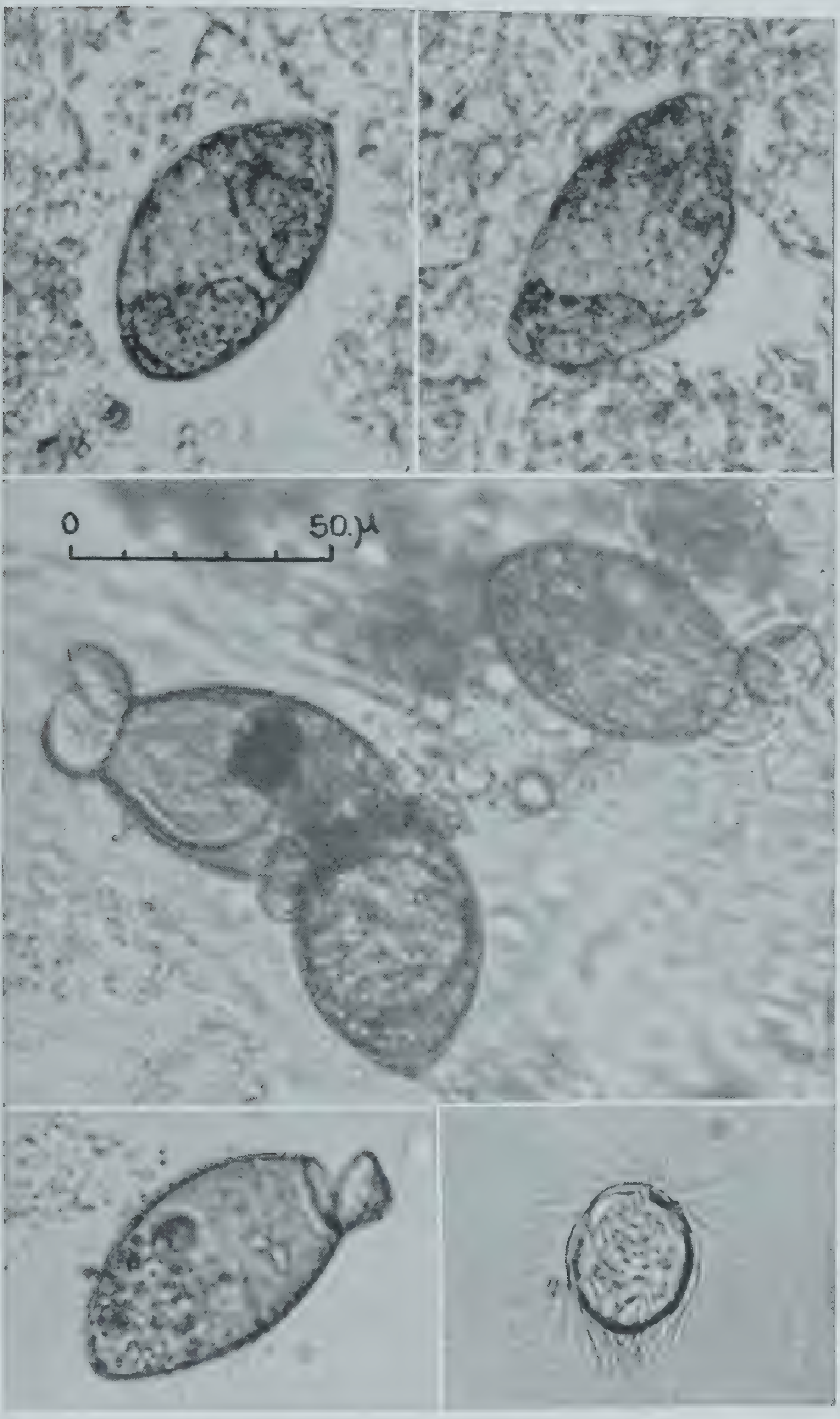


Fig. 324.—*Diphyllobothrium* (*S.*) *mansoni* eggs in various stages of development. *Above*, 2 eggs from the feces of a cat, immediately after passage. *Center*, 3 eggs containing a ciliated hexacanth embryo, which developed in 12 to 51 days in water at the summer temperature of Cuba. The coracidium has forced open the operculum and is emerging from the egg. *Below*, to the *left*, empty egg with operculum lifted; *right*, the coracidium which has left the egg. (After Kourí, 1947, in Lecciones de Parasitología y Medicina Tropical by Kourí and Basnuevo; Courtesy of Editorial Profilaxis S. A., Havana.)

Life Cycle

The life cycle is quite similar to that of *D. latum.* The first intermediate host is eucopepodan-crustacean, the second is a vertebrate, and the definitive host is also a vertebra The *eggs* are pased in the stools of the definitive host. The embryo completes its develo ment in 5 weeks in water, then forces its way through the operculum and swims freely. Wh ingested by its first intermedaite host, *Cyclops leuckarti,* the embryo gains access to the cavi of the Cyclops and is transformed into a procercoid larva. If the Cyclops is ingested by t second intermediate hosts, frogs, snakes, birds, or mammals, it is partially digested in t stomach and liberates the procercoid larva. The larva bores through the gastric wall a migrates toward the deep muscles, although at times it remains in the iliac fossa, pleur cavity, lumbar region, urethra, etc. In these regions, the larva becomes a sparganum. It ca be differentiated from the sparganum of *D. latum* only by its larger size. The multiplica tion of the larvae by gemmation now takes place. The number of larvae that are produce at this time depends entirely upon the amount of available space and the nutrition which th primitive larvae command. When the definitive host, dogs, cats, and wild animals, ingest th second intermediate host, the sparganum is transformed into an adult parasite of the in testinal tract.

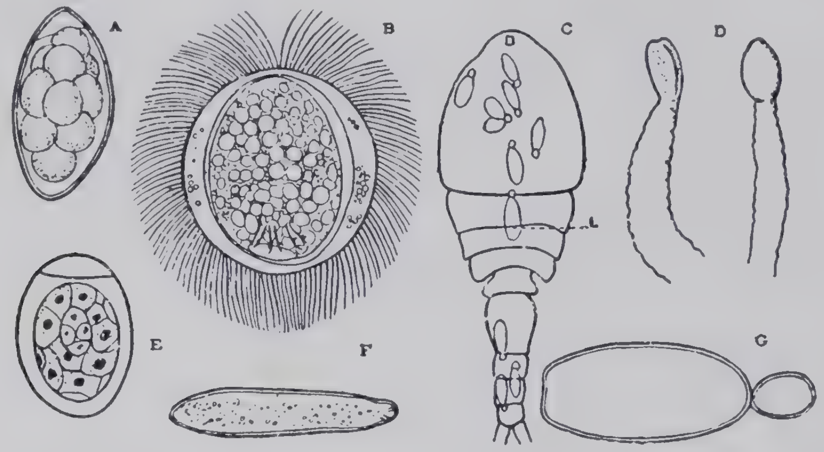


Fig. 325.—*Diphyllobothrium* (*S.*) *mansoni* in various stages of development. *A,* Egg, differentiated from the egg of *D. latum, E,* by the shape; *B,* onchosphere (×378): *C, Cyclops leuckarti* (21 days after infection) containing 11 procercoid larvae, *L*: *G.* procercoid larva, after 8 days (×125); *F,* larva, 21 days: *D,* anterior extremity of the parasite (×10.5). (After T. Okomura in Lecciones de Parasitología y Medicina Tropical by Kourí and Basnuevo; courtesy of Editorial Profilaxis S. A., Havana.)

To date it is considered that man may become infected exclusively by the larval form of sparganum of this parasite. Although it has not been proved, it is quite probable that man acquires somatic or visceral sparganiasis as a result of drinking water containing Cyclops contaminated with the procercoid larvae of the parasite. Most of the human case histories reported in the Far East mention the use of flesh of the second intermediate host, generally frogs, as poultices over some inflamed or suppurated area of the body (Joyeux and Houdemer, 1928; Faust, Campbell, and Kellog, 1929).

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

A number of cases of human sparganiasis have been reported in which nonramified larvae have been obtained generally in the muscles, connective tissue, or in the orbital region. If the infection is caused by ingestion of infected Cyclops it will, of course, be mild and consequently asymptomatic from the time the larvae enter the stomach wall and begin their migration until they localize. As the larvae develop, the area becomes edematous and very sensitive to touch. When the lesion is incised, a purulent or chylous exudate is liberated, in which at times the spargana may be found. They are recognized by their active movements consisting of contractions and elongations. At times the spargana undergo caseous degeneration. The death of the larvae causes a severe inflammatory reaction.

The most frequent mode of human infection, and the only one that has been proved, is by the application of packs of the flesh of the second intermediate host of the parasite, contaminated with sparganum, to some region of the body. Upon contact with the warm human body the larvae leave the pack and bore into the tissues at that site.

The presence of the larvae in or around the eye, ocular sparganiasis, is characterized by severe pain with irritation and edema of the eyelids and much lacrimation. In the case of subconjunctival infections, toxemia of the region is produced and gives rise on some occasions to the formation of nodules around the worm. Lagophthalmus and ulceration of the cornea are the results of retrobulbar invasion by the larvae.

DIAGNOSIS

Diagnosis can be made only by incising the lesion and obtaining the nonramified sparganum which frequently adheres to the tissues by its scolex. It should be differentiated from *S. proliferum* which is irregular in shape and ramified. Nevertheless, there are other species of sparganum similar to *D. mansoni* which are also unramified, and which are differentiated only when the adult parasite can be obtained from dogs, cats, and other definitive hosts by experimental feeding.

TREATMENT

Treatment consists, when possible, of extirpation of the larvae and drainage of the region.

Cornet in 1933 recommended injecting 2 to 4 c.c. of ethyl alcohol with novocain to kill the larvae *in situ*. They are later extirpated or are left to be absorbed.

Keller, in 1937, reported excellent results with intravenous injections of Novarsenobenzol, 0.30 to 0.45 Gm. per dose for adults, 0.07 to 0.15 Gm. for children, every 4 or 5 days, in 2 to 6 doses. Tarsorrhaphy has been used to preserve the cornea until the worm is absorbed or eliminated.

PROGNOSIS

Prognosis depends upon the localization of the larvae in the human host, as well as the facility with which they can be extirpated without injuring vital organs.

PROPHYLAXIS

Prophylactic measures consist in boiling or filtering drinking water in regions in which the parasite is endemic and in avoiding the local application of frog-flesh or flesh of other vertebrates infected with sparganum to ulcers or inflamed regions.

References

Alfonso, J. R.: 1937. Rev. de med. trop. y parasitol. bacteriol., clín. y lab. **3**: 225.

Arenas, R., Kourí, P., and Basnuevo, J. G.: 1933. Bol. Mensual Colegio Veterina Nacional. **2**: 469.

Bacigalupo, J.: 1938. Rev. de med. trop. y parasitol., bacteriol., clín. y lab. **4**: 45.

Dixon, H. B. F., and Hargreaves, W. H.: Quart. J. Med. New Series **13**: 107-121.

Faust, E. C.: 1929. Human Helminthology, ed. 2, Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, p. 30

Fermoselle, J. J.: 1936. Rev. de med. trop. y parasitol., bacteriol., clín. y lab. **2**: 629.

Fermoselle, J. J., and Portuondo, A.: 1936. Rev. parasitol., bacteriol., clin. y lab. **2**: 24

Gómez Camejo, M., and Vidal, R.: 1937. Rev. de med. trop. y parasitol., bacteriol., clí y lab. **3**: 133-141.

Gradwohl, R. B. H., and Kourí, Pedro: 1948. Clinical Laboratory Methods and Diagnosi vol. 3, Parasitology and Tropical Medicine, ed. 4, St. Louis, Mo., The C. V. Mosb Company.

Kourí, Pedro: 1948. Kuba, **4**: 97.

Kourí, Pedro, and Basnuevo, J. G.: 1949. Lecciones de Parasitología y Medicina Tropica ed. 3, Havana, Cuba.

Kourí, Pedro, Calvo, S. G., and Basnuevo, J. G.: Percentage and Geographical Distribu tion of Intestinal Parasitism in Cuba, Rev. de med. trop. y parasitol., bacteriol. clín. y lab.

Riley, W. A., and Shannon, W. R.: 1922. Rat Tapeworm, Hymenolepis Diminuta, in Man J. Parasitology **8**: 109-117.

CHAPTER 43

TREMATODIASIS OR DISEASES CAUSED BY FLUKES (PARAGONIMIASIS, FASCIOLOPSIASIS, HETEROPHYIASIS, METAGONIMIASIS, ECHINOSTOMIASIS, CLONORCHIASIS, OPISTHORCHIASIS, HUMAN FASCIOLIASIS HEPATICA)

Pedro Kourí

Trematodes are flatworms with smooth integument, unsegmented body, incomplete digestive tract, and no anus. The shapes vary but they are usually leaf-like. All the Distomata except Schistosoma are hermaphroditic.

DISEASES CAUSED BY LUNG FLUKES

Paragonimiasis

(Diseases Caused by *Paragonimus Westermani:* Pulmonary Distomiasis; Endemic Hemoptysis; Oriental Lung Fluke Infection)

HISTORY

Paragonimus westermani was found in 1877 by Westerman in the lungs of a dead tiger in the Zoological Garden of Amsterdam. In 1878, Kerbert made a study of the parasite, to which he ascribed the name *Distoma westermani.* In 1879 Ringer found it in lungs removed at autopsy from a Portuguese who had died in Formosa. Cobbold, in 1880, named it *Distoma ingeri.* In 1880, Manson discovered the eggs in the sputum of a Chinese resident of Formosa. Other investigators noted the parasite and its eggs in Chinese, Japanese, and Filipinos (Baelz (1880-1883), Yamagiwa (1892), Musgrave (1907), and others.

Nakagawa was the first to study the life cycle (1915). Later Nakagawa, Yokogawa, Kobayashi, and others in Japan (1915-1921), and more recently Vogel, Wu, Watt, and Chen (1935-1937) in China, and Ameel in 1934 in North America, studied the life cycle.

The American form, *Paragonimus kellicotti,* was described by Ward, in 1894, in a cat in Michigan.

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

This parasitic disease originates in the Far East, where it is widely distributed, especially in China, Korea, the Philippine Islands, Japan, Indo-China, and Formosa. It is endemic in Japan, the mortality rate being very high. Africa, India, Brazil (Mato Grosso), Peru, Yucatan, Venezuela, Ecuador, and the United States of America have also been reported as foci of infestation.

CAUSATIVE AGENT

Paragonimus Westermani (Kerbert 1878) Braun, 1899

Synonyms.—*Distoma westermani* Kerbert 1878; *Distoma ringeri* Cobbold 1880; *Distoma pulmonum* Baelz 1880; *Distoma pulmonis* Kiyoma 1881; *Distoma fusca* Baelz 1881; *istoma pulmonale* Baelz 1883; *Distoma baelzi* Cobbold 1884; *Distoma westermani* Leuckart 1889; *Distoma cerebrale* Yamagiwa 1890; *Mesogonimus westermani* Railliet 1890; *Polysarcus westermani* Lühe 1899; *Paragonimus kellicotti* Ward 1908.

Common Names.—Lung distome, causative factor in pulmonary distomiasis, parasitic hemoptysis, endemic hemoptysis, or paragonimiasis.

P. westermani is the causative agent of pulmonary distomiasis (dist tosis) or parasitic hemoptysis in man.

The *worm* is 8 to 16 by 4 to 8 by 3 to 4 mm. It is reddish-brown and when in alcohol is the shape and size of a coffee bean. The oral sucker is subterminal; the ve sucker is a short distance in front of the center of the parasite. The suckers are l and almost the same size (1 to 1.4 mm.).

The body of the parasite is covered with broad spines which vary in shape. The sp between the two suckers resemble a cluster of scales.

The *eggs* are operculated, ovoid, reddish-brown, 85 to 100 by 50 to 60 microns. T are abundant in the sputum and less frequently found in the feces.

Life Cycle

The egg is coughed up in the sputum and eventually deposited in water, where it gi rise to a miracidium which escapes through the operculum. This phase of the development quires 2 weeks in summer and 8 weeks in winter.

If the miracidium finds the primary intermediate host (species of snails of the gen Melanida, Hua, Semisulcospira (Brotia), Tarebia, Assiminea, Pomatiopsis, and Pomacea) penetrates into the body, and forms a sporocyst beneath the epidermis. This sporocyst p duces rediae which in turn give rise to daughter rediae. These daughter rediae beco localized in the hepatopancreas, where they produce cercariae, provided with a tiny styl They leave the body of the snail, then penetrate into the body of several species of crayf and crabs. They encyst in the muscles of these crustaceans, rarely in the liver and in t legs, but never in the gills as formerly believed. The metacercariae are able to infest th definitive hosts from 42 to 45 days after they have become encysted. When these infesti cysts are ingested by cats or dogs, the immature parasites leave the cysts, enter the small testine, perforate its wall, and gain access to the abdominal cavity. They migrate to t thoracic cavity, where after 30 days they bore through the pleura and the lung tissue a finally settle in the bronchioles where they are found in pairs. They develop into adult for which encyst between the hypertrophied walls of these ducts.

Man is infested by reating raw or half-cooked crustaceans containing the parasi cysts.

About 9 species of snails are commonly primary intermediate hosts in the Far East. Venezuela, the most commonly infested species is *Pomacea luteostoma*, according to Iturl and González, although this has not been confirmed; in North America, *Pomatiopsis lapidar* is the most common host for *P. kellicotti*.

Crayfish and crabs which act as secondary intermediate hosts are members of the fo lowing genera: Parathelphusa, Potamon, Eriocheir, Cambarus, and Sesarma in the Orien *Pseudothelphusa iturbei* in Venezuela; and various species of the genus Cambarus in Nor America. The definitive hosts, in addition to man, are cats, dogs, hogs, and mongooses.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The first stages of the disease are characterized by the presence of bloo stained sputum, and even hemoptysis. Later, chronic cough develops, esp cially in the morning. The sputum resembles that in lobar pneumoni Hemoptysis of variable intensity may recur, often lasting for several day Some cases show symptoms similar to those of tuberculosis. Erratic localiz tion of the parasite in the brain is very rare. When infestation of the brai occurs, the patient suffers epileptiform spells. At autopsy the lung surfac may show a variable number of hard cysts which may reach the size of pea. These cysts contain parasites, usually in pairs, and a variable quanti of a reddish purulent liquid with numerous eggs. One may find at times larg numbers of eggs in cysts if the parasite dies and has disintegrated. Mic scopic investigation shows that the cysts are formed in the small bronchioles which become hypertrophied and obliterated, their walls becoming sclerotic and infiltrated with cells of inflammation. The epithelium becomes stratified (metaplasia).

In intestinal paragonimiasis the cysts localize in the intestinal wall, causing diarrhea. Eggs of the parasite are found in the stools. The cysts can develop in the abdominal glands, producing clinically febrile pictures, or in the skin and subcutaneous cellular tissue with abscess formation.

In endemic zones in Japan, cerebral symptoms in children less than 15 years of age have been mistaken for infantile paralysis, cerebral hemorrhage, encephalitis, and meningitis.

The parasites also localize at times in the liver, muscles, testes, peritoneum, and pleura, where they can be recognized by their characteristic dark blue color.

DIAGNOSIS

Diagnosis is made by examination of the sputum, using direct slide-cover slip preparations. The sputa are frequently stained with blood and show rust-brown flakes composed of clusters of eggs of the parasite. Differential diagnosis should be made from bronchopneumonia, tuberculosis, bronchial spirochetosis, and pleural effusion. Cysts in the lungs can be seen on x-ray examination.

The eggs can be found in small numbers in the feces if the sputum is swallowed, or in diarrheal stools if the parasite localizes in the intestines. They are seen at times in pus from subcutaneous abscesses caused by the parasite.

TREATMENT

There is no known specific treatment. Tartar emetic should be used, since it has proved efficacious in some cases by improving the clinical picture. Emetine also has been used. Surgery of the lung has been recommended in cases of superficial cysts which are easily accessible. Tonic medication should be used in all cases to help restore defenses of the patient. The patient should be removed from the endemic zone to prevent reinfestation. Some years after leaving the endemic zone, the patient may regain his health, due to spontaneous death of the parasites which slowly disintegrate and at times are expelled in coughing.

PROPHYLAXIS

General prophylaxis consists in preventing dissemination of the eggs in sputum and feces by instructing patients to collect all their specimens sputum, feces) in special containers so that the eggs may be properly lestroyed with sulfuric acid. All parasitized animals (dogs, cats, hogs, rats) hould be destroyed, thereby preventing dissemination of the eggs by these nimals. The contaminated viscera of pigs should be destroyed by sulfuric cid. Mollusks should be destroyed or controlled through proper measures.

The individual should avoid eating raw or imperfectly cooked crayfish nd crabs.

DISEASES CAUSED BY INTESTINAL FLUKES

1. FASCIOLOPSIASIS

(Disease Caused by *Fasciolopsis Buski,* the Giant Intestinal Fluke)

HISTORY

Fasciolopsis buski was discovered by Busk in 1843 in the duodenum of a sailor autopsi in London. It has been described since then under several different names, due to the vari of forms and sizes which it usually presents.

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

In certain foci of Central and Southern China, Formosa, Indo-China, Siam, Borne Sumatra, Assam, and Bengal, this is a common parasite of man and pigs. It is also foun in other regions of the Far East. In Canton, only a small percentage of dogs is infecte since dogs seem to be partially resistant to this infection.

CAUSATIVE AGENT

Fasciolopsis Buski (Lankester 1857) Odhner 1902

Synonyms.—*Distomum crassum* Busk 1859; *Distomum rathouisi* Poirier 1887; *Opisthorchis buski* R. Blanchard 1895; *Fasciolopsis rathouisi* (Poirier 1887) Ward 1903; *Fasciolopsi fülleborni* Rodenwaldt 1909; *Fasciolopsis goddardi* Ward 1910; *Fasciolopsis spinifera* Brow 1917.

The *adult worm,* which attaches itself to the walls of the duodenum and jejunum, is large fleshy parasite, oval but usually elongated and ovoid. Its size is variable: 20 to 75 by 8 to 20 by 0.5 to 3 mm. The surface of the parasite is covered with spines. The cephali cone is absent. The oral sucker is about 0.5 mm., while the ventral sucker is approximatel 3 mm. in diameter. For further details, see Gradwohl and Kourí (1948).

The *eggs* are quite similar to those of *Fasciola hepatica,* 130 to 140 by 80 to 85 microns and are operculated. They do not contain a developed miracidium when laid. The life cycle of the parasite was described by Nakagawa (1921) in the pig and by Barlow (1925) in man. It is similar to that of *F. hepatica.*

Life Cycle

The eggs are passed in the feces of the definitive host. It requires 3 to 7 weeks at 26° to 32° C. for the miracidium to develop. When it reaches maturity, it forces the operculum open and swims freely until it finds an appropriate host, a snail. It penetrates the soft tissues of the snail and in a few weeks gives rise to sporocysts, rediae, and cercariae. The molluscan hosts in China and Formosa are *Planorbis caenosus, Segmentina nitidella, S. calathus, S. hemisphaerula, Hippeutis schmackeri, H. cantori,* and *Gyraulus saigonensis.* The cercariae are similar to those of *F. hepatica.* In endemic regions the cercariae encyst in the roots and bulbs of certain aquatic plants. Man is infected by husking the infected plants between the teeth and lips, before eating the contents. The metacercariae leave the cyst in the duodenum and cling to the walls of the intestine, where they grow to the adult stage in about 3 months. Human infection is associated with eating certain uncooked aquatic pla cultivated in endemic areas where the appropriate host is abundant.

SYMPTOMS

Although the parasites usually localize in the duodenal mucosa it is not uncommon to find them attached to the mucosa of the pylorus or even to the mucosa of the large intestine. When the parasites adhere to the intestinal wall, they first cause an inflammatory reaction and later ulceration. The capillaries of the wall may be eroded, resulting in hemorrhage. Abscesses of the wall may also be produced. In massive infections, an acute abdominal picture may result.

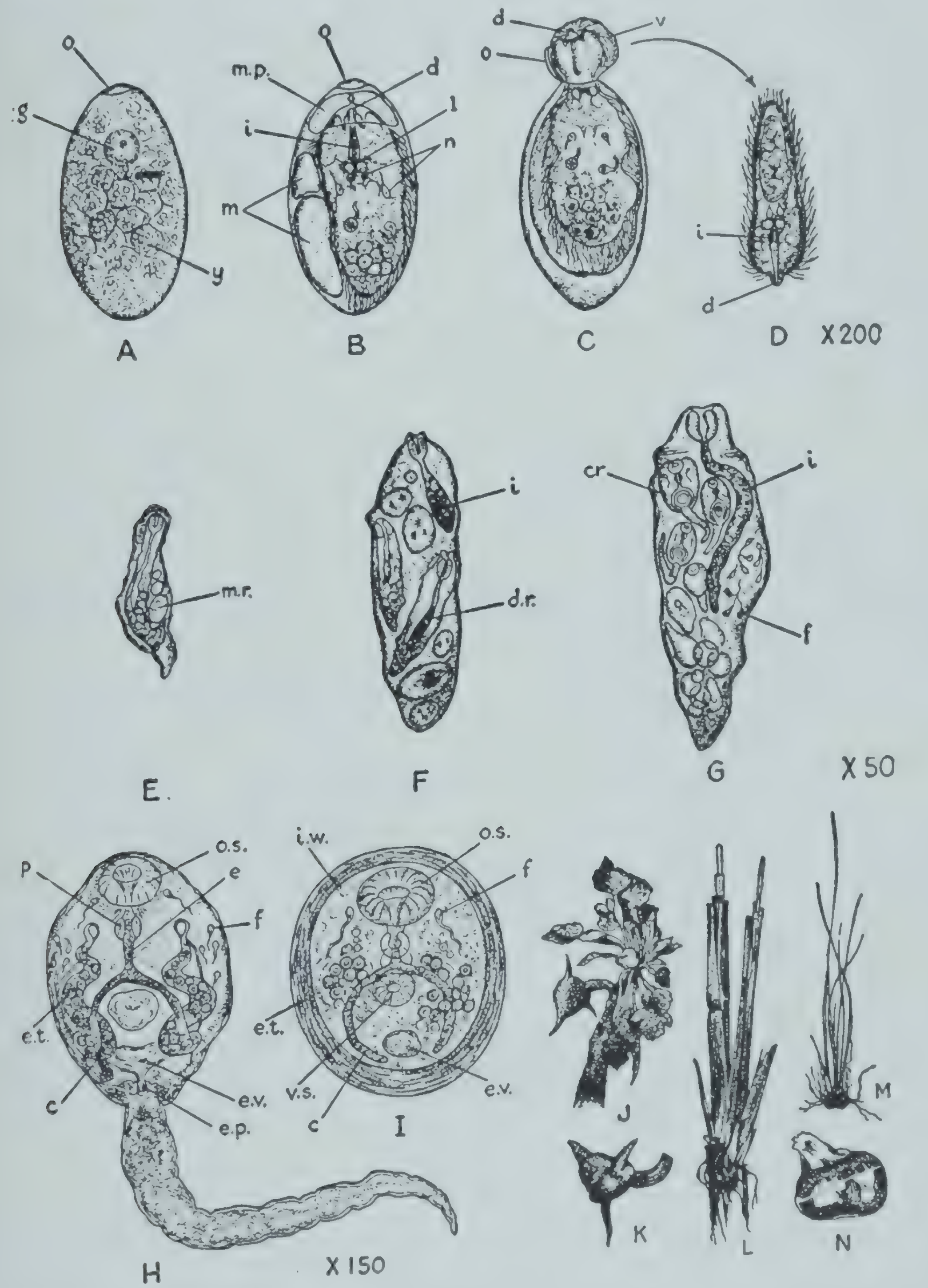


Fig. 326.—*Fasciolopsis buski;* larval forms. *A,* Undeveloped; *B,* miracidium within the egg; *C,* miracidium leaving the egg; *D,* miracidium (*A, B, C, D,* in the water); *E,* sporocyst; *F,* mother redia; *G,* daughter rediae (*E, F, G,* within the mollusk); *H,* cercaria; *I,* metacercaria; *J, Trapa matans,* water caltrop; *K,* fruit of *Trapa natans; L,* water bamboo (*Zizania aquatica*); *M,* water chestnut (*Eliocharis tuberosa*); *N,* tuber of the water chestnut (*H* to *N* in the water); *c,* ceca; *cr,* cercaria; *d,* protuberance from the anterior extremity of the miracidium; *d.r.,* daughter redia; *e,* esophagus; *e.p.,* excretory pore; *e.t.,* excretory concretions; *e.v.,* excretory vesicle; *f,* flame cell; *g,* germinal area; *i,* primitive digestive tract; *i.w.,* inner cyst wall; *l,* optic lens; *m,* oil masses; *m.p.,* mucoid plug; *m.r.,* germ mass from which mother redia develops; *n,* neurone; *o,* operculum; *o.s.,* oral sucker; *p,* pharynx; *v,* vitelline membrane; *v.s.,* ventral sucker; *y,* yolk. (*A* to *J* redrawn from Barlow, 1925. *K* to *N* redrawn from Wu, 1937, by Belding in Textbook of Clinical Parasitology; from Lecciones de Parasitología y Medicina Tropical by Kourí and Basnuevo.)

The first symptoms appear near the end of the incubation period. Th are diarrhea and painful hunger. In mild infections these may be the on symptoms. When the number of parasites is large, the case may simula gastric ulcer, with an asthenic state. Symptoms of general intoxication ma appear, such as edema of the face, abdominal wall, and lower extremitie At times there is ascites with diffuse abdominal pain. The diarrhea, whic at first alternates with periods of constipation, becomes persistent, and th stools are a yellow-green mass with a pungent odor, containing large amount of undigested food. Although at times the appetite remains unchange anorexia, nausea, and vomiting are frequent. In advanced stages the ski is dry and rough; a state of extreme prostration develops. Death is due t toxemia followed by anasarca.

Young, in 1934, found that 42.5 per cent of the cases showed leucocytosis with eosinophilia and neutropenia. At times there is lymphocytosis. The erythrocytes do not seem to be altered.

DIAGNOSIS, PROGNOSIS, AND TREATMENT

Diagnosis is based on finding the eggs in the stools. In endemic regions the history of the disease may be important; however, one should exclude fascioliasis and echinostomiasis.

Prognosis is good, in early cases, if the patients are treated in time, but it is serious in the final stages of the disease.

Drugs used are beta-naphthol, carbon tetrachloride, and hexylresorcinol, the latter being the drug of choice.

PROPHYLAXIS

Prophylactic measures consist in dipping raw vegetables in boiling water for several seconds, or peeling and washing them in clean water. Snails can be killed by using a 1:50,000 solution of copper sulfate in fields covered with water. Since most of the endemic foci are maintained by using human feces as fertilizer, sterilization of the feces should constitute the fundamental prophylactic measure.

2. Heterophyiasis

(Disease Caused by *Heterophyes Heterophyes* and Other Species of the Genus)

HISTORY

Heterophyes heterophyes was discovered by Bilharz in Cairo in 1851, in the intestine of an Egyptian child. von Siebold called it *Distoma heterophyes*. Cobbold in 1866 established the genus Heterophyes. Looss in 1894 gave the first description of the type species; he also found that the disease was frequent in Egypt, the eggs passing undetected because of their small size. Leiper found it in two sailors, one Chinese, the other Japanese, in a London hospital, and established its existence in the Orient. Onji and Nishio, in 1915, described an almost identical parasite in Japan, and called it *Heterophyes nocens*.

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

The parasite is found in Egypt, Palestine, in central and southern China, Japan, Korea, Formosa, and the Philippines.

CAUSATIVE AGENT

Heterophyes Heterophyes (von Siebold 1852) Stiles and Hassall 1900

Synonyms.—*Distoma heterophyes* von Siebold 1852; *Distoma heterophyes hominis* Diesing 1855; *Dicrocoelium heterophyes* Weinland 1858; *Fasciola heterophyes* Moquin-Tandon 1860; *Heterophyes aegyptiaca* Cobbold 1866; *Mesogonimus heterophyes* Railliet 1890; *Coenogonimus heterophyes* Looss 1899; *Cotylogonimus heterophyes* Lühe 1899; *Heterophyes nocens* Onji and Nishio 1915.

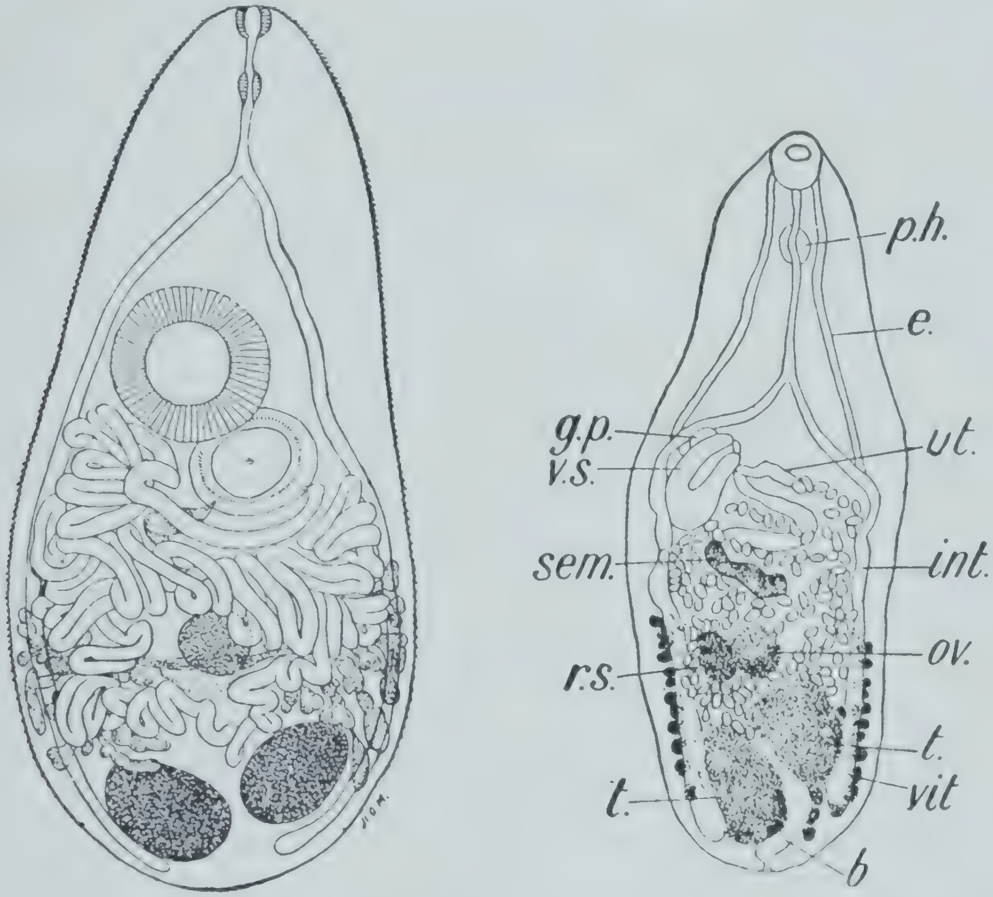


Fig. 327.—*1, Heterophyes heterophyes* (after Mönnig); *2, Metagonimus yokogawai* (after Ciurea). Adult of each species, ventral face. In *H. heterophyes, 1,* the posterior extremity is thicker than the anterior. Note the larger ventral sucker (acetabulum), and immediately behind it the characteristic genital sucker. The 2 testes are oval, posterior, and horizontal. In *Metagonimus yokogawai, 2,* note *b,* excretory vesicle; *e,* excretory canal, *g.p.,* genital pore; *int.,* intestinal cecum; *ov,* ovary; *p.h.,* pharynx; *r.s.,* seminal receptacle; *sem.,* seminal vesicle; *t.t.,* testes; *ut.,* uterus; *vit.,* vitelline; *v.s.,* ventral sucker or acetabulum. (From Kourí and Basnuevo in Lecciones de Parasitología y Medicina Tropical; courtesy of Editorial Profilaxis S. A., Havana.)

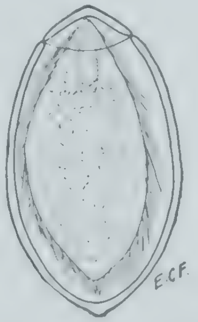


Fig. 328.—Egg of *Heterophyes heterophyes.* Camera lucida drawing. (Original figure in Faust: Human Helminthology, 1939; courtesy of Lea & Febiger.)

The parasite is very small, approximately 1.5 by 0.5 mm. The oral sucker is small and subterminal; the ventral sucker is almost 3 times larger and slightly excentric.

The *eggs* are small, brownish, and have a thick shell. They measure 26 to 30 by 15 to 17 microns. This worm is a habitual parasite of dogs, cats, rabbits, man, and other animals.

It completes its cycle in 2 intermediate hosts, the first a salt-water mollusk, *Pirenella conic* (Khalil, 1933), which can also be found in brackish water. The second intermediate hosts ar fish of the family Mugilidae, especially mullets, in the muscles of which the infective metacercaria for man and other definitive hosts becomes encysted. Man and other carnivor acquire the parasite by eating contaminated fish. The adult parasite lives in the small intestine and cecum of its definitive hosts, generally in great numbers.

SYMPTOMS

Its pathogenic role is insignificant in animals and seems to be of little importance in man.

TREATMENT

The usual anthelminthics may be used. Care should be taken to administer the anthelminthic after complete evacuation of the bowels. If this is not done, it cannot act on those trematodes which, because of their extremely small size, can protect themselves against the treatment by lodging in the intestinal villi.

PROPHYLAXIS

Prophylactic measures consist in cooking fish well in countries where the parasite abounds.

3. Metagonimiasis

(Disease Caused by *Metagonimus Yokogawai,* Yokogawa's Fluke)

HISTORY

In 1911, Yokogawa found a larva of the trematode encysted in the tonsils, scales, and muscles of certain fresh-water salmon in Formosa. This parasite, *Metagonimus yokogawai,* was described for the first time by Katsurada in 1912, who succeeded in experimentally producing the adult trematode, noting that the eggs are similar to those found in human feces. He called attention to its wide distribution in Japan. It was reported by Kobayashi in 1912 in Korea, by Yokogawa in 1913 in Formosa, and in 1915 by Ciurea in Romania.

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

This is a common parasite of man in Egypt and the Orient (Japan, China, Korea, and Formosa). It is found in Siberia, Palestine, Russia, and the Balkans. It has been reported in Spain by López-Neyra and Pozo (1932), and in Romania by Ciurea.

CAUSATIVE AGENT

Metagonimus Yokogawai Katsurada 1912

Synonyms.—*Heterophyes yokogawa* Katsurada 1912; *Loxotrema ovatum* Kobayashi 1912; *Tocotrema yokogawai* Katsurada 1912; *Metagonimus ovatus* Yokogawa 1913; *Yokogawa yokogawai* Leiper 1913; *Loosia romanica* Ciurea 1915; *Loxotrema ovatum* Kobayashi 1908 (erratum) of Leiper 1922.

The adult parasite is very small, 1 to 2.5 by 0.4 to 0.75 mm. The body is pyriform. The posterior extremity is rounded; the anterior narrowed and covered with scales. The ventral sucker is larger than the oral and is to one side of the median line.

For further details, see Gradwohl and Kourí (1948).

Eggs are brownish-yellow, operculated, ovoid, 28 by 17 microns. They are differentiated with difficulty from those of Heterophyes. When laid, they contain a completely developed miracidium.

Life Cycle

The first intermediate hosts of *M. yokogawai* are *Melania libertina* and *M. ebenina*, within which the sporocysts, rediae, and cercariae are formed. These leave the snail and swim freely in the water until they reach an appropriate host. They bore under the scales and into the muscles of fish, the second intermediate hosts. The most common intermediate hosts in Japan are the fresh-water fish, *Plecoglossus altivelis* and *Leuciscus hakuensis*. When they enter the fish the cercariae lose their tails, and in the muscles or under the scales they secrete a cystogenic substance which forms a membrane around them. The encysted larvae grow according to the quantity of nutritive material available and the length of time they have been within the fish.

Man is infected by eating raw contaminated fish. In the duodenum the young distome breaks through the cystogenic membrane which protects it as it passes through the stomach, and adheres to the intestinal mucosa, where it grows into an adult parasite.

SYMPTOMS

The pathogenic role of this parasite is very mild, and the symptoms to which it gives rise are insignificant. Nevertheless, in massive infestations mild intestinal disturbances and even persistent diarrheas may appear.

Africa and his co-workers considered this parasite capable of producing more marked symptomatology. At times the eggs of the parasite filter through the intestinal wall and enter the lymphatics where they pass into the general circulation in large numbers. They may stop in the blood vessels of the myocardium or in the valves of the heart, and give rise to a cellular reaction which initiates cardiac disturbances with syndromes easily mistaken for beriberi. The eggs are sometimes carried to the spinal cord or to the brain, where they cause severe motor and sensory disturbances.

DIAGNOSIS

Diagnosis is based on finding the eggs of the parasite in the stools, where they must be differentiated from those of *Clonorchis sinensis* and *Opisthorchis felineus*.

TREATMENT

The parasite usually leaves the definitive host spontaneously. The following drugs have been used with favorable results: carbon tetrachloride, tetrachloroethylene, and ether extract of male fern.

PROGNOSIS

Prognosis is favorable unless the eggs pass into the general circulation and come to rest in the heart or in the nervous system of the definitive host.

PROPHYLAXIS

Human infection can be avoided if fish are thoroughly cooked before eating.

4. ECHINOSTOMIASIS

(Disease Caused by *Echinostoma Ilocanum*, Garrison's Fluke)

HISTORY

This parasite was discovered in the Philippine Islands by Garrison in 1908, in a native Luzon. This author first found the eggs in human stools, and later obtained, during tre ment, specimens of the adult parasite, expelled by a native prisoner. Odhner, after detail study, placed it in the genus Echinostoma in 1911. Tubangui and Pasco in 1933 clarified th complete life cycle of the parasite, Tubangui (1931) demonstrating that the gray ra *Mus norvegicus,* is the natural reservoir of the parasite in the Philippines. It has also bee experimentally demonstrated that white rats, cats, and monkeys are also appropriate definiti hosts. Chen, in 1934, showed that in Canton 13.5 per cent of the dogs harbored the parasit Brug and Tesch (1937) believed that they had found the Echinostoma in the natives of Dutc East Indies.

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

Echinostoma is found in mammals in the Philippines and China. The area of huma infection is limited to the Ilocanan population of the Province of Luzon, the Philippines, th Celebes, Java, Assam, and Japan.

CAUSATIVE AGENT

Echinostoma Ilocanum (Garrison 1908) Odhner 1911

Synonyms.—*Fascioletta ilocanum* Garrison 1908; *Euparyphium ilocanum* (Garrison 1908) Tubangui and Pasco 1933.

This is a small trematode, reddish-gray, oval, and elongated. It is 2.5 to 6.5 by 1 to 1.35 by 0.5 to 0.6 mm. On the anterior extremity, the parasite shows a circumoral disc, separated from the body proper by a slight constriction. The adoral disc is 0.22 to 0.34 mm. wide and bears a crown of 49 to 51 spines. The integument is covered with scales which extend to the level of the posterior ovary. The oral sucker is small, 0.10 to 0.16 mm. in diameter, and lies in the center of the adoral disc. The ventral sucker or acetabulum is larger, 0.40 to 0.46 mm. in diameter, and lies at the beginning of the widened portion of the body.

For further details, see Gradwohl and Kourí (1948).

The *eggs* are ovoid and operculated, 83 to 116 by 58 to 69 microns. When they are passed in the feces they do not harbor a miracidium; this develops in the water within 6 to 15 days after the eggs have left the body.

The adult parasite inhabits the anterior part of the small intestine of its definitive host, usually attached to the mucosa by means of its crown of spines.

Life Cycle

The larval cycle takes place in 2 intermediate molluscan hosts. The first host is the snail, *Gyraulus prashadi,* which is penetrated actively by the miracidium. On reaching the digestive gland, the miracidium develops into a sporocyst; within the sporocyst the mother rediae, and within these the daughter rediae, develop; these produce cercariae within 42 to 50 days after invasion of the snail. The cercariae leave the snail and may become encysted on any fresh-water snail, but the second habitual or natural intermediate host is *Pila luzonica,* frequently eaten raw by natives. Some become infected when they inadvertently ingest metacercariae along with the snails.

SYMPTOMS

The parasite causes no symptoms in the digestive system.

TREATMENT

Male fern is a specific in the treatment of this parasitosis.

PROPHYLAXIS

Prophylaxis is the same as for other trematode diseases.

DISEASES CAUSED BY LIVER FLUKES

1. CLONORCHIASIS (CHINESE LIVER FLUKE INFECTION)

(Disease Caused by *Clonorchis Sinensis,* the Chinese Liver Fluke)

HISTORY

The *Clonorchis sinensis* was discovered by McConnell, in 1875, in the biliary passages of a Chinese patient in Calcutta. Cobbold named it *Distoma sinense* in 1875. Various cases were reported among the Chinese in Mauritius. Baelz, in 1883, described two species in Japan, one small, the other large, but considered only the small species pathogenic. Later he concluded that they were different forms of the same species. Ch'en Pang in 1923 proved definitely that the difference in size was simply a variation within the species. Blanchard, 1895, created the genus Opisthorchis, in which genus this parasite was classified until 1907. Looss, in 1907, established the genus Clonorchis. Saito, in 1898, was the first to observe the miracidium. Kobayashi (1911-1917) experimentally recovered the adult worms from mammals which had been fed fresh-water fish containing the encysted cercariae. Muto, in 1918, identified the first intermediate host when he found the cercariae in fresh-water mollusks. Faust and Khaw, in 1927, made a study of the biology of the parasite and of the epidemiology of the infection in China.

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

This trematode is a parasite of mammals which feed on fish in Japan, China, Formosa, Korea, and French Indo-China. The principal focus of human infection is found in Okayama (Japan), southern Korea, Kwangtung (China), and the Red River delta in French Indo-China. It is practically nonexistent in northern China. Emigration has not resulted in establishment of new foci of infection, since no adequate intermediate hosts have been found to exist in other countries. Many cases have been reported among the Cantonese in Cuba, India, and Hawaii. The presence of the disease among Hawaiians has been explained by the fact that they eat infested fish imported from China or Japan.

CAUSATIVE AGENT

Clonorchis Sinensis (Cobbold 1875) Looss 1907

(The Chinese Liver Fluke)

Synonyms.—*Distoma sinense* Cobbold 1875; *Distoma spathulatum* Leuckart 1876; *Distoma hepatis innocuum* Baelz 1883; *Distoma hepatis endemicum* Baelz 1883; *Distoma hepatis perniciosum* Baelz 1883; *Distoma endemicum* Ijima 1886; *Distoma japonicum* R. Blanchard 1886; *Opisthorchis sinensis* Blanchard 1895; *Clonorchis endemicus* Looss 1907, *pro parte; Clonorchis sinensis* var. *major* Verdun and Bruyant 1908; *Clonorchis sinensis* var. *minor* Verdun and Bruyant 1908.

In Cuba there is a large Chinese colony, concentrated principally in the city of Havana. The majority of these Chinese are Cantonese, coming from one of the most intense endemic foci of clonorchiasis. According to Kourí, Basnuevo, and Sotolongo (1940), 23 per cent of the Chinese who have died in Havana showed parasites in the bile ducts, the habitual localization. According to statistics by Kourí, Bolaños, Anido, and Basnuevo (1936), 22.5 per cent of the Chinese residents of Cuba (Havana), without apparent symptoms or with only mild symptoms, showed eggs of *C. sinensis* in the stools. According to Kourí and Frade, 49 per cent of Chinese in Cuba with digestive and hepatobiliary disturbances, with a general nervous state, are parasitized by the Chinese liver fluke, which has been proved by serial coprologic examinations. If examinations had been made of concentrated stools and bile obtained by duodenal intubation (method of Kourí), the percentage of parasitism would probably have been even greater.

The distome is transparent and elongated, with a thinner anterior than posterior extremity. When fixed in formalin, some specimens are whitish, while others are brownish, [illegible]

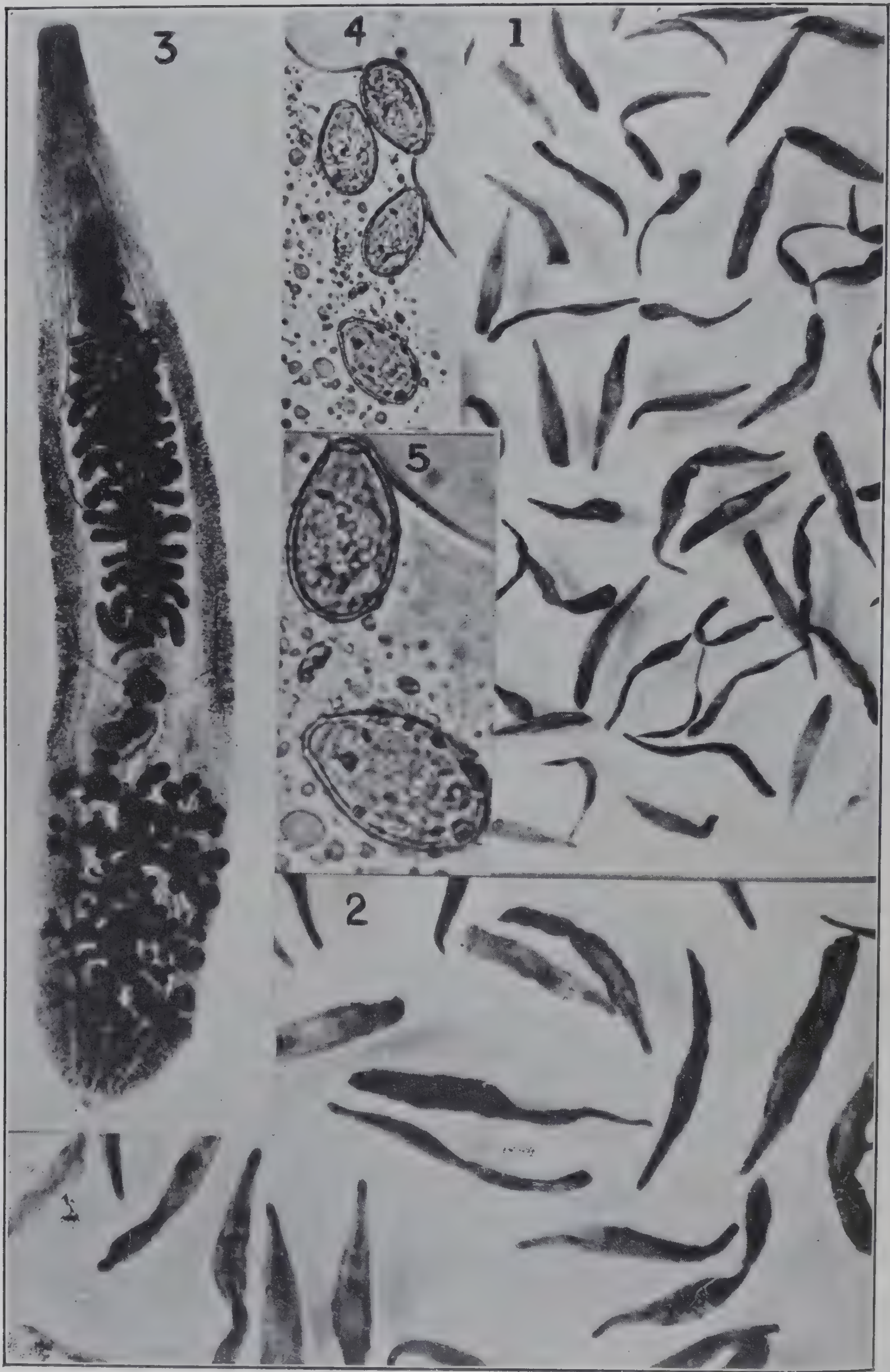


Fig. 329.—*Clonorchis sinensis. 1* and *2*, Photographs of the parasite; *1*, natural size and *2*, slightly enlarged. *3*, Photomicrograph of a specimen stained with Meyer hemalum (×12 *4* and *5*, Eggs in bile obtained by duodenal intubation. (Originals of Kourí.)

or less dark. Both forms may be present in the same liver. The parasite is 2 cm. by 4 mm. For further details, see Grahwohl and Kourí (1948).

The *eggs* are small, 25 to 30 by 15 to 17 microns, characteristically pyriform, the posterior extremity being broader than the anterior. In the center of the posterior end there is a small bud. A prominent operculum is seen at the narrower anterior end. It has a single yellowish-colored covering. It contains a completely developed micarcidium when laid.

Life Cycle

The adult parasite lives in the bile ducts of man, dogs, cats, swine, rats, and certain wild carnivorous animals of the Far East, which are the definitive hosts.

The egg, containing a miracidium, is passed with the feces of the definitive hosts. While some claim that the miracidium hatches in the water and then penetrates into the mollusks (first intermediate hosts), others, notably Faust, believe that hatching actually occurs in the esophagus of the mollusk when it swallows the egg; later, sporocyst, rediae, and cercariae develop in the periesophageal lymphatic spaces; the cercariae leave the snail and encyst in the skin, beneath the scales, and in the muscles of the fishes (the second intermediate hosts) in the form of metacercariae or encysted cercariae. The first larval stages (sporocysts, rediae, and cercariae) develop within several species of mollusks of the subfamily Bithyniinae (*Parafossarulus striatulus, Bulimus fuchsiana, Bithynia longicornis, B. chaperi*, and probably other related species, such as *Melanoides tuberculata* (Galliard 1938) and *M. cancellata* (Faust and Barlow 1924) which are the first intermediate hosts of the parasite. Metacercariae are found in about 40 species of fresh water fishes of the families Cyprinidae, Gobiidae, Anabantidae, and Salmonidae.

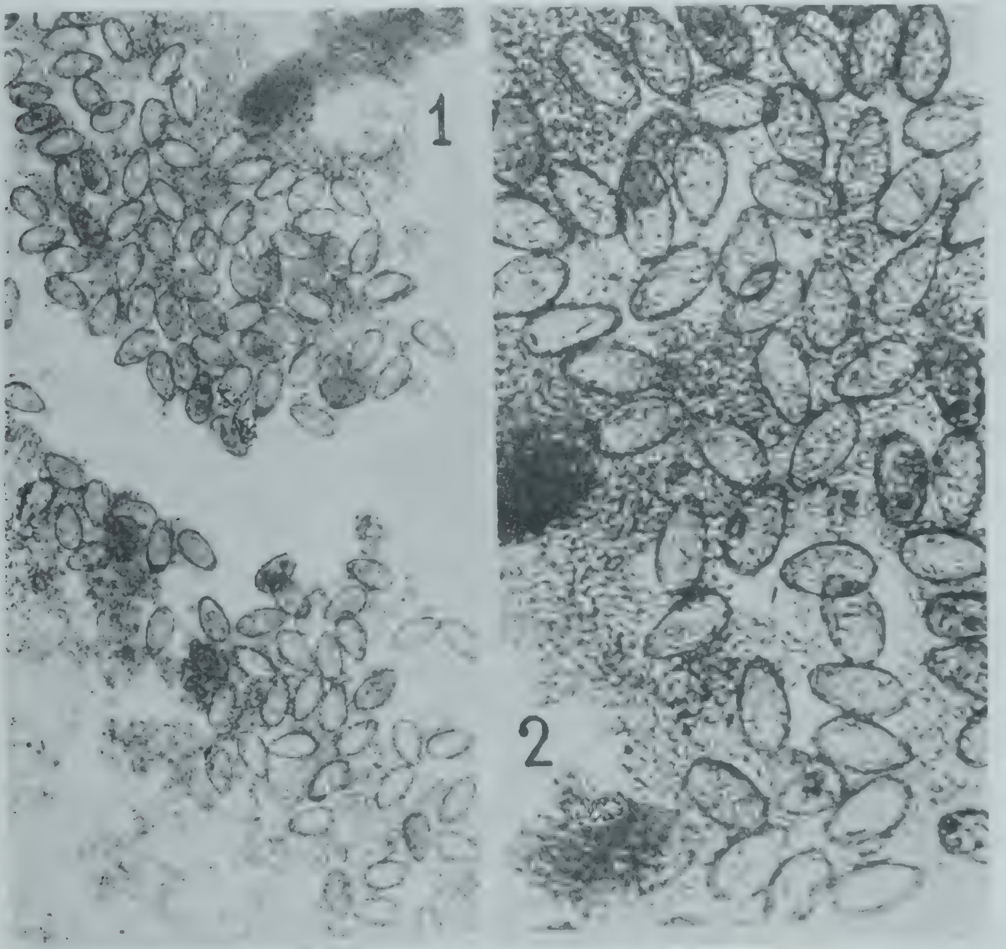


Fig. 330.—*Clonorchis sinensis* eggs in human bile obtained by duodenal intubation; *1* ×160; *2*, ×320. (Original photomicrographs of Kourí.)

In Canton the two species most massively infected are *Ctenopharyngodon idellus* a *Mylopharyngodon aethiops,* which are eaten raw. In Peiping, in addition to the first spec *Culter aburnus* is the species which most frequently transmits the parasite.

Definitive hosts are infested when they eat raw or poorly cooked fish containing t metacercariae or fish preserved in salt or vinegar. In the intestine, the metacercaria sets fr a young fluke which reaches the intrahepatic bile ducts and develops into the adult parasite about 1 month. The adult lays embryonated eggs which enter the duodenum in the bile; t eggs are passed with the feces, and a new cycle begins. The entire cycle is completed not less than 3 months.

The number of parasites harbored may be quite large. A case has bee reported in which 21,000 specimens of the parasite were counted. Kourí foun 200 specimens in 1 patient and 20 to 50 specimens in others.

This parasite may live many years in the biliary passages in man. Tw such cases have been reported in Panama. One was a Chinese who had lef China 25 years previously; the other patient had lived for 30 years in th Mauritius Islands. Although both men had lived all this time far remove from endemic areas, living specimens were found at autopsy of the first man and eggs were recovered from the stools of the second.

PATHOLOGY AND HISTOLOGY

In mild clonorchiasis, the liver seems to undergo slight changes. In cases of moderate or massive infestations, this organ increases in size. The bile ducts become hypertrophied and dilated. In old massive infestations, the organ may be greatly hypertrophied and occasionally shows whitish areas, which extend throughout the surface and represent cavities with fibrotic walls, derived from the hypertrophied, fibrotic, dilated bile ducts. In some cases, carcinomatous transformations of the scirrus type, as Kourí has pointed out in 2 cases (Kourí and collaborators), are seen. These also contain cavities with fibrotic walls, filled with pus. Occasionally the gall bladder is increased in size and contains dark, thick, and thready bile, with mucus, with one or more specimens of the parasite and many eggs. On one occasion many vegetative forms and cysts of *Giardia intestinalis* were found with Clonorchis in the gall bladder. In Kourí's experience, in a study of more than 60 cases of accidental death of Chinese residents in Cuba, about 25 per cent were affected with clonorchiasis in different degrees.

The histologic lesions consist of inflammatory and hyperplastic reactions, which begin in the bile ducts, recede, in cases of advanced massive infections, almost to the connective tissue, and occasionally to cells of the contiguous hepatic parenchyma. In the walls of the duct, and surrounding it, infiltration of inflammatory cells is seen, with eosinophiles and lymphocytes predominating, and occasionally polymorphonuclear neutrophiles, causing a connective-vascular tissue reaction with consecutive sclerosis of the walls of the bile ducts which in time become hypertrophied. The epithelium of the biliary canaliculi undergoes mild hyperplasia and at times almost completely disappears; only rarely is this hyperplasia notable. In such cases it leads to actual biliary adenomas, in a more advanced stage of the lesions, which is different from the pathology caused by *F. hepatica.*

In more advanced stages of the disease, in cases of massive parasitism, the fibrous tissue invades larger areas of the parenchyma, destroys the liver cells, resulting in areas of necrosis and fatty degeneration of these cells. In these cases one should study carefully the different portions of the liver, because frequently when this stage is reached there are histologic and clinical signs in the liver due to malignant transformation (Kourí and collaborators). In severe and more advanced cases, there is hypertrophic cirrhosis with symptoms of portal compression edema of the extremities, ascites, collateral venous circulation, etc.

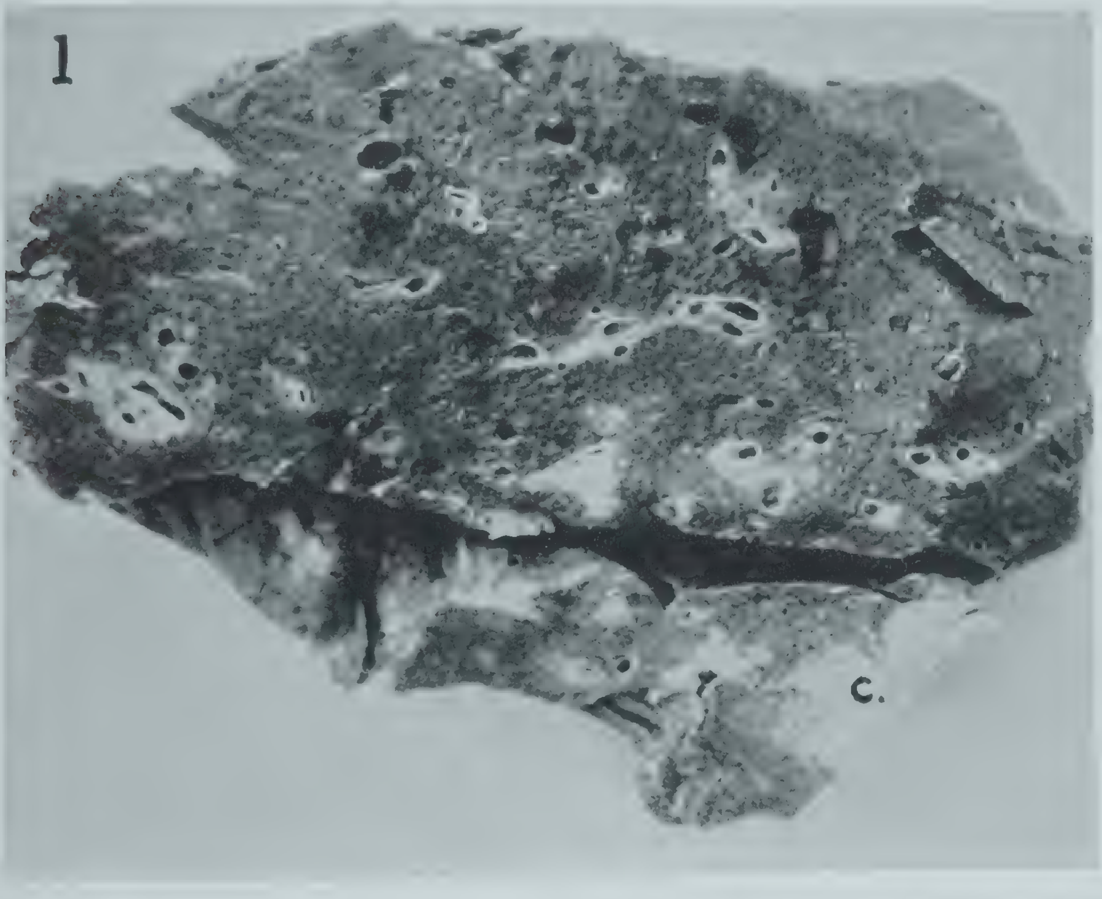


Fig. 331.—Clonorchiasis hepatica; liver. This specimen contained severe lesions of clonorchiasis and carcinomatous transformation of biliary adenoma. *1*, Surface of a section through the liver showing hypertrophic and sclerotic bile ducts with pericanalicular fibrosis. *c*, A large zone of carcinomatous sclerosis, confirmed by microscopic examination. (Kourí, Basnuevo, and collaborators.)

PATHOGENICITY

Clonorchis sinensis is the most frequent cause of distomiasis hepatica in human beings. The disease is called clonorchiasis hepatica by *C. sinensis*. At times the clinical picture of the disease is quite grave, with symptoms of gastrointestinal disorder, anemia, diarrhea, ascites, and edema of the lower extremities. The development of the disease may be very slow. If infestation is extensive, patients may die in a state of cachexia.

SYMPTOMS

The spoliative action of this parasite is of little importance, but the mechanical and toxic actions and, above all, the irritative and inflammatory

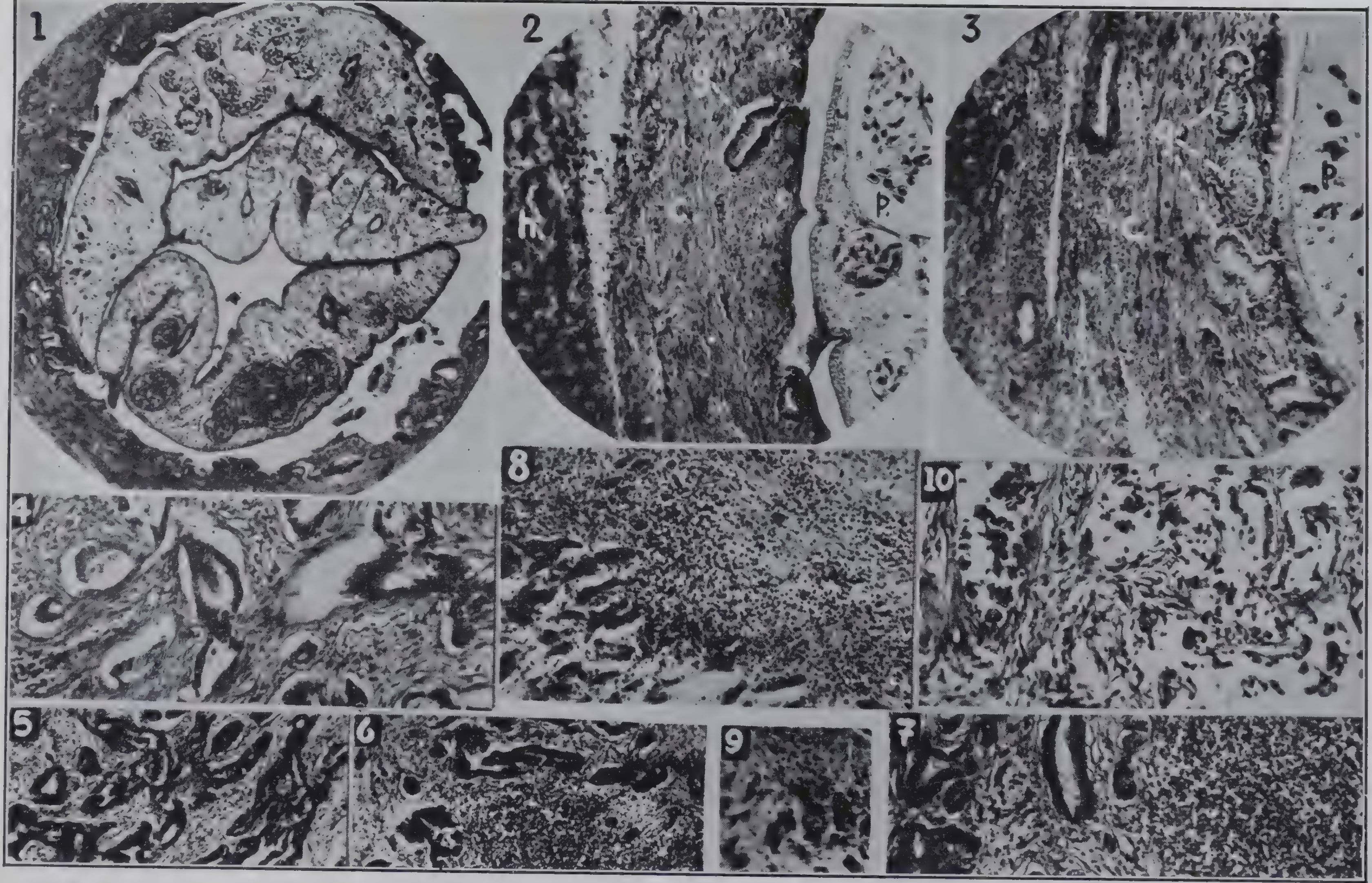


Fig. 332.—Clonorchiasis hepatica. *1*, Bile duct with 3 sections of the parasite in its lumen. *2*, Portion of *1*, higher magnification. From left to right, *h*, hepatic parenchyma; *c*, sclerotic wall of the bile duct with little, if any, epithelial hyperplasia, *g*; and *p*, body of the parasite. *3*, Another portion of the same bile duct showing *c*, canalicular sclerosis; *g*, slight epithelial hyperplasia with mild infiltration of leucocytes; and *p*, body of the parasite. *4* to *10*, Microscopic appearance of different parts of the liver and ganglia from a case of clonorchiasis and carcinoma treated by Kourí and collaborators. *4* and *5*, Carcinomatous epithelial tubules and cords in the sclerotic tissue. *6* and *7*, Ganglia of the hilum invaded by the carcinoma. *8* and *9*, Zone of necrotic hepatic cells with sclerosis and infiltration of leucocytes in areas where carcinomatous areas are still scant. *10*, Alveolar appearance caused by metastatic invasion of the carcinoma into the ganglia. (Kourí and collaborators.)

actions provoked by the parasite are important in the production of hepatic lesions and the clinical picture of the disease.

Fatty or fatty-granular degeneration of the liver in the areas around the sclerosed bile ducts, in cases of massive clonorchiasis, is probably due to the toxic action of the parasite as well as to compression of the fibrous tissue on the hepatic cells. Carrying of bacteria by Clonorchis in its migration from the intestines to the biliary and pancreatic ducts has not been completely studied.

The irritative and inflammatory action of the parasite determines the tissue alterations in the affected organs, in which more or less intense inflammatory and hyperplastic and occasionally neoplastic reactions are produced. The intensity of these reactions varies with the intensity and duration of the infection. Somatic alterations determine the symptoms which characterize the clinical picture of each particular case.

When the number of distomes is considerable, they may occasionally obliterate the bile ducts, rarely the pancreatic duct, causing retention of bile with resulting icterus, although this seldom occurs.

In cases of mild infestations, individuals may show appreciable symptoms, or symptoms may be very mild. These mild symptoms frequently are not attributed to the parasite, as in so many parasitic affections. On the other hand, in cases of moderate or massive infestation, the symptoms are variable and the seriousness of the symptoms is in direct proportion to the number of parasites harbored. The most frequent symptoms are gastrointestinal disorders, greatly increased appetite, alternating constipation and diarrhea, sensation of heaviness and pain in the epigastrium and right hypochondrium, and, upon palpation, enlargement of the liver. In the more advanced stages, continuous diarrhea may appear, with bloody stools, epistaxis, icterus, edema of the lower extremities, and splenomegaly. Reflex and toxic disorders may appear, such as vomiting, convulsions, paralysis, hemeralopia, palpitation, tachycardia, vertigo, and mental depression. In the final stages of massive infestations, the patients become anemic and cachectic before death.

CLINICAL FORMS OF CLONORCHIASIS

Since these symptoms are not all present at the same time in the patient, LeDantec has divided them into the following clinical forms:

1. **Malignant or Pernicious Hepatic Colic.**—This form begins abruptly as a hepatic colic attack. The patient experiences violent pain in the right hypochondrium and in the epigastrium. The pain is accompanied at first by vomiting of food, later by vomiting of bile; temperature is elevated, icterus appears, and the pulse is slow and thready. After 2 or 3 days the fever is replaced by hypothermia and the patient falls into a coma. With each attack the symptoms increase until eventual death occurs.

2. **Peritoneal Form.**—The patient shows tight abdomen, diffuse pain upon pressure, without regional localizations, with tympanism, muscle guard, hiccups, bradycardia or irregular pulse, and vomiting.

3. **Angiocholitic Form.**—The dominant symptom is intermittent fever of irregular type, not influenced by quinine. A large and painful liver is found upon palpation. The intermittent fever suggests malaria and the clonorchiasis hepatica may pass undiagnosed.

4. **Acute Congestion of the Liver.**—After many attacks of diarrhea, the patient has a sensation of heaviness in the region of the liver, substituted by moments of painful crises. There is a subicteric cast. The liver is enlarged and painful upon palpation.

5. **Biliary Hemoglobinuric Form.**—This form was described by Leray and Nogué and denied by Gaide. Gaide estimated that there is no true relationship between the existence of the Clonorchis and the appearance of symptoms of hemoglobinuric biliary fever. However, when the individual harbors numerous trematodes, the disease becomes worse and almost always terminates fatally.

DIAGNOSIS

In cases of digestive and hepatic disturbances, with or without fever, and with eosinophilia, one should always keep in mind the possibility of clonorchiasis if the patient comes from the Far East. Symptoms or clinical pictures may simulate those of malaria, bilioseptic fever, cholecystitis, hepatic colic, and jaundice. The diagnosis must be verified by microscopic examination of the feces and of bile obtained by duodenal intubation.

The eggs are very small and may easily escape detection in the stool, especially in thick preparations. Telemann's concentration method is excellent. The technic described by Kourí for the parasitologic examination of bile in fascioliasis hepatica may also be used in the diagnosis of clonorchiasis.

TREATMENT

The drug most commonly used in the treatment of clonorchiasis is gentian violet; then sodium antimony tartrate.

Malachite green, Nile blue sulfate, and gentian violet are given orally in 5 cg. tablets, 4 tablets daily, before meals, for 30 consecutive days. According to Kawai, the efficacy of this dye, administered orally, is in direct ratio to the doses administered and in inverse ratio to the number of harbored parasites. In cases of recent infestation, the drug is usually curative. In old cases it reduces the number of parasites but does not lead to complete cure.

The drug can also be used intravenously in the form indicated in the treatment of strongyloidiasis. Reduction of the number of parasites in the bile ducts can also be attained by intravenous injections of the antimony salt solutions (Chattuck), particularly sodium antimony tartrate, which is used also in the treatment of schistosomiasis. On the other hand, Otto and Chan Ching, in 1935, seem to have had good results with the intravenous administration of gold salts.

PROPHYLAXIS

The public should be warned against eating raw or incompletely cooked fish in endemic regions. Although there are about 15,000 Chinese in Cuba, 40 per cent of whom are parasitized by this worm, there is very little danger of spread of the disease because of the absence in that locality of the species of fish and snails which can act as intermediate hosts. In addition to this, Cubans do not eat raw or incompletely cooked fish.

It is difficult to control dissemination of the eggs in endemic areas because certain domestic and wild carnivorous animals act as agents of infestation. To date, these agents have not appeared in Cuba, despite the long period of time during which the Chinese have emigrated to Cuba and the high percentage of infected Chinese, who probably deposit the eggs of the parasite on the soil It may be that the eggs of the parasite are not viable in the dog.

In clonorchiasis, as well as in diphyllobothriasis, sewage should not flow into rivers and lakes unless previously decanted, filtered, or disinfected, since, if this is not done, snails and fishes, which serve as intermediate hosts in the development of the parasite in endemic zones, will be infested. Ammonium sulfate has been recommended in endemic areas for disinfection of the excreta.

For campaigns directed against mollusks, drainage and the use of copper sulfate are suggested. As with diphyllobothriasis, frozen or dried fish can probably carry the infection to other places from endemic areas (Binford).

2. Opisthorchiasis

(Disease Caused by *Opisthorchis Felineus,* the Cat Liver Fluke)

HISTORY

The first human cases were reported in Tomsk, Siberia, by Winogradoff in 1892.

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

Opisthorchis felineus is found in dogs and cats in central and eastern Europe and in Siberia. In the highly endemic regions of East Prussia, Poland, and Siberia, it is also found as a human parasite. Cases have been reported in the Philippines, Japan, French Indo China, but it is not endemic in those regions where *C. sinensis* abounds.

CAUSATIVE AGENT

Opisthorchis Felineus (Rivolta 1884) Blanchard 1895

Synonyms.—*Distoma conus* Gurlt 1831, *nec* Creplin 1825; *Distoma lanceolatum felis cati* von Siebold 1836; *Distoma felineum* Rivolta 1884; *Distoma lanceolatum canis familiaris* van Tright 1889; *Distoma sibiricum* Winogradoff 1892; *Distoma winogradoffi* Jaksch 1897; *Opisthorchis tenuicollis* (Rudolphi 1819) de Ejmont 1937.

The *adult parasite* is lanceolate, the anterior extremity being narrow and the posterior extremity rounded. It is 7 to 12 by 2 to 3 mm., and narrow. The living specimens are reddish or reddish-orange. Spines are visible only in young, sexually immature specimens. The ventral sucker is about 250 microns in diameter and is found in the anterior fifth of the body. The oral sucker has the same dimensions as the ventral; it is subterminal and is directed toward the ventral surface.

For further details, see Gradwohl and Kourí (1948).

Eggs are ovoid, about 30 by 11 microns. When the eggs are laid, the miracidia are completely developed.

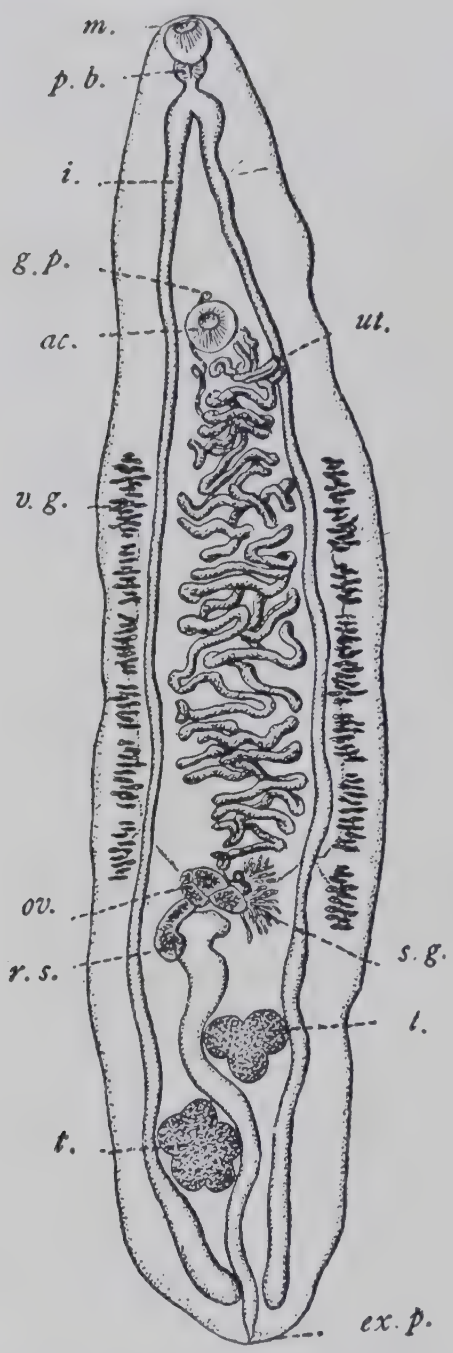


Fig. 333.—*Opisthorchis felineus* from a cat. *m.*, mouth; *p.b.*, pharynx; *i*, gut; *g.p.*, penital pore; *ac*, ventral sucker; *ut*, uterus; *v.g.*, vitellarium; *ov*, ovary; *s.g.*, shell gland; *r.s.*, receptaculum seminis; *t*, testes; *ex. p.*, excretory pore. (After Stiles and Hassall.) (From Fantham, Stephens, and Theobald: The Animal Parasites of Man, Bale, Sons and Danielson, Ltd., London.)

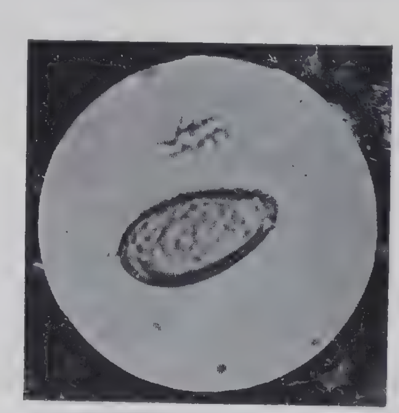


Fig. 334.—Egg of *Opisthorchis felineus* (×1000).

Life Cycle

The miracidium does not leave the egg in the water. The egg must be ingested by the intermediate host before this takes place. The intermediate host is *Bulimus tentaculata,* within which, near the region of the rectum, the sporocysts develop. After 1 month the rediae leave the sporocysts and migrate toward the digestive gland, where the cercariae are formed. The cercariae leave the rediae before their complete development (Vogel). Approximately 2 months after the snail is infected, the cercariae begin to leave. These cercariae adhere to the scales of the second intermediate host, the fish. They lose their tails and penetrate into the muscles of the host, encysting after 24 hours.

According to Ciurea, the following species of fish of the family Cyprinidae are parasitized in nature: *Idus melanothus, Tinca tinca, Cyprinus carpio, Barbus barbus, Abramis brama, Blicca björkna, Leuciscus rutilus,* and *Scardinius erythophthalmus.* The first 2 species are most frequently infected.

The cercariae, encysted in the muscles of the fish, require about 6 weeks to mature. When the definitive host ingests raw or partially cooked fish, the metacercariae leave the cyst in the stomach of the host, pass to the duodenum, and go rapidly to the distal bile passages where they adhere to the biliary epithelium and grow to the adult stage in 3 to 4 weeks.

Infection with *O. felineus* is the result of eating raw or partially cooked fish infested with the metacercariae.

PATHOLOGY, CLINICAL SYMPTOMS, AND TREATMENT

Pathology, clinical symptoms, and treatment are similar to those of clonorchiasis.

PROPHYLAXIS

Prophylaxis consists in not eating raw or insufficiently cooked fish.

3. Human Fascioliasis Hepatica

(Disease Caused by *Fasciola Hepatica,* the Sheep Liver Fluke)

Synonyms.—Sheep liver rot, fascioliasis, distomatosis hepatica.

HISTORY

The first known parasitic trematode, the *Fasciola hepatica,* was discovered by Jehan de Brie in 1379. In 1760 Pallas found it in man for the first time. In 1831 Kreplin discovered the miracidium. In 1831 Leuckart and Thomas described the life cycle, for the first time, in a digenetic trematode. In July, 1931, in Cuba, Kourí, Arenas, and Basnuevo found the first autochthonous case of human distomatosis hepatica. In May, 1932, these authors reported their investigations in a monograph entitled "La Distomatosis Hepática en Cuba," submitting the first 7 cases in human beings as well as a description of the specific action of emetine in the treatment of this disease.

There have been 100 cases reported in Cuba, probably more than one third the total cases reported in medical literature, which is approximately 150.

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

This is a cosmopolitan parasite, particularly abundant in those regions where domestic cattle and sheep are bred and where are found certain snails which serve as intermediate hosts.

It has been found in America: Puerto Rico, Cuba, Venezuela, Argentina, and Chile: in Europe: Greece, Corsica, Italy, Romania, Hungary, France, U.S.S.R., and Scotland; in Asia: China, Turkestan, Syria, Turkey; in Africa: Algeria, French Somaliland; in Australia: Queensland. In Cuba it is found in all the provinces, but is more frequent in the west.

CAUSATIVE AGENTS

Fascioliasis hepatica is caused principally by *Fasciola hepatica* and also *F. gigantica.*

Fasciola Hepatica Linnaeus, 1758

Synonyms.—*Distoma hepaticum* Linnaeus 1758; *Distomum hepaticum* Retzius *Planaria latiuscula* Goeze 1782; *Cladocoelium hepaticum* (Linnaeus 1758) Stossich *Fasciola californica* Sinitsin 1933; *Fasciola halli* Sinitsin 1933.

Common Name.—Babosa or duela del higado in Cuba; saguaype in Argentina; g douve du foie in France; sheep liver fluke in English.

F. hepatica is quite common among cattle. It has also been found in hogs and sh Although there are no statistics regarding its distribution and frequency among the ani of Cuba, it seems to be more frequent in the western provinces, especially in Pinar del

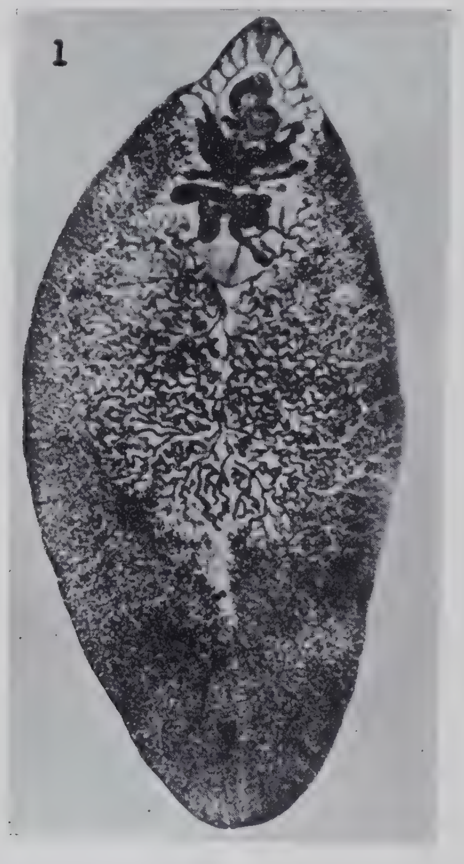


Fig. 335.—*Fasciola hepatica.* Parasite stained with hemalum-eosin. (Original of Kourí a collaborators.)

Calvó Fonseca in 1943 reported that 61.93 per cent of the 549 cattle examined by Ricar Pérez, in the abattoir of Pinar del Río, and coming from different counties of Pinar del Rí San Luis, San Juan, and Martínez, Viñales, Consolación del Norte, Consolación del Su and Guanajay, were parasitized by *F. hepatica,* although in some districts the percenta was as high as 87 per cent in the cattle.

F. hepatica infestation has become a problem of major importance in Cuba during t last few years because of the increasing number of cases in human beings. In 1931, Kou and Arenas described the first 2 autochthonous cases. To date, more than 100 cases in huma beings have been reported in Cuba, the highest number on record, one-third of the total cas reported throughout the world. (Kourí, Basnuevo, et al., 1938).

The body of the parasite is flat and leaf-shaped, varying in size, 2 to 3 by 1 to 1.5 c It has at the anterior extremity a conical prolongation on the tip of which is found the or sucker. The ventral sucker lies behind the oral sucker. It is larger than the oral sucker has a triangular opening, the base of which lies toward the anterior end. The body of the parasite narrows gradually. The posterior end is blunt.

The first two-thirds of the body has a whitish zone almost completely filled with the highly branched testes. With the exception of this clear zone, the body of the parasite is gray, the color imparted by the vitelline glands. These glands are very numerous. At times the parasite is dark brown. This color is imparted by digested blood in the blind intestinal branches which are very numerous throughout this region. The rosette-shaped uterus is filled with eggs: it is a distinct yellowish mass continuing cephalad the clear zone described above. For further details, see Gradwohl and Kourí (1948).

The *egg* of *F. hepatica* is one of the largest helminthic eggs of importance in medicine. It is ovoid, about 150 by 80 microns. It has a yellow covering or shell with a relatively small operculum. The contents consist of a fertilized ovule, often near one of the poles, surrounded by numerous polygonal vitelline cells.

Life Cycle

The eggs are excreted in the feces. In tropical countries they embryonate in the water in about 2 to 3 weeks at 25° C. Ciliated embryos which escape through the opercula swim freely in the water.

The first larval stage or miracidium was long thought to be one of the infusoria because of its ciliated epithelium. The larvae perish in 8 hours unless they enter an intermediate host. The larvae penetrate into the body of the snail and migrate toward the pulmonary tissue. Here they lose the ciliated epithelium, become spherical, and develop into the sporocysts. The sporocysts contain numerous germinal cells which proliferate to form a third larval stage or redia. These rediae escape from the sporocysts and migrate toward the hepatopancreas of the snail where they continue their asexual metamorphosis by forming daughter rediae in summer, and cercariae in winter.

Cercariae develop within the daughter rediae. The cercariae escape from the snail and swim alone in the water for a brief period of time (8 hours), after which they lose their tails. They then encyst either freely in the water or attach themselves to aquatic plants. These are the metacercariae, the infesting larvae. If they are ingested by one of the definitive hosts of the parasite they reach the intestine, their covering is dissolved, and each liberates a young or adolescent distome. These bore through the intestinal wall, reach the peritoneum, and migrate toward the liver. Here they penetrate Glisson's capsule and the parenchyma of the liver and finally gain access to the bile ducts where they grow into adult forms in 3 months. The adult parasites lay eggs which enter the duodenum with the bile and eventually pass from the body with the feces; thus, a new cycle begins. Occasionally, through the portal vein or the lymphatics, they enter the liver and right heart, thence the lungs and left ventricle, to become erratically localized.

The intermediate hosts of *F. hepatica* are those gastropods with lungs and which belong to the genus Lymnaea, now divided into numerous subgenera. In Europe the intermediate host is *Lymnaea truncatula*, also found in Northern Africa; in America, *L. cubensis*, which is found in Puerto Rico, Cuba, and Venezuela; and *L. modicella* which is found in Puerto Rico. *L. viatrix* is found in Argentina; *L. bulimnoides*, *L. columella*, *L. ferruginea*, and others in North America; *L. pervia* and *L. japonica*, in Japan; *L. acuminata* and *L. gedrosiana*, in India; *L. oahuensis* and *L. rubella*, in Hawaii; *L. suzuki* and *L. swinhoei*, in Formosa; *L. plicatula*, in China; *L. brazieri*, in Australia; *L. natalensis*, in South Africa; and other species, as many as 21, in different parts of the world, belonging to the subgenera Pseudosuccinea and Fossaria, and to the genera Bulinus, Galba, Succinea, Physopsis, etc. There is another gastropod, *Physa cubensis* Pfeiffer, very common in Cuba, which very probably is an intermediate host of *F. hepatica*.

PATHOLOGY

The liver of infested animals is hypertrophied, and has thick fibrous cords of a white color in contrast to the reddish-brown of the organ itself. These cords are usually found on the lower surface of the liver. They extend

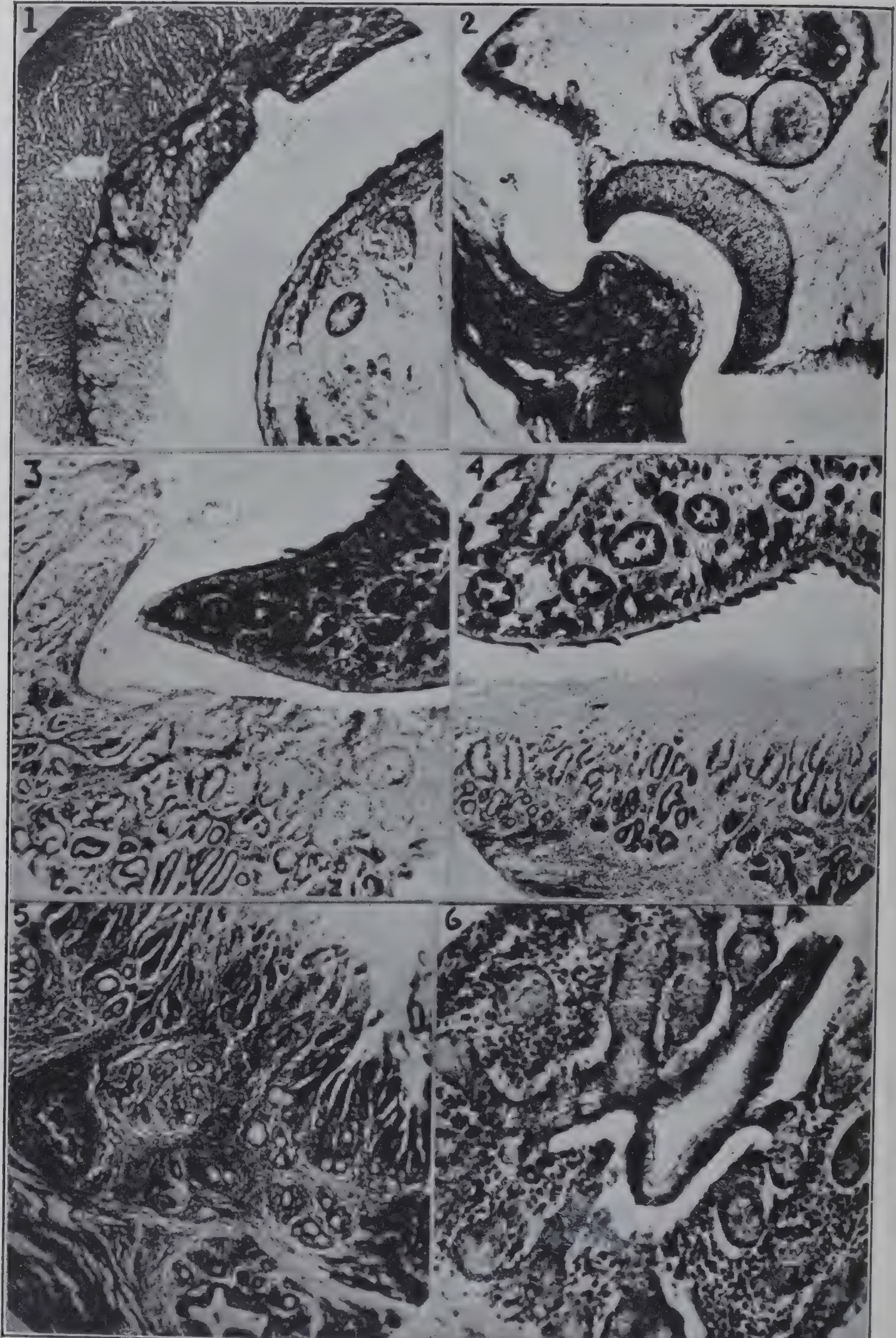


Fig. 336.—*Fasciola hepatica.* Hepatic lesions in beef. *1,* Part of hypertrophied and sclerotic bile ducts and blood vessels containing distomes. *From left to right,* hepatic lobules, wall of parasitized arteriole, section of parasite. *2, From below upward,* part of vein tissue within cavity of the ventral sucker of the distome, cirrus sac, and contents (seminal vesicle, ejaculatory duct, cirrus, and prostatic cells). *3* and *4,* Portions of hypertrophied bile duct showing sclerotic wall with adenomatous hyperplasia of the canalicular epithelium and a distome within it. *From above downward,* section of the parasite, adenomatous hyperplasia of biliary epithelium showing necrosis at its points of contact with the parasite, infiltration with cells of inflammation, lymphocytes, and eosinophiles. *5* and *6.* Adenomatous epithelial hyperplasia and marked infiltration with lymphocytes and eosinophiles. (After Kourí and Arenas.)

superficially underneath the fibrous capsule and then penetrate into the parenchyma of the organ. These cords represent hypertrophied and sclerotic bile ducts.

In macroscopic sections, the lumina of these ducts are constricted, sometimes to a very great extent, and contain a dark substance consisting of mucoid pus, eggs, the parasite, and its feces. In old and massive infestations the sandy concretions are in the form of black calcareous tubes which cover the inner surface of the hypertrophied bile ducts. When these old infestations, particularly in sheep, are of a massive character, one may also see large convoluted cavities with thick fibrous walls. These cavities are formed by intercommunication of large bile ducts which become sclerotic and dilated subsequent to peripheral blockage. The bile ducts have fibrous walls. The markedly hyperplastic epithelium takes on an adenoma-like formation; the corium is infiltrated with cells of inflammation, among which many eosinophiles and lymphocytes are present.

In massively infected animals, the hepatic lesions may lead to hypertrophic cirrhosis, portal compression with ascites, etc.

In addition to hepatic invasion, subcutaneous and muscle abscesses produced by the parasite, as well as lung, ocular, cerebral, and other localizations, were observed in Cuba.

Eosinophilic febrile symptoms were observed by Kourí and collaborators in cases showing high eosinophile counts, painful liver enlargements, and often symptoms considered as acute abdominal conditions, as well as transitory lung infiltrations, in which *F. hepatica* was discovered.

Buccopharyngeal fascioliasis: pharyngeal lesions have been observed in human beings; these were caused by the irritative action of young trematodes.

SYMPTOMS

The symptoms will be described with reference to infestation of human beings observed by Kourí et al. in Cuba. Some patients may not show any symptoms or may show very mild symptoms of gastrointestinal character, while others may present more or less serious clinical pictures. During the period of invasion there are fever, eosinophilia, acute abdominal symptoms, and hepatitis. The eggs of the parasite do not appear for about 3 months. The majority of the patients studied by Kourí and his collaborators gave a prolonged history of gastrointestinal, hepatobiliary, nervous, and general disorders—symptoms which were old and refractory to treatment and had not been associated previously with this disease. The real cause of this disease remained unknown for a long time until the parasite was discovered in the patient.

The gastrointestinal symptoms consist essentially of gastric dyspepsia, functional disorders of the colon, with alternate constipation and diarrhea.

Hepatobiliary symptoms are characterized by pain in the region of the liver and gall bladder, repeated hepatic colic with or without jaundice. Fever may be present. There are chronic cases, interrupted by recurrent acute crises, with septic symptoms with eosinophilia and leucocytosis, and intermitten apyrexia or slight rise in temperature usually in the evening. The nervous system is sometimes affected. Kourí and Valverde observed a case in which the patient had epileptiform spells. In another case, observed by Kourí, Anido, and Silveira, the digestive disturbances drove the patient, a woman, into an unbalanced mental and nervous state.

In massive infestations the general status of the host is eventually affected: the patient loses weight, becomes weak, and finally anemic. Eosinophilia usually accompanies the anemic condition even during the acute septic crisis of the disease. With recurrence of every acute septic crisis, there are high fever, marked leucocytosis, usually with eosinophilia, and polynucleosis, the intensity of which varies inversely with that of the eosinophilia.

Cases of fascioliasis hepatica infestation observed by Kourí and his collaborators had been tentatively diagnosed, before discovering their parasitic nature, as follows: cholecystitis, hepatic colic, obstructive jaundice, appendicular colic, duodenal ulcers, bilioseptic fever, acute amebic hepatitis, acute abdomen, and malaria.

DIAGNOSIS

One should always think of *F. hepatica* as a possible cause of gastrointestinal or hepatobiliary disturbances which may or may not affect the general status of the organism, of nervous or mental disorders, and of relapsing septic crisis with a previous history of digestive or hepatic disorders. This is especially true if eosinophilia is present with septic pictures, with high fever, and leucocytosis. One can determine by laboratory investigation whether the cause of the disease is parasitic or not.

For technic, refer to Chapter 72.

Eosinophilia is frequent. Intradermal, precipitin, and complement fixation tests are indirect methods which may be of some value in the diagnosis. The antigen used consists of extracts of *F. hepatica.*

Flocculation tests for the diagnosis of syphilis, particularly the Meinicke and Kahn, usually give false positive results in fascioliasis hepatica. These reactions become negative after treatment with emetine.

If it is not possible to perform these laboratory tests, the therapeutic test is used. Administer emetine hydrochloride, which will not only cure the patient, but will also establish the fact that the disease is due to infestation with *F. hepatica.* This drug is specific for *F. hepatica,* as well as for *Endamoeba histolytica* (Kourí, Arenas, and Basnuevo).

TREATMENT

Bacigalupo, of Buenos Aires, with Bengolea and Velazco Suárez, reported for the first time, in 1930, a human case of fascioliasis hepatica which had been cured with emetine hydrochloride. Kourí states, "We can affirm categorically that the problem of cure of this disease has been solved, since we discovered (1931) and later demonstrated (1932) the high fasciolicidal

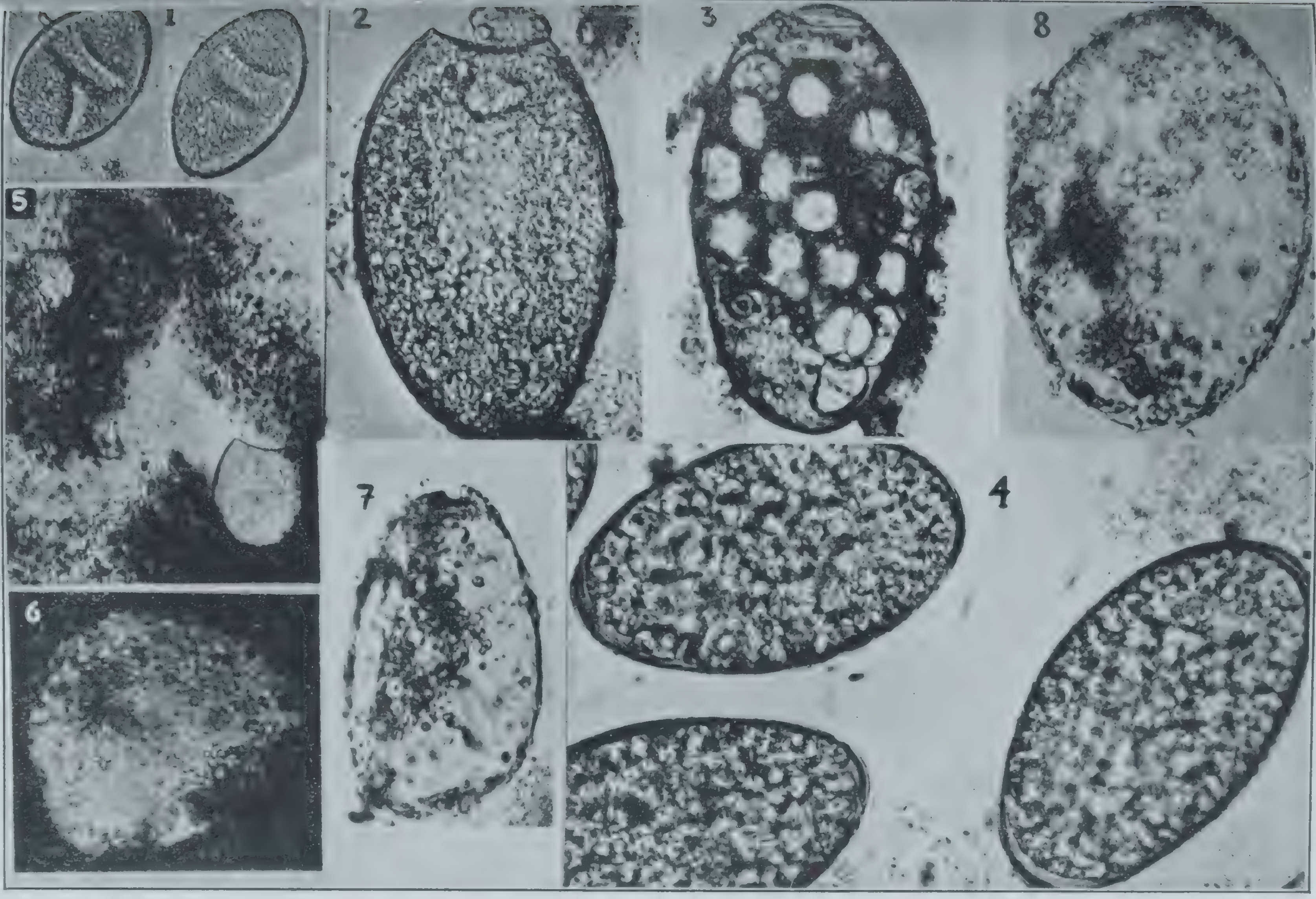


Fig. 337.—*Fasciola hepatica* eggs in human bile obtained by duodenal intubation. *1*, Eggs with transverse folds caused by pressure of the cover glass as the specimen dries. *2*, Egg with elevated operculum and granular protoplasm. *3*, Egg with spherical refractive cells and slightly elevated operculum; in freshly removed bile. *4*, Typical eggs in human bile. *5* to *8*, Eggs in various stages of atrophy and degeneration as a result of small doses of emetine hydrochloride, a powerful fasciolicide. (Original photomicrographs of Kourí, Basnuevo, and Arenas.)

action of emetine hydrochloride if given in small doses; the total dose is centigram per kilogram of body weight for adults in consecutive daily in tions of 4 centigrams each, by intramuscular route. This completely definitively cures the disease.'' (Kourí, Arenas, and Basnuevo, 1931-19

Very few cases of apparent failure by this drug in human fasciolia hepatica have been reported. These failures were usually due to the fact t the treatment was not properly controlled, or unfertilized eggs of Ascaris h been erroneously mistaken for eggs of *F. hepatica.*

Another possible source of error, which can be corrected if biliary cont is followed, is mistaking the eggs of this parasite for those of *Fasciolopsis bu* in endemic areas.

Lièvre, in 1934, prescribed intravenous injections of 1 per cent Magda rose in human fascioliasis hepatica.

PROPHYLAXIS

From a study of the life cycle of this parasite, one may work out i dividual and general prophylactic measures against the disease. The mo frequent habitual definitive hosts in Cuba are beef, sheep, and hogs. It h been recently found that rabbits are naturally infected in Cuba. Gener prophylactic measures directed against dissemination of the eggs of t parasite are consequently quite difficult. As general measures, we recommen a campaign against the intermediate host, through physical or chemical mea (desiccation, drainage, and copper sulfate solutions). These precautio may effectively decrease the number of snails.

In general, the trematodes, as well as Diphyllobothrium, have, as fir and only intermediate hosts, fresh-water invertebrates, mollusks for trematod and crustaceans for Diphyllobothrium. General prophylactic measures f both groups consist in preventing sewage from flowing into rivers and lak without previous purification or chemical destruction of the eggs, using an monium or copper sulfate.

Individual measures are: 1. Avoidance of eating raw vegetables comin from infested areas. The most frequently contaminated vegetables are lettu and water cress, especially the latter, because it grows in water. These tw vegetables are usually eaten raw in salads. 2. Since water might contain met cercariae, it should always be filtered or boiled.

References

Gradwohl, R. B. H., and Kourí, Pedro: 1948. Clinical Laboratory Methods and Diagnos ed. 4, Vol. III, Parasitology and Tropical Medicine, St. Louis, The C. V. Mosb Company.

Kourí, Pedro: 1948. Diagnóstico, epidemiología y profilaxis de la fascioliasis hepáti humana en Cuba; síndrome eosinofílico febril, Rev. Kuba 4: 63-67, March; 77-8 April-May.

Kourí, Pedro, and Basnuevo, José G.: 1949. Lecciones de Parasitologia y Medicin Tropical, ed. 3, Havana, Cuba.

Kourí, Pedro, Basnuevo, José G., and Collaborators: 1938. Transactions of the Secti on Parasitology of the VII Congress of the Pan-American Medical Association.

CHAPTER 44

FASCIOLIASIS HEPATICA IN CHILDREN

ANTONIO SELLEK

Fascioliasis hepatica is frequently found in cattle, sheep, goats, and hogs. See Chapter 43.

The disease is extremely rare in children, only 3 cases having been reported in the entire world in the past 20 years. One of these cases was observed at the Municipal Children's Hospital in Havana by Vazquez Pausa, Sellek, Inclán, and García Vázquez (1943) during 200,000 coprologic examinations on 150,000 children. Carani (1936) and Bürgi (1938) saw the disease in a 4-year-old boy, and García Hernández (Matanzas, Cuba, 1946) reported the disease in an adolescent.

The adult parasite, eggs, and life cycle are described in Chapter 43 and will not be repeated here.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

There are no recognizably specific symptomatic manifestations of infestation by *Fasciola hepatica* because the symptoms are variable. Localization of the flukes in the gall bladder and ducts causes hepatic lesions by mechanical effect: hepatitis and cholecystitis, secondary bacterial infection, and even cirrhosis. Syndromes which may be manifest are: hepatic and biliary colic, epigastric pain, acute febrile icterus, and pseudotyphoidal forms—loss in weight, dyspepsia, and intestinal disturbances such as diarrhea alternating with constipation—and even appendicitis.

The clinical manifestations of the disease are often confused with other pathologic processes. Reports are found in the literature of surgical treatment because of erroneous diagnosis; also, calculous cholecystitis as a result of conditions due to distomes has been found at operation, the flukes being rolled into a ball in the gall bladder and ducts.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Most authors note that diagnosis is made by finding a few eggs in the fecal material and a large quantity of eggs in the bile. The ordinary enrichment methods give rather mediocre or even negative results. Best results are obtained by centrifuging diluted excreta or by letting the material sediment in a conical glass tube.

Blood eosinophilia, especially the persistent form, is considered of great importance in diagnosis. When septic complications are present, polynucleosis and leucocytosis are found and the eosinophiles generally do not decrease.

This fact is of considerable clinical value in considering the possible existen of the disease. With a decided febrile setting, eosinophilias of 15, 35, and per cent have been observed.

Cutaneous allergic tests as well as complement fixation tests in infecti by *Fasciola hepatica* have been of some use in differentiating the disease.

Attention has been called to the possible positivity of the flocculation te for syphilis (Kahn, Meinicke). This test is positive before treatment wit emetine is begun, later returning to normal, and becoming negative afte completion of treatment. We have not been able to confirm these observation Because of this, we suspect, in these cases, a possible coexisting syphilis whic might have been reactivated, perhaps by infestation with *F. hepatica.*

TREATMENT

Of the numerous medicaments proposed for treatment of human distomatosis by *F. hepatica,* all have been found wanting except emetine hydrochloride, the heroic drug in these cases. The action of emetine hydrochloride upon human infestation by *F. hepatica* is remarkable. To Kourí and his school is due the credit for indicating its exact, precise, and typical action.

In one of the author's cases reported with Vazquez Pausa, Inclán, and García Vázquez (1943) of a 9-year-old boy weighing 19 kilograms, accustomed to eating raw lettuce and water cress, cure was effected by using a dose of 2 centigrams of emetine daily for 6 days, then the same dose every other day 6 more times. A total of 24 centigrams was injected. Eighteen days after termination of the treatment, biliary intubation and examination of the feces were carried out. Absence of eggs of *F. hepatica* was noted in both examinations. The digestive disturbance which had been characterized by constipation and diarrhea disappeared. Eight months after treatment, examination of the bile was negative. The result of treatment in this case was a rapid, definitive cure which has persisted to the present time.

In the case reported by García Hernández (Ceiba Mocha, Matanzas, 1946), a 14-year-old adolescent weighing 65 pounds, results were obtained by use of intramuscular injections of a total of 21 centigrams of emetine hydrochloride in daily doses of 3 centigrams.

PROPHYLAXIS

See Chapter 43 for a discussion of prophylaxis in fascioliasis hepatica.

References

Arata, P., and Tey, A.: 1939. Contribución a la divulgación del conocimiento de la existencia en nuestro medio de la distomatosis hepática humana; su diagnóstico, Hospital, Rio de Janeiro **15:** 1195-1199.

Bacigalupo, J.: 1934. Distomatosis por fasciola hepática. Su ciclo evolutivo en la República Argentina, Imp. López.

Bacigalupo, J.: 1942. An. Fac. de Med. de Montevideo **4:** 125.

Bacigalupo, J.: 1936. Sobre la presencia accidental de huevos de helmintos en las materias fecales humanas, Rev. de med. trop. y parasitol., bacteriol., clin. y lab. **2:** 267.

Bacigalupo, J.: 1938. Fasciola hepática. Su ciclo evolutivo, An. Acad. de cien. méd. Físicas y Naturales de la Habana **74:** 431.

Bacigalupo, J.: 1937. Distomatosis por fasciola hepática, Arch. argent. de enferm. d. ap. digest. y de la nutrición 3: 151.

Bacigalupo, J., Bengolea, A. J., and Velasco Suárez, C.: Gongreso de 1930. Algunas consideraciones biológicas sobre distomatosis por fasciola hepática en el hombre, Arch. Soc. de biol. de Montevideo 5: 1211.

Bacigalupo, J., Zabaleta, D. E., and Laurito, J. O.: 1943. Estudio a propósito de un caso de parasitismo errático en el hombre por Fasciola hepática, Semana méd. 1: 5-9.

Basnuevo, J. G., and Femoselle Bacardí, J.: 1934. Poder fasciolicida del clorhidrato de emetina, Crón. méd. quir. de la Habana 60: 511.

Biggart, J. H.: 1937. Infestación humana con fasciola hepática, J. Path. & Bact. 44: 488-489.

Brinkmann, J.: 1941. Cólico biliar debido a fasciola hepática, Semana méd. 1: 159-161.

Brumpt, E., Velaźquez, J., Ucroz, T., and Brumpt, L. C.: 1940. Découverte d l'hôte intermédiaire, Limnaea bogotensis Pilsbry, de la grande douve, Fasciola hepatica, en Colombie, Ann. de parasitol. 17: 563-579.

Burgi, K.: 1938. Ein Fall von Leberdistomatose bei einem 4 jährigen Kinde (Fasciola hepatica), Schweiz. med. Wchnschr. 68: 1274-1277, 1938.

Cames, O. J.: 1940. Distomatosis por fasciola hepática, Bol. Soc. de cir. de Rosario 7: 169.

Carani, U.: 1936. Un caso di distomatosi da fasciola epatica in un bambino di 4 anni, Clin. pediat. 18: 311-330.

Castex, M. R., and Greenway, D.: 1937. Distomatosis hepática con ejemplar errático eliminado por la uretra, Bol. Acad. nac. de med. de Buenos Aires, pp. 461-464.

Delvalle, D., and Donovan, R.: 1929. Síndrome de cólico hepático provocado por la fasciola hepática, Arch. argent. de enferm. ap. digest. y de la nutrición 4: 697.

Etchechury, J.: 1935. Distomatosis por Fasciola hepática, Arch. urug. de med., cir. y especialid 6: 302-308.

Flores Lopez, R.: 1937. Distomatosis hepática. Reporte preliminar, Rev. de Gastroenterol. de México 2: 401-408.

García Hernández, R.: 1946. Fasciola hepática, Kuba 2: 36-38.

Hernández, Aurelio: 1936. Decimo sexto caso cubano de fasciolosis hepática humana. Rev. de parasitol., clin. y lab. 2: 753-760.

Kawana, H.: 1940. Study on Development of Excretory System of Fasciola Hepatica L., With Special Reference to Its First Intermediate Host, Central China, J. Shanghai Sc. Inst. 5: 13-34.

Kourí, P.: 1935. Técnica para el examen de la bilis obtenida por intubación duodenal, en el diagnóstico de certeza y en el control terapéutico de la fasciolosis hepática, Arch. de med. int. 1: 297-309.

Kourí, P., and Arenas, R.: 1932. La distomatosis hepática en Cuba, Monografía. Ed. Cultural, Habana, Cuba May 7.

Kourí, P., and Arenas, R.: 1932. Acción específica de la emetina contra la Fasciola hepática. El tubaje duodenal como diagnostico y control de tratamiento, Vida nueva 29: 231-261.

Kourí, P., and Basnuevo, J. G.: 1933. Profilaxis de la Distomatosis por Fasciola hepática, Vida nueva 32: 214.

Kourí, P., and Basnuevo, J. G.: 1933. Importancia del tubaje duodenal en parasitología, Rev. de med. y cir. Habana 38: 517-545.

Kourí, P., and Basneuvo, J. G.: 1946. Lecciones de parasitología y medicina tropical: Fasciola hepática, Kuba 2: 2-22.

Kourí, P., Basnuevo, J. G., and Arenas, R.: 1934. Una nueva aplicación de la emetina en parasitología, Vida nueva 33: 77-80.

ourí, P., Basnuevo, J. G., and Drake, T.: 1935. Un caso más de fasciolosis hepática humana adquirida en Cuba; curación con el clorhidrato de emetina, Rev. de parasitol., clín. y lab. 1: 134-150.

ourí, P., Basnuevo, J. G., and Sotolongo, F.: Lecciones de Parasitología y Medicina Tropical, Editorial Profilaxis, Habana, Cuba.

ourí, P., Basnuevo, J. G., Sotolongo, F., and Anido, V.: 1938. Estado actual de la distomatosis hepática en Cuba; su diagnóstico y tratamiento, Rev. de med. trop. y parasitol., bacteriol., clin. y lab. 4: 185-202.

ourí, P., and Valverde, A.: 1935. Nuevo caso cubano de fasciolosis hepática humana, Rev. de parasitol., clin. y lab. 1: 1-15.

nedei, A., and Roselli del Turco, L.: 1934. Il primo caso nell'uomo metastasi cerebrale di fasciola hepatica in soggetto osservato in Italia. Considerazioni generali sulla distomatosi umana da Fasciola, Riv. di clin. med. 35: 465-498.

azzoti, L.: 1941. Sobre la presencia de huevecillos de Fasciola hepatica en los extractos bilaires medicinales; su significación en el diagnóstico coprológico, Rev. d. Inst. salub. y enferm. trop. 2: 355-361.

Ortiz, P. N.: 1935. Hepatic Distomatosis Produced by Fasciola Hepatica, J. Mt. Si Hosp. **1:** 246-250.

Perez Vigueras, I., and Moreno Bonnella, A.: 1938. Fasciola hepatica en Cuba (especial referencia a su propagación y profilaxis), Rev. de med. y cir. Habana 4 523-553.

Roubier, C., Morenas, L., and Lavabre, P.: 1937. Distomatose hépatique a forme pseu typhique, Lyon méd. **160:** 109-119.

Stieffel, R., and Chatron, M.: 1934. A propos d'un cas de distomatose humaine a Fascio hepatica, Prat. méd. franç. **15:** 31-38.

Trawinsky, A.: 1937. Ueber Nachweis der Leberfäule mittels der Präzipitationsmethod Zentralbl. f. Bakt. **139:** 90-95.

Unanue, E., and Leon, F.: 1941. Dos casos de Fasciola hepática, Rev. d med. trop. parasitol., bacteriol., clín. y lab. **7:** 3-4.

Vazquez Pause, A., Sellek, A., Inclán, A., and García Vázquez, M.: 1943. Fascio hepática, Reporte del primer caso observado en Cuba en un niño, Arch. d. med. in **12:** 163-170.

Wagner, O.: 1935. Alergia cutánea y reacción de fijación de complemento en las infec ciones a tremátodos, Ztschr. f. Immunitätsforsch. u. exper. Therap. **84:** 225.

CHAPTER 45

SCHISTOSOMIASIS JAPONICA

FREDERIK B. BANG

INTRODUCTION

Schistosomiasis japonica, or infection by the trematode *Schistosoma aponicum,* is an extremely common disease in a large circumscribed area of he Orient. The economic effect of this preventable infestation in endemic reas is incalculable, and it represents one of the chief causes of mortality in ll age groups in these areas. Exact figures are impossible to obtain, but in noderately endemic areas (Kofu, Japan) as much as 5 per cent of the total opulation may be under treatment during the year. In hyperendemic areas uch as that on Leyte, Philippine Islands, approximately 10 per cent of the hildren have well-developed cirrhosis and about 80 per cent have hard enarged livers.

It has been recognized as a disease entity in Japan for some time and has een called *Katayama disease,* after the name of a prefecture where it was articularly prevalent. The worm itself was first recovered from a human utopsy by Fujinami in 1904.

LIFE CYCLE OF SCHISTOSOMA JAPONICUM

Schistosoma japonicum is parasitic in a great many mammals including man. It inhabits rticularly the mesenteric blood vessels. The mature males measure 5 to 26 mm. by out 0.5 mm. in diameter; the females are sometimes shorter than the male, later longer ort, 1921). The female has 100 to 200 eggs in the uterus at one time, and these are laid batches of 10 to 100 in the intestinal wall of the host, particularly in the submucosa d the mucosa. By means of destructive secretions, the eggs work their way through to e lumen where they are discharged with the feces, frequently in a blob of bloody ucus. During transit through the mucosa, the egg develops into a mature miracidium hich hatches from its shell and swims free after coming in contact with water. This iracidium gains entrance into an intermediate host, a small snail, within 24 hours or dies.

After a period of development of 5 to 7 weeks in the snail, cercariae burst from a orocyst which has developed in the snail's liver and swim free in the water. This stage infectious for almost all, if not all, mammals and in most of them is capable of develop- g through the full cycle. Dogs, carabao, pigs, horses, and sheep are all capable of car- ing the worm and excreting the eggs.

During penetration of the skin the cercariae lose their tails, change their shapes, and sappear into the systemic circulation. In experimental infections of the rabbit, large umbers may be found in the lungs on the second and third day and appear in the mesen- ric vessels and liver on the third day. They mature and mate in the small hepatic dicles and in about 4 weeks migrate to the smaller veins draining the large and small in- stine and appendix (Faust and Meleney, 1924). Here they remain for an unknown period years, depositing eggs in batches in the submucosa and mucosa, and perhaps also directly to the blood stream whence they are swept to the liver.

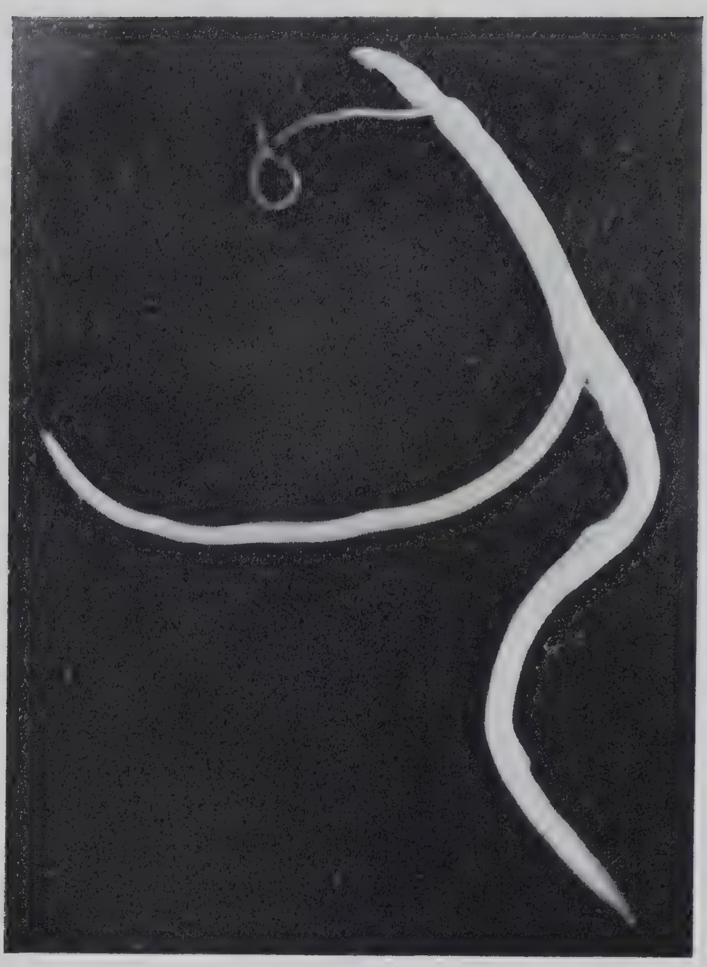


Fig. 338.—Adult male and female *Schistosoma japonicum.* (Courtesy of Army Medical Museum.)

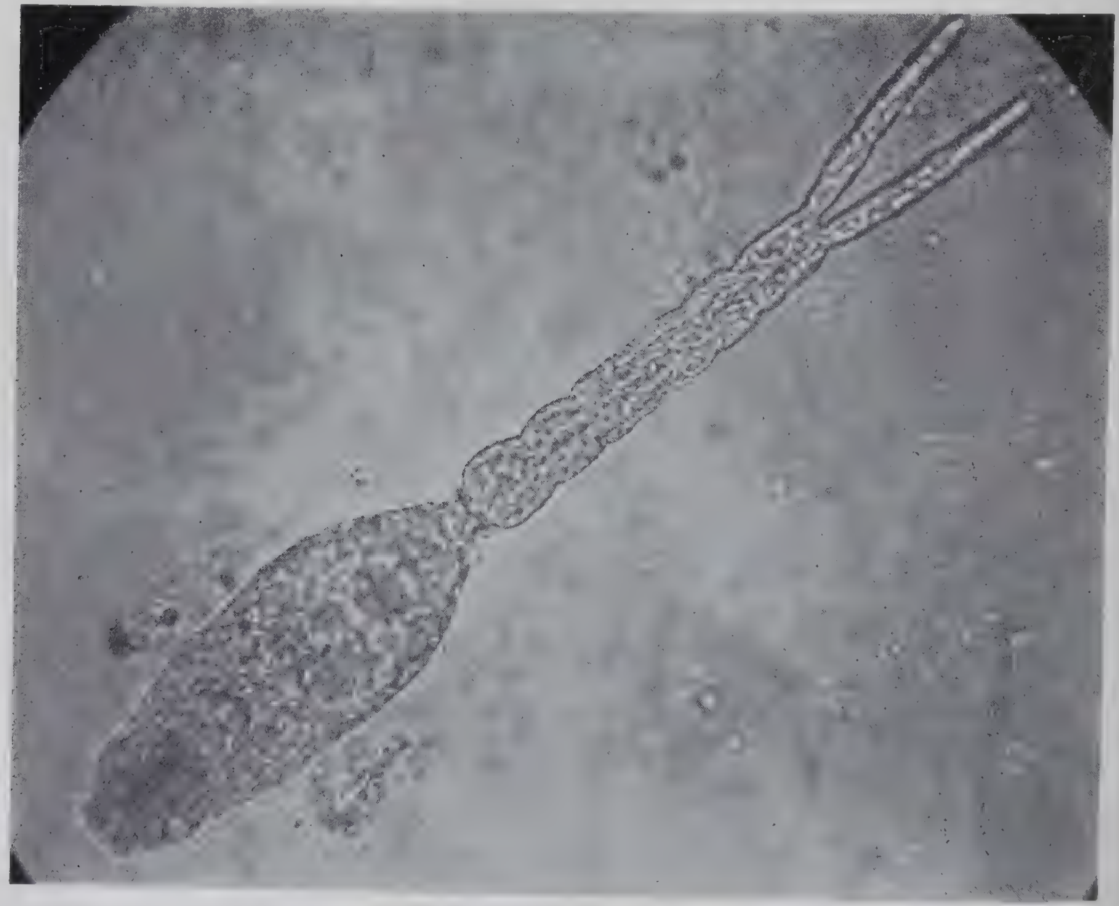


Fig. 339.—Cercaria of *Schistosoma japonicum.* (Courtesy of Army Medical Museum.)

Aberrant worms have been found in the right auricle of the heart and in the inferior vena cava in experimental infections (Africa and Garcia, 1941; Krakower, Hoffman, Axtmayer, 1943), and such deviations are a likely explanation of the anomalous localizations of eggs in the brain and skin of man.

Intermediate Host

S. japonicum must spend a portion of its life resident in a small snail of the genus Oncomelania. The distribution of the 4 species of this snail, *O. quadrasi* in the Philippine Islands, *O. formosana* in Formosa, *O. nosophora* in Japan and China, and *O. hupensis* in China, appears to explain the distribution of the disease in the Orient. The intermediate host s unknown in the Celebes. This snail may easily be confused with snails incapable of carryng the disease, and identification should be confirmed by an expert.

Failure to find the host in small areas does not mean that transmission does not occur here; careful search along river banks has sometimes failed to yield the snail, yet epidemiologic evidence has clearly shown that infection took place in the river. The presence of infection in snails is easily determined by crushing them in clean water and examining them with a dissecting microscope. Typical forked-tailed cercariae may be found either within the sporocyst in the liver or swimming free in the water. These should not be confused with other rematode larvae, and careful comparison with known specimens or textbook pictures should be made.

PATHOLOGY

The eggs deposited in the tissues are the principal cause of the pathologic changes. Adult worms living free in the blood vessels provoke little tissue or cellular reaction. The recent demonstration by Vogel (1942), that the eggs have a relatively short life span (3 weeks), after which they degenerate or alcify, has made the pathogenesis of this infection more understandable. Unfortunately, much of our knowledge is derived from experimental infections, but with this as a background a fairly complete picture may be outned. The natural disease may be divided roughly into 3 stages: (1) an ncubation period of about 4 weeks, which corresponds to the development of the adult worm and its early migration, (2) the allergic or acute phase, and (3) the chronic stage which may or may not be symptomatic.

The Incubation Stage

The first stage, that of *invasion and maturation of the parasite*, is the least well understood. According to Faust and Meleney (1924), heavy cercarial infecion of a dog was accompanied 15 hours later by innumerable red, slightly raised, in-point sized spots all over the portions of the body which had been immersed. erial sections showed cercariae in the corium surrounded by a slight tissue eaction, consisting of edema, a moderately dense accumulation of wandering ells, mononuclear cells, and neutrophilic and eosinophilic polymorphonuclears. is likely that such changes are slight or absent in the human being, for very ew skin rashes or symptoms of itching were reported in the acute infections in the Philippine Islands.

Lesions produced during migration of the parasite are minimal but distinct. hey consist chiefly of hemorrhages caused by mechanical blocking of the capilries. In the lungs they are visible as early as 24 hours after exposure and ersist as late as the tenth day. On microscopic examination many young forms of *S. japonicum* are found in the arterioles and capillaries and a few fr in the alveolar spaces. There may also be a perivascular accumulation of pol morphonuclears, chiefly eosinophiles. Maturation of the worms occurs in th portal system and is unaccompanied by pathologic change except when infectio is so dense that mechanical blocking of circulation may produce necrosis of th liver cells (Faust and Meleney, 1924). Although so-called toxic effects on th kidney have also been described in massive experimental infections, such effect in the average human case are doubtful.

The Acute or Allergic Stage

The beginning of egg deposit marks the close of the usually asymptomati "incubation period" and the beginning of the acute disease. The actua mechanism of egg deposit in *S. japonicum* seems to differ from that of the 2 other schistosome infections of man. In contrast to *S. mansoni* and *S. haematobium,* the female *S. japonicum* contains at one time 100 to 200 eggs in utero and deposits them in batches of 10 to 100. Eggs all of one stage of development are found together within the capillaries and venules of the submucosa.

Development of the egg may be divided roughly into 3 stages, knowledge of which is basic to understanding the pathology. These stages are more fully described in the section on laboratory findings but may be outlined here. The immature or undeveloped egg which is deposited in the tissues develops within 10 days into the mature egg containing a motile miracidium. This egg in turn lives another 7 to 10 days and then dies. The degenerating form may either calcify or gradually disintegrate. It is difficult to differentiate the reaction of the host to the immature and mature egg. Reaction to the degenerate egg soon changes from an acute inflammatory to a chronic phagocytic foreign body reaction.

Grossly the distinctive feature of the acute reaction is the presence of scattered pinhead-sized firm abscesses which are chiefly found in the submucosa and muscularis of the intestine and throughout the liver tissue. In animals killed within a few days after the first eggs have been found in the feces, these changes may be just beginning. If the infection is heavy, nodules are also found in the lungs. Lobular pneumonia has been described in such lungs, but in these cases it is difficult to separate the effect of the concomitant treatment. Microscopically, the immediate response around freshly deposited eggs is an intense cellular infiltration of lymphocytes and polymorphonuclear leucocytes, mostly eosinophiles. These develop into tiny necrotic abscesses. Later, fibroblasts and multinucleated giant cells may enter the picture. Contiguous lesions may coalesce, forming undermining ulcers in the intestine. Older lesions become more granulomatous, and with the appearance of an increasing number of fibroblasts and giant cells, pseudotubercles are formed. After the miracidium dies, most of the cells may disappear, leaving a small fibrosed nodule, in the center of which remains a distorted shrunken egg. Küpffer cells scattered throughout the liver may contain hematin, but such cells are usually concentrated near the areas of egg deposit. This pigment histologically identical with malarial pigment, is also found in mesenteric lymph nodes and in the spleen. The eggs are frequently found in the mesenteric lymph nodes and the lungs, and occasional anomalous ones are deposited in the brain and skin. Those eggs which are deposited in the mucosa or submucosa of the gut work their way after some days into the lumen, or the tiny abscess described above may rupture and drain into the lumen. The time necessary for the eggs to reach the lumen accounts for the fact that newly laid eggs are rarely found in the feces. Breaking off of pieces of mucosa and the rupture of abscesses accounts for the presence of blobs of bloody mucus containing masses of eggs.

Each of the 3 fatal acute cases on Leyte showed characteristic yellowish miliary lesions in the large and small intestine and liver, a monocytic lobular pneumonia varying in extent, infiltrated with eosinophiles, with eggs scattered throughout the lungs (Thomas, Bracken, and Bang, 1946).

The Chronic Stage

After some weeks of fever, the acute symptoms of the disease disappear and the physical aspects become more vague. This transition to the chronic stage is not well understood, and our ideas are confused by observations made in hyperendemic areas, where residents are subject to continued heavy exposure. The picture is further confused by the fact that the duration of the natural infection is unknown, estimates varying from 2½ years to life. It is likely that immunity or at least a heightened phagocytic response to the eggs develops in the chronic cases. The fact that populations exist and multiply in these hyperendemic areas where almost all are infected is evidence enough of an acquired tolerance. Adults show a much smaller proportion of enlarged ivers than children (Bang, Hairston, Graham and Ferguson, 1946).

Experimental light infections of monkeys studied at autopsy 4 to 6 months after infection fail to show the acute allergic aspect—necrotic abscesses with heavy infiltrations of eosinophiles—but show only minimal lesions in the ntestine and a slaty discoloration of the liver. This is not due to any peculiarity of the infection in the monkey, for the yellow pinhead abscesses are clearly present in the acute phase, even with infections of 5 to 10 pairs of worms (Bang—unpublished studies).

The pathology of the chronic disease, then, may be discussed with the nderstanding that this is not a necessary sequence to the acute disease. It s probable that the chronic cases seen in hospitals are results of repeated heavy infections. Reported autopsies of cases have been too few in number to describe the distribution of lesions, and on this point one must be particularly cautious in transferring the results of animal studies to the human being. n infections of the dog, chronic granulomatous ulcers are found in both large and small intestines but are most common in the large. The intestinal wall s usually thickened by scar tissue. According to Faust and Meleney (1924), he lesions in the human colon became more common toward the rectum. Externally the omentum may be matted together and adherent to the intestine. Thickening of the intestinal wall may be great enough to form a solid tube.

Round, solid masses may extend on to the peritoneal surface. These a fibrous nodules with necrotic areas and pigmented spots from which eggs ma be obtained.

Internally, the mucosa loses its regular arrangement, "and now present an uneven surface on which are all grades of papillary projections of th epithelium from minute spots barely raised above the surface to broad, firm slightly-raised masses and pedunculated papillomata, perhaps a centimeter i length. There may be minute points of hemorrhage, where eggs or abscesse are breaking through to the surface." (Faust and Meleney, 1924.)

Microscopically the most marked change is the massive increase in fibrous tissue involving all layers but most marked in the submucosa. "Eggs are present, as before, in all layers of the wall, often in large groups. Some are still immature and seem never to have produced a reaction in the surrounding tissue. Others are in the midst of their activity and are surrounded by polymorphonuclear leucocytes. Still others have been caught in the scar tissue and have either become calcified or are surrounded by foreign-body giant cells. Some have even been invaded by giant cells, which often occupy the egg shell, as the miracidium formerly did, and may be mistaken for it." (Faust and Meleney, 1924.)

Eggs may be found singly or in groups in the thickened mesentery. The presence of eggs in the mesenteric lymph glands makes it likely that the lymphatics leading from the intestine may carry eggs from the submucosa and be surrounded by scar tissue on the way.

Thrombi of the mesenteric veins are particularly common in experimental infections of the guinea pig (Bang and Hairston, 1946). The larger vessels of the human being are less subject to blocking, but with masses of worms crawling and twisting around each other like the strands of a rope, thrombi are likely to develop. The main portal vein itself and the large branches in the liver are particularly liable. The part played by this fact in the development of the enlarged spleens of chronic cases is unknown.

Little has been added to our knowledge of the pathology of the chronic disease since Faust and Meleney, and thus they will be extensively quoted.

Liver.—

"This organ often presents a most extraordinary picture, which adequately explains its part in the production of the late symptoms of the disease. In size, it may be considerably enlarged or slightly shrunken. In our 3 cases the liver weighed 1,943, 1,485, and 1,420 grams, respectively. It is characteristic to find a hard irregular projection of the left lobe extending below the costal arch in the midline. The organ is irregular in shape, presenting nodular swellings ranging up to 3 cm. in diameter, and deep fissures and scars often extending 1 cm. into its substance. The left lobe is often proportionately larger than the right, although the hyperplasia of new liver tissue may make it appear normal in some places. The capsule may be diffusely thickened into a white fibrous coat, or the thickening may be limited to small areas. In one of our cases the entire exterior of the organ was gray and fibrous with many pock-like depressions in the thickened capsule. There are usually fibrous tags on the surface, representing old adhesions to the parietal peritoneum or adjacent intestines. The ligaments are often thickened, particularly the falciform ligament, which may contain enlarged veins for collateral drainage. The gall bladder wall may be thickened, due to its close association with the capsule of the liver and perhaps to the deposit of eggs in its wall.

"The cut surface of the liver varies in appearance with the intensity and duration of the disease. In mild cases it may be marked by only a few small scars, usually near the surface of the organ. In more severe cases there is a definite diffuse increase of fibrous tissue, somewhat coarser in distribution than in the typical 'hobnail' liver of nodular cirrhosis. Normal or fatty liver tissue between the fibrous strands suggests the persistence of considerable functional capacity in the organ. Extreme cases show massive destruction of liver tissue with replacement by scars."

"Histologically the liver in human cases shows all stages of the process of reaction to the eggs of the parasite. The predominating stage is that of repair, with the replacement of polynuclear leucocytes by mononuclears, and with the production of masses of scar tissue which may or may not be associated with recognizable portal spaces. In the scar tissue are eggs, often in large numbers. As in the intestine the tubercle formation may be definite, and the eggs may be surrounded or invaded by foreign-body giant cells. Hematin deposit is more marked than in experimental dogs. The Küpffer cells often stand out as black masses. Phagocytic cells in portal spaces are laden with small or large granules. In the 'tubercles,' especially at their periphery, such pigment-laden cells are often numerous. The liver cells themselves may be relatively normal in appearance, or they may show all degrees of fatty infiltration. This change is not at all proportional to the degree of infection and is probably only secondarily associated with the parasitic infection. Intense scarring of the organ may produce localized areas of typical chronic passive congestion, or of obstruction of bile capillaries. The liver capsule shows thickening by fibrous tissue in which may be many lymphocytes or other wandering cells, and occasionally large veins representing a collateral circulation."

Spleen.—Faust and Meleney point out the inverse relationship between the ize of the liver and spleen in their autopsies. This is borne out by surveys f children in hyperendemic areas where enlarged spleens are found in only small percentage of cases—and these late in their course—while the typical ard, enlarged livers are commonplace. Macroscopically the spleen is hard nd has a thickened capsule and firm surface when cut. Microscopic sections how the fibrous tissue basis of these changes—thickening of the trabeculae nd infiltration of the reticulum. The association of a hard, enlarged spleen, irrhosis of the liver, and anemia in the chronic progressive cases has frequently led to the confusion of these cases with Banti's syndrome (Campbell, 1936), which in itself is not a clinical or etiologic entity. It has so far not een possible to reproduce this syndrome in animals by infection with the chistosomes, presumably because a more extensive anastomosis of veins preents the increase in portal venous pressure present in human cases (Krakower, Ioffman, and Axtmayer, 1943).

Lungs.—In contrast to the acute infections, gross or microscopic lesions re uncommon. Eggs, however, are frequently found on section. These may ave either broken through the abscesses in the liver to enter the hepatic ein, and thence the heart and lungs, or have gained the same end by passage rough anastomoses in the hemorrhoidal region. The presence of eggs in the **eart** itself is similarly explained.

Lesions of the **brain** have been recognized for many years as being due collections of eggs and are most likely due to anomalous localization of the worms. A case report from the Philippines tells of finding eggs in the lung brain, kidneys, and heart, with pseudotubercle formation in the myocardiu (Africa and Santa Cruz, 1939). The remarkable thing is not the presence o these unusual lesions, but rather the fact that the worms are so highly specifi that the vast majority of them migrate to the mesenteric veins.

SYMPTOMS

The acute disease may vary from a severe intermittent febrile illness with frequent abdominal cramps but little diarrhea to asymptomatic infection The chronic disease is characterized chiefly by diarrhea or dysentery and enlargement and often subsequent shrinkage of the liver, with chronic ascites and emaciation.

The first symptom, a transient itching caused by schistosomes in man, results from the penetration of the skin by the cercariae and occurs at the most in 10 per cent of cases. It is of little diagnostic significance as there is nothing typical about it.

Incubation

There follows a latent or incubation period which corresponds to the period of development of the worm to maturity and egg laying. Clinically this period may be defined as the time interval between exposure and the first definite symptoms. In most cases it has been difficult to fix this time interval because of the continued exposure. The outbreak of the disease during the reoccupation of Leyte, Philippine Islands, in 1944, gave rise to more exact data of this nature. In a study of 73 cases, Billings et al. (1946) found an average incubation period of about 40 days, with a minimum of 25 days and a maximum of 78 days. In 12 cases where there was only a single exposure—swimming in an infested river—there was an average incubation period of 42 days, a minimum of 26 and a maximum of 58. As will be brought out in the section on laboratory diagnosis, this corresponds closely to experimental studies on light infections of monkeys and dogs.

The brevity and mildness of the symptoms of urticaria, headache, diarrhea, and fever during this period make it difficult to know whether these symptoms are related to the behavior of the worm or not.

The Acute Disease

All gradations of severity occur. During the outbreak on Leyte, where there were about 1,500 cases, they ranged from subclinical cases discovered by surveys of heavily exposed units to severe febrile cases in which death occurred within 2 months of the onset. In about 1,500 cases or more, there were 3 deaths (Thomas, Bracken, and Bang, 1946).

The onset of the acute symptoms may be abrupt, with headache, malaise, chills, feverishness, a nonproductive hacking cough, anorexia, generalized aches, abdominal cramps, and right upper quadrant pain. Less frequently seen are urticaria of varying severity, backache, and diarrhea or constipation.

Nervousness may be marked. Weight loss is extreme in cases of some weeks' duration. The stool is usually normal in appearance; flecks of bloody mucus on the surface of the stool are occasionally seen.

The course of the acute disease varies with the severity, which in turn is probably related to the intensity of the infection. Fever may last from 1 to 3 weeks. Particularly striking is the remittent saw-tooth type of curve, with a peak in the afternoon and a return to normal by morning. This afternoon peak is often accompanied by accentuated symptoms and may well be related to activity of the miracidium within the eggs. This would correspond to the cyclic behavior of the microfilaria in filariasis.

The urticaria may range from small fleeting wheals to giant patches of indolent edema which do not completely respond to Adrenalin. These allergic aspects of the acute disease were responsible for the early descriptive name *urticarial fever* which was so well described by Lambert (1910) as follows:

> ''This eruption, unlike that of most pyrexial states, is of an urticarial type. It appears on any part of the body as a small wheal which rapidly assumes a large size, attaining frequently 3 inches to 4 inches or more in diameter. These wheals are firm, white, and raised from the surface, feeling to the touch like a solid oedema, and having frequently a central pinkish area of congestion and a well marked areola. They remain 'out' for an hour or two, continuing to spread. As they disappear the central part first resumes the normal skin appearance, and areola fading last of all, so that on examination of the patient, one finds the patches in all stages of development from the early wheal as large as a sixpence to sinuous, raised, red lines, the outlines of former areas, some of which measure several inches in circumference.
>
> ''The eruption may continue to appear and fade away and reappear for a week or more. It leaves no mark nor trace behind it, and does not avoid parts of the body that it previously favoured. The patient may be practically free from it for many hours when it again makes its appearance with renewed vigour. The irritability of the rash varies considerably, but taken generally is not so annoying as that of simple urticaria. It is frequently noticed that, when the rash is well out, the patient feels better, although there may be be no remission of his fever at night. Dermatographic wheals can be elicited in many cases.
>
> ''The temperature is normal or but slightly raised in the mornings. It commences to rise about noon, and reaches its height, which is seldom above 102° F., about six in the evening, from thence gradually falling to normal, its decrudescence being accompanied usually with sweating. The presence or absence of the rash has no effect upon the temperature, *which may continue for days after all signs of the former have disappeared.*
>
> ''The urticarial rash frequently appears on the mucous membrane of the buccal cavity and also on that of the nose, in the latter position causing temporary impediment to the respiration through the nostrils, the blockage passing off to the accompaniment of a profuse discharge of watery fluid. The larynx may also share in the transient oedema, but never, so far as is known, to a dangerous extent, the slight embarrassment to respiration caused by the swollen mucosa soon passing off.''

A common and almost diagnostic symptom seen in Billings' (1946) cases was a peculiar stiffness of the neck. About ⅔ of these patients complained of pain on motion, either rotation or flexion, with soreness of the sternocleidomastoid and trapezius muscles. The stiffness lasted from 24 hours to 2 weeks. Cramping pains in the upper abdomen without diarrhea are common. In severe cases the patient may be prostrate and semicomatose with a high spiking fever.

PHYSICAL FINDINGS

In the acute stage of the disease physical findings are not remarkabl enlargement and tenderness of the liver is the most common and is often a companied by epigastric tenderness. The spleen may or may not be enlarge The significance of splenic enlargement in troops is hard to evaluate becau of the high incidence of malaria suppressed by Atabrine (Johnson and Berr 1945).

As a transient finding, scattered pulmonary infiltrations may be demon strated by x-ray (these may become extensive enough to give a miliary typ of seeding), but most cases show nothing at all.

Sigmoidoscopy in about ⅔ of the acute cases reveals scattered smal yellowish papules in the mucosa or submucosa. They are firm, about 2 mm. i size. Biopsy or scraping shows them to be tubercle-like abscesses containin eggs (Johnson and Berry, 1945).

Unusual Cases

The incidence of neurologic signs and symptoms among acute cases seems to be something under 2 per cent. The clinical picture in the early part of the disease consists chiefly of paralysis and drowsiness followed by coma and incontinence. Weakness, spasticity, exaggerated deep reflexes, a positive Hoffman or Babinski indicate pyramidal tract involvement. These signs usually improve under treatment as the temperature reaches normal (Carroll, 1946). Probably a variety of other symptoms occur, depending on the location of the eggs in the brain. We may assume that they came there by the arterial circulation or were deposited by a pair of worms residing in the sinuses of the brain, but worms have not been recovered in this location in human autopsies. Cases have been reported in which symptoms resembling acute encephalitis have been followed by hemiplegia (Carroll, 1946).

Recently a case of papular eruption of the skin in the region of the eighth intercostal nerve has been clearly established as due to deposits of eggs in this area (Fishbon, 1946).

Relapses

Relapses are worth special mention because it should be well recognized that following a course of treatment with an antimony drug, eggs may reappear in the stool—without the development of any of the original symptoms. This is the rule rather than the exception. Such a renewal of egg laying on the part of the adult worm may, as in the acute cases, cause egg deposit in the brain so that the first symptoms in some cases are those of a gradually developing tumor of the brain.

Chronic Disease

As emphasized in the section on pathology, the acute infection is not necessarily followed by the chronic disease. Indeed there are few if any cases recorded where this has occurred and where reinfection has been ruled out. Many cases are supposed to recover spontaneously. Chronic disease, the so-called *third stage*, is the picture seen particularly in hyperendemic areas where continual reinfection is common. In this stage, wasting and lassitude set in; the appetite is poor and there are attacks of dysentery with pain and tenesmus at stool and minor attacks of fever. Nosebleeds are common in children. The liver enlarges and becomes very hard with a sharp irregular edge; it is particularly palpable in the midline. The spleen later enlarges, descending as far as halfway between the umbilicus and the pubis. It is hard and not tender. These symptoms gradually increase until ascites sets in—then generalized anasarca. Severe anemia is common. Many cases in the terminal stages show severe jaundice. Carcinoma of the liver often occurs in the chronic stage, but since exact statistics are not available, it is not known how frequently it is a cause of jaundice.

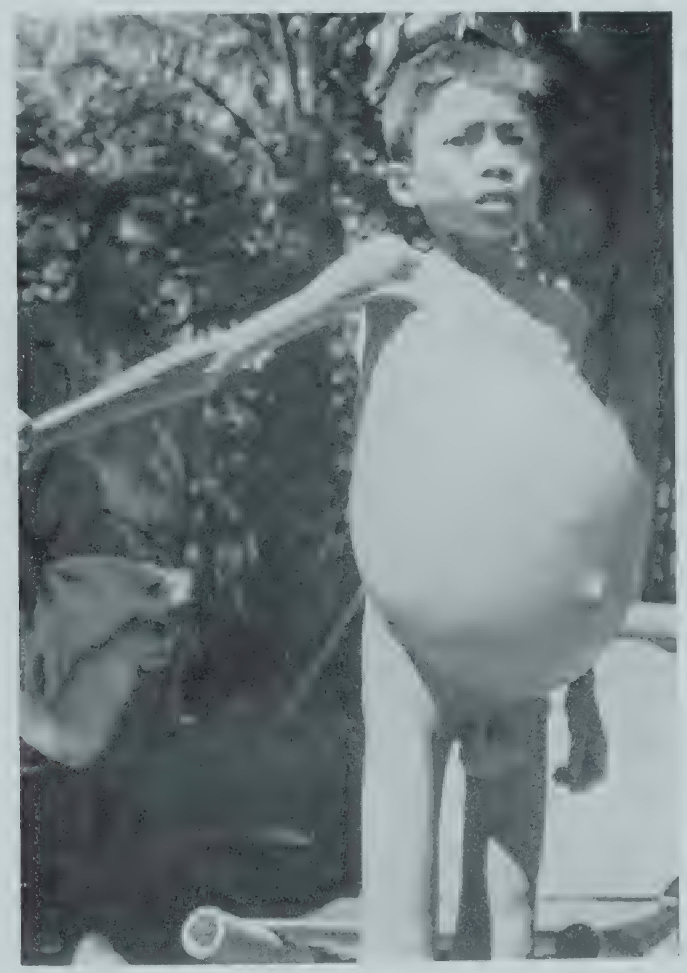


Fig. 340.—Chronic case of schistosomiasis in Philippines. (Courtesy of O. H. Graham.)

IMMUNITY

True immunity has now been demonstrated to exist in a number of helminthic infections. It is thus to be expected that it would play some role in this disease. Some mechanism for acquiring resistance or tolerance in hyperendemic areas must exist or the population could not survive. That this is related to real immunity is made likely by the reduced incidence of positive stools in adults (Ferguson, Graham, Bang, and Hairston, 1946) and by the lower percentage of enlarged livers in the adults.

In the pig and carabao a similar lowered incidence of positive stools was noted in the older animals. Experimental work by Fujinami (1916) showed that a horse which had been heavily infected and recovered was apparentl immune to reinfection. The test exposure produced an overwhelming infe tion in 2 control horses.

LABORATORY FINDINGS

As the demonstration of eggs in the stool of a suspected case is the onl sure method of diagnosis, the characteristics of the eggs will be discusse first. Vogel (1942) divided the life period of the egg into 3 different periods the immature, the mature, and the degenerate.

Diagnosis of either acute or chronic disease should be based on the presence of mature eggs (Hairston, 1945). Attempted diagnosis based on immature or degenerate eggs often leads to error, and once a false positive diagnosis has been made and treatment started, subsequent failure to find eggs does not disprove the diagnosis.

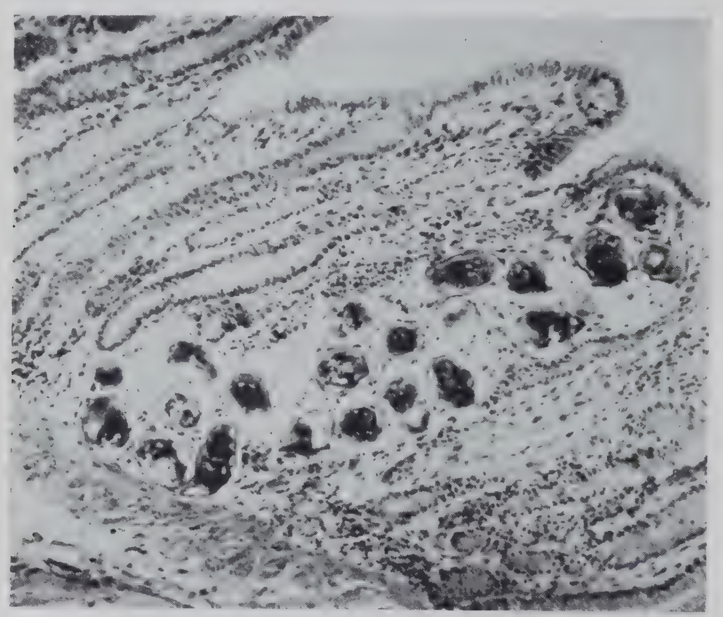


Fig. 341.—*Schistosoma japonicum* eggs in intestine. (Courtesy of Oscar Felsenfeld.)

The Mature Egg.—The mature egg is usually but not always yellowish in color and discoid oval in shape. They are usually larger than the common helminth eggs (ascaris, hookworm, etc.), varying from a minimum of 55 to 65 microns in length in young eggs to a maximum of 85 to 90 microns in mature eggs. The shell may be covered with varying amounts of detritus but is never completely obscured. Although a spine is almost always present in newly laid or immature eggs, it is usually difficult to demonstrate it in the mature egg. The characteristic feature of the schistosome egg is the miracidium contained within. A good rule to follow is to call an object a schistosome egg only when both the outline of the shell and the embryo can be seen. If the miracidium is alive, some of the following movements can be seen: (1) muscular twisting and jerking of the whole or parts of the miracidium; (2) ciliary action, particularly around the mouth but also all around the sides; and (3) the beating of the flame cells. Once recognized as mature living schistosome eggs, it is very hard to mistake them for anything else.

The Immature Egg.—The immature egg is given no diagnostic significance in this discussion because: (1) It has often been the basis of incorrect diagnosis when confused with unfertilized ascaris eggs or even plant cells. (2) Although it is the first type of egg to appear free in the stool in hyperinfected animals, studies of light infections have failed to show that it appears significantly in advance of the mature eggs (Hairston and Bang, unpublished). There are occasional cases reported in which immature eggs only were found for some days before the appearance of mature eggs (Billings, Winkenwerder, and Hunninen, 1946) but confirmed cases are rare. (3) Heavily infected individuals with severe acute symptoms have such a typical clinical history and course that a diagnosis can be made clinically, and, if necessary, treatment can be started immediately. Laboratory findings can subsequently verify the diagnosis.

Although atypical eggs should not be the basis of a diagnosis, they are of considerable importance in following the activity of the adult worms, particularly during treatment (Bang and Hairston, 1946).

The newly laid egg is clearly separated from the other immature eggs by the presence of large vacuoles in the yolk which obscure the oöcyte. This stage is very rarely seen in the feces. If found, it would indicate that the eggs had traversed little tissue before entering the lumen and might thus indicate ulceration.

The young immature egg is darker than the mature and lacks the vacuoles of the newly laid egg. The embryo is seen as a clear area in the middle of the ovum. This stage may be confused with the decorticated unfertilized egg of ascaris but may usually be differentiated by the fact that these ascaris eggs are smaller, lack a clear central area, and contain larger granules. As it grows older, the embryo takes up a larger portion of the available space, so that a stage before organization may be recognized. The embryo lacks the clear-cut outline of the developing miracidium, but most of the yolk has disappeared and the shell is filled by a blastula-like embryo. The presence of the immature egg in the stool is of significance in treatment, for it means that oviposition has occured within 10 days to 2 weeks. The disappearance of immature eggs from the stool is evidence of response to treatment (Bang and Hairston, 1946).

The Degenerate Egg.—The mature egg which has been described lives about ten days, and then if it is still caught within the tissues, the miracidium first loses its motility, then tends to shrink to one side, and the whole egg becomes black in color. Finally, the outlines of the miracidium completely disappear, leaving blackish refractile areas within. Oil drops and plant cells may mimic this last stage of disintegration which is too poorly defined to be identified with certainty. The presence of degenerate eggs in the stool is obviously of entirely different significance from that of immature ones. Degenerate eggs may continue to appear in the stool as long as 3 weeks after successful treatment has been begun. Hatched miracidia and shells from eggs may also be found (Faust, 1946).

First Appearance of Eggs

Eggs may be demonstrated in the stool shortly after the onset of the acute symptoms. According to our experience, they may be found in light experimental infections about 5 weeks after exposure. In acute moderately severe human infections they have usually been found in the first few examinations. Chronic severe cases have in the past often failed to show eggs. It is likely, however, that recent methods (Faust and Ingalls, 1946; Loughlin and Stoll, 1946) of concentrating the eggs will eliminate this difficulty.

Method of Examination of Stool

The schistosome eggs are deposited in batches in the mucosa of the large intestine, often in the sigmoid colon. Thus the stool has, to a great extent, been formed by the time the eggs, often contained within a patch of mucus, gain entrance into the lumen of the bowel. The whole stool should be taken to the laboratory and pieces of mucus searched by direct examination. Only if this fails should a concentration method be used.

For details of examination, see Chapter 72.

The detection of schistosome eggs in the stool by the hatching technic has a limited value, since only live mature eggs may be detected this way (Faust and Ingalls, 1946; Hairston, 1945). The technic is based on the fact that the miracidia, when in water of the proper pH, hatch and swim to the surface.

If a sample of feces is diluted in water, about 1 part of feces to 20 or more parts of water, placed in a bottle with a stopper in which a glass tube has been inserted, the tube filled with water, and the whole left overnight at room temperature, miracidia may frequently be found swimming at the top of the water in the tube. They may be seen with the aid of an ordinary hand lens. The temperature should be between 28° and 33° C. to obtain best hatching (Magath and Mathieson, 1946).

Blood Picture

Eosinophilia.—Acute schistosomiasis japonica is characterized by an extreme and progressive eosinophilia, so that as many as 9 to 95 per cent of the leucocytes (but averaging about 50 per cent) may be eosinophiles. The total leucocyte count may vary from 9,000 to 30,000, of which the eosinophiles comprise 6 to 95 per cent. Thus the eosinophilia does not necessarily account for the entire rise in the leucocyte count. There seems to be little correlation between the severity of the disease and the degree of eosinophilia.

Anemia in the course of the acute disease is unusual in well-nourished people but common in chronic severe cases. Its causal relationship is unknown since these cases usually have a multitude of other parasites as well as deficiencies in diet. Heavy infections with *S. japonicum,* however, may well cause anemia since the worms continually ingest red blood cells and convert them to hematin. The cirrhosis of the late stages of the disease is another cause of anemia.

Eosinophilia decreases in the chronic disease so that in the presence of the many other parasites usually found in patients in endemic areas, it loses all diagnostic significance.

Skin Tests and Complement Fixation

Most of the immunologic tests for the presence of schistosomes have been done on other species than *S. japonicum,* but since none of the tests differentiate between the various species, we may utilize some of the conclusions. Antigens are of 2 types: (1) saline extracts of adult worms and (2) alcoholic extracts of the hepatopancreatic glands of infected snails (Fairley, 1926; Minning, 1941). The latter is difficult to prepare in quantity if working in *japonica* territory since the snail host Oncomelania is so small, but large quantities of the former may be prepared from a freshly killed and exsanguinated dog or young pig. The skin test is of the immediate type and is read in 15 minutes to half an hour. Delayed reactions occur only rarely. In *S. mansoni,* the Fairley complement fixation test becomes positive late in the stage of invasion, and by the time eggs are found in the stool, 97 per cent of the cases are positive. Chronic cases are usually positive. A similar situation seems to obtain in early *S. japonicum* infections (Katzin and Most, 1946).

Practical Value in Schistosomiasis Japonica.—The claim has been made that there are cases of infestation by *S. japonicum* in which eggs are not found in the stool. Immunologic methods would be of value in determining the presence or absence of infection. Such claims will have to be re-evaluated in the light of recent methods of concentration of the eggs, particularly since one pair of *S. japonicum* lays such large numbers of eggs.

The value of the test in following the effect of treatment may, however, be another problem, for it is now well recognized that although the eggs may disappear from the stool, the worms may survive and later reinitiate egg laying. Furthermore, the female worm seems to be more susceptible to treatment, so that many cases may carry residual infections of males after treatment. In diagnosis, however, there is no practical substitute for the finding of typical eggs, nor, after treatment, for the *continued* absence of eggs.

TREATMENT

Drugs of the trivalent antimony series have found widespread use since the introduction of tartar emetic and later Fuadin in the treatment of *S. haematobium* in Egypt. Accurate comparisons of the relative efficacy of the many antimony compounds now available have not been made. Such comparisons are particularly difficult because it has been shown clinically and experimentally that larger amounts can be given and can be continued or not over a longer period of time, with a higher percentage of cures (Billings, Winkenwerder, and Hunninen, 1946; Mason, Daniels, Paddock, and Gordon, 1946).

Most clinicians prefer to use *tartar emetic* (antimony and potassium tartrate) in the acute stage. It is given in a concentration of 0.5 per cent. Solutions should be freshly prepared, preferably in 5 per cent glucose in physiologic saline, or in isotonic sodium chloride. The solution should be perfectly clear and free of sediment. It may be made by adding sterile powdered drug to the saline, using sterile instruments, or may be sterilized after preparation by boiling gently for 5 minutes. It should not be autoclaved. The drug is best tolerated several hours after a light meal. Treatment of adults is usually begun with 0.04 Gm. tartrate (8 c.c. of a 0.5 per cent solution) and then, if no reaction has occurred, increased doses are given on alternate days until 0.14 Gm. (28 c.c.) is given in 1 dose. A total of 15 doses is given in this way until 360 c.c. have been administered. Since tartar emetic corrodes the tissues, it is important to keep the needle within the vein. Toxic effects include coughing immediately upon injection, nausea, vomiting, stiffness of joints, a sense of constriction of the chest, pain in the upper abdomen, dizziness, and collapse. There may be transient electrocardiographic changes without clinical signs. Children are given roughly 1/3 to 1/2 the above dosage.

Since recent pharmacologic studies have clearly shown that antimony drugs are cumulative in the body (Brady et al., 1945), the treatment should not be repeated for several weeks. As both blood and tissue levels of antimony rise rather slowly under the regime outlined above, it would seem logical to start with large doses and then, after saturating the body, taper off or st treatment. This has been done in the treatment of chronic cases of *haematobium* and *S. mansoni* (Alves and Blair, 1946), but until careful studi are made of *S. japonicum* infections it cannot be recommended as a routine.

Fuadin has the great advantage of ease of administration. It was formerl given in gradually increasing doses until 40 c.c. had been administered, bu this is now recognized as inadequate and a course of 70 to 80 c.c. is considere standard for the average adult. The solution is injected intramuscularl preferably in the gluteus, away from nerves. The first 3 doses of 1.5 c.c., 3. c.c., and 5.0 c.c. are given on successive days. On the fifth and subsequen alternate days, 5 c.c. are given until a total of 16 doses has been given, provided no toxic effect has appeared. Nausea and vomiting may not be an indication to stop treatment if mild, but if severe, treatment should be suspende temporarily or the amount of drug injected should be reduced. Childre should be treated with a comparable dose by weight.

Anthiomaline has no known superiority over the 2 drugs here recommende and is not infrequently painful. *Emetine* (the active principle of Ipecac) ha been used extensively in the treatment of chronic cases. Its relative value ha not been established, and until it has, this drug cannot be recommended i preference to those of known value.

A review of the treatment of chronic cases has emphasized the value o potassium antimony tartrate (Li and Thompson, 1934).

Response to Treatment

In the acute stage of the disease, response to treatment is disappointingly slow. It may even appear that the disease is progressing despite treatment, or often it is obvious that the downward course of fever and improvement have begun before treatment began. It is, however, possible to demonstrate that treatment has a definite effect, for Billings et al. (1946) found that fever and severe symptoms tended to disappear on an average of 2 weeks after treatment was initiated, *regardless* of the duration of the illness preceding treatment. The delay in response is accounted for by a series of interrelated facts. The disease symptoms are caused chiefly by the eggs in the tissues. These are not susceptible to the action of the drug, but, as Vogel has shown, they have a sharply limited life span of about 10 days from deposit of the eggs to maturity and perhaps another 10 days until the death of the miracidium within the egg. It can be shown that antimony treatment inhibits egg production by the female worm, thus cutting off the supply of pathogenic eggs. Those that have been laid, however, mature normally and their presence continues to stimulate fever and symptoms until they die. Another fact that must not be overlooked is that though egg deposit does not stop for some years, the acute allergic phase of "urticarial fever" is usually spontaneously "cured" some weeks after the initiation of symptoms—this without treatment.

Consideration of treatment should be divided into 2 phases: (1) the primary effect on the disease at hand—the recovery from fever, malaise, and cramping, and (2) the final effect on the worms—the prevention of relapses.

The first effect of antimony treatment is to drive the worms from the small branches of the mesentery to the liver. Then the reproductive system is affected, so that the ovary and vitelline glands of the female degenerate and oviposition ceases. With this comes a general shrinking of the worm and a loss of hematin. Unless treatment is continued beyond this stage, the worm may recover, the ovaries and vitelline glands regain their shapes and functions, and the pair return to their location in the branches of the mesenteric veins. This is the explanation of the relapses, so-called laboratory relapses because they frequently have few symptoms after the allergic phase has passed.

It is well, therefore, to treat severe acute cases a little longer than the average case so that complete killing of the worms may take place. Specific treatment of chronic cases has been in the past a routine and wholesale procedure. It has not been possible to give the general supportive treatment needed in severe anemia, extensive cirrhosis, and generalized anasarca. Particularly in these latter types has treatment been continued only as long as symptoms are present. Treatment in every case that can tolerate it should consist of the full course outlined above, and accordingly an individual should not be considered cured unless he fails to relapse in 2 years. A relapse is defined merely as the reappearance of eggs in the stool.

A word of warning on the increased amount of antimony which is being used to produce a higher percentage of cures is issued by Lippincott, Paddock, Rhees, Hesselbrock, and Ellerbrook (1946), who found that hepatic function was abnormal in a large number of American soldiers who had been treated with both tartar emetic and Fuadin. Liver function, as determined by bromsulfalein retention and serum bilirubin, gradually returned toward normal after cessation of treatment.

EPIDEMIOLOGY AND PROPHYLAXIS

Acute single infections which were brought to the clinician's attention prior to World War II were limited chiefly to 3 classes of individuals: sportsmen who had waded through infected rice fields and water; children who had waded, had swum, or had fished in infected water; and sailors on warships who had washed or swum in shallow rivers while at anchor. These people were usually foreign to the endemic zone and their exposures furnished clues s to the areas in which infection was taking place. On this basis it was assumed that deep quiet waters were relatively free of infection (Faust and Meleney, 1924). Sea water undiluted by fresh river water is safe, since cercariae are unable to survive in it (Ingalls, 1946).

The outbreak of acute infections in the troops on Leyte emphasized the art played by the muddy shallow rivers which drain an infected area. Infection was highest among troops whose occupation forced them to enter reams (bridge builders) and among those who deliberately exposed themselves by swimming in these streams. The incidence of infection was low in the men who, during the fighting, waded fully clothed through rice fields in endemic areas (Sullivan and Ferguson, 1946). Furthermore, transmission of the disease ceased when exposure to these rivers was stopped. It is likely that considerable protection was afforded to the fighting men by the clothing they wore, for though different cloths vary (roughly with the fineness of the weave) in their ability to keep cercariae out, common weaves like cotton khaki and O.D. woolen cloth prevent the penetration of many cercariae (Ferguson, Graham, Bang, and Hairston, 1946).

The visitor to an endemic area should, therefore, stay out of all infected water; if forced to wade through flooded fields or ditches, tightly woven clothing impregnated with benzyl benzoate or dibutyl phthalate will give considerable protection. Dibutyl phthalate or even dimethyl phthalate, commonly contained in the recent mosquito repellents, when smeared on the surface of the skin, will protect against infection for an hour or so and through occasional light rinsings. These measures are not a substitute for *avoidance of exposure.* Drinking water should be chlorinated to give at least 1 part per million residual chlorine at ½ hour. Shower water is safe after chlorination or after standing for 2 days. Studies of potential hosts of *S. japonicum* in this country have emphasized the improbability of introduction into the Americas (Stunkard, 1946).

The spread of the disease within an infected community and the control of this spread is an entirely different problem from that of the prevention of infection in the occasional visitor. Here the snail host, the reservoir host including man, and man's chief occupation in such areas (rice farming) make a cycle of transmission of the worm from one host to another such a tightly welded chain that it has been difficult to break it. Elimination of the disease is theoretically possible in a number of ways.

Elimination of the Snail.—At present there are available no chemicals of sufficient selective toxicity and low cost that they could be spread throughout an area and eliminate the snail. In many places the area occupied by the snails is so great, the value of the land so low, and the density of the population so relatively low, that this approach is not economically sensible. It has been of value, however, in small highly populated areas of Japan. A considerable decrease in the infection has been obtained by burning along infected irrigation ditches with flame throwers or by cooking with live steam (Miyajima, 1939), or by spreading lime or calcium cyanamide as an accessory fertilizer. Recent studies indicate that the dicyclohexylamine salt of dinitro-ortho-cyclohexylphenol is the best available snailicide (McMullen and Graham, 1947), and that Paris green applied at a rate of 250 pounds per acre is also effective, but no compound tested was found of practical value in large scale control of Oncomelania.

Theoretically it would be possible to prevent infection of human beings by preventing exposure, but if the planting of the seed beds of rice and the plowing of the rice fields are periods of greatest exposure, it is impossible to prevent it. Most of the inhabitants of these areas are furthermore unable to afford clothing which would be protective.

In many cases man is the chief reservoir of infection. Thus it would be theoretically possible to prevent the spread and continued existence of the disease if human feces were both efficiently and sanitarily used. The collection of night soil and its use as a fertilizer has, therefore, received considerable attention, and it has been demonstrated that if the feces stand for several days in the collecting pits before distribution to the field, all of the miracidia die and the snails do not become infected. Furthermore, if the fields are fertilized during the dry season, infection again does not take place. The inevitable human breaks in this technic, however, have been sufficient to prevent its being successful so far. In other areas, moreover, cattle, pigs, and sheep serve as reservoir hosts, and thus make control difficult if not impossible.

A comparison of the casual chance scattering of human feces in the Philippines with an ordered disposal of them as seen in the use of night soil in Japan makes it clear that it is not merely the use of human feces as fertilizer which is responsible for the maintenance of the disease but rather the general level of sanitation which maintains the disease in areas where the snail host is present. Night soil which is carefully collected and cured in pits and finally spread on dry soil has little chance to spread the infection, but continual soil pollution by human feces may raise the percentage of infected snails to 20 or 30 per cent.

Mass treatment of infected individuals is of little over-all value, for failures of cure and incomplete treatments, when combined with the inability of such programs to get all of the infected individuals under treatment, are sufficient to maintain disease transmission on a high level.

Future work must then be directed to obtaining an efficient chemical which, in low concentrations, can selectively kill snails.

References

Abbott, R. T.: Medically Important Mollusca of the Orient and W. Pacific (Unpublished).
Africa, C. M., and Garcia, E. Y.: 1941. Acta med. Philippina **2**: 511.
Africa, C. M., and Santa Cruz, J. Z.: 1939. Volumen Jubilare Pro Professore Sadao Yoshida Osaka Imp. V.
Alves, W., and Blair, D. M.: 1946. Lancet **250**: 9.
Bang, F. B., and Hairston, N. G.: 1946. Am. J. Hyg. **44**: 348.
Bang, F. B., Hairston, N. G., Graham, O. H., and Ferguson, M. S.: 1946. Am. J. Hyg. **44**: 315.
Billings, F. T., Winkenwerder, W. L., and Hunninen, A. V.: 1946. Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp. **78**: 21.
Brady, F. J., Lawton, A. H., Cowie, D. B., Andrews, H. L., Ness, A. T., and Ogden, G. E.: 1945. Am. J. Trop. Med. **25**: 103.
Campbell, H. E.: 1936. Chinese M. J. **50**: 1561.
Carroll, D. G.: 1946. Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp. **78**: 219.
Cort, W. W.: 1921. Am. J. Hyg. **1**: 1.
Fairley, N. H.: 1926. Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **20**: 236.
Faust, E. C.: 1946. Am. J. Trop. Med. **26**: 113.
Faust, E. C., and Ingalls, J. W.: 1946. Am. J. Trop. Med. **26**: 559.
Faust, E. C., and Meleney, H. E.: 1924. Studies on Schistosomiasis Japonica. Am. J. Hyg. (Bi-m.) **3**:
Ferguson, M. S., Graham, O. H., Bang, F. B., and Hairston, N. G.: 1946. Am. J. Hyg. **44**: 367.
Fishbon, H. M.: 1946. Am. J. Trop. Med. **26**: 319.
Fujinami, A.: 1916. Immunity to Diseases Due to Macroparasites. Kyoto-igadaigaku-Zasshi, 13; Abstract, Chinese M. J. 1917 **31**: 81.
Hairston, N. G.: 1945. A Guide to the Identification of the Eggs of S. Japonicum. U. S. Army Publication AFPAC.

Ingalls, J. W.: 1946. J. Parasitol. **32**: 521.
Johnson, A. S., Jr., and Berry, M. G.: 1945. War Med. **8**: 156.
Katzin, B., and Most, H.: 1946. Bull. U. S. Army M. Dept. **6**: 613.
Krakower, C., Hoffman, W. A., and Axtmayer, J. H.: 1943. Arch. Path. **36**: 39.
Lambert, A. C.: 1909-10. Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **3**: 278.
Li, T. Y., and Thompson, H. G.: 1934. Trans. of Ninth Congress of the Far Easter Assoc. of Trop. Med., Nanking, China **2**: 325.
Lippincott, S. W., Paddock, F. K., Rhees, M. C., Hesselbrock, W. B., and Ellerbrook, L. D. 1946. Arch. Int. Med. **79**: 62.
Loughlin, E. H., and Stoll, N. R.: 1946. Am. J. Trop. Med. **26**: 517.
Magath, T. B., and Mathieson, D. R.: 1946. J. Parasitol. **32**: 64.
Mason, P. K., Daniels, W. B., Paddock, F. R., and Gordon, H. H.: 1946. Arch. Int. Med **78**: 662.
McMullen, D. B., and Graham, O. H.: 1947. Am. J. Hyg. **45**: 274.
Minning, W.: 1945. Deutsch. Trop. Ztschr. **45**: 321.
Miyajima, M.: 1939. Volumen Jubilare Pro Professore Sadao Yoshida Osaka Imp. V
Stunkard, H. W.: 1946. J. Parasitol. **32**: 539.
Sugiura, S.: 1933. Mit. a. d. Path. Inst. Niigata, Japan **31**: 1.
Sullivan, R. R., and Ferguson, M. S.: 1946. Am. J. Hyg. **44**: 324.
Thomas, H., Jr., Bracken, M., and Bang, F.: 1946. Tr. A. Am. Physicians.
Vogel, H.: 1942. Deutsch. Trop. Ztschr. **46**: 57, 81.

CHAPTER 46

SCHISTOSOMIASIS HAEMATOBIA AND SCHISTOSOMIASIS INTERCALATA

CLEMENT CLAPTON CHESTERMAN

SCHISTOSOMIASIS HAEMATOBIA

Synonyms.—Endemic hematuria, genitourinary schistosomiasis or bilharziasis.

DEFINITION

Schistosomiasis haematobia is a chronic endemic disease manifesting itself mainly in hematuria and associated disorders of the urinary organs but occasionally affecting the rectum, the appendix, the lungs, and other organs, due to infestation of the pelvic veins by *Schistosoma haematobium* and the irritative effects of their eggs, which escape in urine and feces.

HISTORY

In 1851, Bilharz, assistant professor at the Cairo School of Medicine, wrote to Siebold in Germany that he had discovered the *Distoma haematobium* in the mesenteric veins of a native Egyptian. He was soon able to show that the terminal spined eggs were the cause of the endemic hematuria in the Nile Delta, a disease which had existed from time immemorial as proved by the discovery of eggs in the desiccated organs of mummies. Bilharz considered that the lateral spined eggs more frequently found in the feces were distorted forms from the same parasite which was named by Cobbold in 1859 *Bilharzia haematobia.* The generic term *Schistosoma,* previously used by Weinland in 1858, has priority, however.

Harley (1864) observed that lateral spined eggs were never found in Natal and concluded that the local blood flukes must be a different species, which he named *Bilharzia capensis.* When Manson, in 1902, saw a patient from the West Indies with exclusively lateral spined eggs in the feces, he postulated the existence of two distinct species, one shedding lateral and the other terminal spined eggs. Sambon confirmed this hypothesis on epidemiologic grounds in Egypt in 1907 and proposed the name *Schistosoma mansoni* in appreciation of "this one of his many genial intuitions." Looss strenuously contested the dual theory, even though Turner in Nyasaland had noted that female worms laying lateral spined eggs were exclusively found in the embrace of males with 9 testes instead of the usual 4 recognized in the male *S. haematobium.*

It was left to Leiper in 1915-1918 to demonstrate the morphologic, epidemiologic, and clinical differences between the two species.

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

Egypt and the Nile Valley, North, East, and West Africa, the Congo, Central and South Africa, Madagascar, Mauritius, Reunion: small endemic foci in Portugal and Southern Greece and Cyprus, Israel, Iraq, and Iran.

THE CAUSAL AGENT

Schistosoma Haematobium (Bilharz, 1852) Weinland, 1858

Synonyms.—*Distoma haematobium* Bilharz, 1852; *Gynaecophorus haematobius* (Bilharz, 1852) Dies, 1858; *Bilharzia haematobia* (Bilharz, 1852) Cobbold, 1859; *Bilharzia magna* Cobbold, 1859; *Thecosoma haematobium* (Bilharz, 1852) Moquin-Tandon, 1860; *Bilharzia capensis* Harley, 1864; *Bilharzia aegyptiaca* Miyagawa, 1924.

Schistosoma haematobium is one of the digenetic trematodes or flukes; the paired worms may survive for as long as 30 years in the mesenteric or vesical veins of man, their usual definitive host. They can also develop in many laboratory animals, guinea pigs, rats, and mice, and can infect hedgehogs, monkeys, and sheep.

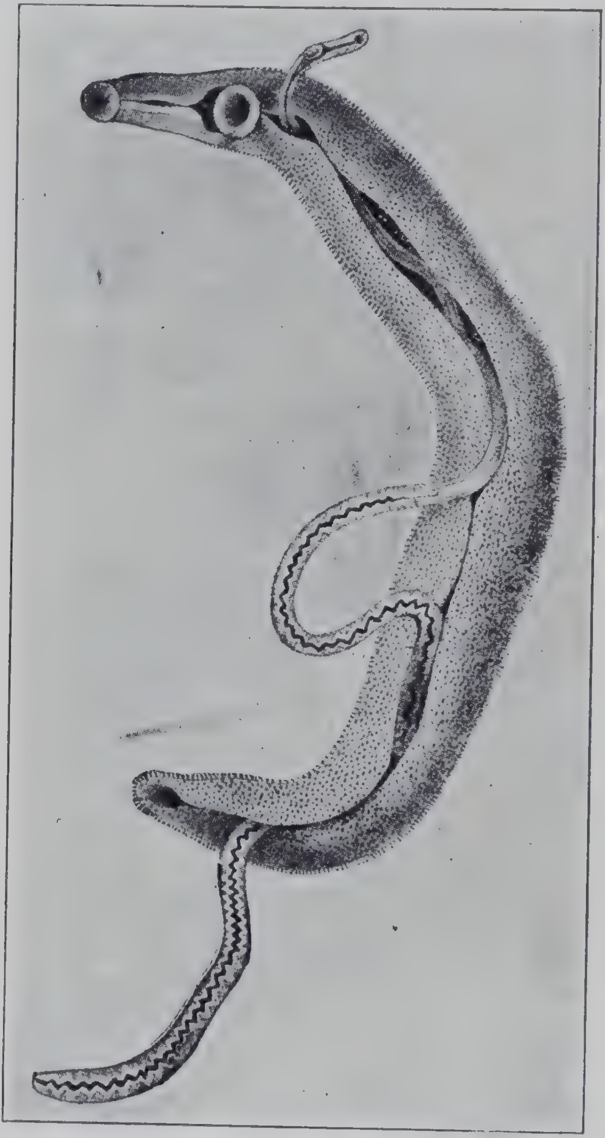


Fig. 342.—Adult *Schistosoma haematobium.* Male carrying female in the gynecophoric canal. (After Looss.) (From Fantham, Stephens, and Theobald: The Animal Parasites of Man. Bale, Sons and Danielsson, Ltd., London.)

The *male* measures 10 to 15 mm. long. The flattened posterior 4/5 of its body has folded over edges which make it appear as a round worm about 1 mm. thick. In the groove so formed (gynecophoric canal), the female passes her adult life, and there is some evidence tha the male is monogamic. In the cylindrical anterior end is a small oral sucker, and just caudal to it a large ventral sucker or acetabulum. The whole body is covered with small cuticular tuberculations.

The 4 (or 5) testes are situated dorsally and just caudal to the ventral sucker and their vasa efferentia open by a single vas deferens in the genital pore situated on the ventral surface.

The female is larger (20 to 28 mm.), thread-like (0.25 mm.), and darker in color from contained blood. Its small skin bosses are confined to either end which lie outside the gynecophoric canal. The 2 suckers are smaller and less muscular, and just behind the ventral one opens the vagina. This leads to the uterus which occupies most of the anterior ⅔ of the body. In the mature worm it may contain anywhere from 30 to 100 eggs in varying phases of development. The ovary and the shell glands (vitellaria) lie posteriorly, and their ducts (oviduct and vitelline duct) at their common junction with the uterus are surrounded by the oötype where the eggs are fertilized and receive their shell.

In *both sexes* the alimentary canal starts at the oral sucker and divides near the ventral sucker, with which it is unconnected, to reunite again to form the blind cecum which runs the length of the posterior half of the worm.

Life Cycle

The mature worms lie coupled in the smallest pelvic veins capable of accommodating them, and the female, either still embraced by or temporarily advancing from her male partner, lays her eggs one by one, spine last, in the smaller venules of the vesical or mesenteric plexuses. How the eggs advance against the blood stream to reach the mucosa of the bladder or bowel is not entirely understood. In the mucosa the contained larva or miracidium secretes a lytic substance which helps the egg to dissolve a path toward the lumen and escape in urine or feces.

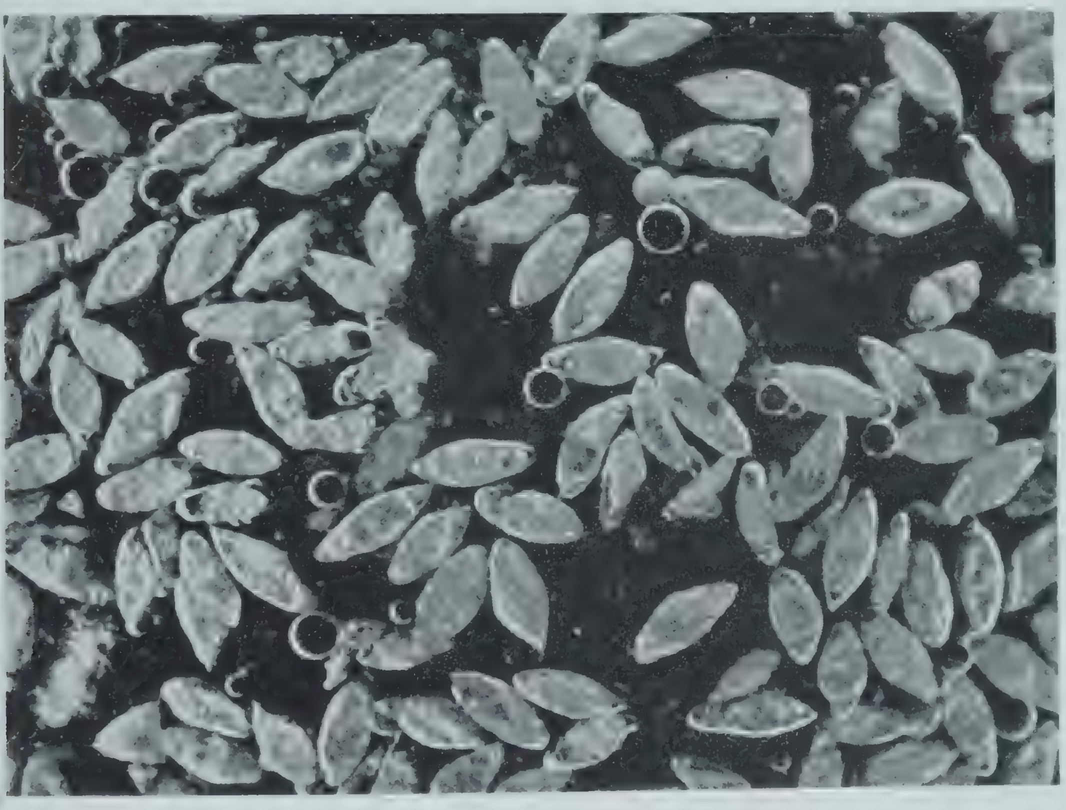


Fig. 343.—Eggs of *Schistosoma haematobium* in urinary deposit, photographed by darkground illumination. (Photomicrograph by D. M. Blair; published by permission of F. Good-iffe, Southern Rhodesian Public Relations Department.)

The egg is oval, tapering to a pointed spine at one end, blunt at the other. Its aver-ge measurements are 150 by 60 microns, though there may be considerable variations. By smosis through the permeable shell, the egg swells and bursts when shed into water and iberates the free-swimming larva or miracidium.

The miracidium can remain alive in the egg in moist feces or sterile alkaline urine for ome weeks, but in water it survives for about 24 hours. By means of its cilia it swims ctively, and if the appropriate snail is available it will burrow its way into its tentacles to each the liver. In this organ, which becomes a yellowish-orange color visible through the shell f the infected snail, the double development into a thin-walled sporocyst and daughter sporo ysts takes place.

After 4 to 8 weeks as many as 300,000 forked-tailed cercariae, all of one sex, develop from one single miracidium. These are discharged between the snail's body and shell, in swarms, for periods varying from 10 to 75 days.

As numerous miracidia can penetrate and develop in one snail, the daily output of cercariae may be very great. They are just visible to the naked eye and can be seen swimming tail first toward the surface of a vessel, and then sinking again. They can survive for 5 or 6 days but are infective only up to 3 days. Being unable to feed they must find a human host or perish.

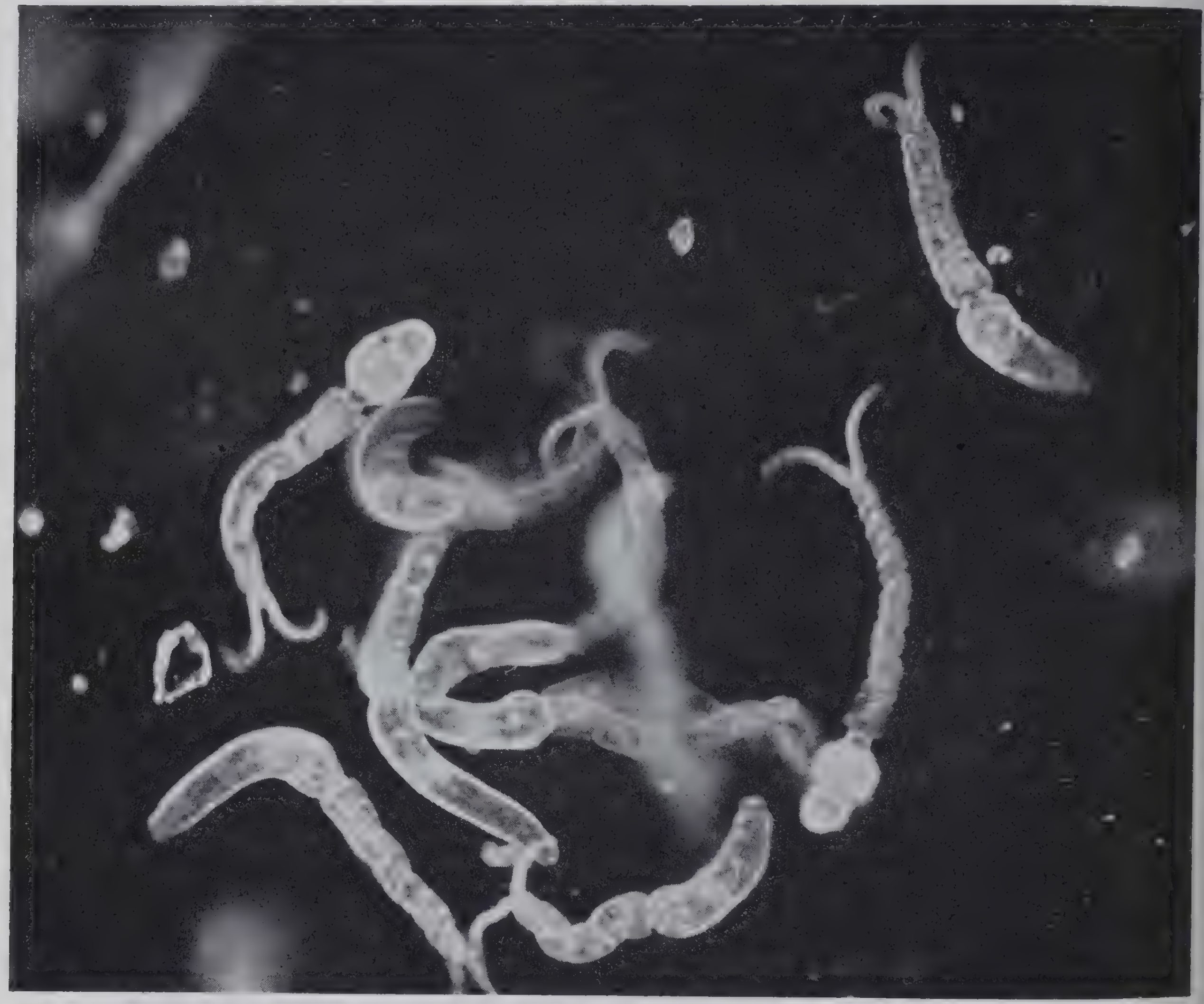


Fig. 344.—Schistosome cercariae photographed by darkground illumination. (Photographs by D. M. Blair; published by permission of F. Goodliffe, Southern Rhodesian Public Relations Department.)

The Vector

Various species of very similar thin-walled sinistral snails act as the intermediate host in different parts of the endemic areas.

In Egypt and Palestine *Bullinus truncatus* with its variants *B. contortus*, *B. dybowski*, *B. innesi* are the hosts; in East Africa and Mauritius, *B. forskali;* in West Africa *Physopsis globosa;* in Congo and Natal *P. africana;* while in Tunis it is *B. brochi*. The European vector is a flat snail *Planorbis dufouri* found in South Portugal and in Morocco. Species of Melania, *M. modocincta* and *M. tuberculata*, have been suspected in Nyasaland.

PATHOLOGY

The life cycle is completed in man who suffers according to the number of cercariae which successfully penetrate his skin and survive to mature in his pelvic veins. The drying of cercaria-infected water on the skin, combined with the prodding action of the anterior sucker aided by a lytic ferment, enable the cercariae to penetrate the intact integument, leaving their tails behind them.

Cercariae can, of course, equally well penetrate the mucous membrane of the mouth, pharynx, and esophagus if infected water is drunk or used for oral hygiene. A valuable amount of skin irritation, but little cellular reaction, results, and the metacercariae (or schistosomulae) reach and enter small veins, leaving little trace of their skin passage, except it be a few small petechiae. Carried to the lungs they remain there only sufficiently long to squeeze through the capillaries in order to reach the pulmonary veins. Some may escape during the process, by capillary rupture, but there is no evidence of asthma or pneumonitis at this stage, though there may be a transient urticarial rash.

Only those which happen to leave the aorta by the celiac axis or mesenteric arteries and then reach the liver via the portal vein are destined to survive. All others are destroyed in whatever tissue they reach, without causing symptoms.

Liver

The second and third weeks are passed in the liver, in the small intrahepatic branches of the portal veins. The products of metabolism of the growing worms produce acute inflammatory reaction and swelling of the whole organ which is noticeably tender in heavy infections.

Migration of the adolescent male and female worms now occurs, and with unerring accuracy they creep, aided by their rough skin bosses, against the portal blood flow to reach their chosen habitat. This migration is rendered easier by the absence of valves in the tributaries of the portal veins, but why the inferior mesenteric vein should be invariably selected is still obscure. The worms proceed to its terminal tributary, the superior rectal (superior hemorrhoidal) vein, which has its origin in the rectal plexus. This plexus communicates freely with the vesical plexus in both sexes, with the prostatic plexus in the male, and the uterovaginal plexus in the female. The worms once located in these small veins will mature and pair off in another few weeks, and, in from 10 to 12 weeks after entry into the human host, oviposition commences.

Bladder

Most eggs are laid in the venules of the vesical plexus and dissolve their way to the submucosa of the urinary bladder. Causing at first only a slight hyperemia in the overlying mucosa, they tend, as numbers increase, to aggravate in groups which raise small, yellowish, discrete tubercles or grains. Infiltration by neutrophiles, with eosinophiles and macrophages, causes larger aised inflamed patches, especially over the trigone. Fibrosis is the next step, nd as the supply of eggs continues, this extends to the muscular coat of the rgan which becomes markedly thickened. A roughening and puckering of he mucosa results, with papillomatous outgrowths on the ridges and gravel and phosphatic calculi in the pouches. The deposit of eggs sometimes becomes calcified and grates on the knife edge when cut.

Fibrosis may involve the ureteral orifices, causing stricture, stenosis, and hydronephrosis with resulting complications. The urethral opening is apt to be narrowed by inflammation and partially occluded by debris. Secondary infection usually complicates the picture, leading to perineal abscess and urinary fistulas.

Finally new growths may develop, bilharzial carcinoma of the bladder being common in Egypt even in young adults.

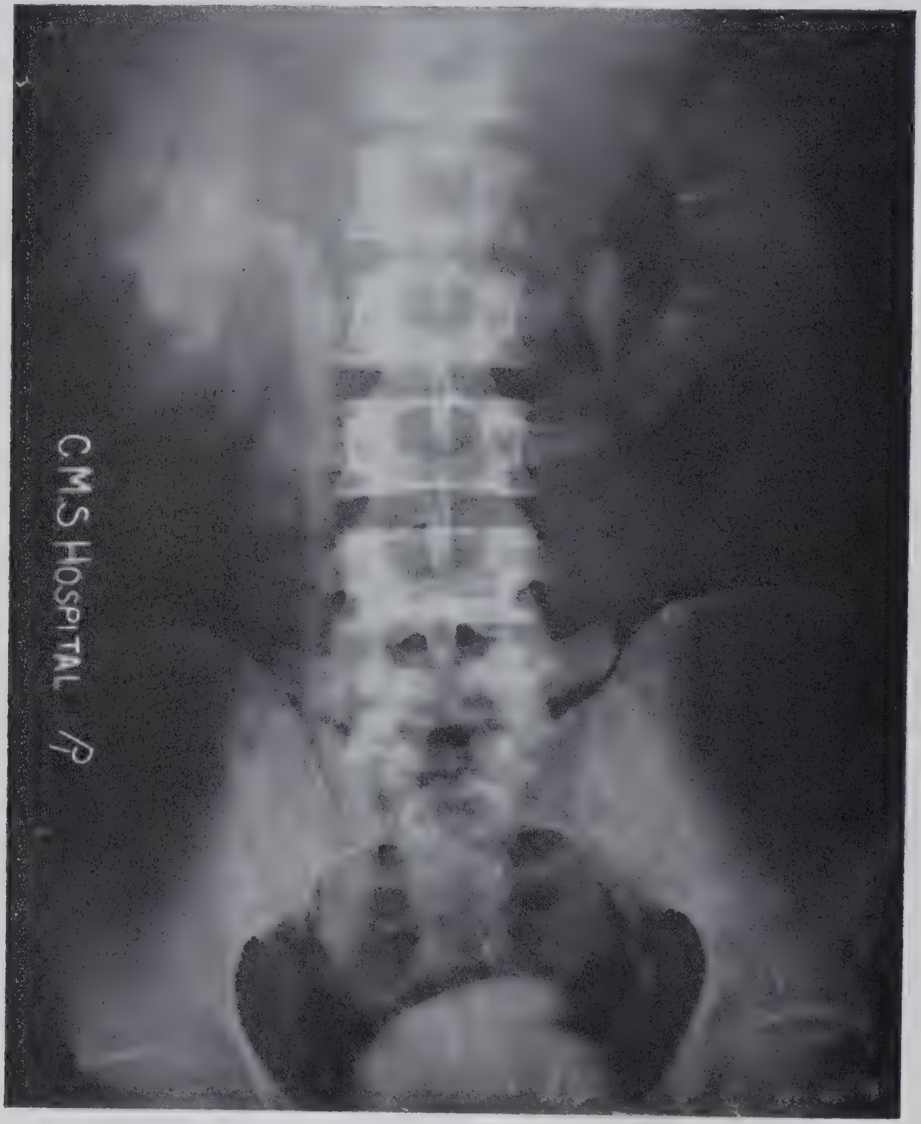


Fig. 345.—Radiograph of genitourinary system after Uroselectan. Shows small calcified bladder, dilated ureters, and right pelvis. (Photograph supplied by R. Coleman.)

Pelvic Organs

As the vesical veins become occluded or insufficient for the process of oviposition, neighboring veins may be involved, and extension of infiltration and fibrosis take place in the vesiculae seminales, prostate, penis, male and female urethra, vagina, uterus, broad ligaments, Fallopian tubes, and even the ovaries. The rectum is, however, generally the first overflow site, but eggs are rarely found higher up in the large bowel. Infiltration of the appendix without acute inflammation is, however, not infrequent in Egypt and West Africa (Lovett Campbell, 1948).

Pulmonary Lesions

Eggs of *S. haematobium* are more often found in the lungs than those of *S. mansoni* because the possibility of embolism from pelvic veins is greater. They cause obstruction of the small arterioles and pass through their walls to

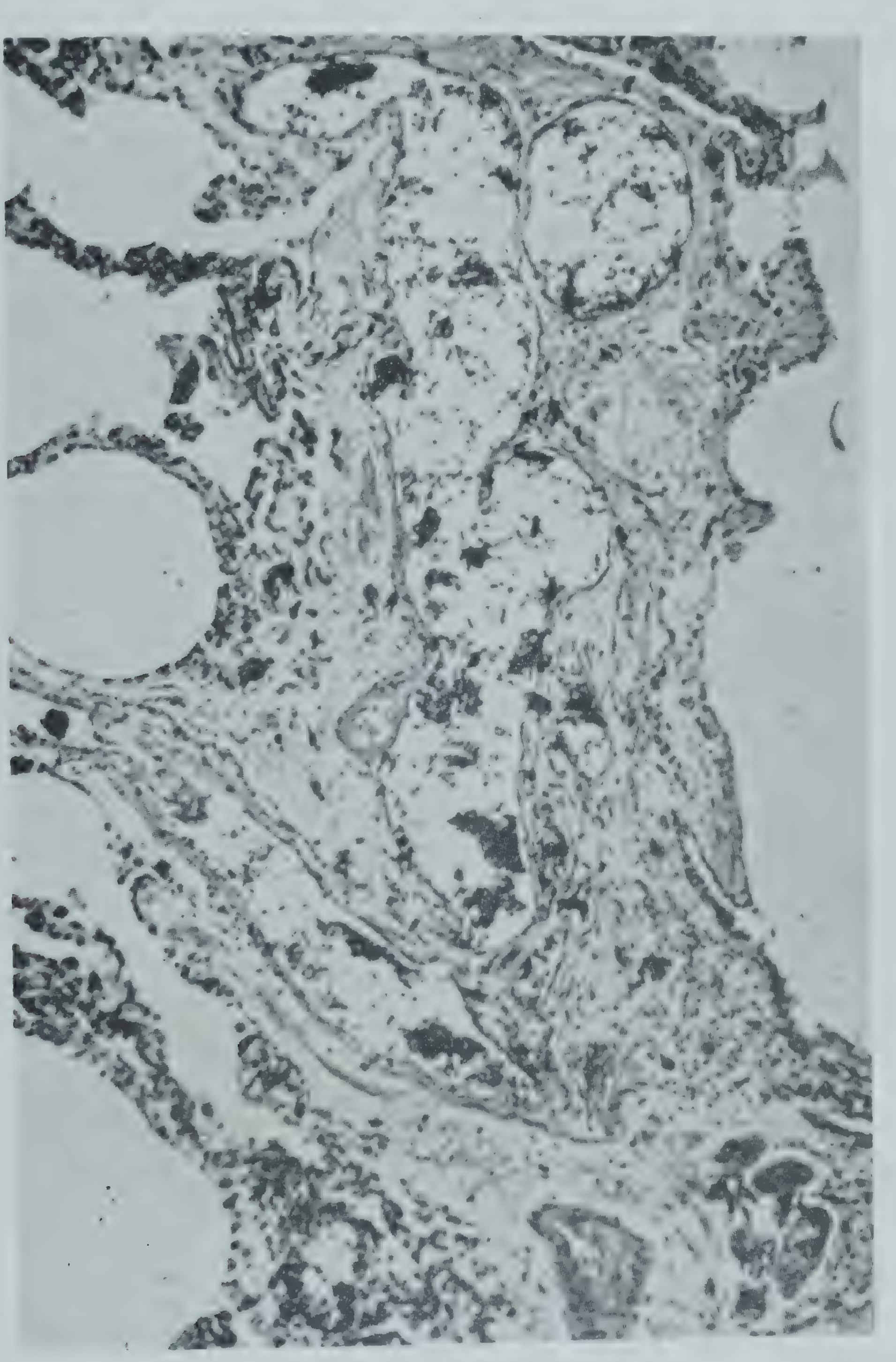


Fig. 346.—Section of lung from male 30 years of age. An angiomatoid of cavernous type ith fibrous walls devoid of muscle. At its lower pole is the hypertrophied artery adjacent to hich is a nest of *Schistosoma haematobium* eggs lying in scar tissue. Above the eggs is the ronchiole covered with cuboidal epithelium. Iron hematoxylin and van Gieson stain. (×90.) From Shaw A. F. B., and Ghareeb, Abou: 1938. Pathogenesis of Pulmonary Schistosomiasis Egypt With Special Reference to Ayerza's Disease, J. Path. & Bact. **46**: 401-424; by permission f the authors and publishers, Oliver & Boyd, Edinburgh.)

provoke the characteristic tissue response outside them, ending in fibrosis an small nodular scars. More serious arterial lesions are probably the result o the presence of paired worms in the arterioles. The numbers of eggs thus lai in situ cause necrosis of the vessel walls and consequent dilatation or sclerosi of the pulmonary artery itself. Parenchymatous changes are less common, an eggs are very rarely found in the sputum. Asthma, chronic bronchitis, emphysema, and fibrosis are results of pulmonary bilharziasis and lead to chroni right heart failure.

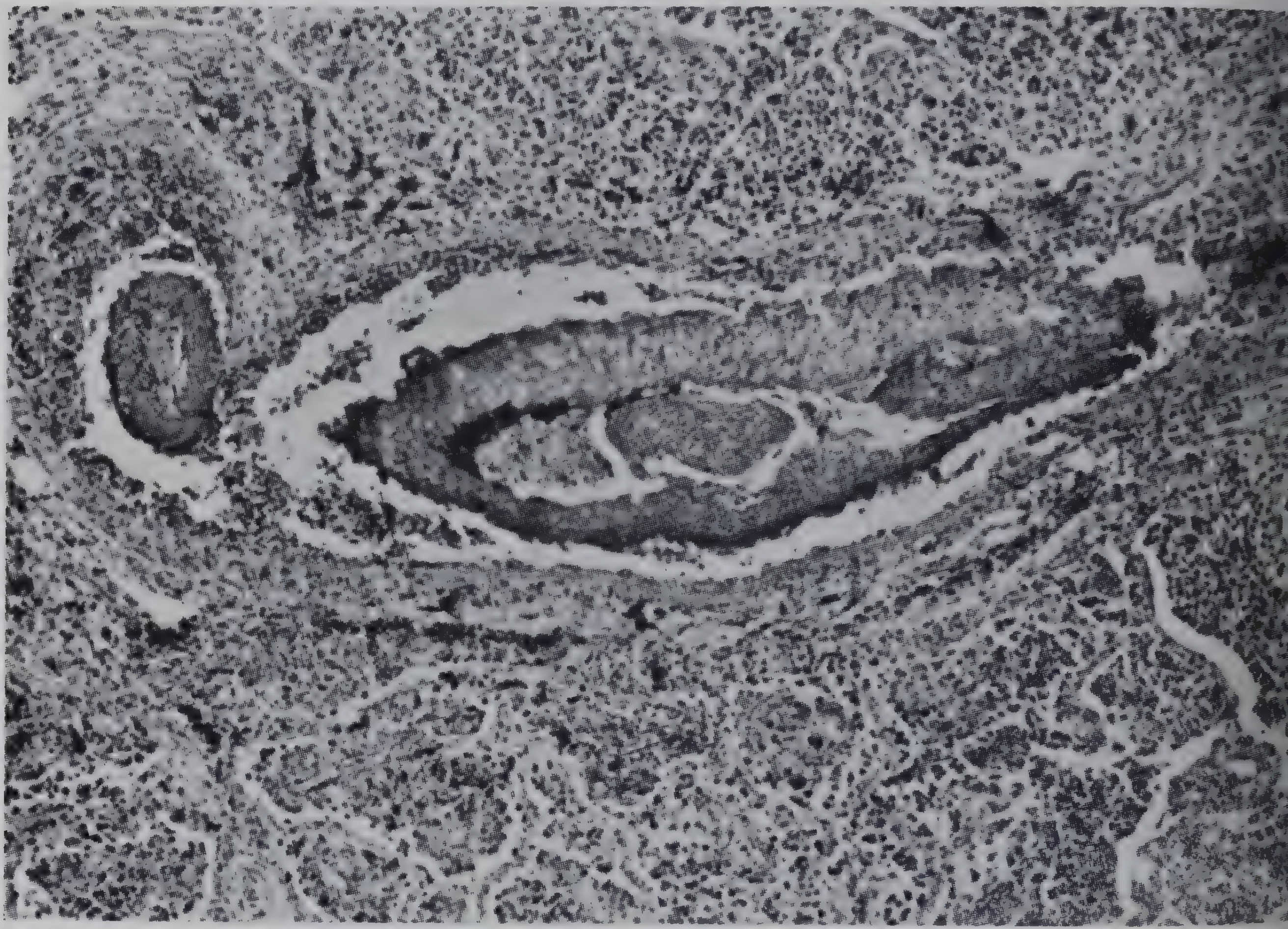


Fig. 347.—Dead *Schistosoma haematobium* worm impacted at bifurcation of an artery. The vessel wall is necrotic and alveoli filled with a pneumonic exudate. A giant cell is at one end of the worm. (From Shaw, A. F. B., and Ghareeb, Abou: 1938. Pathogenesis of Pulmonary Schistosomiasis in Egypt With Special Reference to Ayerza's Disease, J. Path. & Bact. **46:** 401-424; by permission of the authors and publishers, Oliver & Boyd, Edinburgh.)

Ectopic Lesions

Faust (1948) has recently defined these ectopic lesions as local reactions to the worms and their eggs, occurring outside the portal caval venous circulation, including the extension of the latter to the pulmonary arterioles.

The ectopic sites in which eggs of *S. haematobium* have occasionally been found are conjunctiva, skin, spinal cord, brain, and heart. As has been noted above, overflow phenomena from choked pelvic veins might allow a constant stream of eggs to reach the lungs, and some might conceivably find their way through the pulmonary circulation and become scattered in the tissues. But that hardly explains the finding of nests containing considerable numbers

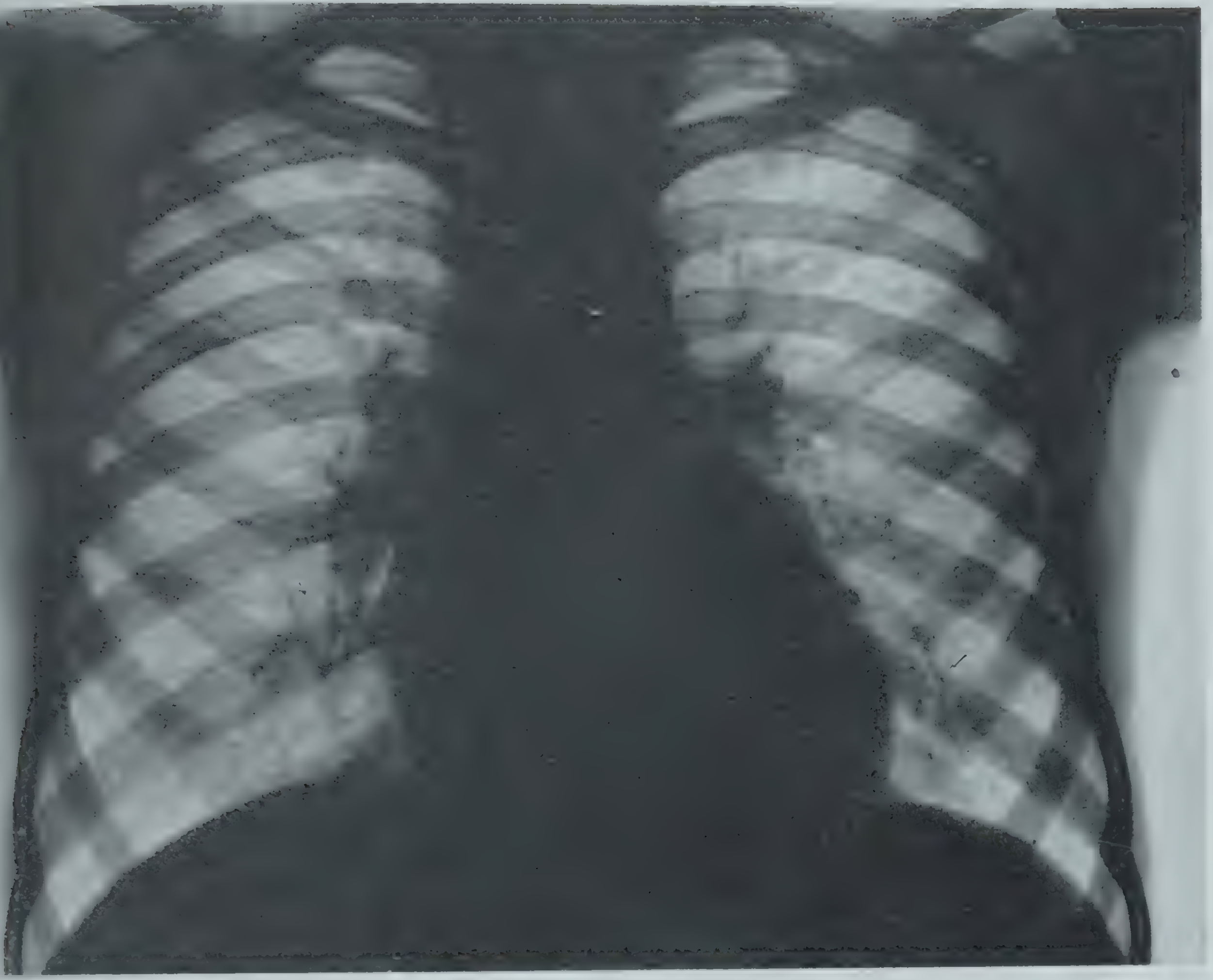


Fig. 348.—Radiograph of lungs in pulmonary schistosomiasis, *early stage.* Note the thickened nodular arteries at the bases of the lungs. (Photograph supplied by M. Erfan, Cairo, Egypt.)

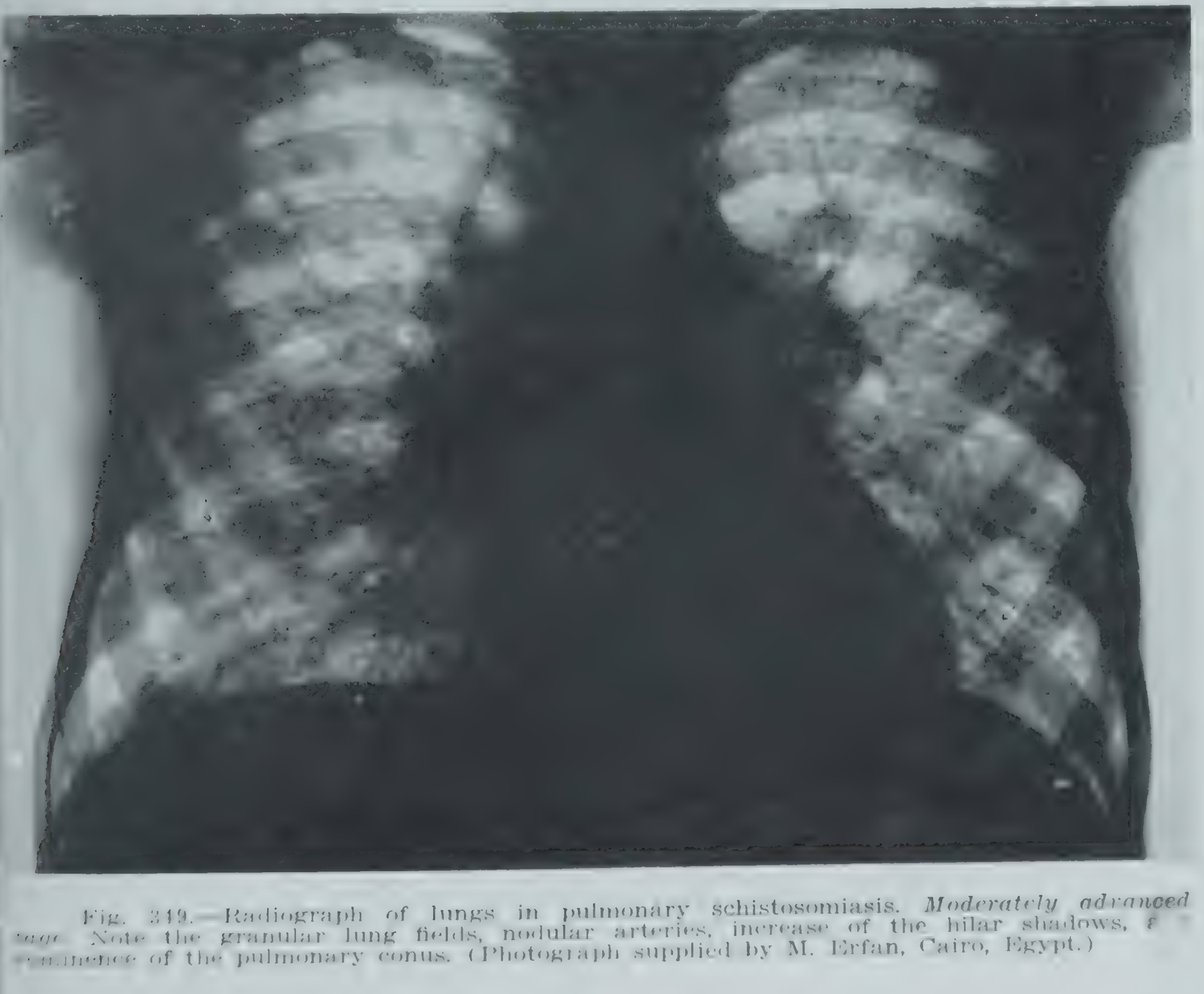


Fig. 349.—Radiograph of lungs in pulmonary schistosomiasis. *Moderately advanced stage.* Note the granular lung fields, nodular arteries, increase of the hilar shadows, and prominence of the pulmonary conus. (Photograph supplied by M. Erfan, Cairo, Egypt.)

of eggs in granulomatous lesions of the brain, cord, or skin, as is known to occur. Moreover, in one case of conjunctival involvement, a pair of matur worms was actually found in a branch of the superior ophthalmic vein, an presumably they were responsible for the eggs found in the conjunctiva.

It is unlikely that worms can mature anywhere else but in the liver, so that the ectopic worm must have reached its destination by a route unob-

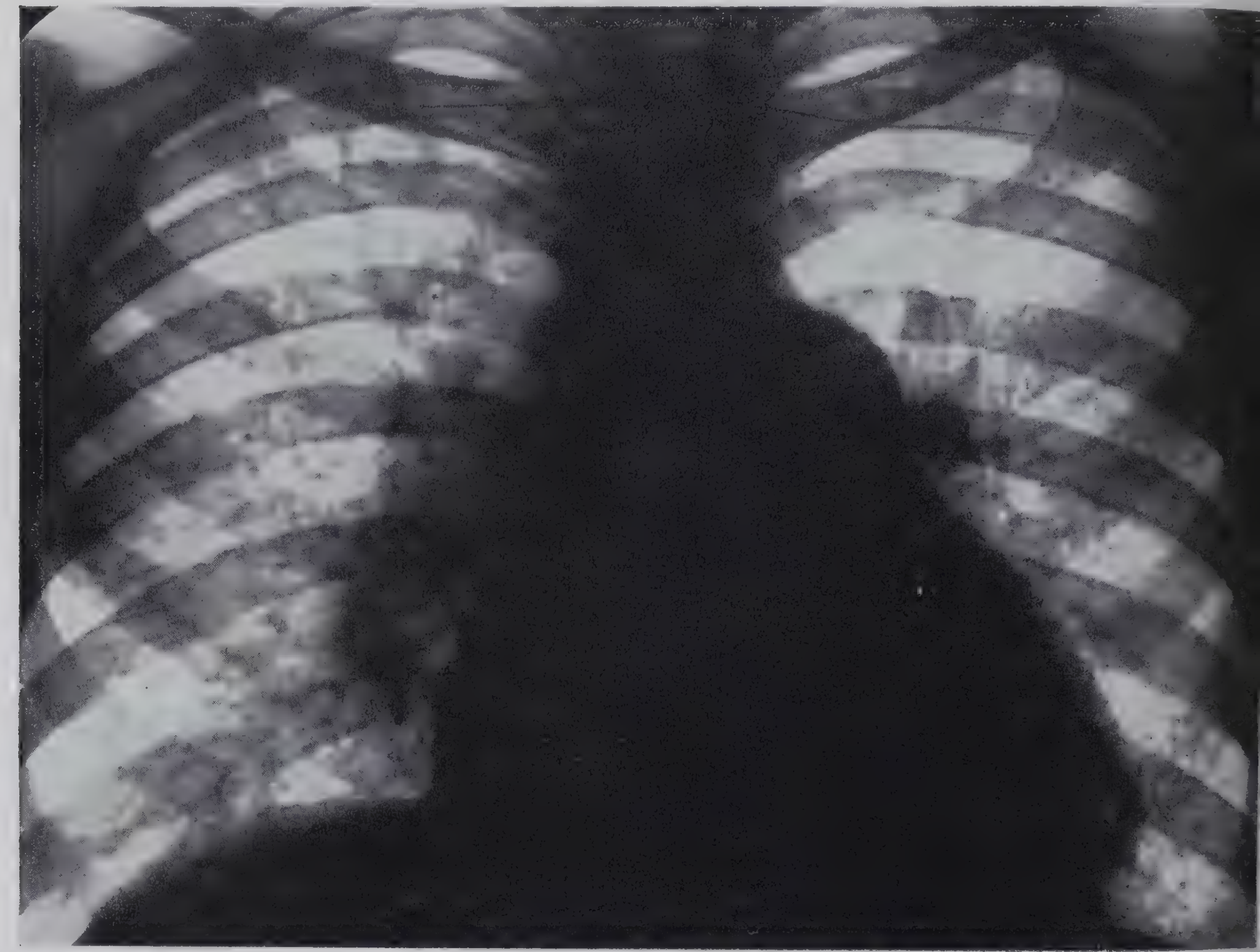


Fig. 350.—Radiograph of the lungs in pulmonary schistosomiasis, *advanced stage.* Note the granular lung fields, marked increase of the hilar shadows, and marked prominence of the pulmonary conus. (Photograph supplied by M. Erfan, Cairo, Egypt.)

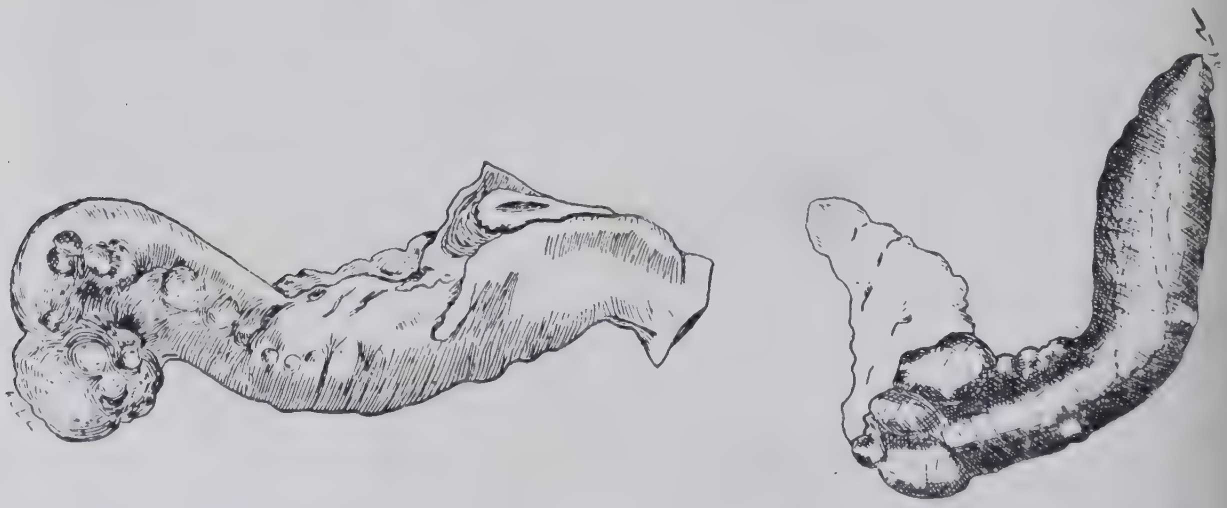


Fig. 351.—Two bilharzial appendices removed at operation in an endemic area of northern Nigeria. Both show characteristic distortion and surface nodulation with pseudotubercles. (From Lovett-Campbell, A. C.: 1948. A Note on Bilharziasis in West African Troops. Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. 41: 821-822; by permission of the author.)

structed by either hepatic or pulmonary capillaries. Faust suggests that such a route exists, as is presumed to be the case for malignant metastases, in the vertebral system of veins. These provide a natural valveless, intercommunicating channel to all parts of the body. The tissue reaction in ectopic esions is esentially the same. There is an attempt at barrier formation, both by proliferation of tissue cells, and infiltration of eosinophiles, and the formation of epithelioid and giant cells.

SYMPTOMS

Symptoms vary with the degree and duration of infection. They may be very slight, or severe enough to cause death. They are conveniently divided nto those due to (1) invasion, lasting about 3 months, (2) oviposition, which may go on for 30 years, (3) tissue reaction and associated accidents and infections, and (4) ectopic lesions.

Stage of Invasion

After contact with infested water, varying degrees of swimmer's itch develop, from a slight tingling to an intolerable itching. After a month or 6 weeks, general symptoms appear, malaise, headaches, myalgic pains, fever with an occasional rigor, cough, and an urticarial rash on chest and back. When localization is vesical, loin pain is felt; if rectal, there may be diarrhea nd abdominal pain.

Stage of Oviposition

The first symptom is generally a painless hematuria, a few drops of blood seaping at the end of micturition. Occasionally the whole flow is uniformly lood tinged, and clots may be expelled. Later some frequency and precipincy show themselves, and a little deep-seated perineal pain develops. Endemic hematuria may go on for months or years without serious ill health.

Prostatic involvement may give rise to hemospermia; with rectal localization, a slight excess of mucus in formed stools may be all that is noticed, or here may be a mucoid diarrhea. Later, blood and mucus alone may be passed nd mild dysenteric symptoms occur, but there is little pain or tenesmus.

Pain and tenderness over the appendix is not uncommon, but acute appendicitis is not a recognized complication.

Stage of Tissue Reaction

As reactive fibrosis continues, various complications occur. Stricture of he urethra leads to dysuria, periurethral abscess, and fistula. The papilmatous excrescences in the bladder are matched by similar overgrowth on he vulva in women. Elephantoid deformities of the penis may occur, and the ermatic cord may become nodular and the epididymis enlarged. Ulceration f the bladder provokes recurrent attacks of cystitis, leading to hypertrophy f the bladder wall and diminution of its capacity. Vesical stones, single or multiple, are frequently associated, and add to the symptomatology.

Ectopic Lesion

Both bronchopulmonary and cardiovascular symptoms are caused by egg or adults or both in the lungs. Lung lesions are not easily distinguishabl from other nonbilharzial causes. The cardiovascular lesions produce a primary pulmonary condition resembling Ayerza's disease, but without cyanosis The electrocardiogram may show slight ventricular preponderance but no abnormal rhythm.

In the **central nervous system,** the presence of bilharzial granulomata in the brain and spinal cord may cause various local symptoms. So far those described from a cerebral localization have been vague, but acute and chronic myelitis has been proved at autopsy to be due to granulomata in the spinal cord.

In the **skin,** papules containing eggs have been noted both in Egypt and West Africa, the latter occurring in men who ran a heavy and repeated risk. They were situated on flank, loin, and scrotum and appeared about the same time as eggs in the feces.

In the **eye,** small granulomata containing eggs may be found on the ocular conjunctiva, but neither iritis nor keratitis has been reported.

General

The chronic nature of this disease, associated with blood loss and sepsis, tends to lower general vitality and predispose to more fatal diseases. The anemia is often aggravated by coincident ancylostomiasis, and the hemoglobin values in an endemic area may vary from 25 to 50 per cent. The superadded nutritional deficiency tends to produce symptoms of avitaminosis, and tuberculosis often supervenes. Apparently schistosomiasis can itself produce a prolonged pyrexia apart from complications.

DIAGNOSIS AND LABORATORY FINDINGS

The typical brownish colored terminal spined eggs are diagnostic. In size they vary from 120 to 150 microns in length and 40 to 60 microns in breadth. Though degenerate nonviable eggs are seen, more especially during treatment, there are no unfertilized eggs. Each contains a miracidium which can be seen actively moving in the egg, provided that the osmotic tension of the medium is low. Normal urine needs to be diluted by 10 in order that the egg may hatch and the miracidium escape through a transverse rupture of the shell.

Urine.—It is best to take urine passed after sharp exercise. If the urine contains no trace of albumin, eggs will not be present. This fact facilitates mass surveys. The last few drops of urine passed are most likely to contain eggs. Rectal massage of the base of the bladder will add to the chance of finding eggs in the urine. If the urine is very dilute as in cases of interstitial nephritis, the miracidia may escape in the bladder and be voided in the urine. After a severe hemorrhage, paired worms have actually been passed by the urethra.

Bladder.—Cystoscopy reveals the isolated raised "grains" and later the sandy or velvety patches, granulomata, ulcers, and calculi. If eggs have not previously been found in the urine, they may appear after the slight trauma of cystoscopy, or after rectal massage against a sound or metal catheter passed into the bladder.

Rectum.—Lesions are found in the rectum in about 3 per cent of cases showing vesical involvement. The papillomata in the pelvic colon are flat and not pedunculated as in *S. mansoni* infection. Eggs are most readily found in any mucus adhering to the fecal mass. They can be obtained by use of a rectal swab or by actual biopsy of the mucous membrane. Most eggs found in the rectum are nonviable.

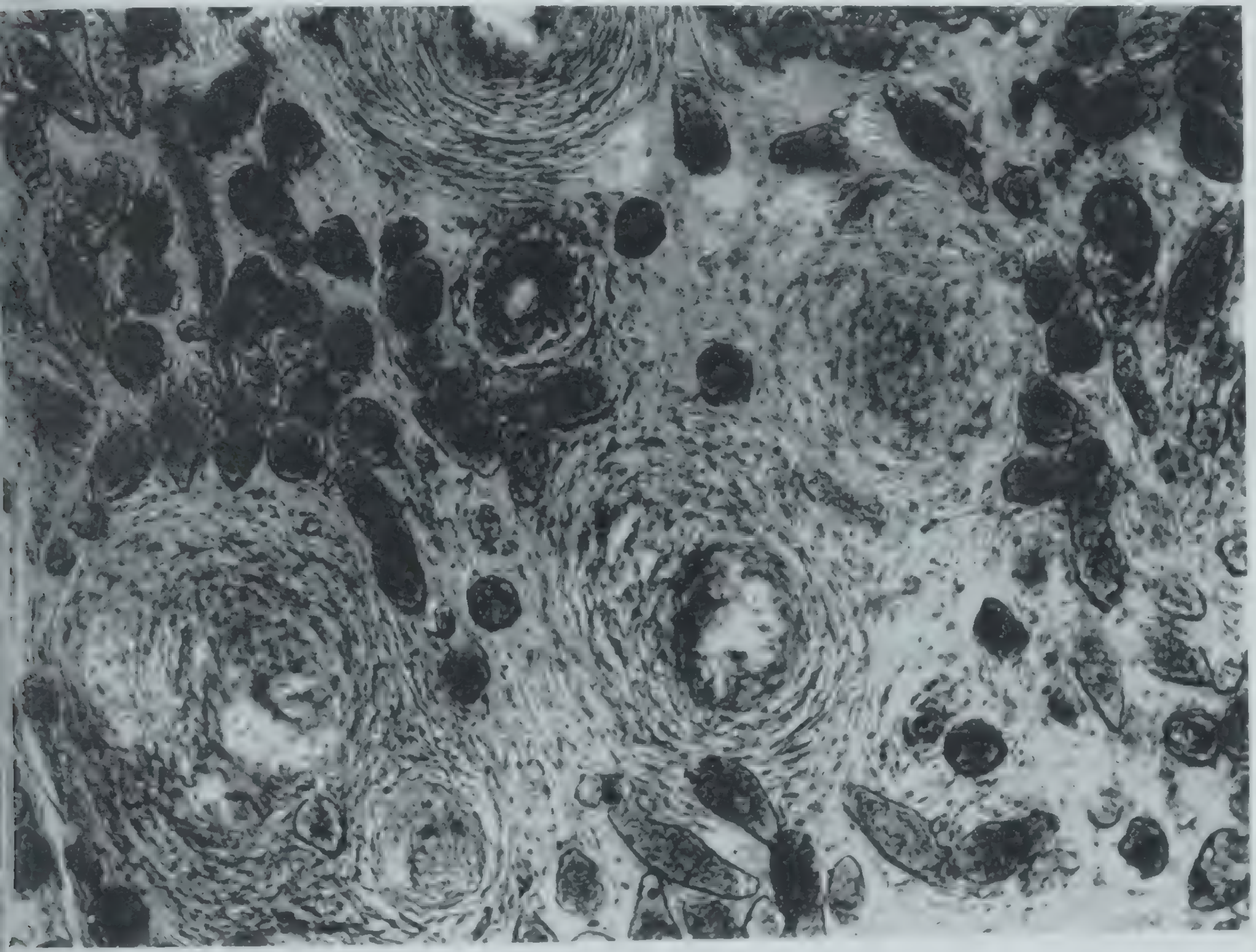


Fig. 352.—Eggs of *Schistosoma haematobium* in the appendix (case in Northern Rho-lesia). These eggs resemble in shape those of *S. intercalatum.* (Photomicrograph by A. C. ovett-Campbell.)

Skin Test.—Alves and Blair (1946) have made a more specific antigen from ercariae and so improved the original technic of Fairley and Williams (1931). dose of 0.01 c.c. injected intradermally causes the initial wheal to increase p to 9-fold in diameter with outrunners and a surrounding erythema in all ositive cases. This test is useful in mass surveys, it is never negative in those ctually passing eggs, and uncovers a higher proportion of cases than repeated rine or fecal examinations.

In cases with granulomata in the skin, eggs can be found by biopsy.

Liver. A small bored double trocar can be used for liver puncture and ay reveal eggs, especially in patients with hepatomegaly.

Blood.—Hemoglobin levels may fall as low as 15 to 20 per cent, but mi infections cause little anemia.

Eosinophilia may reach as high a figure as 50 to 60 per cent in the i vasion period but usually remains between 7 and 15 per cent in chronic i fections.

Complement Fixation.—Fairley first used alcoholic extracts of snail live infected with *S. mansoni* cercariae, from which by evaporation he obtained a antigen. A saline extract of this can be used as for the quantitative Wasse mann reaction. It is a group schistosoma reaction and remains positive onl as long as living worms persist in the host. This is a valuable control of e fectiveness of treatment.

TREATMENT

The administration of an effective anthelminthic must be the primary ai in treatment, but as these may be somewhat drastic, very debilitated an anemic patients should be hospitalized and prepared by suitable diet and eve blood transfusions if necessary. Pyogenic infections of the urogenital organ should be controlled with sulfonamides.

Inorganic Antimonials

Tartar Emetic.—Potassium antimony tartrate (P.A.T.). This drug wa first successfully used in the treatment of kala-azar and it was tried out b Christopherson in 1918. He considered that it acts directly on the eggs whic soon become degenerate and nonviable. Fairley, however, considered that i acts first on the female reproductive organs and later poisons the worms. I is usually given by intravenous injection, using a freshly prepared aqueou solution of 0.5 to 1.0 per cent with or without the addition of saline or glucose

When dealing with large clinics, a fresh stock solution can be sterilize by boiling for not more than 10 minutes. A convenient method for mor limited use is to have small tablets of 5 and 10 cg. each, from which freshl prepared solutions can be made by adding sterile distilled water, 1 c.c. pe centigram. Dosage will then vary from 5 to 15 c.c. (5 to 15 cg.) for men, 3 t 10 c.c. (3 to 10 cg.) for women, and 2 to 8 c.c. (2 to 8 cg.) for children.

After the first 2 injections of smaller doses at 3-day intervals, the full dose can be attained and repeated twice weekly. A total of 2 Gm. for an adult male of average weight is necessary in order to hope to kill off the worms. This requires 12 to 15 injections lasting 4 to 5 weeks. It is important that the course should not be interrupted, as the worms are apt to recover.

A *more intensive treatment* has been advocated by Alves and Blair. Usin sodium antimony tartrate, they claim to be able to reduce the duration o treatment to 24 or 30 hours. They used a solution of 1 gr. of S.A.T. in 10 c.c. of 5 per cent glucose (approximately 0.5 per cent) and gave injections every 3 hours. Doses of 1 to 2.5 gr. are given through a fine needle at a speed no greater than 2 c.c. per minute. The total dose was calculated at 1 gr. to 12 pounds' weight.

This method, though apparently effective in quickly banishing viable ggs and rendering the skin test negative, is nevertheless somewhat drastic, nd, in view of the toxicity of the drug, must be used with care. As standard reatments so frequently fail to cure, some more intensive modification is de-irable until more specific drugs are available.

Toxic Effects of Inorganic Antimony.—The most obvious disadvantage f these drugs is the intense reaction they produce in the tissues if there is any scape around the vein which is being injected, and phlebalgia, quite apart rom such accidents. General toxic effects are headache, nausea, vomiting, heumatic pains, erythema, and desquamation of the skin. A violent fit of oughing is often precipitated, and old standing lesions of pulmonary tubercu-osis may be reactivated. Overdose may produce diarrhea and damage to liver nd kidneys.

During a course of treatment, alteration in the electrocardiogram tracings f the heart have been noted, indicating a toxic action on the heart muscle. Bradycardia may be followed by auricular fibrillation which may end in sudden death.

Other Methods of Giving Tartar Emetic.—

Rectally: Rectal retention enemata have been used and deserve further trial.

Orally: Keratin-coated pastilles have been used and good results claimed y Rincones (1945) in cases of *S. mansoni* infection. Dosage was about 2 cg. per 10 kg., given in 2 or 3 doses within 24 hours.

The author has found that tartar emetic can be given orally in solution, oses of 1 gr. three times daily being gradually tolerated without nausea or omiting.

Organic Antimonials

Fuadin (Stibophen, Neoantimosan) is a trivalent organic compound - ntimony pyrocatechin sodium disulfonate containing 13.6 per cent of anti-ony. It has the advantage that it can be given intramuscularly. It is put p in 7 per cent solution in ampules, and after preliminary injections of 1.5 .c. and 3.5 c.c., doses of 5 c.c. are given on alternate days to a total of 45 c.c. or an adult, and proportionate doses for children.

Anthiomaline (lithium antimony thiomalate) is another trivalent com-ound containing 5 per cent of antimony. It can be given either intravenously intramuscularly in doses of 2 c.c. of a 6 per cent solution on alternate days a total of 20 c.c.

Though the toxicity of these organic antimonials appears to be somewhat ss than tartar emetic, they are correspondingly slightly less effective.

Other Drugs

Emetine, by intramuscular injection, is a general protoplasmic poison hich is effective against various trematodes as well as against *Endamoeba* *histolytica.* It can be given in doses of 0.5 to 1 gr., if antimony is contrain cated. Toxic symptoms, tachycardia, and muscular weakness may occur about the tenth dose.

Miracil D (Nilodin) is a thioxanthane derivative (1 methyl-4-dieth amino-ethylamino thioxanthane). It is a yellow powder soluble up to 2 p cent in water at room temperature. This drug has been recently synthesiz and tested in the search for one which will be effective by oral administratio Blair et al. (1949) have found that in southern Rhodesia it cures 90 per ce of cases of urinary infection with *S. haematobium* among native school childre The course recommended is a total daily dose, given in 2 portions, mornin and evening, of from 15 to 25 mg. per kg. of body weight.

The results are distinctly encouraging and, though some refractory cas occur, there is little toxic manifestation.

Test of Cure

Absence of eggs, red cells, or albumin from the urine for 3 months afte treatment is presumptive evidence of cure. Confirmation should be sough by noting the absence of any new tubercles on cystoscopy and a negative ski antigen test.

SCHISTOSOMIASIS INTERCALATA

DEFINITION

Schistosomiasis intercalata is a chronic disease caused by infestation of th inferior mesenteric veins by adult *Schistosoma intercalatum,* the eggs of whic produce mild dysenteric and possibly other symptoms but never invade th genitourinary organs.

HISTORY

It is well recognized that in about 3 per cent of cases of infestation with *S. haematobiu* eggs are found in the feces as well as in the urine. Clapier (1920) observed 5 patients in th Congo in whom terminal spined eggs were found exclusively in the feces and not in the urine

Chesterman (1923) reported 13 similar cases from Yakusu near Stanleyville, Belgia Congo, and called attention to the different shape of the eggs which were larger, more spindl shaped, and carried a more pronounced terminal spine than typical eggs of *S. haematobium* He recovered 3 adult males and 1 female from a limited autopsy. The wall of the pelvic colo was packed with eggs, but none were found in the vesical mucosa. Bifid-tailed cercariae wer found in local snails which were identified as *Bulinus africana.*

Fisher (1934), working at Yakusu, made a full study of this schistosome and, on the basis of its invariable and exclusive intestinal localization and the size and shape of its eggs found in the feces of human patients and laboratory infected mice, suggested that this was a new species which he named *Schistosoma intercalatum.*

CAUSAL AGENT

Schistosoma Intercalatum Fisher, 1934 (?)

The adult worms, as bred in white mice, are indistinguishable morphologically from *S. haematobium* on the one hand and *S. bovis* on the other.

The *male* measures 11 to 14 mm. in length by 0.3 to 0.4 mm. in width when not unfolded. The testes vary from 3 to 5 in number, usually 4. The *mature female* is 10 to 14 mm. lon with a maximum diameter of 0.15 to 0.18 mm. The eggs are intermediate in shape and si between those of *S. haematobium* and *S. bovis.*

Fig. 353.

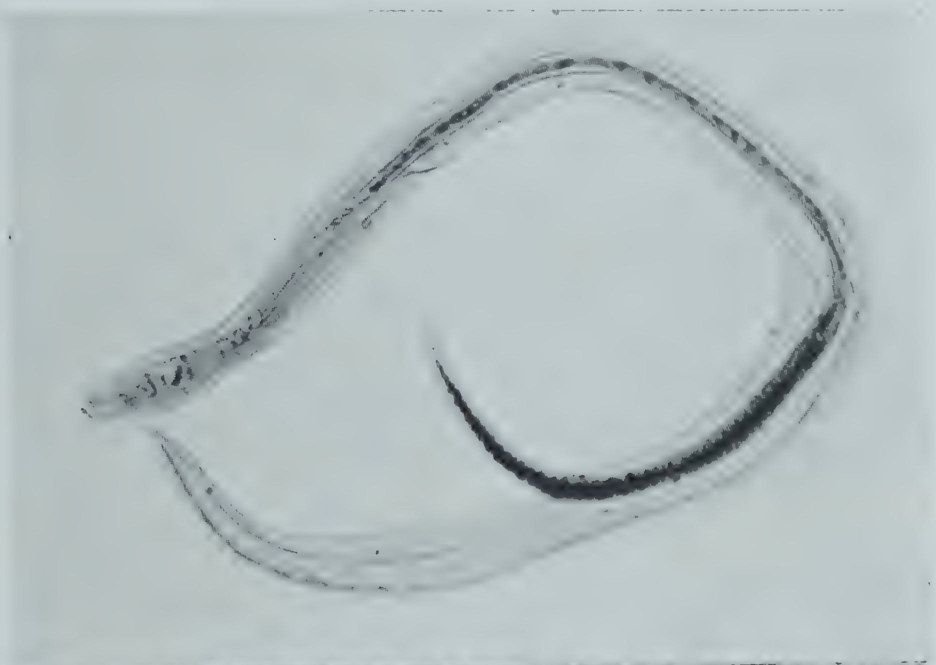


Fig. 354.

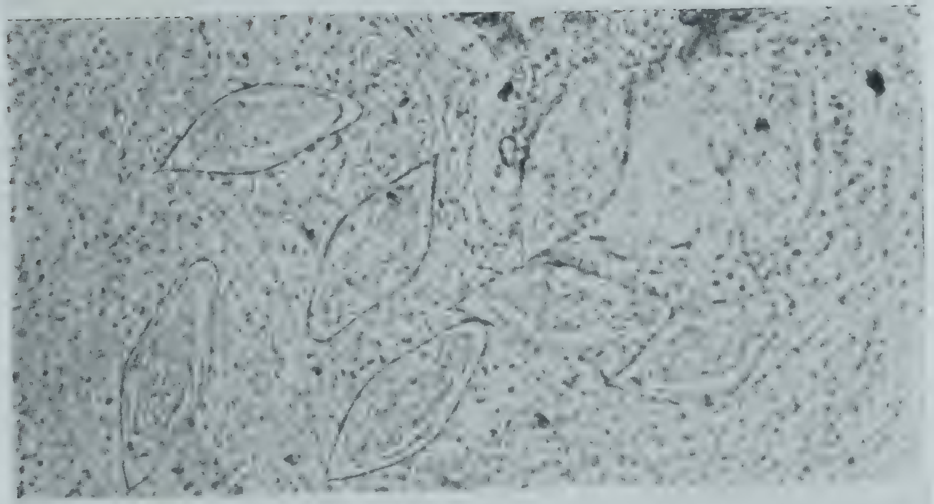


Fig. 355.

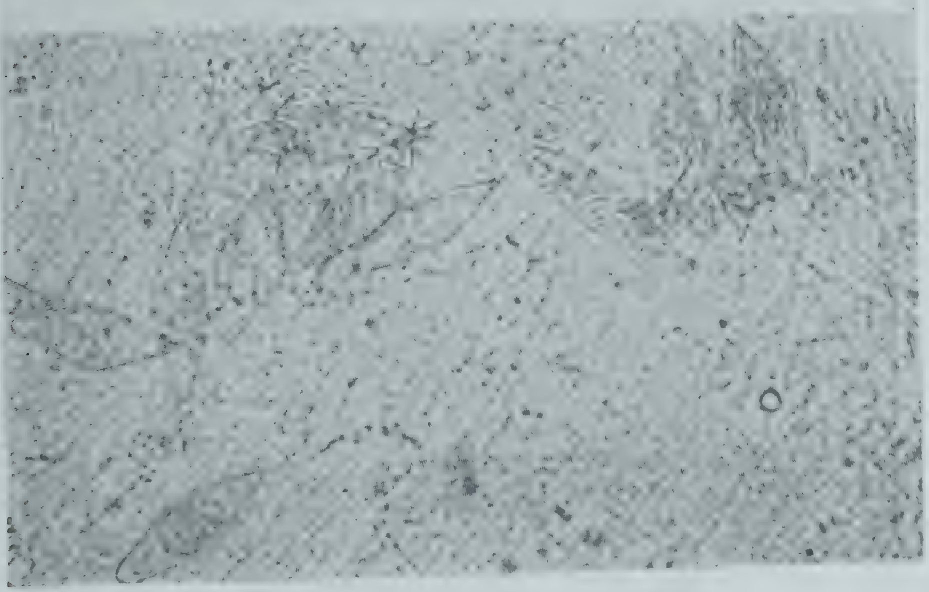


Fig. 353.—Male and female of *Schistosoma intercalatum* in copula. Fixed by lacto-phenol. ×14.) (Experimental mouse.) Note cecum in posterior ⅕ only. (Courtesy of Fisher, A. C. 34. Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. 28: 277-306; by permission of the author.)

Fig. 354.—Eggs of *Schistosoma intercalatum* in feces of man. (×135.) (Courtesy of sher, A. C.: 1934. Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. 28: 277-306; by permission of the author.)

Fig. 355.—Immature eggs of *Schistosoma intercalatum* in the intestinal wall of an ex-rimentally infested mouse. (×135.) (Courtesy of A. C. Fisher, A. C.: 1934. Tr. Roy. Soc. rop. Med. & Hyg. 28: 277-306; by permission of the author.)

The Vector

Fisher, though unsuccessful in attempts to infect the local snails with miracidia, rea ily obtained bifid-tailed cercariae from 2 to 3 per cent of the prevalent *B. africana* whic infested the small creeks along the Congo river. These readily grew to adults in white mice.

PATHOLOGY

Sigmoidoscopy reveals characteristic lesions between the anal canal an the pelvirectal junction. The affected mucosa has a granular appearance re sembling coarse sandpaper appearance, being studded with petechial papule varying in size from a pinhead to 4 cm. Neither ulceration nor polypi was ob served. Cystoscopy has never revealed any bladder pathology.

CLINICAL SYMPTOMS

In the endemic area a fecal census revealed a 96 per cent infestation rate in the lower age group, but eggs were rarely found in the group over 30 years. The centrifuged urine of 100 infected persons was uniformly negative for eggs. The *invasion period* in native children is not marked by any urticarial symptoms. The *splenic index* is no higher than in controls, but hepatomegaly is frequently noticed.

Stage of Oviposition

Symptoms are generally much less severe than in other forms of bilharziasis. Abdominal pain and mucosanguineous dysentery without toxemia are the usual complaints. From the localization of the parasites in the mesenteric veins one would not expect pulmonary manifestations as readily as in *S. haematobium* infestation, and it has not been proved that they actually occur. There is no reason why they should not, as *S. mansoni,* also an inhabitant of the mesenteric veins, is not uncommonly found in the lungs, as also are its eggs. Eggs have never been found in the sputum, though this is occasionally blood-stained in cases of pneumonitis occuring in young folk with rectal infection. The author has seen one case which clinically appeared to suggest a cerebral localization.

Cases of hepatosplenomegaly also occur suggesting a resemblance to the visceral schistosomiasis of *S. mansoni* infestation.

In the few cases diagnosed among Europeans, the only symptoms were abdominal discomfort and the passage of blood and mucus.

IMMUNOLOGY

A certain degree of acquired immunity to reinfestation is suggested by the failure to infect adult volunteers in an endemic area. They rarely manifest any symptoms.

LABORATORY FINDINGS

The characteristic eggs are readily seen in intestinal mucus, whether clean or scraped from the surface of the fecal mass. A rectal swab, a gentle curettage through a proctoscope, will often reveal eggs.

TREATMENT

Inorganic antimony gives similar results to those obtained in *S. haematobium* infestation. There is no record of a trial of organic antimonials or of Miracil D in this disease.

Acriflavine, 2 per cent aqueous solution, given orally, has proved moderately effective in this type of schistosomiasis. Doses of 2 to 10 c.c. according to age were given on an empty stomach on 5 successive days. Eggs disappeared from the feces in 3 to 6 days. Degenerate eggs are rarely seen. It is not known whether this treatment kills the schistosomes, but it is sufficient to alleviate symptoms, can be easily given and repeated if necessary, and is not attended with the disadvantages of antimonial treatment.

References

Alves, W., and Blair, D. M.: 1946. Schistosomiasis; Intensive Treatment With Antimony, Lancet **1**: 9-12.

Blair, D. M., et al.: 1949. Urinary Schistosomiasis Treated With Miracil D, Lancet **1**: 344-346.

Chesterman, C. C.: 1933. Note sur la bilharziose de la région de Stanleyville, Congo Belge, Ann. Soc. belge de méd. trop. **3**: 73.

Clapier, P. N.: 1920. Contribution à l'étude de la répartition des bilharzioses en Afrique Equatoriale Française, Bull. Soc. path. exot. **13**: 804.

Fairley, N. H., and Williams: 1931. Intradermal Skin Tests and the Cercarial Complement Fixation Reaction in Schistosomiasis, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **24**: 366-368.

Faust, E. C.: 1948. An Inquiry Into the Ectopic Lesions in Schistosomiasis, Am. J. Trop. Med. **28**: 175-179.

Fisher, A. C.: 1934. A Study of the Schistosomiasis of the Stanleyville District of the Belgian Congo, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **28**: 277-306.

Lovett-Campbell, A. C.: 1948. Note on Bilharziasis in West African Troops, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **41**: 821-822.

Rincones, P. G.: 1945. Stibioterapia per os, Gac. méd. de Caracas **53**: 127-141.

CHAPTER 47

SCHISTOSOMIASIS MANSONI

J. Allen Scott

The blood fluke, *Schistosoma mansoni,* causes a disease correctly known schistosomiasis mansoni, but frequently called intestinal bilharziasis or int tinal bilharziosis.

It occurs in many parts of Africa and in certain tropical regions of the West Hemisphere, notably in Brazil, Dutch Guiana, Venezuela, and some of the Antilles east Haiti. Since it is transmitted by only a few species of snail vectors, the geographic tribution of the disease is limited by the distribution of these vectors and, with a exceptions to be mentioned later, the disease now occurs wherever appropriate snails present.

The manifestations of the disease are related principally to the passa of the parasite eggs through the intestinal mucosa, and their accumulati in the liver, to which they are carried by the portal circulation. In respect pathogenesis, schistosomiasis mansoni resembles schistosomiasis japonica mo closely than it does schistosomiasis haematobia, while its geographic distributi overlaps that of the latter.

CAUSAL AGENT

Schistosoma Mansoni Sambon, 1907

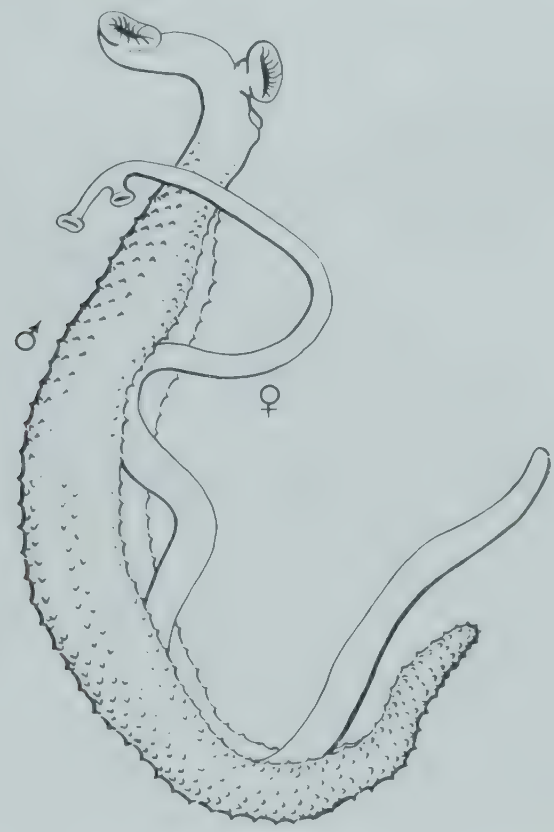
Synonyms.—*Distoma haematobium* Bilharz, 1852, *pro parte,* Bilharz, Looss, et *Schitosomum americanum* da Silva, 1909.

The *adult worms* of *S. mansoni* differ from those of the other species of the genus minute but distinctive characters which have little importance from the clinical point view, since specific diagnosis is almost invariably determined by the type of eggs fou in the discharges or in pathologic material. The *female worms* are very slender a thread-like, averaging approximately 0.33 mm. in diameter and about 1 to 1.5 cm. length. The *males* are somewhat shorter and thicker, averaging slightly less than 1 cm. length and about 0.5 mm. in diameter when measured with the folds of the gynecopho canal rolled inward to form a tube. The adult worms inhabit principally the venules those branches of the portal vein which drain the colon and rectum. It has been common supposed that the female worm remains almost constantly held in the gynecophoric can of the male, but Faust, Jones, and Hoffman (1934) state that permanent pairing appe to be the exception rather than the rule, at least in their experimental animals. The eg are laid singly or a few at a time in the terminal and subterminal venules of the su mucosa.

The fate of these eggs after they are deposited in the venules is quite diverse, bu for purposes of discussion they can be considered in three groups. In the first place, som of the eggs are carried with the blood stream to the liver or occasionally to other organ This group of eggs serves no biologic purpose as they eventually become destroyed in t tissues, but pathologically they are of great significance. In the second place, some egg are extruded through the walls of the venules into the mucosa and eventually reach th

umen of the intestine. The eggs of the third group are similarly extruded into the mu-
osa, submucosa, or other tissues, and are there immobilized and eventually destroyed.
he mechanism by which the eggs are extruded from the venules is discussed below in connection with the pathologic damage they cause in the process.

The experiments of Faust, Jones, and Hoffman lead to the conclusion that each ma-
ure female probably lays from one hundred to several hundred eggs per day, but only a
mall fraction succeed in leaving the body of the host. Because of the number of worms
n each person and the high proportion of infected persons in endemic areas, the total
umber voided in a locality may be enormous. In many parts of Venezuela, for example,
few people were passing as many as 750,000 eggs per day; 10 per cent were passing more
han 100,000; 40 per cent more than 20,000; and 70 per cent were passing varying numbers
p to 20,000 (Scott, 1940a).



g. 356.—Drawing of adult *Schistosoma mansoni* worms showing slender female held in the gynecophoric canal of the male.

A small proportion of the worms localize in the blood vessels of the urinary bladder
d some eggs are thus passed with the urine. For the most part, however, the eggs which
rry on the life history of this species are those passed with the feces. In Egypt it was
und (Scott, 1937b) that 15 per cent of the positive cases were passing eggs in the urine
d one-third of this group passed eggs only in the urine, as far as could be determined
om routine examinations.

In appearance, the *eggs* of *S. mansoni* can be differentiated from those of other species
the very prominent lateral spine. Faust and Hoffman (1934) measured 500 live eggs
m a case in a human being and found them to average 142 microns in length, but there
a considerable variability above and below this size as shown by their coefficient of
iation of 7 per cent. As a rule, the eggs contain living larvae, but even when they
ve collapsed and the shell is rolled into a wrinkled mass, they can usually be recognized
d positively identified in microscopic preparations made for diagnostic purposes. A
v eggs are passed after they have been held in the tissues for such a long time that
larvae in them are dead. In cases which have received treatment, the eggs frequently

do not contain live larvae, but have a darkened appearance. The significance of these e as a measure of the success of treatment is mentioned below.

Hatching of the eggs is brought about when they fall into fresh water. The me anism involved in this process has been extensively studied, and although other fact may be involved, the change of osmotic pressure is probably the principal one. In laboratory, diluting the feces with distilled water, allowing them to settle, pouring off water, and repeating several times will usually cause them to hatch.

The larva which hatches from the egg is similar to those of other trematodes a is called a *miracidium*.

The life of the miracidium is seldom over 24 hours and miracidia may survive only a f hours unless they are released in the vicinity of snails which can act as intermediate ho They are attracted to the snails and swim to a position in contact with the tentacles the "foot" of the snail. Holding themselves in contact by the action of their cilia, th secrete a histolytic substance from their glands, which dissolves a portion of the exter tissues of the snail to make a point of penetration.

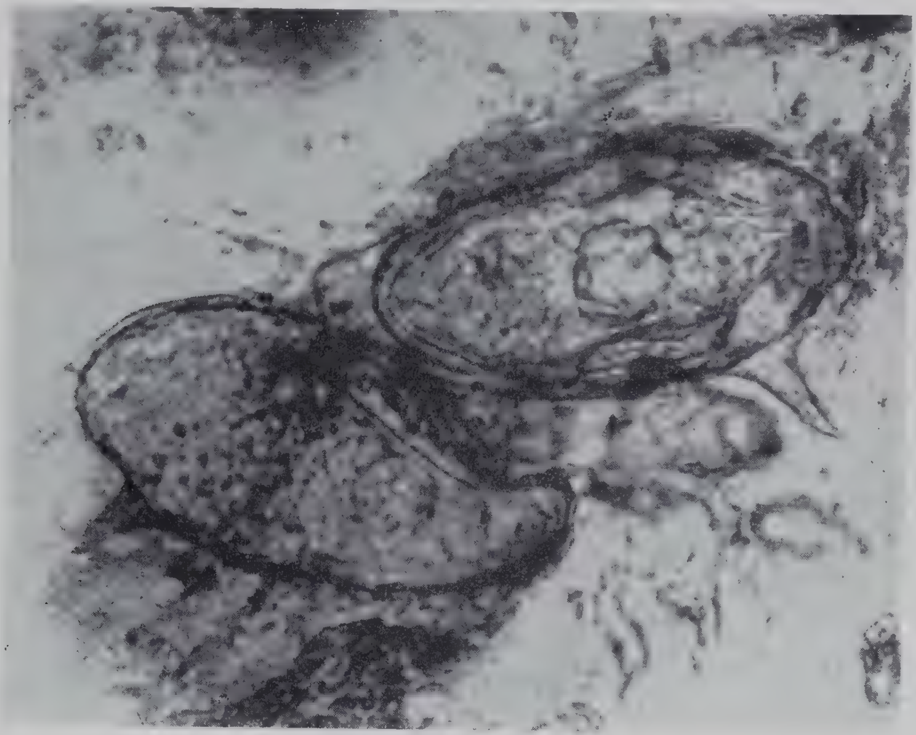


Fig. 357.—Photomicrograph of an egg of *Schistosoma mansoni* containing miracidium, and a empty egg shell. (Courtesy of Horace K. Giffen.)

Once the anterior end of the miracidium has been inserted into tissues, it continue to enter slowly by the expansion and contraction of its flexible body. Once inside the tissues the larvae begin to migrate toward the digestive gland of the snail, which is locate in the inner whorls. There it develops into a more or less sac-like organism known as *primary sporocyst*. In each primary sporocyst several *secondary sporocysts* develop. Thes break out of the primary sporocyst, and in them in turn a second type of larva know as a *cercaria* develops. At any one time the secondary sporocyst may contain a numbe of cercariae in various stages of development. As they become mature they break out o the sporocyst into the lymph spaces of the snail and eventually emerge into the water.

This development from miracidium to cercaria requires approximately 3 weeks and can be loosely called asexual reproduction since no merging of two sexual elements occurs. It seems evident that the sex of the miracidium is predetermined, since a snail infected with a single miracidium will produce cercariae of only one sex. The production of cercariae continues over a long period of time. In the case of snails infected with single miracidia, several thousand cercariae have been produced each day for periods of several months, totaling 100,000 cercariae in some cases.

In nature, the cercariae usually emerge from the snail in groups, especially in the morning. Laboratory studies indicate that the stimulus which produces this daily emergence is probably a combination of the warming water and the exposure to bright sunlight. The principal characteristic which distinguishes schistosome cercariae from those of other trematodes is the presence of a forked tail. The principal characteristics by which the cercariae of *S. mansoni* can be positively differentiated from the other two human species are the number and character of the two types of gland cells. These cells are very difficult to count, however, and in practical work there are other less critical differentiating characteristics which can be used.

The cercariae are most active during the middle of the day in shallow pools readily warmed by the sun. They rarely live in the water more than 36 hours and many have lost their vigor by the end of 24 hours. Experimentally, they have been shown to pass sand filters, but in practice, filtration and chlorination render public water supplies virtually safe. Small quantities of water can be most easily rendered safe by heating, and large quantities of unfiltered water for bathing purposes can be made safe by the alternate use of 2 storage tanks of such size that the water is held at least 48 hours before use.

Cercariae are apparently attracted to the skin of a human being by some form of chemical attraction and upon reaching it they attach themselves to the skin by means of the suckers. The tubules of the gland cells end in hollow pointed spines, which are apparently used to pierce the skin while the cercaria holds itself tightly attached by means of the oral sucker. The gland cells then secrete a histolytic substance which helps make an opening in the skin for the penetration of the cercaria. The backward-pointing spines over the body of the cercaria aid in preventing any regression as soon as the anterior end has obtained entrance into the skin. The organism is so flexible that it can enter through a very small hole. The tail does not enter the skin with the cercaria, but is sloughed off outside. It has been shown by Brackett (1939) that, if a person realizes he has exposed himself to water containing the cercariae, immediate action can be taken to prevent penetration. Various solutions have been used for this purpose but Brackett found that the most effective means was vigorous rubbing with a coarse towel. The reaction of the skin to the penetration of the cercariae is discussed below in relation to the pathology.

As soon as the cercaria has lost its tail and penetrated into the skin, it can be called a *metacercaria,* and further development of the internal organs presumably begins at once. Faust, Jones, and Hoffman (1934) have shown that in rats autopsied 16 hours after infection the larvae could be recovered only from the deeper layers of the skin. In those autopsied 22 hours after infections, worms could still be found in the corium, but most of them had passed into the blood vessels and were being carried with the blood stream to the lungs. Various lymph nodes showed lesions indicating that the larvae had passed through them. In animals autopsied at 42 hours no larvae were found in the skin, but it is not probable that all of the larvae had escaped from the peripheral tissues by this time, since at even later periods larvae were found in the right heart and the inferior vena cava. The larvae continued to accumulate in the capillaries of the lungs up to 70 hours or more. They were found for the first time in the left heart of an animal killed 86 hours fter infection, indicating that by that time they had been able to pass through the apillaries of the lungs.

As the larvae are distributed throughout the body with the blood from the left heart, many are destroyed in the capillaries, but some appear to circulate again through the heart and lungs. Those reaching the liver begin to feed, and it has been supposed that they remain there; but Faust, Jones, and Hoffman (1934) have found larvae which show signs of aving fed in the liver circulating again through the lungs. A certain amount of development occurs as soon as the larvae enter the body, but the active phases of growth and evelopment do not really begin until the larvae have reached the liver. Some larvae ppeared in the liver as early as the seventh day. On the nineteenth day they seemed o be accumulating there in large numbers for the first time, and on the twenty-third day

most of them were in the liver. At this time a few worms, about 1.5 mm. in length,
found in the mesenteric veins. From the thirtieth to the fortieth days many worms
found in the mesenteric veins, but not until the forty-seventh day were any of them f
to be mature. Since the animals used for these experiments are not natural hosts of
species, it is not certain how nearly the conditions duplicate those present in human
ings. It is interesting to note in passing that at a time when most of the worms
found in the mesenteric veins a few immature forms were frequently found in the lu
They were usually in the alveoli and were invariably surrounded by neutrophiles, eos
philes, and macrophages. The authors mentioned above report that an assistant, who
cidentally infected himself in the laboratory, passed eggs for the first time on the fo
second day, and that the similar prepatent period for worms in experimental animals
slightly longer.

THE VECTORS

Many species of snails have been listed as vectors of *S. mansoni.* Lane (1936) has
vided a summary of the literature in this field. Since it is difficult to differentiate between
cercariae of the different species of human and animal schistosomes, it is possible that
fection with *S. mansoni* has been erroneously reported for many species of snails. A furt
complication is the fact that the taxonomy of the snails of this group is still very much
flux and various authorities in the field do not agree on which names should be used. It see
probable that all of the vectors of *S. mansoni* belong to what was originally the ge
Planorbis. The principal vector in Egypt and some other parts of Africa is *P. boissyi.*
other parts of Africa *P. pfeifferi* is the principal snail involved. When *S. mansoni* was f
found in snails in the Western Hemisphere, Lutz (1916) incriminated *P. olivaceus* in Bra
and later (1917) reported the infection from several other species of the same genus. Itu
and Gonzalez (1917) meanwhile had reported the vector in Venezuela to be *P. guadeloupen*
Since then these names have been changed. The genus has been divided and no Americ
snails bear the name Planorbis.

Pilsbry (1934) described the genus Australorbis which includes all verified natural v
tors. He also showed that *P. glabratus* Say, 1818, is the same as *P. guadeloupensis* Sower
1821, hence the former name is now used along with the new generic name Australorbis. Si
then several studies (Martins, 1938; Scott, 1940b) have shown that all of the vectors
ported for the Western Hemisphere intergrade and, therefore, should be considered as the sa
species, *Australorbis glabratus.* Jansen (1944) does not accept this latter conclusion, but
seems likely that the differences involved may prove to be no more than geographic, ecolog
or physiologic races.

Wherever a large percentage of the population is infected, the snails are usually fou
with ease, and elsewhere the case reports must be substantiated by collections of snails ma
by recognized authorities, or by specimens deposited where they will be available for study.

In Brazil, the snails and the infection occur along the east coast and back into t
interior for only a few hundred miles, from a point somewhat north of Rio northward
the state of Ceará. They are not present in the Amazon valley nor in the interior to th
south, although imported cases have been erroneously reported as indigenous to these r
gions. The snails and the schistosomes are present in Dutch Guiana, but not in Britis
or French Guiana. In Venezuela the infection is limited by the distribution of the sna
to the north central part of the country (Scott, 1942), although a small focus probably d
exist at one time in Cumaná in eastern Venezuela. Reports of cases of the disease west
the basin of Lake Valencia in north central Venezuela are all based on infections co
tracted elsewhere, as are those reported in the countries of South America further wes
Among the cases reported from Central and North America, none has proved to be in
digenous. In the West Indies the distribution is again spotted. No infection has bee
reported from Trinidad, and the snails are apparently uncommon there, although Faus
(1935) stated that they had been found. With the exception of St. Lucia, where a sma
focus may possibly exist, the snail vectors do not occur east of Martinique where the
are abundant. On Guadeloupe proper, Bartsch (1946) did not find them, but they

abundant on the island called Grand Terre. They are present on Antigua and St. Kitts. This latter island is interesting in that wild monkeys of African origin are infected. The human beings are also infected here, so it is not known whether these animals really play a part in the epidemiology of the infection. This is the only case on record of animals being infected with this species under natural conditions in the Western Hemisphere. The infection is present in Puerto Rico and Vieques Island, but is not indigenous in the Virgin Islands or the Bahamas. In the Dominican Republic the disease has been reported, but if it is indigenous, its distribution is limited. The snails have not been found in extensive surveys of Haiti, Cuba, or Jamaica.

The possibility of introduction of the disease into new areas is an important question, and one which has received considerable study in the United States during the war because of the return of servicemen infected in various parts of the world. These studies have centered on the possibility that the infection might become adapted to some species of snails now present in the United States. The other possibility that the known vectors can spread into new areas is also of importance and is discussed below. Of the very large series of species tested as possible hosts of *S. mansoni,* only one species has proved to be at all susceptible (Cram, Jones, and Wright, 1945). Of 12 specimens of *Tropicorbis havanensis* tested, these authors were able to infect 3. Cram and Files (1945), in a later report on the same studies, state that a relatively small percentage of this species of snails proved susceptible to infection. In one case cercarial production was continued for as long as 107 days, the output increasing throughout this period and resulting in death of the snail. Stunkard (1946) tested hundreds of snails of this species using specimens which were bred from the stock used by the above authors, and apparently the same West Indian strain of *S. mansoni,* but cercariae were never obtained. The available information does not indicate that this snail has an extensive distribution in the United States. It is interesting, moreover, that Stunkard found that this West Indian strain of *S. mansoni* would not develop to the cercaria stage in Egyptian specimens of *P. boissyi,* the usual vector in Egypt. His final conclusion is that there is little likelihood that the human schistosomes will be established in the U. S., but he makes what seems to be a valid point that this adaptability of trematodes is a matter which should be taken into consideration. On the other hand there are also other limiting factors mentioned below in connection with a discussion of the epidemiologic cycle.

The possibility that the present vectors may extend their range is a matter deserving consideration. Little is known of the factors which now imit their distribution, but certain facts are of interest. Wherever any species of schistosome is really common and widespread, irrigation is practiced. In Egypt *S. haematobium* infects a high percentage of the population only in regions of perennial irrigation (Scott, 1937c). Most of the enormous number of cases in China occur in irrigated regions of the Yangtze Valley (Faust and Meleney, 1924). Recent reports from Japan and the Philippine Islands reveal the importance of irrigation there. In Venezuela it is doubtful if the snails would maintain themselves long in the absence of irrigation, except in Lake Valencia where they do not transmit the infection (Scott, 1942). In Puerto Rico the infection is exclusively associated with irrigation projects (Hoffman and Faust, 1934), while in Brazil the most serious infection is again in irrigated regions of the northeast. In other parts of Brazil, as in the unirrigated parts of other countries, the infection is either light, localized, or reported from areas where inadequate information is available.

Even where irrigation is not a limiting factor, sharp limits to the distribution of the vectors have often been observed, but not adequately explained n Egypt, for example, *Planorbis boissyi* is present in the delta of the Nile, but not in the valley just above. In Venezuela, the western and southern limits of the distribution of Australorbis are rather sharp, but beyond them Tropicorbis is abundant in environments which differ in none of the many physical and chemical factors which have been studied (Scott, 1940a). These and other similar observations give us a strong hope but no proof that the present vectors will not spread to new areas. Certainly the introduction or extension of irrigation projects in regions where the infection now exists is the factor which should be of greatest concern to public health authorities.

Reduction of the snail population seems to be the most hopeful means of controlling schistosomiasis, but this method can usually be successful only when used in conjunction with other possible methods. The applicability of these various methods is related to the factors in the epidemiologic cycle. Each of these factors is essential to the continuance of the cycle and, could one be eliminated, the disease would thereby be brought under control.

Except for the minor case already mentioned, animals are not infected in nature and infection of human beings is, therefore, the first essential factor in the epidemiology of schistosomiasis. To control the disease by reducing the amount of infection in the human population has been the object of the mass treatment program which the Egyptian government has carried out through the last quarter century. Although this program has been valuable in preventing many cases from reaching the serious advanced stages, it has failed to control the disease, as is evidenced by the lack of any effect on the prevalence of infection (Scott and Barlow, 1938).

The second factor in the cycle is the pollution of water. Sanitation may be the ultimate means by which this disease is brought under control. The difficulties of introducing sanitation into many parts of the world and the still greater difficulties of insuring that a large proportion of the people use these facilities are so great, however, that ultimate control by this means is obviously a matter for the far distant future.

The third factor has already been mentioned, namely, the fact that transmitting snails must be present in the water which becomes polluted. It is this factor which seems most susceptible to modification for the purpose of controlling the disease. Eliminating the snails from an area will interrupt the cycle of the disease. What is more important, it seems highly probable that if the number of snails is maintained at a low level, the chances of infection will be so low that the cycle will slow down and finally reach a point where transmission is not adequate to maintain the species. For this reason many studies have been made on the biology of these snails, and control measures based upon these studies have been proposed (Barlow, 1937; Scott, 1940a; Luttermoser and Castellaños, 1945). Chemical means for eliminating the snails are of value in limited areas. Humphreys (1932) reports that in the Gezira area of the Sudan a commercial carbolic acid was introduced into the irrigation canals and served as a very important part in the reduction of snails in that area. Archibald (1933a) has pointed out that the fruit of the tree *Balanites aegyptiaca* is toxic to snails and the possible uses of this fruit have been widely discussed. No large scale experiments have been undertaken and it is not likely to become an important factor in control. Pinto (1944) has undertaken experiments to demonstrate that other plants can be used as a means of control. For snails living in acid waters, such as the vectors of *S. japonicum*, the use of lime is undoubtedly of value. Luttermoser (1941) has had some success in using lime for killing Australorbis in Venezuela, even though they live in alkaline water with a considerable lime content. In the laboratory, copper sulfate can be used in a dilution which will kill snails without harming valuable fish. In nature, however, the presence of varying amounts of organic matter in the water limits the use of this chemical to small bodies of water where the proper dose can be determined by a preliminary test. Where no valuable fish, domestic animals, or human beings will be affected, an excess can be introduced. Copper carbonate introduced for the control of schistosome dermatitis in the U. S. (Brackett, 1939) is somewhat more useful in that it is so slightly soluble in water that an excess can be used without producing too great a concentration in solution. The chief difficulty in the way of using chemical means of control is, however, that the quantity of water in irrigation systems is so great that adequate distribution to all parts of the system is virtually an impossibility. As an adjunct to other means of control it can be very important.

Since the vectors of *S. mansoni* are all strictly aquatic rather than amphibious, as are those of *S. japonicum*, periodic drying of irrigation canals has long been considered a possible means of control. In Egypt Leiper (1915) suggested this means, but Barlow (1933) showed that snails, drying in the canal bottom as the moisture slowly disappears, protect themselves with a plug of mucus, and do not die as quickly as they do when dried on a laboratory table. Many snails will live in the canals without water throughout the usual 40-day period of "winter rotation." Moreover, snails appearing dry and dead at the end of this 40-day period were transferred on the dried mud to a dry, shaded place exposed to the normally high Egyptian temperature. At the end of 4, 5, and 6 months, respectively, some of these snails were put in water, and in each case a few revived and later laid eggs (Barlow, 1935). Archibald (1933a) has confirmed these observations for the Sudan and noticed that there the snails are especially apt to pass through dry periods in the deep cracks which appear in dried mud. The author has observed that *A. glabratus* is also similarly protected from drying in Venezuela.

A system of control called "canal clearance" has been worked out by Barlow (1937) in Egypt. On a regular schedule the aquatic plants and the top layer of mud from the canal bottom is thrown out on the bank. The quick exposure to the sun kills most of the snails and the absence of plant growth in the canals prevents rapid breeding of those that find their way back into the canal. As a means of control this system is economically feasible since irrigation practice is thereby improved. In Venezuela this system is not practical, however, partly because of the topography and partly because large aquatic plants are not usually present in the canal, and the snails commonly feed on a thin film of algae lining the sides of the canals (Scott, 1940a).

The most important part of a control program proposed for Venezuela (Scott, 1940a) is the elimination or reduction of snails by building them out of the irrigation system. Methods of canal construction used for purposes of malaria control need to be only slightly modified to fit the biologic conditions under which these snails breed. The changes should eliminate residual pools which remain when irrigation water is not flowing, and provide for complete draining of all canals whenever they are not in actual use. Provision for more prompt and complete draining of the surplus water from the fields would also be necessary. All of the available evidence indicates that if the snails were removed by manual or chemical methods from the places where they are most abundant, they would not be able to re-establish themselves in an irrigation system which is properly constructed and maintained. Reduction in cost of maintenance and the increase yield to be expected should pay for the reconstruction and the necessary supervision, as has been adequately demonstrated in connection with malaria control projects. Luttermoser and Castellaños (1945) have extended these observations and confirmed the conclusions by additional experimentation.

The next factor in the epidemiologic cycle of schistosomiasis can be called ''favorable conditions.'' These conditions are much too extensive to discuss here, but they include both known and unknown environmental factors which must be added to the factors already discussed before there can be development of cercariae.

Finally, to complete the cycle to the point of additional human infection, there must be human contact with the water containing cercariae. Under tropical conditions it is inconceivable to think that laborers will irrigate fields without making such contacts. Their contacts at the most critical places could be reduced, however, and the provision of a safe supply of domestic water would eliminate the contacts made by women and children when engaged in household tasks.

There are many points in this epidemiologic cycle at which control may be applied. The best point for each area and the method of applying the control at each point will need to be determined by the local conditions. It would now seem that ultimate control in any area should be merely a matter of sufficient study to develop a program adapted to the local conditions, and sufficient money to apply it. In many places the resulting economic improvement will be sufficient to ultimately cover the cost.

PATHOLOGY

The pathology of schistosomiasis mansoni has received a great deal of study for more than half a century, and the literature is so vast that only a few representative papers can be mentioned here. Clinical discussions usually follow the classification of Girges (1932) who divided his cases into two types, the intestinal, and the hepatic or visceral. Koppisch (1941) believes that from the pathologic point of view these two types are merely two stages in the full development of the disease. This classification has arisen because most cases seen by clinicians are already well advanced and fall into two more or less distinct groups.

In those whose symptoms are primarily associated with an intestinal pathology, it seems reasonably clear that damage to the liver has not had time to develop. In the other group, the obvious manifestations of a pathologic derangement of the liver outweigh the significance of any intestinal symptoms that may still be present.

There is undoubtedly much variability between patients as to the severity of the intestinal symptoms and as to the length of time before they are superseded or overshadowed by the more slowly developing liver damage. This variation is probably related to the immune state of the individual. It should not be forgotten that this parasite, in common with most other helminths, does not multiply in the body, and, therefore, the number of worms acquired and the rate of acquisition is of great importance in determining the type of pathologic damage. A person receiving a large dose of worms on his first exposure reacts differently from one who has spent his entire life in an endemic area and has acquired his worms a few at a time since early childhood (Hutchison, 1928). Direct evidence of immunity in this disease is lacking, but many aspects indicate that the situation may be fundamentally similar to that demonstrated in hookworm disease. The slow acquisition of hookworms over a long period of time stimulates an immunity which not only prevents the acquisition of further infection, but may cause many of the worms already established to be expelled. The similarity between the two diseases could be masked by factors related to the different habitats of the two species. The hookworms, being located in the intestine, may frequently be dislodged by influences which are not severe enough to kill them. More important, however, is the fact that even in hookworm disease the immunity is not absolute, but a few worms are usually left after the majority have been lost. With no quantitative methods applicable to schistosomiasis, the continued passage of eggs by a few remaining worms might hide a great reduction in their numbers. Furthermore, the schistosomes have a much greater span of life, and their most serious effects build up more slowly. Once the damage reaches a certain point, it continues to progress even in the absence of further stimulation and is not as easily reparable after the worms have been killed.

The fundamental pathologic effects of this disease can be roughly divided into four types: First, the cercariae in penetrating the skin cause some temporary damage. Second, the adult worms occasionally cause serious reactions, especially when in unusual locations. Third, many effects have been attributed to toxins or metabolic products of the worms, even though no specific toxin has been demonstrated. Finally, the most serious and extensive damage is due to the deposit of eggs in the tissues.

The reactions caused by the penetration of the cercariae through the skin are seldom serious unless secondary infections arise through scratching of the lesions.

The dermatitis is similar to the so-called *swimmers' itch* caused by the penetration of nonhuman schistosomes in many parts of the world including the northern United States (Cort, 1928). Barlow (1936) applied water containing cercariae of *S. mansoni* to the skin of 8 persons already infected with this species and found that an itching sensation began in all cases in from 1 to 6 minutes. There was considerable variability as to how severe the itching finally became, but in most cases it became more intense after a few minutes. Soon after application the area became swollen and red. The swelling subsided later, leaving a papule at each point of entrance. An extensive dermatitis is frequently seen on the legs of men who sit in the water working a hand pump for purposes of irrigation. The reaction subsides in a few days unless there is a secondary infection.

When situated in their normal habitat in the veins of the mesenteric plexus, **the adult worms** cause very little direct pathologic damage. Occasionally they incite reactions in the walls of the veins, and, especially in the case of dead worms, the veins may become obliterated. These reactions appear to be rare, however, and their significance is relatively slight in comparison with the other types of damage usually seen in the same cases. When the worms are located in unusual situations they are often the cause of much more obvious damage. Only in the lungs do such reactions occur at all frequently. The possibility that occasional young worms return to the lungs after starting their growth in the liver and complete their growth in the pulmonary tissues has not been thoroughly investigated. Most cases with pulmonary infections, however, are well-advanced cases with severe liver damage, making possible the passage of adult worms into the pulmonary circulation through anastomoses between the portal system and the radicles of the hepatic vein. The constricting periarteritis about these worms may gravely impede the pulmonary circulation with consequent strain on the heart (Day, 1937). These conditions are generally preceded, however, by severe pathologic damage in other organs, and the patients already have a very poor prognosis.

Most pathologists who have made an intensive study of schistosomiasis believe that either **toxins** secreted by the worms, or **metabolic products** of the worms, play a large part in this disease. No specific toxins have been isolated, however, and there is no experimental evidence bearing on the effect of any particular metabolic products. The argument in favor of such action is supported almost wholly by the fact that other explanations of the observed pathologic processes do not seem to be sufficient. The clinical symptoms which arise early in the disease resemble very closely certain known toxemias. Some of the tissue changes in the liver, which result in indistinct cellular outlines and a granular endoplasm, are out of all proportion to the mechanical damage, and suggest to Fairley (1920) that the generalized cirrhosis is the result of toxic action. Koppisch (1941) also believes there is a possibility of a diffusible toxin, using this word in the sense of a specific toxin or of a metabolic product of the adult worms, since the inflammatory changes are diffuse as well as focal even in mild cases. Moreover, fibrosis occurs not only in the portal spaces, but is diffuse even where the eggs are not numerous, in contrast to the strictly focal fibrosis caused by inert substances. Girges (1934) presents a long list of what appears to him to be the effects of toxins. Many could be explained in other ways, but even where there seems to be no other plausible explanation, no direct evidence is presented. Other similar observations support the case for toxic substances, but there is obvious need for further experimental work in this field before definite conclusions can be drawn.

By far the greatest amount of damage is attributable to the **effects of the eggs** extruded from the blood vessels into the tissues. Whether these act merely as foreign bodies or secrete a toxic substance remains somewhat in doubt. With few exceptions the early reaction of all tissues is more or less the same, and typically involves the formation of a pseudotubercle about each egg. The later reactions, however, are more variable and depend on the nature of the organ involved.

The mechanism by which the eggs pass through the walls of the blood vessels has been studied extensively, and in the discussion of this problem greatly divergent opinions have been expressed. The most recent extensive observations have been made by Kohlschütter and Koppisch (1941), who have summarized the opinions of previous investigators. Their own observations were made on experimental animals and confirmed by a study of pathologic material from cases in human beings. They describe the extrusion of eggs from the venules as follows: The egg first adheres to the lining of the vessel, then endothelial cells begin to grow over it from all sides until it is completely covered. At this stage the original endothelium is still clearly visible between the egg and the tissues. Then the endothelium grows over the egg, leaving it outside of the vessel wall. Except in the intestinal mucosa, this stage is followed by leucocytic infiltration and later, by proliferation of fibroblasts and histiocytes with the formation of a pseudotubercle. If the number of eggs in the vicinity is few, there is no interruption to the blood flow, as the blood vessel is merely pushed aside. Where groups of eggs were found together, however, it was observed that the flat cells in continuity with the endothelial lining extended between and over adjacent eggs forming a network. Although in this case the process led to localized obliteration of the vessel, thrombosis was never encountered. In the mucosa, the formation of pseudotubercles is rare. Here the eggs are similarly extruded by an overgrowth of the endothelium, but there is no appreciable accumulation of fibroblasts or histiocytes. The authors state that the eggs which are extruded into the mucosa are virtually the only ones which reach the lumen of the intestine, but they do not give any clear description of the process after the eggs are in the tissues.

Previously, the opinion has been that the spine is a mechanical aid in the passing of the eggs through the wall of the venule and through the tissues, but Kohlschütter and Koppisch find no evidence that the spine plays any part in the extrusion of the eggs other than causing them to adhere more readily to the wall of the blood vessel. Moreover, they are convinced that there is no evidence of toxic or histolytic secretion from the eggs as Hoeppli (1932) believed. The observations of Kohlschütter and Koppisch on the mechanism of extrusion of the eggs have been confirmed by Torres and Pinto (1946), except that these latter authors also ascribe certain features in the appearanc of the tissues to toxic secretions from the eggs.

The formation of the pseudotubercle is similar in all tissues and has been described by many authors. Fairley (1920), in his account of studies on experimental infections in monkeys and observations on material from human beings, notes that the pseudotubercle appears grossly as a small, whitish nodule varying in size from 0.5 to 4 mm. in diameter. His observations on the cellular layers involved in the pseudotubercle have been confirmed in all essential aspects by various pathologists. The most detailed descriptions are probably those given by Koppisch (1941, 1943) which are illustrated with excellent photomicrographs of all the developmental stages. He records the size of the spherical fibrous nodule which ultimately forms from the pseudotubercle as averaging from 200 to 250 microns in diameter. The earliest reaction about the eggs in the tissues is an accumulation of eosinophiles. Rarely these are accompanied by polymorphonuclears and, in a few cases, only the latter are present. If the miracidium has already died and been absorbed, lymphocytes are the first cells to appear. The next response is the formation of one or more foreign-body giant cells. By this time the miracidium has almost always disappeared and is replaced by either coagulated serum, a few eosinophiles, or a giant cell. The next stage is the development of a zone of epithelioid cells which resemble those of tubercular granulomas, enclosing the egg and the giant cells. Around this zone there is an infiltration of the following types

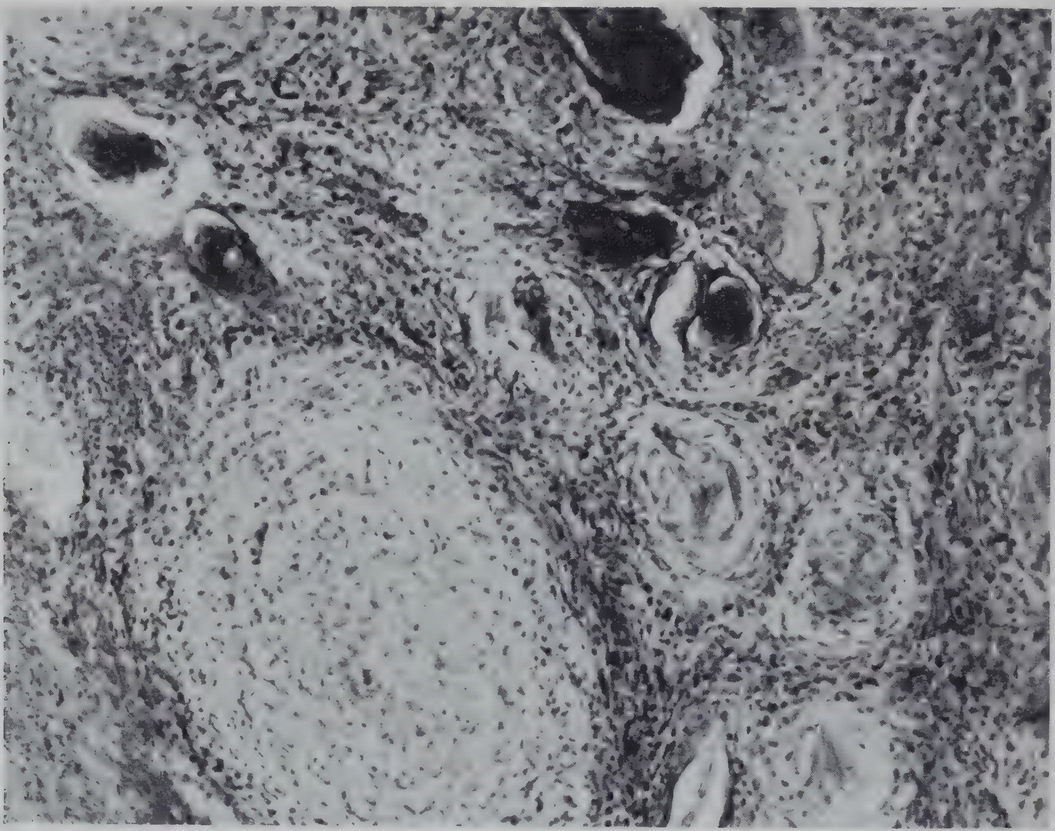


Fig. 358.—Schistosomiasis mansoni; section of epiploic appendage of the colon showing pseudotubercles. (Courtesy of Horace K. Giffen.)

of cells in variable proportions listed in order of their frequency and abundance: lymphocytes, eosinophiles, monocytes, and plasma cells.

At this stage, the developmental stages become regressive. There is a concentric proliferation of fibroblasts among the cells surrounding the zone of epithelioid cells. These fibroblasts begin the formation of a capsule, at first broad and loose, but gradually becoming more compact and dense. With the development of collagenous fibers and the shrinkage of the fibroblasts, the epithelioid zone becomes narrower, the giant cells become smaller, the leucocytes disappear from the center and are reduced in the peripheral zone. Finally, the lymphocytes disappear and the epithelioid cells are replaced by fibrous tissue from the capsule. All that remains is a sharply outlined fibrous nodule with an egg shell and one or more shrunken giant cells in the center, and a few lymphocytes about the periphery. In the course of time the cellular elements disappear, the egg shell undergoes fragmentation or total dissolution, and the healed pseudotubercle is merely a fibrous nodule in which only a few small nuclei of fibroblasts are to be seen. The pseudotubercles do not show necrosis in the center except in very rare instances. Koppisch (1941) states that these cases with necrosis are associated with active infections, and he believes that the process may be due to an allergic reaction provoked by the killing of large numbers of worms by treatment.

The pseudotubercles are found in nearly all organs and tissues in which the eggs occur, but they are most numerous in the liver. They are not so frequently found in the intestine, and Koppisch believes that many eggs are destroyed by the action of leucocytes and giant cells, disappearing without leaving a trace of healed nodules. In some cases, however, the pathologic process in the intestine is initiated by the formation of pseudotubercles, proceeding to a chronic inflammation and resulting in granulomatous masses often simulating tumors and occasionally complicated by the development of malignancy (Giffen, 1945).

The pathologic changes in the intestinal tract are usually confined to the rectum, sigmoid, and descending colon. When there is a massive infection, the effects are seen at higher levels, perhaps because crowding causes the worms to distribute themselves over a wider area. Since the active lesions in the more chronic cases frequently tend to be higher up the intestinal tract, Koppisch (1941) suggests that the worms may be induced by the inflammatory changes in the lower bowel to move to higher levels. The most characteristic reaction is a marked colitis which may either be extensive or may involve only small areas. There are marked congestion and edema of the submucosa, and usually a mild inflammatory reaction in the mucosa. The mucosal surface is often described as having a granular or nodular appearance like sandpaper, which is caused by the reaction around the eggs. Sometimes these nodules may erupt into the lumen, but more often portions of the mucosal surface slough off as part of an extensive ulceration process. Bercovitz et al. (1944) have noted that on proctoscopic observation these ulcerated areas are noninflammatory in appearance and give the impression that something has been extruded from beneath. Of those seen on one day, many had disappeared

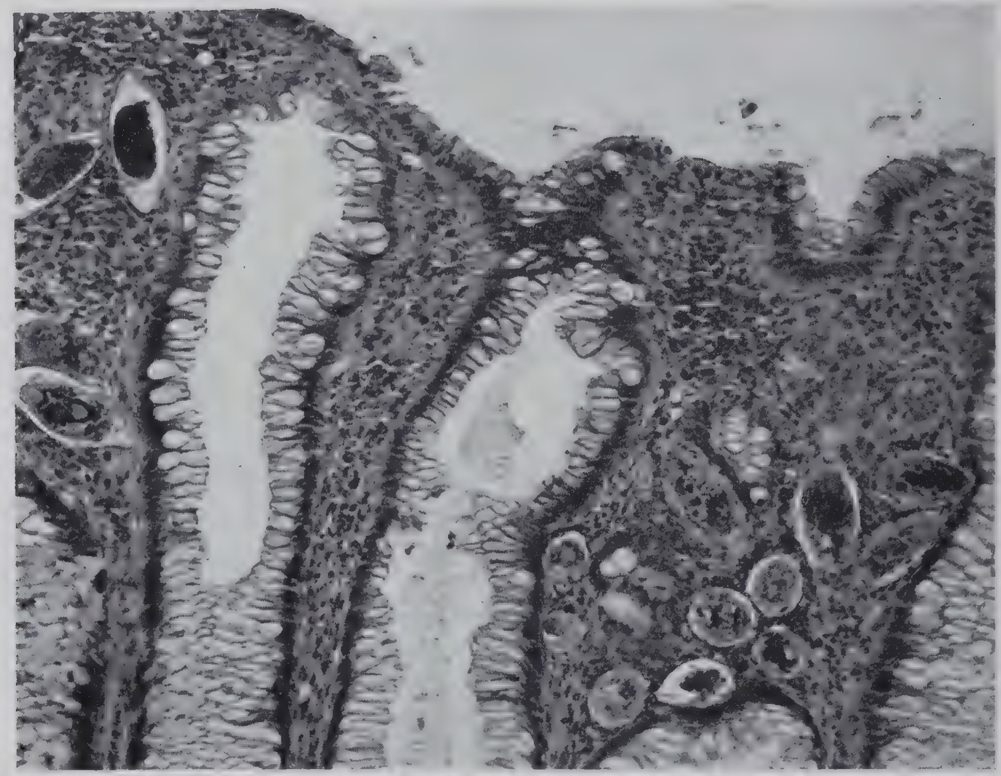


Fig. 359.—Schistosomiasis mansoni; section of intestinal wall showing inflammation of the tissues about the eggs. (Courtesy of Horace K. Giffen.)

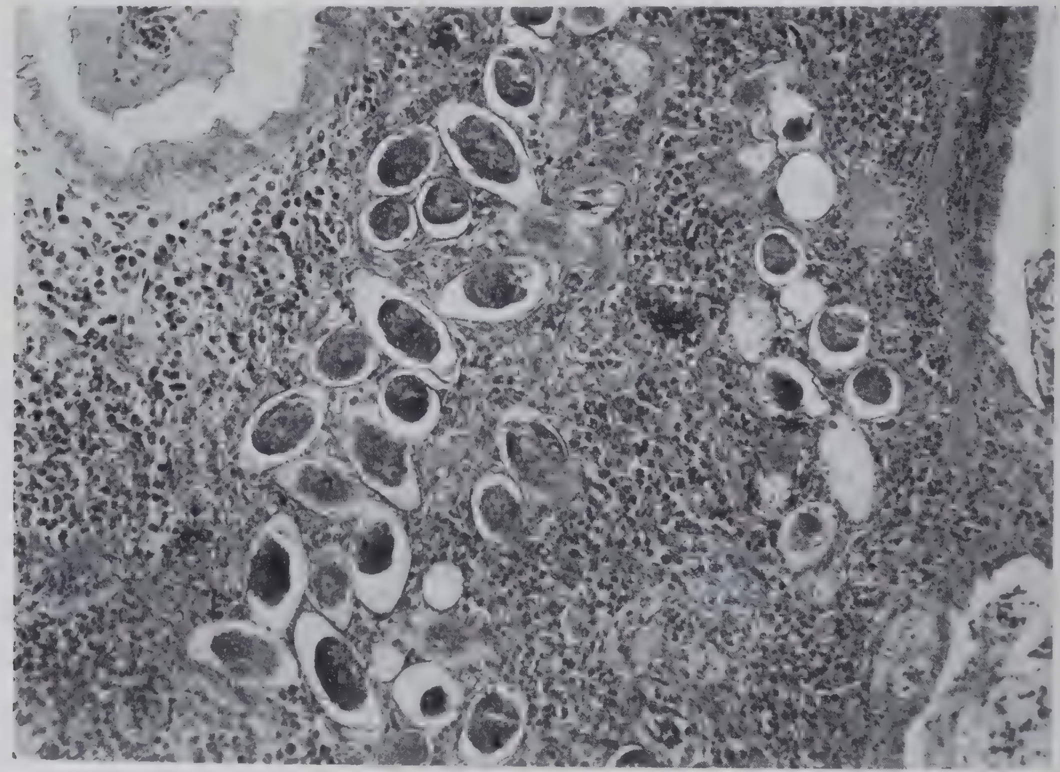
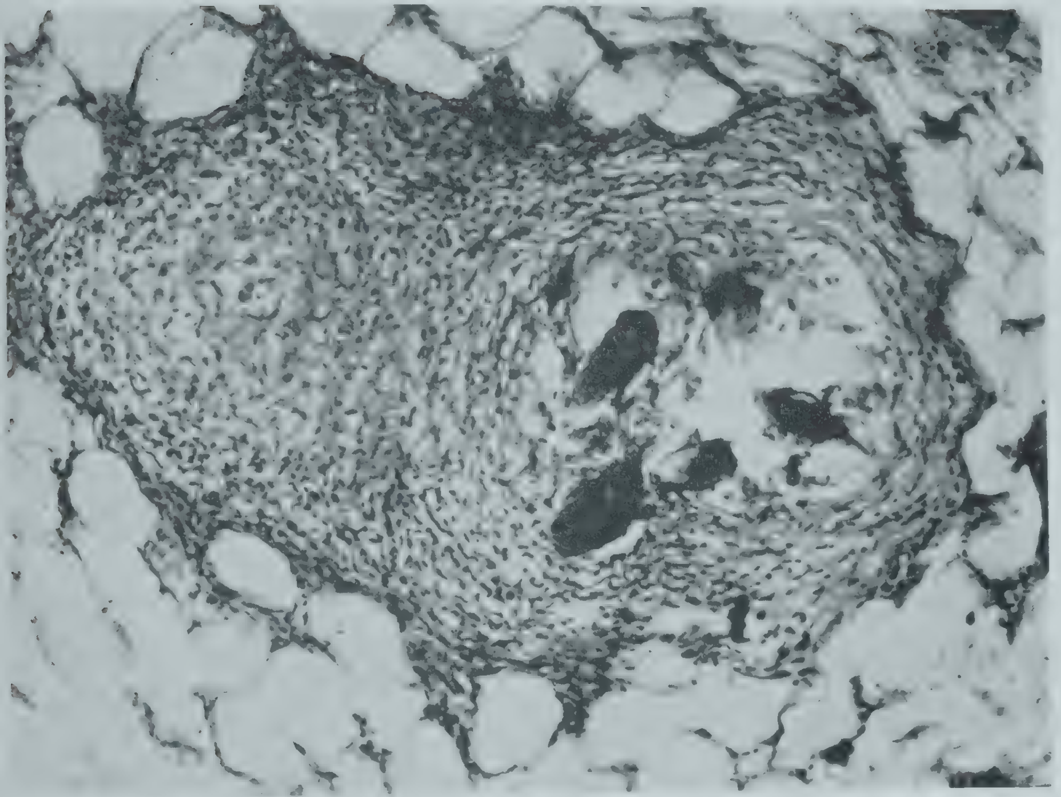
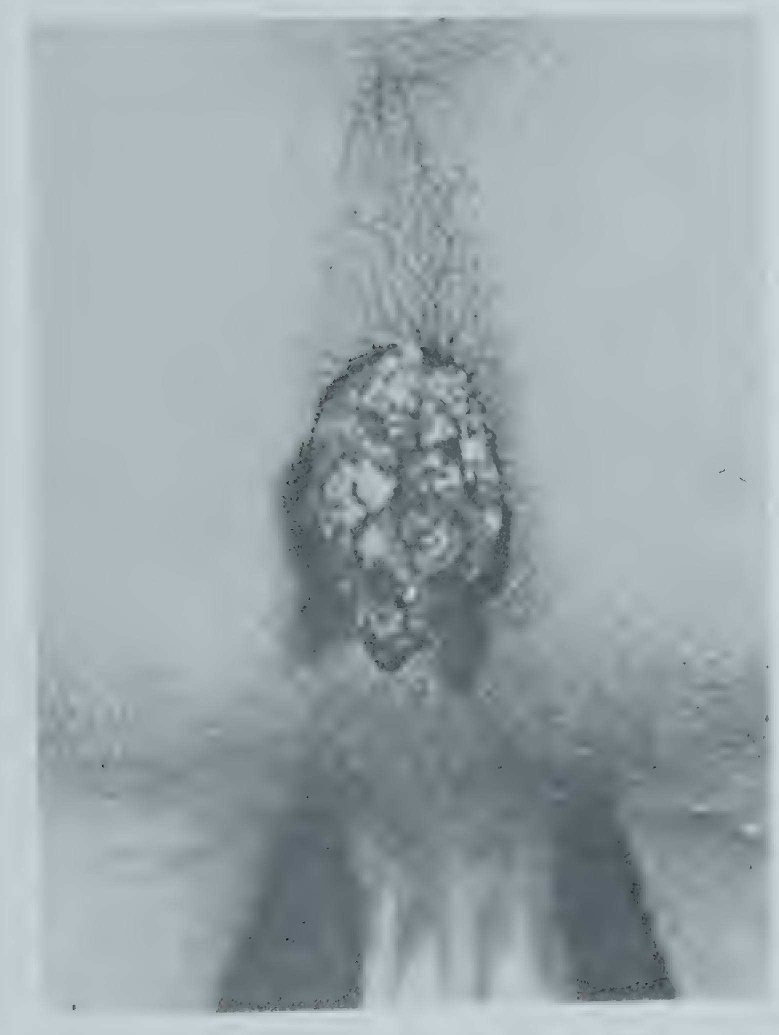


Fig. 360.—Schistosomiasis mansoni; section of intestinal wall showing granulation tissue around the eggs. (Courtesy of Horace K. Giffen.)



ig. 361.—Schistosomiasis mansoni: section of granuloma around eggs in the omentum. (Courtesy of Horace K. Giffen.)



ig. 362.—Prolapsed anal polyp typical of those frequently seen in schistosomiasis mansoni. (Courtesy of Horace K. Giffen.)

on the next. Hutchison (1928) believes that schistosomiasis has no inhere capacity to produce ulcerations, a conclusion confirmed by other pathologis working with post-mortem materials. He notes that the swollen, hyperplast mucosa abrades easily, and attributes the ulceration to secondary bacterial i fections. He has observed that the abscesses are superficial and that granulations develop in the ulcerated area at once. Manson-Bahr (1945) and Jaff (1939) mention the frequency with which this condition is complicated wit amebiasis. In advanced cases the granulations may become extensive, forming tumorous masses. Complicating carcinomatas may be stimulated by thi extensive reaction if it is continued through many years, as they seem t

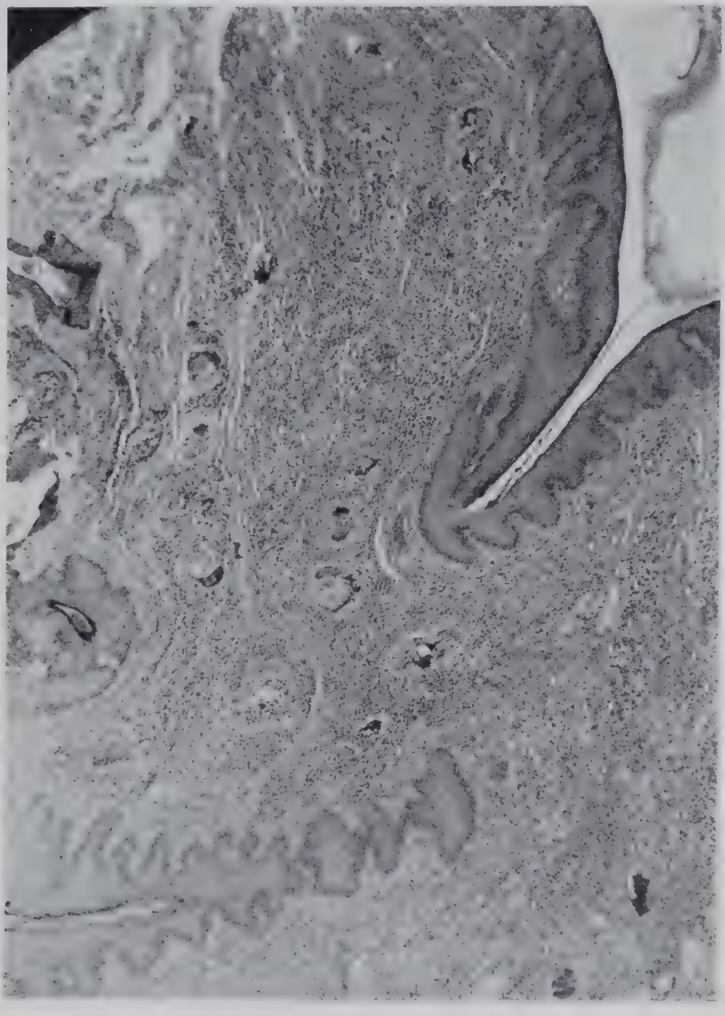


Fig. 363.—Section of hemorrhoidal polyp containing eggs of *Schistosoma mansoni*. (Courtesy of Horace K. Giffen.)

occur more often than would be expected from chance association. Adenopapillomata frequently occur and in heavy infections may appear quite early. Fairley (1920), for example, having found them in the colon of monkeys 10 or 12 weeks after infection. He describes them as massive cellular accumulations of the submucosa bulging the mucosa into conical elevations. There is excessive proliferation and downward invasion of the glandular tissue of the mucous layer, but the core is always composed of submucosal tissues. Rectal polyps are often seen and sometimes protrude from the anus in the form of hemorrhoids. These polyps produce an uninterrupted urge to defecate, and

Hutchison (1928) believes that the constant strain which results is the cause of the relaxation of the perineal muscles, edema of the gut, and prolapse of the intestine occasionally seen in this infection.

Even in Egypt where these severe manifestations have been most often described, they occur in only a small proportion of the cases. Jaffé (1939) believes that they are even rarer in Venezuela, but the relative difference is probably more apparent than real, since the Egyptian physicians see millions of cases in the extensive system of government hospitals (Scott, 1942). On the other hand, Jaffé found that systematic microscopic examination of material from unselected autopsies reveals many infections in persons with no noticeable symptoms. In this connection Bercovitz et al. (1944) report that on proctoscopic examination of 100 Puerto Rican army recruits with asymptomatic infections, small ulcers were seen in 94. They were either pinpoint and only a few millimeters in diameter, or linear and less than 3 mm. long. They were sharply demarcated from the normal mucosa, nearly always lay directly over the capillaries, and were situated below the rectosigmoid fold. These authors conclude that there is no such thing as a healthy carrier, and that a large group of cases with active lesions but no symptoms has not been given due consideration. Koppisch (1941) and others have pointed out that a large number of autopsies of persons dying from unrelated causes show minimal lesions of unsuspected schistosomiasis.

As the cases become more **chronic** there seems to be a tendency for the intestinal reactions to decrease in severity, while the lower bowel often becomes fibrotic and narrowed. The active lesions may not entirely disappear, but when they do occur, they tend to be located at higher levels. The fibrotic changes may extend to the mesenteries and affect the lymphatic glands and other abdominal tissues.

By far the most serious pathology, and that which most often leads to death, is the development of **cirrhosis of the liver**. Koppisch (1941) emphasizes that the intestinal and hepatic pathologic processes both begin early in the history of every infection, but they develop at different rates and lead to the erroneous conclusion that they are sometimes mutually exclusive. Fairley (1920) first described the development of the cirrhosis in monkeys, confirming the observations on material from human beings. He also pointed out that this process begins early in the infection with the deposit of only a few eggs, although the symptoms do not appear until much later when the process has become advanced. The eggs pass from the blood vessels into the liver tissue ust as they do in the intestine. The early reactions are those involved in the ormation of pseudotubercles. The stages in the development of the cirrhosis as described by Fairley are, first, the appearance of fibroblasts dividing the eosinophiles into separate masses; second, the appearance of newly formed capillaries; third, the isolation of islets of hepatic cells with nuclei massed ogether so as to resemble giant cells. Capillary congestion may be sufficient o lead to compression of the hepatic parenchyma. It has already been pointed ut that other tissue changes suggested to him that the final result depends not alone on the mechanical effects of the accumulation of eggs in the liver but that a toxic action would appear to be involved.

In endemic areas where reinfection occurs and the eggs continue to be deposited for many years, the cirrhosis eventually leads to the "pipe-stem" type originally described by Symmers (1904). He first noted the concomitance of schistosome eggs and this type of cirrhosis, in which sections through the liver showed elongated white masses resembling "white clay pipe-stems" thrust at angles through the liver. These masses were the result of an enormous increase in the fibrous tissue of Glisson's capsule surrounding the portal canals. They appear porcelain-white or occasionally pinkish, and when cut, they can be seen to contain the blood vessels and bile ducts. The portal obstruction accompanying the cirrhosis results in the development of a collateral circulation often complicated by the formation of esophageal varices, which not infrequently give rise to fatal hemorrhage.

The **endemic splenomegaly** which is common in some parts of Egypt is now considered by most authorities to be caused by schistosomiasis mansoni. There has been much prolonged discussion on this matter, and even yet unanimity of opinion is not complete. There seems to be little question about splenomegaly occurring as a result of schistosomiasis. The geographic distribution of the endemic form exactly paralleling the distribution of *S. mansoni* in Egypt seems to be good evidence in the case. As to the mechanism by which the splenomegaly is caused, there is less unanimity of opinion. Most pathologists believe that the characteristic splenomegaly associated with severe cases of schistosomiasis mansoni results from the production by the cirrhosis of an increased blood pressure in the splenic vein. Onsy (1937), however, has studied 14,000 cases of splenomegaly and believes that the enlargement results from a response of the reticuloendothelial system to deposit of eggs in the spleen. Although the eggs do not often appear in microscopic sections of the spleen in most cases of splenomegaly, egg shells can usually be obtained by the digestion of reasonably large portions of the splenic tissue. Onsy contends that the eggs are rapidly disintegrated, and that repetition of the process leads to the permanent hyperplasia and fibrosis ordinarily seen, and that the enlargement does not depend on either the intestinal or the hepatic lesions as believed by other workers. Cases have been reported in which there is a pronounced splenomegaly without a corresponding enlargement of the liver, but as a rule the cases with splenomegaly also show a pronounced cirrhosis.

Girges (1932) has presented a theory that in the so-called visceral types of this disease, i.e., in cases with cirrhosis and splenomegaly, the infection consists exclusively or predominantly of male worms. That such a situation could occur is clear from the fact that all cercariae developing from one miracidium are of one sex. Girges does not anywhere present his data in the form of protocols, but merely states that he has found predominantly male worms in a number of such cases. His evidence has not convinced most authorities in the field. Experiments with unisexual infections in animals (Jaffé et al., 1945) have not entirely clarified the situation and an open mind should undoubtedly be preserved in the matter. The evidence at present appears to indicate that the changes in the liver are due primarily to deposit of the eggs, and the splenomegaly occurs as a secondary phenomenon produced by the changes in the liver and the portal circulation.

If the severe cases progress beyond the point where treatment can arrest the pathologic process, they may ultimately develop very large spleens. Some have been reported as large as 7 or 8 kilograms, while Girges (1934) notes that the spleens in the majority of his cases of splenomegaly are about 2 kilograms in weight. Unless these cases are terminated by hematemesis from the esophageal varices or by other acute episodes, a severe ascites can be expected to appear as a terminal phase of the so-called visceral schistosomiasis.

The primary effects of schistosomiasis mansoni on organs other than the intestine, liver, spleen, and associated structures are by no means rare, but as part of the over-all picture they are seldom of major importance. The eggs occasionally are found in nearly any organ or tissue and the reaction caused is usually typical of the reaction of the particular tissue to foreign bodies. The pulmonary complications of the disease have already been mentioned and the secondary effects of these complications on the heart considered. Jaffé (1940) has found evidence of myocarditis in many more cases of schistosomiasis than would be expected from the reports of previous work. The eggs are only rarely found in the myocardium, and he postulates a circulating toxin as the important etiologic factor. Animal experiments (Jaffé et al., 1945) have ended to support his observations of the occurrence of infiltrations in the ieart muscle associated with this infection, but further work will be needed efore this phase is clearly understood. The localization of eggs in organs uch as the brain is very rare in any case, but is less common in schistosomiasis nansoni than in schistosomiasis haemotobia. Papular lesions of the skin from vhich schistosome eggs have been aspirated have been reported by Black 1945) and other authors. In nearly every case the effect of eggs in these nusual locations is unimportant as compared with the primary effects in the ntestine or liver of the same case.

In all of the tissues reacting to schistosomiasis there is a characteristic leposit of brown pigment which appears to be hematin and is indistinguishible from that found in cases of malaria. It is, therefore, of diagnostic value only where malaria can be ruled out and other evidence of the presence of chistosomiasis is found. In cases which have been thoroughly treated and ll the worms killed and where no reinfection has taken place, the pigment ventually disappears from the tissue.

CLINICAL SYMPTOMS

The first symptoms seen in infections with schistosomiasis are those asciated with the dermatitis resulting from the penetration of cercariae, deribed above. In most people where infections are acquired slowly, the ermatitis is not differentiated from insect bites and other causes of itching apules. In the case of persons whose occupation requires constant exposure, such as the Egyptians who sit in the water turning a hand pump, the dermatitis becomes massive and is definitely associated in their minds with the exposure. Persons newly arriving in an endemic area have often exposed themselves by swimming, and have developed a severe dermatitis identified from the history as a schistosome dermatitis. The itching usually persists for only a day or two, and all traces have disappeared within a few days unless a secondary infection is induced by scratching.

After the dermatitis has subsided, no further symptoms are noticed in most persons for some time. In some cases there are symptoms arising within the first few weeks. Although other authors have mentioned these prodromal symptoms, Pons (1937) was probably the first to differentiate them clearly from the acute toxemia which usually ends the incubation periods. These prodromal symptoms include anorexia, nausea, vomiting, slight abdominal pain, mild diarrhea, extreme fatigability, and malaise.

Except for the few cases in which prodromal symptoms are recognized, the incubation period usually ends with a sudden onset of fever introducing the acute toxemia stage. The time of the onset after the original infection varies according to different authors from 3 to 8 weeks, although some may have included the prodromal symptoms in their time limit. Pons calls attention to the fact that the onset in many cases is in the sixth or seventh week, which is about the time when the worms can be expected to have matured, migrated into the mesenteric veins, and begun to deposit eggs. A reasonable explanation seems to be that the symptoms are some type of allergic response to stimuli produced by the eggs or maturing worms. The fever may be remittent or intermittent, or it may sometimes run a fairly level course. In many respects the condition often closely resembles typhoid fever. In addition to manifestations ordinarily associated with febrile conditions there are gastrointestinal symptoms of various types, varying from mild discomfort and distention to abdominal pains, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, or dysentery. These symptoms may be accompanied by an urticaria or a dry, persistent cough. Frequently there are tenderness and enlargement of the liver and a congestive enlargement of the spleen. In cases with coughs, physical examination may show patchy areas attributable to a bronchopneumonia, which Koppisch (1943) suggests may result from the migration of worms through the lungs.

In persons residing in endemic areas it is seldom that the early symptoms of schistosomiasis are differentiated from those caused by other infections. These symptoms for the most part have been described in persons who have entered an endemic area for the first time, where there is a clear history of bathing in infected water to point to the connection between the symptoms and the infection. There has also been sufficient work with experimental animals to indicate that this connection is valid. It is not clear whether people who reside in endemic areas and receive successive light infections from early childhood fail to show the acute early symptoms, or whether they merely fail to report them. Girges (1934), working in the heart of a severe endemic area, saw early symptoms in 0.3 per cent of his cases. He does not mention whether or not these were town dwellers whose first exposure might have been relatively

ate in life and heavier than the average. Hutchison (1928) and Pons each
ecord a case with pronounced early symptoms following a return to the en-
lemic area after an absence. Most of the cases whose early symptoms have
een studied have apparently received relatively massive infections. Nearly
ll of them received treatment, and the febrile stage ended after 2 or 3 weeks.
ons records 1 case where specific diagnosis was established only on the
orty-ninth day of fever and another case without specific treatment whose
ever virtually disappeared soon after the twenty-ninth day.

Differential diagnosis at this stage must consider brucellosis, typhoid
ever, and malaria, as well as the possibility of pulmonary tuberculosis where
here are physical signs in the lungs. Leucocytosis and eosinophilia are of
ome help although the latter may be expected in nearly any person living in
n area where helminth parasites are common. The finding of schistosome
ggs in the stools is of course indicative, especially if the stools are negative
vhen the febrile condition begins and become positive later.

After the acute symptoms of the initial period have subsided, there is usu-
lly a long time before any symptoms are again noticed. There is a great
ariability between persons with regard to the length of the symptom-free
eriod and the severity of symptoms when they again occur. This variability
most likely associated with the number of worms acquired and the fre-
uency and extent of reinfection. Some persons probably never show any
urther symptoms (Girges, 1934). In this connection the above-mentioned
udies of Bercovitz et al. (1944) should be recalled, in which a large pro-
rtion of symptomless cases showed intestinal lesions. Other patients do
ow at this time symptoms referable to the pathologic process known to be
oceeding in the intestinal wall. These symptoms vary from mild abdominal
scomfort and mild intermittent diarrhea to a pronounced dysentery often
ternating with constipation, and in many cases accompanied by the occa-
onal or frequent appearance of blood in the stools.

The classification of cases into 2 distinct types, the intestinal and the
patic, in which Girges (1932) has been followed by many clinical writers,
as already been discussed. Pons (1937) believes that patients are differenti-
ed early in the history of infection into those who are destined to develop
n intestinal type of pathology and those whose pathology will be primarily
patosplenic. On the other hand, Fairley (1920) showed that the initial
ases of the cirrhotic process begin soon after infection, even though the
mptoms do not appear for a long time. Koppisch (1941) presented evi-
nce to support his contention that the disease is both hepatic and intestinal
its fundamental pathology from the very beginning in all cases, and that
e liver symptoms merely appear at a much later date than the intestinal,
which time the intestines may have become so fibrotic that no symptoms
main in evidence. Useful as the classification may have been for purposes
discussion, it now appears that the differences are those of timing and de-
ee rather than of kind. The evidence now available indicates that the so-
lled types should be looked upon as two phases in the same pathologic proc-
s, either of which may receive emphasis in any particular case.

During the intestinal stage of the infection, cases with a severe anem have been described, but such cases usually represent a small portion of th series under study. Rodríguez-Molina and Pons (1936) studied 8 cases, 3 which showed an anemia at this stage; but 2 of these were known to be on a anemia-inducing diet. The loss of blood in the stools may account for th anemia in some cases, and in others there may be some type of derangement o the hematopoietic function. As yet no definite etiologic connection betwee the anemia and the schistosomiasis has been established, and it seems doubtfu if, in a cross section of typical cases, anemia can be considered a consisten manifestation. The author made hemoglobin determinations on several hundred people representing a typical cross section of an Egyptian village where there was a high prevalence of *S. mansoni, S. haematobium,* hookworm, ascaris, and other intestinal worms. Because of this high prevalence, clear-cut conclusions were not possible. However, statistical analysis showed that hookworm disease in these people was definitely associated with anemia in proportion to the severity of infection; but there was no such association between anemia and infection with either species of the schistosomes.

Diagnosis during the early intestinal phase of the disease is usually relatively easy since this is the stage of rapid egg deposit. Persistent examination of the stools should reveal the eggs in nearly any case at this stage. Treatment is especially indicated during this phase to prevent the infection from going on to more serious conditions, but differential diagnosis should not be neglected, since amebiasis or some other more acute condition may deserve prior attention. Biggam and Arafa (1930) recommend that the sigmoidoscope be used in differential diagnosis, and present some excellent colored plates of the lesions encountered in schistosomiasis. Prognosis is good where adequate treatment can be administered at this stage. In fact, for most patients the real danger lies in the later development of cirrhosis.

In untreated cases the fibrosis, developing as the infection becomes more chronic, seems to reduce the symptoms associated with the colitis. In these chronic intestinal phases the passage of eggs into the lumen tends to be reduced, and diagnosis becoms more difficult. A small proportion of the cases develop a serious intestinal pathology either prior to the appearance of manifestations of liver damage or at the same time that these become evident. The most frequent symptom in these severe cases is dysentery, which often is intermittent and may alternate with constipation. Rectal polyps, especially those of the hemorrhoidal type, are a frequent cause of complaint. In a few cases where the pathologic process in the intestine has become advanced before receiving any medical attention, portions of the thickened and relaxed intestinal wall may prolapse. For a time the patient may be able to reduce the prolapsed portion after he goes to stool, but often a permanent prolapse results, sometimes involving the entire rectum. Anal fistulae and fissures are seen in a large proportion of the advanced cases. Anemia is often present, especially if the person has suffered from loss of blood for a prolonged period.

As a rule patients seeking treatment for the first time during the intestinal phase come because of their weakness and inability to do a day's work ney may come earlier when their symptoms are primarily anorexia, nausea, atulence, and distress after eating. On examination during this phase the olon feels thickened and hard on palpation, and the liver and spleen are usully somewhat enlarged. Except for the extreme conditions such as prolapse, xtensive papillomatous growths, and complicating malignancies, prognosis the advanced intestinal stage depends primarily on the condition of the liver nd is reasonably good unless the symptoms of cirrhosis are also pronounced.

The cases which are seen for the first time after the cirrhosis is well adanced have been classified as the visceral or hepatic type. As mentioned bove, the changes in the liver apparently always begin early in the course of nfection, but it usually is a long time before the symptoms arise, probably as uch as 10 years in many cases. It is doubtful if any cases reach the stage of irrhosis without displaying intestinal phenomena, although these may have een so mild that the patient did not associate them with schistosomiasis, thus aking it impossible to obtain a clear history. Most of the cirrhotic cases ither show intestinal symptoms or have a fibrotic colon as evidence of preiously active intestinal lesions.

The symptoms which are seen during the visceral stages of the disease are xtremely variable, depending on the degree of advancement of the cirrhosis. he liver enlarges for several years as the cirrhotic process advances; then, s fibrosis becomes prominent, it shrinks and in the later stages may have eceded beneath the costal margin. Colitis may still be the predominant ature as far as the patients' subjective symptoms are concerned, but more ten the patients come to the attention of the physician at this stage because vague abdominal symptoms, nausea, tenderness and pain in the abdomen. ost often they complain of a weakness which prevents them from working, nd a feeling of weight in the abdomen. The liver may be moderately or eatly enlarged and is frequently tender. The spleen is usually somewhat larged but not tender. In cases with marked splenomegaly the patients' omplaints usually have to do with the weight of the mass and abdominal disntion. The eosinophilia usually, but not always, persists through this stage, nd a leucopenia is characteristic. The anemia which is so frequently associed with schistosomiasis at this stage cannot be definitely attributed to the fects of this disease. Deficient diets and other conditions leading to anemia e always common in the regions where this disease is endemic. The later ages of cirrhosis usually produce an ascites, after which life is usually easured in months, according to Day and Ferguson (1909).

Diagnosis during the cirrhotic stage is usually relatively easy although a irly long search may be necessary before eggs can be found. Methods inlving removal of eggs directly from the intestinal mucosa may be required. the cases where eggs cannot be found, immunologic tests may be of some lue, but diagnosis depends primarily on symptoms and history. Differential gnosis is always important, especially as regards the elimination of other rms of cirrhosis and other causes of splenomegaly. The clinical picture often exactly duplicates that of Laennec's cirrhosis, and the splenomegaly does not differ from that seen in other conditions originally included in Banti's syndrome.

Prognosis with treatment depends upon the extent to which the cirrhosis has developed. The frequently associated colitis can be healed and, if the liver damage has not gone too far, a reasonable degree of health may be re-established in the absence of reinfection. Treatment will not arrest a well-advanced cirrhosis, however, nor will it reduce splenomegaly. In young persons splenectomy is often successful.

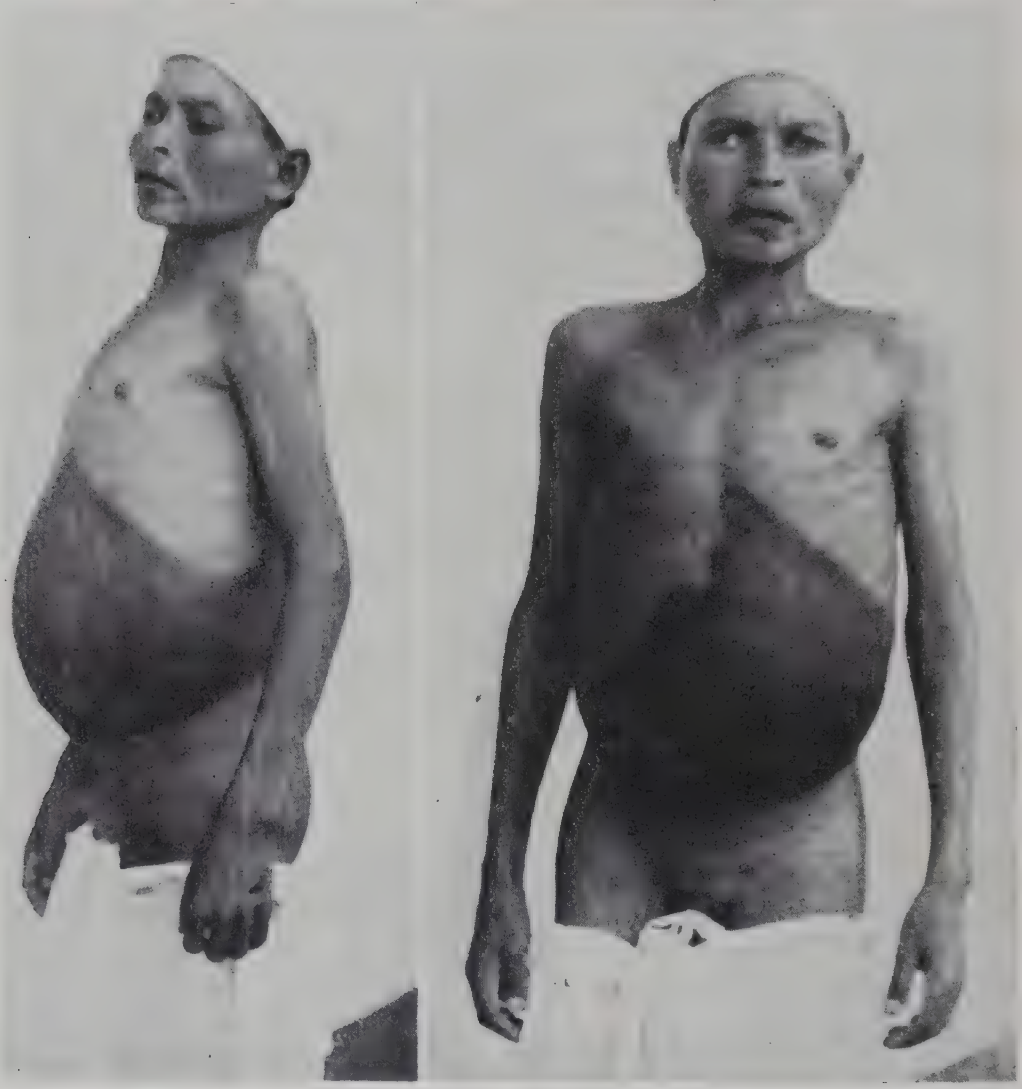


Fig. 364.—Splenomegaly in young Egyptian who regained his health after splenectomy. Spleen weighed 1,780 grams after it had been reduced in size at operation by first clamping splenic artery and allowing blood to drain back into the circulation. The liver was only slightly enlarged. (Courtesy of Horace K. Giffen.) (For further description, see Giffen, 1945.)

Not infrequently the terminal phase involves hematemesis resulting from the esophageal varices already described. Terminal pneumonia and other pulmonary disturbances are to be expected. Some of the latter may be attributable to the eggs and worms which are often found in the lungs after anastomoses are established in the liver between the portal circulation and the tributaries of the hepatic vein. Symptoms of dilatation and other cardiac irregularities are often seen in the later stages, but seldom predominate in the vhole clinical picture. There is no agreement among pathologists as yet as to vhether the myocarditis, which has been demonstrated in many cases and in xperimental animals, is primarily due to toxins from the worms as believed y Jaffé (1940). Meira and Ramos (1944) state that except for the rare cases haracterized by the presence of schistosome granuloma in the myocardium, he cardiopulmonary type of cases seldom show electrocardiographic changes ot attributable to other conditions. Until more cases have been studied, no onclusion can be drawn. These authors note especially the need to dif-erentiate from Chagas' disease at the stage of cardiopulmonary symptoms. he cirrhotic process itself brings about the death of many cases, and most athologists would probably agree that the cause of death in the vast ma-ority of cases is fundamentally referable to the cirrhosis of the liver.

LABORATORY FINDINGS

In suspected cases of schistosomiasis the first evidence to be sought is the resence of eggs in the stools. In regions of high endemicity the eggs will be ound in the urine of about 15 per cent of the cases. Providing the feces are xamined only by one of the usual routine methods, about one-third of those vith eggs in the urine will not show them in the feces (Scott, 1937b). Exam-nation of the urine in cases where the eggs are not easily found in the feces is varranted by the greater ease of examining the urine. The eggs are readily und in the sediment from at least 50 c.c. of urine after it has stood 30 min-tes in a conical sedimentation jar. The first morning specimen and the st portion of any passage are apt to have more eggs than unselected speci-ens. Spreading the sediment on a microscope slide ringed with a greased encil and allowing it to dry (Barlow, 1931) provides a permanent prepara-on which can be rewet and examined repeatedly. Slides so prepared and ept by the author in ordinary slide boxes subjected to extremes of climatic nditions for 12 years are still in good condition. The drying urine appar-tly acts as a preservative. It is even possible to see that the miracidia in me were intact and presumably viable at the time of drying. Studies made t the time of preparation showed that eggs killed before passage by treat-ent with antimony do not present this appearance, but are either dark or lled with disintegrated materials.

In examining the feces a simple smear as prepared for the diagnosis of testinal parasites is seldom used for this species. Most reports refer to lected smears made from bits of mucus or blood seen on the surface of the ool. Such smears will reveal eggs in a large proportion of the cases, prob-ly about 50 to 80 per cent, depending on the intensity of infection in the ea (Tomb and Helmy, 1931). When a dilution egg count is being made for her purposes, the results can be substituted for those obtained by smears, nce each egg-count slide will reveal eggs about as efficiently as each selected ear; for example, in a series of stools known to contain eggs, they were vealed by 1 egg-count slide in 67 per cent and by 3 slides in 84 per cent, each de containing 1/200 c.c. of feces (Scott, 1937a). Unless egg counts are already being made for other purposes, they have the disadvantage of being time-consuming. Their only possible specific advantage is that a long series on any case, except a very chronic one, should give a very rough indication of the intensity of infection.

Rectal smears, i.e., smears made from the mucus obtained by gently scraping the rectal mucosa with a rubber-covered finger lubricated with soap, have been shown by Khalil and Salah el Din (1930) to be highly efficient. Of the cases positive by this method, only about 65 per cent were diagnosed by 1 selected smear and 75 per cent by 2 smears. Weller (1947) has designed a scraper for this purpose which seems more convenient mechanically, but his results have not been as encouraging as would be expected.

Methods designed to float hookworm eggs and protozoal cysts out of diluted feces by the use of solutions with a specific gravity around 1.200 have invariably proved to be of little value for *S. mansoni.* The writer has experimented with solutions of a still higher specific gravity, but consistent results have not been obtained.

On the other hand, sedimentation of the eggs in water or dilute solutions is effective.

For technical details, see Chapter 72.

The author has successfully sedimented thousands of specimens in N/10 sodium hydroxide, using the contents of dilution egg-count flasks.

Several methods involving biopsy have recently been introduced and are useful for the examination of suspected cases where the stool examination is negative. Gillman and Gillman (1945) and Sherlock (1945) have devised apparatus for aspiration biopsy of the liver. These methods are not without risk, however, and probably are indicated only where differential diagnosis is extremely difficult. Ottolina and Atencio (1943-1945) used a proctoscope to obtain by biopsy a fragment of the rectal mucosa. By digesting the tissue in potassium hydroxide and examining the sediment, they found eggs in all cases where the liver biopsy was positive, in 11 of 100 cases with negative stools, and in several thought to have been cured by treatment. Geib et al. (1946) used a flexible cystoscopic rongeur to obtain the tissue and also found the method successful. Hernández-Morales et al. (1946) have modified the technic, by using a portion of the mucosa pressed between two slides for direct microscopic examination, thus being able to differentiate between live and dead eggs.

As a simple substitute for rectal biopsy, Hollands and Palmer (1946) have introduced "rectal crypt aspiration." They have used the method on only a few cases of *S. japonicum,* finding eggs in several cases in which successive stools had been negative. It would seem that this technic should be even more successful in *S. mansoni* infection, and one which should be given extensive trial. A sigmoidoscope was passed following a bowel movement without purgation or enema. With a heavy-walled bent-tipped glass pipette connected through a vial to a suction pump, suspicious lesions were scraped and aspirated, or in he absence of lesions suction was applied to large areas of the normal rectal nucosa. The material collected in the vial was centrifuged, and the sediment xamined.

In summary, then, it can be said that there is a wide choice of methods vailable, many of which have received only preliminary testing and still ieed standardization by means of large scale tests.

Hematologic studies will be desired by the physician as an aid in diferential diagnosis, and as a basis for judgment regarding contraindications nd response to treatment. The results have little specific value in this inection, however, especially because the concomitant infections of other elminths common in endemic areas of schistosomiasis produce eosinophilia n a large proportion of the population.

A great deal of study has been given to serologic technics for the diagiosis of schistosomiasis. Several technics using a wide variety of antigens are vailable. The response has been disappointing in that it represents a group eaction denoting the presence of antibodies to nearly any trematode rather han one specifically associated with the schistosomes. The only test which ias been used on a large scale is the intradermal reaction to an antigen preoared from adult *S. mansoni* in Venezuela (Mayer and Pifano, 1945). The ow probability that other trematodes would be present to cause a reaction nakes the test more useful in a country like Venezuela than it would be in Egypt, for example, where the common trematode Heterophyes might coneivably cause a response. Used with caution, these tests can be of value here the eggs cannot be obtained, but they do not seem as yet to be approachg the status of replacing fecal examination as a routine. It will not be posble to give in summary here sufficient details of the various methods to be f practical value. Taliaferro (1929) reviewed the literature up to that time, hile the most recent summaries of the literature are those of Mayer and ifano (1945), Guerra, Mayer, and DiPrisco (1945), and Brandt and Finch 1946). Complement fixation and skin tests have proved more useful than recipitin reactions.

TREATMENT

Specific treatment is indicated in all cases of known infection with *S. ansoni* unless there are contraindications. Unfortunately, these contrainications are rather frequent, since the only drugs of universally recognized lue are compounds of antimony. The two most widely used drugs are potasum antimony tartrate (tartar emetic) and Fuadin (sodium antimony pyrotecholdisulfonate). The large number of contraindications, frequent inrruption from toxic manifestations, and occasional deaths occurring as a sult of treatment have clearly indicated that these drugs are far from satfactory. Their efficiency can be roughly assessed at only about one-half hat might be expected from a truly satisfactory drug. Of the newer drugs hich have been tested, only other compounds of antimony have given enuraging results, and none have shown outstanding superiority either on the ore of specific effects or lack of toxicity. In spite of the extensive use of

Fuadin and tartar emetic, there is still some dispute as to which is superior with regard to effectiveness or toxicity. The choice between them is usually made on grounds of cost or convenience. In the hands of private physicians, Fuadin has nearly everywhere replaced tartar emetic. Its stability makes it possible to keep it on hand in ampules. The slightly shorter course of treatment and the fact that it can be given intramuscularly rather than intravenously are practical points in its favor. On the other hand, tartar emetic is much cheaper than Fuadin and it is, therefore, still being used where cost is a factor, as in large-scale treatment campaigns where pharmacists are available to keep freshly prepared solutions on hand.

Tartar emetic must always be given intravenously with precaution against even a slight amount coming in contact with the tissues because of its local irritating effects, producing necrosis and sloughing. The recommended course of treatment varies somewhat, the following schedules being rather extreme examples. According to the latest report received before the war, the Egyptian government was treating approximately 500,000 patients a year as it had for many years according to the following routine (Khalil, 1931): Intravenous injections of tartar emetic in 6 per cent aqueous solution are given on alternate days 3 times a week for 4 weeks. The following doses are for adults weighing 60 kilograms or more and to be reduced proportionally for those weighing less: The doses during the first week are 0.5 c.c., 1.0 c.c., 1.5 c.c.; thereafter each dose is 2.0 c.c. The doses are reduced if marked signs of toxicity occur. If not, and if viable eggs are still being passed after these 12 injections, 3 additional injections of 2.0 c.c. are given. The course recommended by the U. S. Army (Anon., 1945) recommends intravenous injections of a 0.5 per cent solution of tartar emetic in saline or distilled water given on alternate days; the first adult dose is 8 c.c. and subsequent doses are increased by 4 c.c. until the dose reaches 28 c.c. This dose is maintained until a total of 15 injections have been given. The total amount of drug given by this regimen is thus only slightly greater than the amount given in the total 15 injections of the former method. The injections are always given slowly, and usually with the patient recumbent, although in Egypt the patient is treated in a sitting position and is allowed to walk immediately into another room, where he is required to remain sitting or lying for a period of 2 hours. Many physicians feel that, for the greatest safety, the patient should be hospitalized during the course of treatment, or at least kept in bed from the time of the injection until the following morning. Nausea, vomiting, and coughing frequently occur soon after the injections are given, but are not considered by most authors as signs of toxicity sufficient to warrant discontinuing the treatment. A number of fatalities have been reported each year as a result of treatment in Egypt, but some are not reported, and Khalil believes the true figure to be about 1 in 2,000 receiving the full course. Contraindications are cardiac disease, fever, advanced cirrhosis, nephritis, acute pyelitis or any other serious kidney condition. In pregnancy the patient should be hospitalized.

Fuadin is supplied in ampules containing a 6.3 per cent solution which is given intramuscularly on alternate days or 3 times a week. The dosage usually recommended is 1.5 c.c. for the first, 3.5 c.c. for the second, and 5.0 c.c. for succeeding doses to a total of 9 doses. The U. S. Army recommends (Anon., 1945) that this series be extended to 16 doses so as to equal the antimony content of the tartar emetic series. In any case, if viable eggs are still being passed a week later, 5 more injections are usually given. Khalil considered the above dose as applying to a person weighing 60 kilograms, and reduced the dosage for children proportional to the weight. Hernández Morales (1945) recommends a slightly higher dosage for children, giving 0.5 c.c. for the initial dose, and if no reactions follow, 0.05 c.c. per kilogram of body weight for the second dose, and 0.1 c.c. per kilogram of body weight for succeeding doses until about 1.0 c.c. per kilogram has been administered. Coughing does not characteristically follow Fuadin, but nausea, vomiting, epigastric pain, pain in the joints and chest do occur. Dizziness or marked signs of depression of the circulatory or respiratory systems are indications of toxicity calling for interruption of treatment or reduction of dosage. Deaths have followed the use of Fuadin, but the records are not sufficiently dependable to determine whether they are less frequent than after treatment with tartar emetic. The contraindications are the same as for tartar emetic. It seems probable, however, that cases of cirrhosis will tolerate Fuadin better, Salah and Hassan (1935) having found that cases with a disturbed liver function showed improvement in this respect after treatment.

Recently there have been several trials with intensive treatment with these antimony compounds. Alves and Blair (1946) injected slowly 10 c.c. of a 5 per cent solution of sodium antimony tartrate 3 times at 3-hour intervals in each of 2 consecutive days. Mills (1946) used daily injections of Fuadin 6 days a week for 2 weeks. Halawani and Abdallah (1946) used 5 c.c. of Fuadin per 60 kg. of body weight 3 times at 3-hour intervals on 2 consecutive days. Selected cases were used for trial to eliminate all persons with any possible contraindication. Several hundred cases have been treated by these methods and, as far as can be determined, the results seem to be about as good as with the standard courses. No severe toxic reactions were seen and the mild signs were no more than are expected from the standard treatment. The results are encouraging and should lead to further experimentation under carefully controlled conditions.

References

lves, W., and Blair, D. M.: 1946. Schistosomiasis: Intensive Treatment With Antimony, Lancet **1:** 9-12.

nonymous. 1945. The Chemotherapy of Schistosomiasis Japonica, Bull. U. S. Army M. Dept. **4:** 178-180.

rchibald, R. G.: 1933a. The Use of the Fruit of the Tree Balanites Aegyptiaca in the Control of Schistosomiasis in the Sudan, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **27:** 207-210.

rchibald, R. G.: 1933b. The Endemiology and Epidemiology of Schistosomiasis in the Sudan, J. Trop. Med. **36:** 345-348.

arlow, C. H.: 1931. A New Method for Examining Urine for Helminth Eggs, Am. J. Hyg. **14:** 212-217.

Barlow, C. H.: 1933. The Effect of the ''Winter Rotation'' of Water Upon Snails Involved in the Spread of Schistosomiasis in Egypt, 1930-1931 and 1931-1932, Am. J. Hyg. **17:** 724-742.

Barlow, C. H.: 1935. Further Studies of the Revival, After Drying, of the Snail Hosts of the Human Schistosomes of Egypt, Am. J. Hyg. **22:** 376-391.

Barlow, C. H.: 1936. Is There Dermatitis in Egyptian Schistosomiasis? Am. J. Hyg. **24:** 587-599.

Barlow, C. H.: 1937. The Value of Canal Clearance in the Control of Schistosomiasis in Egypt, Am. J. Hyg. **25:** 327-348.

Bartsch, P.: 1946. The Human Blood Flukes, Scient. Monthly **63:** 381-390.

Bercovitz, Z. T., Rodríguez Molina, R., Hargrave, D. W., Dickie, J. D., and Green, C. E.: 1944. Studies on Human Schistosoma Mansoni Infections. I. Proctoscopic Picture in Asymptomatic Schistosomiasis Mansoni Infections, J. A. M. A. **125:** 961-963.

Biggam, A. G., and Arafa, M. A.: 1930. The Sigmoidoscope as an Aid in the Diagnosis of Dysenteric Conditions in Egypt, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **24:** 187-200.

Black, K. O.: 1945. Cutaneous Schistosomiasis Involving S. Haematobium Eggs, Brit. M. J. **6:** 453-456.

Brackett, S.: 1939. Methods for Controlling Schistosome Dermatitis, J. A. M. A. **113:** 117-121.

Brandt, J. L., and Finch, E. P.: 1946. A Simple Flocculation Slide Test for the Diagnosis of Schistosomiasis, Am. J. Clin. Path. **16:** 141-151.

Cort, W. W.: 1928. Schistosome Dermatitis in the United States (Michigan), J. A. M. A. **90:** 1027-1029.

Cram, E. B., and Files, V. S.: 1945. Laboratory Studies on the Snail Host of Schistosoma Mansoni, J. Parasitol. **31:** (Dec. Supp.) 14.

Cram, E. B., Jones, M. F., and Wright, W. H.: 1945. A Potential Intermediate Host of Schistosoma Mansoni, Science **101:** 302.

Day, H. B.: 1937. Pulmonary Bilharziasis, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **30:** 575-582.

Day, H. B., and Ferguson, A. R.: 1909. An Account of a Form of Splenomegaly With Hepatic Cirrhosis Endemic in Egypt, Ann. Trop. Med. **3:** 379-394.

Fairley, N. H.: 1920. A Comparative Study of Experimental Bilharziasis in Monkeys Contrasted With the Hitherto Described Lesions in Man, J. Path. & Bact. **23:** 289-314.

Faust, E. C.: 1935. Some Newer Aspects of Schistosome Infection in the Western Hemisphere, J. Trop. Med. **38:** 249-259.

Faust, E. C., and Hoffman, W. A.: 1934. Studies on Schistosomiasis Mansoni in Puerto Rico. III. Biological Studies. 1. The Extra-Mammalian Phases of the Life Cycle, Puerto Rico J. Pub. Health & Trop. Med. **10:** 1-47 (Spanish, 48-97).

Faust, E. C., and Ingalls, J. W.: 1946. The Diagnosis of Schistosomiasis Japonica. III. Technics for the Recovery of the Eggs of Schistosoma Japonicum, Am. J. Trop. Med. **26:** 559-584.

Faust, E. C., Jones, C. A., and Hoffman, W. A.: 1934. Studies on Schistosomiasis Mansoni in Puerto Rico. III. Biological Studies. 2. The Mammalian Phase of the Life Cycle, Puerto Rico, J. Pub. Health & Trop. Med. **10:** 133-196 (Spanish, 197-254).

Faust, E. C., and Meleney, H. E.: 1924. Studies on Schistosomiasis Japonica, Am. J. Hyg., Monographic Series **3:** 1-339.

Fouad, A. M. M.: 1929. A New Method for Detecting Schistosoma Mansoni Ova in the Stools, J. Egyptian M. A. **12:** 54.

Fülleborn, F.: 1921. Uber den Nachweis der Schistosomum mansoni—Eier im Stuhl, Arch. f. Schiffs- u. Tropen-Hyg. **25:** 334-340.

Geib, W. A., Sher, M. F., and Cheney, G.: 1946. Diagnosis of Manson's Schistosomiasis by Biopsy of Rectal Tissue, Am. J. Clin. Path. **16:** 270-276.

Giffen, H. K.: 1945. Schistosomiasis (Bilharziasis) and Egyptian Splenomegaly, Am. J. Clin. Path. **15:** 10-16.

Gillman, T., and Gillman, J.: 1945. A Modified Liver Aspiration Biopsy Apparatus and Technique, With Special Reference to Its Clinical Applications as Assessed by 500 Biopsies, South African J. M. Sc. **10:** 53-66.

Girges, R.: 1932. The Aetiology of ''Egyptian Splenomegaly,'' Trop. Med. 35: 86-90; 99-105.

Girges, R.: 1934. Schistosomiasis (Bilharziasis), London, John Bale, Sons and Danielsson, Ltd., pp. 1-529.

Guerra, P., Mayer, M., and DiPrisco, J.: 1945. La especificidad de las intradermorreacciones con antígenos de Schistosoma mansoni y Fasciola hepática por el método de Prausnitz-Kuestner, Rev. san. y asist. social **10:** 51-63.

Ialawani, A., and Abdallah, A.: 1946. Intensive Treatment of Schistosomiasis With Repodral. A Preliminary Report on Fifteen Cases, J. Roy. Egyptian M. A. **29**: 101-121.

Ielmy, M. M.: 1930. An Easy and Accurate Method of Microscopical Diagnosis of Intestinal Bilharziasis, J. Egyptian M. A. **13**: 65.

Iernández Morales, F.: 1945. The Treatment of Schistosomiasis, Puerto Rico J. Pub. Health & Trop. Med. **20**: 322-338 (Spanish, 339-356).

Iernández Morales, F., Maldonado, J. F., and Pratt, C. K.: 1946. Diagnóstico de la esquistosomiasis de Manson por medio de la biopsia del recto. Bol. Asoc. méd. de Puerto Rico **38**: 253-263; in English: Am. J. Trop. Med. **26**: 811-820.

Ioeppli, R.: 1932. Histological Observations in Experimental Schistosomiasis Japonica, Chinese M. J. **46**: 1179-1186.

Ioffman, W. A., and Faust, E. C.: 1934. Studies on Schistosomiasis Mansoni in Puerto Rico. II. The Epidemiology and Geographical Distribution of Schistosomiasis Mansoni in Puerto Rico. 1. Epidemiology of the Infection on the Island, Puerto Rico J. Pub. Health & Trop. Med. **9**: 228-254 (Spanish, 255-282).

Iollands, R. A., and Palmer, E. D.: 1946. Observations on the Pathology of Schistosomiasis Japonica: Diagnosis by Rectal Crypt Aspiration, J. Parasitol. **32**: 525-528.

Iumphreys, R. M.: 1932. Vesical Schistosomiasis in the Gezira Irrigated Area of the Sudan, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **26**: 241-252.

Iunter, G. W., III, Ingalls, J. W., and Cohen, M. G.: 1946. Comparison of Methods for Recovery of Eggs of Schistosoma Japonicum From Feces, Am. J. Clin. Path. **16**: 721-724.

Iutchison, H. S.: 1928. The Pathology of Bilharziasis, Am. J. Path. **4**: 1-16.

turbe, J., and Gonzalez, E.: 1917. The Intermediate Host of Schistosomum Mansoni in Venezuela. Nat. Acad. Med. Caracas. pp. 1-7. Spanish: Graceta Med. de Caracas **24**: 51-52.

affé, R.: 1939. Lesiones intestinales producidas por la bilharzia mansoni encontradas en Venezuela, Rev. Policlín. Caracas **9**: 3132-3147.

affé, R.: 1940. Sobre la patogenia de las lesiones anatomopathológicas bilharzianas, Rev. Policlín. Caracas **9**: 3321-3345.

affé, R., Mayer, M., and Pifano, C. F.: 1945. Estudios biológicos y anatomopatológicos en animales infestados con un solo sexo de Schistosoma mansoni, Rev. san. y asist. social **10**: 95-107.

nsen, G.: 1944. Sôbre a validade do Australorbis centrimetralis (Lutz, 1918). (Nota prévia), Mem. Inst. Oswaldo Cruz **40**: 201-208.

nalil, M.: 1931. The Specific Treatment of Human Schistosomiasis (Bilharziasis) With Special Reference to Its Application on a Large Scale, Arch. f. Schiffs- u. Tropen-Hyg. (Beihft 2) **35**: 1-128.

halil, M., and Salah el Din, M.: 1930. The Microscopical Diagnosis of Intestinal Schistosomiasis, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **23**: 519-524.

ohlschütter, E., and Koppisch, E.: 1941. On the Mode of Extrusion of Schistosome Ova From Blood Vessels Into the Tissues, Schweiz. Ztschr. f. Path. u. Bakt. **4**: 357-369.

oppisch, E.: 1941. Studies on Schistosomiasis Mansoni in Puerto Rico. VI. Morbid Anatomy of the Disease as Found in Puerto Ricans, Puerto Rico J. Pub. Health & Trop. Med. **16**: 395-455 (Spanish, 456-500).

oppisch, E.: 1943. Manson's Schistosomiasis, J. A. M. A. **121**: 936-942.

ane, C.: 1936. The Carriage of Schistosomes From Man to Man, With Special Attention to the Molluscs Which Are Their Larval Hosts in Different Parts of the Earth, Trop. Dis. Bull. **33**: 1-15.

eiper, R. T.: 1915. Report on the Results of the Bilharzia Mission in Egypt, 1915. Part II. Prevention and Eradication, J. Roy. Army M. Corps **25**: 147-192.

iper, R. T.: 1916. On the Relation Between the Terminal-Spined and Lateral-Spined Eggs of Bilharzia, Brit. M. J. **18**: 411.

iper, R. T.: 1918. Report on the Results of the Bilharzia Mission in Egypt, 1915. Part V. Adults and Ova, J. Roy. Army M. Corps **30**: 235-260.

ughlin, E. H., and Stoll, N. R.: 1946. An Efficient Concentration Method (AEX) for Detecting Helminthic Ova in Feces (Modification of the Telemann Technic), Am. J. Trop. Med. **26**: 517-527.

ttermoser, G. W.: 1941. Destrucción de caracoles transmisores de Schistosoma mansoni en Venezuela, Rev. san. y asist. social **6**: 874-897.

termoser, G. W., and Castellaños, J. V.: 1945. Observaciones sobre la propagación y la destrucción del caracol, Australorbis glabratus, Say, 1818, vector de Schistosoma mansoni (bilharzia) en El Valle, D. F., Rev. san. y asist. social **10**: 109-148.

atz, A.: 1916. Observações sobre a evolução do Schistosomum mansoni. Nota prévia, Brasil Medico **30**: 385-387.

Lutz, A.: 1917. Observações sobre a evolução do Schistosomum mansoni. (Segunda nota prévia), Brasil-med. 31: 81-82; 89-90.

Manson-Bahr, P. H.: 1945. Manson's Tropical Diseases, ed. 12, London, Cassell & Co., Ltd., pp. 690-699.

Martins, A. V.: 1938. Contribuição ao estudo do genero Australorbis Pilsbry, 1934. Tése de livre docencia, Fac. Med. Univ. de Minas Gerais. Bello Horizonte: 1-66.

Mayer, M., and Pifano, C. F.: 1945. El diagnóstico de la schistosomiasis por intradermoreacciones con un antígeno preparado de vermes adultos de Schistosoma mansoni, Rev. san. y asist. social 10: 3-44.

Meira, J. A., and Ramos, J., Jr.: 1944. Considerações sôbre o electrocardiograma na esquistosomiase mansoni, O Hospital, Rio de Janeiro 26: 717-746.

Mills, W. G.: 1946. Treatment of Schistosomiasis, Lancet 1: 12-13.

Nelson, E. C., and Bayliss, M.: 1946. Schistosomiasis Japonica. Laboratory Diagnosis, Bull. U. S. Army M. Dept. 5: 673-680.

Onsy, A.: 1937. The Pathogenesis of Endemic (Egyptian) Splenomegaly, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. 30: 583-600.

Ottolina, C., and Atencio, M. H.: 1943. Nuevos caminos para el diagnóstico clínico preciso de la schistosomiasis mansoni, Rev. Policlín. Caracas 12: 348-380.

Ottolina, C., and Atencio M. H.: 1945. Nuevos caminos para el diagnóstico clínico preciso de la schistosomiasis mansoni, Rev. san. y asist. social 10: 185-215.

Pilsbry, H. A.: 1934. Review of the Planorbidae of Florida, With Notes on Other Members of the Family, Proc. Acad. Nat. Sc., Phila. 86: 29-66.

Pinto, C.: 1944. Um ano de combate às docenças parasitárias que atacam os rodoviários da estrada Rio-Bahia, 1942 a 1943, Mem. Inst. Oswaldo Cruz 40: 209-340.

Pons, J. A.: 1937. Studies on Schistosomiasis Mansoni in Puerto Rico. V. Clinical Aspects of Schistosomiasis Mansoni in Puerto Rico, Puerto Rico J. Pub. Health. & Trop. Med. 13: 171-254 (Spanish, 255-349).

Rodríguez-Molina, R., and Pons, J. A.: 1936. Hematological Studies on Schistosomiasis Mansoni in Puerto Rico, Puerto Rico J. Pub. Health & Trop. Med. 11: 369-400 (Spanish, 401-433).

Salah, M., and Hassan, A.: 1935. The Action of Antimony on the Liver With Special Reference to Its Use in the Treatment of Schistosomiasis, Arch. f. Schiffs- u. Tropen-Hyg. 39: 1-14.

Scott, J. A.: 1937a. Dilution Egg Counting in Comparison With Other Methods for Determining the Incidence of Schistosoma Mansoni, Am. J. Hyg. 25: 546-565.

Scott, J. A.: 1937b. The Incidence and Distribution of the Human Schistosomes in Egypt, Am. J. Hyg. 25: 566-614.

Scott, J. A.: 1937c. Observations on Mortality and Morbidity From Schistosomiasis in Egypt, J. Trop. Med. 40: 125-132.

Scott, J. A.: 1940a. Schistosomiasis in Irrigated Mountain Valleys of Venezuela, Am. J. Hyg. 31: 1-15.

Scott, J. A.: 1940b. Venezuelan Snails of the Genus Australorbis, Notulae Naturae, No. 54: 1-13.

Scott, J. A.: 1942. The Epidemiology of Schistosomiasis in Venezuela, Am. J. Hyg. 35: 337-366.

Scott, J. A., and Barlow, C. H.: 1938. Limitations to the Control of Helminth Parasites in Egypt by Means of Treatment and Sanitation, Am. J. Hyg. 27: 619-648.

Sherlock, S.: 1945. Aspiration Liver Biopsy. Technique and Diagnostic Application, Lancet 2: 397-401.

Stunkard, H. W.: 1946. Possible Snail Hosts of Human Schistosomes in the United States, J. Parasitol. 32: 539-552.

Symmers, W. St. C.: 1904. Note on a New Form of Liver Cirrhosis Due to the Presence of the Ova of Bilharzia Haematobia, J. Path. & Bact. 9: 237-239.

Taliaferro, W. H.: 1929. The Immunology of Parasitic Infections, New York, Century Company, pp. 1-414.

Tomb, J. W., and Helmy, M. M.: 1931. The Diagnosis of Intestinal Schistosomiasis by Sedimentation, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. 25: 181-185.

Torres, C. M., and Pinto, C.: 1946. Lesões produzidas pelo Schistosoma mansoni no tatú (Euphractus sexcinctus), mecanismo de eliminação dos ovos e sensibilidade da espécie animal nas infestações experimentais, Mem. Inst. Oswaldo Cruz 43: 301-348.

Weller, T. H.: 1947. The Diagnosis of Schistosoma Mansoni Infections. Note on the Use of a Rectal Scraper, Am. J. Trop. Med. 27: 41-44.

Weller, T. H., and Dammin, G. J.: 1945a. The Acid-Ether Centrifugation and the Zinc Sulfate Flotation Techniques as Methods for the Recovery of the Eggs of Schistosoma Mansoni, Am. J. Trop. Med. 25: 367-374.

Weller, T. H., and Dammin, G. J.: 1945b. An Improved Method of Examination of Feces for the Diagnosis of Intestinal Schistosomiasis, Am. J. Clin. Path. 15: 496-500.

CHAPTER 48

TROPICAL MYCOSIS—INTRODUCTION

Antonio González-Ochoa

Until quite recently, diseases due to fungi were considered a part of trop-al medicine, because they were believed to be exotic diseases. The scarcity f textbooks dealing with the subject of medical mycology in former days istified this point of view. The group of the causative organisms was but ttle known despite their relative frequency. Dermatologists were the first include a few chapters on mycosis of the skin in their treatises; works on rgical pathology dealt rather summarily with actinomycosis; as to other ycoses, no source of information was to be had other than books on tropical seases or articles which appeared in journals devoted to various specialties.

The situation has recently changed. There are now numerous treatises n medical mycology written in all the principal languages. The author of is section feels that it is logical to discuss only those mycoses peculiar to the opics or those of major incidence in tropical areas, and to emphasize a few oints of interest to clinicians in tropical regions, rather than to give a com-ete summary of all medical mycology.

BRIEF OUTLINE OF MEDICAL MYCOLOGY

Of the four groups of infectious diseases, those due to protozoa, viruses, cteria, and fungi, the fungus group has been studied the least, in spite of e fact that mycology is an older science than bacteriology. The year 1837 n be considered as the beginning of medical mycology. In that year Remak served that the scutula of favus were composed of filaments similar to those molds. Shortly thereafter, in 1839, Schönlein demonstrated the true nature tinea capitis. Other discoveries followed, and interest in mycology grew pidly. During the 1870's and 1880's, the work of Pasteur and Koch on cteriology almost completely eclipsed the study of mycology, and there ere only occasional communications on the subject, until 1910, when Sabour-ud published his magnificent book on tinea, thus calling renewed attention pathogenic fungi.

The oversight suffered by this specialty has been due to several causes: compared with bacteriology, mycology undoubtedly is less important; incor-t observations have caused confusion, with the result that there has been multiplication of the number of species with complicated classifications and erminable lists of names. In the beginning, studies were made by indi-luals who had a botanical rather than a medical viewpoint, and they turally applied criteria solely of morphology to these variable and compli-ed organisms. At the present time mycology is gradually assuming an portant place in the field of medicine. It now comprises a smaller number truly pathogenic fungi, a situation which serves to simplify the procedures ed in the study of the subject.

Fungi belong to the plant kingdom. They are members of the phylum Thallophyta, filamentous plants with very simple cellular structure. By contrast with higher plants, they do not possess stem, roots, or leaves. Thallophyta include Algae and Fungi, the Algae being differentiated from the Fung by the presence of chlorophyll. Fungi, which lack this substance for synthesis of food, lead a saprophytic or parasitic existence.

Fungi are divided into Pseudomycetes and Eumycetes. The first division comprises the Schizomycetes or the *bacteria* and Myxomycetes, simple *molds*. Eumycetes are further divided into Hyphomycetes, or imperfect fungi (fungi imperfecti), so-called because reproduction is not of the sexual type; Ascomycetes, which reproduce by ascospores; Phycomycetes, which reproduce by means of zygospores; and Basidiomycetes, which reproduce by basidiospores. The last three groups have perfect or sexual reproduction. From the standpoint of pathogenicity, the Hyphomycetes, also called *fungi imperfecti,* are the most interesting group.

Fungi Imperfecti

Within the group known as fungi imperfecti are found most of the pathogenic fungi. Only these will be discussed. They are classified on the basis of their asexual spores, varying greatly according to their morphology and mode of living, so that they present great difficulties in classification. They are grouped in genera on the basis of similarity of spore formation rather than along phylogenetic lines, although they are derived from different genetic types.

With this information in mind, as well as the practical purpose of this chapter, we shall forego further reference to classification, mentioning only whatever is necessary for diagnostic purposes.

Two kinds of structure are considered in the fungus: the *vegetative* and the *reproductive apparatus.* The first enables the organism to obtain elements necessary for development. The second is charged with reproduction of the organism.

Vegetative Apparatus

The vegetative apparatus is formed by a multitude of filaments, ramified and interwoven in all directions, which form the body. This mat of filaments is called the *mycelium.* The individual filament is called a *hypha.**

The mycelium has been divided, according to the diameter of its hyphae, into the *macrosiphonate,* or large diameter, and *microsiphonate,* or small diameter. The first term denotes filaments broader than one micron; the second, filaments narrower than one micron. Of those with the small diameter, there is a group, the Actinomyces,† which is highly interesting with respect to pathogenicity. The remaining pathogenic fungi have filaments with large diameter.

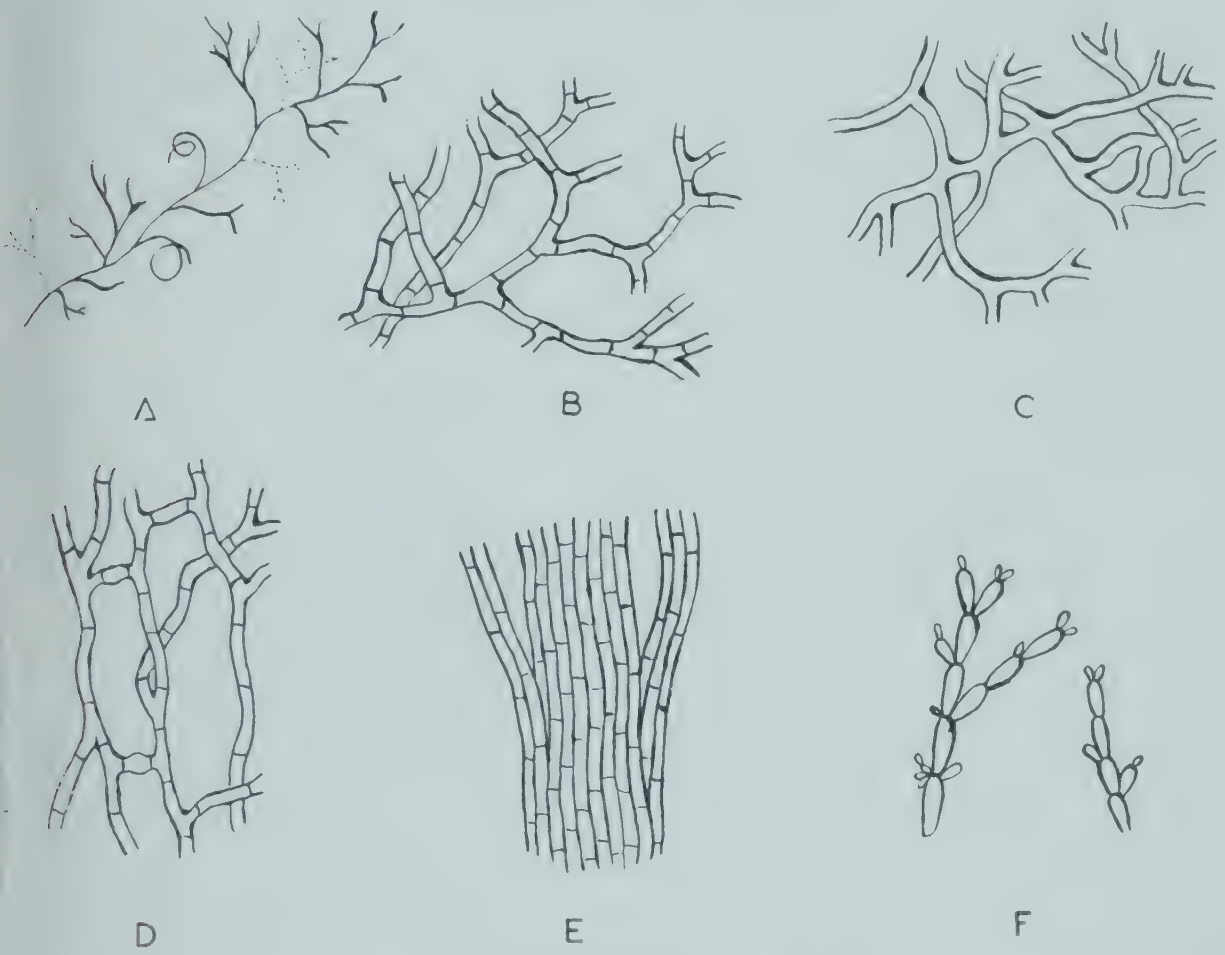
---

*Editor's note (O. F.): Common usage, however, refers to vegetative mycelium and aerial mycelium, the latter being the reproductive mycelium if spores are produced by hyphae.

†Editor's note (O. F.): Actinomycetales are classified as Schizomycetes by bacteriologists.

No partition walls or membranes are observed in filaments with small liameter.

The macrosiphonate mycelium may be continuous, septate, or budding. The eptate mycelium is formed by filaments joined like bamboo stalks. The continuous mycelium lacks these joints. The budding mycelium is formed by budding; vhen the bud attains the dimensions of the original parent cell, it sends forth nother bud, thus forming a chain of elements which lengthens successively to onstitute the *pseudohypha*, resulting in a *pseudomycelium*, typical for the genus Candida, and the colony is a soft yeast-like colony.



ig. 365.—Various types of mycelia. *A*, Microsiphonate; *B*, macrosiphonate septate; *C*, continuous; *D*, anastomosing mycelium; *E*, mycelium in coremia; *F*, budding mycelium.

The septate mycelium, which is found more frequently, has many sub- visions: *coremiform*, in which the filaments are grouped to form bundles; *astomosed*, with branched filaments, the branches uniting with each other; *liginous*, with a dark pigment, etc. These and other subdivisions not men- oned here will be explained in discussing particular characteristics of fungi ter in this section.

Reproductive Apparatus

The reproductive apparatus is composed of cellular formations called *ores*. There are a number of types:

1. **Thallospores.**—Thallospores are formed by the mycelium or thallus. o types are found: *Arthrospores* and *blastospores*. The first are rectangu-

lar cells formed by separation of the joints of a septate filament (fragmentation). Blastospores are formed by budding (gemmation) of a yeast-cell.

2. **Microconidia or aleurospore.***—Small, rounded, unicellular formations, formed by condensation of protoplasm.

3. **Macroconidia or fuseaux.***—In contrast to the above, these are large fusiform cells with parallel transverse septa.

4. **Conidia (true conidia).**—These spores are formed by a specialized hypha, called *conidiophore.* There is great variation in the manner in which they are grouped in relation to the hypha from which they originate, in form, color, size, etc.

5. **Chlamydospores.**—These are considered by some mycologists as thallospores. Cells are formed by condensation of the protoplasm and enlargement. They take a rounded form and develop a thick wall membrane. They may start from the end (terminal), the middle (median), or the side (lateral) of the filament. They are resistant spores.

6. **Sporangiospores.**—Globular sac-like formation (sporangium) contains a multitude of small spores.

These spore formations given here are the principal microscopic structures used as guides in a determinative study of fungi imperfecti.

BASIC FACTS CONCERNING MYCOLOGIC TECHNIC

The technic and culture media used in the study of mycology differ from those used in bacteriology. Pathogenic fungi, with certain exceptions *(A. bovis),* grow at room temperature. In practical work, simple media containing glucose and with a peptone base, such as Sabouraud's medium, are used. In contrast to bacteria, fungi require incubation for several days, generally a week, for their development.

A variety of pathologic material may be obtained for the diagnosis of mycoses, although generally the material is taken from the cutaneous surface. It includes scales, fragments of nails, hair, crusts, pus from microabscesses, etc. In deep-seated mycoses, pus from nodules or abscesses, sputum in cases of pulmonary mycosis, cerebrospinal fluid, etc., are needed.

Direct examination of a fresh specimen of the pathologic product is of great importance in mycology. For this purpose, use 20 per cent potassium hydroxide, or Amann's chlorolactophenol, to clear the material to be examined—hair, scales, nails. If staining is considered, double-strength Lugol's solution is recommended, as in the case of pus, sputum, etc.

Smears should not be made, since this procedure breaks up the mycologic elements, making identification difficult.

Success in results depends upon the selection of material for direct examination and for cultures. Young lesions should be used. In old or previously treated cases the number of parasites is decreased and they may not show in a direct examination; diagnosis then depends upon culture.

---

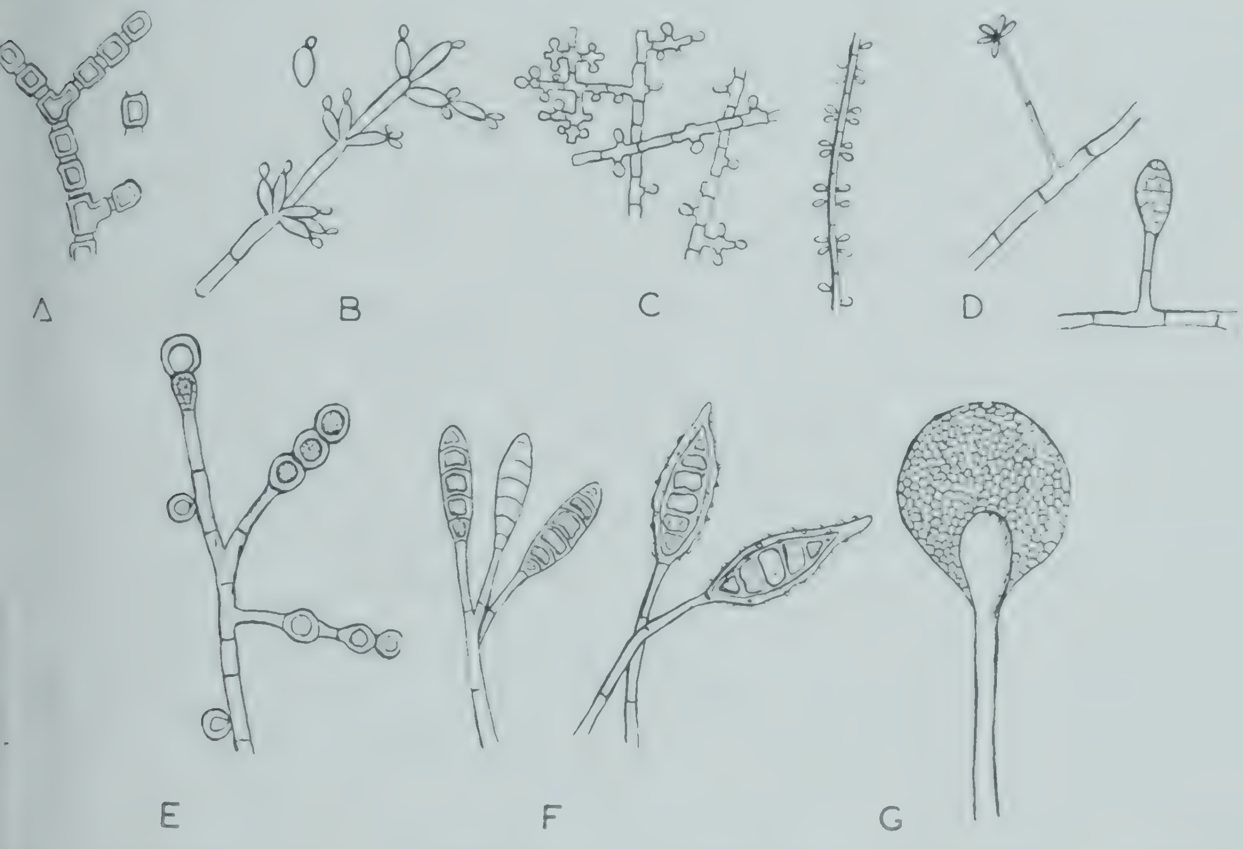
*Editor's note (O. F.): Many authors use these terms only to designate the size of conidia.

Chlorolactophenol, Amann.—

Chloral hydrate	2 parts
Lactic acid	1 part
Phenol crystals	1 part

Cotton blue, at a concentration of 0.5 per cent, may be added, and gives a good stain for organisms in scales.

Culture media used in mycology are varied. In practice, however, the glucose medium of Sabouraud, with agar, is sufficient to obtain culture of all pathogenic fungi with the exception of *Actinomyces bovis*.



ig. 366.—Asexual spores. *A*, Arthrospores; *B*, blastospores; *C*, aleurospores; *D*, conidia; *E*, chlamydospores; *F*, macroconidia (Fuseaux); *G*, sporangium.

In our own practice we have used this medium as modified by Langeron 1943). It consists of decreasing the quantity of glucose to prevent pleo-orphism or degeneration which some fungi undergo in culture, particularly ermatophytes, with loss of the elements of reproduction (spores) so that ly the vegetative mycelium remains.

bouraud 2 Per Cent Dextrose Agar.—

Water	1,000 c.c.
Dextrose	20 Gm.
Peptone	10 Gm.
Agar	20 Gm.

It is important not to oversterilize to prevent caramelization of the glucose.*

---

*Editor's note (O. F.): For other media, as corn meal agar, etc., and standard lacto-enol cotton blue stain, see Gradwohl: *Clinical Laboratory Methods and Diagnosis*, ed. 4, 48. Recently Littman's bile agar (Difco) has been used with excellent results in mycologic agnosis as well as new media devised by the Baltimore Biological Laboratory.

CLINICAL CLASSIFICATION OF THE MYCOSES

Diseases caused by fungi are classified into two large groups: (1) superficial mycoses and (2) deep mycoses. In the first group are comprised the common affections localized in the superficial part of the skin, producing mild symptoms; they do not endanger life, and, with few exceptions, recovery occurs spontaneously. Deep mycoses, on the other hand, invade structures underlying the skin and have a characteristic tendency to develop progressively and to terminate fatally in some cases.

Henrici (1940), in analyzing the principal characteristics which differentiate superficial from deep mycoses, pointed out certain considerations. Superficial mycoses are of like character throughout the world; deep mycoses show marked tendencies to restricted distribution; however, they may become endemic. Some few, like sporotrichosis, occur widely. Blastomycosis of the American type appears to be limited to the confines of the United States. Coccidioidomycosis practically exists only in certain states of the United States and in some states of the Mexican Republic. The limited geographic distribution of deep mycoses has been explained by the fact that the fungi which cause these diseases are parasites requiring certain geographic conditions.

With deep mycoses, the course is similar to that of tuberculosis and leprosy. Deep mycoses require introduction of the fungus into the tissues, through trauma or inhalation; they also require ability on the part of the fungus to survive and multiply in the sinuses of the tissues. This does not result in any appreciable immunity so that there is no spontaneous cure. The beginning of the disease is insidious. The patient is not able to state the precise time of the beginning of his symptoms, so that the disease may be in existence for several months before the individual considers it worth while to seek medical care. Henrici (1940) represented the development of this type of mycosis by an ascending line, very gradual at the beginning, followed by accelerated velocity until it terminates almost vertically. It would seem from this that the fungus is not capable of multiplying in the tissues in the beginning, but that, by its continuing presence in the tissues, a change takes place, either in the fungus itself or in its environment.

References

Clements, F. E., and Shear, C. L.: 1931. The Genera of Fungi, New York, H. W. Wilson Co.
Henrici, A. T.: 1940. Characteristics of Fungous Diseases, J. Bact. 39: 113-138.
Langeron, M.: 1943. Précis de Microscopie, Paris, Masson & Cie.

CHAPTER 49

SUPERFICIAL TROPICAL MYCOSES

ANTONIO GONZÁLEZ-OCHOA

Superficial mycoses are lesions produced by various groups of fungi which ttack the skin and its appendages, the hair and nails. In addition to the imortant and well-known group of Dermatophytes, there are others of less imortance from the standpoint of pathogenicity, which should be treated in etail because of their exclusive presence in the tropics or their major inidence in tropical regions.

Among the important superficial tropical mycoses are trichomycosis vularis—black piedra—tropical mycoses due to dermatophytes: tinea imricata and little known tropical dermatomycoses, pityriasis versicolor, tinea igra and keratomycosis nigricans palmaris, tinea albigena.

TRICHOMYCOSIS VULGARIS AND TROPICAL TRICHOMYCOSIS OF CASTELLANI

This affection, described by Praxton (1869), has been called trichomycosis lmellina, lepothrix, trichomycosis nodosa, etc. Recent literature designates also as trichomycosis axillaris.

The large number of synonyms is due to the confusion which has existed out this disease. According to Pignot (1936), trichomycosis vulgaris conitutes a chapter still open to study.

DEFINITION

Trichomycosis vulgaris is an affection of axillary and pubic, inguinorotal, or vulvar hair, characterized by the formation of small colored nodules hich cover the hair and produced by a microsiphonate, *Nocardia tenuis.*

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

This mycosis is seen frequently in hot and humid regions, although it is universally tributed.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

Upon the middle third of the affected hair there are most often yellowish dules which are strongly adherent, more or less numerous, either spaced e beads in a rosary, or confluent. They do not invade the follicles. The ir loses its color and becomes coarser and granular to the touch. The contions formed by the microorganisms embedded in a gelatinous substance y invade the cortex of the hair and develop beneath the superficial layer.

This disease was redescribed by Castellani (1911, 1913, and 1922) und the name "trichomycosis tropicalis" in Ceylon, the East Indies, and Burm where it was quite common.

Castellani (1911) explains that trichomycosis *tropicalis* differs from th *vulgaris* form in that the concretions in the hair in *tropicalis* are soft and easil detached. He divided it into 3 varieties, *flava, rubra,* and *nigra,* according t the color of the nodules. The yellow variety is caused by the parasite in its pure form, and the other 2, in association with a micrococcus, *M. nigrescens* (Castellani, 1911) for the black form and *M. castellani* (Chalmers and Faire 1915) for the red form.

ETIOLOGY

The etiologic agent of trichomycosis vulgaris and trichomycosis tropicalis is a microsiphonate, *Nocardia tenuis* Castellani, 1912. It is composed of slender filaments, 1 to 1.5 microns or less in diameter and 4 to 10 microns in length. These filaments are straight or slightly bent, ramified, gram-positive, not acid-fast. MacFie (1916) reported that he had cultivated this organism on ascitic fluid agar, obtaining translucent, colorless colonies with opaque centers, with filaments 0.6 micron in diameter; this has not been confirmed by other workers.

Manson-Bahr (1935) and Strong (1944) have recommended that the term "trichomycosis nodosa," a name given by Patterson to trichomycosis vulgaris, should not be confused with the term "trichomycosis nodularis," the name given by Juhel Rénoy to piedra. Both authors use the names "trichomycosis" and "trichonocardiasis" when referring to nodosities produced by *Trichosporum beigelii* (Rabenhorst) Vuillemin 1902, the etiologic agent of the European white piedra, causing confusion between trichomycosis vulgaris and white piedra.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Affected hairs, placed under the microscope, in Amman's chlorolactophenol or in potassium hydroxide solution, show a collection of very slender, branching filaments resembling bacilli in chains, embedded in a gelatinous substance. These slender filaments of Nocardia are easily distinguished from the large thick-walled cells of the agent of piedra.

TREATMENT

Careful cleansing of the affected region and use of lotions of mercury bichloride in 1:1,000 concentration and 5 per cent iodates, or 3 per cent resorcinol after shaving the area, effect cure.

BLACK PIEDRA

DEFINITION

The name "piedra" is used to designate a disease of the hair and beard, manifested by small hard nodules resembling pebbles adherent to the surface of the hair, and which invades beneath the superficial layer.

Langeron (1936) divided piedra into 2 groups: the white or trichosporic piedra and black piedra. This connotation defines its principal clinical differential characteristic. There is also a division into tropical, Asiatic, and uropean piedra; however, this geographic division is not entirely apropos, ince European white piedra also exists in tropical regions, and Asiatic black iedra is found in South America.

According to Mackinnon and Schouten (1942), the etiologic agent of hite piedra does not produce disease except of hair previously parasitized y other primary causes, as black piedra, trichorrhexis nodosa, trichoptilosis.

We shall deal with black piedra, an exclusively tropical affection. White iedra will be discussed only for the purpose of establishing the differences etween this disease and black piedra, thus avoiding the confusion frequently ncountered in these 2 conditions.

Black piedra can be distinguished from white piedra (Langeron, 1929, 936) by its purely tropical distribution, by the color of the nodules (dark rown to black and opaque), by their greater hardness and adherence. Iycologically, it is distinguished by its causal agent, an Ascomycete *(Piedraia ortai)* with asci, forming dark and compact colonies. White piedra, on the ther hand, is characterized by grayish or light brown, less adherent, and fter nodules. It is produced by *Trichosporum beigelii* (Rabenhorst) Vuillein, 1902.

HISTORY

Black piedra was probably discovered in Colombia, from observations of Osorio and sada in material sent to Desenne (1878), but more definite information resulted from udies made by the Brazilian investigators Godinho (1906), Muñiz and Valladares (1907), abello (1909), and Horta (1911). Later the affection was observed in other countries of the merican continent where the disease predominates, although it has also been described tside of the New World.

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

The disease exists in hot and humid regions with abundant rainfall. It is very frequent Colombia and Brazil and has been described in the Guianas, Venezuela, Uruguay, Paraguay, d Argentina. The affection has been described in Borneo, Java, and French Indo-China.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Although there is no racial predisposition to the disease, it is observed at natives of both sexes and of various ages are preferentially attacked, due lack of cleanliness. The disease is contagious and may result in family or hool epidemics.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The hairs of the scalp alone are attacked. They are covered with small dules of variable size, from about ½ or ⅓ the diameter of the invaded hair about twice its diameter. Their color is dark chestnut brown to black. e entire circumference of the hair is rarely involved. The nodules occur ong the longitudinal axis of the hair and are of greater diameter in one remity than in the other, terminating abruptly at this point, while they narw progressively toward the other extremity. They adhere firmly to the hair, due to the fact that the fungus has penetrated beneath its superficial layer without reaching the cortex, so that the hair retains its resistance. These tiny nodes occur in variable numbers, sometimes scattered and not so numerous, sometimes abundant and confluent, forming on the hair a covering which appears spindle shaped or conical. At times there is a single lateral projection. When the nodules are few and small, they may be found only by touch or microscopically, but when abundant, they appear as dark spots or patches in the hair.

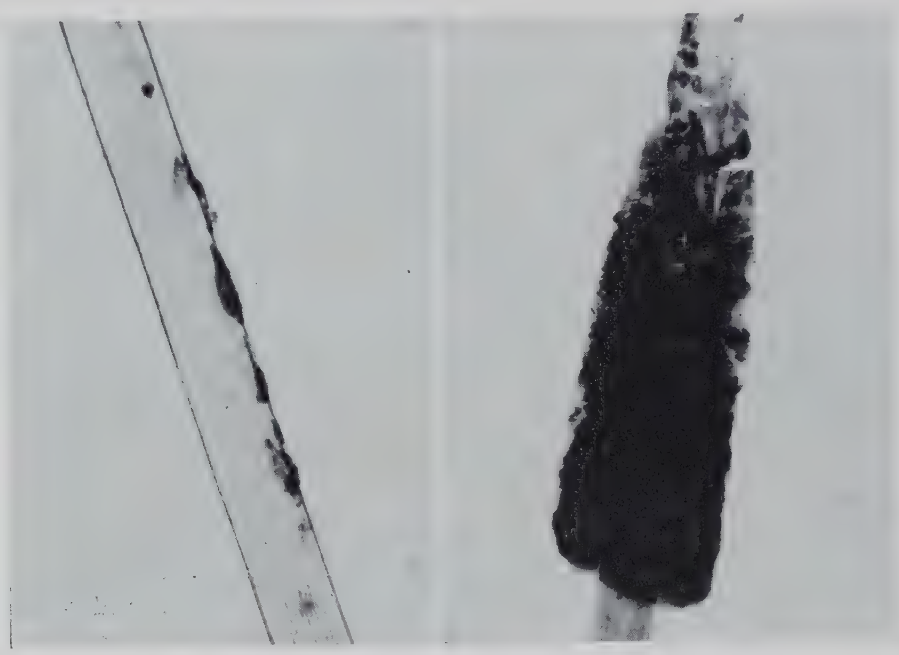


Fig. 367.—Large and small nodules of black piedra.

ETIOLOGY

The fungus which produces black piedra belongs to a group of the Ascomycetes. Horta (1911) was the first to establish clinical and mycologic differences between black and white piedra. Fonseca and Leao (1928) created the genus Piedraia, to separate the causal agent of black piedra from Trichosporum, in which is included the species that causes white piedra and to which the genus Piedraia is not related. Langeron (1929) showed that Piedraia is an Ascomycete of the class Pyrenomycetes, related to the biologic group of the Asterineae of Arnaud (1918), the last being a group of Ascomycetes with a different systematic position. They are adapted to superficial parasitism on leaves of plants. Since they are entirely superficial, they require great atmospheric humidity in order to exist. Piedraiae, parasites of human hair, is the equivalent of Arnaud's Asterineae, parasites of plant leaves. Its geographic distribution follows precisely the regions of ''asterineic climate,'' a term which designates very hot and humid climates in which these fungi exist.

There are 2 species: *Piedraia hortai* (Brumpt) Fonseca and Leão, 1928, and *P. venezuelensis,* Brumpt and Langeron, 1934. The validity of the species *P. javanica* Boedyn and Verbunt, 1938, is doubtful.*

P. hortai.—This is the only species which has been cultivated, inasmuch as *P. venezuelensis* was differentiated only by morphologic differences observed in the hair. *P. hortai* in the hair forms parallel filaments, perpendicular to the surface of the hair. The hyphae are composed of chains of globular or quadrangular cells closely united by means of an interstitial substance, and constitute a dense stroma.

---

*Editor's note (O. F.): This opinion is not shared by all authorities.

Among the filaments, asci are found. The stroma is therefore fertile, or an ascostroma. The asci contain 2 to 8 ascospores. These are fusiform, with polar filaments. *P. venezuelensis* differs by having asci with only 4 ascospores, thicker walls, and a strong, short, pointed end of the ascospores which takes the place of the polar filament.

Colonies of *P. hortai* are hard, adherent, heaped, dark, almost black, with a chestnut-colored pigment which diffuses into the medium. Between the hyphae, asci with ascospores like those seen on the hair may develop.

P. sarmentoi, Periera Filho, 1930, and *P. paraguayensis* (Delamare and Gatti, 1928) are synonyms of *P. hortai.*

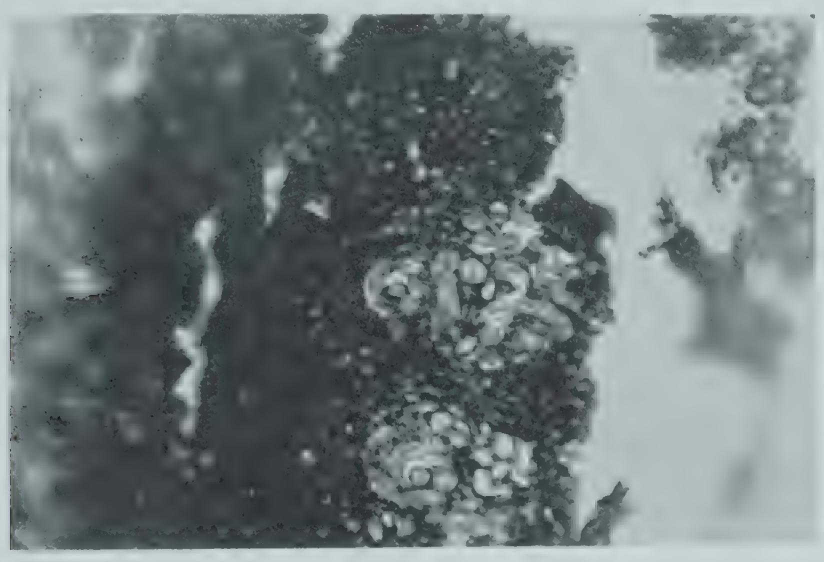


Fig. 368.—Ascospores of *Piedraia hortai* in a section of culture.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

A hair containing a nodule is placed in 20 per cent potassium hydroxide between slides, nd, after heating until bubbles appear, is examined under the microscope, using medium high-power lens. Closely septate hyphae with round and quadrangular cells, perpendicular to the air axis, with asci containing 8 ascospores and a polar filament, or 4 ascospores without ilament, are seen. The first is *P. hortai;* the second, *P. venezuelensis.*

To culture *P. hortai,* the parasitized hair is placed on Sabouraud's 2 per cent dextrose gar. Colonies develop slowly, with the characteristics described above.

TREATMENT

Shave the hair and, after thorough cleansing, apply, daily, 5 per cent alicylic acid solution in alcohol, petroleum ether, or mercury bichloride, :1,000, until the hair becomes normal.

MYCOSIS TROPICALIS DUE TO DERMATOPHYTES

The term "dermatophytosis" applies to diseases caused by a group of ungi that are well defined from the standpoint of mycology, physiology, and athology. They have the common characteristic of attacking only structures of superficial keratinized areas. Invasion of subcutaneous tissues is ery exceptional. Mycosis produced by these fungi is known as dermatomycosis.

Classification of this group, which until recently was rather confused, has been tending toward simplification, due to the studies of Ota and Langeron (1923), Taniguchi (1927), Langeron and Milochevitch (1930), Emmons (1934), Conant (1944), and many others, so that at the present time the species considered valid have been grouped by Emmons (1934) into 3 genera; this is the accepted classification.

The real situation in the complicated problem of dermatophytes is given in Table XXIV. Tropical species of dermatophytes which have not been studied by the authors and which are doubtful are not included. In the Crateriforme group we have reduced *Trichophyton epilans, sabouraudi,* and *sulphureum* to *T. tonsurans** (González Ochoa and Romo Vázquez, 1945).

TABLE XXIV

(From Conant et al., 1944.)

TRICHOPHYTON Malmsten, 1845 (hair-skin-nails)	*MICROSPORUM* Gruby, 1843 (hair-skin)
A. Group Gypseum 1. *T. mentagrophytes*	1. *M. audouini* 2. *M. canis* 3. *M. gypseum*
B. Group Rubrum 2. *T. rubrum*	
C. Group Crateriforme 3. *T. tonsurans*	*EPIDERMOPHYTON* Lang, 1879 Ota and Langeron emend; 1930 (skin-nails)
D. Group Faviforme 4. *T. schönleini* 5. *T. concentricum* 6. *T. ferrugineum* 7. *T. violaceum*	1. *E. floccosum*
E. Group Rosaceum 8. *T. megnini*	

In keeping with the practical nature of this section, we shall give mycologic data of the 3 genera comprising the dermatophytes, with a description of each species as the respective diseases are considered. For a study of the other species of dermatophytes, the reader is referred to Conant, et al. (1944).

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS OF DERMATOPHYTOSIS

Diagnosis is made by direct microscopic examination of the pathologic material and by culture. The first procedure is simple and is based on the knowledge of the morphology, filaments in scales and nails, and arthrospores in hair. Cultivation of the dermatophyte requires knowledge of mycology, especially of contaminants.

Filaments.—Fragments of parasitized scales or nails are placed between slides in a drop of Amann's chlorolactophenol or 20 per cent potassium hydroxide and examined microscopically. Filaments are observed, the number varying according to the intensity of the process and the causative organism. These filaments are ramified, septate. They are formed by long articulations, similar to bamboo stalks, or by cuboid cells arranged in chain formation. It is important not to confuse these with the "mosaic fungus," an artefact resulting from preparation, the significance of which is very much discussed. This formation simulates filaments, but the principal differential characteristic is that it follows the outlines of cells, while true mycelial elements cross through the cells.

---

*Conant, in Dubos: Bacterial and Mycotic Infections of Man, J. B. Lippincott Co., 1948, pp. 590-594, lists in the Crateriforme group only *T. tonsurans* but added *T. discoides* to the pathogens.

There is no distinctive characteristic in the morphology of the filaments when they are observed in lesions. The different species and genera have filaments that are rather similar. In order to determine the species or the genus to which it belongs, it is necessary to cultivate the pathologic material.

Arthrospores.—Arthrospores are observed by following the same procedure as for filaments. They are spherical cells of different sizes, arranged in various forms within *(endothrix)* or outside *(ectothrix)* the hair, dependent upon whether they are of the genus Trichophyton or Microsporum. The ectothrix type can be *megasporic* when the spores are larger than 6 microns, and *microides* when the arthrospores are small, 2 or 3 microns. In favus, a special type of ectothrix, the arthrospores are medium sized, and there are filaments and air bubbles within the hair.

In the genus Microsporum, the spores are small, 2 to 3 microns, arranged outside the hair, forming a sheath so that they resemble the microid type of Trichophyton. While Trichophyton occurs in parallel lines, Microsporum spores are grouped in a mosaic formation.

Epidermophyton does not attack hair.

Collection of the Material

When scaly lesions of the hairless skin are to be examined, the scales should be taken from the active part of the lesion which is generally the periphery. When there are vesicles, the tip of the vesicle should be cut off with scissors. With nails, it must be determined first whether the selected section is morbid, by observing any modifications which are present. It is necessary to examine several preparations.

When hair is infected, the short broken hair or the grayish, opaque hair which appears abnormal to the naked eye should be examined. The reliability of diagnosis depends upon the selection of material.

Culture

Selected material is cultivated on 2 per cent dextrose agar. Seeding may be made immediately, or the selected material may be kept for 1 week, thereby minimizing the possibility of bacterial contamination. Culture is made at laboratory temperature. After 3 weeks, microscopic and macroscopic examinations are made.

MICROSCOPIC ELEMENTS OF THE DERMATOPHYTES

A portion of culture is placed in a drop of Lugol solution, carefully teased, and observed microscopically. Two types of elements are observed: vegetative and reproductive.

Vegetative Forms

(1) **Mycelium.**—Septate filaments, without any special characteristics.

(2) **Pectinate Bodies.**—Filaments enlarged at the extremity with lateral prolongations esembling a comb.

(3) **Racquet Mycelium.**—Enlargement of one extremity of a segment of the mycelium.

(4) **Nodular Bodies.**—Rounded masses composed of interlacing mycelium.

(5) **Favic "Chandeliers."**—Thickened and ramified filaments resulting in a reindeer-antler-like formation.

(6) **Coiled Hyphae Spirals.**—Filaments in coils.

Reproduction Forms

(1) **Macroconidia or "Fuseaux."**—These are large, spindle-shaped spores, divided by partition walls so that they form several cells. These elements are of great diagnostic importance for the generic determination of the dermatophyte. Form, dimensions, and grouping are to be considered.

(2) **Microconidia or Aleurospores.**—These are small, round, or oval spores joined to the filaments directly (sessile) or by means of short sterigmata. They are grouped in clusters or simply along the length of the filament.

(3) **Chlamydospores.**—These are round, medium-sized cells with a characteristic thick double membrane, of little value in diagnosis.

MACROSCOPIC APPEARANCE. GIANT COLONY

After the culture has reached the adult stage (3 weeks, on the average), observations of the shape, surface, color, and size of the colony give useful data, which, together with data gathered from microscopic morphology, help to classify the fungus.

CHARACTERISTICS OF THE GENERA OF DERMATOPHYTES

(I) Genus Trichophyton

Macroconidia: Few, smooth, with a thin membrane, terminal extremity rounded; about 5 by 25 microns.

Microconidia: Numerous, small, unicellular, subspherical; about 2 by 4 microns; arranged in clusters (en grappe)or separately along the sides of the hyphae (en thyrses).

Spirals: Of great diagnostic importance for *T. mentagrophytes.*

Chlamydospores, racquet mycelium, and *nodular bodies* are of little diagnostic importance.

Colonies of Trichophyton may be cottony to velvety, granular to powdery, glabrous, smooth, and wax-like. Color varies greatly; it may be white, violet, wine-red, pink, yellow, brown. On the basis of appearance and color, the species belonging to this genus have been divided into 5 groups:

(1) **Gypseum Group.**—Granular to powdery, or cotton-like, buff to brown colonies; overgrowth with white fluffy mycelium.

(2) **Rubrum Group.**—Cottony, pure white, later wine-red pigment on back of colony. Sometimes diffuse pigment through medium and colony.

(3) **Crateriforme Group.**—Heaped, velvety colonies, later wrinkled, with deep depressions. Color, yellowish-white, brown, reddish, violet, especially in the depressions.

(4) **Faviforme Group.**—Colonies develop slowly; glabrous, humid, irregularly folded, of wax-like appearance; creamy to brown or violet. When colony is old or after successive transfers, a white velvety cover appears.

(5) **Rosaceum Group.**—White, cottony to velvety colonies, turning pale rose or pink. The bottom of the agar becomes violet or magenta.

(II) Genus Microsporum

Macroconidia: Numerous and very characteristic, 40 to 150 microns long by 10 to 15 microns wide, with pointed ends, rough surface, thick walls.

Microconidia: Few, about 3 to 4 by 3 to 7 microns, along the length of hyphae, singly or with short connecting links.

Chlamydospores, racquet mycelium, and *pectinate hyphae* and *nodular bodies* are also seen. Colony is woolly or cottony; color, white, yellow, or brown, often furrowed.

(III) Genus Epidermophyton

Macroconidia: Grouped in clusters, with few partitions, smooth walls; 8 to 12 by 20 to 45 microns.

Microconidia: Absent.

Chlamydospores and *racquet mycelium:* Downy, velvety, or powdery colony. with radial folds and central cottony mycelium; color yellowish to greenish.

TINEA IMBRICATA

Synonyms.—Scaly ringworm, tropical tinea circinata, gogo, chimberé, tokelau.

Tinea imbricata is the most important of the true tropical mycoses caused by dermatophytes. It was formerly believed to be restricted to the islands and eastern shores of the Pacific, where it has its greatest incidence. In recent years it has been found in many other tropical and subtropical regions.

DEFINITION

Tinea imbricata is a pruriginous superficial dermatosis, characterized by concentric circles or rings, patches, giving a peculiar appearance to the skin, as if it were covered with lace. The etiologic agent is *Trichophyton concentricum* Blanchard, 1896.

''Chimberé'' of the Brazilians is considered the same as ''tokelau'' of the French authors and its agent *T. roquettei* as synonymous with *T. concentricum.*

HISTORY

According to Blanchard (1895), the disease was first mentioned in *Dampier's Voyages Around the World* (1868), in which Dampier observed tinea imbricata in Mindanao and Guam, of the Philippine and the Marianas groups of islands, respectively. There are numerous later references to the disease. So far as concrete data are concerned, it is stated that, by 1835, the natives of Tokelau had brought the disease to Samoa and Fiji; here the disease was called ''tokelau.'' Fox, in 1844, was the first to recognize the mycologic etiology of the disease by observing filaments in the scales. He included it in the group of dermatophytoses but confused it with herpes circinatus of Europe. Manson, in 1879, considered tinea imbricata as a definite clinical entity, differentiating it from European trichophytosis. Although Sabouraud, in 1894, affirmed the trichophytic nature of tinea imbricata, and Nieuwenhuis, n 1898, was the first to cultivate the parasite, obtaining reproduction of the infection in man y inoculation of the culture, there was no unanimous confirmation of the cause of tokelau until cultures were obtained by Castellani in 1910 and by Hanawa and Nagai in 1917.

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

The disease is not exclusively Asiatic or Oceanic, since it has been seen in Africa and in America. Some authors believe that the infection had its origin in the Peninsula of Malacca and that from this region the disease reached the Pacific Islands, China, Formosa, and Burma. Fonseca (1930) ventured the hypothesis that American tinea imbricata is due to a remote mportation by pre-Colombians who migrated from Oceania to America. This would also explain its existence in South Africa, since there is evidence of prehistoric migration to this egion from Oceania. Figueroa and Conant (1940), in a case reported from Guatemala, beieve that it is more logical to explain the presence of tokelau in America as due to the aprophytic existence of the parasite, which, under special conditions, may become pathogenic. They explain, in this manner, isolated cases which appear from time to time. In Mexico we ave observed several cases that were typical from the clinical and etiologic viewpoints and ere not contracted from any known source, despite the transmissibility accepted for this ermatophytosis. Accepting the ideas of Figueroa and Conant, we might add that the lack of pidemic outbreaks, apart from sporadic cases, may perhaps be due to adverse climatic conditions—adverse for the causal dermatophyton—since, in our case, the dry and temperate climate of the Mexican tableland is quite different from the coastal climate of the Pacific slands where incidence is so high.

The major endemic regions are the following islands of the South Pacific: Sumatra Borneo, Java, New Guinea, Solomon Islands, New Hebrides, Marianas, Fiji, Tokelau, etc. O less importance are Malacca, Ceylon, southern coast of India, China, Brazil, and South Africa Isolated cases are found in Guatemala, Mexico, and Colombia.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Race.—There is no preference for any particular race, although lowered hygienic conditions among natives make them more susceptible to the disease.

Sex.—Men are more frequently affected, perhaps due to the fact that greater cleanliness is usually practiced by women.

Occupation.—There is no relationship to any special activity.

Age.—The disease is most often observed in youths and adults. Children under 10 years of age rarely show tinea imbricata.

Endemicity.—In some of the islands of the Pacific, incidence is so high that ⅓ to ½ of the population is affected. In other regions, where the climate is not very favorable to the development of the fungus, there are only sporadic cases.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

Clinically, this dermatosis consists of concentric scaly rings, not erythematous or only slightly so, or with only slight inflammatory reaction or none. They vary in size from a few centimeters to large patches which may occupy the whole dorsal area, or they may become generalized over the entire surface of the skin. This morphologic element, called "cocarde" by French authors, develops as follows (Manson, 1890, from experimental human inoculation): After an incubation period of 10 days, the epidermis becomes very slightly raised and has a brownish tinge, forming a spot about 5 mm. in diameter. The center of the brownish patch gives way, and a ring of scaling epidermis, attached at the periphery, but free, ragged, and slightly elevated toward the center of the spot, is formed. It extends excentrically, and in a few days a second spot, like the first, appears upon the site of the first spot, and again a scaly ring forms with the same tendency as the first. The process is again repeated, resulting in a series of concentric scaly circles. The rings are formed by large whitish scales, which are free and elevated on the inner side of the ring and firmly attached on the outer side of the ring.

As the lesions extend, a number of scaly concentric circles or polycyclic patterns are observed. Their outlines are far from regular; on the contrary, they form capricious designs, though maintaining the polycyclic outline. Larger patches are formed by coalescence. The color of the scales varies from a brilliant white to a dirty yellowish-gray. The yellowish color is explained by some authors as due to the color of the protoplasm of the filaments which parasitize the scales; however, it appears to be due, rather, to dirt deposited in the horny cells.

The size of the scales varies, from 3 to 6 mm., and they may reach 20 mm. They are firmly attached; the free border, which is toward the center of the circle, is rounded. When scales are large or when the rings are very close to each other, scales become superimposed, like tiles on a roof, whence the name *tinea imbricata.*

Discoloration is frequently observed in the zone where scales have adhered, and evidence of scratching is almost constantly observed, indicating the pruriginous character of the dermatosis. There is a tendency to become generalized throughout the entire keratinous structure (skin, nails) from self-inoculation through scratching. Certain parts of the body, such as the large folds in flexor areas, the genital region, the palms of the hands, and the soles of the feet, are less frequently infected. When these last two regions are affected, the scales become thicker, and frequently there are fissures. Nails are rarely invaded and present the general aspect of onychomycosis by any dermatophyte: thick, opaque, brittle, and corroded. Invasion of the hair by *T. concentricum* has not been observed.* The general health is not affected, except by added infection or by the intensity of the pruritus.

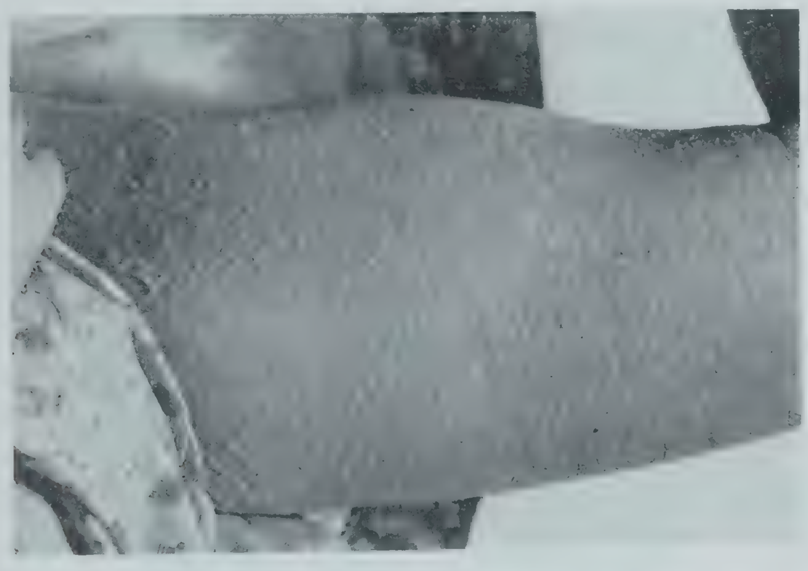


Fig. 369.—Arm of patient with tinea imbricata: circinate desquamation forming arabasques.

The disease does not tend to heal spontaneously so that it may persist hroughout the life of the patient unless given proper treatment.

Differential diagnosis should be made between other dermatophytoses of the hairless or smooth skin and ichthyosis. The system of concentric rings of desquamation as well as the lack of inflammatory reaction differentiates it rom tinea corporis. Ichthyosis is a congenital condition without desquamaion in the form of concentric circles, or scales that are free at the inner border nd adherent at the outer edge. The presence of numerous filaments in the les, readily visible in direct examination, makes the definitive diagnosis.

ETIOLOGY

The dermatophyte which causes this dermatosis is *Trichophyton conentricum* Blanchard, 1896. Conant et al. (1944) report the following synonyms: *T. mansoni* Castellani, 1905; *T. castellani* (Perry, 1907); *Endoder mophyton concentricum* Castellani, 1910; *E. castellani* (Perry, 1907); *E. indicu* Castellani, 1911; *E. mansoni* Castellani, 1919; *E. tropicale* Castellani, 1919; *E. roquettei* Fonseca, 1925; and *T. roquettei* (Fonseca, 1925).

---

*Editor's note (O. F.): Invasion of hair has been observed recently.

It can be seen that several different species have been described as the caus of tokelau and that several names have been given to the species responsible. The consensus is that tinea imbricata is caused by a single species, *T. concentricum* Blanchard, 1896.

When parasitized scales are inoculated on Sabouraud's 2 per cent dextrose medium, the dermatophyte develops slowly, in the form of a slightly downy accumulation which covers the scale and which is not differentiated in any way from other species of the genus. When growth is complete, after approximately a month, this accumulation takes on the appearance of a heaped colony, white or yellowish-white, which darkens with age until it is light brown, especially in the center, and diffuses into the medium. The colony has deep creases and a glabrous surface, appearing waxy, resembling *T. schönleini* (formerly *Achorion schönleini*), the dermatophyte which causes favus. In the later phase, even in the white colonies, there is an amber-colored pigment, diffusing throughout the medium. As it ages, and after successive reseedings, it becomes velvety, especially along the edges of the colony.

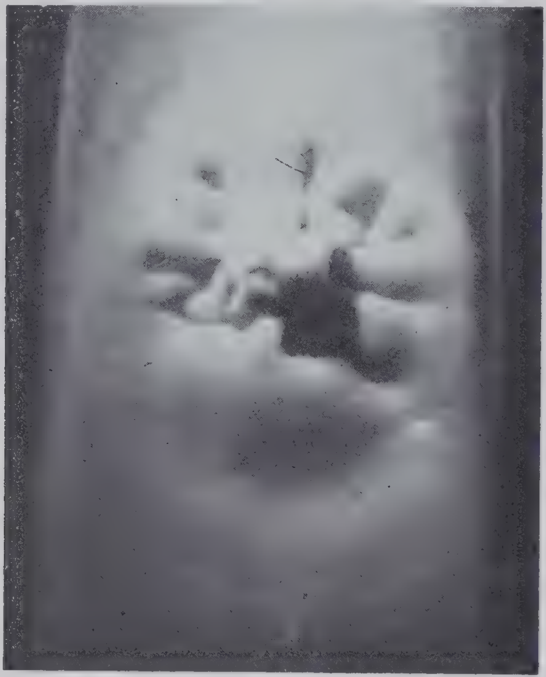


Fig. 370.—Colony of *Trichophyton concentricum.*

Seen through the microscope, the culture lacks the rich morphology of other trichophytons and simply presents chlamydospores of very different types and sizes; intercalary, lateral, and terminal. The hyphae are torulose, of various diameters. It shows, in a manner similar to *T. schönleini,* dilatations and ramifications called "favic chandeliers." In the usual culture media it has no spindles or aleurospores.

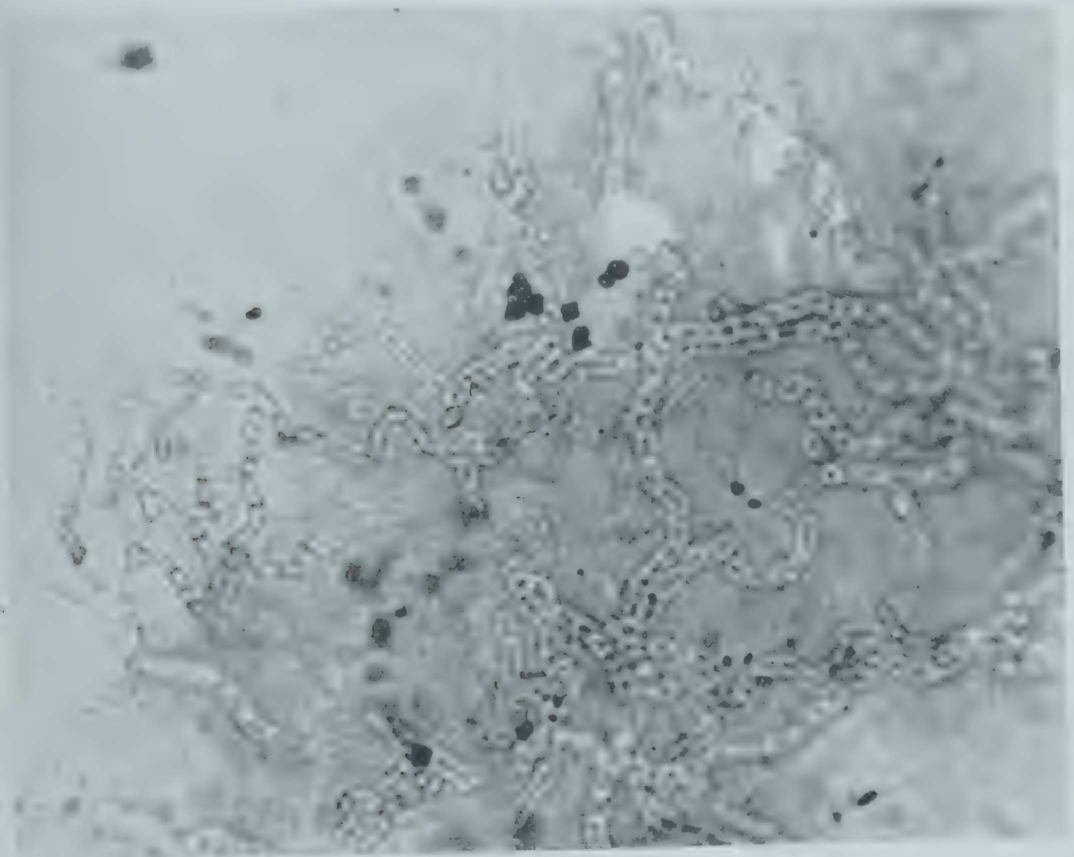
LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Laboratory diagnosis is simple. Place a few scales in potassium hydroxide solution or in Amann's chlorolactophenol, between slides, and examine microscopically. Note the numerous filaments interwoven in all directions. These filaments are formed by short articulations, cuboid or slightly elongated, the series resembling a rosary.

Cultures are readily obtained by seeding scales after passing them through alcohol for 8 10 minutes. This lessens bacterial contamination. On Sabouraud's 2 per cent dextrose edium, many filaments appear on the fourth day; they cover the scale, and the colony evelops as described above.

PATHOLOGY

Since the process does not invade structures beyond the horny layer, odifications consist of marked parakeratosis and acanthosis of the epidermis. slight inflammation of the dermis is observed. Filaments can be seen among he horny cells, resembling dots when in cross section, or larger fragments, ac- ording to the direction of the section.



ig. 371.—Numerous filaments of *Trichophyton concentricum* seen in a scale. Note the cuboid sections which form these filaments.

TREATMENT

Treatment consists in the use of keratolytic and fungicidal agents sepa- ately or in one preparation. The keratolytic agent of choice is salicylic acid; e most frequently recommended fungicides are chrysophanic acid, chrysa- obin, iodine, and sodium or calcium propionate. A practical method of ap- ication is to rub the skin vigorously with an ointment composed of 5 per cent licylic acid in equal parts of lanolin and petroleum jelly for 1 week, followed application, by the same method, of 3 per cent chrysarobin in an oily hicle, also for 1 week, alternating one ointment with the other. A 3 to 10 r cent chrysophanic acid ointment is considered as a specific treatment.

The infection is stubborn. It does not cure spontaneously, and recurrences e frequent.

LITTLE KNOWN TROPICAL DERMATOMYCOSES

Under this title are included 2 types of dermatomycoses generally considered as trichophytic, although this is probably not true from the appearance which the parasite assumes in the scales. They have in common the clinical aspect and the morphology of the causal agent found in the lesions, as well as the little that is known of the mycology of these diseases. One is the "tinea tropica" of Sabouraud; the other is the "tinea nigro-circinata" of Castellani.

Tinea Tropica of Sabouraud

Tinea tropica of Sabouraud is a chronic circinate dermatosis observed in patients from Indo-China and Japan. It shows erythematous spots, rounded, and covered with thin scales which, as they develop, form scaly circinate contours, the center of which darkens until it is a blackish color. Uncovered parts of the body are affected. It is found most frequently in the lower half of the body.

Tinea Nigro-Circinata of Castellani

This dermatosis has been described as being formed of blackish salient rings, sometimes crust-like, leaving the skin very dark and without alteration. It would be similar to "tinea tropica" of Sabouraud but might differ from it in that the latter might be more readily curable.

ETIOLOGIC AGENT

In the scales of both of these tineas there may be seen mycelial elements, short, 3 to 4 microns in diameter, banana-shaped and round spores.

The parasite has not been cultivated, but Castellani has given the name *Trichophyton blanchardi* to the agent of Sabouraud's tinea tropica and *T. ceylonense* to tinea nigro-circinata.

If the morphology of the parasite in the scales is considered, together with the fact that it has not been cultivated to date, it may be supposed that this is not in reality a dermatophyte but rather *Malassezia furfur,* the agent of pityriasis versicolor, or some similar fungus.

TREATMENT

Application of iodine or of chrysophanic acid should be sufficient.

PITYRIASIS VERSICOLOR

Synonyms.—Tinea versicolor, liver spots, tinea flava, hodi-potsy, tinea furfuracea.

DEFINITION

Pityriasis versicolor is a superficial affection of the skin, caused by *Malassezia furfur.* It is characterized by yellowish, brown, hypochromic lenticular spots, with thin scales.

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

This superficial mycosis is observed throughout the world, but it is seen especially tropical zones where profuse sweating favors its development. The various modifications appearance, color, and site of the spots found in various tropical regions have resulted the fact that the disease has been described as several different clinical entities.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The spots of pityriasis versicolor have been described in many different ocalizations in the patient, but the efflorescences generally occur on the trunk, ess often on the lower part of the abdomen, the shoulders, occasionally on the eck, head, arms, and legs. The color varies in different geographic regions, mong patients in the same region, and even in the same patient during the ourse of the disease. The color is usually yellowish or dark brown, at times ith a slightly erythematous base. The spots are slightly scaly, pulverulent, r smooth, with a greasy appearance. A diagnostic peculiarity is that the orny epidermis is less adherent than is normal, and upon scratching is de- ached in small flakes. With the exception of slight pruritus in some cases, here are no subjective manifestations.

It attacks the young rather than older subjects and is seen more often in en than in women. It begins with small punctiform macules which tend to row and by confluence become large spots with irregular outline. Ordinarily hey measure from ½ to 1 cm.

In tropical zones, the disease is highly contagious. The period of incuba- on seems to be one month. Duration is long, indefinite, with but little ndency to spontaneous cure.

CLINICAL FORM

Several clinical forms have been described, varying according to localiza- on, extension, size, color, and shape of the lesions. We shall particularly fer to *pityriasis versicolor of tropical regions* and to *pityriasis versicolor alba.*

Included in the first type are *pityriasis versicolor flava* of Castellani, fre- uently found in southern India, Ceylon, Malaya, Java, China, and Indo-China; shows spots of dark yellow or orange color, localizing on the face, neck, chest, d abdomen. The *parasitic achromia of Jeanselme* or *hodi-potsy*, observed in e Indies, Ceylon, Indo-China, Nigeria, Madagascar, and Brazil, is charac- rized by hypochromic spots of irregular outline which localize on the face; ey are thin scaled and present a definite seasonal recrudescence. In the ales of this dermatosis are found elements identical with those of classical tyriasis versicolor. Although Fontoynont and Carougeau isolated a Hormo- ndrum, the etiology is unknown.

Pityriasis versicolor alba is not limited to tropical countries. It has numer- s synonyms. It is similar to typical pityriasis versicolor in the shape, des- amation, and size of the spots but is characterized by achromic spots. It ries at times in its localization, since it is frequently observed on the neck and arms. In making a differential diagnosis of this achromic variety, i important to keep in mind mal del pinto and leprosy.

Numerous theories have been advanced to explain the pathogenesis of t clinical form. Two of these have been supported by facts. One of th theories is that the parasite acts as a curtain to stop the solar rays, so th only the normal skin around the spots is pigmented. The second theory e plains the decolorization of the spots by attributing it to the action of t parasite, since spots may be localized in areas not exposed to the sun. D pigmentation may be due to metabolic products of the fungus which, by hi tologic modifications, may cause a decrease or absence of pigment. Th white variety is very common in the Pacific coast regions of Mexico.

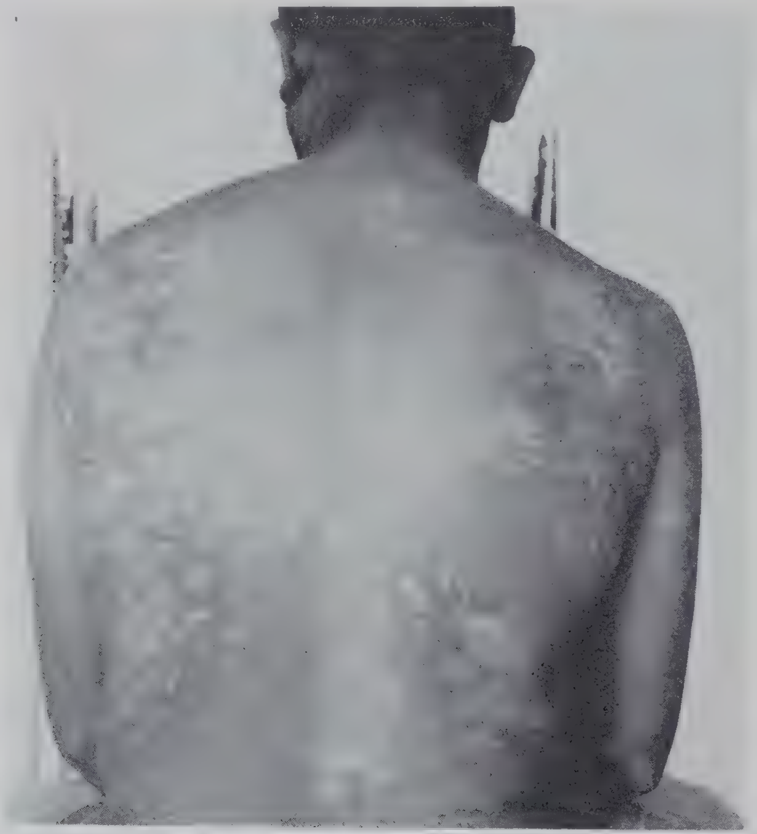


Fig. 372.—Pityriasis versicolor, white variety. The large hypochromic zones are similar i appearance to mal del pinto.

ETIOLOGY

The etiologic agent of this parasitosis is *Malassezia furfur* (Robin) Baillon 1889. There are numerous synonyms, of which *Microsporum furfur* Robin, 1853 is the most commonly used.

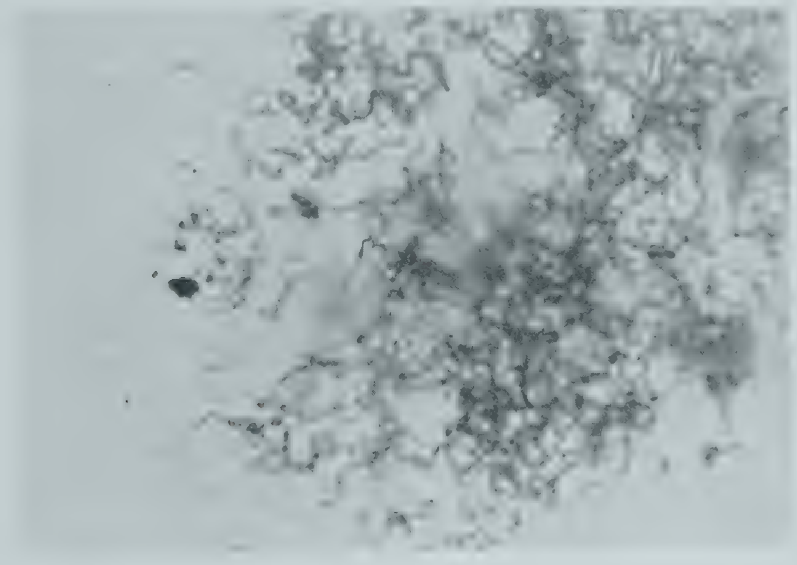
Numerous attempts to cultivate the organism have been made, but to dat the results obtained by those who claim to have been successful have not bee duplicated.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Observation of the parasite is easy because of its abundance in the scales. Place the scales between slides in a drop of chlorolactophenol or in 10 per cent potassium hydroxid in order to observe clusters of spores and numerous short filaments. The filaments ar egular, septate, or continuous, often flexed, angular, or straight, from 2 to 3 microns in ameter. The spores are spherical or ovoid, some with thick wall, others showing gemmation; diameters vary from 3 to 8 microns. They are grouped in masses of 10 to 30 elements.

TREATMENT

Desquamation with salicylated petroleum jelly or alcohol is recommended fore application of parasiticides. Useful parasiticides are 10 per cent sodium iosulfate (sodium hyposulfite), tincture of iodine diluted 1:3, and 2 per cent rysarobin. It is necessary to continue treatment for several weeks after parent cure, to prevent recurrences. Disinfection of clothing is necessary.



g. 373.—Parasitized scale of *Microsporum furfur*. Note especially the short, flexuous filaments.

TINEA NIGRA AND KERATOMYCOSIS NIGRICANS PALMARIS

Tinea nigra and keratomycosis nigricans palmaris are 2 parasitic affections the skin characterized by black spots. Some authors, such as Silva (1929), meida (1939), and Area Leão et al. (1945), believe that this is only 1 affecn, but that it localizes differently according to the geographic region in ich it is found. These forms are not well known either clinically or mycogically. They might be caused by 1 or 2 species belonging to the genus adosporium.

Tinea Nigra

Tinea nigra was discovered in south China by Sir Patrick Manson in 1872. was found by Castellani in Ceylon (1905). It has also been observed in dia, Java, and the Malay States.

It is seen in the form of black spots, not pruriginous, spreading slowly, d slightly scaly. It is localized on the trunk and the neck, although it may found in any area of the skin with the exception of the face.

Keratomycosis Nigricans Palmaris

Keratomycosis nigricans palmaris was observed by Cerqueira in Brazil 1891. It was later studied by several Brazilian authors. This condition has n reported in Cuba (Pardo-Castelló, 1938) and in Panama (Welsh, 1948).

It is characterized by the appearance of black spots made up of sma black dots. They are of various dimensions, with little or no pruritus, an are localized on the palms of the hands.

Neves and Costa (1947) agree with Almeida (1939) and Silva (192 in considering the 2 conditions as 1, and propose the name "tinea nigra" fo both of them, recommending the use of the word *palmaris* to indicate th palmar localization frequently found in Brazil.

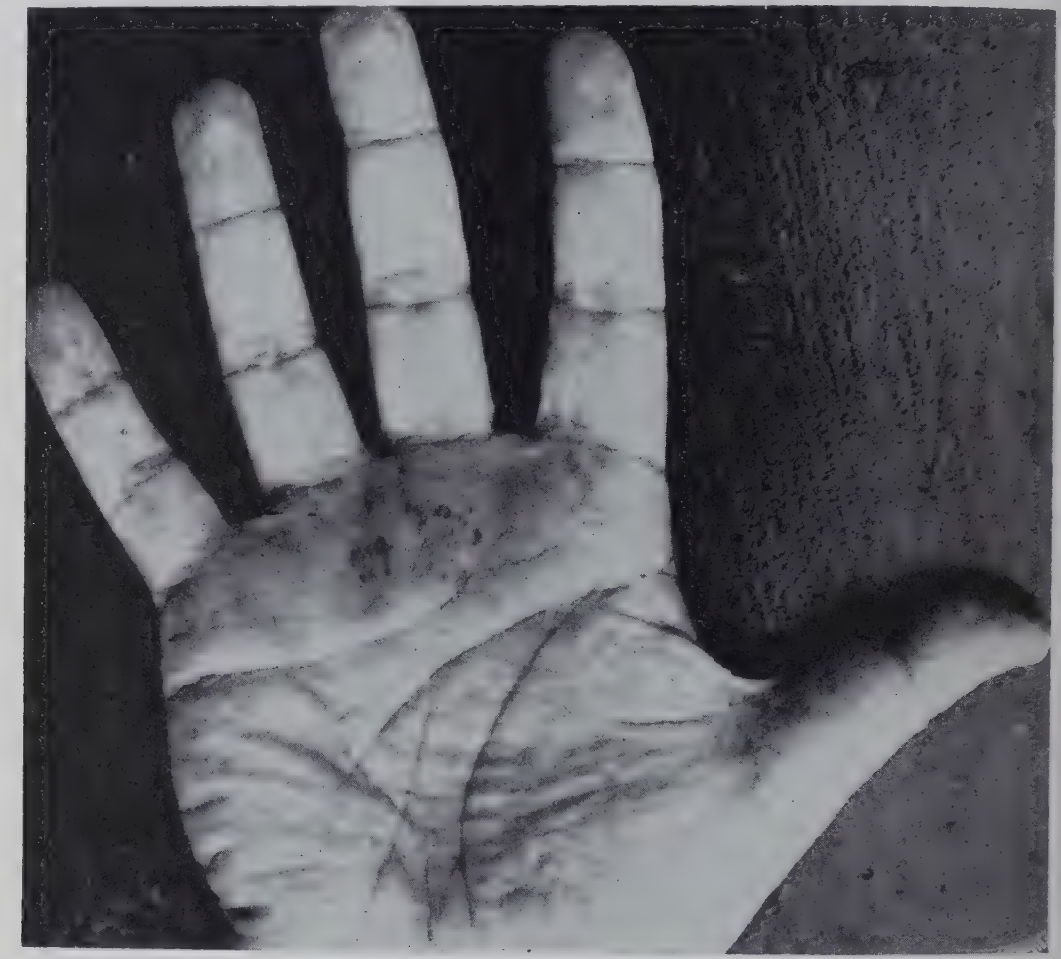


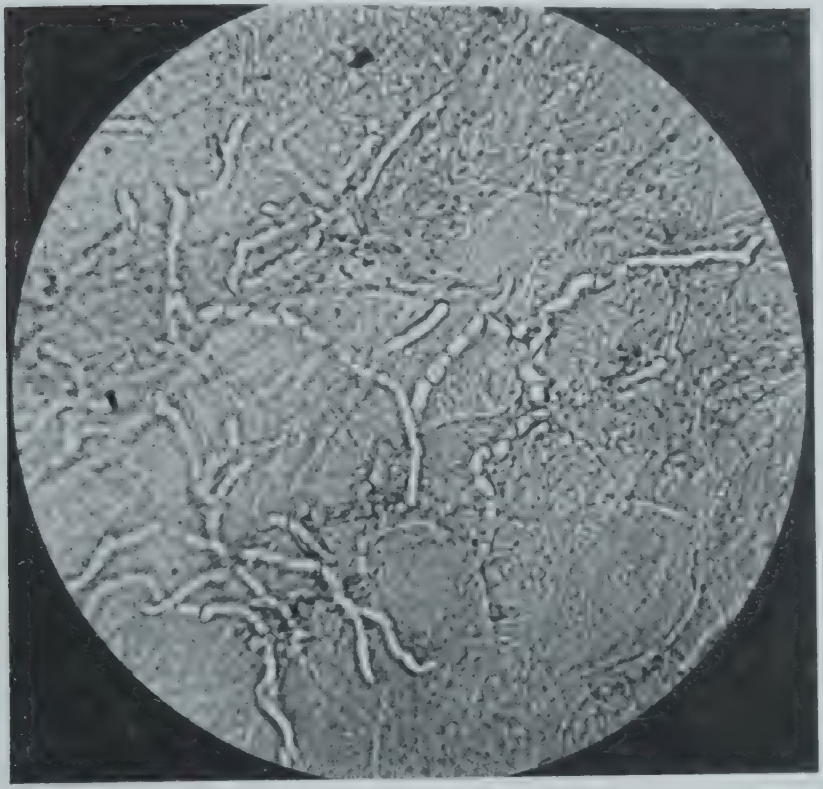
Fig. 374.—A case of tinea nigra, characterized by numerous black points in the palmar arch. (Photograph by Area Leão et al.: Rev. Brasil Biol., 5.)

ETIOLOGY

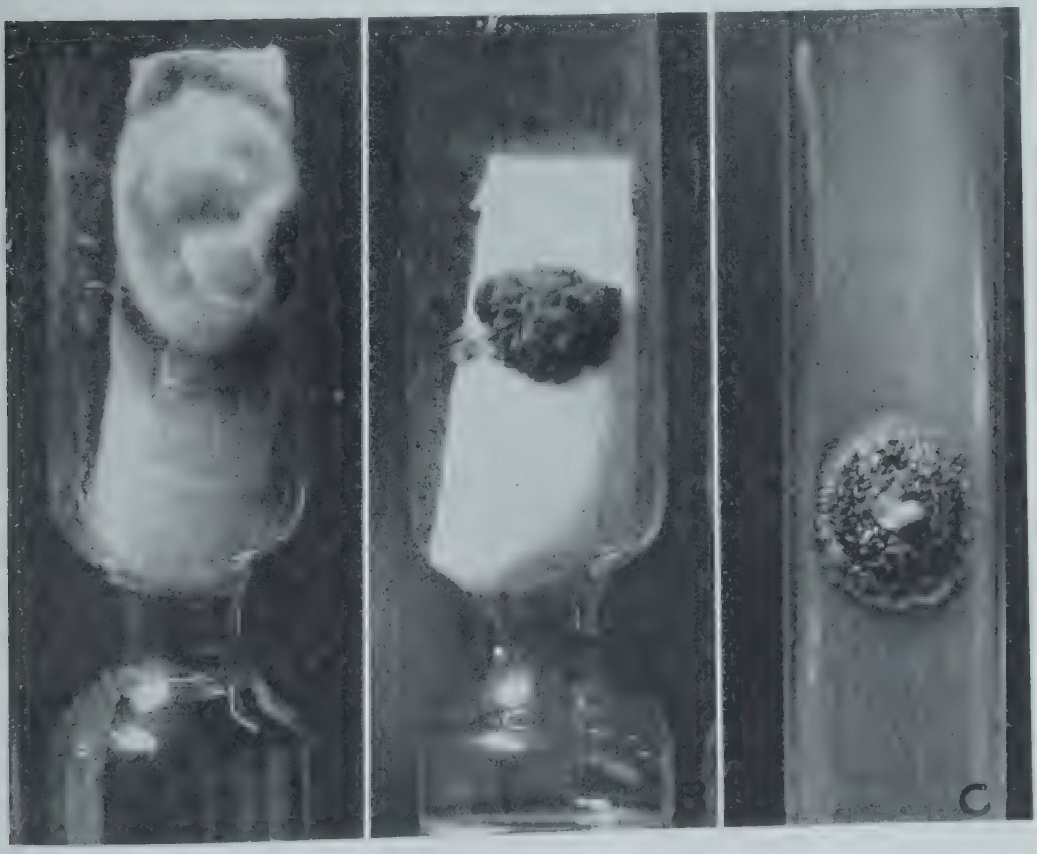
Two species are considered: *Cladosporium mansoni* Castellani, 1905, for tinea nigra, and *C. wernecki* Parreiras Horta, 1921, for the Brazilian type.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The appearance of the parasite is the same in both forms. The scales or, when the lesion is not scaly, slivers of skin obtained by slicing the surface layer with a razor blade are found parasitized by straight or flexed filaments composed of short cells, dark colored, with thick walls. In addition to these, there are other elements, rounded, uniseptate or pluriseptate. Culture is readily obtained by seeding in the usual media (Sabouraud 2 per cent dextrose agar). Colonies are blackish, moist at the beginning, later downy. They are formed by fuliginous filaments which break into spherical arthrospores, and colored hyphae terminated by elliptical conidia provided with disjunctors.



g. 375.—Scale of tinea nigra, showing filaments of *Cladosporium wernecki.* (Photograph by Area Leão et al.: Rev. Brasil. Biol., 5.)



. 376.—Culture of *Cladosporium wernecki:* *A*, in carrot; *B*, in potato; *C*, in Sabouraud's glucose solution.

TREATMENT

Drugs used in the treatment include keratolytics such as 3 per cent sa icylic acid in alcoholic solution and fungicides such as 3 per cent resorcin ointment, or tincture of iodine.

TINEA ALBIGENA

DEFINITION

Tinea albigena, also called *khi-huen,* its native name, is a chronic condition localized in the soles of the feet and the palms of the hands. It is characterized by keratosis and eventually by definite residual depigmentation.

Langeron (1936) states that Nieuwenhuis described the disease in 1904.

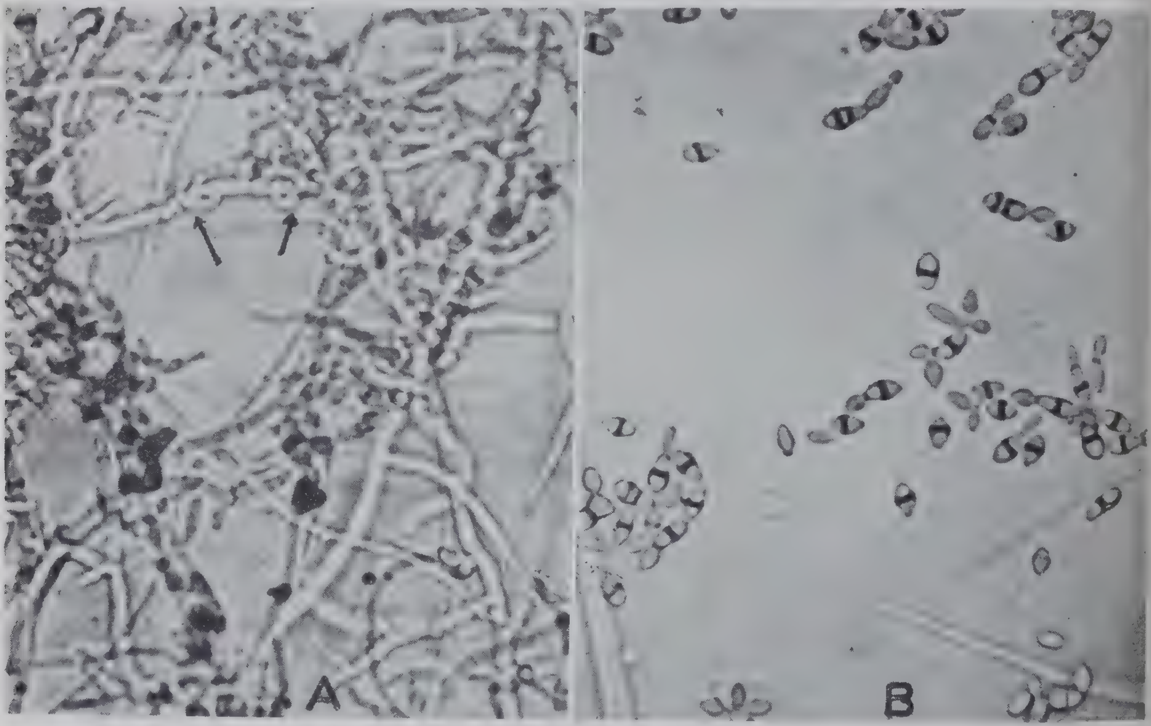


Fig. 377.—Microscopic morphology of *Cladosporium wernecki*: *A,* septate filaments, showing conidia between them; *B,* conidia provided with disjunctors; some show buds.

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

It is found in about the same areas as those in which tokelau is endemic; that is, in the islands of the Pacific, Indo-China, Malay Archipelago, and Ceylon. It appears that the dermatosis described in the Cameroons as *partial albinism* and the disease called *calor de figo* in Brazil both correspond to tinea albigena.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

There are 3 stages of development. The *initial, vesicular* stage is marked by appearance of large, pruriginous vesicles which, upon breaking, leave the Malpighian layer uncovered. This exposed surface becomes keratinized and thickens, and the disease passes to the second stage, the stage of *keratosis,* also called *chronic.* The affected areas continue to thicken, fissures are produced.

d the pruritus diminishes, but the thickened zones become more painful. his may persist for the remainder of the patient's life and, in some cases, vasion deeply into the tissue may cause destruction of pigment—the third age, or *depigmentation.* Hyperkeratosis is more intense in the feet than in e hands. From this localization the process may extend to the dorsum of e hand or foot as well as to the forearm and leg.

Spontaneous cure occurs very rarely and after many years.

The nails are attacked, and they become thick and brittle.

DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

In making a differential diagnosis, mal del pinto, palmoplantar kerato- s, leprosy, and syphilis should all be considered.

ETIOLOGY

The scales show filaments similar to those of a dermatophyte, but with a aracteristic double contour and oval spores, these being abundant in nails. he chlamydospores are found along the length of the filaments.

Culture was obtained by Nieuwenhuis (1908) who was the first to ob- rve the parasite in the scales; he classified it as *Trichophyton albiciscans.* ater Ota (1925) demonstrated that it is not a Trichophyton but a Glenospora.

Glenospora albiciscans (Nieuwenhuis, 1908) Ota 1925 grows slowly, pro- cing colonies with a downy coremioid surface, light brown in color. Fila- ents, 2 to 3 microns in diameter, with thick walls and double contour, are ob- rved under the microscope. The reproductive apparatus is formed of sessile ores along the length of the filaments or at their ends. These are oval, 7 by microns, and brown.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Laboratory diagnosis is made by examining scales between slides in a drop of potas- m hydroxide solution or in Amann's chlorolactophenol. The scales show filaments, ores, and chlamydospores. Culture is obtained by seeding parasitized scales in Sabou- ud's 2 per cent dextrose medium.

TREATMENT

The same treatment is used as that employed in other dermatomycoses, t in greater concentration. Keratolytics such as 6 per cent salicylic acid, d fungicides such as tincture of iodine, and chrysarobin, 10 per cent, are dicated. Ten per cent chrysarobin is especially recommended by Nieuwen- is (1908).

References

Trichomycosis

stellani, A.: 1911. Trichomycosis Flava, Nigra and Rubra of the Axillary Regions, Brit. J. Dermat. 23: 341-344.

stellani, A.: 1913. The Organism of Axillary Trichomycosis, Brit. J. Dermat. 25: 14-19.

Castellani, A.: 1922. Trichomycosis Axillaris, Etiology and Diagnosis, Brit. J. Dermat. 3 255-266.

Dodge, C. W.: 1936. Medical Mycology, London, Henry Kimpton.

MacFie, J. W. S.: 1916. A Fourth Variety of Trichonocardiasis With a Note on the Cultiv tion of N. Tenuis, Ann. Trop. Med. **15:** 271-282.

Mackinnon, J. E., and Schouten, G. B.: 1942. Investigaciones sobre las enfermedad de los cabellos denominadas "piedra," Arch. Soc. de biol. de Montevideo **10:** 22 266.

Manson-Bahr, P. H.: 1935. Manson's Tropical Diseases, Cassel and Co., London.

Patteson, G.: 1889. Cited by Pignot (1936).

Pignot, M.: 1936. Trichomycose Vulgaire, Nouvelle Pratique Dermatologique, Paris Masson et Cie.

Praxton: 1869. Cited by Pignot (1936).

Renoy, J.: Cited by Pignot (1936).

Strong, R. P.: 1945. In Stitt's Diagnosis, Prevention and Treatment of Tropical Diseases, Philadelphia, The Blakiston Co.

Black Piedra

Arnaud, G.: Cited by Langeron (1936).

Brumpt, E., and Langeron, M.: 1934. Considerations sur la piedra de l'Amerique du Sud, a l'occasion d'un cas provenant du Venezuela. Description d'une espece nouvelle. Piedraia venezuelensis n. sp., Ann. de parasitol. **12:** 134-161.

Desenne, E.: 1878. Sur la piedra, nouvelle espece d'affection parasitaire des cheveux, Compt. rend. Acad. d. sc. **87:** 34-36.

Fonseca, O., and Leão, A. E.: 1928. Sobre os cogumelos da piedra brasileira, Suppl. Mem. Inst. Oswaldo Cruz **4:** 124-127.

Godinho, V.: 1906. Un caso de piedra, Rev. méd. de São Paulo, No. 8.

Horta, P.: 1911. Sobre una nova forma de piedra, Mem. Inst. Oswaldo Cruz. **3:** 86-107.

Langeron, M.: 1921. Les Asterinees parasites del l'homme, La piedra, Ann. de parasitol. **7:** 309-324.

Langeron, M.: 1936. Nouvelle Pratique Dermatologique, Paris, Masson et Cie.

Muñiz, G., and Valladares, P.: 1907. Piedra na Bahia, Rev. méd. de São Paulo **12:** 604.

Rabello, E.: 1909. Cited by Langeron (1936).

Tropical Mycosis by Dermatophytes

Conant, N. F., et al.: 1944. Manual of Clinical Mycology, Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Co.

Emmons, C. W.: 1934. Dermatophytes. Natural Grouping Based on the Form of the Spores and Accessory Organs, Arch. Dermat. & Syph. **30:** 337-362.

González Ochoa, A., and Romo Vázquez, B.: 1945. Dermatofitos Causantes de Tiña de la Piel Cabelluda en la Ciudad de México, Rev. d. Inst. Salub. y enferm. trop. **6:** 145-148.

Langeron, M., and Milochevitch, S.: 1930. Morphologie des Dermatophytes sur Milieux Naturels et Milieux a Base de Polysaccharides. Essaie de classification (Deuxieme memoire), Ann. de parasitol. **8:** 466-507.

Ota, M., and Langeron, M.: 1923. Nouvelle Classification de Dermatophytes, Ann. de parasitol. **1:** 305-336.

Taniguchi, Y.: 1927. Beitrage zur Studie der Dyshidrosis, Japan J. Med. Sc. Trans., XIII, Dermat. und. Urol. **1:** 43-74.

Tinea Imbricata

Blanchard, R.: 1895. Maladies Parasitaires. Parasites végétaux, Traité de Pathologie Générale de Ch. Bouchard. T. II.

Castellani, A.: 1910. The Growth of the Fungus of Tinea Imbricata (Endodermophyton Concentricum) on Artificial media, J. Trop. M. (etc.), Lond. **13:** 370-372.

Figueroa, H., and Conant, N. F.: 1940. The First Case of Tinea Imbricata Caused by Trichophyton Concentricum Blanchard 1896, Reported from Guatemala, Am. J. Trop. Med. **20:** 287-302.

Fonseca, O.: 1930. Affinidades Parasitologicas e Clinicas Entre o Tokelau da Asia e da Oceania e o Chimberé dos Indigenas de Matto Grosso, Rev. de med. cirurg. d. Brasil. **38:** 281-291.

Fox, T.: 1894. Cited by Langeron, M. (1936).

Hanawa, S., and Nagai, S.: 1917. Cited by Langeron (1936).

Langeron, M.: 1936. Nouvelle Pratique Dermatologique, 2 vols., Paris, Masson et Cie.

Nieuwenhuis, A. W.: 1898. Tinea Imbricata (Manson), Arch. f. Dermat. u. Syph. **46:** 163-176.

Little Known Tropical Dermatomycoses

anselme, E.: 1904. Cours de Dermatologie Exotique, Paris, Masson et Cie.

ngeron, M.: 1936. Dermatoses Probablement Trichophytiques, Nouvelle Pratique Dermatologique, Paris, Masson et Cie.

Pityriasis Versicolor

lmeida, F. P.: 1939. Mycologia Medica, São Paulo, Cia Melhoramentos.

astellani, A.: 1905. Tropical Forms of Pityriasis Versicolor, Brit. M. J. **2:** 1271.

onant, N. F., et al.: 1944. Manual of Clinical Mycology, Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Co.

ontoynont, M., and Carougeau, J.: 1922. Etude sur le Hodi-potsy, Dermatomycose malgache, Bull. Soc. path. exot., Par. **15:** 424-436.

ougerot, H.: 1936. Pityriasis versicolor, Nouvelle Pratique Dermatologique, Paris, Masson et Cie.

ewis, G. M., and Hopper, M. E.: 1936. Pseudo-Achromia of Tinea Versicolor, Arch. Dermat. & Syph. **34:** 850-861.

egroni, P.: 1924. Dermatomicosis, Buenos Aires, Aniceto López.

Tinea Nigra and Keratomycosis Nigricans Palmaris

lmeida, F. P.: 1939. Mycologia Medica, São Paulo, Cia Melhoramentos.

roeira Neves, J., and Costa, O. G.: 1947. Tinea Nigra, Arch. Dermat. & Syph. **55:** 67-84.

astellani, A.: 1905. Cited by Castellani, A., and Chalmers, J. A.: Manual of Tropical Medicine, New York, W. Wood.

erqueira Pinto, A. G. C.: 1916. Cited by Almeida (1939).

anson, P.: 1872. Cited by Castellani, A., and Chalmers, J. A.: Manual of Tropical Medicine, New York, W. Wood.

lva, F.: 1929. Tinea nigra, Brazil-med. Rio de Jan. **43:** 924-926.

elsh, E. N.: 1948. Tinea nigra in Panama, Arch. Dermat. & Syph. **57:** 732-733.

Tinea Albigena

ngeron, M.: 1936. Tinea Albigena, Nouvelle Pratique Dermatologique, 2 vols., Paris, Masson et Cie.

euwenhuis, A. W.: 1908. Tinea albigena und die Züchtung Ihres Pilzes, Arch. f. Dermat. u. Syph. **89:** 1-28.

a, M.: 1925. Affinités du Trichophyton albiciscans Nieuwenhuis avec les aleuriosporés du genre Gilenospora, Berck et Curt, Ann. Parasitol. **3:** 79-84.

CHAPTER 50

DEEP TROPICAL MYCOSES

Antonio González-Ochoa

Deep mycoses are diseases produced by fungi which, in addition to invading the skin or mucosa, also invade other structures such as muscle, bone, viscera, etc. This type of mycosis is also called *systemic* or *generalized mycosis*.

Only deep mycoses of major incidence in the tropics will be discussed in this chapter. For information regarding cosmopolitan mycoses, the reader is referred to standard works on the subject. We shall discuss maduromycotic mycetoma and actinomycotic mycetoma due to aerobic actinomycetes, chromoblastomycosis, South American blastomycosis,* and rhinosporidiosis.

MYCETOMAS

Mycetomas are deep mycoses found in many areas. There is confusion regarding the extent and significance of the term ''mycetoma'' in the clinical subdivisions and in the synonyms by which it is designated. We shall attempt to clarify and explain existing up-to-date facts.

DEFINITION

Mycetomas are chronic, granulomatous infections, characterized by the formation of multiple abscesses and sinuses. The exudate from the lesions contains aggregations of mycelia with a characteristic granular form.

HISTORY

It appears that this disease has been known since ancient times. Under the name *Padavalmicum* descriptions are found, in India, of a disease of the foot, with tiny tumors, which after a year or longer, suppurate and discharge a peculiar fluid. The difference between this affection and *slipatham*, or elephant foot, was also established in ancient times, and mycetoma was probably thus differentiated from elephantiasis.

In 1712 Kämpfer, in India, referred to a tumor of the foot called *perical*, which may have corresponded to mycetoma, elephantiasis, or frambesia. Two years later Pondicherry (1714) referred to a tumor of the foot which, from his description, was probably mycetoma. These early references were followed by those of Heyne (1806), Brett (1840), and others, but these added no further information.

During Gill's administration of the Madura Dispensary (1842), a tumor and fistulous disease of the foot was known to physicans. Gill wrote a clear description of this disease and reported that a peculiar ailment existed in the region, characterized by marked deformity of the foot and by fungous excrescences from which oozed a watery liquid. He insisted that this particular disease differed morphologically from any other known clinical entity. His successor at the dispensary, Colebrook (1846), confirmed Gill's observations and called attention to the fact that the condition was known as ''Madura foot'' in various regions of India. This name was adopted and is still in use at the present time.

---

*Chapter 51.

Rustomji, in 1858, presented a clinical description of Madura foot based on a study of 8 ses. A short time later (1860), Eyre referred to the granules and stated that diseased ssue in Madura foot contained small tubercles resembling fish eggs.

Carter, continuing the work of Eyre and following the clinical description of Rustomji, ade a series of studies which were published in 1874 under the title *On Mycetoma or the ungus Disease of India.* This is still the classic treatise on this ailment and has not en improved upon to date. He explains that the causal organism is a fungus and that kinds of granules appear in the pus—one, blackish, called *melanoid,* the other, yellowish, lled *ochroid.*

In the years following, Carter and other workers, among them Kanthack (1892), were the opinion that both the melanoid and the ochroid varieties had an identical causal agent. na, however, in examining Kanthack's material, found differences in the constitution of the varieties of granules.

Many years before this knowledge of Madura foot was established, Delbert, in France, blished his *Traité d'Anatomie Patologíque* (1857). In it he showed diagrams of character- ic granules which were later recognized as granules of Actinomyces. These drawings were the yellowish bodies observed in the pus from a thoracic abscess in a patient seen in 1848. is indicated that there was some knowledge of this affection at that time, and before this, a se of osseous caries was described by Langenbeck, in which some yellowish bodies were found d which he thought were of a mycotic nature.

Referring again to the work begun by Carter on the 2 varieties of granules, the credit r demonstrating the difference between the ochroid and the melanoid varieties belongs to yce and Surveyor (1894). They pointed out that 2 different fungi were responsible for e 2 clinical varieties, the ochroid being due to a Streptothrix or an Actinomyces, the elanoid being due to a mold. This step marked a great advance in the knowledge of ycetoma, since it established the clear division, accepted at the present time, of the 2 types: actinomycotic and that produced by molds. The disease now known as actinomycosis re- ins included in mycetoma.

The first definite description of actinomycosis was published by Bollinger in 1877. He covered accumulations of mycelia in the yellowish granules contained in maxillary pus from ow.

Harz (1877) studied this mycotic material and gave the name *Actinomyces* to the gus and *actinomycosis* to the disease. Israel (1878) described a disease in human beings h granules like those found by Bollinger in the animal. To Ponfick is given the credit for initely recognizing the part played by Harz' Actinomyces in human actinomycosis. In 1879 made a diagnosis of the disease in a patient and presented a complete study of this ease.

Until that date, little or no relationship had been established between the mycetoma Carter (1874) and the actinomycosis of Ponfick (1879).

The study of actinomycosis was undertaken by many workers, and reports multiplied; Europe as well as in North American important studies led to the second fundamental rk of Israel (1885). In this treatise, observations and clinical deductions from studies of cases of actinomycosis are presented. Conflicting ideas concerning the disease culminated a controversy concerning the organisms considered as etiologic agents: the anaerobic inomyces of Wolff and Israel (1891), and the aerobic Actinomyces of Bostroem. Wright 05) demonstrated that the true causal agent of actinomycosis is the anaerobe of Wolff l Israel and that the aerobic Actinomyces was simply a contaminant.

Once precise knowledge pertaining to actinomycosis had been obtained, all mycetoma es were included under that entity, that is, actinomycosis. Despite the fact that the ideas Boyce and Surveyor concerning the 2 varieties of mycetoma were definitely proved when ent in North Africa (1894) succeeded in cultivating Actinomyces from the ochroid iety of mycetoma (he called it *Streptothrix madurae*), and Wright (1898) in North erica obtained a mold from a culture of the melanoid granules, the confusion persisted l Chalmers and Archibald in a series of studies (1916 to 1918) revived the question of inomycosis, mycetoma, and Madura foot and established a clear adjustment of the various criteria. They retained the concept of mycetoma for the fistulous tumors which con granules composed of mycelia, dividing it into 2 types, the *actinomycotic* and the *mad mycotic,* and calling each type simply actinomycosis and maduromycosis.

Actinomycotic mycetoma includes 2 groups, one caused by an anaero actinomycete, *A. bovis,* and commonly referred to as actinomycosis, the oth caused by aerobic actinomycetes, Nocardia, *N. mexicana, N. madurae,* *pelletieri,* etc., and commonly referred to as actinomycotic mycetoma. T maduromycotic form is due to various fungi belonging to different classe genera, and species.

- Mycetoma
  - Actinomycotic
    - Due to aerobes
Nocardiasis
      - *N. madurae*
      - *N. pelletieri*
      - *N. mexicana,* etc.
    - Due to anaerobes
Actinomycosis
      - *A. bovis*
  - Maduromycotic
    - Madurella
    - Cephalosporium
    - Monosporium, etc.

The difference between the lesions caused by aerobic actinomycetes an those caused by *A. bovis* can very often be suspected clinically, especially b their localization. Thus cervicofacial and intestinal localizations are produce by *A. bovis,* while those localized in the extremities are caused by aerobe There are clinical forms, however, such as the thoracic, in which it is no possible to differentiate by the symptoms or by observation of the granules o by biopsy. This point is important in treatment, as we shall see later.

As to the difference between actinomycotic and maduromycotic mycetoma a study of the granules and the cultures will indicate the difference.

Lesions due to *A. bovis* will not be considered in this chapter, since they ar found in all climates, and complete studies have been published in variou books. We shall deal exclusively with actinomycotic mycetoma due to aerobe and with maduromycotic mycetoma, the knowledge of which is confused These are of major predominance in tropical and subtropical regions.

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

The types of mycetoma defined above are found in tropical and subtropical zone throughout the world. Predominance in certain definite regions has been reported, althoug this seems to be due in part to the greater knowledge of this condition in such places Sporadic cases have been described in every climate, but incidence is higher in various tropica and subtropical regions. In Asia, the disease is predominant in India, Ceylon, Aden, an the Philippines; in Africa, numerous cases have been reported in Madagascar, Somaliland Ethiopia, Sudan, Egypt, Tripoli, Tunisia, Algeria, Morocco, and Senegambia. In America the greatest number of cases appear to be in Mexico and Brazil, although the disease ha been reported in every country of the New World.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Source of Infection.—Some of the species of aerobic actinomycetes and o the fungi which cause maduromycotic mycetoma have been found in nature Nearly all the fungi which cause mycetoma are distributed in nature, in the soil, and on plants, the predominating species depending on the geographi conditions of the regions.

Occupational Incidence.—Mycetoma is most often observed among rural ilations. Small traumas, especially in the feet in individuals who gen-y go barefoot and who work in the fields, serve as the point of entry for fungi.

Distribution.—Although the affection is considered endemic in some re-s, there are no definite foci of infection in any definite location. Cases reported from many different sections of the various countries, varying in ber according to the agricultural activities and customs of the individuals. endent upon the low standard of living.

Seasonal Incidence.—No definite seasonal influence has been observed to in relation to the disease. From a review of many cases observed in ico, we cannot conclude that the disease predominates in any special on of the year. This may be due, perhaps, to the very variable periods of bation in individual cases.

Racial Incidence.—The fact that indigenous populations present the larg-number of cases may be due more to the type of agricultural occupation its accompanying traumatism than to racial predisposition. This type of osis has been observed in all races.

Relation of Age and Sex to Incidence.—Mycetoma is seen most frequently ien and occurs most often between the ages of 20 and 40 years.

Period of Incubation.—The period of incubation is not known. There are s in which lesions have appeared a few days after the trauma. On the r hand, in some cases the first signs have been observed several months r the apparent cause of the infection.

Contagiousness.—As with the other deep mycoses, this condition is not agious.

PATHOLOGY

The picture in mycetoma is identical in both varieties, the actinomycotic the maduromycotic, so that one clinical description includes both.

The most common localization is in the feet. This can be readily ex-ned when the occupational factor in the incidence of this type of mycosis onsidered. Other localizations, in the order of frequency, are leg, thigh, ds, arms, back, thorax, abdomen, and face.

Most of the cases begin with the appearance of a small painless papular in-ition which remains stationary for a long time and is usually ignored by patient. At times the first appearance is in the form of a vesicle sur-ided by hard, inflamed tissue, and occasionally a small abscess. Patients uently indicate trauma as the cause of the lesion. These initial elements, ell as the disease after it has developed, follow a decidedly chronic course iost cases, and it is not unusual to have the patient seek medical care sev-years after the beginning of the disease. This decidedly chronic charac-tic is important in diagnosis.

The initial papule softens approximately at the end of 2 months, and, the vesicle or the small initial abscess, opens outwardly. A serosanguinolent substance is discharged from the small orifices which alternately occluded and reopen. The tissue surrounding the initial lesion begins show reaction, while other initial lesions, similar to the first, appear in th cinity at variable intervals, from 1 to 6 months, resulting finally in swelling deformation, due to fibrous tissue reaction and sinus formation.

When the disease has become established, a great increase is observed in volume of the diseased area in which numerous nodules are seen. Each these nodules corresponds to the external orifice of a fistula proceeding to t deeper parts. A thin, shiny, rosy cutaneous lamina covers the opening a when it is lifted, a rosy "eye" of somewhat "gelatinous" tissue is observ crowning the vertex, through the tiny orifices of which exudes a fluid co taining the characteristic granules. The exudate is generally threadlik

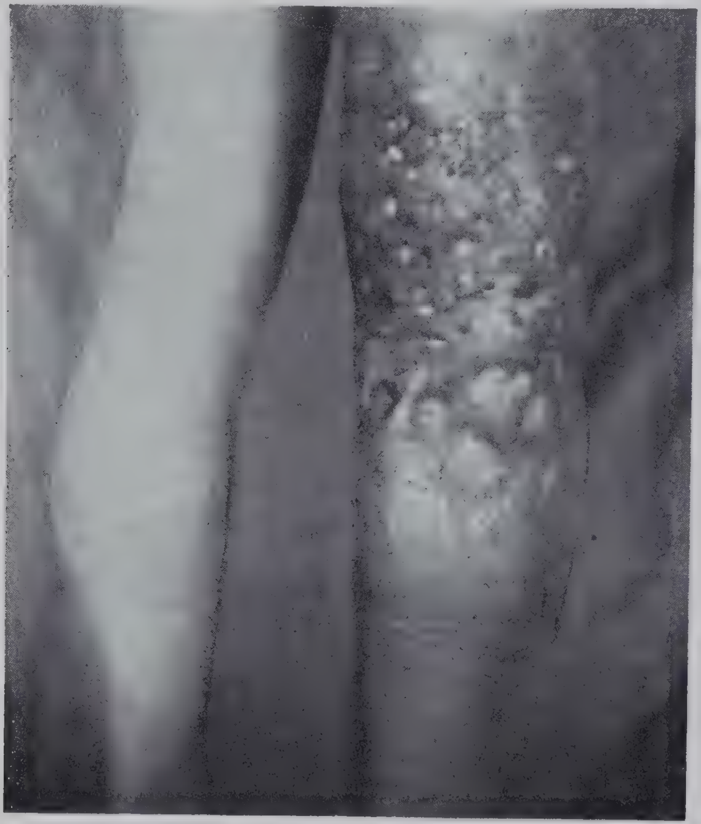
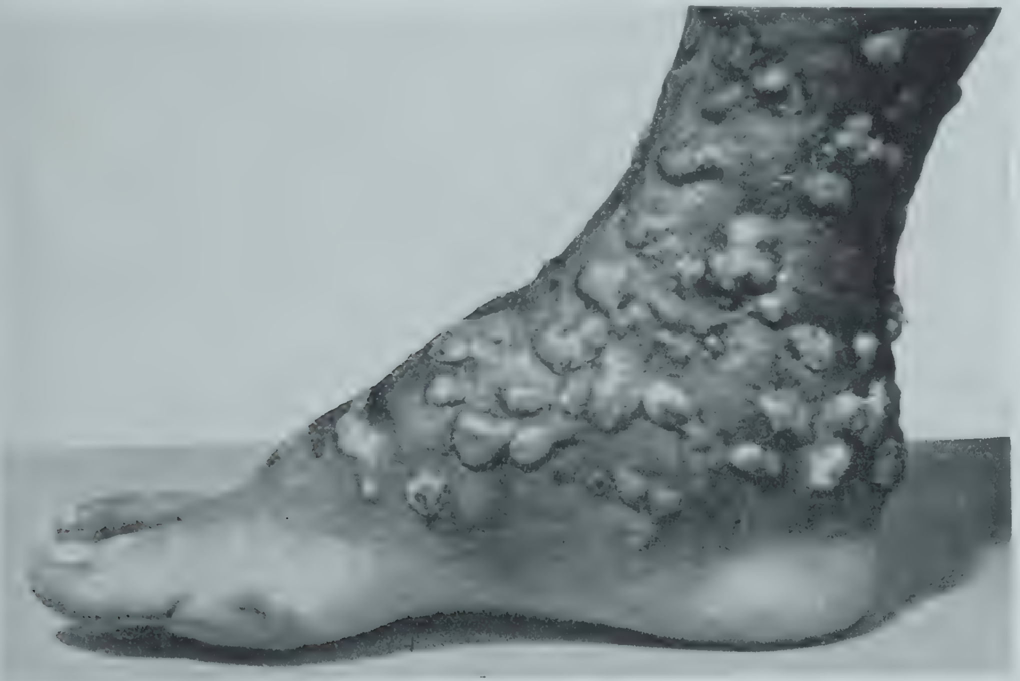


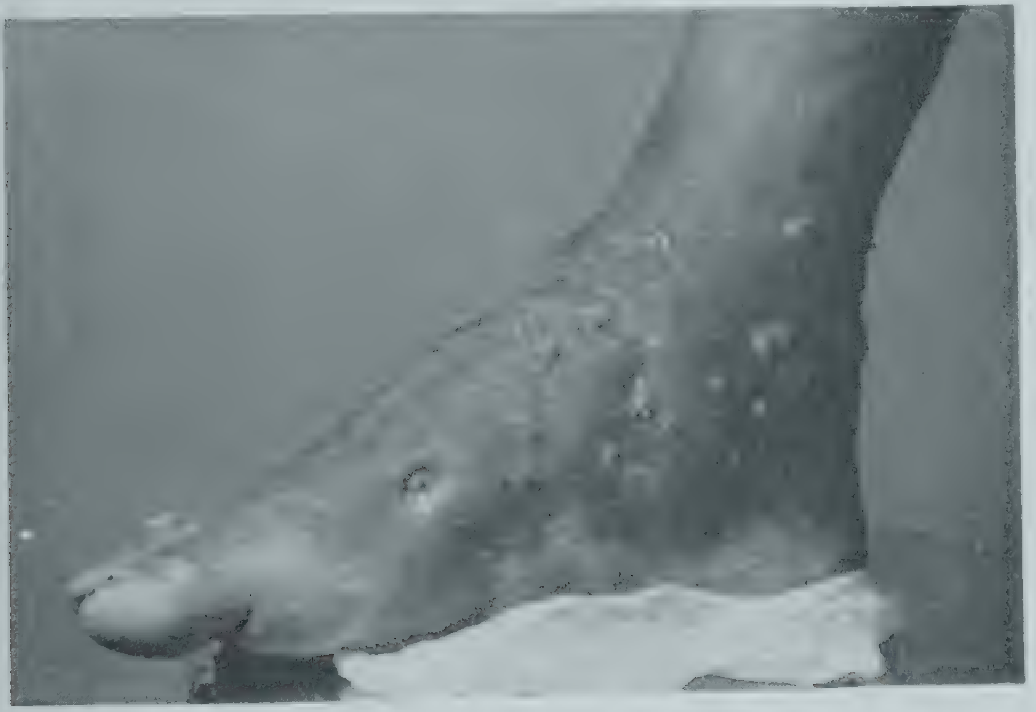
Fig. 378.—Actinomycotic mycetoma, characterized by great increase in size of diseased zone which is covered by fistulous orifices.

yellowish, sometimes sanguinolent, and when associated infection is present, it is decidedly purulent and of a bad odor. The granules, in most cases, are yellowish-white, varying in size and number from few to many, resembling caviar. In some cases, necrosis of the small nodules results in formation of ulcerations of various sizes and shapes, according to individual cases. The ulcers develop slowly.

The fistulae tend to close temporarily, by a crust or even scar formation. New fistulae constantly form, while others are closing and sometimes disappearing. Formation of a fistula is preceded by the appearance of a small nodule which later opens. The small nodules appear in varying numbers and, although they are very frequent, they may be absent in some cases, the fistula ening at the base of the skin. They vary considerably in size, being 2 to 6 mm. diameter by 3 to 5 mm. in height. They may be isolated or confluent. The lor varies from the color of the skin to red and violet. The fistular orifices



g. 379.—Podal mycetoma by *Nocardia mexicana,* showing a large number of nodular elements.



. 380.—Case of actinomycotic mycetoma in which nodular formations are lodged in a depression, giving an umbilical appearance. Corresponds to suppurative type of Bouffard.

the crown of the nodule vary in size and number. Sometimes they are pres- in craterlike depressions, or more rarely there is a depression, and a slight minence in this depression contains the fistular opening which looks some- at like an umbilicus.

The fistulae penetrate deeply into the tissues of the affected region. In old cases or in cases where the infection is heavy they may penetrate into the bone and cause cavernous expansion at the deep end of the path of invasion Until recently it was thought that there were certain species of fungi which cause mycetomas which attack the bone, while other species do not. It now appears that penetration of bone tissue does not depend upon any definite species but rather on the stage of development and on the intensity of the infection, since in all old cases invasion of bone tissues is constantly observed. When the joint is invaded, the subsequent destruction of ligaments and articular surfaces results in ankylosis. Muscles appear to be particularly vulnerable. It may be stated that, in general, no tissue is respected by the fungi which cause mycetoma.

Invasion occurs through contiguity, and when there are distant lesions they seem to be caused by autoinoculation rather than through blood or lymphatic metastases. There are cases in which gland and even visceral metastases occur, but this is exceptional; reports concerning this still need verification. On the other hand, visceral invasion by contiguity is not rare, especially in thoracic mycetoma in which there is almost always a pulmonary attack.

Macroscopic Changes.—It is easy to observe that regions attacked by mycetoma show alterations consisting of increase of subcutaneous cellular tissue and almost complete disappearance of muscle and adipose tissue, replaced by connective tissue.

Within the diseased tissue, bones, muscles, etc., there are numerous sinuous tracts which terminate at the inner end in cavernous expansions. In the center of these channels are found gelatinous or necrotic material containing granules; these are also observed within the diseased tissue. The bones are softened, are carious, and numerous fistulous tracts are found. Articular surfaces are corroded, with tendon destruction.

Microscopic Changes.—Microscopic changes are the same for all causal agents of mycetoma. We shall follow, fundamentally, the observations of Boyd and Crutchfield (1926). They reported that in the true skin, the Malpighian layer becomes thinner, with the germinal stratum projected inward. Atrophy of the papillae and marked hyperplasia of connective tissue immediately below the epidermis are observed between the germinal stratum and glands. There is a leucocytic infiltration, composed more frequently of lymphocytes than of polymorphonuclears. The glands are atrophied or surrounded by a fibroblastic proliferation. In almost all cases there is an increase in vascularization and hemorrhage in the corium.

In a section of a nodule, the Malpighian stratum is even more slender, and the papillae are markedly atrophied. When the small nodule is accompanied by fistulae, the horny layer is destroyed, and the tissue surrounding the nodule presents considerable hyperplasia of the reticular and also of the papillary zones. The nodule is filled with an accumulation of polymorphonuclears and lymphocytes among which numerous granules may be observed. When the nodule has not yet fistulized, it presents hyperplasia of young connective tissue, with considerable infiltration of mononuclear cells and numerous capillary vaults. The nodules may be formed as a result of an internal pressure due to cellular infiltration.

In deep-seated tissues there is a characteristic extensive hyperplasia of connective tissue which parallels extension of the disease, with hyaline degeneration after the process recedes. Adipose tissue is replaced by connective tissue, and the remaining areas are infiltrated with lymphocytes. While the invasion of connective tissue is recent, an increase of vascularization is observed; this disappears with the degeneration of connective tissue. Sanguineous extravasation is almost constant, with observation of red cells or blood pigment. There is perivascular infiltration with mononuclear cells.

The fistulae may have a definite wall or they simply open into the connective tissue; their internal portion is infiltrated with mononuclear cells and, when granules are here observed, they appear to be surrounded by polymorphonuclears or epithelioid cells. Sometimes giant cells are seen near the granules. In some areas the disposition of the epithelioid cells and of the lymphocytes resembles a tubercle.

Frequently Russell bodies are seen isolated or grouped, and of various sizes.

Diagnosis is established only by finding the granules, since there is no specific tissue reaction because the histologic modifications may be due to a purulent infection with polymorphonuclears or to chronic inflammation with granulation tissue and dense invasion of connective tissue (Fig. 396).

In sections stained with hematoxylin-eosin, the central portion of the granule takes the hematoxylin stain, while the periphery or the clubs stain better with eosin. To be able to observe the structure of the center of the granule it is best to stain the section by the Gram method. The slender filaments of the actinomycotic granule can then be seen, quite different from the thick filaments and chlamydospores of the maduromycotic granule. Both types of fungi, being gram-positive, stain intensely and are easily differentiated. This method of staining is also convenient when the granules are produced by bacteria, since they can be clearly seen.

Clinical Picture

The frequency and clinical picture of mycetoma vary according to its localization. Localization may be divided as follows: mycetoma of the extremities, mycetoma of the thorax, mycetoma of the abdominal wall, and other localization.

We should like to repeat that we are not concerned in this chapter with infections due to *Actinomyces bovis*, but only with those due to aerobic actinomycetes (Nocardia) and the fungi of maduromycotic mycetoma.

1. **Mycetoma of the Extremities.**—The most frequent localization of mycetoma is in the extremities, especially the foot, and for this reason most of the synonyms for the disease imply morbidity of the foot, such as adipose

sarcoma of the foot, morbus tuberculosis pedis, Madura foot, endemic degeneration of the bones of the foot, Indian pedal mycosis, caries of the bones of th foot, etc.

Rural laborers are exposed most frequently to trauma from pricking o scratching by thorns which harbor the causal organisms of mycetoma. Since rural people are accustomed to going barefooted, it is not surprising that mycosis of the feet or legs is the most frequent form of this condition.

Almeida (1939) states that the disease is localized in the lower limbs in more than 60 per cent of the cases of mycetoma observed in Brazil. In Mexico an equal number or perhaps a greater percentage of mycetomas occurs in the lower limbs.

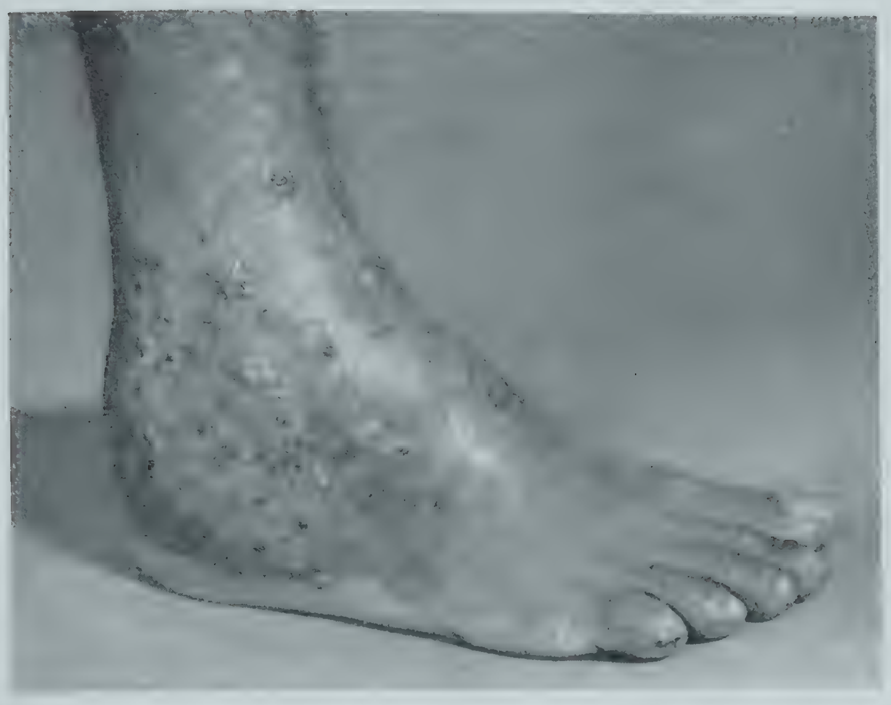
The length of time which elapses after the injury until the nodules appear varies considerably. In some cases, even after the wound has completely healed, the little painless nodule appears; this later develops into abscesses and fistulae and is surrounded by a hard edema with the characteristics described above. It may be weeks or even months after its appearance that another one appears, and others make their appearance successively. Later, the zones of sclerous tissue which surround the nodules become fused and progressively form a tumor which ultimately destroys the outline of the foot, transforming it, in advance cases, into a roundish mass in which the toes are mere appendages. The mass is covered by small nodules in various stages of development, some just forming, others undergoing fistulization and exuding the characteristic secretion and granules, still others closed or even cicatrized. The general consistency of the affected or enlarged foot is very hard, although it may have some small fluctuating areas.

The deformed foot becomes sensitive, although spontaneous pain is rare. The leg becomes thin, with atrophied muscles, and the patient cannot walk, more because of the size of the foot than because of the pain. The general health of the patient is not much modified; when there are general symptoms they are due to associated bacterial infection.

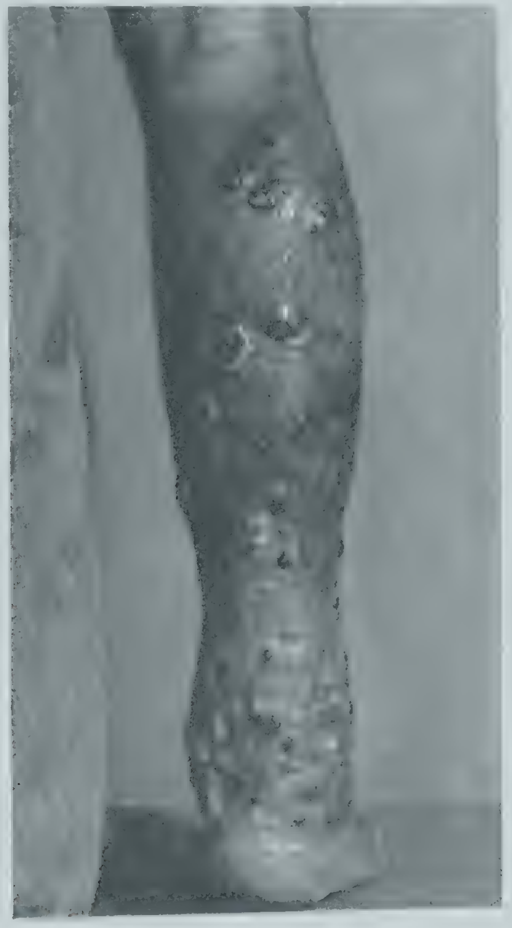
Bouffard (1919), in his monograph on mycetoma, divided it into *suppurative, sclerous,* and *cystic.* The most frequently observed type is the *suppurative,* which corresponds to the description given here, and it is the type most frequently seen in the foot.

The *sclerous* form of mycetoma is observed in some cases with pedal localization. According to Bouffard, it is due to absence of secondary infection so that the fungus itself is alone responsible for the changes. The diseased foot is more or less lumpy, very hard, covered with tightly stretched skin, without nodules, and with very few fistulae opening in the skin. This type of tumor, which in many cases may remain closed, slowly tends to total destruction of tissue, muscle, tendon, and bone, without suppuration. This type appears to be more painful.

The *cystic* form of mycetoma consists of a permanently localized tumor without any tendency to spread. In this case the area is like a cystic pouch, rather delimited, containing exudate and granules. This clinical form is rarely seen.



ig. 381.—Actinomycotic mycetoma of sclerous type. Tumor lacks nodules. Sparse fistulous orifices are seen in the tight skin.



g. 382.—Mycetoma of the foot and leg after 8 months of evolution; initial lesion appeared in the foot.

Frequently mycetoma of the foot invades the leg early in the disease, a though, on the other hand, one often observes lesions of 10 years or longe which remain strictly localized in the foot.

After pedal localization, in the order of frequency, there follows localization in the leg and thigh. There is the same characteristic fistulous tumo formation. Frequently great hypertrophy of the affected region is observed with fibrous, "woody" consistency in some areas, and softness in others. The skin is filled with cicatricial spots and cup-like depressions with a yellowish crust or containing a fistulous orifice through which oozes a yellowish fluid sometimes containing characteristic granules.

Mycetoma of the hands is rare. The clinical description of this type, as well as mycetoma of the arms and shoulders, is the same as above.

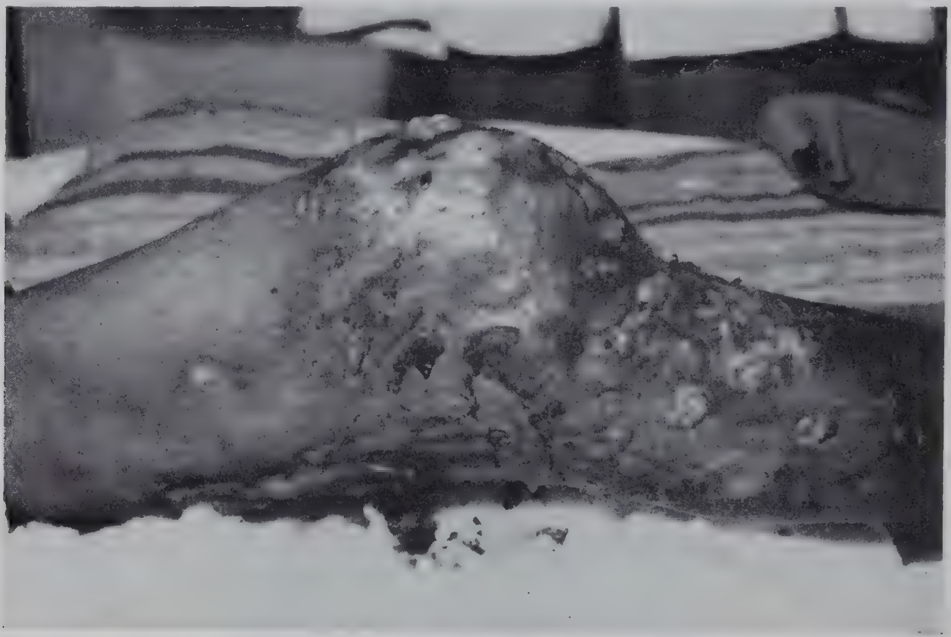


Fig. 383.—Mycetoma of the knee due to *Nocardia mexicana.*

2. **Thoracic Mycetoma.**—Thoracic mycetoma merits both clinical and etiologic consideration. It may originate in the thoracic wall, later attacking the pleurae and the lungs, or it may be of pulmonary origin and extend to the thoracic wall. In the first case, the infection works from the outer to the inner tissue, which corresponds to aerobic actinomycetes. In the second case, the infection is generally caused by the anaerobic actinomycetes, A. *bovis.* We cite the difference only for the purpose of a better understanding of the first (aerobic) situation, especially when treatment is referred to. Given the "habitat" of the aerobic actinomycetes (plants and soil), it is readily understood that some injury opens a portal of entry to the infecting agent and that, due to the invading tendency of mycetoma, the lesion, after perforating the thoracic wall, extends to the pleurae and the lungs. The patient frequently reports an injury which gives rise to the formation of an initial nodule which ordinarily appears on the anterior surface of the thorax; becoming soft, it is fistulized and becomes surrounded by sclerotic tissue. With the passage of time, similar elements form, until the anterior surface of the thorax is trans-

ormed into a great mass in which zones of woody hardness alternate with oft areas of an irregular surface filled with bumps and depressions umbilical n form, covered by scabs of a dirty yellow color and by "eyes" of flesh which xtrude a yellowish serous fluid containing the peculiar granules. The lumps re formed by subcutaneous adhesions, some rather free, others adherent, nd some showing inflammatory reaction in the skin which covers them. For any years the disease remains localized in the wall until the patient rather uddenly presents an acute pleural manifestation, with purulent discharge, ollowed shortly thereafter by a clearly pulmonary manifestation in which here dominates a physical syndrome of condensation with persistent cough nd bloody sputum containing the characteristic granules. Prognosis becomes erious when mycetoma invades the lung. These cases of visceral repercusion are fatal because they resist every therapeutic measure.

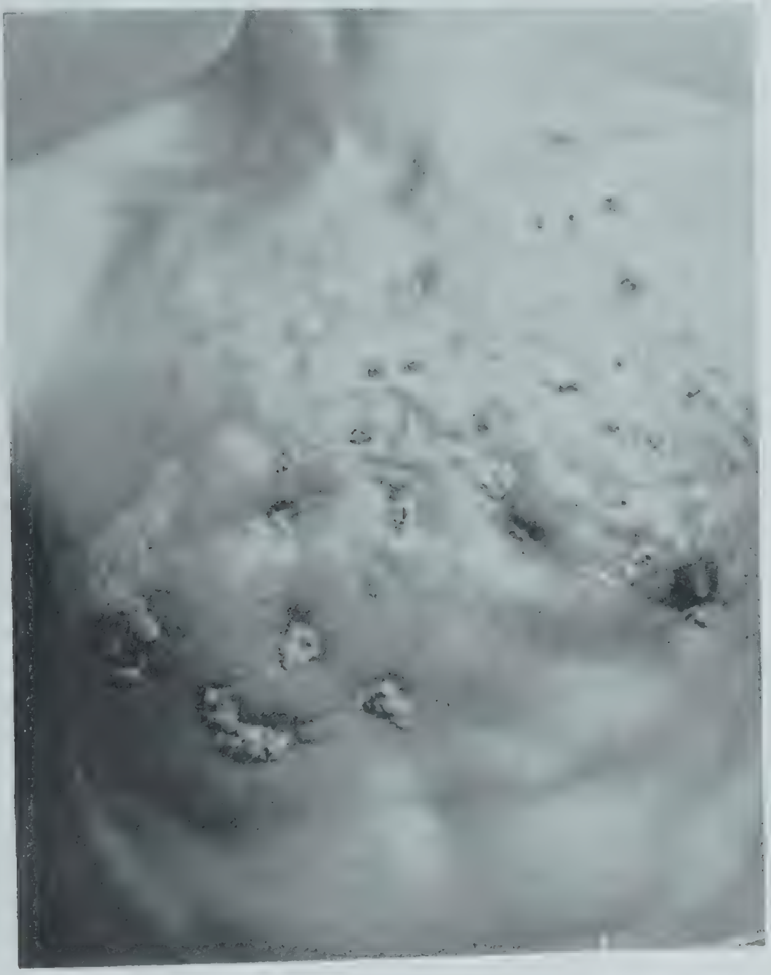


Fig. 384.—Thoracic mycetoma with pulmonary invasion, due to *Nocardia mexicana.*

3. **Abdominal Mycetoma.**—The statements above are also true for this ype. The aerobic actinomycetes penetrate from the outside inward, and the nitial lesion appears in the superficial layers of the abdominal wall. On the her hand, in infection due to *A. bovis,* the visceral manifestation, often an appendicular picture, is the clinical beginning of the case.

In the infection due to aerobes, a nodule appears in the skin of the abomen. The nodule becomes soft and fistulizes, and oily pus containing gran-

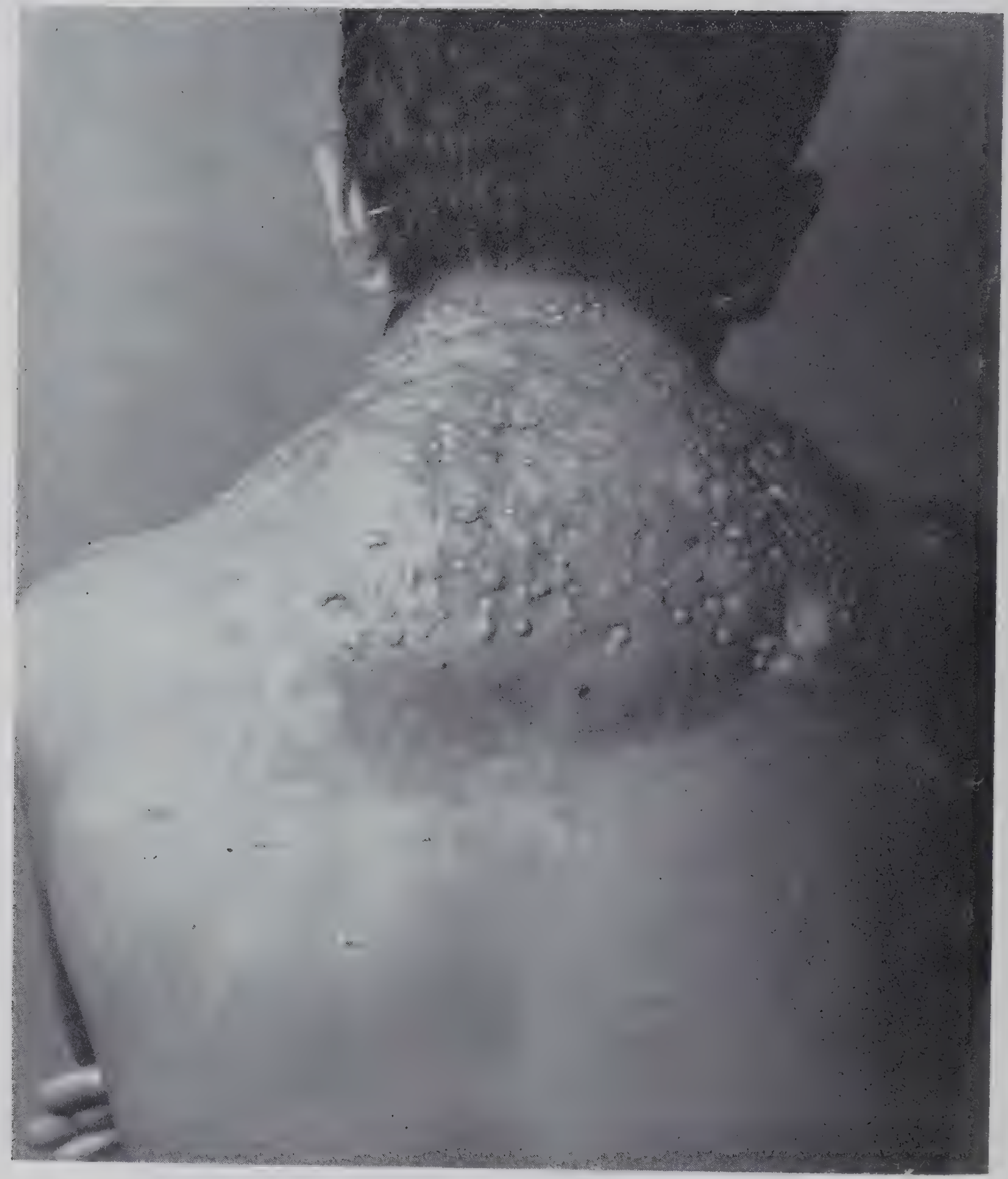


Fig. 385.—Mycetoma of the back.

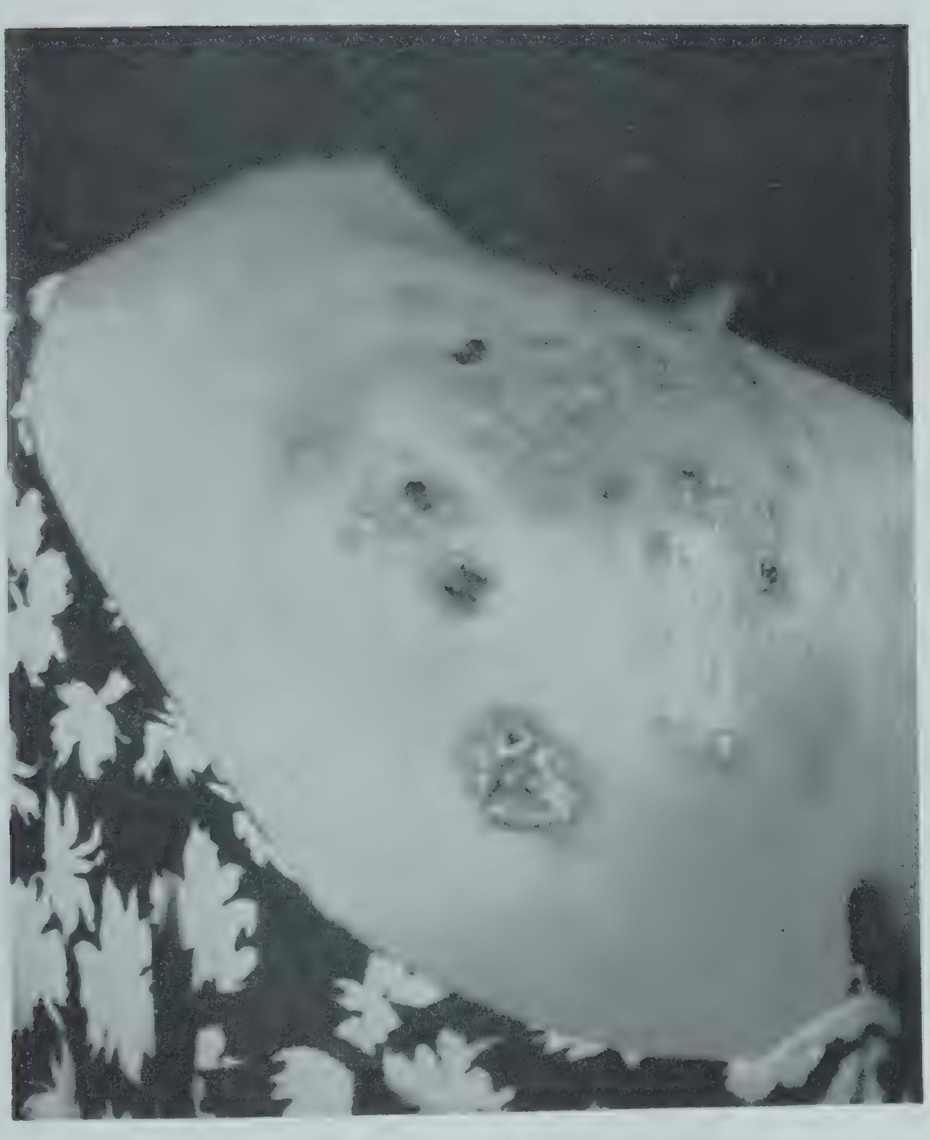


Fig. 386. Mycetoma due to *Nocardia mexicana* in the scapular region.

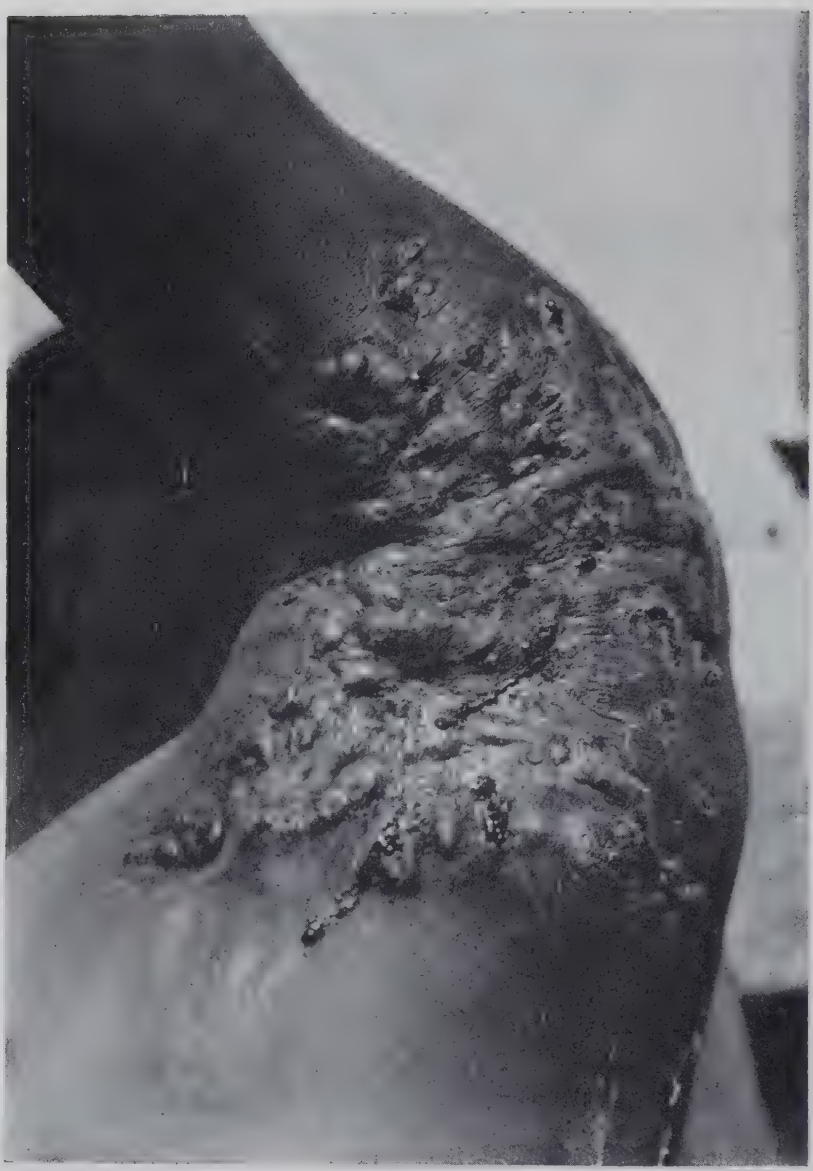


Fig. 387.—Actinomycotic mycetoma in the axillary region (case of Rico and Medina).

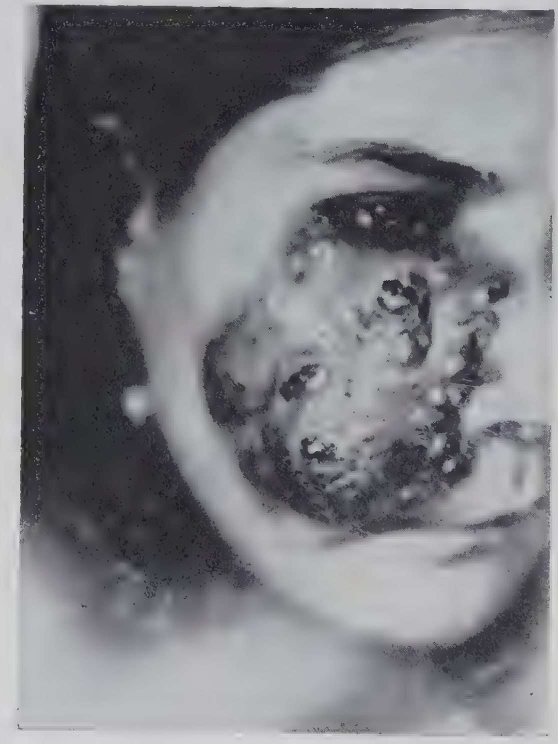


Fig. 388.—Facial mycetoma due to *Nocardia mexicana.*

les oozes from it. The nodule is followed by others until the area shows the haracteristic consistency of mycetoma.

When the abdominal cavity is invaded, the clinical picture depends upon hich viscera are affected; general symptoms are very severe.

4. **Other Localizations of Mycetoma.**—Assuming that the agents of actino- ycotic or maduromycotic mycetoma may invade any type of tissue, it can be nderstood that mycetoma may appear in any site, so that, in addition to the ost frequent localizations, it also appears in the face, neck, gluteal region, tc. In all cases, the common denominator of mycetoma, that which consti- utes the clinical picture, is the nodule which softens, fistulizes, and exudes n oily pus containing granules, becomes surrounded by sclerotic tissues, and, ith the appearance of new nodular elements developing by the same process, roduces a tumor mass with those characteristics discussed under the general linical picture.

On very rare occasions, mycetoma acquires a quite different appearance rom the usual description. It may take the form of a simple hardening of he affected region, or it may present ulcerative proliferations similar to pitheliomata.

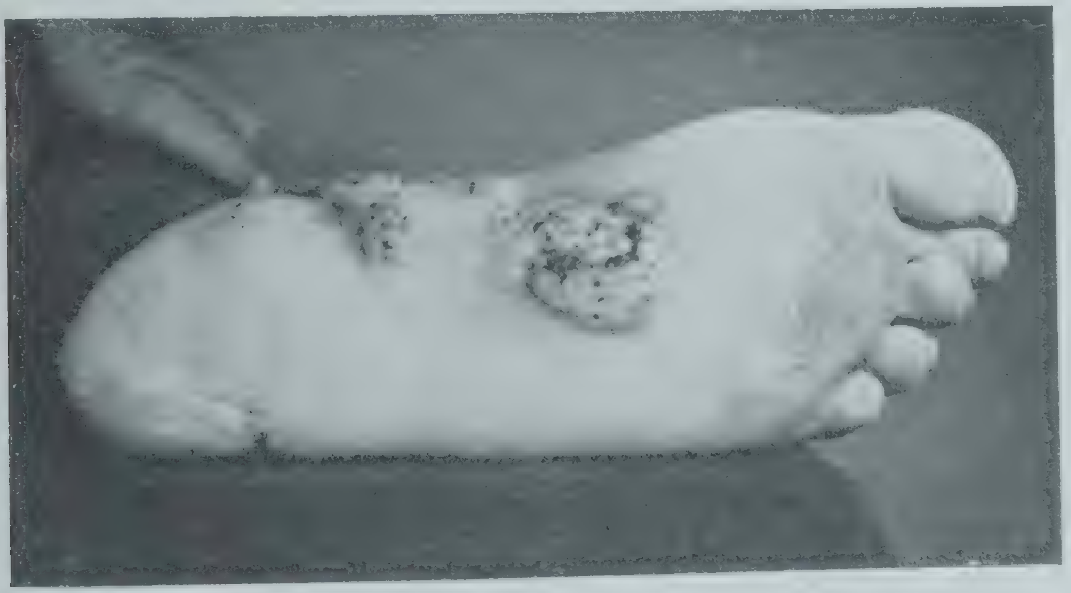


Fig. 389.—Ulcerous proliferation similar to neoplasia caused by *Nocardia mexicana.*

DIAGNOSIS

Granules

The granules are the pathognomonic elements of mycetoma. Diagnosis is ot possible without the presence of these granules in the suppurative material r in biopsy tissue. The erroneous concept contained in the terms "para- ycetoma" and "pseudomycetoma" is evident. *Paramycetoma* is defined as clinical entity in which the granules are absent or are so few and so small at they are not readily observed. The term *pseudomycetoma* includes those nditions which simulate mycetoma but are etiologically different, such as the rtiary lesions of yaws, etc. These 2 terms only complicate the picture and ad to confusion.

The granules are small formations which have been compared to fish roe They vary in size from tiny specks barely visible to the eye or visible only under the microscope to the size of a pinhead or a little larger. These last are composed of aggregations of several small granules. They are rounded or lobulated. The color is ordinarily yellowish-white; there are red and black granules, but these are very exceptional.* In general, exaggerated importance is attached to the color of the granules in the study of mycetoma. The yellowish-white granules are extremely more important than the black and red. Apart from the fact that the red and the black granules are rarely found, there is no constancy to the fact that the color of granules corresponds to any particular species. We have isolated *N. pelletieri* from mycetoma with yellowish-white granules, although this species is regarded as a producer of red granules. The fact that different species of fungi produce granules of the same color has already been discussed by Gammel (1927) in treating of maduromycotic granules. He believed that one species may produce different colored granules; therefore, mycologic classification of mycetoma by the color of the granules is incorrect.

The consistency of the granules varies from very soft (so soft that they flatten under a cover glass) to very firm.

Because of the importance of the granules in the diagnosis of this type of mycosis, it is necessary to observe them in the exudate from the fistulae by removing the crust covering the orifice or by lifting the thin skin cover of the nodule to obtain drops of the oily yellowish fluid which is not as purulent as that of open fistulae.

The use of a hand lens aids in discovering them. When the granules are too small to be seen with the naked eye, the exudate (purulent or nonpurulent) is placed in a drop of Lugol solution, or in 10 per cent potassium hydroxide, between slides, and examined microscopically. Sometimes it may be necessary to irrigate the fistulae with saline solution, using a syringe in order to introduce the liquid under pressure, thus separating the adherent granules from the walls of the fistulae. The liquid is then centrifuged. The granules will be found in the sediment.

Microscopic Examination.—The granules are formed by an accumulation of mycelial elements which vary in morphology according to the type of mycetoma. In either variety, actinomycotic or maduromycotic, the granule is generally formed by 2 zones, a central zone of filaments and a peripheral zone formed by hyaline, club-shaped prolongations, which can be compared to bowling pins and are called "clubs."

The central zone of the *actinomycotic granule* is formed of hypnae of an actinomycete. The fungus, a *microsiphonate,* has very slender nonseptate filaments, giving the appearance of pressed felt, on the surface of which can be seen a structure more punctiform than filamentous. Sometimes, in Gram-stained histologic sections, very slender filaments are seen, which have become free from the pressed surface.

---

*Editor's note (O. F.): This refers only to Mexico.

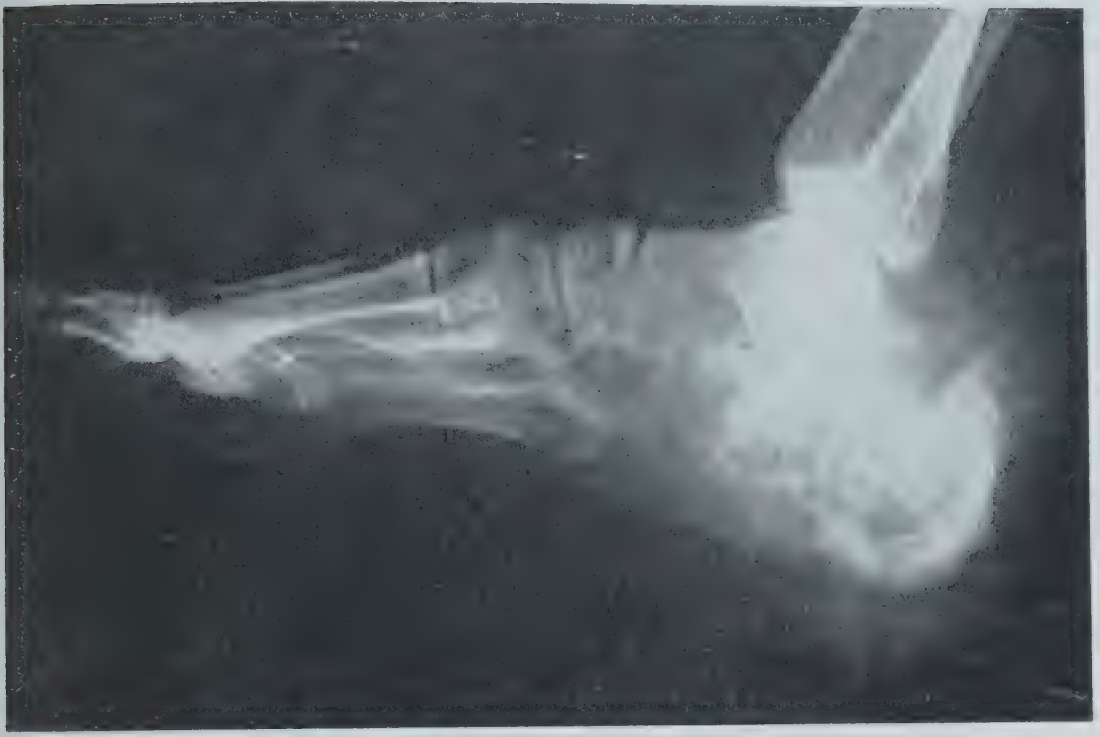


Fig. 390.—Osseous lesions in a case of actinomycotic mycetoma.

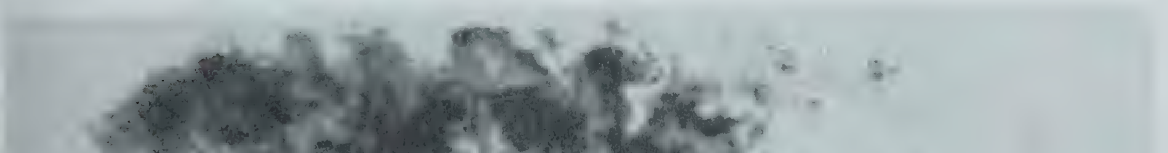


Fig. 391.—Actinomycotic granule stained by the Gram method, showing the structure med by slender filaments of the actinomycete or by a section of these, giving the appearance punctiform elements.

The central zone of a *maduromycotic granule* is formed of fungi belonging to various genera, called *macrosiphonates,* in which the filaments are septate, branching, and wide; in spite of the "pressed" appearance of the accumulation, the larger diameter of the component hyphae can be observed. In most maduromycotic granules there are numerous chlamydospores.

The different appearances described for the central zone as peculiar of some species are of but little significance. The fact that a species is described as having a convex or concave contour, or lacunar hollow, or with a characteristic interstitial substance, etc., is of little value in the study of the species, since these are not constant data.

The affinity of this central zone for stains depends upon variations conditioned by the biology of the fungi and upon the process of fixation of the biopsy tissue. It is known that all the fungi are gram-positive and that the "clubs" are acidophilic, being in this respect like the Russell bodies also found in mycetoma. When stained by the Gram method, the central zone is blue and the clubs reddish.

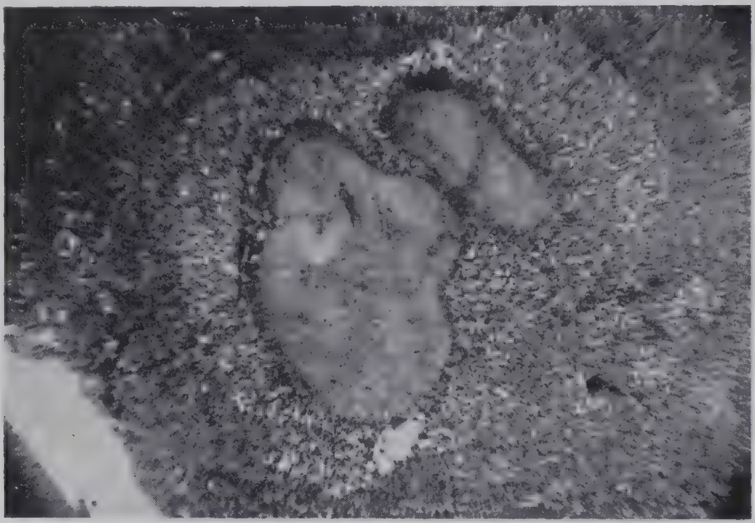


Fig. 392.—Maduromycotic granule due to *Cephalosporium* sp.

Clubs.—The importance of these elements has been overemphasized. In the past, key charts based upon the presence or absence of these clubs were used in the study of the granule-producing actinomycetes. At the present time it is known that these bodies may be present or absent in the same species, and even in the same patient may be found granules with and without the clubs. These elements are not characteristic of fungi which cause mycetoma, being sometimes found also in sporotrichosis, tuberculosis, actinobacillosis, and around accumulations of Staphylococcus and even around inorganic substances injected into tissue such as China ink, tellurium, and vanadium salts.

Curiously, these formations have been cultivated. Wright (1905) obtained a culture of clubs in a liquid medium with organic proteins; Langeron et al. (1925) cultivated clubs of *Actinobacillus lignieri* in Sabouraud's 6 per cent dextrose medium, and other authors have succeeded in reproducing these formations. Two theories have been advanced to account for the production of these bodies; one theory states that they are products of the parasite itself; the other considers them a reaction of the host to the parasite. The latter hypothesis is generally accepted. According to Benda (1900), Magrou (1919), Lieske (1921), and others, the formation of these bodies is a phenomenon analogous to the formation of giant cells, not a defensive reaction, but rather a symbiosis.

Since these elements are so variable that there are no constant morphologic characteristics for any one species, they are of little value in the study of granules. These bodies vary in length, may bifurcate or trifurcate, with or without digitation.

ETIOLOGY

There are various fungi which cause mycetoma, belonging to different classes and genera. As stated before, it is not possible to ascertain clinically the fungus causing the disease, since neither the symptomatology nor the macroscopic appearance of the granules is constant. Culture alone may clarify the nature of the infecting agent.

The division of mycetomas proposed by Chalmers and Archibald (1918) is the most generally accepted and the most logical in that it is based on etiology. In this classification mycetoma is considered as being caused on the one hand by various organisms of the actinomycetes group and on the other hand by fungi belonging to different genera, families, and classes.

Actinomycotic Mycetoma

Actinomycosis Due to Aerobes.—We must repeat that *Actinomyces bovis* is not under consideration and that only the aerobic actinomycetes interest us here from the point of view of tropical pathology.

At the present time, the former genus Actinomyces has been divided into several genera, so that the most generally accepted classification, that of Waksman and Henrici (1943), includes the genera Actinomyces, Nocardia, Streptomyces, and Micromonospora; it does not provide for the so-called *Actinomyces madurae* and *A. pelletieri*, so that we shall use the name Nocardia for these 2 species, according to Bergey (1948).

The origin of the Actinomycetales and their place among microorganisms has been very much discussed. They have been considered bacteria with very complex biology; degenerated fungi; or a special ancestral group common to bacteria and fungi.

Like other fungi, the Actinomycetales are composed of filaments or hyphae which form he mycelium. The filaments are very slender, branching, and nonseptate. Ramification is a distinctive characteristic which is very important in distinguishing them from bacteria, but his is not an absolute criterion, since there are a few bacteria, like *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, which have ramifications. In some species of Actinomycetales, the protoplasm of the filaments collects in granules which later fragment, resulting in the formation of coccoid and bacillary elements. In other genera, there is formation of spores.

These fungi present very interesting biochemical characteristics, like their capacity to form pigments, so that the colonies are of various colors, orange, red, black, etc. The pigment of some of the species is released and imparts an intense color to the culture medium. The odor of the culture helps to identify the fungi; generally they have an "earthy" odor.

Their interesting biochemical activity is seen in the enzymatic power of some of the species; this is of fundamental importance in species studies.

Mycetoma-Producing Actinomycetales.—The numerous synonyms and the existing confusion within the group of mycetoma-producing actinomycetes have complicated the study of these fungi. Not considering *A. bovis*, Gammel (1927), in his study of mycetoma, mentioned 12 species as the cause of this disease; Almeida (1939) considered 11. Lacaz, in his monograph on mycetoma-producing actinomycetes (1945), referred to 24; strains of only species were used by this author. Without discussing the validity of the species accepted y different authors, or attempting to reduce to synonyms the incorrect species which fill some ublications, we shall use the criterion established by those who have worked systematically with this type of mycosis and by our own experience with Mexican cases. The species of mycetoma-producing Actinomycetales found in the great majority of cases are:

N. mexicana (Boyd and Crutchfield, 1921) Ota, 1928.
N. brasiliensis (Lindenberg, 1909) Castellani and Chalmers, 1913.
N. madurae (Vicent, 1894) Blanchard, 1898.
N. pelletieri (Laveran, 1906) Pimoy, 1912.
N. asteroides (Eppinger, 1891) Blanchard, 1896.

Following the classification of Waksman and Henrici (1943), we shall divide the mycetoma-producing actinomycetes into 2 groups: those which present the phenomenon of fragmentation and those which lack this characteristic. The first are partially acid-fast, while the second are not, and among the acid-fast, some have enzymatic activity and others lack it.

To study these characteristics, it is convenient to begin by using a culture made in milk, of a month's development. With the fungus cultivated in this medium, a smear is made with a small portion of the culture, rubbing the material back and forth as much as possible, on the slide, using a dissecting needle or a Pasteur pipette, until it dries. The preparation is then stained by the **method of Umbreit** (1939) for partially acid-fast actinomycetes:

Steam in 2 per cent carbol fuchsin for 5 minutes.

Wash with running water.

Decolorize by immersing the slide in 3 per cent hydrochloric acid for exactly 15 seconds.

Wash with water and counterstain with 0.1 per cent aqueous solution of methylene blue for 3 minutes.

In cases with fragmentation, a great number of coccoid and bacillary elements and remnants of filaments, red-stained, are observed.

With the same milk culture, a study is made of the enzymatic activity of the fungus. It is necessary only to ascertain whether the fungus liquefies gelatin, since other enzymatic activity parallels the hydrolysis of gelatin. The most convenient method is the indirect method (Waksman, 1919). It consists in adding 3 c.c. of the milk in which the fungus has been cultivated to 10 c.c. of 15 per cent ''Gold Label'' gelatin in distilled water. After incubating at 37° C. for 24 hours, the tubes are placed on ice for 1 hour before reading.

To study the colonies, the Actinomycetales are seeded on Sabouraud's 2 per cent dextrose agar and incubated at laboratory temperature and at 37° C. for 20 to 30 days.

Description of Species

Nocardia mexicana (Boyd and Crutchfield, 1921) Ota, 1928, was isolated for the first time in California from a Mexican subject. It is the species found in 95 per cent of actinomycotic mycetoma due to aerobes in Mexico.

It is readily cultivated. Growth begins on the sixth day on Sabouraud's 2 per cent dextrose medium at laboratory temperature, with the appearance of white, opaque points. After a time, the colony has the appearance of an acuminate disc, with wrinkled surface, with tendency to form radial folds. It appears dry. The color varies from yellowish to orange-red, with white powdery zones. The mycelium has an average diameter of 0.7 micron and fragments into coccoid and bacillary elements, the tendency toward fragmentation varying according to the strain. It is partially acid-fast and enzymatically active.

Nocardia brasiliensis (Lindenberg, 1909) Castellani and Chalmers, 1913, predominates in Brazil and has the same characteristics as *N. mexicana*. Despite the fact that, according to our criteria, *mexicana* is the same as *brasiliensis* (González Ochoa, 1945), we shall be conservative and mention these 2 species separately until such time as other authors corroborate our hypothesis.

Nocardia madurae (Vicent, 1894) Lachner-Sandoval, 1898, was first isolated in Africa and has been noted in all tropical and subtropical countries, under various names. It develops better at 37° C. It is of slow and meager growth, with heaped, wrinkled, moist colonies, whitish ivory to cream colored, waxy in appearance, which in successive transplantations and according to strain become pinkish, especially when cultivated at a temperature of 37° C.

he colony is very adherent to the medium, as opposed to *N. pelletieri*, with which it is easily nfused when the strain is pigmented. It does not present fragmentation and is not acid ast. It is enzymatically active.

Nocardia pelletieri (Laveran, 1906) Pinoy, 1912. This name was created for the fungus f mycetoma with red granules, found in Senegal. No culture was made in this case. Thiroux nd Pelletier (1912) isolated an actinomycete from a second case of red-granule mycetoma nd called it *A. pelletieri* of Laveran. It is frequently found in India and Egypt and on re occasions has been isolated in widely different countries. Its origin is confusing. ocardiae causing mycetomas with red granules and which grow into ruby-colored colonies re classified a *N. pelletieri*.

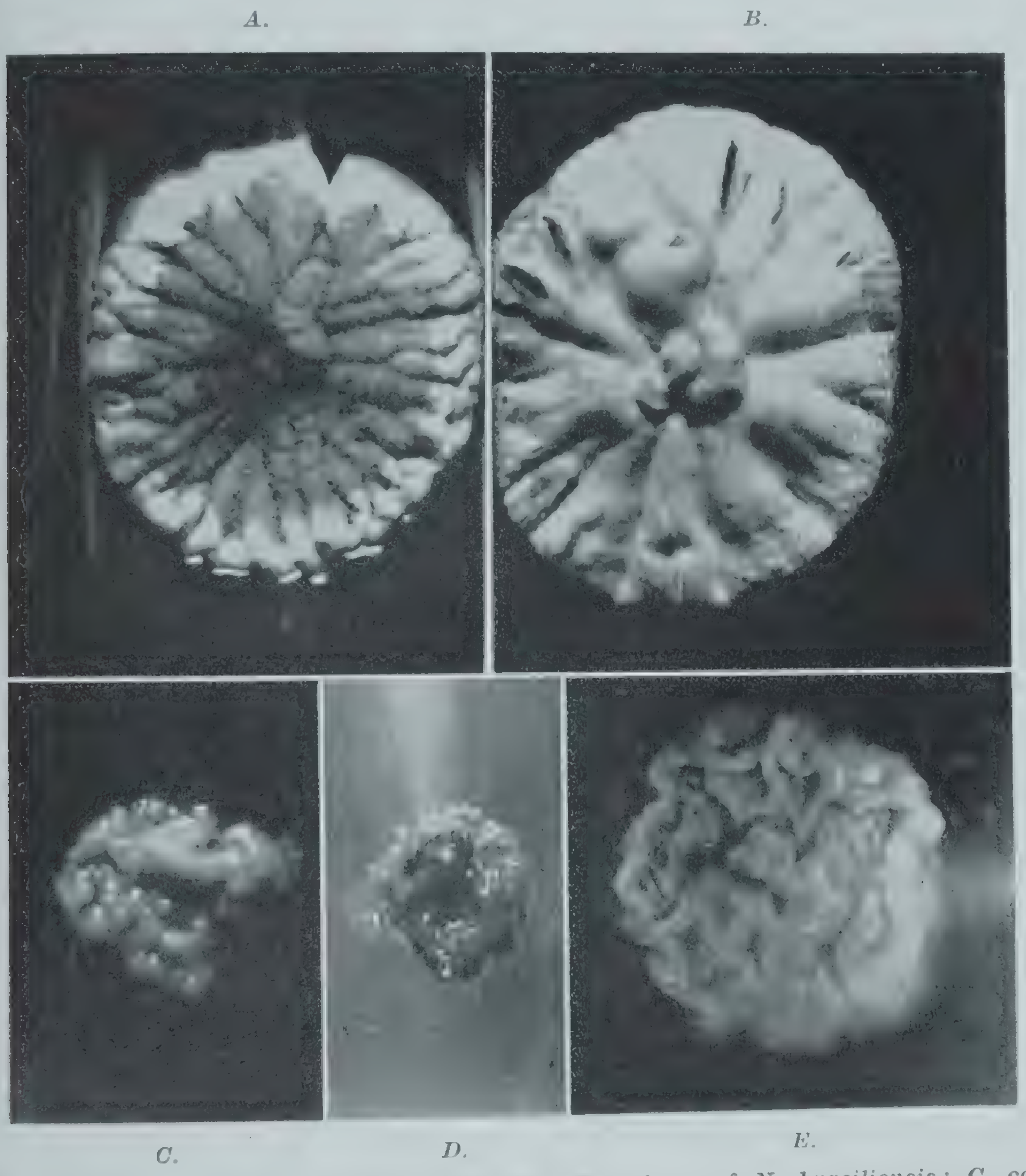


Fig. 393.—*A*, Colony of *Nocardia mexicana*; *B*, colony of *N. brasiliensis*; *C*, colony of *madurae*; *D*, colony of *N. pelletieri*; *E*, colony of *N. asteroides*; in Sabouraud's 2 per cent xtrose solution.

On Sabouraud's 2 per cent dextrose medium, the fungus produces small, heaped, rebriform, moist, and very soft colonies, slightly adherent to the medium and usually of a utiful coral pink to red color. With successive transplantations they lose this hue and come pink or orange. They do not show fragmentation and are not acid-fast. They have zymatic activity.

Nocardia asteroides (Eppinger, 1891) Blanchard, 1896, has been found in cerebral scesses, diffuse peritonitis, pulmonary mycosis, and very rarely in mycetoma of the limbs.

It shows great morphologic variations, as well as variations in the pigment of the coloni The colonies are usually soft, moist, glabrous, and wrinkled. The color varies from yellow ochre and red. They are verrucose or finely granular, rarely with white, powdery zones. T filaments are more slender than those of other aerobic Actinomycetales, being 0.3 to 0 micron, and show a decided tendency toward fragmentation, resulting especially in coccoi elements. The fungus is partially acid-fast and lacks enzymatic activity. Some strains ar pathogenic for guinea pigs.

Other Aerobic Mycetoma-Producing Actinomycetales.—In addition to the abov species, the validity and frequency of which are generally accepted, there are others which, although valid, have been isolated but once.

A great number of species exist, but we find no reference to them since no specimens are found in mycologic collections, and descriptions of them are so incomplete that we cannot judge the validity of the species.*

Maduromycotic Mycetoma. Maduromycosis

Just as in the etiology of actinomycotic mycetoma, the maduromycotic type is also studied according to color of the granules, although, as before, color is not constant in the same species. In maduromycosis the frequency of black granules is approximately equal to that of the white-yellowish varieties; there are also red granules, although these are extremely rare.

Fungi isolated from maduromycotic mycetoma belong to fungi imperfecti and Ascomycetes.

Among the first, the principal genera are Madurella, Monosporium, and Cephalosporium. In the Ascomycetes, the genera are Aspergillus, Penicillium, Sterigmatocystis. They are not so frequent. Almeida and Simoes Barbosa (1940) reported that, in addition to the genera mentioned, Acremonium and Candida have been observed in Brazil.

There is some confusion with respect to the etiologic agents of maduromycotic mycetoma. We shall not attempt to give all the fungi which have been described as the cause of this condition, since botanical knowledge concerning them is very limited, classification is arbitrary, and descriptions taken from authors who have isolated them are to a great extent incomplete. There are such fungi as *Torula jeanselmei* which, because of their rarity, will not be discussed. We shall confine ourselves to the genera Madurella, Monosporium, and Cephalosporium, the frequency of which, as well as proved data, justify their mention.

Madurella Brumpt, 1905.—Some 8 species are included in this genus. The most frequently found is *M. mycetomi* (Laveran, 1902). It has been isolated in India, North and West Africa, Madagascar, Brazil, Argentina, and other countries of South America. The granules are very hard, dark, verrucose, and filamentous and may be included in an interstitial substance. Cultivation of *M. mycetomi* is difficult, and the colonies develop slowly. They are very dark brown and discolor the medium. According to Langeron (1936), no sporiferous apparatus has been described in this fungus, so that its group is unknown. Arthrospores have been described. The remaining species of Madurella have been even less studied.

Monosporium Bonorden, 1851.—According to modern mycologic classification, species placed formerly in the genus Scedosporium are to be placed in the genus Monosporium. This genus produces whitish-yellow maduromycotic granules. The principal species is *M. apiospermum* Saccardo, 1911. It has been isolated in Brazil, Algeria, Tunisia, and Morocco, where it is very frequent; also in Puerto Rico, the United States, and Italy. The fast-growing colony is cottony, with tuft-like aerial growth which turns gray. A black pigment penetrates the agar. Microscopically, ramified, septate hyphae can be seen, 1 to 3 microns in diameter,

---

*Editor's note (O. F.): *Nocardia paraguayensis* (Almeida) Conant, 1947, forms glabrous, dark cream-colored colonies with white center, adherent and darker, projecting border, is not acid-fast, does not show fragmentation of the mycelium. The granules in the tissue are black with clubs.

anastomosed to form bundles of hyphae (coremia). Fertile hyphae are not differentiated from vegetative hyphae. Conidia are pyriform or oval, 6 to 10 microns by 3 to 8 microns, and appear along the side of the conidiophores or at the end. Generally they occur singly, rarely forming groups of 2 to 4 elements.

Cephalosporium Corda, 1839.—Species belonging to this genus have been isolated in Brazil, Puerto Rico, Mexico, and the United States. Some have been described simply as *Cephalosporium* sp., while others have been given definite names, so that we have *C. recifei*, Leão and Lobo, 1934, and *C. granulomatis* Weidman and Klingman, 1945. Colonies are filamentous, tufted, or appear like locks of hair, generally white or rose-colored. Microscopically they show septate, ramified filaments, grouped in coremia, 2 to 4 microns in diameter, with straight or curved conidiophores of varying length, with agglomerations of conidia at the ends. These are fusiform, elongated, 5 to 6 microns by 0.5 to 1.0 micron, straight or falciform.

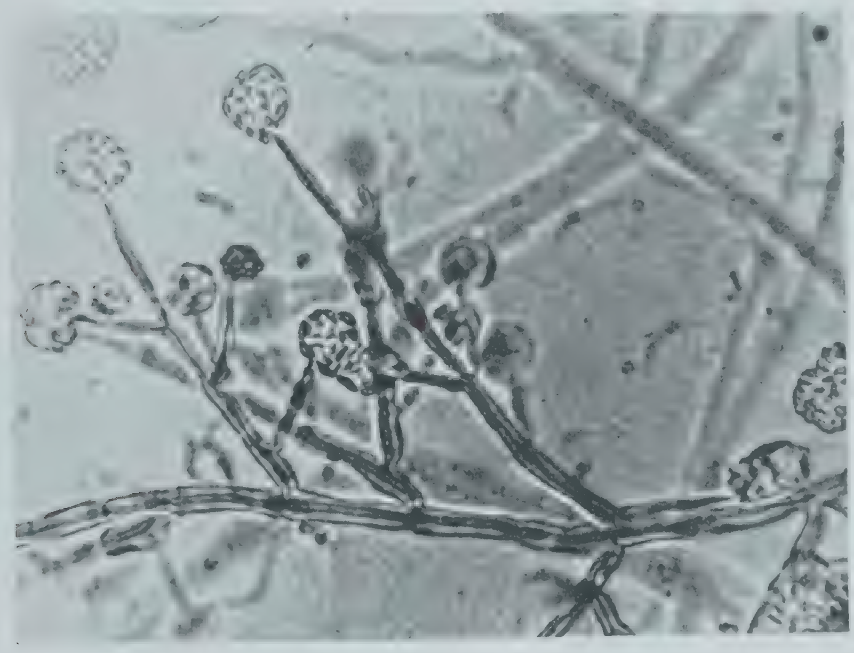


Fig. 394.—Sporulation heads of *Cephalosporium* sp. isolated from mycetoma.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The clinical data suffice to indicate a diagnosis of mycetoma in the greater number of cases. However, there are cases in which only a laboratory diagnosis can furnish the clue, and microscopic study of the granules is necessary in every case to ascertain that the disease is a mycetoma. The granules must also be studied to differentiate maduromycotic from actinomycotic mycetoma.

Laboratory diagnosis includes direct examination, culture, and histopathologic study.

Direct Examination.—Granules, or secretions from fistulae, are procured in the manner explained above and examined microscopically in a drop of Lugol solution. It is best to use the low-power dry objective, since in the great majority of cases the granules are large enough to be easily seen. They appear as round, kidney shaped, or lobulated, with an intensely stained outline. Under high power the 2 zones may be seen, the central zone and the zone of the "clubs," the characteristics of the first being different for actinomycotic and maduromycotic granules.

Culture.—Cultures are grown on Sabouraud's 2 per cent dextrose agar at laborato temperature. The aerobic Nocardia, as well as the different fungi of marudomycot mycetoma, develops under these conditions. The identifying characteristics of th principal species which cause mycetoma are given above.

Biopsy.—There is no definite histologic picture in mycetoma, and onl the finding of granules permits a diagnosis. The histologic reaction to thes fungi is described above.

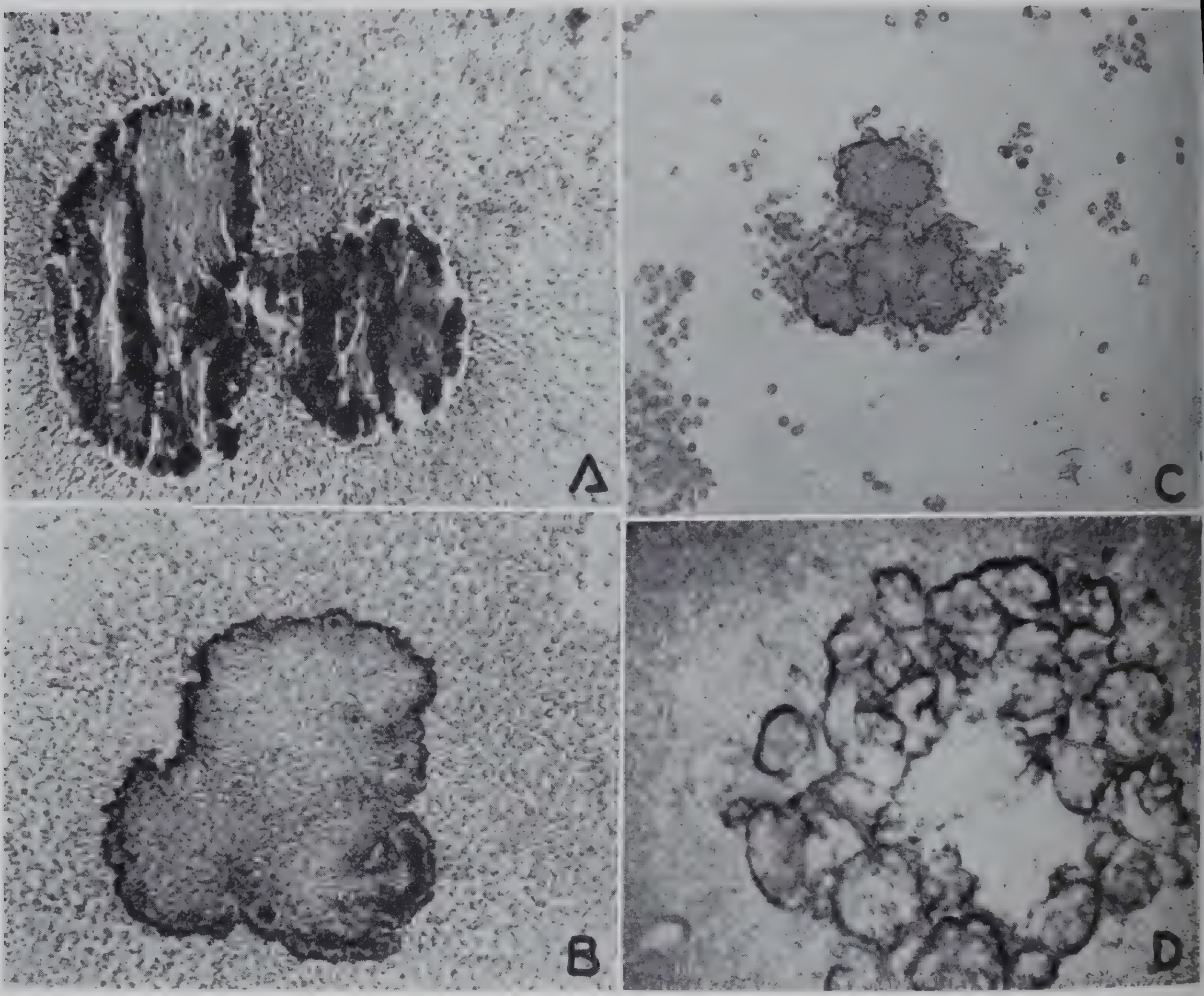


Fig. 395.—Granules of mycetoma observed by direct examination: *A*, maduromycotic granule; *B*, actinomycotic granule; *C* and *D*, actinomycotic granule formed by agglomeration of many small granules.

Animal Inoculation.—These fungi are practically not pathogenic to laboratory animals. Some authors have reported successful inoculations, but these are open to doubt, since they could not be repeated by other workers. Of the aerobic Actinomycetales, only some strains of *N. asteroides* are virulent for guinea pigs and rabbits (Drake and Henrici, 1943), with death due to formation of actinomycotic granules in the tissues. The various fungi of maduromycotic mycetoma, as well as other aerobic Actinomycetales, produce only foreign body reactions following inoculation, which tend to cure promptly.

Hematology.—In most of the advanced cases there is an increase in the sedimentation rate, moderate leucocytosis (10,000 to 12,000), neutrophilia, and decrease in the number of erythrocytes. Marked changes in the blood picture are those ordinarily seen in bacterially infected cases and possess the characteristics of the added infection.

Immunology.—Only tests of academic value have been published, demonstrating the fact that in the blood of patients with mycetoma there are antibodies which may fix complement. No standard antigens have been prepared for the test. Blood serum of patients precipitates extracts of the etiologic fungi. In rabbits infected with *N. asteroides,* an allergic state can be demonstrated with extracts of the fungus or proteins and purified polysaccharids extracted from the microorganism (Drake and Henrici, 1943).

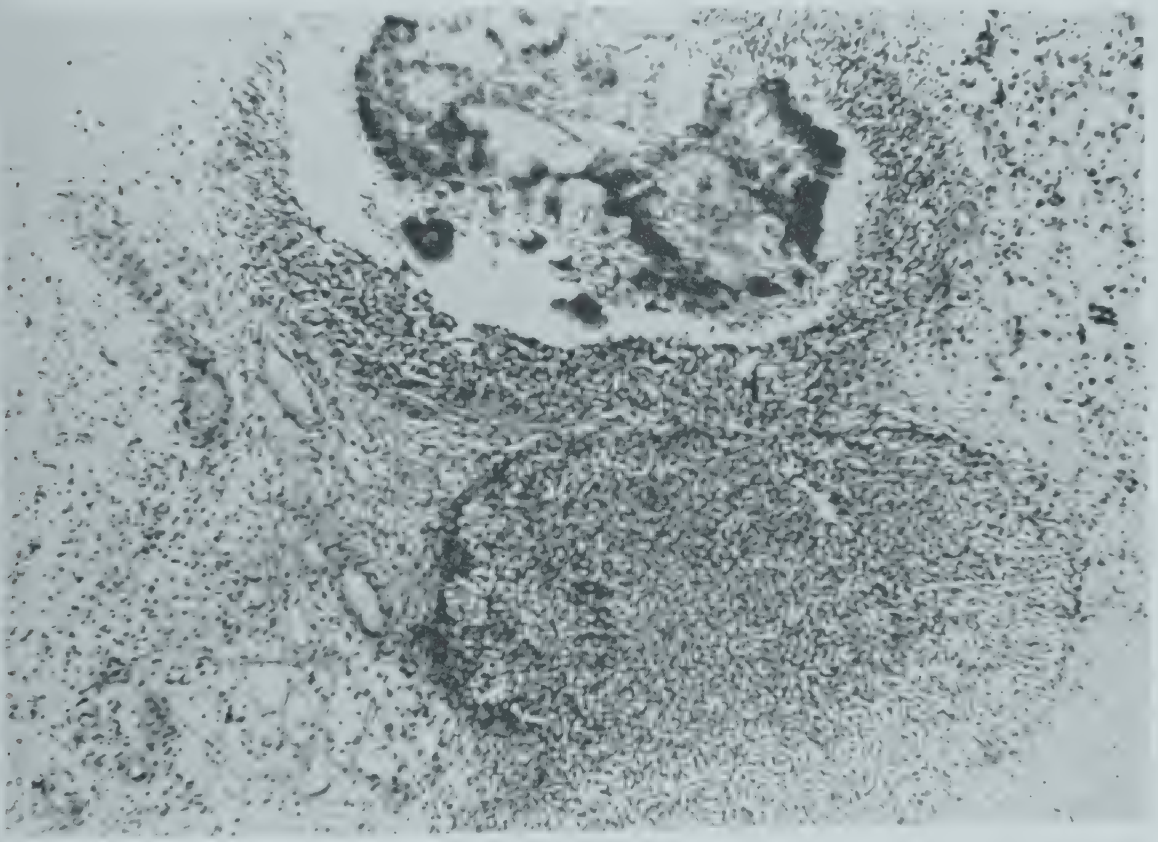


Fig. 396.—Actinomycotic granule lodged in an abscess.

TREATMENT

Treatment varies according to the stage of the disease and upon invasion or lack of invasion of the bone. Many different treatments have been proposed in the literature, indicating their lack of usefulness. Potassium and sodium iodides are indicated; some authors consider these as specifics, while others deny their usefulness. Without attempting to review all the proposed medications, we can state only that none, from thymol to x-rays, have given beneficial results in the many cases in which we have used them.

After reading various publications which appeared since Walker (1938) spoke of the curative action of sulfanilamide in infections due to *A. bovis,* we carried out in vitro experiments to learn whether or not pathogenic Actinomycetales are also susceptible to sulfonamides. We found that *N. asteroides* was completely inhibited by sulfanilamide in a concentration of 1:5,000, and showed partial inhibition even with a concentration as weak as 1:40,000 (González Ochoa and Zozaya, 1942). Later we saw that the combined treatment of sulfonamides and iodides gave good results in 2 cases of pulmonary infection by *N. asteroides.* This work was done by Benbow, Smith, and Grimso (1944).

A practical form of administration of this treatment consists in givin daily approximately 4 Gm. of sulfanilamide, sulfathiazole, or sulfadiazine, preferably the last, divided equally over a 24-hour period with 1 day of rest per week Treatment should be administered with all due caution and continued for as long as it is necessary to effect a cure (from 2 to 6 months). It must be discontinue if any toxic signs appear. At the same time we prescribe potassium iodide beginning with 0.50 Gm., and increasing the quantity daily until 4 to 5 Gm. are reached; divided into 3 doses a day, it is dissolved in milk and taken promptly after each meal.

If this treatment is tolerated by the patient, good results may be obtained under the stated conditions. We have observed that when treatment is suspended for several days and then renewed, the initial beneficial results are no longer obtained, so that it is important not to discontinue treatment if it is well tolerated by the patient.

In very advanced cases in which invasion of the bone generally exists, the treatment is not effective, and only amputation may control the disease. It is important to amputate sufficiently high above the infected area. If the surgeon is too conservative, the infection may reappear in the stump, and this time the mycetoma assumes a more active or invading form; in the latter case, all hope of surgical intervention is lost. It is not a rare occurrence to observe that, in mycetoma of the knee, if amputation is carried out in the median part of the thigh, it may be necessary later to carry out disarticulation of the reinfected stump; mycetoma of the abdomen follows, with invasion of the pelvis.

All usual measures for fortifying the patient's defenses are recommended: blood transfusion, rest, vitamin therapy, etc.

In summary, it may be stated that in the absence of invasion of the bone, the combined treatment of sulfonamides and potassium iodide affords hope of cure. In cases of invasion of bone, the indicated treatment is advised; improvement, and even arrest of the process, in not very active cases, may be obtained, but it must be kept in mind that surgical excision must be carried out far enough above the diseased tissue to get rid of the mycetoma.

The aerobic actinomycetes are not susceptible in vitro to penicillin and streptomycin. The sulfone drugs are active against them, but to a lesser degree than sulfonamides.*

CHROMOBLASTOMYCOSIS†

Synonyms.—Dermatitis verrucosa and chromomycosis.

Chromoblastomycosis has only recently been studied, with the first case published in 1915. It is found universally, although it definitely predominates in the tropics. Its correct name is still under discussion, although the generally accepted name is chromoblastomycosis. It is believed to be quite a common infection, since, shortly after it had been identified, the disease was reported from many different regions.

---

*Editor's note (O. F.): Recently antibiotics have been found effective. The choice of them depends on the causative agent.

†See also Chapter 51.

DEFINITION

Chromoblastomycosis is a decidedly chronic affection with nodular cutaneous lesions of varied appearance, although fundamentally of a verrucose and papillomatose aspect. It is generally localized in the lower limbs. It may be caused by 3 species of fungi: *Hormodendrum pedrosoi, H. compactum,* and *Phialophora verrucosa.*

HISTORY

Lane, in 1915, described a new cutaneous disease in the United States, caused by a fungus which was classified by Medlar (1915) as *Phialophora verrucosa.*

The first observation in South America was made by Pedroso in São Paulo in 1911, and later reported by Pedroso and Gomes. The disease was named ''blastomycosis nigra'' when published in 1920. The agent was identified as *P. verrucosa.* The culture obtained from the first Brazilian case was studied by Brumpt, who placed the fungus in the genus Hormodendrum. His work was not published until 1922; the fungus was then given the name *Hormodendrum pedrosoi.*

Since the Brazilian cases differed from those observed in the United States, and since the organisms which had been isolated also differed, the diseases were thought to be dissimilar. *P. verrucosa* was later isolated, in Brazil, from cases which were clinically identical with the first, and cases due to *H. pedrosoi,* which were very similar to those produced by *P. verrucosa,* were found in the United States. This led to the conclusion that there were several types of clinical appearances of chromoblastomycosis and that it was produced by 2 different fungi: *Hormodendrum pedrosoi* and *Phialophora verrucosa.* It has since been proved that only one nosologic entity, with different clinical aspects, is involved. To the causal agents has been added *H. compactum,* isolated by Carrión (1935) in Puerto Rico.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

Lesions are limited to the skin and the subcutaneous tissue. They are generally localized on the lower limbs, the foot and leg, less frequently on the upper limb, although lesions may be found in any part of the skin. They have been observed in such areas as the gluteal region, the face, neck, etc. Lesions may be verrucose, papillomatous, sometimes ulcerated, of a slow, chronic development. Cases of 40 years' duration have been described.

Prognosis is good. It is not a painful condition, but it is sometimes accompanied by slight pruritus. The fungus does not invade deeper structures and does not become generalized. It appears to spread by continuity, with the exception of 2 or 3 cases with metastases, but in these the possibility of autoinoculation must be considered.

The disease begins with a papule or nodule, sometimes with a verruga which in certain cases ulcerates and becomes covered by papillomatous crusts. Later, additional warty growth appears, similar to the first. Through confluence of these elements, irregularly scattered vegetations result which may cover large areas, even the whole limb. The verrucose vegetations in some cases resemble dirty gray cauliflower. In some sites, pus accumulations with a marked putrid

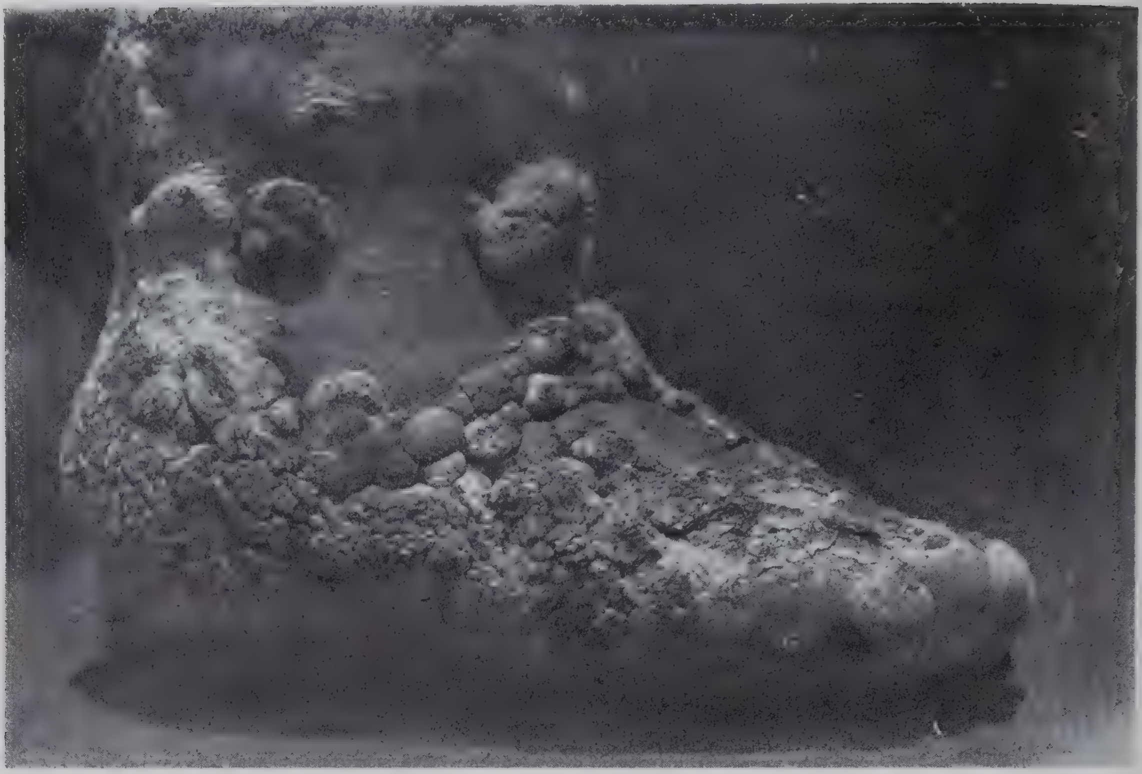


Fig. 397.—Chromoblastomycosis, verrucose type, showing hypertrophic and hyperkeratose zones, some isolated, others forming large plaques. (Photograph of González Chávez.)

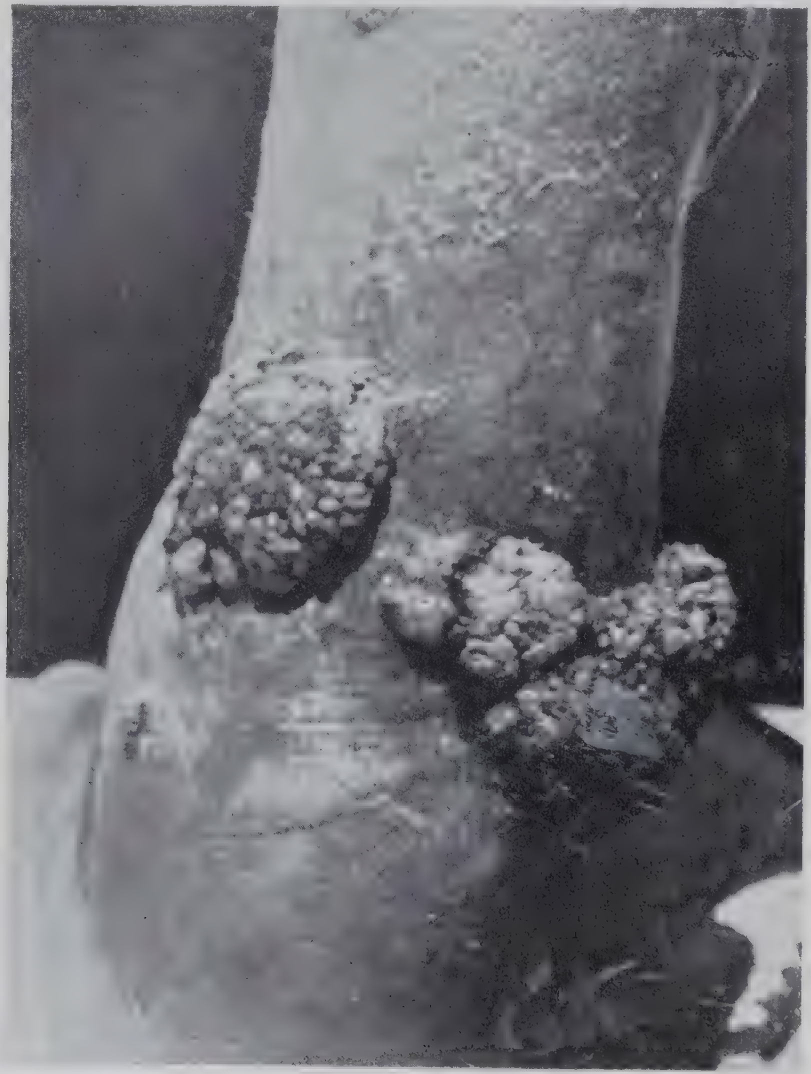


Fig. 398.—Lesions of chromoblastomycosis simulating tuberculosis verrucosa cutis.

odor are observed. In others, there is spontaneous remission, leaving atrophic, retracted, white scars. The edges of the lesion are generally well defined and are surrounded by normal skin. There are no lymph gland reactions except those due to secondary infection. The disease does not attack the general health of the patient but produces invalidism due to the great hyperkeratosis. Sometimes elephantiasis develops.

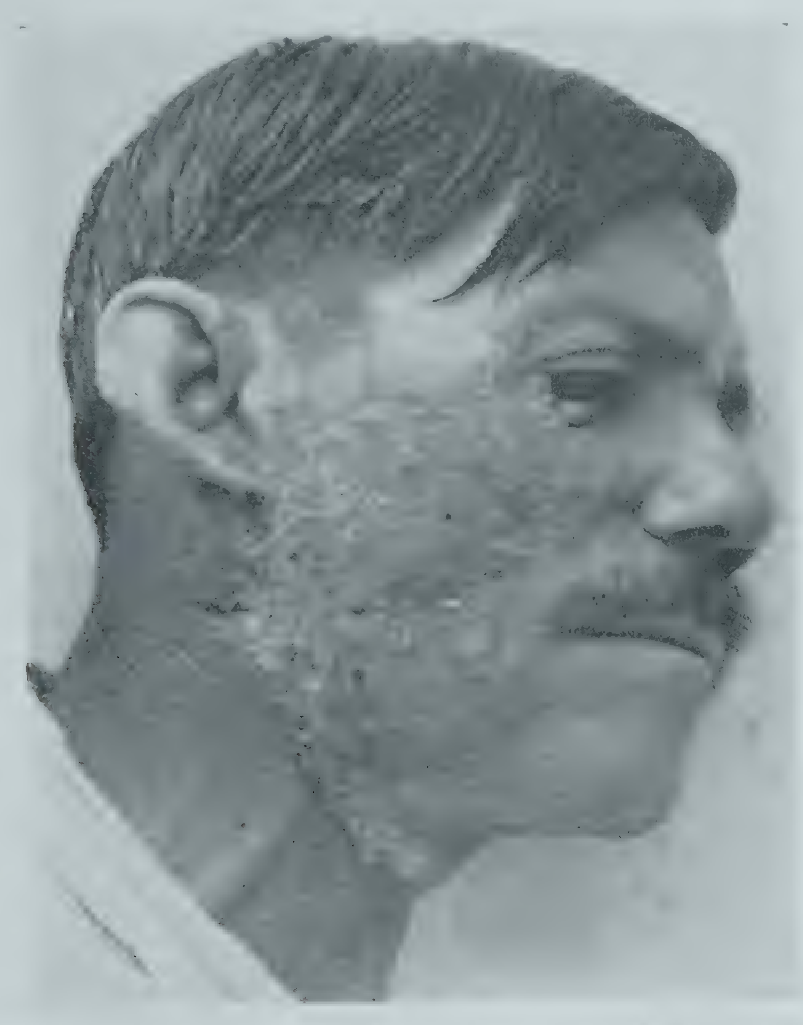


Fig. 399.—Chromoblastomycosis, syphiloid type. Lesion consists of serpiginous erythemato-squamous zones simulating an old syphiloderma. (Photograph of González Chávez.)

Pardo Castelló et al. (1942) discussed the clinical manifestations found in 31 cases observed in Cuba. They divided these into 5 different types: verrucose, tuberculoid, syphiloid, psoriasiform, and cicatricial and elephantiac as follows:

Verrucose or Papillomatous.—This type is the most frequently found. It is commonly localized on the lower limbs as elevated, hyperkeratotic, hypertrophic zones which may form isolated patches 5 to 7 cm. in diameter or large confluent masses. These zones are made up of small nodules or papules which are scaly in the beginning, later hypertrophy, and produce verrucose zones. The color varies from light brown to dark red, depending upon the quantity of keratotic material accumulated on the surface. When keratosis is not pronounced, the zones tend to be reddish and soft. In newly formed lesions, there is a collection of yellowish-white thick or fluid, sometimes sanguineous or fetid pus. This is due to secondary infection. Sometimes frambesia-like zones ris abruptly on an apparently normal skin, or inflamed and cicatricial areas form between the hypertrophic masses, giving the appearance of verrucose rings The lesion is usually unilateral and may extend over the entire limb, or it may be limited to an area of a few centimeters.

Tuberculoid.—This type is similar in appearance to tuberculosis verrucosa cutis or sarcoid. The lesions are usually limited to hypertrophic nodules with erythematous and slightly scaly areolas. In most cases clinical differentiation from tuberculosis verrucosa cutis and sarcoid may be very difficult. Laboratory investigations alone may identify the disease. This form may be less chronic than the verrucose type.

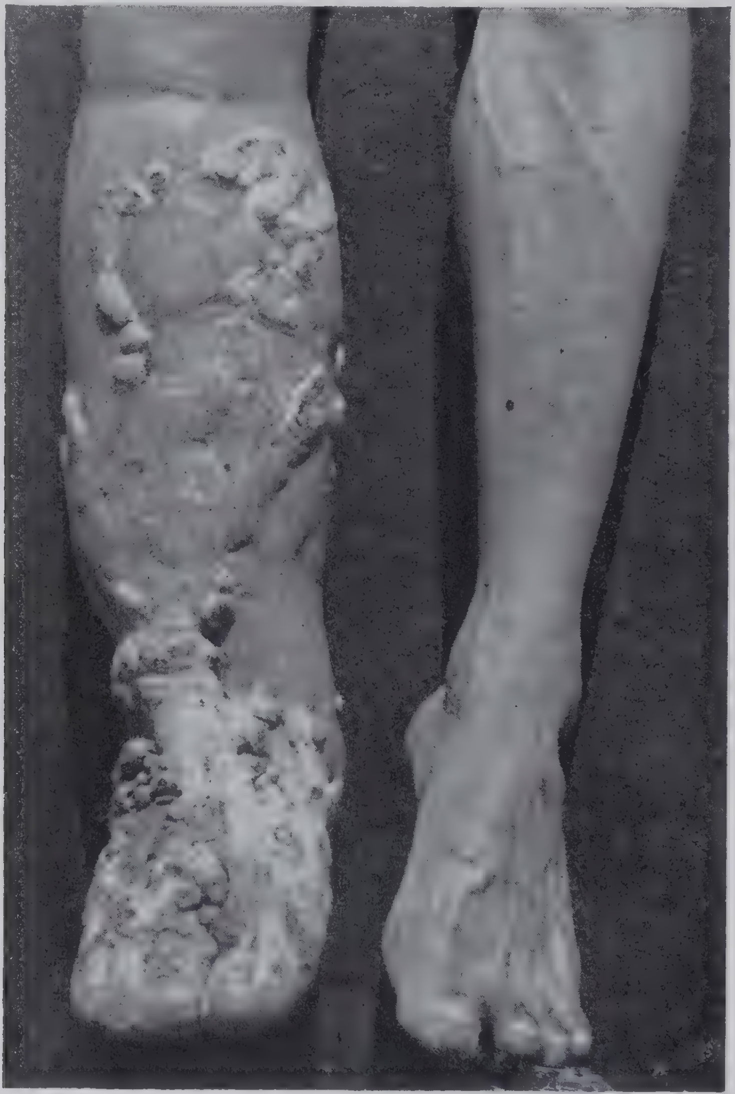


Fig. 400.—Extensive zones of verrucosities and atrophic cicatrices in a greatly enlarged leg, the cicatricial and elephantiac type of chromoblastomycosis. (Photograph of González Chávez.)

Psoriasiform.—This form is thought to be rather rare. It consists of one or several flat "plaques" of inflammatory superficial infiltration covered with shiny, very adherent scales similar in appearance to areas of psoriasis; however, the lesions are not symmetrical and do not bleed easily when scratched. When the scales are removed, short papillary projections may be observed under them. There are no verrucosities or abscesses in this clinical form.

Syphiloid.—In this clinical type the lesions are scarce and are sometimes restricted to only one group. They are formed by small, flat, scaly, and slightly erythematous nodules which are grouped in rings or in a serpiginous form, which may ulcerate, simulating old syphiloderma or syphilide. The lesions progress excentrically, leaving depigmented atrophic scars. No warts are observed, but rusts cover the ulcerations.

Cicatricial and Elephantiac Type.—This clinical type is found in the legs. The lesions are very extensive and are formed by verrucose zones and zones of atrophic cicatrices due to the spontaneous healing of the warts as well as disseminated ulcerations and abscesses. The leg increases greatly in size in some parts, usually in the foot, and takes on the characteristic appearance of "mossy foot" due to the accumulations of dirty blackish growth and keratotic material. This elephantiasis is due to stasis in the lymphatic circulation and fibrosis. It represents the final stage of some verrucotic types with a tendency to fibrosis.

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

Chrombolastomycosis is a cosmopolitan disease, although it is more frequently observed in tropical and subtropical regions. A large number of cases have been described in Brazil, Puerto Rico, and Cuba. It has been observed in the United States, as well as in Canada, Argentina, Uruguay, Paraguay, Venezuela, Panama, Costa Rica, Santo Domingo, Guatemala, Colombia, and Mexico. It has also been reported in European Russia, Japan, Rhodesia, Algeria, and the Union of South Africa, Netherlands, East Indies, and Australia.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Incidence.—There are only 151 cases reported (Carrión and Silva, 1947).

Age.—Most cases are observed between the ages of 30 to 50 years. The lowest observed age is 12 years and the highest 77 years.

Sex.—It is noteworthy that this disease is seen almost exclusively in males. There are only 4 cases of chromoblastomycosis in females in the literature.

Race.—Rural inhabitants are particularly affected, perhaps due to greater contact with vegetation, also to the custom of not wearing footgear.

Endemicity.—There are no defined endemic zones. The fact that numerous cases have been described in certain geographic regions such as São Paulo, Puerto Rico, and Cuba may be due to the greater interest in this disease in these places.

ETIOLOGY

The fungi which cause chromoblastomycosis, just as those which produce other deep mycoses, differ morphologically in the parasitic state (organism which attacks) from the parasite in the saprophytic state (culture). In the human body, the fungus takes the form of rounded cells, single or in groups, of a brown color, sometimes septate, and with a thick wall. The size varies in tissue, exudates, and scales from 5 to 15 microns. These elements are known as "sclerotic cells" of Medlar.

In a histologic section they are observed in small abscesses, in giant cells, and among connective tissue cells. Sometimes they appear corrugated.

In the pus, and especially in the scales where they are more readily served, they present the characteristics described above except that they a larger, sometimes as large as 30 microns. Frequently septate filaments a observed growing out from these cells.

At the present time it is accepted that chromoblastomycosis may be caus by 3 kinds of fungi: *Hormodendrum pedrosoi* Brumpt, 1922, *Phialophora ve rucosa* Medlar, 1915, *Hormodendrum compactum* Carrión, 1935. The san mycologic elements in the parasitic state are observed in all of these specie the "sclerotic cells" of Medlar. There is no appreciable difference in the cli ical modality in relation to the causal species.

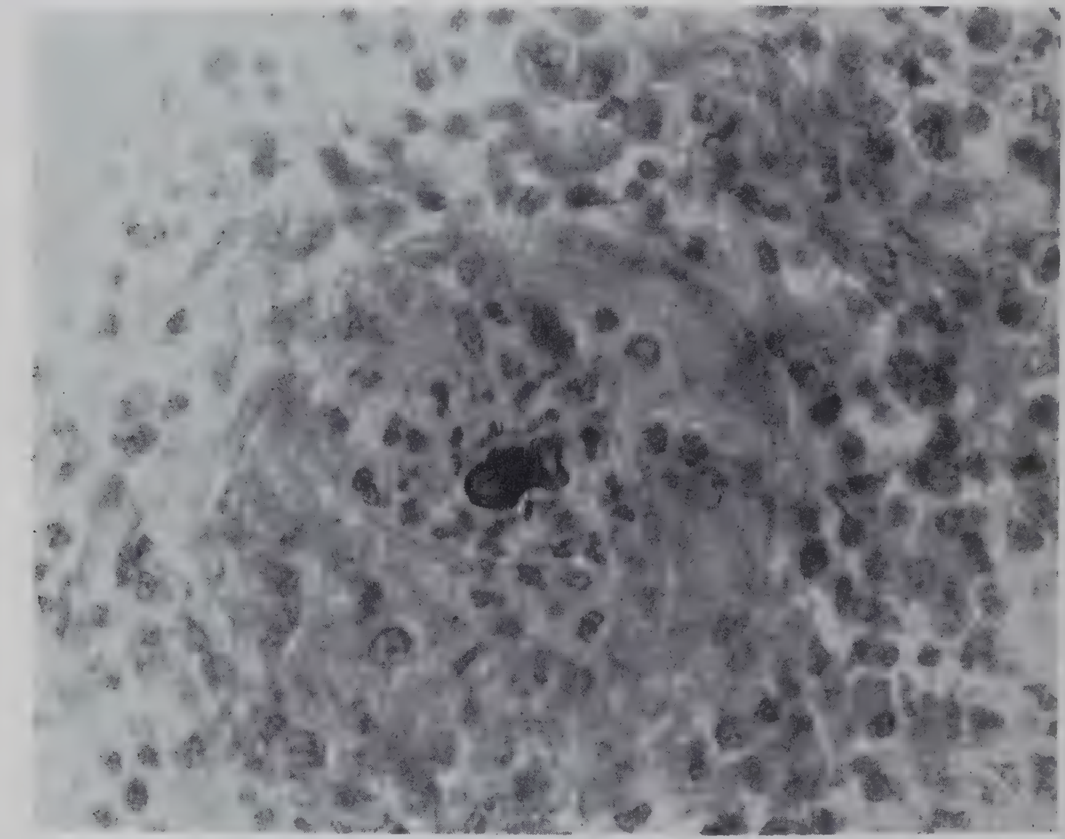


Fig. 401.—Parasite of chromoblastomycosis in a histologic section.

Cultures are easily obtained in the media generally used in mycology. On Sabouraud's 2 per cent dextrose medium, the development of these fungi begins approximately on the eighth day, with the appearance of small blackish accumulations which, when they mature, are morphologically little different in the 3 species. Cultures show filaments and conidia in special groupings; the colony has a downy appearance, dark olive green to dark brown.

Hormodendrum pedrosoi.—This fungus, the most frequent cause of chromoblastomycosis, has been isolated in all regions where this mycosis has been seen. The colonies resemble a heaped disc with a central protuberance or mammilla. The surface is downy, from gray with a greenish tint to dark olive green or blackish-brown. Beneath the downy surface is a compact base, blackish, of muddy appearance, which may be observed by withdrawing a portion of the colony with a platinum loop.

Microscopically are observed filaments, rectilinear or slightly undulant, ramified, with thick partitions which separate parts of varying lengths, containing a greenish-brown protoplasm. They vary from 2 to 4 microns in diameter. The reproductory apparatus is formed by conidiophores of various lengths, and chains of conidia, simple or ramified, the latter showing aborescence. Conidia establish contact with each other by means of small prominences or a thickening in the membrane called "disjunctors." Conidia are joined to the conidiophore by means of an elongated cell which sometimes has the appearance of a shield, and in which the "disjunctors" are more apparent. This cell, sometimes septate, is called the primary lement. They vary from 4 to 8 microns in length by 2 to 3 microns in width. The first conidia are sometimes oval, tending to become spherical as they grow away from the primary element, and decreasing somewhat in size. They are 2 to 3 microns by 3 to 5 microns. Their color is greenish brown, or olive green. They break down readily and are easily separated from their characteristic grouping.

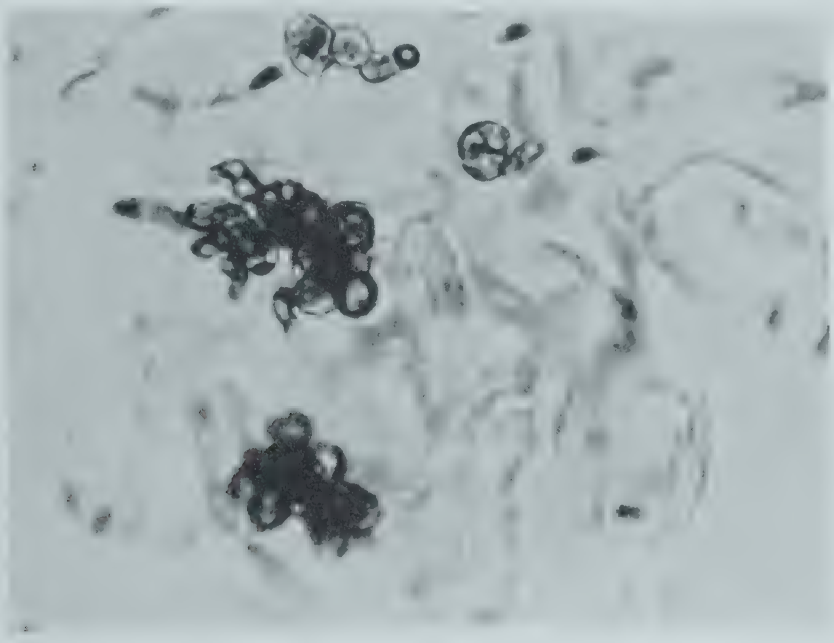


Fig. 402.—"Sclerotic cells" of Medlar, seen in scales in direct examination as rounded, partitioned forms, isolated or in groups.

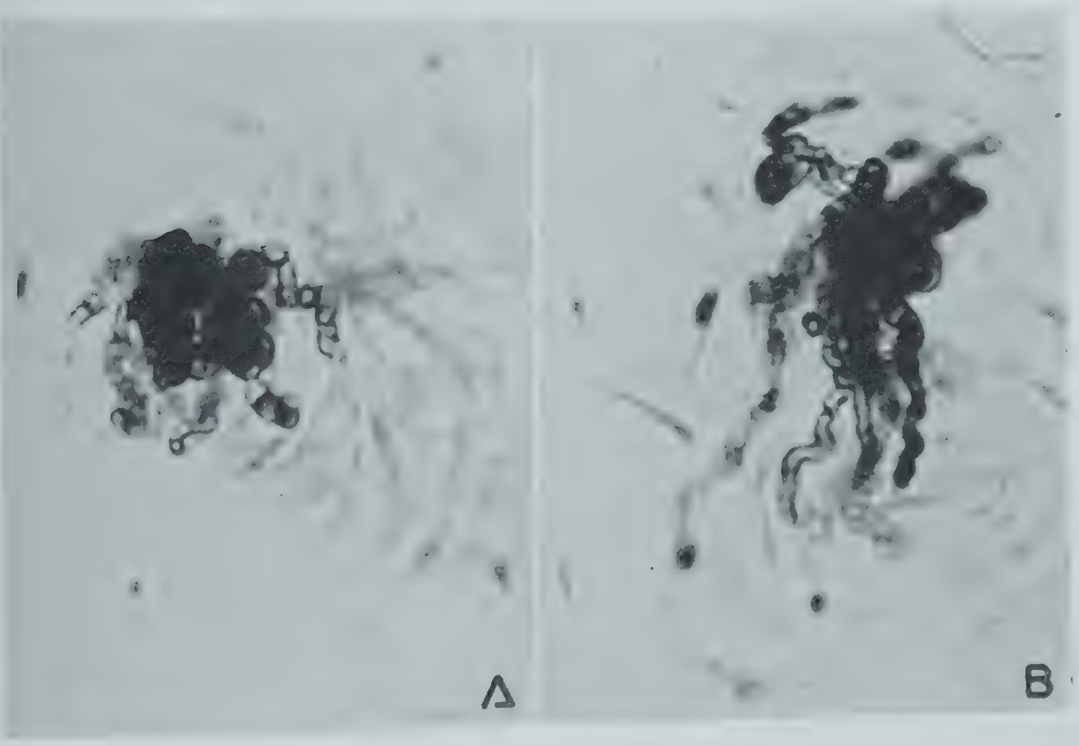


Fig. 403.—*A* and *B*, Parasitic aspect of *Hormodendrum pedrosoi.* In addition to dark rounded cells, there are walled filaments starting from these.

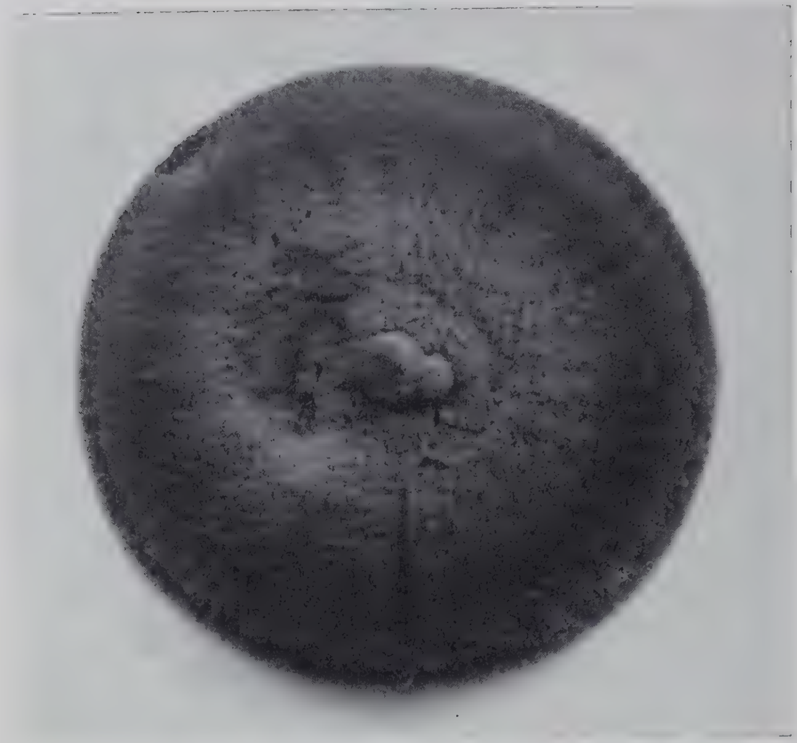


Fig. 404.—Colony of *Hormodendrum pedrosoi* in Sabouraud's 5 per cent dextrose solution.

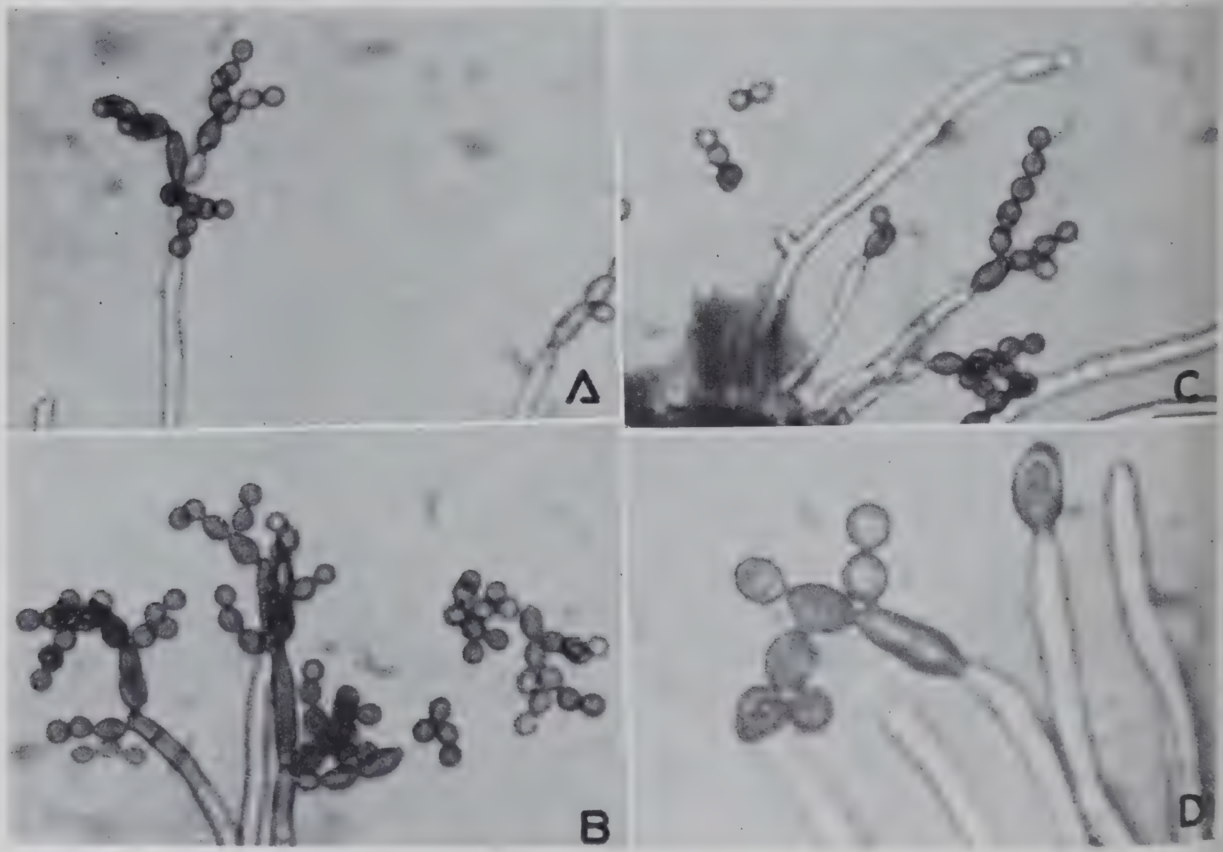


Fig. 405.—*A-D,* Sporulation, Hormodendrum type, in *Hormodendrum pedrosoi.*

In addition to the above type of sporulation called ''Hormodendrum'' type, the ''Acrotheca'' or ''Fonsecaea'' and ''Phialaphora'' types may be found, dependent upon the different strains and the culture media in which they are grown.

In the ''Acrotheca'' or ''Fonsecaea'' type of sporulation, the spores form at the end, or at the sides of the swollen, club-shaped conidiophore.

The ''Phialophora'' type, which will be described in more detail when discussing the species *P. verrucosa,* is characterized by the production of semiendogenous conidia from flask-shaped conidiophores with terminal cups. This form of sporulation has been demonstrated by Emmons and Carrión (1936) in *Hormodendrum pedrosoi,* indicating the close relationship hich exists between *H. pedrosoi* and *P. verrucosa,* although they are considered as belonging different genera. This similarity of sporulation has resulted in a suggestion by several uthors that the fungi be included in the same genus. Binford, Hess, and Emmons (1944) uggested that the genus Phialophora be extended to include the 3 species described as causal ents of chromoblastomycosis; these would then be named *P. verrucosa, P. pedrosoi,* and *. compactum.* Until such time as this suggestion is generally accepted, continued use of the lassical terminology will prevent confusion.

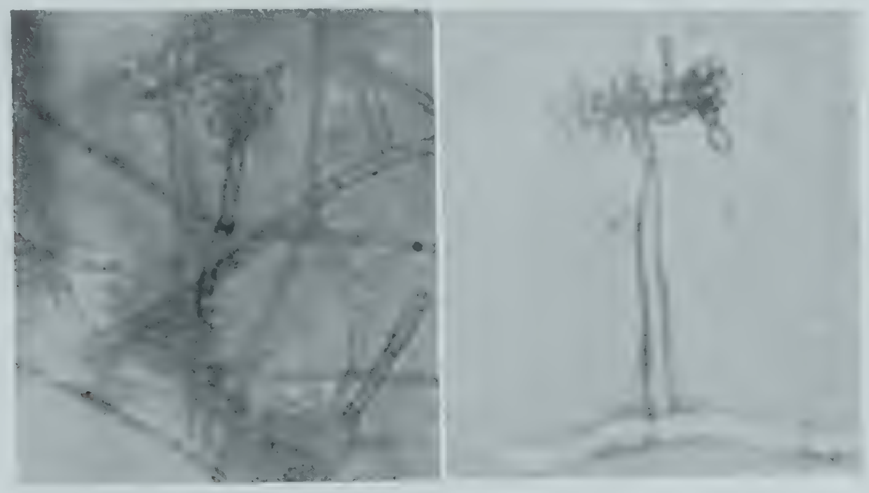


Fig. 406.—Sporulation, "Acrotheca or Fonsecaea" type, of *Hormodendrum pedrosoi.*

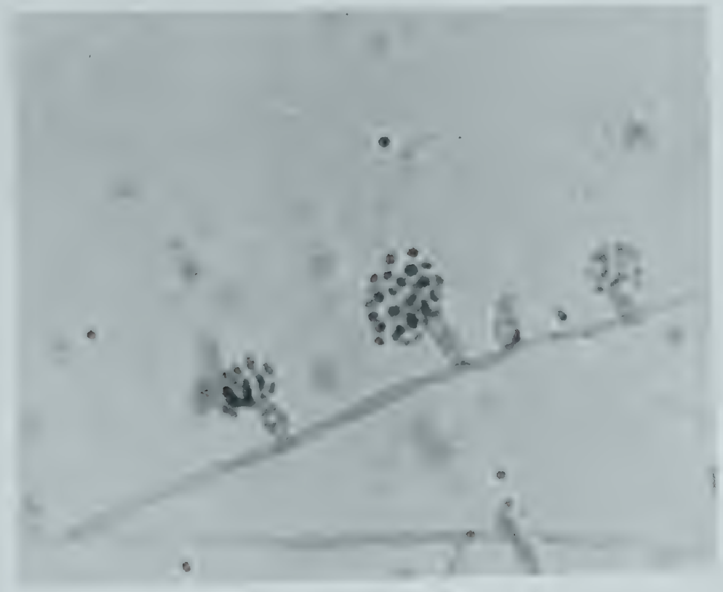


Fig. 407.—Sporulation, Phialophora type, of *Hormodendrum pedrosoi.*

Carrión and Silva (1947) described 4 varieties of *H. pedrosoi* according to the various roportions in which the 3 types of sporulation may be represented in different strains. The varieties are: variety *typicus*, with ''Fonsecaea'' type most highly developed, ''Hormo drum'' scant, and ''Phialophora'' rare; var. *cladosporioides*, in which ''Hormodendr sporulation is highly developed, ''Fonsecaea'' scant, and ''Phialophora'' rare; *phialophorica* with ''Phialophora'' sporulation predominant, ''Fonsecaea'' scant, ''Hormodendrum'' absent; var. *communis*, the most frequent variety, in which spor tion of ''Hormodendrum'' and ''Fonsecaea'' types are always abundant, but ''Phialopho type is scant.

Hormodendrum compactum Carrión, 1935.—This species is similar to *H. pedrosoi*; has been isolated only twice, from one case in Puerto Rico and another in the United Sta Armed Forces in Tennessee. Three types of sporulation are found, just as in *H. pedros* The dominant form is the ''Hormodendrum'' type, while the ''Fonsecaea'' type is not c spicuously abundant, and the ''Phialophora'' type is scant.

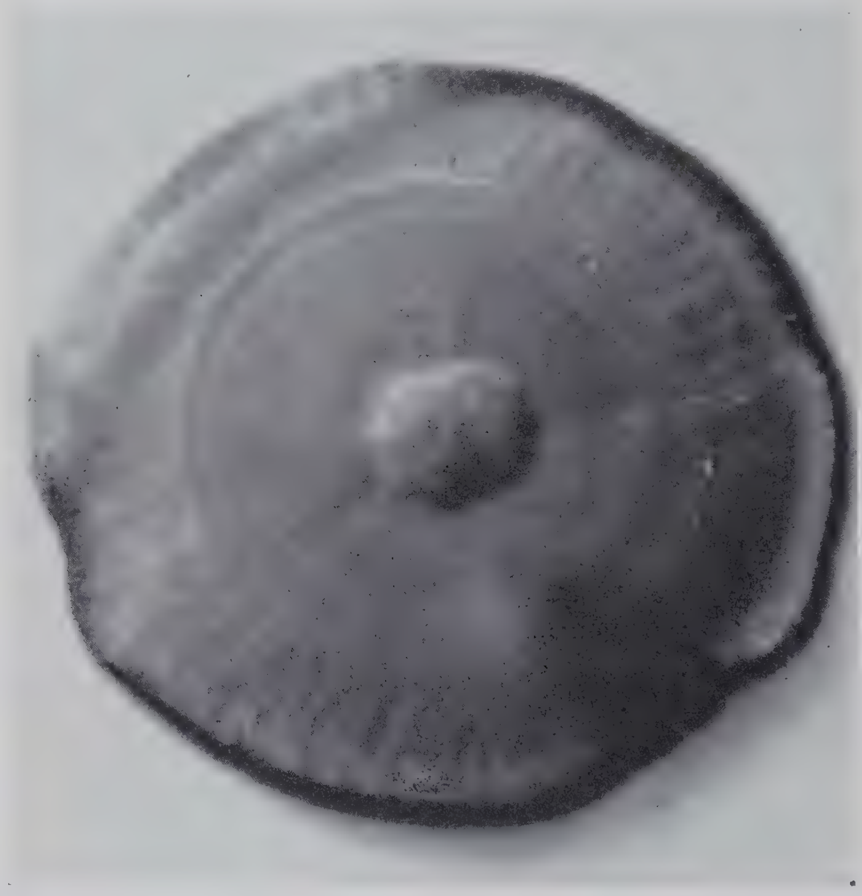


Fig. 408.—Colony of *Phialophora verrucosa* in Sabouraud's 2 per cent dextrose solution.

H. compactum differs from *H. pedrosoi* by having shorter and broader, subspherical, no readily dissociated, and more compactly grouped conidia, without ''disjunctors.'' The culture develops more slowly. It is roughly conical and of a dark olive green color. Its border i irregular and indented.

Phialophora verrucosa Medlar, 1915.—This species produces somewhat conical colonie which grow slowly, like those of Hormodendrum, dark brown or blackish, with a fine velvety or felt-like olivaceous or gray aerial mycelium. There are great variations in the color of the colonies and in the size of spores.

Under the microscope, short conidiophores may be observed sprouting laterally o terminally from the mycelium near the partitions. They are cup shaped or flask shaped (phialides), 3 to 4 microns in diameter by 4 to 10 microns in length. The conidia are produced singly within the conidiophores or phialides by a process similar to budding, and when they emerge they are retained in groups by a mucilaginous substance, forming rounded accumulations at the orifice of the phialide. Conidia are oval, 2 microns wide by 4 microns long.

P. verrucosa presents only the type of sporulation described. It is found less frequently than *H. pedrosoi* as a cause of chromoblastomycosis and has been isolated in the United States, Algeria, and Uruguay.

Reproduction.—The appearance of the parasites in the tissues in the form of septate cells suggests that its reproduction is by cellular division and not by budding. Upon this fact is based the opinion that the name *chromoblastomycosis* is incorrect, since this name suggests that the causative fungus reproduces by gemmation.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Diagnosis is readily made in most cases. Three methods are used: direct examination, culture, and biopsy.

Direct Examination.—Scales, pus, or thin sections of corneous material obtained with a razor blade are placed between slides in a drop of 10 per cent potassium hydroxide or in Amann's chlorolactophenol. This preparation is carefully heated until bubbles begin to appear, then observed under the high-power objective, since the parasitic elements are about 10 microns in diameter.

All species which produce chromoblastomycosis will be seen as rounded, dark-brown cells, sometimes septate, frequently with a double wall. In some patients short filaments are seen at the side of the partitioned cells, or emerging from them. These are also brown.

Culture.—The same material used in the direct examination, or fragments of affected tissue, are seeded on Sabouraud's 2 per cent dextrose medium, and the tubes are kept at laboratory temperature. We have obtained good results by passing the parasitized cells through alcohol for a few minutes before inoculating the culture medium, as suggested by some authors, to prevent bacterial contamination. Growth begins on the sixth to tenth day and takes the form of blackish accumulations which later assume the morphology described above.

Biopsy.—The diagnosis of chromoblastomycosis is frequently made by biopsy in conditions which had been mistaken for tuberculosis or syphilis. In small abscesses or within giant cells, rounded brownish cells may be seen. These are the parasitic elements. In some cases it is difficult to find the parasite, so that a large number of sections must be examined before chromoblastomycosis is eliminated from consideration.

Inoculation of Laboratory Animals.—Among the different animals tested to reproduce the disease, rats and mice are the most susceptible to infection with *H. pedrosoi* and *P. verrucosa*. The infection may be effected by the intraperitoneal, the subcutaneous, and intratesticular routes.

Hematology.—There are no hematologic changes due to the presence of the fungus in tissues. Leucocytosis, anemia, and other anomalies of the blood presented by some patients are due to accompanying infections.

IMMUNOLOGY

As in other deep mycoses, the subject of immunology has scarcely been touched. In chromoblastomycosis the necessity of immunologic tests for diagnosis is less than in other mycoses since lesions are not in the viscera or inaccessible places, but are exclusively cutaneous, and direct examination and culture and biopsy are sufficient to identify the mycosis.

Complement Fixation.—Conant and Martin (1937) demonstrated that t serum of rabbits immunized with *H. pedrosoi* and *P. verrucosa* contains speci complement-fixing antibodies. Conant et al. (1944) noted that the serum of subject infected with *H. pedrosoi* fixed complement with antigen prepared fr the causative fungus as well as with antigens from various strains of the sa species and of *P. verrucosa.* The reaction was negative with antigens from oth pathogenic fungi such as *B. dermatitidis* and *S. schenckii,* and from saprophyt species of Hormodendrum.

Intradermal Reaction.—Very few data exist concerning cutaneous r actions with antigens prepared from the etiologic agent. Baliña et al. (193 reported a strongly positive reaction in a patient suffering from chromoblastomycosis, using a mixed antigen of *H. pedrosoi* and *P. verrucosa.*

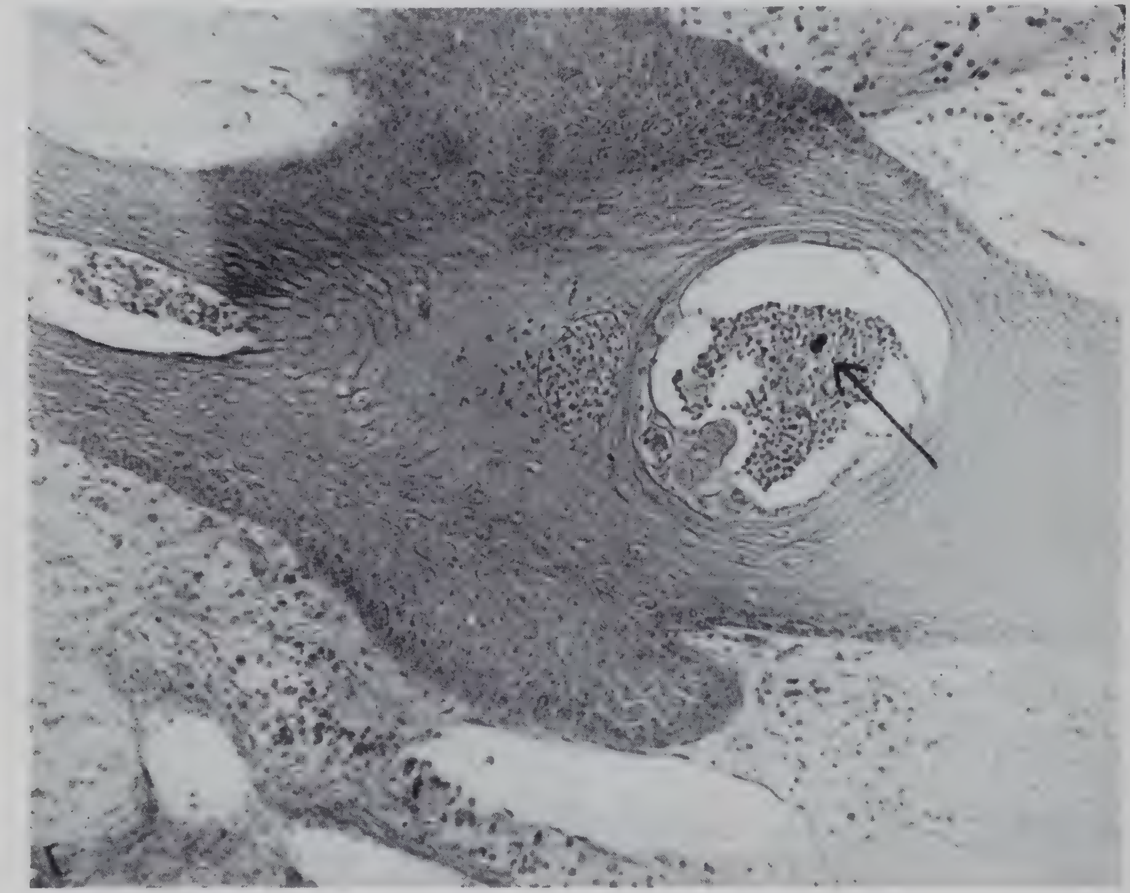


Fig. 409.—Histologic section from a case of chromoblastomycosis showing parasites within rete pegs layer and microabscess.

PATHOLOGY

There is a uniform criterion concerning tissue reaction which determines the presence of the fungus; however, one must insist that mycosis can be diagnosed only by finding the parasitic elements. Almeida (1939), Pardo Castelló et al. (1945), Simson (1946), and others report acanthosis and hyperkeratosis as the most constant lesions of the epidermis; in the cutis are numerous small abscesses formed by polymorphonuclear neutrophilic leucocytes, sometimes eosinophiles and giant cells, some of which contain parasites. The lesions are granulomatous with pseudotubercles.

In all clinical types there is acanthosis, more noticeable in the verrucose and papillomatous cases. Hyperkeratosis and parakeratosis are common. Sometimes epithelial hyperplasia is very great, and the interpapillary columns penetrate deeply into the cutis, and intraepithelial abscesses may be present. The parasite, which is more frequently found in the cutis, may be seen in the hyperplastic epidermic covering within the abscess.

The corium is greatly thickened, with polymorphonuclear neutrophilic cell infiltration with parasites frequently seen between them. There are also lymphocytes, epithelioid cells, and giant cells (pseudotubercles). Plasma cells and Russell bodies are frequently seen. The miliary abscesses may take on a tuberculoid aspect with epithelioid cells and lymphocytes surrounding giant cells of the Langhans type. Around them are seen infiltrates with polymorphonuclear neutrophiles, lymphocytes, eosinophiles, and plasma cells.

Simson (1946) considers the inflammatory process which results from the presence of the fungus to be basically a reticuloendotheliosis and that the most characteristic part of this process is the formation of 2 types of nodules within unspecific inflammatory tissue. The nodule most frequently observed is composed of reticuloendothelial cells, and at times contains certain giant cells which may or may not contain parasites. The other type consists of a central area of polymorphonuclear neutrophiles surrounded by a zone of reticuloendothelial cells. The nodules of chronic lesions resemble tubercles, but the absence of acid-fast bacilli, and especially the presence of the infecting fungus, are diagnostic.

PROGNOSIS

Chromoblastomycosis is not a fatal condition. Advanced or very chronic cases are not curable. In localized lesions and in the beginning of the disease, adequate treatment may result in its disappearance.

TREATMENT

When the lesion is incipient and therefore restricted, treatment by electrocoagulation or surgical excision should be carried out.

As in many of the deep mycoses, sodium or potassium iodide produces marked improvement, but without effecting a cure. As noted by Carrión and Koppisch (1939), we have also observed marked alleviation of the symptoms after intense and prolonged iodide treatment, but we continued to find the parasites in the scales and in the tissue and were able to obtain cultures of the fungus.

Martin, Baker, and Conant (1936) stated that they had obtained excellent results by iontophoresis with copper sulfate.

Pardo Castelló et al. (1942) reported success with roentgen therapy in superficial or slight cases. Doses employed by these authors were of 600 to 1,200 *r.* filtered through aluminum, with 1-2 mm. filters, depending upon the size of the growth.

Calero (1946) had success in one case with roentgen therapy and in another by surgical electrocautery.

Sulfonamides and their derivatives have been tried without favorable r sults (Pardo Castelló et al., 1942).

The treatment of choice should be a combination of all useful agent especially electrocoagulation of the lesions together with intensive iodi treatment. It must be remembered that iodides are useful only as a long-ter treatment.

SOUTH AMERICAN BLASTOMYCOSIS

South American blastomycosis is discussed in Chapter 51 and will not b repeated here.

RHINOSPORIDIOSIS

The causal agent of rhinosporidiosis was once thought to be a protozoan The disease at present is considered a mycosis, although the organism has not been cultivated as yet.

DEFINITION

Rhinosporidiosis is an affection characterized by the production of polypoid tumors of the mucosa of the nose, pharynx, eyes, ears, occasionally of the penis, vagina, and rectum, and at times of the skin. It is caused by a fungus, *Rhinosporidium seeberi.*

HISTORY

Malbrán (1892) observed, for the first time, in Argentina, parasites encapsulated in a nasal polyp. These were believed to be protozoa. The observation was not reported until Seeber, in 1900, published a study of 2 cases of nasal polyp caused by a parasite similar to that observed by Malbrán and which Wernicke classified as a protozoan, naming the organisms *Coccidium seeberi.* A few years later, O'Kinealy (1903) presented before the Laryngological Society of London material consisting of nasal polyps from a patient in Calcutta. The parasite observed was called *Rhinosporidium kinealyi* by Minchin and Fantham (1905), who placed it among the haplosporidia and later considered it to be identical with the parasite of Malbrán and Seeber.

In 1923, Ashworth suggested that the true nature of the parasite was that of a yeast; this belief is unanimously held at present.

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

The disease is frequently found in India and Ceylon, although sporadic cases have been described in different regions. It has been recorded in Argentina, Paraguay, Uruguay, Brazil, the United States, Italy, England, the Malayan States, Persia, Uganda, and the Philippines.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Occupational Incidence.—The disease appears often in individuals who work or swim in stagnant water. Conant et al. (1944) stated that a 20 per cent incidence was found by Mandlick in a group of laborers whose occupation was removing sand from a stagnant river.

Race.—There is no racial predisposition.

Age.—Cases ranging in age from 5 to 85 years have been found, but the infection is most frequent during the active age of life.

Sex.—Men are much more frequently affected than women. Karunaratne (1936) stated that, of 231 cases collected by him, 202 were men.

Source of Infection.—The fungus which causes rhinosporidiosis has not been found in nature. The majority of those who have studied the disease suggest that possibly the parasite lives in water, perhaps infecting certain fishes. This hypothesis is supported by the occupational incidence. Some authors believe that infection is acquired by contact from animals (horse and mule) in which rhinosporidiosis has been observed; however, this mycosis does not predominate among farm and ranch workers.*

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The disease is manifested by polypoid proliferations. The affected sites, in order of frequency, are the nose, where the largest number of cases are observed (72 per cent in 280 cases reported by Karunaratne, 1936), then the eye, the nasopharynx, and last, the ear, penis, vagina, rectum, and skin, these last localizations being rare.

The polyps are sessile or pedunculated, rose-colored to deep red, the surface covered with papillary projections, giving a raspberry-like appearance, or with cauliflower-like verrucosities when the tumor is old. The tumor-like formations are covered with sticky mucus and bleed upon the slightest injury. In the beginning, while small, they are flat, later becoming pedunculated. Upon close observation, small, whitish spots may be observed underneath the epithelium which covers the polyp; these are the parasites (sporangia). Frequently, rupture of the epithelium permits these mycologic elements to pass into the mucus covering the growth.

The condition, in general, is not painful and does not affect the patient's general health. Its development is eminently chronic and does not tend to heal spontaneously. Metastases have not been reported.

CLINICAL FORMS IN RELATION TO SITE OF INFECTION

Nose.—As stated above, this localization is the most frequent. Lesions appear on the septum at the junction of the cartilaginous and osseous portions, the right side of the nose being more often affected (Caldwell and Roberts, 1938). The lesion begins with a marked pruritus and abundant discharge of mucus which only rarely is bloody or purulent. At this stage, a small flat growth appears which becomes pedunculated and lobulated as it grows and may finally protrude from the nose, hanging in front of the mouth and obstructing the nasal cavity. When the tumor extends backward toward the nasopharynx, difficulty in breathing and swallowing develops.

Eye.—Incidence in this localization is 14 per cent (Karunaratne, 1936). The disease appears on the palpebral or bulbar conjunctiva. In the beginning it presents small, flat, rose-colored papules. Later these become lobulated and their color darkens. Symptoms of a foreign body irritation appear, such as

---

*Editor's note (O. F.): Manson calls attention to the fact that *R. equi* is closely related to *R. seeberi*.

photophobia, lacrimation, reddening of the conjunctiva. Infection of the tear sac is rare, but when it does occur, produces obstruction which results in excessive lacrimation.*

Nasopharynx.—The appearance is similar to the nasal polypoids. The tumor is lobulated, pedunculated, and covered with mucus. Symptoms due to obstruction—difficulty in breathing and swallowing—are more accentuated in such cases.

Skin, Ear, Penis, Vagina, Rectum.—These are infrequent sites of infection by *R. seeberi.* On the skin, the disease appears as a verrucose papilloma, usually not painful. In the ear, it resembles a nonspecific polyp. On the penis, vagina, and rectum, it has the appearance of venereal condyloma; in the rectum, it is easily confused with rectal polyps and hemorrhoids.

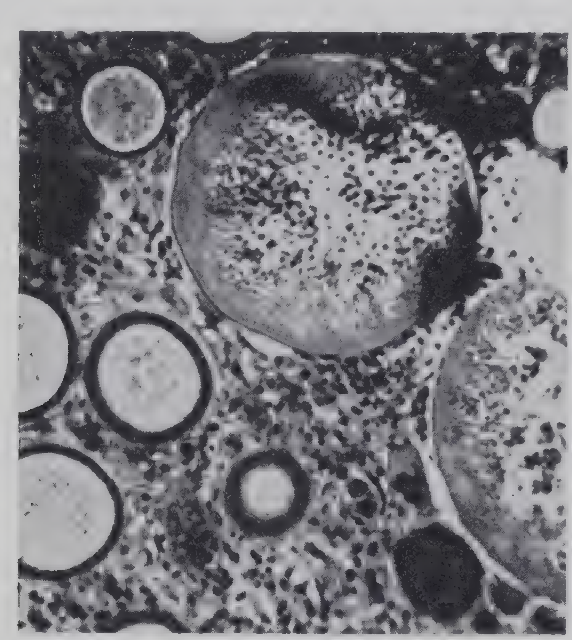


Fig. 410.—*Rhinosporidium seeberi.* Biopsy from nasal mucosa, showing different stages of development. The black spots show fully capsulated and undivided organisms. (Courtesy of Oscar Felsenfeld.)

ETIOLOGY

The parasite is found within the tumor. It is cyst-like, of variable sizes and shapes.

Two elements are seen, the sporangium and the spore. Sporangia are cystic forms, attaining as much as 300 microns in diameter, with a chitinous membrane, sometimes striated; they contain thousands of spores. The spores are the daughter spores in the sporangia. They are 5 to 9 microns in diameter, with a chitinous cover, vacuolated cytoplasm, and a large vesicular nucleus with a karyosome.

According to Ashworth (1923) the parasite develops as follows: the daughter spore emerging from the sporangium develops in the sinuses of tissue and, as it grows, granules appear in its cytoplasm. When it reaches the size of 50 to 60 microns, or more, the nucleus undergoes mitotic divisions. A division of the cytoplasm does not begin until about 2,000 nuclei are present. During the nuclear division, the sporangium increases in volume, reaching 250 to 300 microns at maturity. At this stage, some of the spores become ripe and are arranged about the periphery of the sporangium, while the remaining daughter spores, which continue to develop, occupy the center. The spores leaving the sporangium are covered with a mucilaginous substance, and, according to some authors, escape from the sporangium through an open pore. Parodi (1926), however, denied the existence of such an orifice and believed that spores are released by the rupture of the sporangium.

---

*Editor's note (O. F.): Rhinosporidiosis of the lacrimal sac is more frequent in India than in the Americas.

The fact that nuclear division is simultaneous and cytoplasmic division follows later, leaving no residual mass around the nuclei, supports the theory that the organism does not belong to the Protozoa, but due to these characteristics should be placed in Phycomycetes. Brumpt (1936) considered this parasite as belonging to the family Olpidiaceae of the Phycomycetes.

The fungus which causes rhinosporidiosis has not been cultivated. It is called *Rhinosporidium seeberi* (Wernicke) Seeber, 1912; synonyms include *Coccidium seeberi* Wernicke, 1900; *Rhinosporidium kinealyi* Minchin and Fantham, 1905.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Laboratory diagnosis is limited to microscopic and to histologic examinations. In direct examination, mucous exudate is examined between slides in a drop of Lugol solution. The mucus is obtained by pressing one of the polypoid masses with forceps. It is recommended that material adherent to the forceps be examined. Nasal secretion may also be used, although the former mucus is more diagnostic. When studied microscopically under low and high dry powers, the material shows sporangia filled with spores, immature forms, and free spores.

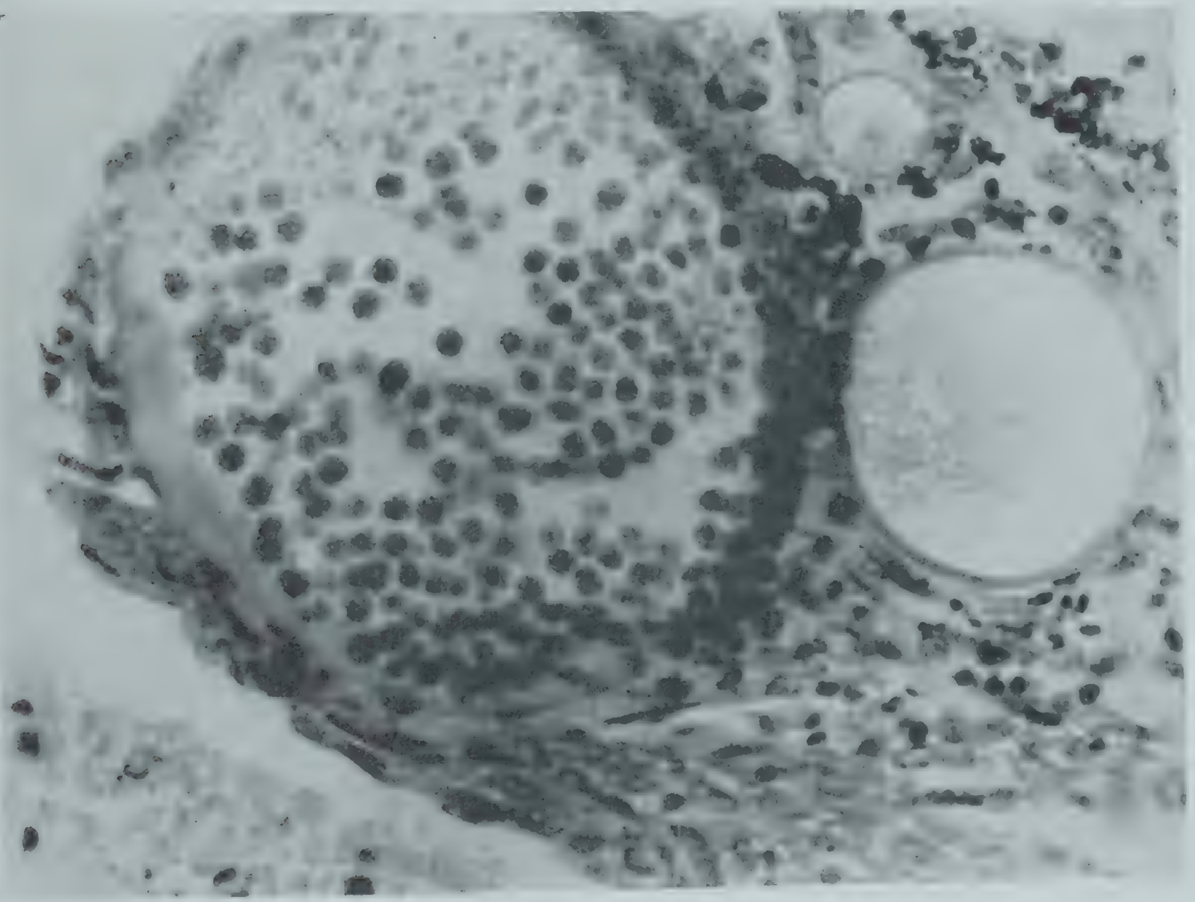


Fig. 411.—Sporangium of *Rhinosporidium seeberi* showing numerous spores.

In a histologic section, diagnosis is made by observation of the fungou elements of different diameters, corresponding to various stages of develop ment, from small spores, 5 microns in diameter, to mature sporangia, 30 microns, filled with spores.

Hematology, Immunology, Culture, and Inoculation of Animals.—No studies are known concerning hematologic changes and existence of antibodies. Culture has been attempted, as well as animal inoculation, but without success.

PATHOLOGY

The tissue reaction commonly observed is chronic inflammation with infiltration by plasma and epithelioid cells, lymphocytes, as well as by foreign body giant cells. Abundant connective tissue causes the growth of the polypoid mass and the formation of capillary vaults. After spores have been released from the sporangium, an area of necrosis with intense inflammation is seen, with polymorphonuclear, lymphocyte, and plasma cell infiltration.

Numerous parasites are seen in various stages of development, beneath the scaly epithelium. Large sporangia filled with spores, remnants of empty sporangia, immature forms with a central mass surrounded by granular cytoplasm, and other stages in which numerous chromatin particles begin to appear, and spores just released from the sporangia are observed.

TREATMENT

Initial lesions, although superficial, should be carefully extirpated. In extensive lesions, complete surgical ablation is necessary, with the use of thermocautery to prevent reinfection. Medical treatment is only of relative value. It may be attempted in the beginning or when the disease is localized in such areas as the eye, where surgery is not convenient. Allen and Dave (1936) obtained good results by the use of pentavalent antimony (Neostibosan-Bayer) accompanied by surgery. The antimony is injected intravenously, in doses of 0.30 Gm. daily or every other day, until a total dose of 2 to 4 Gm. has been given.

References

Mycetoma

Almeida, F.: 1939. Mycologia Medica, São Paulo, Cía Melhoramentos de São Paulo.
Almeida, F., and Barbosa, S.: 1940. Contribuicão para o estudo general dos Micetomas maduromicoticos observados no Brasil, Ann. Fac. Med. Univ. São Paulo **16**: 235-246.
Benbow, E. P., Smith, D. T., and Grimson, K. S.: 1944. Sulfonamide Therapy in Actinomycosis, Am. Rev. Tuberc. **49**: 395-407.
Benda, C.: 1900. Die morphologische Bedeutung der Actinomyceskolben, Deutsche med. Wchnschr. **26**: 132.
Bollinger, O.: 1877. Über eine neue Pilzkrankheit beim Rinde, Centralbl. f. d. ges. med. Wissensch. **15**: 481-485.
Bonorden: 1851. Cited by Dodge (1936).
Boyce, R., and Surveyor, F.: 1894. Cited by Boyd and Crutchfield (1921).
Boyd, F. M., and Crutchfield, E. D.: 1921. A Contribution to the Study of Mycetoma in North America, Am. J. Trop. M. **1**: 215-289.
Brett: 1840. Cited by Castellani and Chalmers (1913).
Castellani, A., and Chalmers, A. J.: 1913. Manual of Tropical Medicine, New York, W. Wood & Co.

Carter, H. V.: 1874. On Mycetoma, or the Fungus Disease of India, London.

Colebroock: Cited by Langeron (1936).

Corda: 1839. Cited by Dodge (1936).

Chalmers, A. J., and Archibald, R. G.: 1916. A Sudanese Maduromycosis, Ann. Trop. M. & Parasitol. 10: 223-276.

Chalmers, A. J., and Archibald, R. G.: 1917. Mycetoma and Pseudomycetomatous Formations, N. Orl. M. & S. J. 70: 455-473.

Chalmers, A. J., and Archibald, R. G.: 1918. Cited by Langeron (1936).

Dodge, C. W.: 1936. Medical Mycology, London, Henri Kimpton.

Drake, C., and Henrici, A. T.: 1943. Nocardia Asteroides. Its Pathogenicity and Allergic Properties, Am. Rev. Tuberc. 48: 184-198.

Eppinger, H.: 1890. Über eine neue pathogene Cladothrix un eine durch sie hervorgerufene Pseudotuberculosis, Wien. klin. Wchnschr. 3: 321-323.

Eyre: 1860. Madura Foot, Indian Ann. M. Sc. 12: 513-527.

Gammel, J. A.: 1927. Etiology of Maduromycosis, Arch. Dermat. & Syph. 15: 241-284.

Gill: Cited by Castellani and Chalmers (1913).

González Ochoa, A.: 1945. Estudio comparativo entre Actinomyces mexicanus, A. brasiliensis asteroides, Rev. d. Inst. salub. y enferm. trop. 6: 155-162.

Harz, C. O.: 1877. Actinomyces bovis, ein neue Schimmel in dem Geweben des Rindes, Jahresb. d. k. Centr. Thierarzneischule in München 8: 125-140.

Israel, J.: 1878. Neue Beobachtungen auf dem Gebiete der Mykosen des Menschen, Virchows Arch. f. path. Anat. Physiol. 74: 15-53.

Kanthack, A. A.: 1892. Madura Disease (Mycetoma) and Actinomycosis, J. Path. & Bacteriol. 1: 140-162.

Kämpfer: 1712. Cited by Castellani and Chalmers (1913).

Lacaz, C. da S.: 1945. Contribuicão brasileña para el estudio de la Actinomycetos produtores de Micetomas, São Paulo, Arch. urug. de med., cir. y especialid. 27: 167-181.

Langeron, M.: 1936. Nouvelle Pratique Dermatologique, Paris, Masson et Cie.

Langeron, M., Gauchemez, L., and Alleaux, V.: 1925. Cultures de massues obtenues dans cases d'actinobacilose bovine, Ann. Parasitol. 3: 225-231.

Langenbeck: 1898. Cited by Israel (1878).

Laveran, A.: 1902. Au suget d'un cas de mycetome à grains noirs, Bull. Acad. de méd. 47: 773-776.

Leão, A., and Lobo, J.: 1943. Mycetome du pied à Cephalosporium resifei n. sp., Mycetome à grains blancs, Compt. rend. Soc. de biol. 117: 203-205.

Lebert, H.: 1857. Traité d'Anat. Path. Gen. et Spéc., Paris.

Lieske, R.: 1921. Morphologie und Biologie der Strahlenpilze, Leipzig.

Lindenber, A.: 1909. Un nouveau Mycetome, Arch. de parasitol. 13: 265-268.

Magrou, J.: 1919. Les formes Actinomycotiques du Staphylocoque, Ann. de l'Inst. Pasteur 33: 344-375.

Ponfick, E.: 1879. Über das Vorkemmen eigentiümlicher gelblicher Körner, Bresl. ärzt Ztschr. 1: 116.

Pondicherry: 1714. Cited by Jacobson, H. P.: 1932. Fungous Diseases, Springfield, Ill., Charles C Thomas.

Rustomji, B.: 1860. Cases of Diseased Foot, Tr. Med. & Phys. Soc. Bombay 5: 230-241.

Saccardo: 1911. Cited by Dodge (1936).

Thiroux, A., and Pelletier, J.: 1912. Mycetoma à grains rouges de la paroi thoracique. Isolement et culture d'une nouvelle Oospora pathogène, Bull. Soc. path. exot. 5: 585-588.

Umbrait, W. W.: 1939. Studies of Practinomyces, J. Bact. 38: 73-89.

Vincent, H.: 1894. Etude sur le parasite du pied de Madure, Ann. Inst. Pasteur 8: 129-151..

Waksman, S. A.: 1919. Studies in the Metabolism of Actinomycetes, J. Bact. 4: 189-216.

Walker, O.: 1938. Sulfanilamides in the Treatment of Actinomycosis, Lancet 1: 1219-1232.

Weidman, D. F., and Kligman, A. M.: 1945. A New Species of Cephalosporium (C. granulomatis), J. Bact. 50: 491-495.

Wright, J. H.: 1898. A Case of Mycetoma, J. Exper. Med. 3: 421-433.

Wright, J. H.: 1905. The Biology of Microorganisms of Actinomycosis, Pub. Mass. Gen. Hosp. 1: 1-56.

Chromoblastomycosis

Almeida, F. P.: 1939. Mycologia Medica, São Paulo, Cia Melhoramentos de São Paulo.

Baliña, P. L.: 1932. Un caso de Cromoblastomicosis, Autóctono de Argentina, Rev. Argent. Dermatosif. 16: 369-379.

Binford, C. H., Hess, G., and Emmons, C. W.: 1944. Chromoblastomycosis, Arch. Dermat. & Syph. **49**: 398-402.

Brumpt, E.: 1922. Précis de Parasitologie, ed. 3, Paris, Masson et Cie.

Brumpt, E.: 1936. Précis de Parasitologie, ed. 5, Paris, Masson et Cie.

Calero, C.: 1946. Chromoblastomycosis, Arch. Dermat. & Syph. **54**: 265-277.

Carrión, A.: 1935. Chromoblastomycosis. Preliminary Report on a New Clinical Type of the Disease Caused by H. Compactum, n.sp., Puerto Rico J. Pub. Health & Trop. Med. **10**: 543-545.

Carrión, A., and Koppisch, E.: 1939. Observations on Dermatomycosis in Puerto Rico. Report on a Case of Chromoblastomycosis, Puerto Rico J. Pub. Health & Trop. Med. **9**: 169-193.

Carrión, A., and Silva, M.: 1947. Chromoblastomycosis and Its Etiologic Fungi. Biology of Pathogenic Fungi, Waltham, Mass., W. J. Nickerson, Chronica Botanica Co.

Conant, N. F., and Martin, D. S.: 1937. The Morphology and Serologic Relationships of the Various Fungi Causing Dermatitis Verrucosa (Chromoblastomycosis), Am. J. Trop. Med. **17**: 553-570.

Conant, N. F., et al.: 1944. Manual of Clinical Mycology, Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Co.

González Ochoa, A.: 1947. Rev. d. Inst. salub. y Enferm. trop. **8**: 143-153.

Lane, C. G.: 1915. A Cutaneous Disease Caused by a New Fungus (Phialophora verrucosa), J. Cutan. Dis. Syph. **33**: 840-846.

Martin, D. S., Baker, R. D., and Conant, N. F.: 1936. A Case of Verrucous Dermatitis Caused by H. Pedrosoi (Chromoblastomycosis) in North Carolina, Am. J. Trop. Med. **16**: 593-618.

Medlar, E. M.: 1915. A Cutaneous Infection Caused by a New Fungus Phialophora Verrucosa, With a Study of the Fungus, J. Med. Research **32**: 507-521.

Pardo Castelló, V., Río León, E., and Trespalacios, F.: 1942. Chromoblastomycosis in Cuba, Arch. Dermat. & Syph. **45**: 19-32.

Pedroso, A., and Gomes, J. M.: 1920. Sobre quatro casos de dermatitis verrucosa produzida pela Phialophora verrucosa, Ann. Paulistas Med. Cirurg. **11**: 53-61.

Simson, W. F.: 1946. Chromoblastomycosis. Some Observations on the Types of the Disease in South Africa, Mycologia, **38**: 432-449.

Weidman, F. D., and Rosenthal, L. H.: 1941. Chromoblastomycosis: A New and Important Blastomycosis in North America, Arch. Dermat. & Syph. **43**: 62-84.

South American Blastomycosis

Almeida, F. P.: 1928. Lesoes cutaneas da blastomicose en cobaios experimentalmente infectados, Ann. Fac. Med. Univ. São Paulo **3**: 59-64.

Almeida, F. P.: 1930. Le blastomicosi nel Brasile, Folia Clin. Biol. São Paulo **6**: 1-15.

Almeida, F. P.: 1930. Estudos comparativos do Granuloma Paracoccidioidico nos Estados Unidos e no Brasil. Novo genero para o parasito brasileiro, Ann. Fac. Med. Univ. de São Paulo **5**: 125-139.

Almeida, F. P.: 1939. Mycologia Medica, São Paulo, Cía Melhoramentos de São Paulo.

Almeida, F. P., and Lacaz, C. S.: 1942. Valor das intradermo-reacoes no diagnostico das micoses, Ann. Fac. Med. Univ. São Paulo **18**: 125-133.

Almeida, F. P., Lacaz, C. S., et al.: 1943. Acao de algumas substancias ''in vitro'' sobre o crescimiento de cogumelos, Rev. Med. **27**: 11-18.

Almeida, F. P., Lacaz, C. S., and Neto, C. F.: 1942. Dato estadisticos sobre o granuloma paracoccidioidico no Brasil, Ann. Fac. Med. Univ. São Paulo **18**: 137-145.

Ciferri, R., and Redaelli, P.: 1937. Morfologia, biologia e posizione sistematica di Paracoccidioides brasiliensis (Splendore) Almeida (Fam. Paracoccidioidaceae) con notizie sul granuloma paracoccidioide, R. Accad. Italia. Mem. Clin. Sci. Fis. Mat. e Nat. **8**: 559-610.

Conant, N. F., and Howell, A., Jr.: 1941. Etiological Agents of North and South American Blastomycosis, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **46**: 226-228.

Conant, N. F., and Howell, A., Jr.: 1942. The Similarity of the Fungi Causing South American Blastomycosis (Paracoccidioidal Granuloma) and North American Blastomycosis (Gilchrist's Disease), J. Invest. Dermat. **5**: 353-370.

Conant, N. F., et al.: 1944. Manual of Clinical Mycology, Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Co.

Cunha Motta, L.: 1935. Granulomatose Paracoccidioidica (Blastomycose Brasileira), Ann. Fac. Med. Univ. São Paulo **11**: 293.

Cunha Mott, L.: 1938. Granulomatose Paracoccidioidica (Blastomycose Brasileira), Ann. Fac. Med. Univ. São Paulo **14**: 333-367.

Cunha Motta, L.: 1942. Granulomatose Paracoccidioidica (Blastomycose Brasileira), Ann. Fac. Med. Univ. São Paulo **18**: 145-180.

Cunha Motta, L., and Pupo, J. A.: 1936. Granulomatose Paracoccidioidica, Ann. Fac. Med. Univ. São Paulo **12**: 407-426.

Fonseca, O., and Leão, A.: 1927. Reaction cutanée specifique avec le filtrat de cellule de Coccidioides immitis, Comp. rend. Soc. de biol. 97: 1797.

Fonseca, O.: 1939. Sobre o agente etiologico da granulomatose blastomicoide neotropical, Ann. Brasil. Dermat. e Syph. 14: 11-85.

Fonseca, O.: 1943. Parasitologia Médica, Rio de Janeiro, Guanabara.

Haberfeld, W.: 1919. Nova contribuicão do estudo da Blastomycose interna, Rev. Med. São Paulo 3: 5-7.

Lacaz, S. C.: 1945. Contribuicão brasileira para o estudo da blastomicose sul-americana (Granulomatose paracoccidioidica) O. Hosp. 28: 250-260.

Lindenber, W.: Cited by Almeida (1939).

Lutz, A.: 1908. Uma mycose pseudococcidioidica localizada na boca e observada no Brasil. Contribuicao ao conhecimiento das Hypho-blastomycoses Americanas, Imprensa Med., Rio de Janeiro 16: 151-163.

Moore, M.: 1935. Blastomycosis, Coccidioidal Granuloma and Paracoccidioidal Granloma, Arch. Dermat. & Syph. 38: 163-190.

Sousa Campos, E., and Almeida, F. P.: 1927. Contribuicão Para o Estudo das Blastomycoses (Granuloma Coccidioides) Observadas en São Paulo, Ann. Fac. Med. Univ. São Paulo 2: 203-216.

Splendore, A.: 1912. Zimonematosi con localizzaziones nella cavita della bocca osservata en Brasil, Bull. Soc. path. exot. 5: 313-319.

Versiani, O.: 1945. Blastomycose, Rev. Brasil. Biol. 5: 37-60.

Rhinosporidiosis

Ashworth, J. H.: 1923. On Rhinosporidium Seeberi (Wernicke, 1903) With Special Reference to Its Sporulation and Affinities, Tr. Roy. Soc. Edinburgh 53: 301-342.

Brumpt, E.: 1936. Précis de Parasitologie, Paris, Masson et Cie.

Caldwell, G. T., and Roberts, J. D.: 1938. Rhinoporidiosis in the United States, J. A. M. A. 110: 1641-1644.

Conant, N. F., et al.: 1944. Clinical Mycology, Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Co.

Karunaratne, W. A. E.: 1936. Pathology of Rhinosporidiosis, J. Path. & Bacteriol. 42: 193.

Malbrán, C.: 1892. Cited by Seeber (1900).

Mandlick: Cited by Conant et al. (1944).

Minchin, E., and Famtham, H. B.: 1905. Rhinosporidium Kinealyi n.g. n.sp., a New Sporozoan From the Mucous Membrane of the Septum Nasi of Man, Quart. J. Micr. Sc. 49: 521-532.

O'Kinealy, F.: 1903. Localised Psorospermosis of the Mucous Membrane of the Septum Nasi, Proc. Laryngol. Soc., London 10: 109-112.

Parodi, S. E.: 1926. Cited by Brumpt (1936).

Seeber, G. R.: 1900. Un nuevo esporozoario parásito del hombre, dos casos encontrados en pólipos nasales, Tesis Univ. Nat. Buenos Aires.

Seeber, G. R.: 1912. Rhinosporidium Kinealyi et R. Seeberi, une question de priorité, Buenos Aires.

CHAPTER 51

SOUTH AMERICAN BLASTOMYCOSIS

Floriano Paulo de Almeida

Synonyms.—Brazilian blastomycosis, paracoccidioidal granuloma or granulomatosis, Lutz-Splendore's and de Almeida's disease, Almeida's disease.

DEFINITION

South American blastomycosis is a chronic fungus-produced condition at first localized preferably in the mouth and the corresponding lymph nodes, and gradually invading other lymph glands and lymphoid organs, as well as the skin in many cases.

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

The first cases of this mycosis were found in São Paulo and were reported by Lutz and Splendore early in this century. Other observers have since reported several new cases elsewhere in Brazil, particularly in Rio de Janeiro and Minas Geraes. For this reason, the condition, identified as a blastomycosis, was given the name "Brazilian blastomycosis." After other cases were found in several other South American countries, the disease became known as "South American blastomycosis."

It has been reported from Argentina, Uruguay, Paraguay, Peru, and Venezuela.

ETIOLOGY

Lutz maintained constantly, from the very beginning of his observations in São Paulo, that the parasite found in his cases was not identical with that found either in coccidioidal granuloma in Argentina and the United States or that found in blastomycosis. Splendore (1912) was the first to name the parasite *Zymonema brasiliense.* The parasite was later identified as *Coccidioides immitis* by Carina and as *Zymonema histoporocellularis* by Heberfeld (1919). Subsequent investigators, following O. da Fonseca Filho, adopted Carini's nomenclature.

Based on our own researches made since 1926, we have concluded, however, that the Brazilian fungus is completely different from *Coccidioides immitis,* and in 1929 we named it *Coccidioides brasiliensis.* This name we changed to *Paracoccidioides brasiliensis* (1930), and our change has been readily adopted by other investigators, especially abroad. It is true that Fonseca Filho (1929) attempted to have the name of the fungus changed to *Lutziomyces histoporocellularis,* but this change has not been accepted by other specialists.

Moore examined several cultures of this fungus and thought that two new species could be distinguished, namely, *cerebriformis* and *tenuis.* Many mycologists, however, are inclined not to accept such species as valid, but believe rather that they are variants of *brasiliensis.*

Conant and Howell have, of late, considered *P. brasiliensis* as closely allied to the agent of North American blastomycosis, which they improperly call *Blastomyces dermatitidis,* giving the name *B. brasiliensis* to the Brazilian fungus. Unfortunately, the genus Blastomyces has neither any mycologic meaning nor is its existence justified.

So far, *P. brasiliensis* has not been isolated in nature from soil, plants, or animals. It has been found only as a parasite of man.

INCIDENCE

This form probably exists as a saprophyte, particularly on vegetables, since the majority of the patients showing buccal lesions are in the habit of chewing plant leaves or using different plant fragments as toothpicks.

Moreover, South American blastomycosis affects especially farmers or field workers. Our statistics show that out of 875 cases reported from Brazil (March, 1947), about 600 are agriculturists or people engaged in tilling the soil.

Age.—Age seems to have no definite role in the incidence as seen in the following table:

AGE		INCIDENCE
Under 10 years	—	21 cases
11 to 20 years	—	117 cases
21 to 30 years	—	165 cases
31 to 40 years	—	162 cases
41 to 50 years	—	173 cases
51 to 60 years	—	105 cases
Over 60 years	—	40 cases
Unknown	—	92 cases

Sex.—Of the 875 cases, 762 were men, 73 women; in 40 cases the sex was not reported.

Nationality.—The distribution was: Brazilian, 447; Japanese, 162; Italian, 33; Portuguese, 36; and Spanish, 78; the balance were various other nationals or unreported.

In the course of our 20 years of study of mycoses we have been able to find 651 cases of South American blastomycosis registered in the state of São Paulo. Although Fialho (1946) states that about 300 cases have been reported elsewhere in Brazil, we have found reference to but 64 cases in Rio de Janeiro, 42 in Minas Geraes, and 12 in Rio Grande do Sul. Fewer cases are listed as coming from the rest of our territory, 58 having no data.

Race.—There were 541 whites, 162 Orientals, 74 Negroes and mulattos.

Marital Status.—Of 875 cases, 420 were married, 209 single, and 25 were widowed.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The clinical symptoms are manifold, depending upon the localization of the parasite. In general, the symptoms can be divided into 4 groups: (1) *external forms,* cutaneous or mucosal, of which the mucosal form is by far the more frequent and is especially found in the mouth; (2) *lymphatic form,* characteriz by lymph swelling generally starting from the neck and affecting the remai ing lymph glands; (3) *visceral form,* represented by primary lesions occurri in such viscera as the spleen, the liver, intestines, or lungs; localization of t fungus in the lung has of late been noted much more frequently, so that it considered virtually a constant finding; (4) *mixed form,* corresponding eith to the association or to the succession of the above forms, thus deserving speci attention.

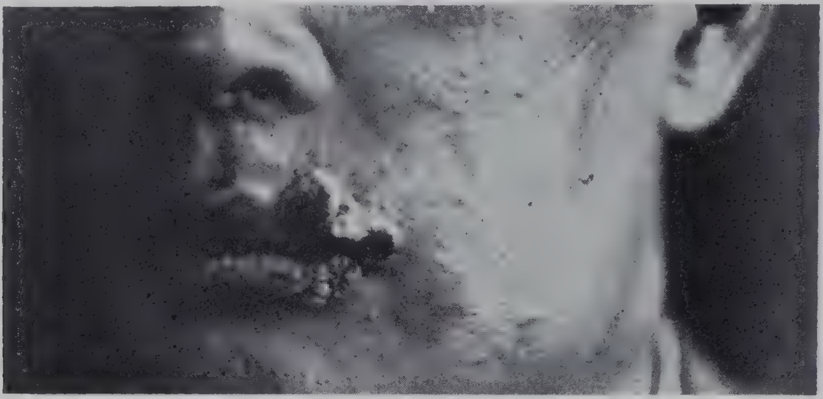


Fig. 412.—Mucocutaneous initial lesions of South American blastomycosis (photograph by Almeida and Lacaz). (Courtesy of Antonio González Ochoa.)

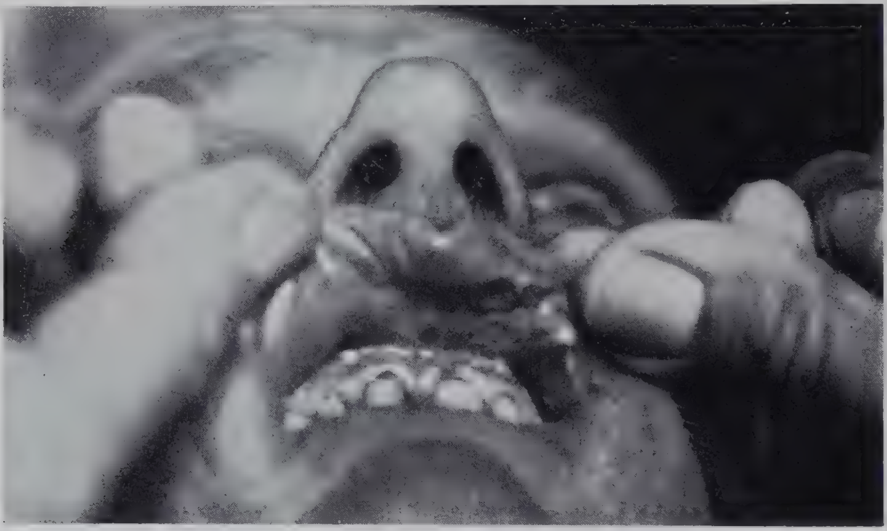


Fig. 413.—South American blastomycosis. Lip lesion (inner side). Case in Dermatologic Clinic of A. Pupo, São Paulo.

External Forms.—As we have shown, the blastomycosis lesions originate as a rule in the mouth, where they present a rather characteristic aspect. The mucous membrane becomes granular and shows reddish spots on a yellow background (berry-like stomatitis). These lesions very frequently appear about the gums or the palate, thence extending toward the lips, which become swollen. The lesions also customarily reach the surrounding skin, where they assume a variable aspect (ulcerovegetative or papulopustular lesions) and invade the tongue.

Since the lesions commonly belong to the most variable types, it is essential, before establishing a diagnosis, that the parasite be recovered in

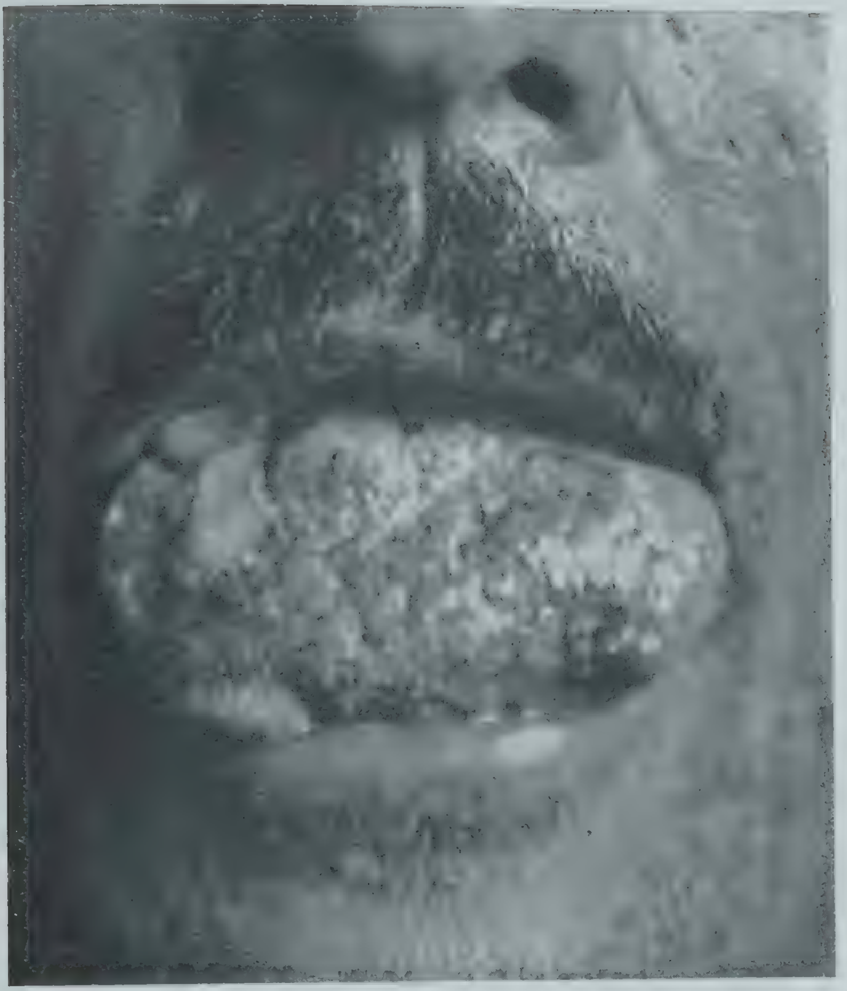


Fig. 414.—South American blastomycosis. Glossitis. Case in A. Pupo's Dermatologic Clinic, São Paulo.

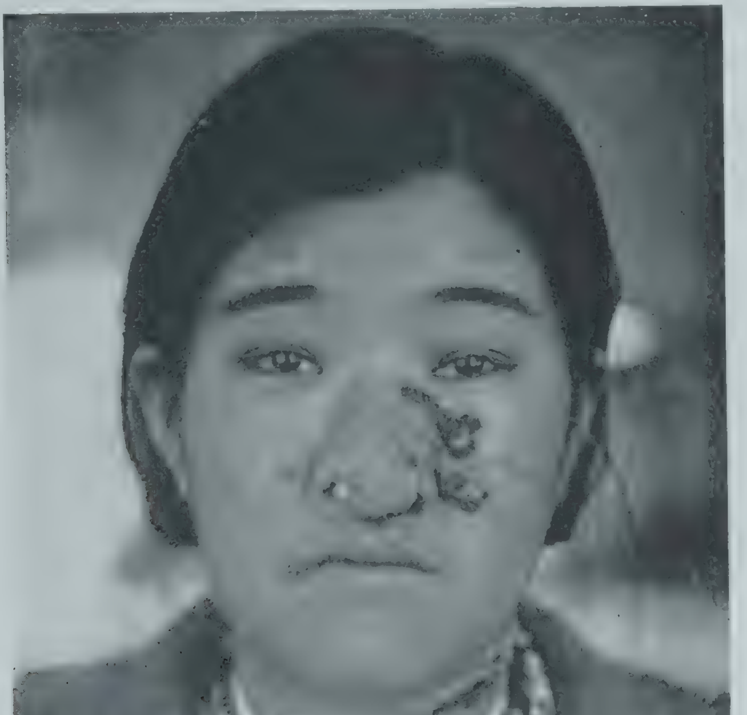


Fig. 415.—Nasal cutaneous lesions in a case of South American blastomycosis which also presented laryngeal lesions. In this case tracheotomy was practiced, as shown in the photograph. (Photograph by Almeida and Lacaz.) (Courtesy of Antonio González Ochoa.)

material from the affected region. There may be 9 different types of externa lesions from an anatomic-clinical standpoint, judging from the findings o Aguiar Pupo and Cunha Motta. Although the mucosal lesions may be ver long in invading the lymph channels, as a rule they are accompanied by loca lymph swellings terminating in pus formation and ulceration.

Since the fungus invades the lymphatic system, generalization of the disease is a natural outcome if the patient is not given efficient treatment.

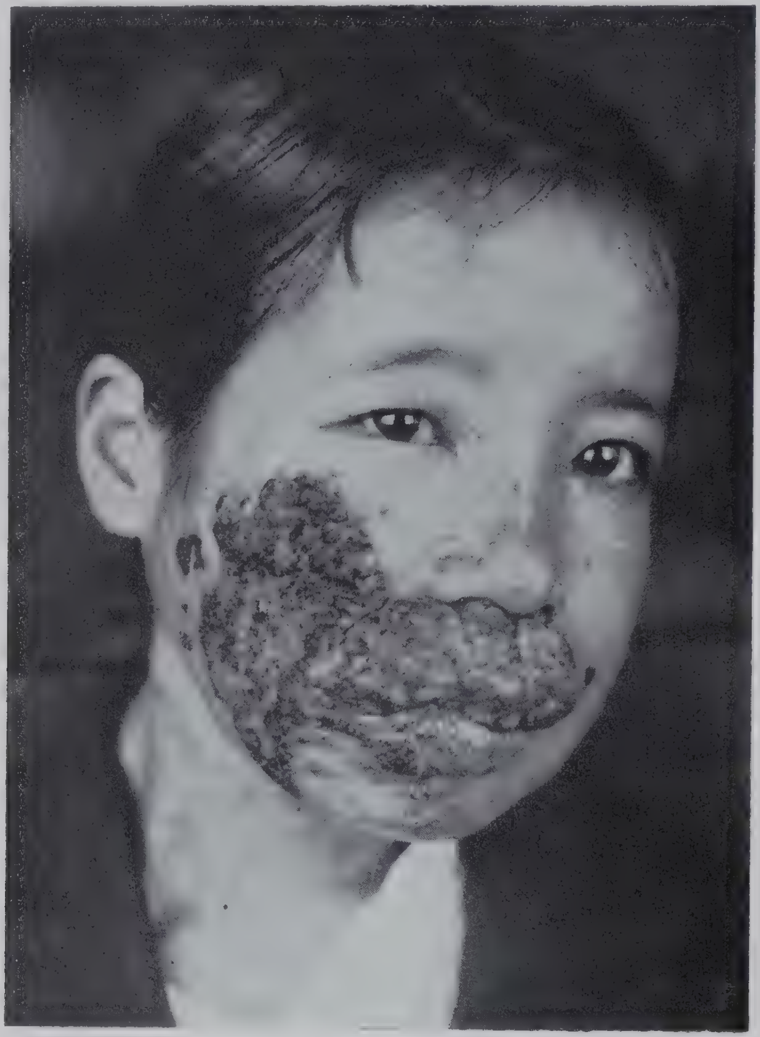


Fig 416.—South American blastomycosis. Cutaneous ulcero-cutaneous lesions. (Photograph by Almeida and Lacaz.) (Courtesy of Antonio González Ochoa.)

Lymphatic Form.—The lymphatic form may occur independently from an apparently primary mouth lesion. In some cases the abdominal lymph glands are the first to show swelling and this renders the clinical diagnosis impossible unless one resorts to laboratory tests (intradermal reaction, complement fixation tests, and, if possible, direct examination of the fungus obtained by gland puncture or biopsy following laparotomy).

Visceral Form.—A primary visceral lesion must be rare. Viscera most often attacked secondarily are the spleen and the liver, so that the infection may be called hepatosplenoglandular blastomycosis (Dias da Silva and Souza Campos).

Through a recent analysis, the localization of the fungus in the lungs was found to be a very frequent occurrence, and apparently the primary lesion.

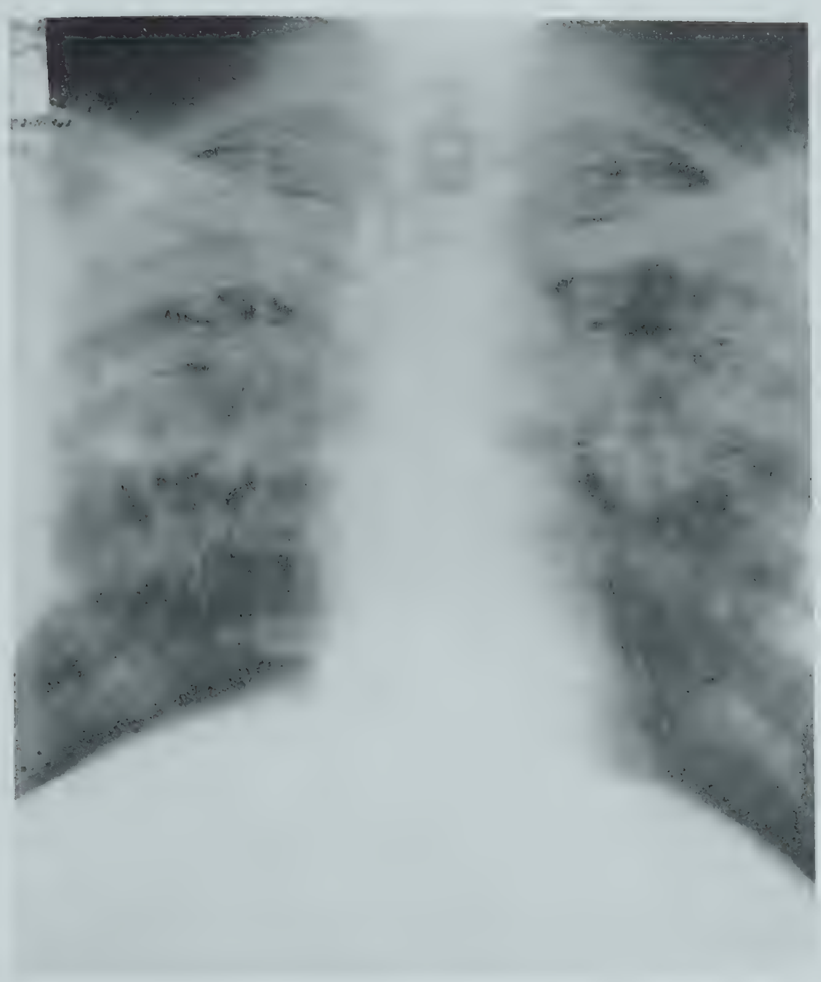


Fig. 417.—South American blastomycosis. Lung lesions. Case in A. Pupo's Dermatologic Clinic, São Paulo.

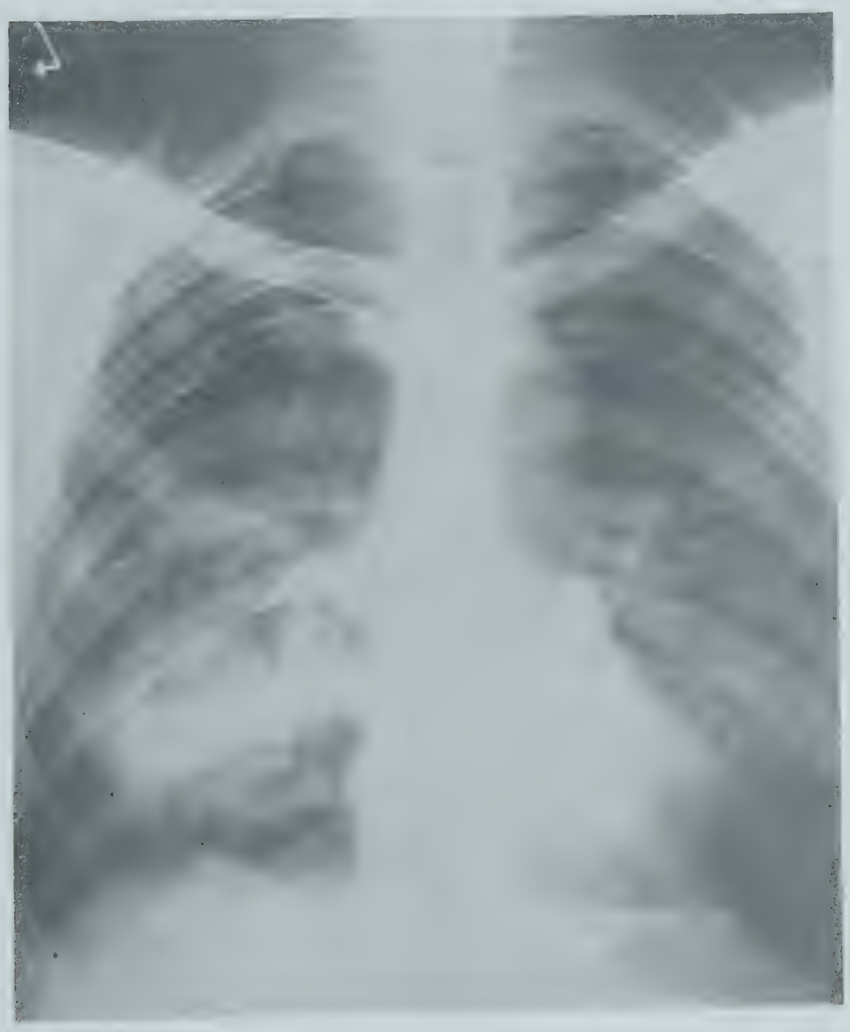


Fig. 418.—Radiograph showing pulmonary lesions in a case of South American blastomycosis. (Photograph by Almeida and Lacaz.) (Courtesy of Antonio González Ochoa.)

In the light of modern investigations, our own figures and those of Cunh Motta on lung involvement should be modified, inasmuch as Fialho has jus (1946) referred to incidence of pulmonary localization of *P. brasiliensis* as 8 per cent in our type of blastomycosis.

Mixed Form.—In general, this is most frequently seen in old cases, sinc the fungus, after lowering the resistance of the host, succeeds in spreadin and reaches the lymph glands and internal organs.

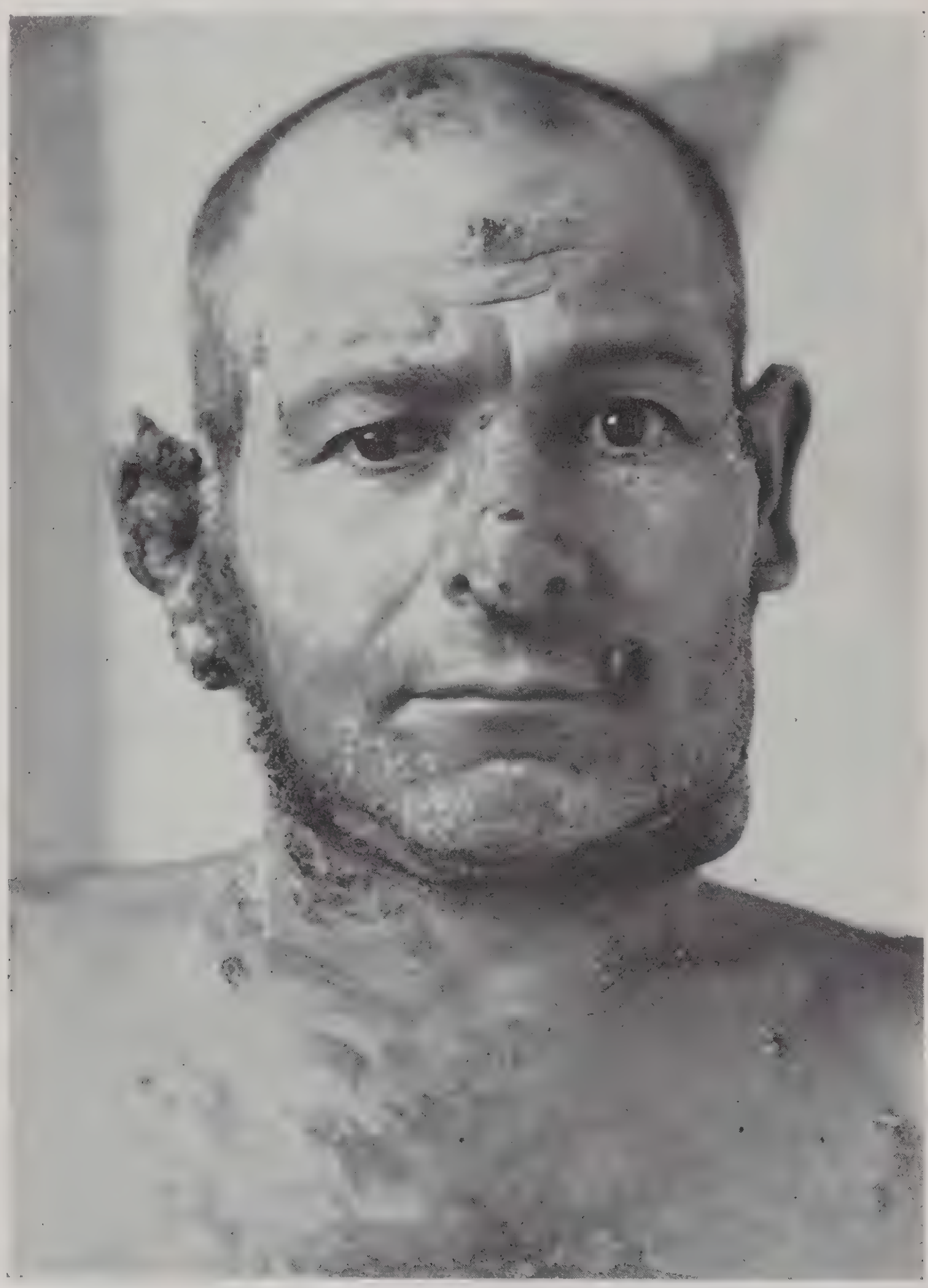


Fig. 419.—South American blastomycosis. Mixed lesions. Case in A. Pupo's Dermatologic Clinic, São Paulo.

On the whole, it may be stated that the clinical picture in South American blastomycosis parallels the evolutionary stage or the age of the process and this undoubtedly depends upon the patient's resistance. In many cases, *P. brasiliensis* has been isolated from the blood stream, the infection being hematogenous instead of lymphatic.

HISTOPATHOLOGY

Various investigators have described the pathologic lesions found in South American blastomycosis. In this regard, Cunha Motta has published valuable contributions and Fialho, in his thesis for the professorship at the Rio Medical Faculty, gave a detailed account of the pulmonary lesions brought about by the fungus.

In general, the lesions are of a granulomatous type, showing at times numerous giant cells with parasites in a more or less advanced stage of phagocytosis. Such lesions present slight variations according to their site. In the lymph glands, for instance, Cunha Motta has described 3 forms, nodular, diffuse, and gummatoid, which not only express the patient's degree of resistance but sometimes facilitate the diagnosis as well.

Different types of lesion have also been registered elsewhere, and as a whole they depend on the age of the process. From both the macroscopic and the microscopic standpoints, the lesions caused by *P. brasiliensis*, particularly in the lymph glands and the lungs, are likely to be confused with those found in tuberculosis; in this case only the study of the fungus itself will establish the differential diagnosis.

EXPERIMENTAL INOCULATION

Results of experimental inoculations of animals with the fungus are inconstant. Guinea pigs are usually the most sensitive laboratory animals, particularly when injected by the testicular route, and not rarely do the lesions spread beyond the inoculated organ. The peritoneal cavity in guinea pigs may also be used, as Peryassú (1946) has shown.

DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

South American blastomycosis must be differentiated from some diseases. The lymphatic form might be confused with both lymph gland tuberculosis and Hodgkin's disease. The external form may sometimes be mistaken for syphilis, leishmaniasis, yaws, tuberculosis, or some neoplasms. In these instances the correct diagnosis depends either upon discovery of the fungus microscopically, or upon isolation of the parasite in culture media, a rather tedious and difficult procedure.

In other clinical forms, diagnosis is based on finding the parasite in pus, secretions, or lesions in tissue.

MYCOLOGIC DIAGNOSIS

In most cases it is possible to make a diagnosis of South American blastomycosis merely on clinical grounds, but it is always advisable to use laboratory methods. Laboratory methods applicable thereto are: (1) direct examination; (2) biopsy; (3) cultivation; (4) skin test; (5) complement fixation test; and other tests.

Direct Examination.—Place a drop of pus or a fragment of some lesion between slide and cover glass and observe under the microscope.

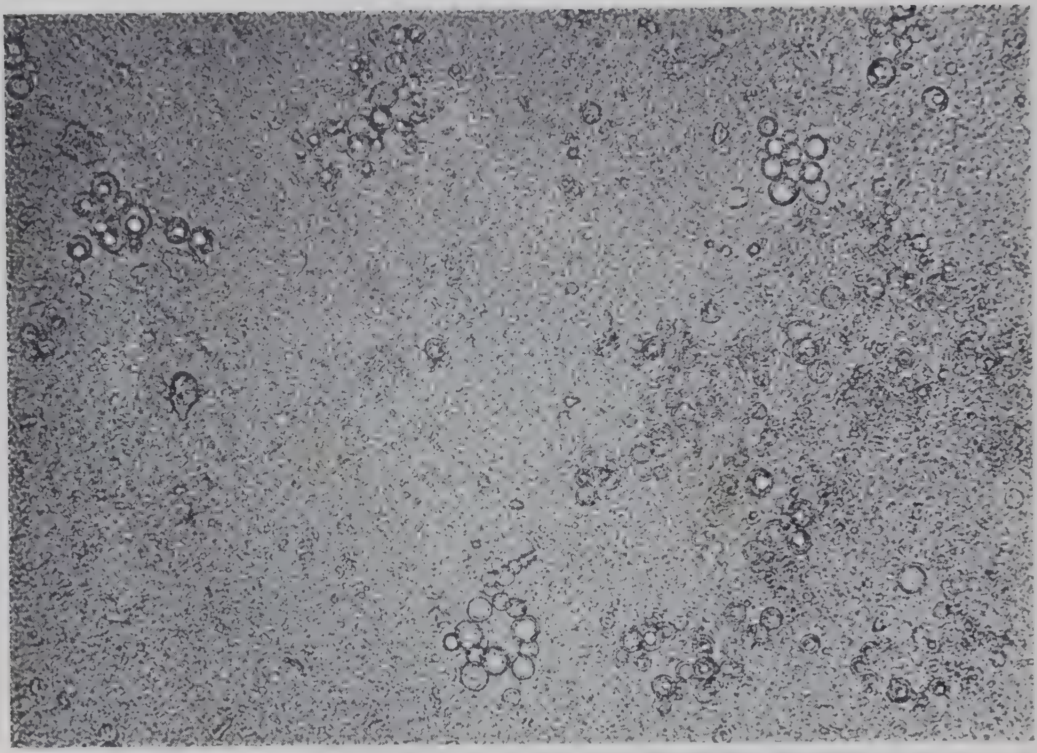


Fig. 420.—South American blastomycosis. *P. brasiliensis* in fresh pus (examined between slide and cover glass).

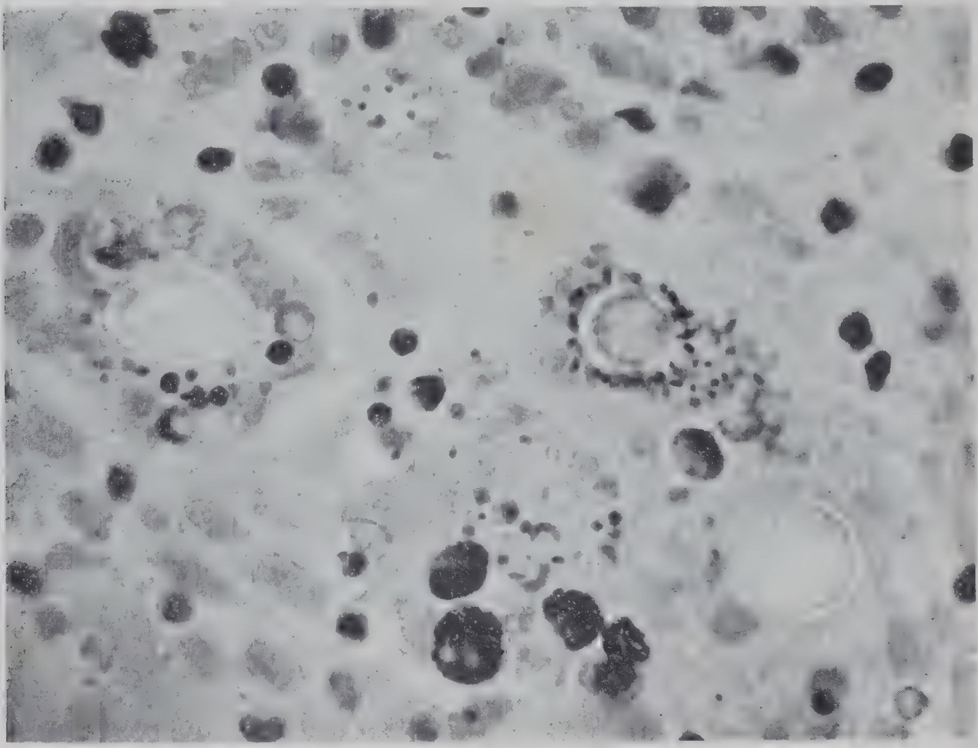


Fig. 421.—South American blastomycosis. *P. brasiliensis* in different stages of evolution in lymph gland lesion.

For identification, the parasite must show its typical morphology consisting of globose cells of variable size (3 to 4 microns, sometimes 10 to 15 or more in diameter), with a thick membrane with a double-layer appearance, the fungus showing a characteristic multiple sprouting. Among these cells, the central one or the largest is surrounded by several smaller cells, usually globose, elongated, or pyriform.

In **biopsy,** or in **necropsy,** the morphology of the fungus is also very characteristic. In the affected tissues, *P. brasiliensis* shows its typical multiple sprouting and a larger cell surrounded by smaller cells and connected with these, at times, by an expansion. These parasitic forms appear either free or within phagocytes, sometimes in very large numbers.

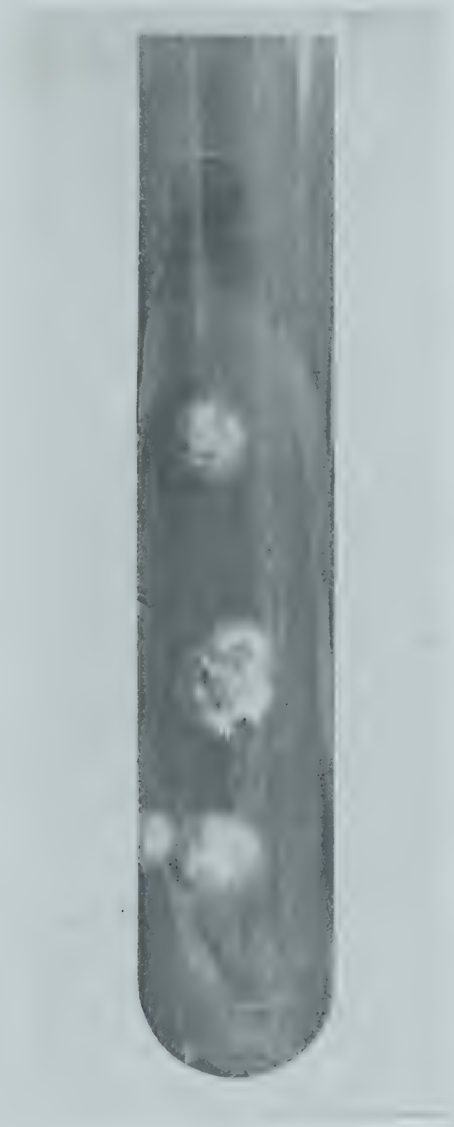


Fig. 422.—South American blastomycosis. *P. brasiliensis,* 2-month-old culture.

P. brasiliensis grows in Sabouraud's medium rather sluggishly, usually requiring more than 20 days before growth becomes apparent.

Almeida and Fernandes (1944) succeeded in devising a process whereby the fungus grows rather rapidly with visible growth on the fifth day, acquiring a cerebriform appearance. This process consists in cultivating infected material (pus or exudate from the lesions) on chocolate agar and keeping the culture tubes in the incubator as 37° C. At room tempe ture, on solid media, the fungus forms whitish furry colonies, resembling t skin of white mice. When such colonies age, they sometimes appear dried a grooved. Under the microscope, the cerebriform growths show the parasi with morphology similar to that encountered in tissues, that is, consisting globose cells with multiple sprouts. The furry colonies are thread-like and co sist of elements called ''conidia'' of ''chlamydospores.'' At 37° C., the coloni of *P. brasiliensis* become cerebriform in appearance, acquiring the furry featu again when they are returned to room temperature. It should be remember that cultures of *P. cerebriformis* keep their brain-like appearance both at 37° and at room temperature.

Cultivation of the parasite is indispensable to the diagnosis, inasmuch a certain yeasts may simulate *P. brasiliensis* in the tissues.

In addition to these 3 fundamental methods, the following method may also help to establish a diagnosis:

Skin and intradermal reactions are now used by Almeida, Silva Lacaz, and Cunha (1945) who have prepared 3 different batches of paracoccidioidin. They have found this useful as an auxiliary means both for diagnosis and for prognosis. The results of this test must, however, be checked by the clinical data. In severe and well-developed cases, the test is negative and may denote a state of anergy with unfavorable prognosis. In a very high percentage of mild cases or in patients with fairly good health conditions, the test is positive. The antigen is prepared from old (3 months') cultures in Sabouraud's liquid medium, using a large number of different strains (15 to 20).

The filtrate of the culture is injected intracutaneously or intradermally into the forearm in a dosage of 0.1 c.c. The test is read 24 hours later. A positive reaction shows an erythematous or sometimes maculopapular zone, which is usually quite marked and slightly pruritic.

Complement fixation test, blood sedimentation rate, and other tests may be valuable when supplemented by clinical data. They aid especially in controlling the course of treatment and the cure.

TREATMENT

For many years therapeutics was of no avail against South American blastomycosis. This disease was considered a true scourge, since the number of cures was both scarce and problematic.

With the advent of the sulfonamide drugs, a few encouraging results have been reported. It has been found that sulfonamides, through their mycostatic action, aid in the treatment by paralyzing the growth of the fungus, and thus permit the natural defense of the body to prevail in killing the parasite. With respect to this, laboratory tests made by Almeida, Silva Lacaz, and Forattini have shown that only sulfadiazine, sulfaglycine, and sulfamerazine have a marked in vitro activity against *P. brasiliensis*.

In order to stimulate the reaction of the body, we have for many years prepared a polyvalent ''vaccine,'' the effect of which has been very marked in the treatment of numerous patients. Based on our experience, we advise the following method for treatment of this mycosis: a sulfonamide drug, preferably sulfadiazine or sulfamerazine, sulfathiazole being more toxic, 6 to 8 tablets a day for a long time (a few months). Polyvalent antiblastomycotic "vaccine," injection of 1 c.c. every fourth day in a series of 10 injections, and after a short interval a new series of a stronger vaccine. It is also recommended that antitoxic and antiinfectious medication be used, especially a rich diet, to aid the resistance of the patient. If the treatment is discontinued before it has been completed, relapse of the disease occurs.

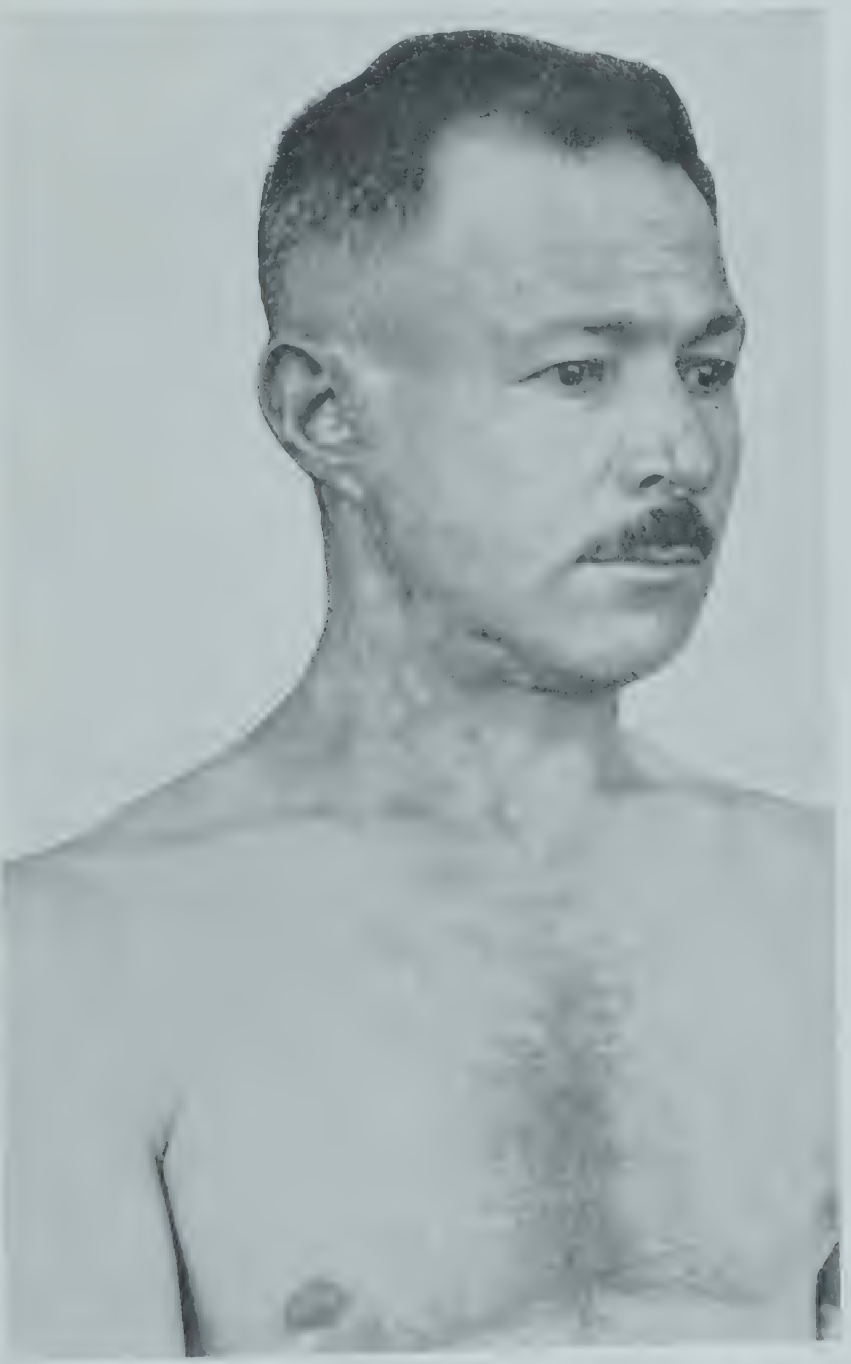


Fig. 423.—South American blastomycosis. Same patient as shown in Fig. 419; recovery following 8 months of treatment.

This method of treatment has resulted, particularly in São Paulo, in numerous cases of clinical cure of South American blastomycosis. See Figs. 419 and 423, same patient.

PROPHYLAXIS

Since the fungus has not been found as yet in a free state in natu prophylaxis is purely a personal application. Individuals are advised not chew on leaves or pieces of wood, to keep the mouth clean, and to apply f treatment early when there are any suspicious lesions. Such a prophylaxis very precarious, in view of the wide range of the disease and the depress cultural state of the people who live in the affected districts, and who se medical relief only when lesions have become quite widespread.

References

Almeida, F.: 1939. Micologia médica, Melhoramentos, São Paulo, Brazil (Includes a extensive, up-to-date list of references).

Almeida, F., Silva Lacaz, C., and Fava Neto, C.: 1942. Dados estatísticos sôbre o granuloma paracoccidioidico no Brasil, An. Fac. Méd. Univ. São Paulo **18**: 137-144.

Almeida, F., and Silva Lacaz, C.: 1942. Micoses bronco-pulmonares, Melhoramentos, São Paulo, Brazil.

Almeida, F., and Fernandes, M.: 1944. Isolamento rápido do Paracoccidioides brasiliensis, An. Fac. Méd. Univ. São Paulo **20**: 155-157.

de Almeida, F., Silva Lacaz, C., and da Cunha, A. C.: 1945. Intradermo-reação para o diagnóstico da blastomicose sul-americana (granulomatose paracoccidióidica), Arch. brasil. de med. **35**: 267-272.

Almeida, F., Silva Lacaz, C., Aschcar, H., Ribeiro, D. O., and Sampaio, S.: 1946. I. Ação da penicilina, ''in vitro,'' sôbre o paracoccidióides brasiliensis. II. Resultados obtidos com a administração dêsse antibiótico no tratamento da ''blastomicose sul-americana,'' O Hospital, Rio de Janeiro **29**: 109-112.

Almeida, F., Silva Lacaz, C., and Forattini, O. P.: 1946. Ação da sulfanilamide e seus derivados, ''in vitro,'' sôbre o ''Paracoccidioides brasiliensis,'' Resenha clín.-cient. **15**: 113-117.

Bogliolo, L.: 1945. I. Contribuição ao conhecimento da morfologia do agente da moléstia de Lutz, Rev. brasil. de biol. **5**: 321-338; II, **6**: 61-71, 1946; III, **6**: 181-197, 1946.

Chirife, A.: 1944. La Paracoccidioidosis en el Paraguay, An. Fac. Cien. Méd., Asunción **12**: 13-65.

Cunha Motta, L.: 1942. Granulomatose paracoccidióidica (''blastomycose brasileira''), An. Fac. Méd. Univ. São Paulo **18**: 145-179.

Fialho, A.: 1946. Localisaçoes pulmonares da ''Micose de Lutz,'' Thesis, Univ. Rio de Janeiro.

Fonseca Filho, O. R.: 1943. Parasitologia médica, Guanabara.

Freijo, J. C., and Zelada, L.: 1940. Granuloma paracoccidioidico. Primer caso autocńomo observado en el Uruguay, An. de oto-rino-laring. d. Uruguay **10**: 175-202.

Niño, F. L.: 1945. Granuloma paracoccidioidico. Estudio de una nueva observación en la República Argentina (nota previa), Rev. Asoc. méd. argent. **59**: 830-834.

O'Daly, J. A.: 1943. Paracoccidioidosis, Pract. oto-rhino-laryng. **5**: 144-148.

Peryassú, D.: 1942. Ensaio clínico e experimental sobre a ação de sulfamído-derivados na blastomicose brasileira, An. brasil. de dermat. e sif. **17**: 261-281.

Peryassú, D.: 1946. O sistema retículo-endotelial na blastomicose brasileira experimental do cobáio, Rev. brasil. de biol. **6**: 265-305.

Ribeiro, D. O.: 1943. Estado atual do tratamento sulfanilamídico da blastomicose brasileira, Rev. paulista de med. **23**:

Silva, M. S.: 1945. Tratamento da blastomicose brasileira, Rev. brasil. med. **2**: 34.

CHAPTER 52

HISTOPLASMOSIS AND MELIOIDOSIS

R. B. H. Gradwohl

HISTOPLASMOSIS

Histoplasmosis is a disease entity due to infection with one of the fungi imperfecti, known as *Histoplasma capsulatum*. This infection was first observed by Darling (1906) in Ancon Hospital, Panama, while looking for kala-azar leishmaniasis. He found it to be a fatal infection with irregular fever, emaciation, and enlargement of the spleen, and at autopsy showing smears and tissue sections with cells filled with small microorganisms similar to Leishman-Donovan bodies. They differed, however, from those seen in kala-azar in the arrangement of the nuclei and absence of a blepharoplast. He found two other cases and published a second report in 1909. Da Rocha-Lima (1912) reviewed Darling's cases and concluded that the *Histoplasma capsulatum* was a fungus. Other articles have been contributed by Galli-Valerio (1909), Meleney (1925), Ota, Masas (1923, 1925), and Phelps and Mallory (1926). The next case was reported by Riley and Watson (1926) as originating in Minnesota. The next case was reported by Crumrine and Kessel (1931) and originated in California. Dodd and Tomkins (1934) reported the first case recognized during the life of the patient, the yeast-like parasites being found within large mononuclear cells in supravitally-stained blood films. The cultural characteristics were described by De Monbreun (1934), who isolated the organisms from the spleen. De Monbreun (1939) reported a case where the dog was considered as a natural host for this parasite. Moore (1934, 1935) studied these organisms and concluded they should be classified as belonging to the genus Posadasia, family Coccidioideacea, and species *capsulatum*. Ramsey and Appelbaum (1942) reported another case in a woman who had lived in Michigan all her life, never having visited or lived in the tropics. This patient had a continuous fever and finally died after lapsing into coma. Autopsy revealed an interstitial pneumonitis with thickening of the alveolar walls, and a definite increase in connective tissue around the smaller bronchioles and blood vessels, and a reticuloendotheliosis. There were numerous large endothelial macrophages lining the alveolar spaces and in the alveoli. These were filled with the organisms. The spleen showed interstitial fibrosis. All of the sinusoids contained numerous endothelial macrophages filled with the organisms, and numerous parasites were free in the tissues. The lymph nodes were extensively involved and showed the microorganisms. Bone marrow sections showed many organisms in the large phagocytic cells.

The following further details of this fungous infection were submitted to us by Arden Howell, Jr., Instructor of Tropical Medicine, Tulane University of Louisiana, New Orleans, La.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Prevalence.—

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION OF KNOWN CASES

United States	32
Honduras	1
Panama	3
Brazil	2
Argentina	1
Philippine Islands	2
Java	1
Total	42

INCIDENCE OF CASES BY YEARS

1906	2
1908	2
1926	3
1931-1934	4
1939-1941	31
Total	42

DISTRIBUTION OF CASES IN THE UNITED STATES

California	2	Indiana	2
Tennessee	5	Florida	1
Iowa	1	Texas	1
Missouri	2	Mississippi	1
Michigan	5	Minnesota	1
Virginia	2	Maryland	2
Kentucky	1	Alabama	2
Illinois	1	Washington, D. C.	1
Ohio	2		

Reservoir.—Dogs and probably some rodents.

Transmission.—Unknown.

PATHOLOGY

The parasites are found within the reticuloendothelial cells. Any, all, or a combination of the following organs may be involved:

Skin.—Multiple lesions primarily in the corium with secondary papule formation and eventual ulceration.

Nasal or Oral Mucosa.—Single or multiple granulomatous lesions in the submucosa with the formation of patches and early ulceration.

Lymph Nodes.—Lesions resemble tuberculosis.

Lungs.—Lesions multiple, varying from microscopic infiltrations to nodules, necrotic areas, abscess cavities, or both.

Intestine.—Lesions vary from nodules to ulcers, the latter pin point in size to large, macroscopic, granulomatous areas.

Liver and Spleen.—Inflammatory foci scattered throughout; miliary nodules, with or without caseation; in advanced cases, necrosis of the parenchyma. Usually splenomegaly and enlarged liver due to proliferation of connective and reticuloendothelial tissues; eventually cirrhosis of the liver.

Adrenals.—Foci in cortex and medulla, with eventual caseation.

Bone Marrow.—In generalized infections almost invariably involved.

Blood.—In septicemic infections the number of both red and white cells is decreased.

DIAGNOSIS

The symptoms suggestive of histoplasmosis are: ulcers of the skin, nasal or oral mucosa; enlarged lymph nodes; obscure lung infection; intestinal ulcers; enlargement of liver, spleen, or both; anemia, leucopenia; irregular fever.

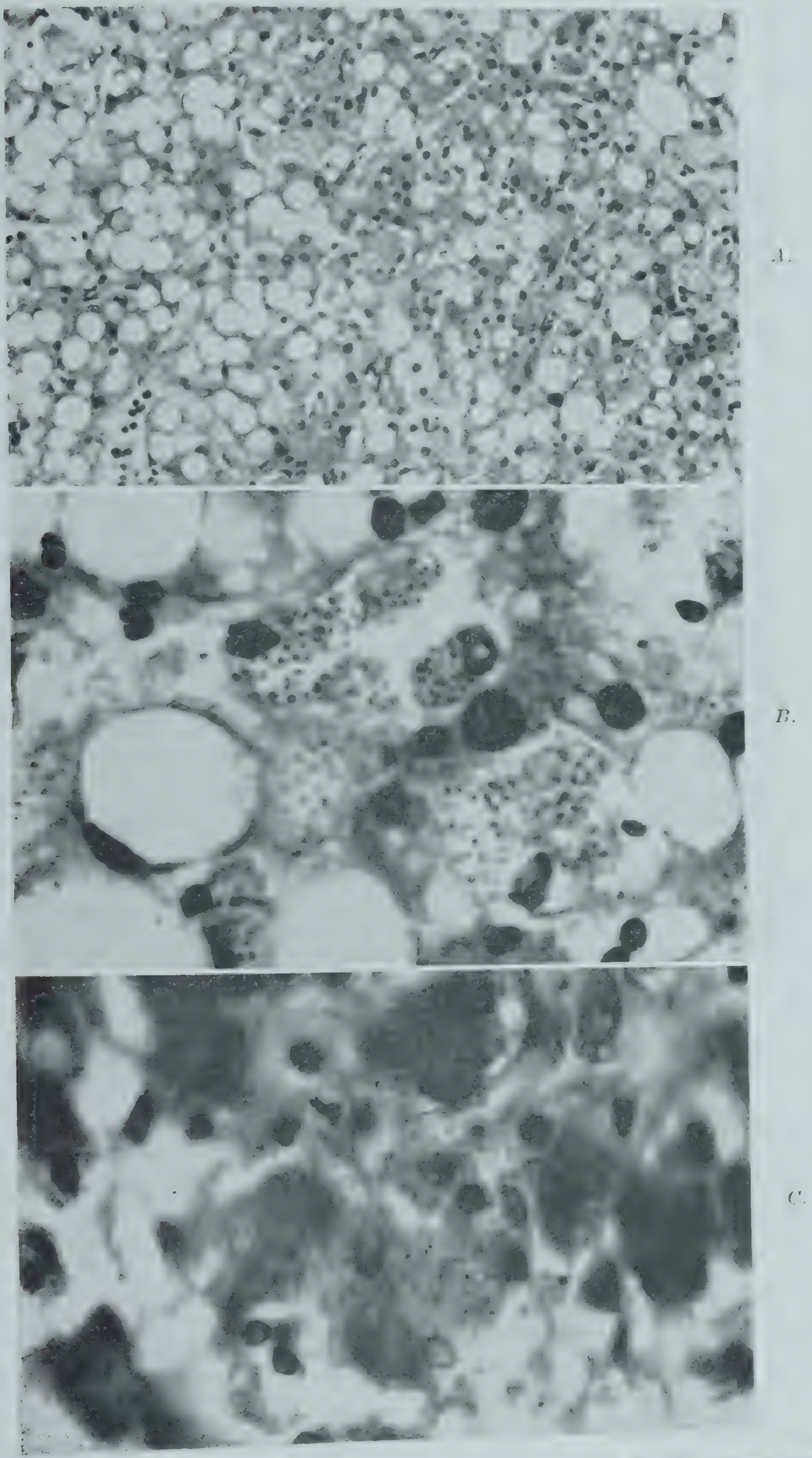


Fig. 424.—Human liver: A, *Histoplasma capsulatum*, low power; B, *H. capsulatum*, oil immersion; C, kala-azar, for comparison. (Courtesy of Oscar Felsenfeld.)

The diagnosis must be confirmed by demonstration and identificati the organism. In tissue *Histoplasma capsulatum* resembles *Leishmania don* The differentiation is based on the presence of a capsule and the absence blepharoplast in Histoplasma.

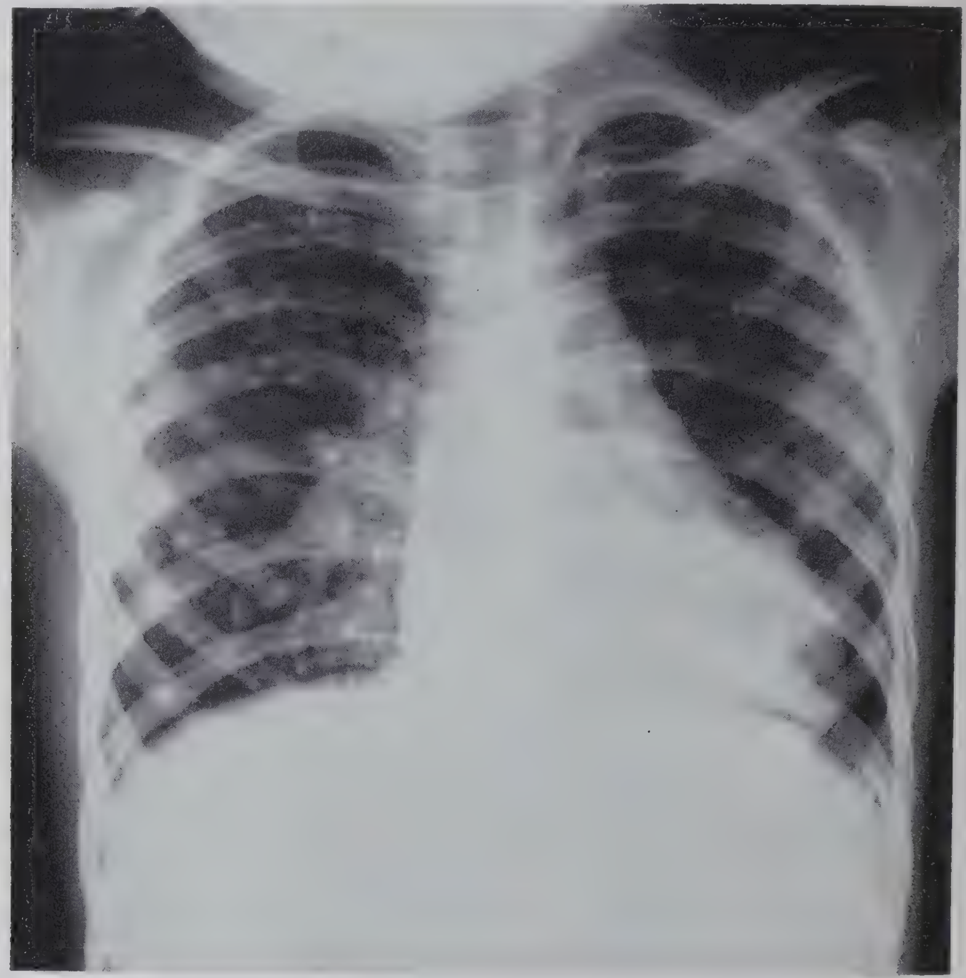


Fig. 425.—X-ray of chest of child with histoplasmosis. (Courtesy of H. S. Gordon, Assista Superintendent, Children's Hospital of Cook County, Chicago, and Oscar Felsenfeld.)

MATERIAL TO BE EXAMINED

In Localized Infections.—Scrapings, biopsies, aspirated material.

In Generalized Infections.—*Early,* puncture of the sternum or splee *late,* peripheral blood.

Technic of Examination

Scrapings from lesions and smears from bone marrow or blood should stained by the Giemsa method and examined with an oil immersion objecti for the presence of encapsulated, yeast-like organisms within the reticul endothelial cells. Biopsies should be rapidly sectioned and are best stained the Giemsa method.

To isolate the fungus, infected material is cultured on Sabouraud's medi beef infusion both and agar, and blood agar, at 22° and 37° C. Growth ma not be apparent before 3 or 4 weeks.

TREATMENT

Results of treatment have been very discouraging. It may be possible, in some cases, to resort to surgery. Some authorities have spoken favorably of antimony compounds—antimony tartrate and Fuadin. Local antiseptic is of very little value when the disease has become generalized.

MELIOIDOSIS

In synonyms of this disease are Stanton's disease and *Malleomyces pseudo-mallei.* It occurs in Burma, the Malaya States, and Ceylon. It bears many resemblances to tularemia because both are diseases of rodents which acci-dentally attack man. It closely resembles glanders. It was reported by Stanton and Fletcher in 1932, although earlier Whitmore (1912) found the bacterium in autopsies of babies in Rangoon. Krishnaswami found 200 cases n Rangoon. Other cases have been reported in Singapore.

The *Bacterium whitmorei* closely resembles *M. mallei.* The bacillus is small and occurs in very large numbers in all acute lesions of the disease. With Leishman's stain, bipolar staining is commonly seen. It resembles the glanders bacillus in colonies but is more actively motile.

The first case reported in the Western Hemisphere is that by McDowell and Varney (1947). In their case a white man showed ulcers and sinuses of the right buttock and thigh of 8 years' duration. His medical history showed a eginning of this pathology in a fall, with injury of the coccygeal area. This was followed by dark swelling and appearances of infection. From this time n he had many episodes including formation of abscesses, sinuses, etc.

The specific organism was recovered repeatedly from blood agar cultures f pus and tissue debris. Cultures of the patient's blood and sputum were egative. The organisms from both the smooth and rough colonies were poorly taining, bipolar, gram-negative and nonacid-fast, and under suitable condi-ons they exhibited rapid serpentine mobility. This is in accord with the escription in most textbooks, namely, a more rapid motion than the *M. mallei.* Those from rough colonies averaged 2 by 0.6 microns in size, while those from mooth colonies were usually longer and narrower, occasionally reaching a length of 5 to 6 microns. They showed parallelism and were usually ar-ranged in an irregular network. The bacilli appeared encapsulated, especially n freshly isolated cultures or animal lesions, but no capsules were demon-trated by staining. The colonies exactly resembled those of *M. pseudo-mallei* as described by Topley. Growth was strictly aerobic. The organisms rew rapidly and profusely on all commonly used media at 24° to 37° C., de-elopment being especially good on media with a tryptose base and better on lood agar than on plain agar. Colonies of the smooth form were entire, convex, nd mucoid, and often grew to a diameter of 8 mm. These colonies were initially rayish white but changed to a deep brown. They were surrounded by a narrow nner zone of complete hemolysis and a larger zone of diffuse hemolysis. In this ase, general therapy with sulfonamide drugs, penicillin, and streptomycin was neffectual.

The diagnosis of melioidosis was carried out by bacteriologic investigatio for the purpose of differentiating it from the glanders bacillus. McDowell a Varney's experiences are typical of the bacteriologic methods to be employe

References

Histoplasmosis

Conant, N. F.: 1941. A Cultural Study of the Life Cycle of Histoplasma Capsulatum– Darling 1906, J. Bact. **41:** 563-579.

Crumrine, R. M., and Kessel, John F.: 1931. Histoplasmosis (Darling) Without Splenomegaly, Am. J. Trop. Med. **11:** 435-449.

Da Rocha-Lima, H.: 1912. Zentralbl. f. Bakt. (Abt. 1 Orig.) **67:** 223, 249.

Darling, Samuel T.: 1906. A Protozoon General Infection. Histoplasma Capsulata Producing Pseudotubercles in the Lungs and Focal Necroses in the Liver, Spleen and Lymph Nodes, J. A. M. A. **46:** 1283-1285.

Darling, Samuel T.: 1909. The Morphology of the Parasite (Histoplasma Capsulatum) and the Lesions of Histoplasmosis, a Fatal Disease of Tropical America, J. Exper. Med. **11:** 515-531.

De Monbreun, W. A.: 1934. Cultivation and Cultural Characteristics of Darling's Histoplasma Capsulatum, Am. J. Trop. Med. **14:** 93-125.

De Monbreun, W. A.: 1939. Dog as Natural Host for Histoplasma Capsulatum; Report of Case of Histoplasmosis in the Animal, Am. J. Trop. Med. **19:** 565-587.

Dodd, Katherine, and Thompkins, Edna H.: 1934. Case of Histoplasmosis of Darling in Infant, Am. J. Trop. Med. **14:** 127-137.

Galli-Valerio, B.: 1909. L'état actuel de nos connaissances sur l'agent spécifique de la lymphangite epzootique des équidés, Centralbl. f. Bakt., etc. (Abt. I) Referate. **44:** 577-582.

Meleney, Henry Edmund: 1925. The Histopathology of Kala-Azar in the Hamster, Monkey and Man, Am. J. Path. **1:** 147-168.

Meleney, Henry Edmund: 1940. Histoplasmosis (Reticulo-Endothelial Cytomycosis): A Review, Am. J. Trop. Med. **20:** 603-616.

Moore, Morris: 1934. Ann. Missouri Botan. Garden **21:** 347-348.

Moore, Morris: 1935. Ann. Missouri Botan. Garden **22:** 335-360.

Ota, Masas, and Langeron, M.: 1923. Nouvelle classification des dermatophytes, Ann. de parasitol. **1:** 305-336.

Ota, Masas: 1925. Offinites du Tricophyton albicans Nieuwenhuis avec les aleuriosporís du genre Glenospora Berk. et Curt., Ann. de parasitol. **3:** 79-84.

Phelps, B. M., and Mallory, F. B.: 1926. Toxic Cirrhosis and Primary Liver Cell Carcinoma Complicated by Histoplasmosis of the Lung, United Fruit Company, Medical Dept. Fifteenth Annual Report, pp. 115-123.

Ramsey, T. L., and Appelbaum, A. A.: 1942. Histoplasmosis "Darling," Am. J. Clin. Path. **12:** 85-94.

Riley, William A., and Watson, Cecil J.: 1926. Histoplasmosis of Darling, With Report of a Case Originating in Minnesota, Am. J. Trop. Med. **6:** 271-282.

Melioidosis

McDowell, Frank, and Varney, Philip L.: 1947. Melioidosis: Report of First Case From Western Hemisphere, J. A. M. A. **134:** 361-362.

Stanton, A. T., and Fletcher, W.: 1932. Melioidosis; Studies Inst. Med. Res., F. M. S., No. 21, London, John Bale, Sons & Danielsson, Ltd.

Whitmore, A., and Krishnaswami, C. S.: 1912. An Account of the Discovery of a Hitherto Undescribed Infective Disease Occurring Among the Population of Rangoon, Indian M. Gaz., Calcutta **47:** 262-267.

CHAPTER 53

ARTHROPODS—DIRECT AGENTS IN TROPICAL DISEASES

LUIS VARGAS

Arthropods are bilaterally symmetrical metazoa, with a chitinous exoskeleton, segmented body, and articulated legs. In some, a nascent state of parasitism can be observed since they may be found as predaceous or parasitic or saprozoic organisms, for example, *Pediculoides ventricosus*. The parasitic state not only affects the host, but results in a sort of mutual adaptation, the perfect parasite causing a minimum amount of damage, and the host reacting almost imperceptibly. The adaptation may require morphologic and functional modifications in the host as well as in the parasite.

Arthropods may be *facultative* parasites, that is, they may be capable of living not only as parasites, but they are able, also, to live apart from the host; or they may be *obligatory* parasites, incapable of living apart from the host, and, therefore, living in or on the host for all or a part of their existence.

Obligatory parasites such as *Pediculus humanus* die when removed from their host. Mosquitoes are *intermittent parasites*, while *Sarcoptes scabiei*, the parasite which causes itch, never leaves the host. Some are parasites exclusively of man, while others parasitize both man and lower animals. There is *accidental parasitism*, for example, those myriapods which may live for days or for months in the human body, but which are only rarely encountered in man. The name *periodic* parasite is given to that type of parasite which passes the early stages of its development within or upon a host, as in the case of myiasis.

In some arthropods such as mosquitoes, sand-flies, gnats, and horseflies, only the female sucks blood, this being the basis of its nutrition or stimulus for the formation of the eggs. In other types, bedbugs, fleas, and ticks, the males as well as the females bite. In the *Auchmeromyia luteola* only the larvae suck blood.

No clear line of separation can be indicated between external and internal parasites; some very small ticks, larvae of flies, pentatomes *(Linguatula)*, etc., may be considered as belonging to either of the two groups.

Entomophobia is abnormal fear of insects; it appears in certain mental states, in neurotic individuals, or in otherwise normal persons after a psychic shock.

Independent of their role as vectors, arthropods may cause disease by various mechanisms:

1. **Debilitation.**—They may be responsible for the so-called secondary anemias, due in part to loss of blood and in part to some toxic substance which acts upon the hematopoietic organs.

2. **Mechanical Irritation.**—The pathologic picture may be due to arthropod or to a part of one, and may be aggravated by a toxic secreti Frequently accidental or erratic parasitism is involved in this instance.

3. **Poisoning.**—Introduction of the saliva of the insect may provoke re tions which may be mild or grave, frequently with allergic manifestati similar to those caused by histamine and poison effect. The venom frequen is very complex and produces various effects, the most important being t vasodilatory and hemorrhagic effects, allergizing, cytolytic, coagulant, neur toxic, vesicant, thermogenic, and pruriginous. The poison may be intr duced by a bite or a sting as in the case of the South American ant know as "tucandeira" *(Paraponera clavata),* or fire ant of California and Mexi *(Solenopsis xyloni* var. *maniosa),* or the harvest ants of Texas and Californi (*Pogonomyrmex barbatus* and *Pogonomyrmex californicus,* respectively). Th so-called centipedes of the classes Chilopoda and Diplopoda and spiders also ar included in this group, as well as aquatic Hemiptera of the families Belostomida and Notonectidae. Poisoning due to introduction of the sting is observed in the case of the honeybee, or of the wasp, such as, *Vespula diabolica,* family Vespidae order Hymenoptera, commonly called yellow jackets or hornets. Scorpions also belong in this group. In the group which causes intoxication by means of nettle-like hairs are included larvae of butterflies or caterpillars, order Lepidoptera, with species included in the families Megalopygidae, Eucleidae, Thaumetopoeidae, Limantriidae, Arctiidae, Noctuidae, Saturniidae, and Nymphalidae.*

Vesicant fluid is produced especially by species of the order Coleoptera. Beetles, accidentally swatted on the skin, produce a vesicular dermatitis through a volatile substance called "cantharidin." Some species of Paederus, family Staphylinidae, called "picahuyes" or rove beetles, contain a substance similar to cantharidin, but which differs in that the effect appears 1 or 2 days after contact; the best-known species are *P. amazonicus* and *P. columbinus* of Brazil, and *P. irritans* of Ecuador. Under the name of seasonal vesicular dermatitis or temporary phlyctenular dermatitis, there has been described in Guatemala a disease produced by Staphylinidae. The disease appeared during the month of April, and affected many of the laborers who had been working at night.

A fluid extracted from *Diamphidia simplex,* family Chrysomelidae, is used by the Bushmen in South Africa to poison their arrows. Species of the families Oedemeridae and Paussidae also are mentioned as producing vesicular dermatitis. *Tribolium confusum* emits a gaseous substance which is irritating to the eyes and nasal mucosa. Some of the Phasmidae, order Orthoptera, commonly called "campamochas," walking sticks, stick bugs, throw off a fetid fluid which occasionally has been known to injure a person's eye.

In the group of diseases caused by arthropods, and which are classed as infestations, are included: myiasis, canthariasis, scoleciasis, itch, and tungiasis.

---

*In French Guiana, a pruriginous dermatosis has been described, caused by the stinging hairs of the female butterfly of the genus Hylesia, family Saturnidae.

CHAPTER 54

MYIASIS

Luis Vargas

DEFINITION AND RELATED TERMINOLOGY

Myiasis is a term used to designate a pathologic state in man or animals caused by diptera themselves in various stages of development. The term, commonly used only in connection with the larvae of flies, was first introduced by Hope (1840), and originally referred only to the larvae of Diptera which cause disease. This author also formulated the term "canthariasis" for the morbid state in which the larvae of Coleoptera are the etiologic agents. Canthariasis, always intestinal, may be due to *Tenebrio molitor* of Linnaeus, a tenebrionid of the family *Tenebrionidae*, or to *Blaps mortisaga* of Linnaeus, a tenebrionid of the subfamily Blaptinae, or it may be due to *Calandra oryzae*, a curculionid. All of these are very widely distributed, and are accidentally ingested with cereals, flour, etc.

The term "scoleciasis" was considered at first for cases due to Lepidoptera. "Porocephaliasis" implies infection of the human being by porocephalids of the class Arachnida, order Pentastomida, family Linguatulidae. These aberrant animals, with a very complicated life cycle, may be found in the valleys of the frontiers of Europe. *Armillifer armillatus* (Wyman, 1847) is relatively common in certain parts of West Africa, especially in the Belgian Congo, where it is found in the respiratory system. *Armillifer moniliformis* (Diesing, 1836) is found from Africa to the Philippines and Australia. The pathology is similar to that of the preceding species.

LIFE HABITS

Myiasis is divided into cutaneous, intestinal, nasal, ocular, auricular, urinary, and vaginal according to localization. Various types of this affection have been described from the most remote periods of the past; references to it are found in religious books, literary works, and historical accounts. In the New World, it has been known since 1587, when Soares de Souza first described cases of cutaneous myiasis.

Myiases are generally observed in the warmer seasons of the year. They are more frequent in children than in adults. Usually infected are persons who live outdoors in the fields, in contact with animals, and who are careless in their hygienic habits. Some forms of myiasis pass unnoticed through the host, the parasite being found accidentally. Intestinal myiases are especially of this type, and for this reason it is difficult to state their true incidence. Parasitism by flies may be due to specific, semispecific, or accidental tropism of the insect. In the last two circumstances, the larvae or pupae develop decomposing organic material such as food, excrement, wounds, etc., a entrance into the body easily occurs. With many species of insects this ac dent may be fatal.

Many species have been found in the digestive canal of man and in fe material, but such cases cannot be called parasitism. Species so found a included in Drosophila, Calobata, Piophila, Tachina, Hydrotaea, Musc Pyrellia, Philaematomyia, Anastrepha, and other genera. Sometimes myias has been attributed to Diptera that regularly or accidentally are found i fecal material but which have not actually been expelled by the suppose host.

According to Salem (1935), Desoil and Delhaye, in 1922, in experimenta investigations with eggs of *Calliphora vomitoria,* found that human gastric juice does not prevent the hatching of larvae from eggs which have been in the juice for 3 to 8 hours at 37° C.; if, however, the eggs remain in the juice for 10 hours, the larvae do not develop. Five per cent hydrochloric acid has no effect on the eggs in 2 to 5 hours. After a lapse of 2 to 7 hours at 37° C. in 2 to 10 per cent solutions of hydrochloric acid, the larvae were observed to emerge from the eggs. These authors concluded that the eggs pass through the stomach without being affected during the digestion of food. The resistance of the larvae is quite variable. Small, young larvae are more vulnerable. In organic liquids such as urine, feces, and bile of dogs, the larvae which are merely moistened develop normally at 15° C., and with difficulty at 37° C. In gastric juice, resistance varies from 2 to 5 hours at 37° C. for larvae that are submerged in the liquid, and from 5 to 12 hours for larvae which are only moistened.

From this, one may conclude that larvae with intact cuticle apparently are capable of resisting chemical action in the stomach, thus making infestation by digestion possible. Larvae of *C. vomitoria* are very sensitive to lack of air, to mechanical obstruction of the stigmas, and to pressure; for this reason, myiasis produced by these larvae is possible only in cases of marked gastrointestinal disturbances with aerophagy. In 1924, Desoil (according to Salem, 1935) concluded that at least in vitro the eggs of *C. vomitoria* are capable of resisting the chemical action of the gastric juice for the period of the normal digestion. Observations in vivo show that other factors which are fatal to the larvae may intervene.

Causey (1938) found that when larvae of *Drosophila melanogaster, Lucilia sericata, Phormia regina, Cochliomyia macelaria, Sarcophaga securifera,* and *Calliphora erythrocephala* are fed to dogs and cats, the larvae die or become immobilized in the stomach before 3 hours have elapsed, and they are eventually digested upon passing into the intestinal tract. In no case were living larvae of this species found in the large intestine or in stools of the experimental animals. According to this author, it is, therefore, difficult to understand how the larvae can produce the symptoms attributed to them.

Riley (1939) discussed experiments carried out by Causey (1938) and believes that while, undoubtedly, many cases may be justly attributed to contamination, there are other cases which cannot so easily be dismissed. He cites a case in which living larvae continued to be expelled for a long period by a patient who was under strict surveillance. In response to the physician's questions concerning the possibility of extracorporeal contamination, no such possibility appeared while obtaining samples for study, which included material from feces, vomitus, and from the rectum by proctoscopy. Riley (1939) saw several cases in which he was sure that living larvae, especially of Sarcophaga and also of Fannia and Eristalis were expelled from human intestines.

Mills and Peffer (1939) reported that larvae, pupae, molts, eggs, and excrement of *Tribolium confusum* Duval, boiled in oatmeal and fed experimentally to humans, caused no digestive upsets.

The larvae of *Auchmeromyia luteola* or "Congo floor maggot" is an exception among myiasis-producing larvae in that it is a blood sucker. Sometimes the number of parasites obtained in a clinical case reaches large numbers, as in the work of Arreaga (1941) who succeeded in extracting around 200 larvae of *C. hominivorax* from the nostrils.

Myiasis of the external male genitalia is infrequent. In the female, cases of vulvar myiasis are more often seen. Joseph, in 1885, found vulvar myiasis in a child, the first case of this type published in Europe. In Argentina, Barabino Amadeo and Jáuregui (1914) presented a case of penile myiasis in a 30-year-old patient with about 100 larvae of *C. hominivorax* present.

There are reported 5 cases of gastrointestinal and 1 case of nasal scoleciasis. Hinman and Faust (1932) reported a case in which the larva of *Tenebrio molitor* (Coleoptera) was found in a tonsil. In Spain, there was found in the inner ear of a patient *Acinopus picipesoc*, subfamily Harpalinae, family Carabidae, order Coleoptera. In the outer ear there have been found "tijeretas" or earwigs (*Forficula auricularia* Linnaeus, order Dermaptera), cockroaches, and fleas.

Control

Satisfactory hygienic conditions reduce the chances of infection. Recommendations for betterment of hygienic conditions are necessary. The use of repellents such as 6-2-2, sleeping in a tent when camping out, and exercise of care in eating clean food are also recommended. Animals which have been treated with phenothiazine for helminthiasis produce excreta in which larvae of flies do not develop. DDT is very useful in treating manure, in direct application to the hides of animals, in treating walls of stables, dunghills, etc.

Steward and Boyd (1934) reported that a spray composed of 15 per cent chloroform in almost any light vegetable oil is very useful for exterminating larvae which produce traumatic dermal myiasis.

Anesthesia of the larvae appears to be necessary before they can be extracted from cavities, etc., when living as parasites. It is also reported that powdered garlic given by mouth causes their elimination.

Dermatobia Hominis (Linnaeus, 1781)

This species is found in the Neotropical regions, in lowland zones around the Gulf of Mexico, Caribbean, and Atlantic regions, from Mexico to Northern Argentina. In Spanish it is called the "gusano de monte." In Mexico and Central America it is known by the Aztec name "colmoyote" or "moyocuil"; in Venezuela as "torcel"; in British Guiana as "anal coshol"; in French Guiana as "ver macaque"; in Brazil as "berme," "oura," or "ura"; and in Peru as "sututo-gusano" worm or "chute-subyacuro."

Dunn (1934) referred to a fatal case of myiasis of the brain. *Dermatobia hominis* has the interesting habit of utilizing other arthropods for transporting its eggs. A great variety of vectors is chosen by the female *D. hominis* to carry her eggs. This lack of discrimination in choosing vestors results in a great variety of hosts and in a great quantity of larvae which cannot complete their life cycles due to being carried on non-blood-sucking arthropods. The glued eggs found on a vector generally do not exceed 40 in number, but, as 1 female lays from 380 to 400 eggs, it is probable that she attacks many individuals of different species. *D. hominis* parasitizes not only man, but also cattle, sheep, dogs, cats, rabbits, squirrels, monkeys, agoutis, etc.

TREATMENT

Treatment varies according to each clinical case. To extract larvae from the skin, wounds, or cavities, minor surgical intervention is sometimes necessary. To withdraw larvae from the skin, an application of raw meat or of crushed tobacco compress over the spot is recommended. The larvae are generally drawn out easily and painlessly within 24 hours.*

References

Arreaga Gómez, A.: 1941. Miasis nasal por Chrysomia macellaria, An. Soc. méd.-quir. d. Guayas **[21]**: 881-885.

Barabino Amadeo, L., and Jáuregui, P.: 1914. Sobre un caso de miasis, Rev. del C.M.A. y Centro E. M. No. 154.

Causey, O.: 1938. Experimental Intestinal Myiasis, Am. J. Hyg. **28**: 481-486.

Dunn, L. H.: 1934. Prevalence and Importance of the Tropical Warble Fly Dermatobia Hominis Linneaus, in Panama, J. Parasitol. **20**: 119-226.

Hinman, E. H., and Faust, E. C.: 1932. The Ingestion of the Larvae of Tenebrio Molitor L. (Meal Worm) by Man, J. Parasitol. **19**: 119-120.

Hope, F. W.: 1840. On Insects and Their Larvae Found in the Human Body, Tr. Ent. Soc. Lond. **2**: 256-271.

James, M. T.: 1947. The Flies That Cause Myiasis in Man, Washington, D. C., U. S. Dept. Agric., Misc. Pub. No. 631, 175 pp.

Mills, H. B., and Peffer, J. H.: 1939. The Effect on Humans of the Ingestion of the Confused Flour Beetle, J. Econ. Entom. **32**: 874-875.

Riley, W. A.: 1939. The Possibility of Intestinal Myiasis in Man, J. Econ. Entom. **32**: 875-876.

Salem, H. H.: 1935. Myiasis in Egypt, J. Egypt. M. A. **18**: 238-254.

Tao Shan Ming: 1927. A Comparative Study of the Early Larval Stages of Some Common Flies, Am. J. Hyg. **7**: 735-761.

---

*Editor's note (O. F.): An alternative method is to freeze with methyl or ethyl chloride the superficially situated larvae and remove them surgically. Deeper lying larvae are left until they come to the surface spontaneously. Cattle are dipped in 2.5 per cent Rotenone in soap water emulsion.

CHAPTER 55

DISEASES CAUSED BY TICKS, MITES, CENTIPEDES, AND LICE

Luis Vargas

Order **Acarina**

This order includes both ticks and mites. They differ from other arachnids and from true insects by lack of body segmentation. In most of them the body is more or less oval, with the thorax and abdomen fused in such manner that no line of demarcation is observable between them; others have some tiny mark of separation between thorax and abdomen; and finally, the hair follicle mites, *Demodex*, look more or less like worms. The head is incomplete, although in ticks the capitulum is considered as a *false head*. As in other arachnids, the adults have 4 pairs of legs, and the larvae of most have only 3 pairs.

Acarids are widely distributed throughout the world, from tropical zones to the poles. Some are free living, subsisting on decomposing substances, vegetation, etc.; others are predatory and feed on small animals; some are aquatic; a great many are parasitic. Among them various grades of parasitism are found: some are entirely parasitic, while others parasitize only in one stage of their existence; some are intermittent parasites. Moreover, they are important in the transmission of various pathogenic agents, such as viruses, spirochetes, rickettsiae, Salmonellae, Bartonellae, Pasteurellae, Sporozoa, hemogregarines, flagellates, and even filariae.

They may be divided into the following superfamilies: Ixodoidea, in which are included the ticks; Parasitoidea; Eupodoidea; Thrombidoidea; Hydrachnoidea; Tarsonemoidea; Tyroglyphoidea; Sarcoptoidea; and Demodicoidea, which includes mites.

Acarids of importance to medicine are not found in all these superfamilies; we shall concern ourselves only with families of interest in this respect.

Superfamily IXODOIDEA Banks, 1894

Representatives of this superfamily belong to the suborder Metastigmata. They have various common names in different parts of the world; some of them are "garrapatas," "carrapatos," "ticks," "Zecken," "tiques," etc. They are widely distributed but abound principally in tropical and subtropical regions. They localize principally in those parts of the body where the skin is thin and where there are many blood vessels (abdomen, neck, ears, groin, etc.).

Ixodoidea are differentiated from other acarids principally by the presence of a pair of stigmal plates situated laterally, generally posterior to the fourth pair of feet. They have a false head or capitulum, showing several characteristic structures as follows: primarily a basal portion or *basis capituli,* a pair *palpi,* a pair of *chelicerae* with serrate fingers on the outer edge, and a rigi *hypostome,* almost always dentate, on the ventral surface.

Ixodoidea are divided into 2 families: Argasidae and Ixodidae.

By using the following key, the genera of these 2 families may be determined.

Family **Argasidae** Canestrini, 1890

(Key from Cooley and Kohls, 1944)

1. With a definite sutural line separating dorsal and ventral surfaces ---------- *Argas*
   Without a definite sutural line separating dorsal and ventral surfaces ---------- 2
2. Nymphs with integument provided with spines; hypostome well developed; adults with granular integument and vestigial hypostome ---------- *Otobius*
   Integument of adults and nymphs similar in general, mammillated or tuberculated, without spines; hypostome of different forms in nymph and adults but not vestigial 3
3. Hypostome wide at the base and spoon shaped (associated with bats) ---------- *Antricola*
   Hypostome of various forms, never spoon shaped (associated with several classes of animals, including bats) ---------- *Ornithodoros*

Family **Ixodidae** Murray, 1877

1. Without eyes ---------- 2
   With eyes ---------- 4
2. Mouth parts elongated, second joint of pedipalpus longer than wide ---------- 3
   Mouth parts shortened, second joint of pedipalpus slightly longer than wide; scutum not ornate; second joint of pedipalpus extending laterally ---------- *Haemaphysalis*
3. Anal grooves anterior to anus, scutum inornate ---------- *Ixodes*
   Anal grooves posterior to anus, scutum ornate ---------- *Aponomma*
4. Mouth parts much larger than basis capituli ---------- 5
   Mouth parts approximately the size of basis capituli ---------- 6
5. Scutum generally inornate; eyes submarginal; ventral plates present in male ---------- *Hyalomma*
   Scutum generally ornate; eyes marginal; ventral plates lacking in male ---------- *Amblyomma*
6. Fourth coxa larger than the others ---------- 7
   Fourth coxa approximately of same size as others ---------- 9
7. Spur of fourth coxa very large; basis capituli hexagonal; scutum inornate; without adanal plates; festoons ---------- *Rhipicentor*
   Spur of fourth coxa small or absent; basis capituli rectangular ---------- 8
8. Scutum ornate ---------- *Dermacentor*
   Scutum inornate ---------- *Otocentor*
9. Festoons; articulation of fourth pair of legs normal; ventral plates present; scutum ornate ---------- *Rhipicephalus*
   Without festoons ---------- 10
10. Joints of fourth pair of legs normal; palpus with transverse border; first coxa bifurcated ---------- *Boophilus*
    Joints of fourth pair of legs widened; palpus without transverse border; first coxa not bifurcated ---------- *Margaropus*

Most argasids, like many insects, suck blood rapidly, and are intermittent parasites. Ixodids, on the other hand, generally attach themselves to the host and remain there for several days or even weeks, depending upon certain factors of development. Some argasids also remain attached to the host for a long period, as in the case of nymphs of *Otobius megnini,* just as there are ixodids, such as *Haemaphysalis inermis,* which have a very short feeding period.

The number of molts in ticks is variable; argasids may have from 3 to 7 or more, while the ixodids have only 2. In the first molt, they pass from the larval to the nymph stage, and in the second, from the nymph to the adult state.

Fecundity of ticks, as well as their life span, is of great importance in their role as transmitters of disease. In general, they produce a fantastic number of eggs. As to their life span, it is truly astonishing; a tick can survive without food for long periods of time—an argasid can survive for several years without feeding. Mating, in argasids, may be repeated several times, taking place in hiding, never upon the host. They hide within cracks and crevices of houses, or in the nests of their hosts, and emerge at night to suck blood for a short period of time. Larvae and nymphs generally feed several times before molting; the adult female generally feeds several times, depositing a small pile of eggs after each feeding. In some, the body is flat and does not increase in size by alimentation, for the dilatation due to intake of blood takes place in a dorsoventral direction. Larvae and nymphs of Ixodidae feed once during each stage of development.

Family **ARGASIDAE** Canestrini, 1890

Genus **Argas** Latreille, 1796

Argas persicus (Oken), 1818.—This species is cosmopolitan, having as hosts principally chickens, a great number of which are killed through general exhaustion and as the direct consequences of the bites. In Persia it is reputed to be very dangerous, even killing people. Experimentally, the virus of yellow fever has been retained in the tissues of this tick. It transmits, by development and transovarially, relapsing fever in Europe, Asia, Africa, and North and South America.

Argas reflexus (Fabricius), 1794.—This species has been observed in England, France, Germany, Italy, Russia, Romania, Algiers, Colombia, and the United States. When these parasites are very numerous, they may cause death of pigeons and other birds. In man, the zone of the bite, which is very painful, becomes swollen, and presents intense pruritus which sometimes extends well beyond the bitten area; severe erythematous eruption or urticaria and edema may occur. Following the bite, there often is nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, dyspnea, irregular pulse, etc. Pyogenic bacteria may be transmitted through the bite, giving rise to furuncles, abscesses, phlegmons, etc.

Argas mianensis (Brumpt), 1921.—This species is thought to transmit "Mianah" fever, a form of relapsing fever in Iran, which is probably transmitted to man through development and transovarially.

Genus **Otobius** Banks, 1912

Otobius megnini Dugés, 1884.—This tick is very common in Mexico and has also been reported in the United States, Argentina, Brazil, Chile, South Africa, and India. It causes otobiosis when introduced into the ear of man, livestock, or horses. The effect of its bite is exceedingly painful and irritating; it may cause death of cattle.

Genus **Ornithodorus** Koch, 1844

Ornithodorus savignyi Audouin, 1826.—In Europe, it transmits th spirochetes of relapsing fever to rodents. Transmission takes place by d velopment and heredity. In Central Africa it transmits to rats and mice th *Borrelia duttoni* of relapsing fever. In North Africa and in the Mediterranea regions it transmits to rodents *Borrelia hispanica* and *B. normandi.* Experimentally it has also transmitted *B. venezuelensis.* This tick has been experimentally infected with the *Trypanosoma cruzi,* which develops within it.

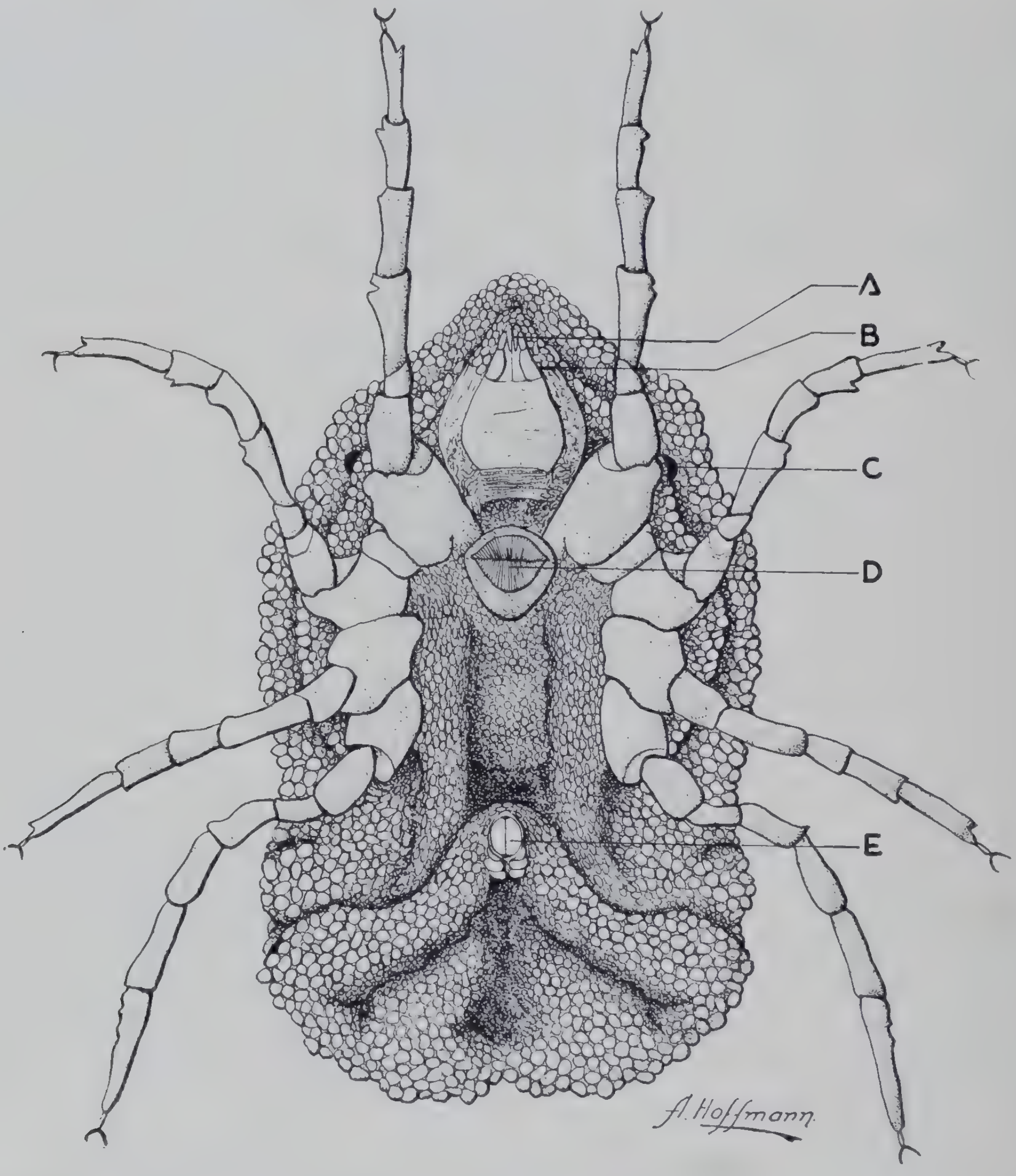


Fig. 426.—Ventral view of *Ornithodoros coriaceus* Koch. *A,* mouth parts; *B,* camerostoma; *C,* eyes; *D,* genital orifice; *E,* anus.

Ornithodorus moubata Murray, 1877.—This species has produced serious local lesions in man and animals. Its painful bite quickly becomes circumscribed by a circle of ecchymosis a centimeter in diameter. When attached to man in great numbers, this species may cause anemia. The virus of spring and summer encephalomyelitis has been transported in this tick. It has served as an experimental vector of the yellow fever virus. Rickettsiae of tick fever of South Africa have been transported to the United States in this tick. Transmission of

Rickettsia diaporica has been demonstrated, stage by stage, and by heredity. In Central Africa it can transmit to rats, mice, and man, by development and heredity, *Borrelia duttoni* of relapsing fever. Experimentally, it has transmitted *Borrelia recurrentis* of Russia as well as *B. novyi* of America. It has transmitted, through its bite, *B. persica*, the pathogenic agent of spirochetosis of Central Asia. Experimentally, it has transmitted *Pasteurella tularensis*, but the infection is fatal to the tick. It permits development of *Trypanosoma cruzi*.

Ornithodorus coriaceus Koch, 1844.—A species found in California and Mexico. The bite is unpleasant, painful, and irritating. The acute pain is rapidly followed by extensive swelling with numbness at the site. The wound may persist for several months, forming a scab with lymph exudate.

Ornithodorus hermsi Wheeler, Herms, and Meyers, 1935.—Found in the western part of the United States in California, Colorado, northern Idaho, and also in Oregon, Washington, Nevada, and probably in southern British Columbia. It transmits, by development and heredity, the spirochetes of relapsing fever *(Borrelia turicata)*.

Ornithodorus nicollei Mooser, 1932.—Mexican species. By means of this tick rickettsiae of spotted fever of the United States have been transmitted experimentally, as well as São Paulo and Colombian typhus. It can, perhaps, be considered as a potential vector in Mexico. Hereditary transmission has been demonstrated in the tick. *Rickettsia diaporica* may be preserved in the tissues of the tick for more than 200 days, but no microorganism is transmitted through its feeding. The same is true of *Pasteurella tularensis*. This organism is more noxious to the tick, since it delays the molting, and shortly after the tick has become infected it is dwarfed. Experimentaly, it can transmit Turkestan relapsing fever.

Ornithodorus turicata Dugés, 1876.—A New World species. The bite of this tick is very painful, causing extensive swelling and irritation, which may in man have serious consequences. In some animals, for example in hogs, the bite is fatal. Rickettsiae of Rocky Mountain fever have been found in it, but whether the tick transmits the disease is not known. Rickettsiae of "Q" fever have also been found. Experimentally, the organisms of São Paulo typhus remain actively in its body but are not transmitted through its bite. By development and heredity, it transmits borrelias of relapsing fever of the United States, or *Borrelia turicata*, which is found also in Aguascalientes, Mexico. It also transmits *B. venezuelensis* which is thought to be the cause of spirochetosis in Colombia. Experimentally, it has transmitted *B. duttoni*, *B. persica*, and *B. babylonensis*. It may carry in its tissues the bacteria of tularemia, but it is not known to be the transmitter; experimentally it may ingest microfilariae of *Onchocerca volvulus* of man.

Ornithodorus parkeri Cooley, 1936.—Rickettsiae of United States Rocky Mountain spotted fever have been found in this tick; however, there is no certainty that it is the natural transmitter. It is a very efficient experimental vector of American spotted fever. It has readily transmitted, experimentally, various types of spotted fevers by its bite. It can carry *Rickettsia diaporica* in its tissues, the microorganism retaining its virulence for several months; howeve infection does not take place during feeding. On the other hand, its excreta a infectious. By development, it transmits spirochetes of relapsing fever in th northwestern part of the United States. It can carry *Pasteurella tularensi* which retains its virulence for several months, but it is not known to be transmitter, although its fecal matter is infectious. Experimentally, it i capable of infection by *Trypanosoma cruzi.*

Ornithodorus talaje Guérin-Méneville, 1849.—The bite is very irritating and painful to man and the local effects uncomfortable. It transmits *Borrelia venezuelensis,* the cause of relapsing fever of South and Central America, principally the hilly parts of South America, Guatemala, Colombia, Panama, and Mexico. Transmission is effected among the ticks by development and heredity. Man, rats, monkeys, and, in general, a variety of domestic and wild animals are infected by this species. Borrelias of relapsing fever have been isolated from ticks captured in Arizona and Texas, in the United States. The species can maintain, for long periods of time, the *Borrelia persica* but cannot transmit it by bite.

Ornithodorus amblus Chamberlin, 1920.—Found in the Guano Islands of Peru. It attacks man, causing lesions which may persist for a long period. It has been infected experimentally with *Trypanosoma cruzi.*

Ornithodorus rudis Karsch, 1880.—Central and South American species. The bite is very painful and produces ecchymosis. The species has been utilized as a medium for transporting rickettsiae of petechial fever of Tobia, Colombia. In tropical America, it is the most important transmitting agent of the spirochetes of relapsing fever of man, *Borrelia venezuelensis,* which it transmits by heredity and development.

Ornithodorus capensis Neumann, 1901.—Cape Province. Bite is very painful to man.

Ornithodorus pavimentosus Neumann, 1901.—The bite of this African species is very painful to man.

Ornithodorus erraticus Lucas, 1849.—A species from Algeria. The bite of this tick is very painful. It causes ecchymosis, with a diameter of 2 cm., in some cases with a passing febrile reaction. In North and West Africa, it transmits the *Borrelia duttoni,* the cause of relapsing fever. It also transmits to man the *B. hispanica* which causes relapsing fever in North Africa and the Mediterranean countries, principally Spain. Transmission in ticks takes place by development and heredity. It may transmit *B. persica* by bite.

Ornithodorus tholozani Laboulbéne and Megnin, 1882.—In Asia Minor and Central Asia, this species of tick transmits, by development and heredity, *Borrelia persica,* which causes relapsing fever in these regions. Transmission is effected by a bite, as is that of *B. recurrentis* and *B. hispanica.*

Ornithodorus lahorensis Neumann, 1908.—The bite of this species of Asia Minor is quite painful and troublesome. It frequently causes anemia in sheep. Experimentally the tick has retained in its tissues *Rickettsia prowazekii* for 25 days, at the expiration of which time it was capable of transmitting the infection. Through development and heredity it transmits borrelias of relapsing fever in Asia. *Trypanosoma cruzi* can develop and multiply in the body of this tick.

Ornithodorus furcosus Neumann, 1908.—Ecuador. This species has been experimentally infected with *Trypanosoma cruzi.*

Ornithodorus rostratus, Beaurepaire-Aragao, 1911.— This species is found in Brazil. The bite produces in man extensive areas of ecchymosis. The injected anticoagulant produces prolonged hemorrhage. It is capable of causing ulcers. It may transmit, experimentally, by bite, the virus of yellow fever; transmission to certain primates has been effected. It has transmitted, experimentally, rickettsiae of São Paulo typhus.

Ornithodorus braziliensis Beaurepaire-Aragao, 1925.—In Brazil. The bite produces local and general reactions in man, with erythemas and pruriginous papules at the site of the bite, followed by headache and fever.

Ornithodorus normandi Larrouse, 1923.—In Tunis. The bite is but slightly painful, causing only slight pruritus and ecchymosis. It transmits *Borrelia hispanica,* the cause of relapsing fever of North Africa and the Mediterranean.

Ornithodorus foleyi Parrot, 1928.—In Algiers. The local lesion produced by the bite resembles a furuncle or a syphilitic chancre; provokes fever.

Ornithodorus verrucosus Olenev, Sassuchin, and Fenink, 1934.—In Asia Minor and Central Asia. It transmits, both by development and by heredity, *Borrelia persica,* the cause of relapsing fever in these regions.

Ornithodorus asperus Warburton, 1918.—In the Near East. It transmits *Spirochaeta babylonensis* in the Mediterranean regions, in the Bileck-Steppes, to the east of Iran.

Ornithodorus tartakovsky Olenev, 1931.—It transmits spirochetes of relapsing fever in the desert-steppes of Central Asia and Turkmenistan.

Ornithodorus gurneyi Warburton, 1926.—In Australia. Through the bite it can produce generalized paralysis, blindness, and loss of consciousness.

Family **IXODIDAE** Murray, 1877

Genus **Ixodes** Latreille, 1795

Ixodes ricinus Linnaeus, 1758.—In Europe and South Africa. The filtrable virus of "louping ill" can multiply in this species, being transmitted, probably, to man, sheep, etc. Experimentally, it has transmitted *Rickettsia rickettsi,* the cause of Rocky Mountain spotted fever.

Ixodes ricinus californicus Banks, 1904.—The bite of this species is very painful and irritating. At times the mouth parts remain in the skin when it bites man, causing secondary infection and serious reactions. In North America, chiefly in southwestern Oregon, it transmits to rodents and to sheep, by proliferation and by heredity, the bacteria of tularemia.

Ixodes hexagonus Leach, 1815.—In Europe. This tick can retain *Pasteurella pestis* for many days within its tissues.

Ixodes bicornis Neumann, 1906.—In Mexico. The bite may be fatal to children. It provokes a high fever in man.

Ixodes pilosus Koch, 1884.—In South Africa. It causes paralysis. Thi occurs while the female of the species is feeding.

Ixodes holocyclus Neumann, 1899.—In Australia. It originates a morbi state which resembles paralysis caused by ticks in the United States. Cases of paralysis occur chiefly on the eastern coast of Australia. It may affect man, sheep, cats, puppies, etc. In Australia it transmits *Rickettsia burnetti,* the cause of Australian "Q" fever.

Ixodes persulcatus Schulze, 1930.—The bite causes an inflammatory reaction. The homogeneous zone surrounding the buccal parts of the tick is composed of eosinophiles, free of nuclei. This tick causes paralysis while feeding. In Russia it is the reservoir and the transmitting agent of the virus of spring and summer encephalomyelitis.

Ixodes scapularis Say, 1821.—North and Central America. It may attack man.

Ixodes ozarcus Cooley, 1944.—This North American tick frequently attacks man, causing intensely troublesome effects.

Genus **Haemaphysalis** Koch, 1844

Haemaphysalis cinnabarina Koch, 1844.—This species, found in western Canada and in Crete, is believed to produce paralysis, which may prove fatal. It can transmit tularemia to several species of birds. In Asia it has transmitted the organism of tularemia to rodents.

Haemaphysalis leporis-palustris Packard, 1869.—It transmits rickettsiae of Rocky Mountain spotted fever to different species of rabbits and to some birds, principally game birds. In the tick the microorganism is carried from stage to stage, and it may also be hereditarily transmitted. It is a potential transmitter to man. Infected forms have been found in northeastern United States. It has been demonstrated that it transmits *Pasteurella tularensis* to rabbits.

Haemaphysalis bispinosum Neumann, 1897.—In New Zealand. This species is considered as a potential vector in the cycle of "Q" fever.

Haemaphysalis concinna Koch, 1844.—This is an American species which experimentally transmits rickettsiae of spotted fever.

Haemaphysalis leachi Audouin, 1827.—The bite has a very troublesome effect upon man. In Africa it transmits, probably by development and heredity, rickettsiae which cause a type of fever that is not relapsing. In Africa, it transmits biliary fever to dogs, not only in the adult stage, but by development and heredity. In South Africa it transmits *Babesia canis,* the cause of malignant icterus in dogs. Transmission is effected by the larvae as well as by the nymphs and adults. In Africa the species also transmits bovine piroplasmosis.

Haemaphysalis humerosa Warburton and Nuttall, 1909.—In Australia. It transmits Australian "Q" fever among the bandicoots.

Genus **Dermacentor** Koch, 1844

Dermacentor reticulatus Fabricius, 1794. Spotted fever may be transmitted, experimentally, by this species of tick.

Dermacentor variabilis Say, 1821.—It is found in the eastern United States and the Pacific coast. It produces paralysis. In these districts, the nymphs and adults transmit to man, by development and by heredity, the rickettsiae of Rocky Mountain fever. In rural areas along the Atlantic Coast of the United States, as, for example, Connecticut and North Carolina, the species transmits a special type of spotted fever. It transmits *Pasteurella tularensis* to man, from the Rocky Mountains eastward, in the United States.

Dermacentor andersoni Stiles, 1908.—It causes progressive paralysis in children, sheep, dogs, rabbits, cattle, deer, etc., in North America, principally in western United States and Canada. Paralysis occurs while the female tick is feeding. In Australia, there occurs a similar illness. Quite serious local lesions result in man, due to the bite, but they are more frequently seen in cattle. Anemia is produced in cattle, sheep, rabbits, deer, and, in general, in those animals upon which great numbers of the tick feed. Several types of filtrable virus have been isolated from this species. In 1926, Noguchi reported a filtrable virus isolated from *Dermacentor andersoni*, collected west of the Bitter Root Valley in the United States. In 1938, Davis and Cox isolated a virus, which, according to their report, was probably the same as that of Noguchi. These viruses are transmitted from the adult to the egg and pass unaffected through the larval, nymph, and adult stages. They may cause infection in man. There is probably some relation between this infection and Australian "Q" fever. In North America, several filtrable viruses have been experimentally transmitted to horses, causing encephalomyelitis. Transmission in ticks may be hereditary, and is passed from stage to stage in the life cycle of the tick. The principal illness transmitted by this species of Dermacentor in the United States is Rocky Mountain fever. The rickettsiae of this fever are transmitted to man, horses, cattle, and sheep, in such Rocky Mountain states as Montana and Wyoming, extending toward the Pacific. In ticks, the transmission takes place by development and by heredity. The pathogenic agent is *Rickettsia rickettsi*. It is said that this species of tick also transmits endemic (marine) typhus. By intrarectal inoculation it keeps active, for at least 14 days, rickettsiae of endemic Mexican typhus. The tick also transmits *Rickettsia diaporica* of American "Q" fever to man and to some animals, and probably also the rickettsiae of Colorado tick fever. Experimentally, it has transmitted *Salmonella enteritidis*, as well as *Bartonella bacilliformis*, the cause of Orova fever. In the United States, it transmits *Pasteurella tularensis*.

Dermacentor occidentalis Marx, 1892.—This species is a potential transmitter, to man, of Rocky Mountain fever. In the United States, principally in California and Oregon, it transmits the bacteria of tularemia to man and to cattle.

Dermacentor parumapertus Neumann, 1901.—In the United States this species is the potential transmitter, to man, of Rocky Mountain spotted fever.

It also transmits to rabbits the so-called rabbit spotted fever. In the Uni States it has transmitted, experimentally, the bacteria of tularemia.

Dermacentor silvarum Olenev, 1931.—In Asia, this species has transm ted the organism of tularemia to rodents, experimentally, and only from st to stage.

Genus **Otocentor** Cooley, 1938

Otocentor nitens Neumann, 1897.—American species. It transmits ric ettsiae of endemic typhus.

Genus **Rhipicephalus** Koch, 1844

Rhipicephalus sanguineus Latreille, 1804.—This cosmopolitan specie of tick produces serious local lesions in its host, which is principally the dog The bite produces a pruriginous lesion which quickly disappears. In Indi it causes intensive anemia in dogs. Experimentally, in Yugoslavia, it has produced paralysis. In Europe it has caused toxic icterus in dogs, but the mechanism of this disease is not known. Experimentally, it has been proved capable of maintaining the virus of yellow fever in its tissues for several weeks. It is a potential transmitter of United States Rocky Mountain fever. In Mexico, in the State of Sonora, it has been found naturally infected with rickettsiae of Rocky Mountain fever. It also transmits São Paulo typhus in Brazil. In Europe and in the Mediterranean regions, it transmits, by development and heredity, *Rickettsia rickettsi conori,* the cause of "fièvre exanthématique," "fièvre boutonneuse," or Kumaon fever, in these regions. In Africa it also transmits the *Rickettsia rickettsi conori,* the cause of the so-called tropical typhus of Kenya, or pseudotyphus of Kenya. In Asia, it transmits rickettsiae which cause tick typhus of India. It is also considered as a potential vector of Australian "Q" fever. Tick fever of South Africa is also attributed to its bite. In Algeria and in the Mediterranean zone generally, it transmits *Borrelia hispanica,* the cause of Spanish relapsing fever. In Iran it transmits *Borrelia theileri* to cattle and to sheep. Experimentally, it has successfully transmitted *Pasteurella tularensis.* In South America it transmits *Trypanosoma cruzi* mechanically to armadillos, *zarigüeyas,** and probably to domestic animals. Neiva demonstrated that it transmits this microorganism indirectly. When experimentally infected with *Leishmania infantum,* the species maintains its virulence in the tissues for several weeks.

Rhipicephalus simus Koch, 1844.—In East Africa, it causes a febrile illness by its bite.

Rhipicephalus evertsi Neumann, 1897.—From Australia and Africa. In Africa it transmits spirochetes of relapsing fever, both by development and by heredity.

Rhipicephalus haemaphysaloides Supino, 1897.—It transmits rickettsiae of pseudotyphus in India.

Rhipicephalus schulzei Olenev, 1920.—A Russian species. It is capable of retaining the bacillus of plague in its digestive tube for several days.

---

*A small marsupial about the size of a cat.

Genus **Boophilus** Curtice, 1891

Boophilus annulatus Say, 1821.—American species. It may parasitize nan, causing very troublesome local lesions.

Boophilus microplus Canestrini, 1887. In South America it is probably he transmitting agent of spirochetes of relapsing fever.

Genus **Hyalomma** Koch, 1844

Hyalomma dromedarii Koch, 1844.—In Yugoslavia it has experimentally oduced paralysis. In Sicily, the bite causes local inflammation of an erysipelatous aspect, with suppuration, lymphangitis, and high temperature, acompanied by delirium. It can transmit the bacillus of plague.

Hyalomma volgense Schülze and Schlottke, 1929.—This species is capable f transmitting plague by its bite and infective excretions.

Genus **Amblyomma** Koch, 1844

Amblyomma ovale Koch, 1844.—In Paraguay it is assumed that this tick s capable of transmitting American cutaneous leishmaniasis.

Amblyomma maculatum Koch, 1844.—Parker, Kohls, Cox, and Davis 1939) isolated a rickettsiform organism from this tick, removed from cows Cleveland, Texas. Cox (1941) cultivated in the ticks collected in Texas and eorgia the rickettsiae of petechial fever of Tobia in Colombia. It also transits a rickettsia which is very similar to that of "fièvre boutonneuse."

Amblyomma americanum Linnaeus, 1758.—Its bite causes suppurations hich leave an inflamed, itching zone that may persist for several weeks. In e United States this species is the potential transmitter of Rocky Mountain ver. By means of this tick, American "Q" fever has been transmitted exrimentally to guinea pigs. In Texas it is believed capable of transmitting new disease known as Bullis fever, the pathogenic agent of which is a ckettsia. In North America it transmits bacteria of tularemia to rodents and eep, by proliferation and by heredity. Experimental transmission has also een effected.

Amblyomma cajennense Fabricius, 1787. The bite of this species is ry irritating and painful. It frequently causes an ulcer which cicatrizes dly with difficulty. The pruritus lingers for weeks. In South America, experiental transmission by means of the bite has been successful in transferring filtrable virus of yellow fever, although this work has not been fully conmed. Transmission to primates has been effected. In the United States is a potential transmitter, to man, of Rocky Mountain fever. In South nerica, it transmits, by development and heredity, *Rickettsia braziliensis*, causative agent of São Paulo typhus. In the State of Minas Geraes, Brazil, oreira and Magalhaes have transmitted a disease which is analogous to this ver and which is transmitted by this species of tick. It is also the transitter of Colombian spotted fever. The species is capable of retaining, for me time, the bacilli of tuberculous leprosy. In South America the species hanically transmits *Trypanosoma cruzi*, the causative agent of Chagas' disease, to armadillos, *zarigüeyas,* and possibly also to some domestic animal It may also transmit *Leishmania braziliensis.* Moreover, it serves as the vehic for eggs of *Dermatobia cyaniventris,* the larvae of which produce cutaneou myiasis in man and animals.

Amblyomma striatum Koch, 1844.—It transmits, by development an heredity, rickettsiae of São Paulo fever in South America.

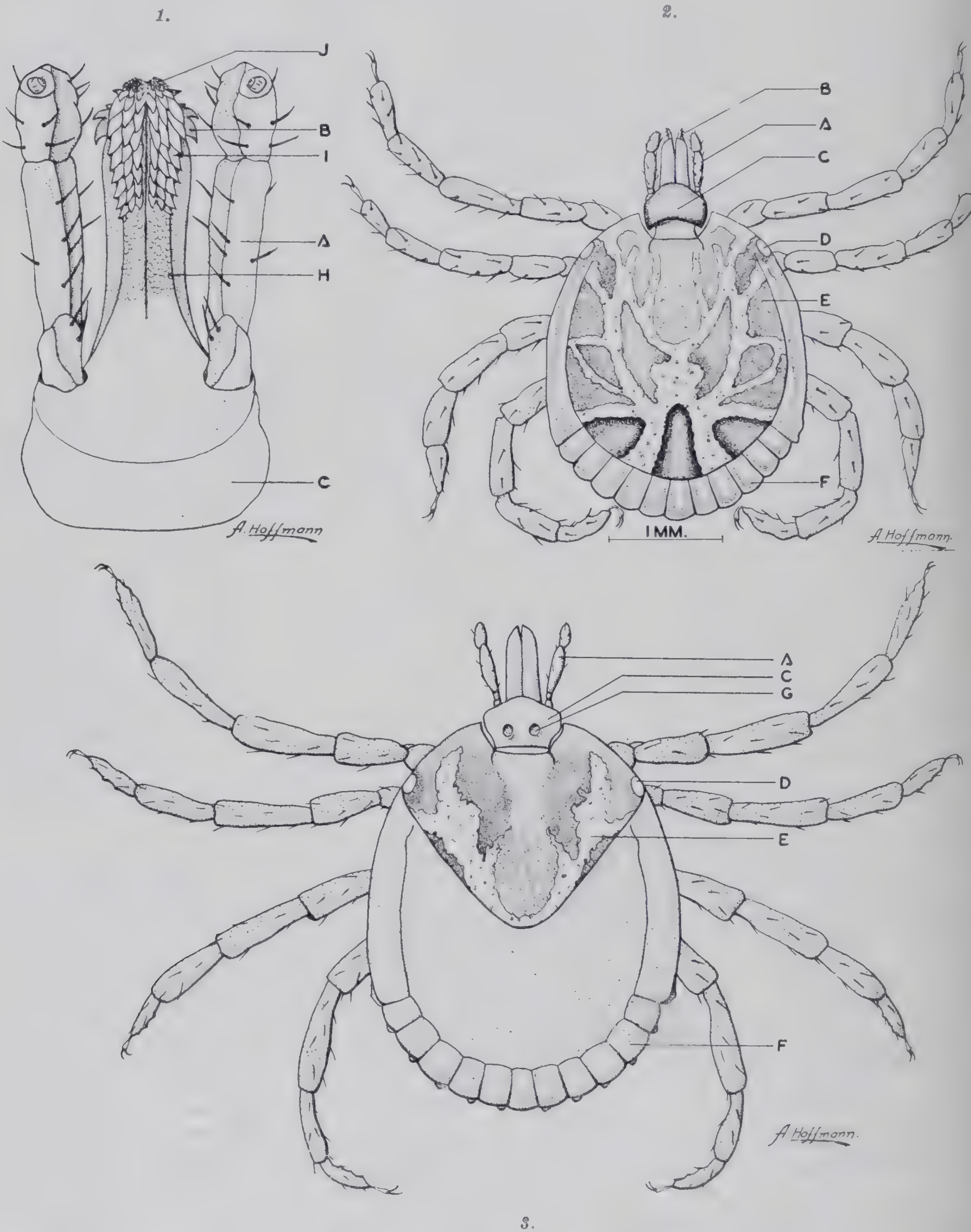


Fig. 427.—*1,* Mouth parts, *2,* dorsal view of male, and *3,* ventral view of female of *Amblyomma cajennense* (Fabricius). *A,* Palpus; *B,* chelicerae; *C,* base of capitulum; *D,* eyes; *E,* shield; *F,* festoons; *G,* porous area; *H,* hypostoma; *I,* teeth of hypostoma; *J,* corona o hypostoma.

PROPHYLAXIS

The best way to prevent disease and all lesions caused by ticks is to take measures to avoid being bitten by them. When the bite has already occurred, it is important to detach the tick from the skin as quickly as possible, since each moment increases the danger of transmission of some disease organism, whether it be Rocky Mountain fever or others. Several means for withdrawing the tick from the skin are employed. Heat, phenolized petroleum jelly, etc., may be used, although they are not always effective.

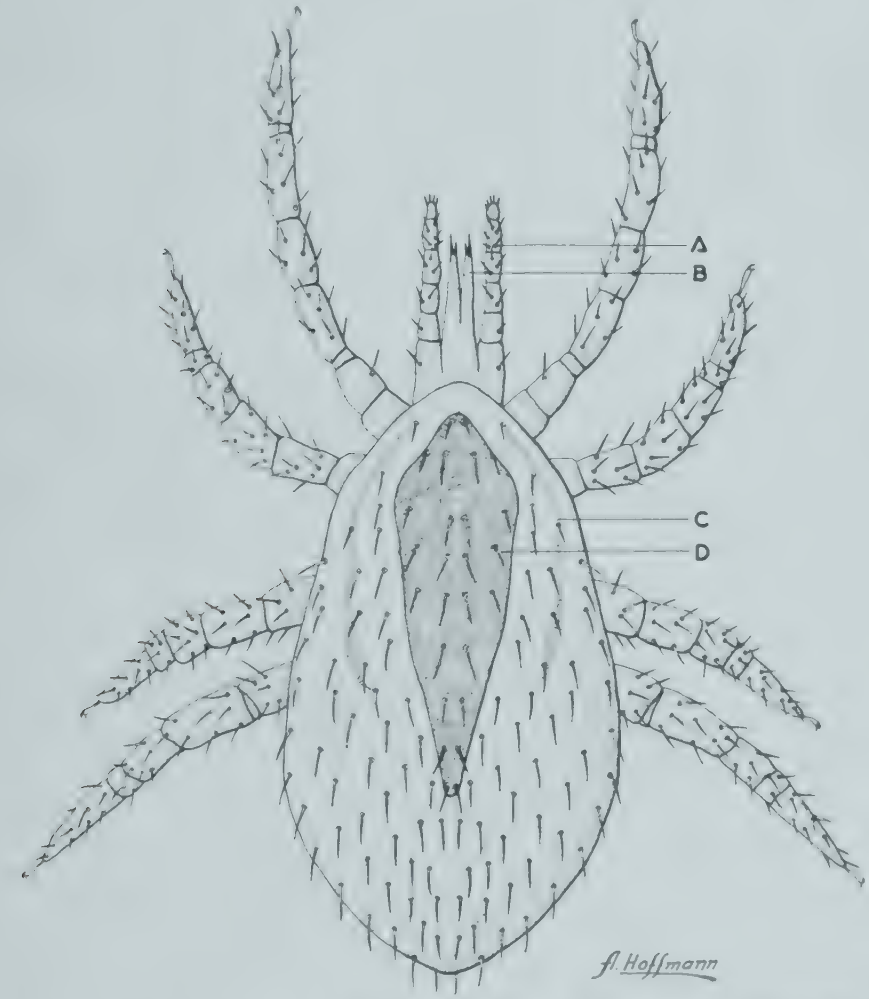


Fig. 428.—Dorsal view of *Liponyssus bacoti* (Hirst). *A*, Palpi; *B*, chelicerae; *C*, peritrema; *D*, shield.

Contact with ticks may be avoided by keeping away from infested places, which are, for the most part, areas covered with vegetation and frequented by hosts of the acarids. High boots, long stockings, gloves, etc., should be worn. When camping out, places which are not covered with vegetation, especially of the herbaceous type, should be chosen. In camping out, one should sleep in a hammock to avoid direct contact with the ground. A minute examination of the clothing should be made several times a day.

Small areas can be cleared of ticks by depriving them of their hosts for 1 r 2 years. If possible, rodents in these areas should be destroyed by poison and by trapping. Grass and herbaceous vegetation around dwellings, schools, parks, and other places frequented by the public should be kept cut short. Dogs and other domestic animals that serve as hosts for this acarid should be kept out of infested areas, and repellents and insecticides should be used regularly.

Superfamily PARASITOIDEA

Family **LIPONYSSIDAE**

Representatives of this family are distributed widely throughout the world but are localized principally in hot climates. The best-known species is *Liponyssus bacoti* (Hirst) 1913, a common mite of the rat. Other species of the genus also attack man, causing intense dermatitis. Examples of these include *L. bursa* (Berlese), 1888, *L. nagayoi* Yamada, 1931, and *L. sylvarum* (Canestrini and Fanzago), 1877.

L. bacoti feeds entirely on blood, dropping from the host after feeding.

These mites are very active. Their distribution is closely linked with that of rats. They attack man when he frequents sites where the rodents are found.

The bite is painful; usually urticaria, papules, and vesicles appear at the site. Intense pruritus is present, with small hemorrhagic areas. Secondary infection, due to scratching, readily occurs, especially in children. It has been demonstrated that this species of mite is capable of transmitting murine typhus. *L. nagayoi* is considered potentially dangerous as the vector of bubonic plague.

Dermatitis may be caused by *Dermanyssus gallinae* (Linnaeus), a parasite of birds. From it has also been isolated the virus of equine encephalomyelitis. Several species of Laelaps, such as *L. stabularis* Koch and *L. echidninus* Berlese, of the family Laelaptidae, are important medically.

Superfamily TROMBIDOIDEA

Family **TROMBIDIIDAE**

Adult mites belonging to this family are brilliantly colored. They are easily identified by the slight separation between the cephalothorax and the abdomen.

They are widely distributed in tropical and subtropical regions. They are parasitic only in the larval stage, the nymphs and adults being predatory and free living. Larvae parasitic for man and vertebrates have been grouped within the subfamily Trombiculinae.

Trombidids deposit eggs on the ground. From these emerge tiny hexapod larvae of a bright red color. They can immediately set about to parasitize their hosts, including man. Because of their small size, they are readily introduced under clothing and attack the skin of the host. They introduce only the mouth parts, attaching themselves to the host usually at the base of a hair.

After alimentation, the larva drops from the host and falls to the ground, where it molts and is transformed into a nymph, and later into an adult. Only one generation develops in a year.

Larvae feed principally upon lymph found near the epidermis and, occasionally, upon blood. The presence of these animals is scarcely noted at first. The bite produces a small red area with intense pruritus, very annoying, which may last for several days. The smarting sensation is probably due to injection of a hemolytic fluid which is secreted by the salivary glands. Sometimes the blood from the subcuticular capillaries is extravasated, producing a purplish or bluish ecchymosis which may persist for several months. Secondary infection frequently develops from scratching the bite. There is, in Mexico, a well-known parasitic affection, "tlalsahuatosis," characterized by wheals and papules, and accompanied by intense pruritus. This affection is produced by the larvae of trombidids, commonly called "tlalsahuates." This name includes several species, among which are found *Eutrombicula alfreddugesii* Oudemans 1910 and *Acariscus flui* van Thiel 1930. The first species is the most common in Mexico and in North America and appears during rainy periods. The mite prefers domestic animals such as rabbits, mice, rats, fowl, etc. Fowl frequently die due to the bite of this mite. Accidentally the species may also attack man. In Mexico another species has been found, the *Neoschoengastia nunezi* Hoffman, 1944, which causes dermatosis in man.

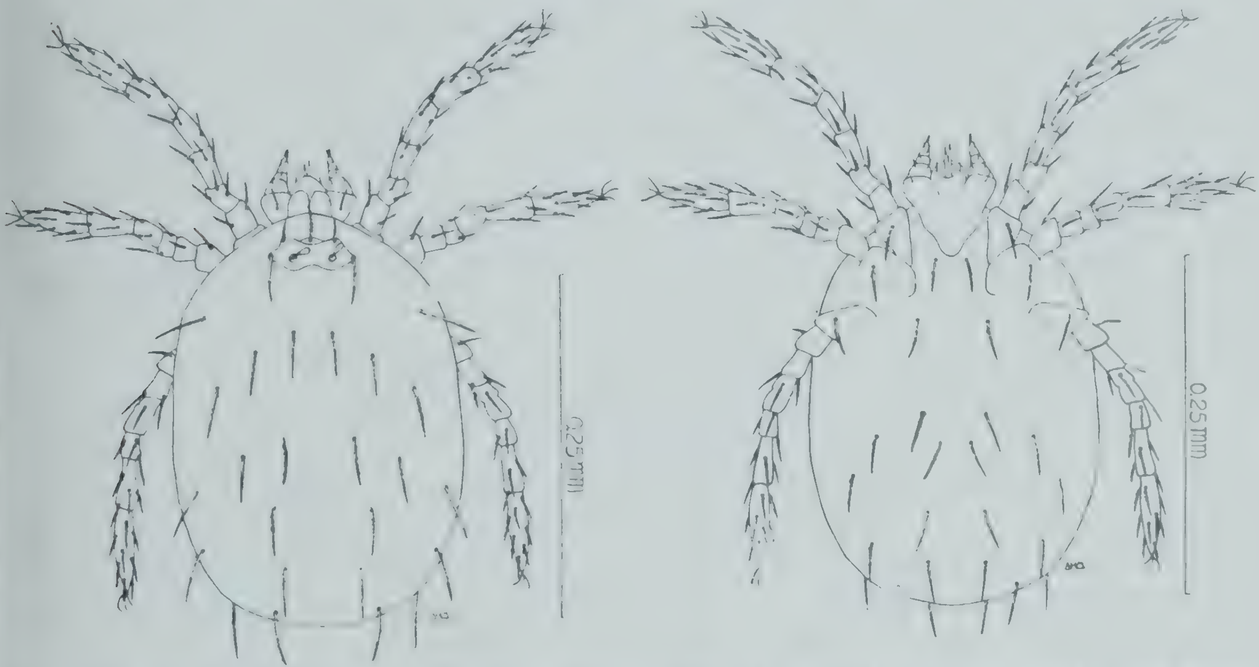


Fig. 429.—Dorsal (left) and ventral (right) views of *Neoschoengastia nuñezi* Hoffmann. (From Rev. d. Inst. salub. y enferm, trop. 5: 221-225. V:4.)

In other parts of the world there are trombidids which are even more harmful. In Japan, Formosa, Sumatra, Malaya, Australia, India, New Guinea, Burma, and adjacent regions, the larvae of these mites transmit tsutsugamushi (scrub typhus). The Rickettsiae are harbored by small rodents, especially field mice, which are their natural reservoirs. In Japan and the neighboring regions, *Trombicula akamushi* transmits *Rickettsia orientalis*. In Sumatra, *T. deliensis,* a mite very much like *T. akamushi,* is known; also *T. hirsti, T* *scutellaris,* and *T. schuffneri.* The infectious agent is transmitted only by larvae but the infectious agent survives in the body of the trombidid through the nymph and adult stages, passing into the eggs of the next generation.

Other trombidids which have been reported as harmful to man are *T. hirsti* in Australia, *T. wichmanni* in the Celebes and in New Guinea, and *Leeuwenhoekia australiensis* in New South Wales. In Europe *Trombicula autumnalis* has been cited. This species, in addition to attacking man, has also been taken from horses, cattle, dogs, cats, rabbits, etc.

PROPHYLAXIS

Destruction of vegetation in the infested area seems to be the most practical means of control of rural typhus. When the surface of the ground has had time to dry out, the area may be considered safe.

The most effective means of protection against mites consists of application of repellent fluids (dimethyl-phthalate, benzyl benzoate, etc.) to clothing, sprinkling or submerging the clothing in the solution. A method which gives apparently satisfactory results is the immersion of clothing in an emulsion of 5 per cent dimethyl-phthalate and 2 per cent soapsuds. Griffitts (1943) indicated that this measure is not 100 per cent effective when it is necessary to sleep on the ground or in trenches, or when wearing socks not treated with the solution.

The value of sulfur and sulfur ointment applied to the skin to kill larvae of trombidids has been known for a long time. Since itch has at times been confused with dermatosis produced by the larvae, the sulfur treatment used for "itch" must have killed many trombidid larvae. Dusting with 2 per cent DDT is also very effective. Ewing (1944) reported that DDT seems to be the best acaricide when it is used on the first day, that sulfur is best when it is applied on the seventh day, and that on the third day both substances are of about the same value. Yeager and Wilson (1944) spoke of a new remedy for pruritus which results from the bite of so many of these pests. It is called Circa 42 and is composed of the following ingredients:

n-butyl-p-aminobenzoate	100 Gm.
benzylic alcohol	170 c.c.
anhydrous lanolin	20 c.c.
corn meal	640 Gm.
sodium lauryl sulfate	64 Gm.

Superfamily TARSONEMOIDEA

Family **PEDICULOIDIDAE**

This family is of interest from a medical standpoint because of the species *Pediculoides ventricosus* (Newport). This predaceous acarid, which attacks the larvae of numerous insects, can also attack man, causing a dermatitis.

Pediculoides ventricosus penetrates within the epidermis of man, often producing petechial hemorrhage and erythema. Vesicles and pustules occur around the affected site. The area shows a violet-tinted discoloration. Sometimes these lesions cover the greater part of the body, producing a very vexacious pruritus. There may be a rise in body temperature and a great deal of perspiration. Applications of hot water and mild antiseptics may partially allay the burning sensation.

As a measure of control of these mites, it is best to burn infested seed, grain, etc., and, if possible, the places where these have been stored.

Superfamily TYROGLYPHOIDEA

Family **TYROGLYPHIDAE**

The representatives of this family are some few acarids which infest foodstuffs such as cereals, grains, and especially cheese. Many of them feed upon decomposed organic substances, and a few are parasitic.

They are very small. The chelicerae are in most cases provided with chelae; the legs terminate in claws and small caruncles.

The dermatitis caused by these mites in man is similar to that caused by *P. ventricosus*. Some species, as *Tyroglyphus longior*, have been found in the intestinal and urinary tracts.

When the mite is ingested with the infected food, especially cheese, it may later be found in fecal matter; it is not known, however, that the mite causes a true intestinal infestation.

Superfamily SARCOPTOIDEA

Family **SARCOPTIDAE**

Within this family are included those mites responsible for "itch" in many species of mammals and birds. Twelve genera are known. Of these, only the genus Sarcoptes has been found to infest man. The best known species is *S. scabiei* (Linnaeus) 1758, which localizes in or on the skin of its host.

Organisms of this genus are usually semicircular. The body, smooth for the most part, has bristles that are remarkably long in relation to the size of the animals, and has short, pointed spines. In the female, the tarsi of the first and second pairs of legs, provided with suckers, are continued into long, slender unsegmented pedicels. In the male, these tarsal suckers are present in the first, second, and fourth pairs of legs. In the male the anus is terminal and lacks anal suckers. The species lacks eyes and tracheae.

Sarcoptes Scabiei

Sarcoptes scabiei is a very small mite. The female measures approximately 350 microns in length by 275 microns in width, while the male is about 220 by 165 microns. The mite is of a whitish color, the cuticle having very fine transverse striations, interrupted here and there by a few bristles and spines. The legs are very short; the third and fourth pairs in the female have long bristles. The 2 anterior pairs are quite apart from the 2 posterior pairs. Buccal parts consist principally of a pair of very small chelicerae an a pair of short, trisegmented palpi.

Life Cycle.—The gravid female infests the skin through intraepiderma channeling, depositing her eggs in small groups, 15 or 20 at a time. The egg measure about 160 microns in length. After oviposition, the female dies at th end of the tortuous channel. After a period of 3 to 6 days, small hexapo larvae emerge from the eggs. They leave the maternal channel and procee to form new superficial papules in the skin, originating a new channel, and burrowing generally among the hairs, without, however, penetrating the hair follicles. After 2 or 3 days the larvae are transformed into the first nymph stage, characterized by 4 pairs of legs. In this stage they may remain in the same site, or they may move to another location to form a new epidermic papule. They molt again, emerging as male and female forms. Mating is

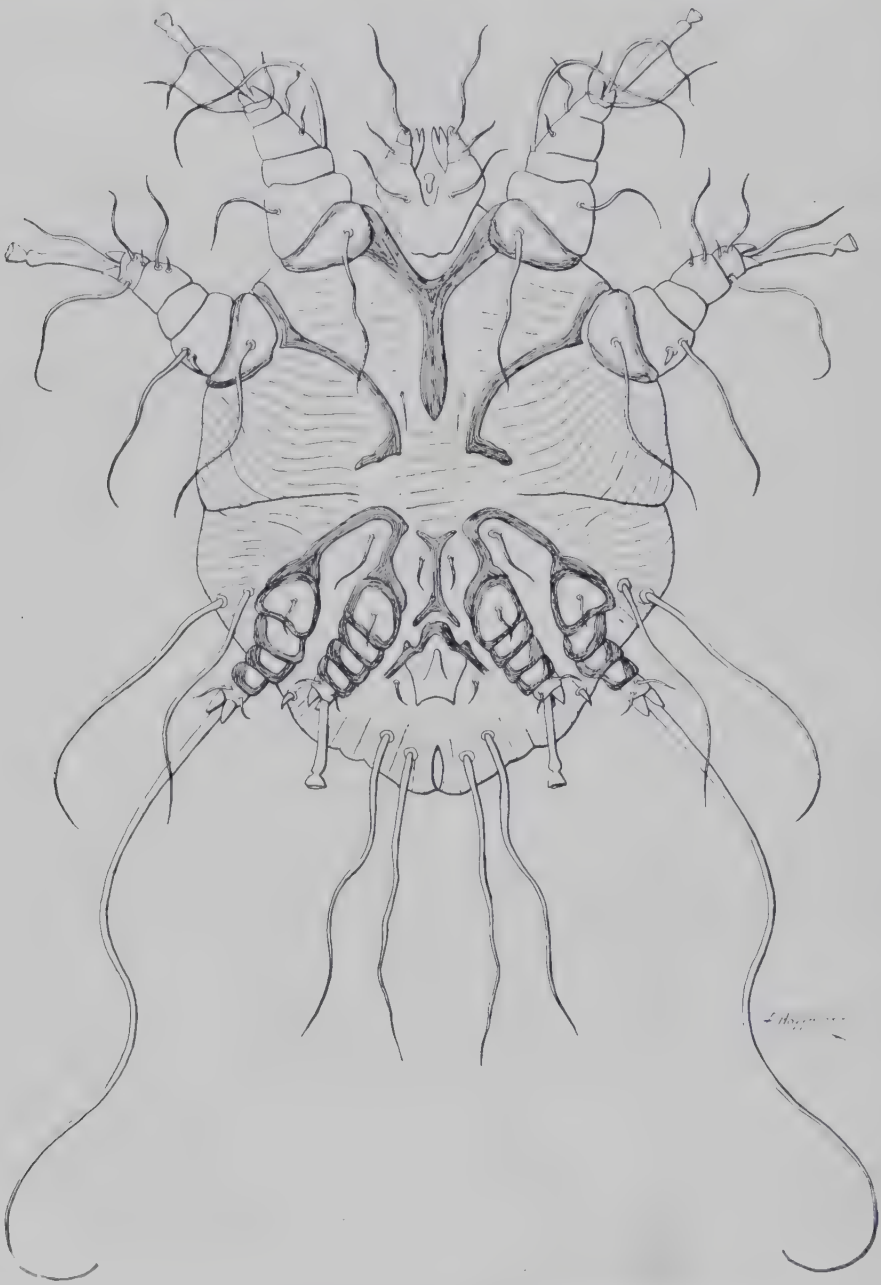


Fig. 430.—Ventral view of *Sarcoptes scabiei* (Linnaeus).

effected on the surface of the skin, after which the female penetrates the skin, and the cycle is renewed. The female lives for 3 to 4 weeks, which is about the length of time it takes to complete the life cycle from adult to adult. The male exists for a shorter period, and it is thought that he remains for the most part upon the surface of the skin.

Infection is disseminated when the mites, after any of the molts, are at the surface of the skin. It is spread by direct contact or by clothing. Some authors believe that the most important stage in dissemination is the fertile female. It is easy for the female to localize on the surface of the skin, especially when the skin is warm—for example, when the host is sleeping.

The mite may penetrate through the skin in almost any region of the body. It localizes, principally, in such areas as the interdigital spaces, on the back of the hand, on the wrists, in the groin, in the external genital organs, in the elbows, the axillae, breasts, shoulders, and parts of the neck.

Intense pruritus, which is the principal characteristic of the disease, begins approximately 10 days after infection. It is believed that the pruritus is due more to mechanical irritation than to an irritant secretion of the mite. Lesions in the skin develop rapidly due to the short life cycle of the Sarcoptes and the rapid succession of generations.

The first observable sign on the skin is a reddish line slightly elevated along the surface of the skin. With the aid of a hand lens a tiny orifice can be distinguished, and the presence of a vesicle, very small, at the end of the tract, near which the female is found. Scratching readily produces complications such as secondary infection, pustules, excoriation, sometimes eczema, etc.

TREATMENT

Thirty per cent benzyl benzoate is very effective; usually one application is sufficient after a hot soap and water bath. Tetraethylthiuranum monosulfide in the form of a solution of Tetmosol, in a dilution of 1 plus 3, is one of the present-day treatments used for "itch" in children. Bradshaw (1944) reported rapid cure in 97 per cent of his cases after only 3 days of treatment. Treatment is painless, with only slight risk of dermatitis.

Mellanby, Johnson, and Bartley (1942), in their summary of treatment of "itch," indicated that a single thorough application of Mareussen's ointment, a 10 per cent sulfur ointment, a 10 per cent solution or stronger of benzyl benzoate in alcohol or water, or even better, a solution of dimethyl diphenylene bisulfide, killed more than 98 per cent of the parasites. Also efficacious, although to a lesser degree, are substances like pyrethrum, emulsion of Rotenone, solution of derris root, beta naphthol, or lethane.

Regardless of the preparations used, care should be taken to disinfect the clothing and the bedding of the patient. All members of the family should receive treatment as soon as possible. The best prophylaxis against the "itch" is avoidance of contact with infected individuals, with public towels, or unclean sheets.

Superfamily DEMODICOIDEA

Family **DEMODICIDAE**

In this family are grouped all those mites which parasitize the hair licles or sebaceous glands of mammals. The family comprises only one gen Demodex, which includes a few species. One of the best known and m studied species, since it affects man, is *Demodex folliculorum* (Simon).

Demodex Folliculorum (Simon)

This is a very small mite, worm-like in appearance, due to its elongat abdomen. The abdomen is marked with numerous very fine transverse line The head is short and broad, and the 4 pairs of legs are greatly reduced. Th mouth parts are degenerated and grown together. Palpi are trisegmente with very small, curved chelicerae, adapted for biting. Anus is lacking. Th female measures approximately 0.35 to 0.40 mm., and the male is smaller.

Reproduction is very slow. The larvae alone are provided with 3 pair of tubercle-like legs. Four molts are necessary for the mite to pass from th larval to the adult stage.

The presence of this acarid in the skin of man is a frequent occurrence but it is of no great significance. At times it produces chronic erythema wit drying of the skin and follicular desquamation accompanied by a burnin sensation. Women are more frequently affected, since they often use facia cleansing creams instead of soap on their skin.

TREATMENT

Scrupulous cleanliness should be practiced. Various ointments, such a balsam of Peru, etc., may be applied locally. Ultraviolet ray treatments and antistaphylococcus vaccines are sometimes used with uncertain results.

Order **Pedipalpida**

These arachnids are recognized by the fluid which they secrete in defense and as a repellent. The fluid has a characteristic vinegar-like odor, for which reason they have been given the name of ''vinegerone'' or ''vinagrillos,'' in Latin America. They are called ''whip-scorpions'' in English.

They differ from other arachnids principally in the flagelliform aspect of the first pair of legs, and also, in some species, by a whip-like appendage found in the last abdominal segment. The abdominal segments are wide. These arachnids are found in dark hiding places and inhabit exclusively the tropical and semitropical regions of the Old and New Worlds.

Pedipalpids do not bite. The liquid which they secrete may cause a troublesome irritation to individuals with sensitive skin. Otherwise, the animals are inoffensive.

Order **Solpugida**

Representatives of this order differ from true spiders in having a segmented abdomen; in addition, the union of the cephalothorax and abdomen is wider. Chelicerae are provided with 2 large, sturdy segments. Their bite though painful, is not harmful, since they possess no poison glands. Occasionally, the wound may be deep enough to admit bacteria, resulting in a secondary infection.

These solifuges live, principally, in tropical and subtropical regions. Most of them have nocturnal habits; there are some which prefer sunlight, but they are so swift in their movements that it is very difficult to trap them. They feed principally on insects.

References

Chandler, A. C.: 1940. Introduction to Parasitology, ed. 6, New York, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., p. 698.

Cooley, R. A.: 1938. The Genera Dermacentor and Otocentor (Ixodidae) in the United States, With Studies in Variation, Nat., Inst. Health Bull. **171:** 89 pages.

Cooley, R. A.: 1942. Determination of Ornithodoros Species. In a Symposium on Relapsing Fever in the Americas, Publ. No. 18, Am. Assoc. Adv. Sc., pp. 77-84.

Cooley, R. A., and Kohls, G. M.: 1944. The Genus Amblyomma (Ixodidae) in the United States, J. Parasitol. **30:** 77-111.

Cooley, R. A., and Kohls, G. M.: 1944. The Argasidae of North America, Central America, and Cuba, Monograph No. 1, Am. Midl. Nat., 152 pp.

Craig, Ch. F., and Faust, E. C.: 1945. Clinical Parasitology, Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger.

Davis, G. E.: 1942. Tick Vectors and Life Cycles of Ticks. In a Symposium on Relapsing Fever in the Americas, Publ. No. 18, Am. Assoc., Adv. Sc., pp. 67-76.

Ewing, H. E.: 1929. A Manual of External Parasites, Springfield, Ill., Charles C Thomas, 225 pp.

Ewing, H. E.: 1944. The Trombiculid Mites (Chigger Mites) and Their Relation to Disease, J. Parasitol. **30:** 339-365.

Gerschman, B. S., and Schiapelli, R. D. E.: 1943. Revisión del género Latrodectus Walckenaer 1805. Cap. II (sitemática) de Latrodectus mactans y Lactrodectismo, Buenos Aires, 1942, p. 23.

Hoeppli, R., and Feng, L. C.: 1933. Experimental Studies on Ticks, Chinese M. J. **47:** 29-43.

Hoffmann, A.: Neoschoengastia nuñezi n. sp. (Acarina: Trombidiidae), Rev. d. Inst. salub. y enferm. trop. **5:** 221-225.

Hoffmann, C. C.: 1931-32. Monografías para la Entomología Médica de México. Num. 2: Los Scorpiones de México, An. Inst. Biol. Mex. **2:** 291-408 (primera parte), **3:** 243-361 (segunda parte).

Hoffmann, C. C.: 1938. Nuevas consideraciones acerca de los alacranes de México, An. Inst. Biol. Mex. **9:** 317-337.

Hoffmann, C. C., and Roaro, D.: 1939. Segunda contribución al conocimiento de los venenos de los alacranes mexicanos, An. Inst. Biol. Mex. **10:** 83-92.

Hoffmann, C. C., and Vargas, L.: 1935. Contribuciones al conocimiento de los venenos de los alacranes mexicanos, Bol. Inst. Hig. **2:** 182-193.

las, F.: 1943. Observaciones sobre el Tlalzahuate de Izucar de Matamoros y Acatlán, Puébla, An. Inst. Biol. Mex. **14:** 439-450.

Mackie, T. T., Hunter, G. W., III, and Worth, C. B.: 1945. A Manual of Tropical Medicine, Philadelphia and London, W. B. Saunders Co.

Neveu Lemaire, M.: 1938. Traité d'entomologie médicale et vétérinaire, Paris, Vigot Frères, 1339 pp.

Nuttall, G. H. F., and Warburton, C.: 1911. Classification, The Genus Ixodes. Part II of Ticks: A Monograph of the Ixodoidea, London, Cambridge University Press, pp. 105-348.

Nuttall, G. H. F., and Warburton, C.: 1915. The Genus Haemaphysalis. Part III of Ticks: A Monograph of the Ixodoidea, London, Cambridge University Press, pp. 349-550.

Nuttall, G. H. F., Warburton, C., Cooper, W. F., and Robinson, L. E.: 1908. The Argasidae. Part I of Ticks: A Monograph of the Ixodoidea, London, Cambridge University Press, 104 pp.

Osorno-Mesa, E.: 1941. Las garrapatas de la República de Colombia, An. Acad. Nac. Med. 1938-1940. pp. 398-434.

Philip, C. B.: 1939. Ticks as Vectors of Animal Diseases. The Can. Ento. **71:** 55-65.

nson, L. E.: 1926. The Genus Amblyomma. Part IV of Ticks: A Monograph of the Ixodoidea, London, Cambridge University Press, 302 pp.

avory, T. H.: 1928. The Biology of Spiders, New York, The Macmillan Co., 376 pp.

Vargas, L., and Colorado Iris, R.: 1944. Acción del DDT sobre algunos artrópodos domésticos, Rev. Soc. Mex. Hist. Nat. **5:** 229-235.

CHAPTER 56

POISONING BY SCORPIONS AND SPIDERS (SCORPIONISM AND ARANEISM)

Afranio do Amaral

SCORPIONISM

INTRODUCTION

Scorpions are veneniferous animals belonging to the phylum Arthropoda, class Arachnida, and order Scorpionida. Like all Arthropoda, they are articulated, the body being provided with metameric segments and bearing jointed limbs. They have a cephalothorax resulting from the coalescence of the head with the thorax, and in this they differ from the insects; they have 4 pairs of legs, in this differing from both the insects and the myriapods, and sessile eyes, in this differing from the crustaceans. They have a long and segmented abdomen, differing from the spiders, the abdomen of which is short and unsegmented.

With the cephalothorax of scorpions are connected both the locomotive and the prehensile appendages. The former consist of 4 pairs of legs, each leg divided into 7 segments: coxa, trochanter, femur, tibia, and 3 tarsal sections. The latter consist of 1 pair of chelicerae and 1 pair of pedipalpi. The chelicerae or jaws are rather minute and are covered by, or hidden under, the anterior border of the cephalothorax or prosoma; each chelicera ends in a small chela or nippers with no venom gland. The pedipalpi or maxillary palpi are quite long and strong and are divided into 5 segments, of which the terminal segment corresponds to a pair of larger pincers or claws.

The abdomen is divided into 2 portions: anterior or mesosoma with 7 joints, and posterior or tail with 6 segments, of which the terminal segment bears the vesicle with 2 venom glands and tapers gradually to a sting.

Scorpions usually carry the tail bent back up over the body. At the moment they try to catch a prey or reach an enemy, they bend the tail forward, so as to bring the tip or sting to the level of the pincers of the pedipalpi, the function of which is to hold the prey at that moment. Except for the sting and the venom, scorpions would be entirely defenseless.

The body is covered with a hard, chitinous shell. The brain is connected with a chain of ganglia ventrally situated. The heart is elongated and extended into an artery both proximally and distally.

CAUSAL AGENTS: SCORPIONS

Scorpions are rather unsociable animals, usually to be found under stones, in the crevices of rocks and walls, among pieces of wood and shingles, brick piles, or in closets where they seek to hide inside of shoes and dresses. They are extremely secretive, leaving their haunts only at night. They live mostly in tropical and subtropical countries, where they seem to prefer warm and dry climates, but cannot withstand exposure to the hot sun.

They are represented in tropical and subtropical sections throughout the world and in some temperate districts by numerous species the lengths of which vary quite widely, being from 2 to 20 cm. or more.

Among the hundreds of species of scorpions, the following deserve special mention, either because of the size they may attain and the amount of venin they can secrete, or the high density of their respective populations in various tropical districts.

Scorpio imperator or "Escorpião-do-Gabão" (gabon scorpion), found in west central Africa; it is the largest form thus far recognized, as it reaches a length of more than 20 cm.

Buthus quinquestriatus, prevalent particularly in northern and eastern Africa; it is also very large and causes many accidents in the Nile valley.

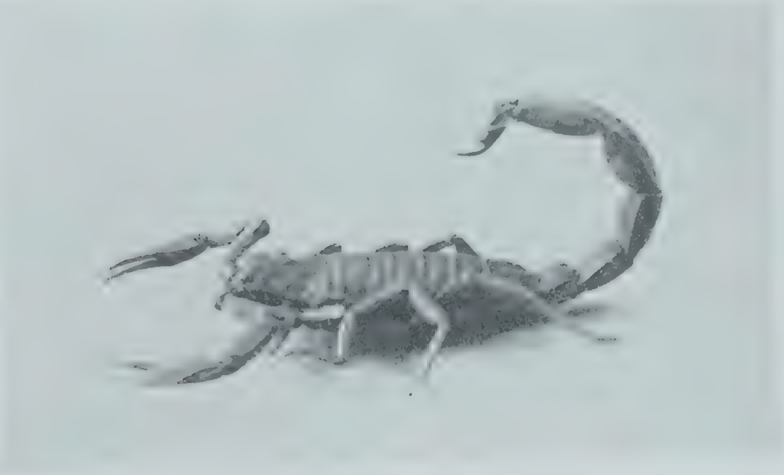


Fig. 431.—A common scorpion with the abdomen (tail) raised so as to bring the sting (terminal segment) forward.

Rhopalurus barythenar, a large form, the range of which covers the central section of South America, Colombia, and Central America.

Tityus bahiensis, a medium-sized form spread throughout Brazil and the southernmost republics, where it is responsible for the majority of cases of scorpionism. *T. serrulatus,* a common form, found in the central plateau of Brazil.

Bothriurus bonariensis, a rather small form, although quite common throughout the subtropical and temperate districts of eastern South America.

In the Western World, from Panama northward, there also occur a few more species of Tityus and some 12 or more species of Centruraides, or Rhopalurus, among the Buthidae; and, from Colombia southward, are found over twenty species of Tityus and nearly as many of Rhopalurus, among the Buthidae, besides *Thestylus glasioui* and other species of Bothriuridae and *Diplocentrus gundlachi* among the Scorpionidae.

Isometrus maculatus, like other congeneric species, is native to India whence it has spread, apparently through transoceanic traffic, and in recen times, to south Europe, Africa, and the Americas.

The common name for scorpions is "alacran" throughout the Spanish-American countries and "lacráu" in Brazil.

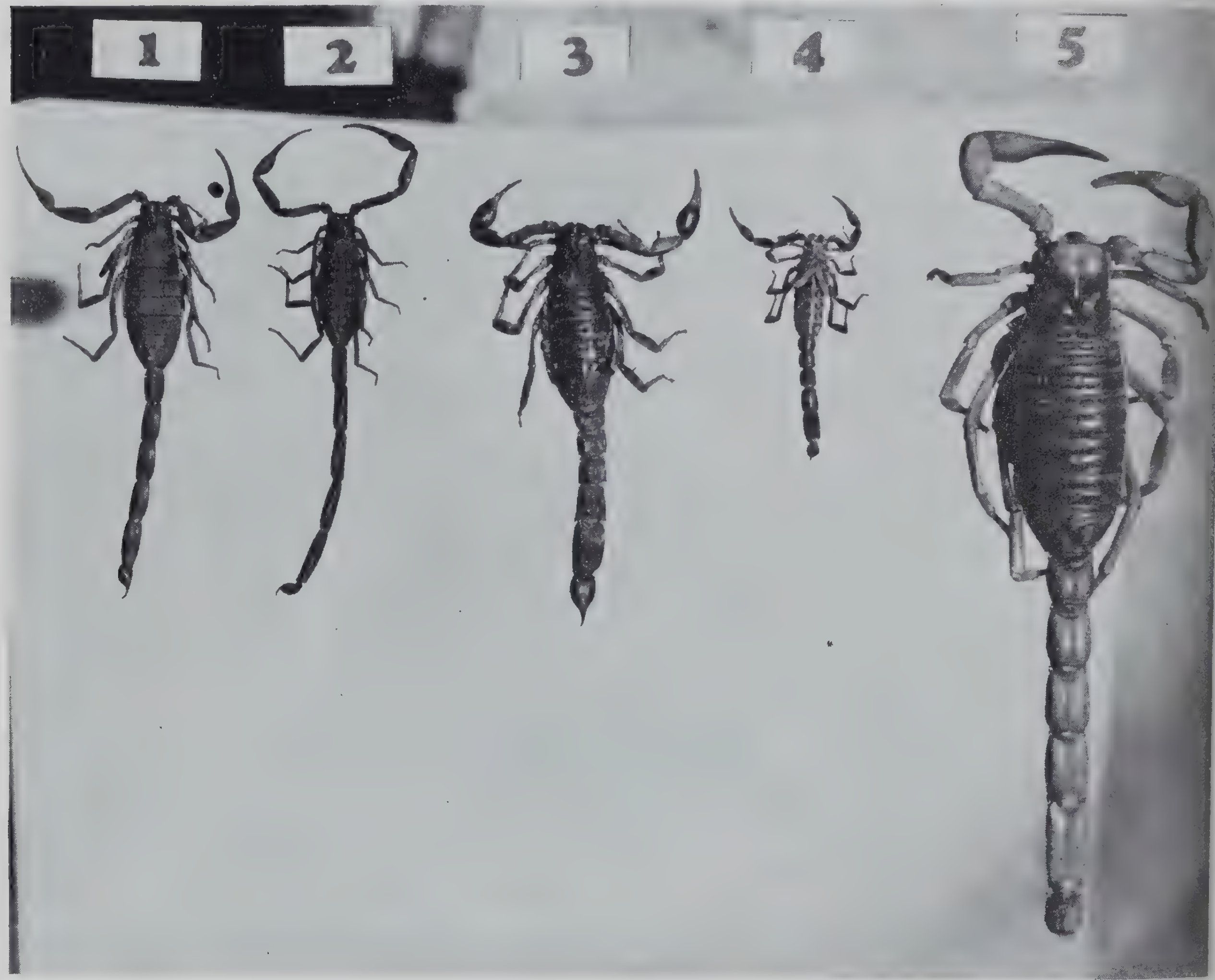


Fig. 432.—Various species of scorpions: *1* and *2*, *Centruroides sculpturatus,* male and female; *3* and *4*, *Vejovis spinigerus,* adult and young; *5*, *Hadrurus arizonensis.* (From Merck Report, July, 1946, from article by Stahnke, Herbert L.: Some Poisonous Animals of the United States; by permission of the author and publisher.) (Photograph by Stahnke.)

POISON APPARATUS AND VENOM

The sixth or terminal segment of the tail or metasoma of scorpions is represented by a globose vesicle extending posteriorly along the body axis, gradually becoming thinner and thinner, until it ends in a sharp spine curved toward the ventral side. This vesicle holds a pair of venom glands, the ducts of which open on each side of the spine close to the tip.

The poison is clear and watery at first, becoming rather milky and sticky as soon as the drops from the lumen of the gland have been ejected. It has a slightly acid reaction, is insoluble in ether and absolute ethyl alcohol, and resists neutral glycerin and chloroform. It is destroyed in vitro, however, by gold chloride, calcium chloride, ammonia, potassium permanganate, and

Lugol's solution. It is thermostable up to 70° C. for 1 hour. In solution, it is precipitated by sodium, magnesium, and ammonium sulfates, this reaction indicating its proteinaceous character. It has no action when given per os; it is destroyed by the digestive secretions.

Although very little has been done regarding the real nature of the chemical constituents of scorpion venoms, it is known that they vary from species to species and that they represent a mixture of several toxic and antigenic principles, the specificity of which is also very marked.

The amount of venom a scorpion is able to eject varies quite widely according to the species, the age, and size of the specimen, etc. Usually, when it stings naturally and spontaneously, the scorpion expels but 1 or 2 small drops of venom, never emptying its glands, but keeping some of the venom for emergencies. If hard pressed or squeezed, by forceps for instance, it will let 1 or more drops exude and then give up the fight. The first drops, however, are always more toxic than the last ones.

A common trait of all scorpion venoms is the presence of neurocytolysins or neurolysins both for the central nervous system and for the autonomic system. It is the ratio of the different principles of this group that gives the venom of every form a certain degree of specificity towards the animal tissues.

Moreover, in some species, such as the African *Buthus australis* and *B. occitanus* and the Brazilian *Tityus serrulatus,* the venom appears to contain a certain proportion of proteolysin and hemolysin as revealed by some swelling at the site of the sting, followed at late stages of venenation by blood extravasation into the stomach and intestines (hematemesis and melena) and the kidneys (hematuria). Destruction of the corresponding epithelium is present in patches in every case of this type of poisoning. None of these symptoms, however, is ever so accentuated as to overshadow the general picture of neurotoxicosis, always present in scorpionism.

CLINICAL SYMPTOMS

In most cases of scorpionism the principal symptoms may be divided into local and systemic.

Local Symptoms

Pain, sometimes unbearable and usually extending along the affected limb to the chest, is the first sign following contact of the sting with the human skin. A reddish white-centered wheal surrounding the single puncture may eventually be noticed, later spreading into an edematous area either serous or bloody in character. Finally lymphangitis is not a rare occurrence. These symptoms constitute the invasion period of the poisoning.

Systemic Symptoms

Bradycardia as a central nervous reflex to the pain, constant sneezing, watery nasal discharge, and bronchorrhea, profuse lacrimation, mydriasis, nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea, abundant perspiration and cold sensation, dizziness, and trembling are the symptoms in the excitation period of the poisoning, in which the neurolysin of the venin apparently acts upon the sympathe nervous system. This neurotropic peculiarity warrants classification of t principal neurotoxin of the scorpion among the sympathomimetic or adrenerg substances. It really seems to cause an initial discharge of epinephrine in the blood stream soon to be followed by marked peripheral vasoconstricti and increased blood pressure. Stimulation of the cervical sympathetic nerv can explain such signs as mydriasis, hypothermia of the skin, and vasoconstriction particularly accented over the entire head, hypersecretion of th nasal mucosa and the lacrimal, salivary, and sweat glands. Dilatation of th bronchi with mucus discharge, gastrointestinal hypersecretion and contractions (increased peristalsis), dizziness, and trembling may show how deepl the autonomic system is affected at this stage.

In susceptible patients, particularly nervous children and whenever the volume of venom injected is large enough, there is a final period of depression, consisting of symptoms which show the direct effect of the neurolysin upon the central nervous system: exaggeration of the reflexes (patellar especially), clonic contractions, convulsions, hiccup, sensation of throat constriction, headache, delirium, tachycardia (up to 180 pulsations per minute) and low blood pressure, dyspnea (usually of the Cheyne-Stokes type), loss of equilibrium, purplish lips, increasing hypothermia, coma, and sometimes death.

As sequelae of the venenation, when the patient recovers naturally, there may appear numbness of the limb where the sting was inflicted, hyperesthesia, and, eventually, hemiplegia or paraplegia.

Finally, in poisoning caused by the sting of certain species (*Buthus occitanus, B. australis,* and *Tityus serrulatus*), the clinical picture may be aggravated by such symptoms as hematemesis, melena, and hematuria, which prove the destructive effect of proteolysin and hemolysin on the epithelial covering of the gastrointestinal tract and the kidneys and on the endothelial layers of the capillaries as well.

DEATH RATE

Although the incidence of scorpionism is fairly high in certain districts of central Brazil, Central America, Egypt, and Korea, the death rate is relatively low. It must be borne in mind, however, that scorpion venoms, like all toxic substances, act on the body in a manner inversely proportional to the weight, that is, the smaller the patient the greater the concentration of the same dose of venom. No wonder, therefore, that scorpions take a higher toll of lives among children than among adults.

PREVENTION OF SCORPIONISM

The various means devised to prevent scorpion stings are of 2 groups: (1) individual protection, and (2) collective protection.

Protection of the Individual

In any scorpion-infested district children should be induced not to play or stay around sites where these Arachnida are known to seek shelter. Care must be taken to prevent being stung while putting on shoes or boots, coats, or other pieces of clothing left in dark closets. Finally, one must be particularly cautious in handling shingles, pieces of wood, and other objects taken, during the day, off piles where scorpions may be hiding.

Individual protection can also be secured by preventive immunization with anavenins specific for the species prevalent in certain sections.

Collective Protection

Collective protection may be achieved to a certain degree by use of chickens which are left to range freely over any place where scorpions are abundant. Chickens not only have a little natural immunity against some scorpion venoms, but they seem to like to attack scorpions which they kill with extreme readiness without being stung.

TREATMENT OF SCORPIONISM

Therapeutic means directed at counteracting the effects of scorpion venoms on human tissues are divided into 2 categories: (1) nonspecific measures, and (2) specific procedure.

Nonspecific Measures

In view of the sympathotropic effect of the venoms, administration of any strong heart stimulant must be avoided at least during the excitation period of the poisoning. Application of a ligature above the site of the sting is of no avail since the venin is largely absorbed by the nerves. Free bleeding and suction of the region where the sting was inflicted give the patient no relief because the venin is absorbed too rapidly to warrant such measures. Potassium permanganate has no effect in vivo and causes local necrosis which should be avoided by all means.

Whenever a specific antivenin is not available, the treatment should follow quite closely the physiopathologic evolution of the venenation. At the invasion stage, the reasonable thing to do is to inject about the sting mark 1 or 2 c.c. (1 ampule) of magnesium sulfate solution with novocain (magnesium sulfate 25 per cent, distilled water 74.5 per cent, novocain 0.5 per cent), preferably by the hypodermic route since the venom is inoculated rather superficially due to the shortness of the scorpion terminal spine. In the excitation phase, in order to counteract the adrenergic effects of the venin, injections of acetylcholine usually bring the patient some relief by acting on the posterior ganglionic fibers of the parasympathetic nervous system. In the final or depression period, the administration of cardiotonics, while the sedative effect of the magnesium sulfate on the central nervous system is still noticeable, usually brings some relief, particularly when supplemented by liberal doses of salt solution (physiologic saline) given WARM and SLOWLY by the venous route, an glucose solution or Ringer sodium acetate solution also injected WARM an SLOWLY into a vein. In mild cases it is sufficient to give the patient an intravenous injection (10 c.c.) of a 10 per cent calcium gluconate solution to relieve pain. In rare cases, when there is reason to believe that an acute pancreatitis complicates the clinical picture, completing the treatment with 5 to 10 units of insulin is indicated.

By enhancing the elimination of the venom while the resistance of the patient is sustained by rational measures, we can save many cases, even those of the greatest severity.

Specific Procedure

When specific antivenin is available, it must be given at once, either hypodermically or intravenously, depending naturally on the severity of the case, the dosage always being greater for children than for adults.

Since Todd (1909) proved that passive immunity can be conferred by application of serum of horses actively immunized against the venom of the Egyptian scorpion *Buthus quinquestriatus,* a few laboratories have been engaged in preparing antivenins specific against local forms. In this connection, C. Phisalix had shown in 1896, in the course of experiments with the venom of 2 types of African scorpions, that specificity is very close, and Maurano (1915) confirmed Phisalix' observations and also proved the possibility of immunizing horses against the venin of the Brazilian *Tityus bahiensis.* Brazil (1918) began the routine preparation of antiscorpionic serum, the potency of which he succeeded in increasing through concentration and globulin fractionating by taking advantage of the fact that the antitoxic fraction is bound to pseudoglobulin in the immune plasma. The usual doses are 10 to 30 c.c., children requiring a larger amount of antivenin than adults, because of their lower weight, to neutralize the relatively greater concentration of the venom in their systems.

Successful results have recently been reported by Sinson (1931) with the use of Crotalidic Antivenin (anti-"snake bite" serum as prepared by the Antivenin Institute of America against rattlesnakes, copperhead, and moccasin of the United States) in 2 cases of scorpion toxicosis. Unfortunately, so far as the author knows, his findings have not yet been confirmed.

ARANEISM

Spiders, like scorpions, are veneniferous animals belonging to the phylum Arthropoda and class Arachnida. They are placed in the order Araneida, not among the Scorpionida as scorpions are. They differ from scorpions in having a short unsegmented, usually globose abdomen, the end of which presents a web-spinning apparatus, consisting of 2 or more pairs of spinnerets; rather short, leg-like pedipalpi or maxillary palpi; and a pair of enlarged chelicerae or jaws, each ending in a fang and containing a venom gland.

CAUSAL AGENTS: SPIDERS

Spiders are also secretive, unsociable animals, which live in and seek shelter under dead trees, dry leaves, and stems, particularly during the summer months. Sometimes they invade barns, stables, toilets, and houses where they find insects on which they feed. They also prey on mice, small snakes, lizards, and birds. In whatever site they choose to live, they customarily spin threads of silk and make cocoons for their eggs, nests for themselves, or webs for entangling their prey.

Although they are most active in hot weather, they are found not only in tropical and subtropical regions but in temperate countries as well. In some agricultural districts they represent a real scourge both to human beings and to animals, especially during the crop season. Their bites are most dangerous and sometimes deadly to children, as well as to sheep, goats, and dogs.

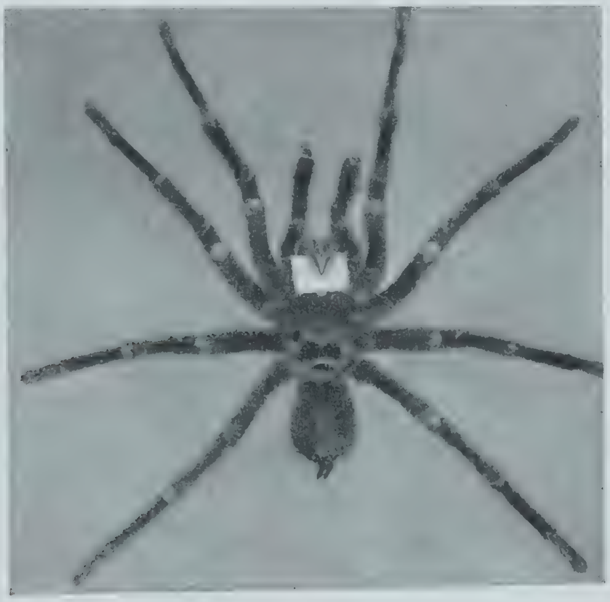


Fig. 433.—Male tarantula spider; paper inserted to show position and size of "fangs." Ventral view. (From Merck Report, July, 1946, from article by Stahnke, Herbert L.: Some poisonous animals of the United States; by permission of the author and publisher.) (Photograph by Bertram M. Fireman and Herbert L. Stahnke.)

They are represented by numerous species of variable sizes, but can be divided into 2 principal groups: the Aranomorphae, the true spiders, sometimes called tarantulas, and the Mygalomorphae or mygales, the former possessing but one pair of pulmonary plates or lungs (Dipneumones), the latter bearing two pairs (Tetrapneumones).

Although popular names are usually meaningless, the common mygale, being very conspicuous because of its large size and hairy body and legs, is called trap-door spider in the United States, "avicularie" in Martinique, "caranguejeira" in Brazil, "nhandu-kabavu" in Paraguay, "asapanca" in Argentina, "araña pollito" in Chile, these names representing different species from a systematic standpoint. A biologic characteristic of the mygales is that they do not spin true webs in which to live, but use holes in the ground or among bamboo roots and there they make their silk tubes provided with a trap door. An anatomic characteristic of these spiders is that they bear short venom glands (each gland completely included in the corresponding fang) and fangs which move vertically. The Mygalomorphae are divided into a few families of which the most representative are the Theraphosidae and the Ctenizidae, both with several genera and species of which the following deserve mention: *Acanthoscuria sternalis,* found in south Brazil, Paraguay, Argentina; *Avicularia avicularia,* the bird spider, very common in South America; *Avicularia vestiaria,* from Martinique; *Cteniza sauvagei,* from southern Europe; *Eurypelma hentzii,* from southwestern United States and Mexico; *Grammostola acteon,* from the middle section of South America; *Lasiodora curtior,* from Brazil and tropical South America; and *Theraphosa blondii,* from Santo Domingo and Haiti.

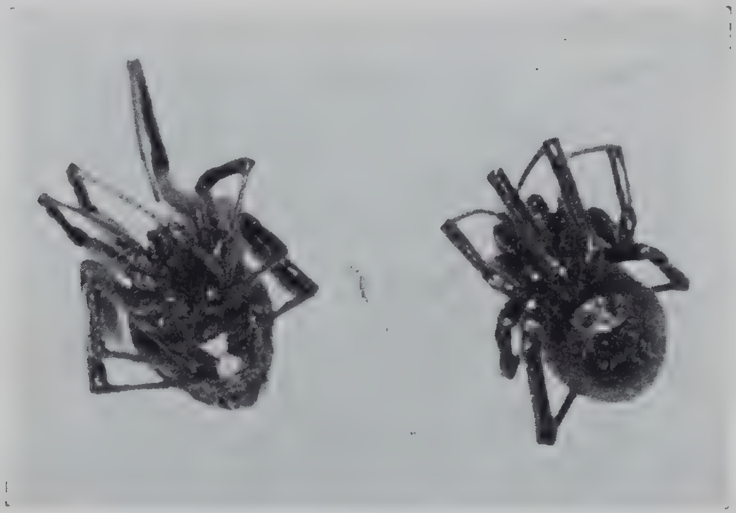


Fig. 434.—Black widow spiders (females), *Latrodectus mactans.* From the collection of V. Lewitus. (From Merck Report, July, 1946, from article by Stahnke, Herbert L.: Some Poisonous Animals of the United States; by permission of the author and publisher.)

The Aranomorphae, or true spiders, which are known by many different names in different parts of the world, can be distinguished from the Mygalomorphae by the presence of elongated venom glands, each gland being longer than the corresponding fang in which it is included anteriorly, and by fangs which move horizontally. They are divided into a few families of which the most representative are the Theridiidae, the Lycosidae, the Epeiridae, and the Pholcidae, of which the following genera and families deserve mention: *Araneus audax,* from the middle section of South America; *Ctenus nigriventer,* from central South America; *Epeira diadema,* common in the Antilles; *Lycosa raptoria,* abundant in southern Brazil, Uruguay, and Argentina; and *Latrodectus mactans,* spread throughout the Americas (although rare in Brazil), where it has received the names of “araña-de-liño” in Argentina, “guina” in Chile, “lucacha” in Peru, “casampulga” in Central America, black-widow or hour-glass spider in the United States. The genus Latrodectus is also represented by several other species such as *L. geometricus* in Brazil, *L. hasselti* in Australia and New Zealand (common name, “katipo”), *L. lugubris* in southern Russia (common name, “karakurt”), *L. tridecimguttatus* in southern Europe (common name, "malmignathe"), *L. menavodi* in Madagascar (where, under the name of "vancoho," it is considered sacred and so worshiped and protected by the natives). *Glyptocranium gasteracanthoides* is the technical name of "podadora," a common form in the Peruvian vineyards and agricultural fields.

INOCULATION OF POISON

Like scorpions, spiders use their venom both to catch their prey quickly and to free themselves from attack by powerful enemies. To seize an insect, for instance, spiders jump at it and try to inject the venom just behind the head so as to reach the cervical ganglia directly, causing instant paralysis of the prey.

Some species which live in agricultural fields or in habitations of human beings always represent a potential danger. The female *Latrodectus mactans* particularly frequently spins her web across the seats of outdoor toilets in many sections of the Western World, making it hazardous to use these installations.

The female spider is responsible for the greater number of bites. She is usually larger than the male, which she kills as soon as she has been fertilized.

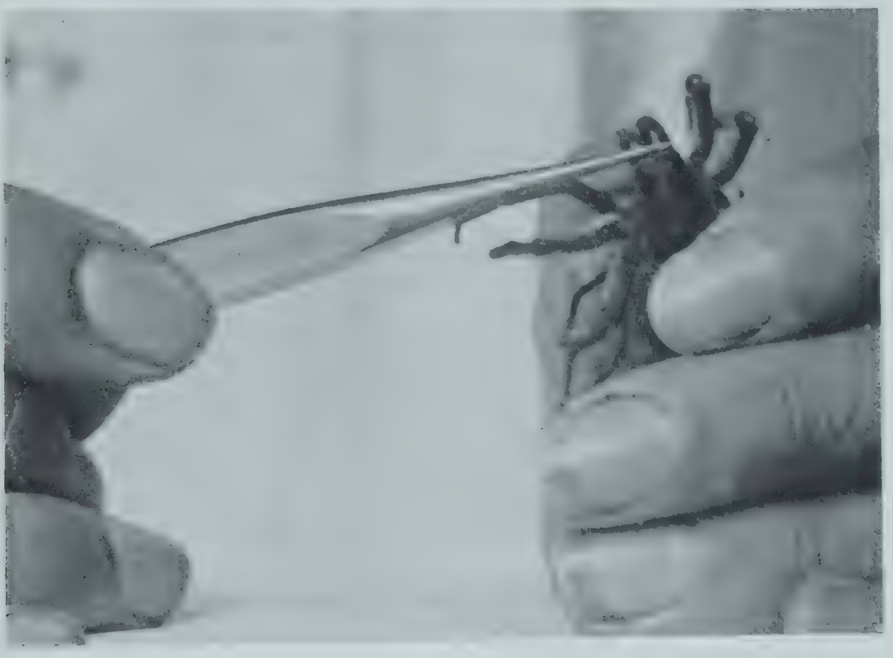


Fig. 435.—Pulling off the chelicerae (with venom glands and all) from a true spider (*Lycosa raptoria*).

POISON APPARATUS

The poison apparatus consists of a pair of glands and fangs. Each gland is partly or wholly included in the chelicera or jaws of the corresponding side. The poison is ejected through a slender duct which terminates in a hole or opening very close to the tip of the fang or claw. Each gland is also composed of an internal layer of cylindrical epithelial cells, an intermediate basal membrane, and an external connective envelope provided with muscular fibers, the contractions of which serve to eject the poison under pressure.

COMPOSITION AND EFFECTS OF VENOM

Very little is known as to the real nature of the chemical constituents o spider venoms.

From a physiopathologic point of view, spider venoms may be systemized and grouped in the following principal categories: (1) neurotropic (2) hemolytic and icterogenic, and (3) dermotropic or necrotic.

Virtually all spider venoms are neurotropic, very few exceptions being known. The species with most typically neurotoxic venom are: *Ctenus nigriventer, Latrodectus mactans (L. geometricus* and other species), among the Araneomorphae; *Cteniza sauvagei, Avicularia avicularia, Phormictopus carcerides,* among the Mygalomorphae.

None is known to have an exclusively hemolytic or icterogenic venom. The poison of *Latrodectus hasselti* (Araneomorpha) and that of *Grammostola acteon* (Mygalomorpha) are neurotoxic, hemolytic, and icterogenic, while that of *Epeira diadema* (Aranemorpha) is neurotoxic and hemolytic but never icterogenic.

The poison of *Lycosa raptoria* is typically dermotropic and necrotic, while that of *Glyptocranium gasteracanthoides* is both necrotic and hemolytic (only slightly neurotoxic), that of *Araneus audax* is necrotic, hemolytic, and icterogenic, and that of *Acanthoscuria sternalis* is slightly neurotropic and dermotropic.

It is obvious that the manifestation of the effect of any of these venoms on the tissues under experimental conditions depends on the route of introduction and on the degree of receptivity of every laboratory animal. Clinically, however, they cause destruction or lesions according to the prevailing cytotropism of the constituents.

None of these constituents, however, should be confused with araneilysine, a complex substance found in the body fluids of spiders, particularly in fertilized females and their eggs, and having hemolytic and neurotoxic properties of a different character.

CLINICAL SYMPTOMS

In the light of the classification of the principal constituents of the venom, the following types of araneism may be briefly indicated:

Latrodectus mactans (L. geometricus, L. lugubris, L. tridecimguttatus and *L. menavodi):* red wheal at the bite (double puncture), pain, swelling, and numbness, followed by fever, depression, shivering, choreiform restlessness, convulsions, spasm and rigidity of the muscles of the abdominal wall and other regions; vomiting, hypothermia, sexual excitation, and anuria or death in severe cases. *L. hasselti,* in addition to many of these symptoms, causes internal hemorrhages and icterus.

Ctenus nigriventer: acute pain, muscular spasms, shivering, cold perspiration, salivation and lacrimation, dysuria, tachycardia, and arterial hypotension. sometimes terminating in death, especially among children.

Ctenzia sauvagei: short depression, narcosis, and asthenia.

Avicularia avicularia: fever, lipothymia, and delirium.

Grammostola acteon: pain, bloody swelling, hemorrhages; dyspnea, paresis or paralysis, salivation, and occasionally icterus.

Epeira diadema: pain, bloody swelling at the site of the bite and hemorrhages through mucous membranes; hyperthermia and nervous depression.

Lycosa raptoria: extensive edema, phyletenules, destruction of the derma at the site of the bite, followed by sloughing of the affected tissue and by an irregular scar.

Glyptocranium gasteracanthoides: red wheal and papule, phlegmonous edema, phlyctenules, sloughing of the skin, and deep scar; depression, tachycardia, and dyspnea; hematuria, sometimes anuria.

Araneus audax: bloody edema, phlyctenules, sloughing of the skin, and scar, lymphadenitis; headache, fever, tachycardia, and dyspnea, congestion of the bronchial, gastric, and intestinal mucosa; icterus and oliguria.

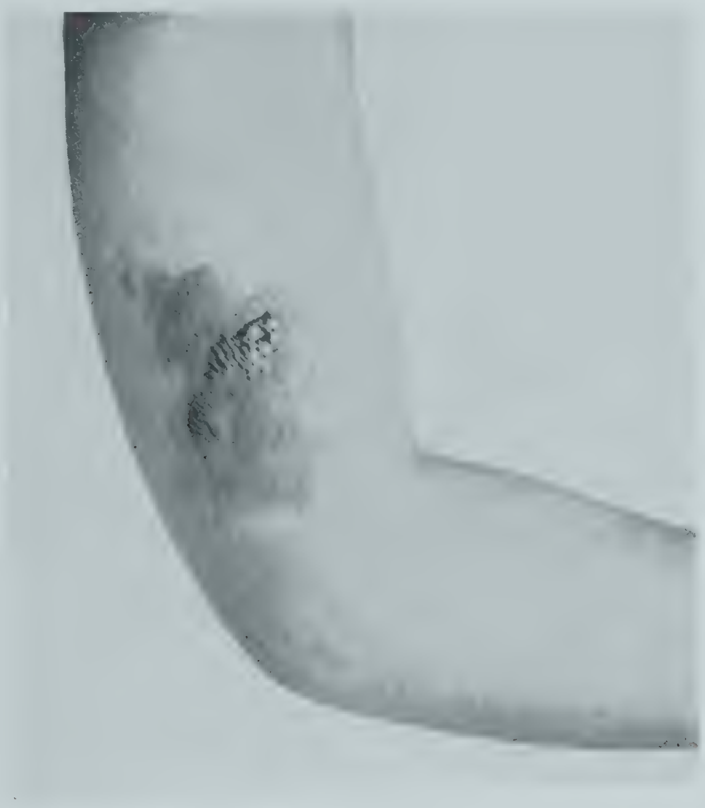


Fig. 436.—Scar left on the skin of a child bitten by a true spider, Aranomorpha (*Lycosa raptoria*), having necrotic venom.

TREATMENT OF ARANEISM

The treatment of araneism is based on nonspecific and specific means.

Nonspecific Means

Nonspecific means consist of symptomatic medication to follow the clinical evolution of every particular case. Against the pain and local swelling warm dressings with concentrated solution of magnesium sulfate will bring some relief. In some cases an intravenous injection of 5 or 10 c.c. of 10 per cent calcium gluconate solution is indicated. Cardiotonics and general stimulants are advised against depression, lipothymia, and arterial hypotensio Liver extract and blood transfusion will be effective in cases with mark hemolysis. Injection of atropine to block the vagus, followed by neostigmin to cause muscular relaxation, is capable of counteracting cramps or spasms a observed in some serious cases of araneism caused, for instance, by *L. mactan*

Specific Means

Since the death rate in araneism is relatively high in children (and lightweight animals), and inasmuch as no really effective measure has yet been devised to exterminate spiders that infest some districts, a few laboratories have attempted to prepare antivenins specific for certain forms of Araneida known to be either deadly or extremely pernicious.

In this connection, the Instituto Butantan has been preparing, for the last 20 years, 3 types of antivenin: (1) ''anti-ctenico'' for *Ctenus nigriventer;* (2) ''anti-lycosico'' for *Lycosa raptoria;* and (3) ''anti-ctenolycosico'' for both of these species. Sheep are preferred in immunization against these venoms. Intradermal inoculations are made with Lycosa venom and subcutaneous injections with the Ctenus venom. Titrations of both sera are carried out on rabbits. Clinically lycosic antivenin must be injected around the site of the bite.

In the United States, the Antivenin Institute of America has prepared a specific antivenin to conunteract the poisoning caused by the black-widow spider *(Latrodectus mactans).*

More recently, Pirossky, Sampayo, and Franceschi (1942) claimed to have prepared a very potent serum against *Latrodectus mactans* venom. Since they used as an antigen the extract of whole cephalothoraxes of spiders, in which araneilysine might be present, it is hoped that other investigators will experiment farther in this matter. In this case, horses were used for the immunization and the serum was said to have been partially purified by peptic digestion or by sodium sulfate precipitation.

The principle of specificity must be strictly adhered to in the serum treatment of cases of araneism.

References

Amaral, A. do: 1945. Animais veneniferos, venenos e antivenenos, S. Paulo, Caça e Pesca Edit. 82-3, 92-5.
Bogen, E.: 1926. Arachnidism, J. A. M. A. **86:** 1894-1896; Arch. Int. Med. **38:** 623-632.
Brazil, V.: 1918. Soro anti-escorpionico, Mem. Inst. Butantan. **1:** 47-52.
Brazil, V., and Vellard, J.: 1925. Contribuição ao estudo do veneno das aranhas (with French summary), Mem. Inst. Butantan. **2:** 5-77; 1926, **3:** 243-299.
Calmette, A.: 1907. Les venins, les animaux venimeux et la serothèrapie antivenimeuse, Paris, Masson & Cie, pp. 289-294.
Campos, O. de M.: 1924. Os escorpiões brasileiros (with English translation). Mem. Inst. Oswaldo Cruz **17:** 237-301.
Kraepelin, K.: 1899. Scorpions und Pedipalpi, in Das Tierreich, 8. Berlin **17:** 265.
Magalhães, O. de: 1928. Contribuição para o conhecimento da intoxicação pelo veneno dos escorpiões (with English translation), Mem. Inst. Oswaldo Cruz **21:** 5-159.
Mayne, B.: 1943. The Black-Widow Spider. In Gradwohl: Clinical Laboratory Methods and Diagnosis, St. Louis, The C. V. Mosby Company, pp. 2077-2093; 1948, ed. 4, Vol. III, pp. 801-816.

Maurano, H. R.: 1915. Envenenamento escorpionico e seu tratamento, Collect. Trab. Inst. Butantan **1:** 368-398.

Pawlowsky, E. N.: 1927. Gifttiere, Jena, Gustav Fischer, pp. 38-62, 150-173.

Phisalix, M.: 1922. Animaux Venimeux et Venins, Paris, Masson & Cie, pp. 207-314.

Pirosky, I., Sampayo, R., and Franceschi, C.: 1942. Antiserum contra el veneno de l'araña Latrodectus mactans, Rev. Soc. argent. de bio. **18:** 169-175.

Sinson, A.: 1931. Antivenin in the Treatment of Scorpion Bites, Bull. Antivenin Inst. America **5:** 49-50.

Spiegel, E. A.: 1945. The Autonomic Nervous System. In Brennemann's Practice of Pediatrics, Vol. 4, Hagerstown, Md., W. F. Prior Company, Inc., pp. 1-50.

Taylor, J.: 1933. Scorpion Venom, Report Haffkine Inst. **10:** 12.

Todd, Ch.: 1909. An Antiserum for Scorpion Venom, J. Hyg. **9:** 69-76.

Waterman, J. A.: 1938. Some Notes on Scorpion Poisoning in Trinidad, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **31:** 607-624.

CHAPTER 57

SNAKE VENENATION (OPHIDISM)

AFRANIO DO AMARAL

INTRODUCTION

Venomous animals are those whose toxic secretion, elaborated in a state o health, will cause disturbances in their victim only when they are pressed squeezed, or swallowed by other species. In this group are included the toads and certain fishes.

Veniferous animals are those whose toxic secretion, elaborated in a state of health, will cause disturbances in their victim when that secretion is communicated to other species through biting, stabbing, or stinging. In this group are included certain snakes, 2 lizards, a few fishes, the scorpions, the spiders, and the centipedes, besides some insects such as the wasps and the bees. They can venenate either while attacking their prey and their enemies or while defending themselves from the attacks of other animals.

CAUSAL AGENTS: SNAKES

Serpents are divided into the following families as recognized by the majority of the modern herpetologists:

Typhlopidae Günther, Leptotyphlopidae Stejneger, Boidae Boulenger, Anilidas Stejneger, Uropeltidae Gray, Xenopeltidae Cope, Colubridae Amaral (with two series of species recognizable through their tooth formation: aglyphodont and opisthoglyphodont), Elapidae Günther and Hydrophidae Smith (both of which form the third series of species recognizable through their tooth formation: proteroglyphodont), Viperidae Bonaparte, and Crotalidae Gray (both of which constiute the fourth series of species recognizable through their tooth formation: solenotodont*).

Neither the aglyphodont nor the opisthoglyphodont series are of medical importance, since the representatives of the former do not bear any grooved tooth or fang wherewith they could inoculate their venom, while the representatives of the latter bear grooved teeth or fangs which, however, are situated posteriorly in their mouth, thus being in an improper position to bite.

The proteroglyphodont and the solenotodont series correspond to many species spread throughout the world, all of which not only secrete a toxic saliva, but also are apt to inject it by means of their grooved or hollow fangs on piercing the tissues of their prey or enemies. Moreover, the fangs of both the proteroglyphodont and the solenotodont ophidians are situated anteriorly in their mouth, thus being in a position favorable both to biting and to stabbing their victims.

Proteroglyphodonts.—Serpents belonging to this series are provided with small fangs longitudinally grooved and situated one on each side in the upper and front part of the mouth. Each fang is firmly implanted in the anterior portion of the shortened maxilla, and this is closely articulated with the other bones of the skull. It is also devoid of any direct motion so that the snake must hold on to the prey or victim to inject the venom into its tissues.

---

*Or solenoglyphodont.

The proteroglyphodont snakes are divided into 2 groups: sea species and land species. The former, represented by the Hydrophiidae, are found in the Pacific and Indian Oceans, only one species living in fresh water. This is *Hydrophis semperi* which is confined to a lake in Luzon, Philippine Islands. The remaining species, numbering about 90 at present, are encountered in deep water or near the shore (occasionally on land but never far from the seashore) all through the Indo-Burmese region, near the Malayan Archipelago down to the Philippine Islands, along the coast of China and extending as far south as the Australian region (beyond New Guinea, Celebes, and Polynesia), and as far East as the west coast of Mexico, Central America, Panama, Colombia, and Ecuador.

In their native habitat sea serpents are rather tame. They are rapid swimmers, but on land they become virtually helpless, with the exception of one species, *Laticauda colubrina.* Specimens of these have been found in a fishing village in Singapore among the poles supporting the houses which are built out over the water, whence they dip into the sea whenever they are hungry and return to their haunting grounds by climbing the poles as soon as they have fed.

Although the majority of the sea snakes seldom exceed 1,200 mm. (4 ft.) in length, a few species are known to attain much larger size, as, for instance, *Hydrophis spiralis* and *Hydrophis cyanocinctus*—both of the Indo-Burmese region—reach lengths of 2,700 mm. or more (over 9 ft.) and 1,800 mm. or more (6 ft.), respectively. The black and yellow sea serpent, *Pelamis platurus,* is the species that has been captured sometimes along the west coast of the Americas and even in Gatun Lake, Panama.

All sea snakes are provided with a laterally compressed, paddle-like tail which facilitates swimming. They feed on fishes and eels, whose movements they are able quickly to neutralize and whose respiration they stop through the action of their venom, which is highly neurotoxic, particularly in the Hoogli pattee *(Enhydrina schistosa)*, so common in the Indian Ocean.

The latter group of the proteroglyphodont snakes, represented by the Elapidae all of which live on land, may be met all over the world except in the northern districts of the holarctic region. Its members constitute by far the greater part of the ophiological fauna of Australia, where the following species deserve special mention, since they are all provided with very active venom: the copperhead *(Denisonia superba)*, the tiger-snake *(Notechis scutatus)*, and the death-adder *(Acanthophis antarcticus)*, besides the brown snake *(Demansia textilis)* and the black snake *(Pseudechis porphyriacus)*.

Among the representatives of this group may be cited the following species:

1. The king cobra *(Naja hannah)* which has been aptly called the star serpent of the Indo-Malayan region. It is really not only the world's largest venomous snake, since it may reach the length of 5,400 mm. (18 ft.), but it is also the most lethal of all reptiles in view of the extremely great amount of powerful venom it is likely to secrete. It may be said to be the most dangerous of all living wild creatures. Besides the high toxicity of its saliva, this snake is almost unique in being always active and inclined to attack. It is found in Tadjikistan, India, Burma, China, Indo-China, Siam, Malaya, and the Philippines.

2. The cobra-de-capello or spectacled cobra *(Naja naja)*, also found all over the range of the preceding species. It never grows so large, average specimens measuring 1,800 mm. (6 ft.). It is responsible for the highest toll of lives taken every year by serpents anywhere in the world. In India alone some 20,000 human beings (not counting innumerable animals both small and large) are known to be victimized annually by the cobra.

3. The kraits, of which the common krait *(Bungarus candidus)*, the banded krait *(B. fasciatus)*, the karawala or ringed krait *(B. ceylonicus)* and the yellow-headed krait *(B. flaviceps)* are the most widespread and dangerous. They are encountered in Southeastern Asia, Malaya, and the East Indies.

4. The asp, or East African cobra *(Naja haje)*, so common from North Africa through Egypt to Natal that every skillful "snake charmer" uses it in his shows to dupe the tourist for gain.

5. The spitting cobra *(Naja nigricollis)*, which has the widest range of all poisonous snakes in Africa, occurring from the Egypt-Sudanese region southwestwardly to Angola and Transvaal. It is also one of the most vicious and dangerous ophidians of the world. Ditmars wrote: "The term 'spitting' does not correctly indicate the manner of ejecting the poison

as the performance is accomplished with the jaws slightly parted and the venom com directly from the openings at the tips of the fangs.''

6. The black cobra *(Naja melanoleuca),* which is the second largest of the Afric Elapidae, being second only to the Indo-Malayan king cobra *(N. hannah)* and the commo mamba *(Dendraspis angusticeps).* It reaches 2,400 mm. (8 ft.) in length and is foun throughout the tropical section of Africa, from Guinea and Uganda to the Shiré Valley.

7. The South African cobra *(Naja flava),* which is found from the Cape Colony up t the southern section of Tanganyika.

8. The ringhals *(Sepedon haemachates),* distributed all through South Africa. It is als able to spit its venom, hence the name ''spoewslang,'' which was applied to it by the Boers.

9. The mambas, scattered through the tropical and subtropical sections of Africa. They are all slender and arboreal, bearing a sort of protective coloration, which renders them inconspicuous and even unnoticeable in their natural habitat among leaves and branches in forests. The black mamba, considered as the dark chromatic phase borne by adult specimens of the commonest species *(Dendraspis angusticeps),* has been found as long as 3,600 mm. (12 ft.).

10. The coral snakes, genus Micrurus: there are 2 species in the United States, namely, the harlequin or bead snake *(M. fulvius)* of the Southeast and the Sonoran coral snake *(M. euryxanthus)* of the Southwest.

Several species, besides the 2 just mentioned, also occur in Mexico and Central America, the principal being *M. affinis, M. diastema, M. elegans, M. mipartitus,* and *M. nigrocinctus.* Throughout their range they are all popularly known as ''coralillas.'' In South America, besides *M. mipartitus* which occurs from Nicaragua southwardly to Venezuela and Peru, over 20 species are recognized; the most important are *M. ancoralis, M. balzani, M. corallinus, M. decoratus, M. dissoleucus, M. filiformis, M. hemprichii, M. langsdorffii, M. lemniscatus, M. narduccii, M. peruvianus, M. psyches, M. spixii, M. surinamensis, M. transandinus,* and *M. tschudii.* These forms are also called ''coralillas'' throughout the Spanish-American countries and ''corais'' in Brazil. They secrete very little venom, the toxicity of which, however, is very great. Fortunately, they are provided with rather minute fangs. Their fangs are not movable; this is the primary reason why their bite is relatively rare. The second reason is that the members of this group are quite tame when unmolested. The third reason lies in that they must first close the mouth and hold on tightly to the victim in order to inject the venom into its tissues.

Solenotodonts.*—The ophidians included in this series are provided with very large fangs, hollow, like a hypodermic needle or a tube, with one ''active'' fang situated on each side, in the front upper part of the mouth. These fangs are quite movable, since the short maxillary bones in which they are firmly implanted are rather loosely attached to the skull and very closely connected with powerful muscles, which is different from the structure of the Proteroglyphodonts.

The solenotodont snakes are divided into 2 groups: the pit vipers and the pitless vipers, according to the presence or absence of a pit or supplemental hole in the snout, placed between the nostril and the eye, and below their level. All solenotodont ophidians encountered in the Americas (Western World) are pit vipers, while all those living in Europe and Africa are pitless vipers, those found in Asia, Malay Peninsula, and the East Indies belonging to either group.

A. Of the pit vipers about 100 species are recognized at present. These are combined into the 6 genera which constitute the family Crotalidae.

1. Of the genus Crotalus, the following are the most important species living in North America (Canada, United States, and Mexico): *C. adamanteus,* the diamond-black rattler of the southeastern states; *C. atrox,* the Texas rattler of the southwestern states and New Mexico; *C. cerastes,* the sidewinder of the extreme southwest, lower California, and northwest Mexico; *C. enyo,* of lower California; *C. exsul,* of Cerros Island (lower California); *C. horridus,* the timber rattler of the eastern and central states; *C. lepidus,* of Texas, Arizona, and north central Mexico; *C. lucasensis,* of southern lower California; *C. michellii,* the bleached

---

*Or solenoglyphodonts.

rattler of Arizona, California, lower California, and islands; *C. molossus,* of the extreme southwest and north central Mexico; *C. polystictus,* of north central Mexico; *C. ruber,* the red rattler, of southern California, lower California, and islands; *C. scutulatus,* of the Southwestern States and the Mexican plateau; *C. stejnegeri,* of west central Mexico; *C. terrificus,* the dog-faced rattler, with 2 races, respectively, in west central Mexico and in southeast Mexico whence it has spread into Central America; *C. tigris,* the tiger rattler of the deserts of Arizona and northwest Mexico; *C. tortugensis* of Tortuga Island (lower California); *C. triseriatus,* of southeast Arizona and Mexico; *C. viridis,* the prairie rattler, of the Great Plains and the western states, from southern Canada to northwest Mexico and lower California; *C. willardi* of southern Arizona and northwest Mexico.

Of this genus only one form occurs in Central America. This is *C. terrificus durissus* which has spread from southeast Mexico and extends southwardly to Colombia and neighboring Venezuela.

Throughout South America this genus is represented by the form *C. terrificus terrificus,* which seems to have intergraded with the preceding race in some sections of Venezuela and Colombia. Rattlers have not been reported from Chile and transandean Peru and Ecuador. Throughout the Spanish-American countries the rattlesnake is called ''vibora de cascabel'' or simply ''cascabel,'' while in Brazil, among Portuguese Americans, it is known as ''cascavel'' and also ''boiquira,'' and ''maracaboia'' among the Indians.

2. Of the genus Sistrurus, which is typically North American, only 3 rather small or dwarfed species are recognized, to wit: *S. catenatus,* the ''massasauga'' of the prairies of southeast Canada, eastern, central, and west central United States and northeast Mexico; *S. miliarius,* the ground rattler of the south central and western States; *S. ravus* of New Mexico.

3. The genus Agkistrodon is represented both in the Eastern and the Western Worlds by several species: *rhodostoma* in Siam, Malaya, and East Indies; *hypnale* in Ceylon and India; *himalayanus* in the Himalayan range from 1,500 m. to 3,000 m.; *halys* in southwest Siberia and the Caspian Sea district; *blomhoffii* and *intermedius* in Siberia, China, Mongolia, and Japan, including Okinawa and Formosa Islands; *acutus* in the upper Yangtze district of China; *mokeson* or copperhead in the eastern and central sections of the United States; *piscivorus* or cottonmouth moccasin in southeastern United States; *bilineatus* or freno (sometimes Cantil and Zoleuate) in southern Mexico down to Guatemala and Honduras. Both *piscivorus* and *bilineatus* may be found in marshes and streams.

4. The Oriental genus *Trimeresurus* is made up of some 20 species of which the following deserve mention: *cantoris* from the Andaman and Nicobar Islands; *flavomaculatus* from the Philippines; *flavoviridis* or habu, from Loo-Choo Islands, Japan; *gramineus* or green, tree- (sometimes bamboo-) pit viper, the most widespread of the Eastern forms, since its range extends from India and Malay to southwest Oceania; *monticola* or spotted pit viper from the Himalayas (600 m. to 2,400 m.) to Burma and Sumatra; *mucrosquamatus* from Formosa; *purpureomaculatus* or Grey's pit viper, from India to Burma, Sumatra, and Andaman and Nicobar Islands; *sumatranus* from Malay to Borneo; *wagleri* from the Malayan Peninsula and Archipelago.

5. The Occidental genus Bothrops, well distributed over the American tropical section, where it is represented by some 40 species, may be divided into 3 groups: (1) land snakes, (2) arboreal snakes with nonprehensile tail, (3) arboreal snakes with prehensile tail.

Among the land-living species of Bothrops the following deserve consideration: *alternata,* the ''urutu'' of Brazil, ''vibora-de-la-Cruz'' of Paraguay, Uruguay, and Argentina; *alticola* in the Andean section of Ecuador; *ammodytoides,* the ''yarará ñata'' of Argentina; *andiana* in E. Peru; *atrox,* the ''nayuaca'' or ''tepotzo'' of Mexico, the ''barba amarilla'' or ''terciopelo'' of Central America, the ''tamagá'' (''tommigoff'') of Panama, the ''coaima'' or ''echis'' (because of its dorsal X-like markings) of Colombia, the ''terciopelo'' or ''taya'' of Venezuela, the ''fer-de-lance'' of Martinique, Santa Lucia, Tobago, and Trinidad Islands, the ''terciopelo'' or ''yarará'' of Bolivia, Paraguay, and Peru, the ''caissaca'' of tropical Brazil; *cotiara, the* ''cotiara'' of Subtropical Brazil, the ''koatiá'' of Paraguay and north eastern Argentina; *erythromelas* in central Brazil; *godmani* in Guatemala and Honduras;

hyoprora in the Amazon valley (Brazil and Colombia); *iglesiasi* in northeast Braz *itapetiningae* in southeast Brazil; *jararaca,* the ‘‘jararaca’’ of south central Brazil, ‘‘yararaca’’ of Paraguay, Uruguay, and Argentina; *jararacussu,* the ‘‘jararacuçu’’ of Bra the ‘‘yarará-guazu’’ of Bolivia, Paraguay, and Argentina; *lansbergii,* the ‘‘chinga’’ southern Mexico and Central America, the ‘‘patoquilla’’ of Colombia, the ‘‘deroya’’ of Ven zuela; *lojana* in the highlands of Ecuador; *medusa,* the ‘‘viejita’’ of Venezuela; *melanura* southern Mexico; *microphthalma* in Peru and Ecuador; *nasuta,* the ‘‘tamagá’’ of Centr America, the ‘‘hilván’’ of Colombia and western Ecuador; *neglecta* in central Brazil, Britis Guiana, and Colombia; *neuwiedii* (including several races) the ‘‘jararaca pintada’’ of Brazi the ‘‘yararaquita’’ of Paraguay, Bolivia, Uruguay, and Argentina; *nummifera,* the ‘‘mano-d metate’’ in Mexico, the ‘‘mano-de-piedra’’ or ‘‘timbó’’ of Honduras and Costa Rica *ophryomegas,* the ‘‘chatilla’’ of the Pacific slopes of Central America; *picta* in western Peru *pirajai* in eastern Brazil; *pulchra* in the Andean section of Ecuador; and *xanthogrammus* in Ecuador and Colombia.

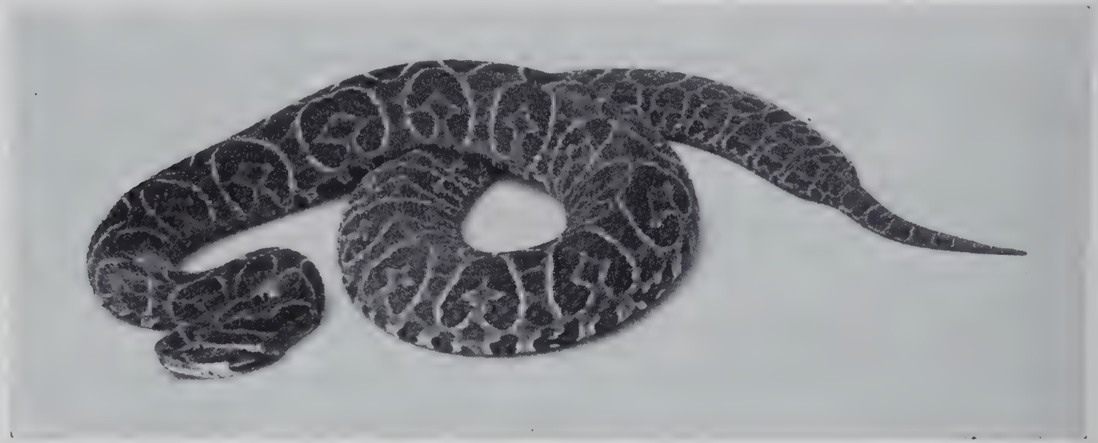


Fig. 437.—*Bothrops alternata,* the "urutu" of Brazil or "vibora-de-la-Cruz" of Argentina and Uruguay.

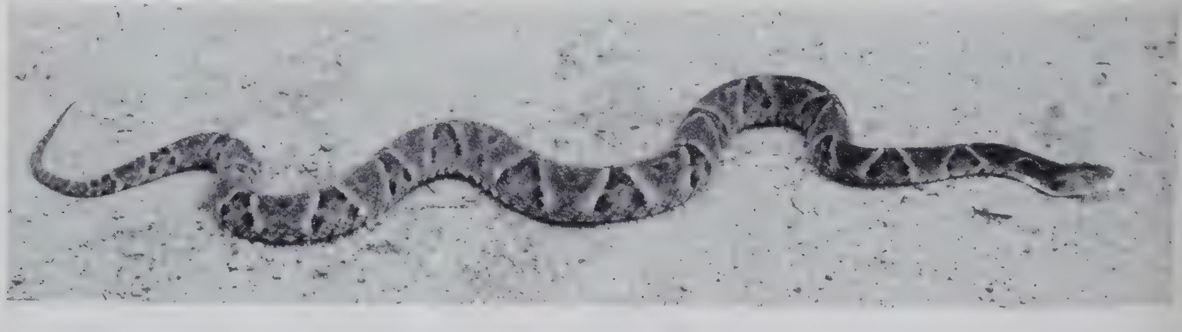


Fig. 438.—*Bothrops atrox,* the terciopelo of Spanish America, "fer-de-lance" of Martinique, or "casissaca" of Brazil.

Among the arboreal snakes with nonprehensile tail the following are the only ones of any importance: *castelnaudi,* the ‘‘trepadeira’’ of northwest Brazil, the ‘‘rabo-de-ratón’’ of eastern Peru and Ecuador, the ‘‘macabrel’’ of southeast Colombia; and *insularis,* the ‘‘jararaca ilhoa’’ of the Queimada Grande Island (off the southeastern coast of Brazil).

Among the arboreal snakes with prehensile tail, the following may be cited: *bicolor* in Guatemala; *bilineata,* the ‘‘sucurucu-de-patioba’’ or ‘‘Oricana’’ of eastern and central Brazil, the ‘‘vibora verde’’ of eastern Bolivia, Peru, and Ecuador; *lateralis,* the ‘‘lora’’ of Costa Rica; *monticellii,* the ‘‘rabo-de-chucha’’ of western Panama, Colombia, and Ecuador; *nigrovirdis,* the ‘‘víbora-de-árbol’’ of Costa Rica and Guatemala; *oligolepis* in the Andean section of Peru; *peruviana* in southeastern Peru; *schlegelii,* the ‘‘bocaracá’’ of Honduras and Costa Rica, the ‘‘toboba-depestaña’’ of western Panama, Colombia, and Ecuador; and *undulata* in southern and western Mexico.

6. The genus Lachesis is represented by but one species, that is, *muta*, the dreadful bushmaster of Trinidad Island, the "verrugosa" of Costa Rica, Panama, and Colombia, the "mapanare" or "guayacán" of Venezuela, the "chuchupe" of the Peruvian Amazon valley, the "surucucu-de-fogo" or "surucucu-pico-de-jaca" or "surucutinga" of tropical Brazil.

B. Of the pitless vipers there are seven genera including over 30 species which are spread throughout Europe, southern and western Asia (and Malay), and particularly Africa, whence the whole group, the Viperidae family, appears to have sprung.

1. In Europe, therefore, outside of the tropical or subtropical zones, only one rather unimportant genus, Vipera, has been found. It holds 7 small species (including *V. berus*, the "kreuzotter" of Germany), of which 5 also occur either in Africa or in Asia.

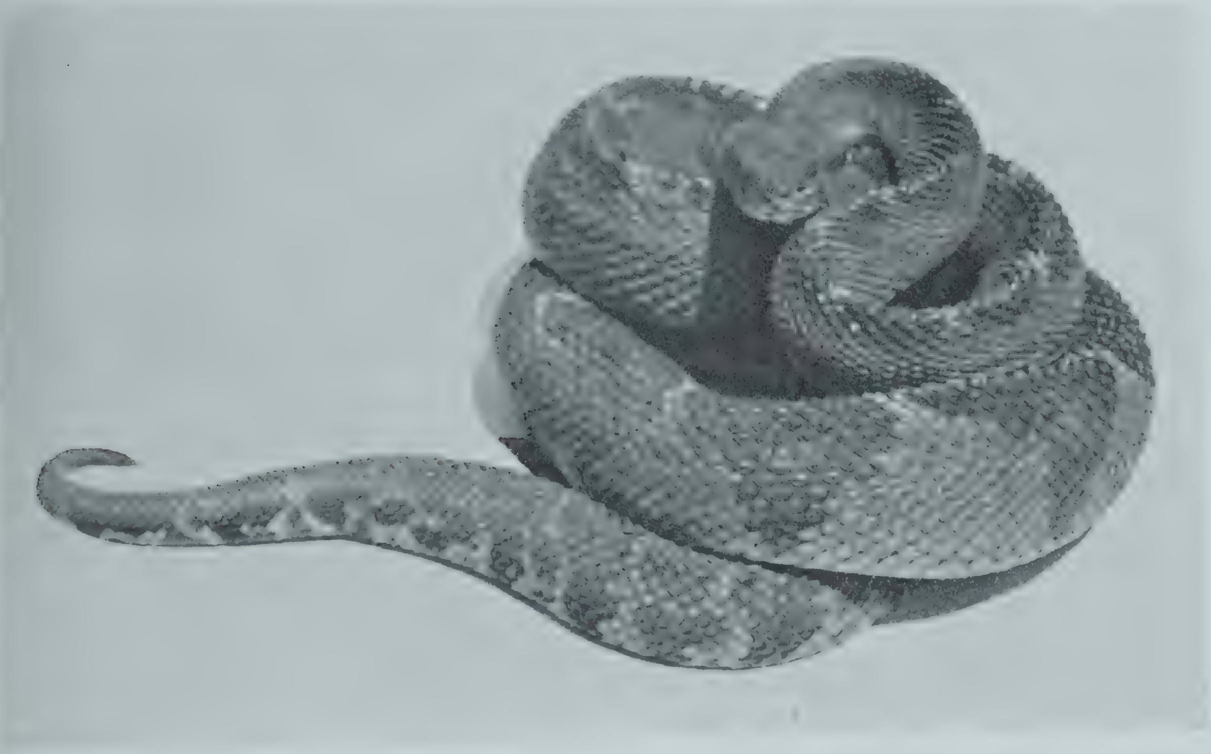


Fig. 439.—*Lachesis muta*, bushmaster or "surucuçu," the largest pit viper and the most vicious snake of the American tropics.

2. In Asia and Malay the following forms are known (besides 5 small species of Vipera):

(a) *Azemiops feae*, the "fea's" viper of Upper Burma.

(b) *Pseudocerastes persica*, the "horned-eye" viper of Persia.

(c) *Vipera russellii*, the "daboia" or "tic polonga" of India, where it nearly rivals the spectacled cobra in taking yearly a high toll of human life; the largest and the truly deadly representative of the genus, it ranges from India and Ceylon through Malay to the East Indies.

3. In Africa, which seems to be their paradise, vipers are represented by heavy terrestrial forms, light sand-burrowing forms, slender arboreal forms, and large aquatic forms. They make up 7 genera in all, with the following conspicuous forms (besides *Vipera superciliaris* of the coastal area of Moçambique and 2 more species of the genus Vipera that have spread to Europe or Asia):

(a) Genus Atractaspis, with about 12 burrowing species, all of which are provided with so extremely developed fangs as to defeat virtually their purpose; the most important ones (*bibronii*, *irregularis*, and *rostrata*) occur throughout the tropical and subtropical districts.

(b) Genus Causus, with the dreaded species *rhombeatus* (excluding other smaller ones) the night adder of South Africa, where it lurks in rubbish heaps, which increases its chance of biting human beings.

(c) Genus Atheris, with 3 species, of which *chlorechis* lives in Liberia and *squamiger* in Angola, both being called "bush vipers."

(d) Genus Bitis, with several species, of which the most venomous are: *gabonica,* the gaboon viper, "the world's most frightful looking creature," spread across tropical Africa from coast to coast; *nasicornis,* the rhinoceros viper or river jack of central West Africa, where it is found along streams; *arietans,* the puff adder, distributed from north central Africa to the Suez Canal zone, thence down to South Africa; *caudalis,* the Angola viper; and *atropos* (the Berg viper), *cornuta* (the horned viper), and *inornata* (the Cape viper) in South Africa.

4. In Africa and in Asia simultaneously are encountered the following forms:

(a) Genus Cerastes of sand vipers, of which *vipera* ranges from Algeria to Egypt and *cornutus,* the horned sand viper, extends from northeast Africa to Arabia and Palestine.

(b) Genus Echis of desert-living forms, of which *coloratus* inhabits Arabia, Palestine, and Socotra, and *carinatus,* the deadly "efa" of Egypt or "phoorsa" of India, may be encountered throughout the sandy districts of North Africa, Arabia, Persia, and India.

Habits and Behavior of Venomous Snakes

While aglyphodont, opisthoglyphodont, and proteroglyphodont ophidians, like the representatives of more primitive groups such as the Boidae, are as a rule quick in their movements, vipers are rather sluggish. The forward motion of ordinary vipers, adders, and rattlers results from successive movements of the ribs, the tips of which lie just beneath the skin of the belly and flanks. Arboreal vipers make a dextrous use of the tail by coiling it in a spring-like manner around any branch or bough.

A correctly aimed strike and a progressively strong constriction are employed by the nonveneniferous forms or aglyphodonts in order not to miss the opportunity of feeding and thereby of surviving. Opisthoglyphodont species, however, being provided with back fangs or grooved teeth, first seize their prey, then bring these teeth into action through repeated forward and sideward motions of the maxillae over the victim's body, whereupon they inject their venomous saliva into its tissues. This excretion, which is neurotoxic, paralyzes the muscles of the captured animal, making reaction impossible.

Coral snakes are tame and live a secretive life. They usually do not bite unless hard pressed by one unaware of their venomous nature.

Regarding the Western World pit vipers particularly, the copperhead *(Agkistrodon mokeson)* is a rather vicious creature, which gives no warning of its presence while in the open. It moves quite suddenly and begins to strike in any direction whatsoever.

The cottonmouth moccasin *(Agkistrodon piscivorus)* attacks everything that happens to move about it. Its custom is to first open the mouth widely and then to strike in any direction whence it perceives danger.

There seems to be some variation in temperament among rattlers.

I have often observed that most rattlesnakes, when excited and getting ready to strike, coil up in such a way as to leave the head and the anterior third of the body raised quite high, forming angular loops with the hind part of the body and tail. As a rule this attitude brings the left side of the rattler's body inside of the coil, the neck region being doubled in an "S"-shaped loop. The loop is just what permits the snake to thrust the head forward. In some cases, as often happens with the Texas rattler when it is very angry, it gradually raises the head well up in the air, 10 to 15 inches or more from the ground, according to its size. Under these circumstances it does not strike upward, but sideways or downward. However, when it is lying coiled, its head resting

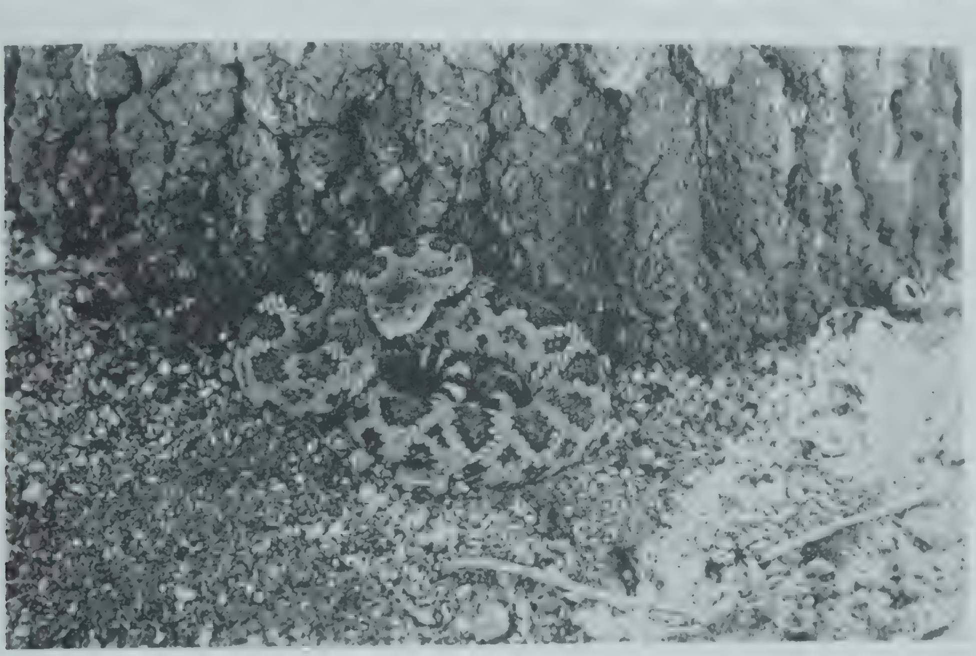


Fig. 440.—A rattler (*Crotalus viridis*) getting ready to strike.

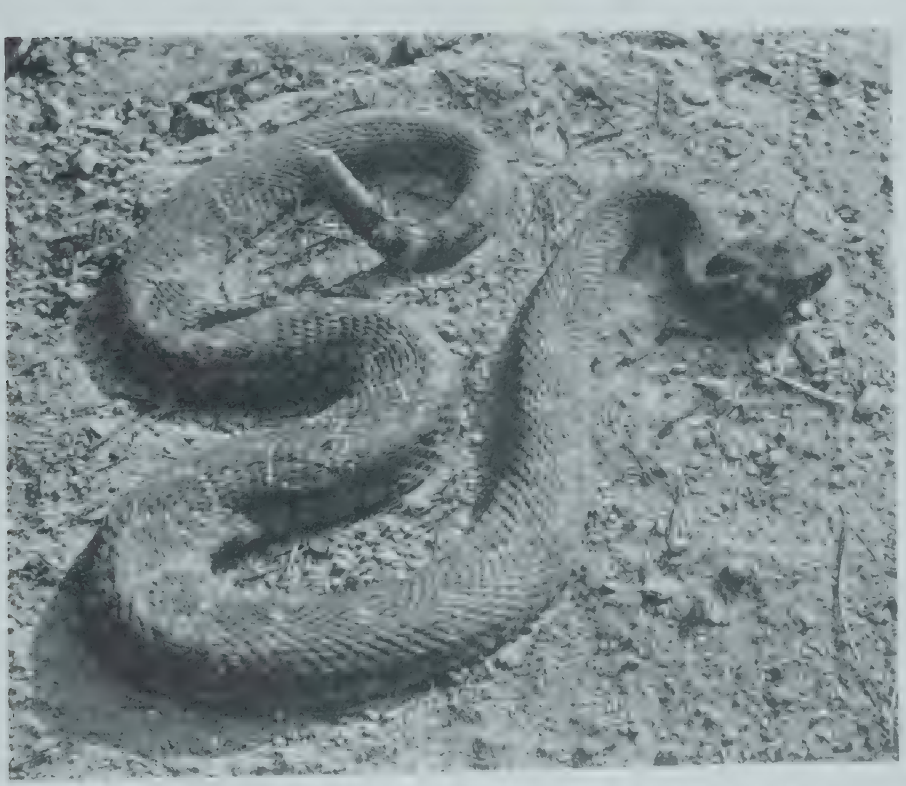


Fig. 441.—Desert diamond rattlesnake, *Crotalus atrox* (Baird and Girard). (Photograph National Park Service.) (From Merck Report, July, 1946, from article by Stahnke, Herbert L.: Some poisonous animals of the United States; by permission of the author and publisher.)

somewhere on its body, it can strike almost vertically upward, as the thr oftentimes forms an angle of nearly 70° with the underlying ground.

Quite comparable to the behavior of the subtropical forms, both at r and on striking, is that of the typically tropical rattlesnake, the "cascave or "boiquira," *Crotalus terrificus,* with the difference only that the latter ve seldom makes any hissing sound either before or after the blow.

The comportment of the dreaded bushmaster, *Lachesis muta,* is indee unique. This snake lives in holes in the ground or in fallen or decayed tree and, while in the open and at bay, it coils up, but, quite contrary to the usua habits of vipers, it attacks and comes after anyone who passes within striking distance. It may be explained that the bushmaster, or "surucucu-de-fogo," is the largest member of the solenotodonts, since it reaches a length of 3,60 mm. (about 12 ft.).

Poison Apparatus

The venom apparatus, having attained its maximum development among the solenotodont snakes, consists of a gland, a duct, and one or more fangs located on each side of the head. The venom is the secretion of the external supralabial gland of the ophidians, which is found below and behind the orbit. From the physiologic and biochemical standpoints the venom acts as a sort of saliva; as such it serves both to facilitate the swallowing of the prey and to initiate the gradual digestion of the tissues of the prey by the combined action of several principles or enzymes which enter into its composition.

Among the solenotodont ophidians, the South American "jararacucú" *(Bothrops jararacussu)* and "urutú" *(Bothrops alternata),* and the North American diamond-back rattler *(Crotalus adamanteus)* have the largest glands, while the bushmaster *(Lachesis muta)* and the African *Atractaspis bibronii, A. irregularis,* and other congeneric species possess the longest fangs. Among the proteroglyphodonts, the white-striped coral snake *(Doliophis bivirgatus)* from Burma, Malay, and the East Indies bears the largest glands, which extend along each side of the body for about ⅓ of its length, gradually becoming thick or globose, and terminating in front of the heart. Among the solenotodonts of the European-African region, the South African death adder, *Causus rhombeatus* and other congeneric species show a similarly aberrant glandular development. The longest fangs among proteroglyphodont forms are found in the Abyssinian *Dendraspis antinorii* and other African mambas.

Poison Inoculation

Inoculation of venom is accomplished by the synchronized action of several muscles all attached to the skull bones. The bones most directly concerned with this action are divided into 2 groups, each group making up the arm of a lever, the axis of which is represented by the joint of the squamosal with the quadrate. Contraction of the muscles pulling from the rear and lower arm of that lever, assisted by the relaxation of the opposite group of muscles, causes the closing of the mouth, and the lowering and retraction of the fangs, while contraction of the muscles pulling from the front and upper group of muscles, aided by the relaxation of the opposite group of muscles, provokes the opening of the mouth and the raising and projection of the fangs.

Moreover, this combined muscular action, occurring at the very moment the strike takes place, is responsible for the instant and wide opening of the mouth up to an angle of 150 degrees or more and the compression of the glands, thereby forcing the venom through the duct and fangs and into the victim's tissues. At the end of the stroke the fangs are withdrawn from the victim's tissues (the whole action takes but a few seconds), whereupon the mouth closes again and the fangs are pulled back and return to their resting position, hiding under the palatine membrane.

SNAKE VENOMS

Volume of Venom

The amount of the venom secreted varies according to the species and, in general, is proportional to the size of the snake, although there are exceptions to this rule: sea snakes (Hydrophidae) secrete very little venom in relation to their size; the neotropical rattler, *Crotalus terrificus,* secretes less and less poison as it grows older, medium-aged individuals yielding the largest volume.

Captivity also exerts a noticeable influence on the secreting activity of the venom glands, retarding or even inhibiting it through secondary infections.

In the temperate zone, serpents have been found to be quantitatively more poisonous immediately following the hibernation period. Such is the case, for instance, with both the diamond-back rattler *(Crotalus adamanteus)* and the Texas rattler *(C. atrox),* specimens of which were found by Stadelman (1929) to produce as much as 1,000 mg. (1 Gm.), dried weight, at a single extraction.

In exceptional instances, it has been proved that some solenotodont snakes, such as the bushmaster *(Lachesis muta),* the diamond-back rattler *(Crotalus adamanteus),* the Texas rattler *(C. atrox),* and the fer-de-lance *(Bothrops atrox),* may yield much larger amounts of venom if carefully captured and kept undisturbed.

Chemical Nature of Venom

A venom is a complex of many toxic principles and antigenic substances which have especial tropism for different animal tissues. It is likely that these principles and substances, which must have gradually appeared in the saliva as the result of natural selection, are specific weapons whereto ophidians, being limbless and otherwise defenseless, have recourse in their struggle for life.

Venoms are commonly classified with the proteins because of their most important reactions and physicochemical affinities. They lose their toxicity when treated in vitro by such reagents as silver nitrate, sodium and potassium hydroxide, gold chloride, potassium permanganate, formaldehyde, and others. They also become atoxic when heated, but at widely different temperatures. They are not modified by glycerin, which therefore serves as the usual means of preservation in the laboratory. Venoms are also stable when desiccate and kept away from air, humidity, heat, and light.

Until recently very little was known concerning the chemical compositio and the real nature of the toxic principles of the venom.

Micheel and collaborators, Bode, Jung, Dietrich, and Bischoff (1936-1939), working with the venom of both the Indian and the African cobras, found that the neurotoxic constituent is not only protein in character but seems to contain a thiolactonic group.

Only recently, however, has the real chemical nature of snake venom been disclosed. Slotta and associates, working under my direction at the Instituto Butantan in São Paulo, Brazil (1936-1938), have confirmed the findings of Micheel and associates and are inclined to ascribe to the presence of 5 to 7 active atoms of sulfur an important binding role in the large protein molecule of neurotoxin, giving it a peculiar specificity. Moreover, they have separated from the venin of the "cascavel" *(Crotalus terrificus)* an active substance which is responsible for its marked neurotoxicity and perhaps for its slight hemolytic power as well. This substance, which they have named "crotoxin," is the first animal proteinous venin ever to be isolated in purely crystalline form.

The highly complex formula of "crotoxin" may be briefly written as $C_{1386}H_{2086}O_{470}N_{372}S_{41}$. Its molecular weight is approximately 30,500 in the light of ultracentrifuge determinations carried out by Svedberg and collaborator Gralén (1938).

Crotoxin, which is also a homogeneous substance, has proved, in the course of electrophoresis experiments performed by Li and Fraenkel-Conrat to have the value of $d\mu/dpH_0$ as its isoelectric point.

"Coagulin" is the second substance that has been found in viper venom. It is connected with the mechanism of blood coagulation and proteolysis as exerted by venins. It is soluble in distilled water, while crotoxin is not. According to the old classification of proteins into globulins and albumins, coagulin is of an albuminoid character and crotoxin is globulinoid. In therapeutics we have taken advantage of coagulin by employing it as hemostatic in various hemorrhagic conditions. The coagulant principle of *B. jararaca* venom has been called "bothropotoxin" by von Klobusitzky and Koenig, my former assistants at the Instituto Butantan.

VENENATION

Both the toxic and the antigenic principles of snake venom, which are bound to the proteins, are responsible for the severe symptoms as usually brought about by the bite. They may be included in 4 biochemical categories of substances: neurocytolysins or neurolysins, hemocytolysins or hemolysins, hemocoagulins, and proteolysins, all of which deserve special mention since they either affect the vital functions of the body or cause extensive destructio of the tissues.

Neurolysins show an accented tropism for the cells of the neuraxis and the autonomous system as well. This explains why they have a systemic effect and may disturb respiration, circulation, tissue metabolism, eyesight, perspiration, and other important functions. They are usually found in the venom of the proterodonts, Elapidae and Hydrophiidae, and such solenotodont forms as the neotropic casavel *(Crotalus terrificus)*, the African night adder *(Causus rhombeatus)*, and the efa of Egypt or phoorsa of India *(Echis carinatus)*. In this type of ophiotoxicosis, death may be due either to direct curarization or to arterial hypotension or even both combined.

Hemolysins both for the red cells and for the leucocytes are responsible not only for the aggravation of local symptoms brought about by the action of proteolysins on tissue proteins and consisting of swelling and phlogosis in general since the earlier stages, but also for the respiratory disturbances which appear at the later phases of some types of venenation. The effect of the hemolysins seems to be related to the enzyme lecithinase, which is likely to set free blood lecithin under the influence of certain venoms; lecithin thus liberated is immediately changed into lysolecithin or lysocithin in contact with blood that has been extravasated by the preliminary effect of venom proteolysin; finally lysocithin will act on the blood cells and cause their lysis. At any rate by altering the composition of the blood, hemolysins cause the oxygen intake of the tissues to drop. They are abundant particularly in the venom of the spectacled cobra *(Naja naja)* and the tic polonga *(Vipera russellii)*, the Texas rattler *(Crotalus atrox)*, the South American urutu *(Bothrops alternata)*, the neotropical fer-de-lance *(Bothrops atrox)*, and the water-moccasin *(Agkistrodon piscivorus)* to a certain extent.

Hemocoagulins may have a variable effect on the blood. Assuming that blood coagulation is due to the action of a double enzyme system, one, trypsin-like in character (and related to thrombokinase or cytozyme), which reacts on prothrombin or serozyme to form thrombin, and another, papain-like in character (and related to fibrinogenase), which reacts on fibrinogen to form fibrin, Eagle (1937) has found that certain snake venoms behave likewise in this regard. Therefore, some venoms will react with prothrombin to form thrombin, while others will react with fibrinogen to form fibrin. In the former group are included the venoms of at least the following species: fer-de-lance *(Bothrops atrox)* and jararaca *(B. jararaca)* among the solenotodonts, and tiger-snake *(Notechis scutatus)* and the South American corais *(Micrurus corallinus* and *M. lemniscatus = frontalis)* among the proteroglyphodonts. In the latter group are included *B. atrox*, *B. jararaca* (both with amphoteric action), *Crotalus adamanteus*, *C. horridus*, and *C. terrificus*. Finally, there are some types of venom which are entirely noncoagulating. These appear to destroy either prothrombin or fibrinogen, or else they neutralize thrombin itself, thus acting in the same manner as heparin. In this third group are included *Agkistrodon piscivorus*, *Bitis arietans*, *Crotalus atrox*, *Vipera ammodytes*, and *V. russellii*.

Proteolysins are the phlogogenic constituents of some snake venoms. They affect the site of the "bite" and act on the walls of the capillaries, causing pain, swelling, blood extravasation, necrosis, and ultimate mutilation. They are fou principally in the venom of the majority of the solenotodonts, the stab of whi may become lethal either primarily, because of extensive destruction of tissu or, secondarily, due to subsequent invasion by bacteria.

Noteworthy Types of Ophiotoxicosis—Clinical Symptoms

The symptoms resulting from the "bite" or stab of the most dreadfu species of serpents may be briefly summarized as follows:

The American Coral Snakes *(Micrurus corallinus, fulvius, lemniscatus,* an others).—No local phenomena occur other than pain, which is usually quite intense. General symptoms are rather severe and consist of depression and somnolence, trembling and convulsions, salivation and lacrimation. In these cases death is due to collapse.

The Indo-Malayan or Spectacled Cobra *(Naja naja).*—Its venom produces an intense local burning sensation, some edema and congestion; prostration and somnolence, salivation, nausea and vomiting; cold perspiration; blood destruction with accelerated and thread-like pulse; rapid respiration (tachypnea) at first, subsequently becoming weaker and slower. Difficulty of speech appears; progressive interrupted muscular paralysis; hemorrhages at times through the mucous membranes. If the dose of venin is not sufficient to cause definite paralysis, the patient will recover and the general symptoms disappear rather rapidly. Otherwise the patient dies from respiratory paralysis, the heart action, however, continuing for a short time.

Similar symptoms of toxicosis are caused by the venom of the hoogli pattee, the Indian sea snake *(Enhydrina schistosa),* with the difference, however, that in this case the local reaction is not severe, hemorrhages are absent, and death occurs in the course of respiratory convulsions.

The King Cobra or Hamadryad *(Naja hannah).*—The venom of this most awesome serpent, which is the largest poisonous species of the world, acts almost exactly like the venom of the spectacled cobra. It kills by paralyzing the respiration as it acts on both the respiratory center and the terminations of the phrenic nerve. It differs from that venom, however, in being very slightly hemolytic and in affecting the central nervous system rather quickly, due perhaps to its tropism for the nerves and to the enormous amount in which it is secreted. For these reasons poisoning by the king cobra appears to be the most severe on record, death oftentimes taking place in less than an hour.

The Common Krait *(Bungarus coeruleus).*—Intoxication due to the venom of this species is responsible for a great number of deaths in India alone. This venenation manifests itself preferably on the nervous centers and especially on the respiratory center. Breathing becomes difficult and stertorous. There is no apparent local reaction. The patient remains in a subconscious state until death.

The Banded Krait *(Bungarus fasciatus).*—Death is the result of paralysis of the respiratory center. This occurs after 2 or 3 days or, in some cases, after a longer period—6 days or more—being preceded by anorexia and general depression, loss of weight, muscular weakness, emaciation, oliguria, and other symptoms of slow toxicosis.

The Black Mamba *(Dendraspis angusticeps).*—This is the most dreaded snake in Africa. It causes a type of poisoning which resembles in many features that caused by the common krait.

The Tic Polonga or Daboia *(Vipera russellii).*—Characteristic features are strong local reaction with development of ecchymoses and hemorrhages due to lack of blood coagulation. There are also accentuated general phenomena, consisting principally in a tendency to collapse, rapid and thread-like pulse, nausea, vomiting, pupillary dilatation, and loss of consciousness. If the patient does not die immediately, the local edema spreads rapidly. Hemorrhages occur at the point of the "bite" or into the mucous membranes, due to hemolysis; hematuria and albuminuria appear, followed by anemia and intense emaciation, causing death. In these cases no signs of intoxication of the central neuraxis are ever found.

The African Puff Adder *(Bitis arietans).*—Its venom, like the daboia's, provokes intense local reaction, with edema, extravasation of blood, infiltration, hemorrhages, and ecchymoses. It is not hemocoagulant, but it is proteolytic and slightly hemolytic. Death as a rule supervenes, either rapidly from blood suffusion through the mucous surfaces and into the brain tissues or slowly from progressive necrosis and gangrene a week or more after the "bite" has been inflicted.

The Pit Vipers, Both American *(Bothrops alternata, atrox, jararaca, jararacussu, nummifera,* and others) **and Asiatic** *(Trimeresurus flavoviridis).*—Formidable reaction supervenes, consisting in immediate edema which spreads rapidly; glandular swelling, serosanguinolent subepidermic infiltration, terrible pain, ecchymosis, and hemorrhage at the site of the "bite." Later, because of the action of these venoms on the tissues in general and most particularly upon the proteins of the red cells and upon blood coagulation, general symptoms follow, consisting of parched throat, thirst, congestion, and hemorrhages through the mucous membranes, except in poisoning by the habu. These hemorrhages which start through the mucosa of the eyes, mouth, nose, stomach, intestines, and bladder may occur even through the ears and the skin. Albuminuria also appears. Finally the patient becomes completely exhausted, the body temperature falls, and death ensues. Whenever death does not supervene, then the gangrene of the tissues most affected progresses until complete mutilation is the final outcome of the venenation.

In this group of venoms none has any manifest effect on the neuraxis or the autonomic nervous system, except that of the jararacuçu *(B. jararacussu),* which, as a rule, brings about impairment of the sight. The venom of the habu *(T. flavoviridis)* is also known to cause paralysis of the respiratory center. Only exceptionally there may be observed paresis or even paralysis of the limbs in the course of envenoming by *B. jararacussu* and *B. jararaca.*

The North American Rattlers *(Crotalus adamanteus, horridus, ruber, viridis,* and others) **and the Neotropical Bushmaster** *(Lachesis muta).*—Their venoms cause local pain and hemorrhage and edema and discoloration of the "bitten" region, which gradually is rendered ecchymotic and covered with phlyctenules; gangrene may be the outcome. In view of the rapid absorption of the venom constituents by nerves, blood, and lymph, general symptoms are apparent almost immediately, the most marked being extreme prostration, cold perspiration, nausea, vomiting, and sometimes diarrhea, weak and quickened pulse, and, subsequently, dyspnea and repeated collapse, until death takes place with great agony.

In this group of pit vipers the Texas rattler (*C. atrox,* together with the water moccasin or *Agkistrodon piscivorus*) represents an exception. Its venom is hemolytic but not hemocoagulant. In vivo it acts like the venom of the daboia, causing no neurotoxicosis. This peculiarity may explain the findings of Jackson and Githen (1931) as to the possibility of treating the poisoning caused in dogs by the Texas rattler by means of incisions and suction applied in the vicinity of the "bite."

The Neotropical Cascavel *(C. terrificus).*—There is practically complete absence of local phenomena in the case of poisoning by this venom. Impairment of the visual function, or even absolute blindness, may occur, lasting for a few minutes to several days, even after the patient has recovered through treatment or spontaneously. In the later stages there is impairment or a true paralysis of both the general motion, particularly about the neck which acts as though it were broken, and the locomotion, then of the respiratory muscles, and finally death.

Summary

We may conclude from these data that each venom causes its peculiar reaction, according to the amount of neurolytic, hemolytic, hemocoagulant, and proteolytic or other principles or enzymes contained therein, giving it specific character: toxic and antigenic specificities. Nevertheless, there are certain similarities between the venoms, principally when the respective snakes belong to kindred species (eventually, to closely allied genera), in which case the active constituents of the venin are about the same, although their relative percentages vary from species to species.

Death Rate

Contrary to the general belief and to certain stories spread by a great many travelers' books, veneniferous serpents are rather rare in tropical forested countries. Although the number of species is fairly large, the density of the ophidic population—which is comparatively high in subtropical and temperate districts except in winter, when serpents go into hiding, seeking protection from the cold weather—is relatively low in jungle sections. In those places venomous reptiles meet with many forms of predatory animals which not only kill them for food but also compete advantageously with them by destroying the ordinary prey of snakes.

The death rate caused by snake poisoning varies in the several regions according to the greater or lesser aggressiveness of the snake and the activity of the venom of the species found in each country. It is known that an average of about 30,000 deaths occur annually in India alone at present as a result of ophidic accidents, of which the majority are caused by the spectacled cobra, whereas there were but 14 fatal cases of venenation in Europe during the period 1883-1892, caused by the common viper, and from 1898 to 1906 there was registered in the Okinawa Island an annual average of 225.3 persons venenated by the habu, with a death rate of approximately 15 per cent.

In Brazil the Instituto Butantan has been able to obtain reliable statistics of the accidents which have occurred in the State of São Paulo. These statistics show the number of cases of snake "bites" to have been on an increase until the period 1906 to 1912, when they began to decrease, following the increasing use of antivenins. Prior to the general use of specific antivenins, the death rate from ophiotoxicosis in that State seems to have been as high as 20 to 25 per cent of the cases. This rate decreased very sharply to 6 to 8 per cent with the introduction of specific sera and has since gradually diminished to 3 or 4 per cent, following the improvement introduced into the technic of antivenin preparation and application.

In the light of these statistics it appears certain that it is impossible to lower the death rate from the present figures for the following reasons:

1. Because both children and animals (especially dogs) contribute about 30 per cent of the total number of cases of snake poisoning.

2. Because children and dogs, having a low body weight, receive relatively larger amounts of poison per kilogram, which therefore acts in a greater concentration on their tissues, snakes being unable to discriminate between a small and a large victim when they stab or bite. The death rate of children and dogs is 3.7 and 10.4 per cent, respectively, of the cases treated with antivenins as against 2.5 per cent for adult persons.

3. Because children usually do not properly report what has happened to them when they are found to suffer from snake poisoning, and dogs are unable to report anything, they are usually seen when their toxicosis is already in a very advanced stage.

In the United States of America, in the light of statistics assembled by the Antivenin Institute, there are about 2,000 to 3,000 cases of snake "bite" every year, the death rate varying from 10 per cent to 35 per cent. This variation is related to the greater or lesser toxicity of the venom of the species prevalent in each section of the country.

In regard to fatal "bite" accidents in other regions, it is not possible to make even an approximate computation, since there are no statistics on this subject. Calculations seem to indicate that the number of lethal accidents in the rest of the world amounts to 5,000 to 10,000 annually, India of course not being included. It seems safe, therefore, to estimate at 40,000 to 50,000 the toll of human lives taken yearly by serpents all over the world.

PREVENTION OF OPHIOTOXICOSIS

Snake venenation with all its terrific consequences can be prevented in 2 ways: first, by preventing snake stabs; second, by applying specific treatment against the effects of the stab.

Prevention of Snake Stabs

Various means have been developed for the prevention of snake stabs, and they can be grouped into 2 principal types of measures: individual protection and collective protection.

Individual Protection.—Since it is known that, according to the different districts considered, about 60 to 90 per cent of the stabs of venomous snakes are inflicted on the feet or legs, it is simply a matter of common sense for one to wear boots and heavy leather leggins to achieve the necessary protection whenever one goes into a snake-infested district.

The stabs of the copperhead and of the timber rattler are sometimes inflicted on the hands, because both these snakes live on ledges, where they may be encountered in the path of a person trying to climb a rock and using his bare hands to help the ascension.

The best means of personal protection against ophiotoxicosis consists of active immunization with "anavenin," that is, detoxified venom (venom treated by formalin and heat). This type of "vaccination" is strictly specific against any venom against which one may seek protection. It is achieved by a series of hypodermic injections, using increasing doses from 0.2 to 2 or 5 c.c. of anavenin.

Collective Protection.—Collective protection is secured chiefly through extermination of venomous ophidians. This may be done by several methods: (1) by systematically killing veneniferous snakes, (2) by capturing those snakes alive, (3) by raising animals that feed on snakes.

1. For nearly half a century a few countries have attempted to get rid of snakes by systematically killing them. In India, the British officers have sought to diminish snake toxicosis by encouraging the killing of snakes and paying a fixed bounty for each head brought in. Despite all efforts in this direction, the British authorities have not been very successful in their humanitarian campaign: after the work of several years, the death rate from snake "bites" in India seems not only not to have been reduced but rather increased. One of the reasons for this failure in India is the superstitions of the Hindus, who would rather die than kill snakes, particularly the spectacled cobra, because they believe that a deity hides behind the hood of its neck.

As a matter of fact, complete extermination of serpents seems to be impossible unless all traces of jungle, forests, rocks, marshes, and other snake sites are removed. Moreover, destruction of vipers can never be achieved in agricultural sections, primarily because these snakes feed chiefly on rodents, the number of which increases with the development of agriculture, and, secondarily, because both snakes and rodents follow a very well-known biologic law applicable to all animals (except of course those that follow birth control): the more they feed, the more young they bear.

2. Capturing live snakes is likely to become a much more successful method of combating viper stabs, because, by removing veneniferous serpents from their habitat, we automatically remove one potential danger, and, also, by keeping those snakes alive, we can secure from them a supply of venin that may be used in the preparation of antivenins or antiophidic sera

One can capture live, poisonous, or, more properly, veneniferous snakes by using a wire hook, a leather lasso, or even a forked stick made from a branch of a tree.

3. Raising animals that feed on snakes is a method that never fully succeeds in practice. A few of the Lesser Antilles have imported the mongoose *(Herpestes griseus)* from India with a view to exterminating the local vipers, since it has long been known that, among ophiophagous animals, this mammal, due to its quick sight and extraordinary agility, rather than to any immunity whatsoever to venom, can attack and kill poisonous serpents. Unfortunately, the mongoose, although clever enough to escape being stabbed, is perhaps more fond of poultry (and we could not blame him for his preference) than of snakes, so that it has of late become a sort of nuisance to the countries that have imported it. In Brazil a species of skunk *(Conepatus chilensis)* is known to feed on pit vipers, being immune to their venom.

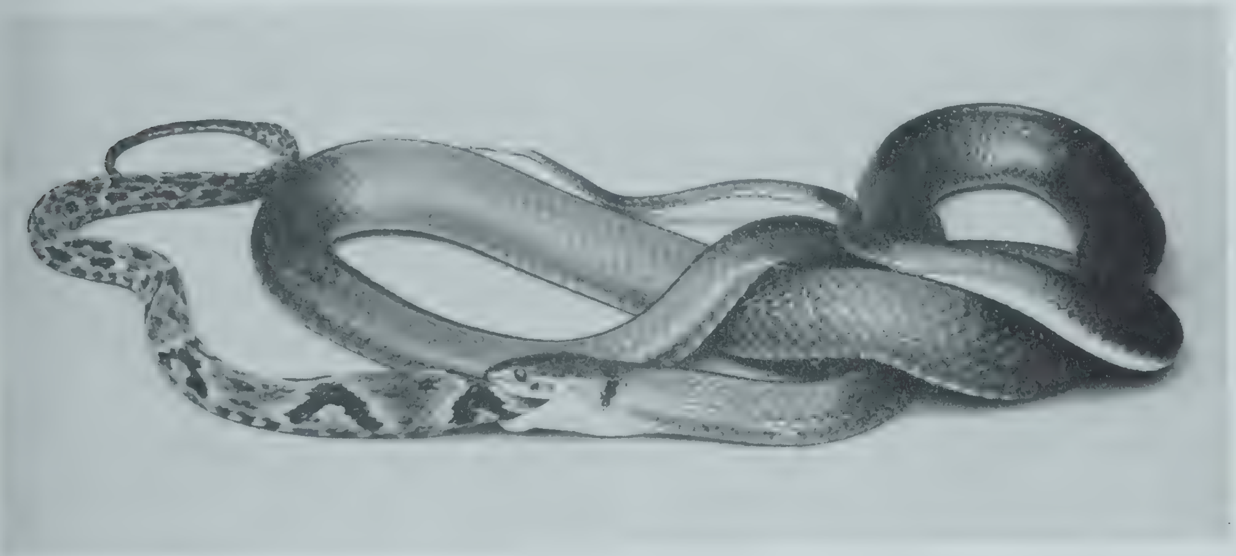


Fig. 442.—The neotropical mussurana *(Pseudoboa cloelia)*, nonpoisonous, swallowing a pit viper *(Bothrops jararaca)*.

The raising and protecting of serpents that kill other serpents (serpentivorous species) is a still less satisfactory method because of the difficulties involved. Such species as the Brazilian mussurana *(Pseudoboa cloelia)* and the American black snake *(Coluber constrictor)* and king snake *(Lampropeltis getulus)*, that have been known to feed on other serpents, including pit vipers, are of no value in practice because they usually try to find other, perhaps less repugnant, food. In this respect it can be safely affirmed that, whenever people have tried to break the rules of or change conditions in Nature, the results have not always been encouraging. Moreover, most persons are still inclined to kill any serpent they encounter. Correcting this inclination depends upon educational measures, the adoption of which takes time.

TREATMENT OF OPHIOTOXICOSIS

Therapeutic measures directed toward counteracting the effects of snake venoms on the tissues are divided into 2 categories: nonspecific means and specific means.

Nonspecific Means

Nonspecific means of counteracting the effects of snake venoms on the tissues consist of: (1) ligature; (2) incision; (3) suction.

1. The ligature or tourniquet must be applied above the stab. It should be made tight at first, but must be partially released for a few seconds at 5- to 10-minute intervals to maintain the necessary circulation in the limb.

2. In the majority of the types of ophiotoxicosis there is no particular advantage in making an incision nor in applying potassium permanganate in solution or in crystals, or in any of the other chemical agents commonly recommended for this purpose. In fact, it is advisable to avoid any further mutilation or injury of the affected tissues, especially because, should the wound not be kept properly dressed until complete recovery, tetanus or other secondary infections might set in and complicate the patient's condition. In regard to potassium permanganate, it has been shown that, to have any effect on the venom, this substance must be used in concentrations that are injurious to the tissues. It has no effect in weak solution and, in itself, is toxic if used in too strong solution.

3. Suction, even when strong enough, has many limitations, since it is applicable only against the local type of venenation caused by such snakes as the Texas rattler *(Crotalus atrox),* the tic polonga or daboia *(Vipera russellii),* and the African puff adder *(Bitis arietans).* The venom of these species is hemolytic but not blood coagulant. It causes a great local swelling and is absorbed mostly by the lymph vessels. It forms *lysocithin* in contact with the extravasated blood, and it is this substance, and not ''diluted poison'' as has been claimed by some, that is extractable by strong suction when applied to these restricted types of ophiotoxicosis.

Above all, the use of alcohol or any stimulant of this kind must be avoided. These stimulants, by strengthening the circulation, may tend to help the absorption and distribution of the venom throughout the body. Strychnine or caffeine, however, may be administered or a cup of hot coffee or tea given, if symptoms of weakness and giddiness develop.

Specific Means

Antivenins or antivenomous sera are the only specific means of neutralizing venins and arresting their harmful effects on the tissues.

Calmette claimed that there is no specificity between antivenins and venoms. He held that any antineurolytic serum could be applied to accidents issuing from whatever kind of neurolytic animal venom. His theory, however, has proved to be untenable through studies carried out by Lamb (1904), Ishizaka (1907), Tidswell (1909), Noguchi (1909), Brazil (1909), Arthus (1911), Gomes (1920), Houssay and Negrete (1923), and do Amaral (1923).

At present we admit that for an antivenin to be really efficacious it must be produced in an animal immunized against the venom of the particular species of snake that has caused the accident, or at least that of a more or less related species. This means that the principle of the specificity (and, to a certain extent, that of paraspecificity) of antitoxins applies to antivenomous sera.

Specificity is due to the fact that a similar antigenic composition may be found only among venoms of serpents closely related to each other from a zoological standpoint. Following this principle a number of laboratories have been engaged in the preparation of antivenins against the snakes prevalent in their countries or even elsewhere, but unfortunately until recently not all had closely followed the improvements introduced into the technic of serum therapy. Of the various laboratories that have in the past prepared or are still preparing on a large-scale antivenins for curative purposes, the following are outstanding: Pasteur Institute (France and Indo-China), polyvalent, especially against the spectacled cobra *(Naja naja)* and the African vipers; Institute for Infectious Diseases (Japan), monovalent, against the habu; Central Research Institute (Kasauli, India), bivalent, for the spectacled cobra and the daboia; Haffkine Institute (India), bivalent for the spectacled cobra and the daboia, and polyvalent (in a lyophilized condition) for the spectacled cobra, the daboia, the krait and the phoorsa; Commonwealth Serum Laboratory (Australia), monovalent, for the tiger snake; Instituto Bacteriologico (Buenos Aires, Argentina), bivalent, for the cascavel and the vibora-de-la-Cruz *(Bothrops alternata)*. Similar organizations have of late become engaged in this line of work both in Mexico and in South Africa, as well as in Austria and Yugoslavia, so that specific antivenins are now available against the poisoning caused by the local serpents.

The Instituto Butantan (São Paulo, Brazil), in its many years of activity, has prepared the following antivenins: (1) monovalent, *crotálico*, for the neotropical cascavel *Crotalus terrificus:* (2) monovalent, *botrópico*, for the South American jararaca *(Bothrops jararaca):* (3) monovalent, for the neotropical bushmaster *(Lachesis muta):* (4) polyvalent, *elapínco*, for the South American corais (genus Micrurus); (5) polyvalent, *botrópico*, for several of the South American rattleless pit vipers; (6) polyvalent, *ofídico*, for both the cascavel and the rattleless pit vipers (genus Bothrops).

The Antivenin Institute of America (Glenolden, Pennsylvania) has prepared 3 types of antivenin: (1) Nearctic crotalidic for the North American rattlers, the copperhead, and the cottonmouth moccasin; (2) Bothropic for the Central American fer-de-lance; (3) Neotropic crotalic for the Central American rattler *(Crotalus terrificus durissus)*.

Application of Antivenin.—The following instructions must be adhered to:

1. Should you not have the proper antivenin with you at the time of the accident, proceed at once to the nearest place where this specific and proper medical attention can be obtained.

Constriction of the limb must continue, but care should be taken to release pressure at intervals of 5 or 10 minutes for about 1 minute at a time.

2. Injections of antivenin may be made under the skin of the thigh, o preferably on the side of the abdomen if applied by the victim himself, o between the shoulders if administered by someone else.

The hypodermic or intramuscular routes of injection may serve in th majority of the cases of ophiotoxicosis, particularly in adults or in patients treated early. Preference should be given to the intravenous route whenever the case is of a serious character.

If the specific serum can be given at once or within the first hour or two after the stab or "bite," a portion of the syringe or ampule, 5 c.c., for instance, should be given by subcutaneous injection around the punctures left on the skin by the snake's fangs. This tends to prevent destruction of the tissues particularly in those cases in which the "bite" happens to have been inflicted by the Texas rattler *(Crotalus atrox)*, the daboia *(Vipera russellii)*, or the puff adder *(Bitis arietans)*, the venoms of which are known to cause great local swelling and to be absorbed mostly by the lymph vessels. In cases treated late, however, the local application of antivenin is probably of little avail.

Dosage.—The doses of antivenin should be proportional not only to the estimated quantity of venom inoculated by the serpent, but also to the toxic activity of the poison and to the relative weight of the patient.

Since, in general, the larger the snake is the greater the volume of venin it is able to inject, it is advisable to give more than 1 dose (10 c.c.) of antivenin in the case of an accident caused by a large specimen. Also, a rather large dose of antivenin is necessary to counteract the effects of the "bite" of such snakes as the king cobra *(Naja hannah)*, the spectacled cobra *(N. naja)*, the cascavel *(Crotalus terrificus)*, the fer-de-lance *(Bothrops atrox)*, the bushmaster *(Lachesis muta)*, the daboia *(Vipera russellii)*, the jararacuçu *(B. jararacussu)*, the diamond-back rattler *(C. adamanteus)*, the Texas rattler *(C. atrox)* and the tiger snake *(Notechis scutatus)*, the venoms of which either are highly toxic for the tissues of animals or are secreted in too large amounts for a person to resist.

Finally, since the toxicity of any venin is inversely proportional to the victim's body weight, it is strongly recommended that 3 to 5 times as much antivenin be given to a child as to an adult. Contrary to the statements of previous authors and specialists, I have very definitely proved that the ratio between dosage and age of the person stabbed (approximately corresponding to his weight) is just the reverse of the usual dosage recommended in cases of bacterial infections. The amount of venom injected is the same whether a child or an adult is stabbed, since no serpent can discriminate between a small and a large victim.

The smaller the patient, the greater the need of the antivenin. When there is reason to believe that the venom injected by the serpent was of unusually large quantity, or when the symptoms develop quickly and in severe form, as, for instance, in children, it is advisable to give a second, a third, or even a fourth dose if indicated; that is, if the first has not caused the symptoms of venenation to subside.

It sometimes happens that, after the first shock and reaction have passed, the patients will show marked improvement. Some fatalities from snake venenation are plainly caused by an undue sense of security following the observation that most patients do well for the first 15 hours. Even though the general symptoms may be mild, it is important to keep the patient under close observation for at least 24 hours or up to 1 month, as in the case of the neotropical cascavel, due to the possibility of relapse within this period, and active treatment should be continued as long as the swelling is progressing. Repeat the injections of antivenin every 1 or 2 hours if the swelling is increasing or if the patient's general condition is becoming worse. The danger always lies more in undertreatment than in overtreatment.

It is most important to bear in mind, in late and severe cases, particularly in children or whenever profuse bleeding or symptoms of liver injury, low blood pressure, and dehydration have appeared, that rapid relief may be secured from liberal doses of physiologic saline, given warm and slowly by the intravenous route, followed by glucose solution or Ringer sodium lactate solution also injected warm and slowly into the vein. Blood transfusion and liver extract are effective in counteracting anemia following marked hemolysis.

References

Acton, H. W., and Knowles, R.: 1913. A New Method of Obtaining a Viperine Antiserum: Preliminary Note, Indian J. M. Research **1**: 326-335.

Acton, H. W.: 1913. The Dose of Venom Given in Nature by a Cobra at a Single Bite, Indian J. M. Research **1**: 388-413.

Acton, H. W.: 1913. The Dose of Venom Given in Nature by the Echis carimata at a Single Bite, Indian J. M. Research **1**: 414-424.

Allen, F. M.: 1938. Mechanical Treatment of Venomous Bites and Wounds, South. M. J. **31**: 1248-1253.

Amaral, A. do: 1920. Do preparo dos soros anti-peçonhentos (Soc. Med. Cir. S. Paulo I-VI-1920), Collect. Trab. Inst. Butantan **2**: 85-88.

Amaral, A. do: 1921. Notas de sorotherapia. Envenenamentos ophidicos e soros anti-peçonhentos (Soc. Med. Cir. S. Paulo I-VII-1921), Collect. Trab. Inst. Butantan **2**: 151-154.

Amaral, A. do: 1921. Um novo soro anti-peçonhento (Soro anti-crotalico norte-americano) (Soc. Med. Cir. S. Paulo I-VIII-1901), Collect. Trab. Inst. Butantan **2**: 169-173.

Amaral, A. do: 1921. Contribution Towards the Knowledge of Snakes in Brazil, Anex. Mem. Inst. Butantan. A (pt. II), 85-88 (41-44).

Amaral, A. do: 1923. The Brazilian Contribution Towards the Improvement of the Specific Snake-Bite Treatment, Proc. New York Pathol. Soc. **23**: 89-98.

Amaral, A. do: 1923. New Genera and Species of Snakes, Proc. New England Zool. Club **8**: 85-105.

Amaral, A. do: 1924. Snake Venoms in Relation to the Prevention of Snake Poisoning, Boston, The Fac. Harvard Univ. School P. H., 76 pp.

Amaral, A. do: 1924. On the Biological Differentiation of the Neotropical Pit Vipers, Bothrops atrox, B. jararaca and B. jararacussu, Am. J. Trop. Med. **4**: 447-452.

Amaral, A. do: 1925. A General Consideration of Snake Poisoning and Observations on Neotropical Pit Vipers, Contrib. II, Harvard Inst. Trop. Biol. & Med., Cambridge, Harvard University Press, 64 pp.

Amaral, A. do: 1926 and 1927. The Snake-Bite Problem in the United States and in Central America, Rep. United Fruit Co. Med. Dept., 229-236, 1926; Bull. Antivenin Inst. America **1**: 31-35, 1927.

Amaral, A. do: 1927. Snake Poisoning and Its Treatment, Philadelphia, Tr. College Physicians, 65-70.

Amaral, A. do: 1927. The Anti-Snake-Bite Campaign in Texas and Subtropical United States, Bull. Antivenin Inst. America **1**: 77-85.

Amaral, A. do: 1927. Notes on Nearctic Poisonous Snakes and the Treatment of Their Bites, Bull. Antivenin Inst. America **1**: 61-76.

Amaral, A. do: 1927. Venoms and Antivenins. In Jordan, E. O., and Falk, I. S.: Newer Knowledge of Bacteriology and Immunology, Chicago, The Univers Chicago Press, pp. 1066-1077.

Amaral, A. do: 1927. Venom Production of Nearctic Pit-Vipers, Bull. Antivenin America 1: 103-104.

Amaral, A. do: 1927. Improved Process of Venom Extraction, Bull. Antivenin America 1: 100-102.

Amaral, A. do: 1929. On the Bothrops Lansbergii Group, Bull. Antivenin Inst. Am 3: 19-27.

Amaral, A. do: 1929. Campanhas anti-ophidicas, Ann. Congr. Brasil. Hyg., pp. 145-16

Amaral, A. do: 1929. Ophidios da regiã neotropica, IV Conf. Sul. Amer. Hyg., Mi Pathol. 1: 55-60.

Amaral, A. do: 1930. Principios e planos de campanha anti-ophidica, Rev. Hyg., S. 4: 225-233.

Amaral, A. do: 1930. Serpientes venenosas sudamericanas (Congr. Internac. Biol.), Soc. Biol. Montevideo, Supp. 1: 93-107; R. Soc. Argentina Patol. Reg. Norte, 788-805.

Amaral, A. do: 1930. Campanhas anti-ophidicas, Mem. Inst. Butantan 5: 195-232.

Amaral, A. do: 1931. Animais venenosos do Brasil, Mono. Sec. Agric. S. Paulo, 65 pp

Amaral, A. do: 1931. Pontos de vista básicos na therapeutica do ophidismo, Mem. I Butantan 6: 243-249.

Amaral, A. do: 1931. O soro secco como cicatrizante das ulceras produzidas pelo ven bothropico, Bol. Soc. Med. Cir. S. Paulo 15: 388-395; Mem. Inst. Butantan 6: 265.

Amaral, A. do: 1936. Schlangengift u. Schlangengift-Schnutzserum, Die med. Welt 1-4.

Amaral, A. do: 1945. Animais veneniferos, venenos e anti-venenos, S. Paulo, Caça e Pe Edit., 169 pp.

Arthus, M., 1911. Physiologie comparèe des intoxications par les venins des serpe Arch. Internat. Physiol. 12: 285-316.

Arthus, M.: 1911 and 1912. De la spécificité des serums anti-venimeux, Arch. Inter Physiol. 12: 317-338, 1911; Presse méd. 20: 9-11, 1912.

Arthus, M.: 1919. Actions coagulantes et anti-coagulants des venins, Arch. Inter Physiol. 15: 203-219.

Arthus, M.: 1930, 1931 and 1932. Les anavenins, J. d. physiol. et de path. gén. 28: 529, 800, 1930; 29: 256, 462, 705, 1931; 30: 75, 880, 1932.

Arthus, M., and Stawska, B.: 1911. Venins et antivenins, Compt. rend. Acad. d. sc. 1 355-357.

Bang, I.: 1910. Zur Frage des Cobralecithids, Ztschr. f. Immunitätsforsch. u. ex Therap., Orig. 8: 202-209.

Bang, I., and Overton, E.: 1911. Studien über die Wirkungen des Crotalusgiftes, Bioch Ztschr. 34: 428-461.

Barazzoni, C.: 1909. Le serpe velenose; sieroterapia dell' avvelenamento, Studi (Napoli) 2: 62-65.

Barbour, T.: 1914. A Contribution to the Zoögeography of the East Indian Islands, M Mus. Comp. Zoöl. 44: (2), 203 p.

Barbour, T.: 1926. Reptiles and Amphibians, Boston, Houghton Mifflin Co., 125 pp.

Barbour, T.: 1930. The Bushmaster in the Canal Zone, Bull. Antivenin Inst. Ame 4: 11.

Bassewitz, E.: 1904. Die moderne Therapie des Ophidismus in Brasilian, Münch. m Wchnschr. 51: 838-840.

Bennett, V. B.: 1903. Local Treatment of Snake Bite, Brit. M. J. 1: 1144-1146.

Bieling, R., et al.: 1936. Die europoeischen and mediterranen Ottern und ihre Gi Behringuerk-Mitt. 7, 362 p.

Bier, O. G.: 1945. Estudo quantitativo da reaçao de floculacao entre o veneno lo a veneno crotalico, Mem. Inst. Butantan 18: 27-32.

Boulenger, A. G.: 1894-1896. Catalogue of the Snakes in the British Museum, Lond Taylor & Francis, 3 vols., 448, 382, and 727 pp.

Boulenger, A. G.: 1912. A Vertebrate Fauna of the Malay Peninsula, London, Taylo Francis, 294 pp.

Boulenger, A. G.: 1915. Remarks on the Dentition of Snakes and on the Evolution Poison Fangs, Proc. Zool. Soc. London, p. 616.

Brazil, V.: 1904. Da serum-therapia no envenenamento ophidico, Brasil-med. 18: 21-31

Brazil, V.: 1907. Dosagen do valor antitoxico dos serums antipeçonhentos, Rev. M S. Paulo 10: 457-60.

Brazil, V.: 1909. Serumtherapia anti-ophidica, Tribuna Med. 15: 199-215.

Brazil, V., and Vellard, J.: 1928. Action coagulante et anti-coagulante des venins, A Inst. Pasteur, Paris 42: 403-451.

Calmette, A.: 1894. Contribution a l'étude du venin des serpents; immunisation des animaux et traitement de l'envenimation, Ann. Inst. Pasteur, Paris **8:** 275-291; Compt. rend. Acad. d. sc. **118:** 720-22.

Calmette, A.: 1896. Serpent's Venom and Antivenomous Serum, Brit. M. J. **2:** 1025.

Calmette, A.: 1897. Sur le venin des serpents et sur l'emploi du serum anti-venimeux dans la thérapeutique des morsures venimeuses chez l'homme et chez les animaux, Ann. Inst. Pasteur, Paris **11:** 214-237.

Calmette, A.: 1907. Les venins, les animaux venimeux et al sérothérapie antivenimeuse. Paris, Masson & Cie., 396 pp.

Crimmins, M. L.: 1926. Collecting Rattlesnake Venom to be Used in Making Antivenin, J. A. M. A. **87:** 1645-1646.

De'lezenne, C., and Ledebt, S.: 1911. Action du venin de Cobra sur le sérum de cheval: ses rapports avec l'hémolyse, Compt. rend. Acad. d. sc. 152, 790-792.

Ditmars, R. L.: 1926. The Antivenin Institute of America, Bull. New York Zool. Soc. **29:** 134-136.

Ditmars, R. L.: 1927. Occurrence and Habits of Our Poisonous Snakes Bull. Antivenin Inst. America **1:** 3-5.

Ditmars, R. L.: 1943. Snakes of the World, New York, The Macmillan Co., 207 pp.

Eagle, H.: 1937. The Coagulation of Blood by Snake Venoms and Its Physiologic Significance, J. Exper. Med. **65:** 613-639.

Eigenberger, F.: 1928. Some Clinical Observations on the Action of Mamba Venom, Bull. Antivenin Inst. America **2:** 45-46.

Fairley, H.: 1929. Symposium on Snake Bite, M. J. Australia **1:** 296, 313, 336.

Faust, E. S.: 1907. Ueber das Ophiotoxin aus dem Gifte oestindischen Brillenschlange, Cobra de capello (Naja tripudians), Arch. f. exper. Path. u. Pharmakol. **56:** 236-260.

Faust, E. S.: 1911. Ueber das Crotalotoxin aus dem Gifte der nordamerikamischen Klapperschlange (Crotalus Adamantus), Arch. f. exper. Path. u. Pharmakol. **64:** 244-273.

Fitzsimons, F. W.: 1929. Snakes and the Treatment of Snake Bites, Cape Town, Specialty Press, 70 pp.

Flexner, S., and Noguchi, H.: 1902. Snake Venom in Relation to Hemolysis, Bacteriolysis, and Toxicity, Univ. Pennsylvania M. Bull. **14:** 438-448.

Fracassini, T.: 1937. L'ophidismo nell'Africa italiana, Firenze Libr. Internazionale, 43 pp.

Franzi, L.: 1936. Sul mecanismo d'azione di alcuni veleni ofidici, Arch. Fisiol. **35:** 466-498.

Ganguly, S. N., and Malkana, M. T.: 1936. Daboia Venom: Its Chemical Composition, Protein Fractions and Their Physiological Action, Indian J. M. Research **23:** 997-1006; **24:** 281-286, 287-294.

Gautier, R.: 1945. The Health Organization and Biological Standardization, Bull. Health Organ **12:** 27-30.

George, I. D.: 1930. Notes on the Extraction of Venom at the Serpentarium of the Antivenin Institute of Tela, Honduras, Bull. Antivenin Inst. America **4:** 57-59.

Githens, T. S.: 1931. Antivenin: Its Preparation and Standardization, Bull. Antivenin Inst. America **4:** 81-85.

Githens, T. S.: 1939 and 1941. The Polyvalency of Crotalidic Antivenins, J. Immunol. **37:** 33-51; **42:** 149-159.

Githens, T. S., and Butz, L. W.: 1929. Venoms of North American Snakes and Their Relationship, Bull. Antivenin Inst. America **2:** 100-104.

Githens, T. S., and George, I. D.: 1931. Comparative Studies of the Venom of Certain Rattlesnakes, Bull. Antivenin Inst. America **5:** 31-34.

Gloyd, H. K.: 1940. The Rattlesnakes, Genera Sistrurus and Crotalus, Chicago Acad. Science Spec. Publ. **4:** 270.

Gomes, J. F.: 1918 and 1920. Experiencias sobre o valor curativo do soro antibothropico, etc., Ann. Paulistas Med. Cir. **11:** 149-58, 1920; Collect. Trab. Inst. Butantan **2:** 23-45, 1918.

Ghosh, B. N., and Ghosh, S. S.: 1939. Proteins of Rattlesnake Venom, Nature **143:** 380-381.

Ghosh, B. N., and Kundu, N. L.: 1940. The Reaction Between Vipera Russellii Venom and Its Antivenene, Indian J. M. Research **27:** 1121-1127.

Gralén, N., and Svedberg, Theo.: 1938. The Molecular Weight of Crotoxin, J. Biochem. **32:** 1375.

Grasset, E., and Boutendyk, A.: 1932. Production de sérums antivenimeux polyvalents au moyen des anavenins formolés, Compt. Rend. Soc. d. Biol. 3: 432-434.

Grasset, E., and Boutendyk, A.: 1932. Concentration of Polyvalent African Antivenom Serum, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **26:** 267-273.

Grasset, E.: 1940. On the Standardization of African Viper (Bitis Arietans) and Cape Cobra (Naja Flava) Antivenins, Bull. Health Organ. **9:** 476-491.

Grasset, E.: 1945. Anavenoms and Their Use in the Preparation of Antivenoms Sera, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **38**: 463-488.

Haas, G.: 1929. Versuch einer funktionellen Analyse des Giftbisses und des Schling von Lachesis Gramineus, Anat. Anzeiger **68**: 358-378.

Hargreaves, A. B.: 1944. Estudos sobre a coagulaçao do plasma pelo veneno da Jara (Bothrops Jararaca), etc., Rev. Brasileira Biol. **4**: 367-387.

Houssay, B. A.: 1916. Nociones elementales sobre las serpientes venenosas de la Repu Argentina y al suero anti-ofidico, Buenos Aires, T. Graf. A. Flaiban, 53 pp.

Houssay, B. A.: 1923. Acción local de los venenos de serpientes, Compt. rend. Soc. d. Buenos Aires **89**: 55-56.

Houssay, B. A.: 1923. Cantidad de ponzoña suministrada por las serpientes de Argentina, Rev. Assoc. Med. Argentina **36**: 12.

Houssay, B. A., and Negrete, J.: 1923. Especificidad de la acción antitoxica de los su contra la pronzoña de serpientes, Rev. Assoc. Med. Argentina **36**: 19.

Houssay, B. A., and Sordelli, A.: 1920. Venins coagulants et anticoagulants, Ar Internat. Physiol. **15**: 378-383.

Houssay, B. A., Sordelli, A., and Negrete, J.: 1918. Estudios sobre los venenos serpientes, Rev. Inst. Bact. Buenos Aires **1**: 52.

Hutchison, R. H.: 1929. On the Incidence of Snake Poisoning in the U. S. and the Resu of the Newer Methods of Treatment, Bull. Antivenin Inst. America **3**: 43-57.

Hutchison, R. H.: 1930. Further Notes on the Incidence of Snake-Bite Poisoning in t U. S. Bull. Antivenin Inst. America **4**: 40-43.

Ipsen, J.: 1938. Progress Report on the Possibility of Standardizing Anti-Snake-Veno Sera, Bull. Health Organ. **7**: 785-801.

Ishizaka, T.: 1907. Studien über das Habu-Schlangengift, Ztschr. f. exper. Path. Therap. **4**: 88-117.

Jackson, D., and Githens, T. S.: 1931. Treatment of Crotalus Atrox Venom Poisoning Dogs, Bull. Antivenin Inst. America **5**: 1-6.

Kellaway, C. H.: 1932. Venomous Land Snakes in Australia, Bull. Antivenin Ins America **5**: 53-58.

Kellaway, C. H.: 1933. Some Peculiarities of Australian Snake Venoms, Tr. Roy. So Trop. Med. & Hyg. **27**: 9-34.

Klauber, L. M.: 1927. Some Observations on the Rattlesnakes of the Extreme Southwes Bull. Antivenin Inst. America **1**: 7-21.

Klauber, L. M.: 1928. The Collection of Rattlesnake Venom, Bull. Antivenin Ins America **2**: 8-11.

Klauber, L. M.: 1931. Differential Characteristics of the Southwestern Rattlesnak Allied to Crotalus Atrox, Bull. Zool. Soc. San Diego **6**: 66.

Klauber, L. M.: 1936. A Key to the Rattlesnakes With Summary of Characteristics, T San Diego Zool. Soc. **8**: 185-276.

von Klobusitzky, D.: 1936. Methodo aperfeiçoado para o preparo da bothropotoxin Mem. Inst. Butantan **10**: 201-204.

von Klobusitzky, D., and Koenig, P.: 1937. Novos estudos immunologicos sobre a sul stancia coagulante do veneno de Bothrops jararaca, Mem. Inst. Butantan 11 149-161.

von Klobusitzky, D., and Koenig, P.: 1938. Nitrogen and Sulfur in Bothropotoxin Ztschr. f. physiol. Chem. **255**: 1-3.

von Klobusitzky, D.: 1937. Schlangengifte in der Therapie, Klin. Wchnschr. **16**: 569-57

Kyes, P.: 1903. Ueber die Isolierung von Schlangengift-Lecithiden, Berl. klin. Wchnsch **40**: 956-959, 982-984; **41**: 273-277.

Kyes, P.: 1908. Bemerkungen über die Lecithidbildung, Biochem. Ztschr. **8**: 42.

Kyes, P., and Sachs, H.: 1903. Zur Kenntniss der Cobragift aktivirenden Substanze Berl. klin. Wchnschr. **40**: 21-23; 57-60; 82-85.

Kyu, K.: 1933. Toxikologische Untersuchungen über die Gifte der Crotalinae Formosa' (1, 2, 3), Taiwan Igakkai Zasshi. **32**: 821-846, 875-894, 1500-1522.

Lamb, G.: 1904. On the Serum Therapeutics of Cases of Snake-Bite, Lancet, pp. 127 1277.

Li, C. H., and Fraenkel-Conrat, H. L.: 1942. Electrophoresis of Crotoxin, J. Am. Che Soc. **64**: 1586-1588.

Macfarlane, R. G., and Burnett, B.: 1934. The Haemostatic Possibilities of Snake Venom Lancet **32**: 985-989.

Maitra, G. C., and Mallick, S. M. K.: 1932. Observations on Detoxication of Daboi Venom by Hepatic Lipoids With a Note on the Anti-Viperine Potency of Kosa Antivenin, Indian J. M. Research **20**: 327-334.

Mallick, S. M. K.: 1935. The Applicability of Flocculation Tests for Standardization o Antivenene, Indian J. M. Research **23**: 525-529.

Manwaring, W. H.: 1910. Ueber die Lecithinase des Cobragiftes, Ztschr. f. Im munitätsforsch. u. exper. Therap. **6**: 513-561.

Martin, C. J.: 1897 and 1898. Advisability of Administering Curative Serum by Intravenous injection, M. J. Australia **2**: 537, 1897; **3**: 713, 1898.

Martin, C. J., and Lamb, G.: 1907. Snake Poison and Snake Bite in Allbutt and Rollerston's, "A System of Medicine" **2**: 783.

Metzulescu, A.: 1901. Tratamentui plagilor prin muscatura de Vipera, Spitatul (Bucarest) **21**: 367-369.

Micheel, F., and Kraft, K.: 1935. Zur Kenntis der Schlangengifter, Nachr. Ges. Wissensch. Göttingen Kl. III (N.S.) **1**: 85-93.

Micheel, F., and Jung, F.: 1936 and 1938. Die Neurotoxine des Cobra Giftes. Ztschr. physiol. Chem. **239**: 217-230, 1936; Ber. d. deutsch. chem. Gesellsch, **71B**: 703-705, 1938.

Micheel, F., and Bode, G.: 1937 and 1938. Die Neurotoxine des Cobra Giftes., Ztschr. physiol. Chem. **249**: 157-175, 1937; Naturwiss. **26**: 298-299, 1938.

Micheel, F., Dietrich, H., and Bischoff, G.: 1938. Die Neurotoxin des Cobra Giftes. Ber. d. deutsch. chem. Gesellsch. **71B**: 1302-1303, 1446-1448.

Micheel, F., and Bode, G.: 1939. Thiol Gruppen in Hydrolysis der Schlangen-Gifter und Proteinen, Ber. d. deutsch. chem. Gesellsch. **72B**: 397-400.

Mitchell, S. W.: 1860. Researches Upon the Venom of the Rattlesnake, Smithsonian Contrib. to Knowledge, 145 pp.

Mitchell, S. W., and Reichert, E. T.: 1886. Researches Upon the Venoms of Poisonous Serpents, Smithsonian Contrib. to Knowledge, 186 pp.

Mitchell, S. W., and Stewart, A. H.: 1898. A Contribution to the Study of the Effect of the Venom of Crotalus Adamanteus Upon the Blood of Man and Animals, Mem. Nat. Ac. Sc. Washington, 14 pp.

Miura, M.: 1897. Statistik des Schlangenbisses, Ztschr. med. Ges. zu Tokyo **2**: 8-17.

Miura, M., and Morishima, K.: 1896. On the Habu (a Viper), Tokyo med. Wchnschr. **939**: 1; **942**: 6; **944**: 7; **946**: 11; **947**: 10; **950**: 9.

Noc, F.: 1904. Sur quedques proprietés physiologiques des differents venins de serpents, Ann. Inst. Pasteur, Paris **18**: 387-406.

Noguchi, H.: 1909. Snake Venoms, Carnegie Inst., Washington, 315 pp.

Oliveira, D., and Santos, O. P.: 1932. Acção de algons venenos de serpentes sôbre o coraçao, Brasil Med. **7**: 145-149.

tero, M. J.: 1919. Sobre la acción proteolitica de los venenos de serpientes, Rev. Inst. Bact. Buenos Aires **2**: 5.

tto, R.: 1929. Untersuchungen über die Toxine uropaeischer Vipern, Ztschr. Hyg. Infektionskrank. **110**: 82-92.

tto, R.: 1931. Weitere Beiträge zur Serumtherapie bei Bissen europaeischer Ottern, Arch. Hyg. Bakteriol. **103**: 165-172.

awlowsky, E. N.: 1927. Giftiere, Jena, G. Fischer, 516 pp.

ecciarini, E.: 1939. Farmacologia del veieno di Bothrops jararacussu, Bol. Soc. ital. Biol. sperim. **14**: 427-429.

eck, S. M.: 1932. Attempts at Treatment of Hemorrhagic Diathesis by Injection of Snake Venom, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **29**: 579-581.

ck, S. M., and Goldberger, M. A.: 1933. The Treatment of Uterine Bleeding With Snake Venom (Agk. Piscivorous), Am. J. Obst. & Gynec. **25**: 887-894.

ck, S. M., and Marx, W.: 1940. Chemical Studies on Moccasin Poison (Hemorrhagic and Hemolytic Components), J. Mount Sinai Hosp. **6**: 271-278.

Phisalix, C.: 1897. Venins et Animaux Venimeux dans la Série Animale, Rev. scient., Par. **8**: 97, 195, 329.

Phisalix, C., and Bertrand, G.: 1894. Sur la Propriété Antitoxique du Sérum des Animaux Vaccinés contre le Venin de Vipère, Compt. rend. Acad. d. sc., Paris **118**: 356-358; Arch. Physiol. **6**: 612-619.

hisalix, M.: 1922. Animaux Venimeux et Venins, Paris, Masson & Cie. 2 vols. 1520 pp.

ado, C.: 1931. Serpientes Venenosas de Costa Rica, sus Venenos, Seroterapia Antiofidica, San José, Impr. Alsina, 219 pp.

pe, C. H., and Perkins, R. M.: 1944. Differences in the Pattern of Bites of Venomous and of Harmless Snakes, Arch. Surg. **49**: 331-336.

ogers, L.: 1904. The Treatment of Snake Bites, J. Trop. Med. **7**: 252-255; Brit. M. J. **2**: 670-673.

osenfeld, S., and Lenke, S. E.: 1935. Tiger-Snake Venom in the Treatment of Accessible Hemorrhage, Am. J. M. Sc. **190**: 779-791.

feld, S., and Rubinstein, J.: 1941. Separation of the Coagulant From the Toxic Principles of the Venom of the Australian Tiger Snake, etc., J. Lab. & Clin. Med. **27**: 45-49.

ossi, A. L. B.: 1934. El problema del ofidismo en Venezuela, Bol. Minist. Salubr., Agric. & Cria **2**: 1079-1177; 15-103.

ehs, H.: 1910. Zur Frage des Cobralecithids, Ztschr. f. Immunitätsforsch. u. exper. Therap. **8**: 210-217.

Scortecci, G., 1939. Gliofidi velenosi dell' Africa italiana, Ist. Sierot. Milanese, 292 p

Sembon, S: 1931. Beiträge zur Kenntniss über Serologie von Gifter der formo Giftschlangen, Contrib. Dept. Hyg. Govt. Res. Inst. Formosa, 103 pp.

Slotta, C. H., and Szyszka, G.: 1937. Estudos chimicos sobre os Venenos Ophidicos: Toxicidade em Camondongos, Mem. Inst. Butantan **11**: 109-20.

Slotta, C. H., and Fraenkel-Conrat, H. L.: 1937 and 1938. Estudos Chimicos sobre os Vene ophidicos: II. Forma di Ligarção do Enxofre, Mem. Inst. Butantan **11**: 121-1 1937; Ber. deut. chem. Ges. **71**: 264-271, 1938.

Slotta, C. H., Szyszka, G., and Fraenkel-Conrat, H. L.: 1937. Estudos Chimicos sobre Venesos Ophidicos: III. Teor de Coagulação e Lecithinase, Mem. Inst. Butant **11**: 133-148.

Slotta, C. H., and Fraenkel-Conrat, H. L.: 1938. IV. Purificação e cristalizacao do vene da cobra Cascavel, Mem. Inst. Butantan **12**: 505-512; Ber. deut. chem. Ges. 7 1076-1081.

Slotta, C. H., and Forster, W.: 1938. V. Components que contêm enxofre, Mem. Ins Butantan **12**: 513-522; Ber. deut. chem. Ges. **71**: 1082-1088.

Slotta, C. H., and Fraenkel-Conrat, H. L.: 1938. Two Active Proteins From Rattlesnak Venom, Nature **142**: 213.

Slotta, C. H.: 1938. A crotoxina: A substancia pura nos venenos ofídicos, Ann. Acad Brasil. Science **10**: 195-209.

Smith, M.: 1926. Monograph of the Sea-Snakes (Hydrophiidae), Brit. Museum Nat. Hist., London, Taylor & Francis, 130 pp.

Smith, M., and Hindle, E.: 1931. Experiments With the Venom of Laticauda, Pseudchis and Trimeresurus Species, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **25**: 115-120.

Sordelli, A.: 1918. Estudios sobre la producción de sueros antitoxicos, Rev. d. Inst. bact. (Buenos Aires) **1**: 427-435.

Sordelli, A., and Pacelli, G.: 1927. Quelques considérations sur le Titrage du sérum antiophidien, Compt. rend. Soc. de biol., Paris **197**: 1246-1248.

Stadelman, R. E.: 1929. Some Venom Extraction Records, Bull. Antivenin Inst. America **3**: 29.

Staley, F. R.: 1929. A Case Report of Gaboon Viper Poisoning With Recovery, Bull. Antivenin Inst. America **3**: 31-39.

Stejneger, L.: 1895. The Poisonous Snakes of North America, Rept. U. S. Nat. Mus. 1893, 337-487.

Stejneger, L.: 1907. Herpetology of Japan and Adjacent Territory, U. S. Nat. Mus. Bull. **58**: 577.

Stejneger, L., and Barbour, Th.: 1943. Check-List of North American Amphibians and Reptiles, Bull. Mus. Comp. Zoöl. **93**: 260.

Strong, R.: 1928. Newer Knowledge of Venomous Snakes, Internat. Med. Digest **12**: 233-252.

Slivássy, J.: 1900. A kigyómarasok gyog yitasához, Orvosi hetil. Budapest **44**: 165-180.

Slokoloff, N.: 1889. Sluch lidch dermok Kantani, Med. Obozr. Moskova **32**: 1131-1133.

Terron, C. C.: 1930 and 1931. Los crotalinos mexicanos, An. d. Inst. Biol. México **1**: 187, 1930; **2**: 47, 1931.

Terron, C. C.: 1932. Los coralillos mexicanos, An. d. Inst. Biol. Mexico **3**: 5, apud Campo, R. M. del 1935, loc. cit. **6**: 291-300 (Nota acerca de la distribucion geografica de los reptiles ponzoñosos en Mexico).

Tidswell, T.: 1909. Preliminary Note on the Serum Therapy of Snake-Bite, Australas. M. Gaz. **21**: 177-181.

Vellard, J.: 1930. Spécificité des serums anti-ophidiques, Ann. de l'Inst. Pasteur **44**: 148-171.

Vellard, J.: 1930. Vaccination Anti-venimeuse, Compt. rend. Acad. de sc. **190**: 826-829.

Wall, F.: 1928. Poisonous Terrestrial Snakes of Our British Indian Dominions, etc., Bombay Nat. Hist. Soc. 173 pp.

Wieland, H., and Konz, W.: 1936. Cobra (Naja tripudians) Gift. S. B. m.n. Abt. bayer. Akad. Wissensch. 177-186.

Wolff, N., and Githens, T. S.: 1939. Record Venom Extraction From Water-moccasin, Copeia **1**: 52.

Wolff, N., and Githens, T. S.: 1939. Yield and Toxicity of Venoms From Snakes Extracted Over a Period of Two Years, Copeia **4**: 234.

CHAPTER 58

POISONING BY FISH AND OTHER ANIMALS

Afranio do Amaral

CENTIPEDES

The body is rather flat and segmented, each segment bearing a single pair of articulated legs, one leg on each side of every segment. The head is provided with a pair of antennae, a pair of small maxillary palpi, and a pair of large, hollow, movable, forcipulate fangs. Each fang incloses a venom gland, the secretion of which is ejected, at the moment of the bite, through an opening just behind the tip. Each gland is surrounded by a layer of muscular fibers which, on contraction, cause simultaneous adduction of the fangs and ejection of the venom; when these muscle fibers relax, the fang is abducted or brought to the resting position.

The venom facilitates catching small animals on which the centipedes feed, such as insects, lizards, and spiders, by causing instant paralysis. It is a clear, homogeneous substance, of acid reaction, but is secreted only in very minute amounts. Although no serious attempts have ever been made to analyze its chemical composition, it is known from observation that it causes a marked local reaction, consisting of an inflammatory wheal, pain, and swelling, that immediately begins to spread centripetally, followed by local necrosis. If the amount of venom ejected at the bite is large enough relative to the weight of the prey, progressive paralysis ensues and the victim dies within a few minutes.

Painful as the bite may be to humans, it seems not to cause death. For this reason, therapeutic measures are confined to the administration of sedatives, and also intravenous injections of 5 to 10 c.c. of 10 per cent calcium gluconate solution, and the local application of a warm dressing with a concentrated solution of magnesium sulfate.

WASPS AND BEES

Wasps

These insects, which are divided into many species with solitary as well as social living habits, feed mostly on other insects and spiders. In order to render their prey powerless, they poison it with the secretion produced by a double gland which they bear at the abdominal end. For this purpose they are provided with a long sting (especially powerful in workers and females), which, while resting, is hidden in a cavity between the openings of the digestive tract and of the sexual organs. One of the glands produces an acid secretion which is collected into a bulb or reservoir whence it passes to the base of the sting, while the other gland elaborates an alkaline secretion which passes directly to the base of the sting. Both glands are surrounded by a muscular wall, the contraction of which causes ejection of the secretions, these being first collected into a small chamber or vesicle communicating with the sting canal. The opening and closing of the orifice of the acid gland are controlled by two muscles of opposing functions, so that the wasp can regulate at will the composition of the venom that flows into the sting chamber. Therefore, the venom represents either the alkaline secretion alone or a mixture of the two types of secretion, the acid being more toxic than the other.

The sting canal is occupied by a pair of darts, the alternate propulsion and retrocession of which facilitates the flow of venom, as they work like pistons in a pump. Since the tip of each dart is rough and barbed, the sting sometimes becomes stuck or entangled in the skin of the victim. When this occurs, the wasp cannot survive long.

Although no experimental work has been done to ascertain the chemical composition of the venom of wasps, it seems in general to contain a neurotoxin, a proteolysin, and a hemolysin. The presence of these substances is responsible for the following symptoms following the sting:

Local Symptoms.—Local symptoms are a red wheal, pain and burning sensation, spreading edema, hemorrhage under the skin most directly affected, sometimes necrosis.

General Symptoms.—General symptoms are nausea, vomiting, lipothymy and syncope, hypothermia, arterial hypotension and bradycardia, sometimes urticaria, and exceptionally death, particularly when the patient has suffered simultaneous stinging by several wasps; cramps and spasms may appear.

Since we do not know as yet of any specific treatment for this poisoning, we must confine ourselves to giving the patient some heart stimulants, epinephrine being particularly valuable; narcotics (morphine, opium) are helpful; warm dressings with warm concentrated solution of magnesium sulfate may relieve the local pain and edema. Atropine and neostigmine to combat spasms should be tried.

Bees

Bees, like the wasps, are provided with a complex stinging apparatus, particularly well developed and powerful in the queen and workers, the males being devoid of venomousness. Even the females, however, do not bear a sting in all of the families, the American representatives of the Apidae and the various species of Melipona and Trigona being stingless.

The sting and the 2 venom glands present the same structure as found in the wasps, although the whole apparatus is somewhat more improved and shows wide variations throughout the apids.

Like all animal venins, bee venom is proteinous in character. It is digested by pepsin, papain, and trypsin. Although many physicochemical researches have been made with it, no serious attempt has been made to ascertain its real chemical composition. All we know is that it presents one or more neurotoxins and is proteolytic and hemolytic in large doses. Of the neurotoxins, one manifests a particular tropism for the central nervous system, another for the autonomic system, the former causing depression, somnolence, and coma, while the latter produces diarrhea, abdominal pain, cramps, nausea and vomiting, arterial hypotension, and tachycardia. Proteolysin is responsible for the local swelling and the spreading edema; together with hemolysin, it causes blood destruction and hemorrhages in the lungs, intestines, and other viscera. In large doses, especially in cases of multiple stings at the same time, the patient is apt to develop some symptoms which resemble tetanus: trismus, contracture, and restlessness.

For prevention of the disagreeable symptoms following bee stings, an excellent procedure consists in the active immunization of those who are engaged in the manufacture of honey. This may be achieved by repeated injections of gradually increasing doses of "anavenin," that is, bee venom that has been detoxified by formalin and heat.

Since no specific treatment is available, therapeutic measures are the same as those used to combat the effects of wasp poisoning.

It must be borne in mind that for the last decade bee venom has been used to combat pain in the treatment of neuralgia, neuritis, and arthritis. For this purpose it must be carefully secured, diluted, and preserved against deterioration and contamination. When injected subcutaneously or intradermally this solution gives some relief to persons with those symptoms.

FISH AND LAMPREYS

Quite a few species of fish and lampreys are known to venenate human beings. Venenation may be accomplished as a result of handling, stepping on, or eating certain forms.

According to M. Phisalix (1922), venomous fish and lampreys may be divided into 3 categories: (1) veneniferous forms, (2) poisonous meat forms, and (3) poisonous blood forms.

Veneniferous Forms

From a toxicologic standpoint, veneniferous forms may be divided into 3 subgroups: (A) those bearing hollow dorsal spines connected with one basal serous gland; (B) those bearing needle-like, double-grooved spikes, each spike provided with 2 lateral serous glands; and (C) those bearing saber-like, dentate spikes, each spike provided with 2 marginal serous glands.

A. The most conspicuous forms among those bearing hollow spines with one basal gland belong to the family Batrachoididae (toadfish), subclass Teleostomi Acanthopterygii, particularly the following:

Batrachus tau and *B. grunniens,* both common in the Caribbean Sea and frequently encountered along the East coast of Central America.

Thalassophryne maculosa, abundant in the western Atlantic, especially along the east-central coast of Brazil.

In this group the venom apparatus consists of: (a) sharp, hollow spines protruding backwards from the free border of the opercle, and 2 or 3 (2 in Thalassophryne, 3 in Batrachus) implanted in a ray-like manner, just in front of the dorsal fin, each dorsal spine being covered by a fold of skin which evaginates at the proper moment; and (b) an acinous, serous gland located at the base of each spine, so that at the lightest squeezing or pressing of the gland the secretion immediately flows into the spine canal and emerges through the opening found very close to the tip.

B. The most important forms among those bearing needle-like, double-grooved spikes, with 2 lateral glands, belong to the following groups:

(1) Selachii (shark-like fish), family Dasyatidae (sting rays):

Dasyatis centroura, found in the Atlantic and the Mediterranean; *D. margarita,* common in the tropical Atlantic along the west coast of Africa; *D. pastinaca,* also found in the Atlantic and the Mediterranean.

Taeniura grabata, in the east Atlantic, Mediterranean, and Red Sea; *Urolophus torpedinus,* in the Caribbean, along the coast of Central America.

(2) Teteostomi Acanthopterygii (bass, mackerel, and perch) family Trachinidae (weevers), with 2 sets of poison barbs, on the operculum and on the dorsal fin:

Trachinus draco and *T. vipera,* in the Atlantic and Mediterranean, from Europe to northern or western Africa.

Family Triglidae (gurnard), often with numerous rays:

Cottus bubalis, in the north Atlantic and Baltic Sea; *C. gobio* and *C. tricuspis* in the north Atlantic and Artic Ocean.

Scorpoena brasiliensis, along the coast of Brazil.

S. grandicornis, in the tropical Atlantic and the Caribbean Sea (Cuba especially); *S. plumieri,* also in the tropical Atlantic from Florida to Colombia; *S. porcus,* in the Atlantic and Mediterranean; *S. scrofa,* also in the Atlantic and Mediterranean.

Synanceia verrucosa, in the Red Sea and the Indian Ocean, especially in Polynesia where it digs into the sand near the coast. It is known as "noho" in Tahiti and "laffe" in the Reunion Islands.

C. The outstanding forms among those bearing saber-like, dentate spikes, with 2 marginal glands, belong to the family Siluridae (catfishes), Physostomi (carp, catfish, and eels), particularly the following:

Arius hertzbergii, found both in rivers and in the tropical Atlantic (Brazil and Guianas).

Doras muricus, in the southwest Atlantic (from Brazil to Argentina).

Pimelodus maculatus, in the tropical Atlantic and the Caribbean (from northeastern Brazil to the West Indies).

Piramutana blochii, common in rivers in Brazil.

Plotosus anguillaris, very abundant in the Indian Ocean from east Africa to Polynesia, where it is called "ikan sambilan," and Japan, where it receives the name "giggu," while in Mauritius it is designated "machoira."

Silurus japonicus, found in rivers of both China and Japan.

The venom is a bluish clear liquid, becoming milky or opalescent after the death of the fish. It is neutral in reaction, is soluble and preservable in glycerine, and when heated in glycerine at 100° C. for 1 hour loses its neurotoxicity but keeps its phlogogenous properties.

The effect of the venom is rapid, particularly on small animals. Composed of neurolysin, proteolysin, and hemolysin, its introduction into the body causes local pain, bloody swelling and necrosis with lymphadenitis, followed by numbness of the limb, headache, shivering, dyspnea, vomiting, fainting, tonic and clonic convulsions, and paralysis, eventually death.

Therapeutic measures are merely symptomatic. Potassium permanganate, adrenalin, and local anesthetics are helpful.

Poisonous Meat Forms

Forms possessing poisonous meat may be found among the 2 main groups: lampreys and fish.

Lampreys.—Some species in the family Petromyzontidae (Cyclostomata) and particularly *Petromyzon fluviatilis*, common in the rivers of the Amazon basin, are known to cause severe poisoning when eaten.

Fish.—Many species of the most heterogeneous groups are known to be poisonous:

A. Selachii (shark-like fish), family Carchariidae (sand-sharks):

Carcharias glaucus, common in European waters, where it is called "requin bleu."

B. Teleostomi Acanthopterygii (bass, mackerel, and perch), family Carangidae (pompanos):

Caranx crumenophthalmus, common in tropical waters, in the Atlantic, Caribbean, Mediterranean, Red Sea, and Indian Ocean. Names: "chicarro" in Cuba and "couliron" in Guadeloupe.

Family Labridae (wrasse fish):

Pseudoscarus chrysopoma and *P. superbus*, the former in the Pacific and Indian Oceans (East Indies), the latter in the Caribbean. Name: "vieja" in Cuba.

Order Pediculati (anglers and batfish):

Malthe vespertilio, wide spread in tropical Atlantic and Caribbean (from northeastern Brazil where it is called "guacucuja" or "morcego," to the Guianas, Venezuela, Colombia, and the West Indies).

Family Percidae (perch, bass, and groupers):

Mesorprion griseus, in the tropical Atlantic, from west Africa to Cuba, Central and South America. Names: "serrano" or, in Cuba, "caji."

Family Sparidae (porgies):

Lethrinus nematacanthus, in the northwest Pacific and the Japanese Sea. Name: "mambo" in New Caledonia.

Family Sphyraenidae (barracuda):

Sphyraena picuda (S. barracuda) and *S. vulgaris* are common in the Caribbean.

C. Physostomi (carp, catfish, and eels), family Clupeidae (herring):

Clupea humeralis and *C. thrissa,* both common in warm waters of the Atlantic and Caribbean; *C. perforata,* in the Indian Ocean (Malay) and *C. venenosa* in the tropical Pacific and the Indian Ocean. (*C. thrissa* is the "machuelo" of the West Indies.)

Engraulis boelema, common in sandy places in the Red Sea and the Indian Ocean. Name: "bara."

Family Muraenidae (morays):

Anguilla vulgaris (*A. vulgaris* in Europe, *A. chrisypa* in North America), found both in fresh water and in the Atlantic.

Conger conger, found in Europe and the West Indies. Name: "conger eel."

Family Belonidae (houndfish):

Tylosurus caribboeus, common in the Caribbean.

Family Hemiramphidae (halfbeaks): abundant in the Atlantic. Name in Brazil: "agulha."

D. Teleostomi Plectognathi (globefish), family Balistidae (triggerfish):

Alutera monoceros; Balistes carolinensis, both common in the tropical Atlantic and Caribbean.

Family Ostraciidae (trunkfish):

Ostracion trigonus, in the Caribbean.

Family Tetrodontidae (puffers):

Chilomycterus orbicularis and *C. tigrinus,* in the Indian and Pacific oceans; *C. reticulatus,* in the tropical Atlantic.

Diodon hystrix, widespread from the south Atlantic to the Indian and the Pacific oceans.

Tetrodon heraldi, in the tropical Atlantic (West Indies and Brazil, where it is called "baiacu"); *Lagocephalus laevigatus, Tetrodon ocellatus,* and *T. rivulatus,* in the China and Japanese seas (Japanese name: "kanabuku"); *T. sceleratus,* in the Indian and the Pacific oceans down to Australia; *T. stellatus,* in the Indian Ocean (East Indies); *T. hispidus,* the "death fish" of Hawaii.

Poisoning.—The meat of all of these species, and of some others as well, is known to cause serious accidents.* When the fish is young it seems to be atoxic, but when it is mature and particularly during the mating period, it becomes more and more poisonous, so that in some countries strict legislation forbids the sale of quite a few of these adult forms. Gonads, eggs, and liver are responsible for most accidents.

The toxicity of the tissues may be due to the exaggeration of the metabolic changes of such fish, thus enhancing the retention of poisonous principles in their organs especially following their sexual activity.

The poisoning, called "cigatuera" in the West Indies and "fugu" in Japan, has been attributed to a toxalbumin (in the old classification) or to a substance vaguely called tetrodontin, which on human beings and animals causes the following symptoms soon after the fish has been eaten: nausea,

---

*E.g., Kingfish (*Scomberomorus caralla*) and a species of sprat sardines, *Clupida longiceps,* found off Ceylon.

vomiting, diarrhea, headache, restlessness, cyanosis, hypothermia, paresis, paralysis, and sometimes death. In a few cases, poisoning may be caused simply by contact of the skin of a human being with the tissues of the fish, the following symptoms having been noticed: itching, urticaria, chills, and salivation.

Therapeutic measures are evacuation of the intestinal tract, and stimulants.

Poisonous Blood Forms

Forms with poisonous blood may also be found among the 2 principal groups: lampreys and fish.

Lampreys.—One species of the genus Petromyzon (*P. marinus,* family Petromyzonidae, class Cyclostomata) is particularly considered hematoxic; it lives in the north Atlantic and the Mediterranean.

Fish.—A few species are recognized as poisonous:

A. Selachii (shark-like fish), family Rajidae (skates):

Raja clavata, common in the east Atlantic, between Europe and Africa; *Torpedo marmorata,* found in the east Atlantic and the Mediterranean.

B. Physostomi (carp, catfish, and eels), family Muraenidae (morays):

Anguilla vulgaris (A. vulgaris and *A. chrisypa),* found both in fresh water and in the Atlantic (Europe and North America).

Conger conger, the "conger eel" of Europe and the West Indies.

Muraena helena, in the Mediterranean waters.

Poisoning.—This group seems to occupy a position intermediate between the preceding ones. As a matter of fact, it is of more scientific than clinical interest, because, since only the blood is poisonous, it is sufficient to boil the fish to eliminate the danger.

Ichthyotoxin is the name that has been given to the principle in fish blood responsible for the toxic effects. It is bound to blood serin and is inactivated on boiling. When injected into laboratory animals it causes lysis of both red cells and leucocytes; retardation of blood clotting; convulsions and paralysis, with hypothermia and difficulty in respiration and circulation.

When ichthyotoxin is injected, with fish serum, into an animal, both active and passive immunity may develop, so that production of an antiichthyotoxin is feasible. It is neutralized or inactivated by bile and antiserum for *Naja naja* venom.

The physicochemical mechanism of ichthyotoxin action seems to lie in a colloidal precipitation as revealed by mixing fish serum or blood or tissue extract with the serum of any other animal.

LIZARDS

Only two species of lizards are known to cause poisoning. Both belong to the family Helodermatidae (class Reptilia, order Squamata, suborder Sauria), genus Heloderma.

The species *H. suspectum,* the Gila monster, is found in the United States (New Mexico, Arizona, extreme southern Utah, and Nevada), while *H. horridum* lives in the west and south of Mexico and in the north of Central America.

Venom Apparatus

In the Gila monsters, all the teeth are more or less definitely grooved. On each side of the lower jaw is a gland which secretes saliva, which the lizard can inject into its enemy when biting. Its secretion is a modified, toxic saliva that constantly exudes from the mouth of the lizard in the course of feeding, being ejected through contraction of the muscles which intervene in mastication, particularly of an expansion of the mandibular coronoidal muscle.

The venom is typically neurotoxic, affecting the central nervous system. Soon following the bite, the venom acts on the respiratory center, causing microscopic changes in the ganglia cells. It is devoid of any proteolytic or tissue- digesting activity and shows no direct hemolytic powers.

Bites on human beings are known to cause pain and some swelling with discoloration, followed at times by cold perspiration, faintness, and drop in blood pressure; death takes place only in very exceptional instances.

Treatment is merely symptomatic.

POISONOUS SHELLFISH

Six species of the genus Conus are known to cause poisoning by bites: *C. aulicus, C. geographus, C. marmoreus, C. striatus, C. textilis,* and *C. tulipa* in the South Pacific. The symptoms are pain, edema, ascending paralysis, coma, and death. The treatment is symptomatic.

POISONOUS CORALS, SEA ANEMONES, SEA URCHINS, AND JELLYFISH

All of these cause urticaria and other allergic phenomena, especially in sensitive persons. Wounds caused by the spines of sea urchins, *Tripneustes esculentus* and *Centrechinus antillarum,* as well as the Portuguese man-of-war (Physalia), may suppurate. The treatment is symptomatic.

References

Arrington, O. N.: 1930. Notes on Two Poisonous Lizards With Special Reference to Heloderma Suspectum, Bull. Antivenin Inst. America **4:** 29-35.

Calmette, A.: 1907. Les venins, les animaux venimeux et la sèrothérapie antivenimeuse, Paris, Masson & Cie, pp. 294-300, 303-327.

Fowler, H. W.: 1936. The Marine Fishes of W. Africa, Bull. Am. Mus. Nat. Hist. **70:** 1493.

Günther, A.: 1859-1870. Catalogue of the Fishes in the British Museum, 8 vols. (Systematicus).

Günther, A.: 1864. On a Poison Organ in a Genus of Batrachoid Fishes, Proc. Zool. Soc. London 155-158.

Loeb, L., and collaborators: 1913. The Venom of Heloderma, Carnegie Institute of Washington, p. 244.

Pawlowsky, E. N.: 1906. Zur Kenntnis der Giftdrüsen von Scorpoena porcus und Trachinus draco, Tr. Soc. Natural. St. Petersburg **37:** 316-336.

Pawlowsky, E. N.: 1907. Zur Anatomie der Epidermis und ihrer Drüsen beigiftigen Fischen, Tr. Soc. Natural. St. Petersburg **38:** 265-280.

Pawlowsky, E. N.: 1909. Sur les glandes cutanées des poissons venimeux, Nachr. Mil. med. Akad. **18:** 22-42, 161-182, 308-319, 443-452.

Pawlowsky, E. N.: 1927. Gifttiere, Jena, Gustav Fisher, pp. 78-141, 198-206, 406-420, 476-481.

Phisalix, M.: 1922. Animaux venimeux et venins, Paris, Masson & Cie **1:** pp. 177-206, 357-431, 488-628.

CHAPTER 59

DISEASES DUE TO NUTRITIONAL DISTURBANCES

ANTONIO CLERCH RIUS

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

The study of diseases produced by nutritional deficiencies is of extraordinary importance in the field of medicine. Many organic disturbances both in children and in adults are caused by dietary deficiencies with their concomitant sequelae, so that an individual who might, with correct diet, be free from general disturbances is subject to many disorders in this field of pathology. The problem is far reaching and quite complicated. In fulfilling the purpose of this chapter, we shall sketch only very briefly the causal agents, pathogenesis, clinical symptoms, laboratory diagnosis, and treatment.

Deficiency diseases are rather frequently caused by lack of:

- (1) Vitamin Deficiency:
    - Vitamin A
    - Vitamin B complex, including B_1 or thiamine, the antineuritic and antiberiberi vitamin, B_2, or riboflavine; niacine, the antipellagric factor, B_6, or pyridoxine; para-amino benzoic acid, pantothenic acid; biotin or vitamin H, B_{12}, choline, inositol, and B_c or folic acid
    - Vitamin C (antiscorbutic)
    - Vitamin P or citrin (antihemorrhagic)
    - Vitamin D (antirachitic)
    - Vitamin E (antisterility)
    - Vitamin K (antihemorrhagic)
- (2) Essential Amino Acids:
    - Lysine
    - Tryptophane
    - Phenylalanine
    - Histidine
    - Leucine
    - Isoleucine
    - Threonine
    - Methionine
    - Valine
    - Arginine
- (3) Essential Fatty Acids:
    - Linoleic acid
    - Linolenic acid
    - Arachidonic acid
- (4) Nutritional Anemia:
    - Anemia due to iron deficiency
    - Anemia due to deficiency of the antianemic principle (sprue, pellagra, macrocytic anemia of pregnancy, pernicious anemia or Addison-Biermer disease, etc.)
    - Anemia due to deficiency of vitamin C
    - Anemia due to myxedema
- (5) Nutritional Edema:
- (6) Simple Goiter:
- (7) Mineral Deficiency:
    - Calcium
    - Phosphorus
    - Iron
    - Iodine
    - Etc.

VITAMIN DEFICIENCY

For a better study of essential vitamins we have proposed the following division:

- Water-soluble
  - B Complex
    - Thermostable
      - Nicotinic acid or niacine
      - Riboflavin or B_2 or G
      - Pyridoxine or B_6
      - Pantothenic acid
      - Factor B_x or para-amino benzoic acid
      - Biotin or vitamin H
      - Folic acid
      - B_{12}
    - Thermolabile
      - Thiamine hydrochloride or B_1
  - Vitamin C or ascorbic acid
  - Vitamin P or citrin
- Fat-soluble
  - Vitamin A
  - Vitamin D
    - D_2 or calciferol
    - D_3
    - D_4, D_5, D_6
  - Vitamin E
    - α, β, γ tocopherol
  - Vitamin K
    - K_1, K_2

VITAMIN A OR AXEROPHTHOL

(Antixerophthalmic, Antiinfectious, Growth-Promoting)

Vitamin A is derived from carotene, its provitamin. The transformation of carotenes into vitamin A apparently takes place in the liver where an enzyme, carotenase, is present.

SYMPTOMS OF VITAMIN A DEFICIENCY

Symptoms of vitamin A deficiency are manifested as (1) disturbance of vision (nyctalopia, night blindness), (2) lack of growth, (3) keratinization of the epithelia, (4) lowered resistance to bacterial infection, (5) defective development of teeth, (6) nervous lesions, (7) genital disturbances.

Visual Disturbances

Since the time of the ancient Egyptians the disease known as night blindness (nyctalopia) has been treated by a diet based on liver; Hippocrates, in ancient Greece, treated it in the same manner. It has been observed among mariners making long voyages and among prisoners and slaves. It was observed among soldiers of World War I. Cases have occurred in Russia, Japan, India, and other countries. In the United States, Jeghers was able to prove decreased capacity for adaptation to darkness, on the part of some children, in experiments carried out before 1937. There is a substance in the retina, called *visual purple* or *rhodopsin*, contained in the retinal rods, which bleaches when exposed to intense light. The ability to regenerate depends upon whether the diet is rich in vitamin A or not. When the diet is rich in this vitamin, regeneration is rapid; when it is poor in vitamin A, recovery is slow. This capacity for regeneration is linked with a capacity for adaptation to darkness and is directly related to the speed with which the visual purple is regenerated; slow adaptation or lack of adaptation is called *nyctalopia* or night blindness.

Lack of Growth

Vitamin A deficiency is manifested by slow body growth, which is observed not immediately but only after a certain lapse of time. It has been demonstrated experimentally that this vitamin is stored in the liver and, to a less degree, in the kidneys and lungs, so that variation in diet, one time rich, again poor, in this vitamin, is not immediately evident in the animal.

Keratinization of the Epithelia

Keratinization of the epithelia is manifested in the mucosa of the respiratory passages, urinary pathways, salivary glands, conjunctiva, cornea, etc.

Keratinization of the epithelia of the cornea and of the conjunctiva leads to desiccation of the ocular conjunctiva, accompanied in addition by a series of symptoms such as photophobia, Bitôt's spots, light brown pigmentation of the conjunctiva, and later softening and degeneration of the cornea. These disturbances may lead to complete and permanent blindness (xerophthalmia and keratomalacia).

Lowered Resistance to Bacterial Infection

As a result of the epithelial disturbances produced by deficiency of vitamin A, the resistance of the epithelium to bacterial invasion is lowered, and infection takes places, generally by way of the bronchopulmonary, lacrimal, and salivary epithelia. The type of infection varies according to the site of entrance. Although the action of vitamin A on catarrhal states is still under discussion, this vitamin is used at the present time as a preventive in these conditions.

Defective Development of Teeth

In avitaminosis A, teeth develop poorly due to defective development of enamel and dentine, because of metaplasia of the ameloblasts and atrophy of the odontoblasts and ameloblasts.

Nervous Lesions

Some authors have reported that vitamin A deficiency produces disturbances of the central nervous system and degeneration of the auditory nerve, leading to deafness. Moore demonstrated a type of nutritional blindness due to vitamin A deficiency, which is caused by death of the optic nerve.

Genital Disturbances

It has been observed that lack of vitamin A produces atrophy of the testicle in the male rat and keratinization of the vaginal epithelium in the female. The deficiency later results in necrosis and infection of the decidua materna; the fetus dies as a result of the nutritional disturbance.

FOODS CONTAINING THE HIGHEST PERCENTAGE OF VITAMIN A

The following foods contain the highest percentage of vitamin A:

Spinach
Tomatoes
Green cabbage
Lemons
Bananas
Cocoa
Codliver oil
Liver
Whole wheat bread
Kidneys
Plums
Yeast
Lentils
Avocado
Oranges
Raw milk
Egg yolk
Herring
Cauliflower
Lettuce
Carrots
Mushrooms
Butter
Turnips
Brain
Oysters

VITAMIN A REQUIREMENTS

It has been calculated that about 20 to 30 I.U. per kilogram of weight in adults weighing approximately 70 kg. is indispensable to prevent night blindness. For children from 2 to 14 years of age, 6,000 to 8,000 I.U. daily are necessary.

The requirements for a woman are 5,000 I.U.; according to other authors, the requirements are 10,000 I.U. Vitamin A concentration in the body will be found to be diminished or lacking when not present in food, or when ingested in too small quantities. However, even though vitamin A, or carotene, or provitamin may be ingested, there still may be a vitamin A deficiency if the subject has certain alterations, such as (1) disturbance in absorption of fats, which occurs in serious affections of the pancreas and in obstructive jaundice, etc., (2) affections of the parenchyma of the liver, (3) hepatic icterus, atrophic and hypertrophic cirrhosis, (4) Basedow's disease, in which there is an increased consumption of vitamin A, (5) myxedema, in which insufficient transformation of the provitamin into vitamin A takes place, and (6) certain cachectic states, such as advanced neoplasms and pulmonary tuberculosis. In these cases the vitamin is eliminated in the urine because of excessive permeability of the kidney. This is not true in other cases, nor when doses of the vitamin are administered in normal cases.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Diagnosis of hypovitaminosis or avitaminosis A is made by examination of the blood and urine. (See Gradwohl, 1948.)

TREATMENT

Treatment of hypovitaminosis A consists in administering vitamin A capsules, in addition to a diet rich in vitamin A (codliver oil, tomatoes, plums, etc.).

In cases of avitaminosis A, in addition to the diet rich in vitamin A, 50,000 to 200,000 I.U. are administered daily. If necessary, higher doses may be given, since few cases of hypervitaminosis A have been described to date. Rosenberg and Veeberg state that it is possible to administer up to 100,000 units of vitamin A daily to mice without any resulting disturbance. If the vitamin is not well tolerated when given by oral route, it may be given parenterally in daily doses up to 36,000 I.U.

B COMPLEX

The importance of the vitamin B complex, the antiberiberi or B vitamin, is well known.

VITAMIN B_1, THIAMINE

(Antiberiberi or Antineuritic)

Vitamin B_1, chemically, is the hydrochloride of thiamine chloride.

SYMPTOMS OF VITAMIN B_1 DEFICIENCY

The symptoms of vitamin B_1 deficiency are (1) nervous disturbances, (2) digestive disturbances, (3) cardiac disturbances, and (4) metabolic disturbances. (See Chapter 61.)

VITAMIN B_2, RIBOFLAVIN, VITAMIN G, OR LACTOFLAVIN

Vitamin B_2 was formerly called in North America vitamin G. It is now better known as *riboflavin*, a name derived from its chemical composition.

SYMPTOMS OF VITAMIN B_2 DEFICIENCY

In experimental animals, deficiency of vitamin B_2 is manifested by decrease and then cessation of growth: in rats, this is accompanied by blepharitis, conjunctivitis, eczema of the skin around the eyes, and cataract; in chicks, by muscular paralysis; in dogs, by slowing of the respiration (bradypnea) and lowered temperature. All of these symptoms disappear after administration of riboflavin.

In 1938, Sebrell and Butler produced experimental B_2 avitaminosis in a group of volunteers, who developed cracked lips with maceration and fissure of the labial commissure and seborrheic accumulations in the nasolabial folds. These symptoms characterize vitamin B_2 deficiency. The condition is called *ariboflavinosis*.

In serious cases, in addition to these symptoms, nervous changes develop, manifested by torpid movements, accompanied by myeline degeneration of the peripheral nerves and of the posterior horn of the medulla, as demonstrated experimentally by Street, Cowgill, and Zimmerman; also vascular extravasation around the iris, followed by superficial vascularization of the cornea and interstitial keratitis. At times there are, in addition, photophobia, nebulous vision, congestion of the scleral coat, and opacity of the cornea.

FOODS CONTAINING VITAMIN B_2

The following foods contain vitamin B_2:

Bananas
Spinach
Eggs
Dry yeast
Turnips
Potatoes
Beef
Liver
Milk
Apples
Oranges
Cheese

VITAMIN B_2 REQUIREMENTS

Opinion regarding vitamin B_2 requirements is divided. Rose reported the requirements as 400 units for children up to 10 years of age, or, in deficiency cases, 20 units per each 100 calories if more than 2,000 calories are consumed. For adults, 20 units per each 100 calories are recommended. Stiebeling recommends 450 to 600 units per day. Recently, 2 mg. are considered the daily requirements of adults.

TREATMENT

In cases with vitamin B_2 deficiency, 500 units should be given orally per day in slight cases; 600 to 800 I.U. daily, orally, in serious cases. In addition, the patient should be kept on a diet rich in vitamin B_2. In the U.S.A., 2 to 15 mg. or more are given daily.

VITAMIN B_X OR B_X FACTOR (ANTIGRAY HAIR) OR P-AMINO BENZOIC ACID

Morgan, Ausbacher, and Martin showed that when p-amino benzoic acid was added to the diet, the graying hairs of the experimental animals regained their normal color. In recent work, Sieve administered 200 mg. daily of p-amino benzoic acid to 50 gray-haired experimental animals, with the result that the normal pigmentation was restored after 2 months.

The importance of this work has not yet been determined in human beings.

VITAMIN B_6, ADERMIN, PYRIDOXINE, OR THE 1 FACTOR

Vitamin B_6 was described by Lepkovsky, Jukes, and Kruse as the 1 factor. It was shown that the dermatitis in rats may be due to lack of a new substance which formed a part of the B complex and which has been given the name B_6. Since György called the condition produced in rats *acrodynia,* the new substance was designated as *antiacrodynic factor;* other authors called it *adermin.* Despite this work, it was not until 1938 that Kuhn and Harris and Folkes obtained the chemical formula of this product, as well as its synthesis.

SYMPTOMS OF DEFICIENCY

The work of Spies, Bean, and Ashe, with patients presenting symptoms of extreme nervousness, irritability, insomnia, debility, muscular rigidity, difficulty in walking, and stomach cramps, showed that the intravenous administration of 50 mg. of vitamin B_6 brought these subjects back to normal.

Some authors state that they have obtained satisfactory results in Parkinson's disease, although to date the specific action in this condition cannot be stated.

FOODS CONTAINING VITAMIN B_6

Foods containing vitamin B_6 are:

Meat (muscle of mammals)
Fish
Yeast
Wheat
Corn
Rice
Liver

VITAMIN B_6 REQUIREMENTS

The daily quantity of vitamin B_6 necessary to prevent hypovitaminosis or avitaminosis B_6 can be obtained in the average amount of such foods as rice, wheat bread, corn, and fish. Hypervitaminosis B_6 apparently is not produced. Kark has administered up to 1,160 mg. daily, orally, to patients, without any toxic effects.

TREATMENT

A dose of 1 to 3 mg. of this vitamin should be given daily.

ANTIPELLAGRA VITAMIN (PP)

Nicotinic Acid, Nicotinamide, Niacin

Deficiency of this vitamin results in the condition known as pellagra. Pellagra is discussed in Chapter 62.

PANTOTHENIC ACID

This factor of the B complex, called factor 2 by Lepkovsky, was obtained after adsorption of vitamins B_1, B_2, and B_6 by infusorial earth. It was synthesized in 1940 by William and Major. It has been demonstrated, after the crystal form was obtained, that it contains β-alanine.

SYMPTOMS OF DEFICIENCY

In the chick, deficiency of this vitamin causes a dermatosis around the eyes, mouth, and feet; in the mouse, a change in the color of the hair (graying); in the rat, retardation of growth, accompanied by suprarenal necrosis.

It is required in man during the early years as a coadjuvant factor in development, and it has been considered important as a factor in pigmentation of the hair, although this role has not as yet been specifically demonstrated.

FOODS CONTAINING PANTOTHENIC ACID

Yeast
Whole rice
Eggs
Heart
Liver
Kidneys
Milk
Brain

PANTOTHENIC ACID REQUIREMENTS

Daily pantothenic acid requirements are not known, but according to Williams, about 11 mg. daily are needed to prevent symptoms of deficiency.

Since this factor is found widely in all animal and plant tissues, and since microorganisms as well as higher animals also require it for development, its importance to the human being may well be understood.

TREATMENT

Diet rich in this factor is needed, with the addition of pantothenic acid by the oral route. Since the substance is not toxic, it may be used without fear of toxic effects. Rosenberg reports that at least 100 mg. of pantothenic acid have been administered to a patient without producing any toxic effects, even when given intravenously.

VITAMIN H OR BIOTIN

Wildiers (1901) recognized that yeasts required an additional element for growth which he called "bios." Lucas separated this factor into 2 component parts, calling them bios I and II. In 1928, Eastcott called bios I "*i*-inositol." Later work by György (1931) resulted in finding a factor, which he called vitamin H, which acted when an element contained in egg white produced harmful effects in man. In 1935 Kögl isolated *biotin,* one of the components of bios II, in its pure form; in 1940 György and collaborators identified biotin as vitamin H.

SYMPTOMS OF DEFICIENCY

In rats, there are present alterations of the skin, later accompanied by progressive emaciation, leading to death.

In man, changes in the color of the skin are produced, with resultant ashy color, with fissures and increased epithelial desquamation. There is accompanying lassitude, somnolence, muscular pains, precordial and anorexial discomfort.

In children, a special reddish pigmentation is observed in the shoulder.

FOODS CONTAINING BIOTIN OR VITAMIN H

Pig liver
Beef liver
Kidney
Yeast
Eggs
Milk
Asparagus
Water cress
Lettuce
Cereals
Nuts
Fruits

VITAMIN H REQUIREMENTS

To prevent symptoms of vitamin H deficiency, 150 to 200 rat units per day should be given with the food. The rat unit is the daily dose needed to cure, in 4 weeks, the damage produced by egg white.

Egg white contains a substance which inhibits the action of biotin, called *avidin.* One gram of methylic ester of biotin corresponds to 27,000,000 rat units.

TREATMENT

For patients with symptoms of biotin deficiency, 150 to 300 γ of biotin should be administered parenterally per day.

FOLIC ACID

Snell and Peterson (1940), in work relative to "factors in bacterial growth," showed that certain acidilactic bacteria required extracts of plants or animals for their growth. Mitchell, Snell, and Williams (1941) found that *Streptococcus lactis* R. grew better when placed in a medium containing a substance found in spinach. They called this substance "folic" in reference to its origin from leaves. The substance is now called the *L. casei* factor of liver, or glutamic acid.

SYMPTOMS OF FOLIC ACID DEFICIENCY

Reports in 1945 indicated that numerous cases of anemia of pregnancy were cured by the use of folic acid.

Symptoms of deficiency of folic acid are clear and determinative: hyperchromic macrocytic anemia accompanied by the clinical symptoms characteristic of this type of anemia. (See Chapter 60.)

FOODS CONTAINING FOLIC ACID

Beef and pork liver
Yeast

FOLIC ACID REQUIREMENTS

It is not possible at the present time to evaluate the daily requirements of folic acid, although the fundamental importance of folic acid in preventing macrocytic anemia is known. The work of Spies on the use of folic acid in the treatment of pernicious anemia, macrocytic anemia of pregnancy, pellagra, and sprue, in human beings, has been extraordinarily successful. Spies (1945) carried out experiments on the treatment of sprue by synthetic folic acid, the synthesis of which in 1945 facilitated its use.

TREATMENT

Spies recommended administration of 10 to 400 mg. daily, orally or parenterally, but an average dose of 20 mg. daily may be used in a large number of cases.

VITAMIN B_{12}

This is an essential growth factor. It is used in the treatment of sprue and pernicious anemia.

VITAMIN C (ANTISCORBUTIC)

Ascorbic Acid

Scurvy is a condition which has been known from remote times, long before it was recognized as a deficiency disease. Hippocrates appears to have described it, and Pliny related that a disease like scurvy attacked the army of Germanicus on the Rhine.

Joinville, in the 13th century, at the time of the eighth crusade, described the army of St. Louis in Egypt as suffering from scurvy. Later, the disease was observed on long voyages undertaken in the era of great conquests, and among prisoners, in fact, wherever fresh food was not available. In the Franco-Prussian War of 1870-1871, during the siege of Paris, this disease was observed among the civilian population, among the wounded in hospitals, and among the prisoners. The disease was described during the siege of Port Arthur in the Russo Japanese War and also during World War I.

Holst and Frölich (1912) produced scurvy experimentally in the guinea pig. In 1928, Szent-György isolated ascorbic acid from the suprarenal cortex. Later, in 1932, Waugh and King obtained it from lemon juice (juice from the rind of the lemon).

The pure product was obtained from the suprarenal by Haworth, Karrer, and Von Euler, and this permitted study of its chemical structure. It was synthesized in 1933 by Reichstein. The chemical structure is that of a hexuronic acid, and chemically it corresponds to a lactone of huronic acid.

It was named "ascorbic acid" by Haworth and Szent-György and is also known as "cevitamic acid."

SYMPTOMS OF DEFICIENCY

Scurvy is characterized by diminution in capillary resistance with appearance of hemorrhages in compressed parts of the skin and in the gums. The gums puff up and become spongy, the teeth become loose due to rarefaction of alveolar bone and may fall out; secondary infection may set in.

The vitamin is thought to play an important part in the formation of intracellular colloidal substances of mesenchymatous origin, such as the collagen of the fibrous tissues, materials of nonepithelial character which hold tissue together, including substances in the capillary walls, dentine, and cartilage.

Osteoporosis develops in the young and may lead to fracture of bone. The periosteum separates from the bone, accompanied by pain in the joints and bones, and swelling of the joints.

The dental disturbances are due to poor formation of dentine, as a result of degeneration of the odontoblasts.

Atrophy of the bone marrow is observed, with deficient formation of blood cells and platelets. In chronic scorbute, there is a suprarenal hypertrophy at the beginning, followed by atrophy. Digestive disturbances such as gastric intolerance and diarrhea are present in these cases.

In the child, deficiency of vitamin C produces the so-called infantile scurvy or Möller-Barlow disease, characterized by anemia and puffing up of the epiphyses of the bone, accompanied by great pain, due to subperiosteal hemorrhage. When teeth are developed, gingivitis is present, with gingival hemorrhage and swelling of the gums around the teeth.

FOODS WHICH CONTAIN VITAMIN C

Berries
Grapes
Bananas
Oranges
Lemons
Apples

Lettuce
Turnips
Rutabaga
Red beets
Pears

Strawberries
Cherries
Asparagus
Spinach
Beef

Liver
Kidney
Whole milk
Onions
Plums

Celery
Potatoes
Water cress
Cauliflower
Tomatoes
Cucumbers

VITAMIN C REQUIREMENTS

Vitamin C requirements vary with age, sex, and the general state of the individual.

In newborn infants, vitamin C requirements are 10 to 30 mg. daily; in older children, 20 to 60 mg.; adults, 25 to 75 mg.; during lactation, 100 to 150 mg. daily.

Prophylactically, in newborn infants, 10 mg. daily, in older children, 20 mg., and in adults, 25 mg. are needed to prevent scurvy. In cases of increased metabolic activity, as in pregnancy, lactation, fever, hyperthyroidism, etc., the vitamin C requirements are greater, and a larger quantity must be taken. Not only an insufficient intake of the vitamin, but also deficient absorption or excessive elimination, as in vomiting and diarrhea, may result in vitamin C deficiency.

TREATMENT

In the treatment of scurvy, 100 to 150 mg. of vitamin C are given daily. In infantile scurvy, 25 to 50 mg. are administered orally. With the pure ascorbic acid, the patient must be put on diets containing tomato juice, lemon, orange, etc., foods rich in vitamin C.

In serious cases of scurvy, larger doses of the vitamin may be given orally or parenterally, provided no toxic symptoms appear. From 100 to 200 mg. may be given daily, parenterally.

VITAMIN P OR CITRIN

Vitamin P is found united with ascorbic acid in the juice of citrus fruits. Szent-György showed that deficiency of vitamin P contributes to production of capillary hemorrhage, since it governs capillary permeability. Chemically, it is a mixture of the glucosides hesperidin and eriodictin.

VITAMIN D (ANTIRACHITIC)

Vitamin D is of extraordinary importance in the diet. Lack of vitamin D, especially in children, produces a serious condition called *rickets*.

Rickets has been known in England for centuries. It was first described by Whistler in 1645 and by Glisson in 1650. Later authors attributed it to various causes. The work of Mellanby and McCollum brought to light the knowledge that rickets is produced by deficiency of the D factor.

The provitamin which is found, principally, in higher animals and in man, is the 7-dehydrocholesterol, which upon irradiation forms vitamin D_3. In lower forms, principally in yeasts and plants, ergosterol is found, which when irradiated forms vitamin D_2, called *calciferol* by the British and *viosterol* by the Americans.

In the study of vitamin D it is necessary to keep in mind its close relationship with the calcium and phosphorus mtabolism of the organism.

SYMPTOMS OF DEFICIENCY

Symptoms of vitamin D deficiency may be divided into 4 groups: bone changes, dental changes, metabolic changes, general changes.

Bone Changes

Bone changes are characterized by alteration in ossification which lead to rickets in children and osteomalacia in adults.

Rickets is characterized, generally, by changes in the *line of epiphyseal* ossification, evidenced by a wide irregular girdle about the epiphysis, which may be noted on palpation. There is retardation in the process of ossification of the cranium with abnormal softness, the disorder being known as *craniotabes;* changes in the shape of the cranium, such as the Olympian brow and arch of the palate, occur; the so-called "*rachitic rosary*," characterized by the thickening of the chondrocostal zone of the ribs, so that it feels like beads on a rosary, thus accounting for the name; deformity of the thorax and lower limbs, known in clinical terms as genu valgum, genu varum, and genu recurvatum. Osteomalacia is generally a disease of adults, characterized by abnormal softness of all bones but principally of the femur and pelvis. There is difficulty in walking accompanied by relaxation of the skeletal muscles, alternating with hypertonicity of some muscle groups such as the adductors of the thigh.

Dental Changes

Dentition is delayed and there are difficulties in implantation and defects in form. There are changes in calcification, in enamel and dentine, resulting in diminished thickness of the dentine which then is not homogeneous and not compact but has intercellular spaces. Enamel presents an irregular and eroded surface, sometimes pigmented.

Metabolic Changes

Changes in calcium and phosphorus metabolism are present. The inorganic phosphorus content of the plasma is lowered by increase in excretion of phosphorus which is eliminated in greater proportion than normal. Increased excretion of phosphorus results in its decrease in the blood, with movement of phosphorus from bone tissue to maintain the blood level. This results in changes in the bones, since the calcium-phosphorus ratio cannot be maintained. Blood calcium is generally within normal limits; when it is low, tetany results, but this is rare in rachitic individuals. There is excessive elimination of calcium through the intestines, while no fixation of calcium in the bone is taking place.

General Changes

General changes are hypotony, muscular debility, hepatomegaly, splenomegaly, abdomen increased in bulk, profuse sweating, and anemia.

FOODS CONTAINING VITAMIN D

Codliver oil
Cow's milk
Codfish
Egg yolk
Sardines
Salmon
Cream
Butter
Mother's milk
Oysters
Wheat
Barley
Oats

VITAMIN REQUIREMENTS

It has been estimated that the daily requirements for vitamin D are, for the newborn, 400 to 500 units; during adolescence, 500 to 600 units daily; and in the average adult, about 700 units, although adult requirements have not as yet been satisfactorily determined. In pregnancy and lactation, a dose of 800 units has been suggested, with a diet high in calcium and phosphorus.

TREATMENT

In the treatment of rickets, doses ranging from 1,200 units in the beginning of the disease to 60,000 units in serious cases should be used daily. Some authors have employed massive doses of vitamins in the treatment of rickets. Garraham and Ruíz used up to 600,000 units, orally, in a single dose, without any resulting toxic symptoms. In the adult, up to 150,000 units may be used daily in refractory cases.

Care should be taken to prevent hypervitaminosis D. Hypervitaminosis D results in toxic changes, manifested by headache, nausea, profuse sweating, anorexia, loss of weight, profuse diarrhea, and renal insufficiency.

VITAMIN E OR TOCOPHEROL

Antisterility Vitamin

The existence of this vitamin has been suspected since 1920, following investigations by Mattill. It was not until 1921, however, that Evans, Bishop, Sure, and others observed need for further information. In 1938, Evans and Emerson succeeded in isolating the pure vitamin; later in the year it was synthesized by Karrer.

Vitamin E is composed of 3 tocopherol substances, α, β, and γ, β and γ being less active than the α-tocopherol.

SYMPTOMS OF DEFICIENCY

In the female rat, the fetus dies and is reabsorbed after 8 to 20 days of pregnancy, due to alterations in the placenta.

The male rat presents testicular atrophy with degeneration of the genital epithelial tissue of the semniferous tubes.

In human beings, studies by Vogt-Möller, Watson and Tew, and others have demonstrated that women who have had frequent abortions and abnormal parturition with death of the fetus experienced normal pregnancies and parturitions, with normal offspring, following treatment with vitamin E.

FOODS CONTAINING VITAMIN E

Codliver oil
Olive oil
Whole wheat
White flour
Egg yolk
Herring
Butter
White bread
Water cress
Milk
Oats
Barley
Bananas
Lettuce
Cocoa

VITAMIN E REQUIREMENTS

Vitamin E requirements have not as yet been determined for man or lower animals.

TREATMENT

In treatment of vitamin E deficiency, 30 mg. daily, in oil, are given intramuscularly or per os, or 50 mg., according to Meio, equivalent to about 40 I.U.

VITAMIN K (ANTIHEMORRHAGIC)

In 1929, Dam called a factor present in alfalfa *vitamin K*, using the first letter of the Danish word ''Koagulation'' for this vitamin.

In 1940, Doisy and co-workers discovered the chemical structure of vitamin K_2. Vitamin K is formed by 2 distinct bodies, vitamins K_1 and K_2, derived from the 2-methyl-1-4-naphthoquinone nucleus, with different radicals having different solubilities.

SYMPTOMS OF DEFICIENCY

Deficiency of vitamin K is manifested in adults and in children solely by the presence of hemorrhages, due to decrease in prothrombin in the plasma; in the newborn, by intracranial hemorrhage.

FOODS CONTAINING VITAMIN K

Hog liver
Ox liver
Carrots
Rice bran
Egg yolk
Soybean oil
Cabbage
Alfalfa
Spinach
Tomatoes

VITAMIN K REQUIREMENTS

Daily vitamin K requirements have not been determined. It is believed that under normal conditions the minimum daily requirements are obtained, aside from that taken in in food, by synthesis of the vitamin in the lower intestinal tract by certain bacteria (Kolmer).

TREATMENT

According to Dam, administration of 5 to 10 mg. of 2-methyl-1-4 naphthoquinone or 10 mg. of diacetate of 2-methyl-1-4 naphthoquinone is recommended for adults, given orally. These products have been used intravenously with good results.

In serious cases, Cheney advises administration intravenously of 1 to 3 mg. of 2-methyl 1-4 naphthohydroquinone 3-sulfonate of sodium. When using this product, care must be taken to prevent disturbances produced by hydroquinone, such as vomiting and porphyrinuria. Doses of 10, 30, and up to 50 mg. daily do not produce disturbances. Diet high in vitamin K should be associated with the treatment.

ESSENTIAL AMINO ACIDS

Amino acids are components of protein, very plastic substances, deficiency of which in the diet results first in cellular autophagy and later in death of the organism. Amino acids considered as indispensable are those not synthesized by the organism; those that are synthesized would not be lacking, since they are contained in the cells.

The essential or indispensable amino acids, therefore, are "those amino acids the ingestion of which in food is indispensable, and lack of which results in disorders which may cause death, since these substances cannot be synthesized by the human organism."

Ten have been described as essential: lysine, tryptophane, phenylalanine, histidine, leucine, isoleucine, threonine, methionine, valine, and arginine.

LYSINE

According to Osborne and Mendel, this acid is vital for growth.

TRYPTOPHANE

Deficiency of tryptophane in the diet, which is indispensable for maintenance of body weight, produces cataracts and other ocular changes (Trotter and Day).

When tryptophane is lacking in the diet of animals, blindness occurs, accompanied by white opacity and loss of color of the eye (Curtis, Hauge, and Kraybill, 1932). When catabolic activity is retarded, tryptophane accumulates especially in the thyroid gland, the erythrocytes, and in the pancreas when it is in a state of digestive repose; it is believed that it forms a part of both the external and internal secretions of this organ.

Tryptophane is closely linked with the formation of melanins, substances originating within epithelial cells or their derivatives (melanoblasts).

PHENYLALANINE

Phenylalanine is thought to be an intervening factor in the formation of pigment. The work of Womack and Rose in 1936 demonstrated that it is indispensable in nutritional processes, and that omission of it from the diet produces phenylketonuria, not infrequently observed in retarded children. A strengthening action upon the exhausted heart is attributed to phenylalanine, and in the process of increasing caloric production, up to as much as 18 per cent.

HISTIDINE

Histidine, in union with tryptophane, is considered hematogenous and anabolic, as well as a possible precursor of the purines. Since histidine is the precursor of histamine, deficiency may lead to anemic states and to production of gastroduodenal ulcers.

Studies by Kobsch in 1936 demonstrated that histidine favors blood circulation of the mucosae, with increase in tone and disappearance of spasm in these structures.

LEUCINE

Leucine intervenes in body growth and is ketogenic, exerting action on the exhausted heart.

Investigations have shown that it is a preponderant factor in the growth of both the Koch and the Hansen bacilli.

ISOLEUCINE

Isoleucine forms an integral part of the histones which, in turn, are included in some simple proteins called globins. It is thought to be a valuable factor in influencing growth and development of the body.

THREONINE

Threonine was found in 1931 by Rose, in casein, while he was experimenting on the physical growth of rats. He noticed that this substance exercised influence upon growth. Womack and Rose (1935) demonstrated the presence in casein of two factors which influence body growth, isoleucine and threonine.

METHIONINE

Methionine is indispensable for the growth of the body. It is important in metabolism because of the sulfur contained in its molecule. A greater intake of this acid than normal is required in lactation.

Deficiency of methionine causes alterations in fat metabolism, with fatty accumulation in the liver. This change is extended to cholesterol and to the cholesterol esters. It has been called the "lipotropic" factor. Absence of methionine occasions cirrhosis of the liver and fatty degeneration of the kidney, manifested by hemorrhagic necrosis of the renal cortex.

Atrophy of the thymus, splenomegaly, and hemolymphatic transformation of lymph glands, as well as hemorrhages in the eyes, have been observed as a result of deficiency of this amino acid.

VALINE

Deficiency of valine in the diet produces disturbances in growth as well as sensitivity to touch in animals and a distinct loss of coordination of movements.

Valine is found in casein from cow's milk and in chicken eggs. It is present in almost all human tissue, the thymus being the richest, harboring 81 per cent.

ARGININE

Arginine is considered essential in the production of purines, and enters into the composition of phosphagen in invertebrates. By the action of a ferment called *arginase,* it is decomposed into ornithine and urea.

Although arginine does not act directly with relation to body growth, it initiates cellular growth (Hammett and Elliott, 1935).

ESSENTIAL AMINO ACID REQUIREMENTS

The exact daily requirements of amino acids have not as yet been ascertained, but the percentage of the following, in relation to the food intake, can be calculated individually: lysine, 1 per cent; leucine, 0.9 per cent; phenylalanine, 0.7 per cent; valine, 0.7 per cent; threonine, 0.6 per cent; methionine, 0.6 per cent; histidine, 0.4 per cent; tryptophane, 0.2 per cent; and arginine, 0.2 per cent.

FOODS CONTAINING THE ESSENTIAL AMINO ACIDS

All protein substances contain essential amino acids in one form or another; they are found principally in:

- Meat
  - Beef
  - Pork
  - Mutton
  - Fowl
  - Fish
- Chicken eggs
- Turkey eggs
- Duck eggs
- Cow milk
- Goat milk
- Donkey milk

TREATMENT

In amino acid deficiency cases, the amino acids must be administered orally in food, or parenterally, either in the form of polypeptides or as isolated amino acids.

ESSENTIAL FATTY ACIDS

In 1929, Burr and Burr demonstrated the presence of unsaturated acids, such as the linoleic and linolenic acids, which are essential in the diet for normal growth of rats.

In 1938, Turpeinen found arachidonic acid essential for the maintenance of life in mice. Later, Nunn and Smedley MacLean established the fact that arachidonic acid is deposited in the liver.

These fatty acids are found in nature in plants and animals. They have not yet been synthesized. The essential fatty acids are linoleic, linolenic, and arachidonic.

LINOLEIC ACID

Linoleic acid is found as a glyceride present in the dry oils of cotton, corn, and poppy seeds, and others. In animals it is present as the fatty acid of phospholipids, and forms neutral fats. Linoleic acid and its esters are absorbed by the intestinal epithelium. They are transformed into arachidonic acid under major activity.

LINOLENIC ACID

Linolenic acid is generally absent in animal fats, and, like linoleic acid, is present as a glyceride in the dry oils, such as linseed oil. It is absorbed by the gastrointestinal tract and transformed into arachidonic acid in the body.

ARACHIDONIC ACID

Arachidonic acid contains four double chains. It is deposited in organic tissue. It is found preferably in animal tissue. It forms part of the phospholipid fraction constituent of lecithin and cephalin and is a component of neutral fats.

It has been isolated from the heart, liver, spleen, suprarenal capsule, and brain.

PHYSIOLOGY AND SYMPTOMS OF DEFICIENCY

Linoleic acid is metabolized immediately after it enters the body. It is not stored unless administered in large doses. Linoleic acid has been found in all animals that have been studied as well as in man, as an ester; as a constituent of phospholipids, and as a component of neutral fats. Both acids are transformed in the body into arachidonic acid which is more active. In addition to arachidonic acid, other fatty acids are synthesized, by the body, from linoleic and linolenic acids.

Deficiency produces a type of dermatosis characterized by dryness and cracking of the skin, especially of the ears, hands, and eyebrows. Lesions of the lacrimal gland are present, and lacrimal hypersecretion begins. Lesions of the kidneys and urinary tract occur. There are disturbances of lactation in the rat, loss of weight, and cessation of growth. The symptoms disappear following administration of the essential fatty acids.

ESSENTIAL FATTY ACID REQUIREMENTS

The daily requirements to prevent deficiency are not as yet known.

TREATMENT

Oils containing these essential elements must be ingested. Sources are corn, poppy seed, cottonseed, flaxseed, etc., as well as foods containing lecithin and cephalin, also those sphingomyelins which contain these essential fatty acids.

NUTRITIONAL ANEMIA*

Only those anemias produced by deficiency of certain elements necessary for maintenance of normal hematologic conditions will be noted here. For purposes of study, the types of anemia may be divided as follows:

- Nutritional Anemias
  - Anemia due to iron deficiency
  - Anemia due to deficiency of the antianemic principle (sprue, pellegra, macrocytic anemia of pregnancy, Addison-Biermer pernicious anemia, etc.)
  - Anemia due to deficiency of vitamin C
  - Anemia of the myxedematous type

- Macrocytic anemia due to deficiency of the hematopoietic principles
  - Deficiency of the intrinsic factor
    - Cryptogenetic pernicious anemia
    - Pernicious anemia of pregnancy
  - Deficiency of the extrinsic factor
    - Sprue
    - Tropical macrocytic anemia
    - Pellagra
  - Deficient absorption of the pernicious anemia factor
    - Gastrointestinal disturbances
    - Idiopathic steatorrhea
    - Etc.
  - Deficient storage of the pernicious anemia factor
    - Cirrhosis of the liver
    - Acute atrophy of the liver
    - Etc.
  - Deficient utilization of the pernicious anemia factor
    - Achrestic anemia

The following are of particular interest in the tropics:

SPRUE OR TROPICAL DIARRHEA

Sprue is a condition observed in tropical or subtropical countries. For a full discussion, refer to Chapter 60.

TROPICAL MACROCYTIC ANEMIA

Hyperchromic macrocytic anemia of tropical countries was first studied in India. It develops usually as a complication of such diseases as malaria, syphilis, tuberculosis, parasitic infections, etc. It has also been described as a nosologic entity not due to infection or other diseases. It occurs in both sexes, but Wills found it more frequently in women than in men, particularly as a complication in pregnancy. The anemia is produced, generally, by deficiency of proteins, fats, and vitamins in the diet.

Symptoms.—Pallor of the skin and mucosae, vertigo, headache, accompanied by general weakness, glossitis, diarrhea, and edema, are found in this type of anemia.

Blood Picture.—The blood examination establishes the diagnosis. (Hyperchromic macrocytic anemia.)

---

*See also Chapter 68.

Treatment.—Crude liver extract is effective but not the purified and concentrated liver extracts. Folic acid, used at present, gives good results. In addition, a diet rich in proteins, fats, and vitamins should complement the treatment. Vitamin B_{12} is also given.

PELLAGRA TYPE OF ANEMIA

Pellagra is discussed in Chapter 62.

ACHRESTIC ANEMIA

Wilkinson and Israels (1935), in India, described a macrocytic hyperchromic type of anemia similar to the idiopathic pernicious anemia but which did not respond to treatment with liver extract. This type of anemia is believed to be due to the inability of the body to mobilize and utilize the hematopoietic principle present in the organism. This type of anemia is known as "achrestic" anemia.

Symptoms.—The symptoms are glossitis, headache, vertigo, anorexia, asthenia, and loss of weight.

Blood Picture.—The erythrocyte count is 2,000,000 to 3,500,000 or less. The hemoglobin is 60 to 70 per cent. The color index and the volume index are higher than 1.0.* The bone marrow shows megaloblastic hyperplasia.

Laboratory Diagnosis.—The laboratory diagnosis is made by examination of the blood and also by lack of response to treatment with liver extract.

Treatment.—This anemia is chronic, ending in death. Liver extract is not effective.

ANEMIA DUE TO VITAMIN C DEFICIENCY

The anemia due to vitamin C deficiency is a microcytic anemia, generally seen in cases of scurvy.

Etiology.—It is due to a deficiency of vitamin C and dietary factors in general.

Pathogenesis.—With symptoms of scurvy and infantile scorbute, already described, are associated pallor, headache, general malaise, anorexia, asthenia, loss of weight, and pallor of the skin and mucosae.

Hemorrhage of the gums and cutaneous, intestinal, and nasal hemorrhages accentuate and aggravate the anemia.

Blood Picture.—The erythrocyte count is 3,000,000 to 4,200,000 per cubic millimeter or less, in some cases 1,000,000. Hemoglobin is 60 to 75 per cent, although it may be as low as 40 or 50 per cent, with the possible findings of normoblasts and reticulocytes. Leucocytes and thrombocytes are unchanged. In a few cases, their numbers decrease, but not excessively. Bleeding time and clotting time are normal, as is clot retraction.

---

*In the United States, the mean corpuscular volume and the mean corpuscular hemoglobin concentration are considered important indicators.

Laboratory Diagnosis.—Laboratory diagnosis is made by estimation the concentration of vitamin C in the blood, plus the hemogram.

Treatment.—Use of a diet high in vitamin C, such as lemon juice, t matoes, oranges, green vegetables, etc., is associated with large doses of vitami C, accompanied by liver extract, preferably parenterally administered, an iron.

NUTRITIONAL EDEMA

Nutritional edema is the name given to edema produced by decrease o absence of protein elements in the diet. The edema is generally produce under conditions during which food is scarce, such as wars, prison life, etc., hence the name "war edema," or "prison edema."

Symptoms of Deficiency.—Edema of varied intensity is the principal symptom. In some cases it is mild and is present only in the lower extremities. In other cases it extends to the face which presents a typical swelling. At times it is generalized, with anasarca.

The extremities may be extraordinarily infiltrated, the abdomen distended, with ascites, edema of the face, infiltrated eyelids, sometimes producing difficulty in vision.

The edema is of the characteristic type known as "renal" edema, "white" edema, "soft" and "cold" edema, "symmetrical" edema. It may be 2 or 3 weeks before it has become established, or it may appear in 2 or 3 days. It is more pronounced in the more dependent parts of the body, for example, in male patients, the scrotum is distended, increased in size, and acquires a porcelain-like appearance, in some cases even showing fissures through which secondary infection occurs. After a time, symptoms of vitamins B_1 and PP deficiency are added to the symptoms of edema.

In some cases motor and psychic disorders, changes in circulation, and hepatic changes accompany the edema. Anemia is usually present and, in addition, there are photophobia and conjunctival congestion. Dental disorders are also usually observed, leading to dystrophy. Other symptoms are anorexia and low arterial tension, with tachycardia and cardiac murmurs, as well as electrocardiographic changes, characterized by disappearance or slight inversion of the T wave, due in part to aqueous imbibition of the heart muscle and to deficiency of vitamin B_1 associated with protein deficiency.

Some patients show sensory alterations, such as, somnolence, obnubilation, depression, etc., while others maintain a normal state. Cutaneous and tendinous reflexes are weakened.

Protein Requirements.—A sufficient quantity of protein is required to prevent nutritional edema, as well as other metabolic changes related to protein deficiency and which may hasten death.

In nurslings, the optimum quantity is 1.5 Gm. per pound of body weight. In adults, the amount varies from 20 to 130 Gm. daily, although with proteins of the first class, 30 to 40 Gm. may be considered as minimum. In a diet of 3,500 calories, at least 50 gm. should be proteins of the first class, such as those found in milk, eggs, and meat, with 50 Gm. of proteins of the second class, such as vegetable proteins. In pregnancy, lactation, and growth, the quantity of protein intake should be increased to maximum. In pregnancy, the quantity should be 1.5 Gm. per kilogram of body weight.

Proteins make up 10 to 15 per cent of the calories in the diet. The average amount of protein which an adult should ingest in order to prevent hypoproteinemia is 100 Gm. per day.

Laboratory Diagnosis.—The amount of proteins in the serum is determined by gravimetric, refractometric, or colorimetric methods.

The refractometric method uses the Abbee or the Pulfrich refractometer, which is a rapid method, but it estimates the proteins as a whole, without specifying the quantities of each.

The colorimetric methods determine the quantity of serum albumin, serum globulin, and fibrinogen, so that the albumin-globulin ratio may be established. This is very important in the study of edema in general. In this particular case, it is important in the study of deficiency.

There are several methods such as those of Andersch and Gibson, Greenberg, and others. The Kjeldahl method or the oxalic catalysis give excellent results.

The normal amount of protein in the blood is: total protein, 7.1 Gm. per 100 c.c. of plasma; fibrinogen, 0.27 Gm. to 100 c.c. of plasma; serum albumin, 4.1 Gm. to 100 c.c. of plasma; serum globulin, 2.7 Gm. to 100 c.c. of plasma. The albumin-globulin ratio is 1:1.5. In serum, the amounts are: albumin, 5 Gm. to 100 c.c. of serum; globulin, 2.2 Gm. to 100 c.c. of serum; albumin-globulin ratio 1:2.2.

Blood examination alone will not establish a diagnosis of hypoproteinemia due to nutritional deficiency, since, while it indicates the protein state of the blood, it does not indicate whether the condition is due to renal or to nutritional disturbances or to other organic conditions. Examination of the urine is decisive, since albuminuria and renal sediment typical of hydropathic nephropathy, especially hematuria, are conclusive indications of renal edema, whereas, in nutritional edema, these changes are lacking. The sediment consists of cylindroids of mucus; specific gravity is high, 1.020 to 1.025 or more; the reaction is acid; urea and chlorides are normal or above normal; and the phosphates and sulfates are also above normal.

Treatment.—Treatment consists primarily in diets high in proteins. In nurslings, albuminous milk is given every 3 hours; in older children, soups and broths, meat paste, green vegetables, and abundant animal proteins; in adults, beef, veal, pork, cow's milk, goat's milk, green vegetables, grains such as beans, chick peas, peas, lentils, etc. As dessert, fresh fruits such as oranges, grapefruit, pears, etc., are given.

In serious cases, blood plasma transfusions are given in 200 to 500 c.c. quantities at a time. If there is associated anemia, whole blood is used, 200 to 400 c.c. at a time, with successive transfusions if required.

Diuretics, such as the following, should be used: hypertonic solution of glucose, 30 to 50 per cent, intravenously; caffeine, ammonium chloride, calcium chloride, strontium and calcium lactate.

Vitamins B_1 and B_2 should be administered, as well as A and D therapeutic doses, in relation to the condition of the patient. Cardiac ton such as Coramine in high doses and caffeine should be used.

Liver extract should be used as a coadjuvant. In treatment of nut tional edema care should be taken to observe any other cause responsible f the edema, since not only is the low intake of proteins responsible for d ficiency, but in some cases of excessive loss the intense destruction of protei or defective formation of proteins are the causes of hypoprotein edema.

MINERAL DEFICIENCIES

Only the more important of these mineral deficiencies such as calciun phosphorus, iron, and iodine will be considered.

CALCIUM

Calcium represents 2 per cent of the body weight; 98 per cent of this cal cium is found in the skeleton.

Symptoms of Calcium Deficiency.—Among the fundamental symptom are tetany, a nervous and muscular hyperexcitability, with spasmophilia due to deficiency of calcium in the plasma, as well as to decreased ionized calcium this decrease occurring when phosphates and citrates are increased. Alkalosis, produced by excessive ingestion of bicarbonates or in loss of gastric juic by vomiting, causes decreased calcium with symptoms of tetany. Deficiencie also are apparent in the blood coagulation process with excessive loss of blood in traumatic wounds as a result of the increased coagulation and bleedin times. Deficiency of calcium is apparent in the process of coagulation of milk.

Disturbances in water metabolism and in the acid-base equilibrium are produced. Symptoms of hypocalcemia are disorders of ossification, lack of growth, osteoporosis, defective tooth formation, digestive disturbances, sterility, and premature death.

Foods Which Contain Calcium.—Foods which contain calcium are fundamentally milk, which contains 1.4 per cent calcium; cheese, 5 to 10 per cent; raw green vegetables; and some natural waters, which contain a high proportion of calcium.

Calcium Requirements.—Sherman considers the calcium requirements to be 0.45 Gm. per day; but, since the process of absorption varies, he recommends administering a double quantity, that is, 0.9 Gm. in adults; in children between the ages of 1 and 10 years, 1 Gm., from 10 to 12 years, 1.2 Gm.; from 13 to 15 years, 1.3 Gm.; and from 15 to 20, 1.4 Gm. daily. In pregnancy or lactation, the quantity of calcium to be taken is greater; 1.5 Gm. daily is recommended for pregnant women, and 2 Gm. in lactation.

Laboratory Diagnosis.—The normal calcium content of the blood is 10 to 12 mg. per 100 c.c. of plasma. Diffusible calcium is 5 to 6.5 mg. per 100 c.c. of plasma, and nondiffusible calcium is 4 to 5 mg. per 100 c.c. of plasma. Diagnosis of calcium deficiency is made by estimation of total blood calcium.

diffusible and nondiffusible, using any of the standard methods, among which may be cited that of Kramer and the modified method of Kramer and Tisdal, also the method of Clark and Collip.

Treatment.—Give the patient diets rich in calcium such as milk, cheese, and raw vegetables; calcium gluconate, orally, in doses of 11.02 Gm.; calcium lactate in doses of 7.2 Gm.; or calcium chloride in doses of 0.10 Gm. every 3 hours, orally. Calcium gluconate is used intravenously, in doses of 5 to 10 c.c., containing 10 or 20 per cent of the gluconate. Vitamin D is used to permit fixation and utilization of the ingested calcium.

PHOSPHORUS

Phosphorus is found in the human body in quantities varying from 450 to 700 Gm., 70 to 80 per cent of which is present in bones and teeth in combination with certain substances, but principally combined with calcium. Phosphorus is eliminated by the kidneys, about 60 per cent normally being found in the urine.

Symptoms of Deficiency.—Deficiency of phosphorus results in rickets in the child and osteoporosis or osteomalacia in the adult, with retardation of growth and usually a poor organic state, with disturbances eventually leading to death. Hypophosphoremia, that is, blood phosphorus below normal, has been noted. Blood phosphorus is found in the form of inorganic and organic phosphorus. Organic phosphorus occurs in three forms: ethereal, lipid, and nucleic.

Decreased phosphorus is observed in rickets. Calcification does not take place, and bones bend easily, due to diminished absorption of phosphorus. In osteomalacia, bones become soft and deformed, especially the pelvic bones.

Foods Which Contain Phosphorus.—Foods which contain phosphorus are:

Milk
Cheese
Butter
Cereals

Beef muscle
Beef liver
Eggs
Vegetables

Phosphorus Requirements.—In the adult, 0.88 Gm. of phosphorus may be administered daily, as a maintenance dose. But the diet should contain 1.35 to 1.40 Gm. per day. In pregnancy and lactation, the dose should be increased to 2.5 and 3.0 Gm. daily. Growing children need a greater quantity of phosphorus; at 3 years, they require 80 mg. per kg. of weight; at the age of 16 years, 32 mg. per kg.; adults require 12 mg. per kg. of weight daily. The ratio of phosphorus to calcium in the diet should be 2:1, and no less than 1:1.

Laboratory Diagnosis.—The normal quantity of phosphorus is 40 mg. per 100 c.c. of blood. It is present principally as organic and inorganic phosphorus.

Inorganic phosphorus is normally present in the amount of 3 to 4.5 mg. per 100 c.c. of blood plasma in adults; and 4 to 6 mg. per 100 c.c. of plasma in children. Phosphatase is an enzyme which hydrolyzes the monophosphoric esters, with liberation of phosphoric acid. It is found in all cells and body fluids. According to whether its action develops in an acid or alkaline pH, we speak of "acid" or "alkaline" phosphatase. Alkaline phosphatase is found in greater quantities in such organs as intestines, kidney, liver, bones, and teeth. Acid phosphatase is found in liver, kidney, prostate, and erythrocytes.

Tests for inorganic phosphorus can be made by several methods, among which are the methods of Kuttner and Lichtenstein, Bell and Doisy, Fiske and Subbarow, and others. All figures below the normal limit indicate hypophosphoremia, and establish a direct diagnosis of phosphorus deficiency.

"Alkaline" phosphatase is determined by the methods of Kay, Bodansky, or King and Armstrong. "Acid" phosphatase is determined by the Gutman method. One and five-tenths to 4.0 units are considered normal for "alkaline" phosphatase, and 4 Bodansky units are considered normal for "acid" phosphatase. The normal "alkaline" phosphatase in children is 5 to 15 Bodansky units.

Treatment.—In cases of phosphorus deficiency, food rich in this mineral should be administered, such as milk, cheese, beef muscle, liver, vegetables, cereals, eggs, etc., in addition to the oral administration of sodium and potassium phosphate in the form of glycerophosphates. Phospholipids and phosphoglycerates are useful in treatment.

IRON

Iron is essential for maintenance of life, being a constituent of the molecule of hemoglobin which, in turn, transports oxygen and carbon dioxide in the process of respiration. The amount of iron in the body is about 3 Gm., 65 per cent of which forms part of the hemoglobin, the rest being distributed in the liver, spleen, and bone marrow, and in the remainder of the organism.

Symptoms of Deficiency.—Hypochromic anemia occurs as a result of iron deficiency.

Foods Which Contain Iron.—Foods which contain iron are:

Beef liver
Pork liver
Beef muscle
Vegetables
Egg yolk
Legumes

Iron Requirements.—Daily requirements are from 10 to 20 mg. for men and from 20 to 25 mg. for women; an average dose of 12 mg. for men and 15 mg. for women may be given. In pregnancy and lactation, the daily dosage should be increased; children require 6 mg. daily in the first year, gradually increasing to 15 mg. by the age of 15 years.

Laboratory Diagnosis.—Iron deficiency can be determined indirectly by estimating the hemoglobin concentration. Iron in the circulating blood can be determined directly by the method of Wong. The normal amount in the male is 42 mg. per 100 c.c. of plasma; in the female, 38 mg. per 100 c.c. of plasma.

Treatment.—Daily doses of the ferrous salts, such as ferrous chloride, orally, are advisable; parenteral injections containing 16 to 35 mg. of iron may be used; and food with high iron content, such as meat, vegetables, legumes, egg yolk, liver, etc., should be eaten.

IODINE

Iodine is a constituent of thyroxin and numerous iodine compounds formed by the thyroid gland. The principal compound formed by the thyroid gland is thyroxin. It was extracted from the thyroid gland by Kendall in 1914. In 1924 and 1926, Harrington determined the structural formula, and in 1927, with Barger, prepared it synthetically.

Symptoms of Deficiency.—Iodine deficiency results in hypertrophy of the thyroid gland. Hypertrophy of this gland develops first as a consequence of hypertrophy of the cells, later cellular hyperplasia occurs. In some cases, the gland may be overwhelmed with resulting atrophy.

Iodine Requirements.—Generally, iodine taken in food and water is sufficient to prevent deficiency. In regions where it is not present in the water, so-called "goiter zones" result, as, for example, in the Swiss Alps, northern France, Derbyshire in England, Himalayas in Asia, and in the Great Lakes region of the United States, and in parts of the Rocky Mountain region. It is to be noted that iodine in very small quantities is found as a constituent in the water in cold regions far from the sea.

Treatment.—Iodine is used in the form of solutions of iodized iodine, giving 2 drops per day until a dose of 60 drops has been reached. Thyroxin may also be used, administered orally.

References

Almqvist, H. J., and Klose, A. A.: 1939. Determination of Anti-Haemorrhagic Vitamin, Biochem. J. **33**: 1055-1060.

Amozurrutia, J., and Hernandez, E.: 1941. Hematología Clínica, Guadalajara, Alfredo Dávila.

Bercovitz, Z. Taylor, editor: 1944. Clinical Tropical Medicine, New York. Paul B. Hoeber, Inc.

Berry, L. J., and Spies, T. D.: 1946. The Present Status of Folic Acid, Blood **1**: 271-306.

Bezancon, F., Labbe, M. C., Bernard, L., et al.: 1936. Tratado de Patología Medica, Vol. VI, Barcelona.

Binkley, S. B., McKee, R. W., Thayer, S. A., and Doisy, E. A.: 1940. Constitution of Vitamin K_2, J. Biol. Chem. **133**: 721-729.

Boyce, F. F., and McFetridge, E. M.: 1937. Serum Volume Test for Hemorrhagic Diathesis in Jaundice, J. Lab. & Clin. Med. **23**: 202-212.

Bray, W. E., et al.: 1941. Sinopsis de los metodos Bioquímicos de Laboratorio, la edición español, traducida de la 2a inglesa. (Ed. UTEHA).

Castellanos, A.: 1940. Edemas Nutricionales en el Niño.

Corona, L.: 1942. Química Normal y Patológica de la Sangre, ed. 3 (Ediciones Ercilla, Chile).

Cowgill, G. R.: 1934. The Vitamin B_1 Requirements of Men, New Haven, Conn., Yale University Press.

De Meio, R. H.: 1942. Vitaminas, Con especial consideración a las aplicaciones terapéuticas, ed. 2 (Libería y Editorial Ruiz, Rosaria).

Eddy, W. H., and Dalldorf, G.: 1944. The Avitaminoses, ed. 3, Baltimore, The Williams and Wilkins Company.

Elvehjem, C. A.: 1940. Relation of Nicotinic Acid to Pellagra, Physiol. Rev. **20**: 249-271.

Elvehjem, C. A., Koehn, C. J., and Oleson, J. F.: 1936. New Essential Dietary Factor, J. Biol. Chem. **115**: 707-719.

Ferrata, A.: 1934-35. Le Emopatie. Parte Speciale, ed. 2, Vol. II, Parts I, II, III, Milano, Società editrice libraria.

Fisher, A.: 1942. Laboratorio, ed. 3, Buenos Aires, Libreria "El Ateneo."

Fongi, Enrique G.: 1937. Metabolismo, Buenos Aires, Libreria "El Ateneo."

Fowler, W. M.: 1945. Hematology for Students and Practitioners, New York, Paul B. Hoeber, Inc.

Goiffon, R.: 1942. Manuel de Coprologie Clinique, Paris, Masson & Cie.

Goldberger: 1920. Pellagra, in Tice's Practice of Medicine **9**: 205.

Goolhart, R., and Sinclair, H. M.: 1940. J. Biochem. **11**: 132.

Gradwohl, R. B. H.: 1948. Clinical Laboratory Methods and Diagnosis, ed. 4, St. Louis, The C. V. Mosby Company.

Greer, J.: 1930. J. A. M. A. **95**: 863.

György, P.: 1935. J. Biochem. **29**: 741.

György, P.: 1935. Lactoflavin and Vitamin B_2 Complex, J. Biochem. **29**: 757.

Haden, R. L.: 1940. Principles of Hematology, Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger.

Hadfield and Garred: 1943. Recent Advances in Pathology, ed. 4, Philadelphia, The Blakiston Company.

Harris, Robert S., and Thimann, Kenneth, et al.: 1943-1944, 1945. Vitamins and Hormones, New York, Academic Press, Inc.

Hess, A. F., and Lewis, J. M.: 1928. J. A. M. A. **91**: 783.

Hess and Lundagen: 1922. J. A. M. A. **79**: 2210.

Houssay, Bernardo A., and collaborators: 1945. Fisiología Humana, Buenos Aires, Libreria "El Ateneo."

Jeghers, H.: 1937. Night Blindness as a Criterion of Vitamin A Deficiency, Ann. Int. Med. **10**: 1304.

Joly, J.: 1923. Traité Technique d'Hematologie, Paris, A. Maloine et Fils.

Kolmer, J. A., and Boermer, F.: 1938. Approved Laboratory Technic, ed. 2, New York, & London, D. Appleton-Century Company, Inc.

Kolmer, J. A., and Boermer, F.: 1944. Clinical Diagnosis by Laboratory Examination, ed. 1, New York & London, D. Appleton-Century Company, Inc.

Kopatschek, F.: 1942. Manual del Laboratorio Kuímico, Buenos Aires, Aniceto López.

Kracke, R. R.: 1941. Disease of the Blood and Atlas of Hematology, ed. 2, Philadelphia & London, J. B. Lippincott Company.

Lepper, Henry A.: 1945. Official and Tentative Methods of Analysis of the Association of Official Agricultural Chemists, ed. 6 (Chairman Editorial).

Matsumura, S.: 1929. The Etiology of Beri-Beri, J. A. M. A. **92**: 1325.

McCollum, E. V.: 1922. J. Biol. Chem. **54**: 249.

McCollum, E. V., Simmonds, N., et al.: 1921. The Production of Rickets by Diets Low in Phosphorus and Fat Soluble, J. Biol. Chem. **47**: 507.

Naegeli, O.: 1934. Tratado de Hematología Clínica, Barcelona, Editorial Labor.

Nirenstein, Mario L.: 1938. Vitamines, Buenos Aires, Aniceto López.

Nygaard, K. K.: 1941. Hemorrhagic Diseases. Photoelectric Study of Blood Coagulability, St. Louis, The C. V. Mosby Company.

Pangaro, J. A.: 1939. Las Enfermedades de la Sangre, Buenos Aires, Liberia "El Ateneo."

Pett, L., and Bond le Page, G. A.: 1940. J. Biol. Chem. **132**: 585.

Piney, A.: 1939. Recent Advances in Hematology, ed. 4, London, J. & A. Churchill, Ltd.

Re, P. M.: 1940. Acidos Aminados, Fisiología, Patología y Terapéutica, Buenos Aires, Liberia "El Ateneo."

Rondoni, P.: 1935. Compendio de Química Biológica, con aplicación a la Patología y al Diagnóstico, ed. 4, Editorial Labor, S. A.

Rosenau, Milton J.: 1940. Preventive Medicine and Hygiene, ed. 6, New York & London, D. Appleton-Century Company, Inc.

Rosenberg, H. R.: 1945. Chemistry and Physiology of the Vitamins, New York, Interscience Publishers, Inc.

Rosenbloom, L. A., and Jolliffe, N.: 1940. J. Biol. Chem. **134**: 39.

Schour, I.: 1938. Calcium Metabolism and Teeth, J. A. M. A. **110**: 870.

Sebrell, W. H., and Butler, R. E.: 1938. Riboflavin Deficiency in Man, Pub. Health Rep. **54**: 2121.

Varela, M. E.: 1941. Hematología Clínica, Bueno Aires, Libreria "El Ateneo."

Vitamins, The: 1939. A symposium. Arranged under the auspices of the Council on Pharmacy and Chemistry and the Council on Foods of the American Medical Association.

Whitey, L. E. H., and Britton, C. S. C.: 1942. Disorders of the Blood, ed. 4, Philadelphia, The Blakiston Company.

Wintrobe, M. M.: 1942. Clinical Hematology, Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger.

Wright, S.: 1945. Fisiología Aplicada, ed. 4, in Spanish, Translated from the 7th English by José González, Barcelona, M. Marin.

CHAPTER 60

SPRUE

RAMÓN M. SUÁREZ

Synonyms.—Psilosis, tropical diarrhea, aphthae tropicae, Ceylon sore mouth, Cochin-China diarrhea.

DEFINITION

When sprue syndrome is fully developed, it is characterized by glossitis, flatulent diarrhea with fatty, frothy stools which produce burning in the rectum, marked loss of weight, and a macrocytic hyperchromic anemia.

The "marked tendency to remissions," of which most authors speak, is rarely, if ever, seen in practice. Unless adequately treated, the disease progresses gradually to complete prostration, inanition, and death. On the other hand, relapses are rather frequently seen in patients who have discontinued the prescribed therapy or who have been unable to follow the recommended diet.

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION

For many years sprue was supposed to be limited to the tropical and subtropical latitudes. Thaysen (1932) reported the first cases of the so-called "nontropical" sprue in northern Europe. Shortly afterward, many such cases were being reported from the United States of America, not only from the southern, but also from the northern states.

We have seen no less than 400 cases of sprue and not over 20 cases of Addisonian pernicious anemia in Puerto Rico during the last 20 years, a ratio of 20 sprue patients for 1 of pernicious anemia. The syndrome is easily confused clinically with several other diseases, and hematologically it is indistinguishable from pernicious anemia. Undoubtedly, some cases of true pernicious anemia occurring in the Tropics have been erroneously diagnosed as sprue, especially when they have exhibited gastrointestinal manifestations and loss of weight.

The sprue syndrome has been reported from the Philippine Islands, French Indo-China, South China, Java, the Straits Settlements, Ceylon, India, Mauritius, the Fiji Islands, the West Indies, Central America, Guianas, Queensland, Iraq, Egypt, and Malta. The British Commonwealth is said to be the largest reservoir of nutritional macrocytic anemia (Editorial, 1946). Authentic records of sprue are rare in North and Central Africa, Palestine, and Arabia. Recently De Figuereido (1941) reported a case in Brazil, where it was supposed not to exist.

HISTORY

The sprue syndrome has long been known to medical science, having been originally described by V. Ketelaer (1669), who published "*De Aphthis Nostratibus, Seu Vulgarum Sprow.*" The name "sprue" was applied, therefore, to the aphthous stomatitis, accompanied by the passage of voluminous stools, which occurred among the Belgians. Hillary

(1766) is credited with the first clear description of the disease, his observations b based on clinical experiences during a 6-year residence in the Barbados (1753-1759). scientific interest in this disease may be said to date from the writings of Sir Pat Manson (1880) in China and of Van der Burg (1880) in Batavia. Van der Burg's tribution was based on the study of 1,407 cases during his 30 years' experience in Ja but Manson was probably the first to suggest that ''bad or insufficient food'' was major importance in the causation of sprue. In more recent years, especially in Ameri a renewed interest in the disease has undoubtedly been brought about by the stud observations, and contributions of Ashford in Puerto Rico.

To those who believe that celiac disease and sprue are one and the same disease, may say the history of the syndrome goes back to the second century A.D., when Cael Aurelianus and Aretaeus of Capadocia (cited by Gibbons, 1889) described an illness cha acterized by flatulence, eructations, ''*heavy pain of the stomach now and then, as if fro a puncture,*'' emaciation, paleness, and muscular weakness. (Abdominal pain as ''if fro a puncture'' is rarely, if ever, observed in sprue.)

Gee (1888) seemed to recognize that adults as well as children were similarly affect and considered celiac disease as identical with the endemic *diarrhea alba* (tropical spru of India. Gibbons (1889) considered the condition as entirely different from sprue and b lieved it to be the result of a functional disturbance. Herter (1908), apparently unawa of previous work on the subject, described 5 cases of celiac disease in dwarfed children und the name of ''intestinal infantilism,'' and Heubner (1923) described the occurrence in chi dren of what he termed ''severe intestinal insufficiency,'' emphasizing the intestinal ma absorption as the fundamental cause.

In recent textbooks of pediatrics, such terms as ''chronic intestinal indigestion,'' ''fa intolerance,'' ''chronic digestive insufficiency,'' ''intestinal infantilism,'' ''schwere chron ische Ernährungstörung jeinseits de Säugling-Alters'' are used to describe the same con dition.

From an historical point of view, it is interesting to recall that liver therapy wa used by Chinese physicians in the treatment of sprue hundreds of years before the epoch making discovery of Minot and Murphy (1926) on the specific effect of liver therap in pernicious anemia.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Sprue is a regional rather than a climatic disease; it pre-eminently affects Europeans. Dark-skinned people are less likely to acquire the disease In our study (Suárez, 1938; 1938a) of 150 cases, 121 were white, 26 were mulattoes, and only 3 were Negroes. The disease is occasionally seen in the Mongolian race, in the Malayans, and in Indians.

The disease is apt to occur in one or more members of the same family. Our experience has shown that sprue or pernicious anemia had often existed in one of the patient's parents, usually the mother. In many instances, sprue has developed in husband and wife; it is probable, as Manson-Bahr states, that both had been exposed to the same influences. The female sex appears to be more likely to develop the disease than the male. Atmospheric temperature does not influence the incidence of the disease, for it originates at high altitudes in Ceylon and in the Himalayas, where the climate resembles more that of Europe.

Sprue and pernicious anemia have so many features in common that it has been repeatedly suggested (Suárez, 1931) that the former may constitute a geographic variety of the latter. It is now becoming clear that pernicious anemia also exhibits certain geographic peculiarities, being especially prone to affect people of the northern hemisphere, and extremely rare or absent in native tropical races.

It may well be that besides a distinct regional incidence, sprue and pernicious anemia, as well as Cooley's anemia and sickle-cell anemia, may exhibit a distinct racial incidence. The incidence of sprue in Puerto Rico, and elsewhere, has diminished in frequency and severity during recent years. Manson-Bahr believes that this possibly depends, to some extent, on improved hygienic conditions. We favor the idea that the more liberal use of liver extract accounts for it.

Sprue is a disease of the young and middle-aged. In our series of 150 cases, 50, or $\frac{1}{3}$, were under 40 years of age. The youngest patient was 9 and the oldest 84 years of age. There were 7 cases in the age group of 9 to 20 years, 43 in the age group of 21 to 40, 79 in the age group of 41 to 60, and 21 patients were over 60 years old. The youngest patient reported by Rodríguez-Molina (1941) in a series of 100 was 12 years; at the University Hospital, the youngest in a series of over 120 cases was 10 years of age.

The general appearance of a few of our older patients, with premature graying of the hair and lemon tint to the skin, renders them indistinguishable from pernicious anemia.

ETIOLOGY

It is said that the etiology of sprue is still "obscure." To be more exact, we should say that it remains "unknown" but that the recent experience with folic acid has brought us closer to its mechanism. There have been many theories offered from time to time to explain the etiology of the disease. Most theories have been definitely discarded, but some are still holding.

1. The theory that sprue is caused by a *yeast (monilia)* has been abandoned.

2. The theory of *calcium deficiency* was presented by Scott, who was impressed by the similarity between many of the symptoms of sprue, such as tetany, cramps, loss of weight, and edema, and those of disordered calcium metabolism. In the tropics, at least in Puerto Rico, evidence of altered calcium regulation is meager. In spite of our low calcium intake (the diet of the Puerto Rican *jíbaro* [country resident] contains 0.29 Gm. of calcium per 100 Gm. as compared with 0.35 Gm. in the continental United States diet), we have not observed evidences of abnormal calcium metabolism. No doubt that the abundant sunlight present throughout the year in Puerto Rico can explain our clinical and biochemical findings. Scott's hypothesis of a disordered calcium metabolism can, therefore, be discarded also.

3. The theory of *infection* has had, and still has, many enthusiastic advocates. Against the infection theory are the afebrile course in sprue and the absence of leucocytosis and of anatomic-pathologic evidences of bacterial invasion.

In Manson-Bahr's experience, there is considerable amount of evidence of a close association between sprue and amebic dysentery and other intestinal diseases. We have seen, as it will be pointed out later, the coexistence of sprue and other intestinal diseases such as schistosomiasis, lymphogranuloma venereum, and ulcerative colitis. We have not observed its association with amebic dysentery, but there is no reason why both diseases should not coexist in Puerto Rico as elsewhere, except for the relatively low incidence of amebic dysentery in the Island.

4. Pock-Steen (1941) presents a very hypothetical theory and a series of tables t explain the etiology of sprue on 2 main factors: *histamine intoxication* and *loss of vitami* B_2. According to his view, there are ''incipient sprue,'' ''prosprue,'' and ''anatomic sprue,'' and he adds that climatic causes produce an adrenal insufficiency from which result, o the one hand, a histamine toxicosis, and, on the other, activation of phosphorolyzing ferments; the latter, by interfering with resorption of vitamins, fats, and glucose, leads t deficiency of vitamin B_2.

5. The theory of *failure of the anterior pituitary* secretion is the latest and most original contribution of Vedder (1940) to tropical medicine.

The author postulates that the failure of absorption of fat, sugar, salts, and vitamins from the small intestine is due to a functional failure of anterior pituitary secretion, precipitated in some individuals by tropical service. He admits, however, that no proof of this has been offered.

The severe state of malnutrition observed in sprue is comparable to Simmonds' cachexia. The 2 conditions may be considered similar only when looked at superficially from a distance. Vedder speaks of the hypochromic anemia of sprue which, in our experience, and in that of most students of the disease, is rare.

6. One of the latest hypotheses to explain the etiology of sprue has been offered by Manson-Bahr (1941). He calls it ''jejuno-ileal inefficiency.'' This newer concept may be summarized by stating that sprue is the result of dysfunction of some specialized cells of the gastrointestinal tract, in the same manner that the theory is generally accepted for pernicious anemia with respect to the pyloric and Brunner's glands of the duodenum. In pernicious anemia, the dysfunction is complete and permanent; in sprue the dysfunction is apparently temporary, and complete cure is frequently observed without the need of continuous treatment.

Although there is no direct microscopic evidence, many observers have pointed out that lack of absorption from the small intestine is the principal defect in sprue. Bennet and Hardwick (1940) discuss the results of failure of function of the small intestine, which produces a syndrome of steatorrhea, tetany, and macrocytic anemia, with stomatitis and pellagrous skin lesions. Within this syndrome fall celiac disease (idiopathic steatorrhea) and tropical sprue. That there is impaired absorption from the small intestine is also suggested by the flat glucose and flat blood fat curves, by the glycine tolerance test, and by the study of the relation of phosphorus to fat.

Evidence in favor of the theory of jejuno-ileal insufficiency is provided by gastrocolic fistula. Such a case is described by Hanes and Reiser (1940) in a man 46 years old, who developed the complete sprue syndrome, with steatorrhea (56 per cent total fat), macrocytic anemia, and tetany. Following laparotomy, which restored the normal continuity to the bowel, complete recovery ensued.

According to this most attractive theory, ''gastroduodenal inefficiency,'' with its dysfunction of the pyloric and Brunner's glands of the duodenum, is the cause of primary pernicious anemia subsequent to partial gastrectomy. The ''jejuno-ileal inefficiency'' is the cause of primary sprue, tropical and nontropical, of secondary sprue or sprue artificially produced by gastrojejunocolic fistula, gastrojejunostomy and short circuit, by neoplasm of the small intestine, mesenteric tuberculosis, and lymphadenoma. It is also the cause of celiac disease, congenital absorption defect in the small intestine proceeding to idiopathic steatorrhea in adults. Furthermore, according to this hypothesis, ''ileocecal inefficiency'' is the cause of pellagra and of secondary pellagra artificially produced by damage to the ileum or, more often, to the large intestine by chronic bacillary dysentery, alcohol, and by surgical intervention.

The theory appears to be an interesting anatomic distribution of pathology which does not go very far into the real underlying cause. Assuming that it is correct, that there exists a ''jejuno-ileal inefficiency'' in sprue, what is the cause of the abnormality, insufficiency, or inefficiency of the small intestine?

Manson-Bahr himself admits that there is no direct microscopic evidence to account for the lack of absorption from the small intestine in sprue. On the other hand, the work of Rodríguez-Olleros (1938) and Hernández-Morales (1944) at the School of Tropical Medicine of Puerto Rico has shown that atrophic gastritis and atrophic rectosigmoiditis are found in sprue probably as frequently as atrophic gastritis is encountered in pernicious anemia and rectosigmoiditis in pellagra.

7. Verzár's (1936) theory that the underlying physiologic defect in sprue is a breakdown in the *phosphorylating mechanism of absorption,* due to a defect in adrenal cortex activity, was investigated by Hanes and Reiser. There is evidence that the sprue patient is capable of metabolizing glucose normally, after it is in the blood. Consequently, the delayed fall in the serum phosphorus after glucose ingestion can be explained solely on the basis that the sugar reaches the blood stream very slowly and is then as slowly absorbed. This does not support Thaysen's theory that the low blood sugar curve is due to abnormally rapid assimilation of the absorbed glucose by starved tissue. Sprue patients do not exhibit the normal fasting diurnal variation in phosphorus excretion, and after ingestion of olive oil there is an increased urinary phosphorus excretion, whereas in normal persons, there is a decrease with no significant change in serum inorganic phosphorus. These findings, as well as the delayed changes in respiratory quotient after oil and glucose meals, prove to the authors the slow rate of intestinal absorption.

8. Stannus (1942) brings forward another theory as to the etiology and pathogenesis of sprue. The primary failure is one of phosphorylation not due, as suggested by Verzár, to lack of adrenal hormonal control but to *defective enzymatic action.*

Evidence is adduced in favor of a theory, based upon the "partition" hypothesis, that predicates for unsplit (neutral) fat and for fatty acids a different mode of absorption from the intestine, a route after absorption, a composition during transport, a destination, and a role in the bodily metabolism.

(a) The deficient absorption of fat is primarily limited to loss of power to absorb the fatty acid moiety and cholesterol.

(b) There is no loss of power to absorb neutral fat (glyceride), but there is deficiency of neutral fat absorption due, secondarily, to nonabsorption of fatty acid.

(c) There is also a primary loss of power to absorb glucose which results in a low, flat oral blood sugar tolerance curve, glucose no longer being selectively absorbed by an active process but by diffusion only.

(d) The same is true of glycerol formed by the splitting of neutral fat.

(e) The loss of power to absorb fatty acid, glycerol, and glucose is probably due to failure of phosphorylation. They are all substances, as opposed to many others, which require to be phosphorylated on absorption by the intestinal mucosa.

(f) Neutral fat is normally absorbed as a finely dispersed emulsion and does not require to be phosphorylated. Failure of absorption is secondary to nonabsorption of fatty acid.

(g) Fructose (levulose) is normally absorbed without phosphorylation and utilized by the sprue patient as by the normal subject.

(h) Loss of calcium to the body is due to "fixation" by the fatty acid in the bowel, with the formation of insoluble soaps.

(i) Loss of phophorus is due to defect in phospholipid formation resulting from failure of phosphorylation.

(j) The enzyme, or enzymes, which catalyze phosphorylation—the "carriers" of phosphoric acid—probably have, as the active part of the molecule, coenzymes embodying some member or members (identified or unidentified) of the vitamin B_2 complex.

(k) The nature of the fatty acids in the diet may be a factor in determining the geographic distribution of the disease.

Among the identified members of the vitamin B_2 complex, Stannus (1942) mentioned riboflavin, nicotinic acid, pyridoxine, and choline but failed to mention folic acid, which is effective in sprue. The mechanism of its action is as yet undetermined.

9. *Dry-wood-inhabiting termites.* There has been for many years a prevalent belief in Ceylon that continued residence in so-called "dry-rot bungalows" is a predisposing factor in the causation of sprue.

This problem was thoroughly studied by Jepson (1933), who found that the porti of buildings most commonly infested by these termites are the roof timbers, and that it relatively frequent for the fecal pellets of these insects to fall on the articles of foo He also found that, in general, the world range of sprue and these termites is very simila His study suggests that the ingestion of the fecal pellets of the dry-wood-inhabiting termites in food might be responsible, directly or indirectly, for the causation.

Puerto Rico is one of the countries in which both the disease and these insects are common, but we have been unable to determine any direct relationship of cause and effect between the two, except for the fact that the people who live in old wooden houses, where termites are more common, usually belong to the low-income group and consequently are more likely to receive an unbalanced diet.

10. The concept of a *constitutional* or inherited defect in sprue, as in pernicious anemia, is difficult to evaluate, but we cannot escape the conviction that the fundamental constitution of the patient plays a role in the development of the disease; it is an accepted fact that there is a definite racial predisposition.

11. Infectious diseases, debilitating influences, pregnancy, and many conditions that are associated with disorders of digestion or of assimilation of food may serve as *contributory* or *conditioning* factors.

12. The concept of a *deficiency state* in the etiology of sprue is one of the theories that has been able to withstand prolonged investigation. In favor of this theory is the fact that cases of sprue have been treated successfully with different diets: marmite soup, meat diet, milk and strawberry diets, etc. Before vitamins were in vogue, Ashford used to consider an ''unbalanced diet'' as an important causative factor in sprue. A vitamin deficiency hypothesis, founded upon experimental work in monkeys, has been suggested by McCarrison. The theory rests also upon the similarity, in some respects, between sprue, pellagra, and idiopathic steatorrhea, and upon the frequent observance of secondary vitamin deficiencies in the fully developed cases of sprue.

While working in Puerto Rico, Castle, Rhoads, and their collaborators (1933) confirmed the belief that deficient diets frequently antedate the onset of clinical sprue. They demonstrated that feeding of the vitamin B complex, in the form of autolyzed yeast, produces reticulocyte crises and improvement of the blood picture in certain cases. The intrinsic gastric factor was found lacking in other instances, and some of the more severe or advanced cases showed an apparent defect in absorption from the intestinal canal. Castle states: ''It is probable that the usual type of diet is such as to favor a diminished consumption of some of the known sources of the extrinsic factor, such as meat, eggs, and whole wheat grain. During recent years a deficiency of vitamin B_2 has been blamed often for the production of sprue. It is a fact that many sprue patients have been relieved of their symptoms by the ingestion of marmite soup or of autolyzed yeast. A few cases of pernicious anemia have been successfully treated by Wintrobe with huge doses of yeast. There is no observable difference between the oral lesions of sprue and those of a fully-developed case of pellagra.''

A suggestive link in the chain of evidence of the relation between vitamin deficiency and sprue has been supplied by Miller and Rhoads (1935) who, by feeding a deficient diet, produced a state in hogs which they believe is closely analogous to the human sprue syndrome.

13. *Folic acid.* The one greatest contribution to a clearer conception of the etiology of sprue has been supplied by the recent work of Spies and his collaborators in Cincinnati, Birmingham, Cuba, and Puerto Rico. They have conclusively proved that folic acid (*Lactobacillus casei* factor) (Spies et al , 1945; Vilter et al., 1945; Spies et al., 1946; Spies et al., 1946a) is capable of producing a marked clinical improvement and hematologic response not only in Addisonian pernicious anemia but also in sprue and in the macrocytic anemias of pellagra and of pregnancy.

DIET AND PREVALENCE OF SPRUE

After discussing the diet of 63 of the 92 sprue cases studied, Castle and his collaborators (1932) in Puerto Rico stated: "It is probable that the usual type of diet is such as to favor a diminished consumption of some of the known sources of the extrinsic factor, such as meat, eggs, and whole grain cereal."

According to Axmayer, the diet of the Puerto Rican country resident is low in vitamin A, in calcium, in phosphorus, and in fats but is apparently adequate in proteins, carbohydrates, and iron. We consider that it has an excessive amount of carbohydrates. The protein content of the diet of the Puerto Rican is made up chiefly of vegetable proteins of low biologic value.

Robinson's investigations* proved that the diet of the low-income group is low in calories, proteins, calcium, vitamin A, riboflavin, and niacin, and probably adequate only in iron and ascorbic acid. The lowest values were obtained for calcium, vitamin A, and riboflavin.

In 1938, we said: "This most inadequate diet has been taken steadily since childhood by many of the sprue patients; true enough, but it has also been taken by nearly all those suffering from hookworm infestation. Yet, both clinically and hematologically, the hookworm anemia differs from that of sprue. The former is invariably hypochromic, microcytic, or normocytic; the latter is typically macrocytic. Diet, therefore, important as it may be, far from explains the whole story."

CLINICAL PICTURE

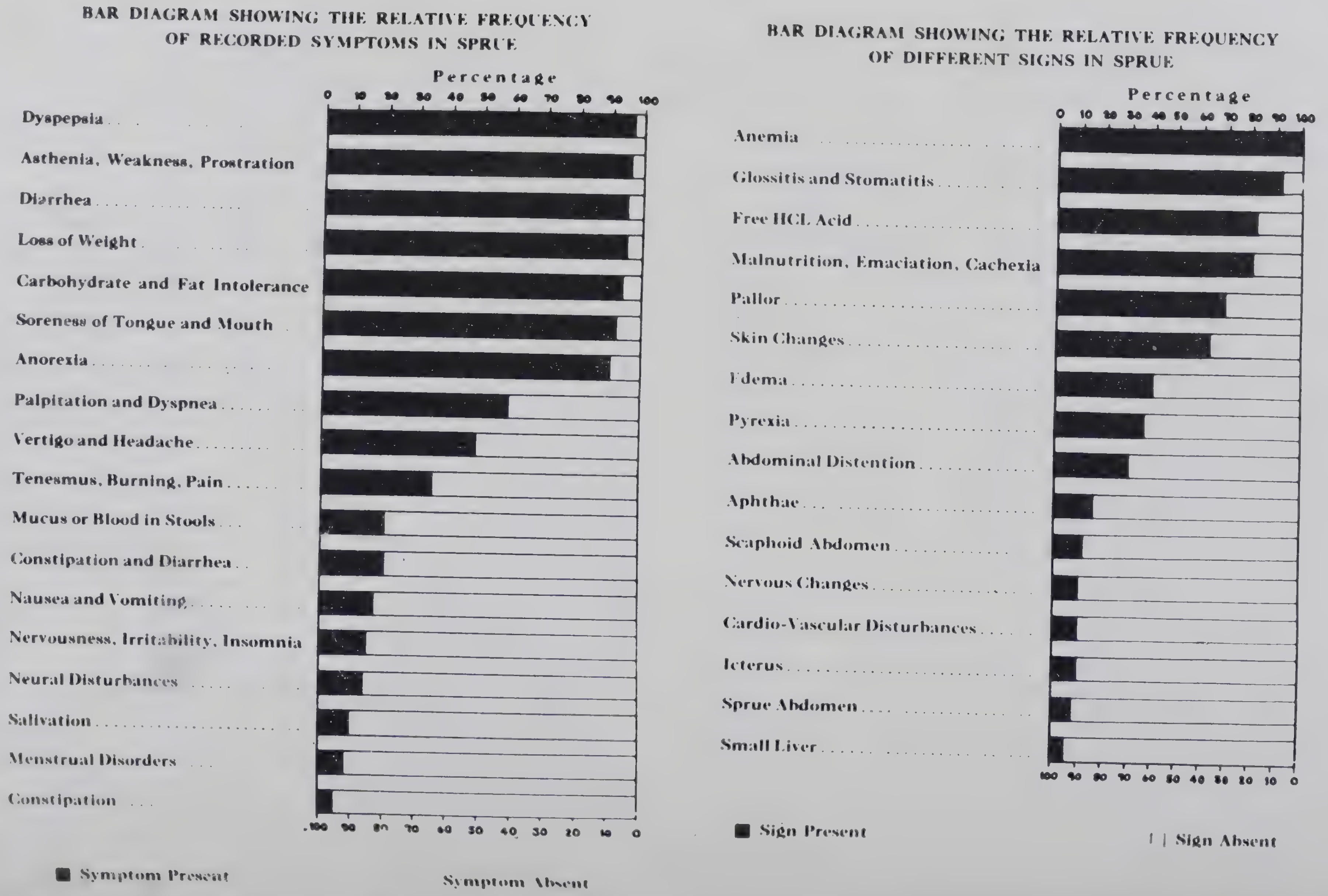
The sprue patient, as we see him in Puerto Rico, is usually a young or middle-aged white individual who complains of a persistent diarrhea and general weakness. There is also anorexia, flatulent dyspepsia, and a sense of epigastric fullness. History shows that he has been sick for a number of months, progressively becoming worse. Physical examination reveals a pale, weak, emaciated patient. His skin is dry and wrinkled, occasionally hyperpigmented, but rarely will it show purpuric spots on the forearms and ears. The sclera will reveal a slight subicteric tint. His frontal teeth may be missing, and all the others, in addition to the gums, will be in poor condition. The tongue will be inflamed, showing crops of minute, whitish, painful vesicles, with a fiery red border in early cases. The late cases will have a beefy tongue with atrophy of both the filiform and fungiform papillae—the typical atrophic glossitis of pernicious anemia.

On physical examination the heart and lungs will be found negative, but the abdomen somewhat distended, with dilated intestinal loops. The liver and spleen are not palpable; the glandular system will be normal. In the majority of cases, there will be no evidence of central nervous system involvement, although many will complain of cramps in the legs and of emotional instability.

Stools are frequent, copious, pale, fermenting, and foul smelling. Anywhere from 3 to 20 bowel movements a day is the usual number.

---

*Personal communication.



BAR DIAGRAM SHOWING THE RELATIVE FREQUENCY OF RECORDED SYMPTOMS IN SPRUE

BAR DIAGRAM SHOWING THE RELATIVE FREQUENCY OF DIFFERENT SIGNS IN SPRUE

Fig. 443.—Diagram showing the relative frequency of the symptoms and signs in sprue. (Courtesy of Rodríguez-Molina.)

The majority of patients will have a history ot a prolonged, ill-balanced diet. In some toothless individuals, who have spontaneously limited their diet to liquid or semisolid foods, we have observed typical and rather severe sases of acute sprue.

It used to be said that sprue was a disease of the upper well-to-do classes. We cannot subscribe to this statement. In our experience, the disease is as frequent, if not more frequent, in the low-income groups of people.

The onset of the disease is usually insidious, but the course may be subacute or chronic. The former progresses for 1 or 2 years, but the latter may be present for a period of 10 to 15 years.

At the time the sprue patient applies for medical treatment, laboratory examination will usually reveal the presence of a macrocytic hyperchromic anemia, a megaloblastic bone marrow, a flat glucose tolerance curve, and either a hypochlorhydria or a histamine-resistant achlorhydria in the gastric secretion.

We have given the usual classical picture of sprue, as we have seen it in a subtropical climate. Many authors have given artificial descriptions of various types of sprue. Some are called "protopathic sprue," which is the type usually found, relatively easily diagnosed, and which may also be termed "complete sprue." Other types are the "incomplete" or gastric sprue in patients who do not suffer from diarrhea, and the "intestinal type," in which the mouth is not eroded and there is little or no dyspepsia, but the stools are liquid, copious, pale, and frothy.

Patients who have received only small doses of liver are likely to show a normal tongue and mouth in the presence of a persistent and, at times, troublesome diarrhea. Manson-Bahr has also described the type, "sprue without diarrhea," occurring in cases wherein the sore mouth, the dyspepsia, and the diarrhea subside under treatment, but the wasting continues, the stools remain phenomenally copious, and the patient gradually dies of inanition. We have yet to see such a case.

If to the various types of sprue just mentioned we would add, as suggested by Thaysen and Hanes, the so-called "infantile sprue," or celiac disease dwarfism with or without bone deformities, osteomalacia, and idiopathic steatorrhea, there could not be such a thing as "clinical picture of sprue."

DIAGNOSIS

A diagnosis of sprue, based exclusively on clinical grounds, is prone to error. A combination of glossitis, anemia, loss of weight, and diarrhea with or without steatorrhea may be observed in various conditions unrelated to sprue. We have seen cases of simple achlorhydric anemia, hookworm anemia, syphilitic glossitis, intestinal and peritoneal tuberculosis, chronic enteritis and colitis, neoplastic diseases, and cases of Addisonian pernicious anemia diagnosed and treated as sprue. On the other hand, in our own series, we have proved cases of sprue in which the intense pigmentation and low blood pressure strongly suggested Addison's disease.

The help of the laboratory is essential to establish a definite diagnosis of sprue. As already mentioned, a macrocytic hyperchromic anemia, a megaloblastic bone marrow, a flat glucose tolerance test, a low or absent free hydrochloric acid in the gastric secretion, an increase in fat content of the stools, and roentgenologic evidences of deficiency states would serve the purpose.

DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

Pernicious Anemia

The differential diagnosis between sprue and pernicious anemia is not so easy as one might be led to believe by reading some of the standard textbooks on tropical medicine. We quote from one of them: "The anemia of sprue greatly resembles that of true Addisonian anemia, though normoblasts are rare in the blood of sprue, and megaloblasts do not occur." We do not know of any means by which the blood of sprue could be distinguished from that of pernicious anemia; moreover, the bone marrow pictures of the 2 diseases are indistinguishable.

The following may help in the differentiation: (1) the marked degree of emaciation present in sprue as contrasted with the slight loss of weight and apparent good nutrition in pernicious anemia; (2) the flat glucose tolerance curve in sprue and the normal curve in pernicious anemia; (3) the roentgenologic evidence of deficiency often observed in sprue and absent in pernicious anemia; (4) the high fat contents in the stools of sprue patients with normal stools in pernicious anemia; (5) the frequently enlarged or palpable spleen in pernicious anemia, smaller in size or normal in sprue. The complete and persistent histamine-resistant anachlorhydria and the signs and symptoms so characteristic of Addisonian anemia, of combined cord degeneration, are of no practical importance in the differential diagnosis, as they may be observed also, although less often, in sprue.

Castellani's rhamnose test, intended as a gauge of absorption of monosaccharide sugars from the intestine, is considered by Amalfitano (1939) to be diagnostic of sprue if it fails to appear in the urine.

Rodríguez-Olleros and Hernández-Morales (1940) claim that sprue and pernicious anemia may be differentiated by the test designated as *gastric chromoscopy,* which follows:

> After a 12 hours' fast, the patient is given 0.2 Gm. of caffeine in 300 c.c. of water, colored with 2 drops of a solution of methylene blue, to stimulate gastric secretion.
>
> The result is analyzed after the stomach has been emptied, and then 5 c.c. of a 1 per cent neutral red solution are injected into the gluteal region. If the gastric contents are found to contain no free hydrochloric acid, histamine is given subcutaneously at the same time.
>
> Thereafter, the gastric contents are withdrawn every 5 minutes until the red coloration appears, and the interval between the injection and the appearance of the dye in the stomach is noted.

The authors conclude that the elimination of the neutral red by the gastric mucosa in cases of sprue is more rapid (time varied from 5 to 40 minutes) than in those cases with the same degree of hydrochloric acid secretion but suffering from a condition other than sprue. In a case of pellagra and another case of pernicious anemia, the dye failed to appear in the gastric contents.

Chronic Pancreatitis

The differentiation from chronic pancreatitis may occasionally present difficulties. In chronic pancreatitis, the neutral fats predominate in the stools, the tongue and mouth appear unaffected, and the diastatic reaction of the urine is high. In pancreatogenous steatorrhea the nitrogen loss in the stools is much greater than in sprue, the trypsin content of the duodenal juice is markedly reduced, and there is a normal or diabetic type of glucose tolerance curve.

Pellagra

The presence of a glossitis and diarrhea in pellagra may simulate sprue, but usually the mouth lesions in pellagra are more extensive and severe. The anemia is not so pronounced; macrocytes in the peripheral blood are not frequent, except when the disease develops in chronic alcoholics, but rarely is the bone marrow found megaloblastic. The characteristic symmetrical skin lesions and the frequent mental symptoms will establish the diagnosis of pellagra.

Celiac Disease

Celiac disease is also known by various names, including Gee-Herter's syndrome, but is known to Thaysen, Hanes, and other investigators as *infantile sprue*. It is a disease of unknown etiology, occurring in children under 10 years of age and associated with diarrhea, flatulence, stunted growth, and incomplete sexual development. The stools are similar in appearance and in chemical composition to those of sprue. The anemia is not so marked and is usually of the hypochromic type. Response to liver therapy is not so striking, but a high protein, low fat and carbohydrate diet is a more important therapeutic measure than liver therapy.

Idiopathic Steatorrhea

Gee-Thaysen's disease is probably the prolongation of celiac disease into adult life, a nutritional disturbance associated with tetany, osteomalacia, infantilism, and megacolon, and characterized by a hypochromic anemia and disturbance of the calcium metabolism. To some investigators, the so-called nontropical sprue is nothing but idiopathic steatorrhea.

We do not believe that sprue is a prolongation of celiac disease into adult life. Our cases of sprue apparently have not suffered from celiac disease in infancy; furthermore, we see a great many more cases of sprue in the tropics than the pediatricians see cases of celiac disease.

Tropical Macrocytic Anemia

This condition cannot be differentiated from sprue on blood and bone marrow studies, though determination of the serum iron, which is lower in tropical macrocytic anemia, may be of some help. The condition occurs more often in pregnant women living in the tropics and is not accompanied by diarrhea. A clear-cut history of dietetic inadequacy is usually obtained in the so-called tropical macrocytic anemia.

Obstruction to the Lacteal Flow of Chyle

Obstruction to the lacteal flow of chyle from the intestines may produce severe steatorrhea which may be confused with sprue. Tuberculosis, cancer, or fibrosis of the mesenteric lymph glands are the most frequent causes of such obstruction. These may give rise to a sprue-like clinical picture, but the laboratory will readily clarify the diagnosis. The anemia in these conditions is commonly hypochromic and the bone marrow is not megaloblastic.

Rewell (1944), of Guy's Hospital in England, reports a case of Hodgkin's sarcoma of the mesenteric glands with steatorrhea, megalocytic anemia, and hyperkeratosis and claims that this particular cause had not been recorded before. When Hodgkin's disease, tuberculosis, or cancer of the mesenteric glands give rise to the so-called sprue syndrome, *it is not sprue* that we are dealing with. There will always be lacking some of the clinical features of sprue, and other features, characteristic of the real or primary disease, will be present so that the patient will not usually respond to the accepted and almost specific treatment of sprue.

Simmonds' Disease and Anorexia Nervosa

Simmonds' disease and anorexia nervosa may resemble sprue only superficially. The severe cachexia and anorexia are the only features common to the 3 conditions. Some of the symptoms of Simmonds' disease such as emaciation, premature aging, gonadal atrophy, amenorrhea, loss of libido, dental caries and loss of teeth, microsplanchnia, marked depression of the metabolic rate, loss of hair from the axillae, pubes, and scalp, and various abnormal mental reactions are observed in sprue; the steatorrhea, the macrocytic anemia, the flat glucose tolerance curve are not observed in Simmonds' disease. The apathy in Simmonds' disease, sometimes seen in sprue, is contrasted with the remarkable energy seen in anorexia nervosa.

THE SKELETON

Investigators of nontropical sprue emphasize the occurrence of tetany, osteoporosis, and osteomalacia among their patients. Hansen and Staa (1936) describe and illustrate beautiful cases of severe osteomalacia in sprue. In our experience in the Tropics, we have not yet seen a single case of sprue complicated by osteomalacia. The long bones were normal, radiologically, in a large series of cases, only 5 per cent showing areas of decalcification in the costal cartilages. Osteoporosis has been occasionally observed in children suffering from sprue, but no more often than that observed by us in a survey of a general hospital population of 310 infants and children (Suárez, 1945).

Our patients complain rather frequently of cramps in the legs, but signs of typical tetany, either spontaneous or induced, have not been seen.

LABORATORY EXAMINATION

Stools

It has been stated that the stools in acute sprue are usually abundant, frothy, acid, white, and fetid. A normal individual excretes about 200 Gm. of feces daily, while the sprue patient passes from 400 to 1,200 Gm. Normal stools contain no fat that can be demonstrated microscopically. Stools of sprue patients contain large amounts of fat, which can be roughly determined by staining a fecal sample with Sudan III and examining under the microscope.

The pallor of the sprue stool is not due to lack of bile, for this is present in normal amounts. Our study of urobilinogen content of the stools in acute sprue has revealed a normal or subnormal 24 hours' elimination, as contrasted with pernicious anemia, in which the urobilinogen content has often been found increased.

Gastric Analysis

The gastric secretion in sprue shows a hypochlorhydria in nearly 70 per cent of the cases and a histamine-resistant achlorhydria in about 30 per cent. Hyperchlorhydria is extremely rare. In a series of 150 cases reported by us, only 1 case showed hyperchlorhydria and not 1 case in a series of 100 reported by Rodríguez-Molina; and in 100 cases recently studied at the University Hospital, only 14 per cent had a free hydrochloric acid above 80 degrees.

Gastroscopic Findings

Gastroscopic studies on sprue patients have been carried out in Puerto Rico by Rodríguez-Olleros (1938) and by Hernández-Morales (1944). In the full-blown sprue, the former found atrophy of the gastric mucosa in 9 of 10 cases. The examination proved unsatisfactory in the remaining case. Rodríguez-Olleros expressed the opinion that the atrophy of the gastric mucosa in pernicious anemia was more intensive than in sprue. Of 9 cases with the "incomplete syndrome," he found slight atrophy in only 3 cases. In the other 7, there were "alterations of the gastric mucosa without, however, any definite characteristics." Of the third group of 9 patients examined—with the "latent sprue syndrome"—a normal mucosa was found in only 3. It is interesting to observe that hypertrophic gastritis was found in 3 of these last patients. Rodríguez-Olleros expressed the belief that "the atrophic gastritis that accompanies the full-blown syndrome of sprue appears during the height of development of the clinical picture and does not precede it."

Hernández-Morales performed 61 gastroscopic examinations on 36 patients suffering from sprue during the acute diarrheal stage and after liver extract had been given for varying periods of time. In 55 per cent of the patients, atrophic changes were observed in the gastric mucosa. Practically all the patients who showed acute glossitis with absence of papillae recovered completely following liver extract therapy. Of 16 patients who were re-examined with the gastroscope after treatment, 10 (62 per cent) showed a normal gastric mucosa. Rectosigmoidoscopic examinations, also performed by H nández-Morales during the acute diarrheal stage, revealed several types lesions, such as patches of atrophy, edema, friability, purpuric spots, an superficial inflammation.

Ruffin (cited by Hanes, 1943), from the Duke Hospital Clinic, reporte atrophy of the gastric mucosa in 40 per cent of 20 cases studied. "Howeve there is no constant gastroscopic picture in sprue. Active cases may presen a normal gastric mucosa and occasionally one will see atrophy in patient who have recovered."

It is evident from these studies that the gastric mucosa in sprue, as well as in pernicious anemia, is frequently atrophic but that it probably has a greater tendency to become normal. This may be explained by the fact that sprue patients are usually younger, and therefore recover more easily and more rapidly than patients with pernicious anemia, who are generally older persons.

Roentgen Studies of the Intestinal Tract

According to May and McCreary (1941), "clumping" in roentgenograms of the small intestine of infants and children with the celiac syndrome was noted by Blackfan and Vogt as early as 1930. Zwerling and Nelson (1943) found in a study of 77 presumably healthy infants and children wide variations in the intestinal pattern and believe that the roentgenologic appearance of the small intestine is not at the present time a reliable criterion for the diagnosis of nutritional deficiency states in infants and children. They thought that emotional disturbances are among the factors that must be considered to explain the observed intestinal patterns.

The interest in the roentgenologic investigation of the gastrointestinal tract in sprue was aroused by the observations of Mackie (1933) and by those of Snell and Camp (1934), who found that the characteristic picture after a barium meal "is that of delayed motility and alteration of the mucosal relief of the small intestine, especially the jejunum; the contour of the bowel is smoothed out, the usual markings of the valvulae conniventes are obliterated, and the barium is clumped in elongated masses."

The changes observed have been grouped under the term "deficiency pattern" and include hypermotility and hypomotility, hypertonicity, hypotonicity, dilatation of loops, segmentation, coarsening and obliteration of the mucosal folds, and flocculation of barium.

Subsequent studies and observations by Miller and Barker (1937), Mackie and Pound (1935), Kantor (1939), Miller and Rhoads (1936), and Lepore and Golden (1941), not only of sprue but of various other conditions, have tended to establish the "deficiency pattern" or the so-called "moulage sign" or "clumping" of the barium meal as roentgenologic evidence of deficiency state present in the steatorrheas and in deficiency of the B complex, without steatorrhea. Krause and Crilly (1943) added infestation with *Necator americanus* to the list of the following conditions which have been found to produce "deficiency pattern" of the small intestine: "celiac disease, tropical and nontropical sprue, pellagra, peptic ulcer, cancer, tuberculosis of the small intestine, biliary and pancreatic disease, chronic ulcerative colitis, regional ileitis, sclerosing inflammation of the mesenteric lymphatics, hypoproteinemia, diabetes insipidus, parathyroid disease, and allergic states. Hernández-Morales and Ruiz-Cestero (1945) have recently added *Schistosoma mansoni.* In a study of 47 cases they reported the characteristic x-ray pattern of deficiency disease in 31.9 per cent.

Golden (1941) did not find the "deficiency pattern" in 15 cases of pernicious anemia.

Hurst's theory (1942) in explanation of the defective absorption of fat by the sprue patient, based on x-ray evidence of impaired motility of the small intestine, lost its weight when Golden showed that similar defects were seen in various other conditions unaccompanied by steatorrhea. Hurst suggested that the muscularis mucosae is paralyzed to a greater or less degree and that paralysis of the extension of the muscularis mucosae into the villi would result in cessation of the pumping action of the villi necessary to intestinal absorption. This functional failure of the muscularis mucosae might be due, according to Hurst, to absence of the unknown constituent of the chyme which is the chemical stimulant of Meissner's plexus, or to the effect of vitamin deficiency or to some specific or nonspecific toxemia on the plexus, or, less probably, on the muscularis mucosae.

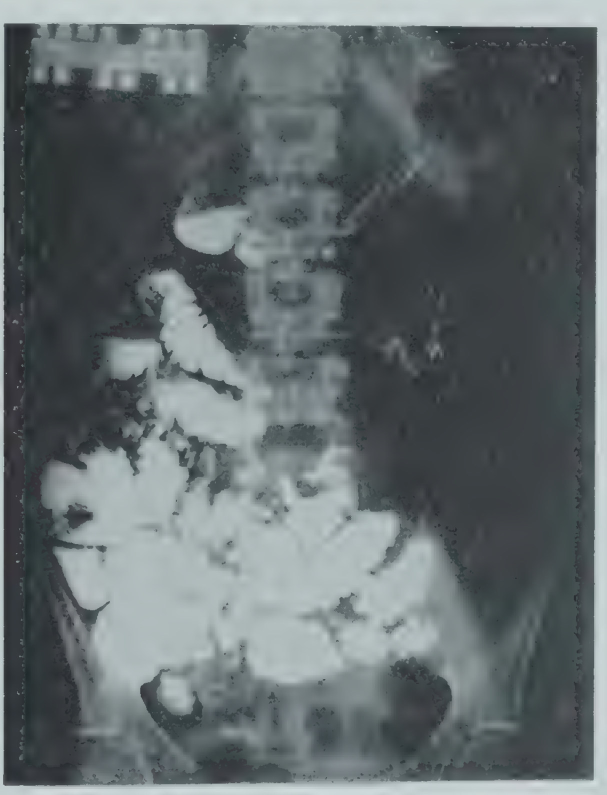


Fig. 444.—Typical "moulage" sign in sprue.

May and McCreary (1940), in a study of 40 instances of celiac disease, demonstrated that "the dramatic effects of mecholyl (acetyl-β-methylcholine) on the behavior of the intestine in these persons were interesting and significant." Within a few minutes after the administration of the drug, the picture of "clumping" of the barium meal into inactive masses in the dilated bowel was completely transformed by the action of the mecholyl. A vigorous segmental and peristaltic activity commenced within 1 to 3 minutes after the drug was given. The tone returned to the bowel, and the lumen became normal in size. The small intestine appeared normal throughout, and even the feathery character of the jejunum returned. Along with this improvement in motility, an increased rise in the blood sugar curve occurred. In fact, a normal rise in the blood sugar was obtained in every patient in whom this experiment could be attempted. Flax, Barnes, and Reichert (1942) showed that the administration of Prostigmine can change the "deficiency pattern," as seen in fibrocystic disease of the pancreas, and improve the absorption of the fat soluble vitamin A.

With Ruiz-Costero, of our Department of Roentgenology, we have studied the gastrointestinal tracts of 71 cases of sprue. In 70 per cent, clear-cut radiologic evidence of "deficiency pattern" was observed. The normal feathery or delicate herringbone appearance of the valvulae conniventes, with an even contour and normal size of the intestinal lumen, was obtained in 30 per cent of the cases. The stomach was found normal in 80 per cent of the cases, 20 per cent showing signs of gastritis. This study confirms the already established idea that, in sprue, most of the roentgenologic evidence of disease is found in the small intestine, especially the jejunum.

Blood Chemistry

Studies in blood chemistry were performed in 100 cases with the following results:

Glucose was found to range between 70 mg. per 100 c.c. of blood and 150 mg. per 100, with an average of 94.8 mg. per 100.

Urea nitrogen ranged between 8 and 20 mg. per 100 c.c., with an average of 9.8 mg.

Nonprotein nitrogen ranged from 15 to 76.2 mg. per 100 c.c., with an average of 25.8 mg.

Total plasma proteins ranged from 4.5 to 9.5 Gm. per 100 c.c., with an average of 7.2 Gm.

Serum albumin ranged from 1.5 to 6 Gm. per 100 c.c., with an average of 3.8 Gm.

Serum globulin ranged from 1.5 to 5 Gm. per 100 c.c., with an average of 3.1 Gm.

Calcium, serum, ranged from 6 to 11 mg. per 100 c.c., with an average of 8.1 mg.

Phosphorus, inorganic, serum, ranged from 1.5 to 5 mg. per 100 c.c., with an average of 3.3 mg.

Phosphatase ranged from 1 to 11.1 Bodansky units, with an average of 3.5 units.

Cholesterol, blood, ranged from 60 mg. to 190 mg. per 100 c.c., with an average of 127 mg. per 100.

The values for *uric acid, creatinine,* and *chlorides* were normal. The *icterus index* was usually found below 6. In our series of 150 cases of sprue, reported in 1938, readings over 10 units were obtained in 15 cases and readings of 20 units in 3 cases.

The Blood

The anemia of sprue is so exactly similar to that of pernicious anemia that, for all clinical purposes, it may be considered identical. We doubt that even the most expert hematologist can differentiate the 2 conditions from the study of the peripheral blood or bone marrow. The anemia of sprue is most constantly of the macrocytic type, usually hyperchromic, occasionally hypochromic, very rarely normocytic, but never microcytic. (Suárez, 1931, 1932.)

Several textbooks and manuals of tropical medicine state that in the early stages of the disease there is commonly a moderate microcytic anemia. We must confess that we do not see those early cases in this part of the world and that in our experience a diagnosis of acute sprue in the presence of a hypochromic microcytic anemia rarely proves correct.

With the exception of one case (a patient whose marrow was probably in a hypoplastic state), in which the mean cell volume was 89 cubic microns, the lowest mean cell volume was 102 cubic microns, the highest 220, and the average 123.6 cubic microns.

The color index was found below 1.0 in 23 cases, and 2 cases were as low as 0.70 and 0.64, respectively. The highest color index was 2.2 and the average 1.22. The volume index was never found below 1, the highest was 2.3, and the average 1.39.

The mean cell hemoglobin varied between 26 and 59 micrograms, with an average of 36.6 micrograms.

The mean cell hemoglobin concentration was found at 22 per cent, or lower, in 4 cases, the lowest figure being 20 per cent. The highest was 45 per cent, with an average of 26.1 per cent.

The hemoglobin ranged from 16.5 to 102 per cent, averaging 66 per cent; the erythrocytes from 690,000 per cubic millimeter to 4,410,000 per cubic millimeter, with an average of 2,710,000. There was usually leucopenia, with relative lymphocytosis. The lowest leucocytic count was 1,550 per cubic millimeter, the highest 13,600, and the average was 5,280 leucocytes per cubic millimeter.

The presence of hypersegmented neutrophiles in increased number has been described in pernicious anemia as well as in sprue.

The Sternal Marrow

The bone marrow obtained by aspiration of the sternal marrow usually shows a hyperplastic picture with an increase in megaloblasts, indistinguishable from pernicious anemia. A previous administration of a potent liver

Fig. 445.

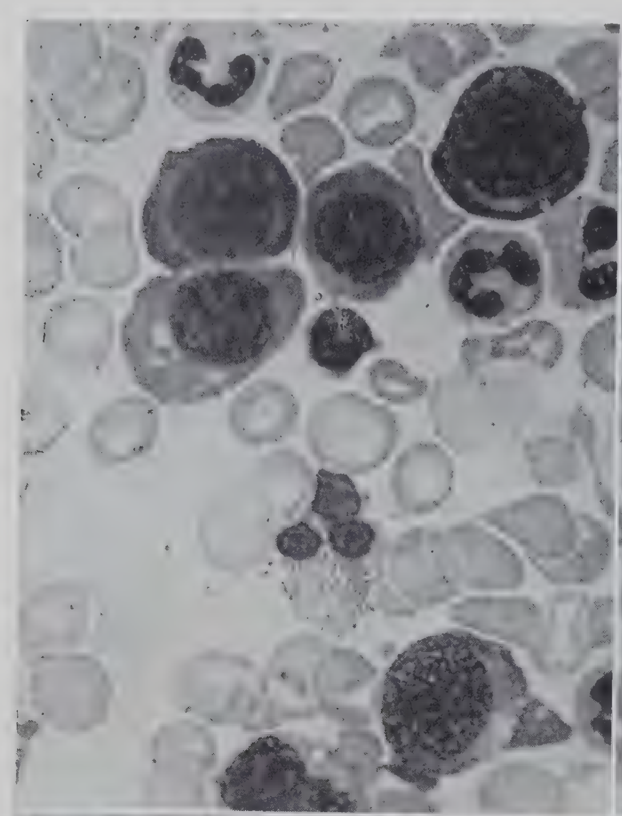
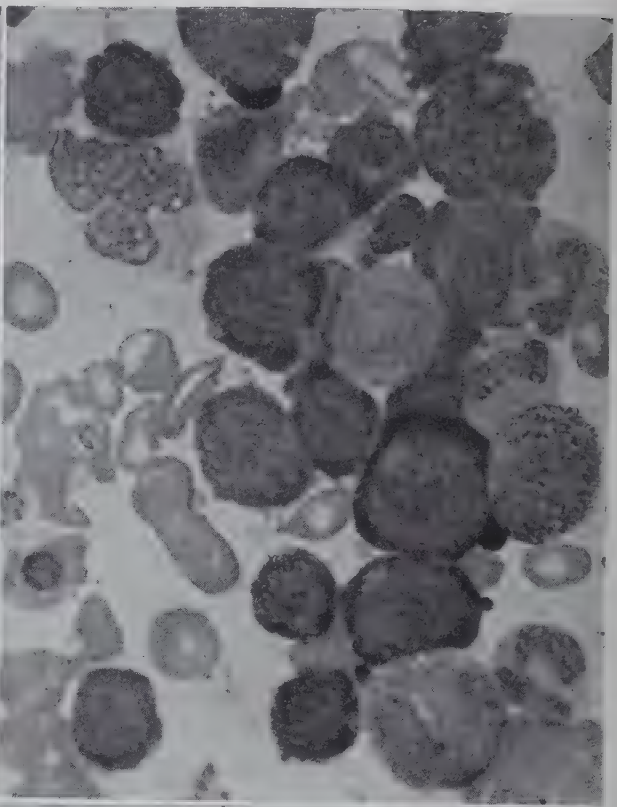


Fig. 446.



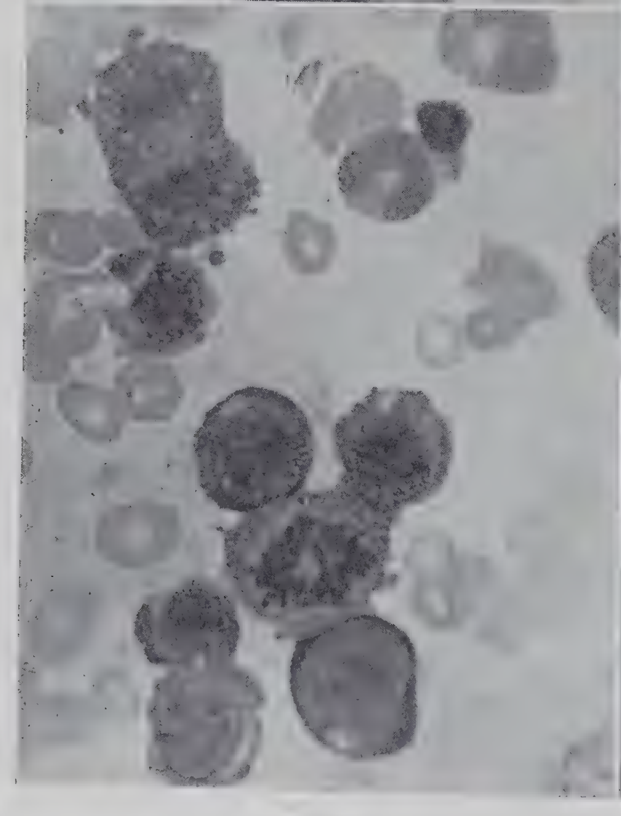


Fig. 447.

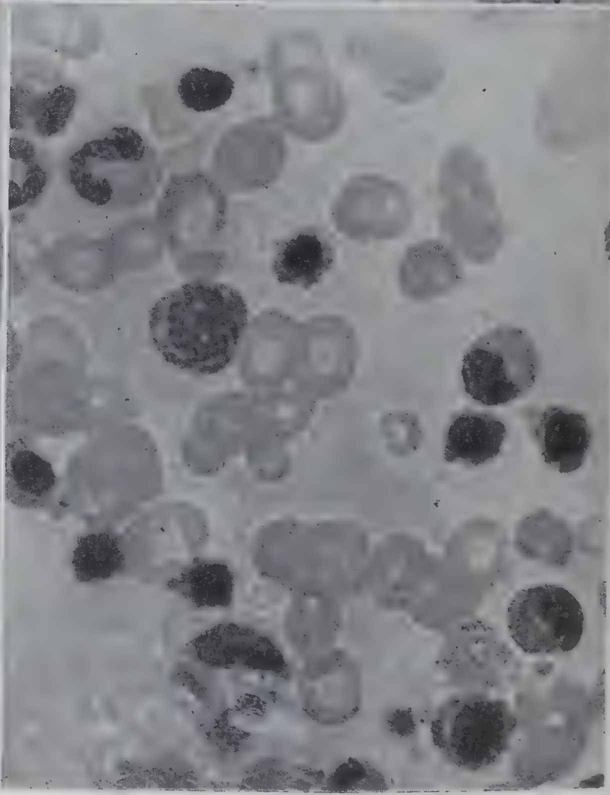


Fig. 448

Fig. 445.—Megaloblasts in sternal marrow of sprue.
Fig. 446.—Sternal marrow in sprue. Erythroblastic arrest.
Fig. 447.—Sternal marrow in sprue after folic acid. Maturation effect.
Fig. 448.—Sternal marrow in sprue after folic acid. Normoblastic response.

preparation or of folic acid is likely to modify, in as short a time as 24 hours, the typical bone marrow picture of sprue. The effect may persist for weeks and even months.

A rapid maturation of the megaloblasts in the bone marrow takes place following the administration of liver extract or of folic acid.

Hemodynamics

In contrast to the compensatory hypertrophy of the heart observed in the iron deficiency anemia associated with hookworm disease (Porter, 1937), the heart of sprue patients is usually found to be small (all viscera are) both radiologically and postmortem.

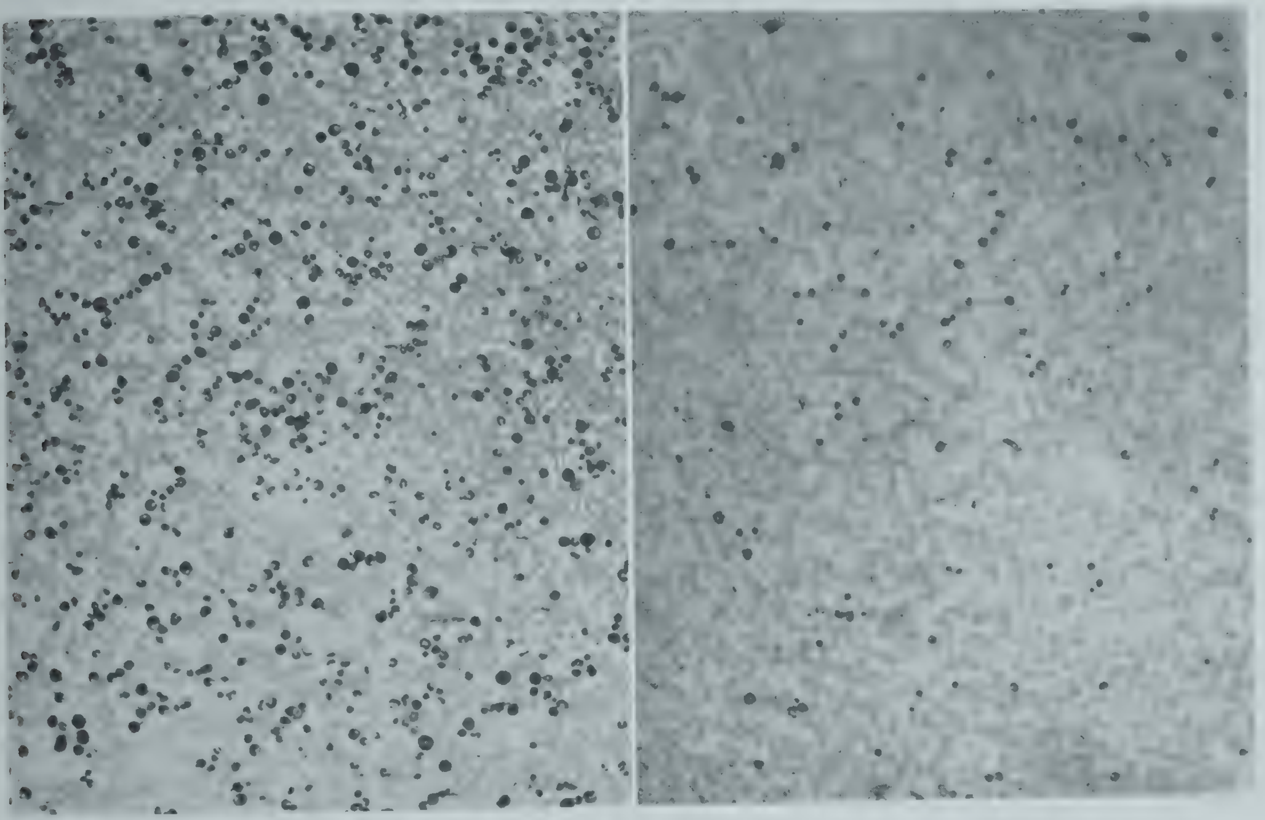

A. *B.*

Fig. 449.—Sternal marrow aspiration of sprue patient. *A*, On entry; *B*, one month after beginning of folic acid treatment.

Hashimoto (1937) quotes Alsmeer and Wenckebach by stating that there exists a group of heart muscle disturbances in deficiency diseases, such as beriberi and rickets, that have some characteristics common to all of them. He describes a case of pernicious beriberi with cardiac dilatation and hypertrophy successfully treated by intravenous administration of vitamin B_1. Weiss and Wilkins (1937), of Boston, have dealt with the subject of beriberi heart.

The probably inadequate content of vitamin B complex in the Puerto Rican diet and the fact that some cases of sprue have been benefited by the administration of vitamin B concentrate, marmite or autolyzed yeast, made us focus our attention on the heart. However, because sprue patients are usually ambulatory, except during the most severe episodes of diarrhea, we logically expected a compensatory mechanism in the cardiovascular system.

If there is a compensatory mechanism in the cardiovascular apparatus of sprue patients, it is certainly not based on hypertrophy of the cardiac muscle. The concomitant infestation with *Necator americanus* (56 per cent) and *Schistosoma mansoni* (20 per cent) did not modify the tendency to small or normal cardiothoracic ratios.

The blood pressure is low, both systolic and diastolic, and goes *pari pasu* with the state of emaciation and asthenia shown by the patient. We do not know as yet whether the hypotension is an expression of the generalized bodily weakness or whether it is due to a diminished output of pressor substance by the adrenals. The fact is, that following adequate treatment and apparent recovery, the blood pressure becomes normal in the younger patients, and in the older ones, as reported by us in 1938, there is a tendency for hypertension to develop.

The *vital capacity* of 18 of the 25 cases studied was found to be anywhere from 200 to 1,200 c.c. below the estimated capacity for the specific individuals; in 3 cases, the actual and predicted capacities were equal; and in only 4 was the former higher than the latter. In another series of 35 cases recently studied, the vital capacity ranged from 750 c.c. to 5,000 c.c., the average being 2,292 c.c. It should be stated that the height and size, and consequently the surface area, of the average Puerto Rican is less than that of the continental (U. S.) individual.

The *cardiothoracic ratio* averaged 44 per cent; of the 25 patients, only 1 had a cardiothoracic ratio of over 50 per cent; 4 had one of 42 per cent; 1 each of 40 and 41 per cent; and 2 of 39 per cent. Of 65 cases studied at the University Hospital, 47 (80 per cent) showed a Danzer ratio of less than 1; and 18, or 20 per cent, of over 1.

The *electrocardiographic studies* were essentially negative. Findings suggestive of beriberi heart were never encountered, and evidence of myocardial disease was rarely observed.

The *circulation time* was also found within normal limits, 12 seconds being the average for the arm-to-tongue measurements using either sodium cyanide, calcium gluconate, or fluorescein.

The *venous pressure* ranged within normal limits in the majority of cases. The range was from 40 to 140 mm. of water, the average 90 mm.

The *blood volume*, as determined with the Congo red method in 38 cases of acute sprue, also ranged from 1,000 to 6,000 c.c., with an average of 3,400 c.c.; the plasma volume from 1,000 to 5,000 c.c., with an average of 2,590 c.c. The blood volume per kilogram of body weight ranged from 60 to 110 c.c., with an average of 79 c.c.

Carbohydrate Metabolism

Except for 3 instances, the fasting blood sugar was found to be low in 40 cases studied by us in 1938. In a new series of 70 cases studied at the University Hospital, the fasting blood glucose ranged between 70 and 180 mg. per cent, with an average of 94.8 mg. per 100 c.c. of blood. Hypoglycemia of 70 mg. per cent, or less, was observed in only 3 cases.

The occurrence of a flat glucose tolerance curve, reported by Thaysen (1932) and by Hanes (1935) in nontropical sprue, and by Fairley in tropical sprue, has been corroborated by us. When the sprue patient ingests 1 Gm. of glucose per kilogram of body weight, the increase in blood sugar rarely goes above 40 mg. per 100 c.c.

In our original 40 cases (1938), only 4 patients showed an increase of over 40 mg. per cent in their blood sugar after the oral administration of glucose. Unpublished data on 100 new cases showed approximately 80 per cent. with elevations of less than 40 mg. per cent in their blood sugar. The discrepancies in the results obtained in these 2 series may be explained by the fact that liver extract had been administered more often to patients of the new series before admission to the hospital than to those of the previous group. As it has been observed in other conditions and in about 5 per cent of normal individuals, the flat or low blood sugar curve is not pathognomonic of sprue, but it certainely has diagnostic and prognostic value.

According to Thaysen, the sugar curve tends to return to a normal level as the patient recovers. In our experience, this is true in most of the younger patients whose gastrointestinal canals have not yet suffered irreversible changes. After complete restoration to normality of the clinical and hematologic picture, and while still under parenteral liver therapy, older patients often give a flat glucose tolerance curve. As already observed by Hanes and McBryde (1936), blood sugar curves are high when glucose is administered intravenously. This fact, together with the observations of Barker and Rhoads (1937), favors the theory of a deficient intestinal absorption and tends to make the hypothesis of pancreatic disease less important in our understanding of sprue.

Furthermore, Hanes and Reiser (1940) concluded from their studies of the relation of phosphorus to glucose metabolism in sprue and from respiratory quotient determinations, after oral and intravenous glucose tolerance tests, that their findings reflect a slow rate of intestinal absorption by the sprue patient.

Protein Metabolism

The fact that trypsin and erepsin are not lacking in sprue explains the finding that proteins are well digested and absorbed.

The severe diarrhea of sprue may cause a moderate loss of nitrogen in the feces, but with a fairly high intake of animal protein the patient is able to store nitrogen.

Basal Metabolism

Thaysen declared that celiac disease, nontropical sprue, and tropical sprue are one disease. He sets the following clinical features as characteristic: (1) abnormal excretion of fat in the feces, (2) normal, and in rare cases slightly raised, nitrogen excretion in the feces, (3) flat blood sugar curve, and (4) increased basal metabolism. He stated, furthermore, that the combination of these 4 manifestations of altered metabolism does not occur in any other but the 3 diseases mentioned above.

At the Duke Hospital Clinic they have noted the greatest irregularity in the basal metabolic rates in sprue, the test lacking all usefulness in differential diagnosis. They believe that the findings in sprue are similar to those recorded in the anemias and are not related to the thyroid.

Our experience agrees with that of the group at Duke. The readings in a small number of patients ranged from +4 to −23 per cent, but there was a tendency toward a low basal metabolic rate as might be expected because of the state of asthenia and inanition of the patients.

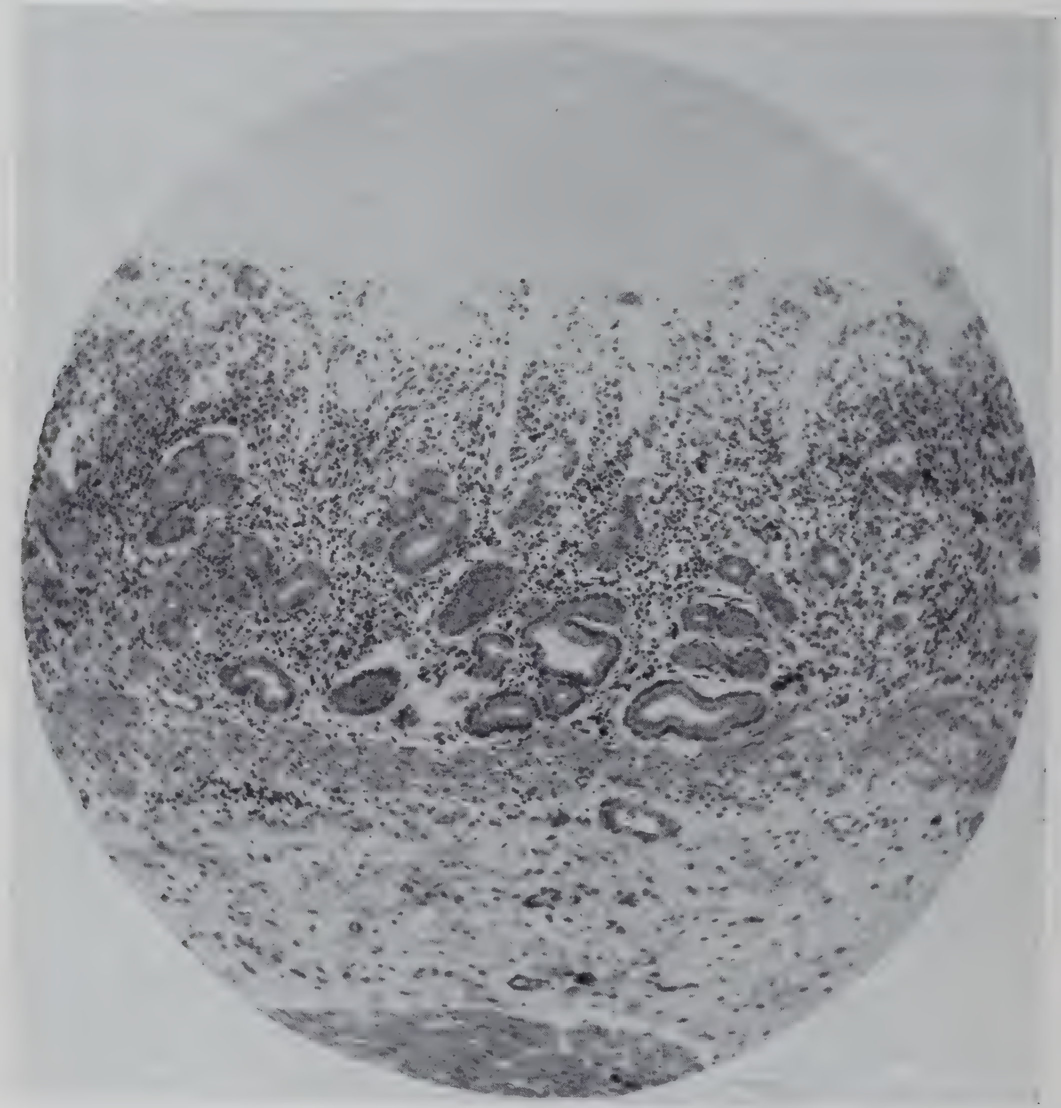


Fig. 450.—Pyloric portion of the stomach in a case of sprue. Despite the autolysis, the paucity of glands, their slight cystic dilatation, the colonic conversion of glands and the round-cell infiltration are clearly visible. ×80. (Courtesy of E. Koppisch.)

PATHOLOGIC ANATOMY

In a total of 1,356 autopsies performed from 1926 to 1943 at the School of Tropical Medicine, 16 cases of sprue were found. In a review of these 16 autopsies, the following were the principal findings (Koppisch*): The body was markedly wasted, and the viscera were atrophied, particularly the heart, spleen, and liver. The fatty tissue in all areas had undergone serous atrophy. The walls of the stomach and small intestine were thinner than normal in $^1/_2$ the cases; that of the colon, in $^1/_3$. The lingual mucosa was smooth with atrophied papillae in about ⅓. All organs and tissues were very pale from the anemia. The bone marrow in the middle third of the femur was of variable appearance: (1) red and diffusely hyperplastic, (2) pale and of gelatinous aspect but with red foci of activity, and (3) diffusely pale, semitranslucent, and gelatinous. Microscopically, the 3 types corresponded, respectively, to diffuse hyperplasia of megaloblastic type, to foci of hyperplasia of the above type, in an otherwise inactive marrow showing serous atrophy, and to complete hematopoietic inactivity and far-advanced serous atrophy of the medullary fat.

---

*Personal communication. Koppisch, E., Department of Pathology, School of Tropical Medicine, San Juan, Puerto Rico.

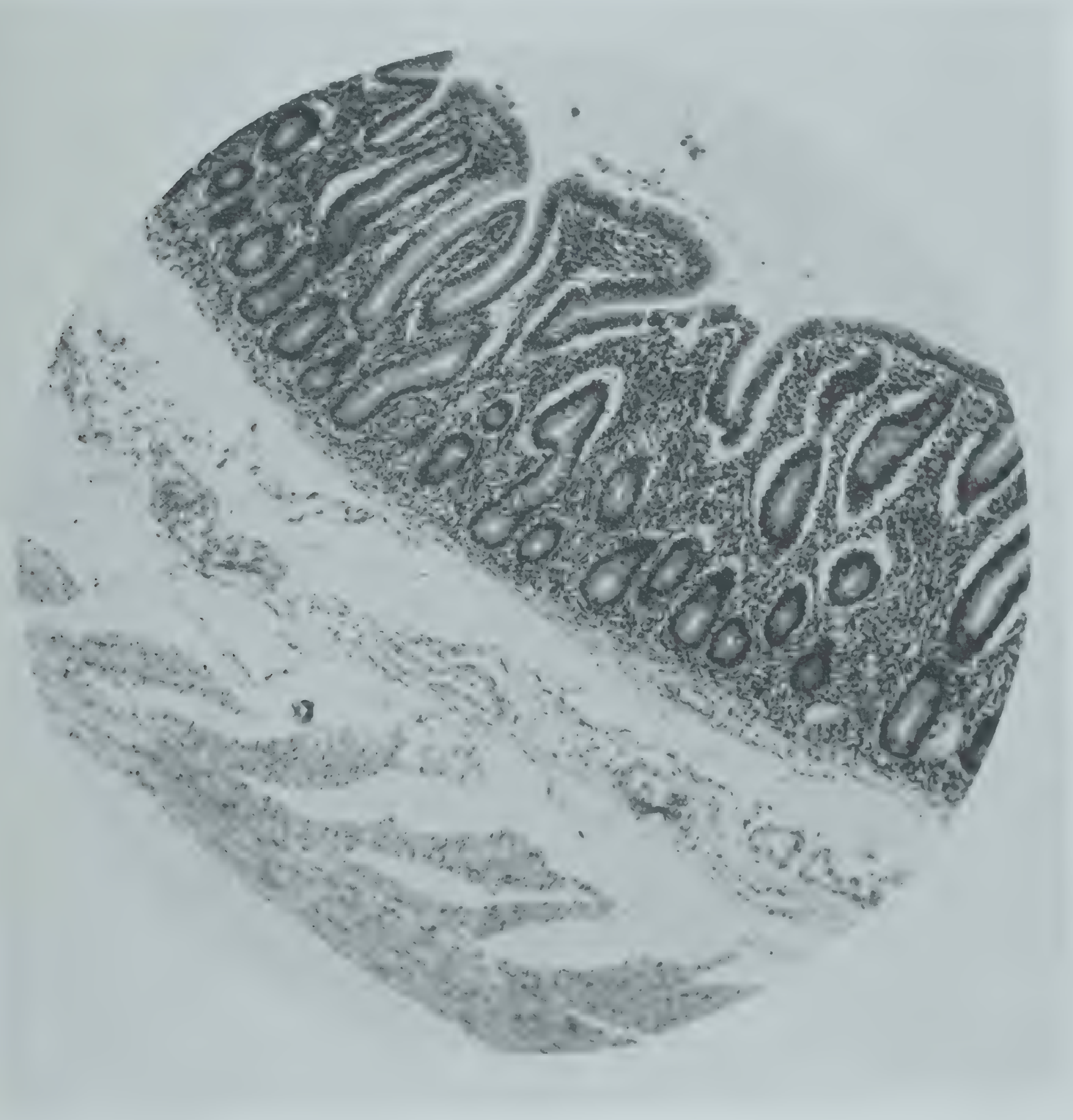


Fig. 451.—Section of ileum in sprue showing broadening of villi and dense infiltration of propria with plasma cells and lymphocytes. Formalin was injected into the abdominal cavity immediately after death. ×80. (Courtesy of E. Koppisch.)

Other microscopic findings of interest were brown atrophy of the myocardium; atrophy of Malpighian corpuscles in the spleen; atrophy, hemosiderosis, and edema of the liver; advanced depletion of lipoids in the suprarenal cortex, accompanied by cortical atrophy and occasional focal loss of tissue in the fasciculate zone, which became replaced by lax scars; and a marked reduction of spermatogenesis in the male. Atrophy of pancreatic acini was seen in ⅓, and a very slight interstitial fibrosis in 2 of 15 cases. Findings in the gastrointestinal tract consisted of round-cell infiltration and hypervascularization of the subepithelial connective tissue of the tongue in all cases. The lingual mucosa showed atrophy in ½ of them and zones of atrophy, alternating with hyperplasia, in the remainder. The gastric mucosa was moderately atrophied in ½ the cases, while there was chronic gastritis in all but 3. A distinct shortening and blunting of the villi of the small intestine was noted in ½ the cases, accompanied by an increase in the number of plasma cells in the tunica propria. The remaining cases presented no detectable abnormalities, except for occasional edema of the submucosa. The colon was normal in only 3 cases. An acute colitis, in most instances mild, was found

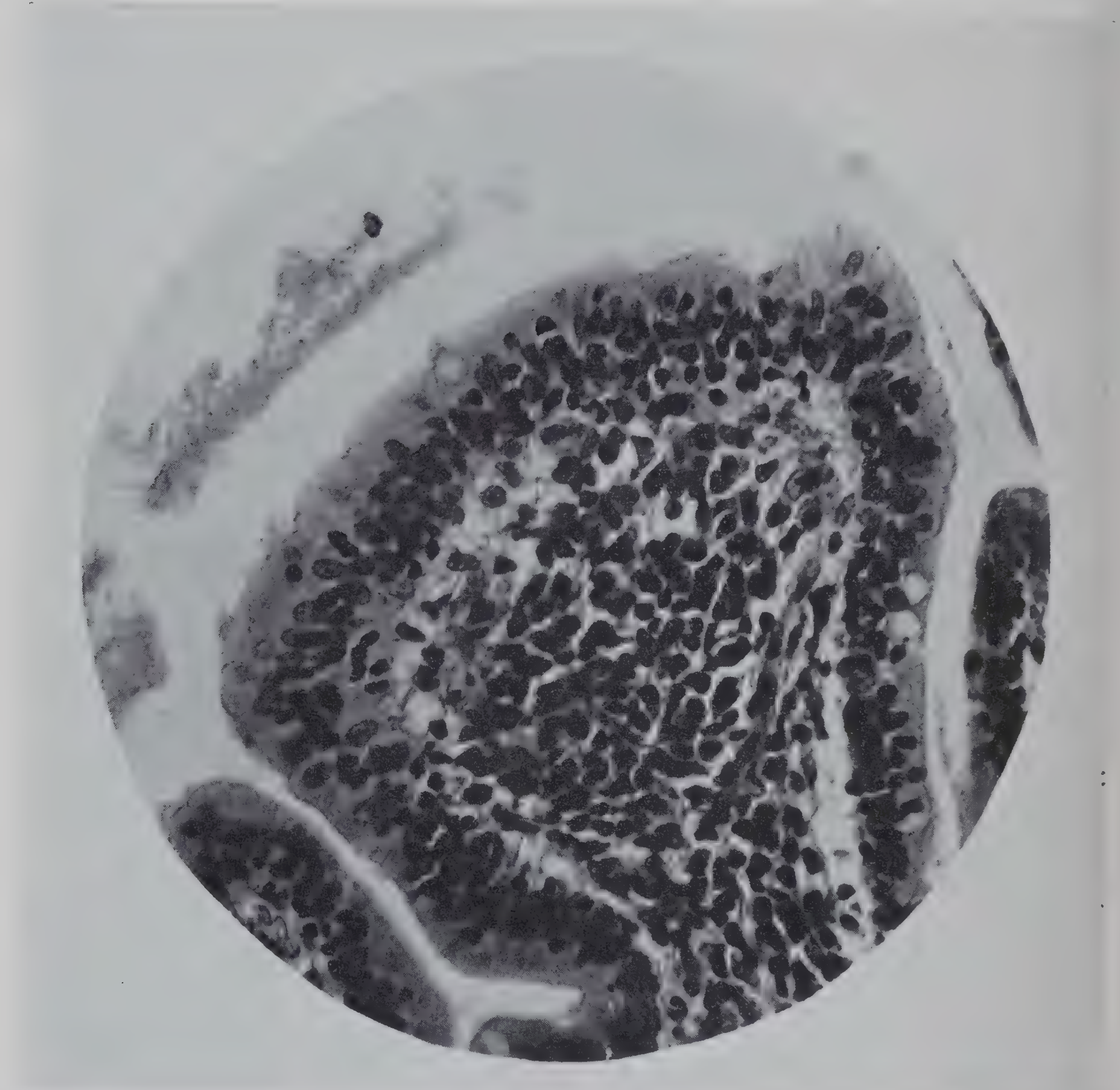


Fig. 452.—Broadened villus, in a case of sprue, with dense infiltration of propria with round cells. ×360. (Courtesy of E. Koppisch.)

in 7, and a few nonspecific ulcers in 6. In 3, the mucosa seemed thinner than normal, while in 4 there was atrophy of the muscle coats. The spinal cord was examined in only 5 cases, a combined degeneration not having been found in any.

The internal organs were small. The weight of the liver varied from 720 to 1,620 Gm., with an average of 1,066 Gm. (normal, 1,400 to 1,600 Gm.); the heart weighed from 140 to 270 Gm., with an average of 230 Gm. (normal, 280 to 300 Gm.); and the spleen weighed from 5 to 140 Gm., with an average of 74.9 Gm. (normal, 125 to 150 Gm.).

TREATMENT

We had said (1938) that, unquestionably, the 2 most important factors in the treatment of sprue are an appropriate diet and an adequate liver therapy. Today, we can modify that statement thus: "an appropriate diet and adequate liver therapy or sufficient folic acid."

Such drugs as hydrochloric acid, calcium, vitamin D, phosphorus, pancreatin, cholagogues, and glandular extracts are valueless in the treatment of tropical sprue. Iron in large doses is sometimes necessary during the course of treatment. Its use during the active stage of the disease is not only ineffective, but may be deleterious. It is our opinion that a diet rich in proteins and low in fats and carbohydrates, as insistently recommended by Ashford, is essential for the well-being of the patient, at least while he resides in the tropics.

Miller and Rhoads (1936) said that unless a sufficiently large amount of liver extract was administered at frequent intervals, flatulence, intestinal discomfort, cramps, and diarrhea recurred in sprue patients; that this was the case despite the fact that no detectable hematologic disturbance was present. Thus intestinal dysfunction, they say, rather than the anemia, has been the guide for the administration of therapy.

Subsequently, Miller and Barker (1937) modified the above statement, saying, "The maintenance of a diet for sprue, in addition to liver therapy, gives a patient more complete relief from gastrointestinal symptoms than does liver extract alone."

Manson-Bahr claims to have obtained good results in the treatment of sprue with nicotinic acid (30 mg. daily for 1 month); if angular cheilitis is present, by the addition of riboflavin (3 mg. daily). The glossitis heals within 4 days and the intestinal symptoms, especially the meteorism, improve shortly afterward. Finally, the diarrhea ceases entirely and the stools become normal. Indeed it seems, he says, "to be the most satisfactory method of treatment for tropical sprue yet introduced." He does not claim, however, that vitamin B_2 treatment has any beneficial effect upon the anemia, which should be treated at the same time with intensive parenteral liver therapy.

We have reported (Suárez, 1935; 1931) the therapeutic failure in sprue of certain preparations considered potent in the treatment of Addisonian pernicious anemia. Ventriculin, Extralin, and autolyzed liver extract have failed in sprue. The failure cannot be attributed entirely to deficient gas testinal absorption, for in many cases we have found aqueous liver ex (Valentine) inducing rapid clinical and hematologic improvement. We reported the highest reticulocyte count observed in sprue (65 per cent) patient who received aqueous liver extract per os after full doses of triculin, administered during 15 days, had had no effect. It is generall mitted that sprue patients respond more readily to the parenteral adminis tion of liver extract than to its oral ingestion.

We have had experience with most of the American and some of European liver extract preparations, especially with Lilly's 343, which been found efficient in the treatment of sprue. The parenteral administra of this preparation in doses of 6 c.c. daily to 35 cases of sprue gave a retic cytic response of 1.5 per cent (the lowest) and of 42 per cent (the highe in a patient whose initial red blood cell count was 990,000 per cubic millime The average reticulocytic response was 10.5 per cent.

Lilly's 343 is a relatively crude or diluted extract, high in ash, toget with a large percentage of inert material. It undoubtedly carries an appre able amount of what we may call the B complex and is highly beneficial in treatment of sprue anemia.

Contrary to expectations, concentrated liver extract (Lederle), containi not more than traces of the various vitamin B components (200-800 gamma folic acid per cubic centimeter), also proved effective in sprue. Rapid clini and hematologic improvement followed its parenteral use in 1 c.c. daily do for 3 consecutive days, then 1 c.c. every third day for the first month, an c.c. every 5 days during the second month. The maintenance dose was 1 every 5 to 7 days. The lowest reticulocyte response in 70 cases was 2 per c in the group of patients having an initial red blood cell count of o 3,500,000; the highest count was 35.5 per cent in a case with an original cou of only 830,000 erythrocytes. The average reticulocytic response was 1 per cent, exactly the same figure obtained with Lilly's 343.

Using diluted extracts, we obtained a higher reticulocyte response in t group of patients with less than a million red blood cell count. In all oth groups, with 1.5 million and over, the reticulocytic rise induced by the co centrated liver extract compared favorably not only with that produced other crude extracts but also with the standards subscribed by the Americ Medical Association for the potency of liver preparations on pernicio anemia.

The sprue case, as a rule, improves dramatically for the first 10 days 1 month or 1½ months under appropriate diet and parenteral liver thera However, in spite of large doses of liver and the addition of iron, the progre from then on is very slow and tedious, so much so that only few cases rea an absolutely normal blood picture at the end of 2 months. Fifty-two p cent had at the end of that period a predominance of macrocytes, as evidence by a persistent mean cell volume of over 100 cubic microns.

In our series of 150 cases, 2 presented allergic reactions during the intr muscular liver therapy; in both cases the medication had to be given up. O developed asthma, rhinitis, urticaria, and migraine all at the same time, and the other showed a very marked angioneurotic edema.

In the above-mentioned series there was only 1 death, which occurred shortly after admission, before a complete blood study could be made. The diagnosis was made at autopsy.*

Diet

We believe that an appropriate diet, high in good proteins, low in fats and carbohydrates, is an important adjuvant in the efficient treatment of sprue.

Before the advent of liver therapy (Bloomfield and Wyckoff, 1927), Chinese physicians used marmite soup, and Sir Patrick Manson recommended liver soup (1883) in the treatment of sprue.

Several different diets have been advocated from time to time: the fruit or strawberry diet of van den Bergh, the milk diet of Manson, and the raw meat diet of Canttie. Each one of these investigators believed that sprue patients should eat nothing but their respective diets for several weeks if improvement was to be expected. Undoubtedly, many cases of sprue responded favorably to these diets. Fairley (1930) successfully employed a series of graded high proteins, low fats, and low carbohydrate diets with an energy value varying from 700 to 3,000 calories, and having a protein-fat-carbohydrate ratio of 1:0:-0.3:-1.3 instead of the usual 1.0:-1.0-4.00 ratio. The source of protein was lean meat. Later (1932) Fairley recommended *Sprulac*, a defatted high protein milk powder. As the intestinal symptoms subside and the stools become soft or formed, diets of increasing caloric value are gradually substituted, a convalescent high protein diet, including fruits and vegetables, being generally allowed about the fifth or seventh week.

Eggnog, milk, or fresh fruits may be eaten between meals. Meat should be lean and rare: beef, lean, roast or steak; lamb, lean, roast or chops; ham, lean; liver, tongue, heart, kidney, or sweetbreads; fish, any fresh fish; lobster, crabs, or oysters. Milk and milk products: milk, buttermilk, and American and cottage cheese usuelly agree with the patient. Eggs may be prepared in any desired manner.

All fatty foods should be avoided: butter, cream, lard, olive oil, and oil salad dressing, avocado pears, pie, pastry, and food fried in fat. All starchy foods should be avoided: potatoes, corn, bread, cereals, cake, candy.

The following are copies of the menus for sprue patients used at the University Hospital of San Juan, Puerto Rico:

Full Sprue Diet

BREAKFAST:

Fruit juice (containing vitamin C)—1 full glass (8 oz.)
Cereal—Whole grain, as oatmeal, Wheaties, or enriched cereal.
Eggs—at least one, soft boiled or poached (egg can be given in some other meal if desired)
Coffee with milk

---

*Editor's note (O. F.): Since this chapter was prepared for print, vitamin B_{12} has proved to be an effective adjuvant in the treatment of sprue.

10:00 A.M.:

Fruit juice, banana, milk (one or all)

LUNCH:

Soup (large serving)—Meat stock, not much fat, served with a piece of meat and several vegetables cut in small pieces and cooked in the meat stock; tomatoes and green vegetables to be used as often as possible

Viands—Served on the side if desired

Bread—Served with oleomargarine or butter

Dessert—Bananas should be served frequently; not too many starchy desserts

Milk—One glass

3:00 P.M.:

Fruit juice, banana, milk (one or all)

DINNER:

Meat—All forms, except fried; not too much pork

Salad—Large serving, including lettuce and at least one other raw vegetable, with other low carbohydrate fruits and vegetables

Bread—Served with oleomargarine or butter

Dessert (See directions for lunch)

Milk—One glass

Diet should supply each day at least ¼ pound of meat, ¾ quart of milk, 1 egg, 4 bananas (more are better), some raw vegetables or fruits other than bananas, 1 teaspoonful salt (approximately 7 grams).

Noodles, macaroni, and spaghetti should not be used. Rice and beans may be served once or twice a week. Crackers should be served sparingly if at all. Second servings should be available for those desiring more food.

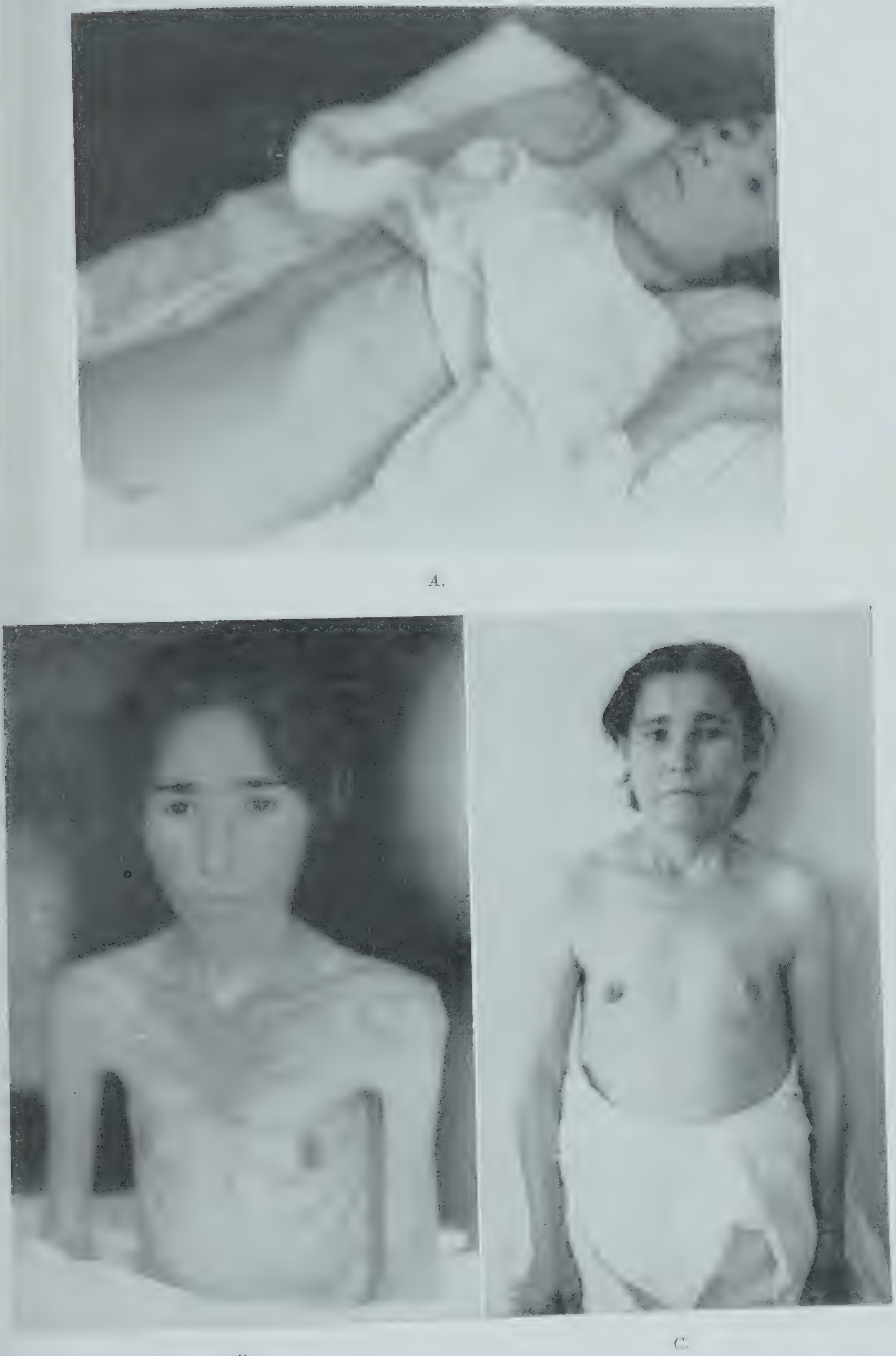
Blood Transfusions

Small and repeated blood transfusions are lifesaving measures which should not be neglected in the treatment of the very ill, profoundly anemic, and cachectic patient.

Folic Acid Treatment

Folic acid, known for some time as one of the components of vitamin B complex, is at present considered identical to the *Lactobacillus casei* factor recently synthesized by 16 investigators of the Lederle Laboratories and the Calco Division of the American Cyanamid Co. (Angier et al., 1945). As it was isolated from green leaves, including grass, Mitchell, Snell, and Williams (1941) named the substance ''folic acid,'' from ''folium,'' the Latin name for leaf. Folic acid is present in descending concentration in the adrenals, liver, kidney, and colon. It is also found in yeast and in mushrooms.

Spies and his group (1945) (Vilter et al., 1945), of the University of Cincinnati and the Hillman Hospital at Birmingham, Alabama, were the first to report on the antianemic properties of synthetic folic acid on the macrocytic anemias. Thirteen of the 14 patients treated showed positive hematologic response. The material was given intravenously, intramuscularly, and orally. Erythrogenesis occurred regardless of the route of administration of folic acid and regardless of the clinical classification as to pernicious anemia or nutritional macrocytic anemia.



A.

B.

C.

Fig. 453.—Case A-7795. Sprue. *A,* On admission, showing severe cachexia, somewhat distended abdomen with doughy feeling on palpation; *B,* same patient weighing 58 pounds; some edema of legs and face; *C,* same patient, after 2 months of treatment with folic acid; weight, 105 pounds.

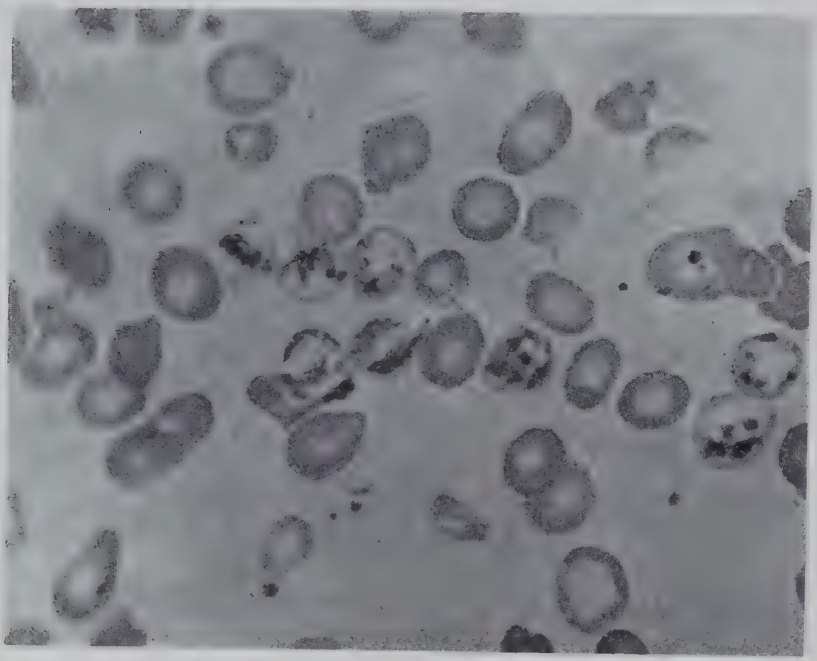


Fig. 454.—Reticulocyte response to folic acid on seventh day, in a case of sprue.

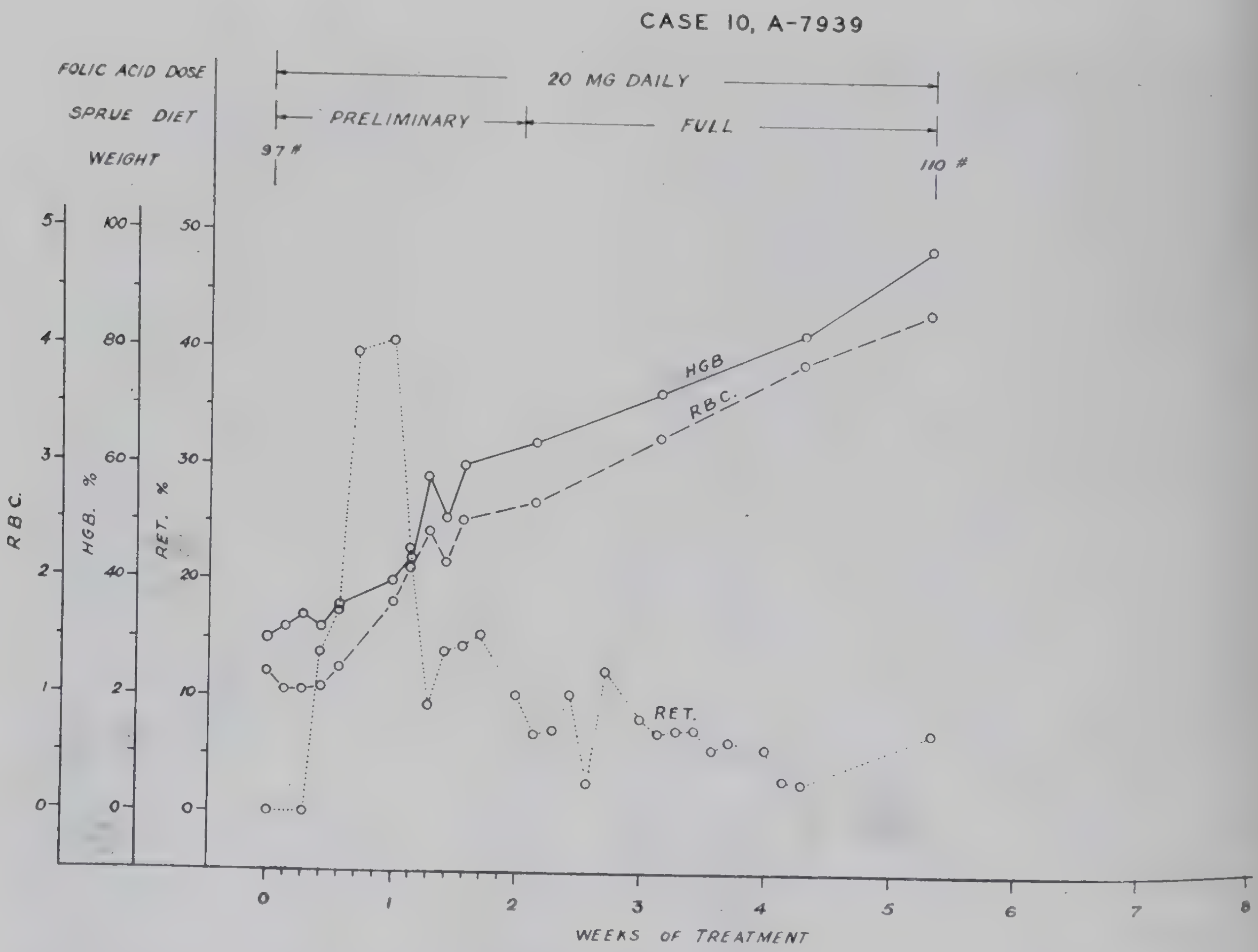


Fig. 455.—Case 10, A-7939. Sprue. Reticulocyte, hemoglobin, and erythrocyte response to therapy.

The group of investigators from the Vanderbilt University School of Medicine, at Nashville, Tenn., including Darby, Jones, and Johnston (1945, 1946), reported on the use of synthetic *L. casei* factor in the treatment of sprue. They administered 15 mg. of folic acid intramuscularly daily with good hematopoietic response in 2 cases.

Again it was Spies and his collaborators (1946), of Cuba and Cincinnati, who first used folic acid in tropical sprue. They reported their preliminary observations on 3 cases treated in Havana in November, 1945. Spies has a working hypothesis to explain the action of folic acid. He believes "that folic acid in food occurs as a conjugate and that, in view of Castle's work, it is likely that in pernicious anemia the enzymes are unable to liberate efficiently the folic acid, whereas in sprue, pellagra, pregnancy, and nutritional macrocytic anemia the folic acid, or substances that act similarly, are made more available." They proved that folic acid has a striking antianemic effect in 5 types of macrocytic anemia: Addisonian pernicious anemia, nutritional macrocytic anemia, macrocytic anemia of sprue, macrocytic anemia of pellagra, and macrocytic anemia of

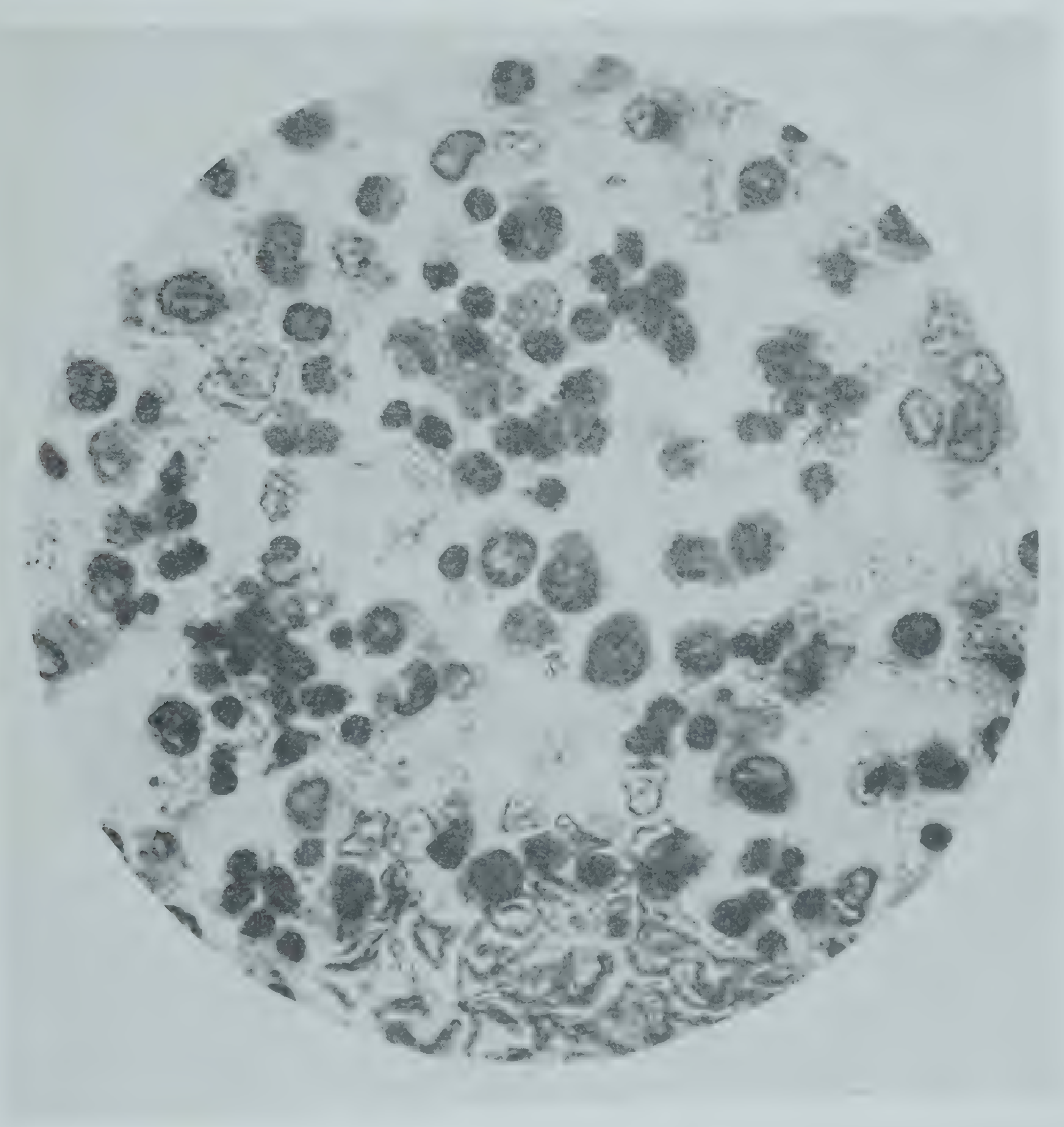


Fig. 456.—Sprue. Normoblastic response observed in the aspirated sternal marrow following adequate therapy.

pregnancy. There is not yet a satisfactory explanation concerning the fact that a fairly large amount of folic acid is required to produce a maximum hematopoietic response in contrast to highly potent liver extract in which the active substance is apparently smaller.

On Dec. 1, 1945, in collaboration with Dr. Spies, who brought with him from Cuba the first supply of the drug, we began to use folic acid in sprue. At present we have treated 21 new cases of sprue and have shifted to folic acid 29 old cases who had been under parenteral liver therapy for a number of months or years. The results obtained so far have been very promising.

In the presence of an adequate sprue diet high in animal proteins and low in fats and carbohydrates, the oral administration of 10 mg. of folic acid daily is adequate even in the presence of severe diarrhea.

PROGNOSIS

The prognosis is good for old and recent cases, provided they receive adequate treatment and appropriate diet. Instances of sprue refractory to intensive therapy are extremely rare. The mortality at present is low. The death rate from sprue in Puerto Rico during the last few years has remained stationary at approximately 59 per million inhabitants.

References

Amalfitano, Gabriele: 1939. The Diagnostic Value of Castellani's Rhamme Test, Policlínico **46:** 1999-2002.

Angier et al.: 1945. Science **102:** 227.

Arateus: Quoted by Gibbons, 1889.

Barker, W. H., and Rhoads, C. P.: 1937. The Effect of Liver Extract on the Absorption of Fat in Sprue, Am. J. M. Sc. **194:** 804-810.

Bennett, T. Izod, and Hardwick, C.: 1940. Chronic Jejuno-Ileal Insufficiency; Pathogenesis of Celiac Disease, Tropical Sprue and Other Conditions, Lancet **2:** 381-384.

Best, C. H., and Taylor, N. B.: 1943. The Physiological Basis of Medical Practice, Baltimore, Wiliams & Wilkins Co.

Bloomfield, A. L., and Wycoff, H. A.: 1927. Remission in Sprue Following High Liver Diet; Case Report, California & West. Med. **27:** 659-660.

Caelius Aurelianus: de Morbis Acutis et Chronicis Libris **8:** 499.

Castle, W. B., Rhoads, C. P., Lawson, H. A., and Payne, G. C.: 1933. Etiology and Treatment of Sprue, Arch. Int. Med. **56:** 627.

Darby, W. J., and Jones, Edgar: 1945. Treatment of Sprue With Synthetic L. Casei Factor (Folic Acid, Vitamin M), Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **60:** 259.

Darby, W. J.: Jones, E., and Johnson, H. C.: 1946. The Use of Synthetic L. Casei Factor in the Treatment of Sprue, Science, 103, 108.

DeFiguereido, Fernando Vaz: 1941. The First Case of Tropical Sprue, Acta Med. Río de Janeiro **7:** 255.

DeLangen, C. D.: 1941. The Blood-Fat Curve in Sprue, Abstract. Trop. Dis. Bull. **38:** 389.

Editorial: 1946. Nutritional Macrocytic Anemia, Brit. M. J., p. 501.

Erf, L. A., and Rhoads, C. P.: 1940. Glycine Tolerance Test in Sprue and Pernicious Anemia, J. Clin. Investigation **19:** 409-421.

Flax, L. J., Barnes, M., and Reichert, J. L.: 1942. Vitamin A Absorption and Its Relation to Intestinal Motility in Fibrocystic Disease of Pancreas, J. Pediat. **21:** 475.

Gee, Samuel: 1889. On the Coeliac Affection, St. Barth. Hosp. Rep. **24:** 17.

Gibbons: 1889. Edinburg M. J. **35:** 321-420.

Golden, R.: 1941. Abnormalities of Small Intestine in Nutritional Disturbances; Some Observations on Their Physiologic Basis (Carman Lecture), Radiology **36:** 262.

Hanes, F. M.: 1943. Sprue. In Tice's Practice of Medicine, vol. 4, Hagerstown, Md., W. F. Prior Co., Inc.

Hanes, F. M., and McBryde, Angus: 1936. Identity of Sprue, Non-tropical Sprue and Celiac Disease, Arch. Int. Med. **58:** 1-16.

Hanes, F. M., and Reiser, R.: 1940. The Relation of Phosphorus to Fat and Glucose Metabolism in Sprue, Am. J. M. Sc. 200: 5, 661.

Hansen, K., and von Staa, H.: 1936. Die Einhermische Sprue und Ihre Folgekrankheiten, Leipzig, Georg Thieme.

Hashimoto, Hirotoshi: 1937. Acute Pernicious Form of Beriberi and Its Treatment by Intravenous Administration of Vitamin B, Am. Heart J. 13: 580.

Hernández-Morales, F.: 1944. Gastroscopic Observations in Tropical Sprue, Puerto Rico J. Pub. Health and Trop. Med. 20: 257.

Hernández-Morales, F., and Ruiz-Cestero, G.: 1945. Roentgenological Changes in the Small Intestine in the Presence of Schistosoma Mansoni, Puerto Rico J. Pub. Health and Trop. Med. 20: 507.

Herter, C. A.: 1908. On Infantilism From Chronic Intestinal Infection, New York, The Macmillan Co.

Heubner, J. O. L.: 1923. In Abt's Pediatrics, vol. 1, Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Company, p. 132.

Hurst, A.: 1942. Pathogenesis of Sprue Syndrome, as Seen in Tropical Sprue, Non-Tropical Sprue and Coeliac Disease, Guy's Hosp. Rep. 91: 1.

Jepson, F. P.: 1933. Dry-Wood-Inhabiting Termites as a Possible Factor in the Etiology of Sprue, Ceylon J. of Sc., Section D, M. Sc. 3: 3-46.

Kantor, J. L.: 1939. Roentgen Diagnosis of Idiopathic Steatorrhea and Allied Conditions; Practical Value of "Moulage Sign," Am. J. Roentgenol. 41: 758.

Krause, G. R., and Crilly, J. A.: 1943. Roentgenologic Changes in Small Intestine in the Presence of Hookworm, Am. J. Roentgenol. 49: 719-730.

Lepore, M. J., and Golden, R.: 1941. Syndrome Due to Deficiency of Vitamin B Complex, J. A. M. A. 117: 918-923.

Mackie, T. T.: 1933. Nontropical Sprue, M. Clin. North America 17: 165-184.

Mackie, T. T., and Pound, R. E.: 1935. Changes in Gastro-Intestinal Tract in Deficiency States, With Special Reference to Small Intestine; Roentgenological and Clinic Study of 40 Cases, J. A. M. A. 104: 613.

Manson-Bahr, Philip, H.: 1940. In Manson's Tropical Diseases, Baltimore, Williams & Wilkins Co.

Manson-Bahr, Philip H.: 1941. The Etiology of the Sprue Syndrome, Trop. Dis. Bull. 38: 123.

May, C. D., and McCreary, J. F.: 1940. Glucose Tolerance Test in Celiac Disease; Significance of Low Blood Sugar Curves, J. Pediat. 17: 143.

May, C. D., and McCreary, J. F.: 1941. Absorption of Vitamin A in Celiac Disease: Interpretation of Vitamin A Absorption Test, J. Pediat. 18: 200-209.

Miller, D. K., and Barker, W. H.: 1937. Clinical Course and Treatment of Sprue, Arch. Int. Med. 60: 18, 385.

Miller, D. K., and Rhoads, C. P.: 1935. Experimental Production of Loss of Hematopoietic Elements of Gastric Secretion and of Liver in Swine With Achlorhydria and Anemia, J. Clin. Investigation 14: 153.

Miller, D. K., and Rhoads, C. P.: 1936. Effect of Liver Extract on Small Intestine of Patients With Sprue, Am. J. M. Sc. 191: 453.

Mitchell, H. K., Snell, Esmond E., and Williams, R. J.: 1941. The Concentration of Folic Acid, J. Am. Chem. Soc. 63: 2284.

Pasricha, C. L., and Lal, S.: 1939. The Incidence of Monilia in Human Feces, Indian M. Gaz. 74: 682.

Pock-Steen, P. H.: 1941. Differential Diagnosis of Sprue-Like Diseases: quoted from Trop. Dis. Bull. 38: 13.

Porter, W. B.: 1937. Heart Changes and Physiologic Adjustment in Hookworm Anemia, Am. Heart J. 13: 550.

Rodríguez-Molina, Rafael: 1941. Sprue in Puerto Rico, Puerto Rico J. Pub. Health & Trop. Med. 17: 134.

Rodríguez-Olleros, A.: 1938. The Stomach in Tropical Sprue, Puerto Rico J. Pub. Health & Trop. Med. 13: 503-521.

Rodríguez-Olleros, A., and Hernández-Morales, F.: 1940. The Gastric Function in Tropical Sprue, Puerto Rico J. Pub. Health & Trop. Med. 15: 274.

Rewell, R. E.: 1944. A Case of Sprue Syndrome of Unusual Etiology, Guy's Hosp. Rep. 93: 74-78.

Scott, H. Harold: 1941. Abstract, Trop. Dis. Bull. 38: 13.

Snell, A. M.: 1936. Clinical Observations on Non-Tropical Sprue, Arch. Int. Med. 57: 837.

Snell, A. M., and Camp, J. D.: 1934. Chronic Idiopathic Steatorrhea; Roentgenologic Observations, Arch. Int. Med. 53: 615.

Spies, Tom D., Garcia-Lopez, Guillermo, Menéndez, José Arístides, Koch, Mary B., and Minnich, Virginia, 1946. The Effect of Folic Acid on Sprue, South. M. J. 39: 30.

Spies, Tom D., Suárez, Ramón M., Suárez, Ramon, Jr., and Hernández-Morales, F.: 1946a. The Therapeutic Effect of Folic Acid in Tropical Sprue, Science, J. Lab. & Clin. Med. **31**: 227.

Spies, Tom D.: Vilter, Carl F., Koch, Mary B., and Caldwell, Margaret H.: 1945. Observations of the Anti-Anemic Properties of Synthetic Folic Acid, South. M. J. **38**: 707.

Stannus, Hugh S.: 1942. Sprue, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **36**: 123.

Suárez, Jenaro: 1931. Pernicious Anemia and Sprue, Puerto Rico J. Pub. Health & Trop. Med. **7**: 145.

Suárez, Jenaro: 1931-1932. Pernicious Anemia and Sprue, Puerto Rico J. Pub. Health & Trop. Med. **7**: 149.

Suárez, R. M.: 1931. El Tratamiento del Esprú y el Uso del Extracto Acuoso de Hígado en su Anemia, Bol. Asoc. Med. de Puerto Rico **23**: 186, 74-86.

Suárez, R. M.: 1935. Hematological Studies in Sprue, Bol. Asoc. Méd. de Puerto Rico **27**: 239-249.

Suárez, R. M.: 1938. Clinical and Hematological Review of Sprue, Ann. Int. Med. **12**: 529.

Suárez, R. M.: 1938a. Clinical and Hematological Review of Sprue Based on a Study of 150 Cases, Puerto Rico J. Pub. Health. & Trop. Med. **14**: 157-175.

Suárez, R. M.: 1945. Studies of the Nutritional Problem of Puerto Rico. II. Appraisal of Vitamin Deficiency Based on Physical and Biomicroscopic Examinations and X-ray Studies of the Long Bones of a Hospital Population of 310 Infants and Children, Puerto Rico J. Pub. Health & Trop. Med. **21**: 61-73.

Thaysen, T. E. H.: 1932. Non-Tropical Sprue; a Study of Idiopathic Steatorrhea, Levin and Munksgaard, London, Oxford University Press.

Vedder, Edward B.: 1940. A Discussion of the Etiology of Sprue, Am. J. Trop. Med. **20**: 345.

Verzár, F., and McDougall, E. J.: 1936. Absorption From the Intestine, New York, Longmans, Green & Co.

Vilter, Carl F., Spies, Tom D., and Koch, Mary, B.: 1945. Further Studies on Folic Acid in the Treatment of Macrocytic Anemia, South. M. J. **38**: 781.

Weiss, Soma, and Wilkins, R. W.: 1937. Disturbance of the Cardiovascular System in Nutritional Deficiency, J. A. M. A. **109**: 786.

Zwerling, Henry, and Nelson, Waldo E.: 1943. The Roentgenologic Pattern of the Small Intestine in Infants and Children, Radiology **40**: 277-282.

CHAPTER 61

BERIBERI

EUGENE R. WHITMORE

DEFINITION

The name "beriberi" comes from a Singhalese word meaning "weakness," or "cannot," in the sense that the patient is too ill to work; the duplication of the term indicates the outstanding importance of this feature of the condition. The synonym "kakké," in China and Japan, means a disease of the legs, thus again indicating the importance of this feature of the disease.

Today, the condition is known to be a deficiency disease, due fundamentally to a deficiency of vitamin B_1 (thiamine),* and characterized by muscular weakness, peripheral neuritis, edema or wasting, and cardiac failure.

ETIOLOGY

The story of the development of our knowledge of the etiology of beriberi is the story of one of the outstanding developments in medical knowledge. The disease is mentioned by Strabo and Pio Cassius as a disease which attacked a Roman army in Arabia in 24 B.C.; and kakké is mentioned in a Chinese pamphlet of the second century B.C. and is minutely described in a pamphlet of the seventh century: it is recorded as occurring in Japan in the ninth century. In the tenth century, a distinction was made between the atrophic, dry, or paralytic form and the hypertrophic, wet, or dropsical form. In 1758, Bontius was the first European doctor to give a description of the disease, which he called "beri-beri." From that time on, reports were made from different parts of the world, giving rise to the considerable number of synonyms for the disease in various countries, including "hinchazón" (swelling) in Cuba and "inchaçao" (swelling) and "perneiras" (disease of the legs) in Brazil.

During World War I there was a beriberi-like disease among European troops in Mesopotamia and the Dardanelles; beriberi was not uncommon among our men who were prisoners of the Japanese during World War II, and those men are familiar with the term "beriberi heart."

One obtains eloquent testimony to the importance of the disease when he reads the list of causes that were suggested and studied—all the way from atmospheric conditions, through chemical causes, bacterial poisons, and infections to food deficiencies.

As the endemic area of beriberi was in the Orient—Eastern Asia, Japan, the Philippine Islands, Indo-China, Java, and Malaya—where a principal article of diet was rice, it was natural that rice should have come under suspicion: rice without husk; stale or badly kept rice; the toxin of some organism living in the rice, especially in the husk.

But the disease occurred in Brazil, the Moluccas, and Lingga, where the diet is sago, fish, and game, and where rice was not eaten; also in Labrador and Newfoundland, where white wheat flour is a very important part of the diet.

The idea that the disease was associated with buildings had gained credence, and, in this connection, one must refer to the experimental study carried out at Kwala Lumpur, in 1895. The mortality from beriberi in the new jail was high, so a number of prisoners with beriberi, as well as some healthy prisoners, were transferred from the new jail to the old jail, all prisoners at both jails being fed rice that was all cooked together at the new jail, so the prisoners in both jails received the same diet: it was shown that the building had nothing to do with the occurrence of beriberi. One of the outstanding recollections of the author is his visit to Fraser and Stanton at Kwala Lumpur.

---

*This places beriberi in the group of nutritional deficiency diseases and so extends its range far beyond the tropics.

There had now developed the idea that the disease was due to some deficiency in the diet—protein or nitrogen deficiency. It was also recognized that beriberi was often associated with other conditions, which led to some confusion regarding the nature of the disease, and it was placed in a group with polyneuritis of birds. Eijkman (1890) observed polyneuritis in chickens fed on polished rice and considered the condition the same as beriberi in man. Frazer and Stanton showed that healthy coolies developed beriberi when fed on white rice, while others fed on brown rice remained healthy, and they cured beriberi in man, and polyneuritis in fowls, by adding rice polishings or an extract of them to the diet.

Prior to 1884, ⅓ of the sailors in the Japanese navy were disabled by beriberi. Takagi, in 1885, replaced part of the polished rice by meat, beans, milk, wheat, and barley and vegetables, and the incidence of the disease was decreased enormously. Braddon noted that, in the Malay States, the Tamils ate unpolished rice and did not develop beriberi, while the Chinese who ate polished rice developed beriberi.

In 1901 and 1902, an outbreak of beriberi occurred in Bilibid Prison in Manila—associated with an outbreak of scurvy; both diseases disappeared when a diet rich in vegetables was given.

But there was still the idea of some microbic etiology—perhaps more especially among those of us who had paid special attention to the bacterial and parasitic causes of disease.

In 1912, Funk gave the name "beriberi vitamin" to a substance contained in the subpericarpal layers of the rice grain, which was readily separable, and which he considered to be essential for the metabolism of the nervous tissue; and through deficiency of this substance the nervous tissue begins to break down, and the symptoms of beriberi appear. From that time on, evidence rapidly accumulated that beriberi was a deficiency disease, due to the lack of this "beriberi vitamin" of Funk, later called vitamin B_1, or thiamine, because it contains sulfur.

This now gave the explanation of the outbreaks of beriberi among people who did not eat rice, such as those who used white bread to excess in the diet. Excess carbohydrate in the diet is a factor, as thiamine aids in the oxidation of carbohydrate; fat reduces the requirement. Vitamin B_1 is not stored in the body, so deficiency is quickly felt. Also, when alcohol furnishes much of the caloric intake, vitamin B_1 deficiency is quickly felt.

Since dietary deficiencies are not apt to be single and simple, 2 or more of the deficiency diseases are frequently seen in the same patient; thus, beriberi and pellagra are frequently combined, or beriberi and scurvy, as in the Bilibid Prison outbreak.

PATHOLOGY AND PATHOLOGIC PHYSIOLOGY

It will be noted that the 2 classical types of beriberi, wet beriberi and dry beriberi, were distinguished in the tenth century, and for a long time there was opinion that the 2 types represented differences which were explained in different ways; indeed, these 2 types were used to argue that there was more than one fundamental cause for beriberi, or that the "beriberi vitamin" was not a single substance, which was so amply demonstrated later though on an entirely different basis, and without reference to the 2 types of beriberi. Not so long ago, we find it stated that dry beriberi is simply a later stage of wet beriberi (Castellani and Chalmers, 1913).

Today, we know that the edema in wet beriberi is due to 2 factors: (1) the cardiac failure—cardiac edema and (2) the protein deficiency, hypoproteinemia—nutritional edema.

Cardiac Pathology

The cardiac pathology consists of increased weight of the heart, with thickening of the wall of the right ventricle, and with weakness of the heart action. This has commonly been described as "hypertrophy," especially of the wall of the right ventricle, though the rapidity with which the heart returns to normal size and function under proper treatment would be sufficient evidence that there is no hypertrophy of the heart. The enlarged muscle fibers are vacuolated—hydropic degeneration—the same condition as Scheube described for the heart muscle fibers in rabbits on section of the vagus nerves. There is dilatation of the right heart, especially of the right auricle, which may be greatly enlarged and the wall paper thin.

Pathology of the Nervous System

The pathology of the nervous system is important and fundamental, the degenerative changes being marked in the spinal cord and in the peripheral nerves. Early and marked changes occur in the sciatic nerves and their branches, associated with early involvement of the legs; the degeneration appears first in the myelin sheath, with much less damage to the axis cylinders. The aphonia is associated with degeneration of the recurrent laryngeal nerves. Degeneration of sensory nerves accounts for the paresthesias and anesthesias. The muscles supplied by these nerves are atrophied and give the reaction of degeneration. The degeneration may extend to and involve the sympathetic system.

There are no characteristic blood changes. Any changes in the blood picture are likely to be due to some associated condition, as malnutrition or hookworm disease.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

It is usual to discuss the symptomatology under different forms, though the forms may be mixed, or one may pass over into the other. The course may be acute, subacute, or chronic.

The Rudimentary Form

The rudimentary form is relatively mild; the onset is insidious with malaise, lassitude, loss of appetite, dull pain in the abdomen, tenderness on pressure over the upper part of the abdomen, more or less difficulty in breathing, and palpitation of the heart. There is a feeling of heaviness and tenderness on pressure in the muscles of the calves of the legs, and the muscles are weak, less marked in the arms. There is frequently slight edema about the ankles and over the shins. Soon the patient has difficulty in walking, the knee jerk is at first exaggerated and then disappears, and paresthesias develop; the patient develops a peculiar step-page gait. The heart shows enlargement to both sides, and murmurs may develop; the systolic pressure is generally normal, the diastolic is low, the pulse is of the water-hammer type, but softer than in organic disease of the aortic valve.

While the involvement of the legs is usually earliest and most marked, involvement of the nerves and muscles of the arms often develops, and the involvement of the muscles may even extend to the muscles of the trunk.

The symptoms may remain slight, or may disappear as a result of improvement in diet, but commonly symptoms associated with one or more of the fundamental pathologic conditions develop and dominate the picture, giving the name to the form.

The Dry or Atrophic Form

The dry or atrophic form of the disease appears if the degeneration of the nerves and of the muscles dominates the picture. There is more or less marked paralysis, especially in the legs, less frequently in the arms, rarely in the trunk muscles; involvement of the cranial nerves is not common; the mind remains clear. With extensive paralysis and atrophy of the leg muscles, there is a peculiar gait—only with difficulty is the foot raised from the ground, the toes hanging down weakly, and the foot is set down stampingly. With extensive paralysis and atrophy of the muscles of the forearm and hand, the hand hangs limply. There are disturbances in sensation: formication and burning sensations and decrease in sensation. The muscle reflexes are lost, and the electric excitability of the muscles is lost; commonly the motor disturbances are symmetrical. The paralysis may become so marked that the patient is bedridden.

The Wet or Hypertrophic Form

The wet or hypertrophic form may develop from the atrophic form, and while the paralyses are not so marked, there is always a distinct weakness in the legs. But here, the outstanding features are on the part of the *heart,* which dominates the disease picture, and there is *edema* and serous effusion into the pericardial sac and into the serous cavities. The pulse is accelerated and may reach 120 per minute; the cardiac dullness is extended especially toward the right. The patient complains of palpitation, especially in the evening and at night, pain in the region of the heart, which may be severe, and shortness of breath. The cardiac insufficiency may be extreme, and the urinary excretion may be markedly reduced.

The Acute Pernicious or Acute Cardiac Form

The acute pernicious or acute cardiac form may develop suddenly in an apparently healthy person, or it may develop from the *rudimentary form,* and is not as rare as formerly supposed. This is the most dangerous form, and may cause death within 24 hours, especially in young persons.

In addition to the symptoms noted for the other forms, the cardiac weakness amounts to more or less complete cardiac failure. There is edema and effusion into the serous cavities, and all of the cardiac symptoms of the wet form are much more marked; on percussion, there is marked dilatation, the pulse may go to 140 and be scarcely perceptible, the blood pressure is markedly lowered, and there may be complete suppression of urine. The subjective symptoms are greatly increased. There is marked dyspnea, precordial distress, and severe cardiac pain so that the patient cries out and grasps at the cardiac region often for hours. With increasing cyanosis, the patient may die of cardiac collapse, remaining conscious to the end.

The Chronic Cardiac Form, or the Beriberi Heart

The chronic cardiac form, or the beriberi heart, is the form so commonly seen in temperate climates and which has come to be more frequently recognized in recent years.

Vitamin B_1 deficiency plays an important part in chronic nonvalvular heart disease, especially in alcoholics,* in the Tropics as well as in the temperate zones. It is a prominent cause of cardiac failure without any of the usually recognized causes of heart disease. Weiss says that "alcoholic beriberi" occurs in drinkers of whiskey and gin, less frequently in beer drinkers. He says that the "beriberi heart" is not so uncommon in the United States, as frequent as 1 in 160 medical admissions in a large charity hospital. It is often mild.

Eustis (1942) cites the case of a 39-year-old white man who used alcohol to excess. He had edema of the ankles, dyspnea, poor response to the cardiorespiratory test, and a venous pressure of 230 mm. of water. The electrocardiogram showed the QRS waves slurred in the second lead, the T wave low in the second lead, and inverted in the third lead, which was interpreted as "definite evidence of myocardial disease." He thinks such cases are more frequent than suspected.

DIAGNOSIS

The characteristic symptoms are pretibial edema, exhaustion, weakness in the legs, decrease in sensation in circumscribed areas of the legs, pain on pressure on the muscles of the calf of the leg, the characteristic gait, loss of the patellar reflex, palpitation of the heart, and rapid pulse. The electrocardiogram is not characteristic, though it usually shows myocardial disease, negative T waves in the first lead and slight alteration of the ventricular complexes. This with a history of coming from a country where polished rice is the principal article of diet, or from one of the localities where white wheat flour is the principal article of diet, or in an alcoholic, will enable one to make a diagnosis. Adrenalin reduces the blood pressure in beriberi, as it stimulates the heart, but further dilates the already dilated peripheral arterioles. This has been suggested as a diagnostic measure, in the cardiac form, but it must be used with caution. A therapeutic trial of vitamin B_1 is an aid in diagnosis.

---

*Vitamin B_1 deficiency is now recognized as an important factor in acute alcoholism and in delirium tremens, and large doses of this vitamin are now included in the treatment of these conditions.

PROGNOSIS

Formerly, the disease took a heavy toll in morbidity among labor groups, and the mortality was a not unimportant feature. With better understanding of the prevention and treatment of the disease, neither morbidity nor mortality need be imporant factors. *The usual cause of death is cardiac failure,* as in the *acute pernicious form.*

While proper treatment will quickly relieve the serious symptoms of the disease, it must be borne in mind that the regeneration of the degenerated nerves and muscle fibers takes considerable time, so that the return to normal is a relatively slow process, extending over a period of months or longer.

PROPHYLAXIS

With the development of our understanding that the disease is due to a dietary deficiency, there should be no problem in prophylaxis among laboring groups and among people in general. There still remains the occasional case of the individual who has an abnormal dietary regime imposed by himself. In the case of the alcoholic, the method of prevention is obvious; but, failing the reduction of the intake of alcohol, a regular intake of vitamin B_1 or preferably large doses of the multivitamin preparations—not in or with the alcoholic drink, as suggested by some sources a few years ago— is the rational prophylactic procedure. A balanced diet, with sufficient meat, dairy products, legumes, and other vegetables, will prevent the disease. In the Philippine Islands, the disease was prevented and cured among the Philippine Scouts by the addition of rice polishings (tiki-tiki) to the diet. Of course, other improvements in the diet were instituted.

For persons who especially like a rice diet, and for those who use the rice diet in treatment of hypertension, there is now available a form of white rice in which all of the vitamins and minerals are retained.

TREATMENT

Just as we now understand that dietary deficiencies are not single and pure, so we understand that beriberi is often mixed with one or more of the other dietary deficiencies. So, while vitamin B_1 is the typical and fundamental deficiency in beriberi, and vitamin B_1 is to be given in large doses in the beginning of treatment, it must be borne in mind that the condition is often associated with other dietary deficiencies, and the other vitamins are to be given along with vitamin B_1. This is in keeping with the trend toward using multiple vitamin therapy in the deficiency diseases. Vitamin B_1 is given in doses of 20 to 50 mg. per day, in divided doses. It may be given subcutaneously in the dry form, but it is given intravenously in the wet form. It is best given intravenously in the early days of treatment, especially in the *acute pernicious form,* in divided doses. Strychnine is indicated in the cardiac failure,* and venesection has been used with good results in extreme cases. Adrenalin is contraindicated. In the *wet form*, diuretics are indicated, and a high protein diet in the form of some of the intravenous preparations. When the acute symptoms are controlled, multivitamin therapy is frequently indicated. In addition, bed rest, a balanced diet with high protein content, and correction of the patient's dietary habits are important factors.

INFANTILE BERIBERI

Manson thought that beriberi could be due to some microorganism living in the soil, in the house, or in the ship occupied by human beings, and, under certain conditions of moisture and temperature, could grow and produce a toxin which caused the disease. He quoted Hirota's observation that 52 infants nursed by beriberic mothers developed beriberi and did not respond to medical treatment but rapidly improved when placed on artificial feeding or nursed by a healthy wet nurse. But Manson thought the children must have been poisoned by some chemical substance and were not infected with a germ.†

At one time, infantile beriberi caused over ½ of the infant mortality in the Philippine Islands. The Report of the Committee on Beriberi in the Philippine Islands, in 1928, says that there are 16,500 infantile deaths annually from this disease; i.e., 28.1 per cent of all infantile deaths in that country.

The disease is more serious in infants than in adults, with marked prominence of the effect on the heart.

Congenital beriberi is rare—the mothers have beriberi. Van Gelder and Darby (1944) cite Mata's case of an infant 3 days old. The child was cyanotic, dyspneic, and in apparent pain. One hour after injection of 10 mg. of thiamine, the baby was free of pain. They say that, in the congenital form, the electrocardiogram shows sinus tachycardia, right axis deviation, and complexes of low voltage in all leads, interpreted as definite evidence of myocardial disease. They say further that congenital idiopathic hypertrophy, or status thymicolymphaticus, may be congenital beriberi and suggest that infants with a large heart and no congenital or valvular lesion should be given large doses of thiamine parenterally.

The course of *infantile beriberi* is somewhat different from beriberi in adults. The *acute form* resembles a tonic spasm, with cyanosis and complete cardiac insufficiency. The child is suddenly taken sick with loud screaming, groaning, and hoarseness and may die in the first attack. In the *chronic form*, the disease begins with vomiting, followed by constipation, restlessness, cardiac insufficiency, and edema of the legs. When the milk is changed, the symptoms frequently disappear in a few days.

Vitamin B_1 is given in doses of 5 to 10 mg. daily, in divided doses.

---

*Coramin should be of value in the treatment of the cardiac failure in beriberi. There are reports of its use in the Japanese literature, but I have not found any of these articles or abstracts of them in the United States. I have included one reference, with the hope that someone may be familiar with the report.

†In retrospect, especially for those of us who had the pleasure and the privilege of studying with Manson, it is surprising that he did not at once grasp the implication of this situation. It confirms the point that we could not grasp the situation regarding the part played by the minute quantities of the substances later known as vitamins.

Epidemic Dropsy.—It is quite definitely agreed that epidemic dropsy is not beriberi. One theory is that it is caused by the seed of *Argemona mexicana,* which is toxic, mixed with the mustard seed in regions where mustard seed oil is used in cooking. There is much in favor of the theory that it is an infection: low fever, redness and swelling of the joints, erythema, and, after a few weeks, skin lesions (bean-sized nodular or wart-like lesions which bleed easily), and anemia. Edema and cardiac symptoms are prominent features.

References*

Castellani, A., and Chalmers, A. J.: 1910. Manual of Tropical Medicine, Baltimore, William Wood & Co.

Christian, H. A.: 1947. The Principles and Practice of Medicine, ed. 16, New York, D. Appleton-Century Co.

Eustis, A.: 1942. Myocardial Dysfunction Due to Vitamin B_1 (Thiamin Hydrochloride) Deficiency, New Orleans M. & S. J. **94:** 369.

Kato, Katsuji: Beri-Beri in Infancy and Childhood. In Brenneman, J. (editor): Practice of Pediatrics, Hagerstown, Md., W. F. Prior Co., Inc.

Mühlens, P., Nauck, E., Vogel, H., and Ruge, H.: 1938. Krankheiten und Hygiene der warmen Länder, ed. 4, Leipzig, Georg Thieme.

Okajima, H.: 1936. Coramin bei Herzstörungen infolge Beri-beri, Osaka Iji Shinshi, Bd. 8, No. 2, p. 243.

Strong, R. P.: 1942. In Stitt's Diagnosis, Prevention, and Treatment of Tropical Diseases, ed. 6, Philadelphia, P. Blakiston Co.

van Gelder, D. W., and Darby, F. W.: 1944. Congenital and Infantile Beri-Beri, J. Pediat. **25:** 226.

Vedder, E. B.: 1944. Beri-Beri. In Bercovitz, Z. T. (editor): Clinical Tropical Medicine, New York, Paul B. Hoeber, Inc.

Weiss, S.: 1940. Occidental Beri-Beri With Cardio-Vascular Manifestations; Its Relation to Thiamin Deficiency, J. A. M. A. **115:** 832.

---

*No effort has been made to give anything like an extensive bibliography; only the publications which have been of special use in preparation of this chapter are noted, and acknowledgment is made of the value they have been.—E. R. W.

CHAPTER 62

PELLAGRA

ROY EDWIN BUTLER

DEFINITION

Pellagra is a dietary deficiency disease due to the failure to ingest, absorb, or utilize niacin or its precursors and is characterized by dermatitis, stomatitis, diarrhea, and mental disturbances. It is usually associated with deficiencies of other components of the B complex such as thiamine and riboflavin and with the lack of protein of good biologic quality.

CAUSAL AGENT

In earlier descriptions of pellagra it has been customary to outline the various theories which have been advanced as to the etiologic agent of the disease. However, since Goldberger (1926) pointed out the fact that pellagra arises as the result of a dietary deficiency, there has been relatively little argument concerning other possibilities. Perhaps the most discussion has centered around the question of the exact identity of the factor, or factors, the lack of which is responsible for the disease. The factors were known to be present in yeast and to be water soluble and heat stable.

With the announcement by Elvehjem (1937) that nicotinic acid (niacin) would cure black tongue in dogs, it was thought that the pellagra preventive factor had been found. However, the administration of this new vitamin to pellagrins did not always cure all of the signs and symptoms associated with the disease. Sebrell and Butler (1938) demonstrated that signs formerly associated with pellagra sine pellagra, namely, fissures at the angles of the lips, glossitis, and increased sebaceous deposits about the nose, were due to a deficiency of riboflavin (B_2), and the condition was called *ariboflavinosis*. This condition would develop in the presence of adequate nicotinic acid and could not be cured by the administration of that vitamin but could be produced by a deficiency of riboflavin and, when developed, could be cured by the administration of riboflavin. Goldberger (1925), Wheeler (1933), and Stannus (1912) all had associated this condition with pellagra.

Peripheral neuritis was seen often as a part of the picture of pellagra and was considered to be due to lack of the pellagra-preventive factor. However, the treatment with niacin did not always cure the neuritis, and it was necessary to treat with thiamine in order to effect a cure. With a diet adequate in niacin and riboflavin but deficient in thiamine, a peripheral neuritis would develop which could be cured by the administration of thiamine.

Sebrell and Butler (1939) stated:

"It, therefore, appears that we should revise our concept of clinical pellagra in that the condition may be a mixture of symptoms from three different deficiencies, namely, nicotinic acid, riboflavin, and thiamine chloride, and that any one may occur alone or in combination with any other. Therefore, in order to avoid further confusion, it is suggested that the diagnosis of pellagra should be confined to that syndrome which responds to nicotinic acid, namely, skin lesions, gastrointestinal lesions, stomatitis, and mental disturbances; while peripheral neuritis which responds to thiamine chloride should be diagnosed as beriberi; and the lesions described in this paper, which respond to riboflavin, require a new designation, since their nature has not been hitherto recognized. We have suggested the word 'ariboflavinosis' for this purpose. Where the clinical condition is characterized by the simultaneous presence of more than one of these syndromes, a diagnosis of a multiple deficiency is indicated."

This indicated that pellagra frequently developed as the result of a multiple deficiency. It was to be noted that the food sources deficient in niacin were also deficient in riboflavin and thiamine, which accounted for the tendency to attribute the disease to one factor. With the development of the crystalline vitamins, it was possible to prepare diets deficient in either factor or both and prove on human subjects the symptoms and signs associated with the lack of each.

There has been an almost constant association of the disease with people consuming a diet of which corn (maize) contributes a good share of the calories. Some had theorized that the corn had insufficient protein, but later it was shown that the protein content of corn seemed to be as good as that of other cereals, the consumption of which was not associated with pellagra. Later it was thought by Swaminathan (1938) that its low niacin content was responsible, but it seems that some corn has a very good niacin content. Recently Krehl (1946) has suggested that "the presence of corn in a synthetic low protein diet alters the dietary nicotinic acid and tryptophane requirement of the growing rat." Still more recently Woolley (1946) has reported that he has extracted from corn a pellagragenic factor which, when added in rather small quantities to an otherwise nonpellagragenic diet, will produce the disease in animals. These last 2 reports are of considerable interest, and their application to human dietary studies may be most illuminating. It is quite certain that the etiology of pellagra is not entirely clear as yet, but it does appear that great strides have been made, and it is equally certain that the application of the present knowledge would almost entirely eliminate this scourge of the undernourished and underprivileged. The presence of endemic pellagra in any community or country indicates a lack of appreciation or application of the principles of public health nutrition which have been clearly elaborated and demonstrated.

Predisposing Causes

Food Supply.—Pellagra and poverty have been closely associated in the minds of all concerned since the disease was first described. However, it is necessary to qualify this to some extent, for in some parts of the world poverty is rampant and the diets seem woefully inadequate, and yet the disease is not common. It seems that not only must the diet be poor, but it must have a certain quality of poorness which is responsible for the disease. With economic reverses, the quality of the dietary becomes progressively worse as the protective foods are replaced by cheaper foods, consumption of which will allay hunger and furnish energy. Almost always the cereal content of the diet becomes larger, displacing fresh meats, milk, eggs, fresh vegetables, and fruits which are more expensive and more difficult to obtain. Even during times of apparent prosperity with high prices and good wages, one can find many individuals on low fixed incomes, from pensions, wages, or relief, whose condition steadily deteriorates because of the poor quality of the diet they can procure. This may set up a vicious cycle in that they are less able to provide for themselves and necessarily the diet becomes worse, until they become public charges. Surveys of the population would be of great service in finding those individuals or groups most likely to succumb to dietary deficiencies. Such a course of action has been recommended from time to time but seldom carried out. The incidence of pellagra can only be approximated in many countries having high health standards which seems somewhat paradoxical. The evaluation of the nutritional status of patients in the charity outpatient clinic and hospital wards can show what is happening in that segment of the population which is particularly vulnerable to deficiency diseases.

Sebrell (1945) stated that 1,303 deaths from pellagra were reported from the United States in 1943. He believed that the mortality should not be over 3 per cent with the newer methods of treatment. This would give an estimated 43,400 cases of pellagra. However, there were probably a much larger number with mild symptoms.

Alcoholism.—It seems that alcohol addiction and pellagra are quite closely associated, and it is now held that this is true because of the lowered food intake which, at times, accompanies immoderate ingestion of alcohol. The alcohol-addicted individual with a poor economic state will prefer alcohol to food. As he continues to drink, without eating a proper diet, there will be a greater need for the effect of alcohol to hide his increasing ill feeling. Many alcoholics have a good dietary available but have a preference for the alcohol, and because of that many become severely deficient. Anything that interferes with the intake of a proper diet or its absorption may be responsible for the development of dietary deficiencies.

Increased Demands.—Physiologic demands for specific nutrients are increased during pregnancy, lactation, and adolescence, and this increase is met by additional allowances in the diet. The association of these stress periods with pellagra may be coincidental, but in view of the frequency with which signs of B complex deficiencies are encountered in these groups, it is probable that they are the most susceptible of those subsisting on a minimal diet. Every effort should be made to ensure an adequate diet for these groups, inasmuch as there may be long-range deleterious effects upon the individual or their offspring from a diet lacking in certain specific nutrients.

Immediately prior to or following surgical operations it has been a common practice to administer large amounts of parenteral fluids containing glucose as a source of energy. From this procedure the body may suffer considerable depletion of specific nutrients, thus hindering the recovery of the patient. It is now the practice in many surgical clinics to administer specif nutrients, including protein hydrolysates, with the parenteral fluids in ord to simulate as closely as possible the recommended intakes of those substance The value of such steps depends upon the condition of the patient at the beginning of the treatment, the course of the patient with regard to fever and complications, and the length of time necessary before the resumption of an adequate diet.

Defects of Absorption.—Improper mastication, because of poor teeth o ineffective dentures, may not prepare the food properly for digestion. Gastro-intestinal tumors or diarrheas may interfere with absorption, thereby resulting in deficiencies. Hepatic dysfunction may contribute materially to failure of absorption or utilization of the specific nutrients. This has been shown to be particularly true in the case of schistosomiasis involvement of the liver, which is frequently followed by the appearance of deficiency diseases. This is of particular importance in Egypt where the infestation with Schistosoma is so widespread.

Voluntary Inadequate Intake.—There are several methods of voluntarily restricting the diet so that severe deficiency results, even though there may be plenty of good food available. Here one may be able to bring about good results through proper education of the patient.

It is suggested that iatrogenic deficiency may result from the prescription of poor diets over long periods in the mistaken belief that some type of unbalanced diet will be corrective for some organic diseases. A common offender was the diet for hypertension which materially reduced the intake of red meat, eggs, and other protein foods. Unbalanced diets used in the treatment of peptic ulcer may result in serious deficiency status. In all fairness it should be stated that patients placed on a diet may fail to return for further treatment and continue on a regimen which the doctor intended should be pursued for a short time only. There have been many fads which have encouraged the use of inadequate diets for various purposes. Many of the reducing diets have been grossly deficient, but these seldom do much damage for they are usually not adhered to for long periods of time, and the enthusiasm of the reducer wanes with his increasing desire to eat.

Improper selection of foods in the dietary is another factor which is of considerable importance and may result from dislikes for certain classes of foods. Individuals who prefer a meat-free diet have to be especially careful in the selection of foods in order to ensure an adequate intake. People living alone and preparing their own meals are more likely to have their dietary restricted because of the difficulties of preparing proper food for one person. They are likely to fall into a routine of foods easily prepared, or preserved from one meal to the next, and fail to have a well-balanced dietary.

Sex.—Sydenstricker (1941), in a study of 660 cases, found 32 per cent of the patients were men and 68 per cent women. The same percentages as these were found by Ruffin and Smith (1941) in a study of 465 cases. It is a definite possibility that under certain conditions in various parts of the world the ratio between men and women may be considerably altered. There is a sex distribution of schistosomiasis in Egypt with more men attacked than women. This infection has been associated with pellagra, and it would be expected that the incidence of both diseases would be higher in men in that country.

Age.—Goldberger had considered endemic pellagra as largely a disease of infancy and childhood; i.e., from 2 to 15 years of age. Dodd (1941) reported from the Pediatrics Service of the Vanderbilt Hospital that 13 per cent of all admissions diagnosed as pellagra were children under 15 years of age. Ruffin and Smith (1941) stated in their series of 465 cases that 10 per cent were from infancy to 19 years of age. Sydenstricker (1941) noted a wide age distribution from 5 to 92 years and found 60 per cent of the patients were in the age group from 21 to 50 years.

Race.—Cases are found about equally divided between the white and Negro races in the United States. This proportion may vary in different parts of the country as is evidenced by Sydenstricker's (1941) report of 57 per cent white and 43 per cent Negro in his series. It is quite evident that much depends upon the food patterns of races, and if various races living within a country have similar food habits, the proportion of cases should be quite similar, unless there are other factors which affect the dietary unduly.

Occupation.—The disease has been most common in rural populations in most parts of the world. In the United States it has existed to the greatest extent in the rural and mill village population of the South. It is to be noted that the farmers of the area produce cotton and tobacco to the exclusion of foodstuffs. Every effort has been made in encouraging farmers in the production of more of the protective foods for their own consumption. In some of the European countries the farmers producing protective foods have had to sell them as their cash crop and resort to the poorer cheaper foods for their own subsistence, with the result that malnutrition has been common. Institutions for the care of orphans, the aged, the psychotic, and criminals have in the past been guilty of providing insufficient food for the inmates; however, much has been done to safeguard the interests of these inmates. With the prospects of higher prices for food, there will be a need for retrenchment on expenses, and food, too often, is an item which suffers. This may again lead to a lowering of the standards of the institutions with resulting ill effects upon the inmates.

CLINICAL SYMPTOMS

The description of pellagra by Casal (1762) covered most of the important points to be observed in the diagnosis of cases of florid deficiency. With the realization of the importance of recognizing the deficiency before it reached the full-blown state, attempts have been made to find signs and symptoms that would be indicative of an earlier stage, so that the appropriate treatment could be instituted. Goldberger (1926) had stated that without the typical dermatitis the diagnosis could not be made with any degree of certainty. Much work has been done in the laboratory endeavoring to find tests which w of value in establishing or corroborating the diagnosis.

Even at the present time the classic triad of dermatitis, diarrh dementia is the most acceptable criterion of the presence of the diseas tain signs are now considered as presumptive evidence of deficienc further work is needed before accepting them as incontrovertible evi However, the presence of presumptive signs in those whose dietary int adjudged to be inadequate should indicate the need for therapeutic s mentation of the diet.

The therapeutic trial with a specific nutrient has proved useful in doubtful cases. However, the results are frequently very difficult to eva for the appetite may be stimulated to a better dietary intake, produci improvement that cannot be construed as being associated with any sp nutrient. If specific nutrients are given in the form of crystalline vita certain signs and symptoms may be cleared without restoring the indiv to nutritional health. It is also difficult to maintain all other factors ex and a change in activity or unconscious improvement of the diet may terially alter the condition of the patient. It is also difficult to be obje in evaluating the signs and symptoms, as the appraisal of the patients by eral observers on successive examinations may vary a great deal. To b sired are objective criteria which may be evaluated the same by all obser

The seasonal incidence of the disease should always be kept in mind it was noted quite early that the first signs and symptoms usually appear about the same time of the year and might be present for several yea succession. Such periodicity is explained by the fact that the diet wors during the winter months as the supply of fresh vegetables diminished recourse to more stable foods with lower vitamin content was necessary. the coming of the summer there became available the products of the ga and an increase in the vitamin content of the diet. Another important fa was the custom of slaughtering animals for food in the fall and preservi good part of the meat with salt for use in the late winter and spring. with the coming of spring, activities became accelerated with the prepara of the fields for the new crops, and coincidentally with this was the incr in daily temperatures because of the accentuation in the power of the s rays. Thus there was a decrease in the vitamin content of the diet an increased demand by the body for a more nutritious diet which led to the pearance of the deficiency disease.

In discussing the signs and symptoms of pellagra it is to be noted there is no definite order of occurrence of the manifestations of the dis The chronologic order may also be quite varied, and one or more sign symptoms may be present for quite long periods of time before the app ance of others. Frequently there has been confusion in interpretation of appearance of the disease because of the presence of concomitant dise Also, the fact that deficiencies almost always were multiple further com cated the picture. The signs and symptoms will be discussed individually

Dermatitis

From the first the dermatitis has been the most pathognomonic sign of he disease, and the effect of irritative agents upon exposed parts of the body was considered significant. The lesion itself can well be looked upon as the esponse of the skin to an irritation, and the amount or degree of involvement possibly depends upon the extent of the deficiency and the intensity of he stimulus. The dermatitis may range from a mild erythema to a bullous ype of lesion.

Following the appearance of erythema there is pigmentation and desquamation which may be of a more or less chronic nature. At times a secondary infection may occur and mask the diagnosis, and local application applied to the area may result in improvement of the condition. These lesions do not necessarily arise from exposure to the sun but may be the result of irritation of strong soaps or sweat as is shown by the involvement of the scrotum and vulva. The basal lesions also may be made worse by the use of strong antiseptics or medications which have been applied in the mistaken belief that an infection is present.

The distribution of the lesions has always been noteworthy and frequently assists in arriving at the correct diagnosis. It has already been mentioned that the lesions are more commonly seen on parts of the body exposed to the sun.

In addition, the bilateral symmetry of the lesions is very striking. Unilateral lesions of the characteristic type may occur, but this distribution is not nearly as common.

On the extremities there is usually involvement of the extensor surfaces, although at times the flexor surfaces may be affected. In addition, the lesions are common over or adjacent to joints—more specifically the elbows, wrists, knees, and ankles. Occasionally the region at the base of the neck may be involved and the descriptive name of "collar of Casal" is applied to the appearance of lesions here, since it was described by Casal in 1762. The lesions of the scrotum and the vulva frequently are mistaken for a fungus infection because of the spread to the thighs and the pigmentation which is commonly associated with that condition. Both sites may show ulceration and prove to be quite painful.

The face may show the typical lesion on both cheeks, extending across the bridge of the nose in a butterfly pattern, which may simulate lupus erythematosus. There is, at times, an involvement of the sebaceous follicles of the skin of the nose and forehead which are filled with hardened plugs and stand out from the surface like small columns. A skin so involved feels very coarse and rough to the examining finger.

Glossitis

One of the most characteristic signs of pellagra has been the glossitis, and it is probably the most constant manifestation. In the presence of a normal appearance of the tongue, the diagnosis is extremely difficult to make with any assurance. The tongue is usually somewhat thickened and has a beefy red color with a smooth surface due to the loss of both the fungiform and filiform papillae. There may be a firmly attached, white, patchy, fibrinous coating overlying the erythema.

Saliva may drool from the mouth. Casal (1762) described a dirty, gray-coated tongue and a fetid breath. Undoubtedly there are times, before the degenerating papillae have been cast off, when the tongue would have that appearance. With the casting off of the coating, there would be revealed the typical smooth, beefy-red tongue.

The loss of papillae usually begins at the tips and sides of the tongue, and progresses until the whole surface has the same appearance. Dental impressions along the sides of the tongue may be quite prominent. The tongue burns and feels sore and makes eating difficult, if not impossible, which interferes with recovery even though a therapeutic diet is offered. With the institution of proper therapy, the papillae reappear, beginning at the middle of the dorsum and spreading out to the sides and anteriorly, until the surface is again covered, and the pinkish color restored with an overlying delicate whitish covering denoting a normal tongue.

Butler (1943) called attention to the difficulties of differentiating between the tongue of ariboflavinosis and that of niacin deficiency and suggested the use of clinical trials with each of the vitamins in order to reach a decision. The buccal mucous membranes and gums may also be erythematous and appear inflamed.

The changes of the mouth are said to be somewhat representative of the appearance of the remainder of the gastroinintestinal tract. With the inflammation of the stomach and intestines, a diarrhea is not uncommon, which results in increasing difficulty in the absorption of nutrients. It has been thought that preceding the inflammation there is a considerable degree of atrophy of the mucosae which in the stomach may have something to do with the disappearance of free hydrochloric acid which is so common in pellagra. Under treatment, the achlorhydria may disappear and a normal acid content be found on examination.

Fissures have been described at the angles of the lips which began at the vermilion border and extended out on to the skin for ½ to 1 cm. When occurring alone, this sign had been responsible for the term pellagra sine pellagra. The dermatologists had called this condition *perleche* and thought it to be due to a monilial infection. However, Sebrell and Butler (1938) showed that the condition was due to a lack of riboflavin in the diet. These fissures were seldom painful and ordinarily did not bleed but on healing would leave a nonpigmented scar which would persist. It has been reported by Smith (1940) that pyridoxine (vitamin B_6) will cure some of these fissures. It should be kept in mind that even on a riboflavin-deficient diet there may be periods of remission in spite of the fact that specific therapy has not been given. Toothless people and those with ill-fitting dentures may have a fold at the angles of the lips which show maceration and erythema difficult to differentiate from the fissures of ariboflavinosis.

Kruse (1942) has described changes in the papillae of the tongue that can be seen with the biomicroscope, which he stated were diagnostic of niacin deficiency at a much earlier stage than by any other criteria. He observed that there was first a swelling and engorgement of the papillae which was followed by atrophy and desquamation resulting, finally, in the smooth red tongue. These findings have not been accepted by all workers in the field, and undoubtedly additional work will clarify the situation.

Diarrhea

The diarrhea usually makes its appearance fairly late in the disease and consists of watery stools occurring 2 or more times daily. This condition may be severely debilitating and interferes with the proper absorption of food from the already handicapped gastrointestinal tract. In addition, if severe, it results in a certain degree of dehydration of the patient.

Weakness

One of the early symptoms is a sense of weakness which becomes more marked with the progress of the disease. The patients show a disinclination to engage in purposeful activity, which probably accounts for an apparent lack of ambition or desire to improve their condition. With proper treatment there is a return of strength and improvement in the sense of well-being. Spies (1943) made a study of the rehabilitation of the chronically malnourished which showed what can be done to change individuals from an economic loss to an economic asset.

Weight Loss

Another sign which usually appears early in the disease is a decrease in weight which usually parallels the severity of the condition. Occasionally, pellagrins will be obese but show the other typical signs of the disease. It should be kept in mind that obesity is not always a sign of good nutrition and may be the result of overeating of foods low in specific nutrients in order to attempt to satisfy the needs of the body. Progressive weight loss with a history of a poor dietary should make one suspicious of a subclinical deficiency, if all other common causes for loss of weight have been ruled out. It should also be kept in mind that there may exist concomitant deficiency disease with tuberculosis, ancylostomiasis, malaria, neoplasia, schistosomiasis, and other diseases.

The geriatric patient showing marked weight loss with a poor dietary history and without demonstrable organic lesion of a serious nature may present a problem that seems more or less hopeless. If a defeatist attitude is adopted because of the age and frailty of the patient, the foregone conclusion will soon be realized. However, if a constructive approach is taken, there is an opportunity to achieve some rather surprising results. Such patients present a picture that is all too common and may indicate subclinical to obvious deficiencies which may include pellagra. Everyone is familiar with the elderly patient appearing older than the stated age, showing signs of definite loss of weight, wrinkled skin with loss of turgor, moderate to marked anemia, feebleness and uncertainty of movements, the tongue smooth and pale or reddened, and having many querulous complaints and loss of hope and ambition. Careful study of the case fails to show serious organic reasons for the decline. A superficial dietary history secured from the patient may be misleading, for he frequently will make it appear that the diet consumed is quite good. However, the taking of a detailed dietary history will reveal inadequate variety of foods and insufficient quantities. Corroboration of the true state of affairs may be secured from those living in the same house. The treatment of the obvious deficiencies and the consumption of an adequate diet may work wonders with the patient. Hospital care, which permits close scrutiny of the dietary intake and the progress of the patient, will usually result in marked improvement, whereas on returning home they are prone to follow the same course that was responsible for their condition. More careful study of the dietary problems of the geriatric patient may assist materially in demonstrating many facts about their absorption and utilization of foods which are not known at the present time. The problem is a challenging one and promises good returns for the efforts spent in its solution.

Dementia

The dementia of pellagra usually is very insidious in its onset and may progress to a psychotic state, which may be so severe as to necessitate the incarceration of the patient in a mental institution. It was reported that about ¼ of the admissions to mental institutions in Egypt were the result of malnutrition, and a goodly percentage of these had pellagra. In the early stages the patients show lassitude, uncertainty, lack of purpose, forgetfulness, and confusion. This may then progress to actual psychosis with disorientation, delusions of persecution, and lack of insight. Under proper treatment the condition slowly regresses, but there may not be complete recovery.

Jolliffe (1940) described an acute deficiency of niacin in the central nervous system which he labeled nicotinic acid deficiency encephalopathy. This condition was characterized by stupor, cogwheel rigidity, and appearance of the sucking reflex. He reported rather sensational success with these cases when they were treated with adequate doses of niacin and niacinamide. In a series of cases treated with hydration and supportive treatment there was a mortality of 80 per cent. In a comparable series treated with large doses of nicotinic acid the mortality was reduced to 13.6 per cent.

Cleckley (1939) described a series of cases of stupor with no organic lesions to explain their condition, and they responded surprisingly well when sodium niacinate was given in doses of 100 to 300 mg. These patients usually presented a very poor dietary history without typical lesions of pellagra. The hebetude grading into stupor was thought to be indicative of severe acute pellagra, and the administration of niacin was held to be lifesaving.

TREATMENT

In treating pellagra it must be kept in mind that a multiple deficiency disease has to be coped with, and any measures directed toward the supplying f single vitamins will fall short of the desired goal. It also must be kept in mind that pathologic processes may be interfering with the absorption or utilization of the nutrients given therapeutically. Spies (1935) made a significant contribution when he demonstrated, with a series of cases, that it was necessary to do more than offer a good diet to the patients, for it was essential that the food be ingested even though it required an increased staff of nurses and attendants. He showed that the mortality in severe pellagra could be reduced from 54 to 6 per cent by these means. Needless to say, if the food or specific nutrients cannot be taken orally or absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract, it will be necessary to administer them parenterally in proper form.

Almost all writers on the subject of the treatment of pellagra from the earliest days have emphasized the importance of a good diet if the treatment were to be successful. At the present time such a good diet would satisfy the Daily Recommended Allowances of the National Research Council, and additional amounts of foods rich in the B complex, in appropriate proportions, should be given.

Foods that are known to be therapeutically active against pellagra are whole grain cereals, milk, liver, red meat, fresh vegetables, nuts, and yeast. In the case of milk, its effectiveness certainly does not seem to be measured in terms of its niacin content, for that has been demonstrated to be low, but Goldberger (1927) clearly showed its value as a pellagra preventive. These foods should be emphasized in the diet and have been traditionally used with good results.

Elvehjem (1937) showed that nicotinic acid (niacin) was effective in the treatment of canine black tongue, and soon afterward it was demonstrated by Fouts (1937), Harris (1937), Smith (1937), and Spies (1938) that it was also effective in human pellagra. It was soon noted by Sebrell and Butler (1938) that nicotinic acid (niacin), when given even in small doses to certain people, would result in marked flushing and burning of the skin which was especially marked over the face, points of the shoulders, elbows, and knees, and occasionally a sense of substernal depression. This reaction would occur within 15 minutes and would last for 30 to 45 minutes, and, aside from the unpleasant sensation, apparently had no deleterious effect. The sodium nicotinate which was the injectable form also had a similar action. With the introduction of the nicotinamide (niacinamide), this effect was not noted and there seemed to be no loss in the therapeutic effectiveness; this is the preparation in most common usage at the present time. Coramine, the diethylamide of nicotinic acid, has also proved to be effective in treatment.

The treatment of pellagra depends upon the state and severity of the disease and the complications that may be associated with it. There have been several classifications suggested to convey some impression of the various stages or forms of the disease. It is realized that any such classification must be arbitrary and must depend upon definition for its validity. At the risk of oversimplification it is suggested that there be 3 subdivisions: (1) the prophylactic, preventive, or subclinical, (2) the moderately severe, and (3) the severe.

The Prophylactic, Preventive, or Subclinical Pellagra

In defining this subdivision it is suggested that there be included those individuals whose dietary appears to be inadequate but who manifest no suggestive or presumptive signs of pellagra. Also included are those individuals subsisting on an inadequate diet who manifest suggestive or presumptive signs of pellagra but for whom a definite diagnosis of the deficiency cannot be made. This subdivision is probably the most important because it applies to a much larger group of individuals than either of the other groups. Goldberger (1927) stated: "It is probable that in each year for every death attributed to the disease there are fully 20 persons with clearly recognizable attacks and probably as many more with debility from the same cause but not definitely marked as such." It is particularly necessary in dealing with this group to try to improve the dietary in every way possible. Education of these individuals along the lines of proper nutrition and how they may best secure it is of fundamental importance. In rural areas it may be necessary to encourage the planting of gardens and keeping of cows and the use of milk products. In the city it may mean change of food habits, instruction as to the nutrient values of various foods, and the discontinuance of the use of alcohol.

In providing the proper diet it is essential that the Daily Recommended Allowances of the National Research Council be met as nearly as possible.

It is obvious that it is necessary to know the nutrient content of the foods used, and it is hardly safe to apply the values secured in one locality to the foods of other areas. The entire aim is to furnish the required nutrients in the required amounts and proper proportions. Generally speaking, the foods previously mentioned would be effective in preventing deficiencies of niacin. In case it is impossible to improve the dietary, one might have recourse to a rich source of the B complex such as brewers' yeast, ½ to 1 ounce daily, or some of the multivitamin preparations so widely advertised at the present time. It becomes the responsibility of the medical profession and the public health authorities to know whether the people of a community are subsisting on inadequate diets and to provide suitable remedies to overcome such deficiencies.

Moderately Severe Pellagra

In this subdivision are the patients that have signs and symptoms upon which a definite diagnosis can be based. The patient has characteristic skin lesions, sore mouth, weakness, and loss of weight. There may be diarrhea and mental changes. However, he is still attempting to do his work and is not

Table XXV. Recommended Dietary Allowances, Revised 1945
(Amounts Per Day)
(From Food and Nutrition Board, National Research Council)

	CALORIES	PROTEIN (GM.)	CALCIUM (GM.)	IRON (MG.)	VITAMIN A (I.U.)	THIAMINE (MG.)	RIBOFLAVIN (MG.)	NIACIN (NICOTINIC ACID) (MG.)	ASCORBIC ACID (MG.)	VITAMIN D (I.U.)
Man (154 lb., 70 kg.)										
Sedentary	2500	70	0.8	12	5000	1.2	1.6	12	75	
Moderately active	3000	70	0.8	12	5000	1.5	2.0	15	75	
Very active	4500	70	0.8	12	5000	2.0	2.6	20	75	
Woman (123 lb., 56 kg.)										
Sedentary	2100	60	0.8	12	5000	1.1	1.5	11	70	
Moderately active	2500	60	0.8	12	5000	1.2	1.6	12	70	
Very active	3000	60	0.8	12	5000	1.5	2.0	15	70	
Pregnancy (latter half)	2500	85	1.5	15	6000	1.8	2.5	18	100	400 to 800
Lactation	3000	100	2.0	15	8000	2.0	3.0	20	150	400 to 800
Children up to 12 yr.										
Under 1 yr.	100/2.2 lb. (1 kg.)	3.5/2.2 lb. (1 kg.)	1.0	6	1500	0.4	0.6	4	30	400 to 800
1-3 yr. (29 lb., 13 kg.)	1200	40	1.0	7	2000	0.6	0.9	6	35	400
4-6 yr. (42 lb., 19 kg.)	1600	50	1.0	8	2500	0.8	1.2	8	50	400
7-9 yr. (55 lb., 25 kg.)	2000	60	1.0	10	3500	1.0	1.5	10	60	400
10-12 yr. (75 lb., 34 kg.)	2500	70	1.2	12	4500	1.2	1.8	12	75	400
Children over 12 yr.										
Girls, 13-15 yr. (108 lb., 49 kg.)	2600	80	1.3	15	5000	1.3	2.0	13	80	400
16-20 yr. (119 lb., 54 kg.)	2400	75	1.0	15	5000	1.2	1.8	12	80	400
Boys, 13-15 yr. (103 lb., 47 kg.)	3200	85	1.4	15	5000	1.5	2.0	15	90	400
16-20 yr. (141 lb., 64 kg.)	3800	100	1.4	15	6000	1.8	2.5	18	100	400

confined to bed. This form of the disease can ordinarily be treated with diet alone, but especial care must be observed in being sure that the prescribed diet is rich in B complex food and that it is eaten in the proper amounts. The use of crystalline vitamins and yeast will hasten the recovery and should be used if available.

Niacin (nicotinic acid), 150 to 200 mg. daily, can be used, but the patient should be warned of possible uncomfortable reactions. It is better to give niacinamide, 150 to 200 mg. daily, and with this preparation no reactions are to be expected. At the same time, 10 to 50 mg. of thiamine and 10 mg. of riboflavin should be given daily. It is better to give these vitamins in divided doses 4 to 5 times daily, inasmuch as large doses given at one time are largely excreted in the urine and their value lost. In addition to these it is well to use brewers' yeast, ½ to 1 ounce daily. The yeast may be mixed with milk, tomato juice, or water and is usually accepted better when it has been refrigerated until it is quite cold. One may use liver extract, preferably the crude form, in doses of 75 to 100 c.c. intravenously in 3 to 5 doses of 20 c.c. each for 7 to 10 days. With the exception of the liver, it is expected that all of the needed nutrients may be taken by mouth. One may also use wheat germ, 250 to 300 Gm., or Ventriculin, 200 Gm., daily. One would expect to see a fair degree of improvement in 7 to 10 days, if there are no complicating factors interfering with the absorption or utilization of nutrients. Failure to improve under this regimen casts some doubt upon the validity of the diagnosis, but before discarding it the nutrients should be tried parenterally for 7 to 10 days more. Occasionally a patient will be unable to absorb the nutrients when given by mouth but will utilize them if they are given parenterally. Restriction of activities is advisable and will speed recovery because there is less demand for energy expenditure. Reassurance of the patient regarding his condition is of importance, for many may believe that they have a condition which is contagious, disgraceful, or incapable of cure, and knowledge of their condition will relieve their minds.

Severe Pellagra

Severe pellagra is the most difficult stage of the disease to treat and may require the utmost exertion on the part of the medical and nursing personnel if the patient is to recover. The patient is obviously very ill and demonstrates the major signs and symptoms of the disease, such as characteristic dermatitis, sore mouth, and perhaps diarrhea and dementia. He is very weak, perhaps prostrated, emaciated, somewhat anemic, and frequently shows evidence of considerable dehydration. He may not cooperate with the treatment and may, in fact, actually obstruct the treatment through apparent lack of interest or insight into his condition. Food may be refused because of anorexia which may be due in part to the soreness of the mouth, and the pain involved in eating overbalances the desire for food. It is in this type of case that the use of parenteral nutrients may be of inestimable value and spell the difference between success and failure in treatment. Injectable preparations of the vitamins are available and can be used singly, or combined, in what is considered to be the proper proportions for therapeutic use. The dosages are substantially the same as used orally in the treatment of the moderately severe group. The diet should be liquid or semisolid until the mouth is sufficiently improved to allow the use of solid foods. The caloric intake should be fairly high, 2,500 to 3,500 calories, and contain milk, eggs, rich meat soups, and cereals. As soon as tolerated, the diet should be more solid and composed of foods rich in the B complex.

When treatment is first begun, it may be necessary to combat the dehydration with physiologic saline until hydration is achieved. Sedation may be helpful to counteract the mental excitement and confusion. It may be necessary to give blood transfusions if the patient is severely anemic.

GENERAL MEDICAL MEASURES

Pellagra may appear as a complication of other diseases such as tuberculosis, malaria, malignancies, intestinal parasitic infestations, schistosomiasis, following surgical operations, during pregnancy and lactation, and in other diseases in which there is interference with intake, absorption, or utilization of the required specific nutrients. Every effort should be made to treat adequately the accompanying condition as well as the pellagra. This, of course, presupposes that every effort is being made to satisfy the nutritional requirements.

Dermatitis

Secondary infection of the skin lesions may be present, and the treatment given depends upon the severity and type of organism. Obviously the infection which is superimposed upon a skin surface already weakened and irritated should be treated as mildly as possible, for strong antiseptics or germicidal agents may further damage the involved area. Hot compresses of hypertonic solutions of magnesium sulfate serve ordinarily as adequate treatment. Sulfathiazole ointment, 5 per cent, or penicillin ointment may be effective. Protection of the skin against irritative agents such as strong sunlight or harsh soaps should be observed.

Glossitis

If the mouth is sore, one may use mild mouth washes several times daily. Usually with the proper intake of specific nutrients the mouth improves very rapidly. Vincent's organisms, which are present in large numbers during the deficiency, soon decrease in number as improvement progresses.

Diarrhea

One may use the customary agents for control of diarrhea, but usually they are not particularly effective. Improvement of the nutrition is usually associated with a decrease in the number of stools and a return to more normal consistency. If the motile form of *Endamoeba histolytica* is found, it is advisable to begin treatment with the amebicides unless the condition of patient is too critical. One must weigh in his mind the condition of the tient, the estimated damage due to the presence of the parasites, the danger herent in the drugs, and the response to be expected from dietary therapeut

Dementia

The obviously psychotic patient should be given the same care and co sideration that is customarily accorded the mentally ill. It is necessary to ta into consideration that (1) the psychosis may be entirely due to the pellagr (2) the pellagra may have activated an underlying latent psychosis such schizophrenia, paranoia, or manic-depressive type; (3) the psychosis may hav been present and the pellagra is merely a complication of it.

The patients not yet obviously psychotic should be reassured, and, too excitable or nervous, may be benefited by mild sedation.

Weakness

Restricting the activities of the patient usually has a beneficial effect because of the lessening of the demands upon the body. It has been observe on many occasions that the patients who are hospitalized may have a remission of signs and symptoms without the diet being improved. This may partially explain some of the seasonal variation of the disease in that the period of greatest activity correspond roughly with the increased incidence of th disease. With the use of the proper dietary therapy there is usually a rathe rapid increase in strength and ability to work.

Considerable emphasis should be given to the task of instructing the patient about the cause of his difficulty and what should be done about it whe he returns home. All too frequently, these patients, on leaving the hospital return to their old dietary, either through necessity or by preference, ofte resulting in a recurrence of the disease after a time. If possible, contac should be maintained either by having the patient report to the physician a regular intervals or by visiting the patients in their homes. Economic rehabilitation is difficult but not infrequently is the only real solution to th problem. Any amount of good advice about the proper dietary is of littl value if the proper foods cannot be grown or purchased.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The laboratory has not been of great value in establishing the diagnosi of pellagra, but it has had corroborative significance. Much work has bee done in the attempt to provide tests that would point out the presence of subclinical deficiency or a gross deficiency, but, as yet, such tests can be suggestive only when combined with certain clinical signs or a history of a deficient dietary.

The presence of F_2 in the urine by the method of Najaar (1944) has bee used as an indicator of a deficiency of niacin in the system. The excretion o he n-methyl niacinamide (F_2) in the urine can be determined by the measurement of the fluorescence produced by appropriate treatment of the urine. As he deficiency progresses the amount of the F_2 decreases, but this does not always indicate the imminence of the appearance of clinical pellagra.

Attempts to measure the niacin content of the blood have shown a remarkable constancy in the amount present, regardless of the nutritional status of the patient. Thus such a measure has proved to have little value in the diagnosis of subclinical or clinical pellagra.

The use of load tests has been thought to give some indication of the niacin status of the person tested. Perlzweig (1942) showed that the fasting urinary level of total nicotinic acid (nicotinic acid plus trigonelline) was practically the same when comparing normal and apparently deficient groups. After fasting, urine was collected, 500 mg. niacinamide were given, and the urine collected over a 12-hour period. The test showed that those subsisting on the better dietary excreted more of the total nicotinic acid than those on the marginal intake. Such a method might be used to good advantage in small groups of patients, but obviously it would be of little value for survey purposes.

The blood picture is not characteristic, but with the disease one may expect to find some degree of normochromic normocytic anemia, which in some cases may approach the hyperchromic macrocytic type of anemia.

The blood chemistry may show some decline in the serum proteins but usually not of severe degree. The albumin fraction is usually more depressed than the globulin.

Gastric analysis, according to Sydenstricker (1941), frequently shows achlorhydria which may or may not return to normal under treatment.

The stools may be watery but seldom show mucus or blood. Especial attention should be directed toward the determination of the presence of the eggs of intestinal parasites for, if present, they may be contributing to production or maintenance of the deficiency.

Coproporphyrin may be found in excess in the urine of pellagrins, particularly those of alcoholic etiology involving liver damage, according to Dobriner (1937).

PATHOLOGY

The earlier writers, in describing the morbid anatomy of pellagra, did not realize that they were dealing with a multiple deficiency disease and so included more than would present-day writers. The symptom complex has been broken down with the discovery of other members of the B complex and the realization of signs and symptoms resulting from the deficiency of these other factors in the diet. However, the close association of these factors in the various foods makes it seem very likely that the appearance of the signs of deficiency of any one factor augurs a subclinical deficiency of the other factors. The treating of an isolated deficiency with the specific crystalline vitamins may be followed by the appearance of signs of deficiency of on more of the other factors. It is now thought that most of the changes in nervous system are due to thiamine deficiency. A description of the pathol of niacin deficiency will be limited to lesions of the skin and gastrointesti tract.

In pellagrous patients Moore (1942) found pathologic changes both in skin affected with characteristic lesions and in apparently normal skin fr another part of the body. These changes consisted mainly of dyskerato atrophy of the epidermis, and inflammation of the cutis. He thought process was reversible because of a favorable response to treatment wi niacin (nicotinic acid). The similarity of the microscopic appearance pellagrous lesions to chronic inflammation of the skin makes it difficult to di ferentiate them. The conditions with which the pellagrous lesions may be co fused are eczema, neurodermatitis, and erythema multiforme. It seems ev dent that the lesions of the skin are quite nonspecific in their appearanc microscopically. The explanation of the causation of the dermatitis is no known. There is apparently some condition of the skin which makes it mor susceptible to the action of irritative agents than normal skin. At one time was thought there was an increase in porphyrin in pellagra, and from wha was known of the sensitivity of the skin to sunlight in porphyria, it was con sidered that a logical explanation had been found. However, it was difficul to explain the presence of lesions on parts shielded from the sun and thos on patients who had not been exposed to sunlight. Then it was demonstrate there was no increase in porphyrin in most cases of pellagra and that theor had to be abandoned.

Sydenstricker (1941) reported that autopsies of patients dying of pellagr revealed fatty livers. Microscopic examination showed extreme fatty de generation. He reported that one of these livers was properly prepared an used in treatment of a pernicious anemia case, with the characteristic reticulo cyte response. However, this liver extract administered to pellagra pa tients was entirely ineffective.

The gastrointestinal tract generally shows atrophy and thinning of th mucosa. In some portions there may be hyperemia which may progress t ulceration, particularly in the terminal portion of the small intestine and th colon.

It is probable that the changes in the epithelium are responsible for th diarrhea and have an adverse effect on the absorption of the nutrients. Undoubtedly the far-advanced cases reach an irreversible point beyond whic it is impossible to absorb nutrients, and it becomes necessary to provide them by parenteral injection if a recovery is to be effected. The achlorhydria may arise as the result of the atrophy of the gastric mucosa, and with adequat therapy the return of the hydrochloric acid to the stomach contents may be expected. In the cases with diarrhea there may develop a sprue-like syndrome which may be associated with a macrocytic hyperchromic anemia which has recently been shown to respond to folic acid in adequate dosage. This is probably just another indication of the marked multiplicity of deficiencies which, when combined, constitute the pellagra syndrome.

References

Butler, Roy E.: 1943. Riboflavin Deficiency, M. Clin. North America **27**: 399-408.

Casal, G.: 1939. Quoted by Major, R. H., 1762, Classic Descriptions of Disease, ed. 2. Springfield, Ill., Charles C Thomas.

Cleckley, H. M., Sydenstricker, V. P., and Geeslin, L. E.: 1939. Nicotinic Acid in the Treatment of Atypical Psychotic States, J. A. M. A. **112**: 2107.

Dobriner, K., Strain, W. H., and Localio, S. A.: 1937. Quantitative Measurement of Coproporphyrin and Total Coproporphyrin I Excretion in Normals, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **36**: 752.

Dodd, Katharine: 1941. Pellagra in Childhood. In Harris, Seale: Clinical Pellagra, St. Louis, The C. V. Mosby Co., pp. 341-356.

Elvehjem, C. A., Madden, R. J., Strong, F. M., and Woolley, D. W.: 1937. Relation of Nicotinic Acid and Nicotinic Acid Amide to Canine Black Tongue, J. Am. Chem. Soc. **59**: 1767.

Fouts, P. J., Helmer, C. M., Lepkovsky, S., and Jukes, T. H.: 1937. Treatment of Human Pellagra With Nicotinic Acid, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **37**: 405.

Goldberger, Joseph: 1926. Present Status of Our Knowledge of Etiology of Pellagra, Medicine **5**: 79-104.

Goldberger, Joseph, and Tanner, N. F.: 1925. A Study of the Pellagra-Preventive Action of Dried Beans, Casein, Dried Milk, and Brewer's Yeast, With a Consideration of the Essential Preventive Factors Involved, Pub. Health. Rep. **40**: 54.

Goldberger, Joseph: 1927. Pellagra—Its Nature and Prevention, Pub. Health Rep. **42**: 2193-2200.

Harris, L., and Hassan, A.: 1937. Nicotinic Acid and the Pellagra Preventing Vitamin, Lancet **2**: 1467.

Jolliffe, N., Bowman, K. M., Rosenblum, L. A., and Fein, H. D.: 1940. Nicotinic Acid Deficiency Encephalopathy, J. A. M. A. **114**: 307.

Krehl, W. A., Sarma, P. S., and Elvehjem, C. A.: 1946. The Effect of Protein on the Nicotinic Acid and Tryptophane Requirement of the Growing Rat, J. Biol. Chem. **162**: 403-411.

Kruse, H. D.: 1942. Lingual Manifestations of Aniacinosis With Especial Consideration of Detection of Early Changes by Biomicroscopy, Milbank Memorial Fund Quarterly **20**: 262, 89.

Moore, R. A., Spies, T. D., Cooper, Zola K.: 1942. Histopathology of Skin in Pellagra, Arch. Dermat. & Syph. **46**: 100.

Najjar, Victor, White, Virginia, and Scott, D. B. M.: 1944. On the Isolation and Properties of the Fluorescent Factor F_2 From Human Urine, Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp. **74**: 378-391.

Perlzweig, William, Sarett, H. P., and Margolis, Lester H.: 1942. Studies in Nicotinic Acid Metabolism. A Test for Nicotinic Acid Deficiency in Man, J. A. M. A. **118**: 28-30.

Ruffin, Julian M., and Smith, David, T.: 1941. Studies on Pellagra at Duke University School of Medicine. In Harris, Seale: Clinical Pellagra, St. Louis, The C. V. Mosby Co., pp. 194-247.

Sebrell, W. H., and Butler, R. E.: 1938. Riboflavin Deficiency in Man, Pub. Health Rep. **53**: 2282.

Sebrell, W. H., and Butler, R. E.: 1938. Reaction to Oral Administration of Nicotinic Acid, J. A. M. A. **111**: 2286.

Sebrell, W. H., and Butler, R. E.: 1939. Riboflavin Deficiency in Man (Ariboflavinosis), Pub. Health Rep. **54**: 2121-2131.

Sebrell, W. H.: 1945. Nutrition and Public Health, J. Am. Dietet. A. **21**: 18-21.

Smith, D. T., Ruffin, J. M., and Smith, S. G.: 1937. Pellagra Successfully Treated With Nicotinic Acid, J. A. M. A. **109**: 2054.

Smith, Susan Gower, and Maring, David W.: 1940. Cheilosis Successfully Treated With Synthetic Vitamin B_6, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **43**: 660.

Spies, T. D.: 1935. The Treatment of Pellagra, J. A. M. A. **104**: 1377.

Spies, T. D., Chinn, A., and McLester, J. B.: 1937. Severe Endemic Pellagra: a Clinical Study of Fifty Cases With Special Emphasis on Therapy, J. A. M. A. **108**: 853.

Spies, T. D., Cooper, C., and Blankenhorn, M. A.: 1938. Nicotinic Acid in the Treatment of Pellagra, J. A. M. A. **110**: 622.

Spies, T. D.: 1943. Nutritional Rehabilitation of One Hundred Selected Workers for Industry, J. A. M. A. **122**: 911.
Stannus, H. S.: 1912. Pellagra in Nyasaland, Tr. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **5**: 112.
Swaminathan, M.: 1938. Estimation of Nicotinic Acid in Biological Materials, Indian J. M. Research **26**: 427.
Sydenstricker, V. P.: 1941. Studies on Pellagra at the University of Georgia. In Harris, Seale: Clinical Pellagra, ed. 1, St. Louis, The C. V. Mosby Co., pp. 248-275.
Wheeler, G. A.: 1933. The Pellagra-Preventive Value of Autoclaved Dried Yeast, Canned Flaked Haddock, and Canned Green Peas, Pub. Health Rep. **48**: 67.
Woolley, D. W.: 1946. The Occurrence of a "Pellagragenic" Agent in Corn, J. Biol. Chem. **163**: 773-774.

CHAPTER 63

COSMOPOLITAN DISEASES AS SEEN IN THE TROPICS

ANTHONY DONOVAN

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

Prior to World War II a common misconception among medical men practicing in temperate climates was that medical practice in tropical zones differed greatly from that of colder regions, both in the incidence of the various diseases and in the clinical characteristics of human illnesses. The increased knowledge of actual conditions in the Tropics, accumulating during the past few decades, and especially the personal tropical experience during World War II of thousands of physicians formerly acquainted solely with temperate climates, have effectively eliminated most of these erroneous concepts, so that today there is a more realistic approach to the problem of disease as encountered in the Tropics, and there is coming into being a body of scientific data and of trustworthy statistics which is dispelling the old hazy impressions and myths regarding tropical medicine.

The incidence of the various diseases in any part of the world depends on 3 general factors, which, in order of importance, are (1) economic conditions, (2) climate, and (3) race. These 3 conditioning factors are usually inextricably interwoven. In any given area one or another of the 3 may play the predominating part in determining which of the illnesses of mankind are of most frequent occurrence, but, in general, and especially as regards tropical countries, it can be safely said that the relative order of importance of the 3 is as stated. Economic conditions and climate are especially closely related. It is not the purpose of this chapter, however, to discuss the relationships of climate, economics, and race to disease incidence; other sections of this book are devoted to those matters, and here the subject matter will be limited to pointing out some of the peculiarities in the natural history of the important cosmopolitan diseases—ailments of world-wide incidence—as they occur in tropical regions.

TUBERCULOSIS

Faust (1944) states that "with few exceptions all the cosmopolitan diseases are relatively prevalent in warm climates." Of these cosmopolitan diseases (which by definition excludes malaria), the chief scourge of the Tropics is tuberculosis. In most mortality tables from the hot countries tuberculosis usually ranks with, or outranks, malaria as the chief cause of death. For example, the annual report for 1942 of the Health Officer of Panama City, Republic of Panama, lists the 6 principal causes of death, in the order named, as tuberculosis, pneumonia, heart disease, diarrhea and enteritis, cancer, and nephritis. For the city of Colón, on the Atlantic end of the Panama Canal, the health officer report of mortality rates for the same year lists as principal causes of deaths: tuberculosis, organic heart diseases, pneumonias, nephritis, apoplexy, and cancer. (See Tables XXVII, XXVIII, and XXIX at the end of this chapter for the 5-year death rates (1938-1942) of the Panama Canal Zone, Panama City, and Colón.) And of 13,729 autopsies performed at the Board of Health Laboratory, Ancon, Canal Zone, from 1904 to 1942, tuberculosis leads the list as the most frequent cause of death, 1,655 cases of tuberculosis causing death having been found in 13,729 autopsies (Report of Health Department of the Panama Canal, 1942).

Tuberculosis is world-wide in extent, but tropical areas have much more of the disease than colder climates. The role of the triumvirate of factors previously mentioned—economic conditions, climate, and race—will not be discussed here except to state the rather obvious conclusion that poverty and ignorance, with attendant overcrowding, poor sanitation, malnutrition, high birth rates, and generally chaotic family life, appear to be the contributing causes of a high tuberculosis mortality in the Tropics. Mumford and Mohr (1944), in a study of the distribution of disease vectors and diseases on tropical Pacific islands, found that, of 87 diseases occurring on 20 islands, only tuberculosis and influenza were found on all. A perusal of the recent book, *Global Epidemiology,* by Simmons et al. (1944) throws into sharp relief the predominance of tuberculosis as the principal cause or one of the principal causes of death in all of the tropical countries included in the volume. The annual tuberculosis death rate per 100,000 population in the United States is now under 40. In many coastal cities of South America the death rates from tuberculosis approach 10 times that figure. Bueno (1946) states that the tuberculosis death rate for all of Brazil is 250 per 100,000 population, but that the coastal city of Recife, capital of the State of Pernambuco, has a mortality rate of 400. Callao, port for Lima, the capital of Peru, has a tuberculosis mortality rate of 400 or over; and Guayaquil, Ecuador, approaches 500, according to some reports. Faust (1944) states that in India, in 1938, the death rate from pulmonary tuberculosis was 253 per 100,000; in the United States, in that same year, the rate was 44.6.

Clinical forms of tuberculosis appear to differ in no essential particular in tropical areas as compared with temperate zones. There is a difference, however, in the incidence of the various clinical forms. In newly opened tropical or subtropical regions, where there is an indigenous population only recently exposed to outside contacts, there is often the development of massive "tuberculinization" of the population, with a high incidence of primary type of infection. Records from Peru indicate that this occurred in the highlands of the southern part of the country, deep inland, in the Cuzco area, following the construction of the Mollendo-Arequipa-Cuzco railway in the latter part of the nineteenth century and the first decade of the present one. Bueno describes a similar picture in Brazil, where the interior of much of the country is still in a stage of "pre-tuberculinization" (in the capitals of the States of iauhy and Matto Grosso the tuberculosis mortality rates are 70 per 100,000 opulation); in contrast, the heavily populated coastal area has a high incidence in Recife, capital and principal port of the State of Pernambuco, the tubercu-osis mortality rate, as previously mentioned, is 400 per 100,000); while in he southern part of Brazil, where the general living standard is higher and here contact with the outside world has perhaps been more intense over a onger period of time than further north on the coast, or than in the hinter-and, tuberculosis rates are dropping. Tuberculous meningitis, miliary tuber-ulosis, gastrointestinal, bone, and joint infection with Koch's bacillus are all more frequent in tropical and subtropical regions than in temperate zones, due primarily to poor sanitary conditions and to lowered resistance on the part of the individual, as well as to inherent racial susceptibility.

In general, therefore, it can safely be stated that tuberculosis is the principal cause of death in most tropical areas, that it occurs in acute, virulent forms less commonly seen in temperate zones, and that its high incidence depends on the variable factors of economic conditions, racial make-up of the population concerned, climate to some extent, and the immunologic status of the exposed populations.

THE PNEUMONIAS

Lobar pneumonia and bronchopneumonia are important causes of death in the tropics. Bronchopneumonia is especially common in children under 10 years. In tropical highlands, pneumonia is probably the chief cause of death. This is due to the poor state of nutrition of the general population, the lack of adequate clothing and housing, and the sharp changes in temperature and humidity which are common in the altitudes, as, for example, in the Andes chain. Clinically the disease seems to be most virulent among individuals who dwell at or near sea level and contract pneumonia when journeying at high altitudes; and conversely, it is said that people accustomed to the rarefied atmosphere of high altitudes show a high mortality from pneumonia when they contract the disease in the lowlands. There is little statistical proof of these latter statements. Additional factors in high pneumonia mortality in the Tropics are the usual ones of poor or nonexistent medical and nursing care, lack of hospital facilities, and deficient treatment, especially the lack of availability of the newer antibiotics and sulfonamides. There are, however, no important clinical differences in bronchopneumonia or lobar pneumonia in tropical as compared with temperate climates. Applebaum and Shrager (1945), in a study of 500 consecutive cases of pneumonia at Gorgas Hospital in the Panama Canal Zone, discuss the epidemiology of the disease and the reasons for higher incidence among certain racial and social groups and state that "in general, social conditions, racial status, and occupational environment seem to be more important than climate; and it may be emphatically stated that pneumonia is not only a disease of temperate zones, but merits equal attention under all climatic conditions."

THE COMMON CONTAGIOUS DISEASES

Diphtheria

Diphtheria is definitely less common in the Tropics than in cold cli except that in urban communities in the temperate zones, where ther high level of public health practice, the disease has almost reached the va ing point. However, cities in mountainous regions in countries comm considered as tropical often show high incidences of diphtheria. For exa the seaport and chief city of Ecuador, Guayaquil, with a hot, humid cli has at least 10 times less diphtheria than the capital of the country, Q which, although only a few miles from the equator, lies at an elevatio about 9,000 feet and has an average year-round temperature of about 52 Recent rather serious epidemics of diphtheria have occurred in Buenos A Argentina, and in Montevideo, Uruguay, cities with a temperate climate with sanitary and public health facilities somewhat less developed tha comparable North American cities. The disease appears to have the same eral characteristics and clinical course in any climate (Pan American S itary Bureau, 1931).

Whooping Cough

Pertussis, tos ferina, or whooping cough, is prevalent in tropical clima but again, as with diphtheria, incidence and fatality rates are higher in tropical highlands. In the Andes chain in South America frequent epiden range through the Indian populations, and whooping cough is one of the ch causes of death in children under 2 years of age in these regions. Again th are no important clinical differences in the disease as encountered in tropi lowlands, tropical highlands, or temperate zones, which are not explaina on the bases of racial characteristics, general nutritive and physical status the populace, and availability of competent medical attention.

Scarlet Fever

As with streptococcal infections in general, scarlet fever is relatively ra in the Tropics. In 2,132 autopsies performed on children 10 years of age a under, reported by Kean from the Isthmus of Panama (1946), only 4 deat were attributed to scarlet fever. Sporadic cases occur almost anywhere tropical or subtropical climates, but there are few, if any, reports of epidem outbreaks of the disease in torrid zones. When cases do occur, they are us ally mild, at least in recent years. This appears to coincide with the genera mildness of the disease as reported from the United States in the past 5 yea The disease does not present an important problem to the practitioner in th Tropics.

Smallpox

Almost, though not quite, eliminated from temperate climes, smallpox, o variola, is still an important medical and public health problem in tropica countries. Much has been accomplished in the past 25 years in the way of va cinating the general population in most countries of the torrid zone, but st oradic outbreaks occur, even in the cities. One factor to be kept in mind in ganizing vaccination programs in hot climates is the necessity for careful frigeration of the vaccine; otherwise much of the work done will be wasted fort, and a false sense of security will be engendered. Often the responsi-lity of vaccinating masses of people is left to poorly trained and poorly ntrolled nonmedical personnel who are not instructed in the need for care-l preservation of the vaccine. In recent years, and especially in Venezuela, mild form of smallpox called *alastrim* has frequently been reported; mortal-y is almost nil, and it has been said that any fatalities in an outbreak of sup-osed alastrim should cast doubt on the diagnosis. Clinically, smallpox pre-nts the same characteristics whether seen in temperate zones or in the ropics.

Measles and German Measles

Measles and German measles, especially the former, are relatively com-non in the Tropics and appear to present similar clinical characteristics in ny climate. Measles is frequently fatal in tropical zones, due to secondary ronchopneumonia, otitis media, and other complications.

Mumps

There is little that need be said here about mumps. It occurs in the ropics with about the same frequency as in temperate climates and has no listinctive clinical characteristics in hot countries as compared with tem-erate and cold lands.

Chicken Pox

Chicken pox is common in all parts of the world, is hardly ever fatal, ap-ears to have uniform clinical findings wherever it occurs, and warrants no urther discussion in this place.

Meningitis

There appear to be decided differences in the incidence of the meningitides ir different latitudes, especially when the various causative agents are considered. Kean and Crandall (1944) in a study of meningitis on the Isthmus of Panama, noted a higher incidence of pneumococcic meningitis in the hot cities of Panama (22.9 per cent of all meningitis cases) and New Orleans (23.7 per cent of meningitis cases) than in New York City (8.4 per cent) or Chicago 15.5 per cent). They stated that the incidence of tuberculous meningitis is high, and that of meningococcic meningitis is low, in Panama, whereas streptococcic meningitis seems to occur about as frequently in Panama as in cities of the United States. It was further stated that streptococcic infections in general (puerperal sepsis, septic sore throat, scarlet fever, rheumatic fever) have a lower morbidity and mortality rate on the Isthmus of Panama than in the United States but that the occurrence of streptococcic meningitis is about equal in the 2 areas.

During recent years severe epidemics of meningococcic meningitis have raged in Chile, especially in the cities of Santiago and Valparaiso, but these localities are of course not at all tropical in climate or situation.

In general, it can safely be stated that meningococcic meningitis is infrequent in the Tropics, that tuberculous meningitis is more common than in temperate climates, that pneumococcic meningitis is also more often seen in tropical areas, and that the other forms of meningitis occur with about the same frequency in the Tropics as in temperate zones. No marked clinical differences are seen in any latitude.

Poliomyelitis

Poliomyelitis, a disease of the central nervous system about which there is much that is still obscure, especially regarding epidemiology and transmission, is apparently less common among the poorly nourished, ill-clad, debilitated masses existing in many tropical areas than among the well-fed, well-cared-for residents of the temperate zones of the earth. In fact, there is statistical evidence indicating that the higher the economic and social level of a population, the more frequent is the occurrence of poliomyelitis. No attempt will be made here to go into the possible reasons for this. It is true that cases of the disease are seen sporadically in the Tropics, and also that poliomyelitis appears to be on the increase in tropical and subtropical countries (viz., recent outbreaks in Colombia and in Costa Rica). This may possibly be paralleling the general advance in economic and social well-being and the increased contact with the outside world that is taking place in most tropical countries. No further discussion seems warranted here, since so much awaits further elucidation by more intensive research into the natural history of the disease.

CARDIOVASCULAR-RENAL DISEASES

Rheumatic Fever

Until recent years most authorities have stated that rheumatic fever is uncommon in the Tropics. Opinion is now changing, and it is recognized that the disease is not at all rare in the torrid zones. There is evidence to indicate that this is due to an actual increase in the incidence of the disease, and not to mistaken diagnoses on the part of practitioners in former years. Hardgrove, Whittier, and Smith (1946), reporting from the Gorgas Hospital in the Panama Canal Zone, found a decided increase in the number of cases since about 1927, and stated that there were no tenable explanations for the increase in the incidence of the disease. Levine (1946) stated that rheumatic heart disease was uncommon, but not rare, among the natives of eastern New Guinea, and expressed the opinion that the more carefully people in the Tropics are studied, the more rheumatic heart disease will be found. The reports from the National Institute of Cardiology of Mexico (Chavez et al.) are worthy of study in this connection. Mumford and Mehr (1944) found rheumatic disorders to be relatively common in their survey of 20 tropical Pacific islands. There appear to be no significant clinical differences in the disease as seen in the Tropics and in temperate zones.

Hypertension and Hypertensive Cardiovascular Disease

There is a paucity of comparative data concerning the incidence of hypertensive cardiovascular disease in the Tropics as compared with temperate zones. In general, there seems to be little doubt that the relative occurrence of high blood pressure, generalized arteriosclerosis, arteriosclerotic heart disease, cerebrovascular "accidents," and coronary artery disease is considerably less in the Tropics than elsewhere. It also appears evident that there are marked racial differences in susceptibility to the hypertensive diseases. Kean (1944) took the arterial blood pressures of a primitive Indian group in the Panamanian Tropics and found an average reading of 105.2 systolic and 69.3 diastolic (in 407 Indians of the San Blas Archipelago), with no hypertension in any individual. In a study of the racial distribution of nephritis and hypertension in Panama, Taylor (1945) encountered hypertension (with diastolic pressure over 100 mm. Hg) to be 6 times more common in West Indian Negroes than in native Panamanians and 3 times as common in the Negro group as in whites. He also reported arteriolar nephrosclerosis to be 7 times more frequent in the West Indian Negroes than among Panamanians and 3 times as frequent among the former as in the white race. Glomerulonephritis was rare and mild, pyelonephritis being more frequently seen.

Calculi in the Urinary Tract

Davalos (1945) states that the world's chief "stone areas" are India, South China, Egypt, Mesopotamia, and Holland. Renal and ureteral calculi are common in the southern part of South America, especially in north and central Chile, and in Argentina. In Brazil there are many cases in the northeast and in the south, but the disease is rare in the Amazon basin. Davalos examined 60,000 persons in a humid, hot region of southern Ecuador without finding evidence of stone in a single individual. Vermooten, discussing this paper, said that 1 case of renal calculus had been found in 1 million hospital admissions in South Africa. Diet, water supply, and racial characteristics appear to influence the incidence of stone. The region around Mérida, on the Yucatán peninsula of Mexico, is notorious for the high incidence of kidney stone; this is a limestone area, with a high calcium content in the drinking water. Rose (1945) found many cases of kidney stone in the tropical zones of Australia, which he attributed principally to insufficient fluid intake on the part of the residents of the area.

OTHER COSMOPOLITAN DISEASES

There are very many other important diseases of world-wide incidence occurring in the Tropics as well as in temperate climates, about which little can be said here authoritatively due to lack of trustworthy data. Cancer and other neoplasms are encountered everywhere in the world, with apparently a highe incidence of certain types in temperate zones as compared with the Tropics and vice versa; for example, cancer of the stomach is probably more often encountered in temperate zone cities than in the torrid zones; the same holds true for bronchogenic carcinoma, whereas cancer of the skin is probably more frequent in the hot Tropics. Appendicitis is universal, but there seems to be a lesser incidence among primitive peoples, and also among races with unusual dietary habits. Diseases of the liver are common in tropical and temperate climates; a higher incidence of liver abscess is certainly to be expected in areas with poor sanitary facilities where amebiasis is frequent, but the comparative incidence of liver ailments such as the cirrhoses must await elucidation by many more autopsy reports from the Tropics. Mental illness and the psychiatric diseases are universal, but again little can be said here as to their relative incidence in cold and hot countries. The venereal diseases are more frequent in the Tropics, especially lymphogranuloma venereum and granuloma inguinale, which are much less commonly seen in temperate climates as compared with gonorrhea and syphilis. Clinically, there are no very remarkable differences in any of the above ailments as encountered in the Tropics as compared with the same disease entities in temperate lands. It is to be hoped that future work will enable more definite statements to be made regarding the world-wide incidence and the clinical and pathologic characteristics of the cosmopolitan diseases in tropical, subtropical, and temperate climates.

To conclude this chapter there follow 4 tables adapted from the 1942 Report of the Health Department of the Panama Canal (1942a) which are believed to be of interest and value in showing the principal causes of admission to hospitals and the principal causes of death in a carefully controlled tropical area. Disease and death in military personnel are not included in any of these tables. Table XXVI lists the diseases causing the greatest number of admissions of employees of the Panama Canal (white and Negro) to hospitals during the 5 years from 1938 to 1942, listed in order of frequency, and giving the average incidence per 1,000 employees. During these 5 years the mean number of employees was 25,123.

TABLE XXVI. DISEASES CAUSING GREATEST NUMBER OF ADMISSIONS TO HOSPITAL OF EMPLOYEES OF PANAMA CANAL, 1938-1942

(Adapted from the 1942 Report of the Health Department of the Panama Canal.)

DISEASE	AVERAGE RATE PER 1,000
Malaria	16.0
Diseases of nasal fossae and adnexa	10.6
Gonococcus infection	8.2
Pneumonias	8.0
Bronchitis	6.6
Diarrhea and enteritis	5.8
Hernia	5.8
Diseases of the heart	5.6
Diseases of the pharynx and tonsils	5.4
Syphilis	4.6
Appendicitis	4.0

Table XXVII, which lists the principal causes of death from disease among the Canal Zone population for the 5-year period 1938-1942, is of special interest when compared with Tables XXVIII and XXIX, which show respectively the principal causes of death from disease among the populations of Panama City, Republic of Panama, and of Colón, Republic of Panama, during the same 5-year period. The differences in the death rates for specific diseases are highly instructive and reflect the effects of general hygiene, economic status, and racial background on mortality rates.

TABLE XXVII. PRINCIPAL CAUSES OF DEATH FROM DISEASE, CANAL ZONE POPULATION, 1938-1942

(Adapted from the 1942 Report of the Health Department of the Panama Canal.)

DISEASE	AVERAGE RATE PER 1,000
Organic disease of the heart	0.858
Cancer	0.534
Nephritis	0.484
Pneumonia	0.410
Tuberculosis	0.328
Syphilis	0.224

(Mean population, 48,014)

TABLE XXVIII. PRINCIPAL CAUSES OF DEATH FROM DISEASE, PANAMA CITY, 1938-1942

(Adapted from the 1942 Report of the Health Department of the Panama Canal.)

DISEASE	AVERAGE RATE PER 1,000
Tuberculosis	2.134
Pneumonia	1.376
Organic disease of the heart	0.928
Nephritis	0.730
Diarrhea and enteritis	0.718
Cancer	0.666

(Mean population, 109,700)

TABLE XXIX. PRINCIPAL CAUSES OF DEATH FROM DISEASE, COLÓN, 1938-1942

(Adapted from the 1942 Report of the Health Department of the Panama Canal.)

DISEASE	AVERAGE RATE PER 1,000
Tuberculosis	1.846
Pneumonia	1.434
Organic disease of the heart	1.380
Cancer	0.832
Nephritis	0.742
Apoplexy	0.680

(Mean population, 43,659)

It will be noted that tuberculosis was fifth in the list of causes of death from disease among the Canal Zone population, with a mortality rate per 100,000 of 32.8, which compares favorably with the rates in the United States; whereas in the Panamanian cities of Colón and Panama City tuberculosis was first on the list of causes of death, and the mortality rate for Colón was 184.6 per 100,000 population, and for Panama City, which is said to be one of the most crowded cities on earth, the tuberculosis death rate was 213.4 per 100,000.*

---

*Editor's note (O. F.): In 1939 in Java, death caused by tropical diseases was only 5 per cent of the total deaths.

References*

Applebaum, I. L., and Shrager, Joel: 1945. The Pneumonias in Panama, Am. J. Trop. Med. **25**: 423-433.

Bueno, M. M.: 1946. Tuberculosis Epidemiology in Brazil, Dis. Chest. **12**: 343-347.

Davalos, A.: 1945. The Rarity of Stones in the Urinary Tract in the Wet Tropics, J. Urol. **54**: 182-185.

Faust, E. C.: 1944. Tropical Diseases in the Mediterranean Basin and Tropical Africa, Gastroenterol. **2**: 13-31; **2**: 395-411; **3**: 163-187.

Hardgrove, Maurice, Whittier, L., and Smith, E. R.: 1946. Rheumatic Fever on Isthmus of Panama, J. A. M. A. **130**: 488-490.

Health Department of the Panama Canal (Report of) for the Calendar Year 1942: 1942. The Panama Canal Press, Mount Hope, C. Z., pp. 37 and 42.

Health Department of the Panama Canal (Report of) for the Calendar Year of 1942: 1942a. pp. 4, 12, and 13.

Kean, B. H.: 1944. Blood Pressure of Cuna Indians, Am. J. Trop. Med. **24**: 341-343.

Kean, B. H.: 1946. Causes of Death of Children on the Isthmus of Panama, Am. J. Dis. Child. **71**: 351-356.

Kean, B. H., and Crandall, W. D.: 1944. Meningitis on the Isthmus of Panama, Am. J. Trop. Med. **24**: 17-23.

Levine, H. D.: 1946. Rheumatic Heart Disease in New Guinea, Ann. Int. Med. **24**: 826-836.

Mumford, E. P., and Mohr, J. L.: 1944. Manual on the Distribution of Communicable Disease Vectors in the Tropics (Pacific Islands), Am. J. Trop. Med. (Supplement) **24**: 1-26.

Pan American Sanitary Bureau: 1931. Diphtheria in the Tropics, Publication No. 46, Washington, D. C.

Rose, T. F.: 1945. Urinary Colic Due to Crystalluria and Calculi in Hot Humid Climates, M. J. Australia **1**: 558-561.

Simmons, James S., Whayne, Tom F., Anderson, Gaylord W., and Horack, Harold M.: 1944. Global Epidemiology, vol. I, Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott Co.

Taylor, C. E.: 1945. The Racial Distribution of Nephritis and Hypertension in Panama, Am. J. Path. **21**: 1031-1046.

---

*Additional useful information can be found in the Bulletin of the Pan American Sanitary Bureau (Boletin de la Oficina Sanitaria Panamericana), published monthly in Washington, D. C.

CHAPTER 64

THERAPEUTICS OF TROPICAL DISEASES*

HECTOR J. ROSSELLO

The therapeutics in tropical medicine is not simple or limited only to administration of specific medication against the cause. It is necessary also to combat other possible associated infections, such as syphilis, tuberculosis, malaria, intestinal infections. It is often necessary to improve the patient's diet, because of the frequency of avitaminosis, hypochromic anemia, and hypoproteinemia. The excellent results obtained in Puerto Rico and in Brazil by a North American mission illustrated the fact that treatment of the anemia due to ancylostomiasis, by enriching the diet, so improves the condition in some cases that there is no need for specific anthelminthic therapy.

The severity of tropical diseases usually results in physiopathologic syndromes which may take precedence in the clinical aspect of the disease. For example, severe diarrhea due to bacillary dysentery results in dehydration which must be specially treated. Again, the syndrome of hyperpyrexia seen in certain severe forms of malaria may require its own therapeutics. Shock may also be the result of definite tropical parasitic or bacterial affections. Summarizing, therapeutics must include combating all serious general and local disorders.

Another very important consideration is the frequent necessity of "mass treatment" in many tropical regions where the disease has spread to regions of general poverty. Under such conditions the exigency of speed in technics of administration, the necessity of "average dosage" adaptable to the average level of individual tolerance, and, finally, economic considerations, all may oblige the physician to use therapeutic procedures applicable to the common level which are entirely different from those needed in treatment of the individual patient.

Summarizing, the therapeutics of so-called "tropical diseases" may demand application of the following, which should form a part of the physician's "must" medicinal formulary:

1. Administration of *specific medicaments* capable of directly combating the cause of the disease, such as parasite, bacterium, toxin, by expelling, destroying, or neutralizing it. The administration of most of these agents often consists of repeated courses, carried out according to plan or program which may be reduced to a veritable "therapeutic scheme."

2. Administration of *symptomatic* and *general medicaments* to combat symptoms.

3. *Treatment of associated infections* (microbic, parasitic). In tropical regions, association with other diseases, such as syphilis, tuberculosis, bacillary

---

*See also each chapter and Chapter 65 for additional facts on this subject.

dysentery, is very frequent. The physician must simultaneously treat these conditions which tend to aggravate tropical diseases.

4. The *diet* must be corrected and improved. The diet is often defective in many tropical regions, leading to latent or manifest avitaminoses, chronic hypoproteinemia, and hypochromic anemia. A diet rich in vitamins, proteins, and iron greatly aids the treatment.

TREATMENT OF TROPICAL BACTERIAL DISEASES

Treatment of Bubonic Plague

Treatment of bubonic plague is possible with streptomycin. Other therapeutic means are:

1. *Specific antiplague sera*—Results are incomplete and questionable.
2. According to some authorities, *sulfonamides* are only slightly effective.
3. *Other agents* which have been tried are Mercurochrome, acridine, injection of bacteriophage, diathermia, or even local fever therapy (Pasteurella does not reproduce at temperatures higher than 37° C.).

Make an incision into the bubo, with drainage when the bubo is soft. Early extirpation of the thickened gland, before it has softened, or cauterization or destruction by chemical or thermal caustic measures, is contraindicated because septicemia may follow.

The following measures have been employed for general symptomatic purposes: cardiac stimulants, morphine (an analgesic), saline purges, blood transfusions, plasma therapy, etc. The efficacy of any medication in bubonic plague depends largely upon *early administration,* since death is almost inevitable after septicemia sets in (90 to 100 per cent).

4. According to Sokhey, streptomycin is very effective in plague. Aureomycin and Chloromycetin are being investigated.

Treatment of Tularemia

Streptomycin is almost specific. No other systemic therapy is necessary. Hot moist applications over buboes are advised, with a weak antiseptic. Incision of the bubo should not be carried out early, unless it has suppurated and is definitely softened. In such cases, incision with simple drainage suffices. Many authorities advise against it. For ulcerations, use hot moist applications with a weak antiseptic. For the dry ulcers, prolonged application of saturated solution of magnesium sulfate is recommended, also applications of aqueous saturated solution of urea. Conjunctival infection is treated with weak antiseptic irrigation, with applications of homatropine or semisaturated solution of magnesium sulfate (Foshay). For general symptoms, fever, "typhoidal" state, the usual general symptomatic treatment is indicated. Mild radiotherapy (x-rays) has also been used effectively in bubonic forms. Specific antiserum of Foshay, now commercially available, is used with variable results. Sulfonamides, according to Curtis, are successful to a certain extent; they are effective after the first week of the disease. Sulfathiazole is recommended by Weilbaecher and Moss. On the other hand, according to other authors, sulfonamides are of no benefit. O'Hara has used neoarsphenamine successfully. Chloromycetin and aureomycin are also indicated.

Treatment of Leprosy

INTERNAL TREATMENT OF LEPROSY

The following drugs have been used: dyes, as aniline derivatives, principally methylene blue; substances of supposed chemotherapeutic action, as gold salts, organic mercurials, copper sulfate, organic arsenicals, antimonials, sulfonamides, various iodine preparations, etc.; vitamins, principally vitamins B_1 and B_2; human serum and plasma; heterogeneous sera, antidiphtheritic, antitetanic, antiophidic venom, so-called antileprous sera; vaccines and specific antigens; also nonspecific antigens and vaccines—leprous antigens, tuberculous antigens, etc., diphtheria toxoid, venom of snakes and other animals, vaccines of complex composition; and the sulfone drugs, as Promin, Diasone, and Promizole.

Promin.—Very gratifying results have been reported by Faget (1947) in the treatment of leprosy by the sulfone drugs Promine, Diasone, and Promizole. As a matter of fact, with but a few exceptions, only lepromatous leprosy and mostly far-advanced cases were subjected to sulfone therapy. All the lesions of leprosy respond more or less slowly to the therapeutic action of the sulfones.

Promin is the sodium salt of p,p′-diaminodiphenylsulfone-N,N′-didextrose sulfonate. Diasone is disodium formaldehyde sulfoxylate diaminodiphenylsulfone. Promizole is 4.2′-diaminophenyl-5′-thiazolesulfone. Diaminodiphenylsulfone, the parent chemical from which these drugs are derived, seems to be the active principle of each.

The Promin treatment was initiated at the Carville Leprosarium in March, 1941, by oral administration, but this proved to be too toxic and subsequently intravenous injections were used in all cases. The treatment is started with 1 Gm. daily with gradual increase of the dose in an attempt to reach the optimal dose of 5 Gm. daily. In the majority of patients this dose was attained. In some patients who develop repeated toxic reactions the maximum daily dose must not exceed 2 Gm. Treatment should be discontinued for 1 week, following each 2 weeks of daily intravenous injections of Promin. The blood concentration of Promin following each intravenous administration rises rapidly but is transitory. The drug is rapidly eliminated in the urine, and usually only a trace or none remains in the blood stream at the end of 24 hours. In certain cases, after a prolonged course of treatment, Promin may accumulate, reaching a level of 20 to 30 mg. per cent after 24 hours. In all such cases the dose probably should be reduced.

The therapeutic effects are slow, no definite improvement usually becoming manifest before 6 months of treatment. Thereafter improvement is progressive with virtually no relapses. No case gets worse under treatment. After 6 months of treatment, almost 25 per cent of the patients show some improvement. After 1 year, this percentage is increased to 60; after 2 years to 75; after 3 years, to almost 100. Clinical improvement is manifested by shrinking and flattening of small nodular lesions to complete absorption, with only a pigmented spot remaining. Larger and deeper nodular lesions disintegrate more slowly with subsequent scar formation. Infiltrative plaques gradually subside with diminution of the inflammatory swelling and edema of the tissue. Occasionally regrowth of hair may follow resolution of lepromatous lesions on eyebrows, beard, arms, and legs. Mucosal lesions are more responsive than cutaneous lesions. Oral ulcerations heal within a few months to a year. Nasal obstruction is relieved. Epistaxis is checked. Improvement in leprous laryngitis occurs frequently with restoration of the patient's voice and relief of dyspnea. Emergency tracheotomies become unnecessary.* There is occasional improvement of impaired vision.

Another feature in improvement during sulfone therapy is the reversion of bacteriologically positive skin and nasal smears to negative. This is in direct proportion to the duration of treatment. During the first year practically all cases remain positive for bacilli. During subsequent years of treatment, an ever-increasing proportion of patients revert from positive to negative in the routine monthly skin and nasal smears. After 4 years of continuous intensive treatment, the incidence of negative reports exceeds 50 per cent. Promin appears to eliminate bacillary infection from the blood stream and the small vessels, thereby preventing the formation of new lesions (Fite and Gemar, 1946). The histopathologic changes which occur are predominantly of an atrophic nature with gradual lessening of the number of acid-fast organisms present in the lesion to the point of final disappearance.

At Carville Leprosarium, Faget reports that 19 Promin-treated patients have been discharged as ''disease-arrested'' following 12 consecutive months of negative bacterioscopy. Of this number, 3 were under treatment for 1½ to 2 years, 3 from 2 to years, 6 from 3 to 4 years, and 7 from 4 to 5 years. He notes further that penicillin used in large doses in the treatment of leprosy proved unsuccessful. Other antibiotics deserve further investigation as possible chemotherapeutic agents against leprosy.

Diasone was used in leprosy by Faget, Pogge, and Johansen (1946), by mouth, in daily doses varying for adults from 0.33 to 1.0 Gm. and for children from 0.17 Gm. to 0.5 Gm. The drug has an advantage over the other sulfone drug just described, Promin, in that Diasone is well tolerated by mouth by most patients, whereas Promin must be given intravenously because of its toxicity by mouth. Faget, Pogge, and Johansen (1946) reported on 104 patients treated in the National Leprosarium for 2½ years. Of these, 66 had received treatment for 6 months or longer; 74.2 per cent of these patients were predominantly lepromatous cases, 20.4 per cent of frankly mixed type, and only 5.4 per cent neutral. In 30 per cent leprosy was far advanced; in 51 per cent, moderately advanced; and in 19 per cent, the lesions were minimal.

---

*Editor's note (R. B. H. G.): This is a striking advance. The Editor recalls the numerous tracheotomies which he saw in the Leper Colony at Molokai some years ago, procedures which became very necessary in many cases of laryngeal leprosy.

At the time of writing the report, in 24 per cent of these patients skin scrapings were bacteriologically negative. There was objective improvement in the specific leprous lesion in 65 per cent of patients treated for 6 months and longer. In 23 per cent the improvement was subjective, and no demonstrable change was claimed. There were no cases that were clinically worse.

It would appear from this report that Diasone has an action similar to that of Promin. Treatment with Diasone has the advantage already stated; the drug is well tolerated by mouth in doses up to 1.0 Gm. daily for long periods of time. Hematuria occurred in some patients, but after a system was inaugurated beginning with a small dose of 0.33 Gm. daily for the first 2 weeks and then gradually increasing to 1.0 Gm., no cases of hematuria occurred.

Chaulmoogra Oil, Esters, and Salts.—Chaulmoogra oil is a stable oil extracted by pressure or drainage, by use of ether, etc., from seeds of certain trees of the genus Hydnocarpus (*Flacourtiaceae*, origin British India). This produces the best oil. There are also other species of Hydnocarpus found in other regions (*Hydnocarpus wightiana, H. anthelmintica*, etc.). These other species of trees are found in British India, Burma, Indo-China, South China, the Malay Archipelago, Central Africa, etc. In Brazil there are certain trees of the family Carpotroches, the seeds of which are also rich in chaulmoogra oil.

1. *Oral administration* is not as popular as it formerly was because it causes gastric disturbances. Sodium salts are better tolerated orally; the salts are commercially available in tablet form. Ethyl esters are also administered in capsules.

2. Administration by *intramuscular injection* is preferred at present, diluted with olive oil, with an added analgesic, as, for example, in the excellent formula of Mercado.

Mercado-Heiser Formula

Chaulmoogra oil	60 Gm.
Olive oil	60 Gm.
Resorcin	4 Gm.

For intramuscular injection, begin by giving 1 c.c. every 2 or 3 days, increasing slowly to 6 or 8 c.c. every 2 or 3 days, continuing over a long period of time.

The intramuscular injection of ethyl ester, a more fluid and volatile liquid than the oil, diluted in equal parts of olive oil, with an analgesic, is preferable.

E. C. C. D. Formula (Muir)

(Prepared by Smith Stanistreet Co., Calcutta)

Ethyl ester of oil of chaulmoogra	1 c.c.
Camphor	1 Gm.
Doubly distilled creosote	1 c.c.
Neutral olive oil	2.5 c.c.

For intramuscular injection, begin by giving 0.5 c.c. twice a week, increasing slowly to 5 c.c., interrupting treatment after 12 injections (several courses).

3. *Intravenous injections* demand care and proper asepsis to prevent thrombophlebitis. This method of injection has the advantage of being well tolerated. In institutions where chaulmoogra therapy is still employed, it is the preferred method because of the better preparations which are available.

Harper's Formula

Chaulmoogra oil	10 parts
Ether	1 part
Iodine	1 in 1,000

For intravenous injection, 0.5 to 1.0 c.c. once a week for many months. Many authors state that intravenous injections of chaulmoogra oil are well tolerated when the oil is neutralized. Pereira injects 1 c.c. of oil twice a week, rarely 1.5 c.c. or 2 c.c., giving a series of 8 injections with intervals of 15 days.

Treatment should be continued for a long time with intervals of suspended treatment for 15 to 30 days. In addition to various complications due to lack of tolerance locally (gastric, intramuscular pain, endophlebitis), general febrile reactions may occur (leprous reaction) with depression, neuralgia, and bacillemia, which may require temporary suspension of treatment.

Local intradermal injection with chaulmoogra preparations, the Philippine "plancha" method, is of controversial value. It consists of the intradermal injection (the needle entering barely 2 or 3 mm. into the skin) of small doses, 1 or 2 drops in each intradermal puncture, making several punctures at one session, repeating 1 or 2 or 3 times a week, puncturing around the border of the lesion 30 or 40 times. The same area, then, is not reinjected until after an interval of 1 or 2 months. This procedure may be combined with or used alternately with other administrative procedures.

Other Medicinal Agents.—Their number is legion, but none are comparable to sulfone therapy.

LOCAL TREATMENT OF LEPROUS LESIONS

Local treatment is a popular procedure in the treatment of infiltrating (lepromatous) lesions. It effects regression, though at times irregular and incomplete.

There may be an immunization reaction (Rogers, Padrock, etc.) due to reabsorption of the products of the leproma; however, the reactions are apt to be acute and dangerous (fever, bacillemia, etc.). For local treatment of the lesions, various agents and many procedures have been used.

Local applications of carbonic snow for a few seconds (to prevent vesication) are applied to about 5 to 10 different lepromas each time and repeated every 3 or 4 weeks, since each application, especially at the beginning, may be followed by slight febrile reactions (Wayson, 1913). Padrock associates this method with injections of gold salts.

Cauterization of the lepromas, by thermic, electrical, or chemical agents (brushing with trichloracetic acid in 20 to 50 per cent solution), may be performed.

GENERAL TREATMENT OF LEPROSY

In addition to treatment with drugs, considerable importance is attributed to hygienic and general treatment (fresh air, physical exercise) and to adequate diet, of sufficient nutritive value, high in proteins, rich in vitamins, with low starch and fat content; it is important to avoid foods that require difficult and prolonged digestion, to prevent gastric obstruction, deranged digestion, or constipation (frequent administration of laxatives is required). Vitamin B_1 is especially indicated. Treatment of other possible diseases frequently associated with leprosy in the Tropics is important—syphilis, scabies, malaria, tuberculosis, intestinal helminthiasis, amebic dysentery, etc.

SYMPTOMATIC TREATMENT OF LEPROSY

During the course of the prolonged development of leprosy, there occur acute periods that are more or less dangerous, accompanied by extension and aggravation of lesions, with bacillemia, etc. Neuralgia, sometimes very intense, as well as "leprous reactions," may also appear. These may persist for 2 or 3 weeks, with extension or aggravation of the lesions. Treatment of the neuralgia requires analgesic medicaments (antipyrine, Novalgin, salicylates, etc.) which are not always efficacious; also epinephrine, ephedrine, sodium salicylate (intravenously), fluorescein, histamine (1:1,000 solution intradermally), rachianesthesia, etc. Most authors prefer vitamin B_1 and intravenous calcium salts. Treatment of the leprous reactions consists principally of bed rest, light dietary regimen, repeated mild saline purgatives, avoidance of light (patient is frequently sensitive to light), avoidance of starches and fats, suspension of any prior medication, injections of calcium gluconate or of fluorescein intravenously, sulfur baths, etc. After the fever subsides, examine the patient carefully to discover whether new lesions have appeared.

Results of the complex therapeutics in leprosy have been poor in the past when chaulmoogra has been the only treatment. Better results may be expected in the future with the sulfones. Development of the disease is slow in 30 to 50 per cent or even 70 per cent of the cases, according to various statistics; but the patient is always exposed to a possible new outbreak, recessive or febrile. Probably 50 per cent of the cases that are slow in development and clinically healed are bacteriologically positive. But even when they are bacteriologically negative, this is no assurance of real cure (Sakurame, concerning recurrences 20 years after apparently complete clinical cure); bacilli have been seen in glands or viscera in apparently cured subjects at necropsy (Neuman, Lara, Plant, Unna, Jeanselme, etc.). However, a negative clinical and bacteriologic result permits social freedom to the individual, but no direct statements of absolute cure can be made.

The most recent discussion on the therapy of leprosy took place at the 1948 Fourth International Congresses on Tropical Medicine and Malaria at Washington, D. C., May 10 to 19, 1948. R. G. Cochrane (1948) particularly discussed the treatment of leprosy with Promin, Diasone, and Sulphotrone. While admitting that the sulfone drugs are powerful remedies for advanced and moderately advanced lepromatous leprosy, he showed, from his experience in India, that early lepromatous cases have not responded to sulfone therapy as rapidly as they have to adequately administered hydnocarpus oil and its derivatives combined with intensive intradermal medication. He recommends sulfone therapy for the more advanced lepromatous cases, for those cases which have relapsed or have not responded to hydnocarpus therapy, and for lepromatous cases among the European, mixed, and Mongolian racial groups. This is in contrast with the experience in the United States where chaulmoogra therapy has not been effective, whereas sulfones have been very promising.

Treatment of Brucellosis

The following have been tried:

1. *Streptomycin* combined with sulfonamide drugs; *aureomycin* and *Chloromycetin* have proved effective.

2. *Specific immunizing sera,* prepared from goats (Foshay et al.), horses, cows, etc., injected intravenously or intramuscularly 2 or 3 times a week in dosage of 20 to 40 c.c., have sometimes proved efficacious, especially when injected in the beginning of the disease. Sera from convalescent subjects have also been injected in doses of 100 to 300 c.c. Sera from human subjects who have been hyperimmunized by repeated injections of antimelitensis vaccines have also been used. In some cases this has given excellent results (Carpenter). Specific serum therapy has also been associated with sulfonamides (Flippin, etc.).

3. *Vaccines,* which even now are commonly employed without evident justification, should be used with caution, due to their frequent toxicity. Injections should be made intramuscularly once or twice a week, in increasing, not too high doses. The beginning treatment should be preceded by gauging the sensitivity of the patient (intracutaneous test), using various antigens such as Brucellergen, etc., intradermal injection of which provokes local erythema at the end of 24 to 48 hours in sensitive subjects. Vaccine therapy is contraindicated in acute cases or acute periods and should be used only in chronic cases in which it should generally prove efficient. Culture filtrates have also been used (Brucellin of Huddleson, Johnson, and Bates, 1933, 1936; Melitine of Burnet, 1922, etc.). These are given by intradermal injection of 0.1 c.c. for the intradermal sensitivity test, followed by progressive doses given intramuscularly.

4. *Sulfonamides* have been administered, associated or not associated with serum therapy, antibiotics, or with vaccine therapy. All the known sulfonamides have been used, and the results have not been in agreement. According to Blumgart and Gilligan (1939), there were 92 per cent cures with only 20 per cent recurrences. Good results were also reported by Welch and collaborators and by Richardson. On the other hand, according to other authorities, return of symptoms is extremely frequent. Even after symptoms disappear, it is possible to find Brucellae in the blood, which should justify the possibility of recurrence (Bethoux et al.; Long and Bliss; Wilson and Maier, 1940).

Treatment of Rickettsial Diseases

Specific therapy was attempted with serum from hyperimmunized rabbits and with sera from other immunized animals but to date has not proved successful.

Sulfonamides and penicillin have no beneficial effects on secondary infection. Snyder and co-workers (1944) have administered p-amino benzoic acid in 20 cases in Egypt, by oral route, maintaining blood concentration between 0.01 and 0.02 Gm. per 100 c.c.

Excellent results have been obtained with aureomycin and Chloromycetin.

Convalescent blood has not shortened the development of the disease but has lowered the temperature and improved the general state of the patient. Injections of crystalloid solutions, sodium chloride or glucose, are not efficacious and may even prove dangerous by increasing the edema. The bad effect of glucose or saline injections has been noted by various authors (Ong and Raffetho, 1940; Topping et al., 1943; Harrel et al., 1944; and others). These are to be used only when combined with sufficient plasma therapy. Combat the hypoproteinemia with amino acids and protein concentrates. Hepatic lesions frequently constitute an indication for the use of plasma therapy and the administration of vitamins. Headache, at times very intense, due to cerebral edema or to increased cerebrospinal fluid tension, and visual disturbances, such as edema of the optic nerve, should be combated by lumbar puncture.

Vaccines used to prevent endemic typhus have not been successful in man (Dyer, 1943).

Treatment of Verruga Peruana (Bartonellosis)

In both forms, the acute febrile and the chronic eruptive cutaneous, treatment consists of penicillin, aureomycin, or Chloromycetin.

Treatment of Diarrheic and Dysenteric Bacterial Diseases

Acute diarrhea and dysenteriform conditions caused by various Shigellae and Salmonellae frequently become widespread, with an epidemic character. They are serious because of the very marked dehydration.

1. *Intestinal disinfection*—at present by use of various antibiotics and sulfonamide drugs, with other medicaments such as purgatives, intestinal oxygen therapy, and others. Chloromycetin and Glucomycin are most promising.

2. *Replacement of fluids lost*—by saline and glucose injections to overcome dehydration; by plasma therapy to combat or prevent shock which is associated with this severe dehydration.

3. *Antitoxic medication*—with specific antisera when possible.

In addition to these 3 means of treatment, an adequate diet should be maintained, one which is nutritive, principally in proteins (liquid, semi-liquid, soft, with little residuum).

Treatment of Cholera

The syndrome of dehydration following diarrhea is important. Therapeutics consist of *re*hydration by glucose and saline injections, to restore the chloride level, preferably by intravenous injection, to combating acidosis by alkalinizing injections, and plasma therapy. Sulfonamide drugs have been found effective as well as antibiotics. See Chapter 28.

Treatment of Shigellosis

There is a certain relationship between the symptomatic aspect and the bacterial etiology. It is admitted in a general way that infection by *Shigella dysenteriae* is the most serious, largely because of the exotoxin of this organism. Preparation of a curative antitoxic serum has been possible only with *Shigella dysenteriae,* which is the only exotoxigenic form.

1. **Intestinal Antiseptics.**—Various intestinal antiseptics heretofore used, especially calomel, have been replaced by sulfonamide derivatives, preferably the slightly soluble forms, principally sulfathiazole, sulfadiazine, sulfaguanidine, Sulfasuxidine, phthalylsulfathiazole, phthalylsulfacetamide. (Concerning phthalylsulfanilamide and others, see Chapter 29.) It is necessary to administer the drug in doses which will attain sufficient concentration in the middle intestine, and which at the same time will be but slightly absorbed and which will not cause toxic accidents. For this reason, sulfonamides are generally ineffective and the various slightly soluble derivatives are also not efficacious. In the administration of sulfonamides, it is always necessary to begin with a *heavy initial dose,* continuing with *smaller maintenance doses* every 4 hours, with *abundant fluid intake* to prevent renal and bladder precipitation. Nausea and vomiting may make ingestion difficult. See Chapters 29 and 30 for dosage.

Weak doses are ineffectual, bacteria remaining in the intestines and transforming a subject easily into a symptomless carrier. Sulfonamide medication is to be continued until frequency of stools ceases, with disappearance of the mucus, pus, and blood from the stools, until the stools become formed and are of a pasty consistency, and until Shigellae disappear. All this requires, on the average, approximately 3 to 10 days. Sigmoidoscopy constitutes an even more exact means of evaluating cure.

Large quantities of liquids should be given, to maintain abundant diuresis, more than 1,500 c.c. of urine per day, with the object of preventing renal precipitation of the drug. This is important in dehydrated subjects, in febrile patients, and in hot weather. Maintain alkalinity of the urine by daily administration of 10 to 20 Gm. of sodium bicarbonate, which also serves to prevent renal precipitation of the drug by dissolving it in the urine.

Clinical cure generally occurs in 70 to 95 per cent of the cases, according to the drug used. Negative stool cultures result in 50 to 80 per cent of the cases. Persistence of bacilli in the intestines transforms the patient into a symptomless carrier; heavier dosage is then necessary, continuously applied, to destroy all organisms.

The action of sulfonamides may be supplemented by the administration of astringents, such as bismuth subcarbonate or kaolin; intestinal oxygen therapy, with slow injection into the colon of 250 c.c. of oxygen using a soft tube, repeated 3 to 6 times a day, is useful in cases which tend to become chronic. The administration of purgatives should generally be avoided. Some authors use purgatives but only in the beginning of the disease if there is no great dehydration and if stools are not too frequent, also providing no tenesmus is present (20 Gm. magnesium sulfate). Rectal instillation and enemata or colonic irrigation, with astringents or other medicaments, should be avoided. Opiates—laudanum, tincture of opium, morphine, etc.—are indicated when pain is very severe and when stools are very frequent.

2. **Aureomycin** and **Chloromycetin** are very effective, also **Glucomycin.**

3. **Rehydration—Plasma Therapy.**—Dehydration as a result of the diarrhea constitutes the most frequent complication of bacillary dysentery. It also induces oliguria, azotemia, alkalosis, and loss of Cl. The administration of large quantities of liquids is most important. In moderate cases not showing great dehydration or prostration or profuse diarrhea, give the patient 2,500 to 3,000 c.c. of liquids per day. In fulminating cases, with abundant diarrhea, great dehydration, hyperpyrexia, and marked diminution of diuresis, maintain diuresis at more than 1,000 c.c. per day by repeatedly injecting intravenously saline solution containing 5 per cent of glucose. If dehydration persists, with a tendency to shock, plasma therapy is indicated.

4. **Antitoxic Treatment.**—Antitoxic treatment consists principally of injection of 100,000 to 200,000 units of monovalent antitoxin. Injections should be given early and should be repeated. They are effective solely against toxins due to the Shiga type.

5. **Dietary Regimen.**—A diet rich in carbohydrates and proteins, liquid or semiliquid, with but little residue, should be administered: the regimen called "R-B-T" (rice, bananas, tea), enriched by sufficient protein (egg white, whey), amino acids (hydrolyzed casein), and vitamins (B complex and C). Later, boiled egg, beef juice, potatoes, cream, boiled ham, soft cheese, soft boiled meat, honey, purées, etc., may be added.

Treatment of Salmonellosis

Refer to Chapters 29 and 30.

There is need not only for treatment of generalized infections due to typhoid and other salmonellas (typhoid and paratyphoid fevers) but also for treatment of localized enteritis due to salmonellas.

Treatment of Typhoid Fever.—Treatment of typhoid fever schematically includes absolute rest in bed, proper hygiene of the mouth and skin, maintenance of daily diuresis at 1,000 c.c. minimum (up to 2,500 to 3,000 c.c. of liquids per day), controlled cooling of the patient with cold packs, application of ice to the abdomen, lukewarm and progressively cooled baths, etc., proper nutrition, treatment of complications. In ataxo-adynamic forms, transfusions may be efficient. Shock medication, by injection of pyretogenous agents, by heterogeneous vaccines, etc., may doubtless shorten the development of typhoid fever in some cases by provoking a transient algid state, but it is open to several dangers such as cardiac failure.

Streptomycin, aureomycin, Glucomycin, and Chloromycetin are promising, especially the latter 2 antibiotics.

Treatment of Enteritis and Alimentary Intoxication Due to Salmonellae.—

1. Administration of a purgative, preferably saline. However, if intense diarrhea lasts several days, the purgative may be useless or even objectionable.

2. Absolute abstinence from water or food if vomiting occurs, at least for 1 day.

3. Injection of liquids to combat dehydration, isotonic saline or glucose.

4. Replacement of chlorides when vomiting is profuse by intravenous injections of 10 to 20 c.c. of a 10 to 20 per cent solution of sodium chloride in water, repeated during the day if necessary.

5. If dehydration has persisted for several days and prostration is extreme, there may be insidious toxic shock which will require repeated plasma therapy with amino acids, oxygen therapy, suprarenal opotherapy, etc.

Salmonellas are much less sensitive to sulfonamides than are shigellas. Results are generally unsatisfactory.

Abstinence from food for 1 or 2 days, administration of liquids (rehydration by isotonic saline and glucose injections), carbohydrates, amino acids (hydrolyzed casein by ingestion or by intravenous injections); restoration of chlorides by injection (not excessive) which may serve to combat intestinal meteorism; use of plasma therapy, oxygen therapy, vitamins, suprarenal opotherapy, etc. Administration of sulfonamides gives less efficacious results than in shigelloses. Identification of the etiologic organism must be made in all cases to indicate the proper sulfonamide.

TREATMENT OF TROPICAL VIRUS DISEASES IN AMERICA

Treatment of Dengue

Treatment of dengue is symptomatic. Combat the orbital and dorsolumbar pains with salicylates, antipyretic-analgesics (antipyrine, acetyl salicylic acid, Novalgin, etc.); combat or relieve the febrile symptoms with hydrotherapy, moist cold packs, etc.; combat dehydration with copious administration of liquids. Frequently strong dorsal pains, pains in the limbs, joints, and cephalic pain impede the patient's movements and must be relieved by opiates. Later, during convalescence, the patient is profoundly prostrated, asthenic, weak, requiring proper nutritious diet, vitamins, especially vitamin B, and tonics.

Treatment of Lymphogranuloma Venereum

Treatment by use of sulfonamides is now most frequently used. The action is virostatic but not virocidal. Refer to Chapter 22.

Sulzberger and Baer (1943) state that by means of simple rest in bed and hot applications recent adenopathy may regress in equal proportion and time. Sulfanilamide has also been combined with other medication (Prats, Bercovitz, Costello, and Cohen). According to Grace, sulfanilamide should be given in courses of 1 or 2 weeks, in increasing doses, with a 2-week interval of rest.

Mild and recent cases should be treated for 4 weeks. Other cases and anorectal cases require 6 months to a year. Grace states that 80 per cent of the inguinal forms are cured in 3 to 6 weeks, the remainder more slowly; anorectal forms, in 9 to 79 weeks, in 39 per cent of the cases; the majority of the remaining cases show considerable improvement.

At present, many authors advise alternating the Frei antigen with sulfonamides (Prats, Cornbleet, Brandt, and Greenblatt).

Other treatments have been local diathermy, local radiotherapy, immunotransfusion, extirpation of nodules and glands, surgical treatment by colostomy in stenosis. Aureomycin is excellent. Bacitracin and Neomycin are good.

Treatment of Yellow Fever

Treatment of yellow fever is neither specific nor curative, and blood serum of convalescent subjects is not efficacious. Symptomatic treatment is given to combat hyperthermia and vomiting. Purgatives are not indicated; constipation is treated with enemata. Hypoglycemia has been treated by glucose injections; increase of guanidine in the blood has been treated by calcium gluconate injections, and the hemorrhagic tendency with blood transfusions. It is proper to follow the present medication for acute hepatitis: carbohydrates, protein therapy (amino acids), nucleotids, insulin, plasma therapy, calcium. The rapid diminution of diuresis and of the chlorides in the urine and in the blood is more difficult to combat. Vitamin B_{12} is indicated.

TREATMENT OF PROTOZOAN TROPICAL DISEASES IN AMERICA

Treatment of trypanosomal diseases is still in the experimental stage. The following drugs have been tried: organic trivalent arsenicals (arsphenamine, etc.) or the pentavalent forms (Pentamidine, Tryparsamide), organic antimonials (Fuadin), iodine-oxyquinoline (Yatren); colloidal iodine, emetine, Germanin (Bayer 205); azo derivatives of the benzidine series, Synthalin, Atabrine, sulfanilamide. Mazza found Bayer 7602 (Ac), by intramuscular injection, and Bayer 9736 (As), by intravenous injection, efficacious. Bayer 9736 (As) acts upon other trypanosomes and also experimentally upon *T. cruzi.* Mazza (1945) verified its curative effects in several cases, although other investigators had not confirmed this (Chagas, 1942). These substances are not entirely harmless. None have produced negative xenodiagnosis.

Synthalin is an artificial derivative of guanidine (decamethylene-diguanidine dihydrochloride) which has the property of causing hypoglycemia (Frank, Nothman, and Wagner, 1926), but it is not free from danger (hepatic lesions). It also exerts therapeutic action on mice infected with trypanosomes

(Janeso, 1935; Schern, Artagaveytia and Allende, 1935). This action ca be attributed to the hypoglycemia since the chemical also is trypanosomic in vitro in a very dilute solution (Yorke and Lowri, 1937). Consequen it must act directly. This fact has given rise to preparations of vari derivatives of guanidine and Synthalin, especially to certain diamidines wh exercise a marked trypanosomicidal action both in vitro and in vivo (in r and rabbits infected with *T. rhodesiense*). Ewing (1944) prepared numer aromatic derivatives, some of which have proved to be definitely trypa somicidal. Among these is diamidine-stilbene, which has proved effective animal infections with *T. rhodesiense, T. equinum,* and *Leishmania donova* etc., but is not effective against *T. cruzi.*

Treatment of Leishmaniasis

Treatment of leishmaniasis should be given early to prevent extensi of the lesions and invasion of the mucosa, where ulceration occurs. *Loc treatment* is effective in the single cutaneous lesions or "oriental button *(Leishmania tropica).* Treatment consists of radiotherapy, cauterization wit carbonic snow or carbonic anhydrate applied for a few seconds, interstiti injection of hypertonic solution of sodium chloride or of the trivalent antimonia salt, Fuadin, or of berberine sulfate, or of phosphoric acid, etc. In multipl extensive lesions which have already invaded the mucosa, such as occur i American leishmaniasis, these local treatments are not applicable and are no effective. It is necessary to institute *general treatment* by internal medicatio Trivalent or pentavalent organic arsenicals, given by injection, etc., hav been somewhat effective, but the best medication to date is the repeated an prolonged administration of antimony salts, principally the trivalent organi antimonials, by intramuscular injections of Antimosan or, preferably, o Fuadin (or Neoantimosan). Recurrences are frequent after variable periods the antimonials are less efficacious in this mucocutaneous form than in viscera leishmaniasis or kala-azar. For this reason, it is necessary to prolong the medication; it should be continued even after the cutaneous lesions have apparently disappeared, since mucosal lesions frequently appear after apparent cure of cutaneous lesions. Recurrences are fatal when small mucosal lesions persist, especially in the nasal fossa. Recurrence in the mucosa may occur very late, sometimes 10 years after cure of the cutaneous lesions (Mazza, etc.). For this reason, South American clinicians have emphasized the advantages of periodic repetitions of the series of injections. Papillomatous, hypertrophic forms are usually very resistant to antimony; Fuadin has also been found ineffective after many repeated injections. Some authors have advised, at this point, the combination with potassium iodide used as we have applied it in tertiary syphilis.

Tartar emetic or double tartrate of antimony and potassium or sodium is also effective. Apparent action is rapid, and the lesions may disappear after 10 or 15 injections; repeat, to avoid recurrences. Treatment which is not prolonged beyond simple cicatrization exposes the patient to recurrence (Dutra and Silva). The emetic is less easily tolerated than trivalent organic antimonials and leads to numerous accidents (brachial neuralgia, nausea, vomiting, hypotension, cough, salivation). Pentavalent antimonials are less effective.

Secondary infections should be treated by the general anti-infection measures: local disinfection of ulcerative surfaces, internal administration of sulfanilamide or penicillin.

Visceral leishmaniasis is more readily cured by antimonials; any of the 3 groups of antimonial salts may be used, especially the pentavalent (Stibosan, Neostibosan). Diamidine-stilbene has also been used intravenously. It is efficacious, but complications are frequent: congestion of the face, sweating, vertigo, lipothymia, headache, etc., usually transient, which may be combated by adrenalin. For this reason, the last drug should be used only in cases resistant to antimonials.

Treatment of Malaria

At present the South American physician uses 2 antimalarial drugs: quinine and its salt and Atabrine or quinacrine, the action of which is especially schizonticidal, by destruction of the young asexual forms of the malarial parasite. Action against the sexual forms is much less pronounced and may even be lacking. In addition, other, less important adjuvant drugs are used, the action of which is not actually antiparasitic, and in less degree than the above. A gametocidal action has been attributed to Plasmochin, and for this reason it has been suggested that it be used as a supplementary and associated medication for the other 2 drugs. It is somewhat toxic; it has not been included in the U. S. Pharmacopoiea XIV, nor has it been accepted by the American Medical Association in its formulary (N.N.R., 1945). Newer drugs are Paludrine (Chlorquanide), Chloroquin (Aralen), oxychloroquine (SN8,137), Sontochin (SN6,911), Camoquin (SN10,751), Pentaquine (SN13,276), and Isopentaquine (SN13,274).

It is conceded that an *immunity reaction* is produced in the malarial subject during the course of the infection, a reaction which has much to do with attenuation of symptoms and the temporary and ultimate disappearance of plasmodia from the blood, with progressive reduction of fever. This seems to occur spontaneously even when the patient has received no treatment. The importance given to the idea of the immunity reaction has led to the suggestion that advantage should be taken of this fact and that "therapeutic abstinence" be tried, at least temporarily. Refraining from medication would permit the production of several febrile paroxysms which, if not immediately subdued, would result in greater development of the immunity: it has been demonstrated that definite suppression of later recurrences is achieved more clearly, and with less delay, in those patients whose febrile paroxysms have been intense and repeated in the invasion period of malaria and in the initial stages, especially when the disease is due to *Plasmodium falciparum.*

On the other hand, immunity and suppression of recurrence is less complete in *P. vivax* infections, the initial attacks of which may be moderate and short. The problem of temporary therapeutic abstinence was fully debated by the International Commission on Malaria (1933-1937) and the therapeutic procedure was summarized as follows:

The subject is not to be treated in the first febrile paroxysms, permitting 2, 3, or 4 to occur before administering antimalarial drugs (quinine, quinacrine). This idea of abstinence has been vigorously opposed by many authors who state that it is not possible, simply by observation of the symptomatic aspect of the first febrile effects of a malarial patient, to foresee the ultimate development of subsequent paroxysms and that it is often impossible to determine solely by means of hematologic examination during the initial paroxysms whether the patient has a tertiary (benign) affection due to *P. vivax,* or a mixed *P. vivax* and *P. falciparum* (malignant) infection. In these mixed forms, *P. falciparum* infection, which is of slower development, shows fewer organisms in the beginning of the febrile attacks and thus it remains hidden by the abundant *P. vivax,* which predominates in the circulation in the first febrile paroxysms; this has led hematologists to believe that the form present was benign tertian malaria. Also, schizonts of malignant malaria are smaller and disappear from the blood more quickly because of their adhesive properties.

It is admitted that temporary therapeutic abstinence involves risk for the patient, and in general it is considered more advantageous to give treatment immediately after making the diagnosis. In addition, the physician rarely sees the patient before 1 or 2 febrile paroxysms have already taken place (except in military establishments). Medication should be initiated immediately with quinine salts or with quinacrine (Atabrine).

It is necessary to keep in mind, in administering the treatment, the different clinical forms which malaria may present and the various periods of development during which the physician may be called to intervene.

Treatment of the *typical intermittent forms,* benign tertian or quartan, consists in the immediate administration of quinine or quinacrine, by oral route, in convenient dose, following this general plan: administration, at the beginning, of a saline purgative which will promote biliary discharge in patients who usually have a certain degree of hepatocolic.

Quinine, preferably its sulfate, is generally sufficient to retard the febrile paroxysms. Other quinine salts have no advantage over the sulfate, and the sulfate can be obtained at a lower cost. It should be taken with a large glass of water. The physician must look for possible evidence of poor tolerance (gastric) and nervous sensitivity (deafness, vertigo, agitation, ambiyopia). For children, the dose should be reduced. Quinine is eliminated rapidly and does not accumulate, so that it must be administered repeatedly to maintain its effectiveness. Some authors consider blackwater fever a quinine hypersensitivity.

Atabrine (quinacrine) per os accumulates in the body because of slow elimination, and administration should not be continuous. Children tolerate quinacrine better than adults. Treatment should be interrupted for a period of several days; it is repeated again according to the same plan.

Combining quinine with quinacrine is not recommended since both act in the same manner (schizonticidal); combination of quinine with Plasmochin or of quinacrine with Plasmochin has been advised as the ideal treatment, but at present it is difficult and not altogether free from danger (cumulative toxicity). Discontinuance of these drugs for several months and removal of the patient from the endemic zone generally prevents relapse.

Treatment of *initial malignant forms* (falciparum; pernicious forms; comatose, bilious, algid, typhoidal) calls for immediate and energetic measures. Generally, poor gastric tolerance and hepatic congestion make oral administration difficult, so that it may be necessary to administer the quinine by intravenous injection. This procedure is used only in severe and pernicious forms. Aralen per os, however, gives excellent results.

TREATMENT OF TROPICAL DISEASES CAUSED BY SPIROCHETES AND LEPTOSPIRAS

Treatment of Relapsing Fever

Treatment of relapsing fever consists essentially of intravenous injections of neoarsphenamine. It may be repeated for several days, but cure may be effected by a single injection. The injection may be made immediately after the beginning of the paroxysm or during the first hours. If the first injection is insufficient, a second is to be given, preferably at the beginning of the second febrile period. Injections should not be given immediately before a paroxysm, because severe reactions may result (chills, intense hyperthermia, paroxysm, vomiting, etc., probably due to rapid mass destruction of numerous spirochetes with liberation of toxin—Herxheimer reaction). Neither is it wise to give the injection during the afebrile period since the drug will be eliminated before the spirochetes again invade the blood. Injection of neoarsphenamine during the first hours of a paroxysm primarily results in the disappearance of the spirochetes from the blood—not immediately, but after several hours—followed by disappearance of the fever which may at times be elevated in the beginning.

In some cases, arsenicals have only partial and limited effect, due to unduly resistant infection, caused probably by arsenic-resistant spirochetes. Other arsenicals which have also been used successfully are Mapharsen; sulfarsphenamine; pentavalent arsenicals by oral route (carbarsone, Stovarsol). We consider them less effective. Intramuscular injections of various preparations of bismuth may be used in arsenic-resistant cases, as well as sulfonamides (sulfathiazole, etc.). Cure obtained in this way leaves a *state of immunity* which may persist for 1 year or more. Penicillin was tried by Heilman and Herrell (1943) after Mahoney had obtained good results with the drug in syphilis. In experimental spirochetosis in mice, Heilman and Herrell noted disappearance of spirochetes from the blood in 24 hours, with very considerable decrease in mortality: these results have been verified by many other authors. Penicillin was later used with great success in relapsing fever in man (Lourie and Collier, 1943; Augustine et al., 1944; Eagle et al. 1944).

Treatment of Framboesia (Yaws)

Neoarsphenamine is effective by intravenous injection. Mapharsen is highly effective. An intravenous injection of but one dose may attain apparent clinical cure, but it is advisable to repeat the injections, not stopping with but one series. Sulfarsphenamine, though less effective, may be injected intramuscularly. Pentavalent arsenicals (Stovarsol, etc.) may be given orally. These last are less effective and South American clinicians advise their use solely as adjuvants. Intramuscular injections of various preparations of bismuth, as in syphilis, have an energetic curative action, although the action is not as rapid as that of the arsenicals. It is believed that the trivalent organic arsenical-bismuth combination, in alternating series, constitute the most energetic and permanent treatment. Only one series of arsenic-bismuth may be sufficient, but many authors advise repeating both series of injections once or twice. It is also suitable to combine with potassium iodide, as in syphilis, especially in cases with somewhat old and hyperkeratotic lesions. Also, as in syphilis, mercury and organic antimonials have shown to be effective, although less so than the arsenicals and bismuth. Bismuth also offers the advantage of low cost. Results of arsenic-bismuth medication, when repeated often enough, have been almost always beneficial, and in some regions the disease has been practically eliminated or very considerably diminished.

Penicillin was injected for the first time by Whitehill and Austrian (1944) in this disease, without additional treatment. The spirochetes disappeared in a few hours in many patients. Many improved in a few days, and complete cure was obtained in 2 or 3 weeks, without effect on serologic reactions. Lofgren (1944) also injected penicillin successfully, with much more rapid effect than with neoarsphenamine or Mapharsen, but without changes in serologic reactions.

Treatment of Mal del Pinto (Carate)

Mal del pinto has been treated with organic arsenicals, administered as in syphilis, with no change in the depigmentation. Results are not particularly successful according to Mexican investigators. Penicillin treatment has been used with varying reports of failure and success.

Treatment of Sodoku

Sodoku has been treated effectively by intravenous injection of organic arsenicals, as neoarsphenamine.

Treatment of Infections Due to Fuso-Spirillary Combinations

Penicillin is the drug of choice.

Fuso-Spirillary Infection of Wounds (Hospital Gangrene; Gangrenous Necrosis of the Wounded).—Treatment consists in disinfecting the wound with oxidizing antiseptics, or application of organic arsenicals, and treatment of the general state. Penicillin has been successfully administered; also sulfonamides.

Treatment of Diseases Due to Leptospira

Treatment is symptomatic. Good results have been obtained at times with convalescent sera, or specific sera prepared from animals. Organic arsenicals are not effective and may be dangerous because of the hepatic lesions. Injections of bismuth have sometimes proved effective. Sulfonamides are not effective. Penicillin is slightly effective in vitro (Lancet, 1941) but has been efficacious in experimental leptospirosis in guinea pigs (Heilman and Herrell, 1944). Herrell noted that this weak, in vitro action and energetic, in vivo action is characteristic of all spirochetoses with respect to all drugs. Penicillin has been used successfully in man by Bulmer (1945), who considers it effective when used before the liver and kidneys become affected; by Hart (1944), who believes it is successful when administered early, but failing if administered after 30 days; by Carragher (1945). Penicillin appears to be the best medication if instituted early and in sufficient dosage.

TREATMENT OF DISEASES DUE TO PROTOZOAL INFECTIONS OF THE INTESTINES AND ADJACENT ORGANS (AMEBAE, FLAGELLATES, AND OTHERS)

Treatment of Intestinal and Hepatic Amebiasis

In considering intestinal amebiasis from the therapeutic standpoint, the following clinical and developmental forms must be kept in mind since the treatment is not the same in all amebic forms: (1) carriers of amebae (cysts) without symptoms; (2) carriers of cysts with very moderate symptoms (indefinite symptoms) (chronic amebiasis); (3) simple acute diarrhea or acute episodes of transient exacerbation in chronic amebiasis; (4) dysenteric syndrome (amebic dysentery); (5) chronic intestinal amebiasis.

1. **Treatment of Symptomless Carriers of Amebic Cysts (Latent Chronic Amebiasis).**—Treatment of symptomless carriers of amebic cysts consists in the administration of iodo-oxyquinoline (chiniofon or Vioform or Diodoquin), alternating with arsenicals (carbarsone or Treparsol or acetarsone, etc.) and with bismuth orally or by enema, in a form which will be described later. It is not always easy to effect the complete disappearance of cysts; the older the infection and the more frequent the prior acute episodes in the history of the case, the more difficult is it to obtain good results. However, Craig states that with this combined treatment it has been possible to eliminate the infection in 85 to 90 per cent of asymptomatic amebic cyst carriers.

2. **Treatment of Amebic Carriers (Cysts) With Moderate and Indefinite Symptoms.**—In some cases, symptomatic medication will be necessary to overcome the constipation, pain, colic, and spasm, but it should be episodic and conditional, according to the intensity of the symptoms. Treatment of

these patients should be principally specific against the amebiasis, carried on by some form of iodo-oxyquinoline (chiniofon or Vioform or Diodoquin) and by a pentavalent arsenical orally (carbarsone, acetarsone, Treparsol) and, in refractory cases, by bismuth orally and other drugs (see below). The administration of emetine is unnecessary in these chronic cases in the absence of acute episodes (diarrheal exacerbation, pain, etc.) without reappearance of trophozoites in the stools.

3. **Treatment of Patients With Simple, Non-Dysenteriform Diarrhea.**—Treatment should be the same as treatment of the dysenteric form. After completion of treatment, it is necessary to examine the feces several times, at 1-month intervals, for amebae.

4. **Treatment of Acute Amebic Dysentery.**—Specific, direct treatment of amebiasis consists, as in the foregoing case, in successive medication, first with emetine by injection, then with an iodo-oxyquinoline orally, and finally with some pentavalent arsenical orally. In some cases with intense pain, tenesmus, and dehydration, an adjuvant may be necessary for the pain and to relieve the general symptoms—dehydration, oliguria, fever, toxemia, avitaminosis, secondary bacterial infection—dependent upon existing circumstances.

5. **Treatment of Chronic Intestinal Amebiasis.**—Acute dysentery is treated with emetine, followed by a soothing agent. In this acute episode (dysentery, colic, tenesmus, frequent bowel movements), treatment must consist in the alternate administration of an iodo-oxyquinoline (chiniofon) and of an arsenical (carbarsone) repeated or not repeated in alternating series. According to some authors (Sellards, Fernández Fidel, Craig, and others), complete cure may be effected in more than ½ of the cases; according to other authors, there is not so high a favorable percentage. It might then become necessary to combine other medications, including bismuth, rectal administration of chiniofon, and others. However, in chronic amebiasis, especially if there are chronic rectal and colonic lesions, rectal injections of different drugs are usually not well tolerated. Nor are purgatives well tolerated even though it is tempting to administer them to combat the frequent constipation observed in these subjects. Purgatives may provoke another exacerbation, with colic, tenesmus, frequent mucosanguineous discharges, etc. Consequently, it is preferable to refrain from administering them. If there is great need for combating constipation, lubricant evacuants are preferable (mineral oil, etc.). (After the use of oils, stools must be very carefully evaluated.) Iodo-oxyquinoline usually constitutes an excellent medication when constipation predominates, since it has a certain evacuant action when administered orally over a longer period, combined or not with rectal injections.

When it is necessary to administer sedatives for pain and spasm in the very acute intercurrent episodes, opiates are useful; also adrenalin, belladonna; rectal enemata, to be retained, of various mucilaginous substances like gum, gelatin, agar; hot fomentations to the abdomen.

When rectosigmoidal ulcerations predominate, with frequent exacerbations of tenesmus, diarrhea, and colic provoked by no matter what the cause, at times insignificant so-called "dysentery by reactivation"), emetine is useful, repeated in a series with or without local rectal medication with astringents or antiseptics or various topical medications.

When inflammation and local reaction of a tumor-like aspect exists, generally in the ileocecal region (amebic granuloma of the colon) or in the rectosigmoid region (rectal polyposis, rectal stenosis) or in the appendix (chronic amebic appendicitis), etc., emetine repeated in a series every two months is capable of a surprising reduction of the tumor. Surgical intervention (for a supposed diseased appendix or extirpation of the tumor) may be disastrous and, if it is decided upon, should *always* be preceded by medication with emetine. No operation should be performed on these subjects without first having treated them with emetine medication in series, since the emetine by itself may effect the cure of such appendicular and rectal tumor-like lesions (granulomata) and, if not, it results in better preparation of the tissues for surgery.

Finally, another point in considering subjects with chronic amebiasis is the advantage of effecting "periodic cure with emetine" in the absence of any acute phase (constipated subjects with amebic cysts in formed stools). According to some authors, emetine is unnecessary in such cases and they reserve it only for treatment of acute phases (Craig, and others). According to others, one should give, periodically, medication with emetine in a more moderate series; for example, 0.40 to 0.50 Gm. total per series, alternating with other medicaments. The older clinicians share this opinion (Chauffard, Dopter, and others).

Chloroquine was recently found to be an excellent substitute for emetine.

Other medicaments have been proposed for exceptional cases in which definite disappearance of the amebae has not been accomplished in spite of the treatment. The following have been recommended by various authors:

Bismuth subnitrate or *bismuth subcarbonate* orally, in large dosage suspended in plenty of water (10 to 30 Gm. per day, divided into small individual doses). Even larger doses have been proposed, but they might be harmful.

Rectal administration of different medicaments generally avails but little.

6. **Treatment of Hepatic Amebiasis.**—This is the most frequent extra-intestinal localization of amebiasis; its frequency has been reduced since the use of emetine (Vedders; Rogers, 1912). According to Rogers, in the British Army in India, for every 1,000 patients with intestinal amebiasis before 1906 there had been 2.5 hepatic abscesses; after 1912 (introduction of emetine) there were only 0.52.

Every patient with intestinal amebiasis is exposed to amebic invasion of the liver through the portal circulation. Rogers calculated (1928) that 2 to 4 weeks may pass after the beginning of amebic dysentery before a true abscess is formed, during which period the liver may appear sensitive and enlarged. In this period, emetine causes a rapid and total reduction in hepatomegaly and disappearance of fever and hepatic pain and may prevent abscess formation. It is also possible that emetine causes re-absorption of small hepatic abscesses; according to some authors, even larger abscesses may disappear. It is difficult to determine the exact moment of suppuration. Generally, the appearance of marked leucocytosis, sweating, daily remittent fever, localized pain, etc., indicate abscess formation requiring surgical drainage (puncture or incision).*

Even in conditions demanding operative treatment, it is best to give a course of injections of emetine hydrochloride, as it has been found that postoperative convalescence is much more rapid when this drug has been administered (Craig). However, it is necessary to note that emetine considerably depresses the heart, causing death during anesthesia. This presents a difficult problem: before proceeding with an operation, the heart should be examined thoroughly, or a few days should pass with withholding of emetine.

Today, due to "emetine-surgical drainage" treatment, mortality is less than 1 per cent. Manson-Bahr states that he has been able to cure hepatitis with emetine alone in 28 per cent of the cases, with emetine and puncture in 47 per cent, and with emetine and surgical drainage in 25 per cent. However, in spite of its apparent simplicity, puncture and drainage is preferable. It is necessary always to examine the pus from the abscess for the presence of motile trophozoites if emetine has not previously been administered. After the hepatic abscess has been drained and healed, it is necessary to treat the pre-existing intestinal amebiasis.

In *pulmonary amebiasis,* in which the usual manifestation is the pulmonary abscess, emetine may also exert a curative action, with or without surgical drainage. After noting the weight of the patient, with an examination of the expectorated bronchial pus, its quantity and appearance, and noting the fever, if these symptoms do not improve after emetine medication, Manson-Bahr (see Chapter 4) advises surgical drainage.

Treatment of Conditions Due to Intestinal Flagellates and Ciliates

The pathogenic action of intestinal flagellates has been much discussed. According to some authors, these flagellates are simple saprophytes or are merely associated with other parasites in cases of diarrhea, etc. At any rate, the mere presence of one of these parasites in the stools does not prove its pathogenic character.

Giardia Lamblia.—Various drugs have been used, but their efficacy is generally inconstant.

Organic arsenicals are useful but often fail. They are often instilled directly into the duodenum, as carbarsone.

Atabrine causes rapid disappearance of the parasite from stools in 90 per cent of the cases. Chloroquine is also effective. Acranil has proved effective in doses of 0.50 Gm. 3 times a day, for 4 or 5 days for adults, and ½ of this dose for children.

Trichomonas Hominis; Chilomastix Mesnili.—*Trichomonas hominis* and *Chilomastix mesnili* are probably not pathogenic, although some authors state that these parasites may cause diarrhea and enterocolitis. The same drugs have been used as in Giardia infection.

---

*Editor's note (O. F.): D'Antoni and Sodeman recently proved that children manifest a liver phase of amebiasis which yields to 10 tablets of Diodoquin t.i.d. for 20 days.

Balantidium Coli.—Treatment is (1) per os: emetine, iodo-oxyquinoline (chiniofon, Vioform), organic pentavalent arsenicals (carbarsone), various anthelminthics (thymol, oil of chenopodium), insoluble bismuth salts; (2) by rectal instillation: enemata with iodo-oxyquinoline, ipecac, permanganate, organic silver salts, etc.; (3) by modification of the dietary regimen to change the reaction of the intestine to an acid state, since the parasite thrives in an alkaline or neutral medium; administration of acid milks, lactic acid, and hydrochloric acid, with an absolute milk regimen to decrease alimentary residue.

TREATMENT OF DISTURBANCES CAUSED BY THE PRESENCE OF LARGE PARASITES IN THE INTESTINES AND ADJACENT ORGANS

(Nematodes, Cestodes, Trematodes)

General Treatment of Tropical Intestinal Parasitoses

Treatment along general lines consists of:

1. Diagnosis of the species of the parasite.

2. Examination of the general condition of the patient for anemia or malnutrition with hypoproteinemia often due to poor diet or hypovitaminosis. In these cases we combine with the direct anthelminthic medication measures to improve the general nutrition and metabolism.

3. Preliminary preparation of the patient, before administration of anthelminthic drugs. Some anthelminthics are usually well tolerated, and slightly toxic; e.g., hexylresorcinol, pyrethrin, tetrachloroethylene, and others. Others, e.g., carbon tetrachloride, santonin, and oil of chenopodium, are toxic and require proper preparation of the patient before administration to avoid accidents.

4. Preliminary administration of purgatives. Before use of anthelminthics, preferably give a saline purgative or castor oil* (inconvenient because of its late and inconstant effect), or calomel, combined with lactose in wafers or tablets. The purgative is generally given the night before the oral administration of the anthelminthic and is indicated in all cases in which a large amount of mucus on the intestinal wall prevents the anthelminthic from attacking the parasite. For the same reason, it is necessary to reduce the intake of food before giving medication. When some of the other anthelminthics are used, however, such as oil of chenopodium, preliminary prolonged fasting is not indicated.

5. Administration of anthelminthics. The anthelminthics of choice are varied. See under proper headings.

---

*Editor's note (O. F.): Most North American authors disapprove of the use of oily purgatives because of the danger of facilitating the absorption of the anthelminthic drugs.

The drugs are administered in different manners: some in one dose, others in fractional doses to increase tolerance.

The drugs may be given in capsules, wafers, in suspension in water, or the taste masked in jelly, honey, or milk, for generally these agents have a disagreeable taste. During treatment, the patient should remain in bed (horizontally) until the first evacuation occurs, and take no food, since nervous complications are frequent.

6. Administration of a purgative following anthelminthic medication is generally necessary. Some anthelminthics are in themselves slightly purgative, or at least they do not inhibit bowel movements. With these, the administration of a postpurgative may be omitted; for example, oil of chenopodium, etc. With others, however, purgation is necessary because the drugs may inhibit bowel movement. In addition, prolonged retention of the drugs favors toxic accidents due to reabsorption; e.g., carbon tetrachloride, the ingestion of which must be followed, in 2 hours, by a saline purgative. At times the purgative is administered simultaneously with the anthelminthic, as the classical example of combination of santonin and calomel in capsules.

7. After evacuation, the stool is examined for parasites, the scolex or head in the case of the large taenias. The feces must be examined for a time after medication has ceased to estimate the possible persistence of eggs, for, if present, the medication must be repeated. Treatment usually need not be repeated before a lapse of 1 or 2 months.

8. It is important to remember carefully the contraindications of anthelminthics. This requires a knowledge of the patient's history, the condition of the liver and the kidneys, cardiovascular function, possible presence of gastrointestinal ulcers, and, last, possible association of several parasites in the same patient, so frequently observed in American tropics—amebiasis, ascariasis, frequently combined with giardiasis, ancylostomiasis, etc. For example, the treatment of ancylostomiasis is different when it is combined with ascariasis than otherwise. This modifies the principles governing anthelminthic therapeutics.

9. It is rarely necessary to carry out symptomatic treatment in cases of helminthiasis, since generally elimination of all or most of the parasites results in cessation of abnormal symptoms and functional disorders. In some cases, it may be necessary to combat the painful anal pruritus, especially nocturnal, which is frequent in oxyuriasis. At other times it may be a nervous or reflex gastrointestinal disorder, as in children, convulsions and insomnia, due to the presence of the large taenias, or vomiting due to Ascaris. Less often, more serious disturbances occur, such as appendix reactions simulating appendicitis (due to Oxyuris and Ascaris) or intestinal obstruction due to masses of Ascaris which have been paralyzed by the medication, a state of chloroform anesthesia, etc. These cases are exceptional, but the physician should keep them in mind. Allergy constitutes a troublesome factor when

symptoms do not subside immediately after evacuation of the parasite. Allergy may recur upon reinfestation.

10. Parasites at times invade the circulatory and visceral systems, especially the abdominal organs and others. This requires not only intestinal medication, but also general and internal drugs; for instance, in cases of Schistosoma or Fasciola infestations.

Treatment of Large Cestode Infestation

To verify cure it is necessary to find the head of the parasite in the stools.

Preparation of the Patient.—The patient is kept on a liquid or semiliquid low residue diet for 2 days—milk, soup, purée, fruit juices—followed by administration of a purgative the day before medication. If evacuation does not occur, a 500 c.c. soapsuds enema is administered. Anthelminthic medication should be administered the following morning, the patient remaining in bed, fasting.

Anthelminthic medication may be *carbon tetrachloride*. Patient abstains from fats and alcohol for several days before and after treatment. Carbon tetrachloride is contraindicated in cases with hepatic lesions, alcoholism, tuberculosis, mixed infection with Ascaris. Evacuation of worms occurs in 90 per cent of the cases, with cure after but one medication in 65 per cent.

Tetrachloroethylene is administered in the same manner and dose. It is more advantageous and much less toxic than carbon tetrachloride (Lamson, Brown, and Robbins, 1932). These 2 drugs are preferred in tropical regions where male fern becomes readily inactivated.

Male fern, the oleoresin of the rhizome, is also used. It is inactivated rapidly by desiccation. The oleoresin, a thick liquid with a very disagreeable taste, is administered in capsules or in an emulsion with gum and water. The patient must abstain from alcohol and fats for several days. It is convenient to combine male fern with the simultaneous administration of calomel. Toxic complications are frequent when the drug is given in high doses—nausea, icterus, albuminuria, vertigo, convulsions, cramps. There is a narrow margin between the active and the toxic dose.

Pomegranate bark, boiled in water, 15 Gm. for children, 40 Gm. for adults, is taken while fasting.

Pelletierine tannate, the alkaloid of the pomegranate, is sometimes used, but this drug must not be given to children or pregnant women. Toxic accidents are frequent. Relative efficiency, 30 to 40 per cent cure, has been noted by Stitt (1929) and Schroeder.

The following drugs, although less efficacious, are also used: thymol, hexylresorcinol, pyrethrin, kamala, kousso (Brayera).

Acranil, in tablets of 0.10 Gm., giving 0.8 Gm. per day or less, according to age, and also Atabrine, 0.8 Gm. per day, have been found effective. See also Chapter 42.

Treatment of Hymenolepis Nana Infestation

Male fern has been used (see treatment of taeniasis) and preferably hexylresorcinol, especially in children (Faust, 1938; see treatment of ancylostomiasis); oil of chenopodium has also been used successfully (Brumpt, 1938). Recently Acranil and chloroquine have been recommended.

Treatment of Enterobiasis

Refer to Chapter 37.

Treatment consists of the administration of anthelminthics orally; local (rectal and perianal) treatment to destroy parasites and eggs, with ointments, enemata, irrigations, cleanliness; personal hygiene of the hands, of the perianal region, to prevent autoreinfestation; finally, treatment of troublesome complications and symptoms, especially anal pruritus. If the patient can be kept clean for 2 weeks and free from parasites, reinfestation will be prevented. For this reason, treatment must be repeated. Treatment should begin with a full bath (especially in dealing with unclean environments or unclean patients, or children) with soap and water, repeated daily and daily change of all clothing in contact with the patient.

Anthelminthics used are:

1. *Gentian violet* is excellent and preferred by many (Faust, 1930; Wright and Brady). Poor gastrointestinal tolerance is frequent—colic, diarrhea, nausea, vertigo. Administration after a purgative is not necessary. Ninety to 95 per cent of the patients are cured. See Chapter 37.

2. *Thymol,* preceded by a purgative. Patient must abstain from alcohol.

3. *Hexylresorcinol:* Previous administration of simple, evacuant enema; then hexylresorcinol orally (1 Gm. for adults; for children 0.1 to 0.2 Gm. for each five years of age, to be taken in one dose); then, at night, administration of simple evacuant enema with warm water; finally administration of enema to be retained—250 to 500 c.c. of 1:1,000 aqueous solution of hexylresorcinol (ST 37, undiluted). To be effective, a high enema should be given in order to reach the cecum. Treatment should be repeated weekly over a long period of time, several weeks.

4. The following medicaments have also been used: carbon tetrachloride (Chopra et al.; used as in ancylostomiasis); santonica (semen contra) and santonin (in the same manner as in ascariasis); bismuth carbonate.

Phenothiazine was introduced by Manson-Bahr. Numerous other workers confirmed his findings. E. Kuitunen-Ekbaum treated 1,275 patients with total doses of 2.5 to 9.0 Gm. of phenothiazine and obtained 92 per cent cures. In small children, doses of from 1.0 to 7.0 Gm. gave an 80.2 per cent rate of cure. Untoward results are severe anemia and rare toxic hepatitis.

Lubisan (m,n-butoxy-phenyl diethyl carbamate) given in 1.2 Gm. doses to adults on each of 3 successive mornings, during which period no breakfast was eaten until 3 hours after the drug was taken, followed by an additional 3-day course after a rest of 4 days, resulted in cure in 37 of 51 patients. Children under 12 years received reduced doses. No evidence of toxicity was noted.

Acranil cleared 4 out of 4 cases of enterobiasis. The evening preceding medication the patient fasts, and the following morning a single dose (10 mg. per kilogram) of Acranil is given. After 3 hours, a saline purgative is given.

Local treatment consists principally in the administration of high enemata with simple warm water or with various solutions: soapy water; water with 1:1,000 thymol; 1:1,000 solution of hexylresorcinol; 30 per cent glycerinated water; 10 per cent saline solution; 1:1,000 alum; methylene blue; essence of turpentine in oil (this may be irritant). Enemata, which should be given high and retained, afford immediate relief of pruritus.

Local antisepsis may also be carried out by ointments (1:10 salicylic acid in petroleum jelly and lanolin; simple mercurial unguent). Suppositories (calomel) may also be used, or sodium salicylate, etc.

Enemata or oral treatment alone do not cure enterobiasis. It is necessary to combine both treatments, repeated enemata and anthelminthics, with full individual hygiene (hands, anal region, clothing); without this combination, autoreinfestation is inevitable. The complete combined treatment should be repeated several times.

Treatment of Ascariasis

The treatment of ascariasis, when the number of parasites does not cause complications, is relatively simple. It consists in putting the patient on a light dietary regimen with the administration of an anthelminthic (santonin, oil of chenopodium, hexylresorcinol, or thymol), and then a purgative, which is indispensable because the Ascaris is generally not killed by drugs but is simply made dormant and momentarily inhibited. These worms must be expelled with the aid of a purgative. Previous administration of the purgative is not necessary.

1. *Santonin:* This is still considered by some authors as the most efficient; however, it is readily toxic, and for this reason has generally been abandoned, and is now used much less than heretofore.

2. *Oil of chenopodium* is the most efficacious agent according to the majority of authors. It can expel 70 to 80 per cent of the parasites after only 1 administration, 80 to 90 per cent with two administrations, practically equivalent to clinical cure. It is more effective than santonin; however, it is toxic, and for this reason some fear to use it. Use of the drug must be preceded by a dietary regimen high in carbohydrates and proteins and low in fats and free from alcohol (to improve the condition of the liver) and by a saline purgative given the day before, if there is constipation. Prolonged fasting favors intoxication. The drug is contraindicated in patients with hepatic or rénal lesions, or with organic heart disease, or in those with gastro-

intestinal ulcers, where absorption could readily occur. The drug is very efficient, but its major inconvenience lies in the fact that the therapeutic dose borders upon the toxic dose.

3. *Hexylresorcinol* is considered very advantageous because 90 to 100 per cent of the ascarids are expelled with only 1 dose (Lamson et al.) and because it is not toxic to any great extent. A preliminary purgative is not necessary. The patient must be on a light diet the day before administration of the drug. The drug is given in the morning while fasting, and for several hours afterward no food should be taken. Hexylresorcinol exerts a certain cathartic action and a purgative may be omitted. It is convenient, however, to give a saline purgative several hours after the drug has been taken, or preferably the following day, to provoke evacuation of dead ascarids. Food, especially oils, fats, and alcohol, should be prohibited for several hours after the drug has been taken.

4. *Thymol* is well tolerated and not toxic to any extent but is less efficacious than the foregoing medicaments. See Treatment of Ancylostomiasis.

5. The *chlorinated hydrocarbons* (tetrachloride, tetrachloroethylene, chloroform) should not be used since they anesthesize the parasite without causing it to be expelled; and if the ascarids are very numerous, intestinal obstruction may result from the accumulated masses of parasites.

In cases with simultaneous presence of ascarids and ancylostomas, frequently seen in certain American tropical zones, it is preferable to omit tetrachloride which is very efficient against the ancylostomas. It should be preceded by the previous expulsion of ascarids by oil of chenopodium or hexylresorcinol, unless simultaneous administration of oil of chenopodium and of carbon tetrachloride is carried out, as has frequently happened, in "mass treatment" of groups during sanitary campaigns in tropical America. This facilitates the work of administration in these mass treatments (see Treatment of Ancylostomiasis).

Treatment of Ancylostomiasis

Expulsion of ancylostomas by means of anthelminthics is generally not sufficient to cause disappearance of the anemia and hypoproteinemia. In some cases the anemia has been improved without anthelminthics, solely by instituting proper diet that affords sufficient nutrition. It is necessary to improve the diet and to administer iron, as well as food rich in vitamins, proteins, and iron. The influence of ancylostomas and individual tolerance vary in different regions due to these dietetic factors. According to Smillie and Augustine, 25 worms might not cause trouble and some individuals might have more than 100 worms. In Argentina, observers (Fülleborn et al., Orias, etc.) have found great numbers of parasites, at times more than 200, coexisting with a good general state of health and normal hemoglobin. They have attributed this tolerance to the diet (meat) of the inhabitants of these regions. The kind of diet (lack of nutritional factors, iron, and proteins) exerts a predominant influence on the anemia due to ancylostomiasis in tropical America. According to Ramón Suárez, in 1930 the diet of the Puerto Rican rural inhabitant consisted chiefly of bread, cooked rice, beans, coffee, and a scanty amount of vegetables. According to Rhoads et al., of the Rockefeller Institute, the consumption of meat, milk, and eggs was very low. Anemia was frequent and intense in patients with ancylostomiasis.

There is also a very frequent coinfestation of ancylostomas with other parasites (Ascaris, Strongyloides, amebic dysentery, malaria) which aggravates the patient's condition and makes treatment more difficult.

Treatment of ancylostomiasis should include:

1. Improvement in diet and nutritional state with food rich in proteins and of good quality (meat, eggs, milk), with high protein concentration (casein, cheese), with added amino acids in serious cases (hydrolyzed casein), and with vegetables rich in vitamins.

2. Administration of iron to combat the anemia. In the opinion of some authorities, medication with iron should be a part of the therapeutic procedure in anthelminthic treatment (W. Cruz, Peña Chavarria and Rotter, Gabaldon, Rhoads et al., Marval). The principal preparations of iron recommended are iron ammonium citrate; ferrous sulfate, anhydrous, not in aqueous solution; ferrous carbonate; reduced iron; ferrous lactate. Organic preparations of iron (hemoglobin) do not offer any special advantages.

All preparations of iron are more or less constipating, making frequent administration of an evacuant necessary (cascara sagrada). When gastric achlorhydria is present, hydrochloric acid should be added. Blood transfusion is indicated as an initial measure in any rather intense form of hypochromic anemia.

3. Anthelminthic medicaments most used and most efficient are *carbon tetrachloride* and *tetrachloroethylene*, which is not as toxic. The latter may be repeated for 2 or 3 days, using the same prescription as for carbon tetrachloride. For use of oil of chenopodium, see Treatment of Ascariasis.

When both ancylostomas and ascarids are present, administration of halogenated hydrocarbons may be dangerous since it paralyzes the Ascaris, causing intestinal obstruction. It is necessary first to eliminate the ascarids before using carbon tetrachloride, or, as suggested in several mass treatments, oil of chenopodium, 1 c.c., may be mixed with carbon tetrachloride, 2 c.c., and the mixture ingested at one time, while fasting. It is preferable to proceed carefully with each individual treatment.

Finally, health education, sanitary regulations (sanitation of the soil), and individual hygiene are indispensable in preventing reinfestation.

Treatment of Strongyloidiasis

Treatment of strongyloidiasis consists in administration of anthelminthics, but this may prove difficult because of the undue resistance of the parasite, which is imbedded deeply in the sinus of the mucosa. Carbon tetrachloride and oil of chenopodium are not effective. Although Willis states that a cure (disappearance of the larvae) has been effected in 2 or 3 weeks in 60 per cent of patients by the weekly administration of 1.5 c.c. of oil of chenopodium, this medicament is considered practically ineffective.

Thymol, much in use in former days, generally is not successful.

Hexylresorcinol is also given.

Gentian violet is more efficient and is much used at present. The greatest inconvenience is gastric irritation which may result in nausea, vomiting, and intestinal discomfort. This drug is not always active (persistence of larvae in stools), and frequently the treatment must be repeated. See Chapter 37.

Treatment of Trichuriasis

Treatment of trichuriasis consists in the administration of various anthelminthics, which frequently fail to effect a cure: hexylresorcinol (fairly effective); pentavalent arsenicals per os (very efficient, according to some authorities); gentian violet; finally, also ficin, *leche de higueron,* which seems to be the most efficacious medicament (60 c.c. for adults or children). This is given in the morning while fasting. A saline purgative or a high enema is indicated the night before. It is not necessary to administer a purge after treatment. This drug is considered capable of effecting cure in 85 to 90 per cent of all cases. It is nontoxic and may be repeated without danger but is difficult to obtain.

TREATMENT DIRECTED AGAINST NEMATODES AND TREMATODES WHICH INVADE THE CIRCULATORY SYSTEM AND THE VISCERA

Treatment of Filariasis

No specific medicament is known. Many drugs have been injected into the veins to destroy the parasite, but it is generally quite difficult to reach them in blocked lymphatic areas. Antimony salts have been used in the same manner as against schistosomas and with frequent but not constant success; tartar emetic, intravenously (Rogers, 1917; later Macfie, 1920; Mühlens, 1921; Roy and Bose, 1922; Diamantis, 1923, etc.); trivalent organic antimonial salts, principally Fuadin (Peter, 1926; Shewar, 1932; Paterson, 1932; Fischer, 1933; Bruce, 1933, etc.); Anthiomaline or thiomalate of lithium and antimony (2 to 4 c.c. of 6 per cent aqueous solution, by intramuscular injection, on alternate days, 10 injections).

Of a number of trivalent and pentavalent antimony compounds studied extensively by several groups of investigators, Neostibosan (diethylamino-p-aminophenyl-stibinate) proved to be the most effective. A permanent microfilaria reduction of 91 to 99 per cent was observed in 35 patients. It is not known if the adult worms die or are sterilized by action of the drug. In 75 per cent of the patients all circulating microfilariae are eliminated.

Thetford, Otto, Brown, and Maren used Arsenamide in 18 cases, observing a microfilariae reduction of 99 per cent and a permanent elimination in 72 per cent. Only minor toxic reactions occurred.

Another chemotherapeutic agent, Hetrazan (1-diethylcarbamyl-4-methylpiperazine hydrochloride), developed by Lederle, was administered orally to

74 patients. Of the 26 cases which were under observation for a year, a 99 per cent reduction in circulating microfilariae was noted while 54 per cent became permanently negative. Although a number of patients experienced mild toxic manifestations, at no time was it sufficiently severe to necessitate discontinuation of therapy.

H. Galliard, of l'Institut de Parasitologie, Paris, France, observes that radiation is helpful in the chyluric type of filariasis.

Treatment of secondary infection is local (sulfanilamide, local hot applications, heat) and general (sulfanilamide, penicillin, various vaccines). Treatment of lymphatic obstruction is only palliative (rest in bed, elevation of limbs, permanent compresses or elastic bandages). Diet should be low in fats. Small incisions or punctures of the skin are made to facilitate lymphatic drainage, but this procedure is not recommended in permanent varices, since it exposes the patient to other infection. It is indicated merely to decrease the tension of lymphatic edema (Napier). Major surgical intervention is used purely in indicated cases such as extirpation in huge elephantiasis of the scrotum or of the breast (Anchicloss' operation, etc.). Chyluria is treated by complete rest, suppression of fats in the diet, and administration of salines (laxatives).

Loa Loa.—Culbertson et al. observed both diminution of circulating microfilariae and improvement of clinical symptoms following administration of Neostibosan in 3 loaiasis patients. Shookoff noted clinical improvement in 3 cases of Loa infection after treatment with Hetrazan.

Treatment of Onchocerciasis

Treatment of onchocerciasis is not yet efficient. The following procedures have been suggested: surgical extirpation of the largest possible number of nodules to prevent possible ocular complications; this is not practicable when the number of nodules is very great. Interstitial injections of the nodules, using gentian violet or hexylresorcinol, bichloride of mercury. Intravenous injection of tartar emetic; Plasmochin (0.1 per cent solution) into the anterior chamber of the eye. Radiotherapy, local diathermy, and electrocoagulation, etc., have not as yet been sufficiently tried.

Van Hoof et al. employed Bayer 205 (urea of acid dimeta-aminobenzoyl-meta-aminoethyl-benzoyl-1-naphthylamino-4-6-8 trisulphonate of sodium) in treatment of onchocerciasis.

Hetrazan seems very active against Onchocerca but may produce severe reactions. Both of the above may give allergic reactions upon death of the adult worms and microfilariae. Optimum dosage is not as yet established. Burch reported 50 patients treated with Bayer 205. Patients were rendered free of microfilariae and the adult worms are killed. One-half of the patients experienced severe burning of the feet; ⅓ showed pruritis and cutaneous induration; ½ developed photophobia, lacrimation, and burning of the eyes frequently accompanied by conjunctival and episcleral injection.

In the 50 patients treated by Burch with Hetrazan, the microfilariae also disappeared, but the effect on the adult worm is not as satisfactory as with Bayer 205. Reactions to Hetrazan were also more pronounced. About ⅓ developed skin eruptions in addition to one or more of the reactions mentioned above. Toxic manifestations were more severe in advanced cases of onchocerciasis. Caution must be used in the administration of both drugs.

Treatment of Trichinosis

Refer to Chapter 38. Treatment of trichinosis is not very effective. In many cases the symptoms are very slight and do not demand treatment.

Treatment of Schistosomiasis

Success in the treatment of schistosomiasis depends upon whether it has been applied in the initial period or later, after definite sclerotic organic lesions have already been produced. It consists principally in the administration, by injection, of salts of antimony, tartrate of antimony and sodium, or tartar emetic or Fuadin, injected as in visceral leishmaniasis. The pentavalent antimonials are much less efficacious. In schistosomiasis mansoni, it is necessary to repeat the antimonial several times, with an interval of 1 week or several weeks, to obtain sufficient improvement or cure. In advanced cases, treatment is not successful, or the results may be very incomplete.

In patients with advanced or chronic schistosomiasis, injection of antimonials usually causes hepatic disturbances (bilirubinemia, icterus, etc.), according to Cawadias and others. The majority of authors, however, agree that Fuadin is absolutely harmless, even in the cirrhotic livers of the chronic patients (Kahlil; Salah and Hassan). Emetine hydrochloride has also been used, in the same manner as in amebic dysentery, but with uncertain results.

Brown (1948) referred to the work of Alves and Blair (1946) on an intensive or 1-day treatment of schistosomiasis with sodium antimonyl tartrate. They used a continuous drip technic which they later abandoned for the multiple syringe method of intravenous injections 3 times daily at 3-hour intervals for 2 days—a total of 6 injections. This was on the basis of 1 grain for each 12 pounds of body weight. On the basis of the skin test using cercarial antigen, and examination for eggs, the authors considered the rapid treatment successful in a high percentage of their patients. Halawani of Egypt (Brown, 1948) reported his experiences with Fuadin. At the Fouad Institute they used Fuadin intramuscularly, giving 30 to 33 c.c. in 2 days with less toxic reactions. Fuadin is definitely less toxic than tartar emetic. Brown is employing in Egypt at the present time a modified intensive method consisting of administration to adults of 5 c.c. of Fuadin daily for 10 days. Regarding the new drug Miracil D, which is a thioxanthone derivative, Brown believes that the unsatisfactory results hitherto obtained were due to the administration of inadequate doses. At the Fouad Institute, cures of bilharziasis cases occurred after administration of 0.5 Gm. daily, morning and evening, for 7 to 8 days.

In the treatment of schistosomiasis japonica, Billings and others (1948) reported on 110 patients treated with 40 c.c. of Fuadin, of whom 19 relapsed within 4 to 8 weeks. In a further report on 210 patients treated with this same dosage of Fuadin, Winkenwerder and others noted relapses in approximately 40 per cent after 4 weeks' observation. Seitz used the technic of Alves and Blair in 320 cases and reported failure in only 3 of 216 cases followed for 8 weeks. Toxic reactions were avoided by dilution of the drug and slowing of the rate of injection.

Most (1948) discussed schistosomiasis japonica acquired by the American personnel on the Island of Leyte. Approximately 1,500 men were hospitalized and treated for schistosomiasis japonica on Leyte. These patients were returned to the United States for operation and treatment. An equal number of men contracted this disease on Leyte and were not hospitalized. In addition to these men, approximately 2,000 officers and enlisted men who were imprisoned in a penal colony at Davao on the Island of Mindanao had an infection rate among them of about 50 per cent. Most reported failure of Fuadin in these cases even when total doses of 70 and 105 c.c. were given.

Treatment of Clonorchiasis

Treatment of clonorchiasis may be successful if initiated early. It consists in oral administration of gentian violet. Antimony and sodium tartrate or tartar emetic have also been used, in the same manner as in kala-azar, and gold salts by intravenous injection. After the infection has reached an advanced stage, with cirrhotic, fibrotic lesions, cure is very difficult.

Treatment of Hepatic Distomatosis or Fascioliasis Hepatica

The most efficient treatment consists in intramuscular injections of emetine hydrochloride (Kourí and Basnuevo). Serial examination of the bile obtained by duodenal intubation is used to control the treatment. Carbon tetrachloride, tetrachloroethylene, and other drugs have also been used.

TREATMENT OF BITES OR STINGS OF VENOMOUS ANIMALS

Treatment of bites of venomous snakes of America and treatment of accidents caused by arthropods are discussed in other chapters (Chapters 53 to 58, inclusive) and will not be repeated here.

Treatment of Scabies

Treatment of scabies includes the application of various topical parasiticides. It is debatable whether or not a bath should be given at the commencement of treatment. Some authors (Dixon, 1941) state that scabies may be cured simply by a good soap bath and friction. According to Mellanby, a previous bath is not considered indispensable but convenient and may facilitate penetration of the medicament.

Recently tetraethyliuramammonosulphide (Tetmosal) has also been used, in a 5 per cent solution, applied once or twice a day. It is well tolerated (Clayton, 1943; Bradshaw, 1944; Wilshaw, 1945).

Sulfur has been used as sulfo-oleates, sulfo-ichthyolates (Ichthyol, Thiogenol, tumenol, etc.) in the form of unguents. Some of the commercial specialty preparations for scabies contain these sulfo-oleates. All of these sulfur preparations have a keratolytic action, are parasiticidal, and have a decongestive action upon the skin. They have been used for many years in the treatment of scabies. An advantage is that they are economical in cost, but in recent years there has been a tendency to substitute other medicaments.

Benzyl benzoate, a dense, aromatic, oily liquid, insoluble in water, miscible with alcohol, is used in scabies in the form of a lotion, with equal parts of alcohol and soft soap.

Rub it on for 5 minutes, let it dry, rub again, and dress. A bath is taken in 24 hours. This medication does not soil the clothing, is easy to apply, and is well tolerated.

Bedker and Obermayer recommended a benzyl benzoate lotion and a sulfur Peruvian balsam ointment:

℞ Soft Soap
Isopropyl (or ethyl alcohol)
Benzyl benzoate
a-a, q.s. ad 120 c.c.

℞ Precipitated sulfur------ 12.0
Peruvian balsam-------- 12.0
Petrolatum
Hydrous wool fat
a-a, q.s. ad 120 c.c.

The cost of these preparations is a major disadvantage in South America.

Skin infections should be treated by slightly antiseptic baths, warm, followed by application of powdered sulfanilamide.

Impregnation of clothing with DDT is usually ineffective for the destruction of acarids (Heller). The simple warm soapy bath, prolonged and repeated daily, constitutes a good prophylactic, and Mellanby advises 10 per cent Tetmosal soap. In seborrheic individuals the most frequent and troublesome complication is pyogenic infection of the skin which may be treated with weak antiseptics, or preferably with sulfanilamide in powder form or 5 per cent ointment.

Application of a topical antipruritic medicament may be necessary to quiet the pruritus which is intense in some cases. Mixtures of phenol-menthol, equal parts, in a lotion, or of phenol-camphor, 10 per cent lotion or unguentum, or of menthol or thymol, 1 per cent in diluted alcohol, are efficient. Obermayer recommends the following antipruritic shake lotion:

℞	Menthol	0.5
	Phenol	0.5
	Zinc oxide	20.0
	Talc	20.0
	Glycerin	15.0
	Water	70.0

Treatment of Pediculosis: The Body Louse

Treatment requires frequent changing and disinfection of underclothing and bedding. Clothing is readily disinfected with dry hot air, 5 minutes at 55° C.; or simply by hanging the clothing in the sun in dry air for several hours; or with water vapor at 90°-100° C. from a spout, for 10 minutes; or hot water at 60° to 70° C. for 5 minutes; or by immersion in cresol solution (2 per cent solution) for 30 minutes, which is efficient but inconvenient because of the strong carbolic acid odor; or by fumigation with various chemical substances.

Clothing may also be disinfected by impregnation with other substances: preparations of pyrethrum (Jones et al., 1944), thiocyanate (Busvine, 1945), and especially DDT, which is very efficient and not very dangerous.

Application of insecticides upon the skin is not so essential since the insect lives in clothing. Dusting with DDT is useful, using it in powder form, 10 parts with 100 parts of inert powder, and using an adequate duster (see various types of dust sprayers in Higgins, 1945).

Treatment of Pediculosis of the Head: The Head Louse

Treatment is generally not difficult, but reinfestation must be prevented since groups, especially children or families, are readily reinfested. First, a good washing with soap and water, then application of insecticide constitutes the procedure. Washing and rubbing with 1:1,000 solution of bichloride of mercury is repeated for 2 or 3 days (danger of dermatitis); or application of equal parts of kerosene and olive oil to be left on overnight, followed by washing the following morning; or application of kerosene and vinegar for 1 or 2 hours; or of a lotion composed of 40 per cent phenyl-cellosolve, 30 per cent ethanol, 25 per cent water, with 5 per cent methyl salicylate (left in the hair for 2 or 3 days, while protecting the eyes); or pulverized pyrethrum in kerosene; or rubbing with an emulsion of DDT (Scobbie, 1945), which seems to be very efficient. The procedure of Sabouraud (1935) is also effective. This consists in keeping a rubber cap on the head overnight, with pure petroleum jelly or petroleum jelly with 10 per cent benzine, followed the next day by thorough washing. It should be followed by combing with a fine comb, repeatedly. Application of a 1 per cent emulsion of rotenone for several hours is followed by washing. Good commercial preparations such as Cuprex and Kwell are available and recommended by many authors.

In treating the delicate scalp of a child, it is necessary to proceed cautiously. Unguents of 5 per cent naphthol in adeps or 5 per cent salicylic acid solution are used (see Buxton, 1940).

Treatment of Pubic Pediculosis: The Pubic Louse

The parasite is readily detachable by simple pinching. It causes pruritus. It can be destroyed readily by many topical insecticides, but the genital region is very sensitive and easily irritated, and this is the principal difficulty in treatment (dermatitis medicamentosa). Almost any mercurial ointment is effective if maintained for a sufficiently long period (several hours): 5 per cent yellow oxide with petroleum jelly-lanolin; 30 per cent calomel with petroleum jelly-lanolin (advantage, its white color); mercurial ointment (the old gray ointment) but the dark color which injures clothing is objectionable, although it is very efficient; a simple 0.5 per cent lotion of bichloride of mercury applied by friction without drying, twice a day, repeated twice, is efficient; it does not spot clothing but is not well tolerated by some skins (transient dermatitis); 2 per cent oxyneurine lotion; 2 per cent Mercurochrome (objectionable because of its red color). Petroleum is also efficient (bad odor) alone or mixed with a balsam, applied with cotton at night; xylol, 20 per cent in petroleum jelly, or 10 to 20 per cent in alcohol and ether; 10 per cent naphthol in daily applications. Various good commercial preparations are obtainable (Cuprex, Kwell, etc.).

Pediculosis of the eyebrows must be treated with great care, but repeated rubbing with concentrated lotion of bichloride of mercury is effective.

TREATMENT OF CUTANEOUS AND VISCERAL MYCOSES

(Tinea, Dermatophytosis, Sporotrichosis, Blastomycosis)

The physician has at his disposal the following agents and therapeutic means:

1. **Surgical treatment.**
2. **Roentgen ray therapy.**
3. **Internal medication with iodine.**
4. **Internal medication by sulfanilamide derivatives** is administered in large doses in the usual form by ingestion. The initial dose is 2 to 4 Gm. and then 1 Gm. every 4 hours, according to the intensity of the treatment and the patient's tolerance. The patient must drink large quantities of water to prevent precipitations of the drug in the kidneys. Efficacy is inconstant, but in some cases good results have been obtained in actinomycosis, maduromycosis, blastomycosis.
5. **Other internal medications** are antibiotics, especially penicillin and streptomycin. Externally Fradicin, Prodigiosin, and Furaspor.
6. **Vaccine therapy,** which is only desensitizing.

Treatment of Certain Forms of Cutaneous Mycosis

In areas of thin skin (glabrous skin), the application of topical medication generally suffices. In thick skin areas (palm of the hand, sole of the foot), previous application of exfoliating topical medication for the purpose of removing the superficial epidermis may be necessary. This may be accomplished by a prolonged, warm, alkaline or sulfur bath. In addition, there are 3 drugs which may be used chiefly to obtain this keratolytic and exfoliating effect: salicylic acid (in benzoic-salicylic solution; e.g., in the classical Whitfield ointment); potassium combinations (all the alkalines); and resorcinol (or pyrogallol, in ointment or solution). Sulfur also may be keratolytic.

With hairy skins it may be necessary to pluck the hair (manual epilation with tweezers or by radiotherapy).

The most common antimycotic topical medications include: iodine (tincture, Lugol's solution, solution of iodine in chloroform or acetone), salicylic acid (4 per cent in alcohol or combined with benzoic acid in lanolin and petroleum jelly or in alcohol-ether), chrysarobin (in ointment or unguentum, 1 or 5 per cent, in petroleum jelly or lanolin), mercury (simple unguentum, double unguentum, 5 per cent mercuric-ammoniacal ointment, 1 per cent bichloride of mercury solution), resorcinol, pyrogallol, sulfur (2 per cent ointment in petroleum jelly). Prodigiosin and Fradicin are effective.

Secondary infection is frequent (in the feet and scalp) and is treated preferably with oxidizing antiseptics: 1:4,000 solution of potassium permanganate baths, or compresses left on overnight. Sulfanilamide is usually not effective. Absolute cleanliness is indispensable.

CHAPTER 65

THE USE OF ANTIBIOTICS IN TROPICAL DISEASES

Oscar Felsenfeld and Sachiko Janet Ishihara

While this book was being prepared for publication, a series of new antibiotics was discovered and introduced in the treatment of tropical diseases. Thus it became imperative to add a short summary recording recent progress in these therapeutics from data available as of January, 1950.

Penicillin is still the queen of the antibiotics. It is widely (and, unfortunately, often indiscriminately) used, mostly in the form of benzyl penicillin (penicillin G). One can find on the market crystalline potassium penicillin, a soluble salt which rapidly gives high blood levels, but of short duration; procaine penicillin which is slowly liberated thus producing lower blood levels of long duration; and combinations of both which are frequently used as once-a-day injections. This combination usually contains 100,000 units of potassium penicillin and 300,000 units of procaine penicillin in each c.c. With the exception of some cases of syphilis, meningitis, subacute bacterial endocarditis, psittacosis, chronic suppuration, tetanus, and gas gangrene, 1 to 2 c.c. of the combined penicillins will suffice for the treatment of most conditions in which this drug is indicated.

Penicillin, however, causes allergic reactions in certain cases. A new biosynthetic penicillin, called penicillin O (allylmercaptomethylpenicillin) may be given to patients hypersensitive to penicillin G (Volini et al., 1950).

Penicillin, in properly protected form, can be administered orally. In order to obtain blood levels comparable to those obtained on injection, the oral dose has to be 8 to 10 times higher.

Organisms often become resistant to penicillin. It is necessary, therefore, to check frequently the sensitivity of the causative organism against antibiotics during penicillin treatment.

Streptomycin, if used carefully, is an excellent drug. Safe in purely intestinal infections, as in shigellosis, it should not be given orally because it is poorly absorbed from the intestines.* One Gm. per day is given in chronic infections, as in tuberculosis, while 2 Gm. per day are indicated in acute diseases. Streptomycin should not be given for a longer period than 10 weeks.

Streptomycin often causes allergic reactions and damage of the liver, the vestibular apparatus, and the eighth nerve. Dihydrostreptomycin is much less toxic. Glucomycin is a nontoxic oral form of streptomycin.

Chloromycetin (Chloramphenicol) is but little soluble and is given per os (Ehrlich et al., 1947; Smadel and Jackson, 1947; Woodward, 1949; Knight et al., 1949). The initial dose is 3 to 5 Gm., followed by 1 to 3 Gm. per day.

---

*Oral streptomycin is, however, indicated when the intestinal flora has to be reduced; e.g., before operation.

Chloromycetin, according to present experience, seldom causes unfavorable side effects. The authors have observed oppression of the hematopoietic apparatus under prolonged dosage. The antimicrobial spectrum of Chloromycetin includes Rickettsiae and some large-sized viruses. While Chloromycetin is a drug causing immediate therapeutic effect in infections with many gram-negative organisms, relapses are not infrequent in subacute or chronic cases.

Aureomycin (Woodward, 1949; Knight et al., 1949; Duggar, 1948; Schoenbach et al., 1948; Brainerd et al., 1949; Greenblatt et al., 1948; Spink and Yow, 1949) is an excellent drug which is indicated in approximately the same diseases in which Chloromycetin has been used. It is most frequently administered per os, 2 to 3 Gm. per day. It may cause gastrointestinal disturbance and, in such cases, has to be given intravenously, 2 Gm. per day. Because of its excellent effect on a number of viruses, it is being widely used.

Neomycin (Waksman and Lechevalier, 1949; Felsenfeld et al., 1949, 1950) is a drug with a great future. It resembles streptomycin but has a much wider therapeutic spectrum, which includes also protozoa. While many organisms become streptomycin-resistant during streptomycin therapy, neomycin does not seem to have such an effect on microbes. The authors, together with Drs. Kadison and Volini of Cook County Hospital, have observed satisfactory results in tuberculosis (especially in extrapulmonary forms), salmonellosis, brucellosis, amebiasis, infections with *E. coli*, *A. aerogenes*, Pseudomonades, Protei, and other conditions, injecting intramuscularly 50,000 to 200,000 units per day. The oral dose is 10 to 20 times larger than the intramuscular dose. Kidney irritation and disturbance of the vestibular apparatus were seen, however, after injections. The oral dose is about 120,000 units per day in amebiasis.

Polymyxin D is active against many organisms (Benedict and Langlyke, 1947; Stansley et al., 1947; Felsenfeld et al., 1949, 1950) but still has not been deprived of its nephrotoxic activity. In view of its strong antiviral and antirickettsial activity, it is felt that polymyxin D should be kept on the record.

Bacitracin (Johnson et al., 1945; Meleney and Johnson, 1947; Derzavis et al., 1949; Felsenfeld et al., 1949, 1950) is used topically in pyodermas, injected in gas gangrene, and given per os in amebiasis. The oral treatment of amebiasis consists of 60,000 to 120,000 units per day, for 10 to 14 days (Most et al., 1949). Because of the possible nephrotoxic action, in cases where bacitracin injections are indicated (adjuvant treatment of syphilis and subacute bacterial endocarditis during penicillin therapy), a smaller dose of 12,000 to 25,000 units is injected intramuscularly per day for 10 to 14 days. Bacitracin is also indicated in smallpox and cholera.

Many other antibiotics, such as *subtilin*, *circulin*, *Fradicin*, are still being investigated because of their toxicity; others, such as *gramicidin* and *tyrocidin*, are used only externally.

Table XXX shows the results of the efficacy of antibiotics in tropical diseases, according to present experience and literature.

Combinations of antibiotics, also with sulfa drugs, may be of value. Bacitracin strongly potentiates the action of penicillin on cocci and Treponemataceae. Mixtures of bacitracin and neomycin or polymyxin D per os are very effective against bacterial infections and amebiasis. If sulfa drugs are given with penicillin or streptomycin, the organisms have a lesser tendency to develop resistance toward the drugs. BAL also increases the efficacy of many antibiotics, especially that of streptomycin, Chloromycetin, aureomycin, and neomycin. Thus, combinations of drugs may be used, especially to treat infections with microorganisms which are resistant to one or another antibiotic.

Needless to say, antibiotics shall never be used in a haphazard way but only after proper laboratory tests are carried out. Unfortunately, in vitro experiments with Treponemataceae are difficult to set up, even impossible with *T. pallidum*. In an emergency, penicillin should be given, but material for bacteriologic examination has to be collected before the first injection is administered. Aureomycin and neomycin are other drugs which can be injected, especially when suspicion of an infection with a gram-negative organism arises, before the laboratory report is received. It must be emphasized, however, that these are emergency measures applicable to pneumonia, meningitis, typhus, and similar conditions, never to a subacute or chronic case.

Prodigiosin is known to be applicable internally against systemic infections with molds and fungi, while externally *Fradicin* is very effective (Felsenfeld et al., in press). Against blood flagellates, only Prodigiosin and combinations of antibiotics with arsenicals and BAL are promising. One has to keep in mind that some antibiotics inhibit enzymatic function of bacteria. Viruses, especially small viruses, parasites, and fungi do not have to be checked necessarily if the enzymatic function in question is inhibited by the antibiotic. Thus, further search for therapeutic agents is still warranted and desirable.*

TABLE XXX. EFFICACY OF ANTIBIOTICS IN THE TREATMENT OF TROPICAL DISEASES

INFECTIONS WITH	PENICILLIN	STREPTOMYCIN	CHLOROMYCETIN	AUREOMYCIN	NEOMYCIN	POLYMYXIN D	BACITRACIN
K. rhinoscleromatis	I	U	U	U	E	E	I
Salmonella	I	C	U	C	E	E	I
Shigella	I	U	U	U	E	E	I
Brucella	I	C	C	U	C	E	I
Pasteurella	I	E	E	E	E	E	S
Vibrios	I	S	C	C	E	C	U
Malleomyces	I	U	E	E	E	E	I
Myco. tuberculosis	I	C	S	S	E	I	I
Treponema	E	I	C	C	C	S	E
Leptospira	E	U	E	E	E	E	S
Borrelia	U	E	E	E	E	E	S
Spirillum	E	C	C	C	C	C	S
Bartonella	E	C	E	E	E	E	I
L. inguinale	I	I	E	E	E	E	U
Psittacosis	U	I	U	U	C	C	C
Pox group	I	I	S	C	C	C	U
Granuloma inguinale	I	U	U	E	E	E	U
Rickettsia	I	I	E	E	E	E	E
Actinomyces	C	S	U	U	C	C	I
E. histolytica	I	I	C	C	E	S	C

E, effective; C, effective against certain strains; I, ineffective; U, usually effective; S, seldom effective.

---

*After this chapter was written, terramycin was introduced. Its action resembles that of aureomycin.

References

Benedict, R. G., and Langlyke, A. F.: 1947. Antibiotic Activity of B. Polymyxa, J. Bact. **54**: 24.

Brainerd, H., Lennette, E. H., Meiklejohn, G., Bruyn, H. R., Jr., and Clark, W. H.: 1949. Clinical Evaluation of Aureomycin, J. Clin. Investigation **28**: 992.

Derzavis, J. L., Rice, J. S., and Leland, L. S.: 1949. Topical Bacitracin Therapy of Pyogenic Dermatoses, J. A. M. A. **141**: 191.

Duggar, B. M.: 1948. Aureomycin, Ann. New York Acad. Sc. **51**: 177.

Ehrlich, J., Bartz, Q. R., Smith, R. M., and Burkholder, P. R.: 1947. Chloromycetin: A New Antibiotic From a Soil Actinomycete, Science **106**: 417.

Felsenfeld, O., Volini, I. F., Ishihara, S. J., and Young, V. M.: 1949. Laboratory Experiments With Newer Antibiotics in Tropical Diseases, Ann. Meet. Am. Soc. Trop. Med., Nov. 6-9, Memphis, Tenn.

Felsenfeld, O., Volini, I. F., Ishihara, S. J., Bachman, M. C., and Young, V. M.: 1950. A Study of the Effect of Neomycin and Other Antibiotics on Bacteria, Viruses, and Protozoa, J. Lab. & Clin. Med. **35**: 428.

Greenblatt, R. B., Dienst, R. B., Chen, C., and West, R.: 1948. Oral Aureomycin in the Therapy of Streptomycin-Resistant Granuloma Inguinale, South. M. J. **41**: 1121.

Johnson, B. A., Anker, H., and Meleney, F. L.: 1945. Bacitracin, Science **102**: 376.

Knight, V., McDermott, W., and Ruiz Sanchez, F.: 1949. Chloromycetin and Chloramphenicol, J. Clin. Investigation **28**: 1052.

Meleney, F. L., and Johnson, B.: 1947. Bacitracin Therapy, J. A. M. A. **13**: 675.

Most, H., Grossman, E. B., and Miller, J. J.: 1949. Treatment of Amebiasis With Bacitracin and Other Antibiotics, Ann. Meet. Am. Soc. Trop. Med., Nov. 6-9, Memphis, Tenn.

Schoenbach, E. B., Bryer, M. S., and Long, P. H.: 1948. The Pharmacology and Clinical Trial of Aureomycin, Ann. New York Acad. Sc. **51**: 267.

Smadel, J. E., and Jackson, E. B.: 1947. An Antibiotic With Chemotherapeutic Activity in Experimental Rickettsial and Viral Infections, Science **106**: 418.

Spink, W. W., and Yow, E. M.: 1949. Aureomycin, J. A. M. A. **141**: 964.

Stansley, P. G., Shepherd, R. D., and White, H. J.: 1947. Polymyxin, Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp. **81**: 43.

Volini, I. F., Shlaes, W. H., and Felsenfeld, O.: 1950. The Use of Allylmercaptomethylpenicillin (Penicillin O) in Patients Hypersensitive to Penicillin G, J. A. M. A. **143**: 794.

Waksman, S. A., and Lechevalier, H. A.: 1949. Neomycin, a New Antibiotic Active Against Streptomycin-Resistant Bacteria, Including Tuberculosis Organisms, Science **109**: 305.

Woodward, T. E.: 1949. Chloromycetin and Aureomycin, Ann. Int. Med. **31**: 53.

CHAPTER 66

HYGIENE IN THE TROPICS

GEORGE MURDOCH SAUNDERS

INTRODUCTION

Hygiene has been defined as the science of preserving and promoting health. It encompasses not only the prevention of disease but also those factors which promote the highest mental and physical well-being. To discuss in a single chapter of limited length all factors bearing on healthy living in the Tropics would be an impossibility, for hygiene in tropical environments must include not only a consideration of all factors which concern well-being outside the Tropics but a host of others which are peculiar to hot countries. General factors which are important health forces in the Tropics will be discussed, and reference will be made only briefly to the prevention of particular diseases as more detailed discussions will be found in other chapters. A knowledge of the fundamental physiologic responses to altered climatic conditions are necessary for a clear conception of tropical hygiene and must be explored in some detail. The control and alteration of environmental elements such as housing, clothing, diet, water supplies, sewage, and refuse disposal will be mentioned briefly.

HISTORICAL BACKGROUND

Man has lived and prospered for thousands of years on all of the large land masses of the earth and in such greatly diverse environments as the cold, barren Arctic wastes and the hot, wet jungles of equatorial Africa and the Amazon basin. In fact, high degrees of civilization, as indicated by the development of arts, crafts, and sciences, have been reached by peoples living in tropical and subtropical regions. The Egyptians, the Mayans, and the Cambodians may be cited as pertinent examples of vigorous, progressive civilizations which endured for centuries under conditions which, by today's criteria, might be called unsuitable for the maintenance of a high standard of civilization.

However, most of these ancient examples of man's triumph over environment were unknown or forgotten when, only about 500 years ago, men living in Europe began to carry the benefits of "modern" civilization to the unknown lands to the south, east, and west. The empire-building nations carried European diseases to the "new" lands, and in turn they were confronted by new and trying climates and many mysterious ailments which were often fatal. Fevers carried off staggering numbers of the colonists and were attributed to miasmas arising from the swamps; insects and snakes were pestilential, and the damp heat of the jungle was not a comfortable habitat for men dressed in wool and armor. It is not surprising that for hundreds of years the Tropics were dreaded and maligned by the Europeans who explored, plundered, and developed the hot countries, urged by the desire for gold and spices, or simply by the spirit of adventure.

Fear of the unknown conditioned the attitude of men toward the Tropics, which for so long were considered unsuitable for habitation by European peoples. Medical books written a century ago, and many since, stressed the deteriorating influence of tropical climates on the northerners. This attitude has been slow to change, in spite of new scientific knowledge which has explained rationally the cause of many formerly obscure diseases and has offered wide relief by preventive and curative measures. Because many of those who wrote about the Tropics were reared and educated in temperate zones and had only temporary residence in tropical areas, they commonly carried their prejudices with them and in subsequent writings fostered the idea of the malignant influence of tropical climates. They were the advocates of cumbersome, heavy headgear of cork or other materials with red lining, and thick felt or woolen spine pads for protection against the "deadly red rays" of the tropical sun. Cholera belts were recommended to prevent the abdomen from becoming chilled by the cold night air which was thought to precipitate cramps or enteritis. Neurasthenia was believed to be inevitable in at least one-third of the northern sojourners in the Tropics, but it was blamed on the new environment and especially the climate.

Factual knowledge of disease has gradually dispelled most of the mysteries of tropical ailments, and many conditions formerly thought to be caused by climate have been found to be the result of definite disease processes. About 40 years ago, in a book on climate and health in hot countries, Giles (1905) wrote, "a hundred years ago a prolonged residence in the tropics was regarded with well-founded horror. The best the white settler in the lands of the sun dared hope for was 'a short life and a merry one,' but too often the merriment was sadly lacking. . . . But with due care and attention to sanitary laws, as modified by the altered conditions, there is no reason why the rates of sickness and mortality should be more formidable than elsewhere."

Prejudice dies hard, however, and there are still too many fallacious statements made regarding the dangers of life in the Tropics, particularly concerning the ill effects of the climate itself. Many commentaries on tropical hygiene have been written from the viewpoint of the northerner, who may or may not have had extensive experience in hot countries, and they have stressed, unduly, the deleterious effects of tropical environment on temporary residents. It is felt that a more logical approach is to consider man, generally, in relation to the special hygienic forces found in tropical areas. There are many regions within the tropical belt in South America, Africa, and in the East Indies where the inhabitants follow from day to day the normal ordinary habits of modern life in comfort and health, unaware of the many dangers supposed to surround them and of the concern shown for their welfare by sanitarians of the North. Tropical medicine has gone through its birth, infancy, and adolescence in the past 75 years. Causative agents of disease and intermediate hosts have been identified, and methods of prevention have been developed. Control of disease permits northern as well as indigenous racial groups to inhabit and prosper in vast areas formerly thought uninhabitable (Todd, 1924).

THE TROPICS DEFINED

There have been many definitions of what constitutes the Tropics and many classifications of different kinds of tropical climates, based largely on mean annual temperatures, humidity and wind conditions, altitude, and proximity to the sea. The true mathematical tropics include, of course, all that territory between the Tropics of Cancer and Capricorn, from 23½° N to 23½° S latitudes. But there are areas within this zone where, because of altitude or cold ocean currents and cool winds, conditions are temperate. Furthermore, in many localities outside these limits conditions are tropical.

Supan's (1927) classification, suggested in 1896, is frequently referred to in works on the subject. He extends the Tropics or warm climates from the equator to the mean annual isotherms of 20° C. (68° F.), which gives a northern limit of about 35° N and a southern limit of less than 30° S. Subtropical regions are included within isotherms of 20° C. (68° F.) for the cold months. This classification includes the southern part of North America, Mexico, the Caribbean area, a considerable portion of South America, much of Africa, Asia Minor, Iran, North India, China, Australia, and the intervening islands. Others, including Köppen (1900), took as a criterion a temperature of more than 20° C. (68° F.) for all 12 months of the year. Price (1939) adopted a mean annual isotherm of 21° C. (70° F.) as the limits of the Tropics.

There can be no hard and fast rule as to what territory should be included in a definition of the tropical areas. For hygienic considerations it should include those areas which have hot weather throughout most of the year. The mean annual isotherm of 21° C. (70° F.) is probably the most suitable for our purpose. The mean annual temperature in the equatorial zone is about 27° C. (80° F.), with greater maxima and minima farther away from the equator. It must be remembered that many places outside the Tropics, for example, St. Louis or Washington, D. C., in the United States, have higher temperatures during the summer than many low-lying places close to the equator.

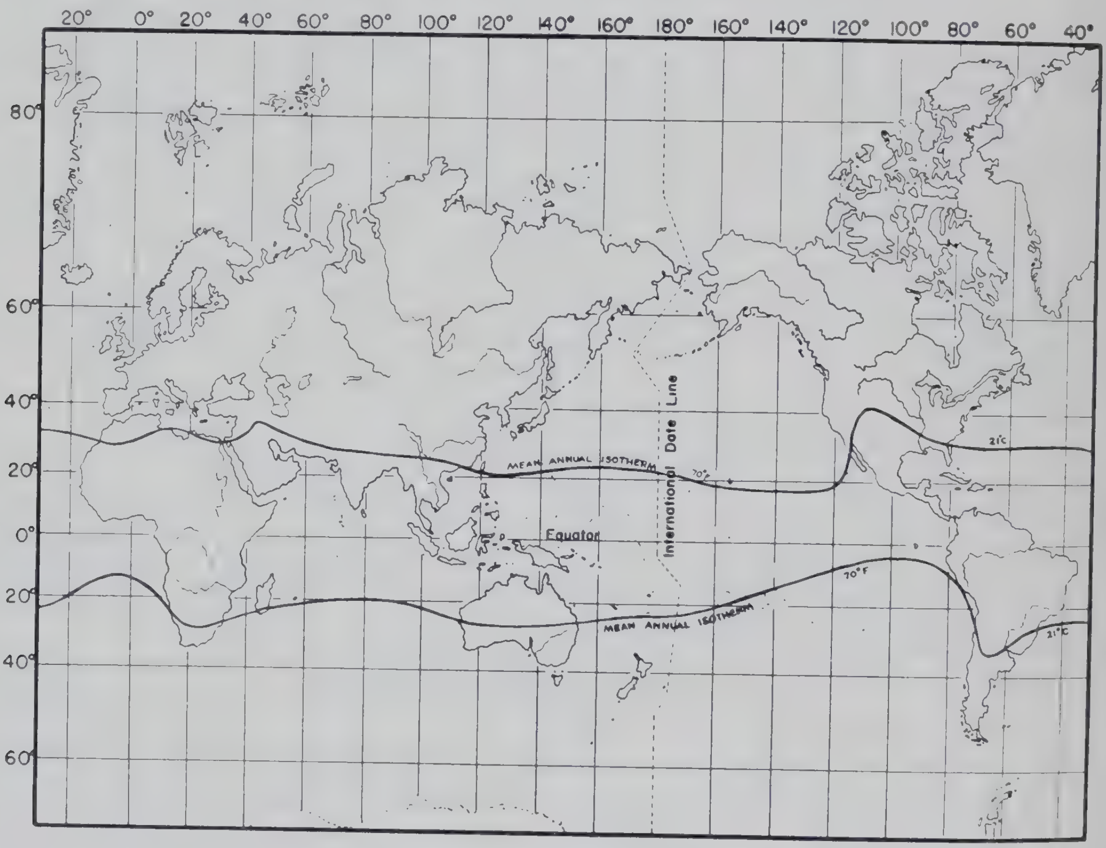


Fig. 457.—World map showing area of tropics as limited by mean annual isotherms of 21° C. (70° F.).

There are great variations in climate in the tropical zone. Of the numerous classifications of types of climate which have been suggested, perhaps the simplest is to divide arbitrarily into the hot-wet or jungle areas; the hot-dry or desert areas; and the high-cold or mountain areas. If heat is essential to "tropics," then it is obvious that mountain areas are not truly tropical.

Among the many factors important in determining climate and weather conditions, water, winds, and elevation are perhaps the most important. Water, because of its high capacity for heat, is a great thermal-stabilizing influence. In jungle areas, climatic conditions are fairly constant, with a mean annual temperature of about 27° C. (80° F.) or more, and high relative humidities of 80 per cent or more. There is little daily or seasonal fluctuation, largely because of the influence of water in the earth, in the air, and in the dense vegetation. The amount of insolation or sun's rays reaching the earth is also affected by moisture in the air and by the vegetation. The longer light waves are largely dispersed and absorbed by moisture in the air and by the heavy vegetation. The waves at the short end of the spectrum, however, are but little affected by the moisture content of the air, although ozone, which scatters and absorbs the ultraviolet rays to a certain extent, is apt to be found in higher concentration where there is dense vegetation (Blum, 1945).

In hot desert climates the characteristic features, besides low or absent rainfall and low relative humidity, are large and regular diurnal temperature cycles, intense sunlight, and occasional strong winds. The ground is dry, its specific heat is low, and, in the absence of water to vaporize, surface temperature may reach 84° C. in the midday sun, cooling rapidly after sunset. The air temperature shows large swings from less than 20° C. (68° F.) at night to 45° C. (114° F.) or more at midday. The sun's rays are strong, with little scattering or absorption by the atmosphere or vegetation.

In mountain climates, the temperature varies inversely to the altitude. For every increase of 300 feet of altitude there is a decrease of about 1° F., i.e., for every 180 meters a decrease of 1° C. These figures are only generally true, however, for other factors such as humidity, the clearness of the atmosphere, and air currents also influence temperature (Strong, 1943). It is easy to understand how one of two locations of equal latitude and only a few miles apart might have a jungle climate with a mean temperature of 27° C. (80° F.) while the other might have a mean temperature of 18° C. (66° F.) or less. The lower temperatures of mountain climates may have an important bearing on disease prevalence for they may be below the critical level for mosquitoes and possibly other arthropod vectors of disease. Since the sun's rays are filtered out to a certain extent by the earth's atmosphere, the intensity of radiation increases with altitude, showing a relatively greater increase at the two ends of the spectrum. Thus, the heating effects of the infrared rays and the sunburning effects of the ultraviolet rays become more evident in mountain climates.

PHYSIOLOGIC ASPECTS OF TEMPERATURE REGULATION

There is a nice adjustment of heat loss and heat production in man to maintain a nearly constant body temperature of about 37° C. (98.6° F.) in the face of wide variations in environmental temperatures. An understanding of the basic processes involved is essential for a proper evaluation of reactions to climate.

Heat production is the result of oxidation processes within the cells of the body. There is a normal minimum heat production which is very nearly constant for man under so-called "basal" conditions of rest, fasting, clothed, and in a comfortable environmental temperature. This basal metabolic rate, or B.M.R., is usually expressed in kilogram-calories per square meter of surface area or per kilogram of body weight per hour. For a normal adult male the B.M.R. is about 40 kg.-cals./m^2/hr. or 1 kg.-cal./kg./hr. This basal rate is affected by various factors. The B.M.R. of women is usually 7 to 12 per cent less than that of men. The rate is much higher in infancy and childhood, decreasing rapidly after puberty to the adult level, and decreasing very slowly thereafter to old age. Physical exertion, shivering, mental activity, certain drugs, and disease processes all serve to increase metabolism. Food stimulates basal metabolism, and the "specific dynamic action" is a factor to be considered. Proteins may increase metabolism by 20 to 30 per cent, and carbohydrates and fats from 5 to 10 per cent (Wiggers, 1944).

Under basal conditions the normal adult male is producing heat at the rate of about 1,700 kg.-cals. in 24 hours. This increases to 2,500 calories for persons of sedentary occupations and may go as high as 5,000 calories as heat production of the body is increased through muscular activity or other means. The oxygen consumption and the output of the heart increase proportionately. At rest the heart may be pumping to the tissues about 4 liters of blood per minute carrying 240 c.c. of oxygen. With violent muscular activity the output of the heart may increase to nearly 25 liters per minute representing 3 liters of oxygen. The metabolic rate and the production of heat is multiplied many times. Under certain environmental conditions the body may gain heat by radiation, conduction, or convection. Gains by radiation from direct sunlight or from heated objects may be great, and Martin (1930) figured that on a sunny day his nude body would absorb heat at the rate of more than 3 kg.-cals./min., or 3 times his resting heat production. In spite of a greatly increased heat production, there is little increase in body temperature because of two important factors. First, because the body has a higher water content, it has a high specific heat value which permits a relatively large absorption of heat with a small temperature increase; and second, because of the presence of the efficient and sensitive temperature regulatory mechanism of the body.

All heat produced must be dissipated if body temperatures are to remain relatively constant. It is well recognized that even mild exercise increases body temperature which soon returns to normal during rest (Brennemann, 1943). This indicates a temporary accumulation of heat which is soon dissipated by normal processes.

Heat may be lost from the body by radiation, by conduction and convection to the environment if the environment is cooler than the body, and by evaporation of water. A small amount is also lost in the urine and feces. At environmental temperatures of less than 28° C. (83° F.) the major portion of heat loss occurs through radiation, some through conduction and convection, and only about 25 to 30 per cent through vaporization. Some heat loss through vaporization occurs in the absence of any activity of the sweat glands. Water is lost as vapor in the expired air in amounts estimated from 250 c.c. to 400 c.c. and by "insensible" perspiration in amounts of 600 c.c. to 800 c.c.

24 hours for a total of about a liter a day (Dill, 1938). At body temperatures this represents a heat loss of about 580 calories (Wulsin, 1943).

However, as environmental conditions change with increasing temperature, heat loss through vaporization increases and may represent a large portion of total heat loss. Careful calorimetric studies on nude subjects were recorded by Hardy and Soderstrom (1938). They concluded there is a neutral temperature range for nude human beings in the basal state of 28° to 31° C. when heat loss is at a minimum. There is a "cold zone" from 22° to 28° C. at which there is no physiologic regulation of heat loss, the body cooling as an inanimate object. In the cold zone, vasomotor effects are insignificant, vaporization is constant and proportional to the surface area, and the thermal conductivity of surface tissues and peripheral blood flow are about constant. In a temperature range from 28° C. to 30° C., the zone of vasomotor regulation, at which heat loss is at a minimum, there is increased peripheral circulation but vaporization is still constant. This zone was the most comfortable to the subjects. Above 30° C. the blood flow to the skin and the vaporization increase directly with the temperature of the environment; sweating begins to play a part in the cooling process at about 30° C. During the experiment the rectal temperatures increased 0.2° C. for each 1° C. increase in calorimeter temperatures. Skin temperatures also increased from about 31° C. to more than 34° C. as calorimeter temperatures rose from 23° C. to 35° C. Heat loss was approximately equal to heat production only in the narrow range from 29° C. to 32° C. (85° F. to 90° F.); at other temperatures, heat loss was greater than heat production and declined rapidly to its lowest level as the calorimeter temperature rose from 22° C. to 28° C. and then increased more slowly as the environmental temperature rose above 32° C. The vaporization of moisture was nearly constant up to 30° C., above which it increased rapidly with temperature.

MAN'S REACTION TO A HOT ENVIRONMENT

During the past few years numerous studies have been made, designed to test man's adaptability to the hot, dry heat of a "desert" climate, and to the hot, wet heat of a "jungle" climate (Dill, 1938; Taylor et al., 1943; Henschel et al., 1943; Sodeman and Burch, 1944; Robinson et al., 1941; Machle, 1944). Most of the studies were carried out in laboratory heat chambers where any type of climate could be simulated and careful observations could be made. As a result, certain important conclusions have been reached.

As environmental temperatures rise there are prompt physiologic responses which are similar in resting and in working subjects, which increase quantitatively with environmental temperatures and with the degree of physical activity. The responses represent the body's attempt to maintain a normal temperature by stimulating increased heat loss. There is increased peripheral blood flow with peripheral vasodilatation. This requires greater cardiac output and at times the heart rate increases to as much as 180 beats per minute. Internal and skin temperatures rise, but because the greatest increase is internal, the thermal gradient from deep tissues to skin surface is larger. This favors heat loss through radiation, conduction, and convection, provided the environment is cooler than the skin surface. Sweating increases the amount of surface water available for vaporization and as much as a liter per hour may be lost during work at high temperatures, representing a cooling of 580 calories. As environmental temperatures equal or exceed the body surface temperature, heat loss by other means than vaporization may become negligible and heat gains may result. Therefore, the amount of water vapor in the air, the relative humidity, or the wet bulb temperature becomes the most important factor in heat loss at high environmental temperatures. If no vaporization can take place because the environment is saturated with water vapor, the last remaining mechanism for dissipating heat is lost and there is a complete breakdown of temperature regulation. This condition results in hyperthermia which is fatal if unchecked.

Under conditions of thermal stress, the two most effective regulatory mechanisms are circulation and sweating. There is a double strain put on the heart in regulating temperature, because peripheral circulation must be accelerated for cooling, and any rise in body temperature which accompanies heat stress means increased metabolism with greater oxygen requirements, and hence further acceleration in the circulation of blood is demanded. Therefore, the efficiency of the cardiovascular system is the most important factor in limiting adaptation to heat. As the circulatory limits vary considerably with individuals, so does the ability to adjust to heat.

The amount of sweat produced is also a factor in adjustment to heat, and persons who sweat most adapt best to heat and have a smaller rise in body temperature than those who sweat little. Body temperature may rise 2° C. to 3° C. or more under conditions of thermal and physical stress.

As thermal stress increases, the heart rate becomes more and more rapid, and may reach the limit of 180 beats per minute. Dizziness and stupor may result as well as vasomotor instability, as evidenced by low blood pressure and fainting on changing to an erect position. Body temperatures may climb to dangerously high levels, and collapse may ensue. During this period there is profuse perspiration, although this mechanism, too, may break down as collapse approaches. Cramps in the muscles or in the abdomen may also occur.

There is a loss of water and chemical substances, chiefly salt, urea, and lactate, in sweat, with a resulting change in various constituents of the blood and tissues. Dehydration, a lowered concentration of sodium and chloride ions in the plasma, diminished urinary output with little or no sodium chloride in the urine, and an increased serum protein concentration and red cell count may result.

It has been shown that man adapts better to heat conditions and becomes more efficient in his thermal regulation after relatively short acclimatization periods of a few days to a week or more. Sweating becomes more profuse, starts more rapidly upon exposure to heat, and the concentration of salt in sweat decreases. The temperature rise is less marked after a few days of "training" in the heat, and may be less than 1° C. where it was more than 2° C. before acclimatization, indicating an improvement in the heat regulatory apparatus.

Furthermore, experience reveals that men conditioned to a hot, dry environment did well in a "jungle" environment where temperatures were 32° C. (90° F.) dry bulb and 31° C. (88° F.) wet bulb. The ability to adjust more quickly and efficiently to a hot environment after acclimatization decreases gradually over a period of weeks when subjects are removed to a cooler environment (Henschel, Taylor, and Keys, 1943). Cases of heatstroke reported among industrial workers disclosed that the majority had been idle for some days before the attacks and hence could have lost some of their ability to dissipate heat (Talbott et al., 1937).

Another point of practical significance is that while acclimatization results in a lowered concentration of salt in sweat, the concentration is roughly proportionate to the rate of production and hence to the degree of physical exertion (Dill, 1938).

The importance of an adequate salt intake in adjusting to heat stress has been emphasized (Taylor et al., 1943). Observations were made on a group of men at rest and at work in environmental temperatures of 48.5° C. (120° F.) dry bulb and 29° C. (85° F.) wet bulb, during the days, and 29° to 35° C. (85° to 95° F.) dry bulb and 18° to 24° C. (65° to 75° F.) wet bulb, during the nights. Fluids were given freely but the total daily salt intake was held at an average of 6 Gm. per man for one group, 15 Gm. for a second group, and 30 Gm. for a third group. The men on the low salt intake showed higher pulse rates, higher rectal temperatures at work, and poorer postural cardiovascular adjustments; they lost more than twice as much body weight, drank less water, and sweated less than the men on moderate salt intake. Heat exhaustion and prostration with nausea, vomiting, tachycardia, hypotension, vertigo, dehydration, and collapse occurred in 25 per cent of the "low salt" group and in only 2.5 per cent of the "moderate salt" group. Rest (in the heat), food, salt, and water sufficed to restore all cases of collapse. There was no obvious advantage gained by the group who were given 30 Gm. of salt a day. It was concluded that heat exhaustion and the ability to work in the heat are dependent almost wholly on cardiovascular efficiency which, in turn, depends upon an adequate salt intake.

THE PHYSIOLOGIC EFFECTS OF SUNLIGHT ON MAN

Numerous beneficial and deleterious effects have been claimed from the direct action of sunlight upon man. Sunlight is frequently included in the treatment of bone and joint tuberculosis, certain types of skin disease, and rickets. To the rays of the sun are frequently attributed certain tonic and stimulating properties, aside from the mere heating effects produced. On the other hand, many claim that tropical sunlight in some areas has an evil influence, especially at midday, and protective coverings such as sun helmets, spine pads (Manson-Bahr, 1943), and orange-red underwear (Phalen, 1910) have been suggested.

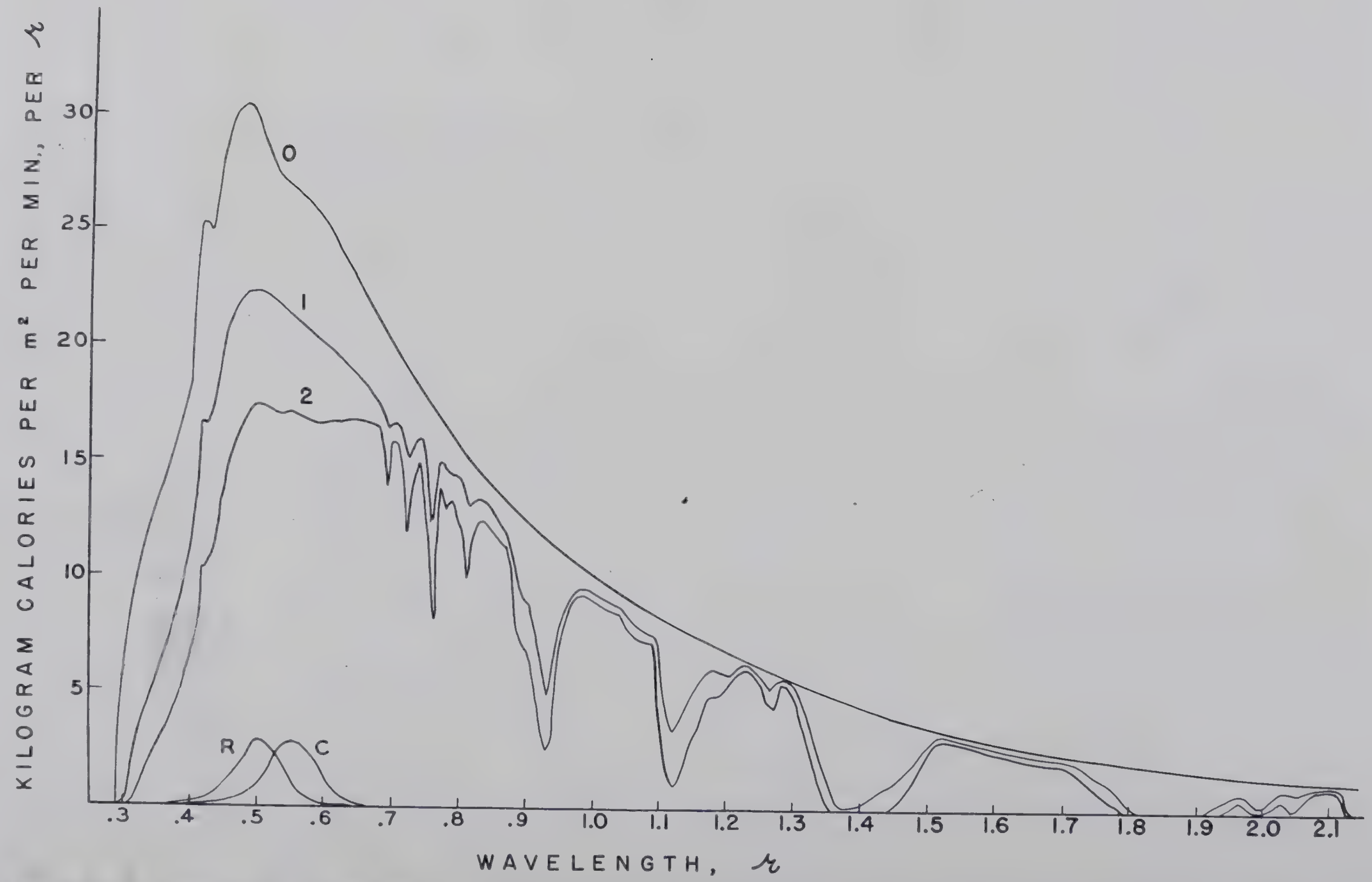


Fig. 458.—Spectral distribution of sunlight; *0*, outside the atmosphere (air mass *0*); *1*, with sun at zenith (air mass *1*); *2*, with the sun at 60° from zenith (air mass *2*). Curves *1* and *2* are for 20 mm. H_2O, 2.8 mm. ozone, and 300 dust particles per cubic centimeter. (From Blum, H. F., 1945. Reprinted from Physiological Reviews with permission of author and publisher.)

A complete review of effects of sunlight, which presents the most up-to-date information, has been written by Blum (1945). The maximum intensity of the solar spectrum just outside the earth's atmosphere is at wave length 0.48 μ, the wave lengths ranging from about 0.3 μ to more than 2.1 μ. Sunlight is arbitrarily divided into three spectral regions: the ultraviolet, or short waves of less than 0.4 μ; the visible waves of 0.4 μ to 0.7 μ; and the infrared, or long waves of more than 0.7 μ. The spectrum of sunlight is modified in passing through the atmosphere to the earth's surface, because some wave lengths are scattered and absorbed more than others. The modification is proportional to the distance traveled through atmosphere, i.e., to the angle of the sun with the zenith. The principal absorbers of sunlight are ozone, which removes the shorter ultraviolet wave lengths, and water vapor, which absorbs the longer infrared wave lengths. To a lesser extent, dust, smoke particles, and water droplets are absorbers. The scattering effects of gas molecules, smoke particles, dust, and water droplets are most marked in the shorter wave lengths. Many of the scattered short waves may be reflected to the earth and sunburn may occur from sky radiation even though the sky is overcast.

The physiologic effects of sun's rays are dependent upon the wave length, the amount of radiation reaching the body surface, and the amount of reflection, scattering, absorption, and penetration. The wave length and intensity of radiation vary with latitude, altitude, time of day, and atmospheric conditions. In general, solar radiation becomes less intense with increasing latitude, although the noonday summer sun at high latitudes may give more intense radiation than the noonday sun in the Tropics. Reflection of sun's rays from the skin surface varies with the amount of pigment; blonds reflect more light than do brunettes and Negroes, as shown in Table XXXI.

TABLE XXXI. REFLECTION OF TOTAL SUNLIGHT BY HUMAN SKIN
(From Blum, 1945.)

TYPE OF SKIN	PER CENT REFLECTION
Average blond	43
Dark brunette	35
Dark, partly Negro	30
Hindu	22
Negro	16

There is no doubt that the major portion of unreflected sunlight is absorbed before it penetrates more than a few millimeters and the rays with wave lengths which produce sunburn penetrate only a fraction of a millimeter. Short waves, about 0.28 μ, are scattered in all directions by the outer corneal layers, and there is, therefore, much absorption, little reflection, and little penetration. A large fraction of the waves, about 0.5 μ, in the visible part of the spectrum, is reflected from the skin, and another large fraction penetrates into the corneum where it is absorbed to a great extent by the hemoglobin of the blood. There is little scattering of the longer waves, about 3.0 μ, which are largely absorbed by the corneum.

Direct physiologic effects of sunlight on the body must be limited to l cal changes in the surface organs such as the skin and the eye. The results sunlight on skin are the heating effect and certain photochemical reactions r sulting in sunburn. The heating effect is due to absorption of radiant energy with an increase in surface temperature, which is usually of only a mino degree because of radiation of "heat" waves, conduction to deeper tissues and the cooling effect of vaporization.

Sunburn.—Sunburn results from exposure to the ultraviolet portion o the spectrum, which causes injury to the unconjugated proteins or to the nucleic acids, or both, of the tissue cells. Some substance or substances are produced which cause vasodilatation of peripheral capillaries which after a latent period is shown by erythema. In addition to vasodilatation, there is an increase in capillary permeability, and tissue edema with obvious swelling results. A few days after the exposure, at the time suntan appears, there is a migration of melanin from the basal to the more superficial layer of the epidermis. Later, more pigment is formed in the basal layer, and pre-formed pigment may become darkened through a chemical change. A certain amount of immunity to sunburn is acquired, chiefly through thickening of the corneum and not through increased pigmentation, although there can be little doubt that the erythema threshold is higher in dark than in light skins. Protection from sunburn may be afforded by any substance, such as glass and some plastics, capable of absorbing radiation between 0.29 μ and 0.32 μ. Various ointments and sunburn oils may have some influence, but they vary widely in their effectiveness. There are, of course, degrees in the severity of sunburn, depending upon many factors including individual susceptibility, the intensity and duration of exposure, and the relative amounts of the burning rays that reach the skin. When a large part of the body surface has been sunburned, severe illness may result. However, severe sunburn may develop in temperate zones as well as in the Tropics, for at high latitudes at midday the sunburn-producing component of sky radiation is much greater, relative to the total radiation coming from the sun, than it is at low latitudes.

Other effects of the sun on the skin in addition to sunburn must be considered. There is growing evidence that sunlight is a major cause of skin cancer, and it has been shown very clearly that skin cancer among the white population in the United States is most common in regions with the most sunlight (Dorn, 1944). It is known that intensities of ultraviolet radiation below a certain critical value have relatively little carcinogenic effect and that the time between exposures is an important factor in tumor induction. Rest periods permit partial recovery from the carcinogenic effects, and, because with increasing latitude there are fewer days during the year when the intensity of the radiation is above the critical level, the carcinogenic potential is lower.

Vitamin D is formed by the action of ultraviolet radiation upon some precursor-steroid compound, probably near the surface of the skin, in the layers of the corneum. Blum (1945) stated that this action is the one clear-cut, beneficial effect known to be produced by sunlight acting on the human skin.

Some "photosensitive" individuals are unduly susceptible to a certain part of the solar spectrum. Some react with only severe sunburn, while others develop variable types of skin eruptions. In addition, the introduction of a wide variety of chemical substances into tissues may sensitize them to light and subsequent exposure may result in tissue destruction. This photodynamic action is one of the characteristics of the porphyrin pigments and some other substances.

Photophthalmia.—In the eye, little scattering of sunlight occurs in the superficial layers, and the penetration is much deeper as compared to the skin. Waves shorter than 0.32 μ are probably largely absorbed by the cornea and conjunctiva although there may be some penetration as far as the epithelium of the lens. Penetration to the retina progressively increases to a maximum at wave length 0.8 μ and falls to zero at about 1.4 μ, but about one-half of the energy of sunlight which reaches the retina lies in the visible and about one-half in the infrared portion of the spectrum.

Sunburn of the eye, photophthalmia, may result from injury to the cells of the cornea and conjunctiva by ultraviolet radiation from direct or reflected sunrays, or exposure to artificial sources of radiation. This is characterized by pain, photophobia, increased secretion, edema, and purulent discharge, and, at times, visual disturbances, the severity depending upon the intensity of exposure.

"Eclipse blindness" or scotoma, following exposure to direct solar radiation, is doubtless due to heat generated in the retina at the point where the sun's image is focused. However, since only about 20 per cent less light reaches the retina with the sun at 60° from the horizon than with the sun at the zenith, there is little reason for a higher incidence from this cause in the Tropics than in the higher latitudes. Looking directly at the sun is dangerous at any latitude, but especially so at low latitudes where greater intensity of both direct and reflected light, especially on sandy beaches, deserts, or at high altitudes, may so alter the retina as to cause visual changes.

Injury to the lens from the intense infrared radiation from glass blowers' furnaces is believed to be a cause of cataracts. Sunlight, in contrast to radiation from the furnaces, contains ultraviolet radiation which might conceivably reach the lens in sufficient intensity to damage the epithelium or the vitreous body. However, the high incidence of senile cataract said to occur in the Tropics is probably not due primarily to the high degree of insolation, and other explanations must be sought. Possible nutritional and racial factors play a part.

Pterygia are known to be more common in tropical areas than elsewhere, but the reasons for this are not clear. It may be that injury to the conjunctiva from ultraviolet radiation is a factor, but irritation from dust and wind may play a part, and nutritional factors must not be discounted.

Proved systemic effects of exposure to sunlight are few and are practically limited to those resulting from the increased heat load or from toxic substances produced in cases of severe sunburn, and to the metabolic influence of vitamin D synthesis. Therapeutic action of sunlight, claimed in a variety of conditions and usually attributed to ultraviolet radiation of wave lengths shorter than 0.32 μ, has not been proved except in the case of rickets and possibly in lupus vulgaris and certain other skin conditions. Sun-bathing, which gives a pleasurable sensation of warmth, is usually associated with other influences such as rest, relaxation, and a pleasant environment, and there is no evidence that, under such conditions, the sunrays, in themselves, have any part in the apparent beneficial effects.

The solar heat load, however, may be an important factor in producing systemic changes. A part of solar radiation striking the body is reflected by the skin or clothing and the remainder is absorbed. The absorbed portion is composed of direct radiation from the sun, reflected radiation from the sky and from the soil, and these separate components vary with the position of the sun and the position of the body, as well as with other factors. Table XXXII, from Blum (1945a), shows that the total solar heat load may be nearly 4 kg.-cals./min. for a man in the erect position, with the sun at the zenith or at 60° from the zenith. With the sun at an angle there is more direct and less reflected radiation of the erect figure than when the sun is in the zenith, so that the total radiation is about equally distributed. In the prone position, however, when the sun is in the zenith, there is more radiation, both direct and reflected, than when the sun is at an angle; hence, the total effect is much greater with the sun in the zenith. The total solar heat load may amount to 240 kg.-cals./hr., or 1 or 3 times the resting metabolic heat load. This added heat may be enough to burden seriously the temperature-regulating mechanisms, especially if the environmental temperature is high and the person is working. Vasomotor instability, vasodilatation, increased pulse, sweating, rise in body temperature, and other heat effects observed in experiments in the heat chamber may result.

TABLE XXXII. ESTIMATED SOLAR HEAT LOAD
(From Blum, 1945a.)

POSITION OF MAN	ZENITH ANGLE OF SUN	TOTAL SOLAR HEAT LOAD (KG.-CALS./MIN.)
Erect	0°	3.87
	60°	3.86
Prone	0°	5.73
	60°	2.29

In sunburn, there are photochemical changes in the superficial cells with the elaboration of substances which may be toxic. Fever is frequently present in severe sunburn, and may develop several hours after exposure when effects of the added heat load have been dissipated. The fever is doubtless the result of toxic substances produced by cell injury from radiation. The erythema of sunburn represents increased peripheral circulation which, if added to the need for increased circulation for heat regulation, might be a sufficient demand on the heart as to exceed its capacity. In other words, men with sunburn erythema have less reserve capacity to adjust to heat than men without sunburn.

Since the sunrays penetrate only a few millimeters into the human skin, and the superficial heat which is generated is quickly dissipated by the circulation and other means, it is inconceivable that sunrays can have any direct effect on the brain or spinal cord. Radiation on the top of the head has no more effect than radiation of equal intensity on the same skin area in another part of the body, except possibly that a bald-headed man may develop an extremely uncomfortable sunburn. The effects are practically limited to increased heat load and sunburn.

PHYSIOLOGIC VARIATIONS IN HOT CLIMATES

Certain physiologic measurements of tropical residents appear to differ from those of residents of temperate and cold regions. However, since normal values may differ with environment, deviations encountered in hot climates may be beneficial rather than the reverse. Adaptation usually is purposive, to enable man to meet more efficiently the demands placed upon him by changing surroundings. Although much has been written about man's biologic measurements in hot as contrasted to colder climates, there are only a few definite, clear-cut differences which stand out. Too often comparisons have been made between colored races in tropical surroundings and white races in the north, or between relatively small and selected groups of whites in the Tropics and much larger and more heterogeneous white populations in temperate surroundings. In only a few instances have the same individuals been studied over long periods in both types of climate; but certain differences resulting from altered environmental influences, chiefly climatic, are suggested.

Basal Metabolism.—Basal metabolism is lower in hot climates. The difference is not great, but the consistency of findings warrants this conclusion. A group of Europeans was studied by MacGregor and Loh (1941) for varying periods up to 2½ years after their arrival in Singapore. The metabolic rate was 5 to 6 per cent below the accepted standards for temperate climates after 2½ years' sojourn, with apparently a gradual decline during the first year, after which there was little change. Martin (1930) showed how his own resting metabolism decreased from approximately 60 to 55 kg.-cals./hr. as ambient temperatures increased during a sea voyage from England through the Indian Ocean, and then as cooler weather in the Southern Hemisphere was encountered his metabolism increased again to the former level. Mason (1940) who studied a group of English and American women in a hot climate reported that average metabolic rates were lower than they had been in the same women in temperate climates although there was much variation.

It is probably true, however, that when metabolism determinations are made in the Tropics the environmental temperature is usually higher than in temperate zones. Differences may be as great as 8° to 10° C. Referring again to calorimetric studies (Hardy and Soderstrom, 1938), it is to be remembered that heat loss from the nude body is approximately equal to heat production only within the narrow temperature range from 29° to 32° C. (85° F. to 90°

F.), and at higher and lower temperatures heat loss is greater than heat production. Increased heat loss at colder temperatures stimulated greater heat production and, therefore, a higher metabolism. It is probable that metabolic determinations in temperate zones are commonly made when environmental temperatures are considerably below the neutral zone, while those in the Tropics are more apt to be determined in the neutral zone. It is obvious that the conditions under which observations are made may be responsible for recorded variations and there may be no fundamental difference in metabolic rates. However, since metabolism takes place at a lower rate in warm surroundings (29° C. to 32° C.) than at cooler temperatures, there is less heat to be dissipated, and this may be advantageous.

Blood Pressure.—Much has been written on the subject of blood pressure in tropical climates. The accepted view is that both systolic and diastolic pressures average lower than in colder climates. There is an important racial factor which must be considered, for Negroes as a group are much more subject to hypertension than the white races. It was shown (Saunders and Bancroft, 1942) that, in Virgin Island Negroes, not only hypertension but also very low systolic pressures were common. Racial and unexplained nutritional factors were advanced as the causes of higher than "normal" blood pressures, and climatic factors as the reason for lower pressures. Mason (1940) and Roddis and Cooper (1926) found that blood pressures in white subjects were from 5 to 10 mm. Hg lower in the Tropics than they had been in temperate climate. Phalen (1910) showed, in a group of American soldiers in the Philippines, that there was a fall in systolic blood pressure during the hot season of the year. Systolic pressures averaged about 124 mm. Hg in December and January (the cooler months) but the average dropped to 118 mm. Hg during August (a hot month).

Doubtless, it is true that, in the same individuals, blood pressure readings will average lower in a hot than in a cold environment. The logical physiologic explanation for this is the peripheral vasodilatation which develops in hot surroundings to enhance heat loss. The factor of dehydration with slightly diminished blood volume might play a small part in exceptional cases where there has been profuse sweating without adequate fluid intake. Possibly the slower tempo of life, which often occurs in tropical regions, may favor both mental and physical relaxation, and play a part in lower blood pressure.

Pulse Rate.—The pulse rate under basal conditions is probably affected little if at all by residence in hot climates. Under conditions of excessive heat stress, we have seen that the pulse rate increases to speed up circulation, to aid in heat loss, and rates measured at such a time would naturally be higher. Strong (1943) cited references, some of which suggested higher pulse rates in the Tropics, some lower rates, and some unchanged. The data of MacGregor and Loh (1941) suggest that pulse rates are lower in Europeans living in Singapore than would be expected in a temperate climate, but his subjects were military men who had undergone months of physical training and might be expected, therefore, to have slower resting rates. Mason (1940) also noted slower pulse rates in English and American women after a period of residence in India. Considering available evidence it seems warranted to conclude that there is a slight slowing of the resting pulse rate in the Tropics, probably commensurate with the slight decrease in metabolism, but that physical exertion will cause a greater increase in rate than would be expected in cold climates, because of the added heat stress.

Body Temperature.—There is essentially no difference in resting body temperature in the Tropics as compared to other regions, but a greater increase with exercise may occur in the Tropics, especially in unacclimatized persons, due to the added heat burden. Brennemann (1943) showed that, in healthy children and in adults in temperate climates, a rectal temperature of 38° C. (101° F.) after exercise was a common finding even though the mouth temperature was normal. Taylor et al. (1943) stated that work in the heat increased body temperatures by 1.7° C. (3° F.) in unacclimatized persons, while the increase was only 0.8° C. (1.4° F.) after a period of acclimatization. Skin temperatures may be slightly elevated (Sundstroem, 1927) but this is dependent upon environmental temperatures and relative humidity.

Urinary Output.—The urinary output is ordinarily much less in hot than in cold weather, and the daily volume of urine will normally be considerably less in the Tropics than elsewhere because of increased amounts of water loss in perspiration. With decreased output of urine, the specific gravity is usually high because of the greater concentration of solids, but in case of excessive sweating with inadequate salt intake, chlorides may entirely disappear from the urine (Dill, 1938).

Menarche.—There is still much confusion regarding the age of onset of menstruation, especially in reference to tropical residents, and widely divergent statements are made. Manson-Bahr (1943) stated: "In children, puberty is attained at an earlier age so that in European girls, menstruation commences about a year earlier than in temperate climates."

Mills (1942), however, on the basis of his own observations, believes that the onset of the menses is delayed in the Tropics about a year or more. Factors other than mere climate and place of residence influence the time of onset of menses, such as heredity and the social and economic status of the subjects. In a study made among Filipinos by Bersamin and Gonzáles-Bersamin (1940), it was shown that there was little difference in the age of menarche of women living in a cool mountain province (13.41 years) and in those living in hot, humid lowlands (13.88 years). There was more difference between women of higher and lower social status, the onset averaging 13.31 years for the former and 14.35 for the latter.

Bland (1932) has presented what is probably the most logical and credible attitude toward this question. He states that climate has practically no influence, race very little, and that surroundings, education, and nerve stimulation stand out prominently as the factors which determine the advent of puberty. He states: ‘‘Today it is believed that the age of the first menstru period, except for slight variations, is nearly the same in all parts of th world.’’

Psychologic Reactions to Tropical Environment.—The term ‘‘tropic neuasthenia’’ has been used for years in many standard texts on tropic medicine to indicate a condition which was allegedly the result of residen in tropical regions. The condition, characterized by bizarre and manifol symptoms of nervous irritability, fits of sudden anger, despondency, excessiv indulgence in alcohol or sex, careless work, feeling of weakness and malaise ‘‘spots before the eyes,’’ etc., has frequently been ascribed to the tropical environment, especially to the heat and humidity if in a jungle area, the dryness if in a desert region, and to tropical sunlight. McCartney (1944) stated that ‘‘where there is continuous heat with no winter, white men do not last long even if they escape infections,’’ and he further stated that among American missionaries, the majority of whom had been in tropical countries, about 36 per cent were furloughed home because of neuropsychiatric problems. One wonders if the same proportion of neuropsychiatric problems would not have appeared had the same individuals remained at home in a temperate climate but subjected to, for them, unusual psychic stress.

It is well known that large population groups, descendants of the British in the West Indies and elsewhere, of the Portuguese and Spanish in Latin America, many of them of European racial strain unmixed with colored racial strains, have lived successfully for generations in hot countries without showing any undue increase in psychiatric problems. Man, whether European, Asiatic, Central African, or Caribbean, frequently reacts against mental trauma and stress with a variety of abnormal behavior patterns, whether at home or abroad, whether in the Arctic or the Tropics. The type and severity of reaction will depend much upon the total personality make-up, the sum total of his experience, and the character and severity of the psychic stress.

It is true that the temporary resident of the Tropics in many cases is afflicted by undeniably noxious stimuli such as fear and anxiety of disease, insect pests, loneliness, frustration, and annoyance at the slowness of ‘‘native’’ groups (Stannus, 1926, 1927). But in most cases the maladjustment is sociologic rather than physiologic. We agree with Culpin (1933) that there is no ‘‘neurasthenia’’ peculiar to the Tropics. There are, however, many instances where unstable personalities are incapable of carrying on a normal life in the strange, new, and often unfriendly tropical environment. Frequently, too, the added burden of malaria, intestinal parasites, and possibly malnutrition from an inadequate diet consisting of canned foods may tip the psychic balance to the abnormal.

Hill (1943) supports the view that there is no real evidence that tropical climate is the chief cause of ‘‘tropical neurasthenia,’’ and he states, ‘‘there is no state of neurasthenia due purely to the effect of tropical climate on a previously healthy person.’’ In a study made of 500 admissions to a tropical hospital, among 50 patients showing neurasthenic or neurotic states, most of them had personality difficulties or latent neuroses existing before tropical experience. In some, the effects of organic disease appeared to predispose to breakdown.

"Tropical neurasthenia," then, may be concluded to be a figment of the imagination. It is true that neurasthenic states may develop more often among temporary tropical residents than among a comparable group in their indigenous environment, but the cause is not climate, but a variety of complex factors acting upon an unstable personality.

Heat Sickness.—One cannot leave the topic of physiologic changes in hot climates without a brief discussion of acute illness resulting directly from excessive heat loads. A vague and indefinite nomenclature has developed to label the resulting conditions, for example, heat cramps, stoker's cramps, heat exhaustion, heat stroke, heat pyrexia, thermic fever, and sunstroke.

In spite of the number of names, the acute effects of heat fall into only two classes. The first is characterized by cramping pains in skeletal muscles and in the abdomen with or without nausea and vomiting. It is associated with lowering of blood chlorides and hemoconcentration resulting from the excessive loss of salt with perspiration, and there may be a coincident increase in body temperature and pulse rate. This condition of "heat cramps" is common in workmen who are laboring under great heat stress as occurs in steel mills, stoke holds, and deep mines. Commonly, such cases occur with greater frequency during the first few days of a spell of hot weather, and among men who have returned to their jobs after an absence of a few days. In such circumstances the adaptation to heat has not yet been gained, or was partially lost as in the case of the absentees, as stated above.

The second type of acute illness presents a variety of symptoms, nearly all resulting from failure of the circulation or of the heat-regulating mechanism, or both. The total heat load from hot environmental temperatures, direct sunlight, and physical exertion has become so great that heat accumulates in the body. The underlying physiology has already been discussed in some detail. The result is increased body temperature which may exceed 41° C. (106° F.), in which case the prognosis is grave, rapid pulse, unstable blood pressure, a generalized feeling of weakness and exhaustion and faintness in some cases. Stupor or unconsciousness may follow, even in the horizontal position, and in such cases perspiration usually stops for lack of adequate circulation. There may be associated nausea and vomiting with further loss of chlorides. In certain cases there is little, if any, increase in body temperatures, and the outstanding symptoms are faintness and weakness due to circulatory failure. This second type of acute illness should probably be called heat prostration or heat pyrexia, depending upon the salient signs and symptoms.

The usual treatment of heat cramps is administration of water and salt, with or without glucose, and rest in a cool place. Two Gm. of sodium chloride and 4 Gm. of dextrose in 200 c.c. of water may be given by mouth every 15 to 30 minutes until symptoms have subsided. Rarely is intravenous infusion of saline necessary.

As a preventive measure, workers in excessive heat should take 1 or 2 s tablets, each containing 0.5 Gm. sodium chloride, with water, several tim during the day. In some localities it is customary to provide drinking wat containing 0.1 per cent sodium chloride.

Treatment of heat exhaustion or heat pyrexia consists of removal to a co environment if possible, and the administration of salt and water by mout or parenterally. If pyrexia is a prominent feature, the body should be coole by spraying with cold water or alcohol, or by wrapping a wet sheet and exposing to a breeze. Ice enemas or ice packs may be necessary but must be use cautiously, for the sudden shock of cold may cause death due to complet circulatory collapse.

The geographic distribution of heat sickness is not well identified, du to vague terminology and the great variation in reporting cases and deaths Reports available give a definite impression that deaths from heat are mor numerous in temperate than in tropical climates. There is a rational explanation for this inconsistency. We have seen that adaptation to heat develop within a few days or weeks, and is lost slowly over a period of weeks in a colde environment. Inhabitants of temperate climates lose their adaptation durin cool weather and are thus unprepared to meet sudden spells of heat efficiently On the other hand, in the Tropics, where temperatures are consistently high without much seasonal variation, adaptation is not lost. Apparently, death from heat in the Tropics occur more often in persons of European than o native races, although the latter are by no means immune. Europeans ar more apt to be poorly adapted to heat because of recent arrival, and, in general, they do not learn to adjust their habits and clothing to minimize hea load as well as the indigenous races (Collings, 1943; Brown, 1935; Shattuc and Hilferty, 1936; Dreosti, 1934).

SPECIAL FEATURES OF THE TROPICS

In addition to reactions to heat and to the underlying physiologic mechanisms, there are other important factors peculiar to a tropical environment The flora and fauna are different in the Tropics and at times may contai elements dangerous to health and life. Many diseases seldom found elsewher are prevalent in the Tropics. The noxious flora and fauna and specific diseases are mentioned briefly here because of their important bearing on tropical hygiene.

Tropical Flora.—Many plants peculiar to the tropics are injurious to man Some may cause poisoning when ingested, while others are tropical contac irritants. Examples of the former are the akee *(Blighia sapida)*, commonl used for food on some islands of the West Indies, and the fruit of the manchineel tree *(Hippomane mancinella)* which is also common in the Caribbea area, and may be eaten by the unwary. Examples of the latter are iroko allergy and sensitivity to the manchineel and the ordinary mango. The wood o the African teak may cause severe contact dermatitis. Many other plants, extracts of which are used medicinally, are common to the damp tropical regions and ingestion may lead to severe poisoning. It is important not to eat unfamiliar fruits or plants in the Tropics unless assured they are perfectly safe.*

Tropical Fauna.—Insects, spiders, scorpions, reptiles, fish, and other forms of animal life which abound in many tropical regions may be simply pestiferous, or they may constitute a danger because of poisonous bites or stings, or may be the means of disease transmission. In some jungle areas the ravenous biting of many species of insects and the itching or painful reaction to the bites may make life unbearable. Mosquitoes, and insects of the genera Culicoides, Simulium, and Phlebotomus, may be troublesome pests as well as vectors of disease. Poisonous snakes may constitute a real hazard in some tropical areas; the cobra in India, the black mamba of West Africa, and the rattlesnake of interior Brazil are well-known examples. Some fish are poisonous when eaten; other species have poisonous stings; and the mutilating bites of the barracuda and of the piranha of the Amazon Basin may be fatal.

Diseases of the Tropics.—Tropical residents suffer from nearly all the illnesses which are common in temperate and cold zones, and in addition there are many diseases which are common in tropical areas but rare elsewhere. There are some conditions, notably rheumatoid arthritis, rheumatic fever, rheumatic heart disease, and clinical diphtheria, which are relatively uncommon in hot countries.

There are few diseases which are strictly limited in their distribution to warm climates and in most instances these are restricted because the vector or vectors necessary for transmission require a minimum temperature for their survival and multiplication. Malaria, although it is endemic in many nontropical areas, is far more common in the Tropics and subtropics where it assumes tremendous importance in many regions and is one of the prime causes of morbidity and mortality. The distribution of malaria is determined largely by climatic conditions favorable to the survival of the anopheline vector. Yellow fever, although it was once epidemic along the Atlantic coast of the United States, and in Europe, is now confined to tropical areas in South America and Africa (Scott, 1939). The mosquito vectors of this disease, however, have a much wider distribution than the disease, and are found in many areas of the temperate zones. The disappearance of yellow fever from the southern United States and the Caribbean area, while the mosquito vector persisted, suggests that factors other than the presence of suitable vectors are necessary for the disease to propagate. Yaws is one outstanding example of a disease which is strictly tropical in its distribution, for it is endemic only in hot, relatively wet areas. The reasons for the limited distribution are not clear. It may be that warm, moist climatic conditions favor the development of florid, open lesions of yaws, which are the sources of infection for other persons, or that an insect vector is involved which is limited in its distribution by climatic factors (Saunders et al., 1936). Diarrhea and enteritis caused by pathogenic organisms are widespread throughout the world, but they are

---

*An excellent discussion of this subject may be found in the handbook issued by the U. S. Navy: *How to Survive on Land and Sea.*

most prevalent where local conditions permit the pollution of food and water with human feces. These conditions are encountered most frequently in tropical areas, due largely to social and economic factors, and it is not surprising that intestinal diseases reach their highest prevalence in the Tropics and Subtropics. Although lack of adequate environmental sanitation is largely responsible, climatic factors also play a part. Heat and moisture are favorable to the survival and multiplication of pathogenic organisms outside the body, especially in contaminated food.

There are other diseases which have greater prevalence in some parts of the Tropics and Subtropics, not because of the direct effects of climatic conditions but because of the generally low social and economic level. Leprosy, for example, which was once common in northern and central Europe as well as elsewhere, has almost disappeared from the cold countries of Europe, and the areas of its greatest prevalence are now the Tropics and Subtropics. The distribution of the disease has varied with changing conditions; the highest incidence generally coincides with areas of poor social, economic, and hygienic conditions (Saunders, 1942). Poverty, unsanitary surroundings, ignorance, and malnutrition foster the propagation of most communicable diseases, and probably have a great deal to do with the present prevalence of leprosy, yaws, and other diseases in certain areas.

PRACTICAL POINTS ON INDIVIDUAL HYGIENE

The added heat burden and the greater risk of infectious diseases are the two main factors to be considered in connection with life in the Tropics. Man's physiologic reactions to heat and the mechanism of his adjustment and adaptation indicate that some positive actions can be taken which will contribute to make life in the Tropics healthy and comfortable. Furthermore, certain simple prophylactic measures, in addition to community sanitation, can be taken by the individual to avoid infectious disease.

The extra heat load imposed in the Tropics can be minimized by proper habits of life and work, and by proper food, clothing, and housing. The habits of life and work are important. The tempo of activity should be slowed down. If it is necessary to walk outside in the heat of the day, a leisurely pace should be the rule to avoid excessive sweating, with its attendant discomfort and loss of chlorides and fluids. On the other hand, regular physical exercise is important to "keep fit" in the Tropics, probably more so than in colder climates, as heat dissipation by the body depends largely on an efficient circulatory system which is dependent in part upon exercise. Various outdoor sports or walking in the cool hours of the day should be encouraged, both for their physical effects and for their entertainment value. However, exercise should not be taken to the point of exhaustion, and undisturbed rest and sleep are essential for good health, although there is no reason to suppose this is truer in the Tropics than elsewhere.

Price (1939) has stressed the importance of physical work in maintaining health in the Tropics. It has been demonstrated time and again that northern whites can do hard labor in the hot-wet or hot-dry Tropics, probably as efficiently and well as dark-skinned races, and maintain good health. The North American laborers, who had so much to do with building and maintenance of the Panama Canal, and the American and European labor battalions in World War II are good examples.

In the Tropics, entertainment is essential for the idle hours, and this is especially true of isolated stations, where the dull monotony of days and nights of sameness may be an important factor in activating latent neuroses or in driving a person to drink. Outdoor games are beneficial physically as well as mentally. There are few places where enough players cannot be assembled for some type of game, and tennis, golf, cricket, and baseball are all popular in many tropical communities. Fishing or hunting may afford welcome relaxation. During recent years few places are so remote as not to be reached by radio and the movies. Photography is a fascinating hobby and diversion and has helped many a man in an isolated ''bush'' station.

Alcohol.—There are probably few races or times in history when fermented beverages were not part of the daily life or religious ritual. Someone once said that alcohol is a beneficent mistress and should not be abused. This is true in any part of the world, regardless of geography or climate, and the intemperate use of alcohol should be avoided. In many parts of the Tropics the custom of the ''sundowner'' is observed: a cold alcoholic drink after the day's work is finished. Individuals and races will differ in their drinking habits, but alcohol may be beneficial to those who are accustomed to a drink or two before the evening meal, because of the social implications and the mild stimulation of the appetite. The ''quart-a-day'' men are more apt to come to grief in the Tropics than elsewhere, however, for inebriation leads to lack of care in avoiding infections. Furthermore, the diet, already restricted in vitamins, may be reduced in quantity, and frank vitamin deficiencies may develop.

Food.—An adequate diet is necessary anywhere for the preservation of health; it must provide sufficient calories, at least a minimum of protein including the essential amino acids, sufficient mineral salts, and vitamins. In addition to the nutritional requirements, food should be palatable and free from pathogenic organisms and from organic or inorganic toxins or poisons. Unfortunately, an adequate and safe diet may be difficult to obtain in many parts of the Tropics, especially in rural areas where the indigenous population is semicivilized, and poverty and lack of sanitation are the rule. Rice, for example, is the principal food throughout vast tropical areas, but too often the vitamins have been largely removed by milling; such a diet thus becomes deficient not only in protein but also in vitamins. In other areas, where maize or taro provides the bulk of the available food, there is a similar lack; as a result deficiency diseases, particularly those caused by a lack of adequate supplies of vitamin A and factors belonging to the B complex group, are relatively common throughout much of the Tropics. There is an increased prevalence of night blindness, scaling and hyperkeratosis of the skin, keratitis, neuritis, nutritional edema, and pellagra.

A physically active adult will require 3,000 or more calories of food val each day, of which the protein constituents should probably be about Gm. for each kilogram of body weight. However, since protein stimulat metabolism, it is advisable in the Tropics to keep the protein consumption lo to minimize the heat burden, and the greater part of the caloric intake shoul be in the form of carbohydrates. Because animal proteins, meat and fis are often scarce in tropical areas, and milk is seldom available in sufficien quantities, much of the protein supply must come from such plant sources a rice and beans. However, grains and legumes are often deficient in some o the essential amino acids, particularly cystine, and must be supplemented by some form of animal protein (McLester, 1940).

Adequate vitamin intake can usually be asssured by careful attention to the diet. Vitamin A is present as the carotene precursors in substantial amounts in green leafy vegetables, such as broccoli, spinach, and chard; in "yellow" fruits, such as avocados, apricots, mangoes, bananas, and plantains; in egg yolk and mammalian and fish livers. Edible greens can be grown almost anywhere, and this, together with fruits mentioned, should furnish adequate amounts of fat-soluble vitamin A. Whole milk and butter fat are also potent sources of vitamin A, and should be consumed when available. Supplementary vitamin A can be supplied in large amounts but in small bulk by the various commercial fish-liver oils.

Vitamins of the B complex group, especially thiamin chloride, riboflavin, and nicotinic acid, are often deficient in quantity among rice-eating peoples due to the custom of milling and polishing the rice. This processing helps to keep the grain from fermenting, but removes most of the germ and outer layer of the seed and takes away much of the vitamin content. Van Veen (1940, 1941) reported that 500 Gm. of husked rice contained about 400 units of vitamin B_1 (thiamin), while the same amount of undermilled rice contained about 250 units, and polished rice retained about 100 units. Vedder (1943) stated that deficiencies associated with a polished rice diet were not usually made up by the limited amounts of fish and vegetables taken, and that polished rice is deficient not only in thiamin but also in riboflavin, the fat-soluble vitamins A, D, and E, and inorganic salts, especially calcium and iron.

Unpolished rice, the commercial "brown" rice, is a good source of the vitamin B complex, and should be eaten in preference to the polished "white" rice, especially when there is a question of the adequacy of vitamin supply. Whole seeds and whole grains, as well as milk, eggs, yeast, and liver, are generally a good source of thiamin. Fruits and vegetables, although variable in their vitamin content, are also important sources.

Riboflavin, like carotene, is found in the green leaves of growing plants, and also in milk, eggs, and liver. Yeast is another potent source of riboflavin.

Vitamin C, ascorbic or cevitamic acid, is plentiful in citrus fruits, tomatoes, and, like carotene, is found in close association with chlorophyll in the green parts of plants. Fresh or canned green, leafy vegetables are valuable sources of this vitamin. Generally, marked vitamin C deficiencies are not common in tropical areas, probably because relatively small amounts of this vitamin suffice to prevent frank scurvy. Minor degrees of this deficiency may, however, exist.

Rickets and other manifestations of vitamin D deficiency are seldom seen in the Tropics, probably because there is an abundance of sunlight which causes synthesis of the vitamin in the skin. Vitamin D is not found in plants but is present in fish oils, milk, eggs, and other suitable sources.

Methods of preparing foods have important effects on their vitamin content. The fat-soluble vitamins, although relatively thermostabile, are destroyed by oxidation. Introduction of air by excess stirring should be avoided during cooking. Water-soluble vitamins tend to withstand boiling in an acid medium, but are rapidly destroyed if heated in an alkaline medium. The habit of adding baking soda or other salts to green vegetables "to bring out the color" should be discouraged. Since water dissolves the vitamins, only a small quantity of water should be used in cooking, and it should not be discarded, otherwise valuable water-soluble substances are thrown away.

A diet of whole grain cereals, unpolished rice, fresh fruits, green leafy vegetables, with the addition of relatively small amounts of fish and meat, is usually adequate in calories, vitamins, and salt. Such a diet can be secured nearly everywhere. However, even though the food supply may be adequate in quantity and quality, the palatability and purity may leave much to be desired. Care and imagination in the preparation of attractive dishes are too often sadly lacking in many localities, where a monotonous diet of rice, beans, corn meal, and perhaps a little fish now and again is the accepted standard. Among many people the prejudices against fresh fruits and vegetables, the ingrained eating habits, food taboos, etc., may make it difficult to secure an attractive and adequate diet, even in the presence of plenty.

Dangers from gastrointestinal infections and food poisoning are ordinarily greater in the Tropics than elsewhere. In most small towns and rural areas where environmental sanitation is often lacking, the opportunity for the pollution of food and drink with human feces is great. Furthermore, the careless habits of food handlers and cooks, many of whom are carriers of infective microorganisms, favor contamination with enteric pathogens. In some regions the custom of fertilizing with night soil is an added hazard; and the relatively high environmental temperatures and the frequent absence of refrigeration favor decomposition of food and growth of bacterial infectants.

Fresh fruit and vegetables should not be eaten raw under such circumstances, but should be thoroughly cooked. The exceptions are the fruits which can be peeled before eating; in other words, those which have a rind or hull are safe to eat raw if the envelope is carefully removed. Washing lettuce and other greens in dilute permanganate or iodine solution is not adequate to remove or kill amebic cysts and other pathogenic organisms, and should be discouraged for it gives a false sense of security. Leftover foods should not be kept for future serving because of the danger of food poisoning, unless one can be assured of cleanliness in the handling of the food and prompt and adequate refrigeration.

Much can be done to prevent gastrointestinal infections and food poisoning if sufficient controls are imposed upon cooks, food handlers, and kitchens. A great deal depends upon proper selection of personnel and upon training in the elements of cleanliness. Food handlers, if possible, should be examined by a physician to eliminate those with obvious communicable diseases. Stool examination should be made to exclude carriers of parasites and other enteric pathogenic organisms. When this is not feasible, selection of personnel should be made after careful questioning about symptoms suggesting gastrointestinal and respiratory infections. A cook or other servant who makes too frequent trips to the latrine should be relieved of his post for a time. The domestic personnel, kitchen facilities, and storerooms should be inspected with frequent regularity and emphasis placed on clean hands, clean clothes, clean kitchens, clean dishes, and prompt disposal of garbage and refuse. Great tact must be used, for often a faithful servant will rebel at too much interference. In some places the domestic heirarchy is such that an employer may not set foot in the servants' domain or both parties will lose face.

Salt.—The importance of an adequate intake of sodium chloride, especially where work is done in the heat, has already been emphasized. Men doing hard work in the heat need a minimum of probably 10 to 15 Gm. of salt to replace that lost in sweat. The need is greater during the first few days of exposure to heat, when salt loss is greater, than after a period of adaptation. Salt may be taken in several ways. Table salt should be used freely at meals. The drinking water may have enough salt added to make a concentration of 0.1 per cent which is still palatable. This is probably better than the use of salt tablets which some believe cause symptoms of gastric irritation. Recently a new type of tablet has been devised (Consolazio et al., 1944) which, by allowing salt to be released slowly, has eliminated most of the unpleasant features. This is a tablet of sodium chloride, 0.65 Gm., impregnated with cellulose acetate or cellulose nitrate. The impregnating material acts as an inert sponge which is not affected by digestive secretions and is excreted in the feces. When salt tablets are used, 1 or 2 should be taken each time water is drunk.

Water.—One of the prime essentials for life is an adequate supply of pure, potable water. In many tropical regions, as well as elsewhere, water supplies, while adequate in quantity, are apt to be contaminated with pathogenic organisms and should be purified before drinking. A detailed discussion of water sources and purification cannot be included here, but a few general remarks are indicated.

The source of water must be considered in relation to its potability. Many large cities in tropical areas have pure, safe water supplies and adequate purification and supervision to ensure a constant safe supply. Usually information concerning the water supply can be obtained easily from local health authorities and physicians. However, in many cities, water from the mains is not safe for drinking without further treatment. In some places where chlorination is practiced, there is inadequate supervision of this process, too little chlorine is added, and possibly bacteriologic checks are not made carefully or frequently. Sometimes raw, untreated water from a polluted source is pumped directly into the mains. In some cities, where there is low pressure in the mains, booster pumps are permitted to force water into high buildings. This practice, and the common custom of cutting off the pressure during certain hours of the night, may lower the pressure sufficiently so that polluted ground water may force its way into the water mains and contaminate an otherwise pure supply. Unless one is assured that the water supply is safe, it should be assumed to be polluted and should be treated to render it potable.

The simplest way to sterilize water for household use is, of course, by boiling. A quantity sufficient for drinking purposes for a 24-hour period should be boiled for not less than 15 minutes in a covered container. It is usually necessary to exercise careful supervision over the servants who may be given this detail; otherwise, they tend to become lax and the water is not properly sterilized.

Of all the chemical substances used to purify water, chlorine in some form is probably the most universally used and the most practical, for example, chlorine in the form of HTH (high test calcium hypochlorite) or one of the chloramines, notably halazone (p-sulfonedichloroamidobenzoic acid). It is agreed, however, that chlorination in quantities sufficient to render the water free from pathogenic bacteria is not necessarily effective in destroying the cysts of *Endamoeba histolytica*. It is also to be remembered that water with much turbidity or suspended organic matter requires more chlorine than clear water. Furthermore, chlorine is less active in water with a high pH and more active in water that is relatively acid (Brady et al., 1943; Chang, 1944). Tests show that there should be not less than 0.2 p.p.m. of residual chlorine at the end of a given contact period to ensure adequate bactericidal action. The recommended dose of calcium hypochlorite is 3.77 mg. per liter of water, but about twice this amount, 7.54 mg. per liter, is necessary to destroys cysts of *E. histolytica* (Brady et al., 1943). However, if contamination with amebic cysts is suspected, chlorine should not be relied upon to purify the water. The high chlorine content necessary to ensure sterilization, probably more than 4 p.p.m., makes water distasteful.

Halazone tablets are useful for field trips and for emergency sterilization of small amounts of water when boiling is impractical. One or two tablets for 500 c.c. of water is the usual dose. The tablets should be crushed into a powder and shaken into the water, which should be allowed to stand for 30 minutes before drinking.

It should be remembered that freezing has little effect on most pathogenic microorganisms. When ice is used to chill beverages, care should be taken that the ice has been frozen from water which meets the required standards of purity. Too often people labor under the false sense of security that ice is, *ipso facto,* pure, and while they will take great care to ensure that the water they drink has been boiled or otherwise treated, they will cool their drinks with ice from unknown sources.

In addition to being bacteriologically safe, water must be adequate in amount. This is especially true when there is physical exertion in a hot environment. Daily individual requirements under conditions of strenuous work may be as high as 30 liters, as indicated in Table XXXIII.

TABLE XXXIII. DAILY FLUID REQUIREMENTS UNDER VARYING CONDITIONS (Summarized From War Department Circular Letter No. 119.)

ACTIVITY	FLUID REQUIREMENTS IN LITERS WHEN MAXIMUM DAILY TEMPERATURE IS:		
	95° F.	105° F.	115° F.
Light work	4	6	10
Moderate work	5	7	11
Heavy work	7	9	13

Bath water, if untreated, may also be a source of danger, especially in areas where schistosomiasis is prevalent. Recent experiments, which have not yet been made public, indicate that chlorine is effective in killing cercariae in strengths of 1 to 2 p.p.m. Furthermore, if water is allowed to stand free from additional sources of contamination, the cercariae will die within 24 to 48 hours.

Care in laundering clothes is also an important hygienic point in the Tropics. Various molds, fungi, and mites, as well as other organisms which may cause skin diseases, may be acquired through improperly laundered clothes. It is the habit of the washwomen in some places to soak clothes in contaminated, stagnant water. It is known that scabies and ringworm may be contracted from freshly laundered clothing.

Clothing.—Fashion normally dictates the type and kind of clothing, and often the results place the body at a disadvantage with respect to heat regulation. Martin (1930) wrote: "In my experience the obstacle to work in hot climates is, for the European, as much a social as a physiological one. The coolie works with his nice brown body exposed and covered with sweat and is jolly; whereas, the white man distressfully labors in a hyperthermic condition, straining his heart to work a refrigeration plant which he has rendered inefficient because his sense of dignity forbids him to expose his skin."

The design, fabric, and type of garments worn in the Tropics should have for their chief objectives coolness and protection from sunburn, excessive heat load, and from abrasions and insect bites. In general, clothing should be light in weight, light in color, and have as few layers as possible. Covering the body raises the skin temperature with a resultant decrease in the thermal gradient and less heat evaporation. The cardiac output in the nude body is estimated to be about 10 per cent higher in an environmental temperature of

38.5° C. (102° F.) than in lower temperatures. On the other hand, the increase with the body clothed is more than double this amount (Wulsin, 1943).

That color and weave are important factors is indicated by Table XXXIV,

TABLE XXXIV. THE TRANSMISSION, REFLECTION, AND ABSORPTION OF SUNLIGHT BY VARIOUS TYPES OF FABRICS

(Adapted from Wulsin, 1943)

TYPE OF FABRIC	SOLAR RADIATION, PER CENT:		
	TRANSMITTED	REFLECTED	ABSORBED
8.2-ounce khaki	0.0	56	44
Cotton herringbone twill, olive drab	0.1	26	74
Cotton percale, white	0.5	67	33
Cotton percale, olive drab	2.5	48.5	49

adapted from Wulsin's figures. White reflects more and absorbs less solar radiation than colored cloth, such as khaki; and some weaves, such as percale, reflect more than rougher fabrics, such as herringbone twill. Therefore, white, smooth-surfaced material is best in hot climates for minimizing the heat load which is increased by covering the skin with clothing.

Ordinarily, except when exposed to direct sunlight when the danger of sunburn may be a factor, as little of the body surface as possible should be clothed—consistent with custom and fashion. Other practical factors in connection with the design and type of clothing must be considered, such as laundry facilities. White materials are generally unsuitable for field conditions, for which the most practical and suitable material among many tested was found to be 8.2-ounce khaki cloth.

For men, loose-fitting, short-sleeved shirts and short trousers are probably the best type of clothing for hot climates, and are customarily worn in many parts of the Tropics during the daylight hours. However, where insects are a problem and where malaria is endemic, the legs and arms must be covered to protect them from insect bites, especially after dark.

Multiple layers of clothing should be avoided for it is known that each layer presents an additional barrier to heat flow, and a single layer is ordinarily all that is necessary. Frequent laundering is essential in hot climates because light-colored fabrics soil easily and the garments soon become saturated with the accumulated precipitations from secretions of the sweat glands. These, if allowed to accumulate, favor skin irritation.

There is no evidence that special protective devices such as sun helmets, woolen spine pads, orange-red underwear, or cholera belts possess any virtues in protecting men from the effects of tropical climate. Phalen (1910) reported on an experiment carried out many years ago in the Philippines on the effects of orange-red underwear. For a year he observed a group of men in orange-red, and a control group clad in white underwear of the same weight and texture. There was no essential difference in physiologic measurements between the two groups and the "white" group probably were a little more comfortable.

Headgear.—Much has been written in the past about the deadly effects of the tropical sun on the head and neck, especially in certain parts of Africa and India where it has been customary among most Europeans to persist in wearing heavy protective helmets which have projecting rims in the back to protect the neck. There is no established evidence that such headgear is necessary or even advisable, although residents and visitors are more comfortable when their heads are protected from the direct rays of the tropical sun. It has already been pointed out that the effects of sun's rays on the head and neck are not different from the effect of sun's rays on other parts of the body, and helmets simply add to the heat load in proportion to the area exposed to the sun's rays. Broad-brimmed, lightweight headgear, preferably light in color, is helpful in shading the upper part of the body and in cutting down the glare, particularly when the sun's rays are directly overhead. Glover (1942) measured the temperatures under various types of head coverings exposed to a uniform heat source. He found the temperature was lowest under a pith helmet lined with aluminum and weighing 280 Gm., but the temperature under an ordinary Panama hat, weighing only 110 Gm., was very little higher. The highest temperatures were obtained under cork helmets and felt hats.

Head nets, which are merely loose bags fashioned from mosquito netting, draped over the hat or helmet to reach the shoulders, may be needed at times to protect the head and neck from insects.

Footwear.—Lightweight shoes, particularly those with canvas uppers, are most comfortable in hot climates. However, for rough terrain and for operations in rural areas, heavier shoes must be worn. Canvas leggings are used to protect the legs from abrasions and insect bites and are as serviceable as the heavier spiral or leather puttees.

Mosquito boots are commonly worn in certain areas where malaria and other mosquito-borne diseases are prevalent. They are loose-fitting, light weight boots, usually made of white canvas or thin leather which reach to just below the knee where they are held with a tie. They are ordinarily worn during the hours of darkness and not during the daytime.

Sunglasses.—Intense glare in the Tropics may be troublesome and also may have some physiologic effects on the retina. Furthermore, the ultraviolet rays may cause sunburn of the conjunctiva, and the reflected longer rays may cause irritation from the heating effect. Sunglasses are advisable to protect the eyes against direct and reflected sunlight. These should be large enough to protect against side lighting and of a proper color to absorb the longer rays. Any glass, of course, will absorb the ultraviolet part of the spectrum.

Care of Clothing.—In damp jungle areas, one of the great problems is to preserve clothing from the flourishing growth of fungi and molds which appears to spring up almost overnight. Shoes and woolen articles left in a closet may become covered with mold in a day or two. Articles not in constant use should be thoroughly dried in direct sunlight or near a source of heat, such as the cook stove, and placed in an airtight metal trunk of the type commonly used in West Africa. A tight cupboard or closet should be provided for other articles, and if electricity is available, a light left burning in the cupboard will help keep the air dry and keep down the growth of molds.

Care of the Skin.—Extra skin care is necessary in most tropical areas, especially in the damp jungle regions, because of the prevalence of various skin diseases such as fungus, scabies, and other dermatitides. Prickly heat, which is caused by excess sweating and which in itself is annoying, predisposes to secondary infections of various kinds. Skin care involves frequent bathing with a bland soap after which the surface should be dried thoroughly and powdered with some form of borated talcum. For prickly heat, in addition to keeping the skin as dry as possible, applications of 1:2,000 bichloride of mercury in 90 per cent alcohol has been found to be useful.

Care of the Feet.—Care of the feet is especially important. Extensive fungus infections of the feet or extremities, which have been called "Hong Kong foot," "jungle rot," and various other names, is common in portions of the damp Tropics, especially where foot hygiene is neglected. Again, frequent bathing with attention to drying the skin between the toes and the use of various dusting powders is important. Socks should be changed daily and should be boiled and ironed if fungous infection has been acquired.

Old shoes which have become contaminated with fungi may remain a source of reinfection. They either should be thrown away or an attempt should be made to sterilize them. To destroy fungi, it has been recommended that shoes be placed in a closed container for 24 hours with a sponge soaked in formalin (Pillsbury et al., 1943). Shoes treated in this way should not be worn for at least 48 hours after exposure to formalin because of the danger of developing a chemical dermatitis.

Use of Insect Repellents and Insecticides.*—Insect repellents, of value in protecting against the annoying and sometimes dangerous bites of insects, have been developed during World War II. The most useful of the compounds are dimethylphthalate, Rutgers 612, and Indalone.

Laboratory and field tests show that these repellents vary in effectiveness against different species and may fail to repel some. A mixture of the 3 preparations in the proportions of 6 parts of dimethylphthalate and 2 portions of each of the others has been found to be effective against most insects. One application of the mixture usually gives good protection for several hours, depending on various factors such as the amount of perspiration and type of insect involved.

Clothing may be impregnated with a 5 per cent emulsion of dimethylphthalate, and garments so treated will retain their repellent properties for several weeks. This is especially important when travel is necessary in areas where scrub typhus is endemic.†

---

*See also Chapter 35.

†Editor's note (O. F.): Benzyl benzoate and Dibutylphthalate have gained adherents recently for the control of mites and chiggers in such areas.

The greatest advance in recent years in the use of insecticides has been the discovery of the efficacy of DDT (dichlorodiphenyl-trichloroethane). The preparation is especially effective against mosquitoes, both adult and larval forms, houseflies, lice, and fleas. DDT has two principal advantages over other insecticides: first, it is effective in low concentration and, second, it has a prolonged residual effect against most insects. DDT is used in a 10 per cent concentration as a powder with talcum, in a 5 per cent oil solution, or, less frequently, as an emulsion. For the control of mosquito larvae, DDT may be applied in an oily solution, in aqueous emulsion, or as dust. The application of 0.1 pound of DDT to 1 acre of surface will effectively control anopheline larvae. For adult mosquitoes, DDT is commonly used in an oil spray applied to the walls. This kills all adult mosquitoes which come into contact with it, and the residual which is deposited on walls and other surfaces remains effective for several weeks.

Oil sprays are used in controlling house flies. The walls of the affected premises should be thoroughly sprayed with a 5 per cent solution in oil. After one or two seasons' use, the flies in the area become resistant to DDT, so that other insecticides, as Chlordane, Lindane (γ-benzene hexachloride), Toxaphene, and Dieldrin, must be substituted.

Infestation with head lice, body lice, or pubic lice can be quickly and easily controlled with 10% DDT powder. The powder is blown onto the body surfaces with an appropriate blower. The clothing, which should also be dusted, should not be changed for several days. The residual effect of the powder in the garments will serve to kill the newly hatched insects. Impregnation of underwear and other articles of clothing with DDT emulsion is effective in killing lice, even after 6 to 8 washings. Garments are impregnated with DDT by dipping in a 2 per cent emulsion and wringing moderately dry.

Fleas.—Effective control for 3 months is obtained by premise dusting with 5 per cent DDT in pyrophyllite or talc. DDT emulsions are also effective when carefully applied. DDT in oil sprayed lightly over breeding areas is effective. The insecticide should be dusted into the bedding of pets, the furniture, and rat runways and entrances.

Prophylactic Immunization.*—Protection against many infectious diseases can be developed by immunization. All persons should be immunized against smallpox, tetanus, typhoid and paratyphoid fevers, regardless of their place of residence, but especially in the Tropics where these diseases may be prevalent.

In the case of smallpox, a vaccine of proved potency administered by the multiple puncture method should be given at least every 4 years. The standard triple vaccine against typhoid and paratyphoid A and B is usually administered in 3 subcutaneous injections 1 week apart; 0.5 c.c. for the first dose, and 1.0 c.c. in the second and third weeks.

To immunize against tetanus, alum-precipitated tetanus toxoid is given intramuscularly in two 0.5 c.c. doses, 4 to 8 weeks apart. Duration of immunity o tetanus is not as yet known, but it probably lasts several years. Subsequent "booster" doses of 0.5 c.c. stimulate a rapid increase in protective antibodies. Booster doses are commonly given 1 year after the original immunization and thereafter at 4-year intervals. Emergency booster doses may be given when it is felt necessary, for example, following contaminated lacerations or other types of injuries.

---

*See Chapter 1.

Yellow fever vaccine should be given to all persons residing in or traveling through known endemic areas. These areas are generally considered to lie in Africa and the adjacent islands between 20° N and 13° S latitudes and in South America between 13° N and 30° S latitudes. On the South American continent the presence of yellow fever has been proved only in the northeast and central portions.* Only vaccines of proved potency from a reliable source of supply should be used, because the virus deteriorates rapidly when exposed to higher temperatures. Careless handling may render the vaccine completely inactive. The concentrated vaccine is diluted 1:10, and 0.5 c.c. of this dilution is given subcutaneously. The developing immunity persists for 4 years or longer.

Immunization against typhus should be practiced during residence in endemic areas and during epidemics. Two subcutaneous injections of 1.0 c.c. each at intervals of 7 to 10 days is believed to confer some immunity against murine and epidemic typhus for several months. Experimental work on other rickettsial diseases, such as tsutsugamushi and spotted fever, may soon yield protective vaccines for these conditions.

Cholera and plague vaccines are available and should be administered when the risk of infection is great, as during epidemics; however, the immunity developed is of only questionable degree and duration.

Although clinical diphtheria is relatively uncommon in tropical areas, cases do occur, and during the early years of World War II many cases of dermal infection were encountered in troops exposed to desert conditions in North Africa. Therefore, under special circumstances, particularly when exposure to clinical diphtheria has been suspected, immunization should be practiced by the use of toxoid preparations. It should be remembered, however, that even in tropical areas where diphtheria is uncommon, the majority of adults possess a relatively high titer of immune antibodies.

Housing.—Suitable housing is an important factor in the Tropics. Proper location as well as certain types of construction can do much to minimize heat and dampness. In general, houses should be built on high terrain so as to take advantage of maximum air movements and drainage. Shade trees are desirable. Two main types of dwellings for tropical areas have been developed: first, those peculiar to desert climates, where there are large daily variations in temperature, which have thick walls, little window area, and central patios; and second, dwellings in jungle climates, distinguished by large verandas and many windows. The first type maintains a more nearly constant temperature inside and keeps out the undesirable hot winds. The second type gives maximum ventilation and shade.

---

*Since this chapter was written, an outbreak has occurred in Panama.

A variety of building materials, from the primitive mud and thatch to hollow tiles, may be used in tropical dwellings. In general, the builder should insulate to keep out the heat; hollow tile or wood, with hollow walls, is suitable for tropical construction. Peaked roofs are cooler than flat roofs, because they provide more dead space and get less direct solar radiation. Galvanized iron, which is very commonly used as roofing material in tropical areas, should be combined with an insulated dead space below; otherwise, the effect is oven-like during the hours when the sun is high.

Roof gutters as a rule are to be avoided, particularly in regions where mosquitoes are numerous. Gutters frequently become clogged with leaves and debris; pools of water are formed which provide breeding spaces for insects. The gutters must be inspected and cleaned regularly.

Windows and doors should be screened to exclude mosquitoes, flies, and insects. It is true that screening eliminates a certain amount of air and makes houses hotter, but this minor disadvantage is greatly outweighed by the added comfort and safety which screens provide. Various types of metal screening may be used, and there is a plastic screen which is said to be more durable and lasting.

Air Conditioning.—Air conditioning, which has had its widest use in temperate climates largely because of economic factors, is becoming increasingly popular in tropical regions. Many towns and cities in the Tropics have air-conditioned buildings (theaters, office buildings, and cafes). Few private homes are air-conditioned. With increased production of low-cost units, more tropical residences will probably become air-conditioned.

Three factors determine conditions of optimum comfort: temperature, humidity, and air motion. There is a wide range of humidity, roughly from 30 to 70 per cent, in which comfort may be obtained, providing the factors of temperature and air movement are properly adjusted. Most people, however, feel uncomfortable if the humidity is less than 30 per cent or more than 70 per cent. The temperature range for comfort is approximately from 65° F. to 85° F., depending on the humidity (Allen and Walker, 1939). The temperature of air-conditioned rooms should be adjusted so that the difference between outside and inside temperatures is not too great. During hot seasons, when air temperatures may be 90° F. (32° C.) or more, the indoor temperatures should be maintained near the upper limit of the comfort range.

The benefits of air conditioning are unquestioned. Prickly heat, for example, which can be annoying or frequently disabling in those whose skins are constantly drenched in sweat, disappears when environmental conditions are properly adjusted.

LIFE IN THE BUSH

Traveling through unsettled regions in comfort and safety presents special problems anywhere, but they are more numerous in tropical areas because of the higher temperatures, increased requirements for fluid, and added disease hazards. In many regions most foods, clothing, equipment, and medical supplies cannot be procured locally and must be carried along from the starting point. A few general remarks on expeditions in the Tropics are indicated.

Food.—The planned diet will vary somewhat with individual tastes and pocketbooks, but certain staples are essential, such as brown rice, black beans, sugar, coffee, tea, chocolate, and bacon, when available. Dried and canned meats keep well and supply necessary proteins. Dried milk in sealed tins will usually keep for many weeks or months and has a high food value. Other dried foods, such as soups and eggs, have high caloric value in spite of the small weight and volume, and offer agreeable additions to the menu. Frequently, persons on long trips, with a monotonous diet, have a great craving for sweets, which sweet chocolate or jams may satisfy. When it is anticipated that fresh foods will not be available for many weeks, it is advisable to carry a supply of vitamin preparations to prevent deficiencies.

Sufficient drinking water for a 24-hour supply should be boiled each day, allowed to cool, and put in canteens or other containers.

Clothing.—Clothing should be, above all, cool, comfortable, durable, and washable. Short-sleeved shirts and short trousers for daytime wear with long-sleeved shirts and long trousers for use after dark should be made of lightweight khaki. For head covering a straw hat or light pith helmet with waterproof covering should be provided. Heavy boots of ankle length should be worn if the terrain is rough and much walking anticipated. Otherwise, low canvas shoes will be found to be more comfortable and serviceable. Socks should be of lightweight wool or cotton and wool mixture. Enough clothing should be allowed for frequent changing and washing. A waterproof poncho or lightweight raincoat should be kept at hand for the sudden heavy rains which frequently occur, and a good umbrella is often very useful.

Sleeping Equipment.—Collapsible canvas cots or hammocks are comfortable, light in weight, and take up little space. They should be equipped with special mosquito nets with supporting frames for protection against insects. Air mattresses for use with canvas cots are recommended by some travelers, but others consider them a needless luxury. An extra blanket, folded double, will serve very well as a mattress. Blankets are essential, for the nights frequently are cool.

Bathing Facilities.—To insure comfort and to promote skin hygiene, facilities must be provided for bathing. Collapsible rubber bathtubs, which are light in weight, together with a water bucket, which may be made of canvas, and an ordinary bath sponge will provide a convenient shower bath. In this connection, it is to be recommended that surface waters, chiefly in areas where schistosomiasis is prevalent, should always be suspected of being contaminated.

Medical Supplies and Equipment.—The quantity and variety of medical supplies will depend on the size of the expedition, the anticipated length of time away from medical facilities, and the kind of disease hazards to be encountered. However, certain items are essential. These include antimalarial drugs, such as Atabrine in tablet form and in ampules for parenteral use, and one of the newer synthetic compounds, Aralen (chloroquine), 7-chloro-4-(4-diethylamino-1-methylbutylamino)-quinoline (Board for Coordinatin of Malaria Studies, 1946). The latter drug, which is superior to Atabrine in many ways and is nontoxic in ordinary therapeutic doses, has been released by the National Research Council and is available to the medical profession generally. Other things which should be included are remedies against amebic and bacillary dysentery, hypnotics and analgesics, antiseptics, skin ointments, insect repellents, and insecticides.

A minimum of surgical supplies will be needed, such as cotton, sterile gauze squares, bandages, forceps, scalpels, suture needles, suture materials, syringes, hypodermic needles, and suitable sterilizers. Appendix 1, page 1447, contains a list of suggested medical supplies and equipment which may be expanded or curtailed according to the needs of the party.

The major part of this equipment should be packed in water-tight tin trunks with a list of contents fastened to the insides of the lids. Small, supplementary first aid kits may also be carried to eliminate the necessity of opening the larger containers to remove small, frequently used articles.

COMMUNITY SANITATION

Sanitation of the environment on any large scale can be accomplished only by concerted community action. The extent and efficacy of sanitary measures will depend largely on the education of the population in sanitary matters, and the amount of money and trained personnel available. The most rudimentary and necessary elements of sanitation are, of course, adequate and safe water supplies, sewerage systems, and facilities for disposal of refuse and garbage. In many small towns, where community water supplies are not feasible, individual household supplies, which are adequate and safe, may be established. Most surface and ground waters require some form of treatment to render them potable. Various types of sand filtration, settling, and coagulation, and treatment with chemicals, particularly chlorine, can be used according to the needs and resources of the community.

Sewerage systems require, in addition to the system of collecting pipes, a safe method of disposal of the sewage. Where community collecting and disposal systems are not feasible, septic tanks may be a solution. Other methods of sewage disposal may include the most suitable types of bored-hole and pit latrines. A system of sand buckets and collecting wagons, with final disposal in septic pits, has been found adequate in some communities.

The disposal of refuse and garbage is an important disease control measure, for accumulations favor breeding of flies and rats. Fly-tight household containers, a regular collecting system, and ultimate safe disposal are essential. Refuse and garbage are commonly destroyed by incineration, by burial, or, in some places, by the compost method.

Control of specific diseases is often possible only through community ction. This is especially true when diseases are insect-borne, such as nalaria and typhus, or transmitted largely by water, food, and flies, as gastrontestinal infections. The control of malaria rests mainly on the destruction nd elimination of the mosquito vector. Mosquito breeding places may be liminated through draining or filling. Larvae may be controlled by the use f oil, Paris green, DDT, or other substances; the adult mosquito may be atacked with DDT or some of the pyrethrum preparations. The control of typhus depends on the elimination of rodents, fleas, and lice. The control of gastrointestinal infections is attained through purification of water supplies, reduction of flies, and the control of food handlers. Details of specific disease controls are presented in other chapters.

APPENDIX

Suggested List of Medical and Surgical Supplies

I. Antimalarials
    1. Atabrine in tablets of 0.1 Gm.
    2. Atabrine in ampules of 0.2 Gm. (ampules of distilled water)
    3. SN 7618 in tablets of 0.1 Gm. and 0.3 Gm.

II. Antidysenteric
  A. Amebic
    1. Emetine in ampules of 0.60 Gm.
    2. Carbarsone in tablets of 0.25 Gm.
    3. Chiniofon in tablets of 0.25 Gm.
  B. Bacillary
    1. Sulfadiazine in tablets of 0.5 Gm.
    2. Sulfasuxidine in powdered form
    3. Sodium bicarbonate in 0.5 Gm. tablets
  C. General
    1. Camphorated tincture of opium
    2. Bismuth subcarbonate powder

III. General Remedies
    1. Morphine in Syrettes (30 mg.)
    2. Aspirin in tablets of 0.3 Gm.
    3. Codeine in tablets of 30 mg.
    4. Sulfanilamide in powder
    5. Magnesium sulfate in bulk
    6. Cascara sagrada in tablets of 0.3 Gm.
    7. Tetanus toxoid
    8. Tetanus antiserum
    9. Caffeine sodium benzoate in ampules
    10. Antivenin

IV. Preparations for External Application
    1. Sulfur ointment (15 per cent)
    2. Zinc oxide ointment (20 per cent)
    3. Calamine lotion with phenol
    4. Insect repellent (dimethylphthalate 6 parts, Rutgers 612 2 parts, Indalone 2 parts)

V. Surgical Supplies

1. Syringes: 2 c.c., 5 c.c., and 10 c.c.
2. Hypo needles in assorted gauges and lengths
3. Scalpel handle and blades
4. Hemostatic forceps
5. Thumb forceps, rat tooth
6. Thumb forceps, smooth
7. Dental forceps
8. Suture needles
9. Suture material, sterile
10. Cotton wool
11. Gauze bandages, 2 inch and 3 inch
12. Adhesive tape (tropical packing)
13. Elastic bandages
14. Wooden tongue blades
15. Ointment tins
16. Ethyl chloride ampules
17. Phenobarbital, or other intravenous anesthetic
18. Ether

VI. Miscellaneous

1. Novocain crystals in ampules
2. Sterile distilled water in ampules
3. 70 per cent alcohol
4. Mercuric chloride tablets
5. Yellow mercury oxide ointment
6. Dried blood plasma

VII. Insecticides

1. DDT (dichlorodiphenyl trichloroethane) in powder, 10 per cent in talc or other vehicle; DDT, 5 per cent solution in oil
2. Spray gun for liquid and powder blower for powdered form

References

Allen, J. R., and Walker, J. H.: 1939. Heating and Air Conditioning, New York and London, McGraw-Hill Book Company.

Anonymous: 1946. DDT and Other Insecticides and Repellents Developed for the Armed Forces, Misc. Publ. No. 606, U. S. Dept. of Agriculture, Washington, D. C.

Bersamin, R. F., and Gonzáles-Bersamin, G. C.: 1940. Variations in the Age of Menarche Among Filipinas, J. Philippine Islands M. A. **20**: 23-34.

Bland, P. B.: 1932. Gynecology. Medical and Surgical, Philadelphia, F. A. Davis Company.

Blum, H. F.: 1945. The Physiological Effects of Sunlight on Man, Physiol. Rev. **25**: 483-530.

Blum, H. F.: 1945a. The Solar Load: Its Relationship to Total Heat Load and Its Relative Importance in the Design of Clothing, J. Clin. Investigation **24**: 712-721.

Board for Coordination of Malaria Studies: 1946. Wartime Research in Malaria, Science **103**: 8-9.

Brady, F. J., Jones, M. F., and Newton, W. L.: 1943. Effect of Chlorination of Water on Viability of Cysts of Endamoeba Histolytica. War Med. **3**: 409-419.

Brennemann, J.: 1943. Disparity Between Oral and Rectal Temperature After Exercise, Am. J. Dis. Child. **66**: 16-20.

Brown, E. G.: 1935. Deaths From Excessive Heat in Kansas, 1934, Pub. Health Rep. **50**: 546-548.

Chang, Shih Lu: 1944. Studies on Endamoeba Histolytica, III. Destruction of Cysts of E. Histolytica by a Hypochlorite Solution, Chloramines in Tap Water and Gaseous Chlorine in Tap Water of Varying Degrees of Pollution, War Med. **5**: 46-55.

Collings, G. H., Jr.: 1943. The Clinical Aspects of Heat Diseases, Indust. Med. **12**: 728-730.

nsolazio, W. V., Pecora, L. J., and Pfeiffer, C. C.: 1944. A New Salt Tablet for Use in Hot Environments. Research Project X-214, Report from Naval Medical Research Institute, National Naval Medical Center, Bethesda, Md.

rowder, G. P., and Angus, T. C.: 1938. The Control of Indoor Environment by Air Conditioning With Special Reference to the Tropics, J. Institute of Heating and Ventilating Engineers **6:** 442-468.

ulpin, Millais: 1933. An Examination of Tropical Neurasthenia, Proc. Roy. Soc. Med. **26:** 911-922.

ill, D. C.: 1938. Life, Heat and Altitude. Physiological Effects of Hot Climates and Great Heights, Cambridge, Harvard University Press.

orn, H. G.: 1944. Illness From Cancer in the United States, Pub. Health Rep. **59:** 33-48.

reosti, A. O.: 1934. The Prevention of Heat Stroke in the Mines of the Witwatersrand, Proc. Transvaal Mine Med. Off. Assoc. **13:** 32-37.

unham, G. C.: 1940. Military Preventive Medicine, ed. 3, Harrisburg, Pa., Military Service Publishing Co.

lishewitz, H.: 1949. Reservoir and Vector Control in Plague and Murine Typhus, Publ. No. 241, Pan American Sanitary Bureau, Washington, D. C.

iles, G. M.: 1905. Climate and Health in Hot Countries, New York, William Wood & Company.

lover, J.: 1942. The Efficiency of Headgear as Insulation Against Radiation, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **36:** 195-196.

ardy, J. D., and Soderstrom, G. F.: 1938. Heat Loss From the Nude Body and Peripheral Blood Flow at Temperatures of 22° C. to 35° C., J. Nutrition **16:** 493-510.

Heilig, R.: 1943. Clinical Experiences on Vitamin Deficiencies in Mysore, Indian M. Gaz. **78:** 129-134.

Henderson, Laurence J.: 1913. The Fitness of the Environment. An Inquiry Into the Biological Significance of the Properties of Matter, New York, The Macmillan Company.

Henschel, A., Taylor, H. L., and Keys, A.: 1943. The Persistence of Heat Acclimatization in Man, Am. J. Physiol. **140:** 321-325.

Hill, T. R.: 1943. Tropical Neurasthenia, Lancet **1:** 332-333.

Hudson, E. H., and Young, A. L.: 1931. Medical and Surgical Practice on the Euphrates River, Am. J. Trop. Med. **11:** 297-310.

Khorana, M. L., Sarma, M. L., and Giri, K. V.: 1942. Investigations on the Food Value of Fish and Other Marine Products. Part I. The Antipellagra Vitamins (Nicotinic Acid), Indian J. M. Research **30:** 315-318. (Abstract in Trop. Dis. Bull. **40:** 80.)

Köppen, W.: 1900. Versuch einer Klassification der Klimate vorzugsweise nach ihren Beziehungen zur Pflanzenwelt, Geogr. Zeitschr. **6:** 593-611, 659-679.

e Langen, C. D., and Lichtenstein, A.: 1936. A Clinical Textbook of Tropical Medicine. 1st English Edition for the Revised 3rd Dutch Edition. Batavia-Surabaya-Amsterdam, G. Kolff & Co., p. 461.

Lee, D. H. K., and Courtice, R.: 1940. Assessment of Tropical Climate in Relation to Human Habitation, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **33:** 601-614.

Lee, D. H. K.: 1940. A Basis for the Study of Man's Reaction to Tropical Climates, University of Queensland Papers. Dept. of Physiology, vol. I, No. 5, December 30.

MacGregor, R. G. S., and Loh, C. L.: 1941. The Influence of a Tropical Environment Upon the Basal Metabolism, Pulse Rate and Blood Pressure in Europeans, J. Physiol. **99:** 496-509.

Machle, W.: 1944. The Physiological Effects of High Temperatures, Mil. Surgeon **95:** 98-105.

Manson-Bahr, P. H.: 1943. Manson's Tropical Diseases, ed. 11, Baltimore, Williams & Wilkins Company, pp. 1-52.

Martin, C. J.: 1930. Thermal Adjustment of Man and Animals to External Conditions, Lancet **2:** 617-620; 673-678.

Mason, E. D.: 1940. The Effect of Change of Residence From Temperate to Tropical Climate on the Basal Metabolism, Pulse Rate, Blood Pressure and Mouth Temperature of 21 English and American Women, Am. J. Trop. Med. **20:** 669-686.

McCartney, J. L.: 1944. White Men in the Tropics, Dis. Nerv. System **5:** 133-138.

McLester, James S.: 1940. Nutrition and Diet in Health and Disease, ed. 3, Philadelphia and London, W. B. Saunders Company.

Miller, A. A.: 1931. Climatology, London, Methuen & Co., Ltd., pp. 53-54.

Mills, C. A.: 1942. Climate Makes the Man, New York, Harper & Brothers.

Pillsbury, D. M., Sulzberger, M. B., and Livingood, C. S.: 1943. Manual of Dermatology, Philadelphia and London, W. B. Saunders Company, p. 210.

Phalen, J. M.: 1910. An Experiment With Orange-Red Underwear, Philippine J. Sc. **5:** 525-546.

Price, A. Grenfell: 1939. White Settlers in the Tropics, American Geographical Society Special Publication, No. 23.

Raymond, L. D.: 1941. Red Palm Oil, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **35:** 199-200.

Robinson, S., Dill, D. B., Wilson, J. N., and Nielsen, M.: 1941. Adaptations of White Men and Negroes to Prolonged Work in Humid Heat, Am. J. Trop. Med. **21:** 261-287.

Roddis, L. H., and Cooper, G. W.: 1926. The Effect of Climate on Blood Pressure, J. A. M. A. **87:** 2053.

Saunders, G. M.: 1942. Some Remarks on the Epidemiology of Leprosy, Proc. Sixth Pacific Science Congress, 1939, Berkeley, University of California Press, vol. 5, pp. 957-971.

Saunders, G. M., and Bancroft, H.: 1942. Blood Pressure Studies on Negro and White Men and Women Living in the Virgin Islands of the United States, Am. Heart J. **23:** 410-423.

Saunders, G. M., Kumm, H. W., and Kerrie, J. I.: 1936. The Relationship of Certain Environmental Factors to the Distribution of Yaws in Jamaica, Am. J. Hyg. **23:** 558-579.

Scott, H. H.: 1939. A History of Tropical Medicine, Baltimore, Williams & Wilkins Company, vol. I, pp. 279-453.

Shattuck, G. C., and Hilferty, M. M.: 1936. Distribution of Heat Effects in Various Parts of the World, New England J. Med. **214:** 458-468.

Sodeman, W. A., and Burch, G. E.: 1944. Regional Variations in Water Loss From the Skin of Diseased Subjects Living in a Subtropical Climate, J. Clin. Investigation **23:** 37-43.

Stannus, H. S.: 1926, 1927. Tropical Neurasthenia, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **20:** 327-343.

Strong, R. P.: 1943. Stitt's Diagnosis, Prevention and Treatment of Tropical Diseases, ed. 7, reprinted 1945, Philadelphia, The Blakiston Co.

Sundstroem, E. S.: 1927. The Physiological Effects of Tropical Climate, Physiol. Rev. **7:** 320-362.

Supan, Alexander: 1927. Grundzüge der physischen Erdkunde, ed. 7, Berlin and Leipzig, vol. I, p. 141.

Talbott, J. H., Dill, D. B., Edwards, H. T., Stumme, E. H., and Consolazio, W. V.: 1937. The Ill Effects of Heat Upon Workmen, J. Indust. Hyg. and Toxicol. **19:** 258-274.

Taylor, H. L., Henschel, A., Mickelson, O., and Keys, A.: 1943. The Effect of the Sodium Chloride Intake on the Work Performance of Man During Exposure to Dry Heat and Experimental Heat Exhaustion, Am. J. Physiol. **140:** 439-451.

Todd, J. L.: 1924. Tropical Medicine, Proc. International Conference on Health Problems in Tropical America, United Fruit Company, Boston, pp. 17-27.

Van Veen, A. G.: 1940, 1941. The Rice Problem, Bull. Health Organ., League of Nations **9:** 351-360.

Vedder, E. B.: 1943. A Study of the Deficiencies of Polished Rice in Relation to Beriberi, Am. J. Trop. Med. **23:** 43-47.

War Department, Army Service Forces: 1943. Acclimatization, Including Water and Salt Requirements, of Troops in Hot Climates, Circular Letter No. 119.

Webb, H. B.: 1944. Studies on Tablets for Individual Disinfection of Small Water Supplies for Field Use by Troops, Mil. Surgeon **95:** 209-216.

Wiggers, C. J.: 1944. Physiology in Health and Disease, ed. 4, Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger.

Wulsin, F. R.: 1943. Responses of Man to a Hot Environment. A Report on the Principles Which Should Govern the Design of Hot Weather Equipment, Climatic Research Unit. O.Q.M.G. pp. 1-53.

CHAPTER 67

ORGANIZATION OF PREVENTIVE MEDICINE AND RURAL HYGIENE SERVICES IN SPARSELY SETTLED TROPICAL COUNTRIES

GUSTAVO PITTALUGA

The general principles, methods, and technical procedures to be adopted in organizing services or centers of rural hygiene have been established for some time. Using the practical example of the United States as a basis, the First Conference on Rural Hygiene, at which I had the honor of presiding, was called by the League of Nations in Geneva in June, 1931. Rules for undertaking projects similar to those undertaken by the United States were established, with special consideration of the sanitary situation of rural communities of various countries of eastern Europe. In some American countries, however, especially in tropical America, there is a different problem, that of *sparse settlement*, which makes the organization and work of sanitary services difficult.

There is a minimum of certain requisite conditions without which it is almost impossible to undertake public administration of rural commmunities scattered over a large territory, especially in the Tropics, which require special services to investigate and protect against pathogenic agents. We must first establish limits within which intervention by the state or by public administration in sanitary regulations and in indicated geographic and demographic situations is possible. Certain technical norms must be defined as to the hygienic sanitary situation of a country or sparsely settled district before undertaking installation of services or rural health centers.

We shall summarize the types of diagnostic, epidemiologic, and sanitary services and their organization in countries and communities with the requisite conditions, especially those in intertropical zones with hot climates, where special human pathology is known or is presumed to exist.

DENSITY OF SETTLEMENT AND ORGANIZATION OF RURAL HEALTH SERVICE

Preventive medicine in rural regions cannot be organized without previous geographic and demographic knowledge which, exclusive of all epidemiologic or medical statistical data, establishes the density of settlement in a determined zone or region (Revelli, 1936). This knowledge has been acquired in almost all territories of various nationalities in the "old" European continent. Neglect of this factor develops serious obstacles in some countries, especially eastern Europe, and thus the number of inhabitants who receive preventive medical assistance is not proportionate to the area over which such population is spread.

Many settlements in different countries, states, dominions, and colonies in Africa and Asia, and some in America, still depend upon indirect methods although work on this subject has progressed constantly since the middle of the nineteenth century, being especially notable in recent years.

Density of settlement is known only approximately in such places as the Niger Basin, where there are numerous heavily populated villages, and in the high tablelands of central Africa or Tibet in central Asia, zones of extremely sparse population. In some zones, particularly in western and equatorial Africa, penetration and protective work by sanitary services, especially the French and English, has also laid the basis for demographic knowledge of indigenous communities. This almost titanic effort may serve well as an example for those projects which still present great difficulties in certain zones of Central and South America.

For activities of a technical order, there are always required: (1) direct action of a technician or functionary over a group of people assigned him; (2) means of communication and transportation sufficient to enable him to exercise this direct action within the radius of the territory; and (3) some cohesion of the scattered population, though it may be very elementary, and a certain solidarity, both material and moral, among community units (families, farms, villages, etc.).

In some zones of the Western Hemisphere these conditions are far from being fulfilled.

In northern Canada or in Alaska we still find small, scattered foci of hunters and fishermen, the population density being about 0.02 per square kilometer (barren ground); other geographic circumstances, orographic and hydrographic, determine similar conditions in the heart of tropical regions, namely, on the banks of great rivers in Brazil and Venezuela, on the high plateaus of the Andes of Bolivia, Peru, Ecuador, and Colombia.

Bolivia, with an area of 1,834,000 square kilometers, has a population of 2,800,000, a theoretical density of 1.9 persons per square kilometer, but for purposes of studying rural life and the possibility of establishing medical aid or public sanitation service the real density is far from this figure. If we eliminate the cities of more than 5,000 inhabitants which together include approximately 500,000 people, the rural average then would be approximately 1.2 inhabitants per square kilometer; however; the differences in certain regions are extremely marked. For example, in the province of Potosi, we find in some districts (Frias) a density of 16 persons per square kilometer, in others a density of 0.09. In districts of a tropical region such as El Beni (Trinidad) there is approximately 1 per square kilometer; this is maximum. In the districts of El Oriente and in the Gran Chaco in Brazil and Paraguay, density decreases to less than 0.5 per square kilometer.

Even without considering means of communication, transportation, and interchange of food and other products over the vast area of the country we can still appreciate, from the population density, degree of culture, and differences in race (whites, Negroes, halfcastes, and various immigrants), the immense difficulties which the public administration in Bolivia must overcome to undertake efficient steps to better rural conditions.

In the famous volume of Bolivian photographs by Gerstamm (1928) (an indispensable document for anyone who intends to study social, demographic, and health problems and questions of that country), there prevails an impression of rural life far removed from the concept of the average rural environment of Europe or the United States; that is, it is rather a primitive, natural existence, scarcely touched by the influence of Spanish culture.

In recent years, the situation in the field of public health has been somewhat modified y the valuable collaboration of the International Health Division of the Rockefeller oundation. In 1942, the Bolivian government created a special service to combat yellow ever, malaria, and ancylostomiasis through diagnosis and treatment of patients and hrough adequate education of the local sanitary personnel. The problems inherent in a emographic situation so beset with difficulties have been observed at close range and olved in part by the technicians of the Rockefeller Foundation and by Bolivian health uthorities, in such places as banana, coffee, and other plantations in the province of La az and the valley of the Cochabamba. In these places, especially in the valley of the ochabamba, there was a severe outbreak of malaria in 1940 and 1942; an average of 15 er cent of the population was attacked, with some areas showing a much higher perentage. The Anopheles mosquito develops in the running streams of Bolivia. It was ecessary to study its biology methodically so that special prophylactic measures could e instituted, adapted to an environment characterized by scattered population, lack of ducation, and general underprivilege.

In 1935, 719 cases of typhoid fever, 16 cases of plague, 490 cases of smallpox, 1,244 ases of exanthematic typhus, and 27 deaths due to yellow fever were reported in Bolivia. The Ministry of Health, knowing the demographic situation, realized that these data represented only a part of the true situation.

Since 1932, when a severe epidemic of yellow fever broke out in the lowlands of eastern Bolivia, a special service in collaboration with the Rockefeller Foundation has studied foci of the Aëdes mosquito, the vector of the virus. By 1943, this service announced negative results by viscerotomy in 45 rural centers. Despite the difficulties due to lack of transportation, this service had carried out a vast program of vaccination against yellow fever in three-fourths of the area attacked by ''jungle yellow fever.''

Venezuela, some years ago, undertook a vigorous public health program. In the Health Education Center in El Valle in 1944, under the direction of Sahagún Torres, the Anti-Venereal Service handled 610 patients and made 2,280 serologic tests (Kahn). The Prenatal Hygiene Service examined 790 patients (237 new patients). There were 414 births, during this period, in the entire area under the jurisdiction of the Center; 237 patients were under the care of the Center during their entire period of gestation. The Pre-School Hygienic Service held 444 consultations. There were 903 vaccinations administered against smallpox, 272 against diphtheria, and 113 against typhus. As a special project, we may mention an accelerated campaign against schistosomiasis, with 407 new cases coming to the Center during the year; and, finally, visiting nurses allocated to the Center made more than 4,000 visits (Sahagún Torres, 1944).

In Venezuela, establishment of small rural centers of this kind throughout the extensive territory, the greater part of which is sparsely populated, produced excellent results. It should be added that the National School of Nursing, located in Caracas and created in 1941 with the aid and collaboration of the Rockefeller Foundation (1944), contributed to the efficiency of these centers.

Included in the large territory of Brazil are states such as São Paulo with a population density of 32 inhabitants per square kilometer (area, 247,239 square kilometers; population, 7,820,000); there are others in the interior of the country (Mato Grosso, Pará, Amazonas) with a population density of not more than 4 inhabitants per square kilometer; and in certain regions of the equatorial jungle there is scarcely 1 inhabitant per 10 square kilometers. A situation of this kind, as seen in large areas, creates serious social and health problems for the government. The extraordinary difficulties of administering such a health program become apparent as soon as a government proposes, as Brazil has recently done, to undertake the task of improving hygienic conditions of the inhabitants. The work necessarily must be limited to the study and solution of concrete problems requiring scientific investigation (jungle yellow fever or plague in rural surroundings, or leprosy, because of the danger of spread), and carried out by experts, and also to supplying to this sparse, widely scattered population modest medical and epidemiologic assistance, sometimes quasi-medical, offered by medical students and practical nurses.

This twofold endeavor has been carried on in Brazil with satisfactory results. (There is no reference here to the excellent sanitary institutions in the large urban centers of Brazil nor to the work of Public Welfare and Scientific Centers, which, in cities like Río de Janeiro, São Paulo, and others, place Brazil among those model nations which are successfully solving problems of public health.)

In discussing special epidemiologic problems, I shall report the work undertaken more than 20 years ago in the control of yellow fever—a project which, in 1932, led to the important discovery by Soper and his collaborators that yellow fever exists independently of the transmitting mosquito, *Aëdes aegypti*, in the rural communities of Brazil. During the years of investigation (Soper et al., 1933; 1934, 1937, 1938; Annual Report of the Rockefeller Foundation, 1935, 1944), the International Health Division of the Rockefeller Foundation expended, up to 1943, more than four and one-half million dollars, in close collaboration with the government of Brazil.

Although all the reservoirs of virus of yellow fever are not yet known—those sylvatic animals which harbor the virus during the long periods of latency between epidemic outbreaks which still occur among isolated workmen—scientific and prophylactic contributions have been remarkably successful, thanks to the special Viscerotomy Service, making more than 25,000 examinations of liver tissue in other individuals and ultimately (1944) to the creation of a field laboratory in the southern part of the state of Bahia in Pontal.

As the result of the examination of hundreds of sylvatic animals, monkeys, opossums, and various other marsupials, a yellow fever virus animal carrier, which had died with this disease, was found in June, 1944. This was the first time that this had ever been observed in nature. The mosquito fauna of the forest regions of Brazil have been studied thoroughly; entomologists collaborating with the Yellow Fever Service have described new species of Aëdes and also related species (Davis, 1944; Waddell, 1945; Cerqueira and Lane, 1944).

Another problem of more than ordinary importance in Brazil is that of leprosy. To gain an impression of the difficulties until recently encountered in gathering demographic data concerning leprosy in scattered population groups in most American countries, consult the statements of McCoy in McKinley, *Geography of Disease* (1935). Figures given of the number of leprosy cases in some countries are only one-tenth of the actual number of cases, judging by later investigations which not even today can be considered as complete. The figure given for Brazil in 1935 was 6,655 cases. Since the establishment and development of the International Center for the Study of Leprosy in Río de Janeiro, and since the contributions of the leprologists of São Paulo* have been published, the figures stand at 35,000 as the *minimum* number of cases of leprosy in Brazil. The uncovering of some 15 of these cases in the tiny nucleus of settlements in the forest regions represented the difficult work of years. This work could not have been accomplished without the aid of technician specialists. General public health and welfare agencies cannot assume this function, except as auxiliaries to specialized leprosy services.

In the region of the upper Amazon and in the forest belts of central Brazil, there exists, properly speaking, not a true rural community, but rather a natural, unorganized existence. To locate the widely scattered natives for the purpose of studying their customs, primitive agricultural activities, and food habits, it is necessary to undertake a veritable exploration. Such trips as those made by T. Koch-Grunberg, Hamilton Rice, Holdridge, Schwez, Hanson, and others merit recognition inasmuch as they are concerned with demographic-sanitary questions (National Geographic Magazine, 1929-1935). Hygienists and administrators interested in the situation from the social and economic point of view should consult Maurette (1937) in a publication of the International Labor Bureau. "Among countries of the interior as well as coastal countries, Brazil has the greatest extent of unsettled fertile territory in Latin America. The vast extent of this xploitable land has enabled Brazil to absorb millions of immigrants during the past fifty ears. The country is still capable of receiving many more millions necessary for the evelopment of the country. . . .''

---

*The International Center for the Study of Leprosy of Río de Janiero was set up under the auspices of the League of Nations in 1932, and later placed under the direction of Professor Rabello of the University of Río de Janeiro.

These economic-demographic problems will eventually produce great health probems. To avoid risk of unexpected epidemic outbreaks in new immigrant groups, special are is required in organizing health services and in placement of personnel. This acivity should demand of newly organized companies and of industrial and commercial enters a direct economic participation in the health program under the administration f the Department of Health of the state.

Governmental authority now has at its disposal excellent demographic and artographic data which permit establishment of a scale of possible activities in the field f health and hygiene.*

The study published by Shattuck and his collaborators (1933) offers an xample of thorough documentation; without it, the results obtained by public ealth services might not seem to justify the effort put forth in the undertaking Martinez, 1943). In my judgment, previous monographic studies are indisensable in establishing a basis for public health service, on no matter how mall a scale, in a sample district, especially in tropical countries with sparse opulation. These studies may be of two types: (1) a study of one specific roblem, in which case the study may extend over a larger territory; or (2) a tudy of the entire group of sanitary problems, in which case the study would e carried out over a much more limited area. (Shattuck, et al., 1933; Alexnder and Meleney, 1935.)

In Mexico, the problem of amebiasis is of primary importance in connection with tiologic diagnosis, treatment, and prevention of dysentery in general. The situation in Mexico, although serious, has improved in recent years.

The problem is serious in all countries of Central America and in some countries of South America. In the great majority of cases, even now, the mortality statistics on dysentery do not differentiate between amebic and bacillary etiology (Birand, 1933).

Some time ago, physicians of the United Fruit Company, in their work in rural communities of Colombia and other countries of South America, found that up to 53.7 per cent and, in some other places, 40.9 per cent of the population were carriers of *Endamoeba histolytica*, many of these being ambulatory patients who were able to attend to their regular agricultural duties although in a poor state of health. Probably a large part of the fatal cases of dysentery registered in Mexico (1933-1936) were, in reality, cases of bacillary dysentery (Shiga and Flexner†) or of dysentiform enteritis of a different etiology. This problem clearly requires an *unhurried differential diagnosis based on parasitologic and bacteriologic examination of feces*; further, it is clear that this procedure cannot be practiced unless numerous small laboratories can be installed in the rural sections, connected with regional rural health centers. See Chapter 71.

All this requires time and special preparation of technical personnel. The desired results, epidemiologic and prophylactic, will be accomplished with less difficulty and more rapidity if certain conditions are fulfilled: (1) relinquish the attempt to establish in every district and section true health and hygiene centers which are expected to deal with all epidemiologic and prophylactic problems; (2) limit, for the same reason, the activity of the small rural laboratories to the study and solution of one or two of the most urgent problems in each division; (3) make these laboratories (with limited technical personnel and aids) mobile units with adequate means of transportation (automobile laboratories), for the purpose of overcoming the problem of reaching people scattered on farms, in huts, and in rural dwellings of all types, who are almost always widely separated from each other.

---

*American cartography has many means of establishing geographic and demographic onditions of populations. Information on available cartographic material is found in "A Cata- ogue of Maps of Hispanic America," published by the American Geographical Society, New York, IV, 1932. The maps of Mexico (scale 1:100,000) are excellent; they were published in 1936 by Direccion de Estudios Geográficos y Climatológicos, of the Department of Agriculture and Public Works, Tucubaya, Mexico, D. F.

†Editor's note (O. F.): According to recent surveys, *Sh. dysenteriae* Shiga is very rare in the Western hemisphere. *Sh. paradysenteriae* Flexner, *Sh. sonnei*, and *Sh. alkalescens* ar the principal offenders.

This proposition is connected with the problem of rural housing. Difficulties in solving this problem are enormous; yet it must be recognized that domestic foci of transmission of infectious and contagious diseases are essentially epidemiologic factors in countries with scattered populations. Studies of this problem were initiated in Mexico, particularly by Mazzotti (1933), and the administration recently began a campaign of public education and practical application of some exemplary measures to point the way to beneficial modifications of local customs regarding construction and arrangement of dwellings in rural surroundings. Results of these efforts will not be apparent for a long time.

Thus, we have attempted to draw certain conclusions for the solution of the most pressing problems of welfare, hygiene, and public health in tropical countries with low population density.

Orographic factors, such as high mountains, plateaus, hills, and valleys, as well as hydrographic factors, like rivers, estuaries, etc., exert a great influence upon the population density because they modify climatic and social conditions, ease or difficulty of natural communication, etc. Acclimatization of the human being to living in altitudes above 3,000 meters, such as the Andean regions, particularly in Peru, has given rise to new problems of health and hygiene peculiar to these conditions. Monge (1928) and others indicated the effect of the processes of adaptation and their demographic results upon a people which has lived for centuries between 3,000 and 5,000 meters above sea level, with a special pathology and *sui generis* reactions against various pathogenic agents (Monge, 1935).

These considerations might be extended, in relation to population density, its factors, and consequences, to American countries with a temperate or cold climate. This is true of Argentina. The average density of population in Argentina, exclusive of the capital cities, is less than 4 inhabitants per square kilometer. The state of Jujuy has a population density of approximately 1.5 inhabitants per square kilometer; the territory of Rio Negro, comparable in size to England, has 50,000 to 60,000 inhabitants; and Tierra del Fuego, at the extreme southern tip of Argentina, with an area as great as that of Belgium, has only 3,000 inhabitants. Similar problems concerning density of population also exist in some of the states of the United States. Before the war (1940), the state of Nevada, with the smallest relative population in the United States, had a population density of 0.3 persons per square kilometer, or 1 person per 3 square kilometers.

In order to apply health measures or to organize a public health service, a territorial study of the density of population must be conducted. A study of abstract figures dealing with a large expanse of territory will not suffice, since it accomplishes no more than a sort of preliminary theoretical orientation. It is necessary to know how the population is distributed over concrete areas with determined physical characteristics. This is not always easy to determine. Topographic and sociologic delimitations of the territory offer difficulties. In the words of Abbott Payson (1930), "One of the serious hazards in the study of early materials on population is the question of the extent of the area enumerated." It is necessary, within the limits of the area chosen for study, to estimate the topographic divisions, condition of rural housing, distance, location in relation to highways, roads, rivers, forests, sources of occupation, natural wealth, and markets. After this, epidemiologic work begins, followed by selection of the type of welfare and health service, and the activities concerned in its installation.

METHODS OF ESTABLISHING THE PREVIOUS SANITARY STATUS OF A GIVEN AREA

Once the population density in a given area has been established, it is necessary to ascertain in general terms the previous sanitary status before deciding upon the most appropriate procedure for application of health measures by mobile equipment, small laboratories for investigation and prophylaxis, or true rural health centers.

Three methods may be used, simultaneously, if the necessary elements are so arranged: (1) The *empirical method*, which consists in gathering summary information in the selected area, from the natives themselves, from persons of authority among them, from physicians when there are any, or from local practitioners. The data concern general mortality, infant mortality, the most common and most serious diseases, potable water, basic diet, average type of housing, presence or absence of latrines or special places for defecation and collection of excreta, and the presence of domestic animals, as well as their distance from the houses. (2) The *epidemiologic method*, involving a period of 3 to 6 months, consists in a scientific research by a technician, a medical specialist in epidemiologic work, for data on local predominant pathology, making use, of course, of observations obtained by method 1, and paying special attention to local fauna, particularly to those insects which may be possible vectors or transmitters of disease. (3) The *statistical method*, which consists in the examination and study of data (when they exist or when it is possible to gather them) concerning mortality, disease, and birth, with all the accessory elements, for a period of several years. The work may be carried out by an expert in demographic statistics, but in urgent cases or in a situation requiring less responsibility the work may be entrusted to employees of the administration of a nearby urban center.

In 1936, Stouman and Falk published an excellent study on health indices of determined communities. Even before this, a group of United States hygienists, under the direction of Professor Winslow of Yale University, had worked out (1920-1935) a series of indices and norms for the evaluation of

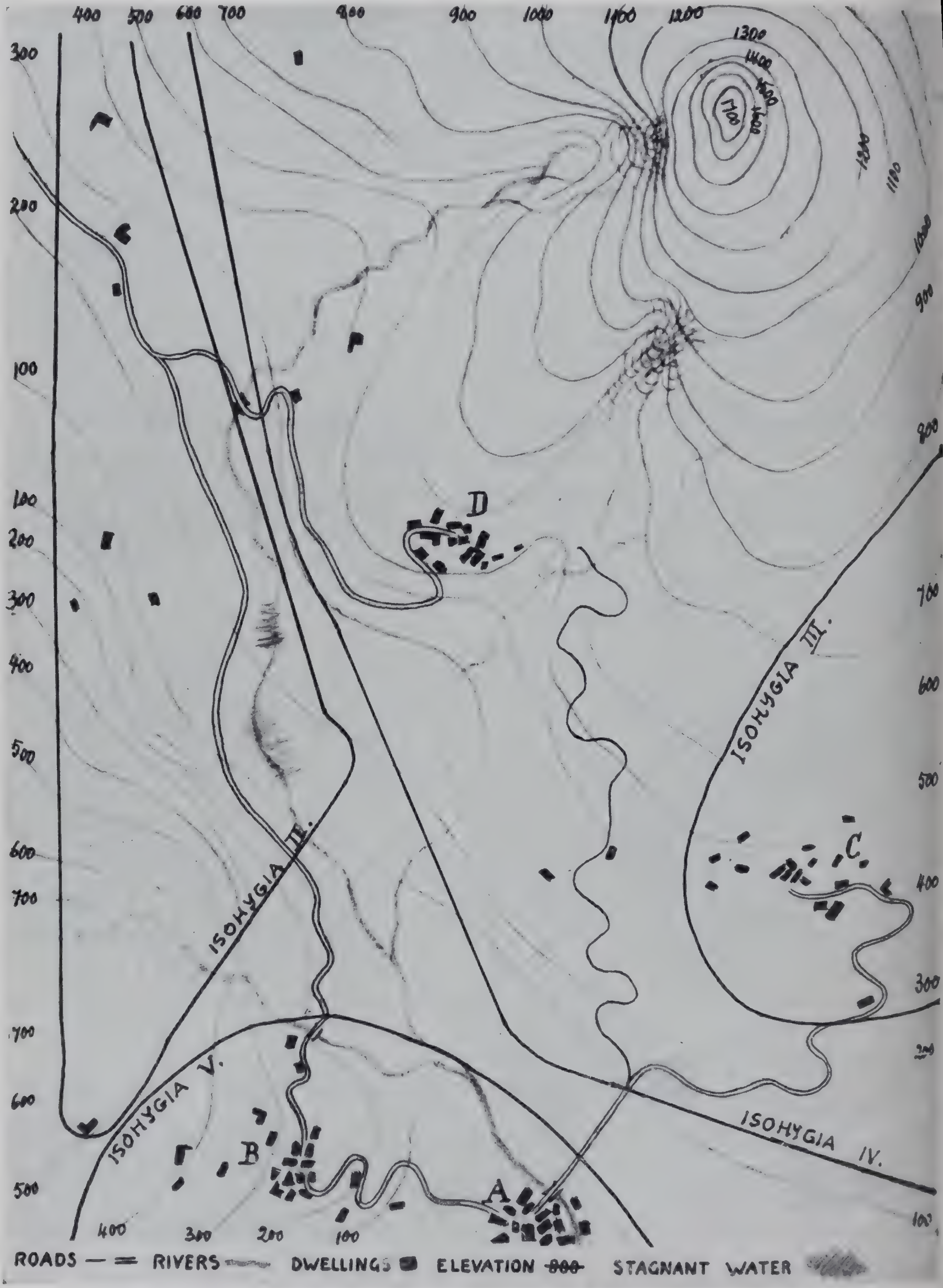

400
500
600
700
800
900
1000
1100
1200
1300
1400
1500
1600
1700
1200
1100
1000
900
800
700
600
500
400
300
200
100
300
200
100
100
200
300
400
500
600
700
700
600
500
400
300
200
100
A
B
C
D
ISOHYGIA II.
ISOHYGIA III.
ISOHYGIA IV.
ISOHYGIA V.
ROADS — =
RIVERS
DWELLINGS
ELEVATION 800
STAGNANT WATER

Fig. 459.—(*Legend on opposite page.*)

the practical efficiency of the work in public health. The research took place in certain districts and sections of the United States. However, the criteria adopted by these investigators are not entirely applicable to a project of a preliminary examination, since the latter deals with a situation as it exists before the intervention of health activity and in the absence of any organization of public health in low density rural populations in tropical countries. The study by Stouman and Falk also refers, in general, to health indices or sanitary indices of communities, principally in the United States. Stouman also published a monograph on "health indices of the city of New Haven" (1936). These proposed indices were later discussed and accepted for European countries by the Section on Hygiene of the former League of Nations (Geneva, 1938). Some of these indices proposed by Stouman and Falk may be used advantageously in a study of previous sanitary situation of rural communities which have as yet not been "hygienized."

The Stouman and Falk indices include three groups of data: (1) vital and health indices, (2) environmental indices, and (3) indices of administrative health activity.

The second group of data, those concerning environment, include (a) climate, (b) density and topographic distribution of the population in a determined area, (c) social and professional division of the population, (d) cultural level, (e) division of property and economic situation, (f) illegitimate births and prostitution, (g) housing, (h) diet, and (i) consumption of alcoholic beverages.

During the period 1937-1938, I studied this problem, having been charged with the preparation of a report for the Second International Conference on Rural Hygiene which was to have been held in Mexico in 1939, but which was cancelled due to the war. I intended, at that time, to express the indices of

Fig. 459.—The isohygias on this map indicate that the population included within the limit of the isohygia is under the following sanitary conditions:

Isohygia II: (1) Warm climate, altitude between 0 and 300 meters, with slow flowing currents and stagnant bodies of water; (2) density of population, 1 person per square kilometer; (3) "mestizos," but not illiterates; (4) impoverished settlers; (5) agriculture not industrialized; (6) one doctor in town *A*, a distance of 15 to 25 kilometers; (7) no *demographic* data; (8) dysentery, malaria, high; (9) wooden rural dwellings, without latrines; (10) basic diet of vegetables, rice, and pork.

Isohygia III: (1) Warm, dry climate—altitude of 300 to 500 meters; (2) density of population, 5 per square kilometer; (3) white inhabitants, not illiterate; (4) impoverished cattlemen and settlers; (5) strenuous physical labor for both men and women; (6) one doctor in town *A*, at a distance of 15 to 25 kilometers; (7) mortality rate, 20 to 22 per 1,000; (8) dysentery, malaria, light; (9) wooden rural dwellings, lacking potable water and latrines; (10) diet with a higher animal protein content than in Isohygia I; symptoms of vitamin D deficiency in children.

Isohygia IV: (1) Hot climate, rather dry; altitude between 300 and 700 meters; water bodies with fast or torrential current; (2) density of population, 6 per square kilometer; (3) white inhabitants—low cultural level;—no illiteracy; (4) cattlemen, men with own haciendas, and settlers on steady pay; (5) laborers on steady pay engaged in hard, physical labor: (6) a doctor in town *D*, a distance of 10 to 25 kilometers; no health establishment; (7) death rate, 20 per 1,000; (8) Dysentery, typhoid fever, malaria high; (9) wooden rural dwellings, with potable water and latrines; (10) diet rather good.

Isohygia V: (1) Hot and humid climate; altitude above sea level between 0 and 400 meters; (2) density of population, 10 per square kilometer, with some rural agglomerations of 500 to 1,000 inhabitants; (3) white and mestizo stock; no illiteracy; primary schools; a few cultured individuals; (4) cattlemen, farmers, and dealers in rice and cattle (5) labor not excessively hard; wealth unequally distributed, but considerable; (6) a doctor in town *A* with practitioners (under him)—midwives; (7) death rate, 20 per 1,000; (8) dwellings of wood, a few of brick, some with latrines, almost all with potable water; (9) typhoid fever, malaria, dysentery; (10) diet rather good.

sanitary status of determined areas by means of a cartographic procedure, by means of curves, indicating the sanitary situation and its limits, so that the final differences between the status of one location and that of another could be indicated simply, although always in approximate and variable form. I suggested the term "isohygias" for these cartographic curves (Pittaluga, 1939), to be used somewhat as the term isotherms, isobars, and isochrones are used.

These terms are all conventional and relative to a unit of measure established conventionally by man.

The most typical example, because of its similarity to the term "isohygia," is the term "isochrone" proposed years ago by Bartholomew (1906). Isochrones are cartographic lines showing equal distances between different points in a territory, based upon a vehicle of known and constant velocity. They are useful for commercial purposes. The concept is, of course, theoretical, since vehicles vary greatly in velocity in a given unit of time. In much the same way, although with slower rate of variation, the health situation in a given locality may be indicated. While the factors in the situation are variable, this does not prevent establishment of the actual status quo. A consideration of great importance in using isohygias (to give a fairly complete picture) is to fix accurately the element and the degree in the situation. The necessary and sufficient elements, in our opinion, are: (1) climatic and physical characteristics of the territory; (2) density of population; (3) ethnographic characteristics and cultural level; (4) total economic capacity and division of wealth; (5) types of occupations and working conditions; (6) the present level of technical health program by the state or local administration; (7) available demographic figures (mortality, morbidity, birth rate, etc.); (8) epidemiology, especially local; (9) characteristics of the local rural housing of the indigenous population; and (10) characteristics of the diet of rural indigenous people.

These data may be gathered by one of three methods given above, or by using them together or successively.

The type and grade of each of these 10 elementary conditions may be designated by Roman numerals (I, II, III, IV, etc.), so that, by combination, there are established 10 different isohygias, as represented in Fig. 459.

With this method, a graphic presentation, which can be easily noted, can be made of sparsely populated regions or regions with sparsely populated zones, with special physical characteristics. Such graphic presentation is useful as a basis in organizing a health service which will be adequate for specific local requirements and the foreseeable hygienic situations.

TYPES OF DIAGNOSTIC, EPIDEMIOLOGIC, AND HEALTH SERVICES APPLICABLE TO REGIONS OF LOW POPULATION DENSITIES IN TROPICAL CLIMATES

The *Memorial* published in Geneva as a result of the First International Conference on Rural Hygiene, in 1931,* following the successful attempts made in the United States, established the "guiding principles of organization of medical assistance, health and sanitation services for rural districts, with an attempt to define the limits, both in *area* and in the *number of inhabitants*, of the 'rural district' accessible to such services."

---

*Principes pour l'organisation des services d'hygiene rurale. Soc. des Nat., Geneva, 1931.

It was not possible to find a criterion which would be applicable to all cases, even when dealing with European countries. The *Memorial* cites 50,000 inhabitants as the average number for each health district. In reference to area and also to density of this population, it is recalled that in Denmark such districts are between 700 and 800 square kilometers while in Yugoslavia there are districts which extend over 10,000 square kilometers or more.

The principles adopted in the *Memorial* imply an organization of true "health centers" with definitely technical service, preventive medicine, protection of mothers and children, antituberculosis program, etc. In situations such as we find in the various countries of South America, where planning must be done for many different regions, creation of such complete services cannot be considered. In such regions they must be reserved for the urban centers, for which they may serve as coordinators and to some extent as the directors of activities of rural services.

Leaving local differences to decisions of health authorities, three types of health service may be suggested, differing from each other in size and importance, in personnel and equipment, and also in function:

1. The first type, which will be referred to as elementary, is to be thought of as a simple dispensary, under the direction of a physician who has attended, for at least one year, a special course in a school of tropical medicine and public health, and who, aided by two nurses and a small personnel recruited in the district, discharges the following duties: (a) parasitologic examination of feces; (b) microscopic examination of blood; (c) serologic tests; (d) general medical aid in urgent cases, with distribution of therapeutic and prophylactic medicaments; (e) empirical and eventually statistical inquiry into mortality and local morbidity; and (f) direct education of the local population concerning problems of hygiene, through small conferences, the use of radio and motion pictures, and other means.

The equipment necessary for a small elementary dispensary of this type is minimum. The dispensary may be housed in two rooms of a residence which may be rented or otherwise provided. It must possess means of transportation adequate to the topography, distances, and points of communication existing in the community. An automobile is indispensable, with, eventually, additional means of transportation.

With the means of research (enumerated in *a*, *b*, and *c*) available, the physician in charge of an elementary dispensary of this type is able to diagnose helminthic diseases or intestinal parasitic metazoa, amebic dysentery or other intestinal protozoan diseases, malaria, microfilaria in the blood of local patients, hemopathy in general, syphilis, eventually yaws, and infections diagnosable by serum agglutination tests (typhoid and paratyphoid fevers, etc.).

Through the initiative displayed by the physician, if time permits, subsidiary investigation (not obligatory) and superficial inquiry may uncover other local diseases. Collections of insects and ectoparasites may be made, to be sent for study to the larger centers with which the dispensary is associated.

A very important function of the elementary dispensary, because of the influence exercised over the local population by such services as distribution of medicines, is to educate the local population directly through all available media, especially by means of personal suasion and teaching on the part of the physician in charge of the dispensary.

If there is a school teacher in the district, and if the illiterate portion of the population is not too great, posters, leaflets, and other illustrative material may be used, with brief explanation of the transmission of parasitic diseases and infections. Talks by the physician, radio programs, motion pictures—transportable media by which the entire territory of the district can be successfully covered—will serve better to achieve the concrete purpose of raising the cultural level of the population with significant improvement in the health status.

The physician in charge of the dispensary should send a quarterly report to the health center of the district to which he belongs, giving a detailed account of his medical service, of the medicaments distributed, and of analyses made within the period.

2. The second type of service has a different objective. In our opinion it should take the form of an epidemiologic laboratory. Under certain conditions this laboratory may be located in the same district or locality or even housed in the same building as the elementary dispenary, but its activities are to be independent. The epidemiologic laboratory is to make a complete study, by scientific methods demanding special equipment, of one or more of the endemic or endemic-epidemic diseases of the region.

The laboratory is to be under the direction of an epidemiologist, aided by one or more assistant experts in microbiology. The radius of activity need not be limited to the area of the district; the laboratory should have sufficient means to transport part of its personnel to various localities within its radius of operation. It is not to be administrative; it solely studies diseases. It is not possible nor advisable to charge it with the general work of health education. It is assumed, however, that the personnel will also be required to adopt health measures and will not refuse to instruct the local population or to give advice on needed health projects to control the endemic focus, etc.

The following diseases found in tropical countries with low population densities require establishment of epidemiologic laboratories: dysentery, yellow fever, filariasis, leishmaniasis, malaria, because of special characteristics of the biology of the mosquito vectors in some regions, plague, exanthematic typhus and rickettsioses in general.

3. Cosmopolitan diseases, the great problems of infantile mortality, prenatal and maternity care, housing, diet, the campaign against tuberculosis, etc., should be included in a third group of establishments designated "public assistance and health centers."

This third group will serve as centers for coordination of the services of the elementary dispensaries and epidemiologic laboratories, and will also fulfill other functions. These large centers are to be directly under the administration of the state.

The public assistance and health center of a given district or territory must be centrally located with respect to the boundaries of the territory, with adequate means of communication, so that it may with relative ease keep in touch with the two lower types of institutions under its jurisdiction.

The public assistance and health center should be under the direction of a qualified hygienist assisted by an expert in health and demography, by a physician who is a specialist in tuberculosis, by a pediatrician, and by a sanitary engineer. The center should have a corps of nurses and visiting nurses. Its essential functions are: (a) coordination of data transmitted to the center quarterly by the elementary dispensary and eventually by the epidemiologic laboratory; (b) prenatal and maternity care, with a program of education for pregnant women and mothers; (c) radiologic and biologic diagnosis of tuberculosis, especially pulmonary tuberculosis, and surveys of tubercular subjects and aid in domestic prophylaxis; (d) parasitologic examination of fecal material, blood examinations, and serologic and biological testing of local patients; (e) inquiry into home sanitary conditions and establishment of regulations of latrines and removal of excrement by the sanitary engineer; (f) inquiry into vitamin deficiency and local diet, with an educational program, especially concerning diet in infancy and childhood; and (g) courses in hygiene and health for local physicians, nurses, or special population groups.

In the field of health education, the functions of the welfare and health center differ substantially from those of the elementary dispensary in the methods used. The dispensary is to be charged with education of the public by popularizing the subject of health and hygiene through general education. The center is to offer a higher level of education through courses to physicians, nurses, and other specialists, for the most part less typically rural groups, since it may be supposed that the center will be located in a villa or some small urban grouping or in a town of the province.

The public welfare and health center should be in charge of establishing and modifying the isohygia curves of the district or territory under its jurisdiction.

The center should report, every six months or once a year, according to disposition made by higher health authority, to the National Health Administration. It should give an account of the progress of its work and of the results obtained, with appropriate statistical summary and graphic representation of the variations covering a given period.

CONCLUSION

Needless to say, a nation, to initiate and carry out a health program such as this, needs: (1) an economic basis of operation, with annual revenue to be devoted exclusively to this work; and (2) competent technical personnel, especially trained in the field of sanitation, epidemiology, and public health.

In the matter of public health, it seems to us that the state should not only not refuse private funds, but should on the contrary encourage all contributions from whatever organization or private initiative. Experience shows that a health program such as this produces results only after many years of effort and long periods of uninterrupted work (Castillo, 1945).

A factor just as decisive as the economic factor is that of competent technical personnel. Countries which face this problem should dedicate themselves to training specialized technical personnel with guarantees of employment in this work, proper remuneration, and sufficient authority, through long-term contracts or appointments in public administration.

References

Abbott Payson, U.: 1930. The History of Population and Settlement in Eurasia, Geograph. Rev. **20:** 110-122.

Alexander, F. D., and Meleney, H. E.: 1935. A Study of Diet in Two Rural Communities in Tennessee in Which Amebiasis Was Prevalent, Am. J. Hyg. **22:** 704.

Bartholomew: 1906. Isochronic Distance Chart, Atlas of the World's Commerce, p. 28.

Birand: 1933. League of Nations. (See the special number dedicated to the problem of dysentery, Rap. épidémiol., Soc. d. Nations, April 3-4.)

Castillo, G.: 1945. Two Problems of Health Education in Latin-America (Nicaragua), Am. J. Pub. Health **35:** 1297.

Cerqueira, N. L., and Lane, J.: 1944. Una nova especie de Aëdes, Mem. Inst. Osvaldo Cruz.

Davis, E. D.: 1944. Larval Habitats of Some Brazilian Mosquitoes, Rev. Entomolog., Rio de Janeiro **15:** 221.

Gerstmann, Roberto: 1928. Bolivia (150 figures, with a preface by F. Ahlfeld), Paris, Braun and Co.

League of Nations: 1931. Principes pour l'organisation des services d'hygine rurale, Genève, Geneva.

League of Nations: 1938. Doc. C.H. 1331 and 1382, June 14 and Oct. 31, Geneva.

MacKenzie and Pasqua: 1931. Report of the Trip for the Purpose of Study, of Drs. Mackenzie and Pasqua, League of Nations, Geneva.

McKinley: 1935. A Geography of Disease (A Preliminary Survey of the Incidence and Distribution of Tropical and Certain Other Diseases), Washington, D. C., George Washington University Press, Am. J. Trop. Med. (supp.) **15:** 3-489.

Martinez, H. R.: 1943. Biostatistical and Epidemiological Report of the Americas, Pan Amer. Sanit. Bureau, February, p. 195.

Maurette, F.: 1937. Quelques aspects sociaux du development present et future de l'economie brasilienne, Geneva, Publ. Bureau Intern. du Travail, pp. 12-30.

Mazzotti, L.: 1933. Habitacion rural, Salubridad **4:** (6 figures).

Mendizabal, M. C. de: 1945. Data of Official Publications of Mexico, With Commentary by M. D. de Mendizabal, Cuadernos Americanos Mexico **4:** 48.

Monge, C.: 1935. Politíca sanitaria indiana y colonial en el Tahuantisuyo, Anal. Fac. Medic., Lima **17.**

Monge, C., Encinas, E., and Heraud, C.: 1928. Estudios fisiologicos sobre el hombre de los Andes, Anales Fac. Medic., Lima.

National Geographic Magazine: 1929-1935. (See the reports of the voyages and explorations mentioned in text.)

Pittaluga, G.: 1931. Compt. rend. de la I. Conference de Higiène Rural, Geneve, June, Publ. of the League of Nations.

Pittaluga, G.: 1939. Sur l'établissement des services de santé rurale dans certains pays de'Amerique et en général dans les pays à faible densité de population, Rev. d'hyg. **61:** 197.

Quiroz, Lara: 1936. Health Director-General. La Sanidad en Bolivia, Bolet. Ofic. Sanit. Panamer. August. (See also the Acts of the successive Pan-American Health Conferences, Washington, 1940-1942, and the work of the Rockefeller Foundation in collaboration with the government of Bolivia, Annual Report, 1943, Rockefeller Foundation.)

Revelli, P.: 1936. La densita della popolazione nella Storia della, Geografia. Roma. Tip. Oper. Rom.

Rockefeller Foundation: 1944. International Health Division, Annual Report, p. 123.

Sahagún, Torres: 1944. Activadades del centro de educacion sanitaria de El Valle, Litograph Comercio, Caracas, published by the Ministry of Health and Social Assistance.

Shattuck, G. C., et al.: 1933. Monograph published by the Carnegie Foundation of Washington.

Soper, F. L.: 1937. Geographical Distribution of Immunity to Yellow Fever in Man in South America, Am. J. Trop. Med. **17**: 457.

Soper, F. L.: 1938. Yellow Fever: Present Situation With Special Reference to South America, Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **32**: 297.

Soper, F. L., and de Andrade, A.: 1933. Studies of Distribution of Immunity to Yellow Fever in Brazil, Am. J. Hyg. **18**: 588.

Soper, F. L., Rickard, E. R., and Crawford, P. J.: 1934. Routine Post-Mortem Removal of Liver Tissue From Rapidly Fatal Fever Cases for Discovery of Silent Yellow Fever Foci, Am. J. Hyg. **19**: 549.

Soper, F. L., et al.: 1935-1944. Annual Report of the Rockefeller Foundation.

Stouman, K., and Falk, I. S.: 1936. Indices de santé, leur rapport avec le milieu et l'ètat sanitaire, Bull. Trim. Organis. Hyg., Geneve **4**: 1022.

Vallaux, C.: 1911. Le Sol et l'ètat, Encycl. Scient., Paris, ed. Doin.

Waddell, M. B.: 1945. Persistence of Yellow Fever Virus in Mosquitoes After Death of Insect, Am. J. Trop. Med. **25**: 329.

CHAPTER 68

OUTLINE OF HEMATOLOGY AS RELATED TO TROPICAL DISEASES

R. B. H. Gradwohl

Hematologic laboratory diagnosis is very important in the study of tropical diseases. The fundamental features are presented here as briefly as possible. For fuller details, see Gradwohl (1948).

The changes which occur in the blood as a result of physiologic adaptation by the resident of the Occident when he finds himself in the Tropics have been considerably discussed, and no great changes have been authenticated. Plasma volume has been studied by various authorities, notably Talbott, Edwards, Dill, and Drastich (1933). They reported that the small differences observed were within the limits of error of the method. Drinker (1936) found that blood volume increased as the Tropics were entered. Drinker stated that the necessary increase of sweating must require a constantly higher blood supply to the skin, and if the blood volume did not increase, impoverishment of the internal organs would result. Forbes, Dill, and Hall (1940) found that white individuals who had moved to a hot, damp climate had a small increase, of about 5 per cent, in the blood volume and in the plasma volume. Many different writers have asserted that red cells may be increased and white cells decreased by residence in the Tropics. Sundstroem (1926), in reporting on his observations on the blood of white residents of northern Australia, found reduced levels for total phosphorus in the blood. These findings have been at variance with those of other observers. It may be generally stated that there are no definite changes in the blood actually due to residence in the Tropics.

Preparation of Glassware for Making Blood Films

The cover glasses recommended are 7/8 inches wide, size "B," square.

All new slides and cover glasses must be cleaned thoroughly before use to render them fat-free. Make up a weak solution of a detergent* by using about half a teaspoonful of detergent to a pint of warm water. Admit the slides and cover glasses into this solution one at a time, so that the entire surface of each is in contact with the wetting agent. Allow them to remain in the solution for a period of 15 minutes to a few hours. Do not leave them in too long because they might become coated and then cannot be used.

Wash very thoroughly, preferably in running water, until all traces of the detergent have been removed. Place them in warm water and dry immediately, using a soft cloth. Linen which has been washed many times makes an excellent towel for drying slides. Use enough pressure in drying the slides to remove any traces of fat which may remain on the slides. Have clean slides and cover glasses on hand at all times in the laboratory.

If the slides have been examined under immersion oil and are to be kept, dip them in xylol to remove the oil; then holding them at an angle, blow the xylol to the bottom of the slides. These slides can then be stored or filed for future use.

---

*We recommend Haemo-Sol, manufactured by Meinecke & Company, 225 Varick St., New York 14, N. Y.

If used slides are to be washed and reused, remove the oil with a cloth containing a few drops of xylol and then clean in the detergent as directed above.

With this method, no boiling, washing with soap, or using equal parts of ether and alcohol is necessary. Slides are clean and fat-free without further processing. Do not, however, allow the detergent to dry on the slides.

Blood Stains

Giemsa Stain.—

Considerable difficulty has been encountered by many workers in the manufacture of a serviceable Giemsa stain. These difficulties have been overcome by following the formula of Lillie (1943), which is our recommended method.

Azur B Eosinate:

Dissolve 10 Gm. methylene blue, 85-88 per cent dye content
in 600 c.c. distilled water in a mortar.
Add 6.8 c.c. of concentrated sulfuric acid, sp.gr. 1.835 to 1.84.
Bring to a boil.
Add 2.5 Gm. of potassium bichromate dissolved in 25 c.c. distilled water.
Boil 20 minutes.
Cool to 10° C. or lower. Place in the refrigerator overnight.
Add 17.5 Gm. sodium bicarbonate slowly with frequent shaking.

Add a 5% solution of eosin Y of about 90% dye content and shake constantly until the margin of the fluid appears pale blue or bluish-pink. About 205 c.c. will be required. Three-fourths of this amount can be added at once.

Filter at once, preferably on vacuum funnel with hard paper.

When fluid has been drawn through and the surface begins to crack, add 100 c.c. of distilled water, let drain, and wash again with a second 100 c.c. of distilled water.

Open out the filter paper and let it lie on a larger piece of filter paper or a paper towel and dry overnight on a warm plate or in the incubator at 37° C. The drying may be accelerated by using two 100 c.c. portions of acetone, or, preferably, 95% alcohol, as washes after the second wash with water. Drying at 55° C. to 60° C. has been tried and produces quite a little alteration of the thiazin dye; less if acetone or alcohol washes are used and the heating limited to 2 or 3 hours. The resultant dye is the *crude azur B eosinate.*

Azur A Eosinate:

Proceed as above for the azur B eosinate, using 5 Gm. of potassium bichromate instead of 2.5 Gm., and dissolve it in 50 c.c. distilled water.

Methylene Blue Eosinate:

Dissolve 10 Gm. methylene blue in 600 c.c. of cold distilled water.
Precipitate as before with 5% eosin, filtering and drying as above.

Methylene Blue:

Use certified methylene blue chloride.

Solvent:

Equal parts of glycerin and methyl alcohol (certified).

Lillie Stain:

Grind the azur B eosinate, azur A eosinate, methylene blue eosinate, and methylene blue (when necessary), separately, into fine powder, using separate clean mortars.

Weigh 840 mg. azur B eosinate
140 mg. azur A eosinate
420 mg. methylene blue eosinate
and 280 mg. finely ground methylene blue.

PLATE V.—BLOOD CELLS—GIEMSA STAIN.

(1) Myeloblast.
(2) Promyelocyte.
(3) Neutrophilic myelocyte (form usually seen in myelogenous leucemia)
(4) Neutrophilic myelocyte (form usually seen in infections).
(5) Eosinophilic myelocyte.
(6) Basophilic myelocyte.
(7) Juvenile or metamyelocyte (neutrophilic).
(8) ''Stab'' (band form) (neutrophilic)
(9) Twisted ''stab'' (neutrophilic).
(10) Degenerated ''stab'' (neutrophilic).
(11) Segmented neutrophile.
(12) Segmented eosinophile.
(13) Segmented basophile.
(14) Lymphoblast.
(15) Large lymphocyte.
(16) Small lymphocyte.
(17) Reticuloendothelial cell.
(18) Monocyte (formerly called ''transitional'').
(19) Monocyte.
(20) Monocyte.
(21) Endothelial element.
(22) Atypical promyelocyte.
(23) Micromyeloblast.
(24) ''Twin-nuclear'' cell of Schilling, seen only in leucemia (according to Schilling).
(25) Plasma cell.
(26) Small plasma cell.
(27) Polychromatic megaloblast.
(28) Orthochromatic macroblast.
(29) Orthochromatic normoblast.
(30) Orthochromatic microblast.
(31) Normoblast with nucleus showing karyorrhexis.
(32) Hyperchromic megalocyte.
(33) Macrocyte.
(34) Normocyte.
(35) Microcyte.
(32) to (35) Examples of anisocytosis.
(36) Erythroblast with mitotic nucleus.
(37) Faintly polychromatic erythrocyte.
(38) Polychromatic erythrocyte.
(39) Basophilic punctation, fine.
(40) Basophilic punctation, coarse.
(41) Poikilocytes.
(42) Marginal granule.
(43) Ring form of malarial parasite.
(44) and (45) Cabot rings.
(46) Hypochromic erythrocyte.
(47) Hyperchromic erythrocyte.
(48) Blood platelets.

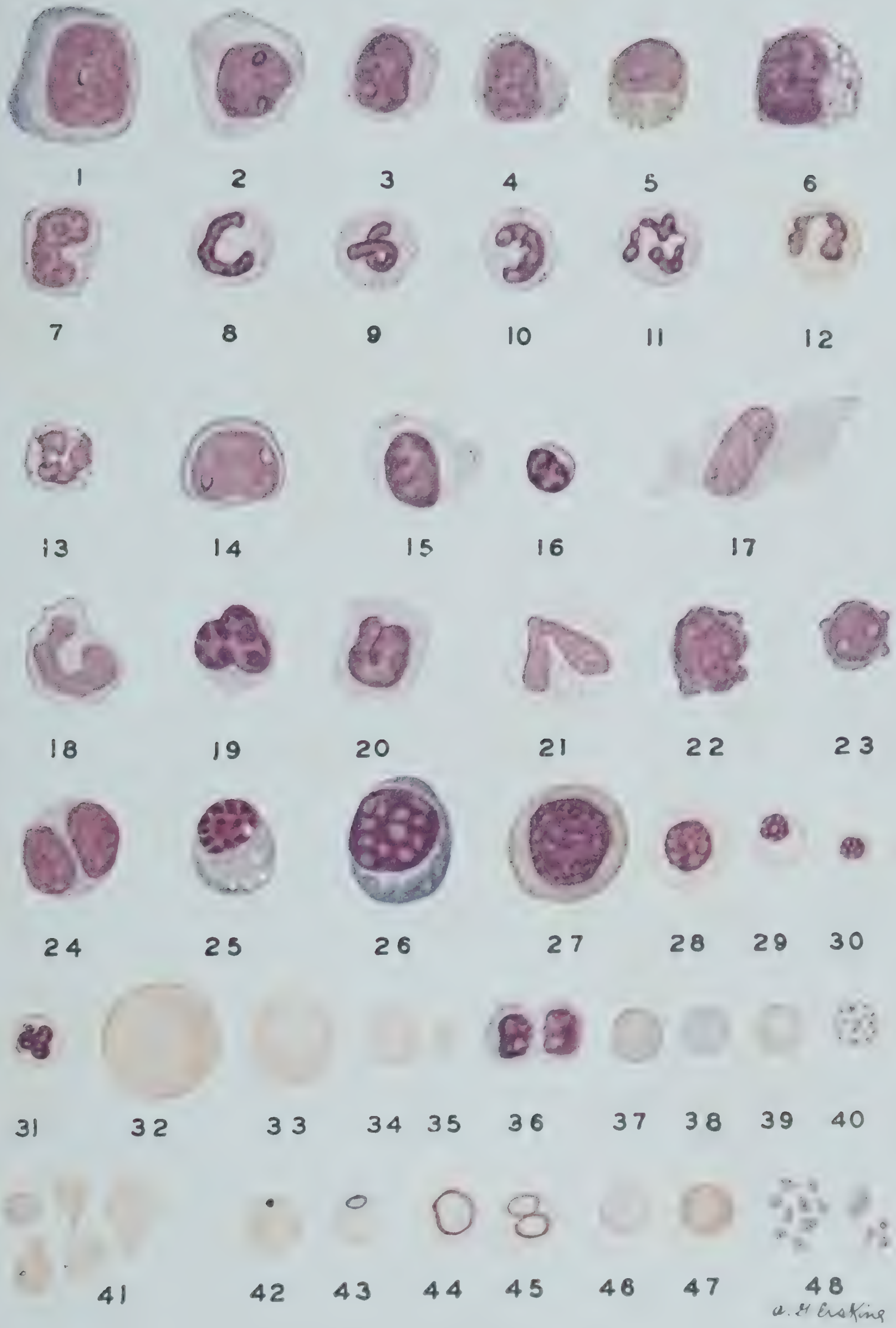

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
A. H. Erskine

PLATE V.—BLOOD CELLS—GIEMSA STAIN.

(See explanation of figures on opposite page.)

Mix the 4 powders thoroughly, and pour over the surface of 200 c.c. of the solvent, in a brown bottle or flask. Cork the container.

Allow the powder to settle into the solvent gradually.

Shake frequently for 2 or 3 days, keeping the bottle between 50° and 60° C. between shakings.

If the bottle is tightly stoppered (the fluid level is marked on the outside with a wax pencil or a piece of adhesive), there will be little or no loss from evaporation, and if there is, the fluid level can be restored by addition of methyl alcohol.

The glycerin should be neutral, anhydrous, and of the purest grade obtainable. Use methyl alcohol special for blood work.

Filter the stain through No. 5 Whatman filter paper into clean, dry, dark bottles. The stain is ready to use and is stable. Use as for Giemsa stain, original formula.

Wright Stain.—

Wright Dye:

0.5% aqueous solution of sodium bicarbonate ----------	1000 c.c.
Methylene blue ------------------------------------	10 Gm.

Grind in a mortar until all the methylene blue is in solution. Place in Erlenmeyer flasks to a depth of not more than 6 cm., and stopper lightly with cotton.

Heat in an Arnold steam sterilizer at 100° C. for one hour.

Cool. Filter through filter paper.

To every 100 c.c. of the filtrate, add 500 c.c. of 0.1% aqueous eosin Y solution. Add the eosin solution slowly, and stirring constantly, to form a precipitate. Test the solution for a free eosin ring by placing a drop on a piece of white filter paper and drying. The ring appears as a faint pink halo around a lavender spot. If the ring does not appear, add more 0.1% aqueous eosin until the ring forms. Our experience has been that between 700 and 750 c.c. of 0.1% aqueous eosin Y are required to exactly precipitate 100 c.c. of the polychromed methylene blue.

Filter through No. 5 Whatman filter paper, folded into four parts. Discard the filtrate and save the precipitate on the filter paper. Place the paper in an incubator to dry for several days. This is the stock stain. Place it in a dark bottle and store as "Wright Dye." The dye is stable.

Wright Stain (Working Solution):

Dissolve 0.1 Gm. Wright dye (above) in 60 c.c. of methyl alcohol, acetone-free. Grind the dye in a mortar, adding the alcohol slowly until all the dye is in solution.

Place in a dark bottle. Allow to stand about 2 weeks before using.

Filter through filter paper. The solution is not always stable.

Preparation and Staining of Blood Films

Discard the first 1 or 2 drops after the puncture.

Pick up the slide with the left hand, holding it between the thumb and pointer finger. Pick up a small drop of blood near the end of the slide, but do not touch the skin.

Hold the cover glass between the thumb and the first finger of the right hand. Approach the drop with the cover glass at an angle of 45 degrees. When the cover glass touches the drop of blood, wait until the drop of blood runs across the edge of the cover glass, then gently pull it across the slide to form a thin film. Do not put any tension on the slide or the cover glass. Draw the cover glass steadily, not fast, not too slowly, pulling the drop of blood. The cover glass is always in front of the blood. The film should not touch the edges of the slides—it should be "margin-free."

Allow the slide to dry in the air, then scratch the patient's name or identifying number in the thicker beginning end of the film (small writing).

If the film is not "margin-free," the large cells tend to go to the edges and the small cells to the center. By combining the margin-free film with the "four-field meander'' method of counting, differences in distribution of the cells due to the personal element should be almost entirely eliminated.

Do not use too large a drop of blood, for the film will be too thick; too small a drop makes a very thin film, which is also objectionable. To make thick smears, pull the cover glass faster, and to make thinner films, pull the cover glass more slowly.

Staining Blood Films

(1) **Giemsa Stain.**—The stock Giemsa stain keeps indefinitely, but the diluted stain must be made just before use, since it loses its staining qualities within an hour or more. The container in which the stain is diluted must be free of acids and alkalies.

It is well always to dilute the stain in the same container, and after using, to rinse the container thoroughly in warm tap water, then in neutral distilled water, but do not remove the small amount of dye which adheres to the glass. The stain is better if made in a cylinder or flask with a thin coating of the stain. From time to time wash out any precipitate that forms with hot tap water.

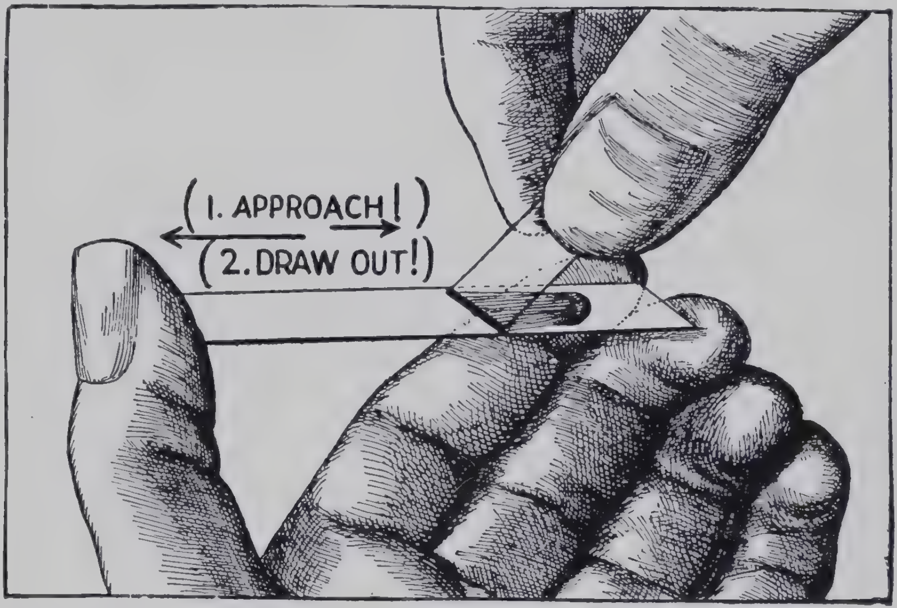

(1. APPROACH!)
(2. DRAW OUT!)

Fig. 460.—Correct method of making a blood film. (From Schilling: The Blood Picture, St. Louis, The C. V. Mosby Co.)

Neutralizing Water for Staining Blood Films and Thick Drop Preparations: Neutral distilled water is used in routing staining. There are many methods of obtaining neutral water, but the method of choice is that using hematoxylin as an indicator and 1 per cent potassium carbonate as the neutralizing agent for acid water and 1 per cent hydrochloric acid for alkaline water. In our hands, water neutral to hematoxylin has proved better suited to staining blood cells than has water with a pH of 6.4. We have found that water which is neutral with the use of hematoxylin as an indicator has a pH of 6.8 to 7.0. There are numerous buffer capsules that may be used, and these are better than not neutralizing the water at all, but our experience has been that cells stained with buffered water show very little of the important nuclear structures, and for that reason we do not recommend the buffer capsules except for emergency work.

Method: Neutralize enough water for the day's work. The bottle used for storing the neutral water should preferably be Pyrex, or one should use a bottle which has held nothing but water for several months. Silicates from the glass interfere with maintaining the neutrality of the water. Do not use a rubber siphon, but pour the water from the stock bottle to the flask or other container being used for the day's work.

Pick up a few crystals of hematoxylin crystals with a pair of forceps and place in a test tube which has been rinsed with the water to be tested. Add about 5 c.c. of the water and shake. If the water is neutral, it becomes a pale lavender-pink or salmon color within 10 seconds. If it is acid, it becomes yellow and remains so for more than 5 minutes. If it is alkaline, it turns reddish-purple before 1 minute.

If the water is acid, use 1% potassium carbonate to neutralize it, and if alkaline, use 1% hydrochloric acid. Add the neutralizing agent to the bottle of water, a few drops at a time, and shake thoroughly to mix. Then test again, and continue in this manner until the water is neutral, as shown by a faint pink color within 10 seconds (without a trace of yellow or blue).

Water neutralized in this manner gives excellent staining results with Giemsa or Wright stain. For the information of those who have not followed the variations in staining characteristics of blood cells with changes in the reaction of the water, we call attention to the following points regarding the appearances of blood cells where the water is either acid or alkaline:

If the water is acid, the erythrocytes become a bright red-orange instead of light yellowish-orange, and the white cells are almost indistinguishable. All eosin stains become very bright reddish-orange. The eosinophiles stand out particularly brilliantly. In a count of eosinophiles alone, it is advisable to use slightly acid distilled water. The nuclei of all cells will stain a pale sky blue. The cytoplasm of all lymphocytes and monocytes is very pale blue or invisible. These 2 cell types cannot be definitely differentiated from each other if the water is acid. The neutrophilic cells become extremely pale, the nuclei stain either pale blue or pale lavender, and the cytoplasm stains a definite pink, but no granules are visible. The age of the various neutrophiles cannot be determined accurately because of the indefinite staining of the nuclei, thus rendering a Schilling count practically an impossibility. Blood platelets are very pale blue. Malarial parasites lose much of their color, the red chromatin staining very pale, and the blue cytoplasm being scarcely visible, which makes identification extremely difficult.

With alkaline water, the erythrocytes stain blue or greenish. A purple cast is imparted to all blues and particularly to the cytoplasms of the lymphocytes and monocytes. The cytoplasm of the lymphocytes may be a muddy gray or lavender, and that of the monocytes may be decidedly pinkish-lavender or even purple, while cytoplasm of neutrophiles becomes deep lavender or almost red. Eosinophiles with alkaline staining show deep gray or blue granules instead of the dull orange appearance that is obtained when neutral water is used. (The granules of eosinophiles stain this peculiar color when the water is stale.) The granules of all the neutrophiles become very intensely overstained so that they not only appear more numerous, but also larger than normal. This makes detection of toxic granules impossible. Chromatin granules of all nuclei assume the appearance of large black lumps within the nuclei, and the nuclear wall seems broken. Nucleoli are virtually not distinguishable. Erythrocytes with alkaline water not only change in staining characteristics, but also appear to have no center. Frequently the edges seem to have horny projections, and the cells look crenated. Most leucocytes look frayed at the edges. Malarial parasites stain particularly well with slightly alkalinized water, but if the water is too alkaline, it is impossible to differentiate the chromatin from the cytoplasm. Blood platelets with alkaline water swell and stain reddish-lavender. One cannot identify them by their structure, but only by their size and arrangement.

Another danger in staining blood films is *in using too little of the staining solution or in overwashing.* Water will decolorize the stain if left in contact with the slide. For this reason, we suggest that slides be washed rather slightly, then allowed to stand on end to dry so that the excess water may drain off instead of removing the color. In staining, the slides should be placed on a staining bridge over a staining pan, and as much diluted stain as they can accommodate should be used. If slides are understained or overwashed, the true color will be lost, the nuclei and cytoplasms will blend instead of being distinct, and most of the cells will look very fragile. Understained cells appear very much like cells stained with acid water.

Diluting the Stain: Dilute only as much Giemsa stain as needed for the work at hand. While stock Giemsa stain is stable and does not precipitate, diluted Giemsa stain will change within an hour or two.

Measure the quantity of distilled water needed to stain the slides, placing it in a flask or cylinder. Add 1 drop of Giemsa stain for each cubic centimeter of neutral water, shaking very slightly during the addition of each drop. Do not add all the Giemsa stain at once, and do not shake vigorously, or a precipitate will form. Shake only enough to ensure a good mixture of the stain and the water. The drop should be measured with a dropper the opening of which is not too small.

If a dropping bottle is used as a container for Giemsa stain, it must be prepared by allowing neutral distilled water to stand in contact with the glass for at least a week, changing the water each day. The bottle must be dried before the Giemsa stain is placed in the bottle.

Fixing the Film: Absolutely pure, acetone-free methyl alcohol should be used. We recommend that made by the National Aniline and Chemical Company, New York.

The methyl alcohol should be kept in a Koplin jar for use and at the end of the day transferred to a bottle and kept tightly stoppered to prevent evaporation.

For fixation, place the slides in methyl alcohol for 3 to 5 minutes. Fresh films should be fixed 5 minutes; films which have been kept for several days require only 3 minutes' fixation. Remove, allow to dry in the air, and stain.

Staining the Film: Place the fixed slides on a staining bridge and flood with diluted Giemsa stain. Allow the stain to remain on the slide for 30 minutes, or in some cases 45 minutes, wash with neutral distilled water, and stand in a vertical position to dry. Do not overwash. If the slides are too blue, rewash and allow to dry.

Changes in Giemsa Staining to Bring Out Special Structures:

(a) *Malaria.*—The water should be slightly alkaline. Use 1 drop of 1% sodium or potassium carbonate solution to each 25 c.c. of neutral distilled water before adding the Giemsa stain (1 drop of stain for each cubic centimeter of water).

(b) *For Eosinophiles.*—Allow the distilled water to remain slightly acid to bring out the granules of the eosinophiles.

(c) *For Spirochetes.*—Alkalinize the stain by adding 1 drop of 1% potassium carbonate solution to each 10 c.c. of distilled water before diluting the stain.

Fix the film. Allow to dry. Flood with diluted Giemsa stain (alkalinized), and steam gently for about 10 minutes, or stain cold for 24 hours (in a Koplin jar).

Wash in running tap water for 3 minutes and dry.

Spirochetes are red; other organisms are blue.

(2) **Rapid Giemsa Stain (For Emergency Use Only).**—The method is that of McGee (1932). Stain for ½ minute with a mixture of 20 drops of methyl alcohol and 10 drops of Giemsa stain (mixed in a dry tube and poured over the slide). Add an equal volume of neutral distilled water and allow the mixture to remain on the slide for 2 minutes. Flood off the stain with neutral distilled water, dry, and examine.

(3) **Wright Staining.**—No fixative is necessary since the stain contains methyl alcohol. The length of time for staining may vary with different batches of stain.

Flood the slide with the Wright stain and allow it to remain for 1 minute. Add neutral distilled water until there is a mixture of equal parts of stain and water and allow the mixture to remain on the slide for 3 or 4 minutes. Flood off the stain, dry the back of the slide to remove excess stain, and stand in a vertical position until dry.

(4) **Wright Stain Modified by Bercovitz (1934).**—

Fill a staining jar with pure methyl alcohol.

Fill a second jar with 30% Wright stain.

Immerse the blood film in the methyl alcohol for 5 minutes.

Place in the stain for 2 minutes or longer, depending on the depth of staining desired. Wash the slide as usual.

The stain can be used repeatedly. If the fluid level decreases, add more diluted stain until there is enough to cover the slides. Slides left in the methyl alcohol for an hour or more showed no changes in the staining characteristics of the cells.

(5) **The May-Grünwald-Giemsa or the Wright-Giemsa Staining of Blood Films and Bone Marrow.**—Stain with Wright stain or May-Grünwald stain in the usual manner, and wash.

Dry in the air, then stain for 30 minutes with dilute Giemsa stain. Wash with neutral distilled water and allow to dry.

This method is particularly recommended for staining bone marrow preparations.

Making and Staining Thick Drop Preparations

The thick drop method of examination of blood is a very important procedure in searching for parasites and detecting polychromasia and for counting eosinophiles. Parasites of malaria, filariasis, trypanosomiasis, etc., may be found more readily in the thick drop than in the blood film, for the thick drop represents a concentration of the blood of about 50 times that of a film. The erythrocytes are dissolved by the water in the diluted Giemsa stain, or by a dehemoglobinizing solution, thus making it very easy to see either the blood parasites or the reticulated structures of the young erythrocytes. The eosinophiles are very definite, the granules being very distinct and bunched together. The thick drop preparation manifestly cannot be used for differential counting. All that remains of the erythrocytes is the reticulum of young cells, nuclei when present, and parasites when in the blood, of the neutrophiles, only the nuclei and nonsoluble granules remain on the slide, the basophiles appear as a group of red-stained fibrin needles around a washed-out nucleus.

Technic.—Place 2 drops of blood on a glass slide and spread immediately in a circle to 3 times the original diameter of the drops. Allow to dry thoroughly at room temperature or for ½ to 3 hours in a bacteriologic incubator at 37° C. Keep the slides out of bright sunlight, away from flies and other insects, and protect from dust. DO NOT FIX.

Place the slide on a staining bridge and cover very gently with dilute Giemsa stain (1 drop of stain for each cubic centimeter of neutral distilled water), taking care not to loosen the drop from the slide.

Allow the stain to remain for 3 minutes, or until the blood is dehemoglobinized, and tilt the slide and allow the stain to run off. Again cover with dilute Giemsa stain and stain for 30 minutes. Wash gently but thoroughly with neutral distilled water and dry in the air in a vertical position. Examine under oil immersion objective.

Modified Method of Staining Thick Drops for Examination for Malarial Parasites (Vigo, cited by Gradwohl, 1948).—Mix Giemsa stain with buffer solution pH 7.0 to 7.2 or neutral distilled water in the proportion of 1 drop of stain for each 2 drops of buffer solution. Mix in a test tube or small graduate.

Place just enough stain on the thick drop to cover it and allow to remain for 3 minutes.

Wash either by immersing in a jar of neutral distilled water, or in the usual manner of washing a slide.

Rapid Thick Drop Staining Method (Field, 1941).—Make a thick film about the size of a shilling or a quarter dollar, about 10 to 15 times the thickness of an ordinary thin film. It should be thick enough so as barely to read the dial of a watch through the film. Stain as soon as it has dried. Drying may be accelerated by a hot air current from an ordinary hair dryer. No fixation is used. Freshly prepared films stain better than those several days old.

Solution A:

Methylene blue	0.8	Gm.	
Azur I	0.5	Gm.	(American equivalent is Azur B)
Na_2HPO_4, anhydrous	5.0	Gm.	
KH_2PO_4, anhydrous	6.25	Gm.	
Distilled water	500	c.c.	

Dissolve the phosphate salts first. Effect solution of the dyes by grinding in a mortar, using a small amount of the phosphate solvent at a time. Allow to stand for 24 hours and filter. If Azur I is not obtainable, good results are secured by mixing methylene blue from medicinal methylene blue and a buffer as follows: Dissolve 1.3 Gm. medicinal methylene blue and 5 Gm. anhydrous Na_2HPO_4 in 50 c.c. of distilled water. Bring to a boil. Evaporate on a water bath almost to dryness. Add 6.25 Gm. anhydrous KH_2PO_4. Add 500 c.c. distilled water, stir until stain is completely dissolved, and set aside for 24 hours. Filter before use.

Solution B:

Eosin (yellowish, water-soluble)	1.0	Gm.
Na_2HPO_4, anhydrous	5.0	Gm.
KH_2PO_4, anhydrous	6.25	Gm.
Distilled water	500	c.c.

Follow directions for making solution A.

If a scum appears on either of these 2 solutions, filter again. The same solution may be used for weeks without deterioration. The eosin solution should be removed when a greenish color appears which is due to the carrying-over of the methylene blue. Keep the stain in covered jars, at a depth of about 3 inches. Maintain this level by adding more stain from time to time.

Staining Method:

Dip into solution A for 1 second.

Rinse by ''waving'' in water for a few seconds until no more stain comes off.

Dip into solution B for 1 second.

Rinse by gently ''waving'' in water for 2 or 3 seconds.

Place vertically in rack to dry.

Staining of parasites is optimal at the lower edge of the film toward which the hemoglobin has drained.

Colors:

General ground: Creamy yellow color, sometimes uniform, sometimes mottled with pale blue.

Leucocytes: Nuclei, deep blue, sharply defined; cytoplasm, pale blue, vaguely defined; granules—eosinophilic, large, red, well defined; neutrophilic, small, pale purple, vague.

Malarial parasites: Cytoplasm, blue; chromatin, dark purplish-red; pigment, unstained, yellowish of varying shades.

Thick Film Method of Barber and Komp for Malaria (1929).—

Slides should be clean and fat-free and should not be fogged or scratched.

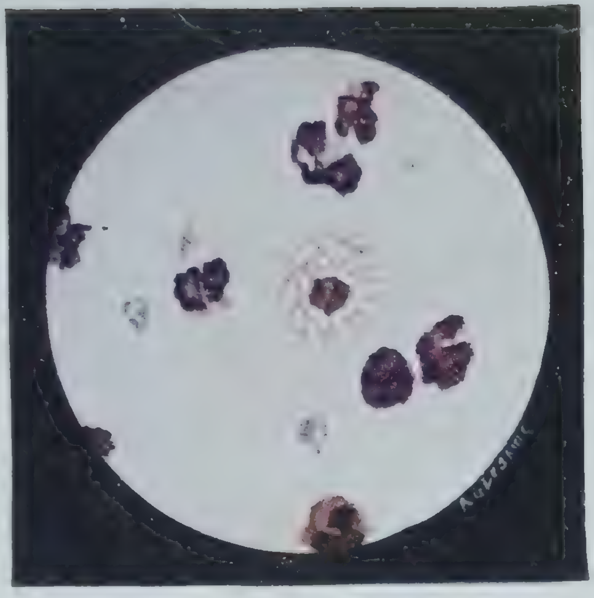
Make a thick smear of blood by placing 4 small drops of blood on a slide and spreading it to about 2 cm. in diameter. Preparations must not be too thin.

Allow to dry thoroughly in the air in a horizontal position (1 or 2 hours).

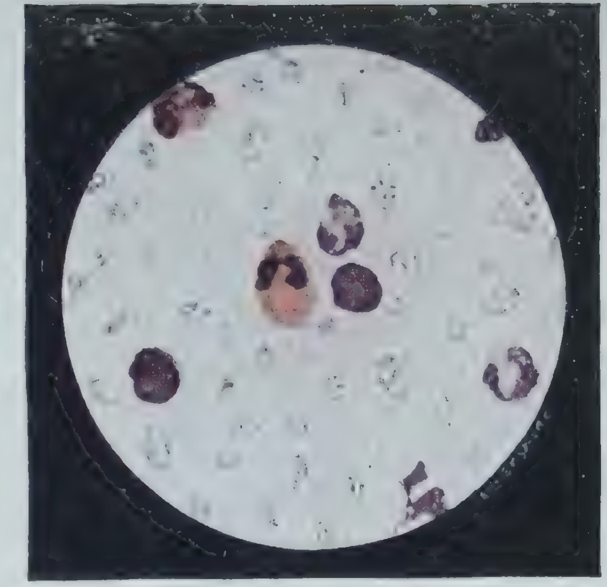
In surveys for malarial parasite carriers, hundreds of preparations must be examined. Carry out the technic in groups of 25 slides as follows:

Smears must be at least 1 cm. from the end of the slides.

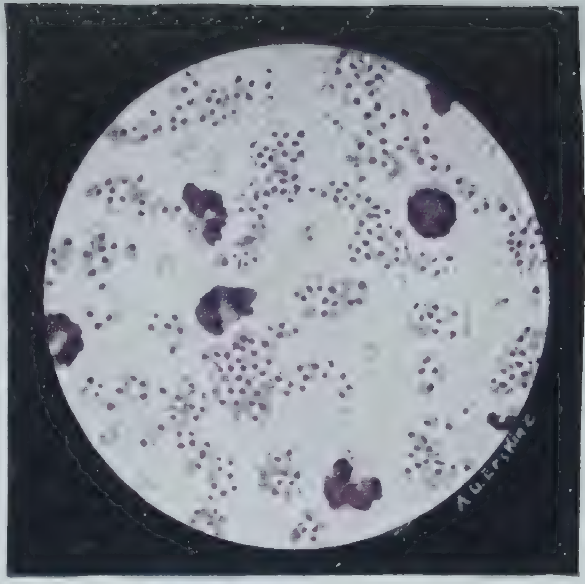
Labels are placed at the other end of the slides.



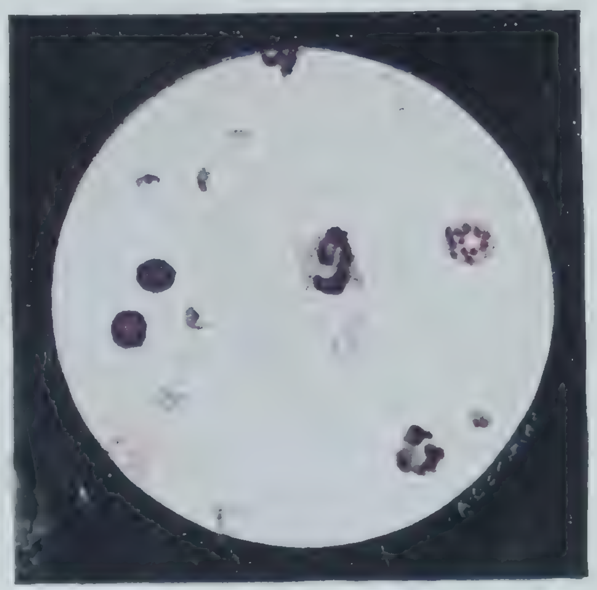
NORMAL THICK DROP
X 950



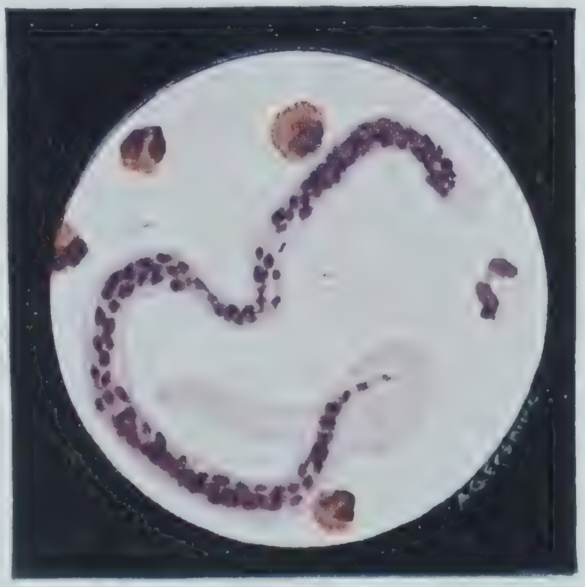
LEAD POISONING
X 950



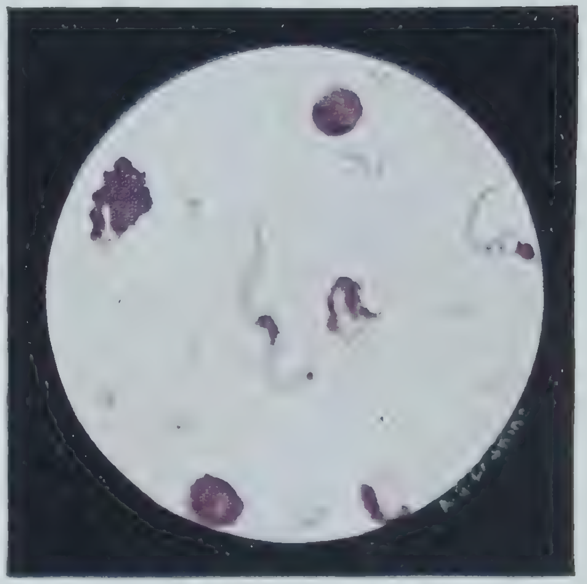
FATAL FALCIPARUM MALARIA
X 950



VIVAX MALARIA
X 950



FILARIASIS
HEMATOXYLIN-GIEMSA STAIN



TRYPANOSOMIASIS GAMBIENSE
X 950

PLATE VI.—THICK DROPS.

Place the slides in a box and insert between the labeled ends blocks of cardboard parators 1/16 to 1/8 inch thick and 1¼ inches long, assemble the slides and cardboard sepa tors, and fasten them together with a stout rubber band. The entire group may be ained as a single unit.

Dilute Giemsa stain with distilled water immediately before use. The pH of the ater should be between 7.0 and 7.2. Use 1 drop of Giemsa stain for each cubic centimeter f neutral distilled water, shaking the mixture slightly after the addition of each drop. Do ot shake too vigorously or a precipitate will form.

Immerse the slides in a vertical position in a staining dish containing the diluted iemsa stain. There should be enough stain to cover the preparations, but it must not nterfere with the labels. Stain for 30 minutes to 1 hour, depending on the degree of stain esired. Discard the diluted stain.

Rinse gently with neutral distilled water. If the slides are overstained, rinse for to 5 minutes in water.

Allow to dry in the air and examine with the oil immersion objective.

Staining Thick Drops With Wright Stain.—Prepare the thick drop in the usual maner and allow to dry thoroughly. Place in a solution of 2% formalin and 0.2% acetic acid, nd let the preparation dehemoglobinize for 2 or 3 minutes. Neutralize in 2% sodium biarbonate solution. Stain as usual with Wright stain.

Examination of the Thick Drop

Examine with the oil immersion objective. Polychromasia appears as small net tructures stained blue. Basophilic punctation appears as blue dots arranged in a small ircle. Orthochromatic erythrocytes dissolve. Parasites and eosinophiles are characteristic.

Bone Marrow Studies

Bone marrow studies are now an essential part of hematologic diagnosis. n all uncertain cases of blood diagnosis, it is well to obtain bone marrow for liagnostic examination. This may be procured in various ways. We recomnend the Turkel technic for biopsies of the sternum.

The advantages of this method are that it is easily and rapidly performed t bedside or office and does not leave a disfiguring scar. It controls the depth nd force of penetration; in other words, it prevents penetration of posterior amella and mediastinum. There is no dilution of marrow with circulating lood. There is preservation of marrow topography. The biopsy by this nethod shows cells adherent to the marrow wall which are not seen by aspiraion. Further, the biopsy shows the true proportion of cells in marrow, or he myeloid-erythroblast ratio. It checks results of treatments quantitatively. It possesses the advantage that aspiration and infusion may be performed through the same aperture.

Technic (Turkel, cited by Gradwohl, 1948).—Cleanse the skin over the desired site, usually opposite the third rib, with surgical antiseptic. Infiltrate skin, subcutaneous tissue, and periosteum with local anesthetic.

Insert outer needle with stylet in place, with the tip of the needle in the direction of the face of the patient at an angle of about 45 degrees, through the skin, subcutaneous tissue, and periosteum, until the tip just engages the anterior lamella of the sternum.

Leave the outer needle in place and remove the stylet.

Insert the trephine needle with stylet into the outer needle.

Remove stylet of inner trephine needle.

While holding the outer needle with the fingers of the left hand, turn the head of the trephine needle with the fingers of the right hand, with a slight clockwise-counterclockwise motion, at the same time exerting gentle inward pressure. A sudden release of resistance signifies entrance of the trephine tip into the sternal cavity. *The clockwise-counterclockwise motion, with slight pressure, should continue until the neck of the inner needle is completely within the head of the outer needle.* Rotate the head of the inner needle in order to detach the plug from the surrounding marrow.

(a) **For Aspiration:** While holding the knurled handle of the inner needle, push the outer needle into the sternum about 6 mm., until the neck of the inner needle becomes completely visible. Remove the inner needle. Attach the syringe and aspirate about 1 c.c. of blood-marrow mixture. Remove syringe and express mixture immediately into oxalated tube.

(b) **For Biopsy:** Remove the inner needle and with its stylet force the marrow plug into a bottle containing a fixative or use it as imprint or smear. Insert stylet into outer needle, remove outer needle, and cover the point of insertion with antiseptic dressing.

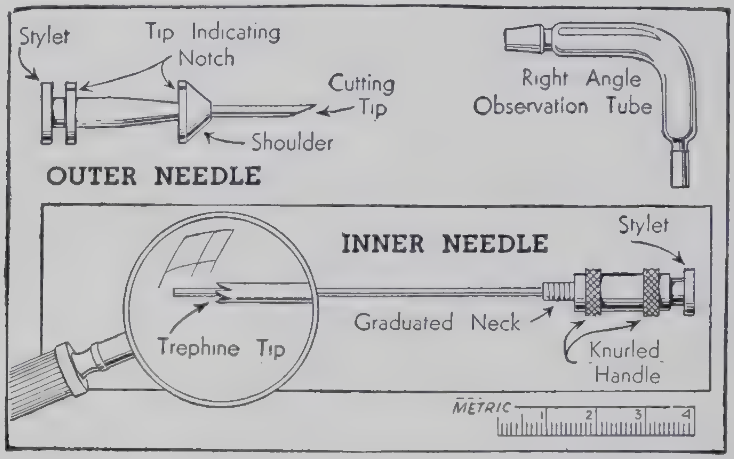


Fig. 461.—The Turkel needle for aspiration or biopsy of the sternum.

Iliac Crest in Bone Marrow Punctures

Rubinstein (1947) stated that bone marrow can be obtained easily and safely from iliac crest and may at times provide information not obtainable from sternal aspiration. His method follows:

The site for the iliac crest puncture is chosen on the crest over an area within 3 cm. posterior to the anterior superior iliac spine on either side of the body. According to the thickness of the tegument, a needle, 1 inch to 2½ inches long, 16 gauge, and furnished with a stylet is used for puncture; a 20 cm. tightly fitted dry syringe is used for aspiration.

The determined site is prepared with iodine and alcohol and infiltrated with 2 per cent novocain solution until the periosteum is reached; the periosteal space is then injected very slowly; usually no more than 2 c.c. of the novocain solution is required. The patient lies in the supine position; in cases of very pronounced abdominal distention (ascites, enlarged viscera) the patient is tilted on his side. The puncture is performed with the needle at a 45-degree angle to the long axis of the body and with pressure applied by the palm of the hand. The aspirating needle is forced into the bone with steady pressure and slight rotation. A distinct "give" sensation is usually felt when the needle enters the medullary cavity. As the needle is firmly embedded in the medullary cavity, the stylet is withdrawn and the syringe attached to the needle. In order to avoid admixture of blood, the plunger is slowly withdrawn until the first drop of marrow fluid is observed in the capillary end of the syringe. Bone marrow aspiration is accompanied by a slight sensation of pain (suction pain).

The material removed may be used in the usual way for enumeration of total nucleated cell count, for preparation of smears, and for section study.

Examination of Bone Marrow Preparations

Touch preparations are made on the surfaces of clean, fat-free glass slides. A few smears are also made.

The best method of staining is the combination of Wright and Giemsa stains given earlier in the chapter.

Supravital Staining of Erythrocytes

Supravital staining means staining of cells after their somatic death but before their molecular death has taken place, that is to say, after their removal from the living body, but before all cellular activity stops. Reagents are used which are of low toxicity or are nontoxic to the cell, and which will stain them in the course of a few minutes.

Rapid Supravital Staining Method of Schilling.—This does not give permanent mounts.

The reagent is a 1 per cent alcoholic solution of brilliant cresyl blue, filtered after 24 hours.

Keep the stain in a glass bottle with a glass rod attached. Dip the glass rod into the stain and spread a thin layer of the stain over the slide. Allow to dry.

Place a very small drop of blood on the center of the slide and cover immediately with a thin cover glass. Allow to stand for 5 or 10 minutes and examine with the oil immersion objective.

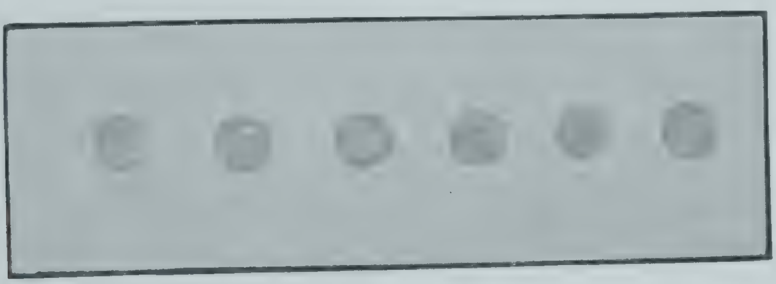


Fig. 462.—Bone marrow touch preparation.

APPLICATION OF HEMATOLOGIC STUDY TO TROPICAL DISEASES

In respect to the application of hematologic study to tropical diseases, it is to be noted that certain cells of the organism show activity when invaded by some foreign body, living or dead. These cells, which can act *in situ* (fixed cells), and those which may come from a distance (mobile cells, for example, leucocytes) have a phagocytic function by which they can encompass into their cytoplasms foreign particles, living or dead, that have been introduced into the organism. This phagocytosis is exercised principally by 2 kinds of cells: the polymorphonuclear neutrophiles and the monocytes or large mononuclears. Metchnikoff called the first class microphages because they engulfed small particles, especially bacteria. The other type he called macrophages. These are the monocytes derived from reticuloendothelial structures. They usually phagocytize larger elements such as cells, erythrocytes, protozoa, etc.

The polymorphonuclear neutrophiles, or microphages, are of myeloid origin, circulate in the blood, and accumulate in foci of microbic invasion (diapedesis), where they degenerate to form pus cells. Accumulation of polymorphonuclear neutrophiles in the tissue is one of the histologic signs of an acute inflammation. Relative increase in the blood is called polynucleosis or neutrophilia and is generally accompanied by an increased total number of leucocytes in the blood (leucocytosis). Leucocytosis with polynucleosis of the blood is therefore constant when there exists in the patient some focus of acute bacterial inflammation, especially when there is an evolution toward abscess formation (suppuration).

Monocytes or macrophages originate in the reticuloendothelial system and circulate in the blood, where an increased number (monocytosis) occurs in certain protozooses such as malaria, leishmaniasis, etc. In some parasitic and protozoal diseases the endothelial cells of the reticulum of all the organs and tissues, especially those of the liver and spleen, are more or less invaded by parasitic elements (malaria, leishmania).

The cytoplasm of these endothelial cells or true macrophages is the habitual localization of many parasitic microorganisms such as leishmania, actinomycetes, lepra bacilli, etc. We wonder if this inclusion of parasites in the cytoplasm of the macrophages is due to a true phagocytosis, a more acceptable theory, or if it is due to attack with parasitic invasion of such cells (Kourí).

The occurrence of eosinophilia is the most frequent observation in helminthic infestations. Increase in monocytes is seen in malaria and leishmaniasis. Note also that some tropical affections are accompanied by diminution of number of leucocytes in the blood (leucopenia); others show a diminution of total number of erythrocytes (anemia); or an increase in these elements (hyperglobulia).

Cellular Reactions.—

Blood eosinophilia; local eosinophilia; leucopenia with mononucleosis; anemia; local inflammatory reactions, acute, subacute, and chronic; remote reactions such as lymphatic gland enlargements, hepatomegaly, and splenomegaly, changes in the bone marrow; hyperplasia, metaplasia, and neoplasia—these are all cellular reactions on the part of the organism which may be observed in parasitic affections and which in some manner permit one to look upon them as specific for parasitism although they are present in many other nonparasitic affections; on the other hand, they may not be present in such affections.

For example, blood eosinophilia, which is very frequent and in many cases very high in parasitic diseases, especially in those caused by worms, may be entirely absent; or on the other hand, it may be present in cutaneous affections, in urticaria, in asthma, and other allergies which are not parasitic, as well as in tuberculosis, in Hodgkin's disease, in essential eosinophilia, etc.

It is clear that a blood eosinophilia in a tropical country makes one think of parasitism and demands an investigation by direct methods for a definite diagnosis of parasitism. Again, anemia may be due to many causes. Among these is parasitism, especially by Necator and Ancylostoma. These worms may cause anemias which may differ from those caused by malarial plasmodia r histolytic amebae. An investigation and search for parasites should be made when an anemia is associated with eosinophilia.

Mononucleosis is frequently seen in malaria and calls for an investigation directed toward finding this hematozoan or its pigments in blood or in smears from splenic puncture during life, and in all the organs and tissues at autopsy.

Thus eosinophilia, anemia, mononucleosis must be considered as cellular reactions of the organism. Therefore, investigation of these cellular reactions are useful because when present they direct suspicion toward parasitism and lead to the search for the parasites by direct methods for the establishment of a correct diagnosis.

From personal observations and from literature studies, an alphabetically arranged list of the various tropical diseases with their accompanying blood changes is here presented.

African Sleeping Sickness.—See Trypanosomiasis.

Amebiasis.—

There is no blood picture characteristic of amebiasis. A microcytic anemia is frequently seen. The red count has been recorded as below 4,500,000 in 57 cases out of 89 studied (Hinman and Kampmeier, 1937), less than 4,000,000 in 38 of the cases. Nine cases showed erythrocyte counts below 3,000,000. The hemoglobin is usually between 65 and 80 per cent, at times higher than 80 per cent, and some cases show hemoglobin values below 65 per cent. In chronic cases of long standing, the red count may be 3,000,000 or rarely 2,500,000.

In the acute stages, the white count is higher than it is in bacillary dysentery. In chronic cases without complications, it is usually below 12,000. There may be lymphocytosis and a slight monocytosis, with eosinophilia of a slight degree in some patients.

Amebic Abscess of the Liver.—

The leucocytosis varies between 12,000 to 20,000 according to many authors, but it may be between 10,000 and 35,000 (Felsenfeld). According to Da Silva (1945), the larger the abscess, the lower the cell count. At times there is an increase in the polymorphonuclear leucocytes. Manson-Bahr (1936) found the average differential count to be 70.8 per cent polymorphonuclears, 22.2 per cent lymphocytes, 6 per cent large mononuclears, and 1 per cent eosinophiles.

With secondary infection of the liver abscess, both the fever and the white count are high.

Amebic Abscess of the Lung.—

There is neutrophilic leucocytosis, with white counts of 15,000 to 20,000.

Amebic Hepatitis.—

There is a leucocytosis of 15,000 to 30,000, with a decrease in the number of mononuclear cells.

Amebic Appendicitis.—

There may be an increase in the white count, but if the count exceeds 15,000 or 16,000, secondary infection should be suspected.

Ancylostomiasis.—See Hookworm Disease.

Anemia, Achrestic.—

The red count is 2,000,000 to 3,500,000 or less with a hemoglobin of 60 to 70 per cent. The color index and volume index are greater than 1.0. There is a hyperplastic megaloblastic bone marrow (Clerch Rius).

Anemia, Beriberi.—See Beriberi.

Anemia, Chlorosis.—See Chlorosis.

Anemia, Hypochromic, of Children.—

There is a hypochromic anemia, similar to that in the adult, with hyperleucocytosis and lymphocytosis (large lymphocytes).

Anemia, Hypochromic, Idiopathic.—

The red count varies between 3,000,000 and 4,100,000, the hemoglobin below 50 per cent, at times as low as 30 per cent. Erythrocytes are small and hypochromic, the cell diameters being about 6.2 to 6.7 microns. The mean corpuscular volume is less than normal, and the color index about 0.62. The reticulocyte count is normal. There is no change in the blood platelet or the differential counts. Normoblasts may be present.

Anemia, Hypochromic, of Pregnancy.—

The red count is 3,500,000 to 4,200,000, with hemoglobin values of 35 to 40 per cent, or perhaps as high as 50 per cent. The erythrocytes are small and hypochromic, and there are poikilocytes. The reticulocyte count is somewhat diminished. There is leucocytosis and slight neutrophilia (70 to 75 per cent).

Anemia, Myxedema.—

The red count varies from 3,000,000 to 4,000,000, with hemoglobin percentage of 50 to 60 per cent, without signs of regeneration in the circulating blood. The hemoglobin may be as low as 40 per cent.

Anemia, Nutritional, Iron Deficiency.—

The iron deficiency anemias are chlorosis, idiopathic hypochromic anemias, hypochromic anemias of childhood, and hypochromic anemias of pregnancy. See under separate headings.

Anemia, Nutritional, Macrocytic.—

Although very low red counts (below 1,000,000) have been recorded, the majority of cases show erythrocyte counts of 2,000,000 or slightly lower, with hemoglobin decreasing proportionately in most cases. The mean corpuscular hemoglobin concentration varies between 33 and 37 per cent, so that the anemia is usually normochromic. The erythrocytes are macrocytic, between 100 and 150 cubic microns. The Price-Jones curve is shifted to the right but ends to retain its normal shape and is not usually a low spread-out curve like hat in pernicious anemia. There is usually polychromasia and anisocytosis, but to a slight degree. Normoblasts are sometimes found, but not megaloblasts. Reticulocyte counts are about 5 per cent in the hemolytic form, and about 1 or 2 per cent in the other forms.

The white count is usually normal or slightly increased. There may be a slight relative lymphocytosis.

There are no true hemoglobinized megaloblasts in the bone marrow, but the young basophilic primitive red cells without hemoglobin and with finely stippled, highly staining nuclei (often referred to as megaloblasts) are considerably increased in numbers.

Anemia, Nutritional, Macrocytic, Due to Deficient Absorption of the Pernicious Anemia Factor.—

The red count is usually about 3,000,000 to 4,100,000, with hemoglobin values of 70 to 75 per cent. The white count is 6,000 to 8,000 per cubic millimeter.

Anemia, Nutritional, Macrocytic, Due to Deficiency of the Antianemia Principle or Pernicious Anemia Factor.—

The red count is usually below 2,000,000 and may be as low as 500,000 (Clerch Rius). The hemoglobin is not lowered proportionately to the erythrocytes and may be 50 to 70 or 75 per cent. The color index is above 1.0, usually between 1.30 and 1.50 or more. The mean corpuscular hemoglobin concentration is more than 30 μg. The red cell diameter is 8.5 to 9 microns. The mean corpuscular volume is more than 94 cubic microns, about 110 to 130 cubic microns. Volume index is above 1.0, usually about 1.15 to 1.60. This is a macrocytic hyperchromic anemia.

There is anisocytosis and macrocytosis, with the Price-Jones curve flat. Normoblasts, erythroblasts, and erythrocytic nuclear remnants are found. Cabot ring bodies and Howell-Jolly bodies are often present. The diagnostic elements are the megalocytes and megaloblasts.

The white count is low, between 2,000 and 4,000. When the count is low, the disease is serious; when it begins to rise, there is remission and good response to treatment. Neutrophile count is 30 to 40 per cent or more (neutropenia), with an eosinophilia, and absence of basophiles; lymphocytosis of 40 to 60 per cent or higher. The monocyte count is low, about 0.1 per cent. Myelocytes have been reported in some cases, 0.5 to 1.5 per cent. The blood platelet count is low but not below 40,000.

The bone marrow is megaloblastic. There is increased hemolysis with increase of bilirubin in the blood and urobilin in the urine.

Anemia, Pellagra.—See Pellagra.

Anemia, Pernicious, of Pregnancy.—

The red blood cell picture is the same as that in pernicious anemia, but the white picture shows leucocytosis and neutrophilia.

Anemia, Scurvy.—See Scurvy.

Anemia, Sprue—See Sprue.

Anemia, Vitamin C. Deficiency.—

See also Scurvy.

The red count varies from 3,000,000 to 4,200,000 or less, some cases having counts of only 1,000,000. The hemoglobin is from 60 to 75 per cent, but it has been reported as low as 40 to 50 per cent. Normoblasts, as well as increased reticulocyte counts, may be found. There is no change in the white count or in the blood platelets. At times there is a slight decrease in the counts of each, but not excessive. Bleeding time, clotting time, and clot retraction are normal.

Balantidiasis.—

Uncomplicated cases show essentially normal blood pictures.

Bartonellosis.—

(1) **Oroya Fever.**—There is a very rapid, progressive, severe anemia from the beginning of the disease. The red count is commonly as low as 1,000,000 or even less, within 3 to 5 days of the onset of the disease, although these figures are more often seen at the end of 1 or 2 weeks. Sometimes there may be a loss of as many as 300,000 erythrocytes per cubic millimeter of blood in 24 hours. The hemoglobin may be reduced to as low as 20 to 30 per cent within 2 weeks. The color index is often above 1.0. Probably no other condition but hemorrhage produces such a rapid fall in the erythrocyte and hemoglobin figures. The volume, diameter, and thickness of the red cells are greater than normal. The mean corpuscular hemoglobin concentration is often low, but it may be normal. The blood volume is increased, especially when the anemia is very pronounced. The anemia is often macrocytic, with anisocytosis and poikilocytosis quite marked. Large numbers of reticulocytes and normoblasts are found in the circulating blood, and at times megaloblasts, and all the bizarre types of cells which are seen in pernicious anemia are observed in the circulating blood.

There are, as a rule, large numbers of Bartonellae in the red cells, the number varying. Sometimes 99 per cent of the erythrocytes are infected (Groot), and it is possible to find 10 to 15 organisms in a single cell, but only in extreme cases. Polychromatic erythrocytes and macrocytes are less infected, and only in exceptional cases, with a very high degree of parasitism, are the microorganisms found in normoblasts. Bartonellae may at times be seen in the cytoplasm of monocytes.

The bone marrow is hyperplastic, megaloblastic.

Leucopenia may be observed at the beginning of the disease, although in uncomplicated cases the number of leucocytes is customarily normal (Hurtado, 1938, cited by Groot). According to some authors, the leucocyte count is increased and may be as high as 20,000.

There is no typical differential count, although it is possible to find either a very slight lymphocytosis or more commonly an increase in the polymorphonuclear cells. Juveniles are quite common. The eosinophiles disappear and myelocytes and myeloblasts may be present.

The sedimentation rate is greatly accelerated, with rates of 100 and 172 millimeters in 1 hour with the Westergren method. The formol-gel test is sometimes positive, as well as the flocculation of serum globulin with distilled water (Groot, Mayoral, and Martínez, 1941, cited by Groot). Autoagglutination is rare but sometimes occurs.

(2) **Verruga Peruana or Benign Type.**—There is a simple anemia.

Beriberi.—

According to Napier (1946), there is often a marked macrocytic anemia which may respond to thiamin chloride injections. The lymphocytes are below normal, and in the infantile form small lymphocytes may be absent.

Blackwater Fever.—See Malaria, Blackwater Fever.

Blackwidow Spider Bite.—

The white count is slightly elevated and there is a slight neutrophilia.

Blastomycosis, South American.—

The blood picture is characteristic of infections in the advanced cases, with leucocytosis, neutrophilia, rarely eosinophilia, anemia, and accelerated sedimentation rate. The sedimentation rate increases as the case develops, decreases and returns to normal with regression of the lesions. There are no changes in the blood at the beginning of the disease.

Blood Dyscrasias Due to Arsenical Drugs.—

Three types have been recognized: thrombocytopenia, granulocytopenia, and aplastic anemia.

Bothriocephalic Anemia.—See Diphyllobothrium Anemia.

Brucellosis.—

Mild anemia of the macrocytic hyperchromic type is present. The anemia is related to the general status of the patient, especially with respect to the intensity and persistence of the febrile reaction. Red cell counts as low as 3,000,000 have been recorded, but the count is seldom below 2,000,000 in uncomplicated cases.

In acute brucellosis there is leucopenia. In chronic brucellosis, there is either leucopenia, moderate leucocytosis, or normal leucocyte counts. Lymphocytosis is a striking and constant feature of the blood picture in all of the manifestations of brucellosis. This is true in both percentage values and in absolute numbers of lymphocytes, and there is an unusually high proportion of immature lymphocytes. The polymorphonuclear leucocytes may be reduced in absolute numbers, with increase in monocytes.

There are no characteristic changes, of diagnostic importance, in the morphology and other characteristics of the white and red blood cells, although a marked stab shift is usually noted.

The sedimentation rate is usually not high except when regional complications are present.

Chagas' Disease or Schizotrypanosis.—

(1) **Chagas' Disease.**—Diagnosis by laboratory methods is based on finding the trypanosome in the blood by direct examination of fresh blood between cover glass and slide. This examination is particularly advised when the disease occurs in nursing infants, for the number of parasites found in the circulating blood is quite high. The thick film examination is of greater value in examining the blood of older children and adults. The examination should be repeated periodically or every day.

A high monocytosis is suspicious of this disease, and, as a rule, *consistent lymphocytosis,* with hypoeosinophilia. The return of the eosinophiles to the blood picture is a sign that the patient is improving.

(2) **Chagomas of Inoculation.**—In children there is a high monocytosis; at other ages, there is a very high lymphocytosis, accompanied by a more or less marked eosinophilia. This may occur in the first stage, or primary period (Mazza).

Chlorosis.—

The red count is 3,500,000 to 4,000,000, with hemoglobin from 35 to 40 per cent, or up to 50 per cent. There is marked anisocytosis, poikilocytosis, and microcytosis, with great increase in reticulocytes. The color index is very low, between 0.4 to 0.7. There is marked polychromasia and at times basophilic punctation in the stained film. The ratio of plasma to erythrocytic volume is increased (low hematocrit) with increase in the total blood volume. The blood platelets are greatly increased in number. Lymphocytosis is commonly found, although the white count is not characteristically high.

Cholera.—

Due to the great loss of fluid from the blood vessels and tissues of the body (hemoconcentration), the red count and hemoglobin are very high. The red cell count may be increased to 7,000,000 or 8,000,000. The white count may be as high as 15,000 to 30,000, rarely 50,000. The monocytes are increased. but there is a decrease in the number of lymphocytes. There is an increase in the specific gravity of the blood—1.060 to 1.065. The alkalinity is lowered.

Chromoblastomycosis.—

There is no characteristic blood picture, or any hematologic change due to the presence of the fungus in the tissues.

Coccidioidal Granuloma.—

There is a moderate leucocytosis, around 15,000. Eosinophiles are sometimes above normal. There is a secondary anemia.

Colorado Tick Fever.—

There is a markedly reduced white blood cell count, with a shift to the left of the neutrophiles. The blood picture is similar to that of dengue.

Beginning with the onset of symptoms, there is a progressive decrease in the number of leucocytes which usually reaches the lowest point at the begin-ing of the second attack. Typically the white blood cell count falls to be-ween 2,000 and 3,000 per cubic millimeter, although one as low as 1,200 has een recorded (Florio, Stewart, and Murrage, 1944). All of the leucocytes re reduced in absolute numbers except the monocytes. There is a definite hift to the left in the neutrophiles. It is common for the stab cells to out-umber the segmented forms when the count is lowest. Four to seven days ollowing clinical recovery, the white blood cell count and the differential ount have returned to normal.

Cysticercosis.—

Not much importance has been attached to the eosinophilia, since it is found in only approximately 10 per cent of the cases.

Dengue.—

Dengue does not cause anemia. The red count is usually normal, decreasing at most to 4,500,000 on the fifth or sixth day. There may be mild hematoxic signs such as anisocytosis and poikilocytosis. The hemoglobin and color index remain normal.

One of the most constant features is the marked leucopenia. The count varies between 1,000 and 4,000 on the fifth day, although in most cases it is not below 3,000. Cases have been observed with counts as high as 5,000.

There is a relative monocytosis which may be as high as 14 per cent. The differential count is characterized by a marked left shift, with juveniles and stabs increased beginning on the third day. The eosinophiles are decreased but increase during convalescence. The differential count and the white count return to normal during convalescence. No pathologic white blood cells have ever been observed in the blood stream.

The blood picture is characterized by constant leucopenia, early and marked reduction in the number of segmented neutrophiles, increase in small lymphocytes, gradual increase in the number of large lymphocytes, slight increase in eosinophiles during convalescence.

Dermatomycosis.—

The blood often shows marked eosinophilia. The eosinophilia is marked in chronic cases, and anemia may be present.

Diphyllobothrium Anemia.—

Not all patients who harbor the worm show a severe anemia. The anemia is severe in those cases in which it develops. The red blood cell count usually decreases to 2,000,000, at times to 500,000, or less. Hemoglobin is also low. The color index is usually normal, or it may vary from 0.94 to 1.34. There is marked anisocytosis with microcytes as small as 3.7 microns and macrocytes up to 16 microns. Poikilocytosis, with presence of normoblasts and megaloblasts, and a reduction in the number of blood platelets, is noted. There usually is leucopenia with lymphocytosis and very rarely eosinophilia. The red blood cells have a slight tendency toward clumping. In some cases, the anemia may be indistinguishable from pernicious anemia.

It has not been possible to date to explain correctly the mechanism by which this anemia is produced in the very small percentages of patients out of all those who harbor this parasite (1 in 5,000 or 10,000), since it occurs in only limited foci of infestation (Finland). Although there is a toxin produced by the parasite which produces severe anemia in dogs, this does not explain why this anemia is produced in only a very small percentage of the people who harbor the parasite.

The most satisfactory explanation seems to be that which attributes the anemia to constitutional factors of the parasitized individuals (special fragility of the bone marrow), as well as to the race and the hygienic and social conditions under which these individuals live. Some authors attribute this anemia to specific strains or races of the parasite, while others believe that only when the parasite is sick or dead can the toxins be liberated and that these are absorbed by the intestines of the host and provoke the anemia.

Distomatosis.—See Fascioliasis.

Dysentery, Amebic.—See Amebiasis.

Dysentery, Bacillary.—See Shigellosis.

Echinococcosis.—

Eosinophilia is usually present.

Edema, Nutritional, and Epidemic Dropsy.—

The erythrocytes are but slightly reduced, but the hemoglobin is markedly reduced. There is usually a distinct normocytic hypochromic anemia. The white count may be reduced in the early stages, but usually there is an elevated white count, with a left shift of the neutrophiles. The lymphocytes and eosinophiles are relatively increased. "Toxic cells" have been described, leucocytes with vacuolization and basophilic granulation. The sedimentation rate is considerably increased.

Eosinophilia, Tropical.—See Tropical Eosinophilia.

Fascioliasis Hepatica.—

(1) **In Children.**—Distomatosis by *Fasciola hepatica* in children is accompanied by eosinophilia. The persistent eosinophilia is considered of great importance in diagnosis. Complications by infections are found, with increase in the polymorphonuclear leucocytes, leucocytosis, no decrease in the eosinophiles. Sellek has observed eosinophilias of 15, 35, and 40 per cent, with a decided febrile setting.

(2) **In Adults.**—In massive infestations, the general status of the host is eventually affected: the patient loses weight, becomes weak, and finally anemic. Eosinophilia usually accompanies the anemic condition even during the acute septic crisis of the disease.

There is leucocytosis with eosinophilia. The leucocyte count may be as high as 30,000. The eosinophile count may be as high as 48 per cent.

With every acute septic crisis, there is high fever, marked leucocytosis, usually due to eosinophilia, and polynucleosis, the intensity of which varies inversely with that of the eosinophilia. According to Bercovitz, when a secondary infection is superimposed upon the previous condition, the eosinophilic reaction changes and the differential blood picture assumes that of the secondary infection.

(3) **In Animals.**—In animals, the general intoxication, in cases of massive infestation, produces cachexia, anemia, and edema.

Fasciolopsiasis.—

According to some authorities, there seems to be no alteration of the erythrocytes; according to others, there is a slight macrocytic (nutritional) anemia, unless there has been much blood loss, when the picture may be confused by a microcytic tendency (Napier). Approximately 43 per cent of the cases show leucocytosis with eosinophilia and neutropenia. At times there is lymphocytosis.

Filariasis, Bancroftian.—

There is no characteristic change in the blood picture. Eosinophilia is frequently present, but this may be due to concomitant helminthic infestation.

Folic Acid Deficiency.—

See also Anemia, Nutritional, and Sprue.

Since it is not possible at the present time to determine the quantity of folic acid present in the blood and urine, one must resort to the blood picture to establish a diagnosis of possible deficiency of this factor. When blood changes of the hyperchromic macrocytic anemic type are present, treatment by use of folic acid is instituted.

Haemonchus Contortus Infections.—

Infections by this parasite can give rise, in man, to secondary anemia, which may be easily mistaken for the anemia of necatoriasis. Brumpt and Joyeux (cited by Gradwohl and Kourí, 1948) have demonstrated that an aqueous extract of the parasite is hemolytic.

Hemolytic Anemia.—

Acute hemolytic anemia may be due to malaria and other protozoa; Bartonella; bacterial toxins; chemical agents such as phenylhydrazine, saponin, trinitrotoluene, dinitrobenzol, aniline, amido and nitro compounds of phenol, benzol, toluol, lead, etc.; snake venoms; extensive burns; mismatched transfusions of isoagglutinogens A and B; intragroup hemolytic transfusion reactions; and hemolytic disease of the newborn. All cases of hemolytic anemia have in common the symptom of blood destruction.

In general, free hemoglobin and other blood pigments are found in the blood plasma, and hemoglobinuria is seen. The chief pigment found is methemoglobin. Hemoglobinemia, methemalbuminemia, and bilirubinemia are found in the plasma in all hemoglobinurias, depending on the rapidity and severity of the blood destruction. The bone marrow in acute hemolytic anemia is hyperplastic. For further details, see Gradwohl (1948).

Histoplasmosis.—

In septicemic infections, the number of both red and white cells is decreased. In generalized infections, the bone marrow is almost invariably involved.

Hookworm Disease (Ancylostomiasis and Necatoriasis).—

Hookworm disease is accompanied by anemia which may reach the most severe stages quickly, but in other instances slowly. Usually it appears within 10 to 20 weeks after infection.

It has been estimated that for each 12 worms there is a decrease of 1 per cent in the hemoglobin; thus, 240 worms will cause 20 per cent reduction, or, in other words, the hemoglobin will drop from 95 to 75 per cent. A thousand worms will reduce the hemoglobin to approximately 15 per cent. Kourí has noted that cases with more than 1,000 Necators usually show hemoglobin values as low as 12 to 15 per cent, less than 1,000,000 erythrocytes, and generalized edema.

The anemia seems to be caused by chronic loss of blood, frequently associated with an iron deficiency, or a state of chronic malnutrition. It has been estimated that about 0.67 c.c. of blood is extracted daily by each worm that has recently been implanted in the human intestine. After several months or years, it is possible that *Necator americanus* does not extract more than 0.2 to 0.5 c.c. of blood daily. After the parasite has left the original site of implantation to attach itself to another more healthy portion of the intestinal mucosa, the blood still flows for some time from the abandoned lesion. If this 0.67 c.c. quantity of blood extracted daily by a single parasite is multiplied by the thousands of worms which may be present, and repeated day after day over a long period of time, it is easy to understand the mechanism by which secondary anemias, so frequently seen in hookworm disease, are produced. If parasitized individuals are well nourished and if liver extracts, iron, and vitamins are administered in large enough quantities, no anemia occurs (Gradwohl and Kourí, 1948).

In advanced stages, the number of erythrocytes may be less than 1,000,000, and the hemoglobin content may be as low as 17 per cent or less. There are, however, some cases with hyperglobulia and high hemoglobin percentage, perhaps due to stimulation of the hematopoietic organs by the hematoxins absorbed.

Three types or stages of blood changes have been observed in hookworm anemia: (1) where the bone marrow is able to maintain the equilibrium between blood loss and production, and there is no manifest anemia; (2) where the production is unable to counterbalance the blood loss, and a hypochromic anemia results; (3) where the bone marrow is exhausted, and aplastic anemia develops.

In the first type, there is eosinophilia and reticulocytosis in the peripheral blood, and despite a continuous loss of blood, increased cell production in the bone marrow is sufficient to maintain equilibrium between blood formation and blood loss, so that in the early stage of the disease, real anemia does not develop if food and living conditions are adequate.

The second type shows anemia, microcytosis, hypochromia, eosinophilia, and reticulocytosis in the peripheral blood and eosinophilia and marked erythropoietic activity of the bone marrow.

The third type is characterized by severe anemia, with the erythropoietic activity of the bone marrow almost nil. There is so-called panmyelophthisis with low cell count, relative lymphocytosis, and lack of erythropoietic, granulocytopoietic, and thrombocytopoietic activity of the bone marrow.

Hookworm anemia usually shows, at the onset, a leucocytosis of 17,000 per cubic millimeter, with eosinophilia predominating. The leucocyte count later drops to normal or below normal, with a moderate eosinophilia, which remains high for some months. In severe cases, there is usually total absence of eosinophiles (aneosinophilia).

Infantile Cirrhosis of the Liver (Chaudhuri, R.N.).—

There is a very distinct microcytic anemia and a pronounced leucocytosis, between 15,000 and 20,000, with normal differential count.

Infectious Jaundice.—See Weil's Disease.

Kala-Azar.—See Leishmaniasis.

Leishmaniasis.—

(1) **American.**—There is a marked increase in large mononuclear cells.

(2) **Cutaneous.**—There is usually no diminution in the red blood cell count. There is a slight increase in mononuclear cells (monocytes and lymphocytes) in some cases, more marked if the blood specimen is taken from the area, or near it, where the lesion exists. In nonulcerative cutaneous leishmaniasis, in the Sudan, the blood has usually shown leucopenia and eosinophilia. In Brazil, Mazza and Nino reported, in South American leishmaniasis, an average of 41 per cent mononuclear cells, of which 36 per cent were lymphocytes. In blood taken from the region of the sore, there were 45 lymphocytes and 3 monocytes. The peripheral blood showed an average of 6 per cent eosinophiles.

(3) **Visceral (Kala-Azar).**—Anemia is seen as a rule only in the latter stages of the disease, although some degree of anemia is usually present. The red cell count is fairly constantly 3,000,000; it rarely falls below 2,500,000 in less than 6 months from the beginning of the fever. The hemoglobin usually falls in proportion to the drop in the red count. The erythrocytes in the blood film are usually slightly macrocytic and hyperchromic. Nucleated red cells, and cells containing nuclear fragments, often are present. Polychromatic erythrocytes are found, and the reticulocyte count is slightly above normal, about 2 to 4 per cent. The resistance of the red cells to hemolysis in hypotonic saline solutions is decreased.

The most characteristic change in the blood picture is the marked leucopenia with decrease in granulocytes. There is a high monocytosis. The leucocyte count is usually below 4,000, often 3,000, and in cases which have persisted for a month, often less than 2,000. A leucocytosis does not necessarily exclude the possibility of kala-azar, since septic complications may be present which increase the white count, and even without complication, the white count may be occasionally above 10,000, according to Napier. The normal ratio between leucocytes and erythrocytes is altered, so that, instead of being 1:750 or 1:666, the ratio is often 1:1,000 or 1:1,500.

Agranulocytosis has been described in kala-azar. The decrease in the leucocytes is entirely in the granulocytic elements, which may drop below 1,000. Eosinophiles are often absent and usually are not found in percentages higher than 1 or 2 per cent.

There is both an absolute and a relative increase in the large mononuclear cells, ⅔ of which are histiocytes. There is a marked shift to the left in the differential count. The platelet count is usually below 200,000.

The sedimentation rate is very much increased, the mean reading with the Westergren method being 68.3 ± 11.2 mm. in 77 mixed cases.

Examination of the peripheral blood reveals parasites in the leucocytes, but when they are scarce, the blood must be concentrated (see Chapter 10).

Parasites may also be found in sternal marrow obtained by puncture.

Leprosy.—

The predominant feature of the blood in leprosy is an anemia. Leucocyte counts are not increased; eosinophilia is not common.

Loaiasis.—

There is frequently marked eosinophilia, from 50 to 70 per cent, according to Villet.

Lymphogranuloma Venereum.—

The blood changes in this disease are a leucocytosis above 10,000 and a very minor degree of anemia. There are neutrophilia, lymphopenia, and monocytopenia in most cases. A few cases show a mild eosinophilia, and sometimes, but rarely, a neutrophilic myelocytosis.

Malaria.—

Anemia is always present. It is caused both by direct destruction of erythrocytes due to the development of the parasites within them and also by toxic influences. The blood becomes thin and watery. There is oligocytosis, a lowered hemoglobin content, and a lowered color index. Polychromasia is usually marked, and coarse basophilic punctation is a frequent blood finding. The blood count may fall to 3,000,000 per cubic millimeter. The reticulocyte count is markedly increased. In cases with severe anemia, normoblasts are found. There may be nuclear spheres, marginal granules, and other unspecific indicators of anemia. Parasites have been observed in polychromatic and stippled erythrocytes, and even in normoblasts.

When schizogony is completed, pigment is released into the blood stream. This can be seen in the form of granules in the blood films and in the thick drop. This pigment may be found usually in the large monocytes or phagocytes, but we have observed them in all 4 types of neutrophiles (Schilling classification). The pigment is yellow or brown and light-refracting. It is usually arranged in characteristic clumps. It originates from devoured or phagocytized parasites and is important in detecting malarial infection when no parasites are found.

During the pyrexial period, there is a leucocytosis with marked regenerative shift, neutrophilia, and decrease in the number of eosinophiles. Following this period, during the afebrile period, there is leucopenia, marked monocytosis, and relative lymphocytosis, with slight eosinophilia. In severe relapsing cases, there is a continuous stab shift. In chronic cases, there are low white counts, monocytosis, and lymphocytosis. The white count rises rapidly, but only temporarily, shortly after an open or latent attack. In this condition, parasites are scarce.

In clinically suspected malaria where no parasites are found in the blood, one is led to the diagnosis of malaria if polychromasia is present as 2 or 3 plus in the thick drop, if basophilic punctation is found, and if lymphocytes and monocytes are markedly increased, especially if quinine has been administered.

All varieties of malaria show similar blood pictures, but acute falciparum malaria may show a higher neutrophilia with a regenerative shift to myelocytes.

Blackwater Fever.—

In blackwater fever, the red count may drop to 1,500,000 and the hemoglobin to 10 per cent. With improvement, this is soon followed by a very marked regenerative normoblastic blood picture. Upon continuation or onset of new attacks, megaloblastic or aregenerative (reverse) blood pictures occur. This is an unfavorable symptom. Deaths have occurred in blackwater fever due to suppression of erythropoieses. Parasites usually disappear temporarily during an attack of blackwater fever.

Mycetoma.—

In most of the advanced cases, there is an increase in the sedimentation rate, moderate leucocytosis, 10,000 to 12,000, neutrophilia, and decrease in the number of red blood cells.

Necatoriasis.—See Hookworm Disease.

Onchocerciasis.—

There is a slight anemia and a marked eosinophilia. The eosinophile count has been reported as varying from 10 to 40 per cent. The eosinophilia decreases when the lesions are disappearing.

Oroya Fever.—See Bartonellosis.

Pellagra-Type of Anemia.—

The blood may be normal in mild cases. There is an anemia in all moderate or severe cases. The erythrocyte count varies from 3,000,000 to 4,000,000, with hemoglobin from 50 to 75 per cent. The erythrocytes are usually normocytic and hypochromic. In hypochromic cases, the hemoglobin usually varies from 50 to 60 per cent.

Hypoleucocytosis with slight neutropenia and mild eosinophilia have been observed.

The blood picture is not characteristic.

Phlebotomus Fever or Pappataci Fever.—

The most important change in the blood picture is the marked leucopenia; the white count varies between 2,500 and 4,000 per cubic millimeter. There is a marked stab shift, with lymphocytosis, and a decrease in the segmented cells.

Plague.—

The red cells and hemoglobin show no reduction at the beginning of the disease. A moderate secondary anemia may occur in later stages of the disease. The leucocyte count may increase as high as 20,000 to 25,000, except in the mildest cases, during the first 3 days of the disease, and counts up to 40,000 have been reported.

There is neutrophilia with a very marked left shift. The blood platelets are increased. There is a neutrophilia with lymphopenia. Plague bacilli may sometimes be present in the blood in such numbers that a simple microscopic examination of a stained specimen suffices for their detection.

Psittacosis (or Ornithosis).—

There is no marked change in the blood picture in psittacosis. The leucocyte count is usually normal or subnormal. Leucopenia is found in only 25 per cent of the patients (Meyer). Leucocytosis occurs late in the acute phase or in early convalescence. At the height of the disease there is a distinct left shift with lymphopenia. The sedimentation rate is accelerated at the beginning of the disease. The blood picture returns to normal with improvement.

Ratbite Fever.—

(1) **Infection by Spirillum Minus (Sodoku).**—A certain degree of anemia is an almost constant finding. It may be marked, with a decrease in the hemoglobin. The red count decreases. In rare cases only is there an increase in the number of red cells.

Leucocytosis varies between 10,000 and 20,000, although there are cases with white counts of 40,000 during the febrile periods. In afebrile periods, the white count may drop as low as 4,000. During the febrile period, the white count rises again. This is a fairly regular observation.

The neutrophiles increase as high as 82 per cent. There may be a rather high eosinophilia. Variations of these counts may be due to other conditions which may be present in some cases.

(2) **Streptobacillary Infections Due to Ratbite.**—The blood changes are practically the same as in infection by *Spirillum minus*. There is a moderate leucocytosis which in some cases may rise, with increase in neutrophiles, and eosinophilia.

Relapsing Fever (Tropical).—

There is a leucocytosis of about 10,000 to 20,000 during the febrile stage. Examination of the blood should be made the first day of fever. The leucocytosis is succeeded later by leucopenia. There is an increase in the monocyte count, and in the febrile period a polynucleosis.

Respiratory Scleroma (Rhinoscleroma).—

A leucocytosis has been reported in 10 per cent of the cases, and a left shift in 60 per cent. Severe anemia seldom occurs. The sedimentation rate is sometimes accelerated. In the final stages, in cases with stenosis, emphysema, and emaciation, anemia and finally cachexia are not infrequently found (Kouwenaar).

Rhinoscleroma.—See Respiratory Scleroma.

Rhinosporidiosis.—

There are no definite changes in the blood picture characteristic of this disease.

Rickettsiosis.—See under each disease.

Rift Valley Fever.—

There is usually a leucopenia with particularly a neutropenia. The white count may be below 3,000. There are occasional myelocytes and polyblasts with vacuolated nuclei (Findlay).

Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever.—

The anemia has been described both as mild and severe, with marginal corpuscles. There is a leucocytosis of 15,000 to 25,000, which decreases to about 10,000 after a few days.

The differential count shows a monocytosis with a decrease in the number of eosinophiles.

Salmonellosis.—

See also Typhoid Fever.

Anemia is not rare in salmonellosis. Cases with fever show most commonly a decrease in the number of red blood cells and of hemoglobin. The lowest findings are frequently recorded during the third or fourth week of the disease.

A slight increase in the number of white blood cells is not unusual in the earliest days of salmonellosis. Frequently 8,000 to 11,000 leucocytes are found during this period.

Leucopenia is the rule during the later course of febrile salmonellosis. There is a decrease in the polymorphonuclear cells, with a relative increase in the lymphocytes. The number of white blood cells is restored to normal by the end of the sickness.

Perforations of the intestine, suppurative processes, secondary infections, and other similar conditions may cause leucocytosis (Felsenfeld).

Schistosomiasis Haematobia.—

In infections with *Schistosoma haematobium,* the number of eosinophiles is increased, usually to 10 to 50 per cent of the total count. The number of neutrophiles, lymphocytes, and monocytes shows considerable variation.

Schistosomiasis Japonica.—

Severe anemia is common in the chronic form.

In the acute form, there is an extreme and progressive eosinophilia, as many as 9 to 95 per cent of the leucocytes being eosinophiles; the average count is about 50. The total white count may vary from 9,000 to 30,000. The eosinophilia does not necessarily account for the entire rise in the white count. There is little correlation between the severity of the disease and the degree of eosinophilia.

Anemia in the course of the acute disease is unusual in well-nourished people but common in chronic severe cases.

In the chronic disease, the eosinophilia decreases and loses its significance in the presence of the many other parasites usually found in endemic areas. (Bang.)

Schistosomiasis Mansoni.—

During the febrile stage, there is leucocytosis and eosinophilia.

During the intestinal stage, some cases with severe anemia have been reported, but the percentage of such cases is low. There seems to be no definite etiologic connection between the anemia and the schistosomiasis, and it is doubtful if anemia can be considered a consistent manifestation.

During the visceral stage, the eosinophilia usually, but not always, persists, and leucopenia is characteristic.

There are, however, no changes in the blood picture which are characteristic of this disease.

Scurvy.—

See also Anemia, Vitamin C Deficiency.

Although anemia is always present in scurvy, experimental work has failed to establish this as being due to ascorbic acid deficiency alone. The red count in early cases is from 3,000,000 to 4,000,000 and the hemoglobin relatively lower. If hemorrhages occur later, the red count may be very low. One case has been reported with a red count of 557,000 and one with a count of 370,000. Nucleated reds may be present in considerable numbers, principally normoblasts, but microblasts and megaloblasts have been found. In such cases, the blood film resembles pernicious anemia, except that the color index is low, and the erythrocytes are not typical of macrocytic anemia. The white count is often increased, but not always. Counts of 20,000 to 50,000 have been recorded. There is a relative decrease in granulocytes with an increase in large lymphocytes and monocytes. Some workers record leucopenia in scurvy.

Shigellosis (Bacillary Dysentery).—

(1) **In Adults.**—There may be a leucocytosis in the beginning, principally in severe cases, of as much as 30,000, but the leucocytosis usually does not

rise above 15,000. The white count decreases during the course of the disease, and in the later stages there may even be a slight leucopenia. During the acute attacks, there may be hemoconcentration, with an increase in the red count, but in later stages there is often a distinct anemia. In chronic bacillary dysentery, there is very frequently a macrocytic anemia of nutritional origin.

There is a relative increase in polymorphonuclears.

(2) **In Children.**—The majority of the patients show no anemia. This may be due to anhydremia usually seen in the patients. There is neutrophilia with a left shift, with myelocytes in 40 per cent of the cases. There is no eosinophilia or lymphocytosis, but there is found an increase in the plasma cells. Monocytosis as high as 20 per cent is present in a large percentage of the cases. Degenerative changes of the neutrophiles is always present. The bone marrow shows the picture of an infection. The blood count differs in different patients.

Sleeping Sickness, African.—See Trypanosomiasis.

Spotted Fever.—See Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever.

Sprue.—

"We do not know of any means by which the blood of sprue could be distinguished from that of pernicious anemia; moreover, the bone marrow pictures of the two diseases are indistinguishable."—Suárez.

A number of textbooks and manuals have recorded a moderate microcytic anemia in the early stages of the disease, but we have never observed such cases. In the experience of Suárez, a diagnosis of acute sprue in the presence of a hypochromic microcytic anemia rarely proves correct.

The peripheral blood picture, in 150 cases, gave the following results: erythrocyte count, from 690,000 to 4,410,000, with an average of 2,710,000; hemoglobin, 2.4 Gm. to 14.8 Gm., with an average of 9.7 Gm., or 16.5 per cent to 102 per cent, with an average of 66 per cent; hematocrit, 10.5 mm. to 44 mm., with an average of 33.49 mm.; white count, 1,550 to 13,600, with an average of 5,280; color index, 0.64 to 2.2, with an average of 1.22; volume index, 1.0 to 2.3, with an average of 1.39; mean cell volume, 89 cubic microns to 220 cubic microns, with an average of 123.6; mean cell hemoglobin, 26 micrograms to 59 micrograms, with an average of 26.6 micrograms; mean cell hemoglobin concentration, 20 per cent to 45 per cent, with an average of 26.1 per cent.

In 23 cases, the color index was below 1.0, in 2 cases, as low as 0.70 and 0.64.

Hypersegmented neutrophiles in increased number have been described. The blood picture is that of a typical hyperchromic macrocytic anemia.

The sternal marrow usually shows a hyperplastic picture with an increase in megaloblasts, indistinguishable from pernicious anemia. The typical bone marrow may be modified in as short a time as 24 hours by administration of a potent liver preparation or of folic acid, and the effect may persist for weeks and even months.

For a detailed account of the differential counts on sternal marrow in sprue and also the reticulocyte response to liver therapy, refer to Chapter 66

Strongyloidiasis.—

There is usually a moderate secondary anemia. There is a slight eosinophilia, of about 8.6 per cent, occasionally higher. At times the eosinophilia is intense, and at such times should suggest the possibility of parasitism, especially by a worm. In severe strongyloidiasis, eosinophile counts have been reported as high as 82.6 per cent.

Taeniasis.—

Eosinophilia is frequent though not constant or specific in parasitism by *Taenia saginata.*

Trench Fever.—

There is a leucocytosis, seldom exceeding 20,000, with polymorphonuclear neutrophilia, which increases during the febrile periods, to regress later. In chronic cases, a relative mononucleosis may be seen. (Macchiavello.)

Trichinosis.—

The erythrocyte count may be increased early in the disease as a result of dehydration; later, there may be a mild anemia. The red count seldom falls below 3,000,000.

The majority of cases show a definite leucocytosis, the count varying from 10,000 to 20,000, although some individuals have a leucopenia. The leucocytosis is principally due to an increase in the eosinophiles, which in the differential count may be as high as 80 per cent (in 1 case recorded by Gradwohl, the percentage was 90). It is the presence of this eosinophilia which often arouses the thought of trichinosis or some other worm disease. Many workers feel that there is no definite correlation between the degree of infection and the percentage of eosinophiles; others believe that the eosinophilia varies directly with the muscle symptoms. The eosinophilia makes its appearance on the seventh or eighth day of infection, and progresses rapidly to a peak, but frequently exhibits considerable daily variations. After the peak is reached in about the fourth or fifth week, there is a steady decline over a period of months or even years. The peak is usually reached after the most severe symptoms of muscle invasion have passed. In severe cases, a rapid drop may occur just before fatal termination. Eosinophilia is not necessarily solely connected with trichinosis, since there is the same finding, but usually to a lesser degree, in other worm diseases, in bronchial asthma, burns, allergic states, myelogenous leucemia, scarlatina, certain skin diseases, liver therapy, etc. However, the presence of an eosinophilia associated with an acute illness characterized by a rise of temperature, suborbital edema, and evidence of muscle involvement, with or without gastrointestinal symptoms, is suggestive at least of trichinosis.

The neutrophiles may be reduced to as low as 6 per cent, the count varying according to the number of eosinophiles. The lymphocytes are often reduced, but they usually show an increase with the subsidence of the eosinophilia. Monocyte counts may show slight fluctuations.

Other hematologic findings are relatively normal, except for an increase in eosinophilic myelocytes in examination of sternal bone marrow and, possibly, a prolongation in blood coagulation time. The author has noted a left shift index in a number of cases.

Trichuris Trichiura Infestations.—

Although conditions similar to pernicious anemia in man have been produced in lower animals infested with large numbers of parasites characteristic for each species of animal, cases of severe anemia caused by *Trichuris trichiura* are rare in man. Eosinophilia is not very pronounced.

Trichostrongylus Colubriformis Infestation.—

If a great number of *Trichostrongylus colubriformis* develop in the intestines of man, they can produce a severe secondary anemia.

Tropical Eosinophilia.—

In tropical eosinophilia, there is a leucocytosis and high eosinophilia. The eosinophilia may reach 90 per cent and is higher than in any other disease except eosinophilic leucemia. The white blood cell count may be as high as 70,000, with 50 to 80 per cent eosinophiles.

Tropical Macrocytic Anemia.—See Anemia, Nutritional.

Trypanosomiasis, African.—

The blood picture shows secondary anemia, a gradual diminution of the red count and hemoglobin. Normoblasts are sometimes present. The red cells show characteristic rouleaux formation, the so-called autoagglutination, a point of considerable diagnostic value. Cold agglutinins have not been found. The white blood cell count is within normal limits in the beginning of the disease, or at times the white count is lowered. Leucocytosis occurs during the later stages of sleeping sickness. There is a relative increase of lymphocytes and of monocytes. At times there is a terminal increase in the polymorphonuclear leucocytes before death.

The thick drop method is used to find the trypanosomes in the blood.

Tsutsugamushi Disease.—See under Typhus.

Tularemia.—

The white count varies from 5,000 to 20,000, with usually a neutrophilia, but the counts are not of diagnostic value. The author found a very marked left nuclear shift, with 1 to 6 juveniles and 21 to 53 stabs, in a number of cases, with segmented neutrophiles reduced to 23 to 34 per cent. A mild to moderate degree of secondary anemia is an inconstant finding.

Typhoid Fever.—

See also Salmonellosis.

(1) **In Adults.**—Typhoid fever is characterized by leucopenia down to 3,000 to 5,000, and a left shift. The eosinophiles disappear at the beginning of the disease and do not reappear until the third week of infection. A very few

eosinophiles in the first stage speaks for a mild infection. Reappearance of the eosinophiles in the third stage of typhoid fever is a good prognostic factor. A relatively high neutrophilic percentage is found in the prodromal stages; as the disease becomes more pronounced there is neutropenia with lymphocytosis. A supervening neutrophilia is indicative of a possible complication, especially if there is a regenerative shift. A return of lymphocytes or a retrogression of the shift to the right in the third stage is a favorable symptom.

Unfavorable symptoms are a continued leucopenia and an increasing left shift.

The bone marrow shows very few myelocytes and many myeloblasts.

(2) **In Children.**—In severe forms, a moderate anemia of the hypochromic type frequently develops, due to a nutritional deficiency, especially when the diet is not sufficiently balanced and there is diarrhea.

At the end of the first week, approximately the sixth day, the number of leucocytes is between 6,000 and 8,000, occasionally from 4,000 to 5,000. An increase in the neutrophiles is observed, with a left shift, the stab count reaching a figure of 10, 15, or 20 per cent. Lymphocytes vary inversely to the neutrophile count, decreasing in number, while the eosinophiles disappear from the circulation. Before the sixth day, the hemogram offers no special information except that a slight leucocytosis may be noted, at times accompanied by the presence of an increased number of stabs. Leucocytoses have been observed in some cases, being 16,000 or higher, but these were in children with pyogenic manifestations such as purulent otitis.

The eosinophiles reappear during the final phase of the disease. This is important for a favorable prognosis. A few eosinophiles at the beginning of the disease indicates a light infection.

According to Naegeli, a disease accompanied by a high fever is never typhoid if the eosinophile count is normal, almost normal, or increased. Constant or permanent leucocytosis also reveals that the disease is not typhoid fever. In young patients, the white count very often is not reduced as much as in adults. Mild forms of the disease show slight leucopenia, while in severe cases the leucopenia is marked. A slight leucocytosis at the beginning of the disease, found by certain investigators, has been accepted by Naegeli.

The neutrophiles are moderately increased initially, later gradually decreasing, with stab cells predominating.

Typhus.—

(1) **Classical Typhus.**—Some changes in the blood picture are produced by changes in hemoconcentration, and are quite variable, in accordance with the dehydration or rehydration of the patient. But there are some definite alterations in the blood picture due to the disease itself. There is a moderate leucocytosis, from normal to 18,000 or 20,000, but the white count is usually between 10,000 and 14,000. This leucocytosis usually follows an initial phase of leucopenia. Neutrophilia with marked regenerative shift occurs, with 30 per cent or more of juvenile and stab forms. Leucocytosis and neutrophilia rise suddenly toward the end of the disease when there is hypopyrexia.

The eosinophiles disappear gradually and irregularly. The lymphocytes are in inverse ratio to the neutrophiles, but there is both an absolute and a relative increase after the first 7 days, and more at the end of the febrile period.

The monocytes increase between the eighth and sixteenth days to constitute 15 to 20 per cent of the white cells. Irritation and plasma cells also appear. Myelocytes vary in number, at times being quite numerous. This is the "gay" or "variegated" blood picture of Schilling.

The blood platelets decrease during the eruption and increase at the end of the febrile period. Macchiavello believes that the hematology of typhus requires further study.

(2) **Rural Typhus or Tsutsugamushi Fever or Scrub Typhus.**—Anemia is exceptional during the disease. There is leucopenia with lymphocytosis of 40 to 80 per cent, with a type of lymphocyte which recalls that seen in infectious mononucleosis. Leucopenia is not a constant finding, and there may even be a leucocytosis up to 20,000.

Ulcerative Colitis, Chronic Postdysenteric.—

There is no characteristic blood picture. There may be a tendency to microcytic anemia as a result of repeated blood loss from ulcers, or there may be a tendency to a nutritional macrocytic anemia from malabsorption with or without dietary restriction. Some patients develop a para-sprue condition. In uncomplicated ulcerative colitis, the hemoglobin may be almost normal. There often is a slight leucocytosis.

Uncinariasis.—See Hookworm Disease.

Verruga Peruana.—See Bartonellosis.

Weil's Disease.—

There is a severe anemia. The average red cell count in a fatal case was below 3,000,000. The blood platelets are markedly reduced. Coagulation time increases until it reaches 20 minutes in the usual infection.

The leucocyte count varies from 10,000 to 20,000 or higher, with a moderate neutrophilia. The icterus index is elevated, at times to about 300. A biphasic van den Bergh reaction is typical but not constant.

Yellow Fever.—

Leucopenia occurs during the early stages of the disease, up to the fifth or sixth day, reaching its lowest point at the end of the first week of illness. After this, there may be a slight leucocytosis. During the first few days there is lymphopenia, which gives place to granulopenia. Later there is a relative increase of large mononuclears.

A close study of hematologic changes is obviously a sine qua non in investigating practically all diseases which can be designated "tropical disorders."

References

Barber, M. A., Komp, W. H. W., and King, C. H.: 1929. Pub. Health Rep. **44**: 1300-1315.

Bercovitz, Z. Taylor: 1934. J. Lab. & Clin. Med. **19**: 438.

Bercovitz, Z. Taylor: 1944. Clinical Tropical Medicine, New York, Paul B. Hoeber, Inc.

Cabot, R. C.: 1903. J. M. Research **9**: 15.

Drinker, C. K.: 1936. J. Indust. Hyg. & Toxicol. **18**: 471.

Fennel, E. A.: 1944. Laboratory Digest **8**: 4.

Field, J. W.: 1941. Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **35**: 35.

Florio, L., Stewart, M. O., and Murrage, E. R.: 1944. J. Exper. Med. **80**: 165.

Forbes, W. H., Dill, D. B., and Hall, F. G.: 1940. Am. J. Physiol. **130**: 739.

Gradwohl, R. B. H.: 1948. Clinical Laboratory Methods and Diagnosis, ed. 4, St. Louis, The C. V. Mosby Co.

Gradwohl, R. B. H., and Kourí: 1948. Clinical Laboratory Methods and Diagnosis, ed. 4, vol. III, St. Louis, The C. V. Mosby Co.

Hinman, H. E., and Kampmeier, R. H.: 1937. Clinical Intestinal Amebiasis, Am. J. Trop. Med. **17**: 263-268.

Lillie, R. D.: 1943. J. Lab. & Clin. Med. **28**: 1872-1875.

Manson-Bahr, Sir P.: 1945. Manson's Tropical Diseases, Baltimore, Williams & Wilkins Co.

McGee, W.: Ambrose: 1932. South. M. J. **25**: 484.

Napier, L. Everhard: 1946. The Principles and Practice of Tropical Medicine, New York, The Macmillan Co.

Rubinstein, Michael A.: 1947. Personal communication. Scientific Exhibit, A. M. A. Convention, Atlantic City, N. J., June.

Schilling, Victor C. (translated by Gradwohl, R. B. H.): 1933. The Blood Picture (Das Blut Bild), St. Louis, The C. V. Mosby Co.

Shapiro, Shepard: 1944. Exper. Med. & Surg. **2**: 103.

Shapiro, S., Sherwin, B., Redish, M., and Campbell, H. A.: 1942. Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **50**: 85.

Silva da, S.: 1945. Significant Observations on Amebic Hepatitis, J. Trop. Med. **48**: 152-157.

Strong, Richard P.: 1942. Stitt's Diagnosis, Prevention and Treatment of Tropical Diseases, Philadelphia, The Blakiston Co.

Sundstroem, E. S.: 1926. Univ. of California Publications in Physiology, **6**: 1.

Talbott, J. H., Edwards, H. T., Dill, D. B., and Drastich, L.: 1933. Am. J. Trop. Med. **13**: 381.

Weiner, Murray, and Shapiro, S.: 1947. J. Lab. & Clin. Med. **32**: 8, 1037-1041.

Weiner, Murray, and Shapiro, S.: 1948. Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. **69**: 210.

CHAPTER 69

HISTOLOGIC TECHNIC IN THE TROPICS

PHILIP HERMAN HARTZ

The pathologist who works in the Tropics will encounter certain difficulties, such as high temperature, high humidity, and lack of trained personnel and of many conveniences which are easily available in more highly industrialized localities. Such difficulties may be reduced to a certain extent by the choice of appropriate apparatus and methods. These will certainly make the establishment of a laboratory more expensive, but this expense will be more than compensated for by higher efficiency and better results.

The problems of high temperature and humidity can, of course, be solved by air conditioning, but few governments or other agencies setting up a laboratory for pathologic histology will be inclined to appropriate the funds for such installations.

Since it is assumed that the reader has a certain familiarity with histopathologic technic, only those points and methods will be mentioned which are considered of special interest for work in the Tropics.

LABORATORY ROOMS

If possible, the laboratory rooms should have windows facing north or northeast (if north of the equator). Since dust interferes with proper tissue work, the windows must be made of glass and must be so constructed that only the upper third can be opened. The floors must be stone or tile. There should be many cabinets with well-fitting doors, which can be closed, in order to keep out cockroaches and other insects. For the storage of valuable material, metal cabinets are used.

FIXATION OF TISSUES

Good fixation is the primary and most important step in histopathology. Since post-mortem decomposition is very rapid in the Tropics, autopsies should be made as soon after death as possible. Prompt refrigeration of the bodies is very advantageous. For special cases a metal stomach tube can be inserted through the esophagus into the stomach immediately after death and the stomach and eventually the duodenum filled with a fixing fluid (Hartz et al., 1938). Surgical specimens should be fixed as soon as they are removed from the body. If possible, blocks no thicker than 3 mm. should be cut to ensure rapid penetration of the fixative and to prevent autolysis in the center of the block. Hollow organs, such as stomach and gall bladder, and cystic tumors should be opened prior to fixation; when the thickness of the wall exceeds 3 to 4 mm., thin blocks should be cut. This can easily be done with surgical scalpels with detachable blades (Bard-Parker, etc.), which still give very good service after having been used for surgery.

On no account should specimens be left lying about for a time; nor should large tumors or organs in their entirety or after a single incision be dropped into a fixative. Keeping tissues in physiologic saline will only further autolysis.

In surgical or gynecologic clinics a member of the staff should be made responsible for the proper fixation of the specimens, of course after being duly instructed by the pathologist.

Of almost equal importance is the choice of a proper fixative. Formalin, for many pathologists the one and only fixing fluid, cannot be considered as satisfactory. After fixation in formalin, paraffin embedding causes marked shrinkage, and the more delicate staining methods give, on sections of formalin-fixed tissues, only mediocre or bad results (Masson, 1923; Langeron, 1934; Hartz, 1945; Gomori, 1947). Neither can Zenker's fluid be recommended, since this fluid necessitates prolonged washing and, moreover, does not allow the cutting of frozen sections.

On the basis of an experience of many years, we recommend Bouin's fluid as the best universal fixative, especially for surgical material. It should be used in the modification of Masson (1923) or of Gomori (1947).

Masson's Modification of Bouin's Fluid

Water	30 parts
Formalin, U. S. P.	10 parts
0.5 to 2 per cent trichloracetic acid	2 parts
Picric acid in excess	

Gomori's Modification of Bouin's Fluid

Water	150 parts
Formalin, U. S. P.	50 parts
Glacial acetic acid	4 parts
Picric acid in excess	

The solutions can be used after one day, during which time they must be shaken from time to time. In well-stoppered bottles they keep indefinitely. Thin blocks of tissue are fixed in 18 to 24 hours; for very small specimens, for example, liver punctates, 45 minutes are sufficient. Specimens should not be left longer than 3 days in this fluid. After fixation in Bouin's solution the consistency of the tissues is better suited for the frozen section technic than after formalin fixation, and the microscopic details are better preserved (Hartz, 1945). Paraffin embedding causes only little shrinkage, and practically all staining methods give excellent results. When the preservation of the zymogen granules of the pancreas is important, the mixture with trichloracetic acid should be used.

For fixation of kidneys, lymph nodes, spleen, and bone marrow, we prefer a mixture of equal parts of Bouin's fluid and a saturated aqueous solution of mercuric chloride (Hartz and Hugenholtz, 1942). This mixture must be prepared immediately before use and should act for 12 to 24 hours.

Fixation in formalin is recommended only when the tisues cannot be embedded within a few days after fixation is completed, as is often the case during scientific expeditions in tropical regions. In these circumstances the preservation of Bouin-fixed material in alcohol or other fluids causes loss of its affinity for stains, so that fixation in 10 per cent neutral, buffered formaldehyde solution and storage in a 3 per cent neutral, buffered solution of formaldehyde is to be preferred. It is a matter of course that for optimal results thin blocks must be cut. Thin blocks should be left at least 48 hours in the 10 per cent solution.

Neutral Buffered Formaldehyde Solution (pH 7.0)

(According to Lillie, 1948)

37 to 40 per cent formaldehyde solution	100	c.c.
Water	900	c.c.
Acid sodium phosphate, monohydrate	4	Gm.
Anhydrous disodium phospate	6.5	Gm.

When $NaH_2PO_4 \cdot H_2O$ and $Na_2HPO_4 \cdot 12H_2O$ are used, 4.02 and 16.37 Gm., respectively, are needed.

After fixation in Bouin's fluid, in the Bouin-sublimate mixture, and in formalin buffered to pH levels above 6.0, no formaldehyde precipitations are formed. This obviates the necessity of using alcohol as a fixative for the demonstration of malaria pigment.

Fixation must always be done in tightly closed jars to prevent evaporation.

FROZEN SECTION TECHNIC

(See Chapter 70)

It has already been stated that excellent frozen sections can be obtained from Bouin-fixed material. When thin blocks are put in the fixing fluid and kept in the paraffin oven, frozen sections can be cut after one hour.

The freezing microtome should be equipped with a device for freezing the knife, since this facilitates the cutting of soft material or of tissue containing much fat. Especially useful is the large blockholder of Ten Berge (1925) which fills with solid carbon dioxide and prevents the quick thawing of the blocks of tissue.

To remove the picric acid, sections of Bouin-fixed material are treated for a few seconds with 50 per cent alcohol to which a few drops of a saturated aqueous solution of lithium carbonate have been added; they are afterward washed with water, stained on the slide with acidified Harris' hematoxylin, blued with tap water, and mounted in glycerin-gelatin. In this way, a diagnosis can often be established in 10 to 15 minutes. After fixation, the blocks must be embedded as soon as possible. They may be stored for a *few* days in 70 per cent alcohol.

EMBEDDING METHODS

For a pathologic laboratory the paraffin method is the most important. It allows the cutting of series of thin sections, which can be stained by almost every method. Moreover, paraffin-embedded tissues are easily stored and remain unchanged indefinitely.

In order to obtain good results with the paraffin method, careful dehydration is absolutely necessary. Insufficient dehydration causes marked shrinkage and distortion. Since it is often difficult to procure water-free alcohol, a fluid which removes not only the alcohol but also the last traces of water should be interposed between the alcohols and the paraffin solvent. For this purpose methyl benzoate containing one per cent of celloidin is highly recommended. The little delay caused by this method, originated by Pèterfi (1921), is largely compensated for by the excellent results.

The best paraffin solvent is benzol, which must be free from thiophene. Instead of pure paraffin we use Tissuemat (Fisher Scientific Company, Pittsburgh, Pa.) with a 56° to 58° C. melting point. When this is not available, pure paraffin with a melting point of 56° to 58° C., mixed with 5 per cent yellow beeswax, is recommended.

Tissues fixed in Bouin or in the Bouin-sublimate mixture are sufficiently hardened so that the use of graded alcohols in dehydration is superfluous.

The following sequence is proposed:

1. Alcohol, absolute (this alcohol may have been used once prior to this)	8 to 12 hours
2. Alcohol, absolute	8 to 12 hours
3. Alcohol, absolute	8 to 12 hours
4. Methyl benzoate containing 1 per cent celloidin, 3 to 5 changes	24 to 60 hours
5 Benzene, 3 changes	30 to 60 minutes
6. Tissuemat, 3 baths	24 to 30 hours

The various time periods can be changed according to the size and number of the blocks. Hardened tissues can be left 5 days in the methyl benzoate. Masson (1923b) recommends the use of 3 paraffin ovens, one for every bath, so that the last oven is entirely free from benzol vapors. Good results can also be obtained with 2 ovens. The solution of celloidin in methyl benzoate is prepared by dropping *dry* shreds of celloidin or Parlodion in methyl benzoate and heating this to 80° C., or by leaving it in the paraffin oven. The bottle should be turned over from time to time.

For special purposes the celloidin content of the methyl benzoate can be increased to 4 per cent so that a double embedding ensues. In this case the blocks are put through 2 baths of 1 per cent methyl benzoate, 1 bath of 3 per cent methyl benzoate, and 1 bath of 4 per cent methyl benzoate. They are then hardened in chloroform, which must be free from water, and embedded in paraffin after 2 baths in benzene.

MICROTOMES

For cutting paraffin sections the rotary type microtome (Minot) is the most practical. A very heavy and rigidly constructed model should be chosen, as this permits cutting sections of equal thickness of hard material, which is often necessary in pathologic histology. The large rotary Leitz microtome is well suited for this purpose.

MICROTOME KNIVES

A well-sharpened knife is necessary for cutting good sections. Until a short time ago the sharpening of microtome knives was a difficult and time-consuming process. This has been radically changed by the introduction of the Aloe electric knife sharpener, which reduces the time needed for honing a knife to 15 minutes, and is invaluable for every pathologist who has to work with restricted personnel.*

Microtome knives should be carefully cleaned after use, and coated with acid-free oil to prevent rusting.

CUTTING OF PARAFFIN SECTIONS

In hot climates it is always advantageous to cool the paraffin blocks just before sectioning. This can be effected by various devices using carbon dioxide, but since this gas is often difficult to obtain and must be kept for the freezing microtome, the cheapest and simplest method consists in cooling the block, already fastened on the microtome, using an ice cube wrapped in filter paper and pressed against the block for a short time, after which a ribbon of sections can be cut.

When the sections have been cut, the exposed tissue should be dipped in melted paraffin; otherwise insects might destroy it in a short time.

ATTACHING PARAFFIN SECTIONS TO SLIDES

A small drop of albumin-glycerin is smeared on the slide and heated gently over a small flame until a whitish vapor appears. After cooling, the slides are covered with distilled water and the sections flattened on a Ranson embedding table. The sections are dried in a drying oven at a temperature of 45° C. Noncorrosive microslides and cover glasses should be used exclusively.

STAINING METHODS

For the Tropics, staining methods should be used which give constant results and which are not too complicated. The staining solutions must never be prepared in too large quantities. Precautions must be taken against rapid evaporation. Therefore the solutions must be kept in bottles with ground-in stoppers, and for the staining of paraffin sections attached to slides, Koplin jars should be used which can be fairly well sealed with petroleum jelly. To prevent the growth of molds, thymol must be added to many staining solutions, especially to those containing eosin, azophloxin, and Ponceau.

Sections fixed in fluids containing picric acid are decolorized by 70 per cent or 80 per cent alcohol to which a few drops of a saturated aqueous solution of lithium carbonate have been added.

---

*The editor (R.B.H.G.) can recommend the Micro Sharp Company, Niagara Falls, N. Y., P.O. Box 363, for their excellent and unusual knife sharpening.

Hematoxylin

After many trials, Harris alum hematoxylin has proved to be the most stable.

The method of making Harris hematoxylin is given on page 1513.

Counterstain

As a counterstain after hematoxylin, eosin is still used in many laboratories. We have replaced it for many years by azophloxin (Gurr) which is more stable and gives very pleasant tones. It shows almost no fading even on exposure to very strong light. A 0.2 per cent solution is prepared from a 1 per cent stock solution and acidified by adding a few drops of 2 per cent acetic acid. Thymol must be added to both solutions to prevent the growth of molds. After staining, the sections are transferred directly to 80 per cent alcohol, *not* to water.

Connective Tissue Stains

Two methods of staining connective tissue are routinely used in our laboratory. The first is Larson's and Levin's (1940) modification of Masson's trichrome stain, which gives unusually clear details in neoplastic growths, especially in myomas.

Larson and Levin Modification of Masson's Trichrome Stain (1940)

Reagents.—

Hansen Trioxyhematein.—

Solution A: Dissolve 10 Gm. ammonium ferric alum and 1.4 Gm. ammonium sulfate in 150 c.c. of distilled water, with heat.

Solution B: Dissolve 1.6 Gm. of hematoxylin in 75 c.c. of distilled water with heat.

Cool the 2 solutions, then pour solution *A* into solution *B* (never vice versa!), stirring constantly. When the mixture turns violet, heat it over the flame and test on filter paper for a sepia or brownish-black color. Remove the solution from the flame immediately and cool by immersing the beaker in cold water. If the stain shows an olive green color on the filter paper, it has been overoxidized. Do not boil the stain longer than 1 minute.

To 8 parts of the stain
add 2 parts of 1 per cent sulfuric acid.
Keep the rest as stock solution.

Ponceau-Fuchsin Stain.—

Stock Solution:

Crystalline Ponceau R (Gurr) *or* Ponceau xylidine (Krall)	1.5 Gm.
Acid fuchsin	0.5 Gm.
1% acetic acid	200 c.c.

Staining Solution:

Stock solution	10 c.c.
0.5% aqueous azophloxin solution	2 c.c.
1% acetic acid solution	88 c.c.

Fast Green Solution.—

Stock Solution:

Fast green F.C.F.	0.2 Gm.
1% acetic acid	100 c.c.

Staining Solution:

Stock solution	15 c.c.
1% acetic acid	40 c.c.

Add the stock solution to the acetic acid.

Technic.—

Stain in Hansen trioxyhematein	2 to 5 minutes
Wash several minutes in tap water	
1% acetic acid	1 minute
Ponceau-acid fuchsin-azophloxin stain	5 minutes
1% acetic acid	2 minutes
2% phosphotungstic acid	1 minute
1% acetic acid	2 minutes
Fast green solution	5 minutes
1% acetic acid	3 minutes
96% alcohol, 2 changes.	
Clear and mount.	

Lendrum Celestin Blue-Hemalum Stain (1947)

The Hansen trioxyhematein stain can be replaced by the Lendrum stain:

Stains.—

Celestin Blue, Lendrum.—

Allow 2.5 Gm. iron alum to dissolve at room temperature
in 50 c.c. distilled water.
Add 0.25 Gm. of celestin blue (C.T. 900).
Boil for 3 minutes.
Filter into a staining jar when cool.
Add 7 c.c. glycerin.

Mayer Hemalum.—

Dissolve 1 Gm. hematoxylin
0.2 Gm. sodium iodate
50.0 Gm. powdered potassium alum, at room temperature
in 1 liter distilled water.
Add 50 Gm. chloral hydrate
and 1 Gm. citric acid.
Boil for 5 minutes.
When cool, it is ready for use.

Technic.—

Stain in celestin blue	5 minutes or less if fresh
Rinse in tap water.	
Filter Mayer hemalum onto the tissue	5 minutes
Place in tap water until blue.	
1% acetic acid	1 minute
Ponceau-acid fuchsin-azophloxin, etc., as given in the first method, above.	

Collagen

For deeper staining of collagen and of part of the reticulum and especially for the staining of sections of kidneys, the Mallory-Heidenhain or Azan stain is recommended. This method gives beautiful results and the procedure can be shortened to little more than 1 hour.

Stains.—

Azocarmine.—

Azocarmine G (Certified)	100 mg.
Distilled water	100 c.c.

Add the azocarmine to the distilled water, and bring to a boil. Cool to room temperature and filter.

When cool, add 1 c.c. of glacial acetic acid.

Aniline Blue.—

Aniline blue (Certified)	0.5 Gm.
Orange G (Certified)	2.0 Gm.
Glacial acetic acid	8.0 c.c.
Distilled water	100.0 c.c.

Boil and filter after cooling.

Technic.—

Heat the azocarmine solution to 56° C.

Stain sections in azocarmine for 15 minutes in the paraffin oven.

Wash in distilled water.

Differentiate in a mixture of 3 parts of 5 per cent aqueous phosphotungstic acid and 2 parts of pure methanol. The differentiation is complete in a few minutes (Ruyter).

Wash in distilled water.

Stain in aniline blue solution diluted 1:2 with distilled water, 30 to 50 minutes.

Wash quickly in distilled water.

Differentiate in 95 per cent, followed by absolute alcohol.

Clear and mount.

Results: Collagen and reticulum, deep blue; chromatin, red; muscle, red to orange; erythrocytes, red; mucin, blue.

Fluoran-Thiazin Stains

Of this group the simplest and easiest is the following variant of the **Mann-Dominici** stain:

Orange-Eosin Mixture.—

Eosin Y (Certified)	0.5 Gm.
Orange G (Certified)	0.6 Gm.
Distilled water	100.0 c.c.

Technic.—

Stain with Harris hematoxylin and differentiate with HCl-alcohol until only the chromatin is stained.

Wash several minutes in tap water.

Stain in the orange-eosin mixture for 20 to 30 minutes.

Wash in distilled water.

Stain in 0.5% toluidin blue 1 to 2 minutes.

Wash in distilled water.

Differentiate in 95% alcohol to which a few drops of 10% solution of colophonium resin in absolute alcohol have been added. Keep the slide in constant motion.

Dehydrate in acetone.

Place through 2 changes of xylol.

Mount in Clarite.

Nuclei, the cytoplasm of lymphocytes and plasma cells, and bacteria are blue; collagen and other tissue elements are pale rose color.

MOUNTING OF SECTIONS

Before mounting in resinous media such as Canada balsam or Clarite, the sections must be dehydrated and cleared. Since the alcohol used for dehydration may contain water, we always interpose 2 or 3 baths of pure water-free terpineol (Gurr) between the alcohol and the paraffin baths. Since terpineol is neutral, it is superior to the carbol-xylol still used in many laboratories. After Dominici's stain, dehydration in acetone, which, in contrast to alcohol, does not extract thiazin dyes, is to be preferred. As mounting media one of the synthetic resins should be used.

References

Bonne, C., Hartz, P. H., Klerks, J. V., Posthuma, J. H., Radsma, W., and Soetomo, Tjokronegoro: 1938. Morphology of the Stomach and Gastric Secretion in Malays and Chinese and the Different Incidence of Gastric Ulcer and Cancer in These Races, Am. J. Cancer **33:** 265.

Gomori, G.: 1947. Concerning Methods of Tissue Staining, Am. J. Clin. Path. **17:** 972.

Hartz, P. H.: 1945. La fijacion de las biopsias y de las piazas quirúrgicas par el examen microscópico, Rev. Policl. Caracas **14:** 249.

Hartz, P. H.: 1945. Frozen Sections from Bouin-Fixed Material in Histopathology, Stain Technology **20:** 113.

Hartz, P. H., and Hugenholtz, M. J.: 1942. Mitotic Activity in Uterine Leiomyomas, Am. J. Clin. Path. **12:** 523.

Langeron, M.: 1934. Précis de Microscopie, ed. 5, Paris, Masson et Cie, p. 335.

Larson, C. P., and Levin, E. J.: 1940. A Modification of Masson's Tetrachrome Stain for Routine Paraffin Sections of Tissue Fixed in Solution of Formaldehyde and Saline Solution, Arch. Path. **29:** 272.

Lendrum, A. C.: 1947. Routine Diagnostic Technique of the General Morbid Anatomist. In Dyke, S. C. (general editor): Recent Advances of Clinical Pathology, Philadelphia, The Blakiston Co., pp. 49, 50.

Lillie, R. D.: 1948. Histopathologic Technic, Philadelphia, The Blakiston Co., pp. 27, 28.

Masson, P.: 1923. Tumeurs—Diagnostics Histologiques, Paris, A. Maloine Fils, p. 633.

Masson, P.: 1923a. Ibid., p. 636.

Masson, P.: 1923b. Ibid., p. 657.

Pèterfi, P.: 1921. Eine beschleunigte Celloidin-Paraffin Einbettun mit Nelkenöl—oder Methylbenzoatcelloidin, Zt. Wiss. Mikr. **8:** 342.

Ten Berge, B. S.: 1925. Ein neuer Gefriertisch, Zt. Wiss. Mikr. **42:** 157.

CHAPTER 70

RAPID FROZEN SECTION METHODS IN TROPICAL DISEASES

ARAM A. KRAJIAN

INTRODUCTION

Rapid and accurate examination of tissue is one of the most important procedures in a modern hospital laboratory, both in temperate and in tropical countries. It is essential to eliminate from laboratory methods, as completely as possible, all lost time and lost motion, without in any way affecting the accuracy of the procedures. The specialty is already so overcrowded with methods that any saving of time, especially with promise of increased exactitude, should be welcomed by the clinical pathologist and laboratory worker. (See Chapter 69.)

Three methods are commonly used for preparing microscopic sections: the paraffin, the celloidin, and the frozen methods.

The celloidin method is very seldom used routinely and in only a few places. The most common and most popular procedure has been the paraffin method. The frozen section method is used in some laboratories as a routine practice, and in others only as an emergency measure.

Frozen sections, when properly made, are superior to paraffin sections. In the paraffin embedding process it is impossible to prevent shrinkage of the tissue.

The advantages of the frozen section method are: (1) ease of manipulation; (2) economy; (3) no change in the normal structure of tissue; and (4) rapidity.

THE FROZEN SECTION METHOD

(Krajian, 1940)

There are certain salient features which must be determined and followed in order to secure correctly made frozen sections.

The Formaldehyde Solution and How It Is Used

Ten per cent formalin solution is made by diluting 10 c.c. of commercial 40 per cent formaldehyde solution (formalin) to 100 c.c. with tap water. Immediate fixation is essential. Tissues should be placed in formaldehyde solution as soon as possible after removal from the body. At least 15 times as much fluid as bulk of tissue must be used. The pieces of tissue should not be too thick. Tissues should be immersed in a 15 per cent neutral formalin solution for the first 24 hours (15 c.c. of formalin diluted to 100 c.c. with tap water).

For rapid fixation, as, for example, biopsy examination at the operating table, the formaldehyde solution must be boiled. A very thin block of biopsy material is cut and then dropped into the boiling formaldehyde solution. This is shaken constantly for 30 seconds. For rapid fixation of autopsy material, the formaldehyde solution is brought to the boiling point in a test tube. This solution is poured over the tissue in a bottle, reducing the temperature of the formaldehyde solution to about 65° C. The tissue is then placed in an oven regulated at 56° C. for 20 to 30 minutes, and the routine procedure for frozen sections carried out. With this method shrinkage will be no more than 5 per cent, whereas routine paraffin sectioning methods cause shrinkage varying from 15 to 30 per cent.

After 24 hours' fixation, tissues should be cut into blocks about 1 or 2 cm. square and from 3 to 5 mm. thick, and placed in 10 per cent neutral formalin.

Neutrality of formalin is very important in preserving the staining qualities of the nuclei. For neutralization, add 5 Gm. of calcium carbonate or sodium bicarbonate to a gallon of stock formalin (40 per cent formaldehyde).

Cutting Frozen Sections

Washing the Block.—Place the blocks in tap water in a 250 c.c. beaker to remove the formaldehyde, which not only is harmful to the skin of the operator but also prevents the block from adhering to the object holder. This immersion in water should be for a short period of time only.

The Microtome and Blade.—The knife should be honed and stropped so that the edge has a shorter bevel on one side than on the other; it should be used with the shorter bevel downward. The block holder should have deep grooves. The Bausch and Lomb freezing microtome (newer type) is recommended. Place a drop of water on the holder, then put the block of tissue on the holder. An angle of the block rather than a straight edge should face the knife. If the tisue is covered with a capsule, such as skin or mucous membrane, this capsule surface must face the knife edge at an angle and should never be placed on the side away from the knife.

How to Freeze the Block.—Place the index finger on the block to hold the tissue in place, then turn on the CO_2 gas slightly for temporary holding. Press down firmly all around the tissue to fix it to the holder, then release more gas slowly until the freezing level has passed upward through about one-half of the entire block. If any part of the section is not frozen, holes will occur in the tissue, since the unfrozen portion will break.

Cutting the Section.—Cut off the upper third of the tissue, that is, the unfrozen portion, and drop it back into the specimen bottle. Then shave down to establish a smooth, level surface. If the surface to be cut is frozen too firmly, it is hard and white, and the sections will be fragmented. If the surface is too soft, the sections will have holes. The ideal is a hard, pliable surface so that a section cut therefrom will show no tendency to break as it piles up over the cutting edge of the knife.

How to Operate the Microtome.—Do not use a microtome where the constant rotation of the wheel lifts the block holder. This faulty method, largely due to the manufacturer's wrong idea of making things look easy, is responsible for poor frozen sections. The automatic lifting attachment on the microtome must be removed, and each section cut slowly. Place the hand on the rim of the flywheel, and turn it slowly. Rapid use of the wheel, as is ordinarily carried out in many laboratories, does not allow sufficient time to adjust the tissue surface to the proper temperature and consistency. The method we recommend, slow turning by hand, permits warming of the cut surface of the block, giving a pliable section free from undulations.

Turn the notched micrometer wheel with the left hand, then operate the flywheel with the right hand. Use three notches, which will enable one to cut a section about 10 microns thick. Uneven sections are usually the result of freezing the block too hard, applying too fast a speed, and unnecessary force, especially on firmer tissues.

How to Remove the Section From the Knife.—Wet the tip of the little or ring finger with water, carefully remove the section from the edge of the knife, and place it in water. Then dry the knife edge and keep it dry. Water left on the edge thaws the tissue with which it comes in contact, causing holes in succeeding sections. Cut one section at a time, remove it from the knife, and place it in water. Place the sections in a large dish of water over a dark background.

How to Transfer Sections to Glass Slide.—Clean the glass slide in 0.5 per cent acid alcohol and wipe dry. The vessel in which the sections are floated should be at least 7 cm. deep and 15 cm. in diameter. The operator should be seated so as to prevent any direct reflection of light from the slides to the eyes. A glass rod, pointed or slightly bent, should be used to transfer the sections of delicate internal organs to the slide. Teasing needles may be used for sections of firm tissues, but not when staining for iron or using silver solutions.

Anchor the section to the slide at about a 45-degree angle, with three-fourths of it under water, in such a way that the edge of the water basin will afford support to either the slide or the fingers, and thereby aid in steadying the slide. Put the section, by means of a glass rod, on the middle of the slide, bringing it to the surface of the water immediately above the center of the slide. Now, manipulate the slide, with only part of the tissue under water, in such manner as to straighten out most of the folds in the section. The part of the tissue still in the water floats out on the surface of the water, and by successively turning the slide the folds can be eliminated without touching the rod or needle to the tissue. After the folds have been removed, tilt the slide against a staining dish, face down, at a 45-degree angle, so that the excess water may partially drain off. Do not permit the section to dry. Fifteen seconds to 1 minute is usually sufficient, depending on the atmospheric conditions of the room.

Dehydration of the Section

Drop, at short range to prevent breaking the section, 2 or 3 drops of anhydrous isopropanol or absolute ethyl alcohol on the section, holding the slide at a slight angle to the dropping bottle. Blow the breath over the section until the alcohol seems to have evaporated. Then blot it twice between several thicknesses of fine filter paper. Next, flood with isopropanol or absolute alcohol for complete dehydration, 1 to 10 minutes. Pour off the alcohol, being careful not to disturb the section. In fatty tissues, fat is dissolved by the alcohol, and the section may tend to slip from the slide. Under these circumstances, blow over the surface of the section gently and remove the remaining alcohol by evaporation to keep the section on the slide. Blot twice with filter paper, then dip twice rapidly into a jar containing thin celloidin. Blow gently over the surface, blot twice, and place immediately in the staining solution. Note that we advocate the use of celloidin rather than Mayer albumin fixative, and regard the celloidin method as far superior. Celloidin is furnished by Du Pont, Schering, or Mallinckrodt. Prepare a solution of celloidin of the consistency of a thick syrup. To prepare a thin celloidin solution, which is used to attach sections to the slides, mix 1 part of the thick celloidin with 15 parts of a mixture of equal parts of absolute ethyl alcohol and ether, to which 1 c.c. of a saturated alcoholic solution of gum mastic is added.

Routine Staining of Frozen Sections

Harris Hematoxylin.—For routine nuclear staining, Harris hematoxylin is recommended rather than other types of hematoxylin solution. It is easily and rapidly made:

Hematoxylin crystals	1 Gm.
Absolute alcohol	10 c.c.
Ammonium or potassium alum	20 Gm.
Distilled water	200 c.c.

Dissolve the hematoxylin in the alcohol. Dissolve the alum in the water with heat, and add the hematoxylin solution. Bring the mixture to a boil as quickly as possible, then add 0.5 Gm. mercuric oxide. The solution at once assumes a dark purple color. When this occurs, remove the vessel containing the solution from the flame and cool as rapidly as possible in running water or in frequently changed cold water. It is ready to use when cool. Add 3 c.c. of glacial acetic acid to 95 c.c. of the solution just before use to increase the nuclear staining properties.

Acid Alcohol.—Add 1 c.c. of concentrated hydrochloric acid to 100 c.c. of 70 per cent alcohol.

Ammonium-Isopropanol.—Add 5 c.c. of ammonium hydroxide to 95 c.c. of anhydrous isopropanol and mix. If the ammonia volatilizes off, add more ammonium hyroxide.

Carbol-Xylol.—One part liquefied carbolic acid and 3 parts of xylol.

Gum Damar.—Dissolve gum damar in xylol until the desired consistency is obtained, then allow to settle and decant the clear supernatant portion.

Eosinol (Krajian, 1938).—Simplicity and dependability have won for hematoxylin-eosin its place as the standard routine tissue stain. It is dependable because it tolerates wide variations in material and technic. The least "fool-proof" operations of this time-honored method are the counterstaining with eosin and the subsequent dehydration in alcohol. Aqueous or alcoholic eosin stains the tissue comparatively slowly and then is partially extracted by the dehydrating alcohols. The margin of safety between excessive extraction of eosin and complete elimination of the water is not always sufficient to insure good results.

A change in the manner of applying eosin is described here. This not only corrects this difficulty but also offers the advantages of a more powerful stain, with economy of alcohol and saving of time.

The principle of the modification consists in the dehydration of the section before counterstaining and the application of eosin as a solution in carbol-xylol. Then, since the tissue passes thereafter through xylol only, there is no opportunity for decolorization. Alcohol is saved because dehydration can be commenced in the stronger alcohol, which obviates the use of the lower gradations. The solution of eosin in carbol-xylol, which constitutes the principal element of modification, may be called for convenience "eosinol."

Dissolve 5 Gm. of aqueous eosin in 10 c.c. of distilled water.

Precipitate it by adding 10 c.c. of glacial acetic acid, and 2 c.c. concentrated hydrochloric acid, and mix with a glass rod.

Incubate the resulting coagulum at 56° C. for 12 to 16 hours, or until all the water has been evaporated.

Dissolve this dehydrated acid-eosin in a mixture of 10 c.c. of absolute alcohol and 20 c.c. of acetone, stirring with a glass rod for several minutes.

Let the undissolved portion, which is to be discarded, settle to the bottom of the container. This requires about 10 minutes.

Remove the clear portion with a clean, dry pipette or medicine dropper.

Add it to 1,500 c.c. of carbol-xylol, made by mixing 1 part of pure melted phenol crystals with 3 parts of neutral xylol. Some precipitate will form, which will settle to the bottom of the container. The clear portion is the eosinol. This solution keeps indefinitely.

Owing to variation in the staining power of the various brands of powdered eosin, it may be necessary to standardize the solution by staining control sections and adjusting the strength of the eosinol by reducing or increasing the amount of carbol-xylol.

Technic of Staining.—

Place frozen sections in Harris hematoxylin for 3 to 5 minutes.

Rinse and place in tap water until blue, 1 to 2 minutes.

Destain in acid alcohol, dipping in and out for even destaining, and stopping when no more color leaves the section.

Place in tap water for a few seconds to a few minutes.

Place in the ammonium-isopropanol mixture until the section is blue.

Pour 2 or 3 drops of anhydrous isopropanol over the slide.

Repeat this process twice for complete dehydration.

Dip in eosinol several times until the background is stained evenly red, which requires 10 to 30 seconds depending upon the strength of the solution.

Place in carbol-xylol for 3 minutes.

Transfer to first xylol for 2 minutes.

Transfer to second xylol for 2 minutes.

Transfer to third xylol for 2 minutes.

Mount in neutral gum damar.

In all cases where sections are transferred from one solution to another, be sure to drain off as much of the solution as possible, especially the carbol-xylol. Carrying of carbolic acid into xylol dishes will cause fading of the nuclear stain.

If the sections occasionally fall off, due to swelling, flood them with isopropanol for 2 to 3 minutes, pour off the isopropanol, blow over the section until it is dry, blot, and dip twice in celloidin. Resume the staining process from that point.

Serumizing Method for Loose-Textured Tissues

(Krajian, 1939)

One of the principal objections to the preparation of routine permanent sections by the freezing method has been the difficulty in keeping intact the loose-textured or necrotic tissues, such as abscessed lungs, degenerated tumor masses, congested spleen, kidney glomeruli, endometrial tissue, testicle, thymus, etc. We have overcome this defect by developing an effective method of infiltrating such tissues with blood serum and then coagulating with dioxane. This permits the preparation of complete frozen sections from biopsy and autopsy material, thus avoiding the delay and unnecessary extra expense of preparing routine paraffin sections.

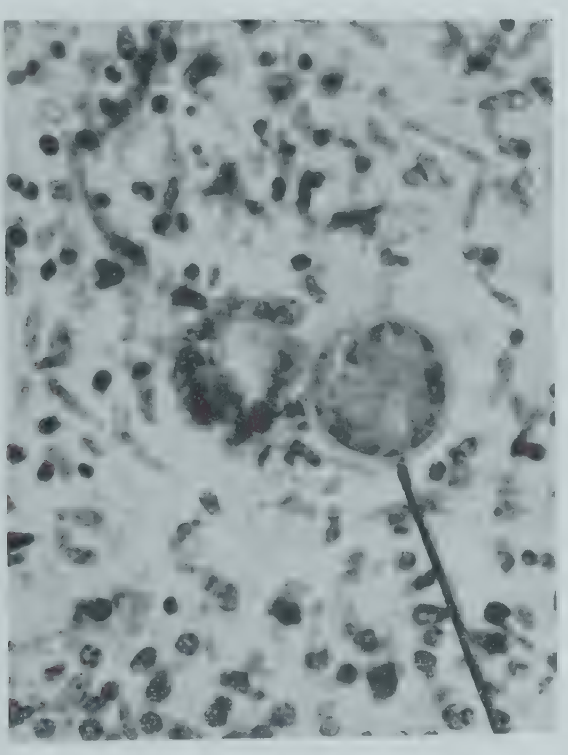


Fig. 463.—Photomicrograph showing coccidioides in biopsy section of skin (hematoxylin and eosin stain).

The Method—"Serumizing."—Fix the loose-textured tissues in 10 per cent formalin in the usual manner for 24 hours or longer.

Then trim the blocks and wash them several times in tap water to remove the formaldehyde.

Place the blocks in a small Stender dish or specimen bottle containing uncontaminated human or animal serum. Fresh serum from serologic tests is an ideal medium. The amount of serum should be ample to cover the tissues.

Cover the dish or bottle tightly and place in a warm place overnight. The top of the paraffin oven is a good place for it. Any floating tissue such as lung or fatty material should be covered with absorbent cotton in order to keep all parts in the serum.

Decant the excess serum after overnight infiltration, and, without washing, add dioxane to cover the blocks. Let stand for 3 to 5 hours or until complete coagulation occurs.

Without further fixation, freeze the blocks on a freezing microtome, using CO_2 gas, and cut, stain, and mount as usual.

The blocks cannot be kept in dioxane indefinitely, as it causes slow shrinkage of the tissue. After cutting the sections, place the blocks in 10 per cent formalin to keep them permanently.

For **emergency examination,** place very thin blocks of formalin-fixed tissue in serum in a paraffin oven at 56° C. for 2 hours, coagulate in dioxane for 2 hours, then cut and stain.

This method causes very little shrinkage, but no curling or shriveling of sections as in other embedding processes devised for frozen sections, such as gelatin embedding. The infiltrating serum, when it is completely coagulated by the action of the dioxane, acts as a supporting medium to furnish stability and to hold cells and intracellular structures in proper relation to each other; it does not interfere with any staining process as does the gelatin method.

Serumizing hard tissues, such as bone and uterus, makes them soft and pliable, and produces better sections.

Fresh serum may be stored in small bottles and preserved by adding 2 c.c. of 40 per cent formaldehyde (formalin) to each 50 c.c. of serum. This serum can be kept at room temperature for several months without becoming contaminated.

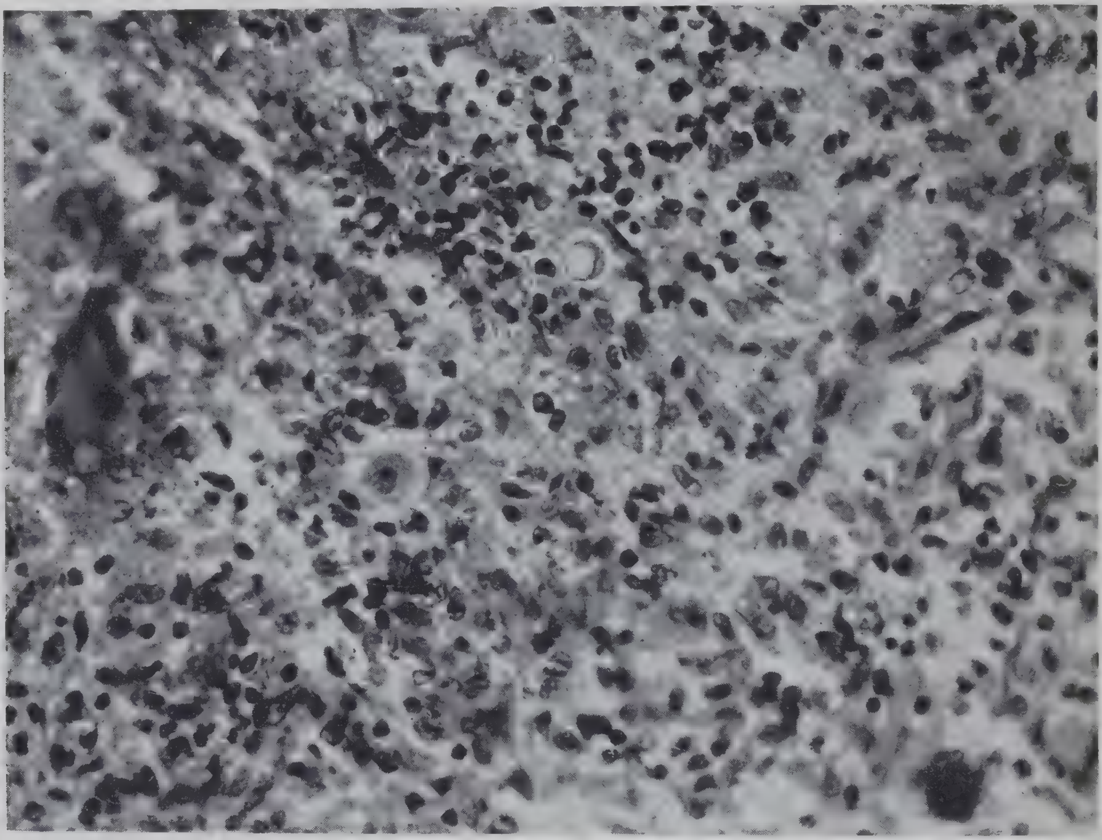


Fig 464.—Photomicrograph showing blastomyces in a section of biopsy of the skin (hematoxylin and eosin stain).

Frozen Sections at the Operating Table

This method, which is both rapid and permanent, has proved singularly efficient.

Trim a thin block of biopsy tissue and drop it into a Pyrex test tube containing boiling 10 per cent formalin. Shake vigorously for one-half minute.

Wash rapidly in tap water, then freeze rapidly with CO_2.

Cut sections and transfer to a glass slide.

Apply 3 or 4 drops of anhydrous isopropanol or absolute ethyl alcohol to the section and blow gently over the surface until the alcohol is completely evaporated, then blot with several thicknesses of fine filter paper and dip once in thin celloidin.

Blow over the section until dry, blot, and stain in Harris hematoxylin, dipping in and t about 40 times.

Wash rapidly in tap water, and destain in acid alcohol by dipping the slide in and t, turning the slide each time.

Neutralize and dehydrate in ammonium-isopropanol mixture (see above) until blue.

Dehydrate completely in 2 changes of isopropanol.

Dip in and out of eosinol for a few seconds until the background is red.

Dip in and out of carbol-xylol about 20 times.

Dip in and out of xylol about 20 times.

Mount in gum damar.

For celloidin and paraffin methods, see Chapter 69, and Gradwohl (1948)

SPECIAL METHODS OF STAINING

The Clinical Application of a Rapid Staining Method for Treponemata in Tissue Sections

The biopsy method for the demonstration of spirochetes is the most satsfactory and dependable method of examination for Treponemata; the eficiency is 100 per cent from the first day of the appearance of the lesion up o 3 months or more, in syphilis. A 20-minute staining method of examining iopsy material for spirochetes was developed by Krajian (1939).

The Twenty-Minute Staining Method for Treponemata in Frozen Tissue Sections (Krajian, 1939)*

eagents.—

Primary Solution.—

Uranium nitrate	1 Gm.
Formic acid, 85 per cent	3 c.c.
Glycerin	5 c.c.
Acetone	10 c.c.
95 per cent alcohol	10 c.c.

This solution is stable and keeps indefinitely.

Saturated Alcoholic Solution of Gum Mastic.—Dissolve 25 Gm. of gum mastic in 35 .c. of absolute alcohol. Shake the solution several times a day for several days until olution is complete. Allow to stand until clear. This solution can be centrifuged for apid clarification. Use only the clear portion. The dilute solution is prepared from this tock solution as needed.

Ten Per Cent Silver Nitrate Solution.—Dissolve 10 Gm. silver nitrate, c.p., in disilled water and dilute to 100 c.c. with distilled water. Keep in a well-stoppered bottle t room temperature. This solution keeps well.

One Per Cent Silver Nitrate Solution.—This solution is made just before use by diluting 3 c.c. of the 10 per cent solution to 30 c.c. with distilled water.

Developing Solution.—

Hydroquinone	0.31 Gm.
Sodium sulfite	0.1 Gm.
Acetone	2.5 c.c.
40 per cent formaldehyde	2.5 c.c.
Pyridine	2.5 c.c.
Gum mastic, saturated alcoholic	2.5 c.c.
Distilled water	15.0 c.c.

---

*The paraffin method is discussed in Gradwohl (1948).

Completely dissolve the hydroquinone and sodium sulfite in the formalin-acetone solution. Then add the pyridine and gum mastic. Mix well. Finally add the water and invert for thorough mixing.

This solution keeps well for about 2 weeks in the light, after which it deteriorates, the gum mastic separating and settling to the bottom of the container. If this occurs, a fresh supply should be prepared.

The developing solution must be warmed to 60° C. for 15 minutes before use.

The Method.—

Boil 10 per cent formalin in a Pyrex test tube, drop a small piece of biopsy material into it, and agitate for 1 minute. Regular formalin-fixed tissues do not require this treatment.

Cut frozen sections 7 to 10 microns thick.

Place the sections in the primary solution, previously heated to 60 ° C., for 5 minutes, keeping the dish in a paraffin oven or water bath at 56° to 60° C.

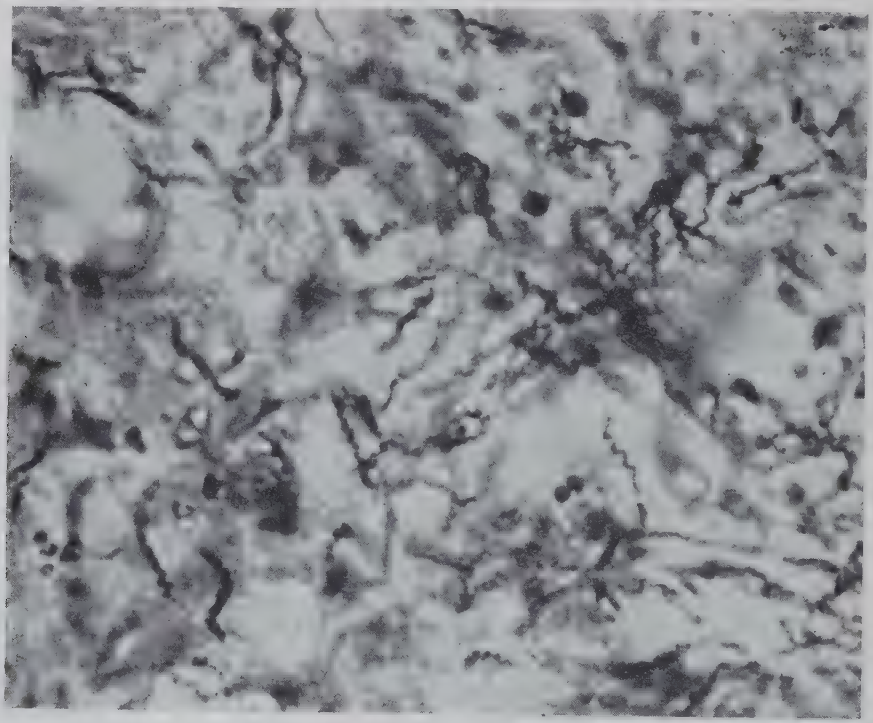


Fig. 465.—Photomicrograph showing *Treponema pallidum* in liver section from a case of congenital syphilis. (Krajian 20-minute stain.)

Rinse in distilled water.

Treat for 5 seconds in dilute gum mastic solution made by mixing 3 drops of saturated alcoholic solution of gum mastic in 5 c.c. of 95 per cent alcohol.

Rinse and spread out sections in distilled water.

Place sections in a wide mouth Pyrex beaker or other suitable Pyrex receptacle containing 30 c.c. of freshly made 1 per cent silver nitrate solution. Place the beaker containing the sections over a flame about 4 feet below a 60-watt electric light.

Heat the silver solution until bubbles form. Place a thermometer in the beaker and maintain a temperature of 67° to 70° C. for 7 minutes.

Without washing, carry individual sections with a glass rod lifter to the warm developing solution, alternately dipping the section into the solution and then exposing all portions of it, on the lifter, to the 60-watt light. Repeat this process several times or until the section turns brown.

Wash for a few seconds in 95 per cent alcohol.

Without washing, again place the section in 1 per cent silver nitrate solution for 20 to 30 seconds.

Rinse in distilled water.

Place the sections in a large basin of distilled water and then transfer to a glass slide. Since the section is brown there should be a white background under the basin.

Blot with fine filter paper.

Dehydrate for 30 seconds with absolute alcohol or anhydrous isopropanol.

Blot twice with filter paper and dip in thin celloidin once. Wipe the back of the slide with a clean towel.

Treat with creosote-xylol for 2 minutes (1 part creosote plus 2 parts of xylol).

Clear in pure xylol for 2 minutes.

Mount in gum damar, placing an identification number or the patient's name under the cover slip for a permanent record.

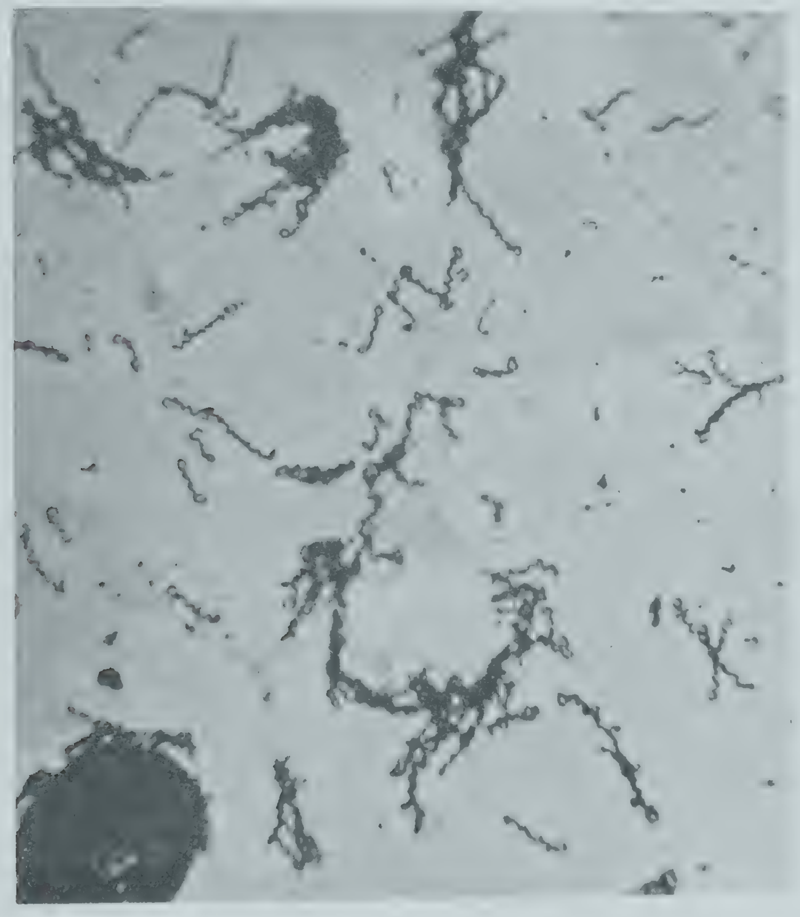


Fig. 466.—Photomicrograph of *Leptospira icterohaemorrhagiae* in smear preparation from a culture of an acute case of Weil's disease. (Krajian 20-minute spirochete stain.)

A Rapid Staining Method for Gram-Positive and Gram-Negative Organisms in Frozen and Paraffin Sections (Krajian)

In this method, the solutions used are methylene blue as a gram-positive stain, fuchsin-creosote as a gram-negative stain, and creosote-xylol as a differentiator.

1. The Frozen Section Method

Reagents.—

Loeffler's Methylene Blue.—

Saturated alcoholic solution of methylene blue	30 c.c.
1:10,000 potassium hydroxide	100 c.c.

Creosote-Xylol.—Mix 1 part of creosote with 3 parts of xylol.

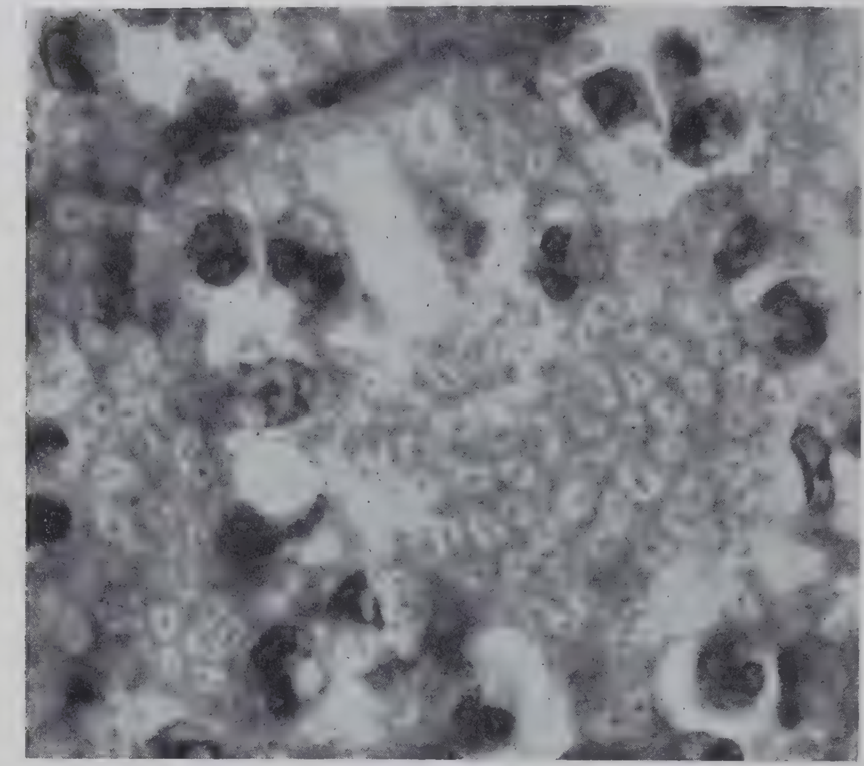


Fig. 467.—Photomicrograph showing *Klebsiella pneumoniae* (encapsulated) from a case of Friedländer pneumonia, stained by Krajian bacterial stain.

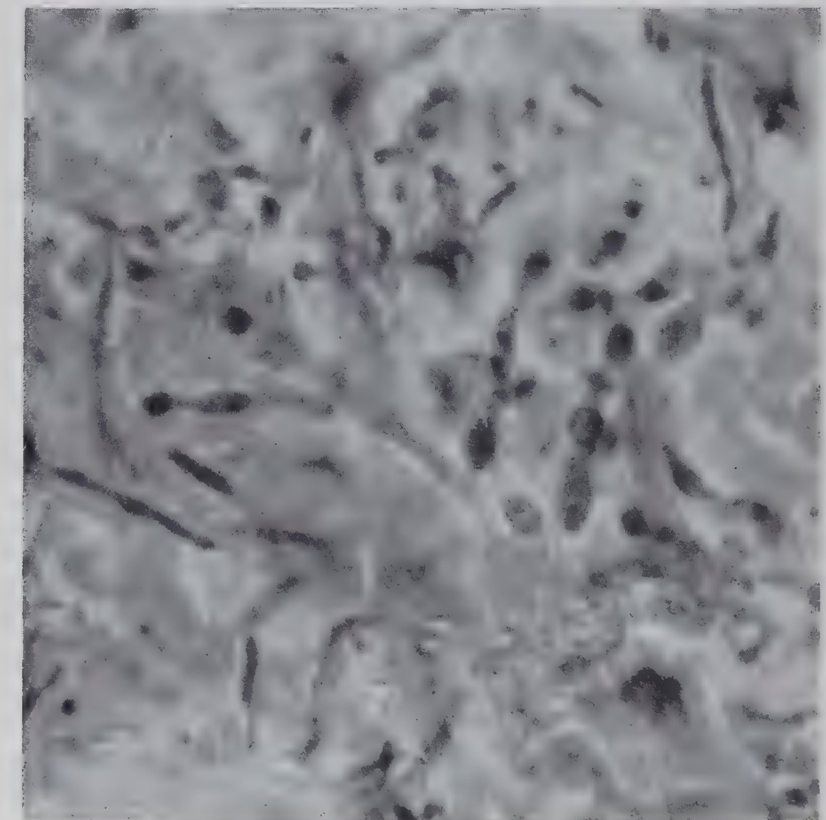


Fig. 468.—Photomicrograph showing *Monilia albicans* in kidney section. (Krajian bacterial stain.)

Creosote-Fuchsin.—

Creosote-xylol	50 c.c.
Six per cent alcoholic basic fuchsin	3 c.c.

Technic.—

Prepare mounted frozen sections 7 to 10 microns thick in the usual manner.

Stain for 3 minutes with Loeffler's methylene blue.

Wash in tap water and dehydrate rapidly with 3 applications of anhydrous isopropanol or absolute ethyl alcohol.

Differentiate rapidly with creosote-xylol, agitating the slide constantly for 5 to 10 seconds.

Pour off and apply creosote-fuchsin, agitating the slide about 20 to 25 times, changing the solution once.

Blot and apply creosote-xylol 2 or 3 times, agitating the slide constantly for even decolorization or until most of the excess red color leaves the section.

Blot, clear for 2 minutes in xylol, and mount in gum damar.

2. The Paraffin Section Method

Technic.—

Deparaffinize the section with 2 applications of xylol and 2 applications of absolute alcohol or isopropanol.

Hydrate gradually, in the usual manner, and place the slides in tap water.

Proceed as for frozen sections.

With this method, nuclei are red, gram-positive organisms blue, gram-negative organisms red, devitalized gram-positive organisms red, yeast and molds blue, Negri bodies bright red with bluish chromatin bodies, rickettsial and Donovan bodies red, and fibrin sometimes blue and sometimes red.

All staining solutions are stable.

A Dependable Method for Demonstration of Acid-Fast Organisms in Tissue Sections (Krajian)

Reagents.—

Carbol Fuchsin.—

Hydrobromic Acid Alcohol.—Add 1 c.c. of hydrobromic acid to 100 c.c. of 60 per cent ethyl alcohol.

Loeffler's Methylene Blue.—

Iso-Creosote Mixture.—Equal parts of anhydrous isopropanol or absolute alcohol and beechwood creosote.

Technic.—

Cut frozen sections 7 to 10 microns thick.

Transfer to a glass slide, dehydrate, blot in filter paper, and dip in celloidin. Blow over the surface until dry. Wash in tap water until the surface is wet.

Place on a tripod or on a warming table, apply carbol fuchsin, and steam gently with a flame for 3 minutes.

Discard the staining solution, wash with tap water, and apply hydrobromic acid alcohol with a medicine dropper 2 to 4 times, agitating the slide constantly for even destaining, or until most of the red stain is removed.

Wash in tap water and apply Loeffler's methylene blue solution for 3 minutes.

Wash in tap water and dehydrate with 3 applications of anhydrous isopropanol or absolute ethyl alcohol.

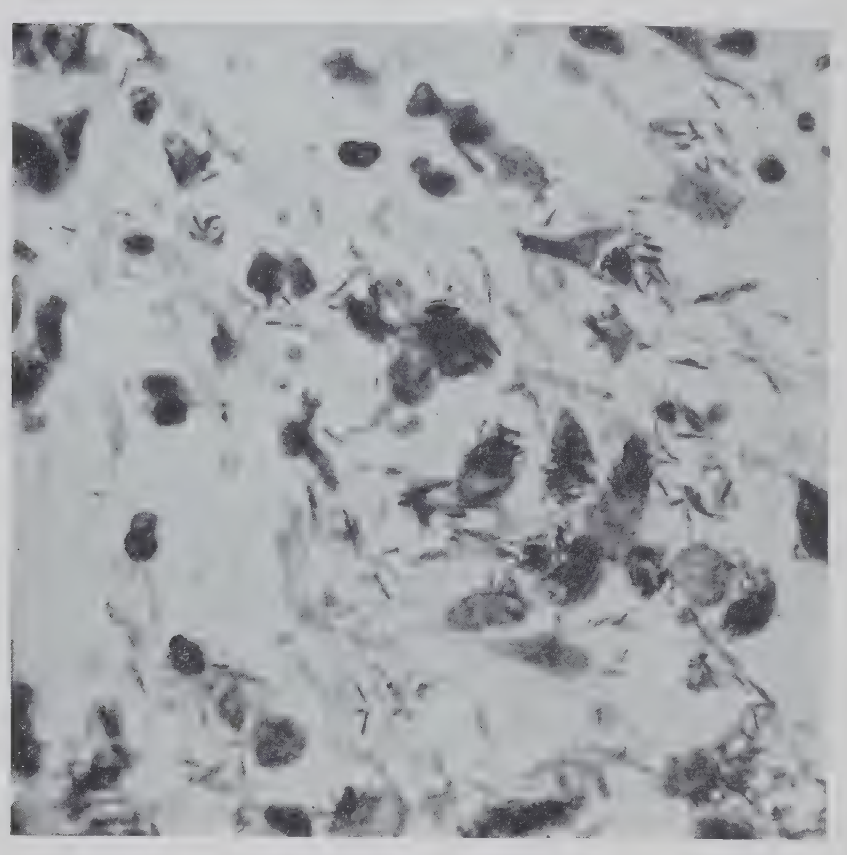


Fig. 469.—Photomicrograph showing *Mycobacterium leprae* in biopsy section of the arm in leprosy. (Krajian acid-fast stain.)

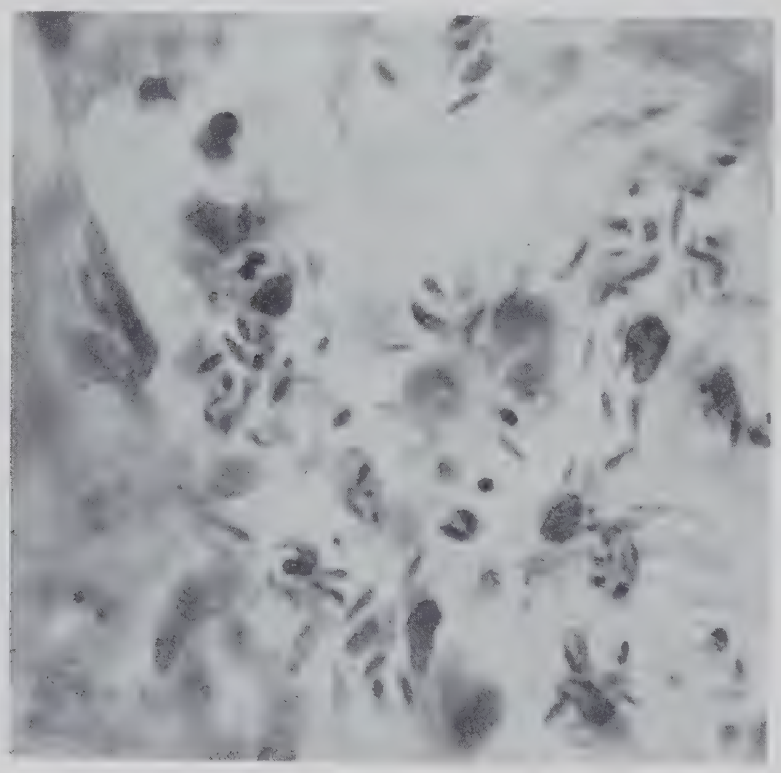


Fig. 470.—Photomicrograph showing Sporotrichum in section of testicle, stained by Krajian bacterial stain.

Immediately apply iso-creosote, 2 or 3 applications, agitating the slide constantly for even differentiation. This removes the excess blue from the tissue as well as from the organisms. This is the "crucial" step; if it is overdifferentiated, the background will be very light blue without affecting the organisms; light blue is the correct color.

Blot immediately in filter paper.

Clear in 3 changes of xylol, 1 minute each.

Mount in gum damar.

For **paraffin sections,** remove the paraffin with 2 applications of xylol, 2 minutes each.

Remove the xylol with 2 applications of anhydrous isopropanol or absolute ethyl alcohol.

Wash in tap water and proceed as for frozen sections.

References

Gradwohl, R. B. H.: 1948. Clinical Laboratory Methods and Diagnosis, ed. 4, St. Louis, The C. V. Mosby Co.

Krajian, A. A.: 1938. A Rapid and Economical Method for Staining Routine Tissue Sections With Hematoxylin and Eosin, Arch. Path. **25:** 376-377.

Krajian, A. A.: 1939. A New Frozen Section Method for the Preparation of Permanent Frozen Sections With Loose Texture Tissues, Am. J. Clin. Path. 9: 5.

Krajian, A. A.: 1939. The Clinical Application of a Twenty-Minute Staining Method for Spirochaeta Pallida in Tissue Sections, Am. J. Syph., Gonor. & Ven. Dis. **23:** 617-620.

Krajian, A. A.: 1940. Histological Technic, St. Louis, The C. V. Mosby Co.

Krajian, A. A.: 1941. A New Staining Method for Gram-Positive and Gram-Negative Organisms in Frozen Sections, Arch. Path. **32:** 825.

Krajian, A. A., and Gradwohl, R. B. H.: Histopathological Technique, St. Louis, The C. V. Mosby Co. In press.

Stokes, J. H.: 1934. Modern Clinical Syphilology, Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Co.

CHAPTER 71

COLLECTION, PRESERVATION, AND EXAMINATION OF STOOLS IN THE TROPICS

OSCAR FELSENFELD AND VIOLA MAE YOUNG

In addition to the usual difficulties encountered in the collection of stools, one faces in the Tropics other obstacles, such as the overgrowth of secondary organisms like Protei, and greater instability of culture media due to the moisture and heat.

Since this volume is not a laboratory manual, but is devoted more particularly to the clinical side of tropical medicine, only those steps are described which are useful in bedside or office examinations, or those which can be performed with a minimum of equipment in a small laboratory.

COLLECTION OF SPECIMENS

It is imperative that the stool be absolutely fresh. This means that it must be examined within a few minutes after it has been collected. If this basic rule of stool examination is not followed, the amebae disintegrate and sensitive microorganisms either die or are so outgrown by secondary microorganisms that they cannot be easily recovered.

The most suitable portion of stool for examination is mucus. If no mucus is found, samples are taken from the surface and from the inner portions of the specimen.

When the patient is suspected of having or is known to have a disease in which the pathogenic organisms are situated in the higher portions of the intestinal tract, and no diarrhea is present, postcathartic stools must be examined. Such specimens are helpful in the detection of carriers of Salmonellae, Giardia, and *Endamoeba histolytica.* Postcathartic stools are collected after the patient has received 1 to 3 teaspoonsful of sodium or magnesium sulfate in one-half glass of water before breakfast. The samples for examination are collected from the second bowel movement after this catharsis.

Manson-Bahr (1943) suggested the examination of rectosigmoidoscopic samples for incitants of dysenteric disorders. D'Antoni (1942) described a method for detecting such organisms. This consists of a cleansing enema about 1 to 1.5 hours before sigmoidoscopy. Then an enema with about 2 liters of tepid saline is given. The last part of the returned enema fluid is used for examination. Finally, aspiration samples are taken from the bowel walls through the sigmoidoscope. When a cathartic is given before the enemas, postcathartic stools may also be collected.

Another method for rectal examination is the swab of Hardy and Watt (1942), which consists of a 10 to 12 cm. piece of rubber tubing of 0.18 cm.

outside diameter, fitted over a regular throat swab. The throat swab is prepared from a wooden applicator with one end covered by rolling cotton tightly over it. Before use, the end of the applicator is inserted just inside the rubber tube. The end of the tube is lubricated and inserted for a distance of about 5 to 6 cm. into the rectum. Now the swab is exposed by withdrawing the tube 2 or 3 cm. The swab is gently rotated, then withdrawn into the tube, and the whole is withdrawn from the patient. The tubing is discarded into a container and sterilized by boiling. The swab is used immediately to streak plates and to make permanent stained slides for examination for intestinal protozoa. Because of the lubricant, the fecal material on the swab cannot be used for saline and iodine-stained suspensions for direct examinations.

Rectal biopsy is useful for the detection of intestinal schistosomiasis.

PRESERVING FLUIDS

When a parasitologic examination cannot be carried out immediately, the stool is mixed with about 10 times its volume of 10 per cent formalin. Formol-fixed material, however, is not very suitable for detailed protozoologic studies. Schaudinn's method is preferred if it is possible to carry it out with the facilities available. This fixative is also indispensable for the preparation of permanent hematoxylin-stained slides. Recently Schaudinn's fluid with the addition of polyvinyl alcohol (P.V.A.) has been recommended. (Page 1566.)

For the latter purpose several slides, preferably with frosted edges, are prepared. The name and number of the patient are written with graphite pencil on the frosted glass. If the stool is hard, some saline is dropped on the farther end of the slides. For liquid stools, a thin coat of egg albumin is used. The sample is mixed with the saline or spread over the egg albumin with the aid of a wooden applicator. The slides are immediately dropped into a modified Schaudinn solution.

Modified Schaudinn Solution.—

Saturated solution of bichloride of mercury in distilled water	200 c.c.
95 per cent ethyl alcohol	100 c.c.

Before use, add to each 100 c.c. of this mixture 7 c.c. of glacial acetic acid. While the mixture of sublimate and alcohol keeps indefinitely, the fluid after the addition of acetic acid must be renewed each week.

The fixative is kept in a Koplin jar. The slides are put into it back to back. When 2 slides are made from each stool specimen, the material from as many as 5 stools can be fixed in 1 jar. The slides remain in the fixative for at least 8 hours, but not longer than 48 hours. They may be mailed or sent by messenger to another laboratory for staining, if this is not carried out locally.

If a bacteriologic examination cannot be carried out immediately, preserving fluids are used. When only a few hours elapse between collection and examination of the material, it is put into 1 per cent trypticase or tryptone broth. Rectal swabs may be dropped into tubes containing such broth.

When longer preservation is necessary, that is, when the specimens are to be shipped, buffered glycerine-saline or desoxycholate-citrate (Gradwohl, 1948) is used.

Add 1 or 2 Gm. of stool, about 5 c.c. of urine, or 5 to 7 c.c. of blood to about 20 c.c. of the preservative.

If suspicion of cholera exists, the preserving fluid of Wilson and Reilly (1940) is used.

STOOL EXAMINATION

A. For Protozoa

1. Direct Smears

Prepare at least 2 slides.

On one end of 1 slide, place a drop of saline.

On the other end, place a drop of D'Antoni's iodine (Chapter 73) (Gradwohl and Kourí, 1948).

On the second slide, place 1 drop of D'Antoni's iodine at one end and at the other end a drop of 0.5 per cent methylene blue in saline.

Emulsify small amounts of the stool in each drop.

Cover each drop carefully with a separate cover slip in such manner that the drops remain separated.

Inspect the saline suspension immediately.

The other preparations must be examined after a few minutes (2 to 4), but before they dry.

If the examination is carried out quickly a warm stage is not necessary.

2. Zinc Flotation

The technic of Faust et al. (1939) in the modification of Otto et al. (1941) is used:

Mix a portion of the fecal specimen, about the size of a bean, with 33.1 per cent zinc sulfate, specific gravity 1.18, in a small vial 5 cm. deep and 1.8 cm. in diameter.

Fill the vial with this solution until the meniscus is rounded over the edge of the tube.

Place a cover slip on the surface and let stand 1 hour.

Next, place a drop of D'Antoni's iodine (Gradwohl and Kourí, 1948) on a slide and put the cover slip on it in such a way that the slide which lies on the surface of the stool-zinc sulfate emulsion rests on the drop of iodine.

Examine under the microscope.

Other methods of concentration are described in the chapters on parasitology.

3. Permanent Hematoxylin-Stained Slides

Any recommended procedure may be used. We have had excellent results with a slightly modified method of Ratcliffe and Parkins (1944) (Felsenfeld and Young, 1945, Gradwohl, 1948). Slides fixed in Schaudinn's fluid are used for this staining.

4. Diagnostic Culture

It seems that the results of diagnostic cultivation of protozoa are less favorable than those achieved with other methods.

B. For Helminths

See Chapter 72.

C. For Bacteria

Shigellae and Salmonellae (Including S. Typhosa)

The methods used for this purpose depend on whether the laboratory prepares its own media or buys the desiccated products.

a. **Laboratories Which Prepare Their Own Media.**—

Each stool specimen must be inoculated into:

(1) One tube of Kauffmann's medium (Gradwohl, 1948a)
(2) Streak one plate of Hajna and Perry (Gradwohl, 1948b)
(3) Streak two D.E.C. plates of Panja and Ghosh (1943).

D.E.C. Plate.—The D.E.C. plate is excellent for the isolation of all types of Salmonella and Shigella. Cholera vibrios grow well on it. It is prepared as follows:

Dissolve	Meat extract	5 Gm.
	Peptone	5 Gm.
	Sodium taurocholate	8.5 Gm.
	Agar	25 Gm.
in	Distilled water	1000 c.c.

Sterilize for 20 minutes at 15 pounds pressure.

For use, melt and adjust the reaction to pH 7.0 to 7.2.

Add:	Dibasic sodium phosphate	7.5 Gm.
	Sodium citrate crystals	8.0 Gm.
	Sodium thiosulfate crystals	8.5 Gm.
	Lactose	12.5 Gm.
	Ferric citrate "scales"	3.0 Gm.

Adjust the reaction to pH 7.4 and add 15 c.c. of a 0.25% watery solution of neutral red, certified.

Boil for 2 minutes, then pour in plates.

The second day, streak the growth from Kauffmann's tube to 1 plate of Hajna and Perry medium and 1 plate of Panja and Ghosh medium.

Incubate all plates for 24 hours. Incubate the Hajna and Perry plates for 48 hours.

Pick up suspicious colonies and transplant to either Hajna's (1945) medium or to the commercial triple sugar iron agar.

Organisms which produce an alkaline slant must be further tested as follows:

(1) *Alkaline slant, acid butt, no hydrogen sulfide:* May be a Shigella or a slow hydrogen sulfide-forming anaerogenic Salmonella (e.g., typhoid bacillus).

Inoculate the growth into peptone or tryptone broth. Test the original culture on the surface of Hajna's or triple sugar iron medium with Shigella antisera (Gradwohl, 1948c) and typhoid "O" (Salmonella IX.XII) serum.

If further differentiation by chemical reactions is needed, inoculate the growth from the peptone or tryptone broth into further media.

(2) *Alkaline slant, acid butt, some hydrogen sulfide:* Test for *Salmonella typhosa* (exceptionally, *Shigella alkalescens*).

(3) *Alkaline slant, acid and gas in butt, hydrogen sulfide formed or not:* It may be a Salmonella, Paracolon, or Proteus. The preliminary tests must include motility; mannitol fermentation, fermentation of sucrose, lactose, and salicin; indol and Voges-Proskauer tests. Salmonellae are usually motile; ferment mannitol, do not attack sucrose, lactose, or salicin; do not form indole; and do not give a positive Voges-Proskauer reaction.

b. Laboratories Which Buy Prefabricated Media.—

The following media are inoculated with stools:

(1) One tube of tetrathionate broth, Difco, or Selenite F, Baltimore Biological Laboratory.

(2) Streak 2 S.S. Difco plates *or* 1 D.C. and 1 D.C.L.S. plate, Baltimore Biological Laboratory.

(3) Streak 1 bismuth sulfite plate, Difco.

The growth in the tetrathionate broth is streaked, the second day, onto 1 D.C. and 1 bismuth sulfite plate.

The procedure is then as described above.

c. Examination of Organisms Suspected of Being Cholera Vibrio.—

(1) Pick suspicious colonies from the D.E.C. plate of Panja and Ghosh (above) and transfer to tryptone or medopeptone broth.

(2) After 6 to 8 hours' incubation, make Gram stain and observe the morphology of the organisms.

(3) Make slide agglutination tests, if possible, with Inaba and Ogawa sera.

(4) Inoculate one tube of each: lactose broth, sucrose broth, arabinose broth, and tryptone broth.

Keep the original tryptone broth culture for the indol test.

The "true" cholera vibrio attacks sucrose but not lactose or arabinose; forms indole; and often gives a positive cholera red reaction.

d. Typing of Enteric Pathogenic Microorganisms.—

There are a number of specialized laboratories which, without charge, determine the exact type of enteric microorganisms which are found in these specimens. These laboratories are called "Salmonella Centers" or "Enteric Centers." At the present time this author knows of the following enteric centers in America:

U. S. Salmonella Center (Director: Dr. P. R. Edwards), Communicable Disease Center, Atlanta 3, Ga.

National Salmonella Center (Director: Dr. E. Seligmann), Beth Israel Hospital, Stuyvesant Park East, New York, N. Y.

Laboratories of the State Department of Health (Director: Dr. F. L. Mickle), Main Street, Hartford, Conn.

Dr. W. R. Hinshaw, Department of Veterinary Medicine, University of California, Davis, Calif. (Main interest: Salmonellae of avian and reptile origin.)*

Dr. Oscar Felsenfeld, Cook County Hospital, Chicago, Ill.

Dr. E. Hormaeche, Institute of Public Health, University of Montevideo, Uruguay.

---

*Recent address: Camp Detrick, Frederick, Md.

Dr. A. Varela, Institute of Public Health and Tropical Medicine, Mexico City, Mexico.

Dr. J. H. Monteverde, Institute of Infectious Diseases, School of Veterinary Medicine, University of Buenos Aires, Argentina.

Dr. Luis M. González, School of Tropical Medicine, San Juan, Puerto Rico.

APPENDIX

Outline for Enteric Surveys in the Tropics

A. Medical field workers, with little experience in this type of work; general practitioners, nurses, etc., collect stools into an outfit consisting of:

1. One bottle containing 10 per cent formalin or D'Antoni's iodine, and,
2. One bottle containing glycerin-saline preservative.

A_1. Veterinary field workers mail suspected material—stools, pus, viscera, etc.—in an outfit consisting of:

1. One bottle containing 10 per cent formalin, and
2. One bottle containing glycerin-saline preservative.

A_2. Sanitary engineers mail water, food, and milk samples, without preservative, to the central laboratory. (See D.)

B. Intermediate laboratories with semiskilled personnel, but under the supervision of a bacteriologist:

1. Streak the material from glycerin-saline preservative to plates, pick colonies, and mail such transplants to central laboratory. (See D.)
2. If fixed slides for protozoa are prepared, carry out the staining of these slides and mail them to central laboratory.

C. Hospital and clinical laboratories collect stools from the sick and examine them directly for parasites, prepare hematoxylin-stained slides,* and carry out flotation methods; streak stools on media, pick colonies, and mail to central laboratory.

D. Central laboratory, headed by specialist in enteric work, with skilled bacteriologists and parasitologists:

1. Examines preserved material and permanent sildes, if necessary,
2. Studies cultures received from other laboratories,
3. Examines veterinary and sanitary material,
4. Keeps evidence of enteric cases and carriers, and
5. Makes final reports to the public health authorities.

E. Public health authorities:

1. Designate areas for surveys,
2. Take steps to insure proper treatment and isolation of the sick and of carriers, and
3. Coordinate the work of physicians, veterinarians, sanitary engineers, and public health workers to combat the infections.

References

D'Antoni, J. S.: 1942. Amebiasis, Internat. Clin. 1: 100-127.

Faust, E. C., Sawitz, W., Tobie, J., Odom, V., Peres, C., and Lincicome, D. R.: 1939. Quoted from American Public Health Association: Diagnostic Procedures and Reagents, ed. 2. New York, 1945.

Felsenfeld, O., and Young, V. M.: 1945. An Improved Method for the Examination of Intestinal Protozoa, Am. J. Clin. Path. 15: 47-49.

Gradwohl, R. B. H.: 1948. Clinical Laboratory Methods and Diagnosis, ed. 4. St. Louis, The C. V. Mosby Co., p. 1373.

Gradwohl, R. B. H.: 1948a. Ibid., pp. 1357, 1367.

---

*For this purpose Schaudinn's fluid is preferred.

Gradwohl, R. B. H.: 1948b. Ibid., p. 1362.
Gradwohl, R. B. H.: 1948c. Ibid., p. 1470.
Gradwohl, R. B. H., and Kourí, P.: 1948. Clinical Laboratory Methods and Diagnosis, vol. III, ed. 4, St. Louis, The C. V. Mosby Co., pp. 129 and 130.
Hardy, A. V., and Watt, J.: 1942. Quoted from Gradwohl: Clinical Laboratory Methods and Diagnosis, 1943, pp. 1201-1202.
Hajna, A. A.: 1945. Triple-Sugar Iron Agar Medium for the Identification of the Intestinal Group of Bacteria, J. Bact. **49**: 515.
Manson-Bahr, P.: 1943. The Dysenteric Disorders, Baltimore, Williams & Wilkins Co.
Otto, G. F., Hewitt, R., and Strahan, D. E.: 1941. Quoted from American Public Health Association: Diagnostic Procedures and Reagents, ed. 2, New York, 1945.
Panja, G., and Ghosh, S. K.: 1943. A Modified Medium for the Isolation of Dysentery, Enteric and Cholera Organisms, Indian M. Gaz. **78**: 43-45.
Ratcliffe, H. L., and Parkins, P. V.: 1944. On the Use of Mallory's Phosphotungstic Acid Hematoxylin for Staining Intestinal Protozoa, J. Lab. & Clin. Med. **29**: 534-535.
Wilson, W. J., and Reilly, A. F.: 1940. Quoted from American Public Health Association; Diagnostic Procedures and Reagents, ed. 2, New York, 1945.

CHAPTER 72

LABORATORY METHODS IN THE DIAGNOSIS OF HELMINTHIASES

FRANCISCO J. AGUILAR

INTRODUCTION

In the diagnosis of parasitic diseases, Kourí and his collaborators (1943) called attention to two methods of laboratory investigation: the *direct*, by which one views the parasite or the elements derived from it, to obtain an *absolute* diagnosis; and the *indirect*, or investigations of the cytologic and humoral reactions of the patient, eosinophilia, the presence of antibodies, allergy, etc., to obtain a *presumptive* diagnosis.

DIRECT METHODS OF DIAGNOSIS OF HELMINTHIASES

A simple macroscopic view is sufficient in many cases to make the diagnosis. In other cases, because the parasites are very small, it is necessary to use magnification, either a simple hand lens or a fully equipped microscope with high magnification.

At times the parasites are present in such small numbers that concentration methods, either mechanical or biologic, are used. The mechanical methods of concentration consist most often of centrifuging, and depend upon the physical nature of the material, as density of eggs. The biologic methods concentrate the parasites actively, by using their natural hydrotropism, thermotropism, or phototropism; by permitting them to multiply in artificial culture media; or by transferring them to the intermediate hosts where they multiply and concentrate (xenodiagnosis).

I. Examination of Stools

A. COLLECTION OF THE SPECIMEN

Recently passed stools must be collected in clean, widemouthed, sterile glass receptacles.* No antiseptics should be added. Avoid mixing the feces with urine since urine alters the viability of the parasites. The stool must be protected from insects, especially flies.

Certain authors suggest that the stool should be obtained after a laxative such as magnesium sulfate. In the event that the examination is negative, it may be necessary to make repeated examinations of as many as 8 to 10 specimens. The first day's specimen should be spontaneously passed; then specimens are obtained alternately, first after a laxative, then another without the laxative, next with the laxative, and so on.

---

*Editor's note (O. F.): In the United States, cardboard containers are frequently found satisfactory and are easy to dispose of.

Certain helminths cause lesions around the anal orifice, accompanied by itching. In the presence of such symptoms, search the stools for *Enterobius vermicularis, Taenia saginata, Inermicapsifer cubensis,* or *Dipylidium caninum.**

B. TECHNIC OF HELMINTHOLOGIC EXAMINATION OF THE STOOL

1. **Macroscopic Examination.**—This is a search for parasitic elements without the aid of a microscope, for female *E. vermicularis,* gravid segments of *T. saginata, I. cubensis, D. caninum,* etc. When such elements are seen in the stool specimen, they should be separated, and a simple hand lens or a compound binocular microscope should be used. In dealing with liquid or pasty stools, it may be necessary to use a screen to sift out the parasitic elements.

2. **Microscopic Examination.**—In a routine examination of feces for eggs or larvae of helminths, make an unstained preparation on a microscopic slide, using a thick portion of the feces. Then make a finer preparation, and last, one from the screened and centrifuged sedimented portion. Also examine a preparation made after concentration with a low density fluid, such as that of Telemann, or Carlos and Barthelmy. If looking for protozoa at the same time, use Lugol's solution† or make a Gram stain, or, in some cases, use the iron-hematoxylin method.†

3. **Preparation of a Fresh Specimen for Microscopic Examination (Method of Kourí).**—With a wooden applicator, toothpick, or platinum loop, pick up a piece of fecal material about the size of a grain of rice.

Holding the slide in the left hand, place a particle of stool in the center of the slide.

Place a drop of saline on the fecal matter and mix with the applicator. This is a fresh thick preparation.

A finer fresh preparation can be easily made from the thick portion by absorbing the excess fluid with filter paper placed at the edge of the cover glass, adding water, and at the same time exerting very gentle pressure with the finger, in a rotary manner, in the center of the cover glass.

To stain, place a drop of Lugol solution over the drop of fecal suspension in the center of a slide, mix with the applicator, and cover with a cover glass. Donaldson iodide-iodine and eosin solution can be used in place of Lugol if preferred.*

C. CONCENTRATION OF EGGS OF HELMINTHS

1. **Water Centrifugalization.**—Mix 1 to 10 Gm. of fecal matter with 10 to 20 times its volume of water. Pass the mixture through 2 layers of fine gauze and collect the filtrate in 1 or 2 centrifuge tubes.

Centrifuge at 2,500 r.p.m. for 3 to 5 minutes.

Decant the supernatant fluid and examine the sediment under high and low power. This method serves to concentrate eggs of *Fasciola hepatica* and nonfertile eggs of *Ascaris lumbricoides.*

2. **Lane Direct Centrifugation Method.**—Place a small amount of feces in a special test tube and mix with tap water.

Centrifuge for 1 minute at 1,000 to 1,200 r.p.m. and decant. Repeat the washing if necessary.

Fill the tube with saturated solution of sodium chloride (sp. gr. 1.19) and top with an 18 by 18 mm., No. 3 cover glass. Be sure that the surface film touches the cover glass.

Centrifuge 1 minute.

Lift the cover slip straight upward and mount on a glass slide.

3. **Method of Willis and Malloy.**—See Gradwohl and Kourí (1948), Vol. III, p. 46.

4. **Acetic Acid-Ether Method.**—Suspend about 1 or 2 Gm. of fecal material in about 10 c.c. of 5 per cent solution of acetic acid in a test tube, and shake thoroughly for a few seconds.

---

*Editor's note (O. F.): The examination of material collected through an anal swab is preferred in such cases.

†Editor's note (O. F.): Different opinion is expressed in Chapter 71

Allow to stand for 30 seconds to permit the heavy particles to settle to the bottom of the tube.

Filter through a single or double layer of gauze and collect the filtrate in a test tube. The tube should be one-third full.

Add an equal volume of ether, stopper tightly with a rubber stopper, and shake vigorously, about 15 to 30 seconds, to obtain a thorough mixture.

Immediately centrifuge for 2, 3, or 5 minutes to separate the material into 4 well-marked layers. The topmost layer is the ether extract. Immediately below this is a plug of detritus, composed of coarser particles, proteins, and soap. The acid solution is below this plug, and a small amount of sediment is at the bottom of the tube.

The 3 upper layers can easily be removed by a gentle jerk of the tube, leaving the sediment adhering to the bottom of the tube, if this is done gently.

Collect the sediment with a capillary pipette and place on a slide. Cover with a cover glass and examine microscopically. The material may also be fixed and stained.

This method gives a much higher degree of concentration than do many other methods.

5. **Method of Telemann and Rivas.**—Place in a test tube 10 c.c. of a 5 per cent acetic acid solution and add 1 or 2 Gm. of feces. Stopper with a cork and shake thoroughly to render the contents homogeneous.

Allow to stand for 1 minute to sediment the thicker particles, then filter through 2 layers of fine gauze. Collect the filtrate in a centrifuge tube.

Mix the liquid filtrate with equal parts of sulfuric ether.

Stopper the tube and mix the contents.

Centrifuge at 2,500 r.p.m. for 5 minutes. The material separates into 4 layers: a top layer of ether, a layer of residue, a layer of acid, and a small quantity of sediment at the bottom of the tube.

Decant the upper portion, then pick up the sediment from the bottom of the tube, using a capillary pipette. Examine under high and low powers.

This method concentrates the eggs of helminths but has the objectionable feature of destroying protozoan cysts.

6. **Method of Faust (Zinc Sulfate Flotation).**—See Chapter 71, and Gradwohl and Kourí (1948).

This is the most efficient method thus far devised for concentration of protozoan cysts from feces. It is satisfactory as brine flotation for helminth eggs, and it also floats live Stronglyloides larvae (Faust, 1939).

7. **Loughlin and Spitz Method for Concentrating Helminth Eggs and Protozoan Cysts (Saline-Aerosol-Ether-Xylol).**—Measure 4 c.c. of feces into a dilution-counting flask which has been filled to the 56 c.c. mark with isotonic sodium chloride solution.

Add 8 drops of laboratory aerosol.

Add several glass beads (6 mm.), and after giving the mixture an initial shaking, set aside in a refrigerator for several hours or overnight. Remove and complete the comminution of the feces by vigorous shaking, assuring adequate distribution of the eggs throughout the fecal suspension.

Transfer 1.5 c.c. of the suspension immediately to 15 c.c. conical centrifuge tube.

Add 3.5 c.c. of isotonic sodium chloride solution, 5 c.c. of ether, and 2 drops of xylol. Place a rubber stopper in the tube and shake for 30 seconds.

Centrifuge at 2,000 r.p.m. for 1.5 minutes and allow the centrifuge to come to a stop gradually without interference.

Separate the floating coagulum from the walls of the tube with a thin wooden applicator.

Decant quickly, without disturbing the sediment in the bottom of the tube, then, while holding the tube almost horizontal, clean off any coagulum adhering to the inside of the tube with an applicator covered with gauze.

Add 1 or 2 drops of isotonic sodium chloride solution to the sediment and mix thoroughly with a capillary pipette.

Transfer the entire suspension to a 1.5 by 3 inch (3.8 by 7.6 cm.) glass slide and cover with a 22 by 30 mm. cover glass.

Examine the entire preparation for eggs. Those found are from 0.1 Gm. of the original fecal specimen.

The Stoll displacement flask, although preferred, may be replaced by any container similarly marked. A little caution in decanting is necessary in order not to disturb the sediment. Protozoan cysts may be stained with iodine solution.

When eggs are demonstrated, the contents of the displacement flasks may be used for dilution counting without any additional preparation.

8. **Baroody Method (Modification of the Faust Method for Concentration of Cysts and Eggs).**—See Gradwohl and Kourí (1948).

9. **Baroody and Most Water Centrifugal Method for Demonstrating Schistosoma Japonicum Eggs.**—See Gradwohl and Kourí (1948).

D. COUNTING HELMINTH EGGS

Counting helminth eggs is not a practical routine test, but it is useful to give an approximate idea of the intensity of parasitic infestation.

1. **Method of Stoll.**—See Gradwohl and Kourí (1948), Vol. III, p. 45.

2. **Method of Caldwell and Caldwell.**—This is a combination of the technics of Willis and of Stoll. Thirty per cent antiformin solution is used.

Syrup is made from cane sugar (density 1.230) by adding 750 Gm. of sugar to 1,000 c.c. of distilled water.

In a tube or flask graduated to 40 c.c., place a mixture of 4 Gm. of stool and 4 c.c. of Antiformin solution.

Mix with a glass rod.

Keeping the rod in the tube or flask, place in the incubator at 37° C. for 1 hour.

Add 32 c.c. of the syrup, and mix the 2 fluids.

Introduce a serologic pipette to the bottom of the tube, covering the upper opening so that some air is trapped in the pipette, and withdraw 0.1 c.c. of the suspension from the bottom of the tube.

Place the mixture on a slide and spread it into a rectangle. It is not necessary to use a cover glass.

Count the number of eggs under the microscope, using the low magnification.

Calculation.—The number of eggs counted times 100 gives the number of eggs per gram of fecal material. If 0.2 c.c. instead of 0.1 c.c. was extracted, multiply by 50 instead of by 100.

If eggs are not found, place the total suspension in another flask and allow it to remain for 20 minutes, then place some of the pellicle on a slide.

3. **Hamburg Cover Glass Method.**—This method, devised by Hung and Fülleborn, makes use of saline flotation for increasing the yield of eggs, and provides a certain accuracy without the time-consuming labors of the Lane method

Use a special glass or metal cylinder about 5 cm. in diameter and 3.5 cm. in height, provided with a depression in the bottom which will hold 1 Gm. of formed feces.

Fill the container almost to the top with concentrated salt solution, and mix thoroughly.

Carefully place three 18 mm. square cover glasses on the surface and allow them to remain for 10 minutes.

Place the cover glasses on glass lides.

Count all the eggs in these 3 areas and average the counts.

Compute the total number of eggs in the specimen by multiplying the count by 7.0 if the eggs number 20 to 40; by 7.5 if they number 40 to 70; by 8.5 if they number 70 to 90; and by 9.5 if they number 90 or more (Faust, 1939; Gradwohl and Kourí, 1948).

Conclusions.—Methods of counting eggs permit one to establish the rela- ionship between the number of parasites in the intestines and the number f eggs found in the stool. The figures vary greatly according to the author nd the method (Stoll, Hill, Soper, Cort, Augustine, Nazmi, Helmy, Mac- avran, and Manalang), as well as upon conditions and consistency of the tool.

Hirai has given the following formulas for Ascaris:

Eggs per mg. × 100 ÷ 2,770 = number of females.

Number of females × 4.5 ÷ 5.5 = number of males.

In Table XXXV, Zschucke (1931), are given figures for pasty stools Langeron, 1942):

TABLE XXXV

NUMBER OF EGGS ER GRAM OF FECES	ANCYLOSTOMA DUODENALE	NECATOR AMERICANUS	ASCARIS LUMBRICOIDES	TRICHURIS TRICHIURA
1. Per female	125	50	1,000	75
2. Per helminth	62	25	600	47

According to the second figure, the calculation for Ancylostoma and Ascaris shows a proportion of females to males of 1:1, while for Trichuris, 1:1.7.

For stools of various consistencies the following coefficients are given as to he number of eggs found: solid stools, 0.5; semisolid stools, 0.66; semiliquid tools, 1.5; and liquid stools, 2.0.

Earl and Doering (1932) concluded that the logarithm of the figure ob- ained in an exact enumeration represents exactly the normal distribution. There is, therefore, a correlation between the logarithm of the count obtained n a mixture of stools and the logarithm of the total number of helminths xpelled since treatment began.

E. NEGATIVE EXAMINATION

With respect to the diagnosis of helminthiasis, a negative examination is lways subject to doubt (Langeron, 1942), because parasitism can exist with- out manifesting itself by the presence of eggs in the stools:

1. When only male nematodes are present.
2. When there are only larvae of cestodes or young nematodes.
3. When the females are infertile.
4. By reason of the fact that there are negative periods for expulsion f helminth eggs.
5. When the parasites do not produce eggs in the intestines (Taenia, Enterobius, etc.).

F. DIAGNOSIS OF SPECIAL CASES

1. **Schistosomiasis Mansoni.**—In formed stools, eggs can be found in the bloody nucus. Khalil and Salah El Din use a conical glass with saturated salt solution. Eggs of Ancylostoma float on top; in the bottom of the flask they found eggs of Schistosoma.*

---

*Editor's note (O. F.): The acid-ether flotation technic and rectal biopsies are fre- uently helpful.

2. **Enterobiasis.**—

a. *Finding the Oviferous Female.*—Sometimes the female parasites can be seen in the excreta; or an intense pruritus, exaggerated at night, is present. Examination of the anal region reveals the parasites. The oviferous females are brought to the laboratory in water or in alcohol. If they are in a dry state, they are retracted, desiccated, but contain typical asymmetrical eggs.

b. *Microscopic Examination of the Scrapings From the Anal Margins.*—

(1) *Hall tube (NIH swab):* This method was developed at the National Institute of Health in Washington, D. C., by Hall and collaborators (Wright, Jones, Cram, Nolan). It consists of a piece of Cellophane wrapped around the end of a glass rod, and bound down by a rubber band. This is carried in a glass tube.

In the morning, before washing, the margins of the anus are rubbed with this Cellophane. The swab is introduced into the container and sent to the laboratory. The rubber band is removed and the Cellophane examined after the addition of 2 drops of saline.

(2) *Method of Graham:* The method of Graham consists of placing a narrow strip of transparent, gummed cellulose tape (Scotch tape), about 8 cm. long, over the anal area, then transferring it to a microscopic slide. If eggs are present, they will adhere to the paper and be readily seen under the microscope.

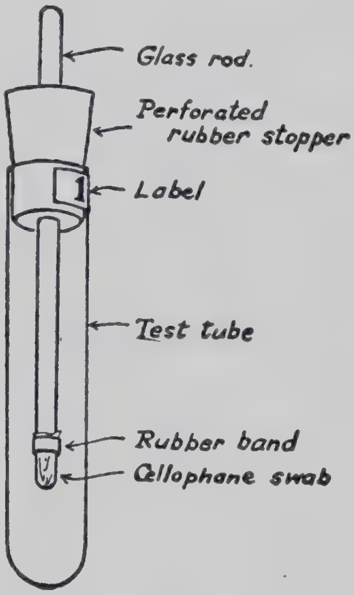


Fig. 471.—The NIH swab (Hall).

(3) *Graham-Mazzotti method:* A piece of transparent gummed cellophane paper (Scotch tape) is doubled over the rounded end of a wooden tongue depressor, cut in half, so that the glued surface is turned outward. The ends of the tape are doubled back toward the inside, about 0.5 cm., so that the Scotch tape will adhere to the tongue depressor. The specimen is collected by holding the wooden depressor in the right hand, as shown in Fig. 472, while the anal opening is separated by the left hand. The paper is then rubbed from one side to the other over the anal margin, with the cellophane end of the tongue depressor. The paper is then put on a slide.

If one wishes to preserve these swabs before examining, they can be placed in an accordion-pleated piece of thick waxed paper covered with talcum to keep the tape from sticking to the paper.

Eggs of *Taenia saginata, Hymenolepis nana, Trichuris trichiura,* and *Ascaris lumbricoides* can also be isolated occasionally in this way (Wyss, 1946).

c. *Microscopic Examination of the Mucosa or Scrapings From Subungual Grooves.*—Eggs of Enterobius can be found by examining the subungual grooves.

d. *Direct Examination of the Anus* at times permits finding the oviferous female.

e. *Examination of the Feces.*—Macroscopic and microscopic examinations as well as concentration can be used.

3. **Ancylostomiasis (Method of Clayton-Lane)** (Direct centrifugal flotation).—Emulsify 1 Gm. of feces in water and centrifuge.

Dilute the sediment in 18 c.c. of saturated solution of sodium chloride.

Centrifuge in a tube with a flat bottom, covered with a cover glass 0.5 mm. thick, held in place by clamps. The eggs will come to the top where they cling to the cover glass.

Lift the cover glass and examine it as a hanging drop preparation by placing 2 of the corners over 2 small masses of Plasticine.

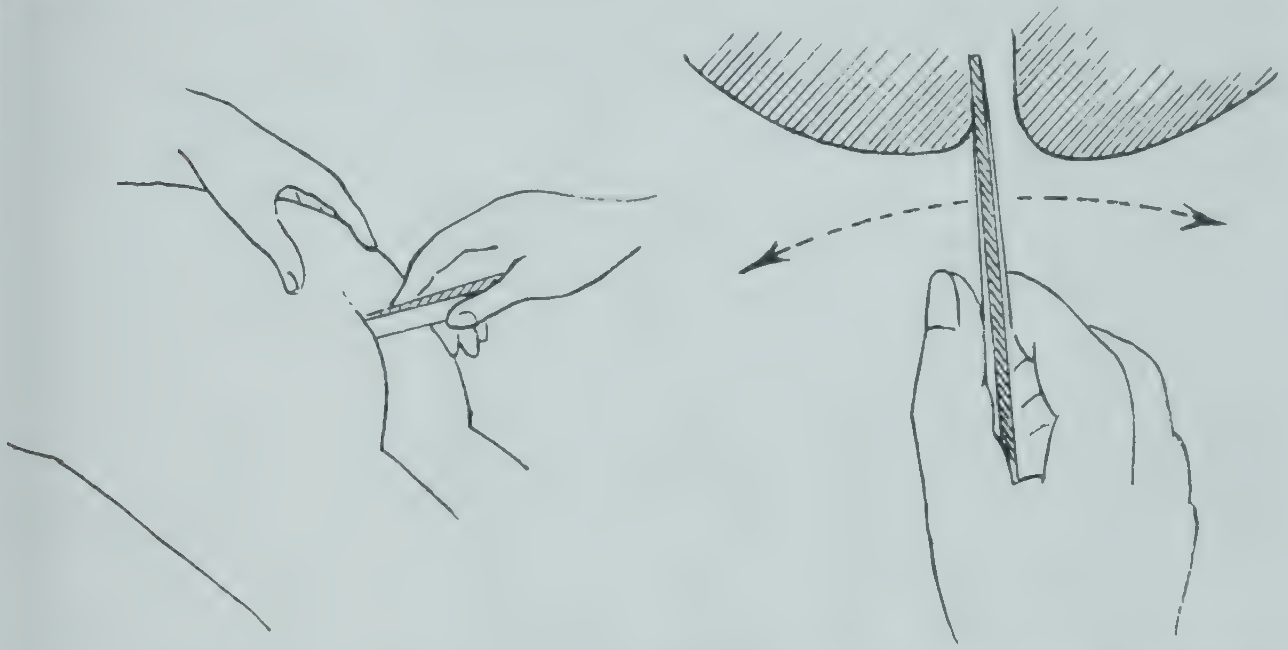


Fig. 472.—Diagnosis of enterobiasis. Modified method of Graham. (Reproduced from Nicholás Wyss, Guatemala, 1946.)

II. Parasitic Examination of Bile

This technic is used largely for the diagnosis of human fascioliasis as well as for clonorchiasis, strongyloidiasis, necatoriasis, ancylostomiasis, biliary ascariasis, giardiasis, and amebiasis.

Technic of Kourí for Examination of Bile Obtained by Duodenal Intubation in the Diagnosis of Certain Types of Duodenal-Jejunal Parasitism.—

Equipment: Cylinders graduated to 500 and 1,000 c.c.; Petri dishes, 20 cm. in diameter; graduates; centrifuge tubes; pipettes; watch glasses; slides and cover slips; microscopes, binocular and dark field, with natural or artificial light.

Method: Pour the bile into a Petri dish over a white background.

Note the macroscopic characteristics of the bile, especially whether or not there is mucus and if there is any movement in the fluid. Place the Petri dish alternately over a white and a dark background.

Yellow or brownish mucus contains eggs in large quantities, whereas light-colored mucus usually does not show eggs. Use a short pipette of wide caliber to pick up any suspicious mucus flakes. Put these flakes in a watch glass for microcopic examination.

Examine all the floccules in the watch glass, microscopically, after centrifuging and washing by decanting and repeated centrifuging. Examine the material in the watch glass under low power. If a binocular stereoscopic microscope is available, a direct examination can be made of the material in a Petri dish.

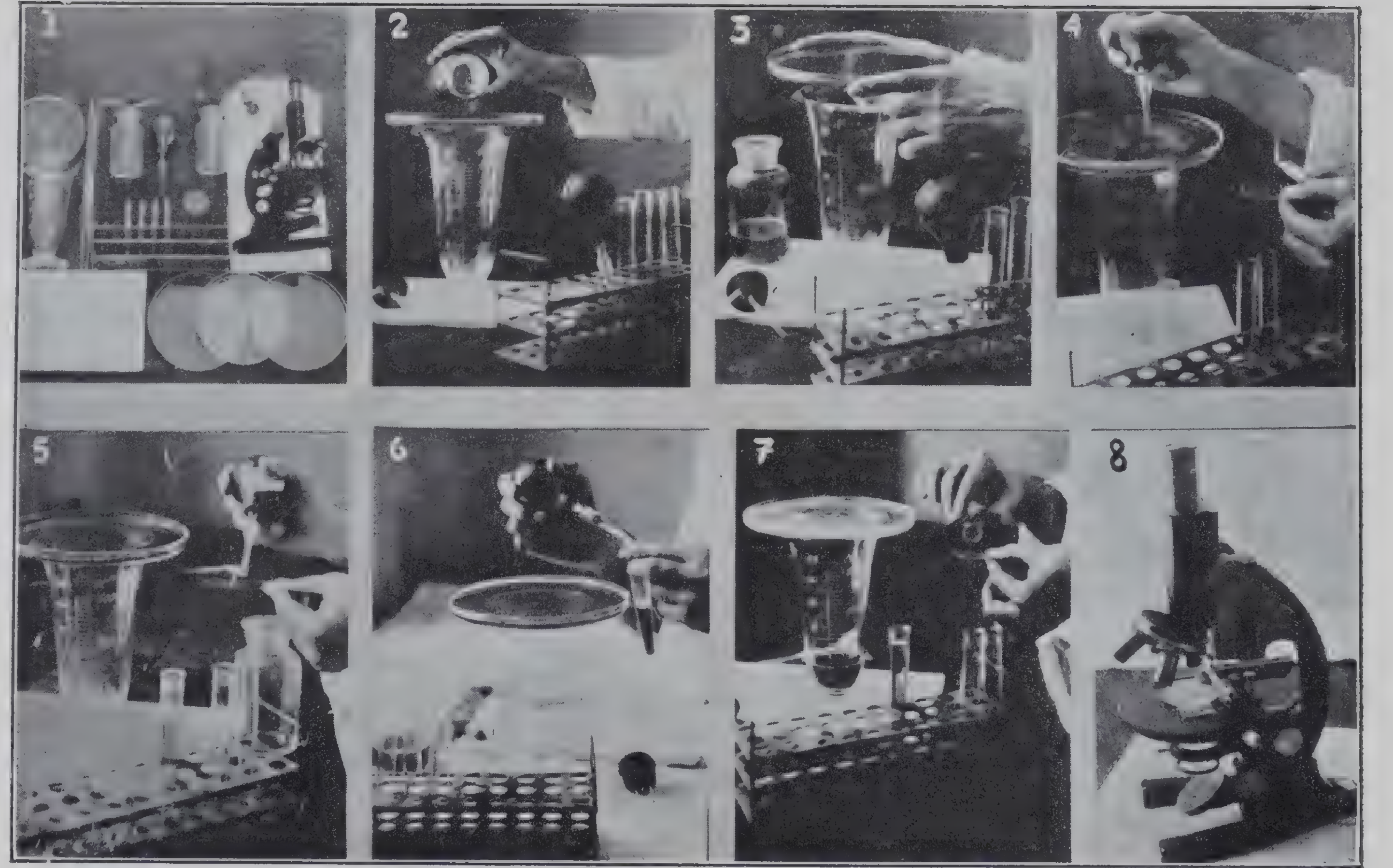


Fig. 473.—*Fasciola hepatica.* Kourí's method of examination of bile obtained by duodenal intubation.

1, Materials: 500 to 1000 c.c. graduated beaker, 20 cm. Petri dishes, brick mold, centrifuge tubes, pipettes, watch glasses, slides and cover glasses, microscope, substage lamp, black and white paper.

2, Step 1: Pour bile into Petri dish on a beaker which is over a piece of white paper.

3, Step 2: Observe macroscopic characteristics of bile, particularly the appearance of the suspended mucus. Move the Petri dish alternately over the black then the white background.

4, Step 3: Brown or yellow mucus contains numerous eggs, white mucus none. With a short large-bore pipette attached to a large bulb, suck up the suspected mucus flakes, and transfer to a watch glass or slide.

5, Examine microscopically. The eggs are found in greater numbers in the center of the watch glass.

6, Step 4: Transfer all flakes to a centrifuge tube.

7, Step 5: Wash all flakes, centrifuge, decant the supernatant fluid, and examine microscopically in the watch glass.

8, Step 6: Place the watch glass with the flakes on a slide, and examine with low power. If a binocular dissecting microscope is used, examine directly in the Petri dish.

Examination of oviferous flakes (Kourí) usually provides evidence of infestation. This method may be used in clonorchiasis, lambliasis, and strongyloidiasis, and is valuable in necatoriasis, ancylostomiasis, and biliary ascariasis.

(From Gradwohl and Kourí: Clinical Laboratory Methods and Diagnosis, ed. 4., vol. III, St. Louis, The C. V. Mosby Co.)

III. Parasitic Examination of Blood and Lymph

(For filariasis and schistosomiasis hepatica)

Filariasis

Microfilariae may be found in the peripheral blood, if they are present in moderate numbers, by direct examination between cover glass and slide, or by using concentration methods.

1. **Direct Method Using Unstained Material.**—Puncture the finger or the ear lobe and place a drop of blood on a slide. Cover immediately with a cover glass and examine microscopically with low magnification. Microfilariae show typical movement.

2. **Examination of Stained Blood.**—Obtain blood by puncture of the finger or ear lobe and make a thick drop preparation. Let dry in the air.

Cover the slide with 1 per cent acetic acid solution for 1 minute to dehemoglobinize.

Fix in methyl alcohol and stain by the Giemsa method.*

3. **Stubli's Concentration Method.**—

Material.—Three per cent acetic acid solution; Giemsa stain, 1 drop of stock stain in each c.c. of neutral distilled water.

Technic.—Obtain 5 c.c. of blood by venous puncture, and add immediately to 10 to 15 volumes of 3 per cent acetic acid.

Shake rapidly to prevent coagulation.

Centrifuge for 3 to 5 minutes at 1,500 r.p.m.

Decant the supernatant fluid and take a drop of the sediment for direct examination. Examine under low power.

Stain the remaining sediment with Giemsa stain or with hematoxylin-eosin after removing all the acetic acid by washing with large quantities of neutral distilled water.

4. **Adults and Embryos.**—Adults and embryos are found in the respective tissues. See Chapters 39 and 40.

IV. Helminthologic Examination of Exudates, Cystic Fluids, and Spinal Fluid

A. EXUDATES

Examination of the exudates of the different serosae (pleural, peritoneal, pericardial, tunica vaginalis) will in some cases establish an etiologic diagnosis of helminthiasis. It is best to make an immediate examination, before the fibrin has coagulated (Widal and Ravaut). The fibrin clot may be more or less apparent and voluminous according to the case, but it always forms within several hours or several minutes. The fibrin mesh will gather in a great number of parasitic elements, so that it is best to examine the specimen before the clot forms.

1. **Direct Examination of Unstained Material.**—If the liquid is very thick, syrupy or purulent, dilute it with a drop of saline after it has been placed on a slide. Cover with a cover glass and observe under a microscope.

2. **Direct Examination of the Unstained Sediment Obtained by Centrifuging.**

3. **Examination of a Smear Prepared Like a Blood Film.** Fix this in methyl alcohol and stain with Giemsa stain.

---

*See also Chapters 39 and 68.

To prevent coagulation of the liquid, an *anticoagulant* can be added immediately upon collection of the specimen: 5 per cent sodium citrate, or a solution containing 2.8 Gm. of potassium oxalate in a liter of 0.85 per cent saline.

Recognition of the proligerous vesicles, scolices, and hooklets of *Echinococcus granulosus* enables one to make a definite diagnosis of echinococcosis.

B. CYSTIC FLUIDS

The technic for helminthologic examination of cystic liquids is the same as that described for exudates: (1) examination of the unstained material; (2) examination of sediment obtained by centrifuging; and (3) examination of a smear stained like a blood smear.

C. SPINAL FLUID

It is possible to find forms of *E. granulosus* by direct examination of the sediment obtained by centrifuging.

V. Helminthologic Examination of Urine

Among the helminths that can be found in the urinary sediment are:

1. The microfilariae of *W. bancrofti,* if they pass into the urinary passages.
2. The elements of the hydatid cyst which has ruptured into the urinary passages.
3. Eggs of *Schistosoma haematobium.*
4. Eggs of *Dioctophyme visceralis (Eustrongylus gigas),* a parasite which lives in the renal pelvis.

VI. Helminthologic Examination of Sputum

A macroscopic examination is first made, followed by a microscopic examination. The mucopurulent portions, particles of necrotic tissue, and any portions supposedly containing parasitic elements are selected for examination.

It is possible to find, in the sputum, larvae of *Necator americanus, Strongyloides stercoralis,* and *Ascaris lumbricoides,* the eggs of *Paragonimus westermani* and *kellicotti,* and elements of hydatid cysts.

VII. Helminthologic Examination of the Tissues: Biopsies and Histopathologic Sections

A. BIOPSIES

1. Onchocerciasis.—

a. *Biopsy of the Skin.*—Cleanse the region, the wall of the ear or the forehead, and remove a small portion of the skin adjacent to the region of the nodules with a pair of curved scissors, a safety razor blade, or a straight razor. The cut must be made with the least possible bleeding.

Transfer these fine sections of skin to slides and cover with a cover glass, adding a few drops of saline solution. Microscopic examination under low power will reveal the microfilariae with their characteristic movements.

b. *Aspiration Biopsy.*—Puncture is made with a 22-gauge needle attached to a hypodermic syringe. Immediately place the product obtained by aspiration on a slide, and cover with a cover glass.

2. Schistosomiasis Mansoni.—

Biopsy of the Anorectal Mucosa.—The polypoid lesions of the rectum are chosen for examination. Use the usual routine histologic technic, staining with hematoxylin and eosin.

B. HISTOPATHOLOGIC SECTIONS

See Chapters 69 and 70.

The following is a résumé of the helminthiases in which definite diagnosis can be made by histopathologic sections:

- Nematodiases:
  - Trichuriasis: appendicitis produced by *Trichuris trichiura*
  - Enterobiasis: appendicitis produced by *Enterobius vermicularis*
  - Filariasis bancrofti: funiculitis produced by *Wuchereria bancrofti* and *Wuchereria malayi*
  - Onchocerciasis: subcutaneous nodules and ocular lesions produced by *Onchocerca volvulus*
  - Trichinosis: cysts and larvae of *Trichinella spiralis* localized in the diaphragm and other muscles
- Cestodiases:
  - Cysticercosis: cerebral or other localizations due to the larval form of *Taenia solium* called *Cysticercus cellulosae*
  - Echinococcosis: hydatid cyst (development of the larva of *Echinococcus granulosus,* especially in the liver, lung, etc.)
- Trematodiases:
  - Fascioliasis hepatica: lesions produced in the biliary canaliculae by the *Fasciola hepatica*
  - Clonorchiasis: lesions produced in the liver by the *Clonorchis sinensis*
  - Paragonimiasis: lesions produced in the lung by the *Paragonimus westermani* and *Paragonimus kellicotti*

VIII. Xenodiagnosis

Xenodiagnosis was introduced by Brumpt in 1914. It makes the diagnosis by means of natural culture of the parasite in the digestive tube of the habitual vector host or in an occasional host.

This procedure is especially useful in the diagnosis of Chagas' disease and the relapsing fevers, as well as in the diagnosis of onchocerciasis and bancroftian filariasis.

A. ONCHOCERCIASIS

Xenodiagnosis in this disease was suggested by Nettel. The species reputedly possible transmitters of *Onchocerca volvulus* are: in America, *Simulium aridum, S. ochraceum, and S. mooseri;* in Africa, *S. damnosum* and *S. neavei.*

Technic.—A Simulium is allowed to come to rest on the skin of the individual under examination. It is preferable to wait for one that will bite in some region previously selected, which is easy to find in the zones of greater infestation. When the Simulium has lodged on the skin, a test tube or a small widemouthed flask is placed over it. After it has finished sucking, it passes into the tube or flask. The container is then stoppered with cotton containing a few drops of chloroform, which will kill the Simulium.

Proceed immediately to dissect the insect, with needles, over a glass slide containing a drop of saline solution. Use only the abdominal segment, which contains the stomach with the absorbed products. The head and the thorax can be separated and searched for the latent forms, because in xenodiagnosis only infections with living microfilariae are successful.

B. FILARIASIS BANCROFTI

Craig and Ashburn observed that the saliva of the Culex mosquito (*C. fatigans*) attracts the microfilariae. Kourí and collaborators used this method with laboratory-bred Culex. This procedure is considered by some authors as a biologic concentration method for finding microfilariae of Wuchereria.

IX. Experimental Inoculations

In human helminthiasis, experimental inoculations are made primarily for investigative purposes.

X. Cultures in Vitro: Natural and Artificial Media

A. COPROCULTURE

Coproculture is made for the diagnosis of parasitism by *Strongyloides stercoralis, Necator americanus, Ancylostoma duodenale,* and *Schistosoma mansoni,* when the larvae of these parasites or their eggs occur in very scanty numbers in the feces.

For this method, it has often been recommended that the feces be mixed with animal charcoal or with pulverized earth, sterilized, or with a little water. Kourí and collaborators obtained good results without using any of these substances. They make use of the property of some larvae of being attracted toward water (positive hydrotropism) or toward light (positive phototropism). When some water is poured over the fecal mass, and the specimen kept at a temperature of 28° to 32° C., after a certain time, if the feces contain larvae of ancylostomas or of strongyloides, the larvae leave the feces and move toward the water, where they concentrate. They can be seen when a drop of this liquid is examined, although they could not have been found if a direct examination of the feces had been made, because of their scarcity. Coproculture is, therefore, a method of biologic enrichment based on the tropism of the larvae. This justifies the term "tropodiagnosis" proposed by Kourí and collaborators.

B. CULTURE OF THE FECES

Culture of the feces is made by inoculation of artificial media. This method is used especially for the diagnosis of intestinal amebiasis and other protozooses, and will not be discussed in this chapter.

PRESUMPTIVE DIAGNOSIS OF THE HELMINTHIASES

In this group there should be considered (1) serology, (2) hematology, and (3) histology.

I. Serologic Diagnosis of the Helminthiases

Serologic and related reactions depend on the development of a host-organism reaction. In helminthic infections, those species of worms which are intimately associated with the host tissues, so that their by-products become diffused throughout the body, are more readily diagnosed by serologic methods. Thus the species of Schistosoma, Echinococcus, and Trichinella give a positive serologic test in a very high percentage of cases, while most helminths of the intestinal tract, as well as certain of the trematodes resident in the biliary passages, give negative or uncertain tests.

Complement fixation, agglutination, and precipitation tests are used in the serologic diagnosis of parasitic infections for identification of parasites.

A. COMPLEMENT FIXATION

The technic on the whole is similar to that of the Wassermann test for syphilis, although the antigen must be either species-specific or group-specific.

1. **Schistosomiasis.**—The antigen may be prepared either from adult worms removed from human or reservoir hosts, or from the livers of snails containing the infecting agent.

a. *Yoshimoto Technic.*—

Alcoholic antigen: Extract the dried powdered worms with 20 parts of absolute alcohol for 24 hours with frequent shaking.

Centrifuge until clear.

Store the supernatant liquid in ampules in an ice chest.

Dilute the alcoholic extract, for use, with physiologic saline. It may be evaporated and an aqueous solution made from the residue.

Serum: Inactivate patient's serum at 56° C. for one-half hour, and use it undiluted.

Complement: Dilute fresh guinea pig serum, just before using, with 10 parts of physiologic saline.

Hemolysin: Prepare hemolysin in rabbits by injecting intravenously, at 7-day intervals, 3 to 4 injections, 5 c.c. each of 5 per cent suspension of goat blood cells in saline.

Recover the serum in the usual manner and inactivate at 56° C. for 30 minutes.

Dilute 1:2.5 immediately before using.

Technic: Distribute the diluted antigen, in amounts of 0.2 to 0.4 c.c., in a series of sterilized test tubes.

Add 0.2 c.c. of serum.

Add 0.2 c.c. of freshly diluted complement.

Shake the tubes thoroughly and place in a water bath at 37° C. for 1 hour.

Add 0.2 c.c. of diluted hemolysin and 1 c.c. of a 2.5 per cent suspension of washed goat corpuscles.

Replace in the water bath for 2 hours.

Remove and leave in a cold place overnight.

Read in the usual manner.

b. *Fairley Technic.*—

Alcoholic antigen: Tease wet snail livers directly in absolute alcohol, using one c.c. of alcohol per liver.

Shake for 20 minutes.

Extract for 24 hours at 37° C. without shaking.

Filter.

Concentrate the filtrate in a water bath at 45° C. by bubbling air through the solution until it becomes turbid.

Add absolute alcohol slowly until the solution becomes clarified.

Store in 1 c.c. quantities in ampules in the ice chest.

For use, dilute 1:40 with physiologic saline (Belding, 1943).

Serum, complement, and hemolysin: These are prepared as in the Wassermann technic. *Technic* is similar to that of the Wassermann reaction.

Serum diagnosis is particularly valuable in suspected cases of schistosomiasis (1) during the latter part of the incubation period before the eggs are produced; (2) in chronic cases in which the walls of the intestine and bladder have become so fibrosed that eggs cannot pass from the mesenteric veins or vesical plexuses into the lumen of these organs; and (3) in unisexual infections, which may otherwise be diagnosed as "idiopathic splenomegaly." (Faust, 1939.)

2. **Paragonimiasis.**—The antigen used in the serologic test is a saline extract of macerated adult *Paragonimus westermani.*

The test is particularly useful in suspected nonpulmonary paragonimiasis, where the worms lodge in deep foci and are not passed in the excreta or through cutaneous lesions.

3. **Echinococcus Infection.—**

a. *Aqueous Hydatid Antigens.*—The fluid from hydatid cysts in infected cattle, sheep, hogs, or man, obtained under aseptic conditions, is used for the antigen. Fluid from degenerating cysts and fluid which contains blood or serum is not used.

Filter the fluid through a Seitz filter.

Incubate to determine sterility.

Seal in ampules, and store in the ice chest. This fluid retains its antigenic properties for several months.

b. *Alcoholic Hydatid Antigens.*—Fairley prepared an alcoholic extract by grinding the scolices with fine sand, adding 9 volumes of absolute alcohol, incubating at 37° C. for 2 days, and using the filtrate as an antigen.

Dennis (1937) added crystalline trichloracetic acid, to a concentration of 5 per cent, to chilled, fresh, sterile hydatid cyst fluid obtained from sheep and cattle.

The mixture is kept at 40° C. overnight.

The precipitate is collected, washed, and treated with dilute sodium hydroxide until the protein is completely dissolved.

The protein is then reprecipitated with N/1 acetic acid, washed, dried at 37° C., ground to a powder, and stored in a desiccator, in the dark.

Dennis obtained about 0.1 Gm. of purified antigen from each liter of hydatid fluid.

The stock antigen is diluted 1:1,000 in slightly alkalinized physiologic saline, sterilized by filtering through a Seitz filter, and preserved by adding 0.5 per cent of chloroform.

This solution is about 10 times as potent as the unpurified hydatid fluid.

c. *Dennis Antigen (The Weinberg-Parvú, Ghedini, and Imaz-Lorentz Reaction).*—Dilute the Dennis purified antigen to make a 1:5,000 concentration.

Follow the Kolmer serologic technic.

The antigen is sensitive, specific, not anticomplementary, and does not give false positive reactions (Faust).

4. Trichinosis.—

Antigen (Ströbel, 1911).—Tissue containing the trichinas is digested in an incubator, for 24 hours, with sodium hydroxide and antiformin. It is later neutralized with hydrochloric acid, filtered, and kept for 14 days in a refrigerator. This provides a reliable antigen.

5. Fascioliasis, Taeniasis Saginata, Ascariasis, Ancylostomiasis, and Onchocerciasis.—The complement fixation tests are in the experimental stages, but at present are not in general use.

B. PRECIPITIN REACTION

1. Echinococcus Infection.—

The Felig and Lisbonne Reaction.—Obtain fresh hydatid fluid aseptically from infected sheep.

Preserve by adding phenol solution. This antigen remains stable for several months.

Add 0.5 c.c. of fresh serum from the patient to an equal quantity of the antigen in small agglutination tubes.

Allow to stand for 36 hours at room temperature.

In sera with high precipitin content, a precipitate forms within 2 or 3 hours. Heavy flocculation is designated as +++; fine precipitate with granules in suspension, as ++; and microscopic granules, as +; and no precipitate or microscopic granules, as –.

2. Cysticercus Cellulosae.—

The test is made in the same manner as when testing for hydatid infection, using as antigen the fluid obtained from Cysticerci from previous cases of human beings, or more practically, from the bladder worms of *Taenia solium* or other species of Taenia, the larvae of which develop in hogs, rabbits, and other intermediate hosts (Faust).

3. Trichinosis.—

Sawitz Technic (1937).—

Antigen: Digest 80 Gm. of muscle from an infected rat in 1,500 c.c. of 0.6 per cent pepsin in 0.3 per cent hydrochloric acid solution, at 37° C. for 5 to 12 hours, shaking from time to time.

Strain through 6 layers of cheese cloth.

Dilute with an equal amount of water and allow to stand for 2 hours in a sedimentation glass.

Siphon off the upper third of the liquid and replace with tap water.

Repeat 6 to 8 times until the supernatant fluid is clear.

Allow the purified material to remain in the sedimentation glass overnight. Then place it in a Petri dish and allow to dry.

Transfer to a beaker and treat with ether for 24 hours.

Remove the ether and dry the residue in vacuo over sulfuric acid for 48 hours.

Pulverize the dry residue in a mortar and store in sterile ampules.

Dissolve in Coca's solution, 1 Gm. to 100 c.c., to make the stock solution.

Store in an ice chest.

Dilute 1:50 for intracutaneous tests, giving a final concentration of 1:5,000 (Belding, 1942).

Coca's solution:

Sodium chloride	0.5 Gm.
Sodium bicarbonate	0.275 Gm.
Phenol	0.4 Gm.
Distilled water	100 c.c.

Technic: Place serologic tubes in a rack and label in series of 8 tubes (1 to 8).

Place 0.2 c.c. patient's serum in each of the first 6 tubes.

Place 0.2 c.c. of normal serum in the seventh tube.

Place 0.2 c.c. of rabbit serum known to give a positive reaction in the eighth tube.

Dilute the antigen 1:100, 1:200, 1:400, 1:800, 1:1600. Add to the tubes as follows, by overlaying the antigen on the serum:

Tube	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
0.2 c.c. of antigen diluted:	1:100	1:200	1:400	1:800	1:1600	------	1:100	1:100

Add 0.2 c.c. of Coca's solution without the antigen to the sixth tube, as a control.

Negative sera remain clear. *Positive sera* develop a white ring at the point of contact within 30 minutes, and the antigen usually becomes cloudy white (Faust).

C. INTRADERMAL REACTION

Persons infected with animal parasites may develop hypersensitiveness against the proteins and other products of the parasites. Interdermal injection of extracts made from tissue of the parasites or from fluid elaborated by the parasite are used, as well as skin tests made by placing desiccated powdered tissue of the parasite on skin which has been previously scarified. Two types of positive reaction may be observed: the immediate and the delayed reaction.

Immediate Reaction.—The immediate reaction consists of an erythematous wheal which rapidly increases in size, and which tends to extend by pseudopodial projections until it reaches a maximum size in 15 to 20 minutes, and begins to fade within 1 hour.

Delayed Reaction.—The delayed reaction consists of an area of erythema and induration around the site of injection or application of the antigen.

1. **Echinococcus Infection.**—

The Casoni Reaction.—Positive results with this test are reported as 80 to 100 per cent (Lemaire, Devé, Bacigalupo, and others).

Hydatid fluid is used as antigen.

Obtain the hydatid fluid by aseptic puncture of hydatid cysts removed from the lungs and liver of sheep, oxen, pigs, or human beings.

Filter and incubate to determine sterility.

Place in sealed ampules and store in ice chest. It will retain its potency for 6 months (Faust).

Disinfect the skin of the arm above the elbow with alcohol.

Inject 0.2 c.c. of the antigen intradermally.

Inject 0.2 c.c. of physiologic saline several centimeters above this injection, or on the opposite arm, as a control.

The reaction is immediately positive, even in infections where the cyst has proved to be suppurative or degenerative upon surgery.

The test is particularly valuable in preoperative cases.

2. **Cysticercosis Cellulosae.**—The antigen is obtained from fluid in various species of Cysticerci in domestic animals. It is a group-specific test.

The technic is carried out as for suspected hydatid disease (Faust).

3. **Schistosomiasis.**—The antigen is obtained from mollusks infected with mammalian schistosomes. It may be obtained in a more purified state from adult schistosomes removed from experimentally infected laboratory mammals.

A 0.5 per cent saline extract of dried livers of the infected mollusk is used. This is sterilized by passing it through a Seitz filter. It is stored in ampules in the ice chest. Fairley and Williams, and Talafierro, use 0.025 c.c. of a 0.5 per cent saline extract for the test.

This reaction is a schistosoma group reaction.

4. **Trichinosis.**—The Bachman and Sawitz antigen (see precipitin test) is used in this test.

Dilute the stock solution 1:50, making a 1:5,000 dilution.

Store on ice until used.

Inject 0.1 c.c. of antigen intracutaneously into the forearm.

Inject 0.1 c.c. of saline intradermally into the other arm.

Positive reactions show small white swellings immediately, surrounded by an *un*raised irregular erythematous area of about 5 cm. in diameter. The reaction is at its maximum in about 10 minutes and begins to fade in 15 or 20 minutes. There is no reaction in negative cases. The test is particularly valuable in mild cases with only vague symptoms (Faust).

5. **Filariasis.**—The antigen for this test is made from the dog heart worm, *Dirofilaria immitis.* The live specimens are freed of blood and serum and washed in distilled water.

They are then dried, the lipoids removed, and the worms dried again.

After pulverizing the worms, 200 parts of Coca's solution or physiologic saline are added to each 1 part, by weight, of the powder. For *Wuchereria bancrofti,* use 0.25 c.c. of a 0.1 per cent solution.

Antigen for filariasis due to *Onchocerca volvulus* and *Loa loa* is obtained from the adult worms. The reaction occurs immediately. It is characterized by a diffuse erythema, wheal formation, and pseudopodial extensions, covering an area of not less than 2 cm. Accuracy of this test is at least 90 per cent (Faust).

D. PHYSICAL CHANGES IN THE SERA

1. **Ascoli Miostagmin Reaction.**—In some helminthiases, such as hydatidosis and ancylostomiasis, there is a decrease in the surface tension of the patient's serum, with a corresponding increase in the number of drops of serum, when the temperature and volume are kept constant, using the Traube stalogmometer. A mixture of antigen (hydatid fluid) and antibody (patient's serum) shows a decrease in surface tension, and a resulting increase in the number of drops, over the number produced by a corresponding mixture of the antigen with normal serum. The name "miostagmin," meaning fewer drops, is given to this reaction.

2. **Erythrocytic Sedimentation Rate.**—The sedimentation rate is markedly accelerated in hydatidosis and necatoriasis.

II. Cellular Reactions

Changes in the blood picture (anemia and particularly eosinophilia) and cellular reactions of the tissues (inflammatory reactions, hyperplasia, and neoplasia) can be observed in parasitic diseases in general and in helminthiases in particular, although these changes are not of a specific character.

See Chapter 68 for blood changes in helminthiases.

Tissue Reactions

1. **Inflammatory Reactions.**—The tissues, in the presence of aggressive parasites, show connective tissue-vascular reaction with infiltration of inflammatory cells. Lymphocytes or plasma cells or polymorphonuclear neutrophiles predominate; usually local eosinophilia is observed. At times, especially

in chronic processes, with proliferation, epithelioid cells are observed, with giant-cell formation. The organism tends to localize the parasite by formation of a fibrous capsule. Sometimes this becomes infiltrated with calcareous salts, imprisoning the parasites. It is not known whether calcification follows death of the parasite or whether death of the parasite is caused by calcification (Kourí et al., 1943).

This inflammatory phenomenon can be observed in cysticercosis, trichinosis, and echinococcosis. In echinococcosis, in addition to the giant cells, echinococcic granulomata are formed.

2. **Metaplastic Reactions.**—Metaplasia is the transformation of one cellular type of tissue into another of the same or different type, connective or epithelial. A typical example is found in pulmonary distomatosis by *Paragonimus westermani,* where transformation of the cylindrical epithelia of the bronchi into stratified pavement epithelia is noted.

3. **Hyperplastic Reactions.**—In hyperplasia the epithelial and connective tissues are hypertrophied, producing an excess of epithelial tissue, generally with glandular formation, with concomitant increase in connective tissue (Kourí et al., 1943).

In hepatic distomatosis, there is hyperplasia with formation of biliary adenomata, and in schistosomiasis, hyperplasia in which bladder and rectal adenomata are observed.

4. **Neoplastic Reactions.**—Several authors have shown malignant transformation of biliary adenomata in distomatosis hepatica by *Clonorchis sinensis* and *Opisthorchis felineus* (Katsurada, Askanazy, Kourí, et al.).

In schistosomiasis haematobia, bladder papillomata can be transformed into cancers of the bladder (Albarrán and León Bernard, 1897).

Finally, it is necessary to show the carcinomatous reaction produced by *Gongylonema neoplasticum* and the sarcomatous reaction produced by *Cysticercus fasciolaris,* parasitic helminths of rats, which have been used in research and are of great importance.

References

Anido, V.: 1943. Laboratorio clínico, Técnicas e Interpretaciones, Havana.
Belding, D. L.: 1942. Textbook of Clinical Parasitology, New York, D. Appleton-Century Co., Inc.
Faust, E. C.: 1939. Human Helminthology, ed. 2, Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, p. 596-597.
Gradwohl, R. B. H., and Kourí, Pedro: 1948. Clinical Laboratory Methods and Diagnosis. vol. III, St. Louis, The C. V. Mosby Co.
Kourí, P.: 1948. Diagnóstico, Epidemiología y Profilaxis de la Fascioliasis Hepática Humana en Cuba—Síndrome Eosinofílico Febril—Tercera Comunicación, Havana.
Kourí, P., Basnuevo, J. G., and Sotolongo, F.: 1943. Lecciones de Parasitología y Medicina Tropical, ed. 2, Havana, Editorial Profilaxis, S. A.
Langeron, M.: 1942. Précis de Microscopie, ed. 6, Paris, Masson & Cie.
Loughlin, E. H., and Spitz, S. H.: 1949. J. A. M. A. 139: 997-1000.
Varela, M. E.: 1946. Hematología Clínica, ed. 2, Buenos Aires.
Wyss, N.: 1946. Consideraciones sobre la Oxiuriasis en Guatemala, Tesis, Guatemala.

CHAPTER 73

AGENTS, SOLUTIONS, STAINS, AND CULTURE MEDIA USED IN PARASITOLOGIC AND TROPICAL MEDICAL PROCEDURES

Alfonso Bonilla-Naar

A

cohols.—

Absolute Alcohol.—

Absolute alcohol is water-free alcohol. Squibb alcohol is 99.8 per cent. The following thod is recommended:

Heat crystals of copper sulfate until they lose their water of crystallization, and duce to a white powder by grinding in a mortar. Heat in an evaporating dish until copper sulfate turns white.

Add in small quantities to the 95 per cent alcohol. The water in the alcohol is ab- rbed by the salt and turns it a bluish color. Copper sulfate should be added until no ore change in color takes place, which indicates that all the water has been absorbed om the alcohol by the salt.

Filter the alcohol into a dry bottle, stopper tightly, and seal with petroleum jelly to otect from moisture of the air.

Ethyl Alcohol.—

Prepared in various strengths from 95% alcohol. Pour 95% alcohol into a gradu- d buret up to the mark desired for the percentage of alcohol to be prepared.

Add distilled water up to the 95 mark.

Example: To prepare 40% alcohol, pour 95% alcohol into a buret to the mark 40, d distilled water to the mark 95, mix, let the air bubbles volatilize off, and dilute to 95 . with distilled water.

Methyl Alcohol.—

Methyl alcohol should be acetone-free. We recommend that made by the National iline Company, New York.

kaline Bath.—

Before staining old smears of malarial parasites. Use for several hours.

lum-Carmine.—

Alum-carmine is used, like cochineal alum, to stain taenias, trematodes, etc. It stains e calcareous structures deeply.

Powdered carmine	1 Gm.
2.5% aqueous solution of ammonium alum	100 c.c.

Boil for 20 minutes. Filter when cool.

lum, Cochineal.—

This does not overstain. It is recommended by Guyer for the Platyhelminthes, small lminths, and embryos.

Potassium alum	6 Gm.
Powdered cochineal	6 Gm.
Distilled water	90 c.c.

Boil for half an hour. Decant the supernatant fluid after it has boiled. Add more water and boil until it is evaporated to a volume of approximately 90 c.c. Filter when cool, and add a crystal of thymol or of salicylic acid to prevent development of molds. If the worm is pigmented, treat with chlorine or hydrogen peroxide vapors before staining.

Amann's Solution.—

This is a clarifying fluid for helminths.

Crystallized phenol	1 Gm.
Lactic acid	1 Gm.
Glycerin	2 Gm.
Distilled water	1 c.c.

Apathy's Cement (Peacock).—

Canada balsam	1 part
Liquid paraffin	1 part

Heat in porcelain receptacle until no further vapors of turpentine are given off and the mixture becomes a golden yellow color. Before applying, heat the mixture. Apply with a spatula.

Azur II-Eosin (For staining microfilariae).—See Feng's Azur II-Eosin.

B

Balsam, Canada.—See Canada Balsam.

Barret and Yarbrough Medium (For cultivation of *Balantidium coli*).—

Inactivated human serum	1 part
0.5% solution of sodium chloride	16 parts

Sterilize by filtration, and distribute in 8 c.c. quantities in test tubes.

By means of a pipette, inoculate the tubes with 0.1 c.c. of stool specimen and incubate at 37° C. (98.6° F.).

Transplant every 24 to 48 hours.

The greatest number of parasites will be found in the bottom of the culture, and cysts may appear.

Basnuevo Solution (For preservation of helminth eggs).—

Formalin	15 c.c.
Glycerin	20 c.c.
Water	100 c.c.

Add 25 c.c. of this solution to about 100 grams of fecal material (1 part of the solution for 4 parts of fecal material).

Bass and Johns' Medium (1912) (For cultivation of human plasmodium).—

This medium is used to obtain one generation only.

Sterilize 50% dextrose solution on 3 consecutive days at 100° C.

Place 0.1 c.c. in a defibrination flask.

Make venipuncture, withdraw 10 c.c. of blood, and place in a defibrination flask. If 20 c.c. of blood are to be used, use 0.2 c.c. of dextrose solution. Do not expose the blood to the air for too long a period of time.

Defibrinate by stirring gently with a stirring rod, and take care to prevent formation of air bubbles. The stirring rod can be passed through the cork or cotton stopper.

The height of the blood column in the culture tubes should be 2.5 to 5 cm. This will give a serum column of approximately 1.25 to 2.5 cm. More than 2.5 cm. or less than 1.25 cm. is not advisable, since the parasites will die before undergoing segmentation.

The parasites live and reproduce in the blood below the serum level, in not more than 0.1 c.c. They can be removed with a capillary pipette. Take care not to contaminate the cultures.

To Cultivate Several Generations: To obtain more than one generation (up to 3), the authors recommend the method free of leucocytes, by centrifuging to force the leucocytes up to the surface of the erythrocytic column.

Remove the serum and place in the culture tubes.

Pass a capillary pipette through the layer of leucocytes and take from the central part of the red cell column the blood necessary for the culture.

For subcultures, transfer the infected blood into fresh blood, together with its serum, using 10 times as much infected blood as fresh blood. Transplants should be made every 48 hours, after segmentation. The optimum temperature is 39° C. (102.2° F.).

Belesse's Fluid (Peacock) (For mounting Anopheles larvae).—

Chloral hydrate	160 Gm.
Gum arabic	15 Gm.
Syrup of glucose	10 c.c.
Acetic acid	5 c.c.
Distilled water	20 c.c.

The Division of Malariology of Venezuela (Cova-Garcia) uses the following formula:

Chloral hydrate	100 Gm.
Powdered gum arabic	60 Gm.
Glycerin	40 c.c.
Distilled water	100 c.c.

Bland, Goldstein, Wenrich, and Weimer Medium (For cultivation of *Trichomonas vaginalis*).—

This medium is composed of nutrient agar slants covered with a modified Ringer solution to which 0.25 Gm. of desiccated Loeffler serum medium is added for each 100 c.c. of solution.

Agar.—

Use dehydrated Difco Bacto-nutrient agar (extract of beef, peptone, and agar).

Place 23 Gm. of Bacto-nutrient agar in 1,000 c.c. of cool distilled water.

Boil in a water bath for 20 minutes until completely dissolved. Filter through a double layer of cotton which has been soaked in hot water. If the filtrate is not clear, repeat until clear.

Distribute in test tubes in 5 c.c. quantities.

Sterilize in an autoclave at 15 pounds pressure for 20 minutes, and slant.

Allow to cool and cover the surface of the slants with modified Ringer solution (alkaline), and add 0.25 Gm. desiccated Loeffler serum Difco for each 100 c.c.

Modified Ringer Solution.—

Sodium chloride	6 Gm.
Potassium chloride	0.10 Gm.
Sodium bicarbonate	0.10 Gm.
Calcium chloride	0.10 Gm.
Distilled water	1,000 c.c.

Bles Fixative (To fix insects for sectioning).—

This solution can be injected into the segments of the insect. It is recommended by Craig and Faust (1943a).

Boeck and Drbohlav Medium (For cultivation of amebae, especially *Endamoeba histolytica*).—

Locke's Solution (Modified).—

Distilled water	1,000 c.c.
Sodium chloride	9.0 Gm.
Calcium chloride	0.2 Gm.
Potassium chloride	0.4 Gm.
Sodium bicarbonate	0.2 Gm.
Glucose	2.5 Gm.

Sterilize in an autoclave at 15 pounds pressure for 30 minutes.

Locke Egg-Serum Medium (L.E.S.).—

Mix the whites and yolks of 4 eggs thoroughly.

Add 50 c.c. Locke solution.

Mix and filter through gauze.

Place in 5 c.c. quantities in 15 c.c. vials. Slant in an autoclave and sterilize at 15 to 20 pounds pressure for 30 minutes.

Preparation of the Blood Serum.—

Inactivate the serum in a water bath at 56° C. for ½ hour.

Preparation of the Medium for Inoculation.—

Dilute the blood serum so that the final concentration of serum and Locke solution is 1 part serum to 8 parts Locke solution.

Cover the tubes with this mixture to a depth of 1 cm. above the slant. Incubate for sterility before using.

Locke Egg-Albumin Medium (L.E.A.).—

Make a 1% solution of crystallized egg albumin in Locke solution and sterilize by filtration. Add to the culture tubes containing the egg slants as described above. Incubate at 37° C.

Before inoculation, add one loopful of rice starch.

Bonacci Medium (1934) (Numbers 1, 4, and 9) (For cultivation of *Trypanosoma cruzi*).—

Medium No. 1.—

Witte peptone	3 Gm.
Sodium chloride	1 Gm.
Agar	2 Gm.
Nutrient beef broth	200 c.c.

Dissolve the ingredients in the hot nutrient broth and neutralize. Place in an autoclave at 115° C. for 20 minutes.

Filter through cotton, distribute in 100 c.c. quantities in Erlenmeyer flasks, and sterilize at 110° C. (200° F.) for 20 minutes.

Store in an ice chest until ready for use.

Liquefy and cool to 40° C.

To each 100 c.c., add 0.5 Gm. glucose and 5 c.c. young guinea pig blood.

Media No. 4 and No. 9.—

These are similar to Medium No. 1 except for the amount of peptone and sodium chloride. Medium No. 4 contains 2.5 Gm. peptone and 0.7 Gm. sodium chloride. Medium No. 9 contains 3 Gm. peptone and 0.7 Gm. sodium chloride to each 100 c.c. of the agar mixture.

Bonilla-Naar Congo Red Method.—

This is used to stain larvae of helminths and trematodes and proglottids of tenias. See Congo red solution.

Borax Carmine (Grenacher).—

Borax, 4% aqueous	100 c.c.
Carmine	1 Gm.

Immediately add 100 c.c. of 70% alcohol. Filter after 24 hours. Allow the tissue to remain in the solution for 24 hours to several days. Without washing, place it in acid alcohol until not much stain comes out (cloud).

Wash and harden in neutral alcohol (Guyer).

Bouin Fixative.—See Chapter 69.

Boye's Stain (For human hematozoa, especially in the thick drop).—

Use Stevenel stain. Craig notes that he has not used this stain but recommends it as a good substitute for Romanowsky or its derivatives.

Brilliant Cresyl Blue.—See Chapter 68.

Brutsaert and Henrard Medium (1938) (For *Trypanosoma gambiense* and *T. rhodesiense*).—

Ringer's solution containing 0.6 per cent sodium chloride and Tyrode solution are used (see Tyrode solution).

Sterilize by filtration and distribute in test tubes, using 2 c.c. of Ringer's solution for 2.5 c.c. of Tyrode solution.

Add to each tube 2 c.c. citrated human blood (1% citrate) and incubate to determine sterility (24 hours at 37° C.).

Store in a refrigerator. The medium must be used within 2 weeks of making.

The blood is collected in a sterile syringe containing 1 c.c. of Roche's Liquoid, 0.5 c.c. for each 10 c.c. of culture medium.

Incubate at 25° to 28° C. The culture requires 10 to 12 days for growth.

C

Cable Modification.—See Gastric Juice, Artificial.

Canada Balsam (in xylol or benzol).—

Canada balsam can be procured ready for use, or it may be made as follows:

Heat the resin until it becomes fragile or brittle when allowed to cool.

Dissolve in xylol until a fairly thin solution is obtained.

Add a small piece of marble to prevent acidification and discoloration.

The desired consistency can be obtained after filtration by evaporating over a small flame.

Carmine, Acid.—

Glacial acetic acid	45 c.c.
Distilled water	55 c.c.
Carmine powder in excess.	

Dissolve the carmine in the acetic acid.

Heat without boiling, cool, and filter.

Carnoy's Liquid (Fixative) (Peacock).—

Ethyl alcohol	75 c.c.
Glacial acetic acid	25 c.c.

Carnoy's Liquid (Fixative) (Justin-Andrews).—

Glacial acetic acid	10 c.c.
Absolute alcohol	60 c.c.
Chloroform	30 c.c.

Cedar Oil.—

Cedar oil is usually purchased ready for use. Specify whether it is to be used to clarify tissue or for oil immersion purposes.

Cleveland and Collier Medium (For cultivation of *E. histolytica*).—

Distilled water	1,000 c.c.
Difco liver infusion agar	30 Gm.
Na_2HPO_4	3 Gm.

Sterilize in a slanting position in an autoclave and allow to solidify in that position. Cover the surfaces with a mixture of 1 part of fresh horse serum and 6 parts of 0.8 per cent sodium chloride solution which has been previously filtered. The reaction need not be adjusted.

Before inoculating with amebae, add a small amount of sterile rice starch to each tube.

Congo Red Solution (Bonilla-Naar).—

This is used to stain larvae of Trichinellae, Ancylostomidae, and trematodes and proglottids of Taenia.

Saturated alcoholic solution of Congo red	1 part
Distilled water	1 part

To Stain Proglottids.—

Without preliminary fixation, and using a very fine needle, inject the recently expelled proglottids in the excretory orifice, or in the highest zone opposite this pore.

For staining the entire mature segments, the segment or even 2 segments are placed between slides and compressed by 2 elastic bands.

Place the slides in Schaudinn fixative to which 20% acetic acid has been added, for 24 hours.

Wash thoroughly with water.

Place in iodized alcohol for 10 minutes.

Place the slides in the stain and control microscopically every 15 minutes.

Place in alcohols of increasing strength, then in absolute alcohol, 2 hours in each.

Finally, place in methyl salicylate for a few seconds.

Mount in neutral Canada balsam.

Staining of Larvae *(A. caninum, A. duodenale, N. americanus, T. spiralis).*—

This method is very simple. The larvae undergo little or no deformity.

For larvae of Ancylostomidae and Trichinellae, artificially digested (see gastric juice), place them in a tube containing warm 30% alcohol to which a few drops of the Congo red solution have been added. Control under the microscope. If necessary, add a few more drops of Congo red solution. When they are properly stained, place in alcohols of increasing strengths, and finally in absolute alcohol. Leave in each alcohol for ½ to 1 hour to dehydrate slowly and so prevent shrinkage of the larvae.

Finally place for 3 minutes in methyl salicylate. Using a pipette or a capillary dropper, remove the alcohol.

Mount the larvae in a drop of balsam.

D

D'Antoni's Standardized Iodine Stain (For staining cysts of protozoa and eggs of helminths, and for preserving fecal specimens in transit).—

Weigh 100 Gm. of potassium iodide (Merck or Baker) and place in a chemically clean 1,000 c.c. volumetric flask.

Add distilled water to the 1,000 c.c. mark.

Weigh to the fourth decimal place a 25 c.c. clean and dry volumetric flask and record the weight.

Fill the flask to the mark with the potassium iodide solution (above) and again weigh to the fourth decimal place.

Subtract the weight of the empty flask from that of the flask plus solution to determine the weight of 25 c.c. of the 10% potassium iodide solution. This weight should theoretically be 26.925 Gm, but due to the deliquescence of KI, the actual weight of the solution will be less than the theoretical weight. Divide the actual weight by the theoretical weight, and subtract the quotient, in terms of percentage, from 10, the desired percentage, to determine the actual percentage of the solution. Thus 100 : actual percentage :: x : 10%. x = Gm. of potassium iodide.

Subtract 100 from the number of grams represented by x to obtain the number of grams of KI to add to the original 1,000 c.c. of solution to obtain a standardized 10% KI solution.

Staining Solution.—

Add 1.5 Gm. powdered iodine crystals to each 100 c.c. of standardized 10 per cent KI solution. Allow to stand for 4 days before use. Filter before use. Do not allow to remain unstoppered.

The stock solution keeps for long periods without deterioration if kept tightly stoppered.

Decalcifying Solution.—

Nitric acid, concentrated	10 c.c.
70% alcohol	90 c.c.

Dobell Method (1928) (For producing cysts in cultures of amebae).—

If rice starch is added to cultures to which no rice starch has previously been added, many cysts will appear.

Dobell-Laidlaw Media (For cultivation of *E. histolytica*).—

Medium No. 1.—

This is similar to the Boeck and Drbohlav medium, except that a modified Ringer solution is used in place of the Locke solution:

NaCl	9 Gm.
$CaCl_2$	0.2 Gm.
KCl	0.2 Gm.
Water	1,000 c.c.

Medium No. 2.—

Undiluted sterile horse serum is used in place of egg and Ringer solutions.

Place the serum in tubes, slant, and inspissate at 80° C. for not more than 1 hour and 10 minutes.

Cool and incubate at 37° C. for 48 hours to determine sterility.

Cover the slants with egg albumin solution or the solution described as Medium No. 1.

Add rice starch at the time of inoculation.

The reaction need not be adjusted.

Donaldson Lugol-Eosin Solution (Modified by Sumerlin, 1934) (For staining cysts of protozoa).—

Saturated solution of eosin in physiologic saline	1 part
Saturated solution of iodine in physiologic saline	1 part
Physiologic saline solution	2 parts

Keep in separate bottles.

Duboscq-Brasil Solution (Rapidly penetrating fixative).—

80% alcohol	150 c.c.
Picric acid	1 Gm.
Before using, add	
40% formalin	60 c.c.
Acetic acid	15 c.c.

E

Egg Albumin Fixative (For fixing protozoa, etc., to slides).—

Egg white	50 c.c.
Glycerin	50 c.c.
Sodium salicylate	1 Gm.

Beat the egg white and glycerin and remove the foam.

A crystal of thymol may be used instead of the salicylate as a preservative if desired.

Errecart Solution (1941) (To dehemoglobinize thick drops of blood).—

40% formalin	1 c.c.
Acetic acid	0.2 c.c.
Physiologic saline	100 c.c.

F

Faust Zinc Sulfate Solution (For flotation of cysts, eggs, and larvae of helminths).—See Chapter 71.

Feng Azur II-Eosin (For staining microfilariae).—

To 500 c.c. of physiologic saline, add 1 c.c. of 1% azur II and 0.1 per cent sodium carbonate solution. This is the **stock.**

For use, add 4 c.c. of the azur II stock solution to 96 c.c. of saline.

The **eosin solution** used in Feng's stain is made by dissolving 1 Gm. of eosin in 4,000 c.c. of saline.

Feng Hemalum Stain (For staining microfilariae).—

Dehemoglobinize the blood films in saline.

Place the slides in warm 70% alcohol for 15 minutes.

Pass through tap water, then slightly alkaline water.

Transfer to staining jar containing hemalum and stain for 3 to 5 hours.

Decolorize in 70% alcohol containing 1% hydrochloric acid until properly differentiated.

Wash in tap water.

Dehydrate in increasing strengths of alcohol, then absolute alcohol.

Clarify in xylol 5 minutes.

Mount in balsam.

Feng's Methyl Green Pyronin (For staining microfilariae).—

Add 0.2 Gm. of methyl green
and 0.075 Gm. of pyronin
to 100 c.c. of physiologic saline.

Dehemoglobinize blood films in physiologic saline.

Stain for 12 to 36 hours in Feng methyl green pyronin stain.

Dehydrate rapidly in increasing strengths of alcohol (70, 85, 95%), then in absolute alcohol.

Clear in xylol and mount in balsam.

Field Stain (1941) (Rapid stain for thick drops of blood).—See Chapter 68.

Formalin (Formol).—

Commercial formalin is a saturated aqueous solution of formaldehyde gas and contains approximately 40% of formaldehyde by weight. This solution is spoken of as 100% solution of formalin and is diluted when determined concentration of formalin and not formaldehyde are desired (Cable). See also Chapters 69 and 70.

Formalin-Acetic Acid (For dehemoglobinizing thick drops or smears of blood).—

Formalin	5 c.c.
Acetic acid	1 c.c.
Distilled water	100 c.c.

Formol-Sublimate Solution (Recommended by Pearl Raymond as an extremely satisfactory means of killing and fixing protozoa).—

Add mercuric chloride to 10% formalin until saturation is reached.

The tissue or other material can be washed in water or in a 4% formalin solution. After passing the material through alcohols of increasing strengths, the material can be preserved in this formalin or in a 70% alcohol solution.

Foure's Chloral Gum (For mounting and studying the Trombidiidae larvae) (Boshell Manrique and Kerr).—

Distilled water	50 c.c.
Chloral	50 Gm.
Glycerin	20 c.c.
Gum arabic	30 Gm.

Filter.

This procedure does not ensure long preservation of the specimen.

G

Gage Stain (For hypopygium of mosquitoes).—

Acid fuchsin	0.5 Gm.
10% HCl solution	25 c.c.
Distilled water	300 c.c.

Place in 10% potassium hydroxide solution the genitalia which are adherent to the abdominal segment.

Place in a water bath for 20 minutes.

Transfer to hot distilled water for ¼ to ½ hour or to cold water for 12 hours.

Place the genitalia in the stain for 3 hours.

Decolorize in phenol 5 minutes.

Dissect in the same phenol and mount in Canada balsam.

Gastric Juice, Artificial (For digestion of *Trichinella spiralis* in muscle).—

This is a pepsin solution in hydrochloric acid. Although the quantities vary according to different authors, a solution of 0.6% pepsin in 0.3% to 0.4% hydrochloric acid is excellent for digestion of muscle tissue and the capsules of the larvae which are freed from the tissue.

After digestion, they are then passed to the Baermann apparatus and are isolated by thermotropism.

Cable Modification.—

Hydrochloric acid, concentrated	7 to 10 c.c.
1:10,000 pepsin	6 Gm.
Distilled water to make	1,000 c.c.

Geiman's Medium (Modified by Groot and Hernández) (For cultivation of *T. cruzi*).—

The original medium is used in the cultivation of *Bartonella bacilliformis:*

Bacto-agar	20 Gm.
Proteose peptone No. 3	20 Gm.
NaCl	5 Gm.
Distilled water	1,000 c.c.

Dissolve and adjust the reaction to pH 7.6 to 7.8.

Sterilize in the autoclave.

To 75 c.c. of this medium, liquefied and cooled to 45° C., add 25 c.c. of fresh rabbit blood and 0.2 c.c. of the following mixture sterilized by filtration:

Ascorbic acid	10 mg.
Glutathion	40 mg.
Ringer's solution	20 c.c.

Groot-Hernández Modification.—

Add to the water of condensation of the tubes 2 to 5 c.c., according to size, of the following solution, previously sterilized:

Bacto-peptone	12.5 Gm.
NaCl	2.5 Gm.
Bacto-beef dehydrated	25.0 Gm.
Glucose	2.5 Gm.
Distilled water	750 c.c.

This is the same solution as that added to the Kelser medium for *T. cruzi* with such good results.

The glutathion stabilizes and protects the vitamin C against oxidation. The mixture of glutathion and vitamin C must not be more than 10 days old.

Giemsa Stain.—See Chapter 68.

Glycerine Jelly.—

Place 6 Gm. of granulated gelatin in 40 c.c. of distilled water and allow to soak for 15 minutes.

Liquefy in a water bath at a temperature not to exceed 75° C.

Filter several times through a porous cloth or gauze which has been soaked in hot water.

Dissolve 1 Gm. of phenol in 50 c.c. of glycerin and add the gelatin.

Gram Stain.—

The Gram stain is recommended by Kourí for staining Protozoa, in addition to its well-known use in bacteriology. There are a number of modifications. For details, see Gradwohl (1948).

Gray and Tulloch's Medium (1907) (For cultivation of *T. gambiense*).—

This is NNN medium using dog instead of rabbit blood.

Gum Chloral (Foure) (For mounting Trombidiidae).—See Foure's Gum Chloral.

Gum Damar in Xylol (For permanent mounts).—

Make a saturated solution of gum damar in neutral xylol by placing the mixture of gum and xylol in an incubator and shaking a number of times a day until it is of a heavy syrupy consistency. Filter through 4 layers of gauze and store in a brown bottle. Allow to sediment completely, then decant the supernatant fluid.

Gum, 5% Formolized (For preservation of mosquito eggs).—

Powdered gum arabic	60 Gm.
5% formalin	10 c.c.

H

Heidenhain Hematoxylin.—See Hematoxylin.

Helminth Eggs and Larvae.—See Chapter 72.

Hemalum Stain.—See Feng's Hemalum Stain.

Hematoxylin, Harris.—See Chapter 70.

Hematoxylin, Heidenhain, Iron.—

0.5 and 1 per cent solutions of iron hematoxylin are prepared from a 10% alcoholic stock solution, which should be oxidized:

Iron hematoxylin	5 Gm.
95% ethyl alcohol	50 c.c.

To make a 0.5% solution, multiply any quantity of the stock solution by 19 to determine the quantity of distilled water to be added to it. Thus if 10 c.c. of the 10% stock solution are used, add 190 c.c. of distilled water.

To make a 1% solution, multiply any quantity of the stock solution by 9 to find the amount of distilled water needed. Thus for 10 c.c. of the stock solution, use 90 c.c. of distilled water.

Hematoxylin, Johnson.—See Johnson Hematoxylin.

Hematoxylin, Mallory.—See Mallory Hematoxylin.

Hogue's Medium.—

No. 1 (For cultivation of Trichomonas).—

Locke solution	200 c.c.
Hen's egg	1

Break the egg into a container with glass beads, add the Locke solution, and mix well.

Place in a water bath for 15 minutes, stirring constantly.

Filter through cotton with the aid of a suction pump.

Distribute in 6 c.c. quantities in test tubes.

Sterilize in an autoclave for 20 minutes at 15 pounds pressure.

No. 2 (For cultivation of intestinal flagellates).—

Sodium chloride, 0.7% solution, 600 c.c.

Whites of 6 eggs. Place egg whites in a glass flask containing glass beads and mix vigorously.

Add the saline solution and place in a water bath for 30 minutes. Filter through cotton using suction.

Distribute in 5 c.c. quantities in test tubes.

Place in an autoclave for 20 minutes at 15 pounds pressure.

Incubate at 36° C. Subculture every 24 hours.

The flagellates are more numerous on the surface of the medium.

I

Iodine, D'Antoni.—See D'Antoni's Iodine.

Iodine Solution (For staining cysts of protozoa and eggs of helminths).—

Crystalline iodine	5 Gm.
Potassium iodide	10 Gm.
Distilled water	100 c.c.

Dissolve the potassium iodide in distilled water in a clean flask. Add the iodine crystals a small amount at a time, mixing until the crystals are completely dissolved. Filter and keep well stoppered. Use in dropping bottles. Store in the dark. Prepare fresh solution each 20 days to one month.

Iron Hematoxylin.—See Hematoxylin, Heidenhain, Iron, and John's Hematoxylin.

J

Jameson Medium (For cultivation of *Balantidium coli*).—

Use the Dobell and Laidlaw medium. Subculture every 48 hours or every 3 to 5 days. The pH must not be allowed to drop below 5.0, the optimum being 5.4 to 8.0. Elements in conjugation are observed, but no cysts.

Janer Solution (For staining nucleus, karyosome, and chromatin, particularly in the precystic forms of amebae).—

This is a 2% solution of copper sulfate. According to Talice, the peripheral chromatin band in the nucleus and the karyosome appear more outstanding and thicker than in preparations stained with iron hematoxylin.

Jenner Stain.—

(Jenner's stain is used like Leishman and Wright stains, especially for Leishmania.)

Mix equal parts of 1.2% aqueous water-soluble eosin and 1% aqueous medicinal methylene blue (certified).

After thorough mixing, allow to stand at room temperature for 24 hours.

A precipitate with a metallic sheen will form.

Collect the precipitate on a filter paper and wash several times with distilled water, until the water which comes through the filter paper is almost colorless.

Allow the washed precipitate to dry.

Place the dried precipitate in a bottle and stopper tightly. Keep in a dark place.

Dissolve 0.5 Gm. of the precipitate in 100 c.c. of pure methyl alcohol (National Aniline).

Place this stain, without diluting, on the smear and allow to remain 1 to 2 minutes.

Add a few drops of distilled water until a metallic sheen appears and allow to stain for 5 to 15 minutes or more, according to the depth of stain desired.

Johnson Iron Hematoxylin Method (For staining protozoa).—

Fix in warm Schaudinn fixative for 10 to 20 minutes.

Place in 95% alcohol to which a few crystals of iodine have been added, for 1 to 3 minutes. This removes the mercuric chloride.

Immerse in 75% alcohol for 5 minutes or more. The slides can be left in this alcohol for several days without harm.

Wash gently in running tap water or in a large receptacle.

Place in an aqueous 0.5% hematoxylin solution (10 c.c. of the 10% stock solution in 95% alcohol, plus 190 c.c. of distilled water) for 10 minutes. The stock solution should be ripened by age, or it will not stain. The solution should be prepared in advance. For rapid ripening, we recommend ultraviolet rays, oxygenated water, or mercuric oxide (see Harris mondification).

Differentiate by decolorizing for 6 to 10 minutes in 0.25% iron alum, controlling microscopically in the usual manner. Calculate the time as follows (not recommended): amebae, 12 minutes; flagellates, 5 to 10 minutes, keeping in mind the size of the protozoa and the thickness of the preparation.

Wash in running tap water.

Dehydrate in alcohols of increasing concentration.

Clarify in xylol or toluol and mount in neutral balsam.

NOTE: When staining *Balantidium coli*, use Heidenhain's method. The preparation must not dry between the steps.

J.S.B. Stain (Jasivant, Singh, and Bhattacharji) (For blood parasites—Plasmodium, Leishmania, and Trypanosoma).—

(a)	Medicinal methylene blue	0.5	Gm.
	Potassium chromate	0.5	Gm.
	Sulfuric acid, 1% solution	3.0	c.c.
	Distilled water	500	c.c.
(b)	Eosin, water soluble	1	Gm.
	Distilled water	500	c.c.

K

Kahle Liquid Fixative (For arthropods, especially larvae of insects).—

Commercial formalin	6 parts
95% ethyl alcohol	15 parts
Glacial acetic acid	1 part
Distilled water	30 parts

Keep the tissue in the fixative for 12 to 24 hours.

Pass through 50% and 70% alcohols, then place in 85% alcohol and keep in this last alcohol.

The fixative may be used warm. The larvae may be injected with the fixative or cut in slices to allow for better penetration.

Kelser Medium (For cultivation of Trypanosoma).—

Bacto-peptone (Difco)	12.5 Gm.
NaCl	3.5 Gm.
Bacto-agar granulated	5.0 Gm.
Bacto-beef dehydrated	25.0 Gm.
Distilled water	500.0 c.c.

Add the agar to the distilled water and place in a water bath at 55° C. for 1 hour.

Add the peptone and sodium chloride.

Maintain at boiling for 5 minutes, stirring constantly.

Filter through cotton until clear.

Neutralize with N/1 sodium hydroxide.

Add the dehydrated beef to the mixture while still hot.

Mix well and distribute in 5 c.c. quantities in test tubes or in 10 c.c. quantities in flasks.

Sterilize in an autoclave at 12 pounds pressure for ½ hour.

Cool and solidify.

To use, dissolve and add 0.25 c.c. of 1% dextrose solution and 0.25 c.c. of fresh defibrinated guinea pig blood to each tube.

If the quantity of water of condensation in the tubes is small, add 1% dextrose solution to which have been added 2 parts of a peptone similar to that used in the medium.

In using the culture flask, add 2 c.c. of 1% dextrose solution, taking care not to exceed this quantity.

Numerous trypanosomes will be observed on the third or fourth day. Leishmanial forms will be observed first.

Kligler Medium (For cultivation of *Leishmania*).—

1% dextrose agar	10 parts
0.85% saline solution	90 parts

Sterilize in an autoclave. Final pH should be 7.0 to 7.6.

Distribute in 5 to 10 c.c. quantities.

Cool to 48° to 50° C.

Add to each tube 1 part of fresh sterile rabbit blood for 10 parts of medium and slant in an icebox.

Test for sterility by placing in an incubator at 37° C. for 24 hours.

Knowles and Das Gupta Method (For examination of *L. donovani* in the thick drops).—

Place 4 drops of blood in the center of a slide and spread in a ¼ inch square, using a needle.

Allow to dry at 37° C. in a Petri dish for 2 hours.

Immerse for 5 to 10 minutes in a mixture of 4 parts of 2% acetic acid and 1 part of crystalline tartaric acid.

Dry, fix in methyl alcohol, and stain.

Kofoid and Swezy Medium (For the cultivation of *Trichomonas hominis*).—

Locke solution	9 parts
Rabbit or guinea pig serum	1 part

Sterilize the Locke solution in an autoclave.

Inactivate the serum for ½ hour at 56° C.

Mix the Locke solution and the serum thoroughly and filter through a Berkefeld filter. Distribute in 5 c.c. quantities in test tubes and incubate at 37° C.

Kopel Giemsa Stain Modification (For malarial parasites).—

Fix thin films in absolute ethyl alcohol in Koplin jars for 15 seconds, dry, and place in a horizontal position on a staining rack.

Flood with diluted Giemsa stain and stain for ½ hour.

Wash with buffer solution pH 6.4. Allow to dry in a vertical position.

To prepare modified Giemsa stain, dissolve 0.5 Gm. of Giemsa powder in 33 c.c. of glycerin. Let stand for 2 hours at 60° C., shaking at ½ hour intervals.

Add 33 c.c. of 100% ethyl alcohol and shake thoroughly.

Add 1 c.c. of this stock solution to 24 c.c. of buffer solution pH 6.4.

L

Langeron Lacto-Phenol.—

Glycerin	2 parts
Distilled water	1 part
Phenol crystals	1 part
Lactic acid	1 part

L.E.A. and L.E.S. Medium (For culture of *E. histolytica*).—See Boeck and Drbohlav.

Leishman Stain.—

The preparation given here is that cited by Craig.

Prepare a 1% solution of medicinal methylene blue in distilled water rendered alkaline by the addition of 0.5% sodium carbonate.

Heat for 12 hours at 65° C. in the dry heat oven and allow to remain at room temperature for 10 days.

Prepare a 1:1,000 solution of eosin (certified).

Mix equal parts of the methylene blue solution and the eosin solution in a wide-mouthed container. Allow to stand for 6 to 12 hours, mixing at intervals.

Collect the precipitate by filtration through a small filter paper and wash with distilled water until the water which comes off is but slightly blue. The precipitate may be removed from the filter paper with a spatula and allowed to dry in an oven, or the filter paper, with the precipitate, may be placed in an oven. The dry precipitate is placed in a dark bottle and kept well stoppered. The stain is prepared from this precipitate.

Dissolve 0.15 Gm. of the dry powder in 100 c.c. of methyl alcohol (National Aniline).

Method of Staining.—

Do not fix, since the stain contains sufficient alcohol to act as fixative.

Cover the smear with the stain for 1 to 3 minutes, counting the number of drops used. To prevent evaporation of the stain, cover with a bell jar (this is optional).

After 1 to 3 minutes, or longer if a more intense stain is desired, add to the preparation, *without losing any stain*, the same number of drops of neutral distilled water as were used for the staining. The stain now acts by ionization.

We use 3 minutes for the stain and 8 minutes for the mixture of stain and water; some prefer 1 and 4 minutes, respectively.

Wash with tap water, dry, and observe microscopically.

Locke Solution.—

Sodium chloride	9 Gm.
Sodium bicarbonate	0.2 Gm.
Potassium chloride	0.42 Gm.
Calcium chloride	0.25 Gm.
Glucose (may be omitted)	2.5 Gm.
Distilled water	1,000 c.c.

NOTE: Andrews uses potassium bicarbonate instead of the sodium bicarbonate and 0.24 Gm. of $CaCl_2$ instead of 0.25 Gm.

To prevent precipitation of the calcium carbonate, dissolve the calcium chloride separately in a small amount of water and add to the rest of the solution (Cable).

Locke Solution (Modified by Young and Van Sant).—

Sodium chloride	9 Gm.
Potassium chloride	0.4 Gm.
Calcium chloride	0.2 Gm.
Sodium citrate	10.0 Gm.
Distilled water	10.0 c.c.

This solution is used in the diagnosis of *L. donovani* by centrifugalization of blood. Dilute 5 c.c. of blood in Locke solution and centrifuge at 750 r.p.m.

Longley, Clausen, and Tatum Method (For cultivation of trypanosomes in chick embryo).—

Fertile chicken eggs are incubated for 8 to 10 days at 39° C.

Inject 0.2 c.c. quantities for each egg, into the allantoic cavity.

The embryo will die on or about the fourth or fifth day.

Subculture on the fifth day.

Lugol Solution (For staining eggs and cysts of parasites).—

Iodine resublimed	5 Gm.
Potassium iodide	10 Gm.
Distilled water	100 c.c.

Rub up the iodine in the potassium iodide and add the water a small amount at a time, grinding the iodine in the water, until all the water has been added.

Filter after 24 hours.

Lynch Medium (For cultivation of *Trichomonas vaginalis*).—

0.5% sodium chloride solution	10 parts
Human blood serum	1 part

Sterilize the sodium chloride solution in an autoclave and the serum by filtration through a bacteriologic filter.

Mix the 2 substances in the proportion given in the formula and pass through a bacterial filter.

Distribute in 5 c.c. quantities in test tubes.

Incubate at 37° C.

M

MacCallum Macerating Liquid.—

Nitric acid	1 part
Glycerin	2 parts
Water	2 parts

MacGregor Liquid (For preserving stomachs and salivary glands of mosquitoes).—

This formula is recommended by M. A. Barber.—

5% borax solution		10 c.c.
40% formaldehyde solution		10 c.c.
Glycerin		0.25 c.c.
Water	to make	100 c.c.

Mallory Phosphotungstic Acid-Hematoxylin.—

Hematein (ammonium)	0.1 Gm.
Water	100 c.c.
Phosphotungstic acid	2.0 Gm.

Dissolve the hematein in a small quantity of hot water.

Cool and add the rest of the mixture.

If the stain is weak, allow it to ripen for 2 to 3 weeks, and add 5 c.c. of 0.25% aqueous potassium permanganate solution.

Hematoxylin may be used in place of the hematein-ammonium, if 10 c.c. of the aqueous potassium permanganate are added for ripening.

Histologic sections are kept in the solution 2 to 24 hours. This is a special stain for chromosomes and mitotic elements.

Mann Stain (For staining details of the structure of Rhizopoda and Mastigophora, and museum material).—

1% aqueous solution of methylene blue	35 c.c.
1% aqueous solution of eosin	45 c.c.
Distilled water	100 c.c.

Technic.—

Fix in Schaudinn fixative.

Pass through 50% then 70% alcohol containing a few iodine crystals, enough to give a port wine color.

Place for 10 minutes each in 80%, then 90% alcohol.

Place in distilled water for 10 minutes.

Place in Mann stain for 4 to 12 hours, controlling the stain under the microscope.

Wash thoroughly in distilled water.

Differentiate in 70% alcohol to which orange G has been added (a few drops of a saturated solution in 100 c.c. of 70% alcohol).

Wash in distilled water.

Place for at least 5 minutes each in 30%, 50%, 70%, and 90% alcohol.

Place in absolute alcohol for 10 to 15 minutes.

Place in equal parts of absolute alcohol and xylol for 5 minutes.

Clear in xylol.

Mount in neutral balsam.

NOTE: As with the hematoxylin method, do not allow the preparation to dry during any of the staining steps.

Mayer ''Hemalum'' Method (For Rhizopoda and Mastigophora).—See Chapter 69.

Mayer ''Hemalum'' (Hematein-Alum) (Used in the de Feulgen Technic, Cowdry, 1928).—

Hematein	1 Gm.
90% ethyl alcohol	50 c.c.
Alum	50 Gm.
Distilled water	1,000 c.c.

Dissolve the hematein in the alcohol, with heat, and add the water in which the alum has been dissolved. Add a crystal of thymol or salicylic acid.

Mayer Paracarmin.—

Acid carmine	1 Gm.
Aluminum chloride	0.5 Gm.
Calcium chloride	4 Gm.
70% alcohol	100 c.c.

Mercurochrome, 1% Aqueous Solution (For staining chitin, especially hypopigium) **(Osorno Mesa).**—

Preparations stained by this method have remained in excellent condition to date (10 years).

Methyl Green Pyronin.—See Feng's Methyl Green Pyronin.

Murrayite (Murray cement).—

Murrayite is used to seal museum jars or flasks.*

N

Noguchi-Lindenberg Medium (For cultivation of Leishmania).—

This is one of the best methods for cultures of Leishmania, Leptospira, and Herpetomonas.

0.9% sodium chloride solution	800 parts
Fresh rabbit serum	100 parts
2% nutrient agar, pH 7.2	100 parts
Rabbit hemoglobin, 1 part defibrinated blood in 3 parts of distilled water	10 to 20 parts

Leishmania grow on the surface and at times up to a depth of 4 mm. The cultures will show growth on the fourth or fifth day, but growth may be delayed for as long as 2 or 3 weeks. Best results are obtained at 18° to 20° C., but the organisms grow well also at 26° C.

This medium can be kept in the refrigerator for 3 months. Subcultures must be made every 3 weeks.

Noguchi-Ohira Medium (For cultivation of intestinal flagellates).—

Ascitic fluid	500 c.c.
Ringer solution	500 c.c.

Mix and distribute in 5 to 10 c.c. quantities in test tubes.

Add a small piece of guinea pig kidney to each tube. The kidney should be sterile.

Subcultures should be made each 24 hours if incubated at 37° C. and every 48 hours if the temperature of incubation is 22 to 27° C.

Noland Stain (For temporary staining of flagellates and ciliates).—

Saturated aqueous solution of phenol	80 c.c.
40% formaldehyde solution	20 c.c.
Glycerin	4 c.c.
Gentian violet	20 mg.

Moisten the stain with 1 c.c. of water before adding the other ingredients.

Mix one drop of the stain with one drop of the material.

Noller Medium (For cultivation of flagellates of plants).—

This is a nutrient agar which contains 1% agar and 1% glucose, mixed with an equal part of horse blood.

---

*Murrayite can be obtained from the Arthur H. Thomas Co., Philadelphia Pa., U. S. A.

Novy, MacNeal, and Nicolle Medium (NNN agar) (For cultivation of blood flagellates, especially Leishmania and *T. cruzi*).—

Agar	14 Gm.
Sodium chloride	6 Gm.
Distilled water	100 c.c.

Distribute in 3 c.c. quantities in test tubes.

Sterilize in an autoclave.

To use, liquefy the agar in a water bath and add to each tube 1 c.c. of sterile defibrinated rabbit blood.

Mix well by bimanual rotation of the tubes, and slant at room temperature for 12 hours.

Test for sterility by incubating for 24 hours at 37° C.

If there is very little or no water of condensation, a small amount of sterile physiologic saline can be added to the medium and the medium incubated at 22° to 25° C.

O

Osmic Acid (Tetraoxide of Osmium, OsO_4) (Fixative of parasites in blood smears).—

Osmic acid is very volatile. The vapors are used to fix protozoa, especially the amebae and trypanosomes. Crystals or aqueous solution, commonly 1 per cent, may be used. It is advisable to prevent contamination with any solid organic material, since osmic acid is rapidly reduced in the presence of organic matter. Lee recommends a mixture of 2 per cent osmic acid with 1 per cent aqueous solution of chromic acid.

P

Paradichlorobenzene Crystals (For preservation of arthropods in museum boxes).—

A few crystals of paradichlorobenzene are used in small carboard boxes or in small receptacles. These are placed in the corners of the boxes containing preparations or museum mountings (insects, arachnids, etc.). The crystals should be replaced by fresh crystals twice yearly. Mixed with naphthaline, paradichlorobenzene crystals have procured better results in preservation.

Picrocarmine.—

Ammonium hydroxide	5 c.c.
Distilled water	50 c.c.
Carmine	1 Gm.

Dissolve the ingredients and add 50 c.c. of saturated aqueous solution of picric acid. Expose to the air and light for 2 days; then filter.

A few crystals of picric acid may be added to the decolorizing agent used during the staining process.

P.V.A. Fixative (Polyvinyl alcohol fixative, for trophozoites of intestinal protozoa).—

Acetic acid, glacial	5.0 c.c.
Glycerin	1.5 c.c.
Saturated aqueous solution of mercuric chloride	62.4 c.c.
Ethyl alcohol, 95%	31.2 c.c.

Heat to 75° C. and add while stirring

Polyvinyl alcohol (P.V.A. powder, Elvanol 90-25 DuPont)	5 Gm.

Remains unchanged for several months.

Potassium Dichromate Solution, Specific Gravity 1.35 (For isolation of eggs of helminths from soil).—

Dissolve 40 Gm. of potassium dichromate in enough distilled water to make a total of 100 c.c., and test the specific gravity. Adjust if necessary.

Potassium Hydroxide, 10% Solution (To clear insects—exoskeleton).—

This solution is used either cold or hot. The cold solution is applied for 12 to 24 hours; the hot for a few minutes (10 to 20). Wash, dehydrate, clear, and mount in neutral Canada balsam or in Euparol for permanent mounts.

Q

Quensel Stain (For staining live amebae).—

This stain does not stain the cysts, but it does stain the nuclear structures, chromatin and karyosome.

Saturated solution of Sudan III in 80% alcohol and saturated solution of methylene blue (officinal) in distilled water are used to make the stain. Filter each solution.

Mix 20 c.c. of the Sudan III solution with 30 c.c. of the methylene blue solution.

Filter and collect the filtrate in a vessel containing 50 c.c. of 10% cadmium chloride (5 Gm. in 50 c.c. of water).

A colorless precipitate will form in the center of the liquid.

Immediately shake gently, and 10 to 15 minutes later repeat the process.

Filter. The precipitate will remain on the filter paper. Place the filter paper containing the precipitate in another filter paper and allow to stand overnight.

Transfer the precipitate to a new filter paper, wash with distilled water (25 to 30 c.c.), rapidly passing through the filter which contains the precipitate.

Dissolve the precipitate in 250 c.c. of distilled water. If there are fine crystals of cadmium chloride, filter until these disappear.

Use 1 drop of stain for 1 particle of stool specimen.

Observe after 5 to 10 minutes. After 20 to 30 minutes the amebae are overstained.

R

Reichenow Medium (For cultivation of pathogenic trypanosomes).—

This is a mixture of citrated human blood and Ringer solution. Each tube contains 1 c.c. of Ringer solution and 0.6% of sodium chloride.

Sterilize and add to each tube 1 c.c. of citrated human blood.

Place in a refrigerator for 2 to 3 days before using.

Inoculate and incubate at 24° C.

Subculture every 2 weeks.

Ringer Solution.—

Sodium chloride	8 Gm.
Potassium chloride	0.2 Gm.
Anhydrous calcium chloride	0.2 Gm.
Sodium bicarbonate	0.2 Gm.
Dextrose (may be omitted)	1.0 Gm.
Distilled water	1,000 c.c.

Roche Liquoid (For cultivating *T. gambiense* and *T. rhodesiense* in Brutseart and Henrard Medium).—

This is a 1% polyanethol sodium sulfonate solution.

Roger Medium (For cultivation of *L. donovani*).—

This was the first culture medium used for *L. donovani.*

Add 8 Gm. of sodium citrate to each 100 c.c. of 0.85% sodium chloride solution and mix thoroughly. If the solution is not acid, add a small amount of citric acid.

Distribute in 1 c.c. quantities and autoclave.

Inoculate with 0.5 to 1.0 c.c. of peripheral blood or with small quantities of splenic or hepatic pulp or bone marrow.

Row Medium (Saline Solution-Hemoglobin) (Special medium for Chilomastix; best for *Trichomonas hominis*).—

Obtain 10 c.c. of rabbit blood by cardiac puncture and defibrinate with glass beads under sterile precautions.

Transfer with a pipette to 100 c.c. of sterile neutral distilled water, pH 7.0 to 7.1.

Add 1 volume of this hemoglobin solution to 2 volumes of 1.2% sterile sodium chloride solution.

Distribute in 5 and 10 c.c. quantities in test tubes and incubate at 37° C.

Ruge Solution (Used to dehemoglobinize thick drop preparations).—

Formol	2 c.c.
Acetic acid	1 c.c.
Distilled water	100 c.c.

S

Saisawa-Sugawara Stain (For microfilariae) (Foshay, 1947).—

Solution A.—

Tannic acid	5.0 Gm.
Distilled water, q.s.	100 c.c.

Dissolve with minimal heat. When cool, filter and add, in the following order:

Fe_2Cl_6, 40% aqueous solution	1.5 c.c.
Formalin	2.0 c.c.
NaOH, 10% aqueous solution	1.5 c.c.

Shake well. It should have an indigo color. The whiter the tannic acid, the better the mordant.

Solution B.—

$AgNO_3$	2.0 Gm.
Distilled water, q.s.	100 c.c.

Dissolve.

Place 10 c.c. in a beaker.

While shaking, add strong ammonia water, drop by drop, until an opalescence appears and disappears. Then add the remaining 90 c.c. and shake well. It should show a brownish turbidity.

If kept separately in well-stoppered brown bottles, these solutions will remain useful for at least a month.

Procedure for Staining Blood Smears.—

A small amount of each solution, shaken well, is filtered through filter paper just before smears are to be stained. For smears previously stained with hematoxylin, flood the area with filtrate of solution A for 5 to 8 minutes, the duration depending upon the depth of mordanting desired.

Flood off the mordant with distilled water, and wash the slide in running tap water for 4 or 5 minutes.

Again flush the slide with distilled water.

Flood it then with solution B. Tilt the slide back and forth over a white surface until it develops an evenly distributed deep orange-brown color. This requires 3 to 20 seconds.

As soon as the desired color develops, quickly wash off the solution with distilled water, and again wash the slide for several minutes in running tap water.

Dry in the air and mount in Clarite.

When this method is applied to dried smears, hydrate them for 15 to 30 minutes in water and allow them to just become dry in the air before mordanting.

Schaudinn Fixative.—

Saturated aqueous mercuric chloride solution	200 c.c.
95% ethyl alcohol	100 c.c.

Mix and add, before using, 2 to 5 c.c. of glacial acetic acid. Some authors recommend different percentages of acetic acid (12 to 15%).

Seneca Medium (For cultivation of Leishmania and *T. cruzi*).—

(1) Dissolve 50 Gm. Bacto-beef extract in 1,000 c.c. of distilled water. Heat at 50° C. for ½ hour and then for 5 minutes at 80° C. Filter and add.

Neo-peptone	20 parts
Agar (Nobel)	20 parts
Sodium chloride	5 parts

Adjust the reaction to pH 7.2 to 7.4 and sterilize in an autoclave at 15 pounds pressure for 20 minutes.

Cool and add defibrinated rabbit blood to a concentration of 10 per cent.

(2) *Extract of Liver and Eggs:*

Emulsify 4 eggs in a sterile flask containing glass beads. Add 50 c.c. of the following solution:

Sodium chloride	0.02 Gm.
Calcium chloride	0.02 Gm.
Potassium chloride	0.02 Gm.
Sodium bicarbonate	0.02 Gm.
Distilled water	100 c.c.

Mix well, filter, distribute in test tubes or flasks, and sterilize at 90° C. for 10 minutes then at 10 pounds pressure. Lower the pressure slowly to prevent formation of air bubbles.

Cover the culture with 0.5% sterile liver extract in physiologic saline solution.

Incubate 24 hours to test for sterility.

Simons' Solution (For rapid staining of thick drops).—

Methylene blue	0.6 Gm.
Sodium chloride	1.8 Gm.
Sodium citrate	3.0 Gm.
Saponin (Rhone-Poulenc)	2.0 Gm.
15% formol	12.0 c.c.

Stevenel Stain (Used in the Boye technic of staining thick drops of blood).—

Medicinal methylene blue	1 Gm.
Potassium permanganate	1.5 Gm.
Distilled water	150 c.c.

Dissolve the methylene blue and the permanganate in 75 c.c. of the distilled water, separately, and mix in a flask. A precipitate will form. Place in a water bath for ½ hour until the precipitate redissolves. Filter. The stain will be a dark violet color.

T

Tanabe and Chiba Medium (For cultivation of *E. histolytica*).—

Agar	10 Gm.
Asparagin	1 Gm.
Ringer solution	1,000 c.c.

Sterilize in an autoclave at 15 pounds pressure for 30 minutes. Slant while still hot and allow to solidify.

Cover the surface of the slants with Ringer solution containing 5 per cent sterile rabbit serum.

Add a small quantity of sterile dried rice starch before inoculating the medium.

Torres Medium (For cultivation of *T. cruzi*).—

Peptone	5 Gm.
Sodium chloride	7 Gm.
Beef broth	100 c.c.

Dissolve 5 Gm. of Bacto-beef (Difco) in 100 c.c. of distilled water in a water bath at 55° C. for 1 hour to prepare the beef broth.

Add the salt and the peptone while hot.

Filter and adjust the reaction to pH 6.55 to 7.18.

Distribute in tubes and sterilize.

Incubate in a dark place at 22° to 25° C.

Subculturing is difficult.

Tsuchiya Method (For cultivation of amebae).—

Nutrient Broth.—

Dissolve 3 Gm. meat extract
and 5 Gm. sodium chloride
in 1,000 c.c. of distilled water.

Adjust the reaction to pH 7.0 and sterilize in an autoclave at 15 pounds pressure for 30 minutes. The pH of the medium within a range of 6.8 to 7.4 also answers the purpose, although the optimum pH is 7.0.

"S.C." mixture is a thoroughly triturated mixture of rice starch and animal charcoal in the proportion of 2:1 by volume. A small amount of the mixture is placed loosely in a small vial and sterilized by dry heat at 180° C. for 45 minutes.

For use, add two 4-mm. loopfuls of the "S.C." mixture to 8 c.c. of the sterile nutrient broth.

V

Van Cleave and Ross Method (For reclaiming dried zoological specimens).—

A 0.25 to 0.5 per cent solution of commercial trisodium phosphate in distilled water is effective in restoring the appearance of specimens. Warmed solutions are more rapid in action than cold. The maximum effect is obtained in about 1 hour, with small or delicate objects.

W

Water, Neutral Distilled.—

The method of choice is that using hematoxylin as an indicator and 1% potassium carbonate and 1% hydrochloric acid as neutralizing agents. Refer to Chapter 68.

Neutrality of water may also be attained by using buffer capsules or buffer solutions.

Acid Solutions.—

M/15 NaH_2PO_4	9.2 Gm. per liter
M/15 KH_2PO_4	9.07 Gm. per liter

Alkaline Solution.—

M/15 Na_2HPO_4	9.5 Gm. per liter

pH	Acid Solution		Alkaline Solution	Water to Make:
7.0	38.9 c.c.	+	61.1 c.c.	900 c.c.
7.2	28.0 c.c.	+	72.0 c.c.	900 c.c.

Distribute in glass containers and cover the surface with a layer of mineral oil to prevent entrance of atmospheric carbon dioxide.

Wenyon Medium (For cultivation of *Emb. intestinalis* and Trichomonas).—

2% nutrient agar, pH 7.6	30 c.c.
0.85% sodium chloride solution, pH 7.6	270 c.c.

Add the agar to the sodium chloride solution, mix well, and distribute in 10 c.c. quantities.

Sterilize in an autoclave at 15 pounds pressure for 20 minutes.

When the medium cools to 50° C., add 20 drops of defibrinated rabbit blood to each tube. Control the sterility by incubating for 24 hours at 37° C. and observing for growth.

Wright Stain.—

See Chapter 68.

Y

Young and Van Sant Medium (For cultivation of *L. donovani* from peripheral blood).—

Obtain 10 c.c. of venous blood in a sterile syringe containing 2 c.c. of Locke solution.

Place in a flask containing 50 to 70 c.c. of Locke solution.

Mix well and place in two 50 c.c. centrifuge tubes.

Centrifuge for 5 minutes at 750 r.p.m. until the red cells have been completely sedimented. Decant the supernatant fluid and centrifuge again for 5 minutes at approximately 1,375 r.p.m.

Place the sediment in tubes containing NNN medium with rabbit blood, pH 7.6.

Incubate at 22° C.

The flagellates will appear in the medium between the tenth and twelfth days.

References

Anido Fraguio, Vicente, and Guillermo: 1943. Laboratorio Clinico, Técnicas é Interpretaciones, ed. 2, vol. II, Cultural, S. A. Havana, pp. 1447, 1452, 1453.

Basnuevo, José G.: 1943. Conservación de Huevos de Helmintos y Quistes de Protozarios, Avance Medical, Sept.

Bass, C. C.: 1912. Successful Cultivation of Malarial Plasmodia, J. A. M. A. **59**: 936.

Bass, C. C.: Am. J. Trop. Med. & Prev. Med. **1**: 546 (out of print); cited by Craig.

Bijlmer, J.: 1948. On the Recovery of Protozoa and Eggs of Some Species of Helminths in Human Feces, J. Parasitol. **34**: 101.

Bonilla-Naar, Alfonso: 1943. Coloración de Helmintos por el Rojo Congo (Larvas y Proglotides); unpublished.

Bunting, M.: 1926. Studies of the Life Cycle of Tetramitus Rostratus Petty (1852), J. Morphol. & Physiol. **42**: 23-81, cited by Andrews.

Brook, M. M.: 1943-1944. Lectures on Protozoology (in mimeograph); chapter on Culture Media for Protozoa, School of Hygiene and Public Health, Johns Hopkins University, Baltimore.

Causey, O. R.: 1939. Description of Three Species of Frog Microfilariae. With Notes on Staining Methods, Am. J. Hyg. **30**: 117-121.

Cova-Garcia, Pablo: Notas sobre los anofelinos de Venezuela y su identificación, Pub. División de Malariología (No. 2), Caracas, Folleto, p. 28.

Craig, Ch. F.: 1926. Observations Upon the Cultivation of *Endamoeba histolytica*, Am. J. Trop. Med. **6**: 461-464.

Craig, Ch. F.: 1942. Laboratory Diagnosis of Protozoan Diseases, Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, pp. 45, 48, 52, 54, 55, 66, 70-73, 75-77, 79, 145-147, 304, 326, 327, 328.

Craig, Ch. F., and Faust, E. C.: 1943. Clinical Parasitology, ed. 3, chap. XLIII, Technics and Aids for the Collection, Preparation, and Identification of Parasitic Protozoa. Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, pp. 644, 652.

Craig, Ch. F., and Faust, E. C.: 1943. Ibid., p. 670.

D'Antoni, J. S.: 1937. Standardization of the Iodine Stain for Wet Preparations of Intestinal Protozoa, Am. J. Trop. Med. **17**: 79-84.

Feng, Lan-Chou: 1933. A Comparative Study of the Anatomy of Microfilaria Malayi Brug, 1927, and Microfilaria Bancrofti Cobbold, 1877, Chinese M. J. **47**: 1214-1246; cited by Causey, 1939.

Field, J. W.: 1941. Tr. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg. **35**: 35.

Foshay, Lee: 1947. Cuticular Morphology of Microfilariae, Am. J. Trop. Med. **27**: 233-239.

Gradwohl, R. B. H.: 1948. Clinical Laboratory Methods and Diagnosis, ed. 4, St. Louis, The C. V. Mosby Co.

Guyer, Michael, F.: 1943. Animal Micrology, ed. 4, chapter I, Preparation of Reagents, pp. 7-14 (Appendix B); Some Standard Reagents and Their Uses, pp. 230-266, Chicago, The University of Chicago Press.

Hegner, Robert, and Andrews, Justin: 1930. Problems and Methods of Research in Protozoology, chapt. VII, pp. 62-63; chapt. XLII, pp. 463-473, New York, The Macmillan Co.

Janer, J. P.: 1939. Puerto Rico J. Pub. Health & Trop. Med. **12**: 192.

Johnson: J. Applied Microscopy **6**: 2652; cited by Guyer, 1943.

Kopel, M.: 1945. Modification of the Giemsa Stain for Malaria Parasites, J. Tech. Methods **25**: 61-69; Cited by E. Lieb: Biol. Absts. **21**: 234, 1947.

Kourí, Pedro, Basnuevo, José G., and Sotolongo, Federico: 1943. Lecciones de Parasitología y Medicina Tropical, vol. I, Generalidades, chapt. VII, Manejo del Microscopio en Parasitología, p. 121, Habana, El Siglo XX.

Manwell, Reginald D.: 1945. The J.S.B. Stain for Blood Parasites, J. Lab. & Clin. Med. **30**: 1078-1082; cited in Biol. Abst. **20**: 2253, 1946.

Migone, L. E.: 1922. Flagelados de las plantas, Rev. Soc. Cient. Paraguay. **1**: 35-39, cited by Holmes, in Hegner and Andrews, 1930, chap. XXIX, p. 263.

Musgrave, W. E., and Clegg, M. T.: Amebas: Their Cultivation and Etiological Significance, Dept. Inst. Bur. Gov. Lab. Biol. (Lab. Bull. No. 1) Pt. Manila.

Nelson, E. C.: 1943. J. Parasitol., p. 292; cited by Brook, 1943-1944.

Noguchi, H.: 1926. Comparative Studies of Herpetomonads and Leishmanias. I. Cultivation of Herpetomonads From Insects and Plants, J. Exper. Med. **44**: 307-325; cited by Holmes in Hegner and Andrews, 1930, p. 263.

Noland, L. E.: 1928. A Combined Fixative and Stain for Demonstrating Flagella and Cilia in Temporary Mounts, Science **67**: 535; cited by Wenrich in Hegner and Andrews, 1930, chap. XIV, p. 125.

Nöller, W.: 1917. Blut und Insektenflagellatenzuchtung auf Platten, Arch. f. Schiffs- u. Tropen-Hyg. **21**: 53; cited by Holmes.

Osorno-Mesa, E.: 1947. Una nueva técnica para el estudio microscópico de las huevos de Anopheles, Caldasia **4**: 447-451.

Peacock, H. A.: 1935. Elementary Microtechnique, London, Edward Arnold & Co., p. 160.

Pearl, Raymond: J. Applied Microscopy **6**: 2451; cited by Guyer, 1943.

Ratcliffe, A. W.: 1946. A Note on Staining Plasmodia, Science **103**: 630-631; cited by Raines, M. A., Biol. Abst. **21**: 235, 1947.

Sellard, A. W., and Thieler, M.: 1924. Investigations Concerning Amoebic Dysentery, Am. J. Trop. Med. **4**: 309-330.

Talice, Rodolfo, V.: 1944. Enfermedades Parasitarias, vol. I, Montevideo, Editorial Científica del Sindicato Médico del Uruguay, pp. 214-215, 555, 557.

Tsuchiya, H.: 1934. J. Lab. & Clin. Med. **19**: 495.

Van Cleave, H. J., and Ross, J. A.: 1947. A Method for Reclaiming Dried Zoological Specimens, Science **105**: 318.

Van Cleave, H. J., and Ross, J. A.: 1947. Use of Trisodium Phosphate in Microscopical Technique, Science **106**: 194.

War Department: 1941. Technical Manual, Methods for Laboratory Technicians, T-M, 8-227, Washington, D. C.

Wherry, W. B.: 1913. Studies on the Biology of an Amoeba of the Limax, Group Valkampfia sp.-Arch. f. Protist., No. 1, **31**: 77-94.

INDEX

A

Abortion, brucellosis, 425, 427
  vitamin E, 1285
Abramis brama, opisthorchiasis, 1017
Abscess, amebic, 49, 62, 1479
  Chagas' disease, 139, 140
  guinea worm, 933
  liver, *see* Liver, abscess
  mycetoma, 1133
  Salmonella, 513, 518, 519, 521
  Schistosoma haematobium, 1054
    japonicum, 1032, 1034, 1038
  subphrenic, amebic liver abscess, 49
Acanthocheilonema perstans, 873
    incidence, 8
    key, 876
  streptocerca, 873
    key, 876
Acanthophis antarcticus, 1239
Acanthoscuria sternalis, 1232, 1234
Acaricides, 1218
Acarids, 1203 ff
Acarina, 1203 ff
Acariscus flui, 1217
Acephalocystis granulosa, 952
Acetarsone, amebiasis, 57, 1389, 1390
  yaws, 293
Acetic acid-ether concentration, stools, 1532
Acetylamino-hydroxyphenylarsonic acid, 293
Acetylarsan, Chagas' disease, 154
Acetylcholine, scorpionism, 1229
Acetyltannic acid, shigellosis, 575
Achorion schönleini, Trichophyton concentricum, 1118
Achrestic anemia, 1291
    blood picture, 1480
Achromia, parasitic, 1121
Acid-fast stain, tissues, 1521
Acidophilus milk, inermicapsiferiasis, 982
Acinopus picipesoe, myiasis, 1201
Acne vulgaris, yaws, 288
Acranil, cestodiasis, 1395
  enterobiasis, 1397
  giardiasis, 1392
  hymenolepiasis, 1396
Acremonium, 1152
Acridine compounds, trench fever, 748
    typhus, 748
  plague, 1372
  rickettsioses, 748
Acriflavine, bartonellosis, 636
  dracontiasis, 935
  schistosomiasis intercalata, 1067
  tropical ulcer, 661
Acrodynia, 1278
Actinobacillosis, clubs, 1148
Actinomyces actinoides, 263
  antibiotics, 1410
  bovis, 1132
    yaws, 287
  classification, 1149
  clubs, 1148
  history, 1131
  muris, 264
Actinomycetales, classification, 1149
  culture, 1150
  mycetoma-producing, 1149
  staining characteristics, 1150
Actinomycetes, aerobic, 1149
  colonies, 1149
  lungs, 1140
Actinomycosis, aerobes, 1149
  granules, 1134, 1137, 1155
  history, 1131
  sulfanilamide, 1406
  yaws, 287
Actractaspis irregularis, 1243
Adder, 1244
  death, 1239
    poison apparatus, 1246
Adder—Cont'd
  habits, 1244
  night, 1244
    venom, 1249
  puff, 1244
    antivenin, 1258
    symptoms, 1251
    treatment, 1256
Addison's disease, malaria, 10
    sprue, 10
Adenitis, attenuated, Chagas' disease, 141
  chagasic, acute, 139
  lymphogranuloma venereum, 395
  tularemia, 439
Adermin, 1278
Adhesion reaction, African sleeping sickness, 164
Adrenal cortex, sprue, 1303
  insufficiency, cholera, 484
Adrenalin, dracontiasis, 936
  schistosomiasis japonica, 1037
  test, beriberi, 1337
Adrenals, histoplasmosis, 1192
  psittacosis, 354
Adrenocortical hormone, cholera, 499
Aëdes aegypti, 313
    dengue, 333, 334
    encephalomyelitis, 369
    eradication, 324
    filariasis, 876
    virus transmission, 300
    yellow fever, 318
  africanus, yellow fever, 319
  albopictus, dengue, 333, 334
    encephalitis, 370
      West Nile, 379
    encephalomyelitis, 369
  argenteus, 313 *footnote*
    dengue, 334
  dorsalis, encephalitis, 370, 379
  encephalitis, 370
  encephalomyelitis, 369
  leucocelaenus, yellow fever, 319
  scutellaris, dengue, 334
    pseudoscutellaris, filariasis, 876, 887
  simpsoni, yellow fever, 319
  vexans, encephalomyelitis, 369
    filariasis, 876
Aegypti index, 324
Aerobacter aerogenes, aureomycin, 1409
Aerosols, DDT, 122
African sleeping sickness, 156 ff
    abortive forms, 162
    adhesion reaction, 164
    Antrypol, 166, 168
      Tryparsamide, 167
    arsenic compounds, 165
    Atoxyl, 165
    Bayer "205", 166
    Belgamyl, 166
    blood, 163
      chemistry, 164
      picture, 164, 1497
    bone marrow, 160
    brain, 158, 159
      Chagas' disease, 142, 143
    cerebral stage, 161
    chancre, trypanosome, 160
    clinical pathology, 164
    congenital, 158
    DDT, 168
    diagnosis, differential, 164
      laboratory, 163
    Diamidine, 167
    diamidinodiphenoxypentant, 165
    diamidinodiphenoxypropane, 165
    diamidinodistilbene, 165
    distribution, 156
    etiology, 156
    eyes, 161
      treatment, effect, 165

African sleeping sickness—Cont'd
    facial expression, 162
    fever, 160, 161
    Fourneau 309, 166
    Glyphenarsine, 166
    heart, 160, 161
    immunity, 158
    incubation period, 160
    Kerandel's sign, 160
    kidney, 160
    laboratory diagnosis, 163
    liver, 160, 161
    lung, 160
    lymph glands, 158, 161, 163
    Melarsen B, 167
      oxide, 167
    meningitis, 159
    Moranyl, 166
    Naphuride, 166
    Novatoxyl, 166
    pathology, 158
    Pentamidine, 165, 167
      -Tryparsamide, 167
    prognosis, 164
    Propamidine, 165, 167
    prophylactic treatment, 167
    prophylaxis, 168
    pulse, 160
    reservoir, 157
    resistance, 158
    respiration, 160
    serology, 164
    skin, 158, 160, 161
    spinal fluid, 163, 164, 168
    spleen, 160, 161
    Stilbamidine, 165, 167
    Suramin B.P., 166
    symptoms, 160 ff
      neurologic, 162
    treatment, 165 ff
      blood pressure, 165
      combined, 167
      general, 168
      prophylactic, 167
      urine, 166, 167
    Tryparsamide, 166, 167, 168
      -Pentamidine, 167
    Tryparsone, 166
    vectors, 156, 157
    virulence, 158
    Winterbottom's sign, 161
  tickbite fever, history, 694
Agamonematodum migrans, 838
Agapornis personata, psittacosis, 351
Agchylostoma duodenale, 821
Agglutination test, brucellosis, 429
    cholera, 490
      technic, 492
    leptospiras, 240, 241
    psittacosis, 353
    salmonellosis, 522, 523, 557
    scleroma respiratorium, 683
    Shigellae, 541
    shigellosis, 575
    tropical ulcer, 650
    tularemia, 440
    typhoid, 522, 523, 567
    virus diseases, 304, 305
Agglutinin absorption test, leptospiras, 241
  Leptospira, urine, 246
  Oroya fever, 627, 632
Agkistrodon, 1241
  mokeson, 1241
    habits, 1244
  piscivorius, 1241
    habits, 1244
    symptoms, 1252
    venom, 1249
Aglossa dimidiata, Hymenolepis diminuta, 971
Agulha, 1270
Air conditioning, 1444
Airplane spray, 120 ff
A-K powder, tropical ulcer, 661
Akamuchi, 737
Akee, 1430
Akis spinosa, Hymenolepis diminuta, 971
Alacran, 1226
Alastrim, 1365
Albumin-globulin ratio, 1293
    malaria, 85

Albumin tannate, shigellosis, 575
Alcohol, absolute, 1549
  acid, 1513
  hygiene in Tropics, 1433
  methyl, 1549
  percentage solutions, 1549
Alcoholism, beriberi, 1337, 1337 *footnote*
  pellagra, 1343
  vitamin B_1, 1337, 1337 *footnote*
Aldehyde reaction, visceral leishmaniasis, 198
Aldersone, relapsing fever, 235
Aleurospores, 1104
  dermatophytes, 1114
Allergy, amebiasis, 40
  arthropods, 1198
  ascariasis, 801, 805
  enterobiasis, 811
  filariasis, bancroftian, 877, 878
  intestines, 1313
  leprosy, 605
  penicillin, 1408
  shigellosis, 539
Allodermanyssus sanguineus, rickettsialpox, 792
Allylmercaptomethylpenicillin, 1408
Almaza patch, tropical ulcer, 660
Almeida's disease, 1178 ff
Alopecia, leprosy, 599
Alpha-naphthyl-thiourea, plague, 469
    rodenticide, 762
Alum-carmine, 1549
  -cochineal, 1549
Alutera monoceros, 1270
Alyselminthus cuneiceps, 973
Amann, chlorolactophenol, 1105
  solution, 1550
Amazona, psittacosis, 351
Amblyomma, 1204, 1207
  americanum, 1213
    DDT, 760
    spotted fever, 732
  cajennense, 1214
    DDT, 760
    spotted fever, 732
    transmission, 1213
  maculatum, 1213
    DDT, 760
  ovale, 1213
  striatum, 1214
    spotted fever, 732
Ameba, 20 ff, *see also* Amebiasis, Endamoeba histolytica, *and* Amebic abscess
  classification, 20
  culture, 1554, 1569
  cysts, Dobell, 1555
  fixative, 1566
  liver abscess, 40, *see also* Liver abscess
  nucleus, 20
  shape, 14
  stain, 1554, 1560, 1567
  stool collection, 1524
  structure, 15
  transmission, 36
  ulcers, 38
Amebarson, amebiasis, 56, 58
Amebiasis, 35 ff, *see also* Endamoeba histolytica, Ameba, *and* Amebic abscess
  Acetarsone, 57, 1389, 1390
  age, 36
  allergy, 40
  amebarson, 56
  Amebo Oral "Kuba," 58
  Anayodin, 57
  antibiotics, 1410
  anus, 49
  appendicitis, 45
    perforations, 47
  Aralen, 58, 59
  arsenicals, 1389, 1390
  arsonic acid derivatives, 56
  aureomycin, 1409
  bacitracin, 1409
  bismuth, 1389, 1390, 1391
    subnitrate, 58
  blood picture, 54, 1479
  Bolus alba, 58
  brain, 49
  buffalo skin intestine, 39
  Carbarsone, 56, 59, 1389, 1390

Amebiasis—Cont'd
  carriers, 36, 37, 41
    treatment, 1389
  Castela nicholsoni, 58
  caused by other amebae, 63
  Chaparro amargoso, 58
  chiniofon, 57, 58, 59, 1389, 1390
    prophylaxis, 63
  Chloroquine, 1391
  cholecystitis, 46
  chronic, latent, treatment, 1389
    treatment, 1390
  clinical picture, 41
  colitis mucous, 49
    ulcerative, 50
  combined treatment, 58
  complement fixation test, 54
  complications, 46
    treatment, 62
  constipation, 42
  control, problems, 1455
  cyst passers, 41
  definition, 35
  diagnosis, 1537, 1538
  diarrhea, 42, 43
  dietary treatment, 60
  diiodo-hydroxyquinoline, 57
  Diodoquin, 57, 58, 59, 64, 1389, 1390, 1392
    footnote
  Dyak hair sloughs, 39
  dysentery, 44, *see* Dysentery, amebic
  emetine, 55, 58, 59, 60, 1390, 1391, 1392
    -bismuth-iodide, 56, 58
    -surgical drainage treatment, 1392
  Enterovioform, 57
  epididymis, 49
  examination, 51 ff
  feces, *see* Amebiasis, stools, *and* Stools
  food handlers, 42, 1435, 1436
  Fourneau "270," 57
  gangrene, Clostridia, 40
  gastrointestinal disturbances, 50
  granuloma, 39, 46
  hemorrhage, 47
    intestines, 38, 45
    treatment, 63
  hemorrhoids, 50
  hepatic, treatment, 1391
  hepatitis, 47
    blood picture, 1479
  Hill diarrhea, 50
  Holarrhena antidysenterica, 58
  host-parasite equilibrium, 41
  incidence, 37
    seasonal, 36
  incubation time, 41
  intermediate, 44
  intestines, 51 ff
    ulcers, 50
  iodine, 35, 57
  iodo-chloro-hydroxyquinoline, 57
    -oxyquinoline, 1389, 1390
  kaolin, 58
  kidney, 49
  Kubalen, 57
  Kubarsol, 57, 58
  Kurchi bark, 58
  Kurchine bismuthiodide, 58
    hydrochloride, 58
  laboratory examinations, 53
  liver, 40, 42, 47, 48
    abscess, 40, 48, 62
    treatment, 1391
  localized, 45
  lung, 49, 1392
  malignancy, 51
  Manson-Bahr's prescription, 62
  Manson's sign, 42
  megacolon, 50
  Milibis, 57
  mucous colitis, 49
  Neoarsphenamine, 57
  nephritis, 51
  neurasthenia, 51
  papaverine, 61
  pathology, 37
  Pavitrine, 61
  p-carbamino-phenylarsonic acid, 56
  pellagra, 1355, 1356
  penicillin, 59, 60, 62

Amebiasis—Cont'd
  penis, 49
  Pentaquine, 58
  perforation, 46
    intestinal, treatment, 63
  periproctitis, 50
  peritonitis, 45
  prognosis, 54
  prophylaxis, 63
  Protozida, 57
  pulmonary, treatment, 1392
  Quinoxyl, 57
  race, 36
  rectum prolapse, 50
  schistosomiasis mansoni, 1084
  seasonal, 44
  seaweed colon, 39
  secondary infection, 40, 41
  sedatives, 1390
  sequelae, 49
    treatment, 62
  sex, 36
  sigmoidoscopic examination, 51
  skin, 49
    myxinoid, 45
  sodium sulphaphthalidine, 62
  spastic colon, 49
  Spirocid, 57
  spleen, 49
  sprue, 50
  stools, 43, 44, 45, 46
    examination, 53
    perforation, 47
  Stovarsol, 57
  subclinical, 41
  sulfonamides, 58, 59, 60, 62
  supportive treatment, 61
  surgery, 1391, 1392
  symptomatic, 42
    treatment, 61
  symptoms, 41
  syndromic, 42
  temperate zones, 10
  transmission, 36
  treatment, 55 ff, 59, 1389-1392
    complications, 62
    dietary, 60
    other amebae, 64
    sequelae, 62
    supportive, 61
    symptomatic, 61
  Treparsol, 1389, 1390
  typhlitis, 45
    perforations, 47
  ulcers, 38 ff, 45
    acute, 45
    intestinal, 50
    stomach, 46
  urinary, 40, 49
  Vioform, 57, 59, 1389, 1390
  water transmission, 36
  x-ray examination, 51
Amebic abscess, 49
    blood picture, 1479
    liver, treatment, 62
  appendicitis, 45
    blood picture, 1480
    perforations, 47
  diarrhea, 43 ff
  dysentery, *see* Dysentery, amebic
  granuloma, 46
  hepatitis, 47
  liver abscess, 48
    disease, treatment, 62
  splash, 42
  typhlitis, 45
    perforations, 47
Amebo Oral "Kuba," amebiasis, 58
American Foundation for Tropical Medicine, 2
Amino acids, 1273
    arginine, 1288
    deficiency, symptoms, 1286
      treatment, 1288
    essential, 1286
    foods, 1288
    histidine, 1287
    isoleucine, 1287
    leucine, 1287
    lysine, 1286
    methionine, 1287, 1288

Amino acids—Cont'd
    phenylalanine, 1287
    requirements, 1288, 1434
    threonine, 1287
    tryptophane, 1286
    valine, 1288
  -arseno-phenol, leishmaniasis, 190
Ammonium-isopropanol, 1513
Amoeba, 20 ff
  proteus, classification, 20
Amoebida, classification, 20
Anabantidae, clonorchiasis, 1009
Anal coshol, 1202
Analgesic whitlow, 601
Anas boschas, encephalitis, 371
  platyrhynchos, psittacosis, 351
Anavenin, 1254
  bee sting, 1267
Anayodin, amebiasis, 57
Anchovy sauce stools, 44
Ancylostoma braziliense, 838
    skin, 839
  caninum, 839
    creeping eruption, 838
    history, 820
    staining, 1554
  ceylonicum, 838
  duodenale, 819 ff, 821 ff, *see also* Hookworm *and* Ancylostomiasis
    coproculture, 1542
    description, 822
    destruction, 827
    distribution, 821
    eggs, 822, 823
      count, 1535
    habitat, 827
    history, 820
    incidence, 8, 821
    life cycle, 823
      span, 827
    Necator americanus, differentiation, 822
    number, 827, 830, 1398
    parasite counts, 1535
    pathogenesis, 828
    prophylaxis, 836
    stain, 1554
    toxins, 829
    transmission, 834
  malayanum, 837, *see also* Hookworm *and* Ancylostomiasis
Ancylostomiasis, 819 ff, *see also* Ancylostoma *and* Hookworm
  anemia and treatment, 1371
  anthelminthics, 1398
  Ascoli reaction, 1547
  blood picture, 1488
  carbon tetrachloride, 1399
  Clayton-Lane flotation, 1537
  diagnosis, 1537
    Ascoli reaction, 1547
    coproculture, 1542
    miostagmin reaction, 1547
  diet, 1398, 1399
  examination, 1537
  history, 820
  iron, 1399
  miostagmin reaction, 1547
  tetrachloroethylene, 1399
  treatment, 1398, 1399
  urine, 829
Anemia, 1478, 1479 *see also* Blood picture
  achrestic, 1291, 1480
  aplastic, arsenicals, 291
  arthropods, 1197
  bothriocephalic, 990, 1485, 1486
  Diphyllobothrium labum, 990, 1485, 1486
  dogs, ticks, 1212
  folic acid deficiency, 1280, *see also* Folic acid
  hemolytic, 1487
  hookworm, *see* Hookworm anemia
  hypochromic, children, 1480
    idiopathic, 1480
    iron deficiency, 1296
    pregnancy, 1480
  iron deficiency, 1480
  macrocytic, 1290, 1291, *see also* Sprue *and* Anemia, pernicious
    brucellosis, 1483
    nutritional, 1480, 1481
    sprue, 1495
Anemia, macrocytic—Cont'd
    tropical, 1290
      sprue, 1309
  malaria, 97
  miners, 819 ff
  myxedema, 1480
  nutritional, 1290 ff, 1480, 1481, *see also* Nutritional anemia
    edema, 1292, *see also* Nutritional edema.
  Oroya fever, 622, 623, 625, 626, 632
  pernicious, blood picture, 1480
    bone marrow, 1315
    deficiency pattern, 1313
    Diphyllobothrium latum, 990
    gastric chromoscopy, 1308
    gastroscopic findings, 1311
    pregnancy, 1481
    sprue, 1299, 1300, 1301, 1311, 1312, 1315
      differential diagnosis, 1308
    stools, 1311
    trichuriasis, 842
  pregnancy, 1290
    pernicious, 1481
  scurvy, 1291, 1292
  sheep, 1208
  snake bite, treatment, 1259
  splenic, children, 193
  sprue, 1308, 1315, *see also* Sprue
  ticks, 1206, 1211
  tileworkers, 819 ff
  tropical macrocytic, sprue, 1309
  tunnel workers, 819 ff
  vitamin C deficiency, 1291, 1292
Anemones, sea, 1272
Angiofibroma cutis circumscriptum contagiosum, bartonellosis, 635
Anglers, 1269
Angola viper, 1244
Anguilla, 1270, 1271
Anguillula, 813
Aniline blue stain, 1508
Animals, poisonous, 1431
Anisolabis annulipes, Hymenolepis diminuta, 971, 973
Ankylostoma americanum, 821
  duodenale, 821, *see also* Ancylostoma *and* Ancylostomiasis
Anopheles, adults, key, 104
  albimanus, 110
    breeding places and distribution, 105
    eggs, 109
    head, 110
    male, 114
  amictus, filariasis, 887
  breeding places, 105, 106, 107, 108
  classifications, 103 ff
  description, 104
  distribution, 105, 106, 107, 108
  fausti, abdomen and spiracular apparatus, 112
    pilotaxy and chaetotaxy, 111
  female, 114
  freeborni, encephalitis, 371
  funestus, breeding places and distribution, 108
    control, Eucalyptus robusta, 124
  gambiae, breeding places and distribution, 105, 108
    control, 124
  hectoris, eggs, 109
  larvae, 110
    mounting, 1551
  malaria transmission, 105
  palmate hairs, 112
  punctimacula, breeding places and distribution, 105
    terminalia, 115
  quadrimaculatus, 110
    breeding places and distribution, 105
    control, DDT, 122
  walkeri, 105 *footnote*
  xelajuensis, pilotaxy or chaetotaxy, 113
Anophelines, 103 ff, *see also* Anopheles
Anophelini, description, 103
Anorexia nervosa, sprue, 1310
Anser cinereus, encephalitis, 371
Antelope, African sleeping sickness, 157
Anthelminthics, 1393 ff. *see also* under each worm
  ancylostomiasis, 1398

Anthelminthics—Cont'd
  ascariasis, 1397
  balantidiasis, 1393
  cestodiasis, 1395
  contra-indications, 1394
  enterobiasis, 1396
  hymenolepiasis, 1396
  medication, 1393 ff
  purgatives, 1394
  strongyloidiasis, 1399, 1400
  trichuriasis, 1400
Anthiomaline, filariasis, 1400
    bancroftian, 886
  granuloma inguinale, 416
  lymphogranuloma venereum, 405
  schistosomiasis haematobia, 1063
    japonica, 1044
Antibiotics, 1408-1411, *see also* under each name
  BAL, 1410
  control, 1410
  mycosis, 1406
  salmonellosis, 526
    children, 558 *footnote*
  sulfonamides, 1410
  Treponemataceae, 1410
  typhoid, 526
  virus diseases, 309
Anticoagulant, exudates, 1540
Anti-coagulating venom, snake, 1249
  -ctenico, 1236
  -ctenolycosico, 1236
Antigenfabre, lymphogranuloma venereum, 407, 408
Anti-lycosico, 1236
Antimony, clonorchiasis, 1403
  dracontiasis, 934
  filariasis, 886, 1400
  granuloma inguinale, 416
  histoplasmosis, 1195
  hydatid cyst, 964
  kala-azar, 200
  leishmaniasis, 189, 1384
    visceral, 200
  liver function, 1045
  lymphogranuloma venereum, 405
  mansoni, 1095, 1096, 1097
  potassium tartrate, leprosy, 613
  rhinosporidiosis, 1174
  schistosomiasis, 1402, 1403
    haematobia, 1062, 1063
    intercalata, 1067
    japonica, 1043, 1045
  sodium, tartrate, clonorchiasis, 1014
  thiomalate, lithium, *see* Anthiomaline
Antimosan, leishmaniasis, 1384
Antiscorpionic serum, 1230
Antivenins, 1256 ff
  bothropic, 1257
  children, 1258
  crotalic, 1257
  crotalidic, 1257
  Crotalidin, 1230
  dosage, snake bite, 1258
  expeditions, 1447
  scorpionism, 1230
  spiders, 1236
  usage, 1257
Antricola, 1204
Antrypol, African sleeping sickness, 166, 168
  and Tryparsamide, African sleeping sickness, 167
Ants, venom, 1198
ANTU, 762
  rat control, 766
  Rattus norvegicus, plague, 469
Aortitis, pinta, 225
Apathy's cement, 1550
Aphornia gularis, Hymenolepis diminuta, 971
Aphthae tropicae, 1299
Aponomma, 1204
Appendicitis, amebic, 45
    blood picture, 46, 1480
    perforations, 47
  ascariasis, 803, 844
  bubonic plague, 462
  enterobiasis, 810, 843
  helminthic, 843, 844
  incidence, 1368
  lymphogranuloma venereum, 401
Appendicitis—Cont'd
  salmonellosis, 514, 519, 525
  schistosomiasis haematobia, 1055, 1058
  Taenia saginata, 941, 943
  trichuriasis, 843, 844
  typhoid, 569
Appendix, schistosomiasis haematobia, 1055, 1058
  Taenia saginata, 941, 943, 945
  trichuriasis, 842
Arachidonic acid, 1289
    history, 1288
Arachnida, Acarina, 1203
  Pedipalpida, 1222
Aralen, amebiasis, 58, 59, 1391
  expeditions, 1446
  giardiasis (chloroquine), 1392
  hymenolepiasis (chloroquine), 1396
  malaria (chloroquine), 99, 100, 101, 1385 1387
Araña-de-liño, 1232
Araña pollito, 1231
Araneilysine, 1234
Araneism, 1230 ff
  antivenin, 1236
  prognosis, 1236
  symptoms, 1234
  treatment, 1235, 1236
  types, 1234
Araneus audax, 1232, 1234
    symptoms, 1235
Aranomorphae, 1232
Arctomys bobac, plague, 447
Argas, 1204
  mianensis, 1205
  persicus, 1205
    encephalitis, 371
  reflexus, 1205
Argasidae, key, 1204
  species, 1205 ff
Argasids, DDT, 760
  life cycle, 1205
  parasitism, 1204
Argemona mexicana, epidemic dropsy, 1340
Arginase, 1288
Arginine, 1288
Ariboflavinosis, 1277, 1341
  diagnosis, 1342
  fissures, 1348
  pyridoxine, 1348
Arius hertzbergii, 1268
Armadillo, Chagas' disease, 134
Armigeres obturans, encephalitis, St. Louis, 370
Armillifer, myiasis, 1199
Arsenamide, filariasis, 1400
Arsenicals, African sleeping sickness, 165
  amebiasis, 1389, 1390
  balantidiasis, 1393
  blood dyscrasias, 291
    picture, 1483
  Chagas' disease, 154
  contraindications, 291
  giardiasis, 1392
  leishmaniasis, 190
  pinta, 229
  reactions, 290
  relapsing fever, 234, 1387
  sodoku, 263
  trichuriasis, 845, 1400
  yaws, 290 ff, 293
Arsonic acid derivatives, amebiasis, 56
Arsphenamine, Chagas' disease, 154
  contraindications, 291
  pinta, 229
  reactions, 290
  tropical ulcer, 661
  yaws, 290 ff
Arthritis, bee venom, 1267
  brucellosis, 425, 427
  Haverhill fever, 266, 267
  lymphogranuloma venereum, 402
  salmonellosis, 521
    children, 555
  shigellosis, 539
Arthropods, 1197 ff
  debilitation, 1197
  diseases, 1198
  fixative, 1561
  leishmaniasis, 175
  preservation, 1566

Arthropods—Cont'd
  scorpions, *see* Scorpions, 1224 ff
  spiders, 1230 ff
  venom, 1198
Arthrospores, 1103
  examination, 1113
Arthuromyia, description, 104
Asapanca, 1231
Ascariasis, 797 ff, *see also* Ascaris lumbricoides
  allergy, 805
  appendicitis, 803, 844
  asphyxiation, 802
  Caprokol, 806 *footnote*
  carbon tetrachloride, 806, 1398
  chenopodium, 806, 833, 1397
  chloroform, 1398
  Crystoids, 806 *footnote*
  diagnosis, 805
    biliary, 1537, 1538
  ear, 802
  epidemiology, 806
  erratic, 802
  esophagus, 802
  eye, 802
  gall bladder, 803
  gastrointestinal, 805
  hernial strangulation, 802
  hexylresorcinol, 806, 1398
  history, 797
  hydroxylene, 806
  incidence, 806
  infection, secondary, 801
  intestines, 801, 802, 805
  liver, 803, 804
  lungs, 805
  nervous system, 805
  pathogenesis, 800
  pathology, 800
  peritoneum, 801
  peritonitis, 802
  prognosis, 806
  prophylaxis, 807
  santonin, 1397
  shock, 801
  stomach, 802
  symptoms, 805
  tetrachloroethylene, 806, 1398
  thymol, 1398
  treatment, 806, 1397, 1398
Ascaridiasis, 797 ff
Ascaridol, 845
Ascaris lumbricoides, 797 ff, *see also* Ascariasis
    allergy, 801
    description, 798
    dissemination, 806
    distribution, 798
    eggs, 799
      concentration, 1532
      counts, 1535
      examination, 1536
    erratic, 802
    habitat, 800
    history, 797
    incidence, 8
    inflammatory action, 805
    life cycle, 800
    number, 800, 1535
    parasite counts, 1535
    spoliative action, 801
    sputum, 1540
    toxic action, 801
    toxin, 798, 801
    trauma, 902
    traumatic action, 801
    typhoid, 801
  maritima, 798
  ovis, 798
  suilla, 798
  suum, 798, 800
  texana, 798
  trichiura, 841
  vermicularis, 808
Ascaron, 798, 801
Ascoli miostagmin reaction, 1547
Ascomycetes, 1152
  piedra, 1110
Ascorbic acid, *see* Vitamin C, 1281
Asiatic cholera, *see* Cholera, 477 ff
Asp, 1239
Aspidium, *see* Male fern
  inermicapsiferiasis, 983
  taeniasis, 951
Aspirin, expeditions, 1447
  typhus, 748
Asopia farinalis, Hymenolepis diminuta, 971, 973
Asterineic climate, 1110
Atabrine, cestodiasis, 1395
  expeditions, 1446, 1447
  giardiasis, 64, 1392
  leishmaniasis, 190
  malaria, 99, 100, 101, 1385, 1386, 1387
    prophylaxis, 124
Atheris, 1244
Atoxyl, African sleeping sickness, 165
Atractaspis, 1243
  poison apparatus, 1246
Atropine, spider bite, 1236
  wasp sting, 1266
Auchmeromyia luteola, 1197
    myiasis, 1201
Aura pestilentialis minor or minior, 460
Aureomycin, 1409
  Aerobacter aerogenes, 1409
  amebiasis, 1409
  BAL, 1410
  bartonellosis, 1379
  brucellosis, 432 *footnote,* 1378, 1409
  efficacy, 1410
  Escherichia coli, 1409
  granuloma inguinale, 416
  lymphogranuloma venereum, 1383
  plague, 1372
  proteus, 1409
  pseudomonas, 1409
  reactions, 1409
  rickettsial diseases, 1379
  rickettsialpox, 793
  salmonellosis, 527, 1409
  shigellosis, 1381
  tuberculosis, 1409
  tularemia, 441 *footnote,* 1373
  typhoid, 527, 1382
  verruga peruana, 1379
  virus diseases, 309
Australian coastal fever, 737
  "Q" fever, *see* "Q" fever
  X disease, 380
Australorbis control, lime, 1075
  distribution, 1072, 1074
  glabratus, resistance, 1075
    Schistosoma mansoni, 1072
Auto-agglutination, African sleeping sickness, 1497
    Oroya fever, 1483
Aviculaire, 1231
Avicularia avicularia, 1232, 1234
    symptoms, 1235
  vestiaria, 1232
Avitaminosis, *see* Vitamin deficiency
Axerophthol, *see* Vitamin A, 1274 ff
Ayerza's disease, schistosomiasis haematobia, 1060
Azan stain, 1507, 1508
Azemiops feae, 1243
Azocarmine, 1508
Azophloxin, 1506
Azosulfamide, scleroma respiratorium, 684
Azur II-eosin, Feng, 1556

B

Babesia canis, transmission, 1210
  size, 14
Babosa, 1018
Bacigalupo phenomenon, 939
    Dipylidium caninum, 976
Bacillus cholerae, 479
  comma, 479
  fusiformis, *see* Fusiform bacilli
  psittacosis, 341
  septicormuris, ratbite fever, 256
Bacitracin, 1409
  cholera, 498, 1409
  efficacy, 1410
  lymphogranuloma venereum, 1383
Bacteria, infections, antibiotics, 1410

Bacterial diseases, 418 ff
Bacteriophage, cholera, 479
  plague, 467, 1372
  shigellosis, 544
  typhoid, 572
Bacterium tularense, 436
    isolation, 440
  whitmorei, 1195
Baghdad boil, tropical ulcer, 657
Baiacu, 1270
BAL, antibiotics, 1410
Balanites aegyptiaca, snail elimination, 1074
Balantidium coli, 31, 65, 66
    balantidiasis, 65
    blood picture, 1482
    Carbarsone, 67
    chiniofon, 67
    culture, 1550, 1559
    cysts, 32
    description, 31
    incidence, 32
    laboratory findings, 67
    treatment, 1393
    trophozoites, 31
Balistes carolinensis, 1270
Balkan grippe, 700
    history, 694
Balsam, Canada, 1553
Bamboo pit viper, 1241
Bancroftian filariasis, elephantiasis, see *Filariasis, bancroftian, and* Elephantiasis, 874 ff
Banti syndrome, malaria, 92
    schistosomiasis japonica, 1035
      mansoni, 1092
Bara, 1270
Barba amarilla, 1241
Barbeiro, 127
Barber and Komp stain, malaria, 1474
Barbiturates, shigellosis, 545
Barbus barbus, opisthorchiasis, 1017
  puckelli, Cyclops control, 936
Barcoo rot, tropical ulcer, 657
Barium clumping, 1312
Barracuda, 1269
Barret and Yarbrough medium, 1550
Bartonella, *see also* Bartonellosis, Oroya fever, *and* Verruga peruana
  antibiotics, 1410
  bacilliformis, 615
    blood, 622, 623, 626
      culture, 635
    culture, 618, 619, 631
      media, 1557
    description, 616
    diagnosis, 635
    reservoirs, 620
    reticuloendothelial cells, 632, 633
    transmission, 1211
    vaccine, 637
    verruga, 634
Bartonellosis, 615 ff, *see also* Bartonella, Oroya fever, *and* Verruga peruana
  angiofibroma cutis circumscriptum contagiosum, 635
  antibiotics, 1379
  asymptomatic, 620
  bacilliformis, transmission, 619
  Bartonella in cells, 632, 633
  Bassewitz tumor, 635
  blood picture, 622, 623, 625, 626, 1482
    transfusions, 637
  bone marrow, 633
  carriers, 620
  cultures, 618, 619, 631, 635, 1557
  DDT, 638
  diagnosis, 635
  diet, 637
  distribution, 618
  endemicity, 621
  epidemicity, 621
  epidemiology, 618
  eruptive stage, 627
  etiology, 616
  history, 615
  immune serum, 636
  immunity, 631
  incidence, 621
  incubation period, 621
  intestines, 634
Bartonellosis—Cont'd
  lesions, 632
  liver, 633
  mild, 627
  noneruptive, 622
  Oroya fever, 622 ff, *see also* Oroya fever
  pathology, 632 ff
  penicillin, 636, 637
  Phlebotomus, 619
  pigment, 633
  prognosis, 635
  prophylaxis, 637
  reservoirs, 620
  skin, 627 ff, 635
  symptoms, 621
  transmission, 619, 1211
  treatment, 636, 1379
  vaccination, 637
  vector, 619
  verrugas, 627 ff, 634, 635
    miliary, 628, 630
    mulaire, 630
Basal metabolism, *see* Metabolism
Basnuevo solution, 1550
Bass, 1268, 1269
Bass and Johns medium, 1550
Bassewitz tumor, bartonellosis, 635
Batfish, 1269
Batrachus, 1267
Baurú ulcer, history, 170
Bayer "205," African sleeping sickness, 166
    onchocerciasis, 1401
  "7602," Chagas' disease, 153
  "9736," Chagas' disease, 154
Bdellonyssus, *see* Liponyssus, 1216
Bedbugs, relapsing fever, 232
Bedker and Obermayer, benzyl benzoate lotion, 1404
Bees, 1266
  anavenin, 1267
  sting, symptoms, 1267
  venom, 1198
Beetles, 1198
Belesse fluid, 1551
Belgamyl, African sleeping sickness, 166
Bell's syndrome, leprosy, 601
Bengtson vaccine, Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 756
Benzene haxachloride, 1442
Benzoin, tropical ulcer, 664
Benzyl benzoate, mites, 1218
    Sarcoptes scabiei, 1221, 1404
    scabies, 1404
    Schistosoma japonica, 1046
Berberine sulfate leishmaniasis, 1384
Berg viper, 1244
Beriberi, 1333 ff
  acute, 1336
  adrenalin test, 1337
  alcoholic, 1337
  alcoholism, 1337
  atrophic, 1336
  blood picture, 1335, 1483
  cardiac form, 1336, 1337
  chronic, 1337
  congenital, 1339
  Coramine, 1339 *footnote*
  diagnosis, 1337
  dry, 1334, 1335, 1336
  edema, 1335, 1336
  etiology, 1333
  gait, 1336
  heart, 1317, 1335, 1336, 1337, 1339
    failure, treatment, 1338, 1339
  history, 1333
  hookworm, 832
  hypertrophic, 1336
  infantile, 1339
  legs, 1335, 1336
  metagonimiasis, 1005
  muscles, 1335, 1336
  myocardium, 1337
  nervous system, 1335
  paralysis, 1336
  paresthesia, 1336
  pathology, 1334, 1335
  pernicious, 1336
  prognosis, 1338
  prophylaxis, 1338

Beriberi—Cont'd
  rice, history, 1333, 1334
  rudimentary, 1335
  symptoms, 1335-1337
  tiki-tiki, 1338
  treatment, 1338
  types, 1334
  vitamin B_1, 1338, 1339
    history, 1334
  wet, 1334, 1335, 1336
    treatment, 1339
Berme, 1202
Beta-naphthol, fasciolopsiasis, 1002
    Sarcoptes, 1221
Bile culture, typhoid, 567
  examination, 1537, 1538
Bilharzia, 1049, 1050
Bilharziasis, 1049, *see also* Schistosomiasis intercalata *and* haematobia
  intestinal, 1068
  pulmonary, 1055, 1056
Biliary disease, intestines, 1313
  fever, transmission, 1210
Biopsy, aspiration, onchocerciasis, 1540
  blastomycosis, 1187
  bone marrow, 1475, 1476
  chromoblastomycosis, 1167
  helminthiasis, 1540, 1541
  histoplasmosis, 1194
  mycetoma, 1154
  onchocerciasis, 1540
  schistosomiasis mansoni, 1094, 1541
Bios, 1280
Biotin, 1280
Bipp, 658, 660
Birds, encephalitis, 371
  psittacosis, 343, 350
  sparganiasis, 992
  tularemia, 436
Bironella, 103, 104
Bismosol, yaws, 294
Bismuth, amebiasis, 58, 1389, 1390, 1391
  balantidiasis, 1393
  enterobiasis, 1396
  expeditions, 1447
  framboesia, 294, 1388
  malaria, 99
  pinta, 229
  potassium bismuthotartrate, yaws, 294
  reactions, 294
  relapsing fever, 235, 1387
  subnitrate, amebiasis, 58
  subsalicylate, yaws, 294
  tropical ulcer, 662
  yaws, 294, 1388
Bithynia, clonorchiasis, 1009
Bitis, 1244
  arietans, 1244
    antivenin, 1258
    symptoms, 1251
    treatment, 1256
    venom, 1294
Bitterroot spotted fever, 731
Black assizes, 691
  death, 444, 457
  disease, 731
  fever, 193
  flies, onchocerciasis, 895
  piedra, hair, 1109, 1110
  tongue, pellagra, 1341
Blackwater fever, 85, 95, *see also* Malaria
    blood picture, 96, 1491
    death rate, 96
Blackwidow spider bite, blood picture, 1483, *see also* Spider bite
Bladder, gall, *see* Gall bladder
  schistosomiasis haematobia, 1053, 1059, 1060
  urinary, salmonellosis, 521
Blanc vaccine, murine typhus, 754, 755
    typhus, 752
Bland, Goldstein, Wenrich, and Weimer medium, 1551
Blaps mortisaga, canthariasis, 1199
Blastomyces, 1516
  brasiliensis, yaws, 287
  dermatitidis, 1179
    yaws, 287
Blastomycosis, Brazilian, 1178 ff
  chromo-, *see* Chromoblastomycosis
Blastomycosis—Cont'd
  hepatosplenoglandular, 1182
  leishmaniasis, 188
  nigra, 1157
  South American, 1178 ff
    biopsy, 1187
    blood picture, 1483
    culture, 1187
    diagnosis, 1185 ff
    distribution, 1178
    etiology, 1178
    external, 1180
    forms, 1179 ff
    glossitis, 1181
    incidence, 1179
    lesions, 1180, 1185
      mixed, 1184
    liver, 1182
    lung, 1182, 1183, 1184, 1185
    lymphatic, 1182, 1185, 1186
    mouth, 1180
    mucosa, 1180, 1182
    nose, 1181
    paracoccidioidin, 1188
    pathology, 1185
    prognosis, skin test, 1188
    prophylaxis, 1190
    pus examination, 1185, 1186, 1187
    relapse, 1189
    skin test, 1188
    spleen, 1182
    stomatitis, 1180
    sulfonamides, 1188, 1189
    symptoms, 1179 ff
    transmission, 1179, 1185
    treatment, 1188
    tuberculosis, 1185
    vaccine, 1188, 1189
    visceral, 1182
    x-ray, 1183
  treatment, 1406
  yaws, 287
Blastospores, 1103, 1104
Blennorrhea, treatment, 308
Bles fixative, 1551
Blicca björkna, opisthorchiasis, 1017
Blighia sapida, 1430
Blindness, eclipse, 1423
  night, 1274, 1275
  onchocerciasis, 903, 904, 905, 907, 908
  Ornithodorus gurneyi, 1209
  snake bite, 1252
  tapeworm disease, 946
  tryptophane, 1286
  vitamin A deficiency, 1274, 1275
Blood, African sleeping sickness, 163
  cellular reactions, 1478
  chemistry, African sleeping sickness, 164
    blackwater fever, 96
    cholera, 487, 491
    malaria, 97
    pellagra, 1357
    scleroma, 679
    sprue, 1314
    trichinosis, 861
    typhus, 718
    Weil's disease, 252
  coagulation, snake venoms, 1249
  concentration, filariae, 1539
  culture, Bartonella bacilliformis, 635
    brucellosis, 430
    salmonellosis, 522, 555
    shigellosis, 575
    tularemia, 440
    typhoid, 522, 567
  dyscrasias, arsenicals, 291
  filaria, 875, 876, 1539
    bancroftian, technic, 884
  films, fixation, 1472
      parasites, 1566
    preparation, 1469
    staining, 1470, 1472
  fluke, 1068
  histoplasmosis, 1192, 1194
  Leishmania donovani, 1563
  leptospira isolation, 243
  microfilaria, 875, 876, 1539
    technic, 884
  niacin, pellagra, 1357

Blood—Cont'd
  Oroya fever, 623, 631
  Paracoccidioides brasiliensis, 1184
  phagocytosis, 1477
  phenol, cholera, 491
  picture, achrestic anemia, 1291, 1480
    African sleeping sickness, 164, 1497
    amebiasis, 54, 1479
    amebic abscess, liver, 48, 1479
      lung, 1479
      appendicitis, 46, 1480
      hepatitis, 47, 1479
    ancylostomiasis, 829, 831, 1488
    anemia, macrocytic, 1290
      Diphyllobothrium, 1485, 1486
      hemolytic, 1487
      nutritional, 1480, 1481
      pernicious, *see* Anemia, pernicious, 1480, 1481
        pregnancy, 1481
      vitamin C deficiency, 1291
    appendicitis, amebic, 1480
    arsenical drugs, 1483
    balantidiasis, 1482
    bartonellosis, 622, 623, 625, 626, 1482
    beriberi, 1335, 1483
    blackwater fever, 96, 1491
    blackwidow spider bite, 1483
    blastomycosis, chromo-, 1484
      South American, 1483
    brucellosis, 430, 1483
    bubonic plague, 456
    Chagas' disease, 144, 146, 1484
    chagoma of inoculation, 1484
    chlorosis, 1484
    cholera, 490, 1484
    chromoblastomycosis, 1167, 1484
    coccidioidal granuloma, 1484
    colitis, ulcerative, 1499
    Colorado tick fever, 1484
    cysticercosis, 1485
    dengue, 332, 1485
    dermatomycosis, 1485
    Diphyllobothrium anemia, 1485, 1486
    distomatosis, 1486
    dracontiasis, 933
    dropsy, epidemic, 1486
    dysentery, bacillary, 1494, 1495
      colitis, 1499
    echinococcosis, 1486
    edema, nutritional, 1486
    epidemic dropsy, 1486
    fascioliasis, 1022, 1486, 1487
      children, 1025
    fasciolopsiasis, 1002, 1487
    filariasis, brancroftian, 882, 1487
    folic acid deficiency, 1487, *see also* sprue
    granuloma coccidioidal, 1484
    Guinea worm, 933
    Haemonchus contortus, 1487
    Haverhill fever, 267
    hemolytic anemia, 1487
    histoplasmosis, 1488
    hookworm disease, 827, 829, 831, 1488
    hypochromic anemia, children, 1480
      idiopathic, 1480
      pregnancy, 1480
    infantile cirrhosis of the liver, 1489
    iron deficiency, 1480
    kala-azar, 195, 1489
    leishmaniasis, 1489
      visceral, 195, 1489
    leprosy, 1490
    liver cirrhosis, infantile, 1489
    loaiasis, 1490
    lymphogranuloma venereum, 405, 1490
    macrocytic nutritional anemia, 1290, 1480, 1481
    malaria, 85, 86, 97, 1490, 1491
      blackwater fever, 96, 1491
    mycetoma, 1154, 1491
    myxedema, 1480
    necatoriasis, 829, 831, 1488
    nutritional anemia, 1480, 1481
      edema, 1486
      macrocytic anemia, 1290, 1480, 1481
    onchocerciasis, 914, 917, 1491
    ornithosis, 1492
    Oroya fever, 622, 623, 625, 626, 1482

Blood picture—Cont'd
    pappataci fever, 1492
    pellagra, 1357, 1491, 1492
    pernicious anemia, *see* Anemia, pernicious, 1480
      pregnancy, 1481
    phlebotomus fever, 337, 1492
    plague, 1492
    psittacosis, 356, 1492
    ratbite fever, 1492
      Haverhill, 267
    relapsing fever, 233, 1493
    respiratory scleroma, 1493
    rhinoscleroma, 1493
    rhinosporidiosis, 1493
    rickettsialpox, 787
    Rift Valley fever, 338, 1493
    Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 734, 1493
    salmonellosis, 524, 1493
      children, 557
    sand-fly fever, 337, 1492
    schistosomiasis, 1494
      haematobia, 1060, 1062
      japonica, 1042
      mansoni, 1090, 1091
    schizotrypanosis, 1484
    scleroma, 679
    scorpionism, 1228
    scrub typhus, 742, 1499
    scurvy, 1494
    shigellosis, 541, 574, 575, 1494, 1495
    sodoku, 262, 1492
    spotted fever, 734, 1493
    sprue, 1315, 1495
    strongyloidiasis, 1496
    taeniasis, 1496
    tick fever, Colorado, 1484
    trench fever, 704, 1497
    trichinosis, 861, 1496
    Trichostrongylus colubriformis, 1497
    trichuriasis, 842, 1497
    tropical eosinophilia, 1497
    trypanosomiasis, African, 163, 1497
    tsutsugamushi, 742, 1499
    tularemia, 440, 1497
    typhoid, 524, 566, 1497, 1498
      children, 568
    typhus, 715, 1498, 1499
    verruga peruana, 1483
    vitamin C deficiency, 1291, 1482, 1494
    Weil's disease, 252, 1499
    yellow fever, 1499
  pressure, heat sickness, 1429
    sprue, 1318
    tropics, 1418, 1426
  protein, normal, 1293
  Schistosoma haematobium, 1049, 1051, 1053, 1054, 1056, 1058
    japonicum, 1031, 1032, 1034, 1035, 1038
    mansoni eggs, 1068
      extrusion, 1078
  sedimentation rates, *see* Sedimentation rate
  stains, 1467, 1469, *see also* under each stain
    alterations in water, 1471
    Saisawa-Sugawara, 1568
    supravital, 1477
    thick drop, *see* Thick drop, 1473
  trichinosis, examination, 864
  trypanosomes in, 163
  viscosity, malaria, 85
  volume, Tropics, 1466
  Wuchereria bancrofti, 876
    technic, 884
Blue disease, 731
Bocaracá, 1242
Boeck and Drbohlav medium, 1552
Boiquira, 1241
  strike, 1246
Bolus alba, amebiasis, 58
Bonacci medium, 1552
Bone, brucellosis, 428
  calcium deficiency, 1294
  decalcifying solution, 1555
  echinococcosis, 963
  hydatid cyst, 963
  leprosy, 598, 601
    lazarine, 604
  marrow, 1475-1477
    achrestic anemia, 1291

- Bone marrow—Cont'd
    - African sleeping sickness, 160
    - anemia, hemolytic, 1487
    - aspiration, 1476
    - bartonellosis, 633, 1482
    - biopsy, 1476
    - culture, typhoid, 567
    - fixative for, 1502
    - hemolytic anemia, 1487
    - histoplasmosis, 1191, 1192, 1194
    - hookworm disease, 1488, 1489
    - iliac crest, 1476
    - kala-azar, 195, 1490
    - leishmaniasis, visceral, 195, 1490
    - leptospiras, 243
    - nutritional macrocytic anemia, 1481
    - Oroya fever, 633, 1482
    - pernicious anemia, 1315, 1481
    - preparations, 1477
    - puncture, leishmaniasis, visceral, 198
    - shigellosis, 575
        - children, 1495
    - sprue, 1315, 1322, 1495
    - stain, 1473
    - sternal puncture, 1475
    - trichinosis, 858, 861, 1497
    - Turkel technic, 1475
    - typhoid, 512, 564, 1498
    - vitamin C deficiency, 1282
  - mycetoma, 1136, 1137
    - actinomycotic, 1147
    - amputation, 1156
  - phosphorus deficiency, 1295
  - salmonellosis, 521
  - serumizing, 1516
  - sprue, 1310
  - tropical ulcer, 656
  - typhoid, 512, 564
  - vitamin C deficiency, 1282
    - D deficiency, 1283, 1284
  - yaws, 275, 280, 282, 284
- Bonilla-Naar Congo red stain, 1554
- Boophilus, 1204
  - annulatus, 1213
    - "Q" fever, 696
  - microplus, 1213
- Borax carmine, 1553
- Borrelia, 231
  - antibiotics, 1410
  - recurrentis, 231
    - blood examination, 233, 234
    - reservoir, 232
    - transmission, 1207
  - relapsing fever, 231
  - transmission, 1206, 1207, 1208, 1209, 1212
  - vincentii, tropical ulcer, 650
    - yaws, 286
- Bory chancre, 390, 393, 394, 399
- Bothriocephaliasis, *see* Diphyllobothriasis, 987 ff
- Bothriocephalus, 987, 992
- Bothriurus bonariensis, 1225
- Bothropotoxin, 1248
- Bothrops, 1241, 1242, 1244
  - alternata, 1241, 1242
    - antivenin, 1257
    - poison apparatus, 1246
    - symptoms, 1252
    - venom, 1249
  - arboreal, 1242, 1243
  - atrox, 1241, 1242
    - antivenin, 1258
    - symptoms, 1251
    - venom, 1249
      - volume, 1247
  - jararaca, 1242
    - antivenin, 1257
    - coagulin, 1248
    - symptoms, 1251
    - venom, 1249
  - jararacussu, 1242
    - antivenin, 1258
    - poison apparatus, 1246
    - symptoms, 1251
  - land snakes, 1241
  - nummifera, 1242
    - symptoms, 1251
- Botrópica, 1257
- Botulism, cholera, 493
- Bouba, leishmaniasis, 188
- Boubas, 269
- Bouin fixative, 1502
    - picric acid removal, 1503
- Boundfish, 1270
- Boussarole, pinta, 209
- Bouton-en-chemise ulcer, amebiasis, 38
- Boutonneuse fever, 736
    - complications, 737
    - diagnosis, differential, 737
    - distribution, 736
    - epidemiology, 736
    - history, 694
    - pathology, 737
    - prognosis, 737
    - prophylaxis, 766
    - reservoir, 736
    - rickettsialpox, 790
    - skin, 737
    - spotted fever, 736
    - symptoms, 736
    - transmission, 736, 1212, 1213
    - treatment, 745 ff
    - Weil-Felix reaction, 737
- Bovines, brucellosis, 420
- Boye's stain, 1553
- Bozicevich antigen, trichinosis, 863
- Brahmachari test, leishmaniasis, visceral, 199
- Brain, African sleeping sickness, 158, 159
    - and Chagas' disease, 143
  - amebic abscess, 49
  - Chagas' disease, 142, 143
  - cysticercosis, 947
  - echinococcosis, 963
  - encephalitis, 373, 375
  - hydatid cyst, 963
  - malaria, 85, 89
  - metagonimiasis, 1005
  - myiasis, 1202
  - paragonimiasis, 998, 999
  - poliomyelitis, 376
  - psittacosis, 354
  - Salmonella septicemia, 521
  - Schistosoma mansoni eggs, 1087
  - Schistosomiasis haematobia, 1056, 1058, 1060
    - japonica, 1035, 1036, 1038
  - sun rays, 1425
  - taeniasis solium, 947
  - trichinosis, 857
    - encephalitis, 376
  - tularemia, 437
  - typhoid, 565
  - typhus, 718, 728
    - encephalitis, 376
- Break-bone fever, 330
- Brill's disease, 706
  - history, 692
- Bronchitis, salmonellosis, 518, 520
- Bronchopneumonia, 1363, *see also* Pneumonia
  - salmonellosis, 518
  - typhoid, 520, 570
- Brucella, *see also* Brucellosis
  - abortus, 421
    - brucellosis, 420, 424
      - symptoms, 425, 427
  - agglutinins, cholera, 490
  - agglutinogen determination, 431
  - allergy, 429, 433
  - antibiotics, 1410
  - antigen, 429 *footnote*
  - blood cultures, 430
  - identification, 431
  - melitensis, 421
    - brucellosis, 420, 423, 424
      - symptoms, 425, 426, 427
  - suis, brucellosis, 420
    - symptoms, 426
  - tissue, position, 422
  - type determination, 431
- Brucellergen, 430, 1378
- Brucellosis, 420 ff, *see also* Brucella
  - abortion, 427
  - abortus types, 425, 427
  - agglutination test, 429
    - tularemia, 440
  - amebiasis, 45
  - animals, 420, 421
  - anti-serum, 1378
  - arthritis, 427
  - aureomycin, 432 *footnote*, 1378, 1409
  - bacteriologic examination, 430, 431

Brucellosis—Cont'd
  blood cultures, 430
    picture, 430, 1483
    transfusions, 433
  bones, 428
  Brucellergen, 1378
  Castañeda selective agglutination test, 429
  cheese, 421, 422
  Chloromycetin, 432 *footnote,* 1378
  chronic, 426, 427
    treatment, 433
  complications, 427
    treatment, 433
  culture medium, 431
  desensitization, 432
  diagnosis, 428
    laboratory, 429 ff
  distribution, 420
  encephalitis, 373, 428
  guinea pig, 422
  hepatitis, interstitial, 423
  Huddleson test, 429
  incidence, 420, 421
  incubation period, 424
  influenza, 424, 426
  kidney, 423, 424
  lesions, experimental, 422
  liver, 423
  malaria, 94
  meat, 421
  melitensis type, 425, 426, 427
  milk, 420, 421
  myalgia, treatment, 434
  myelitis, 428
  myositis, 428
  neuritis, 428
  opsonic test, 429
  orchitis, 427
  pathology, 422 ff
  penicillin, 433
  procain, 434
  purpura, 428
  radiculitis, 428
  salmonellosis, 525
  shistosomiasis mansoni, 1089
  screening test, 429
  serum therapy, 1378
  skin test, 429
    antigen, 430
  spleen, 423, 424
  splenectomy, 434
  streptomycin, 432, 1378
  suis type, 426
  sulfonamides, 432, 433, 1378
  surgery, 433
  symptoms, 424
    abortus type, 425, 427
    melitensis type, 425, 426, 427
    suis type, 426
  transmission, 421
  treatment, 431 ff, 1378
    complementary, 433
    symptomatic, 433
  typhoid, 424, 426, 569
  typhus, 424
  vaccines, 432, 433, 1378
Brumpt, whole blood agglutination test, 523
Brutsaert and Henrard medium, 1553
Buba, 269
Bubo, climatic, 387
  cold, 460
  d'emblée, 394
  inguinal, 462, 463
  multiple, 462
  plague, 460, 461
    localizations, 462, 463
  tularemia, 437
Bubonic plague, *see* Plague *and* Plague, bubonic
Buffalo flies, onchocerciasis, 895
  skin, intestine, amebiasis, 39
Buffer solutions, 1570
Bulimus tentaculata, Opisthorchis felineus, 1017
Bull fever, 731
Bullinus africana, schistosomiasis intercalata, 1064, 1066
  fascioliasis, 1019
  Schistosoma haematobium, 1052
Bullis fever, transmission, 1213
Bungarus, 1239
  coeruleus, symptoms, 1250
  fasciatus, 1239
    symptoms, 1250
Bunyamvera virus, 381
Burnetiosis, 695 ff
Busarola, pinta, 209
Bush, life in, 1444-1446
Bushmaster, 1243
  antivenin, 1257, 1258
  habits, 1246
  poison apparatus, 1246
  symptoms, 1251, 1252
  venom, volume, 1247
Bush viper, 1244
Buthus australis, symptoms, 1228
    venom, 1227
  occitanus, symptoms, 1228
    venom, 1227
  quinquestriatus, 1225
    immunization, 1230
Butterflies, 1198
Butterfly lesions, pellagra, 1347
Button yaws, 273
Bwamba fever, 381

C

Cable artificial gastric juice, 1557
Cachar boil, 641
Cachexia, edematous, 819
  malaria, 85, 92
  plague, 459
Cacodylate, Chagas' disease, 154
Caffeine, expeditions, 1447
  nutritional edema, 1293, 1294
  snake bite, 1256
Caissaca, 1241
Caji, 1269
Calabar swellings, 888, 889
Calamine lotion, expeditions, 1447
Calandra oryzae, canthariasis, 1199
Calciferol, 1283
Calcium, ancylostomiasis, 834
  chloride, hookworm larvae, 827
    tropical ulcer, 662
  cyanamide, snail elimination, 1046
  deficiency, 1294, 1295
    diagnosis, 1294
    sprue, 1301
    treatment, 1295
  dosage, 1294
  foods, 1294
  gluconate, leprosy, 1377
    scorpionism, 1230
    spider bite, 1235
  hookworm disease, 834
  hypochlorite, dose, water purification, 1437
  necatoriasis, 834
  normal, 1294
  propionate, 1119
  requirements, 1294
  serum, sprue, 1314
  sprue, 1303, 1314
  vitamin D, 1284
Calculi, urinary tract, 1367
Caldwell and Caldwell, counting helminth eggs, 1534
Calliphora, myiasis, 1200
Calor de figo, 1126
Caloric requirements, 1434
Cambarus, paragonimiasis, 998
Camoquin, malaria, 1385
Campamochas, 1198
Canal clearance, snails, 1075
Canaries, psittacosis, 342, 350, 351
Cancer, helminthiasis, 1548
  incidence, 1367, 1368
  intestines, 1313
  malaria, 10
  skin, sunlight, 1422
  sprue, 1310
  tropical ulcer, 657
Cancrum, 177
Candida, 1152
Canidae, Chagas' disease, 134
Cantharadin, 1198
Canthariasis, 1199
Cape viper, 1244

Caprokol, ascariasis, 806 *footnote*
Caranguejeira, 1231
Caranx crumenophthalmus, 1269
Carate, 204
Carbarsone, amebiasis, 56, 58, 59, 1389, 1390
  balantidiasis, 67, 1393
  expeditions, 1447
  giardiasis, 1392
  malaria, 99
  relapsing fever, 1387
Carbolic acid, snail elimination, 1074
Carbol-xylol, 1513
Carbon tetrachloride, ancylostomiasis, 833, 834, 1399
    ascariasis, 806, 1398
    cestodiasis, 1395
    enterobiasis, 1396
    fascioliasis, 1403
    fasciolopsiasis, 1002
    hookworm disease, 833, 834
    inermicapsiferiasis, 983
    leishmaniasis, 1384
    metagonimiasis, 1005
    necatoriasis, 833, 834
    purgatives, 1394
    strongyloidiasis, 1399
    taeniasis, 948
    tapeworm, 948
Carbonic snow, leishmaniasis, 1384
  leprosy, 1376
Carbuncle, plague, 458, 459, 460
Carcharias glaucus, 1269
Carcinoma, *see* Cancer
  amebic diarrhea, 44
    liver abscess, 49
  annular, amebic granuloma, 46
  bilharzial, 1054
  clonorchiasis, 1010
  schistosomiasis mansoni, 1084
  shigellosis, 542
Cardiovascular disease, hypertensive, 1367
Carica papaya, trichuriasis, 845
Caries, bones, foot, 1138
  dental, Trichomonas tenax, 28
Carmine, acid, 1553
  alum-, 1549
  borax, 1553
  picro-, 1566
Carnoy's liquid, 1553
Carotenase, 1274
Carotene, vitamin A, 1274
Carp, 1268, 1270, 1271
Carpodacus mexicanus, psittacosis, 351
Carpotroches, 1375
Carrapatos, 1203
Carrión's disease, *see* Bartonellosis, 615 ff
Casampulga, 1232
Casas de Limpieza, typhus, 763
Cascabel, 1241, *see also* Cascavel
Cascara sagrada, expeditions, 1447
Cascavel, 1241
  antivenin, 1257, 1258
  strike, 1246
  symptoms, 1252
  venom, 1248, 1249
Casoni reaction, echinococcosis, 1546
Castañeda and Guerre, culture medium, brucellosis, 431
  selective agglutination test, brucellosis, 429
  vaccine, typhus, 752
    murine, 754
Castela nicholsoni, amebiasis, 58
Castellani rhamnose test, 1308
  trichomycosis, 1107, 1108
Castor oil, inermicapsiferiasis, 982
Cat, ancylostoma, 839
  leishmaniasis, 187
    visceral, 197
  liver fluke, 1015
  sparganiasis, 992, 993
Cataract, sunlight, 1423
Catchos, raillietinosis, 985
Caterpillars, 1198
Catfish, 1268, 1270, 1271
Causus rhombeatus, 1244
    poison apparatus, 1246
    venom, 1249
Cavididae, plague, 447
Cebus, Rift Valley fever, 339
Cedar oil, 1553
Celestin blue stain, 1507
Celiac disease, intestines, 1312, 1313, 1314
    mecholyl, 1313, 1314
    sprue, 1300, 1309
Celloidin-methyl benzoate, 1504
  thin, 1513
Cellulitis, dracontiasis, 933
Cement, Apathy, 1550
Centipedes, 1198, 1203 ff, 1265
Centrechinus antillarum, 1272
Centruroides sculpturatus, 1226
Cephalin-flocculation test, malaria, 98
Cephalosporium, 1153
  maduromycotic granule, 1148
Cephalus gimni, African sleeping sickness, 158
Cerastes, 1244
Ceratophyllus fasciatus, Hymenolepis diminuta, 971
    nana, 968
  wickami, 971
Cercomys, plague, 451
Cerocystis hymenolepis diminuta, 971
    nana, 967
Cestode, *see* under each worm, 938 ff
Cestodiasis, 938 ff
  Acranil, 1395
  anthelminthics, 1395
  treatment, 1393-1395
Cevitamic acid, *see* Vitamin C, 1281
Ceylon sore mouth, 1299
Chaetophractus sillosus, Chagas' disease, 134
  vellerosus, 134
Chagas' disease, 127 ff
    abscess, 139, 140
    acute, 136
    adenitis, acute, 139
      attenuated, 141
    adenopathy, 140
    anasarca, 149
    animal inoculation, 152
    arsenicals, 154
    Bayer "7602," 153
      "9736," 154
    biopsy, 152
    blood examination, 151, 152
      picture, 144, 146, 1484
    brain, 142, 143
    chagoma, hematogenous, 147
      of inoculation, 136, 137
        histology, 143
        pathology, 134
        symptoms, 143 ff
      metastatic, 146, 147
    chronic, 136, 138
      pathology, 135
    complement fixation test, 199
    conjunctiva, 138, 148
    conjunctivitis, 138, 139
    cutaneous-glandular complex, symptoms, 143
    dacryoadenitis, 141, 149
    dacryocystitis, 148
    diagnosis, animal inoculation, 152
      biopsy, 152
      complement fixation, 153
      etiologic, 151
      laboratory, 144
      without external manifestations, 150
    edema, 150
      localized, 149
    exophthalmia, 148
    glands, 147
    glandular forms, 139
    Guerreiro-Machado reaction, 153
    heart, 129, 138, 142, 143, 148, 151
    inflammation of endogenous reinfection, pathology, 135
      reaction, 137
    lacrimal glands, 141
    lipochagoma, 143, 146
    liver, 142
    lungs, 138
    lymph glands, 129, 139
      types, 139 ff
    M "3024," 153
    macrophages, 135
    measles, 149
    meningoencephalitis, 151
    myocarditis, 142
    myositis, 141

Chagas' disease—Cont'd
  nervous system, 151
  ophthalmoglandular complex, 138, 145
    symptoms, 147
  origin, 131
  palpebral edema, 149
    unilateral, 147
  pathogenesis, 134
  pathology, 134
  penicillin, 154
  polyadenopathy, generalized, secondary, 141
  prefect gland, 140
  primary period, 137, 138
    pathology, 134
    symptoms, 143
  prophylaxis, 154
  quinoline derivative, 153
  salivary glands, 141
  schistosomiasis mansoni, 1093
  schizotrypanides, 149
  scrotum, 150
  secondary period, 138
  sialoadenitis, 141
  skeletomuscular, 141
  skin, 149
  spleen, 142
  symptoms, 143 ff
  temperature, 151
  tertiary period, 138
  thick drop, 152
  transmission, 131
  treatment, 163
  vector, 127, 131
  xenodiagnosis, 1541
Chagasia, 103, 104
Chagoma, hematogenous, 143, 147
  of inoculation, *see* Chagas' disease, 143 ff
  metastatic, 143, 146, 147
Chancre, Bory, *see* Bory chancre
  sodoku, 259
  soft, lymphogranuloma venereum, 394, 403
  trypanosome, 160
  tularemia, 437
Chancroid, granuloma inguinale, 414
Chaoborinae, description, 103
Chaparro amargoso, amebiasis, 58
Chapetonada, 330
Chara foetida, Anopheles control, 124
Charcot-Leyden crystals, amebic liver abscess, 40
    amebic stools, 54
Chatilla, 1242
Chaulmoogra oil, formulas, 1375, 1376
    lepra reaction, 603
    leprosy, 610, 1375, 1376, 1378
  Philippine plancha method, 1376
Cheese, brucellosis, 421, 422
Chenopodium ambrosioides var. anthelminthica, 845
  ancylostomiasis, 833, 834
  anthelminthics, 1393, 1394
  ascariasis, 806, 833, 1397
  balantidiasis, 1393
  hookworm disease, 833, 834
  hymenolepiasis, 969, 1396
  necatoriasis, 833, 834
  strongyloidiasis, 1399
  trichuriasis, 845
Cheopis index, murine typhus, 765
Chicarro, 1269
Chicken mites, 1205
  pox, 1365
    antibiotics, 1410
    rickettsialpox, 790
  psittacosis, 342, 351
Chilomastix, culture, 1568
  mesnili, 29, 1392
    incidence, 30
Chilomycterus, 1270
Chimberé, 1115
Chimpanzee, filaria, 873
Chinese liver fluke, 1007
Chinga, 1242
Chiniofon, amebiasis, 57, 58, 59, 1389, 1390
    prophylaxis, 63
  balantidiasis, 67, 1393
  expeditions, 1447
Chipmunks, relapsing fever, 232
Chlamydospores, 1104, 1114
Chlamydozoaceae, Miyagawanella psittaci, 347
Chloral gum, 1557
Chloramine, 1437
Chloramphenicol, *see* Chloromycetin
Chlordane, 1442
Chlorides, urine, Tropics, 1427
Chlorine, amebic cysts, 1437
  Endamoeba histolytica, 35
  schistosomiasis, 1438
  water purification, 1437
Chloroform, ascariasis, 1398
  fly control, 1201
  taeniasis, 948
Chlorolactophenol, Amann, 1105
Chloromycetin, 1408, 1409
  BAL, 1410
  bartonellosis, 1379
  brucellosis, 432 *footnote*, 1378
  cholera, 498
  efficacy, 1410
  granuloma inguinale, 416
  lymphogranuloma venereum, 406
  plague, 1372
  reactions, 1409
  rickettsial diseases, 748, 1379
  rickettsialpox, 748, 793
  salmonellosis, 527, 1379
  shigellosis, 1379, 1381
  spotted fever, 748
  tsutsugamushi, 748
  tularemia, 441 *footnote*, 1373
  typhoid, 527, 1382
  typhus, 748
  verruga peruana, 1379
  virus diseases, 309
Chloroquine, amebiasis, 1391
  expeditions, 1446
  giardiasis, 1392
  hymenolepiasis, 1396
  malaria, 99, 100, 101, 1385, 1387
Chlorosis, blood picture, 1484
  Egyptian, 819
Chlorquanide, malaria, 1385
Choerostrongylus pudendotectus, 301, 302
Choix fever, 731
Cholangitis, salmonellosis, 521
Cholecystitis, amebic liver abscess, 49
  amebiasis, 46
  Clonorchis sinensis, 10
  fascioliasis, 1025
  salmonellosis, 519, 521
    pathology, 514
  sprue, 10
Cholera, 477 ff
  acidosis, 487
  adrenal insufficiency, 484
  adrenocortical hormone, 499
  agglutination test, 490
      technic, 492
  agglutinins, Brucella, 490
  algid state, 488
  animal inoculation, 481
  asphyxial stage, 490
  bacitracin, 498, 1409
  bacteriologic diagnosis, 491
  bacteriophage, 479
  bicarbonate solutions, 496
  blood chemistry, 487, 491
    phenol, 491
    picture, 490, 1484
    specific gravity, treatment, 494
  botulism, 493
  carriers, 481, 490, 500
  children, 496
  Chloromycetin, 498
  circulatory failure, 486
  clinical course, 488
  cocaine, 499
  collapse, 488, 489
  complications, 488
  convalescence, 489
  cultures, 491, 492
  cyanosis, 487
  DDT, 481
  death, 489
  dehydration, 486
  delirium, 487
  desoxycorticosterone acetate, 499

Cholera—Cont'd
  diagnosis, bacteriologic, 491
    differential, 492
    laboratory, 490, 491
  diarrhea, 486, 488, 490
  distribution, 482
  El Tor vibrio, 480
  epidemicity, 482
  etiology, 478
  facies, 487
  fever, 487
  fluids, 494 ff
  food poisoning, 493
  gall bladder, 485
  gravis, 490
  heart, 487
  hemoconcentration, 490
  history, 477
  hog, bacillus, synonyms, 508
  hormone treatment, 499
  hypodermoclysis, 496
  immunization, 12, 500
  incidence, 478
  incubation period, 488
  infantum, 477
  intestinal obstruction, 484
  intestine, 483
  kidneys, 484, 485, 487
    function, 489
  lung, 485
  malaria, 493
  meningitis, 490
  milk, 481
  morbus, 477
  morphine, 499
  mortality, 493
  mucolytic enzyme, 486
  muscles, 487
  neomycin, 498
  nervous system, 487
  nests, 481
  nostras, 477, 493
  pathology, 483
  Pfeiffer's phenomenon, 492
  phthalyl sulfacetimide, 497, 499
    prophylaxis, 501
  pilgrimages, 482
  plasma, 496
  pneumonia, 485
  post-mortem findings, 485
  potassium, 495
  prognosis, 493
  prophylaxis, 499
  quarantine, 500
  reaction, 489
  red reaction, 479
  renal failure, 489
      treatment, 496
    function, testosterone, 498
    insufficiency, 488
  rice water stools, 484
  Rogers' hypertonic mixture, 495
  saline, 494
  salmonellosis, 493, 525
  serology, 490
  shigellosis, 493
  shock, 484, 486, 488
    hemoconcentration, 490
  sicca, 490
    fluid administration, 496
  siderans, 490
  skin, 486, 487
  sodium chloride, 494 ff
  stools, 484, 486
    culture, 492
    examination, 491, 1527, 1528
    preserving fluid, 1526
  sulfonamides, 496, 497
  symptoms, 485
  terramycin, 498
  testosterone, 498, 499
    renal failure, 489
  thiamin, 499
  toxoid, 501
  transmission, 480, 481, 482
    pilgrimages, 482
  treatment, 494, 1380
    general, 499
    saline, history, 478
  typhoid state, 487
Cholera—Cont'd
  uremia, 487, 488, 489
    testosterone, 498
  urine, 484, 489
  vaccination, 500, 501, 1443
    pilgrimages, 482
  varieties, 490
  vectors, 481
  vomiting, 486
  water, 481
    prophylaxis, 499
Cholerine diarrhea, 490
Cholesterol, amebic liver abscess, 40
  malaria, 97
  sprue, 1315
Chopra-Napier test, 198 *footnote*
Chorioiditis, African sleeping sickness, 161
  onchocerciasis, 907
Choriomeningitis, lymphocytic, 375, 379, 380, 382
    pathology, 328
    symptoms, 382
    transmission, 857 *footnote*
    treatment, 309
    virus, Trichinella spiralis, 302
Chromoblastomycosis, 1156
  animal inoculation, 1167
  biopsy, 1167
  blood picture, 1167, 1484
  cicatricial, 1161
  complement fixation test, 1168
  copper sulfate, 1169
  cultures, 1162, 1167
  diagnosis, laboratory, 1167
  distribution, 1156, 1161
  electrocoagulation, 1169, 1170
  elephantiac, 1159, 1161
  epidemiology, 1161
  etiology, 1157, 1161 ff
  history, 1157
  immunology, 1167
  incidence, 1161
  iodides, 1169
  nodules, 1169
  papillomatous, 1159
  pathology, 1168
  prognosis, 1157, 1169
  psoriasiform, 1160
  pus, examination, 1167
  Russell bodies, 1169
  sarcoid, 1160
  scales, examination, 1167
  sclerotic cells, Medlar, 1161, 1162
  skin, 1157, 1168, 1169
    examination, 1167
    test, 1168
  symptoms, 1157
  syphiloid, 1159, 1161
  treatment, 1169
  tuberculoid, 1160
  tuberculosis verrucosa cutis, 1158, 1160
  verrucose, 1158, 1159
  x-ray, 1169
Chromomycosis, 1156
Chromoscopy, gastric, 1308
Chrysarobin, mycosis, 1407
  pityriasis versicolor, 1123
  tinea albigena, 1127
    imbricata, 1119
Chrysophanic acid, tinea, 1120
    imbricata, 1119
Chrysops, Loa loa, 889
  tularemia, 456
Chrzanowski and Mosing vaccine, typhus, 752
Chuchupe, 1243
Churros, raillietinosis, 986
Chute-subyacuro, 1202
Chyluria, gentian violet, 819
  treatment, filariasis, 1401
Ciconia ciconia, encephalitis, 371
Cigatuera, 1270
Cilia, description, 16
Ciliates, 31 ff
  stain, 1565
Cimex lectularius, relapsing fever, 232
    spotted fever, 732
Circa "42," 1218
Circulin, 1409
Circus rufus, encephalitis, 371

Cirrhosis, Laennec, schistosomiasis mansoni, 1092
Cirrus, ciliates, 31
Citellus beecheyi, plague, 451
    psittacosis, 350
  plague, 447, 451
  richardsonii, plague, 451
    encephalomyelitis, 369
  tridecemlineatus, leishmaniasis, 187
Citrin, 1283
Cladocoelium hepaticum, 1018
Cladosporium, 1123
  mansoni, 1124
  wernecki, 1124
    culture, 1125
    morphology, 1126
    scales, 1125
Clavus, 273
Clayton-Lane flotation, 1537
Cleveland and Collier medium, 1554
Climate, *see also* Tropics and Temperature
  menstruation, 1427
  physiologic reactions, 1417 ff
    variations, 1425
  reaction to, 1415-1417
  tropical, 1413 ff
Clonorchiasis, 1007 ff, *see also* Clonorchis sinensis
  adenoma, 1010
  angiocholitic, 1014
  antimonials, 1014, 1403
  biliary hemoglobinuric, 1014
  carcinoma, 1010
  diagnosis, 1014, 1537, 1538
  gall bladder, 1010
  gentian violet, 819, 1014, 1403
  gold salts, 1403
  icterus, 1013
  incidence, 1007
  liver, 1010, 1011, 1013, 1014
  malachite green, 1014
  malignant, 1013
  Nile blue sulfate, 1014
  pathology, 1010
  peritoneal, 1013
  pernicious hepatic colic, 1013
  prophylaxis, 1014
  symptoms, 1011, 1013
  tartar emetic, 1403
  treatment, 1014, 1403
  types, 1013, 1014
Clonorchis endemicus, 1007
  sinensis 1007, 1008, *see also* Clonorchiasis, 1007 ff
    cholecystitis, 10
    description, 1007, 1009
    distribution, 1007
    eggs, 1009
    history, 1007
    hosts, 1009
    incidence, 7
    life cycle, 1009
      span, 1010
    number, 1010
Clostridia, gangrene, amebiasis, 40
Clothing, 1438 ff
  care of, 1440
  DDT, 1442
  disinfection, 1405
  expeditions, 1445
Clubs, mycetoma, 1148
Clupea, 1270
Coagulin, 1248
  snake venom, 1249
Coaima, 1241
Cobra, black, 1240
  -de-capello, 1239
  East African, 1239
  king, 1239
    antivenin, 1258
    symptoms, 1250
  South African, 1240
  spectacled, 1239
    antivenin, 1257, 1258
    death rate, 1253
    symptoms, 1250
    venom, 1249
  spitting, 1239
Cocaine, cholera, 499
Cocarde, 1116
Coca's solution, 1545
Coccidioides brasiliensis, 1178
  immitis, *see* Paracoccidioides brasiliensis, 1178 ff
  skin section, 1515
Coccidiosis, 64 ff
Coccidium seeberi, 1170
Cochin-China diarrhea, 813
Cochin sore, 641
Cochineal, alum, 1549
Cochliomyia macelaria, myiasis, 1200
Cockatoos, psittacosis, 342
Cockroaches, myiasis, 1201
  raillietinosis, 985
Coco, 269
Codein, expeditions, 1447
Codliver oil dressing, tropical ulcer, 658
Coelodiazesis, description, 104
Coenogonimus heterophyes, 1003
Coko, 269
Coleoptera, canthariasis, 1199
  DDT, 122
Colitis, lymphogranuloma venereum, 401
  mucous, amebiasis, 49
  polypoid-diphtheroid, typhoid, 562
  pseudodiphtheritic, typhoid, 561
  salmonellosis, 514, 522
  schistosomiasis mansoni, 1081, 1091
  Trichomonas, 27
  typhoid, 561
  ulcerative, amebiasis, 50
    amebic diarrhea, 44
    blood picture, 1499
    intestines, 1313
    shigellosis, 539
    treatment, 545
Collagen stain, 1507, 1508
Collar of Casal, 1347
Collargol, dracontiasis, 933
Colmoyote, 1202
Colombian virus, 381
Colon, malformations, amebiasis, treatment, 63
  spastic, amebiasis, 49
Colorado, 330
  tick fever, 381
      blood picture, 1484
      transmission, 1211
Coluber constrictor, 1255
Comadreja overa, Chagas' disease, 134
Combiesco, Zotta, Manciulesco, Pop, and Tascau vaccine, typhus, 753
Complement fixation test, amebiasis, 54
      Chagas' disease, 153, 199
      chromoblastomycosis, 1168
      echinococcosis, 1544
      encephalitis, 373
      Fairley, 1543, 1544
      fascioliasis, 1026
      kala-azar, 199
      leishmaniasis, 188
        cutaneous, 199
        visceral, 199
      leptospira, 241
      lymphogranuloma venereum, 404
      malaria, 93
      paragonimiasis, 1544
      pinta, 209, 228
      psittacosis, 353, 359
      relapsing fever, 233
      rickettsialpox, 788, 790, 791
      schistosomiasis, 1543
        haematobia, 1062
        japonica, 1042
        mansoni, 1042, 1062
      scleroma respiratorium, 682
      trichinosis, 1545
      virus diseases, 303, 304
      yellow fever, 318
      Yoshimoto, 1543
Conconçao, 819
Conepatus chilensis, 1255
Conger conger, 1270, 1271
Congo floor maggot, myiasis, 1201
  red solution, Bonilla-Naar, 1554
Conidia, 1104
Conidiophore, 1104
Conjunctiva, Chagas' disease, 138, 148
    symptoms, 147
  microfilaria, examination, 915
  schistosomiasis haematobia, 1056, 1058

Conjunctivitis, Chagas' disease, 138, 139
  onchocerciasis, 906
  Parinaud's, Chagas' disease, 148
  shigellosis, 540
  typhoid, 566
Conor and Bruch disease, 736
Conures, psittacosis, 350, 351
Conus, 1272
Convalescent blood, salmonellosis, 527
    typhoid, 527
  serum, lymphogranuloma venereum, 407
    psittacosis, 357
    Weil's disease, 254, 255
Copper carbonate, snail control, 1075
  sulfate, chromoblastomycosis, 1169
    mosquito control, 123
    snails, 1002, 1075
    tropical ulcer, 659
Copperhead, 1239, 1241
  antivenin, 1257
  habits, 1244
Coproculture, 1542
Coproporphyrin, pellagra, 1357
Corais, 1240
  antivenin, 1257
  venom, 1249
Coralillas, 1240
Corals, 1272
Coramine, beriberi, 1339 *footnote*
  nutritional edema, 1294
  pellagra, 1351
Corixidae, DDT, 122
Corn, pellagra, 1342
Corynebacterium diphtheriae, cutaneous diphtheritic ulcer, 657
Coryza, enterobiasis, 811
  typhus, 720
Cosmopolitan diseases, 1361
Cotiara, 1241
Cottonmouth, antivenin, 1257
  habits, 1244
Cottus, 1268
Cotylogonimus heterophyes, 1003
Couliron, 1269
Councilman bodies, yellow fever, 322
Councilmania lafleuri, 21
Coup de barre, 330
Cox vaccine, spotted fever, 756
  and Bell vaccine, murine typhus, 754
  typhus, 753
Coxiella burnetii, 688 *footnote*
Coxiellosis, *see* "Q" fever, 695 ff
Crab yaws, 273, 279, 281
Cramps, heat, 1429, 1430
    treatment, 1429, 1430
Craniotabes, 1283
Creeping eruption, 838, 839
Creosote-fuchsin stain, 1521
  -xylol, 1519
Cricetus auratus, psittacosis, 350
Crotálico, 1257
Crotalidin antivenin, 1230
Crotalus, 1240, 1241
  adamanteus, 1240
    antivenin, 1258
    poison apparatus, 1246
    symptoms, 1251, 1252
    venom, 1249
      volume, 1247
  atrox, 1240, 1245
    antivenin, 1258
    symptoms, 1252
    treatment, 1256
    venom, 1249
      volume, 1247
  horridus, 1240
    symptoms, 1251, 1252
    venom, 1249
  ruber, 1241
    symptoms, 1251, 1252
  terrificus, 1241
    antivenin, 1257, 1258
    durissus, 1241
      antivenin, 1257
    strike, 1246
    symptoms, 1252
    terrificus, 1241
    venom, 1248, 1249
      volume, 1247
Crotalus—Cont'd
  viridis, 1241
    strike, 1245
    symptoms, 1251, 1252
Crotoxin, 1248
Crustaceans, paragonimiasis, 998
Cryptocystis trichodectis, Dipylidium caninum, 976
Crystoids, ascariasis, 806 *footnote*
Ctenocephalides canides, Hymenolepis diminuta, 971
  canis, Dipylidium caninum, 976
    Hymenolepis nana, 967
Ctenopharyngodon idellus, clonorchiasis, 1010
Ctenus nigriventer, 1232, 1234
    antivenin, 1236
    symptoms, 1234
Ctenzia sauvagei, 1232, 1234
    symptoms, 1234
Cuchipe, 269
Culex fatigans, dengue, 333, 335
    xenodiagnosis, 1542
  pipiens var. pallens, encephalitis, 370
  quinquefasciatus, filariasis, 887
  tarsalis, encephalitis, 370
    virus transmission, 300
  tritaeniorhynchus, encephalitis, 370
Culicidae, 103, 104
Culicinae, 104
Culicoides, 873
Culiseta inornata, encephalitis, 371
Cultur aburnus, clonorchiasis, 1010
Culture, Actinomycetales, 1150
  Bartonella bacilliformis, 618
  blastomycosis, 1187
  chick embryo, 1563
  chromoblastomycosis, 1162, 1167
  clubs, mycetoma, 1148
  fungi, 1104, 1105, 1113, 1150
  fusiform bacilli, 647, 648
  Glenospora albiciscans, 1127
  Histoplasma capsulatum, 1194
  media, 1549-1571
    ameba, 1552, 1554, 1555, 1569, 1570
    Balantidium coli, 1550, 1559
    Bartonella bacilliformis, 1557
    Chilomastix, 1568
    D.E.C. plate, 1527
    Embadomonas intestinalis, 1571
    flagellates, intestinal, 1559, 1565
      plants, 1565
    Geiman, 1557
    Herpetomonas, 1565
    Leishmania, 1561, 1565, 1566, 1567, 1569, 1571
    Leptospira, 238, 239, 1565
    malaria, 1550
    Trichomonas, 1559, 1571
      hominis, 1562, 1568
      vaginalis, 1551, 1563
    Trypanosoma, 1553, 1561, 1567
      cruzi, 1552, 1566, 1569, 1570
      gambiense, 1558
  mycetoma, 1154
  Paracoccidioides brasiliense, 1187
  psittacosis, 348
  spirochetes, tropical ulcer, 648
  stools, 1527, *see* under each organism
    Shigella, 541
  Trichophyton concentricum, 1118, 1119
  tropical ulcer, Panja, 649
Cuprex, pediculosis, 1405
Curarization, snake venom, 1249
Cutaneous-glandular complex, symptoms, 143
Cyanide, rat control, 468, 469
Cyanospiza, psittacosis, 351
Cyclitis, onchocerciasis, 907
Cyclops bicuspidatus, dracontiasis, 929
    sparganiasis, 991
  control, 936
  Diphyllobothrium latum, 990
  dracontiasis, 929, 930
  leuckarti, dracontiasis, 929
    sparganiasis, 991, 994
  viridis, dracontiasis, 929
    sparganiasis, 991
Cynomys parvidens, plague, 451
Cyprinidae, clonorchiasis, 1009
Cyprinus carpio, opisthorchiasis, 1017

Cysticercosis, 946 ff
  blood picture, 1485
  bovine, 945
  brain, 947
  convulsions, 946
  diagnosis, 946, 947
    precipitin test, 1545
    skin test, 1546
  incubation period, 947
  precipitin test, 1545
  skin test, 1546
  x-ray, 947
Cysticercus bovis, 944
    incidence, 939
    localization, 945
    prophylaxis, 949
  cellulosae, incidence, 938, 939
    life cycle, 950
    localization, 945
    precipitin test, 1545
    skin test, 1546
  fasciolaris, carcinomatous reaction, 1548
Cystine requirements, 1434
Cystitis, shigellosis, 539
Cystotaenia mediocanellata, 939
Cysts, description, 18
  hydatid, *see* Hydatid cyst *and* Echinococcosis
  paragonimiasis, 998, 999
  retention, shigellosis, 534

D

Daboia, 1243
  antivenin, 1257, 1258
  symptoms, 1251
  treatment, 1256
Dacryoadenitis, Chagas' disease, 141
  chagasica, 149
Dacryocystitis, Chagas' disease, 148
Dandy fever, 330
D'Antoni iodine stain, 1554
    stool examination, 1526
Dark-field examination, leptospiras, 237, 241
    urine, 244
Dasyatis, 1268
Dasypus novemcinctus, Chagas' disease, 134
Davainea, 985, 986
DDT, 759, 1442, *see also* Repellents
  African sleeping sickness, 168
  bartonellosis, 637
  cholera, 481
  clothing, 1442
  flea control, 760, 1442
    eradication, plague, 469
  flies, 918, 1201
  inflammation, treatment, 123
  kerosene mixture, 122
  lice, 759, 1442
  mites, 761, 1218
  mosquito control, 114 ff, 121, 1447
  pediculosis, 1405
  Phlebotomus, 191, 637
  rats, 765
  scabies, 1404
  Simulium, 918
  ticks, 760, 766
  toxicity, 122, 123
  typhus, 765
Deafness, vitamin A deficiency, 1275
Death, cause of, 1369
  fish, 1270
D.E.C. plate, 1527
Decalcifying solution, 1555
Deficiency diseases, 1273 ff, *see also* under each deficiency disease
    iodine, 1297
    iron, 1296
    mineral, 1294
    phosphorus, 1295
    prevention, 1433-1436
    protein, 1292
  nutritional, shigellosis, 539
  pattern, 1312, 1313
    mecholyl, 1313, 1314
    prostigmine, 1314
    sprue, 1314
Deformities, rhinoscleroma, *see* Scleroma respiratorium
Delago sore, 641
Delhi boil, tropical ulcer, 657
Delirium, cholera, 487
  typhus, 718, 722
Demansia textilis, 1239
Dementia, pellagra, 1350
    treatment, 1356
Demodex, 1203
  folliculorum, 1222
Demodicidae, 1222
Demodicoidea, 1222
Dendraspis angusticeps, 1240
    symptoms, 1251
  antinorii, fangs, 1246
Dengue, 330 ff
  animal inoculation, 335
  blood picture, 332, 1485
  clinical syndrome, 330
  diagnosis, differential, 335
  distribution, 330, 333
  epidemiology, 333
  etiology, 334
  exanthem, 331, 336
  experimental, 334
  history, 330
  immunity, 335
  incubation period, 330
  pathology, 333
  prognosis, 336
  prophylaxis, 336
  relapsing fever, 233
  Rift Valley fever, 338
  sand-fly fever, 337
  serology, 333
  symptoms, 330 ff
  transmission, 333, 334
  treatment, 336, 1382
  typhoid, 519
  vaccination, 308
  vector, 333, 334
  virus, 334
  yellow fever immunity, 335
Denisonia superba, 1239
Dennis antigen, echinococcosis, 1544
Dermacentor, 1204, 1211
  albopictus, DDT, 760
  andersoni, 1211
    encephalitis, 371
    encephalomyelitis, 369
    "Q" fever, 696
    spotted fever, 732
  species, 1211
  tularemia, 436
  variabilis, 1211
    DDT, 760
    encephalitis, 371
    spotted fever, 732
    virus, 300
Dermacentroxenous, history, 693
  rickettsi, 689, 731
    boutonneuse fever, 736
    classification, clinical, 690
Dermanyssus gallinae, dermatitis, 1216
    encephalomyelitis, 371
    virus, 300
Dermatitis, Ancylostoma, 839
  contact, 1430
  hookworm, 830
  mites, 1216 ff
  Pediculoides ventricusus, 1219
  Pediculoididae, 1218
  pellagra, 1347, 1358
    treatment, 1355
  phlyctenular, 1198
  schistosome, control, 1075
  schistosomiasis mansoni, 1077, 1078, 1087
  seasonal vesicular, 1198
  seborrheic, yaws, 288
  Tryoglyphidae, 1219
  verrucosa, 1156
  vitamin B, 1278
Dermatobia cyaniventris, transmission, 1214
  hominis, 1202
Dermatomycosis, 1111
  blood picture, 1485
Dermatophytes, aleurospores, 1114
  chlamydospores, 1114
  classification, 1112
  colony, 1114
  examination, 1112, 1113

Dermatophytes—Cont'd
  favic chandeliers, 1113
  fuseaux, 1114
  hyphae spirals, 1113
  macroconidia, 1114
  microconidia, 1114
  mycelium, 1113
  nodular bodies, 1113
  pectinate bodies, 1113
  reproduction forms, 1114
  tinea imbricata, 1115
  vegetative forms, 1113
Dermatophytosis, 1111 ff
  diagnosis, 1112
  treatment, 1406
  yaws, 286
Dermatosis, arthropods, 1198
  fatty acid deficiency, 1289
  vitamin B deficiency, 1279
Dermestes peruvianus, Hymenolepis diminuta, 971, 973
  vulpinus, Hymenolepis diminuta, 973
Dermotyphus, estival nondiffusible, 706
  summer, 736
Deroya, 1242
Derris root, Sarcoptes, 1221
Deseptyl, lymphogranuloma venereum, 407
Desert climate, 1415
Desoxycholate-citrate medium, 1527
Desoxycorticosterone acetate, cholera, 499
Dew itch, 830
Dhobie itch, yaws, 287
Diabetes insipidus, intestines, 1313
Diamidine, African sleeping sickness, 167
  -stilbene, leishmaniasis, 1385
    trypanosomiasis, 1384
Diamidinodiphenoxy-pentant, African sleeping sickness, 165
  propane, African sleeping sickness, 165
Diamidinodistilbene, African sleeping sickness, 165
Diamphidia simplex, 1198
Diarrhea alba, 1300
  amebiasis, 42, 43
  catarrhal dysentery, 535
  children, 557
  cholera, 486, 488, 490
  Cochin-China, 1299
  dysentery, gangrenous, 537
    Sonne, 535
  fasciolopsiasis, 1002
  Hill, amebiasis, 50
  metagonimiasis, 1005
  paragonimiasis, 999
  pellagra, 1348, 1349
    treatment, 1355
  Salmonella enteritis, 519
    treatment, 1379, 1382
  Shigella food poisoning, 535
  shigellosis, children, 573
    chronic, 538
    classical, 537
    treatment, 545, 1379
  sprue, 1305
  strongyloidiasis, 817
  trichinosis, 856
  Trichomonas, 27
  tropical, *see* Sprue, 1299 ff
  typhoid, 516
    -like fever, 517
    treatment, 528, 571
  Ukraine, 533
  vitamin C deficiency, 1282
Diasone, chemistry, 1373
  leprosy, 1374, 1375
Dibothriocephalus, *see* Diphyllobothriasis, 987 ff
  latus, 987
  mansoni, 992
  minor, 987
Dibothrium mansoni, 992
Dibutyl phthalate, schistosomiasis japonica, 1046
Dichloro-diphenyl-trichloro-ethane, *see* DDT
Dicrocoelium dendriticum, incidence, 7
  heterophyes, 1003
Dicyclohexylamine salt, snails, 1046
Didelphis paraguayensis, Chagas' disease, 134
  plague, 451
Dieldrin, 1442
Dientamoeba fragilis, 21, 26, 63
    cysts, 26
  nucleus, 21
Diet, *see* under each condition
  deficiencies, 1273 ff
  hygiene, 1433-1436
  recommended daily allowances, 1353
Dihydrostreptomycin, 1408
  salmonellosis, 527
  typhoid, 527
Diiodo-hydroxyquinoline, amebiasis, 57
Dileptus anser, 16
Dilostichus octomyos, plague, 451
Dimethyl diphenylene bisulphide, itch, 1221
  phthalate, 758
    clothing, 1441
    mites, 1218
    onchocerciasis, 919
    schistosomiasis japonica, 1046
Dioctophyme visceralis, urine, 1540
Diodon hystrix, 1270
Diodoquin, amebiasis, 57, 58, 59, 1389, 1390, 1392 *footnote*
    caused by other amebae, 64
Dioxane, serumizing, 1515, 1516
Diphtheria, 1364
  immunization, 12, 1443
  tropical ulcer, 657
Diphyllobothriasis, 987 ff, *see also* Diphyllobothrium latum *and* mansoni
  diagnosis, 990
  prognosis, 990
  prophylaxis, 991
  treatment, 991
  water disinfection, 991
Diphyllobothrium anemia, blood picture, 1485, 1486
  eranacei, 992
  larva, sparganiasis, 991
  latum, 987 ff, *see also* Diphyllobothriasis
    anemia, 990
    Cyclops, 990
    description, 987, 988
    diagnosis, 990
    distribution, 987
    eggs, 988, 989
    fish, 987
    history, 987
    hosts, 987, 988, 990
    incidence, 7, 987
    life cycle, 988
      span, 990
    number, 990
    prophylaxis, 991
    sparganum, 990
    stools, disinfection, 990
    treatment, 948
  mansoni, 992 ff
    eggs, 993, 994
    hosts, 992, 994
    life cycle, 994
    sparganum, 992, 994
    symptoms, 994
  mansonoides, 991
  sparganiasis, 991
Diplacanthus nanus, 966
Diplocentrus gundlachi, 1225
Dipodomys ordii ordii, plague, 451
Diptera, myiasis, 1199 ff
Dipylidiasis, 973 ff
  diagnosis, 976
  prophylaxis, 976
  treatment, 976
Dipylidium caninum, 973 ff
    Bacigalupo phenomenon, 941
    Cryptocystis trichodectis, 976
    description, 973, 974
    eggs, 974
    hosts, 974, 976
    incidence, 973
    larva, 976
    life cycle, 974, 976
    number, 974
    treatment, 948
  synonyms, 973
Dirofilaria immitis, antigen, 1547
    bancroftian filariasis, 878
    skin tests, filaraisis, 886

Disease control, 1447
  distribution, 1431
  incidence, 1361, 1368
Dispensary, elementary, 1461, 1462
Distoma baelzi, 997
  cerebrale, 997
  conus, 1015
  endemicum, 1007
  felineum, 1015
  fusca, 997
  haematobium, 1049, 1050, 1068
  hepaticum, 1018
  hepatis, 1007
  heterophyes, 1003
  japonicum, 1007
  lanceolatum canis familiaris, 1015
    felis cati, 1015
  pulmonale, 997
  pulmonis, 997
  ringeri, 997
  sibiricum, 1015
  sinense, 1007
  spathulatum, 1007
  westermani, 997
  winogradoffi, 1015
Distomatosis hepatica, 1017, *see also* Fascioliasis
  pulmonary, 997
Distomes, 997 ff
Distomum, 1000
Diuretics, nutritional edema 1293
Dixinae, description, 103
Dobell, amebic cysts, 1555
  –Laidlaw media, 1555
Dochmius ankylostomum, 821
  duodenalis, 821
Dog, ancylostoma, 839
  disease, 337
  fever, 337
  leishmaniasis, 186
    visceral, 195
  leptospira, 247
  tapeworm, *see* Dipylidiasis
  Weil's disease, 250
Dolichopsyllidae, plague, 447
Doliophis bivirgatus, poison apparatus, 1246
Dominici stain, 1508, 1509
Donaldson lugol-eosin solution, 1555
Donovan bodies, 412
    granuloma inguinale, examination for, 415
Donovania granulomatis, 412
Dopa-oxydase reaction, pinta, 225, 226
Doras muricus, 1268
Dothiendermieaiguë, 736
Dracontiasis, 927 ff
  abscess formation, 933
  acriflavin, 935
  adrenalin, 926
  blister, 931, 932
  blood picture, 933
  cellulitis, 933
  complications, 933
  control, 936
  Cyclops, 929
    control, 936
  diagnosis, 933
  distribution, 927
  epidemiology, 930
  etiology, 928
  host, 929
  immunity, 930
  incidence, 927, 930
  incubation period, 927, 931
  "Kermes" mineral, 934
  lesion, 931
  location, 930
  mercury perchloride, 934
  Novarsenobenzol, 934
  phenothiazine, 935
  prognosis, 934
  prophylaxis, 936
  removal of worm, 934
  skin test, 933
  symptoms, 931
  tartar emetic, 934
  thiodiphenylamine, 935
  transmission, 929, 930
  treatment, 934
  x-ray examination, 933
Dracunculiasis, *see* Dracontiasis
Dracunculus graecorum, 928
  medinensis, 927, *see also* Dracontiasis
    Cyclops, 930
    description, 928
    incidence, 8
    life cycle, 929
    transmission, 929
Dragon worm, 927
Drakontion, 927
Dropsy, epidemic, 1340
    blood picture, 1486
Drosophila melanogaster, myiasis, 1200
Dryopteris filix-mas, taeniasis, 948
Dube, 269
Duboscq-Brasil solution, 1555
Ducks, Pekin psittacosis, 351
  psittacosis, 342, 351
Ducrey chancre, lymphogranuloma venereum, 393
Duela del higado, 1018
Duikerbok, African sleeping sickness, 158
Dumdum fever, 193
Duodenal intubation, Kourf, 1537, 1538
Durand and Sparrow vaccine, typhus, 752
Dyak hair sloughs, amebiasis, 39
Dyer vaccine, murine typhus, 754
Dysentery, acute, 537
  amebic, 35 ff, 44, *see also* Amebiasis *and* Endamoeba histolytica
    and bacillary, 40
    chronic, 45
      shigellosis, 538
    incidence, 5
    temperate zones, 10
    treatment, 55 ff, 1390
  bacillary, *see* Shigellosis, 532 ff
    and amebic, 40
    blood picture, 1494, 1495
    classical, 537
    colon, 534
    salmonellosis, 525
    stools, 537
    treatment, *see* Shigellosis *and* Salmonellosis, 1379, 1380, 1381
  bacillus, synonyms, 508
  balantidiasis, 32, 66
  catarrhal, 535
  choleriform, 538
  colitis, blood picture, 1499
  epidemiologic laboratories, 1462
  gangrenous, 537
  mortality, control, 1455
  relapsing, 538
  Schistosomiasis mansoni, 1090
  Sonne, 535
  trichuriasis, 843
Dysmicus, plague, 451

E

Earwigs, myiasis, 1201
Eberthella typhosa, *see* Salmonella typhosa *and* Typhoid
Ecchymosis, 1208, 1209
  mites, 1217
  snake bite, 1252
  Vipera russellii, 1251
Echidnolaelaps echidinus, DDT, 761
Echidnophaga gallinacea, DDT, 760
    plague, 447
Echinococcifer echinococcus, 952
Echinococcosis, 952 ff, *see also* Echinococcus granulosus *and* Hydatid cyst
  anaphylactic shock, 959, 964
  Ascoli reaction, 1547
  blood picture, 1486
  bones, 963
  brain, 963
  Casoni reaction, 1546
  circulatory system, 963
  complement fixation test, 1544
  diagnosis, 964
    Ascoli reaction, 1547
    complement fixation test, 1544
    exudates, 1539-1540
    miostagmin reaction, 1547
    precipitin test, 1545
    skin test, 1546

Echinococcosis—Cont'd
  epidemiology, 958
  etiology, 952
  hydatid, pathogenesis, 957
  incidence, 958
  kidneys, 963
  liver, 960
  lungs, 961
  miostagmin reaction, 1547
  pelvis, 963
  peritoneum, 963
  precipitin test, 1545
  prognosis, 964
  prophylaxis, 965
  secondary, 963, 964
  shock, 959, 964
  skin test, 1546
  sputum, 1540
  symptoms, 958
  transmission, 958
  treatment, 964
  urine, 1540
  x-ray, 964
Echinococcus alveolaris, 952
  cysticus, 952
  granulosus, 952 ff, 956, *see also* Echinococcosis
    brood capsules, 953
    cysts, 954, 955
      daughter, 957
      sterile, 957
    description, 952
    distribution, 952
    eggs, 953
    history, 952
    host, 958
    incidence, 7, 952
    larva, 953
    life cycle, 957
    scolex, 953
    spinal fluid, 1540
    transmission, 958
    urine, 963
    vesicles, 957
  hepatis, 952
  hominis, 952
  multilocularis, 952
  polymorphus, 952
Echinostoma ilocanum, 1006
    eggs, 1006
  incidence, 7
Echinostomiasis, 1005 ff
  prophylaxis, treatment, symptoms, 1006
Echis, 1241
  carinatus, 1244
    venom, 1249
  coloratus, 1244
Ecthyma, leishmaniasis, 188
  sulfathiazole, 657
  tropical ulcer, 657
Ectinorus, plague, 451
Ectoparasites, 19
Ectoplasm, definition, 15
Ectromelia, hemagglutination, 305
Eczema, pellagra, 1358
Edema, beriberi, 1335, 1336
  Chagas' disease, localized, 149
  grotesque, Chagas' disease, 150
  hypoprotein, *see* Nutritional edema
  nutritional, *see* Nutritional edema, 1292-1294
  onchocerciasis, 902, 903
  palpebral, Chagas' disease, 149
    unilateral, 147
  plague, 462
  prison, 1292
  renal, 1293
  snake bite, 1251, 1252
  war, 1292
Edentatae, Chagas' disease, 134
Eel, 1268, 1270, 1271
  conger, 1270, 1271
Efa, 1244
  venom, 1249
Egg albumin fixative, 1556
  counts, helminth, *see* Helminthiasis, eggs
  salmonellosis, 510, 511
Elapidae, venoms, 1249
Elapíneo, 1257
Elephantiasis, 874 ff, *see also* Filariasis, bancrofti, *and* Wuchereria bancrofti
  chromoblastomycosis, 1159, 1161
  development, 878
  filariasis, 882, 883
  granuloma inguinale, 413
  legs, treatment, 887
  lymphogranuloma venereum, 392, 398
  mosquito control, 887
  onchocerciasis, 903
  schistosomiasis haematobia, 1059
  skin, 879
  Wuchereria malayi, 888
El Tor, 478
  vibrio, 479, 480
    differentiation, 492
    pilgrimages, 483
Embadomonas intestinalis, *see* Retortamonas intestinalis
Embedding methods, tissue, 1503, 1504
Embia argentina, Hymenolepis diminuta, 973
Emerald green, *see* Paris green
Emetine, amebiasis, 55, 56, 58, 59, 60, 1390, 1392
  balantidiasis, 1393
  contraindications, 56
  expeditions, 1447
  fascioliasis, 1022, 1024, 1403
    children, 1026
    therapeutic test, 1022
  indications, 56
  intoxication, signs, 55
  leishmaniasis, 190
  paragonimiasis, 999
  schistosomiasis, 1402
    haematobia, 1063, 1064
    japonica, 1044
Empyema, amebic liver abscess, 49
  typhoid, 570
Encephalitis, 367 ff, *see also* Encephalomyelitis
  antibodies, 374
  antigens, 375
  Argentine, vectors, 371
  Australian X, 380
  brain, 373, 375
  brucellosis, 428
  Bwamba fever, 381
  Colombian, 379
  Colorado tick fever, 381
  complement fixation tests, 373
  Eastern, symptoms, 372
  encephalomyelitis, 367 ff
  endocarditis, 376
  equine, 380
    symptoms, 372
    Western, brain, 374
  immunization, 377
  infantile, 369
  Japanese B, 378, 380
    mosquitoes, 370
    virus culture, 377
  lethargic, 376
  neutralization test, 374
  neutralizing antibodies, 377
  pathology, 373, 375
  poliomyelitis, 373
  rabies, 376
  Russian, 380
    spring-summer, 377, 378
  shigellosis, treatment, 576
  spinal cord, 376
  St. Louis, 375, 380
    Aëdes triseriatus, 369
    mosquito, 370
    pathology, 373
    transmission, 300, 369, 370
    vaccination, 308
    vectors, 370
    virus, 370
      culture, 377
  swineherd's disease, 381
  transmission, 1210
  treatment, 377
  trichinosis, 376, 857
  typhus, pathology, 376
  vaccination, 307
  vectors, 377, 379
  Venezuelan, 380
    vectors, 371

Encephalitis—Cont'd
  virus, 380, 381
    B. 381
    culture, 377
    relationship, 374
    transmission, 300
  West Nile, 379, 381
  Western, symptoms, 372
Encephalomyelitis, equine, 367 ff
    Eastern, 367
      virus isolation, 301 *footnote*
    history, 367 ff
    Latin-American strain, 368
    test for, 373
    transmission, 300
    vaccination, 307
    vectors, 371
    Venezuelan, 368
    virus, 372
    Western, 368
      vectors, 370
  human, *see* Encephalitis
  immunization, 377
  incidence, 368, 369
  mosquitoes, 369
  pathology, 373, 375, 376
  symptoms, 372
  transmission, 369, 1206, 1210, 1211, 1216
  treatment, 377
  vectors, 369, *see also* Encephalomyelitis, transmission
  virus, culture, 377
    reservoir, 371
  strains, 374, 375
Encephalomyocarditis virus, 381
Encephalopathy, niacin deficiency, 1350
Endamoeba coli, 21, 23, 63
    cysts, 23, 24
    description, 23
    E. histolytica differentiation, 24
    history, 14
    incidence, 23
    life cycle, 23
    trophozoites, 23, 24
  dispar, 35
  gingivalis, 21, 24, 25
    history, 14
    incidence, 25
    trophozoite, 24
  histolytica, 21, 22, 63, *see also* Amebiasis
    amebiasis, 35 ff
    animal inoculation, 23
    antibiotics, 1410
    carriers, 36, 37, 1455
    chromatoid bodies, 22
    culture, 23, 1554, 1569, 1570
      medium, 1552, 1555
    cysts, 22, 24
      chlorination, 1437
      viability, 35
    cytolysins, 37
    description, 22
    E. coli differentiation, 24
      gingivalis differentiation, 25
    emetine resistant, 55
    feces, 53
    habitat, 37
    history, 14
    incidence, 37
      seasonal, 36
    infective form, 35
    lesions, 37
    life cycle, 22
    physiology, 22
    small forms, pathogenicity, 35
    stools, 44, 53
      collection, 1524
    temperate zones, 10
    transmission, 36
    trophozoites, 22, 24
      viability, 35
    virulence, 35
  nucleus, 20
Endemic degeneration of bones of feet, 1138
  index, malaria, 93
Endocarditis, bacitracin, 1409
  brucellosis, 425
  encephalitis, 376
  malaria, 94
  typhoid. 569
Endodermophyton, 1118
Endolimax nana, 21, 25, 63
    cysts, 25
    description, 25
    E. histolytica, small forms, 35
    life cycle, 25
    trophozoites, 25
  nucleus, 20
Endometritis, salmonellosis, 521
Endoparasites, 19
Endoplasm, definition, 15
Endosome, 16
Engraulis boelema, 1270
Enhydrina schistosa, 1239
    symptoms, 1250
Entamoeba, 21, *see also* Endamoeba
Enteric centers, 1528
  fever, classical, 511 ff, *see also* Salmonellosis, 507 ff, *and* Typhoid
    symptoms, 515
  organisms, typing, 1528
  surveys, 1529
Enteritis, Salmonella, *see* Salmonella enteritis, 511
Enterobiasis, 807 ff, *see also* Enterobius vermicularis
  Acranil, 1397
  appendicitis, 810
  bismuth, 1396
  carbon tetrachloride, 1396
  coryza, 811
  cutaneous, 811
  diagnosis, 811, 1536, 1537
  digestive system, 810
  distribution, 807
  eggs, examination, 1536
  epidemiology, 809
  etiology, 808
  female, examination, 1536
  genital system, 810
  gentian violet, 811, 1396
  Graham examination, 1536
    -Mazzotti method, 1536
  Hall tube, 1536
  hexylresorcinol, 1396
  history, 807
  intestine, 810
  Lubisan, 1396
  nervous system. 810
  NIH swab, 1536
  phenothiazine, 1396
  prophylaxis, 812
  pruritus, 810
  rectum, 810
  reinfestation, 811, 812
  santonica, 1396
  santonin, 1396
  Scotch tape examination, 1536
  semen contra, 1396
  stool examination, 1537
  subungual grooves, 1536
  symptoms, 809, 810 ff
  thymol, 1396
  treatment, 811, 812, 1396
    local, 1397
  urticaria, 811
Enterobius vermicularis, 807 ff, 810, *see also* Enterobiasis
    appendicitis, 843
    description, 808
    eggs, 808, 809
    incidence, 8
    life cycle, 809
Enteromonas hominis, 30
Enterovioform, amebiasis, 57
Entomophobia, 1197
Eomenacanthus stramineus, virus, 301 *footnote*
Eosinol, 1513, 1514
Eosinophile, staining, 1472
Eosinophilia, 1478
  tropical, *see* Tropical eosinophilia
Eosin-orange G stain, 1508
Eparseno, infantile, 190
  leishmaniasis, 190
Epeira diadema, 1232, 1234
    symptoms, 1235
Epidemic dropsy, blood picture, 1486
Epidemiologic surveys, 1457
Epidemiology, laboratory, rural, 1462
  problems, 1453, 1454

Epidermomycoses, pinta, 228
Epidermophyton, classification, 1112
  description, 1114
Epidermophytosis, yaws, 286
Epilepsy, onchocerciasis, 908
Epiphora, onchocerciasis, 906
Eretmapodites, 104
Ergosterol, vitamin D, 1283
Eriocheir, paragonimiasis, 998
Erisipela de la costa, 901
Eritranus andricus, plague, 451
Errecart solution, 1556
Eruptive fever, 706
Erythema induratum, leprosy, 595
  multiforme, boutonneuse fever, 736
    leprosy, 590, 603, 605
    pellagra, 1358
    Streptobacillus moniliformis, 257
  nodosum, leprosy, 605
    tularemia, 439
  sunburn, 1422
Erythematous squamous plaques, pinta, 211
Escarpião-do-Gabão, 1225
Eschar-nodular fever, 736
Escherichia coli, aureomycin, 1409
    septicemia and malaria, 9
Espundia cancrum, 177
  yaws, 288
Esthiomene, vulvar, lymphogranuloma venereum, 398
Eucalyptus robusta, Anopheles control, 124
Euparyphium ilocanum, 1006
Eurypelma hentzii, 1232
Eustrongylus gigas, urine, 1540
Eutrombicula alfreddugesii, 1217
Exanthem, dengue, 331
  Haverhill fever, 265, 266
  tularemia, 439
Exanthematic fevers, leprosy, 605
  macular fevers, 731
Exanthematous fever, 736
Exercise and health, 1432, 1433
Exophthalmia, Chagas' disease, 148
Exophthalmus, scleroma, 678
Exotic diseases, 1
Expeditions, bathing facilities, 1445
  insecticides, 1448
  medical supplies, 1445, 1447
  requirements, 1444-1446
  sleeping equipment, 1445
  surgical supplies, 1446, 1447, 1448
Extralin, sprue, 1323, 1324
Exudates, anticoagulant, 1540
  helminthiasis, 1539
Eye, African sleeping sickness, 161
      treatment, 165
  arthropods, 1198
  Chagas' disease, 138, 139, 145
    symptoms, 147
  fatty acid deficiency, 1289
  leprosy, 601
  lymphogranuloma venereum, 400
  microfilaria, 906
    examination, 915, 917
  nutritional edema, 1292
  onchocerciasis, 903-908
    examination, 917
    pathology, 913
  photophthalmia, 1423-1425
  pterygia, 1423
  rhinosporidiosis, 1171
  Schistosomiasis haematobia, 1060
  scleroma, 678
  shigellosis, 540, 574
  sparganiasis, 995
  sunglasses, 1440
  taeniasis saginata, 946
  trichinosis, 858
  tryptophane deficiency, 1286
  tsutsugamushi, 742
  tularemia, treatment, 442
  vitamin A deficiency, 1274, 1275
    B_2 deficiency, 1277

F

Facies, cholera, 487
  leishmaniotica, 187
  leonine, 592
  lepromatous, 592
Facies—Cont'd
  onchocercosa, 903, 905
  plague, 457
  typhica, 516
  typhus, 712
Faget's sign, yellow fever, 320
Fairley, complement fixation test, schistosomiasis, 1543, 1544
Fasciola californica, 1018
  halli, 1018
  hepatica, 1017, 1018 ff, *see also* Fascioliasis
    distribution, 1017
    eggs, 1019, 1023
      concentration, 1532
    Fasciolopsis buski, 1000
    history, 1017
    hosts, 1018, 1019, 1024
    incidence, 7, 1018
    life cycle, 1019
  heterophyes, 1003
Fascioletta ilocanum, 1006
Fascioliasis, *see also* Fasciola hepatica
  blood picture, 1022, 1486, 1487
      children, 1025
  carbon tetrachloride, 1403
  children, 1025
  complement fixation tests, 1026
  diagnosis, 1022, 1025, 1537, 1538
  emetine, 1022, 1024, 1403
    children, 1026
    therapeutic test, 1022
  flocculation test, 1026
  gastrointestinal symptoms, 1021
  hepatica, 1017
    children, 1025
    treatment, 1403
  liver, 1019, 1021, 1022
  Magdala rose, 1024
  muscles, 1021
  nervous system, 1022
  pathology, 1019
  pharyngeal, 1021
  prophylaxis, 1024
  skin tests, 1026
  symptoms, 1021
  tetrachloroethylene, 1403
  therapeutic test, 1022
  treatment, 1403, 1022
    children, 1026
Fasciolopsiasis, *see also* Fasciolopsis, 1000
  blood picture, 1002, 1487
  diagnosis, 1002
  intestines, 1001
  prognosis, 1002
  prophylaxis, 1002
  symptoms, 1000
  transmission, 1000
  treatment, 1002
Fasciolopsis buski, 1000 ff
    incidence, 7
    larva, 1001
Fast green solution, 1506
Fat absorption, sprue, 1303
  amebic liver abscess, 40
Fatty acids, 1273
    deficiency, treatment, 1289
    essential, 1289
    requirements, 1289
Favic chandeliers, dermatophytes, 1113
Favre's sign, lymphogranuloma venereum, 395, 398
Favus, arthrospores, 1113
  tinea imbricata, cultures, 1118
Fea's viper, 1243
Febris maligna pestilens, 691
Feces, *see* Stools
Feet, care of, 1441
  mycetoma, 1133, 1135, 1137 ff
  pinta, 219 ff, 225
  protection, 1440
Felig and Lisbonne reaction, 1545
Felix antigen, typhoid vaccines, 530
  serum, 525
Feng azur II-eosin, 1556
  hemalum stain, 1556
  methyl green pyronin, 1556
Fer-de-lance, 1241
  antivenin, 1257, 1258
  venom, 1249
    volume, 1247

Ferric ammonium citrate, trichuriasis, 845
Fever, *see also* Temperature
  biliary, transmission, 1210
  cholera, 487
  enteritis, Salmonella, 519
  leprosy, 603
  Oroya fever, 623, 624
  relapsing, *see* Relapsing fever
  rheumatic, 1366
  Rift Valley, *see* Rift Valley fever
  Rocky Mountain spotted, *see* Spotted fever
  schistosomiasis japonica, 1037
    mansoni, 1088
  shigellosis, 574
  spotted, *see* Spotted fever
  sunburn, 1424
  therapy, plague, 1372
  trench, *see* Trench fever
  trichinosis, 859
  tsutsugamushi, 740
  typhoid, *see* Typhoid
    fever, 515, 565
    -like fever, 517
  typhus, *see* Typhus
    fever curve, 712, 721, 722
  yellow, *see* Yellow fever
Fibrin, examination, helminthiasis, 1539
  formation, snake venoms, 1249
Fibrinogen, normal, 1293
Ficin, trichuriasis, 845, 1400
Ficus glabrata, trichuriasis, 842, 845
Field stain, thick drop, 1473, 1474
Fiery serpent, *see* Dracunculus medinensis, 927
Figueira, 179
Filaria bancrofti, *see* Wuchereria bancrofti
  blood, 1539
  Loa loa, 888
  malayi, 888
  medina, 927
  medinensis, 927, 928
  Stubli concentration method, 1539
Filarial fever, 881
Filariasis, 871 ff
  Anthiomaline, 1400
  antimony, 1400
  Arsenamide, 1400
  bancroftian, 874 ff, 877 ff, *see also* Wuchereria bancrofti
    allergy, 877
    Anthiomaline, 886
    biopsy, 884
    blood picture, 882, 1487
    chyluria, 882
    control, 887
    diagnosis, 884, 1542
    distribution, 874
    Hetrazan, 886
    history, 874
    incidence, 875
    lymph blockage, 878
      varix, 881
    lymphadenitis, 877, 878, 881, 882, 884, 885, 877, 878, 881, 882, 884, 885
    lymphedema, 877, 878, 882, 884, 885
    mosquito control, 887
    Neostibosan, 886
    pathology, 877 ff
    prophylaxis, 887
    signs, 885
    skin, 879
      tests, 885
    sulfonamides, 887
    symptoms, 881
    transmission, 876
    treatment, 886
    urine, 882
    vectors, 876, 887
    xenodiagnosis, 1542
  blood, 1539
  Calabar swellings, 888, 889
  diagnosis, 1539
    skin test, 1547
  diet, 1401
  dracontiasis, *see* Dracontiasis, 927 ff
  elephantiasis, 882, 883
  epidemiologic laboratories, 1462
  etiology, 871
  Fuadin, 1400
  gentian violet, 819
  guinea worm disease, *see* Dracontiasis, 927 ff
Filariasis—Cont'd
  Hetrazan, 1400
  lymphatic obstruction, treatment, 1401
  malaria, 95
  mosquitoes, 888
  Neostibosan, 1400
  onchocerciasis, *see* Onchocerciasis, 893 ff
  radiation, 1401
  skin test, 1547
  tartar emetic, 1400
  transmission, 871
  treatment, 1400
    secondary infection, 1401
Filix mas, cestodiasis, 1395
    echinostomiasis, 1006
    metagonimiasis, 1005
    raillietinosis, 986
    taeniasis, 948, 951
    tapeworm, 948
Finches, psittacosis, 342, 350, 351
Finland fern, taeniasis, 948
Firestone, Harvey S., Jr., fund, 2
Fish, 1267
  clonorchiasis, 1009
  death, 1270
  Diphyllobothrium latum, 987
  hematoxic, 1271
  heterophyiasis, 1004
  ichthyotoxin, 1271
  jelly, 1272
  metagonimiasis, 1005
  opisthorchiasis, 1017
  poisoning, 1270
    immunity, 1271
    symptoms, 1269, 1270, 1271
    treatment, 1269, 1271
  poisonous, 1267, 1431
    blood forms, 1271
    meat, 1269
  shark-like, 1268, 1269, 1271
  shell, 1272
  tapeworm, 987 ff, *see also* Diphyllobothrium latum
  tetrodontin, 1270
  veneniferous, 1267
  venom, 1269, 1270, 1271
    apparatus, 1268
  wrasse, 1269
Fistula, mycetoma, 1134, 1135, 1136, 1137
  schistosomiasis haematobia, 1054
Five-day fever, 701
Fixative, ameba, 1566
  arthropods, 1561
  Carnoy, 1553
  Duboscq-Brasil, 1555
  egg albumin, 1556
  formalin, 1556
  insects, 1551
  Kahle, 1561
  osmic acid, 1566
  polyvinyl alcohol, 1566
  protozoa, 1557
  P.V.A., 1566
  Schaudinn, 1525, 1569
  tissue, 1502, 1503, 1510, 1511, *see also* Tissue
  trypanosome, 1566
Flacourtiaceae, 1375
Flagella, 16
Flagellates, 26 ff
  blood, Prodigiosin, 1410
  intestinal, culture, 1565
      media, 1559
    treatment, 1392
  Mastigophora, 26
  plants, culture, 1565
  stain, 1565
Flatworms, 997 ff
Fleas, blocked, 449
  control, DDT, 1442
    plague, 469
  DDT, 760
  Dipylidium caninum, 976
  Gammefane, 761
  Hymenolepis diminuta, 971
    nana, 967, 968
  myiasis, 1201
  plague, 447, 449
  raillietinosis, 985
  tularemia, 436

Fleas—Cont'd
  typhus control, 765, 766
  water, Diphyllobothrium latum, 990
    dracontiasis, 929
Flies, control, 1201
  DDT, 918
  eggs, hatching, 1200
  larvae, transmission, 1199, 1200
  Loa loa, 889
  myiasis, 1199, 1200, 1201
  onchocerciasis, 894, 895, 896, 897
  phenothiazine, 1201
  salmonellosis, 510, 530
  shigellosis, 533, 546
  tularemia, 436
  typhoid, 530
  yaws, 269
"Flu," intestinal, 537
Flukes, 997 ff, *see also* under each name
  bladder, 1050
  blood, 1068
  cat liver, 1015
  Garrison's, 1005
  Heterophyes, *see* Heterophyiasis, 1002
  incidence, 7
  intestinal, 1000
  liver, 1007 ff, 1015, 1017, 1025
  lung, *see* Paragonimiasis, 997
  metagonimiasis, 1004
  paragonimiasis, 997
  schistosomiasis, *see* Schistosomiasis *and* Schistosoma
  sheep liver, 1017
  Yokagawa, 1004
Fluoran-thiazin stains, 1508
Fluorescein, leprosy, 1377
Fly, *see* Flies
Folic acid, 1280
    deficiency, blood picture, 1487, *see also* Sprue
      symptoms, 1280
      treatment, 1281
    dosage, 1281, 1330
    foods, 1281
    history, 1326
    nutritional macrocytic anemia, 1291
    requirements, 1281
    sprue, 1304, 1326-1330
      bone marrow, 1317
Fontaria virginica, Hymenolepis diminuta, 971
Food handlers, amebiasis, 42
    examination, 1436
  hygiene, 1433-1436
  poisoning, *see also* Salmonellosis, 507 ff
    cholera, 493
    prevention, 1435-1436
    shigellosis, 535
  requirements, 1434 ff
    expeditions, 1445
  salmonellosis, protection, 529
Foot drop, leprosy, 601
  mycetoma, *see* Mycetoma
Footwear, 1440
Foraminifer, shell, 18
Forbisen, rickettsioses, 746, 749
Forficula auricularia, myiasis, 1201
Formaldehyde, *see* Formalin
Formalin, 1556
  -acetic acid, 1557
  buffered, neutral, 1503
  fixation, discussion, 1502, 1503, 1510, 1511
  hookworm larvae, 827
  stool preserving fluids, 1525
Formol-gel test, leishmaniasis, visceral, 198
    Oroya fever, 626, 1483
  -sublimate solution, 1557
Formosa river fever, 737
Forpus passerinus, psittacosis, 351
Fossaria, fascioliasis, 1019
Fouadin, *see* Fuadin
Foure's chloral gum, 1557
Fourneau "309," African sleeping sickness, 166
  "270," amebiasis, 57
Fourth venereal disease, 387
Fowlpox, hemagglutination, 305
Fox, Chagas' disease, 134
Fradicin, 1409, 1410
  mycoses, 1406, 1407
Fraenkel's nodule, 726
Framboesia, *see* Yaws, 269 ff
Frei antigen, lymphogranuloma venereum, 407
  test, Lygranum, 404
    lymphogranuloma venereum, 389, 398, 400, 402, 404
    syphilis, 389
Freno, 1241
Freon spray, mosquito control, 120
Frogs, Diphyllobothrium mansoni, 994
  sparganiasis, 992
Fröhlich syndrome, typhoid, 566
Fuadin, contraindications, 1097
  filariasis, 1400
  granuloma inguinale, 416
  histoplasmosis, 1195
  leishmaniasis, 1384
    cutaneous, 189
  lymphogranuloma venereum, 405, 406
  schistosomiasis, 1402, 1403
    haematobia, 1063
    japonica, 1044
    mansoni, 1095, 1097
Fuellebornius medinensis, 928
Fugu, 1270
Fülleborn egg counts, *see* Hamburg method, 1534
Fulmar, psittacosis, 342, 351
Fumigation, plague, 468
Fünftagefieber, 701
Fungi, 1101 ff
  arthrospores, examination, 1113
  blastomycosis, 1178 ff
  classification, 1102
    clinical, 1106
  clothing, care of, 1440
  cultures, 1104, 1105, 1113
    Actinomycetales, 1150
  diseases, 1101 ff, *see also* under each name
    Prodigiosin, 1410
  examination, 1104
    arthospores, 1113
    chromblastomycosis, 1167
    filaments, 1112
  filaments, examination, 1113
  hair, examination, 1113
  Histoplasma, 1191
  hypha, 1102
  imperfecti, 1102
  infection, pellagra, 1347
    yaws, 286
  macrosiphonate, mycetoma granules, 1148
  microsiphonate, mycetoma granules, 1146
  mosaic, 1113
  mycelium, 1102, 1103
  nails, examination, 1113
  pathogenic, 1102
  pseudomycelium, 1103
  reproductive apparatus, 1103, 1104
  scales, examination, 1113
  shoes, destruction, 1441
  spores, 1105
  sporulation, types, 1163, 1164, 1165
  staining, 1104
  vegetative apparatus, 1102
Fungus diseases, *see* Fungi
Furaspor, mycoses, 1406
Furia venamedinensis, 928
Fusarella vermicularis, 808
Fusaria lumbricoides, 798
Fuseaux, 1104
  dermatophytes, 1114
Fusiform bacilli, cultures, 647, 648
    description, 648
    leptothricial forms, 647
    serology, 650
    soil, 651
    tropical ulcer, 646 ff
    yaws, 286
Fusiformis fusiformis, *see* Fusiform bacilli
Fuso-spirillary infections, penicillin, 1388
Fusospirochetal infection, *see* Fusiform bacilli
Fusospirochetosis, granuloma inguinale, 414

G

Gabon scorpion, 1225
Gaboon viper, 1244
Gage, stain, 1557
Gala, 641
Galactose tolerance, malaria, 97

Galba, fascioliasis, 1019
Galea, plague, 451
Gall bladder, ascariasis, 803
    cholera, 485
    clonorchiasis, 1010
    disease, amebiasis, 42
    salmonellosis, 519, 521
      carriers, 514
    taeniasis saginata, 941
    typhoid, 512, 516, 564
Gallus gallus, psittacosis, 351
Galyl, tropical ulcer, 661
Gamasids, DDT, 761
Gambusia affinis, malaria control, 125
"Gammefane," 761
Gammexane, flea eradication, 469
Gangos, 283
  rhinoscleroma, 680
  scleroma, 682
  yaws, 275
Gangrene, amebiasis, 40
  gas, bacitracin, 1409
  hospital, treatment, 1388
  intestines, amebiasis, 45
Garbage disposal, 1446
Garigha, tropical ulcer, 657
Garlic, fly control, 1201
Garrapatos, 1203
Gastric chromoscopy, 1308
  contents, fly larvae, 1200
    pellagra, 1357
    sprue, 1311
  juice, artificial, 1557
Gastrodiscoides, incidence, 7
Gastroenteritis, salmonellosis, 525
    children, 555
  Salmonella, pathology, 513
  typhoid, 568
Gastrointestinal disorders, taeniasis, 945
  disturbances, amebiasis, 50
  system, fascioliasis, 1021
Gee-Herter's syndrome, 1309
  -Thaysen's disease, 1309
Gegen, pinta, 227
Geiman medium, 1557
Genitalia, enterobiasis, 810
  rhinosporidiosis, 1172
  vitamin A deficiency, 1275
Gentian violet, clonorchiasis, 1014, 1403
    enterobiasis, 811, 1396
    onchocerciasis, 1401
    strongyloidiasis, 818, 1400
    trichuriasis, 1400
    typhoid, 528
Genu valgum, varum, recurvatum, 1283
Geopathology, 1
Geotrupes sylvaticus, Hymenolepis diminuta, 971
German measles, 1365
Ghedini reaction, 1544
Giardia intestinalis, clonorchiasis, 1010
  lamblia, 28, 64
    incidence, 29
    treatment, 1392
Giardiasis, 64
  diagnosis, 1537, 1538
  stool collection, 1524
  treatment, 64, 1392
Giemsa stain, 1467
    blood films, 1470-1472
    Kopel modification, 1562
    leptospiras, 238
    rapid method, 1472
Giggu, 1268
Gila monster, 1271, 1272
    symptoms, 1272
Giroud and Durand vaccine, typhus, 752
Glanders, melioidosis, 1195
  Chagas' disease, 139, 141
Glandular fever, endemic, 737
Glandularia, 444
Glassware, preparation, 1466
Glaucomys sabrinus lascivus, plague, 451
Glenospora albiciscans, 1127
Globefish, 1270
Globi, leprosy, 605
  Mycobacterium leprae, 587
Glossina, African sleeping sickness, 156, 157
Glossitis, blastomycosis, 1181
  pellagra, 1347, 1348
    treatment, 1355
Glucomycin, 1408
  salmonellosis, 527 *footnote*, 1379
  shigellosis, 1379, 1381
  typhoid, 527 *footnote*, 1382
Glucose, pellagra, 1343, 1344
  rickettsial diseases, 1379
  shigellosis, 543
  solution, scorpionism, 1230
Glutamic acid, 1280
Glycerin jelly, 1558
Glyphenarsine, African sleeping sickness, 166
Glyptocranium gasteracanthoides, 1233, 1234
    symptoms, 1235
Goats, brucellosis, 420
  trypanosomes, 158
Gobiidae, clonorchiasis, 1009
Gogo, 1115
Goiter, zones, 1297
Gold salts, clonorchiasis, 1403
    leprosy, 1376
  scleroma respiratorium, 684
Gomori fixative, 1502
Gongylonema neoplasticum, carcinomatous reaction, 1548
Gonorrhea, lymphogranuloma venereum, 403
Gopher, encephalomyelitis, 369
  psittacosis, 350
Gordius medinensis, 928
Goundou, 284
Graham method, enterobiasis, 1536
  -Mazzotti method, enterobiasis, 1536
Gram stain, tissues, 1519-1521
Gramicidin, 1409
Grammostola acteon, 1232, 1234
    symptoms, 1235
Grand douve du foie, 1018
Granules, mycetoma, *see* Mycetoma granules
Granulocytopenia, arsenicals, 291
Granuloma, amebic, 39, 46
  coccidioidal, blood picture, 1484
  inguinale, 412 ff, 1410
    Anthiomaline, 416
    antimonials, 416
    aureomycin, 416
    biopsy, 415
    Chloromycetin, 416
    complications, 414
    diagnosis, 414
    Donovan bodies, examination, 415
    elephantiasis, pseudo-, 413
    epidemiology, 412
    etiology, 412
    Fuadin, 416
    incubation period, 412
    lesion, 412
    lymphogranuloma venereum, 403
    pathognomonic cells, 414
        biopsy, 415
    pathology, 414
    prognosis, 417
    streptomycin, 415
    symptoms, 413
    tartar emetic, 416
    treatment, 415, 416
  leishmaniasis, mucocutaneous, 184
  paracoccidioidal, 1178 ff
  scleroma respiratorium, 672, 677, 678, 679
  South American blastomycosis, 1185
  typhoid, 561, 564
Granulomatosis, paracoccidioidal, 1178 ff
Graomys, plague, 451
Gray and Tulloch medium, 1558
Grippe, Balkan, *see* Balkan grippe
  benign, plague, 466
  dengue, 336
  trench fever, 704
  typhus, 720, 725
Grisonella huronax, Chagas' disease, 134
Groot-Hernández modification, Geiman medium, 1558
Ground itch, 830
Groupers, 1269
Guacucuja, 1269
Guayacán, 1243
Guerreiro-Machado reaction, Chagas' disease, 153

Guina, 1232
Guinea pigs, leptospira inoculation, 244
    psittacosis, 350
      immunity, 352
    sodoku, 257
  worm, 927
    disease, *see* Dracontiasis, 927 ff
Gum, 5% formolized, 1558
  damar, 1513, 1558
  mastic, saturated solution, 1517
Gumma, yaws, 273, 283
Gurnard, 1268
Gusano de monte, 1202
Gynaecophorus haematobius, 1050
Gyraulus prashadi, Echinostoma ilocanum, 1006
  saigonensis, fasciolopsiasis, 1000

H

Habu, 1241
  antivenin, 1257
  death rate, 1253
  symptoms, 1251
Hadrurus arizonensis, 1226
Haemagogus, 104
  capricornii, yellow fever, 319
Haemaphysalis, 1204, 1210
  "Q" fever, 696
  spotted fever, 732
  tularemia, 436
Haematobia serrata, encephalitis, 371
Haemobartonella muris, 631
    SDT "386," 636
Haemonchus contortus, blood picture, 1487
Hair examination, 1112, 1113
    black piedra, 1111
  fungi, 1113
  leprosy, 599
  para-amino benzoic acid, 1278
  Piedraia hortai, 1110
  piedra, 1108
    black, 1109, 1110
      examination, 1111
  tinea imbricata, 1117
  trichomycosis tropicalis, 1108
    vulgaris, 1107
  typhoid, 567
  vitamin B deficiency, 1279
Halazone, 1437
Halfbeaks, 1270
Hall tube, 1536
Halteria, shape, 14
  structure, 15
Halysis solium, 949
Hamadryad, symptoms, 1250
Hamburg method, egg counting, helminths, 1534
Hamsters, psittacosis, 350
Handi vaccine, typhus, 752
Hands, mycetoma, 1140
  pinta, 219 ff, 224
Hansen bacillus, *see* Mycobacterium leprae *and* Leprosy
  trioxyhematein, 1506
Hardy and Watt swab, 1524
Harlequin, 1240
Harris hematoxylin, 1513
Hartz and Hugenholtz fixative, 1502
Haverhill fever, 256, 263 ff, *see also* Ratbite fever *and* Sodoku
    blood picture, 267
    diagnosis, laboratory, 265
    exanthem, 265, 266
    incubation period, 265, 266
    prognosis, 267
    prophylaxis, 267
    symptoms, 265, 266
    transmission, 265
    treatment, 267
Haverhillia multiformis, 257, 263
Haemoproteus, 80
Haemosporidia, 71
Harper chaulmoogra oil, 1376
Hawa asfar, 477
Head, protection, 1440
Headgear, 1440
Health bomb, 120
  centers, cosmopolitan diseases, 1462
    establishment, 1456
Health centers—Cont'd
    function, 1463
    location, 1463
  education, 1463
  index, 1457-1459
  programs, 1453 ff
  service, rural, 1461
Heart, African sleeping sickness, 160, 161
  bartonellosis, 632
  beriberi, 1317, 1335, 1336, 1337
    treatment, 1338, 1339
  cardiac output, 1438, 1439
  Chagas' disease, 138, 142, 143, 148, 151
  cholera, 487
  disease, 1366, 1367
  echinococcosis, 963
  failure, vitamin B_1, 1337
  hookworm disease, 832
  hydatid cyst, 963
  infants, beriberi, 1339
  leucine, 1287
  malaria, 89, 90
  metagonimiasis, 1005
  nutritional edema, 1292
  Oroya fever, 632
  phenylalanine, 1287
  physiology, Tropics, 1416
  plague, 456
  psittacosis, 354
  rate, Tropics, 1417, 1418
  salmonellosis, 520
  Schistosoma mansoni in, 1071
  schistosomiasis haematobia, 1056, 1058, 1060
    japonica, 1035, 1036
    mansoni, 1078, 1087, 1092
  sodoku, 262
  sprue, 1317, 1318
  stimulants, scorpionism, 1229
  sunburn erythema, 1424
  tartar emetic, effect, 1063
  Trichinella spiralis, 850, 851, 852
  trichinosis, 857
  Trypanosoma cruzi, 129
  tsutsugamushi, 742, 744
  tularemia, 437
  typhoid, 512, 564, 565, 570
    treatment, 571
  typhus, 713, 729
Heat absorption, 1416
  adaptation, 1430
  cramps, 1429, 1430
  death, 1430
  exhaustion, 1429, 1430
    treatment, 1430
  loss, 1416, 1426
    physiology, 1417, 1418
  prostration, 1429
    salt, 1419
  regulation clothing, 1438 ff
  sickness, 1429, 1430
    distribution, 1430
  stroke, 1418, 1419
Hebra's nose, rhinoscleroma, 674, 676, 679
Hectopsylla, plague, 451
Heidenhain hematoxylin, 1559
Helcosoma tropicum, 170
Helminth, clarification, 1550
  eggs, *see* Helminthiasis, eggs
    isolation, soil, 1566
    stain, 1554, 1559
  proglottid stain, 1554
  stain, Bonilla-Naar, 1554
Helminthiasis, 794 ff
  Ascoli miostagmin reaction, 1547
  biopsy, 1540, 1541
  cancer, 1548
  coproculture, 1542
  diagnosis, 1531-1548
    blood, 1539
    coproculture, 1542
    cystic fluids, 1540
    direct methods, 1531-1542
    egg counts, 1534, 1542
    exudates, 1539
    histopathologic sections, 1541
    indirect methods, 1543-1548
    miostagmin reaction, 1547
    serologic, 1543-1547

Helminthiasis, diagnosis—Cont'd
    skin tests, 1546
    spinal fluid, 1540
    tissue reactions, 1547, 1548
    urine, 1540
    xenodiagnosis, 1541
  eggs, Basnuevo solution, 1550
    bile, 1537, 1538
    counting, 1534, 1535
    examination, 1532, 1533
  fibrin examination, 1539
  histopathologic sections, 1541
  hyperplasia, 1548
  inflammation, 1547
  malignancy, 1548
  prevention, 9
  skin tests, 1546
  sputum, 1540
  stools, 1532, 1533
  tissue reactions, 1547, 1548
  treatment, 1393 ff
    symptomatic, 1394
  tropodiagnosis, 1542
  xenodiagnosis, 1541
Helminthology, history, 794
Heloderma, 1271
Hemagglutination test, virus diseases, 304
Hemalum, Mayer, 1507
  stain, Feng, 1556
Hematein-alum stain, 1564
Hematoidin crystals, amebic liver abscess, 40
Hematology, *see* Blood picture, 1466-1500
Hematoxylin, Harris, 1513
  Heidenhain, 1559
  Johnson, 1560
  stool stains, 1526
Hematozoa, 1553
Hematuria, endemic, 1049
  schistosomiasis haematobia, 1059
Hemiptera, DDT, 122
  hematophagous, 127
Hemocoagulins, snake venom, 1249
Hemoconcentration, cholera, *see* Cholera
  heat sickness, 1429
  typhus, 715
Hemoflagellates, Mastigophora, 26
Hemoglobinuria, clonorchiasis, 1014
  malaria, 85
Hemolysin, bees, 1267
  fish venom, 1269
  ichthyotoxin, 1271
  scorpions, 1227
  snake venom, 1249
  wasps, 1266
Hemolysis, spider bite, treatment, 1236
Hemolytic anemia, blood picture, 1487
Hemophilus influenzae suis, swine influenza virus, 302
Hemoptysis, endemic, 997
  paragonimiasis, 998
Hemorrhage, amebiasis, 38, 45, 47
    treatment, 63
  capillary, vitamin P, 1283
  coagulin, 1248
  Ornithodorus rostratus, 1209
  snake bite, 1251, 1252
  typhoid, 520, 566
    treatment, 571
  vitamin K, 1285
  Weil's disease, 250, 251
  yellow fever, 320
Hemorrhoids, amebiasis, 50
Hepatitis, amebic, 47
    blood picture, 1479
  infectious, arsenical treatment, reaction, 292
    Weil's disease, 254
  interstitial, brucellosis, 423
Hepatomegaly, leishmaniasis, visceral, 195
Herbicides, 124
Herpes, lymphogranuloma venereum, 394
  malaria, 89
  skin test, 305
  virus isolation, 304
Herpestes griseus, snake control, 1255
Herpetomonas, culture, 1565
Herxheimer reaction, 1387
Heterodera marioni, 797
  radicicola, 796
Heterogomphus boucieri, raillietinosis, 985
Heterophyes aegyptiaca, 1003
  heterophyes, 1002, 1003
    eggs, 1003
    hosts, 1004
  incidence, 7
  nocens, 1002, 1003
  yokogawa, 1004
Heretophyiasis, 1002
  prophylaxis, 1004
  treatment, 1004
Hetrazan, filariasis, 1400
    bancroftian, 886
  loaiasis, 1401
  onchocerciasis, 918, 1401
Hexachlorocyclohexanone, typhus, 761
Hexamethylene-pararosaniline chloride, strongyloidiasis, 818
Hexylresorcinol, ancylostomiasis, 833, 834
  ascariasis, 806, 1398
  cestodiasis, 1395
  enterobiasis, 1396
  fasciolopsiasis, 1002
  hookworm disease, 833, 834
  hymenolepiasis, 1396
  necatoriasis, 833, 834
  onchocerciasis, 1401
  strongyloidiasis, 1400
  trichuriasis, 1400
Hikojima vibrio, 478
Hill diarrhea, amebiasis, 50
Hilván, 1242
Hinchazón, 1333
Hinman, Harold E., presidential address, malaria, 5
Hippelates papillipes, yaws, 269
  pinta, 227
Hippeutis, fasciolopsis, 1000
Hippomane mancinella, 1430
Hisperomys murillus cordobensis, plague, 451
Histamine, histidine, 1287
  leprosy, 1377
  sprue, 1302
  test, leprosy, 605
    technic, 607
Histidine, 1287
  requirements, 1288
Histologic technic, 1501-1509, 1510-1523
Histoplasma capsulatum, 1191, 1193
    culture, 1194
Histoplasmosis, 1191
  blood picture, 1488
  diagnosis, 1192
    laboratory, 1194
  distribution, 1192
  history, 1191
  incidence, 1192
  Leishman-Donovan bodies, 1191, 1193, 1194
  pathology, 1191, 1192
  reservoir, 1192
  treatment, 1195
Hodgkin's disease, amebiasis, 44
    blastomycosis, 1185
    sprue, 1310
Hodi-potsy, 1120, 1121
Hogs, brucellosis, 420
  trichinosis, 867
Hogue medium, 1559
Holarrhena antidysenterica, amebiasis, 58
Holophrya, shape, 14
  structure, 15
Holophytic protozoa, 16
Holozoic protozoa, 16
Hone's disease, 706
Hong Kong foot, 1441
Hoogli pattee, 1239
    symptoms, 1250
Hookworm, abdomen, 831, 832
  Ancylostoma malayanum, 837 ff
  anemia, 829, 831, 832, 1488
    cause, 828
    number of parasites, 827
    sprue, 1305
    treatment, 828, 833
  beriberi, 832
  blood loss, 828
    picture, 827, 829, 931, 1488
    pressure, 832
    transfusion, 833
  carbon tetrachloride, 833, 834

Hookworm—Cont'd
  carriers, 831
  chenopodium, 833, 834
  dermatitis, 830
  diagnosis, 832
    differentiation, of parasites, 822
  disease, 819 ff, 830, *see also* Necator *and* Ancylostoma
    blood picture, 1488
    history, 820
    malaria, 95
    pathology, 899
  distribution, 821
  eggs, 822, 823
  epidemiology, 834
  exposure, 835, 836
  foci, 835
  heart, 832
  hexylresorcinol, 833, 834
  hydroxylene, 834
  immunity, 828, 835, 1077
  incidence, 5, 8, 9, 821, 828, 835
  infection, 830
  intestines, 828, 829, 830, 831
  larva, 823, 826
  lesions, 828, 829
  life cycle, 823
  lungs, 830
  malaria, 832
  nephrosis, 832
  pathology, 829
  pregnancy, 832
  prognosis, 832
  prophylaxis, 836
    animal traps, 827
  reinfestation, 828
  resistance, 828
  skin, 830
  susceptibility, 835, 836
  symptoms, 830
    number of worms, 827
  tetrachloroethylene, 833, 834
  transmission, 834
  treatment, 833, 834, *see also* Necatoriasis *and* Ancylostomiasis
Hormodendrum compactum, description, 1166
    history, 1157
  pedrosoi, colony, 1164
    complement fixation test, 1168
    culture, 1162
    description, 1162, 1163
    history, 1157
    sporulation, 1164, 1165
    types, 1165, 1166
    variants, 1166
Hormones, cholera, 499
Horned viper, 1244
Horn-eyed viper, 1243
Horse, encephalomyelitis, 367 ff
  leishmaniasis, 187
    visceral, 197
Horseflies, leishmaniasis, 175
Housing, health problems, 1456
  Tropics, 1443, 1444
HTH, 1437
Huddleson test, brucellosis, 429
Hundskrankheit, 337
Huron, Chagas' disease, 134
Hyalomma, 1204
  dromedarii, 1213
  volgense, 1213
Hydatid antigens, 1544, 1545, 1546
  cyst, 852, 953, 954, 955, 957, 959
    abscess formation, 963
    amebic liver abscess, 49
    bones, 963
    brain, 963
    changes, 963
    circulatory system, 963
    diagnosis, 964
    kidneys, 963
    liver, 960
    lungs, 961
    pelvis, 963
    peritoneum, 963
    prognosis, 964
    prophylaxis, 965
    symptoms, 958 ff
    treatment, 964
Hydatid cyst—Cont'd
    urticaria, 960
    x-ray, 964
  disease, 952 ff
    incidence, 7
  sand, 953
  tremor, 961
  worm, *see* Echinococcus granulosus, 952 ff
Hydatidosis, *see* Echinococcosis, 952 ff
Hydatigena granulosa, 952
Hydnocarpus, *see* Chaulmoogra
  anthelmintica, 1375
  oil, leprosy, 1378
  wightiana, 1375
Hydramoeba hydroxema, adaptation, 19
Hydrobromic acid alcohol, 1521
Hydrocele, onchocerciasis, 903
  Wuchereria bancrofti, 882
Hydrophidae, venom, volume, 1247
Hydrophiidae, venoms, 1249
Hydrophis, 1239
Hydroxylene, ancylostomiasis, 834
  ascariasis, 806
  hookworm disease, 834
  necatoriasis, 834
Hygiene, 1412-1448
  air conditioning, 1444
  alcohol, 1433
  bathing facilities, expeditions, 1445
  centers, 1451
    rural, 1461
  clothing, 1438 ff
    care of, 1440
    expeditions, 1445
  diet, 1433-1436
  exercise, 1432
  feet, 1441
  foot, expeditions, 1445
  footwear, 1440
  headgear, 1440
  housing, 1443, 1444
  individual, 1432-1444
  rural, organization of services, 1451
  salt, 1419, 1436
  skin, 1441
  sunglasses, 1440
  water, 1436
    requirements, 1438
Hymenolepiasis, Acranil, 1396
  chenopodium, 1396
  Chloroquine, 1396
  diminuta, *see* Hymenolepis diminuta, 970 ff
    diagnosis, 973
    prophylaxis, 973
    symptoms, 973
    treatment, 973
  hexylresorcinol, 1396
  male fern, 1396
  nana, 965 ff, *see also* Hymenolepis nana
    chenopodium, 969
    diagnosis, 969
    prophylaxis, 970
    symptoms, 969
    treatment, 969, 1396
  treatment, 949, 969, 973, 1396
Hymenolepis diminuta, 970 ff, *see also* Hymenolepiasis
    distribution, 970
    eggs, 970, 972
    fleas, 971
    history, 970
    hosts, 971, 973
    incidence, 970
    larva, 971
    life cycle, 971
    transmission, 970, 971
    treatment, 948
  fraterna, 966
    Hymenolepis nana, 968
    transmission, 969
  nana, 965 ff, *see also* Hymenolepiasis
    autoinfestation, 966, 967
    description, 966
    distribution, 965
    eggs, 966
      examination, 1536
    fleas, 967, 968
    history, 965
    hosts, 966, 967, 968

Hymenolepis nana—Cont'd
    Hymenolepis fraterna, 968
    incidence, 7, 965
    larva, 967
    life cycle, 967
        indirect, 968
      span, 967
    number, 966, 967
    transmission, 969
    treatment, 948
Hyperplastic reactions, helminthiasis, 1548
Hypertension, 1367
  Tropics, 1426
Hyperthermia, etiology, 1417, 1418
Hypertrophy, congenital idiopathic, 1339
Hyphae spirals, dermatophytes, 1113
Hypophosphoremia, 1295
Hypoproteinemia, 1293
  rickettsial diseases, 1379
Hystrichopsyllidae, plague, 447

I

Ichthiophthirius multifiliis, 31
    adaptation, 19
Ichthyosis, tinea imbricata, 1117
Ichthyotoxicosis, *see* Fish poisoning
Ichthyotoxin, 1271
Icterus, clonorchiasis, 1013
  index, sprue, 1315
  Weil's disease, 250, 251
Idus melanothus, opisthorchiasis, 1017
Ikan sambilan, 1268
Ileitis, regional, intestines, 1313
  salmonellosis, 522
Ileocolitis, regional, shigellosis, 539
Ilhéos virus, 381
Iliac crest puncture, 1476
Imaz-Lorentz reaction, 1544
Immunization, 1442, 1443
  diphtheria, 1443
  prophylactic, 1442
  required in travel, 12
  routine, series, 11
  typhus, 1443
  yellow fever, 1443
Imperial green, *see* Paris green
Impetigo, leishmaniasis, 188
Inaba vibrio, 478, 480
Inchaçao, 1333
Indalone, onchocerciasis, 919
Indian pedal mycosis, 1138
  tick typhus, 731
  typhus, 737
Inermicapsifer cubensis, 976 ff, *see also* Inermicapsiferiasis
    distribution, 977
    eggs, 982
    history, 976
    incidence, 977, 981
    life span, 977
    number, 977
    treatment, 948
Inermicapsiferiasis, 976 ff, *see also* Inermicapsifer cubensis
  diagnosis, 982
  incidence, 977, 981
  prophylaxis, 983
  symptoms, 977
  treatment, 982
Infantile cirrhosis of liver, blood picture, 1489
Infantilism, intestinal, 1300
Infections, bacterial, 418 ff
Infectious mononucleosis, rickettsialpox, 790
    typhoid, 569
Inflammation, helminthiasis, 1547
Influenza, 330
  brucellosis, 424, 426
  dengue, 336
  distribution, 1362
  hemagglutination test, 304
  immunity, 306
  intestinal, Sonne dysentery, 537
  malaria, 94
  meningitis, salmonellosis, 525
  psittacosis, 345, 355, 357
  "Q" fever, *see* "Q" fever
  skin test, 305
  Sonne dysentery, 537
  swine, virus, 301
Influenza—Cont'd
  typhoid, 568
  vaccine, 306
  virus isolation, 304
Infusoria, 31 ff
  description, 17, 31
  nuclear structure, 16
  structure, 14
Ingua defrio, 452, 460
Insect, clarification, 1567
  fixative, 1551, 1561
Insecticide, 757, 758 ff, 761, 1441
  expeditions, 1448
  pediculosis, 1405
Insulin, scorpionism, 1230
Intestines, amebiasis, 37 ff, 51 ff
  ancylostomiasis, 828, 829, 830
  ascariasis, 801, 802, 805
  bartonellosis, 634
  celiac disease, 1313, 1314
  cholera, 483
  enterobiasis, 810
  fasciolopsiasis, 1001
  gangrene, amebiasis, 45
  histoplasmosis, 1192
  hookworm disease, 828, 829, 830, 831
  kala-azar, 195
  leishmaniasis, visceral, 195
  malaria, 91
  necatoriasis, 828, 829, 830
  obstruction, cholera, 484
  paragonimiasis, 999
  pellagra, 1358
  perforations, amebiasis, 46
      treatment, 63
    shigellosis, 539
  salmonellosis, 522
  schistosomiasis intercalata, 1066
    japonica, 1032, 1033, 1038
    mansoni, 1081, 1082, 1085, 1090
  shigellosis, 534, 539, 540
  sprue, 1312
  Trichinella spiralis, 849
  trichinosis, 856
  trichuriasis, 842
  typhoid, 512, 520, 559, 560, 562, 563
    hemorrhage, treatment, 571
    perforation, treatment, 572
  ulcers, amebiasis, 38, 47, 50
Intradermal test, *see* Skin test
Iodamoeba butschlii, *see* Iodamoeba williamsi, 21
  nucleus, 20, 21
  williamsi, 21, 25, 63
    cysts, 25
    life cycle, 26
    trophozoites, 25
Iodide, chromoblastomycosis, 1169
  leishmaniasis, 1384
  mycetoma, and sulfonamide, 1156
Iodine, amebiasis, 35, 57
  deficiency, 1297
    treatment, 1297
  food preparation, 1435
  mycosis, 1407
  pityriasis versicolor, 1123
  requirements, 1297
  solution, 1559
  stain, D'Antoni, 1554
  tinea, 1120
    albigena, 1126
    imbricata, 1119
  tropical ulcer, 664
Iodo-chloro-hydroxyquinoline, amebiasis, 57
Iodoform, tropical ulcer, 661
Iodo-oxyquinoline, amebiasis, 1389, 1390
  balantidiasis, 1393
Ipecac, balantidiasis, 1393
Iridocyclitis, African sleeping sickness, 161
Irish ague, 691
Iritis, onchocerciasis, 907
Iroko, 1430
Iron, ancylostomiasis, 1399
  deficiency, 1296
    treatment, 1296
  foods, 1296
  requirements, 1296
  sprue, 1323
  trichuriasis, 845

Irrigation, schistosomiasis, 1073, 1074
Isochrone, 1460
Iso-creosote, 1521
Isohygias, 1458, 1459, 1460
Isoleucine, 1287
Isometrus maculatus, 1226
Isoodon torosus, "Q" fever, 696
Isopentaquine, malaria, 1385
Isospora hominis, 32, 64
    incidence, 33
Itch mites, 1219
  prophylaxis, 1221
  treatment, 1221
Ixodes, 1204, 1209 ff
  bicornis, 1209
  hexagonus, transmission, 1209
  holocyclus, 1210
    "Q" fever, 696
  ozarcus, 1210
  persulcatus, 1210
  pilosus, 1210
  ricinus, 1209
    louping ill, 379
    scapularis, 1210
      DDT, 760
Ixodidae, 1209 ff
  key, 1204
Ixodids, life cycle, 1205
  parasitism, 1204
Ixodoidea, 1203
Ixodophagus, spotted fever, 757

J

Jaculidae, plague, 447
Jameson medium, 1559
Janer solution, 1560
Japanese B, *see* Virus diseases
  flood fever, 737
  river fever, 737
Jararaca, 1242
  antivenin, 1257
  ilhoa, 1242
  pintada, 1242
  venom, 1249
Jararacuçu, 1242
  antivenin, 1258
  poison apparatus, 1246
  symptoms, 1251
Jarisch-Herxheimer reaction, 290
Jasivant, Singh, and Bhattacharji stain, 1560
Jaundice, catarrhal, Weil's disease, 254
  homologous serum, yellow fever vaccination, 326
  leprosy, 601
  Palestine, leptospira, 247
  postarsphenamine, 291
  postvaccination, 326
  Weil's disease, 250, 251
  yellow fever, 320
Jeanselme parasitic achromia, 1121
Jejenes, onchocerciasis, 895
Jejuno-ileal inefficiency, sprue, 1302
Jellyfish, 1272
Jenner stain, 1560
Jersild's syndrome, 392, 398, 399
Jinja, onchocerciasis, 895
Johnson iron hematoxylin, 1560
J.S.B. stain, 1560
Jungle climate, 1415
  Ghao, 641
  rot, 1441
  yellow fever, *see* Yellow fever, jungle, 318

K

Kakké, 1333
Kala-azar, 193 ff, *see also* Leishmaniasis, visceral
  amebic liver abscess, 49
  American, 193
  blood picture, 1489
  histoplasmosis, 1191, 1193, 1194
  history, 171
  infantile, 193
  malaria, 10, 94
Kamala, cestodiasis, 1395
  taeniasis, 948
Kanabuku, 1270
Kaolin, amebiasis, 58
  salmonellosis, 528
  shigellosis, 545, 1381
  typhoid, 571
Kaomagma, shigellosis, 545
Kaopectate, shigellosis, 545
Karakurt, 1232
Karawala, 1239
Karyamoeba falcata, 21
Karyosome, 16
Katayama disease, 1029
Katipo, 1232
Kedani, 737
Kelser medium, 1561
Kenya fever, 736
Kerandel's sign, 160
Keratoconjunctivitis, onchocerciasis, 906
Keratodermia, palmoplantar, pinta, 218, 221
  plantar, 221
Keratoid yaws, 278
Keratomalacia, 1275
Keratomycosis nigricans palmaris, 1123
      diagnosis, laboratory, 1124
      treatment, 1126
Keratosis, palmoplantar, tinea albigena, 1127
  pilaris, yaws, 279
Kermes, dracontiasis, 934
Kerosene-olive oil, pediculosis, 1405
  -vinegar, pediculosis, 1405
Kerteszia, 104
  palmate hairs, 112
Khi-huen, 1126, 1127
Kidney, African sleeping sickness, 160
  amebic abscess, 49
  brucellosis, 423, 424
  cholera, 484, 485, 487, 489
  echinococcosis, 963
  fatty acid deficiency, 1289
  fixative for, 1502
  function, malaria, 85
  hydatid cyst, 963
  leptospiral diseases, 247
  methionine deficiency, 1287
  Monilia albicans, 1520
  plague, bubonic, 464
  psittacosis, 354
  salmonellosis, 521
  shigellosis, 534, 539
  stone, 1367
  trichinosis, 858
  tsutsugamushi, 744
  tularemia, 437
  typhoid, 512, 565
  typhus, 716 ff, 729
  Weil's disease, 251, 252
Kieler Doctrine, salmonellosis, 509
Kissing bug, 127
Klebsiella ozenae, 667
    complement fixation test, 682
  pneumonia, 667, 1520
  rhinoscleromatis, 667 ff
    agglutination test, 683
    antibiotics, 1410
    antigen, 682
    Koch's postulates, 668
    nose, 671
    tissue, 673
Kligler medium, 1561
Knowles and Das Gupta stain, 1561
Koatiá, 1241
Kobus ellipsorprymnus, African sleeping sickness, 158
Kofoid and Swezy medium, 1562
Kommabacillus, 479
Kopel Giemsa stain, 1562
Korthof medium, leptospiras, 239
Kourí, bile examination, 1537, 1538
Kousso, cestodiasis, 1395
Kraits, 1239
  antivenin, 1257
  symptoms, 1250
Kreuzotter, 1243
Kubalen, amebiasis, 57
Kubarsol, amebiasis, 57, 58
Kumaon fever, transmission, 1212
Kurchi bark, amebiasis, 58
Kurchine bismuthiodide, amebiasis, 58
  hydrochloride, amebiasis, 58
Kwell, pediculosis, 1405

L

Laboratory, epidemiologic, 1462
  rooms, 1501
Lachesis muta, 1243
    antivenin, 1258
    habits, 1246
    poison apparatus, 1246
    symptoms, 1251, 1252
    venom, volume, 1247
Lacráu, 1226
Lactation, fatty acid deficiency, 1289
Lactic acid, leishmaniasis, 190
Lactobacillus acidophilus, inermicapsiferiasis, 982
  casei factor, *see* Folic acid, 1280
Lactoflavin, 1277
Lactophenol, 1105, 1550, 1562
Laelaps australiensis, tsutsugamushi, 740
  echidninus, 1216
  stabularis, 1216
Laennec cirrhosis, schistosomiasis mansoni, 1092
Laffe, 1268
Lagocephalus laevigatus, 1270
Laigret and Durand vaccine, murine typhus, 755
  Fabiani, and Varques vaccine, murine typhus, 755
Lampreys, 1267, 1269, 1271
  poisonous, 1267
Lampropeltis getulus, 1255
Landouzy typhobacillosis, 568
Lane flotation, ancylostomiasis, 1537
  method, stool concentration, 1532
Langeron lacto-phenol, 1562
Larson and Levin trichrome stain, 1506
Larva migrans, 838, 839
Larvicidal oil, specifications, 117
Larvicide, pyrethrum, 119, *see also* Mosquito control
Larynx, scleroma, 678
Lasiodora curtior, 1232
Laticauda colubrina, 1239
Latrodectus geometricus, 1232, 1234
  hasselti, 1232, 1234
  lugubris, 1232
  mactans, 1232, 1233, 1234
    antivenin, 1236
    bite, blood picture, 1483
    symptoms, 1234
    treatment, 1236
  mendavodi, 1233
    symptoms, 1234
  symptoms, 1234
  tridecimguttatus, 1232
    symptoms, 1234
Lausete, lice, 761
Lazarine leprosy, 604
Leche de higuerón, trichuriasis, 845, 1400
Lecithin, malaria, 97
Lecithinase, snake venoms, 1249
Leewenhoekia australiensis, 1218
Leishman-Donovan bodies, 170
    histoplasmosis, 1191, 1193, 1194
Leishmania, 170
  American, 170 ff, *see also* Leishmaniasis, mucocutaneous
  braziliensis, 170, 172, 176
    culture, 173, 174
    transmission, 1214
    vaccination, 191
    yaws, 288
  chagasi, 172
  culture, 173, 1561, 1565, 1566, 1569
  donovani, 170, 193
    animals, natural infection, 197
    blood, 198
      examination, 1563
    bone marrow puncture, 198
    culture, 173, 194, 1567, 1571
      spleen puncture, 198
    habitat, 194
    life cycle, 197
    stain, 1561
    treatment, 1384
  infantum, 170
    transmission, 1212
  size, 14
  stain, 1560, 1562
Leishmania—Cont'd
  treatment, 1384
  tropica, 170, 191
    culture, 173, 191
    transmission, 192
    treatment, 1384
    tropical ulcer, 657
    yaws, 288
Leishmaniasis, 170 ff
  acanthosis, 185
  American, history, 170
    visceral, 193
  amino-arseno-phenol, 190
  animals, 186
  antimonials, 1384
  Antimosan, 1384
  arthropods, 175
  Atabrine, 190
  berberine sulfate, 1384
  blastomycosis, 188, 1185
  blood picture, 1489
  bouba, 188
  carbonic snow, 1384
  cat, 187
  Citellus tridecemlineatus, 187
  cutaneous, 191
    animals, 186, 187
    clinical aspects, 175
    complement fixation test, 199
    diagnosis, 187, 193
    distribution, 191
    etiology, 191
    Fuadin, 189
    history, 170
    immunity, 192
    incubation period, 192
    Neoantimosan, 189
    pathogenicity, 192
    penicillin, 193
    tartar emetic, 189
    transmission, 192
    treatment, 193
    yaws, 287
  diagnosis, 198
    laboratory, 188
  Diethylamine p-aminophenol stibinate, 200
  distribution, 176
  dogs, 186
  ecthyma, 188
  emetine, 190
  Eparseno, 190
  epidemiologic laboratories, 1462
  Fuadin, 1384
  history, 170
  horse, 187
  impetigo, 188
  incidence, 176
  iodides, 1384
  lactic acid, 190
  leprosy, 188
  lymphatic, clinical aspects, 175
  Montenegro test, 188
  mucocutaneous, 172
    clinical aspects, 175, 178
    cure, spontaneous, 177
    diagnosis, 187
      laboratory, 188
    distribution, 172
    ecthymatiform lesion, 178
    epidemiology, 176
    etiology, 172
    framboesioid, 178
    fungoid, 180
    impetiginous, 178
    incidence, 176
    incubation period, 177
    inoculation, 176
    lesion, initial, 177
      number, 179
      location, 180
    lymphatic form, 179
    mucosal form, 180
    mutilating type, 182, 183
    nonulcerative forms, 178
    papillomatous, pathology, 185
    papulotuberiform, 180
    pathogenesis, 176
    pathology, 184
    prophylaxis, 190
    serology, 188

- Leishmaniasis, mucocutaneous—Cont'd
    - skin, 183, 184
      - test, 188
    - symptoms, 178
    - transmission, 173
    - treatment, 189, 190
    - tuberiform, 178
    - ulcers, 178, 181, 182
      - pathology, 185
    - vaccination, 191
    - verrucose, 178
      - papillomatous, 181
      - pathology, 185
    - yaws, 288
  - mucosal, 180
    - diagnosis, 187
  - Neoantimosan, 1384
  - Neostibosan, 1385
  - nose, 182, 183
  - Phlebotomus, 174
  - phosphorated oil, 190
  - phosphoric acid, 1384
  - post-kala-azar dermal, 196
  - prophylaxis, 190
  - recurrences, treatment, 1384
  - saline, 1384
  - skin, *see* Leishmaniasis, mucocutaneous
    - test, 188
  - sodium arsenite, 190
  - Stibosan, 1385
  - syphilis, 188
  - tartar emetic, 1384
  - transmission, 173, 175
  - treatment, 189, 1384
    - local, 190
  - tropical ulcer, 187, 657
  - tuberculosis, 188
  - ulcers, 177, 178, 182
  - vaccination, 191
  - visceral, 193, *see also* Kala-azar
    - acute, 196
    - aldehyde reaction, 198
    - animals, 197
    - bone marrow, 195
    - Brahmachari test, 199
    - complement fixation test, 199
    - diagnosis, 198
    - distribution, 193
    - epidemiology, 197
    - fever, 195
    - formol-gel test, 198
    - history, 171
    - incubation period, 195
    - intestine, 195
    - liver, 194, 195
    - lymph glands, 195
    - Neostibosan, 200
    - pathogenesis, 194
    - prophylaxis, 200
    - Ray reaction, 199
    - spleen, 194
      - puncture, 198
    - Stilbamidine, 200
    - symptoms, 195
    - transmission, 196
    - treatment, 199, 1385, *see also* Kala-azar
    - urea-stibamine, 200
- Lendrum celestin blue-hemalum, 1507
- Leporidae, plague, 447
- Lepothrix, 1106
- Lepra reaction, 603
  - treatment, 613
- Leprazellen, Virchow's, 588
- Leprids, 595
- Leproma, 591 ff
- Lepromin test, 589
- Leprosy, 586 ff
  - acute, 590
  - allergy, 605
  - alopecia, 595, 599
  - analgesic whitlow, 601
  - anesthetic, 593, 595, 597 ff
  - antimony and potassium tartrate, 613
  - autopsy, 601
  - Bell's syndrome, 601
  - blood, Mycobacterium leprae, 602
    - picture, 1490
  - bone, 598, 601
    - lazarine, 604
  - breasts, 602
- Leprosy—Cont'd
  - calcium gluconate, 1377
  - carbonic snow, 1376
  - cauterization, 1376
  - chaulmoogra oil, 610, 1375, 1376, 1378
  - classification of forms, 587, 588
  - congenital, discussion, 586, 587
  - contacts, diagnosis, 607
  - cure, 1377
  - deformities, 597, 598
  - diagnosis, differential, 604 ff
  - diasone, 1374, 1375
  - diet, 610, 1377
  - distribution, 1432, 586
  - erythema multiforme, 590, 603, 605
    - nodosum, 605
  - etiology, 587
  - exanthematic fevers, 605
  - eyes, 601
  - face, 601
  - facies, 592
  - fever, 603
  - fluorescein, 1377
  - foot drop, 601
  - gable nail, 600
  - globi, 605
  - gold salts, 1376
  - hair, 599
  - hand, 601
    - drop, 601
  - heredity, 586
  - histamine, 1377
    - test, 605, 607
  - hydnocarpus oil, 1378, *see also* Chaulmoogra
  - hyperhydrosis, 598
  - immunology, 587
  - incidence, 586
    - problems, 1454
  - incubation period, 590
  - inflammatory, 588, 591, Table XIX, 593, 594
    - lesions, 602 ff
    - Mitsuda test, 589, 590
  - jaundice, 601
  - joints, 593
  - kidneys, 602
  - lazarine, 604
  - leishmaniasis, 188
  - leonine facies, 592
  - leper claw, 599
  - lepra reaction, 603
      - chaulmoogra oil, 611
      - treatment, 613, 1377
  - leprids, 595
  - leproma, 591 ff
    - "en nappe," 592
  - lepromatous, 588, 591, Table XIX, 596
    - Mitsuda test, 589
    - muscles, 600
    - nails, 600
    - neuritis, 597, 598
    - orchiepididymitis, 602
    - trophic disturbances, 598
    - viscera, 601 ff
  - lepromin test, 589
  - leprous reaction, treatment, 613, 1377
  - lesions, 592 ff
  - leucemia cutis, 604
  - leucine, 1287
  - liver, 601
  - lymph glands, 601
  - lymphangitis, 598
  - macules, 593
  - mal perforans plantaris, 598
  - Mitsuda test, 589
  - monkey hand, 601
  - morphea alba gravis, 594
  - Morvan's disease, 601
  - mucous membranes, 591 ff, 593
  - mutilation, *see* Leprosy, deformities
  - mycosis fungoides, 604
  - myelitis, 597
  - nails, 599
  - nerves, 597, 602
  - neural, 602
  - neuralgia, treatment, 1377
  - neuritis, 597
    - nodular colliquativa, 598
  - nodular, 588
  - nose, 593, 594
  - ovaries, 602

Leprosy—Cont'd
  pathology, 587 ff
  perspiration, 598, 599
  pinta, 228
  pityriasis versicolor alba, 1122
  preacher's hand, 601
  prognosis, 603
    lepra reaction, 603
    Mitsuda test, 589
  promin, 612, 1373, 1374
  Promizole, 613
  prophylactic treatment, 609
  psoriasis, 593
  radiculitis, 597
  rhinitis, 593
  sarcoid, 605
  sedimentation rate, 590, 603
  segregation, 609, 610
  sensation, 595
  skin, 588, 591 ff, 594, 595, 596, 598, 599
    test, 589, 607
  spleen, 601
  sterility, 602
  sulfone drugs, 1373 ff, 1377, 1378
  surgery, 609
  symptoms, 590
  syringomyelia, 605
    histamine test, 608
  temperate zones, 10
  testicles, 602
  tinea albigena, 1127
  tongue, 593
  transmission, 587, 610, 1213
  treatment, 609 ff, 1373-1378
    general, 1377
    internal, 1373-1376
    local, 1376
    symptomatic, 1377
  trophic disturbances, 598
  tropical ulcer, 657
  tuberculoid, 588, 591, Table XIX, 595, 596, 606
    diagnosis, 605
    face, 601
    lazarine, 604
    lepra reaction, 603
    Mitsuda test, 589
    muscles, 600
    nerves, 597, 598
    neural type, 602
    trophic disturbances, 598
  types, 588, 591
  ulcers, 593
    lazarine, 604
  ulnar claw, 601
  untreated, 608
  urine, 602
  visceral, 601 ff
  vitamin B_1, 1377
  vitiligo gravior, 594
  yaws, 289
Leptodera, 813
Leptopsylla musculi, Hymenolepis diminuta, 971
  plague, 447
Leptospira, 236 ff, *see also* Leptospirosis *and* Weil's disease
  agglutination tests, 240, 241
  agglutinin absorption test, 241
  akiyami, 240
    "A," 242
  andaman, 243
    "B," 242
  animal inoculation, 244
  antibiotics, 1410
  antibodies, 245, 246
  australis, 242
  antigen, 241
  antigenic structure, 240
  autopsy, 245
  autumnalis, 242
  ballico, 242
  ballum, 242
    spontaneous infection, 244
  bataviae, 241, 242
  biflexa, 245.
  blood, 243
  bovis, 243, 247

Leptospira—Cont'd
  canicola, 241, 242, 247
    animal inoculation, 244
    serology, 246
  complement fixation test, 241
  culture, 238, 1565
    resistance, 240
    sulfonamide, 244
    viability, 240
  diagnosis, 243
    serologic, 245
  filtrability, 238
  grippotyphosa, 242, 247
    variability, 243
  hebdomadis, 240, 242, 247
  icterohaemoglobinuriae, 243, 247
  icterohaemorrhagiae, 236, 241, 242, 247, 251 1519
    animal inoculation, 244
    incubation period, 251
    life cycle, 252
    reservoirs, 250
    serology, 246
    Weil's disease, 250 ff
  icteroides, yellow fever, 315, 316
  identification, 236
  isolation, 243
  javanica, 242
  mitis, 242
  morphology, 236, 237
  mukingilwa, 243
  oryzeti, 242
  pomona, 242, 247
  post-mortem material, 245
  pseudoleptospiras, 237
  pyrogenes, 240, 242
  rachmat, 242
  reservoirs, 247
  resistance, 240
  salinem, 242
  saxkoebing, 242
  schüffneri, 243
  sejrø, 242, 247
  serologic diagnosis, 245
  serology, 240
  spinal fluid, 244
    antibodies, 246
  staining, 237, 238, *see also* Krajian spirochete stain
  strains, 241, 242, 247
  swine, 247
  tissue staining, 238, *see also* Krajian stain
  urine, 244
    antibodies, 246
    isolation, 240
  variability, 243
  viability, 240
  vituloreum, 243
  water, 245
Leptospiral diseases, diagnosis, 236 ff
  symptoms, 247
Leptospirosis, *see also* Leptospira
  penicillin, 1389
  treatment, 1389
  Weil's disease, 250 ff
Lepus europeaus, plague, 451
Lethane, Sarcoptes, 1221
Lethrinus nematacanthus, 1269
Leucemia, amebiasis, 44
  cutis, leprosy, 601
Leucine, 1287
  iso-, 1287
  requirements, 1288
Leuciscus hakuensis, metagonimiasis, 1005
  rutilus, opisthorchiasis, 1017
Leucocytosis, 1478
Leucocytozoon, 80
Leucopilaea albescens, raillietinosis, 985
Levulose tolerance, malaria, 97
Liberian Institute, 2
Lice, *see* Louse
Lichen planus, yaws, 288
  scrofulosorum, leprosy, 595
    yaws, 279
Ligula mansoni, 992
Lillie, buffered formalin, 1503
Limatus, description, 104
Limnotragus spekei, African sleeping sickness, 157

Lindane, 1442
Linguatula, 1197
  porocephaliasis, 1199
Linoleic acid, 1289
    history, 1288
Linolenic acid, 1289
    history, 1288
Lipiodol, dracontiasis, 933
Lipochagoma, 143
  genial, Chagas' disease, 146
Liponyssidae, 1216
Liponyssus, 1215, 1216
  bacoti, DDT, 761
Lipotropic factor, 1287
Liquoid Roche, 1567
    leptospira collection, 243
Literature on tropical medicine, 4
Lithium antimony thiomalate, *see* Anthiomaline
Litomosoides carinii, skin tests, filariasis, 886
Liver abscess, 40
    amebic, 48
      perforation, 48
      treatment, 62
    incidence, 1368
    malaria, 94
    subphrenic, 49
  African sleeping sickness, 160, 161
  amebiasis, 40, 42, 47, 48
  ascariasis, 803, 804
  bartonellosis, 633
  biopsy, yellow fever, *see* Viscerotomy
  blastomycosis, 1182
  brucellosis, 423
  burns, yellow fever, 324
  Chagas' disease, 142
  cirrhosis, infantile, blood picture, 1489
  clonorchiasis, 1010, 1011, 1013, 1014
  damage, tartar emetic, 1063
  echinococcosis, 960
  extract, autolyzed, sprue, 1323, 1324
    pellagra, 1354
    sprue, 1317, 1323, 1324
  fascioliasis, 1019, 1021, 1022
  function, antimony, 1045
  histoplasmosis, 1192, 1193
  hydatid cyst, 960
  kala-azar, 195
  leishmaniasis, visceral, 194, 195
  leprosy, 601
  malaria, 85
  methionine deficiency, 1287
  Oroya fever, 633
  pellagra, 1358
  pipe-stem, shistosomiasis, 1086
  psittacosis, 354
  puncture, schistosomiasis haematobia, 1061
  salmonellosis, 521
  Schistosoma mansoni in, 1071
  schistosomiasis haematobia, 1053
    intercalata, 1066
    japonica, 1031, 1032, 1034, 1038, 1039
    mansoni, 1078, 1081, 1085 ff
      symptoms, 1091
  shigellosis, 573
  spots, 1120
  taeniasis, 946
  Treponema pallidum, 1518
  trichinosis, 858
  tsutsugamushi, 744
  typhoid, 512, 516, 564, 566
  Weil's disease, 250, 251
  yellow fever, 321, 322
      differential diagnosis, 324
      viscerotomy, 317
Lizards, 1271, 1272
Loa loa, 888
    eyes, 889
    incidence, 8
    key, 876
    life span, 889
    skin test, 1547
    transmission, 889
Loaiasis, blood picture, 1490
  treatment, 1401
Lobopodia, 20
Locke egg albumin medium, 1552
    serum mixture, 1552
  solutions, 1552, 1563
    Young and Van Slant, 1563
Loeffler, methylene blue, 1519
Longley, Clausen, and Tatem culture, chick embryo, 1563
Loosia romanica, 1004
Lophopodomyia, 104
Lora, 1242
Lorikeets, psittacosis, 342
Loughlin and Spitz stool concentration, 1533
Louping ill, 380
    encephalitis, 377
    symptoms, 378
    transmission, 377, 379, 1209
Louse, 1203 ff
  body, treatment, 1405
  control, 763
  crab, relapsing fever, 232
  DDT, 759, 1442
  delousing, 763
  Dipylidium caninum, 974
  Gammefane, 761
  head, treatment, 1405
  insecticides, 757, 758
  Lausete, 761
  MYL, 759, 761
  methyl bromide, 761
  NBIN, 761
  pubic treatment, 1405
  raillietinosis, 985
  relapsing fever, 231
  tularemia, 436
  typhus, 709, 710 ff
    epidemics, 711
Lovebirds, psittacosis, 351
Loxotrema ovatum, 1004
Lubisan, enterobiasis, 1396
Lucacha, 1232
Lucilia sericata, myiasis, 1200
Lugol-eosin stain, 1555
  solution, 1563
Lumbricoides vulgaris, 798
Lumpy jaw, yaws, 287
Lung, actinomycetes, 1140
  African sleeping sickness, 160
  amebic abscess, 49
  ascariasis, 805
  blastomycosis, 1182, 1183, 1184, 1185
  Chagas' disease, 138
  cholera, 485
  echinococcosis, 961
  fascioliasis, 1021
  histoplasmosis, 1192, 1194
  hookworm disease, 830
  hydatid cyst, 961
  mycetoma, 1140, 1141
  paragonimiasis, 998
  plague, 456
  psittacosis, 353, 356
  "Q" fever, 699, 700
  Schistosoma mansoni in, 1072
  schistosomiasis haematobia, 1055, 1056, 1057, 1058, 1060
    japonica, 1031, 1032, 1035, 1038
    mansoni, 1078, 1092
  strongyloidiasis, 817
  trichinosis, 857
  tsutsugamushi, 744
  tularemia, 437
  typhoid, 512, 516, 564, 570
  typhus, 720
Lungworm, virus reservoir, 301, 302
Lupani, 269
Lupus erythematosus, pellagra, 1347
  vulgaris, sunlight, 1424
    yaws, 288
Lutreolina crassicandata paranalis, Chagas' disease, 134
Lutziomyces histoporocellularis, 1178
Lutz-Splendore's disease, 1178 ff
Lycosa raptoria, 1232, 1233, 1234
    antivenin, 1236
    symptoms, 1235
Lycosocithin, snakes, 1256
Lygranum, Frei test, 404
Lymnaea, fascioliasis, 1019
Lymph glands, African sleeping sickness, 158, 161, 163
    bartonellosis, 632
    blastomycosis, 1182, 1185, 1186
    Chagas' disease, 139, 147

Lymph glands—Cont'd
    fixative for, 1502
    histoplasmosis, 1192
    kala-azar, 195
    leishmaniasis, visceral, 195
    leprosy, 601
    lymphogranuloma venereum, 391, 395
    methionine deficiency, 1288
    Oroya fever, 632
    pinta, 225
      pathology, 227
    schistosomiasis japonica, 1033, 1034
    scleroma, 679
    trichinosis, 858
    Trypanosoma cruzi, 129
    tularemia, 438
    typhoid, 512, 563
  varix, filariasis, 881
Lymphadenitis, filariasis, 877, 878, 881, 882, 884, 885
  inguinal, subacute, 387
  leishmaniasis, 179
Lymphangitis, filariasis, bancroftian, 877, 878, 881, 882, 884, 885
  gentian violet, 819
  leishmaniasis, 179
  scorpionism, 1227
  sporotrichotic, leishmaniasis, 188
  truncal, of May, 395
Lymphedema, development, 878
  filariasis, 877, 878, 881, 882, 884, 885
Lymphocytic choriomeningitis, *see* Choriomeningitis, lymphocytic
Lymphogranuloma, inguinal, 387
  -psittacosis antigen, 349
    group, 388, 389
  urethritis, 395
  venereum, 387 ff
    abscess, 390
    adenitis, 395
    animal inoculation, 389
    Anthiomaline, 405
    antibiotics, 1410
    Antigenfabre, 407, 408
    antimony, 405
    arthritis, 402
    aureomycin, 1383
    bacitracin, 1383
    blood picture, 405, 1490
    Bory chancre, 390, 393, 394, 399
    bubo, 394
    carriers, 406
    chancre, 393, 394, 400
    Chloromycetin, 406
    clinical forms, 393
    colitis, 401
    complement fixation test, 404
    convalescent serum, 407
    Deseptyl, 407
    diagnosis, differential, 402, 403
      laboratory, 402
    distribution, 387
    duodenum, 401
    elephantiasis, 392, 396, 398
    epididymitis, 398
    esthiomene, vulvar, 398
    etiology, 387
    eye, 400
    Favre's sign, 395, 398
    fistulae, 398
    Frei antigen, 407
      test, 389, 398, 400, 402, 404
    Fuadin, 405, 406
    granuloma inguinale, 414
    hemorrhage, 398
    incidence, 387
    intestine, 401
    Jersild's syndrome, 392, 398, 399
    joints, 402
    laboratory infection, 401
    lesions, 393
    Lygranum, 404
    lymph glands, 391, 395
    meatitis, 395
    meningoencephalitis, 401
    Miyagawa corpuscles, 389, 404, 405
    Neomycin, 1383
    Neostibosan, 405
    neutralizing antibodies, 404
    Ottolina reaction, 390
Lymphogranuloma venereum—Cont'd
    pathognomonic sign, 395
    pathology, 390
    prognosis, rectitis, 400
    Prontosil, 406
    psittacosis, complement fixation test, 359
    rectitis, 399, 400
    rectum, 392, 398, 399
    Reprodal, 408
    skin test, 404
    Stibial, 405
    Streptocid, 407
    sulfonamides, 389, 406, 407, 408, 1383
    surgery, 408
    symptoms, 393
      general, 402
    syphilis, 393, 394
    tartar emetic, 405
    tongue, 401
    transmission, 390
    treatment, 308, 405, 1382, 1383
    urethra, 398
    urethritis, 395
    urine, 395
    vesicular reaction of Ottolina, 390
    virus, 389
      neutralization test, 353
Lymphogranulomatosis, inguinal, subacute, 387
  inguinalis, 387
Lymphopathy, 387
Lynch medium, 1563
Lysine, 1286
  requirements, 1288
Lysins, leptospira, urine, 246
Lysol, hookworm larvae, 827

M

M 3024, Chagas' disease, 153
Macabrel, 1242
Macaca mulatta, dengue, yellow fever immunity, 335
    "Q" fever, 699
    yellow fever, 314
MacCallum macerating liquid, 1563
Macchiavello vaccine, Zinsser and Castañeda, murine typhus, 754
Macerating liquid, 1563
MacFie and Corson technic, microfilariae in skin and conjunctiva, 915
MacGregor liquid, 1564
Machoira, 1268
Machuelo, 1270
Mackerel, 1268, 1269
Macroconidia, 1104, 1114
Macrophage, 1478
Macular fevers, 721, *see also* Spotted fever
Madre buba, 272
Madura foot, *see* Mycetoma, maduromycotic, 1138, 1152 ff
    yaws, 287
Madurella, 1152
Maduromycosis, *see* Mycetoma, maduromycotic, 1138, 1152 ff
  sulfanilamide, 1406
  yaws, 287
Maduromycotic mycetoma, *see* Mycetoma maduromycotic, 1138, 1152 ff
Magdala rose, fascioliasis, 1024
Magnesium sulfate, expeditions, 1447
    scorpionism, 1229
    spider bite, 1235
    tropical ulcer, 661
Mal del pinto, *see* Pinta, 204
  morado, *see* Onchocerciasis, mal morado, 900, 901
  perferans plantaris, leprosy, 598
Malabar ulcer, 641
Malachite green, clonorchiasis, 1014
Malaria, 82 ff
  abdomen, 91
  adaptation, 86
  Addison's disease, 10
  agglutination, red cells, 85
  algid, 89
  alkaline bath, 1549
  amebic liver abscess, 49
  anemia, 1290
  Anopheles, 105

Malaria—Cont'd
  Aralen, 1385, 1387
  Atabrine, 99, 100, 101, 1385, 1386, 1387
  Barber and Komp method, stain, 1474
  benign, 87
  bismuth, 99
  blackwater, *see* Blackwater fever
    blood picture, 1491
  blood agglutination, 85
    changes, 85, 86
    chemistry, 85, 97
    picture, 97, 1490, 1491
  brain, 85, 89
  bronchopneumonic type, 90
  cachexia, 85, 92
  Camoquin, 1385
  cancer, 10
  Carbarsone, 99
  cardiac, 89
  cephalin-flocculation test, 98
  cerebral, 89
  Chloroquine, 99, 100, 101, 1385, 1387
  Chlorquanidine, 1385
  cholera, 493
  chronic, 85
  clonorchiasis, 1004
  congenital, 92
  control, 108 ff, 1447
    Bolivia, 1453
    copper sulfate, 123
    DDT, 121
    fish, 125
    Freon, 120
    Paris green, 120
    Phenothiazine, 123
    plants, 124
    pyrethrum, 118
    repellents, 123
    wildlife, 124
  culture, 1550
  debility, 91
  diagnosis, 93 ff
    differential, 94 ff
  distribution, 82, 1431
  endemic index, 93
  epidemiologic laboratories, 1462
  eradication, resolution, 5
  Escherichia coli septicemia, 9
  falciparum, 87, 90
    paroxysms, 89
  fever, 87 ff
  Field stain, 1473, 1474
  heart, 89, 90
  hemoglobinuria, 85
  herpetic lesions, 89
  history, 14
  hookworm, 832
  immunity, 96
    reaction, 1385
  importance in the United States, 6
  incidence, 6
    method of obtaining, 109
    multiple infections, 90
  incubation period, 90
  intestine, 91
  Isopentaquine, 1385
  kala-azar, 10
  kidney function, 85
  laboratory findings, 97
  latency, 90
  leishmaniasis, visceral, 198
  life cycle, 71, 84
  liver, 85
  lungs, 90
  malariae, 87, 90
  malignant tertian, 87
    treatment, 1387
  Mapharsen, 99
  mixed vivax and malariae, 87
  mosquitoes, 103 ff
    mounting, 1551
    oöcyst index, 93
  multiple infections, 90
  National Committee on, 5, 6
  ovale, 86, 90
  oxychloroquine, 1385
  Paludrine, 1385
  Pamaquine, 101
  parasites, 71 ff

Malaria parasites—Cont'd
    life cycle, 84
    morphology, 77, 78, 84
  parasitic index, 93
  paroxysms, atypical, 89
    typical, 86
  pathology, 83
  Pentaquine, 1385
  pigment, fixative, 1503
    schistosomiasis, 1087
  Plasmochin, 99, 100, 101, 1385, 1387
  prognosis, 96
  prophylaxis, 100
    chemical, 124
  pyonephrosis, 9
  quartan, 86
    and subtertian, symptoms, 91
    cycle, 88
    relapse, 92
  Quinacrine, 101, 1385, 1386, 1387
  quinine, 98, 99, 101, 1385, 1386
    dihydrochloride, 101
  quotidian, 87, 90
  recurrent, 96
  relapse, 92, 96
    rates, 97
  relapsing fever, 233
  resistance, 90
  ring forms, *see* Plasmodium, trophozoites
    hemorrhage, 85
  salmonellosis, 525
  schistosomiasis mansoni, 1089
  serology, 98
  skin, 92
  Sontochin, 1385
  sporozoite rate, 93
  spleen, 85
  splenic index, 93
  stain, 1560, 1562
    blood film, 1472
    thick drop, 1473, 1474, 1475
  survey, Barber and Komp stain, 1474, 1475
  symptoms, 86
  syphilis, serologic tests, 98
  tertian, 86
    cycle, 88
    relapse, 92
    symptoms, 91
  therapeutic abstinence, 1385, 1386
  thrombosis, 85
  transfusion, 92
  treatment, 98 ff, 1385-1387
  tsutsugamushi, 743
  typhoid, 519, 569
  vivax, 86, 90
  water balance, 85
Malassezia furfur, 1120, 1122
Malaxopsyllidae, plague, 447
Malayan typhus, 737
Male fern, cestodiasis, 1395
    echinostomiasis, 1006
    hymenolepiasis, 1396
    inermicapsiferiasis, 983
    metagonimiasis, 1005
    raillietinosis, 986
    taeniasis, 948, 951
Malignancy, amebiasis, 51
  amebic granuloma, 46
    ulcers, 39
  granuloma inguinale, 414
  helminthiasis, 1548
  schistosomiasis mansoni, 1084
  sprue, 10
  tumor, lymphogranuloma venereum, 403
Malleomyces, antibiotics, 1410
  mallei, 1195
  pseudomallei, 1195
Mallory-Heidenhain stain, 1507-1508
  phosphotungstic acid-hematoxylin, 1564
Malmignathe, 1233
Malnutrition, *see* Deficiency diseases
  dementia, 1350
Malta fever, *see* Brucellosis, 420 ff
Maman pian, 272
Mamba, 1240
  black, symptoms, 1251
  fangs, 1246
Mambo, 1269
Manchineel, 1430

Mandelic acid, typhoid, 528
Mango, 1430
Mann Dominici stain, 1508
  stain, 1564
Mano-de-metate, 1242
  -de-piedra, 1242
Man-of-war, Portuguese, 1272
Manson, amebic signpost, 43
  cestode, 991 ff
  sign, 42
Manson-Bahr, prescription, amebiasis, 62
  presidential address, 9
Mansonella ozzardi, filariasis, 871
    incidence, 8
    key, 876
Mansonoides annulifera, elephantiasis, 888
Mapanare, 1243
Mapharsen, framboesia, 293, 1388
  malaria, 99
  reactions, 290
  relapsing fever, 235, 1387
  yaws, 293, 1388
Mapharside, 293
Maracaboia, 1241
Marcussen's ointment, itch, 1221
Margaropus, 1204
Marmota, plague, 447, 451
Marseilles fever, 736
Marsupialia, Chagas' disease, 134
Massasuga, 1241
Masson fixative, 1502
  trichrome stain, 1506
Mastigodes hominis, 841
Mastigophora, 26
  description, 17, 26
  stain, 1564
  structure, 14
Matuco, Chagas' disease, 134
Maxcy's disease, 706
Mayer hemalum, 1564
    stain, 1507
  paracarmin, 1565
May-Gruenwald-Giemsa stain, 1473
Measles, 1365
  Chagas' disease, 149
  dengue, 336
  tsutsugamushi, 741
  typhus, 725
  virus isolation, 304
Meat, brucellosis, 421
  salmonellosis, 510
Meatitis, lymphogranuloma venereum, 395
Mecholyl, celiac disease, 1313, 1314
Medical supplies, expeditions, 1447
Medina worm, 927
Mediterranean littoral fever, 736
Medlar sclerotic cells, 1161, 1162
Megacolon, amebiasis, 50
  shigellosis, 539
Megarhinini, description, 103
Megaw's disease, 731
Meiostagmin reaction, 1547
Melania, metagonimiasis, 1005
  Schistosoma haematobium, 1052
Melanin, pinta, 225, 226
Melanoides, clonorchiasis, 1009
Melarsen, African sleeping sickness, 167
Melioidosis, 1195
  diagnosis, 1196
Melopsittacus undulatus, psittacosis, 351
Membranellae, ciliates, 31
Menarche, Tropics, 1427
Mengo virus, 381
Meningitis, 1365
  African sleeping sickness, 159
  cholera, 490
  incidence, 1365
  leptospira, 247
    examination, 244, 245
  meningococcic, 1366
  plague, 465
  pneumococcic, 1366
  Salmonella, 521, 525, 556
    children, 555
    septicemia, 518
    spinal fluid, 555
  streptococcic, incidence, 1365
  taeniasis, 946
Meningitis—Cont'd
  tuberculosis, 1366
    encephalitis, 373
  typhoid, 569
  typhus, 725
  virus, 379
Meningochorioido-corticoencephalitis, Chagas' disease, 143
Meningoencephalitis, 376
  African sleeping sickness, 158
  Chagas' disease, 151
  lymphogranuloma venereum, 401
  psittacosis, 350
  Salmonella, 555
Meningoencephalomyelitis, *see* Encephalomyelitis
Meningomyelitis, African sleeping sickness, 158
Meningopneumonitis, pigeon, neutralization tests, 353
Meningotyphus, 718
Menstruation, Tropics, 1427
Mepacrine, rickettsioses, 748
Mercado-Heiser, chaulmoogra, 1375
Mercurochrome, 1%, 1565
  plague, 1372
Mercury, dracontiasis, 934
  hookworm larvae, 827
  mycosis, 1407
  onchocerciasis, 1401
  pediculosis, 1405, 1406
  pinta, 228, 229
  prickly heat, 1441
  trichomycosis, 1108
Mesenteric lymph glands, sprue, 1310
    intestines, 1313
  veins, Schistosoma mansoni in, 1072
    schistosomiasis intercalata, 1064 ff, 1066
      japonica, 1029 ff, 1033, 1034
      mansoni, 1078
Mesogonimus heterophyes, 1003
  westermani, 997
Mesorprion griseus, 1269
Metabolism, basal, maintenance, 1415-1417
    normal, 1416
    sprue, 1319
    Tropics, 1425
Metagonimiasis, 1004, 1005
Metagonimus ovatus, 1004
  yokogawai, 1003, 1004, 1005
Metagonium, incidence, 7
Metaplastic reactions, helminthiasis, 1548
Metastrongylus elongatus, 301, 302
Metazoa, 14
Methione, yellow fever, 321 *footnote*
Methionine, 1287, 1288
  Weil's disease, 255
Methyl benzoate, tissue dehydration, 1504
  bromide, lice, 761
  green pyronin, Feng, 1556
Methylene blue, Loeffler, 1519
Meuse fever, 701
Mianah fever, transmission, 1205
Mice, *see* Mouse
Microcavia, plague, 451
Micrococcus castellani, 1108
  nigroscens, 1108
  tetragena, ratbite fever, 256
Microconidia, 1104, 1114
Microfilaria, 872, *see also* Dracunculus medinensis, Filariasis, 871, *and* Onchocerca volvulus, 893 ff
  blood, 1539
    technic, 884
  eye, 906
  key, 876
  nuda, 893
  onchocercoma, examination, 917
  sheath, 875
  stain, 1556, 1568
  treatment, 1400, 1401
  urine, technic, 884
Microspora comma, 479
Microsporum, classification, 1112
  colonies, 1114
  examination, 1112, 1113
  furfur, 1122
    yaws, 286
  spores, 1113

Microtomes, 1504, 1511, 1512
  knives, 1505, 1511
Microtus montebelloi, leptospira, 247
Micrurus, 1240
  antivenin, 1257
  corallinus, 1240
    symptoms, 1250
    venom, 1249
  fulvius, 1240
    symptoms, 1250
  lemniscatus, 1240
    symptoms, 1250
    venom, 1249
Midge, filariasis, 873
Mijtekoort, 737
Mikulicz cells, scleroma respiratorium, 667, 672, 673
Milibis, amebiasis, 57
Military sweating, 701
Milk, brucellosis, 420, 421
  salmonellosis, 510
  shigellosis, 534
Mimosa, tropical ulcer, 652
Miostagmin reaction, 1547
Miracil D, schistosomiasis haematobia, 1064, 1402
Missionaries, medical, College of Medical Evangelists, 4
Mites, 1203 ff, 1216
  benzyl benzoate, 1218
  Circa "42," 1218
  control, 766, 1218
  DDT, 761, 1218
  dimethyl phthalate, 1218
  encephalomyelitis, 371
  fever, 737
  hair, 1222
  Gammefane, 761
  itch, 1219
  prophylaxis, 1218
  rickettsialpox, 792
  repellents, 1218
  sebaceous glands, 1222
  sulfur, 1218
  tsutsugamushi, 740
  tularemia, 436
  virus, 300
Mitis green, *see* Paris green
Mitsuda test, 589
Miyagawa corpuscles, 389
    lymphogranuloma venereum, 404, 405
Miyagawanella psittaci, 341, 347
Moccasin, cottonmouth, 1241
    antivenin, 1257
    habits, 1244
  water, symptoms, 1252
    venom, 1249
Molds, *see* Fungi
Möller-Barlow disease, 1282
Momba, 269
Mongoose, snake control, 1255
Monilia albicans, 1520
Monkeys, dengue, 335
  psittacosis, 350
  relapsing fever, 232
  Rift Valley fever, 339
  yellow fever, 314
Monocytes, 1478
Monocystis, reproduction, 17
Mononucleosis, 1479
Monosporium, 1152
  yaws, 287
Montenegro test, 188
Montevideo Doctrine, 507
Moosebrügger, counting Trichuris in stools, 842
Morado, 900 ff
Moranyl, African sleeping sickness, 166
Morays, 1270, 1271
Morbus carcerorum, 691
  tuberculosis pedis, 1138
Morcego, 1269
Morphea alba gravis, 594
Morphine, cholera, 499
  expeditions, 1447
  shigellosis, 545
  typhoid hemorrhage, 528
Mortality rates, 1369
Morvan's disease, 601
Mosaic fungus, 1113
Moscos, onchocerciasis, 895
Mosquitoes, *see* under each name
  Aëdes, control, 1453
  Anopheles, distribution, 105
  bites, relief from, 124
  breeding, elimination, 108
    places, 114
  classification, 103 ff
  collection, 111
  control, 108, 1447
    Chara foetida, 124
    copper sulfate, 123
    DDT, 114 ff, 121, 1442
    drainage, 116
    encephalomyelitis, 370
    Eucalyptus robusta, 124
    filariasis, 887
    fish, 125
    Freon, 120
    housing, 115
    oil, 117
    Paris green, 120
    Phenothiazine, 123
    Pistia stratioites, 888
    plants, 124
    pyrethrum, 118
    repellents, 123
    water fluctuation, 117
    wildlife, 124
    yellow fever, 324, 325
  dengue, 333, 334
  eggs, preservation, 1558
  encephalitis, 379
  encephalomyelitis, 369
  filariasis, 876, 888
  hypopygium, stain, 1557
  key, 103, 104 ff
  larva, description, 117, 118
    mounting, 1551
  malaria-carrying, 103 ff
  netting, 116
  oöcyst index, malaria, 93
  preservation, 1564
  proofing, 115
  reduction, general facts, 108
  stain, 1565
  survey, 111
  virus transmission, 300
  yellow fever, 318, 319
Mossy foot, 1161
Mother yaw, 272
Moulage sign, 1312, 1313
Mountain climates, 1415
Mouse, encephalitis, 377
  encephalomyelitis virus, 370
  leptospira inoculation, 244
  lymphogranuloma venereum, 389
  psittacosis, 350
    immunity, 352
  rickettsialpox, 792, 793
  salmonellosis, 510
  sodoku, 258
  Streptobacillus moniliformis, 265
  Weil's disease, 250
Mouth, blastomycosis, South American, 1180
  pellagra, 1347, 1348
    treatment, 1355
  scleroma, 677, 678
  typhoid, 561, 562
  vitamin C deficiency, 1281
Moyocuil, 1202
Mugilidae, heterophyiasis, 1004
Muir chaulmoogra oil, 1375
Mules, encephalomyelitis, 367
Mulita, Chagas' disease, 134
Multhe vespertilio, 1269
Mumps, 1365
  hemagglutination test, 305
  skin test, 305
  virus isolation, 304
Munia oryzivora, psittacosis, 351
Muridae, plague, 447
Murrayite, 1565
Mus decumanus, plague, 447
  musculus, Weil's disease, 250
  norvegicus, Echinostoma ilocanum, 1006
    plague, 447
Muscles, beriberi, 1335, 1336
  brucellosis, 425, 428

Muscles—Cont'd
  Chagas' disease, 141
  cramps, Tropics, 1418, 1429, 1430
  emetine, 55
  fascioliasis, 1021
  leprosy, 600
  mycetoma, 1136
  sparganiasis, 994
  Trichinella spiralis, 849, 850, 851, 852, 853, 854, 855
  trichinosis, 858
    examination, 864
  typhoid, 565
Museum, arthropod preservation, 1566
  jars, sealing, 1565
  material, stain, 1564
  specimens, reclaiming, 1570
Mussurana, 1255
Mustelidae, Chagas' disease, 134
Mutilation, snake bite, 1251
Mutism, typhoid, 566
Myalgia, brucellosis, treatment, 434
Mycelium, 1102, 1103
  dermatophytes, 1113
  Epidermophyton, 1114
  racquet, 1113
Mycetoma, 1130 ff
  abdominal, 1141
  abscess, 1133
  Actinomycetales, 1149
  actinomycotic, 1149 ff
    axilla, 1144
    classification, 1132
    feet, 1135
    granules, 1146
    sclerous, 1139
    skin, 1134
    stain, 1137
  animal inoculation, 1154
  antibodies, 1155
  antibiotics, 1156 and 1156 *footnote*
  biopsy, 1154
  blood picture, 1154, 1491
  bone, 1136, 1137, 1148
    amputation, 1156
  clinical picture, 1137 ff
  clubs, 1146, 1148
    cultivation, 1148
  culture, 1154
  cystic, 1138
  diagnosis, 1145 ff
    granules, 1137, 1146
    laboratory, 1153
  distribution, 1132, 1133
  epidemiology, 1132
  etiology, 1149
  extremities, 1137 ff
  face, 1145
  fistula, 1134, 1135, 1136, 1137
  foot, 1133, 1137 ff, 1139
    incidence, 1138
    incubation period, 1138
  granules, 1134, 1137, 1145, 1146, 1147, 1148
    differentiation, 1154
    examination, 1146, 1153
  hands, 1140
  history, 1130
  immunology, 1155
  incidence, 1132, 1133
  incubation period, 1133, 1138
  iodide, sulfonamide, 1156
  lesion, initial, 1133
  localizations, 1145
  lungs, 1140, 1141
  maduromycotic, classification, 1132
    diagnosis, laboratory, 1153, 1154
    etiology, 1152
    granules, 1148
    history, 1130
    stain, 1137
  metastasis, 1136
  muscles, 1136
  neck, 1145
  nodule, 1134, 1135, 1136, 1137, 1145
  pathology, 1133
  potassium iodide, 1156
  prognosis, lung, 1141
  Russell bodies, 1137, 1148
  sclerous, 1138
  skin, 1134, 1136, 1140, 1141
Mycetoma—Cont'd
  sulfonamides, 1155, 1156
  suppurative, 1138
  symptoms, 1137
  thoracic, 1140
  tissue changes, 1136, 1137
  transmission, 1133
  treatment, 1155
Mycobacterium leprae, 586 ff, 1522, *see also* Leprosy
    antigen, 589
    blood, 602, 603
    "burned-out lepers," 608
    bones, 599
    description, 587
    diagnosis, leprosy, 605
    globi, 587
    lazarine leprosy, 604
    nerves, 597
    Promin, 613
    sarcoid, 605
    skin, 590 ff
    stain, tissue, 1521
    tissues, 587, 603, 1521
    urine, 602
    viscerae, 601
    yaws, 289
  tuberculosis, antibiotics, 1410
    stain, tissue, 1521
Mycologic technic, 1104
Mycology, history, 1101
Mycosis, 1101 ff
  antibiotics, 1406
  blastomycosis, South American, 1178 ff
  chromoblastomycosis, *see* Chromoblastomycosis
  Chrysarobin, 1407
  classification, clinical, 1106
  cutaneous, treatment, 1406, 1407
  deep, 1130 ff
    characteristics, 1106
  diagnosis, 1168
    laboratory, 1104
  distribution, 1160
  feet, *see* Mycetoma
  Fradicin, 1406, 1407, 1410
  fungoides, leprosy, 604
  Furaspor, 1406
  generalized, 1130 ff
  iodine, 1407
  laundry water, 1438
  mercury, 1407
  penicillin, 1406
  potassium, 1406
  Prodigiosin, 1406, 1407, 1410
  pyrogallol, 1406, 1407
  resorcinol, 1406, 1407
  rhinosporidiosis, *see* Rhinosporidiosis
  salicylic acid, 1406, 1407
  secondary infection, treatment, 1407
  streptomycin, 1406
  sulfanilamide, 1406
  sulfur, 1406, 1407
  superficial, 1107-1130
    characteristics, 1106
  systemic, 1130 ff
  treatment, 1406, 1407
  tropicalis, dermatophytes, 1111
  vaccine, 1406
  Whitfield ointment, 1406
  yaws, 286
Myelitis, brucellosis, 428
  leprosy, 597
Mygale, 1231
Mygalomorphae, 1231, 1232
Myiasis, 1199 ff
  brain, 1202
  Dermatobia hominis, 1202
  etiology, 1199, 1200
  flies, 1201
    larvae, 1200
  genitalia, 1201
  history, 1199
  incidence, 1199
  intestinal, 1200, 1201
  penile, 1201
  prophylaxis, 1201
  Rotenone, 1202 *footnote*
  transmission, 1199, 1214

- Myiasis—Cont'd
  - treatment, 1202
  - types, 1199
  - vulvar, 1201
- Myiopsitta monachus, psittacosis, 351
- MYL, lice, 759, 761
- Mylopharyngodoń aethiops, clonorchiasis, 1010
- Myomalacia, granulogrumous, Chagas' disease, 142
- Myositis, *see* Muscles
- Myxedema, blood picture, 1480
- Myxoma, infectious, antibodies, 299
- Myzorhynchella, description, 104

N

- Naga sore, 641, 655, *see also* Tropical ulcer
  - fusiform bacilli, 646, 647
    - pathology, 652
- Nagana, 156
- Nails, fungi, examination, 1113, 1117, 1127
  - pinta, 225
  - tinea albigena, 1127
    - imbricata, 1117
- Naja, 1239, 1240
  - antivenin, 1257, 1258
  - symptoms, 1250
  - venom, 1249
- Nanukayami, 236
- Naphthol, pediculosis, 1405
  - pubic, 1406
- Naphuride, African sleeping sickness, 166
- Natal sore, 641
- Nayuaca, 1241
- NBIN, lice, 761
- Necato, inermicapsiferiasis, 983
- Necator africanus, 821
  - americanus, 819 ff, 821 ff, *see also* Hookworm
    - Ancylostoma duodenale, differentiation, 822
    - coproculture, 1542
    - creeping eruption, 838
    - description, 822
    - distribution, 821
    - eggs, 816, 822, 823, 826
      - counts, 1535
    - habitat, 827
    - history, 820
    - incidence, 821
    - intestines, 1312
    - larva, 814, 816, 823, 826, 827
      - destruction, 827
      - rhabditiform, 814
    - life cycle, 823
      - span, 827
    - number, 827, 830
    - parasite count, 1535
    - pathogenesis, 828
    - prophylaxis, 836
    - Strongyloides stercoralis, differences, 814
    - sputum, 1540
    - staining, 1554
    - transmission, 834
  - argentinus, 821
  - suillus, 821
- Necatoriasis, 819 ff, *see also* Hookworm
  - blood picture, 1488
  - diagnosis, 1537, 1538
    - coproculture, 1542
    - larvae, 814
  - history, 820
  - intestines, 1312
- Necrosis, gangrenous, treatment, 1388
- Nemathelminthes, 795
- Nematodes, 797, *see also* under each worm
- Nematodiasis, 795
  - treatment, 1393-1395, 1396-1400, 1400 ff
- Neoantimosan, leishmaniasis, 1384
    - cutaneous, 189
  - lymphogranuloma venereum, 405
  - schistosomiasis haematobia, 1063
- Neoarsphenamine, amebiasis, 57
  - bartonellosis, 636
  - Chagas' disease, 154
  - framboesia, 292, 1388
  - pinta, 229
  - reactions, 290
  - relapsing fever, 234, 1387
  - tularemia, 1374
  - yaws, 292, 1388
- Neomycin, 1409
  - BAL, 1410
  - cholera, 498
  - efficacy, 1410
  - lymphogranuloma venereum, 1383
  - salmonellosis, 527 *footnote*
  - tularemia, 441 *footnote*
  - typhoid, 527 *footnote*
- Neoplastic reactions, helminthiasis, 1548
- Neoschoengastia nuñezi, 1217
- Neosporidium, ratbite fever, 256
- Neostigmine, spider bite, 1236
  - wasp sting, 1266
- Neostilbosan, filariasis, 1400
    - bancroftian, 886
  - kala-azar, 200
  - leishmaniasis, 1385
    - visceral, 200
  - loaiasis, 1401
  - lymphogranuloma venereum, 405
  - rhinosporidiosis, 1174
- Neotoma, plague, 451
- Nephritis, 1367
  - amebiasis, 51
  - typhoid, 565
  - typhus, 718, 729
- Nephrosclerosis, 1367
- Nephrosis, hookworm disease, 832
- Nerves, leprosy, 597, 602
- Nervous system, ascariasis, 805
  - beriberi, 1335
  - Chagas' disease, 151
  - cholera, 487
  - enterobiasis, 810
  - fascioliasis, 1022
  - Oroya fever, 627
  - plague, bubonic, 456
  - salmonellosis, 521
  - schistosomiasis, 1038
    - haematobia, 1060
  - scorpionism, 1227, 1228
  - shigellosis, 573
  - snake bite, 1249, 1251
  - sodoku, 261
  - taeniasis, 946
  - trichinosis, 857
  - trichuriasis, 843
  - tsutsugamushi, 744
  - typhoid, 566, 570
  - typhus, 718 ff, 727
  - vitamin A deficiency, 1275
    - B_2 deficiency, 1277
- Neuralgia, bee venom, 1267
- Neurasthenia, amebiasis, 51
  - tropical, 1428
- Nèuritis, bee venom, 1267
  - brucellosis, 428
  - leprosy, 597
  - nodular colliquativa, leprosy, 598
  - peripheral, *see* Beriberi
    - diagnosis, differential, 1342
  - salmonellosis, 521
  - shigellosis, 540
  - typhus, 718
- Neurocytolysins, scorpions, 1227
- Neurolysin, fish venom, 1269
  - snake venom, 1249
  - scorpions, 1227
- Neurotoxicosis, scorpions, 1227
- Neurotoxin, bees, 1267
  - lizards, 1272
  - scorpionism, 1228
  - snakes, *see* Snake venom
  - wasps, 1266
- Neutralization test, encephalitis, 374
  - psittacosis, 353
  - yellow fever, 316
- Neutralizing antibodies, encephalitis, 377
  - lymphogranuloma venereum, 404
- Neutrophilia, 1478
- New Jersey pyrethrum larvicide, 119
- Newcastle disease, hemagglutination, 305
- Nhandu-kabavu, 1231
- Niacin, 1279
  - Coramine, *see* Coramine
  - deficiency, 1434
    - dementia, 1350
    - pellagra, 1341 ff

Niacin—Cont'd
  dosage, dementia, 1350
  load test, 1357
  pellagra, 1351
    dosage, 1354
Niacinamide, *see* Niacin
Nicolas-Favre disease, 387
Nicolle, Laigret, and Durand vaccine, murine typhus, 755
Nicotinamide, 1279
Nicotinic acid, 1279
NIH swab, 1536
Nile blue sulfate, clonorchiasis, 1014
Nilodin, schistosomiasis haematobia, 1064
Nine mile fever, 695
Nitritoid crisis, 290
Nitroacridine, rickettsioses, 748
Nitrogen, *see* Blood chemistry
NNN agar, 1566
Nocard bacillus, 341
Nocardia asteroides, animal inoculation, 1154
    antibodies, 1155
    characteristics, 1151
    colonies, 1152
    sulfanilamide, 1155
  brasiliensis, characteristics, 1150
  culture, 1154
  madurae, colonies, 1150, 1151
  mexicana, characteristics, 1150
    colony, 1150
    face, 1144
    feet, 1135
    lungs, 1141
    mycetoma, knee, 1140
      scapular, 1143
    knee, 1145
    neoplasia, 1145
  paraguayensis, 1152 *footnote*
  pelletieri, 1151
    mycetoma granules, 1146
  tenuis, 1107, 1108
  yaws, 287
Nodular bodies, dermatophytes, 1113
  -scarring fever, history, 693
Noguchi-Lindenberg medium, 1565
Noguchi medium, leptospiras, 239
  -Ohira medium, 1565
Noho, 1268
Noland stain, 1565
Noller medium, 1565
Northwest ulcer, history, 170
Nose, blastomycosis, 1181
  histoplasmosis, 1192
  leishmaniasis, 182
  leprosy, 593, 594
  rhinosporidiosis, 1171
  scleroma respiratorium, 674, 675, 676 ff, 680
  yaws, 283, 284
Nosema bombycis, 14
Nosopsylla, plague, 447, 449
Notechis scutatus, 1239
    antivenin, 1258
    venom, 1249
Novarsenobenzol, dracontiasis, 934
  sparganiasis, 995
  tropical ulcer, 660, 661, 662
Novarsenobillon, relapsing fever, 234
Novatoxyl, African sleeping sickness, 166
Novy, MacNeal, and Nicolle medium, 1566
Nuraena helena, 1271
Nutritional anemia, 1290
    macrocytic, 1290
      blood picture, *see* Blood picture
      treatment, 1291
  deficiency, shigellosis, 539
  diseases, 1273 ff
  edema, 1292-1294
    beriberi 1335
    blood picture, 1486
    Coramine, 1294
    diagnosis, 1293
    hypoproteinemia, 1293
    protein requirements, 1292
    symptoms, 1292
    transfusions, 1293
    treatment, 1293
    urine, 1293
    vitamins, 1294
Nyctalopia, 1274
Nyctotherus, 31
  reproduction, 17
  size, 14
Nyssorhynchus, 103, 104
  palmate hairs, 112

O

Obermayer, antipruritic lotion, 1040
Oculoglandular syndrome, Parinaud, 400
Ofídico, 1257
Ogawa vibrio, 478, 480
Oil, larvicidal, specifications, 117
  phosphorated, leishmaniasis, 190
Olmer's disease, 736
Omentum, schistosomiasis mansoni, 1083
Onchocerca volvulus, 893, *see also* Onchocerciasis
    adult, 893
    caecutiens, 893, 903
    examination for, 915-917
    history, 893
    hosts, 894
    key, 876
    life cycle, 894, 896, 897
    mal morado, 900
    microfilaria, 893
    onchocercoma, 898, 909
    skin test, 1547
    transmission, 894, 895, 896, 897, 1207
    vector, 895, 896, 897
Onchocerciasis, 893 ff
  Bayer "205," 1401
  biopsy, 1540
  blepharospasm, 906
  blindness, 903, 904, 905, 907, 908
  blood picture, 914, 917, 1491
  chorioid, pathology, 914
  chorioiditis, 907
  ciliary body, pathology, 914
  conjunctiva, pathology, 914
  conjunctivitis, 906, 907
  cornea, pathology, 914
  cutaneous, pathology, 912
  cyclitis, 907
  diagnosis, 1541
    laboratory, 915
  dimethyl phthalate, 919
  distribution, 914
  edema, 903
  elephantiasis, 903
  endemiology, 914
  epidemiology, 914
  epilepsy, 908
  epiphora, 906
  erisipela de la costa, 901, 902
  eyes, 903-908
    examination, 917
    pathology, 913
  facies onchocercosa, 903, 905
  gentian violet, 1401
  Hetrazan, 918, 1401
  hexylresorcinol, 1401
  hydrocele, 903
  incidence, 8
  incubation period, 897
  Indalone, 919
  iris, pathology, 914
  iritis, 907
  keratoconjunctivitis, 906
  lesions, 898
  MacFie and Corson examination, 915, 916
  mal morado, 900
  mercury, 1401
  Mexican, 904
  microfilariae, examination, 915-917
  ocular, 903, 904, 905, 906, 907, 908
    atrophy, 908
    chorioiditis, 907
    cyclitis, 907
    epiphora, 906
    incidence, 904, 905
    iritis, 907
    keratoconjunctivitis, 906
    onset, 904
    pathology, 913
    retinitis, 908
    scleritis, 906

Onchocerciasis, ocular—Cont'd
    symptoms, 905
    xeroderma, 901
  onchocercoma, 898 ff
    adult tissue, 912
    color, 900
    exudative, pathology, 910
    granulomatous, pathology, 910
    hardness, 900
    location, 898
    microfilaria examination, 917
    mobility, 900
    number, 899
    pathology, 908, 909, 910, 911, 912
    sections, 900
    sensitiveness, 900
    shape, 900
    size, 900
    young tissue, 909
  optic nerve, pathology, 914
  pathology, 908-914
  Plasmochin, 1401
  prognosis, 917
  prophylaxis, 918
  pruriginous, 903
  Rutgers "612," 919
  retina, pathology, 914
  retinitis, 908
  sclera, pathology, 914
  scleritis, 906
  skin, 898, 903
    biopsy, 1540
  symptoms, 897
  tartar emetic, 1401
  transmission, 895, 896, 897, 915
  treatment, 918, 1401
  vectors, 895, 896, 897
  xenodiagnosis, 1541
  xeroderma, pathology, 903
  xerodermatous conditions, 901
    pathology, 912
Onchocercoma, *see* Onchocerciasis, onchocercoma, 898 ff
Oncomelania, elimination, 1046
  Schistosoma japonicum, 1031
Onychomycosis, yaws, 286
Opalina, 14
Ophidism, 1238 ff
Ophiotoxicosis, 1248 ff, 1250
  death rate, 1252, 1253
  prevention, 1253
  treatment, 1255-1259
Ophthalmoglandular complex, Chagas' disease, 138, 145, 147
Opilaçao, 819
Opisthorchiasis, 1015, 1017
  treatment, 1017
Opisthorchis buski, 1000
  felineus, 1015
    eggs, 1015, 1016
    hosts, 1017
    incidence, 7
    life cycle, 1017
  sinensis, 1007
  tenuicollis, 1015
Opium, expeditions, 1447
  shigellosis, 545, 575
Opsonic test, brucellosis, 429
Orange G-eosin, 1508
Orchitis, brucellosis, 425, 427
Oricana, 1242
Oriental lung fluke, 997
  sore, *see* Leishmaniasis, cutaneous leishmaniasis, 180
    tropical ulcer, 657
Ornithodorus, 1204, 1206, 1207, 1208, 1209
  DDT, 760
  "Q" fever, 696
  relapsing fever, 232
Ornithosis, *see* Psittacosis, 341 ff
  blood picture, 1492
Oroya fever, 622 ff, *see also* Bartonellosis, 615 ff
    agglutinins, 627, 632
    anemia, 622, 623, 625, 626, 632
    Bartonella in cells, 632, 633
    blood picture, 622, 623, 625, 626, 1482
      transfusions, 637
    bone marrow, 633
    diagnosis, 635
Oroya fever—Cont'd
    diet, 637
    fever, 623, 624
    formol-gel test, 626
    heart, 623
    history, 615
    immune serum, 636
    immunity, 631
    liver, 633
    lymph glands, 632
    nervous system, 627
    pain, 627
    pathology, 632
    penicillin, 636, 637
    prognosis, 635
    prophylaxis, 637
    sedimentation rate, 626
    spleen, 632
    skin, 627 ff, 632, 635
    symptoms, 622
    transmission, 1211
    treatment, 636
    urine, 627
    vaccination, 637
    verrugas, 627 ff, 634, 635
Oryzomys intermedius, plague, 451
Osmic acid, 1566
Osteomalacia, phosphorus, 1295
  sprue, 1310
  vitamin D, 1283
Osteomyelitis, salmonellosis, 521
    children, 557
  tropical ulcer, 656
  typhoid, 564, 569
Osteoporosis, phosphorus, 1295
  sprue, 1310
  vitamin C, 1282
Ostracion trigonus, 1270
Otitis media, typhoid, 566
Otobiosis, 1205
Otobius, 1204, 1205
Otocentor, 1204
  nitens, 1212
Ottolina vesicular reactions, 390
Oura, 1202
Oxychloroquine, malaria, 1385
Oxygen therapy, intestinal, shigellosis, 1381
Oxyphenarsine, relapsing fever, 235
Oxyurias vermicularis, 808
Oxyuriasis, *see* Enterobiasis, 807
Oxyuris vermicularis, 808
Ozena, scleroma respiratorium, 671, 677, 682

P

p-aminobenzoic acid, *see* Para-amino benzoic acid, 1278
PABA, rickettsioses, 747
Pacinia cholerae asiaticae, 479
Padavalmicum, 1130
Paederus, 1198
Palpebral edema, Chagas' disease, 149
Paludrine, malaria, 1385
Pamaquine, malaria, 101
Pan, filaria, 873
Panallius galeanus, plague, 451
Pancreatitis, chronic, sprue, 1309
  intestines, 1313
  Prostigmine, 1314
Pannus, onchocercal, 906
Pantomime, 330
Pantopon, typhoid hemorrhage, 528
Pantothenic acid, 1279
Papaverine, amebiasis, 61
  shigellosis, 545
Pappataci fever, 337
    blood picture, 1492
Papules, pinta, 210
Para-amino benzoic acid, 1278
Paracarmin, Mayer, 1565
Paracoccidioidal granuloma, 1178 ff
Paracoccidioides brasiliensis, 1178
    animal inoculation, 1185
    blood, 1184
    colony, 1188
    culture, 1187
    description, 1187
    examination, 1185-1188
    incidence, 1179
    variants, 1178

Paracoccidioidin, 1188
Paracolons, 554
Paradichlorobenzene, 1566
Paraffin sections, 1504, *see also* Tissue, paraffin
Paraformaldehyde trioxymethylene, 120
Parafossarulus striatulus, clonorchiasis, 1009
Paragonimiasis, 998, 999
  complement fixation test, 1544
Paragonimus kellicotti, 997
    cysts, 998
    eggs, 999
    hosts, 998
    sputum, 999, 1540
  westermani, 997 ff
    cysts, 998
    distribution, 997
    eggs, 998, 999
    history, 997
    hosts, 998
    incidence, 8
    life cycle, 998
    metaplastic reaction, 1548
    sputum, 998, 999, 1540
    transmission, 998
Parakeets, psittacosis, 341, 342, 350, 351
Paralysis, beriberi, 1336
  fish poisoning, 1269, 1271
  Ornithodorus gurneyi, 1209
  poliomyelitis, 1366
  snake bite, 1250, 1251, 1252
  tick, 1210, 1211, 1212, 1213
  transmission, 1210
Paramecium, structure, 15
Parametritis, salmonellosis, 521
Paramycetoma, 1145
Parangi, 269
Paraponera clavata, 1198
Parasitic index, malaria, 93
Parasitism, arthropods, 1197
Parasitoidea, 1216
Parathelphusa, paragonimiasis, 998
Parathyroid disease, intestines, 1313
Paratyphoid, *see also* Salmonellosis, 507 ff, *and* Salmonella
  bacillus, synonyms, 508
  typhoid, differentiation, 568
  vaccination, 1442
Paresis, African sleeping sickness, 158
  malaria induction, strains, 83
Parinaud oculoglandular syndrome, 400
Paris green lime mixture, 121
    mosquito control, 120, 1447
    snail elimination, 1046
Parkinson's disease, vitamin B_6, 1278
Paroquets, psittacosis, 351
Parotitis epidemica, 1365
  shigellosis, 540
Paroxyl, Chagas' disease, 154
Parrot fever, *see* Psittacosis, 341 ff
    psittacosis, 350, 351
  tongue, 720
Parrotlets, psittacosis, 351
Passer domesticus, psittacosis, 351
Pasteurella, antibiotics, 1410
  pestis, 444 ff, *see also* Plague
    description, 446
    fleas, 449
    plague diagnosis, 467
      pneumonia, 453, 464
      streptomycin, 468
      transmission, 1209, 1212, 1213
      urine, 464
  tularense, *see* Bacterium tularense *and* Tularemia, 436 ff
    transmission, 1207, 1208, 1210, 1211, 1212
P.A.T., *see* Tartar emetic
Patek, 269
Patoquilla, 1242
Pavitrine, amebiasis, 61
Pé musgoso, 179
  verrucoso, 179
Pectinate bodies, dermatophytes, 1113
Pediculoides ventricosus, 1197, 1218
Pediculoididae, 1218 ff
Pediculosis, treatment, 1405
Pediculus capitis, railietinosis, 985
    trench fever, 701
  corporis, trench fever, 701
Pediculus—Cont'd
  humanus, 1197
  vestimenti, raillietinosis, 985
Pedipalpida, 1222
Pedraia, 1110, 1111
Pelamis platurus, 1239
Pellagra, 1341 ff
  absorption defects, 1344
  achlorhydria, 1358
  alcoholism, 1343
  amebiasis, 1355, 1356
  blood chemistry, 1357
    niacin, 1357
    picture, 1357, 1491, 1492
    transfusions, 1355
  butterfly lesions, 1347
  collar of Casal, 1347
  coproporphyrin, 1357
  Coramine, 1351
  corn, 1342
  dementia, 1350
    treatment, 1356
  dermatitis, 1347, 1358
    treatment, 1355
  diagnosis, differential, 1342
    laboratory, 1356
    seasonal incidence, 1346
  diarrhea, 1348, 1349
    treatment, 1355
  diet, 1342, 1343, 1351, 1352
    geriatrics, 1349, 1350
    recommended daily allowances, 1353
    reducing, 1344
    severe cases, 1355
    unbalanced, 1344
  distribution, 1344, 1345
  eczema, 1358
  erythema multiforme, 1358
  etiology, 1341
    predisposing causes, 1342
  food supply, 1342
  fungus infection, 1347
  gastric analysis, 1357
  geriatrics, 1349
  glossitis, 1347, 1348
    treatment, 1355
  glucose, 1343, 1344
  history, 1341
  incidence, 1343, 1344, 1345
    seasonal, 1346
  intestines, 1313, 1358
  laboratory findings, 1356, 1357
  lesions, 1347
  liver, 1358
    extract, 1354
  lupus erythematosus, 1347
  magnesium sulfate, 1355
  mouth, 1347, 1348
    treatment, 1355
  niacin, 1351
    dosage, 1354
  obesity, 1349
  pathology, 1357, 1358
  penicillin, 1355
  pregnancy, 1343
  prevention, 1351
  prognosis, 1351
  prophylactic type, 1352
  prophylaxis, 1343
  protein hydrolysate, 1344
  saline, 1355
  severe, 1354, 1355
    moderately, 1352, 1354
  sine pellagra, 1348
  skin, 1347, 1358
  sprue, 1309
  stomach, 1348, 1358
  stools, 1349, 1357
  subclinical, 1352
  sulfathiazole, 1355
  surgery, glucose, 1343, 1344
  symptoms, 1341, 1342, 1345-1351
    triad, 1346
  syndrome, 1342
  therapeutic trial, 1346
  tongue, 1347, 1348, 1349
  treatment, 1351-1356
    dementia, 1350
  types, 1352

Pellagra—Cont'd
  urine, F_2, 1356, 1357
    niacin, 1357
  Ventriculin, 1354
  vitamin B, 1354
    deficiencies, 1341, 1342
  weakness, 1349
    treatment, 1356
  weight loss, 1349, 1350
  wheat germ, 1354
  yeast, 1352, 1354
Pellieterine, cestodiasis, 1395
  taeniasis, 948, 951
Pellizari bodies, scleroma respiratorium, 672
Peludo, Chagas' disease, 134
Pelvis, echinococcosis, 963
  hydatid cyst, 963
  inflammation, salmonellosis, 519
  schistosomiasis haematobia, 1054
Penicillin, 1408
  allergy, 1408
  amebiasis, 59, 60
    liver abscess, 62
  bartonellosis, 636, 637, 1379
  brucellosis, 433
  Chagas' disease, 154
  efficacy, 1410
  framboesia, 295, 1388
  fuso-spirillary infections, 1388
  leishmaniasis, cutaneous, 193
  leprosy, 614
  leptospirosis, 1389
  mycetoma, 1156
  mycoses, 1406
  Oroya fever, 636, 637
  pellagra, 1355
  pinta, 229, 1388
  plague, 468
  psittacosis, 358
  reactions, 1408
  relapsing fever, 235, 1387
  rickettsioses, 747
  salmonellosis, 526
  spirochetosis, 1389
  spotted fever, 747
  sulfonamides, 1410
  tropical ulcer, 662-664
  tularemia, 441
  typhoid, 526
  typhus, 747
  verruga peruana, 1379
  yaws, 295, 1388
Pentamide, African sleeping sickness, 165, 167
Pentaquine, amebiasis, 58
  malaria, 1385
Pentarsenol, trichuriasis, 845
Pentatrichomonas, 28
Peramys domesticus, plague, 451
Perch, 1268, 1269
Perical, 1130
Perimetritis, salmonellosis, 521
Periodicals, tropical medicine, 4
Periplaneta americana, hookworm, 823
  Raillietina madagascariensis, 985
Periproctitis, amebiasis, 50
Peritoneum, ascariasis, 801
  echinococcosis, 963
  hydatid cyst, 963
Peritonitis, amebiasis, 45, 47
    liver abscess, 40
  ascariasis, 802
  shigellosis, 534
  tuberculosus, salmonellosis, 525
  typhoid, 563
Perleche, 1348
Permanganate, balantidiasis, 1393
  food preservation, 1435
  shigellosis, 545
  snake bite, 1256
  tropical ulcer, 661
Perneiras, 1333
Pernicious anemia, *see* Anemia, pernicious
Peromyscus, plague, 451
  Weil's disease, 253
Perspiration, 1418
  heat sickness, 1429
Pertussis, 1364
Peste mitigada, 452
Pestis inguinaria, 444
  minor, 460

Petechial fever, *see* Typhus, murine
Petrels, psittacosis, 342, 351
Petroleum jelly, pediculosis, 1405
  pediculosis, 1406
Petromyzon fluviatilis, 1269
  marinus, 1271
Pfeiffer's phenomenon, 492
Phagadena, tropical sloughing, 641
Phagedenic ulcer, *see* Tropical ulcer, 641 ff
Phagocytes, 1477
Pharynx, fascioliasis, 1021
Phenol, snail elimination, 1074
Phenothiazine, dracontiasis, 935
  enterobiasis, 1396
  flies, 1201
  mosquito control, 123
Phenylalanine, 1287
  requirements, 1288
Phenyl-cellosolve, pediculosis, 1405
Phenylketonuria, 1287
Phialophora verrucosa, complement fixation test, 1168
    description, 1166
    history, 1157
    reproduction, 1167
Philippine plancha, chaulmoogra injection, 1376
Phlebitis, typhoid, 564
Phlebotomus, bartonellosis, 619, 620
  bite, defense against, 191
  classification, 620
  DDT, 637
  description, 620
  fever, 337 ff
    blood picture, 1492
  larva, eradication, 190
  Leishmania donovani, 196
  leishmaniasis, 173, 174, 175, 192
    visceral, 197
  pappatasii, sand-fly fever, 337
Phoorsa, 1244
  antivenin, 1257
  venom, 1249
Phormia regina, myiasis, 1200
Phormictopus carcerides, 1234
Phosphatase, 1295, 1296
  sprue, 1314
Phosphoric acid, leishmaniasis, 1384
Phosphorus deficiency, 1295, 1296
  foods, 1295
  metabolism, vitamin D, 1284
  normal, 1295
  requirements, 1295
  sprue, 1303, 1314
Photophthalmia, 1423-1425
Phthalyl sulfacetimide, cholera, 497, 499
    prophylaxis, 501
    salmonellosis, 527
    shigellosis, 544, 577 *footnote*, 1380
    typhoid, 527
  sulfathiazole, shigellosis, 1380
Phthirus pubis, relapsing fever, 232
Physa cubensis, fascioliasis, 1019
Physalia, 1272
Physopsis, Schistosoma haematobium, 1052
  fascioliasis, 1019
Pian, *see* Yaws, 269 ff
Picahuyes, 1198
Piche, Chagas' disease, 134
Picrocarmine, 1566
Picta, 1242
Piedra, black, 1108-1111
    diagnosis, 1111
    distribution, 1109
    epidemiology, 1109
    etiology, 1110
    history, 1109
    symptoms, 1109
    treatment, 1111
  definition, 1108
  differentiation of types, 1109
  distribution, 1110
  white, 1109, 1110
Piedraiae, 1110
Pigeons, psittacosis, 342, 351
Pigs, trypanosomes, 158
Pila luzonica, Echinostoma ilocanum, 1006
Pimelodus maculatus, 1268
Pinareño, 706

- Pinta, 204
  - aortitis, 225
  - arsenicals, 229
  - arsphenamine, 229
  - bismuth, 229
  - complement fixation test, 228
  - crossed pintos, 219
  - diagnosis, 228
  - distribution, 207
  - dopa-oxydase reaction, 225, 226
  - dyschromia, 225
    - phase, 219
  - epidemiology, 206
  - etiology, 205
  - face, 223
  - feet, 219 ff, 225
  - fever, 731
  - generalized, 222
    - period, 214
  - hands, 219 ff, 224
  - history, 204
  - incubation period, 210
  - keratodermia, palmoplantar, 218, 221
    - plantar, 221
  - large-plaque, 213
  - latent, 219
  - legs, 224
  - lesions, atrophic, 227
    - experimental, 213
    - initial, 210, 213, 226
    - large-plaque, 213
    - later phase, 226
    - lichenoid, 212
    - pintids, *see* Pintids
    - psoriasiform, 211
    - trichophytoid, 212
  - leucomelanoderma of vitiligo, 219
  - lichenoid, 212
  - lymph glands, 214, 225
    - pathology, 227
  - melanin, 225, 226
  - nails, 225
  - neck, 223
  - neoarsphenamine, 229
  - papules, 210
  - pathology, 225 ff
  - penicillin, 229
  - pigmentation, *see* Pinta skin, 225
  - pintids, *see* Pintid, 214, 216
  - pintogenous zones, 206, 207, 208
  - pintoid syndromes, 228
  - pityriasis versicolor alba, 1122
  - primary, 210
  - prognosis, 229
  - prophylaxis, 229
  - pruritus, 213, 225
  - psoriasiform, 211
  - salvarsan, 229
  - secondary infection, 214
  - serologic reactions, 209
  - serology, 228
  - skin, 210, 215, 219, 221, 222, 223, 224, 225
    - later phase, 218
  - symptoms, 209
  - tinea albigena, 1127
  - transmission, 207, 227
  - treatment, 228, 1388
  - trichophytoid, 212
  - trunk, 221 ff, 223
  - vector, 227
- Pintids, 214, 216
  - cure, 218
  - leproid, 218
  - number, 218
  - palmar, 217
  - pathology, 226
  - shape, 217
  - size, 216
  - syphiloid, 218
  - treponemata, 227
- Pintos, crossed, 219
- Pinworm, 807 ff, *see also* Enterobiasis
- Piramutana blochii, 1268
- Pirenella conica, Heterophyes heterophyes, 1004
- Piroplasma donovani, 170
- Piroplasmosis, bovine, transmission, 1210
- Pisa disease, 731
- Pistia stratioites, Mansonia, 888
- Pit vipers, 1240-1243
- Pityriasis rosea, pinta, 228
    - yaws, 288
  - versicolor, 1120-1123
    - alba, 1121
    - diagnosis, laboratory, 1122
    - distribution, 1121
    - flava, 1121
    - incubation period, 1121
    - symptoms, 1121
    - tinea nigro-circinata, 1120
      - tropica, 1120
    - treatment, 1123
    - yaws, 286
- Plague, 444 ff
  - acridine, 1372
  - ambulatory, 460
    - bubo, 462
  - angina, 462
  - antiplague serum, 467
  - ANTU, 469
  - aphasia, 465
  - ataxia, 465
  - aureomycin, 1372
  - bacteriophage, 467, 1372
  - benign, 460
  - blindness, 465
  - blood picture, 1492
  - bubo, 460, 461
    - localizations, 462
  - bubonic, 454 ff
    - blood picture, 456, 1492
    - bubo, 460, 461
      - localizations, 462
    - carbuncle, 460
    - complications 464
    - delirium, 457
    - facies, 457
    - fever, 455
    - gastrointestinal symptoms, 456
    - heart, 456
    - incidence, 453
    - incubation period, 454
    - kidney, 464
    - lungs, 456
    - mental symptoms, 457
    - nervous system, 456
    - pathology, 453
    - primary, 454
    - prognosis, 464
    - sensory changes, 457
    - skin, 457, 460
    - symptoms, 454
    - tongue, 456
    - treatment, 1372
    - urine, 464
  - cachexia, 459
  - cadavers, disposal, 470
  - carbuncle, 458, 459, 460
  - Chloromycetin, 1372
  - chronic, 465
  - clinical picture, 453
  - control, 468
  - cutaneous, 457, 458, 459, 460
  - DDT, 469
  - dementia, 465
  - diagnosis, 465, 466 ff
  - distribution, 445, 451
  - ecchymoses, 460
  - ecology, 447
  - edema, 462
  - epidemiologic laboratories, 1462
  - epidemiology, 447, 449
  - epizootics, 450
  - etiology, 446
  - experimental, 452
  - facies, 464
  - fever, multiglandular, 462
    - therapy, 1372
  - fleas, 447, 449
    - control, 469
  - foci, 445, 446
  - fumigation, 468
  - Gammexane, 469
  - gangrene, 465
  - gastrointestinal, 465
  - history, 444
  - hosts, 447, 451
  - immunity, 465
  - immunization, 12
  - incidence, 447, 448 ff, 451, 1435

Plague—Cont'd
  macroclimate, 448
  meningitis, 465
  mercurochrome, 1372
  microclimate, 449
  pathology, 452
  penicillin, 468
  petechiae, 460
  pneumonia, bubonic, 456
    fever, 455
    incidence, 453
    pathology, 453
    primary, 466
    secondary, 464
    transmission, 450
  primary, 454
  prognosis, 465, 466, 467
  prophylaxis, 468
  rats, 448, 449
    control, 468, 469
    fumigation, 468
  repellents, 469
  seasons, 448
  secondary, 454
  septicemia, 464
    fever, 455
    incidence, 453
    primary, 465
      diagnosis, 466, 467
  serum therapy, 468
  shigellosis, 1381
  "silent" epizootics, 449
  skin, 460
  smallpox, 460
  squirrels, 450, 451
  streptomycin, 468, 1372
  sulfonamides, 467, 1372
  sylvatic, transmission, 450
  symptoms, 454, 465, 466
  tonsillar, 462
  transmission, 444, 449, 451, 466, 1209, 1212, 1213, 1216
  treatment, 467, 1372
  typhoid form, 465
  typhus, murine, 765
  ulcer, 460
  vaccination, 469, 1443
  variola, 460
  vectors, 447, 451 *see also* Plague, transmission
    eradication, 468, 469
  without buboes, 465
  yellow fever, 465
Planaria latiuscula, 1018
Planorbis boissyi, distribution, 1073, 1074
    Schistosoma mansoni, 1072
  caenosus, fasciolopsiasis, 1000
  dufouri, Schistosoma haematobium, 1052
  Schistosoma mansoni, 1072
Plants, poisonous, 1430
Plasma, cholera, 496
  proteins, sprue, 1314
  rickettsioses, 745, 1379
  salmonellosis, 527
  shigellosis, 543
  typhoid, 527, 571
  volume, Tropics, 1466
Plasmochin, malaria, 99, 100, 101, 1385, 1387
  onchocerciasis, 1401
Plasmodia, 71 ff, *see also* Plasmodium
  stain, 1560, *see also* Malaria stain
Plasmodium, birds, 79
  elongatum, 73
  exoerythrocytic stage, 73
  falciparum, 76, 77, 78, 79, 84
    blackwater fever, 85, *see* Blackwater fever
    febrile reaction, 79, 87
    life cycle, 71, 72, 84
    morphology, 77, 78, 84
    number, 90
    strains, 82
    therapeutic abstinence, 1385
  gallinaceum, 73, 80
  gametocytes, 72, 73, 77, 84
  Haemaproteus, 80
  history, 71
  inui, 79
  juxtanucleare, 80
  knowlesi, 79
Plasmodium—Cont'd
  kochi, 79
  Leucocytozoon, 80
  life cycle, 71, 84
  malariae, 77, 78, 84
    febrile reaction, 78, 86, 87
    life cycle, 71, 84
    morphology, 77, 78, 84
    number, 90
    strains, 82
  mammals, 79
  merozoites, 72, 73, 74, 77, 84
  oöcysts, 72, 73, 74, 78, 84
  oökinete, 72, 73, 84
  ovale, 76, 79
    febrile reaction, 86, 87
    life cycle, 71
  pre-erythrocytic cycle, 73
  reptiles, 79
  ring forms, *see* Plasmodium, trophozoites and schizonts
  schizonts, 72, 73, 77, 78, 84
  species, 71
  sporocysts, 72, 73, 78
  sporozoites, 72, 73, 78
  strains, 82
  thick drop, 78, *see also* Thick drop, malaria
  Toxoplasma, 81
  trophozoites, 72, 73, 77, 78, 84
  vivax, 74-77, 78, 84
    blackwater fever, 85 *see also* Blackwater fever
    exoerythrocytic forms, 73
    febrile reaction, 75, 86, 87
    immunity, 1385
    life cycle, 71, 84
    morphology, 77, 78, 84
    number, 90
    racial resistance, 83
    Schüffner dots, 75
    strains, 82, 83
  zygote, 72, 73, 78
Plasmoma, lymphogranuloma venereum, 390
Plaster of Paris, tropical ulcer, 658, 659
Platyhelminthes, 938 ff
Plecoglossus altivelis, metagonimiasis, 1005
Plotosus anguillaris, 1268
Pneumonia, 1363
  amebic liver abscess, 49
  atypical, psittacosis, 342, 355, 357
  cholera, 485
  death rate, 1363
  incidence, 1363
  paragonimiasis, 998
  plague, *see* Plague pneumonia
  primary atypical, treatment, 309
  psittacosis, 354, 356, 357
    atypical, 342, 355, 357
  Salmonella, children, 555
  Strongyloides, 817
  trichinosis, 857
  tsutsugamushi, 742
  tularemia, 437
  typhoid, 520, 564, 568
  typhus, 720
  virus, hemagglutination, 305
Pneumonitis, diaporica, 695 ff
  feline virus, size, 348
  mouse, neutralization tests, 353
  pigeon, neutralization tests, 353
  psittacosis, 341, 356, 357
    guinea pigs, 350
  "Q" fever, 697, 698
Pneumotyphus, psittacosis, 341
Podadora, 1233
Poephila, psittacosis, 351
Pogonomyrmex, 1198
Poisoning, arthropods, 1198
  bees, 1266
  centipedes, 1265
  fish, 1270, 1431
  plants, 1430
  snakes, 1431
  wasps, 1265
Poliomyelitis, 299, 300, 1366
  antibodies, 299
  brain, 376
  encephalitis, 373
  pathology, 376
  symptoms, 373

Poliomyelitis—Cont'd
  vaccination, 307
  virus isolation, 304
Pollen grains, 796, 797
Polycephalus, 952
Polygenis, plague, 451
Polymastiginia, 26
Polymethylnaphthalene-DDT mixture, 122
Polymixin D, 1409
  efficacy, 1410
  salmonellosis, 527 *footnote*
  typhoid, 527 *footnote*
Polynucleosis, 1478
Polyposis, shigellosis, 539
Polysarcus westermani, 997
Polyvinyl alcohol fixative, 1566
Pomacea luteostoma, paragonimiasis, 998
Pomatiopsis lapidaria, paragonimiasis, 998
Pomegranate, cestodiasis, 1395
  taeniasis, 948
Pompanos, 1269
Ponceau-fuchsin stain, 1506
Population density, 1451, 1452, 1456
Poradenitis, 387
Poradenolymphitis, 387
Porgies, 1269
Pork tapeworm, *see* Taenia solium, Taenias solium, *and* Cysticercosis
  trichinosis, examination, 864
Porocephaliasis, 1199
Portuguese man-of-war, 1272
Potamon, paragonimiasis, 998
Potassium antimony tartrate, *see* Tartar emetic
  bismuth tartrate, yaws, 294
  cholera, 495
  dichromate solution, sp.gr. 1.35, 1566
  hydroxide, 10%, 1567
  iodide, mycetoma, 1156
  malaria, 97
  mycosis, 1406
  permanganate, *see* Permanganate
  sodium bismuthotartrate, yaws, 294
Poultry, salmonellosis, 510, 511
Prairie dogs, relapsing fever, 232
"Precedence," vaccination, typhus, 756
Precipitin test, cysticercosis, 1545
    echinococcosis, 1545
    trichinosis, 863, 1545, 1546
Prefect gland, chagasic adenopathy, 140
Pregnancy, anemia, 1290
  pellagra, 1343
  protein requirements, 1293
Premunition, 828
Preserving fluids, stools, 1525
Preventive medicine services, organization, 1451
Price-Jones curve, 1480
Prickly heat, treatment, 1441
Procain, brucellosis, 434
Prodigiosin, 1410
  blood flagellates, 1410
  mycoses, 1406, 1407
Proglottid staining, 1554
Promin, chemistry, 1373
  lepra reaction, 603
  leprosy, 612, 1373, 1374
Promizole, chemistry, 1373
  leprosy, 613
Prontosil, bartonellosis, 636
  lymphogranuloma venereum, 406
Propamidine, African sleeping sickness, 165, 167
Prophylactic immunization, 1442
Prostigmine, pancreatic disease, 1314
Protein deficiency, 1292
    intestines, 1313
  hydrolysate, pellagra, 1344
  metabolism, sprue, 1319
  normal, 1293
  requirements, 1292, 1434
Proteolysin, bees, 1267
  fish venom, 1269
  scorpions, 1227
  snake venom, 1249, 1250
  wasps, 1266
Proteroglyphodonts, 1238, 1239, 1240
Proteus, *see* Weil-Felix reaction
  aureomycin, 1409
  examination, 1528
Protozida, amebiasis, 57
Protozoa, characteristics, 14
  classification, 17
  coelozoic, 19
  cysts, 18, 19
    concentration, 1533
    stain, 1555, 1559
  cytozoic, 19
  D'Antoni iodine stain, 1554
  ecology, 18
  ectoparasites, 19
  endoparasites, 19
  fixation, 1556, 1557
  general considerations, 14
  Hardy and Watt swab, 1524, 1525
  history, 14
  histozoic, 19
  hosts, 17
  importance, 19
  intestinal, 20 ff
    fixative, 1566
  motility, 16
  naked, 15
  Neomycin, 1409
  nourishment, 16
  nuclear structure, 16
  nucleus, types, 15, 16
  reproduction, 16
  shape, 14
  size, 14
  stain, 1560
  stool examination, 1526, 1527
  structure, 14
  trophozoites, 18
Pruritus, Circa "42," 1218
  pinta, 225
  Sarcoptes scabiei, 1220
Pseudechis porphyriacus, 1239
Pseudoboa cloelia, 1255
Pseudocerastes persica, 1243
Pseudoleptospira, 237
Pseudolopex culpeus, Chagas' disease, 134
Pseudomonas, aureomycin, 1409
  aeruginosa, tropical ulcer, 650
Pseudomycetoma, 1145
Pseudoparasites, 796, 797
Pseudodopia, 16
Pseudorhabditis stercoralis, 813
Pseudoscarus, 1269
Pseudosuccinea, fascioliasis, 1019
Pseudothelphusa iturbei, paragonimiasis, 998
Pseudotubercles, schistosomiasis mansoni, 1079
Pseudotyphoid, 737
Pseudotyphus, tropical, 737
Psilosis, 1299 ff
Psittacosis, 341 ff
  adrenals, 354
  agglutination test, 353
  agglutinins, cold, 359
  animals, 350
    inoculation, 250
  antibiotics, 1410
  antibodies, agglutinins, 353
    neutralizing, 352
  antigen, 349
    immunity, 352
  birds, 343, 350
  blood picture, 356, 1492
  brain, 354
  canaries, 350, 351
  carriers, human, 352
    prevention, 358
  chickens, 351
  clinical symptoms, 355
  complement fixation test, 353, 359
  conures, 350, 351
  cultures, 348
  diagnosis, 352, 353
    differential, 357
    laboratory, 358
  distribution, 343, 345
    in body, 349
  ducks, Pekin, 351
  elementary bodies, 347
  epidemicity, 343
  epidemiology, 344
  etiology, 347
  fever, 355
  finches, 350, 351

Psittacosis—Cont'd
  fulmar, 351
  gastrointestinal tract, 356
  gophers, 350
  guinea pigs, 350
    immunity, 352
  hamsters, 350
  heart, 354
  history, 341
  immunity, 351
    active, 352
    animals, 352
  immunization, 360
  incidence, 345, 346
  inclusion bodies, 347
  incubation period, 355
  influenza, 345
  kidneys, 354
  liver, 354
  lovebirds, 351
  lungs, 353, 356
  -lymphogranuloma antigen, 349
    group, 388, 389
  monkeys, 350
  mouse, 350
    immunity, 352
  neutralization test, 353
  parakeets, 350, 351
  paroquets, 351
  parrot, 350, 351
  parrotlets, 351
  pathology, 353
  petrel, 351
  pigeons, 351
  pneumonia, 356
  pneumonitis, 356
  post-mortem findings, 353
  prevention, 359
  prognosis, 357
  prophylaxis, 359
  pulse, 355, 356
  rabbits, 350
  rats, 350
  relapses, 356
  ricebirds, 351
  skin test, 353
  sparrows, 351
  spinal cord, 354
  spleen, 354
  squirrels, 350
  susceptibility, 350
  symptoms, 355
  toxin, 349
  transmission, 342, 343, 345, 346, 350, 351
    human-to-human, 346, 347
  treatment, 357
  vectors, 342
  virus, 343, 345, 347 ff
    antigenic structure, 349
    birds, distribution, 349
    blood, 349
    cultivation, 348
    isolation, 304, 358
    resistance, 348
    tissues, 349
    toxin, 349
    virulence, 349
Psoriasis, leprosy, 593
  yaws, 288
Psorophora, 104
Psychiatric problems, Tropics, 1428
Psychoneurosis, taeniasis saginata, 946
Psychosis, incidence, 1368
  pellagra, *see* Dementia, pellagra
Pterygia, 1423
Puerto Rico School of Tropical Medicine, 3
Puff adder, *see* Adder
Puffers, 1270
Pulex irritans, Dipylidium caninum, 976
    Hymenolepis diminuta, 971
      nana, 967
    plague, 450
    raillietinosis, 985
Pulicidae, plague, 447
Pulse rate, heat sickness, 1429
    Tropics, 1426
Pumpkin seeds, taeniasis, 948
Purpura, brucellosis, 425, 428
Purru, 269
Puru, 269
Purú-purú, pinta, 208
Pus formation, 1477, 1478
P.V.A. fixative, 1566
Pyelitis, malaria, 94
  salmonellosis, 521
  shigellosis, 539
  typhoid, 569
Pyelonephritis, salmonellosis, 521
Pyknotic bodies, amebic stools, 54
Pyoderma, bacitracin, 1409
  yaws, 286
Pyonephrosis, malaria, 9
Pyorrhea alveolaris, Trichomonas tenax, 28
Pyralis farinalis, Hymenolepis diminuta, 971
Pyrethrins, 119
  cestodiasis, 1395
Pyrethrum cinerariaefolium, 119
  larvicide, 119
  mosquito control, 118, 1447
  pediculosis, 1405
  Sarcoptes, 1221
  spray, U. S. Army, 119
Pyrexia, heat, 1429, 1430
    treatment, 1430
  unknown origin, 701
Pyridoxine, 1278
  ariboflavinosis, 1348
Pyrogallol, mycosis, 1406, 1407
Pyronin methyl green Feng, 1556

Q

"Q" fever, 695 ff
    American, 696, 697
    animal studies, 699
    Balkan grippe, 700
    complication, 698
    diagnosis, 699
      differential, 699
    distribution, 695
    epidemiology, 696
    history, 694
    immune serum, 749
    immunity, 698
    immunization, 752
    incidence, 700, 701
    lesions, 699
    life cycle, 696
    lung, 699, 700
    pathology, 699
    pneumonitis, 698
    prognosis, 698
    prophylaxis, 766
    psittacosis, lungs, 354
    reservoirs, 696
    spleen, 699, 700
    streptomycin, 791
    symptoms, 697 ff
    transmission, 696, 700, 1207, 1210, 1211, 1213
    treatment, *see* Rickettsioses, treatment
    trench fever, differentiation, 695
    urine, 697
    vaccines, 752
    vectors, 696
    Weil-Felix reactions, 697
    zootic cycle, 696
Queensland coastal fever, 737
  fever, 695 ff
Quensel stain, 1567
Quinacrine, malaria, 101, 1385, 1386, 1387
Quinine, bartonellosis, 636
  hemolysis, 10
  malaria, 98, 99, 101, 1385, 1386
    prophylaxis, 124
  tropical ulcer, 661
Quinoline, Chagas' disease, 153
Quinoxyl, amebiasis, 57
Quintana fever, 701
Quirquinocho, Chagas' disease, 134

R

Rabbit papilloma virus, antibodies, 299
  psittacosis, 350
  tularemia, *see* Tularemia
Rabies, encephalitis, 376
  vaccination, 308
  virus isolation, 304

Rabo-de-chucha, 1242
  -de-ratón, 1242
Rachitic rosary, 1283
Radiculitis, brucellosis, 428
  leprosy, 597
Radiolar, shell, 18
Radium, scleroma respiratorium, 683
Raillietina asiatica, 986
  brumpti, 983
  celebensis, 986
  cubensis, 977
  demerariensis, 983
    distribution, 985
    hosts, 985
  equatoriensis, 983
  kouridovali, 977
  leoni, 983
  loechesalavezi, 977
  luisaleoni, 983
  madagascariensis, 985
    diagnosis, 986
    eggs, 985
    life cycle, 985
    treatment, 986
  quitensis, 983, 984
    distribution, 985
    hosts, 985
  treatment, 986
Raillietinosis, 983 ff
  diagnosis, 986
  treatment, 986
Raja clavata, 1271
Ramsay skin test, dracontiasis, 933
Rat, "1080," 762
  ANTU, 766
  control, 468, 469, 765, 766
  DDT, 765
  disease of Towoomba, 706
  Echinostoma ilocanum, 1006
  Hymenolepis, 968, 969
  leptospira, 247
  mites, 1216
  plague, 447, 448 ff, 449, 450
  psittacosis, 350
  relapsing fever, 232
  rodenticides, 762
  salmonellosis, 510
  sodium fluoroacetate, 762
  tapeworm, 968, 969
  tsutsugamushi, 739
  Weil's disease, 250
Ratbite fever, 256 ff, *see also* Sodoku *and* Haverhill fever
    blood picture, 1492
    history, 256
    incubation period, 260
    malaria, 94
    transmission, 258
Rattler, 1240, 1241
  antivenin, 1258
  diamond-back venom volume, 1247
  habits, 1244 ff
  neotropical, venom volume, 1247
  poison apparatus, 1246
  strike, 1244, 1245
  symptoms, 1251, 1252
  Texas, antivenin, 1258
    strike, 1245
    symptoms, 1252
    treatment, 1256
    venom, 1249
      volume, 1247
Rattlesnake, *see* Rattler
Rattus norvegicus, alpha-naphthyl-thiourea, 762, *see also* Rat
    eradication, 469
    leptospira, 247
    plague, 447, 450
    sodium fluoroacetate, 762
    Weil's disease, 250
  plague, 447
  rattus leptospira, 247
      plague, 447, 450
      Weil's disease, 250 ff
    rufescens, tsutsugamushi, 739
Ray reaction, leishmaniasis, visceral, 199
  sting, 1268
Reagents, 1549-1571
Rectal temperature, tropics, 1417, 1427
Rectitis, lymphogranuloma venereum, 399, 400
Rectosigmoid, shigellosis, 540
Rectosigmoidoscopic examination, sprue, 1312
  stool collection, 1524
Rectum, examination, Hardy and Watt swab, 1524
  lymphogranuloma venereum, 392, 398, 399
  perforation, amebiasis, 47
  polyps, schistosomiasis, 1083, 1084
    mansoni, 1090
  prolapse, amebiasis, 50
    shigellosis, 539
    trichuriasis, 842
  rhinosporidiosis, 1172
  schistosomiasis haematobia, 1061
Red Congolese fever, 706
Redunca arundinacea, African sleeping sickness, 158
Reedbuck, African sleeping sickness, 158
Refuse disposal, 1446
Reichenow medium, 1567
Reiter's syndrome, shigellosis, 540
Relapsing fever, 231
    animals, 232
      inoculation, 234
    arsenicals, 1387
    bismuth, 1387
    blood picture, 1493
    carbarsone, 1387
    diagnosis, 233, 234
    epidemiology, 231
    etiology, 231
    Herxheimer reaction, 1387
    immunity, 1387
    incubation period, 233
    laboratory findings, 233
    louse-borne, 231
    malaria, 94
    Mapharsen, 1387
    neoarsphenamine, 1387
    pathology, 232
    penicillin, 1387
    prognosis, 234
    reservoirs, 232
    salmonellosis, 525
    serology, 233
    Stovarsol, 1387
    sulfarsphenamine, 1387
    sulfonamides, 1387
    symptoms, 233
    tick-borne, 232
    transmission, 232, 1205, 1206, 1207, 1208, 1209, 1212, 1213
    treatment, 234, 1387
    typhus, 725
    Weigli, 706
Renal, *see* Kidney
  calculi, 1367
  failure, cholera, 489
      treatment, 496
  insufficiency, cholera, 488
Repellents, 758, 1441
  expeditions, 1447
  mites, 1218
  mosquito control, 123
  myiasis, 1201
  plague, 469
Reprodal, lymphogranuloma venereum, 408
Requin bleu, 1269
Resorcinol, mycosis, 1406, 1407
  trichomycosis, 1108
Respiratory sclerom, *see* Scleroma *and* Scleroma respiratorium, 667 ff
Reticulocyte response, sprue, 1324
Reticulum stain, 1508
Retortamonas intestinalis, 30
    culture, 1571
    description, 30
    incidence, 31
Rhabditis strongyloides, 813
Rhabdonema, 813
Rhagadachir argentina, Hymenolepis diminuta, 973
Rhamnose test, Castellani, 1308
Rheumatic fever, 1366
    incidence, 1365
    trichinosis, 857
Rheumatism, typhoid, 569
Rh factor, blackwater fever, 95
Rhinoceros viper, 1244
Rhinopharyngitis mutilans, rhinoscleroma, 680

Rhinophyma, rhinoscleroma, 674
Rhinoscleroma, 674, *see also* Scleroma *and* Scleroma respiratorium, 667 ff
  blood picture, 1493
  gangosa, 680
  incidence, 680
  rhinopharyngitis mutilans, 680
Rhinosporidiosis, 1170 ff, 1172
  antimony, 1174
  blood picture, 1493
  diagnosis, laboratory, 1173
  distribution, 1170
  ear, 1172
  epidemiology, 1170
  etiology, 1172
  eye, 1171
  genitalia, 1172
  lacrimal, 1172
  nasopharynx, 1172
  Neostibosan, 1174
  nose, 1171
  pathology, 1174
  polyps, 1171
  skin, 1172
  sporangium, 1172, 1173, 1174
  symptoms, 1171
  transmission, 1171
  treatment, 1174
Rhinosporidium equi, 1171 *footnote*
  incidence, 1170, 1171
  kinealyi, 1170
  seeberi, 1170, 1172
    classification, 1173
    history, 1170
    sporangia, 1172, 1173, 1174
Rhipicentor, 1204
Rhipicephalus, 1204, 1212
  appendiculatus, louping ill, 379
    Rift Valley fever, 339
  sanguineus, 1212
    boutonneuse fever, 736
    DDT, 760
    spotted fever, 732
Rhizopoda stain, 1564
Rhodesian sleeping sickness, 162
  sore, 641
Rhodopsin, 1274
Rhopalurus barythenar, 1225
Riboflavin, 1277, 1278
  deficiency, 1434
    pellagra, 1341 ff
  rickettsioses, 749
Ricebirds, psittacosis, 351
Rice diet, vitamin retention, 1338
  polishing, vitamin deficiency, 1434
  vitamin B, 1434
  water stools, 484, 486
Rickets, 1283
  phosphorus, 1295
  sunlight, 1424
  treatment, 1284
  vitamin D, 1284
Rickettsia, 687 ff, *see also* Rickettsioses
  acridine compounds, 748
  akari, 688 *footnote*
    rickettsialpox, 790
  antibiotics, 1410
  Bartonella bacilliformis, 618
  brasiliensis, 689
    transmission, 1213
  burneti, 688
    classification, clinical, 690
    "Q" fever, 696
    transmission, 1210
  canis, classification, clinical, 690
  Chloromycetin, 1409
  classification, clinical, 690
  conori, 688 *footnote*, 689, 736
    classification, clinical, 690
    transmission, 1212
  ctenocephali, history, 693
  diaporica, 688
    classification, clinical, 690
    preservation, 1207
    "Q" fever, 696
    transmission, 1207, 1211
  hosts, 688
  intracellular life, 688
  key to family Rickettsiaceae, 688
  lectularia, history, 693
Rickettsia—Cont'd
  melophagi, history, 693
  mooseri, 689, 706, 727
    classification, clinical, 690
    R. prowazeki, differences, 707
  morphology, 687
  orientalis, 689
    classification, clinical, 690
    transmission, 1217
    tsutsugamushi, 738
    variants, 745
  pediculi, 693
    trench fever, 702
  pijperi, 689
    classification, clinical, 690
  polymixin D, 1409
  prowazekii, 688 *footnote*, 689, 706, 728
    classification, clinical, 690
    cycle, 710
    history, 693
    R. mooseri, differences, 707
    transmission, 1208
  quintana, 701
    trench fever, 702
  rickettsii, 688 *footnote*, *see also* Dermacentroxenous rickettsi, 689
    transmission, 1209, 1211
  ruminantium, classification, clinical, 690
  transmission, 1206, 1207, 1208, 1213
  tsutsugamushi, 688 *footnote*
  typhi, 688 *footnote*
  vectors, 688
  viability, 710
  weigli, 706
  wolhynica, 689, 701
    classification, clinical, 690
    history, 693
Rickettsiaceae, 688
Rickettsial diseases, 687 ff, *see also* each disease, *and* Rickettsioses
Rickettsialpox, 787 ff
  agglutination test, 787
  blood picture, 787
  boutonneuse fever, 790
  chicken pox, 790
  Chloromycetin, 748
  complement fixation, 788, 790, 791
  diagnosis, differential, 790
  epidemiology, 791
  etiology, 790
  exanthem, 787
  history, 694
  incidence, 791
  incubation period, 787
  infectious mononucleosis, 790
  lesion, 787
  mites, 792
  pathology, 787
  Rickettsia akari, 688 *footnote*, 790
  skin, 787, 790
  smallpox, 790
  spotted fever, 790
  symptoms, 787
  transmission, 791
  treatment, 793
  typhus, 790
  Weil-Felix reaction, 787, 790, 791
Rickettsiemia weigli, 706
Rickettsioses, 687 ff
  Acridine, 748
  anti-serum, 1379
  aureomycin, 1379
  boutonneuse, 736
  Chloromycetin, 748, 1379
  convalescent blood, 1379
  crystalloids, 1379
  distribution, 691
  endemic, 706
  epidemiologic laboratories, 1462
  exanthematic, 706 ff
  fleas, control, 765
  Forbisen, 746, 749
  glucose, 1379
  history, 691
  hypoproteinemia, treatment, 1379
  incidence, 691
  Mepacrine, 748
  Nitroacridine, 748
  nonexanthematic, 695 ff

Rickettsioses—Cont'd
  Oriental, 737
  PABA, 747
  para-aminobenzoic acid, 747
  penicillin, 747
  petechial exanthematic, 706 ff
  plasma, 1379
  prophylaxis, 750, 763 ff
  recurrent, 701
  riboflavin, 749
  Rutenol, 748
  saline, 1379
  shock, treatment, 745
  streptomycin, 748
  sulfonamides, 746
  toluidine blue, 746
  treatment, 745 ff, 1379
    outline, 750
  vaccination, 751, 756
  vectors, destruction, 757
  Weigli, 706
Rift Valley fever, 338, 339
    blood picture, 1493
Ring hemorrhage, malaria, 85
Ringer solution, 1551, 1567
    Dobell-Laidlaw, 1555
    scorpionism, 1230
    snake bite, 1259
Ringhals, 1240
Ringworm, tinea imbricata, 1115
  yaws, 273, 283, 286
River jack, 1244
da Rocha Lima vaccine, typhus, 752
Roche Liquoid, 1567
Rockefeller Foundation, sanitary services, 1453
    yellow fever control, 1454
Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 731 ff, *see also* Spotted fever
Rodenticides, 757 ff, 762
  "1080," 762
Rodents, *see* Rats
  plague, 447
  Rift Valley fever, 339
  tularemia, 436
Roger medium, 1567
Rogers' hypertonic mixture, cholera, 495
Rotenone, myiasis, 1202 *footnote*
  pediculosis, 1405
  Sarcoptes, 1221
Round worms, 795
Row medium, 1568
Rubeola, dengue, 332
  Haverhill fever, 265
  sodoku, 261
Ruge solution, 1568
Russell bodies, chromoblastomycosis, 1169
    mycetoma, 1137, 1148
    scleroma respiratorium, 672, 673
Russellia, description, 104
  palmate hairs, 112
Russian spring-summer disease, 380
  tick-borne fever, 731
Rutenol, rickettsioses, 748
Rutgers 612, onchocerciasis, 919
Ruys method, leptospiras in blood, 243

S

Sabethini, 104
Sabouraud 2% dextrose agar, 1105
Sago grain stools, 45
Saguaype, 1018
Saisawa-Sugawara stain, 1568
Salicylic acid, black piedra, 1111
    mycosis, 1406, 1407
    pediculosis, 1405
    pityriasis versicolor, 1123
    tinea albigena, 1127
      imbricata, 1119
Saline aerosol-ether-xylol concentration, stools, 1533
  cholera, 494
  flotation, stools, 1534, 1537
  hemoglobin solution, 1568
  leishmaniasis, 1384
  pellagra, 1355
  rickettsioses, 1379
  scorpionism, 1230
  shigellosis, 1381
  snake bite, 1259
  tropical ulcer, 658, 659
Salmonella, 507 ff, *see also* Salmonellosis *and* Typhoid
  abscess, 518, 519, 521
  agglutination test, 522, 523, 557
  anatum, 511
  antibiotics, 1410
  antibodies, 523
  antigens, 523
  ballerup, vaccination, 530
  blood cultures, 522
  carriers, pathology, 514
    symptoms, 519
    test for, 523
    treatment, 529
  centers, 507, 1528
  cholecystitis, pathology, 514
  choleraesuis, epidemiology, 511
    meningitis, 555
    sulfonamides, 558
    synonyms, 508
    vaccination, 530
  cross reactions, 523
  cultures, 522, 554
  derby, 511
  destruction of, 529
  dublin, epidemiology, 511
    meningitis, 555
    transmission, 511
  eastbourne, meningitis, 555
  enteritidis, epidemiology, 511
    meningitis, 555
    sulfonamides, 558
    synonyms, 508
    transmission, 511, 1211
    vaccination, 530
  enteritis, pathology, 513
    prognosis, 524
    symptoms, 519
    treatment, 1382
      kaolin, 528
  enterocolitis, 522
  fever, bacteriologic examination, 522
    pathology, 513
    prognosis, 524
    symptoms, 517
  food, protection, 529
  gallinarum, 507
  havana, meningitis, 555, 556
  isolation, 522
  jena, meningitis, 555
  london, meningitis, 555
  meningitis, 555, 556
  montevideo, epidemiology, 511
    regional ileitis, 522
  newport, 511
  nomenclature, 508
  oranienburg, transmission, 511
    vaccination, 530
  osteomyelitis, children, 557
  panama, epidemiology, 511
    Salmonella fever, pathology, 513
    transmission, 511
  paratyphi, epidemiology, 510
    osteomyelitis, 521
    Salmonella fever, pathology, 513
    sulfonamides, 558
    synonyms, 508
    transmission, 509, 510
    vaccination, 530
  pus, 521
  refrigeration, 510
  salmonellosis, 511
  schottmuelleri, meningitis, 555
  sendai, Salmonella fever, pathology, 513
  septicemia, abscess, 521
    bacteriologic examination, 522
    brain, 521
    children, 555
    complications, 520
    diagnosis, 522
    meningitis, 518
    pathology, 513
    prognosis, 524
    symptoms, 518
    thrombophlebitis, 520
    urinary system, 521
  sputum, 520
  stool examination, 554, 1527
  thompson, 511

- Salmonella—Cont'd
  - typhimurium, 341
    - enteritis, 510
    - epidemiology, 510
    - meningitis, 555
    - osteomyelitis, 521
    - regional ileitis, 522
    - sulfonamides, 558
    - synonyms, 508
    - transmission, 510
    - vaccination, 530
  - typhosa, *see* also Typhoid
    - ascariasis, 805
    - bone marrow culture, 567
    - children, 559
    - classification, 507
    - epidemiology, 510
    - examination, 1527 ff
    - intestines, 559, 560
    - synonyms, 508
    - transmission, 509, 510
  - typing, 507, 1528
  - vaccine, 530
- Salmonellosis, 507 ff, *see also* Salmonella *and* Typhoid
  - abscesses, 518, 519, 521
    - formation, 513
  - agglutination test, 522, 523, 557
  - amebiasis, 45
  - animal carriers, 510
    - transmission, 511
  - antibiotics, 526, 1409
    - children, 558 *footnote*
  - appendicitis, 514, 519, 525
  - arthritis, 521
    - children, 555
  - aureomycin, 527, 1409
  - bladder, 521
  - blood picture, 524, 1493
    - children, 557
  - bones, 521
  - bronchitis, 518, 520
  - bronchopneumonia, 518
  - brucellosis, 525
  - Brumpt agglutination test, 523
  - carriers, duration, 510
    - pathology, 514
    - symptoms, 519
    - transmission, 509, 510
  - chemotherapy, specific, 528
  - children, 554 ff
    - meningitis, 518
    - symptoms, 555
    - treatment, 557
    - types, 557
    - vaccines, 558
  - cholangitis, 521
  - cholecystitis, 519, 521
  - cholera, 493, 525
  - choleraesuis, history, 507
  - choleriform, children, 555
  - Chloromycetin, 527, 1379
  - colitis, 522
  - complications, 520 ff
    - treatment, 528
  - convalescent blood, 527
  - culture, 554, 1527
  - diagnosis, culture, 554, 555, 1527
    - differential, 524 ff
    - laboratory, 522 ff
  - dietary treatment, 527
    - children, 557, 558
  - dihydrostreptomycin, 527
  - ducks, 511
  - dysentery, bacillary, 525
    - treatment, 1379
  - dyspepsia, 555
  - eggs, 510, 511
  - enteric fever, 515, *see also* Typhoid
  - enteritis, 511
    - pathology, 513
  - epidemiology, 507-511
  - etiology, 507
  - feces, *see* Salmonellosis, stools
  - Felix serum, 525
  - fluid replacement, 1379
  - gall bladder, 519, 521
    - carriers, 514
  - gastroenteritis, 525
  - glucomycin, 527 *footnote*, 1379
- Salmonellosis—Cont'd
  - heart, 520
  - hogs, 511
  - hydrotherapy, 527
  - ileitis, 522
  - immunization, 530 ff
  - incidence, 509, 510
  - influenza meningitis, 525
  - intestines, 522
  - kidney, 521
  - Kieler Doctrine, 509
  - liver, 521
  - malaria, 525
  - mayonnaise, 510
  - meat, 510
  - meningitis, 521, 525
  - metritis, 521
  - milk, 510
  - Montevideo Doctrine, 507
  - neomycin, 527 *footnote*
  - nervous system, 521
  - neuritis, 521
  - osteomyelitis, 521
  - pathology, 511 ff
  - pelvic inflammation, 519
  - penicillin, 526
  - peritonitis, tuberculous, 525
  - phthalyl sulfacetimide, 527
  - plasma, 527
  - pneumonia, children, 555
  - polymixin D, 527 *footnote*
  - post-mortem findings, 511 ff
  - poultry, 510, 511
  - pregnancy, 521
  - prognosis, 524
    - children, 559
  - prophylaxis, 529
  - pseudoappendiceal syndrome, 513, 514
  - pyelitis, 521
  - pyelonephritis, 521
  - refrigeration, 510
  - relapsing fever, 525
  - Salmonella fever, pathology, 513
  - salpingitis, 521
  - serologic tests, 522, 523
  - sewage disposal, 530
  - shellfish, 530
  - shock, treatment, 1382
  - skin, 521
  - spinal fluid, 525, 555
  - sputum, 520
  - stool collection, 1524
    - cultures, 554
  - streptomycin, 526
  - sulfonamides, 526, 527, 1379
    - children, 558
  - symptoms, 514
    - children, 555
  - syndromic, symptoms, 519
  - transfusions, 528, 529
    - children, 557, 558
  - transmission, 509
  - treatment, 525, 1381
    - children, 557, 558
  - tuberculosis, 520, 524
  - typhus, 525
  - urine, 524
  - vaccination, 1442
  - vaccines, 527
  - vectors, 510
  - Vi agglutination test, 523
  - vitamins, 528
  - water supplies, 530
  - Welch and Stuart agglutination test, 523
  - Widal test, 522, 557
- Salmonidae, clonorchiasis, 1009
- Salt, diet, tropics, 1419, 1436
  - heat cramps, 1429
    - prostration, 1419
  - hygiene, 1436
  - pyrexia, heat, 1430
  - requirements, 1436
  - tablets, 1436
- Salvarsan, pinta, 229
  - reactions, 290
  - yaws, 290
- Sand-fly, *see* Phlebotomus
  - fever, 337 ff, 338
    - blood picture, 1492
    - treatment, 338

- Sand-sharks, 1269
- Sand viper, 1244
- Sanitary centers, rural, 1461
  - services, organization, 1451
    - population density, 1451 ff
  - status establishment, 1457 ff
  - survey, enteric, 1529
- Sanitation, community, 1446
  - food preparation, 1435 ff
- Santonica, enterobiasis, 1396
- Santonin, ascariasis, 1397
  - -calomel, 1394
  - enterobiasis, 1396
- São Paulo fever, *see* Spotted fever
  - typhus, *see* Typhus
- Sarcodina, 20
  - description, 17
  - nucleus, 20
  - structure, 14
- Sarcoid, chromoblastomycosis, 1160
  - leprosy, 588, 595, 605
- Sarcoma, adipose, foot, 1137, 1138
- Sarcophaga securifera, myiasis, 1200
- Sarcoptes scabiei, 1197, 1219, *see also* Scabies
  - destruction, 1221
  - life cycle, 1220
  - prophylaxis, 1221
  - skin, 1220, 1221
  - transmission, 1221
  - treatment, 1221
  - yaws, 286
- Sarcoptidae, 1219
- Sarcoptoidea, 1219
- S.A.T., 1062
- Savino medium, leptospiras, 239
- Sawitz precipitin test, trichinosis, 1545
- S.C. mixture, 1570
- Scabies, benzyl benzoate, 1404, *see also* Sarcoptes scabiei
  - DDT, 1404
  - laundry water, 1438
  - pruritus, treatment, 1404
  - sulfur, 1404
  - Tetmosal, 1404
  - treatment, 1403, 1404
  - yaws, 286
- Scales, chromoblastomycosis, examination, 1167
  - keratomycosis nigricans palmaris, 1124, 1125
  - pityriasis versicolor, examination, 1122
  - tinea, 1120
    - imbricate, examination, 1118
    - nigra, 1124
- Scardinius erythophthalmus, opisthorchiasis, 1017
- Scarlet fever, 1364
- Scaurus striatus, Hymenolepis diminuta, 971
- Scedosporium, 1152
- Schaudinn fixative, 1525, 1569
- Schistosoma, *see also* Schistosomiasis, 1029 ff, 1049 ff, 1064 ff, 1068 ff
  - bovis, S. intercalatum, 1064
  - cerceriae, chlorine, 1438
  - haematobium, 1050 ff, *see also* Schistosomiasis haematobia
    - blood, 1049, 1051, 1053, 1054, 1056, 1058
    - cercariae, 1052, 1053
    - description, 1050
    - distribution, 1049
    - eggs, 1051, 1060
      - appendix, 1061
      - ectopic lesions, 1060
      - feces, 1061, 1064
      - liver, 1061
      - lungs, 1055, 1056
      - stools, 1061, 1064
    - elephantiasis, 1059
    - history, 1049
    - irrigation, 1073, 1075
    - life cycle, 1051, 1053
      - span, 1050
    - migration, 1053
    - oviposition, 1059
    - Schistosoma intercalatum, 1064
    - snails, 1052
    - stools, 1061
    - transmission, 1052
    - treatment, 1062-1064
    - urine, 1060, 1540
    - vector, 1052

Schistosoma—Cont'd
  - intercalatum, 1064 ff, *see also* Schistosomiasis intercalata
    - adults, 1064, 1065
    - description, 1064
    - eggs, 1065
      - localization, 1066
    - history, 1064
    - incidence, 1066
    - Schistosoma haematobium, 1064
    - vector, 1066
  - japonicum, 1029 ff, *see also* Schistosomiasis japonica
    - adults, 1030
    - antimony, 1043, 1045
    - blood, 1031, 1032, 1034, 1035, 1038
    - cercaria, 1030
    - distribution, 1029
    - eggs, 1034, 1040, 1041, 1042
      - brain, 1035
      - deposit, 1032, 1033, 1038
      - development, 1032
      - hatching technic, 1042
      - life span, 1044
      - lung, 1035
      - pathology, 1031
    - embryo, 1041
    - hosts, 1029, 1031
    - incidence, 8, 1029
    - life cycle, 1029
    - miracidium, 1040
      - destruction, 1047
    - pigment, 1032, 1035
    - rectal biopsy, 1094
    - reservoir, 1047
    - snails, 1031
      - control, 1075
    - transmission, 1031
    - treatment, 1043-1045
    - vectors, 1029
  - mansoni, *see also* Schistosomiasis mansoni, 1068 ff
    - adults, localization, 1078
    - antigen, 1095
    - blood vessels, 1071
    - carcinoma, 1084
    - cercariae, 1071
      - numbers, 1070, 1071
    - coproculture, 1542
    - description, 1068
    - distribution, 1068
    - eggs, 1068, 1069, 1070, 1082, 1084
      - biopsy, 1094
      - brain, 1087
      - cirrhotic stage, 1091
      - concentration, 1094
      - extrusion, blood vessels, 1078
      - hatching, 1070
      - lungs, 1092
      - pathology, 1079
      - rectal smears, 1094
      - sigmoidoscopy, 1094
      - skin, 1087
      - spleen, 1086
      - stools, 1090, 1093
      - urine, 1093
    - feces, 1093
    - heart, 1071
    - history, 1049
    - incidence, 8
    - larvae, 1069, 1070
    - life cycle, 1070, 1071, 1072
    - liver, 1071
    - lungs, 1072
    - mesenteric veins, 1072
    - miracidium, 1070
    - pigment, 1087
    - rectal smears, 1094
    - snails, 1072
    - stools, 1093
    - toxins, 1078
    - treatment, 1095
    - urine, 1093
    - vectors, 1072
      - destruction, 1074, 1075
    - veins, 1068, 1070
      - eggs, 1078
- Schistosomiasis, *see also* Schistosoma
  - antimonials, 1402, 1403

- Schistosomiasis—Cont'd
  - complement fixation test, 1543
  - control, 1074
  - dermatitis, control, 1075
  - diagnosis, complement fixation test, 1543
    - skin test, 1546
  - emetine, 1402
  - Fuadin, 1420, 1403
  - genitourinary, 1049
  - haematobia, 1049 ff, *see also* Schistosoma haematobium
    - abscess, 1054
    - Anthiomaline, 1063
    - antimonials, 1062, 1063
    - appendix, 1055, 1058
    - Ayerza's disease, 1060
    - bladder, 1053, 1059, 1060
    - blood picture, 1060, 1062, 1494
    - brain, 1056, 1058, 1060
    - carcinoma, 1054
    - complement fixation test, 1062, 1543
    - conjunctiva, 1056, 1058
    - cure, test of, 1064
    - diagnosis, 1060
      - test of cure, 1064
    - ectopic lesions, 1056
    - emetine, 1063, 1064
    - eye, 1060
    - fistula, 1054
    - Fuadin, 1063
    - heart, 1056, 1058, 1060
    - hematuria, 1059
    - liver, 1053
      - puncture, 1061
    - lung, 1055, 1056, 1057, 1058, 1060
    - Miracil D, 1064
    - Neoantimosan, 1063
    - nervous system, 1060
    - Nilodin, 1064
    - pathology, 1052-1059
    - pelvic organs, 1054
    - prostate, 1059
    - rectum, 1061
    - skin, 1046, 1058, 1059, 1060
      - test, 1061
    - spinal cord, 1056, 1058, 1060
    - sputum, 1056
    - Stibophen, 1063
    - stools, 1061
    - symptoms, 1059
    - tartar emetic, 1062
    - tissue reaction, 1059
    - transmission, 1053
    - treatment, 1062-1064
    - urine, 1059
    - vector, 1052
    - veins, 1049, 1051, 1053, 1054, 1056, 1058
    - x-ray, 1054, 1057, 1058
  - intercalata, 1064 ff, *see also* Schistosoma intercalatum
    - acriflavine, 1076
    - antimony, 1067
    - diagnosis, 1066
    - immunity, 1066
    - liver, 1066
    - pathology, 1066
    - schistosomiasis mansoni, 1066
    - spleen, 1066
    - symptoms, 1066
    - treatment, 1067
  - irrigation, 1073, 1075
  - japonica, 1029 ff, *see also* Schistosoma japonicum
    - abscess, 1032, 1034, 1038
    - acute stage, 1032, 1036
      - treatment, 1045
    - adrenalin, 1037
    - allergic stage, 1032
    - Anthiomaline, 1044
    - Banti's syndrome, 1035
    - benzyl benzoate, 1046
    - blood picture, 1042, 1494
    - brain, 1035, 1036, 1038
    - chronic, 1038
      - stage, 1033
      - treatment, 1045
    - complement fixation test, 1042
    - diagnosis, 1042, 1043
      - eggs, 1040
      - laboratory, 1040

- Schistosomiasis japonica—Cont'd
  - dibutyl phthalate, 1046
  - dimethyl phthalate, 1046
  - dog, 1033
  - emetine, 1044
  - epidemiology, 1045
  - experimental, 1031, 1033, 1039, 1040
  - fever, 1037
  - Fuadin, 1044
  - heart, 1035, 1036
  - immunity, 1033, 1039
  - incidence, 1045
  - incubation period, 1036
    - stage, 1031
  - intestine, 1032, 1033, 1038
  - laboratory findings, 1040
  - lesions, 1031
  - liver, 1031, 1032, 1034, 1038, 1039
  - lungs, 1031, 1032, 1035, 1038
  - mesenteric lymph nodes, 1033, 1034
  - neck, 1037
  - nervous system, 1038
  - pathology, 1031
  - physical findings, 1038
  - prophylaxis, 1045, 1047
  - relapses, 1038
    - treatment, 1045
  - reservoir, 1047
  - skin, 1031, 1037, 1038
    - test, 1042
  - snail, elimination, 1046
  - spleen, 1035, 1038, 1039
  - stool examination, 1040, 1041
  - symptoms, 1036 ff
  - tartar emetic, 1043
  - thrombi, 1034
  - transmission, 1031, 1045, 1046
  - treatment, 1043-1045, 1403
    - mass, 1047
  - urticaria, 1037
    - cure, 1044
  - water, 1046
- leishmaniasis, visceral, 198
- mansoni, 1068 ff, *see also* Schistosoma mansoni
  - amebiasis, 1084
  - antimony, 1095, 1096, 1097
  - Banti's syndrome, 1092
  - biopsy, 1094, 1541
  - blood picture, 1090, 1091, 1494
    - vessels, egg extrusion, 1078
  - brucellosis, 1089
  - Chagas' disease, 1093
  - chronic, 1085
  - cirrhotic stage, 1091
  - colitis, 1081, 1091
  - complement fixation test, 1042, 1062
  - control, 1073-1076
  - dermatitis, 1077, 1078, 1087
  - diagnosis, cirrhotic stage, 1091
    - complement fixation test, 1042, 1062
    - coproculture, 1542
    - differential, 1089
    - intestinal stage, 1090
    - laboratory, 1093
  - distribution, 1072, 1073
  - dysentery, 1090
  - endemic splenomegaly, 1086
  - epidemiology, 1073 ff
  - fever, 1088
  - Fuadin, 1095, 1097
  - heart, 1078, 1087, 1092
  - hepatic symptoms, 1091
  - hosts, 1074
  - immunity, 1077
  - incubation period, 1088
  - intestinal stage, 1090
  - intestine, 1081, 1082, 1085, 1313
  - laboratory findings, 1093
  - Laennec cirrhosis, 1092
  - liver, 1078, 1081
    - cirrhosis, 1085
    - symptoms, 1091
  - lungs, 1078, 1092
  - malaria, 1089
  - male worm infection, 1086
  - mesenteric veins, 1078
  - omentum, 1083
  - pathology, 1076 ff
  - prodromal, 1088

Schistosomiasis mansoni—Cont'd
    prognosis, cirrhotic stage, 1092
      intestinal stage, 1090, 1091
    prophylaxis, water, 1071
    pseudotubercle, 1079
    rectal polyps, 1090
    schistosomiasis intercalata, 1066
    sigmoidoscopy, 1094
    skin, 1071, 1077, 1078, 1087
      test, 1095
    spleen, 1086, 1091, 1092
    stools, 1090
      examination, 1535
    symptoms, 1087-1093
      classification, 1089
    tartar emetic, 1063, 1095, 1096
    transmission, 1071, 1072 ff, 1073, 1074
    treatment, 1095
    tuberculosis, 1089
    typhoid, 1089
    ulcers, 1084
    visceral symptoms, 1091
    water pollution, 1074
  Miracil D, 1402
  skin test, 1546
  tartar emetic, 1402
  treatment, 1402, 1403, *see also* each type
  visceral, 1085 ff
  vitamin deficiency, 1344
  water, bath, 1438
Schistosomulae, 1053
Schistosomum americanum, 1068
Schizophrenia, tapeworm disease, 945
Schizotrypanides, 149
Schizotrypanosis, 127 ff, *see also* Chagas' disease *and* Trypanosoma cruzi
Schizotrypanum cruzi, *see* Trypanosoma cruzi, 127 ff
Schüffner dots, 75
Schweinfurth green, *see* Paris green
Sciuridae, plague, 447
Scleritis, onchocerciasis, 906
Scleroma, 667 ff, *see also* Scleroma respiratorium
  atrophic, 677
  blood chemistry, 679
    picture, 679
  bronchi, 678
    incidence, 680
  diagnosis, 682
  ear, 678
  eye, 678
  exophthalmus, 678
  gangosa, 682
  incidence, 680, 681
  lacrimal duct, 678
  larynx, 678
    incidence, 680, 681
  lip, 677
  lymph glands, 679
  maxilla, 678
  mouth, 678
  nasal, 674
  nose, diagnosis, 680
    incidence, 680, 681
  paranasal sinuses, 677
  pharynx, 678
    incidence, 680, 681
  pseudo-ozenic, 677
  respiratory, 667 ff, *see also* Scleroma respiratorium
  respiratorium, 667 ff, *see also* Scleroma
    agglutination test, 683
    azosulfamide, 684
    bacteriologic examination, 682
    blood picture, 1493
    carriers, 677, 682, 683
    chronicity, 681
    clinical picture, 674 ff
    complement fixation test, 682
    diagnosis, 682
    distribution, 668 ff
    epidemiology, 668
    etiology, 667
    experimental production, 668
    gold treatment, 684
    granuloma, 672, 677, 678, 679
    Hebra's nose, 674, 676, 679
    immunity, 672

Scleroma, respiratorium—Cont'd
    incidence, 668 ff, 671
    localizations, 680
    Mikulicz cells, 672, 673
    nose, 674, 675, 676 ff, 680
    ozena, 671, 677, 682
    pathology, 672 ff
    Pellizari bodies, 672
    prognosis, 681
      surgery, 684
    radium, 683
    Russell bodies, 672, 673
    skin test, 683
    Solganol, 684
    streptomycin, 684
    surgery, 684
    symptoms, 674 ff
    tartar emetic, 684
    transmission, 670, 671 ff
    treatment, 683
    vaccines, 683
    x-ray treatment, 683
  sedimentation rate, 679
  tongue, 678
  trachea, 678
    incidence, 680
  treatment, 683
Sclerostoma duodenale, 821
Sclerostomum caninum, 839
Sclerotic cells of Medlar, 1161, 1162
Scoleciasis, 1199, 1201
Scomberomorus caralla, 1270 *footnote*
Scopolamine, encephalitis, 377
Scorbute, 1281, 1282, *see also* Scurvy *and* Vitamin C
Scorpio imperator, 1225
Scorpion, 1198, 1224 ff, *see also* Scorpionism
  chickens, 1229
  description, 1224
  distribution, 1225
  habitat, 1224, 1225
  poison apparatus, 1226
  symptoms, 1227 ff
  venom, 1226, 1227, 1228
    absorption, 1229
    quantity, 1227
  whip, 1222
Scorpionism, 1224 ff
  acetyl-choline, 1229
  anti-snake bite serum, 1230
  antivenin, 1230
  blood pressure, 1228
  calcium gluconate, 1230
  glucose solution, 1230
  heart stimulants, 1229
  immunity, 1230
  immunization, 1229
  insulin, 1230
  lymphangitis, 1227
  magnesium sulfate, 1229
  prevention, 1228, 1229
  prognosis, 1228
  Ringer solution, 1230
  saline, 1230
  sequelae, 1228
  skin, 1227
  symptoms, 1227
  treatment, 1229
Scorpoena, 1268
Scotch tape, enterobiasis, 1536
Scotoma, 1423
Scrofuloderma, yaws, 289
Scrub typhus, *see* Typhus, scrub, *and* Tsutsugamushi, 737 ff
Scurvy, *see also* Vitamin C
  anemia, 1291, 1292
  blood picture, 1494
  history, 1281
  infantile, 1282
  prophylaxis, 1282
  symptoms, 1281
  treatment, 1282, 1283
  vitamin C, 1281
Sea anemone ulcers, amebiasis, 39
  gulls, psittacosis, 342
  salt, hookworm larvae, 827
Seaweed colon, amebiasis, 39
Seborrhea, yaws, 288
Sections, *see* Tissue

- Sedimentation rate, amebic hepatitis, 47
  - amebic liver abscess, 48
  - blastomycosis, South American, 1483
  - brucellosis, 1483
  - epidemic dropsy, 1486
  - kala-azar, 1490
  - leprosy, 590, 603
  - mycetoma, 1154, 1491
  - nutritional edema, 1486
  - Oroya fever, 626, 1483
  - psittacosis, 1492
  - rhinoscleroma, 1493
  - scleroma, 679
    - respiratory, 1493
  - typhoid, 568
- Segmentina, fasciolopsiasis, 1000
- Semen contra, enterobiasis, 1396
- Semliki Forest virus, 381
- Seneca medium, 1569
- Sepedon haemachates, 1240
- Septic sore, tropical ulcer, 657
- Septicemia, salmonella, *see* Salmonella septicemia
- Serinus canaria, psittacosis, 351
  - malaria, 80
- Serology, *see also* under each subject
  - helminthiasis, 1543-1547
- Serotherapy, *see* under each disease
- Serpent, *see also* Snake, 1238
  - worm, 927
- Serrano, 1269
- Serum albumin, normal, 1293
    - sprue, 1314
  - antityphus, 749
  - convalescent, brucelloisis, 1378
    - rickettsioses, 749
  - dried, tropical ulcer, 661
  - globulin, normal, 1293
    - sprue, 1314
  - hyperimmunized horse, plague, 467
  - immune, shigellosis, 575, 576
  - proteins, sprue, 1314
  - shigellosis, 543
  - therapy, *see also* under each disease
    - antidysentery, shigellosis, 575, 576
    - tularemia, 441
- Serumizing tissue, 1515, 1516
- Sesarma, paragonimiasis, 998
- Settlement density, 1451, 1452, 1456
- Seven-day fever, leptospira, 236
- Sewage disposal, 1446
- Shannoniella, description, 104
- Shashitsu disease, 737
- Sheep leishmaniasis, visceral, 197
  - liver fluke, 1017
  - trypanosomes, 158
- Shellfish poisoning, 1272
- Shigella, 532 ff, *see also* Shigellosis *and* Dysentery
  - agglutination tests, 541
  - alkalescens, 1527 ff
    - catarrhal dysentery, 535
    - classification, 532
    - food poisoning, 535
    - synonyms, 508
  - ambigua, bacillary dysentery, 537
    - catarrhal dysentery, 535
    - classification, 532
    - synonyms, 508
    - vaccines, 547
  - antibiotics, 1410
  - carriers, 533
    - treatment, 545
  - ceylonensis, 532
  - classification, 532
  - culture, 541
  - dispar, classification, 532
    - synonyms, 508
  - dysenteriae, antitoxic serum, 1380
    - arthritis, 539
    - bacillary dysentery, 537
    - choleriform dysentery, 538
    - classification, 532
    - conjunctivitis, 540
    - prognosis, 542
    - synonyms, 508
    - toxoid, 547
    - vaccines, 547
  - dysentery, gangrenous, 537

- Shigella—Cont'd
  - food poisoning, 535
  - isolation, 541
  - madampensis, 532
  - newcastle, classification, 532
  - nomenclature, 508
  - paradysenteriae, bacillary dysentery, 537
    - carriers, 533
    - catarrhal dysentery, 535
    - choleriform dysentery, 538
    - classification, 532
    - food poisoning, 535
    - strains, 532
    - synonyms, 508
    - vaccines, 547
  - sonnei carriers, 533
      - treatment, 546
    - catarrhal dysentery, 535
    - classification, 532
    - dysentery, 536, 537
    - food poisoning, 535
    - synonyms, 508
    - vaccines, 547
  - stool examination, 1527
  - strains, 532
  - vaccines, 547
- Shigellosis, 532 ff, *see also* Shigella *and* Dysentery
  - acetyltannic acid, 575
  - acute, treatment, 544, 545
  - agglutination tests, 541, 575
  - albumin tannate, 575
  - allergy, 539
  - antitoxic treatment, 1381
  - arthritis, 539
    - treatment, 545
  - astringent, 1381
  - aureomycin, 1381
  - bacteriophage, 544
  - blood cultures, 575
    - picture, 541, 574, 575, 1494, 1495
      - children, 1495
  - carcinoma, 542
  - carriers, 533
    - control, 546
    - treatment, 545, 1380
  - catarrhal dysentery, 535
    - stools, cytology, 541
  - catarrhs, 537
  - cathartics, 545
  - children, 572 ff
  - Chloromycetin, 1379, 1381
  - cholera, 493
  - chronic, 534, 538
    - sigmoidoscopic patterns, 540
    - stools, 538
  - circulatory symptoms, 573
  - classical type, 537
  - colitis, ulcerative, 539
  - colon, deformities, 539
  - complications, 539, 574
    - treatment, 545
  - conjunctivitis, 540
  - cystitis, 539
  - diagnosis, differential, 542
    - laboratory, 541, 574
    - sigmoidoscope, 540
    - x-ray, 540
  - diarrhea, children, 573
  - diet, 1381
    - children, 575
  - dietary treatment, 544
  - digestive tract, 539
  - dysentery, choleriform, 538
    - gangrenous, 537
    - relapsing, 538
  - encephalitis, treatment, 576
  - epidemiology, 532 ff
  - etiology, 532
  - eye, 540, 574
    - treatment, 545
  - fever, 574
  - flies, 533, 546
  - fluid replacement, 1379
  - food control, 546
    - poisoning, 535
  - fulminating, 537, 538
  - Glycomycin, 1379, 1381
  - glucose, 543

Shigellosis—Cont'd
  immunity, 546, 547
  incubation period, 534, 572
  intestinal oxygen therapy, 1381
  intestines, 534, 540
  kaolin, 545
  kidney, 534, 539
  liver, 573
  megacolon, 539
  milk, 534
  mouth, 573
  nervous system, 573
  neuritis, 540
  nutritional deficiency, 539
  opium, 575
  pain, treatment, 545
  parotitis, 540
  pathology, 534
    children, 574
  perforation, intestines, 539
  peritonitis, 534
  phthalyl sulfacetimide, 544, 577 *footnote*
  plasma, 543, 1381
  polyposis, 539
  prognosis, 542
  prophylaxis, 546, 577
  pyelitis, 539
  rectal prolapse, 539
  rectosigmoid, 540
  regional ileocolitis, 539
  Reiter's syndrome, 540
  retention cysts, 534
  saline therapy, 1381
  serum therapy, 543, 575, 576
  sewage, 546
  sigmoidoscopic findings, 540
  Sonne dysentery, 535
  spleen, 534, 573
  sprue, 542
  stools, cytology, 541
    examination, 541, 574
  sulfonamides, 543, 544, 576, 577, 1379, 1380, 1381
    children, 558
    prophylaxis, 547
    stool examination, 546
  symptoms, 534 ff
    children, 573
  Thalamyd, 544, 577 *footnote*
  toxoid, 547
  transmission, 533
  treatment, 543 ff. 1379, 1380, 1381
    children, 575 ff
    pain, 1381
  types, 534
  ulcers, 534, 535
  urethritis, 539
  urine, 574
  vaccination, 546
  vaccines, 544, 575
  water-borne, 546
    supplies, 534
  x-ray examination, 540
Shimamuchi, 737
Shin fever, 701, 704
Shock, anaphylactic ascariasis, 801
  cholera, 484, 486, 488
    hemoconcentration, 490
  echinococcosis, 959, 964
  typhus, 715
Shoes, formalin disinfection, 1441
Sialoadenitis, Chagas' disease, 141
Sidewinder, 1240
Sigmodon hispidus, psittacosis, 350
Sigmoidoscopic examination, *see also* under each disease
  amebiasis, 51
Silutus japonicus, 1268
Silver nitrate, 10% solution, 1517
  salts, balantidiasis, 1393
Simmonds' cachexia, sprue, 1302
  disease, sprue, 1310
Simmons' solution, 1569
Simulium bites, 897
  DDT, 918
  eggs, 896
  habitat, 895
  larva, 896
  life cycle, 896

Simulium—Cont'd
  morphology, 896
  onchocerciasis, 894, 895, 896, 897
  pinta, 227
  xenodiagnosis, 1541
Sinaloa fever, 732
Siphunculina funicola, tropical ulcer, 652
Sistrurus, 1241
Sitatunga, African sleeping sickness, 157
Sixth venereal disease, 387
Skates, 1271
Skin, African sleeping sickness, 158, 160, 161
  amebiasis, 45
    abscess, 49
  bartonellosis, 627 ff, 632, 635
  blastomyces, 1516
  boutonneuse fever, 737
  cancer, incidence, 1368
  care of, 1441
  Chagas' disease, 149
  cholera, 486, 487
  chromoblastomycosis, 1157, 1168, 1169
    examination, 1167
  coccidioides, 1515
  creeping eruption, 838, 839
  Demodex folliculorum, 1222
  dermatophytes, *see* Dermatophytes
  elephantiasis, bancroftian, 879
  enterobiasis, 811
  fatty acid deficiency, 1289
  filariasis, elephantiasis, 879
  fungi, examination, 1113
  Haverhill fever, 265, 266
  histoplasmosis, 1192
  hookworm disease, 830
  keratomycosis nigricans palmaris, 1123
  larva migrans, 838, 839
  leishmaniasis, *see* Leishmaniasis, mucocutaneous
  leprosy, 588, 591 ff, 594, 595, 596, 598, 599
  mal morado, 900
  malaria, 92
  microfilaria, examination, 915
  mites, 1216, 1217
  mycetoma, 1134, 1136, 1140, 1141
  myiasis, treatment, 1202
  onchocerciasis, 898, 903
    biopsy, 1540
    pathology, 912
  Oroya fever, 627 ff, 632, 635
  pediculoides ventricosus, 1218
  pellagra, 1347, 1358
  pinta, 210, 215, 219, 221, 222, 223, 224, 225
    later phase, 218
    treponemata, 227
  pityriasis versicolor, 1121
  plague, bubonic, 457, 460
  rhinosporidiosis, 1172
  rickettsialpox, 787, 790
  salmonellosis, 521
  Sarcoptes scabiei, 1220, 1221
  Schistosoma mansoni eggs, 1087
  schistosomiasis haematobia, 1056, 1058, 1059, 1060
    japonica, 1031, 1037, 1038
    mansoni, 1071, 1077, 1078, 1087
  scorpionism, 1227
  sodoku, 259, 261
  spider bite, 1234, 1235
  spotted fever, 733, 734, 735
  sprue, 1307
  strongyloidiasis, 817
  sunburn, 1422
  sunlight, 1424
  temperatures, Tropics, 1417, 1427
  test, blastomycosis, 1188
    brucellosis, 429
    chromoblastomycosis, 1168
    cysticercosis, 1546
    dracontiasis, 933
    echinococcosis, 1546
    fascioliasis, children, 1026
    filariasis, 1547
      bancroftian, 885
    guinea worm, 933
    helminthiasis, 1546
    leishmaniasis, 188
    leprosy, 589, 607
    lymphogranuloma venereum, 404
    psittacosis, 353

- Skin test—Cont'd
    - schistosomiasis, 1546
      - haematobia, 1061
      - japonica, 1042
      - mansoni, 1095
    - scleroma respiratorium, 683
    - South American blastomycosis, 1188
    - trichinosis, 863, 1547
    - tularemia, 440
    - virus diseases, 305
  - tinea, 1120
    - albigena, 1126, 1127
    - imbricata, 1116, 1119
    - nigra, 1123
  - trench fever, 703, 705
  - Treponema pertenue in, 270
  - trichinosis, 858
  - tsutsugamushi, 741, 744
  - typhoid, 512, 517, 566
  - typhus, 712, 713, 726
  - vitamin B, 1278
    - B₂ deficiency, 1277
    - C deficiency, 1281
    - H, 1280
  - yaws, 272, 273, 274, 275, 279, 286-289
- Skunk, snake control, 1255
- Sleeping equipment, expeditions, 1445
  - sickness, African, *see* African sleeping sickness, 156 ff
    - Rhodesian, 162
- Slides, cleaning, 1466
- Slipatham, 1130
- Smallpox, 1364
  - antibiotics, 1410
  - bacitracin, 1409
  - hemagglutination, 305
  - immunization, 11
  - incidence, 1453
  - plague, 460
  - rickettsialpox, 790
  - vaccination, 1442
  - vaccine, 1365
- SN 7618, expeditions, 1447
- Snail control, 1046, 1074
    - canal building, 1076
      - clearance, 1075
    - copper carbonate, 1075
      - sulfate, 1075
    - lime, 1075
    - plants, 1074, 1075
  - destruction, 1002
  - Echinostoma ilocanum, 1006
  - elimination, 1046, 1074
    - Balanites aegyptiaca, 1074
  - fascioliasis, 1019
  - Fasciolopsis buski, 1000, 1002
  - heterophyiasis, 1004
  - irrigation, 1073, 1075
  - metagonimiasis, 1005
  - paragonimiasis, 998
  - resistance, 1075
  - Schistosoma haematobium, 1052
    - intercalatum, 1066
    - japonicum, 1031
    - mansoni, 1070, 1072
- Snailicide, 1046
- Snakes, 1238 ff, *see also* Ophiotoxicosis
  - anavenin, 1254
  - antivenin, children, 1258
  - bead, 1240
  - bite, alcohol, 1256
    - antivenin, 1256 ff, 1257
      - dosage, 1258
    - blindness, 1252
    - caffeine, 1256
    - death rate, 1252
    - glucose, 1259
    - incidence, 1252, 1253
    - paralysis, 1259
    - potassium permanganate, 1256
    - prevention, 1254
    - prognosis, 1252, 1259
    - relapse, 1259
    - Ringer's solution, 1259
    - saline, 1259
    - strychnine, 1256
    - suction, 1256
    - symptoms, 1248, 1250
    - tourniquet, 1256
- Snakes, bite—Cont'd
    - treatment, 1255-1259
      - antivenin, 1257
  - black, 1239, 1255
  - bothropotoxin, 1248
  - brown, 1239
  - classification, 1238
  - coagulin, 1248
  - control, 1254
  - coral, 1240
    - habits, 1244
    - poison apparatus, 1246
    - symptoms, 1250
  - crotoxin, 1248
  - fangs, 1246
  - habits, 1244
  - king, 1255
  - land, 1239
  - mongoose, 1255
  - pit vipers, 1240-1243
  - pitless vipers, 1243, 1244
  - poison, *see* Snake bite *and* Snake venom
    - apparatus, 1246
    - inoculation, 1246
  - poisoning, death rate, 1252
  - poisonous, 1431
  - proteroglyphodonts, 1238, 1239, 1240
  - sea, 1239
    - Indian, symptoms, 1250
    - venom, volume, 1247
  - skunks, 1255
  - solenotodonts, 1240-1244
  - sparganiasis, 992
  - stab, *see* Snake bite
  - strike, 1246, 1247
  - tiger, antivenin, 1257, 1258
    - venom, 1249
  - tooth formation, classification, 1238
  - vaccination, 1254
  - venenation, 1238 ff, 1248
    - prevention, 1253
    - treatment, 1255-1259
  - venom, 1246, 1252
    - anticoagulating, 1249
    - anavenin, 1254
    - bothropotoxin, 1248
    - classification, 1247
    - coagulin, 1248, 1249
    - composition, 1247
    - crotoxin, 1248
    - death rate, 1252
    - fibrin formation, 1249
    - hemolysin, 1249
    - lecithinase, 1249
    - neurolysin, 1249
    - neutralization, 1256 ff
    - preservation, 1247, 1248
    - proteolysins, 1249, 1250
    - quantity, antivenin, 1258
    - thrombin formation, 1249
    - tropisms, 1248 ff
    - volume, 1247
- Snyder and Liu vaccine, typhus, 752
- Sodium antimony pyrocatecholdisulfonate, *see* Fuadin
  - arsenite, leishmaniasis, 190
  - bicarbonate, expeditions, 1447
  - bismuth thioglycollate, yaws, 294
  - fluoroacetate ("1080"), rat control, 469
    - rodenticide, 762
  - propionate, tinea imbricata, 1119
  - thiosulfate, pityriasis versicolor, 1123
  - sulfaphthalidine, amebiasis, 62
- Sodoku, 256 ff, 257 ff, *see also* Ratbite fever *and* Haverhill fever
  - animal inoculation, 257, 263
  - blood picture, 262, 1492
  - diagnosis, animal inoculation, 257, 258
    - laboratory, 262
  - exanthem, 261
  - fever, 260
  - heart, 262
  - incubation period, 260
  - pathlogy, 259
  - prognosis, 263
  - prophylaxis, 263
  - reservoirs, 258
  - serology, 263
  - skin, 259, 261

Sodoku—Cont'd
  symptoms, 260
    nervous, 261
  transmission, 258
  treatment, 263, 1388
  urine, 261
Solar heat load, 1424
Solenoglyphodonts, *see* Solenotodonts, 1240
Solenopsis cyloni, 1198
Solenotodonts, 1240-1244
Solganol-B Oleosum, skin test, rhinoscleroma, 683
  scleroma respiratorium, 684
Solifuge, 1222
Solpugida, 1222
Sonne dysentery, 535, *see also* Shigella sonnei
Sontochin, malaria, 1385
Soricino, 706
South American blastomycosis, 1178 ff, *see also* Blastomycosis, South American
Sparganiasis, 991
  diagnosis, 995
  symptoms, 994
  transmission, 995
  treatment, 995
Sparganum, 991 ff
  Diphyllobothrium latum, 990
  mansoni, 992
  proliferum, sparganiasis, 995
  raillieti, 992
Sparrow, psittacosis, 351
  vaccine, murine typhus, 755
Spencer and Parker vaccine, spotted fever, 756
Sphyraena, 1269
Spiders, 1230 ff, *see also* Araneism, 1231
  antivenin, 1236
  bite, blackwidow, blood picture, 1483
    liver extract, 1236
    symptoms, 1234
    transfusions, 1236
    treatment, 1235, 1236
  blackwidow, 1232, 1233, *see also* Latrodectus mactans
  habitat, 1231
  hour-glass, 1232
  pedipalpids, 1222
  poison apparatus, 1233
  solpugida, 1222
  venom, 1198, 1234
    antivenin, 1236
    apparatus, 1233
    glands, 1232
    inoculation, 1233
Spinal cord, encephalitis, 376
    psittacosis, 354
    schistosomiasis haematobia, 1056, 1058, 1060
    sun rays, 1425
  fluid, African sleeping sickness, 158, 163, 164, 168
    encephalitis, 372, 373
    helminthiasis, 1540
    leptospira, 244
      antibodies, 246
    metagonimiasis, 1005
    relapsing fever, 234
    salmonellosis, 525, 555
    sand-fly fever, 337
    trichinosis, 861
      examination, 864
    yaws, 285
Spirals, Trichophyton, 1114
Spirillum, antibiotics, 1410
  cholerae asiaticae, 479
  minus, 256
    animal inoculation, 257, 258, 263
    description, 257
    serology, 263
    sodoku, 256
    tests for, 262
    transmission, 258
Spirochaeta babylonensis, transmission, 1209
  carateum, 205
  icterogenes, 236
  icterohaemorrhagiae, 236, 250 ff
  laverani, 257
  morsus muris, 257
    ratbite fever, 256
  muris, 257
  petit, 257
Spirochaeta—Cont'd
  relapsing fever, 231
  schaudinni, tropical ulcer, 646
  stain, 1517-1519
    blood films, 1472
  tropical ulcers, 646, 647, 648, 653
Spirochaetaceae, 236 ff
Spirocid, amebiasis, 57
Spirometra, 991
Spirostomum ambiguum, size, 14
Spleen, African sleeping sickness, 160, 161
  amebic abscess, 49
  bartonellosis, 632, 633
  blastomycosis, 1182
  brucellosis, 423, 424
  Chagas' disease, 142
  fixative for, 1502
  histoplasmosis, 1192
  kala-azar, 195
  Leishmania donovani culture, 194
  leishmaniasis, visceral, 195
  leprosy, 601
  malaria, 85
  methionine deficiency, 1288
  Oroya fever, 632, 633
  psittacosis, 354
  puncture, leishmaniasis, visceral, 198
  "Q" fever, 699, 700
  relapsing fever, 233
  shigellosis, 534, 573
  schistosomiasis, intercalata, 1066
    japonica, 1035, 1038, 1039
    mansoni, 1086, 1091
  trench fever, 704
  tsutsugamushi, 744
  typhoid, 512, 516, 563, 566
  Weil's disease, 251
Splendore's disease, 1178 ff
Splenectomy, brucellosis, 434
Splenic index, malaria, 93
Splenomegaly, endemic, schistosomiasis, 1086
  idiopathic, 1544
  tropical, 193
  typhoid, 563
Spoewslang, 1240
Sporangiospores, 1104
Sporangium, 1104
  rhinosporidiosis, 1172
  Rhinosporidium seeberi, 1172, 1173, 1174
Sporotrichosis, clubs, 1148
  leishmaniasis, 179, 188
  treatment, 1406
  tropical ulcer, 657
  tularemia, 438
  yaws, 287
Sporotrichum, 1522
  schencki, yaws, 287
Sporozoa, 32 ff
  description, 18, 32
  muris, ratbite fever, 256
  Plasmodium, 71
  structure, 14
Sporozoite rate, malaria, 93
Sporulation, Acrotheca type, 1165
  Fonsecaea type, 1165
  Hormodendrum type, 1163, 1164
  Phialophora type, 1165
Spotted disease, 204
Spotted fever, blood picture, 734, 1493
      vessels, 735
    boutonneuse fever, 736
    Chloromycetin, 748
    clinical description, 733
    complications, 734
    dengue, 336
    diagnosis, 734
    distribution, 731
    dogs, 732
    epidemiology, 732
    exanthem, 733
    fever, 733, 734
    history, 692, 694
    immune serum, 749
    immunity, 734
    incidence, 731
    incubation period, 733
    para-aminobenzoic acid, 747
    pathology, 735
    penicillin, 747
    prognosis, 733, 735

Spotted fever—Cont'd
    prophylaxis, 766
    reservoirs, 732
    rickettsialpox, 790
    Rocky Mountain, *see* Spotted fever
    sequelae, 734
    skin, 735
    symptoms, 733 ff
    ticks, 732
    transmission, 732, 1207, 1209, 1210, 1212, 1213
    treatment, 745 ff
    tsutsugamushi, 745
    types, 733
    urine, 734
    variants, 735
    vaccine, 756
    vectors, 732, *see also* Spotted fever, transmission
    Weil-Felix reaction, 734
  sickness, 204
Sprue, 1299 ff
  adrenal cortex, 1303
  amebiasis, 50
  anemia, 1308, *see also* Sprue, blood picture
  anorexia nervosa, 1310
  barium clumping, 1312
  basal metabolism, 1319
  blood chemistry, 1314, 1318, 1319
    picture, 1315, 1495
    pressure, 1318
    sugar, 1318, 1319
    transfusions, 1326
    volume, 1318
  bones, 1310
    marrow, 1315, 1322
  calcium, 1303
    deficiency, 1301
  cancer, 1310
  carbohydrate metabolism, 1318
  cardiothoracic ratio, 1318
  Castellani's rhamnose test, 1308
  celiac disease, 1300, 1309
  chyle obstruction, 1310
  clinical picture, 1305-1307
  Danzer ratio, 1318
  deficiency pattern, 1312, 1314
    state, 1304
  diagnosis, 1307, 1308
    differential, 1308
    laboratory, 1311
  diarrhea, 1307
  diet, 1304, 1305, 1323, 1325, 1326
  differentiation, 10
  distribution, 1299
  epidemiology, 1300
  etiology, 1301
  Extralin, 1323, 1324
  fat absorption, 1303, 1313
    in stools, 1311
  folic acid, 1326-1330, 1304, 1317
      bone marrow, 1317
  gastric chromoscopy, 1308
    analysis, 1311
  gastroscopic findings, 1311
  glucose absorption, 1303
    tolerance curve, 1319
  heart, 1317, 1318
  hemodynamics, 1317
  heredity, 1304
  histamine intoxication, 1302
  history, 1299
  Hodgkin's disease, 1310
  hookworm anemia, 1305
  idiopathic steatorrhea, 1309
  ileum, 1321
  incidence, 1299, 1300, 1301
  infantile, 1309
  infection, 1301
  intestines, 1312
  iron, 1323
  jejuno-ileal inefficiency, 1302
  laboratory examination, 1307, 1310
  liver extract, 1317, 1323, 1324
      autolyzed, 1323, 1324
      glucose tolerance curve, 1319
  metabolism, basal, 1319
    carbohydrate, 1318, 1319
    protein, 1319
  mesenteric glands, 1310

Sprue—Cont'd
  moulage sign, 1312
  nontropical, 1299, 1309
  osteomalacia, 1310
  osteoporosis, 1310
  pancreatitis, 1309
  pathology, 1320
  pellagra, 1309
  pernicious anemia, 1299, 1300, 1301, 1311, 1312, 1315
      differential diagnosis, 1308
  pituitary, 1302
  phosphorus, 1303
  prognosis, 1330
  protein metabolism, 1319
  protopathic, 1307
  rectosigmoid, 1312
  reticulocyte response, 1324
  rhamnose test, Castellani, 1308
  shigellosis, 542
  Simmonds' cachexia, 1302
    disease, 1310
  skeleton, 1310
  skin, 1307
  Sprulac, 1325
  stomach, 1311, 1320
  stools, 1307, 1311
  sugar curve, 1319
  symptoms, 1305-1307
    frequency, 1306
  syndrome, 1299
  teeth, 1307
  termites, 1303, 1304
  tongue, 1307
  treatment, 1323-1330
    reactions, 1324, 1325
    response, 1324
  tropical macrocytic anemia, 1309
  tuberculosis, 1310
  types, 1307
  Ventriculin, 1323, 1324
  vital capacity, 1318
  vitamin B_2, 1304, 1323
  x-ray, 1312
  yeast, 1301
Sprulac, 1325
Sputum, helminthiasis, 1540
  plague pneumonia, 466
  paragonimiasis, 999
  Paragonimus westermani, 998
  schistosomiasis haematobia, 1056
    intercalata, 1066
  trichinosis, examination, 864
Squirrels, plague, 450, 451
  psittacosis, 350
  relapsing fever, 232
St. Louis encephalitis, *see* Encephalitis, St. Louis
Stains, 1549-1571, *see also* under each name
  acid-fast, tissue, 1521
  alum-carmine, 1549
  ameba, 1560
  aniline blue, 1508
  Azan, 1507, 1508
  azocarmine, 1508
  azur II-eosin, 1556
  Barber and Komp, malaria, 1474
  blood, 1467, 1469
    Saisawa-Sugawara, 1568
  Bonilla-Naar, Congo red, 1554
  borax carmine, 1553
  carmine, acid, 1553
      alum, 1549
    borax, 1553
    picro, 1566
  celestin blue-hemalum, 1507
  ciliates, 1565
  cochineal, alum, 1549
  collagen, 1507, 1508
  Congo red, 1554
  connective tissue, 1506, 1507
  creosote-fuchsin, 1521
  D'Antoni, 1554
  Dominici, 1508, 1509
  Donaldson lugol-eosin, 1555
  eosinol, 1513, 1514
  eosin-orange G, 1508
  fast green, 1506
  Feng, 1556
  Field, 1473, 1474

Stains—Cont'd
  flagellates, 1565
  fluoran-thiazin, 1508
  frozen sections, 1513
  Gage, 1557
  Giemsa, *see* Giemsa stain
  Gram, tissues, 1519-1521
  Hansen, trioxyhematein, 1506
  Harris hematoxylin, 1513
  Heidenhain hematoxylin, 1559
  helminth eggs, 1559
  hemalum, 1556
    Mayer, 1507, 1564
  hematoxylin, Harris, 1513
    Heidenhain, 1559
    Johnson, 1560
    Mallory, 1564
    phosphotungstic acid, 1564
  hematozoa, 1553
  Jenner, 1560
  J.S.B., 1560
  Larson and Levin, 1506
  larva, helminth, Bonilla-Naar, 1554
  Leishman, 1562
  Leishmania, 1560
    donovani, 1561
  Lendrum celestin blue-hemalum, 1507
  Lugol, 1563
    -eosin, 1555
  malaria, 1562
  Mallory-Heidenhain, 1507, 1508
    phosphotungstic acid-hematoxylin, 1564
  Mann-Dominici, 1508
  Masson trichrome, 1506
  Mastigophora, 1564
  Mayer hemalum, 1507, 1564
    paracarmin, 1565
  May-Gruenwald-Giemsa, 1473
  methyl green pyronin, 1556
  methylene blue, Loeffler, 1519
  microfilaria, 1556, 1568
  museum material, 1564
  orange G-eosin, 1508
  paracarmin, Mayer, 1565
  picrocarmine, 1566
  Ponceau-fuchsin, 1506
  preservation in Tropics, 1505
  proglottid, 1554
  protozoa, 1559, 1560
    cysts, 1555
    stools, 1526
  pyronin methyl green, 1556
  Quensel, 1567
  Rhizopoda, 1564
  spirochete, 1517
  Stevenel, 1569
  stools, 1526
  supravital, 1477
  thick drop, 1473, *see also* Thick drop
  tissue, *see* under Tissue
  Treponemata, 1517-1519
  trichrome, 1506
  trioxyhematein, 1506
  trypanosomes, 1567
  Wright, *see* Wright stain, 1469
Stanton's disease, 1195
Staphylococcus aureus, ratbite fever, 256
    tropical ulcer, 650
  clubs, 1148
Statistical surveys, 1457
Status thymicolymphaticus, 1339
Steatorrhea, idiopathic, 1302
    sprue, 1309
  intestines, 1312
  pancreatogenous, sprue, 1309
  sprue, 1310
Steatosis, Chagas' disease, 142
Stegomyia aegyptia, 313
  fasciata, 313 *footnote*
    dengue, 333
  simpsoni, yellow fever, 319
Sternal puncture, 1475
Stethomyia, 103, 104
Stevenel stain, 1569
Stibial, lymphogranuloma venereum, 405
Stibophen, schistosomiasis haematobia, 1063
Stibosan, leishmaniasis, 1385
Stilbamidine, African sleeping sickness, 165, 167
  kala-azar, 200
Stilbene-diamidine, trypanosomiasis, 1384, 1385
Sting ray, 1268
Stoker's cramps, 1429
Stoll, Norman R., presidential address, 7
Stomach, pellagra, 1348, 1358
  sprue, 1311, 1320
  typhoid, 562
Stomachida, 798
Stomoxys calcitrans, encephalitis, 371
    leishmaniasis, 192
Stone, urinary, 1367
Stools, acetic-acid-ether concentration, 1532
  amebiasis, 43, 44, 45, 46
    examination, 53
    perforations, 47
  Caldwell and Caldwell egg counts, 1534
  cholera, 484, 486
    culture, 492
    examination, 491, 1527, 1528
  Clayton-Lane flotation, 1537
  collection, 1524, 1531
    surveys, 1529
  concentration, acetic acid-ether, 1532
    Faust method, 1526
    Lane direct, 1532
    Loughlin and Spitz, 1533
    saline-aerosol-ether-xylol, 1533
    Telemann and Rivas, 1533
    water centrifugalization, 1532
    zinc flotation, 1526
  coproculture, 1542
  culture, 1527
    salmonellosis, 554
    typhoid, 567
  D'Antoni iodine, 1526
  dysentery, gangrenous, 537
    Sonne, 535
  egg counts, 1534, 1535
      coefficient, 1535
      negative examination, 1535
  enteric organisms, typing, 1528
  enterobiasis, 1537
  examination, 1526-1529
    cholera, 1527, 1528
    Clayton-Lane flotation, 1537
    concentration, 1532-1534
    eggs, 1532, 1533
    enterobiasis, 1537
    helminths, 1533
      larvae, 1532
    Kourí, 1532
    Loughlin and Spitz, 1533
    macroscopic, 1532
    microscopic, 1532
    negative, 1535
    protozoa, 1526, 1533
    saline-aerosol-ether-xylol concentration, 1533
    Salmonella, 1527
    schistosomiasis mansoni, 1535
    Shigella, 1527
    Telemann and Ricas concentration, 1533
    typhoid, 1527
  fixatives, 1525
  fly larvae, 1200
  Hamburg method egg counts, 1534
  helminth egg counting, 1534, 1535
    in, 1532, 1533
  Lane concentration, 1532
  "meat washings," shigellosis, 537
  Necator americanus, 814, 816
  pellagra, 1349, 1357
  pernicious anemia, 1311
  postcathartic, collection, 1524
  preserving fluids, 1525
  protozoa, examination, 1526
  protozoan cysts, concentration, 1533
  pseudoparasites, 796
  rectosigmoidoscopic examination, 1524
  "red currant jelly," shigellosis 537
  saline-aerosol-ether-xylol concentration, 1533
    flotation, 1534, 1537
  salmonellosis, culture, 554
      examination, 1527
    typing, 1528
  schistosomiasis haematobia, 1061
      S. intercalata, 1064
    intercalata, 1066
    japonica, 1040, 1041
    mansoni, 1090, 1093, 1535

Stools—Cont'd
  shigellosis, 536, 537, 541, 1527
    children, 574
    chronic, 538
    classical, 537
    cytology, 541
    food poisoning, 535
  sprue, 1307, 1311
  staining, 1526
  Strongyloides stercoralis, 814, 816
  taeniasis, treatment, 1394
  Telemann and Rivas concentration, 1533
  "tomato soup," 535
  trichinosis, 856
    examination, 864
  Trichuris trichiura, counting parasites, 842
  typhoid examination, 1527
  water concentration, 1532
  zinc flotation, 1526
Stouman and Falk indices, 1458, 1459
Stovarsol, amebiasis, 57
  Chagas' disease, 154
  framboesia, 293, 1388
  relapsing fever, 1387
  yaws, 293, 1388
Stramonium, encephalitis, 377
Streptobacillary infection, *see* Haverhill fever
Streptobacillus moniliformis, 263 ff
  animal inoculation, 264
  culture, 264
  Haverhill fever, 256
  ratbite fever, 257
  reservoirs, 264
  transmission, 265
  variants, 265
Streptocid, lymphogranuloma venereum, 407
Streptococcus infections, 1365
  lactis R, folic acid, 1280
  pyogenes, tropical ulcer, 650
Streptomycin, 1408
  allergy, 1408
  BAL, 1410
  brucellosis, 432, 1378
  efficacy, 1410
  Glucomycin, 1408
  granuloma inguinale, 415
  mycetoma, 1156
  mycoses, 1406
  plague, 468, 1372
  "Q" fever, 701
  reactions, 1408
  rickettsioses, 748
  salmonellosis, 526
  scleroma respiratorium, 684
  sulfonamides, 1410
  tuberculosis, 1408
  tularemia, 441, 1372
  typhoid, 526, 1382
Streptothrix madurae, history, 1131
  muris ratti, 263
    ratbite fever, 256, 257
  teraxerus cepapi, ratbite fever, 256
Strongylata, 819 ff
Strongyloides, 817
  larvae, Faust concentration, 1533
  stercoralis, 813 ff, *see also* Strongyloidiasis
    coproculture, 1542
    description, 813, 814
    eggs, 814, 816, 817
    habitat, 814, 816
    history, 813
    incidence, 9
    larva, 814, 816
    life cycle, 813, 814
      span, 817
    Necator americanus, differences, 814
    number, 817
    sputum, 1540
Strongyloidiasis, 813 ff, *see also* Strongyloides
  anthelminthics, 1399, 1400
  blood picture, 1496
  carbon tetrachloride, 1399
  chenopodium, 1399
  diagnosis, 816, 817
    coproculture, 1542
    larvae, 814
  distribution, 813
  gentian violet, 818, 1400
  hexamethylene-pararosaniline chloride, 818
  hexylresorcinol, 1400
Strongyloidiasis—Cont'd
  prophylaxis, 819
  reinfestation, 817
  skin, 817
  stools, 814, 816
  symptoms, 817
  thymol, 1400
  treatment, 818, 1399, 1400
Strongylus caninus, 839
  cuadridendatus, 821
  duodenalis, 821
Strychnine, snake bite, 1256
Stubli concentration, filariasis, 1539
Subtilin, 1409
Subungual grooves, enterobiasis, 1536
Succinea, fascioliasis, 1019
Succinylsulfathiazole, cholera, 497
Sucuruçu-de-patioba, 1242
Sugar cane, cutters' fever, 737
Sulfadiazine, amebiasis, 58, 62
  blastomycosis, 1188, 1189
  brucellosis, 432
  cholera, 497
  expeditions, 1447
  lymphogranuloma venereum, 406
  mycetoma, 1156
  plague, 467
  psittacosis, 358
  salmonellosis, 527, 555
    children, 558
  shigellosis, 544, 576, 577, 1380
    prophylaxis, 547
  typhoid, 527
Sulfaglycine blastomycosis, 1188
Sulfaguanidine, cholera, 497
  salmonellosis, children, 558
  shigellosis, 544, 576, 577, 1380
Sulfamerazine, blastomycosis, 1188, 1189
  plague, 467
Sulfanilamide, actinomycosis, 1406
  bartonellosis, 636
  expeditions, 1447
  lymphogranuloma venereum, 406, 1383
  maduromycosis, 1406
  mycetoma, 1156
  mycosis, 1406
  Nocardia asteroides, 1155
  tropical ulcer, 660
Sulfaphthalidine, shigellosis, 544
    prophylaxis, 547
Sulfapyridine, bartonellosis, 636
  salmonellosis, 527, 555
  typhoid, 527
Sulfarsenol, Chagas' disease, 154
  tropical ulcer, 660
  framboesia, 1388
Sulfarsphenamine, reactions, 291
  relapsing fever, 1387
  yaws, 292, 1388
Sulfasuxidine, expeditions, 1447
  lymphogranuloma venereum, 407, 408
  salmonellosis, children, 558
  shigellosis, 544, 576, 1380
Sulfathiazole, blastomycosis, 1189
  brucellosis, 433
  ecthyma, 657
  lymphogranuloma venereum, 406, 407, 408
  mycetoma, 1156
  plague, 467
  pellagra, 1355
  salmonellosis, 526, 527
    children, 558
  shigellosis, 576, 577, 1380
  tropical ulcer, 658
  tularemia, 1372, 1373
  typhoid, 526, 527
Sulfavibus, lymphogranuloma venereum, 407, 408
Sulfonamides, amebiasis, 58, 59, 60, 62
  actinomycosis, 1406
  antibiotics, 1410
  bartonellosis, 636
  blastomycosis, 1188, 1189
  brucellosis, 1378
  cholera, 496, 497
  chromoblastomycosis, 1170
  expeditions, 1447
  filariasis, bancroftian, 887
  iodoform, tropical ulcer, 658, 661

Sulfonamides—Cont'd
  lymphogranuloma venereum, 389, 406, 407, 1383
  maduromycosis, 1406
  mycetoma, 1155, 1156
  Nocardia asteroides, 1155
  plague, 467, 1372
  psittacosis, 358
  relapsing fever, 1387
  rickettsioses, 746
  salmonellosis, 526, 527, 555, 1379
    children, 558
  shigellosis, 543, 544, 576, 577, 1379, 1380, 1381
    children, 558
  tropical ulcer, 659, 660
  tularemia, 441, 1372, 1373
  typhoid, 526, 527
  virus diseases, 309
Sulfone drugs, leprosy, 612 ff, 1373, 1373 ff, 1377, 1378
Sulfur, mites, 1218
  mycosis, 1406, 1407
  ointment, expeditions, 1447
  Sarcoptes scabiei, 1221, 1404
  scabies, 1221, 1404
  tongue, 456
Sunburn, 1422, 1423
  clothing, 1439
  conjunctiva, 1440
  erythema, heart, 1424
  eye, photophthalmia, 1423
  fever, 1424
  protection, 1422
Sunglasses, 1440
Sunlight, absorption, 1421, 1424
  brain, 1425
  cancer, 1422
  cataract, 1423
  clothing, 1439
  distribution, spectral, 1420, 1421
  eyes, 1423-1425
  physiologic effects, 1419-1425
    direct, 1422
  reflection, 1421
  spinal cord, 1425
  therapeutic action, 1424
  vitamin D, 1422
Sunstroke, 1429
Suntan, 1422
Supravital staining, 1477
Suramin B.P., African sleeping sickness, 166
Surgery, tissue cutting and staining, 1516
Surgical supplies, expeditions, 1448
Surucuçu-de-fogo, 1243
  habits, 1246
Surucuçu-pico-de-jaca, 1243
Surucutinga, 1243
Sututo-gusano, 1202
Sweating, 1418
Swimmer's itch, 1059, 1078
Swineherd's disease, 381
  leptospira, 247
Sylvilagus nuttallii nuttallii, plague, 451
Synanceia verrucosa, 1268
Synthalin, trypanosomiasis, 1383, 1384
Syphilis, anemia, 1290
  bacitracin, 1409
  blastomycosis, 1185
  Bory chancre, 390
  Frei test, 389
  granuloma inguinale, 414
  immunity, yaws, 285
  leishmaniasis, 188
  lymphogranuloma venereum, 403
  malaria, serology, 98
  pinta, 228
  sodoku, 261
  spirochete stain, 1517
  tinea albigena, 1127
  tropical ulcer, 657
  yaws, differentiation, 284, 285
Syringomyelia, leprosy, 605
    histamine test, 608

T

TAB, typhoid, 572
  vaccine, 530, 531
Tabanidae, leishmaniasis, 175
Tabanus punctifer, encephalitis, 371
Tabardillo, 706
Tâche noire, 736
Taenia aegyptiaca, 966
  dentata, 939, 949, 987
  echinococcus, 952
  madagascariensis, 985
  nana, 952, 966
  proglottids, stain, Bonilla-Naar, 1554
  saginata, 938 ff, *see also* Taeniasis saginata
    appendix, 941, 943, 945
    Bacigalupo phenomenon, 939
    cysticercosis, *see* Cysticercosis
    Cysticercus bovis, 944
    description, 939
    distribution, 938
    eggs, 941, 942
      examination, 1536
    gall bladder, 941
    history, 938
    immunity, 944
    incidence, 7, 938
    larva, 944
    life cycle, 944
      span, 944
    scolex, examination, 949
    symptoms, 945 ff
    Taenia solium, difference, 942, 945
    transmission, 944
  solium, 949, 950
    cysticercosis, *see* Cysticercosis, 946 ff
    description, 950
    distribution, 938, 949
    eggs, 950
    host, 950
    incidence, 7, 938, 949
    larva, 950
    life cycle, 950
    scolex examination, 949
    Taenia saginata differences, 942, 945
    transmission, 950
    treatment, 948
  stain, 1549, 1554
  synonyms, 939, 949, 970, 986, 987
Taeniasis, 938 ff
  blood picture, 1496
  cysticercosis, 946 ff
  saginata, 938, *see also* Taenia saginata
    appendix, 941, 943, 945
    carbon tetrachloride, 948
    Dryopteris filix-mas, 948
    eye, 946
    filix-mas, 948
    gall bladder, 941
    gastrointestinal disorders, 945
    liver, 946
    male fern, 948
    meningitis, 946
    nervous system, 946
    prophylaxis, 949
    psychoneurosis, 946
    schizophrenia, 946
    symptoms, 945
    Tenicida, 948
    transmission, 949
    treatment, 948
  solium, 949, *see also* Taenia solium *and* Cysticercosis
    Aspidium, 951
    autoinfestation, 946
    brain, 947
    cysticercosis, 946 ff
    diagnosis, 951
    filix-mas, 951
    localization, 950
    male fern, 951
    pathology, 950
    pelletierine, 951
    prophylaxis, 951
    symptoms, 951
    treatment, 948, 951
Taenifuges, 951
Taeniorhynchus titillans, encephalitis, 371
  mediocanellatus, 939
Taeniura grabata, 1268
Tamagá, 1241, 1242
Tamiasciurus douglasii albolimbatus, plague, 451
Tanabe and Chiba medium, 1569

Tapeworms, *see also* under each worm, 938 ff
  beef, *see* Taenia saginata, 938 ff
  broad, *see* Diphyllobothriasis, 987
  dog, *see* Dipylidium caninum, 973 ff
  dwarf, *see* Hymenolepis nana, 965 ff
  Echinococcosis, *see* Echinococcus granulosus
  fish, *see* Diphyllobothrium latum, 987 ff
  head, examination, 949
  incidence, 7
  Inermicapsifer cubensis, 976 ff
  pork, *see* Taenia solium, 949
  Raillietina, 983 ff, *see also* Inermicapsifer cubensis, 977
  rat, 968, 969, *see also* Hymenolepis diminuta, fraterna, 970
  sparganiasis, 991
  treatment, 948, 951
Tapir face, 187
Tarantula, 1231
Tarsonenoidea, 1218 ff
Tartar emetic, clonorchiasis, 1403
  contraindications, 1096
  dracontiasis, 934
  filariasis, 1400
  granuloma inguinale, 416
  heart, 1063
  kidneys, 1063
  leishmaniasis, 1384
    cutaneous, 189
  liver, 1063
  lymphogranuloma venereum, 405
  onchocerciasis, 1401
  paragonimiasis, 999
  schistosomiasis, 1402
    haematobia, 1062
    japonica, 1043
    mansoni, 1063, 1095, 1096
  scleroma respiratorium, 684
  toxicity, 1063
  tropical ulcer, 661, 662
  tuberculosis, effect, 1063
Taterona lobengulae, plague, 447
Tatu, Chagas' disease, 134
Taya, 1241
Teague and Clurman mixture, 554
Teeth, calcium deficiency, 1294
  nutritional edema, 1292
  sprue, 1307
  vitamin A deficiency, 1275
    C deficiency, 1281, 1282
    D deficiency, 1284
Telemann and Rivas concentration, stools, 1533
Telosporidium, ratbite fever, 256
Temperature, *see also* Fever
  body, heat sickness, 1429
    Tropics, 1427
  normal, maintenance, 1417 ff
  regulation, 1415-1417
  tropical, 1414, 1415
    physiologic reactions, 1417 ff
Tenebrio molitor, canthariasis, 1199
    Hymenolepis diminuta, 971
      nana, 967, 968
    myiasis, 1201
  obscurus, Hymenolepis nana, 967, 968
Tenicida, inermicapsiferiasis, 983
  taeniasis, 948
Tepotzo, 1241
Teraxerus cepapi, ratbite fever, 256
Terciopelo, 1241
Termites, sprue, 1303, 1304
  tropical ulcer, 652
Terramycin, 1410 *footnote*
  cholera, 498
  rickettsialpox, 793
  tularemia, 441 *footnote*
Testosterone, cholera, 498, 499
    renal failure, 489
Tetanus, bee sting, 1267
  immunization, 11, 1442, 1443
  toxoid, expeditions, 1447
Tetmosal, Sarcoptes scabiei, 1221, 1404
Tetrachloroethylene, ancylostomiasis, 833, 834
  ancylostomiasis, 1399
  ascariasis, 806, 1398
  cestodiasis, 1395
  fascioliasis, 1403
  hookworm disease, 833, 834
  metagonimiasis, 1005
  necatoriasis, 833, 834
Tetraethylthiuranum monosulfide, Sarcoptes, 1221
Tetrodon, 1270
Tetrodontin, 1270
Textbooks on tropical medicine, 4
Thalamyd, *see* Phthalyl sulfacetimide
Thalassophryne maculosa, 1267
Thallophyta, 1102
Thallospores, 1103
Thecosoma haematobium, 1050
Theobaldia, 104
Therapeutics, 1371-1411, *see also* under each disease *and* Antibiotics
Theraphosa blondii, 1232
Thermic fever, 1429
Thestylus glasioui, 1225
Thiamine, 1277, *see* Vitamin B_1
  cholera, 499
  deficiency, 1434
    beriberi, 1333
    pellagra, 1341 ff
Thick drop, Boye's stain, 1553
    Chagas' disease, 137, 152
    Errecart solution, 1556
    examination, 1475
    Field stain, 1473, 1474
    formalin-acetic acid, 1557
    Giemsa stain, *see* Giemsa stain
    Knowles and Das Gupta method, 1561
    malaria, 78, 1475
    preparations, 1473
    Ruge solution, 1568
    Simons' solution, 1569
    Stevenel stain, 1569
    trypanosomes, 163
    Wright stain, 1475
Thio-bismol, yaws, 294
Thiocyanate, pediculosis, 1405
Thiodiphenylamine, dracontiasis, 935
Thioxane, Miracil, 1064
Thomomys bottae bottae, psittacosis, 350
Three-day fever, 337
Threonine, 1287
  requirements, 1288
Thrombin formation, snake venom, 1249
Thrombocytopenia, arsenicals, 291
Thrombophlebitis, Salmonella septicemia, 520
  typhoid, 520
Thrombosis, malaria, 85
Thymol, appendicitis, trichuriasis, 843
  ascariasis, 1398
  balantidiasis, 1393
  cestodiasis, 1395
  enterobiasis, 1396
  strongyloidiasis, 1400
  taeniasis, 948
  trichuriasis, 845
Thymus, methionine deficiency, 1288
Thyroid hypertrophy, 1297
Thyroiditis, parasitic, *see* Chagas' disease, 127 ff
Thyroxin, 1297
Tiamastus, plague, 451
Tiarapsylla, plague, 451
Tic polonga, 1243
    symptoms, 1251
    treatment, 1256
    venom, 1249
Ticks, 1203 ff
  bite fever, 735
  boutonneuse fever, 736
  control, 766, 1215
  DDT, 760, 766
  encephalitis, 377
  encephalomyelitis, 369
  fever, 731
    Colorado, blood picture, 1484
      transmission, 1211
  key, 1204
  leishmaniasis, 175
  life cycle, 1205
    span, 1205
  louping ill, 379
  prophylaxis, 1215
  relapsing fever, 232
  spotted fever, 732
  tularemia, 436
  virus, 300
Tiger-snake, 1239
Tijeretas, myiasis, 1201
Tiki-tiki, beriberi, 1338

Timbó, 1242
Tin, typhoid, 528
Tinca tinca, opisthorchiasis, 1017
Tinea albigena, 1126, 1127
  barbae, yaws, 287
  circinata, 1115
  corporis, tinea imbricata, 1117
    yaws, 287
  cruris, yaws, 287
  flava, 1120
  furfuracea, 1120
  granella, Hymenolepis diminuta, 971
  imbricata, 1115-1119
    diagnosis, differential, 1117
      laboratory, 1118
    distribution, 1115
    epidemiology, 1116
    etiology, 1115, 1117
    examination, scales, 1118
    hair, 1117
    history, 1115
    incidence, 1116
    nails, 1117
    pathology, 1119
    scales, examination, 1118
    skin, 1116, 1117, 1119
    symptoms, 1116
    treatment, 1119
  lionella, Hymenolepis diminuta, 971
  nigra, 1123
    diagnosis, laboratory, 1124
    treatment, 1126
  nigro-circinata, Castellani, 1120
  treatment, 1406
  tropica, Sabouraud, 1120
  versicolor, 1120
    yaws, 286
Tiques, 1203
Tissue, acid-fast stain, 1521
  azopsloxine, 1506
  clarification, terpineol, 1509
  collagen, stain, 1507, 1508
  connective, staining, 1506, 1507
  counterstain, 1506, 1513
  dehydration, 1504
  embedding, 1503, 1504
  emergency, 1516
  eosinol, *see* Eosinol
  fixation, 1501-1503, 1510, 1511
    Bouin's fluid, 1502
    formalin, 1502, 1510, 1511
    Gomori, 1502
    Masson, 1502
  fluoran-thiazin stains, 1508
  frozen, 1510-1523
    celloidin, 1513
    cutting, 1511, 1512
    dehydrating, 1513
    emergency, examination, 1516
    fixative, 1503, 1510, 1511
    Gram stain, 1519
    operating table, 1516
    rapid method, 1516, 1517
    serumizing, 1515, 1516
    spirochete stain, 1517
    staining, 1513
      routine, 1514
  Gram stain, 1519-1521
  loose-textured, serumizing, 1515, 1516
  microtomes, 1504, 1511, 1512
  mounting, 1509
  paraffin, acid-fast stain, 1523
    cutting, 1505
    embedding, 1504
    Gram stain, 1512
    mounting, 1509
    protection from insects, 1505
    staining, 1505
  picric acid removal, 1503
  preparation, 1501-1509, 1510-1523
  reactions, helminthiasis, 1547, 1548
  reticulum stain, 1508
  serumizing, 1515, 1516
  spirochete stain, 1517
  staining, frozen, 1513
    paraffin, 1505
Tityus bahiensis, 1225
    immunization, 1230
  serrulatus, 1225
    symptoms, 1228
    venom, 1227
Tlalsahuatosis, 1217
Toadfish, 1267
Tobacco mosaic virus, antibodies, 299
Tobia petechial fever, 731
Toboba-depestaña, 1242
Tocopherol, 1285
Tocotrema yokogawai, 1004
Tokelau, 1115
Toluidine blue, rickettsioses, 746
Tolypeutes matacos, Chagas' disease, 134
Tommigoff, 1241
Tonga, 269
Tongue, leprosy, 593
  pellagra, 1347, 1348, 1349
  plague, 456
  scleroma, 678
  sprue, 1307
Tono, 269
Torcel, 1202
Torpedo marmorata, 1271
Torres medium, 1570
Torula jeanselmei, 1152
Tos ferina, 1364
Toxalbumin, fish, 1270
Toxaphene, 1442
Toxoplasma, 79, 80
Toxoplasmosis, "Q" fever, 699
  typhus, 725
Trachea, scleroma, 678
Trachinus, 1268
Trachoma, treatment, 308
Tralzuahuates, 1217
Trap-door spider, 1231
Treatment, 1371-1411, *see also* under each subject *and* Antibiotics
Trematodes, 997 ff, *see also* under each name
  incidence, 7 ff
  stain, 1549
Trematodiasis, treatment, 1393 ff, 1400 ff
Trench fever, 701 ff
    acridine compounds, 748
    blood picture, 704, 1496
    characteristics, 701
    clinical, 703
    diagnosis, 705
    distribution, 701
    epidemiology, 702
    etiology, 702
    fever curve, 703, 704
    history, 693, 701
    immunity, 704, 705
    incidence, 701
    incubation period, 703
    Mecaprine, 748
    mortality, 701
    Nitroacridine, 748
    pathology, 705
    prognosis, 705
    prophylaxis, 705, 766
    "Q" fever, differentiation, 695
    reservoir, 702
    Rutenol, 748
    skin, 703, 705
    spleen, 704
    symptoms, 703
    transmission, 702
    treatment, 705
    types, 705
    Weil-Felix reaction, 702
Trepadeira, 1242
Treparsol, amebiasis, 1389, 1390
Treponema, antibiotics, 1410
  carateum, 205, 206
    animal inoculation, 206
    examination, 228
  herejoni, 205
  pallidum, antibiotics, 1410
    liver, 1518
    staining, 1517, 1518, 1519
    Treponema pertenue, 269, 285
  pertenue, 269 ff, 270
    transmission, 269
    Treponema pallidum, 285
  pinta, 205, 206, 225
  refringens, yaws, 286
  staining, 1517
  vincenti, tropical ulcer, 646
Treponemataceae, antibiotics, 1410
Triatoma, Chagas' disease, 127
  infestans, 133
    Trypanosoma cruzi, 132

Triatoma—Cont'd
  sanguisuga, encephalitis, 371
  Trypanosoma cruzi, 128
Triatominae, Trypanosoma cruzi, 130
Tribolium confusum, 1198
    myiasis, 1201
Trichina spiralis, 847 ff, *see also* Trichinella *and* Trichinosis
Trichinella spiralis, 847 ff, *see also* Trichinosis
  adults, 849, 850
  antigen, 863
  biopsy, examination, 864
  blood stream, 849, 855
  description, 847 ff
  digestion, 1557
  encystment, 849, 853, 854, 855
  heart, 850, 851, 852, 857
  history, 847
  intestines, 849
  larva, 847, 848, 849, 850, 851, 852, 855
    encystment, 855, 858
    examination, 864
    muscles, 855
    number, 855
    survival time, 855
  life cycle, 847 ff
  migration, 849
  muscles, 849, 850, 851, 852, 853, 854, 855
  number, 855, 856
  peptic digestion, 864
  pork examination, 864
  stain, 1554
  stools, 864
  virus reservoir, 302
Trichinelliasis, *see* Trichinosis, 847 ff
Trichinosis, 847 ff
  biopsy examination, 864
  blood chemistry, 861
    larva, 864
    picture, 861, 1496
  bone marrow, 858, 861
  brain, 857
  complement fixation test, 1545
  cysts, calcified, 865
  diagnosis, 862 ff
    complement fixation test, 1545
    differential, 862
    laboratory, 861
    precipitin test, 1545, 1546
    skin test, 1547
  diaphragms, examination, 864
  diarrhea, 856
  diet, 866
  distribution, 866
  edema, facial, 860
  electrocardiogram, 857
  encephalitis, 376, 857
  eyes, 858
  facial edema, 860
  fever, 859
  garbage, 867
  heart, 857
  history, 847
  hogs, 867
  immunity, 865
  immunologic tests, 863
  incidence, 7, 866
  incubation period, epidemics, 866
  intestinal phase, 856
  kidney, 858
  larva, examination, 864
  liver, 858
  lungs, 857
  lymph glands, 858
  migratory phase, 856
  muscles, 858 ff
    examination, 864
    pain, 860
  musculocystic phase, 858
  myocardium, 857
  nervous system, 857
  pathology, 855 ff
    intestinal phase, 856
    migratory phase, 856 ff
    musculocystic phase, 858
  pneumonia, 857
  pork examination, 864
  precipitin test, 863, 1545, 1546
  prognosis, 866
  prophylaxis, 867

Trichinosis—Cont'd
  respiratory paralysis, 861
  rheumatic fever, 857
  skin, 858
    test, 863, 1547
  spinal fluid, 861
      larva, 864
  sputum, larva, 864
  stools, 856
    examination, 864
  symptoms, 855
    intestinal phase, 856
    migratory phase, 849, 856 ff
    musculocystic phase, 858
  transmission, 847, 867
  treatment, 865
  urine, 861
  x-ray examination, 865
Trichocephaliasis, 841
Trichocephalus, 841
Trichodectes canis, Dipylidium caninum, 976
Trichomonas, 27
  buccalis, 27
    culture, 1559, 1571
  hominis, 27
    animal inoculation, 28
    culture, 28, 1562, 1568
    description, 27
    incidence, 28
    treatment, 1392
  tenax, 28
  vaginalis, 27, 28
    culture, 28, 1551, 1563
Trichomycosis, 1106, 1107, 1108
Trichonocardiasis, 1108
Trichophyton albiscans, 1127
  blanchardi, 1120
  castellani, 1118
  ceylonense, 1120
  classification, 1112
  colonies, 1114
  concentricum, 1115, 1117, 1118
    culture, 1118, 1119
    hair, 1117
  Crateriforme group, 1112, 1114
  examination, 1112
  Faviforme group, 1112, 1114
  Gypseum group, 1112, 1114
  mansoni, 1118
  mentagrophytes, spirals, 1114
  roquetti, 1115
  Rosaceum group, 1112, 1114
  Rubrum group, 1112, 1114
  schönleini, T. concentricum, cultures, 1118
  spores, 1113
Trichophytosis, yaws, 286
Trichosporum beigelii, 1108, 1109
Trichostrongylus colubriformis, blood picture, 1497
Trichrome stain, Masson, 1506
Trichurata, 841 ff
Trichuriasis, 841, *see also* Trichuris trichiura
  anemia, pernicious, 842
  anthelminthics, 1400
  appendicitis, 843, 844
  appendix, 842
  arsenicals, 845, 1400
  blood picture, 842, 1496
  Carica papaya, 845
  chenopodium, 845
  diagnosis, 844
  digestive system, 843
  distribution, 841
  dysentery, 843
  ferric ammonium citrate, 845
  Ficin, 845, 1400
  Ficus glabrata, 842, 845
  gentian violet, 1400
  hexylresorcinol, 1400
  history, 841
  incidence, 841
  intestines, 842
  iron, 845
  leche de higuerón, 845, 1400
  nervous disorders, 843
  pathology, 842
  Pentarsenol, 845
  prophylaxis, 846
  rectal prolapse, 842
  stools, counting parasites, 842

Trichuriasis—Cont'd
  symptoms, 843
  thymol, 845
    appendicitis, 843
  treatment, 844, 1400
    appendicitis, 843
Trichuris trichiura, 841 ff, *see also* Trichuriasis
    appendicitis, 843, 844
    description, 841
    eggs, 840, 841, 842
      counts, 1535
      examination, 1536
    incidence, 9
    life cycle, 841
      span, 842
    localization, 842
    number, 842
      technic of counting, 842, 1535
    parasite counts, 1535
Triggerfish, 1270
Trimeresurus, 1241
  flavoviridis, 1241
    symptoms, 1251
Tripneustes, 1272
Trombicula, 1218
  akamushi, 1217
  tsutsugamushi, 239, 740
Trombidids, distribution, 1216
  life cycle, 1216
  symptoms, 1216, 1217
Trombidiidae, 1216 ff
  larvae, mounting, 1557
Trombidoidea, 1216 ff
Trophozoites, description, 18
Tropical diseases, 1431
    literature, 4
  eosinophilia, blood picture, 1497
  fauna, 1431
  flora, 1430
  medicine, meaning, 1
    periodicals, 4
    teaching facilities, 2 ff
    textbooks on, 4
  neurasthenia, 1428
  ulcer, 10
    acriflavine, 661
    adhesive plasters, 660
    agglutination tests, 650
    A-K powder, 661
    Almaza patch, 660
    arsphenamine, 661
    associated diseases, 645
    bacteriology, 646 ff, 650
    Baghdad boil, 657
    Barcoo rot, 657
    benzoin tincture, 664
    bipp, 658, 660
    bismuth 662
    bones, 646
    Borrelia vincentii, 650
    calcium chloride, 662
    cancer, 657
    cavity, 655
    clinical picture, 653
    codliver oil dressing, 658
    complications, 656
    copper sulfate, 659
    culture, Panja, 649
    debility, 645
    Delhi boil, 657
    diagnosis, 656
      differential, 657
    diet, incidence, 644
    diphtheria, 657
    distribution, 641
    ecthyma, 657
    edge, 654
    epidemiology, 642
    etiology, 641 ff, 650
      predisposing factors, discussion, 642-646
    evolution, 655
    experimental production, 648-650
    fever, 656
    floor, 655
    fusiform bacilli, 646 ff, 650
    Galyl, 661
    Garigha, 657
    history, 641
    immunity, 656
Tropical ulcer—Cont'd
    incidence, 641, 642, 643, 644
    iodine, 664
    Koch's postulates, 650, 651
    leishmaniasis, 187
      tropica, 657
    leprosy, 657
    lesion, 653
    magnesium sulfate, 661
    malnutrition, 644
    Novoarsenobenzol, 660, 661, 662
    number, 654
    iodoform, 661
    ointment, 664
    Oriental sore, 657
    pathology, 652
    penicillin, 662-664
    plaster of Paris, 658, 659
    potassium permanganate, 661
    prognosis, 656
    prophylaxis, 664
    Pseudomonas aeruginosa, 650
    pus, 655
    quinine, 661
    reservoirs, 651
    saline, 658, 659
    septic sore, 657
    serum, dried, 661
    shape, 654
    site, 653
    size, 654
    skin grafting, 661, 664
    soil, 651
    spirochetes, 648, 653
    sporotrichosis, 657
    Staphylococcus aureus, 650
    Streptococcus pyogenes, 650
    sulfarsenol, 660
    sulfonamides, 658, 859, 660
      and iodoform, 658, 661
    surgery, 661
    symptoms, 653
    syphilis, 657
    tartar emetic, 661, 662
    termites, 652
    transmission, 652
      experimental, 648-650
      trauma, 643
    trauma, 643, 654
    treatment, 657 ff
      internal, 661, 662
      preferred, 663
    tuberculosis, 657
    ulcer, 653
    vaccine, 662
    varicose ulcer, 657
    vectors, 652
    Veld sore, 657
    Vincent's dusting powder, 658
    whale oil, 660
    wheeled sore, 657
    x-ray treatment, 661
    yaws, 286, 657
    Zeno process, 660
    zipp, 660
Tropicorbis, distribution, 1074
  havanensis, Schistosoma mansoni, 1073
Tropics, blood pressure, 1426
  climate, 1413
  clothing, 1438 ff
  definition, 1413
  history, 1412, 1413
  housing, 1443, 1444
  hygiene, 1432-1444
    services, organization, 1451
  hypertension, 1426
  menarche, 1427
  menstruation, 1427
  physiologic reactions, 1417 ff
    variations, 1425-1430
  preventive medicine services, 1451
  psychologic reactions, 1428
  pulse rate, 1426
  temperature, body, 1427
    regulation, 1415-1417
  urinary output, 1427
Tropischer phagedenismus, 641
Tropodiagnosis, 1542
Trunkfish, 1270

Trypanosoma, adhesion reaction, 164
  animal reservoirs, 157, 158
  arsenic-resistant strains, 165
  blood, immunity, 162
  brucei, 156
  cattle, 158
  cruzi, 127, *see also* Chagas' disease
    animal inoculation, 152
    blood, 136
      Chagas' disease, 144
      examination, 151, 152
      stream, 134
    carriers, 131
    conjunctivitis, 138
    crithidia, 128
    culture, 131, 1552, 1557, 1566, 1569, 1570
    description, 127, 128
    development, 1207
    leishmanial elements, 128, 129
    life cycle, 128 ff, 130, 132
      in human beings, 136
    reinfection, endogenous, 135
    reservoirs, 131
    thick drop, 152
    ticks, 1206
    tissues, 135
    transmission, 131, 1208, 1209, 1212, 1213
    treatment, 1383
  culture, 1561, 1567
    chick embryo, 1563
  drug-resistant, 165
  equinum, treatment, 1384
  examination for, 163
  fetus, 158
  fixative, 1566
  gambiense, 157, *see also* African sleeping sickness
    animal inoculation, 163
      natural infection, 157
    blood, 163
    culture, 1553, 1558
    distribution, 156
    drug resistance, 165
    examination for, 163
    life cycle, 156
    rouleaux formation, 164
    Trypanosoma cruzi, 131
    vectors, 157
  metacyclic, 128
  rhodesiense, 157
    animal, natural infection, 158
    culture, 1553
    distribution, 156
    life cycle, 156
    treatment, 1384
    vector, 157
  spinal fluid, 158
  stain, 1560, 1567
Trypanosomiasis Africana, *see also* African sleeping sickness, 156 ff
  American, *see* Chagas' disease, 127 ff
  cruzi, 127 ff
  diamidine-stilbene, 1384, 1385
  malaria, 94
  Rhodesian, 162
  stilbene-diamidine, 1384, 1385
  Synthalin, 1383, 1384
  treatment, 1383-1385
Tryparsamide, African sleeping sickness, 166, 167, 168
  -Pentamidine, African sleeping sickness, 167
  relapsing fever, 235
Tryparsone, African sleeping sickness, 166
Tryptophane, 1286
  requirements, 1288
Tsetse fly, 156, 157
Tsuchiya medium, 1570
Tsutsugamushi, 737 ff
  blood picture, 742, 1499
  Chloromycetin, 748
  clinical description, 740
  complications, 742
  diagnosis, 742, 743
    differential, 743
    laboratory, 742
  distribution, 738
  ear, 742, 743
  epidemiology, 739
  exanthem, 741
  eyes, 742

Tsutsugamushi—Cont'd
  fever curve, 740
  heart, 742, 744
  history, 692
  incidence, 738, 739
  incubation period, 738, 740, 743
  kidney, 744
  lesion, 740, 745
  liver, 744
  lungs, 744
  malaria, 743
  nervous system, 744
  para-aminobenzoic acid, 747
  pathology, 744
  pneumonia, 742
  prophylaxis, 766
  prognosis, 743
  reservoirs, 739
  Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 745
  scar, 740, 742, 744
  skin, 741, 744
  spleen, 744
  symptoms, 740
  transmission, 739, 1217
  treatment, 745
  typhus, 745
  ulcers, 741
  variants, 738
  vectors, 739
  Weil-Felix reaction, 742
Tuberculosis, 1361-1363
  amebiasis, 45
    liver abscess, 49
  anemia, 1290
  aureomycin, 1409
  blastomycosis, 1185
  clubs, 1148
  death rate, 1362, 1363
  distribution, 1362
  histoplasmosis, 1192
  incidence, 1362
  intestinal, amebic diarrhea, 44
  intestines, 1313
  leishmaniasis, 188
  lymphogranuloma venereum, 403
  malaria, 94
  miliary, typhoid, 568
  mortality, 1369
  paragonimiasis, 998
  salmonellosis, 520, 524
  schistosomiasis mansoni, 1089
  skin, yaws, 288
  sprue, 1310
  streptomycin, 1408
  tartar emetic, 1063
  tropical ulcer, 657
  typhobacillus, 568
  verrucosa cutis, chromoblastomycosis, 1160
Tucandeira, 1198
Tularemia, 436 ff
  acute phase, 439
  adenitis, 439
  aerosols, 438
  agglutination test, 440
  aureomycin, 441 *footnote,* 1373
  bacteriemia, 438
  birds, 436
  blood cultures, 440
    picture, 440, 1497
  brain, 437
  brucellosis, cross-agglutination, 440
  buboes, 437, 439
    treatment, 442
  Chloromycetin, 441 *footnote,* 1373
  cough, 438
  cultures, 440
  diagnosis, laboratory, 439 ff
  diet, 441
  exanthem, 439
  eyes, treatment, 442
  fever, 438
  Foshay anti-serum, 1372
  glandular, 437
  heart, 437
  hosts, 436
  immunity, 439
  incidence, 437
  incubation period, 437
  kidneys, 437
  laboratory infection, 438
  lesions, 437

Tularemia—Cont'd
  lungs, 437
  lymph glands, 438
  malaria, 94
  melioidosis, 1195
  necrosis, 436
  neoarsphenamine, 1373
  Neomycin, 441 *footnote*
  oculoglandular, 437
  pathology, 436
  penicillin, 441
  pneumonia, 437, 438, 439
    treatment, 441
  prognosis, 439
  prophylaxis, 442
  relapses, 439
  serum therapy, 441
  skin tests, 440
  sporotrichosis, 438
  sputum, 438
  streptomycin, 441, 1372
  sulfonamides, 441, 1372, 1373
  symptoms, 437
  terramycin, 441 *footnote*
  transmission, 436, 1207, 1208, 1209, 1210, 1211, 1212, 1213
  treatment, 441, 1372
    buboes, 442
    eyes, 442
  types, 437
  typhoidal, 437, 438
  ulceroglandular, 437
  ulcers, 437
  vaccination, 442
  vectors, 436
  vertebrates, 436
  water-borne, 436
Tungere, pinta, 209
Tungidae, plague, 447
Turbatrix aceti, 797
Turdus merula, encephalitis, 371
Turkey gnats, onchocerciasis, 895
Tylosurus caribboeus, 1270
Typhlitis, amebic, 45
    perforations, 47
Typhobacillus, 568
Typhoid, *see also* Salmonellosis, 507 ff, *and* Salmonella typhosa
  abdomen, 566
  agglutination test, 522, 523, 567
  amebiasis, 45
    liver abscess, 49
  antibiotics, 526, 1382
  aphasia, 566
  appendicitis, 569
  Ascaris lumbricoides, 801
  ataxoadynamic form, 569
  aureomycin, 527, 1382
  bacillus, synonyms, 508
  bacteriologic examination, 522
  bacteriophage, 572
  bile culture, 567
  blood cultures, 522, 567
    picture, 524, 566, 1497, 1498
      children, 568
  bone, 512, 564
    marrow, 512, 564
      culture, 567
  brain, 565
  bronchitis, 520
  bronchopneumonia, 520, 570
  brucellosis, 424, 426, 569
  Brumpt agglutination test, 523
  carriers, test for, 523
    treatment, 529
  chemotherapy, 572
  children, 559 ff
    blood picture, 1498
  Chloromycetin, 527, 1382
  clinical forms, 569
  colitis, 561
  complications, 520, 570
    treatment, 528
  congenital, 559
  conjunctivitis, 566
  constipation, 528
    treatment, 571
  convalescent blood, 527
  cultures, 522
  delirium, 569

Typhoid—Cont'd
  dengue-like, 519
  diagnosis, 522
    differential, 524, 568
    laboratory, 567
  diarrhea, 516, 528
    treatment, 571
  diet, 571
  dietary treatment, 527
  digestive tract, 561, 566
  dihydrostreptomycin, 527
  distribution, 559
  duration, 569
  ear, 566
  empyema, 570
  endocarditis, 569
  facies typhica, 516
  Felix serum, 525
  fetal, 559
  fever, 512
    curve, 515, 565
  Fröhlich syndrome, 566
  gall bladder, 512, 516, 564
  gastroenteritis, 568
  genitourinary system, 565
  gentian violet, 528
  glucomycin, 527 *footnote*, 1382
  granuloma, 561, 564
  hair, 567
  heart, 512, 564, 565
    complications, 570
    treatment, 571
  hemorrhage, 520, 566
    intestinal, treatment, 571
    treatment, 528
  hemorrhagic form, 569
  hydrotherapy, 527
  hyperthermia, treatment, 571
  immunization, 11, 12, 530 ff
  incidence, 1453
  incubation period, 515
  infectious mononucleosis, 569
  influenza, 568
  intestines, 512, 559, 560, 562, 563
    perforation, treatment, 528, 572
  kaolin, 528
  kidneys, 512, 565
  lesions, 560
  -like fever, *see also* Salmonella fever
      pathology, 513
  liver, 512, 516, 564, 566
  lungs, 512, 516, 564, 570
  lymph glands, 512, 563
  malaria, 94, 525, 569
    -like, 519
  mandelic acid, 528
  meningitis, 569
  mouth, 561, 562
    symptoms, 516
  muscles, 565
  mutism, 566
  neomycin, 527 *footnote*
  nephritis, 565
  nervous symptoms, 521
    system, 566, 570
  nurslings, 569
  osteomyelitis, 521, 564, 569
  paratyphoid fever, 568
  pathology, 512, 559
  penicillin, 526
  perforations, 520
    children, 570
    treatment, 572
  peritonitis, 563
  phlebitis, 564
  phthalyl sulfacetimide, 527
  plasma, 527, 571
  pneumonia, 520, 564, 568
  polymixin D, 527 *footnote*
  prognosis, 524
    children, 570
  prophylaxis, 529, 572
  psittacosis, 355, 357
  pulmonary manifestations, 568
  pulse, 516, 565
  purgatives, 571
  pyelitis, 569
  relapse, 517
  respiratory apparatus, 565
  rheumatism, 569

Typhoid—Cont'd
  roseola, 566
  schistosomiasis mansoni, 1089
  sedimentation rates, 568
  serotherapy, 572
  sewage disposal, 530
  shellfish, 530
  skin, 512, 517, 566
  spleen, 512, 516, 563, 566
  stomach, 562
  stool culture, 567
    examination, 1527
  streptomycin, 526, 1382
  sulfonamides, 526, 527
  symptoms, 515, 569
    children, 565
  TAB, 572
  thrombophlebitis, 516, 521
  tin, 528
  transfusions, 528, 529
  transmission, congenital, 559
  treatment, 525, 570 ff, 1381
  tuberculosis, miliary, 568
  typhobacillosis, 568
  typhus, 525, 725
  ulcers, 512, 560, 561, 562
  urinary system, 521
  vaccination, 572, 1442
    oral, 531
  vaccines, 527, 530, 531
  Vi agglutination test, 523
  vitamins, 528
  water supplies, 530
  Welch and Stuart spot agglutination test, 523
  Widal test, 522, 567
Typhus, 706 ff, *see also* Typhus, exanthematic, Typhus, murine, *and* Tsutsugamushi
  abortive, 722
  acridine compounds, 748
  ambulans, 723
  antityphus serum, 749
  aspirin, 748
  asymptomatic, 723
  blood chemistry, 718
    infectiousness, 711
    picture, 715, 1498, 1499
    pressure, 715
    vessels, 716, 726, 727, 728
  boutonneuse fever, 736
  brain, 718, 728
  bulbopontine, 718
  brucellosis, 424
  carriers, 709
  Chloromycetin, 748
  classical, *see* Typhus, exanthematic, *and* Typhus
  clinical description, 712
  collapse, 730
  coma, vigil, 717
  complications, 713, 724
  control, 763, 764, 765, 1218, 1447
  convalescent serum, 749
  coryza, 720
  cycle of development, 710
  DDT, 759, 765
  deafness, 713
  delirium, 718, 722
  delousing houses, 763
  diagnosis, differential, 724, 725
  digestive changes, 720
  distribution, 691 ff
  electrocardiographic changes, 713 ff
  encephalic, 718
  encephalitis, pathology, 376
  endemic, *see* Typhus, exanthematic
  endemicity, 707, 708, 709 ff
  epidemicity, 710
  epidemics, control, 764
    curves, 708
  epidemiologic laboratories, 1462
  epidemiology, 707
  eruptive phase, 712
  exanthem, 712
  exanthematic, 706 ff
    and murine, epidemiology, 707
    neotropical, 733
    symptoms, 712 ff
    transmission, 707
    vaccines, 752 ff

Typhus—Cont'd
  facies, pre-eruptive phase, 712
  fever curve, 712, 713, 721, 722
  fleas, control, 765
  ganglionitis, 729
  gravis, 720
  grippe, 720, 725
  heart, 713, 729
  hemoconcentration, 715
  hemorrhagic, 722
  history, 691 ff
  houses, 710
  immunity, 711, 724
    murine virus vaccines, 754
    vaccination, 756
  immunization, 12, 752
    vaccine typhus, 757
  inapparent, 723
  incidence, 691 ff, 711, 1453
  incubation period, 712
  infantile, 709, 722
  kidney, 716 ff, 729
  lesion, description, 725
  levissimus, 723
  lice control, 763
  lungs, 720
  man-louse-man cycle, 710
  measles, 725
  meningitis, 725
  Mepacrine, 748
  mild, 722
  mite-borne, 737
  murine, 730
    cheopis index, 765
    control, 765
    diagnosis, 725
    epidemiology, 707, 708
    exanthematic typhus, epidemiology, 707
    history, 694
    incidence, 707
    mild, 722
    mites, 1216
    para-aminobenzoic acid, 747
    plague, 765
    prognosis, 724
    transmission, 707, 1211, 1216
    vaccination, dangers, 757
    vaccines, 754
  MYL, 759
  nephritis, 718, 729
  nervous phase, 718
    symptoms, 713
    system, 718 ff, 727
  neuritis, 718
  Nitroacridine, 748
  nodule, 726 ff
  para-aminobenzoic acid, 747
  pathology, 725
  penicillin, 747
  plasma, 745, 746
  pneumonia, 720
  prognosis, 724
  prophylaxis, 750, 763 ff
    serum, 749
  quarantine, 763
  relapsing fever, 233, 725
  renal changes, 716 ff
  repellents, 768
  reservoirs, 709
  respiratory changes, 720
  rickettsialpox, 790
  rural, 737 ff
  Rutenol, 748
  salmonellosis 525
  scrub, *see* Tsutsugamushi, 737 ff
  shock, 715
  siderans, 720
  skin, 712, 713, 726
  spinal cord, 718
  state. 712
  stupor, 712
  susceptibility, 711
  symptoms, 712 ff
  synonyms, 706
  terminal period, 713
  tick, transmission, 1212
  toxoplasmosis, 725
  transmission, 706, 707, 711, 1207, 1209, 1212, 1213, 1214
    history, 694
    louse, 710

Typhus—Cont'd
  treatment, *see* Rickettsioses, treatment, 745 ff
  tropical, 737
  tsutsugamushi, 745, *see also* Tsutsugamushi
  types, 720
  typhoid, 725
  urine, 717, 718, 719
  vaccination, 756, 765, 1443
    dangers, 756, 757
  vaccines, 752 ff
    living virus, murine, 754
    reactions, 757
  vitamin B_1 and C, 746
    C, 711
  Weil-Felix reaction, 725
Tyrocidin, 1409
Tyroglyphidae, 1219
Tyroglyphoidea, 1219
Tyroglyphus, 796, 797
  longior, 1219

U

Ukraine diarrhea, 533
Ulcer, Aden, 641
  amebiasis, 45
  amebic, 38
  Annam, 641
  buttonhole, amebiasis, 38
  Chaco, 641
  Chagas' disease, 149
  diphtheritic, cutaneous, tropical ulcer, 657
  flask-shaped, amebiasis, 38
  Goyana, 641
  granuloma inguinale, 417
  intestines, amebiasis, 50
  lazarine leprosy, 604
  leishmaniasis, 177
    cutaneous, 192
  leprosy, 593, 598
  Mozambique, 641
  peptic, intestines, 1313
  plague, 460
  sea anemone, amebiasis, 39
  schistosomiasis mansoni, 1084
  shigellosis, 534, 535
  stomach, amebiasis, 46
  tick, transmission, 1213
  tropical, 10, 641 ff, *see also* Tropical ulcer
  tsutsugamushi, 741
  tularemia, 437
  typhoid, 512, 560, 561, 562
  varicose, tropical ulcer, 657
  Vincent's, *see* Tropical ulcer, 641 ff
  yaws, 282, 283, 286, 288, 289
  Yemen, 641
Ulcère phagèdenique des pays chauds, 621
Ulcus tropicum, 641
Ulosonia parvicornis, Hymenolepis diminuta, 971, 973
Umbreit stain, Actinomycetales, 1150
Uncinaria americana, 821
  canina, 839
  duodenalis, 821
  malayana, 837
Uncinariasis, 819 ff
Undulant fever, *see* Brucellosis, 420 ff
Ura, 1202
Urchins, sea, 1272
Urea, malaria, 97
Urea-stibamine, kala-azar, 200
Urinary tract calculi, 1367
Urine, ancylostomiasis, 829
  calculi, 1367
  cholera, 484, 489
  chyle, microfilariae, technic, 884
  coproporphyrin, pellagra, 1357
  Echinococcus granulosus, 963
  F_2, pellagra, 1356, 1357
  filaria, 875
  filariasis, 882
  fly larvae, 1200
  helminthic examination, 1540
  leptospira, antibodies, 246
    in, 244
    isolation, 240
  leptospiral diseases, 247
  lymphogranuloma venereum, 395
  microfilaria, 875
      technic, 884

Urine—Cont'd
  niacin load test, 1357
    pellagra, 1356, 1357
  nutritional edema, 1293
  Oroya fever, 627
  plague, bubonic, 464
  "Q" fever, 697
  salmonellosis, 524
  schistosomiasis haematobia, 1051, 1059, 1060
    intercalata, 1066
    mansoni, 1093
      eggs, 1069
  shigellosis, 574
  sodoku, 261
  specific gravity, Tropics, 1427
  spotted fever, 734
  strongyloidiasis, 816
  trichinosis, 861
  typhus, 716, 717, 718, 719
  volume, Tropics, 1427
  Weil's disease, 252
  yellow fever, 320
Urolophus torpedinus, 1268
Urticaria, fish, 1272
  hydatidosis, 960
  strongyloidiasis, 817
Urticarial fever, 1037
    cure, 1044
Urticariform schizotrypanides, 149
Urutú, 1241
  poison apparatus, 1246
  venom, 1249
Uta, history, 170

V

Vaccination, bartonellosis, 637
  cholera, 500, 501, 1443
    pilgrimages, 482
  Oroya fever, 637
  paratyphoid, 1442
  plague, 469, 1443
  rickettsioses, 751
  salmonellosis, 1442
  shigellosis, 546
  smallpox 1365, 1442
  snake, 1254
  spotted fever, 756
  tetanus, 1442
  tularemia, 442
  typhoid, 572, 1442
  typhus, 1443
    murine, 754
  yellow fever, 1443
Vaccine, blastomycosis, 1188, 1189
  brucellosis, 432, 433, 1378
  mycoses, 1406
  oral, typhoid, 530
  "Q" fever, 752
  rickettsial, 756
  salmonellosis, 527, 530, 531
    children, 558
    evaluation, 531
  scleroma respiratorium, 683
  shigellosis, 544, 547, 575
  spotted fever, 756
  TAB, 530, 531
  tropical ulcer, 662
  typhoid, 527, 530, 531
    evaluation, 531
  typhus, exanthematic, 752 ff
    murine, 754
Vaccinia, hemagglutination, 305
  virus, antibodies, 299
Valine, 1288
Van Cleave and Ross solution, 1570
van Thiel method, leptospiras in water, 245
Vancoho, 1233
Varicella, 1365
  rickettsialpox, 790
Variola, *see* Smallpox, 1364
Vasodilatation, sunburn, 1422
Vejovix spinigerus, 1226
Veld sore, tropical ulcer, 657
Velsicol-DDT mixture, 122
Vena medinensis, 928
Venereal diseases, incidence, 1368
Venin, *see* Venom
Venom, arthropods, 1198
  bees, 1266

Venom—Cont'd
  centipedes, 1265
  fish, 1267, 1269, 1270
  lizards, 1272
  scorpion, 1226, 1227, 1228
    absorption, 1229
  snakes, 1246, *see also* Snake venom
  spiders, 1234
    inoculation, 1233
  wasps, 1266
Ventriculin, pellagra, 1354
  sprue, 1323, 1324
Ver macaque, 1202
Verruga, 634, 635
  bartonellosis, *see* Bartonellosis, 627 ff
  chromoblastomycosis, 1157
  miliary, 628, 630
  mulaire, 630
  nodular, 630
  peruana, antibiotics, 1379, *see also* Bartonellosis
    treatment, 1379
  section, 633
  tumor, 630
Verrugosa, 1243
Vervoort medium, leptospiras, 238
Vespula diabolica, 1198
Vi agglutination test, 523
  antigen, typhoid vaccines, 530
Víbora de cascabel, 1241
  de árbol, 1242
  de la Cruz, 1241
    antivenin, 1257
  verde, 1242
Vibrio, antibiotics, 1410
  cholerae, 479
  comma, 477, *see also* Cholera
    agglutination test, technic, 492
    antigens, 479
    bacteriophage, 479
    Chloromycetin, 498
    classification, 479
    culture, 479, 491, 492
    description, 478 ff
    El Tor, 480
    examination for, 491
    pathogenicity, 481
    Pfeiffer's phenomenon, 492
    resistance, 479
    stool examination, 1528
    strains, 478
    survival, 496
    transmission, 481
    types, 480
    variants, 480
  El Tor, 480 *see* El Tor
Vieja, 1269
Viejita, 1242
Vigo stain, thick drop, 1473
Vinagrillos, 1222
Vincent's dusting powder, tropical ulcer, 658
  ulcer, *see* Tropical ulcer, 641 ff
Vinchuca, 127
Vinegerone, 1222
Vioform, amebiasis, 57, 59, 1389, 1390
  balantidiasis, 1393
Viosterol, 1283
Vipera ammodytes, venom, 1249
  berus, 1243
  russellii, 1243
    antivenin, 1258
    symptoms, 1251
    treatment, 1256
    venom, 1249
  superciliaris, 1243
Vipers, 1243, 1244
  antivenin, 1257
  bush, 1244
  death rate, 1253
  gaboon, 1244
  habits, 1244
  pit, antivenin, 1257
    habits, 1244
    symptoms, 1251, 1252
  rhinoceros, 1244
  venom, 1248
Virus antibodies, 299
  antigens, 299, 303, 304
  aureomycin, 309, 1409
  Chloromycetin, 309, 1409

Virus—Cont'd
  diseases, 298 ff, 377 ff, 380, 381
    agglutination tests, 304, 305
    antibiotics, 309
    aureomycin, 309, 1409
    Chloromycetin, 309, 1409
    complement fixation tests, 303, 304
    dengue, *see* Dengue, 330 ff
    diagnosis, 302
    encephalitis, 367 ff
    encephalomyelitis, equine, 367 ff
    epidemiology, 299
    granuloma inguinale, 412 ff
    immunity, 305
    lot "6," 381
    lymphocytic choriomeningitis, 375
    lymphogranuloma venereum, 387 ff
    Phlebotomus fever, 337
    prophylaxis, 305
    psittacosis, 341 ff
    Rift Valley fever, 338
    St. Louis encephalitis, 375, *see also* Encephalitis, St. Louis
    sand-fly fever, 337
    serotherapy, 309
    skin tests, 305
    sulfonamides, 309
    treatment, 308, 1382, 1383
    vaccination, 306, 307, 308
    West Nile, culture, 377
    yellow fever, 313 ff
  encephalitis, 380, 381
    culture, 377
  ether, isolation, 304
  identification, 303
  immunity, 305
  influenza, swine, transmission, 301, 302
  isolation, 304
  multiplication, 299
  nature, 298
  neurotropic, 378, 379
    yellow fever, 315
  neutralization test, yellow fever, 316
  poliomyelitis, 300
  polymyxin D, 1409
  reservoirs, 301
  size, measurement, 298
  skin tests, 305
  transmission, 299, 300, 1209, 1212, 1213
    ticks, 1211
  vectors, 300
  Western equine, transmission, 300
  yellow fever, 315
  Zephiran, isolation, 304
Viscerotome, 317
Viscerotomy centers, 1453, 1454
  yellow fever, 317, 323
Visual purple, 1274
Vitamin, 1273, 1274
  A, 1274
    absorption, Prostigmine, 1314
    deficiency, absorption, 1276
      blindness, 1274
      deafness, 1275
      diseases, 1276
      eyes, 1275
      symptoms, 1274, 1275
      treatment, 1276
      visual disturbances, 1274
    derivation, 1274
    dosage, 1276
    elimination, 1276
    foods, 1276, 1434
    keratinization, 1275
    requirements, 1276
    storage, 1275
  antiacrodynic factor, 1278
  antiberiberi, 1277
  antigray hair, 1278
  antihemorrhagic, 1285
  antiinfectious, *see* Vitamin A, 1274 ff
  antineuritic, 1277
  antipellagra, 1279
  antirachitic, 1283
  antiscorbutic, 1281
  antisterility, 1285
  antixerophthalmic, 1274 ff
  B, 1277-1281
    "2" factor, 1279
    absorption, pellagra, 1344

Vitamin B—Cont'd
    biotin, 1280
    deficiency, intestines, 1312
      pellagra, 1341 ff
    folic acid, 1280
    foods, 1434
    pantothenic acid, 1279
    pellagra, 1354
    rice, 1434
  B_1, 1277
    beriberi, 1338
    deficiency, 1277
      alcoholism, 1337, 1337 *footnote*
      beriberi, 1333, 1338
        infantile, 1339
      leprosy, 1377
      typhus, 746
  B_2, 1277
    deficiency, 1277
      dementia, 1350
      symptoms, 1277
      treatment, 1278
    dosage, 1278
    foods, 1277
    requirements, 1277
    sprue, 1304, 1323
  B_6, 1278
    ariboflavinosis, 1348
    deficiency, 1278
      treatment, 1279
    dosage, 1279
    foods, 1278
    requirements, 1278
  B_{12}, 1281
    nutritional macrocytic anemia, 1291
    yellow fever, 321 *footnote,* 1383
  B_x, 1278
  beriberi, history, 1334, *see also* Beriberi
  C, 1281
    deficiency, 1435
      anemia, 1291, 1292
      blood picture, 1291, 1482, 1494
      symptoms, 1281
      treatment, 1282
    digestive disturbances, 1282
    foods, 1282, 1434
    function, 1282
    requirements, 1282
    typhus, 711, 746
  cooking, 1435
  D, 1283
    calcium, 1284
      deficiency, 1295
    deficiency, 1435
      bones, 1283, 1284
      metabolic changes, 1284
      ricketts, 1284
      symptoms, 1283, 1284
      teeth, 1284
      treatment, 1284
    dosage, 1284
    foods, 1284
    hypervitaminosis, 1284
    osteomalacia, 1283
    phosphorus metabolism, 1284
    requirements, 1284
    rickets, 1283
    sunlight, 1422
  deficiency, 1274 ff
  E, 1285
  expeditions, 1445
  fat-soluble, 1274
      food preparation, 1435
  G, 1277, 1278
  growth-promoting, *see* Vitamin A, 1274 ff
  H, 1280
  "I" factor, 1278
  K, 1285, 1286
    deficiency symptoms, 1285
      treatment, 1286
    dosage, 1286
    foods, 1285
    requirements, 1286
    synthesis, 1286
  nutritional edema, 1294
  P, 1283
  PP, 1279, 1341
  pellagra, *see* Pellagra
  rice diet, retention, 1338

Vitamin—Cont'd
  salmonellosis, 528
  tocopherol, 1285
  typhoid, 528
  water-soluble, 1274
      food preparation, 1435
Vitiligo gravior, 594
  leucomelanoderma, pinta, 219
Vole, leptospira, 247
Vomito prieto, 313
von Frisch's bacterium, *see* Klebsiella rhinoscleromatis, 667 ff
Vorticella, reproduction, 17
  shape, 14
  structure, 15
Vultur fulvus, encephalitis, 371

W

Walking sticks, 1198
Wasp, 1265
  sting, treatment, 1266
  symptoms, 1266
  venom, 1198, 1266
Water balance, malaria, 85
  boatmen, DDT, 122
  buffer solutions, 1570
  centrifugalization, stools, 1532
  cholera, prophylaxis, 499
  diphyllobothriasis, 991
  fleas, Diphyllobothrium latum, 990
  leptospiras in, 245
  neutral, 1470, 1570
  pollution, 1437
  purification, 1437
  requirements, 1438
  sanitation, 1446
  schistosomiasis japonica, 1046
    mansoni, 1074
      disinfection, 1071
  shigellosis, 534
  source, 1436
  sparganiasis, 995
  sterilization, 1437
  supply, 1436-1438
Waterbuck, African sleeping sickness, 158
Weasel, Chagas' disease, 134
Weevers, 1268
Weigl vaccine, murine typhus, 755
      typhus, 752
Weigli rickettsiosis, 706
Weil's disease, 247, 250 ff
    blood chemistry, 252
      picture, 252, 1499
    cycle of infection, 252
    diagnosis, 253
      differential, 254
      laboratory, 252
    etiology, 236
    incubation period, 251
    kidney, 251, 252
    liver, 250, 251
    malaria, 94
    pathology, 250
    prognosis, 254
    spinal fluid antibodies, 246
    symptoms, 247, 251
    treatment, 254
    urine, 252
Weil-Felix reaction, boutonneuse fever, 737
    history, 693
    "Q" fever, 697
    relapsing fever, 233
    rickettsialpox, 787, 790, 791
    spotted fever, 734
    trench fever, 702
    tsutsugamushi, 742
    typhus, 725
Weinberg-Parvú reaction, 1544
Welch and Stuart spot agglutination test, salmonellosis, 523
Wenyon medium, 1571
West Nile disease, virus culture, 377
    fever, 381
Whale oil, tropical ulcer, 660
Wheeled sore, tropical ulcer, 657
Whip scorpions, 1222
Whipworm, *see* Trichuris trichiura
Whitfield ointment, mycosis, 1406
Whooping cough, 1364

Widal reaction, salmonellosis, 557
  test, 522
    typhoid, 567
Wild wound, history, 170
Willis egg counts, *see* Caldwell and Caldwell, 1524
Winterbottom's sign, African sleeping sickness, 161
Wolhynian fever, 701
Wright-Giemsa stain, 1473
  stain, 1469
    Bercovitz modification, 1472
    blood films, 1472
    thick drop, 1475
Wuchereria bancrofti, 874 ff, *see also* Filariasis, bancroftian
    adults, worms, 875
    blood, 876
      technic, 884
    concentration, xenodiagnosis, 1542
    distribution, 874
    elephantiasis, *see* Elephantiasis
    host, 877
    hydrocele, 882
    incidence, 8, 881
    key, 876
    life cycle, 876
    microfilariae, 875
    mosquitoes, 876
    periodicity, 876
    sheath, 875
    skin tests, 885, 1547
    urine, 1540
      technic, 884
    transmission, 876
    vectors, 876, 887
  malayi, 8, 888
    elephantiasis, 888

X

Xenodiagnosis, 1541
  definition, 1531
Xenopsylla astia, plague, 447
  braziliensis, plague, 447
  cheopis, 448
    Hymenolepis diminuta, 971
      nana, 967, 968
    plague, 447, 449, 451
    typhus, 706
Xerophthalmia, 1275
X-ray, amebiasis, 51
  blastomycosis, 1183
  chromoblastomycosis, 1169
  cysticercosis, 947
  dracontiasis, 933
  echinococcosis, 964
  histoplasmosis, 1194
  hydatid cyst, 964
  paragonimiasis, 999
  schistosomiasis haematobia, 1054, 1057, 1058
  scleroma respiratorium, 683
  sprue, 1312
  trichinosis, 865
  tropical ulcer, 661
Xylol, pediculosis pubic, 1406

Y

Yararaca, 1242
Yarará-guazu, 1242
  ñata, 1241
Yararaquita, 1242
Yaws, 269 ff
  Acetarsone, 293
  acne vulgaris, 288
  arsenicals, 290 ff
  Arsenoxide, 293
  arsphenamine, 290 ff
  bismuth, 294, 1388
  blastomycosis, 1185
  bone, 275, 280, 282, 284
  congenital infection, 269
  control, 296
  crab, 279, 281
  dermatitis, 288
  diagnosis, 284 ff
    differential, 284 ff
  distribution, 271, 1431
  eruption, 278

Yaws—Cont'd
  etiology, 269
  forest, 287
  fungus infections, 286
  gangosa, 283
  goundou, 284
  gumma, 283
    scrofuloderma, 289
  immunity, 270
    syphilis, 285
  incidence, 270
  incubation period, 275
  keratoid, 278
  leishmaniasis, 179, 287, 288
  leprosy, 289
  lesions, juxta-articular nodules, 284
    palmar, 279, 280
    papular, 278
    plantar, 279, 280, 281
    primary, 272, 273, 275, 276, 277
    secondary, 273, 274, 277
    tertiary, 273, 275, 282
  lichen planus, 288
  lupus vulgaris, 288
  Mapharsen, 293, 1388
  Mapharside, 293
  neoarsphenamine, 292, 1388
  neosalvarsan, 292
  nose, 283, 284
  pathology, 272
  penicillin, 295, 1388
  pinta, 228
  pityriasis rosea, 288
  prophylaxis, 296
  psoriasis, 288
  pyoderma, 286
  relapse, 295
  ringworm, 283
  salvarsan, 290 ff
  scabies, 286
  scrofuloderma, 289
  secondary stage, 277
  skin, 272, 273, 274, 275, 279, 286-289
  spinal fluid, 285
  spot, 272
  Stovarsol, 293, 1388
  sulfarsphenamine, 292, 1388
  symptoms, 272, 275
  syphilis, differentiation, 284, 285
  tertiary stage, 282
  transmission, 269
  treatment, 289, 1388
    response, 295
  tropical ulcer, 657
  ulcers, 286
Yeast, pellagra, 1352, 1354
Yellow fever, 313 ff
  animals, 319
    inoculation, 316
  antibodies, 316
  benign, 319, 320
  blood picture, 1499
  clinical forms, 319
  complement fixation test, 318
  control, 1454
  Councilman bodies, 322
  diagnosis, laboratory, 316
  distribution, 314, 1431
  epidemiologic laboratories, 1462
  etiology, 315
  fever, 320
  hemorrhage, 320
  history, 313
  immunity, 318
    dengue virus, 335
    production, 325 ff
    tests, 316
  immunization, 12
  incidence, 1453
  jaundice, 320
  jungle, 318, 319
  liver, 321, 322
    and Chagas' disease, 142
    viscerotomy, 317
  malaria, 95
  methione, 321 *footnote*
  monkeys, 314
  neutralization test, 316
  nuclear inclusions, 323
  pathology, 321 ff

Yellow fever—Cont'd
    plague, 465
    post-mortem findings, 321 ff
    prophylaxis, 324
    protection tests, 316
    Rift Valley fever, virus, 339
    symptoms, 319
    transmission, 318, 1205, 1206, 1209, 1212, 1213
        history, 313
    treatment, 321, 1383
    urban, 318
        prophylaxis, 324
    urine, 320
    vaccination, 307, 325 ff, 1443
        homologous serum jaundice, 326
    varieties, 318
    vectors, 318
    virus, 315
        "17D," 315
            immunization, 326
        animal inoculation, 315
        identification, neutralization test, 316
        isolation, 316
        neurotropic, 315
        neutralization test, 316
    viscerotomy, 317
    vitamin B_{12}, 312 *footnote*
    Weil's disease, 254

Yochu-byo, 737
Yokogawa yokogawai, 1004
Yoshimoto, complement fixation test, schistosomiasis, 1543
Young and van Slant Locke solution, 1563
    medium, 1571

Z

Zaedyus pichycaurinus, Chagas' disease, 134
Zambesi sore, 641
Zecken, 1203
Zeno process, tropical ulcer, 660
Ziehl-Neelsen stain, *see* Acid-fast stain, tissue, 1521
Ziemann stippling, 77
Zinc flotation, stools, 1526
    oxide ointment, expeditions, 1447
Zinsser and Castañeda vaccine, murine typhus, 754
    typhus, 752
Zinsser, Fitzpatrick, and Wei vaccine, typhus, 753
Zinsser and Macchiavello vaccine, typhus, 753
Zinsser, Plotz, and Enders vaccine, typhus, 753
Zipp, tropical ulcer, 660
Zonotrichia, psittacosis, 351
Zymonema, 1178

CENTRAL FOOD TECHNOLOGICAL RESEARCH INSTITUTE, * MYSORE. *
LIBRARY